

man pages section 1M: System Administration Commands

Beta



Part No: 819-2240-33
February 2010

Copyright ©2010 Sun Microsystems, Inc. All Rights Reserved 4150 Network Circle, Santa Clara, CA 95054 U.S.A. All rights reserved.

Sun Microsystems, Inc. has intellectual property rights relating to technology embodied in the product that is described in this document. In particular, and without limitation, these intellectual property rights may include one or more U.S. patents or pending patent applications in the U.S. and in other countries.

U.S. Government Rights – Commercial software. Government users are subject to the Sun Microsystems, Inc. standard license agreement and applicable provisions of the FAR and its supplements.

This distribution may include materials developed by third parties.

Parts of the product may be derived from Berkeley BSD systems, licensed from the University of California. UNIX is a registered trademark in the U.S. and other countries, exclusively licensed through X/Open Company, Ltd.

Sun, Sun Microsystems, the Sun logo, the Solaris logo, the Java Coffee Cup logo, docs.sun.com, Java, and Solaris are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the U.S. and other countries. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. in the U.S. and other countries. Products bearing SPARC trademarks are based upon an architecture developed by Sun Microsystems, Inc.

The OPEN LOOK and Sun™ Graphical User Interface was developed by Sun Microsystems, Inc. for its users and licensees. Sun acknowledges the pioneering efforts of Xerox in researching and developing the concept of visual or graphical user interfaces for the computer industry. Sun holds a non-exclusive license from Xerox to the Xerox Graphical User Interface, which license also covers Sun's licensees who implement OPEN LOOK GUIs and otherwise comply with Sun's written license agreements.

Products covered by and information contained in this publication are controlled by U.S. Export Control laws and may be subject to the export or import laws in other countries. Nuclear, missile, chemical or biological weapons or nuclear maritime end uses or end users, whether direct or indirect, are strictly prohibited. Export or reexport to countries subject to U.S. embargo or to entities identified on U.S. export exclusion lists, including, but not limited to, the denied persons and specially designated nationals lists is strictly prohibited.

DOCUMENTATION IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ALL EXPRESS OR IMPLIED CONDITIONS, REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES, INCLUDING ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT, ARE DISCLAIMED, EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT THAT SUCH DISCLAIMERS ARE HELD TO BE LEGALLY INVALID.

Copyright ©2010 Sun Microsystems, Inc. All Rights Reserved 4150 Network Circle, Santa Clara, CA 95054 U.S.A. Tous droits réservés.

Sun Microsystems, Inc. détient les droits de propriété intellectuelle relatifs à la technologie incorporée dans le produit qui est décrit dans ce document. En particulier, et ce sans limitation, ces droits de propriété intellectuelle peuvent inclure un ou plusieurs brevets américains ou des applications de brevet en attente aux Etats-Unis et dans d'autres pays.

Cette distribution peut comprendre des composants développés par des tierces personnes.

Certains composants de ce produit peuvent être dérivés du logiciel Berkeley BSD, licenciés par l'Université de Californie. UNIX est une marque déposée aux Etats-Unis et dans d'autres pays; elle est licenciée exclusivement par X/Open Company, Ltd.

Sun, Sun Microsystems, le logo Sun, le logo Solaris, le logo Java Coffee Cup, docs.sun.com, Java et Solaris sont des marques de fabrique ou des marques déposées de Sun Microsystems, Inc. aux Etats-Unis et dans d'autres pays. Toutes les marques SPARC sont utilisées sous licence et sont des marques de fabrique ou des marques déposées de SPARC International, Inc. aux Etats-Unis et dans d'autres pays. Les produits portant les marques SPARC sont basés sur une architecture développée par Sun Microsystems, Inc.

L'interface d'utilisation graphique OPEN LOOK et Sun a été développée par Sun Microsystems, Inc. pour ses utilisateurs et licenciés. Sun reconnaît les efforts de pionniers de Xerox pour la recherche et le développement du concept des interfaces d'utilisation visuelle ou graphique pour l'industrie de l'informatique. Sun détient une licence non exclusive de Xerox sur l'interface d'utilisation graphique Xerox, cette licence couvrant également les licenciés de Sun qui mettent en place l'interface d'utilisation graphique OPEN LOOK et qui, en outre, se conforment aux licences écrites de Sun.

Les produits qui font l'objet de cette publication et les informations qu'il contient sont régis par la législation américaine en matière de contrôle des exportations et peuvent être soumis au droit d'autres pays dans le domaine des exportations et importations. Les utilisations finales, ou utilisateurs finaux, pour des armes nucléaires, des missiles, des armes chimiques ou biologiques ou pour le nucléaire maritime, directement ou indirectement, sont strictement interdites. Les exportations ou réexportations vers des pays sous embargo des Etats-Unis, ou vers des entités figurant sur les listes d'exclusion d'exportation américaines, y compris, mais de manière non exclusive, la liste de personnes qui font objet d'un ordre de ne pas participer, d'une façon directe ou indirecte, aux exportations des produits ou des services qui sont régis par la législation américaine en matière de contrôle des exportations et la liste de ressortissants spécifiquement désignés, sont rigoureusement interdites.

LA DOCUMENTATION EST FOURNIE "EN L'ETAT" ET TOUTES AUTRES CONDITIONS, DECLARATIONS ET GARANTIES EXPRESSES OU TACITES SONT FORMELLEMENT EXCLUES, DANS LA MESURE AUTORISEE PAR LA LOI APPLICABLE, Y COMPRIS NOTAMMENT TOUTE GARANTIE IMPLICITE RELATIVE A LA QUALITE MARCHANDE, A L'APTITUDE A UNE UTILISATION PARTICULIERE OU A L'ABSENCE DE CONTREFACON.

Contents

Preface	25
Introduction	29
Intro(1M)	30
System Administration Commands - Part 1	33
6to4relay(1M)	34
accept(1M)	37
acct(1M)	39
acctadm(1M)	42
acctcms(1M)	46
acctcon(1M)	48
acctmerg(1M)	50
acctprc(1M)	51
acctsh(1M)	53
adbgen(1M)	56
add_allocatable(1M)	59
addbadsec(1M)	61
add_drv(1M)	63
afbconfig(1M)	70
apache(1M)	78
arp(1M)	80
atohexlabel(1M)	83
audit(1M)	84
auditconfig(1M)	86
auditd(1M)	95
auditrecord(1M)	97

auditreduce(1M)	101
auditstat(1M)	109
audit_warn(1M)	111
automount(1M)	114
automountd(1M)	122
autopush(1M)	124
bart(1M)	126
boot(1M)	132
bootadm(1M)	151
bootconfchk(1M)	155
bsmconv(1M)	156
busstat(1M)	158
cachefs(1M)	163
cachefslog(1M)	164
cachefspack(1M)	166
cachefsstat(1M)	168
cachefswssize(1M)	170
captain(1M)	172
catman(1M)	173
cfgadm(1M)	177
cfgadm_ac(1M)	189
cfgadm_cardbus(1M)	193
cfgadm_fp(1M)	194
cfgadm_ib(1M)	202
cfgadm_pci(1M)	211
cfgadm_sata(1M)	216
cfgadm_sbd(1M)	225
cfgadm_scsi(1M)	239
cfgadm_sdcard(1M)	247
cfgadm_shp(1M)	251
cfgadm_sysctrl(1M)	261
cfgadm_usb(1M)	267
cfsadmin(1M)	278
chat(1M)	283
check-hostname(1M)	291
check-permissions(1M)	292

chk_encodings(1M)	293
chroot(1M)	295
cimworkshop(1M)	296
clear_locks(1M)	299
clinfo(1M)	300
clri(1M)	301
consadm(1m)	302
conv_lp(1M)	305
conv_lpd(1M)	306
coreadm(1M)	308
cpustat(1M)	315
cron(1M)	320
cryptoadm(1M)	322
cvcd(1M)	330
datadm(1M)	332
dcs(1M)	334
dd(1M)	336
devattr(1M)	342
devfree(1M)	343
devfsadm(1M)	344
device_remap(1M)	347
devinfo(1M)	349
devlinks(1M)	350
devnm(1M)	354
devprop(1M)	355
devreserv(1M)	357
df(1M)	359
dfmounts(1M)	364
dfmounts_nfs(1M)	366
dfshares(1M)	367
dfshares_nfs(1M)	368
df_ufs(1M)	370
dhcpage(1M)	371
dhcpcfg(1M)	380
dhcpcmgr(1M)	387
dhtadm(1M)	389

dig(1M)	395
directoryserver(1M)	403
disks(1M)	424
diskscan(1M)	428
dispadm(1M)	429
dladm(1M)	432
dlmgmtd(1M)	476
dmesg(1M)	477
dminfo(1M)	478
dns-sd(1M)	480
dnssec-dsfromkey(1M)	484
dnssec-keyfromlabel(1M)	486
dnssec-keygen(1M)	488
dnssec-makekeyset(1M)	491
dnssec-signkey(1M)	493
dnssec-signzone(1M)	495
domainname(1M)	499
drd(1M)	501
drvconfig(1M)	502
dsbitmap(1M)	504
dscfg(1M)	506
dscfgadm(1M)	509
dscfglockd(1M)	511
dsstat(1M)	512
dsvclockd(1M)	519
dtrace(1M)	520
dumpadm(1M)	527
editmap(1M)	532
edquota(1M)	534
eeprom(1M)	536
efdaemon(1M)	547
embedded_su(1M)	548
etrn(1M)	552
fbconfig(1M)	554
fbconf_xorg(1M)	557
fcinfo(1M)	566

fdetach(1M)	585
fdisk(1M)	586
ff(1M)	593
ffbconfig(1M)	595
ff_ufs(1M)	603
fiocompress(1M)	604
flar(1M)	605
flarcreate(1M)	613
flowadm(1M)	618
fmadm(1M)	627
fmd(1M)	632
fmdump(1M)	634
fmstat(1M)	640
fmthard(1M)	643
format(1M)	645
fpsd(1M)	649
fruadm(1M)	650
fsck(1M)	652
fsck_cacheufs(1M)	656
fsck_pcfs(1M)	657
fsck_udfs(1M)	659
fsck_ufs(1M)	662
fsdb(1M)	665
fsdb_udfs(1M)	666
fsdb_ufs(1M)	674
fsirand(1M)	684
fssnap(1M)	685
fssnap_ufs(1M)	687
fsstat(1M)	693
fstyp(1M)	700
ftpaddhost(1M)	702
ftpconfig(1M)	704
ftprestart(1M)	705
ftpshut(1M)	706
fuser(1M)	708
fwflash(1M)	711

fwtmp(1M)	716
getdev(1M)	717
getdevpolicy(1M)	719
getdgrp(1M)	720
getent(1M)	722
gettable(1M)	724
getty(1M)	725
getvol(1M)	727
gkadmin(1M)	729
groupadd(1M)	731
groupdel(1M)	733
groupmod(1M)	734
growfs(1M)	736
gsscred(1M)	739
gssd(1M)	741
hald(1M)	742
hal-device(1M)	744
hal-fdi-validate(1M)	745
hal-find(1M)	746
hal-get-property(1M)	747
halt(1M)	749
hextoalabel(1M)	750
host(1M)	751
hostconfig(1M)	754
hotplug(1M)	756
hotplugd(1M)	763
htable(1M)	765
ickey(1M)	766
id(1M)	767
idmap(1M)	770
idmapd(1M)	782
idsconfig(1M)	783
ifconfig(1M)	785
if_mpadm(1M)	810
ifparse(1M)	812
iiadm(1M)	814

iicpbmp(1M)	825
iicpshd(1M)	826
ikeadm(1M)	827
ikecert(1M)	836
ilbadm(1M)	849
ilbd(1M)	865
imqadmin(1M)	867
imqbrokerd(1M)	868
imqcmd(1M)	873
imqdbmgr(1M)	886
imqkeytool(1M)	889
imqobjmgr(1M)	891
imqusermgr(1M)	901
in.chargend(1M)	904
in.comsat(1M)	905
in.daytimed(1M)	906
in.dhcpd(1M)	907
in.discardd(1M)	913
in.echod(1M)	914
inetadm(1M)	915
inetconv(1M)	919
inetd(1M)	922
in.fingerd(1M)	931
infocmp(1M)	933
in.ftpd(1M)	936
in.iked(1M)	944
init(1M)	949
init.sma(1M)	955
init.wbem(1M)	956
inityp2l(1M)	959
in.lpd(1M)	961
in.mpathd(1M)	963
in.ndpd(1M)	967
in.rarpd(1M)	970
in.rdisc(1M)	972
in.rexecd(1M)	974

in.ripngd(1M)	976
in.rlogind(1M)	979
in.routed(1M)	983
in.rshd(1M)	989
in.rwhod(1M)	994
install(1M)	996
installboot(1M)	998
installer(1M)	1000
installf(1M)	1001
installgrub(1M)	1005
install_scripts(1M)	1007
install-solaris(1M)	1017
in.stdiscover(1M)	1019
in.stlisten(1M)	1020
in.talkd(1M)	1021
in.telnetd(1M)	1022
in.tftpd(1M)	1027
in.timed(1M)	1029
intrd(1M)	1030
intrstat(1M)	1031
in.uucpd(1M)	1034
iostat(1M)	1036
ipaddrsel(1M)	1043
ipf(1M)	1047
ipfs(1M)	1052
ipfstat(1M)	1054
ipmon(1M)	1057
ipmpstat(1M)	1060
ipnat(1M)	1067
ippool(1M)	1069
ipqosconf(1M)	1072
ipsecalgs(1M)	1083
ipseconf(1M)	1090
ipseckey(1M)	1113
iscsiadm(1M)	1128
iscsitadm(1M)	1141

iscsitgtd(1M)	1150
isns(1M)	1152
isnsadm(1M)	1155
itadm(1M)	1162
itu(1M)	1171
k5srvutil(1M)	1175
kadb(1M)	1177
kadmin(1M)	1179
kadmind(1M)	1193
kcfld(1M)	1197
kclient(1M)	1198
kdb5_ldap_util(1M)	1204
kdb5_util(1M)	1215
kdcmgr(1M)	1219
kernel(1M)	1223
keyserv(1M)	1227
killall(1M)	1229
kprop(1M)	1230
kpropd(1M)	1232
kproplog(1M)	1234
krb5kdc(1M)	1236
ksslcfg(1M)	1238
kstat(1M)	1243
ktkt_warnd(1M)	1247
labeld(1M)	1248
labelit(1M)	1249
labelit_hdfs(1M)	1251
labelit_udfs(1M)	1252
labelit_ufs(1M)	1254
latencytop(1M)	1255
ldapaddent(1M)	1258
ldap_cachemgr(1M)	1264
ldapclient(1M)	1266
ldmad(1M)	1278
link(1M)	1279
listdgrp(1M)	1281

listen(1M)	1282
llc2_loop(1M)	1284
lms(1M)	1286
localeadm(1M)	1287
localectr(1M)	1293
locator(1M)	1297
lockd(1M)	1299
lockfs(1M)	1301
lockstat(1M)	1305
lofiadm(1M)	1315
logadm(1M)	1323
logins(1M)	1332
lpadmin(1M)	1334
lpfilter(1M)	1349
lpforms(1M)	1355
lpget(1M)	1362
lpmove(1M)	1364
lpsched(1M)	1366
lpset(1M)	1368
lpshut(1M)	1371
lpssystem(1M)	1372
lpusers(1M)	1373
lu(1M)	1375
luactivate(1M)	1378
lucancel(1M)	1381
lucompare(1M)	1382
lucreate(1M)	1385
lucurr(1M)	1402
ludelete(1M)	1404
ludesc(1M)	1406
lufslst(1M)	1409
lumake(1M)	1411
lumount(1M)	1413
lurename(1M)	1416
lustatus(1M)	1418
luupgrade(1M)	1420

luxadm(1M)	1431
m64config(1M)	1443
System Administration Commands - Part 2	1449
mail.local(1M)	1450
makedbm(1M)	1452
makemap(1M)	1454
makeuuid(1M)	1456
masfcnv(1M)	1458
mdlogd(1M)	1464
mdmonitord(1M)	1466
mdnsd(1M)	1467
medstat(1M)	1469
metaclear(1M)	1471
metadb(1M)	1474
metadevadm(1M)	1480
metahs(1M)	1483
metaimport(1M)	1487
metainit(1M)	1489
metaoffline(1M)	1500
metaparam(1M)	1502
metarecover(1M)	1504
metarename(1M)	1507
metareplace(1M)	1511
metaroot(1M)	1514
metaset(1M)	1516
metassist(1M)	1525
metastat(1M)	1530
metasync(1M)	1536
metattach(1M)	1538
mib2mof(1M)	1543
mibiisa(1M)	1545
mkbootmedia(1M)	1569
mkdevalloc(1M)	1570
mkdevmaps(1M)	1571

mkfifo(1M)	1572
mkfile(1M)	1574
mkfs(1M)	1575
mkfs_pcfs(1M)	1577
mkfs_udfs(1M)	1581
mkfs_ufs(1M)	1583
mknod(1M)	1588
mkntfs(1M)	1589
mkpwdict(1M)	1592
mmsadm(1M)	1593
mmsclient(1M)	1617
mmsexplorer(1M)	1620
mmsinit(1M)	1623
modinfo(1M)	1625
modload(1M)	1627
modunload(1M)	1628
mofcomp(1M)	1629
mofreg(1M)	1632
monitor(1M)	1635
mount(1M)	1646
mountall(1M)	1651
mount_cachefs(1M)	1653
mountd(1M)	1657
mount_hsf(1M)	1658
mount_nfs(1M)	1661
mount_pcfs(1M)	1671
mount_smbfs(1M)	1673
mount_tmpfs(1M)	1679
mount_udfs(1M)	1681
mount_ufs(1M)	1683
mpathadm(1M)	1687
mpstat(1M)	1694
msgid(1M)	1697
mvdir(1M)	1698
named(1M)	1699
named-checkconf(1M)	1705

named-checkzone(1M)	1706
ncaconfd(1M)	1709
ncheck(1M)	1710
ncheck_ufs(1M)	1712
ndd(1M)	1713
ndmpadm(1M)	1715
ndmpd(1M)	1719
ndmpstat(1M)	1720
netserives(1M)	1723
netstat(1M)	1724
netstrategy(1M)	1733
newaliases(1M)	1734
newfs(1M)	1736
newkey(1M)	1741
nfs4cbd(1M)	1742
nfsd(1M)	1743
nfslogd(1M)	1745
nfsmapid(1M)	1748
nfsref(1M)	1750
nfsstat(1M)	1752
nlsadmin(1M)	1759
nscadm(1M)	1764
nscd(1M)	1765
nslookup(1M)	1767
nsupdate(1M)	1771
ntfscat(1M)	1775
ntfsclone(1M)	1777
ntfscluster(1M)	1782
ntfscmp(1M)	1784
ntfscp(1M)	1785
ntfsfix(1M)	1787
ntfsinfo(1M)	1788
ntfslabel(1M)	1790
ntfsls(1M)	1792
ntfsprogs(1M)	1794
ntfsresize(1M)	1796

ntfsundelete(1M)	1800
nwamd(1M)	1805
obpsym(1M)	1808
oplhpd(1M)	1810
parse_dynamic_clustertoc(1M)	1811
parted(1M)	1812
passmgmt(1M)	1815
patchadd(1M)	1818
patchrm(1M)	1833
pbind(1M)	1840
pfinstall(1M)	1843
pgxconfig(1M)	1847
picld(1M)	1854
ping(1M)	1856
pkg2du(1M)	1861
pkgadd(1M)	1863
pkgadm(1M)	1870
pkgask(1M)	1875
pkgchk(1M)	1877
pkgcond(1M)	1881
pkgrm(1M)	1883
plockstat(1M)	1886
pmadm(1M)	1888
pmconfig(1M)	1893
pntadm(1M)	1895
polkit-is-privileged(1M)	1902
pooladm(1M)	1903
poolbind(1M)	1906
poolcfg(1M)	1909
poolld(1M)	1914
poolstat(1M)	1916
ports(1M)	1920
powerd(1M)	1924
powertop(1M)	1925
ppdmgr(1M)	1928
pppd(1M)	1931

pppoec(1M)	1955
pppoed(1M)	1958
pppstats(1M)	1963
pprosetup(1M)	1966
pprosvc(1M)	1977
praudit(1M)	1981
printmgr(1M)	1983
print-service(1M)	1985
privatepw(1M)	1987
prodreg(1M)	1989
projadd(1M)	2009
projdel(1M)	2012
projmod(1M)	2014
prstat(1M)	2019
prtconf(1M)	2026
prtdiag(1M)	2029
prtdscp(1M)	2031
prtfriu(1M)	2033
prtpicl(1M)	2034
prvtoc(1M)	2035
psradm(1M)	2038
psrinfo(1M)	2041
psrset(1M)	2044
putdev(1M)	2049
putdgrp(1M)	2052
pwck(1M)	2054
pwconv(1M)	2055
quot(1M)	2057
quota(1M)	2059
quotacheck(1M)	2060
quotaon(1M)	2062
raidctl(1M)	2064
ramdiskadm(1M)	2074
rcapadm(1M)	2076
rcapd(1M)	2079
rctladm(1M)	2081

rdate(1M)	2083
reboot(1M)	2084
rem_drv(1M)	2088
remove_allocatable(1M)	2090
removef(1M)	2092
reparsed(1M)	2094
repquota(1M)	2095
re-preinstall(1M)	2096
rmmount(1M)	2099
rmt(1M)	2102
rmvolmgr(1M)	2104
rndc(1M)	2106
rndc-confgen(1M)	2108
roleadd(1M)	2110
roledel(1M)	2114
rolemod(1M)	2116
root_archive(1M)	2120
route(1M)	2122
routeadm(1M)	2130
rpcbind(1M)	2136
rpc.bootparamd(1M)	2139
rpcinfo(1M)	2140
rpc.mdcommd(1M)	2144
rpc.metad(1M)	2145
rpc.metamedd(1M)	2146
rpc.metamhd(1M)	2147
rpc.rexd(1M)	2148
rpc.rstatd(1M)	2150
rpc.rusersd(1M)	2151
rpc.rwalld(1M)	2152
rpc.smsserverd(1M)	2153
rpc.sprayd(1M)	2154
rpc.yppasswdd(1M)	2155
rpc.ypupdated(1M)	2158
rquotad(1M)	2159
rsh(1M)	2160

rtc(1M)	2162
rtquery(1M)	2163
runacct(1M)	2165
rwall(1M)	2168
sac(1M)	2169
sacadm(1M)	2172
saf(1M)	2176
sar(1M)	2196
sasinfo(1M)	2198
savecore(1M)	2209
sbdadm(1M)	2211
scadm(1M)	2214
sckmd(1M)	2223
scmadm(1M)	2224
sconadm(1M)	2226
sdpadm(1M)	2231
sendmail(1M)	2232
setuname(1M)	2259
sf880drd(1M)	2260
sftp-server(1M)	2261
share(1M)	2263
shareall(1M)	2265
sharectl(1M)	2266
sharemgr(1M)	2269
share_nfs(1M)	2282
showmount(1M)	2290
showrev(1M)	2291
shutdown(1M)	2293
slpd(1M)	2295
smattrpop(1M)	2297
smbadm(1M)	2301
smbd(1M)	2306
smbiod(1M)	2307
smbios(1M)	2308
smbstat(1M)	2310
smc(1M)	2311

smccompile(1M)	2317
smccconf(1M)	2321
smcregister(1M)	2328
smcron(1M)	2338
smcwebserver(1M)	2345
smdiskless(1M)	2348
smexec(1M)	2354
smgroup(1M)	2359
smlog(1M)	2364
smaillist(1M)	2368
smmultiuser(1M)	2373
smosservice(1M)	2378
smpatch(1M)	2384
smprofile(1M)	2399
smreg(1M)	2405
smrole(1M)	2413
smrsh(1M)	2422
smserialport(1M)	2423
smtnrhdb(1M)	2429
smtnrhftp(1M)	2434
smtnzonecfg(1M)	2439
smuser(1M)	2444
sndradm(1M)	2455
sndrd(1M)	2464
sndrsyncd(1M)	2466
snmpdx(1M)	2468
snmpXwbemd(1M)	2471
snoop(1M)	2474
soconfig(1M)	2485
soladdapp(1M)	2487
soladelapp(1M)	2488
solstice(1M)	2489
sppptun(1M)	2490
spray(1M)	2493
sshd(1M)	2494
ssh-keysign(1M)	2509

statd(1M)	2511
stclient(1M)	2513
stmfadm(1M)	2518
stmsboot(1M)	2528
strace(1M)	2533
strclean(1M)	2535
strerr(1M)	2536
sttydefs(1M)	2538
su(1M)	2540
sulogin(1M)	2543
suninstall(1M)	2544
SUNWgfb_config(1M)	2545
SUNWifb_config(1M)	2554
SUNWjfb_config(1M)	2565
SUNWkfb_config(1M)	2574
SUNWnfb_config(1M)	2584
SUNWpfb_config(1M)	2591
SUNWzulu_config(1M)	2598
svadm(1M)	2614
svcadm(1M)	2616
svccfg(1M)	2623
svc.configd(1M)	2632
svc.ipfd(1M)	2633
svc.startd(1M)	2638
swap(1M)	2644
sync(1M)	2647
syncinit(1M)	2648
syncloop(1M)	2651
syncstat(1M)	2654
sysdef(1M)	2657
syseventadm(1M)	2659
syseventconfd(1M)	2664
syseventd(1M)	2665
sysidconfig(1M)	2667
sysidtool(1M)	2670
syslogd(1M)	2673

sys-unconfig(1M)	2677
tapes(1M)	2679
tcxconfig(1M)	2683
th_define(1M)	2684
th_manage(1M)	2695
tic(1M)	2697
tnchkdb(1M)	2698
tnctl(1M)	2700
tnd(1M)	2703
tninfo(1M)	2705
tpmadm(1M)	2707
traceroute(1M)	2710
trapstat(1M)	2717
ttyadm(1M)	2728
System Administration Commands - Part 3	2731
ttymon(1M)	2732
tunefs(1M)	2736
txzonemgr(1M)	2738
tzreload(1M)	2739
tzselect(1M)	2740
uadmin(1M)	2741
ucodeadm(1M)	2742
ufsdump(1M)	2744
ufsrestore(1M)	2751
unshare(1M)	2758
unshare_nfs(1M)	2759
update_drv(1M)	2760
updatehome(1M)	2764
updatemanager(1M)	2766
updatemedia(1M)	2767
useradd(1M)	2769
userdel(1M)	2774
usermod(1M)	2776
utmpd(1M)	2781

uucheck(1M)	2783
uucico(1M)	2784
uucleanup(1M)	2786
uusched(1M)	2788
Uutry(1M)	2789
uuxqt(1M)	2790
vdiskadm(1M)	2791
virsh(1M)	2801
virt-clone(1M)	2811
virt-convert(1M)	2814
virt-install(1M)	2817
vmstat(1M)	2829
vntsd(1M)	2833
volcopy(1M)	2837
volcopy_ufs(1M)	2839
vrrpadm(1M)	2840
vrrpd(1M)	2845
vscanadm(1M)	2846
vscand(1M)	2852
wall(1M)	2854
wanboot_keygen(1M)	2856
wanboot_keymgmt(1M)	2858
wanboot_p12split(1M)	2859
wanbootutil(1M)	2860
wbemadmin(1M)	2861
wbemconfig(1M)	2864
wbemlogviewer(1M)	2865
wcadmin(1M)	2867
whodo(1M)	2872
wificonfig(1M)	2874
wpad(1M)	2888
wracct(1M)	2890
wusbadm(1M)	2892
xenconsole(1M)	2898
xend(1M)	2899
xenstored(1M)	2902

xentop(1M)	2903
xm(1M)	2905
ypbind(1M)	2918
ypinit(1M)	2920
ypmake(1M)	2922
ypmap2src(1M)	2924
yppoll(1M)	2926
yppush(1M)	2927
ypserv(1M)	2929
ypset(1M)	2933
ypstart(1M)	2935
ypxfr(1M)	2936
zdb(1M)	2938
zdump(1M)	2939
zfs(1M)	2940
zic(1M)	2977
zoneadm(1M)	2982
zoneadmd(1M)	2989
zonecfg(1M)	2990
zpool(1M)	3010
zstreamdump(1M)	3031
zuludaemon(1M)	3032

Preface

Both novice users and those familiar with the SunOS operating system can use online man pages to obtain information about the system and its features. A man page is intended to answer concisely the question “What does it do?” The man pages in general comprise a reference manual. They are not intended to be a tutorial.

Overview

The following contains a brief description of each man page section and the information it references:

- Section 1 describes, in alphabetical order, commands available with the operating system.
- Section 1M describes, in alphabetical order, commands that are used chiefly for system maintenance and administration purposes.
- Section 2 describes all of the system calls. Most of these calls have one or more error returns. An error condition is indicated by an otherwise impossible returned value.
- Section 3 describes functions found in various libraries, other than those functions that directly invoke UNIX system primitives, which are described in Section 2.
- Section 4 outlines the formats of various files. The C structure declarations for the file formats are given where applicable.
- Section 5 contains miscellaneous documentation such as character-set tables.
- Section 7 describes various special files that refer to specific hardware peripherals and device drivers. STREAMS software drivers, modules and the STREAMS-generic set of system calls are also described.
- Section 9E describes the DDI (Device Driver Interface)/DKI (Driver/Kernel Interface), DDI-only, and DKI-only entry-point routines a developer can include in a device driver.
- Section 9F describes the kernel functions available for use by device drivers.
- Section 9S describes the data structures used by drivers to share information between the driver and the kernel.

Below is a generic format for man pages. The man pages of each manual section generally follow this order, but include only needed headings. For example, if there are no bugs to report,

there is no BUGS section. See the `intro` pages for more information and detail about each section, and `man(1)` for more information about man pages in general.

NAME	This section gives the names of the commands or functions documented, followed by a brief description of what they do.
SYNOPSIS	<p>This section shows the syntax of commands or functions. When a command or file does not exist in the standard path, its full path name is shown. Options and arguments are alphabetized, with single letter arguments first, and options with arguments next, unless a different argument order is required.</p> <p>The following special characters are used in this section:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">[] Brackets. The option or argument enclosed in these brackets is optional. If the brackets are omitted, the argument must be specified.. . . Ellipses. Several values can be provided for the previous argument, or the previous argument can be specified multiple times, for example, "filename . . .". Separator. Only one of the arguments separated by this character can be specified at a time.{ } Braces. The options and/or arguments enclosed within braces are interdependent, such that everything enclosed must be treated as a unit.
PROTOCOL	This section occurs only in subsection 3R to indicate the protocol description file.
DESCRIPTION	This section defines the functionality and behavior of the service. Thus it describes concisely what the command does. It does not discuss OPTIONS or cite EXAMPLES. Interactive commands, subcommands, requests, macros, and functions are described under USAGE.
IOCTL	This section appears on pages in Section 7 only. Only the device class that supplies appropriate parameters to the <code>ioctl(2)</code> system call is called <code>ioctl</code> and generates its own heading. <code>ioctl</code> calls for a specific device are listed alphabetically (on the man page for that specific device).

	<p><code>ioctl</code> calls are used for a particular class of devices all of which have an <code>io</code> ending, such as <code>mtio(7I)</code>.</p>
OPTIONS	<p>This section lists the command options with a concise summary of what each option does. The options are listed literally and in the order they appear in the SYNOPSIS section. Possible arguments to options are discussed under the option, and where appropriate, default values are supplied.</p>
OPERANDS	<p>This section lists the command operands and describes how they affect the actions of the command.</p>
OUTPUT	<p>This section describes the output – standard output, standard error, or output files – generated by the command.</p>
RETURN VALUES	<p>If the man page documents functions that return values, this section lists these values and describes the conditions under which they are returned. If a function can return only constant values, such as 0 or -1, these values are listed in tagged paragraphs. Otherwise, a single paragraph describes the return values of each function. Functions declared void do not return values, so they are not discussed in RETURN VALUES.</p>
ERRORS	<p>On failure, most functions place an error code in the global variable <code>errno</code> indicating why they failed. This section lists alphabetically all error codes a function can generate and describes the conditions that cause each error. When more than one condition can cause the same error, each condition is described in a separate paragraph under the error code.</p>
USAGE	<p>This section lists special rules, features, and commands that require in-depth explanations. The subsections listed here are used to explain built-in functionality:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">CommandsModifiersVariablesExpressionsInput Grammar
EXAMPLES	<p>This section provides examples of usage or of how to use a command or function. Wherever possible a complete</p>

example including command-line entry and machine response is shown. Whenever an example is given, the prompt is shown as `example%`, or if the user must be superuser, `example#`. Examples are followed by explanations, variable substitution rules, or returned values. Most examples illustrate concepts from the SYNOPSIS, DESCRIPTION, OPTIONS, and USAGE sections.

ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES	This section lists any environment variables that the command or function affects, followed by a brief description of the effect.
EXIT STATUS	This section lists the values the command returns to the calling program or shell and the conditions that cause these values to be returned. Usually, zero is returned for successful completion, and values other than zero for various error conditions.
FILES	This section lists all file names referred to by the man page, files of interest, and files created or required by commands. Each is followed by a descriptive summary or explanation.
ATTRIBUTES	This section lists characteristics of commands, utilities, and device drivers by defining the attribute type and its corresponding value. See attributes(5) for more information.
SEE ALSO	This section lists references to other man pages, in-house documentation, and outside publications.
DIAGNOSTICS	This section lists diagnostic messages with a brief explanation of the condition causing the error.
WARNINGS	This section lists warnings about special conditions which could seriously affect your working conditions. This is not a list of diagnostics.
NOTES	This section lists additional information that does not belong anywhere else on the page. It takes the form of an aside to the user, covering points of special interest. Critical information is never covered here.
BUGS	This section describes known bugs and, wherever possible, suggests workarounds.

R E F E R E N C E

Introduction

Name Intro – introduction to maintenance commands and application programs

Description This section describes, in alphabetical order, commands that are used chiefly for system maintenance and administration purposes.

Because of command restructuring for the Virtual File System architecture, there are several instances of multiple manual pages that begin with the same name. For example, the mount, pages – [mount\(1M\)](#), [mount_cachefs\(1M\)](#), [mount_hsf\(1M\)](#), [mount_nfs\(1M\)](#), [mount_tmpfs\(1M\)](#), and [mount_ufs\(1M\)](#). In each such case the first of the multiple pages describes the syntax and options of the generic command, that is, those options applicable to all FSTypes (file system types). The succeeding pages describe the functionality of the FSType-specific modules of the command. These pages list the command followed by an underscore (`_`) and the FSType to which they pertain. Note that the administrator should not attempt to call these modules directly. The generic command provides a common interface to all of them. Thus the FSType-specific manual pages should not be viewed as describing distinct commands, but rather as detailing those aspects of a command that are specific to a particular FSType.

Command Syntax Unless otherwise noted, commands described in this section accept options and other arguments according to the following syntax:

name [*option(s)*] [*cmdarg(s)*]

where:

name The name of an executable file.

option – *noargletter(s)* or,
 – *argletter< >optarg*

where `< >` is optional white space.

noargletter A single letter representing an option without an argument.

argletter A single letter representing an option requiring an argument.

optarg Argument (character string) satisfying preceding *argletter*.

cmdarg Pathname (or other command argument) *not* beginning with – or, – by itself indicating the standard input.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for a discussion of the attributes listed in this section.

Acknowledgments Sun Microsystems, Inc. gratefully acknowledges The Open Group for permission to reproduce portions of its copyrighted documentation. Original documentation from The Open Group can be obtained online at <http://www.opengroup.org/bookstore/>.

The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers and The Open Group, have given us permission to reprint portions of their documentation.

In the following statement, the phrase “this text” refers to portions of the system documentation.

Portions of this text are reprinted and reproduced in electronic form in the SunOS Reference Manual, from IEEE Std 1003.1, 2004 Edition, Standard for Information Technology -- Portable Operating System Interface (POSIX), The Open Group Base Specifications Issue 6, Copyright (C) 2001-2004 by the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc and The Open Group. In the event of any discrepancy between these versions and the original IEEE and The Open Group Standard, the original IEEE and The Open Group Standard is the referee document. The original Standard can be obtained online at <http://www.opengroup.org/unix/online.html>.

This notice shall appear on any product containing this material.

See Also [getopt\(1\)](#), [getopt\(3C\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Diagnostics Upon termination, each command returns 0 for normal termination and non-zero to indicate troubles such as erroneous parameters, bad or inaccessible data, or other inability to cope with the task at hand. It is called variously “exit code,” “exit status,” or “return code,” and is described only where special conventions are involved.

Notes Unfortunately, not all commands adhere to the standard syntax.

REFERENCE

System Administration Commands - Part 1

Name 6to4relay – administer configuration for 6to4 relay router communication

Synopsis /usr/sbin/6to4relay
/usr/sbin/6to4relay [-e] [-a *addr*]
/usr/sbin/6to4relay [-d]
/usr/sbin/6to4relay [-h]

Description The `6to4relay` command is used to configure 6to4 relay router communication. Relay router communication support is enabled by setting the value of a variable that stores an IPv4 address within the `tun` module. This variable is global to all tunnels and defines the policy for communication with relay routers. By default, the address is set to `INADDR_ANY (0.0.0.0)`, and the kernel interprets the value to indicate that support for relay router communication is disabled. Otherwise, support is enabled, and the specified address is used as the IPv4 destination address when packets destined for native IPv6 (non-6to4) hosts are sent through the 6to4 tunnel interface. The `6to4relay` command uses a project private `ioctl` to set the variable.

`6to4relay` used without any options outputs the current, in-kernel, configuration status. Use the `-a` option to send packets to a specific relay router's unicast address instead of the default anycast address. The address specified with the `-a` option does not specify the policy for receiving traffic from relay routers. The source relay router on a received packet is non-deterministic, since a different relay router may be chosen for each sending native IPv6 end-point.

Configuration changes made by using the `6to4relay` are not persistent across reboot. The changes will persist in the kernel only until you take the tunnel down

Options The `6to4relay` command supports the following options:

`-a addr` Use the specified address, *addr*.
`-e` Enable support for relay router. Use `-a addr` if it is specified. Otherwise, use the default anycast address, 192.88.99.1.
`-d` Disable support for the relay router.
`-h` Help

Operands The following operands are supported:

addr A specific relay router's unicast address. *addr* must be specified as a dotted decimal representation of an IPv4 address. Otherwise, an error will occur, and the command will fail.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Printing the In-Kernel Configuration Status

Use `/usr/sbin/6to4relay` without any options to print the in-kernel configuration status.

example# **/usr/sbin/6to4relay**

EXAMPLE 1 Printing the In-Kernel Configuration Status (Continued)

If 6to4 relay router communication is disabled, the administrator will see the following message:

```
6to4relay: 6to4 Relay Router communication support is disabled.
```

If 6to4 router communication is enabled, the user will see this message:

```
6to4relay: 6to4 Relay Router communication support is enabled.
IPv4 destination address of Relay Router = 192.88.99.1
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

```
0    Successful completion.
>0  An error occurred.
```

Files /usr/sbin/6to4relay The default installation root

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [ifconfig\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Huitema, C. *RFC 3068, An Anycast Prefix for 6to4 Relay Routers*. Network Working Group. June, 2001.

Carpenter, B. and Moore, K. *RFC 3056, Connection of IPv6 Domains via IPv4 Clouds*. Network Working Group. February, 2001.

Diagnostics The 6to4relay reports the following messages:

```
6to4relay: input (0.0.0.0) is not a valid IPv4 unicast address
```

Example: The following example provides an incorrect unicast address.

```
example# 6to4relay -e -a 0.0.0.0
```

Description: The address specified with the -a option must be a valid unicast address.

```
6to4relay: option requires an argument -a
```

usage:

```
6to4relay
```

```
6to4relay -e [-a <addr>]
```

```
6to4relay -d
```

```
6to4relay -h
```

Example: The following example does not include an argument for the `-a` option.

```
example# 6to4relay -e -a
```

Description: The `-a` option requires an argument.

usage:

```
6to4relay
```

```
6to4relay -e [-a <addr>]
```

```
6to4relay -d
```

```
6to4relay -h
```

Example: The following example specifies options that are not permitted.

```
example# 6to4relay -e -d
```

Description: The options specified are not permitted. A usage message is output to the screen.

usage:

```
6to4relay
```

```
6to4relay -e [-a <addr>]
```

```
6to4relay -d
```

```
6to4relay -h
```

Example: The following example specifies the `-a` option without specifying the `-e` option.

```
example# 6to4relay -a 1.2.3.4
```

Description: The `-e` option is required in conjunction with the `-a` option. A usage message is output to the screen.

```
6to4relay: ioctl (I_STR) : Invalid argument
```

Example: The following example specifies an invalid address.

```
example# 6to4relay -e -a 239.255.255.255
```

Description: The address specified with the `-a` option must not be a class d *addr*.

Name accept, reject – accept or reject print requests

Synopsis accept *destination* . . .
 reject [-r *reason*] *destination* . . .

Description accept allows the queueing of print requests for the named destinations.

reject prevents queueing of print requests for the named destinations.

Use `lpstat -a` to check if destinations are accepting or rejecting print requests.

Generally, accept and reject are run on the print server to control local print queues. Under some configurations, accept and reject are run on client systems when IPP is being used to communicate between client and server.

Options The following options are supported for reject:

-r *reason* Assigns a reason for rejection of print requests for *destination*.

reason is reported by `lpstat -a`. By default, *reason* is unknown reason for existing destinations, and new printer for destinations added to the system but not yet accepting requests. Enclose *reason* in quotes if it contains blanks.

Operands The following operands are supported:

destination The name of the destination accepting or rejecting print requests. Destination specifies the name of a printer or class of printers (see [lpadmin\(1M\)](#)). Specify *destination* using atomic name or URI-style (scheme://endpoint) names. See [printers.conf\(4\)](#) for information regarding the naming conventions for destinations.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

non-zero An error occurred.

Files

/etc/printers.conf	System printer configuration database
\$HOME/.printers	User-configurable printer database
ou=printers	LDAP version of /etc/printers.conf
printers.conf.byname	NIS version of /etc/printers.conf

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWlp-cmds

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
CSI	Enabled. See NOTES.
Interface Stability	Obsolete

See Also [enable\(1\)](#), [lp\(1\)](#), [lpstat\(1\)](#), [lpadmin\(1M\)](#), [lpsched\(1M\)](#), [printers.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes `accept` and `reject` affect only queueing on the print server's spooling system. Requests made from a client system remain queued in the client system's queueing mechanism until they are cancelled or accepted by the print server's spooling system.

`accept` is CSI-enabled except for the *destination* name.

When IPP is in use, the user is prompted for a passphrase if the remote print service is configured to require authentication.

Name acct, acctdisk, acctdusg, accton, acctwtmp, closewtmp, utmp2wtmp – overview of accounting and miscellaneous accounting commands

Synopsis /usr/lib/acct/acctdisk
 /usr/lib/acct/acctdusg [-u *filename*] [-p *filename*]
 /usr/lib/acct/accton [*filename*]
 /usr/lib/acct/acctwtmp *reason filename*
 /usr/lib/acct/closewtmp
 /usr/lib/acct/utmp2wtmp

Description Accounting software is structured as a set of tools (consisting of both C programs and shell procedures) that can be used to build accounting systems. [acctsh\(1M\)](#) describes the set of shell procedures built on top of the C programs.

Connect time accounting is handled by various programs that write records into `/var/adm/wtmpx`, as described in [utmpx\(4\)](#). The programs described in [acctcon\(1M\)](#) convert this file into session and charging records, which are then summarized by [acctmerg\(1M\)](#).

Process accounting is performed by the system kernel. Upon termination of a process, one record per process is written to a file (normally `/var/adm/pacct`). The programs in [acctprc\(1M\)](#) summarize this data for charging purposes; [acctcms\(1M\)](#) is used to summarize command usage. Current process data may be examined using [acctcom\(1\)](#).

Process accounting records and connect time accounting records (or any accounting records in the `tacct` format described in [acct.h\(3HEAD\)](#)) can be merged and summarized into total accounting records by `acctmerg` (see `tacct` format in [acct.h\(3HEAD\)](#)). `prtacct` (see [acctsh\(1M\)](#)) is used to format any or all accounting records.

`acctdisk` reads lines that contain user ID, login name, and number of disk blocks and converts them to total accounting records that can be merged with other accounting records. `acctdisk` returns an error if the input file is corrupt or improperly formatted.

`acctdusg` reads its standard input (usually from `find -print`) and computes disk resource consumption (including indirect blocks) by login.

`accton` without arguments turns process accounting off. If *filename* is given, it must be the name of an existing file, to which the kernel appends process accounting records (see [acct\(2\)](#) and [acct.h\(3HEAD\)](#)).

`acctwtmp` writes a [utmpx\(4\)](#) record to *filename*. The record contains the current time and a string of characters that describe the *reason*. A record type of `ACCOUNTING` is assigned (see [utmpx\(4\)](#)) *reason* must be a string of 11 or fewer characters, numbers, \$, or spaces. For example, the following are suggestions for use in reboot and shutdown procedures, respectively:

```
acctwtmp "acctg on" /var/adm/wtmpx
acctwtmp "acctg off" /var/adm/wtmpx
```

For each user currently logged on, `closewtmp` puts a false `DEAD_PROCESS` record in the `/var/adm/wtmpx` file. `runacct` (see [runacct\(1M\)](#)) uses this false `DEAD_PROCESS` record so that the connect accounting procedures can track the time used by users logged on before `runacct` was invoked.

For each user currently logged on, `runacct` uses `utmp2wtmp` to create an entry in the file `/var/adm/wtmpx`, created by `runacct`. Entries in `/var/adm/wtmpx` enable subsequent invocations of `runacct` to account for connect times of users currently logged in.

Options The following options are supported:

- u *filename* Places in *filename* records consisting of those filenames for which `acctdusg` charges no one (a potential source for finding users trying to avoid disk charges).
- p *filename* Specifies a password file, *filename*. This option is not needed if the password file is `/etc/passwd`.

Environment Variables If any of the `LC_*` variables (`LC_TYPE`, `LC_MESSAGES`, `LC_TIME`, `LC_COLLATE`, `LC_NUMERIC`, and `LC_MONETARY`) (see [environ\(5\)](#)) are not set in the environment, the operational behavior of `acct` for each corresponding locale category is determined by the value of the `LANG` environment variable. If `LC_ALL` is set, its contents are used to override both the `LANG` and the other `LC_*` variables. If none of the above variables are set in the environment, the "C" (U.S. style) locale determines how `acct` behaves.

`LC_CTYPE` Determines how `acct` handles characters. When `LC_CTYPE` is set to a valid value, `acct` can display and handle text and filenames containing valid characters for that locale. `acct` can display and handle Extended Unix Code (EUC) characters where any character can be 1, 2, or 3 bytes wide. `acct` can also handle EUC characters of 1, 2, or more column widths. In the "C" locale, only characters from ISO 8859-1 are valid.

`LC_TIME` Determines how `acct` handles date and time formats. In the "C" locale, date and time handling follows the U.S. rules.

- Files**
- `/etc/passwd` Used for login name to user ID conversions.
 - `/usr/lib/acct` Holds all accounting commands listed in sub-class 1M of this manual.
 - `/var/adm/pacct` Current process accounting file.
 - `/var/adm/wtmpx` History of user access and administration information..

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWaccu

See Also acctcom(1), acctcms(1M), acctcon(1M), acctmerg(1M), acctprc(1M), acctsh(1M), fwtmp(1M), runacct(1M), acct(2), acct.h(3HEAD), passwd(4), utmpx(4), attributes(5), environ(5)

System Administration Guide: Basic Administration

Name acctadm – configure extended accounting facility

Synopsis /usr/sbin/acctadm [-DEsrux] [-d *resource_list*]
[-e *resource_list*] [-f *filename*]
[task | process | flow | net]

Description acctadm configures various attributes of the extended accounting facility. Without arguments, acctadm displays the current status of the extended accounting facility.

Options The following options are supported:

-d *resource_list*

Disable reporting of resource usage for resource. Specify *resource_list* as a comma-separated list of resources or resource groups.

This option requires an operand. See OPERANDS.

-D

Disable accounting of the given operand type without closing the accounting file. This option can be used to temporarily stop writing accounting records to the accounting file without closing it. To close the file use the -x option. See -x.

-e *resource_list*

Enable reporting of resource usage for resource. Specify *resource_list* as a comma-separated list of resources or resource groups.

This option requires an operand. See OPERANDS.

-E

Enable accounting of the given operand type without sending the accounting output to a file. This option requires an operand. See OPERANDS.

-f *filename*

Send the accounting output for the given operand type to *filename*. If *filename* exists, its contents must be of the given accounting type.

This option requires an operand. See OPERANDS.

-r

Display available resource groups.

When this option is used with an operand, it displays resource groups available for a given accounting type. When no operand is specified, this option displays resource groups for all available accounting types. See OPERANDS.

-s

Start method for the `smf(5)` instance. This option is used to restore the extended accounting configuration at boot.

-x

Deactivate accounting of the given operand type. This option also closes the accounting file for the given accounting type if it is currently open.

This option requires an operand. See OPERANDS.

Operands The -d, -D, -e, -E, -f, and -x options require an operand.

The following operands are supported:

process

Run `acctadm` on the process accounting components of the extended accounting facility.

task

Run `acctadm` on the task accounting components of the extended accounting facility.

flow

Run `acctadm` on the IPQoS accounting components of the extended accounting facility.

net

Run `acctadm` on links and flows administered by `dladm(1M)` and `flowadm(1M)`, respectively. Basic network accounting relates only to links, while extended network accounting includes both link and flow accounting.

The optional final parameter to `acctadm` represents whether the command should act on the process, system task, IPQoS, or network accounting components of the extended accounting facility.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Displaying the Current Status

The following command displays the current status. In this example, system task accounting is active and tracking only CPU resources. Process and flow accounting are not active.

```
$ acctadm
    Task accounting: active
    Task accounting file: /var/adm/exacct/task
    Tracked task resources: extended
    Untracked task resources: host
    Process accounting: inactive
    Process accounting file: none
    Tracked process resources: none
    Untracked process resources: extended,host
    Flow accounting: inactive
    Flow accounting file: none
    Tracked flow resources: none
    Untracked flow resources: extended
    Net accounting: inactive
    Net accounting file: none
    Tracked Net resources: none
    Untracked Net resources: extended
```

EXAMPLE 2 Activating Basic Process Accounting

The following command activates basic process accounting:

```
$ acctadm -e basic -f /var/adm/exacct/proc process
```

EXAMPLE 3 Displaying Available Resource Groups

The following command displays available resource groups:

```
$ acctadm -r
process:
extended pid,uid,gid,cpu,time,command,TTY,projid, \
taskid,ancpid,wait-status,zone,flag,memory,mstate
basic pid,uid,gid,cpu,time,command,TTY,flag
task:
extended taskid,projid,cpu,time,host,mstate,anctaskid,zone
basic taskid,projid,cpu,time
flow:
extended saddr,daddr,sport,dport,proto,dsfield,nbytes,npkts, \
action,ctime,lseen,projid,uid
basic saddr,daddr,sport,dport,proto,nbytes,npkts,action
net:
extended name,devname,edest,vlan_tpid,vlan_tci,sap,cpuid, \
priority,bwlimit,curtime,ibytes,obytes,ipkts,opks,ierrpkts \
oerrpkts,saddr,daddr,sport,dport,protocol,dsfield
basic name,devname,edest,vlan_tpid,vlan_tci,sap,cpuid, \
priority,bwlimit,curtime,ibytes,obytes,ipkts,opks,ierrpkts \
oerrpkts
```

In the output above, the lines beginning with `extended` are shown with a backslash character. In actual `acctadm` output, these lines are displayed as unbroken, long lines.

EXAMPLE 4 Displaying Resource Groups for Task Accounting

The following command displays resource groups for task accounting:

```
$ acctadm -r task
extended taskid,projid,cpu,time,host,mstate,anctaskid,zone
basic taskid,projid,cpu,time
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0
Successful completion.

The modifications to the current configuration were valid and made successfully.

- 1
An error occurred.
A fatal error occurred either in obtaining or modifying the accounting configuration.
- 2
Invalid command line options were specified.
- 95
A fatal, non-configuration error occurred during the start of the `smf(5)` service instance.
- 96
A fatal configuration error occurred during the start of the `smf(5)` service instance.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Committed

See Also [dladm\(1M\)](#), [flowadm\(1M\)](#), [acct\(2\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [ipqos\(7ipp\)](#)

Notes Both extended accounting and regular accounting can be active.

Available resources can vary from system to system, and from platform to platform.

Extended accounting configuration is stored in the service management facility ([smf\(5\)](#)) repository. The configuration is restored at boot by a transient service instance, one per accounting type:

```

svc:/system/extended-accounting:flow      Flow accounting
svc:/system/extended-accounting:process  Process accounting
svc:/system/extended-accounting:task     Task accounting
svc:/system/extended-accounting:net      Network accounting

```

The instances are enabled or disabled by `acctadm` as needed. Configuration changes are made using `acctadm`; service properties should not be modified directly using [svccfg\(1M\)](#).

Users can manage extended accounting (start accounting, stop accounting, change accounting configuration parameters) if they have the appropriate RBAC Rights profile for the accounting type to be managed:

- Extended Accounting Flow Management
- Extended Accounting Process Management
- Extended Accounting Task Management
- Extended Accounting Network Management

The preceding profiles are for, respectively, flow accounting, process accounting, task accounting, and network accounting.

Name acctcms – command summary from process accounting records

Synopsis /usr/lib/acct/acctcms [-a [-o] [-p]] [-c] [-j] [-n] [-s]
[-t] *filename...*

Description acctcms reads one or more *filenames*, normally in the form described in [acct.h\(3HEAD\)](#). It adds all records for processes that executed identically named commands, sorts them, and writes them to the standard output, normally using an internal summary format.

Options -a Print output in ASCII rather than in the internal summary format. The output includes command name, number of times executed, total kcore-minutes, total CPU minutes, total real minutes, mean size (in K), mean CPU minutes per invocation, "hog factor," characters transferred, and blocks read and written, as in [acctcom\(1\)](#). Output is normally sorted by total kcore-minutes.

Use the following options only with the -a option:

-o Output a (non-prime) offshift-time-only command summary.

-p Output a prime-time-only command summary.

When -o and -p are used together, a combination prime-time and non-prime-time report is produced. All the output summaries are total usage except number of times executed, CPU minutes, and real minutes, which are split into prime and non-prime.

-c Sort by total CPU time, rather than total kcore-minutes.

-j Combine all commands invoked only once under "***other".

-n Sort by number of command invocations.

-s Any file names encountered hereafter are already in internal summary format.

-t Process all records as total accounting records. The default internal summary format splits each field into prime and non-prime-time parts. This option combines the prime and non-prime time parts into a single field that is the total of both, and provides upward compatibility with old style acctcms internal summary format records.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Using the acctcms command.

A typical sequence for performing daily command accounting and for maintaining a running total is:

```
example% acctcms filename ... > today
example% cp total previoustotal
example% acctcms -s today previoustotal > total
example% acctcms -a -s today
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWaccu

See Also [acctcom\(1\)](#), [acct\(1M\)](#), [acctcon\(1M\)](#), [acctmerg\(1M\)](#), [acctprc\(1M\)](#), [acctsh\(1M\)](#), [fwtmp\(1M\)](#), [runacct\(1M\)](#), [acct\(2\)](#), [acct.h\(3HEAD\)](#), [utmpx\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes Unpredictable output results if `-t` is used on new style internal summary format files, or if it is not used with old style internal summary format files.

Name acctcon, acctcon1, acctcon2 – connect-time accounting

Synopsis /usr/lib/acct/acctcon [-l *lineuse*] [-o *reboot*]
 /usr/lib/acct/acctcon1 [-p] [-t] [-l *lineuse*] [-o *reboot*]
 /usr/lib/acct/acctcon2

Description acctcon converts a sequence of login/logoff records to total accounting records (see the tacct format in [acct.h\(3HEAD\)](#)). The login/logoff records are read from standard input. The file /var/adm/wtmpx is usually the source of the login/logoff records; however, because it might contain corrupted records or system date changes, it should first be fixed using `wtmpfix`. The fixed version of file /var/adm/wtmpx can then be redirected to acctcon. The tacct records are written to standard output.

acctcon is a combination of the programs acctcon1 and acctcon2. acctcon1 converts login/logoff records, taken from the fixed /var/adm/wtmpx file, to ASCII output. acctcon2 reads the ASCII records produced by acctcon1 and converts them to tacct records. acctcon1 can be used with the -l and -o options, described below, as well as with the -p and -t options.

Options

- p Print input only, showing line name, login name, and time (in both numeric and date/time formats).
- t acctcon1 maintains a list of lines on which users are logged in. When it reaches the end of its input, it emits a session record for each line that still appears to be active. It normally assumes that its input is a current file, so that it uses the current time as the ending time for each session still in progress. The -t flag causes it to use, instead, the last time found in its input, thus assuring reasonable and repeatable numbers for non-current files.
- l *lineuse* *lineuse* is created to contain a summary of line usage showing line name, number of minutes used, percentage of total elapsed time used, number of sessions charged, number of logins, and number of logoffs. This file helps track line usage, identify bad lines, and find software and hardware oddities. Hangup, termination of [login\(1\)](#) and termination of the login shell each generate logoff records, so that the number of logoffs is often three to four times the number of sessions. See [init\(1M\)](#) and [utmpx\(4\)](#).
- o *reboot* *reboot* is filled with an overall record for the accounting period, giving starting time, ending time, number of reboots, and number of date changes.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Using the acctcon command.

The acctcon command is typically used as follows:

```
example% acctcon -l lineuse -o reboots < tmpwtmp > ctacct
```

The acctcon1 and acctcon2 commands are typically used as follows:

EXAMPLE 1 Using the acctcon command. (Continued)

```
example% acctcon1 -l lineuse -o reboots < tmpwtmp | sort +1n +2 > ctmp
example% acctcon2 < ctmp > ctacct
```

Files /var/adm/wtmpx History of user access and administration information

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWaccu

See Also [acctcom\(1\)](#), [login\(1\)](#), [acct\(1M\)](#), [acctcms\(1M\)](#), [acctmerg\(1M\)](#), [acctprc\(1M\)](#), [acctsh\(1M\)](#), [fwtmp\(1M\)](#), [init\(1M\)](#), [runacct\(1M\)](#), [acct\(2\)](#), [acct.h\(3HEAD\)](#), [utmpx\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

System Administration Guide: Basic Administration

Notes The line usage report is confused by date changes. Use `wtmpfix` (see [fwtmp\(1M\)](#)), with the `/var/adm/wtmpx` file as an argument, to correct this situation.

During a single invocation of any given command, the `acctcon`, `acctcon1`, and `acctcon2` commands can process a maximum of:

- 6000 distinct session
- 1000 distinct terminal lines
- 2000 distinct login names

If at some point the actual number of any one of these items exceeds the maximum, the command will not succeed.

Name acctmerg – merge or add total accounting files

Synopsis /usr/lib/acct/acctmerg [-a] [-i] [-p] [-t] [-u] [-v]
[filename] ...

Description acctmerg reads its standard input and up to nine additional files, all in the tacct format (see [acct.h\(3HEAD\)](#)) or an ASCII version thereof. It merges these inputs by adding records whose keys (normally user ID and name) are identical, and expects the inputs to be sorted on those keys.

Options

- a Produce output in ASCII version of tacct.
- i Produce input in ASCII version of tacct.
- p Print input with no processing.
- t Produce a single record that totals all input.
- u Summarize by user ID, rather than by user ID and name.
- v Produce output in verbose ASCII format, with more precise notation for floating-point numbers.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Using the acctmerg command.

The following sequence is useful for making "repairs" to any file kept in this format:

```
example% acctmerg -v <filename1 >filename2
```

Edit *filename2* as you want:

```
example% acctmerg -i <filename2 >filename1
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWaccu

See Also [acctcom\(1\)](#), [acct\(1M\)](#), [acctcms\(1M\)](#), [acctcon\(1M\)](#), [acctprc\(1M\)](#), [acctsh\(1M\)](#), [fwtmp\(1M\)](#), [runacct\(1M\)](#), [acct\(2\)](#), [acct.h\(3HEAD\)](#), [utmpx\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

System Administration Guide: Basic Administration

Name acctprc, acctprc1, acctprc2 – process accounting

Synopsis /usr/lib/acct/acctprc
 /usr/lib/acct/acctprc1 [*ctmp*]
 /usr/lib/acct/acctprc2

Description acctprc reads the standard input and converts it to total accounting records (see the tacct record in [acct.h\(3HEAD\)](#)). acctprc divides CPU time into prime time and non-prime time and determines mean memory size (in memory segment units). acctprc then summarizes the tacct records, according to user IDs, and adds login names corresponding to the user IDs. The summarized records are then written to the standard output. acctprc1 reads input in the form described by [acct.h\(3HEAD\)](#), adds login names corresponding to user IDs, then writes for each process an ASCII line giving user ID, login name, prime CPU time (tics), non-prime CPU time (tics), and mean memory size (in memory segment units). If *ctmp* is given, it should contain a list of login sessions sorted by user ID and login name. If this file is not supplied, it obtains login names from the password file, just as acctprc does. The information in *ctmp* helps it distinguish between different login names that share the same user ID.

From the standard input, acctprc2 reads records in the form written by acctprc1, summarizes them according to user ID and name, then writes the sorted summaries to the standard output as total accounting records.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Examples of acctprc.

The acctprc command is typically used as shown below:

```
example% acctprc < /var/adm/pacct > ptacct
```

The acctprc1 and acctprc2s commands are typically used as shown below:

```
example% acctprc1 ctmp </var/adm/pacct
example% acctprc2 > ptacct
```

Files /etc/passwd system password file

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWaccu

See Also [acctcom\(1\)](#), [acct\(1M\)](#), [acctcms\(1M\)](#), [acctcon\(1M\)](#), [acctmerg\(1M\)](#), [acctsh\(1M\)](#), [cron\(1M\)](#), [fwtmp\(1M\)](#), [runacct\(1M\)](#), [acct\(2\)](#), [acct.h\(3HEAD\)](#), [utmpx\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes Although it is possible for acctprc1 to distinguish among login names that share user IDs for commands run from a command line, it is difficult for acctprc1 to make this distinction for commands invoked in other ways. A command run from [cron\(1M\)](#) is an example of where

acctprc1 might have difficulty. A more precise conversion can be done using the acctwtmp program in [acct\(1M\)](#). acctprc does not distinguish between users with identical user IDs.

A memory segment of the mean memory size is a unit of measure for the number of bytes in a logical memory segment on a particular processor.

During a single invocation of any given command, the acctprc, acctprc1, and acctprc2 commands can process a maximum of

- 6000 distinct sessions
- 1000 distinct terminal lines
- 2000 distinct login names

If at some point the actual number of any one of these items exceeds the maximum, the command will not succeed.

Name acctsh, chargefee, ckpacct, dodisk, lastlogin, monacct, nulladm, prctmp, prdaily, prtacct, shutacct, startup, turnacct – shell procedures for accounting

Synopsis /usr/lib/acct/chargefee *login-name number*
 /usr/lib/acct/ckpacct [*blocks*]
 /usr/lib/acct/dodisk [-o] [*filename*]...
 /usr/lib/acct/lastlogin
 /usr/lib/acct/monacct *number*
 /usr/lib/acct/nulladm *filename*...
 /usr/lib/acct/prctmp *filename*
 /usr/lib/acct/prdaily [-c] [-l] [*mmd*]
 /usr/lib/acct/prtacct *filename* [*' heading '*]
 /usr/lib/acct/shutacct [*' reason '*]
 /usr/lib/acct/startup
 /usr/lib/acct/turnacct on | off | switch

Description

- chargefee Command** chargefee can be invoked to charge a *number* of units to *login-name*. A record is written to /var/adm/fee, to be merged with other accounting records by [runacct\(1M\)](#).
- ckpacct Command** ckpacct should be initiated using [cron\(1M\)](#) to periodically check the size of /var/adm/pacct. If the size exceeds *blocks*, 500 by default, turnacct will be invoked with argument switch. To avoid a conflict with turnacct switch execution in runacct, do not run ckpacct and runacct simultaneously. If the number of free disk blocks in the /var file system falls below 500, ckpacct will automatically turn off the collection of process accounting records via the off argument to turnacct. When at least 500 blocks are restored, the accounting will be activated again on the next invocation of ckpacct. This feature is sensitive to the frequency at which ckpacct is executed, usually by the [cron\(1M\)](#) command.
- dodisk Command** dodisk should be invoked by [cron\(1M\)](#) to perform the disk accounting functions.
- lastlogin Command** lastlogin is invoked by [runacct\(1M\)](#) to update /var/adm/acct/sum/loginlog, which shows the last date on which each person logged in.
- monacct Command** monacct should be invoked once each month or each accounting period. *number* indicates which month or period it is. If *number* is not given, it defaults to the current month (01–12). This default is useful if monacct is to be executed using [cron\(1M\)](#) on the first day of each month. monacct creates summary files in /var/adm/acct/fiscal and restarts the summary files in /var/adm/acct/sum.

- nulladm Command** `nulladm` creates *filename* with mode 664 and ensures that owner and group are `adm`. It is called by various accounting shell procedures.
- prctmp Command** `prctmp` can be used to print the session record file (normally `/var/adm/acct/nite/ctmp` created by `acctcon1` (see [acctcon\(1M\)](#)).
- prdaily Command** `prdaily` is invoked by [runacct\(1M\)](#) to format a report of the previous day's accounting data. The report resides in `/var/adm/acct/sum/rprt/mmdd` where *mmdd* is the month and day of the report. The current daily accounting reports may be printed by typing `prdaily`. Previous days' accounting reports can be printed by using the *mmdd* option and specifying the exact report date desired.
- prtacct Command** `prtacct` can be used to format and print any total accounting (`tacct`) file.
- shutacct Command** `shutacct` is invoked during a system shutdown to turn process accounting off and append a *reason* record to `/var/adm/wtmpx`.
- startup Command** `startup` can be invoked when the system is brought to a multi-user state to turn process accounting on.
- turnacct Command** `turnacct` is an interface to `accton` (see [acct\(1M\)](#)) to turn process accounting on or off. The *switch* argument moves the current `/var/adm/pacct` to the next free name in `/var/adm/pacct.incr` (where *incr* is a number starting with 0 and incrementing by one for each additional `pacct` file), then turns accounting back on again. This procedure is called by `ckpacct` and thus can be taken care of by the [cron\(1M\)](#) command and used to keep `pacct` to a reasonable size. `shutacct` uses `turnacct` to stop process accounting. `startup` uses `turnacct` to start process accounting.

Options The following options are supported:

- c This option prints a report of exceptional resource usage by command, and may be used on current day's accounting data only.
- l This option prints a report of exceptional usage by login id for the specified date. Previous daily reports are cleaned up and therefore inaccessible after each invocation of `monacct`.
- o This option uses `acctdusg` (see [acct\(1M\)](#)) to do a slower version of disk accounting by login directory. *filenames* specifies the one or more filesystem names where disk accounting will be done. If *filenames* are used, disk accounting will be done on these filesystems only. If the `-o` option is used, *filenames* should be mount points of mounted filesystems. If the `-o` option is omitted, *filenames* should be the special file names of mountable filesystems.

Files	<code>/etc/logadm.conf</code>	Configuration file for the logadm(1M) command
	<code>/usr/lib/acct</code>	Holds all accounting commands listed in section 1M of this manual

<code>/usr/lib/acct/ptecms.awk</code>	Contains the limits for exceptional usage by command name
<code>/usr/lib/acct/ptelus.awk</code>	Contains the limits for exceptional usage by login ID
<code>/var/adm/acct/fiscal</code>	Fiscal reports directory
<code>/var/adm/acct/nite</code>	Working directory
<code>/var/adm/acct/sum</code>	Summary directory that contains information for monacct
<code>/var/adm/acct/sum/loginlog</code>	File updated by last login
<code>/var/adm/fee</code>	Accumulator for fees
<code>/var/adm/pacct</code>	Current file for per-process accounting
<code>/var/adm/pacctincr</code>	Used if <code>pacct</code> gets large and during execution of daily accounting procedure
<code>/var/adm/wtmpx</code>	History of user access and administration information

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWaccu

See Also [acctcom\(1\)](#), [acct\(1M\)](#), [acctcms\(1M\)](#), [acctcon\(1M\)](#), [acctmerg\(1M\)](#), [acctprc\(1M\)](#), [cron\(1M\)](#), [fwtmp\(1M\)](#), [logadm\(1M\)](#), [runacct\(1M\)](#), [acct\(2\)](#), [acct.h\(3HEAD\)](#), [utmpx\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes See [runacct\(1M\)](#) for the main daily accounting shell script, which performs the accumulation of connect, process, fee, and disk accounting on a daily basis. It also creates summaries of command usage.

Name adbggen – generate adb script

Synopsis /usr/lib/adb/adbggen [-m *model*] *filename.adb* . . .

Description adbggen makes it possible to write [adb\(1\)](#) scripts that do not contain hard-coded dependencies on structure member offsets. The input to adbggen is a file named *filename.adb* that contains header information, then a null line, then the name of a structure, and finally an adb script. adbggen only deals with one structure per file; all member names are assumed to be in this structure. The output of adbggen is an adb script in *filename.adb*. adbggen operates by generating a C program which determines structure member offsets and sizes, which in turn generate the adb script.

The header lines, up to the null line, are copied verbatim into the generated C program. Typically, these are `#include` statements, which include the headers containing the relevant structure declarations.

The adb script part may contain any valid adb commands (see [adb\(1\)](#)), and may also contain adbggen requests, each enclosed in braces (`{ }`). Request types are:

- Print a structure member. The request form is `{member, format}`. *member* is a member name of the *structure* given earlier, and *format* is any valid adb format request or any of the adbggen format specifiers (such as `{POINTER}`) listed below. For example, to print the `p_pid` field of the *proc* structure as a decimal number, you would write `{p_pid,d}`.
- Print the appropriate adb format character for the given adbggen format specifier. This action takes the data model into consideration. The request form is `{format specifier}`. The valid adbggen format specifiers are:

<code>{POINTER}</code>	pointer value in hexadecimal
<code>{LONGDEC}</code>	long value in decimal
<code>{ULONGDEC}</code>	unsigned long value in decimal
<code>{ULONGHEX}</code>	unsigned long value in hexadecimal
<code>{LONGOCT}</code>	long value in octal
<code>{ULONGOCT}</code>	unsigned long value in octal

- Reference a structure member. The request form is `{*member, base}`. *member* is the member name whose value is desired, and *base* is an adb register name which contains the base address of the structure. For example, to get the `p_pid` field of the *proc* structure, you would get the *proc* structure address in an adb register, for example `<f`, and write `{*p_pid,<f}`.
- Tell adbggen that the offset is valid. The request form is `{OFFSETOK}`. This is useful after invoking another adb script which moves the adb *dot*.
- Get the size of the *structure*. The request form is `{SIZEOF}`. adbggen replaces this request with the size of the structure. This is useful in incrementing a pointer to step through an array of structures.

- Calculate an arbitrary C expression. The request form is {EXPR, *expression*}. adbgen replaces this request with the value of the expression. This is useful when more than one structure is involved in the script.
- Get the offset to the end of the structure. The request form is {END}. This is useful at the end of the structure to get adb to align the *dot* for printing the next structure member.

adbgen keeps track of the movement of the adb *dot* and generates adb code to move forward or backward as necessary before printing any structure member in a script. adbgen's model of the behavior of adb's *dot* is simple: it is assumed that the first line of the script is of the form *struct_address/adb text* and that subsequent lines are of the form *+/adb text*. The adb *dot* then moves in a sane fashion. adbgen does not check the script to ensure that these limitations are met. adbgen also checks the size of the structure member against the size of the adb format code and warns if they are not equal.

Options The following option is supported:

- m *model* Specifies the data type model to be used by adbgen for the macro. This affects the outcome of the {*format specifier*} requests described under DESCRIPTION and the offsets and sizes of data types. *model* can be *i lp32* or *lp64*. If the -m option is not given, the data type model defaults to *i lp32*.

Operands The following operand is supported:

- filename*.adb Input file that contains header information, followed by a null line, the name of the structure, and finally an adb script.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 A sample adbgen file.

For an include file *x.h* which contained

```
struct x {
    char    *x_cp;
    char    x_c;
    int     x_i;
};
```

then, an adbgen file (call it *script.adb*) to print the file *x.h* would be:

```
#include "x.h"
x
./"x_cp"16t"x_c"8t"x_i"n{x_cp,{POINTER}}{x_c,C}{x_i,D}
```

After running adbgen as follows,

```
% /usr/lib/adb/adbgen script.adb
```

the output file *script* contains:

```
./"x_cp"16t"x_c"8t"x_i"nXC3+D
```

EXAMPLE 1 A sample adbgen file. (Continued)

For a macro generated for a 64-bit program using the lp64 data model as follows,

```
% /usr/lib/adb/adbgen/ -m lp64 script.adb
```

the output file script would contain:

```
./"x_cp"16t"x_c"8t"x_i"nJC3+D
```

To invoke the script, type:

```
example% adb program
x$<script
```

Files /usr/platform/*platform-name*/lib/adb/*
platform-specific adb scripts for debugging the 32-bit kernel

/usr/platform/*platform-name*/lib/adb/sparcv9/*
platform-specific adb scripts for debugging the 64-bit SPARC V9 kernel

/usr/lib/adb/*
adb scripts for debugging the 32-bit kernel

/usr/lib/adb/sparcv9/*
adb scripts for debugging the 64-bit SPARC V9 kernel

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWesu

See Also [adb\(1\)](#), [kmdb\(1\)](#), [uname\(1\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Diagnostics Warnings are given about structure member sizes not equal to adb format items and about badly formatted requests. The C compiler complains if a structure member that does not exist is referenced. It also complains about an ampersand before array names; these complaints may be ignored.

Notes *platform-name* can be found using the -i option of [uname\(1\)](#).

Bugs adb syntax is ugly; there should be a higher level interface for generating scripts.

Structure members which are bit fields cannot be handled because C will not give the address of a bit field. The address is needed to determine the offset.

Name add_allocatable – add entries to allocation databases

Synopsis /usr/sbin/add_allocatable [-f] [-s] [-d] -n *name* -t *type* -l *device-list*
[-a *authorization*] [-c *clean*] [-o *key=value*]

Description add_allocatable creates new entries for user allocatable devices that are to be managed by the device allocation mechanism. add_allocatable can also be used to update existing entries of such devices.

add_allocatable can also create and update entries for non-allocatable devices, such as printers, whose label range is managed by the device allocation mechanism.

add_allocatable can be used in shell scripts, such as installation scripts for driver packages, to automate the administrative work of setting up a new device.

Use [list_devices\(1\)](#) to see the names and types of allocatable devices, their attributes, and device paths.

- Options**
- f Force an update of an already-existing entry with the specified information. add_allocatable exits with an error if this option is not specified when an entry with the specified device name already exists.
 - s Turn on silent mode. add_allocatable does not print any error or warning messages.
 - d If this option is present, add_allocatable updates the system-supplied default attributes of the device type specified with -t.
 - n *name* Adds or updates an entry for device that is specified by *name*.
 - t *type* Adds or updates device entries that are of a type that are specified by *type*.
 - l *device-list* Adds or updates device paths to the device that is specified with -n. Multiple paths in *device-list* must be separated by white spaces and the list must be quoted.
 - a *authorization* Adds or updates the authorization that is associated with either the device that is specified with -n or with devices of the type that is specified with -t. When more than one authorization is specified, the list must be separated by commas and must be quoted. When the device is not allocatable, *authorization* is specified with an asterisk (*) and must be quoted. When the device is allocatable by any user, *authorization* is specified with the at sign (@) and must be quoted. Default authorization is '@'.
 - c *clean* Specifies the [device_clean\(5\)](#) program *clean* to be used with the device that is specified with -n or with devices of the type that is specified with -t. The default clean program is /bin/true.

- `-o key=value` Accepts a string of colon-separated *key=value* pairs for a device that is specified with `-n` or with devices of the type that is specified with `-t`. The following keys are currently interpreted by the system:
- `minlabel` The minimum label at which the device can be used.
 - `maxlabel` The maximum label at which the device can be used.
 - `class` Specifies a logical grouping of devices. For example, all Sun Ray™ devices of all device types is a logical grouping. The `class` keyword has no default value.
 - `xdpv` Specifies the display name of the X session. This keyword is used to identify devices that are associated with the X session. The `xdpv` keyword has no default value.

Exit Status When successful, `add_allocate` returns an exit status of 0 (true). `add_allocate` returns a nonzero exit status in the event of an error. The exit codes are as follows:

- 1 Invocation syntax error
- 2 Unknown system error
- 3 An entry already exists for the specified device. This error occurs only when the `-f` option is not specified.
- 4 Permission denied. User does not have DAC or MAC access record updates.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWtsu
Interface Stability	See below.

The invocation is Uncommitted. The options are Uncommitted. The output is Not-an-Interface.

See Also [allocate\(1\)](#), [deallocate\(1\)](#), [list_devices\(1\)](#), [remove_allocatable\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [device_clean\(5\)](#)

Notes The functionality described on this manual page is available only if the system is configured with Trusted Extensions.

Name addbadsec – map out defective disk blocks

Synopsis addbadsec [-p] [-a *blkno* [*blkno*]...] [-f *filename*] *raw_device*

Description addbadsec is used by the system administrator to map out bad disk blocks. Normally, these blocks are identified during surface analysis, but occasionally the disk subsystem reports unrecoverable data errors indicating a bad block. A block number reported in this way can be fed directly into addbadsec, and the block will be remapped. addbadsec will first attempt hardware remapping. This is supported on SCSI drives and takes place at the disk hardware level. If the target is an IDE drive, then software remapping is used. In order for software remapping to succeed, the partition must contain an alternate slice and there must be room in this slice to perform the mapping.

It should be understood that bad blocks lead to data loss. Remapping a defective block does not repair a damaged file. If a bad block occurs to a disk-resident file system structure such as a superblock, the entire slice might have to be recovered from a backup.

Options The following options are supported:

- a Adds the specified blocks to the hardware or software map. If more than one block number is specified, the entire list should be quoted and block numbers should be separated by white space.
- f Adds the specified blocks to the hardware or software map. The bad blocks are listed, one per line, in the specified file.
- p Causes addbadsec to print the current software map. The output shows the defective block and the assigned alternate. This option cannot be used to print the hardware map.

Operands The following operand is supported:

raw_device The address of the disk drive (see FILES).

Files The raw device should be /dev/rdisk/c?[t?]d?p0. See [disks\(1M\)](#) for an explanation of SCSI and IDE device naming conventions.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Architecture	x86
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [disks\(1M\)](#), [diskscan\(1M\)](#), [fdisk\(1M\)](#), [fmthard\(1M\)](#), [format\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes The `format(1M)` utility is available to format, label, analyze, and repair SCSI disks. This utility is included with the `addbadsec`, `diskscan(1M)`, `fdisk(1M)`, and `fmthard(1M)` commands available for x86. To format an IDE disk, use the DOS "format" utility; however, to label, analyze, or repair IDE disks on x86 systems, use the Solaris `format(1M)` utility.

Name add_drv – add a new device driver to the system

Synopsis add_drv [-b *basedir*] [-c *class_name*]
 [-i '*identify_name...*'] [-m '*permission', '...*']
 [-p '*policy*'] [-P *privilege*] [-n] [-f] [-u] [-v] *device_driver*

Description The add_drv command is used to inform the system about newly installed device drivers.

Each device on the system has a name associated with it. This name is represented by the name property for the device. Similarly, the device may also have a list of driver names associated with it. This list is represented by the compatible property for the device.

The system determines which devices will be managed by the driver being added by examining the contents of the name property and the compatible property (if it exists) on each device. If the value in the name property does not match the driver being added, each entry in the compatible property is tried, in order, until either a match occurs or there are no more entries in the compatible property.

In some cases, adding a new driver may require a reconfiguration boot. See the NOTES section.

Aliases might require quoting (with double-quotes) if they contain numbers. See EXAMPLES.

The `/etc/minor_perm` File add_drv and [update_drv\(1M\)](#) read the `/etc/minor_perm` file to obtain permission information. The permission specified is applied to matching minor nodes created when a device bound to the driver is attached. A minor node's permission may be manually changed by [chmod\(1\)](#). For such nodes, the specified permissions apply, overriding the default permissions specified via add_drv or [update_drv\(1M\)](#).

The format of the `/etc/minor_perm` file is as follows:

```
name: minor_name permissions owner group
```

minor_name may be the actual name of the minor node, or contain shell metacharacters to represent several minor nodes (see [sh\(1\)](#)).

For example:

```
sd:* 0640 root sys
zs:[a-z],cu 0600 uucp uucp
mm:kmem 0640 root bin
```

The first line sets all devices exported by the sd node to 0640 permissions, owned by root, with group sys. In the second line, devices such as a, cu and z, cu exported by the zs driver are set to 0600 permission, owned by uucp, with group uucp. In the third line the kmem device exported by the mm driver is set to 0640 permission, owned by root, with group bin.

Running add_drv from a postinstall Script When running add_drv from within the context of a package's postinstall script, you must consider whether the package is being added to a system image or to a running system. When a package is being installed on a system image, such as occurs with the Live Upgrade or flash

features (see [live_upgrade\(5\)](#) and [flarcreate\(1M\)](#)), the `BASEDIR` variable refers to the image's base directory. In this situation, `add_drv` should be invoked with `-b $BASEDIR`. This causes `add_drv` only to update the image's system files; a reboot of the system or client would be required to make the driver operational.

When a package is being installed on the running system itself, the system files need to be updated, as in the case above. However, the running kernel can be informed of the existence of the new driver without requiring a reboot. To accomplish this, the postinstall script must invoke `add_drv` without the `-b` option. Accordingly, `postinstall` scripts invoking `add_drv` should be written thusly:

```
if [ "${BASEDIR:=/}" = "/" ]
then
    ADD_DRV="add_drv"
else
    ADD_DRV="add_drv -b ${BASEDIR}"
fi
$ADD_DRV [<options>] <driver>
```

...or, alternatively:

```
if [ "${BASEDIR:=/}" != "/" ]
then
    BASEDIR_OPT="-b $BASEDIR"
fi
add_drv $BASEDIR_OPT [<options>] <driver>
```

The `-b` option is described below.

Options -b *basedir*

Installs the driver on the system with a root directory of *basedir* rather than installing on the system executing `add_drv`. This option is typically used in package post-installation scripts when the package is not being installed on the system executing the `pkgadd` command. The system using *basedir* as its root directory must reboot to complete the driver installation.

Note – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the `-b` option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).

-c *class_name*

The driver being added to the system exports the class *class_name*.

-f

Normally if a reconfiguration boot is required to complete the configuration of the driver into the system, `add_drv` will not add the driver. The force flag forces `add_drv` to add the driver even if a reconfiguration boot is required. See the `-v` flag.

-
- i '*identify_name*'
A white-space separated list of aliases for the driver *device_driver*.
- m '*permission*'
Specify the file system permissions for device nodes created by the system on behalf of *device_driver*.
- n
Do not try to load and attach *device_driver*, just modify the system configuration files for the *device_driver*.
- p '*policy*'
Specify an additional device security policy.
- The device security policy consists of several whitespace separated tokens:
{minorspec {token=value}+}
minorspec is a simple wildcard pattern for a minor device. A single * matches all minor devices. Only one * is allowed in the pattern.
- Patterns are matched in the following order:
- entries without a wildcard
 - entries with wildcards, longest wildcard first
- The following tokens are defined: *read_priv_set* and *write_priv_set*. *read_priv_set* defines the privileges that need to be asserted in the effective set of the calling process when opening a device for reading. *write_priv_set* defines the privileges that need to be asserted in the effective set of the calling process when opening a device for writing. See [privileges\(5\)](#).
- A missing minor spec is interpreted as a *.
- P '*privilege*'
Specify additional, comma separated, privileges used by the driver. You can also use specific privileges in the device's policy.
- u
Add the driver to the system, leaving it in an inactive state for later configuration with [devfsadm\(1M\)](#) -u. The -u behavior differs from -n in that -n only updates the system files, requiring a reboot to attach the driver. Drivers added with -u can be attached by running `devfsadm -u` without rebooting. Driver writers should verify their driver with this behavior. See NOTES for additional considerations. The -u option cannot be used together with -n or -b.
- v
The verbose flag causes `add_drv` to provide additional information regarding the success or failure of a driver's configuration into the system. See the EXAMPLES section.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Adding SUNW Example Driver to the System

The following example adds the SUNW,example driver to a 32-bit system, with an alias name of SUNW,alias. It assumes the driver has already been copied to /usr/kernel/drv.

```
example# add_drv -m '* 0666 bin bin', 'a 0644 root sys' \
  -p 'a write_priv_set=sys_config * write_priv_set=none' \
  -i 'SUNW,alias' SUNW,example
```

Every minor node created by the system for the SUNW,example driver will have the permission 0666, and be owned by user bin in the group bin, except for the minor device a, which will be owned by root, group sys, and have a permission of 0644. The specified device policy requires no additional privileges to open all minor nodes, except minor device a, which requires the sys_config privilege when opening the device for writing.

EXAMPLE 2 Adding Driver to the Client /export/root/sun1

The following example adds the driver to the client /export/root/sun1. The driver is installed and loaded when the client machine, sun1, is rebooted. This second example produces the same result as the first, except the changes are on the diskless client, sun1, and the client must be rebooted for the driver to be installed.

```
example# add_drv -m '* 0666 bin bin', 'a 0644 root sys' \
  -i 'SUNW,alias' -b /export/root/sun1 \
  SUNW,example
```

See the note in the description of the -b option, above, specifying the caveat regarding the use of this option with the Solaris zones feature.

EXAMPLE 3 Adding Driver for a Device Already Managed by an Existing Driver

The following example illustrates the case where a new driver is added for a device that is already managed by an existing driver. Consider a device that is currently managed by the driver dumb_framebuffer. The name and compatible properties for this device are as follows:

```
name="display"
compatible="whizzy_framebuffer", "dumb_framebuffer"
```

If add_drv is used to add the whizzy_framebuffer driver, the following will result.

```
example# add_drv whizzy_framebuffer
Error: Could not install driver (whizzy_framebuffer)
Device managed by another driver.
```

If the -v flag is specified, the following will result.

```
example# add_drv -v whizzy_framebuffer
Error: Could not install driver (whizzy_framebuffer)
Device managed by another driver.
```

EXAMPLE 3 Adding Driver for a Device Already Managed by an Existing Driver *(Continued)*

Driver installation failed because the following entries in /devices would be affected:

```
/devices/iommu@f,e0000000/sbus@f,e0001000/display[:*]
(Device currently managed by driver "dumb_framebuffer")
```

The following entries in /dev would be affected:

```
/dev/fbs/dumb_framebuffer0
```

If the -v and -f flags are specified, the driver will be added resulting in the following.

```
example# add_drv -vf whizzy_framebuffer
A reconfiguration boot must be performed to complete the
installation of this driver.
```

The following entries in /devices will be affected:

```
/devices/iommu@f,e0000000/sbus@f,e0001000/display[:*]
(Device currently managed by driver "dumb_framebuffer")
```

The following entries in /dev will be affected:

```
/dev/fbs/dumb_framebuffer0
```

The above example is currently only relevant to devices exporting a generic device name.

EXAMPLE 4 Use of Double Quotes in Specifying Driver Alias

The following example shows the use of double quotes in specifying a driver alias that contains numbers.

```
example# add_drv -i '"pci10c5,25"' smc
```

Exit Status add_drv returns 0 on success and 1 on failure.

Files

- /kernel/drv
 - 32-bit boot device drivers
- /kernel/drv/sparcv9
 - 64-bit SPARC boot device drivers
- /kernel/drv/amd64
 - 64-bit x86 boot device drivers
- /usr/kernel/drv
 - other 32-bit drivers that could potentially be shared between platforms

/usr/kernel/drv/sparcv9
 other 64-bit SPARC drivers that could potentially be shared between platforms

/usr/kernel/drv/amd64
 other 64-bit x86 drivers that could potentially be shared between platforms

/platform/'uname -i'/kernel/drv
 32-bit platform-dependent drivers

/platform/'uname -i'/kernel/drv/sparcv9
 64-bit SPARC platform-dependent drivers

/platform/'uname -i'/kernel/drv/amd64
 64-bit x86 platform-dependent drivers

/etc/driver_aliases
 driver aliases file

/etc/driver_classes
 driver classes file

/etc/minor_perm
 minor node permissions

/etc/name_to_major
 major number binding

/etc/security/device_policy
 device policy

/etc/security/extra_privs
 device privileges

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [boot\(1M\)](#), [chmod\(1\)](#), [devfsadm\(1M\)](#), [flarcreate\(1M\)](#), [kernel\(1M\)](#), [modinfo\(1M\)](#), [rem_drv\(1M\)](#), [update_drv\(1M\)](#), [driver.conf\(4\)](#), [system\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [live_upgrade\(5\)](#), [privileges\(5\)](#), [devfs\(7FS\)](#), [ddi_create_minor_node\(9F\)](#)

Writing Device Drivers

Notes It is possible to add a driver for a device already being managed by a different driver, where the driver being added appears in the device's `compatible` list before the current driver. In such cases, a reconfiguration boot is required (see [boot\(1M\)](#) and [kernel\(1M\)](#)). After the reconfiguration boot, device links in `/dev` and references to these files may no longer be valid

(see the `-v` flag). If a reconfiguration boot would be required to complete the driver installation, `add_drv` will fail unless the `-f` option is specified. See Example 3 in the EXAMPLES section.

With the introduction of the device policy several drivers have had their minor permissions changed and a device policy instated. The typical network driver should use the following device policy:

```
add_drv -p 'read_priv_set=net_rawaccess\  
write_priv_set=net_rawaccess' -m '* 666 root sys\  
mynet
```

This document does not constitute an API. `/etc/minor_perm`, `/etc/name_to_major`, `/etc/driver_classes`, and `/devices` may not exist or may have different contents or interpretations in a future release. The existence of this notice does not imply that any other documentation that lacks this notice constitutes an API.

`/etc/minor_perm` can only be updated by `add_drv(1M)`, `rem_drv(1M)` or `update_drv(1M)`.

In the current version of `add_drv`, the use of double quotes to specify an alias is optional when used from the command line. However, when using `add_drv` from packaging scripts, you should continue to use double quotes to specify an alias.

Some drivers should not be added and configured on the system directly, but should only be configured as the system boots. The reasons for this restriction include, but are not limited to, a driver dependency on configuration early during boot or a dependency on some kernel component being installed or updated at the same time as the driver is being added. Such drivers should only be added to the system with the `-n` flag, so the driver is only loaded and configured when the system is rebooted, thus assuring an environment in which the driver can be configured properly.

Bugs Previous versions of `add_drv` accepted a pathname for *device_driver*. This feature is no longer supported and results in failure.

Name afbconfig, SUNWafb_config – configure the AFB Graphics Accelerator

Synopsis /usr/sbin/afbconfig [-dev *device-filename*]
 [-res *video-mode* [now | try] [noconfirm | nocheck]]
 [-file machine | system] [-deflinear true | false]
 [-defoverlay true | false]
 [-overlayorder first | last]
 [-expvis enable | disable] [-sov enable | disable]
 [-maxwinds *n*] [-extovl enable | disable]
 [-g *gamma-correction-value*]
 [-gfile *gamma-correction-file*] [-propt] [-prconf]
 [-defaults]

 /usr/sbin/afbconfig [-propt] [-prconf]
 /usr/sbin/afbconfig [-help] [-res ?]

Description afbconfig configures the AFB Graphics Accelerator and some of the X11 window system defaults for AFB.

The following form of afbconfig stores the specified options in the OWconfig file:

```
/usr/sbin/afbconfig [-devdevice-filename]  

  [-res video-mode [now | try] [noconfirm | nocheck]]  

  [-file machine | system] [-deflinear true | false]  

  [-defoverlay true | false]  

  [-overlayorderfirst | last] [-expvisenable | disable]  

  [-sov enable | disable] [-maxwindsn]  

  [-extovl enable | disable] [-ggamma-correction-value]  

  [-gfilegamma-correction-file] [-propt] [-prconf]  

  [-defaults]
```

The options are used to initialize the AFB device the next time the window system is run on that device. Updating options in the OWconfig file provides persistence of these options across window system sessions and system reboots.

The following forms of the afbconfig command invoke only the -prconf, -propt, -help, and -res ? options. None of these options update the OWconfig file.

```
/usr/sbin/afbconfig [-propt] [-prconf]  

  /usr/sbin/afbconfig [-help] [-res ?]
```

Additionally, the following invocation of afbconfig ignores all other options:

```
/usr/sbin/afbconfig [-help] [-res ?]
```

You can only specify options for one AFB device at a time. Specifying options for multiple AFB devices requires multiple invocations of the afbconfig command.

Only AFB-specific options can be specified through afbconfig. The normal window system options for specifying default depth, visual class and so forth are still specified as device modifiers on the openwin command line.

You can also specify the `OWconfig` file that is to be updated. By default, the machine-specific file in the `/etc/openwin` directory tree is updated. The `-file` option can be used to specify an alternate file to use. For example, the system-global `OWconfig` file in the `/usr/openwin` directory tree can be updated instead.

Both of these standard `OWconfig` files can only be written by root. Consequently, the `afbconfig` program, which is owned by the root user, always runs with `setuid root` permission.

Option Defaults For a given invocation of `afbconfig` command line if an option does not appear on the command line, the corresponding `OWconfig` option is not updated; it retains its previous value. When the window system is run, if an AFB option has never been specified by way of `afbconfig`, a default value is used. The option defaults are as follows:

```
-dev          /dev/fbs/afb0
-file        machine
-res         none
-deflinear   false
-defoverlay  false
-linearorder last
-overlayorder last
-expvis      enabled
-sov        enabled
-maxwids     32
-extovl     enabled
-g          2.22
```

The default for the `-res` option of `none` means that when the window system is run the screen resolution is the video mode currently programmed in the device.

This provides compatibility for users who are used to specifying the device resolution through the PROM. On some devices (for example, GX) this is the only way of specifying the video mode. This means that the PROM ultimately determines the default AFB video mode.

Options The following options are supported:

```
-defaults
    Resets all option values to their default values.
```

`-defLinear true | false`

AFB possesses two types of visuals: linear and nonlinear. Linear visuals are gamma corrected and nonlinear visuals are not. There are two visuals that have both linear and nonlinear versions: 24-bit TrueColor and 8-bit StaticGray.

If `true`, the default visual is set to the linear visual that satisfies other specified default visual selection options (specifically, the Xsun(1) `defdepth` and `defclass` options described in the OpenWindows Reference Manual).

If `false`, or if there is no linear visual that satisfies the other default visual selection options, the non-linear visual specified by these other options are chosen as the default. This option cannot be used when the `-defoverlay` option is present, because AFB doesn't possess a linear overlay visual.

`-defoverlay true | false`

The AFB provides an 8-bit PseudoColor visual whose pixels are disjoint from the rest of the AFB visuals. This is called the overlay visual. Windows created in this visual do not damage windows created in other visuals. The converse, however, is not true. Windows created in other visuals damage overlay windows.

The number of colors available to the windows created using this visual depends on the settings for the `-extovl` option. If the `-extovl` is enabled, extended overlay with 256 opaque color values is available. See `-extovl`. If `-extovl` is disabled, extended overlay is not available and the visual has 256 `-maxwids`) number of opaque color values. See `-maxwids`.

If the value of `-defoverlay` is `true`, the overlay visual is made the default visual. If the value of `-defoverlay` is `false`, the nonoverlay visual that satisfies the other default visual selection options, such as `def`, `depth`, and `defclass`, are chosen as the default visual. See the OpenWindows Reference Manual.

Whenever the `defoverlay true` option is used, the default depth and class specified on the `openwin` command line must be 8-bit PseudoColor. If not, a warning message is printed and the `-defoverlay` option is treated as `false`.

The `-defoverlay` option can not be used when the `-defLinear` option specified, because AFB doesn't possess a linear overlay visual.

`-dev device-filename`

Specifies the AFB special file. The default is `/dev/fbs/afb0`.

`-expvis enable | disable`

If enabled, activates OpenGL Visual Expansion. Multiple instances of selected visual groups (8-bit PseudoColor, 24-bit TrueColor and so forth) are in the screen visual list.

`-extovl enable | disable`

If enabled, makes extended overlay available. The overlay visuals have 256 opaque colors. The SOV visuals have 255 opaque colors and 1 transparent color.

This option also enables hardware supported transparency, thus provides better performance for windows using the SOV visuals.

-file *machine* | *system*

Specifies which OWconfig file to update. If *machine* is specified, the machine-specific OWconfig file in the `/etc/openwin` directory tree is updated. If *system* is specified, the global OWconfig file in the `/usr/openwin` directory tree is updated. If the specified file does not exist, it is created. This option has no effect unless other options are specified. The default is *machine*.

-g *gamma-correction value*

Allows changing the gamma correction value. All linear visuals provide gamma correction. By default, the *gamma-correction-value* is 2.22. Any value less than 0 is illegal. The gamma correction value is applied to the linear visual, which then has an effective gamma value of 1.0, which is the value returned by `XSolarisGetVisualGamma(3)`. See `XSolarisGetVisualGamma(3)` for a description of that function.

This option can be used while the window system is running. Changing the gamma correction value affects all the windows being displayed using the linear visuals.

-gfile *gamma-correction-file*

Loads the gamma correction table from the specified file (*gamma-correction-file*). This file should be formatted to provide the gamma correction values for R, G and B channels on each line. Each of these values should be in hexadecimal format and separated from each other by at least one space. *gamma-correction-file* should also provide 256 such triplets.

An example of a *gamma-correction-file* follows.

```
0x00 0x00 0x00
0x01 0x01 0x01
0x02 0x02 0x02
...
...
0xff 0xff 0xff
```

Using this option, the gamma correction table can be loaded while the window system is running. The new gamma correction affects all the windows being displayed using the linear visuals. When gamma correction is being done using user specified table, the gamma correction value is undefined. By default, the window system assumes a gamma correction value of 2.22 and loads the gamma table it creates corresponding to this value.

-help

Prints a list of the afbconfig command line options, along with a brief explanation of each.

-linearorder *first* | *last*

If *first*, linear visuals come before their non-linear counterparts on the X11 screen visual list for the AFB screen. If *last*, the nonlinear visuals come before the linear ones.

-maxwids *n*

Specifies the maximum number of AFB X channel pixel values that are reserved for use as window IDs (WIDs). The remainder of the pixel values in overlay colormaps are used for normal X11 opaque color pixels. The reserved WIDs are allocated on a first-come first-serve basis by 3D graphics windows (such as XGL), MBX windows, and windows that have a non-default visual. The X channel codes 0 to (255 - *n*) are opaque color pixels. The X channel codes (255 - *n* + 1) to 255 are reserved for use as WIDs. Legal values are 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, and 64.

This option is available only if the `-extovl` is disabled.

-overlayorder first | last

If `first`, the depth 8 PseudoColor Overlay visual comes before the non-overlay visual on the X11 screen visual list for the AFB screen. If `last`, the non-overlay visual comes before the overlay one.

-propt

Prints the current values of all AFB options in the `OWconfig` file specified by the `-file` option for the device specified by the `-dev` option. Prints the values of options as they will be in the `OWconfig` file after the call to `afbconfig` completes.

The following is a typical display:

```
--- OpenWindows Configuration for /dev/fbs/afb0 ---
OWconfig: machine
Video Mode: 1280x1024x76
Default Visual: Non-Linear Normal Visual
Visual Ordering: Linear Visuals are last
                  Overlay Visuals are last
OpenGL Visual Expansion: enabled
Server Overlay Visuals: enabled
Extended Overlay: enabled
Underlay WIDs: 64 (not configurable)
Overlay WIDs: 4 (not configurable)
Gamma Correction Value: 2.220
Gamma Correction Table: Available
```

-prconf

Prints the AFB hardware configuration.

The following is a typical display:

```
--- Hardware Configuration for /dev/fbs/afb0 ---
Type: double-buffered AFB with Z-buffer
Board: rev 0 (Horizontal)
Number of Floats: 6
PROM Information: @(#)afb.fth x.xx xx/xx/xx
AFB ID: 0x101df06d
DAC: Brooktree 9070, version 1 (Pac2)
```

```

3DRAM: Mitsubishi 130a, version x
EDID Data: Available - EDID version 1 revision x
Monitor Sense ID: 4 (Sun 37x29cm RGB color monitor)
Monitor possible resolutions: 1024x768x77, 1024x800x84, 1
                             1152x900x76, 1280x1024x67, 1280x1024x76, 960x680xx108s
Current resolution setting: 1280x1024x76

```

-sov enable | disable

If enabled, the root window's SERVER_OVERLAY_VISUALS property are advertised. SOV visuals are exported and their transparent types, values and layers can be retrieved through this property. If disabled, the SERVER_OVERLAY_VISUALS property are not defined and SOV visuals are not exported.

-res *video-mode* [now | try [noconfirm | nocheck]]

Specifies the video mode used to drive the monitor connected to the specified AFB device.

The format of these built-in video modes is: *widthxheightxrate*, where *width* is the screen width in pixels, *height* is the screen height in pixels, and *rate* is the vertical frequency of the screen refresh.

The s suffix of 960x680x112s and 960x680x108s means that these are stereo video modes. The i suffix of 640x480x60i and 768x575x50i designates interlaced video timing. If absent, non-interlaced timing is used.

As a convenience, the -res also accepts formats with an at sign (@) in front of the refresh rate instead of *n*, (1280x1024@76). Some video-modes, supported by AFB, may not be supported by the monitor. The list of video-modes supported by the AFB device and the monitor can be obtained by running `afbconfig` with the `-res ?` option (the third form shown SYNOPSIS).

A list of all possible video-modes supported on AFB follows:

```

1024x768x60
1024x768x70
1024x768x75
1024x768x77
1024x800x84
1152x900x66
1152x900x76
1280x800x76
1280x1024x60
1280x1024x67
1280x1024x76
960x680x112s   (Stereo)
960x680x108s  (Stereo)
640x480x60
640x480x60i   (Interlaced)
768x575x50i   (Interlaced)

```

For convenience, some of the video-modes supported on the AFB have *symbolic names* defined for them. Instead of the form *widthxheightxrate*, one of these names may be supplied as the argument to the `-res` option. The meaning of the symbolic name `none` is that when the window system is run, the screen resolution is the video mode that is currently programmed in the device.

A list of symbolic names for video-modes supported on AFB follows:

Name	Corresponding Video Mode
<code>svga</code>	<code>1024x768x60</code>
<code>1152</code>	<code>1152x900x76</code>
<code>1280</code>	<code>1280x1024x76</code>
<code>stereo</code>	<code>960x680x112s</code>
<code>ntsc</code>	<code>640x480x60i</code>
<code>pal</code>	<code>768x575x50i</code>
<code>none</code>	(see text above)

The `-res` option also accepts the additional, optional arguments immediately following the video mode specification. Any or all of the following arguments can be specified:

- `noconfirm` Using the `-res` option, the user could potentially put the system into an unusable state, a state where there is no video output. This can happen if there is ambiguity in the monitor sense codes for the particular code read. To reduce the chance of this, the default behavior of `afbconfig` is to print a warning message to this effect and to prompt the user to find out if it is okay to continue. The `noconfirm` option instructs `afbconfig` to bypass this confirmation and to program the requested video mode anyway. This option is useful when `afbconfig` is being run from a shell script.
- `nocheck` If present, the normal error checking based on the monitor sense code is suspended. The video mode specified by the user is accepted regardless of whether it is appropriate for the currently attached monitor. (This option is useful if a different monitor is to be connected to the AFB device). Use of this option implies `noconfirm` well.
- `now` Updates the video mode in the `OWconfig` file, and immediately programs the AFB device to display this video mode. This is useful for changing the video mode before starting the window system.

This argument should not be used with `afbconfig` while the configured device is being used (for example, while running the window system); unpredictable results may occur. To run `afbconfig` with the `now` argument, first bring the window system down. If the `now` argument is used within a window system session, the video mode is changed immediately, but the width and height of the affected screen won't change until the window system is exited and re-entered again. In addition, the system may not recognize changes in stereo mode. Consequently, this usage is strongly discouraged.

try If present, the specified video mode is programmed on a trial basis. The user is asked to confirm the video mode by typing `y` within 10 seconds. Or the user may terminate the trial before 10 seconds are up by typing any character. Any character other than `y` or Return is considered a no. The previous video mode is restored and `afbconfig` does not change the video mode in the `OWconfig` file (other options specified still take effect). If a Return is typed, the user is prompted for a yes or no answer on whether to keep the new video mode.

This sub-option should not be used with `afbconfig` while the configured device is being used (for example, while running the window system) as unpredictable results may occur. To run `afbconfig` with the `try` sub-option, the window system should be brought down first.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Switching the monitor type

The following example switches the monitor type to a resolution of 1280 x 1024 at 76 Hz:

```
example% /usr/sbin/afbconfig -res 1280x1024x76
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWafbcf

See Also [mmap\(2\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name apache – Apache hypertext transfer protocol server overview

Description apache consists of a main server daemon, loadable server modules, some additional support utilities, configuration files, and documentation.

Files The apache HTTPD server is integrated with Solaris.

The following files specify the installation locations for apache:

/etc/apache	Contains server configuration files. A newly-installed server must be manually configured before use. Typically this involves copying <code>httpd.conf-example</code> to the <code>httpd.conf</code> file and making local configuration adjustments.
/usr/apache/bin	Contains the <code>httpd</code> executable as well as other utility programs.
/usr/apache/htdocs	Contains the Apache manual in HTML format. This documentation is accessible by way of a link on the server test page that gets installed upon fresh installation.
/usr/apache/include	Contains the Apache header files, which are needed for building various optional server extensions with <code>apxs(8)</code>
/usr/apache/jserv	Contains documentation for the <code>mod_jserv</code> java servlet module. Documentation can be read with a web browser using the url: <code>file:/usr/apache/jserv/docs/index.html</code>
/usr/apache/libexec	Contains loadable modules (DSOs) supplied with the server. Any modules which are added using <code>apxs(8)</code> are also copied into this directory.
/usr/apache/man	Contains man pages for the server, utility programs, and <code>mod_perl</code> . Add this directory to your <code>MANPATH</code> to read the Apache man pages. See <code>NOTES</code> .
/usr/apache/perl5	Contains the modules and library files used by the <code>mod_perl</code> extension to Apache.
/var/apache/cgi-bin	Default location for the CGI scripts. This can be changed by altering the <code>httpd.conf</code> file and restarting the server.
/var/apache/htdocs	Default document root. This can be changed by altering the <code>httpd.conf</code> file and restarting the server.

<code>/var/apache/icons</code>	Icons used by the server. This normally shouldn't need to be changed.
<code>/var/apache/logs</code>	Contains server log files. The formats, names, and locations of the files in this directory can be altered by various configuration directives in the <code>httpd.conf</code> file.
<code>/var/apache/proxy</code>	Directory used to cache pages if the caching feature of <code>mod_proxy</code> is enabled in the <code>httpd.conf</code> file. The location of the cache can also be changed by changing the proxy configuration in the <code>httpd.conf</code> file.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWapchr SUNWapchu SUNWapchd

See Also [attributes\(5\)](#)

<http://www.apache.org>

Notes In addition to the documentation and man pages included with Solaris, more information is available at <http://www.apache.org>

The Apache man pages are provided with the programming modules. To view the manual pages for the Apache modules with the `man` command, add `/usr/apache/man` to the `MANPATH` environment variable. See [man\(1\)](#) for more information. Running [catman\(1M\)](#) on the Apache manual pages is not supported.

Name arp – address resolution display and control

Synopsis arp *hostname*

arp -a [-n]

arp -d *hostname*

arp -f *filename*

arp -s *hostname ether_address* [temp] [pub] [trail]
[permanent]

Description The arp program displays and modifies the Internet-to-MAC address translation tables used by the address resolution protocol (see [arp\(7P\)](#)).

With no flags, the program displays the current ARP entry for *hostname*. The host may be specified by name or by number, using Internet dot notation.

Options that modify the ARP translation tables (-d, -f, and -s) can be used only when the invoked command is granted the `sys_net_config` privilege. See [privileges\(5\)](#).

- Options**
- a Display all of the current ARP entries. The definition for the flags in the table are:
 - d Unverified; this is a local IP address that is currently undergoing Duplicate Address Detection. ARP will not respond to requests for this address until Duplicate Address Detection completes.
 - o Old; this entry is aging away. If IP requests it again, a new ARP query will be generated. This state is used for detecting peer address changes.
 - y Delayed; periodic address defense and conflict detection was unable to send a packet due to internal network use limits for non-traffic-related messages (100 packets per hour per interface). This occurs only on interfaces with very large numbers of aliases.
 - A Authority; this machine is authoritative for this IP address. ARP will not accept updates from other machines for this entry.
 - L Local; this is a local IP address configured on one of the machine's logical interfaces. ARP will defend this address if another node attempts to claim it.
 - M Mapping; only used for the multicast entry for 224.0.0.0
 - P Publish; includes IP address for the machine and the addresses that have explicitly been added by the -s option. ARP will respond to ARP requests for this address.
 - S Static; entry cannot be changed by learned information. This indicates that the permanent flag was used when creating the entry.
 - U Unresolved; waiting for ARP response.

You can use the `-n` option with the `-a` option to disable the automatic numeric IP address-to-name translation. Use `arp -an` or `arp -na` to display numeric IP addresses. The `arp -a` option is equivalent to:

```
# netstat -p -f inet
```

...and `-an` and `-na` are equivalent to:

```
# netstat -pn -f inet
```

- d Delete an entry for the host called *hostname*.

Note that ARP entries for IPMP (IP Network Multipathing) data and test addresses are managed by the kernel and thus cannot be deleted.

- f Read the file named *filename* and set multiple entries in the ARP tables. Entries in the file should be of the form:

```
hostname MACaddress [temp] [pub] [trail] [permanent]
```

See the `-s` option for argument definitions.

- s Create an ARP entry for the host called *hostname* with the MAC address *MACaddress*. For example, an Ethernet address is given as six hexadecimal bytes separated by colons. The entry will not be subject to deletion by aging unless the word `temp` is specified in the command. If the word `pub` is specified, the entry will be published, which means that this system will respond to ARP requests for *hostname* even though the *hostname* is not its own. The word `permanent` indicates that the system will not accept MAC address changes for *hostname* from the network.

Solaris does not implement trailer encapsulation, and the word `trail` is accepted on entries for compatibility only.

`arp -s` can be used for a limited form of proxy ARP when a host on one of the directly attached networks is not physically present on a subnet. Another machine can then be configured to respond to ARP requests using `arp -s`. This is useful in certain SLIP configurations.

Non-temporary proxy ARP entries for an IPMP (IP Network Multipathing) group are automatically managed by the kernel. Specifically, if the hardware address in an entry matches the hardware address of an IP interface in an IPMP group, and the IP address is not local to the system, this will be regarded as an IPMP proxy ARP entry. This entry will have its hardware address automatically adjusted in order to keep the IP address reachable so long as the IPMP group has not entirely failed.

ARP entries must be consistent across an IPMP group. Therefore, ARP entries cannot be associated with individual underlying IP interfaces in an IPMP group, and must instead be associated with the corresponding IPMP IP interface.

Note that ARP entries for IPMP data and test addresses are managed by the kernel and thus cannot be changed.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [ifconfig\(1M\)](#), [netstat\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [privileges\(5\)](#), [arp\(7P\)](#)

Name atohexlabel – convert a human readable label to its internal text equivalent

Synopsis /usr/sbin/atohexlabel [*human-readable-sensitivity-label*]
/usr/sbin/atohexlabel -c [*human-readable-clearance*]

Description atohexlabel converts a human readable label into an internal text representation that is safe for storing in a public object. If no option is supplied, the label is assumed to be a sensitivity label.

Internal conversions can later be parsed to their same value. This internal form is often hexadecimal. The converted label is written to the standard output file. If no human readable label is specified, the label is read from the standard input file. The expected use of this command is emergency repair of labels that are stored in internal databases.

Options -c Identifies the human readable label as a clearance.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0 On success.
1 On failure, and writes diagnostics to the standard error file.

Files /etc/security/tsol/label_encodings
The label encodings file contains the classification names, words, constraints, and values for the defined labels of this system.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWtsu
Interface Stability	See below.

The command output is Committed for systems with the same label_encodings file. The command invocation is Committed for systems that implement the DIA MAC policy.

See Also [hextoalabel\(1M\)](#), [label_to_str\(3TSOL\)](#), [str_to_label\(3TSOL\)](#), [label_encodings\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

“How to Obtain the Hexadecimal Equivalent for a Label” in *Solaris Trusted Extensions Administrator’s Procedures*

Notes The functionality described on this manual page is available only if the system is configured with Trusted Extensions.

This file is part of the Defense Intelligence Agency (DIA) Mandatory Access Control (MAC) policy. This file might not be applicable to other MAC policies that might be developed for future releases of Solaris Trusted Extensions software.

Name audit – control the behavior of the audit daemon

Synopsis audit -n | -s | -t | -v [*path*]

Description The `audit` command is the system administrator's interface to maintaining the audit trail. The audit daemon can be notified to read the contents of the `audit_control(4)` file and re-initialize the current audit directory to the first directory listed in the `audit_control` file or to open a new audit file in the current audit directory specified in the `audit_control` file, as last read by the audit daemon. Reading `audit_control` also causes the `minfree` and `plugin` configuration lines to be re-read and reset within `auditd`. The audit daemon can also be signaled to close the audit trail and disable auditing.

Options

- n Notify the audit daemon to close the current audit file and open a new audit file in the current audit directory.
- s Notify the audit daemon to read the audit control file. The audit daemon stores the information internally. If the audit daemon is not running but audit has been enabled by means of `bsmconv(1M)`, the audit daemon is started.
- t Direct the audit daemon to close the current audit trail file, disable auditing, and die. Use -s to restart auditing.
- v *path* Verify the syntax for the audit control file stored in *path*. The `audit` command displays an approval message or outputs specific error messages for each error found.

Diagnostics The `audit` command will exit with 0 upon success and a positive integer upon failure.

Files

- /etc/security/audit_user
- /etc/security/audit_control

Attributes See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Stability	Evolving

See Also `bsmconv(1M)`, `praudit(1M)`, `audit(2)`, `audit_control(4)`, `audit_user(4)`, `attributes(5)`

See the section on Solaris Auditing in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

Notes The functionality described in this man page is available only if the Solaris Auditing feature has been enabled. See `bsmconv(1M)` for more information.

The `audit` command does not modify a process's preselection mask. Its functions are limited to the following:

- affects which audit directories are used for audit data storage;

- specifies the minimum free space setting;
- resets the parameters supplied by means of the plugin directive.

For the `-s` option, `audit` validates the `audit_control` syntax and displays an error message if a syntax error is found. If a syntax error message is displayed, the audit daemon does not re-read `audit_control`. Because `audit_control` is processed at boot time, the `-v` option is provided to allow syntax checking of an edited copy of `audit_control`. Using `-v`, `audit` exits with 0 if the syntax is correct; otherwise, it returns a positive integer.

The `-v` option can be used in any zone, but the `-t`, `-s`, and `-n` options are valid only in local zones and, then, only if the per zone audit policy is set. See [auditd\(1M\)](#) and [auditconfig\(1M\)](#) for per-zone audit configuration.

Name auditconfig – configure auditing

Synopsis auditconfig *subcommand*...

Description auditconfig provides a command line interface to get and set kernel audit parameters.

Except for getting or setting the persistent audit service values, this functionality is available only if the Solaris Auditing feature has been enabled. See [bsmconv\(1M\)](#) for more information.

A zero (0) queue value indicates that the system default is in effect.

The setting of the `perzone` policy determines the scope of the audit setting controlled by `auditconfig`. If `perzone` is set, then the values reflect the local zone except as noted. Otherwise, the settings are for the entire system. Any restriction based on the `perzone` setting is noted for each option to which it applies.

A non-global zone administrator can set all audit policy options except `perzone` and `ahlt`. `perzone` and `ahlt` apply only to the global zone; setting these policies requires the privileges of a global zone administrator. `perzone` and `ahlt` are described under the `-setpolicy` option, below.

This command is available to administrators who have been granted the Audit Control Rights Profile.

Options The following option is supported:

`-t`
Display or set the values on the running system in addition to the persistent values of the audit service.

This option is available only for the subcommands that list it below.

Sub-commands `-aconf`
Set the non-attributable audit mask from the `audit_control(4)` file. For example:

```
# auditconfig -aconf
Configured non-attributable events.
```

`-audit event sorf retval string`

This command constructs an audit record for audit event *event* using the process's audit characteristics containing a text token *string*. The return token is constructed from the *sorf* (success/failure flag) and the *retval* (return value). The event is type `char*`, the *sorf* is 0/1 for success/failure, *retval* is an `errno` value, *string* is type `*char`. This command is useful for constructing an audit record with a shell script. An example of this option:

```
# auditconfig -audit AUE_ftp 0 0 "test string"
#
```

audit record from audit trail:

```
header,76,2,ftp access,,Fri Dec 08 08:44:02 2000, + 669 msec
```

```

subject,abc,root,other,root,other,104449,102336,235 197121 elbow
text,test string
return,success,0

```

-chkaconf

Checks the configuration of the non-attributable events set in the kernel against the entries in `audit_control(4)`. If the runtime class mask of a kernel audit event does not match the configured class mask, a mismatch is reported.

-chkconf

Check the configuration of kernel audit event to class mappings. If the runtime class mask of a kernel audit event does not match the configured class mask, a mismatch is reported.

-conf

Configure kernel audit event to class mappings. Runtime class mappings are changed to match those in the audit event to class database file.

-getasid

Prints the audit session ID of the current process. For example:

```

# auditconfig -getasid
audit session id = 102336

```

-getaudit

Returns the audit characteristics of the current process.

```

# auditconfig -getaudit
audit id = abc(666)
process preselection mask = lo(0x1000,0x1000)
terminal id (maj,min,host) = 235,197121,elbow(172.146.89.77)
audit session id = 102336

```

-getaudit

Prints the audit ID of the current process. For example:

```

# auditconfig -getaudit
audit id = abc(666)

```

-getcar

Prints current active root location (anchored from root [or local zone root] at system boot). For example:

```

# auditconfig -getcar
current active root = /

```

-getclass *event*

Display the preselection mask associated with the specified kernel audit event. *event* is the kernel event number or event name.

-getcond

Display the kernel audit condition. The condition displayed is the literal string `auditing` meaning auditing is enabled and turned on (the kernel audit module is constructing and

queuing audit records); `noaudit`, meaning auditing is enabled but turned off (the kernel audit module is not constructing and queuing audit records); `disabled`, meaning that the audit module has not been enabled; or `nospace`, meaning there is no space for saving audit records. See [auditon\(2\)](#) and [auditd\(1M\)](#) for further information.

-getestate *event*

For the specified event (string or event number), print out classes *event* has been assigned. For example:

```
# auditconfig -getestate 20
audit class mask for event AUE_REBOOT(20) = 0x800
# auditconfig -getestate AUE_RENAME
audit class mask for event AUE_RENAME(42) = 0x30
```

-getkaudit

Get audit characteristics of the current zone. For example:

```
# auditconfig -getkaudit
audit id = unknown(-2)
process preselection mask = lo,na(0x1400,0x1400)
terminal id (maj,min,host) = 0,0,(0.0.0.0)
audit session id = 0
```

If the audit policy `perzone` is not set, the terminal id is that of the global zone. Otherwise, it is the terminal id of the local zone.

-getkmask

Get non-attributable pre-selection mask for the current zone. For example:

```
# auditconfig -getkmask
audit flags for non-attributable events = lo,na(0x1400,0x1400)
```

If the audit policy `perzone` is not set, the kernel mask is that of the global zone. Otherwise, it is that of the local zone.

-getpinfo *pid*

Display the audit ID, preselection mask, terminal ID, and audit session ID for the specified process.

[-t] -getpolicy

Display the kernel audit policy. The `ahlt` and `perzone` policies reflect the settings from the global zone. If `perzone` is set, all other policies reflect the local zone's settings. If `perzone` is not set, the policies are machine-wide.

-getcwd

Prints current working directory (anchored from zone root at system boot). For example:

```
# cd /usr/tmp
# auditconfig -getcwd
current working directory = /var/tmp
```


[-t] -getqbufsz

Get audit queue write buffer size. For example:

```
# auditconfig -getqbufsz
no configured audit queue size
audit queue buffer size (bytes) = 1024
```

[-t] -getqctrl

Get audit queue write buffer size, audit queue hiwater mark, audit queue lowater mark, audit queue prod interval (ticks).

```
# auditconfig -getqctrl
no configured audit queue lowater mark
no configured audit queue hiwater mark
no configured audit queue size
no configured audit queue delay
audit queue hiwater mark (records) = 100
audit queue lowater mark (records) = 10
audit queue buffer size (bytes) = 1024
audit queue delay (ticks) = 20

# auditconfig -setqbufsz 8192
# auditconfig -t -setqbufsz 12288
# auditconfig -setqdelay 20
# auditconfig -t -setqdelay 25
# auditconfig -getqctrl
no configured audit queue lowater mark
no configured audit queue hiwater mark
configured audit queue buffer size (bytes) = 8192
configured audit queue delay (ticks) = 20
active audit queue hiwater mark (records) = 100
active audit queue lowater mark (records) = 10
active audit queue buffer size (bytes) = 12288
active audit queue delay (ticks) = 25
```

[-t] -getqdelay

Get interval at which audit queue is prodded to start output. For example:

```
# auditconfig -getqdelay
no configured audit queue delay
audit queue delay (ticks) = 20
```

[-t] -getqhiwater

Get high water point in undelivered audit records when audit generation will block. For example:

```
# ./auditconfig -getqhiwater
no configured audit queue hiwater mark
audit queue hiwater mark (records) = 100
```

[-t] -getqlowater

Get low water point in undelivered audit records where blocked processes will resume. For example:

```
# auditconfig -getqlowater
no configured audit queue lowater mark
audit queue lowater mark (records) = 10
```

-getstat

Print current audit statistics information. For example:

```
# auditconfig -getstat
gen nona kern aud ctl enq wrtn wblk rblk drop tot mem
910 1 725 184 0 910 910 0 231 0 88 48
```

See [auditstat\(1M\)](#) for a description of the headings in `-getstat` output.

-gettid

Print audit terminal ID for current process. For example:

```
# auditconfig -gettid
terminal id (maj,min,host) = 235,197121,elbow(172.146.89.77)
```

-lsevent

Display the currently configured (runtime) kernel and user level audit event information.

-lspolicy

Display the kernel audit policies with a description of each policy.

-setasid *session-ID* [*cmd*]

Execute shell or *cmd* with specified *session-ID*. For example:

```
# ./auditconfig -setasid 2000 /bin/ksh
#
# ./auditconfig -getpinfo 104485
audit id = abc(666)
process preselection mask = lo(0x1000,0x1000)
terminal id (maj,min,host) = 235,197121,elbow(172.146.89.77)
audit session id = 2000
```

-setaudit *audit-ID preselect_flags term-ID session-ID* [*cmd*]

Execute shell or *cmd* with the specified audit characteristics.

-setauid *audit-ID* [*cmd*]

Execute shell or *cmd* with the specified *audit-ID*.

-setclass *event audit_flag* [*audit_flag* . . .]

Map the kernel event *event* to the classes specified by *audit_flags*. *event* is an event number or name. An *audit_flag* is a two character string representing an audit class. See [audit_control\(4\)](#) for further information. If `perzone` is not set, this option is valid only in the global zone.

-
- setkaudit *IP-address_type IP_address*
Set IP address of machine to specified values. *IP-address_type* is *ipv6* or *ipv4*.

If *perzone* is not set, this option is valid only in the global zone.
 - setkmask *audit_flags*
Set non-attributes selection flags of machine.

If *perzone* is not set, this option is valid only in the global zone.
 - setpmask *pid_flags*
Set the preselection mask of the specified process. *flags* is the ASCII representation of the flags similar to that in `audit_control(4)`.

If *perzone* is not set, this option is valid only in the global zone.
 - [-t] -setpolicy [+|-]*policy_flag[,policy_flag...]*
Set the kernel audit policy. A policy *policy_flag* is literal strings that denotes an audit policy. A prefix of + adds the policies specified to the current audit policies. A prefix of - removes the policies specified from the current audit policies. No policies can be set from a local zone unless the *perzone* policy is first set from the global zone. The following are the valid policy flag strings (`auditconfig -lspolicy` also lists the current valid audit policy flag strings):

all	Include all policies that apply to the current zone.
ahlt	Panic is called and the system dumps core if an asynchronous audit event occurs that cannot be delivered because the audit queue has reached the high-water mark or because there are insufficient resources to construct an audit record. By default, records are dropped and a count is kept of the number of dropped records.
arge	Include the <code>execv(2)</code> system call environment arguments to the audit record. This information is not included by default.
argv	Include the <code>execv(2)</code> system call parameter arguments to the audit record. This information is not included by default.
cnt	Do not suspend processes when audit resources are exhausted. Instead, drop audit records and keep a count of the number of records dropped. By default, process are suspended until audit resources become available.
group	Include the supplementary group token in audit records. By default, the group token is not included.
none	Include no policies. If used in other than the global zone, the <code>ahlt</code> and <i>perzone</i> policies are not changed.

<code>path</code>	Add secondary path tokens to audit record. These are typically the pathnames of dynamically linked shared libraries or command interpreters for shell scripts. By default, they are not included.
<code>perzone</code>	Maintain separate configuration, queues, and logs for each zone and execute a separate version of <code>auditd(1M)</code> for each zone.
<code>public</code>	Audit public files. By default, read-type operations are not audited for certain files which meet <i>public</i> characteristics: owned by root, readable by all, and not writable by all.
<code>trail</code>	Include the trailer token in every audit record. By default, the trailer token is not included.
<code>seq</code>	Include the sequence token as part of every audit record. By default, the sequence token is not included. The sequence token attaches a sequence number to every audit record.
<code>windata_down</code>	Include in an audit record any downgraded data moved between windows. This policy is available only if the system is configured with Trusted Extensions. By default, this information is not included.
<code>windata_up</code>	Include in an audit record any upgraded data moved between windows. This policy is available only if the system is configured with Trusted Extensions. By default, this information is not included.
<code>zonename</code>	Include the zonename token as part of every audit record. By default, the zonename token is not included. The zonename token gives the name of the zone from which the audit record was generated.

`[-t] - setqbufsz buffer_size`

Set the audit queue write buffer size (bytes). Zero (0), indicates reset to no configured value.

`[-t] - setqctrl hiwater lowater bufisz interval`

Set the audit queue write buffer size (bytes), hiwater audit record count, lowater audit record count, and wakeup interval (ticks). Valid within a local zone only if perzone is set. Zero (0), indicates reset to no configured value.

`[-t] - setqdelay interval`

Set the audit queue wakeup interval (ticks). This determines the interval at which the kernel pokes the audit queue, to write audit records to the audit trail. Valid within a local zone only if perzone is set. Zero (0), indicates reset to no configured value.

`[-t] - setqhiwater hiwater`

Set the number of undelivered audit records in the audit queue at which audit record generation blocks. Valid within a local zone only if perzone is set. Zero (0), indicates reset to no configured value.

- `[-t] -setqlowater lowater`
 Set the number of undelivered audit records in the audit queue at which blocked auditing processes unblock. Valid within a local zone only if `perzone` is set. Zero (0), indicates reset to no configured value.
- `-setsmask asid flags`
 Set the preselection mask of all processes with the specified audit session ID. Valid within a local zone only if `perzone` is set.
- `-setstat`
 Reset audit statistics counters. Valid within a local zone only if `perzone` is set.
- `-setumask asid flags`
 Set the preselection mask of all processes with the specified audit ID. Valid within a local zone only if `perzone` is set.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Using `auditconfig`

The following is an example of an `auditconfig` program:

```
#
# map kernel audit event number 10 to the "fr" audit class
#
% auditconfig -setclass 10 fr

#
# turn on inclusion of exec arguments in exec audit records
#
% auditconfig -setpolicy +argv
```

Exit Status 0 Successful completion.

1 An error occurred.

Files `/etc/security/audit_event` Stores event definitions used in the audit system.

`/etc/security/audit_class` Stores class definitions used in the audit system.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Committed

See Also [audit\(1M\)](#), [auditd\(1M\)](#), [auditstat\(1M\)](#), [bsmconv\(1M\)](#), [praudit\(1M\)](#), [auditor\(2\)](#), [execv\(2\)](#), [audit_class\(4\)](#), [audit_control\(4\)](#), [audit_event\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [audit_binfile\(5\)](#)

See the section on Solaris Auditing in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

Notes If plugin output is selected using `audit_control(4)`, the behavior of the system with respect to the `-setpolicy+cnt` and the `-setqhiwater` options is modified slightly. If `-setpolicy+cnt` is set, data will continue to be sent to the selected plugin, even though output to the binary audit log is stopped, pending the freeing of disk space. If `-setpolicy-cnt` is used, the blocking behavior is as described under SUBCOMMANDS, above. The queue high water mark value is used within `auditd` as the upper bound for its queue limits unless overridden by means of the `qsize` attribute as described in `audit_control(4)`.

The `auditconfig` options that modify or display process-based information are not affected by the `perzone` policy. Those that modify system audit data such as the `terminalid` and `auditqueue` parameters are valid only in the global zone, unless the `perzone` policy is set. The display of a system audit reflects the local zone if `perzone` is set. Otherwise, it reflects the settings of the global zone.

The `-setcond` option has been removed. Use `audit(1M)` to enable or disable auditing.

The `-getfsize` and `-setfsize` options have been removed. Use `audit_binfile(5)` `p_fsize` to set the audit file size.

Name auditd – audit daemon

Synopsis /usr/sbin/auditd

Description The audit daemon, `auditd`, controls the generation and location of audit trail files and the generation of syslog messages based on the definitions in `audit_control(4)`. If auditing is enabled, `auditd` reads the `audit_control` file to do the following:

- reads the path to a library module for realtime conversion of audit data into syslog messages;
- reads other parameters specific to the selected plugin or plugins;
- obtains a list of directories into which audit files can be written;
- obtains the percentage limit for how much space to reserve on each filesystem before changing to the next directory.

`audit(1M)` is used to control `auditd`. It can cause `auditd` to:

- to enable `auditd` if not enabled;
- close the current audit file and open a new one;
- close the current audit file, re-read `/etc/security/audit_control` and open a new audit file;
- close the audit trail and terminate auditing.

Auditing Conditions The audit daemon invokes the program `audit_warn(1M)` under the following conditions with the indicated options:

`audit_warn soft pathname`

The file system upon which *pathname* resides has exceeded the minimum free space limit defined in `audit_control(4)`. A new audit trail has been opened on another file system.

`audit_warn allsoft`

All available file systems have been filled beyond the minimum free space limit. A new audit trail has been opened anyway.

`audit_warn hard pathname`

The file system upon which *pathname* resides has filled or for some reason become unavailable. A new audit trail has been opened on another file system.

`audit_warn allhard count`

All available file systems have been filled or for some reason become unavailable. The audit daemon will repeat this call to `audit_warn` at intervals of at least twenty seconds until space becomes available. *count* is the number of times that `audit_warn` has been called since the problem arose.

`audit_warn ebusy`

There is already an audit daemon running.

`audit_warn tmpfile`

The file `/etc/security/audit/audit_tmp` exists, indicating a fatal error.

`audit_warn nostart`

The internal system audit condition is `AUC_FCHDONE`. Auditing cannot be started without rebooting the system.

`audit_warn auditoff`

The internal system audit condition has been changed to not be `AUC_AUDITING` by someone other than the audit daemon. This causes the audit daemon to exit.

`audit_warn postsigterm`

An error occurred during the orderly shutdown of the auditing system.

`audit_warn getacdir`

There is a problem getting the directory list from `/etc/security/audit/audit_control`.

The audit daemon will hang in a sleep loop until this file is fixed.

Files `/etc/security/audit/audit_control`

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Committed

See Also [audit\(1M\)](#), [audit_warn\(1M\)](#), [bsmconv\(1M\)](#), [praudit\(1M\)](#), [auditon\(2\)](#), [audit.log\(4\)](#), [audit_control\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

See the section on Solaris Auditing in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

Notes If the audit policy `perzone` is set, `auditd` runs in each zone, starting automatically when the local zone boots. If a zone is running when the `perzone` policy is set, auditing must be started manually in local zones. It is not necessary to reboot the system or the local zone to start auditing in a local zone. `auditd` can be started with `"/usr/sbin/audit -s"` and will start automatically with future boots of the zone.

When `auditd` runs in a local zone, the configuration is taken from the local zone's `/etc/security` directory's files: `audit_control`, `audit_class`, `audit_user`, and `audit_event`.

Configuration changes do not affect audit sessions that are currently running, as the changes do not modify a process's preselection mask. To change the preselection mask on a running process, use the `--setpmask` option of the `auditconfig` command (see [auditconfig\(1M\)](#)). If the user logs out and logs back in, the new configuration changes will be reflected in the next audit session.

Name auditrecord – display Solaris audit record formats

Synopsis /usr/sbin/auditrecord [-d] [[-a] | [-e *string*] | [-c *class*] |
[-i *id*] | [-p *programname*] | [-s *systemcall*] | [-h]]

Description The audit record utility displays the event ID, audit class and selection mask, and record format for audit record event types defined in [audit_event\(4\)](#). You can use `auditrecord` to generate a list of all audit record formats, or to select audit record formats based on event class, event name, generating program name, system call name, or event ID.

There are two output formats. The default format is intended for display in a terminal window; the optional HTML format is intended for viewing with a web browser.

Tokens contained in square brackets ([]) are optional and might not be present in every record.

Options The following options are supported:

- a
List all audit records.
- c *class*
List all audit records selected by *class*. *class* is one of the two-character class codes from the file `/etc/security/audit_class`.
- d
Debug mode. Display number of audit records that are defined in `audit_event`, the number of classes defined in `audit_class`, any mismatches between the two files, and report which defined events do not have format information available to `auditrecord`.
- e *string*
List all audit records for which the event ID label contains the string *string*. The match is case insensitive.
- h
Generate the output in HTML format.
- i *id*
List the audit records having the numeric event ID *id*.
- p *programname*
List all audit records generated by the program *programname*, for example, audit records generated by a user-space program.
- s *systemcall*
List all audit records generated by the system call *systemcall*, for example, audit records generated by a system call.

The `-p` and `-s` options are different names for the same thing and are mutually exclusive. The `-a` option is ignored if any of `-c`, `-e`, `-i`, `-p`, or `-s` are given. Combinations of `-c`, `-e`, `-i`, and either `-p` or `-s` are ANDed together.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Displaying an Audit Record with a Specified Event ID

The following example shows how to display the contents of a specified audit record.

```
% auditrecord -i 6152
terminal login
program    /usr/sbin/login      see login(1)
           /usr/dt/bin/dtlogin See dtlogin
event ID   6152             AUE_login
class     lo                (0x00001000)
  header
  subject
  [text]
  return
           error message
```

EXAMPLE 2 Displaying an Audit Record with an Event ID Label that Contains a Specified String

The following example shows how to display the contents of a audit record with an event ID label that contains the string login.

```
# auditrecord -e login
terminal login
program    /usr/sbin/login      see login(1)
           /usr/dt/bin/dtlogin See dtlogin
event ID   6152             AUE_login
class     lo                (0x00001000)
  header
  subject
  [text]
  return
           error message

rlogin
program    /usr/sbin/login      see login(1) - rlogin
event ID   6155             AUE_rlogin
class     lo                (0x00001000)
  header
  subject
  [text]
  return
           error message
```

Exit Status 0
Successful operation

non-zero
Error

Files /etc/security/audit_class
Provides the list of valid classes and the associated audit mask.

/etc/security/audit_event

Provides the numeric event ID, the literal event name, and the name of the associated system call or program.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsr
CSI	Enabled
Interface Stability	Uncommitted

See Also [auditconfig\(1M\)](#), [praudit\(1M\)](#), [audit.log\(4\)](#), [audit_class\(4\)](#), [audit_event\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

See the section on Solaris Auditing in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

Diagnostics If unable to read either of its input files or to write its output file, `auditrecord` shows the name of the file on which it failed and exits with a non-zero return.

If no options are provided, if an invalid option is provided, or if both `-s` and `-p` are provided, an error message is displayed and `auditrecord` displays a usage message then exits with a non-zero return.

Notes This command was formerly known as `bsmrecord`.

If `/etc/security/audit_event` has been modified to add user-defined audit events, `auditrecord` displays the record format as undefined.

The audit records displayed by `auditrecord` are the core of the record that can be produced. Various audit policies and optional tokens, such as those shown below, might also be present.

The following is a list of [praudit\(1M\)](#) token names with their descriptions.

`group`

Present if the group audit policy is set.

`sensitivity label`

Present when Trusted Extensions is enabled and represents the label of the subject or object with which it is associated. The `mandatory_label` token is noted in the basic audit record where a label is explicitly part of the record.

`sequence`

Present when the seq audit policy is set.

`trailer`

Present when the `trail` audit policy is set.

zone

The name of the zone generating the record when the zonename audit policy is set. The zonename token is noted in the basic audit record where a zone name is explicitly part of the record.

Name auditreduce – merge and select audit records from audit trail files

Synopsis auditreduce [*options*] [*audit-trail-file*]...

Description auditreduce allows you to select or merge records from audit trail files. Audit files can be from one or more machines.

The merge function merges together audit records from one or more input audit trail files into a single output file. The records in an audit trail file are assumed to be sorted in chronological order (oldest first) and this order is maintained by auditreduce in the output file.

Unless instructed otherwise, auditreduce will merge the entire audit trail, which consists of all the audit trail files in the directory structure *audit_root_dir*/*/files (see [audit_control\(4\)](#) for details of the structure of the audit root). Unless specified with the -R or -S option, *audit_root_dir* defaults to /etc/security/audit. By using the file selection options it is possible to select some subset of these files, or files from another directory, or files named explicitly on the command line.

The select function allows audit records to be selected on the basis of numerous criteria relating to the record's content (see [audit.log\(4\)](#) for details of record content). A record must meet all of the *record-selection-option* criteria to be selected.

Audit Trail Filename Format Any audit trail file not named on the command line must conform to the audit trail filename format. Files produced by the audit system already have this format. Output file names produced by auditreduce are in this format. It is:

start-time . end-time . suffix

where *start-time* is the 14-character timestamp of when the file was opened, *end-time* is the 14-character timestamp of when the file was closed, and *suffix* is the name of the machine which generated the audit trail file, or some other meaningful suffix (for example, all, if the file contains a combined group of records from many machines). The *end-time* can be the literal string not_terminated, to indicate that the file is still being written to by the audit system. Timestamps are of the form *yyyymmddhhmmss* (year, month, day, hour, minute, second). The timestamps are in Greenwich Mean Time (GMT).

Options

File Selection Options The file selection options indicate which files are to be processed and certain types of special treatment.

-A

All of the records from the input files will be selected regardless of their timestamp. This option effectively disables the -a, -b, and -d options. This is useful in preventing the loss of records if the -D option is used to delete the input files after they are processed. Note, however, that if a record is *not* selected due to another option, then -A will not override that.

-C

Only process complete files. Files whose filename *end-time* timestamp is not `_terminated` are not processed (such a file is currently being written to by the audit system). This is useful in preventing the loss of records if `-D` is used to delete the input files after they are processed. It does not apply to files specified on the command line.

-D *suffix*

Delete input files after they are read if the entire run is successful. If `audit reduce` detects an error while reading a file, then that file is not deleted. If `-D` is specified, `-A`, `-C` and `-O` are also implied. *suffix* is given to the `-O` option. This helps prevent the loss of audit records by ensuring that all of the records are written, only complete files are processed, and the records are written to a file before being deleted. Note that if both `-D` and `-O` are specified in the command line, the order of specification is significant. The *suffix* associated with the latter specification is in effect.

-M *machine*

Allows selection of records from files with *machine* as the filename suffix. If `-M` is not specified, all files are processed regardless of suffix. `-M` can also be used to allow selection of records from files that contain combined records from many machines and have a common suffix (such as `all`).

-N

Select objects in *new mode*. This flag is off by default, thus retaining backward compatibility. In the existing, *old mode*, specifying the `-e`, `-f`, `-g`, `-r`, or `-u` flags would select not only actions taken with those IDs, but also certain objects owned by those IDs. When running in *new mode*, only actions are selected. In order to select objects, the `-o` option must be used.

-O *suffix*

Direct output stream to a file in the current `audit_root_dir` with the indicated suffix. *suffix* can alternatively contain a full pathname, in which case the last component is taken as the suffix, ahead of which the timestamps will be placed, ahead of which the remainder of the pathname will be placed. If the `-O` option is not specified, the output is sent to the standard output. When `audit reduce` places timestamps in the filename, it uses the times of the first and last records in the merge as the *start-time* and *end-time*.

-Q

Quiet. Suppress notification about errors with input files.

-R *pathname*

Specify the pathname of an alternate audit root directory `audit_root_dir` to be *pathname*. Therefore, rather than using `/etc/security/audit/*/files` by default, `pathname/*/files` will be examined instead.

Note – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the `-R` option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).

-S *server*

This option causes `auditreduce` to read audit trail files from a specific location (`server` directory). `server` is normally interpreted as the name of a subdirectory of the audit root, therefore `auditreduce` will look in `audit_root_dir/server/files` for the audit trail files. But if `server` contains any `'/'` characters, it is the name of a specific directory not necessarily contained in the audit root. In this case, `server/files` will be consulted. This option allows archived files to be manipulated easily, without requiring that they be physically located in a directory structure like that of `/etc/security/audit`.

-V

Verbose. Display the name of each file as it is opened, and how many records total were written to the output stream.

Record Selection Options The record selection options listed below are used to indicate which records are written to the output file produced by `auditreduce`.

Multiple arguments of the same type are not permitted.

-a *date-time*

Select records that occurred at or after *date-time*. The *date-time* argument is described under Option Arguments, below. *date-time* is in local time. The `-a` and `-b` options can be used together to form a range.

-b *date-time*

Select records that occurred before *date-time*.

-c *audit-classes*

Select records by audit class. Records with events that are mapped to the audit classes specified by *audit-classes* are selected. Audit class names are defined in `audit_class(4)`. The *audit-classes* can be a comma separated list of *audit flags* like those described in `audit_control(4)`. Using the *audit flags*, one can select records based upon success and failure criteria.

-d *date-time*

Select records that occurred on a specific day (a 24-hour period beginning at 00:00:00 of the day specified and ending at 23:59:59). The day specified is in local time. The time portion of the argument, if supplied, is ignored. Any records with timestamps during that day are selected. If any hours, minutes, or seconds are given in *time*, they are ignored. `-d` can not be used with `-a` or `-b`.

-e *effective-user*

Select records with the specified *effective-user*.

-f *effective-group*

Select records with the specified *effective-group*.

-g *real-group*

Select records with the specified *real-group*.

- j *subject-ID*
Select records with the specified *subject-ID* where *subject-ID* is a process ID.
- l *label*
Select records with the specified label (or label range), as explained under “Option Arguments,” below. This option is available only if the system is configured with Trusted Extensions.
- m *event*
Select records with the indicated *event*. The *event* is the literal string or the *event* number.
- o *object_type=objectID_value*
Select records by object type. A match occurs when the record contains the information describing the specified *object_type* and the object ID equals the value specified by *objectID_value*. The allowable object types and values are as follows:
 - file=pathname*
Select records containing file system objects with the specified pathname, where pathname is a comma separated list of regular expressions. If a regular expression is preceded by a tilde (~), files matching the expression are excluded from the output. For example, the option *file=~ /usr/openwin, /usr, /etc* would select all files in /usr or /etc except those in /usr/openwin. The order of the regular expressions is important because auditreduce processes them from left to right, and stops when a file is known to be either selected or excluded. Thus the option *file= /usr, /etc, ~ /usr/openwin* would select all files in /usr and all files in /etc. Files in /usr/openwin are not excluded because the regular expression /usr is matched first. Care should be given in surrounding the *pathname* with quotes so as to prevent the shell from expanding any tildes.
 - filegroup=group*
Select records containing file system objects with *group* as the owning group.
 - fileowner=user*
Select records containing file system objects with *user* as the owning user.
 - msgqid=ID*
Select records containing message queue objects with the specified *ID* where *ID* is a message queue ID.
 - msgqgroup=group*
Select records containing message queue objects with *group* as the owning or creating group.
 - msgqowner=user*
Select records containing message queue objects with *user* as the owning or creating user.
 - pid=ID*
Select records containing process objects with the specified *ID* where *ID* is a process ID. Process are objects when they are receivers of signals.

procgroup=group

Select records containing process objects with *group* as the real or effective group.

procowner=user

Select records containing process objects with *user* as the real or effective user.

semid=ID

Select records containing semaphore objects with the specified *ID* where *ID* is a semaphore ID.

semgroup=group

Select records containing semaphore objects with *group* as the owning or creating group.

semowner=user

Select records containing semaphore objects with *user* as the owning or creating user.

shmid=ID

Select records containing shared memory objects with the specified *ID* where *ID* is a shared memory ID.

shmgroup=group

Select records containing shared memory objects with *group* as the owning or creating group.

shmowner=user

Select records containing shared memory objects with *user* as the owning or creating user.

sock=port_number|machine

Select records containing socket objects with the specified *port_number* or the specified *machine* where *machine* is a machine name as defined in [hosts\(4\)](#).

fmri=service instance

Select records containing fault management resource identifier (FMRI) objects with the specified *service instance*. See [smf\(5\)](#).

-r *real-user*

Select records with the specified *real-user*.

-s *session-id*

Select audit records with the specified *session-id*.

-u *audit-user*

Select records with the specified *audit-user*.

-z *zone-name*

Select records from the specified zone name. The zone name selection is case-sensitive.

When one or more *filename* arguments appear on the command line, only the named files are processed. Files specified in this way need not conform to the audit trail filename format.

However, `-M`, `-S`, and `-R` must not be used when processing named files. If the *filename* is “-” then the input is taken from the standard input.

Option Arguments *audit-trail-file*

An audit trail file as defined in [audit.log\(4\)](#). An audit trail file not named on the command line must conform to the audit trail file name format. Audit trail files produced as output of `audit reduce` are in this format as well. The format is:

start-time . end-time . suffix

start-time is the 14 character time stamp denoting when the file was opened. *end-time* is the 14 character time stamp denoting when the file was closed. *end-time* can also be the literal string `not_terminated`, indicating the file is still be written to by the audit daemon or the file was not closed properly (a system crash or abrupt halt occurred). *suffix* is the name of the machine that generated the audit trail file (or some other meaningful suffix; for example, `all` would be a good suffix if the audit trail file contains a combined group of records from many machines).

date-time

The *date-time* argument to `-a`, `-b`, and `-d` can be of two forms: An absolute *date-time* takes the form:

yyyymmdd [hh [mm [ss]]]

where *yyyy* specifies a year (with 1970 as the earliest value), *mm* is the month (01-12), *dd* is the day (01-31), *hh* is the hour (00-23), *mm* is the minute (00-59), and *ss* is the second (00-59). The default is 00 for *hh*, *mm* and *ss*.

An offset can be specified as: `+n d|h|m|s` where *n* is a number of units, and the tags `d`, `h`, `m`, and `s` stand for days, hours, minutes and seconds, respectively. An offset is relative to the starting time. Thus, this form can only be used with the `-b` option.

event

The literal string or ordinal event number as found in [audit_event\(4\)](#). If *event* is not found in the `audit_event` file it is considered invalid.

group

The literal string or ordinal group ID number as found in [group\(4\)](#). If *group* is not found in the `group` file it is considered invalid. *group* can be negative.

label

The literal string representation of a MAC label or a range of two valid MAC labels. To specify a range, use `x;y` where *x* and *y* are valid MAC labels. Only those records that are fully bounded by *x* and *y* will be selected. If *x* or *y* is omitted, the default uses `ADMIN_LOW` or `ADMIN_HIGH` respectively. Notice that quotes must be used when specifying a range.

pathname

A regular expression describing a pathname.

user

The literal username or ordinal user ID number as found in `passwd(4)`. If the username is not found in the `passwd` file it is considered invalid. *user* can be negative.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 The `auditreduce` command

`praudit(1M)` is available to display audit records in a human-readable form.

This will display the entire audit trail in a human-readable form:

```
% auditreduce | praudit
```

If all the audit trail files are being combined into one large file, then deleting the original files could be desirable to prevent the records from appearing twice:

```
% auditreduce -V -D /etc/security/audit/combined/all
```

This displays what user `milner` did on April 13, 1988. The output is displayed in a human-readable form to the standard output:

```
% auditreduce -d 19880413 -u milner | praudit
```

The above example might produce a large volume of data if `milner` has been busy. Perhaps looking at only login and logout times would be simpler. The `-c` option will select records from a specified class:

```
% auditreduce -d 19880413 -u milner -c lo | praudit
```

To see `milner`'s login/logout activity for April 13, 14, and 15, the following is used. The results are saved to a file in the current working directory. Notice that the name of the output file will have `milnerlo` as the *suffix*, with the appropriate timestamp prefixes. Notice also that the long form of the name is used for the `-c` option:

```
% auditreduce -a 19880413 -b +3d -u milner -c login_logout -O milnerlo
```

To follow `milner`'s movement about the file system on April 13, 14, and 15 the `chdir` record types could be viewed. Notice that in order to get the same time range as the above example we needed to specify the `-b` time as the day *after* our range. This is because `19880416` defaults to midnight of that day, and records before that fall on `0415`, the end-day of the range.

```
% auditreduce -a 19880413 -b 19880416 -u milner -m AUE_CHDIR | praudit
```

In this example, the audit records are being collected in summary form (the login/logout records only). The records are being written to a summary file in a different directory than the normal audit root to prevent the selected records from existing twice in the audit root.

```
% auditreduce -d 19880330 -c lo -O /etc/security/audit_summary/logins
```

If activity for user ID 9944 has been observed, but that user is not known to the system administrator, then the command in the following example searches the entire audit trail for any records generated by that user. `auditreduce` queries the system about the current validity of ID 9944 and displays a warning message if it is not currently active:

EXAMPLE 1 The `auditreduce` command (Continued)

```
% auditreduce -O /etc/security/audit_suspect/user9944 -u 9944
```

To get an audit log of only the global zone:

```
% auditreduce -z global
```

Files `/etc/security/audit/server/files/*` location of audit trails, when stored

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	See below.

The command invocation is Stable. The binary file format is Stable. The binary file contents is Unstable.

See Also [bsmconv\(1M\)](#), [praudit\(1M\)](#), [audit.log\(4\)](#), [audit_class\(4\)](#), [audit_control\(4\)](#), [group\(4\)](#), [hosts\(4\)](#), [passwd\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

See the section on Solaris Auditing in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

Diagnostics `auditreduce` displays error messages if there are command line errors and then exits. If there are fatal errors during the run, `auditreduce` displays an explanatory message and exits. In this case, the output file might be in an inconsistent state (no trailer or partially written record) and `auditreduce` displays a warning message before exiting. Successful invocation returns 0 and unsuccessful invocation returns 1.

Since `auditreduce` might be processing a large number of input files, it is possible that the machine-wide limit on open files will be exceeded. If this happens, `auditreduce` displays a message to that effect, give information on how many file there are, and exit.

If `auditreduce` displays a record's timestamp in a diagnostic message, that time is in local time. However, when filenames are displayed, their timestamps are in GMT.

Bugs Conjunction, disjunction, negation, and grouping of record selection options should be allowed.

Notes The functionality described in this man page is available only if the Solaris Auditing has been enabled. See [bsmconv\(1M\)](#) for more information.

The `-z` option should be used only if the audit policy zonename is set. If there is no zonename token, then no records will be selected.

Name auditstat – display kernel audit statistics

Synopsis auditstat [-c *count*] [-h *numlines*] [-i *interval*] [-n]
[-T u | d] [-v]

Description auditstat displays kernel audit statistics. The fields displayed are as follows:

aud	The total number of audit records processed by the audit(2) system call.
ctl	This field is obsolete.
drop	The total number of audit records that have been dropped. Records are dropped according to the kernel audit policy. See auditon(2) , AUDIT_CNT policy for details.
enq	The total number of audit records put on the kernel audit queue.
gen	The total number of audit records that have been constructed (not the number written).
kern	The total number of audit records produced by user processes (as a result of system calls).
mem	The total number of Kbytes of memory currently in use by the kernel audit module.
nona	The total number of non-attributable audit records that have been constructed. These are audit records that are not attributable to any particular user.
rblk	The total number of times that the audit queue has blocked waiting to process audit data.
tot	The total number of Kbytes of audit data written to the audit trail.
wblk	The total number of times that user processes blocked on the audit queue at the high water mark.
wrtn	The total number of audit records written. The difference between enq and wrtn is the number of outstanding audit records on the audit queue that have not been written.

Options -c <i>count</i>	Display the statistics a total of <i>count</i> times. If <i>count</i> is equal to zero, statistics are displayed indefinitely. A time interval must be specified.
-h <i>numlines</i>	Display a header for every <i>numlines</i> of statistics printed. The default is to display the header every 20 lines. If <i>numlines</i> is equal to zero, the header is never displayed.
-i <i>interval</i>	Display the statistics every <i>interval</i> where <i>interval</i> is the number of seconds to sleep between each collection.
-n	Display the number of kernel audit events currently configured.
-T u d	Display a time stamp.

Specify `u` for a printed representation of the internal representation of time. See [time\(2\)](#). Specify `d` for standard date format. See [date\(1\)](#).

`-v` Display the version number of the kernel audit module software.

Exit Status `auditstat` returns 0 upon success and 1 upon failure.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [auditconfig\(1M\)](#), [praudit\(1M\)](#), [bsmconv\(1M\)](#), [audit\(2\)](#), [auditon\(2\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes The functionality described in this man page is available only if Solaris Auditing has been enabled. See [bsmconv\(1M\)](#) for more information.

Name audit_warn – audit daemon warning script

Synopsis /etc/security/audit_warn [*option* [*arguments*]]

Description The audit_warn utility processes warning or error messages from the audit daemon. When a problem is encountered, the audit daemon, [auditd\(1M\)](#) calls audit_warn with the appropriate arguments. The *option* argument specifies the error type.

The system administrator can specify a list of mail recipients to be notified when an audit_warn situation arises by defining a mail alias called audit_warn in [aliases\(4\)](#). The users that make up the audit_warn alias are typically the audit and root users.

Options The following options are supported:

allhard <i>count</i>	Indicates that the hard limit for all filesystems has been exceeded <i>count</i> times. The default action for this option is to send mail to the audit_warn alias only if the <i>count</i> is 1, and to write a message to the machine console every time. It is recommended that mail <i>not</i> be sent every time as this could result in a the saturation of the file system that contains the mail spool directory.
allsoft	Indicates that the soft limit for all filesystems has been exceeded. The default action for this option is to send mail to the audit_warn alias and to write a message to the machine console.
auditoff	Indicates that someone other than the audit daemon changed the system audit state to something other than AUC_AUDITING. The audit daemon will have exited in this case. The default action for this option is to send mail to the audit_warn alias and to write a message to the machine console.
ebusy	Indicates that the audit daemon is already running. The default action for this option is to send mail to the audit_warn alias and to write a message to the machine console.
getacdir <i>count</i>	Indicates that there is a problem getting the directory list or plugin list from audit_control(4) . The audit daemon will hang in a sleep loop until the file is fixed. The default action for this option is to send mail to the audit_warn alias only if <i>count</i> is 1, and to write a message to the machine console every time. It is recommended that mail <i>not</i> be sent every time as this could result in a the saturation of the file system that contains the mail spool directory.

<i>hard filename</i>	Indicates that the hard limit for the file has been exceeded. The default action for this option is to send mail to the <code>audit_warn</code> alias and to write a message to the machine console.														
<code>nostart</code>	Indicates that auditing could not be started. The default action for this option is to send mail to the <code>audit_warn</code> alias and to write a message to the machine console. Some administrators may prefer to modify <code>audit_warn</code> to reboot the system when this error occurs.														
<i>plugin name error count text</i>	<p>Indicates that an error occurred during execution of the <code>auditd</code> plugin <i>name</i>. The default action for this option is to send mail to the <code>audit_warn</code> alias only if <i>count</i> is 1, and to write a message to the machine console every time. (Separate counts are kept for each error type.) It is recommended that mail not be sent every time as this could result in the saturation of the file system that contains the mail spool directory. The <i>text</i> field provides the detailed error message passed from the plugin. The <i>error</i> field is one of the following strings:</p> <table><tr><td><code>load_error</code></td><td>Unable to load the plugin <i>name</i>.</td></tr><tr><td><code>sys_error</code></td><td>The plugin <i>name</i> is not executing due to a system error such as a lack of resources.</td></tr><tr><td><code>config_error</code></td><td>No plugins loaded (including the binary file plugin, <code>audit_binfile(5)</code>) due to configuration errors in <code>audit_control(4)</code>. The name string is -- to indicate that no plugin name applies.</td></tr><tr><td><code>retry</code></td><td>The plugin <i>name</i> reports it has encountered a temporary failure. For example, the <code>audit_binfree.so</code> plugin uses <code>retry</code> to indicate that all directories are full.</td></tr><tr><td><code>no_memory</code></td><td>The plugin <i>name</i> reports a failure due to lack of memory.</td></tr><tr><td><code>invalid</code></td><td>The plugin <i>name</i> reports it received an invalid input.</td></tr><tr><td><code>failure</code></td><td>The plugin <i>name</i> has reported an error as described in <i>text</i>.</td></tr></table>	<code>load_error</code>	Unable to load the plugin <i>name</i> .	<code>sys_error</code>	The plugin <i>name</i> is not executing due to a system error such as a lack of resources.	<code>config_error</code>	No plugins loaded (including the binary file plugin, <code>audit_binfile(5)</code>) due to configuration errors in <code>audit_control(4)</code> . The name string is -- to indicate that no plugin name applies.	<code>retry</code>	The plugin <i>name</i> reports it has encountered a temporary failure. For example, the <code>audit_binfree.so</code> plugin uses <code>retry</code> to indicate that all directories are full.	<code>no_memory</code>	The plugin <i>name</i> reports a failure due to lack of memory.	<code>invalid</code>	The plugin <i>name</i> reports it received an invalid input.	<code>failure</code>	The plugin <i>name</i> has reported an error as described in <i>text</i> .
<code>load_error</code>	Unable to load the plugin <i>name</i> .														
<code>sys_error</code>	The plugin <i>name</i> is not executing due to a system error such as a lack of resources.														
<code>config_error</code>	No plugins loaded (including the binary file plugin, <code>audit_binfile(5)</code>) due to configuration errors in <code>audit_control(4)</code> . The name string is -- to indicate that no plugin name applies.														
<code>retry</code>	The plugin <i>name</i> reports it has encountered a temporary failure. For example, the <code>audit_binfree.so</code> plugin uses <code>retry</code> to indicate that all directories are full.														
<code>no_memory</code>	The plugin <i>name</i> reports a failure due to lack of memory.														
<code>invalid</code>	The plugin <i>name</i> reports it received an invalid input.														
<code>failure</code>	The plugin <i>name</i> has reported an error as described in <i>text</i> .														

postsigterm	Indicates that an error occurred during the orderly shutdown of the audit daemon. The default action for this option is to send mail to the <code>audit_warn</code> alias and to write a message to the machine console.
soft <i>filename</i>	Indicates that the soft limit for <i>filename</i> has been exceeded. The default action for this option is to send mail to the <code>audit_warn</code> alias and to write a message to the machine console.
tmpfile	Indicates that the temporary audit file already exists indicating a fatal error. The default action for this option is to send mail to the <code>audit_warn</code> alias and to write a message to the machine console.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsr
Interface Stability	Evolving

The interface stability is evolving. The file content is unstable.

See Also [audit\(1M\)](#), [auditd\(1M\)](#), [bsmconv\(1M\)](#), [aliases\(4\)](#), [audit.log\(4\)](#), [audit_control\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

See the section on Solaris Auditing in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

Notes This functionality is available only if the Solaris Auditing feature has been enabled. See [bsmconv\(1M\)](#) for more information.

If the audit policy `perzone` is set, the `/etc/security/audit_warn` script for the local zone is used for notifications from the local zone's instance of `auditd`. If the `perzone` policy is not set, all `auditd` errors are generated by the global zone's copy of `/etc/security/audit_warn`.

Name automount – install automatic mount points

Synopsis /usr/sbin/automount [-t *duration*] [-v]

Description The automount utility installs auto_{fs} mount points and associates an automount map with each mount point. It starts the [automountd\(1M\)](#) daemon if it finds any non-trivial entries in either local or distributed automount maps and if the daemon is not already running. The auto_{fs} file system monitors attempts to access directories within it and notifies the [automountd\(1M\)](#) daemon. The daemon uses the map to locate a file system, which it then mounts at the point of reference within the auto_{fs} file system. A map can be assigned to an auto_{fs} mount using an entry in the /etc/auto_master map or a direct map.

If the file system is not accessed within an appropriate interval (10 minutes by default), the automountd daemon unmounts the file system.

The file /etc/auto_master determines the locations of all auto_{fs} mount points. By default, this file contains three entries:

```
# Master map for automounter
#
+auto_master
/net          -hosts      -nosuid
/home         auto_home
```

The +auto_master entry is a reference to an external NIS master map. If one exists, then its entries are read as if they occurred in place of the +auto_master entry. The remaining entries in the master file specify a directory on which an auto_{fs} mount will be made followed by the automounter map to be associated with it. Optional mount options may be supplied as an optional third field in the each entry. These options are used for any entries in the map that do not specify mount options explicitly. The automount command is usually run without arguments. It compares the entries /etc/auto_master with the current list of auto_{fs} mounts in /etc/mnttab and adds, removes or updates auto_{fs} mounts to bring the /etc/mnttab up to date with the /etc/auto_master. At boot time it installs all auto_{fs} mounts from the master map. Subsequently, it may be run to install auto_{fs} mounts for new entries in the master map or the direct map, or to perform unmounts for entries that have been removed from these maps.

Automount with Solaris Trusted Extensions If a system is configured with Solaris Trusted Extensions, additional processing is performed to facilitate multilevel home directory access. A list of zones whose labels are dominated by the current zone is generated and default auto_home automount maps are generated if they do not currently exist. These automount maps are named auto_home_<zonename>, where <zonename> is the name of each zone's lower-level zone. An auto_{fs} mount of each such auto_home map is then performed, regardless of whether it is explicitly or implicitly listed in the master map. Instead of auto_{fs} mounting the standard auto_home map, the zone uses an auto_home file appended with its own zone name. Each zone's auto_home map is uniquely named so that it can be maintained and shared by all zones using a common name server.

By default, the home directories of lower-level zones are mounted read-only under `/zone/<zonename>/export/home` when each zone is booted. The default `auto_home_<zonename>` automount map specifies that path as the source directory for an `lofs` remount onto `/zone/<zonename>/home/<username>`. For example, the file `auto_home_public`, as generated from a higher level zone would contain:

```
+auto_home_public
* -fstype=lofs :/zone/public/export/home/&
```

When a home directory is referenced and the name does not match any other keys in the `auto_home_public` map, it will match this loopback mount specification. If this loopback match occurs and the name corresponds to a valid user whose home directory does not exist in the public zone, the directory is automatically created on behalf of the user.

Options The following options are supported:

- t *duration* Specifies a *duration*, in seconds, that a file system is to remain mounted when not in use. The default is 10 minutes.
- v Verbose mode. Notifies of `autofs` mounts, unmounts, or other non-essential information.

Usage

Map Entry Format A simple map entry (mapping) takes the form:

```
key [ -mount-options ] location . . .
```

where *key* is the full pathname of the directory to mount when used in a direct map, or the simple name of a subdirectory in an indirect map. *mount-options* is a comma-separated list of mount options, and *location* specifies a file system from which the directory may be mounted. In the case of a simple NFS mount, the options that can be used are as specified in [mount_nfs\(1M\)](#), and *location* takes the form:

```
host: pathname
```

host is the name of the host from which to mount the file system, and *pathname* is the absolute pathname of the directory to mount.

Options to other file systems are documented on the other `mount_*` reference manual pages, for example, [mount_cacheofs\(1M\)](#).

Replicated File Systems Multiple *location* fields can be specified for replicated NFS file systems, in which case `automount` and the kernel will each try to use that information to increase availability. If the read-only flag is set in the map entry, `automountd` mounts a list of locations that the kernel may use, sorted by several criteria. Only locations available at mount time will be mounted, and thus be available to the kernel. When a server does not respond, the kernel will switch to an alternate server. The sort ordering of `automount` is used to determine how the next server is

chosen. If the read-only flag is not set, automount will mount the best single location, chosen by the same sort ordering, and new servers will only be chosen when an unmount has been possible, and a remount is done. Servers on the same local subnet are given the strongest preference, and servers on the local net are given the second strongest preference. Among servers equally far away, response times will determine the order if no weighting factors (see below) are used.

If the list includes server locations using both the NFS Version 2 Protocol and the NFS Version 3 Protocol, automount will choose only a subset of the server locations on the list, so that all entries will be the same protocol. It will choose servers with the NFS Version 3 Protocol so long as an NFS Version 2 Protocol server on a local subnet will not be ignored. See the [System Administration Guide: IP Services](#) for additional details.

If each *location* in the list shares the same *pathname* then a single *location* may be used with a comma-separated list of hostnames:

```
hostname,hostname . . . : pathname
```

Requests for a server may be weighted, with the weighting factor appended to the server name as an integer in parentheses. Servers without a weighting are assumed to have a value of zero (most likely to be selected). Progressively higher values decrease the chance of being selected. In the example,

```
man -ro alpha,bravo,charlie(1),delta(4) : /usr/man
```

hosts `alpha` and `bravo` have the highest priority; host `delta` has the lowest.

Server proximity takes priority in the selection process. In the example above, if the server `delta` is on the same network segment as the client, but the others are on different network segments, then `delta` will be selected; the weighting value is ignored. The weighting has effect only when selecting between servers with the same network proximity. The automounter always selects the localhost over other servers on the same network segment, regardless of weighting.

In cases where each server has a different export point, the weighting can still be applied. For example:

```
man -ro alpha:/usr/man bravo,charlie(1):/usr/share/man
      delta(3):/export/man
```

A mapping can be continued across input lines by escaping the NEWLINE with a backslash (`\`). Comments begin with a number sign (`#`) and end at the subsequent NEWLINE.

Map Key Substitution The ampersand (`&`) character is expanded to the value of the key field for the entry in which it occurs. In this case:

```
jane sparcserver : /home/&
```

the `&` expands to `jane`.

Wildcard Key The asterisk (`*`) character, when supplied as the key field, is recognized as the catch-all entry. Such an entry will match any key not previously matched. For instance, if the following entry appeared in the indirect map for `/config`:

```
*          & : /export/config/&
```

this would allow automatic mounts in `/config` of any remote file system whose location could be specified as:

```
hostname : /export/config/hostname
```

Note that the wildcard key does not work in conjunction with the `-browse` option.

Variable Substitution Client specific variables can be used within an `automount` map. For instance, if `$HOST` appeared within a map, `automount` would expand it to its current value for the client's host name. Supported variables are:

ARCH	The output of <code>arch</code>	The architecture name. For example, <code>sun4</code> on a <code>sun4u</code> machine.
CPU	The output of <code>uname -p</code>	The processor type. For example, "sparc"
HOST	The output of <code>uname -n</code>	The host name. For example, <code>myhost</code> .
KARCH	The output of <code>arch -k</code> or <code>uname -m</code>	The kernel architecture name or machine hardware name. For example, <code>sun4u</code> .
OSNAME	The output of <code>uname -s</code>	The OS name. For example, "SunOS"
OSREL	The output of <code>uname -r</code>	The OS release name. For example "5.3"
OSVERS	The output of <code>uname -v</code>	The OS version. For example, "beta1.0"
NATISA	The output of <code>isainfo -n</code>	The native instruction set architecture for the system.

		For example, "sparcv9"
PLATFORM	The output of uname -i	The platform name. For example, SUNW, Sun-Fire-V240.

If a reference needs to be protected from affixed characters, you can surround the variable name with curly braces ({ }).

Multiple Mounts A multiple mount entry takes the form:

```
key [-mount-options] [ [mountpoint] [-mount-options] location. . . ] . . .
```

The initial `/[mountpoint]` is optional for the first mount and mandatory for all subsequent mounts. The optional `mountpoint` is taken as a pathname relative to the directory named by key. If `mountpoint` is omitted in the first occurrence, a `mountpoint` of `/` (root) is implied.

Given an entry in the indirect map for `/src`

```
beta    -ro\
/       svr1,svr2:/export/src/beta \
/1.0    svr1,svr2:/export/src/beta/1.0 \
/1.0/man svr1,svr2:/export/src/beta/1.0/man
```

All offsets must exist on the server under `beta`. `automount` will automatically mount `/src/beta`, `/src/beta/1.0`, and `/src/beta/1.0/man`, as needed, from either `svr1` or `svr2`, whichever host is nearest and responds first.

Other File System Types The automounter assumes NFS mounts as a default file system type. Other file system types can be described using the `fstype` mount option. Other mount options specific to this file system type can be combined with the `fstype` option. The location field must contain information specific to the file system type. If the location field begins with a slash, a colon character must be prepended, for instance, to mount a CD file system:

```
cdrom -fstype=hsfs,ro : /dev/sr0
```

or to perform an `autofs` mount:

```
src -fstype=autofs auto_src
```

Use this procedure only if you are not using Volume Manager.

Mounts using CacheFS are most useful when applied to an entire map as map defaults. The following entry in the master map describes cached home directory mounts. It assumes the default location of the cache directory, `/cache`.

```
/home auto_home -fstype =cachefs,backfstype=nfs
```

See the NOTES section for information on option inheritance.

Indirect Maps An indirect map allows you to specify mappings for the subdirectories you wish to mount under the directory indicated on the command line. In an indirect map, each key consists of a simple name that refers to one or more file systems that are to be mounted as needed.

Direct Maps Entries in a direct map are associated directly with `autofs` mount points. Each *key* is the full pathname of an `autofs` mount point. The direct map as a whole is not associated with any single directory.

Direct maps are distinguished from indirect maps by the `/-` key. For example:

```
# Master map for automounter
#
+auto_master
/net          -hosts          -nosuid,nobrowse
/home        auto_home        -nobrowse
/-           auto_direct
```

Included Maps The contents of another map can be included within a map with an entry of the form

```
+mapname
```

If *mapname* begins with a slash, it is assumed to be the pathname of a local file. Otherwise, the location of the map is determined by the policy of the name service switch according to the entry for the automounter in `/etc/nsswitch.conf`, such as

```
automount: files nis
```

If the name service is `files`, then the name is assumed to be that of a local file in `/etc`. If the key being searched for is not found in the included map, the search continues with the next entry.

Special Maps There are two special maps available: `-hosts` and `-null`. The `-hosts` map is used with the `/net` directory and assumes that the map key is the hostname of an NFS server. The `automountd` daemon dynamically constructs a map entry from the server's list of exported file systems. References to a directory under `/net/hermes` will refer to the corresponding directory relative to `hermes` root.

The `-null` map cancels a previous map for the directory indicated. This is most useful in the `/etc/auto_master` for cancelling entries that would otherwise be inherited from the `+auto_master` include entry. To be effective, the `-null` entries must be inserted before the included map entry.

Executable Maps Local maps that have the execute bit set in their file permissions will be executed by the automounter and provided with a key to be looked up as an argument. The executable map is expected to return the content of an automounter map entry on its `stdout` or no output if the entry cannot be determined. A direct map cannot be made executable.

Configuration and the auto_master Map When initiated without arguments, automount consults the master map for a list of autofs mount points and their maps. It mounts any autofs mounts that are not already mounted, and unmounts autofs mounts that have been removed from the master map or direct map.

The master map is assumed to be called `auto_master` and its location is determined by the name service switch policy. Normally the master map is located initially as a local file `/etc/auto_master`.

Browsing The automount daemon supports browsability of indirect maps. This allows all of the potential mount points to be visible, whether or not they are mounted. The `-nobrowse` option can be added to any indirect autofs map to disable browsing. For example:

```
/net      -hosts      -nosuid,nobrowse
/home     auto_home
```

In this case, any *hostnames* would only be visible in `/net` after they are mounted, but all potential mount points would be visible under `/home`. The `-browse` option enables browsability of autofs file systems. This is the default for all indirect maps.

The `-browse` option does not work in conjunction with the wildcard key.

Restricting Mount Maps Options specified for a map are used as the default options for all the entries in that map. They are ignored when map entries specify their own mount options.

In some cases, however, it is desirable to force `nosuid`, `nodevices`, `noexec`, or `noexec` for a complete mount map and its submounts. This can be done by specifying the additional mount option, `-restrict`.

```
/home     auto_home     -restrict,nosuid,hard
```

The `-restrict` option forces the inheritance of all the restrictive options `nosuid`, `nodevices`, `noexec`, and `noexec` as well as the `restrict` option itself. In this particular example, the `nosuid` and `restrict` option are inherited but the `hard` option is not. The `restrict` option also prevents the execution of “executable maps” and is enforced for auto mounts established by programs with fewer than all privileges available in their zone.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 An error occurred.

Files

<code>/etc/auto_master</code>	Master automount map.
<code>/etc/auto_home</code>	Map to support automounted home directories.
<code>/etc/default/autofs</code>	Supplies default values for parameters for automount and automountd. See autofs(4) .
<code>/etc/nsswitch.conf</code>	Name service switch configuration file. See nsswitch.conf(4) .

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [isainfo\(1\)](#), [ls\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [uname\(1\)](#), [automountd\(1M\)](#), [mount\(1M\)](#), [mount_cachefs\(1M\)](#), [mount_nfs\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [autofs\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [nfssec\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

System Administration Guide: IP Services

Notes [autofs](#) mount points must not be hierarchically related. [automount](#) does not allow an [autofs](#) mount point to be created within another [autofs](#) mount.

Since each direct map entry results in a new [autofs](#) mount such maps should be kept short.

Entries in both direct and indirect maps can be modified at any time. The new information is used when [automountd](#) next uses the map entry to do a mount.

New entries added to a master map or direct map will not be useful until the [automount](#) command is run to install them as new [autofs](#) mount points. New entries added to an indirect map may be used immediately.

As of the Solaris 2.6 release, a listing (see [ls\(1\)](#)) of the [autofs](#) directory associated with an indirect map shows all potential mountable entries. The attributes associated with the potential mountable entries are temporary. The real file system attributes will only be shown once the file system has been mounted.

Default mount options can be assigned to an entire map when specified as an optional third field in the master map. These options apply only to map entries that have no mount options. Note that map entities with options override the default options, as at this time, the options do not concatenate. The concatenation feature is planned for a future release.

When operating on a map that invokes an NFS mount, the default number of retries for the [automounter](#) is 0, that is, a single mount attempt, with no retries. Note that this is significantly different from the default (10000) for the [mount_nfs\(1M\)](#) utility.

The Network Information Service (NIS) was formerly known as Sun Yellow Pages (YP). The functionality of the two remains the same.

The [automount](#) service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/filesystem/autofs:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name automountd – autofs mount/unmount daemon

Synopsis automountd [-Tvn] [-D *name=value*]

Description automountd is an RPC server that answers file system mount and unmount requests from the autofs file system. It uses local files or name service maps to locate file systems to be mounted. These maps are described with the [automount\(1M\)](#) command.

If automount finds any non-trivial entries in either the local or distributed automount maps and if the daemon is not running already, the automountd daemon is automatically invoked by [automount\(1M\)](#). automountd enables the `svc:/network/nfs/nlockmgr` service ([lockd\(1M\)](#)), and the `svc:/network/nfs/status` service ([statd\(1M\)](#)), if NFS mounts need to be done.

At startup, the automountd daemon is invoked as is invoked as the `system/filesystem/autofs:default` service. See NOTES.

Options The following options are supported:

- D *name=value* Assign *value* to the indicated automount map substitution variable. These assignments cannot be used to substitute variables in the master map `auto_master`.
- n Turn off browsing for all autofs mount points. This option overrides the `-browse` autofs map option on the local host.
- T Trace. Expand each RPC call and display it on the standard output.
- v Verbose. Log status messages to the console.

Usage See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of automountd when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (2^{31} bytes).

Files `/etc/auto_master` Master map for automounter.
`/etc/default/autofs` Supplies default values for parameters for automount and automountd. See [autofs\(4\)](#).

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [automount\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [autofs\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Notes The automountd service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

`svc:/system/filesystem/autofs`

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using `svcadm(1M)`. The service's status can be queried using `svcs(1)`. If it is disabled, it is enabled by `automount(1M)` unless the `application/auto_enable` property is set to `false`.

Name autopush – configures lists of automatically pushed STREAMS modules

Synopsis autopush -f *filename*

autopush -g -M *major* -m *minor*

autopush -r -M *major* -m *minor*

Description The autopush command configures the list of modules to be automatically pushed onto the stream when a device is opened. It can also be used to remove a previous setting or get information on a setting.

Options The following options are supported:

-f *filename*

Sets up the autopush configuration for each driver according to the information stored in *filename*. An autopush file consists of lines of four or more fields, separated by spaces as shown below:

```
major minor last-minor module1 module2 . . . module8
```

The first field is a string that specifies the *major* device name, as listed in the `/kernel/drv` directory. The next two fields are integers that specify the *minor* device number and *last-minor* device number. The fields following represent the names of modules. If *minor* is `-1`, then all minor devices of a major driver specified by *major* are configured, and the value for *last-minor* is ignored. If *last-minor* is `0`, then only a single minor device is configured. To configure a range of minor devices for a particular major, *minor* must be less than *last-minor*.

The remaining fields list the names of modules to be automatically pushed onto the stream when opened, along with the position of an optional anchor. The maximum number of modules that can be pushed is eight. The modules are pushed in the order they are specified. The optional special character sequence `[anchor]` indicates that a STREAMS anchor should be placed on the stream at the module previously specified in the list; it is an error to specify more than one anchor or to have an anchor first in the list.

A nonzero exit status indicates that one or more of the lines in the specified file failed to complete successfully.

-g

Gets the current configuration setting of a particular *major* and *minor* device number specified with the `-M` and `-m` options respectively and displays the autopush modules associated with it. It will also return the starting minor device number if the request corresponds to a setting of a range (as described with the `-f` option).

-m *minor*

Specifies the minor device number.

-M *major*

Specifies the major device number.

-r

Removes the previous configuration setting of the particular *major* and *minor* device number specified with the *-M* and *-m* options respectively. If the values of *major* and *minor* correspond to a previously established setting of a range of minor devices, where *minor* matches the first minor device number in the range, the configuration would be removed for the entire range.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0

Successful completion.

non-zero

An error occurred.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Using the autopush command.

The following example gets the current configuration settings for the *major* and *minor* device numbers as indicated and displays the autopush modules associated with them for the character-special device `/dev/term/a`:

```
example# autopush -g -M 29 -m 0
Major      Minor      Lastminor  Modules
   29         0           1      ldterm ttcompat
```

Files `/etc/iu.ap`

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [dladm\(1M\)](#), [ttymon\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [ldterm\(7M\)](#), [sad\(7D\)](#), [streamio\(7I\)](#), [ttcompat\(7M\)](#)

STREAMS Programming Guide

Notes The use of the autopush command is obsolete for networking data-links. The preferred method of configuring a list of automatically pushed STREAMS modules on a given networking data-link interface is the [dladm\(1M\)](#) autopush link property.

Because network devices are self-cloning, the autopush command is inadequate for networking devices. The granularity of the autopush command's configuration is driver-wide, and not per-interface as one might expect. Another reason not to use autopush is that administrators are more familiar with the names of their network interfaces than with device major and minor numbers. The [dladm\(1M\)](#) command allows the configuration using data-link interface names.

Name bart – basic audit reporting tool

Synopsis /usr/bin/bart create [-n] [-R *root_directory*]
 [-r *rules_file* | -]

 /usr/bin/bart create [-n] [-R *root_directory*] -I
 [*file_name*]...

 /usr/bin/bart compare [-i *attribute*] [-p]
 [-r *rules_file* | -] *control-manifest test-manifest*

Description bart(1M) is a tool that performs a file-level check of the software contents of a system.

You can also specify the files to track and the types of discrepancies to flag by means of a rules file, *bart_rules*. See *bart_rules(4)*.

The bart utility performs two basic functions:

bart create The manifest generator tool takes a file-level *snapshot* of a system. The output is a catalog of file attributes referred to as a *manifest*. See *bart_manifest(4)*.

You can specify that the list of files be cataloged in three ways. Use *bart create* with no options, specify the files by name on the command line, or create a rules file with directives that specify which the files to monitor. See *bart_rules(4)*.

By default, the manifest generator catalogs all attributes of all files in the root (/) file system. File systems mounted on the root file system are cataloged only if they are of the same type as the root file system.

For example, /, /usr, and /opt are separate UFS file systems. /usr and /opt are mounted on /. Therefore, all three file systems are cataloged. However, /tmp, also mounted on /, is not cataloged because it is a TMPFS file system. Mounted CD-ROMs are not cataloged since they are HSFS file systems.

bart compare The report tool compares two manifests. The output is a list of per-file attribute discrepancies. These discrepancies are the differences between two manifests: a control manifest and a test manifest.

A discrepancy is a change to any attribute for a given file cataloged by both manifests. A new file or a deleted file in a manifest is reported as a discrepancy.

The reporting mechanism provides two types of output: verbose and programmatic. Verbose output is localized and presented on multiple lines, while programmatic output is more easily parsable by other programs. See **OUTPUT**.

By default, the report tool generates verbose output where all discrepancies are reported except for modified directory timestamps (`dirmtime` attribute).

To ensure consistent and accurate comparison results, *control-manifest* and *test-manifest* must be built with the same rules file.

Use the rules file to ignore specified files or subtrees when you generate a manifest or compare two manifests. Users can compare manifests from different perspectives by re-running the `bart compare` command with different rules files.

Options The following options are supported:

- i *attribute ...* Specify the file attributes to be ignored globally. Specify attributes as a comma separated list.

This option produces the same behavior as supplying the file attributes to a global `IGNORE` keyword in the rules file. See `bart_rules(4)`.
- I [*file_name...*] Specify the input list of files. The file list can be specified at the command line or read from standard input.
- n Prevent computation of content signatures for all regular files in the file list.
- p Display manifest comparison output in “programmatic mode,” which is suitable for programmatic parsing. The output is not localized.
- r *rules_file* Use *rules_file* to specify which files and directories to catalog, and to define which file attribute discrepancies to flag. If *rules_file* is `-`, then the rules are read from standard input. See `bart_rules(4)` for the definition of the syntax.
- R *root_directory* Specify the root directory for the manifest. All paths specified by the rules, and all paths reported in the manifest, are relative to *root_directory*.

Note – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the `-R` option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).

Operands `bart` allows quoting of operands. This is particularly important for white-space appearing in subtree and subtree modifier specifications.

The following operands are supported:

- control-manifest* Specify the manifest created by `bart create` on the control system.
- test-manifest* Specify the manifest created by `bart create` on the test system.

Output The `bart create` and `bart compare` commands write output to standard output, and write error messages to standard error.

The `bart create` command generates a system manifest. See `bart_manifest(4)`.

When the `bart compare` command compares two system manifests, it generates a list of file differences. By default, the comparison output is localized. However, if the `-p` option is specified, the output is generated in a form that is suitable for programmatic manipulation.

Default Format *filename*

attribute `control:xxxx test:yyyy`

filename Name of the file that differs between *control-manifest* and *test-manifest*. For file names that contain embedded whitespace or newline characters, see `bart_manifest(4)`.

attribute The name of the file attribute that differs between the manifests that are compared. *xxxx* is the attribute value from *control-manifest*, and *yyyy* is the attribute value from *test-manifest*. When discrepancies for multiple attributes occur for the same file, each difference is noted on a separate line.

The following attributes are supported:

<code>acl</code>	ACL attributes for the file. For a file with ACL attributes, this field contains the output from <code>acltotext()</code> .
<code>all</code>	All attributes.
<code>contents</code>	Checksum value of the file. This attribute is only specified for regular files. If you turn off context checking or if checksums cannot be computed, the value of this field is <code>-</code> .
<code>dest</code>	Destination of a symbolic link.
<code>devnode</code>	Value of the device node. This attribute is for character device files and block device files only.
<code>dirmtime</code>	Modification time in seconds since 00:00:00 UTC, January 1, 1970 for directories.
<code>gid</code>	Numerical group ID of the owner of this entry.
<code>lnmtime</code>	Creation time for links.
<code>mode</code>	Octal number that represents the permissions of the file.
<code>mtime</code>	Modification time in seconds since 00:00:00 UTC, January 1, 1970 for files.
<code>size</code>	File size in bytes.
<code>type</code>	Type of file.

`uid` Numerical user ID of the owner of this entry.

The following default output shows the attribute differences for the `/etc/passwd` file. The output indicates that the `size`, `mtime`, and `contents` attributes have changed.

```
/etc/passwd:
  size control:74 test:81
  mtime control:3c165879 test:3c165979
  contents control:daca28ae0de97afd7a6b91fde8d57afa
test:84b2b32c4165887355317207b48a6ec7
```

Programmatic Format *filename attribute control-val test-val [attribute control-val test-val]**

filename Same as *filename* in the default format.

attribute control-val test-val A description of the file attributes that differ between the control and test manifests for each file. Each entry includes the attribute value from each manifest. See `bart_manifest(4)` for the definition of the attributes.

Each line of the programmatic output describes all attribute differences for a single file.

The following programmatic output shows the attribute differences for the `/etc/passwd` file. The output indicates that the `size`, `mtime`, and `contents` attributes have changed.

```
/etc/passwd size 74 81 mtime 3c165879 3c165979
contents daca28ae0de97afd7a6b91fde8d57afa 84b2b32c4165887355317207b48a6ec7
```

Exit Status

Manifest Generator The manifest generator returns the following exit values:

- 0 Success
- 1 Non-fatal error when processing files; for example, permission problems
- >1 Fatal error; for example, invalid command-line options

Report Tool The report tool returns the following exit values:

- 0 No discrepancies reported
- 1 Discrepancies found
- >1 Fatal error executing comparison

Examples

EXAMPLE 1 Creating a Default Manifest Without Computing Checksums

The following command line creates a default manifest, which consists of all files in the `/` file system. The `-n` option prevents computation of checksums, which causes the manifest to be generated more quickly.

EXAMPLE 1 Creating a Default Manifest Without Computing Checksums *(Continued)*

```
bart create -n
```

EXAMPLE 2 Creating a Manifest for a Specified Subtree

The following command line creates a manifest that contains all files in the `/home/nickiso` subtree.

```
bart create -R /home/nickiso
```

EXAMPLE 3 Creating a Manifest by Using Standard Input

The following command line uses output from the `find(1)` command to generate the list of files to be cataloged. The `find` output is used as input to the `bart create` command that specifies the `-I` option.

```
find /home/nickiso -print | bart create -I
```

EXAMPLE 4 Creating a Manifest by Using a Rules File

The following command line uses a rules file, `rules`, to specify the files to be cataloged.

```
bart create -r rules
```

EXAMPLE 5 Comparing Two Manifests and Generating Programmatic Output

The following command line compares two manifests and produces output suitable for parsing by a program.

```
bart compare -p manifest1 manifest2
```

EXAMPLE 6 Comparing Two Manifests and Specifying Attributes to Ignore

The following command line compares two manifests. The `dirmtime`, `lnmtime`, and `mtime` attributes are not compared.

```
bart compare -i dirmtime,lnmtime,mtime manifest1 manifest2
```

EXAMPLE 7 Comparing Two Manifests by Using a Rules File

The following command line uses a rules file, `rules`, to compare two manifests.

```
bart compare -r rules manifest1 manifest2
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWbart
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [cksum\(1\)](#), [digest\(1\)](#), [find\(1\)](#), [bart_manifest\(4\)](#), [bart_rules\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes The file attributes of certain system libraries can be temporarily altered by the system as it boots. To avoid triggering false warnings, you should compare manifests only if they were both created with the system in the same state; that is, if both were created in single-user or both in multi-user.

Name boot – start the system kernel or a standalone program

Synopsis

```
SPARC boot [OBP names] [file] [-aLV] [-F object] [-D default-file]
        [-Z dataset] [boot-flags] [—] [client-program-args]

x86 kernel$ /platform/i86pc/kernel/$ISADIR/unix [boot-args]
        [-B prop=val [,val...]]
```

Description Bootstrapping is the process of loading and executing a standalone program. For the purpose of this discussion, bootstrapping means the process of loading and executing the bootable operating system. Typically, the standalone program is the operating system kernel (see [kernel\(1M\)](#)), but any standalone program can be booted instead. On a SPARC-based system, the diagnostic monitor for a machine is a good example of a standalone program other than the operating system that can be booted.

If the standalone is identified as a dynamically-linked executable, boot will load the interpreter (linker/loader) as indicated by the executable format and then transfer control to the interpreter. If the standalone is statically-linked, it will jump directly to the standalone.

Once the kernel is loaded, it starts the UNIX system, mounts the necessary file systems (see [vfstab\(4\)](#)), and runs `/sbin/init` to bring the system to the “initdefault” state specified in `/etc/inittab`. See [inittab\(4\)](#).

SPARC Bootstrap Procedure On SPARC based systems, the bootstrap procedure on most machines consists of the following basic phases.

After the machine is turned on, the system firmware (in PROM) executes power-on self-test (POST). The form and scope of these tests depends on the version of the firmware in your system.

After the tests have been completed successfully, the firmware attempts to autoboot if the appropriate flag has been set in the non-volatile storage area used by the firmware. The name of the file to load, and the device to load it from can also be manipulated.

These flags and names can be set using the [eeprom\(1M\)](#) command from the shell, or by using PROM commands from the `ok` prompt after the system has been halted.

The second level program is either a filesystem-specific boot block (when booting from a disk), or `inetboot` or `wanboot` (when booting across the network).

Network Booting

Network booting occurs in two steps: the client first obtains an IP address and any other parameters necessary to permit it to load the second-stage booter. The second-stage booter in turn loads the boot archive from the boot device.

An IP address can be obtained in one of three ways: RARP, DHCP, or manual configuration, depending on the functions available in and configuration of the PROM. Machines of the sun4u and sun4v kernel architectures have DHCP-capable PROMs.

The boot command syntax for specifying the two methods of network booting are:

```
boot net:rarp
boot net:dhcp
```

The command:

```
boot net
```

without a rarp or dhcp specifier, invokes the default method for network booting over the network interface for which net is an alias.

The sequence of events for network booting using RARP/bootparams is described in the following paragraphs. The sequence for DHCP follows the RARP/bootparams description.

When booting over the network using RARP/bootparams, the PROM begins by broadcasting a reverse ARP request until it receives a reply. When a reply is received, the PROM then broadcasts a TFTP request to fetch the first block of inetboot. Subsequent requests will be sent to the server that initially answered the first block request. After loading, inetboot will also use reverse ARP to fetch its IP address, then broadcast bootparams RPC calls (see [bootparams\(4\)](#)) to locate configuration information and its root file system. inetboot then loads the boot archive by means of NFS and transfers control to that archive.

When booting over the network using DHCP, the PROM broadcasts the hardware address and kernel architecture and requests an IP address, boot parameters, and network configuration information. After a DHCP server responds and is selected (from among potentially multiple servers), that server sends to the client an IP address and all other information needed to boot the client. After receipt of this information, the client PROM examines the name of the file to be loaded, and will behave in one of two ways, depending on whether the file's name appears to be an HTTP URL. If it does not, the PROM downloads inetboot, loads that file into memory, and executes it. inetboot loads the boot archive, which takes over the machine and releases inetboot. Startup scripts then initiate the DHCP agent (see [dhcpcagent\(1M\)](#)), which implements further DHCP activities.

If the file to be loaded is an HTTP URL, the PROM will use HTTP to load the referenced file. If the client has been configured with an HMAC SHA-1 key, it will check the integrity of the loaded file before proceeding to execute it. The file is expected to be the wanboot binary. The WAN boot process can be configured to use either DHCP or NVRAM properties to discover the install server and router and the proxies needed to connect to it. When wanboot begins executing, it determines whether sufficient information is available to it to allow it to proceed. If any necessary information is missing, it will either exit with an appropriate error or bring up a command interpreter and prompt for further configuration information. Once wanboot has obtained the necessary information, it loads the boot loader into memory by means of HTTP.

If an encryption key has been installed on the client, wanboot will verify the boot loader's signature and its accompanying hash. Presence of an encryption key but no hashing key is an error.

The wanboot boot loader can communicate with the client using either HTTP or secure HTTP. If the former, and if the client has been configured with an HMAC SHA-1 key, the boot loader will perform an integrity check of the root file system. Once the root file system has been loaded into memory (and possibly had an integrity check performed), the boot archive is transferred from the server. If provided with a `boot_logger` URL by means of the [wanboot.conf\(4\)](#) file, wanboot will periodically log its progress.

Not all PROMs are capable of consuming URLs. You can determine whether a client is so capable using the `list-security-keys` OBP command (see [monitor\(1M\)](#)).

WAN booting is not currently available on the x86 platform.

The wanboot Command Line

When the client program is wanboot, it accepts `client-program-args` of the form:

```
boot ... -o opt1[,opt2[,...]]
```

where each option may be an action:

`dhcp`

Require wanboot to obtain configuration parameters by means of DHCP.

`prompt`

Cause wanboot to enter its command interpreter.

`<cmd>`

One of the interpreter commands listed below.

...or an assignment, using the interpreter's parameter names listed below.

The wanboot Command Interpreter

The wanboot command interpreter is invoked by supplying a `client-program-args` of “-o prompt” when booting. Input consists of single commands or assignments, or a comma-separated list of commands or assignments. The configuration parameters are:

`host-ip`

IP address of the client (in dotted-decimal notation)

`router-ip`

IP address of the default router (in dotted-decimal notation)

`subnet-mask`

subnet mask (in dotted-decimal notation)

`client-id`

DHCP client identifier (a quoted ASCII string or hex ASCII)

`hostname`
hostname to request in DHCP transactions (ASCII)

`http-proxy`
HTTP proxy server specification (IPADDR[:PORT])

The key names are:

`3des`
the triple DES encryption key (48 hex ASCII characters)

`aes`
the AES encryption key (32 hex ASCII characters)

`sha1`
the HMAC SHA-1 signature key (40 hex ASCII characters)

Finally, the URL or the WAN boot CGI is referred to by means of:

`bootserver`
URL of WAN boot's CGI (the equivalent of OBP's `file` parameter)

The interpreter accepts the following commands:

`help`
Print a brief description of the available commands

`var=val`
Assign *val* to *var*, where *var* is one of the configuration parameter names, the key names, or `bootserver`.

`var=`
Unset parameter *var*.

`list`
List all parameters and their values (key values retrieved by means of OBP are never shown).

`prompt`
Prompt for values for unset parameters. The name of each parameter and its current value (if any) is printed, and the user can accept this value (press Return) or enter a new value.

`go`
Once the user is satisfied that all values have been entered, leave the interpreter and continue booting.

`exit`
Quit the boot interpreter and return to OBP's ok prompt.

Any of these assignments or commands can be passed on the command line as part of the `-o` options, subject to the OBP limit of 128 bytes for boot arguments. For example, `-o list,go` would simply list current (default) values of the parameters and then continue booting.

iSCSI Boot iSCSI boot is supported on both x86 and SPARC.

iSCSI Boot on x86

For iSCSI boot on x86, the host being booted must be equipped with NIC(s) capable of iBFT (iSCSI Boot Firmware Table) or have the mainboard's BIOS be iBFT-capable. iBFT, defined in the Advanced Configuration and Power Interface (ACPI) 3.0b specification, specifies a block of information that contains various parameters that are useful to the iSCSI Boot process.

Firmware implementing iBFT presents an iSCSI disk in the BIOS during startup as a bootable device by establishing the connection to the iSCSI target. The rest of the process of iSCSI booting is the same as booting from a local disk.

To configure the iBFT properly, users need to refer to the documentation from their hardware vendors.

iSCSI Boot on SPARC

iSCSI boot on SPARC is supported with OpenBoot level 4.31 and above, and does not require a specific NIC.

The boot command in OpenBoot takes a series of keywords to identify the destination iSCSI target, following the *keyword=value* format. The complete form of the iSCSI boot command is:

```
boot net:iscsi-target-ip=t-ip,iscsi-target-name=name
      host-ip=h-ip[,router-ip=r-ip]
      [,subnet-mask=m-ip]
      [,iscsi-port=port]
      [,iscsi-lun=lun]
      [,iscsi-partition=partition]
```

The descriptions of the preceding keywords are as follows:

<code>host-ip</code>	IP address of booting host.
<code>router-ip</code>	IP address of routing gateway.
<code>subnet-mask</code>	Subnet mask of <code>host-ip</code> .
<code>iscsi-target-ip</code>	IP address of iSCSI target storing OS.
<code>iscsi-target-name</code>	Name of iSCSI target storing OS.
<code>iscsi-partition</code>	Partition containing the bootable root.
<code>iscsi-port</code>	IP port of the target.
<code>iscsi-lun</code>	LUN to be booted off on target.

The values of `iscsi-target-ip`, `route-ip`, and `subnet-mask` are in standard, IPv4 dotted-decimal format; for example, 255.255.255.0 for `subnet-mask`. IPv6 is not supported in the current OpenBoot implementation.

The value of `iscsi-port`, a decimal number, is in the range of 1 to 65535.

The value of `iscsi-lun` is in the format of a dashed hexadecimal LUN, `fff-fff-fff-fff`. Please refer to section 5 of RFC 4173 for details. Leading zeroes and trailing dashes can be excluded, thus, `3`, for example, is equivalent to `0003-0000-0000-0000`.

The value of `iscsi-partition` is one ASCII character, used to specify the root partition. Most commonly, it is `a`.

The value of `iscsi-target-name` is in the format of a string, as specified by RFC 3720 and RFC 3722.

Two security keys are added to provide CHAP authentication on the target side. These are:

```
chap-user      CHAP name
chap-password  CHAP secret
```

Currently these two keys can be set with the command `set-ascii-security-key` at the Open Boot PROM (ok) prompt. For example:

```
ok set-ascii-security-key chap-user chap name
ok set-ascii-security-key chap-password chap password
```

Bi-directional authentication is not yet supported. These two variables can be changed only under the Open Boot PROM prompt.

RFC 4173 is supported, to retrieve iSCSI boot information from a DHCP server. The DHCP server must specify the Root Path option for the booting client, after which the client can do an iSCSI boot by means of the simple command:

```
boot net:dhcp
```

Currently the key `boot-device` is used to retrieve the physical boot device path during iSCSI boot. This key is setup during the Solaris installation. A manually modified key value might break iSCSI boot.

Booting from Disk When booting from disk, the OpenBoot PROM firmware reads the boot blocks from blocks 1 to 15 of the partition specified as the boot device. This standalone booter usually contains a file system-specific reader capable of reading the boot archive.

If the pathname to the standalone is relative (does not begin with a slash), the second level boot will look for the standalone in a platform-dependent search path. This path is guaranteed to contain `/platform/platform-name`. Many SPARC platforms next search the platform-specific path entry `/platform/hardware-class-name`. See [filesystem\(5\)](#). If the pathname is absolute, boot will use the specified path. The boot program then loads the standalone at the appropriate address, and then transfers control.

Once the boot archive has been transferred from the boot device, Solaris can initialize and take over control of the machine. This process is further described in the “Boot Archive Phase,” below, and is identical on all platforms.

If the filename is not given on the command line or otherwise specified, for example, by the `boot-file` NVRAM variable, `boot` chooses an appropriate default file to load based on what software is installed on the system and the capabilities of the hardware and firmware.

The path to the kernel must not contain any whitespace.

Booting from ZFS Booting from ZFS differs from booting from UFS in that, with ZFS, a device specifier identifies a storage pool, not a single root file system. A storage pool can contain multiple bootable datasets (that is, root file systems). Therefore, when booting from ZFS, it is not sufficient to specify a boot device. One must also identify a root file system within the pool that was identified by the boot device. By default, the dataset selected for booting is the one identified by the pool's `bootfs` property. This default selection can be overridden by specifying an alternate bootable dataset with the `-Z` option.

Boot Archive Phase The boot archive contains a file system image that is mounted using an in-memory disk. The image is self-describing, specifically containing a file system reader in the boot block. This file system reader mounts and opens the RAM disk image, then reads and executes the kernel contained within it. By default, this kernel is in:

```
/platform/'uname -i'/kernel/unix
```

If booting from ZFS, the pathnames of both the archive and the kernel file are resolved in the root file system (that is, dataset) selected for booting as described in the previous section.

The initialization of the kernel continues by loading necessary drivers and modules from the in-memory filesystem until I/O can be turned on and the root filesystem mounted. Once the root filesystem is mounted, the in-memory filesystem is no longer needed and is discarded.

OpenBoot PROM boot Command Behavior The OpenBoot `boot` command takes arguments of the following form:

```
ok boot [device-specifier] [arguments]
```

The default boot command has no arguments:

```
ok boot
```

If no *device-specifier* is given on the boot command line, OpenBoot typically uses the *boot-device* or *diag-device* NVRAM variable. If no optional *arguments* are given on the command line, OpenBoot typically uses the *boot-file* or *diag-file* NVRAM variable as default boot arguments. (If the system is in diagnostics mode, *diag-device* and *diag-file* are used instead of *boot-device* and *boot-file*).

arguments may include more than one string. All *argument* strings are passed to the secondary booter; they are not interpreted by OpenBoot.

If any *arguments* are specified on the boot command line, then neither the *boot-file* nor the *diag-file* NVRAM variable is used. The contents of the NVRAM variables are not merged with command line arguments. For example, the command:

```
ok boot -s
```

ignores the settings in both *boot-file* and *diag-file*; it interprets the string "-s" as *arguments*. boot will not use the contents of *boot-file* or *diag-file*.

With older PROMs, the command:

```
ok boot net
```

took no arguments, using instead the settings in *boot-file* or *diag-file* (if set) as the default file name and arguments to pass to boot. In most cases, it is best to allow the boot command to choose an appropriate default based upon the system type, system hardware and firmware, and upon what is installed on the root file system. Changing *boot-file* or *diag-file* can generate unexpected results in certain circumstances.

This behavior is found on most OpenBoot 2.x and 3.x based systems. Note that differences may occur on some platforms.

The command:

```
ok boot cdrom
```

...also normally takes no arguments. Accordingly, if *boot-file* is set to the 64-bit kernel filename and you attempt to boot the installation CD or DVD with boot cdrom, boot will fail if the installation media contains only a 32-bit kernel.

Because the contents of *boot-file* or *diag-file* can be ignored depending on the form of the boot command used, reliance upon *boot-file* should be discouraged for most production systems.

When executing a WAN boot from a local (CD or DVD) copy of wanboot, one must use:

```
ok boot cdrom -F wanboot - install
```

Modern PROMs have enhanced the network boot support package to support the following syntax for arguments to be processed by the package:

```
[protocol,] [key=value,]*
```

All arguments are optional and can appear in any order. Commas are required unless the argument is at the end of the list. If specified, an argument takes precedence over any default values, or, if booting using DHCP, over configuration information provided by a DHCP server for those parameters.

protocol, above, specifies the address discovery protocol to be used.

Configuration parameters, listed below, are specified as *key=value* attribute pairs.

`tftp-server`
IP address of the TFTP server

`file`
file to download using TFTP or URL for WAN boot

`host-ip`
IP address of the client (in dotted-decimal notation)

`router-ip`
IP address of the default router

`subnet-mask`
subnet mask (in dotted-decimal notation)

`client-id`
DHCP client identifier

`hostname`
hostname to use in DHCP transactions

`http-proxy`
HTTP proxy server specification (IPADDR[:PORT])

`tftp-retries`
maximum number of TFTP retries

`dhcp-retries`
maximum number of DHCP retries

The list of arguments to be processed by the network boot support package is specified in one of two ways:

- As arguments passed to the package's open method, or
- arguments listed in the NVRAM variable `network-boot-arguments`.

Arguments specified in `network-boot-arguments` will be processed only if there are no arguments passed to the package's open method.

Argument Values

protocol specifies the address discovery protocol to be used. If present, the possible values are `rarp` or `dhcp`.

If other configuration parameters are specified in the new syntax and style specified by this document, absence of the *protocol* parameter implies manual configuration.

If no other configuration parameters are specified, or if those arguments are specified in the positional parameter syntax currently supported, the absence of the *protocol* parameter causes the network boot support package to use the platform-specific default address discovery protocol.

Manual configuration requires that the client be provided its IP address, the name of the boot file, and the address of the server providing the boot file image. Depending on the network configuration, it might be required that `subnet -mask` and `router -ip` also be specified.

If the *protocol* argument is not specified, the network boot support package uses the platform-specific default address discovery protocol.

`tftp-server` is the IP address (in standard IPv4 dotted-decimal notation) of the TFTP server that provides the file to download if using TFTP.

When using DHCP, the value, if specified, overrides the value of the TFTP server specified in the DHCP response.

The TFTP RRQ is unicast to the server if one is specified as an argument or in the DHCP response. Otherwise, the TFTP RRQ is broadcast.

file specifies the file to be loaded by TFTP from the TFTP server, or the URL if using HTTP. The use of HTTP is triggered if the file name is a URL, that is, the file name starts with `http:` (case-insensitive).

When using RARP and TFTP, the default file name is the ASCII hexadecimal representation of the IP address of the client, as documented in a preceding section of this document.

When using DHCP, this argument, if specified, overrides the name of the boot file specified in the DHCP response.

When using DHCP and TFTP, the default file name is constructed from the root node's name property, with commas (,) replaced by periods (.).

When specified on the command line, the filename must not contain slashes (/).

The format of URLs is described in RFC 2396. The HTTP server must be specified as an IP address (in standard IPv4 dotted-decimal notation). The optional port number is specified in decimal. If a port is not specified, port 80 (decimal) is implied.

The URL presented must be “safe-encoded”, that is, the package does not apply escape encodings to the URL presented. URLs containing commas must be presented as a quoted string. Quoting URLs is optional otherwise.

`host-ip` specifies the IP address (in standard IPv4 dotted-decimal notation) of the client, the system being booted. If using RARP as the address discovery protocol, specifying this argument makes use of RARP unnecessary.

If DHCP is used, specifying the `host - ip` argument causes the client to follow the steps required of a client with an “Externally Configured Network Address”, as specified in RFC 2131.

`router - ip` is the IP address (in standard IPv4 dotted-decimal notation) of a router on a directly connected network. The router will be used as the first hop for communications spanning networks. If this argument is supplied, the router specified here takes precedence over the preferred router specified in the DHCP response.

`subnet - mask` (specified in standard IPv4 dotted-decimal notation) is the subnet mask on the client's network. If the subnet mask is not provided (either by means of this argument or in the DHCP response), the default mask appropriate to the network class (Class A, B, or C) of the address assigned to the booting client will be assumed.

`client - id` specifies the unique identifier for the client. The DHCP client identifier is derived from this value. Client identifiers can be specified as:

- The ASCII hexadecimal representation of the identifier, or
- a quoted string

Thus, `client - id="openboot"` and `client - id=6f70656e626f6f74` both represent a DHCP client identifier of 6F70656E626F6F74.

Identifiers specified on the command line must not include slash (/) or spaces.

The maximum length of the DHCP client identifier is 32 bytes, or 64 characters representing 32 bytes if using the ASCII hexadecimal form. If the latter form is used, the number of characters in the identifier must be an even number. Valid characters are 0-9, a-f, and A-F.

For correct identification of clients, the client identifier must be unique among the client identifiers used on the subnet to which the client is attached. System administrators are responsible for choosing identifiers that meet this requirement.

Specifying a client identifier on a command line takes precedence over any other DHCP mechanism of specifying identifiers.

`hostname` (specified as a string) specifies the hostname to be used in DHCP transactions. The name might or might not be qualified with the local domain name. The maximum length of the hostname is 255 characters.

Note – The `hostname` parameter can be used in service environments that require that the client provide the desired hostname to the DHCP server. Clients provide the desired hostname to the DHCP server, which can then register the hostname and IP address assigned to the client with DNS.

`http - proxy` is specified in the following standard notation for a host:

```
host [":" port]
```

...where *host* is specified as an IP address (in standard IPv4 dotted-decimal notation) and the optional *port* is specified in decimal. If a port is not specified, port 8080 (decimal) is implied.

`tftp-retries` is the maximum number of retries (specified in decimal) attempted before the TFTP process is determined to have failed. Defaults to using infinite retries.

`dhcp-retries` is the maximum number of retries (specified in decimal) attempted before the DHCP process is determined to have failed. Defaults to using infinite retries.

x86 Bootstrap Procedure On x86 based systems, the bootstrapping process consists of two conceptually distinct phases, kernel loading and kernel initialization. Kernel loading is implemented in GRUB (GRand Unified Bootloader) using the BIOS ROM on the system board, and BIOS extensions in ROMs on peripheral boards. The BIOS loads GRUB, starting with the first physical sector from a hard disk, DVD, or CD. If supported by the ROM on the network adapter, the BIOS can also download the `pxegrub` binary from a network boot server. Once GRUB is located, it executes a command in a menu to load the `unix` kernel and a pre-constructed boot archive containing kernel modules and data.

If the device identified by GRUB as the boot device contains a ZFS storage pool, the `menu.lst` file used to create the GRUB menu will be found in the dataset at the root of the pool's dataset hierarchy. This is the dataset with the same name as the pool itself. There is always exactly one such dataset in a pool, and so this dataset is well-suited for pool-wide data such as the `menu.lst` file. After the system is booted, this dataset is mounted at `/poolname` in the root file system.

There can be multiple bootable datasets (that is, root file systems) within a pool. By default, the file system in which file name entries in a `menu.lst` file are resolved is the one identified by the pool's `bootfs` property (see [zpool\(1M\)](#)). However, a `menu.lst` entry can contain a `bootfs` command, which specifies an alternate dataset in the pool. In this way, the `menu.lst` file can contain entries for multiple root file systems within the pool.

Kernel initialization starts when GRUB finishes loading the boot archive and hands control over to the `unix` binary. At this point, GRUB becomes inactive and no more I/O occurs with the boot device. The Unix operating system initializes, links in the necessary modules from the boot archive and mounts the root file system on the real root device. At this point, the kernel regains storage I/O, mounts additional file systems (see [vfstab\(4\)](#)), and starts various operating system services (see [smf\(5\)](#)).

Failsafe Mode A requirement of booting from a root filesystem image built into a boot archive then remounting root onto the actual root device is that the contents of the boot archive and the root filesystem must be consistent. Otherwise, the proper operation and integrity of the machine cannot be guaranteed.

The term “consistent” means that all files and modules in the root filesystem are also present in the boot archive and have identical contents. Since the boot strategy requires first reading and mounting the boot archive as the first-stage root image, all unloadable kernel modules

and initialization derived from the contents of the boot archive are required to match the real root filesystem. Without such consistency, it is possible that the system could be running with a kernel module or parameter setting applied to the root device before reboot, but not yet updated in the root archive. This inconsistency could result in system instability or data loss.

Once the root filesystem is mounted, and before relinquishing the in-memory filesystem, Solaris performs a consistency verification against the two file systems. If an inconsistency is detected, Solaris suspends the normal boot sequence and falls back to failsafe mode. Correcting this state requires the administrator take one of two steps. The recommended procedure is to reboot to the failsafe archive and rebuild the boot archive. This ensures that a known kernel is booted and functioning for the archive rebuild process. Alternatively, the administrator can elect to clear the inconsistent boot archive service state and continue system bring-up if the inconsistency is such that correct system operation will not be impaired. See [svcadm\(1M\)](#).

If the boot archive service is cleared and system bring-up is continued (the second alternative above), the system may be running with unloadable kernel drivers or other modules that are out-of-date with respect to the root filesystem. As such, correct system operation may be compromised.

To ensure that the boot archive is consistent, the normal system shutdown process, as initiated by [reboot\(1M\)](#) and [shutdown\(1M\)](#), checks for and applies updates to the boot archive at the conclusion of the [umountall\(1M\)](#) milestone.

An update to any kernel file, driver, module or driver configuration file that needs to be included in the boot archive after the [umountall](#) service is complete will result in a failed boot archive consistency check during the next boot. To avoid this, it is recommended to always shut down a machine cleanly.

If an update is required to the kernel after completion of the [umountall](#) service, the administrator may elect to rebuild the archive by invoking:

```
# bootadm update-archive
```

Failsafe Boot Archive The failsafe archive can be used to boot the machine at any time for maintenance or troubleshooting. The failsafe boot archive is installed on the machine, sourced from the miniroot archive. Booting the failsafe archive causes the machine to boot using the in-memory filesystem as the root device.

SPARC

The SPARC failsafe archive is:

```
/platform/'uname -i'/failsafe
```

...and can be booted as follows:

```
ok boot [device-specifier] -F failsafe
```


If a user wishes to boot a failsafe archive from a particular ZFS bootable dataset, this can be done as follows:

```
ok boot [device-specifier] -Z dataset -F failsafe
```

x86

The x86 failsafe archive is:

```
/boot/x86.miniroot-safe
```

...and can be booted by selecting the Solaris failsafe item from the GRUB menu.

Options

SPARC The following SPARC options are supported:

-a

The boot program interprets this flag to mean ask me, and so it prompts for the name of the standalone. The ' -a ' flag is then passed to the standalone program.

-D *default-file*

Explicitly specify the *default-file*. On some systems, boot chooses a dynamic default file, used when none is otherwise specified. This option allows the *default-file* to be explicitly set and can be useful when booting [kldb\(1\)](#) since, by default, kldb loads the default-file as exported by the boot program.

-F *object*

Boot using the named object. The object must be either an ELF executable or bootable object containing a boot block. The primary use is to boot the failsafe or wanboot boot archive.

-L

List the bootable datasets within a ZFS pool. You can select one of the bootable datasets in the list, after which detailed instructions for booting that dataset are displayed. Boot the selected dataset by following the instructions. This option is supported only when the boot device contains a ZFS storage pool.

-V

Display verbose debugging information.

boot-flags

The boot program passes all *boot-flags* to *file*. They are not interpreted by boot. See the [kernel\(1M\)](#) and [kldb\(1\)](#) manual pages for information about the options available with the default standalone program.

client-program-args

The boot program passes all *client-program-args* to *file*. They are not interpreted by boot.

file

Name of a standalone program to boot. If a filename is not explicitly specified, either on the boot command line or in the *boot-file* NVRAM variable, boot chooses an appropriate default filename.

OBP names

Specify the open boot prom designations. For example, on Desktop SPARC based systems, the designation `/sbus/esp@0,800000/sd@3,0:a` indicates a SCSI disk (sd) at target 3, lun0 on the SCSI bus, with the esp host adapter plugged into slot 0.

-Z dataset

Boot from the root file system in the specified ZFS dataset.

x86 The following x86 options are supported:

-B prop=val...

One or more property-value pairs to be passed to the kernel. Multiple property-value pairs must be separated by a comma. Use of this option is the equivalent of the command: `eeeprom prop=val`. See [eeeprom\(1M\)](#) for available properties and valid values.

If the root file system corresponding to this menu entry is a ZFS dataset, the menu entry needs the following option added:

`-B $ZFS-BOOTFS`

boot-args

The boot program passes all *boot-args* to *file*. They are not interpreted by boot. See [kernel\(1M\)](#) and [kndb\(1\)](#) for information about the options available with the kernel.

/platform/i86pc/kernel/\$ISADIR/unix

Name of the kernel to boot. When using the `kernel$` token, `$ISADIR` expands to `amd64` on 64-bit machines, and a null string on other machines. As a result of this dereferencing, this path expands to the proper kernel for the machine.

x86 Boot Sequence Details

After a PC-compatible machine is turned on, the system firmware in the BIOS ROM executes a power-on self test (POST), runs BIOS extensions in peripheral board ROMs, and invokes software interrupt INT 19h, Bootstrap. The INT 19h handler typically performs the standard PC-compatible boot, which consists of trying to read the first physical sector from the first diskette drive, or, if that fails, from the first hard disk. The processor then jumps to the first byte of the sector image in memory.

x86 Primary Boot

The first sector on a floppy disk contains the master boot block (GRUB stage1). The stage 1 is responsible for loading GRUB stage2. Now GRUB is fully functional. It reads and executes the menu file `/boot/grub/menu.lst`. A similar sequence occurs for DVD or CD boot, but the master boot block location and contents are dictated by the El Torito specification. The El Torito boot also leads to `strap.com`, which in turn loads `boot.bin`.

The first sector on a hard disk contains the master boot block, which contains the master boot program and the FDISK table, named for the PC program that maintains it. The master boot

finds the active partition in the FDISK table, loads its first sector (GRUB `stage1`), and jumps to its first byte in memory. This completes the standard PC-compatible hard disk boot sequence. If GRUB `stage1` is installed on the master boot block (see the `-m` option of [installgrub\(1M\)](#)), then `stage2` is loaded directly from the Solaris FDISK partition regardless of the active partition.

An x86 FDISK partition for the Solaris software begins with a one-cylinder boot slice, which contains GRUB `stage1` in the first sector, the standard Solaris disk label and volume table of contents (VTOC) in the second and third sectors, and GRUB `stage2` in the fiftieth and subsequent sectors. The area from sector 4 to 49 might contain boot blocks for older versions of Solaris. This makes it possible for multiple Solaris releases on the same FDISK to coexist. When the FDISK partition for the Solaris software is the active partition, the master boot program (`mboot`) reads the partition boot program in the first sector into memory and jumps to it. It in turn reads GRUB `stage2` program into memory and jumps to it. Once the GRUB menu is displayed, the user can choose to boot an operating system on a different partition, a different disk, or possibly from the network.

For network booting, the supported method is Intel's Preboot eXecution Environment (PXE) standard. When booting from the network using PXE, the system or network adapter BIOS uses DHCP to locate a network bootstrap program (`pxegrub`) on a boot server and reads it using Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP). The BIOS executes the `pxegrub` by jumping to its first byte in memory. The `pxegrub` program downloads a menu file and presents the entries to user.

x86 Kernel Startup The kernel startup process is independent of the kernel loading process. During kernel startup, console I/O goes to the device specified by the `console` property.

When booting from UFS, the root device is specified by the `bootpath` property, and the root file system type is specified by the `fstype` property. These properties should be setup by the Solaris Install/Upgrade process in `/boot/solaris/bootenv.rc` and can be overridden with the `-B` option, described above (see the [eeprom\(1M\)](#) man page).

When booting from ZFS, the root device is specified by a boot parameter specified by the `-B $ZFS-BOOTFS` parameter on either the `kernel` or `module` line in the GRUB menu entry. This value (as with all parameters specified by the `-B` option) is passed by GRUB to the kernel.

If the console properties are not present, console I/O defaults to screen and keyboard. The root device defaults to `ramdisk` and the file system defaults to `ufs`.

Examples

SPARC **EXAMPLE 1** To Boot the Default Kernel In Single-User Interactive Mode

To boot the default kernel in single-user interactive mode, respond to the `ok` prompt with one of the following:

EXAMPLE 1 To Boot the Default Kernel In Single-User Interactive Mode *(Continued)*

```
boot -as
```

```
boot disk3 -as
```

EXAMPLE 2 Network Booting with WAN Boot-Capable PROMs

To illustrate some of the subtle repercussions of various boot command line invocations, assume that the `network-boot-arguments` are set and that `net` is devaliased as shown in the commands below.

In the following command, device arguments in the device alias are processed by the device driver. The network boot support package processes arguments in `network-boot-arguments`.

```
boot net
```

The command below results in no device arguments. The network boot support package processes arguments in `network-boot-arguments`.

```
boot net:
```

The command below results in no device arguments. `rarp` is the only network boot support package argument. `network-boot-arguments` is ignored.

```
boot net:rarp
```

In the command below, the specified device arguments are honored. The network boot support package processes arguments in `network-boot-arguments`.

```
boot net:speed=100,duplex=full
```

EXAMPLE 3 Using `wanboot` with Older PROMs

The command below results in the `wanboot` binary being loaded from DVD or CD, at which time `wanboot` will perform DHCP and then drop into its command interpreter to allow the user to enter keys and any other necessary configuration.

```
boot cdrom -F wanboot -o dhcp,prompt
```

x86 (32-bit) **EXAMPLE 4** To Boot the Default Kernel In 32-bit Single-User Interactive Mode

To boot the default kernel in single-user interactive mode, edit the GRUB kernel command line to read:

```
kernel /platform/i86pc/kernel/unix -as
```

x86 (64-bit Only) **EXAMPLE 5** To Boot the Default Kernel In 64-bit Single-User Interactive Mode

To boot the default kernel in single-user interactive mode, edit the GRUB kernel command line to read:

```
kernel /platform/i86pc/kernel/amd64/unix -as
```

EXAMPLE 6 Switching Between 32-bit and 64-bit Kernels on 64-bit x86 Platform

To be able to boot both 32-bit and 64-bit kernels, add entries for both kernels to `/boot/grub/menu.lst`, and use the `set-menu` subcommand of [bootadm\(1M\)](#) to switch. See [bootadm\(1M\)](#) for an example of the `bootadm set-menu`.

Files `/platform/platform-name/ufsboot`
 Second-level program to boot from a disk, DVD, or CD

`/etc/inittab`
 Table in which the `initdefault` state is specified

`/sbin/init`
 Program that brings the system to the `initdefault` state

64-bit SPARC Only `/platform/platform-name/kernel/sparcv9/unix`
 Default program to boot system.

x86 Only `/boot`
 Directory containing boot-related files.

`/boot/grub/menu.lst`
 Menu of bootable operating systems displayed by GRUB.

`/platform/i86pc/kernel/unix`
 32-bit kernel.

64-bit x86 Only `/platform/i86pc/kernel/amd64/unix`
 64-bit kernel.

See Also [kmdb\(1\)](#), [uname\(1\)](#), [bootadm\(1M\)](#), [eeprom\(1M\)](#), [init\(1M\)](#), [installboot\(1M\)](#), [kernel\(1M\)](#), [monitor\(1M\)](#), [shutdown\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [umountall\(1M\)](#), [zpool\(1M\)](#), [uadmin\(2\)](#), [bootparams\(4\)](#), [inittab\(4\)](#), [vfstab\(4\)](#), [wanboot.conf\(4\)](#), [filesystem\(5\)](#)

RFC 903, *A Reverse Address Resolution Protocol*, <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc903.txt>

RFC 2131, *Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol*, <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2131.txt>

RFC 2132, *DHCP Options and BOOTP Vendor Extensions*,
<http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2132.txt>

RFC 2396, *Uniform Resource Identifiers (URI): Generic Syntax*,
<http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2396.txt>

System Administration Guide: Basic Administration

Sun Hardware Platform Guide

OpenBoot Command Reference Manual

Warnings The boot utility is unable to determine which files can be used as bootable programs. If the booting of a file that is not bootable is requested, the boot utility loads it and branches to it. What happens after that is unpredictable.

Notes *platform-name* can be found using the `-i` option of `uname(1)`. *hardware-class-name* can be found using the `-m` option of `uname(1)`.

The current release of the Solaris operating system does not support machines running an UltraSPARC-I CPU.

Name bootadm – manage bootability of GRUB-enabled operating system

Synopsis /sbin/bootadm update-archive [-vn] [-R *alroot* [-p *platform*]]
 /sbin/bootadm list-archive [-vn] [-R *alroot* [-p *platform*]]
 x86 only
 /sbin/bootadm set-menu [-R *alroot* [-p *platform*]] *key=value*
 /sbin/bootadm list-menu [-R *alroot* [-p *platform*]]

Description The bootadm command manages the boot archive and, with x86 boot environments, the GRUB (GRand Unified Bootloader) menu. The update-archive option provides a way for user to update the boot archive as a preventative measure or as part of a recovery procedure. The set-menu subcommand allows you to switch the auto-boot timeout and default boot entry in the GRUB menu.

The list-menu subcommand displays the location of the GRUB menu and the current GRUB menu entries. While the typical location of the GRUB menu is /boot/grub/menu.lst, depending on the install method used the active GRUB menu might be located somewhere else. Use the list-menu subcommand to locate the active GRUB menu. For example, if a system was installed using Live Upgrade, the GRUB menu might not be located in the current boot environment. See the EXAMPLES section for typical output from the list-menu option.

Note that OpenBoot PROM (OBP)-based machines, such as SPARC systems, do not use GRUB and have no boot menu manageable by bootadm.

The bootadm command determines dynamically the options supported by the image to be managed, so that bootadm invoked on one platform can be used to manage diskless clients of a different platform type.

Subcommands The bootadm command has the following subcommands:

update-archive

Updates current boot archive if required. Applies to both SPARC and x86 platforms.

list-archive

Lists the files and directories to be included in the boot archive. Applies to both SPARC and x86 platforms.

set-menu

Maintain the GRUB menu. The current GRUB menu is boot/grub/menu.lst, relative to root. Do not depend on this location, because it is subject to change. Applies to x86 platforms only.

list-menu

Lists the location of the active GRUB menu, as well as the current GRUB menu entries. This includes the autoboot-timeout, the default entry number, and the title of each entry. Applies to x86 platforms only.

Options The bootadm command has the following options:

-v

In an update-archive operation, stale files are displayed on stderr.

-n

In an update-archive operation, archive content is checked but not updated.

-p *platform*

The platform, or machine hardware class, of the client. The platform type can only be specified together with -R, and is generally useful only for managing a diskless client where the client is of a different platform class than the server. Platform must be one of i86pc, sun4u, or sun4v.

-R *altroot*

Operation is applied to an alternate root path.

Note – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the -R option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).

key=value

Possible values are:

default=entrynum

The item number (for example, 0, 1, or 2) in the GRUB menu designating the operating system to boot when the timer expires.

timeout=seconds

The number of seconds before the operating system designated by the default item number is booted. If the value is -1, auto boot is disabled.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Updating the Current Boot Archive

The following command updates the current boot archive:

```
# bootadm update-archive
```

EXAMPLE 2 Updating the Boot Archive on an Alternate Root

The following command updates the boot archive on an alternate root:

```
# bootadm update-archive -R /a
```

EXAMPLE 3 Listing Installed OS Instances

The following command lists the installed operating system instances in a GRUB menu:

```
# bootadm list-menu
```

```
default=0
```


EXAMPLE 3 Listing Installed OS Instances (Continued)

```
timeout=10
(0) Solaris10
(1) Solaris10 Failsafe
(2) Linux
```

EXAMPLE 4 Switching Default Boot Entry

The following command refers to the menu displayed in the previous example. The user selects Linux (item 2).

```
# bootadm set-menu default=2
```

EXAMPLE 5 Listing GRUB Menu Entries and Location of GRUB Menu

The following command lists the GRUB menu entries and the location of the GRUB menu:

```
# bootadm list-menu
The location for the active GRUB menu is: /stubboot/boot/grub/menu.lst
default 0
timeout 10
0 Solaris10
1 Solaris10 failsafe
2 Linux
```

EXAMPLE 6 Displaying Location of GRUB Menu

The following command displays the location of the GRUB menu:

```
# bootadm list-menu
The location for the active GRUB menu is: /dev/dsk/c0t1d0s0 (not mounted)
The filesystem type of the menu device is <ufs>
default 2
timeout 10
0 c0t1d0s3
1 c0t1d0s3 failsafe
2 Solaris10
3 Solaris10 failsafe
```

In this example, the active GRUB menu is located on a device which is *not* mounted. To access the GRUB menu, mount the device and access the GRUB menu at `<mountpoint>/boot/grub/menu.lst`.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

```
0
    The command completed successfully.
```

1

The command exited due to an error.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Committed

See Also [boot\(1M\)](#), [installgrub\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Consult the GRUB home page, under:

<http://www.gnu.org/>

Name bootconfchk – verify the integrity of a network boot configuration file

Synopsis /usr/sbin/bootconfchk [*bootconf-file*]

Description The bootconfchk command checks that the file specified is a valid network boot configuration file as described in [wanboot.conf\(4\)](#).

Any discrepancies are reported on standard error.

Exit Status 0 Successful completion.

1 An error occurred.

2 Usage error.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWwbsup
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [wanboot.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name bsmconv, bsmunconv – enable or disable Solaris Auditing

Synopsis /etc/security/bsmconv [*rootdir*]...
/etc/security/bsmunconv [*rootdir*]...

Description The bsmconv and bsmunconv scripts are used to enable or disable the BSM features on a Solaris system. The optional argument *rootdir* is a list of one or more root directories of diskless clients that have already been configured. See [smdiskless\(1M\)](#).

To enable or disable BSM on a diskless client, a server, or a stand-alone system, logon as super-user to the system being converted and use the bsmconv or bsmunconv commands without any options.

To enable or disable BSM on a diskless client from that client's server, logon to the server as super-user and use bsmconv, specifying the root directory of each diskless client you wish to affect. For example, the command:

```
myhost# bsmconv /export/root/client1 /export/root/client2
```

enables BSM on the two machines named *client1* and *client2*. While the command:

```
myhost# bsmconv
```

enables BSM only on the machine called *myhost*. It is no longer necessary to enable BSM on both the server and its diskless clients.

After running bsmconv the system can be configured by editing the files in /etc/security. Each diskless client has its own copy of configuration files in its root directory. You might want to edit these files before rebooting each client.

Following the completion of either script, the affected system(s) should be rebooted to allow the auditing subsystem to come up properly initialized.

Files The following files are created by bsmconv:

/etc/security/device_maps	Administrative file defining the mapping of device special files to allocatable device names.
/etc/security/device_allocate	Administrative file defining parameters for device allocation.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsr
Interface Stability	Obsolete Committed

See Also [auditconfig\(1M\)](#), [auditd\(1M\)](#), [audit.log\(4\)](#), [audit_control\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

See the section on Solaris Auditing in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

Notes bsmconv and bsmunconv are not valid in a non-global zone.

These commands are Obsolete and may be removed and replaced with equivalent functionality in a future release of Solaris.

Name busstat – report bus-related performance statistics

Synopsis busstat -e *device-inst* | -h | -l

```
busstat [-a] [-n]
        [-w device-inst [,pic0=event,picn=event ]]...
        [-r device-inst]... [interval [count]]
```

Description busstat provides access to the bus-related performance counters in the system. These performance counters allow for the measurement of statistics like hardware clock cycles, bus statistics including DMA and cache coherency transactions on a multiprocessor system. Each bus device that supports these counters can be programmed to count a number of events from a specified list. Each device supports one or more Performance Instrumentation Counters (PIC) that are capable of counting events independently of each other.

Separate events can be selected for each PIC on each instance of these devices. busstat summarizes the counts over the last interval seconds, repeating forever. If a count is given, the statistics are repeated count times.

Only root users can program these counters. Non-root users have the option of reading the counters that have been programmed by a root user.

The default value for the *interval* argument is 1 second, and the default *count* is unlimited.

The devices that export these counters are highly platform-dependent and the data may be difficult to interpret without an in-depth understanding of the operation of the components that are being measured and of the system they reside in.

Options The following options are supported:

- | | |
|-----------------------|--|
| -a | Display absolute counter values. The default is delta values. |
| -e <i>device-inst</i> | Display the list of events that the specified device supports for each pic.

Specify <i>device-inst</i> as device (name) followed by an optional instance number. If an instance number is specified, the events for that instance are displayed. If no instance number is specified, the events for the first instance of the specified device are displayed. |
| -h | Print a usage message. |
| -l | List the devices in the system which support performance counters. |
| -n | Do not display a title in the output. The default is to display titles. |

`-r device-inst`

Read and display all pic values for the specified device

Specify *device-inst* as *device* (name) followed by *instance number*, if specifying an instance number of a device whose counters are to be read and displayed. If all instances of this device are to be read, use *device* (name) without an instance number. All pic values will be sampled when using the `-r` option.

`-w device-inst [,pic0=event] [,picn=event]`

Program (write) the specified devices to count the specified events. Write access to the counters is restricted to root users only. Non-root users can use `-r` option.

Specify *device-inst* as *device* (name) followed by an optional *instance number*. If specifying an instance number of a device to program these events on. If all instances of this device are to be programmed the same, then use *device* without an instance number. Specify an event to be counted for a specified pic by providing a comma separated list of *picn=event* values.

The `-e` option displays all valid event names for each device. Any devices that are programmed will be sampled every interval seconds and repeated count times. It is recommended that the interval specified is small enough to ensure that counter wraparound will be detected. The rate at which counters wraparound varies from device to device. If a user is programming events using the `-w` option and `busstat` detects that another user has changed the events that are being counted, the tool will terminate as the programmed devices are now being controlled by another user. Only one user can be programming a device instance at any one time. Extra devices can be sampled using the `-r` option. Using multiple instances of the `-w` option on the same command line, with the same *device-inst* specifying a different list of events for the pics will give the effect of multiplexing for that device. `busstat` will

switch between the list of events for that device every interval seconds. Event can be a string representing the event name, or even a number representing the bit pattern to be programmed into the Performance Control Register (PCR). This assumes explicit knowledge of the meaning of the control register bits for a device. The number can be specified in hexadecimal, decimal, or octal, using the usual conventions of `strtol(3C)`.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 An error occurred.
- 2 Another user is writing to the same devices.

Examples

SPARC Only **EXAMPLE 1** Programming and monitoring the Address Controller counters

In this example, `ac0` refers to the Address Controller instance 0. The counters are programmed to count Memory Bank stalls on an Ultra Enterprise system at 10 second intervals with the values displayed in absolute form instead of deltas.

```
# busstat -a -w ac0,pic0=mem_bank0_stall,pic1=mem_bank1_stall 10
time dev  event0      pic0  event1      pic1
10  ac0  mem_bank0_stall  1234  mem_bank1_stall  5678
20  ac0  mem_bank0_stall  5678  mem_bank1_stall  12345
30  ac0  mem_bank0_stall  12345  mem_bank1_stall  56789
...
```

For a complete list of the supported events for a device, use the `-e` option.

EXAMPLE 2 Programming and monitoring the counters on all instances of the Address Controller

In this example, `ac` refers to all `ac` instances. This example programs all instances of the Address Controller counters to count `clock_cycles` and `mem_bank0_rds` at 2 second intervals, 100 times, displaying the values as deltas.

```
# busstat -w ac,pic0=clock_cycles,pic1=mem_bank0_rds 2 100
time dev  event0      pic0      event1      pic1
2  ac0  clock_cycles  167242902  mem_bank0_rds  3144
2  ac1  clock_cycles  167254476  mem_bank0_rds  1392
4  ac0  clock_cycles  168025190  mem_bank0_rds  40302
4  ac1  clock_cycles  168024056  mem_bank0_rds  40580
```


EXAMPLE 2 Programming and monitoring the counters on all instances of the Address Controller
(Continued)

...

EXAMPLE 3 Monitoring the events being counted

This example monitors the events that are being counted on the sbus1 device, 100 times at 1 second intervals. It suggests that a root user has changed the events that sbus1 was counting to be dvma_tlb_misses and interrupts instead of pio_cycles.

```
% busstat -r sbus0 1 100
```

time	dev	event0	pic0	event1	pic1
1	sbus1	pio_cycles	2321	pio_cycles	2321
2	sbus1	pio_cycles	48	pio_cycles	48
3	sbus1	pio_cycles	49	pio_cycles	49
4	sbus1	pio_cycles	2281	pio_cycles	2281
5	sbus1	dvma_tlb_misses	0	interrupts	0
6	sbus1	dvma_tlb_misses	6	interrupts	2
7	sbus1	dvma_tlb_misses	8	interrupts	11

...

EXAMPLE 4 Event Multiplexing

This example programs ac0 to alternate between counting (clock cycles, mem_bank0_rds) and (addr_pkts, data_pkts) at 2 second intervals while also monitoring what ac1 is counting:

It shows the expected output of the above busstat command. Another root user on the machine has changed the events that this user had programmed and busstat has detected this and terminates the command with a message.

```
# busstat -w ac0,pic0=clock_cycles,pic1=mem_bank0_rds \  
-w ac0,pic0=addr_pkts,pic1=data_pkts \  
-r ac1 2
```

time	dev	event0	pic0	event1	pic1
2	ac0	addr_pkts	12866	data_pkts	17015
2	ac1	rio_pkts	385	rio_pkts	385
4	ac0	clock_cycles	168018914	mem_bank0_rds	2865
4	ac1	rio_pkts	506	rio_pkts	506
6	ac0	addr_pkts	144236	data_pkts	149223
6	ac1	rio_pkts	522	rio_pkts	522
8	ac0	clock_cycles	168021245	mem_bank0_rds	2564
8	ac1	rio_pkts	387	rio_pkts	387
10	ac0	addr_pkts	144292	data_pkts	159645
10	ac1	rio_pkts	506	rio_pkts	506

EXAMPLE 4 Event Multiplexing *(Continued)*

```
12      ac0      clock_cycles    168020364      mem_bank0_rds    2665
12      ac1      rio_pkts        522            rio_pkts         522
busstat: events changed (possibly by another busstat).
#
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [iostat\(1M\)](#), [mpstat\(1M\)](#), [vmstat\(1M\)](#), [strtol\(3C\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name cachefs – CacheFS daemon

Synopsis /usr/lib/fs/cachefs/cachefs

Description The `cachefs` server implements features of the cache filesystem (CacheFS). It is invoked at boot time and run if the / (root) and /usr filesystems are being cached. If /usr is being cached, `cachefs` is invoked by `inetd(1M)` from `inetd.conf(4)`. At run time, `cachefs` is invoked by the `inetd` mechanism in response to an RPC request from a user command such as `mount_cachefs(1M)`.

The `cachefs` server supports the “disconnected mode” of CacheFS. In this mode, a user can continue to read and, depending on the option selected, write to files in a cached filesystem when the NFS server for the cached files is not available.

The `cachefs` daemon performs the following functions in support of the CacheFS:

- Implements the connection policy. The daemon determines whether the NFS server backing the cache is connected or disconnected from the cache, or is in transition from the connected or disconnected states.
- Implements “log rolling,” wherein the daemon monitors a disconnected NFS server for reconnection. After such a server returns to a connected state, `cachefs` rolls any local changes to cached files (kept in a log) back to the server.
- Manages “packing,” wherein `cachefs` makes a best effort to ensure that files in a user-specified list are available in the cache in disconnected mode.
- Supports user interfaces by supplying statistics, reporting conflicts between the cache and the back filesystem, and supporting a list of files for packing.

The running of `cachefs` is required for the disconnected mode of CacheFS.

Options The following options are supported:

-r Used for invoking `cachefs` for the / filesystem.

Attributes See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also `cachefspack(1M)`, `cfsadmin(1M)`, `mount_cachefs(1M)`, `inetd.conf(4)`, `attributes(5)`

System Administration Guide: Basic Administration

Name cachefslog – Cache File System logging

Synopsis `cachefslog [-f logfile | -h] cachefs_mount_point`

Description The `cachefslog` command displays where CacheFS statistics are being logged. Optionally, it sets where CacheFS statistics are being logged, or it halts logging for a cache specified by *cachefs_mount_point*. The *cachefs_mount_point* argument is a mount point of a cache file system. All file systems cached under the same cache as *cachefs_mount_point* will be logged.

Options The following options are supported. You must be super-user to use the `-f` and `-h` options.

`-f logfile` Specify the log file to be used.

`-h` Halt logging.

Operands *cachefs_mount_point* A mount point of a cache file system.

Usage See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of `cachefslog` when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (2^{31} bytes).

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Checking the Logging of a directory.

The example below checks if the directory `/home/sam` is being logged:

```
example% cachefslog /home/sam
not logged: /home/sam
```

EXAMPLE 2 Changing the *logfile*.

The example below changes the *logfile* of `/home/sam` to `/var/tmp/samlog`:

```
example# cachefslog -f /var/tmp/samlog /home/sam
/var/tmp/samlog: /home/sam
```

EXAMPLE 3 Verifying the change of a *logfile*.

The example below verifies the change of the previous example:

```
example% cachefslog /home/sam
/var/tmp/samlog: /home/sam
```

EXAMPLE 4 Halting the logging of a directory.

The example below halts logging for the `/home/sam` directory:

```
example# cachefslog -h /home/sam
not logged: /home/sam
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0 success
non-zero an error has occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [cachefsstat\(1M\)](#), [cachefswssize\(1M\)](#), [cfsadmin\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#)

Diagnostics Invalid path It is illegal to specify a path within a cache file system.

Name cachefspack – pack files and file systems in the cache

Synopsis cachefspack [-h] [-i | -p | -u] [-f *packing-list*]
[-U *cache-directory*] [*file*]...

Description The cachefspack utility is used to set up and maintain files in the cache. This utility affords greater control over the cache, ensuring that the specified files are in the cache whenever possible.

cachefspack does not pack files when the backfilesystem type for the cache fs mount is NFSv4. This is because only pass-through support is available for cache fs with NFSv4.

Options The following options are supported:

- f *packing-list* Specify a file containing a list of files and directories to be packed. Options within subdirectories and files can also be specified. The format and rules governing *packing-list* are described on the [packingrules\(4\)](#) manual page. Directories are packed recursively. Symlinks that match a regular expression on a LIST command are followed. Symlinks encountered while recursively processing directories are not followed.
- h Help. Print a brief summary of all the options.
- i View information about the packed files.
- p Pack the file or files specified by *file*. This is the default behavior.
- u Unpack the file or files specified by *file*.
- U *cache-directory* Unpack all files in the specified cache directory.

Operands The following operands are supported:

file A path name of a file to be packed or unpacked.

Usage See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of cachefspack when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (2^{31} bytes).

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Packing a File in the Cache

The following example packs the file *projects* in the cache:

```
% cachefspack -p projects
```

EXAMPLE 2 Packint Files in the Cache

The following example packs the files *projects*, *updates*, and *master_plan* in the cache:

```
% cachefspack -p projects updates master_plan
```

EXAMPLE 3 Unpacking a File From the Cache

The following example unpacks the file `projects` from the cache:

```
% cachefspack -u projects
```

EXAMPLE 4 Unpacking Files From the Cache

The following example unpacks the files `projects`, `updates`, and `master_plan` from the cache:

```
% cachefspack -u projects updates master_plan
```

EXAMPLE 5 Unpacking All Files From in a Cache Directory

The following example unpacks all files in the cache directory `cache1`:

```
% cachefspack -U /cache/cache1
```

EXAMPLE 6 Using a Packing List

The following example illustrates the use of a packing list to specify files to be packed in the cache.

The contents of `lists.pkg` are as follows:

```
IGNORE SCCS BASE /src/junk LIST *.c LIST *.h
```

The following command packs all files in the `/src/junk` directory which have `.c` and `.h` extensions, and do contain the string `SCCS` in the file's path name:

```
% cachefspack -f lists.pkg
```

Exit Status 0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [cfsadmin\(1M\)](#), [mount_cachefs\(1M\)](#), [packingrules\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#)

Name cachefsstat – Cache File System statistics

Synopsis /usr/bin/cachefsstat [-z] [path] ...

Description The `cachefsstat` command displays statistical information about the cache file system mounted on *path*. The statistical information includes cache hits and misses, consistency checking, and modification operations. If *path* is not specified, all mounted cache file systems are used.

`cachefsstat` can also be used to reinitialize this information (see `-z` option).

The statistical information has the following format:

```
<cache hit rate>
<consistency checks>
<modifies>
```

where:

hit rate The percentage of cache hits over the total number of attempts, followed by the actual numbers of hits and misses.

consistency checks The number of consistency checks performed, followed by the number that passed, and the number that failed.

modifies The number of modify operations, including writes, creates, etc.

Options The following option is supported:

`-z` Zero (reinitialize) statistics. Execute `cachefsstat -z` before executing `cachefsstat` again to gather statistics on the cache performance. This option can only be use by the superuser. The statistics printed reflect those just before the statistics are reinitialized.

Usage See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of `cachefsstat` when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (2^{31} bytes).

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Using `cachefsstat`

The following example shows the `cachefsstat` command run on file system `/test`:

```
example# cachefsstat /test
/test
      cache hit rate:      100% (0 hits, 0 misses)
      consistency checks:  0 (0 pass, 0 fail)
      modifies:           0
garbage collection:      0
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

non-zero An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [cachefslog\(1M\)](#), [cachefswssize\(1M\)](#), [cfsadmin\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#)

Name cachefswsize – determine working set size for cachefs

Synopsis cachefswsize *logfile*

Description The cachefswsize command displays the workspace size determined from *logfile*. This includes the amount of cache space needed for each filesystem that was mounted under the cache, as well as a total.

Usage See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of cachefswsize when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (2^{31} bytes).

Examples EXAMPLE 1 A sample output of cachefswsize.

```
example% cachefswsize /var/tmp/samlog
```

```
/home/sam
                                     end size:                10688k
                                     high water size:         10704k

/foo
                                     end size:                 128k
                                     high water size:          128k

/usr/dist
                                     end size:                 1472k
                                     high water size:          1472k

total for cache
                                     initial size:            110960k
                                     end size:                  12288k
                                     high water size:           12304k
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0 success
non-zero an error has occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [cachefslog\(1M\)](#), [cachefsstat\(1M\)](#), [cfsadmin\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#)

Diagnostics problems were encountered writing log file There were problems encountered when the kernel was writing the logfile. The most common problem is running out of disk space.

invalid log file The logfile is not a valid logfile or was created with a newer version of Solaris than the one where cachefswsize is running.

Name captainfo – convert a termcap description into a terminfo description

Synopsis captainfo [-1] [-v]... [-V] [-w *width*] *filename*...

Description captainfo looks in *filename* for termcap descriptions. For each one found, an equivalent terminfo description is written to standard output, along with any comments found. A description which is expressed as relative to another description (as specified in the termcap `tc = field`) is reduced to the minimum superset before being displayed.

If no *filename* is given, then the environment variable TERMCAPE is used for the filename or entry. If TERMCAPE is a full pathname to a file, only the terminal whose name is specified in the environment variable TERM is extracted from that file. If the environment variable TERMCAPE is not set, then the file `/usr/share/lib/termcap` is read.

- Options**
- 1 Display the fields one to a line. Otherwise, the fields are printed several to a line, with a maximum width of 60 characters.
 - v Display tracing information on the standard error as the program runs. Specifying additional -v options displays more detailed information.
 - V Display the version of the program in use on the standard error and then exit.
 - w *width* Change the output to *width* characters.

Files `/usr/share/lib/terminfo/??/*` compiled terminal description database
`/usr/share/lib/termcap`

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [infocmp\(1M\)](#), [curses\(3CURSES\)](#), [terminfo\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes captainfo should be used to convert termcap entries to terminfo entries because the termcap database may not be supplied in future releases.

Name catman – create the formatted files for the reference manual

Synopsis /usr/bin/catman [-c] [-n] [-p] [-t] [-w] [-M *directory*]
[-T *macro-package*] [*sections*]

Description The catman utility creates the preformatted versions of the on-line manual from the [nroff\(1\)](#) or [sgml\(5\)](#) input files. This feature allows easy distribution of the preformatted manual pages among a group of associated machines (for example, with [rdist\(1\)](#)), since it makes the directories of preformatted manual pages self-contained and independent of the unformatted entries.

catman also creates the windex database file in the directories specified by the MANPATH or the -M option. The windex database file is a three column list consisting of a keyword, the reference page that the keyword points to, and a line of text that describes the purpose of the utility or interface documented on the reference page. Each keyword is taken from the comma separated list of words on the NAME line before the ‘-’ (dash). The reference page that the keyword points to is the first word on the NAME line. The text after the – on the NAME line is the descriptive text in the third column. The NAME line must be immediately preceded by the page heading line created by the .TH macro (see NOTES for required format).

Each manual page is examined and those whose preformatted versions are missing or out of date are recreated. If any changes are made, catman recreates the windex database.

If a manual page is a *shadow* page, that is, it sources another manual page for its contents, a symbolic link is made in the catx or fmtx directory to the appropriate preformatted manual page.

Shadow files in an unformatted nroff source file are identified by the first line being of the form .so manx/yyy.x.

Shadow files in the SGML sources are identified by the string SHADOW_PAGE. The file entity declared in the shadow file identifies the file to be sourced.

Options The following options are supported:

- c
Create unformatted nroff source files in the appropriate man subdirectories from the SGML sources. This option will overwrite any existing file in the man directory of the same name as the SGML file.
- n
Do not create (or recreate) the windex database. If the -n option is specified, the windex database is not created and the apropos, whatis, man -f, and man -k commands will fail.
- p
Print what would be done instead of doing it.
- t
Create troffed entries in the appropriate fmt subdirectories instead of nroffing into the cat subdirectories.

-w

Only create the `windex` database that is used by `what is(1)` and the `man(1) -f` and `-k` options. No manual reformatting is done.

-M *directory*

Update manual pages located in the specified *directory*, (`/usr/share/man` by default). If the `-M` option is specified, the directory argument must not contain a `'` (comma), since a comma is used to delineate section numbers. See `man(1)`.

-T *macro-package*

Use *macro-package* in place of the standard manual page macros, (`man(5)` by default).

Operands The following operand is supported:

sections

If there is one parameter not starting with a `'`, it is taken to be a space separated list of manual sections to be processed by `catman`. If this operand is specified, only the manual sections in the list will be processed. For example,

```
catman 1 2 3
```

only updates manual sections 1, 2, and 3. If specific sections are not listed, all sections in the `man` directory specified by the environment variable `MANPATH` are processed.

Environment Variables

`TROFF`

The name of the formatter to use when the `-t` flag is given. If not set, `troff(1)` is used.

`MANPATH`

A colon-separated list of directories that are processed by `catman` and `man(1)`. Each directory can be followed by a comma-separated list of sections. If set, its value overrides `/usr/share/man` as the default directory search path, and the `man.cf` file as the default section search path. The `-M` and `-s` flags, in turn, override these values.

Files

- `/usr/share/man`
default manual directory location
- `/usr/share/man/man*/*.*`
raw nroff input files
- `/usr/share/man/sman*/*.*`
raw SGML input files
- `/usr/share/man/cat*/*.*`
preformatted nroffed manual pages
- `/usr/share/man/fmt*/*.*`
preformatted troffed manual pages
- `/usr/share/man/windex`
table of contents and keyword database

`/usr/lib/makewhatis`
 command script to make `windex` database

`/usr/share/lib/tmac/an`
 default macro package

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWdoc
CSI	Enabled

See Also [apropos\(1\)](#), [man\(1\)](#), [nroff\(1\)](#), [rdist\(1\)](#), [rm\(1\)](#), [troff\(1\)](#), [whatis\(1\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [man\(5\)](#), [sgml\(5\)](#)

Diagnostics `man?/xxx.? (.so'ed from man?/yyy.?)`: No such file or directory
 The file outside the parentheses is missing, and is referred to by the file inside them.

target of `.so` in `man?/xxx.?` must be relative to `/usr/man`
 catman only allows references to filenames that are relative to the directory `/usr/man`.

`opendir:man?`: No such file or directory
 A harmless warning message indicating that one of the directories catman normally looks for is missing.

`*.*`: No such file or directory
 A harmless warning message indicating catman came across an empty directory.

Warnings If a user, who has previously run catman to install the `cat*` directories, upgrades the operating system, the entire `cat*` directory structure should be removed prior to running catman. See [rm\(1\)](#).

Do not re-run catman to re-build the `whatis` database unless the complete set of `man*` directories is present. catman builds this `windex` file based on the `man*` directories.

Notes To generate a valid `windex` index file, catman has certain requirements. Within the individual man page file, catman requires two macro lines to have a specific format. These are the `.TH` page heading line and the `.SH NAME` line.

The `.TH` macro requires at least the first three arguments, that is, the filename, section number, and the date. The `.TH` line starts off with the `.TH` macro, followed by a space, the man page filename, a single space, the section number, another single space, and the date. The date should appear in double quotes and is specified as “day month year,” with the month always abbreviated to the first three letters (Jan, Feb, Mar, and so forth).

The `.SH NAME` macro, also known as the `NAME` line, must immediately follow the `.TH` line, with nothing in between those lines. No font changes are permitted in the `NAME` line. The `NAME` line

is immediately followed by a line containing the man page filename; then shadow page names, if applicable, separated by commas; a dash; and a brief summary statement. These elements should all be on one line; no carriage returns are permitted.

An example of proper coding of these lines is:

```
.TH nismatch 1M "10 Apr 1998"  
.SH NAME  
nismatch, nisgrep \- utilities for searching NIS tables
```


Name cfgadm – configuration administration

Synopsis /usr/sbin/cfgadm [-f] [-y | -n] [-v] [-o *hardware_options*]
 -c *function ap_id...*

/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-f] [-y | -n] [-v] [-o *hardware_options*]
 -x *hardware_function ap_id...*

/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-v] [-a] [-s *listing_options*]
 [-o *hardware_options*] [-l [*ap_id* | *ap_type*]]

/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-v] [-o *hardware_options*] -t *ap_id...*

/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-v] [-o *hardware_options*] -h
 [*ap_id* | *ap_type*]

Description The `cfgadm` command provides configuration administration operations on dynamically reconfigurable hardware resources. These operations include displaying status, (-l), initiating testing, (-t), invoking configuration state changes, (-c), invoking hardware specific functions, (-x), and obtaining configuration administration help messages (-h). Configuration administration is performed at *attachment points*, which are places where system software supports dynamic reconfiguration of hardware resources during continued operation of Solaris.

Configuration administration makes a distinction between hardware resources that are physically present in the machine and hardware resources that are configured and visible to Solaris. The nature of configuration administration functions are hardware specific, and are performed by calling hardware specific libraries.

Configuration administration operates on an *attachment point*. Hardware resources located at attachment points can or can not be physically replaceable during system operation, but are dynamically reconfigurable by way of the configuration administration interfaces.

An attachment point defines two unique elements, which are distinct from the hardware resources that exist beyond the attachment point. The two elements of an attachment point are a *receptacle* and an *occupant*. Physical insertion or removal of hardware resources occurs at attachment points and results in a receptacle gaining or losing an occupant. Configuration administration supports the physical insertion and removal operations as well as other configuration administration functions at an attachment point.

Attachment points have associated state and condition information. The configuration administration interfaces provide control for transitioning attachment point states. A receptacle can exist in one of three states: `empty`, `disconnected` or `connected`, while an occupant can exist in one of two states: `configured` or `unconfigured`.

A receptacle can provide the `empty` state, which is the normal state of a receptacle when the attachment point has no occupants. A receptacle can also provide the `disconnected` state if it has the capability of isolating its occupants from normal system access. Typically this state is used for various hardware specific testing prior to bringing the occupant's resources into full

use by the system, or as a step in preparing an occupant for physical removal or reconfiguration. A receptacle in the disconnected state isolates its occupant from the system as much as its hardware allows, but can provide access for testing and setup. A receptacle must provide the connected state, which allows normal access to hardware resources contained on any occupants. The connected state is the normal state of a receptacle that contains an occupant and that is not currently undergoing configuration administration operations.

The hardware resources contained on an occupant in the unconfigured state are not represented by normal Solaris data structures and are thus not available for use by Solaris. Operations allowed on an unconfigured occupant are limited to configuration administration operations. The hardware resources of an occupant in the configured state are represented by normal Solaris data structures and thus some or all of those hardware resources can be in use by Solaris. All occupants provide both the configured and unconfigured states,

An attachment point can be in one of five conditions: `unknown`, `ok`, `failing`, `failed`, or `unusable`. An attachment point can enter the system in any condition depending upon results of power-on tests and non-volatile record keeping.

An attachment point with an occupant in the configured state is in one of four conditions: `unknown`, `ok`, `failing`, or `failed`. If the condition is not `failing` or `failed` an attachment point can change to `failing` during the course of operation if a hardware dependent recoverable error threshold is exceeded. If the condition is not `failed` an attachment point can change to `failed` during operation as a result of an unrecoverable error.

An attachment point with an occupant in the unconfigured state can be in any of the defined conditions. The condition of an attachment point with an unconfigured occupant can decay from `ok` to `unknown` after a machine dependent time threshold. Initiating a test function changes the attachment point's condition to `ok`, `failing` or `failed` depending on the outcome of the test. An attachment point that does not provide a test function can leave the attachment point in the `unknown` condition. If a test is interrupted, the attachment point's condition can be set to the previous condition, `unknown` or `failed`. An attachment point in the `unknown`, `ok`, `failing`, or `failed` conditions can be re-tested.

An attachment point can exist in the `unusable` condition for a variety of reasons, such as inadequate power or cooling for the receptacle, an occupant that is unidentifiable, unsupported, incorrectly configured, etc. An attachment point in the `unusable` condition can never be used by the system. It typically remains in this condition until the physical cause is remedied.

An attachment point also maintains busy information that indicates when a state change is in progress or the condition is being reevaluated.

Attachment points are referred to using hardware specific identifiers (*ap_ids*) that are related to the type and location of the attachment points in the system device hierarchy. An *ap_id* can not be ambiguous, it must identify a single attachment point. Two types of *ap_id*

specifications are supported: physical and logical. A physical *ap_id* contains a fully specified pathname, while a logical *ap_id* contains a shorthand notation that identifies an attachment point in a more user-friendly way.

For example, an attachment point representing a system's backplane slot number 7 could have a physical *ap_id* of `/devices/central/fhc/sysctrl:slot7` while the logical *ap_id* could be `system:slot7`. Another example, the third receptacle on the second PCI I/O bus on a system could have a logical *ap_id* of `pci2:plug3`.

Attachment points may also be created dynamically. A dynamic attachment point is named relative to a base attachment point which is present in the system. *ap_ids* for dynamic attachment points consist of a base component followed by two colons (: :) and a dynamic component. The base component is the base attachment point *ap_id*. The dynamic component is hardware specific and generated by the corresponding hardware specific library.

For example, consider a base attachment point, which represents a SCSI HBA, with the physical *ap_id* `/devices/sbus@1f,0/SUNW,fas@e,8800000:scsi` and logical *ap_id* `c0`. A disk attached to this SCSI HBA could be represented by a dynamic attachment point with logical *ap_id* `c0::disk/c0t0d0` where `c0` is the base component and `disk/c0t0d0` is the hardware specific dynamic component. Similarly the physical *ap_id* for this dynamic attachment point would be: `/devices/sbus@1f,0/SUNW,fas@e,8800000:scsi::disk/c0t0d0`

An *ap_type* is a partial form of a logical *ap_id* that can be ambiguous and not specify a particular attachment point. An *ap_type* is a substring of the portion of the logical *ap_id* up to but not including the colon (:) separator. For example, an *ap_type* of `pci` would show all attachment points whose logical *ap_ids* begin with `pci`.

The use of *ap_types* is discouraged. The new select sub-option to the `-s` option provides a more general and flexible mechanism for selecting attachment points. See `OPTIONS`.

The `cfgadm` command interacts primarily with hardware dependent functions contained in hardware specific libraries and thus its behavior is hardware dependent.

For each configuration administration operation a service interruption can be required. Should the completion of the function requested require a noticeable service interruption to interactive users, a prompt is output on the standard error output for confirmation on the standard input before the function is started. Confirmation can be overridden using the `-y` or `-n` options to always answer yes or no respectively. Hardware specific options, such as test level, are supplied as sub-options using the `-o` option.

Operations that change the state of the system configuration are audited by the system log daemon `syslogd(1M)`.

The arguments for this command conform to the `getopt(3C)` and `getsubopt(3C)` syntax convention.

Options The following options are supported:

- a Specifies that the -l option must also list dynamic attachment points.
- c*function* Performs the state change *function* on the attachment point specified by *ap_id*.

Specify *function* as insert, remove, disconnect, connect, configure or unconfigure. These functions cause state transitions at the attachment point by calling hardware specific library routines and are defined in the following list.
 - insert Performs operations that allows the user to manually insert an occupant or to activate a hardware supplied mechanism that performs the physical insertion. insert can have hardware specific side effects that temporarily suspend activity in portions of the system. In such cases the hardware specific library generates appropriate warning messages and informs the user of any special considerations or procedures unique to that hardware. Various hardware specific errors can cause this function to fail and set the receptacle condition to unusable.
 - remove Performs operations that allow the user to manually remove an occupant or to activate a hardware supplied mechanism to perform the physical removal. remove can have hardware specific side effects that temporarily suspend activity in portions of the system. In such cases the hardware specific library generates appropriate warning messages and informs the user of any special considerations or procedures unique to that hardware. Various hardware specific errors can cause this function to fail and set the receptacle condition to unusable.
 - disconnect Performs hardware specific operations to put a receptacle in the disconnected state, which can prevent an occupant from operating in a normal fashion through the receptacle.

connect	Performs hardware specific operations to put the receptacle in the connected state, which allows an occupant to operate in a normal fashion through the receptacle.
configure	Performs hardware specific operations that allow an occupant's hardware resources to be usable by Solaris. Occupants that are configured are part of the system configuration and are available for manipulation by Solaris device manipulation maintenance commands (eg: <code>psradm(1M)</code> , <code>mount(1M)</code> , <code>ifconfig(1M)</code>).
unconfigure	Performs hardware specific operations that logically remove an occupant's hardware resources from the system. The occupant must currently be configured and its hardware resources must not be in use by Solaris.

State transition functions can fail due to the condition of the attachment point or other hardware dependent considerations. All state change *functions* in the direction of adding resources, (`insert`, `connect` and `configure`) are passed onto the hardware specific library when the attachment point is in the `ok` or `unknown` condition. All other conditions require the use of the `force` option to allow these *functions* to be passed on to the hardware specific library. Attachment point condition does not prevent a hardware specific library being called for related to the removal (`remove`, `disconnect` and `unconfigure`), of hardware resources from the system. Hardware specific libraries can reject state change *functions* if the attachment point is in the `unknown` condition.

The condition of an attachment point is not necessarily changed by the state change functions, however errors during state change operations can change the attachment point condition. An attempt to override a condition and force a state change that would otherwise fail can be made by specifying the `force` option (`-f`). Hardware specific safety and integrity checks can prevent the `force` option from having any effect.

- f

Forces the specified action to occur. Typically, this is a hardware dependent override of a safety feature. Forcing a state change operation can allow use of the hardware resources of occupant that is not in the `ok` or `unknown` conditions, at the discretion of any hardware dependent safety checks.

- h [*ap_id* | *ap_type* ...] Prints out the help message text. If *ap_id* or *ap_type* is specified, the help routine of the hardware specific library for the attachment point indicated by the argument is called.
- l [*ap_id* | *ap_type* ...] Lists the state and condition of attachment points specified. Attachment points can be filtered by using the -s option and select sub-option. Invoking `cfgadm` without one of the action options is equivalent to -l without an argument. The format of the list display is controlled by the -v and -s options. When the -a option is specified attachment points are dynamically expanded.
- n Suppress any interactive confirmation and assume that the answer is *no*. If neither -n or -y is specified, interactive confirmation is obtained through the standard error output and the standard input. If either of these standard channels does not correspond to a terminal (as determined by `isatty(3C)`) then the -n option is assumed.
- o*hardware_options* Supplies hardware specific options to the main command option. The format and content of the hardware option string is completely hardware specific. The option string *hardware_options* conforms to the `getsubopt(3C)` syntax convention.
- s*listing_options* Supplies listing options to the list (-l) command. *listing_options* conforms to the `getsubopt(3C)` syntax convention. The sub-options are used to specify the attachment point selection criteria (`select=select_string`), the type of matching desired (`match=match_type`), order of listing (`sort=field_spec`), the data that is displayed (`cols=field_spec` and `cols2=field_spec`), the column delimiter (`delim=string`) and whether to suppress column headings (`noheadings`).

When the `select` sub-option is specified, only attachment points which match the specified criteria will be listed. The `select` sub-option has the following syntax:

```
cfgadm -s select=attr1(value1):attr2(value2)...
```

where an *attr* is one of *ap_id*, *class* or *type*. *ap_id* refers to the logical *ap_id* field, *class* refers to attachment point class and *type* refers to the type field. *value1*, *value2*, etc. are the corresponding values to be matched. The type of match can be specified by the `match` sub-option as follows:

```
cfgadm -s match=match_type,select=attr1(value1)...
```

where *match_type* can be either `exact` or `partial`. The default value is `exact`.

Arguments to the `select` sub-option can be quoted to protect them from the shell.

A *field_spec* is one or more *data-fields* concatenated using colon (:), as in *data-field:data-field:data-field*. A *data-field* is one of `ap_id`, `physid`, `r_state`, `o_state`, `condition`, `type`, `busy`, `status_time`, `status_time_p`, `class`, and `info`. The `ap_id` field output is the logical name for the attachment point, while the `physid` field contains the physical name. The `r_state` field can be empty, `disconnected` or `connected`. The `o_state` field can be configured or unconfigured. The `busy` field can be either `y` if the attachment point is busy, or `n` if it is not. The `type` and `info` fields are hardware specific. The `status_time` field provides the time at which either the `r_state`, `o_state`, or `condition` of the attachment point last changed. The `status_time_p` field is a parsable version of the `status_time` field. If an attachment point has an associated class, the `class` field lists the class name. If an attachment point does not have an associated class, the `class` field lists `none`.

The order of the fields in *field_spec* is significant: For the `sort` sub-option, the first field given is the primary sort key. For the `cols` and `cols2` sub-options, the fields are printed in the order requested. The order of sorting on a *data-field* can be reversed by placing a minus (-) before the *data-field* name within the *field_spec* for the `sort` sub-option. The default value for `sort` is `ap_id`. The default values for `cols` and `cols2` depend on whether the `-v` option is given: Without it `cols` is `ap_id:r_state:o_state:condition` and `cols2` is not set. With `-v` `cols` is `ap_id:r_state:o_state:condition:info` and `cols2` is `status_time:type:busy:physid:`. The default value for `delim` is a single space. The value of `delim` can be a string of arbitrary length. The delimiter cannot include comma (,) character, see [getsubopt\(3C\)](#). These listing options can be used to create parsable output. See NOTES.

-t

Performs a test of one or more attachment points. The test function is used to re-evaluate the condition of the attachment point. Without a test level specifier in *hardware_options*, the fastest test that identifies hard faults is used.

More comprehensive tests are hardware specific and are selected using the *hardware_options*.

The results of the test is used to update the condition of the specified occupant to either ok if no faults are found, *failing* if recoverable faults are found or *failed* if any unrecoverable faults are found.

If a test is interrupted, the attachment point's condition can be restored to its previous value or set to unknown if no errors were found or *failing* if only recoverable errors were found or to *failed* if any unrecoverable errors were found. The attachment point should only be set to ok upon normal completion of testing with no errors.

- v Executes in verbose mode. For the -c, -t and -x options outputs a message giving the results of each attempted operation. Outputs detailed help information for the -h option. Outputs verbose information for each attachment point for the -l option.
- x*hardware_function* Performs hardware specific functions. Private hardware specific functions can change the state of a receptacle or occupant. Attachment point conditions can change as the result of errors encountered during private hardware specific functions. The format and content of the *hardware_function* string is completely hardware specific. The option string *hardware_function* conforms to the [getsubopt\(3C\)](#) syntax convention.
- y Suppresses any interactive confirmation and assume that the answer is yes.

Usage The required privileges to use this command are hardware dependent. Typically, a default system configuration restricts all but the list option to the superuser.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Listing Attachment Points in the Device Tree

The following example lists all attachment points except dynamic attachment points.

```
example# cfgadm
```

Ap_Id	Type	Receptacle	Occupant	Cond
system:slot0	cpu/mem	connected	configured	ok
system:slot1	sbus-upa	connected	configured	ok
system:slot2	cpu/mem	connected	configured	ok
system:slot3	unknown	connected	unconfigured	unknown
system:slot4	dual-sbus	connected	configured	failing
system:slot5	cpu/mem	connected	configured	ok

EXAMPLE 1 Listing Attachment Points in the Device Tree *(Continued)*

system:slot6	unknown	disconnected	unconfigured	unusable
system:slot7	unknown	empty	unconfigured	ok
c0	scsi-bus	connected	configured	unknown
c1	scsi-bus	connected	configured	unknown

EXAMPLE 2 Listing All Configurable Hardware Information

The following example lists all current configurable hardware information, including those represented by dynamic attachment points:

```
example# cfgadm -al
```

Ap_Id	Type	Receptacle	Occupant	Cond
system:slot0	cpu/mem	connected	configured	ok
system:slot1	sbus-upa	connected	configured	ok
system:slot2	cpu/mem	connected	configured	ok
system:slot3	unknown	connected	unconfigured	unknown
system:slot4	dual-sbus	connected	configured	failing
system:slot5	cpu/mem	connected	configured	ok
system:slot6	unknown	disconnected	unconfigured	unusable
system:slot7	unknown	empty	unconfigured	ok
c0	scsi-bus	connected	configured	unknown
c0::dsk/c0t14d0	disk	connected	configured	unknown
c0::dsk/c0t11d0	disk	connected	configured	unknown
c0::dsk/c0t8d0	disk	connected	configured	unknown
c0::rmt/0	tape	connected	configured	unknown
c1	scsi-bus	connected	configured	unknown

EXAMPLE 3 Listing Selectively, Based on Attachment Point Attributes

The following example lists all attachment points whose class begins with `scsi`, `ap_id` begins with `c` and type field begins with `scsi`. The argument to the `-s` option is quoted to protect it from the shell.

```
example# cfgadm -s "match=partial,select=class(scsi):ap_id(c):type(scsi)"
```

Ap_Id	Type	Receptacle	Occupant	Cond
c0	scsi-bus	connected	configured	unknown
c1	scsi-bus	connected	configured	unknown

EXAMPLE 4 Listing Current Configurable Hardware Information in Verbose Mode

The following example lists current configurable hardware information for *ap-type* system in verbose mode:

EXAMPLE 4 Listing Current Configurable Hardware Information in Verbose Mode *(Continued)*

```
example# cfgadm -v -l system
Ap_Id          Receptacle Occupant  Condition Information
When          Type        Busy    Phys_Id
system:slot1  connected  configured ok
Apr  4 23:50  sbus-upa   n       /devices/central/fhc/sysctrl:slot1
system:slot3  connected  configured ok      non-detachable
Apr 17 11:20  cpu/mem   n       /devices/central/fhc/sysctrl:slot3
system:slot5  connected  configured ok
Apr  4 23:50  cpu/mem   n       /devices/central/fhc/sysctrl:slot5
system:slot7  connected  configured ok
Apr  4 23:50  dual-sbus n       /devices/central/fhc/sysctrl:slot7
```

The When column represents the `status_time` field.

EXAMPLE 5 Testing Two Occupants Using the Hardware Specific Extended Test

The following example tests two occupants using the hardware specific extended test:

```
example# cfgadm -v -o extended -t system:slot3 system:slot5
Testing attachment point system:slot3 ... ok
Testing attachment point system:slot5 ... ok
```

EXAMPLE 6 Configuring an Occupant Using the Force Option

The following example configures an occupant in the failing state to the system using the force option:

```
example# cfgadm -f -c configure system:slot3
```

EXAMPLE 7 Unconfiguring an Occupant From the System

The following example unconfigures an occupant from the system:

```
example# cfgadm -c unconfigure system:slot4
```

EXAMPLE 8 Configuring an Occupant at an Attachment Point

The following example configures an occupant:

```
example# cfgadm -c configure c0::dsk/c0t0d0
```

Environment Variables See [environ\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following environment variables that affect the execution of `cfgadm`: `LC_TIME`, `LC_MESSAGES`, `NLSPATH` and `TZ`.

- LC_MESSAGES Determines how `cfgadm` displays column headings and error messages. Listing output data is not affected by the setting of this variable.
- LC_TIME Determines how `cfgadm` displays human readable status changed time (`status_time`).
- TZ Specifies the timezone used when converting the status changed time. This applies to both the human readable (`status_time`) and parsable (`status_time_p`) formats.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 An error occurred.
- 2 Configuration administration not supported on specified target.
- 3 Usage error.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [cfgadm_fp\(1M\)](#), [cfgadm_ib\(1M\)](#), [cfgadm_pci\(1M\)](#), [cfgadm_sbd\(1M\)](#), [cfgadm_scsi\(1M\)](#), [cfgadm_usb\(1M\)](#), [ifconfig\(1M\)](#), [mount\(1M\)](#), [prtdiag\(1M\)](#), [psradm\(1M\)](#), [syslogd\(1M\)](#), [config_admin\(3CFGADM\)](#), [getopt\(3C\)](#), [getsubopt\(3C\)](#), [isatty\(3C\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#)

Diagnostics Diagnostic messages appear on the standard error output. Other than options and usage errors, the following are diagnostic messages produced by this utility:

- `cfgadm: Configuration administration not supported on ap_id`
- `cfgadm: No library found for ap_id`
- `cfgadm: ap_idis ambiguous`
- `cfgadm: operation: Insufficient privileges`
- `cfgadm: Attachment point is busy, try again`
- `cfgadm: No attachment points with specified attributes found`
- `cfgadm: System is busy, try again`
- `cfgadm: operation: Operation requires a service interruption`
- `cfgadm: operation: Data error: error_text`
- `cfgadm: operation: Hardware specific failure: error_text`

See [config_admin\(3CFGADM\)](#) for additional details regarding error messages.

Notes Hardware resources enter the unconfigured pool in a hardware specific manner. This can occur at various times such as: system initialization or as a result of an unconfigure operation. An occupant that is in the unconfigured state is not available for use by the system until specific intervention occurs. This intervention can be manifested as an operator initiated command or it can be by way of an automatic configuring mechanism.

The listing option of the `cfgadm` command can be used to provide parsable input for another command, for example within a shell script. For parsable output, the `-s` option must be used to select the fields required. The `-s` option can also be used to suppress the column headings. The following fields always produce parsable output: `ap_id`, `physid`, `r_state`, `o_state`, `condition`, `busy_status_time_p`, `class`, and `type`. Parsable output never has white-space characters embedded in the field value.

The following shell script fragment finds the first good unconfigured occupant of type CPU.

```
found=
cfgadm -l -s "noheadings,cols=ap_id:r_state:condition:type" | \
while read ap_id r_state cond type
do
    if [ "$r_state" = unconfigured -a "$cond" = ok -a "$type" = CPU ]
    then
        if [ -z "$found" ]
        then
            found=$ap_id
        fi
    fi
done
if [ -n "$found" ]
then
    echo "Found CPU $found"
fi
```

The format of the parsable time field (`status_time_p`) is `YYYYMMDDhhmmss`, giving the year, month, day, hour, minute and second in a form suitable for string comparison.

Reference should be made to the hardware specific documentation for details of System Configuration Administration support.

Name `cfgadm_ac` – EXX00 memory system administration

Synopsis `/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-c configure] [-f]`
`[-o disable-at-boot | enable-at-boot] ac#:bank# ...`
`/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-c unconfigure]`
`[-o disable-at-bootp | enable-at-boot] ac#:bank# ...`
`/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-v]`
`[-o quick | normal | extended, [max_errors=#]] -t ac#:bank#...`
`/usr/sbin/cfgadm -x relocate-test ac#:bank# ...`
`/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-l] -o disable-at-boot | enable-at-boot ac#:bank# ...`

Description The ac hardware specific library `/usr/platform/sun4u/lib/cfgadm/cfgadm_ac.so.1` provides the functionality for configuring and unconfiguring memory banks on E6X00, E5X00, E4X00 and E3X00 systems as part of the Dynamic Reconfiguration of CPU/Memory boards using `cfgadm_sysctrl(1M)`.

Memory banks appear as attachment points in the device tree. For each CPU/Memory board, two attachment points are published, one for each bank on the board: `bank0` and `bank1`. If the bank is unpopulated, the receptacle state is empty. If the bank is populated, the receptacle state is connected. The receptacle state of a memory bank can never be disconnected. The occupant state of a connected memory bank can be configured or unconfigured. If the occupant state is configured, the memory is in use by Solaris, if unconfigured it is not.

Options Refer to `cfgadm(1M)` for complete descriptions of the command options.

The following options are supported:

<code>-c configure unconfigure</code>	Change the occupant state. The <code>configure</code> argument ensures that the memory is initialized and adds the memory to the Solaris memory pool. The <code>unconfigure</code> argument removes the memory from use by Solaris. When a CPU/Memory board is to be removed from a system, both banks of memory must be unconfigured.
---	--

`cfgadm` refuses the `configure` operation if the memory on the board is marked `disabled-at-boot` (see `info` field), unless either the `-f` (force) option or the `enable at boot` flag, (`-o enable-at-boot`), is given. The `configure` operation takes a short time proportional to the size of memory that must be initialized.

`cfgadm` refuses the `unconfigure` operation if there is not enough uncommitted memory in the system (VM viability error) or if the bank to be unconfigured has memory that can't be removed (`non-relocatable`

pages error). The presence of non-relocatable pages is indicated by the word *permanent* in the *info* listing field. Removing memory from use by Solaris may take a significant time due to factors such as system load and how much paging to secondary storage is required. The `unconfigure` operation can be cancelled at any time and the memory returned to the fully configured state by interrupting the command invocation with a signal. The `unconfigure` operation self-cancels if no memory can be removed within a timeout period. The default timeout period of 60 seconds can be changed using the `-o timeout=#` option, with a value of 0 disabling the timeout.

- f Force option. Use this option to override the block on configuring a memory bank marked as disabled at boot in the `non-volatile disabled-memory-list` variable. See *Platform Notes: Sun Enterprise 6x00/5x00/4x00/3x00 Systems*
- l List option. This option is supported as described in `cfgadm(1M)`.

The type field is always *memory*.

The *info* field has the following information for empty banks:

```
slot# empty
```

The *slot#* indicates the system slot into which the CPU/Memory board is inserted. For example, if this were slot11 the attachment point for use with `cfgadm` to manipulate the associated board would be `sysctrl0:slot11`. The *info* field has the following information for connected banks:

```
slot# sizeMb|sizeGb [(sizeMb|sizeGb used)] base 0x###
      [interleaved #-way] [disabled at boot] [permanent]
```

The size of the bank is given in Mb or Gb as appropriate. If the memory is less than completely used, the used size is reported. The physical base address is given in hexadecimal. If the memory bank is interleaved with some other bank, the interleave factor is reported. If the memory on the board is disabled at boot using the `non-volatile disabled-memory-list`

	variable, this is reported. If the bank has memory that cannot be removed this is reported as permanent.
-o disable-at-boot enable-at-boot	These options allow the state of the non-volatile disabled-memory-list variable to be modified. These options can be used in conjunction with the issuing of a -c option or with the explicit or implied listing command, -l, if no command is required. Use of -o enable-at-boot with the configure command to override the block on configuring memory on a board in the disabled memory list.
-o extended normal quick	Use with the -t option to specify test level. The normal test level ensures that each memory cell stores both a 0 and a 1, and checks that all cells are separately addressable. The quick test level only does the 0s and 1s test, and typically misses address line problems. The extended test uses patterns to test for adjacent cell interference problems. The default test level is normal. See -t option.
-o max_errors=#	Use with the -t option to specify the maximum number of allowed errors. If not specified, a default of 32 is assumed.
-o timeout=#	Use with the unconfigure command to set the self-cancelling timeout. The default value is 60 and the unit is seconds. A value of 0 means no timeout.
-t	Test an unconfigured bank of memory. Specify the test level using the -o quick normal extended option. cfgadm exits with a 0 (success) if the test was able to run on the memory bank. The result of the test is available in the condition for the attachment point.
-v	Verbose option. Use this option in combination with the -t option to display detailed progress and results of tests.
-x relocate-test	For all pages of memory in use on the specified memory bank, a relocation operation as used in the unconfigure command is attempted. The success of this operation does not guarantee that the bank can be unconfigured. Failure indicates that it probably cannot be unconfigured. This option is for test purposes only.

Operands The following operand is supported:

ac#:bank# The attachment points for memory banks are published by instances of the address controller (ac) driver (*ac#*). One instance of the ac driver is created for each system board, but only those instances associated with CPU/Memory boards publish the two bank attachment points, bank0 and bank1.

This form conforms to the logical *ap_id* specification given in *cfgadm(1M)*. The corresponding physical *ap_ids* are listed in the FILES section.

The ac driver instance numbering has no relation to the slot number for the corresponding board. The full physical attachment point identifier has the slot number incorporated into it as twice the slot number in hexadecimal directly following the *fhc@* part.

Files */devices/fhc@*,f8800000/ac@0,1000000:bank?* attachment points
/usr/platform/sun4u/lib/cfgadm/cfgadm_ac.so.1 hardware specific library file

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWkvm.u

See Also [cfgadm\(1M\)](#), [cfgadm_sysctrl\(1M\)](#), [config_admin\(3CFGADM\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Sun Enterprise 6x00, 5x00, 4x00 and 3x00 Systems Dynamic Reconfiguration User's Guide

Platform Notes:Sun Enterprise 6x00/5x00/4x00/3x00 Systems

Notes Refer to the *Sun Enterprise 6x00, 5x00, 4x00 and 3x00 Systems Dynamic Reconfiguration User's Guide* for additional details regarding dynamic reconfiguration of EXX00 system CPU/Memory boards.

Name cfgadm_cardbus – cardbus hardware specific commands for cfgadm

Synopsis /usr/sbin/cfgadm [-f] [-y | -n] [-v]
 [-o *hardware_options*] -c *function ap_id* [*ap_id*]
 /usr/sbin/cfgadm [-f] [-y | -n] [-v]
 [-o *hardware_options*] -x *hardware_function ap_id*
 [*ap_id*]
 /usr/sbin/cfgadm [-v] [-s *listing_options*]
 [-o *hardware_options*] [-l [*ap_id* | *ap_type*]]
 /usr/sbin/cfgadm [-v] [-o *hardware_options*] -t *ap_id* [*ap_id*]
 /usr/sbin/cfgadm [-v] [-o *hardware_function*] -h
 [*ap_id*| *ap_type*]

Description The CardBus slots in Solaris are hot plug capable. This capability is supported by the PCI hardware specific library /usr/lib/cfgadm/pci.so.1 through the cfgadm command (see [cfgadm\(1M\)](#)).

The hot plug administrative models between CardBus, PCI, CompactPCI, and PCI Express operate the same fashion. Please refer to [cfgadm_pci\(1M\)](#) for the usage information.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsl

See Also [cfgadm\(1M\)](#), [config_admin\(3CFGADM\)](#), [libcfgadm\(3LIB\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

System Administration Guide: Basic Administration

Name `cfgadm_fp` – driver specific commands for `cfgadm`

Synopsis `/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-f] [-n | -y] [-v] [-o hardware_options]`
`-c function ap_id [ap_id]`

`/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-v] [-a] [-s listing_options]`
`[-o hardware_options] [-l [ap_id]]`

`/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-v] [-o hardware_options] -h [ap_id]`

Description The `fp` port driver plug-in `/usr/lib/cfgadm/fp.so.1` provides the functionality for Fibre Channel Fabric device node management through `cfgadm(1M)`. `cfgadm` operates on attachment points. Attachment points are locations in the system where hardware resources can be dynamically reconfigured. Refer to `cfgadm(1M)` for additional details on attachment points.

For Fibre Channel Fabric device node management, each `fp` port node is represented by an attachment point in the device tree. In addition, each Fibre Channel device is represented by a dynamic attachment point. Attachment points are named through `ap_ids`. Two types of `ap_ids` are defined: logical and physical. The physical `ap_id` is based on the physical pathname. The logical `ap_id` is a shorter, more user-friendly name. For `fp` port nodes, the logical `ap_id` is the corresponding disk controller number. For example, `c0` is a typical logical `ap_id`.

Fibre Channel devices are named with a port World Wide Name (WWN). If a disk device is connected to controller `c0`, its `ap_id` can be:

```
c0::50020f2300006077
```

where `50020f2300006077` identifies the port WWN of a specific Fibre Channel device.

Each device on the Fibre Channel private loop port, Fabric port or public loop port is probed and made available to Solaris by default. Devices connected to the Fibre Channel Fabric port or public loop port can be made unavailable to Solaris by initiating an application or an end user operation. The operation is similar to the hot unplugging of devices by way of management user interfaces. Applications or users can use the `/usr/lib/cfgadm/fp.so.1` library to enable `libcfgadm` to provide interfaces to accomplish this task.

The list of currently connected Fabric devices is generated in the form of the attachment point.

A simple listing of attachment points in the system includes attachment points at `fp` port nodes but not Fibre Channel devices. The following example uses the `-a` flag to the list option (`-l`) to list Fibre Channel devices:

```
# cfgadm -l
  Ap_Id           Type           Receptacle  Occupant    Condition
  c0              fc-fabric      connected   configured  unknown
  c1              fc-private     connected   configured  unknown
  c2              fc-pt_to_pt    connected   configured  unknown
  c3              fc             connected   unconfigured unknown
```

sysctrl0:slot0	cpu/mem	connected	configured	ok
sysctrl0:slot1	sbus-upa	connected	configured	ok

The following example lists Fibre Channel devices connected to fp ports.

```
# cfgadm -al
Ap_Id          Type          Receptacle  Occupant    Condition
c0             fc-fabric    connected   configured  unknown
c0::50020f2300006077 disk         connected   configured  unknown
c0::50020f23000063a9 disk         connected   configured  unknown
c0::50020f2300005f24 disk         connected   configured  unknown
c0::50020f2300006107 disk         connected   configured  unknown
c1             fc-private   connected   configured  unknown
c1::220000203708b69c disk         connected   configured  unknown
c1::220000203708ba7d disk         connected   configured  unknown
c1::220000203708b8d4 disk         connected   configured  unknown
c1::220000203708b9b2 disk         connected   configured  unknown
c2             fc-pt_to_pt  connected   configured  unknown
c2::500104f000937528 tape         connected   configured  unknown
c3             fc           connected   unconfigured unknown
sysctrl0:slot0  cpu/mem     connected   configured  ok
sysctrl0:slot1  sbus-upa    connected   configured  ok
```

In this example, the `fc-fabric` type of `ap_id c0` indicates that the fp port is connected to Fabric. For an fp port with a Fabric-related type such as `fc-fabric` and `fc-public`, device node creation happens by default at the boot time and can be managed by the `cfgadm` `configure` and `unconfigure` operations. The `fc-private` type of `ap_id c1` indicates that fp port is connected to private-loop and device node creation happens by default as well. The `fc-pt_to_pt` type of `ap_id c2` indicates that the fp port is directly connected to another `N_port` and device node creation also happens by default. The `fc` type of `ap_id c3` indicates that nothing is attached to fp port `c2`. The `Type` field of a Fibre Channel device `ap_id` shows the SCSI device type of LUN 0 in the device.

A Fibre Channel device with multiple FCP SCSI LUNs is configured into Solaris and each FCP SCSI LUN is available as a Solaris device. Suppose that `ap_ids c0::50020f2300006077` and `c0::50020f23000063a9` represent Fibre Channel devices with multiple FCP SCSI LUNs.

The following example shows how to list `ap_ids` with FCP SCSI LUN information:

```
# cfgadm -al -o show SCSI_LUN
Ap_Id          Type          Receptacle  Occupant    Condition
c0             fc-fabric    connected   configured  unknown
c0::50020f2300006077,0 disk         connected   configured  unknown
c0::50020f2300006077,1 disk         connected   configured  unknown
c0::50020f2300006077,2 disk         connected   configured  unknown
c0::50020f2300006077,3 disk         connected   configured  unknown
c0::50020f23000063a9,0 disk         connected   configured  unknown
c0::50020f23000063a9,1 disk         connected   configured  unknown
c0::50020f23000063a9,2 disk         connected   configured  unknown
```

```

c0::50020f23000063a9,3 disk      connected  configured  unknown
c0::50020f2300005f24,0 disk      connected  unconfigured unknown
c0::50020f2300005f24,1 disk      connected  unconfigured unknown
c0::50020f2300006107,0 disk      connected  unconfigured unknown
c0::50020f2300006107,1 disk      connected  unconfigured unknown
c1          fc-private  connected  configured  unknown
c1::220000203708b69c,0 disk      connected  configured  unknown
c1::220000203708ba7d,0 disk      connected  configured  unknown
c1::220000203708b8d4,0 disk      connected  configured  unknown
c1::220000203708b9b2,0 disk      connected  configured  unknown
c2          fc-pt_to_pt  connected  configured  unknown
c2::500104f000937528,0 tape      connected  configured  unknown
c3          fc          connected  unconfigured unknown

```

In this example, the `ap_id c0::50020f2300006077,0` identifies the FCP SCSI LUN 0 of the Fibre Channel device which is represented by port `WWN 50020f2300006077`. The Fibre Channel device is reported to have 4 FCP SCSI LUNs and they are all configured. 4 FCP SCSI LUN level `ap_ids` associated with port `WWN 50020f2300006077` are listed. The listing also displays FCP SCSI LUNs for unconfigured Fibre Channel devices. The Fibre Channel device represented by `c0::50020f2300005f24` is reported to have two FCP SCSI LUNs. The configure operation on `c0::50020f2300005f24` creates two Solaris devices. The Type field of FCP SCSI LUN level `ap_ids` show the SCSI device type of each LUN. When a Fibre Channel device has different device type LUNs, the Type field reflects that.

The receptacle and occupant state for attachment points at the `fp` port have the following meanings:

configured

One or more devices configured on the `fp` port

connected

`fp` port active

disconnected

`fp` port quiesced (IO activity is suspended)

empty

Not applicable

unconfigured

No devices configured on the `fp` port

The state for individual Fibre Channel devices on an `fp` port:

configured

Device is configured into Solaris and is available for use

connected

`fp` port to which the device is connected to is active

disconnected

fp port to which the device is attached is quiesced

unconfigured

Device is available to be configured

The `condition` field for attachment points at the fp port has the following meanings:

failed

An error condition has prevented the fp port from being able to detect the presence or type of a Fibre Channel connection.

The `condition` field for individual Fibre Channel devices on an fp port has the following meanings:

failed

An error is encountered while probing a device on Fabric.

failing

A device was configured on a host and its state as seen by Solaris appears to be normal (i.e., online) but it is either not currently present or visible in the fabric or its presence could not be verified due to an error condition on the local port through which the device was configured.

unusable

A device has been configured on the host, but is currently offline or failed.

The `unknown condition` indicates that probing a device on Fabric completed without an error and the device state within Solaris host is normal if the device was configured previously. The internal condition of the device cannot be guaranteed.

Options `cfgadm` defines several types of operations in addition to listing (`-l`). These operations include invoking configuration state changes and obtaining configuration administration help messages (`-h`).

The following options are supported:

`-c function`

The following generic commands are defined for the fp-transport-specific library:

For Fibre Channel device attachment points on the `fc-fabric` type fp port attachment point, the following configuration state change operations are supported:

`configure`

Configure a connected Fibre Channel Fabric device to a host. When a Fibre Channel device is listed as an unknown type in the output of the list operation the device might not be configurable. No attempt is made to configure devices with unknown types. The force option (`-f`) can be used to force the fp port driver plug-in to make an attempt to configure any devices. Any errors in the process are reported. By default, each FCP SCSI

LUN that is discovered on a Fibre channel Fabric device is configured. However, FCP SCSI LUNs that are specified in the “pwwn-lun-blacklist” property in the `fp.conf` file will remain unconfigured. The FCP SCSI LUN level listing reflects the state of such FCP SCSI LUNs. They stay in the “unconfigured” state after reboot or Solaris Dynamic Reconfiguration on the controller that they are connected through. Refer to [fp\(7d\)](#) for additional details on the “pwwn-lun-blacklist” property.

`unconfigure`

Unconfigure a Fibre Channel Fabric device from a host. This device stays unconfigured until the next reboot or Solaris Dynamic Reconfiguration on the controller that the device is connected, at which time all fabric devices are automatically enumerated. The default behavior may be changed through the use of the “manual_configuration_only” property in the `fp.conf` file. If the property is set, the device remains unconfigured after reboot. Refer to [fp\(7d\)](#) for additional details on the “manual_configuration_only” property.

For Fibre Channel private loop devices and `N_Port` point-to-point devices, the `configure` command returns success without doing any operation. The `unconfigure` command is not supported on the private loop devices and `N_Port` point-to-point devices. The private loop devices and `N_Port` point-to-point devices are configured by Solaris Fibre Channel drivers by default and are not managed through end user- or application-initiated operations. The `pwwn-lun-blacklist` property in the `fp.conf` file is applied to the private loop device and `N_Port` point-to-point device in the same way it is applied to a Fabric device.

`-f`

Force the `configure` change state operation to occur irrespective of the condition or type. Refer to the above description of the `configure` change state operation.

`-h ap_id`

Obtain `fp`—transport-specific help. Specify any `fp` attachment point.

`-o hardware_options`

The following hardware options are supported.

`show_SCSI_LUN`

Lists `ap_ids` associated with each FCP SCSI LUN for discovered Fibre Channel devices when specified with the `list` option `-al`. Refer to the previously mentioned description and example of FCP SCSI LUN level listing. Device node creation is not supported on the FCP SCSI LUN level. See **NOTES**.

All Fibre Channel devices are available to Solaris by default. Enabling only a subset of Fabric devices available to Solaris by default can be accomplished by setting the property “manual_configuration_only” in `/kernel/drv/fp.conf` file. When “manual_configuration_only” in `fp.conf` is set, all Fabric devices are not available to Solaris unless an application or an end user had previously requested the device be configured into Solaris. The `configure` state-change command makes the device available

to Solaris. After a successful `configure` operation on a Fabric device, the associated links are added to the `/dev` namespace. The `unconfigure` state-change command makes a device unavailable to Solaris.

When a Fibre Channel Fabric device is configured successfully to a host using the `-c configure` operation, its physical `ap_id` is stored in a repository. When a Fibre Channel Fabric device is unconfigured using the `-c unconfigure` operation, its physical `ap_id` is deleted from the same repository. All fabric devices are automatically enumerated by default and the repository is used only if the `fp.conf` “`manual_configuration_only`” property is set. Refer to [fp\(7d\)](#) for additional details on the “`manual_configuration_only`” property.

You can specify the following commands with the `-c` option to control the update behavior of the repository:

`force_update`

For `configure`, the attachment point is unconditionally added to the repository; for `unconfigure`, the attachment point is unconditionally deleted.

`no_update`

No update is made to the repository regardless of the operation.

These options should not be used for normal `configure` and `unconfigure` operations. See **WARNINGS**.

When a Fibre Channel device has multiple FCP SCSI LUNs configured and any Solaris device associated with its FCP SCSI LUN is in the unusable condition, the whole Fibre Channel device is reported as unusable. The following option with the `-c unconfigure` command removes only Solaris devices with the unusable condition for a Fibre Channel device.

`unusable_SCSI_LUN`

For `unconfigure` operation, any offlined device nodes for a target device is removed.

`-s listing_options`

Refer to [cfgadm\(1M\)](#) for usage information.

`-t ap_id`

No test commands are available at present.

`-x hardware_function`

No hardware specific functions are available at present.

All other options have the same meaning as defined in the [cfgadm\(1M\)](#) man page.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Unconfiguring a Disk

The following command unconfigures a disk:

```
# cfgadm -c unconfigure c0::210000203708b606
```

EXAMPLE 2 Unconfigure all the Configured Disks under Single Attachment Point

The following command unconfigures all configured disks under the attachment point `c0`.

```
# cfgadm -c unconfigure c0
```

EXAMPLE 3 Configuring a Disk

The following command configures a disk:

```
# cfgadm -c configure c0::210000203708b606
```

EXAMPLE 4 Configure all the Unconfigured Disks under Single Attachment Point

The following command configures all unconfigured disks under the attachment point `c0`.

```
# cfgadm -c configure c0
```

EXAMPLE 5 Removing the Fibre Channel Fabric Device Attachment Point from Repository

The following command unconditionally removes the fibre channel fabric device attachment point from the Fabric device repository.

```
# cfgadm -c unconfigure -o force_update c0::210000203708b606
```

EXAMPLE 6 Removing Offlined Solaris Device Nodes for a Target Device

The following command removes offlined Solaris device nodes for a target device:

```
# cfgadm -c unconfigure -o unusable_SCSI_LUN c0::210000203708b606
```

Files /usr/lib/cfgadm/fp.so.1

Hardware-specific library for Fibre Channel Fabric device node management.

/etc/cfg/fp/fabric_wwn_map

Repository of physical `ap_ids` of Fabric devices currently configured. It is used only to reconfigure those Fabric devices at boot time. This repository is only used when the “`manual_configuration_only`” /`kernel/drv/fp.conf` file is set.

/etc/rcS.d/fdevattach

Reconfigures Fabric device(s) of which physical `ap_id` is listed in /`etc/cfg/fp/fabric_wwn_map` on boot time.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcfpl, SUNWcfplx

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [cfgadm\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [config_admin\(3CFGADM\)](#), [libcfgadm\(3LIB\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [fp\(7d\)](#)

Warnings Do not use hardware-specific options for the repository update under normal `configure/unconfigure` operations. The hardware-specific options are expected to be used when the node creation of a Fabric device fails at boot time and the error condition is considered to be permanent. The `unconfigure` command with `force_update` hardware-specific option unconditionally removes the attachment point of a failing Fabric device from the repository.

Notes For devices with unknown or no SCSI device type (for example, a Fibre Channel Host Bus Adapter), the `configure` operation might not be applicable.

The `configure` and `unconfigure` commands operate on the Fibre Channel device level which is represented by port WWN `ap_id`. If a Fibre Channel device has multiple FCP SCSI LUNs configured, the `configure` command on the associated port WWN `ap_id` results in creating a Solaris device for each FCP SCSI LUN unless it is specified in the “`pwwn-lun-blacklist`” property in the `fp.conf` file. The `unconfigure` command removes all Solaris devices associated with the port WWN `ap_id`. The FCP SCSI LUN level `ap_id` is not valid for the `configure` and `unconfigure` commands.

The deprecated `show_FCP_dev` option has been replaced by the new `show_SCSI_LUN` option, and the deprecated `unusable_FCP_dev` option has been replaced by the new `unusable_SCSI_LUN` option.

The `cfgadm_fp` service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/device/fc-fabric:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

No administrative actions on this service are required for Fabric device configuration once this service is started on boot time.

Name `cfgadm_ib` – InfiniBand hardware specific commands for `cfgadm`

Synopsis `/usr/sbin/cfgadm -f [-y | -n] [-v] -c function ap_id...`
`/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-f] [-y | -n] [-v] [-o hardware_options]`
`-x hardware_function ap_id...`
`/usr/sbin/cfgadm -v [-a] [-s listing_option] [-] [ap_id | ap_type...]`
`/usr/sbin/cfgadm -v -h [ap_id]...`

Description The InfiniBand hardware specific library `/usr/lib/cfgadm/ib.so.1` provides the functionality for administering its fabric through the `cfgadm(1M)` utility. `cfgadm` operates on attachment points. See `cfgadm(1M)`.

An InfiniBand (IB) device is enumerated by the IB nexus driver, `ib(7D)`, based on the services from the IB Device Manager (IBDM).

The IB nexus driver creates and initializes five types of child device nodes:

- IB Port devices
- IB HCA service (HCA_SVC) devices
- IB Virtual Physical Point of Attachment (VPPA) devices
- I/O Controller (IOC)
- IB Pseudo devices

See `ib(7D)` for details on enumeration of IB Port, IB VPPA, and IB HCA_SVC devices. For additional information on IBDM, see `ibdm(7D)`. See `ib(4)` for details on IB Pseudo devices.

For IB administration, two types of static attachment point are created for the fabric administration as seen by the given host. There is one static attachment point `ib` and all IB devices (either an IOC, Port, VPPA, HCA_SVC, or a Pseudo device) in the fabric are represented as dynamic attachment points based off of it. There is another static attachment point for each Host Channel Adapter (HCA) in the host based on its node Globally Unique Identifier (GUID) value.

Attachment points are named through `ap_ids`. There are two types of `ap_ids`: logical and physical. The physical `ap_id` is based on the physical path name. For the IB fabric it is `/devices/ib: fabric`. The logical `ap_id` is a shorter, and has a more user friendly name.

The static `ap_id` for the IB fabric is `ib`. The IB devices are dynamic attachment points and have no physical `ap_id`. The logical `ap_id` of an IOC contains its GUID, `ib: :IOC-GUID`. An example of an IOC `ap_id` is `ib: :80020123456789a`. The logical `ap_id` of a Pseudo device, see `ib(4)` for details, is of the format `ib: :driver_name, unit-address`. An example of a pseudo `ap_id` would be `ib: :sdp, 0` where “sdp” is the driver name and “0” is its `unit-address` property. The logical `ap_id` of Port, VPPA and HCA_SVC device contains its Partition Key (`P_Key`), `Port GUID / Node GUID` and a communication service-name. The format of `ap_id` is as below:

Port device

`ib: :PORT_GUID, 0, service-name`

VPPA device

`ib: :PORT_GUID,P_Key,service-name`

HCA_SVC device

`ib: :HCA_GUID,0,servicename`

The Partition Key (*P_Key*) is 0 for Port and HCA_SVC devices. The *P_Key* helps determine the partition to which this port belongs for a VPPA device node. A port might have more than one *P_Key*. An example of a VPPA device logical ap_id point is `ib: :80245678,ffff,ipib`. The *port-GUID* is 80245678, the *P_Key* is 0xffff, and the service name is ipib. The service-name information is obtained from the file `/kernel/drv/ib.conf` which contains service-name strings. The HCA's logical ap_id contains its node GUID value, `hca:HCA-GUID`. An example is `hca:21346543210a987`.

A listing of the IB attachment points includes information on all IB devices (IOC, VPPA, HCA_SVC, Pseudo, and Port devices seen by the IBDM and the IB nexus driver) in the fabric even if they are not seen by the host and configured for use.

The following shows a listing of five IB devices (two IOC, one VPPA, one Port, one HCA_SVC) and one HCA:

```
example# cfgadm -al
Ap_Id                               Type      Receptacle  Occupant    Condition
hca:21346543210a987                 IB-HCA    connected   configured  ok
ib                                    IB-FABRIC connected   configured  ok
ib: :80020123456789a                 IB-IOC    connected   configured  ok
ib: :802abc9876543                   IB-IOC    connected   unconfigured unknown
ib: :80245678,ffff,ipib              IB-VPPA   connected   configured  ok
ib: :12245678,0,nfs                   IB-PORT   connected   configured  ok
ib: :21346543,0,hnfs                  IB-HCA_SVC connected   configured  ok
ib: :sdp,0                             IB-PSEUDO connected   configured  ok
```

The ap_id `ib: :802abc9876543` shows an IOC device that is not yet configured by the host for use or had been previously offlined by an explicit

```
cfgadm -c unconfigure
```

operation. The distinction was made by the information displayed under the *Condition* column. The IB device with a zero *P_Key* and HCA GUID is a HCA_SVC device. Refer to [cfgadm\(1M\)](#) for more information regarding listing attachment points.

The receptacle state for attachment points have the following meanings:

connected

For an IOC/VPPA/Port/Pseudo/HCA_SVC device, *connected* implies that it has been seen by the host. The device might not have been configured for use by Solaris.

For a HCA attachment point, *connected* implies that it has been configured and is in use.

All IB ap_ids are always shown as connected.

The occupant state for attachment points have the following meanings:

configured

The IB device, and the HCA `ap_id`, are configured and usable by Solaris.

unconfigured

The IB device at the `ap_id` was explicitly offlined using `cfgadm -c unconfigure`, was not successfully configured. This could be because it wasn't successfully configured for use with Solaris (no driver, or a device problem), or because it was never configured for use by the IB nexus driver.

The `unconfigured` operation is not supported for the HCA attachment point. The IB static `apid, ib`, is shown `unconfigured` if the system has no IB hardware.

The attachment point conditions are:

failed

Not used.

failing

Not used.

ok

Normal state. Ready for use.

unknown

This state is only valid for IB device that have been probed by IBDM but not yet configured for use by Solaris. It is also shown for devices that have been explicitly offlined by a `cfgadm -c unconfigure` operation. This condition does not apply to a HCA attachment point.

unusable

Not used.

Options The following options are supported:

`-c function`

The IB hardware specific library supports two generic commands (*functions*). These commands are not supported on the static attachment points (that is, the HCA `ap_ids` and the IB static `ib ap_id`).

The following generic commands are supported:

`configure`

Configure the IB device to be used by Solaris.

`unconfigure`

Unconfigure the IB device. If successful, `cfgadm` reports the condition of this `ap_id` as `unknown`.

`-f`

Not supported.

- h *ap_id*
Obtain IB specific help for an IB attachment point.
- l
List the state and condition of IB attachment points. The -l option works as described in [cfgadm\(1M\)](#).

When paired with the -a option, displays the dynamic attachment points as well (IOC, VPPA, Port, Pseudo, and HCA_SVC devices).

When paired with -v option, displays verbose data about the ap_ids. For an IOC, the Info field in the
`cfgadm -avl`
output displays the following information: VendorID, IOCDeviceID, DeviceVersion, SubsystemVendorID, SubsystemID, Class, Subclass, Protocol, ProtocolVersion and IDString from the IOControllerProfile. If the ID string isn't provided then nothing is displayed in its place. These fields are defined in the InfiniBand Specification Volume 1 (<http://www.infinibandta.org>).

For a VPPA, Port, or HCA_SVC device the Info field in the `cfgadm -lav` display shows the service name information to which this device is bound. If no such information exists, nothing is displayed.

For a Pseudo device `cfgadm -alv` displays the driver name and its unit-address information. For a HCA the verbose listing displays the VendorID, ProductID of the HCA, number of ports it has, and the PortGUID value of its ports. See EXAMPLES.
- o *hardware_option*
This option is not currently defined.
- s *listing_option*
Attachment points of class ib can be listed by using the select sub-option. Refer to the [cfgadm\(1M\)](#) man page for more information.
- x *hardware_function*
Perform a hardware specific function. Note that the *name* can not be more than 4 characters long.

The following hardware specific functions are supported:
`add_service -ocomm=[port|vppa|hca_svc],service=name`
This hardware specific function is supported on the static IB attachment point. It can be used to add a new service to `/kernel/drv/ib.conf` file and to update the [ib\(7D\)](#) driver.

You must use the `service=name` option to indicate the new service to be added. You must use the option `comm=[port|vppa|hca_svc]` option to add the name service to either `port-svc-list` or to the `hca-svc-list` in the `/kernel/drv/ib.conf` file. See EXAMPLES.

`delete_service -ocomm=[port|vppa|hca_svc], service=name`

This hardware specific function is supported on the static IB attachment point only. It can be used to delete an existing service from the `/kernel/drv/ib.conf` file and also from the [ib\(7D\)](#) driver's data base. You must use the `service=name` option to indicate which service to delete. You must use the `comm=[port|vppa|hca_svc]` option to delete this service from the `port-svc-list`, `vppa-svc-list`, or `vppa-svc-list` of the `/kernel/drv/ib.conf` file. See EXAMPLES.

`list_clients`

Supported on HCA attachment points. Displays all the kernel IB clients using this HCA. It also displays the respective `ap_ids` of these kernel IB clients and if they have opened an alternate HCA device. See EXAMPLES.

.

If a given kernel IB client does not have a valid `ap_id` then a - is displayed in that column.

`list_services`

This hardware specific function is supported on the static IB attachment point only. It lists all the Port and VPPA services as read from the `/kernel/drv/ib.conf` file. See EXAMPLES.

`unconfig_clients`

This hardware specific function is supported on the static HCA attachment point only. It can be used to unconfigure all IB kernel clients of this given HCA. Only IB kernel clients that do not have an alternate HCA are unconfigured. See EXAMPLES.

`update_ioc_config`

This hardware specific function is supported on static ib attachment point and the IOC attachment points. For the `ib APID`, this function updates properties of all the IOC device nodes. For the `IOC APID`, this function updates the properties of specified IOC device node. This command updates the `port-list`, `port-entries`, `service-id`, and `service-name` IOC node properties .

See [ib\(7D\)](#).

`update_pkey_tbls`

Supported on the static `ib` attachment point. Updates the PKEY information inside IBTL. IBTL re-reads the P_Key tables for all the ports on each HCA present on the host.

See [ibtl\(7D\)](#).

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Listing the State and Condition of IB Devices

The following command lists the state and condition of IB devices on the system. It only shows the static attachment points.

EXAMPLE 1 Listing the State and Condition of IB Devices (Continued)

```
example# cfgadm
hca:21346543210a987      IB-HCA      connected   configured   ok
ib                       IB-FABRIC   connected   configured   ok
```

The -a option lists all attachment points. The following example uses the -a option and lists all attachment points:

```
example# cfgadm -a
hca:21346543210a987      IB-HCA      connected   configured   ok
ib                       IB-FABRIC   connected   configured   ok
ib::80020123456789a      IB-IOC      connected   unconfigured ok
ib::80245678,ffff,ipib    IB-VPPA     connected   configured   ok
ib::21346543,0,hnfs       IB-HCA_SVC  connected   configured   ok
ib::12245678,0,nfs       IB-PORT     connected   configured   ok
ib::sdp,0                 IB-PSEUDO   connected   configured   ok
```

EXAMPLE 2 Listing the Verbose Status of a IB VPPA Device

The following command lists the verbose status of a IB VPPA device:

```
example# cfgadm -alv ib::80245678,ffff,ipib
Ap_Id          Receptacle Occupant  Condition Information
When          Type      Busy Phys_Id
ib::80245678,ffff,ipib  connected  configured ok          ipib
unavailable IB-VPPA  n        /devices/ib:fabric::80245678,ffff,ipib
```

A verbose listing of an IOC shows additional information. The following command shows a verbose listing:

```
example# cfgadm -alv ib::80020123456789a
Ap_Id          Receptacle Occupant  Condition Information
When          Type      Busy Phys_Id
ib::80020123456789a  connected  configured ok          VID: 0xeaea
DEVID: 0xeaea VER: 0x5 SUBSYS_VID: 0x0 SUBSYS_ID: 0x0 CLASS: 0xffff
SUBCLASS: 0xff PROTO: 0xff PROTOVER: 0x1 ID_STRING: Sample Host Adapter
unavailable IB-IOC  n        /devices/ib:fabric::80020123456789a
```

A verbose listing of a Pseudo device shows:

```
example# cfgadm -alv ib::sdp,0
Ap_Id          Receptacle Occupant  Condition Information
When          Type      Busy Phys_Id
ib::sdp,0      connected  configured ok          Driver = "sd
p" Unit-address = "0"
unavailable IB-PSEUDO  n        /devices/ib:fabric::sdp,0
```

A verbose listing of a HCA shows:

EXAMPLE 2 Listing the Verbose Status of a IB VPPA Device (Continued)

```
example# cfgadm -alv hca:21346543210a987
Ap_Id           Receptacle  Occupant    Condition Information
When           Type        Busy Phys_Id
hca:21346543210a987  connected  configured  ok          VID: 0x15b3,
PID: 0x5a44, #ports: 0x2, port1 GUID: 0x80245678, port2 GUID: 0x80245679
unavailable IB-HCA      n /devices/ib:21346543210a987
```

You can obtain more user-friendly output if you specify these following `cfgadm` class and field selection options: `-s "select=class(ib),cols=ap_id:info"`

The following command displays only IB `ap_ids`. The output only includes the `ap_id` and `Information` fields.

```
# cfgadm -al -s "cols=ap_id:info" ib::80245678,ffff,ipib
Ap_Id           Information
ib::80245678,ffff,ipib      ipib
```

EXAMPLE 3 Unconfiguring an Existing IB IOC

The following command unconfigures the IB IOC attached to `ib::80020123456789a`, then displays the status of the `ap_id`:

```
# cfgadm -c unconfigure ib::80020123456789a
Unconfigure the device: /devices/ib:fabric::80020123456789a
This operation will suspend activity on the IB device
Continue (yes/no)?
```

Enter: y

IB device unconfigured successfully.

```
# cfgadm -al ib::80020123456789a
Ap_Id           Type        Receptacle  Occupant    Condition
ib::80020123456789  IB-IOC     connected   unconfigured unknown
#
```

The condition `unknown` implies that the device node doesn't exist anymore and this IB device's existence is known only to the IB Device Manager.

EXAMPLE 4 Configuring an IB IOC

The following series of commands configures an IB device attached to `ib::80020123456789a`:

```
# cfgadm -yc configure ib::80020123456789a
# cfgadm -al ib::80020123456789a
Ap_Id           Type        Receptacle  Occupant    Condition
```


EXAMPLE 4 Configuring an IB IOC (Continued)

```
ib::80020123456789a  IB-IOC      connected  configured  ok
```

EXAMPLE 5 Listing All Kernel IB Clients of a HCA

The following command lists all kernel IB clients of an HCA attached to hca:21346543210a987:

```
# cfgadm -x list_clients hca:21346543210a987
Attachment Point      Clients                Alternate HCA
ib::80020123456789a  ioc1                  Yes
ib::80245678,ffff,ipib ipib                  No
ib::21346543,0,hnfs  hnfs                  No
-                    ibdm                  No
-                    ibmf                  No
```

EXAMPLE 6 Adding a Port Service

The following command adds a new Port service called srp:

```
# cfgadm -o comm=port,service=srp -x add_service ib
```

EXAMPLE 7 Deleting a VPPA Service

The following command deletes the ibd VPPA service ibd:

```
# cfgadm -o comm=vppa,service=ipib -x delete_service ib
```

EXAMPLE 8 Listing Port, VPPA, HCA_SVC Services

The following command lists all Port, VPPA, and HCA_SVC services:

```
# cfgadm -x list_services ib
Port communication services:
    srp

VPPA communication services:
    ipib
    nfs

HCA_SVC communication services:
    hnfs
```

EXAMPLE 9 Reprobing IOC Devices

The following command reprobes all IOC device nodes.

EXAMPLE 9 Reprobing IOC Devices *(Continued)*

```
# cfgadm -x update_ioc_config ib
This operation can update properties of IOC devices.
Continue (yes/no)?

Enter: y

#
```

EXAMPLE 10 Unconfiguring All Kernel Clients of a HCA

The following command unconfigures all kernel clients of a HCA

```
# cfgadm -x unconfig_clients hca:21346543
This operation will unconfigure clients of this HCA.
Continue (yes/no)?

Enter: y
```

Files /usr/lib/cfgadm/ib.so.1
Hardware-specific library for generic InfiniBand device administration

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsl

See Also [cfgadm\(1M\)](#), [config_admin\(3CFGADM\)](#), [libcfgadm\(3LIB\)](#), [ib\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [ib\(7D\)](#), [ibdm\(7D\)](#), [ibtl\(7D\)](#)

InfiniBand Specification Volume 1 (<http://www.infinibandta.org>)

Notes Apart from the listing (`cfgadm -l` or `cfgadm -x list_clients`), only the superuser can execute any functions on an attachment point.

Name `cfgadm_pci` – PCI, CompactPCI, and PCI Express Hotplug hardware specific commands for `cfgadm`

Synopsis

```

/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-f] [-y | -n] [-v]
    [-o hardware_options] -c function ap_id [ap_id]

/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-f] [-y | -n] [-v]
    [-o hardware_options] -x hardware_function ap_id
    [ap_id]

/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-v] [-s listing_options]
    [-o hardware_options] [-l [ap_id | ap_type]]

/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-v] [-o hardware_options] -t ap_id [ap_id]

/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-v] [-o hardware_function] -h
    [ap_id | ap_type]

```

Description The PCI hardware specific library, `/usr/lib/cfgadm/pci.so.1`, provides the support for hotplugging PCI and CompactPCI adapter cards into the respective hotpluggable slots in a system that is hotplug capable, through the `cfgadm` command (see [cfgadm\(1M\)](#)). This library does not include support for PCI Express Hotplug or Standard PCI Hotplug adapter cards, which are provided by a different library (see [cfgadm_shp\(1M\)](#)). Hotplug administrative models between PCI, CompactPCI remain the same except where noted in this document.

For PCI Hot Plug, each hotplug slot on a specific PCI bus is represented by an attachment point of that specific PCI bus.

An attachment point consist of two parts: a receptacle and an occupant. The receptacle under PCI Hot Plug is usually referred to as the physical hotpluggable slot; and the occupant is usually referred to as the PCI adapter card that plugs into the slot.

Attachment points are named through `ap_ids`. There are two types of `ap_ids`: logical and physical. The physical `ap_id` is based on the physical pathname, that is, `/devices/pci@1/hpc0_slot3`, whereas the logical `ap_id` is a shorter, and more user-friendly name. For PCI hotpluggable slots, the logical `ap_id` is usually the corresponding hotplug controller driver name plus the logical slot number, that is, `pci0:hpc0slot1`; PCI nexus driver, with hotplug controller driver named `hpc` and slot number 1. The `ap_type` for PCI Hot Plug is `pci`.

Note that the `ap_type` is not the same as the information in the Type field.

See the [System Administration Guide: Basic Administration](#) for a detailed description of the hotplug procedure.

Options The following options are supported:

`-c function`

The following *functions* are supported for PCI hotpluggable slots:

configure

Configure the PCI device in the slot to be used by Solaris.

connect

Connect the slot to PCI bus.

disconnect

Disconnect the slot from the PCI bus.

insert

Not supported.

remove

Not supported.

unconfigure

Logically remove the PCI device's resources from the system.

-f

Not supported.

-h *ap_id* | *ap_type*

Print out PCI Hot Plug-specific help message.

-l *list*

List the values of PCI Hot Plug slots.

-o *hardware_options*

No hardware specific options are currently defined.

-s *listing_options*

Same as the generic `cfgadm(1M)`.

-t *ap_id*

This command is only supported on platforms which support testing capability on the slot.

-v

Execute in verbose mode.

When the `-v` option is used with the `-l` option, the `cfgadm` command outputs information about the attachment point. For PCI Hotplug attachment points located in a PCI PCI Express hierarchy, see `cfgadm_shp(1M)` for details. For PCI Hot Plug attachment points not located in a PCI Express hierarchy, the `Information` field will be the slot's system label, if any. This string will be obtained from the `slot-name` property of the slot's bus node. The information in the `Type` field is printed with or without the `v` option. The occupant `Type` field will describe the contents of the slot. There are 2 possible values:

unknown

The slot is empty. If a card is in the slot, the card is not configured or there is no driver for the device on the card.

subclass/board

The card in the slot is either a single-function or multi-function device.

subclass is a string representing the subclass code of the device, for example, SCSI, ethernet, pci - isa, and so forth. If the card is a multi-functional device, MULT will get printed instead.

board is a string representing the board type of the device. For example, hp is the string used for a PCI Hot Plug adapter, hs is used for a Hot Swap Board, nhs for a Non—Hot Swap cPCI Board, bhs for a Basic Hot Swap cPCI Board, and fhs for a Full Hot Swap cPCI Board.

Most PCI cards with more than one device are not multi-function devices, but are implemented as a PCI bridge with arbitrary devices behind them. In those cases, the subclass displayed is that of the PCI bridge. Most commonly, the bridges are pci - pci , a generic PCI to PCI bridge or stpci , a semi-transparent PCI bridge.

-x hardware_function

Perform hardware specific function. These hardware specific functions should not normally change the state of a receptacle or occupant.

The following *hardware_functions* are supported:

enable_slot | disable_slot

Change the state of the slot and preserve the state of slot across reboot. Preservation of state across reboot is only supported on select platforms.

enable_slot enables the addition of hardware to this slot for hotplugging and at boot time.

disable_slot disables the addition of hardware to this slot for hotplugging and at boot time. When a slot is disabled its condition is shown as unusable.

enable_autoconfig | disable_autoconfig

Change the ability to autoconfigure the occupant of the slot. Only platforms that support auto configuration support this feature.

enable_autoconfig enables the ability to autoconfigure the slot.

disable_autoconfig disables the ability to autoconfigure the slot.

Autoconfiguration is done through the attention button on the PCI Express platforms and through the injector/ejector latch on the CompactPCI platforms. When autoconfiguration is disabled, the attention button or latch mechanism cannot be used to configure the occupant of the slot.

led=[led_sub_arg],mode=[mode_sub_arg]

Without sub-arguments, print a list of the current LED settings. With sub-arguments, set the mode of a specific LED for a slot.

Specify *led_sub_arg* as *fault*, *power*, *attn*, or *active*.

Specify *mode_sub_arg* as *on*, *off* or *blink*.

Changing the state of the LED does not change the state of the receptacle or occupant. Normally, the LEDs are controlled by the hotplug controller, no user intervention is necessary. Use this command for testing purposes.

Caution: Changing the state of the LED can misrepresent the state of occupant or receptacle.

The following command prints the values of LEDs:

```
example# cfgadm -x led pci0:hpc0_slot1
Ap_Id          Led
pci0:hpc0_slot1  power=on, fault=off, active=off, attn=off
```

The following command turns on the Fault LED:

```
example# cfgadm -x led=fault,mode=on pci0:hpc0_slot1
```

The following command turns off the Power LED:

```
example# cfgadm -x led=power,mode=off pci0:hpc0_slot0
```

The following command sets the *active* LED to blink to indicate the location of the slot:

```
example# cfgadm -x led=active,mode=on pci0:hpc0_slot3
```

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Printing out the Value of Each Slot

The following command prints out the values of each slot:

```
example# cfgadm -l
Ap_Id          Type          Receptacle  Occupant    Condition
c0             scsi-bus     connected   configured  unknown
c1             scsi-bus     connected   unconfigured unknown
c2             scsi-bus     connected   unconfigured unknown
cpci_slot1    stpci/fhs    connected   configured  ok
cpci_slot2    unknown      empty       unconfigured unknown
cpci_slot4    stpci/fhs    connected   configured  ok
cpci_slot5    stpci/fhs    connected   configured  ok
```

EXAMPLE 2 Replacing a Card

The following command lists all DR-capable attachment points:

```
example# cfgadm
```

```
Type          Receptacle  Occupant    Condition
```

EXAMPLE 2 Replacing a Card (Continued)

```

c0          scsi-bus    connected    configured    unknown
c1          scsi-bus    connected    unconfigured  unknown
c2          scsi-bus    connected    unconfigured  unknown
cpci_slot1 stpci/fhs    connected    configured    ok
cpci_slot2 unknown      empty        unconfigured  unknown
cpci_slot4 stpci/fhs    connected    configured    ok
cpci_slot5 stpci/fhs    connected    configured    ok

```

The following command unconfigures and electrically disconnects the card:

```
example# cfgadm -c disconnect cpci_slot4
```

The change can be verified by entering the following command:

```
example# cfgadm cpci_slot4
```

```

Ap_Id          Type          Receptacle  Occupant    Condition
cpci_slot4     unknown      disconnected unconfigured unknown

```

Now the card can be swapped. The following command electrically connects and configures the card:

```
example# cfgadm -c configure cpci_slot4
```

The change can be verified by entering the following command:

```
example# cfgadm cpci_slot4
```

```

Ap_Id          Type          Receptacle  Occupant    Condition
cpci_slot4     stpcipci/fhs connected    configured    ok

```

Files /usr/lib/cfgadm/pci.so.1
Hardware specific library for PCI hotplugging.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsl

See Also [cfgadm\(1M\)](#), [cfgadm_shp\(1M\)](#), [config_admin\(3CFGADM\)](#), [libcfgadm\(3LIB\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

System Administration Guide: Basic Administration

Name `cfgadm_sata` – SATA hardware-specific commands for `cfgadm`

Synopsis `/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-f] [-y | -n] [-v] [-o hardware_options]`
`-c function ap_id...`

`/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-f] [-y | -n] [-v] [-o hardware_options]`
`-x hardware_function ap_id...`

`/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-v] [-a] [-s listing_options]`
`[-o hardware_options] [-l [ap_id | ap_type]...]`

`/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-v] [-o hardware_options] -t ap_id...`

`/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-v] [-o hardware_options] -h [ap_id]...`

Description The SATA hardware specific library, `/usr/lib/cfgadm/sata.so.1`, provides the functionality for SATA hot plugging through the `cfgadm` command. `cfgadm` operates on attachment points, which are locations in the system where hardware resources can be dynamically reconfigured. See [cfgadm\(1M\)](#) for information regarding attachment points.

Each SATA controller's and port multiplier's device port is represented by an attachment point in the device tree. SATA devices, connected and configured in the system are shown as the attachment point name extension. The terms “attachment point” and “SATA port” are used interchangeably in the following description.

Attachment points are named through `ap_ids`. All the SATA attachment points `ap_id` consist of a string in the following form:

```
sataX/P[.M][::dsk/cXtYd0]
```

where

X	is the SATA controller number
P	is the SATA controller's device port number (0 to 31)
M	is the port multiplier's device port number (0 to 14) the port multiplier host port number (15). It is used only when the port multiplier is attached to the SATA controller's device port.
dev/cXtYd0	identifies the attached SATA device
Y	is a target number

In general, the device identifier is derived from the corresponding logical link for the device in `/dev`. Because only one LUN (LUN 0) is supported by the SATA device, the “d” component of the device string will always have number 0 (zero).

For example, the logical `ap_id` of the device port 4 of the port multiplier connected to the device port 5 of the SATA controller 2 would be:

```
sata2/5.4
```


If the SATA disk or CD/DVD device is connected to this attachment point, and the device is configured, the *ap_id* would be:

```
sata2/5.4::disk/c2t645d0
```

The *cXtYd0* string identifying a device has one-to-one correspondence to the device attachment point.

A simple listing of attachment points in the system will include all SATA device ports and attached devices. For example:

```
#cfgadm -l
Ap_Id                Type      Receptacle  Occupant  Condition
sata0/0::dev/c0t0d0  disk     connected   configured ok
sata0/1::dev/c0t1d0  disk     connected   configured ok
sata0/2::dev/c0t2d0  cd-dvd   connected   configured ok
sata0/3              sata-port empty       unconfigured ok
sata1/0              sata-port disconnected unconfigured unknown
sata1/1              sata port disconnected unconfigured unknown
sata1/2              sata port empty       unconfigured ok
sata1/3.15           sata-pmult connected   configured ok
sata1/3.0::dev/c0t512d0 disk     connected   configured ok
sata1/3.1             sata-port empty       unconfigured ok
sata1/3.2             sata-port empty       unconfigured ok
sata1/3.3             sata-port empty       unconfigured ok
usb0/1               unknown  empty       unconfigured ok
usb0/2               unknown  empty       unconfigured ok
```

See [cfgadm\(1M\)](#) for more information regarding listing of attachment points.

The receptacle state for attachment point at the SATA port have the following meanings:

empty	The SATA port is powered-on and enabled. No device presence was detected on this port.
disconnected	The SATA port is not enabled or the SATA device presence was detected but no communication with the device was established, or the port has failed.
connected	The SATA device is detected on the port the communication with the device is established.

The occupant (device attached to the SATA port) state have the following meanings:

configured	The attached SATA device is configured and ready to use by the operating system.
unconfigured	No device is attached, or the SATA device attached to the SATA port was not yet configured. To configure it, run the command “ <code>cfgadm -c configure ap_id</code> ”.

The attachment point (SATA port) condition have the following meanings:

- ok The SATA port is powered-on and enabled, and is ready for use.
- failed The SATA port failed. It may be disabled and/or powered-off by the system. It is unusable and its condition is unknown. It may be due to the device plugged-in.
- unknown The SATA port is disabled and its condition is unknown.

A “state table” is the combination of an attachment point receptacle state, an occupant state, and an attachment point (SATA port) condition. The valid states are:

- empty/unconfigured/ok The SATA port is enabled and active. No device presence was detected.
- disconnected/unconfigured/ok The SATA port is enabled and a device presence was detected but no communications with the device was established.
- disconnected/unconfigured/unknown The SATA Port is disabled and its condition is unknown.
- disconnected/unconfigured/failed The SATA Port is disabled and unusable. The port was disabled by the system due to a system-detected failure.
- connected/unconfigured/ok The SATA Port is enabled and active. A device presence was detected and the communication with a device was established. The device is not configured to be used by the OS.
- connected/configured/ok The device is present and configured, and is ready to use by the OS.

Options cfgadm defines several types of operations besides listing (-l). These operations include testing, (-t), invoking configuration state changes, (-c), invoking hardware specific functions (-x), and obtaining configuration administration help messages (-h).

-c function

The following generic *functions* are defined for the SATA hardware specific library. For SATA port attachment point, the following configuration state change operations are supported:

connect

Enable (activate) the SATA port and establish the communication with an attached device. This operation implies powering-on the port if necessary.

disconnect

Unconfigure the attached device, if it is not already unconfigured, and disable (deactivate) the SATA port. A subsequent “connect” command enables SATA port

operation but does not bring a device to the “configured” state.

For a SATA device attached to the SATA port following state change operations are supported:

configure	Configure new device for use by the operating system if it is not already configured. This command also implies connect operation, if necessary.
unconfigure	Unconfigure the device connected to the SATA port if it is not already unconfigured.

The `configure` and `unconfigure` operations cannot be used for an attachment point where the port multiplier is connected. Port multipliers are configured and unconfigured automatically by the system. However, `configure` and `unconfigure` operations apply to all SATA devices connected to the port multiplier's device ports.

- f
Not supported.
- h *ap_id*
SATA specific help can be obtained by using the help option with any SATA attachment point.
- l [-v]
The -l option works as described in [cfgadm\(1M\)](#). When paired with the -v option, the “Information” field contains the following SATA-specific information:
 - Mfg: manufacturer string
 - Product: product string
 - No: product Serial Number
- o *hardware_options*
No hardware specific options are currently defined.
- s *listing_options*
Attachment points of class SATA can be listed by using the select suboption. See [cfgadm\(1M\)](#).
- t *ap_id*
Perform self-test of the SATA port, if supported by the SATA controller. If a port self-test operation is not supported by the SATA controller, an error message is issued.
- x *hardware_function*
Perform hardware specific function.

Some of the following commands used on the SATA ports or the SATA controller may affect any SATA devices that have been attached, as noted. `ap_id` refers to SATA port or the entire SATA controller, as noted. If the operation implies unconfiguring a device, but it cannot be unconfigured (that is, the device contains a mounted filesystem), an error

message is issued and the operation is not performed. An error message will be also issued if the SATA controller does not support specified operation.

`sata_reset_device ap_id`

Reset the SATA device attached to `ap_id` SATA port. The SATA port state does not change.

`sata_reset_port ap_id`

Reset the SATA port specified by `ap_id`. If a SATA device is attached to the port, it is also reset. This operation may be also performed on the port to which a port multiplier is connected. If a port multiplier is connected to the SATA controller port, the SATA devices attached to the port multiplier may not be reset

`sata_reset_all ap_id`

Reset SATA controller specified by the controller number part in `ap_id` and all attached devices and re-enumerate all connected devices, including port multipliers and devices connected to port multipliers' device ports.

This operations implies unconfiguring all attached devices prior to the operation. Any newly enumerated devices will be left unconfigured.

`sata_port_deactivate ap_id`

Force the deactivation of the port when all else fails. This is meant as an emergency step; use with caution.

`sata_port_activate ap_id`

Force the activation of a port. This is meant for emergency situations on a port which was deactivated to recover from errors.

`sata_port_self_test ap_id`

Perform self-test operation on the SATA controller. This operation implies unconfiguring all devices and resetting the SATA controller.

-v

Execute in verbose mode.

The following Transitions table reports the state transitions resulting from the -c operations and hotplugging actions:

current state	operation	possible new state
-----	-----	-----
empty/ unconfigured/ok	device plug-in	connected/unconfigured/ok, or disconnected/unconfigured/ok, or disconnected/unconfigured/failed
empty/ unconfigured/ok	-c unconfigure	error message, no state change
empty/		

unconfigured/ok	-c configure	error message, no state change
empty/ unconfigured/ok	-c connect	error message, no state change
empty/ unconfigured/ok	-c disconnect	disconnected/unconfigured/unknown, or disconnected/unconfigured/failed
disconnected/ unconfigured/ok	device unplug	no state change
disconnected/ unconfigured/ok	-c unconfigure	error message, no state change
disconnected/ unconfigured/ok	-c configure	error message, no state change
disconnected/ unconfigured/ok	-c connect	error message, no state change
disconnected/ unconfigured/ok	-c disconnect	error message, no state change
disconnected/ unconfigured/ unknown (no disk plugged)	-c configure	error message, state change to empty/unconfigured/ok, or disconnected/unconfigured/failed
disconnected/ unconfigured/ unknown (disk plugged)	-c configure	state change to connected/configured/ok or, connected/unconfigured/ok, or disconnected/unconfigured/failed and possible error message
disconnected/ unconfigured/ unknown	-c connect	empty/unconfigured/ok, or connected/unconfigured/ok, or disconnected/unconfigured/ok, or disconnected/unconfigured/unknown, or disconnected/unconfigured/failed
disconnected/		

unconfigured/ unknown	-c disconnect	error message, no state change
disconnected/ unconfigured/ failed	any command other than -x commands	error message, no state change
connected/ unconfigured/ok	disk unplug	error message and state: empty/unconfigured/ok, or disconnected/unconfigured/failed
connected/ unconfigured/ok	-c configure	connected/unconfigured/ok, or connected/configured/ok, or disconnected/unconfigured/ok, or disconnected/unconfigured/failed
connected/ unconfigured/ok	-c unconfigure	error message, no state change
connected/ unconfigured/ok	-c connect	error message, no state change
connected/ unconfigured/ok	-c disconnect	disconnected/unconfigured/unknown, or disconnected/unconfigured/failed
connected/ configured/ok	disk unplug	error message and state: empty/unconfigured/ok, or disconnected/unconfigured/failed
connected/ configured/ok	-c configure	error message, no state change
connected/ configured/ok	-c unconfigure	error message, if device cannot be unconfigured, no state change, or connected/unconfigured/ok, or disconnected/unconfigured/ok, or disconnected/unconfigured/failed
connected/ configured/ok	-c connect	error message, no state change

```
connected/
configured/ok    -c disconnect    error message, if device cannot be
                                     unconfigured, no state change, or
                                     disconnected/unconfigured/unknown, or
                                     disconnected/unconfigured/failed
```

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Configuring a Disk

The following command configures a disk attached to SATA controller 0, port 0:

```
example# cfgadm -c configure sata0/0
```

This command should be issued only when there is a device connected to the SATA port.

EXAMPLE 2 Unconfiguring a Disk

The following command unconfigures a disk attached to SATA controller 0, port 3:

```
example# cfgadm -c unconfigure sata0/3::disk/c0t3d0
```

The device identifying string is shown when the attachment point receptacle state is “connected” and occupant state is “configured”.

EXAMPLE 3 Encountering a Mounted File System While Unconfiguring a Disk

The following command illustrates encountering a mounted file system while unconfiguring a disk:

```
example# cfgadm -c unconfigure sata1/5::disk/c0t135d0
```

The system responds with the following:

```
cfgadm: Component system is busy, try again: failed to offline:
/devices/pci@0,0/pci8086,244e@1e/pci1095,3124@1/sd@5,0
      Resource          Information
-----
/dev/dsk/c1t5d0s0    mounted filesystem "/mnt"
```

Files /usr/lib/cfgadm/sata.so.1 Hardware specific library for generic SATA hot plugging.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsl

See Also [cfgadm\(1M\)](#), [config_admin\(3CFGADM\)](#), [libcfgadm\(3LIB\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes The emergency “sata_port_deactivate” operation is not supported on ports with attached disks containing critical partitions such as root (/), /usr, swap, or /var. The deactivate operation should not be attempted on such ports. Incorrect usage can result in a system hang and require a reboot.

Hotplugging operations are not supported by all SATA controllers.

If SATA connectors are the hot-pluggable type and the SATA controller supports hotplugging, a SATA device can be hotplugged at any time. The system detects the event and establishes the communication with the device. The device has to be configured by the explicit “`cfgadm -c configure ap_id`” command.

If the SATA connectors are the hot-pluggable type and the SATA controller supports hotplugging, unplugging a device without unconfiguring it may result in system hang or data loss. If a device is unconfigured but receptacle state is not in a disconnected state, unplugging a device from the SATA port will result in error message.

Warnings The connectors on some SATA devices do not conform to SATA hotplug specifications. Performing hotplug operations on such devices can cause damage to the SATA controller and/or the SATA device.

Name `cfgadm_sbd` – `cfgadm` commands for system board administration

Synopsis `cfgadm -l [-a] [-o parsable] ap_id...`
`cfgadm -c function [-f] [-y | -n]`
`[-o unassign | nopoweroff] [-v] ap_id...`
`cfgadm -t [-v] ap_id...`
`cfgadm -x [-f] [-v] function ap_id...`

Description The `cfgadm_sbd` plugin provides dynamic reconfiguration functionality for connecting, configuring, unconfiguring, and disconnecting class `sbd` system boards. It also enables you to connect or disconnect a system board from a running system without having to reboot the system.

The `cfgadm` command resides in `/usr/sbin`. See [cfgadm\(1M\)](#). The `cfgadm_sbd` plugin resides in `/usr/platform/sun4u/lib/cfgadm`.

Each board slot appears as a single attachment point in the device tree. Each component appears as a dynamic attachment point. You can view the type, state, and condition of each component, and the states and condition of each board slot by using the `-a` option.

The `cfgadm` options perform differently depending on the platform. Additionally, the form of the attachment points is different depending on the platform. See the `Platform Notes` section for more information.

Component Conditions The following are the names and descriptions of the component conditions:

`failed` The component failed testing.
`ok` The component is operational.
`unknown` The component has not been tested.

Component States The following is the name and description of the receptacle state for components:

`connected` The component is connected to the board slot.

The following are the names and descriptions of the occupant states for components:

`configured` The component is available for use by the Solaris operating environment.
`unconfigured` The component is not available for use by the Solaris operating environment.

Board Conditions The following are the names and descriptions of the board conditions.

`failed` The board failed testing.
`ok` The board is operational.
`unknown` The board has not been tested.

unusable The board slot is unusable.

Board States Inserting a board changes the receptacle state from empty to disconnected. Removing a board changes the receptacle state from disconnected to empty.

Caution: Removing a board that is in the connected state or that is powered on and in the disconnected state crashes the operating system and can result in permanent damage to the system.

The following are the names and descriptions of the receptacle states for boards:

connected The board is powered on and connected to the system bus. You can view the components on a board only after it is in the connected state.

disconnected The board is disconnected from the system bus. A board can be in the disconnected state without being powered off. However, a board must be powered off and in the disconnected state before you remove it from the slot.

empty A board is not present.

The occupant state of a disconnected board is always unconfigured. The following table contains the names and descriptions of the occupant states for boards:

configured At least one component on the board is configured.

unconfigured All of the components on the board are unconfigured.

Dynamic System Domains Platforms based on dynamic system domains (DSDs, referred to as domains in this document) divide the slots in the chassis into electrically isolated hardware partitions (that is, DSDs). Platforms that are not based on DSDs assign all slots to the system permanently.

A slot can be empty or populated, and it can be assigned or available to any number of domains. The number of slots available to a given domain is controlled by an available component list (ACL) that is maintained on the system controller. The ACL is not the access control list provided by the Solaris operating environment.

A slot is visible to a domain only if the slot is in the domain's ACL and if it is not assigned to another domain. An unassigned slot is visible to all domains that have the slot in their ACL. After a slot has been assigned to a domain, the slot is no longer visible to any other domain.

A slot that is visible to a domain, but not assigned, must first be assigned to the domain before any other state changing commands are applied. The assign can be done explicitly using `-x assign` or implicitly as part of a connect. A slot must be unassigned from a domain before it can be used by another domain. The unassign is always explicit, either directly using `-x unassign` or as an option to disconnect using `-o unassign`.

State Change Functions Functions that change the state of a board slot or a component on the board can be issued concurrently against any attachment point. Only one state changing operation is permitted at a given time. A Y in the Busy field in the state changing information indicates an operation is in progress.

The following list contains the functions that change the state:

- configure
- unconfigure
- connect
- disconnect

Availability Change Functions Commands that change the availability of a board can be issued concurrently against any attachment point. Only one availability change operation is permitted at a given time. These functions also change the information string in the `cfgadm -l` output. A Y in the Busy field indicates that an operation is in progress.

The following list contains the functions that change the availability:

- assign
- unassign

Condition Change Functions Functions that change the condition of a board slot or a component on the board can be issued concurrently against any attachment point. Only one condition change operation is permitted at a given time. These functions also change the information string in the `cfgadm -l` output. A Y in the Busy field indicates an operation is in progress.

The following list contains the functions that change the condition:

- poweron
- poweroff
- test

Unconfigure Process This section contains a description of the unconfigure process, and illustrates the states of source and target boards at different stages during the process of moving permanent memory.

In the following code examples, the permanent memory on board 0 must be moved to another board in the domain. Thus, board 0 is the source, and board 1 is the target.

A status change operation cannot be initiated on a board while it is marked as busy. For brevity, the CPU information has been removed from the code examples.

The process is started with the following command:

```
# cfgadm -c unconfigure -y SB0::memory &
```

First, the memory on board 1 in the same address range as the permanent memory on board 0 must be deleted. During this phase, the source board, the target board, and the memory attachment points are marked as busy. You can display the status with the following command:

```
# cfgadm -a -s cols=ap_id:type:r_state:o_state:busy SB0 SB1
```

Ap_Id	Type	Receptacle	Occupant	Busy
SB0	CPU	connected	configured	y
SB0::memory	memory	connected	configured	y
SB1	CPU	connected	configured	y
SB1::memory	memory	connected	configured	y

After the memory has been deleted on board 1, it is marked as unconfigured. The memory on board 0 remains configured, but it is still marked as busy, as in the following example.

Ap_Id	Type	Receptacle	Occupant	Busy
SB0	CPU	connected	configured	y
SB0::memory	memory	connected	configured	y
SB1	CPU	connected	configured	y
SB1::memory	memory	connected	unconfigured	n

The memory from board 0 is then copied to board 1. After it has been copied, the occupant state for the memory is switched. The memory on board 0 becomes unconfigured, and the memory on board 1 becomes configured. At this point in the process, only board 0 remains busy, as in the following example.

Ap_Id	Type	Receptacle	Occupant	Busy
SB0	CPU	connected	configured	y
SB0::memory	memory	connected	unconfigured	n
SB1	CPU	connected	configured	n
SB1::memory	memory	connected	configured	n

After the entire process has been completed, the memory on board 0 remains unconfigured, and the attachment points are not busy, as in the following example.

Ap_Id	Type	Receptacle	Occupant	Busy
SB0	CPU	connected	configured	n
SB0::memory	memory	connected	unconfigured	n
SB1	CPU	connected	configured	n
SB1::memory	memory	connected	configured	n

The permanent memory has been moved, and the memory on board 0 has been unconfigured. At this point, you can initiate a new state changing operation on either board.

Platform-Specific Options You can specify platform-specific options that follow the options interpreted by the system board plugin. All platform-specific options must be preceded by the `platform` keyword. The following example contains the general format of a command with platform-specific options:

```
command -o sbd_options,platform=platform_options
```

Options This man page does not include the `-v`, `-a`, `-s`, or `-h` options for the `cfgadm` command. See `cfgadm(1M)` for descriptions of those options. The following options are supported by the `cfgadm_sbd` plugin:

`-c function` Performs a state change function. You can use the following functions:

`unconfigure` Changes the occupant state to unconfigured. This function applies to system board slots and to all of the components on the system board.

The `unconfigure` function removes the CPUs from the CPU list and deletes the physical memory from the system memory pool. If any device is still in use, the `cfgadm` command fails and reports the failure to the user. You can retry the command as soon as the device is no longer busy. If a CPU is in use, you must ensure that it is off line before you proceed. See `pbind(1M)`, `psradm(1M)` and `psrinfo(1M)`.

The `unconfigure` function moves the physical memory to another system board before it deletes the memory from the board you want to unconfigure. Depending of the type of memory being moved, the command fails if it cannot find enough memory on another board or if it cannot find an appropriate physical memory range.

For permanent memory, the operating system must be suspended (that is, quiesced) while the memory is moved and the memory controllers are reprogrammed. If the operating system must be suspended, you will be prompted to proceed with the operation. You can use the `-y` or `-n` options to always answer yes or no respectively.

Moving memory can take several minutes to complete, depending on the amount of memory and the system load. You can monitor the progress of the operation by issuing a status command against the memory attachment point. You can also interrupt the memory operation by stopping the `cfgadm` command. The deleted memory is returned to the system memory pool.

- `disconnect` Changes the receptacle state to disconnected. This function applies only to system board slots.
- If the occupant state is configured, the `disconnect` function attempts to unconfigure the occupant. It then powers off the system board. At this point, the board can be removed from the slot.
- This function leaves the board in the assigned state on platforms that support dynamic system domains.
- If you specify `-o nopoweroff`, the `disconnect` function leaves the board powered on. If you specify `-o unassign`, the `disconnect` function unassigns the board from the domain.
- If you unassign a board from a domain, you can assign it to another domain. However, if it is assigned to another domain, it is not available to the domain from which it was unassigned.
- `configure` Changes the occupant state to configured. This function applies to system board slots and to any components on the system board.
- If the receptacle state is disconnected, the `configure` function attempts to connect the receptacle. It then walks the tree of devices that is created by the `connect` function, and attaches the devices if necessary. Running this function configures all of the components on the board, except those that have already been configured.
- For CPUs, the `configure` function adds the CPUs to the CPU list. For memory, the `configure` function ensures that the memory is initialized then adds the memory to the system memory pool. The CPUs and the memory are ready for use after the `configure` function has been completed successfully.
- For I/O devices, you must use the `mount` and the `ifconfig` commands before the devices can be used. See [ifconfig\(1M\)](#) and [mount\(1M\)](#).
- `connect` Changes the receptacle state to connected. This function applies only to system board slots.

If the board slot is not assigned to the domain, the `connect` function attempts to assign the slot to the domain. Next, it powers on and tests the board, then it connects the board electronically to the system bus and probes the components.

After the `connect` function is completed successfully, you can use the `-a` option to view the status of the components on the board. The `connect` function leaves all of the components in the unconfigured state.

The assignment step applies only to platforms that support dynamic system domains.

`-f` Overrides software state changing constraints.

The `-f` option never overrides fundamental safety and availability constraints of the hardware and operating system.

`-l` Lists the state and condition of attachment points specified in the format controlled by the `-s`, `-v`, and `-a` options as specified in [cfgadm\(1M\)](#). The `cfgadm_sbd` plugin provides specific information in the `info` field as described below. The format of this information might be altered by the `-o parsable` option.

The parsable `info` field is composed of the following:

<code>cpu</code>	The <code>cpu</code> type displays the following information:
<code>cpuid=#[,#...]</code>	Where <code>#</code> is a number, and represents the ID of the CPU. If more than one <code>#</code> is present, this CPU has multiple active virtual processors.
<code>speed=#</code>	Where <code>#</code> is a number and represents the speed of the CPU in MHz.
<code>ecache=#</code>	Where <code>#</code> is a number and represents the size of the ecache in MBytes. If the CPU has multiple active virtual processors, the ecache could either be shared among the virtual processors, or divided between them.
<code>memory</code>	The <code>memory</code> type displays the following information, as appropriate:
<code>address=#</code>	Where <code>#</code> is a number, representing the base physical address.
<code>size=#</code>	Where <code>#</code> is a number, representing the size of the memory in KBytes.

	permanent=#	Where # is a number, representing the size of permanent memory in KBytes.
	unconfigurable	An operating system setting that prevents the memory from being unconfigured.
	inter-board-interleave	The board is participating in interleaving with other boards.
	source= <i>ap_id</i>	Represents the source attachment point.
	target= <i>ap_id</i>	Represents the target attachment point.
	deleted=#	Where # is a number, representing the amount of memory that has already been deleted in KBytes.
	remaining=#	Where # is a number, representing the amount of memory to be deleted in KBytes.
io	The io type displays the following information:	
	device= <i>path</i>	Represents the physical path to the I/O component.
	referenced	The I/O component is referenced.
board	The board type displays the following boolean names. If they are not present, then the opposite applies.	
	assigned	The board is assigned to the domain.
	powered-on	The board is powered on.
	The same items appear in the info field in a more readable format if the -o parsable option is not specified.	
-o parsable	Returns the information in the info field as a boolean <i>name</i> or a set of <i>name=value</i> pairs, separated by a space character.	
	The -o parsable option can be used in conjunction with the -s option. See the cfgadm(1M) man page for more information about the -s option.	
-t	Tests the board.	
	Before a board can be connected, it must pass the appropriate level of testing.	

Use of this option always attempts to test the board, even if it has already passed the appropriate level of testing. Testing is also performed when a -c connect state change function is issued, in which case the test step can be skipped if the board already shows an appropriate level of testing. Thus the -t option can be used to explicitly request that the board be tested.

- x *function* Performs an sbd-class function. You can use the following functions:
- | | |
|----------|---|
| assign | Assigns a board to a domain.

The receptacle state must be disconnected or empty. The board must also be listed in the domain available component list. See Dynamic System Domains. |
| unassign | Unassigns a board from a domain.

The receptacle state must be disconnected or empty. The board must also be listed in the domain available component list. See Dynamic System Domains. |
| poweron | Powers the system board on.

The receptacle state must be disconnected. |
| poweroff | Powers the system board off.

The receptacle state must be disconnected. |

Operands The following operands are supported:

- Receptacle *ap_id* For the Sun Fire high-end systems such as the Sun Fire 15K, the receptacle attachment point ID takes the form SBX or IOX, where X equals the slot number.

The exact format depends on the platform and typically corresponds to the physical labelling on the machine. See the platform specific information in the NOTES section.
- Component *ap_id* The component attachment point ID takes the form *component_typeX*, where *component_type* equals one of the component types described in “Component Types” and X equals the component number. The component number is a board-relative unit number.

The above convention does not apply to memory components. Any DR action on a memory attachment point affects all of the memory on the system board.

Examples The following examples show user input and system output on a Sun Fire 15K system. User input, specifically references to attachment points and system output might differ on other Sun Fire systems, such as the Sun Fire midrange systems such as the 6800. Refer to the Platform Notes for specific information about using the `cfgadm_sbd` plugin on non-Sun Fire high-end models.

EXAMPLE 1 Listing All of the System Board

```
# cfgadm -a -s "select=class(sbd)"
```

Ap_Id	Type	Receptacle	Occupant	Condition
SB0	CPU	connected	configured	ok
SB0::cpu0	cpu	connected	configured	ok
SB0::memory	memory	connected	configured	ok
I01	HPCI	connected	configured	ok
I01::pci0	io	connected	configured	ok
I01::pci1	io	connected	configured	ok
SB2	CPU	disconnected	unconfigured	failed
SB3	CPU	disconnected	unconfigured	unusable
SB4	unknown	empty	unconfigured	unknown

This example demonstrates the mapping of the following conditions:

- The board in Slot 2 failed testing.
- Slot 3 is unusable; thus, you cannot hot plug a board into that slot.

EXAMPLE 2 Listing All of the CPUs on the System Board

```
# cfgadm -a -s "select=class(sbd):type(cpu)"
```

Ap_Id	Type	Receptacle	Occupant	Condition
SB0::cpu0	cpu	connected	configured	ok
SB0::cpu1	cpu	connected	configured	ok
SB0::cpu2	cpu	connected	configured	ok
SB0::cpu3	cpu	connected	configured	ok

EXAMPLE 3 Displaying the CPU Information Field

```
# cfgadm -l -s noheadings,cols=info SB0::cpu0
```

```
cpuid 16, speed 400 MHz, ecache 8 Mbytes
```

EXAMPLE 4 Displaying the CPU Information Field in Parsable Format

```
# cfgadm -l -s noheadings,cols=info -o parsable SB0::cpu0
```

```
cpuid=16 speed=400 ecache=8
```

EXAMPLE 5 Displaying the Devices on an I/O Board

```
# cfgadm -a -s noheadings,cols=ap_id:info -o parsable IO1

IO1          powered-on assigned
IO1::pci0    device=/devices/saf@0/pci@0,2000 referenced
IO1::pci1    device=/devices/saf@0/pci@1,2000 referenced
```

EXAMPLE 6 Monitoring an Unconfigure Operation

In the following example, the memory sizes are displayed in Kbytes.

```
# cfgadm -c unconfigure -y SB0::memory &
# cfgadm -l -s noheadings,cols=info -o parsable SB0::memory SB1::memory

address=0x0 size=2097152 permanent=752592 target=SB1::memory
deleted=1273680 remaining=823472
address=0x1000000 size=2097152 source=SB0::memory
```

EXAMPLE 7 Assigning a Slot to a Domain

```
# cfgadm -x assign SB2
```

EXAMPLE 8 Unassigning a Slot from a Domain

```
# cfgadm -x unassign SB3
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for a description of the following attribute:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWkvm.u
Stability	See below.

The interface stability is evolving. The output stability is unstable.

See Also [cfgadm\(1M\)](#), [devfsadm\(1M\)](#), [ifconfig\(1M\)](#), [mount\(1M\)](#), [pbind\(1M\)](#), [psradm\(1M\)](#), [psrinfo\(1M\)](#), [config_admin\(3CFGADM\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes This section contains information on how to monitor the progress of a memory delete operation. It also contains platform specific information.

Memory Delete Monitoring The following shell script can be used to monitor the progress of a memory delete operation.

```
# cfgadm -c unconfigure -y SB0::memory &
# watch_memdel SB0

#!/bin/sh
```

```

# This is the watch_memdel script.

if [ -z "$1" ]; then
    printf "usage: %s board_id\n" 'basename $0'
    exit 1
fi

board_id=$1

cfgadm_info='cfgadm -s noheadings,cols=info -o parsable'

eval '$cfgadm_info $board_id::memory'

if [ -z "$remaining" ]; then
    echo no memory delete in progress involving $board_id
    exit 0
fi

echo deleting target $target

while true
do
    eval '$cfgadm_info $board_id::memory'

    if [ -n "$remaining" -a "$remaining" -ne 0 ]
    then
        echo $deleted KBytes deleted, $remaining KBytes remaining
        remaining=
    else
        echo memory delete is done
        exit 0
    fi
    sleep 1
done
exit 0

```

Sun Enterprise 10000 Platform Notes The following syntax is used to refer to Platform Notes attachment points on the Sun Enterprise 10000 system:

board::component

where *board* refers to the system board; and *component* refers to the individual component. System boards can range from SB0 (zero) to SB15. A maximum of sixteen system boards are available.

The DR 3.0 model running on a Sun Enterprise 10000 domain supports a limited subset of the functionality provided by the `cfgadm_sbd` plugin. The only supported operation is to view the status of attachment points in the domain. This corresponds to the `-l` option and all of its associated options.

Attempting to perform any other operation from the domain will result in an error that states that the operation is not supported. All operations to add or remove a system board must be initiated from the System Service Processor.

Sun Fire High-End
System Platform Notes

The following syntax is used to refer to attachment points on the Sun Fire high-end systems:

board: :*component*

where *board* refers to the system board or I/O board; and *component* refers to the individual component.

Depending on the system's configuration, system boards can range from SB0 (zero) through SB17, and I/O boards can range from IO0 (IO zero) through IO17. (A maximum of eighteen system and I/O boards are available).

The `-t` and `-x` options behave differently on the Sun Fire high-end system platforms. The following list describes their behavior:

- t The system controller uses a CPU to test system boards by running LPOST, sequenced by the `hpost` command. To test I/O boards, the driver starts the testing in response to the `-t` option, and the test runs automatically without user intervention. The driver unconfigures a CPU and a stretch of contiguous physical memory. Then, it sends a command to the system controller to test the board. The system controller uses the CPU and memory to test the I/O board from inside of a transaction/error cage. You can only use CPUs from system boards (not MCPU boards) to test I/O boards.
- x `assign | unassign` In the Sun Fire high-end system administration model, the platform administrator controls the platform hardware through the use of an available component list for each domain. This information is maintained on the system controller. Only the platform administrator can modify the available component list for a domain.

The domain administrator is only allowed to assign or unassign a board if it is in the available component list for that domain. The platform administrator does not have this restriction, and can assign or unassign a board even if it is not in the available component list for a domain.

Sun Fire 15K
Component Types

The following are the names and descriptions of the component types:

<code>cpu</code>	CPU
<code>io</code>	I/O device
<code>memory</code>	Memory

Note: An operation on a memory component affects all of the memory components on the board.

Sun Fire Midrange
Systems Platform
Notes

References to attachment points are slightly different on Sun Fire midrange servers such as the 6800, 4810, 4800, and 3800 systems than on the Sun Fire high-end systems. The following syntax is used to refer to attachment points on Sun Fire systems other than the Sun Fire 15K:

N# . board : : component

where **N#** refers to the node; *board* refers to the system board or I/O board; and *component* refers to the individual component.

Depending on the system's configuration, system boards can range from SB0 through SB5, and I/O boards can range from IB6 through IB9. (A maximum of six system and four I/O boards are available).

Sun Fire Midrange
System Component
Types

The following are the names and descriptions of the component types:

cpu CPU

pci I/O device

memory Memory

Note: An operation on a memory component affects all of the memory components on the board.

Name `cfgadm_scsi` – SCSI hardware specific commands for `cfgadm`

Synopsis `/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-f] [-y | -n] [-v] [-o hardware_option]`
`-c function ap_id...`

`/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-f] [-y | -n] [-v] [-o hardware_option]`
`-x hardware_function ap_id...`

`/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-v] [-a] [-s listing_option] [-o hardware_option]`
`[-l [ap_id | ap_type ...]]`

`/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-v] [-o hardware_option] -t ap_id...`

`/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-v] [-o hardware_option] -h [ap_id]...`

Description The SCSI hardware specific library `/usr/lib/cfgadm/scsi.so.1` provides the functionality for SCSI hot-plugging through the `cfgadm(1M)` command. `cfgadm` operates on attachment points, which are locations in the system where hardware resources can be dynamically reconfigured. Refer to `cfgadm(1M)` for information regarding attachment points.

For SCSI hot-plugging, each SCSI controller is represented by an attachment point in the device tree. In addition, each SCSI device is represented by a dynamic attachment point. Attachment points are named through `ap_ids`. Two types of `ap_ids` are defined: logical and physical. The physical `ap_id` is based on the physical pathname, whereas the logical `ap_id` is a shorter more user-friendly name. For SCSI controllers, the logical `ap_id` is usually the corresponding disk controller number. For example, a typical logical `ap_id` would be `c0`.

SCSI devices are named relative to the controller `ap_id`. Thus if a disk device is attached to controller `c0`, its `ap_id` can be:

```
c0::dsk/c0t0d0
```

where `dsk/c0t0d0` identifies the specific device. In general, the device identifier is derived from the corresponding logical link for the device in `/dev`. For example, a SCSI tape drive logical `ap_id` could be `c0::rmt/0`. Here `c0` is the logical `ap_id` for the SCSI controller and `rmt/0` is derived from the logical link for the tape drive in `/dev/rmt`. If an identifier can not be derived from the link in `/dev`, a unique identifier will be assigned to it. For example, if the tape device has no link in `/dev`, it can be assigned an `ap_id` of the form `c0::st3` where `st3` is a unique internally generated identifier.

When a controller is capable of supporting the Solaris I/O multipathing feature (formerly known as MPxIO or the Sun StorEdge Traffic Manager [STMS]) and is enabled, the controller provides a path to a `scsi_vhci(7D)` multipath device. If a device attached to such controller is supported by `scsi_vhci(7D)` its `ap_id` can be:

```
c0::0,0
```

...where `0,0` uniquely identifies the target and logical unit information. The Type field for a path of such `ap_ids` indicates if it represent a path to the `scsi_vhci(7D)` multipath devices, along with the type of device that is connected to through the path.

A simple listing of attachment points in the system will include attachment points at SCSI controllers but not SCSI devices. Use the `-a` flag to the list option (`-l`) to list SCSI devices as well. For example:

```
# cfgadm -l
Ap_Id          Type          Receptacle    Occupant      Condition
c0             scsi-bus      connected     configured    unknown
sysctrl0:slot0  cpu/mem      connected     configured    ok
sysctrl0:slot1  sbus-upa     connected     configured    ok
```

To list SCSI devices in addition to SCSI controllers:

```
# cfgadm -al
Ap_Id          Type          Receptacle    Occupant      Condition
c0             scsi-bus      connected     configured    unknown
c0::dsk/c0t14d0  disk         connected     configured    unknown
c0::dsk/c0t11d0  disk         connected     configured    unknown
c0::dsk/c0t8d0   disk         connected     configured    unknown
c0::dsk/c0t0d0   disk         connected     configured    unknown
c0::rmt/0        tape         connected     configured    unknown
sysctrl0:slot0  cpu/mem      connected     configured    ok
sysctrl0:slot1  sbus-upa     connected     configured    ok
```

If the controller `c0` was enabled with Solaris I/O multipathing and the connected disk and tape devices are supported by Solaris I/O multipathing the output would be:

```
# cfgadm -al
Ap_Id          Type          Receptacle    Occupant      Condition
c0             scsi-bus      connected     configured    unknown
c0::11,0       disk-path     connected     configured    unknown
c0::14,0       disk-path     connected     configured    unknown
c0::8,0        disk-path     connected     configured    unknown
c0::0,0        disk-path     connected     configured    unknown
c0::a.0        tape-path     connected     configured    unknown
sysctrl0:slot0  cpu/mem      connected     configured    ok
sysctrl0:slot1  sbus-upa     connected     configured    ok
```

Refer to `cfgadm(1M)` for more information regarding listing attachment points. The receptacle and occupant state for attachment points at the SCSI controller have the following meanings:

```
empty
not applicable
```


disconnected
bus quiesced (I/O activity on bus is suspended)

connected
bus active

configured
one or more devices on the bus is configured

unconfigured
no device on the bus is configured

The corresponding states for individual SCSI devices are:

empty
not applicable

disconnected
bus to which the device is attached is quiesced

connected
bus to which device is attached is active

configured
device or path to a multipath SCSI device is configured

unconfigured
device or path to a multipath SCSI device is not configured

Options `cfgadm` defines several types of operations besides listing (`-l`). These operations include testing, (`-t`), invoking configuration state changes, (`-c`), invoking hardware specific functions (`-x`), and obtaining configuration administration help messages (`-h`).

-c function

The following generic commands are defined for the SCSI hardware specific library:

For SCSI controller attachment points, the following configuration state change operations are supported:

connect
Unquiesce the SCSI bus.

disconnect
Quiesce the bus (suspend I/O activity on bus).

Incorrect use of this command can cause the system to hang. See NOTES.

configure
Configure new devices on SCSI bus.

unconfigure
Unconfigure all devices connected to bus.

The following generic commands are defined for SCSI devices and for paths to multipath SCSI devices:

`configure`

Configure a specific device or a specific path to a multipath SCSI device.

`unconfigure`

Unconfigure a specific device or a specific path to a multipath SCSI device.

`-f`

When used with the `disconnect` command, forces a quiesce of the SCSI bus, if supported by hardware.

Incorrect use of this command can cause the system to hang. See NOTES.

`-h ap_id`

SCSI specific help can be obtained by using the help option with any SCSI attachment point.

`-o hardware_option`

No hardware specific options are currently defined.

`-s listing_option`

Attachment points of class `scsi` can be listed by using the `select` sub-option. Refer to the [cfgadm\(1M\)](#) man page for additional information.

`-t ap_id`

No test commands are available at present.

`-x hardware_function`

Some of the following commands can only be used with SCSI controllers and some only with SCSI devices.

In the following, *controller_ap_id* refers to an *ap_id* for a SCSI controller, for example, `c0`. *device_ap_id* refers to an *ap_id* for a SCSI device, for example: `c0::disk/c0dt3d0`.

The following hardware specific functions are defined:

`insert_device controller_ap_id`

Add a new device to the SCSI controller, *controller_ap_id*.

This command is intended for interactive use only.

`remove_device device_ap_id`

Remove device *device_ap_id*.

This command is intended for interactive use only.

`replace_device device_ap_id`

Remove device *device_ap_id* and replace it with another device of the same kind.

This command is intended for interactive use only.

`reset_device device_ap_id`

Reset *device_ap_id*.

`reset_bus controller_ap_id`

Reset bus *controller_ap_id* without resetting any devices attached to the bus.

`reset_all controller_ap_id`

Reset bus *controller_ap_id* and all devices on the bus.

`locator [=on|off] device_ap_id`

Sets or gets the hard disk locator LED, if it is provided by the platform. If the [on|off] suboption is not set, the state of the hard disk locator is printed.

`led[=LED,mode=on|off|blink] device_ap_id`

If no sub-arguments are set, this function print a list of the current LED settings. If sub-arguments are set, this function sets the mode of a specific LED for a slot.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Configuring a Disk

The following command configures a disk attached to controller `c0`:

```
# cfgadm -c configure c0::dsk/c0t3d0
```

EXAMPLE 2 Unconfiguring a Disk

The following command unconfigures a disk attached to controller `c0`:

```
# cfgadm -c unconfigure c0::dsk/c0t3d0
```

EXAMPLE 3 Adding a New Device

The following command adds a new device to controller `c0`:

```
# cfgadm -x insert_device c0
```

The system responds with the following:

```
Adding device to SCSI HBA: /devices/sbus@1f,0/SUNW,fas@e,8800000
This operation will suspend activity on SCSI bus c0
Continue (yes/no)?
```

Enter:

y

The system responds with the following:

```
SCSI bus quiesced successfully.
It is now safe to proceed with hotplug operation.
Enter y if operation is complete or n to abort (yes/no)?
```

Enter:

EXAMPLE 3 Adding a New Device (Continued)

y

EXAMPLE 4 Replacing a Device

The following command replaces a device attached to controller c0:

```
# cfgadm -x replace_device c0::dsk/c0t3d0
```

The system responds with the following:

```
Replacing SCSI device: /devices/sbus@1f,0/SUNW,fas@e,88000000/sd@3,0
This operation will suspend activity on SCSI bus: c0
Continue (yes/no)?
```

Enter:

y

The system responds with the following:

```
SCSI bus quiesced successfully.
It is now safe to proceed with hotplug operation.
Enter y if operation is complete or n to abort (yes/no)?
```

Enter:

y

EXAMPLE 5 Encountering a Mounted File System While Unconfiguring a Disk

The following command illustrates encountering a mounted file system while unconfiguring a disk:

```
# cfgadm -c unconfigure c1::dsk/c1t0d0
```

The system responds with the following:

```
cfgadm: Component system is busy, try again: failed to offline:
/devices/pci@1f,4000/scsi@3,1/sd@1,0
      Resource          Information
-----
/dev/dsk/c1t0d0s0    mounted filesystem "/mnt"
```

EXAMPLE 6 Displaying the Value of the Locator for a Disk

The following command displays the value of the locator for a disk. This example is specific to the SPARC Enterprise Server family:

```
# cfgadm -x locator c0::dsk/c0t6d0
```

EXAMPLE 6 Displaying the Value of the Locator for a Disk (Continued)

The system responds with the following:

```
Disk          Led
c0t6d0       locator=on
```

EXAMPLE 7 Setting the Value of the Locator for a Disk

The following command sets the value of the locator for a disk. This example is specific to the SPARC Enterprise Server family:

```
# cfgadm -x locator=off c0::disk/c0t6d0
```

The system does not print anything in response.

EXAMPLE 8 Configuring a Path to a Multipath SCSI Disk

The following command configures a path connected through controller c0:

```
# cfgadm -c configure c0::2,0
```

EXAMPLE 9 Unconfiguring a Path to a Multipath SCSI Disk

The following command unconfigures a path connected through controller c0:

```
# cfgadm -c unconfigure c0::2,0
```

- Files** /usr/lib/cfgadm/scsi.so.1
 hardware-specific library for generic SCSI hot-plugging
- /usr/platform/SPARC-Enterprise/lib/cfgadm/scsi.so.1
 platform-specific library for generic SCSI hot-plugging

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsl

See Also [cfgadm\(1M\)](#), [luxadm\(1M\)](#), [config_admin\(3CFGADM\)](#), [libcfgadm\(3LIB\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [scsi_vhci\(7D\)](#)

Notes The `disconnect` (`quiesce`) operation is not supported on controllers which control disks containing critical partitions such as `root (/)`, `/usr`, `swap`, or `/var`. The `disconnect` operation should not be attempted on such controllers. Incorrect usage can result in a system hang and require a reboot.

When a controller is in the disconnected (quiesced) state, there is a potential for deadlocks occurring in the system. The `disconnect` operation should be used with caution. A controller should be kept in the disconnected state for the minimum period of time required to accomplish the DR operation. The `disconnect` command is provided only to allow the replacement of the SCSI cables while the system is running. It should not be used for any other purpose. The only fix for a deadlock (if it occurs) is to reboot the system.

Hotplugging operations are not supported by all SCSI controllers.

Warnings The connectors on some SCSI devices do not conform to SCSI hotplug specifications. Performing hotplug operations on such devices can cause damage to the hardware on the SCSI bus. Refer to your hardware manual for additional information.

Name `cfgadm_sdcadm` – SD/MMC hardware-specific commands for `cfgadm`

Synopsis `/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-f] [-y | -n] [-o hardware_options]`
`-c function ap_id[...]`

`/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-f] [-y | -n] [-o hardware_options]`
`-c hardware_function ap_id[...]`

`/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-v] [-a] [-s listing_options]`
`[-o hardware_options] [-l [ap_id | ap_type[...]]]`

`/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-v] [-o hardware_options] -h [ap_id[...]]`

Description The Secure Digital (SD) and MultiMediaCard (MMC) hardware specific library, `/usr/lib/cfgadm/sdcadm.so.1`, provides the functionality for SD/MMC hot-plugging through the `cfgadm(1M)` command. The `cfgadm` command operates on attachment points, which are locations in the system where hardware resources can be dynamically reconfigured. See `cfgadm(1M)` for information on attachment points.

Each SD/MMC slot is represented by an attachment point in the device tree. Card devices that are connected and configured in the system are shown as attachment point name extensions. The terms "attachment point" and "SD/MMC slot" are used interchangeably throughout this manpage.

Attachment points are named through `ap_ids`. All SD/MMC attachment points consist of a string in the following form:

```
sdcardX/[S][: : dsk/cXtYd0]
```

Where:

`X` is the SD/MMC controller number.

`S` is the slot number on the controller (0 to 8).

`dev/cXtYd0` identifies the inserted memory card.

`Y` is a target number.

In general, the device identifier is derived from the corresponding logical link for the device in `/dev`. Because only one LUN (LUN 0) is supported by the SD/MMC device, the "d" component of the device string will always have number 0 (zero). For example, the logical `ap_id` of slot 4 of SD/MMC controller 2 would be `sdcard2/4`. If the SD/MMC media card is inserted in this attachment point and the device is configured, the `ap_id` might be `sdcard2/4::dsk/c2t0d0`.

The `cXtYd0` string identifying a device has one-to-one correspondence to the device attachment point.

A simple listing of attachment points in the system includes all SD/MMC device slots and attached devices. For example:

```
#cfgadm -l
Ap_Id                Type      Receptacle  Occupant  Condition
sdcards0/0::dev/c2t0d0  sdcard   connected   configured ok
sata0/1::dev/c0t1d0    disk     connected   configured ok
sata0/2::dev/c0t2d0    cd-dvd   connected   configured ok
sata0/3                sata-port empty       unconfigured ok
usb0/1                 unknown  empty       unconfigured ok
usb0/2                 unknown  empty       unconfigured ok
```

See [cfgadm\(1M\)](#) for more information regarding listing of attachment points.

The receptacle state for an attachment point at the SD/MMC slot has the following meanings:

empty

The SD/MMC slot is powered-on and enabled. No device presence was detected for this slot.

disconnected

The SD/MMC slot is not enabled, or the SD/MMC device presence was detected but no communication with the device was established, or the slot has failed.

connected

The SD/MMC device is detected in the slot and device communication is established.

The occupant (device inserted in the SD/MMC slot) state has the following meanings:

configured

The attached SD/MMC device is configured and ready to use by the operating system.

unconfigured

No device is attached, or the SD/MMC device inserted in the SD/MMC slot is not yet configured. To configure, run the command **cfgadm -c configure ap_id**.

The attachment point (SD/MMC slot) condition has the following meanings:

ok

The SD/MMC slot is powered-on, enabled and ready for use.

failed

The SD/MMC slot failed. It may be disabled and/or powered-off by the system. It is unusable and its condition is unknown. The failure may be due to the device inserted in the slot.

unknown

The SD/MMC slot is disabled and its condition is unknown.

Options The `cfgadm` command defines several types of operations besides listing (`-l`). These operations include invoking configuration state changes (`-c`), invoking hardware specific functions (`-x`), and obtaining configuration administration help messages (`-h`).

- c: For SD/MMC slot attachment points, the following configuration state change operations are supported:

connect

Enable (activate) the SD/MMC slot and establish the communication with an attached device. This operation implies powering-on the slot if necessary.

disconnect

Unconfigure the inserted device if it is not already unconfigured and disable (deactivate) the SD/MMC slot. A subsequent "connect" command enables SD/MMC slot operation but does not bring a device to the "configured" state.

The following state change operations are supported for an SD/MMC card inserted in to the SD/MMC slot:

configure

Configure new device for use by the operating system if it is not already configured. This command also implies connect operation, if necessary.

unconfigure

Unconfigure the device inserted in the SD/MMC slot if it is not already unconfigured.

- f : Not supported.

- h *ap_id*: SD/MMC specific help can be obtained by using the help option with any SD/MMC attachment point.

- l [-v]: The -l option works as described in [cfdm\(1M\)](#). When paired with the -v option, the "Information" field contains the following SD/MMC-specific information:

Mod: product model string

Rev: product revision number (major.minor)

Date: month and year of manufacture

SN: product serial number (hexadecimal)

- o hardware_options — No hardware specific options are currently defined.

- s listing_options: Attachment points of class SD/MMC can be listed by using the select suboption. See [cfdm\(1M\)](#).

- t *ap_id*: Self-test functionality. Not supported by SD/MMC slots.

- x hardware_function: Perform hardware specific function. *sdcard_reset_slot ap_id* indicates reset of the SD/MMC slot specified by *ap_id*. If an SD/MMC device is inserted in the slot, it is also reset.

- v: Execute in verbose mode.

Examples Example 1 – Configuring an SD/MMC card:

The following command configures a card attached to SD/MMC controller 0, slot 0. It should be issued only when there is a device inserted in the SD/MMC slot.

```
# cfgadm -c configure sdcard0/0
```

Example 2 – Unconfiguring an SD/MMC card:

The following command unconfigures a card inserted in SD/MMC controller 0, slot 3:

```
# cfgadm -c unconfigure sdcard0/3
```

Example 3 — Encountering a mounted file system while unconfiguring a disk:

The following command illustrates encountering a mounted file system while unconfiguring a disk:

```
# cfgadm -c unconfigure sdcard1/5::dsk/c01t35d0
```

The system responds with the following:

```
cfgadm: Component system is busy, try again: failed to offline:
    /devices/pci@0,0/pci8086,244e@1e/pci1095,3124@1/sd@5,0
      Resource                      Information
      -----                      -
    /dev/dsk/c1t5d0s0  mounted filesystem "/mnt"
```

Files /usr/lib/cfgadm/sdcard.so.1
Hardware specific library for generic SD/MMC hot plugging.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsl

See Also [cfgadm\(1M\)](#), [config_admin\(3CFGADM\)](#), [libcfgadm\(3LIB\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [sda\(7D\)](#), [sdcard\(7D\)](#), [sdhost\(7D\)](#)

Notes Under normal operation, SD/MMC media cards are automatically configured when a card is inserted. Most administrators do not find it necessary to use this command under normal use.

Removing an SD/MMC card without first unconfiguring it may result in data loss if the device is being written to when it's being removed. Devices that are mounted read-only can be safely removed at any time.

Devices that have filesystems other than [pcfs\(7FS\)](#) on them should always be explicitly unconfigured before removal.

Name `cfgadm_shp` – PCI Express and Standard PCI Hotplug hardware-specific commands for `cfgadm`

Synopsis

```

/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-f] [-y | -n] [-v]
    [-o hardware_options] -c function ap_id [ap_id]

/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-f] [-y | -n] [-v]
    [-o hardware_options] -x hardware_function ap_id [ap_id]

/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-v] [-s listing_options]
    [-o hardware_options] -x hardware_function ap_id [ap_id]

/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-v] [-o hardware_options] -tap_id [ap_id]

/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-v] [-o hardware_function]-h [ap_id | ap_type]

```

Description The PCI Express and Standard PCI Hotplug hardware-specific library, `/usr/lib/cfgadm/shp.so.1`, provides support for hotplugging PCI Express and Standard PCI Hotplug adapter cards into the respective hotpluggable slots in a system that is hotplug-capable, through the `cfgadm` command (see [cfgadm\(1M\)](#)). Support for the rest PCI Hotplug adapter cards (other than PCI Express and Standard PCI Hotplug cards) are provided by `cfgadm_pci` library (see [cfgadm_pci\(1M\)](#)). Hotplug administrative models between PCI Express Hotplug and Standard PCI Hotplug remain the same except where noted in this man page.

For PCI hotplug, each hotplug slot on a specific PCI bus is represented by an attachment point of that PCI bus.

An attachment point consist of two parts: a receptacle and an occupant. The receptacle under PCI hotplug is usually referred to as the physical hot pluggable slot; and the occupant is usually referred to as the PCI adapter card that plugs into the slot.

Attachment points are named through `ap_ids`. There are two types of `ap_ids`: logical and physical. The physical `ap_id` is based on the physical pathname, for example:

```
/devices/pci@7c,0/pci10de,5d@:pcie2
```

Whereas the logical `ap_id` is a shorter, more user-friendly name, for example, `pcie2`. The `ap_type` for Hotplug PCI is `pci`.

Note that the `ap_type` is not the same as the information in the Type field.

PCI Express `ap_id` Naming For attachment points located in a PCI Express hierarchy (that is, the parent or an ancestor is a PCI Express device), including attachment points that are not PCI Express devices themselves, the naming scheme shown below is used.

Grammar:

APID : *absolute-slot-path*
 Fundamental term.

absolute-slot-path : *slot-path*[:*slot-path*[:*slotpath* ...]]

...where *fru-id* indicates the chassis FRU, if any, containing the *slot-id*.

fru-id : *fru-type*[*serialid*#]

...where *fru-type* is “iob” for a PCI Express expansion chassis, followed by its serial number *serialid*#, if available

slot-id : *slot-name* | *device-type* *physical-slot*# | \

nexus-driver-name *nexus-driver-instance*.\

device-type *pci-device-number*

...where *slot-name* is a name assigned by the platform or hardware itself. *device-type* is either *pcie* for PCI Express devices or *pci* for PCI devices. *nexus-driver-name* is the driver name for the device component; *physical-slot*# is the hardware slot number; and *pci-device-number* is the PCI device number in standard PCI nomenclature.

First, an *absolute-slot-path* is constructed that attempts to describe the attachment point's topological location in more physically identifiable terms for the user. This *absolute-slot-path* consists of *slot-path* components each separated by a : (colon). The leaf or leftmost *slot-path* component describes the device of the attachment point itself, while its right-adjacent *slot-path* component up to the rightmost or topmost *slot-path* component describes the parent up to the root devices, respectively.

Each *slot-path* consists of a *slot-id* optionally preceded by a *fru-id*, which identifies an expansion chassis containing the device described by *slot-id* (detailed below). *fru-id* consists of *fru-type* followed by an optional *serialid*#. *fru-type* is “iob” for PCI Express expansion chassis types, while *serialid*# is either a 64-bit hexadecimal number indicating a raw serial number obtained from the expansion chassis hardware, or an upper-case, ASCII four-character sequence for a Sun-branded expansion chassis.

Each *slot-id* consists of one of three possible forms:

slot-id form (1)

slot-names

slot-id form (2)

device-type *physical-slot*#

slot-id form (3)

nexus-driver-name *nexus-driver-instance* *device-type* *pci-device-number*

The precedence of which form to select flows from the lowest form number to the highest form number, or from top to bottom as described above. If a form cannot be successfully constructed, then the next numerically higher form is attempted.

The *slot-names* in *slot-id* form (1) is taken from the *slot-names* property of the corresponding node in the device tree and is a name assigned by hardware or the platform. This format is not predefined or established.

In *slot-id* form (2), *device-type* indicates the device type of the component's slot, and is either *pcie* for PCI Express or *pci* for PCI, while *physical-slot#*, taken from the `physical_slot#` property of its corresponding device node, indicates the hardware slot number of the component.

slot-id form (3) is used when all other forms cannot be successfully constructed, and is considered to be the default form. *nexus-driver-name* is the component's driver name; *nexus-driver-instance* is this driver's instance; *device-type* is the same as described in form (2); *pci-device-number* is the PCI device number as described and used for device configuration cycles in standard PCI nomenclature.

In summary of the *slot-path* component, expanding the optional FRU component that might precede it, *slot-path* will consist one of the following forms in order:

- (1) [*iob[serialid#].*]
slot-names
- (2) [*iob[serialid#].*]
device_type physical_slot#
- (2) [*iob[serialid#].*]
nexus-driver-name nexus-driver-instance.

device_type pci-device-number

Lastly, the final form of the actual `ap_id` name used in `cfgadm` is decided as follows, specified in order of precedence:

`ap_id` form (1)

If the *absolute-slot-path* can fit within the fixed length limit of `cfgadm`'s `ap_id` field, then *absolute-slot-path* itself is used

`ap_id` form (2)

(*absolute-slot-path* exceeds the `ap_id` length limit) If the last *slot_path* component is contained within an expansion chassis, and it contains a *serialid#*, then the last *slot_path* component is used. The requirement for a *serialid#* in this form is to ensure a globally unique `ap_id`.

`ap_id` form (3)

(*absolute-slot-path* exceeds the `ap_id` length limit) The default form, *slot-id* form (3), of the last *slot_path* component is used.

Whichever final `ap_id` name is used, the *absolute-slot-path* is stored in the Information (`info`) field which can be displayed using the `-s` or `-v` options. This information can be used to physically locate any `ap_ids` named using `ap_id` form (2) or `ap_id` form (3). The *absolute-slot-path* is transformed slightly when stored in the information field, by the replacement of a colon (`:`) with forward slashes (`/`) to more closely denote a topological context. The *absolute-slot-path* can include *slot-path* components that are not hotpluggable above the leaf or rightmost *slot-path* component up to the onboard host slot.

See the Examples section for a list of hotpluggable examples.

Options The following options are supported:

-c *function*

The following functions are supported for PCI hotpluggable slots:

configure

Configure the PCI device in the slot to be used by Solaris.

connect

Connect the slot to PCI bus.

disconnect

Disconnect the slot from the PCI bus.

insert

Not supported.

remove

Not supported.

unconfigure

Logically remove the PCI device's resources from the system.

-f

Not supported.

-h *ap_id* | *ap_type*

Display PCI hotplug-specific help message.

-l *list*

List the values of PCI Hot Plug slots.

-o *hardware_options*

No hardware specific options are currently defined.

-s *listing_options*

Same as the generic `cfgadm(1M)`.

-t *ap_id*

This command is only supported on platforms that support testing capability on the slot.

-v

Execute in verbose mode.

When the `-v` option is used with the `-l` option, the `cfgadm` command outputs information about the attachment point. For attachment points located in a PCI Express hierarchy, the Information field will contain the attachment point's absolute slot path location, including any hardware- or platform-specific labeling information for each component in the slot path. Each component in the slot path will be separated by a / (forward slash). See "PCI Express `ap_id` Naming," above. For PCI Hot Plug attachment points not located in a PCI

Express hierarchy, see `cfgadm_pci(1M)`. The information in the Type field is printed with or without the `-v` option. The occupant Type field will describe the contents of the slot. There are two possible values:

`unknown`

The slot is empty. If a card is in the slot, the card is not configured or there is no driver for the device on the card.

`subclass/board`

The card in the slot is either a single-function or multi-function device.

`subclass` is a string representing the subclass code of the device, for example, SCSI, ethernet, pci - isa, and so forth. If the card is a multi-functional device, `MULT` will get displayed instead.

`board` is a string representing the board type of the device. For example, `hp` is the string used for a PCI Hot Plug adapter.

`-x hardware_function`

Perform hardware-specific function. These hardware-specific functions should not normally change the state of a receptacle or occupant.

The following `hardware_function` is supported:

`led=[led_sub_arg],mode=[mode_sub_arg]`

Without subarguments, display a list of the current LED settings. With subarguments, set the mode of a specific LED for a slot.

Specify `led_sub_arg` as `fault`, `power`, `attn`, or `active`.

Specify `mode_sub_arg` as `on`, `off`, or `blink`.

For PCI Express, only the `power` and `attn` LEDs are valid and only the state of the `attn` LED can be changed.

Changing the state of the LED does not change the state of the receptacle or occupant. Normally, the LEDs are controlled by the hotplug controller, no user intervention is necessary. Use this command for testing purposes.

Caution – Changing the state of the LED can misrepresent the state of occupant or receptacle.

The following command displays the values of LEDs:

```
example# cfgadm -x led pcie2
Ap_Id      Led
pcie2     power=on,fault=off,active=off,attn=off
```

The following command sets the `attn` LED to blink to indicate the location of the slot:

```
example# cfgadm -x led=attn,mode=blink pcie2
```

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Displaying the Value of Each Slot

The following command displays the values of each slot:

```
example# cfgadm -l
Ap_Id      Type      Receptacle  Occupant    Condition
c0         scsi-bus  connected   configured  unknown
c1         scsi-bus  connected   unconfigured unknown
c2         scsi-bus  connected   unconfigured unknown
pcie7     etherne/hp connected   configured  ok
pcie8     unknown   empty       unconfigured unknown
pcie9     fibre/hp  connected   configured  ok
```

EXAMPLE 2 Replacing a Card

The following command lists all DR-capable attachment points:

```
example# cfgadm
Type      Receptacle  Occupant    Condition
c0         scsi-bus    connected   configured  unknown
c1         scsi-bus    connected   unconfigured unknown
c2         scsi-bus    connected   unconfigured unknown
pcie7     etherne/hp  connected   configured  ok
pcie8     unknown     empty       unconfigured unknown
pcie9     fibre/hp    connected   configured  ok
```

The following command unconfigures and electrically disconnects the card identified by `pcie7`:

```
example# cfgadm -c disconnect pcie7
```

The change can be verified by entering the following command:

```
example# cfgadm pcie7
Ap_Id      Type      Receptacle  Occupant    Condition
pcie7     unknown   disconnected unconfigured unknown
```

At this point the card can be swapped. The following command electrically connects and configures the replacement card:

```
example# cfgadm -c configure pcie7
```

The change can be verified by entering the following command:

```
example# cfgadm pcie7
Ap_Id      Type      Receptacle  Occupant    Condition
pcie7     etherne/hp connected   configured  ok
```


EXAMPLE 3 Interpreting ApIds in a PCI Express Topology

The following command shows a listing for a topology with both PCI Express and PCI attachment points in an I/O expansion chassis connected to hotpluggable slots at the host level:

```
example# cfgadm -s cols=ap_id:info
Ap_Id                               Information
iou#0-pci#0                         Location: iou#0-pci#0
iou#0-pci#1                         Location: iou#0-pci#1
iou#0-pci#1:iob.pci3                Location: iou#0-pci#1/iob.pci3
iou#0-pci#1:iob.pci4                Location: iou#0-pci#1/iob.pci4
iou#0-pci#2                         Location: iou#0-pci#2
iou#0-pci#2:iob58071.pcie1          Location: iou#0-pci#2/iob58071.pcie1
iou#0-pci#2:iob58071.special        Location: iou#0-pci#2/iob58071.special
iou#0-pci#3                         Location: iou#0-pci#3
iou#0-pci#3:iobBADF.pcie1           Location: iou#0-pci#3/iobBADF.pcie1
iou#0-pci#3:iobBADF.pcie2           Location: iou#0-pci#3/iobBADF.pcie2
iou#0-pci#3:iobBADF.pcie3           Location: iou#0-pci#3/iobBADF.pcie3
iou#0-pci#3:iobBADF.pci1            Location: iou#0-pci#3/iobBADF.pci1
iou#0-pci#3:iobBADF.pci2            Location: iou#0-pci#3/iobBADF.pci2
```

In this example, the `iou#0-pci#[0-3]` entries represents the topmost hotpluggable slots in the system. Because the `iou#n-pci#n` form does not match any of the forms stated in the grammar specification section described above, we can infer that such a name for the base component in this hotplug topology is derived from the platform through the `slot-names` property.

The slots in the preceding output are described as follows:

Slot `iou#0-pci#0`

This slot is empty or its occupant is unconfigured.

Slot `iou#0-pci#1`

This slot contains an expansion chassis with two hotpluggable slots, `pci3` and `pci4`. `pci3` and `pci4` represent two PCI slots contained within that expansion chassis with physical slot numbers 3 and 4, respectively. The expansion chassis in this case does not have or export a serial-id.

Slot `iou#0-pci#2`

This slot contains a third-party expansion chassis with a hexadecimal serial-id of `58071`. Within that expansion chassis are two hotpluggable slots, `pcie1` and `special`. `pcie1` represents a PCI Express slot with physical slot number 1. The slot `special` has a label which is derived from the platform, hardware, or firmware.

Slot `iou#0-pci#3`

This slot contains a Sun expansion chassis with an FRU identifier of `BADF`. This expansion chassis contains three PCI Express slots, `pcie1`, `pcie2`, and `pcie3` with physical slot numbers 1, 2, and 3, respectively; and two PCI slots, `pci1` and `pci2`, with physical slot

EXAMPLE 3 Interpreting ApIds in a PCI Express Topology (Continued)

numbers 1 and 2, respectively.

The following command shows a listing for a topology with both PCI Express and PCI attachment points in an I/O expansion chassis with connected hotpluggable and non-hotpluggable host slots:

```
example# cfgadm -s cols=ap_id:info
Ap_Id                               Information
Slot1                               Location: Slot1
Slot2:iob4ffa56.pcie1              Location: Slot2/iob4ffa56.pcie1
Slot2:iob4ffa56.pcie2              Location: Slot2/iob4ffa56.pcie2
Slot5:iob3901.pci1                 Location: Slot2/iob3901.pci1
Slot5:iob3901.pci2                 Location: Slot2/iob3901.pci2
```

In this example, the host system only has one hotpluggable slot, Slot1. We can infer that Slot2 and Slot5 are not hotpluggable slots because they do not appear as attachment points themselves in `cfgadm`. However, Slot2 and Slot5 each contains a third party expansion chassis with hotpluggable slots.

The following command shows a listing for a topology with attachment points that are lacking in certain device properties:

```
example# cfgadm -s cols=ap_id:info
Ap_Id                               Information
px_pci7.pcie0                       Location: px_pci7.pcie0
px_pci11.pcie0                       Location: px_pci11.pcie0
px_pci11.pcie0:iob.pcie1             Location: px_pci11.pcie0/iob.pcie1
px_pci11.pcie0:iob.pcie2             Location: px_pci11.pcie0/iob.pcie2
px_pci11.pcie0:iob.pcie3             Location: px_pci11.pcie0/iob.pcie3
```

In this example, the host system contains two hotpluggable slots, `px_pci7.pcie0` and `px_pci11.pcie0`. In this case, it uses `slot-id` form (3) (the default form) for the base *slot-path* component in the *absolute-slot-path*, because the framework could not obtain enough information to produce other more descriptive forms of higher precedence.

Interpreting right-to-left, attachment point `px_pci7.pcie0` represents a PCI Express slot with PCI device number 0 (which does not imply a physical slot number of the same number), bound to nexus driver `px_pci`, instance 7. Likewise, attachment point `px_pci11.pcie0` represents a PCI Express slot with PCI device number 0 bound to driver instance 11 of `px_pci`.

Under `px_pci11.pcie0` is a third-party expansion chassis without a serial-id and with three hotpluggable PCI Express slots.

The following command shows a listing for a topology with attachment point paths exceeding the ApId field length limit:

EXAMPLE 3 Interpreting ApIds in a PCI Express Topology (Continued)

```
example# cfgadm -s cols=ap_id:info
Ap_Id                               Information
pcie4                               Location: pcie4
pcie4:iobSUNW.pcie1                 Location: pcie4/iobSUNW.pcie1
pcie4:iobSUNW.pcie2                 Location: pcie4/iobSUNW.pcie2
iob8879c3f3.pci1
                                   Location: pcie4/iobSUNW.pcie2/iob8879c3f3.pci1
iob8879c3f3.pci2
                                   Location: pcie4/iobSUNW.pcie2/iob8879c3f3.pci2
iob8879c3f3.pci3
                                   Location: pcie4/iobSUNW.pcie2/iob8879c3f3.pci3
```

In this example, there is only one hotpluggable slot, `pcie4` in the host. Connected under `pcie4` is a Sun expansion chassis with FRU identifier `SUNW`. Nested under PCI Express slot `pcie2` of that expansion chassis (ApId `pcie4:iobSUNW.pcie2`) lies another expansion chassis with three hotpluggable PCI slots.

Because the length of the absolute-slot-path form of:

```
pcie4/iobSUNW.pcie2/iob8879c3f3.pci1...3
```

...exceeds the ApId field length limit, and the leaf slot-path component is globally unique, `ap_id` form (2) is used, where the leaf *slot-path* component in the *absolute-slot-path* is used as the final ApId.

The following command shows a listing for a topology with attachment point paths exceeding the ApId field-length limit and lacking enough information to uniquely identify the leaf *slot-id* on its own (for example, missing the serial-id):

```
example# cfgadm -s cols=ap_id:info
Ap_Id                               Information
pcie4                               Location: pcie4
pcie4:iob4567812345678.pcie3       Location: pcie4/iob4567812345678.pcie3
px_pcie20.pcie0
                                   Location: pcie4/iob4567812345678.pcie3/iob.pcie1
px_pcie21.pcie0
                                   Location: pcie4/iob4567812345678.pcie3/iob.pcie2
```

In this example, there is only one hotpluggable slot, `pcie4` in the host. Connected under `pcie4` is a third-party expansion chassis with hexadecimal serial-id `4567812345678`. Nested under the PCI Express slot `pcie3` of that expansion chassis (ApId `pcie4:iob4567812345678.pcie3`), lies another third-party expansion chassis without a serial- id and with two hotpluggable PCI Express slots.

Because the length of the absolute-slot-path form of:

```
pcie4/iob4567812345678.pcie3/iob.pcie1...2
```

EXAMPLE 3 Interpreting ApIds in a PCI Express Topology (Continued)

exceeds the ApId field length limit, and the leaf *slot-path* component is not globally unique, *ap_id* form (3) is used. *ap_id* form (2) is where *slot-id* form (3) (the default form) of the leaf *slot-path* component in the *absolute-slot-path* is used as the final ApId.

The default form or *slot-id* form (3) of the leaf component `.../iob.pcie1` represents a PCI Express slot with device number 0, bound to driver instance 20 of `px_pci`. Likewise, the default form of the leaf component `.../iob.pcie2` represents a PCI Express slot with device number 0, bound to driver instance 21 of `px_pci`.

Files `/usr/lib/cfgadm/shp.so.1`
Hardware-specific library for PCI Express and Standard PCI hotplugging.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsl
Interface Stability	Uncommitted

See Also [cfgadm\(1M\)](#), [cfgadm_pci\(1M\)](#), [hotplugd\(1M\)](#), [config_admin\(3CFGADM\)](#), [libcfgadm\(3LIB\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Notes The `cfgadm_shp` library is dependent on the `hotplug` service, which is managed by [smf\(5\)](#) under FMRI:

```
svc:/system/hotplug:default
```

The service must be enabled for the `cfgadm_shp` library to function properly. See [hotplugd\(1M\)](#) for details.

Name `cfgadm_sysctrl` – EXX00 system board administration

Synopsis `/usr/sbin/cfgadm -c function [-f]`
`[-o disable-at-boot | enable-at-boot] [-n | -y] sysctrl0:slot# ...`
`/usr/sbin/cfgadm -x quiesce-test sysctrl0:slot#`
`/usr/sbin/cfgadm -x insert-test | remove-test sysctrl0:slot# ...`
`/usr/sbin/cfgadm -x set-condition-test=# sysctrl0:slot# ...`
`/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-l]`
`-o disable-at-boot | enable-at-boot sysctrl0:slot# ...`

Description The `sysctrl` hardware specific library `/usr/platform/sun4u/lib/cfgadm/sysctrl.so.1` provides dynamic reconfiguration functionality for configuring and disconnecting system boards on E6X00, E5X00, E4X00, and E3X00 systems. You can insert both I/O and CPU boards into a slot on a running system that is configured for Solaris without rebooting. You can also disconnect and remove both types of boards from a running system without rebooting.

System slots appear as attachment points in the device tree, one attachment point for each actual slot in the system chassis. If a board is not in a slot, the receptacle state is `empty`. If a board is powered-off and ready to remove, the receptacle state is `disconnected`. If a board is powered-on and is connected to the system bus, the receptacle state is `connected`.

The occupant state is `unconfigured` when the receptacle state is `empty` or `disconnected`. The occupant state is either `unconfigured` or `configured` when the receptacle state is `connected`.

In the `configured` state the devices on a board are available for use by Solaris. In the `unconfigured` state, the devices on the board are not.

Inserting a board changes the receptacle state from `empty` to `disconnected`. Removing a board changes the receptacle state from `disconnected` to `empty`. Removing a board that is in the `connected` state crashes the operating system and can result in permanent damage to the system.

Options Refer to [cfgadm\(1M\)](#) for a more complete description options.

The following options are supported:

<code>-c <i>function</i></code>	Perform the state change function. Specify <i>function</i> as <code>connect</code> , <code>disconnect</code> , <code>configure</code> or <code>unconfigure</code> .
<code>configure</code>	Change the occupant state to <code>configure</code> . If the receptacle state is <code>disconnected</code> , the <code>configure</code> function first attempts to connect the receptacle. The <code>configure</code> function walks the OBP device tree created as

part of the `connect` function and creates the Solaris device tree nodes, attaching devices as required. For CPU/Memory boards, `configure` adds CPUs to the CPU list in the powered-off state. These are visible to the `psrinfo(1M)` and `psradm(1M)` commands. Two memory attachment points are published for CPU/memory boards. Use `mount(1M)` and `ifconfig(1M)` to use I/O devices on the new board. To use CPUs, use `psradm -n` to on-line the new processors. Use `cfgadm_ac(1M)` to test and configure the memory banks.

connect

Change the receptacle state to connected.

Changing the receptacle state requires that the system bus be frozen while the bus signals are connected and the board tested. The bus is frozen by running a `quiesce` operation which stops all process activity and suspends all drivers. Because the `quiesce` operation and the subsequent `resume` can be time consuming, and are not supported by all drivers, the `-x quiesce-test` is provided. While the system bus is frozen, the board being connected is tested by firmware. This operation takes a short time for I/O boards and a significant time for CPU/Memory boards due to CPU external cache testing. This does not provide memory testing. The user is prompted for confirmation before proceeding with the `quiesce`. Use the `-y` or `-n` option to override the prompt. The `connect` operation is refused if the board is marked as

	disabled-at-boot, unless either the force flag, -f, or the enable at boot flag, -o enable-at-boot, is given. See -l.
disconnect	<p>Change the receptacle state to disconnected.</p> <p>If the occupant state is configure, the disconnect function first attempts to unconfigure the occupant. The disconnect operation does not require a quiesce operation and operates quickly. The board is powered-off ready for removal.</p>
unconfigure	<p>Change the occupant state to unconfigured.</p> <p>Devices on the board are made invisible to Solaris during this process. The I/O devices on an I/O board are removed from the Solaris device tree. Any device that is still in use stops the unconfigure process and be reported as in use. The unconfigure operation must be retried after the device is made non-busy. For CPU/Memory boards, the memory must have been changed to the unconfigured state prior to issuing the board unconfigure operation. The CPUs on the board are off-lined, powered off and removed from the Solaris CPU list. CPUs that have processes bound to them cannot be off-lined. See psradm(1M), psrinfo(1M), pbind(1M), and p_online(2) for more information on off-lining CPUs.</p>
-f	Force a block on connecting a board marked as disabled-at-boot in the non-volatile

- l

disabled-board-list variable. See *Platform Notes: Sun Enterprise 6x00/5x00/4x00/3x00 Systems*

List options. Supported as described in `cfgadm(1M)cfgadm(1M)`.

The *type* field can be one of `cpu/mem`, `mem`, `dual-sbus`, `sbus-upa`, `dual-pci`, `soc+sbus`, `soc+upa`, `disk` or `unknown`.

The hardware-specific info field is set as follows:
[disabled at boot] [non-detachable] [100 MHz capable]

For `sbus-upa` and `soc+upa` type boards, the following additional information appears first: [single buffered ffb|double buffered ffb|no ffb installed] For disk type boards, the following additional information appears first: {target: # | no disk} {target: # | no disk}
- o disable-at-boot | enable-at-boot

Modify the state of the non—volatile `disabled-board-list` variable. Use this the `-o` option in conjunction with the `-c function` or `-l` option.

Use `-o enable-at-boot` with the `-c connect` to override a block on connecting a `disabled-at-boot` board.
- x insert-test | remove-test

Perform a test.

Specify `remove-test` to change the driver state for the specified slot from `disconnected` to `empty` without the need for physically removing the board during automated test sequences.

Specify `insert-test` to change the driver state of a slot made to appear empty using the `remove-test` command to the `disconnected` state as if it had been inserted.
- x quiesce-test sysctrl0:slot1

Perform a test.

Allows the quiesce operation required for board connect operations to be exercised. The execution of this test confirms that, with the current software and hardware configuration, it is possible to quiesce the

system. If a device or process cannot be quiesced, its name is printed in an error message. Any valid board attachment point can be used with this command, but since all systems have a slot1 the given form is recommended.

-x set-condition-test=#

Perform a test.

Allows the condition of a system board attachment point to be set for testing the policy logic for state change commands. The new setting is given as a number indicating one of the following condition values:

- 0 unknown
- 1 ok
- 2 failing
- 3 failed
- 4 unusable

Operands The following operand is supported:

sysctrl0:slot#

The attachment points for boards on EXX00 systems are published by instance 0 of the sysctrl driver (sysctrl0). The names of the attachment points are numbered from slot0 through slot15. Specify # as a number between 0 and 15, indicating the slot number. This form conforms to the logical ap_id specification given in [cfgadm\(1M\)](#). The corresponding physical ap_ids are listed in the FILES section.

Files /usr/platform/sun4u/lib/cfgadm/sysctrl.so.1
Hardware specific library

/devices/central@1f,0/fhc@0,f8800000/clock-board@0,900000:slot*
Attachment Points

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWkvm.u

See Also [cfgadm\(1M\)](#), [cfgadm_ac\(1M\)](#), [ifconfig\(1M\)](#), [mount\(1M\)](#), [pbind\(1M\)](#), [psradm\(1M\)](#), [psrinfo\(1M\)](#), [config_admin\(3CFGADM\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Sun Enterprise 6x00, 5x00, 4x00 and 3x00 Systems Dynamic Reconfiguration User's Guide

Platform Notes: Sun Enterprise 6x00/5x00/4x00/3x00 Systems

Notes Refer to the *Sun Enterprise 6x00, 5x00, 4x00 and 3x00 Systems Dynamic Reconfiguration User's Guide* for additional details regarding dynamic reconfiguration of EXX00 system CPU/Memory boards.

Name `cfgadm_usb` – USB hardware-specific commands for `cfgadm`

Synopsis `/usr/sbin/cfgadm [-f] [-y | -n] [-v] -c function ap_id...`
`/usr/sbin/cfgadm -f [-y | -n] [-v] [-o hardware_options]`
`-x hardware_function ap_id...`
`/usr/sbin/cfgadm -v [-a] [-s listing_option]`
`[-l [ap_id | ap_type...]]`
`/usr/sbin/cfgadm -v -h [ap_id]...`

Description The Universal Serial Bus (USB) hardware-specific library `/usr/lib/cfgadm/usb.so.1` provides the functionality for administering USB devices via the `cfgadm(1M)` command. `cfgadm` operates on attachment points. For details regarding attachment points, refer to [cfgadm\(1M\)](#).

For USB administration, the only attachment points supported are the ports of hubs attached to the USB bus.

Attachment points are named through attachment point IDs (*ap_ids*). The USB bus is hierarchical, so the *ap_ids* are as well. USB hubs have ports, numbered from 1 to *n*. All USB *ap_ids* consist of a string of the following form:

```
usbN/A[.B[.C[...]]]
```

where

N is the *N*th USB host controller on the system,

A is port #*A* on the root (top) hub.

B is port #*B* of the hub plugged into port #*A* of the hub above it.

C is port #*C* of the hub plugged into port #*B* of the hub above it, and so forth.

For example, the first port on the root hub of USB controller 0 (the only controller), has a logical *ap_id*:

```
usb0/1
```

Similarly, the second port on the first external hub plugged into the first port on the root hub of the first USB controller has a logical *ap_id*:

```
usb0/1.2
```

For example, if the *ap_id* is `usb0/1.4.3.4`, it represents port 4 of the hub plugged into port 3 of the hub plugged into port 4 of the hub plugged into port 1 of the root hub of the first USB host controller on the system.

```
example# cfgadm -l
```

Ap_Id	Type	Receptacle	Occupant	Condition
usb0/1	USB-hub	connected	configured	ok
usb0/2	unknown	empty	unconfigured	ok

```
usb0/1.1      USB-storage  connected  configured  ok
usb0/1.2      unknown     empty      unconfigured ok
usb0/1.3      unknown     empty      unconfigured ok
usb0/1.4      USB-device  connected  configured  ok
```

USB2.0 chips have one EHCI host USB2.0 host controller and a number of companion USB 1.x host controllers (either OHCI or UHCI host controllers).

When a USB2.0 device has been plugged in, it shows up on the EHCI logical ports which might not have a 1 to 1 mapping to external physical port numbers on the system. When a USB1.x device is plugged in, the EHCI host controller reroutes the device to a companion host controller and the device shows up on the companion's logical port number.

The mapping of logical port numbers to physical port numbers can get quite complicated. For example:

```
% cfgadm
Ap_Id          Type          Receptacle  Occupant    Condition
c0             scsi-bus     connected   configured  unknown
usb0/1         usb-mouse    connected   configured  ok
usb0/2         usb-kbd      connected   configured  ok
usb0/3         unknown     empty       unconfigured ok
usb0/4         usb-hub      connected   configured  ok
usb0/4.1       unknown     empty       unconfigured ok
usb0/4.2       unknown     empty       unconfigured ok
usb0/4.3       unknown     empty       unconfigured ok
usb0/4.4       usb-storage  connected   configured  ok
usb1/1         unknown     empty       unconfigured ok
usb1/2         unknown     empty       unconfigured ok
usb1/3         unknown     empty       unconfigured ok
usb2/1         unknown     empty       unconfigured ok
usb2/2         usb-device   connected   configured  ok
usb3/1         unknown     empty       unconfigured ok
usb3/2         unknown     empty       unconfigured ok
usb3/3         unknown     empty       unconfigured ok
usb3/4         unknown     empty       unconfigured ok
usb3/5         unknown     empty       unconfigured ok
```

In this example `usb0` is the onboard USB 1.x host controller. `usb1` and `usb2` are companion OHCI USB1.x host controllers and `usb3` is an EHCI USB2.0 host controller.

The following table shows the somewhat confusing routing for this USB2.0 chip:

logical port number	physical port number
-----	-----
usb1/1	internal port 1
usb1/2	external port 1
usb1/3	external port 3

usb2/1	internal port 2
usb2/2	external port 2
usb3/1	internal port 1
usb3/2	internal port 2
usb3/3	external port 1
usb3/4	external port 2
usb3/5	external port 3

Unfortunately, the exact routing can often only be determined by experimentation.

The receptacle states for attachment points at the USB port have the following meanings:

connected

USB port is powered on and enabled. A USB device is plugged in to the port. The device is logically connected to the USB bus.

disconnected

USB port is powered on and enabled. A USB device is plugged into the port. The device has been logically disconnected from the USB bus (using the `cfgadm -c disconnect` command).

empty

USB port is powered on, but no device is plugged in to it.

The occupant states for devices at USB port attachment points at the USB port have the following meanings:

configured

The USB device at the USB port is configured and usable by Solaris.

unconfigured

The USB device at the USB port was explicitly off-lined using `cfgadm -c unconfigure`, or was not successfully configured for use with Solaris, for example, having no driver or a device problem.

The attachment point conditions are:

ok

Normal state - ready for use.

failing

Not used.

failed

Not used.

unusable

The user has physically removed a device while an application had the device open (there might be outstanding I/O). Users need to reinsert the same physical device and close the application properly before removing the device again. The port cannot configure other inserted devices until this is done.

If the original device cannot be reinserted into the port, see the *System Administration Guide: Advanced Administration* for instructions for clearing this attachment point condition.

unknown

Not used.

A USB device can be hotplugged or hotunplugged at any time, and the system detects the event and takes the appropriate action.

It is not necessary to transition a receptacle to the `disconnected` state before removing its device from the USB. However, it is not recommended to hot-remove devices currently in use (such as removable disks currently opened by a volume manager or some other application).

Options `cfgadm` defines several types of operations. These operations include invoking configuration state changes (`-c`), invoking hardware-specific functions (`-x`), and obtaining configuration administration help messages (`-h`).

If any of these operations fail, the device and attachment point might not be in the expected state. Use the `cfgadm -l` command to display the device's current status.

All other options have the same meaning as defined in [cfgadm\(1M\)](#).

The following options are supported:

-c function

The following generic commands are defined for the USB hardware specific library. The following configuration state change operations are supported:

configure

If there is a USB device plugged into the port, this command attempts to configure it and set everything up so that it is usable by Solaris. This command does an implied connect (reverse of `disconnect`) if necessary. This command accomplishes nothing, and returns an error message, if the device at that port is already configured. After successful execution of this command, the device is ready for use under Solaris.

disconnect

Performs an `unconfigure` on the `ap_id` (if it is not already `unconfigured`), and then transitions the receptacle to the `disconnected` state, even though a device is still be plugged into the port. Issuing a `cfgadm -c configure`, or physically hotplugging the device, brings the device back to the `connected` receptacle state, and to the `configured` occupant state, assuming a driver can be found and there are no problems enumerating and configuring the device.

unconfigure

Makes the device plugged into the port unusable by Solaris (offline it). If successful, `cfgadm` reports this *ap_id*'s occupant state as *unconfigured*. Issuing a `configure` to the *ap_id* (if successful) brings its occupant back to the configured (online) condition, as it physically hotplugging the device on the port.

-f

Not supported.

-h *ap_id*

USB specific help can be obtained by using the help option with any USB attachment point.

-l [*v*]

The `-l` option works as described in `cfgadm(1M)`. When paired with the `-v` option, the Information field contains the following USB-specific information:

- **Mfg:** manufacturer string (`iManufacturer`)
- **Product:** product string (`iProduct`)
- **NConfigs:** total number of configurations the device supports (`bNumConfigurations`).
- **Config:** current configuration setting in decimal (configuration index, not configuration value).
- The configuration string descriptor for the current configuration (`iConfiguration`)

See the Universal Serial Bus specification for a description of these fields.

-o *hardware_options*

Hardware options are only supported for the hardware-specific command, `-x usb_config`. See the description of that command below for an explanation of the options available.

-s *listing_options*

Attachment points of class USB can be listed by using the `select` sub-option. See `cfgadm(1M)`.

-x *hardware_function*

The following hardware-specific functions are defined:

usb_config -o config=*n*

This command requires the mandatory `config` value to be specified using the `-o` option.

Sets the USB configuration of a multi-configuration USB device at *ap_id* to configuration index *n*. The device is set to this configuration henceforth and this setting persists across reboots, hot-removes, and unconfigure/configure of the device.

Valid values of *n* range from 0 to (`Nconfigs - 1`). The device is reset by a disconnect followed by a `configure`. The `configure` causes the device to be configured to the new configuration setting.

If any of these steps fail, the configuration file and the device are restored to their previous state and an error message is issued.

`usb_reset`

Performs a software reset (re-enumeration) of the device. This is the equivalent of removing the device and inserting it back again. The port on the hub is power cycled if the hub supports power cycling of individual ports.

If the connected device is a hub, this function has the effect of resetting that hub and any devices down the tree of which it is the root.

If any of these steps fail, the device is restored to its previous state and an error message is issued.

State table: attachment points state versus commands:

Valid states:

<code>empty/unconfigured</code>	→ no device connected
<code>disconnected/unconfigured</code>	→ logically disconnected, unavailable, devinfo node removed, device physically connected
<code>connected/unconfigured</code>	→ logically connected, unavailable, devinfo node present
<code>connected/configured</code>	→ connected, available

The table below clarifies the state transitions resulting from actions or commands:

current state	operation	new state
-----	-----	-----
<code>empty/ unconfigured:</code>	<code>device plugged in:</code>	<code>connected/configured</code> or <code>connected/unconfigured</code> (if enumeration failed)
	<code>device removed:</code>	n/a
	<code>cfgadm -c unconfigure:</code>	<code>empty/unconfigured</code>
	<code>cfgadm -c configure:</code>	<code>empty/unconfigured</code>
	<code>cfgadm -c disconnect:</code>	<code>empty/unconfigured</code> (no-op and error)
 <code>disconnected/ unconfigured:</code>	<code>device plugged in:</code>	n/a
	<code>device removed:</code>	<code>empty/unconfigured</code>
	<code>cfgadm -c unconfigure:</code>	<code>disconnected/unconfigured</code>
	<code>cfgadm -c configure:</code>	<code>connected/configured</code> , or <code>connected/unconfigured</code>


```

                                (if reenumeration failed)
    cfgadm -c disconnect:      disconnected/unconfigured

connected/unconfigured:
    device plugged in:        n/a
    device removed:          empty/unconfigured
    cfgadm -c unconfigure:    connected/unconfigured
    cfgadm -c configure:      connected/configured, or
                                connected/unconfigured
                                (if reenumeration failed)
    cfgadm -c disconnect:    disconnected/unconfigured

connected/configured:
    device plugged in:        n/a
    device removed:          empty/unconfigured or
                                connected/configured,
                                but with ap condition
                                'unusable' if device
                                was open when removed
    cfgadm -c unconfigure:    connected/unconfigured
    cfgadm -c configure:      connected/configured
    cfgadm -c disconnect:    disconnected/unconfigured

```

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Listing the Status of All USB Devices

The following command lists the status of all USB devices on the system:

```

# cfgadm
Ap_Id      Type      Receptacle  Occupant  Condition
usb0/1     USB-hub   connected   configured ok
usb0/2     unknown   empty       unconfigured ok
usb0/1.1   USB-storage connected   configured ok
usb0/1.2   unknown   empty       unconfigured ok
usb0/1.3   unknown   empty       unconfigured ok
usb0/1.4   USB-device connected   configured ok

```

Notice that `cfgadm` treats the USB-device device at `ap_id usb0/1.4` as a single unit, since it cannot currently control individual interfaces.

EXAMPLE 2 Listing the Status of a Port with No Device Plugged In

The following command lists the status of a port with no device plugged in:

```

example# cfgadm -l usb0/1.3
Ap_Id      Type      Receptacle  Occupant  Condition
usb0/1.3   unknown   empty       unconfigured ok

```

EXAMPLE 3 Listing the Status of the Same Port with a Device Plugged In

The following command lists the status of the same port after physically plugging in a device that configures without problems:

```
example# cfgadm -l usb0/1.3
Ap_Id      Type      Receptacle  Occupant    Condition
usb0/1.3   USB-hub   connected   configured  ok
```

EXAMPLE 4 Unconfiguring an Existing USB Device

The following command unconfigures the USB device attached to `usb0/1.3`, then displays the status of the `ap_id`:

```
example# cfgadm -c unconfigure usb0/1.3
Unconfigure the device: /devices/pci@0,0/pci8086,7112@7,2/hub@2:2.3
This operation suspends activity on the USB device
Continue (yes/no)?
```

Enter:

y

```
example# cfgadm -l usb0/1.3
Ap_Id      Type      Receptacle  Occupant    Condition
usb0/1.3   unknown   connected   unconfigured ok
```

EXAMPLE 5 Unconfiguring and Logically Disconnecting an Existing USB Device

The following command unconfigures and logically disconnects a USB device attached to `usb0/1.3`:

```
example# cfgadm -c disconnect usb0/1.3
Disconnect the device: /devices/pci@0,0/pci8086,7112@7,2/hub@2:2.3
This operation suspends activity on the USB device
Continue (yes/no)?
```

Enter:

y

```
example# cfgadm -l usb0/1.3
Ap_Id      Type      Receptacle  Occupant    Condition
usb0/1.3   unknown   disconnected  unconfigured ok
```

A `disconnect` implies that `cfgadm` does an `unconfigure` first. The receptacle status now shows `disconnected`, even though the device is still physically connected. In this case, a physical hotplug or using the `cfgadm -c configure` on the `ap_id` brings it back on-line.

EXAMPLE 6 Configuring a Previously Unconfigured USB Device

The following command configures a USB device that was previously attached to `usb0/1.3`:

```
example # cfgadm -yc configure usb0/1.3
example# cfgadm -l usb0/1.3
Ap_Id      Type      Receptacle  Occupant   Condition
usb0/1.3   unknown   connected    configured  ok
```

EXAMPLE 7 Resetting a USB Device

The following command resets a USB device:

```
example# cfgadm -x usb_reset usb0/1.3
Reset the device: /devices/pci@0,0/pci8086,7112@7,2/hub@2:2.3
This operation suspends activity on the USB device
Continue (yes/no)?
```

Enter:

y

EXAMPLE 8 Displaying Detailed Information About a USB Device

The following command displays detailed information about a USB device. This device shows the following USB-specific information in the 'Information' field:

- Manufacturer string: Iomega
- Product string: USB Zip 250
- Number of configurations supported: 1
- Configuration currently active: 0
- Configuration string descriptor for configuration 0: Default

```
example# cfgadm -lv usb0/1.5
Ap_Id      Receptacle  Occupant   Condition  Information
When      Type      Busy      Phys_Id
usb0/1.5   connected   configured  ok         Mfg:"Io
mega" Product:"USB Zip 250" NConfigs:1 Config:0 : Default
```

```
example# cfgadm -l -s "cols=ap_id:info" usb0/1.5
Ap_Id      Information
usb0/1.5   Mfg:"Iomega" Product:"USB Zip 250"
NConfigs:1 Config:0 : Default
```

EXAMPLE 9 Displaying Detailed Information About All USB Devices

The following command displays detailed information about all USB devices on the system:

EXAMPLE 9 Displaying Detailed Information About All USB Devices *(Continued)*

```
example# cfgadm -l -s "select=class(usb),cols=ap_id:info"
Ap_Id                Information
usb0/1                Mfg:<undefined> Product:<undefined>
NConfigs:1 Config:0 <no cfg str descr>
usb0/2
usb0/1.1              Mfg:<undefined> Product:<undefined>
NConfigs:1 Config:0 <no cfg str descr>
usb0/1.2
usb0/1.3
usb0/1.4              Mfg:"Wizard" Product:"Modem/ISDN"
NConfigs:3 Config:1 : V.90 Analog Modem
usb0/1.5              Mfg:"Iomega" Product:"USB Zip 250"
NConfigs:1 Config:0 : Default
usb0/1.6              Mfg:"SOLID YEAR" Product:"SOLID YEAR
USB"NConfigs:1 Config:0 <no cfg str descr>
usb0/1.7
```

Lines containing only an `ap_id` are empty ports. These can be filtered out. This example only lists USB `ap_ids` with connected devices, and information about those devices.

```
example# cfgadm -l -s "select=class(usb),cols=ap_id:info" | grep Mfg
usb0/1                Mfg:<undefined> Product:<undefined>
NConfigs:1 Config:0 <no cfg str descr>
usb0/1.1              Mfg:<undefined> Product:<undefined>
NConfigs:1 Config:0 <no cfg str descr>
usb0/1.4              Mfg:"Wizard" Product:"Modem/ISDN"
NConfigs:3 Config:1 : V.90 Analog Modem
usb0/1.5              Mfg:"Iomega" Product:"USB Zip 250"
NConfigs:1 Config:0 : Default
usb0/1.6              Mfg:"SOLID YEAR" Product:"SOLID YEAR USB"
Config:0 <no cfg str descr>
```

EXAMPLE 10 Listing Information About a Multi-configuration USB Device

The following example lists information about a multi-configuration USB device.

Notice the `NConfigs` field: the configurations available for this device are 0, 1, and 2 (0 to (`NConfigs`-1)).

```
example# cfgadm -l -s "cols=ap_id:info" usb0/1.4
Ap_Id                Information
usb0/1.4              Mfg:"Wizard" Product:"Modem/ISDN"
NConfigs:3 Config:1 V.90 Analog Modem"
```

EXAMPLE 11 Setting the Current Configuration of a Multi-configuration USB Device

The following example sets the current configuration of a multi-configuration USB device:

```
example# cfgadm -o config=2 -x usb_config usb0/1.4
Setting the device: /devices/pci@1f,2000/usb@1/device@3
to USB configuration 2
This operation suspends activity on the USB device
Continue (yes/no)?
```

Enter:

y

USB configuration changed successfully.

The device path should be checked to ensure that the right instance of a device is being referred to, in the case where multiple devices of the exact same type are on the same bus. This information is available in the 'Information' field.

Files /usr/lib/cfgadm/usb.so.1
 Hardware specific library for generic USB device administration

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsl

See Also [cfgadm\(1M\)](#), [config_admin\(3CFGADM\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [scsa2usb\(7D\)](#), [usba\(7D\)](#)

Universal Serial Bus 1.1 Specification (www.usb.org)

System Administration Guide: Advanced Administration

Notes [cfgadm\(1M\)](#) can not unconfigure, disconnect, reset, or change the configuration of any USB device currently opened by any application. These operations also fail on a hub if a device in its hierarchy is opened by an application. See [scsa2usb\(7D\)](#) for unconfiguring a USB mass-storage device that is currently in use.

Only super-users can execute any functions on an attachment point. However, one need not be a super-user to list the attachment points.

Name cfsadmin – administer disk space used for caching file systems with the Cache File-System (CacheFS)

Synopsis `cfsadmin -c [-o cacheFS-parameters] cache_directory`
`cfsadmin -d {cache_ID | all} cache_directory`
`cfsadmin -l cache_directory`
`cfsadmin -s {mntpt1 ...} | all`
`cfsadmin -u [-o cacheFS-parameters] cache_directory`

Description The `cfsadmin` command provides the following functions:

- cache creation
- deletion of cached file systems
- listing of cache contents and statistics
- resource parameter adjustment when the file system is unmounted.

You must always supply an option for `cfsadmin`. For each form of the command except `-s`, you must specify a cache directory, that is, the directory under which the cache is actually stored. A path name in the front file system identifies the cache directory. For the `-s` form of the command, you must specify a mount point.

You can specify a cache ID when you mount a file system with CacheFS, or you can let the system generate one for you. The `-l` option includes the cache ID in its listing of information. You must know the cache ID to delete a cached file system.

Options The following options are supported:

- | | |
|---|--|
| <code>-c [-o <i>cacheFS-parameters</i>] <i>cache_directory</i></code> | Create a cache under the directory specified by <i>cache_directory</i> . This directory must not exist prior to cache creation. |
| <code>-d {<i>cache_ID</i> <i>all</i>} <i>cache_directory</i></code> | Remove the file system whose cache ID you specify and release its resources, or remove all file systems in the cache by specifying <code>all</code> . After deleting a file system from the cache, you must run the fsck_cachefs(1M) command to correct the resource counts for the cache.

As indicated by the syntax above, you must supply either a <i>cache_ID</i> or <code>all</code> , in addition to <i>cache_directory</i> . |
| <code>-l <i>cache_directory</i></code> | List file systems stored in the specified cache, as well as statistics about them. Each cached |

`-s { mntpt1 ... } | all`

file system is listed by cache ID. The statistics document resource utilization and cache resource parameters.

Request a consistency check on the specified file system (or all cachefs mounted file systems). The `-s` option only works if the cache file system was mounted with `demandconst` enabled (see [mount_cachefs\(1M\)](#)). Each file in the specified cache file system is checked for consistency with its corresponding file in the back file system. Note that the consistency check is performed file by file as files are accessed. If no files are accessed, no checks are performed. Use of this option does not result in a sudden "storm" of consistency checks.

As indicated by the syntax above, you must supply one or more mount points, or `all`.

`-u [-o cacheFS-parameters] cache_directory`

Update resource parameters of the specified cache directory. Parameter values can only be increased. To decrease the values, you must remove the cache and recreate it. All file systems in the cache directory must be unmounted when you use this option. Changes take effect the next time you mount any file system in the specified cache directory. The `-u` option with no `-o` option sets all parameters to their default values.

CacheFS Resource Parameters You can specify the following CacheFS resource parameters as arguments to the `-o` option. Separate multiple parameters with commas.

<code>maxblocks=<i>n</i></code>	Maximum amount of storage space that CacheFS can use, expressed as a percentage of the total number of blocks in the front file system. If CacheFS does not have exclusive use of the front file system, there is no guarantee that all the space the <code>maxblocks</code> parameter allows is available. The default is 90.
<code>minblocks=<i>n</i></code>	Minimum amount of storage space, expressed as a percentage of the total number of blocks in the front file system, that CacheFS is always allowed to use without limitation by its internal control mechanisms. If

CacheFS does not have exclusive use of the front file system, there is no guarantee that all the space the `minblocks` parameter attempts to reserve is available. The default is 0.

<code>threshblocks=n</code>	A percentage of the total blocks in the front file system beyond which CacheFS cannot claim resources once its block usage has reached the level specified by <code>minblocks</code> . The default is 85.
<code>maxfiles=n</code>	Maximum number of files that CacheFS can use, expressed as a percentage of the total number of inodes in the front file system. If CacheFS does not have exclusive use of the front file system, there is no guarantee that all the inodes the <code>maxfiles</code> parameter allows is available. The default is 90.
<code>minfiles=n</code>	Minimum number of files, expressed as a percentage of the total number of inodes in the front file system, that CacheFS is always allowed to use without limitation by its internal control mechanisms. If CacheFS does not have exclusive use of the front file system, there is no guarantee that all the inodes the <code>minfiles</code> parameter attempts to reserve is available. The default is 0.
<code>threshfiles=n</code>	A percentage of the total inodes in the front file system beyond which CacheFS cannot claim inodes once its usage has reached the level specified by <code>minfiles</code> . The default is 85.
<code>maxfilesize=n</code>	Largest file size, expressed in megabytes, that CacheFS is allowed to cache. The default is 3. You cannot decrease the block or inode allotment for a cache. To decrease the size of a cache, you must remove it and create it again with different parameters.
	Currently <code>maxfilesize</code> is ignored by <code>cache fs</code> , therefore, setting it has no effect.

Operands `cache_directory` The directory under which the cache is actually stored.
`mntpt1` The directory where the CacheFS is mounted.

Usage See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of `cfsadmin` when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (2^{31} bytes).

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Creating a Cache Directory

The following example creates a cache directory named `/cache`:

```
example# cfsadmin -c /cache
```


EXAMPLE 2 Creating a Cache

The following example creates a cache named `/cache1` that can claim a maximum of 60 percent of the blocks in the front file system, can use 40 percent of the front file system blocks without interference by CacheFS internal control mechanisms, and has a threshold value of 50 percent. The threshold value indicates that after CacheFS reaches its guaranteed minimum, it cannot claim more space if 50 percent of the blocks in the front file system are already used.

```
example# cfsadmin -c -o maxblocks=60,minblocks=40,threshblocks=50 /cache1
```

EXAMPLE 3 Changing the `maxfilesize` Parameter

The following example changes the `maxfilesize` parameter for the cache directory `/cache2` to 2 megabytes:

```
example# cfsadmin -u -o maxfilesize=2 /cache2
```

EXAMPLE 4 Listing the Contents of a Cache Directory

The following example lists the contents of a cache directory named `/cache3` and provides statistics about resource utilization:

```
example# cfsadmin -l /cache3
```

EXAMPLE 5 Removing a Cached File System

The following example removes the cached file system with cache ID 23 from the cache directory `/cache3` and frees its resources (the cache ID is part of the information returned by `cfsadmin -l`):

```
example# cfsadmin -d 23 /cache3
```

EXAMPLE 6 Removing All Cached File Systems

The following example removes all cached file systems from the cache directory `/cache3`:

```
example# cfsadmin -d all /cache3
```

EXAMPLE 7 Checking for Consistency in File Systems

The following example checks for consistency all file systems mounted with `demandconst` enabled. No errors are reported if no `demandconst` file systems were found.

```
example# cfsadmin -s all
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

1 An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [cachefslog\(1M\)](#), [cachefsstat\(1M\)](#), [cachefswssize\(1M\)](#), [fsck_cachefs\(1M\)](#), [mount_cachefs\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#)

Name chat – automated conversational exchange tool

Synopsis chat [*options*] *script*

Description The chat program implements a conversational text-based exchange between the computer and any serial device, including (but not limited to) a modem, an ISDN TA, and the remote peer itself, establishing a connection between the Point-To-Point Protocol daemon (pppd) and the remote pppd process.

Options The chat command supports the following options:

- f <*chat file*> Read the chat script from the chat file. This option is mutually exclusive with the chat script parameters. You must have read access to use the file. Multiple lines are permitted in the file. Use the space or horizontal tab characters to separate the strings.
- t <*timeout*> Set the timeout for the expected string to be received. If the string is not received within the time limit, the reply string is not sent. If specified, a 'subexpect' (alternate reply) string can be sent. Otherwise, if no alternate reply strings remain, the chat script fails.. A failed script will cause the chat program to terminate with a non-zero error code.
- r <*report file*> Set the file for output of the report strings. If you use the keyword REPORT, the resulting strings are written to this file. If the -r option is not used and you use the REPORT keyword, the stderr file is used for the report strings.
- e Start with the echo option turned on. You turn echo on or off at specific points in the chat script using the ECHO keyword. When echoing is enabled, all output from the modem is echoed to stderr.
- E Enables environment variable substitution within chat scripts using the standard \$xxx syntax.
- v Request that the chat script execute in a verbose mode. The chat program logs the execution state of the chat script as well as all text received from the modem and output strings sent to the modem. The default is to log through [syslog\(3C\)](#) with facility local2; the logging method is alterable using the -S and -s options.
- V Request that the chat script be executed in a stderr verbose mode. The chat program logs all text received from the modem and output strings sent to the modem to stderr. stderr is usually the local console at the station running the chat or pppd program.
- s Use stderr. Log messages from -v and error messages are sent to stderr.

- S Do not use syslog. By default, error messages are set to syslog. This option prevents log messages from -v and error messages from being sent to syslog.
- T <phone number> Pass in an arbitrary string (usually a telephone number) that will be substituted for the \T substitution metacharacter in a send string.
- U <phone number 2> Pass in a second string (usually a telephone number) that will be substituted for the \U substitution metacharacter in a send string. This is useful when dialing an ISDN terminal adapter that requires two numbers.
- script If the script is not specified in a file with the -f option, the script is included as parameters to the chat program.

Extended Description

Chat Script The chat script defines communications. A script consists of one or more "expect-send" pairs of strings separated by spaces, with an optional "subexpect-sendsend" string pair, separated by a dash (as in the following example:)

```
ogin:-BREAK-ogin: ppp ssword: hello2u2
```

The example indicates that the chat program should expect the string "ogin:". If it fails to receive a login prompt within the time interval allotted, it sends a break sequence to the remote and then expects the string "ogin:". If the first "ogin:" is received, the break sequence is not generated.

Upon receiving the login prompt, the chat program sends the string "ppp" and then expects the prompt "ssword:". When the password prompt is received, it sends the password hello2u2.

A carriage return is normally sent following the reply string. It is not expected in the "expect" string unless it is specifically requested by using the \r character sequence.

The expect sequence should contain only what is needed to identify the received data. Because it's stored on a disk file, it should not contain variable information. Generally it is not acceptable to look for time strings, network identification strings, or other variable pieces of data as an expect string.

To correct for characters that are corrupted during the initial sequence, look for the string "ogin:" rather than "login:". The leading "l" character may be received in error, creating problems in finding the string. For this reason, scripts look for "ogin:" rather than "login:" and "ssword:" rather than "password:".

An example of a simple script follows:

```
ogin: ppp ssword: hello2u2
```

The example can be interpreted as: expect ogin:, send ppp, expect ...ssword:, send hello2u2.

When login to a remote peer is necessary, simple scripts are rare. At minimum, you should include sub-expect sequences in case the original string is not received. For example, consider the following script:

```
ogin:--ogin: ppp ssword: hello2u2
```

This script is more effective than the simple one used earlier. The string looks for the same login prompt; however, if one is not received, a single return sequence is sent and then the script looks for login: again. If line noise obscures the first login prompt, send the empty line to generate a login prompt again.

Comments Comments can be embedded in the chat script. Comment lines are ignored by the chat program. A comment starts with the hash (“#”) character in column one. If a # character is expected as the first character of the expect sequence, quote the expect string. If you want to wait for a prompt that starts with a # character, write something like this:

```
# Now wait for the prompt and send logout string
'# ' logout
```

Sending Data From A File If the string to send begins with an at sign (“@”), the remainder of the string is interpreted as the name of the file that contains the string. If the last character of the data read is a newline, it is removed. The file can be a named pipe (or fifo) instead of a regular file. This enables chat to communicate with another program, for example, a program to prompt the user and receive a password typed in.

Abort Many modems report the status of a call as a string. These status strings are often “CONNECTED” or “NO CARRIER” or “BUSY.” If the modem fails to connect to the remote, you can terminate the script. Abort strings may be specified in the script using the ABORT sequence. For example:

```
ABORT BUSY ABORT 'NO CARRIER' '' ATZ OK ATDT5551212 CONNECT
```

This sequence expects nothing and sends the string ATZ. The expected response is the string OK. When OK is received, the string ATDT5551212 dials the telephone. The expected string is CONNECT. If CONNECT is received, the remainder of the script is executed. When the modem finds a busy telephone, it sends the string BUSY, causing the string to match the abort character sequence. The script fails because it found a match to the abort string. If the NO CARRIER string is received, it aborts for the same reason.

Clr_Abort The CLR_ABORT sequence clears previously set ABORT strings. ABORT strings are kept in an array of a pre-determined size; CLR_ABORT reclaims the space for cleared entries, enabling new strings to use that space.

Say The SAY string enables the script to send strings to a user at a terminal via standard error. If chat is being run by pppd and pppd is running as a daemon (detached from its controlling terminal), standard error is normally redirected to the `/etc/ppp/connect-errors` file.

SAY strings must be enclosed in single or double quotes. If carriage return and line feed are required for the output, you must explicitly add them to your string.

The SAY string can provide progress messages to users even with "ECHO OFF." For example, add a line similar to the following to the script:

```
ABORT BUSY
ECHO OFF
SAY "Dialing your ISP...\n"
'' ATDT5551212
TIMEOUT 120
SAY "Waiting up to 2 minutes for connection ..."
CONNECT ''
SAY "Connected, now logging in ...\n"
ogin: account
ssword: pass
$ \c
SAY "Logged in OK ... \n"
```

This sequence hides script detail while presenting the SAY string to the user. In this case, you will see:

```
Dialing your ISP...
Waiting up to 2 minutes for connection...Connected, now logging in...
Logged in OK ...
```

Report REPORT is similar to the ABORT string. With REPORT, however, strings and all characters to the next control character (such as a carriage return), are written to the report file.

REPORT strings can be used to isolate a modem's transmission rate from its CONNECT string and return the value to the chat user. Analysis of the REPORT string logic occurs in conjunction with other string processing, such as looking for the expect string. It's possible to use the same string for a REPORT and ABORT sequence, but probably not useful.

Report strings may be specified in the script using the REPORT sequence. For example:

```
REPORT CONNECT
ABORT BUSY
ATDT5551212 CONNECT
ogin: account
```

The above sequence expects nothing, then sends the string ATDT5551212 to dial the telephone. The expected string is CONNECT. If CONNECT is received, the remainder of the

script is executed. In addition, the program writes the string CONNECT to the report file (specified by -r) in addition to any characters that follow.

Clr_Report CLR_REPORT clears previously set REPORT strings. REPORT strings are kept in an array of a pre-determined size; CLR_REPORT reclaims the space for cleared entries so that new strings can use that space.

Echo ECHO determines if modem output is echoed to stderr. This option may be set with the -e option, but can also be controlled by the ECHO keyword. The "expect-send" pair ECHO ON enables echoing, and ECHO OFF disables it. With ECHO, you can select which parts of the conversation should be visible. In the following script:

```
ABORT 'BUSY'
ABORT 'NO CARRIER'
"" AT&F
OK\r\n ATD1234567
\r\n \c
ECHO ON
CONNECT \c
ogin: account
```

All output resulting from modem configuration and dialing is not visible, but output is echoed beginning with the CONNECT (or BUSY) message.

Hangup The HANGUP option determines if a modem hangup is considered as an error. HANGUP is useful for dialing systems that hang up and call your system back. HANGUP can be ON or OFF. When HANGUP is set to OFF and the modem hangs up (for example, following the first stage of logging in to a callback system), chat continues running the script (for example, waiting for the incoming call and second stage login prompt). When the incoming call is connected, use the HANGUP ON string to reinstall normal hang up signal behavior. An example of a simple script follows:

```
ABORT 'BUSY'
"" AT&F
OK\r\n ATD1234567
\r\n \c
CONNECT \c
'Callback login:' call_back_ID
HANGUP OFF
ABORT "Bad Login"
'Callback Password:' Call_back_password
TIMEOUT 120
CONNECT \c
HANGUP ON
ABORT "NO CARRIER"
ogin:--BREAK--ogin: real_account
```

Timeout The initial timeout value is 45 seconds. Use the `-t` parameter to change the initial timeout value.

To change the timeout value for the next expect string, the following example can be used:

```
''AT&F
OK ATDT5551212
CONNECT \c
TIMEOUT 10
ogin:--ogin: username
TIMEOUT 5
assword: hello2u2
```

The example changes the timeout to ten seconds when it expects the login: prompt. The timeout is changed to five seconds when it looks for the password prompt.

Once changed, the timeout value remains in effect until it is changed again.

EOT The EOT special reply string instructs the chat program to send an EOT character to the remote. This is equivalent to using `^D\c` as the reply string. The EOT string normally indicates the end-of-file character sequence. A return character is not sent following the EOT. The EOT sequence can be embedded into the send string using the sequence `^D`.

BREAK The BREAK special reply string sends a break condition. The break is a special transmitter signal. Many UNIX systems handle break by cycling through available bit rates, and sending break is often needed when the remote system does not support autobaud. BREAK is equivalent to using `\K\c` as the reply string. You embed the break sequence into the send string using the `\K` sequence.

Escape Sequences Expect and reply strings can contain escape sequences. Reply strings accept all escape sequences, while expect strings accept most sequences. A list of escape sequences is presented below. Sequences that are not accepted by expect strings are indicated.

```
''      Expects or sends a null string. If you send a null string, chat sends the return
        character. If you expect a null string, chat proceeds to the reply string without
        waiting. This sequence can be a pair of apostrophes or quote mark characters.

\b      Represents a backspace character.

\c      Suppresses the newline at the end of the reply string. This is the only method to send
        a string without a trailing return character. This sequence must be at the end of the
        send string. For example, the sequence hello\c will simply send the characters h, e, l,
        l, o. (Not valid in expect.)

\d      Delay for one second. The program uses sleep(1) which delays to a maximum of
        one second. (Not valid in expect.)

\K      Insert a BREAK. (Not valid in expect.)
```

<code>\n</code>	Send a newline or linefeed character.
<code>\N</code>	Send a null character. The same sequence may be represented by <code>\0</code> . (Not valid in expect.)
<code>\p</code>	Pause for 1/10th of a second. (Not valid in expect.)
<code>\q</code>	Suppress writing the string to syslog. The string ?????? is written to the log in its place. (Not valid in expect.)
<code>\r</code>	Send or expect a carriage return.
<code>\s</code>	Represents a space character in the string. Can be used when it is not desirable to quote the strings which contains spaces. The sequence 'HI TIM' and HI\sTIM are the same.
<code>\t</code>	Send or expect a tab character.
<code>\T</code>	Send the phone number string as specified with the <code>-T</code> option. (Not valid in expect.)
<code>\U</code>	Send the phone number 2 string as specified with the <code>-U</code> option. (Not valid in expect.)
<code>\\</code>	Send or expect a backslash character.
<code>\ddd</code>	Collapse the octal digits (ddd) into a single ASCII character and send that character. (<code>\000</code> is not valid in an expect string.)
<code>^C</code>	Substitute the sequence with the control character represented by C. For example, the character DC1 (17) is shown as ^Q. (Some characters are not valid in expect.)

Environment Variables Environment variables are available within chat scripts if the `-E` option is specified on the command line. The metacharacter `$` introduces the name of the environment variable to substitute. If the substitution fails because the requested environment variable is not set, nothing is replaced for the variable.

Exit Status The chat program terminates with the following completion codes:

0	Normal program termination. Indicates that the script was executed without error to normal conclusion.
1	One or more of the parameters are invalid or an expect string was too large for the internal buffers. Indicates that the program was not properly executed.
2	An error occurred during the execution of the program. This may be due to a read or write operation failing or chat receiving a signal such as SIGINT.
3	A timeout event occurred when there was an expect string without having a "-subsend" string. This indicates that you may not have programmed the script correctly for the condition or that an unexpected event occurred and the expected string could not be found.

- 4 The first string marked as an ABORT condition occurred.
- 5 The second string marked as an ABORT condition occurred.
- 6 The third string marked as an ABORT condition occurred.
- 7 The fourth string marked as an ABORT condition occurred.
- ... The other termination codes are also strings marked as an ABORT condition.

To determine which event terminated the script, use the termination code. It is possible to decide if the string "BUSY" was received from the modem versus "NO DIALTONE." While the first event may be retried, the second probably will not succeed during a retry.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWpppdu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [sleep\(1\)](#), [uucp\(1C\)](#), [pppd\(1M\)](#), [uucico\(1M\)](#), [syslog\(3C\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Additional information on chat scripts are available with UUCP documentation. The chat script format was taken from scripts used by the `uucico` program.

Name check-hostname – check if sendmail can determine the system's fully-qualified host name

Synopsis /usr/sbin/check-hostname

Description The check-hostname script is a migration aid for [sendmail\(1M\)](#). This script tries to determine the local host's fully-qualified host name (FQHN) in a manner similar to [sendmail\(1M\)](#). If check-hostname is able to determine the FQHN of the local host, it reports success. Otherwise, check-hostname reports how to reconfigure the system so that the FQHN can be properly determined.

Files

/etc/hosts	Host name database
/etc/nsswitch.conf	Name service switch configuration file
/etc/resolv.conf	Configuration file for name server routines

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWsndmu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [domainname\(1M\)](#), [sendmail\(1M\)](#), [hosts\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name check-permissions – check permissions on mail rerouting files

Synopsis /usr/sbin/check-permissions [*login*]

Description The check-permissions script is intended as a migration aid for [sendmail\(1M\)](#). It checks the /etc/mail/sendmail.cf file for all configured alias files, and checks the alias files for :include: files. It also checks for certain .forward files. For each file that check-permissions checks, it verifies that none of the parent directories are group- or world-writable. If any directories are overly permissive, it is reported. Otherwise it reports that no unsafe directories were found.

As to which .forward files are checked, it depends on the arguments included on the command line. If no argument is given, the current user's home directory is checked for the presence of a .forward file. If any arguments are given, they are assumed to be valid logins, and the home directory of each one is checked.

If the special argument ALL is given, the passwd entry in the /etc/nsswitch.conf file is checked, and all password entries that can be obtained through the switch file are checked. In large domains, this can be time-consuming.

Operands The following operands are supported:

login Where *login* is a valid user name, checks the home directory for *login*.

ALL Checks the home directory of *all* users.

Files /etc/mail/sendmail.cf Defines environment for sendmail

/etc/mail/aliases Ascii mail aliases file

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWsndmu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [getent\(1M\)](#), [sendmail\(1M\)](#), [aliases\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name chk_encodings – check the label encodings file syntax

Synopsis /usr/sbin/chk_encodings [-a] [-c *maxclass*] [*pathname*]

Description chk_encodings checks the syntax of the label-encodings file that is specified by *pathname*. With the -a option, chk_encodings also prints a semantic analysis of the label-encodings file that is specified by *pathname*. If *pathname* is not specified, chk_encodings checks and analyzes the /etc/security/tsol/label_encodings file.

If label-encodings file analysis was requested, whatever analysis can be provided is written to the standard output file even if errors were found.

Options

- a Provide a semantic analysis of the label encodings file.
- c *maxclass* Accept a maximum classification value of *maxclass* (default 255) in the label encodings file CLASSIFICATIONS section.

Exit Status When successful, chk_encodings returns an exit status of 0 (true) and writes to the standard output file a confirmation that no errors were found in *pathname*. Otherwise, chk_encodings returns an exit status of nonzero (false) and writes an error diagnostic to the standard output file.

Files /etc/security/tsol/label_encodings
The label encodings file contains the classification names, words, constraints, and values for the defined labels of this system.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWtsu
Interface Stability	See below.
Standard	DDS-2600-6216-93, <i>Compartmented Mode Workstation Labeling: Encodings Format</i> , September 1993

The command output is Not-an-Interface. The command invocation is Committed for systems that implement the DIA MAC policy.

See Also [label_encodings\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [labels\(5\)](#)

“How to Analyze and Verify the label_encodings File” in *Solaris Trusted Extensions Label Administration*

Notes The functionality described on this manual page is available only if the system is configured with Trusted Extensions.

This file is part of the Defense Intelligence Agency (DIA) Mandatory Access Control (MAC) policy. This file might not be applicable to other MAC policies that might be developed for future releases of Solaris Trusted Extensions software.

Name chroot – change root directory for a command

Synopsis /usr/sbin/chroot *newroot command*

Description The chroot utility causes *command* to be executed relative to *newroot*. The meaning of any initial slashes (/) in the path names is changed to *newroot* for *command* and any of its child processes. Upon execution, the initial working directory is *newroot*.

Notice that redirecting the output of *command* to a file,

```
chroot newroot command >x
```

will create the file *x* relative to the original root of *command*, not the new one.

The new root path name is always relative to the current root. Even if a chroot is currently in effect, the *newroot* argument is relative to the current root of the running process.

This command can be run only by the super-user.

Return Values The exit status of chroot is the return value of *command*.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Using the chroot Utility

The chroot utility provides an easy way to extract tar files (see [tar\(1\)](#)) written with absolute filenames to a different location. It is necessary to copy the shared libraries used by tar (see [ldd\(1\)](#)) to the *newroot* filesystem.

```
example# mkdir /tmp/lib; cd /lib
example# cp ld.so.1 libc.so.1 libcmd.so.1 libdl.so.1 \
        libsec.so.1 /tmp/lib
example# cp /usr/bin/tar /tmp
example# dd if=/dev/rmt/0 | chroot /tmp tar xvf -
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [cd\(1\)](#), [tar\(1\)](#), [chroot\(2\)](#), [ttyname\(3C\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes Exercise extreme caution when referencing device files in the new root file system.

References by routines such as [ttyname\(3C\)](#) to stdin, stdout, and stderr will find that the device associated with the file descriptor is unknown after chroot is run.

Name cimworkshop – start the Sun WBEM CIM WorkShop application

Synopsis /usr/sadm/bin/cimworkshop

Description The `cimworkshop` command starts Sun WBEM CIM WorkShop, a graphical user interface that enables you to create, modify, and view the classes and instances that describe the managed resources on your system.

Managed resources are described using a standard information model called Common Information Model (CIM). A CIM class is a computer representation, or model, of a type of managed resource, such as a printer, disk drive, or CPU. A CIM instance is a particular managed resource that belongs to a particular class. Instances contain actual data. Objects can be shared by any WBEM-enabled system, device, or application. CIM objects are grouped into meaningful collections called schema. One or more schemas can be stored in directory-like structures called namespaces.

The CIM WorkShop application displays a Login dialog box. Context help is displayed on the left side of the CIM WorkShop dialog boxes. When you click on a field, the help content changes to describe the selected field.

By default, CIM WorkShop uses the RMI protocol to connect to the CIM Object Manager on the local host, in the default namespace, `root\cimv2`. You can select HTTP if you want to communicate to a CIM Object Manager using the standard XML/HTTP protocol from the Desktop Management Task Force. When a connection is established, all classes contained in the default namespace are displayed in the left side of the CIM WorkShop window.

The name of the current namespace is listed in the tool bar. All programming operations are performed within a namespace. Four namespaces are created in a root namespace during installation:

<code>cimv2</code>	Contains the default CIM classes that represent managed resources on your system.
<code>security</code>	Contains the security classes used by the CIM Object Manager to represent access rights for users and namespaces.
<code>system</code>	Contains properties for configuring the CIM Object Manager.
<code>snmp</code>	Contains pre-defined SNMP-related classes and all SNMP MOF files that are compiled.

The `cimworkshop` application allows you to perform the following tasks:

Create, view, and change namespaces.	Use the CIM WorkShop application to view all namespaces. A namespace is a directory-like structure that can store CIM classes and instances.
--------------------------------------	--

- Create, delete, and view CIM classes. You cannot modify the unique attributes of the classes that make up the CIM and Solaris Schema. You can create a new instance or subclass of the class and modify the desired attributes in that instance or subclass.
- Create, modify, delete, and view CIM instances. You can add instances to a class and modify its inherited properties or create new properties. You can also change the property values of a CIM instance.
- Invoke methods. You can set input values for a parameter of a method and invoke the method.

When CIM WorkShop connects to the CIM Object Manager in a particular namespace, all subsequent operations occur within that namespace. When you connect to a namespace, you can access the classes and instances in that namespace (if they exist) and in any namespaces contained in that namespace.

When you use CIM WorkShop to view CIM data, the WBEM system validates your login information on the current host. By default, a validated WBEM user is granted read access to the CIM Schema. The CIM Schema describes managed objects on your system in a standard format that all WBEM-enabled systems and applications can interpret.

- Read Only** Allows read-only access to CIM Schema objects. Users with this privilege can retrieve instances and classes, but cannot create, delete, or modify CIM objects.
- Read/Write** Allows full read, write, and delete access to all CIM classes and instances.
- Write** Allows write and delete, but not read access to all CIM classes and instances.
- None** Allows no access to CIM classes and instances.

Usage The `cimworkshop` command is not a tool for a distributed environment. Rather, this command is used for local administration on the machine on which the CIM Object Manager is running.

Exit Status The `cimworkshop` utility terminates with exit status 0.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWwbdev

See Also [mofcomp\(1M\)](#), [wbemlogviewer\(1M\)](#), [init.wbem\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name clear_locks – clear locks held on behalf of an NFS client

Synopsis /usr/sbin/clear_locks [-s] *hostname*

Description The `clear_locks` command removes all file, record, and share locks created by the *hostname* and held on the current host, regardless of which process created or owns the locks.

This command can be run only by the super-user.

This command should only be used to repair the rare case of a client crashing and failing to clear held locks. Clearing locks held by an active client may cause applications to fail in an unexpected manner.

Options -s Remove all locks created by the current machine and held by the server *hostname*.

Operands The following operands are supported:

hostname name of host server

Exit Status 0 Successful operation.

1 If not root.

2 Usage error.

3 If unable to contact server (RPC).

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [fcntl\(2\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name clinfo – display cluster information

Synopsis clinfo [-nh]

Description The `clinfo` command displays cluster configuration information about the node from which the command is executed.

Without arguments, `clinfo` returns an exit status of 0 if the node is configured and booted as part of a cluster. Otherwise, `clinfo` returns an exit status of 1.

Options The following options are supported:

-h Displays the highest node number allowed to be configured. This is different from the maximum number of nodes supported in a given cluster. The current highest configured node number can change immediately after the command returns since new nodes can be dynamically added to a running cluster.

For example, `clinfo -h` might return 64, meaning that the highest number you can use to identify a node is 64. See the *Sun Cluster 3.0 System Administration Guide* for a description of utilities you can use to determine the number of nodes in a cluster.

-n Prints the number of the node from which `clinfo` is executed.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

1 An error occurred.

This is usually because the node is not configured or booted as part of a cluster.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name clri, dcopy – clear inode

Synopsis clri [-F *FSType*] [-V] *special i-number*
 dcopy [-F *FSType*] [-V] *special i-number*

Description clri writes zeros on the inodes with the decimal *i-number* on the file system stored on *special*. After clri, any blocks in the affected file show up as missing in an [fsck\(1M\)](#) of *special*.

Read and write permission is required on the specified file system device. The inode becomes allocatable.

The primary purpose of this routine is to remove a file that for some reason appears in no directory. If it is used to zap an inode that does appear in a directory, care should be taken to track down the entry and remove it. Otherwise, when the inode is reallocated to some new file, the old entry will still point to that file. At that point, removing the old entry will destroy the new file. The new entry will again point to an unallocated inode, so the whole cycle is likely to be repeated again and again.

dcopy is a symbolic link to clri.

Options -F *FSType* Specify the *FSType* on which to operate. The *FSType* should either be specified here or be determinable from `/etc/vfstab` by matching *special* with an entry in the table, or by consulting `/etc/default/fs`.

-V Echo the complete command line, but do not execute the command. The command line is generated by using the options and arguments provided by the user and adding to them information derived from `/etc/vfstab`. This option should be used to verify and validate the command line.

Usage See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of clri and dcopy when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (2^{31} bytes).

Files `/etc/default/fs` Default local file system type
`/etc/vfstab` List of default parameters for each file system

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [fsck\(1M\)](#), [vfstab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#)

Notes This command might not be supported for all *FSTypes*.

Name consadm – select or display devices used as auxiliary console devices

Synopsis /usr/sbin/consadm

/usr/sbin/consadm [-a *device*. . .] [-p]

/usr/sbin/consadm [-d *device*. . .] [-p]

/usr/sbin/consadm [-p]

Description consadm selects the hardware *device* or devices to be used as auxiliary console devices, or displays the current device. Only superusers are allowed to make or display auxiliary console device selections.

Auxiliary console devices receive copies of console messages, and can be used as the console during single user mode. In particular, they receive kernel messages and messages directed to /dev/sysmsg. On Solaris x86 based systems they can also be used for interaction with the bootstrap.

By default, selecting a display device to be used as an auxiliary console device selects that device for the duration the system remains up. If the administrator needs the selection to persist across reboots the -p option can be specified.

consadm runs a daemon in the background, monitoring auxiliary console devices. Any devices that are disconnected (hang up, lose carrier) are removed from the auxiliary console device list, though not from the persistent list. While auxiliary console devices may have been removed from the device list receiving copies of console messages, those messages will always continue to be displayed by the default console device.

The daemon will not run if it finds there are not any auxiliary devices configured to monitor. Likewise, after the last auxiliary console is removed, the daemon will shut itself down. Therefore the daemon persists for only as long as auxiliary console devices remain active.

See [eeprom\(1M\)](#) for instructions on assigning an auxiliary console device as the system console.

Options The following options are supported:

-a *device* Adds *device* to the list of auxiliary console devices. Specify *device* as the path name to the device or devices to be added to the auxiliary console device list.

-d *device* Removes *device* from the list of auxiliary console devices. Specify *device* as the path name to the device or devices to be removed from the auxiliary console device list.

-p Prints the list of auxiliary consoles that will be auxiliary across reboots.

When invoked with the -a or -d options, tells the application to make the change persist across reboot.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Adding to the list of devices that will receive console messages

The following command adds /dev/term/a to the list of devices that will receive console messages.

```
example# consadm -a /dev/term/a
```

EXAMPLE 2 Removing from the list of devices that will receive console messages

The following command removes /dev/term/a from the list of devices that will receive console messages. This includes removal from the persistent list.

```
example# consadm -d -p /dev/term/a
```

EXAMPLE 3 Printing the list of devices selected as auxiliary console devices

The following command prints the name or names of the device or devices currently selected as auxiliary console devices.

```
example# consadm
```

Environment Variables See [environ\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following environment variables that affect the execution of consadm: LC_CTYPE, LC_MESSAGES, and NLSPATH.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Stability Level	Evolving

See Also [kmdb\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [eeprom\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [syslogd\(1M\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [sysmsg\(7D\)](#), [console\(7D\)](#)

Notes Auxiliary console devices are not usable for kmdb or firmware I/O, do not receive panic messages, and do not receive output directed to /dev/console.

The consadm service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/consadm
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name conv_lp – convert LP configuration

Synopsis conv_lp [-d *dir*] [-f *file*]

Description conv_lp reads LP printer configuration information from a directory and converts it to an output file for use with print client software.

Options The following options are supported:

- d *dir* The root (' / ') directory from which LP configuration information is read. The default is root (' / ').
- f *file* The output file to which conv_lp writes the converted LP configuration information. The default is /etc/printers.conf.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Converting LP Configuration Information from the Default Directory and File

The following example converts LP configuration information from directory root (/) to file /etc/printers.conf.

```
% conv_lp
```

EXAMPLE 2 Converting LP Configuration Information From a Specified Directory and File

The following example converts LP configuration information from directory /export/root/client to file /export/root/client/etc/printers.conf.

```
% conv_lp -d /export/root/client -f \
/export/root/client/etc/printers.conf
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- non-zero An error occurred.

Files /etc/printers.conf System printer configuration database.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWpcu

See Also [lpset\(1M\)](#), [printers.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name conv_lpd – convert LPD configuration

Synopsis conv_lpd [-c printers | -c printcap] [-n] *file*

Description conv_lpd converts LPD printer configuration information from *file* to a printers.conf or a printcap file (see [printers.conf\(4\)](#)). *file* specifies the name of the input file, and can be either in printers.conf or printcap format. If *file* is in printers.conf format, it converts it to a printcap file. If *file* is in printcap format, it converts it to a printers.conf file.

Options The following options are supported:

-c printers | -c printcap Specifies the type of output file produced by the conversion. -c printers converts to a printers.conf file. -c printcap converts to a printcap file. -c printers is the default.

-n Preserves the namelist during the conversion.

Operands The following operands are supported:

file The file to be converted.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Converting a printcap file to a printers.conf file.

The following example converts a printcap file to a printers.conf file.

```
example% conv_lpd /etc/printcap
```

EXAMPLE 2 Converting a printcap file to a printers.conf file and preserving the namelist.

The following example converts a printcap file to a printers.conf file and preserves the namelist.

```
example% conv_lpd -c printers -n /etc/printcap
```

EXAMPLE 3 Converting a printers.conf file to a printcap file and preserving the namelist.

The following example converts a printers.conf file to a printcap file and preserves the namelist.

```
example% conv_lpd -c printcap -n /etc/printers.conf
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

non-zero An error occurred.

Files /etc/printers.conf System printer configuration database.

/etc/printcap SunOS 4.x printer capability database.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWpcu

See Also [lpset\(1M\)](#), [printers.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name coreadm – core file administration

Synopsis coreadm [-g *pattern*] [-G *content*] [-i *pattern*] [-I *content*]
[-d *option*]... [-e *option*]...
coreadm [-p *pattern*] [-P *content*] [*pid*]...

Description coreadm specifies the name and location of core files produced by abnormally-terminating processes. See [core\(4\)](#).

Only users and roles that belong to the “Maintenance and Repair” RBAC profile can execute the first form of the SYNOPSIS. This form configures system-wide core file options, including a global core file name pattern and a core file name pattern for the [init\(1M\)](#) process. All settings are saved persistently and will be applied at boot.

Non-privileged users can execute the second form of the SYNOPSIS. This form specifies the file name pattern and core file content that the operating system uses to generate a per-process core file.

A core file name pattern is a normal file system path name with embedded variables, specified with a leading % character. The variables are expanded from values that are effective when a core file is generated by the operating system. The possible embedded variables are as follows:

%d

Executable file directory name, up to a maximum of MAXPATHLEN characters

%f

Executable file name, up to a maximum of MAXCOMLEN characters

%g

Effective group-ID

%m

Machine name (uname -m)

%n

System node name (uname -n)

%p

Process-ID

%t

Decimal value of [time\(2\)](#)

%u

Effective user-ID

%z

Name of the zone in which process executed (zonename)

%%

Literal %

For example, the core file name pattern `/var/cores/core.%f.%p` would result, for command `foo` with process-ID 1234, in the core file name `/var/cores/core.foo.1234`.

A core file content description is specified using a series of tokens to identify parts of a process's binary image:

`anon`

Anonymous private mappings, including thread stacks that are not main thread stacks

`ctf`

CTF type information sections for loaded object files

`data`

Writable private file mappings

`dism`

DISM mappings

`heap`

Process heap

`ism`

ISM mappings

`rodata`

Read-only private file mappings

`shanon`

Anonymous shared mappings

`shfile`

Shared mappings that are backed by files

`shm`

System V shared memory

`stack`

Process stack

`symtab`

Symbol table sections for loaded object files

`text`

Readable and executable private file mappings

In addition, you can use the token `all` to indicate that core files should include all of these parts of the process's binary image. You can use the token `none` to indicate that no mappings are to be included. The default token indicates inclusion of the system default content (`stack+heap+shm+ism+dism+text+data+rodata+anon+shanon+ctf+symtab`). The `/proc` file system data structures are always present in core files regardless of the mapping content.

You can use `+` and `-` to concatenate tokens. For example, the core file content `default -ism` would produce a core file with the default set of mappings without any intimate shared memory mappings.

The `coreadm` command with no arguments reports the current system configuration, for example:

```
$ coreadm
  global core file pattern: /var/cores/core.%f.%p
  global core file content: all
    init core file pattern: core
    init core file content: default
      global core dumps: enabled
    per-process core dumps: enabled
  global setid core dumps: enabled
per-process setid core dumps: disabled
  global core dump logging: disabled
```

The `coreadm` command with only a list of process-IDs reports each process's per-process core file name pattern, for example:

```
$ coreadm 278 5678
278:  core.%f.%p default
5678: /home/george/cores/%f.%p.%t all-ism
```

Only the owner of a process or a user with the `proc_owner` privilege can interrogate a process in this manner.

When a process is dumping core, up to three core files can be produced: one in the per-process location, one in the system-wide global location, and, if the process was running in a local (non-global) zone, one in the global location for the zone in which that process was running. Each core file is generated according to the effective options for the corresponding location.

When generated, a global core file is created in mode `600` and owned by the superuser. Nonprivileged users cannot examine such files.

Ordinary per-process core files are created in mode `600` under the credentials of the process. The owner of the process can examine such files.

A process that is or ever has been `setuid` or `setgid` since its last [exec\(2\)](#) presents security issues that relate to dumping core. Similarly, a process that initially had superuser privileges and lost those privileges through [setuid\(2\)](#) also presents security issues that are related to dumping core. A process of either type can contain sensitive information in its address space to which the current nonprivileged owner of the process should not have access. If `setid` core files are enabled, they are created mode `600` and owned by the superuser.

Options The following options are supported:

-d *option*...

Disable the specified core file option. See the **-e *option*** for descriptions of possible options.

Multiple **-e** and **-d** options can be specified on the command line. Only users and roles belonging to the “Maintenance and Repair” RBAC profile can use this option.

-e *option*...

Enable the specified core file option. Specify *option* as one of the following:

global

Allow core dumps that use global core pattern.

global-setid

Allow set-id core dumps that use global core pattern.

log

Generate a `syslog(3C)` message when generation of a global core file is attempted.

process

Allow core dumps that use per-process core pattern.

proc-setid

Allow set-id core dumps that use per-process core pattern.

Multiple **-e** and **-d** options can be specified on the command line. Only users and roles belonging to the “Maintenance and Repair” RBAC profile can use this option.

-g *pattern*

Set the global core file name pattern to *pattern*. The pattern must start with a `/` and can contain any of the special `%` variables that are described in the DESCRIPTION.

Only users and roles belonging to the “Maintenance and Repair” RBAC profile can use this option.

-G *content*

Set the global core file content to *content*. You must specify *content* by using the tokens that are described in the DESCRIPTION.

Only users and roles belonging to the “Maintenance and Repair” RBAC profile can use this option.

-i *pattern*

Set the default per-process core file name to *pattern*. This changes the per-process pattern for any process whose per-process pattern is still set to the default. Processes that have had their per-process pattern set or are descended from a process that had its per-process pattern set (using the **-p** option) are unaffected. This default persists across reboot.

Only users and roles belonging to the “Maintenance and Repair” RBAC profile can use this option.

-I *content*

Set the default per-process core file content to *content*. This changes the per-process content for any process whose per-process content is still set to the default. Processes that have had their per-process content set or are descended from a process that had its per-process content set (using the **-P** option) are unaffected. This default persists across reboot.

Only users and roles belonging to the “Maintenance and Repair” RBAC profile can use this option.

-p *pattern*

Set the per-process core file name pattern to *pattern* for each of the specified process-IDs. The pattern can contain any of the special % variables described in the DESCRIPTION and need not begin with /. If the pattern does not begin with /, it is evaluated relative to the directory that is current when the process generates a core file.

A nonprivileged user can apply the **-p** option only to processes that are owned by that user. A user with the `proc_owner` privilege can apply the option to any process. The per-process core file name pattern is inherited by future child processes of the affected processes. See [fork\(2\)](#).

If no process-IDs are specified, the **-p** option sets the per-process core file name pattern to *pattern* on the parent process (usually the shell that ran `coreadm`).

-P *content*

Set the per-process core file content to *content* for each of the specified process-IDs. The content must be specified by using the tokens that are described in the DESCRIPTION.

A nonprivileged user can apply the **-p** option only to processes that are owned by that user. A user with the `proc_owner` privilege can apply the option to any process. The per-process core file name pattern is inherited by future child processes of the affected processes. See [fork\(2\)](#).

If no process-IDs are specified, the **-P** option sets the per-process file content to *content* on the parent process (usually the shell that ran `coreadm`).

Operands The following operands are supported:

pid
process-ID

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Setting the Core File Name Pattern

When executed from a user's `$HOME/.profile` or `$HOME/.login`, the following command sets the core file name pattern for all processes that are run during the login session:

```
example$ coreadm -p core.%f.%p
```

Note that since the process-ID is omitted, the per-process core file name pattern will be set in the shell that is currently running and is inherited by all child processes.

EXAMPLE 2 Dumping a User's Files Into a Subdirectory

The following command dumps all of a user's core dumps into the `corefiles` subdirectory of the home directory, discriminated by the system node name. This command is useful for users who use many different machines but have a shared home directory.

```
example$ coreadm -p $HOME/corefiles/%n.%f.%p 1234
```

EXAMPLE 3 Culling the Global Core File Repository

The following commands set up the system to produce core files in the global repository only if the executables were run from `/usr/bin` or `/usr/sbin`.

```
example# mkdir -p /var/cores/usr/bin
example# mkdir -p /var/cores/usr/sbin
example# coreadm -G all -g /var/cores/%d/%f.%p.%n
```

Files `/var/cores`

Directory provided for global core file storage.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0

Successful completion.

1

A fatal error occurred while either obtaining or modifying the system core file configuration.

2

Invalid command-line options were specified.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [gcore\(1\)](#), [pfexec\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [init\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [exec\(2\)](#), [fork\(2\)](#), [setuid\(2\)](#), [time\(2\)](#), [syslog\(3C\)](#), [core\(4\)](#), [prof_attr\(4\)](#), [user_attr\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Notes In a local (non-global) zone, the global settings apply to processes running in that zone. In addition, the global zone's apply to processes run in any zone.

The term *global settings* refers to settings which are applied to the system or zone as a whole, and does not necessarily imply that the settings are to take effect in the global zone.

The `coreadm` service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

`svc:/system/coreadm:default`

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

The `-g`, `-G`, `-i`, `-I`, `-e`, and `-d` options can be also used by a user, role, or profile that has been granted both the `solaris.smf.manage.coreadm` and `solaris.smf.value.coreadm` authorizations.

Name cpustat – monitor system behavior using CPU performance counters

Synopsis cpustat *-c eventspec* [*-c eventspec*]... [*-p period*] [*-T u | d*]
 [*-sntD*] [*interval* [*count*]]

cpustat *-h*

Description The cpustat utility allows CPU performance counters to be used to monitor the overall behavior of the CPUs in the system.

If *interval* is specified, cpustat samples activity every *interval* seconds, repeating forever. If a *count* is specified, the statistics are repeated *count* times. If neither are specified, an interval of five seconds is used, and there is no limit to the number of samples that are taken.

Options The following options are supported:

-c eventspec

Specifies a set of events for the CPU performance counters to monitor. The syntax of these event specifications is:

```
[picn=]eventn[,attr[n][=val]][, [picn=]eventn
[,attr[n][=val]], ...]
```

You can use the *-h* option to obtain a list of available events and attributes. This causes generation of the usage message. You can omit an explicit counter assignment, in which case cpustat attempts to choose a capable counter automatically.

Attribute values can be expressed in hexadecimal, octal, or decimal notation, in a format suitable for `strtoll(3C)`. An attribute present in the event specification without an explicit value receives a default value of 1. An attribute without a corresponding counter number is applied to all counters in the specification.

The semantics of these event specifications can be determined by reading the CPU manufacturer's documentation for the events.

Multiple *-c* options can be specified, in which case the command cycles between the different event settings on each sample.

-D

Enables debug mode.

-h

Prints an extensive help message on how to use the utility and how to program the processor-dependent counters.

-n

Omits all header output (useful if cpustat is the beginning of a pipeline).

-p period

Causes cpustat to cycle through the list of *eventspecs* every *period* seconds. The tool sleeps after each cycle until *period* seconds have elapsed since the first *eventspec* was measured.

When this option is present, the optional *count* parameter specifies the number of total cycles to make (instead of the number of total samples to take). If *period* is less than the number of *eventspecs* times *interval*, the tool acts as if period is 0.

-s

Creates an idle soaker thread to spin while system-only *eventspecs* are bound. One idle soaker thread is bound to each CPU in the current processor set. System-only *eventspecs* contain both the nouser and the sys tokens and measure events that occur while the CPU is operating in privileged mode. This option prevents the kernel's idle loop from running and triggering system-mode events.

-T u | d

Display a time stamp.

Specify u for a printed representation of the internal representation of time. See [time\(2\)](#). Specify d for standard date format. See [date\(1\)](#).

-t

Prints an additional column of processor cycle counts, if available on the current architecture.

Usage A closely related utility, [cputrack\(1\)](#), can be used to monitor the behavior of individual applications with little or no interference from other activities on the system.

The `cpustat` utility must be run by the super-user, as there is an intrinsic conflict between the use of the CPU performance counters system-wide by `cpustat` and the use of the CPU performance counters to monitor an individual process (for example, by `cputrack`.)

Once any instance of this utility has started, no further per-process or per-LWP use of the counters is allowed until the last instance of the utility terminates.

The times printed by the command correspond to the wallclock time when the hardware counters were actually sampled, instead of when the program told the kernel to sample them. The time is derived from the same timebase as [gethrtime\(3C\)](#).

The processor cycle counts enabled by the `-t` option always apply to both user and system modes, regardless of the settings applied to the performance counter registers.

On some hardware platforms running in system mode using the “sys” token, the counters are implemented using 32-bit registers. While the kernel attempts to catch all overflows to synthesize 64-bit counters, because of hardware implementation restrictions, overflows can be lost unless the sampling interval is kept short enough. The events most prone to wrap are those that count processor clock cycles. If such an event is of interest, sampling should occur frequently so that less than 4 billion clock cycles can occur between samples.

The output of `cpustat` is designed to be readily parseable by [nawk\(1\)](#) and [perl\(1\)](#), thereby allowing performance tools to be composed by embedding `cpustat` in scripts. Alternatively, tools can be constructed directly using the same APIs that `cpustat` is built upon using the facilities of [libcpc\(3LIB\)](#). See [cpc\(3CPC\)](#).

The `cpustat` utility only monitors the CPUs that are accessible to it in the current processor set. Thus, several instances of the utility can be running on the CPUs in different processor sets. See [psrset\(1M\)](#) for more information about processor sets.

Because `cpustat` uses LWPs bound to CPUs, the utility might have to be terminated before the configuration of the relevant processor can be changed.

Examples

SPARC EXAMPLE 1 Measuring External Cache References and Misses

The following example measures misses and references in the external cache. These occur while the processor is operating in user mode on an UltraSPARC machine.

```
example% cpustat -c EC_ref,EC_misses 1 3
```

time	cpu	event	pic0	pic1
1.008	0	tick	69284	1647
1.008	1	tick	43284	1175
2.008	0	tick	179576	1834
2.008	1	tick	202022	12046
3.008	0	tick	93262	384
3.008	1	tick	63649	1118
3.008	2	total	651077	18204

x86 EXAMPLE 2 Measuring Branch Prediction Success on Pentium 4

The following example measures branch mispredictions and total branch instructions in user and system mode on a Pentium 4 machine.

```
example% cpustat -c \
pic12=branch_retired,emask12=0x4,pic14=branch_retired,\
emask14=0xf,sys 1 3
```

time	cpu	event	pic12	pic14
1.010	1	tick	458	684
1.010	0	tick	305	511
2.010	0	tick	181	269
2.010	1	tick	469	684
3.010	0	tick	182	269
3.010	1	tick	468	684
3.010	2	total	2063	3101

EXAMPLE 3 Counting Memory Accesses on Opteron

The following example determines the number of memory accesses made through each memory controller on an Opteron, broken down by internal memory latency:

EXAMPLE 3 Counting Memory Accesses on Opteron (Continued)

```

cpustat -c \
  pic0=NB_mem_ctrlr_page_access,umask0=0x01, \
  pic1=NB_mem_ctrlr_page_access,umask1=0x02, \
  pic2=NB_mem_ctrlr_page_access,umask2=0x04,sys \
  1

      time cpu event      pic0      pic1      pic2
1.003  0  tick      41976     53519     7720
1.003  1  tick       5589     19402       731
2.003  1  tick       6011     17005       658
2.003  0  tick      43944     45473     7338
3.003  1  tick       7105     20177       762
3.003  0  tick      47045     48025     7119
4.003  0  tick      43224     46296     6694
4.003  1  tick       5366     19114       652

```

Warnings By running the `cpustat` command, the super-user forcibly invalidates all existing performance counter context. This can in turn cause all invocations of the `cpurack` command, and other users of performance counter context, to exit prematurely with unspecified errors.

If `cpustat` is invoked on a system that has CPU performance counters which are not supported by Solaris, the following message appears:

```
cpustat: cannot access performance counters - Operation not applicable
```

This error message implies that `cpc_open()` has failed and is documented in [cpc_open\(3CPC\)](#). Review this documentation for more information about the problem and possible solutions.

If a short interval is requested, `cpustat` might not be able to keep up with the desired sample rate. In this case, some samples might be dropped.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcpcu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [cputrack\(1\)](#), [nawk\(1\)](#), [perl\(1\)](#), [iostat\(1M\)](#), [prstat\(1M\)](#), [psrset\(1M\)](#), [vmstat\(1M\)](#), [cpc\(3CPC\)](#), [cpc_open\(3CPC\)](#), [cpc_bind_cpu\(3CPC\)](#), [gethrtime\(3C\)](#), [strtoll\(3C\)](#), [libcpc\(3LIB\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes When `cpustat` is run on a Pentium 4 with HyperThreading enabled, a CPC set is bound to only one logical CPU of each physical CPU. See [cpc_bind_cpu\(3CPC\)](#).

Name cron – clock daemon

Synopsis /usr/sbin/cron

Description cron starts a process that executes commands at specified dates and times.

You can specify regularly scheduled commands to cron according to instructions found in crontab files in the directory /var/spool/cron/crontabs. Users can submit their own crontab file using the [crontab\(1\)](#) command. Commands which are to be executed only once can be submitted using the [at\(1\)](#) command.

cron only examines crontab or at command files during its own process initialization phase and when the crontab or at command is run. This reduces the overhead of checking for new or changed files at regularly scheduled intervals.

As cron never exits, it should be executed only once. This is done routinely by way of the svc:/system/cron:default service. The file /etc/cron.d/FIFO file is used as a lock file to prevent the execution of more than one instance of cron.

cron captures the output of the job's stdout and stderr streams, and, if it is not empty, mails the output to the user. If the job does not produce output, no mail is sent to the user. An exception is if the job is an [at\(1\)](#) job and the -m option was specified when the job was submitted.

cron and at jobs are not executed if your account is locked. Jobs and processes execute. The [shadow\(4\)](#) file defines which accounts are not locked and will have their jobs and processes executed.

Setting cron Jobs Across Timezones The timezone of the cron daemon sets the system-wide timezone for cron entries. This, in turn, is by set by default system-wide using /etc/default/init. The timezone for cron entries can be overridden in a user's crontab file; see [crontab\(1\)](#).

If some form of *daylight savings* or *summer/winter time* is in effect, then jobs scheduled during the switchover period could be executed once, twice, or not at all.

Setting cron Defaults To keep a log of all actions taken by cron, you must specify CRONLOG=YES in the /etc/default/cron file. If you specify CRONLOG=NO, no logging is done. Keeping the log is a user configurable option since cron usually creates huge log files.

You can specify the PATH for user cron jobs by using PATH= in /etc/default/cron. You can set the PATH for root cron jobs using SUPATH= in /etc/default/cron. Carefully consider the security implications of setting PATH and SUPATH.

Example /etc/default/cron file:

```
CRONLOG=YES
PATH=/usr/bin:/usr/ucb:
```

This example enables logging and sets the default PATH used by non-root jobs to /usr/bin:/usr/ucb:. Root jobs continue to use /usr/sbin:/usr/bin.

The cron log file is periodically rotated by [logadm\(1M\)](#).

Files	/etc/cron.d	Main cron directory
	/etc/cron.d/FIFO	Lock file
	/etc/default/cron	cron default settings file
	/var/cron/log	cron history information
	/var/spool/cron	Spool area
	/etc/cron.d/queuedefs	Queue description file for at, batch, and cron
	/etc/logadm.conf	Configuration file for logadm

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [at\(1\)](#), [crontab\(1\)](#), [sh\(1\)](#), [logadm\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [queuedefs\(4\)](#), [shadow\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [rbac\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [smf_security\(5\)](#)

Notes The cron service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/cron:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command. Most administrative actions may be delegated to users with the `solaris.smf.manage.cron` authorization (see [rbac\(5\)](#) and [smf_security\(5\)](#)).

Diagnostics A history of all actions taken by cron is stored in `/var/cron/log` and possibly in `/var/cron/olog`.

Name cryptoadm – cryptographic framework administration

Synopsis cryptoadm list [-mpv] [provider=*provider-name*]
[mechanism=*mechanism-list*]

cryptoadm disable
provider=*provider-name* mechanism=*mechanism-list* | random | all

cryptoadm enable
provider=*provider-name* mechanism=*mechanism-list* | random | all

cryptoadm install provider=*provider-name*

cryptoadm install provider=*provider-name*
[mechanism=*mechanism-list*]

cryptoadm uninstall provider=*provider-name*

cryptoadm unload provider=*provider-name*

cryptoadm disable fips-140

cryptoadm enable fips-140

cryptoadm list fips-140

cryptoadm refresh

cryptoadm start

cryptoadm stop

cryptoadm --help

Description The `cryptoadm` utility displays cryptographic provider information for a system, configures the mechanism policy for each provider, and installs or uninstalls a cryptographic provider. The cryptographic framework supports three types of providers: a user-level provider (a PKCS11 shared library), a kernel software provider (a loadable kernel software module), and a kernel hardware provider (a cryptographic hardware device).

For kernel software providers, the `cryptoadm` utility provides the `unload` subcommand. This subcommand instructs the kernel to unload a kernel software providers.

For the cryptographic framework's metaslot, the `cryptoadm` utility provides subcommands to enable and disable the metaslot's features, list metaslot's configuration, specify alternate persistent object storage, and configure the metaslot's mechanism policy.

The `cryptoadm` utility provides subcommands to enable and disable FIPS-140 mode in the Cryptographic Framework. It also provides a `list` subcommand to display the current status of FIPS-140 mode.

Administrators will find it useful to use `syslog` facilities (see [syslogd\(1M\)](#) and [logadm\(1M\)](#)) to maintain the cryptographic subsystem. Logging can be especially useful under the following circumstances:

- If kernel-level daemon is dead, all applications fail. You can learn this from syslog and use [svcadm\(1M\)](#) to restart the `svc:/system/cryptosvc` service.
- If there are bad providers plugged into the framework, you can learn this from syslog and remove the bad providers from the framework.

With the exception of the subcommands or options listed below, the `cryptoadm` command needs to be run by a privileged user.

- subcommand `list`, any options
- subcommand `--help`

Options The `cryptoadm` utility has the various combinations of subcommands and options shown below.

`cryptoadm list`

Display the list of installed providers.

`cryptoadm list metaslot`

Display the system-wide configuration for metaslot.

`cryptoadm list -m [provider=provider-name | metaslot]`

Display a list of mechanisms that can be used with the installed providers or metaslot. If a provider is specified, display the name of the specified provider and the mechanism list that can be used with that provider. If the metaslot keyword is specified, display the list of mechanisms that can be used with metaslot.

`cryptoadm list -p [provider=provider-name | metaslot]`

Display the mechanism policy (that is, which mechanisms are available and which are not) for the installed providers. Also display the provider feature policy or metaslot. If a provider is specified, display the name of the provider with the mechanism policy enforced on it only. If the metaslot keyword is specified, display the mechanism policy enforced on the metaslot.

`cryptoadm list -v provider=provider-name | metaslot`

Display details about the specified provider if a provider is specified. If the metaslot keyword is specified, display details about the metaslot.

`-v`

For the various `list` subcommands described above (except for `list -p`), the `-v` (verbose) option provides details about providers, mechanisms and slots.

`cryptoadm disable provider=provider-name
[mechanism=mechanism-list | provider-feature ... | all]`

Disable the mechanisms or provider features specified for the provider. See OPERANDS for a description of *mechanism*, *provider-feature*, and the `all` keyword.

`cryptoadm [mechanism=mechanism-list] [auto-key-migrate]`

Disable the metaslot feature in the cryptographic framework or disable some of metaslot's features. If no operand is specified, this command disables the metaslot feature in the

cryptographic framework. If a list of mechanisms is specified, disable mechanisms specified for metaslot. If all mechanisms are disabled for metaslot, the metaslot will be disabled. See OPERANDS for a description of mechanism. If the `auto-key-migrate` keyword is specified, it disables the migration of sensitive token objects to other slots even if it is necessary for performing crypto operations. See OPERANDS for a description of `auto-key-migrate`.

```
cryptoadm enable provider=provider-name
```

```
[ mechanism=mechanism-list | provider-feature . . . | all ]
```

Enable the mechanisms or provider features specified for the provider. See OPERANDS for a description of *mechanism*, *provider-feature*, and the `all` keyword.

```
cryptoadm enable metaslot [ mechanism=mechanism-list ] |
```

```
[ [ token=token-label] [ slot=slot-description] |
```

```
default-keystore ] | [ auto-key-migrate ]
```

If no operand is specified, this command enables the metaslot feature in the cryptographic framework. If a list of mechanisms is specified, it enables only the list of specified mechanisms for metaslot. If *token-label* is specified, the specified token will be used as the persistent object store. If the *slot-description* is specified, the specified slot will be used as the persistent object store. If both the *token-label* and the *slot-description* are specified, the provider with the matching token label and slot description is used as the persistent object store. If the `default-keystore` keyword is specified, metaslot will use the default persistent object store. If the `auto-key-migrate` keyword is specified, sensitive token objects will automatically migrate to other slots as needed to complete certain crypto operations. See OPERANDS for a description of mechanism, token, slot, `default-keystore`, and `auto-key-migrate`.

```
cryptoadm install provider=provider-name
```

Install a user-level provider into the system. The *provider* operand must be an absolute pathname of the corresponding shared library. If there are both 32-bit and 64-bit versions for a library, this command should be run once only with the path name containing `$ISA`. Note that `$ISA` is not a reference to an environment variable. Note also that `$ISA` must be quoted (with single quotes [for example, '`$ISA`']) or the `$` must be escaped to keep it from being incorrectly expanded by the shell. The user-level framework expands `$ISA` to an empty string or an architecture-specific directory, for example, `sparcv9`.

The preferred way of installing a user-level provider is to build a package for the provider. For more information, see the *Solaris Security for Developer's Guide*.

```
cryptoadm install provider=provider-name
```

```
mechanism=mechanism-list
```

Install a kernel software provider into the system. The provider should contain the base name only. The *mechanism-list* operand specifies the complete list of mechanisms to be supported by this provider.

The preferred way of installing a kernel software provider is to build a package for providers. For more information, see the *Solaris Security for Developer's Guide*.

`cryptoadm uninstall provider=provider-name`

Uninstall the specified *provider* and the associated mechanism policy from the system. This subcommand applies only to a user-level provider or a kernel software provider.

`cryptoadm unload provider=provider-name`

Unload the kernel software module specified by *provider*.

`cryptoadm disable fips-140`

Disable FIPS-140 mode in the Cryptographic Framework.

`cryptoadm enable fips-140`

Enable FIPS-140 mode in the Cryptographic Framework. This subcommand does not disable the non-FIPS approved algorithms from the user-level `pkcs11_softtoken` library and the kernel software providers. It is the consumers of the framework that are responsible for using only FIPS-approved algorithms.

Upon completion of this subcommand, a message is issued to inform the administrator that any plugins added that are not within the boundary might invalidate FIPS compliance and to check the Security Policies for those plugins.

The system will require a reboot to perform Power-Up Self Tests that include a cryptographic algorithm test and a software integrity test.

`cryptoadm list fips-140`

Display the current setting of FIPS-140 mode in the Cryptographic Framework. The status of FIPS-140 mode is enabled or disabled. The default FIPS-140 mode is disabled.

`cryptoadm refresh`

`cryptoadm start`

`cryptoadm stop`

Private interfaces for use by `smf(5)`, these must not be used directly.

`cryptoadm -help`

Display the command usage.

Operands `provider=provider-name`

A user-level provider (a PKCS11 shared library), a kernel software provider (a loadable kernel software module), or a kernel hardware provider (a cryptographic hardware device).

A valid value of the *provider* operand is one entry from the output of a command of the form: `cryptoadm list`. A *provider* operand for a user-level provider is an absolute pathname of the corresponding shared library. A *provider* operand for a kernel software provider contains a base name only. A *provider* operand for a kernel hardware provider is in a “*name/number*” form.

mechanism=mechanism-list

A comma separated list of one or more PKCS #11 mechanisms. A process for implementing a cryptographic operation as defined in PKCS #11 specification. You can substitute `all` for *mechanism-list*, to specify all mechanisms on a provider. See the discussion of the `all` keyword, below.

provider-feature

A cryptographic framework feature for the given provider. Currently only `random` is accepted as a feature. For a user-level provider, disabling the `random` feature makes the PKCS #11 routines `C_GenerateRandom` and `C_SeedRandom` unavailable from the provider. For a kernel provider, disabling the `random` feature prevents `/dev/random` from gathering random numbers from the provider.

`all`

The keyword `all` can be used with with the `disable` and `enable` subcommands to operate on all provider features.

token=token-label

The label of a token in one of the providers in the cryptographic framework.

A valid value of the `token` operand is an item displayed under “Token Label” from the output of the command `cryptoadm list -v`.

slot=slot-description

The description of a slot in one of the providers in the cryptographic framework.

A valid value of the `slot` operand is an item displayed under “Description” from the output of the command `cryptoadm list -v`.

`default-keystore`

The keyword `default-keystore` is valid only for `metaslot`. Specify this keyword to set the persistent object store for `metaslot` back to using the default store.

`auto-key-migrate`

The keyword `auto-key-migrate` is valid only for `metaslot`. Specify this keyword to configure whether `metaslot` is allowed to move sensitive token objects from the token object slot to other slots for performing cryptographic operations.

The keyword `all` can be used in two ways with the `disable` and `enable` subcommands:

- You can substitute `all` for *mechanism=mechanism-list*, as in:

```
# cryptoadm enable provider=dca/0 all
```

This command enables the mechanisms on the provider *and* any other provider-features, such as `random`.

```
# cryptoadm enable provider=des mechanism=all
```

- You can also use `all` as an argument to `mechanism`, as in:

```
# cryptoadm enable provider=des mechanism=all
```

...which enables all mechanisms on the provider, but enables no other provider-features, such as random.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Display List of Providers Installed in System

The following command displays a list of all installed providers:

```
example% cryptoadm list
user-level providers:
/usr/lib/security/$ISA/pkcs11_kernel.so
/usr/lib/security/$ISA/pkcs11_softtoken.so
/opt/lib/libcryptoki.so.1
/opt/SUNWconn/lib/$ISA/libpkcs11.so.1

kernel software providers:
  des
  aes
  bfish
  sha1
  md5

kernel hardware providers:
  dca/0
```

EXAMPLE 2 Display Mechanism List for md5 Provider

The following command is a variation of the `list` subcommand:

```
example% cryptoadm list -m provider=md5
md5: CKM_MD5,CKM_MD5_HMAC,CKM_MD5_HMAC_GENERAL
```

EXAMPLE 3 Disable Specific Mechanisms for Kernel Software Provider

The following command disables mechanisms `CKM_DES3_ECB` and `CKM_DES3_CBC` for the kernel software provider `des`:

```
example# cryptoadm disable provider=des
```

EXAMPLE 4 Display Mechanism Policy for a Provider

The following command displays the mechanism policy for the `des` provider:

```
example% cryptoadm list -p provider=des
des: All mechanisms are enabled, except CKM_DES3_ECB, CKM_DES3_CBC
```

EXAMPLE 5 Enable Specific Mechanism for a Provider

The following command enables the CKM_DES3_ECB mechanism for the kernel software provider des:

```
example# cryptoadm enable provider=des mechanism=CKM_DES3_ECB
```

EXAMPLE 6 Install User-Level Provider

The following command installs a user-level provider:

```
example# cryptoadm install provider=/opt/lib/libcryptoki.so.1
```

EXAMPLE 7 Install User-Level Provider That Contains 32- and 64-bit Versions

The following command installs a user-level provider that contains both 32-bit and 64-bit versions:

```
example# cryptoadm install \  
provider=/opt/SUNWconn/lib/'$ISA'/libpkcs11.so.1
```

EXAMPLE 8 Uninstall a Provider

The following command uninstalls the md5 provider:

```
example# cryptoadm uninstall provider=md5
```

EXAMPLE 9 Disable metaslot

The following command disables the metaslot feature in the cryptographic framework.

```
example# cryptoadm disable metaslot
```

EXAMPLE 10 Specify metaslot to Use Specified Token as Persistent Object Store

The following command specifies that metaslot use the Venus token as the persistent object store.

```
example# cryptoadm enable metaslot token="SUNW,venus"
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0
Successful completion.

>0
An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	See below

The `start`, `stop`, and `refresh` options are Private interfaces. All other options are Evolving. The utility name is `Stable`.

See Also [logadm\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [syslogd\(1M\)](#), [libpkcs11\(3LIB\)](#), [exec_attr\(4\)](#), [prof_attr\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [random\(7D\)](#)

System Administration Guide: Security Services

Solaris Security for Developer's Guide

Notes If a hardware provider's policy was made explicitly (that is, some of its mechanisms were disabled) and the hardware provider has been detached, the policy of this hardware provider is still listed.

`cryptoadm` assumes that, minimally, a 32-bit shared object is delivered for each user-level provider. If both a 32-bit and 64-bit shared object are delivered, the two versions must provide the same functionality. The same mechanism policy applies to both.

Name cvcd – virtual console daemon

Synopsis /platform/*platform_name*/cvcd [-a *auth*] [-e *encr*]
[-u *esp_auth*]

Description The virtual console daemon, cvcd, is a server process that supports the network console provided on some platforms. The cvcd daemon accepts network console connections from a remote host (only one host at any given time). Console input is read from this connection and forwarded to [cvc\(7D\)](#) by way of [cvcredir\(7D\)](#).

Similarly, console output is read from [cvcredir\(7D\)](#) and forwarded across the network console connection. If cvcd dies, console traffic is automatically rerouted through an internal hardware interface.

The cvcd daemon normally starts at system boot time. Each domain supports only one cvcd process at a time.

Caution – On Sun Enterprise 10000 domains, cvcd uses a configuration file (/etc/ssphostname) to determine the name of the host from which network console connections are allowed. If the remote console host is renamed, you must edit the configuration file to reflect that change.

The cvcd daemon supports per-socket IP Security Architecture (IPsec) through the options described below. See [ipsec\(7P\)](#).

Options The cvcd daemon supports the options listed below.

- a *auth* Controls the IPsec Authentication Header (AH) algorithm. *auth* can be one of none, md5, or sha1.
- e *encr* Controls the IPsec Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) encryption algorithm. *encr* can be one of none, des, or 3des.
- u *esp_auth* Controls the IPsec Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) authentication algorithm. *esp_auth* can be one of none, md5, or sha1.

Operands The following operands are supported:

platform_name The official Sun platform name used in packaging and code. For example, for Sun Fire 15K servers, the *platform_name* would be SUNW, Sun-Fire-15000.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Setting an IPSec Option

The command below sets the value of the IPsec Authentication Header algorithm to md5. As a result of this command, cvcd will use the HMAC-MD5 authentication algorithm.

```
# svccfg -s svc:/system/cvc setprop cvc/ah_auth = "md5"
# svccfg -s svc:/system/cvc setprop cvc/esp_encr = "none"
# svccfg -s svc:/system/cvc setprop cvc/esp_auth = "none"
```

EXAMPLE 1 Setting an IPSec Option (Continued)

```
# svcadm refresh svc:/system/cvc
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Architecture	Sun Enterprise 10000 servers, Sun Fire High-End Systems
Availability	SUNWcvc.u

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [services\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [cvc\(7D\)](#), [cvcredir\(7D\)](#), [ipsec\(7P\)](#)

Sun Enterprise 10000 SSP Reference Manual

System Management Services (SMS) Reference Manual

Notes The cvcd service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the fault management resource identifier (FMRI):

```
svc:/system/cvc
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#) or [svccfg\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name datadm – maintain DAT static registry file

Synopsis /usr/bin/datadm [-v] [-u] [-a service_provider.conf]
[-r service_provider.conf]

Description The datadm utility maintains the DAT static registry file, [dat.conf\(4\)](#).

This administrative configuration program allows uDAPL service providers to add and remove themselves to the `dat.conf` file.

You can add or remove interface adapters that a service provider supports from a system after its installation. You can use `datadm` to update the `dat.conf` file to reflect the current state of the system. A new set of interface adapters for all the service providers currently installed is regenerated.

Options The following options are supported:

- a service_provider.conf Enumerate each device entry in the [service_provider.conf\(4\)](#) file into a list of interface adapters, that is, interfaces to external network that are available to uDAPL consumers.
- r service_provider.conf Remove the list of interface adapters that corresponds to the device entry in the [service_provider.conf\(4\)](#) file.
- u Update the `dat.conf` to reflect the current state of the system with an up to date set of interface adapters for the service providers that are currently listed in the DAT static registry.
- v Display the DAT static registry file, `dat.conf`.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Enumerating a Device Entry

The following example enumerates a device entry in the [service_provider.conf\(4\)](#) file into interface adapters in the [dat.conf\(4\)](#) file.

Assume that SUNW has a service provider library that supports the device `tavor`. It has a [service_provider.conf\(4\)](#) file installed in the directory `/usr/share/dat/SUNWudapl.t.conf` with a single entry as follows:

```
driver_name=tavor u1.2 nonthreadsafe default\  
  udapl_tavor.so.1 SUNW.1.0 ""
```

`tavor` is an Infiniband Host Channel Adapter with two ports. Both IB ports exist in a single IB partition, `0x8001`. If an IP interface is plumbed to each port, there are two IPoIB device instances, `ibd0` and `ibd1`:

```
# ls -l /dev/ibd*  
/dev/ibd0 -> /devices/pci@1/pci15b3,5a44@0/ibport@1,8001,ipib:ibd0  
/dev/ibd1 -> /devices/pci@1/pci15b3,5a44@0/ibport@2,8001,ipib:ibd1
```

EXAMPLE 1 Enumerating a Device Entry (Continued)

Running the command, `datadm -a /usr/share/dat/SUNWudapl.t.conf` appends two new entries (if they do not already exist) in the `/etc/dat/dat.conf` file:

```
ibd0 u1.2 nonthreadsafe default udapl_tavor.so.1 SUNW.1.0 ""
"driver_name=tavor"
ibd1 u1.2 nonthreadsafe default udapl_tavor.so.1 SUNW.1.0 ""
"driver_name=tavor"
```

EXAMPLE 2 Updating the `dat.conf` to Reflect the Current State of the System

A new IB partition, `0x8002` is added to the above example covering port 1 of the Host Channel Adapter. If a new IP interface is plumbed to port 1/partition `0x8002`, there is a third IPoIB device instance: `ibd2`.

```
# ls -l /dev/ibd*
/dev/ibd0 -> /devices/pci@1/pci15b3,5a44@0/ibport@1,8001,ipib:ibd0
/dev/ibd1 -> /devices/pci@1/pci15b3,5a44@0/ibport@2,8001,ipib:ibd1
/dev/ibd2 -> /devices/pci@1/pci15b3,5a44@0/ibport@1,8002,ipib:ibd2
```

Running `datadm -u` command, updates the `/etc/dat/dat.conf` file with a new entry added reflecting the current state of the system.

`datadm -v` shows that there are now three entries in the `/etc/dat/dat.conf` file:

```
ibd0 u1.2 nonthreadsafe default udapl_tavor.so.1 SUNW.1.0 ""
"driver_name=tavor"
ibd1 u1.2 nonthreadsafe default udapl_tavor.so.1 SUNW.1.0 ""
"driver_name=tavor"
ibd2 u1.2 nonthreadsafe default udapl_tavor.so.1 SUNW.1.0 ""
"driver_name=tavor"
```

Files `/etc/dat/dat.conf` DAT static registry file

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWudaplu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [pkgadd\(1M\)](#), [pkgrm\(1M\)](#), [libdat\(3LIB\)](#), [dat.conf\(4\)](#), [service_provider.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name dcs – domain configuration server

Synopsis /usr/lib/dcs [-s *sessions*]
 [[-a *auth*] [-e *encr*] [-u *esp_auth*]] [-l]

Description The Domain Configuration Server (DCS) is a daemon process that runs on Sun servers that support remote Dynamic Reconfiguration (DR) clients. It is started by the Service Management Facility (see [smf\(5\)](#)) when the first DR request is received from a client connecting to the network service `sun-dr`. After the DCS accepts a DR request, it uses the [libcfgadm\(3LIB\)](#) interface to execute the DR operation. After the operation is performed, the results are returned to the client.

The DCS listens on the network service labeled `sun-dr`. Its underlying protocol is TCP. It is invoked as a server program by the SMF using the TCP transport. The fault management resource identifier (FMRI) for DCS is:

```
svc:/platform/sun4u/dcs:default
```

If you disable this service, DR operations initiated from a remote host fail. There is no negative impact on the server.

Security for the DCS connection is provided differently based upon the architecture of the system. The SMF specifies the correct options when invoking the DCS daemon, based upon the current architecture. For all architectures, security is provided on a per-connection basis.

The DCS daemon has no security options that are applicable when used on a Sun Enterprise 10000 system. So there are no options applicable to that architecture.

The security options for Sun Fire high-end systems are based on IPsec options defined as SMF properties. These options include the `-a auth`, `-e encr`, and `-u esp_auth` options, and can be set using the [svccfg\(1M\)](#) command. These options must match the IPsec policies defined for DCS on the system controller. Refer to the `kmd(1M)` man page in the *System Management Services (SMS) Reference Manual*. The `kmd(1M)` man page is not part of the SunOS man page collection.

Security on SPARC Enterprise Servers is not configurable. The DCS daemon uses a platform-specific library to configure its security options when running on such systems. The `-l` option is provided by the SMF when invoking the DCS daemon on SPARC Enterprise Servers. No other security options to the DCS daemon should be used on SPARC Enterprise Servers.

Options The following options are supported:

- `-a auth` Controls the IPsec Authentication Header (AH) algorithm. *auth* can be one of `none`, `md5`, or `sha1`.
- `-e encr` Controls the IPsec Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) encryption algorithm. *encr* can be one of `none`, `des`, or `3des`.

- l Enables the use of platform-specific security options on SPARC Enterprise Servers.
- s *sessions* Sets the number of active sessions that the DCS allows at any one time. When the limit is reached, the DCS stops accepting connections until active sessions complete the execution of their DR operation. If this option is not specified, a default value of 128 is used.
- u *esp_auth* Controls the IPsec Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP) authentication algorithm. *esp_auth* can be one of none, md5, or sha1.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Setting an IPsec Option

The following command sets the Authentication Header algorithm for the DCS daemon to use the HMAC-MD5 authentication algorithm. These settings are only applicable for using the DCS daemon on a Sun Fire high-end system.

```
# svccfg -s svc:/platform/sun4u/dcs setprop dcs/ah_auth = "md5"
# svccfg -s svc:/platform/sun4u/dcs setprop dcs/esp_encr = "none"
# svccfg -s svc:/platform/sun4u/dcs setprop dcs/esp_auth = "none"
# svcadm refresh svc:/platform/sun4u/dcs
```

Errors The DCS uses [syslog\(3C\)](#) to report status and error messages. All of the messages are logged with the LOG_DAEMON facility. Error messages are logged with the LOG_ERR and LOG_NOTICE priorities, and informational messages are logged with the LOG_INFO priority. The default entries in the `/etc/syslog.conf` file log all of the DCS error messages to the `/var/adm/messages` log.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWdcsu, SUNWdcsr
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [cfgadm_sbd\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [syslog\(3C\)](#), [config_admin\(3CFGADM\)](#), [libcfgadm\(3LIB\)](#), [syslog.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [dr\(7d\)](#)

Notes The dcs service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the fault management resource identifier (FMRI):

```
svc:/platform/sun4u/dcs:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name dd – convert and copy a file

Synopsis /usr/bin/dd [*operand=value*]. . .

Description The dd utility copies the specified input file to the specified output with possible conversions. The standard input and output are used by default. The input and output block sizes may be specified to take advantage of raw physical I/O. Sizes are specified in bytes; a number may end with k, b, or w to specify multiplication by 1024, 512, or 2, respectively. Numbers may also be separated by x to indicate multiplication.

The dd utility reads the input one block at a time, using the specified input block size. dd then processes the block of data actually returned, which could be smaller than the requested block size. dd applies any conversions that have been specified and writes the resulting data to the output in blocks of the specified output block size.

cbs is used only if `ascii`, `asciib`, `unblock`, `ebcdic`, `ebcdicb`, `ibm`, `ibmb`, or `block` conversion is specified. In the first two cases, cbs characters are copied into the conversion buffer, any specified character mapping is done, trailing blanks are trimmed, and a `NEWLINE` is added before sending the line to output. In the last three cases, characters up to `NEWLINE` are read into the conversion buffer and blanks are added to make up an output record of size cbs. ASCII files are presumed to contain `NEWLINE` characters. If cbs is unspecified or 0, the `ascii`, `asciib`, `ebcdic`, `ebcdicb`, `ibm`, and `ibmb` options convert the character set without changing the input file's block structure. The `unblock` and `block` options become a simple file copy.

After completion, dd reports the number of whole and partial input and output blocks.

Operands The following operands are supported:

<code>if=file</code>	Specifies the input path. Standard input is the default.
<code>of=file</code>	Specifies the output path. Standard output is the default. If the <code>seek=expr</code> conversion is not also specified, the output file will be truncated before the copy begins, unless <code>conv=not runc</code> is specified. If <code>seek=expr</code> is specified, but <code>conv=not runc</code> is not, the effect of the copy will be to preserve the blocks in the output file over which dd seeks, but no other portion of the output file will be preserved. (If the size of the seek plus the size of the input file is less than the previous size of the output file, the output file is shortened by the copy.)
<code>ibs=n</code>	Specifies the input block size in <i>n</i> bytes (default is 512).
<code>obs=n</code>	Specifies the output block size in <i>n</i> bytes (default is 512).
<code>bs=n</code>	Sets both input and output block sizes to <i>n</i> bytes, superseding <code>ibs=</code> and <code>obs=</code> . If no conversion other than <code>sync</code> , <code>noerror</code> , and <code>not runc</code> is specified, each input block is copied to the output as a single block without aggregating short blocks.

<code>cbs=<i>n</i></code>	Specifies the conversion block size for <code>block</code> and <code>unblock</code> in bytes by <i>n</i> (default is 0). If <code>cbs=</code> is omitted or given a value of 0, using <code>block</code> or <code>unblock</code> produces unspecified results.
	This option is used only if ASCII or EBCDIC conversion is specified. For the <code>ascii</code> and <code>asciib</code> operands, the input is handled as described for the <code>unblock</code> operand except that characters are converted to ASCII before the trailing SPACE characters are deleted. For the <code>ebcdic</code> , <code>ebcdicb</code> , <code>ibm</code> , and <code>ibmb</code> operands, the input is handled as described for the <code>block</code> operand except that the characters are converted to EBCDIC or IBM EBCDIC after the trailing SPACE characters are added.
<code>files=<i>n</i></code>	Copies and concatenates <i>n</i> input files before terminating (makes sense only where input is a magnetic tape or similar device).
<code>skip=<i>n</i></code>	Skips <i>n</i> input blocks (using the specified input block size) before starting to copy. On seekable files, the implementation reads the blocks or seeks past them. On non-seekable files, the blocks are read and the data is discarded.
<code>iseek=<i>n</i></code>	Seeks <i>n</i> blocks from beginning of input file before copying (appropriate for disk files, where <code>skip</code> can be incredibly slow).
<code>oseek=<i>n</i></code>	Seeks <i>n</i> blocks from beginning of output file before copying.
<code>seek=<i>n</i></code>	Skips <i>n</i> blocks (using the specified output block size) from beginning of output file before copying. On non-seekable files, existing blocks are read and space from the current end-of-file to the specified offset, if any, is filled with null bytes. On seekable files, the implementation seeks to the specified offset or reads the blocks as described for non-seekable files.
<code>count=<i>n</i></code>	Copies only <i>n</i> input blocks.
<code>conv=<i>value</i>[, <i>value</i>...]</code>	Where <i>values</i> are comma-separated symbols from the following list:
<code>ascii</code>	Converts EBCDIC to ASCII.
<code>asciib</code>	Converts EBCDIC to ASCII using BSD-compatible character translations.
<code>ebcdic</code>	Converts ASCII to EBCDIC. If converting fixed-length ASCII records without NEWLINES, sets up a pipeline with <code>dd conv=unblock</code> beforehand.
<code>ebcdicb</code>	Converts ASCII to EBCDIC using BSD-compatible character translations. If converting fixed-length

ASCII records without NEWLINES, sets up a pipeline with `dd conv=unblock` beforehand.

`ibm` Slightly different map of ASCII to EBCDIC. If converting fixed-length ASCII records without NEWLINES, sets up a pipeline with `dd conv=unblock` beforehand.

`ibmb` Slightly different map of ASCII to EBCDIC using BSD-compatible character translations. If converting fixed-length ASCII records without NEWLINES, sets up a pipeline with `dd conv=unblock` beforehand.

The `ascii` (or `asciib`), `ebcdic` (or `ebcdicb`), and `ibm` (or `ibmb`) values are mutually exclusive.

`block` Treats the input as a sequence of NEWLINE-terminated or EOF-terminated variable-length records independent of the input block boundaries. Each record is converted to a record with a fixed length specified by the conversion block size. Any NEWLINE character is removed from the input line. SPACE characters are appended to lines that are shorter than their conversion block size to fill the block. Lines that are longer than the conversion block size are truncated to the largest number of characters that will fit into that size. The number of truncated lines is reported.

`unblock` Converts fixed-length records to variable length. Reads a number of bytes equal to the conversion block size (or the number of bytes remaining in the input, if less than the conversion block size), delete all trailing SPACE characters, and append a NEWLINE character.

The `block` and `unblock` values are mutually exclusive.

`lcase` Maps upper-case characters specified by the `LC_CTYPE` keyword `tolower` to the corresponding lower-case character. Characters for which no mapping is specified are not modified by this conversion.

`ucase` Maps lower-case characters specified by the `LC_CTYPE` keyword `toupper` to the corresponding upper-case character. Characters for which no mapping is specified are not modified by this conversion.

The `lcase` and `ucase` symbols are mutually exclusive.

<code>swab</code>	Swaps every pair of input bytes. If the current input record is an odd number of bytes, the last byte in the input record is ignored.
<code>noerror</code>	Does not stop processing on an input error. When an input error occurs, a diagnostic message is written on standard error, followed by the current input and output block counts in the same format as used at completion. If the <code>sync</code> conversion is specified, the missing input is replaced with null bytes and processed normally. Otherwise, the input block will be omitted from the output.
<code>notrunc</code>	Does not truncate the output file. Preserves blocks in the output file not explicitly written by this invocation of <code>dd</code> . (See also the preceding <code>of=file</code> operand.)
<code>sync</code>	Pads every input block to the size of the <code>ibs=</code> buffer, appending null bytes. (If either <code>block</code> or <code>unblock</code> is also specified, appends SPACE characters, rather than null bytes.)

If operands other than `conv=` are specified more than once, the last specified operand=*value* is used.

For the `bs=`, `cbs=`, `ibs=`, and `obs=` operands, the application must supply an expression specifying a size in bytes. The expression, `expr`, can be:

1. a positive decimal number
2. a positive decimal number followed by `k`, specifying multiplication by 1024
3. a positive decimal number followed by `b`, specifying multiplication by 512
4. two or more positive decimal numbers (with or without `k` or `b`) separated by `x`, specifying the product of the indicated values.

All of the operands will be processed before any input is read.

Usage See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of `dd` when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (2^{31} bytes).

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Copying from one tape drive to another

The following example copies from tape drive `0` to tape drive `1`, using a common historical device naming convention.

EXAMPLE 1 Copying from one tape drive to another *(Continued)*

```
example% dd if=/dev/rmt/0h of=/dev/rmt/1h
```

EXAMPLE 2 Stripping the first 10 bytes from standard input

The following example strips the first 10 bytes from standard input:

```
example% dd ibs=10 skip=1
```

EXAMPLE 3 Reading a tape into an ASCII file

This example reads an EBCDIC tape blocked ten 80-byte EBCDIC card images per block into the ASCII file x:

```
example% dd if=/dev/tape of=x ibs=800 cbs=80 conv=ascii,lc case
```

EXAMPLE 4 Using conv=sync to write to tape

The following example uses conv=sync when writing to a tape:

```
example% tar cvf - . | compress | dd obs=1024k of=/dev/rmt/0 conv=sync
```

Environment Variables See [environ\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following environment variables that affect the execution of dd: LANG, LC_ALL, LC_CTYPE, LC_MESSAGES, and NLS_PATH.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 The input file was copied successfully.
- >0 An error occurred.

If an input error is detected and the noerror conversion has not been specified, any partial output block will be written to the output file, a diagnostic message will be written, and the copy operation will be discontinued. If some other error is detected, a diagnostic message will be written and the copy operation will be discontinued.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Standard

See Also [cp\(1\)](#), [sed\(1\)](#), [tr\(1\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#), [standards\(5\)](#)

Diagnostics f+p records in(out) numbers of full and partial blocks read(written)

Notes Do not use `dd` to copy files between file systems having different block sizes.

Using a blocked device to copy a file will result in extra nulls being added to the file to pad the final block to the block boundary.

When `dd` reads from a pipe, using the `ibs=X` and `obs=Y` operands, the output will always be blocked in chunks of size `Y`. When `bs=Z` is used, the output blocks will be whatever was available to be read from the pipe at the time.

When using `dd` to copy files to a tape device, the file size must be a multiple of the device sector size (for example, 512 Kbyte). To copy files of arbitrary size to a tape device, use [tar\(1\)](#) or [cpio\(1\)](#).

For `SIGINT`, `dd` writes status information to standard error before exiting. It takes the standard action for all other signals.

Name devattr – display device attributes

Synopsis devattr [-v] *device* [*attribute*]...

Description devattr displays the values for a device's attributes. The display can be presented in two formats. Used without the -v option, only the attribute values are shown. Used with the -v option, the attributes are shown in an *attribute=value* format. When no attributes are given on the command line, all attributes for the specified device are displayed in alphabetical order by attribute name. If attributes are given on the command line, only those attributes are shown, displayed in command line order.

Options The following options are supported:

-v Specifies verbose format. Attribute values are displayed in an *attribute=value* format.

Operands The following operands are supported:

attribute Defines which attribute, or attributes, should be shown. Default is to show all attributes for a device. See the [putdev\(1M\)](#) manual page for a complete listing and description of available attributes.

device Defines the device whose attributes should be displayed. Can be the pathname of the device or the device alias.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 successful completion.
- 1 Command syntax was incorrect, invalid option was used, or an internal error occurred.
- 2 Device table could not be opened for reading.
- 3 Requested device could not be found in the device table.
- 4 Requested attribute was not defined for the specified device.

Files /etc/device.tab

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [getdev\(1M\)](#), [putdev\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name devfree – release devices from exclusive use

Synopsis devfree *key* [*device*]. . .

Description devfree releases devices from exclusive use. Exclusive use is requested with the command devreserv.

When devfree is invoked with only the *key* argument, it releases all devices that have been reserved for that *key*. When called with *key* and *device* arguments, devfree releases the specified devices that have been reserved with that *key*.

Operands The following operands are supported:

device Defines device that this command will release from exclusive use. *device* can be the pathname of the device or the device alias.

key Designates the unique key on which the device was reserved.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 Command syntax was incorrect, an invalid option was used, or an internal error occurred.
- 2 Device table or device reservation table could not be opened for reading.
- 3 Reservation release could not be completely fulfilled because one or more of the devices was not reserved or was not reserved on the specified key.

Files /etc/device.tab

/etc/devlkfile

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [devreserv\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes The commands devreserv and devfree are used to manage the availability of devices on a system. These commands do not place any constraints on the access to the device. They serve only as a centralized bookkeeping point for those who wish to use them. Processes that do not use devreserv may concurrently use a device with a process that has reserved that device.

Name devfsadm, devfsadmd – administration command for /dev

Synopsis /usr/sbin/devfsadm [-C] [-c *device_class*] [-i *driver_name*]
[-n] [-r *root_dir*] [-s] [-t *table_file*] [-u] [-v]

/usr/lib/devfsadm/devfsadmd

Description devfsadm maintains the /dev namespace. It replaces the previous suite of devfs administration tools including [drvconfig\(1M\)](#), [disks\(1M\)](#), [tapes\(1M\)](#), [ports\(1M\)](#), [audlinks\(1M\)](#), and [devlinks\(1M\)](#).

The default operation is to attempt to load every driver in the system and attach to all possible device instances. Next, devfsadm creates logical links to device nodes in /dev and /devices and loads the device policy.

[devfsadmd\(1M\)](#) is the daemon version of devfsadm(1M). The daemon is started during system startup and is responsible for handling both reconfiguration boot processing and updating /dev and /devices in response to dynamic reconfiguration event notifications from the kernel.

For compatibility purposes, [drvconfig\(1M\)](#), [disks\(1M\)](#), [tapes\(1M\)](#), [ports\(1M\)](#), [audlinks\(1M\)](#), and [devlinks\(1M\)](#) are implemented as links to devfsadm.

In addition to managing /dev, devfsadm also maintains the [path_to_inst\(4\)](#) database.

Options The following options are supported:

-C

Cleanup mode. Prompt devfsadm to cleanup dangling /dev links that are not normally removed. If the -c option is also used, devfsadm only cleans up for the listed devices' classes.

-c *device_class*

Restrict operations to devices of class *device_class*. Solaris defines the following values for *device_class*: disk, tape, port, audio, and pseudo. This option might be specified more than once to specify multiple device classes.

-i *driver_name*

Configure only the devices for the named driver, *driver_name*.

-n

Do not attempt to load drivers or add new nodes to the kernel device tree.

-s

Suppress any changes to /dev. This is useful with the -v option for debugging.

-t *table_file*

Read an alternate devlink.tab file. devfsadm normally reads /etc/devlink.tab.

- u
Activate and attach devices for drivers added with [add_drv\(1M\)](#) -u. Cannot be used together with -n or -r.
- r *root_dir*
Presume that the /dev directory trees are found under *root_dir*, not directly under root (/). No other use or assumptions are made about *root_dir*.
- v
Print changes to /dev in verbose mode.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0
Successful completion.
- 1
An error occurred.

Files

- /devices
device nodes directory
- /dev
logical symbolic links to /devices
- /usr/lib/devfsadm/devfsadmd
devfsadm daemon
- /dev/.devfsadm_dev.lock
update lock file
- /dev/.devfsadm_daemon.lock
daemon lock file
- /etc/security/device_policy
device policy file
- /etc/security/extra_privs
additional device privileges

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [add_drv\(1M\)](#), [modinfo\(1M\)](#), [modload\(1M\)](#), [modunload\(1M\)](#), [rem_drv\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [tapes\(1M\)](#), [path_to_inst\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [privileges\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [devfs\(7FS\)](#)

Notes This document does not constitute an API. The `/devices` directory might not exist or might have different contents or interpretations in a future release. The existence of this notice does not imply that any other documentation that lacks this notice constitutes an API.

`devfsadm` no longer manages the `/devices` name space. See [devfs\(7FS\)](#).

The device configuration service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier, and can be used to start `devfsadm` during reconfiguration boot by:

```
svc:/system/device/local:default
```

Otherwise, `devfsadm` is started by:

```
svc:/system/sysevent:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name device_remap – administer the Solaris I/O remapping feature

Synopsis /usr/platform/sun4v/sbin/device_remap [-v | -R *dir*]

Description Certain multi-node sun4v platforms, such as T5440 and T5240 servers, have an integrated PCI topology that cause the I/O device paths to change in a CPU node failover condition. The device remapping script, `device_remap`, remaps the device paths in `/etc/path_to_inst` file and the symlinks under `/dev` to match the hardware.

Options The following options are supported:

-v

Displays the `/etc/path_to_inst` and `/dev` symlink changes.

-R *dir*

Perform remapping on the `/etc/path_to_inst` and `/etc/path_to_inst` files in the root image at *dir*.

Usage The primary function of `device_remap` is to remap the device paths in the `/etc/path_to_inst` file and the symlinks under `/dev` in a CPU node failover condition to match the hardware.

After adding CPU node(s) or removing CPU node(s), boot the system to the OBP prompt and use the following procedure:

1. Boot either the failsafe miniroot using: `boot -F failsafe`, or an install miniroot using `boot net -s` or similar command.
2. Mount the root disk as `/mnt`.
3. Change directory to the mounted root disk:

```
# cd /mnt
```

4. Run `device_remap` script:

```
# /mnt/usr/platform/sun4v/sbin/device_remap
```

5. Boot the system from disk.

All the error messages are self-explanatory, except for the error message “missing ioaliases node” which means the firmware on the system does not support device remapping.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Displaying Changes Following Failover

The following command displays the `path_to_inst` and `/dev` changes following a CPU node failover.

```
# device_remap -v
```

EXAMPLE 2 Changing Directory Prior to Any Changes

The following command changes the directory on which the boot image is mounted prior to making any changes.

```
# device_remap -R /newroot
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWkvm.v
Interface Stability	Unstable

See Also [boot\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name devinfo – print device specific information

Synopsis /usr/sbin/devinfo -i *device*

/usr/sbin/devinfo -p *device*

Description The devinfo command is used to print device specific information about disk devices on standard out. The command can only be used by the superuser.

- Options**
- i Prints the following device information:
 - Device name
 - Software version (not supported and prints as 0)
 - Drive id number (not supported and prints as 0)
 - Device blocks per cylinder
 - Device bytes per block
 - Number of device partitions with a block size greater than zero
 - p Prints the following device partition information:
 - Device name
 - Device major and minor numbers (in hexadecimal)
 - Partition start block
 - Number of blocks allocated to the partition
 - Partition flag
 - Partition tag

This command is used by various other commands to obtain device specific information for the making of file systems and determining partition information. If the device cannot be opened, an error message is reported.

Operands *device* Device name.

Exit Status 0 Successful operation.

2 Operation failed.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [prtvtoc\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name devlinks – adds /dev entries for miscellaneous devices and pseudo-devices

Synopsis /usr/sbin/devlinks [-d] [-r *rootdir*] [-t *table-file*]

Description [devfsadm\(1M\)](#) is now the preferred command for /dev and /devices and should be used instead of devlinks.

devlinks creates symbolic links from the /dev directory tree to the actual block- and character-special device nodes under the /devices directory tree. The links are created according to specifications found in the *table-file* (by default /etc/devlink.tab).

devlinks is called each time the system is reconfiguration-booted, and can only be run after [drvconfig\(1M\)](#) is run.

The *table-file* (normally /etc/devlink.tab) is an ASCII file, with one line per record. Comment lines, which must contain a hash character ('#') as their first character, are allowed. Each entry must contain at least two fields, but may contain three fields. Fields are separated by single TAB characters.

The fields are:

devfs-spec Specification of devinfo nodes that will have links created for them. This specification consists of one or more keyword-value pairs, where the keyword is separated from the value by an equal-sign ('='), and keyword-value pairs are separated from one another by semicolons.

The possible keywords are:

<i>type</i>	The devinfo device type. Possible values are specified in ddi_create_minor_node(9F)
<i>name</i>	The name of the node. This is the portion of the /devices tree entry name that occurs before the first '@' or ':' character.
<i>addr[n]</i>	The address portion of a node name. This is the portion of a node name that occurs between the '@' and the ':' characters. It is possible that a node may have a name without an address part, which is the case for many of the pseudo-device nodes. If a number is given after the <i>addr</i> it specifies a match of a particular comma-separated subfield of the address field: <i>addr1</i> matches the first subfield, <i>addr2</i> matches the second, and so on. <i>addr0</i> is the same as <i>addr</i> and matches the whole field.
<i>minor[n]</i>	The minor portion of a node name – the portion of the name after the ':'. As with <i>addr</i> above, a number after the <i>minor</i> keyword specifies a subfield to match.

Of these four specifications, only the *type* specification must always be present.

name Specification of the `/dev` links that correspond to the devinfo nodes. This field allows `devlinks` to determine matching `/dev` names for the `/devices` nodes it has found. The specification of this field uses escape-sequences to allow portions of the `/devices` name to be included in the `/dev` name, or to allow a counter to be used in creating node names. If a counter is used to create a name, the portion of the name before the counter must be specified absolutely, and all names in the `/dev/-` subdirectory that match (up to and including the counter) are considered to be subdevices of the same device. This means that they should all point to the same directory, name and address under the `/devices/-tree`

The possible escape-sequences are:

- `\D` Substitute the `device-name` (name) portion of the corresponding devinfo node-name.
- `\An` Substitute the *n*th component of the `address` component of the corresponding devinfo node name. Sub-components are separated by commas, and sub-component 0 is the whole `address` component.
- `\Mn` Substitute the *n*th sub-component of the `minor` component of the corresponding devinfo node name. Sub-components are separated by commas, and sub-component 0 is the whole `minor` component.
- `\Nn` Substitute the value of a 'counter' starting at *n*. There can be only one counter for each dev-spec, and counter-values will be selected so they are as low as possible while not colliding with already-existing link names.

In a dev-spec the `counter` sequence should not be followed by a digit, either explicitly or as a result of another escape-sequence expansion. If this occurs, it would not be possible to correctly match already-existing links to their counter entries, since it would not be possible to unambiguously parse the already-existing `/dev-name`.

extra-dev-link Optional specification of an extra `/dev` link that points to the initial `/dev` link (specified in field 2). This field may contain a `counter` escape-sequence (as described for the *dev-spec* field) but may not contain any of the other escape-sequences. It provides a way to specify an alias of a particular `/dev` name.

Options The following options are supported:

- d Debugging mode – print out all devinfo nodes found, and indicate what links would be created, but do not do anything.
- r *rootdir* Use *rootdir* as the root of the /dev and /devices directories under which the device nodes and links are created. Changing the root directory does not change the location of the /etc/devlink.tab default table, nor is the root directory applied to the filename supplied to the -t option.
- t *table-file* Set the table file used by devlinks to specify the links that must be created. If this option is not given, /etc/devlink.tab is used. This option gives a way to instruct devlinks just to perform a particular piece of work, since just the links-types that devlinks is supposed to create can be specified in a command-file and fed to devlinks.

Errors If devlinks finds an error in a line of the *table-file* it prints a warning message on its standard output and goes on to the next line in the *table-file* without performing any of the actions specified by the erroneous rule.

If it cannot create a link for some filesystem-related reason it prints an error-message and continues with the current rule.

If it cannot read necessary data it prints an error message and continues with the next *table-file* line.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Using the /etc/devlink.tab Fields

The following are examples of the /etc/devlink.tab fields:

```
type=pseudo;name=win    win\M0
type=ddi_display    framebuffer/\M0    fb\N0
```

The first example states that all devinfo nodes of type pseudo with a name component of win will be linked to /dev/win*x*, where *x* is the minor-component of the *devinfo-name* (this is always a single-digit number for the win driver).

The second example states that all devinfo nodes of type ddi_display will be linked to entries under the /dev/framebuffer directory, with names identical to the entire minor component of the /devices name. In addition an extra link will be created pointing from /dev/*fbn* to the entry under /dev/framebuffer. This entry will use a counter to end the name.

Files	/dev	entries for the miscellaneous devices for general use
	/devices	device nodes
	/etc/devlink.tab	the default rule-file

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [devfsadm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [devfs\(7FS\)](#), [ddi_create_minor_node\(9F\)](#)

Bugs It is very easy to construct mutually-contradictory link specifications, or specifications that can never be matched. The program does not check for these conditions.

Name devnm – device name

Synopsis /usr/sbin/devnm *name* [*name*]...

Description The devnm command identifies the special file associated with the mounted file system where the argument *name* resides. One or more *name* can be specified.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Using the devnm Command

Assuming that /usr is mounted on /dev/dsk/c0t3d0s6, the following command :

```
/usr/sbin/devnm /usr
```

produces:

```
/dev/dsk/c0t3d0s6 /usr
```

Files /dev/dsk/*

/etc/mnttab

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [mnttab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name devprop – display device properties

Synopsis /sbin/devprop [-n *device-path*] [-vq] [-{b|i|l|s}] [*property*[...]]

Description The devprop command displays named device properties from the device tree.

If a device path is specified on the command line, devprop displays device properties for that device node.

The output formats, while Volatile, are patterned after those of [prtconf\(1M\)](#).

Options The following options are supported:

-b

The properties to be output are sequences of bytes (DI_PROP_TYPE_BYTES). -b, -i, -l, and -s are mutually exclusive of one another.

-i

The properties to be output are integers (DI_PROP_TYPE_INT).

-l

The properties to be output are 64-bit integers (DI_PROP_TYPE_INT64).

-s

The properties to be output are strings (DI_PROP_TYPE_STRING) (the default).

-n *device-path*

The path to a target device node for which properties are displayed. The default path is that of the root node (equivalent to specifying -n /).

-q

Specifies quoted output mode, in which string properties are output surrounded by double quotation marks (").

-v

Specifies verbose mode, in which the name of the property is output before its value.

Operands The following operand is supported:

property...

Name of the property to be displayed.

Exit Status 0

No error occurred.

non-zero

An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsr
Interface Stability	See below.

The command invocation and output are both Volatile. The location of the utility is Committed.

See Also [prtconf\(1M\)](#), [libdevinfo\(3LIB\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name devreserv – reserve devices for exclusive use

Synopsis devreserv [*key* [*device-list*] ...]

Description devreserv reserves devices for exclusive use. When the device is no longer required, use `devf ree` to release it.

devreserv reserves at most one device per *device-list*. Each list is searched in linear order until the first available device is found. If a device cannot be reserved from each list, the entire reservation fails.

When devreserv is invoked without arguments, it lists the devices that are currently reserved and shows to which key it was reserved. When devreserv is invoked with only the *key* argument, it lists the devices that are currently reserved to that key.

Operands The following operands are supported:

device-list Defines a list of devices that devreserv will search to find an available device. The list must be formatted as a single argument to the shell.

key Designates a unique key on which the device will be reserved. The key must be a positive integer.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Reserving a Floppy Disk and a Cartridge Tape

The following example reserves a floppy disk and a cartridge tape:

```
$ key=$$
$ echo "The current Process ID is equal to: $key"
  The Current Process ID is equal to: 10658
$ devreserv $key diskette1 ctape1
```

EXAMPLE 2 Listing All Devices Currently Reserved

The following example lists all devices currently reserved:

```
$ devreserv
  disk1      2423
  diskette1  10658
  ctape1     10658
```

EXAMPLE 3 Listing All Devices Currently Reserved to a Particular Key

The following example lists all devices currently reserved to a particular key:

```
$ devreserv $key
  diskette1
  ctape1
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 Command syntax was incorrect, an invalid was option used, or an internal error occurred.
- 2 Device table or device reservation table could not be opened for reading.
- 3 Device reservation request could not be fulfilled.

Files /etc/device.tab
/etc/devlkfile

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [devfree\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes The commands `devreserv` and `devfree` are used to manage the availability of devices on a system. Their use is on a participatory basis and they do not place any constraints on the actual access to the device. They serve as a centralized bookkeeping point for those who wish to use them. Devices which have been reserved cannot be used by processes which utilize the device reservation functions until the reservation has been canceled. However, processes that do not use device reservation may use a device that has been reserved since such a process would not have checked for its reservation status.

Name df – displays number of free disk blocks and free files

Synopsis /usr/bin/df [-F *FSType*] [-abeghklntVvZ]
 [-o *FSType-specific_options*]
 [*block_device* | *directory* | *file* | *resource* ...]
 /usr/xpg4/bin/df [-F *FSType*] [-abeghklntVvZ]
 [-o *FSType-specific_options*]
 [*block_device* | *directory* | *file* | *resource* ...]

Description The df utility displays the amount of disk space occupied by mounted or unmounted file systems, the amount of used and available space, and how much of the file system's total capacity has been used. The file system is specified by device, or by referring to a file or directory on the specified file system.

Used without operands or options, df reports on all mounted file systems.

df may not be supported for all *FSTypes*.

If df is run on a networked mount point that the automounter has not yet mounted, the file system size will be reported as zero. As soon as the automounter mounts the file system, the sizes will be reported correctly.

Options The following options are supported for both /usr/bin/df and /usr/xpg4/bin/df:

- a
Reports on all file systems including ones whose entries in /etc/mnttab (see [mnttab\(4\)](#)) have the ignore option set.
- b
Prints the total number of kilobytes free.
- e
Prints only the number of files free.
- F *FSType*
Specifies the *FSType* on which to operate. The -F option is intended for use with unmounted file systems. The *FSType* should be specified here or be determinable from /etc/vfstab (see [vfstab\(4\)](#)) by matching the *directory*, *block_device*, or *resource* with an entry in the table, or by consulting /etc/default/fs. See [default_fs\(4\)](#).
- g
Prints the entire [statvfs\(2\)](#) structure. This option is used only for mounted file systems. It can not be used with the -o option. This option overrides the -b, -e, -k, -n, -P, and -t options.
- h
Like -k, except that sizes are in a more human readable format. The output consists of one line of information for each specified file system. This information includes the file system name, the total space allocated in the file system, the amount of space allocated to existing

files, the total amount of space available for the creation of new files by unprivileged users, and the percentage of normally available space that is currently allocated to all files on the file system. All sizes are scaled to a human readable format, for example, 14K, 234M, 2.7G, or 3.0T. Scaling is done by repetitively dividing by 1024.

This option overrides the `-b`, `-e`, `-g`, `-k`, `-n`, `-t`, and `-V` options. This option only works on mounted filesystems and can not be used together with `-o` option.

`-k`

Prints the allocation in kbytes. The output consists of one line of information for each specified file system. This information includes the file system name, the total space allocated in the file system, the amount of space allocated to existing files, the total amount of space available for the creation of new files by unprivileged users, and the percentage of normally available space that is currently allocated to all files on the file system. This option overrides the `-b`, `-e`, `-n`, and `-t` options.

`-l`

Reports on local file systems only. This option is used only for mounted file systems. It can not be used with the `-o` option.

`-n`

Prints only the *FSType* name. Invoked with no operands, this option prints a list of mounted file system types. This option is used only for mounted file systems. It can not be used with the `-o` option.

`-o FSType-specific_options`

Specifies *FSType-specific* options. These options are comma-separated, with no intervening spaces. See the manual page for the *FSType-specific* command for details.

`-t`

Prints full listings with totals. This option overrides the `-b`, `-e`, and `-n` options.

`-V`

Echoes the complete set of file system specific command lines, but does not execute them. The command line is generated by using the options and operands provided by the user and adding to them information derived from `/etc/mnttab`, `/etc/vfstab`, or `/etc/default/fs`. This option may be used to verify and validate the command line.

`-Z`

Displays mounts in all visible zones. By default, `df` only displays mounts located within the current zone. This option has no effect in a non-global zone.

`/usr/bin/df` The following option is supported for `/usr/bin/df` only:

`-v`

Like `-k`, except that sizes are displayed in multiples of the smallest block size supported by each specified file system.

The output consists of one line of information for each file system. This one line of information includes the following:

- the file system's mount point
- the file system's name
- the total number of blocks allocated to the file system
- the number of blocks allocated to existing files
- the number of blocks available for the creation of new files by unprivileged users
- the percentage of blocks in use by files

`/usr/xpg4/bin/df` The following option is supported for `/usr/xpg4/bin/df` only:

- P
Same as `-h` except in 512-byte units.

Operands The `df` utility interprets operands according to the following precedence: *block_device*, *directory*, *file*, *resource*. The following operands are supported:

block_device

Represents a block special device (for example, `/dev/dsk/c1d0s7`).

directory

Represents a valid directory name. `df` reports on the file system that contains *directory*.

file

Represents a valid file name. `df` reports on the file system that contains *file*.

resource

Represents an NFS resource name.

Usage See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of `df` when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (2^{31} bytes).

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Executing the `df` command

The following example shows the `df` command and its output:

```
example% /usr/bin/df

/                (/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s0 ): 287530 blocks   92028 files
/system/contract (ctfs                ):      0 blocks 2147483572 files
/system/object   (objfs                ):      0 blocks 2147483511 files
/usr             (/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s6 ): 1020214 blocks 268550 files
/proc           (/proc                 ):      0 blocks    878 files
/dev/fd         (fd                    ):      0 blocks     0 files
/etc/mnttab     (mnttab                ):      0 blocks     0 files
/var/run        (swap                  ): 396016 blocks  9375 files
/tmp            (swap                  ): 396016 blocks  9375 files
```

EXAMPLE 1 Executing the df command (Continued)

```

/opt                (/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s5 ): 381552 blocks   96649 files
/export/home       (/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s7 ): 434364 blocks   108220 files

```

where the columns represent the mount point, device (or “filesystem”, according to `df -k`), free blocks, and free files, respectively. For contract file systems, `/system/contract` is the mount point, `ctfs` is the contract file system (used by SMF) with 0 free blocks and 2147483582 (INTMAX-1) free files. For object file systems, `/system/object` is the mount point, `objfs` is the object file system (see [objfs\(7FS\)](#)) with 0 free blocks and 2147483511 free files.

EXAMPLE 2 Writing Portable Information About the /usr File System

The following example writes portable information about the `/usr` file system:

```
example% /usr/xpg4/bin/df -P /usr
```

EXAMPLE 3 Writing Portable Information About the /usr/src file System

Assuming that `/usr/src` is part of the `/usr` file system, the following example writes portable information :

```
example% /usr/xpg4/bin/df -P /usr/src
```

EXAMPLE 4 Using df to Display Inode Usage

The following example displays inode usage on all `ufs` file systems:

```
example%/usr/bin/df -F ufs -o i
```

Environment Variables**SYSV3**

This variable is used to override the default behavior of `df` and provide compatibility with INTERACTIVE UNIX System and SCO UNIX installation scripts. As the `SYSV3` variable is provided for compatibility purposes only, it should not be used in new scripts.

When set, any header which normally displays “files” will now display “nodes”. See [environ\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following environment variables that affect the execution of `df`: `LANG`, `LC_ALL`, `LC_CTYPE`, `LC_MESSAGES`, and `NLSPATH`.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0
Successful completion.
- >0
An error occurred.

Files /dev/dsk/*

Disk devices

/etc/default/fs

Default local file system type. Default values can be set for the following flags in /etc/default/fs. For example: LOCAL=ufs, where LOCAL is the default partition for a command if no FSType is specified.

/etc/mnttab

Mount table

/etc/vfstab

List of default parameters for each file system

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

/usr/bin/df

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

/usr/xpg4/bin/df

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWxcu4
Interface Stability	Standard

See Also [find\(1\)](#), [df_ufs\(1M\)](#), [mount\(1M\)](#), [statvfs\(2\)](#), [default_fs\(4\)](#), [mnttab\(4\)](#), [vfstab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#), [standards\(5\)](#), [objfs\(7FS\)](#)

Notes If UFS logging is enabled on a file system, the disk space used for the log is reflected in the df report. The log is allocated from free blocks on the file system, and it is sized approximately 1 Mbyte per 1 Gbyte of file system, up to 256 Mbytes. The log size may be larger (up to a maximum of 512 Mbytes) depending on the number of cylinder groups present in the file system.

Name dfmounts – display mounted resource information

Synopsis dfmounts [-F *FSType*] [-h] [-o *specific_options*]
[*restriction*] . . .

Description dfmounts shows the local resources shared through a distributed file system *FSType* along with a list of clients that have the resource mounted. If *restriction* is not specified, dfmounts shows file systems that are currently shared on any NFS server. *specific_options* as well as the availability and semantics of *restriction* are specific to particular distributed file system types.

If dfmounts is entered without arguments, remote resources currently mounted on the local system are displayed, regardless of file system type. However, the dfmounts command does not display the names of NFS Version 4 clients.

dfmounts Output The output of dfmounts consists of an optional header line (suppressed with the -h flag) followed by a list of lines containing whitespace-separated fields. For each resource, the fields are:

resource server pathname clients ...

where:

resource Specifies the resource name that must be given to the [mount\(1M\)](#) command.

server Specifies the system from which the resource was mounted.

pathname Specifies the pathname that must be given to the [share\(1M\)](#) command.

clients Is a comma-separated list of systems that have mounted the resource. Clients are listed in the form *domain.*, *domain.system*, or *system*, depending on the file system type.

A field can be null. Each null field is indicated by a hyphen (-) unless the remainder of the fields on the line are also null, in which case the hyphen can be omitted.

Fields with whitespace are enclosed in quotation marks (" ").

Options

- F *FSType* Specify filesystem type. Defaults to the first entry in */etc/dfs/fstypes*. Note: currently the only valid *FSType* is *nfs*.
- h Suppress header line in output.
- o *specific_options* Specify options specific to the filesystem provided by the -F option. Note: currently no options are supported.

Files */etc/dfs/fstypes* file system types

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [dfshares\(1M\)](#), [mount\(1M\)](#), [share\(1M\)](#), [unshare\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name dfmounts_nfs – display mounted NFS resource information

Synopsis dfmounts [-F nfs] [-h] [server]...

Description dfmounts shows the local resources shared through NFS, along with the list of clients that have mounted the resource. The -F flag may be omitted if NFS is the only file system type listed in the file /etc/dfs/fstypes.

dfmounts without options, displays all remote resources mounted on the local system, regardless of file system type.

The output of dfmounts consists of an optional header line (suppressed with the -h flag) followed by a list of lines containing whitespace-separated fields. For each resource, the fields are:

resource server pathname clients ...

where

resource Does not apply to NFS. Printed as a hyphen (-).

server Specifies the system from which the resource was mounted.

pathname Specifies the pathname that must be given to the [share\(1M\)](#) command.

clients Is a comma-separated list of systems that have mounted the resource.

Options -F nfs Specifies the nfs-FSType.

-h Suppress header line in output.

server Displays information about the resources mounted from each server, where *server* can be any system on the network. If no server is specified, the *server* is assumed to be the local system.

Files /etc/dfs/fstypes

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWnfscu

See Also [mount\(1M\)](#), [share\(1M\)](#), [unshare\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name dfshares – list available resources from remote or local systems

Synopsis dfshares [-F *FSType*] [-h] [-o *specific_options*] [*server*]. . .

Description dfshares provides information about resources available to the host through a distributed file system of type *FSType*. *specific_options* as well as the semantics of *server* are specific to particular distributed file systems.

If dfshares is entered without arguments, all resources currently shared on the local system are displayed, regardless of file system type.

The output of dfshares consists of an optional header line (suppressed with the -h flag) followed by a list of lines containing whitespace-separated fields. For each resource, the fields are:

resource server access transport

where

resource Specifies the resource name that must be given to the [mount\(1M\)](#) command.

server Specifies the name of the system that is making the resource available.

access Specifies the access permissions granted to the client systems, either ro (for read-only) or rw (for read/write). If dfshares cannot determine access permissions, a hyphen (-) is displayed.

transport Specifies the transport provider over which the resource is shared.

A field may be null. Each null field is indicated by a hyphen (-) unless the remainder of the fields on the line are also null; in which case, the hyphen may be omitted.

Options

- F *FSType* Specify filesystem type. Defaults to the first entry in */etc/dfs/fstypes*.
- h Suppress header line in output.
- o *specific_options* Specify options specific to the filesystem provided by the -F option.

Files */etc/dfs/fstypes*

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [dfmounts\(1M\)](#), [mount\(1M\)](#), [share\(1M\)](#), [unshare\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name dfshares_nfs – list available NFS resources from remote systems

Synopsis dfshares [-F nfs] [-h] [server]...

Description dfshares provides information about resources available to the host through NFS. The -F flag may be omitted if NFS is the first file system type listed in the file /etc/dfs/fstypes.

The query may be restricted to the output of resources available from one or more servers.

dfshares without arguments displays all resources shared on the local system, regardless of file system type.

Specifying *server* displays information about the resources shared by each server. *Server* can be any system on the network. If no server is specified, then *server* is assumed to be the local system.

The output of dfshares consists of an optional header line (suppressed with the -h flag) followed by a list of lines containing whitespace-separated fields. For each resource, the fields are:

resource server access transport

where

resource Specifies the resource name that must be given to the [mount\(1M\)](#) command.

server Specifies the system that is making the resource available.

access Specifies the access permissions granted to the client systems; however, dfshares cannot determine this information for an NFS resource and populates the field with a hyphen (-).

transport Specifies the transport provider over which the *resource* is shared; however, dfshares cannot determine this information for an NFS resource and populates the field with a hyphen (-).

A field may be null. Each null field is indicated by a hyphen (-) unless the remainder of the fields on the line are also null; in which case, the hyphen may be omitted.

Options -F nfs Specify the NFS file system type

-h Suppress header line in output.

Files /etc/dfs/fstypes

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWnfscu

See Also [mount\(1M\)](#), [share\(1M\)](#), [unshare\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name df_ufs – report free disk space on ufs file systems

Synopsis df -F ufs [*generic_options*] [-o *i*] [*directory* | *special*]

Description df displays the amount of disk space occupied by ufs file systems, the amount of used and available space, and how much of the file system's total capacity has been used. The amount of space reported as used and available is less than the amount of space in the file system; this is because the system reserves a fraction of the space in the file system to allow its file system allocation routines to work well. The amount reserved is typically about 10%; this can be adjusted using [tunefs\(1M\)](#). When all the space on the file system except for this reserve is in use, only the superuser can allocate new files and data blocks to existing files. When the file system is overallocated in this way, df might report that the file system is more than 100% utilized. If neither *directory* nor *special* is specified, df displays information for all mounted ufs file systems.

Options The following options are supported:

generic_options Options supported by the generic df command. See [df\(1M\)](#) for a description of these options.

-o Specify ufs file system specific options. The available option is:

i Report the number of used and free inodes. This option can not be used with *generic_options*.

Files /etc/mnttab list of file systems currently mounted

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu, SUNWxcu4

See Also [df\(1M\)](#), [fsck\(1M\)](#), [fstyp\(1M\)](#), [tunefs\(1M\)](#), [mnttab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [ufs\(7FS\)](#),

Notes df calculates its results differently for mounted and unmounted file systems. For unmounted systems, the numbers reflect the 10% reservation. This reservation is not reflected in df output for mounted file systems. For this reason, the available space reported by the generic command can differ from the available space reported by this module.

df might report remaining capacity even though syslog warns `filesystem full`. This issue can occur because df only uses the available fragment count to calculate available space, but the file system requires contiguous sets of fragments for most allocations.

If you suspect that you have exhausted contiguous fragments on your file system, you can use the [fstyp\(1M\)](#) utility with the -v option. In the `fstyp` output, look at the `nbfree` (number of blocks free) and `nffree` (number of fragments free) fields. On unmounted filesystems, you can use [fsck\(1M\)](#) and observe the last line of output, which reports, among other items, the number of fragments and the degree of fragmentation. See [fsck\(1M\)](#).

Name dhcpageant – Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) client daemon

Synopsis dhcpageant [-a] [-d *n*] [-f] [-v]

Description dhcpageant implements the client half of the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) for machines running Solaris software.

The dhcpageant daemon obtains configuration parameters for the client (local) machine's network interfaces from a DHCP server. These parameters may include a lease on an IP address, which gives the client machine use of the address for the period of the lease, which may be infinite. If the client wishes to use the IP address for a period longer than the lease, it must negotiate an extension using DHCP. For this reason, dhcpageant must run as a daemon, terminating only when the client machine powers down.

For IPv4, the dhcpageant daemon is controlled through [ifconfig\(1M\)](#) in much the same way that the [init\(1M\)](#) daemon is controlled by [telinit\(1M\)](#). dhcpageant can be invoked as a user process, albeit one requiring root privileges, but this is not necessary, as [ifconfig\(1M\)](#) will start it automatically.

For IPv6, the dhcpageant daemon is invoked automatically by [in.ndpd\(1M\)](#). It can also be controlled through [ifconfig\(1M\)](#), if necessary.

When invoked, dhcpageant enters a passive state while it awaits instructions from [ifconfig\(1M\)](#) or [in.ndpd\(1M\)](#). When it receives a command to configure an interface, it brings up the interface (if necessary) and starts DHCP. Once DHCP is complete, dhcpageant can be queried for the values of the various network parameters. In addition, if DHCP was used to obtain a lease on an address for an interface, it configures the address for use. When a lease is obtained, it is automatically renewed as necessary. If the lease cannot be renewed, dhcpageant will unconfigure the address, but the interface will be left up and dhcpageant will attempt to acquire a new address lease. dhcpageant monitors system suspend/resume events and will validate any non-permanent leases with the DHCP server upon resume. Similarly, dhcpageant monitors link up/down events and will validate any non-permanent leases with the DHCP server when the downed link is brought back up. The lease validation mechanism will restart DHCP if the server indicates that the existing lease is no longer valid. If the server cannot be contacted, then the existing lease will continue. This behavior can be modified with the VERIFIED_LEASE_ONLY parameter in the `/etc/default/dhcpageant` file. See the description of this parameter below.

For IPv4, if the configured interface is found to be unplumbed, or to have a different IP address, subnet mask, or broadcast address from those obtained from DHCP, the interface is abandoned from DHCP control.

For IPv6, dhcpageant automatically plumbs and unplumbs logical interfaces as necessary for the IPv6 addresses supplied by the server. The IPv6 prefix length (netmask) is not set by the DHCPv6 protocol, but is instead set by [in.ndpd\(1M\)](#) using prefix information obtained by Router Advertisements. If any of the logical interfaces created by dhcpageant is unplumbed, or

configured with a different IP address, it will be abandoned from DHCP control. If the link-local interface is unplumbed, then all addresses configured by DHCP on that physical interface will be removed.

In addition to DHCP, `dhcpage` also supports BOOTP (IPv4 only). See *RFC 951, Bootstrap Protocol*. Configuration parameters obtained from a BOOTP server are treated identically to those received from a DHCP server, except that the IP address received from a BOOTP server always has an infinite lease.

DHCP also acts as a mechanism to configure other information needed by the client, for example, the domain name and addresses of routers. Aside from the IP address, and for IPv4 alone, the netmask, broadcast address, and default router, the agent does not directly configure the workstation, but instead acts as a database which may be interrogated by other programs, and in particular by `dhcpage(1)`.

On clients with a single interface, this is quite straightforward. Clients with multiple interfaces may present difficulties, as it is possible that some information arriving on different interfaces may need to be merged, or may be inconsistent. Furthermore, the configuration of the interfaces is asynchronous, so requests may arrive while some or all of the interfaces are still unconfigured. To handle these cases, one interface may be designated as primary, which makes it the authoritative source for the values of DHCP parameters in the case where no specific interface is requested. See `dhcpage(1)` and `ifconfig(1M)` for details.

For IPv4, the `dhcpage` daemon can be configured to request a particular host name. See the `REQUEST_HOSTNAME` description in the FILES section. When first configuring a client to request a host name, you must perform the following steps as root to ensure that the full DHCP negotiation takes place:

```
# kill dhcpage
# rm /etc/dhcp/interface.dhc
# reboot
```

All DHCP packets sent by `dhcpage` include a vendor class identifier (RFC 2132, option code 60; RFC 3315, option code 16). This identifier is the same as the platform name returned by the `uname -i` command, except:

- Any commas in the platform name are changed to periods.
- If the name does not start with a stock symbol and a comma, it is automatically prefixed with `SUNW`.

Messages The `dhcpage` daemon writes information and error messages in five categories:

critical

Critical messages indicate severe conditions that prevent proper operation.

errors

Error messages are important, sometimes unrecoverable events due to resource exhaustion and other unexpected failure of system calls; ignoring errors may lead to degraded functionality.

warnings

Warnings indicate less severe problems, and in most cases, describe unusual or incorrect datagrams received from servers, or requests for service that cannot be provided.

informational

Informational messages provide key pieces of information that can be useful to debugging a DHCP configuration at a site. Informational messages are generally controlled by the `-v` option. However, certain critical pieces of information, such as the IP address obtained, are always provided.

debug

Debugging messages, which may be generated at two different levels of verbosity, are chiefly of benefit to persons having access to source code, but may be useful as well in debugging difficult DHCP configuration problems. Debugging messages are only generated when using the `-d` option.

When `dhcpagent` is run without the `-f` option, all messages are sent to the system logger `syslog(3C)` at the appropriate matching priority and with a facility identifier `LOG_DAEMON`. When `dhcpagent` is run with the `-f` option, all messages are directed to standard error.

DHCP Events and User-Defined Actions

If an executable (binary or script) is placed at `/etc/dhcp/eventhook`, the `dhcpagent` daemon will automatically run that program when any of the following events occur:

BOUND and BOUND6

These events occur during interface configuration. The event program is invoked when `dhcpagent` receives the DHCPv4 ACK or DHCPv6 Reply message from the DHCP server for the lease request of an address, indicating successful initial configuration of the interface. (See also the `INFORM` and `INFORM6` events, which occur when configuration parameters are obtained without address leases.)

EXTEND and EXTEND6

These events occur during lease extension. The event program is invoked just after `dhcpagent` receives the DHCPv4 ACK or DHCPv6 Reply from the DHCP server for the DHCPv4 REQUEST (renew) message or the DHCPv6 Renew or Rebind message.

Note that with DHCPv6, the server might choose to remove some addresses, add new address leases, and ignore (allow to expire) still other addresses in a given Reply message. The `EXTEND6` event occurs when a Reply is received that leaves one or more address leases still valid, even if the Reply message does not extend the lease for any address. The event program is invoked just before any addresses are removed, but just after any new addresses are added. Those to be removed will be marked with the `IFF_DEPRECATED` flag.

EXPIRE and EXPIRE6

These events occur during lease expiration. For DHCPv4, the event program is invoked just before the leased address is removed from an interface. For DHCPv6, the event program is invoked just before the last remaining leased addresses are removed from the interface.

DROP and DROP6

These events occur during the period when an interface is dropped. The event program is invoked just before the interface is removed from DHCP control. If the interface has been abandoned due to the user unplugging the interface, then this event will occur after the user's action has taken place. The interface might not be present.

INFORM and INFORM6

These events occur when an interface acquires new or updated configuration information from a DHCP server by means of the DHCPv4 `INFORM` or the DHCPv6 Information-Request message. These messages are sent using an `ifconfig(1M) dhcp inform` command or when the DHCPv6 Router Advertisement 0 (letter 0) bit is set and the M bit is not set. Thus, these events occur when the DHCP client does not obtain an IP address lease from the server, and instead obtains only configuration parameters.

LOSS6

This event occurs during lease expiration when one or more valid leases still remain. The event program is invoked just before expired addresses are removed. Those being removed will be marked with the `IFF_DEPRECATED` flag.

Note that this event is not associated with the receipt of the Reply message, which occurs only when one or more valid leases remain, and occurs only with DHCPv6. If all leases have expired, then the `EXPIRE6` event occurs instead.

RELEASE and RELEASE6

This event occurs during the period when a leased address is released. The event program is invoked just before `dhcpage` relinquishes the address on an interface and sends the DHCPv4 `RELEASE` or DHCPv6 Release packet to the DHCP server.

The system does not provide a default event program. The file `/etc/dhcp/eventhook` is expected to be owned by root and have a mode of 755.

The event program will be passed two arguments, the interface name and the event name, respectively. For DHCPv6, the interface name is the name of the physical interface.

The event program can use the `dhcpage(1)` utility to fetch additional information about the interface. While the event program is invoked on every event defined above, it can ignore those events in which it is not interested. The event program runs with the same privileges and environment as `dhcpage` itself, except that `stdin`, `stdout`, and `stderr` are redirected to `/dev/null`. Note that this means that the event program runs with root privileges.

If an invocation of the event program does not exit after 55 seconds, it is sent a `SIGTERM` signal. If it does not exit within the next three seconds, it is terminated by a `SIGKILL` signal.

See `EXAMPLES` for an example event program.

Options The following options are supported:

-a

Adopt a configured IPv4 interface. This option is for use with diskless DHCP clients. In the case of diskless DHCP, DHCP has already been performed on the network interface providing the operating system image prior to running `dhcpagent`. This option instructs the agent to take over control of the interface. It is intended primarily for use in boot scripts.

The effect of this option depends on whether the interface is being adopted.

If the interface is being adopted, the following conditions apply:

`dhcpagent` uses the client id specified in `/chosen:<client_id>`, as published by the PROM or as specified on a `boot(1M)` command line. If this value is not present, the client id is undefined. The DHCP server then determines what to use as a client id. It is an error condition if the interface is an Infiniband interface and the PROM value is not present.

If the interface is not being adopted:

`dhcpagent` uses the value stored in `/etc/default/dhcpagent`. If this value is not present, the client id is undefined. If the interface is Infiniband and there is no value in `/etc/default/dhcpagent`, a client id is generated as described by the draft document on DHCP over Infiniband, available at:

<http://www.ietf.org>

-d *n*

Set debug level to *n*. Two levels of debugging are currently available, 1 and 2; the latter is more verbose.

-f

Run in the foreground instead of as a daemon process. When this option is used, messages are sent to standard error instead of to `syslog(3C)`.

-v

Provide verbose output useful for debugging site configuration problems.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Example Event Program

The following script is stored in the file `/etc/dhcp/eventhook`, owned by root with a mode of 755. It is invoked upon the occurrence of the events listed in the file.

```
#!/bin/sh

(
echo "Interface name: " $1
echo "Event: " $2

case $2 in
```

EXAMPLE 1 Example Event Program (Continued)

```

"BOUND")
    echo "Address acquired from server "\
        '/sbin/dhccpinfo -i $1 ServerID'
    ;;
"BOUND6")
    echo "Addresses acquired from server " \
        '/sbin/dhccpinfo -v6 -i $1 ServerID'
    ;;
"EXTEND")
    echo "Lease extended for " \
        'sbin/dhccpinfo -i $1 LeaseTim"' seconds"
    ;;
"EXTEND6")
    echo "New lease information obtained on $i"
    ;;
"EXPIRE" | "DROP" | "RELEASE")
    ;;

esac
) >/var/run/dhcp_eventhook_output 2>&1

```

Note the redirection of stdout and stderr to a file.

Files /etc/dhcp/if.dhc

/etc/dhcp/if.dh6

Contains the configuration for interface. The mere existence of this file does not imply that the configuration is correct, since the lease might have expired. On start-up, dhcpage confirms the validity of the address using REQUEST (for DHCPv4) or Confirm (DHCPv6).

/etc/dhcp/duid

/etc/dhcp/iaid

Contains persistent storage for DUID (DHCP Unique Identifier) and IAID (Identity Association Identifier) values. The format of these files is undocumented, and applications should not read from or write to them.

/etc/default/dhcpage

Contains default values for tunable parameters. All values may be qualified with the interface they apply to by prepending the interface name and a period (".") to the interface parameter name. The parameters include: the interface parameter name.

To configure IPv6 parameters, place the string .v6 between the interface name (if any) and the parameter name. For example, to set the global IPv6 parameter request list, use .v6.PARAM_REQUEST_LIST. To set the CLIENT_ID (DUID) on hme0, use hme0.v6.CLIENT_ID.

The parameters include:

VERIFIED_LEASE_ONLY

Indicates that a RELEASE rather than a DROP should be performed on managed interfaces when the agent terminates. Release causes the client to discard the lease, and the server to make the address available again. Drop causes the client to record the lease in `/etc/dhcp/interface.dhc` or `/etc/dhcp/interface.dh6` for later use. In addition, when the link status changes to up or when the system is resumed after a suspend, the client will verify the lease with the server. If the server is unreachable for verification, then the old lease will be discarded (even if it has time remaining) and a new one obtained.

Enabling this option is often desirable on mobile systems, such as laptops, to allow the system to recover quickly from moves.

OFFER_WAIT

Indicates how long to wait between checking for valid OFFERs after sending a DISCOVER. For DHCPv6, sets the time to wait between checking for valid Advertisements after sending a Solicit.

CLIENT_ID

Indicates the value that should be used to uniquely identify the client to the server. This value can take one of three basic forms:

decimal, data . . .

`0xHHHHH . . .`

`"string . . ."`

The first form is an RFC 3315 DUID. This is legal for both IPv4 DHCP and DHCPv6. For IPv4, an RFC 4361 Client ID is constructed from this value. In this first form, the format of *data...* depends on the decimal value. The following formats are defined for this first form:

1, hwtype, time, lla

Type 1, DUID-LLT. The *hwtype* value is an integer in the range 0-65535, and indicates the type of hardware. The *time* value is the number of seconds since midnight, January 1st, 2000 UTC, and can be omitted to use the current system time. The *lla* value is either a colon-separated MAC address or the name of a physical interface. If the name of an interface is used, the *hwtype* value can be omitted. For example: `1, , , hme0`

2, enterprise, hex...

Type 2, DUID-EN. The *enterprise* value is an integer in the range 0-4294967295 and represents the SMI Enterprise number for an organization. The *hex* string is an even-length sequence of hexadecimal digits.

3, hwtype, lla

Type 3, DUID-LL. This is the same as DUID-LLT (type 1), except that a time stamp is not used.

**,hex*

Any other type value (0 or 4-65535) can be used with an even-length hexadecimal string.

The second and third forms of `CLIENT_ID` are legal for IPv4 only. These both represent raw Client ID (without RFC 4361), in hex, or NVT ASCII string format. Thus, “Sun” and `0x53756E` are equivalent.

PARAM_REQUEST_LIST

Specifies a list of comma-separated integer values of options for which the client would like values, or symbolic `Site` or `Option` option names. Symbolic option names for IPv4 are resolved through `/etc/dhcp/inittab`. Option names for IPv6 are resolved by means of `/etc/dhcp/inittab6`.

PARAM_IGNORE_LIST

Specifies a list of options (constructed in the same manner as `PARAM_REQUEST_LIST`) that the DHCP client will ignore. Ignored options are treated as though the server did not return the options specified. Ignored options are not visible using `dhcpcinfo(1)` or acted on by the client. This parameter can be used, for example, to disable an unwanted client name or default router.

REQUEST_HOSTNAME

Indicates the client requests the DHCP server to map the client's leased IPv4 address to the host name associated with the network interface that performs DHCP on the client. The host name must be specified in the `/etc/hostname.interface` file for the relevant interface on a line of the form

```
inet hostname
```

where *hostname* is the host name requested.

This option works with DHCPv4 only.

`/etc/dhcp/eventhook`

Location of a DHCP event program.

Attributes See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsr
Interface Stability	Committed

See Also `dhcpcinfo(1)`, `ifconfig(1M)`, `init(1M)`, `in.mpathd(1M)`, `in.ndpd(1M)`, `syslog(3C)`, `attributes(5)`, `dhcp(5)`

System Administration Guide: IP Services

Croft, B. and Gilmore, J., *Bootstrap Protocol (BOOTP)* RFC 951, Network Working Group, September 1985.

Droms, R., *Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol*, RFC 2131, Network Working Group, March 1997.

Lemon, T. and B. Sommerfeld. *RFC 4361, Node-specific Client Identifiers for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol Version Four (DHCPv4)*. Nominum and Sun Microsystems. February 2006.

Droms, R. *RFC 3315, Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for IPv6 (DHCPv6)*. Cisco Systems. July 2003.

Notes The `dhcpageant` daemon can be used on IPv4 logical interfaces, just as with physical interfaces. When used on a logical interface, the daemon automatically constructs a Client ID value based on the DUID and IAID values, according to RFC 4361. The `/etc/default/dhcpageant CLIENT_ID` value, if any, overrides this automatic identifier.

As with physical IPv4 interfaces, the `/etc/hostname.hme0:1` and `/etc/dhcp.hme0:1` files must also be created in order for `hme0:1` to be automatically plumbed and configured at boot. In addition, unlike physical IPv4 interfaces, `dhcpageant` does not add or remove default routes associated with logical interfaces.

DHCP can be performed on IPMP IP interfaces to acquire and maintain IPMP data addresses. Because an IPMP IP interface has no hardware address, the daemon automatically constructs a Client ID using the same approach described above for IPv4 logical interfaces. In addition, the lack of a hardware address means the daemon must set the “broadcast” flag in all DISCOVER and REQUEST messages on IPMP IP interfaces. Some DHCP servers may refuse such requests.

DHCP can be performed on IP interfaces that are part of an IPMP group (to acquire and maintain test addresses). The daemon will automatically set the NOFAILOVER and DEPRECATED flags on each test address. Additionally, the daemon will not add or remove default routes in this case. Note that the actual DHCP packet exchange may be performed over any active IP interface in the IPMP group. It is strongly recommended that test addresses have infinite leases. Otherwise, an extended network outage detectable only by probes may cause test address leases to expire, causing `in.mpathd(1M)` to revert to link-based failure detection and trigger an erroneous repair.

With DHCPv6, the link-local interface must be configured using `/etc/hostname6.hme0` in order for DHCPv6 to run on `hme0` at boot time. The logical interfaces for each address are plumbed by `dhcpageant` automatically.

Name dhcpconfig – DHCP service configuration utility

Synopsis dhcpconfig -D -r *resource* -p *path* [-u *uninterpreted*]
 [-l *lease_length*] [-n] [-d *DNS_domain*]
 [-a *DNS_server_addresses*] [-h *hosts_resource*]
 [-y *hosts_domain*]

dhcpconfig -R *server_addresses*

dhcpconfig -U [-f] [-x] [-h]

dhcpconfig -N *network_address* [-m *subnet_mask*] [-b]
 [-t *router_addresses*] [-y *NIS-domain*]
 [-a *NIS_server_addresses*] [-g]

dhcpconfig -C -r *resource* -p *path* [-f] [-k]
 [-u *uninterpreted*]

dhcpconfig -X *filename* [-m *macro_list*] [-o *option_list*]
 [-a *network_addresses*] [-f] [-x] [-g]

dhcpconfig -I *filename* [-f] [-g]

dhcpconfig -P [*parameter*[=*value*],]...

dhcpconfig -S [-f] [-e | -d | -r | -q]

Description The dhcpconfig command is used to configure and manage the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) service or BOOTP relay services. It is intended for use by experienced Solaris system administrators and is designed for ease of use in scripts. The dhcpmgr utility is recommended for less experienced administrators or those preferring a graphical utility to configure and manage the DHCP service or BOOTP relay service.

The dhcpconfig command can be run by root, or by other users assigned to the DHCP Management profile. See [rbac\(5\)](#) and [user_attr\(4\)](#).

dhcpconfig requires one of the following function flags: -D, -R, -U, -N, -C, -X, -I, -P or -S.

The dhcpconfig menu driven mode is supported in Solaris 8 and previous versions of Solaris.

Where dhcpconfig
Obtains Configuration
Information

dhcpconfig scans various configuration files on your Solaris machine for information it can use to assign values to options contained in macros it adds to the dhcptab configuration table. The following table lists information dhcpconfig needs, the source used, and how the information is used:

<i>Information</i>	<i>Source</i>	<i>Where Used</i>
Timezone	System date, timezone settings	Local macro
DNS parameters	nsswitch.conf, /etc/resolv.conf	Server macro

NIS parameters	System domainname, nsswitch.conf, NIS	Network macros
Subnetmask	Network interface, netmasks table in nameservice	Network macros

If you have not set these parameters on your server machine, you should do so before configuring the DHCP server with `dhcpconfig`. Note that if you specify options with the `dhcpconfig -D` command line, the values you supply override the values obtained from the system files.

Options The following options are supported:

-C Convert to using a new data store, recreating the DHCP data tables in a format appropriate to the new data store, and setting up the DHCP server to use the new data store.

The following sub-options are required:

-p *path_to_data* The paths for `SUNWfiles` and `SUNWbinfiles` must be absolute UNIX pathnames. See [dhcp_modules\(5\)](#).

-r *data_resource* New data store resource. One of the following must be specified: `SUNWfiles` or `SUNWbinfiles`. See [dhcp_modules\(5\)](#).

The following sub-options are optional:

-f Do not prompt for confirmation. If `-f` is not used, a warning and confirmation prompt are issued before the conversion starts.

-k Keep the old DHCP data tables after successful conversion. If any problem occurs during conversion, tables are not deleted even if `-k` sub-option is not specified.

-u *uninterpreted* Data which is ignored by `dhcpconfig`, but passed on to the datastore for interpretation. The private layer provides for module-specific configuration information through the use of the `RESOURCE_CONFIG` keyword. Uninterpreted data is stored within `RESOURCE_CONFIG` keyword of `dhcpsvc.conf(4)`. The `-u` sub-option is not used with the `SUNWfiles` and `SUNWbinfiles` data stores. See [dhcp_modules\(5\)](#).

-D Configure the DHCP service.

The following sub-options are required:

- r *data_resource* One of the following must be specified: `SUNWfiles` or `SUNWbinfiles`. Other data stores may be available. See [dhcp_modules\(5\)](#).
- p *path* The paths for `SUNWfiles` and `SUNWbinfiles` must be absolute UNIX pathnames. See [dhcp_modules\(5\)](#).

The following sub-options are optional:

- a *DNS_servers* IP addresses of DNS servers, separated with commas.
- d *DNS_domain* DNS domain name.
- h *hosts_resource* Resource in which to place hosts data. Usually, the name service in use on the server. Valid values are `files` or `dns`.
- l *seconds* Lease length used for addresses not having a specified lease length, in seconds.
- n Non-negotiable leases
- y *hosts_domain* DNS domain name to be used for hosts data. Valid only if `dns` is specified for `-h` sub-option.
- u *uninterpreted* Data which is ignored by `dhcpcfg`, but passed on to the datastore for interpretation. The private layer provides for module-specific configuration information through the use of the `RESOURCE_CONFIG` keyword. Uninterpreted data is stored within `RESOURCE_CONFIG` keyword of `dhcpsvc.conf(4)`. The `-u` sub-option is not used with the `SUNWfiles` and `SUNWbinfiles` data stores. See [dhcp_modules\(5\)](#).

-I *filename* Import data from *filename*, containing data previously exported from a Solaris DHCP server. Note that after importing, you may have to edit macros to specify the correct domain names, and edit network tables to change the owning server of addresses in imported networks. Use `dhtadm` and `pntadm` to do this.

The following sub-options are supported:

- f Replace any conflicting data with the data being imported.

- g Signal the daemon to reload the `dhcptab` once the import has been completed.
- N *net_address* Configure an additional network for DHCP service.
- The following sub-options are supported:
- a *NIS_server_addresses* List of IP addresses of NIS servers.
 - b Network is a point-to-point (PPP) network, therefore no broadcast address should be configured. If -b is not used, the network is assumed to be a LAN, and the broadcast address is determined using the network address and subnet mask.
 - g Signal the daemon to reload the `dhcptab`.
 - m *xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx* Subnet mask for the network; if -m is not used, subnet mask is obtained from `netmasks`.
 - t *router_addresses* List of router IP addresses; if not specified, router discovery flag is set.
 - y *NIS_domain_name* If NIS is used on this network, specify the NIS domain name.
- P Configure the DHCP service parameters. Each parameter and value are specified by the following pattern:
- parameter*[=*value*] , |PO
- Where *parameter* and *value* are:
- parameter* One of the DHCP service parameters listed in `dhcpsvc.conf(4)`. If the corresponding *value* is not specified, the current parameter value is displayed. If *parameter* is not specified, all parameters and current values are displayed.
 - value* Optional string to set the servers parameter to if the value is acceptable. If the value is missing or is empty (""), the parameter and its current value are deleted.
- After a parameter has changed the DHCP server requires re-starting before you can use new parameter values.
- R *server_addresses* Configure the BOOTP relay service. BOOTP or DHCP requests are forwarded to the list of servers specified.

server_addresses is a comma separated list of hostnames and/or IP addresses.

-S Control the DHCP service.

The following sub-options are supported:

- d Disable and stop the DHCP service.
- e Enable and start the DHCP service.
- q Display the state of the DHCP service. The state is encoded into the exit status.
 - 0 DHCP service disabled and stopped
 - 1 DHCP service enabled and stopped
 - 2 DHCP service disabled and running
 - 3 DHCP service enabled and running
- r Enable and restart the DHCP service.

-U Unconfigure the DHCP service or BOOTP relay service.

The following sub-options are supported:

- f Do not prompt for confirmation. If -f is not used, a warning and confirmation prompt is issued.
- h Delete hosts entries from name service.
- x Delete the dhcptab and network tables.

-X *filename* Export data from the DHCP data tables, saving to *filename*, to move the data to another Solaris DHCP server.

The following sub-options are optional:

- a *networks_to_export* List of networks whose addresses should be exported, or the keyword ALL to specify all networks. If -a is not specified, no networks are exported.
- g Signal the daemon to reload the dhcptab after the export has been completed.
- m *macros_to_export* List of macros to export, or the keyword ALL to specify all macros. If -m is not specified, no macros are exported.
- o *options_to_export* List of options to export, or the keyword ALL to specify all options. If -o is not specified, no options are exported.

-x

Delete the data from this server after it is exported. If -x is not specified you are in effect copying the data.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Configuring DHCP Service with Binary Files Data Store

The following command configures DHCP service, using the binary files data store, in the DNS domain `acme.eng`, with a lease time of 28800 seconds (8 hours),

```
example# dhcpconfig -D -r SUNWbinfiles -p /var/dhcp -l 28800\
-d acme.eng -a 120.30.33.4 -h dns -y acme.eng
```

EXAMPLE 2 Configuring BOOTP Relay Agent

The following command configures the DHCP daemon as a BOOTP relay agent, which forwards BOOTP and DHCP requests to the servers having the IP addresses 120.30.33.7 and 120.30.42.132:

```
example# dhcpconfig -R 120.30.33.7,120.30.42.132
```

EXAMPLE 3 Unconfiguring DHCP Service

The following command unconfigures the DHCP service, with confirmation, and deletes the DHCP data tables and host table entries:

```
example# dhcpconfig -U -x -h
```

EXAMPLE 4 Configuring a Network for DHCP Service

The following command configures an additional LAN network for DHCP service, specifying that clients should use router discovery and providing the NIS domain name and NIS server address:

```
example# dhcpconfig -N 120.30.171.0 -y east.acme.eng.com\
-a 120.30.33.4
```

EXAMPLE 5 Exporting a Network, Macros, and Options from a DHCP Server

The following command exports one network (120.30.171.0) and its addresses, the macro 120.30.171.0, and the options `motd` and `PSptr` from a DHCP server, saves the exported data in file `/export/var/120301710_data`, and deletes the exported data from the server.

```
example# dhcpconfig -X /var/dhcp/120301710_export
-a 120.30.171.0 -m 120.30.171.0 -o motd,PSptr
```

EXAMPLE 6 Importing Data on a DHCP Server

The following command imports DHCP data from a file, /net/golduck/export/var/120301710_data, containing data previously exported from a Solaris DHCP server, overwrites any conflicting data on the importing server, and signals the daemon to reload the dhcptab once the import is completed:

```
example# dhcpcfg -I /net/golduck/export/var/120301710_data -f -g
```

EXAMPLE 7 Setting DHCP Server Parameters

The following command sets the number of minutes that the DHCP server waits before timing out when updating DNS information on DHCP clients to five minutes.

```
example# example# dhcpcfg -P UPDATE_TIMEOUT=5
```

EXAMPLE 8 Re-starting the DHCP server

The following command stops and re-starts the DHCP server.

```
example# example# dhcpcfg -S -r
DHCP server stopped
DHCP server started
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWdhcsu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [dhcpcmgr\(1M\)](#), [dhtadm\(1M\)](#), [in.dhcpd\(1M\)](#), [pntadm\(1M\)](#), [dhcp_network\(4\)](#), [dhcptab\(4\)](#), [dhcpsvc.conf\(4\)](#), [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#), [resolv.conf\(4\)](#), [user_attr\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [dhcp\(5\)](#), [dhcp_modules\(5\)](#), [rbac\(5\)](#)

System Administration Guide: IP Services

Name dhcpgmgr – graphical interface for managing DHCP service

Synopsis /usr/sadm/admin/bin/dhcpgmgr

Description dhcpgmgr is a graphical user interface which enables you to manage the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) service on the local system. It performs the functions of the dhcpconfig, dhtadm, and pntadm command line utilities. You must be root to use dhcpgmgr. The dhcpgmgr Help, available from the Help menu, contains detailed information about using the tool.

Usage You can perform the following tasks using dhcpgmgr:

Configure DHCP service	Use dhcpgmgr to configure the DHCP daemon as a DHCP server, and select the data store to use for storing network configuration tables..
Configure BOOTP relay service	Use dhcpgmgr to configure the DHCP daemon as a BOOTP relay.
Manage DHCP or BOOTP relay service	Use dhcpgmgr to start, stop, enable, disable or unconfigure the DHCP service or BOOTP relay service, or change DHCP server parameters.
Manage DHCP addresses	Use dhcpgmgr to add, modify, or delete IP addresses leased by the DHCP service.
Manage DHCP macros	Use dhcpgmgr to add, modify or delete macros used to supply configuration parameters to DHCP clients.
Manage DHCP options	Use dhcpgmgr to add, modify or delete options used to define parameters deliverable through DHCP.
Convert to a new DHCP data store	Use dhcpgmgr to configure the DHCP server to use a different data store, and convert the DHCP data to the format used by the new data store.
Move DHCP data to another server	Use dhcpgmgr to export data from one Solaris DHCP server and import data onto another Solaris DHCP server.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0	Successful completion.
non-zero	An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWdhcm
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [dhcprconfig\(1M\)](#), [dhtadm\(1M\)](#), [pntadm\(1M\)](#), [in.dhcpd\(1M\)](#), [dhcprsvc.conf\(4\)](#), [dhcpr_network\(4\)](#), [dhcprtab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [dhcp\(5\)](#), [dhcpr_modules\(5\)](#)

System Administration Guide: IP Services

Name dhtadm – DHCP configuration table management utility

Synopsis dhtadm -C [-r *resource*] [-p *path*] [-u *uninterpreted*] [-g]
 dhtadm -A -s *symbol_name* -d *definition* [-r *resource*]
 [-p *path*] [-u *uninterpreted*] [-g]
 dhtadm -A -m *macro_name* -d *definition* [-r *resource*]
 [-p *path*] [-u *uninterpreted*] [-g]
 dhtadm -M -s *symbol_name* -d *definition* [-r *resource*]
 [-p *path*] [-u *uninterpreted*] [-g]
 dhtadm -M -s *symbol_name* -n *new_name* [-r *resource*]
 [-p *path*] [-u *uninterpreted*] [-g]
 dhtadm -M -m *macro_name* -n *new_name* [-r *resource*] [-p *path*]
 [-u *uninterpreted*] [-g]
 dhtadm -M -m *macro_name* -d *definition* [-r *resource*]
 [-p *path*] [-u *uninterpreted*] [-g]
 dhtadm -M -m *macro_name* -e *symbol=value* [-r *resource*]
 [-p *path*] [-u *uninterpreted*] [-g]
 dhtadm -D -s *symbol_name* [-r *resource*] [-p *path*]
 [-u *uninterpreted*] [-g]
 dhtadm -D -m *macro_name* [-r *resource*] [-p *path*]
 [-u *uninterpreted*] [-g]
 dhtadm -P [-r *resource*] [-p *path*] [-u *uninterpreted*] [-g]
 dhtadm -R [-r *resource*] [-p *path*] [-u *uninterpreted*] [-g]
 dhtadm -B [-v] [*batchfile*] [-g]

Description dhtadm manages the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) service configuration table, `dhcptab`. You can use it to add, delete, or modify DHCP configuration macros or options or view the table. For a description of the table format, see [dhcptab\(4\)](#).

The `dhtadm` command can be run by root, or by other users assigned to the DHCP Management profile. See [rbac\(5\)](#) and [user_attr\(4\)](#).

After you make changes with `dhtadm`, you should issue a `SIGHUP` to the DHCP server, causing it to read the `dhcptab` and pick up the changes. Do this using the `-g` option.

Options One of the following function flags must be specified with the `dhtadm` command: `-A`, `-B`, `-C`, `-D`, `-M`, `-P` or `-R`.

The following options are supported:

`-A` Add a symbol or macro definition to the `dhcptab` table.

The following sub-options are required:

- d** *definition* Specify a macro or symbol definition.
- definition* must be enclosed in single quotation marks. For macros, use the form `-d ' :symbol=value:symbol=value: '`. Enclose a *value* that contains colons in double quotation marks. For symbols, the definition is a series of fields that define a symbol's characteristics. The fields are separated by commas. Use the form `-d 'context,code,type,granularity,maximum'`. See [dhcptab\(4\)](#) for information about these fields.
- m** *macro_name* Specify the name of the macro to be added.
- The `-d` option must be used with the `-m` option. The `-s` option cannot be used with the `-m` option.
- s** *symbol_name* Specify the name of the symbol to be added.
- The `-d` option must be used with the `-s` option. The `-m` option cannot be used with the `-s` option.
- B** Batch process `dhtadm` commands. `dhtadm` reads from the specified file or from standard input a series of `dhtadm` commands and execute them within the same process. Processing many `dhtadm` commands using this method is much faster than running an executable batchfile itself. Batch mode is recommended for using `dhtadm` in scripts.
- The following sub-option is optional:
- v** Display commands to standard output as they are processed.
- C** Create the DHCP service configuration table, `dhcptab`.
- D** Delete a symbol or macro definition.
- The following sub-options are required:
- m** *macro_name* Delete the specified macro.
- s** *symbol_name* Delete the specified symbol.

-
- g Signal the DHCP daemon to reload the `dhcptab` after successful completion of the operation.
 - M Modify an existing symbol or macro definition.
The following sub-options are required:
 - d *definition* Specify a macro or symbol definition to modify.

The definition must be enclosed in single quotation marks. For macros, use the form `-d 'symbol=value:symbol=value:'`. Enclose a *value* that contains colons in double quotation marks. For symbols, the definition is a series of fields that define a symbol's characteristics. The fields are separated by commas. Use the form `-d 'context,code,type,granularity,maximum'`. See [dhcptab\(4\)](#) for information about these fields.
 - e This sub-option uses the `symbol=value` argument. Use it to edit a *symbol/value* pair within a macro. To add a symbol which does not have an associate value, enter:

`symbol=_NULL_VALUE_`

To delete a symbol definition from a macro, enter:

`symbol=`
 - m This sub-option uses the *macro_name* argument. The `-n`, `-d`, or `-e` sub-options are legal companions for this sub-option..
 - n This sub-option uses the *new_name* argument and modifies the name of the object specified by the `-m` or `-s` sub-option. It is not limited to macros. Use it to specify a new macro name or symbol name.
 - s This sub-option uses the *symbol_name* argument. Use it to specify a symbol. The `-d` sub-option is a legal companion.
 - p *path* Override the `dhcpsvc.conf(4)` configuration value for `PATH=` with *path*. See [dhcpsvc.conf\(4\)](#) for more details regarding *path*. See [dhcp_modules\(5\)](#) for information regarding data storage modules for the DHCP service.

- P Print (display) the dhcptab table.
- r *data_store_resource* Override the dhcpsvc.conf(4) configuration value for RESOURCE= with the *data_store_resource* specified. See dhcpsvc.conf(4) for more details on resource type. See for more information about adding support for other data stores. See dhcp_modules(5) for information regarding data storage modules for the DHCP service.
- R Remove the dhcptab table.
- u *uninterpreted* Data which is ignored by dhtadm, but passed to currently configured public module, to be interpreted by the data store. The private layer provides for module-specific configuration information through the use of the RESOURCE_CONFIG keyword. Uninterpreted data is stored within RESOURCE_CONFIG keyword of dhcpsvc.conf(4). See dhcp_modules(5) for information regarding data storage modules for the DHCP service.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Creating the DHCP Service Configuration Table

The following command creates the DHCP service configuration table, dhcptab:

```
# dhtadm -C
```

EXAMPLE 2 Adding a Symbol Definition

The following command adds a Vendor option symbol definition for a new symbol called MySym to the dhcptab table in the SUNWfiles resource in the /var/mydhcp directory:

```
# dhtadm -A -s MySym
  -d 'Vendor=SUNW.PCW.LAN,20,IP,1,0'
  -r SUNWfiles -p /var/mydhcp
```

EXAMPLE 3 Adding a Macro Definition

The following command adds the aruba macro definition to the dhcptab table. Note that symbol/value pairs are bracketed with colons (:).

```
# dhtadm -A -m aruba \
  -d ':Timeserv=10.0.0.10 10.0.0.11:DNSServ=10.0.0.1:'
```


EXAMPLE 4 Modifying a Macro Definition

The following command modifies the `Locale` macro definition, setting the value of the `UTCOffset` symbol to 18000 seconds. Note that any macro definition which includes the definition of the `Locale` macro inherits this change.

```
# dhtadm -M -m Locale -e 'UTCOffset=18000'
```

EXAMPLE 5 Deleting a Symbol

The following command deletes the `Timeserv` symbol from the `aruba` macro. Any macro definition which includes the definition of the `aruba` macro inherits this change.

```
# dhtadm -M -m aruba -e 'Timeserv='
```

EXAMPLE 6 Adding a Symbol to a Macro

The following command adds the `Hostname` symbol to the `aruba` macro. Note that the `Hostname` symbol takes no value, and thus requires the special value `_NULL_VALUE_`. Note also that any macro definition which includes the definition of the `aruba` macro inherits this change.

```
# dhtadm -M -m aruba -e 'Hostname=_NULL_VALUE_'
```

EXAMPLE 7 Renaming a Macro

The following command renames the `Locale` macro to `MyLocale`. Note that any `Include` statements in macro definitions which include the `Locale` macro also need to be changed.

```
# dhtadm -M -m Locale -n MyLocale
```

EXAMPLE 8 Deleting a Symbol Definition

The following command deletes the `MySym` symbol definition. Note that any macro definitions which use `MySym` needs to be modified.

```
# dhtadm -D -s MySym
```

EXAMPLE 9 Printing a dhcptab

The following command prints to standard output the contents of the `dhcptab` that is located in the data store and path indicated in the `dhcpsvc.conf` file.

```
# dhtadm -P
```

EXAMPLE 10 Executing dhtadm in Batch Mode

The following command runs a series of dhtadm commands contained in a batch file and signals the daemon to reload the dhcptab once the commands have been executed: :

```
# dhtadm -B addmacros -g
```

Exit Status

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 Object already exists.
- 2 Object does not exist.
- 3 Non-critical error.
- 4 Critical error.

Files /etc/inet/dhcpsvc.conf

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWdhcsu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [dhcpconfig\(1M\)](#), [dhcpmgr\(1M\)](#), [in.dhcpd\(1M\)](#), [dhcpsvc.conf\(4\)](#), [dhcp_network\(4\)](#), [dhcptab\(4\)](#), [hosts\(4\)](#), [user_attr\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [dhcp\(5\)](#), [dhcp_modules\(5\)](#), [rbac\(5\)](#)

System Administration Guide: IP Services

Alexander, S., and R. Droms, *DHCP Options and BOOTP Vendor Extensions*, RFC 1533, Lachman Technology, Inc., Bucknell University, October 1993.

Droms, R., *Interoperation Between DHCP and BOOTP*, RFC 1534, Bucknell University, October 1993.

Droms, R., *Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol*, RFC 1541, Bucknell University, October 1993.

Wimer, W., *Clarifications and Extensions for the Bootstrap Protocol*, RFC 1542, Carnegie Mellon University, October 1993.

Name dig – DNS lookup utility

Synopsis dig [@server] [-b *address*] [-c *class*] [-f *filename*]
 [-k *filename*] [-m] [-p *port#*] [-q *name*] [-t *type*] [-x *addr*]
 [-y [*hmac:*]*name:key*] [-4] [-6] [*name*] [*type*] [*class*] [*queryopt*]...
 dig [-h]
 dig [*global-queryopt*...] [*query*...]

Description The dig utility (domain information groper) is a flexible tool for interrogating DNS name servers. It performs DNS lookups and displays the answers that are returned from the name server(s) that were queried. Most DNS administrators use dig to troubleshoot DNS problems because of its flexibility, ease of use and clarity of output. Other lookup tools tend to have less functionality than dig.

Although dig is normally used with command-line arguments, it also has a batch mode of operation for reading lookup requests from a file. A brief summary of its command-line arguments and options is printed when the -h option is specified. Unlike earlier versions, the BIND 9 implementation of dig allows multiple lookups to be issued from the command line.

Unless it is told to query a specific name server, dig tries each of the servers listed in /etc/resolv.conf.

When no command line arguments or options are given, dig performs an NS query for "." (the root).

It is possible to set per-user defaults for dig with \${HOME}/.digrc. This file is read and any options in it are applied before the command line arguments.

The IN and CH class names overlap with the IN and CH top level domains names. Either use the -t and -c options to specify the type and class, or use "IN." and "CH." when looking up these top level domains.

Simple Usage The following is a typical invocation of dig:

```
dig @server name type
```

where:

server

The name or IP address of the name server to query. This can be an IPv4 address in dotted-decimal notation or an IPv6 address in colon-delimited notation. When the supplied *server* argument is a hostname, dig resolves that name before querying that name server. If no *server* argument is provided, dig consults /etc/resolv.conf and queries the name servers listed there. The reply from the name server that responds is displayed.

name

The name of the resource record that is to be looked up.

type

Indicates what type of query is required (ANY, A, MX, SIG, among others.) *type* can be any valid query type. If no *type* argument is supplied, dig performs a lookup for an A record.

Options The following options are supported:

-4

Use only IPv4 transport. By default both IPv4 and IPv6 transports can be used. Options -4 and -6 are mutually exclusive.

-6

Use only IPv6 transport. By default both IPv4 and IPv6 transports can be used. Options -4 and -6 are mutually exclusive.

-b *address*

Set the source IP address of the query to *address*. This must be a valid address on one of the host's network interfaces or 0.0.0.0 or ::. An optional port may be specified by appending: #<*port*>

-c *class*

Override the default query class (IN for internet). The *class* argument is any valid class, such as HS for Hesiod records or CH for CHAOSNET records.

-f *filename*

Operate in batch mode by reading a list of lookup requests to process from the file *filename*. The file contains a number of queries, one per line. Each entry in the file should be organized in the same way they would be presented as queries to dig using the command-line interface.

-h

Print a brief summary of command-line arguments and options.

-k *filename*

Specify a transaction signature (TSIG) key file to sign the DNS queries sent by dig and their responses using TSIGs.

-m

Enable memory usage debugging.

-p *port#*

Query a non-standard port number. The *port#* argument is the port number that dig sends its queries instead of the standard DNS port number 53. This option tests a name server that has been configured to listen for queries on a non-standard port number.

-q *name*

Sets the query name to *name*. This can be useful in that the query name can be easily distinguished from other arguments.

-t *type*

Set the query type to *type*, which can be any valid query type supported in BIND9. The default query type “A”, unless the *-x* option is supplied to indicate a reverse lookup. A zone transfer can be requested by specifying a type of AXFR. When an incremental zone transfer (IXFR) is required, *type* is set to *ixfr=N*. The incremental zone transfer will contain the changes made to the zone since the serial number in the zone's SOA record was *N*.

-x *addr*

Simplify reverse lookups (mapping addresses to names). The *addr* argument is an IPv4 address in dotted-decimal notation, or a colon-delimited IPv6 address. When this option is used, there is no need to provide the *name*, *class* and *type* arguments. The *dig* utility automatically performs a lookup for a name like `11.12.13.10.in-addr.arpa` and sets the query type and class to PTR and IN, respectively. By default, IPv6 addresses are looked up using nibble format under the IP6.ARPA domain. To use the older RFC1886 method using the IP6.INT domain, specify the *-i* option. Bit string labels (RFC 2874) are now experimental and are not attempted.

-y [*hmac:*]*name:key*

Specify a transaction signature (TSIG) key on the command line. This is done to sign the DNS queries sent by *dig*, as well as their responses. You can also specify the TSIG key itself on the command line using the *-y* option. The optional *hmac* is the type of TSIG; the default is HMAC-MD5. The *name* argument is the name of the TSIG key and the *key* argument is the actual key. The key is a base-64 encoded string, typically generated by [dnssec-keygen\(1M\)](#).

Caution should be taken when using the *-y* option on multi-user systems, since the key can be visible in the output from [ps\(1\)](#) or in the shell's history file. When using TSIG authentication with *dig*, the name server that is queried needs to know the key and algorithm that is being used. In BIND, this is done by providing appropriate key and server statements in `named.conf`.

Query Options The *dig* utility provides a number of query options which affect the way in which lookups are made and the results displayed. Some of these set or reset flag bits in the query header, some determine which sections of the answer get printed, and others determine the timeout and retry strategies.

Each query option is identified by a keyword preceded by a plus sign (+). Some keywords set or reset an option. These may be preceded by the string *no* to negate the meaning of that keyword. Other keywords assign values to options like the timeout interval. They have the form `+keyword=value`. The query options are:

+*[no]*tcp

Use [do not use] TCP when querying name servers. The default behaviour is to use UDP unless an AXFR or IXFR query is requested, in which case a TCP connection is used.

+`[no]vc`

Use [do not use] TCP when querying name servers. This alternate syntax to `+[no]tcp` is provided for backwards compatibility. The “vc” stands for “virtual circuit”.

+`[no]ignore`

Ignore truncation in UDP responses instead of retrying with TCP. By default, TCP retries are performed.

+`domain=somename`

Set the search list to contain the single domain *somename*, as if specified in a `domain` directive in `/etc/resolv.conf`, and enable search list processing as if the `+search` option were given.

+`[no]search`

Use [do not use] the search list defined by the `searchlist` or `domain` directive in `resolv.conf` (if any). The search list is not used by default.

+`[no]showsearch`

Perform [do not perform] a search showing intermediate results.

+`[no]defname`

Deprecated, treated as a synonym for `+[no]search`.

+`[no]aaonly`

Sets the `aa` flag in the query.

+`[no]aaf`flag

A synonym for `+[no]aaonly`.

+`[no]adf`flag

Set [do not set] the AD (authentic data) bit in the query. This requests that the server return, regardless of whether all of the answer and authority sections have all been validated as secure according to the security policy of the server. A setting of `AD=1` indicates that all records have been validated as secure and the answer is not from an OPT-OUT range. `AD=0` indicates that some part of the answer is insecure or not validated.

+`[no]cdf`flag

Set [do not set] the CD (checking disabled) bit in the query. This requests the server to not perform DNSSEC validation of responses.

+`[no]cl`

Display [do not display] the CLASS when printing the record.

+`[no]ttl`id

Display [do not display] the TTL when printing the record.

+`[no]recurse`

Toggle the setting of the RD (recursion desired) bit in the query. This bit is set by default, which means `dig` normally sends recursive queries. Recursion is automatically disabled when the `+nssearch` or `+trace` query options are used.

`+ [no] nssearch`

When this option is set, `dig` attempts to find the authoritative name servers for the zone containing the name being looked up and display the SOA record that each name server has for the zone.

`+ [no] trace`

Toggle tracing of the delegation path from the root name servers for the name being looked up. Tracing is disabled by default. When tracing is enabled, `dig` makes iterative queries to resolve the name being looked up. It will follow referrals from the root servers, showing the answer from each server that was used to resolve the lookup.

`+ [no] cmd`

Toggle the printing of the initial comment in the output identifying the version of `dig` and the query options that have been applied. This comment is printed by default.

`+ [no] short`

Provide a terse answer. The default is to print the answer in a verbose form.

`+ [no] identify`

Show [or do not show] the IP address and port number that supplied the answer when the `+short` option is enabled. If short form answers are requested, the default is not to show the source address and port number of the server that provided the answer.

`+ [no] comments`

Toggle the display of comment lines in the output. The default is to print comments.

`+ [no] stats`

Toggle the printing of statistics: when the query was made, the size of the reply and so on. The default behaviour is to print the query statistics.

`+ [no] qr`

Print [do not print] the query as it is sent. By default, the query is not printed.

`+ [no] question`

Print [do not print] the question section of a query when an answer is returned. The default is to print the question section as a comment.

`+ [no] answer`

Display [do not display] the answer section of a reply. The default is to display it.

`+ [no] authority`

Display [do not display] the authority section of a reply. The default is to display it.

`+ [no] additional`

Display [do not display] the additional section of a reply. The default is to display it.

`+ [no] all`

Set or clear all display flags.

`+time=T`

Sets the timeout for a query to *T* seconds. The default time out is 5 seconds. An attempt to set *T* to less than 1 will result in a query timeout of 1 second being applied.

`+tries=T`

Sets the maximum number of UDP attempts to *T*. The default number is 3 (1 initial attempt followed by 2 retries). If *T* is less than or equal to zero, the number of retries is silently rounded up to 1.

`+retry=T`

Sets the number of UDP retries to *T*. The default is 2.

`+ndots=D`

Set the number of dots that have to appear in *name* to *D* for it to be considered absolute. The default value is that defined using the `ndots` statement in `/etc/resolv.conf`, or 1 if no `ndots` statement is present. Names with fewer dots are interpreted as relative names and will be searched for in the domains listed in the `search` or `domain` directive in `/etc/resolv.conf`.

`+bufsize=B`

Set the UDP message buffer size advertised using EDNS0 to *B* bytes. The maximum and minimum sizes of this buffer are 65535 and 0 respectively. Values outside this range are rounded up or down appropriately.

`+edns=#`

Specify the EDNS version with which to query. Valid values are 0 to 255. Setting the EDNS version causes a EDNS query to be sent. `+noedns` clears the remembered EDNS version.

`+[no]multiline`

Print records like the SOA records in a verbose multi-line format with human-readable comments. The default is to print each record on a single line, to facilitate machine parsing of the dig output.

`+[no]fail`

Do not try the next server if you receive a SERVFAIL. The default is to not try the next server which is the reverse of normal stub resolver behavior.

`+[no]besteffort`

Attempt to display the contents of messages which are malformed. The default is to not display malformed answers.

`+[no]dnssec`

Request DNSSEC records be sent by setting the DNSSEC OK bit (DO) in the OPT record in the additional section of the query.

`+[no]sigchase`

Chase DNSSEC signature chains. Requires dig be compiled with `-DDIG_SIGCHASE`.

`+trusted-key=####`

Specifies a file containing trusted keys to be used with `+sigchase`. Each DNSKEY record must be on its own line.

If not specified dig will look for `/etc/trusted-key.key` then `trusted-key.key` in the current directory.

Requires dig be compiled with `-DDIG_SIGCHASE`.

`+[no]topdown`

When chasing DNSSEC signature chains, perform a top-down validation. Requires dig be compiled with `-DDIG_SIGCHASE`.

`+[no]nsid`

Include an EDNS name server ID request when sending a query.

Multiple Queries The BIND 9 implementation of dig supports specifying multiple queries on the command line (in addition to supporting the `-f` batch file option). Each of those queries can be supplied with its own set of flags, options and query options.

In this case, each *query* argument represent an individual query in the command-line syntax described above. Each consists of any of the standard options and flags, the name to be looked up, an optional query type, and class and any query options that should be applied to that query.

A global set of query options, which should be applied to all queries, can also be supplied. These global query options must precede the first tuple of name, class, type, options, flags, and query options supplied on the command line. Any global query options (except the `+ [no] cmd` option) can be overridden by a query-specific set of query options. For example:

```
dig +qr www.isc.org any -x 127.0.0.1 isc.org ns +noqr
```

...shows how dig could be used from the command line to make three lookups: an ANY query for `www.isc.org`, a reverse lookup of `127.0.0.1` and a query for the NS records of `isc.org`. A global query option of `+qr` is applied, so that dig shows the initial query it made for each lookup. The final query has a local query option of `+noqr` which means that dig will not print the initial query when it looks up the NS records for `isc.org`.

Files `/etc/resolv.conf`
Resolver configuration file

`${HOME}/.digrc`
User-defined configuration file

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWbindc

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Interface Stability	External

See Also [dnssec-keygen\(1M\)](#), [host\(1M\)](#), [named\(1M\)](#), [nslookup\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

RFC 1035

See the BIND 9 *Administrator's Reference Manual*. As of the date of publication of this man page, this document is available at <https://www.isc.org/software/bind/documentation>.

Bugs There are probably too many query options.

Notes [nslookup\(1M\)](#) and dig now report “Not Implemented” as NOTIMP rather than NOTIMPL. This will have impact on scripts that are looking for NOTIMPL.

Name directoryserver – front end for the Directory Server (DS)

Synopsis /usr/sbin/directoryserver
 { setup [-f *configuration_file*] | uninstall}
 /usr/sbin/directoryserver
 {start-admin | stop-admin | restart-admin | startconsole}
 /usr/sbin/directoryserver [{-s | -server} server-instance]
 {start | stop | restart}
 /usr/sbin/directoryserver { -s |-server } server-instance
 { monitor | saveconfig | restoreconfig | db2index-task |
 ldif2db-task | ldif2db | ldif2ldap | vlindex | db2ldif |
 db2ldif-task | db2bak | db2bak-task | bak2db | bak2db-task |
 suffix2instance | account-status | account-activate |
 account-inactivate }
 {...}
 /usr/sbin/directoryserver nativetoascii | admin_ip | ldif |
 pwdhash | idsktune | mmldif | keyupg
 {...}
 /usr/sbin/directoryserver { magt | sagt } {...}
 /usr/sbin/directoryserver help [*subcommand*]

Description The `directoryserver` command is a comprehensive, front end to the utility programs provided by the Solaris Directory Server (DS).

Options for the `directoryserver` command itself must appear before the subcommand. Arguments for a subcommand must appear after the subcommand. Subcommands have specific arguments. See `SUBCOMMANDS`.

Subcommands The following subcommands are supported:

<code>account-inactivate</code> <i>args</i>	Inactivates and locks an entry or group of entries.
	The <code>account-inactivate</code> subcommand supports the following arguments:
<code>[-D <i>rootdn</i>]</code>	Directory Server <i>userDN</i> with root permissions, such as Directory Manager.
<code>[-h <i>host</i>]</code>	Host name of Directory Server. The default value is the full hostname of the machine where Directory Server is installed.
<code>-I <i>DN</i></code>	Entry DN or role DN to activate.

-j *file* Password associated with the user DN. This option allows the password to be stored in clear text in the named file for scripting.

This is considered insecure. Use with extreme caution.

[-p *port*] Directory Server port. The default value is the LDAP port of Directory Server specified at installation time.

-w *password* Password associated with the user DN. Supplying the password on the command line is visible using the `/bin/ps` command. This is considered insecure. Use with extreme caution.

The value - can be used in place the password. The program prompts the user for a password to be entered from the terminal.

account-activate *args*

Activates an entry or group of entries.

The `account-activate` subcommand supports the following arguments

-D *rootdn* Directory Server userDN with root permissions, such as Directory Manager.

-h *host* Host name of Directory Server. The default value is the full hostname of the machine where Directory Server is installed.

-I DN Entry DN or role DN to activate.

-j *file* Password associated with the user DN. This option allows the password to be stored in clear text in the named file for scripting.

This is considered insecure. Use with extreme caution.

- p port* Directory Server port. The default value is the LDAP port of Directory Server specified at installation time.
- w password* Password associated with the user DN. Supplying the password on the command line is visible using the `/bin/ps` command. This is considered insecure. Use with extreme caution.
- The value `-` can be used in place the password. The program prompts the user for a password to be entered from the terminal.

account-status args

Provides account status information to establish whether an entry or group of entries is inactivated or not.

The `account - status` subcommand supports the following arguments:

- D rootdn*
- h host* Host name of Directory Server. The default value is the full hostname of the machine where Directory Server is installed.
- I DN* Entry DN or role DN whose status is required.
- j file* Password associated with the user DN. This option allows the password to be stored in clear text in the named file for scripting.
- This is considered insecure. Use with extreme caution.
- p port* Directory Server port. The default value is the LDAP port of Directory Server specified at installation time.
- w password* Password associated with the rootDN. Supplying the password on the command line is visible using the

`/bin/ps` command. This is considered insecure. Use with extreme caution.

The value `-` can be used in place of the password. The program prompts the user for a password to be entered from the terminal.

`admin_ip args`

Change the IP address of the administrative server in the configuration.

The `admin_ip` subcommand supports the following arguments:

`dir_mgr_DN` Directory Manager's DN.

`dir_mgr_password` Directory Manager's password.

`old_ip` Old IP.

`new_ip` New IP.

`port_#` Port number.

`bak2db backup_directory`

Restore the database from the most recent archived backup.

Specify `backup_directory` as the backup directory.

`bak2db-task args`

Restore the data to the database.

The `bak2db-task` subcommand supports the following arguments:

`[-a directory]` Directory where the backup files are stored. By default it is under `/var/ds5/slapd-serverID/bak`

`-D rootDN` User DN with root permissions, such as Directory Manager. The default is the DN of the directory manager which is read from the `nsslapd-root` attribute under `cn=config`.

<code>-j file</code>	<p>Password associated with the user DN. This option allows the password to be stored in clear text in the named file for scripting.</p> <p>This is considered insecure. Use with extreme caution.</p>
<code>[-t database_type]</code>	<p>Database type. The only possible database type is <code>ldbm</code>.</p>
<code>[-v]</code>	<p>Verbose mode.</p>
<code>-w password</code>	<p>Password associated with the user DN. Supplying the password on the command line is visible using the <code>/bin/ps</code> command. This is considered insecure. Use with extreme caution.</p> <p>The value <code>-</code> can be used in place the password. The program prompts the user for a password to be entered from the terminal.</p>

db2bak-task args

Back up the contents of the database. It creates an entry in the directory that launches this dynamic task. An entry is generated based upon the values provided for each option.

The `db2bak - task` subcommand supports the following arguments:

<code>[-a directory]</code>	<p>Directory where the backup files are stored. By default it is under <code>/var/ds5/slapd-serverID/bak</code>. The backup file is named according to the year-month-day-hour format (<code>YYYY_MM_DD_hhmmss</code>).</p>
<code>-D rootDN</code>	<p>User DN with root permissions, such as Directory</p>

	Manager. The default is the DN of the directory manager which is read from the <code>nsslapd-root</code> attribute under <code>cn=config</code> .
<code>-j file</code>	<p>Password associated with the user DN. This option allows the password to be stored in clear text in the named file for scripting.</p> <p>This is considered insecure. Use with extreme caution.</p>
<code>-t database_type</code>	Database type. The only possible database type is <code>ldbm</code> .
<code>[-v]</code>	Verbose mode.
<code>-w password</code>	<p>Password associated with the user DN. Supplying the password on the command line is visible using the <code>/bin/ps</code> command. This is considered insecure. Use with extreme caution.</p> <p>The value <code>-</code> can be used in place the password. The program prompts the user for a password to be entered from the terminal.</p>
<code>db2bak [backup_directory]</code>	<p>Create a backup of the current database contents. The server must be stopped to run this subcommand.</p> <p>The default is <code>/var/ds5/slapd-serverID/bak</code>. The backup file is named according to the year-month-day-hour format (<code>YYYY_MM_DD_hhmmss</code>).</p>
<code>db2index-text args</code>	<p>Create and generate the new set of indexes to be maintained following the modification of indexing entries in the <code>cn=config</code> configuration file.</p> <p>The <code>db2index-text</code> subcommand supports the following arguments:</p>

<code>-D <i>rootdn</i></code>	User DN with root permissions, such as Directory Manager.
<code>-j <i>file</i></code>	Password associated with the user DN. This option allows the password to be stored in clear text in the named file for scripting. This is considered insecure. Use with extreme caution.
<code>-n <i>backend_instance</i></code>	Instance to be indexed.
<code>[-t <i>attributeName</i>]</code>	Name of the attribute to be indexed. If omitted, all indexes defined for that instance are generated.
<code>[-v]</code>	Verbose mode.
<code>-w <i>password</i></code>	Password associated with the user DN. Supplying the password on the command line is visible using the <code>/bin/ps</code> command. This is considered insecure. Use with extreme caution.
	The value <code>-</code> can be used in place the password. The program prompts the user for a password to be entered from the terminal.

`db2ldif-task args`

Exports the contents of the database to LDIF. It creates an entry in the directory that launches this dynamic task. The entry is generated based upon the values you provide for each option. To run this subcommand the server must be running and either `-n backend_instance` or `-s include` suffix is required.

The `db2ldif-task` subcommand supports the following arguments:

<code>[-a <i>outputfile</i>]</code>	File name of the output LDIF file.
-------------------------------------	------------------------------------

-C	Only the main db file is used.
-D <i>rootDN</i>	User DN with root permissions, such as Directory Manager.
-j <i>file</i>	Password associated with the user DN. This option allows the password to be stored in clear text in the named file for scripting. This is considered insecure. Use with extreme caution.
[-M]	Output LDIF is stored in multiple files.
[-m]	Minimal base 64 encoding.
{-n <i>backend_instance</i> }*	Instance to be exported.
[-N]	Minimal base 64 encoding.
[-o]	Output LDIF to be stored in one file by default with each instance stored in <i>instance_file</i> name.
[-r]	Export replica.
[-s] <i>includesuffix</i> *	Suffix(es) to be included or to specify the subtrees to be included if -n has been used.
[-u]	Request that the unique ID is not exported.
[-U]	Request that the output LDIF is not folded.
-w <i>password</i>	Password associated with the user DN. Supplying the password on the command line is visible

		using the <code>/bin/ps</code> command. This is considered insecure. Use with extreme caution.
		The value <code>-</code> can be used in place the password. The program prompts the user for a password to be entered from the terminal.
	<code>{-x <i>excludesuffix</i>}*</code>	Suffixes to be excluded.
	<code>[-1]</code>	Delete, for reasons of backward compatibility the first line of the LDIF file that gives the version of the LDIF standard.
<code>db2ldif args</code>		Export the contents of the database to LDIF. You must specify either the <code>-n</code> or the <code>-s</code> option or both.
		The <code>db2ldif</code> subcommand supports the following options:
	<code>[-a <i>outputfile</i>]</code>	File name of the output LDIF file.
	<code>[-C]</code>	Only use the main db file.
	<code>[-m]</code>	Minimal base64 encoding.
	<code>[-M]</code>	Use of several files for storing the output LDIF with each instance stored in <i>instance_file name</i> (where file name is the file name specified for <code>-a</code> option).
	<code>{-n <i>backemd_instance</i>}*</code>	Instance to be exported.
	<code>[-N]</code>	Specify that the entry IDs are not to be included in the LDIF output. The entry IDs are necessary

		only if the <code>db2ldif</code> output is to be used as input to <code>db2index -text</code> .
	<code>[-r]</code>	Export replica.
	<code>{-s includesuffix}*</code>	Suffixes to be included or to specify the subtrees to be included if <code>-n</code> has been used.
	<code>[{-x excludesuffix}]*</code>	Suffixes to be excluded.
	<code>[-u]</code>	Request that the unique id is not exported.
	<code>[-U]</code>	Request that the output LDIF is not folded.
	<code>[-1]</code>	Delete, for reasons of backward compatibility, the first line of the LDIF file which gives the version of the LDIF standard.
<code>help [subcommand]</code>		Display <code>directoryserver</code> usage message or subcommand specific usage message.
<code>idsktune args</code>		Provide an easy and reliable way of checking the patch levels and kernel parameter settings for your system. You must install the Directory Server before you can run <code>idsktune</code> . It gathers information about the operating system, kernel, and TCP stack to make tuning recommendations.
		The <code>idsktune</code> subcommand supports the following arguments:
	<code>[-c]</code>	Client-specific tuning: the output only includes tuning recommendations for running a directory client application.
	<code>[-D]</code>	Debug mode: the output includes the commands it runs internally, preceded by <code>DEBUG</code> heading.
	<code>[-i installdir]</code>	The install directory.

	[-q]	Quiet mode. Output only includes tuning recommendations. OS version statements are omitted.
	[-v]	Version. Gives the build date identifying the version of the toll.
keyupg <i>args</i>		Upgrade the key from Lite to normal (only one way).
		The keyupg subcommand supports the following arguments:
	-k <i>key</i>	The key to be upgraded.
	-f <i>key_file_path</i>	The key file path.
ldif2db-task <i>args</i>		Import data to the directory. It create an entry in the directory that launches this dynamic task. The entry is generated based upon the values you provide for each option. The server must be running when you run this subcommand.
		The ldif2sb-task subcommand supports the following arguments:
	[-c]	Request that only the core db is created without attribute indexes.
	-D <i>rootDN</i>	User DN with root permissions, such as Directory Manager.
	[-g <i>string</i>]	Generation of a unique ID. Enter none for no unique ID to be generated and deterministic for the generated unique ID to be name-based. Generates a time based unique ID by default.
		If you use the deterministic generation to have a name-based unique ID, you can also

`-g deterministic namespace_id`

specify the namespace you want the server to use as follows:

where `namespace_id` is a string of characters in the following format

`00-xxxxxxxx-xxxxxxxx-xxxxxxxx-xxxxxxxx`

Use this option if you want to import the same LDIF file into two different directory servers, and you want the contents of both directories to have the same set of unique IDs. If unique IDs already exist in the LDIF file you are importing, then the existing IDs are imported to the server regardless of the options you have specified.

`[-G namespace_id]`

Generate a namespace ID as a name-based unique ID. This is the same as specifying `-g deterministic`.

`{-i filename}*`

File name of the input LDIF files. When you import multiple files, they are imported in the order in which you specify them on the command line.

`-j file`

Password associated with the user DN. This option allows the password to be stored in clear text in the named file for scripting. This is considered insecure. Use with extreme caution.

`-n backend_instance`

Instance to be imported.

	[-O]	Request that only the core db is created without attribute indexes.
	{-s <i>includesuffix</i> }*	Suffixes to be included. This argument can also be used to specify the subtrees to be included with -n.
	-w <i>password</i>	Password associated with the user DN. Supplying the password on the command line is visible using the /bin/ps command. This is considered insecure. Use with extreme caution.
		The value - can be used in place the password. The program prompts the user for a password to be entered from the terminal.
	[{-x <i>excludesuffix</i> }*]	
	[-v]	Verbose mode.
ldif args		Format LDIF files, and create base 64 encoded attribute values. With Base 64 Encoding you can represent binary data, such as a JPEG image, in LDIF by using base 64 encoding. You identify base 64 encoded data by using the :: symbol. The <code>ldif</code> subcommand takes any input and formats it with the correct line continuation and appropriate attribute information. The subcommand also senses whether the input requires base 64 encoding.
		The <code>ldif</code> subcommand supports the following arguments
	[-b]	Interpret the entire input as a single binary value. If -b is not present, each line is considered to be a separate input value.
	[<i>attrtype</i>]	If -b is specified, the output is <code>attrtype:: <base 64 encoded</code>

value.

ldif2db args

Import the data to the directory. To run this subcommand the server must be stopped. Note that *ldif2db* supports LDIF version 1 specifications. You can load an attribute using the URL specifier notation, for example:

```
jpegphoto:file:///tmp/myphoto.jpg
```

`[-c]` Merge chunk size.

`[-g string]` Generation of a unique ID. Type none for no unique ID to be generated and deterministic for the generated unique ID to be name-based. By default a time based unique ID is generated.

If you use the deterministic generation to have a name-based unique ID, you can also specify the namespace you want the server to use as follows:

```
-g deterministic namespace_id
```

where *namespace_id* is a string of characters in the following format:

```
00-xxxxxxxx-xxxxxxxx-xxxxxxxx-xxxxxxxx
```

Use this option if you want to import the same LDIF file into two different directory servers, and you want the contents of both directories to have the same set of unique IDs. If unique IDs already exist in the LDIF file you are importing, then the existing IDs are imported to the server regardless of the options you have specified.

	<code>[-G <i>naemspace_id</i>]</code>	Generate a namespace ID as a name-based unique ID. This is the same as specifying the <code>-g deterministic</code> option.
	<code>{- <i>filename</i>}*</code>	File name of the input LDIF file(s). When you import multiple files, they are imported in the order in which you specify them on the command line.
	<code>-n <i>backend_instance</i></code>	Instance to be imported.
	<code>[-O]</code>	Request that only the core db is created without attribute indexes.
	<code>{-s <i>includesuffix</i>}*</code>	Suffixes to be included or to specify the subtrees to be included if <code>-n</code> has been used.
	<code>[{-x <i>excludesuffix</i>}*]</code>	Suffixes to be excluded
<code>ldif2ldap</code>	<code><i>rootDN password filename</i></code>	Perform an import operation over LDAP to the Directory Server. To run this subcommand the server must be running.
		The <code>ldif2ldap</code> subcommand supports the following arguments:
	<code><i>rootdn</i></code>	User DN with root permissions, such as Directory Manager.
	<code><i>password</i></code>	Password associated with the user DN.
	<code><i>filename</i></code>	File name of the file to be imported. When you import multiple files, they are imported in the order in which you specify them on the command line.
<code>magt</code>	<code>CONFIG INIT</code>	Start SNMP master agent. The Config and INIT files are in <code>/usr/ipplanet/ds5/plugins/snmp/magt</code> . For more information, see the .
		The <code>magt</code> subcommand supports the following options:

	CONFIG	The CONFIG file defines the community and the manager that master agent works with. Specify the manager value as a valid system name or an IP address.
	INIT	The INIT file is a nonvolatile file that contains information from the MIB-II system group, including system location and contact information. If INIT doesn't already exist, starting the master agent for the first time creates it. An invalid manager name in the CONFIG file causes the master agent start-up to fail.
monitor		Retrieves performance monitoring information using the <code>ldapsearch</code> command-line utility.
mmldif <i>args</i>		<p>Combine multiple LDIF files into a single authoritative set of entries. Typically each LDIF file is from a master server cooperating in a multi master replication agreement. [e.g. masters that refuse to sync up for whatever reason]. Optionally, it can generate LDIF change files that could be applied to original to bring it up to date with authoritative. At least two input files must be specified.</p> <p>The <code>mmldif</code> subcommand supports the following arguments:</p> <p>[-c <i>inputfile</i> ...] Write a change file (.delta) for each input file. Specify <i>inputfile</i> as the input LDIF files.</p> <p>[-D] Print debugging information.</p> <p>[-o <i>out.ldif</i>] Write authoritative data to this file.</p>
nativetoascii <i>args</i>		<p>Convert one language encoding to another. For example, convert a native language to UTF-8 format.</p> <p>The <code>nativetoascii</code> subcommand supports the following options:</p> <p>-d <i>Encodings Directory</i> Path to the</p>

	directory which contains the conv directory
<code>[-i <i>input_filename</i> -o <i>output_filename</i>]</code>	The input file name and output file name.
<code>-l</code>	List supported encodings
<code>-r</code>	Replace existing files.
<code>-s <i>suffix</i></code>	Suffix to be mapped to the backend.
<code>-s <i>SourceEncoding</i></code>	Source Encoding of input stream.
<code>-t <i>TargetEncoding</i></code>	Target Encoding of output stream.
<code>-v</code>	Verbose output.
<code>pwdhash <i>args</i></code>	Print the encrypted form of a password using one of the server's encryption algorithms. If a user cannot log in, you can use this script to compare the user's password to the password stored in the directory.
	The <code>pwdhash</code> subcommand supports the following arguments:

	<i>-c comparepwd -s scheme</i>	The available schemes are SSHA, SHA, CRYPT and CLEARE. It generates the encrypted passwords according to scheme's algorithm. The <i>-c</i> specifies the encrypted password to be compared with. The result of comparison is either OK or doesn't match.
	<i>-D instance-dir</i>	The instance directory.
	<i>[-H]</i>	The passwords are hex-encoded.
	<i>password ...</i>	The clear passwords to generate encrypted form from or to be compared with.
restart		Restarts the directory server. When the <i>-s</i> option is not specified, restarts all instances of servers. When the <i>-s</i> option is specified, restarts the server specified by <i>-s</i> .
	restart-admin	Restarts the administration server.
restoreconfig		Restores the most recently saved Administration Server configuration information to the NetscapeRoot partition under <i>/var/ds5/slapd-serverID/confbak</i> .
sagt -c CONFIG		Start proxy SNMP agent. For more information, see the . The <i>sagt</i> subcommand supports the following options:

	<i>-c configfile</i>	The CONFIG file includes the port that the SNMP daemon listens to. It also needs to include the MIB trees and traps that the proxy SNMP agent forwards. Edit the CONFIG file located in <code>/usr/ipplanet/ds5/plugins/snmp/sagt.</code>
saveconfig		Saves the administration server configuration information to the <code>/var/ds5/slapd-serverID/confbak</code> directory.
setup [-f <i>configuration_file</i>]		Configures an instance of the directory server or administration server. Creates a basic configuration for the directory server and the administrative server that is used to manage the directory. The setup subcommand has two modes of operation. You can invoke it with a curses-based interaction to gather input. Alternatively, you can provide input in a configuration file using the -f option. The setup subcommand supports the following option: <i>-f configuration_file</i> Specifies the configuration file for silent installation.
start		Starts the directory server. When the -s option is not specified, starts servers of all instances. When the -s option is specified, starts the server instance specified by -s.
start-admin		Starts the directory server. When the -s option is not specified, restarts all instances of servers. When the -s option is specified, restarts the server specified by -s.
startconsole		Starts the directory console..
stop		Stops the directory server. When the -s option is not specified, restarts all instances of servers. When the -s option is specified, restarts the server specified by -s.
stop-admin		Stop the administration server.

<code>suffix2instance { -s <i>suffix</i>}</code>	Map a suffix to a backend name. Specify -s <i>suffix</i> as the suffix to be mapped to the backend.								
<code>uninstall</code>	Uninstalls the directory server and the administration server. This subcommand stops servers of all instances and removes all the changes created by setup.								
<code>vlvindex <i>args</i></code>	Create virtual list view (VLV) indexes, known in the Directory Server Console as Browsing Indexes. The server must be stopped beforehand. The <code>vlvindex</code> subcommand supports the following arguments: <table><tr><td><code>-d <i>debug_level</i></code></td><td>Specify the debug level to use during index creation. Debug levels are defined in <code>nsslapd-errorlog-level</code> (error Log Level). See the .</td></tr><tr><td><code>-n <i>backend_instance</i></code></td><td>Name of the database containing the entries to index.</td></tr><tr><td><code>-s <i>suffix</i></code></td><td>Name of the suffix containing the entries to index.</td></tr><tr><td><code>-T <i>VLVTag</i></code></td><td>Name of the database containing the entries to index.</td></tr></table>	<code>-d <i>debug_level</i></code>	Specify the debug level to use during index creation. Debug levels are defined in <code>nsslapd-errorlog-level</code> (error Log Level). See the .	<code>-n <i>backend_instance</i></code>	Name of the database containing the entries to index.	<code>-s <i>suffix</i></code>	Name of the suffix containing the entries to index.	<code>-T <i>VLVTag</i></code>	Name of the database containing the entries to index.
<code>-d <i>debug_level</i></code>	Specify the debug level to use during index creation. Debug levels are defined in <code>nsslapd-errorlog-level</code> (error Log Level). See the .								
<code>-n <i>backend_instance</i></code>	Name of the database containing the entries to index.								
<code>-s <i>suffix</i></code>	Name of the suffix containing the entries to index.								
<code>-T <i>VLVTag</i></code>	Name of the database containing the entries to index.								

Options Options for the `directoryserver` command itself must appear before the subcommand argument.

The following options are supported:

<code>-s <i>server-instance</i></code>	
<code>-server <i>server-instance</i></code>	The server instance name. Specify the directory server instance to process the command against. For some of the listed subcommands the server instance is optional and for other subcommands it is a required option.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Starting All Instances of the Directory Servers

The following command starts all the instances of the directory servers:

```
example% directoryserver start
```

EXAMPLE 2 Starting the Instances of myhost of the Directory Server

The following command starts the instances myhost of the directory server.

```
example% directoryserver -s myhost start
```

EXAMPLE 3 Running the Monitor Tool and Outputting the Current Status

The following command runs the monitor tool and output the current status of the ephesus directory instance.

```
example% directoryserver -s ephesus monitor
```

EXAMPLE 4 Running the idsktune Tool and Outputting Performance Tuning Information

The following command runs the idsktune tool and outputs performance tuning information:

```
example% directoryserver idsktune
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.
non-zero An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	IPLTdsr, IPLTdsu

Name disks – creates /dev entries for hard disks attached to the system

Synopsis /usr/sbin/disks [-C] [-r *rootdir*]

Description [devfsadm\(1M\)](#) is now the preferred command for /dev and should be used instead of disks.

disks creates symbolic links in the /dev/dsk and /dev/rdisk directories pointing to the actual disk device special files under the /devices directory tree. It performs the following steps:

1. disks searches the kernel device tree to see what hard disks are attached to the system. It notes the /devices pathnames for the slices on the drive and determines the physical component of the corresponding /dev/dsk or /dev/rdisk name.
2. The /dev/dsk and /dev/rdisk directories are checked for disk entries – that is, symbolic links with names of the form *cN[tN]dNsN*, or *cN[tN]dNpN*, where *N* represents a decimal number. *cN* is the logical controller number, an arbitrary number assigned by this program to designate a particular disk controller. The first controller found on the first occasion this program is run on a system, is assigned number 0. *tN* is the bus-address number of a subsidiary controller attached to a peripheral bus such as SCSI or IPI (the target number for SCSI, and the *facility* number for IPI controllers). *dN* is the number of the disk attached to the controller. *sN* is the *slice* number on the disk. *pN* is the FDISK partition number used by [fdisk\(1M\)](#). (x86 Only)
3. If only some of the disk entries are found in /dev/dsk for a disk that has been found under the /devices directory tree, disks creates the missing symbolic links. If none of the entries for a particular disk are found in /dev/dsk, disks checks to see if any entries exist for other disks attached to the same controller, and if so, creates new entries using the same controller number as used for other disks on the same controller. If no other /dev/dsk entries are found for slices of disks belonging to the same physical controller as the current disk, disks assigns the lowest-unused controller number and creates entries for the disk slices using this newly-assigned controller number.

disks is run automatically each time a reconfiguration-boot is performed or when [add_drv\(1M\)](#) is executed. When invoking disks manually, first run [drvconfig\(1M\)](#) to ensure /devices is consistent with the current device configuration.

Notice to Driver Writers disks considers all devices with a node type of DDI_NT_BLOCK, DDI_NT_BLOCK_CHAN, DDI_NT_CD, DDI_NT_BLOCK_WWN or DDI_NT_CD_CHAN to be disk devices. disks requires the minor name of disk devices obey the following format conventions.

The minor name for block interfaces consists of a single lowercase ASCII character, a through u, representing the slices and the primary partitions. The minor name for logical drive block interfaces consists of the strings p5 through p36. The minor name for character (raw) interfaces consists of a single lowercase ASCII character, a through a, followed by the string , raw, representing the slices and the primary partitions. The minor name for logical drive character (raw) interfaces consists of the string p5 through p36 followed by , raw.

disks performs the following translations:

- a through p to s0 through s15
- q through u to p0 through p4
- p5 through p36 to p5 through p36

SPARC drivers should only use the first eight slices: a through h, while x86 drivers can use a through u, with q through u corresponding to `fdisk(1M)` primary partitions. q represents the entire disk, while r, s, t, and u represent up to four additional primary partitions. For logical drives, p5 to p36 correspond to the 32 logical drives that are supported. The device nodes for logical drives change dynamically as and when they are created or deleted.

To prevent `disks` from attempting to automatically generate links for a device, drivers must specify a private node type and refrain from using a node type: `DDI_NT_BLOCK`, `DDI_NT_BLOCK_CHAN`, `DDI_NT_CD`, or `DDI_NT_CD_CHAN` when calling `ddi_create_minor_node(9F)`.

Options The following options are supported:

- C Causes `disks` to remove any invalid links after adding any new entries to `/dev/dsk` and `/dev/rdisk`. Invalid links are links which refer to non-existent disk nodes that have been removed, powered off, or are otherwise inaccessible.
- r *rootdir* Causes `disks` to presume that the `/dev/dsk`, `/dev/rdisk` and `/devices` directory trees are found under *rootdir*, not directly under `.`

Errors If `disks` finds entries of a particular logical controller linked to different physical controllers, it prints an error message and exits without making any changes to the `/dev` directory, since it cannot determine which of the two alternative logical-to-physical mappings is correct. The links should be manually corrected or removed before another reconfiguration-boot is performed.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Creating Block and Character Minor Devices

The following example demonstrates creating the block and character minor devices from within the `xkdisk` driver's `attach(9E)` function.

```
#include <sys/dkio.h>
/*
 * Create the minor number by combining the instance number
 * with the slice number.
 */
#define MINOR_NUM(i, s) ((i) << 4 | (s))

int
xkdiskattach(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_attach_cmd_t cmd)
{
    int instance, slice;
    char name[8];
```

EXAMPLE 1 Creating Block and Character Minor Devices (Continued)

```

/* other stuff in attach... */

instance = ddi_get_instance(dip);
for (slice = 0; slice < V_NUMPAR; slice++) {
/*
 * create block device interface
 */
sprintf(name, "%c", slice + 'a');
ddi_create_minor_node(dip, name, S_IFBLK,
    MINOR_NUM(instance, slice), DDI_NT_BLOCK_CHAN, 0);

/*
 * create the raw (character) device interface
 */
sprintf(name, "%c,raw", slice + 'a');
ddi_create_minor_node(dip, name, S_IFCHR,
    MINOR_NUM(instance, slice), DDI_NT_BLOCK_CHAN, 0);
}
}

```

Installing the `xkdisk` disk driver on a Sun Fire 4800, with the driver controlling a SCSI disk (target 3 attached to an `isp(7D)` SCSI HBA) and performing a reconfiguration-boot (causing disks to be run) creates the following special files in `/devices`.

```

# ls -l /devices/ssm@0,0/pci@18,700000/pci@1/SUNW,isp@0,0/
brw-r----- 1 root sys 32, 16 Aug 29 00:02 xkdisk@3,0:a
crw-r----- 1 root sys 32, 16 Aug 29 00:02 xkdisk@3,0:a,raw
brw-r----- 1 root sys 32, 17 Aug 29 00:02 xkdisk@3,0:b
crw-r----- 1 root sys 32, 17 Aug 29 00:02 xkdisk@3,0:b,raw
brw-r----- 1 root sys 32, 18 Aug 29 00:02 xkdisk@3,0:c
crw-r----- 1 root sys 32, 18 Aug 29 00:02 xkdisk@3,0:c,raw
brw-r----- 1 root sys 32, 19 Aug 29 00:02 xkdisk@3,0:d
crw-r----- 1 root sys 32, 19 Aug 29 00:02 xkdisk@3,0:d,raw
brw-r----- 1 root sys 32, 20 Aug 29 00:02 xkdisk@3,0:e
crw-r----- 1 root sys 32, 20 Aug 29 00:02 xkdisk@3,0:e,raw
brw-r----- 1 root sys 32, 21 Aug 29 00:02 xkdisk@3,0:f
crw-r----- 1 root sys 32, 21 Aug 29 00:02 xkdisk@3,0:f,raw
brw-r----- 1 root sys 32, 22 Aug 29 00:02 xkdisk@3,0:g
crw-r----- 1 root sys 32, 22 Aug 29 00:02 xkdisk@3,0:g,raw
brw-r----- 1 root sys 32, 23 Aug 29 00:02 xkdisk@3,0:h
crw-r----- 1 root sys 32, 23 Aug 29 00:02 xkdisk@3,0:h,raw

```

`/dev/dsk` will contain the disk entries to the block device nodes in `/devices`

```

# ls -l /dev/dsk
/dev/dsk/c0t3d0s0 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkdisk@3,0:a

```

EXAMPLE 1 Creating Block and Character Minor Devices (Continued)

```

/dev/dsk/c0t3d0s1 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkdisk@3,0:b
/dev/dsk/c0t3d0s2 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkdisk@3,0:c
/dev/dsk/c0t3d0s3 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkdisk@3,0:d
/dev/dsk/c0t3d0s4 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkdisk@3,0:e
/dev/dsk/c0t3d0s5 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkdisk@3,0:f
/dev/dsk/c0t3d0s6 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkdisk@3,0:g
/dev/dsk/c0t3d0s7 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkdisk@3,0:h

```

and /dev/rdsk will contain the disk entries for the character device nodes in /devices

```

# ls -l /dev/rdsk
/dev/rdsk/c0t3d0s0 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkdisk@3,0:a,raw
/dev/rdsk/c0t3d0s1 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkdisk@3,0:b,raw
/dev/rdsk/c0t3d0s2 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkdisk@3,0:c,raw
/dev/rdsk/c0t3d0s3 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkdisk@3,0:d,raw
/dev/rdsk/c0t3d0s4 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkdisk@3,0:e,raw
/dev/rdsk/c0t3d0s5 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkdisk@3,0:f,raw
/dev/rdsk/c0t3d0s6 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkdisk@3,0:g,raw
/dev/rdsk/c0t3d0s7 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkdisk@3,0:h,raw

```

Files /dev/dsk/* Disk entries (block device interface)
 /dev/rdsk/* Disk entries (character device interface)
 /devices/* Device special files (minor device nodes)

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [add_drv\(1M\)](#), [devfsadm\(1M\)](#), [fdisk\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [isp\(7D\)](#), [devfs\(7FS\)](#), [dkio\(7I\)](#), [attach\(9E\)](#), [ddi_create_minor_node\(9F\)](#)

Writing Device Drivers

Bugs disks silently ignores malformed minor device names.

Name diskscan – perform surface analysis

Synopsis diskscan [-W] [-n] [-y] *raw_device*

Description diskscan is used by the system administrator to perform surface analysis on a portion of a hard disk. The disk portion may be a raw partition or slice; it is identified using its raw device name. By default, the specified portion of the disk is read (non-destructive) and errors reported on standard error. In addition, a progress report is printed on standard out. The list of bad blocks should be saved in a file and later fed into [addbadsec\(1M\)](#), which will remap them.

Options The following options are supported:

- n Causes diskscan to suppress linefeeds when printing progress information on standard out.
- W Causes diskscan to perform write and read surface analysis. This type of surface analysis is destructive and should be invoked with caution.
- y Causes diskscan to suppress the warning regarding destruction of existing data that is issued when -W is used.

Operands The following operands are supported:

raw_device The address of the disk drive (see FILES).

Files The raw device should be /dev/rdisk/c?[t?]d?[ps]?. See [disks\(1M\)](#) for an explanation of SCSI and IDE device naming conventions.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Architecture	x86
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [addbadsec\(1M\)](#), [disks\(1M\)](#), [fdisk\(1M\)](#), [fmthard\(1M\)](#), [format\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes The [format\(1M\)](#) utility is available to format, label, analyze, and repair SCSI disks. This utility is included with the diskscan, [addbadsec\(1M\)](#), [fdisk\(1M\)](#), and [fmthard\(1M\)](#) commands available for x86. To format an IDE disk, use the DOS format utility; however, to label, analyze, or repair IDE disks on x86 systems, use the Solaris [format\(1M\)](#) utility.

Name dispadmin – process scheduler administration

Synopsis dispadmin -l
 dispadmin -c *class* [-g [-r *res*] | -s *file*]
 dispadmin -d [*class*]

Description The `dispadmin` command displays or changes process scheduler parameters while the system is running.

`dispadmin` does limited checking on the values supplied in *file* to verify that they are within their required bounds. The checking, however, does not attempt to analyze the effect that the new values have on the performance of the system. Inappropriate values can have a negative effect on system performance. (See *System Administration Guide: Advanced Administration*.)

Options The following options are supported:

-c *class*

Specifies the class whose parameters are to be displayed or changed. Valid *class* values are: RT for the real-time class, TS for the time-sharing class, IA for the inter-active class, FSS for the fair-share class, and FX for the fixed-priority class. The time-sharing and inter-active classes share the same scheduler, so changes to the scheduling parameters of one will change those of the other.

-d [*class*]

Sets or displays the name of the default scheduling class to be used on reboot when starting `svc:/system/scheduler:default`. If class name is not specified, the name and description of the current default scheduling class is displayed. If class name is specified and is a valid scheduling class name, then it is saved in `dispadmin`'s private configuration file `/etc/dispadmin.conf`. Only super-users can set the default scheduling class.

-g

Gets the parameters for the specified class and writes them to the standard output. Parameters for the real-time class are described in [rt_dptbl\(4\)](#). Parameters for the time-sharing and inter-active classes are described in [ts_dptbl\(4\)](#). Parameters for the fair-share class are described in [FSS\(7\)](#). Parameters for the fixed-priority class are described in [fx_dptbl\(4\)](#).

The -g and -s options are mutually exclusive: you may not retrieve the table at the same time you are overwriting it.

-l

Lists the scheduler classes currently configured in the system.

-r *res*

When using the -g option you may also use the -r option to specify a resolution to be used for outputting the time quantum values. If no resolution is specified, time quantum values are in milliseconds. If *res* is specified it must be a positive integer between 1 and 1000000000 inclusive, and the resolution used is the reciprocal of *res* in seconds. For

example, a *res* value of 10 yields time quantum values expressed in tenths of a second; a *res* value of 1000000 yields time quantum values expressed in microseconds. If the time quantum cannot be expressed as an integer in the specified resolution, it is rounded up to the next integral multiple of the specified resolution.

-s *file*

Sets scheduler parameters for the specified class using the values in *file*. These values overwrite the current values in memory—they become the parameters that control scheduling of processes in the specified class. The values in *file* must be in the format output by the **-g** option. Moreover, the values must describe a table that is the same size (has same number of priority levels) as the table being overwritten. Super-user privileges are required in order to use the **-s** option.

Specify time quantum values for scheduling classes in system clock ticks, and not in constant-time units. Time quantum values are based on the value of the kernel's `hz` variable. If kernel variable `hires_tick` is set to 1 to get higher resolution clock behavior, the actual time quanta will be reduced by the order of 10.

The **-g** and **-s** options are mutually exclusive: you may not retrieve the table at the same time you are overwriting it.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Retrieving the Current Scheduler Parameters for the real-time class

The following command retrieves the current scheduler parameters for the real-time class from kernel memory and writes them to the standard output. Time quantum values are in microseconds.

```
dispadmin -c RT -g -r 1000000
```

EXAMPLE 2 Overwriting the Current Scheduler Parameters for the Real-time Class

The following command overwrites the current scheduler parameters for the real-time class with the values specified in `rt.config`.

```
dispadmin -c RT -s rt.config
```

EXAMPLE 3 Retrieving the Current Scheduler Parameters for the Time-sharing Class

The following command retrieves the current scheduler parameters for the time-sharing class from kernel memory and writes them to the standard output. Time quantum values are in nanoseconds.

```
dispadmin -c TS -g -r 1000000000
```

EXAMPLE 4 Overwriting the Current Scheduler Parameters for the Time-sharing Class

The following command overwrites the current scheduler parameters for the time-sharing class with the values specified in `ts.config`.

```
dispadmin -c TS -s ts.config
```

Files `/etc/dispadmin.conf`
Possible location for argument to `-s` option.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [prioctl\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [prioctl\(2\)](#), [fx_dptbl\(4\)](#), [rt_dptbl\(4\)](#), [ts_dptbl\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [FSS\(7\)](#)

System Administration Guide: Basic Administration Programming Interfaces Guide

Diagnostics `dispadmin` prints an appropriate diagnostic message if it fails to overwrite the current scheduler parameters due to lack of required permissions or a problem with the specified input file.

Notes The default scheduling class setting facility is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/scheduler:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). Note that disabling the service while it is running will not change anything. The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name dladm – administer data links

Synopsis dladm show-link [-P] [-s [-i *interval*]] [[-p] -o *field[,...]*] [*link*]
 dladm rename-link [-R *root-dir*] *link new-link*

dladm delete-phys *phys-link*
 dladm show-phys [-P] [-m] [[-p] -o *field[,...]*] [-H] [*phys-link*]

dladm create-aggr [-t] [-R *root-dir*] [-P *policy*] [-L *mode*]
 [-T *time*] [-u *address*] -l *ether-link1* [-l *ether-link2...*] *aggr-link*
 dladm modify-aggr [-t] [-R *root-dir*] [-P *policy*] [-L *mode*]
 [-T *time*] [-u *address*] *aggr-link*
 dladm delete-aggr [-t] [-R *root-dir*] *aggr-link*
 dladm add-aggr [-t] [-R *root-dir*] -l *ether-link1* [-l *ether-link2...*]
aggr-link
 dladm remove-aggr [-t] [-R *root-dir*] -l *ether-link1* [-l *ether-link2...*]
aggr-link
 dladm show-aggr [-PLx] [-s [-i *interval*]] [[-p] -o *field[,...]*]
 [*aggr-link*]

dladm create-bridge [-P *protect*] [-R *root-dir*] [-p *priority*]
 [-m *max-age*] [-h *hello-time*] [-d *forward-delay*] [-f *force-protocol*]
 [-l *link...*] *bridge-name*

dladm modify-bridge [-P *protect*] [-R *root-dir*] [-p *priority*]
 [-m *max-age*] [-h *hello-time*] [-d *forward-delay*] [-f *force-protocol*]
bridge-name

dladm delete-bridge [-R *root-dir*] *bridge-name*

dladm add-bridge [-R *root-dir*] -l *link* [-l *link...*] *bridge-name*

dladm remove-bridge [-R *root-dir*] -l *link* [-l *link...*] *bridge-name*

dladm show-bridge [-flt] [-s [-i *interval*]] [[-p] -o *field[,...]*]
 [*bridge-name*]

dladm create-vlan [-ft] [-R *root-dir*] -l *ether-link* -v *vid* [*vlan-link*]
 dladm delete-vlan [-t] [-R *root-dir*] *vlan-link*
 dladm show-vlan [-P] [[-p] -o *field[,...]*] [*vlan-link*]

dladm scan-wifi [[-p] -o *field[,...]*] [*wifi-link*]
 dladm connect-wifi [-e *ssid*] [-i *bssid*] [-k *key,...*]
 [-s none | wep | wpa] [-a open | shared] [-b bss | ibss] [-c]
 [-m a | b | g | n] [-T *time*] [*wifi-link*]
 dladm disconnect-wifi [-a] [*wifi-link*]
 dladm show-wifi [[-p] -o *field[,...]*] [*wifi-link*]

dladm show-ether [-x] [[-p] -o *field[,...]*] [*ether-link*]

dladm set-linkprop [-t] [-R *root-dir*] -p *prop=value[,...]* *link*
 dladm reset-linkprop [-t] [-R *root-dir*] [-p *prop[,...]*] *link*
 dladm show-linkprop [-P] [[-c] -o *field[,...]*] [-p *prop[,...]*] [*link*]


```

dladm create-secobj [-t] [-R root-dir] [-f file] -c class secobj
dladm delete-secobj [-t] [-R root-dir] secobj[,...]
dladm show-secobj [-P] [[-p] -o field[,...]] [secobj,...]

dladm create-vnic [-t] -l link [-R root-dir] [-m value | auto |
    {factory [-n slot-identifier]} | {vrrp -A {inet | inet6} -V vrid}
    | {random [-r prefix]}] [-v vlan-id] [-p prop=value[,...]] vnic-link
dladm delete-vnic [-t] [-R root-dir] vnic-link
dladm show-vnic [-pP] [-s [-i interval]] [-o field[,...]]
    [-l link] [vnic-link]

dladm create-etherstub [-t] [-R root-dir] etherstub
dladm delete-etherstub [-t] [-R root-dir] etherstub
dladm show-etherstub [etherstub]

dladm create-iptun [-t] [-R root-dir] -T type [-s tsrc] [-d tdst]
    iptun-link
dladm modify-iptun [-t] [-R root-dir] [-s tsrc] [-d tdst] iptun-link
dladm delete-iptun [-t] [-R root-dir] iptun-link
dladm show-iptun [-P] [[-p] -o field[,...]] [iptun-link]

dladm show-usage [-a] -f filename [-p plotfile -F format] [-s time]
    [-e time] [link]

```

Description The `dladm` command is used to administer data-links. A data-link is represented in the system as a STREAMS DLPI (v2) interface which can be plumbed under protocol stacks such as TCP/IP. Each data-link relies on either a single network device or an aggregation of devices to send packets to or receive packets from a network.

Each `dladm` subcommand operates on one of the following objects:

link

A datalink, identified by a name. In general, the name can use any alphanumeric characters (or the underscore, `_`), but must start with an alphabetic character and end with a number. A datalink name can be at most 31 characters, and the ending number must be between 0 and 4294967294 (inclusive). The ending number must not begin with a zero. Datalink names between 3 and 8 characters are recommended.

Some subcommands operate only on certain types or classes of datalinks. For those cases, the following object names are used:

phys-link

A physical datalink.

vlan-link

A VLAN datalink.

aggr-link

An aggregation datalink (or a key; see NOTES).

ether-link

A physical Ethernet datalink.

wifi-link

A WiFi datalink.

vnic-link

A virtual network interface created on a link or an etherstub. It is a pseudo device that can be treated as if it were a network interface card on a machine.

iptun-link

An IP tunnel link.

dev

A network device, identified by concatenation of a driver name and an instance number.

etherstub

An Ethernet stub can be used instead of a physical NIC to create VNICs. VNICs created on an etherstub will appear to be connected through a virtual switch, allowing complete virtual networks to be built without physical hardware.

bridge

A bridge instance, identified by an administratively-chosen name. The name may use any alphanumeric characters or the underscore, `_`, but must start and end with an alphabetic character. A bridge name can be at most 31 characters. The name `default` is reserved, as are all names starting with `SUNW`.

Note that appending a zero (`0`) to a bridge name produces a valid link name, used for observability.

secobj

A secure object, identified by an administratively-chosen name. The name can use any alphanumeric characters, as well as underscore (`_`), period (`.`), and hyphen (`-`). A secure object name can be at most 32 characters.

Options Each `dladm` subcommand has its own set of options. However, many of the subcommands have the following as a common option:

`-R root-dir, --root-dir=root-dir`

Specifies an alternate root directory where the operation—such as creation, deletion, or renaming—should apply.

SUBCOMMANDS The following subcommands are supported:

`dladm show-link [-P] [-s [-i interval]] [[-p] -o field[,...]][link]`

Show link configuration information (the default) or statistics, either for all datalinks or for the specified link *link*. By default, the system is configured with one datalink for each known network device.

`-o field[,...], --output=field[,...]`

A case-insensitive, comma-separated list of output fields to display. When not modified by the `-s` option (described below), the field name must be one of the fields listed below, or the special value `all` to display all fields. By default (without `-o`), `show-link` displays all fields.

LINK

The name of the datalink.

CLASS

The class of the datalink. `dladm` distinguishes between the following classes:

phys

A physical datalink. The `show-phys` subcommand displays more detail for this class of datalink.

aggr

An IEEE 802.3ad link aggregation. The `show-aggr` subcommand displays more detail for this class of datalink.

vlan

A VLAN datalink. The `show-vlan` subcommand displays more detail for this class of datalink.

vnic

A virtual network interface. The `show-vnic` subcommand displays more detail for this class of datalink.

MTU

The maximum transmission unit size for the datalink being displayed.

STATE

The link state of the datalink. The state can be `up`, `down`, or `unknown`.

BRIDGE

The name of the bridge to which this link is assigned, if any.

OVER

The physical datalink(s) over which the datalink is operating. This applies to `aggr`, `bridge`, and `vlan` classes of datalinks. A VLAN is created over a single physical datalink, a bridge has multiple attached links, and an aggregation is comprised of one or more physical datalinks.

When the `-o` option is used in conjunction with the `-s` option, used to display link statistics, the field name must be one of the fields listed below, or the special value `all` to display all fields

LINK

The name of the datalink.

IPACKETS

Number of packets received on this link.

RBYTES

Number of bytes received on this link.

IERRORS

Number of input errors.

OPACKETS

Number of packets sent on this link.

OBYTES

Number of bytes received on this link.

OERRORS

Number of output errors.

-p, --parseable

Display using a stable machine-parseable format. The **-o** option is required with **-p**. See “Parseable Output Format”, below.

-P, --persistent

Display the persistent link configuration.

-s, --statistics

Display link statistics.

-i interval, --interval=interval

Used with the **-s** option to specify an interval, in seconds, at which statistics should be displayed. If this option is not specified, statistics will be displayed only once.

dladm rename-link [-R root-dir] link new-link

Rename *link* to *new-link*. This is used to give a link a meaningful name, or to associate existing link configuration such as link properties of a removed device with a new device. See the **EXAMPLES** section for specific examples of how this subcommand is used.

-R root-dir, --root-dir=root-dir

See “Options,” above.

dladm delete-phys phys-link

This command is used to delete the persistent configuration of a link associated with physical hardware which has been removed from the system. See the **EXAMPLES** section.

dladm show-phys [-P] [[-p] -o field[,...]] [-H] [phys-link]

Show the physical device and attributes of all physical links, or of the named physical link. Without **-P**, only physical links that are available on the running system are displayed.

-H

Show hardware resource usage, as returned by the NIC driver. Output from **-H** displays the following elements:

LINK

A physical device corresponding to a NIC driver.

GROUP

A collection of rings.

GROUPTYPE

RX or TX. All rings in a group are of the same group type.

RINGS

A hardware resource used by a data link, subject to assignment by a driver to different groups.

CLIENTS

MAC clients that are using the rings within a group.

-o *field*, --output=*field*

A case-insensitive, comma-separated list of output fields to display. The field name must be one of the fields listed below, or the special value `all`, to display all fields. For each link, the following fields can be displayed:

LINK

The name of the datalink.

MEDIA

The media type provided by the physical datalink.

STATE

The state of the link. This can be up, down, or unknown.

SPEED

The current speed of the link, in megabits per second.

DUPLEX

For Ethernet links, the full/half duplex status of the link is displayed if the link state is up. The duplex is displayed as unknown in all other cases.

DEVICE

The name of the physical device under this link.

-p, --parseable

Display using a stable machine-parseable format. The `-o` option is required with `-p`. See “Parseable Output Format”, below.

-P, --persistent

This option displays persistent configuration for all links, including those that have been removed from the system. The output provides a `FLAGS` column in which the `r` flag indicates that the physical device associated with a physical link has been removed. For such links, `delete-phys` can be used to purge the link's configuration from the system.

```
dladm create-aggr [-t] [-R root-dir] [-P policy] [-L mode] [-T time] [-u address] -l
ether-link1 [-l ether-link2...] aggr-link
```

Combine a set of links into a single IEEE 802.3ad link aggregation named *aggr-link*. The use of an integer *key* to generate a link name for the aggregation is also supported for backward compatibility. Many of the *-aggr subcommands below also support the use of a *key* to refer to a given aggregation, but use of the aggregation link name is preferred. See the NOTES section for more information on keys.

dladm supports a number of port selection policies for an aggregation of ports. (See the description of the -P option, below.) If you do not specify a policy, create-aggr uses the default, the L4 policy, described under the -P option.

-l *ether-link*, --link=*ether-link*

Each Ethernet link (or port) in the aggregation is specified using an -l option followed by the name of the link to be included in the aggregation. Multiple links are included in the aggregation by specifying multiple -l options. For backward compatibility with previous versions of Solaris, the dladm command also supports the using the -d option (or --dev) with a device name to specify links by their underlying device name. The other *-aggr subcommands that take -l options also accept -d.

-t, --temporary

Specifies that the aggregation is temporary. Temporary aggregations last until the next reboot.

-R *root-dir*, --root-dir=*root-dir*

See “Options,” above.

-P *policy*, --policy=*policy*

Specifies the port selection policy to use for load spreading of outbound traffic. The policy specifies which *dev* object is used to send packets. A policy is a list of one or more layers specifiers separated by commas. A layer specifier is one of the following:

L2

Select outbound device according to source and destination MAC addresses of the packet.

L3

Select outbound device according to source and destination IP addresses of the packet.

L4

Select outbound device according to the upper layer protocol information contained in the packet. For TCP and UDP, this includes source and destination ports. For IPsec, this includes the SPI (Security Parameters Index).

For example, to use upper layer protocol information, the following policy can be used:

```
-P L4
```

Note that policy L4 is the default.

To use the source and destination MAC addresses as well as the source and destination IP addresses, the following policy can be used:

-P L2,L3

-L *mode*, --lACP-mode=*mode*

Specifies whether LACP should be used and, if used, the mode in which it should operate. Supported values are `off`, `active` or `passive`.

-T *time*, --lACP-timer=*time*

Specifies the LACP timer value. The supported values are `short` or `long`.

-u *address*, --unicast=*address*

Specifies a fixed unicast hardware address to be used for the aggregation. If this option is not specified, then an address is automatically chosen from the set of addresses of the component devices.

`dladm modify-aggr [-t] [-R root-dir] [-P policy] [-L mode] [-T time] [-u address] aggr-link`
Modify the parameters of the specified aggregation.

-t, --temporary

Specifies that the modification is temporary. Temporary aggregations last until the next reboot.

-R *root-dir*, --root-dir=*root-dir*

See “Options,” above.

-P *policy*, --policy=*policy*

Specifies the port selection policy to use for load spreading of outbound traffic. See `dladm create-aggr` for a description of valid policy values.

-L *mode*, --lACP-mode=*mode*

Specifies whether LACP should be used and, if used, the mode in which it should operate. Supported values are `off`, `active`, or `passive`.

-T *time*, --lACP-timer=*time*

Specifies the LACP timer value. The supported values are `short` or `long`.

-u *address*, --unicast=*address*

Specifies a fixed unicast hardware address to be used for the aggregation. If this option is not specified, then an address is automatically chosen from the set of addresses of the component devices.

`dladm delete-aggr [-t] [-R root-dir] aggr-link`
Deletes the specified aggregation.

-t, --temporary

Specifies that the deletion is temporary. Temporary deletions last until the next reboot.

-R *root-dir*, --root-dir=*root-dir*

See “Options,” above.

`dladm add-aggr [-t] [-R root-dir] -l ether-link1 [- -link=ether-link2...] aggr-link`

Adds links to the specified aggregation.

`-l ether-link, - -link=ether-link`

Specifies an Ethernet link to add to the aggregation. Multiple links can be added by supplying multiple `-l` options.

`-t, - -temporary`

Specifies that the additions are temporary. Temporary additions last until the next reboot.

`-R root-dir, - -root-dir=root-dir`

See “Options,” above.

`dladm remove-aggr [-t] [-R root-dir] -l ether-link1 [- -link=ether-link2...] aggr-link`

Removes links from the specified aggregation.

`-l ether-link, - -link=ether-link`

Specifies an Ethernet link to remove from the aggregation. Multiple links can be added by supplying multiple `-l` options.

`-t, - -temporary`

Specifies that the removals are temporary. Temporary removal last until the next reboot.

`-R root-dir, - -root-dir=root-dir`

See “Options,” above.

`dladm show-aggr [-PLx] [-s [-i interval]] [[-p] -o field[,...]] [aggr-link]`

Show aggregation configuration (the default), LACP information, or statistics, either for all aggregations or for the specified aggregation.

By default (with no options), the following fields can be displayed:

LINK

The name of the aggregation link.

POLICY

The LACP policy of the aggregation. See the `create-aggr -P` option for a description of the possible values.

ADDRPOLICY

Either `auto`, if the aggregation is configured to automatically configure its unicast MAC address (the default if the `-u` option was not used to create or modify the aggregation), or `fixed`, if `-u` was used to set a fixed MAC address.

LACPACTIVITY

The LACP mode of the aggregation. Possible values are `off`, `active`, or `passive`, as set by the `-l` option to `create-aggr` or `modify-aggr`.

LACPTIMER

The LACP timer value of the aggregation as set by the `-T` option of `create-aggr` or `modify-aggr`.

FLAGS

A set of state flags associated with the aggregation. The only possible flag is `f`, which is displayed if the administrator forced the creation the aggregation using the `-f` option to `create-aggr`. Other flags might be defined in the future.

The `show-aggr` command accepts the following options:

-L, --lacp

Displays detailed LACP information for the aggregation link and each underlying port. Most of the state information displayed by this option is defined by IEEE 802.3. With this option, the following fields can be displayed:

LINK

The name of the aggregation link.

PORT

The name of one of the underlying aggregation ports.

AGGREGATABLE

Whether the port can be added to the aggregation.

SYNC

If yes, the system considers the port to be synchronized and part of the aggregation.

COLL

If yes, collection of incoming frames is enabled on the associated port.

DIST

If yes, distribution of outgoing frames is enabled on the associated port.

DEFAULTED

If yes, the port is using defaulted partner information (that is, has not received LACP data from the LACP partner).

EXPIRED

If yes, the receive state of the port is in the EXPIRED state.

-x, --extended

Display additional aggregation information including detailed information on each underlying port. With `-x`, the following fields can be displayed:

LINK

The name of the aggregation link.

PORT

The name of one of the underlying aggregation ports.

SPEED

The speed of the link or port in megabits per second.

DUPLEX

The full/half duplex status of the link or port is displayed if the link state is up. The duplex status is displayed as unknown in all other cases.

STATE

The link state. This can be up, down, or unknown.

ADDRESS

The MAC address of the link or port.

PORTSTATE

This indicates whether the individual aggregation port is in the standby or attached state.

-o *field*[,...], **--output=***field*[,...]

A case-insensitive, comma-separated list of output fields to display. The field name must be one of the fields listed above, or the special value `all`, to display all fields. The fields applicable to the `-o` option are limited to those listed under each output mode. For example, if using `-L`, only the fields listed under `-L`, above, can be used with `-o`.

-p, **--parseable**

Display using a stable machine-parseable format. The `-o` option is required with `-p`. See “Parseable Output Format”, below.

-P, **--persistent**

Display the persistent aggregation configuration rather than the state of the running system.

-s, **--statistics**

Displays aggregation statistics.

-i *interval*, **--interval=***interval*

Used with the `-s` option to specify an interval, in seconds, at which statistics should be displayed. If this option is not specified, statistics will be displayed only once.

`dladm create-bridge [-P protect] [-R root-dir] [-p priority] [-m max-age] [-h hello-time] [-d forward-delay] [-f force-protocol] [-l link...] bridge-name`

Create an 802.1D bridge instance and optionally assign one or more network links to the new bridge. By default, no bridge instances are present on the system.

In order to bridge between links, you must create at least one bridge instance. Each bridge instance is separate, and there is no forwarding connection between bridges.

-P *protect*, **--protect=***protect*

Specifies a protection method. The defined protection methods are `stp` for the Spanning Tree Protocol and `trill` for TRILL, which is used on Rbridges. The default value is `stp`.

- R *root-dir*, --root-dir=*root-dir*
See “Options,” above.
- p *priority*, --priority=*priority*
Specifies the Bridge Priority. This sets the IEEE STP priority value for determining the root bridge node in the network. The default value is 32768. Valid values are 0 (highest priority) to 61440 (lowest priority), in increments of 4096.
- If a value not evenly divisible by 4096 is used, the system silently rounds downward to the next lower value that is divisible by 4096.
- m *max-age*, --max-age=*max-age*
Specifies the maximum age for configuration information in seconds. This sets the STP Bridge Max Age parameter. This value is used for all nodes in the network if this node is the root bridge. Bridge link information older than this time is discarded. It defaults to 20 seconds. Valid values are from 6 to 40 seconds. See the -d *forward-delay* parameter for additional constraints.
- h *hello-time*, --hello-time=*hello-time*
Specifies the STP Bridge Hello Time parameter. When this node is the root node, it sends Configuration BPDUs at this interval throughout the network. The default value is 2 seconds. Valid values are from 1 to 10 seconds. See the -d *forward-delay* parameter for additional constraints.
- d *forward-delay*, --forward-delay=*forward-delay*
Specifies the STP Bridge Forward Delay parameter. When this node is the root node, then all bridges in the network use this timer to sequence the link states when a port is enabled. The default value is 15 seconds. Valid values are from 4 to 30 seconds.
- Bridges must obey the following two constraints:
- $$2 * (\textit{forward-delay} - 1.0) \geq \textit{max-age}$$
- $$\textit{max-age} \geq 2 * (\textit{hello-time} + 1.0)$$
- Any parameter setting that would violate those constraints is treated as an error and causes the command to fail with a diagnostic message. The message provides valid alternatives to the supplied values.
- f *force-protocol*, --force-protocol=*force-protocol*
Specifies the MSTP forced maximum supported protocol. The default value is 3. Valid values are non-negative integers. The current implementation does not support RSTP or MSTP, so this currently has no effect. However, to prevent MSTP from being used in the future, the parameter may be set to 0 for STP only or 2 for STP and RSTP.
- l *link*, --link=*link*
Specifies one or more links to add to the newly-created bridge. This is similar to creating the bridge and then adding one or more links, as with the add-bridge subcommand. However, if any of the links cannot be added, the entire command fails, and the new

bridge itself is not created. To add multiple links on the same command line, repeat this option for each link. You are permitted to create bridges without links. For more information about link assignments, see the `add-bridge` subcommand.

Bridge creation and link assignment require the `PRIV_SYS_DL_CONFIG` privilege. Bridge creation might fail if the optional bridging feature is not installed on the system.

```
dldm modify-bridge [ -P protect] [ -R root-dir] [ -p priority] [ -m max-age] [ -h hello-time] [ -d forward-delay] [ -f force-protocol] [ -l link...] bridge-name
```

Modify the operational parameters of an existing bridge. The options are the same as for the `create-bridge` subcommand, except that the `-l` option is not permitted. To add links to an existing bridge, use the `add-bridge` subcommand.

Bridge parameter modification requires the `PRIV_SYS_DL_CONFIG` privilege.

```
dldm delete-bridge [ -R root-dir] bridge-name
```

Delete a bridge instance. The bridge being deleted must not have any attached links. Use the `remove-bridge` subcommand to deactivate links before deleting a bridge.

Bridge deletion requires the `PRIV_SYS_DL_CONFIG` privilege.

The `-R (--root-dir)` option is the same as for the `create-bridge` subcommand.

```
dldm add-bridge [ -R root-dir] -l link [-l link...] bridge-name
```

Add one or more links to an existing bridge. If multiple links are specified, and adding any one of them results in an error, the command fails and no changes are made to the system.

Link addition to a bridge requires the `PRIV_SYS_DL_CONFIG` privilege.

A link may be a member of at most one bridge. An error occurs when you attempt to add a link that already belongs to another bridge. To move a link from one bridge instance to another, remove it from the current bridge before adding it to a new one.

The links assigned to a bridge must not also be VLANs, VNICs, or tunnels. Only physical Ethernet datalinks, aggregation datalinks, wireless links, and Ethernet stubs are permitted to be assigned to a bridge.

Links assigned to a bridge must all have the same MTU. This is checked when the link is assigned. The link is added to the bridge in a deactivated form if it is not the first link on the bridge and it has a differing MTU.

Note that systems using bridging should not set the `eeprom(1M) local-mac-address?` variable to false.

The options are the same as for the `create-bridge` subcommand.

```
dldm remove-bridge [ -R root-dir] -l link [-l link...] bridge-name
```

Remove one or more links from a bridge instance. If multiple links are specified, and removing any one of them would result in an error, the command fails and none are removed.

Link removal from a bridge requires the `PRIV_SYS_DL_CONFIG` privilege.

The options are the same as for the `create-bridge` subcommand.

```
dladm show-bridge [-flt] [-s [-i interval]] [[-p] -o field,...] [bridge-name]
```

Show the running status and configuration of bridges, their attached links, learned forwarding entries, and TRILL nickname databases. When showing overall bridge status and configuration, the bridge name can be omitted to show all bridges. The other forms require a specified bridge.

The `show-bridge` subcommand accepts the following options:

`-i interval`, `--interval=interval`

Used with the `-s` option to specify an interval, in seconds, at which statistics should be displayed. If this option is not specified, statistics will be displayed only once.

`-s`, `--statistics`

Display statistics for the specified bridges or for a given bridge's attached links. This option cannot be used with the `-f` and `-t` options.

`-p`, `--parseable`

Display using a stable machine-parsable format. See “Parsable Output Format,” below.

`-o field[,...]`, `--output=field[,...]`

A case-insensitive, comma-separated list of output fields to display. The field names are described below. The special value `all` displays all fields. Each set of fields has its own default set to display when `-o` is not specified.

By default, the `show-bridge` subcommand shows bridge configuration. The following fields can be shown:

BRIDGE

The name of the bridge.

ADDRESS

The Bridge Unique Identifier value (MAC address).

PRIORITY

Configured priority value; set by `-p` with `create-bridge` and `modify-bridge`.

BMAXAGE

Configured bridge maximum age; set by `-m` with `create-bridge` and `modify-bridge`.

BHELLOTIME

Configured bridge hello time; set by `-h` with `create-bridge` and `modify-bridge`.

BFWDDELAY

Configured forwarding delay; set by `-d` with `create-bridge` and `modify-bridge`.

FORCEPROTO

Configured forced maximum protocol; set by `-f` with `create-bridge` and `modify-bridge`.

TCTIME

Time, in seconds, since last topology change.

TCCOUNT

Count of the number of topology changes.

TCHANGE

This indicates that a topology change was detected.

DESROOT

Bridge Identifier of the root node.

ROOTCOST

Cost of the path to the root node.

ROOTPORT

Port number used to reach the root node.

MAXAGE

Maximum age value from the root node.

HELLOTIME

Hello time value from the root node.

FWDDelay

Forward delay value from the root node.

HOLDTIME

Minimum BPDU interval.

By default, when the `-o` option is not specified, only the **BRIDGE**, **ADDRESS**, **PRIORITY**, and **DESROOT** fields are shown.

When the `-s` option is specified, the `show-bridge` subcommand shows bridge statistics. The following fields can be shown:

BRIDGE

Bridge name.

DROPS

Number of packets dropped due to resource problems.

FORWARDS

Number of packets forwarded from one link to another.

MBCAST

Number of multicast and broadcast packets handled by the bridge.

RECV

Number of packets received on all attached links.

SENT

Number of packets sent on all attached links.

UNKNOWN

Number of packets handled that have an unknown destination. Such packets are sent to all links.

By default, when the `-o` option is not specified, only the **BRIDGE**, **DROPS**, and **FORWARDS** fields are shown.

The `show-bridge` subcommand also accepts the following options:

-l, --link

Displays link-related status and statistics information for all links attached to a single bridge instance. By using this option and without the `-s` option, the following fields can be displayed for each link:

LINK

The link name.

INDEX

Port (link) index number on the bridge.

STATE

State of the link. The state can be `disabled`, `discarding`, `learning`, `forwarding`, `non-stp`, or `bad-mtu`.

UPTIME

Number of seconds since the last reset or initialization.

OPERCOST

Actual cost in use (1-65535).

OPERP2P

This indicates whether point-to-point (P2P) mode been detected.

OPEREDGE

This indicates whether edge mode has been detected.

DESROOT

The Root Bridge Identifier that has been seen on this port.

DESCOST

Path cost to the network root node through the designated port.

DESBRIDGE

Bridge Identifier for this port.

DESPORT

The ID and priority of the port used to transmit configuration messages for this port.

TCACK

This indicates whether Topology Change Acknowledge has been seen.

When the `-l` option is specified without the `-o` option, only the **LINK**, **STATE**, **UPTIME**, and **DESR00T** fields are shown.

When the `-l` option is specified, the `-s` option can be used to display the following fields for each link:

LINK

Link name.

CFGBPDU

Number of configuration BPDUs received.

TCNBPDU

Number of topology change BPDUs received.

RSTPBPDU

Number of Rapid Spanning Tree BPDUs received.

TXBPDU

Number of BPDUs transmitted.

DROPS

Number of packets dropped due to resource problems.

RECV

Number of packets received by the bridge.

XMIT

Number of packets sent by the bridge.

When the `-o` option is not specified, only the **LINK**, **DROPS**, **RECV**, and **XMIT** fields are shown.

-f, -- forwarding

Displays forwarding entries for a single bridge instance. With this option, the following fields can be shown for each forwarding entry:

DEST

Destination MAC address.

AGE

Age of entry in seconds and milliseconds. Omitted for local entries.

FLAGS

The **L** (local) flag is shown if the MAC address belongs to an attached link or to a VNIC on one of the attached links.

OUTPUT

For local entries, this is the name of the attached link that has the MAC address. Otherwise, for bridges that use Spanning Tree Protocol, this is the output interface name. For RBridges, this is the output TRILL nickname.

When the `-o` option is not specified, the `DEST`, `AGE`, `FLAGS`, and `OUTPUT` fields are shown.

-t, --trill

Displays TRILL nickname entries for a single bridge instance. With this option, the following fields can be shown for each TRILL nickname entry:

NICK

TRILL nickname for this RBridge, which is a number from 1 to 65535.

FLAGS

The `L` flag is shown if the nickname identifies the local system.

LINK

Link name for output when sending messages to this RBridge.

NEXTHOP

MAC address of the next hop RBridge that is used to reach the RBridge with this nickname.

When the `-o` option is not specified, the `NICK`, `FLAGS`, `LINK`, and `NEXTHOP` fields are shown.

```
dladm create-vlan [-ft] [-R root-dir] -l ether-link -v vid [vlan-link]
```

Create a tagged VLAN link with an ID of `vid` over Ethernet link `ether-link`. The name of the VLAN link can be specified as `vlan-link`. If the name is not specified, a name will be automatically generated (assuming that `ether-link` is `namePPA`) as:

```
<name><1000 * vlan-tag + PPA>
```

For example, if `ether-link` is `bge1` and `vid` is `2`, the name generated is `bge2001`.

-f, --force

Force the creation of the VLAN link. Some devices do not allow frame sizes large enough to include a VLAN header. When creating a VLAN link over such a device, the `-f` option is needed, and the MTU of the IP interfaces on the resulting VLAN must be set to 1496 instead of 1500.

-l ether-link

Specifies Ethernet link over which VLAN is created.

-t, --temporary

Specifies that the VLAN link is temporary. Temporary VLAN links last until the next reboot.

-R root-dir, --root-dir=root-dir

See “Options,” above.

`dladm delete-vlan [-t] [-R root-dir] vlan-link`

Delete the VLAN link specified.

The `delete-vlan` subcommand accepts the following options:

`-t`, `--temporary`

Specifies that the deletion is temporary. Temporary deletions last until the next reboot.

`-R root-dir`, `--root-dir=root-dir`

See “Options,” above.

`dladm show-vlan [-P] [[-p] -o field[,...]] [vlan-link]`

Display VLAN configuration for all VLAN links or for the specified VLAN link.

The `show-vlan` subcommand accepts the following options:

`-o field[,...]`, `--output=field[,...]`

A case-insensitive, comma-separated list of output fields to display. The field name must be one of the fields listed below, or the special value `all`, to display all fields. For each VLAN link, the following fields can be displayed:

LINK

The name of the VLAN link.

VID

The ID associated with the VLAN.

OVER

The name of the physical link over which this VLAN is configured.

FLAGS

A set of flags associated with the VLAN link. Possible flags are:

f

The VLAN was created using the `-f` option to `create-vlan`.

i

The VLAN was implicitly created when the DLPI link was opened. These VLAN links are automatically deleted on last close of the DLPI link (for example, when the IP interface associated with the VLAN link is unplumbed).

Additional flags might be defined in the future.

`-p`, `--parseable`

Display using a stable machine-parseable format. The `-o` option is required with `-p`. See “Parseable Output Format”, below.

`-P`, `--persistent`

Display the persistent VLAN configuration rather than the state of the running system.

`dladm scan-wifi [[-p] -o field[,...]] [wifi-link]`

Scans for WiFi networks, either on all WiFi links, or just on the specified *wifi-link*.

By default, currently all fields but BSSTYPE are displayed.

`-o field[,...], --output=field[,...]`

A case-insensitive, comma-separated list of output fields to display. The field name must be one of the fields listed below, or the special value `all` to display all fields. For each WiFi network found, the following fields can be displayed:

LINK

The name of the link the WiFi network is on.

ESSID

The ESSID (name) of the WiFi network.

BSSID

Either the hardware address of the WiFi network's Access Point (for BSS networks), or the WiFi network's randomly generated unique token (for IBSS networks).

SEC

Either `none` for a WiFi network that uses no security, `wep` for a WiFi network that requires WEP (Wired Equivalent Privacy), or `wpa` for a WiFi network that requires WPA (Wi-Fi Protected Access).

MODE

The supported connection modes: one or more of `a`, `b`, `g`, or `n`.

STRENGTH

The strength of the signal: one of `excellent`, `very good`, `good`, `weak`, or `very weak`.

SPEED

The maximum speed of the WiFi network, in megabits per second.

BSSTYPE

Either `bss` for BSS (infrastructure) networks, or `ibss` for IBSS (ad-hoc) networks.

`-p, --parseable`

Display using a stable machine-parseable format. The `-o` option is required with `-p`. See “Parseable Output Format”, below.

```
dladm connect-wifi [-e ssid] [-i bssid] [-k key,...] [-s none | wep | wpa] [-a open|shared]
[-b bss|ibss] [-c] [-m a|b|g|n] [-T time] [wifi-link]
```

Connects to a WiFi network. This consists of four steps: *discovery*, *filtration*, *prioritization*, and *association*. However, to enable connections to non-broadcast WiFi networks and to improve performance, if a BSSID or ESSID is specified using the `-e` or `-i` options, then the first three steps are skipped and `connect-wifi` immediately attempts to associate with a BSSID or ESSID that matches the rest of the provided parameters. If this association fails, but there is a possibility that other networks matching the specified criteria exist, then the traditional discovery process begins as specified below.

The discovery step finds all available WiFi networks on the specified WiFi link, which must not yet be connected. For administrative convenience, if there is only one WiFi link on the system, *wifi-link* can be omitted.

Once discovery is complete, the list of networks is filtered according to the value of the following options:

- e *ssid*, --*ssid=ssid*
Networks that do not have the same *ssid* are filtered out.
- b *bss|ibss*, --*bsstype=bss|ibss*
Networks that do not have the same *bsstype* are filtered out.
- m *a|b|g*, --*mode=a|b|g|n*
Networks not appropriate for the specified 802.11 mode are filtered out.
- k *key*,..., --*key=key*, ...
Use the specified *secobj* named by the key to connect to the network. Networks not appropriate for the specified keys are filtered out.
- s *none|wep|wpa*, --*sec=none|wep|wpa*
Networks not appropriate for the specified security mode are filtered out.

Next, the remaining networks are prioritized, first by signal strength, and then by maximum speed. Finally, an attempt is made to associate with each network in the list, in order, until one succeeds or no networks remain.

In addition to the options described above, the following options also control the behavior of `connect-wifi`:

- a *open|shared*, --*auth=open|shared*
Connect using the specified authentication mode. By default, *open* and *shared* are tried in order.
- c, --*create-ibss*
Used with `-b ibss` to create a new ad-hoc network if one matching the specified ESSID cannot be found. If no ESSID is specified, then `-c -b ibss` always triggers the creation of a new ad-hoc network.
- T *time*, --*timeout=time*
Specifies the number of seconds to wait for association to succeed. If *time* is *forever*, then the associate will wait indefinitely. The current default is ten seconds, but this might change in the future. Timeouts shorter than the default might not succeed reliably.
- k *key*,..., --*key=key*,...
In addition to the filtering previously described, the specified keys will be used to secure the association. The security mode to use will be based on the key class; if a security mode was explicitly specified, it must be compatible with the key class. All keys must be of the same class.

For security modes that support multiple key slots, the slot to place the key will be specified by a colon followed by an index. Therefore, `-k mykey:3` places `mykey` in slot 3. By default, slot 1 is assumed. For security modes that support multiple keys, a comma-separated list can be specified, with the first key being the active key.

`dladm disconnect-wifi [-a] [wifi-link]`

Disconnect from one or more WiFi networks. If *wifi-link* specifies a connected WiFi link, then it is disconnected. For administrative convenience, if only one WiFi link is connected, *wifi-link* can be omitted.

`-a, --all-links`

Disconnects from all connected links. This is primarily intended for use by scripts.

`dladm show-wifi [[-p] -o field,...] [wifi-link]`

Shows WiFi configuration information either for all WiFi links or for the specified link *wifi-link*.

`-o field,..., --output=field`

A case-insensitive, comma-separated list of output fields to display. The field name must be one of the fields listed below, or the special value `all`, to display all fields. For each WiFi link, the following fields can be displayed:

LINK

The name of the link being displayed.

STATUS

Either `connected` if the link is connected, or `disconnected` if it is not connected. If the link is disconnected, all remaining fields have the value `--`.

ESSID

The ESSID (name) of the connected WiFi network.

BSSID

Either the hardware address of the WiFi network's Access Point (for BSS networks), or the WiFi network's randomly generated unique token (for IBSS networks).

SEC

Either `none` for a WiFi network that uses no security, `wep` for a WiFi network that requires WEP, or `wpa` for a WiFi network that requires WPA.

MODE

The supported connection modes: one or more of `a`, `b`, `g`, or `n`.

STRENGTH

The connection strength: one of `excellent`, `very good`, `good`, `weak`, or `very weak`.

SPEED

The connection speed, in megabits per second.

AUTH

Either `open` or `shared` (see `connect-wifi`).

BSSTYPE

Either `bss` for BSS (infrastructure) networks, or `ibss` for IBSS (ad-hoc) networks.

By default, currently all fields but AUTH, BSSID, BSSTYPE are displayed.

-p, --parseable

Displays using a stable machine-parseable format. The `-o` option is required with `-p`. See “Parseable Output Format”, below.

```
dladm show-ether [-x] [[-p] -o field,...] [ether-link]
```

Shows state information either for all physical Ethernet links or for a specified physical Ethernet link.

The `show-ether` subcommand accepts the following options:

-o *field,...*, --output=*field*

A case-insensitive, comma-separated list of output fields to display. The field name must be one of the fields listed below, or the special value `all` to display all fields. For each link, the following fields can be displayed:

LINK

The name of the link being displayed.

PTYPE

Parameter type, where `current` indicates the negotiated state of the link, `capable` indicates capabilities supported by the device, `adv` indicates the advertised capabilities, and `peeradv` indicates the capabilities advertised by the link-partner.

STATE

The state of the link.

AUTO

A yes/no value indicating whether auto-negotiation is advertised.

SPEED-DUPLEX

Combinations of speed and duplex values available. The units of speed are encoded with a trailing suffix of `G` (Gigabits/s) or `M` (Mb/s). Duplex values are encoded as `f` (full-duplex) or `h` (half-duplex).

PAUSE

Flow control information. Can be `no`, indicating no flow control is available; `tx`, indicating that the end-point can transmit pause frames, but ignores any received pause frames; `rx`, indicating that the end-point receives and acts upon received pause frames; or `bi`, indicating bi-directional flow-control.

REM_FAULT

Fault detection information. Valid values are `none` or `fault`.

By default, all fields except `REM_FAULT` are displayed for the “current” `PTYPE`.

`-p, --parseable`

Displays using a stable machine-parseable format. The `-o` option is required with `-p`. See “Parseable Output Format”, below.

`-x, --extended`

Extended output is displayed for PTYPE values of `current`, `capable`, `adv` and `peeradv`.

`dladm set-linkprop [-t] [-R root-dir] -p prop=value[,...] link`

Sets the values of one or more properties on the link specified. The list of properties and their possible values depend on the link type, the network device driver, and networking hardware. These properties can be retrieved using `show-linkprop`.

`-t, --temporary`

Specifies that the changes are temporary. Temporary changes last until the next reboot.

`-R root-dir, --root-dir=root-dir`

See “Options,” above.

`-p prop=value[,...], --prop prop=value[,...]`

A comma-separated list of properties to set to the specified values.

Note that when the persistent value is set, the temporary value changes to the same value.

`dladm reset-linkprop [-t] [-R root-dir] [-p prop,...] link`

Resets one or more properties to their values on the link specified. Properties are reset to the values they had at startup. If no properties are specified, all properties are reset. See `show-linkprop` for a description of properties.

`-t, --temporary`

Specifies that the resets are temporary. Values are reset to default values. Temporary resets last until the next reboot.

`-R root-dir, --root-dir=root-dir`

See “Options,” above.

`-p prop, ..., --prop=prop, ...`

A comma-separated list of properties to reset.

Note that when the persistent value is reset, the temporary value changes to the same value.

`dladm show-linkprop [-P] [[-c] -o field[,...]][-p prop[,...]] [link]`

Show the current or persistent values of one or more properties, either for all datalinks or for the specified link. By default, current values are shown. If no properties are specified, all available link properties are displayed. For each property, the following fields are displayed:

`-o field[,...], --output=field`

A case-insensitive, comma-separated list of output fields to display. The field name must be one of the fields listed below, or the special value `all` to display all fields. For each link, the following fields can be displayed:

LINK

The name of the datalink.

PROPERTY

The name of the property.

PERM

The read/write permissions of the property. The value shown is one of `ro` or `rw`.

VALUE

The current (or persistent) property value. If the value is not set, it is shown as `--`. If it is unknown, the value is shown as `?`. Persistent values that are not set or have been reset will be shown as `--` and will use the system `DEFAULT` value (if any).

DEFAULT

The default value of the property. If the property has no default value, `--` is shown.

POSSIBLE

A comma-separated list of the values the property can have. If the values span a numeric range, `min - max` might be shown as shorthand. If the possible values are unknown or unbounded, `--` is shown.

The list of properties depends on the link type and network device driver, and the available values for a given property further depends on the underlying network hardware and its state. General link properties are documented in the `LINK PROPERTIES` section. However, link properties that begin with “`_`” (underbar) are specific to a given link or its underlying network device and subject to change or removal. See the appropriate network device driver man page for details.

-c, --parseable

Display using a stable machine-parseable format. The `-o` option is required with this option. See “Parseable Output Format”, below.

-P, --persistent

Display persistent link property information

-p prop, ..., --prop=prop, ...

A comma-separated list of properties to show. See the sections on link properties following subcommand descriptions.

```
dladm create-secobj [-t] [-R root-dir] [-f file] -c class secobj
```

Create a secure object named `secobj` in the specified `class` to be later used as a WEP or WPA key in connecting to an encrypted network. The value of the secure object can either be provided interactively or read from a file. The sequence of interactive prompts and the file format depends on the class of the secure object.

Currently, the classes `wep` and `wpa` are supported. The WEP (Wired Equivalent Privacy) key can be either 5 or 13 bytes long. It can be provided either as an ASCII or hexadecimal string -- thus, `12345` and `0x3132333435` are equivalent 5-byte keys (the `0x` prefix can be omitted).

A file containing a WEP key must consist of a single line using either WEP key format. The WPA (Wi-Fi Protected Access) key must be provided as an ASCII string with a length between 8 and 63 bytes.

This subcommand is only usable by users or roles that belong to the “Network Link Security” RBAC profile.

- c *class*, --class=*class*
class can be *wep* or *wpa*. See preceding discussion.
- t, --temporary
 Specifies that the creation is temporary. Temporary creation last until the next reboot.
- R *root-dir*, --root-dir=*root-dir*
 See “Options,” above.
- f *file*, --file=*file*
 Specifies a file that should be used to obtain the secure object's value. The format of this file depends on the secure object class. See the EXAMPLES section for an example of using this option to set a WEP key.

dladm delete-secobj [-t] [-R *root-dir*] *secobj*[,...]

Delete one or more specified secure objects. This subcommand is only usable by users or roles that belong to the “Network Link Security” RBAC profile.

- t, --temporary
 Specifies that the deletions are temporary. Temporary deletions last until the next reboot.
- R *root-dir*, --root-dir=*root-dir*
 See “Options,” above.

dladm show-secobj [-P] [[-p] -o *field*[,...]] [*secobj*,...]

Show current or persistent secure object information. If one or more secure objects are specified, then information for each is displayed. Otherwise, all current or persistent secure objects are displayed.

By default, current secure objects are displayed, which are all secure objects that have either been persistently created and not temporarily deleted, or temporarily created.

For security reasons, it is not possible to show the value of a secure object.

- o *field*[,...], --output=*field*[,...]
 A case-insensitive, comma-separated list of output fields to display. The field name must be one of the fields listed below. For displayed secure object, the following fields can be shown:

OBJECT

The name of the secure object.

CLASS

The class of the secure object.

-p, --parseable

Display using a stable machine-parseable format. The -o option is required with -p. See “Parseable Output Format”, below.

-P, --persistent

Display persistent secure object information

```
dladm create-vnic [-t] -l link [-R root-dir] [-m value | auto | {factory [-n slot-identifier]} |
{vrrp -A {inet | inet6} -V vrid} | {random [-r prefix]}] [-v vlan-id] [-p prop=value[,...]]
vnic-link
```

Create a VNIC with name *vnic-link* over the specified link.

-t, --temporary

Specifies that the VNIC is temporary. Temporary VNICs last until the next reboot.

-R *root-dir*, --root-dir=*root-dir*

See “Options,” above.

-l *link*, --link=*link*

link can be a physical link or an etherstub.

-m *value* | *keyword*, --mac-address=*value* | *keyword*

Sets the VNIC’s MAC address based on the specified value or keyword. If *value* is not a keyword, it is interpreted as a unicast MAC address, which must be valid for the underlying NIC. The following special keywords can be used:

factory [-n *slot-identifier*],

factory [--slot=*slot-identifier*]

Assign a factory MAC address to the VNIC. When a factory MAC address is requested, -m can be combined with the -n option to specify a MAC address slot to be used. If -n is not specified, the system will choose the next available factory MAC address. The -m option of the show-phys subcommand can be used to display the list of factory MAC addresses, their slot identifiers, and their availability.

random [-r *prefix*],

random [--mac-prefix=*prefix*]

Assign a random MAC address to the VNIC. A default prefix consisting of a valid IEEE OUI with the local bit set will be used. That prefix can be overridden with the -r option.

vrrp -A {inet | inet6} -V *vrid*

Assign a VRRP virtual MAC address to the VNIC base on the specified address family and *vrid*.

auto

Try and use a factory MAC address first. If none is available, assign a random MAC address. auto is the default action if the -m option is not specified.

`-v vlan-id`

Enable VLAN tagging for this VNIC. The VLAN tag will have id *vlan-id*.

`-p prop=value,..., --prop prop=value,...`

A comma-separated list of properties to set to the specified values.

`dladm delete-vnic [-t] [-R root-dir] vnic-link`

Deletes the specified VNIC.

`-t, --temporary`

Specifies that the deletion is temporary. Temporary deletions last until the next reboot.

`-R root-dir, --root-dir=root-dir`

See “Options,” above.

`dladm show-vnic [-pP] [-s [-i interval]] [-o field[,...]] [-l link] [vnic-link]`

Show VNIC configuration information (the default) or statistics, for all VNICs, all VNICs on a link, or only the specified *vnic-link*.

`-o field[,...], --output=field[,...]`

A case-insensitive, comma-separated list of output fields to display. The field name must be one of the fields listed below. The field name must be one of the fields listed below, or the special value `all` to display all fields. By default (without `-o`), `show-vnic` displays all fields.

LINK

The name of the VNIC.

OVER

The name of the physical link over which this VNIC is configured.

SPEED

The maximum speed of the VNIC, in megabits per second.

MACADDRESS

MAC address of the VNIC.

MACADDRTYPE

MAC address type of the VNIC. `dladm` distinguishes among the following MAC address types:

random

A random address assigned to the VNIC.

factory

A factory MAC address used by the VNIC.

`-p, --parseable`

Display using a stable machine-parseable format. The `-o` option is required with `-p`. See “Parseable Output Format”, below.

- P, --persistent
Display the persistent VNIC configuration.
- s, --statistics
Displays VNIC statistics.
- i *interval*, --interval=*interval*
Used with the -s option to specify an interval, in seconds, at which statistics should be displayed. If this option is not specified, statistics will be displayed only once.

- l *link*, --link=*link*
Display information for all VNICs on the named link.

`dladm create-etherstub [-t] [-R root-dir] etherstub`
Create an etherstub with the specified name.

- t, --temporary
Specifies that the etherstub is temporary. Temporary etherstubs do not persist across reboots.
- R *root-dir*, --root-dir=*root-dir*
See “Options,” above.

VNICs can be created on top of etherstubs instead of physical NICs. As with physical NICs, such a creation causes the stack to implicitly create a virtual switch between the VNICs created on top of the same etherstub.

`dladm delete-etherstub [-t] [-R root-dir] etherstub`
Delete the specified etherstub.

- t, --temporary
Specifies that the deletion is temporary. Temporary deletions last until the next reboot.
- R *root-dir*, --root-dir=*root-dir*
See “Options,” above.

`dladm show-etherstub [etherstub]`
Show all configured etherstubs by default, or the specified etherstub if *etherstub* is specified.

`dladm create-iptun [-t] [-R root-dir] -T type [-s tsrc] [-d tdst] iptun-link`
Create an IP tunnel link named *iptun-link*. Such links can additionally be protected with IPsec using [ipseccnf\(1M\)](#).

An IP tunnel is conceptually comprised of two parts: a virtual link between two or more IP nodes, and an IP interface above this link that allows the system to transmit and receive IP packets encapsulated by the underlying link. This subcommand creates a virtual link. The [ifconfig\(1M\)](#) command is used to configure IP interfaces above the link.

- t, --temporary
Specifies that the IP tunnel link is temporary. Temporary tunnels last until the next reboot.

- R *root-dir*, --root-dir=*root-dir*
See “Options,” above.
- T *type*, --tunnel-type=*type*
Specifies the type of tunnel to be created. The type must be one of the following:
- ipv4
A point-to-point, IP-over-IP tunnel between two IPv4 nodes. This type of tunnel requires IPv4 source and destination addresses to function. IPv4 and IPv6 interfaces can be plumbed above such a tunnel to create IPv4-over-IPv4 and IPv6-over-IPv4 tunneling configurations.
- ipv6
A point-to-point, IP-over-IP tunnel between two IPv6 nodes as defined in IETF RFC 2473. This type of tunnel requires IPv6 source and destination addresses to function. IPv4 and IPv6 interfaces can be plumbed above such a tunnel to create IPv4-over-IPv6 and IPv6-over-IPv6 tunneling configurations.
- 6to4
A 6to4, point-to-multipoint tunnel as defined in IETF RFC 3056. This type of tunnel requires an IPv4 source address to function. An IPv6 interface is plumbed on such a tunnel link to configure a 6to4 router.
- s *tsrc*, --tunnel-src=*tsrc*
Literal IP address or hostname corresponding to the tunnel source. If a hostname is specified, it will be resolved to IP addresses, and one of those IP addresses will be used as the tunnel source. Because IP tunnels are created before naming services have been brought online during the boot process, it is important that any hostname used be included in `/etc/hosts`.
- d *tdst*, --tunnel-dst=*tdst*
Literal IP address or hostname corresponding to the tunnel destination.
- `dladm modify-iptun [-t] [-R root-dir] [-s tsrc] [-d tdst] iptun-link`
Modify the parameters of the specified IP tunnel.
- t, --temporary
Specifies that the modification is temporary. Temporary modifications last until the next reboot.
- R *root-dir*, --root-dir=*root-dir*
See “Options,” above.
- s *tsrc*, --tunnel-src=*tsrc*
Specifies a new tunnel source address. See `create-iptun` for a description.
- d *tdst*, --tunnel-dst=*tdst*
Specifies a new tunnel destination address. See `create-iptun` for a description.
- `dladm delete-iptun [-t] [-R root-dir] iptun-link`
Delete the specified IP tunnel link.

-t, --temporary
Specifies that the deletion is temporary. Temporary deletions last until the next reboot.

-R *root-dir*, --root-dir=*root-dir*
See “Options,” above.

`dladm show-iptun [-P] [[-p] -o field[,...]] [iptun-link]`
Show IP tunnel link configuration for a single IP tunnel or all IP tunnels.

-P, --persistent
Display the persistent IP tunnel configuration.

-p, --parseable
Display using a stable machine-parseable format. The -o option is required with -p. See “Parseable Output Format”, below.

-o *field*[,...], --output=*field*[,...]
A case-insensitive, comma-separated list of output fields to display. The field name must be one of the fields listed below, or the special value `all`, to display all fields. By default (without -o), `show-iptun` displays all fields.

LINK

The name of the IP tunnel link.

TYPE

Type of tunnel as specified by the -T option of `create-iptun`.

FLAGS

A set of flags associated with the IP tunnel link. Possible flags are:

s

The IP tunnel link is protected by IPsec policy. To display the IPsec policy associated with the tunnel link, enter:

```
# ipsecconf -ln -i tunnel-link
```

See [ipsecconf\(1M\)](#) for more details on how to configure IPsec policy.

i

The IP tunnel link was implicitly created with [ifconfig\(1M\)](#), and will be automatically deleted when it is no longer referenced (that is, when the last IP interface over the tunnel is unplumbed). See [ifconfig\(1M\)](#) for details on implicit tunnel creation.

SOURCE

The tunnel source address.

DESTINATION

The tunnel destination address.

`dladm show-usage [-a] -f filename [-p plotfile -F format] [-s time] [-e time] [link]`

Show the historical network usage from a stored extended accounting file. Configuration and enabling of network accounting through [acctadm\(1M\)](#) is required. The default output will be the summary of network usage for the entire period of time in which extended accounting was enabled.

`-a`

Display all historical network usage for the specified period of time during which extended accounting is enabled. This includes the usage information for the links that have already been deleted.

`-f filename, --file=filename`

Read extended accounting records of network usage from *filename*.

`-F format, --format=format`

Specifies the format of *plotfile* that is specified by the `-p` option. As of this release, `gnuplot` is the only supported format.

`-p plotfile, --plot=plotfile`

Write network usage data to a file of the format specified by the `-F` option, which is required.

`-s time, --start=time`

`-e time, --stop=time`

Start and stop times for data display. Time is in the format *MM/DD/YYYY, hh:mm:ss*.

link

If specified, display the network usage only for the named link. Otherwise, display network usage for all links.

Parseable Output Format

Many `dladm` subcommands have an option that displays output in a machine-parseable format. The output format is one or more lines of colon (:) delimited fields. The fields displayed are specific to the subcommand used and are listed under the entry for the `-o` option for a given subcommand. Output includes only those fields requested by means of the `-o` option, in the order requested.

When you request multiple fields, any literal colon characters are escaped by a backslash (\) before being output. Similarly, literal backslash characters will also be escaped (\\). This escape format is parseable by using shell [read\(1\)](#) functions with the environment variable `IFS=:` (see [EXAMPLES](#), below). Note that escaping is not done when you request only a single field.

General Link Properties

The following general link properties are supported:

`autopush`

Specifies the set of STREAMS modules to push on the stream associated with a link when its DLPI device is opened. It is a space-delimited list of modules.

The optional special character sequence [anchor] indicates that a STREAMS anchor should be placed on the stream at the module previously specified in the list. It is an error to specify more than one anchor or to have an anchor first in the list.

The `autopush` property is preferred over the more general `autopush(1M)` command.

`cpus`

Bind the processing of packets for a given data link to a processor or a set of processors. The value can be a comma-separated list of one or more processor ids. If the list consists of more than one processor, the processing will spread out to all the processors. Connection to processor affinity and packet ordering for any individual connection will be maintained.

The processor or set of processors are not exclusively reserved for the link. Only the kernel threads and interrupts associated with processing of the link are bound to the processor or the set of processors specified. In case it is desired that processors be dedicated to the link, `psrset(1M)` can be used to create a processor set and then specifying the processors from the processor set to bind the link to.

If the link was already bound to processor or set of processors due to a previous operation, the binding will be removed and the new set of processors will be used instead.

The default is no CPU binding, which is to say that the processing of packets is not bound to any specific processor or processor set.

`learn_limit`

Limits the number of new or changed MAC sources to be learned over a bridge link. When the number exceeds this value, learning on that link is temporarily disabled. Only non-VLAN, non-VNIC type links have this property.

The default value is `1000`. Valid values are greater or equal to 0.

`learn_decay`

Specifies the decay rate for source changes limited by `learn_limit`. This number is subtracted from the counter for a bridge link every 5 seconds. Only non-VLAN, non-VNIC type links have this property.

The default value is `200`. Valid values are greater or equal to 0.

`maxbw`

Sets the full duplex bandwidth for the link. The bandwidth is specified as an integer with one of the scale suffixes (K, M, or G for Kbps, Mbps, and Gbps). If no units are specified, the input value will be read as Mbps. The default is no bandwidth limit.

`priority`

Sets the relative priority for the link. The value can be given as one of the tokens `high`, `medium`, or `low`. The default is `high`.

stp

Enables or disables Spanning Tree Protocol on a bridge link. Setting this value to 0 disables Spanning Tree, and puts the link into forwarding mode with BPDU guarding enabled. This mode is appropriate for point-to-point links connected only to end nodes. Only non-VLAN, non-VNIC type links have this property. The default value is 1, to enable STP.

forward

Enables or disables forwarding for a VLAN. Setting this value to 0 disables bridge forwarding for a VLAN link. Disabling bridge forwarding removes that VLAN from the “allowed set” for the bridge. The default value is 1, to enable bridge forwarding for configured VLANs.

default_tag

Sets the default VLAN ID that is assumed for untagged packets sent to and received from this link. Only non-VLAN, non-VNIC type links have this property. Setting this value to 0 disables the bridge forwarding of untagged packets to and from the port. The default value is VLAN ID 1. Valid values are from 0 to 4094. The default VLAN ID is also referred to as the Port VLAN Identifier (PVID).

You cannot create a tagged VLAN or VLAN-tagged VNIC link with a VLAN ID that matches the default VLAN value of the underlying link. All untagged packets on the link are already associated with the default VLAN (PVID). To successfully create a tagged VLAN or VLAN-tagged VNIC link with VLAN ID equal to the default VLAN value, you must first change the `default_tag` property of the underlying link to a different VLAN value.

When `default_tag=0`, all untagged packets on the link are no longer associated with any VLAN. As a result, you can create a VLAN link with any VLAN ID from 1 to 4094. Note that any received packets that are erroneously tagged with the PVID at an end-point might be dropped. This situation occurs if all the end-points on a given link do not agree on the PVID. All end-points on a link must use the same PVID and must not tag traffic with the PVID.

stp_priority

Sets the STP and RSTP Port Priority value, which is used to determine the preferred root port on a bridge. Lower numerical values are higher priority. The default value is 128. Valid values range from 0 to 255.

stp_cost

Sets the STP and RSTP cost for using the link. The default value is `auto`, which sets the cost based on link speed, using 100 for 10Mbps, 19 for 100Mbps, 4 for 1Gbps, and 2 for 10Gbps. Valid values range from 1 to 65535.

stp_edge

Enables or disables bridge edge port detection. If set to 0 (false), the system assumes that the port is connected to other bridges even if no bridge PDUs of any type are seen. The default value is 1, which detects edge ports automatically.

stp_p2p

Sets bridge point-to-point operation mode. Possible values are `true`, `false`, and `auto`. When set to `auto`, point-to-point connections are automatically discovered. When set to `true`, the port mode is forced to use point-to-point. When set to `false`, the port mode is forced to use normal multipoint mode. The default value is `auto`.

stp_mcheck

Triggers the system to run the RSTP Force BPDU Migration Check procedure on this link. The procedure is triggered by setting the property value to 1. The property is automatically reset back to 0. This value cannot be set unless the following are true:

- The link is bridged
- The bridge is protected by Spanning Tree
- The bridge force-protocol value is at least 2 (RSTP)

The default value is 0.

protection

Enables one or more types of link protection. Valid values are:

mac-nospoof

MAC address anti-spoof. An outbound packet's source MAC address must match the link's configured MAC address. Non-matching packets will be dropped. If the link belongs to a zone, turning `mac-nospoof` on will prevent the zone's owner from modifying the link's MAC address.

ip-nospoof

IP address anti-spoof. This protection type works in conjunction with the link property `allowed-ips`.

`allowed-ips` is a list containing IPv4 addresses. This list is empty by default. The unspecified address (all-zeros) is implicitly in this list.

An outbound IPv4 packet may pass if its source address is in `allowed-ips`.

An outbound ARP packet may pass if its sender protocol address is in `allowed-ips`.

restricted

This protection restricts outgoing packet types to just IPv4, IPv6, and ARP.

zone

Specifies the zone to which the link belongs. This property can be modified only temporarily through `dladm`, and thus the `-t` option must be specified. To modify the zone assignment such that it persists across reboots, please use [zonecfg\(1M\)](#). Possible values consist of any exclusive-IP zone currently running on the system. By default, the zone binding is as per [zonecfg\(1M\)](#).

Wifi Link Properties The following WiFi link properties are supported. Note that the ability to set a given property to a given value depends on the driver and hardware.

`channel`

Specifies the channel to use. This property can be modified only by certain WiFi links when in IBSS mode. The default value and allowed range of values varies by regulatory domain.

`powermode`

Specifies the power management mode of the WiFi link. Possible values are `off` (disable power management), `max` (maximum power savings), and `fast` (performance-sensitive power management). Default is `off`.

`radio`

Specifies the radio mode of the WiFi link. Possible values are `on` or `off`. Default is `on`.

`speed`

Specifies a fixed speed for the WiFi link, in megabits per second. The set of possible values depends on the driver and hardware (but is shown by `show-linkprop`); common speeds include 1, 2, 11, and 54. By default, there is no fixed speed.

Ethernet Link Properties The following MII Properties, as documented in [ieee802.3\(5\)](#), are supported in read-only mode:

- `duplex`
- `state`
- `adv_autoneg_cap`
- `adv_10gfdx_cap`
- `adv_1000fdx_cap`
- `adv_1000hdx_cap`
- `adv_100fdx_cap`
- `adv_100hdx_cap`
- `adv_10fdx_cap`
- `adv_10hdx_cap`

Each `adv_` property (for example, `adv_10fdx_cap`) also has a read/write counterpart `en_` property (for example, `en_10fdx_cap`) controlling parameters used at auto-negotiation. In the absence of Power Management, the `adv*` speed/duplex parameters provide the values that are both negotiated and currently effective in hardware. However, with Power Management enabled, the speed/duplex capabilities currently exposed in hardware might be a subset of the set of bits that were used in initial link parameter negotiation. Thus the MII `adv_*` parameters are marked read-only, with an additional set of `en_*` parameters for configuring speed and duplex properties at initial negotiation.

Note that the `adv_autoneg_cap` does not have an `en_autoneg_cap` counterpart: the `adv_autoneg_cap` is a 0/1 switch that turns off/on autonegotiation itself, and therefore cannot be impacted by Power Management.

In addition, the following Ethernet properties are reported:

speed

(read-only) The operating speed of the device, in Mbps.

mtu

The maximum client SDU (Send Data Unit) supported by the device. Valid range is 68-65536.

flowctrl

Establishes flow-control modes that will be advertised by the device. Valid input is one of:

no

No flow control enabled.

rx

Receive, and act upon incoming pause frames.

tx

Transmit pause frames to the peer when congestion occurs, but ignore received pause frames.

bi

Bidirectional flow control.

Note that the actual settings for this value are constrained by the capabilities allowed by the device and the link partner.

tagmode

This link property controls the conditions in which 802.1Q VLAN tags will be inserted in packets being transmitted on the link. Two mode values can be assigned to this property:

normal Insert a VLAN tag in outgoing packets under the following conditions:

- The packet belongs to a VLAN.
- The user requested priority tagging.

vlanonly Insert a VLAN tag only when the outgoing packet belongs to a VLAN. If a tag is being inserted in this mode and the user has also requested a non-zero priority, the priority is honored and included in the VLAN tag.

The default value is **vlanonly**.

**IP Tunnel Link
Properties**

The following IP tunnel link properties are supported.

hoplimit

Specifies the IPv4 TTL or IPv6 hop limit for the encapsulating outer IP header of a tunnel link. This property exists for all tunnel types. The default value is 64.

encaplimit

Specifies the IPv6 encapsulation limit for an IPv6 tunnel as defined in RFC 2473. This value is the tunnel nesting limit for a given tunneled packet. The default value is 4. A value of 0 disables the encapsulation limit.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Configuring an Aggregation

To configure a data-link over an aggregation of devices `bge0` and `bge1` with key 1, enter the following command:

```
# dladm create-aggr -d bge0 -d bge1 1
```

EXAMPLE 2 Connecting to a WiFi Link

To connect to the most optimal available unsecured network on a system with a single WiFi link (as per the prioritization rules specified for `connect-wifi`), enter the following command:

```
# dladm connect-wifi
```

EXAMPLE 3 Creating a WiFi Key

To interactively create the WEP key `mykey`, enter the following command:

```
# dladm create-secobj -c wep mykey
```

Alternatively, to non-interactively create the WEP key `mykey` using the contents of a file:

```
# umask 077
# cat >/tmp/mykey.$$ <<EOF
12345
EOF
# dladm create-secobj -c wep -f /tmp/mykey.$$ mykey
# rm /tmp/mykey.$$
```

EXAMPLE 4 Connecting to a Specified Encrypted WiFi Link

To use key `mykey` to connect to ESSID `wlan` on link `ath0`, enter the following command:

```
# dladm connect-wifi -k mykey -e wlan ath0
```

EXAMPLE 5 Changing a Link Property

To set `powermode` to the value `fast` on link `pcwl0`, enter the following command:

```
# dladm set-linkprop -p powermode=fast pcwl0
```

EXAMPLE 6 Connecting to a WPA-Protected WiFi Link

Create a WPA key `psk` and enter the following command:

```
# dladm create-secobj -c wpa psk
```

To then use key `psk` to connect to ESSID `wlan` on link `ath0`, enter the following command:

EXAMPLE 6 Connecting to a WPA-Protected WiFi Link *(Continued)*

```
# dladm connect-wifi -k psk -e wlan ath0
```

EXAMPLE 7 Renaming a Link

To rename the `bge0` link to `mgmt0`, enter the following command:

```
# dladm rename-link bge0 mgmt0
```

EXAMPLE 8 Replacing a Network Card

Consider that the `bge0` device, whose link was named `mgmt0` as shown in the previous example, needs to be replaced with a `ce0` device because of a hardware failure. The `bge0` NIC is physically removed, and replaced with a new `ce0` NIC. To associate the newly added `ce0` device with the `mgmt0` configuration previously associated with `bge0`, enter the following command:

```
# dladm rename-link ce0 mgmt0
```

EXAMPLE 9 Removing a Network Card

Suppose that in the previous example, the intent is not to replace the `bge0` NIC with another NIC, but rather to remove and not replace the hardware. In that case, the `mgmt0` datalink configuration is not slated to be associated with a different physical device as shown in the previous example, but needs to be deleted. Enter the following command to delete the datalink configuration associated with the `mgmt0` datalink, whose physical hardware (`bge0` in this case) has been removed:

```
# dladm delete-phys mgmt0
```

EXAMPLE 10 Using Parseable Output to Capture a Single Field

The following assignment saves the MTU of link `net0` to a variable named `mtu`.

```
# mtu='dladm show-link -p -o mtu net0'
```

EXAMPLE 11 Using Parseable Output to Iterate over Links

The following script displays the state of each link on the system.

```
# dladm show-link -p -o link,state | while IFS=: read link state; do
    print "Link $link is in state $state"
done
```

EXAMPLE 12 Configuring VNICs

Create two VNICs with names `hello0` and `test1` over a single physical link `bge0`:

```
# dladm create-vnic -l bge0 hello0
# dladm create-vnic -l bge0 test1
```

EXAMPLE 13 Configuring VNICs and Allocating Bandwidth and Priority

Create two VNICs with names `hello0` and `test1` over a single physical link `bge0` and make `hello0` a high priority VNIC with a factory-assigned MAC address with a maximum bandwidth of 50 Mbps. Make `test1` a low priority VNIC with a random MAC address and a maximum bandwidth of 100Mbps.

```
# dladm create-vnic -l bge0 -m factory -p maxbw=50,priority=high hello0
# dladm create-vnic -l bge0 -m random -p maxbw=100M,priority=low test1
```

EXAMPLE 14 Configuring a VNIC with a Factory MAC Address

First, list the available factory MAC addresses and choose one of them:

```
# dladm show-phys -m bge0
```

LINK	SLOT	ADDRESS	INUSE	CLIENT
bge0	primary	0:e0:81:27:d4:47	yes	bge0
bge0	1	8:0:20:fe:4e:a5	no	
bge0	2	8:0:20:fe:4e:a6	no	
bge0	3	8:0:20:fe:4e:a7	no	

Create a VNIC named `hello0` and use slot 1's address:

```
# dladm create-vnic -l bge0 -m factory -n 1 hello0
# dladm show-phys -m bge0
```

LINK	SLOT	ADDRESS	INUSE	CLIENT
bge0	primary	0:e0:81:27:d4:47	yes	bge0
bge0	1	8:0:20:fe:4e:a5	yes	hello0
bge0	2	8:0:20:fe:4e:a6	no	
bge0	3	8:0:20:fe:4e:a7	no	

EXAMPLE 15 Creating a VNIC with User-Specified MAC Address, Binding it to Set of Processors

Create a VNIC with name `hello0`, with a user specified MAC address, and a processor binding `0, 1, 2, 3`.

```
# dladm create-vnic -l bge0 -m 8:0:20:fe:4e:b8 -p cpus=0,1,2,3 hello0
```

EXAMPLE 16 Creating a Virtual Network Without a Physical NIC

First, create an etherstub with name `stub1`:

```
# dladm create-etherstub stub1
```

Create two VNICs with names `hello0` and `test1` on the etherstub. This operation implicitly creates a virtual switch connecting `hello0` and `test1`.

```
# dladm create-vnic -l stub1 hello0
```

```
# dladm create-vnic -l stub1 test1
```

EXAMPLE 17 Showing Network Usage

Network usage statistics can be stored using the extended accounting facility, [acctadm\(1M\)](#).

```
# acctadm -e basic -f /var/log/net.log net
```

```
# acctadm net
```

```
Network accounting: active
```

```
Network accounting file: /var/log/net.log
```

```
Tracked Network resources: basic
```

```
Untracked Network resources: src_ip,dst_ip,src_port,dst_port,protocol,
                                dsfield
```

The saved historical data can be retrieved in summary form using the `show-usage` subcommand:

```
# dladm show-usage -f /var/log/net.log
```

LINK	DURATION	IPACKETS	RBYTES	OPACKETS	OBYTES	BANDWIDTH
e1000g0	80	1031	546908	0	0	2.44 Kbps

EXAMPLE 18 Displaying Bridge Information

The following commands use the `show-bridge` subcommand with no and various options.

```
# dladm show-bridge
```

BRIDGE	PROTECT	ADDRESS	PRIORITY	DESROOT
foo	stp	32768/8:0:20:bf:f	32768	8192/0:d0:0:76:14:38
bar	stp	32768/8:0:20:e5:8	32768	8192/0:d0:0:76:14:38

```
# dladm show-bridge -l foo
```

LINK	STATE	UPTIME	DESROOT
hme0	forwarding	117	8192/0:d0:0:76:14:38
qfe1	forwarding	117	8192/0:d0:0:76:14:38

```
# dladm show-bridge -s foo
```

BRIDGE	DROPS	FORWARDS
foo	0	302

EXAMPLE 18 Displaying Bridge Information *(Continued)*

```
# dladm show-bridge -ls foo
LINK          DROPS      RECV       XMIT
hme0         0           360832    31797
qfe1         0           322311    356852

# dladm show-bridge -f foo
DEST          AGE        FLAGS      OUTPUT
8:0:20:bc:a7:dc  10.860    --        hme0
8:0:20:bf:f9:69   --        L         hme0
8:0:20:c0:20:26  17.420    --        hme0
8:0:20:e5:86:11  --        L         qfe1
```

EXAMPLE 19 Creating an IPv4 Tunnel

The following sequence of commands creates and then displays a persistent IPv4 tunnel link named `mytunnel0` between 66.1.2.3 and 192.4.5.6:

```
# dladm create-iptun -T ipv4 -s 66.1.2.3 -d 192.4.5.6 mytunnel0
# dladm show-iptun mytunnel0
LINK          TYPE  FLAGS  SOURCE          DESTINATION
mytunnel0     ipv4  --     66.1.2.3       192.4.5.6
```

A point-to-point IP interface can then be created over this tunnel link:

```
# ifconfig mytunnel0 plumb 10.1.0.1 10.1.0.2 up
```

As with any other IP interface, configuration persistence for this IP interface is achieved by placing the desired `ifconfig` commands (in this case, the command for “10.1.0.1 10.1.0.2”) into `/etc/hostname.mytunnel0`.

EXAMPLE 20 Creating a 6to4 Tunnel

The following command creates a 6to4 tunnel link. The IPv4 address of the 6to4 router is 75.10.11.12.

```
# dladm create-iptun -T 6to4 -s 75.10.11.12 sitetunnel0
# dladm show-iptun sitetunnel0
LINK          TYPE  FLAGS  SOURCE          DESTINATION
sitetunnel0   6to4  --     75.10.11.12    --
```

The following command plumbs an IPv6 interface on this tunnel:

```
# ifconfig sitetunnel0 inet6 plumb up
# ifconfig sitetunnel0 inet6
sitetunnel0: flags=2200041 <UP,RUNNING,NUD,IPv6> mtu 65515 index 3
    inet tunnel src 75.10.11.12
```

EXAMPLE 20 Creating a 6to4 Tunnel *(Continued)*

```
tunnel hop limit 64
inet6 2002:4b0a:b0c::1/16
```

Note that the system automatically configures the IPv6 address on the 6to4 IP interface. See [ifconfig\(1M\)](#) for a description of how IPv6 addresses are configured on 6to4 tunnel links.

EXAMPLE 21 Using Link Protection

To enable link protection:

```
# dladm set-linkprop \
-p protection=ip-nospoof,mac-nospoof,restricted vnic0
```

To disable link protection:

```
# dladm reset-linkprop -p protection vnic0
```

To modify the allowed-ips list:

```
# dladm set-linkprop -p allowed-ips=10.0.0.1,10.0.0.2 vnic0
```

To display the resulting configuration:

```
# dladm show-linkprop -p protection,allowed-ips vnic0
```

LINK	PROPERTY	PERM	VALUE	DEFAULT	POSSIBLE
vnic0	protection	rw	ip-nospoof, mac-nospoof, restricted	--	ip-nospoof, mac-nospoof, restricted
vnic0	allowed-ips	rw	10.0.0.1, 10.0.0.2	--	--

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

/usr/sbin

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Committed

/sbin

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsr
Interface Stability	Committed

See Also [acctadm\(1M\)](#), [autopush\(1M\)](#), [ifconfig\(1M\)](#), [ipseccnf\(1M\)](#), [ndd\(1M\)](#), [vrrpadm\(1M\)](#), [psrset\(1M\)](#), [wpad\(1M\)](#), [zonecfg\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [ieee802.3\(5\)](#), [d1pi\(7P\)](#)

Notes The preferred method of referring to an aggregation in the aggregation subcommands is by its link name. Referring to an aggregation by its integer *key* is supported for backward compatibility, but is not necessary. When creating an aggregation, if a *key* is specified instead of a link name, the aggregation's link name will be automatically generated by `dladm` as *aggrkey*.

Name dlmgmtd – datalink management daemon

Synopsis /sbin/dlmgmtd

svc:/network/datalink-management:default

Description dlmgmtd is a system daemon that handles administrative events for network datalink interfaces. It is controlled through the service management facility (SMF) service instance:

svc:/network/datalink-management:default

The daemon should not be invoked directly. It does not constitute an administrative nor a programming interface. The administrative interface for managing datalinks is [dladm\(1M\)](#).

Options The daemon has no options.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsr
Interface Stability	Private

See Also [dladm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name dmesg – collect system diagnostic messages to form error log

Synopsis /usr/bin/dmesg
/usr/sbin/dmesg

Description dmesg is made obsolete by [syslogd\(1M\)](#) for maintenance of the system error log.

dmesg looks in a system buffer for recently printed diagnostic messages and prints them on the standard output.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWesu

See Also [syslogd\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name dminfo – report information about a device entry in a device maps file

Synopsis dminfo [-v] [-a] [-f *pathname*]
dminfo [-v] [-a] [-f *pathname*] -n *dev* -name...
dminfo [-v] [-a] [-f *pathname*] -d *dev* -path...
dminfo [-v] [-a] [-f *pathname*] -t *dev* -type...
dminfo [-v] [-f *pathname*] -u *dm* -entry

Description dminfo reports and updates information about the `device_maps(4)` file.

Options The following options are supported

- a Succeed if any of the requested entries are found. If used with -v, all entries that match the requested case(s) are printed.
- d *dev-path* Search by *dev-path*. Search `device_maps(4)` for a device special pathname in the *device_list* field matching the *dev-path* argument. This option cannot be used with -n, -t or -u.
- f *pathname* Use a `device_maps` file with *pathname* instead of `/etc/security/device_maps`.
- n *dev-name* Search by *dev-name*. Search `device_maps(4)` for a *device_name* field matching *dev-name*. This option cannot be used with -d, -t or -u.
- t *dev-type* Search by *dev-type*. Search `device_maps(4)` for a *device_type* field matching the given *dev-type*. This option cannot be used with -d, -n or -u.
- u *dm-entry* Update the `device_maps(4)` file. This option is provided to add entries to the `device_maps(4)` file. The *dm-entry* must be a complete `device_maps(4)` file entry. The *dm-entry* has fields, as in the `device_maps` file. It uses the colon (:) as a field separator, and white space as the *device_list* subfield separators. The *dm-entry* is not made if any fields are missing, or if the *dm-entry* would be a duplicate. The default device maps file can be updated only by the super user.
- v Verbose. Print the requested entry or entries, one line per entry, on the standard output. If no entries are specified, all are printed.

Exit Status 0 Successful completion.
1 Request failed.
2 Incorrect syntax.

Files `/etc/security/device_maps`

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [bsmconv\(1M\)](#), [device_maps\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes The functionality described in this man page is available only if the Solaris Auditing feature has been enabled. See [bsmconv\(1M\)](#) for more information.

Name dns-sd – Multicast DNS (mDNS) & DNS Service Discovery (DNS-SD) Test Tool

Synopsis dns-sd -R *name type domain port* [*key=value ...*]
 dns-sd -B *type domain*
 dns-sd -L *name type domain*
 dns-sd -Q *FQDN rrtype rrclass*
 dns-sd -C *FQDN rrtype rrclass*
 dns-sd -P *name type domain port host IP* [*key=value ...*]
 dns-sd -E | -F | -A | -U | -N | -T | -M | -I

Description The `dns-sd` command is a network diagnostic tool, much like [ping\(1M\)](#) or [traceroute\(1M\)](#). However, unlike those tools, most of its functionality is not implemented in the `dns-sd` executable itself, but in library code that is available to any application. The library API that `dns-sd` uses is documented in `/usr/include/dns_sd.h`.

The `dns-sd` command is primarily intended for interactive use. Because its command-line arguments and output format are subject to change, invoking it from a shell script can be unpredictable. Additionally, the asynchronous nature of DNS Service Discovery does not easily lend itself to script-oriented programming. This style of asynchronous interaction works best with applications that are either multi-threaded, or use a main event-handling loop to receive keystrokes, network data, and other asynchronous event notifications as they happen.

Options The following options are supported:

-R *name type domain port* [*key=value ...*]

Register (advertise) a service in the specified domain with the given *name* and *type* as listening (on the current machine) on the specified *port*.

name can be any arbitrary unicode text, containing any legal unicode characters (including dots, spaces, slashes, colons, and so on without any restrictions), up to 63 UTF-8 bytes long.

type must be of the form “_app-proto._tcp” or “_app-proto._udp”, where “app-proto” is an application protocol name registered at <http://www.dns-sd.org/ServiceTypes.html>.

domain is the domain in which to register the service. In current implementations, only the local multicast domain “local” is supported. In the future, registering will be supported in any arbitrary domain that has a working DNS Update server [RFC 2136]. The domain “.” is a synonym for “pick a sensible default”, which currently means “local”.

port is a number from 0 to 65535, and is the TCP or UDP port number upon which the service is listening. Registering a service on port 0 allows an application to explicitly advertise the non-availability of a service.

Additional attributes of the service may optionally be described by *key/value* pairs, which are stored in the advertised service's DNS TXT record. Allowable keys and values are listed with the service registration at <http://www.dns-sd.org/ServiceTypes.html>

-B *type domain*

Browse for instances of service *type* in *domain*.

For valid types, see <http://www.dns-sd.org/ServiceTypes.html>. Omitting the domain name or using “.” means “pick a sensible default.”

-L *name type domain*

Look up and display the information necessary to contact and use the named service. This information includes the hostname of the machine where that service is available, the port number on which the service is listening, and (if present) TXT record attributes describing properties of the service.

In a typical application, browsing happens rarely, while lookup (or “resolving”) happens every time the service is used. For example, a user does not browse the network to pick a default printer that often, but once a default printer has been picked, that named service is resolved to its current IP address and port number every time the user presses Cmd-P to print.

-Q *FQDN rrtype rrclass*

Generic query for any resource record type and class.

-C *FQDN rrtype rrclass*

Generic query for any resource record type and class. This option also reconfirms each result from the query. Reconfirming the record instructs `mdnsd(1M)` to verify the validity of the record. If the record is not valid `mdnsd(1M)` flushes the record from the daemon's cache and also from other `mdnsd(1M)` caches on the network.

-P *name type domain port host IP [key=value ...]*

Register (advertise) a service in the specified domain with the given *name* and *type* listening on the specified port and accessible on another host. This option should be used to advertise by proxy a service accessible on another host. The host name and IPv4 address to access the service must be specified.

-E

Discover recommended registration domains. This option returns the recommended domains to register a service. The recommended registration domains are returned by querying the name servers in `resolv.conf(4)`.

-F

Discover recommended browsing domains. This option returns the recommended domains for browsing services. The recommended browsing domains are returned by querying the name servers in `resolv.conf(4)`.

- A
Test registering service with Multicast DNS and test the add, update and delete operations of DNS records with Multicast DNS.
- U
Test registering service with Multicast DNS and test updating of DNS TXT records for a service registered with Multicast DNS.
- N
Test adding a large NULL record for a service registered with Multicast DNS.
- T
Test adding a large TXT record for a service registered with Multicast DNS.
- M
Test creating a registration with multiple TXT records.
- I
Test registering and then immediately updating a TXT record.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Advertising a printing service

The following command advertises the existence of LPR printing service on port 515 on this machine, so that it will be available to DNS-SD compatible printing clients:

```
dns-sd -R "My Test" _printer._tcp. . 515 pdl=application/postscript
```

For this registration to be useful, the LPR service should be available on port 515. Advertising a service that does not exist is not very useful.

EXAMPLE 2 Advertising a web page

The following command advertises a web page being served by an HTTP server on port 80 on this machine, so that it will appear on the Bonjour list in Safari and other DNS-SD compatible Web clients:

```
dns-sd -R "My Test" _http._tcp . 80 path=/path-to-page.html
```

EXAMPLE 3 Finding the advertised web pages on the local network

The following command finds the advertised web pages on the local network (the same list that Safari shows):

```
dns-sd -B _http._tcp
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWdsdu
Interface Stability	Volatile

See Also [mdnsd\(1M\)](#), [ping\(1M\)](#), [ping\(1M\)](#), [resolv.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name dnssec-dsfromkey – DNSSEC DS RR generation tool

Synopsis dnssec-dsfromkey [-v *level*] [-1] [-2] [-a *alg*] *keyfile*
 dnssec-dsfromkey -s [-v *level*] [-1] [-2] [-a *alg*] [-c *class*]
 [-d *dir*] *keyfile*

Description dnssec-dsfromkey

Options The following options are supported:

- 1
Use SHA-1 as the digest algorithm. The default is to use both SHA-1 and SHA-256.
- 2
Use SHA-256 as the digest algorithm.
- a *algorithm*
Select the digest algorithm. The value of *algorithm* must be one of SHA-1 (SHA1) or SHA-256 (SHA256). These values are case-insensitive.
- v *level*
Sets the debugging level.
- s
Keypset mode: in place of the keyfile name, the argument is the DNS domain name of a keyset file. The -c and -d options have meaning only in this mode.
- c *class*
Specifies the DNS class (default is IN); useful only in the keyset mode.
- d *directory*
Look for keyset files in *directory* as the directory; ignored when not in the keyset mode.

Examples To build the SHA-256 DS RR from the `Kexample.com.+003+26160` keyfile name, use a command such as the following:

```
# dnssec-dsfromkey -2 Kexample.com.+003+26160
```

This command would produce output similar to the following:

```
example.com. IN DS 26160 5 2
3A1EADA7A74B8D0BA86726B0C227AA85AB8BBD2B2004F41A868A54F0
C5EA0B94
```

Files The keyfile can be designated by the key identification `Knnnn.+aaa+iinii`, or the full file name `Knnnn.+aaa+iinii.key`, as generated by [dnssec-keygen\(1M\)](#).

The keyset file name is built from the *directory*, the string `keyset-` and the *dnsname*.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWbind
Interface Stability	External

See Also [dnssec-keygen\(1M\)](#), [dnssec-signzone\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

RFC 3658, RFC 4509

See the BIND 9 *Administrator's Reference Manual*. As of the date of publication of this man page, this document is available at <https://www.isc.org/software/bind/documentation>.

Caution A keyfile error can produce a “file not found” message, even if the file exists.

Name dnssec-keyfromlabel – DNSSEC key generation tool

Synopsis dnssec-keyfromlabel -a *algorithm* -l *label* [-c *class*] [-f *flag*] [-k]
[-n *nametype*] [-p *protocol*] [-t *type*] [-v *level*] *name*

Description dnssec-keyfromlabel retrieves keys with a specified label from a crypto hardware device and builds key files for DNSSEC (Secure DNS), as defined in RFC 2535 and RFC 4034.

Options The following options are supported:

-a *algorithm*

Selects the cryptographic algorithm. The value of *algorithm* must be one of RSAMD5 (RSA) or RSASHA1, DSA, NSEC3RSASHA1, NSEC3DSA, or DH (Diffie-Hellman). These values are case-insensitive.

Note that for DNSSEC, RSASHA1 is a mandatory-to-implement algorithm, and DSA is recommended. Note also that DH automatically sets the -k flag.

-l *label*

Specifies the label of keys in the crypto hardware (PKCS#11) device.

-n *nametype*

Specifies the owner type of the key. The value of *nametype* must either be ZONE (for a DNSSEC zone key (KEY/DNSKEY)), HOST or ENTITY (for a key associated with a host (KEY)), USER (for a key associated with a user (KEY)), or OTHER (DNSKEY). These values are case-insensitive.

-c *class*

Indicates that the DNS record containing the key should have the specified class. If not specified, class IN is used.

-f *flag*

Set the specified flag in the flag field of the KEY/DNSKEY record. The only recognized flag is KSK (Key Signing Key) DNSKEY.

-h

Displays a short summary of the options and arguments to dnssec-keyfromlabel.

-k

Generate KEY records rather than DNSKEY records.

-p *protocol*

Sets the protocol value for the generated key. The protocol is a number between 0 and 255. The default is 3 (DNSSEC). Other possible values for this argument are listed in RFC 2535 and its successors.

-t *type*

Indicates the use of the key. *type* must be one of AUTHCONF, NOAUTHCONF, NOAUTH, or NOCONF. The default is AUTHCONF. AUTH refers to the ability to authenticate data, and CONF the ability to encrypt data.

-v *level*
Sets the debugging level.

Generated Key Files When `dnssec-keyfromlabel` completes successfully, it displays a string of the form `Knnnnn.+aaa+iiii` to the standard output. This is an identification string for the key files it has generated, which translates as follows.

- *nnnn* is the key name.
- *aaa* is the numeric representation of the algorithm.
- *iiii* is the key identifier (or footprint).

`dnssec-keyfromlabel` creates two files, with names based on the displayed string. `Knnnnn.+aaa+iiii.key` contains the public key, and `Knnnnn.+aaa+iiii.private` contains the private key.

The first file contains a DNS KEY record that can be inserted into a zone file (directly or with an `$INCLUDE` statement).

The second file contains algorithm-specific fields. For obvious security reasons, this file does not have general read permission.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWbind
Interface Stability	External

See Also [dnssec-keygen\(1M\)](#), [dnssec-signzone\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

RFC 2539, RFC 2845, RFC 4033

See the BIND 9 *Administrator's Reference Manual*. As of the date of publication of this man page, this document is available at <https://www.isc.org/software/bind/documentation>.

Name dnssec-keygen – DNSSEC key generation tool

Synopsis dnssec-keygen -a *algorithm* -b *keysize* -n *nametype* [-ehk]
[-c *class*] [-f *flag*] [-g *generator*] [-p *protocol*]
[-r *randomdev*] [-s *strength*] [-t *type*] [-v *level*] *name*

Description The dnssec-keygen utility generates keys for DNSSEC (Secure DNS), as defined in RFC 2535 and RFC 4034. It can also generate keys for use with TSIG (Transaction Signatures), as defined in RFC 2845.

Options The following options are supported:

-a *algorithm*

Select the cryptographic algorithm. The value of algorithm must be one of RSAMD5 (RSA) or RSASHA1, DSA, NSEC3RSASHA1, NSEC3DSA, DH (Diffie-Hellman), or HMAC-MD5. These values are case insensitive.

For DNSSEC, RSASHA1 is a mandatory-to-implement algorithm and DSA is recommended. For TSIG, HMAC-MD5 is mandatory.

Note – HMAC-MD5 and DH automatically set the -k flag.

-b *keysize*

Specify the number of bits in the key. The choice of key size depends on the algorithm used. RSAMD5 and RSASHA1 keys must be between 512 and 2048 bits. Diffie-Hellman keys must be between 128 and 4096 bits. DSA keys must be between 512 and 1024 bits and an exact multiple of 64. HMAC-MD5 keys must be between 1 and 512 bits.

-c *class*

Indicate that the DNS record containing the key should have the specified class. If not specified, class IN is used.

-e

Use a large exponent if generating an RSAMD5 or RSASHA1 key.

-f *flag*

Set the specified flag in the flag field of the KEY/DNSKEY record. The only recognized flag is KSK (Key Signing Key) DNSKEY.

-g *generator*

Use this *generator* if generating a Diffie Hellman key. Allowed values are 2 and 5. If no generator is specified, a known prime from RFC 2539 will be used if possible; otherwise the default is 2.

-h

Print a short summary of the options and arguments to dnssec-keygen.

-k

Generate KEY records rather than DNSKEY records.

- n *nametype*
Specify the owner type of the key. The value of *nametype* must either be ZONE (for a DNSSEC zone key (KEY/DNSKEY)), HOST or ENTITY (for a key associated with a host (KEY)), USER (for a key associated with a user(KEY)), or OTHER (DNSKEY). These values are case insensitive. Defaults to ZONE for DNSKEY generation.
- p *protocol*
Set the protocol value for the generated key. The *protocol* argument is a number between 0 and 255. The default is 3 (DNSSEC) Other possible values for this argument are listed in RFC 2535 and its successors.
- r *randomdev*
Specify the source of randomness. If the operating system does not provide a */dev/random* or equivalent device, the default source of randomness is keyboard input. *randomdev* specifies the name of a character device or file containing random data to be used instead of the default. The special value “keyboard” indicates that keyboard input should be used.
- s *strength*
Specify the strength value of the key. The *strength* argument is a number between 0 and 15, and currently has no defined purpose in DNSSEC.
- t *type*
Indicate the use of the key. *type* must be one of AUTHCONF, NOAUTHCONF, NOAUTH, or NOCONF. The default is AUTHCONF. AUTH refers to the ability to authenticate data, and CONF the ability to encrypt data.
- v *level*
Set the debugging level.

Generated Keys When `dnssec-keygen` completes successfully, it prints a string of the form `Knnnn.+aaa+iiii` to the standard output. This is an identification string for the key it has generated.

- *nnnn* is the key name.
- *aaa* is the numeric representation of the algorithm.
- *iiii* is the key identifier (or footprint).

The `dnssec-keygen` utility creates two files, with names based on the printed string.

- `Knnnn.+aaa+iiii.key` contains the public key.
- `Knnnn.+aaa+iiii.private` contains the private key.

The `.key` file contains a DNS KEY record that can be inserted into a zone file (directly or with a `$INCLUDE` statement).

The `.private` file contains algorithm specific fields. For obvious security reasons, this file does not have general read permission.

Both `.key` and `.private` files are generated for symmetric encryption algorithm such as HMAC-MD5, even though the public and private key are equivalent.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Generating a 768-bit DSA Key

To generate a 768-bit DSA key for the domain `example.com`, the following command would be issued:

```
dnssec-keygen -a DSA -b 768 -n ZONE example.com
```

The command would print a string of the form:

```
Kexample.com.+003+26160
```

The following files would be created:

```
Kexample.com.+003+26160.key  
Kexample.com.+003+26160.private
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWbind
Interface Stability	External

See Also [dnssec-signzone\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

RFC 2539, RFC 2845, RFC 4033

See the BIND 9 *Administrator's Reference Manual*. As of the date of publication of this man page, this document is available at <https://www.isc.org/software/bind/documentation>.

Name dnssec-makekeyset – DNSSEC zone signing tool

Synopsis dnssec-makekeyset [-ahp] [-s *start-time*] [-e *end-time*]
[-r *randomdev*] [-t *tll*] [-v *level*] *key*...

Description The dnssec-makekeyset utility generates a key set from one or more keys created by [dnssec-keygen\(1M\)](#). It creates a file containing a KEY record for each key, and self-signs the key set with each zone key. The output file is of the form *keyset-nnnn.*, where *nnnn* is the zone name.

Options

- a Verify all generated signatures.
- e *end-time* Specify the date and time when the generated SIG records expire. As with *start-time*, an absolute time is indicated in YYYYMMDDHHMMSS notation. A time relative to the start time is indicated with +*N*, which is *N* seconds from the start time. A time relative to the current time is indicated with now+*N*. If no *end-time* is specified, 30 days from the start time is used as a default.
- h Print a short summary of the options and arguments to dnssec-makekeyset ().
- p Use pseudo-random data when signing the zone. This is faster, but less secure, than using real random data. This option may be useful when signing large zones or when the entropy source is limited.
- r *randomdev* Specify the source of randomness. If the operating system does not provide a /dev/random or equivalent device, the default source of randomness is keyboard input. The *randomdev* argument specifies the name of a character device or file containing random data to be used instead of the default. The special value keyboard indicates that keyboard input should be used.
- s *start-time* Specify the date and time when the generated SIG records become valid. This can be either an absolute or relative time. An absolute start time is indicated by a number in YYYYMMDDHHMMSS notation; 20000530144500 denotes 14:45:00 UTC on May 30th, 2000. A relative start time is indicated by +*N*, which is *N* seconds from the current time. If no *start-time* is specified, the current time is used.
- t *tll* Specify the TTL (time to live) of the KEY and SIG records. The default is 3600 seconds.
- v *level* Set the debugging level.

Operands The following operands are supported:

key The list of keys to be included in the keyset file. These keys are expressed in the form *Knnnn.+aaa+iiii* as generated by dnssec-keygen.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Generates a keyset containing the DSA key for `example.com`.

The following command generates a keyset containing the DSA key for `example.com` generated in the [dnssec-keygen\(1M\)](#) manual page.

```
dnssec-makekeyset -t 86400 -s 20000701120000 -e +2592000 \  
Kexample.com.+003+26160
```

In this example, `dnssec-makekeyset()` creates the file `keyset-example.com`. This file contains the specified key and a self-generated signature.

The DNS administrator for `example.com` could send `keyset-example.com` to the DNS administrator for `.com` for signing, if the `.com` zone is DNSSEC-aware and the administrators of the two zones have some mechanism for authenticating each other and exchanging the keys and signatures securely.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWbind9
Interface Stability	External

See Also [dnssec-keygen\(1M\)](#), [dnssec-signkey\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

RFC 2535

BIND 9 Administrator Reference Manual

Notes Source for BIND9 is available in the SUNWbind9S package.

Name dnssec-signkey – DNSSEC key set signing tool

Synopsis dnssec-signkey [-ahp] [-c *class*] [-e *end-time*]
[-r *randomdev*] [-s *start-time*] [-v *level*] *keyset key...*

Description The dnssec-signkey utility signs a keyset. Typically the keyset will be for a child zone and will have been generated by [dnssec-makekeyset\(1M\)](#). The child zone's keyset is signed with the zone keys for its parent zone. The output file is of the form signedkey-*nnnn*., where *nnnn* is the zone name.

Options The following options are supported:

- a Verify all generated signatures.
- c *class* Specify the DNS class of the key sets.
- e *end-time* Specify the date and time when the generated SIG records expire. As with *start-time*, an absolute time is indicated in YYYYMMDDHHMMSS notation. A time relative to the start time is indicated with +*N*, which is *N* seconds from the start time. A time relative to the current time is indicated with now+*N*. If no *end-time* is specified, 30 days from the start time is used as a default.
- h Prints a short summary of the options and arguments to dnssec-signkey().
- p Use pseudo-random data when signing the zone. This is faster, but less secure, than using real random data. This option may be useful when signing large zones or when the entropy source is limited.
- r *randomdev* Specify the source of randomness. If the operating system does not provide a /dev/random or equivalent device, the default source of randomness is keyboard input. *randomdev* specifies the name of a character device or file containing random data to be used instead of the default. The special value keyboard indicates that keyboard input should be used.
- s *start-time* Specify the date and time when the generated SIG records become valid. This can be either an absolute or relative time. An absolute start time is indicated by a number in YYYYMMDDHHMMSS notation; 20000530144500 denotes 14:45:00 UTC on May 30th, 2000. A relative start time is indicated by +*N*, which is *N* seconds from the current time. If no *start-time* is specified, the current time is used.
- v *level* Set the debugging level.

Operands The following operands are supported:

- key* The keys used to sign the child's keyset.
- keyset* The file containing the child's keyset.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Sign the *keyset* file for `example.com`.

The DNS administrator for a DNSSEC-aware `.com` zone would use the following command to sign the *keyset* file for `example.com` created by `dnssec-makekeyset` with a key generated by `dnssec-keygen`:

```
dnssec-signkey keyset-example.com. Kcom.+003+51944
```

In this example, `dnssec-signkey` creates the file `signedkey-example.com`, which contains the `example.com` keys and the signatures by the `.com` keys.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWbind9
Interface Stability	External

See Also [dnssec-keygen\(1M\)](#), [dnssec-makekeyset\(1M\)](#), [dnssec-signzone\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes Source for BIND9 is available in the SUNWbind9S package.

Name dnssec-signzone – DNSSEC zone signing tool

Synopsis dnssec-signzone [-Aaghtz] [-c *class*] [-d *directory*]
 [-e *end-time*] [-f *output-file*] [-H *iterations*] [-I *input_format*]
 [-i *interval*] [-k *key*] [-\ *domain*] [-N *soa-serial-format*] [-n *ncpus*]
 [-O *output_format*] [-o *origin*] [-r *randomdev*] [-s *start-time*]
 [-v *level*] [-3 *salt*] *zonefile* [*key*]. . .

Description The dnssec-signzone utility signs a zone. It generates NSEC and RRSIG records and produces a signed version of the zone. The security status of delegations from the signed zone (that is, whether the child zones are secure or not) is determined by the presence or absence of a keyset file for each child zone.

Options The following options are supported:

-A

When generating an NSEC3 chain, set the OPTOUT flag on all NSEC3 records and do not generate NSEC3 records for insecure delegations.

-a

Verify all generated signatures.

-c *class*

Specify the DNS class of the zone.

-d *directory*

Look for keyset files in *directory*.

-e *end-time*

Specify the date and time when the generated RRSIG records expire. As with *start-time*, an absolute time is indicated in YYYYMMDDHHMMSS notation. A time relative to the start time is indicated with +*N*, which is *N* seconds from the start time. A time relative to the current time is indicated with now+*N*. If no *end-time* is specified, 30 days from the start time is used as a default.

-f *output-file*

The name of the output file containing the signed zone. The default is to append *.signed* to the input file name.

-g

Generate DS records for child zones from keyset files. Existing DS records will be removed.

-H *iterations*

When generating a NSEC3 chain use the number of iterations specified by *iterations*. The default is 100.

-h

Prints a short summary of the options and arguments to dnssec-signzone().

-I *input-format*

The format of the input zone file. Possible formats are text (default) and raw. This option is primarily intended for dynamic signed zones so that the dumped zone file in a non-text format containing updates can be signed directly. The use of this option serves no purpose for non-dynamic zones.

-i *interval*

Specify the cycle interval as an offset from the current time (in seconds). When a previously signed zone is passed as input, records could be resigned. If an RRSIG record expires after the cycle interval, it is retained. Otherwise, it is considered to be expiring soon and will be replaced.

The default cycle interval is one quarter of the difference between the signature end and start times. If neither *end-time* or *start-time* are specified, `dnssec-signzone` generates signatures that are valid for 30 days, with a cycle interval of 7.5 days. Any existing RRSIG records due to expire in less than 7.5 days would be replaced.

-j *jitter*

When signing a zone with a fixed signature lifetime, all RRSIG records issued at the time of signing expire simultaneously. If the zone is incrementally signed, that is, a previously-signed zone is passed as input to the signer, all expired signatures have to be regenerated at about the same time. The jitter option specifies a jitter window that will be used to randomize the signature-expire time, thus spreading incremental signature regeneration over time.

Signature lifetime jitter also benefits, to some extent, validators and servers by spreading out cache expiration. That is, if large numbers of RRSIGs from all caches do not expire at the same time, there will be less congestion than if all validators needed to refetch at almost the same time.

-k *key*

Treat specified *key* as a key-signing key, ignoring any key flags. This option can be specified multiple times.

-l *domain*

Generate a DLV set in addition to the key (DNSKEY) and DS sets. The domain is appended to the name of the records.

-N *soa-serial-format*

The SOA serial number format of the signed zone. Possible formats are keep (default), increment and unixtime, described as follows.

keep

Do not modify the SOA serial number.

increment

Increment the SOA serial number using RFC 1982 arithmetic.

-
- `unixtime`
Set the SOA serial number to the number of seconds since epoch.
- `-n nthreads`
Specifies the number of threads to use. By default, one thread is started for each detected CPU.
- `-O output_format`
The format of the output file containing the signed zone. Possible formats are text (default) and raw.
- `-o origin`
Specify the zone origin. If not specified, the name of the zone file is assumed to be the origin.
- `-p`
Use pseudo-random data when signing the zone. This is faster, but less secure, than using real random data. This option may be useful when signing large zones or when the entropy source is limited.
- `-r randomdev`
Specifies the source of randomness. If the operating system does not provide a `/dev/random` or equivalent device, the default source of randomness is keyboard input. `randomdev` specifies the name of a character device or file containing random data to be used instead of the default `/dev/random`. The special value `keyboard` indicates that keyboard input should be used.
- `-s start-time`
Specify the date and time when the generated RRSIG records become valid. This can be either an absolute or relative time. An absolute start time is indicated by a number in `YYYYMMDDHHMMSS` notation; `20000530144500` denotes 14:45:00 UTC on May 30th, 2000. A relative start time is indicated by `+N`, which is `N` seconds from the current time. If no `start-time` is specified, the current time minus one hour (to allow for clock skew) is used.
- `-t`
Print statistics at completion.
- `-v level`
Set the debugging level.
- `-z`
Ignore KSK flag on key when determining what to sign.
- `-3 salt`
Generate a NSEC3 chain with the specified hex-encoded `salt`. A dash (`-`) can be used to indicate that no salt is to be used when generating the NSEC3 chain.

Operands The following operands are supported:

zonefile

The file containing the zone to be signed.

key

Specify which keys should be used to sign the zone. If no keys are specified, then the zone will be examined for DNSKEY records at the zone apex. If these are found and there are matching private keys in the current directory, these will be used for signing.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Signing a Zone with a DSA Key

The following command signs the `example.com` zone with the DSA key generated in the example in the [dnssec-keygen\(1M\)](#) manual page (`Kexample.com.+003+17247`). The zone's keys must be in the master file (`db.example.com`). This invocation looks for keyset files in the current directory, so that DS records can be generated from them (`-g`).

```
% dnssec-signzone -g -o example.com db.example.com \
Kexample.com.+003+17247
db.example.com.signed
%
```

In the above example, `dnssec-signzone` creates the file `db.example.com.signed`. This file should be referenced in a zone statement in a `named.conf` file.

EXAMPLE 2 Re-signing a Previously Signed Zone

The following commands re-sign a previously signed zone with default parameters. The private keys are assumed to be in the current directory.

```
% cp db.example.com.signed db.example.com
% dnssec-signzone -o example.com db.example.com \
db.example.com.signed
%
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWbind
Interface Stability	External

See Also [dnssec-keygen\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

RFC 4033

See the BIND 9 *Administrator's Reference Manual*. As of the date of publication of this man page, this document is available at <https://www.isc.org/software/bind/documentation>.

Name domainname – set or display name of the current domain

Synopsis domainname [*name-of-domain*]

Description Without an argument, domainname displays the name of the current domain name used in RPC exchanges, usually referred to as the NIS domain name. This name typically encompasses a group of hosts or passwd entries under the same administration. The domainname command is used by various components of Solaris to resolve names for entries such as are found in passwd, hosts and aliases. By default, naming services such as NIS use domainname to resolve names.

With appropriate privileges (root or an equivalent role [see [rbac\(5\)](#)]), you can set the name of the domain by specifying the name as an argument to the domainname command.

The domain name for various naming services can also be set by other means. For example, ypinit can be used to specify a different domain for all NIS calls. The domain name of the machine is usually set during boot time through the domainname command by the svc:/system/identity:domain service. If the new domain name is not saved in the /etc/defaultdomain file, the machine reverts to the old domain after it reboots.

The [sendmail\(1M\)](#) daemon, as shipped with Solaris, and the sendmail implementation provided by [sendmail.org](#) (formerly referred to as “Berkeley 8.x sendmail”) both attempt to determine a local host’s fully qualified host name at startup and both pursue follow-up actions if the initial search fails. It is in these follow-up actions that the two implementations differ.

Both implementations use a standard Solaris or Unix system call to determine its fully qualified host name at startup, following the name service priorities specified in [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#). To this point, the Solaris and [sendmail.org](#) versions behave identically.

If the request for a fully qualified host name fails, the [sendmail.org](#) sendmail sleeps for 60 seconds, tries again, and, upon continuing failure, resorts to a short name. The Solaris version of sendmail makes the same initial request, but then, following initial failure, calls domainname. If successful, the sleep is avoided.

On a Solaris machine, if you run the [sendmail.org](#) version of sendmail, you get the startup behavior (omitting the domainname call) described above. If you run the Solaris sendmail, the domainname call is made if needed.

If the Solaris sendmail cannot determine the fully qualified host name, use [check-hostname\(1M\)](#) as a troubleshooting aid. This script can offer guidance as to appropriate corrective action.

Files /etc/defaultdomain
/etc/nsswitch.conf

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [check-hostname\(1M\)](#), [hostconfig\(1M\)](#), [named\(1M\)](#), [sendmail\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [ypinit\(1M\)](#), [sys-unconfig\(1M\)](#), [aliases\(4\)](#), [defaultdomain\(4\)](#), [hosts\(4\)](#), [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#), [passwd\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [rbac\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Notes The domainname service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/identity:domain
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name drd – Logical Domain Dynamic Reconfiguration daemon

Synopsis /usr/lib/ldoms/drd

Description The drd daemon is part of the framework that enables the addition and removal of resources from a Logical Domain. This framework is collectively called Dynamic Reconfiguration (DR).

drd is responsible for various aspects of DR on a Logical Domain and must be enabled to ensure proper DR functionality. It is started at boot time and has no configuration options.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWldomu
Interface Stability	Unstable

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [syslog\(3C\)](#), [syslog.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Errors drd uses [syslog\(3C\)](#) to report status and error messages. All of the messages are logged with the LOG_DAEMON facility. Error messages are logged with the LOG_ERR and LOG_NOTICE priorities, and informational messages are logged with the LOG_INFO priority. The default entries in the /etc/syslog.conf file log all the drd error messages to the /var/adm/messages log.

Notes The drd service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/platform/sun4v/drd:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name drvconfig – apply permission and ownership changes to devices

Synopsis drvconfig [-bn] [-a *alias_name*] [-c *class_name*]
[-i *drivername*] [-m *major_num*] [-r *root_dir*]

Description [devfsadm\(1M\)](#) is now the preferred command and should be used instead of `drvconfig`.

The default operation of `drvconfig` is to apply permission and ownership changes to devices. Normally, this command is run automatically after a new driver has been installed (with [add_drv\(1M\)](#)) and the system has been rebooted.

Options The following options are supported:

- a*alias_name* Add the name *alias_name* to the list of aliases that this driver is known by. This option, if used, must be used with the -m *major_num*, the -b and the -i *drivername* options.
- b Add a new major number to name binding into the kernel's internal `name_to_major` tables. This option is not normally used directly, but is used by other utilities such as [add_drv\(1M\)](#). Use of the -b option requires that -i and -m be used also. No `/devices` entries are created.
- c*class_name* The driver being added to the system exports the class *class_name*. This option is not normally used directly, but is used by other utilities. It is only effective when used with the -b option.
- i*drivername* Only configure the devices for the named driver. The following options are used by the implementation of [add_drv\(1M\)](#) and [rem_drv\(1M\)](#), and may not be supported in future versions of Solaris:
- m*major_num* Specify the major number *major_num* for this driver to add to the kernel's `name_to_major` binding tables.
- n Do not try to load and attach any drivers, or if the -i option is given, do not try to attach the driver named *drivername*.
- r*root_dir* Perform operations under *root_dir*, rather than directly under `root`.

Exit Status 0 Successful completion.

non-zero An error occurred.

Files	<code>/devices</code>	Device nodes directory
	<code>/etc/minor_perm</code>	Minor mode permissions
	<code>/etc/name_to_major</code>	Major number binding
	<code>/etc/driver_classes</code>	Driver class binding file

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [sh\(1\)](#), [add_drv\(1M\)](#), [modinfo\(1M\)](#), [modload\(1M\)](#), [modunload\(1M\)](#), [rem_drv\(1M\)](#), [update_drv\(1M\)](#), [path_to_inst\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [devfs\(7FS\)](#)

Name dsbitmap – size Availability Suite bitmap volumes

Synopsis dsbitmap -h

dsbitmap -p *data_volume* [*bitmap_volume*]

dsbitmap -r *data_volume* [*bitmap_volume*]

Description The `dsbitmap` command calculates the size of the Availability Suite bitmap volume required for use with the specified data volume.

Options The following options are supported:

-h

Prints the usage message for the `dsbitmap` command

-p *data_volume* [*bitmap_volume*]

For the given *data_volume*, `dsbitmap` calculates and display the required size for the associated Availability Suite Point in Time bitmap volume. The bitmap volume sizes for all possible Availability Suite Point in Time set configurations are displayed. These configurations include Independent shadow, Full size dependent shadow, and Compact dependent shadow. If the optional *bitmap_volume* argument is supplied, `dsbitmap` determines if this volume is large enough to be used as the bitmap volume for *data_volume*.

-r *data_volume* [*bitmap_volume*]

For the given *data_volume*, `dsbitmap` calculates and displays the required size for the associated Availability Suite Remote Mirror bitmap volume. The bitmap volume sizes for all possible Availability Suite Remote Mirror set configurations are displayed. These configurations include Sync replication, Async replication with memory queue, disk queue and 32 bit recount. If the optional *bitmap_volume* argument is supplied, `dsbitmap` determines if this volume is large enough to be used as the bitmap volume for *data_volume*.

Usage `dsbitmap` is typically used by the system administrator during the initial stages of configuring Sun StorageTek Availability Suite software in order to determine the required bitmap volume sizes, and then to check if the bitmap volumes that have been created are suitable.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- | | |
|---|--|
| 0 | Successful completion. If the name of a bitmap volume was specified, that volume is sufficiently large for all potential uses. |
| 1 | An error occurred. |
| 2 | An invalid option was supplied on the command line. |
| 3 | The specified bitmap volume is not large enough to be used as an Availability Suite Remote Mirror bitmap for an asynchronous set with a disk queue, but is large enough to be used for all other Remote Mirror set configurations. |
| 4 | The specified bitmap volume is not large enough to be used as an Availability Suite Remote Mirror bitmap for any Remote Mirror set configuration. |

-
- 5 The specified bitmap volume is not large enough to be used as an Availability Suite Remote Mirror bitmap for any Remote Mirror set configuration.
 - 6 The specified bitmap volume is not large enough to be used as an Availability Suite Point in Time bitmap for a compact dependent shadow, but is large enough to be used for all other Point in Time set configurations.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWscmr, SUNWscmu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [iiadm\(1M\)](#), [sndradm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name dscfg – configuration tool for Sun StorageTek Availability Suite software

Synopsis dscfg

dscfg -L

dscfg -h

dscfg [-C *group*]

dscfg [-C *group*] -i [-p *parser_config_file*]

dscfg [-C *group*] -a *config_file*

dscfg [-C *group*] [-l]

dscfg [-C *group*] [-l] -s *config_location*

dscfg -D *dgname*

Description The dscfg command controls the Availability Suite configuration by providing facilities to initialize, list, format, restore the configuration database.

Options If no options are specified, dscfg displays the current local configuration location. The dscfg command supports the following options:

-L

Displays the status of the lock controlling access to the configuration database. If the configuration database is locked, the type of lock (read or write) is displayed along with the process id of the process that holds the lock.

-h

Displays the usage message for the dscfg command.

-i

Initializes the configuration database. As it deletes previous or current configuration information, this option prompts you to confirm the deletion before proceeding.

-p *parser_config_file*

When used with the -i option, dscfg loads the parser configuration file into the persistent configuration, it reformats the configuration database.

-a *config_file*

Restore the specified *config_file* into the configuration. This option does not do any error checking of the file. Use of this option invalidates the configuration file.

-l

Lists the contents of current configuration database in a format that is suitable for the -a option. When used in combination with the -s option, it displays the contents stored in the location passed to the -s option, but does not set the configuration location.

The options below are for Sun Cluster-configured systems only. *group* can be either Sun Cluster device group or as '-' as local devices.

-C <i>group</i>	Display the location of cluster configuration database.
-C <i>group</i> -i	Initializes the configuration database entries that only associated with <i>group</i> specified. As it deletes previous or current configuration information, this options prompts you to confirm the deletion before proceeding.
-C <i>group</i> -p <i>parser_config_file</i>	When used with the -i option, <i>dscfg</i> loads the parser configuration file into the persistent configuration, it reformats the configuration database entries that only associated with <i>group</i> specified.
-C <i>group</i> -a <i>config_file</i>	Restore the specified <i>config_file</i> into the configuration database entries that only associated with <i>group</i> specified. This option does not do any error checking of the file. Use of this option invalidates the configuration file.
-C <i>group</i> -l	Lists the contents of current configuration database that is associated with resource <i>group</i> specified.
-C <i>group</i> -s <i>config_file_location</i>	Specifies where the Sun Cluster configuration database resides, the location has to be DID device.
-D <i>device_group</i>	Checks whether the specified <i>device_group</i> is known by Sun Cluster and whether it is available on this node. It displays a information that indicates the device group's status and return values are as follows, (use <code>echo \$?</code> to retrieve the return value):
	1 Device group is in Sun Cluster and is active on this node;
	0 Device group is in Sun Cluster but active on another node;
	-1 Device group is not in Sun Cluster.

Usage The *dscfg* command is typically run from other scripts, such as package installation scripts, and from *dscfgadm(1M)*. It is not intended for general use. For uses of *dscfg* not covered by *dscfgadm*, please refer to the *Availability Suite Troubleshooting Guide*.

Files /etc/dscfg_format
 parser configuration file

/etc/dscfg_local
 configuration location for all entries with no cluster tags

/etc/dscfg_cluster
 reference file specifying the location of the Sun Cluster configuration database.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWscmr, SUNWscmu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [dscfgadm\(1M\)](#), [iiadm\(1M\)](#), [scmadm\(1M\)](#), [sndradm\(1M\)](#), [svadm\(1M\)](#), [ds.log\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

-
- Name** dscfgadm – administration command for the Availability Suite configuration location and services
- Synopsis** dscfgadm -i
dscfgadm -e [-r] [-p]
dscfgadm -d [-r]
dscfgadm -s
- Description** The dscfgadm command controls the Availability Suite configuration location and services by providing facilities to set the configuration location, and to enable and disable the Availability Suite services.
- Options** If you do not specify any arguments to a dscfgadm command, the utility interactively steps you through setting the configuration location and starting the services. The configuration location is validated to ensure it meets criteria such as size and file type before it is initialized for use.
- The dscfgadm command supports the following options.
- d [-r]
Disables the Availability Suite SMF services. This includes stopping daemons and suspending any Point-in-Time Copy or Remote Mirror sets that are currently enabled under the Availability Suite software. When executed with no additional options, the -d option disables all Availability Suite services. This setting is persistent across system boots.
 - r
When passed to the -d or -e option, acts only on the Remote Mirror services.
 - e [-r] [-p]
Enables the Availability Suite SMF services. This includes starting daemons and resuming any Point-in-Time Copy or Remote Mirror sets that have been previously configured under the Availability Suite software. When executed with no additional options, the -e option enables all Availability Suite services. This setting is persistent across system boots.
 - r
When passed to the -d or -e option, acts only on the Remote Mirror services.
 - p
When passed to the -e option, enables only the Point-in-Time Copy service.
 - i
Displays information on the Availability Suite SMF services.
 - s
Allows you to set the location of the configuration database containing information specific to Sun Cluster configurations.
 - x
Displays verbose debugging information as the program is executing.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWscmr, SUNWscmu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [dscfg\(1M\)](#), [iiadm\(1M\)](#), [scmadm\(1M\)](#), [sndradm\(1M\)](#), [svadm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name dscfglockd – Availability Suite Services lock daemon

Synopsis /usr/lib/dscfglockd [-e *program* | -f *file*]

Description The dscfglockd daemon coordinates StorageTek configuration database lock requests between nodes within a cluster.

Options The dscfglockd supports the following options:

-e *program*

Executes the script and arguments in *program*. The executable and any arguments it needs must be supplied with suitable quoting as a single argument to this option. This argument is processed by [sh\(1\)](#).

-f *file*

Reads the list of names for peer hosts from *file*.

If no arguments are specified, dscfglockd acts as a local lock daemon, but coordinates lock requests with any other daemons that might contact the local host as part of their own configuration process.

Exit Status 0 Daemon started successfully.

>0 Daemon failed to start.

Files /lib/svc/method/svc-scm
Shell script for starting and stopping dscfglockd.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWscmr, SUNWscmu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [sh\(1\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name dsstat – report Sun StorageTek Availability Suite I/O statistics

Synopsis dsstat -m *mode* [-r *report-options*] [-d *display-options*]
[-s *volume-sets*] [-f | -F] [-z] [*interval* [*count*]]

Description The dsstat command collects and reports I/O statistics for the Sun StorageTek Availability Suite products.

Options The dsstat supports the following options:

-m *mode*

Specifies the mode(s) of operation. Valid modes are:

cache

Cache statistics

ii

Point-in-Time Copy statistics

sndr

Remote Mirror statistics

To display statistics for multiple services simultaneously, use the -m switch to specify each of the modes required. For example:

```
% dsstat -m ii -m sndr
```

```
% dsstat -m ii -m sndr -m cache
```

To determine which statistics are being reported from which service, use the *role* field, described below. When cache statistics are requested as one of the multiple services, the rkps and wkps statistics is further divided into crkps, drkps, cwkps, and dwkps. If no -m switch is specified, then dsstat displays default statistics for all of the valid modes as described above. See “Field Descriptions,” below for descriptions of these fields.

-r *report-options*

Specifies the volume components to be displayed. Each item is represented by a single character, and multiple items can be selected. The *report-options* vary based on the mode(s) specified above. This option is not used for cache mode.

Valid *report-options* for ii mode are:

m Master volume statistics.

- For the “report-options for ii mode”: m, s, b, o
- For the “report-options for sndr mode”: b, n
- For the “display-options for cache mode”: r, w, d, c, s, f
- For the “display-options for ii mode”: r, w, t, s, p, f

s Shadow volume statistics.

b Bitmap volume statistics.

- o Overflow volume statistics, if attached.

Valid *report-options* for *sndr* mode are:

- b Bitmap volume statistics.
- n Network volume statistics.

-d *display-options*

Specifies the statistics to be displayed. The types of statistics are represented by a single character; multiple types can be specified.

For cache mode, the valid *display-options* are:

- r Detailed read statistics.
- w Detailed write statistics.
- s Summary statistics.
- f Cache behavior flags.

The following *display-options* are available only for cache mode, they need to be combined with the mode options (-m)

- d Destaged data statistics.
- c Write cancellation statistics.

The default *display-options* for cache are *sf*.

For *ii* mode, the valid *display-options* are:

- r Detailed read statistics.
- w Detailed write statistics.
- t Timing statistics.
- s Summary statistics.
- p Percentage of volume requiring sync.
- f Volume type/status flags.

The default *display-options* for *ii* are *spf*. For *sndr* mode, the valid *display-options* are:

- r Detailed read statistics.

- w Detailed write statistics.
- t Timing statistics.
- s Summary statistics.
- p Percentage of volume requiring sync.
- f Volume type/status flags.
- q Asynchronous queue statistics.

The following *display-option* is only available for `sndr` mode, and needs to be combined with the mode options (`-m`).

- q Asynchronous queue statistics.

The default *display-options* for `sndr` are `spf`.

Specifying the summary *display-option* causes `r w t` *display-options* to be ignored.

- s *volume-sets* Filters the output to include only the specified *volume-sets*, where *volume-sets* is a comma-delimited list of volume names. When displaying Remote Mirror statistics, the name specified is compared to the Remote Mirror primary volume to determine if they match. Additionally, an Remote Mirror volume should be specified as `<host>:<volume>` where `<host>` is the primary or secondary host and `<volume>` is the volume name by which that host recognizes the volume set. When specifying multiple Remote Mirror volumes sets, be aware that each volume set specified is evaluated individually, using the rules above. When displaying Point-in-Time Copy statistics, the volume name specified is compared to the Point-in-Time Copy shadow volume to determine if they match.
- f Output field headers at every reporting cycle.
- F Output field headers once, when reporting begins.
- z Suppress report lines that have zero values or no activity.

Operands The `dsstat` command line supports the following operands:

interval

Specifies the *interval* for each report, in seconds. If no *interval* is specified, a single report with a one second *interval* is output.

Due to the varying number of entries in a given set and the varying number of sets, header information might appear in the middle of a set being reported. To avoid this, use the `-f` or `-F` options to display the header information at the desired time.

count

Specifies the number of reports to generate. If no *count* is specified, output continues until interrupted.

Field Descriptions Unless otherwise specified, all fields are per-second averages based on the data collected during the specified *interval*.

name	Name of the entity being reported
t	Volume type
s	Volume status
r	Cache read behavior
w	Cache write behavior
pct	Percentage of volume requiring sync
role	Role of the item being reported
tps	Total number of reads + writes
rtps	Number of reads
wtps	Number of writes
kps	Total kilobytes read + written
rkps	Kilobytes read
wkps	Kilobytes written
crkps	Kilobytes read from cache
drkps	Kilobytes read from disk
cwkps	Kilobytes written to cache
dwkps	Kilobytes written to disk
ckps	Kilobytes transferred to or from cache
dkps	Kilobytes transferred to or from disk
svt	Service time per operation
hit	Read hits during <i>interval</i>
ds/s	Kilobytes destaged from cache
cn/s	Number of write cancellations
q	Type of asynchronous queuing being used
qi	Number of items currently queued

qk Kilobytes currently queued
qhwi High water mark of queued items
qhwk High water mark of queued kilobytes

The name field displays only the last 16 characters of the name.

Valid cache behaviors for cache are:

C Cache reads/writes
D Disk reads/writes

Valid volume types for i i are:

I Independent shadow volume
D Dependent shadow volume

Valid volume status for i i is:

C Copy in progress
- No copy in progress

Valid volume types for sndr are:

P This is the primary host of this volume set
S This is the secondary host of this volume set

Valid volume status for sndr is:

L Changes to this volume are being logged
Q Volume are in queuing mode
R Replicating changes to secondary
SY Synchronization in progress. Sending data.
RS Reverse synchronization in progress. Receiving data.
SN Synchronization needed
RN Reverse synchronization needed
VF Volume failed
BF Bitmap failed
QF Queue failed

Valid queue types for sndr are:

D Disk-based queuing enabled
 M Memory-based queuing enabled

Volume roles for `sndr` are:

net Network volume statistics
 bmp Bitmap volume statistics

Volume roles for `ii` are:

mst Master volume statistics
 shd Shadow volume statistics
 bmp Bitmap volume statistics
 ovr Overflow volume statistics

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Report Cache Statistics

The following example shows the display of Report Cache statistics, with detailed breakdowns of read and writes to cache/disk. Reports are generated at five second intervals. Reporting is limited to the set `/dev/rdisk/c1t1d0s0`.

```
# dsstat -m cache -d rw -s /dev/rdisk/c1t1d0s0 5
- read -           - write -
name              ckps  dkps  hit  ckps  dkps  hit
dev/rdisk/c1t1d0s0  0     0  0.00  0     0  0.00
dev/rdisk/c1t1d0s0  3    2396 0.13  983   763 100.00
dev/rdisk/c1t1d0s0 2399   799 75.00 2815  2686 100.00
dev/rdisk/c1t1d0s0 3200   800 80.00 2755  2908 100.00
dev/rdisk/c1t1d0s0 3999   799 83.33 2809  2868 100.00
dev/rdisk/c1t1d0s0 4800   800 85.71 2867  2931 100.00
```

EXAMPLE 2 Report Master, Shadow and Bitmap Statistics

Report master, shadow and bitmap statistics for Point-in-Time Copy, using default output. Generate reports at two second intervals.

```
# dsstat -m ii -r msb 2
name              t  s  pct  role  kps  tps  svt
dev/rdisk/c0t1d0s5 I  C  96.15 mst 19921  38  22
dev/rdisk/c0t1d0s6           shd  9960  19  20
dev/rdisk/c0t1d0s7           bmp   39  77  2
dev/rdisk/c0t1d0s5 I  C  94.24 mst 19623  38  22
dev/rdisk/c0t1d0s6           shd  9939  19  20
dev/rdisk/c0t1d0s7           bmp   39  77  2
dev/rdisk/c0t1d0s5 I  C  92.34 mst 19969  39  22
```

EXAMPLE 2 Report Master, Shadow and Bitmap Statistics *(Continued)*

```
dev/rdisk/c0t1d0s6          shd  9984   19   20
dev/rdisk/c0t1d0s7          bmp   39    78    2
```

EXAMPLE 3 Report Network Statistics for Remote Mirror

Report network statistics for Remote Mirror, using detailed read, write statistics. Report includes volume type/status flags and percentages. Generate reports at two second intervals. Limit reporting to the set /dev/rdisk/c0t1d0s0.

```
# dsstat -m sndr -r n -d rwpf -s /dev/rdisk/c0t1d0s0 2
name                t s   pct role rkps rtps wkps wtps
dev/rdisk/c0t1d0s0 P L 100.00 sec  0  0   0   0
dev/rdisk/c0t1d0s0 P SY 99.90 sec  0  0  288  9
dev/rdisk/c0t1d0s0 P SY 97.90 sec  0  0 5296 165
dev/rdisk/c0t1d0s0 P SY 95.81 sec  0  0 5184 161
dev/rdisk/c0t1d0s0 P SY 93.81 sec  0  0 5280 164
dev/rdisk/c0t1d0s0 P SY 91.71 sec  0  0 5198 162
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 Successful completion, no statistics to report.
- 2 An invalid argument has been encountered.
- 3 No memory is available to create `ksstat` statistics.
- 4 An unknown error has occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWscmr, SUNWscmu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [dscfg\(1M\)](#), [svadm\(1M\)](#), [ds.log\(4\)](#), [rdc.cf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name dsvclockd – DHCP service lock daemon

Synopsis /usr/lib/inet/dsvclockd [-d 1 | 2] [-f] [-v]

Description The dsvclockd daemon is a lock manager that works in conjunction with the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) Data Service Library (libdhcpsvc). It provides shared or exclusive access to the [dhcp_network\(4\)](#) and [dhcptab\(4\)](#) tables. This service is used by the [SUNWbinfiles](#) and [SUNWfiles](#) DHCP data store modules. See [dhcp_modules\(5\)](#).

dsvclockd is started on demand by libdhcpsvc. The dsvclockd daemon should be started manually only if command line options need to be specified.

Options The following options are supported:

- d 1 | 2 Set debug level. Two levels of debugging are currently available, 1 and 2. Level 2 is more verbose.
- f Run in the foreground instead of as a daemon process. When this option is used, messages are sent to standard error instead of to [syslog\(3C\)](#).
- v Provide verbose output.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWdhcsu
Interface Stability	Unstable

See Also [syslog\(3C\)](#), [dhcp_network\(4\)](#), [dhcptab\(4\)](#), [dhcp_modules\(5\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name dtrace – DTrace dynamic tracing compiler and tracing utility

Synopsis dtrace [-32 | -64] [-aACeFGHh\lqSvVwZ] [-b *bufsz*] [-c *cmd*]
 [-D *name* [=value]] [-I *path*] [-L *path*] [-o *output*]
 [-s *script*] [-U *name*] [-x *arg* [=val]]
 [-X a | c | s | t] [-p *pid*]
 [-P *provider* [[*predicate*] *action*]]
 [-m [*provider:*] *module* [[*predicate*] *action*]]
 [-f [[*provider:*] *module:*] *function* [[*predicate*] *action*]]
 [-n [[*provider:*] *module:*] *function:*] *name* [[*predicate*] *action*]]
 [-i *probe-id* [[*predicate*] *action*]]

Description DTrace is a comprehensive dynamic tracing framework for the Solaris Operating System. DTrace provides a powerful infrastructure that permits administrators, developers, and service personnel to concisely answer arbitrary questions about the behavior of the operating system and user programs.

The *Solaris Dynamic Tracing Guide* describes how to use DTrace to observe, debug, and tune system behavior. Refer to this book for a detailed description of DTrace features, including the bundled DTrace observability tools, instrumentation providers, and the D programming language.

The `dt race` command provides a generic interface to the essential services provided by the DTrace facility, including:

- Options that list the set of probes and providers currently published by DTrace
- Options that enable probes directly using any of the probe description specifiers (provider, module, function, name)
- Options that run the D compiler and compile one or more D program files or programs written directly on the command line
- Options that generate anonymous tracing programs
- Options that generate program stability reports
- Options that modify DTrace tracing and buffering behavior and enable additional D compiler features

You can use `dt race` to create D scripts by using it in a `#!` declaration to create an interpreter file. You can also use `dt race` to attempt to compile D programs and determine their properties without actually enabling tracing using the `-e` option. See **OPTIONS**. See the *Solaris Dynamic Tracing Guide* for detailed examples of how to use the `dt race` utility to perform these tasks.

Options The arguments accepted by the `-P`, `-m`, `-f`, `-n`, and `-i` options can include an optional D language *predicate* enclosed in slashes `//` and optional D language *action* statement list enclosed in braces `{}`. D program code specified on the command line must be appropriately quoted to avoid interpretation of meta-characters by the shell.

The following options are supported:

-32 | -64

The D compiler produces programs using the native data model of the operating system kernel. You can use the `isa info -b` command to determine the current operating system data model. If the `-32` option is specified, `dt race` forces the D compiler to compile a D program using the 32-bit data model. If the `-64` option is specified, `dt race` forces the D compiler to compile a D program using the 64-bit data model. These options are typically not required as `dt race` selects the native data model as the default. The data model affects the sizes of integer types and other language properties. D programs compiled for either data model can be executed on both 32-bit and 64-bit kernels. The `-32` and `-64` options also determine the ELF file format (ELF32 or ELF64) produced by the `-G` option.

-a

Claim anonymous tracing state and display the traced data. You can combine the `-a` option with the `-e` option to force `dt race` to exit immediately after consuming the anonymous tracing state rather than continuing to wait for new data. See the [Solaris Dynamic Tracing Guide](#) for more information about anonymous tracing.

-A

Generate `driver.conf(4)` directives for anonymous tracing. This option constructs a set of `dtrace(7D)` configuration file directives to enable the specified probes for anonymous tracing and then exits. By default, `dt race` attempts to store the directives to the file `/kernel/drv/dtrace.conf`. You can modify this behavior if you use the `-o` option to specify an alternate output file.

-b *bufsz*

Set principal trace buffer size (*bufsz*). The trace buffer size can include any of the size suffixes `k`, `m`, `g`, or `t`. If the buffer space cannot be allocated, `dt race` attempts to reduce the buffer size or exit depending on the setting of the `buf resize` property.

-c *cmd*

Run the specified command *cmd* and exit upon its completion. If more than one `-c` option is present on the command line, `dt race` exits when all commands have exited, reporting the exit status for each child process as it terminates. The process-ID of the first command is made available to any D programs specified on the command line or using the `-s` option through the `$target` macro variable. Refer to the [Solaris Dynamic Tracing Guide](#) for more information on macro variables.

-C

Run the C preprocessor `cpp(1)` over D programs before compiling them. You can pass options to the C preprocessor using the `-D`, `-U`, `-I`, and `-H` options. You can select the degree of C standard conformance if you use the `-X` option. For a description of the set of tokens defined by the D compiler when invoking the C preprocessor, see `-X`.

-D *name* [=value]

Define *name* when invoking `cpp(1)` (enabled using the `-C` option). If you specify the equals sign (=) and additional *value*, the name is assigned the corresponding value. This option passes the `-D` option to each `cpp` invocation.

- e
Exit after compiling any requests and consuming anonymous tracing state (-a option) but prior to enabling any probes. You can combine this option with the -a option to print anonymous tracing data and exit. You can also combine this option with D compiler options. This combination verifies that the programs compile without actually executing them and enabling the corresponding instrumentation.
- f[[*provider:*]*module:*]*function*[[*predicate*]*action*]]
Specify function name to trace or list (-l option). The corresponding argument can include any of the probe description forms *provider:module:function*, *module:function*, or *function*. Unspecified probe description fields are left blank and match any probes regardless of the values in those fields. If no qualifiers other than *function* are specified in the description, all probes with the corresponding *function* are matched. The -f argument can be suffixed with an optional D probe clause. You can specify more than one -f option on the command line at a time.
- F
Coalesce trace output by identifying function entry and return. Function entry probe reports are indented and their output is prefixed with ->. Function return probe reports are unindented and their output is prefixed with <-. System call entry probe reports are indented and their output is prefixed with =>. System call return probe reports are unindented and their output is prefixed with <=.
- G
Generate an ELF file containing an embedded DTrace program. The DTrace probes specified in the program are saved inside of a relocatable ELF object which can be linked into another program. If the -o option is present, the ELF file is saved using the pathname specified as the argument for this operand. If the -o option is not present and the DTrace program is contained with a file whose name is *filename.d*, then the ELF file is saved using the name *filename.o*. Otherwise the ELF file is saved using the name *d.out*.
- H
Print the pathnames of included files when invoking `cpp(1)` (enabled using the -C option). This option passes the -H option to each `cpp` invocation, causing it to display the list of pathnames, one for each line, to `stderr`.
- h
Generate a header file containing macros that correspond to probes in the specified provider definitions. This option should be used to generate a header file that is included by other source files for later use with the -G option. If the -o option is present, the header file is saved using the pathname specified as the argument for that option. If the -o option is not present and the DTrace program is contained with a file whose name is *filename.d*, then the header file is saved using the name *filename.h*.
- i *probe-id*[[*predicate*]*action*]
Specify probe identifier (*probe-id*) to trace or list (-l option). You can specify probe IDs using decimal integers as shown by `dtrace -l`. The -i argument can be suffixed with an optional D probe clause. You can specify more than one -i option at a time.

-
- I *path*
Add the specified directory *path* to the search path for `#include` files when invoking `cpp(1)` (enabled using the `-C` option). This option passes the `-I` option to each `cpp` invocation. The specified *path* is inserted into the search path ahead of the default directory list.
 - L *path*
Add the specified directory *path* to the search path for DTrace libraries. DTrace libraries are used to contain common definitions that can be used when writing D programs. The specified *path* is added after the default library search path.
 - l
List probes instead of enabling them. If the `-l` option is specified, `dtrace` produces a report of the probes matching the descriptions given using the `-P`, `-m`, `-f`, `-n`, `-i`, and `-s` options. If none of these options are specified, this option lists all probes.
 - m [[*provider:*] *module:* [[*predicate*] *action*]]
Specify module name to trace or list (`-l` option). The corresponding argument can include any of the probe description forms *provider:module* or *module*. Unspecified probe description fields are left blank and match any probes regardless of the values in those fields. If no qualifiers other than *module* are specified in the description, all probes with a corresponding *module* are matched. The `-m` argument can be suffixed with an optional D probe clause. More than one `-m` option can be specified on the command line at a time.
 - n [[[[*provider:*] *module:*] *function:*] *name* [[*predicate*] *action*]]
Specify probe name to trace or list (`-l` option). The corresponding argument can include any of the probe description forms *provider:module:function:name*, *module:function:name*, *function:name*, or *name*. Unspecified probe description fields are left blank and match any probes regardless of the values in those fields. If no qualifiers other than *name* are specified in the description, all probes with a corresponding *name* are matched. The `-n` argument can be suffixed with an optional D probe clause. More than one `-n` option can be specified on the command line at a time.
 - o *output*
Specify the *output* file for the `-A`, `-G`, `-h`, and `-l` options, or for the traced data itself. If the `-A` option is present and `-o` is not present, the default output file is `/kernel/drv/dtrace.conf`. If the `-G` option is present and the `-s` option's argument is of the form *filename.d* and `-o` is not present, the default output file is *filename.o*. Otherwise the default output file is `d.out`.
 - p *pid*
Grab the specified process-ID *pid*, cache its symbol tables, and exit upon its completion. If more than one `-p` option is present on the command line, `dtrace` exits when all commands have exited, reporting the exit status for each process as it terminates. The first process-ID is made available to any D programs specified on the command line or using the `-s` option through the `$target` macro variable. Refer to the *Solaris Dynamic Tracing Guide* for more information on macro variables.

- P *provider* [*[predicate] action*]
Specify provider name to trace or list (-l option). The remaining probe description fields module, function, and name are left blank and match any probes regardless of the values in those fields. The -P argument can be suffixed with an optional D probe clause. You can specify more than one -P option on the command line at a time.
- q
Set quiet mode. dt race suppresses messages such as the number of probes matched by the specified options and D programs and does not print column headers, the CPU ID, the probe ID, or insert newlines into the output. Only data traced and formatted by D program statements such as `trace()` and `printf()` is displayed to `stdout`.
- s
Compile the specified D program source file. If the -e option is present, the program is compiled but instrumentation is not enabled. If the -l option is present, the program is compiled and the set of probes matched by it is listed, but instrumentation is not enabled. If none of -e, -l, -G, or -A are present, the instrumentation specified by the D program is enabled and tracing begins.
- S
Show D compiler intermediate code. The D compiler produces a report of the intermediate code generated for each D program to `stderr`.
- U *name*
Undefine the specified *name* when invoking `cpp(1)` (enabled using the -C option). This option passes the -U option to each `cpp` invocation.
- v
Set verbose mode. If the -v option is specified, dt race produces a program stability report showing the minimum interface stability and dependency level for the specified D programs. DTrace stability levels are explained in further detail in the [Solaris Dynamic Tracing Guide](#).
- V
Report the highest D programming interface version supported by dt race. The version information is printed to `stdout` and the dt race command exits. Refer to the [Solaris Dynamic Tracing Guide](#) for more information about DTrace versioning features.
- w
Permit destructive actions in D programs specified using the -s, -P, -m, -f, -n, or -i options. If the -w option is not specified, dt race does not permit the compilation or enabling of a D program that contains destructive actions.
- x *arg* [=*val*]
Enable or modify a DTrace runtime option or D compiler option. The list of options is found in the [Solaris Dynamic Tracing Guide](#). Boolean options are enabled by specifying their name. Options with values are set by separating the option name and value with an equals sign (=).

-X a | c | s | t

Specify the degree of conformance to the ISO C standard that should be selected when invoking `cpp(1)` (enabled using the `-C` option). The `-X` option argument affects the value and presence of the `__STDC__` macro depending upon the value of the argument letter.

The `-X` option supports the following arguments:

- a Default. ISO C plus K&R compatibility extensions, with semantic changes required by ISO C. This is the default mode if `-X` is not specified. The predefined macro `__STDC__` has a value of 0 when `cpp` is invoked in conjunction with the `-Xa` option.
- c Conformance. Strictly conformant ISO C, without K&R C compatibility extensions. The predefined macro `__STDC__` has a value of 1 when `cpp` is invoked in conjunction with the `-Xc` option.
- s K&R C only. The macro `__STDC__` is not defined when `cpp` is invoked in conjunction with the `-Xs` option.
- t Transition. ISO C plus K&R C compatibility extensions, without semantic changes required by ISO C. The predefined macro `__STDC__` has a value of 0 when `cpp` is invoked in conjunction with the `-Xt` option.

As the `-X` option only affects how the D compiler invokes the C preprocessor, the `-Xa` and `-Xt` options are equivalent from the perspective of D and both are provided only to ease re-use of settings from a C build environment.

Regardless of the `-X` mode, the following additional C preprocessor definitions are always specified and valid in all modes:

- `__sun`
- `__unix`
- `__SVR4`
- `__sparc` (on SPARC systems only)
- `__sparcv9` (on SPARC systems only when 64-bit programs are compiled)
- `__i386` (on x86 systems only when 32-bit programs are compiled)
- `__amd64` (on x86 systems only when 64-bit programs are compiled)
- `__'uname -s' 'uname -r'` (for example, `__SunOS_5_10`)
- `__SUNW_D=1`
- `__SUNW_D_VERSION=0xMMmmmmuuu`

Where *MM* is the major release value in hexadecimal, *mmm* is the minor release value in hexadecimal, and *uuu* is the micro release value in hexadecimal. Refer to the [Solaris Dynamic Tracing Guide](#) for more information about DTrace versioning.

-Z

Permit probe descriptions that match zero probes. If the -Z option is not specified, `dtrace` reports an error and exits if any probe descriptions specified in D program files (-s option) or on the command line (-P, -m, -f, -n, or -i options) contain descriptions that do not match any known probes.

Operands You can specify zero or more additional arguments on the `dtrace` command line to define a set of macro variables (\$1, \$2, and so forth). The additional arguments can be used in D programs specified using the -s option or on the command line. The use of macro variables is described further in the *Solaris Dynamic Tracing Guide*.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

For D program requests, an exit status of 0 indicates that programs were successfully compiled, probes were successfully enabled, or anonymous state was successfully retrieved. `dtrace` returns 0 even if the specified tracing requests encountered errors or drops.

1 An error occurred.

For D program requests, an exit status of 1 indicates that program compilation failed or that the specified request could not be satisfied.

2 Invalid command line options or arguments were specified.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWdtrc
Interface Stability	See below.

The command-line syntax is Committed. The human-readable output is Uncommitted.

See Also [cpp\(1\)](#), [isainfo\(1\)](#), [ssh\(1\)](#), [libdtrace\(3LIB\)](#), [driver.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [dtrace\(7D\)](#)

Solaris Dynamic Tracing Guide

Usage When using the -p flag, `dtrace` stops the target processes while it is inspecting them and reporting results. A process can do nothing while it is stopped. This means that, if, for example, the X server is inspected by `dtrace` running in a window under the X server's control, the whole window system can become deadlocked, because the proc tool would be attempting to display its results to a window that cannot be refreshed. In such a case, logging in from another system using [ssh\(1\)](#) and killing the offending proc tool clears the deadlock.

Name dumpadm – configure operating system crash dump

Synopsis /usr/sbin/dumpadm [-nuy] [-c *content-type*] [-d *dump-device*]
 [-m *mink* | *minm* | *min%*] [-s *savecore-dir*]
 [-r *root-dir*] [-z on | off]

Description The dumpadm program is an administrative command that manages the configuration of the operating system crash dump facility. A crash dump is a disk copy of the physical memory of the computer at the time of a fatal system error. When a fatal operating system error occurs, a message describing the error is printed to the console. The operating system then generates a crash dump by writing the contents of physical memory to a predetermined dump device, which is typically a local disk partition. The dump device can be configured by way of dumpadm. Once the crash dump has been written to the dump device, the system will reboot.

Fatal operating system errors can be caused by bugs in the operating system, its associated device drivers and loadable modules, or by faulty hardware. Whatever the cause, the crash dump itself provides invaluable information to your support engineer to aid in diagnosing the problem. As such, it is vital that the crash dump be retrieved and given to your support provider. Following an operating system crash, the [savecore\(1M\)](#) utility is executed automatically during boot to retrieve the crash dump from the dump device and write it to your file system in compressed form, to a file name `vmdump.X`, where `X` is an integer identifying the dump. Afterwards, [savecore\(1M\)](#) can be invoked on the same or another system to expand the compressed crash dump to a pair of files named `unix.X` and `vmcore.X`. The directory in which the crash dump is saved on reboot can be configured using dumpadm.

For systems with a UFS root file system, the default dump device is configured to be an appropriate swap partition. Swap partitions are disk partitions reserved as virtual memory backing store for the operating system. Thus, no permanent information resides in swap to be overwritten by the dump. See [swap\(1M\)](#). For systems with a ZFS root file system, dedicated ZFS volumes are used for swap and dump areas. For further information about setting up a dump area with ZFS, see the *ZFS Administration Guide*. To view the current dump configuration, use the dumpadm command with no arguments:

example# **dumpadm**

```
Dump content: kernel pages
Dump device: /dev/dsk/c0t0d0s1 (swap)
Savecore directory: /var/crash/saturn
Savecore enabled: yes
Save compressed: yes
```

When no options are specified, dumpadm displays the current crash dump configuration. The example above shows the set of default values: the dump content is set to kernel memory pages only, the dump device is a swap disk partition, the directory for savecore files is set to `/var/crash/hostname`. savecore is set to run automatically on reboot and save the crash dump in a compressed format.

When one or more options are specified, `dumpadm` verifies that your changes are valid, and if so, reconfigures the crash dump parameters and displays the resulting configuration. You must be root to view or change dump parameters.

Options The following options are supported:

`-c content-type`

Modify the dump configuration so that the crash dump consists of the specified dump content. The content should be one of the following:

`kernel`

Kernel memory pages only.

`all`

All memory pages.

`curproc`

Kernel memory pages, and the memory pages of the process whose thread was currently executing on the CPU on which the crash dump was initiated. If the thread executing on that CPU is a kernel thread not associated with any user process, only kernel pages will be dumped.

`-d dump-device`

Modify the dump configuration to use the specified dump device. The dump device may be one of the following:

`dump-device`

A specific dump device specified as an absolute pathname, such as `/dev/dsk/cNtNdNsN` when the system is running a UFS root file system. Or, specify a ZFS volume, such as `/dev/zvol/dsk/rpool/dump`, when the system is running a ZFS root file system.

`swap`

If the special token `swap` is specified as the dump device, `dumpadm` examines the active swap entries and selects the most appropriate entry to configure as the dump device. See [swap\(1M\)](#). Refer to the NOTES below for details of the algorithm used to select an appropriate swap entry. When the system is first installed with a UFS root file system, `dumpadm` uses the value for `swap` to determine the initial dump device setting. A given ZFS volume cannot be configured for both the swap area and the dump device.

`-m mink | minm | min%`

Create a `minfree` file in the current `savecore` directory indicating that `savecore` should maintain at least the specified amount of free space in the file system where the `savecore` directory is located. The `min` argument can be one of the following:

`k`

A positive integer suffixed with the unit `k` specifying kilobytes.

`m`

A positive integer suffixed with the unit `m` specifying megabytes.

%

A % symbol, indicating that the `minfree` value should be computed as the specified percentage of the total current size of the file system containing the `savecore` directory.

The `savecore` command will consult the `minfree` file, if present, prior to writing the dump files. If the size of these files would decrease the amount of free disk space below the `minfree` threshold, no dump files are written and an error message is logged. The administrator should immediately clean up the `savecore` directory to provide adequate free space, and re-execute the `savecore` command manually. The administrator can also specify an alternate directory on the `savecore` command-line.

-n

Modify the dump configuration to not run `savecore` automatically on reboot. This is not the recommended system configuration; if the dump device is a swap partition, the dump data will be overwritten as the system begins to swap. If `savecore` is not executed shortly after boot, crash dump retrieval may not be possible.

-r *root-dir*

Specify an alternate root directory relative to which `dumpadm` should create files. If no -r argument is specified, the default root directory / is used.

-s *savecore-dir*

Modify the dump configuration to use the specified directory to save files written by `savecore`. The directory should be an absolute path and exist on the system. If upon reboot the directory does not exist, it will be created prior to the execution of `savecore`. See the NOTES section below for a discussion of security issues relating to access to the `savecore` directory. The default `savecore` directory is `/var/crash/hostname` where `hostname` is the output of the -n option to the `uname(1)` command.

-u

Forcibly update the kernel dump configuration based on the contents of `/etc/dumpadm.conf`. Normally this option is used only on reboot when starting `svc:/system/dumpadm:default`, when the `dumpadm` settings from the previous boot must be restored. Your dump configuration is saved in the configuration file for this purpose. If the configuration file is missing or contains invalid values for any dump properties, the default values are substituted. Following the update, the configuration file is resynchronized with the kernel dump configuration.

-y

Modify the dump configuration to automatically run `savecore` on reboot. This is the default for this dump setting.

-z on | off

Modify the dump configuration to control the operation of `savecore` on reboot. The options are `on`, to enable saving core files in a compressed format, and `off`, to automatically uncompress the crash dump file. The default is `on`, because crash dump files can be very large and require less file system space if saved in a compressed format.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Reconfiguring The Dump Device To A Dedicated Dump Device:

The following command reconfigures the dump device to a dedicated dump device:

```
example# dumpadm -d /dev/dsk/c0t2d0s2

Dump content: kernel pages
Dump device: /dev/dsk/c0t2d0s2 (dedicated)
Savecore directory: /var/crash/saturn
Savecore enabled: yes
Save compressed: yes
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

```
0
    Dump configuration is valid and the specified modifications, if any, were made
    successfully.

1
    A fatal error occurred in either obtaining or modifying the dump configuration.

2
    Invalid command line options were specified.
```

Files /dev/dump
Dump device.

/etc/dumpadm.conf
Contains configuration parameters for dumpadm. Modifiable only through that command.

savecore-directory/minfree
Contains minimum amount of free space for *savecore-directory*. See [savecore\(1M\)](#).

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsr

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [uname\(1\)](#), [savecore\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [swap\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Notes The system crash dump service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/dumpadm:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

-
- Dump Device Selection** When the special `swap` token is specified as the argument to `dumpadm -d` the utility will attempt to configure the most appropriate swap device as the dump device. `dumpadm` configures the largest swap block device as the dump device; if no block devices are available for swap, the largest swap entry is configured as the dump device. If no swap entries are present, or none can be configured as the dump device, a warning message will be displayed. While local and remote swap files can be configured as the dump device, this is not recommended.
- Dump Device/Swap Device Interaction (UFS File Systems Only)** In the event that the dump device is also a swap device, and the swap device is deleted by the administrator using the `swap -d` command, the `swap` command will automatically invoke `dumpadm -d swap` in order to attempt to configure another appropriate swap device as the dump device. If no swap devices remain or none can be configured as the dump device, the crash dump will be disabled and a warning message will be displayed. Similarly, if the crash dump is disabled and the administrator adds a new swap device using the `swap -a` command, `dumpadm -d swap` will be invoked to re-enable the crash dump using the new swap device.
- Once `dumpadm -d swap` has been issued, the new dump device is stored in the configuration file for subsequent reboots. If a larger or more appropriate swap device is added by the administrator, the dump device is not changed; the administrator must re-execute `dumpadm -d swap` to reselect the most appropriate device from the new list of swap devices.
- Minimum Free Space** If the `dumpadm -m` option is used to create a `minfree` file based on a percentage of the total size of the file system containing the `savecore` directory, this value is not automatically recomputed if the file system subsequently changes size. In this case, the administrator must re-execute `dumpadm -m` to recompute the `minfree` value. If no such file exists in the `savecore` directory, `savecore` will default to a free space threshold of one megabyte. If no free space threshold is desired, a `minfree` file containing size 0 can be created.
- Security Issues** If, upon reboot, the specified `savecore` directory is not present, it will be created prior to the execution of `savecore` with permissions 0700 (read, write, execute by owner only) and owner root. It is recommended that alternate `savecore` directories also be created with similar permissions, as the operating system crash dump files themselves may contain secure information.

Name editmap – query and edit single records in database maps for sendmail

Synopsis editmap -C *file* [-N] [-f] [-q | -u | -x] *mptype mapname key*
["*value*"]...

Description The editmap command queries or edits one record in a database maps used by the keyed map lookups in [sendmail\(1M\)](#). Arguments are passed on the command line and output (for queries) is directed to standard output.

Depending on how it is compiled, editmap handles up to three different database formats, selected using the *mptype* parameter. See OPERANDS.

If the TrustedUser option is set in the sendmail configuration file and editmap is invoked as root, the generated files are owned by the specified TrustedUser.

Options The following options are supported:

- C *file* Use the specified sendmail configuration file (*file*) to look up the TrustedUser option.
- f Disable the folding of all upper case letters in the key to lower case. Normally, all upper case letters in the key are folded to upper case. This is intended to mesh with the -f flag in the K line in sendmail.cf. The value is never case folded.
- N Include the null byte that terminates strings in the map (for alias maps).
- q Query the map for the specified key. If found, print value to standard output and exit with 0. If not found then print an error message to stdout and exit with EX_UNAVAILABLE.
- u Update the record for key with value or inserts a new record if one doesn't exist. Exits with 0 on success or EX_IOERR on failure.
- x Delete the specific key from the map. Exit with 0 on success or EX_IOERR on failure.

Operands The following operands are supported:

key The left hand side of a record.

Each record is of the form:

key value

key and *value* are separated by white space.

mapname File name of the database map being created.

mptype Specifies the database format. The following *mptype* parameters are available:

dbm Specifies DBM format maps.

btree Specifies B-Tree format maps.

hash Specifies hash format maps.
value The right hand side of a record.

Each record is of the form:

key value

key and *value* are separated by white space.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWsndmu

See Also [makemap\(1M\)](#), [sendmail\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name edquota – edit user quotas for ufs file system

Synopsis edquota [-p *proto_user*] *username*...
edquota -t

Description edquota is a quota editor. One or more users may be specified on the command line. For each user a temporary file is created with an ASCII representation of the current disk quotas for that user for each mounted ufs file system that has a quotas file, and an editor is then invoked on the file. The quotas may then be modified, new quotas added, etc. Upon leaving the editor, edquota reads the temporary file and modifies the binary quota files to reflect the changes made.

The editor invoked is [vi\(1\)](#) unless the EDITOR environment variable specifies otherwise.

Only the super-user may edit quotas. In order for quotas to be established on a file system, the root directory of the file system must contain a file, owned by root, called quotas. (See [quotaon\(1M\)](#).)

proto_user and *username* can be numeric, corresponding to the UID of a user. Unassigned UIDs may be specified; unassigned names may not. In this way, default quotas can be established for users who are later assigned a UID.

If no options are specified, the temporary file created will have one or more lines of the format, where a block is considered to be a 1024 byte (1K) block:

```
fs mount_point blocks (soft =number, \  
    hard =number ) inodes (soft =number, \  
    hard =number)
```

The *number* fields may be modified to reflect desired values.

Options The following options are supported:

- p Duplicate the quotas of the *proto_user* specified for each *username* specified. This is the normal mechanism used to initialize quotas for groups of users.
- t Edit the soft time limits for each file system. If the time limits are zero, the default time limits in `/usr/include/sys/fs/ufs_quota.h` are used. The temporary file created will have one or more lines of the form

```
fs mount_point blocks time limit = number tmunit, files time limit = number tmunit
```

tmunit may be one of "month", "week", "day", "hour", "min" or "sec"; characters appended to these keywords are ignored, so you may write "months" or "minutes" if you prefer. The *number* and *tmunit* fields may be modified to set desired values. Time limits are printed in the greatest possible time unit such that the value is greater than or equal to one. If "default" is printed after the *tmunit*, this indicates that the value shown is zero (the default).

Usage See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of edquota when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (2^{31} bytes).

Files `quotas` quota file at the file system root
`/etc/mnttab` table of mounted file systems

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [vi\(1\)](#), [quota\(1M\)](#), [quotacheck\(1M\)](#), [quotaon\(1M\)](#), [repquota\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#), [quotactl\(7I\)](#)

Notes All UIDs can be assigned quotas.

Name eeprom – EEPROM display and load utility

Synopsis /usr/sbin/eeprom [-] [-f *device*] [*parameter*[=*value*]]

Description eeprom displays or changes the values of parameters in the EEPROM. It processes parameters in the order given. When processing a *parameter* accompanied by a *value*, eeprom makes the indicated alteration to the EEPROM; otherwise, it displays the *parameter*'s value. When given no parameter specifiers, eeprom displays the values of all EEPROM parameters. A ‘-’ (hyphen) flag specifies that parameters and values are to be read from the standard input (one *parameter* or *parameter=value* per line).

Only the super-user may alter the EEPROM contents.

eeprom verifies the EEPROM checksums and complains if they are incorrect.

platform-name is the name of the platform implementation and can be found using the -i option of `uname(1)`.

SPARC SPARC based systems implement firmware password protection with eeprom, using the `security-mode`, `security-password` and `security-#badlogins` properties.

x86 EEPROM storage is simulated using a file residing in the platform-specific boot area. The `/boot/solaris/bootenv.rc` file simulates EEPROM storage.

Because x86 based systems typically implement password protection in the system BIOS, there is no support for password protection in the eeprom program. While it is possible to set the `security-mode`, `security-password` and `security-#badlogins` properties on x86 based systems, these properties have no special meaning or behavior on x86 based systems.

Options -f *device*
Use *device* as the EEPROM device.

Operands

x86 Only *acpi-user-options*

A configuration variable that controls the use of Advanced Configuration and Power Interface (ACPI), a power management specification. The acceptable values for this variable depend on the release of the Solaris operating system you are using.

For all releases of Solaris 10 and Solaris 11, a value of `0x0` means that there will be an attempt to use ACPI if it is available on the system. A value of `0x2` disables the use of ACPI.

For the Solaris 10 1/06 release, a value of `0x8` means that there will be an attempt to use ACPI in a mode compatible with previous releases of Solaris 10 if it is available on the system. The default for Solaris 10 1/06 is `0x8`.

For releases of Solaris 10 after the 1/06 release and for Solaris 11, the default is `0x0`.

Most users can safely accept the default value, which enables ACPI if available. If issues related to the use of ACPI are suspected on releases of Solaris after Solaris 1/06, it is suggested to first try a value of `0x8` and then, if you do not obtain satisfactory results, `0x02`.

console

Specifies the console device. Possible values are `ttya`, `ttyb`, and `text`. In `text` mode, console output goes to the frame buffer and input comes from the keyboard. When this property is not present, the console device falls back to the device specified by `input-device` and `output-device`. When neither the `console` property or the `input-device` and `output-device` property pair are present, the console defaults to the frame buffer and keyboard.

Nvram Configuration Parameters

Not all OpenBoot systems support all parameters. Defaults vary depending on the system and the PROM revision. See the output in the “Default Value” column of the `printenv` command, as entered at the `ok` (OpenBoot) prompt, to determine the default for your system.

auto-boot?

If `true`, boots automatically after power-on or reset. Defaults to `true`. On x86, this parameter is controlled by the `grub` menu file. See [installgrub\(1M\)](#).

ansi-terminal?

Configuration variable used to control the behavior of the terminal emulator. The value `false` makes the terminal emulator stop interpreting ANSI escape sequences; instead, echoes them to the output device. Defaults to `true`.

boot-args

Holds a string of arguments that are passed to the boot subsystem. For example, you can use `boot-args=' - install dhcp'` to request a customer jumpstart installation. See [boot\(1M\)](#), [kmdb\(1\)](#), and [kernel\(1M\)](#).

boot-command

Command executed if `auto-boot?` is `true`. Defaults to `boot`.

boot-device

Device from which to boot. *boot-device* may contain 0 or more device specifiers separated by spaces. Each device specifier may be either a prom device alias or a prom device path. The boot prom will attempt to open each successive device specifier in the list beginning with the first device specifier. The first device specifier that opens successfully will be used as the device to boot from. Defaults to `disk net`.

boot-file

File to boot (an empty string lets the secondary booter choose default). Defaults to empty string.

boot-from

Boot device and file (OpenBoot PROM version 1.x only). Defaults to `vmunix`.

boot-from-diag

Diagnostic boot device and file (OpenBoot PROM version 1.x only). Defaults to `le()unix`.

boot-ncpus

Configuration variable that controls the number of processors with which the system should boot. By default, the system boots with maximum supported number of processors.

comX-noprobe

Where *X* is the number of the serial port, prevents device probe on serial port *X*.

diag-device

Diagnostic boot source device. Defaults to `net`.

diag-file

File from which to boot in diagnostic mode. Defaults to empty string.

diag-level

Diagnostics level. Values include `off`, `min`, `max` and `menus`. There may be additional platform-specific values. When set to `off`, POST is not called. If POST is called, the value is made available as an argument to, and is interpreted by POST. Defaults to `platform-dependent`.

diag-switch?

If `true`, run in diagnostic mode. Defaults to `false` on most desktop systems, `true` on most servers.

error-reset-recovery

Recover after an error reset trap. Defaults to platform-specific setting.

On platforms supporting this variable, it replaces the `watchdog-reboot?`, `watchdog-sync?`, `redmode-reboot?`, `redmode-sync?`, `sir-sync?`, and `xir-sync?` parameters.

The options are:

none

Print a message describing the reset trap and go to OpenBoot PROM's user interface, *aka* OK prompt.

sync

Invoke OpenBoot PROM's sync word after the reset trap. Some platforms may treat this as `none` after an externally initiated reset (XIR) trap.

boot

Reboot after the reset trap. Some platforms may treat this as `none` after an XIR trap.

fcode-debug?

If `true`, include name parameter for plug-in device FCodes. Defaults to `false`.

hardware-revision

System version information.

input-device

Input device used at power-on (usually keyboard, `ttya`, or `ttyb`). Defaults to keyboard.

keyboard-click?

If `true`, enable keyboard click. Defaults to `false`.

keyboard-layout

A string that specifies the layout name for non-self-identifying keyboards (type 7c). Invoke `kbd -s` to obtain a list of acceptable layout names. See [kbd\(1\)](#).

keymap

Keymap for custom keyboard.

last-hardware-update

System update information.

load-base

Default load address for client programs. Default value is 16384.

local-mac-address?

If true, network drivers use their own MAC address, not the system's. Defaults to `false`.

mfg-mode

Manufacturing mode argument for POST. Possible values include `off` or `chamber`. The value is passed as an argument to POST. Defaults to `off`.

mfg-switch?

If true, repeat system self-tests until interrupted with STOP-A. Defaults to `false`.

nvrामrc

Contents of NVRAMRC. Defaults to empty.

network-boot-arguments

Arguments to be used by the PROM for network booting. Defaults to an empty string. `network-boot-arguments` can be used to specify the boot protocol (RARP/DHCP) to be used and a range of system knowledge to be used in the process.

The syntax for arguments supported for network booting is:

```
[protocol, ] [key=value, ]*
```

All arguments are optional and can appear in any order. Commas are required unless the argument is at the end of the list. If specified, an argument takes precedence over any default values, or, if booting using DHCP, over configuration information provided by a DHCP server for those parameters.

protocol, above, specifies the address discovery protocol to be used.

Configuration parameters, listed below, are specified as *key=value* attribute pairs.

tftp-server

IP address of the TFTP server

file

file to download using TFTP or URL for WAN boot

`host-ip`
IP address of the client (in dotted-decimal notation)

`router-ip`
IP address of the default router (in dotted-decimal notation)

`subnet-mask`
subnet mask (in dotted-decimal notation)

`client-id`
DHCP client identifier

`hostname`
hostname to use in DHCP transactions

`http-proxy`
HTTP proxy server specification (IPADDR[:PORT])

`tftp-retries`
maximum number of TFTP retries

`dhcp-retries`
maximum number of DHCP retries

If no parameters are specified (that is, `network-boot-arguments` is an empty string), the PROM will use the platform-specific default address discovery protocol.

Absence of the protocol parameter when other configuration parameters are specified implies manual configuration.

Manual configuration requires that the client be provided with all the information necessary for boot. If using manual configuration, information required by the PROM to load the second-stage boot program must be provided in `network-boot-arguments` while information required for the second-stage boot program can be specified either as arguments to the boot program or by means of the boot program's interactive command interpreter.

Information required by the PROM when using manual configuration includes the booting client's IP address, name of the boot file, and the address of the server providing the boot file image. Depending on network configuration, it might be required that the subnet mask and address of the default router to use also be specified.

`oem-banner`
Custom OEM banner (enabled by setting `oem-banner?` to `true`). Defaults to empty string.

`oem-banner?`
If `true`, use custom OEM banner. Defaults to `false`.

`oem-logo`
Byte array custom OEM logo (enabled by setting `oem-logo?` to `true`). Displayed in hexadecimal.

oem-logo?

If `true`, use custom OEM logo (else, use Sun logo). Defaults to `false`.

pci-mem64?

If true, the OpenBoot PROM allocates 64-bit PCI memory addresses to a PCI device that can support 64-bit addresses.

This variable is available on SPARC platforms only and is optional. Some versions of SunOS do not support PCI MEM64 addresses and will fail in unexpected ways if the OpenBoot PROM allocates PCI MEM64 addresses.

The default value is system-dependent. If the variable exists, the default value is appropriate to the lowest version of the SunOS that shipped with a specific platform.

output-device

Output device used at power-on (usually `screen`, `ttya`, or `ttyb`). Defaults to `screen`.

redmode-reboot?

Specify `true` to reboot after a redmode reset trap. Defaults to `true`. (Sun Enterprise 10000 only.)

redmode-sync?

Specify `true` to invoke OpenBoot PROM's sync word after a redmode reset trap. Defaults to `false`. (Sun Enterprise 10000 only.)

rootpath

Specifies the root device of the operating system.

sbus-probe-list

Designate which SBus slots are probed and in what order. Defaults to `0123`.

screen-#columns

Number of on-screen columns (characters/line). Defaults to `80`.

screen-#rows

Number of on-screen rows (lines). Defaults to `34`.

scsi-initiator-id

SCSI bus address of host adapter, range 0-7. Defaults to `7`.

sd-targets

Map SCSI disk units (OpenBoot PROM version 1.x only). Defaults to `31204567`, which means that unit 0 maps to target 3, unit 1 maps to target 1, and so on.

security-#badlogins

Number of incorrect security password attempts. This property has no special meaning or behavior on x86 based systems.

security-mode

Firmware security level (options: none, command, or full). If set to command or full, system will prompt for PROM security password. Defaults to none. This property has no special meaning or behavior on x86 based systems.

security-password

Firmware security password (never displayed). Can be set only when security-mode is set to command or full. This property has no special meaning or behavior on x86 based systems.

```
example# eeprom security-password=  
Changing PROM password:  
New password:  
Retype new password:
```

selftest-#megs

Megabytes of RAM to test. Ignored if diag-switch? is true. Defaults to 1.

sir-sync?

Specify true to invoke OpenBoot PROM's sync word after a software-initiated reset (SIR) trap. Defaults to false. (Sun Enterprise 10000 only.)

skip-vme-loopback?

If true, POST does not do VMEbus loopback tests. Defaults to false.

st-targets

Map SCSI tape units (OpenBoot PROM version 1.x only). Defaults to 45670123, which means that unit 0 maps to target 4, unit 1 maps to target 5, and so on.

sunmon-compat?

If true, display Restricted Monitor prompt (>). Defaults to false.

testarea

One-byte scratch field, available for read/write test. Defaults to 0.

tpe-link-test?

Enable 10baseT link test for built-in twisted pair Ethernet. Defaults to true.

ttya-mode

TTYA (baud rate, #bits, parity, #stop, handshake). Defaults to 9600, 8, n, 1, -.

Fields, in left-to-right order, are:

Baud rate:

110, 300, 1200, 4800, 9600 . . .

Data bits:

5, 6, 7, 8

Parity:

n(none), e(even), o(odd), m(mark), s(space)

Stop bits:

1, 1.5, 2

Handshake:

–(none), h(hardware:rts/cts), s(software:xon/xoff)

ttyb-mode

TTYB (baud rate, #bits, parity, #stop, handshake). Defaults to 9600, 8, n, 1, –.

Fields, in left-to-right order, are:

Baud rate:

110, 300, 1200, 4800, 9600 . . .

Data bits:

5, 6, 7, 8

Stop bits:

1, 1.5, 2

Parity:

n(none), e(even), o(odd), m(mark), s(space)

Handshake:

–(none), h(hardware:rts/cts), s(software:xon/xoff)

ttya-ignore-cd

If true, operating system ignores carrier-detect on TTYA. Defaults to true.

ttyb-ignore-cd

If true, operating system ignores carrier-detect on TTYB. Defaults to true.

ttya-rts-dtr-off

If true, operating system does not assert DTR and RTS on TTYA. Defaults to false.

ttyb-rts-dtr-off

If true, operating system does not assert DTR and RTS on TTYB. Defaults to false.

use-nvramrc?

If true, execute commands in NVRAMRC during system start-up. Defaults to false.

verbosity

Controls the level of verbosity of PROM messages. Can be one of debug, max, normal, min, or none. Defaults to normal.

version2?

If true, hybrid (1.x/2.x) PROM comes up in version 2.x. Defaults to true.

watchdog-reboot?

If true, reboot after watchdog reset. Defaults to false.

watchdog-sync?

Specify `true` to invoke OpenBoot PROM's sync word after a watchdog reset trap. Defaults to `false`. (Sun Enterprise 10000 only.)

xir-sync?

Specify `true` to invoke OpenBoot PROM's sync word after an XIR trap. Defaults to `false`. (Sun Enterprise 10000 only.)

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Changing the Number of Megabytes of RAM.

The following example demonstrates the method for changing from one to two the number of megabytes of RAM that the system will test.

```
example# eeprom selftest-#megs
selftest-#megs=1
```

```
example# eeprom selftest-#megs=2
```

```
example# eeprom selftest-#megs
selftest-#megs=2
```

EXAMPLE 2 Setting the auto-boot? Parameter to true.

The following example demonstrates the method for setting the auto-boot? parameter to true.

```
example# eeprom auto-boot?=true
```

When the `eeprom` command is executed in user mode, the parameters with a trailing question mark (?) need to be enclosed in double quotation marks (“”) to prevent the shell from interpreting the question mark. Preceding the question mark with an escape character (\) will also prevent the shell from interpreting the question mark.

```
example% eeprom "auto-boot?"=true
```

EXAMPLE 3 Using network-boot-arguments

To use DHCP as the boot protocol and a hostname of `abcd.example.com` for network booting, set these values in `network-boot-arguments` as:

```
example# eeprom network-boot-arguments="dhcp,hostname=abcd.example.com"
```

...then boot using the command:

```
ok boot net
```

Note that network boot arguments specified from the PROM command line cause the contents of `network-boot-arguments` to be ignored. For example, with `network-boot-arguments` set as shown above, the boot command:

EXAMPLE 3 Using `network-boot-arguments` (Continued)

```
ok boot net:dhcp
```

...causes DHCP to be used, but the `hostname` specified in `network-boot-arguments` will not be used during network boot.

EXAMPLE 4 Setting System Console to Auxiliary Device

The command below assigns the device `/dev/term/a` as the system console device. You would make such an assignment prior to using `tip(1)` to establish a `tip` connection to a host.

On a SPARC machine:

```
# eeprom output-device=/dev/term/a
```

On an x86 machine:

```
# eeprom console=ttya
```

On a SPARC machine, the preceding command would be sufficient for assigning the console to an auxiliary device. For an x86 machine, you might, in addition, need to set the characteristics of the serial line, for which you would have to consult the BIOS documentation for that machine. Also, on some x86 machines, you might use a device other than device `a`, as shown above. For example, you could set `console` to `ttyb` if the second serial port is present.

EXAMPLE 5 Specifying that SPARC System Boots into `kmdb`

To specify that a SPARC machine boots into `kmdb(1)`, enter the following command:

```
# eeprom boot-command="boot -k"
```

Files `/boot/solaris/bootenv.rc`
File storing eeprom values on x86 machines.

`/dev/openprom`
Device file

`/usr/platform/platform-name/sbin/eeprom`
Platform-specific version of `eeprom`. Use `uname -i` to obtain *platform-name*.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [kmdb\(1\)](#), [passwd\(1\)](#), [sh\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [tip\(1\)](#), [uname\(1\)](#), [boot\(1M\)](#), [kernel\(1M\)](#), [init\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

OpenBoot 3.x Command Reference Manual

Name efdaemon – embedded FCode interpreter daemon

Synopsis /usr/lib/efcode/sparcv9/efdaemon [-d]

Description efdaemon, the embedded FCode interpreter daemon, invokes the embedded FCode interpreter when the daemon receives an interpretation request. A new session of the interpreter is started for each unique request by invoking the script /usr/lib/efcode/efcode.

efdaemon is used on selected platforms as part of the processing of some dynamic reconfiguration events.

Options The following option is supported:

-d Set debug output. Log debug messages as LOG_DEBUG level messages by using syslog(). See [syslog\(3C\)](#).

Files /dev/fcode	FCode interpreter pseudo device, which is a portal for receipt of FCode interpretation requests
/usr/lib/efcode/efcode	Shell script that invokes the embedded FCode interpreter
/usr/lib/efcode/interpreter	Embedded FCode interpreter
/usr/lib/efcode/sparcv9/interpreter	Embedded FCode interpreter

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWefcx, SUNWefcux, SUNWefcr, SUNWefclx

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [prtconf\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [syslog\(3C\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Notes The efdaemon service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/platform/sun4u/efdaemon:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name embedded_su – allow an application to prompt for credentials and execute commands as the super user or another user

Synopsis /usr/lib/embedded_su [-] [*username* [arg...]]

Description The embedded_su command allows an application to prompt the user for security credentials and then use those credentials to execute a program as another user or role (see [rbac\(5\)](#) for information on role-based access control). The default *username* is root (super user).

embedded_su is identical to [su\(1M\)](#), except that the user interaction is packaged in a form suitable for another program to interpret and display. Typically, embedded_su would be used to allow a graphical program to prompt for the super user password and execute a command as the super user, without requiring that the requesting program be run as the super user.

PROTOCOL embedded_su implements a simple protocol over standard input, standard output, and standard error. This protocol consists of three phases, roughly corresponding to PAM initialization, the PAM dialog, and PAM completion.

Phase 1: Initialization

After starting embedded_su, the application must send an initialization block on embedded_su's standard input. This block is a text block, as described under “Text Blocks”. There are currently no initialization parameters defined; the application should send an empty block by sending a line consisting solely of a period (.).

Phase 2: Conversation

embedded_su then emits zero or more conversation blocks on its standard output. Each conversation block may require zero or more responses.

A conversation block starts with a line consisting of the word CONV, followed by whitespace, followed by the number of messages in the conversation block as a decimal integer. The number of messages may be followed by whitespace and additional data. This data, if present, must be ignored.

Each message consists of a line containing a header followed by a text block, as described under “Text Blocks”. A single newline is appended to each message, allowing the message to end with a line that does not end with a newline.

A message header line consists of a PAM message style name, as described in [pam_start\(3PAM\)](#). The message header values are:

PAM_PROMPT_ECHO_OFF	The application is to prompt the user for a value, with echoing disabled.
PAM_PROMPT_ECHO_ON	The application is to prompt the user for a value, with echoing enabled.
PAM_ERROR_MSG	The application is to display the message in a form appropriate for displaying an error.

PAM_TEXT_INFO The application is to display the message in a form appropriate for general information.

The PAM message style may be followed by whitespace and additional data. This data, if present, must be ignored.

After writing all of the messages in the conversation block, if any of them were **PAM_PROMPT_ECHO_OFF** or **PAM_PROMPT_ECHO_ON**, `embedded_su` waits for the response values. It expects the response values one per line, in the order the messages were given.

Phase 3: Completion

After zero or more conversation blocks, `embedded_su` emits a result block instead of a conversation block.

Upon success, `embedded_su` emits a single line containing the word “SUCCESS”. The word **SUCCESS** may be followed by whitespace and additional data. This data, if present, must be ignored.

Upon failure, `embedded_su` emits a single line containing the word “ERROR”, followed by a text block as described under “Text Blocks”. The text block gives an error message. The word **ERROR** may be followed by whitespace and additional data. This data, if present, must be ignored.

Text Blocks

Initialization blocks, message blocks, and error blocks are all text blocks. These are blocks of text that are terminated by a line containing a single period (.). Lines in the block that begin with a “.” have an extra “.” prepended to them.

Internationalization All messages are localized to the current locale; no further localization is required.

SECURITY `embedded_su` uses [pam\(3PAM\)](#) for authentication, account management, and session management. Its primary function is to export the PAM conversation mechanism to an unprivileged program. Like [su\(1M\)](#), the PAM configuration policy can be used to control `embedded_su`. The PAM service name used is “`embedded_su`”.

`embedded_su` is almost exactly equivalent to [su\(1M\)](#) for security purposes. The only exception is that it is slightly easier to use `embedded_su` in writing a malicious program that might trick a user into providing secret data. For those sites needing maximum security, potentially at the expense of application functionality, the **EXAMPLES** section shows how to disable `embedded_su`.

Examples In the following examples, left angle brackets (<<<) indicate a line written by `embedded_su` and read by the invoking application. Right angle brackets (>>>) indicate a line written by the application and read by `embedded_su`.

EXAMPLE 1 Executing a command with the Correct Password

The following example shows an attempt to execute “somecommand” as “someuser”, with the correct password supplied:

```
/usr/lib/embedded_su someuser -c somecommand
>>>.
<<<CONV 1
<<<PAM_PROMPT_ECHO_OFF
<<<Password:
<<<.
>>>[ correct password ]
<<<SUCCESS
[ somecommand executes ]
```

EXAMPLE 2 Executing a command with the Incorrect Password

The following example shows an attempt to execute “somecommand” as “someuser”, with the incorrect password supplied:

```
/usr/lib/embedded_su someuser -c somecommand
>>>.
<<<CONV 1
<<<PAM_PROMPT_ECHO_OFF
<<<Password:
<<<.
>>>[ incorrect password ]
[ delay ]
<<<ERROR
<<<embedded_su:Sorry
<<<.
[ exit ]
```

EXAMPLE 3 Message Examples

A `pam_message` structure with `msg_style` equal to `PAM_TEXT_INFO` and `msg` equal to “foo” produces:

```
PAM_TEXT_INFO
foo
.
```

A `pam_message` structure with `msg_style` equal to `PAM_ERROR_MESSAGE` and `msg` equal to “bar\n” produces:

```
PAM_ERROR_MESSAGE
bar
```

EXAMPLE 3 Message Examples (Continued)

```
[ blank line ]
.
```

A `pam_message` structure with `msg_style` equal to `PAM_ERROR_MESSAGE` and `msg` equal to `“aaa\nbbb”` produces:

```
PAM_ERROR_MESSAGE
aaa
bbb
.
```

A `pam_message` structure with `msg_style` equal to `PAM_TEXT_INFO` and `msg` equal to `“”` produces:

```
PAM_TEXT_INFO
[ blank line ]
.
```

A `pam_message` structure with `msg_style` equal to `PAM_TEXT_INFO` and `msg` equal to `NULL` produces:

```
PAM_TEXT_INFO
.
```

EXAMPLE 4 Disabling `embedded_su`

To disable `embedded_su`, add a line to the `/etc/pam.conf` file similar to:

```
embedded_su auth requisite pam_deny.so.1
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Stable

See Also [su\(1M\)](#), [pam\(3PAM\)](#), [pam_start\(3PAM\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [rbac\(5\)](#)

Name etrn – start mail queue run

Synopsis etrn [-b] [-v] *server-host* [*client-hosts*]

Description SMTP's ETRN command allows an SMTP client and server to interact, giving the server an opportunity to start the processing of its queues for messages to go to a given host. This is meant to be used in start-up conditions, as well as for mail nodes that have transient connections to their service providers.

The `etrn` utility initiates an SMTP session with the host *server-host* and sends one or more ETRN commands as follows: If no *client-hosts* are specified, `etrn` looks up every host name for which `sendmail(1M)` accepts email and, for each name, sends an ETRN command with that name as the argument. If any *client-hosts* are specified, `etrn` uses each of these as arguments for successive ETRN commands.

Options The following options are supported:

-b System boot special case. Make sure localhost is accepting SMTP connections before initiating the SMTP session with *server-host*.

This option is useful because it prevents race conditions between `sendmail(1M)` accepting connections and *server-host* attempting to deliver queued mail. This check is performed automatically if no *client-hosts* are specified.

-v The normal mode of operation for `etrn` is to do all of its work silently. The `-v` option makes it verbose, which causes `etrn` to display its conversations with the remote SMTP server.

Environment Variables No environment variables are used. However, at system start-up, `svc:/network/smtp:sendmail` reads `/etc/default/sendmail`. In this file, if the variable `ETRN_HOSTS` is set, `svc:/network/smtp:sendmail` parses this variable and invokes `etrn` appropriately. `ETRN_HOSTS` should be of the form:

```
"s1:c1.1,c1.2      s2:c2.1 s3:c3.1,c3.2,c3.3"
```

That is, white-space separated groups of *server:client* where *client* can be one or more comma-separated names. The *:client* part is optional. *server* is the name of the server to prod; a mail queue run is requested for each *client* name. This is comparable to running:

```
/usr/lib/sendmail -qR client
```

on the host *server*.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Using `etrn`

Inserting the line:

```
ETRN_HOSTS="s1.domain.com:clnt.domain.com s2.domain.com:clnt.domain.com"
```


EXAMPLE 1 Using `etrn` (Continued)

in `/etc/default/sendmail` results in `svc:/network/smtp:sendmail` invoking `etrn` such that ETRN commands are sent to both `s1.domain.com` and `s2.domain.com`, with both having `clnt.domain.com` as the ETRN argument.

The line:

```
ETRN_HOSTS="server.domain.com:client1.domain.com,client2.domain.com"
```

results in two ETRN commands being sent to `server.domain.com`, one with the argument `client1.domain.com`, the other with the argument `client2.domain.com`.

The line:

```
ETRN_HOSTS="server1.domain.com server2.domain.com"
```

results in set of a ETRN commands being sent to both `server1.domain.com` and `server2.domain.com`; each set contains one ETRN command for each host name for which `sendmail(1M)` accepts email, with that host name as the argument.

Files `/etc/mail/sendmail.cf` sendmail configuration file
`/etc/default/sendmail` Variables used by `svc:/network/smtp:sendmail`

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWsndmu
Interface Stability	Stable

See Also [sendmail\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

RFC 1985

Notes Not all SMTP servers support ETRN.

Name fbconfig – frame buffer configuration utility

Synopsis fbconfig [-dev *device_file*] [-help]

fbconfig -list

fbconfig -gui

fbconfig -res \?

fbconfig [-dev *device_file*] [-file machine | system]
[*device_specific_options*] [-res *video-mode*] [*defaults*]
[-prconf] [-prdid[raw] [parsed]] [-propt]

Description fbconfig is the generic command line interface to query and/or to configure a frame buffer device. Depending on the command line options, fbconfig can invoke a GUI program, or it can invoke a device-specific configuration program. The choice of device configuration program depends both on the device (specified with -dev) and on the currently configured X server.

The options recognized by fbconfig are shown in the first three command forms in the SYNOPSIS section. The remaining forms illustrate options that may be passed to a device-specific configuration program that performs the actual operations. The interpretation of these options will depend upon the specific configuration program that is invoked. The options shown are supported by most device configuration programs.

If the -dev option is omitted, the default frame buffer (/dev/fb or /dev/fb0) is assumed.

Options The following options are supported by fbconfig:

-dev *device_file*

Specify the frame buffer device by its full pathname or simple filename. Pathnames of installed devices can be displayed using the -list option. If the -dev option is omitted, the default device is /dev/fb.

-gui

Invoke the Graphical User Interface (GUI). The GUI is available if the SUNWdcm package is installed. All other options are ignored.

The GUI can configure devices (as an alternative to the fbconfig command line) and can update the Xservers file without directly editing the file. The GUI allows the user that is logged in on the graphics device or devices to configure which graphics displays the window system should use, their screen layout (where they appear on the user's desktop), and screen properties (X attributes).

In addition, the GUI allows advanced users to create a new video format (resolution) that some graphics devices can select from fbconfig command line or from the device-dependent portion of the GUI. The GUI's online help explains all options and features.

-help

Displays the supported `fbconfig` command line options, along with a brief explanation of each. Also displays the `-help` text of the device-specific configuration program, if any. The frame buffer device can be specified using the `-dev` option, otherwise the default is used. Other `fbconfig` options are ignored. This is the default `fbconfig` option.

-list

Displays the pathnames of the installed frame buffer devices, the device model of each, and the configuration program that would be invoked for each device with the currently configured X server. Other `fbconfig` options are ignored.

Device File Name	Device Model	Config Program
-----	-----	-----
<code>/dev/fbs/kfb0</code>	XVR-2500	SUNWkfb_config
<code>/dev/fbs/kfb1</code>	XVR-2500	SUNWkfb_config
<code>/dev/fbs/nfb0 [a b]</code>	XVR-300	SUNWnfb_config
<code>/dev/fbs/pfb0 [a b]</code>	XVR-100	SUNWpfb_config

The following options are commonly supported by the device-specific configuration programs:

-defaults

Sets configuration options to their default values.

-file machine | system

Specifies which `xorg.conf` configuration file to use.

-prconf

Display the current configuration for the frame buffer and display device(s).

-predid [raw] [parsed]

Display the E-EDID (Enhanced Extended Display Identification Data) information obtained from the display device(s), which must be online, connected to the frame buffer. The output will be raw hexadecimal and/or human-readable text. The default is parsed.

-propt

Display the current software configuration.

-res \?

Display the video modes (resolutions) that can be used with the `-res video-mode` option.

Other supported options are determined by the device-specific configuration program:

device-specific-options

The syntax and descriptions of additional device-specific options are displayed in the `-help` output of `fbconfig` or the device-specific program. They are also contained in the man page for the device-specific program.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWfbc

See Also [SUNWgfb_config\(1M\)](#), [SUNWifb_config\(1M\)](#), [SUNWjfb_config\(1M\)](#), [SUNWkfb_config\(1M\)](#), [SUNWnfb_config\(1M\)](#), [SUNWpfb_config\(1M\)](#), [SUNWzulu_config\(1M\)](#), [afbconfig\(1M\)](#), [fbconf_xorg\(1M\)](#), [ffbconfig\(1M\)](#), [m64config\(1M\)](#), [pgxconfig\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Xserver(1), *Xorg(1)*, *Xsun(1)*, which are part of the OpenWindow, not the SunOS, man page collection.

Limitations Because of limitations in the m64 kernel driver and related software, fbconfig (with the -prconf option) is unable to distinguish between a current depth of 24 or 8+24. The -propt option returns the depth specified in the OWconfig file, which will be in effect following the next restart of the window system. The xwininfo utility, usually shipped in the package containing frame buffer software (such as SUNWxwpl), reports current depth of a specified window.

Name fbconf_xorg – configure frame buffer devices for Xorg

Synopsis /usr/lib/fbconfig/fbconf_xorg [-dev *device-file*]
 [-file machine | system | *config-path*]
 [-res *video-mode* [nocheck | noconfirm]]
 [*device-specific-options*]
 [-defaults] [-prconf] [-predid [raw] [parsed]] [-propt]
 /usr/lib/fbconfig/fbconf_xorg [-dev *device-file*] [-prconf] [-propt]
 /usr/lib/fbconfig/fbconf_xorg [-dev *device-file*] [-help] [-res ?]

For kfb devices:

```
/usr/lib/fbconfig/fbconf_xorg [-dev device-file]  

  [-file machine | system | config-path]  

  [-res video-mode [nocheck | noconfirm]]  

  [-deflinear true | false] [-defoverlay true | false]  

  [-deftransparent true | false]  

  [-doublehigh enable | disable]  

  [-g gamma-correction-value]  

  [-multisample available | disable | forceon]  

  [-offset x-val y-val] [-samples 1 | 2 | 4 | 8 | 16 ]  

  [-slave disable | multiview] [-stereo true | false]  

  [-defaults] [-prconf] [-predid [raw] [parsed]] [-propt]
```

Description The fbconf_xorg utility configures Frame Buffer devices and some of the X11 window system defaults for Xorg by updating the xorg.conf configuration file.

The first fbconf_xorg command form shown in the SYNOPSIS section stores the specified option values in the xorg.conf configuration file. These settings are used to initialize the frame buffer device the next time the window system is run on that device. The persistence of these settings across window system sessions and system reboots is determined by the xorg.conf file.

The second and third command forms display information, and do not alter the xorg.conf file. The presence of the -help and/or -res ? options will cause any other option (not shown in the third form) to be ignored.

You can configure only one frame buffer device at a time. To configure multiple devices, invoke the fbconf_xorg utility separately for each device.

Only frame buffer device options can be specified with fbconf_xorg. Use the normal window system options to specify default depth (see [svccfg\(1M\)](#)), default visual class, and so forth. Specify these as device modifiers on the command line. See *Xserver(1)*, part of the OpenWindows, not the SunOS, man page collection.

You can specify which xorg.conf file to open. By default, fbconf_xorg opens the machine-specific file, /etc/X11/xorg.conf. Use the -file option to specify an alternate file. For example, the system-global file, /usr/X11/xorg.conf, can be opened instead.

These standard `xorg.conf` files can be written only by the superuser or someone with the Primary Administrator role. Consequently, the `fbconf_xorg` program is run with `setuid root` permission.

Options The following options are supported for all frame buffer devices:

-defaults

Sets configuration options for the specified device to their default values. This does not affect the `-res` video mode setting. See the device-specific portions of the DEFAULTS section below.

-dev *device-file*

Specifies the frame buffer device by either its full pathname or simple filename (for example, `/dev/fbs/kfb0` or `kfb0`). Pathnames of installed devices can be displayed using the `-list` option to [fbconfig\(1M\)](#). If the `-dev` option is omitted, the default device, `/dev/fb`, is used.

-file *machine | system | config-path*

Specifies which `xorg.conf` file to open. If `machine` is specified, the machine-specific `/etc/X11/xorg.conf` file is opened. If `system` is specified, the global `/usr/X11/xorg.conf` file is opened. The absolute pathname of a configuration file can be used instead. If the specified file does not exist and is to be updated, it will be created. The file system that will contain the `xorg.conf` file must be writeable by someone with superuser-like privileges. This option has no effect unless other options are specified. The default is `machine`.

-help

Display the `fbconf_xorg` command line options that are supported in conjunction with the frame buffer device, along with a brief explanation of each option. The frame buffer device can be specified using the `-dev` option.

-prconf

Display the current configuration for the frame buffer device and attached display device(s). The frame buffer device can be specified using the `-dev` option.

The `-prconf` output might resemble:

```
Monitor/Resolution Information:
  Monitor manufacturer: SUN
  Product Code: 4
  Serial Number: 12212555
  Manufacture date: 2000, week 9
  EDID Version: 1.1
  Monitor dimensions: 36x29 cm
  Default Gamma: 2.62
  Monitor preferred resolution: SUNW_STD_1280x1024x60
  Monitor supported resolutions from EDID: SUNW_STD_1280x1024x60,
  SUNW_STD_1280x1024x76, 1152x900x66, VESA_STD_1280x1024x75,
  VESA_STD_1280x1024x60, SUNW_STD_1152x900x66,
  VESA_STD_720x400x70, VESA_STD_640x480x60,
```

```

VESA_STD_640x480x67, VESA_STD_640x480x72,
VESA_STD_640x480x75, VESA_STD_800x600x56,
VESA_STD_800x600x60, VESA_STD_800x600x72,
VESA_STD_800x600x75, VESA_STD_832x624x75,
VESA_STD_1024x768x60, VESA_STD_1024x768x70, 1024x768x75
Current resolution setting: FALLBACK_1152x900x66

```

```

Framelock Configuration:
  Slave Mode: Disabled

```

-predid [raw] [parsed]

Display the E-EDID (Enhanced Extended Display Identification Data) information obtained from the display device(s), which must be online, connected to the frame buffer. The frame buffer device can be specified using the `-dev` option. The output will be raw hexadecimal and/or human-readable (parsed) text. The default is parsed.

The `-predid raw` output might resemble:

```

--- EDID Data for /dev/fbs/kfb0 ---

Block 0: EDID Base Block
0x00:  00 FF FF FF FF FF FF 00 04 43 06 F2 01 00 00 00
0x10:  01 11 01 04 0F 2B 20 78 2B 9C 68 A0 57 4A 9B 26
0x20:  12 48 4C FF FF 80 A9 59 A9 4F A9 4A A9 45 81 99
0x30:  81 80 61 59 45 59 48 3F 40 30 62 B0 32 40 40 C0
0x40:  13 00 AB 40 11 00 00 1E 00 00 00 FD 00 32 5A 1E
0x50:  6E 17 04 11 00 C8 90 00 50 3C 00 00 00 F7 00 0A
0x60:  F7 0F 03 87 C0 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 FC
0x70:  00 41 42 43 20 4C 43 44 32 31 0A 20 20 20 00 0B

```

-propt

Display all option settings for the frame buffer device, either as they currently are or as they will be represented in the `xorg.conf` configuration file when `fbconf_xorg` completes. The device can be specified using the `-dev` option, and the file using the `-file` option.

The `-propt` output might resemble:

```

--- Graphics Configuration for /dev/fbs/kfb0 ---

xorg.conf: machine -- /etc/X11/xorg.conf
  Screen section: "kfb0"
  Device section: "kfb0"
  Monitor section: "kfb0"

Video Mode: SUNW_STD_1280x1024x76
StereoEnable: False

Multisample Information:
  Multisample Mode: Disable
  Samples Per Pixel: 4

```

```
Screen Information:
  DoubleWide: Disabled
  DoubleHigh: Disabled
  Offset/Overlap: [0, 0]
```

```
Visual Information:
  Default Visual: Non-Linear Normal Visual
  Gamma Correction Value: Using gamma value 2.22
```

-res ?

Display a list of video modes that can be used with the -res *video-mode* option.

The ? argument may need to be escaped or placed in quotes (\?, "?", or '?'), to protect it from misinterpretation by the shell.

The -res ? output might resemble:

```
Video modes accepted by the -res option:
  AUTO                               [1][2]
  NONE                               [1][2]
  SUNW_STD_1920x1200x75
  SUNW_STD_1920x1200x70
  SUNW_DIG_1920x1200x60
  SUNW_STD_1920x1080x72
  SUNW_DIG_1920x1080x60
  ...
  ...
  VESA_STD_640x480x75                [1]
  VESA_STD_640x480x72                [1]
  VESA_STD_640x480x60                [1]
```

[1] Resolution is supported by monitor

[2] Preferred resolution for monitor

Abbreviations such as “1280x1024x75” might also be used.

-res *video-mode* [nocheck | noconfirm]

Set the video mode for the display device that is connected to the frame buffer device.

A list of video modes can be displayed using the -res ? option.

The basic format of a video-mode is *widthxheightxrate*, where:

- *width* is the screen width in pixels.
- *height* is the screen height in pixels.
- *rate* is the vertical frequency of the screen refresh.

A video-mode argument may have an @ (at sign) instead of x preceding the refresh rate. For instance, 1280x1024x76 and 1280x1024@76 are equivalent.

A video-mode name may carry additional information, as with `SUNW_STD_1280x1024x76`.

The `-res` argument, `auto`, represents the video mode that is currently programmed into the device. The argument, `none`, is a synonym for `auto`.

Note that some video modes might be inappropriate for certain frame buffer devices and/or display devices.

The `-res` option accepts suboption keywords following the video-mode specification.

`nocheck`

The `nocheck` suboption causes the video-mode argument to be accepted, regardless of whether it is supported by the currently attached monitor, whether it is known within the current configuration, and so forth. Note that using an unchecked, inappropriate video mode can leave the system without usable video output. This suboption is useful if a different monitor is to be connected to the frame buffer device. This suboption also implies `noconfirm`.

`noconfirm`

If the video-mode argument is unable to be validated, the default action is to display a warning message and ask the user whether to continue. The `noconfirm` suboption suppresses this confirmation request. This suboption is useful when `fbconf_xorg` is being run from a shell script.

The following device-specific options are supported for certain frame buffer devices. Unless specified otherwise, these options do not take effect until the user logs out and back in.

`-deflinear true | false`

This option selects the default X visual. Two types of visuals are supported, linear and nonlinear. Linear visuals are gamma corrected. Nonlinear visuals are not.

If the value of this option is `true`, the default visual is set to default depth 24 and the default class is `TrueColor` with gamma correction enabled. If `false`, a nonlinear visual that satisfies the other default visual selection options, such as the default depth and default class, is chosen as the default visual.

The `-deflinear`, `-defoverlay`, and `-deftransparent` options each select the default X visual. Only one of these may be enabled at a time. Enabling one causes the others to be disabled.

`-defoverlay true | false`

This option selects the default X visual. The `kfb` device provides an 8-bit `PseudoColor` visual whose pixels are disjoint from the rest of the visuals. This is called the overlay visual. Windows created in this visual will not damage windows created in other visuals. The converse, however, is not true: Windows created in other visuals will damage overlay windows.

If the value of this option is `true`, the overlay visual is the default visual. The default depth is 8-bit and the default class is `PseudoColor`. If `false`, the non-overlay visual that satisfies the other default visual selection options, such as the default depth and the default class, is chosen as the default visual.

The `-deflinear`, `-defoverlay`, and `-deftransparent` options each select the default X visual. Only one of these may be enabled at a time. Enabling one causes the others to be disabled.

`-deftransparent true | false`

This option selects the default X visual. The `kfb` device provides an 8-bit `PseudoColor` visual whose pixels are disjoint from the rest of the visuals. This is called the overlay visual. Windows created in this visual will not damage windows created in other visuals.

If the value of this option is `true`, the overlay visual used as the default is a transparent overlay visual. A visual with transparency supports a colormap with 255 colors and one transparent pixel. The default depth is 8-bit and the default class is `PseudoColor`. If `false`, the nonoverlay visual that satisfies the other default visual selection options, such as the default depth and the default class, is chosen as the default visual.

The `-deflinear`, `-defoverlay`, and `-deftransparent` options each select the default X visual. Only one of these may be enabled at a time. Enabling one causes the others to be disabled.

`-doublehigh enable | disable`

Configures the two outputs of the frame buffer device into one vertical virtual display. The default is `disable`. The `-doublewide` and `-doublehigh` options are mutually exclusive. Enabling one causes the other to be disabled.

`-doublewide enable | disable`

Configures the two outputs of the frame buffer device into one horizontal virtual display. The default is `disable`. The `-doublewide` and `-doublehigh` options are mutually exclusive. Enabling one causes the other to be disabled.

`-g gamma-correction-value`

Sets the gamma correction value. All linear visuals provide gamma correction. The gamma correction value should be in the range, `0.1` to `10.0`. The default is `2.22`. This option can be used while the window system is running. Changing the gamma correction value affects all of the windows displayed by linear visuals.

`-gfile gamma-correction-file`

Loads the gamma correction table from the file specified by *gamma-correction-file*. This text file specifies the gamma correction values for the R, G, and B channels. Three consecutive values form an RGB triplet. For a `kfb` device, there must be exactly 256 RGB triplets. A value may be represented in hexadecimal, decimal, or octal format (for example, `0x3FF`, `1023`, or `01777`, respectively). Values are separated by one or more whitespace or new line characters. Comments begin with a hash sign character (`#`) and end at the end of the line.

You can load the gamma correction table with this option while the window system is running. The new gamma correction affects all the windows being displayed using the linear visuals. When gamma correction is done using a user-specified table, the gamma correction value (-g) is undefined. By default, the window system assumes a gamma correction value of 2.22 and loads the gamma table it creates corresponding to this value.

The following is an example of a *gamma-correction-file* file:

```
# Gamma Correction Table
0x00 0x00 0x00
0x01 0x01 0x01
0x02 0x02 0x02
... ..
... ..
0xFF 0xFF 0xFF
```

-multisample *available* | *disable* | *forceon*

If set to *disable*, no multisample is possible. If set to *available*, multisample is possible but is selected on a per-window basis using a library interface. If set to *forceon*, all Sun OpenGL windows are rendered using multisampling. To query the number of samples used, specify the *-propt* option or run the *xglnfo* utility. The *xglnfo* utility can return the number of multisamples if *-multisample* is set to *available*. The default is *disable*. *xglnfo* is described in the *xglnfo(1)* man page, in the Sun OpenGL man page collection.

-offset *x-val* *y-val*

Adjusts the position of the specified stream by the value specified. This option is only implemented in *-doublewide* and *-doublehigh* modes. For *-doublewide*, use the *x-val* to position the rightmost stream. Negative is left (overlaps with the left stream). For *-doublehigh*, use the *y-val* to position the bottom stream. Negative is up (overlaps with top stream). The default is [0, 0].

-samples 1 | 2 | 4 | 8 | 16

Requests the number of samples to compute per display pixel. The requested number of samples per pixel is used if *-multisample* is not disabled and resources exist for the request. To query the number of samples used, specify the *-propt* option or run the *xglnfo* utility. The *xglnfo* utility can return the number of multisamples after you specify the option *-multisample available*. The default is 4.

-slave *disable* | *multiview*

If you set the *multiview* argument for the *-slave* option, the device synchronizes video with a master through the multiview genlock ribbon cable. The system should be powered off whenever connecting or disconnecting this cable. Both devices should be running the same resolution and the option should be issued when the window system is running. The default is *disable*.

Defaults Certain options have implied default arguments. The default argument is used when the option is not present on the `fbconf_xorg` command line. For instance, a default argument for `-dev` is `/dev/fb`.

Options that set configuration state do not have implied defaults. The `-res` option is one example. If a configuration option is omitted from the `fbconf_xorg` command line, the corresponding `xorg.conf` configuration setting will remain unchanged. The exception is that if configuration options are mutually exclusive, setting one will automatically unset each of the others. An example is `-deflinear`, `-defoverlay`, and `-deftransparent`.

If a configuration setting is not present in the configuration file when the window system is run, a default value will be used. For instance, the default state associated with `-res` is `auto`. A setting might not be present in the file, or the file itself might not exist, until `fbconf_xorg` has been invoked with the corresponding command line option.

The `-defaults` option sets the default values for most configuration settings.

Options and their defaults are shown below.

Device-independent defaults:

Option	Default Argument
<code>-dev</code>	<code>/dev/fb</code>
<code>-file</code>	<code>machine</code>

Option	Default State
<code>-res</code>	<code>auto</code>

kfb-specific defaults:

Option	Default State or <code>-defaults</code> Value
<code>-deflinear</code>	<code>false</code>
<code>-defoverlay</code>	<code>false</code>
<code>-deftransparent</code>	<code>false</code>
<code>-doublehigh</code>	<code>disable</code>
<code>-doublewide</code>	<code>disable</code>
<code>-g</code>	<code>2.22</code>
<code>-multisample</code>	<code>disable</code>
<code>-offset</code>	<code>0 0</code>
<code>-samples</code>	<code>4</code>
<code>-slave</code>	<code>disable</code>
<code>-stereo</code>	<code>false</code>

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Switching the Resolution of the Monitor Type

The following example sets the video mode for the monitor on the `/dev/fbs/kfb0` device to 1280 x 1024 at 76 Hz:

```
example% fbconf_xorg -dev kfb0 -res 1280x1024x76
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0
Execution completed successfully.
- 1
Invalid command line usage.
- 2
An error occurred.

Files

/dev/fb	Symbolic link to the default frame buffer device.
/dev/fbs/kfbn	Device special file for a kfb frame buffer
/usr/lib/fbconfig/SunModes_xorg.conf	Video mode definitions included in new configuration files.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWkfbcf
Interface Stability	Uncommitted

See Also [fbconfig\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [kfb\(7D\)](#), [fbio\(7I\)](#)

See the *Xorg(1)* and *Xserver(1)* man pages in the X Server man page collection and the *xglnfo(1)* man page in the Sun OpenGL man page collection.

Name fcinfo, fcadm – Fibre Channel HBA Port Command Line Interface

Synopsis fcinfo hba-port [-lite] [*HBA_port_WWN*]...
 fcadm hba-port [-lite] [*HBA_port_WWN*]...
 fcinfo remote-port [-ls] [-p *HBA_port_WWN*]
 [*REMOTE_port_WWN*]...
 fcadm remote-port [-ls] [-p *HBA_port_WWN*]
 [*REMOTE_port_WWN*]...
 fcinfo logical-unit | lu [-v] [*OS device_path*]
 fcadm logical-unit | lu [-v] [*OS device_path*]
 fcadm create-npiv-port -p *Virtual_Port_WWN* [-n *Virtual_Node_WWN*]
PhysicalPort_port_WWN
 fcadm delete-npiv-port -p *Virtual_Port_WWN* [-n *Virtual_Node_WWN*]
PhysicalPort_port_WWN
 fcadm create-fcoe-port [-tf] -p *Port_WWN* [-n *Node_WWN*]
MAC_Interface
 fcadm delete-fcoe-port *MAC_Interface*
 fcadm list-fcoe-ports *MAC_Interface*
 fcadm force-lip *Port_WWN*
 fcinfo [-V]
 fcadm [-V]
 fcinfo [-?]
 fcadm [-?]

Description fcinfo and fcadm are command line interfaces that collect administrative information on fibre channel host bus adapter (HBA) ports on a host. They also collect data on any fibre channel targets that might be connected to those ports in a Storage Area Network (SAN).

A port can be either in initiator mode or target mode. The same FC attribute information and remote port information are applied to both the initiator and the target modes port except that SCSI-related operations described below do not apply for the target mode port.

SUBCOMMANDS The following subcommands are supported by both fcinfo and fcadm:

hba-port	Lists information for the HBA port referenced by the specified <i>HBA_port_WWN</i> . If <i>HBA_port_WWN</i> is not specified, all initiator mode and target mode fibre channel HBA ports on the host will be listed.
----------	--

<code>remote-port</code>	Lists the <i>remote-port</i> information for those remote ports that are specified. If no <i>REMOTE_port_WWN</i> is specified, all remote ports that are visible through <i>HBA_port_WWN</i> are listed.
<code>logical-unit lu</code>	Lists the logical unit referenced by the specified <i>device_path</i> . If <i>device_path</i> is not specified, all fibre channel logical units will be listed. This subcommand applies only to the initiator mode.

The following subcommands, which administer N_Port ID Virtualization (NPIV) HBA ports, are supported only by `fcadm`:

`create-npiv-port`
Create an NPIV virtual port on the specified adapter.

`delete-npiv-port`
Delete an NPIV virtual port. This delete only ports create by `fcadm`.

The following subcommands, which administer Fibre Channel over Ethernet (FCoE) ports, are supported only by `fcadm`:

`create-fcoe-port`
Creates a FCoE port associated with the given MAC interface and the given *Port_WWN/Node_WWN*. If `-p` or `-n` is not specified, the Port WWN or Node WWN will be generated automatically. If the specified MAC interface does not support multiple unicast address, no FCoE port will be created and you receive a message indicating that you can add an `-f` option to force enabling promiscuous mode on the specified MAC interface to enable FCoE.

`delete-fcoe-port`
Deletes the FCoE port associated with the specified MAC interface.

`list-fcoe-ports`
List information of FCoE ports.

`force-lip`
Force the link to reinitialize. When issuing this subcommand on the target port side, causes a reset of the target port. When issuing it from the host port side, resets the host port. When an FC switch is connected, other FC ports in the SAN will get a RSCN (Remote State Change Notification). Furthermore, other initiators will always rediscover the port after this, and the FC login session will be established or reused. Also, I/Os will be continued. This command is disruptive to I/Os, but it is not destructive, as it does not cause any data loss.

Options The following options are supported:

`-e, --fcoe`
Lists the information for all FCoE ports.

- f, --fcoe-promiscuous
Used with `create-fcoe-port` to create an FCoE port on a MAC interface associated with a NIC that does not support multiple unicast address. Promiscuous mode will be enabled for the specified MAC interface.
- l, --linkstat
Lists the link error statistics information for the port referenced by the specified *HBA_port_WWN* or *REMOTE_port_WWN*.
- n *HBA_node_WWN*, --node *HBA_node_WWN*
When used with NPIV options, specify a virtual node WWN. If used with `create-npiv-port`, it can be omitted, and a random based WWN will be used. It is mandatory for `delete-npiv-port`.

When used with `create-fcoe-port` subcommand, specify the node WWN for the FCoE port. It can be omitted, in which case a WWN will be generated based on the MAC address of the specified MAC interface.
- p *HBA_port_WWN*, --port *HBA_port_WWN*
Retrieve remote port information from the *HBA_port_WWN* of the local HBA port on the host. When used with the `remote-port` subcommand, the `-p` option is mandatory.

When used with NPIV options, specify a virtual port WWN. If used with `create-npiv-port`, it can be omitted, and a random based WWN will be used. It is mandatory for `delete-npiv-port`.

When used with `create-fcoe-port` subcommand, specify the port WWN for the FCoE port. It can be omitted, in which case a WWN will be generated based on the MAC address of the specified MAC interface.
- s, --scsi-target
Lists the SCSI target information for all remote ports the user has asked for. The `-p, --port` option must always be specified and must be a valid HBA port on the host. This HBA port will be used as the initiator for which to retrieve the SCSI level target information. Note that this will only function on remote port fibre channel World-Wide Names that support an FC4 type of SCSI. This option applies only to an initiator mode port.
- t [*HBA_node_WWN*], --target [*HBA_node_WWN*]
Lists the information for the port with the target mode referenced by the specified *HBA_node_WWN* or all target mode ports discovered in the host.

When used with `create-fcoe-port`, create a FCoE target mode port.
- v, --verbose
When used with the `logical-unit` subcommand, the `-v` displays additional information for the logical unit, including SCSI vendor and product information and device type as well as the FC World-Wide names for the local and remote fibre channel ports to which this device is attached.

- V, --version
Displays the version information.
- , --help
Displays the usage information.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Listing All HBA Ports

The following command lists all initiator mode fibre channel HBA ports on the host:

```
# fcinfo hba-port

HBA Port WWN: 210000e08b074cb5
  Port Mode: Initiator
  OS Device Name: /dev/cfg/c1
  Manufacturer: QLogic Corp.
  Model: 375-3108-xx
  Firmware Version: 3.3.116
  FCode/BIOS Version: 1.13.08
  Serial Number: not available
  Driver Name: qlc
  Driver Version: 20070212-2.19
  Type: N-port
  State: online
  Supported Speeds: 1Gb 2Gb
  Current Speed: 2Gb
  Node WWN: 200000e08b074cb5
NPIV Port List:
  Virtual Port 1:
    Port WWN: 200000e08b074cb1
    Node WWN: 200000e08b074cb3
HBA Port WWN: 210100e08b274cb5
  Port Mode: Initiator
  OS Device Name: /dev/cfg/c2
  Manufacturer: QLogic Corp.
  Model: 375-3108-xx
  Firmware Version: 3.3.116
  FCode/BIOS Version: 1.13.08
  Serial Number: not available
  Driver Name: qlc
  Driver Version: 20070212-2.19
  Type: N-port
  State: online
  Supported Speeds: 1Gb 2Gb
  Current Speed: 2Gb
  Node WWN: 200100e08b274cb5
HBA Port WWN: 210000e08b072ab5
  Port Mode: Initiator
  OS Device Name: /dev/cfg/c3
```

EXAMPLE 1 Listing All HBA Ports (Continued)

```
Manufacturer: QLogic Corp.
Firmware Version: 3.3.116
FCode/BIOS Version: 1.13.08
Model: 375-3108-xx
Serial Number: not available
Driver Name: qlc
Driver Version: 20070212-2.19
Type: L-port
State: online
Supported Speeds: 1Gb 2Gb
Current Speed: 2Gb
Node WWN: 200000e08b072ab5
HBA Port WWN: 210100e08b272ab5
Port Mode: Initiator
OS Device Name: /dev/cfg/c4
Manufacturer: QLogic Corp.
Model: 375-3108-xx
Firmware Version: 3.3.116
FCode/BIOS Version: 1.13.08
Serial Number: 0402F00-0549112808
Driver Name: qlc
Driver Version: 20070212-2.19
Type: N-port
State: online
Supported Speeds: 1Gb 2Gb
Current Speed: 2Gb
Node WWN: 200100e08b272ab5
```

EXAMPLE 2 Listing Target Mode HBA Ports

The following command lists all target mode fibre channel HBA ports on the host:

```
# fcinfo hba-port -t
HBA Port WWN: 210100e08bb09221
Port Mode: Target
Port ID: 10700
OS Device Name: Not Applicable
Manufacturer: QLogic Corp.
Model: d30ac7e0
Firmware Version: 4.0.109
FCode/BIOS Version: N/A
Type: F-port
State: online
Supported Speeds: not established
Current Speed: 2Gb
Node WWN: 200100e08bb09221
```

EXAMPLE 2 Listing Target Mode HBA Ports (Continued)

```
HBA Port WWN: 210000e08b909221
  Port Mode: Target
  Port ID: 10900
  OS Device Name: Not Applicable
  Manufacturer: QLogic Corp.
  Model: d37ad1e0
  Firmware Version: 4.0.109
  FCode/BIOS Version: N/A
  Type: F-port
  State: online
  Supported Speeds: not established
  Current Speed: 2Gb
  Node WWN: 200000e08b909221
HBA Port WWN: 200000144fc2d508
  Port Mode: Target
  Port ID: 9a0025
  OS Device Name: Not Applicable
  Manufacturer: Sun Microsystems, Inc.
  Model: FCoE Virtual FC HBA
  Firmware Version: N/A
  FCode/BIOS Version: N/A
  Serial Number: N/A
  Driver Name: COMSTAR FCOET
  Driver Version: 1.0
  Type: F-port
  State: online
  Supported Speeds: 1Gb 10Gb
  Current Speed: 10Gb
  Node WWN: 100000144fc2d508
HBA Port WWN: 200000144fc2d509
  Port Mode: Target
  Port ID: 9a0023
  OS Device Name: Not Applicable
  Manufacturer: Sun Microsystems, Inc.
  Model: FCoE Virtual FC HBA
  Firmware Version: N/A
  FCode/BIOS Version: N/A
  Serial Number: N/A
  Driver Name: COMSTAR FCOET
  Driver Version: 1.0
  Type: F-port
  State: online
  Supported Speeds: 1Gb 10Gb
  Current Speed: 10Gb
  Node WWN: 100000144fc2d509
```

EXAMPLE 3 Listing HBA Ports and Link Statistics

The following command lists information for the HBA ports and the link statistics for those ports:

```
# fcinfo hba-port -l 210000e08b074cb5 210100e08b274cb5
```

```
HBA Port WWN: 210000e08b074cb5
  Port Mode: Initiator
  OS Device Name: /dev/cfg/c1
  Manufacturer: QLogic Corp.
  Model: 375-3108-xx
  Firmware Version: 3.3.116
  FCode/BIOS Version: 1.13.08
  Serial Number: 0402F00-0549112808
  Driver Name: qlc
  Driver Version: 20070212-2.19
  Type: N-port
  State: online
  Supported Speeds: 1Gb 2Gb
  Current Speed: 2Gb
  Node WWN: 200000e08b074cb5
  Link Error Statistics:
    Link Failure Count: 0
    Loss of Sync Count: 0
    Loss of Signal Count: 0
    Primitive Seq Protocol Error Count: 0
    Invalid Tx Word Count: 0
    Invalid CRC Count: 0

HBA Port WWN: 210100e08b274cb5
  Port Mode: Initiator
  OS Device Name: /dev/cfg/c2
  Manufacturer: QLogic Corp.
  Model: 375-3108-xx
  Firmware Version: 3.3.116
  FCode/BIOS Version: 1.13.08
  Serial Number: 0402F00-0549112808
  Driver Name: qlc
  Driver Version: 20070212-2.19
  Type: N-port
  State: online
  Supported Speeds: 1Gb 2Gb
  Current Speed: 2Gb
  Node WWN: 200100e08b274cb5
  Link Error Statistics:
    Link Failure Count: 0
    Loss of Sync Count: 0
    Loss of Signal Count: 0
```

EXAMPLE 3 Listing HBA Ports and Link Statistics *(Continued)*

```

Primitive Seq Protocol Error Count: 0
Invalid Tx Word Count: 0
Invalid CRC Count: 0

```

EXAMPLE 4 Listing All Remote Ports

The following command lists all remote ports that are visible through the given HBA port:

```
# fcinfo remote-port -p 210100e08b274cb5
```

```

Remote Port WWN: 50020f230000b4af
  Active FC4 Types: SCSI
  SCSI Target: yes
  Port Symbolic Name: unknown
  Node WWN: 50020f200000b4af
Remote Port WWN: 210000e08b07daa6
  Active FC4 Types: SCSI
  SCSI Target: no
  Port Symbolic Name: unknown
  Node WWN: 200000e08b07daa6
Remote Port WWN: 20030003ba27c788
  Active FC4 Types: SCSI
  SCSI Target: yes
  Port Symbolic Name: unknown
  Node WWN: 10000003ba27c788
Remote Port WWN: 210000e08b096a60
  Active FC4 Types: SCSI,IP
  SCSI Target: no
  Port Symbolic Name: unknown
  Node WWN: 200000e08b096a60

```

EXAMPLE 5 Listing Remote Ports and Link Statistics

The following command lists information for the remote ports and the link statistics for those ports:

```
# fcinfo remote-port -l -p 210100e08b272ab5
```

```

Remote Port WWN: 210100e08b296a60
  Active FC4 Types: SCSI,IP
  SCSI Target: no
  Port Symbolic Name: unknown
  Node WWN: 200100e08b296a60
  Link Error Statistics:
    Link Failure Count: 0
    Loss of Sync Count: 0

```

EXAMPLE 5 Listing Remote Ports and Link Statistics (Continued)

```
        Loss of Signal Count: 0
        Primitive Seq Protocol Error Count: 0
        Invalid Tx Word Count: 0
        Invalid CRC Count: 0
Remote Port WWN: 20030003ba27d56d
  Active FC4 Types: SCSI
  SCSI Target: yes
  Port Symbolic Name: unknown
  Node WWN: 10000003ba27d56d
  Link Error Statistics:
    Link Failure Count: 0
    Loss of Sync Count: 4765165
    Loss of Signal Count: 4765165
    Primitive Seq Protocol Error Count: 0
    Invalid Tx Word Count: 0
    Invalid CRC Count: 0
Remote Port WWN: 210100e08b27f7a6
  Active FC4 Types: SCSI
  SCSI Target: no
  Port Symbolic Name: unknown
  Node WWN: 200100e08b27f7a6
  Link Error Statistics:
    Link Failure Count: 0
    Loss of Sync Count: 0
    Loss of Signal Count: 0
    Primitive Seq Protocol Error Count: 0
    Invalid Tx Word Count: 0
    Invalid CRC Count: 0
Remote Port WWN: 50020f230000b897
  Active FC4 Types: SCSI
  SCSI Target: yes
  Port Symbolic Name: unknown
  Node WWN: 50020f200000b897
  Link Error Statistics:
    Link Failure Count: 0
    Loss of Sync Count: 7
    Loss of Signal Count: 7
    Primitive Seq Protocol Error Count: 0
    Invalid Tx Word Count: 0
    Invalid CRC Count: 0
Remote Port WWN: 210100e08b27daa6
  Active FC4 Types: SCSI
  SCSI Target: no
  Port Symbolic Name: unknown
  Node WWN: 200100e08b27daa6
  Link Error Statistics:
```

EXAMPLE 5 Listing Remote Ports and Link Statistics (Continued)

```

        Link Failure Count: 0
        Loss of Sync Count: 0
        Loss of Signal Count: 0
        Primitive Seq Protocol Error Count: 0
        Invalid Tx Word Count: 0
        Invalid CRC Count: 0
Remote Port WWN: 210000e08b074cb5
Active FC4 Types: SCSI,IP
SCSI Target: no
Port Symbolic Name: unknown
Node WWN: 200000e08b074cb5
Link Error Statistics:
        Link Failure Count: 0
        Loss of Sync Count: 0
        Loss of Signal Count: 0
        Primitive Seq Protocol Error Count: 0
        Invalid Tx Word Count: 0
        Invalid CRC Count: 0
Remote Port WWN: 210100e08b296060
Active FC4 Types: SCSI
SCSI Target: no
Port Symbolic Name: unknown
Node WWN: 200100e08b296060
Link Error Statistics:
        Link Failure Count: 0
        Loss of Sync Count: 0
        Loss of Signal Count: 0
        Primitive Seq Protocol Error Count: 0
        Invalid Tx Word Count: 0
        Invalid CRC Count: 0

```

EXAMPLE 6 Listing All SCSI Targets and Link Statistics

The following command lists all remote ports as well as the link statistics and *scsi-target* information:

```
# fcinfo remote-port -sl -p 210100e08b272ab5
```

```

Remote Port WWN: 210100e08b296a60
Active FC4 Types: SCSI,IP
SCSI Target: no
Port Symbolic Name: unknown
Node WWN: 200100e08b296a60
Link Error Statistics:
        Link Failure Count: 0
        Loss of Sync Count: 0

```

EXAMPLE 6 Listing All SCSI Targets and Link Statistics (Continued)

```
        Loss of Signal Count: 0
        Primitive Seq Protocol Error Count: 0
        Invalid Tx Word Count: 0
        Invalid CRC Count: 0
Remote Port WWN: 20030003ba27d56d
  Active FC4 Types: SCSI
  SCSI Target: yes
  Port Symbolic Name: unknown
  Node WWN: 10000003ba27d56d
  Link Error Statistics:
    Link Failure Count: 0
    Loss of Sync Count: 4765165
    Loss of Signal Count: 4765165
    Primitive Seq Protocol Error Count: 0
    Invalid Tx Word Count: 0
    Invalid CRC Count: 0
  LUN: 0
    Vendor: SUN
    Product: T4
    OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t20030003BA27D56Dd0s2
  LUN: 1
    Vendor: SUN
    Product: T4
    OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t20030003BA27D56Dd1s2
Remote Port WWN: 210100e08b27f7a6
  Active FC4 Types: SCSI
  SCSI Target: no
  Port Symbolic Name: unknown
  Node WWN: 200100e08b27f7a6
  Link Error Statistics:
    Link Failure Count: 0
    Loss of Sync Count: 0
    Loss of Signal Count: 0
    Primitive Seq Protocol Error Count: 0
    Invalid Tx Word Count: 0
    Invalid CRC Count: 0
Remote Port WWN: 50020f230000b897
  Active FC4 Types: SCSI
  SCSI Target: yes
  Port Symbolic Name: unknown
  Node WWN: 50020f200000b897
  Link Error Statistics:
    Link Failure Count: 0
    Loss of Sync Count: 7
    Loss of Signal Count: 7
    Primitive Seq Protocol Error Count: 0
```


EXAMPLE 6 Listing All SCSI Targets and Link Statistics *(Continued)*

```
Invalid Tx Word Count: 0
Invalid CRC Count: 0
LUN: 0
Vendor: SUN
Product: T300
OS Device Name: Unknown
LUN: 1
Vendor: SUN
Product: T300
OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d1s2
LUN: 2
Vendor: SUN
Product: T300
OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d2s2
LUN: 3
Vendor: SUN
Product: T300
OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d3s2
LUN: 4
Vendor: SUN
Product: T300
OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d4s2
LUN: 5
Vendor: SUN
Product: T300
OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d5s2
LUN: 6
Vendor: SUN
Product: T300
OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d6s2
LUN: 7
Vendor: SUN
Product: T300
OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d7s2
LUN: 8
Vendor: SUN
Product: T300
OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d8s2
LUN: 9
Vendor: SUN
Product: T300
OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d9s2
LUN: 10
Vendor: SUN
Product: T300
OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d10s2
```

EXAMPLE 6 Listing All SCSI Targets and Link Statistics (Continued)

```
LUN: 11
  Vendor: SUN
  Product: T300
  OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d11s2
LUN: 12
  Vendor: SUN
  Product: T300
  OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d12s2
LUN: 13
  Vendor: SUN
  Product: T300
  OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d13s2
LUN: 14
  Vendor: SUN
  Product: T300
  OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d14s2
LUN: 15
  Vendor: SUN
  Product: T300
  OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d15s2
Remote Port WWN: 210100e08b27daa6
  Active FC4 Types: SCSI
  SCSI Target: no
  Port Symbolic Name: unknown
  Node WWN: 200100e08b27daa6
  Link Error Statistics:
    Link Failure Count: 0
    Loss of Sync Count: 0
    Loss of Signal Count: 0
    Primitive Seq Protocol Error Count: 0
    Invalid Tx Word Count: 0
    Invalid CRC Count: 0
Remote Port WWN: 210000e08b074cb5
  Active FC4 Types: SCSI,IP
  SCSI Target: no
  Port Symbolic Name: unknown
  Node WWN: 200000e08b074cb5
  Link Error Statistics:
    Link Failure Count: 0
    Loss of Sync Count: 0
    Loss of Signal Count: 0
    Primitive Seq Protocol Error Count: 0
    Invalid Tx Word Count: 0
    Invalid CRC Count: 0
Remote Port WWN: 210100e08b296060
  Active FC4 Types: SCSI
```

EXAMPLE 6 Listing All SCSI Targets and Link Statistics (Continued)

```

SCSI Target: no
Port Symbolic Name: unknown
Node WWN: 200100e08b296060
Link Error Statistics:
    Link Failure Count: 0
    Loss of Sync Count: 0
    Loss of Signal Count: 0
    Primitive Seq Protocol Error Count: 0
    Invalid Tx Word Count: 0
    Invalid CRC Count: 0

```

EXAMPLE 7 Listing SCSI Target Information

The following command lists all remote ports as well as the *scsi-target* information:

```

# fcinfo remote-port -s -p 210100e08b272ab5

Remote Port WWN: 210100e08b296a60
  Active FC4 Types: SCSI,IP
  SCSI Target: no
  Port Symbolic Name: unknown
  Node WWN: 200100e08b296060
Remote Port WWN: 20030003ba27d56d
  Active FC4 Types: SCSI
  SCSI Target: yes
  Port Symbolic Name: unknown
  Node WWN: 10000003ba27d56d
  LUN: 0
    Vendor: SUN
    Product: T4
    OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t20030003BA27D56Dd0s2
  LUN: 1
    Vendor: SUN
    Product: T4
    OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t20030003BA27D56Dd1s2
Remote Port WWN: 210100e08b27f7a6
  Active FC4 Types: SCSI
  SCSI Target: no
  Port Symbolic Name: unknown
  Node WWN: 200100e08b27f7a6
Remote Port WWN: 50020f230000b897
  Active FC4 Types: SCSI
  SCSI Target: yes
  Port Symbolic Name: unknown
  Node WWN: 50020f200000b897
  LUN: 0

```

EXAMPLE 7 Listing SCSI Target Information (Continued)

```
Vendor: SUN
Product: T300
OS Device Name: Unknown
LUN: 1
Vendor: SUN
Product: T300
OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d1s2
LUN: 2
Vendor: SUN
Product: T300
OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d2s2
LUN: 3
Vendor: SUN
Product: T300
OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d3s2
LUN: 4
Vendor: SUN
Product: T300
OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d4s2
LUN: 5
Vendor: SUN
Product: T300
OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d5s2
LUN: 6
Vendor: SUN
Product: T300
OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d6s2
LUN: 7
Vendor: SUN
Product: T300
OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d7s2
LUN: 8
Vendor: SUN
Product: T300
OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d8s2
LUN: 9
Vendor: SUN
Product: T300
OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d9s2
LUN: 10
Vendor: SUN
Product: T300
OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d10s2
LUN: 11
Vendor: SUN
Product: T300
```

EXAMPLE 7 Listing SCSI Target Information (Continued)

```

    OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d11s2
    LUN: 12
    Vendor: SUN
    Product: T300
    OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d12s2
    LUN: 13
    Vendor: SUN
    Product: T300
    OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d13s2
    LUN: 14
    Vendor: SUN
    Product: T300
    OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d14s2
    LUN: 15
    Vendor: SUN
    Product: T300
    OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B897d15s2
Remote Port WWN: 210100e08b27daa6
    Active FC4 Types: SCSI
    SCSI Target: no
    Port Symbolic Name: unknown
    Node WWN: 200100e08b27daa6
Remote Port WWN: 210000e08b074cb5
    Active FC4 Types: SCSI,IP
    SCSI Target: no
    Port Symbolic Name: unknown
    Node WWN: 200000e08b074cb5
Remote Port WWN: 210100e08b296060
    Active FC4 Types: SCSI
    SCSI Target: no
    Port Symbolic Name: unknown
    Node WWN: 200100e08b296060

```

EXAMPLE 8 Listing the Logical Unit

The following command lists the logical unit:

```

# fcinfo logical-unit

/dev/rdisk/c0t600C0FF000000000036223AE73EB705d0s2
/dev/rdisk/c0t600C0FF0000000000362272539E5B03d0s2
/dev/rmt/0n

```

EXAMPLE 9 Displaying Additional Information for the Logical Unit

The following command displays additional information about the logical unit using the `-v` option for device `/dev/rmt/0n`:

```
# fcinfo lu -v /dev/rmt/0n

OS Device Name: /dev/rmt/0n
  HBA Port WWN: 210000e07c030b91
    Remote Port WWN: 21010003b7830a6
      LUN: 0
  Vendor: STK
  Product: 9940A
  Device Type: Tape device
```

The following command displays additional information about the logical unit using the `-v` option for device `/dev/rdisk/c0t600C0FF0000000000036223AE73EB705d0s2`

```
# fcinfo logical-unit -v \
  /dev/rdisk/c0t600C0FF0000000000036223AE73EB705d0s2

OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c0t600C0FF0000000000036223AE73EB705d0s2
  HBA Port WWN: 210100e08b27a8a1
    Remote Port WWN: 256000c0ffc03622
      LUN: 0
    Remote Port WWN: 216000c0ff803622
      LUN: 0
  HBA Port WWN: 210000e08b07a8a1
    Remote Port WWN: 256000c0ffc03622
      LUN: 0
    Remote Port WWN: 216000c0ff803622
      LUN: 0
  Vendor: SUN
  Product: StorEdge 3510
  Device Type: Disk device
```

EXAMPLE 10 Adding an NIPV Port

The following command adds an NPIV port to the HBA with a port name:

```
210000e08b170f1c
```

The NPIV port has a port name of `2000000000000001` and a node name of `2100000000000001`.

```
# fcadm create-npiv-port -p 2000000000000001 -n 2100000000000001 \
  210000e08b170f1c
```

```
Created NPIV Port:
```

EXAMPLE 10 Adding an NIPV Port *(Continued)*

```
HBA Port WWN: 2000000000000001
Node WWN: 2100000000000001
Physical HBA Port WWN: 210000e08b170f1c
```

EXAMPLE 11 Adding an NIPV Port with Random WWN

The following command adds an NPIV port to the HBA with a randomly assigned port name of 210000e08b170f1c.

```
# fcadm create-npiv-port 210000e08b170f1c
```

Created NPIV Port:

```
HBA Port WWN: 2038295824942801
Node WWN: 2100392849248001
Physical HBA Port WWN: 210000e08b170f1c
```

EXAMPLE 12 Deleting an NIPV Port

The following command deletes an NPIV port.

```
# fcadm delete-npiv-port -p 2000000000000001 -w 2100000000000001 \
210000e08b170f1c
```

EXAMPLE 13 Creating an FCoE Target Port

The following command creates an FCoE port associated with the MAC interface nxge0.

```
# fcadm create-fcoe-port -t nxge0
```

EXAMPLE 14 Deleting an FCoE Port

The following command deletes the FCoE port associated with the MAC interface nxge0.

```
# fcadm delete-fcoe-port -t nxge0
```

EXAMPLE 15 Listing Information for an FCoE Port

The following command lists information for FCoE ports.

```
# fcadm list-fcoe-ports
HBA Port WWN: 200000144fc2d508
Port Type: Target
MAC Name: nxge0
MTU Size: 9194
MAC Factory Address: 00144fc2d508
```

EXAMPLE 15 Listing Information for an FCoE Port *(Continued)*

```

MAC Current Address: 00144fc2d508
HBA Port WWN: 200000144fc2d509
Port Type: Target
MAC Name: nxge1
MTU Size: 9194
MAC Factory Address: 00144fc2d509
MAC Current Address: 00144fc2d509

```

EXAMPLE 16 Reinitializing the Link of an FC Port

The following command forces the link connected with the port 200000144fc2d508 to reinitialize.

```
# fcadm force-lip 200000144fc2d508
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWfcprt
Interface Stability	Committed

See Also [attributes\(5\)](#)

Error Messages Errors that can occur in addition to the errors normally associated with system administration commands:

- *HBA_port_WWN*: not found
- *Remote_port_WWN*: not found
- *HBA_port_WWN*: NPIV not supported on this HBA

Name fdetach – detach a name from a STREAMS-based file descriptor

Synopsis fdetach *path*

Description The fdetach command detaches a STREAMS-based file descriptor from a name in the file system. Use the *path* operand to specify the path name of the object in the file system name space, which was previously attached. See [fattach\(3C\)](#).

The user must be the owner of the file or a user with the appropriate privileges. All subsequent operations on *path* will operate on the underlying file system entry and not on the STREAMS file. The permissions and status of the entry are restored to the state they were in before the STREAMS file was attached to the entry.

Operands The following operands are supported:

path Specifies the path name of the object in the file system name space, which was previously attached.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [fattach\(3C\)](#), [fdetach\(3C\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [streamio\(7I\)](#)

STREAMS Programming Guide

Name fdisk – create or modify fixed disk partition table

Synopsis fdisk [-o *offset*] [-s *size*] [-P *fill_patt*] [-S *geom_file*]
 [-w | -r | -d | -n | -I | -B | -t | -T | -g | -G | -R | -E]
 [-F *fdisk_file*] [[-v] -W {*fdisk_file* | -}]
 [-h] [-b *masterboot*]
 [-A *id* : *act* : *bhead* : *bsect* : *bcyl* : *ehhead* : *esect* :
ecyl : *rsect* : *numsect*]
 [-D *id* : *act* : *bhead* : *bsect* : *bcyl* : *ehhead* : *esect* :
ecyl : *rsect* : *numsect*] *rdevice*

Description This command is used to do the following:

- Create and modify an fdisk partition table on x86 systems
- Create and modify an fdisk partition table on removable media on SPARC or x86 systems
- Install the master boot record that is put in the first sector of the fixed disk on x86 systems only

This table is used by the first-stage bootstrap (or firmware) to identify parts of the disk reserved for different operating systems, and to identify the partition containing the second-stage bootstrap (the *active* Solaris partition). The *rdevice* argument must be used to specify the raw device associated with the fixed disk, for example, */dev/rdisk/c0t0d0p0*.

The program can operate in three different modes. The first is interactive mode. In interactive mode, the program displays the partition table as it exists on the disk, and then presents a menu allowing the user to modify the table. The menu, questions, warnings, and error messages are intended to be self-explanatory.

In interactive mode, if there is no partition table on the disk, the user is given the options of creating a default partitioning or specifying the initial table values. The default partitioning allocates the entire disk for the Solaris system and makes the Solaris system partition active. In either case, when the initial table is created, *fdisk* also writes out the first-stage bootstrap (x86 only) code along with the partition table. In this mode, (x86 only) when creating an entry for a non-EFI partition on a disk that is larger than 2 TB (terabytes), *fdisk* warns that the maximum size of the partition is 2 TB. Under these conditions percentages displayed by *fdisk* are based on 2 TB.

The second mode of operation is used for automated entry addition, entry deletion, or replacement of the entire *fdisk* table. This mode can add or delete an entry described on the command line. In this mode the entire *fdisk* table can be read in from a file replacing the original table. *fdisk* can also be used to create this file. There is a command line option that will cause *fdisk* to replace any *fdisk* table with the default of the whole disk for the Solaris system.

The third mode of operation is used for disk diagnostics. In this mode, a section of the disk can be filled with a user-specified pattern and mode sections of the disk can also be read or written.

Note – The third mode of operation is not currently supported for extended partitions

When `fdisk` creates a partition, the space is allocated in the `fdisk` partition table, but the allocated disk space is not initialized. `newfs(1M)` is required to create and write file system metadata to the new partition, and `format(1M)` is required to write the VTOC or EFI/GPT metadata.

Menu Options The menu options for interactive mode given by the `fdisk` program are:

Create a partition

This option allows the user to create a new partition. The maximum number of partitions is 4. The program will ask for the type of the partition (SOLARIS, MS-DOS, UNIX, or other). It will then ask for the size of the partition as a percentage of the disk. The user may also enter the letter `c` at this point, in which case the program will ask for the starting cylinder number and size of the partition in cylinders. If a `c` is not entered, the program will determine the starting cylinder number where the partition will fit. In either case, if the partition would overlap an existing partition or will not fit, a message is displayed and the program returns to the original menu.

Change Active (Boot from) partition

This option allows the user to specify the partition where the first-stage bootstrap will look for the second-stage bootstrap, otherwise known as the *active* partition.

Delete a partition

This option allows the user to delete a previously created partition. Note that this will destroy all data in that partition.

Change between Solaris and Solaris2 Partition IDs

This option allows the user to switch between the current `fdisk` operating system partition identifier and the previous one. This does not affect any data in the disk partition and is provided for compatibility with older software.

Edit/View extended partitions

This option provides the extended partition menu to the user. Use the extended partition menu to add and delete logical drives, change the `sysid` of the logical drives, and display logical drive information. To commit the changes made in the extended partition, you must return to the main menu using the extended partition submenu option `r`. There is also an option to display the list of options that the extended partition submenu supports. Given below is the list:

a Add a logical drive.

Use this submenu option to add a logical drive. There are three pieces of information that are required: The beginning cylinder, the size (in cylinders or in human readable form - KB, MB, or GB), and the partition ID. While specifying the partition ID, there is an option (`I`) that you can use to list the supported partitions.

d Delete a logical drive.

Use this submenu option to delete a logical drive. The only input required is the number of the logical drive that is to be deleted.

h Display the help menu.

This submenu option displays the supported operations in the extended partition submenu.

i Change the id of the logical drive.

Use this submenu option to change the system ID of the existing logical drives. A list of supported system IDs is displayed when you use the I option when in this submenu.

p Display the logical drive layout.

Displays the logical drive information to stdout. This output reflects any changes made during the current run of the `fdisk` program. The changes are not committed to the disk until return to the main menu (using the submenu `r`) and choose the option to commit the changes to the disk.

r Return to the main `fdisk` menu.

Exit the extended partition submenu and return to the main menu.

Note the dynamic nature of the numbering of extended partitions. For example, consider a Solaris system with the partitions `p1`, `p2`, `p3`, and `p4`. Following creation of an extended partition, the same system has a logical device node, `p5`, and successive nodes numbered consecutively up to a maximum of `p36`. If one logical drive is deleted, say, `p8`, then all nodes following `p8` (`p9` up to `p36`) move up one in the list of partitions, so that `p9` becomes `p8`, `p10` becomes `p9`, and so forth.

Use the following options to include your modifications to the partition table at this time or to cancel the session without modifying the table:

`Exit` This option writes the new version of the table created during this session with `fdisk` out to the fixed disk, and exits the program.

`Cancel` This option exits without modifying the partition table.

Options The following options apply to `fdisk`:

`-A id:act:bhead:bsect:bcyl:ehhead:esect:ecyl:rsect:numsect`

Add a partition as described by the argument (see the `-F` option below for the format). Use of this option will zero out the VTOC on the Solaris partition if the `fdisk` table changes.

`-b master_boot`

Specify the file `master_boot` as the master boot program. The default master boot program is `/usr/lib/fs/ufs/mboot`.

- B
Default to one Solaris partition that uses the whole disk. On an x86 machine, if the disk is larger than 2 TB (terabytes), the default size of the Solaris partition will be limited to 2 TB.
- d
Turn on verbose *debug* mode. This will cause `fdisk` to print its state on `stderr` as it is used. The output from this option should not be used with `-F`.
- D *id:act:bhead:bsect:bcyl:ehhead:esect:ecyl:rsect:numsect*
Delete a partition as described by the argument (see the `-F` option below for the format). Note that the argument must be an exact match or the entry will not be deleted! Use of this option will zero out the VTOC on the Solaris partition if the `fdisk` table changes.
- E
Create an EFI partition that uses the entire disk.
- F *fdisk_file*
Use `fdisk` file *fdisk_file* to initialize table. Use of this option will zero out the VTOC on the Solaris partition if the `fdisk` table changes.

The *fdisk_file* contains four specification lines for the primary partitions followed by specification lines for the logical drives. You must have four lines for the primary partitions if there is at least one logical drive. In this case, if the number of primary partitions to be configured is less than four, the remaining lines should be filled with zeros.

Each line is composed of entries that are position-dependent, are separated by whitespace or colons, and have the following format:

```
id act bhead bsect bcyl ehhead esect ecyl rsect numsect
```

...where the entries have the following values:

<i>id</i>	This is the type of partition and the correct numeric values may be found in <code>fdisk.h</code> .
<i>act</i>	This is the active partition flag; <code>0</code> means not active and <code>128</code> means active. For logical drives, this flag will always be set to <code>0</code> even if specified as <code>128</code> by the user.
<i>bhead</i>	This is the head where the partition starts. If this is set to <code>0</code> , <code>fdisk</code> will correctly fill this in from other information.
<i>bsect</i>	This is the sector where the partition starts. If this is set to <code>0</code> , <code>fdisk</code> will correctly fill this in from other information.
<i>bcyl</i>	This is the cylinder where the partition starts. If this is set to <code>0</code> , <code>fdisk</code> will correctly fill this in from other information.
<i>ehhead</i>	This is the head where the partition ends. If this is set to <code>0</code> , <code>fdisk</code> will correctly fill this in from other information.

- esect* This is the sector where the partition ends. If this is set to 0, `fdisk` will correctly fill this in from other information.
- ecyl* This is the cylinder where the partition ends. If this is set to 0, `fdisk` will correctly fill this in from other information.
- rsect* The relative sector from the beginning of the disk where the partition starts. This must be specified and can be used by `fdisk` to fill in other fields. For logical drives, you must make sure that there are at least 63 free sectors before the *rsect* specified for a logical drive.
- numsect* The size in sectors of this disk partition. This must be specified and can be used by `fdisk` to fill in other fields.
- g
Get the label geometry for disk and display on stdout (see the -S option for the format).
- G
Get the physical geometry for disk and display on stdout (see the -S option for the format).
- h
Issue verbose message; message will list all options and supply an explanation for each.
- I
Forgo device checks. This is used to generate a file image of what would go on a disk without using the device. Note that you must use -S with this option (see above).
- n
Don't update `fdisk` table unless explicitly specified by another option. If no other options are used, -n will only write the master boot record to the disk. In addition, note that `fdisk` will not come up in interactive mode if the -n option is specified.
- o *offset*
Block offset from start of disk. This option is used for -P, -r, and -w. Zero is assumed when this option is not used.
- P *fill_patt*
Fill disk with pattern *fill_patt*. *fill_patt* can be decimal or hex and is used as number for constant long word pattern. If *fill_patt* is #, then pattern is block # for each block. Pattern is put in each block as long words and fills each block (see -o and -s).
- r
Read from disk and write to stdout. See -o and -s, which specify the starting point and size of the operation.
- R
Treat disk as read-only. This is for testing purposes.
- s *size*
Number of blocks to perform operation on (see -o).

-S *geom_file*

Set the label geometry to the content of the *geom_file*. The *geom_file* contains one specification line. Each line is delimited by a new-line character (`\n`). If the first character of a line is an asterisk (*), the line is treated as a comment. Each line is composed of entries that are position-dependent, are separated by white space, and have the following format:

```
pcyl ncyl acyl bcyl nheads nsectors sectsiz
```

where the entries have the following values:

pcyl This is the number of physical cylinders for the drive.
ncyl This is the number of usable cylinders for the drive.
acyl This is the number of alt cylinders for the drive.
bcyl This is the number of offset cylinders for the drive (should be zero).
nheads The number of heads for this drive.
nsectors The number of sectors per track.
sectsiz The size in bytes of a sector.

-t

Adjust incorrect slice table entries so that they will not cross partition table boundaries.

-T

Remove incorrect slice table entries that span partition table boundaries.

-v

Output the HBA (virtual) geometry dimensions. This option must be used in conjunction with the `-W` flag. This option will work for platforms which support virtual geometry. (x86 only)

-w

Write to disk and read from stdin. See `-o` and `-s`, which specify the starting point and size of the operation.

-W-

Output the disk table to stdout.

-W *fdisk_file*

Create an `fdisk` file *fdisk_file* from disk table. This can be used with the `-F` option below.

Files `/dev/rdisk/c0t0d0p0` Raw device associated with the fixed disk.
 `/usr/lib/fs/ufs/mboot` Default master boot program.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Architecture	x86 and SPARC
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [uname\(1\)](#), [fmthard\(1M\)](#), [format\(1M\)](#), [newfs\(1M\)](#), [prtvtoc\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Diagnostics Most messages will be self-explanatory. The following may appear immediately after starting the program:

Fdisk: cannot open <device>

This indicates that the device name argument is not valid.

Fdisk: unable to get device parameters for device <device>

This indicates a problem with the configuration of the fixed disk, or an error in the fixed disk driver.

Fdisk: error reading partition table

This indicates that some error occurred when trying initially to read the fixed disk. This could be a problem with the fixed disk controller or driver, or with the configuration of the fixed disk.

Fdisk: error writing boot record

This indicates that some error occurred when trying to write the new partition table out to the fixed disk. This could be a problem with the fixed disk controller, the disk itself, the driver, or the configuration of the fixed disk.

Name ff – list file names and statistics for a file system

Synopsis ff [-F *FSType*] [-V] [*generic_options*] [-o *specific_options*] *special*...

Description ff prints the pathnames and inode numbers of files in the file system which resides on the special device *special*. Other information about the files may be printed using options described below. Selection criteria may be used to instruct ff to only print information for certain files. If no selection criteria are specified, information for all files considered will be printed (the default); the -i option may be used to limit files to those whose inodes are specified.

Output is sorted in ascending inode number order. The default line produced by ff is:

path-name i-number

The maximum information the command will provide is:

path-name i-number size uid

- Options**
- F Specify the *FSType* on which to operate. The *FSType* should either be specified here or be determinable from `/etc/vfstab` by matching the *special* with an entry in the table, or by consulting `/etc/default/fs`.
 - V Echo the complete command line, but do not execute the command. The command line is generated by using the options and arguments provided by the user and adding to them information derived from `/etc/vfstab`. This option may be used to verify and validate the command line.
- generic_options* Options that are supported by most *FSType*-specific modules of the command. The following options are available:
- I Do not print the i-node number after each path name.
 - l Generate a supplementary list of all path names for multiply-linked files.
 - p *prefix* The specified *prefix* will be added to each generated path name. The default is '.' (dot).
 - s Print the file size, in bytes, after each path name.
 - u Print the owner's login name after each path name.
 - a -n Select if the file has been accessed in *n* days.
 - m -n Select if the file has been written or created in *n* days.
 - c -n Select if file's status has been changed in *n* days.
 - n *file* Select if the file has been modified more recently than the argument *file*.

-i *i-node-list* Generate names for only those i-nodes specified in *i-node-list*. *i-node-list* is a list of numbers separated by commas (with no intervening spaces).

-o Specify *FSType*-specific options in a comma separated (without spaces) list of suboptions and keyword-attribute pairs for interpretation by the *FSType*-specific module of the command.

Operands *special* A special device.

Usage See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of `ff` when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (2^{31} bytes).

Files `/etc/default/fs` default local file system type. Default values can be set for the following flags in `/etc/default/fs`. For example: `LOCAL=ufs`

`LOCAL` The default partition for a command if no *FSType* is specified.

`/etc/vfstab` list of default parameters for each file system

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [find\(1\)](#), [ncheck\(1M\)](#), [stat\(2\)](#), [vfstab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#) Manual pages for the *FSType*-specific modules of `ff`.

Notes This command may not be supported for all *FSTypes*.

The `-a`, `-m`, and `-c` flags examine the `st_atime`, `st_mtime`, and `st_ctime` fields of the `stat` structure respectively. (See [stat\(2\)](#).)

Name ffbconfig, SUNWffb_config – configure the FFB Graphics Accelerator

Synopsis /usr/sbin/ffbconfig [-dev *device-filename*]
 [-res *video-mode* [now | try] [noconfirm | nocheck]]
 [-file | machine | system]
 [-deflinear | true | false]
 [-defoverlay | true | false]
 [-linearorder | first | last]
 [-overlayorder | first | last]
 [-expvis | enable | disable]
 [-sov | enable | disable] [-maxwids *n*]
 [-extovl | enable | disable]
 [-g *gamma-correction-value*]
 [-gfile *gamma-correction-file*] [-propt] [-prconf]
 [-defaults]

 /usr/sbin/ffbconfig [-propt] [-prconf]
 /usr/sbin/ffbconfig [-help] [-res ?]

Description ffbconfig configures the FFB Graphics Accelerator and some of the X11 window system defaults for FFB.

The first form of ffbconfig stores the specified options in the OWconfig file. These options will be used to initialize the FFB device the next time the window system is run on that device. Updating options in the OWconfig file provides persistence of these options across window system sessions and system reboots.

The second and third forms of ffbconfig, which invoke only the -prconf, -propt, -help, and -res ? options do not update the OWconfig file. Additionally, for the third form all other options are ignored.

Options may be specified for only one FFB device at a time. Specifying options for multiple FFB devices requires multiple invocations of ffbconfig.

Only FFB-specific options can be specified through ffbconfig. The normal window system options for specifying default depth, default visual class and so forth are still specified as device modifiers on the openwin command line. See the for details.

The user can also specify the OWconfig file that is to be updated. By default, the machine-specific file in the /etc/openwin directory tree is updated. The -file option can be used to specify an alternate file to use. For example, the system-global OWconfig file in the /usr/openwin directory tree can be updated instead.

Both of these standard OWconfig files can only be written by root. Consequently, the ffbconfig program, which is owned by the root user, always runs with setuid root permission.

Options -dev *device-filename*

Specifies the FFB special file. The default is `/dev/fbs/ffb0`.

-file *machine|system*

Specifies which `OWconfig` file to update. If *machine* is specified, the machine-specific `OWconfig` file in the `/etc/openwin` directory tree is updated. If *system* is specified, the global `OWconfig` file in the `/usr/openwin` directory tree is updated. If the specified file does not exist, it is created. This option has no effect unless other options are specified. The default is *machine*.

-res *video-mode* [*now* | *try* [*noconfirm* | *nocheck*]]

Specifies the video mode used to drive the monitor connected to the specified FFB device.

video-mode has the format of *widthxheightxrate* where *width* is the screen width in pixels, *height* is the screen height in pixels, and *rate* is the vertical frequency of the screen refresh.

The *s* suffix, as in `960x680x112s` and `960x680x108s`, indicates stereo video modes. The *i* suffix, as in `640x480x60i` and `768x575x50i`, indicates interlaced video timing. If absent, non-interlaced timing will be used.

-res (the third form in the SYNOPSIS) also accepts formats with @ (at sign) in front of the refresh rate instead of x. `1280x1024@76` is an example of this format.

Some video-modes are supported only on certain revisions of FFB. Also, some video-modes, supported by FFB, may not be supported by the monitor. The list of video-modes supported by the FFB device and the monitor can be obtained by running `fbconfig` with the `-res ?` option.

The following table lists all possible video modes supported on FFB:

Name	Description
1024x768x60	
1024x768x70	
1024x768x75	
1024x768x77	
1024x800x84	
1152x900x66	
1152x900x76	
1280x800x76	
1280x1024x60	
1280x1024x67	

Name	Description
1280x1024x76	
960x680x112s	(stereo)
960x680x108s	(stereo)
640x480x60	
640x480x60i	(interlaced)
768x575x50i	(interlaced)
1440x900x76	(hi-res)
1600x1000x66	(hi-res)
1600x1000x76i	(hi-res)
1600x1280x76	(hi-res)
1920x1080x72	(hi-res)
1920x1200x70	(hi-res)

Symbolic names

For convenience, some video modes have symbolic names defined for them. Instead of the form *widthxheightxrate*, one of these names may be supplied as the argument to `- res`. The meaning of the symbolic name `none` is that when the window system is run the screen resolution will be the video mode that is currently programmed in the device.

Name	Corresponding Video Mode
svga	1024x768x60
1152	1152x900x76
1280	1280x1024x76
stereo	960x680x112s
ntsc	640x480x60i
pal	768x575x50i
none	(video mode currently programmed in device)

The `- res` option also accepts additional, optional arguments immediately following the video mode specification. Any or all of these may be present.

now

Specifies that the FFB device will be immediately programmed to display this video mode, in addition to updating the video mode in the OWconfig file. This option is useful for changing the video mode before starting the window system.

It is inadvisable to use this suboption with `ffbconfig` while the configured device is being used (for example, while running the window system); unpredictable results may occur. To run `ffbconfig` with the `now` suboption, first bring the window system down. If the `now` suboption is used within a window system session, the video mode will be changed immediately, but the width and height of the affected screen won't change until the window system is exited and re-entered. In addition, the system may not recognize changes in stereo mode. Consequently, this usage is strongly discouraged.

noconfirm

Instructs `ffbconfig` to bypass confirmation and warning messages and to program the requested video mode anyway.

Using the `-res` option, the user could potentially put the system into an unusable state, a state where there is no video output. This can happen if there is ambiguity in the monitor sense codes for the particular code read. To reduce the chance of this, the default behavior of `ffbconfig` is to print a warning message to this effect and to prompt the user to find out if it is okay to continue. This option is useful when `ffbconfig` is being run from a shell script.

nocheck

Suspends normal error checking based on the monitor sense code. The video mode specified by the user will be accepted regardless of whether it is appropriate for the currently attached monitor. This option is useful if a different monitor is to be connected to the FFB device. Note: Use of this option implies `noconfirm` as well.

try

Programs the specified video mode on a trial basis. The user will be asked to confirm the video mode by typing `y` within 10 seconds. The user may also terminate the trial before 10 seconds are up by typing any character. Any character other than `y` or RETURN is considered a `no` and the previous video mode will be restored and `ffbconfig` will not change the video mode in the OWconfig file and other options specified will still take effect. If a RETURN is pressed, the user is prompted for a yes or no answer on whether to keep the new video mode.

This sub-option should not be used with `ffbconfig` while the configured device is being used (for example, while running the window system) as unpredictable results may occur. To run `fbconfig` with the `try` sub-option, the window system should be brought down first.

`-deflinear true | false`

FFB possesses two types of visuals: linear and nonlinear. Linear visuals are gamma corrected and nonlinear visuals are not. There are two visuals that have both linear and nonlinear versions: 24-bit TrueColor and 8-bit StaticGray.

`-deflinear true` sets the default visual to the linear visual that satisfies other specified default visual selection options. Specifically, the default visual selection options are those set by the Xsun (1) `defdepth` and `defclass` options. See for details.

`-deflinear false` (or if there is no linear visual that satisfies the other default visual selection options) sets the default visual to the non-linear visual as the default.

This option cannot be used when the `-defoverlay` option is present, because FFB does not possess a linear overlay visual.

`-defoverlay true | false`

FFB provides an 8-bit PseudoColor visual whose pixels are disjoint from the rest of the FFB visuals. This is called the overlay visual. Windows created in this visual will not damage windows created in other visuals. The converse, however, is not true. Windows created in other visuals will damage overlay windows. This visual has 256 `maxwids` of opaque color values. See `-maxwids` in `OPTIONS`.

If `-defoverlay` is `true`, the overlay visual will be made the default visual. If `-defoverlay` is `false`, the nonoverlay visual that satisfies the other default visual selection options, such as `defdepth` and `defclass`, will be chosen as the default visual. See the for details.

Whenever `-defoverlay true` is used, the default depth and class chosen on the `openwin` command line must be 8-bit PseudoColor. If not, a warning message will be printed and the `-defoverlay` option will be treated as `false`. This option cannot be used when the `-deflinear` option is present, because FFB doesn't possess a linear overlay visual.

`-linearorder first | last`

If `first`, linear visuals will come before their non-linear counterparts on the X11 screen visual list for the FFB screen. If `last`, the nonlinear visuals will come before the linear ones.

`-overlayorder first | last`

If `true`, the depth 8 PseudoColor Overlay visual will come before the non-overlay visual on the X11 screen visual list for the FFB screen. If `false`, the non-overlay visual will come before the overlay one.

`-expvis enable | disable`

If enabled, OpenGL Visual Expansion will be activated. Multiple instances of selected visual groups (8-bit PseudoColor, 24-bit TrueColor and so forth) can be found in the screen visual list.

-sov enable | disable

Advertises the root window's `SERVER_OVERLAY_VISUALS` property. SOV visuals will be exported and their transparent types, values and layers can be retrieved through this property. If `-sov disable` is specified, the `SERVER_OVERLAY_VISUALS` property will not be defined. SOV visuals will not be exported.

-maxwids *n*

Specifies the maximum number of FFB X channel pixel values that are reserved for use as window sIDs (WIDs). The remainder of the pixel values in overlay colormaps are used for normal X11 opaque color pixels. The reserved WIDs are allocated on a first-come first-serve basis by 3D graphics windows (such as XGL), MBX windows, and windows that have a non-default visual. The X channel codes 0 to (255-*n*) will be opaque color pixels. The X channel codes (255-*n*+1) to 255 will be reserved for use as WIDs. Legal values on FFB, FFB2 are: 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, and 32. Legal values on FFB2+ are: 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, and 64.

-extovl enable | disable

This option is available only on FFB2+. If enabled, extended overlay is available. The overlay visuals will have 256 opaque colors. The SOV visuals will have 255 opaque colors and 1 transparent color. This option enables hardware supported transparency which provides better performance for windows using the SOV visuals.

-g *gamma-correction value*

This option is available only on FFB2+. This option allows changing the gamma correction value. All linear visuals provide gamma correction. By default the gamma correction value is 2.22. Any value less than zero is illegal. The gamma correction value is applied to the linear visual, which then has an effective gamma value of 1.0, which is the value returned by `XSolarisGetVisualGamma(3)`. See `XSolarisGetVisualGamma(3)` for a description of that function.

This option can be used while the window system is running. Changing the gamma correction value will affect all the windows being displayed using the linear visuals.

-gfile *gamma-correction file*

This option is available only on FFB2+. This option loads gamma correction table from the specified file. This file should be formatted to provide the gamma correction values for R, G and B channels on each line. This file should provide 256 triplet values, each in hexadecimal format and separated by at least 1 space. Following is an example of this file:

```
0x00 0x00 0x00
0x01 0x01 0x01
0x02 0x02 0x02
...
...
0xff 0xff 0xff
```

Using this option, the gamma correction table can be loaded while the window system is running. The new gamma correction will affect all the windows being displayed using the linear visuals. Note, when gamma correction is being done using user specified table, the

gamma correction value is undefined. By default, the window system assumes a gamma correction value of 2.22 and loads the gamma table it creates corresponding to this value.

-defaults

Resets all option values to their default values.

-propt

Prints the current values of all FFB options in the OWconfig file specified by the `-file` option for the device specified by the `-dev` option. Prints the values of options as they will be in the OWconfig file after the call to `ffbconfig` completes. The following is a typical display using the `-propt` option:

```
--- OpenWindows Configuration for /dev/fbs/ffb0 ---
OWconfig: machine
Video Mode: NONE
Default Visual: Non-Linear Normal Visual
Visual Ordering: Linear Visuals are last
                  Overlay Visuals are last
OpenGL Visuals: disabled
SOV: disabled
Allocated WIDs: 32
```

-prconf

Prints the FFB hardware configuration. The following is a typical display using the `-prconf` option:

```
--- Hardware Configuration for /dev/fbs/ffb0 ---
Type: double-buffered FFB2 with Z-buffer
Board: rev x
PROM Information: @(#)ffb2.fth x.x xx/xx/xx
FBC: version x
DAC: Brooktree 9068, version x
3DRAM: Mitsubishi 1309, version x
EDID Data: Available - EDID version 1 revision x
Monitor Sense ID: 4 (Sun 37x29cm RGB color monitor)
Monitor possible resolutions: 1024x768x60, 1024x768x70,
                              1024x768x75, 1152x900x66, 1152x900x76,
                              1280x1024x67, 1280x1024x76,
                              960x680x112s, 640x480x60
Current resolution setting: 1280x1024x76
```

-help

Prints a list of the `ffbconfig` command line options, along with a brief explanation of each.

Defaults For a given invocation of `ffbconfig` command line if an option does not appear on the command line, the corresponding OWconfig option is not updated; it retains its previous value.

When the window system is run, if an FFB option has never been specified via `ffbconfig`, a default value is used. The option defaults are listed in the following table:

Option	Default
-dev	/dev/fbs/ffb0
-file	machine
-res	none
-deflinear	false
-defoverlay	false
-linearorder	last
-overlayorder	last
-expvis	enabled
-sov	enabled
-maxwids	32

The default for the `-res` option of `none` means that when the window system is run the screen resolution will be the video mode that is currently programmed in the device.

This provides compatibility for users who are used to specifying the device resolution through the PROM. On some devices (for example, GX) this is the only way of specifying the video mode. This means that the PROM ultimately determines the default FFB video mode.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Changing The Monitor Type

The following example switches the monitor type to the resolution of 1280 × 1024 at 76 Hz:

```
example% /usr/sbin/ffbconfig -res 1280x1024x76
```

Files /dev/fbs/ffb0 device special file

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWffbcf

See Also [mmap\(2\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [fbio\(7I\)](#), [ffb\(7D\)](#)

Name ff_ufs – list file names and statistics for a ufs file system

Synopsis ff -F ufs [*generic_options*] [-o a,m,s] *special*...

Description ff prints the pathnames and inode numbers of files in the file system which resides on the special device *special*.

See [ff\(1M\)](#) for information regarding the ff command. See **OPTIONS** for information regarding the ufs-specific options.

Options The following options are supported:

- o Specify ufs file system specific options. The following options available are:
 - a Print the '.' and '..' directory entries.
 - m Print mode information. This option must be specified in conjunction with the -i *i-node-list* option (see [ff\(1M\)](#)).
 - s Print only special files and files with set-user-ID mode.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [find\(1\)](#), [ff\(1M\)](#), [ncheck\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name fiocompress – file compression utility

Synopsis /sbin/fiocompress -c [-m] [-b *block_size*] *input_file output_file*
 /sbin/fiocompress -d *input_file output_file*

Description The `fiocompress` utility is a file compression tool that works together with the `dcfs(7FS)` file system to perform per-file compression. You can use `fiocompress` to decompress a compressed file or mark a compressed file as compressed, causing automatic decompression on read. The primary use of `fiocompress` is to compress files in the boot archive.

Note that this utility is not a Committed interface. See [attributes\(5\)](#).

Options The following options are supported:

-b *block_size*

Specify a block size for compression. The default block size is 8192.

-c

Compress the specified file.

-d

Decompress the specified file.

-m

Mark the compressed file for automatic decompression on read. Can be used only in conjunction with -c.

Exit Status 0

The command completed successfully.

-1

The command exited due to an error.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsr
Interface Stability	Private

See Also [boot\(1M\)](#), [bootadm\(1M\)](#), [dcfs\(7FS\)](#), [ufs\(7FS\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes This compression/decompression utility works only with files stored in a UFS file system.

There is no obvious way to determine whether a given file is compressed, other than copying the file and comparing the number of disk blocks of the copy against the original.

Name flar – administer flash archives

Synopsis flar create -n *name* [-R *root*] [-A *system_image*] [-H] [-I] [-M] [-S] [-c] [-t [-p *posn*] [-b *blocksize*]] [-i *date*] [-u *section*]... [-m *master*] [-f [*filelist* | -] [-F]] [-a *author*] [-e *descr* | -E *descr_file*] [-L *archiver*] [-T *type*] [-U *key=value*]... [-x *exclude*]... [-y *include*]... [-z *filelist*]... [-X *filelist*]... *archive*

flar combine [-d *dir*] [-u *section*]... [-t [-p *posn*] [-b *blocksize*]] *archive*

flar split [-d *dir*] [-u *section*]... [-f] [-S *section*] [-t [-p *posn*] [-b *blocksize*]] *archive*

flar info [-l] [-k *keyword*] [-t [-p *posn*] [-b *blocksize*]] *archive*

Description The `flar` command is used to administer flash archives. A flash archive is an easily transportable version of a reference configuration of the Solaris operating environment, plus optional other software. Such an archive is used for the rapid installation of Solaris on large numbers of machines. You can create a flash archive using either `flar` with the `create` subcommand or the `flarcreate(1M)` command. See `flash_archive(4)`.

In flash terminology, a system on which an archive is created is called a *master*. The system image stored in the archive is deployed to systems that are called *clones*.

There are two types of flash archives: full and differential. Both are created with the `create` subcommand. A full archive contains all the files that are in a system image. A differential archive contains only differences between two system images. Installation of a differential archive is faster and consumes fewer resources than installation of a full archive.

In creating a differential archive, you compare two system images. A system image can be any of:

- a Live Upgrade boot environment, mounted on some directory using `lumount(1M)` (see `live_upgrade(5)`)
- a clone system mounted over NFS with root permissions
- a full flash archive expanded into some local directory

To explain the creation of a differential flash archive, the following terminology is used:

old The image prior to upgrade or other modification. This is likely the image as it was installed on clone systems.

new The old image, plus possible additions or changes and minus possible deletions. This is likely the image you want to duplicate on clone systems.

The `flar` command compares *old* and *new*, creating a differential archive as follows:

- files on *new* that are not in *old* are added to the archive;

- files of the same name that are different between *old* and *new* are taken from *new* and added to the archive;
- files that are in *old* and not in *new* are put in list of files to be deleted when the differential archive is installed on clone systems.

When creating a differential flash archive, the currently running image is, by default, the new image and a second image, specified with the `-A` option, is the old image. You can use the `-R` option to designate an image other than the currently running system as the new image. These options are described below.

You can run `flarcreate` in multi- or single-user mode. You can also use the command when the master system is booted from the first Solaris software CD or from a Solaris net image. Archive creation should be performed when the master system is in as stable a state as possible.

Following creation of a flash archive, you can use JumpStart to clone the archive on multiple systems.

Subcommands The `flar` command includes subcommands for creating, combining, splitting, and providing information about archives. A subcommand is the first argument in a `flar` command line. These subcommands are as follows:

- | | |
|----------------------|--|
| <code>create</code> | Create a new flash archive, of a name you specify with the <code>-n</code> argument, based on the currently running system. Use the <code>-A</code> option (described below) to create a differential flash archive. |
| <code>combine</code> | Combine the individual sections that make up an archive into the archive. If <i>dir</i> is specified (see <code>-d</code> option below), the sections will be gathered from <i>dir</i> ; otherwise, they will be gathered from the current directory. Each section is assumed to be in a separate file, the names of which are the section names. At a minimum, the archive cookie (<code>cookie</code>), archive identification (<code>identification</code>), and archive files (<code>archive</code>) sections must be present. If <i>archive</i> is a directory, its contents are archived using <code>files_archived_method</code> (<code>cpio</code> and <code>pax</code>) prior to inclusion in the archive. If so specified in the <code>identification</code> section, the contents are compressed.

Note that no validation is performed on any of the sections. In particular, no fields in the <code>identification</code> section are validated or updated. See flash_archive(4) for a description of the archive sections. |
| <code>info</code> | Extract information on an archive. This subcommand is analogous to <code>pkginfo</code> . |
| <code>split</code> | Split an archive into one file for each section of the archive. Each section is copied into a separate file in <i>dir</i> , if <i>dir</i> is specified (see <code>-d</code> option below), or the current directory if it is not. The files resulting from the split are named after the sections. The archive cookie is stored in a file named <code>cookie</code> . If <i>section</i> is specified (see <code>-u</code> |

option below), only the named section is copied.

The create subcommand requires root privileges.

The options for each subcommand are described below.

Options The options for the create subcommand are below. Many of these options supply values for keywords in the identification section of a file containing a flash archive. See [flash_archive\(4\)](#) for a description of these keywords.

- a *author* *author* is used to provide an author name for the archive identification section of the new flash archive. If you do not specify -a, no author name is included in the identification section.
- A *system_image* Create a differential flash archive by comparing a new system image (see DESCRIPTION) with the image specified by the *system_image* argument. By default, the new system image is the currently running system. You can change the default with the -R option, described below. *system_image* is a directory containing an image. It can be accessible through UFS, NFS, or [lumount\(1M\)](#).

The rules for inclusion and exclusion of files in a differential archive are described in DESCRIPTION. You can modify the effect of these rules with the use of the -x, -X, -y, and -z options, described below.
- c Compress the archive using [compress\(1\)](#)
- f *filelist* Use the contents of *filelist* as a list of files to include in the archive. The files are included in addition to the normal file list, unless -F is specified (see below). If *filelist* is -, the list is taken from standard input. *filelist* can include directories. If a directory is listed, all files and subdirectories under that directory are included.
- e *descr* The description to be included in the archive as the value of the `content_description` archive identification key. This option is incompatible with -E.
- E *descr_file* The description to be used as the value of the archive identification `content_description` key is retrieved from the file *descr_file*. This option is incompatible with -e.
- F Include only files in the list specified by -f. This option makes -f *filelist* an absolute list, rather than a list that is appended to the normal file list.
- H Do not generate hash identifier.
- I Ignore integrity check. To prevent you from excluding important system files from an archive, flar runs an integrity check. This check examines

all files registered in a system package database and stops archive creation if any of them are excluded. Use this option to override this integrity check.

-i *date* By default, the value for the `creation_date` field in the identification section is generated automatically, based on the current system time and date. If you specify the `-i` option, *date* is used instead. *date* is in the format `YYYYMMDDhhmmss`, so that, for example:

20060905031000

...stands for 3:10 AM on September 5, 2006.

-L *archiver* By default, the value for the `files_archived_method` field in the identification section is `pax(1)`. If you specify `-L`, the archiver (`cpio(1)` and `pax`) is used instead.

-m *master* By default, the value for the `creation_master` field in the identification section is the name of the system on which you run `flar create`, as reported by `uname -n`. If you specify `-m`, *master* is used instead.

-M Used only when you are creating a differential flash archive. When creating a differential archive, `flar` creates a long list of the files in the system that remain the same, are changed, and are to be deleted on clone systems. This list is stored in the manifest section of the archive (see [flash_archive\(4\)](#)). When the differential archive is deployed, the flash software uses this list to perform a file-by-file check, ensuring the integrity of the clone system. Use of this option to avoids such a check and saves the space used by the manifest section in a differential archive. However, you must weigh the savings in time and disk space against the loss of an integrity check upon deployment. Because of this loss, use of this option is not recommended.

-n *name* *name* is supplied as the value of the `content_name` keyword. See [flash_archive\(4\)](#).

The `-n name` option, with *name* argument, is required for the `create` subcommand.

-R *root* Create the archive from the file system tree rooted at *root*. If you do not specify this option, `flar` creates an archive from a file system rooted at `/`. When creating a differential flash archive, the system image specified by `-R` replaces the currently running system as the *new* image. See DESCRIPTION.

Note – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the `-R` option. Doing so might damage the global zone's

- file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).
- S Skip the disk space check and do not write archive size data to the archive. Without -S, `flar` builds a compressed archive in memory before writing the archive to disk, to ensure you have sufficient disk space. Use -S to skip this step. The result of the use of -S is a significant decrease in the time it takes to create an archive.
 - T *type* Content type included in the archive as the value of the `content_type` archive identification key. If you do not specify -T, the `content_type` keyword is not included.
 - U *key=value...* Include the user-defined keyword(s) and values in the archive identification section. See [flash_archive\(4\)](#).
 - u *section...* Include the user-defined section located in the file *section* in the archive. *section* must be a blank-separated list of section names as described in [flash_archive\(4\)](#).
 - x *exclude ...* Exclude the file or directory *exclude* from the archive. Note that the *exclude* file or directory is assumed to be relative to the alternate root specified using -R. If the parent directory of the file *exclude* is included with the -y option (see -y *include*), then only the specific file or directory specified by *exclude* is excluded. Conversely, if the parent directory of an included file is specified for exclusion, then only the file *include* is included. For example, if you specify:


```
-x /a -y /a/b
```

 all of /a except for /a/b is excluded. If you specify:


```
-y /a -x /a/b
```

 all of /a except for /a/b is included.
 - y *include ...* Include the file or directory *include* in the archive. Note that the *exclude* file or directory is assumed to be relative to the alternate root specified using -R. See the description of the -x option, above, for a description of the interaction of the -x and -y options.
 - X *filelist ...* Use the contents of *filelist* as a list of files to exclude from the archive. If *filelist* is -, the list is taken from standard input.
 - z *filelist ...* *filelist* is a list of files prefixed with a plus (+) or minus (-). A plus indicates that a file should be included in the archive; the minus indicates exclusion. If *filelist* is -, the list is taken from standard input.

The options for `flar info` subcommand are as follows:

- k *keyword* Only the value of the keyword *keyword* is returned.
- l List all files in the archive. Does not process content from any sections other than the archive section.

The following are flar info options used with tape archives:

- b *blocksize* The block size to be used when creating the archive. If not specified, a default block size of 64K is used.
- p *posn* Specifies the position on the tape device where the archive should be created. If not specified, the current position of the tape device is examined.
- t The archive to be analyzed is located on a tape device. The path to the device is specified by *archive* (see OPERANDS).

The options for flar split and combine (split and combine archives) subcommands are as follows:

- d *dir* Retrieve sections from *dir*, rather than from the current directory.
- f (Used with split only.) Extract the archive section into directory called *archive*, rather than placing it in a file of the same name as the section.
- S *section* (Used with split only.) Extract only the section named *section* from the archive.
- u *section...* Appends *section* to the list of sections to be included. The default list includes the cookie, identification, and archive sections. *section* can be a single section name or a space-separated list of section names.

The following options are used with tape archives (with both split and combine):

- b *blocksize* The block size to be used when creating the archive. If not specified, a default block size of 64K is used.
- p *posn* Used only with -t. Specifies the position on the tape device where the archive should be created. If not specified, the current position of the tape device is used.
- t Create an archive on or read an archive from a tape device. The *archive* operand (see OPERANDS) is assumed to be the name of the tape device.

Operands The following operand is supported:

- archive* Path to tape device if the -t option was used. Otherwise, the complete path name of a flash archive. By convention, a file containing a flash archive has a file extension of .flar.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Creating a Flash Archive

The command below creates a flash archive named `pogoS9` and stores it in `/export/home/archives/s9fcs.flar`. The currently running system is the basis for the new archive.

```
# flar create -n pogoS9 /export/home/archives/s9fcs.flar
```

EXAMPLE 2 Creating Differential Flash Archives

The command below creates a differential flash archive.

```
# flar create -n diff_pogoS9 -A /images \
/export/home/archives/diff_s9fcs.flar
```

In the following example the *old* system image is accessed through `lumount`.

```
# lumount s9BE /test
# flar create -n diff_pogoS9 -A /test \
/export/home/archives/diff_s9fcs.flar
```

The following example shows the use of the `-R` option to specify a new system image other than the currently running system.

```
# flar create -n diff_pogoS9 -R /test \
-A /images /export/home/archives/diff_s9fcs.flar
```

Note the caveat on the use of the `-R` option in the description of that option, above.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned for the `create`, `split`, and `combine` subcommands:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.

The following exit values are returned for the `info` subcommand:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 Command failed. If the `-k` option is used and the requested keyword is not found, `flar` returns 2.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWinst
Stability Level	Evolving

See Also [cpio\(1\)](#), [pax\(1\)](#), [flarcreate\(1M\)](#), [flash_archive\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name flarcreate – create a flash archive from a master system

Synopsis flarcreate -n *name* [-R *root*] [-A *system_image*] [-H] [-I] [-M] [-S] [-c] [-t [-p *posn*] [-b *blocksize*]] [-i *date*] [-u *section*]... [-m *master*] [-f [*filelist* | -] [-F]] [-a *author*] [-e *descr* | -E *descr_file*] [-L *archiver*] [-T *type*] [-U *key=value*]... [-x *exclude*]... [-y *include*]... [-z *filelist*]... [-X *filelist*]... *archive*

Description The `flarcreate` command creates a flash archive from a master system. A master system is one that contains a reference configuration, which is a particular configuration of the Solaris operating environment, plus optional other software. A flash archive is an easily transportable version of the reference configuration.

In flash terminology, a system on which an archive is created is called a *master*. The system image stored in the archive is deployed to systems that are called *clones*.

There are two types of flash archives: full and differential. A full archive contains all the files that are in a system image. A differential archive contains only differences between two system images. Installation of a differential archive is faster and consumes fewer resources than installation of a full archive.

In creating a differential archive, you compare two system images. A system image can be any of:

- a Live Upgrade boot environment, mounted on some directory using `lumount(1M)` (see `live_upgrade(5)`)
- a clone system mounted over NFS with root permissions
- a full flash archive expanded into some local directory

To explain the creation of a differential flash archive, the following terminology is used:

old The image prior to upgrade or other modification. This is likely the image as it was installed on clone systems.

new The old image, plus possible additions or changes and minus possible deletions. This is likely the image you want to duplicate on clone systems.

The `flarcreate` command compares *old* and *new*, creating a differential archive as follows:

- files on *new* that are not in *old* are added to the archive;
- files of the same name that are different between *old* and *new* are taken from *new* and added to the archive;
- files that are in *old* and not in *new* are put in list of files to be deleted when the differential archive is installed on clone systems.

When creating a differential flash archive, the currently running image is, by default, the new image and a second image, specified with the `-A` option, is the old image. You can use the `-R` option to designate an image other than the currently running system as the new image. These options are described below.

Following creation of a flash archive, you can use JumpStart to clone the archive on multiple systems.

You can run `flarcreate` in multi- or single-user mode. You can also use the command when the master system is booted from the first Solaris software CD or from a Solaris net image.

Archive creation should be performed when the master system is in as stable a state as possible. Following archive creation, use the `flar(1M)` command to administer a flash archive.

See `flash_archive(4)` for a description of the flash archive.

The `flarcreate` command requires root privileges.

Options The `flarcreate` command has one required argument:

`-n name` Specifies the name of the flash archive. *name* is supplied as the value of the `content_name` keyword. See `flash_archive(4)`.

The `flarcreate` command has the following general options:

`-A system_image` Create a differential flash archive by comparing a new system image (see DESCRIPTION) with the image specified by the *system_image* argument. By default, the new system image is the currently running system. You can change the default with the `-R` option, described below. *system_image* is a directory containing an image. It can be accessible through UFS, NFS, or `lumount(1M)`.

The rules for inclusion and exclusion of files in a differential archive are described in DESCRIPTION. You can modify the effect of these rules with the use of the `-x`, `-X`, `-y`, and `-z` options, described below.

`-c` Compress the archive using `compress(1)`

`-f filelist` Use the contents of *filelist* as a list of files to include in the archive. The files are included in addition to the normal file list, unless `-F` is specified (see below). If *filelist* is `-`, the list is taken from standard input. *filelist* can include directories. If a directory is listed, all files and subdirectories under that directory are included.

`-F` Include only files in the list specified by `-f`. This option makes `-f filelist` an absolute list, rather than a list that is appended to the normal file list.

-
- H Do not generate hash identifier.
- I Ignore integrity check. To prevent you from excluding important system files from an archive, `flarcreate` runs an integrity check. This check examines all files registered in a system package database and stops archive creation if any of them are excluded. Use this option to override this integrity check.
- L *archiver* By default, the value for the `files_archived_method` field in the identification section is `pax(1)`. If you specify `-L`, the archiver (`cpio(1)` and `pax`) is used instead.
- M Used only when you are creating a differential flash archive. When creating a differential archive, `flarcreate` creates a long list of the files in the system that remain the same, are changed, and are to be deleted on clone systems. This list is stored in the manifest section of the archive (see `flash_archive(4)`). When the differential archive is deployed, the flash software uses this list to perform a file-by-file check, ensuring the integrity of the clone system. Use of this option to avoids such a check and saves the space used by the manifest section in a differential archive. However, you must weigh the savings in time and disk space against the loss of an integrity check upon deployment. Because of this loss, use of this option is not recommended.
- R *root* Create the archive from the file system tree rooted at *root*. If you do not specify this option, `flarcreate` creates an archive from a file system rooted at `/`.
- Note** – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the `-R` option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See `zones(5)`.
- S Skip the disk space check and do not write archive size data to the archive. Without `-S`, `flarcreate` builds a compressed archive in memory before writing the archive to disk, to determine the size of the archive. This size information is written to the header of the archive in the `files_archived_size` field and is used during archive deployment on the client to ensure enough disk space is available on the client. Use `-S` to skip this step. The result of the use of `-S` is a significant decrease in the time it takes to create an archive.
- U *key=value...* Include the user-defined keyword(s) and values in the archive identification section.
- x *exclude...* Exclude the file or directory *exclude* from the archive. Note that the *exclude* file or directory is assumed to be relative to the alternate root

specified using `-R`. If the parent directory of the file *exclude* is included with the `-y` option (see `-y include`), then only the specific file or directory specified by *exclude* is excluded. Conversely, if the parent directory of an included file is specified for exclusion, then only the file *include* is included. For example, if you specify:

```
-x /a -y /a/b
```

all of `/a` except for `/a/b` is excluded. If you specify:

```
-y /a -x /a/b
```

all of `/a` except for `/a/b` is included.

- `-y include...` Include the file or directory *include* in the archive. Note that the *include* file or directory is assumed to be relative to the alternate root specified using `-R`. See the description of the `-x` option, above, for a description of the interaction of the `-x` and `-y` options.
- `-X filelist...` Use the contents of *filelist* as a list of files to exclude from the archive. If *filelist* is `-`, the list is taken from standard input.
- `-z filelist...` *filelist* is a list of files prefixed with a plus (+) or minus (-). A plus indicates that a file should be included in the archive; the minus indicates exclusion. If *filelist* is `-`, the list is taken from standard input.

Use the following option with user-defined sections.

- `-u section...` Include the user-defined section located in the file *section* in the archive. *section* must be a blank-separated list of section names as described in [flash_archive\(4\)](#).

Use the following options with tape archives.

- `-b blocksize` The block size to be used when creating the archive. If not specified, a default block size of 64K is used.
- `-p posn` Used only with `-t`. Specifies the position on the tape device where the archive should be created. If not specified, the current position of the tape device is used.
- `-t` Create an archive on a tape device. The *archive* operand (see OPERANDS) is assumed to be the name of the tape device.

The following options are used for archive identification.

- `-a author` *author* is used to provide an author name for the archive identification section. If you do not specify `-a`, no author name is included in the identification section.

- e *descr*** The description to be included in the archive as the value of the `content_description` archive identification key. This option is incompatible with `-E`.
- E *descr_file*** The description to be used as the value of the archive identification `content_description` key is retrieved from the file *descr_file*. This option is incompatible with `-e`.
- i *date*** By default, the value for the `creation_date` field in the identification section is generated automatically, based on the current system time and date. If you specify the `-i` option, *date* is used instead. *date* is in the format `YYYYMMDDhhmmss`, so that, for example:
- 20060905031000
- ...stands for 3:10 AM on September 5, 2006.
- m *master*** By default, the value for the `creation_master` field in the identification section is the name of the system on which you run `flarcreate`, as reported by `uname -n`. If you specify `-m`, *master* is used instead.
- T *type*** Content type included in the archive as the value of the `content_type` archive identification key. If you do not specify `-T`, the `content_type` keyword is not included.

Operands The following operand is supported:

- archive*** Path to tape device if the `-t` option was used. Otherwise, the complete path name of a flash archive. By convention, a file containing a flash archive has a file extension of `.flar`.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- `0` Successful completion.
- `>0` An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWinst

See Also [cpio\(1\)](#), [pax\(1\)](#), [flar\(1M\)](#), [flash_archive\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name flowadm – administer bandwidth resource control and priority for protocols, services, containers, and virtual machines

Synopsis flowadm show-flow [-pP] [-S] [-s [-i *interval*]] [-l *link*]
 [-o *field[,...]*] [*flow*]

flowadm add-flow [-t] [-R *root-dir*] -l *link* -a *attr=value[,...]*
 -p *prop=value[,...]* *flow*

flowadm remove-flow [-t] [-R *root-dir*] {-l *link* | *flow*}

flowadm set-flowprop [-t] [-R *root-dir*] -p *prop=value[,...]* *flow*

flowadm reset-flowprop [-t] [-R *root-dir*] [-p *prop[,...]*] *flow*

flowadm show-flowprop [-cP] [-l *link*] [-o *field[,...]*]
 [-p *prop[,...]*] [*flow*]

flowadm show-usage [-a] [-d | {-p *plotfile* -F *format*}] [-s *time*]
 [-e *time*] -f *filename* [*flow*]

Description The flowadm command is used to create, modify, remove, and show networking bandwidth and associated resources for a type of traffic on a particular link.

The flowadm command allows users to manage networking bandwidth resources for a transport, service, or a subnet. The service is specified as a combination of transport and local port. The subnet is specified by its IP address and subnet mask. The command can be used on any type of data link, including physical links, virtual NICs, and link aggregations.

A flow is defined as a set of attributes based on Layer 3 and Layer 4 headers, which can be used to identify a protocol, service, or a virtual machine. When a flow is identified based on flow attributes, separate kernel resources including layer 2, 3, and 4 queues, their processing threads, and other resources are uniquely created for it, such that other traffic has minimal or zero impact on it.

Inbound and outbound packet are matched to flows in a very fast and scalable way, so that limits can be enforced with minimal performance impact.

The flowadm command can be used to identify a flow without imposing any bandwidth resource control. This would result in the traffic type getting its own resources and queues so that it is isolated from rest of the networking traffic for more observable and deterministic behavior.

flowadm is implemented as a set of subcommands with corresponding options. Options are described in the context of each subcommand.

Sub-commands The following subcommands are supported:

flowadm show-flow [-pP] [-s [-i *interval*]] [-o *field[,...]*] [-l *link*] [*flow*]
 Show flow configuration information (the default) or statistics, either for all flows, all flows on a link, or for the specified *flow*.

`-o field[,...]`

A case-insensitive, comma-separated list of output fields to display. The field name must be one of the fields listed below, or a special value `all`, to display all fields. For each flow found, the following fields can be displayed:

`flow`

The name of the flow.

`link`

The name of the link the flow is on.

`ipaddr`

IP address of the flow. This can be either local or remote depending on how the flow was defined.

`transport`

The name of the layer for protocol to be used.

`port`

Local port of service for flow.

`dsfield`

Differentiated services value for flow and mask used with `DSFIELD` value to state the bits of interest in the differentiated services field of the IP header.

`-p, --parseable`

Display using a stable machine-parseable format.

`-P, --persistent`

Display persistent flow property information.

`-S, --continuous`

Continuously display network utilization by flow in a manner similar to the way that [prstat\(1M\)](#) displays CPU utilization by process.

`-s, --statistics`

Displays flow statistics.

`-i interval, --interval=interval`

Used with the `-s` option to specify an interval, in seconds, at which statistics should be displayed. If this option is not specified, statistics are displayed once.

`-l link, --link=link |flow`

Display information for all flows on the named link or information for the named flow.

`flowadm add-flow [-t] [-R root-dir] -l link -a attr=value[,...] -p prop=value[,...] flow`
Adds a flow to the system. The flow is identified by its flow attributes and properties.

As part of identifying a particular flow, its bandwidth resource can be limited and its relative priority to other traffic can be specified. If no bandwidth limit or priority is specified, the traffic still gets its unique layer 2, 3, and 4 queues and processing threads,

including NIC hardware resources (when supported), so that the selected traffic can be separated from others and can flow with minimal impact from other traffic.

-t, --temporary

The changes are temporary and will not persist across reboots. Persistence is the default.

-R *root-dir*, --root-dir=*root-dir*

Specifies an alternate root directory where `flowadm` should apply persistent creation.

-l *link*, --link=*link*

Specify the link to which the flow will be added.

-a *attr=value[,...]*, --attr=*value*

A comma-separated list of attributes to be set to the specified values.

-p *prop=value[,...]*, --prop=*value[,...]*

A comma-separated list of properties to be set to the specified values.

`flowadm remove-flow [-t] [-R root-dir] -l {link | flow}`

Remove an existing flow identified by its link or name.

-t, --temporary

The changes are temporary and will not persist across reboots. Persistence is the default.

-R *root-dir*, --root-dir=*root-dir*

Specifies an alternate root directory where `flowadm` should apply persistent removal.

-l *link* | *flow*, --link=*link* | *flow*

If a link is specified, remove all flows from that link. If a single flow is specified, remove only that flow.

`flowadm set-flowprop [-t] [-R root-dir] -p prop=value[,...] flow`

Set values of one or more properties on the flow specified by name. The complete list of properties can be retrieved using the `show-flow` subcommand.

-t, --temporary

The changes are temporary and will not persist across reboots. Persistence is the default.

-R *root-dir*, --root-dir=*root-dir*

Specifies an alternate root directory where `flowadm` should apply persistent setting of properties.

-p *prop=value[,...]*, --prop=*value[,...]*

A comma-separated list of properties to be set to the specified values.

`flowadm reset-flowprop [-t] [-R root-dir] -p [prop=value[,...]] flow`

Resets one or more properties to their default values on the specified flow. If no properties are specified, all properties are reset. See the `show-flowprop` subcommand for a description of properties, which includes their default values.

-t, --temporary

Specifies that the resets are temporary. Temporary resets last until the next reboot.

`-R root-dir, --root-dir=root-dir`
 Specifies an alternate root directory where `flowadm` should apply persistent setting of properties.

`-p prop=value[...], --prop=value[...]`
 A comma-separated list of properties to be reset.

`flowadm show-flowprop [-cP] [-l link] [-p prop[...]] [flow]`
 Show the current or persistent values of one or more properties, either for all flows, flows on a specified link, or for the specified flow.

By default, current values are shown. If no properties are specified, all available flow properties are displayed. For each property, the following fields are displayed:

FLOW

The name of the flow.

PROPERTY

The name of the property.

VALUE

The current (or persistent) property value. The value is shown as `--` (double hyphen), if it is not set, and `?` (question mark), if the value is unknown. Persistent values that are not set or have been reset will be shown as `--` and will use the system `DEFAULT` value (if any).

DEFAULT

The default value of the property. If the property has no default value, `--` (double hyphen), is shown.

POSSIBLE

A comma-separated list of the values the property can have. If the values span a numeric range, the minimum and maximum values might be shown as shorthand. If the possible values are unknown or unbounded, `--` (double hyphen), is shown.

Flow properties are documented in the “Flow Properties” section, below.

`-c, --parseable`
 Display using a stable machine-parseable format.

`-P, --persistent`
 Display persistent flow property information.

`-p prop[...], --prop=prop[...]`
 A comma-separated list of properties to show.

`flowadm show-usage [-a] [-d | {-p plotfile -F format}] [-s time] [-e time] [flow]`
 Show the historical network flow usage from a stored extended accounting file. Configuration and enabling of network accounting through `acctadm(1M)` is required. The default output will be the summary of flow usage for the entire period of time in which extended accounting was enabled.

- a
Display all historical network usage for the specified period of time during which extended accounting is enabled. This includes the usage information for the flows that have already been deleted.
 - d
Display the dates for which there is logging information. The date is in the format *DD/MM/YYYY*.
 - F *format*
Specifies the format of *plotfile* that is specified by the -p option. As of this release, *gnuplot* is the only supported format.
 - p *plotfile*
When specified with -s or -e (or both), outputs flow usage data to a file of the format specified by the -F option, which is required.
 - s *time*, -e *time*
Start and stop times for data display. Time is in the format *YYYY.MM.DD,hh:mm:ss*.
 - f *filename*
Read extended accounting records of network flow usage from *filename*.
- flow*
If specified, display the network flow usage only from the named flow. Otherwise, display network usage from all flows.

Flow Attributes The flow operand that identify a flow in a `flowadm` command is a comma-separated list of one or more keyword, value pairs from the list below.

`local_ip[/prefix_len]`

Identifies a network flow by the local IP address. *value* must be a IPv4 address in dotted-decimal notation or an IPv6 address in colon-separated notation. *prefix_len* is optional.

If *prefix_len* is specified, it describes the netmask for a subnet address, following the same notation convention of `ifconfig(1M)` and `route(1M)` addresses. If unspecified, the given IP address will be considered as a host address for which the default prefix length for a IPv4 address is /32 and for IPv6 is /128.

`remote_ip[/prefix_len]`

Identifies a network flow by the remote IP address. The syntax is the same as `local_ip` attributes

`transport={tcp|udp|sctp|icmp|icmpv6}`

Identifies a layer 4 protocol to be used. It is typically used in combination with `local_port` or `remote_port` to identify the local or remote service that needs special attention.

`local_port`

Identifies a service specified by the local port.

`remote_port`

Identifies a service specified by the remote port.

`dsfield[:dsfield_mask]`

Identifies the 8-bit differentiated services field (as defined in RFC 2474).

The optional `dsfield_mask` is used to state the bits of interest in the differentiated services field when comparing with the `dsfield` value. A 0 in a bit position indicates that the bit value needs to be ignored and a 1 indicates otherwise. The mask can range from `0x01` to `0xff`. If `dsfield_mask` is not specified, the default mask `0xff` is used. Both the `dsfield` value and mask must be in hexadecimal.

The following types of combinations of attributes are supported:

```
local_ip[/prefixlen]=address
remote_ip[/prefixlen]=address
transport={tcp|udp|sctp|icmp|icmpv6}
transport={tcp|udp|sctp},local_port=port
transport={tcp|udp|sctp},remote_port=port
dsfield=val[:dsfield_mask]
```

On a given link, the combinations above are mutually exclusive. An attempt to create flows of different combinations will fail.

Restrictions There are individual flow restrictions and flow restrictions per zone.

Individual Flow Restrictions

Restrictions on individual flows do not require knowledge of other flows that have been added to the link.

An attribute can be listed only once for each flow. For example, the following command is not valid:

```
# flowadm add-flow -l vnic1 -a local_port=80,local_port=8080 httpflow
```

`transport` and `local_port` or `transport` and `remote_port`:

TCP, UDP, or SCTP flows can be specified with a local port or with a remote port. An ICMP or ICMPv6 flow that specifies a port is not allowed.

If either `local_port` or `remote_port` is specified, the `transport` must be either TCP, UDP or SCTP.

The following commands are valid:

```
# flowadm add-flow -l e1000g0 -a transport=udp udpflow
# flowadm add-flow -l e1000g0 -a transport=tcp,local_port=80 \
udp80flow
```

The following commands are not valid:

```
# flowadm add-flow -l e1000g0 -a remote_port=25 flow25
# flowadm add-flow -l e1000g0 -a transport=icmpv6,remote_port=16 \
flow16
```

Flow Restrictions Per Zone

Within a zone, no two flows can have the same name. After adding a flow with the link specified, the link will not be required for display, modification, or deletion of the flow.

Flow Properties The following flow properties are supported. Note that the ability to set a given property to a given value depends on the driver and hardware.

maxbw

Sets the full duplex bandwidth for the flow. The bandwidth is specified as an integer with one of the scale suffixes(K, M, or G for Kbps, Mbps, and Gbps). If no units are specified, the input value will be read as Mbps. The default is no bandwidth limit.

priority

Sets the relative priority for the flow. The value can be given as one of the tokens high, medium, or low. The default is medium.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Creating a Policy Around a Mission-Critical Port

The command below creates a policy around inbound HTTPS traffic on an HTTPS server so that HTTPS obtains dedicated NIC hardware and kernel TCP/IP resources. The name specified, `https-1`, can be used later to modify or delete the policy.

```
# flowadm add-flow -l bge0 -a transport=TCP,local_port=443 https-1
# flowadm show-flow -l bge0
```

FLOW	LINK	IP ADDR	PROTO	PORT	RPORT	DSFLD
https1	bge0	--	tcp	443	--	--

EXAMPLE 2 Modifying an Existing Policy to Add Bandwidth Resource Control

The following command modifies the `https-1` policy from the preceding example. The command adds bandwidth control and give the policy a high priority.

```
# flowadm set-flowprop -p maxbw=500M,priority=high https-1
# flowadm show-flow https-1
```

FLOW	LINK	IP ADDR	PROTO	PORT	RPORT	DSFLD
https1	bge0	--	tcp	443	--	--

```
# flowadm show-flowprop https-1
```

FLOW	PROPERTY	VALUE	DEFAULT	POSSIBLE
https-1	maxbw	500	--	--
https-1	priority	HIGH	--	LOW, NORMAL, HIGH

EXAMPLE 3 Limiting the UDP Bandwidth Usage

The following command creates a policy for UDP protocol so that it cannot consume more than 100Mbps of available bandwidth. The flow is named `limit-udp-1`.

```
# flowadm add-flow -l bge0 -a transport=UDP -p maxbw=100M, \
priority=low limit-udp-1
```

EXAMPLE 4 Showing Flow Usage

Flow usage statistics can be stored using the extended accounting facility, [acctadm\(1M\)](#).

```
# acctadm -e extended -f /var/log/net.log net
```

```
# acctadm net
Network accounting: active
Network accounting file: /var/log/net.log
Tracked Network resources: extended
Untracked Network resources: none
```

The historical data that was saved can be retrieved in summary form using the `show-usage` subcommand of `flowadm`.

EXAMPLE 5 Setting Policy, Making Use of `dsfield` Attribute

The following command sets a policy for EF PHB (DSCP value of 101110 from RFC 2598) with a bandwidth of 500 Mbps and a high priority. The `dsfield` value for this flow will be `0x2e` (101110) with the `dsfield_mask` being `0xfc` (because we want to ignore the 2 least significant bits).

```
# flowadm add-flow -l bge0 -a dsfield=0x2e:0xfc \
-p maxbw=500M,priority=high efphb-flow
```

Display summary information:

```
# flowadm show-usage -f /var/log/net.log
```

FLOW	DURATION	IPACKETS	RBYTES	OPACKETS	OBYTES	BANDWIDTH
flowtcp	100	1031	546908	0	0	43.76 Kbps
flowudp	0	0	0	0	0	0.00 Mbps

Display dates for which logging information is available:

```
# flowadm show-usage -d -f /var/log/net.log
02/19/2008
```

Display logging information for `flowtcp` starting at 02/19/2008, 10:38:46 and ending at 02/19/2008, 10:40:06:

EXAMPLE 5 Setting Policy, Making Use of `dsfield` Attribute *(Continued)*

```
# flowadm show-usage -s 02/19/2008,10:39:06 -e 02/19/2008,10:40:06 \
-f /var/log/net.log flowtcp
FLOW      TIME      IPACKETS RBYTES      OPACKETS OBYTES      BANDWIDTH
flowtcp   10:39:06   1        1546        4         6539        3.23 Kbps
flowtcp   10:39:26   2        3586        5         9922        5.40 Kbps
flowtcp   10:39:46   1         240        1          216        182.40 bps
flowtcp   10:40:06   0         0          0          0          0.00 bps
```

Output the same information as above as a plotfile:

```
# flowadm show-usage -s 02/19/2008,10:39:06 -e 02/19/2008,10:40:06 \
-p /home/plot/myplot -F gnuplot -f /var/log/net.log flowtcp
# Time tcp-flow
10:39:06 3.23
10:39:26 5.40
10:39:46 0.18
10:40:06 0.00
```

Exit Status 0

All actions were performed successfully.

>0

An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcnetr
Interface Stability	Committed

See Also [acctadm\(1M\)](#), [dladm\(1M\)](#), [ifconfig\(1M\)](#), [prstat\(1M\)](#), [route\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [ifconfig\(1M\)](#)

Name fmadm – fault management configuration tool

Synopsis fmadm [-q] [*subcommand* [*arguments*]]

Description The fmadm utility can be used by administrators and service personnel to view and modify system configuration parameters maintained by the Solaris Fault Manager, [fmd\(1M\)](#). fmd receives telemetry information relating to problems detected by the system software, diagnoses these problems, and initiates proactive self-healing activities such as disabling faulty components.

fmadm can be used to:

- view the set of diagnosis engines and agents that are currently participating in fault management,
- view the list of system components that have been diagnosed as faulty, and
- perform administrative tasks related to these entities.

The Fault Manager attempts to automate as many activities as possible, so use of fmadm is typically not required. When the Fault Manager needs help from a human administrator, service repair technician, or Sun, it produces a message indicating its needs. It also refers you to a knowledge article on Sun's web site, <http://www.sun.com/msg/>. The web site might ask you to use fmadm or one of the other fault management utilities to gather more information or perform additional tasks. The documentation for [fmd\(1M\)](#), [fmdump\(1M\)](#), and [fmstat\(1M\)](#) describe more about tools to observe fault management activities.

The fmadm utility requires the user to possess the SYS_CONFIG privilege. Refer to the [System Administration Guide: Security Services](#) for more information about how to configure Solaris privileges. The fmadm load subcommand requires that the user possess all privileges.

SUBCOMMANDS fmadm accepts the following subcommands. Some of the subcommands accept or require additional options and operands:

fmadm acquit *fmri* | *label* [*uuid*]

Notify the Fault Manager that the specified resource is not to be considered to be a suspect in the fault event identified by *uuid*, or if no UUID is specified, then in any fault or faults that have been detected. The fmadm acquit subcommand should be used only at the direction of a documented Sun repair procedure. Administrators might need to apply additional commands to re-enable a previously faulted resource.

fmadm acquit *uuid*

Notify the Fault Manager that the fault event identified by *uuid* can be safely ignored. The fmadm acquit subcommand should be used only at the direction of a documented Sun repair procedure. Administrators might need to apply additional commands to re-enable any previously faulted resources.

fmadm config

Display the configuration of the Fault Manager itself, including the module name, version, and description of each component module. Fault Manager modules provide services such as automated diagnosis, self-healing, and messaging for hardware and software present on the system.

fmadm faulty [-afgiprsv] [-n *max*] [-u *uid*]

Display status information for resources that the Fault Manager currently believes to be faulty.

The following options are supported:

- a Display all faults. By default, the `fmadm faulty` command only lists output for resources that are currently present and faulty. If you specify the `-a` option, all resource information cached by the Fault Manager is listed, including faults which have been automatically corrected or where no recovery action is needed. The listing includes information for resources that might no longer be present in the system.
- f Display faulty `fru`'s (Field replaceable units).
- g Group together faults which have the same `fru`, class and fault message.
- i Display persistent cache identifier for each resource in the Fault Manager.
- n *max* If faults or resources are grouped together with the `-a` or `-g` options, limit the output to *max* entries.
- p Pipe output through pager with form feed between each fault.
- r Display Fault Management Resource with their Identifier (FMRI) and their fault management state.
- s Display 1 line fault summary for each fault event.
- u *uid* Only display fault with given *uid*.
- v Display full output.

The percentage certainty is displayed if a fault has multiple suspects, either of different classes or on different `fru`'s. If more than one resource is on the same `fru` and it is not 100% certain that the fault is associated with the `fru`, the maximum percentage certainty of the possible suspects on the `fru` is displayed.

The Fault Manager associates the following states with every resource for which telemetry information has been received:

- ok The resource is present and in use and has no known problems so far as the Fault Manager is concerned.

unknown	The resource is not present or not usable but has no known problems. This might indicate the resource has been disabled or deconfigured by an administrator. Consult appropriate management tools for more information.
faulted	The resource is present but is not usable because one or more problems have been diagnosed by the Fault Manager. The resource has been disabled to prevent further damage to the system.
degraded	The resource is present and usable, but one or more problems have been diagnosed in the resource by the Fault Manager. If all affected resources are in the same state, this is reflected in the message at the end of the list. Otherwise the state is given after each affected resource.
fmadm flush <i>fmri</i>	Flush the information cached by the Fault Manager for the specified resource, named by its FMRI. This subcommand should only be used when indicated by a documented Sun repair procedure. Typically, the use of this command is not necessary as the Fault Manager keeps its cache up-to-date automatically. If a faulty resource is flushed from the cache, administrators might need to apply additional commands to enable the specified resource.
fmadm load <i>path</i>	Load the specified Fault Manager module. <i>path</i> must be an absolute path and must refer to a module present in one of the defined directories for modules. Typically, the use of this command is not necessary as the Fault Manager loads modules automatically when Solaris initially boots or as needed.
fmadm unload <i>module</i>	Unload the specified Fault Manager module. Specify <i>module</i> using the basename listed in the <code>fmadm config</code> output. Typically, the use of this command is not necessary as the Fault Manager loads and unloads modules automatically based on the system configuration
fmadm repaired <i>fmri</i> <i>label</i>	Notify the Fault Manager that a repair procedure has been carried out on the specified resource. The <code>fmadm repaired</code> subcommand should be used only at the direction of a documented Sun repair procedure. Administrators might need to apply additional commands to re-enable a previously faulted resource.

<code>fmadm replaced <i>fmri</i> <i>label</i></code>	Notify the Fault Manager that the specified resource has been replaced. This command should be used in those cases where the Fault Manager is unable to automatically detect the replacement. The <code>fmadm replaced</code> subcommand should be used only at the direction of a documented Sun repair procedure. Administrators might need to apply additional commands to re-enable a previously faulted resource.
<code>fmadm reset [-s <i>serd</i>] <i>module</i></code>	Reset the specified Fault Manager module or module subcomponent. If the <code>-s</code> option is present, the specified Soft Error Rate Discrimination (SERD) engine is reset within the module. If the <code>-s</code> option is not present, the entire module is reset and all persistent state associated with the module is deleted. The <code>fmadm reset</code> subcommand should only be used at the direction of a documented Sun repair procedure. The use of this command is typically not necessary as the Fault Manager manages its modules automatically.
<code>fmadm rotate errlog fltlog</code>	The <code>rotate</code> subcommand is a helper command for logadm(1M) , so that <code>logadm</code> can rotate live log files correctly. It is not intended to be invoked directly. Use one of the following commands to cause the appropriate logfile to be rotated, if the current one is not zero in size: <pre># logadm -p now -s 1b /var/fm/fmd/errlog # logadm -p now -s 1b /var/fm/fmd/fltlog</pre>

Options The following options are supported:

- `-q` Set quiet mode. `fmadm` does not produce messages indicating the result of successful operations to standard output.

Operands The following operands are supported:

- `cmd` The name of a subcommand listed in SUBCOMMANDS.
- `args` One or more options or arguments appropriate for the selected *subcommand*, as described in SUBCOMMANDS.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 An error occurred. Errors include a failure to communicate with `fmd` or insufficient privileges to perform the requested operation.
- 2 Invalid command-line options were specified.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWfmd
Interface Stability	See below.

The command-line options are Committed. The human-readable output is not-an-interface.

See Also [fmd\(1M\)](#), [fmdump\(1M\)](#), [fmstat\(1M\)](#), [logadm\(1M\)](#), [syslogd\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

System Administration Guide: Security Services

<http://www.sun.com/msg/>

Name fmd – fault manager daemon

Synopsis /usr/lib/fm/fmd/fmd [-V] [-f *file*] [-o *opt=val*] [-R *dir*]

Description fmd is a daemon that runs in the background on each Solaris system. fmd receives telemetry information relating to problems detected by the system software, diagnoses these problems, and initiates proactive self-healing activities such as disabling faulty components. When appropriate, the fault manager also sends a message to the [syslogd\(1M\)](#) service to notify an administrator that a problem has been detected. The message directs administrators to a knowledge article on Sun's web site, <http://www.sun.com/msg/>, which explains more about the problem impact and appropriate responses.

Each problem diagnosed by the fault manager is assigned a Universal Unique Identifier (UUID). The UUID uniquely identifies this particular problem across any set of systems. The [fmdump\(1M\)](#) utility can be used to view the list of problems diagnosed by the fault manager, along with their UUIDs and knowledge article message identifiers. The [fmadm\(1M\)](#) utility can be used to view the resources on the system believed to be faulty. The [fmstat\(1M\)](#) utility can be used to report statistics kept by the fault manager. The fault manager is started automatically when Solaris boots, so it is not necessary to use the fmd command directly. Sun's web site explains more about what capabilities are currently available for the fault manager on Solaris.

Options The following options are supported

- f *file* Read the specified configuration *file* prior to searching for any of the default fault manager configuration files.
- o *opt=value* Set the specified fault manager option to the specified value. Fault manager options are currently a Private interface; see [attributes\(5\)](#) for information about Private interfaces.
- R *dir* Use the specified root directory for all pathnames evaluated by the fault manager, instead of the default root (/).
- V Print the fault manager's version to stdout and exit.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion
- 1 An error occurred which prevented the fault manager from initializing, such as failure to open the telemetry transport.
- 2 Invalid command-line options were specified.

Files

/etc/fm/fmd	Fault manager configuration directory
/usr/lib/fm/fmd	Fault manager library directory
/var/fm/fmd	Fault manager log directory

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWfmd
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [fmadm\(1M\)](#), [fmdump\(1M\)](#), [fmstat\(1M\)](#), [syslogd\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

<http://www.sun.com/msg/>

Notes The Fault Manager is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/fmd:default
```

The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command. Administrators should not disable the Fault Manager service.

Name fmdump – fault management log viewer

Synopsis fmdump [-efmvV] [-c *class*] [-R *dir*] [-t *time*] [-T *time*]
[-u *uid*] [-n *name*[.*name*]*[=*value*]] [*file*]

Description The fmdump utility can be used to display the contents of any of the log files associated with the Solaris Fault Manager, [fmd\(1M\)](#). The Fault Manager runs in the background on each Solaris system. It receives telemetry information relating to problems detected by the system software, diagnoses these problems, and initiates proactive self-healing activities such as disabling faulty components.

The Fault Manager maintains two sets of log files for use by administrators and service personnel:

error log A log which records error telemetry, the symptoms of problems detected by the system.

fault log A log which records fault diagnosis information, the problems believed to explain these symptoms.

By default, fmdump displays the contents of the fault log, which records the result of each diagnosis made by the fault manager or one of its component modules.

An example of a default fmdump display follows:

```
# fmdump
TIME                UUID                SUNW-MSG- ID
Dec 28 13:01:27.3919 bf36f0ea-9e47-42b5-fc6f-c0d979c4c8f4 FMD-8000-11
Dec 28 13:01:49.3765 3a186292-3402-40ff-b5ae-810601be337d FMD-8000-11
Dec 28 13:02:59.4448 58107381-1985-48a4-b56f-91d8a617ad83 FMD-8000-0W
...
```

Each problem recorded in the fault log is identified by:

- The time of its diagnosis
- A Universal Unique Identifier (UUID) that can be used to uniquely identify this particular problem across any set of systems
- A message identifier that can be used to access a corresponding knowledge article located at Sun's web site, <http://www.sun.com/msg/>

If a problem requires action by a human administrator or service technician or affects system behavior, the Fault Manager also issues a human-readable message to [syslogd\(1M\)](#). This message provides a summary of the problem and a reference to the knowledge article on the Sun web site, <http://www.sun.com/msg/>.

You can use the `-v` and `-V` options to expand the display from a single-line summary to increased levels of detail for each event recorded in the log. The `-c`, `-t`, `-T`, and `-u` options can be used to filter the output by selecting only those events that match the specified *class*, range of times, or *uuid*.

If more than one filter option is present on the command-line, the options combine to display only those events that are selected by the logical AND of the options. If more than one instance of the same filter option is present on the command-line, the like options combine to display any events selected by the logical OR of the options. For example, the command:

```
# fmdump -u uuid1 -u uuid2 -t 02Dec03
```

selects events whose attributes are (uuid1 OR uuid2) AND (time on or after 02Dec03).

Options The following options are supported:

`-c class`

Select events that match the specified class. The class argument can use the glob pattern matching syntax described in [sh\(1\)](#). The class represents a hierarchical classification string indicating the type of telemetry event. More information about Sun's telemetry protocol is available at Sun's web site, <http://www.sun.com/msg/>.

`-e`

Display events from the fault management error log instead of the fault log. This option is shorthand for specifying the pathname of the error log file.

The error log file contains Private telemetry information used by Sun's automated diagnosis software. This information is recorded to facilitate post-mortem analysis of problems and event replay, and should not be parsed or relied upon for the development of scripts and other tools. See [attributes\(5\)](#) for information about Sun's rules for Private interfaces.

`-f`

Follow the growth of the log file by waiting for additional data. `fmdump` enters an infinite loop where it will sleep for a second, attempt to read and format new data from the log file, and then go back to sleep. This loop can be terminated at any time by sending an interrupt (Control-C).

`-m`

Print the localized diagnosis message associated with each entry in the fault log.

`-n name[.name]*[=value]`

Select fault log or error log events, depending on the `-e` option, that have properties with a matching name (and optionally a matching value). For string properties the value can be a regular expression match. Regular expression syntax is described in the EXTENDED REGULAR EXPRESSIONS section of the [regex\(5\)](#) manual page. Be careful when using the characters:

```
$ * { ^ | ( ) \
```

...or a regular expression, because these are meaningful to the shell. It is safest to enclose any of these in single quotes. For numeric properties, the value can be octal, hex, or decimal.

-R *dir*

Use the specified root directory for the log files accessed by fmdump, instead of the default root (/).

-t *time*

Select events that occurred at or after the specified time. The time can be specified using any of the following forms:

mm/dd/yy hh:mm:ss

Month, day, year, hour in 24-hour format, minute, and second. Any amount of whitespace can separate the date and time. The argument should be quoted so that the shell interprets the two strings as a single argument.

mm/dd/yy hh:mm

Month, day, year, hour in 24-hour format, and minute. Any amount of whitespace can separate the date and time. The argument should be quoted so that the shell interprets the two strings as a single argument.

mm/dd/yy

12:00:00AM on the specified month, day, and year.

ddMonyy hh:mm:ss

Day, month name, year, hour in 24-hour format, minute, and second. Any amount of whitespace can separate the date and time. The argument should be quoted so that the shell interprets the two strings as a single argument.

ddMonyy hh:mm

Day, month name, year, hour in 24-hour format, and minute. Any amount of whitespace can separate the date and time. The argument should be quoted so that the shell interprets the two strings as a single argument.

Mon dd hh:mm:ss

Month, day, hour in 24-hour format, minute, and second of the current year.

yyyy-mm-dd [T hh:mm[:ss]]

Year, month, day, and optional hour in 24-hour format, minute, and second. The second, or hour, minute, and second, can be optionally omitted.

ddMonyy

12:00:00AM on the specified day, month name, and year.

hh:mm:ss

Hour in 24-hour format, minute, and second of the current day.

hh:mm

Hour in 24-hour format and minute of the current day.

Tns | *Tnsec*

T nanoseconds ago where *T* is an integer value specified in base 10.

Tus | *Tusec*

T microseconds ago where *T* is an integer value specified in base 10.

Tms | *Tmsec*

T milliseconds ago where *T* is an integer value specified in base 10.

Ts | *Tsec*

T seconds ago where *T* is an integer value specified in base 10.

Tm | *Tmin*

T minutes ago where *T* is an integer value specified in base 10.

Th | *Thour*

T hours ago where *T* is an integer value specified in base 10.

Td | *Tday*

T days ago where *T* is an integer value specified in base 10.

You can append a decimal fraction of the form *.n* to any *-t* option argument to indicate a fractional number of seconds beyond the specified time.

-T time

Select events that occurred at or before the specified time. *time* can be specified using any of the time formats described for the *-t* option.

-u uuid

Select fault diagnosis events that exactly match the specified *uuid*. Each diagnosis is associated with a Universal Unique Identifier (UUID) for identification purposes. The *-u* option can be combined with other options such as *-v* to show all of the details associated with a particular diagnosis.

If the *-e* option and *-u* option are both present, the error events that are cross-referenced by the specified diagnosis are displayed.

-v

Display verbose event detail. The event display is enlarged to show additional common members of the selected events.

-V

Display very verbose event detail. The event display is enlarged to show every member of the name-value pair list associated with each event. In addition, for fault logs, the event display includes a list of cross-references to the corresponding errors that were associated with the diagnosis.

Operands The following operands are supported:

file Specifies an alternate log file to display instead of the system fault log. The *fmdump* utility determines the type of the specified log automatically and produces appropriate

output for the selected log.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Retrieving Given Class from fmd Log

Use any of the following commands to retrieve information about a specified class from the fmd log. The complete class name is `ereport.io.ddi.context`.

```
# fmdump -Ve -c 'ereport.io.ddi.context'
# fmdump -Ve -c 'ereport.*.context'
# fmdump -Ve -n 'class=ereport.io.ddi.context'
# fmdump -Ve -n 'class=ereport.*.context'
```

Any of the preceding commands produces the following output:

```
Oct 06 2007 11:53:20.975021712 ereport.io.ddi.context
  nvlist version: 0
    class = ereport.io.ddi.context
    ena = 0x1b03a15ecf00001
    detector = (embedded nvlist)
      nvlist version: 0
        version = 0x0
        scheme = dev
        device-path = /
      (end detector)

    __ttl = 0x1
    __tod = 0x470706b0 0x3a1da690
```

EXAMPLE 2 Retrieving Specific Detector Device Path from fmd Log

The following command retrieves a detector device path from the fmd log.

```
# fmdump -Ve -n 'detector.device-path=.*disk@1,0$'
Oct 06 2007 12:04:28.065660760 ereport.io.scsi.disk.rqs
  nvlist version: 0
    class = ereport.io.scsi.disk.rqs
    ena = 0x453ff3732400401
    detector = (embedded nvlist)
      nvlist version: 0
        version = 0x0
        scheme = dev
        device-path = /pci@0,0/pci1000,3060@3/disk@1,0
      (end detector)

    __ttl = 0x1
    __tod = 0x4707094c 0x3e9e758
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion. All records in the log file were examined successfully.
- 1 A fatal error occurred. This prevented any log file data from being examined, such as failure to open the specified file.
- 2 Invalid command-line options were specified.
- 3 The log file was opened successfully, but one or more log file records were not displayed, either due to an I/O error or because the records themselves were malformed. `fmdump` issues a warning message for each record that could not be displayed, and then continues on and attempts to display other records.

Files

<code>/var/fm/fmd</code>	Fault management log directory
<code>/var/fm/fmd/errlog</code>	Fault management error log
<code>/var/fm/fmd/fltlog</code>	Fault management fault log

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWfmd
Interface Stability	See below.

The command-line options are Evolving. The human-readable error log output is Private. The human-readable fault log output is Evolving.

See Also [sh\(1\)](#), [fmadm\(1M\)](#), [fmd\(1M\)](#), [fmstat\(1M\)](#), [syslogd\(1M\)](#), [libexacct\(3LIB\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [regex\(5\)](#)

System Administration Guide: Security Services

<http://www.sun.com/msg/>

Notes Fault logs contain references to records stored in error logs that can be displayed using `fmdump -V` to understand the errors that were used in the diagnosis of a particular fault. These links are preserved if an error log is renamed as part of log rotation. They can be broken by removing an error log file, or by moving it to another filesystem directory. `fmdump` can not display error information for such broken links. It continues to display any and all information present in the fault log.

Name fmstat – report fault management module statistics

Synopsis fmstat [-astZ] [-d u | d] [-m *module*] [*interval* [*count*]]

Description The `fmstat` utility can be used by administrators and service personnel to report statistics associated with the Solaris Fault Manager, [fmd\(1M\)](#) and its associated set of modules. The Fault Manager runs in the background on each Solaris system. It receives telemetry information relating to problems detected by the system software, diagnoses these problems, and initiates proactive self-healing activities such as disabling faulty components.

You can use `fmstat` to view statistics for diagnosis engines and agents that are currently participating in fault management. The documentation for [fmd\(1M\)](#), [fmadm\(1M\)](#), and [fmdump\(1M\)](#) describes more about tools to observe fault management activities.

If the `-m` option is present or the `-t` option is present, `fmstat` reports any statistics kept by the specified fault management module. The module list can be obtained using `fmadm config`.

If the `-m` option is not present, `fmstat` reports the following statistics for each of its client modules:

<code>module</code>	The name of the fault management module, as reported by <code>fmadm config</code> .
<code>ev_recv</code>	The number of telemetry events received by the module.
<code>ev_acpt</code>	The number of events accepted by the module as relevant to a diagnosis.
<code>wait</code>	The average number of telemetry events waiting to be examined by the module.
<code>svc_t</code>	The average service time for telemetry events received by the module, in milliseconds.
<code>%w</code>	The percentage of time that there were telemetry events waiting to be examined by the module.
<code>%b</code>	The percentage of time that the module was busy processing telemetry events.
<code>open</code>	The number of active cases (open problem investigations) owned by the module.
<code>solve</code>	The total number of cases solved by this module since it was loaded.
<code>memsz</code>	The amount of dynamic memory currently allocated by this module.
<code>bufsz</code>	The amount of persistent buffer space currently allocated by this module.

The `fmstat` utility requires the user to possess the `SYS_CONFIG` privilege. Refer to the [System Administration Guide: Security Services](#) for more information about how to configure Solaris privileges.

Options The following options are supported:

-
- a Print all statistics for a module, including those kept on its behalf by `fmd`. If the `-a` option is not present, only those statistics kept by the module are reported. If the `-a` option is used without the `-m module`, a set of global statistics associated with `fmd` are displayed.
 - d u | d Display a time stamp.
Specify `u` for a printed representation of the internal representation of time. See [time\(2\)](#). Specify `d` for standard date format. See [date\(1\)](#).
 - m *module* Print a report on the statistics associated with the specified fault management module, instead of the default statistics report. Modules can publish an arbitrary set of statistics to help Sun service the fault management software itself. The module statistics constitute a Private interface. See [attributes\(5\)](#) for information on Sun's rules for Private interfaces. Scripts should not be written that depend upon the values of fault management module statistics as they can change without notice.
 - s Print a report on Soft Error Rate Discrimination (SERD) engines associated with the module instead of the default module statistics report. A SERD engine is a construct used by fault management software to determine if a statistical threshold measured as N events in some time T has been exceeded. The `-s` option can only be used in combination with the `-m` option.
 - t Print a report on the statistics associated with each fault management event transport. Each fault management module can provide the implementation of one or more event transports.
 - T Print a table of the authority information associated with each fault management event transport. If the `-m` option is present, only transports associated with the specified module are displayed.
 - z Omit statistics with a zero value from the report associated with the specified fault management module. The `-z` option can only be used in combination with the `-m` option.

Operands The following operands are supported:

- count* Print only count reports, and then exit.
- interval* Print a new report every *interval* seconds.

If no *interval* and no *count* are specified, a single report is printed and `fmstat` exits. If an *interval* is specified but no *count* is specified, `fmstat` prints reports every *interval* seconds indefinitely until the command is interrupted.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.

- 1 A fatal error occurred. A fatal error could be the failure to communicate with `fmd(1M)`. It could also be that insufficient privileges were available to perform the requested operation.
- 2 Invalid command-line options were specified.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWfmd
Interface Stability	See below.

The command-line options are Evolving. The human-readable default report is Unstable. The human-readable module report is Private.

See Also [fmadm\(1M\)](#), [fmd\(1M\)](#), [fmdump\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

System Administration Guide: Security Services

Name fmthard – populate label on hard disks

Synopsis

```
SPARC fmthard -d data | -n volume_name | -s datafile [-i] /dev/rdisk/c?
      [t?] d?s2

x86   fmthard -d data | -n volume_name | -s datafile [-i] /dev/rdisk/c?
      [t?] d?s2
```

Description The `fmthard` command updates the VTOC (Volume Table of Contents) on hard disks and, on x86 systems, adds boot information to the Solaris `fdisk` partition. One or more of the options `-s datafile`, `-d data`, or `-n volume_name` must be used to request modifications to the disk label. To print disk label contents, see [prtvtoc\(1M\)](#). The `/dev/rdisk/c?[t?]d?s2` file must be the character special file of the device where the new label is to be installed. On x86 systems, [fdisk\(1M\)](#) must be run on the drive before `fmthard`.

If you are using an x86 system, note that the term “partition” in this page refers to *slices* within the x86 `fdisk` partition on x86 machines. Do not confuse the partitions created by `fmthard` with the partitions created by `fdisk`.

Options The following options are supported:

`-d data`

The *data* argument of this option is a string representing the information for a particular partition in the current VTOC. The string must be of the format *part:tag:flag:start:size* where *part* is the partition number, *tag* is the ID TAG of the partition, *flag* is the set of permission flags, *start* is the starting sector number of the partition, and *size* is the number of sectors in the partition. See the description of the *datafile* below for more information on these fields.

`-i`

This option allows the command to create the desired VTOC table, but prints the information to standard output instead of modifying the VTOC on the disk.

`-n volume_name`

This option is used to give the disk a *volume_name* up to 8 characters long.

`-s datafile`

This option is used to populate the VTOC according to a *datafile* created by the user. If the *datafile* is `-` (a hyphen), `fmthard` reads from standard input. The *datafile* format is described below. This option causes all of the disk partition timestamp fields to be set to zero.

Every VTOC generated by `fmthard` will also have partition 2, by convention, that corresponds to the whole disk. If the input in *datafile* does not specify an entry for partition 2, a default partition 2 entry will be created automatically in VTOC with the tag `V_BACKUP` and size equal to the full size of the disk.

The *datafile* contains one specification line for each partition, starting with partition 0. Each line is delimited by a new-line character (`\n`). If the first character of a line is an asterisk (*), the line is treated as a comment. Each line is composed of entries that are position-dependent, separated by white space and having the following format:

```
partition tag flag starting_sector size_in_sectors
```

where the entries have the following values:

partition

The partition number. Currently, for Solaris SPARC, a disk can have up to 8 partitions, 0–7. Even though the *partition* field has 4 bits, only 3 bits are currently used. For x86, all 4 bits are used to allow slices 0–15. Each Solaris `fdisk` partition can have up to 16 slices.

tag

The partition tag: a decimal number. The following are reserved codes: 0 (V_UNASSIGNED), 1 (V_BOOT), 2 (V_ROOT), 3 (V_SWAP), 4 (V_USR), 5 (V_BACKUP), 6 (V_STAND), 7 (V_VAR), and 8 (V_HOME).

flag

The flag allows a partition to be flagged as unmountable or read only, the masks being: V_UNMNT 0x01, and V_RDONLY 0x10. For mountable partitions use 0x00.

starting_sector

The sector number (decimal) on which the partition starts.

size_in_sectors

The number (decimal) of sectors occupied by the partition.

You can save the output of a `prtvtoc` command to a file, edit the file, and use it as the *datafile* argument to the `-s` option.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [uname\(1\)](#), [format\(1M\)](#), [prtvtoc\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

x86 Only [fdisk\(1M\)](#), [installgrub\(1M\)](#)

Notes Special care should be exercised when overwriting an existing VTOC, as incorrect entries could result in current data being inaccessible. As a precaution, save the old VTOC.

For disks under two terabytes, `fmthard` cannot write a VTOC on an unlabeled disk. Use [format\(1M\)](#) for this purpose.

Name format – disk partitioning and maintenance utility

Synopsis format [-f *command-file*] [-l *log-file*] [-x *data-file*]
 [-d *disk-name*] [-t *disk-type*] [-p *partition-name*]
 [-s] [-m] [-M] [-e] [*disk-list*]

Description format enables you to format, label, repair, and analyze disks on your system. Unlike previous disk maintenance programs, format runs under SunOS. Because there are limitations to what can be done to the system disk while the system is running, format is also supported within the memory-resident system environment. For most applications, however, running format under SunOS is the more convenient approach.

format first uses the disk list defined in *data-file* if the -x option is used. format then checks for the FORMAT_PATH environment variable, a colon-separated list of filenames and/or directories. In the case of a directory, format searches for a file named format.dat in that directory; a filename should be an absolute pathname, and is used without change. format adds all disk and partition definitions in each specified file to the working set. Multiple identical definitions are silently ignored. If FORMAT_PATH is not set, the path defaults to /etc/format.dat.

disk-list is a list of disks in the form c?t?d? or /dev/rdisk/c?t?d?s?. With the latter form, shell wildcard specifications are supported. For example, specifying /dev/rdisk/c2* causes format to work on all drives connected to controller c2 only. If no *disk-list* is specified, format lists all the disks present in the system that can be administered by format.

Removable media devices are listed only when users execute format in expert mode (option -e). This feature is provided for backward compatibility. Use [rmformat\(1\)](#) for rewritable removable media devices.

Options The following options are supported:

- d *disk-name* Specify which disk should be made current upon entry into the program. The disk is specified by its logical name (for instance, -d c0t1d0). This can also be accomplished by specifying a single disk in the disk list.
- e Enable SCSI expert menu. Note this option is not recommended for casual use.
- f *command-file* Take command input from *command-file* rather than the standard input. The file must contain commands that appear just as they would if they had been entered from the keyboard. With this option, format does not issue continue? prompts; there is no need to specify y(es) or n(o) answers in the *command-file*. In non-interactive mode, format does not initially expect the input of a disk selection number. The user must specify the current working disk with the -d *disk-name* option when format is invoked, or specify disk and the disk selection number in the *command-file*.

-l <i>log-file</i>	Log a transcript of the format session to the indicated <i>log-file</i> , including the standard input, the standard output and the standard error.
-m	Enable extended messages. Provides more detailed information in the event of an error.
-M	Enable extended and diagnostic messages. Provides extensive information on the state of a SCSI device's mode pages, during formatting.
-p <i>partition-name</i>	Specify the partition table for the disk which is current upon entry into the program. The table is specified by its name as defined in the data file. This option can be used only if a disk is being made current, and its type is either specified or available from the disk label.
-s	Silent. Suppress all of the standard output. Error messages are still displayed. This is generally used in conjunction with the -f option.
-t <i>disk-type</i>	Specify the type of disk which is current upon entry into the program. A disk's type is specified by name in the data file. This option can only be used if a disk is being made current as described above.
-x <i>data-file</i>	Use the list of disks contained in <i>data-file</i> .

Usage When you invoke format with no options or with the -e, -l, -m, -M, or -s options, the program displays a numbered list of available disks and prompts you to specify a disk by list number. If the machine has more than 10 disks, press SPACE to see the next screenful of disks.

You can specify a disk by list number even if the disk is not displayed in the current screenful. For example, if the current screen shows disks 11-20, you can enter 25 to specify the twenty-fifth disk on the list. If you enter a number for a disk that is not currently displayed, format prompts you to verify your selection. If you enter a number from the displayed list, format silently accepts your selection.

After you specify a disk, format displays its main menu. This menu enables you to perform the following tasks:

analyze	Run read, write, compare tests, and data purge. The data purge function implements the National Computer Security Center Guide to Understanding Data Remnance (NCSC-TG-025 version 2) Overwriting Algorithm. See NOTES.
backup	Search for backup labels.
cache	Enable, disable, and query the state of the write cache and read cache. This menu item only appears when format is invoked with the -e option, and is only supported on SCSI devices..
current	Display the device name, the disk geometry, and the pathname to the disk device.

defect	Retrieve and print defect lists. This option is supported only on SCSI devices. IDE disks perform automatic defect management. Upon using the defect option on an IDE disk, you receive the message: Controller does not support defect management or disk supports automatic defect management.
disk	Choose the disk that will be used in subsequent operations (known as the current disk.)
fdisk	Run the <code>fdisk(1M)</code> program to create a <code>fdisk</code> partition for Solaris software (x86 based systems only).
format	Format and verify the current disk. This option is supported only on SCSI devices. IDE disks are pre-formatted by the manufacturer. Upon using the format option on an IDE disk, you receive the message: Cannot format this drive. Please use your manufacturer-supplied formatting utility.
inquiry	Display the vendor, product name, and revision level of the current drive.
label	Write a new label to the current disk.
partition	Create and modify slices.
quit	Exit the format menu.
repair	Repair a specific block on the disk.
save	Save new disk and slice information.
type	Select (define) a disk type.
verify	Read and display labels. Print information such as the number of cylinders, alternate cylinders, heads, sectors, and the partition table.
volname	Label the disk with a new eight character volume name.

Environment Variables `FORMAT_PATH` a colon-separated list of filenames and/or directories of disk and partition definitions. If a directory is specified, `format` searches for the file `format.dat` in that directory.

Files `/etc/format.dat` default data file

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [fmthard\(1M\)](#), [prtvtoc\(1M\)](#), [rmformat\(1\)](#), [format.dat\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [sd\(7D\)](#)

System Administration Guide: Basic Administration

x86 Only [fdisk\(1M\)](#)

Warnings When the format function is selected to format the Maxtor 207MB disk, the following message displays:

```
Mode sense page(4) reports rpm value as 0, adjusting it to 3600
```

This is a drive bug that may also occur with older third party drives. The above message is not an error; the drive will still function correctly.

Cylinder 0 contains the partition table (disk label), which can be overwritten if used in a raw disk partition by third party software.

format supports writing EFI-compliant disk labels in order to support disks or LUNs with capacities greater than one terabyte. However, care should be exercised since many software components, such as filesystems and volume managers, are still restricted to capacities of one terabyte or less. See the *System Administration Guide: Basic Administration* for additional information.

By default, on an unlabeled disk, EFI labels will be written on disks larger than 2 TB. When format is invoked with the -e option, on writing the label, the label type can be chosen. Booting is not currently supported on a disk with an EFI label.

Notes format provides a help facility you can use whenever format is expecting input. You can request help about what information is expected by simply entering a question mark (?) and format prints a brief description of what type of input is needed. If you enter a ? at the menu prompt, a list of available commands is displayed.

For SCSI disks, formatting is done with both Primary and Grown defects list by default. However, if only Primary list is extracted in defect menu before formatting, formatting will be done with Primary list only.

Changing the state of the caches is only supported on SCSI devices, and not all SCSI devices support changing or saving the state of the caches.

The NCSC-TG-025 algorithm for overwriting meets the DoD 5200.28-M (ADP Security Manual) Eraser Procedures specification. The NIST Guidelines for Media Sanitization (NIST SP 800-88) also reference this algorithm.

Name fpsd – Fp-scrubber daemon

Synopsis /usr/lib/fps/fpsd

Description fpsd is a user-level daemon that periodically runs non-intrusive tests to validate proper functioning of FPU (Floating Point Unit) hardware in the system. A fault management action is initiated by means of [fmd\(1M\)](#), in case an error is detected by the test.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0
Successful completion.

non-zero
An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWfsu
Interface Stability	Uncommitted

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [fmd\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Notes The fpsd service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/fpsd:default
```

You can use [svccfg\(1M\)](#) to change the default fpsd behavior:

Property Name	Type	Description
-----	----	-----
config/exclude_cpus	astring	comma delimited list of CPU IDs to be excluded from proactive testing.

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Disabling the service can increase system's vulnerability to silent data corruption, if a fault were to develop in an FPU within the system.

Name fruadm – prints and updates customer data associated with FRUs

Synopsis /usr/platform/sun4u/sbin/fruadm
/usr/platform/sun4u/sbin/fruadm -l
/usr/platform/sun4u/sbin/fruadm [-r] *path* [*text*]

Description fruadm prints or sets the customer data for Field-Replaceable Units (FRUs).

Without arguments, fruadm prints the paths of all FRU ID-capable FRUs (containers) in the system, along with the contents of the customer data record, if present, for each such FRU; for FRUs without customer data, fruadm prints only the container's path.

Only a privileged user can create or update data in containers. The privileges required to perform these write operations are hardware dependent. Typically, a default system configuration restricts write operations to the superuser or to the platform-administrator user.

Options The following options are supported:

- l List the system's frutree paths.
- r Recursively display or update the data for all containers rooted at the argument *path*.

Operands The following operands are supported:

path A full or partial system frutree path for or under which to print or set the customer data. The first field of each line of output of fruadm -l gives the valid full frutree paths for the system.

Paths can include shell meta-characters; such paths should be quoted appropriately for the user's shell. For partial paths, the first matching full path is selected for display or update. Without the -r option, the path must be that of a container; with the -r option, all containers (if any) under *path* will be selected.

text Up to 80 characters of text set as the customer data. If the text contains white space or shell metacharacters, it should be quoted appropriately for the user's shell.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Displaying All Customer Data

The following example prints all customer data available from FRUs on the system. For containers with no customer data, only the containers' paths will be listed.

```
example% fruadm
```

EXAMPLE 2 Displaying Customer Data For a Single FRU

The following command prints the customer data, if present, for the specified FRU:

```
example% fruadm /frutree/chassis/system-board
```

EXAMPLE 3 Displaying Customer Data For a Single FRU

The following command prints the customer data, if present, for the first mem-module found:

```
example% fruadm mem-module
```

EXAMPLE 4 Setting Customer Data

The following example sets the customer data for a FRU:

```
example# fruadm system-board 'Asset Tag 123456'
```

EXAMPLE 5 Setting Customer Data

The following command sets the customer data for all FRUs under chassis:

```
example# fruadm -r /frutree/chassis "Property of XYZ, Inc."
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWfruip.u
Interface Stability	Unstable

See Also [prtfru\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name fsck – check and repair file systems

Synopsis fsck [-F *FSType*] [-m] [-V] [-v] [*special*] . . .

fsck [-F *FSType*] [-n | N | y | Y] [-V] [-v]
[-o *FSType-specific-options*] [*special*] . . .

Description fsck audits and interactively repairs inconsistent file system conditions. If the file system is inconsistent the default action for each correction is to wait for the user to respond yes or no. If the user does not have write permission fsck defaults to a no action. Some corrective actions will result in loss of data. The amount and severity of data loss can be determined from the diagnostic output.

FSType-specific-options are options specified in a comma-separated (with no intervening spaces) list of options or keyword-attribute pairs for interpretation by the *FSType*-specific module of the command.

special represents the character special device on which the file system resides, for example, /dev/rdisk/c1t0d0s7. Note: the character special device, not the block special device, should be used. fsck will not work if the block device is mounted.

If no *special* device is specified fsck checks the file systems listed in /etc/vfstab. Those entries in /etc/vfstab which have a character special device entry in the fsckdev field and have a non-zero numeric entry in the fsckpass field will be checked. Specifying -F *FSType* limits the file systems to be checked to those of the type indicated.

If *special* is specified, but -F is not, the file system type will be determined by looking for a matching entry in /etc/vfstab. If no entry is found, the default local file system type specified in /etc/default/fs will be used.

If a file system type supports parallel checking, for example, ufs, some file systems eligible for checking may be checked in parallel. Consult the file system-specific man page (for example, [fsck_ufs\(1M\)](#)) for more information.

Options The following generic options are supported:

-F *FSType*

Specify the file system type on which to operate.

-m

Check but do not repair. This option checks that the file system is suitable for mounting, returning the appropriate exit status. If the file system is ready for mounting, fsck displays a message such as:

```
ufs fsck: sanity check: /dev/rdisk/c0t3d0s1 okay
```

-n | -N

Assume a no response to all questions asked by fsck; do not open the file system for writing.

- V
Echo the expanded command line but do not execute the command. This option may be used to verify and to validate the command line.
- v
Enables verbose output. Might not be supported by all filesystem-specific fsck implementations.
- y | Y
Assume a yes response to all questions asked by fsck.
- o *specific-options*
These *specific-options* can be any combination of the following separated by commas (with no intervening spaces).
 - b=*n*
Use block *n* as the super block for the file system. Block 32 is always one of the alternate super blocks. Determine the location of other super blocks by running [newfs\(1M\)](#) with the -N*v* options specified.
 - c
If the file system is in the old (static table) format, convert it to the new (dynamic table) format. If the file system is in the new format, convert it to the old format provided the old format can support the file system configuration. In interactive mode, fsck will list the direction the conversion is to be made and ask whether the conversion should be done. If a negative answer is given, no further operations are done on the file system. In preen mode, the direction of the conversion is listed and done if possible without user interaction. Conversion in preen mode is best used when all the file systems are being converted at once. The format of a file system can be determined from the first line of output from [fstyp\(1M\)](#). Note: the c option is seldom used and is included only for compatibility with pre-4.1 releases. There is no guarantee that this option will be included in future releases.
 - f
Force checking of file systems regardless of the state of their super block clean flag.
 - p
Check and fix the file system non-interactively (“preen”). Exit immediately if there is a problem requiring intervention. This option is required to enable parallel file system checking.
 - w
Check writable file systems only.

Exit Status	<p>0 file system is unmounted and OK</p> <p>1 erroneous parameters are specified</p>
--------------------	--

- 32 file system is unmounted and needs checking (`fsck -m` only)
- 33 file system is already mounted
- 34 cannot stat device
- 35 a filesystem that is mounted read/write was modified – reboot
- 36 uncorrectable errors detected - terminate normally
- 37 a signal was caught during processing
- 39 uncorrectable errors detected - terminate immediately
- 40 file system is mounted read-only and is OK

Usage The `fsck` command is *large file aware* for UFS file systems, per the [largefile\(5\)](#) man page.

Files `/etc/default/fs`

default local file system type. Default values can be set for the following flags in `/etc/default/fs`. For example: `LOCAL=ufs`.

`LOCAL`

The default partition for a command if no `FSType` is specified.

`/etc/vfstab`

list of default parameters for each file system

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Committed

See Also [clri\(1M\)](#), [fsck_cachefs\(1M\)](#), [fsck_ufs\(1M\)](#), [fsdb_ufs\(1M\)](#), [fsirand\(1M\)](#), [fstyp\(1M\)](#), [mkfs\(1M\)](#), [mkfs_ufs\(1M\)](#), [mountall\(1M\)](#), [newfs\(1M\)](#), [reboot\(1M\)](#), [vfstab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#), [ufs\(7FS\)](#)

Warnings The operating system buffers file system data. Running `fsck` on a mounted file system can cause the operating system's buffers to become out of date with respect to the disk. For this reason, the file system should be *unmounted* when `fsck` is used. If this is not possible, care should be taken that the system is quiescent and that it is rebooted immediately after `fsck` is run. Quite often, however, this will not be sufficient. A panic will probably occur if running `fsck` on a file system modifies the file system.

Notes This command may not be supported for all *FSTypes*.

Starting with Solaris 9, `fsck` manages extended attribute data on the disk. (See [fsattr\(5\)](#) for a description of extended file attributes.) A file system with extended attributes can be mounted on versions of Solaris that are not attribute-aware (versions prior to Solaris 9), but the attributes will not be accessible and `fsck` will strip them from the files and place them in `lost+found`. Once the attributes have been stripped, the file system is completely stable on versions of Solaris that are not attribute-aware, but would be considered corrupted on attribute-aware versions. In the latter circumstance, run the attribute-aware `fsck` to stabilize the file system before using it in an attribute-aware environment.

Name fsck_cacheofs – check integrity of data cached with CacheFS

Synopsis fsck -F cacheofs [-m] [-o noclean] *cache_directory*

Description The CacheFS version of the fsck command checks the integrity of a cache directory. This utility corrects any CacheFS problems it finds by default. There is no interactive mode. The most likely invocation of fsck for CacheFS file systems is at boot time from an entry in the /etc/vfstab file. See [vfstab\(4\)](#).

Options The following options are supported:

- m Check, but do not repair.
- o noclean Force a check on the cache even if there is no reason to suspect there is a problem.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Using fsck_cacheofs to Force a Check on the Cache Directory

The following example forces a check on the cache directory /cache3:

```
example% fsck -F cacheofs -o noclean /cache3
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [cfsadmin\(1M\)](#), [fsck\(1M\)](#), [mount_cacheofs\(1M\)](#), [vfstab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name fsck_pcfs – file system consistency check and interactive repair

Synopsis fsck -F pcfs [*generic_options*] *special*

fsck -F pcfs [*generic_options*] [-o *specific_options*] *special*

Description The fsck utility audits and interactively repairs inconsistent conditions on file systems. *special* represents the character special device on which the file system resides, for example /dev/rdiskette. The character special device, not the block special device, should be used.

In the case of correcting serious inconsistencies, by default, fsck asks for confirmation before making a repair and waits for the operator to respond either yes or no. If the operator does not have write permission on the file system, fsck defaults to a -n (no corrections) action. See [fsck\(1M\)](#).

Repairing some file system inconsistencies may result in loss of data. The amount and severity of data loss may be determined from the diagnostic output.

When executed with the verify option (-o v), fsck_pcfs automatically scans the entire file system to verify that all of its allocation units are accessible. If it finds any units inaccessible, it updates the file allocation table (FAT) appropriately. It also updates any effected directory entries to reflect the problem. This directory update includes truncating the file at the point in its allocation chain where the file data is no longer accessible. Any remaining accessible allocation units become orphaned.

Orphaned chains of accessible allocation units are, with the operator's concurrence, linked back into the file system as files in the root directory. These files are assigned names of the form fileNNNN.chk, where the Ns are digits in the integral range from 0 through 9.

After successfully scanning and correcting any errors in the file system, fsck displays a summary of information about the file system. This summary includes the size of the file system in bytes, the number of bytes used in directories and individual files, and the number of available allocation units remaining in the file system.

Options *generic_options*

The following generic options are supported:

- m Check but do not repair. This option checks that the file system is suitable for mounting, returning the appropriate exit status. If the file system is ready for mounting, fsck displays a message such as:


```
pcfs fsck: sanity check:
/dev/rdiskette okay
```
- n | -N Assume a no response to all questions asked by fsck; do not open the file system for writing.
- V Echo the expanded command line, but do not execute the command. This option may be used to verify and to validate the command line.

- y | -Y Assume a yes response to all questions asked by fscck.
- o *specific_options* Specify pcfs file system specific options in a comma-separated list, in any combination, with no intervening spaces.
- v Verify all allocation units are accessible prior to correcting inconsistencies in the metadata.
- p Check and fix the file system non-interactively (preen). Exit immediately if there is a problem requiring intervention.
- w Check writable file systems only.
- Files** *special* The device which contains the pcfs. The device name for a diskette is specified as /dev/rdiskette0 for the first diskette drive, or /dev/rdiskette1 for a second diskette drive. A hard disk device or high-capacity removable device name must be qualified with a suffix to indicate the proper FDISK partition.

For example, in the names: /dev/rdisk/c0t0d0p0:c and /dev/rdisk/c0t4d0s2:c, the :c suffix indicates the first partition on the disk contains the pcfs.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWesu
Interface Stability	Stable

See Also [fscck\(1M\)](#), [fstyp\(1M\)](#), [fdisk\(1M\)](#), [mkfs\(1M\)](#), [mkfs_pcfs\(1M\)](#), [mountall\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [pcfs\(7FS\)](#),

Warnings The operating system buffers file system data. Running fscck on a mounted file system can cause the operating system's buffers to become out of date with respect to the disk. For this reason, the file system should be unmounted when fscck is used. If this is not possible, care should be taken that the system is quiescent and that it is rebooted immediately after fscck is run. Quite often, however, this is not sufficient. A panic will probably occur if running fscck on a file system modifies the file system.

Name fsck_udfs – file system consistency check and interactive repair

Synopsis fsck -F udfs [*generic_options*] [*special ...*]

fsck -F udfs [*generic_options*] [-o *specific_options*]
[*special ...*]

Description fsck audits and interactively repairs inconsistent conditions on file systems. A file system to be checked can be specified by giving the name of the block or character special device or by giving the name of its mount point if a matching entry exists in `/etc/vfstab`.

special represents the character special device, for example, `/dev/rdisk/c0t2d0s0`, on which the file system resides. The character special device, not the block special device should be used. fsck does not work on a mounted block device.

If no special device is specified, all udfs file systems specified in the `vfstab` file with a `fsckdev` entry are checked. If the `-p` (`preen`) option is specified, udfs file systems with an `fsckpass` number greater than 1 are checked in parallel. See [fsck\(1M\)](#).

In the case of correcting serious inconsistencies, by default, fsck asks for confirmation before making a repair and waits for the operator to respond with either `yes` or `no`. If the operator does not have write permission on the file system, fsck defaults to the `-n` (no corrections) option. See [fsck\(1M\)](#).

Repairing some file system inconsistencies can result in loss of data. The amount and severity of data loss can be determined from the diagnostic output.

fsck automatically corrects innocuous inconsistencies. It displays a message for each corrected inconsistency that identifies the nature of the correction which took place on the file system. After successfully correcting a file system, fsck prints the number of files on that file system and the number of used and free blocks.

Inconsistencies checked are as follows:

- Blocks claimed by more than one file or the free list
- Blocks claimed by a file or the free list outside the range of the file system
- Incorrect link counts in file entries
- Incorrect directory sizes
- Bad file entry format
- Blocks not accounted for anywhere
- Directory checks, file pointing to unallocated file entry and absence of a parent directory entry
- Descriptor checks, more blocks for files than there are in the file system
- Bad free block list format
- Total free block count incorrect

Options The following options are supported:

- generic_options* The following *generic_options* are supported:
- m Check but do not repair. This option checks to be sure that the file system is suitable for mounting, and returns the appropriate exit status. If the file system is ready for mounting, `fsck` displays a message such as:

```
udfs fsck: sanity check: /dev/rdsk/c0t2d0s0 okay
```
 - n | -N Assume a no response to all questions asked by `fsck`; do not open the file system for writing.
 - V Echo the expanded command line, but do not execute the command. This option can be used to verify and to validate the command line.
 - y | -Y Assume a yes response to all questions asked by `fsck`.
- o specific_options* Specify `udfs` file system specific options in a comma-separated list with no intervening spaces. The following *specific_options* are available:
- f Force checking of file systems regardless of the state of their logical volume integrity state.
 - p Check and fix the file system non-interactively (`preen`). Exit immediately if there is a problem that requires intervention. This option is required to enable parallel file system checking.
 - w Check writable file systems only.

Files `/etc/vfstab` List of default parameters for each file system.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWudf

See Also [fsck\(1M\)](#), [fsdb_udfs\(1M\)](#), [fstyp\(1M\)](#), [mkfs\(1M\)](#), [mkfs_udfs\(1M\)](#), [mountall\(1M\)](#), [reboot\(1M\)](#), [vfstab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Warnings The operating system buffers file system data. Running `fsck` on a mounted file system can cause the operating system's buffers to become out of date with respect to the disk. For this reason, use `fsck` only when the file system is unmounted. If this is not possible, take care that the system is quiescent and that it is rebooted immediately after running `fsck`. A panic will probably occur if running `fsck` on a file system that modifies the file system while it is mounted.

If an unmount of the file system is not done before the system is shut down, the file system might become corrupted. In this case, a file system check needs to be completed before the next mount operation.

Diagnostics not writable

You cannot write to the device.

Currently Mounted on

The device is already mounted and cannot run `fsck`.

FILE SYSTEM WAS MODIFIED

File system has been modified to bring it to a consistent state.

Can't read allocation extent

Cannot read the block containing allocation extent.

Bad tag on alloc extent

Invalid tag detected when expecting an allocation extent.

Volume sequence tag error

Invalid tag detected in the volume sequence.

Space bitmap tag error

Invalid tag detected in the space bitmap.

UNEXPECTED INCONSISTENCY; RUN `fsck` MANUALLY

Use `fsck` in interactive mode.

Name fsck_ufs – file system consistency check and interactive repair

Synopsis fsck -F ufs [*generic-options*] [*special*] . . .

fsck -F ufs [*generic-options*] [-o *specific-options*]
[*special*] . . .

Description The fsck utility audits and interactively repairs inconsistent conditions on file systems. A file system to be checked may be specified by giving the name of the block or character *special* device or by giving the name of its mount point if a matching entry exists in /etc/vfstab.

The *special* parameter represents the character special device, for example, /dev/rdisk/c1t0d0s7, on which the file system resides. The character special device, not the block special device should be used. The fsck utility will not work if the block device is mounted, unless the file system is error-locked.

If no *special* device is specified, all ufs file systems specified in the vfstab with a fsckdev entry will be checked. If the -p (“preen”) option is specified, ufs file systems with an fsckpass number greater than 1 are checked in parallel. See [fsck\(1M\)](#).

In the case of correcting serious inconsistencies, by default, fsck asks for confirmation before making a repair and waits for the operator to respond either yes or no. If the operator does not have write permission on the file system, fsck will default to a -n (no corrections) action. See [fsck\(1M\)](#).

Repairing some file system inconsistencies can result in loss of data. The amount and severity of data loss can be determined from the diagnostic output.

The fsck utility automatically corrects innocuous inconsistencies such as unreferenced inodes, too-large link counts in inodes, missing blocks in the free list, blocks appearing in the free list and also in files, or incorrect counts in the super block. It displays a message for each inconsistency corrected that identifies the nature of the correction on the file system which took place. After successfully correcting a file system, fsck prints the number of files on that file system, the number of used and free blocks, and the percentage of fragmentation.

Inconsistencies checked include:

- Blocks claimed by more than one inode or the free list.
- Blocks claimed by an inode or the free list outside the range of the file system.
- Incorrect link counts.
- Incorrect directory sizes.
- Bad inode format.
- Blocks not accounted for anywhere.
- Directory checks, file pointing to unallocated inode, inode number out of range, and absence of ‘.’ and ‘.’ as the first two entries in each directory.
- Super Block checks: more blocks for inodes than there are in the file system.

- Bad free block list format.
- Total free block and/or free inode count incorrect.

Orphaned files and directories (allocated but unreferenced) are, with the operator's concurrence, reconnected by placing them in the `lost+found` directory. The name assigned is the inode number. If the `lost+found` directory does not exist, it is created. If there is insufficient space in the `lost+found` directory, its size is increased.

An attempt to mount a `ufs` file system with the `-o nolargefiles` option will fail if the file system has ever contained a large file (a file whose size is greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte). Invoking `fsck` resets the file system state if no large files are present in the file system. A successful mount of the file system after invoking `fsck` indicates the absence of large files in the file system. An unsuccessful mount attempt indicates the presence of at least one large file. See [mount_ufs\(1M\)](#).

Options The *generic-options* consist of the following options:

- m Check but do not repair. This option checks that the file system is suitable for mounting, returning the appropriate exit status. If the file system is ready for mounting, `fsck` displays a message such as:


```
ufs fsck: sanity check: /dev/rdisk/c0t3d0s1 okay
```
- n | N Assume a no response to all questions asked by `fsck`; do not open the file system for writing.
- V Echo the expanded command line, but do not execute the command. This option may be used to verify and to validate the command line.
- v Enables verbose output. Might not be supported by all filesystem-specific `fsck` implementations.
- y | Y Assume a yes response to all questions asked by `fsck`.

See generic [fsck\(1M\)](#) for the details for specifying *special*.

- o *specific-options* Specify `ufs` file system specific options. These options can be any combination of the following separated by commas (with no intervening spaces).
 - b=*n* Use block *n* as the super block for the file system. Block 32 is always one of the alternate super blocks. Determine the location of other super blocks by running [newfs\(1M\)](#) with the `-Nv` options specified.
 - f Force checking of file systems regardless of the state of their super block clean flag.

- p Check and fix the file system non-interactively (“preen”). Exit immediately if there is a problem requiring intervention. This option is required to enable parallel file system checking.
- w Check writable file systems only.

Files /etc/vfstab list of default parameters for each file system

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [clri\(1M\)](#), [fsck\(1M\)](#), [fsdb_ufs\(1M\)](#), [fsirand\(1M\)](#), [fstyp\(1M\)](#), [mkfs\(1M\)](#), [mkfs_ufs\(1M\)](#), [mount_ufs\(1M\)](#), [mountall\(1M\)](#), [newfs\(1M\)](#), [reboot\(1M\)](#), [vfstab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#), [ufs\(7FS\)](#)

Warnings The operating system buffers file system data. Running `fsck` on a mounted file system can cause the operating system's buffers to become out of date with respect to the disk. For this reason, the file system should be *unmounted* when `fsck` is used. If this is not possible, care should be taken that the system is quiescent and that it is rebooted immediately after `fsck` is run. Quite often, however, this will not be sufficient. A panic will probably occur if running `fsck` on a file system modifies the file system.

Notes It is usually faster to check the character special device than the block special device.

Running `fsck` on file systems larger than 2 Gb fails if the user chooses to use the block interface to the device:

```
fsck /dev/dsk/c?t?d?s?
```

rather than the raw (character special) device:

```
fsck /dev/rdisk/c?t?d?s?
```


Name fsdb – file system debugger

Synopsis fsdb [-F *FSType*] [-V] [-o *FSType-specific_options*] *special*

Description fsdb is a file system debugger that allows for the manual repair of a file system after a crash. *special* is a special device used to indicate the file system to be debugged. fsdb is intended for experienced users only. *FSType* is the file system type to be debugged. Since different *FSTypes* have different structures and hence different debugging capabilities, the manual pages for the *FSType*-specific fsdb should be consulted for a more detailed description of the debugging capabilities.

Options

- F Specify the *FSType* on which to operate. The *FSType* should either be specified here or be determinable from `/etc/vfstab` by matching the *special* with an entry in the table, or by consulting `/etc/default/fs`.
- V Echo the complete command line, but do not execute the command. The command line is generated by using the options and arguments provided by the user and adding to them information derived from `/etc/vfstab`. This option may be used to verify and validate the command line.
- o Specify *FSType*-specific options.

Usage See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of fsdb when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (2^{31} bytes).

Files `/etc/default/fs` default local file system type. Default values can be set for the following flags in `/etc/default/fs`. For example: LOCAL=ufs

LOCAL: The default partition for a command if no *FSType* is specified.

`/etc/vfstab` list of default parameters for each file system

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [vfstab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#) Manual pages for the *FSType*-specific modules of fsdb.

Notes This command may not be supported for all *FSTypes*.

Name fsdb_udfs – udfs file system debugger

Synopsis fsdb [-F] udfs [*generic_option*] [-o *specific_option*] *special*

Description The fsdb_udfs command is an interactive tool that can be used to patch up a damaged udfs file system. fsdb_udfs has conversions to translate block and i-numbers into their corresponding disk addresses. Mnemonic offsets to access different parts of an inode are also included. Mnemonic offsets greatly simplify the process of correcting control block entries or descending the file system tree.

fsdb contains several error-checking routines to verify inode and block addresses. These can be disabled if necessary by invoking fsdb with the -o option or by using the o command.

fsdb reads one block at a time, and therefore works with raw as well as block I/O devices. A buffer management routine is used to retain commonly used blocks of data in order to reduce the number of read system calls. All assignment operations result in an immediate write-through of the corresponding block. In order to modify any portion of the disk, fsdb must be invoked with the -w option.

Wherever possible, adb-like syntax has been adopted to promote the use of fsdb through familiarity.

Options The following options are supported:

-o <i>specific_option</i>	Specify udfs file system specific options in a comma-separated list with no intervening spaces. The following specific options are supported:
o	Override some error conditions.
p= <i>string</i>	Set prompt to <i>string</i> .
w	Open for write.
?	Display usage.

Usage Numbers are considered hexadecimal by default. The user has control over how data is to be displayed or accepted. The base command displays or sets the input and output base. Once set, all input defaults to this base and all output displays in this base. The base can be overridden temporarily for input by preceding hexadecimal numbers by 0x, preceding decimal numbers with a 0t, or octal numbers with a 0. Hexadecimal numbers beginning with a-f or A-F must be preceded with a 0x to distinguish them from commands.

Disk addressing by fsdb is at the byte level. However, fsdb offers many commands to convert a desired inode, directory entry, block, and so forth, to a byte address. After the address has been calculated, fsdb records the result in the current address (dot).

Several global values are maintained by fsdb:

- Current base (referred to as base)
- Current address (referred to as dot)

- Current inode (referred to as `inode`)
- Current count (referred to as `count`)
- Current type (referred to as `type`)

Most commands use the preset value of `dot` in their execution. For example,

```
> 2:inode
```

first sets the value of `dot` (`.`) to 2, colon (`:`), signifies the start of a command, and the `inode` command sets `inode` to 2. A count is specified after a comma (`,`). Once set, count remains at this value until a new command is encountered that resets the value back to 1 (the default).

So, if

```
> 2000,400/X
```

is entered, 400 hex longs are listed from 2000, and when completed, the value of `dot` is $2000 + 400 * \text{sizeof}(\text{long})$. If a RETURN is then entered, the output routine uses the current values of `dot`, `count`, and `type` and displays 400 more hex longs. An asterisk (`*`) causes the entire block to be displayed. An example showing several commands and the use of RETURN would be:

```
> 2:ino; 0:dir?d
```

or

```
> 2:ino; 0:db:block?d
```

The two examples are synonymous for getting to the first directory entry of the root of the file system. Once there, subsequently entering a RETURN, plus (`+`), or minus (`-`) advances to subsequent entries. Notice that

```
> 2:inode; :ls
```

or

```
> :ls /
```

is again synonymous.

Expressions The following symbols are recognized by `fsdb`:

RETURN Update the value of `dot` by the current value of *type* and *display* using the current value of *count*.

Update the value of `dot` by specifying a numeric expression. Specify numeric expressions using addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division operators (`+`, `-`, `*`, and `%`). Numeric expressions are evaluated from left to right and can use parentheses. After evaluation, the value of `dot` is updated.

<i>,count</i>	Update the count indicator. The global value of <i>count</i> is updated to <i>count</i> . The value of <i>count</i> remains until a new command is run. A <i>count</i> specifier of * attempts to show a blocks's worth of information. The default for <i>count</i> is 1.
? <i>f</i>	Display in structured style with format specifier <i>f</i> . See Formatted Output.
/ <i>f</i>	Display in unstructured style with format specifier <i>f</i> . See Formatted Output.
.	Display the value of dot.
+ <i>e</i>	Increment the value of dot by the expression <i>e</i> . The amount actually incremented is dependent on the size of type: $\text{dot} = \text{dot} + e * \text{sizeof}(\text{type})$ The default for <i>e</i> is 1.
- <i>e</i>	Decrement the value of dot by the expression <i>e</i> . See +.
* <i>e</i>	Multiply the value of dot by the expression <i>e</i> . Multiplication and division don't use <i>type</i> . In the above calculation of dot, consider the <code>sizeof (type)</code> to be 1.
% <i>e</i>	Divide the value of dot by the expression <i>e</i> . See *.
< <i>name</i>	Restore an address saved in register <i>name</i> . <i>name</i> must be a single letter or digit.
> <i>name</i>	Save an address in register <i>name</i> . <i>name</i> must be a single letter or digit.
= <i>f</i>	Display indicator. If <i>f</i> is a legitimate format specifier (see Formatted Output), then the value of dot is displayed using format specifier <i>f</i> . Otherwise, assignment is assumed. See = [s] [e].
= [s] [e]	Change the value of dot using an assignment indicator. The address pointed to by dot has its contents changed to the value of the expression <i>e</i> or to the ASCII representation of the quoted (") string <i>s</i> . This can be useful for changing directory names or ASCII file information.
=+ <i>e</i>	Change the value of dot using an incremental assignment. The address pointed to by dot has its contents incremented by expression <i>e</i> .
=- <i>e</i>	Change the value of dot using a decremental assignment. Decrement the contents of the address pointed to by dot by expression <i>e</i> .

Commands A command must be prefixed by a colon (:). Only enough letters of the command to uniquely distinguish it are needed. Multiple commands can be entered on one line by separating them by a SPACE, TAB, or semicolon (;).

To view a potentially unmounted disk in a reasonable manner, `fsdb` supports the `cd`, `pwd`, `ls`, and `find` commands. The functionality of each of these commands basically matches that of its UNIX counterpart. See `cd(1)`, `pwd(1)`, `ls(1)`, and `find(1)` for details. The *, ,, ?, and - wildcard characters are also supported.

The following commands are supported:

base[= <i>b</i>]	Display or set the base. All input and output is governed by the current base. Without the = <i>b</i> , displays the current base. Otherwise, sets the current base to <i>b</i> . Base is interpreted using the old value of base, so to ensure correctness use the 0, 0t, or 0x prefix when changing the base. The default for base is hexadecimal.
block	Convert the value of dot to a block address.
cd [<i>dir</i>]	Change the current directory to directory <i>dir</i> . The current values of inode and dot are also updated. If <i>dir</i> is not specified, changes directories to inode 2, root (/).
directory	If the current inode is a directory, converts the value of dot to a directory slot offset in that directory, and dot now points to this entry.
file	Set the value of dot as a relative block count from the beginning of the file. The value of dot is updated to the first byte of this block.
find <i>dir</i> [-name <i>n</i>] [-inum <i>i</i>]	Find files by name or i-number. Recursively searches directory <i>dir</i> and below for file names whose i-number matches <i>i</i> or whose name matches pattern <i>n</i> . Only one of the two options (-name or -inum) can be used at one time. The find -print is not necessary or accepted.
fill= <i>p</i>	Fill an area of disk with pattern <i>p</i> . The area of disk is delimited by dot and count.
inode	Convert the value of dot to an inode address. If successful, the current value of inode is updated as well as the value of dot. As a convenient shorthand, if :inode appears at the beginning of the line, the value of dot is set to the current inode and that inode is displayed in inode format.
ls [-R] [-l] <i>pat1 pat2...</i>	List directories or files. If no file is specified, the current directory is assumed. Either or both of the options can be used (but, if used, must be specified before the filename specifiers). Wild card characters are available and multiple arguments are acceptable. The long listing shows only the i-number and the name; use the inode command with ?i to get more information.
override	Toggle the value of override. Some error conditions might be overridden if override is toggled to on.
prompt " <i>p</i> "	Change the fsdb prompt to <i>p</i> . <i>p</i> must be enclosed in quotes.

pwd	Display the current working directory.
quit	Quit fsdb.
tag	Convert the value of dot and if this is a valid tag, print the volume structure according to the tag.
!	Escape to the shell.

Inode Commands In addition to the above commands, several other commands deal with inode fields and operate directly on the current inode (they still require the colon (:)). They can be used to more easily display or change the particular fields. The value of dot is only used by the :db and :ib commands. Upon completion of the command, the value of dot is changed so that it points to that particular field. For example,

```
> :ln+=1
```

increments the link count of the current inode and sets the value of dot to the address of the link count field.

The following inode commands are supported:

at	Access time
bs	Block size
ct	Creation time
gid	Group id
ln	Link number
mt	Modification time
md	Mode
maj	Major device number
min	Minor device number
nm	This command actually operates on the directory name field. Once poised at the desired directory entry (using the <code>directory</code> command), this command allows you to change or display the directory name. For example, <pre>> 7:dir:nm="foo"</pre> gets the 7th directory entry of the current inode and changes its name to <code>foo</code> . Directory names cannot be made larger than the field allows. If an attempt is made to make a directory name larger than the field allows,, the string is truncated to fit and a warning message is displayed.
sz	File size

uid User ID
 uniq Unique ID

Formatted Output Formatted output comes in two styles and many format types. The two styles of formatted output are: structured and unstructured. Structured output is used to display inodes, directories, and so forth. Unstructured output displays raw data.

Format specifiers are preceded by the slash (/) or question mark (?) character. *type* is updated as necessary upon completion.

The following format specifiers are preceded by the ? character:

i Display as inodes in the current base.
 d Display as directories in the current base.

The following format specifiers are preceded by the / character:

b Display as bytes in the current base.
 c Display as characters.
 o | O Display as octal shorts or longs.
 d | D Display as decimal shorts or longs.
 x | X Display as hexadecimal shorts or longs.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Using fsdb as a calculator for complex arithmetic

The following command displays 2010 in decimal format, and is an example of using fsdb as a calculator for complex arithmetic.

```
> 2000+400%(20+20)=D
```

EXAMPLE 2 Using fsdb to display an i-number in inode format

The following command displays the i-number 386 in inode format. 386 becomes the current inode.

```
> 386:ino?i
```

EXAMPLE 3 Using fsdb to change the link count

The following command changes the link count for the current inode to 4.

```
> :ln=4
```

EXAMPLE 4 Using fsdb to increment the link count

The following command increments the link count by 1.

```
> :ln=+1
```

EXAMPLE 5 Using fsdb to display the creation time as a hexadecimal long

The following command displays the creation time as a hexadecimal long.

```
> :ct=X
```

EXAMPLE 6 Using fsdb to display the modification time in time format

The following command displays the modification time in time format.

```
> :mt=t
```

EXAMPLE 7 Using fsdb to display in ASCII

The following command displays, in ASCII, block 0 of the file associated with the current inode.

```
> 0:file/c
```

EXAMPLE 8 Using fsdb to display the directory entries for the root inode

The following command displays the first block's directory entries for the root inode of this file system. This command stops prematurely if the EOF is reached.

```
> 2:ino,*?d
```

EXAMPLE 9 Using fsdb to change the current inode

The following command changes the current inode to that associated with the 5th directory entry (numbered from 0) of the current inode. The first logical block of the file is then displayed in ASCII.

```
> 5:dir:inode; 0:file,*?c
```

EXAMPLE 10 Using fsdb to change the i-number

The following command changes the i-number for the 7th directory slot in the root directory to 3.

EXAMPLE 10 Using fsdb to change the i-number (Continued)

```
> 2:inode; 7:dir=3
```

EXAMPLE 11 Using fsdb to change the name field

The following command changes the *name* field in the directory slot to name.

```
> 7:dir:nm="name"
```

EXAMPLE 12 Using fsdb to display the a block

The following command displays the 3rd block of the current inode as directory entries.

EXAMPLE 13 Using fsdb to set the contents of address

The following command sets the contents of address 2050 to 0xffffffff. 0xffffffff can be truncated, depending on the current type.

```
> 2050=0xffff
```

EXAMPLE 14 Using fsdb to place an ASCII string at an address

The following command places the ASCII string this is some text at address 1c92434.

```
> 1c92434="this is some text"
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWudf

See Also [clri\(1M\)](#), [fsck_udfs\(1M\)](#), [dir\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name fsdb_ufs – ufs file system debugger

Synopsis fsdb -F ufs [*generic_options*] [*specific_options*] *special*

Description The fsdb_ufs command is an interactive tool that can be used to patch up a damaged UFS file system. It has conversions to translate block and i-numbers into their corresponding disk addresses. Also included are mnemonic offsets to access different parts of an inode. These greatly simplify the process of correcting control block entries or descending the file system tree.

fsdb contains several error-checking routines to verify inode and block addresses. These can be disabled if necessary by invoking fsdb with the -o option or by the use of the o command.

fsdb reads a block at a time and will therefore work with raw as well as block I/O devices. A buffer management routine is used to retain commonly used blocks of data in order to reduce the number of read system calls. All assignment operations result in an immediate write-through of the corresponding block. Note that in order to modify any portion of the disk, fsdb must be invoked with the w option.

Wherever possible, adb-like syntax was adopted to promote the use of fsdb through familiarity.

Options The following option is supported:

- o Specify UFS file system specific options. These options can be any combination of the following separated by commas (with no intervening spaces). The options available are:
 - ? Display usage
 - o Override some error conditions
 - p='string' set prompt to string
 - w open for write

Usage Numbers are considered hexadecimal by default. However, the user has control over how data is to be displayed or accepted. The base command will display or set the input/output base. Once set, all input will default to this base and all output will be shown in this base. The base can be overridden temporarily for input by preceding hexadecimal numbers with '0x', preceding decimal numbers with '0t', or octal numbers with '0'. Hexadecimal numbers beginning with a-f or A-F must be preceded with '0x' to distinguish them from commands.

Disk addressing by fsdb is at the byte level. However, fsdb offers many commands to convert a desired inode, directory entry, block, superblock and so forth to a byte address. Once the address has been calculated, fsdb will record the result in dot (.).

Several global values are maintained by fsdb:

- the current base (referred to as base),

- the current address (referred to as `dot`),
- the current inode (referred to as `inode`),
- the current count (referred to as `count`),
- and the current type (referred to as `type`).

Most commands use the preset value of `dot` in their execution. For example,

```
> 2:inode
```

will first set the value of `dot` to 2, `';` will alert the start of a command, and the `inode` command will set `inode` to 2. A count is specified after a `';`. Once set, `count` will remain at this value until a new command is encountered which will then reset the value back to 1 (the default). So, if

```
> 2000,400/X
```

is typed, 400 hex longs are listed from 2000, and when completed, the value of `dot` will be `2000 + 400 * sizeof (long)`. If a `RETURN` is then typed, the output routine will use the current values of `dot`, `count`, and `type` and display 400 more hex longs. A `'*` will cause the entire block to be displayed.

End of fragment, block and file are maintained by `fsdb`. When displaying data as fragments or blocks, an error message will be displayed when the end of fragment or block is reached. When displaying data using the `db`, `ib`, `directory`, or `file` commands an error message is displayed if the end of file is reached. This is mainly needed to avoid passing the end of a directory or file and getting unknown and unwanted results.

An example showing several commands and the use of `RETURN` would be:

```
> 2:ino; 0:dir?d
    or
> 2:ino; 0:db:block?d
```

The two examples are synonymous for getting to the first directory entry of the root of the file system. Once there, any subsequent `RETURN` (or `+`, `-`) will advance to subsequent entries.

Note that

```
> 2:inode; :ls
    or
> :ls /
```

is again synonymous.

Expressions The symbols recognized by `fsdb` are:

`RETURN` update the value of `dot` by the current value of `type` and display using the current value of `count`.

#	numeric expressions may be composed of +, -, *, and % operators (evaluated left to right) and may use parentheses. Once evaluated, the value of dot is updated.
, <i>count</i>	count indicator. The global value of count will be updated to count. The value of count will remain until a new command is run. A count specifier of '*' will attempt to show a <i>blocks's</i> worth of information. The default for count is 1.
? <i>f</i>	display in structured style with format specifier <i>f</i> . See FormattedOutput.
/ <i>f</i>	display in unstructured style with format specifier <i>f</i> . See FormattedOutput.
.	the value of dot.
+ <i>e</i>	increment the value of dot by the expression <i>e</i> . The amount actually incremented is dependent on the size of type: $\text{dot} = \text{dot} + e * \text{sizeof}(\text{type})$ <p>The default for <i>e</i> is 1.</p>
- <i>e</i>	decrement the value of dot by the expression <i>e</i> . See +.
* <i>e</i>	multiply the value of dot by the expression <i>e</i> . Multiplication and division don't use type. In the above calculation of dot, consider the sizeof(type) to be 1.
% <i>e</i>	divide the value of dot by the expression <i>e</i> . See *.
< <i>name</i>	restore an address saved in register <i>name</i> . <i>name</i> must be a single letter or digit.
> <i>name</i>	save an address in register <i>name</i> . <i>name</i> must be a single letter or digit.
= <i>f</i>	display indicator. If <i>f</i> is a legitimate format specifier, then the value of dot is displayed using the format specifier <i>f</i> . See FormattedOutput. Otherwise, assignment is assumed. See =.
= [<i>s</i>] [<i>e</i>]	assignment indicator. The address pointed to by dot has its contents changed to the value of the expression <i>e</i> or to the ASCII representation of the quoted (") string <i>s</i> . This may be useful for changing directory names or ASCII file information.
=+ <i>e</i>	incremental assignment. The address pointed to by dot has its contents incremented by expression <i>e</i> .
=- <i>e</i>	decremental assignment. The address pointed to by dot has its contents decremented by expression <i>e</i> .

Commands A command must be prefixed by a ':' character. Only enough letters of the command to uniquely distinguish it are needed. Multiple commands may be entered on one line by separating them by a SPACE, TAB or ';

In order to view a potentially unmounted disk in a reasonable manner, `fsdb` offers the `cd`, `pwd`, `ls` and `find` commands. The functionality of these commands substantially matches those of its UNIX counterparts. See individual commands for details. The `'*'`, `'?'`, and `'[-']` wild card characters are available.

<code>base=b</code>	display or set base. As stated above, all input and output is governed by the current base. If the <code>=b</code> is omitted, the current base is displayed. Otherwise, the current base is set to <i>b</i> . Note that this is interpreted using the old value of base, so to ensure correctness use the <code>'0'</code> , <code>'0t'</code> , or <code>'0x'</code> prefix when changing the base. The default for base is hexadecimal.
<code>block</code>	convert the value of <code>dot</code> to a block address.
<code>cd dir</code>	change the current directory to directory <i>dir</i> . The current values of <code>inode</code> and <code>dot</code> are also updated. If no <i>dir</i> is specified, then change directories to inode 2 (<code>"/</code>).
<code>cg</code>	convert the value of <code>dot</code> to a cylinder group.
<code>directory</code>	If the current <code>inode</code> is a directory, then the value of <code>dot</code> is converted to a directory slot offset in that directory and <code>dot</code> now points to this entry.
<code>file</code>	the value of <code>dot</code> is taken as a relative block count from the beginning of the file. The value of <code>dot</code> is updated to the first byte of this block.
<code>find dir [-name n] [-inum i]</code>	find files by name or i-number. <code>find</code> recursively searches directory <i>dir</i> and below for filenames whose i-number matches <i>i</i> or whose name matches pattern <i>n</i> . Note that only one of the two options (<code>-name</code> or <code>-inum</code>) may be used at one time. Also, the <code>-print</code> is not needed or accepted.
<code>fill=p</code>	fill an area of disk with pattern <i>p</i> . The area of disk is delimited by <code>dot</code> and <code>count</code> .
<code>fragment</code>	convert the value of <i>dot</i> to a fragment address. The only difference between the <code>fragment</code> command and the <code>block</code> command is the amount that is able to be displayed.
<code>inode</code>	convert the value of <i>dot</i> to an inode address. If successful, the current value of <code>inode</code> will be updated as well as the value of <i>dot</i> . As a convenient shorthand, if <code>:inode</code> appears at the beginning of the line, the value of <i>dot</i> is set to the current <code>inode</code> and that inode is displayed in inode format.
<code>log_chk</code>	run through the valid log entries without printing any information and verify the layout.

log_delta	count the number of deltas into the log, using the value of dot as an offset into the log. No checking is done to make sure that offset is within the head/tail offsets.
log_head	display the header information about the file system logging. This shows the block allocation for the log and the data structures on the disk.
log_otodb	return the physical disk block number, using the value of dot as an offset into the log.
log_show	display all deltas between the beginning of the log (BOL) and the end of the log (EOL).
ls	[-R] [-l] <i>pat1 pat2</i> . . . list directories or files. If no file is specified, the current directory is assumed. Either or both of the options may be used (but, if used, <i>must</i> be specified before the filename specifiers). Also, as stated above, wild card characters are available and multiple arguments may be given. The long listing shows only the i-number and the name; use the <i>inode</i> command with '?' to get more information.
override	toggle the value of override. Some error conditions may be overridden if override is toggled on.
prompt <i>p</i>	change the fsdb prompt to <i>p</i> . <i>p</i> must be surrounded by ("")s.
pwd	display the current working directory.
quit	quit fsdb.
sb	the value of <i>dot</i> is taken as a cylinder group number and then converted to the address of the superblock in that cylinder group. As a shorthand, 'sb' at the beginning of a line will set the value of <i>dot</i> to <i>the</i> superblock and display it in superblock format.
shadow	if the current inode is a shadow inode, then the value of <i>dot</i> is set to the beginning of the shadow inode data.
!	escape to shell

Inode Commands In addition to the above commands, there are several commands that deal with inode fields and operate directly on the current inode (they still require the ':'). They may be used to more easily display or change the particular fields. The value of *dot* is only used by the ':db' and ':ib' commands. Upon completion of the command, the value of *dot* is changed to point to that particular field. For example,

```
> :ln+=1
```

would increment the link count of the current inode and set the value of *dot* to the address of the link count field.

at access time.

bs block size.

ct creation time.

db use the current value of *dot* as a direct block index, where direct blocks number from 0 - 11. In order to display the block itself, you need to 'pipe' this result into the `block` or `fragment` command. For example,

```
> 1:db:block,20/X
```

would get the contents of data block field 1 from the inode and convert it to a block address. 20 longs are then displayed in hexadecimal. See `FormattedOutput`.

gid group id.

ib use the current value of *dot* as an indirect block index where indirect blocks number from 0 - 2. This will only get the indirect block itself (the block containing the pointers to the actual blocks). Use the `file` command and start at block 12 to get to the actual blocks.

ln link count.

mt modification time.

md mode.

maj major device number.

min minor device number.

nm although listed here, this command actually operates on the directory name field. Once poised at the desired directory entry (using the *directory* command), this command will allow you to change or display the directory name. For example,

```
> 7:dir:nm="foo"
```

will get the 7th directory entry of the current inode and change its name to foo. Note that names cannot be made larger than the field is set up for. If an attempt is made, the string is truncated to fit and a warning message to this effect is displayed.

si shadow inode.

sz file size.

uid user id.

Formatted Output There are two styles and many format types. The two styles are structured and unstructured. Structured output is used to display inodes, directories, superblocks and the like. Unstructured displays raw data. The following shows the different ways of displaying:

```
?
  c   display as cylinder groups
  i   display as inodes
  d   display as directories
  s   display as superblocks
  S   display as shadow inode data

/
  b   display as bytes
  c   display as characters
  o O  display as octal shorts or longs
  d D  display as decimal shorts or longs
  x X  display as hexadecimal shorts or longs
```

The format specifier immediately follows the '/' or '?' character. The values displayed by '/b' and all '?' formats are displayed in the current base. Also, type is appropriately updated upon completion.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Displaying in Decimal

The following command displays 2010 in decimal (use of fsdb as a calculator for complex arithmetic):

```
> 2000+400%(20+20)=D
```

EXAMPLE 2 Displaying an i-number in Inode Format

The following command displays i-number 386 in an inode format. This now becomes the current inode:

```
> 386:ino?i
```

EXAMPLE 3 Changing the Link Count

The following command changes the link count for the current inode to 4:

```
> :ln=4
```


EXAMPLE 4 Incrementing the Link Count

The following command increments the link count by 1:

```
> :ln+=1
```

EXAMPLE 5 Displaying the Creation Time

The following command displays the creation time as a hexadecimal long:

```
> :ct=X
```

EXAMPLE 6 Displaying the Modification Time

The following command displays the modification time in time format:

```
> :mt=t
```

EXAMPLE 7 Displaying in ASCII

The following command displays in ASCII, block zero of the file associated with the current inode:

```
> 0:file/c
```

EXAMPLE 8 Displaying the First Block's Worth of Directory Entries

The following command displays the first block's worth of directory entries for the root inode of this file system. It will stop prematurely if the EOF is reached:

```
> 2:ino,*?d
```

EXAMPLE 9 Displaying Changes to the Current Inode

The following command displays changes the current inode to that associated with the 5th directory entry (numbered from zero) of the current inode. The first logical block of the file is then displayed in ASCII:

```
> 5:dir:inode; 0:file,*/c
```

EXAMPLE 10 Displaying the Superblock

The following command displays the superblock of this file system:

```
> :sb
```

EXAMPLE 11 Displaying the Cylinder Group

The following command displays cylinder group information and summary for cylinder group 1:

```
> 1:cg?c
```

EXAMPLE 12 Changing the i-number

The following command changes the i-number for the seventh directory slot in the root directory to 3:

```
> 2:inode; 7:dir=3
```

EXAMPLE 13 Displaying as Directory Entries

The following command displays the third block of the current inode as directory entries:

```
> 2:db:block,*?d
```

EXAMPLE 14 Changing the Name Field

The following command changes the name field in the directory slot to *name*:

```
> 7:dir:nm="name"
```

EXAMPLE 15 Getting and Filling Elements

The following command gets fragment 3c3 and fill 20 type elements with 0x20:

```
> 3c3:fragment,20:fill=0x20
```

EXAMPLE 16 Setting the Contents of an Address

The following command sets the contents of address 2050 to 0xffffffff. 0xffffffff may be truncated depending on the current type:

```
> 2050=0xffff
```

EXAMPLE 17 Placing ASCII

The following command places the ASCII for the string at 1c92434:

```
> 1c92434="this is some text"
```

EXAMPLE 18 Displaying Shadow Inode Data

The following command displays all of the shadow inode data in the shadow inode associated with the root inode of this file system:

```
> 2:ino:si:ino;0:shadow,*?S
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [clri\(1M\)](#), [fsck_ufs\(1M\)](#), [dir_ufs\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [ufs\(7FS\)](#)

Warnings Since fsdb reads the disk raw, extreme caution is advised in determining its availability of fsdb on the system. Suggested permissions are 600 and owned by bin.

Notes The old command line syntax for clearing i-nodes using the ufs-specific ' -z i-number ' option is still supported by the new debugger, though it is obsolete and will be removed in a future release. Use of this flag will result in correct operation, but an error message will be printed warning of the impending obsolescence of this option to the command. The equivalent functionality is available using the more flexible [clri\(1M\)](#) command.

Name fsirand – install random inode generation numbers

Synopsis fsirand [-p] *special*

Description fsirand installs random inode generation numbers on all the inodes on device *special*, and also installs a file system ID in the superblock. This helps increase the security of file systems exported by NFS.

fsirand must be used only on an unmounted file system that has been checked with [fsck\(1M\)](#). The only exception is that it can be used on the root file system in single-user mode, if the system is immediately re-booted afterwards.

Options -p Print out the generation numbers for all the inodes, but do not change the generation numbers.

Usage See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of fsirand when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (2^{31} bytes).

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [fsck\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#)

Name fssnap – create temporary snapshots of a file system

Synopsis fssnap [-F *FSType*] [-V] [-o *special_options*] /mount/point

fssnap -d [-F *FSType*] [-V] /mount/point | dev

fssnap -i [-F *FSType*] [-V] [-o *special_options*]
 [/mount/point | dev]

Description The `fssnap` command creates a stable, read-only snapshot of a file system when given either an active mount point or a special device containing a mounted file system, as in the first form of the synopsis. A snapshot is a temporary image of a file system intended for backup operations.

While the snapshot file system is stable and consistent, an application updating files when the snapshot is created might leave these files in an internally inconsistent, truncated, or otherwise unusable state. In such a case, the snapshot will contain these partially written or corrupted files. It is a good idea to ensure active applications are suspended or checkpointed and their associated files are also consistent during snapshot creation.

File access times are not updated while the snapshot is being created.

A path to the virtual device that contains this snapshot is printed to standard output when a snapshot is created.

Options The following options are supported:

- d Deletes the snapshot associated with the given file system.
- F *FSType* Specifies the file system type to be used. The *FSType* should either be specified here or be determined by matching the block special device with an entry in the `/etc/vfstab` table, or by consulting `/etc/default/fs`.
- i Displays the state of any given *FSType* snapshot. If a mount-point or device is not given, a list of all snapshots on the system is displayed. When a mount-point or device is specified, detailed information is provided for the specified file system snapshot by default. The format and meaning of this information is file-system dependent. See the *FSType*-specific `fssnap` man page for details.
- o *special_options* See the *FSType*-specific man page for `fssnap`.
- V Echoes the complete command line, but does not execute the command.

Operands The following operands are supported:

/mount/point The directory where the file system resides.

Examples See FSType-specific man pages for examples.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

Files /etc/vfstab Specifies file system type.

/etc/default/fs Specifies the default local file system type.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [fssnap_ufs\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes This command might not be supported for all FSTypes.

Name fssnap_ufs – create a temporary snapshot of a UFS file system

Synopsis fssnap [-F ufs] [-V] -o *backing-store=path,*
[specific-options] /mount/point

fssnap -d [-F ufs] [-V] */mount/point | dev*

fssnap -i [-F ufs] [-V] [-o *specific-options*] */mount/point | dev*

Description The fssnap command queries, creates, or deletes a temporary snapshot of a UFS file system. A snapshot is a point-in-time image of a file system that provides a stable and unchanging device interface for backups.

When creating a file system snapshot, you must specify the file system to be captured and the backing-store file. The backing-store file(s) are where the snapshot subsystem saves old file system data before it is overwritten. Beyond the first backing-store file, fssnap automatically creates additional backing-store files on an as-needed basis.

The number and size of the backing store files varies with the amount of activity in the file system. The destination path must have enough free space to hold the backing-store file(s). This location must be different from the file system that is being captured in a snapshot. The backing-store file(s) can reside on any type of file system, including another UFS file system or an NFS-mounted file system.

Options The following options are supported:

-d

Deletes the snapshot associated with the given file system.

-i

Displays the state of one or all UFS snapshots. If a mount-point or device is not specified, a list of all snapshots on the system is displayed. When a mount-point or device is specified, detailed information is provided for the specified file system snapshot by default.

Use the -o options with the -i option to specify what snapshot information is displayed. Since this feature is provided primarily for use in scripts and on the command line, no labels are displayed for the data. Sizes are all in bytes, and the output is not internationalized or localized. The information is displayed on one line per option. Unrecognized options display a single ? on the line. One line per option guarantees that there are the same number of lines as options specified and there is a one-to-one correspondence between an output line and an option.

The following -o options display specific information for a given snapshot. See the EXAMPLES section for examples of how to use these options.

snapshotnumber

Display the snapshot number.

blockdevname

Display the block device path.

`rawdevname`

Display the raw device path.

`mountpoint`

Display the mount point of the master file system.

`state`

Display the state of the snapshot device.

`backing-store`

Display the location of the first backing-store file for this snapshot. If there are multiple backing-store files, subsequent files have the same name as the first file, with the suffixes `.2`, `.3`, and so forth.

`backing-store-len`

Display the sum of the sizes of the backing-store files.

`maxsize`

Display the `maxsize` value specified for the backing-store file(s).

`createtime`

Display the time that the snapshot was created.

`chunksizesize`

Display the copy-on-write granularity.

`-o specific-options`

Without `-d` or `-i`, the default action is to create a snapshot. Specify the following options when creating a snapshot. All of these options are discretionary, except for the backing-store file, which is required.

`backing-store=path`

Uses *path* in the creation of the backing-store file(s). *path* must not reside on the file system that is being captured in a snapshot and must not be the name of an existing file. If *path* is a directory, then a backing-store file is created within it using a name that is generated automatically. If *path* is not a directory and does not already exist, then a backing-store file with that name is created. If more than one backing-store file is required, `fssnap` creates subsequent files automatically. The second and subsequent files have the same name as the first file, with suffixes of `.2`, `.3`, and so forth.

This option can be abbreviated as `bf=path` or `bs=path`.

`unlink`

Unlinks the backing-store file after the snapshot is created. This option specifies that the backing-store file does not need to be removed manually when the snapshot is deleted. This might make administration more difficult since the file is not visible in the file system. If this option is not specified, the backing-store files should be removed manually after the snapshot is deleted.

`chunksi ze=n [k,m,g]`

Uses *n* for the chunk size. Chunk size is the granularity of the data that is sent to the backing store.

Specify `chunksi ze` in the following units: *k* for kilobytes, *m* for megabytes, or *g* for gigabytes. By default, chunk size is four times the block size of the file system (typically 32k).

`maxsi ze=n[k,m,g]`

Does not allow the sum of the sizes of the backing-store file(s) to exceed *n*, where *n* is the unit specified. The snapshot is deleted automatically when the sum of the sizes of the backing-store file(s) exceeds `maxsi ze`.

Specify `maxsi ze` in the following units: *k* for kilobytes, *m* for megabytes, or *g* for gigabytes.

`raw`

Displays to standard output the name of the raw device instead of the block device when a snapshot is created. The block device is printed by default (when `raw` is not specified). This option makes it easier to embed `fssnap` commands in the command line for commands that require the raw device instead. Both devices are always created. This option affects only the output.

Operands The following operands are supported:

mount-point

The directory where the file system resides.

special

The physical device for the file system, such as `/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s7`.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Creating a Snapshot of a File System

The following example creates a snapshot of a file system. The block special device created for the snapshot is `/dev/fssnap/0`.

```
# fssnap -F ufs -o backing-store=/var/tmp /export/home
/dev/fssnap/0
```

EXAMPLE 2 Backing Up a File System Snapshot Without Having To Unmount the File System

The following example backs up a file system snapshot without having to unmount the file system. Since `ufsdump` requires the path to a raw device, the `raw` option is used. The `/export/home` file system snapshot is removed in the second command.

```
# ufsdump 0uf /dev/rmt/0 'fssnap -F ufs
-o raw,bs=/export/snap /export/home'
<output from ufsdump>
# fssnap -F ufs -d /export/home
```

EXAMPLE 3 Backing Up a File System

When backing up a file system, do not let the backing-store file(s) exceed 400 Mbytes. The second command removes the /export/home file system snapshot.

```
# ufsdump 0uf /dev/rmt/0 'fssnap -F ufs
    -o maxsize=400m,backing-store=/export/snap,raw
    /export/home'
# fssnap -F ufs -d /export/home
```

EXAMPLE 4 Performing an Incremental Dump of a Snapshot

The following example uses `ufsdump` to back up a snapshot of /var. Note the use of the `N` option to `ufsdump`, which writes the name of the device being dumped, rather than the name of the snapshot device, to /etc/dumpdates file. See [ufsdump\(1M\)](#) for details on the `N` flag.

```
# ufsdump lfNu /dev/rmt/0 /dev/rdisk/c0t3d0s2 'fssnap -F ufs
-o raw,bs=/export/scratch,unlink /var'
```

EXAMPLE 5 Finding Out What Snapshots Currently Exist

The following command displays the currently existing snapshots.

```
# fssnap -i
0 /src
1 /export/home
<output continues>
```

EXAMPLE 6 Mounting a File System Snapshot

The following example creates a file system snapshot. After you create a file system snapshot, mount it on /tmp/mount for temporary read-only access.

```
# fssnap -F ufs -o backing-store=/nfs/server/scratch /export/home
/dev/fssnap/1
# mkdir /tmp/mount
# mount -F ufs -o ro /dev/fssnap/1 /tmp/mount
```

EXAMPLE 7 Creating a File System Snapshot and Unlinking the Backing-store File

The following example creates a file system snapshot and unlinks the backing-store file. After creating a file system snapshot and unlinking the backing-store file, check the state of the snapshot.

```
# fssnap -o bs=/scratch,unlink /src
/dev/fssnap/0
# fssnap -i /src
```

EXAMPLE 7 Creating a File System Snapshot and Unlinking the Backing-store File (Continued)

```

Snapshot number          : 0
Block Device             : /dev/fssnap/0
Raw Device               : /dev/rfssnap/0
Mount point              : /src
Device state             : active
Backing store path       : /scratch/snapshot2 <UNLINKED>
Backing store size       : 192 KB
Maximum backing store size : Unlimited
Snapshot create time     : Sat May 06 10:55:11 2000
Copy-on-write granularity : 32 KB

```

EXAMPLE 8 Displaying the Size and Location of the Backing-store File(s) and the Creation Time for the Snapshot

The following example displays the size of the backing-store file(s) in bytes, the location of the backing store, and the creation time for the snapshot of the /test file system.

```

# fssnap -i -o backing-store-len,backing-store,createtime /test
196608
/snapshot2
Sat May 6 10:55:11 2000

```

Note that if there are multiple backing-store files stored in /snapshot2, they will have names of the form *file* (for the first file), *file.1*, *file.2*, and so forth.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

```

0
    Successful completion.
>0
    An error occurred.

```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

The script-readable output mode is a stable interface that can be added to, but will not change. All other interfaces are subject to change.

See Also [mlock\(3C\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

See the `ntpd` man page, delivered in the `SUNWntpu` package (not a SunOS man page).

Notes The `fssnap` device files should be treated like a regular disk block or character device.

The association between a file system and the snapshot is lost when the snapshot is deleted or the system reboots. Snapshot persistence across reboots is not currently supported.

To avoid unnecessary performance impacts, perform the snapshot and system backup when the system is least active.

It is not possible to perform a snapshot of a file system if any of the following conditions are true:

- The file system is in use by system accounting
- The file system contains a local swap file
- The file system is used as backing store by an application that uses `mlock(3C)` to lock its pages. Typically, these are real time applications, such as `ntpd` (delivered in the `SUNWntpu` package).

These conditions result in `fssnap` being unable to write lock the file system prior to performing the snapshot.

Name fsstat – report file system statistics

Synopsis fsstat [-a|f|i|n|v] [-T | u|d] {-F | {fstype|path}...}
[interval [count]]

Description fsstat reports kernel file operation activity by the file system type (*fstype*) or by the path name, which is converted to a mount point. The first set of lines of output reports all activity since:

- The file system module was loaded (in the case of *fstype*)
- The file system was mounted (in the case of mount point)

Statistics are gathered at the file system independent layer at both the *fstype* and the mount point levels. However, not all file system types are represented in the gathering of statistics. (See the NOTES section of this man page.)

The output of fsstat is dependent on the mode (option) requested. All statistic fields are displayed using “smart numbers” which automatically scale the units in a human readable form that fits in a maximum of 5 characters. For example:

```
100          is displayed as 100
2048         is displayed as 2K
3000000      is displayed as 2.86M
```

The unit modifiers are: K (Kbyte), M (Mbyte), G (Gbyte), T (terabyte), P (petabyte), and E (exabyte).

During the execution of fsstat, the state of the system can change. If relevant, a state change message is included in the fsstat output in one of the following forms:

```
<<mount point no longer available: {path}>>
<<file system module no longer loaded: {fstype}>>
```

After the state change messages are displayed, fsstat continues to display the statistics as directed. If all of the *fstypes* and mount points that fsstat was reporting on are no longer available, then fsstat exits.

The user is required to specify the -F option (all available file system types) or a list of one or more *fstypes* and/or mount points.

The default report shows general file system activity. This display combines similar operations into general categories as follows:

```
new file      Number of creation operations for file system objects (for example, files,
              directories, symlinks, etc.)
name remov    Number of name removal operations
name chng     Number of name change operations
```

attr get	Number of object attribute retrieval operations
attr set	Number of object attribute change operations
lookup ops	Number of object lookup operations
rddir ops	Number of read directory operations
read ops	Number of data read operations
read bytes	Bytes transferred by data read operations
write ops	Number of data write operations
write bytes	Bytes transferred by data write operations

The entity being reported on (*fstype* or mount point) is displayed in the last column.

Options The following options are supported:

-a Report the activity for kernel attribute operations. The following statistics are reported:

getattr	Number of file attribute retrieval calls
setattr	Number of file attribute modification calls
getsec	Number of file security attribute retrieval calls
setsec	Number of file security attribute modification calls

The entity being reported on (*fstype* or mount point) is displayed in the last column.

-f Report the full activity for all kernel file operations. Each file operation is listed in the left column. The following statistics are reported for each operation:

#ops	Number of calls for this operation
bytes	Average transfer size in bytes (only applies to read, write, readdir)

The entity being reported on (*fstype* or mount point) is displayed in the first row.

-i Reports the activity for kernel I/O operations. The following statistics are reported:

read ops	Number of data read calls
read bytes	Number of bytes read
write ops	Number of data write calls
write bytes	Number of bytes written
rddir ops	Number of read directory calls

rddir bytes Number of bytes read by reading directories
 rwlock ops Number of internal file system lock operations
 rwunlock ops Number of internal file system unlock operations

The entity being reported on (*fstype* or mount point) is displayed in the last column.

-n Reports the activity for kernel naming operations. The following statistics are reported:

lookup Number of file name retrieval calls
 creat Number of file creation calls
 remov Number of file remove calls
 link Number of link calls
 renam Number of file renaming calls
 mkdir Number of directory creation calls
 rmdir Number of directory removal calls
 rddir Number of directory read calls
 symlink Number of symlink creation calls
 rdlink Number of symlink read calls

The entity being reported on (*fstype* or mount point) is displayed in the last column.

-v Reports the activity for calls to the virtual memory operations. The following statistics are reported.

map Number of calls mapping a file
 addmap Number of calls setting additional mapping to a mapped file
 delmap Number of calls deleting mapping to a file
 getpag Number of calls retrieving a page of data from a file
 putpag Number of calls writing a page of data to a file
 pagio Number of calls to transfer pages in file system swap files

The entity being reported on (*fstype* or mount point) is displayed in the last column.

-F Report on all available file system types.

`-T u|d` Display a time stamp.

Specify *u* for a printed representation of the internal representation of time (see [time\(2\)](#)) Specify *d* for the standard date format. (See [date\(1\)](#)). The time stamp is only used when an interval is set.

Operands The following operands are supported:

count Display only *count* reports.

fstype Explicitly specify the file system type(s) to be reported. The file system module must be loaded.

interval Report once each *interval* seconds.

path Specify the path(s) of the mount point(s) to be reported. If *path* is not a mount point, the mount point containing *path* will be determined and displayed in the output.

If no *interval* and no *count* are specified, a single report is printed and `fsstat` exits. If an *interval* is specified but no *count* is specified, `fsstat` prints reports every *interval* seconds indefinitely until the command is interrupted.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Displaying General Activity

The following example shows general activity for all file system types.

```
$ fsstat -F
new name  name  attr  attr lookup rddir  read read  write write
file remov chng  get   set   ops  ops  ops bytes  ops bytes
313K 214K 38.5K 2.16M 56.2K 8.36M 52.8K 19.7M 39.9G 18.8M 39.1G ufs
  0   0   0 2.95K  0 3.81K 282 2.52K 466K  0  0 proc
  0   0   0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0 nfs
 10  8   2  86  9  98  15 413 103M 8.43K 1.05G zfs
 13 14  4  98 16 125 10 1.01K 258M 15.9K 127M lofs
8.73K 3.29K 5.25K 55.3K 37 1.20M 44 37.9K 38.3M 47.2K 35.9M tmpfs
  0   0   0 4.93K  0  0  0 1.08K 913K  0  0 mntfs
  3   2   1 503  3 897 13 122 25.8K 128 272K nfs3
 10  8   0 615 10 10.1K 18  61 45.6K 292 2.26M nfs4
```

EXAMPLE 2 Displaying Naming Activity

The following example shows the naming activity for `ufs`, `nfs`, `nfs3`, `nfs4`, and `tmpfs`:

```
$ fsstat -n ufs nfs nfs3 nfs4 tmpfs
lookup creat remov  link renam mkdir rmdir rddir symlnk rdlnk
3.57M 3.10K 586  6  24 115 100 30.2K  5 330K ufs
  0   0   0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0 nfs
18.3K  3  5  0  0  0  0 1.03K  2 346 nfs3
```


EXAMPLE 2 Displaying Naming Activity *(Continued)*

```

535      0      0      0      0      0      0      46      0      4 nfs4
146     24     15      0      0      4      0      4      0      0 tmpfs

```

EXAMPLE 3 Displaying Attribute Activity

The following example shows the attribute activity for the FS type ufs and the mounted file systems “/” and “/export/home” every three seconds for every third iteration:

```

# fsstat -a ufs / /export/home 3 3
getattr setattr getsec setsec
378K   91.9K 11.8K    0 ufs
367K   82.3K 11.6K    0 /
11.3K   9.6K  198     0 /export/home
4.97K  2.27K  163     0 ufs
3.94K  1.36K  162     0 /
1.03K   927    1       0 /export/home
2.30K  1.06K  73      0 ufs
1.95K   766    71      0 /
361     317    2       0 /export/home
2.33K  1.06K  78      0 ufs
1.64K  451    77      0 /
711     631    1       0 /export/home

```

EXAMPLE 4 Displaying File Operation Statistics

The following example shows the statistics for each file operation for “/” (using the -f option):

```

$ fsstat -f /
Mountpoint: /
operation #ops bytes
  open 8.54K
  close 9.8K
  read 43.6K 65.9M
  write 1.57K 2.99M
  ioctl 2.06K
  setfl 4
getattr 40.3K
setattr 38
access 9.19K
lookup 203K
create 595
remove 56
  link 0
rename 9
  mkdir 19

```

EXAMPLE 4 Displaying File Operation Statistics (Continued)

```
    rmdir      0
  readdir 2.02K 2.27M
  symlink     4
 readlink 8.31K
   fsync    199
inactive 2.96K
   fid       0
  rwlock 47.2K
rwunlock 47.2K
   seek 29.1K
   cmp 42.9K
  frlock 4.45K
   space     8
  realvp 3.25K
 getpage 104K
 putpage 2.69K
   map 13.2K
 addmap 34.4K
 delmap 33.4K
   poll 287
   dump     0
 pathconf  54
  pageio   0
 dumpctl   0
 dispose 23.8K
getsecattr 697
setsecattr  0
  shrlock  0
  vnevent  0
```

Environment Variables See [environ\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following environment variables that affect the execution of `fsstat`: `LANG`, `LC_ALL`, `LC_CTYPE`, `LC_MESSAGES`, `LC_TIME`, and `NLSPATH`.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 A fatal error occurred. A fatal error could be a failed system call or another internal error.
- 2 Invalid command-line options were specified.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
CSI	Enabled
Interface Stability	See below.

The command-line options are Unstable. The human-readable output is not considered an interface.

See Also [date\(1\)](#), [time\(2\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes All display options (`-a`, `-f`, `-i`, `-n`, `-v`) are mutually exclusive. Entering more than one of these options will result in an error.

The *fstype* and *path* operands must appear after the option, but before the *interval* or *count* on the command line. For example, “`fsstat -a fstype interval`”. Preference is given to *fstype* so that if a user wishes to see the statistics for a directory that has the same name as an *fstype* (for example, `ufs`), then the path must be specified unambiguously (for example, `./ufs`). Similarly, in order to define a file with a numeric name (for example, “10”) from an interval or count operand, the name should be prefixed accordingly (for example, `./10`).

When an interval is used, headers repeat after more than 12 lines of statistics have been displayed and the set of lines to be displayed in the current interval have completed.

Statistics are not displayed for all pseudo-file systems. The output displayed with the `-F` option shows which of the loaded filesystem types are supported.

Unbundled file systems may not be recognized by `fsstat`.

The command-line options are classified as Unstable and could change. The output is not considered to be an interface. The construction of higher level software tools depend on either the command-line options or the output of `fsstat` is not recommended.

Name fstyp – determine file system type

Synopsis fstyp [-a | -v] *special* [:*logical-drive*]

Description fstyp allows the user to determine the file system type of unmounted file systems using heuristic programs.

An fstyp module for each file system type to be checked is executed; each of these modules applies an appropriate heuristic to determine whether the supplied *special* file is of the type for which it checks. If it is, the program prints on standard output the usual file system identifier for that type (for example, “ufs”) and exits with a return code of 0; if none of the modules succeed, the error message `unknown_fstyp` (no matches) is returned and the exit status is 1. If more than one module succeeds, the error message `unknown_fstyp` (multiple matches) is returned and the exit status is 2. Other errors are printed in the same format.

This command is unreliable and its results should not be used to make any decisions about subsequent use of a storage device or disk partition.

Options -a Output all available file system attributes. If a file system has been successfully identified, and this option is specified, the *FSType* identifier is followed by one or more “name-value” pairs, one per line, in the format:

```
name: value
```

The following conventions are recognized for the file system attributes:

- String values are put in single quotes.
- Nested “name-value” list increases the indentation of its values by four whitespaces.
- For an array of “name-value” pairs, one array entry is printed per line, with the index following the name in square brackets.

For instance, in the following example, “*top_list*” is a “name-value” list, consisting of a string array “*string_array*” and a “name-value” list array “*list_array*”. The second “*list_array*” element is an integer array “*int_array*” containing three elements.

```
top_string: 'String'
top_list:
  string_array[0]: 'S0'
  string_array[1]: 'S1'
  list_array[0]:
    int_one: 1
    string_two: 'S2'
  list_array[1]:
    int_array[0]: 1
    int_array[1]: 2
    int_array[2]: 3
```

In addition to the *FSType*-specific attributes, the following generic attributes may be present:

- gen_clean* Allowable values are “true” or “false”. If the value is “false”, the file system is damaged or was not unmounted cleanly and the [fsck\(1M\)](#) command must be run before this file system can be mounted.
- gen_guid* Globally unique identifier. This string uniquely identifies the file system.
- gen_version* A string describing the file system version.
- gen_volume_label* Volume label, a human-readable string used to either describe or identify the file system.
- v Produce verbose output. This is usually information about the file systems superblock and varies across different *FSTypes*. See [ufs\(7FS\)](#), [mkfs_ufs\(1M\)](#), and [tunefs\(1M\)](#) for details.

Usage See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of `fstyp` when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (2^{31} bytes).

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [fsck\(1M\)](#), [mkfs_ufs\(1M\)](#), [tunefs\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [libfstyp\(3LIB\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#), [hsfs\(7FS\)](#), [ufs\(7FS\)](#), [pcfs\(7FS\)](#)

Notes The use of heuristics implies that the result of `fstyp` is not guaranteed to be accurate.

This command is unreliable and its results should not be used to make any decisions about subsequent use of a storage device or disk partition.

Name ftppaddhost – set up a virtual FTP host

Synopsis ftppaddhost -c | -l [-b] [-x *xferlog*] *hostname root_dir*

Description The ftppaddhost script is executed by the super user to set up virtual FTP hosts. The ftppaddhost command configures the virtual host *hostname* under directory *root_dir*. The value of *hostname* can be an IP address or the name of a host.

Options The ftppaddhost script supports the following options:

- b Create a banner for the virtual host. This option is useful to confirm that the virtual host is working.
- c Configure complete virtual hosting. This option allows each virtual host to have its own version of the ftpaccess, ftpconversions, ftpgroups, ftphosts, and ftpusers files. The master version of each of these configuration files is copied from the /etc/ftpd directory and placed in the /etc/ftpd/virtual-*ftpd*/*hostname* directory. If the /etc/ftpusers file exists it is appended to the virtual ftpusers file. If a virtual host lacks its own version of a configuration file, the master version is used.
- l Configure limited virtual hosting. This option allows a small number of parameters to be configured differently for a virtual host. See the `virtual` keyword on the `ftpaccess(4)` manual page.
- x *xferlog* Create a logfile entry such that the transfer logs for the virtual host are written to the specified file. An absolute path must be specified for the *xferlog* file.

Operands The following operands are supported:

hostname The host name or IP address of the virtual server.

root_dir The absolute pathname of the directory under which the virtual server is set up.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion
- 1 Improper usage of the command
- 2 Command failed

Files /etc/ftpd/virtual-*ftpd*/*hostname* The configuration files directory for the virtual host *hostname*.

Attributes See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWftpu

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [ftpconfig\(1M\)](#), [in.ftpd\(1M\)](#), [ftpaccess\(4\)](#), [ftpconversions\(4\)](#), [ftpgroups\(4\)](#), [ftphosts\(4\)](#), [ftpusers\(4\)](#), [xferlog\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name ftpconfig – set up anonymous FTP

Synopsis ftpconfig [*ftpd*dir]
ftpconfig -d *ftpd*dir

Description The ftpconfig script is executed by the super user to set up anonymous FTP. Anonymous FTP allows users to remotely log on to the FTP server by specifying the user name ftp or anonymous and the user's email address as password. The anonymous users are logged on to the FTP Server and given access to a restricted file area with its own file system root. See [chroot\(2\)](#). The FTP area has its own minimal system files.

This command will copy and set up all the components needed to operate an anonymous FTP server, including creating the *ftp* user account, creating device nodes, copying */usr/lib* files, and copying timezone data. The *passwd* and *group* files set up have been stripped down to prevent malicious users from finding login names on the server. The anonymous file area will be placed under *ftpd*dir. If the *ftp* user account already exists, then the current FTP area is used, and the system files in it are updated. All other files are left untouched. This command should be run to update the anonymous FTP area's configuration whenever a system patch is installed, or the system is upgraded.

Options -d Create a new or update an existing *ftpd*dir without creating or updating the *ftp* user account. Use this option when creating guest FTP user accounts.

Operands The following operands are supported:

*ftpd*dir The absolute pathname of the directory under which the anonymous FTP area is set up.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion
- 1 Improper usage of the command
- 2 Command failed

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWftpu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [ftppaddhost\(1M\)](#), [in.ftpd\(1M\)](#), [useradd\(1M\)](#), [chroot\(2\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name ftprestart – restart previously shutdown FTP Servers

Synopsis ftprestart [-V]

Description Use the ftprestart command to restart an FTP Server previously shut down by means of [ftpshut\(1M\)](#). The ftprestart command reads the shutdown capability from the [ftpaccess\(4\)](#) file to determine the path of the shutdown message files. It then reenables the FTP Server by removing any shutdown message files in the anonymous and virtual FTP Server area, as well as the system wide shutdown message file.

Options The ftprestart command supports the following options:

-V Display program copyright and version information, then terminate.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Sample Output from ftprestart

The following example shows sample output from the ftprestart command:

```
example% ftprestart
ftprestart: /export/home/ftp/etc/ftpd/shutdown.msg removed.
ftprestart: /export/home/virtual1/etc/ftpd/shutdown.msg removed.
ftprestart: /etc/ftpd/shutdown.msg removed.
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

Files /etc/ftpd/ftpaccess

/etc/ftpd/ftpservers

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWftpu
Interface Stability	External

See Also [ftpshut\(1M\)](#), [in.ftpd\(1M\)](#), [ftpaccess\(4\)](#), [ftpservers\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name ftpshut – close down the FTP Servers at a given time

Synopsis ftpshut [-V] [-v] [-l *min*] [-d *min*] *time*
[*warning-message*]. . .

Description The ftpshut command provides an automated shutdown procedure that the superuser can use to notify FTP users when the FTP Server is shutting down.

Ten minutes before shutdown, or immediately if the value of *time* is less than ten minutes, any new FTP Server connections will be disabled. You may adjust the shutdown of new FTP Server connections by means of the -l option.

Five minutes before shutdown, or immediately if the value of *time* is less than five minutes, all current FTP connections will be disconnected. You may adjust the shutdown of current FTP connections by means of the -d option.

The ftpshut command creates shutdown message files that the FTP Server uses to determine when to shutdown. Separate shutdown message files are created in the anonymous and virtual host FTP Server areas, in addition to the system wide shutdown message file. Once the shutdown occurs, the server continues to refuse connections until the appropriate shutdown message file is removed. This normally is done by using the [ftprestart\(1M\)](#) command. The location of the shutdown message file is specified by the shutdown capability in the ftpaccess file.

The following magic cookies are available:

- %s The time system is going to shut down.
- %r The time new connections will be denied.
- %d The time current connections will be dropped.
- %C The current working directory.
- %E The maintainer's email address as defined in the ftpaccess file.
- %F The free space in the partition of CWD, in kilobytes.
- %L The local host name.
- %M The maximum allowed number of users in this class.
- %N The current number of users in this class.
- %R The remote host name.
- %T The local time (form Thu Nov 15 17:12:42 1990).
- %U The username given at login time.

Options The ftpshut command supports the following options:

- V Display program copyright and version information, then terminate.
- d *min* The time ahead of shutdown, in minutes, that existing connections will be disconnected upon completion of their current or next (if idle) FTP request.
- l *min* The time ahead of shutdown, in minutes, that new connections will be refused.
- v Verbose. Output the pathname of the shutdown message files created.

Operands The ftpshut command supports the following operands:

- time* The *time* at which ftpshut will bring the FTP Servers down. *time* can have a value of now, which indicates an immediate shutdown. Alternatively, *time* can specify a future time in one of two formats: *+number* or *HHMM*. The first form brings the FTP Server down in *number* minutes. The second brings the FTP Server down at the time of day indicated, using a 24-hour clock format. When using the absolute time format, you can only specify times between now and 23:59.
- warning-message* The message to display that warns of the imminent shutdown. The *warning-message* will be formatted at 70 characters wide. ftpshut knows the actual string length of the magic cookies. If no warning-message is supplied, the default message “System shutdown at %s” is used.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.

Files /etc/ftpd/ftpaccess
/etc/ftpd/ftpservers

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWftpu
Interface Stability	External

See Also [in.ftpd\(1M\)](#), [ftprestart\(1M\)](#), [shutdown\(1M\)](#), [ftpaccess\(4\)](#), [ftpservers\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name fuser – identify users of files and devices

Synopsis /usr/sbin/fuser [-c | -d | -f] [-nu] [-k | -s *sig*] *files*
[[-] [-c | -d | -f] [-nu] [-k | -s *sig*] *files*] ...

Description The fuser utility displays the process IDs of the processes that are using the *files* specified as arguments.

Each process ID is followed by a letter code. These letter codes are interpreted as follows. If the process is using the file as

- c Indicates that the process is using the file as its current directory.
- m Indicates that the process is using a file mapped with `mmap(2)`. See `mmap(2)` for details.
- n Indicates that the process is holding a non-blocking mandatory lock on the file.
- o Indicates that the process is using the file as an open file.
- r Indicates that the process is using the file as its root directory.
- t Indicates that the process is using the file as its text file.
- y Indicates that the process is using the file as its controlling terminal.

For block special devices with mounted file systems, all processes using any file on that device are listed. For all types of files (text files, executables, directories, devices, and so forth), only the processes using that file are reported.

For all types of devices, fuser also displays any known kernel consumers that have the device open. Kernel consumers are displayed in one of the following formats:

```
[module_name]  
[module_name, dev_path=path]  
[module_name, dev=(major, minor) ]  
[module_name, dev=(major, minor) , dev_path=path]
```

If more than one group of files are specified, the options may be respecified for each additional group of files. A lone dash cancels the options currently in force.

The process IDs are printed as a single line on the standard output, separated by spaces and terminated with a single new line. All other output is written on standard error.

Any user can run fuser, but only the superuser can terminate another user's process.

Options The following options are supported:

- c Reports on files that are mount points for file systems, and any files within that mounted file system.

- d Report device usage information for all minor nodes bound to the same device node as the specified minor node. This option does not report file usage for files within a mounted file system.
- f Prints a report for the named file, not for files within a mounted file system.
- k Sends the SIGKILL signal to each process. Since this option spawns kills for each process, the kill messages may not show up immediately (see [kill\(2\)](#)). No signals will be sent to kernel file consumers.
- n Lists only processes with non-blocking mandatory locks on a file.
- s *sig* Sends a signal to each process. The *sig* option argument specifies one of the symbolic names defined in the `<signal.h>` header, or a decimal integer signal number. If *sig* is a symbolic name, it is recognized in a case-independent fashion, without the SIG prefix. The -k option is equivalent to -s KILL or -s 9. No signals will be sent to kernel file consumers.
- u Displays the user login name in parentheses following the process ID.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Reporting on the Mount Point and Files

The following example reports on the mount point and files within the mounted file system.

```
example% fuser -c /export/foo
```

EXAMPLE 2 Restricting Output when Reporting on the Mount Point and Files

The following example reports on the mount point and files within the mounted file system, but the output is restricted to processes that hold non-blocking mandatory locks.

```
example% fuser -cn /export/foo
```

EXAMPLE 3 Sending SIGTERM to Processes Holding a Non-blocking Mandatory Lock

The following command sends SIGTERM to any processes that hold a non-blocking mandatory lock on file `/export/foo/my_file`.

```
example% fuser -fn -s term /export/foo/my_file
```

Environment Variables See [environ\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following environment variables that affect the execution of `fuser`: LANG, LC_ALL, LC_CTYPE, LC_MESSAGES, and NLSPATH.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Standard

See Also [ps\(1\)](#), [mount\(1M\)](#), [kill\(2\)](#), [mmap\(2\)](#), [signal\(3C\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#), [standards\(5\)](#)

Notes Because fuser works with a snapshot of the system image, it may miss processes that begin using a file while fuser is running. Also, processes reported as using a file may have stopped using it while fuser was running. These factors should discourage the use of the `-k` option.

Name fwflash – firmware query and update utility

Synopsis /usr/sbin/fwflash [-l [-c *device_class* | ALL]
 | [-v] | [-h]
 fwflash [-f *file1,file2,file3,...* | -r *file*]
 [-y] [-d *device_path*]

Description The fwflash command writes a binary image file to supported flashable devices attached to a Solaris host. It also provides the ability to read firmware to a file if supported by the device. Because changing the firmware in a device can have significant impact on the stability of a system, only users with the privilege ALL are allowed to execute this command. Users authorized to run fwflash can be granted the “Firmware Flash Update” Rights Profile.

The first form of the command, above, provides information about devices. It lists all devices currently available on the system that are supported by fwflash for firmware upgrade. You can filter the list operation, to display only specified classes of devices. The second form of the command provides the operations to read or write the firmware images to specific devices.

Options The following options are supported:

-c *device_class*

An optional parameter, valid only when used with the -l option. This option causes the command to list only devices of a specific class type. Currently supported classes are IB, ses, sesgen, or ALL. If -c is not specified for the -l option, the class defaults to ALL.

-d *dev_path*

The *dev_path* is absolute path name of the device that the user wants to modify with the -f or -r operation. If the device cannot be found, the command fails. If the -d option is specified, then either -f or -r must also be specified.

-f *file1,file2,file3,...*

Specify the path to one or more binary firmware image files you want to write to the device. fwflash will verify that each file is a valid firmware image for the specified device. If it is not, the command fails with an appropriate error message.

If multiple firmware image files are specified, each image is verified and flashed to the device in the order given on the command line. If any of the specified files cannot be successfully flashed, then an appropriate message is displayed.

After a new firmware image is flashed to a device, a reboot is required to correctly activate the new firmware.

-h

Display the command line usage message for fwflash.

-l

List the devices on a system available for firmware upgrade and display information specific to each device or device class.

For InfiniBand (IB) devices, the list operation displays the guids (Globally Unique Identifier) currently set for the HCA, as well as the current firmware revision installed. There are four separate guids on the HCA; two of them can be set with the same value.

For SCSI Enclosure Services (ses or sgen) devices, an identifying target-port worldwide name is displayed, if available.

-r *file*

Specify the path to a file to create when reading the firmware from the device. The **-f** and **-r** options are mutually exclusive.

Not all flashable devices support reading firmware images back from the device. At present, only InfiniBand (IB) devices are supported for this operation. A message will be displayed if the selected device does not support this operation.

-v

Display fwflash version information and exit.

-y

Valid only when a flash read (**-r**) or write (**-f**) operation is specified. This option causes fwflash not to prompt for confirmation during operation and operate non-interactively. Note that there is no option that allows you to forcibly flash an incompatible firmware image onto a device.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Entering Command Without Arguments

The following command shows fwflash when the command is entered without arguments.

```
example# fwflash
```

```
Usage:
```

```
Usage:
```

```
fwflash [-l [-c device_class | ALL]] | [-v] | [-h]
fwflash [-f file1,file2,file3,... | -r file] [-y] -d device_path
```

```
-l          list flashable devices in this system
-c device_class limit search to a specific class
             eg IB for InfiniBand, ses for SCSI Enclosures
-v          print version number of fwflash utility
-h          print this usage message
```

```
-f file1,file2,file3,...
             firmware image file list to flash
-r file     file to dump device firmware to
-y         answer Yes/Y/y to prompts
-d device_path pathname of device to be flashed
```

```
If -d device_path is specified, then one of -f <files>
or -r <file> must also be specified
```


EXAMPLE 1 Entering Command Without Arguments *(Continued)*

If multiple firmware images are required to be flashed they must be listed together, separated by commas. The images will be flashed in the order specified.

EXAMPLE 2 Listing Devices Available to Flash

The following command lists the devices available to be flashed.

```
example# fwflash -l
List of available devices:
Device[0], /devices/pci@0,0/pci8086,3595@2/pci8086,32a@0,2/\
pci15b3,5a46@pci15b3,5a44@0:devctl
Class [IB]
  GUID: System Image - 0002c901081e33b3
  Node                - 0000000000003446
  Port 1              - 0002c901081e33b1
  Port 2              - 0002c901081e33b2
  Firmware revision: 3.3.0002
  No hardware information available for this device

Device[1], /devices/pci@0,0/pci8086,3597@4/pci15b3,6278@0:devctl
Class [IB]
  GUID: System Image - 0002c9010a99e3b3
  Node                - 0002c9010a99e3b0
  Port 1              - 0002c9010a99e3b1
  Port 2              - 0002c9010a99e3b2
  Firmware revision: 4.8.00c8
  Product             : MTLP25208-CF256T (Lion cub)
  PSID                : MT_00B0000001
```

Alternatively, for a SAS Expander presented as a SCSI Enclosure Services device, we might see output such as this:

```
example# fwflash -l
List of available devices:
Device[0] /devices/pci@0/pci@0/pci@2/scsi@0/ses@3,0:ses
Class [sgen]
  Target port WWN    : 500605b00002453d
  Vendor             : SUN
  Product            : 16Disk Backplane
  Firmware revision: 5021
```

EXAMPLE 3 Flash Upgrading an IB HCA Device

The following command flash upgrades an IB HCA device.

EXAMPLE 3 Flash Upgrading an IB HCA Device *(Continued)*

```
example# fwflash -f ./version.3.2.0000 \
  -d /devices/pci@0,0/pci8086,3597@4/pci15b3,6278@0:devctl
About to update firmware on:
  /devices/pci@0,0/pci8086,3597@4/pci15b3,6278@0:devctl
Continue (Y/N): Y

Updating . . . . .
Done. New image will be active after the system is rebooted.
```

Note that you are prompted before the upgrading proceeds and that it is mandatory that you reboot your host to activate the new firmware image.

The following command adds the `-y` option to the command.

```
example# fwflash -y -f ./version.3.2.0000 \
  -d /devices/pci@0,0/pci8086,3597@4/pci15b3,6278@0:devctl
About to update firmware on:
  /devices/pci@0,0/pci8086,3597@4/pci15b3,6278@0:devctl

Updating . . . . .
Done. New image will be active after the system is rebooted.
```

EXAMPLE 4 Reading Device Firmware to File

The command shown below reads the device firmware to a file. The command uses the `-y` option so that read occurs without prompting.

```
example# fwflash -y -r /firmware.bin \
  -d /devices/pci@1d,700000/pci@1/pci15b3,5a44@0:devctl
About to read firmware on:
  /devices/pci@1d,700000/pci@1/pci15b3,5a44@0:devctl
to filename: /firmware.bin

Reading . . .
Done.
```

EXAMPLE 5 When No Flashable Devices Are Found

The command output shown below informs the user that there are no supported flashable devices found in the system:

```
example# fwflash -l
fwflash: No flashable devices attached with the ses driver in this system
fwflash: No flashable devices attached with the sgen driver in this system
fwflash: No flashable devices attached with the tavor driver in this system
fwflash: No flashable devices in this system
```

EXAMPLE 5 When No Flashable Devices Are Found (Continued)

Each plugin found in `/usr/lib/fwflash/identify` is loaded in turn, and walks the system device tree, determining whether any currently-attached devices can be flashed. For the list of device types and drivers that are currently supported, please see the NOTES section below.

Return Values The `fwflash` command returns the following values:

- 0
Success
- 1
Failure

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWfwflash
Interface Stability	Committed

See Also [attributes\(5\)](#), [hermon\(7D\)](#), [ses\(7D\)](#), [tavor\(7D\)](#)

The InfiniBand Trade Association website, <http://www.infinibandta.org>

The SCSI Storage Interfaces committee website, <http://www.t10.org>

SCSI Primary Commands-4, SPC4

SCSI Enclosure Services-2, SES2

Serial Attached SCSI-2, SAS2

Notes The `fwflash` command supports:

- InfiniBand Host Channel Adapters (IB HCAs) containing either the AMD or the Intel parallel flash parts.
- SCSI Enclosure Services devices such as SAS Expanders, attached with [ses\(7D\)](#) drivers.

Name fwtmp, wtmpfix – manipulate connect accounting records

Synopsis /usr/lib/acct/fwtmp [-ic]
/usr/lib/acct/wtmpfix [*file*]...

Description fwtmp reads from the standard input and writes to the standard output, converting binary records of the type found in /var/adm/wtmpx to formatted ASCII records. The ASCII version is useful when it is necessary to edit bad records.

wtmpfix examines the standard input or named files in utmpx format, corrects the time/date stamps to make the entries consistent, and writes to the standard output. A hyphen (-) can be used in place of *file* to indicate the standard input. If time/date corrections are not performed, [acctcon\(1M\)](#) will fault when it encounters certain date-change records.

Each time the date is set, a pair of date change records are written to /var/adm/wtmpx. The first record is the old date denoted by the string "old time" placed in the `line` field and the flag `OLD_TIME` placed in the `type` field of the utmpx structure. The second record specifies the new date and is denoted by the string `new time` placed in the `line` field and the flag `NEW_TIME` placed in the `type` field. wtmpfix uses these records to synchronize all time stamps in the file.

In addition to correcting time/date stamps, wtmpfix will check the validity of the `name` field to ensure that it consists solely of alphanumeric characters or spaces. If it encounters a name that is considered invalid, it will change the login name to `INVALID` and write a diagnostic to the standard error. In this way, wtmpfix reduces the chance that `acctcon` will fail when processing connect accounting records.

Options -ic Denotes that input is in ASCII form, and output is to be written in binary form.

Files /var/adm/wtmpx history of user access and administration information

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWaccu

See Also [acctcom\(1\)](#), [ed\(1\)](#), [acct\(1M\)](#), [acctcms\(1M\)](#), [acctcon\(1M\)](#), [acctmerg\(1M\)](#), [acctprc\(1M\)](#), [acctsh\(1M\)](#), [runacct\(1M\)](#), [acct\(2\)](#), [acct.h\(3HEAD\)](#), [utmpx\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

System Administration Guide: Basic Administration

Name getdev – lists devices based on criteria

Synopsis getdev [-ae] [*criteria*]... [*device*]...

Description getdev generates a list of devices that match certain criteria. The criteria includes a list of attributes (given in expressions) and a list of devices. If no criteria are given, all devices are included in the list.

Devices must satisfy at least one of the criteria in the list unless the -a option is used. Then, only those devices which match all of the criteria in a list will be included.

Devices which are defined on the command line and which match the criteria are included in the generated list. However, if the -e option is used, the list becomes a set of devices to be *excluded* from the list. See OPTIONS and OPERANDS.

Options The following options are supported:

- a Specifies that a device must match all criteria to be included in the list generated by this command. The option has no effect if no criteria are defined.
- e Specifies that the list of devices which follows on the command line should be *excluded* from the list generated by this command. Without the -e the named devices are *included* in the generated list. The flag has no effect if no devices are defined.

Operands The following operands are supported:

criteria Defines the criteria that a device must match to be included in the generated list. *criteria* is specified by expressions.

There are four possible expression types which the criteria specified in the *criteria* argument may follow:

- | | |
|-------------------------|---|
| <i>attribute=value</i> | Selects all devices whose attribute <i>attribute</i> is defined and is equal to <i>value</i> . |
| <i>attribute!=value</i> | Selects all devices whose attribute <i>attribute</i> is defined and does not equal <i>value</i> . |
| <i>attribute:*</i> | Selects all devices which have the attribute <i>attribute</i> defined. |
| <i>attribute! :*</i> | Selects all devices which do not have the attribute <i>attribute</i> defined. |

See the [putdev\(1M\)](#) manual page for a complete listing and description of available attributes.

device Defines the devices which should be included in the generated list. This can be the pathname of the device or the device alias.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 Command syntax was incorrect, invalid option was used, or an internal error occurred.
- 2 Device table could not be opened for reading.

Files /etc/device.tab

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [devattr\(1M\)](#), [getdgrp\(1M\)](#), [putdev\(1M\)](#), [putdgrp\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name getdevpolicy – inspect the system's device policy

Synopsis /usr/sbin/getdevpolicy [*device*|PO]

Description Without arguments, getdevpolicy outputs the device policy in effect to standard output.

With arguments, each argument is treated as a pathname to a device and the device policy in effect for that specific device is printed preceeded by the supplied pathname.

Usage The device policy adds access restrictions over and above the file permissions.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

non-zero An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	See below

The invocation is evolving. The output is unstable.

See Also [add_drv\(1M\)](#), [rem_drv\(1M\)](#), [update_drv\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [privileges\(5\)](#), [devfs\(7FS\)](#)

Name getdgrp – lists device groups which contain devices that match criteria

Synopsis /usr/sbin/getdgrp [-ae \l] [*criteria*] \dots [*dgroup*] \dots

Description getdgrp generates a list of device groups that contain devices matching the given criteria. The criteria is given in the form of expressions.

Options The following options are supported:

- a Specifies that a device must match all criteria to be included in the list generated by this command. The option has no effect if no criteria are defined.
- e Specifies that the list of device groups on the command line should be *excluded* from the list generated by this command. Without the -e option the named device groups are *included* in the generated list. The flag has no effect if no devices are defined.
- \l Specifies that all device groups (subject to the -e option and the *dgroup* list) should be listed even if they contain no valid device members. This option has no affect if *criteria* is specified on the command line.

Operands The following operands are supported:

criteria Defines criteria that a device must match before a device group to which it belongs can be included in the generated list. Specify *criteria* as an expression or a list of expressions which a device must meet for its group to be included in the list generated by getdgrp. If no criteria are given, all device groups are included in the list.

Devices must satisfy at least one of the criteria in the list. However, the -a option can be used to define that a "logical and" operation should be performed. Then, only those groups containing devices which match all of the criteria in a list will be included.

There are four possible expressions types which the criteria specified in the *criteria* argument may follow:

attribute=value Selects all device groups with a member whose attribute *attribute* is defined and is equal to *value*.

attribute!=value Selects all device groups with a member whose attribute *attribute* is defined and does not equal *value*.

*attribute:** Selects all device groups with a member which has the attribute *attribute* defined.

*attribute! : ** Selects all device groups with a member which does not have the attribute *attribute* defined.

See [putdev\(1M\)](#) for a complete listing and description of available attributes.

dgroup Defines a set of device groups which should be included in or excluded from the generated list. Device groups that are defined and which contain devices matching the criteria are included.

If the `-e` option is used, this list defines a set of device groups to be excluded. When the `-e` option is used and *criteria* is also defined, the generated list will include device groups containing devices which match the criteria and are not in the command line list.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion of the task.
- 1 Command syntax was incorrect, invalid option was used, or an internal error occurred.
- 2 Device table or device group table could not be opened for reading.

Files /etc/device.tab

/etc/dgroup.tab

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [devattr\(1M\)](#), [getdev\(1M\)](#), [putdev\(1M\)](#), [putdgrp\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name getent – get entries from administrative database

Synopsis getent *database* [*key*] . . .

Description getent gets a list of entries from the administrative database specified by *database*. The information generally comes from one or more of the sources that are specified for the *database* in `/etc/nsswitch.conf`.

database is the name of the database to be examined. This can be `passwd`, `group`, `hosts`, `ipnodes`, `services`, `protocols`, `ethers`, `project`, `networks`, or `netmasks`. For each of these databases, getent uses the appropriate library routines described in `getpwnam(3C)`, `getgrnam(3C)`, `gethostbyaddr(3NSL)`, `gethostbyname(3NSL)`, `getipnodebyaddr(3SOCKET)`, `getipnodebyname(3SOCKET)`, `getservbyname(3SOCKET)`, `getprotobyname(3SOCKET)`, `ethers(3SOCKET)`, `getprojbyname(3PROJECT)` and `getnetbyname(3SOCKET)`, respectively.

Each *key* must be in a format appropriate for searching on the respective database. For example, it can be a *username* or *numeric-uid* for `passwd`; *hostname* or *IP address* for `hosts`; or *service*, *service/protocol*, *port*, or *port/proto* for `services`.

getent prints out the database entries that match each of the supplied keys, one per line, in the format of the matching administrative file: `passwd(4)`, `group(4)`, `project(4)`, `hosts(4)`, `services(4)`, `protocols(4)`, `ethers(4)`, `networks(4)`, or `netmasks(4)`. If no key is given, all entries returned by the corresponding enumeration library routine, for example, `getpwent()` or `gethostent()`, are printed. Enumeration is not supported on `ipnodes`, `ethers`, and `netmasks`.

Key Interpretation for
passwd and group
Databases When getent is invoked with database set to `passwd`, each key value is processed as follows:

- If the key value consists only of numeric characters, getent assumes that the key value is a numeric user ID and searches the user database for a matching user ID.
- If the user ID is not found in the user database or if the key value contains any non-numeric characters, getent assumes the key value is a user name and searches the user database for a matching user name.

Similarly, when getent is invoked with database set to `group`, each key value is processed as follows:

- If the key value consists only of numeric characters, getent assumes that the key value is a numeric group ID and searches the group database for a matching group ID.
- If the group ID is not found in the group database or if the key value contains any non-numeric characters, getent assumes the key value is a group name and searches the group database for a matching group name.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 Command syntax was incorrect, an invalid option was used, or an internal error occurred.
- 2 At least one of the specified entry names was not found in the database.
- 3 There is no support for enumeration on this database.

Files

/etc/nsswitch.conf	name service switch configuration file
/etc/passwd	password file
/etc/group	group file
/etc/inet/hosts	IPv4 and IPv6 host name database
/etc/services	Internet services and aliases
/etc/project	project file
/etc/protocols	protocol name database
/etc/ethers	Ethernet address to hostname database or domain
/etc/networks	network name database
/etc/netmasks	network mask database

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [ethers\(3SOCKET\)](#), [getgrnam\(3C\)](#), [gethostbyaddr\(3NSL\)](#), [gethostbyname\(3NSL\)](#), [gethostent\(3NSL\)](#), [getipnodebyaddr\(3SOCKET\)](#), [getipnodebyname\(3SOCKET\)](#), [getnetbyname\(3SOCKET\)](#), [getprojbyname\(3PROJECT\)](#), [getprotobyname\(3SOCKET\)](#), [getpwnam\(3C\)](#), [getservbyname\(3SOCKET\)](#), [ethers\(4\)](#), [group\(4\)](#), [hosts\(4\)](#), [netmasks\(4\)](#), [networks\(4\)](#), [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#), [passwd\(4\)](#), [project\(4\)](#), [protocols\(4\)](#), [services\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name gettable – get DoD Internet format host table from a host

Synopsis /usr/sbin/gettable *host*

Description gettable is a simple program used to obtain the DoD Internet host table from a “hostname” server. The specified *host* is queried for the table. The table is placed in the file `hosts.txt`.

gettable operates by opening a TCP connection to the port indicated in the service specification for “hostname”. A request is then made for all names and the resultant information is placed in the output file.

gettable is best used in conjunction with the [htable\(1M\)](#) program which converts the DoD Internet host table format to that used by the network library lookup routines.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWnisu

See Also [htable\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#) Harrenstien, Ken, Mary Stahl, and Elizabeth Feinler, *HOSTNAME Server*, RFC 953, Network Information Center, SRI International, Menlo Park, California, October 1985.

Notes Should allow requests for only part of the database.

Name getty – set terminal type, modes, speed, and line discipline

Synopsis /usr/lib/saf/ttymon [-h] [-t *timeout*] *line*
 [*speed* [*type* [*linedisc*]]]
 /usr/lib/saf/ttymon -c *file*

Description getty sets terminal type, modes, speed, and line discipline. getty is a symbolic link to /usr/lib/saf/ttymon. It is included for compatibility with previous releases for the few applications that still call getty directly.

getty can only be executed by the super-user, (a process with the user ID root). Initially getty prints the login prompt, waits for the user's login name, and then invokes the login command. getty attempts to adapt the system to the terminal speed by using the options and arguments specified on the command line.

Without optional arguments, getty specifies the following: The *speed* of the interface is set to 300 baud, either parity is allowed, NEWLINE characters are converted to carriage return-line feed, and tab expansion is performed on the standard output. getty types the login prompt before reading the user's name a character at a time. If a null character (or framing error) is received, it is assumed to be the result of the user pressing the BREAK key. This will cause getty to attempt the next *speed* in the series. The series that getty tries is determined by what it finds in /etc/ttydefs .

Options The following options are supported:

- h If the -h flag is not set, a hangup will be forced by setting the speed to zero before setting the speed to the default or a specified speed.
- t *timeout* Specifies that getty should exit if the open on the line succeeds and no one types anything in *timeout* seconds.
- c *file* The -c option is no longer supported. Instead use /usr/sbin/sttydefs -l to list the contents of the /etc/ttydefs file and perform a validity check on the file.

Operands The following operands are supported:

- line* The name of a TTY line in /dev to which getty is to attach itself. getty uses this string as the name of a file in the /dev directory to open for reading and writing.
- speed* The *speed* argument is a label to a speed and TTY definition in the file /etc/ttydefs. This definition tells getty at what speed to run initially, what the initial TTY settings are, and what speed to try next, (should the user press the BREAK key to indicate that the speed is inappropriate). The default *speed* is 300 baud.
- type* and *linedisc* These options are obsolete and will be ignored.

Files /etc/ttydefs

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsr

See Also [ct\(1C\)](#), [login\(1\)](#), [sttydefs\(1M\)](#), [ttymon\(1M\)](#), [ioctl\(2\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [tty\(7D\)](#)

Name getvol – verifies device accessibility

Synopsis /usr/bin/getvol -n [-l *label*] *device*
/usr/bin/getvol [-f | -F] [-ow] [-l *label* | -x *label*] *device*

Description getvol verifies that the specified device is accessible and that a volume of the appropriate medium has been inserted. The command is interactive and displays instructional prompts, describes errors, and shows required label information.

Options The following options are supported:

- n Runs the command in non-interactive mode. The volume is assumed to be inserted upon command invocation.
- l *label* Specifies that the label *label* must exist on the inserted volume (can be overridden by the -o option).
- f Formats the volume after insertion, using the format command defined for this device in the device table.
- F Formats the volume after insertion and places a file system on the device. Also uses the format command defined for this device in the device table.
- o Allows the administrator to override a label check.
- w Allows administrator to write a new label on the device. User is prompted to supply the label text. This option is ineffective if the -n option is enabled.
- x *label* Specifies that the label *label* must exist on the device. This option should be used in place of the -l option when the label can only be verified by visual means. Use of the option causes a message to be displayed asking the administrator to visually verify that the label is indeed *label*.

Operands The following operands are supported:

device Specifies the device to be verified for accessibility.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 Command syntax was incorrect, invalid option was used, or an internal error occurred.
- 3 Device table could not be opened for reading.

Files /etc/device.tab

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes This command uses the device table to determine the characteristics of the device when performing the volume label checking.

Name gkadmin – Kerberos principals and policies administration GUI

Synopsis /usr/sbin/gkadmin

Description gkadmin is an interactive graphical user interface (GUI) that enables you to maintain Kerberos principals and policies. gkadmin provides much the same functionality as the [kadmin\(1M\)](#) command.

gkadmin does not support the management of keytabs. You must use kadmin for keytabs management. gkadmin uses Kerberos authentication and an encrypted RPC to operate securely from anywhere on the network.

When gkadmin is invoked, the login window is populated with default values. For the principal name, gkadmin determines your user name from the USER environment variable. It appends /admin to the name (*username/admin*) to create a default user instance in the same manner as kadmin. It also selects appropriate defaults for realm and master KDC (*admin_server*) from the `/etc/krb5/krb5.conf` file.

You can change these defaults on the login window. When you enter your password, a session is started with kadmin. Operations performed are subject to permissions that are granted or denied to the chosen user instance by the Kerberos ACL file. See [kadm5.acl\(4\)](#).

After the session is started, a tabbed folder is displayed that contains a principal list and a policy list. The functionality is mainly the same as kadmin, with addition, deletion, and modification of principal and policy data available.

gkadmin also includes an interface to specify principal key encryption types when modifying or creating principal records. The default set of encryption types is used if they are not selected through this interface. The default set of encryption types can be found in `krb5.conf(4)` under the `default_tkt_enctypes` section.

In addition, gkadmin provides the following features:

- New principal or policy records can be added either from default values or from the settings of an existing principal.
- A comment field is available for principals.
- Default values are saved in `$HOME/.gkadmin`.
- A logout option permits you to log back in as another user instance without exiting the tool.
- Principal and policy lists and attributes can be printed or saved to a file.
- Online context-sensitive help and general help is available in the Help menu.

Files /etc/krb5/krb5.conf Kerberos configuration information on a Kerberos client. Used to search for default realm and master KDC (*admin_server*), including a port number for the master KDC.

`$HOME/.gkadmin` Default parameters used to initialize new principals created during the session.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWkdcu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [kpasswd\(1\)](#), [kadmin\(1M\)](#), [kadmin\(1M\)](#), [kadmin.local\(1M\)](#), [kdb5_util\(1M\)](#), [kadm5.acl\(4\)](#), [kdc.conf\(4\)](#), [krb5.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [kerberos\(5\)](#)

Diagnostics The `gkadmin` interface is currently incompatible with the MIT `kadmin` daemon interface, so you cannot use this interface to administer an MIT-based Kerberos database. However, clients running the Solaris implementation of Kerberos can still use an MIT-based KDC.

Name groupadd – add (create) a new group definition on the system

Synopsis /usr/sbin/groupadd [-g *gid* [-o]] *group*

Description The groupadd command creates a new group definition on the system by adding the appropriate entry to the /etc/group file.

Options The following options are supported:

- g *gid* Assigns the group id *gid* for the new group. This group id must be a non-negative decimal integer below MAXUID as defined in /usr/include/sys/param.h. The group ID defaults to the next available (unique) number above the highest number currently assigned. For example, if groups 100, 105, and 200 are assigned as groups, the next default group number will be 201. (Group IDs from 0–99 are reserved by SunOS for future applications.)
- o Allows the *gid* to be duplicated (non-unique).

Operands The following operands are supported:

- group* A string consisting of characters from the set of lower case alphabetic characters and numeric characters. A warning message will be written if the string exceeds MAXGLEN, which is usually set at eight characters. The *group* field must contain at least one character; it accepts lower case or numeric characters or a combination of both, and must not contain a colon (:) or NEWLINE.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 2 Invalid command syntax. A usage message for the groupadd command is displayed.
- 3 An invalid argument was provided to an option.
- 4 The *gid* is not unique (when -o option is not used).
- 9 The *group* is not unique.
- 10 The /etc/group file cannot be updated.

- Files**
- /etc/group
 - /usr/include/userdefs.h

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [users\(1B\)](#), [groupdel\(1M\)](#), [groupmod\(1M\)](#), [grpck\(1M\)](#), [logins\(1M\)](#), [pwck\(1M\)](#), [useradd\(1M\)](#), [userdel\(1M\)](#), [usermod\(1M\)](#), [group\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes `groupadd` only adds a group definition to the local system. If a network name service such as NIS is being used to supplement the local `/etc/group` file with additional entries, `groupadd` cannot change information supplied by the network name service. However, `groupadd` will verify the uniqueness of group name and group ID against the external name service.

If the number of characters in a group entry exceeds 2047, group maintenance commands, such as [groupdel\(1M\)](#) and [groupmod\(1M\)](#), fail.

Name groupdel – delete a group definition from the system

Synopsis /usr/sbin/groupdel *group*

Description The groupdel utility deletes a group definition from the system. It deletes the appropriate entry from the /etc/group file.

Operands *group* An existing group name to be deleted.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Success.
- 2 Invalid command syntax. A usage message for the groupdel command is displayed.
- 6 *group* does not exist.
- 10 Cannot update the /etc/group file.

Files /etc/group system file containing group definitions

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [users\(1B\)](#), [groupadd\(1M\)](#), [groupmod\(1M\)](#), [logins\(1M\)](#), [useradd\(1M\)](#), [userdel\(1M\)](#), [usermod\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes The groupdel utility only deletes a group definition that is in the local /etc/group file. If a network nameservice such as NIS or NIS+ is being used to supplement the local /etc/group file with additional entries, groupdel cannot change information supplied by the network nameservice.

groupdel fails if a group entry (a single line in /etc/group) exceeds 2047 characters.

Name groupmod – modify a group definition on the system

Synopsis /usr/sbin/groupmod [-g *gid* [-o]] [-n *name*] *group*

Description The groupmod command modifies the definition of the specified group by modifying the appropriate entry in the /etc/group file.

Options The following options are supported:

- g *gid* Specify the new group ID for the group. This group ID must be a non-negative decimal integer less than MAXUID, as defined in <param.h>. The group ID defaults to the next available (unique) number above 99. (Group IDs from 0-99 are reserved by SunOS for future applications.)
- n *name* Specify the new name for the group. The *name* argument is a string of no more than eight bytes consisting of characters from the set of lower case alphabetic characters and numeric characters. A warning message will be written if these restrictions are not met. A future Solaris release may refuse to accept group fields that do not meet these requirements. The *name* argument must contain at least one character and must not include a colon (:) or NEWLINE (\n).
- o Allow the *gid* to be duplicated (non-unique).

Operands The following operands are supported:

group An existing group name to be modified.

Exit Status The groupmod utility exits with one of the following values:

- 0 Success.
- 2 Invalid command syntax. A usage message for the groupmod command is displayed.
- 3 An invalid argument was provided to an option.
- 4 *gid* is not unique (when the -o option is not used).
- 6 *group* does not exist.
- 9 *name* already exists as a group name.
- 10 Cannot update the /etc/group file.

Files /etc/group *group* file

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [users\(1B\)](#), [groupadd\(1M\)](#), [groupdel\(1M\)](#), [logins\(1M\)](#), [useradd\(1M\)](#), [userdel\(1M\)](#), [usermod\(1M\)](#), [group\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes The groupmod utility only modifies group definitions in the `/etc/group` file. If a network name service such as NIS is being used to supplement the local `/etc/group` file with additional entries, groupmod cannot change information supplied by the network name service. The groupmod utility will, however, verify the uniqueness of group name and group ID against the external name service.

groupmod fails if a group entry (a single line in `/etc/group`) exceeds 2047 characters.

Name growfs – non-destructively expand a UFS file system

Synopsis /usr/sbin/growfs [-M *mount-point*] [*newfs-options*]
[*raw-device*]

Description growfs non-destructively expands a mounted or unmounted UNIX file system (UFS) to the size of the file system's slice(s).

Typically, disk space is expanded by first adding a slice to a metadvice, then running the growfs command. When adding space to a mirror, you expand each submirror before expanding the file system.

growfs will “write-lock” (see [lockfs\(1M\)](#)) a mounted file system when expanding. The length of time the file system is write-locked can be shortened by expanding the file system in stages. For instance, to expand a 1 Gbyte file system to 2 Gbytes, the file system can be grown in 16 Mbyte stages using the -s option to specify the total size of the new file system at each stage. The argument for -s is the number of sectors, and must be a multiple of the cylinder size. Note: The file system cannot be grown if a cylinder size of less than 2 is specified. Refer to the [newfs\(1M\)](#) man page for information on the options available when growing a file system.

growfs displays the same information as mkfs during the expansion of the file system.

If growfs is aborted, recover any lost free space by unmounting the file system and running the fsck command, or run the growfs command again.

Note: If growfs is aborted and the file system is used before fsck is run on it, UFS metadata might be left in an incomplete state, with the result that the file system would be corrupted. In such a circumstance, you would have to restore the file system from backups.

Options Root privileges are required for all of the following options.

-M *mount-point* The file system to be expanded is mounted on *mount-point*. File system locking (lockfs) will be used.

newfs-options The options are documented in the newfs man page.

raw-device Specifies the name of a raw metadvice or raw special device, residing in /dev/md/rdisk, or /dev/rdisk, respectively, including the disk slice, where you want the file system to be grown.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Expanding nonmetadvice slice for /export file system

The following example expands a nonmetadvice slice for the /export file system. In this example, the existing slice, /dev/dsk/c1t0d0s3, is converted to a metadvice so additional slices can be concatenated.

```
# metainit -f d8 2 1 c1t0d0s3 1 c2t0d0s3
# umount /export
```


EXAMPLE 2 Associate /export with new metadvice

Edit the `/etc/vfstab` file to change the entry for `/export` to the newly defined metadvice, `d8`.

```
# mount /export
# growfs -M /export /dev/md/rdisk/d8
```

The first example starts by running the `metainit` command with the `-f` option to force the creation of a new concatenated metadvice `d8`, which consists of the existing slice `/dev/dsk/c1t0d0s3` and a new slice `/dev/dsk/c2t0d0s3`. Next, the file system on `/export` must be unmounted. The `/etc/vfstab` file is edited to change the entry for `/export` to the newly defined metadvice name, rather than the slice name. After the file system is remounted, the `growfs` command is run to expand the file system. The file system will span the entire metadvice when `growfs` completes. The `-M` option enables the `growfs` command to expand a mounted file system. During the expansion, write access for `/export` is suspended until `growfs` unlocks the file system. Read access is not affected, though access times are not kept when the lock is in effect.

EXAMPLE 3 Dynamic Expansion of /export file system

The following example picks up from the previous one. Here, the `/export` file system mounted on metadvice `d8` is dynamically expanded.

```
# metattach d8 c0t1d0s2
# growfs -M /export /dev/md/rdisk/d8
```

This example begins by using the `metattach` command to dynamically concatenate a new slice, `/dev/dsk/c0t1d0s2`, to the end of an existing metadvice, `d8`. Next, the `growfs` command specifies that the mount-point is `/export` and that it is to be expanded onto the raw metadvice `/dev/md/rdisk/d8`. The file system will span the entire metadvice when `growfs` completes. During the expansion, write access for `/export` is suspended until `growfs` unlocks the file system. Read access is not affected, though access times are not kept when the lock is in effect.

EXAMPLE 4 Expanding mounted file system to existing mirror

The following example expands a mounted file system `/files`, to an existing mirror, `d80`, which contains two submirrors, `d9` and `d10`.

```
# metattach d9 c0t2d0s5
# metattach d10 c0t3d0s5
# growfs -M /files /dev/md/rdisk/d80
```

In this example, the `metattach` command dynamically concatenates the new slices to each submirror. The `metattach` command must be run for each submirror. The mirror will

EXAMPLE 4 Expanding mounted file system to existing mirror (Continued)

automatically grow when the last submirror is dynamically concatenated. The mirror will grow to the size of the smallest submirror. The `growfs` command then expands the file system. The `growfs` command specifies that the mount-point is `/files` and that it is to be expanded onto the raw metadvice `/dev/md/rdisk/d80`. The file system will span the entire mirror when the `growfs` command completes. During the expansion, write access for the file system is suspended until `growfs` unlocks the file system. Read access is not affected, though access times are not kept when the lock is in effect.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWmdu

See Also [fsck\(1M\)](#), [lockfs\(1M\)](#), [mkfs\(1M\)](#), [metattach\(1M\)](#), [newfs\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Solaris Volume Manager Administration Guide

Limitations Only UFS file systems (either mounted or unmounted) can be expanded using the `growfs` command. Once a file system is expanded, it cannot be decreased in size. The following conditions prevent you from expanding file systems: When `acct` is activated and the accounting file is on the target device. When C2 security is activated and the logging file is on the target file system. When there is a local swap file in the target file system. When the file system is root (`/`), `/usr`, or `swap`.

Name gsscred – add, remove, and list gsscred table entries

Synopsis gsscred [-n *user* [-o *oid*] [-u *uid*]] [-c *comment*] -m *mech* -a
 gsscred [-n *user* [-o *oid*]] [-u *uid*] [-m *mech*] -r
 gsscred [-n *user* [-o *oid*]] [-u *uid*] [-m *mech*] -l

Description The gsscred utility is used to create and maintain a mapping between a security principal name and a local UNIX *uid*. The format of the user name is assumed to be GSS_C_NT_USER_NAME. You can use the -o option to specify the object identifier of the *name* type. The OID must be specified in dot-separated notation, for example: 1.2.3.45464.3.1

The gsscred table is used on server machines to lookup the *uid* of incoming clients connected using RPCSEC_GSS.

When adding users, if no *user* name is specified, an entry is created in the table for each user from the passwd table. If no *comment* is specified, the gsscred utility inserts a comment that specifies the user name as an ASCII string and the GSS-API security mechanism that applies to it. The security mechanism will be in string representation as defined in the /etc/gss/mech file.

The parameters are interpreted the same way by the gsscred utility to delete users as they are to create users. At least one of the following options must be specified: -n, -u, or -m. If no security mechanism is specified, then all entries will be deleted for the user identified by either the *uid* or *user* name. If only the security mechanism is specified, then all *user* entries for that security mechanism will be deleted.

Again, the parameters are interpreted the same way by the gsscred utility to search for users as they are to create users. If no options are specified, then the entire table is returned. If the *user* name or *uid* is specified, then all entries for that *user* are returned. If a security mechanism is specified, then all *user* entries for that security mechanism are returned.

Options

- a Add a table entry.
- c *comment* Insert comment about this table entry.
- l Search table for entry.
- m *mech* Specify the mechanism for which this name is to be translated.
- n *user* Specify the optional principal name.
- o *oid* Specify the OID indicating the name type of the user.
- r Remove the entry from the table.
- u *uid* Specify the *uid* for the *user* if the *user* is not local.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Creating a gsscred Table for the Kerberos v5 Security Mechanism

The following shows how to create a gsscred table for the kerberos v5 security mechanism. gsscred obtains *user* names and *uid*'s from the *passwd* table to populate the table.

```
example% gsscred -m kerberos_v5 -a
```

EXAMPLE 2 Adding an Entry for root/host1 for the Kerberos v5 Security Mechanism

The following shows how to add an entry for root/host1 with a specified *uid* of 0 for the kerberos v5 security mechanism.

```
example% gsscred -m kerberos_v5 -n root/host1 -u 0 -a
```

EXAMPLE 3 Listing All User Mappings for the Kerberos v5 Security Mechanism

The following lists all user mappings for the kerberos v5 security mechanism.

```
example% gsscred -m kerberos_v5 -l
```

EXAMPLE 4 Listing All Mappings for All Security Mechanism for a Specified User

The following lists all mappings for all security mechanisms for the user *bsimpson*.

```
example% gsscred -n bsimpson -l
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWgss
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [gssd\(1M\)](#), [gsscred.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes Some GSS mechanisms, such as *kerberos_v5*, provide their own authenticated-name-to-local-name (*uid*) mapping and thus do not usually have to be mapped using *gsscred*. See [gsscred.conf\(4\)](#) for more information.

Name gssd – generates and validates GSS-API tokens for kernel RPC

Synopsis /usr/lib/gss/gssd

Description gssd is the user mode daemon that operates between the kernel rpc and the Generic Security Service Application Program Interface (GSS-API) to generate and validate GSS-API security tokens. In addition, gssd maps the GSS-API principal names to the local user and group ids. By default, all groups that the requested user belongs to will be included in the grouplist credential. gssd is invoked by the Internet daemon [inetd\(1M\)](#) the first time that the kernel RPC requests GSS-API services.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWgssk
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [kill\(1\)](#), [pkill\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [inetadm\(1M\)](#), [inetd\(1M\)](#), [gsscred\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [gsscred.conf\(4\)](#), [resolv.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

RFC 2078

Notes The following signal has the specified effect when sent to the server process using the [kill\(1\)](#) command:

SIGHUP gssd rereads the [gsscred.conf\(4\)](#) options.

When one of the mechanisms being used is Kerberos, then the gssd process must be restarted after adding or changing the [resolv.conf\(4\)](#) file.

The gssd service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/rpc/gss:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). Responsibility for initiating and restarting this service is delegated to [inetd\(1M\)](#). Use [inetadm\(1M\)](#) to make configuration changes and to view configuration information for this service. The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name hald – daemon that supports hardware abstraction layer

Synopsis /usr/lib/hal/hald [--daemon={yes | no}] [--help] [--use-syslog] [--verbose={yes | no}] [--version]

Description The hald daemon supports the recognition of hardware changes for devices that conform to the Hardware Abstraction Layer (HAL) specification.

The enabling and disabling of hald can be performed through the service management facility (SMF) (see [smf\(5\)](#)). hald is managed using the fault management resource identifier (FMRI) svc:/system/hal. Options can be specified as SMF properties. See EXAMPLES.

Options The following options are supported:

--daemon Run as a daemon.

--help Display usage information and exit.

--use-syslog Display debug messages to syslog instead of stderr. Use this option to record debug messages if HAL runs as daemon.

--verbose Display debug information.

--version Display version information and exit.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Specifying a Property

The following [svccfg\(1M\)](#) command specifies the --verbose option.

```
example# svccfg
svc:> select hal
svc:/system/hal> listprop hal/*
hal/verbose            boolean false
hal/use_syslog        boolean false
svc:/system/hal> setprop hal/verbose=true
svc:/system/hal> exit
```

Files /usr/lib/hal HAL-related files
/etc/hal/fdi Device information files

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWhalr
Interface Stability	Volatile

See Also [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [hal\(5\)](#)

Name hal-device – manage HAL devices

Synopsis hal-device [-h] [--a *udi* | --r *udi*]

Description The Hardware Abstraction Layer (HAL) provides a view of the various hardware attached to a system. The `hal-device` command enables you to manage devices that conform to the HAL standard. Specifically, `hal-device` lets you add or remove a device to or from the HAL global device list. Device properties are read from stdin in `lshal(1M)` syntax.

Options The following options are supported:

- a, --add *udi* Add device specified by Universal Device Identifier *udi* to HAL's global device list.
- h Display usage information.
- r, --remove *udi* Remove device specified by Universal Device Identifier *udi* from HAL's global device list.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWhalr
Interface Stability	Volatile

See Also [hald\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [hal\(5\)](#)

Name hal-fdi-validate – validate HAL device information files

Synopsis hal-fdi-validate [-f *dtd*] *file* [*file*]...

Description The `hal-fdi-validate` command validates one or more device information files. See [fdi\(4\)](#). The standard DTD file will be used unless the `-f` option is used to specify a different file.

Options The following option is supported:

`-f dtd` Specify path to a DTD file.

Operands The `hal-fdi-validate` command accepts the following operand(s):

file [*file*...] One or more DTD files to be validated.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWhalr
Interface Stability	Volatile

See Also [hald\(1M\)](#), [fdi\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [hal\(5\)](#)

Name hal-find, hal-find-by-capability, hal-find-by-property – search HAL global device list

Synopsis hal-find-by-capability --capability *capability* [--help]
 [--verbose] [--version]
 hal-find-by-property --key *key* --string *value* [--help]
 [--verbose] [--version]

Description The `hal-find` commands, `hal-find-by-capability` and `hal-find-by-property`, search the Hardware Abstraction Layer (HAL) device list by specified criteria and displays results on the standard output. `hal-find-by-capability` searches by capability, such as `volume` or `block`. `hal-find-by-property` searches by property, such as `block.is_volume` or `volume.disc.has_audio`.

Options The following options are supported:

--capability *capability* HAL device capability to search for.
 --help Display list of options.
 --key *key* The *key* to the property that is the basis of the search.
 --string *value* The string *value* associated with the property that is the basis of the search.
 --verbose Verbose mode.
 --version Display version and exit.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWhalr
Interface Stability	Volatile

See Also [hald\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [hal\(5\)](#)

Name hal-get-property, hal-set-property – get and set HAL device properties

Synopsis hal-get-property --udi *udi* --key *key* [--help] [--verbose]
[--version]

```
hal-set-property --udi udi --key key {--int value | --uint64 value
| --string value | --bool value | --strlist-pre value
| --strlist-post value | --strlist-rem value | --double value
| --remove value} [--help] [--version]
```

Description The Hardware Abstraction Layer (HAL) provides a view of the various hardware attached to a system. This view is updated dynamically as hardware configuration changes by means of hotplug or other mechanisms. HAL represents a piece of hardware as a device object. A device object is identified by a unique identifier and carries a set of key/value pairs, referred to as device properties. Some properties are derived from the actual hardware, some are merged from device information files (.fdi files), and some are related to the actual device configuration.

The `hal-get-property` and `hal-set-property` commands allow you to get and set properties of hardware that conforms to HAL specifications.

Options The following options are supported:

- udi *udi*
Unique device ID.
- key *key*
Key of the property to set.
- int
Set value to an integer. Accepts decimal or hexadecimal value prefixed with 0x or x.
- uint64
Set value to an integer. Accepts decimal or hexadecimal value prefixed with 0x or x.
- string *value*
Set value to a string.
- double *value*
Set value to a floating point number.
- boolean *value*
Set value to a boolean, that is, true or false
- strlist-pre *value*
Prepend a string to a list.
- strlist-post *value*
Append a string to a list.
- strlist-rem *value*
Remove a string from a list.

- remove *value*
Indicates that the property should be removed.
- version
Display version and exit.
- help
Display list of options and exit

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWhalr
Interface Stability	Volatile

See Also [hald\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [hal\(5\)](#)

Name halt, poweroff – stop the processor

Synopsis /usr/sbin/halt [-dlnqy]
/usr/sbin/poweroff [-dlnqy]

Description The `halt` and `poweroff` utilities write any pending information to the disks and then stop the processor. The `poweroff` utility has the machine remove power, if possible.

The `halt` and `poweroff` utilities normally log the system shutdown to the system log daemon, [syslogd\(1M\)](#), and place a shutdown record in the login accounting file `/var/adm/wtmpx`. These actions are inhibited if the `-n` or `-q` options are present.

Options The following options are supported:

- d Force a system crash dump before rebooting. See [dumpadm\(1M\)](#) for information on configuring system crash dumps.
- l Suppress sending a message to the system log daemon, [syslogd\(1M\)](#), about who executed `halt`.
- n Prevent the [sync\(1M\)](#) before stopping.
- q Quick halt. No graceful shutdown is attempted.
- y Halt the system, even from a dialup terminal.

Files /var/adm/wtmpx History of user access and administration information.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [dumpadm\(1M\)](#), [init\(1M\)](#), [reboot\(1M\)](#), [shutdown\(1M\)](#), [sync\(1M\)](#), [syslogd\(1M\)](#), [inittab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Notes The `halt` and `poweroff` utilities do not cleanly shutdown [smf\(5\)](#) services. Execute the scripts in `/etc/rcnum.d` or execute shutdown actions in [inittab\(4\)](#). To ensure a complete shutdown of system services, use [shutdown\(1M\)](#) or [init\(1M\)](#) to reboot a Solaris system.

Name hextoaLabel – convert an internal text label to its human readable equivalent

Synopsis /usr/sbin/hextoaLabel [*internal-text-sensitivity-label*]

/usr/sbin/hextoaLabel -c [*internal-text-clearance*]

Description hextoaLabel converts an internal text label into its human readable equivalent and writes the result to the standard output file. This internal form is often hexadecimal. If no option is supplied, the label is assumed to be a sensitivity label.

If no internal text label is specified, the label is read from the standard input file. The expected use of this command is emergency repair of labels that are stored in internal databases.

Options -c Identifies the internal text label as a clearance.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0 On success.

1 On failure, and writes diagnostics to the standard error file.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWtsu
Interface Stability	See below.

The command output is Committed for systems with the same label_encodings file. The command invocation is Committed for systems that implement the DIA MAC policy.

Files /etc/security/tsol/label_encodings

The label encodings file contains the classification names, words, constraints, and values for the defined labels of this system.

See Also [atohexLabel\(1M\)](#), [label_to_str\(3TSOL\)](#), [str_to_label\(3TSOL\)](#), [label_encodings\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

“How to Obtain a Readable Label From Its Hexadecimal Form” in *Solaris Trusted Extensions Administrator's Procedures*

Notes The functionality described on this manual page is available only if the system is configured with Trusted Extensions.

This file is part of the Defense Intelligence Agency (DIA) Mandatory Access Control (MAC) policy. This file might not be applicable to other MAC policies that might be developed for future releases of Solaris Trusted Extensions software.

Name host – DNS lookup utility

Synopsis host [-aCdilMrsTvw] [-c *class*] [-N *ndots*] [-R *number*]
[-t *type*] [-W *wait*] [-4 | -6] *name* [*server*]

Description The *host* utility performs simple DNS lookups. It is normally used to convert names to IP addresses and IP addresses to names. When no arguments or options are given, *host* prints a short summary of its command line arguments and options.

The *name* argument is the domain name that is to be looked up. It can also be a dotted-decimal IPv4 address or a colon-delimited IPv6 address, in which case *host* by default performs a reverse lookup for that address. The optional *server* argument is either the name or IP address of the name server that *host* should query instead of the server or servers listed in `/etc/resolv.conf`.

Options The following options are supported:

- 4
Use only IPv4 transport. By default, both IPv4 and IPv6 transports can be used. Options -4 and -6 are mutually exclusive.
- 6
Use only IPv6 transport. By default, both IPv4 and IPv6 transports can be used. Options -4 and -6 are mutually exclusive.
- a
Equivalent to setting the -v option and asking *host* to make a query of type ANY.
- c *class*
Make a DNS query of class *class*. This can be used to lookup Hesiod or Chaosnet class resource records. The default class is IN (Internet).
- C
Attempt to display the SOA records for zone *name* from all the listed authoritative name servers for that zone. The list of name servers is defined by the NS records that are found for the zone.
- d
Generate verbose output. This option is equivalent to -v. These two options are provided for backward compatibility. In previous versions, the -d option switched on debugging traces and -v enabled verbose output.
- i
Specifies that reverse lookups of IPv6 addresses should use the IP6.INT domain as defined in RFC 1886. The default is to use RFC 3152 domain IP6.ARPA.

- l
List mode. This option makes `host` perform a zone transfer for zone *name*, displaying the NS, PTR and address records (A/AAAA). If combined with `-a`, all records will be displayed. The argument is provided for compatibility with previous implementations. Options `-la` is equivalent to making a query of type AXFR.
- m
Sets the memory usage debugging flags: record, usage, and trace.
- N *ndots*
Set the number of dots that have to be in *name* for it to be considered absolute. The default value is that defined using the `ndots` statement in `/etc/resolv.conf`, or 1 if no `ndots` statement is present. Names with fewer dots are interpreted as relative names and will be searched for in the domains listed in the `search` or `domain` directive in `/etc/resolv.conf`.
- r
Make a non-recursive query. Setting this option clears the RD (recursion desired) bit in the query made by `host`. The name server receiving the query does not attempt to resolve *name*. The `-r` option enables `host` to mimic the behaviour of a name server by making non-recursive queries and expecting to receive answers to those queries that are usually referrals to other name servers.
- R *number*
Change the number of UDP retries for a lookup. The *number* argument indicates how many times `host` will repeat a query that does not get answered. The default number of retries is 1. If *number* is negative or zero, the number of retries will default to 1.
- s
Specifies that the host not send the query to the next name server if any server responds with a SERVFAIL response, which is the reverse of normal stub resolver behavior.
- t *type*
Select the query type. The *type* argument can be any recognised query type: CNAME, NS, SOA, SIG, KEY, and AXFR, among others. When no query type is specified, `host` automatically selects an appropriate query type. By default it looks for A, AAAA, and MX records, but if the `-C` option is specified, queries are made for SOA records. If *name* is a dotted-decimal IPv4 address or colon-delimited IPv6 address, `host` queries for PTR records.

If a query type of IXFR is chosen the starting serial number can be specified by appending an equal followed by the starting serial number (for example: `-t IXFR=12345678`).
- T
Use a TCP connection when querying the name server. TCP is automatically selected for queries that require it, such as zone transfer (AXFR) requests. By default `host` uses UDP when making queries.
- v
Generate verbose output. This option is equivalent to `-d`.

-w
Wait forever for a reply. The time to wait for a response will be set to the number of seconds given by the hardware's maximum value for an integer quantity.

-W *wait*
Wait for *wait* seconds for a reply. If *wait* is less than one, the wait interval is set to one second.

Files /etc/resolv.conf
Resolver configuration file

Attributes See for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWbindc
Interface Stability	External

See Also [dig\(1M\)](#), [named\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

RFC 1035, RFC 1886, RFC 3152

See the BIND 9 *Administrator's Reference Manual*. As of the date of publication of this man page, this document is available at <https://www.isc.org/software/bind/documentation>.

Name hostconfig – configure a system's host parameters

Synopsis /usr/sbin/hostconfig -p *protocol* [-d] [-h] [-n] [-v]
[-i *interface*] [-f *hostname*]

Description The `hostconfig` program uses a network protocol to acquire a machine's *host parameters* and set these parameters on the system.

The program selects which protocol to use based on the argument to the required `-p` flag. Different protocols may set different host parameters. Currently, only one protocol (`bootparams`) is defined.

Options The following options are supported:

- d Enable debug output.
- f *hostname* Run the protocol as if this machine were named *hostname*.
- h Echo the received *hostname* to `stdout`, rather than setting *hostname* using the system name directly.
- i *interface* Use only the named network interface to run the protocol.
- n Run the network protocol, but do not set the acquired parameters into the system.
- p *protocol* Run `hostconfig` using *protocol*. Currently, only one protocol (`bootparams`) is available. This option is required.

Specifying the `-p bootparams` option uses the `whoami` call of the RPC `bootparams` protocol. This sets the system's *hostname*, *domainname*, and default IP router parameters.
- v Enable verbose output.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Configuring Host Parameters with Verbose Output

The following command configures a machine's host parameters using the `whoami` call of the RPC `bootparams` protocol with a verbose output.

```
example# hostconfig -p bootparams -v
```

EXAMPLE 2 Displaying Host Parameters

The following command displays the parameters that would be set using the `whoami` call of the RPC `bootparams` protocol.

```
example# hostconfig -p bootparams -n -v
```

EXAMPLE 3 Configuring Host Parameters Less the System Name

The following command configures a machine's host parameters, less the system name, using the whoami call of the RPC bootparams protocol.

```
example# hostconfig='hostconfig -p bootparams -h'
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [hostname\(1\)](#), [domainname\(1M\)](#), [route\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name hotplug – configure hotplug connectors and ports

Synopsis hotplug list [-l] [-v] [*path* [*connection*]]

hotplug online *path port*

hotplug offline [-f] [-q] *path port*

hotplug enable *path connector*

hotplug disable [-f] [-q] *path port*

hotplug poweron *path connector*

hotplug poweroff [-f] [-q] *path connector*

hotplug set -o *options path connector*

hotplug get -o *options path connector*

hotplug -?

Description The hotplug command is used to manage hotplug connections. A connection can be a connector or port. A hotplug connector is a representation of a physical point in the system where components can be inserted or removed. A hotplug port is a representation of a logical point in the system device tree where the connection of a device to the system is managed.

The hotplug command only supports hotplug operations on hotplug connectors for PCI Express buses and PCI buses that implement the Standard PCI Hotplug feature. Hotplug ports on PCI Express and PCI buses in systems with PCI Express fabrics are also supported. Additional buses may be supported in the future.

The hotplug command operates on the following kinds of objects:

path

Hotplug connectors and ports are integrated into the Solaris device tree. The names of connectors and ports are unique relative only to their bus controller. A device path is required to uniquely reference a connector or port.

connector

If a hardware component supports being physically inserted or removed, then a hotplug connector represents the location where this action may occur. When a connector exists, it has a hierarchy of ports and device nodes that depend upon it.

port

All device nodes can be virtually hotplugged, even if their hardware does not support physical hotplugging. A hotplug port exists between a device node and its parent node in the system device tree. It represents the location where the device node and its dependents can be managed.

connection

A hotplug connection is a generic term to refer to either a hotplug connector or a hotplug port.

Hotplug connectors and ports are managed according to a state model. The `hotplug` command can list information about the hotplug connections in a system, or it can initiate change of state operations on specific hotplug connections.

Hotplug connectors can be in the following states:

`empty`

A component is not physically inserted in the connector.

`present`

A component is physically inserted in the connector, but the component is powered off. The component is not in use.

`powered`

A component is physically inserted in the connector, and the component is powered on. The component is disabled and is not in use.

`enabled`

A component is physically inserted in the connector. The component is powered on and has been probed and tested. The component is enabled and devices that represent its functions can be used.

Hotplug ports can be in the following states:

`port-empty`

No device exists for the hotplug port.

`port-present`

A device exists for the hotplug port, but the device has not been probed and it has no attached device driver. The device is not in use.

`offline`

A device exists for the hotplug port, and the device has been probed. A device driver is not attached, and the device is not in use.

`online`

A device exists for the hotplug port, and its device driver is fully attached. The device is in use.

`maintenance`

A device exists for the hotplug port, and its device driver is fully attached. The device is in use, but not fully operational. A maintenance or fault management operation is affecting the device.

The `hotplug` command can also access bus private properties for each hotplug connector. The current values of bus private properties can be displayed. New values for each bus private property can be set directly.

Sub-commands The following subcommands are supported:

list

Show information for hotplug connectors, ports, and their associated devices. Hotplug connectors and hotplug ports are integrated into the Solaris device tree hierarchy. The `list` subcommand therefore displays the hierarchy of device nodes with additional information included to show the locations of hotplug connectors and hotplug ports. The names of hotplug connectors are enclosed in square brackets, and the names of hotplug ports are enclosed in angled brackets. The current state of each hotplug connection is displayed next to its name.

online

Change the state of a hotplug port to the `online` state.

offline

Change the state of a hotplug port to the `offline` state.

enable

Change the state of a hotplug connector to the `enabled` state. All of the hotplug connector's dependent ports will be automatically probed and initialized into the `online` state.

disable

Change the state of a hotplug connector from the `enabled` state to the `powered` state. All dependent ports that are in the `online` state will first be transitioned to the `port-present` state.

poweron

Change the state of a hotplug connector from the `present` state to the `powered` state.

poweroff

Change the state of a hotplug connector from the `powered` or `enabled` state to the `present` state. All dependent ports that are in the `online` state will first be transitioned to the `port-present` state, and will then be removed.

set

Set bus-specific properties for a hotplug connector. The specified option string is a bus specific string of name and value pairs, as could be parsed by `getsubopt(3C)`. The names and values will be passed directly to the bus controller that manages the specified hotplug connector to perform a bus-specific function.

get

Display the current values of bus specific properties for a hotplug connector. The specified option string is a bus specific string of named properties, as could be parsed by `getsubopt(3C)`. The names will be passed directly to the bus controller to specify which properties should be returned. The current values of each named property will then be displayed.

Options The following options are supported:

- l, --list-path
Show full paths to connections and device nodes. By default, the `list` subcommand shows hotplug connectors, ports, and devices in the format of a tree. This option enables the display of full paths to each connection and device node.
- v, --verbose
Show verbose usage details. By default, the `list` subcommand shows only hotplug connectors, ports, and devices. This option enables the display of more detailed information about how the devices are currently consumed. Examples include mounted filesystems or plumbed network interfaces associated with individual devices.
- f, --force
Force the operation. Some change state operations that impact resources currently in use will fail with a warning. A forced operation will attempt to ignore these warnings and proceed.

This option should be used with extreme caution.
- q, --query
Query the operation. Instead of actually performing a change state operation, perform a test to predict if the operation would succeed or fail. If it would fail, show the error messages that would be expected if the operation had really been attempted.

It is not possible to predict every failure. An operation that succeeds during a query could still fail for another reason when actually attempted.

This option will not actually change the state of the system.
- o *options*, --=*options*
Specify bus-specific properties for a set or get command. The options string conforms to the [getsubopt\(3C\)](#) syntax convention.

For the `get` subcommand, there are two special options that can be used. The special options value of `help` will display all supported properties and their possible values. The special options value of `all` will display the current value of all supported properties.

For the `set` subcommand, there is one special option that can be used. The special options value of `help` will display all supported properties which can be set and their possible values.

See “Notes” section for the properties supported by bus controllers.
- ?, --help
Display a brief help message on proper use of the command.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Showing All Hotplug Connections

The following command shows all hotplug connections:

```
# hotplug list -v
pci@0,0
  <pci.2,1> (ONLINE)
    pci108e,534a@2,1
      [pci30] (EMPTY)
  <pci.e,0> (ONLINE)
    pci10de,5d@e
      <pci.b,0> (ONLINE)
        display@b
          [NEM0] (ENABLED)
      <pci.a,0> (ONLINE)
        pci108e,534a@a,0
          { Network interface nge0 }
          { nge0: hosts IP addresses: 10.0.0.1 }
      <pci.a,1> (MAINTENANCE)
        pci108e,534a@a,1
          [NEM1] (EMPTY)
  <pci.c,0> (OFFLINE)
    pci108e,534a@4
```

To show the full paths of hotplug connections and devices, enter the following command:

```
# hotplug list -l
/pci@0,0 <pci.2,1> (ONLINE)
/pci@0,0/pci108e,534a@2,1 [pci30] (EMPTY)
/pci@0,0 pci.e,0> (ONLINE)
/pci@0,0/pci10de,5d@e <pci.b,0> (ONLINE)
/pci@0,0/pci10de,5d@e/display@b
/pci@0,0/pci10de,5d@e [NEM0] (ENABLED)
/pci@0,0/pci10de,5d@e <pci.a,0> (ONLINE)
/pci@0,0/pci10de,5d@e/pci108e,534a@a,0
/pci@0,0/pci10de,5d@e <pci.a,1> (MAINTENANCE)
/pci@0,0/pci10de,5d@e/pci108e,534a@a,0
/pci@0,0/pci10de,5d@e [NEM1] (EMPTY)
/pci@0,0 pci.c,0> (OFFLINE)
/pci@0,0/pci108e,534a@4
```

EXAMPLE 2 Reporting Failure During State Change Operation

If a change of state operation fails, an explanation is displayed to describe the failure. An attempt to offline a hotplug port with dependent devices that are currently in use by the system might fail as follows:

```
# hotplug offline /pci@0,0/pci10de,5d@e pci.a,0
ERROR: devices or resources are busy.
pci108e,534a@a,0:
```


EXAMPLE 2 Reporting Failure During State Change Operation *(Continued)*

```
{ Network interface nge0 }
{ nge0: hosts IP addresses: 10.0.0.1 }
{ Plumbed IP Address }
```

EXAMPLE 3 Displaying Bus-Specific Properties and Values

The following command displays all supported bus-specific properties and their possible values:

```
# hotplug get -o help /pci@0,0 pci.2,1
power_led=<on|off|blink>
fault_led=<on|off|blink>
active_led=<on|off|blink>
attn_led=<on|off|blink>
card_type=<type description>
board_type=<type description>
```

EXAMPLE 4 Displaying Bus-Specific Options

The following command displays the card type and the current state of the Power LED of a PCI hotplug connector:

```
# hotplug get -o card_type,power_led /pci@0,0 pci.2,1
card_type=fibre
power_led=on
```

EXAMPLE 5 Setting a Bus-Specific Property

The following command turns on the attention LED of a PCI hotplug connector:

```
# hotplug set -o attn_led=on /pci@0,0 pci.2,1
```

Exit Status

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 Invalid command line options were specified.
- 2 The specified path or connection does not exist.
- 3 A fatal error occurred. One or more error messages are displayed on standard error.
- 4 The hotplug service is not available.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Committed

See Also [cfgadm\(1M\)](#), [hotplugd\(1M\)](#), [getsubopt\(3C\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Diagnostics The following error message is displayed on systems that do not have any supported I/O buses:

```
ERROR: there are no connections to display.
(See hotplug(1m) for more information.)
```

If this error message is seen, note that the system might still have other I/O devices that support hotplugging, through the [cfgadm\(1M\)](#) command instead of `hotplug`.

Notes The `hotplug` service (FMRI `svc:/system/hotplug`) must be enabled as a prerequisite for using the `hotplug` command. See [hotplugd\(1M\)](#).

The authorization `solaris.hotplug.modify` must be granted in order to perform change-of-state operations. Alternatively, the rights profile “Hotplug Management” can be granted, which includes that authorization.

Verbose usage information is gathered from the RCM framework. Its format and content is subject to change.

The following bus specific properties are supported in PCI bus controllers:

`power_led` | `fault_led` | `attn_led` | `active_led`

States of a specific LED of a slot. The value could be `on`, `off`, or `blink`.

They can all be used with `get` subcommand, but only property `attn_led` can be used with `set` subcommand.

`card_type` | `board_type`

Type of a card or board of a slot.

They can all be used with `get` subcommand, but neither can be used with `set` subcommand.

Name hotplugd – hotplug daemon

Synopsis /usr/lib/hotplugd [-d]

Description The hotplug daemon, `hotplugd`, provides user-level services for the management of hotplug connections. It is a system daemon started by the Service Management Facility (see [smf\(5\)](#)). Its fault management resource identifier (FMRI) is:

```
svc:/system/hotplug:default
```

Note that `hotplugd` is a Consolidation Private interface. See [attributes\(5\)](#).

The [hotplug\(1M\)](#) command and any other client program that uses the private `libhotplug` library to query information about hotplug connections or initiate hotplug commands depends upon this daemon. The hotplug daemon is a door server which services requests from all `libhotplug` clients. The door interface is private.

Client applications use the private `libhotplug` interface to administer hotplug connections. `libhotplug` uses the door interface to administer hotplug connections through the hotplug daemon service. The hotplug daemon acts as a central location to serialize all hotplug operations and coordinate activities with all other parts of the system.

Options The following option is supported:

`-d, --debug`

Run the daemon in standalone debug mode. Messages will be displayed on the controlling terminal instead of to `syslog`. And increased verbosity will be enabled to display more details about the internal operations of the daemon.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Enabling the Hotplug Service

The following command enables the hotplug service:

```
# svcadm enable svc:/system/hotplug:default
```

EXAMPLE 2 Disabling the Hotplug Service

The following command disables the hotplug service:

```
# svcadm disable svc:/system/hotplug:default
```

Errors The hotplug daemon uses [syslog\(3C\)](#) to report status and error messages. All of the messages are logged with the `LOG_DAEMON` facility. Error messages are logged with the `LOG_ERR` and `LOG_NOTICE` priorities, and informational messages are logged with the `LOG_INFO` priority. The default entries in the `/etc/syslog.conf` file log all of the hotplug daemon error messages to the `/var/adm/messages` log.

Files /var/run/hotplugd_door
Hotplug daemon door

/var/run/hotplugd_pid
Hotplug daemon lock file

/usr/lib/hotplugd
Hotplug daemon binary

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu, SUNWcsr
Interface Stability	Consolidation Private

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [hotplug\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [syslog\(3C\)](#), [syslog.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Notes The hotplugd service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the fault management resource identifier (FMRI):

```
svc:/system/hotplug:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command. To administer the service, the authorization `solaris.smf.manage.hotplug` must be granted. Alternatively, the rights profile “Hotplug Management” can be granted.

The hotplug service must be enabled for the [hotplug\(1M\)](#) command and any other libhotplug client applications to function properly.

Name htable – convert DoD Internet format host table

Synopsis /usr/sbin/htable *filename*

Description htable converts a host table in the format specified by RFC 952 to the format used by the network library routines. Three files are created as a result of running htable: hosts, networks, and gateways. The hosts file is used by the [gethostbyname\(3NSL\)](#) routines in mapping host names to addresses. The networks file is used by the [getnetbyname\(3SOCKET\)](#) routines in mapping network names to numbers. The gateways file is used by the routing daemon to identify “passive” Internet gateways.

If any of the files `localhosts`, `localnetworks`, or `localgateways` are present in the current directory, the file's contents is prepended to the output file without interpretation. This allows sites to maintain local aliases and entries which are not normally present in the master database.

htable is best used in conjunction with the [gettable\(1M\)](#) program which retrieves the DoD Internet host table from a host.

Files `localhosts`
`localnetworks`
`localgateways`

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWnisu

See Also [gettable\(1M\)](#), [gethostbyname\(3NSL\)](#), [getnetbyname\(3SOCKET\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)
 Harrenstien, Ken, Mary Stahl, and Elizabeth Feinler, *DoD Internet Host Table Specification*, RFC 952, Network Information Center, SRI International, Menlo Park, California, October 1985.

Notes htable does not properly calculate the gateways file.

Name ickey – install a client key for WAN boot

Synopsis /usr/lib/inet/wanboot/ickey [-d] [-o type=3des]
 /usr/lib/inet/wanboot/ickey [-d] [-o type=aes]
 /usr/lib/inet/wanboot/ickey [-d] [-o type=sha1]

Description The ickey command is used to install WAN boot keys on a running UNIX system so that they can be used the next time the system is installed. You can store three different types of keys: 3DES and AES for encryption and an HMAC SHA-1 key for hashed verification.

ickey reads the key from standard input using [getpass\(3C\)](#) so that it does not appear on the command line. When installing keys on a remote system, you must take proper precautions to ensure that any keying materials are kept confidential. At a minimum, use [ssh\(1\)](#) to prevent interception of data in transit.

Keys are expected to be presented as strings of hexadecimal digits; they can (but need not) be preceded by a 0x or 0X.

The ickey command has a single option, described below. An argument of the type `-o type=keytype` is required.

Options The ickey command the following option.

-d Delete the key specified by the *keytype* argument.

Exit Status On success, ickey exits with status 0; if a problem occurs, a diagnostic message is printed and ickey exits with non-zero status.

Files /dev/openprom WAN boot key storage driver

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWwbsup
Interface Stability	Unstable

See Also [ssh\(1\)](#), [openprom\(7D\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name id – return user identity

Synopsis /usr/bin/id [-p] [*user*]
 /usr/bin/id -a [-p] [*user*]
 /usr/bin/id -G [-n] [*user*]
 /usr/bin/id -g [-nr] [*user*]
 /usr/bin/id -u [-nr] [*user*]
 /usr/xpg4/bin/id [-p] [*user*]
 /usr/xpg4/bin/id -a [-p] [*user*]
 /usr/xpg4/bin/id -G [-n] [*user*]
 /usr/xpg4/bin/id -g [-nr] [*user*]
 /usr/xpg4/bin/id -u [-nr] [*user*]

Description If no *user* operand is provided, the *id* utility writes the user and group IDs and the corresponding user and group names of the invoking process to standard output. If the effective and real IDs do not match, both are written. If multiple groups are supported by the underlying system, /usr/xpg4/bin/id also writes the supplementary group affiliations of the invoking process.

If a *user* operand is provided and the process has the appropriate privileges, the user and group IDs of the selected user are written. In this case, effective IDs are assumed to be identical to real IDs. If the selected user has more than one allowable group membership listed in the group database, /usr/xpg4/bin/id writes them in the same manner as the supplementary groups described in the preceding paragraph.

Formats The following formats are used when the LC_MESSAGES locale category specifies the "C" locale. In other locales, the strings *uid*, *gid*, *eid*, *egid*, and *groups* may be replaced with more appropriate strings corresponding to the locale.

```
"uid=%u(%s) gid=%u(%s)\n" <real user ID>, <user-name>,
  <real group ID>, <group-name>
```

If the effective and real user IDs do not match, the following are inserted immediately before the \n character in the previous format:

```
" eid=%u(%s) "
```

with the following arguments added at the end of the argument list:

```
<effective user ID>, <effective user-name>
```

If the effective and real group IDs do not match, the following is inserted directly before the \n character in the format string (and after any addition resulting from the effective and real user IDs not matching):

```
" egid=%u(%s) "
```

with the following arguments added at the end of the argument list:

<effectivegroup-ID>, *<effectivegroupname>*

If the process has supplementary group affiliations or the selected user is allowed to belong to multiple groups, the first is added directly before the NEWLINE character in the format string:

" groups=%u(%s)"

with the following arguments added at the end of the argument list:

<supplementary group ID>, *<supplementary group name>*

and the necessary number of the following added after that for any remaining supplementary group IDs:

",%u(%s)"

and the necessary number of the following arguments added at the end of the argument list:

<supplementary group ID>, *<supplementary group name>*

If any of the user ID, group ID, effective user ID, effective group ID or supplementary/multiple group IDs cannot be mapped by the system into printable user or group names, the corresponding (%s) and name argument is omitted from the corresponding format string.

When any of the options are specified, the output format is as described under OPTIONS.

Options The following options are supported by both `/usr/bin/id` and `/usr/xpg4/bin/id`. The `-p` and `-a` options are invalid if specified with any of the `-G`, `-g`, or `-u` options.

`-p` Reports additionally the current project membership of the invoking process. The project is reported using the format:

"projid=%u(%s)"

which is inserted prior to the `\n` character of the default format described in the `Formats` section. The arguments

<project ID>, *<project name>*

are appended to the end of the argument list. If the project ID cannot be mapped by the system into a printable project name, the corresponding (%s) and name argument is omitted from the corresponding format string.

`-a` Reports user name, user ID and all the groups to which the user belongs.

`-G` Outputs all different group IDs (effective, real and supplementary) only, using the format "%u\n". If there is more than one distinct group affiliation, output each such affiliation, using the format "%u", before the NEWLINE character is output.

`-g` Outputs only the effective group ID, using the format "%u\n".

`-n` Outputs the name in the format "%s" instead of the numeric ID using the format "%u".

- r Outputs the real ID instead of the effective ID.
- u Outputs only the effective user ID, using the format "%u\n".

Operands The following operand is supported:

user The user (login) name for which information is to be written.

Environment Variables See [environ\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following environment variables that affect the execution of `id`: LANG, LC_ALL, LC_CTYPE, LC_MESSAGES, and NLS_PATH.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

/usr/bin/id	ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
	Availability	SUNWcsu, SUNWcar
	Interface Stability	Stable

/usr/xpg4/bin/id	ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
	Availability	SUNWxcu4
	Interface Stability	Standard

See Also [fold\(1\)](#), [logname\(1\)](#), [who\(1\)](#), [getgid\(2\)](#), [getgroups\(2\)](#), [getprojid\(2\)](#), [getuid\(2\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#), [standards\(5\)](#)

Notes Output produced by the `-G` option and by the default case could potentially produce very long lines on systems that support large numbers of supplementary groups.

Name idmap – configure and manage the Native Identity Mapping service

Synopsis idmap

```
idmap -f command-file
idmap add [-d] name1 name2
idmap dump [-n] [-v]
idmap export [-f file] format
idmap get-namemap name
idmap help
idmap import [-F] [-f file] format
idmap list
idmap remove [-t|-f] name
idmap remove -a
idmap remove [-d] name1 name2
idmap set-namemap [-a authenticationMethod] [-D bindDN]
    [-j passwdfile] name1 name2
idmap show [-c] [-v] identity [target-type]
idmap unset-namemap [-a authenticationMethod] [-D bindDN]
    [-j passwdfile] name [target-type]
```

Description The idmap utility is used to configure and manage the Native Identity Mapping service.

The Native Identity Mapping service supports the following types of mappings between Windows security identities (SIDs) and POSIX user IDs and group IDs (UIDs and GIDs):

- **Name-based mapping.** An administrator maps Windows and UNIX users and groups by name.
- **Ephemeral ID mapping.** A UID or GID is dynamically allocated for every SID that is not already mapped by name.
- **Local-SID mapping.** A non-ephemeral UID or GID is mapped to an algorithmically generated local SID.

The idmap utility can be used to create and manage the name-based mappings and to monitor the mappings in effect.

If the idmap utility is invoked without a subcommand or option, it reads the subcommands from standard input. When standard input is a TTY, the idmap command prints the usage message and exits.

Mapping Mechanisms The `idmapd(1M)` daemon maps Windows user and group SIDs to UNIX UIDs and GIDs as follows:

1. SIDs are mapped by name.

This mapping uses the name-based mappings that are manually set up by the system administrator.

2. If no name-based mapping is found, the SID is mapped to a dynamically allocated ephemeral ID.

This allocation uses the next available UID or GID from 2^{31} to $2^{32} - 2$.

Local SID mappings are used to map from UNIX to Windows.

To prevent aliasing problems, all file systems, archive and backup formats, and protocols must store SIDs or map all UIDs and GIDs in the 2^{31} to $2^{32} - 2$ range to the nobody user and group.

It is possible to create also diagonal mappings. They are the mappings between Windows groups and Solaris users and between Solaris groups and Windows users. They are needed when Windows uses a group identity as a file owner or vice versa.

Name-based Mappings Name-based mappings establish name equivalence between Windows users and groups and their counterparts in the UNIX name service. These mappings persist across reboots. For example, the following command maps Windows users to UNIX users with the same name:

```
# idmap add "winuser:*@mywindomain.com" "unixuser:*"
```

If configured to use a directory service, `idmapd(1M)` will first try to use the mapping information that is stored in user or group objects in the Active Directory (AD) and/or the native LDAP directory service. For example, an AD object for a given Windows user or group can be augmented to include the corresponding Solaris user or group name or numeric id. Similarly, the native LDAP object for a given Solaris user or group can be augmented to include the corresponding Windows user or group name.

`idmapd(1M)` can be configured to use AD and/or native LDAP directory-based name mappings by setting the appropriate service management facility (SMF) properties of the `idmap` service. See “Service Properties,” below, for more details.

If directory-based name mapping is not configured or if configured but not found, then `idmapd(1M)` will process locally stored name-based mapping rules.

`idmap` supports the mapping of Windows well-known names. A few of these are listed below:

```
Administrator
Guest
KRBTGT
Domain Admins
Domain Users
Domain Guest
Domain Computers
Domain Controllers
```

When `idmap` rules are added, these well-known names will be expanded to canonical form. That is, either the default domain name will be added (for names that are not well-known) or an appropriate built-in domain name will be added. Depending on the particular well-known name, this domain name might be null, `BUILTIN`, or the local host name.

The following sequence of `idmap` commands illustrate the treatment of the non-well-known name `fred` and the well-known names `administrator` and `guest`.

```
# idmap add winname:fred unixuser:fredf
add    winname:fred    unixuser:fredf

# idmap add winname:administrator unixuser:root
add    winname:administrator    unixuser:root

# idmap add winname:guest unixuser:nobody
add    winname:guest    unixuser:nobody

# idmap add wingroup:administrators sysadmin
add    wingroup:administrators    unixgroup:sysadmin

# idmap list
add    winname:Administrator@examplehost    unixuser:root
add    winname:Guest@examplehost    unixuser:nobody
add    wingroup:Administrators@BUILTIN    unixgroup:sysadmin
add    winname:fred@example.com    unixuser:fredf
```

Ephemeral Mappings The `idmapd` daemon attempts to preserve ephemeral ID mappings across daemon restarts. However, when IDs cannot be preserved, the daemon maps each previously mapped SID to a new ephemeral UID or GID value. The daemon will never re-use ephemeral UIDs or GIDs. If the `idmapd` daemon runs out of ephemeral UIDs and GIDs, it returns an error as well as a default UID or GID for SIDs that cannot be mapped by name.

The dynamic ID mappings are not retained across reboots. So, any SIDs that are dynamically mapped to UNIX UIDs or GIDs are most likely mapped to different IDs after rebooting the system.

Local SID Mappings If no name-based mapping is found, a non-ephemeral UID or GID is mapped to an algorithmically generated local SID. The mapping is generated as follows:

```
local SID for UID = <machine SID> - <1000 + UID>
local SID for GID = <machine SID> - <2^31 + GID>
```

<machine SID> is a unique SID generated by the `idmap` service for the host on which it runs.

Rule Lookup Order When mapping a Windows name to a UNIX name, lookup for name-based mapping rules is performed in the following order:

1. `windows-name@domain` to ""
2. `windows-name@domain` to `unix-name`

3. *windows-name@** to ""
4. *windows-name@** to *unix-name*
5. **@domain* to *
6. **@domain* to ""
7. **@domain* to *unix-name*
8. **@** to *
9. **@** to ""
10. **@** to *unix-name*

When mapping a UNIX name to a Windows name, lookup for name-based mapping rules is performed in the following order:

1. *unix-name* to ""
2. *unix-name* to *windows-name@domain*
3. * to **@domain*
4. * to ""
5. * to *windows-name@domain*

Service Properties The service properties determine the behavior of the [idmapd\(1M\)](#) daemon. These properties are stored in the SMF repository (see [smf\(5\)](#)) under property group `config`. They can be accessed and modified using [svccfg\(1M\)](#), which requires `solaris.smf.value.idmap` authorization. The service properties for the `idmap` service are:

`config/ad_unixuser_attr`

Specify the name of the AD attribute that contains the UNIX user name. There is no default.

`config/ad_unixgroup_attr`

Specify the name of the AD attribute that contains the UNIX group name. There is no default.

`config/nldap_winname_attr`

Specify the name of the Native LDAP attribute that contains the Windows user/group name. There is no default.

`config/directory_based_mapping`

Controls support for identity mapping using data stored in a directory service.

`none` disables directory-based mapping.

`name` enables name-based mapping using the properties described above.

`idmu` enables mapping using Microsoft's Identity Management for UNIX (IDMU). This Windows component allows the administrator to specify a UNIX user ID for each Windows user, mapping the Windows identity to the corresponding UNIX identity. Only IDMU data from the domain the Solaris system is a member of is used.

Changes to service properties do not affect a running `idmap` service. The service must be refreshed (with [svcadm\(1M\)](#)) for the changes to take effect.

Operands The `idmap` command uses the following operands:

format

Specifies the format in which user name mappings are described for the `export` and `import` subcommands. The `Netapp usermap.cfg` and Samba `smbusers` external formats are supported. These external formats are *only* for users, not groups.

- The `usermap.cfg` rule-mapping format is as follows:

```
windows-username [direction] unix-username
```

windows-username is a Windows user name in either the `domain\username` or `username@domain` format.

unix-username is a UNIX user name.

direction is one of the following:

- `==` means a bidirectional mapping, which is the default.
- `=>` or `<=` means a unidirectional mapping.

The IP qualifier is not supported.

- The `smbusers` rule-mapping format is as follows:

```
unixname = winname1 winname2 ...
```

If *winname* includes whitespace, escape the whitespace by enclosing the value in double quotes. For example, the following file shows how to specify whitespace in a valid format for the `idmap` command:

```
$ cat myusermap
terry="Terry Maddox"
pat="Pat Flynn"
cal=cbrown
```

The mappings are imported as unidirectional mappings from Windows names to UNIX names.

The format is based on the “username map” entry of the `smb.conf` man page, which is available on the `samba.org` web site. The use of an asterisk (*) for *windows-name* is supported. However, the `@group` directive and the chaining of mappings are not supported.

By default, if no mapping entries are in the `smbusers` file, Samba maps a *windows-name* to the equivalent *unix-name*, if any. If you want to set up the same mapping as Samba does, use the following `idmap` command:

```
idmap add -d "winuser:*@*" "unixuser:*"
```

identity

Specifies a user name, user ID, group name, or group ID. *identity* is specified as *type:value*. *type* is one of the following:

<code>usid</code>	Windows user SID in text format
<code>gsid</code>	Windows group SID in text format
<code>sid</code>	Windows group SID in text format that can belong either to a user or to a group
<code>uid</code>	Numeric POSIX UID
<code>gid</code>	Numeric POSIX GID
<code>unixuser</code>	UNIX user name
<code>unixgroup</code>	UNIX group name
<code>winuser</code>	Windows user name
<code>wingroup</code>	Windows group name
<code>winname</code>	Windows user or group name

value is a number or string that is appropriate to the specified *type*. For instance, `unixgroup:staff` specifies the UNIX group name, `staff`. The identity `gid:10` represents GID 10, which corresponds to the UNIX group `staff`.

name

Specifies a UNIX name (`unixuser`, `unixgroup`) or a Windows name (`winuser`, `wingroup`) that can be used for name-based mapping rules.

A Windows security entity name can be specified in one of these ways:

- *domain\name*
- *name@domain*
- *name*, which uses the default mapping domain

If *name* is the empty string (""), mapping is inhibited. Note that a name of "" should not be used to preclude logins by unmapped Windows users.

If *name* uses the wildcard (*), it matches all names that are not matched by other mappings. Similarly, if *name* is the wildcard Windows name (*@*), it matches all names in all domains that are not matched by other mappings.

If *name* uses the wildcard on both sides of the mapping rule, the name is the same for both Windows and Solaris users. For example, if the rule is `"*@domain" == "*"` , the `jp@domain` Windows user name matches this rule and maps to the `jp` Solaris user name.

Specifying the type of *name* is optional if the type can be deduced from other arguments or types specified on the command line.

target-type

Used with the `show` and `unset -namemap` subcommands. For `show`, specifies the mapping type that should be shown. For example, if *target-type* is `sid`, `idmap show` returns the SID

mapped to the identity specified on the command line. For `unset -namemap`, identifies an attribute within the object specified by the *name* operand.

Options The `idmap` command supports one option and a set of subcommands. The subcommands also have options.

Command-Line Option -f *command-file*

Reads and executes `idmap` subcommands from *command-file*. The `idmap -f -` command reads from standard input. This option is not used by any subcommands.

Subcommands The following subcommands are supported:

`add [-d] name1 name2`

Adds a name-based mapping rule. By default, the name mapping is bidirectional. If the `-d` option is used, a unidirectional mapping is created from *name1* to *name2*.

Either *name1* or *name2* must be a Windows name, and the other must be a UNIX name. For the Windows name, the `winname` identity type must not be used. Instead, specify one of the `winuser` or `wingroup` types. See “Operands” for information about the *name* operand.

Note that two unidirectional mappings between the same two names in two opposite directions are equivalent to one bidirectional mapping.

This subcommand requires the `solaris.admin.idmap.rules` authorization.

`dump [-n] [-v]`

Dumps all the mappings cached since the last system boot. The `-n` option shows the names, as well. By default, only `sids`, `uids`, and `gids` are shown. The `-v` option shows how the mappings were generated.

`export [-f file] format`

Exports name-based mapping rules to standard output in the specified *format*. The `-f file` option writes the rules to the specified output file.

`get -namemap name`

Get the directory-based name mapping information from the AD or native LDAP user or group object represented by the specified name.

`help`

Displays the usage message.

`import [-F] [-f file] format`

Imports name-based mapping rules from standard input by using the specified *format*. The `-f file` option reads the rules from the specified file. The `-F` option flushes existing name-based mapping rules before adding new ones.

Regardless of the external format used, the imported rules are processed by using the semantics and order described in the section “Rule Lookup Order,” above.

This subcommand requires the `solaris.admin.idmap.rules` authorization.

list

Lists all name-based mapping rules. Each rule appears in its `idmap add` form.

remove [-t|-f] name

Removes any name-based mapping rule that involves the specified name. *name* can be either a UNIX or Windows user name or group name.

The `-f` option removes rules that use *name* as the source. The `-t` option removes rules that use *name* as the destination. These options are mutually exclusive.

This subcommand requires the `solaris.admin.idmap.rules` authorization.

remove -a

Removes all name-based mapping rules.

This subcommand requires the `solaris.admin.idmap.rules` authorization.

remove [-d] name1 name2

Removes name-based mapping rules between *name1* and *name2*. If the `-d` option is specified, rules from *name1* to *name2* are removed.

Either *name1* or *name2* must be a Windows name, and the other must be a UNIX name.

This subcommand requires the `solaris.admin.idmap.rules` authorization.

set -namemap [-a authenticationMethod] [-D bindDN] [-j passwdfile] name1 name2

Sets name mapping information in the AD or native LDAP user or group object. Either *name1* or *name2* must be a Windows name, and the other must be a UNIX name.

If *name1* is a Windows name, then the UNIX name *name2* is added to the AD object represented by *name1*. Similarly, if *name1* is a UNIX name then the Windows name *name2* is added to the native LDAP entry represented by *name1*.

The following options are supported:

-a authenticationMethod

Specify authentication method when modifying native LDAP entry. See [ldapaddent\(1M\)](#) for details. Default value is `sasl/GSSAPI`.

-D bindDN

Uses the distinguished name *bindDN* to bind to the directory.

-j passwdfile

Specify a file containing the password for authentication to the directory.

show [-c] [-v] name [target-type]

Shows the identity of type, *target-type*, that the specified *name* maps to. If the optional *target-type* is omitted, the non-diagonal mapping is shown.

By default, this subcommand shows only mappings that have been established already. The `-c` option forces the evaluation of name-based mapping configurations or the dynamic allocation of IDs.

The `-v` option shows how the mapping was generated and also whether the mapping was just generated or was retrieved from the cache.

```
unset -namemap [-a authenticationMethod] [-D bindDN] [-j passwdfile] name [target-type]
```

Unsets directory-based name mapping information from the AD or native LDAP user or group object represented by the specified name and optional target type.

See the `set -namemap` subcommand for options.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Using a Wildcard on Both Sides of a Name-Based Mapping Rule

The following command maps all Windows user names in the `xyz.com` domain to the UNIX users with the same names provided that one exists and is not otherwise mapped. If such a rule is matched but the UNIX user name does not exist, an ephemeral ID mapping is used.

```
# idmap add "winuser:*@xyz.com" "unixuser:*"
```

EXAMPLE 2 Using a Wildcard on One Side of a Name-Based Mapping Rule

The following command maps all unmapped Windows users in the `xyz.com` domain to the `guest` UNIX user. The `-d` option specifies a unidirectional mapping from `*@xyz.com` users to the `guest` user.

```
# idmap add -d "winuser:*@xyz.com" unixuser:guest
```

EXAMPLE 3 Adding a Bidirectional Name-Based Mapping Rule

The following command maps Windows user, `foobar@example.com`, to UNIX user, `foo`, and conversely:

```
# idmap add winuser:foobar@example.com unixuser:foo
```

This command shows how to remove the mapping added by the previous command:

```
# idmap remove winuser:foobar@example.com unixuser:foo
```

EXAMPLE 4 Showing a UID-to-SID Mapping

- The following command shows the SID that the specified UID, `uid:50000`, maps to:

```
# idmap show uid:50000 sid
uid:50000 -> usid:S-1-5-21-3223191800-2000
```

- The following command shows the UNIX user name that the specified Windows user name, `joe@example.com`, maps to:

EXAMPLE 4 Showing a UID-to-SID Mapping (Continued)

```
# idmap show joe@example.com unixuser
winuser:joe@example.com -> unixuser:joes
```

EXAMPLE 5 Listing the Cached SID-to-UID Mappings

The following command shows all of the SID-to-UID mappings that are in the cache:

```
# idmap dump | grep "uid:"
uid:S-1-5-21-3223191800-2000 == uid:50000
uid:S-1-5-21-3223191800-2001 == uid:50001
uid:S-1-5-21-3223191800-2006 == uid:50010
uid:S-1-5-21-3223191900-3000 == uid:2147491840
uid:S-1-5-21-3223191700-4000 => uid:60001
```

EXAMPLE 6 Batching idmap Requests

The following commands show how to batch idmap requests. This particular command sequence does the following:

- Removes any previous rules for foobar@example.com.
- Maps Windows user foobar@example.com to UNIX user bar and vice-versa.
- Maps Windows group members to UNIX group staff and vice-versa.

```
# idmap <<EOF
    remove winuser:foobar@example.com
    add winuser:foobar@example.com unixuser:bar
    add wingroup:members unixgroup:staff
EOF
```

EXAMPLE 7 Listing Name-Based Mapping Rules

The following command shows how to list the name-based mapping rules:

```
# idmap list
add winuser:foobar@example.com unixuser:bar
add wingroup:members unixgroup:staff
```

EXAMPLE 8 Importing Name-Based Mapping Rules From the usermap.cfg File

The usermap.cfg file can be used to configure name-based mapping rules. The following usermap.cfg file shows mapping rules that map Windows user foobar@example.com to UNIX user foo, and that map foobar@example.com to the UNIX user foo.

```
# cat usermap.cfg
foo@example.com == foo
foobar@example.com => foo
```

EXAMPLE 8 Importing Name-Based Mapping Rules From the `usermap.cfg` File *(Continued)*

The following `idmap` command imports `usermap.cfg` information to the `idmapd` database:

```
# cat usermap.cfg | idmap import usermap.cfg
```

This command does the same as the previous command:

```
# idmap import -f usermap.cfg usermap.cfg
```

The following commands are equivalent to the previous `idmap import` commands:

```
# idmap <<EOF
    add winuser:foo@example.com unixuser:foo
    add -d winuser:foobar@example.com unixuser:foo
EOF
```

EXAMPLE 9 Using Name-Based and Ephemeral ID Mapping With Identity Function Mapping and Exceptions

The following commands map all users in the `example.com` Windows domain to UNIX user accounts of the same name. The command also specifies mappings for the following Windows users: `joe@example.com`, `jane.doe@example.com`, `administrator@example.com`. The `administrator` from all domains is mapped to `nobody`. Any Windows users without corresponding UNIX accounts are mapped dynamically to available ephemeral UIDs.

```
# idmap import usermap.cfg <<EOF
    joe@example.com == joes
    jane.doe@example.com == janed
    administrator@* => nobody
    *@example.com == *
    *@example.com => nobody
EOF
```

EXAMPLE 10 Adding Directory-based Name Mapping to AD User Object

The following command maps Windows user `joe@example.com` to UNIX user `joe` by adding the UNIX name to AD object for `joe@example.com`.

```
# idmap set-namemap winuser:joe@example.com joes
```

EXAMPLE 11 Adding Directory-based Name Mapping to Native LDAP User Object

The following command maps UNIX user `foo` to Windows user `foobar@example.com` by adding the Windows name to native LDAP object for `foo`.

```
# idmap set-namemap unixuser:foo foobar@example.com
```

EXAMPLE 12 Removing Directory-based Name Mapping from AD User Object

The following command removes the UNIX username `unixuser` from the AD object representing `joe@example.com`.

```
# idmap unset-namemap winuser:joe@example.com unixuser
```

Exit Status 0 Successful completion.
>0 An error occurred. A diagnostic message is written to standard error.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Uncommitted

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [idmapd\(1M\)](#), [ldapaddent\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Notes The `idmapd` service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#). The service identifier for the `idmapd` service is `svc:/system/idmap`.

Use the `svcadm` command to perform administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or restarting the service. These actions require the `solaris.smf.manage.idmap` authorization. Use the `svcs` command to query the service's status.

Windows user names are case-insensitive, while UNIX user names are case-sensitive. The case of Windows names as they appear in `idmap` name-rules and `idmap show` command lines is irrelevant.

Because common practice in UNIX environments is to use all-lowercase user names, wildcard name-rules map Windows names to UNIX user/group names as follows: first, the canonical Windows name (that is, in the case as it appears in the directory) is used as a UNIX user or group name. If there is no such UNIX entity, then the Windows name's case is folded to lowercase and the result is used as the UNIX user or group name.

As a result of this differing treatment of case, user names that appear to be alike might not be recognized as matches. You must create rules to handle such pairings of strings that differ only in case. For example, to map the Windows user `sam@example` to the Solaris user `Sam`, you must create the following rules:

```
# idmap add "winuser:*@example" "unixuser:*"
# idmap add winuser:sam@example unixuser:Sam
```

For guidance on modifying an Active Directory schema, consult the Microsoft document, *Step-by-Step Guide to Using Active Directory Schema and Display Specifiers*, which you can find at their [technet](http://technet.microsoft.com/) web site, <http://technet.microsoft.com/>.

Name idmapd – Native Identity Mapping service daemon

Synopsis /usr/lib/idmapd

Description The idmapd daemon maps Windows Security Identifiers (SIDs) to POSIX Identifiers (UIDs/GIDs) and conversely.

The [idmap\(1M\)](#) utility provides a front end to the idmapd daemon.

Files /var/idmap/idmap.db

Database in which to store local name-based ID mapping rules. The contents of the database are private. The database should not be accessed or modified directly.

/var/run/idmap/idmap.db

Database in which to cache ID mappings that are generated by ephemeral ID mapping and by name-based mapping. The contents of the database are private. The database should not be accessed or modified directly.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	See below.

Interface stability for these components is as follows:

svc:/system/idmap
Committed

/var/idmap/idmap.db
Project Private

/var/run/idmap/idmap.db
Project Private

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [idmap\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [defaultdomain\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Notes The idmapd service is managed by the service management facility (SMF). The service identifier for the idmapd service is svc:/system/idmap.

Use the svcadm command to perform administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or restarting the service. These actions require the solaris.smf.manage.idmap authorization. Use the svcs command to query the service's status.

The functionality of this daemon might change in a future release of the Solaris operating system.

Name idsconfig – prepare an iPlanet Directory Server (iDS) to be populated with data and serve LDAP clients

Synopsis /usr/lib/ldap/idsconfig [-v] [-i *input_configfile*]
[-o *output_configfile*]

Description Use the `idsconfig` tool to set up an iPlanet Directory Server (iDS). You can specify the input configuration file with the `-i` option on the command line. Alternatively, the tool will prompt the user for configuration information. The input configuration file is created by `idsconfig` with the `-o` option on a previous run.

The first time a server is set up, the user is prompted for all the required information. Future installations on that machine can use the configuration file previously generated by `idsconfig` using the `-o` option.

The output configuration file contains the directory administrator's password in clear text. Thus, if you are creating an output configuration file, take appropriate security precautions.

You should back up the directory server's configuration and data prior to running this command.

Options The following options are supported:

- `-i input_configfile` Specify the file name for `idsconfig` to use as a configuration file. This file will be read by `idsconfig`, and the values in the file will be used to configure the server. Do not manually edit *input_configfile*. The *input_configfile* is only partially validated, as `idsconfig` assumes that the file was created by a previous invocation of the command.
- `-o output_configfile` Create a configuration file.
- `-v` Verbose output.

Operands The following operands are supported:

- input_configfile* Name of configuration file for `idsconfig` to use.
- output_configfile* Configuration file created by `idsconfig`.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Prompting the User for Input

In the following example, the user is prompted for information to set up iDS.

```
example# idsconfig
```

EXAMPLE 2 Creating an Output Configuration File

In the following example, the user is prompted for information to set up iDS, and an output configuration file, `config.1`, is created when completed.

EXAMPLE 2 Creating an Output Configuration File *(Continued)*

```
example# idsconfig -o config.1
```

EXAMPLE 3 Setting up iDS Using the Specified Configuration File

In the following example, iDS is set up by using the values specified in the configuration file, `config.1`. The verbose mode is specified, so detailed information will print to the screen.

```
example# idsconfig -v -i config.1
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWnisu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [ldap\(1\)](#), [ldapadd\(1\)](#), [ldapdelete\(1\)](#), [ldaplist\(1\)](#), [ldapmodify\(1\)](#), [ldapmodrdn\(1\)](#), [ldapsearch\(1\)](#), [ldap_cachemgr\(1M\)](#), [ldapaddent\(1M\)](#), [ldapclient\(1M\)](#), [suninstall\(1M\)](#), [resolv.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name ifconfig – configure network interface parameters

Synopsis `ifconfig interface [address_family] [address [/prefix_length] [dest_address]] [addif address [/prefix_length]] [removeif address [/prefix_length]] [arp | -arp] [auth_algs authentication_algorithm] [encr_algs encryption_algorithm] [encr_auth_algs authentication_algorithm] [auto-revarp] [broadcast address] [deprecated | -deprecated] [preferred | -preferred] [destination dest_address] [ether [address]] [failover | -failover] [group [name | ""]] [index if_index] [ipmp] [metric n] [modlist] [modinsert mod_name@pos] [modremove mod_name@pos] [mtu n] [netmask mask] [plumb] [unplumb] [private | -private] [nud | -nud] [set [address] [/netmask]] [standby | -standby] [subnet subnet_address] [tdst tunnel_dest_address] [token address/prefix_length] [tsrc tunnel_src_address] [trailers | -trailers] [up] [down] [usesrc [name | none]] [xmit | -xmit] [encaplimit n | -encaplimit] [thoplimit n] [router | -router] [zone zonename | -zone | -all-zones]`

`ifconfig [address_family] interface {auto-dhcp | dhcp} [primary] [wait seconds] drop | extend | inform | ping | release | start | status`

Description The command `ifconfig` is used to assign an address to a network interface and to configure network interface parameters. The `ifconfig` command must be used at boot time to define the network address of each interface present on a machine; it may also be used at a later time to redefine an interface's address or other operating parameters. If no option is specified, `ifconfig` displays the current configuration for a network interface. If an address family is specified, `ifconfig` reports only the details specific to that address family. Only privileged users may modify the configuration of a network interface. Options appearing within braces (`{ }`) indicate that one of the options must be specified.

DHCP Configuration The forms of `ifconfig` that use the `auto-dhcp` or `dhcp` arguments are used to control the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (“DHCP”) configuration of the interface. In this mode, `ifconfig` is used to control operation of `dhcpcagent(1M)`, the DHCP client daemon. Once an interface is placed under DHCP control by using the `start` operand, `ifconfig` should not, in normal operation, be used to modify the address or characteristics of the interface. If the address of an interface under DHCP is changed, `dhcpcagent` will remove the interface from its control.

Options The following options are supported:

`addif address`

Create the next unused logical interface on the specified physical interface.

all-zones

Make the interface available to every shared-IP zone on the system. The appropriate zone to which to deliver data is determined using the `tnzonecfg` database. This option is available only if the system is configured with the Solaris Trusted Extensions feature.

The `tnzonecfg` database is described in the `tnzonecfg(4)` man page, which is part of the *Solaris Trusted Extensions Reference Manual*.

anycast

Marks the logical interface as an anycast address by setting the ANYCAST flag. See “INTERFACE FLAGS,” below, for more information on anycast.

-anycast

Marks the logical interface as not an anycast address by clearing the ANYCAST flag.

arp

Enable the use of the Address Resolution Protocol (“ARP”) in mapping between network level addresses and link level addresses (default). This is currently implemented for mapping between IPv4 addresses and MAC addresses.

-arp

Disable the use of the ARP on a physical interface. ARP cannot be disabled on an IPMP IP interface.

auth_algs *authentication algorithm*

For a tunnel, enable IPsec AH with the authentication algorithm specified. The algorithm can be either a number or an algorithm name, including *any* to express no preference in algorithm. All IPsec tunnel properties must be specified on the same command line. To disable tunnel security, specify an `auth_alg` of `none`.

It is now preferable to use the `ipseconf(1M)` command when configuring a tunnel's security properties. If `ipseconf` was used to set a tunnel's security properties, this keyword will not affect the tunnel.

auto-dhcp

Use DHCP to automatically acquire an address for this interface. This option has a completely equivalent alias called `dhcp`.

For IPv6, the interface specified must be the zeroth logical interface (the physical interface name), which has the link-local address.

primary

Defines the interface as the *primary*. The interface is defined as the preferred one for the delivery of client-wide configuration data. Only one interface can be the primary at any given time. If another interface is subsequently selected as the primary, it replaces the previous one. Nominating an interface as the primary one will not have much significance once the client work station has booted, as many applications will already have started and been configured with data read from the previous primary interface.

wait seconds

The `ifconfig` command will wait until the operation either completes or for the interval specified, whichever is the sooner. If no wait interval is given, and the operation is one that cannot complete immediately, `ifconfig` will wait 30 seconds for the requested operation to complete. The symbolic value `forever` may be used as well, with obvious meaning.

drop

Remove the specified interface from DHCP control without notifying the DHCP server, and record the current lease for later use. Additionally, for IPv4, set the IP address to zero. For IPv6, unplug all logical interfaces plumbed by `dhcpage`t.

extend

Attempt to extend the lease on the interface's IP address. This is not required, as the agent will automatically extend the lease well before it expires.

inform

Obtain network configuration parameters from DHCP without obtaining a lease on IP addresses. This is useful in situations where an IP address is obtained through mechanisms other than DHCP.

ping

Check whether the interface given is under DHCP control, which means that the interface is managed by the DHCP agent and is working properly. An exit status of 0 means success.

release

Relinquish the IP addresses on the interface by notifying the server and discard the current lease. For IPv4, set the IP address to zero. For IPv6, all logical interfaces plumbed by `dhcpage`t are unplumbed.

start

Start DHCP on the interface.

status

Display the DHCP configuration status of the interface.

auto-revarp

Use the Reverse Address Resolution Protocol (RARP) to automatically acquire an address for this interface. This will fail if the interface does not support RARP; for example, IPoIB (IP over InfiniBand), and on IPv6 interfaces.

broadcast address

For IPv4 only. Specify the address to use to represent broadcasts to the network. The default broadcast address is the address with a host part of all 1's. A "+" (plus sign) given for the broadcast value causes the broadcast address to be reset to a default appropriate for the (possibly new) address and netmask. The arguments of `ifconfig` are interpreted left to right. Therefore

```
example% ifconfig -a netmask + broadcast +
```

and

```
example% ifconfig -a broadcast + netmask +
```

may result in different values being assigned for the broadcast addresses of the interfaces.

deprecated

Marks the logical interface as deprecated. An address associated with a deprecated interface will not be used as source address for outbound packets unless either there are no other addresses available on the interface or the application has bound to this address explicitly. The status display shows DEPRECATED as part of flags. See [INTERFACE FLAGS](#) for information on the flags supported by `ifconfig`.

-deprecated

Marks a logical interface as not deprecated. An address associated with such an interface could be used as a source address for outbound packets.

preferred

Marks the logical interface as preferred. This option is only valid for IPv6 addresses. Addresses assigned to preferred logical interfaces are preferred as source addresses over all other addresses configured on the system, unless the address is of an inappropriate scope relative to the destination address. Preferred addresses are used as source addresses regardless of which physical interface they are assigned to. For example, you can configure a preferred source address on the loopback interface and advertise reachability of this address by using a routing protocol.

-preferred

Marks the logical interface as not preferred.

destination *dest_address*

Set the destination address for a point-to-point interface.

dhcp

This option is an alias for option `auto-dhcp`

down

Mark a logical interface as “down”. (That is, turn off the `IFF_UP` bit.) When a logical interface is marked “down,” the system does not attempt to use the address assigned to that interface as a source address for outbound packets and will not recognize inbound packets destined to that address as being addressed to this host. Additionally, when all logical interfaces on a given physical interface are “down,” the physical interface itself is disabled.

When a logical interface is down, all routes that specify that interface as the output (using the `-ifp` option in the [route\(1M\)](#) command or `RTA_IFP` in a [route\(7P\)](#) socket) are removed from the forwarding table. Routes marked with `RTF_STATIC` are returned to the table if the interface is brought back up, while routes not marked with `RTF_STATIC` are simply deleted.

When all logical interfaces that could possibly be used to reach a particular gateway address are brought down (specified without the interface option as in the previous paragraph), the

affected gateway routes are treated as though they had the `RTF_BLACKHOLE` flag set. All matching packets are discarded because the gateway is unreachable.

`encaplimit n`

Set the tunnel encapsulation limit for the interface to `n`. This option applies to IPv4-in-IPv6 and IPv6-in-IPv6 tunnels only, and it simply modifies the `encaplimit link` property of the underlying IPv6 tunnel link (see [dladm\(1M\)](#)). The tunnel encapsulation limit controls how many more tunnels a packet can enter before it leaves any tunnel, that is, the tunnel nesting level.

This option is obsolete, superseded by the [dladm\(1M\)](#) `encaplimit link` property.

`-encaplimit`

Disable generation of the tunnel encapsulation limit. This option applies only to IPv4-in-IPv6 and IPv6-in-IPv6 tunnels. This simply sets the `encaplimit link` property of the underlying IPv6 tunnel link to 0 (see [dladm\(1M\)](#) `encaplimit`).

This option is obsolete, superseded by the [dladm\(1M\)](#) `encaplimit link` property.

`encr_auth_algs authentication algorithm`

For a tunnel, enable IPsec ESP with the authentication algorithm specified. It can be either a number or an algorithm name, including any or none, to indicate no algorithm preference. If an ESP encryption algorithm is specified but the authentication algorithm is not, the default value for the ESP authentication algorithm will be any.

It is now preferable to use the [ipseccconf\(1M\)](#) command when configuring a tunnel's security properties. If `ipseccconf` was used to set a tunnel's security properties, this keyword will not affect the tunnel.

`encr_algs encryption algorithm`

For a tunnel, enable IPsec ESP with the encryption algorithm specified. It can be either a number or an algorithm name. Note that all IPsec tunnel properties must be specified on the same command line. To disable tunnel security, specify the value of `encr_alg` as none. If an ESP authentication algorithm is specified, but the encryption algorithm is not, the default value for the ESP encryption will be null.

It is now preferable to use the [ipseccconf\(1M\)](#) command when configuring a tunnel's security properties. If `ipseccconf` was used to set a tunnel's security properties, this keyword will not affect the tunnel.

`ether [address]`

If no address is given and the user is root or has sufficient privileges to open the underlying datalink, then display the current Ethernet address information.

Otherwise, if the user is root or has sufficient privileges, set the Ethernet address of the interfaces to `address`. The address is an Ethernet address represented as `x:x:x:x:x:x` where `x` is a hexadecimal number between 0 and FF. Similarly, for the IPoIB (IP over InfiniBand) interfaces, the address will be 20 bytes of colon-separated hex numbers between 0 and FF.

Some, though not all, Ethernet interface cards have their own addresses. To use cards that do not have their own addresses, refer to section 3.2.3(4) of the IEEE 802.3 specification for a definition of the locally administered address space. Note that all IP interfaces in an IPMP group must have unique hardware addresses; see [in.mpathd\(1M\)](#).

- failover

Set NOFAILOVER on the logical interface. This makes the associated address available for use by `in.mpathd` to perform probe-based failure detection for the associated physical IP interface. As a side effect, DEPRECATED will also be set on the logical interface. This operation is not permitted on an IPMP IP interface.

failover

Clear NOFAILOVER on the logical interface. This is the default. These logical interfaces are subject to migration when brought up (see IP MULTIPATHING GROUPS).

group [name | ""]

When applied to a physical interface, it places the interface into the named group. If the group does not exist, it will be created, along with one or more IPMP IP interfaces (for IPv4, IPv6, or both). Any UP addresses that are not also marked NOFAILOVER are subject to migration to the IPMP IP interface (see IP MULTIPATHING GROUPS). Specifying a group name of "" removes the physical IP interface from the group.

When applied to a physical IPMP IP interface, it renames the IPMP group to have the new name. If the name already exists, or a name of "" is specified, it fails. Renaming IPMP groups is discouraged. Instead, the IPMP IP interface should be given a meaningful name when it is created by means of the `ipmp` subcommand, which the system will also use as the IPMP group name.

index *n*

Change the interface index for the interface. The value of *n* must be an interface index (*if_index*) that is not used on another interface. *if_index* will be a non-zero positive number that uniquely identifies the network interface on the system.

ipmp

Create an IPMP IP interface with the specified name. An interface must be separately created for use by IPv4 and IPv6. The *address_family* parameter controls whether the command applies to IPv4 or IPv6 (IPv4 if unspecified). All IPMP IP interfaces have the IPMP flag set.

metric *n*

Set the routing metric of the interface to *n*; if no value is specified, the default is 0. The routing metric is used by the routing protocol. Higher metrics have the effect of making a route less favorable. Metrics are counted as addition hops to the destination network or host.

modinsert *mod_name@pos*

Insert a module with name *mod_name* to the stream of the device at position *pos*. The position is relative to the stream head. Position 0 means directly under stream head.

Based upon the example in the `modlist` option, use the following command to insert a module with name `ipqos` under the `ip` module and above the `firewall` module:

```
example% ifconfig eri0 modinsert ipqos@2
```

A subsequent listing of all the modules in the stream of the device follows:

```
example% ifconfig eri0 modlist
0 arp
1 ip
2 ipqos
3 firewall
4 eri
```

`modlist`

List all the modules in the stream of the device.

The following example lists all the modules in the stream of the device:

```
example% ifconfig eri0 modlist
0 arp
1 ip
2 firewall
4 eri
```

`modremove mod_name@pos`

Remove a module with name `mod_name` from the stream of the device at position `pos`. The position is relative to the stream head.

Based upon the example in the `modinsert` option, use the following command to remove the `firewall` module from the stream after inserting the `ipqos` module:

```
example% ifconfig eri0 modremove firewall@3
```

A subsequent listing of all the modules in the stream of the device follows:

```
example% ifconfig eri0 modlist
0 arp
1 ip
2 ipqos
3 eri
```

Note that the core IP stack modules, for example, `ip` and `tun` modules, cannot be removed.

`mtu n`

Set the maximum transmission unit of the interface to `n`. For many types of networks, the `mtu` has an upper limit, for example, 1500 for Ethernet. This option sets the `FIXEDMTU` flag on the affected interface.

`netmask mask`

For IPv4 only. Specify how much of the address to reserve for subdividing networks into subnetworks. The mask includes the network part of the local address and the subnet part, which is taken from the host field of the address. The mask contains 1's for the bit positions

in the 32-bit address which are to be used for the network and subnet parts, and 0's for the host part. The mask should contain at least the standard network portion, and the subnet field should be contiguous with the network portion. The mask can be specified in one of four ways:

1. with a single hexadecimal number with a leading 0x,
2. with a dot-notation address,
3. with a "+" (plus sign) address, or
4. with a pseudo host name/pseudo network name found in the network database [networks\(4\)](#).

If a "+" (plus sign) is given for the netmask value, the mask is looked up in the [netmasks\(4\)](#) database. This lookup finds the longest matching netmask in the database by starting with the interface's IPv4 address as the key and iteratively masking off more and more low order bits of the address. This iterative lookup ensures that the [netmasks\(4\)](#) database can be used to specify the netmasks when variable length subnetmasks are used within a network number.

If a pseudo host name/pseudo network name is supplied as the netmask value, netmask data may be located in the [hosts](#) or [networks](#) database. Names are looked up by first using [gethostbyname\(3NSL\)](#). If not found there, the names are looked up in [getnetbyname\(3SOCKET\)](#). These interfaces may in turn use [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#) to determine what data store(s) to use to fetch the actual value.

For both `inet` and `inet6`, the same information conveyed by *mask* can be specified as a *prefix_length* attached to the *address* parameter.

nud

Enables the neighbor unreachability detection mechanism on a point-to-point physical interface.

-nud

Disables the neighbor unreachability detection mechanism on a point-to-point physical interface.

plumb

For a physical IP interface, open the datalink associated with the physical interface name and set up the plumbing needed for IP to use the datalink. When used with a logical interface name, this command is used to create a specific named logical interface on an existing physical IP interface.

An interface must be separately plumbed for IPv4 and IPv6 according to the *address_family* parameter (IPv4 if unspecified). Before an interface has been plumbed, it will not be shown by `ifconfig -a`.

Note that IPMP IP interfaces are not tied to a specific datalink and are instead created with the `ipmp` subcommand.

- private**
Tells the `in.routed` routing daemon that a specified logical interface should not be advertised.
- private**
Specify unadvertised interfaces.
- removeif *address***
Remove the logical interface on the physical interface specified that matches the *address* specified.
- router**
Enable IP forwarding on the interface. When enabled, the interface is marked `ROUTER`, and IP packets can be forwarded to and from the interface. Enabling `ROUTER` on any IP interface in an IPMP group enables it on all IP interfaces in that IPMP group.
- router**
Disable IP forwarding on the interface. IP packets are not forwarded to and from the interface. Disabling `ROUTER` on any IP interface in an IPMP group disables it on all IP interfaces in that IPMP group.
- set**
Set the *address*, *prefix_length* or both, for a logical interface.
- standby**
Mark the physical IP interface as a `STANDBY` interface. If an interface is marked `STANDBY` and is part of an IPMP group, the interface will not be used for data traffic unless another interface in the IPMP group becomes unusable. When a `STANDBY` interface is functional but not being used for data traffic, it will also be marked `INACTIVE`. This operation is not permitted on an IPMP IP interface.
- standby**
Clear `STANDBY` on the interface. This is the default.
- subnet**
Set the subnet *address* for an interface.
- tdst *tunnel_dest_address***
Set the destination address of a tunnel. The address should not be the same as the `dest_address` of the tunnel, because no packets leave the system over such a tunnel.

This option is obsolete, superseded by the `dladm(1M)` `create-iptun` and `modify-iptun` subcommands.
- thoplimit *n***
Set the hop limit for a tunnel interface. The hop limit value is used as the TTL in the IPv4 header for the IPv6-in-IPv4 and IPv4-in-IPv4 tunnels. For IPv6-in-IPv6 and IPv4-in-IPv6 tunnels, the hop limit value is used as the hop limit in the IPv6 header. This option simply modifies the `hoplimit` link property of the underlying IP tunnel link (see `dladm(1M)`).

This option is obsolete, superseded by the [dladm\(1M\)](#) `hoplimit` link property.

token *address/prefix_length*

Set the IPv6 token of an interface to be used for address autoconfiguration.

```
example% ifconfig eri0 inet6 token ::1/64
```

trailers

This flag previously caused a nonstandard encapsulation of IPv4 packets on certain link levels. Drivers supplied with this release no longer use this flag. It is provided for compatibility, but is ignored.

-trailers

Disable the use of a “trailer” link level encapsulation.

tsrc *tunnel_src_address*

Set the source address of a tunnel. This is the source address on an outer encapsulating IP header. It must be an address of another interface already configured using `ifconfig`.

This option is obsolete, superseded by the [dladm\(1M\)](#) `create-iptun` and `modify-iptun` subcommands.

unplumb

For a physical or IPMP interface, remove all associated logical IP interfaces and tear down any plumbing needed for IP to use the interface. For an IPMP IP interface, this command will fail if the group is not empty. For a logical interface, the logical interface is removed.

An interface must be separately unplumbed for IPv4 and IPv6 according to the *address_family* parameter (IPv4 if unspecified). Upon success, the interface name will no longer appear in the output of `ifconfig -a`.

up

Mark a logical interface UP. As a result, the IP module will accept packets destined to the associated address (unless the address is zero), along with any associated multicast and broadcast IP addresses. Similarly, the IP module will allow packets to be sent with the associated address as a source address. At least one logical interface must be UP for the associated physical interface to send or receive packets

usesrc [*name* | none]

Specify a physical interface to be used for source address selection. If the keyword `none` is used, then any previous selection is cleared.

When an application does not choose a non-zero source address using [bind\(3SOCKET\)](#), the system will select an appropriate source address based on the outbound interface and the address selection rules (see [ipaddrsel\(1M\)](#)).

When `usesrc` is specified and the specified interface is selected in the forwarding table for output, the system looks first to the specified physical interface and its associated logical interfaces when selecting a source address. If no usable address is listed in the forwarding table, the ordinary selection rules apply. For example, if you enter:

ifconfig eri0 usesrc vni0

...and `vni0` has address 10.0.0.1 assigned to it, the system will prefer 10.0.0.1 as the source address for any packets originated by local connections that are sent through `eri0`. Further examples are provided in the EXAMPLES section.

While you can specify any physical interface (or even loopback), be aware that you can also specify the virtual IP interface (see [vni\(7d\)](#)). The virtual IP interface is not associated with any physical hardware and is thus immune to hardware failures. You can specify any number of physical interfaces to use the source address hosted on a single virtual interface. This simplifies the configuration of routing-based multipathing. If one of the physical interfaces were to fail, communication would continue through one of the remaining, functioning physical interfaces. This scenario assumes that the reachability of the address hosted on the virtual interface is advertised in some manner, for example, through a routing protocol.

Because the `ifconfig preferred` option is applied to all interfaces, it is coarser-grained than the `usesrc` option. It will be overridden by `usesrc` and `setsrc` (route subcommand), in that order.

IPMP and the `usesrc` option are mutually exclusive. That is, if an interface is part of an IPMP group or marked STANDBY, then it cannot be specified by means of `usesrc`, and vice-versa.

xmit

Enable a logical interface to transmit packets. This is the default behavior when the logical interface is up.

-xmit

Disable transmission of packets on an interface. The interface will continue to receive packets.

zone *zonename*

Place the logical interface in zone *zonename*. The named zone must be active in the kernel in the ready or running state. The interface is unplumbed when the zone is halted or rebooted. The zone must be configured to be an shared-IP zone. [zonecfg\(1M\)](#) is used to assign network interface names to exclusive-IP zones.

-zone

Place IP interface in the global zone. This is the default.

Operands The *interface* operand, as well as address parameters that affect it, are described below.

interface

A string of one of the following forms:

- *name physical-unit*, for example, `eri0` or `ce1`
- *name physical-unit:logical-unit*, for example, `eri0:1`
- `ip.tunN`, `ip6.tunN`, or `ip6to4.tunN` for implicit IP tunnel links

If the interface name starts with a dash (-), it is interpreted as a set of options which specify a set of interfaces. In such a case, -a must be part of the options and any of the additional options below can be added in any order. If one of these interface names is given, the commands following it are applied to all of the interfaces that match.

-a

Apply the command to all interfaces of the specified address family. If no address family is supplied, either on the command line or by means of `/etc/default/inet_type`, then all address families will be selected.

-d

Apply the commands to all “down” interfaces in the system.

-D

Apply the commands to all interfaces not under DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol) control.

-u

Apply the commands to all “up” interfaces in the system.

-Z

Apply the commands to all interfaces in the user's zone.

-4

Apply the commands to all IPv4 interfaces.

-6

Apply the commands to all IPv6 interfaces.

address_family

The address family is specified by the *address_family* parameter. The `ifconfig` command currently supports the following families: `inet` and `inet6`. If no address family is specified, the default is `inet`.

`ifconfig` honors the `DEFAULT_IP` setting in the `/etc/default/inet_type` file when it displays interface information. If `DEFAULT_IP` is set to `IP_VERSION4`, then `ifconfig` will omit information that relates to IPv6 interfaces. However, when you explicitly specify an address family (`inet` or `inet6`) on the `ifconfig` command line, the command line overrides the `DEFAULT_IP` settings.

address

For the IPv4 family (`inet`), the *address* is either a host name present in the host name data base (see [hosts\(4\)](#)) or in the Network Information Service (NIS) map `hosts`, or an IPv4 address expressed in the Internet standard “dot notation”.

For the IPv6 family (`inet6`), the *address* is either a host name present in the host name data base (see [hosts\(4\)](#)) or in the Network Information Service (NIS) map `ipnode`, or an IPv6 address expressed in the Internet standard colon-separated hexadecimal format represented as `x::x::x::x::x::x` where *x* is a hexadecimal number between 0 and FFFF.

prefix_length

For the IPv4 and IPv6 families (`inet` and `inet6`), the *prefix_length* is a number between 0 and the number of bits in the address. For `inet`, the number of bits in the address is 32; for `inet6`, the number of bits in the address is 128. The *prefix_length* denotes the number of leading set bits in the netmask.

dest_address

If the *dest_address* parameter is supplied in addition to the *address* parameter, it specifies the address of the correspondent on the other end of a point-to-point link.

tunnel_dest_address

An address that is or will be reachable through an interface other than the tunnel being configured. This tells the tunnel where to send the tunneled packets. This address must not be the same as the interface destination address being configured.

tunnel_src_address

An address that is attached to an already configured interface that has been configured “up” with `ifconfig`.

Interface Flags The `ifconfig` command supports the following interface flags. The term “address” in this context refers to a logical interface, for example, `eri0:0`, while “interface” refers to the physical interface, for example, `eri0`.

ADDRCONF

The address is from stateless `addrconf`. The stateless mechanism allows a host to generate its own address using a combination of information advertised by routers and locally available information. Routers advertise prefixes that identify the subnet associated with the link, while the host generates an “interface identifier” that uniquely identifies an interface in a subnet. In the absence of information from routers, a host can generate link-local addresses. This flag is specific to IPv6.

ANYCAST

Indicates an anycast address. An anycast address identifies the nearest member of a group of systems that provides a particular type of service. An anycast address is assigned to a group of systems. Packets are delivered to the nearest group member identified by the anycast address instead of being delivered to all members of the group.

BROADCAST

This broadcast address is valid. This flag and `POINTTOPOINT` are mutually exclusive

CoS

This interface supports some form of Class of Service (CoS) marking. An example is the 802.1D user priority marking supported on VLAN interfaces. For IPMP IP interfaces, this will only be set if all interfaces in the group have CoS set.

Note that this flag is only set on interfaces over VLAN links and over Ethernet links that have their `dladm(1M)` `tagmode` link property set to `normal`.

DEPRECATED

This address is deprecated. This address will not be used as a source address for outbound packets unless there are no other addresses on this interface or an application has explicitly bound to this address. An IPv6 deprecated address is part of the standard mechanism for renumbering in IPv6 and will eventually be deleted when not used. For both IPv4 and IPv6, DEPRECATED is also set on all NOFAILOVER addresses, though this may change in a future release.

DHCPRUNNING

The logical interface's address is managed by [dhcpcd\(1M\)](#). For IPv6, this will also be set on the zeroth logical interface if DHCPv6 has been started on the interface; see [in.ndpd\(1M\)](#).

DUPLICATE

The logical interface has been disabled because the IP address configured on the interface is a duplicate. Some other node on the network is using this address. If the address was configured by DHCP or is temporary, the system will choose another automatically, if possible. Otherwise, the system will attempt to recover this address periodically and the interface will recover when the conflict has been removed from the network. Changing the address or netmask, or setting the logical interface to up will restart duplicate detection. Setting the interface to down terminates recovery and removes the DUPLICATE flag.

FAILED

The `in.mpathd` daemon has determined that the interface has failed. FAILED interfaces will not be used to send or receive IP data traffic. If this is set on a physical IP interface in an IPMP group, IP data traffic will continue to flow over other usable IP interfaces in the IPMP group. If this is set on an IPMP IP interface, the entire group has failed and no data traffic can be sent or received over any interfaces in that group.

FIXEDMTU

The MTU has been set using the `-mtu` option. This flag is read-only. Interfaces that have this flag set have a fixed MTU value that is unaffected by dynamic MTU changes that can occur when drivers notify IP of link MTU changes.

INACTIVE

The physical interface is functioning but is not used to send or receive data traffic according to administrative policy. This flag is initially set by the `standby` subcommand and is subsequently controlled by `in.mpathd`. It also set when `FAILBACK=no` mode is enabled (see [in.mpathd\(1M\)](#)) to indicate that the IP interface has repaired but is not being used.

IPMP

Indicates that this is an IPMP IP interface.

LOOPBACK

Indicates that this is the loopback interface.

MULTI_BCAST

Indicates that the broadcast address is used for multicast on this interface.

MULTICAST

The interface supports multicast. IP assumes that any interface that supports hardware broadcast, or that is a point-to-point link, will support multicast.

NOARP

There is no address resolution protocol (ARP) for this interface that corresponds to all interfaces for a device without a broadcast address. This flag is specific to IPv4.

NOFAILOVER

The address associated with this logical interface is available to `in.mpathd` for probe-based failure detection of the associated physical IP interface.

NOLocal

The interface has no address, just an on-link subnet.

NONUD

NUD is disabled on this interface. NUD (neighbor unreachability detection) is used by a node to track the reachability state of its neighbors, to which the node actively sends packets, and to perform any recovery if a neighbor is detected to be unreachable. This flag is specific to IPv6.

NORTEXCH

The interface does not exchange routing information. For RIP-2, routing packets are not sent over this interface. Additionally, messages that appear to come over this interface receive no response. The subnet or address of this interface is not included in advertisements over other interfaces to other routers.

NOXMIT

Indicates that the address does not transmit packets. RIP-2 also does not advertise this address.

OFFLINE

The interface is offline and thus cannot send or receive IP data traffic. This is only set on IP interfaces in an IPMP group. See `if_mpadm(1M)` and `cfgadm(1M)`.

POINTOPOINT

Indicates that the address is a point-to-point link. This flag and **BROADCAST** are mutually exclusive

PREFERRED

This address is a preferred IPv6 source address. This address will be used as a source address for IPv6 communication with all IPv6 destinations, unless another address on the system is of more appropriate scope. The **DEPRECATED** flag takes precedence over the **PREFERRED** flag.

PRIVATE

Indicates that this address is not advertised. For RIP-2, this interface is used to send advertisements. However, neither the subnet nor this address are included in advertisements to other routers.

PROMISC

A read-only flag indicating that an interface is in promiscuous mode. All addresses associated with an interface in promiscuous mode will display (in response to `ifconfig -a`, for example) the **PROMISC** flag.

ROUTER

Indicates that IP packets can be forwarded to and from the interface.

RUNNING

Indicates that the required resources for an interface are allocated. For some interfaces this also indicates that the link is up. For IPMP IP interfaces, **RUNNING** is set as long as one IP interface in the group is active.

STANDBY

Indicates that this physical interface will not be used for data traffic unless another interface in the IPMP group becomes unusable. The **INACTIVE** and **FAILED** flags indicate whether it is actively being used.

TEMPORARY

Indicates that this is a temporary IPv6 address as defined in RFC 3041.

UNNUMBERED

This flag is set when the local IP address on the link matches the local address of some other link in the system

UP

Indicates that the logical interface (and the associated physical interface) is up. The IP module will accept packets destined to UP addresses (unless the address is zero), along with any associated multicast and broadcast IP addresses. Similarly, the IP module will allow packets to be sent with an UP address as a source address.

VIRTUAL

Indicates that the physical interface has no underlying hardware. It is not possible to transmit or receive packets through a virtual interface. These interfaces are useful for configuring local addresses that can be used on multiple interfaces. (See also the `userc` option.)

Logical Interfaces Solaris TCP/IP allows multiple logical interfaces to be associated with a physical network interface. This allows a single machine to be assigned multiple IP addresses, even though it may have only one network interface. Physical network interfaces have names of the form *driver-name physical-unit-number*, while logical interfaces have names of the form *driver-name physical-unit-number:logical-unit-number*. A physical interface is configured into the system using the `plumb` command. For example:

```
example% ifconfig eri0 plumb
```

Once a physical interface has been “plumbed”, logical interfaces associated with the physical interface can be configured by separate `-plumb` or `-addif` options to the `ifconfig` command.

```
example% ifconfig eri0:1 plumb
```


allocates a specific logical interface associated with the physical interface `eri0`. The command

```
example% ifconfig eri0 addif 192.168.200.1/24 up
```

allocates the next available logical unit number on the `eri0` physical interface and assigns an *address* and *prefix_length*.

A logical interface can be configured with parameters (*address*, *prefix_length*, and so on) different from the physical interface with which it is associated. Logical interfaces that are associated with the same physical interface can be given different parameters as well. Each logical interface must be associated with an existing and “up” physical interface. So, for example, the logical interface `eri0:1` can only be configured after the physical interface `eri0` has been plumbed.

To delete a logical interface, use the `unplumb` or `removeif` options. For example,

```
example% ifconfig eri0:1 down unplumb
```

will delete the logical interface `eri0:1`.

Ip Multipathing Groups

Physical interfaces that share the same link-layer broadcast domain *must* be collected into a single IP Multipathing (IPMP) group using the `group` subcommand. Each IPMP group has an associated IPMP IP interface, which can either be explicitly created (the preferred method) by using the `ipmp` subcommand or implicitly created by `ifconfig` in response to placing an IP interface into a new IPMP group. Implicitly-created IPMP interfaces will be named `ipmpN` where *N* is the lowest integer that does not conflict with an existing IP interface name or IPMP group name.

Each IPMP IP interface is created with a matching IPMP group name, though it can be changed using the `group` subcommand. Each IPMP IP interface hosts a set of highly-available IP addresses. These addresses will remain reachable so long as at least one interface in the group is active, where “active” is defined as having at least one UP address and having `INACTIVE`, `FAILED`, and `OFFLINE` clear. IP addresses hosted on the IPMP IP interface may either be configured statically or configured through DHCP by means of the `dhcp` subcommand.

Interfaces assigned to the same IPMP group are treated as equivalent and monitored for failure by `in.mpathd`. Provided that active interfaces in the group remain, IP interface failures (and any subsequent repairs) are handled transparently to sockets-based applications. IPMP is also integrated with the Dynamic Reconfiguration framework (see [cfgadm\(1M\)](#)), which enables network adapters to be replaced in a way that is invisible to sockets-based applications.

The IP module automatically load-spreads all outbound traffic across all active interfaces in an IPMP group. Similarly, all UP addresses hosted on the IPMP IP interface will be distributed across the active interfaces to promote inbound load-spreading. The [ipmpstat\(1M\)](#) utility allows many aspects of the IPMP subsystem to be observed, including the current binding of IP data addresses to IP interfaces.

When an interface is placed into an IPMP group, any UP logical interfaces are “migrated” to the IPMP IP interface for use by the group, unless:

- the logical interface is marked NOFAILLOVER;
- the logical interface hosts an IPv6 link-local address;
- the logical interface hosts an IPv4 0.0.0.0 address.

Likewise, once an interface is in a group, if changes are made to a logical interface such that it is UP and not exempted by one of the conditions above, it will also migrate to the associated IPMP IP interface. Logical interfaces never migrate back, even if the physical interface that contributed the address is removed from the group.

Each interface placed into an IPMP group may be optionally configured with a “test” address that `in.mpathd` will use for probe-based failure detection; see `in.mpathd(1M)`. These addresses must be marked NOFAILLOVER (using the `-failover` subcommand) prior to being marked UP. Test addresses may also be acquired through DHCP by means of the `dhcp` subcommand.

For more background on IPMP, please see the IPMP-related chapters of the *System Administration Guide: Network Interfaces and Network Virtualization*.

Configuring Ipv6 Interfaces

When an IPv6 physical interface is plumbed and configured “up” with `ifconfig`, it is automatically assigned an IPv6 link-local address for which the last 64 bits are calculated from the MAC address of the interface.

```
example% ifconfig eri0 inet6 plumb up
```

The following example shows that the link-local address has a prefix of `fe80::/10`.

```
example% ifconfig eri0 inet6
ce0: flags=2000841<UP,RUNNING,MULTICAST,IPv6>
      mtu 1500 index 2
      inet6 fe80::a00:20ff:fe8e:f3ad/10
```

Link-local addresses are only used for communication on the local subnet and are not visible to other subnets.

If an advertising IPv6 router exists on the link advertising prefixes, then the newly plumbed IPv6 interface will autoconfigure logical interface(s) depending on the prefix advertisements. For example, for the prefix advertisement `2001:0db8:3c4d:0:55::/64`, the autoconfigured interface will look like:

```
eri0:2: flags=2080841<UP,RUNNING,MULTICAST,ADDRCONF,IPv6>
      mtu 1500 index 2
      inet6 2001:0db8:3c4d:55:a00:20ff:fe8e:f3ad/64
```

Even if there are no prefix advertisements on the link, you can still assign global addresses manually, for example:

```
example% ifconfig eri0 inet6 addif \
2001:0db8:3c4d:55:a00:20ff:fe8e:f3ad/64 up
```

To configure boot-time defaults for the interface `eri0`, place the following entry in the `/etc/hostname6.eri0` file:

```
addif 2001:0db8:3c4d:55:a00:20ff:fe8e:f3ad/64 up
```

Configuring IP-over-IP Tunnel Interfaces

An IP tunnel is conceptually comprised of two parts: a virtual link between two or more IP nodes, and an IP interface above this link which allows the system to transmit and receive IP packets encapsulated by the underlying link.

The `dladm(1M)` command is used to configure tunnel links, and `ifconfig` is used to configure IP interfaces over those tunnel links. An IPv4-over-IPv4 tunnel is created by plumbing an IPv4 interface over an IPv4 tunnel link. An IPv6-over-IPv4 tunnel is created by plumbing an IPv6 interface over an IPv6 tunnel link, and so forth.

When IPv6 interfaces are plumbed over IP tunnel links, their IPv6 addresses are automatically set. For IPv4 and IPv6 tunnels, source and destination link-local addresses of the form `fe80::interface-id` are configured. For IPv4 tunnels, the *interface-id* is the IPv4 tunnel source or destination address. For IPv6 tunnels, the *interface-id* is the last 64 bits of the IPv6 tunnel source or destination address. For example, for an IPv4 tunnel between 10.1.2.3 and 10.4.5.6, the IPv6 link-local source and destination addresses of the IPv6 interface would be `fe80::a01:203` and `fe80::a04:506`. For an IPv6 tunnel between `2000::1234:abcd` and `3000::5678:abcd`, the IPv6 link-local source and destination addresses of the interface would be `fe80::1234:abcd` and `fe80::5678:abcd`. These default link-local addresses can be overridden by specifying the addresses explicitly, as with any other point-to-point interface.

For 6to4 tunnels, a 6to4 global address of the form `2002:tsrc::1/16` is configured. The *tsrc* portion is the tunnel source IPv4 address. The prefix length of the 6to4 interface is automatically set to 16, as all 6to4 packets (destinations in the `2002::/16` range) are forwarded to the 6to4 tunnel interface. For example, for a 6to4 link with a tunnel source of 75.1.2.3, the IPv6 interface would have an address of `2002:4b01:203::1/16`.

Additional IPv6 addresses can be added using the `addif` option or by plumbing additional logical interfaces.

For backward compatibility, the plumbing of tunnel IP interfaces with special names will implicitly result in the creation of tunnel links without invoking `dladm create-iptun`. These tunnel names are:

<code>ip.tunN</code>	An IPv4 tunnel
<code>ip6.tunN</code>	An IPv6 tunnel
<code>ip.6to4tunN</code>	A 6to4 tunnel

These tunnels are “implicit tunnels”, denoted with the `i` flag in `dladm show-iptun` output. The tunnel links over which these special IP interfaces are plumbed are automatically created, and they are automatically deleted when the last reference is released (that is, when the last IP interface is unplumbed).

The `tsrc`, `tdst`, `encaplim`, and `hoplimit` options to `ifconfig` are obsolete and maintained only for backward compatibility. They are equivalent to their `dladm(1M)` counterparts.

Display of Tunnel Security Settings The `ifconfig` output for IP tunnel interfaces indicates whether IPsec policy is configured for the underlying IP tunnel link. For example, a line of the following form will be displayed if IPsec policy is present:

```
tunnel security settings --> use 'ipsecconf -ln -i ip.tun1'
```

If you do not set security policy, using either `ifconfig` or `ipsecconf(1M)`, there is no tunnel security setting displayed.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Using the `ifconfig` Command

If your workstation is not attached to an Ethernet, the network interface, for example, `eri0`, should be marked “down” as follows:

```
example% ifconfig eri0 down
```

EXAMPLE 2 Printing Addressing Information

To print out the addressing information for each interface, use the following command:

```
example% ifconfig -a
```

EXAMPLE 3 Resetting the Broadcast Address

To reset each interface's broadcast address after the netmasks have been correctly set, use the next command:

```
example% ifconfig -a broadcast +
```

EXAMPLE 4 Changing the Ethernet Address

To change the Ethernet address for interface `ce0`, use the following command:

```
example% ifconfig ce0 ether aa:1:2:3:4:5
```

EXAMPLE 5 Configuring an IP-in-IP Tunnel

To configure an IP-in-IP tunnel, first create an IP tunnel link (`tunsrc` and `tundst` are hostnames with corresponding IPv4 entries in `/etc/hosts`):

```
example% dladm create-iptun -T ipv4 -s tunsrc -d tundst tun0
```

Then plumb a point-to-point interface, supplying the source and destination addresses (`mysrc` and `thedst` are hostnames with corresponding IPv4 entries in `/etc/hosts`):

EXAMPLE 5 Configuring an IP-in-IP Tunnel (Continued)

```
example% ifconfig tun0 plumb mysrc thedst up
```

Use [ipseconf\(1M\)](#), as described above, to configure tunnel security properties.

Configuring IPv6 tunnels is done by using a tunnel type of `ipv6` with `create-iptun`. IPv6 interfaces can also be plumbed over either type of tunnel.

EXAMPLE 6 Configuring 6to4 Tunnels

To configure 6to4 tunnels, first create a 6to4 tunnel link (`myv4addr` is a hostname with a corresponding IPv4 entry in `/etc/hosts`):

```
example% dladm create-iptun -T 6to4 -s myv4addr my6to4tun0
```

Then an IPv6 interface is plumbed over this link:

```
example% ifconfig my6to4tun0 inet6 plumb up
```

The IPv6 address of the interface is automatically set as described above.

EXAMPLE 7 Configuring IP Forwarding on an Interface

To enable IP forwarding on a single interface, use the following command:

```
example% ifconfig eri0 router
```

To disable IP forwarding on a single interface, use the following command:

```
example% ifconfig eri0 -router
```

EXAMPLE 8 Configuring Source Address Selection Using a Virtual Interface

The following command configures source address selection such that every packet that is locally generated with no bound source address and going out on `qfe2` prefers a source address hosted on `vni0`.

```
example% ifconfig qfe2 usesrc vni0
```

The `ifconfig -a` output for the `qfe2` and `vni0` interfaces displays as follows:

```
qfe2: flags=1100843<UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST,ROUTER,IPv4> mtu
 1500 index 4
  usesrc vni0
  inet 1.2.3.4 netmask fffffff0 broadcast 1.2.3.255
  ether 0:3:ba:17:4b:e1
vni0: flags=2001110c1<UP,RUNNING,NOARP,NOXMIT,ROUTER,IPv4,VIRTUAL>
```

EXAMPLE 8 Configuring Source Address Selection Using a Virtual Interface *(Continued)*

```
mtu 0 index 5
srcof qfe2
inet 3.4.5.6 netmask ffffffff
```

Observe, above, the `usesrc` and `srcof` keywords in the `ifconfig` output. These keywords also appear on the logical instances of the physical interface, even though this is a per-physical interface parameter. There is no `srcof` keyword in `ifconfig` for configuring interfaces. This information is determined automatically from the set of interfaces that have `usesrc` set on them.

The following command, using the `none` keyword, undoes the effect of the preceding `ifconfig usesrc` command.

```
example% ifconfig qfe2 usesrc none
```

Following this command, `ifconfig -a` output displays as follows:

```
qfe2: flags=1100843<UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST,ROUTER,IPv4> mtu
1500 index 4
inet 1.2.3.4 netmask fffffff0 broadcast 1.2.3.255
ether 0:3:ba:17:4b:e1
vni0: flags=2001110c1<UP,RUNNING,NOARP,NOXMIT,ROUTER,IPv4,VIRTUAL>
mtu 0 index 5
inet 3.4.5.6 netmask ffffffff
```

Note the absence of the `usesrc` and `srcof` keywords in the output above.

EXAMPLE 9 Configuring Source Address Selection for an IPv6 Address

The following command configures source address selection for an IPv6 address, selecting a source address hosted on `vni0`.

```
example% ifconfig qfe1 inet6 usesrc vni0
```

Following this command, `ifconfig -a` output displays as follows:

```
qfe1: flags=2000841<UP,RUNNING,MULTICAST,IPv6> mtu 1500 index 3
usesrc vni0
inet6 fe80::203:baff:fe17:4be0/10
ether 0:3:ba:17:4b:e0
vni0: flags=2002210041<UP,RUNNING,NOXMIT,NONUD,IPv6,VIRTUAL> mtu 0
index 5
srcof qfe1
inet6 fe80::203:baff:fe17:4444/128
vni0:1: flags=2002210040<RUNNING,NOXMIT,NONUD,IPv6,VIRTUAL> mtu 0
index 5
```

EXAMPLE 9 Configuring Source Address Selection for an IPv6 Address (Continued)

```

srcof qfe1
inet6 fec0::203:baff:fe17:4444/128
vni0:2: flags=2002210040<RUNNING,NOXMIT,NOAUD,IPv6,VIRTUAL> mtu 0
index 5
srcof qfe1
inet6 2000::203:baff:fe17:4444/128

```

Depending on the scope of the destination of the packet going out on `qfe1`, the appropriately scoped source address is selected from `vni0` and its aliases.

EXAMPLE 10 Using Source Address Selection with Shared-IP Zones

The following is an example of how the `rc` feature can be used with the `zones(5)` facility in Solaris. The following commands are invoked in the global zone:

```

example% ifconfig hme0 usesrc vni0
example% ifconfig eri0 usesrc vni0
example% ifconfig qfe0 usesrc vni0

```

Following the preceding commands, the `ifconfig -a` output for the virtual interfaces would display as:

```

vni0: flags=20011100c1<UP,RUNNING,NOARP,NOXMIT,ROUTER,IPv4,VIRTUAL>
mtu 0 index 23
srcof hme0 eri0 qfe0
inet 10.0.0.1 netmask ffffffff
vni0:1:
flags=20011100c1<UP,RUNNING,NOARP,NOXMIT,ROUTER,IPv4,VIRTUAL> mtu 0
index 23
zone test1
srcof hme0 eri0 qfe0
inet 10.0.0.2 netmask ffffffff
vni0:2:
flags=20011100c1<UP,RUNNING,NOARP,NOXMIT,ROUTER,IPv4,VIRTUAL> mtu 0
index 23
zone test2
srcof hme0 eri0 qfe0
inet 10.0.0.3 netmask ffffffff
vni0:3:
flags=20011100c1<UP,RUNNING,NOARP,NOXMIT,ROUTER,IPv4,VIRTUAL> mtu 0
index 23
zone test3
srcof hme0 eri0 qfe0
inet 10.0.0.4 netmask ffffffff

```

EXAMPLE 10 Using Source Address Selection with Shared-IP Zones *(Continued)*

There is one virtual interface alias per zone (test1, test2, and test3). A source address from the virtual interface alias in the same zone is selected. The virtual interface aliases were created using [zonecfg\(1M\)](#) as follows:

```
example% zonecfg -z test1
zonecfg:test1> add net
zonecfg:test1:net> set physical=vni0
zonecfg:test1:net> set address=10.0.0.2
```

The test2 and test3 zone interfaces and addresses are created in the same way.

EXAMPLE 11 Turning Off DHCPv6

The following example shows how to disable automatic use of DHCPv6 on all interfaces, and immediately shut down DHCPv6 on the interface named hme0. See [in.ndpd\(1M\)](#) and [ndpd.conf\(4\)](#) for more information on the automatic DHCPv6 configuration mechanism.

```
example% echo ifdefault StatefulAddrConf false >> /etc/inet/ndpd.conf
example% pkill -HUP -x in.ndpd
example% ifconfig hme0 dhcp release
```

Files /etc/netmasks
Netmask data.

/etc/default/inet_type
Default Internet protocol type.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability for command-line options	Committed
Interface Stability for command output	Uncommitted

See Also [dhcpinf\(1\)](#), [cfgadm\(1M\)](#), [dhcpagent\(1M\)](#), [dladm\(1M\)](#), [if_mpadm\(1M\)](#), [in.mpathd\(1M\)](#), [in.ndpd\(1M\)](#), [in.routed\(1M\)](#), [ipmpstat\(1M\)](#), [ipseccf\(1M\)](#), [ndd\(1M\)](#), [netstat\(1M\)](#), [zoneadm\(1M\)](#), [zonecfg\(1M\)](#), [ethers\(3SOCKET\)](#), [gethostbyname\(3NSL\)](#), [getnetbyname\(3SOCKET\)](#), [hosts\(4\)](#), [inet_type\(4\)](#), [ndpd.conf\(4\)](#), [netmasks\(4\)](#), [networks\(4\)](#), [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [privileges\(5\)](#), [zones\(5\)](#), [arp\(7P\)](#), [ipsecah\(7P\)](#), [ipsecesp\(7P\)](#)

System Administration Guide: IP Services

Diagnostics `ifconfig` sends messages that indicate if:

- the specified interface does not exist
- the requested address is unknown
- the user is not privileged and tried to alter an interface's configuration

Notes Do not select the names `broadcast`, `down`, `private`, `trailers`, `up` or other possible option names when you choose host names. If you choose any one of these names as host names, it can cause unusual problems that are extremely difficult to diagnose.

Name if_mpadm – administer interfaces in an IP multipathing group

Synopsis if_mpadm -d | -r *ifname*

Description The `if_mpadm` utility administers IP interfaces that are part of an IP Multipathing (IPMP) group. Currently, administration is limited to offlining IP interfaces and undoing previous offline operations.

When an IP interface is taken offline, all IP data traffic that was flowing over the IP interface is moved to another IP interface in the IPMP group. In addition, all UP IP addresses hosted on the IP interface are brought down, causing `in.mpathd(1M)` to stop probe-based failure detection on the IP interface. As a result, an offline IP interface will not be used for any inbound or outbound IP traffic. Only IP interfaces that are in an IPMP group may be brought offline. If the IP interface is the last functioning interface in the IPMP group, the offline operation will fail.

When an offline operation is undone, any IP addresses hosted on that IP interface are brought UP and will be considered by `in.mpathd` for probe-based failure detection. In addition, provided the IP interface is otherwise active (see `in.mpathd(1M)`), it will again be used to send and receive IP data traffic for the IPMP group. Note that not all offline operations can be undone. For instance, `in.mpathd` may have offlined an IP interface because its hardware address was not unique within its IPMP group. The `impstat` utility can be used to determine why an IP interface is offline, identify which IP interfaces in a group are being used for inbound and outbound IP traffic, and more; see `impstat(1M)`.

Options The `if_mpadm` utility supports the following options:

- d *ifname* Offline the IP interface specified by *ifname*. If *ifname* is not in an IPMP group, or the offline would cause the IPMP group to lose network connectivity, the operation will fail.
- r *ifname* Undo a previous offline of the IP interface specified by *ifname*. If *ifname* is not offline, the operation will fail.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Offlining an IP Interface

The following command offlines the IP interface under `0`, causing any IP packets that were being sent and received through it to be handled by another IP interface in its group.

```
example% if_mpadm -d under0
```

EXAMPLE 2 Undoing a Previous Offline Operation

Use the following command to undo the operation in the previous example:

```
example% if_mpdadm -r under0
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Unstable

See Also [ifconfig\(1M\)](#), [in.mpathd\(1M\)](#), [ipmpstat\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Diagnostics cannot offline: no other functioning interfaces are in its IPMP group.

Description: This message means that offlining the IP interface would leave the IPMP group without network connectivity.

cannot offline: not a physical interface or not in an IPMP group

Description: This means that the IP interface is not an underlying interface in an IPMP group, and therefore is not eligible to be offlined.

Name ifparse – parse ifconfig command line

Synopsis /sbin/ifparse [-fs] *addr_family commands*

Description Use the ifparse command to parse the [ifconfig\(1M\)](#) command line options and output substrings, one per line, as appropriate. If no options are specified, ifparse returns the entire ifconfig command line as a series of substrings, one per line.

Options The ifparse command supports the following options:

- f Lists only substrings of the ifconfig command line that are relevant to IP network multipath failover
- s Lists only substrings of the ifconfig command line that are not relevant to IP network multipath failover

Operands The ifparse command *does not* support the *interface* operand of the ifconfig command.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Parsing Command Line Options Relevant to Failover

The following example shows the use of the ifparse command to parse the command line options relevant to IP network multipath failover:

```
example# ifparse -f inet 1.2.3.4 up group one addif 1.2.3.5 -failover up
set 1.2.3.4 up
```

EXAMPLE 2 Parsing Command Line Options That Are Not Relevant to Failover

The following example shows the use of the ifparse command to parse the command line options that are not relevant to IP network multipath failover:

```
example# ifparse -s inet 1.2.3.4 up group one addif 1.2.3.5 -failover up
group one
addif 1.2.3.5 -failover up
```

EXAMPLE 3 Parsing the Command Line For All Options

The following example shows the use of the ifparse command to parse the command line for all ifconfig options:

```
example# ifparse inet 1.2.3.4 up group one addif 1.2.3.5 -failover up
group one
set 1.2.3.4 up
addif 1.2.3.5 -failover up
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsr
Stability Level	Obsolete

See Also [ifconfig\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Diagnostics usage: -fs <addr_family> <commands>

Description: This message indicates an invalid command line.

ifparse: Not enough space

Description: This message indicates insufficient memory.

ifparse: dhcp not supported for inet6

Description: DHCP operations are not supported for the inet6 address family.

ifparse: Operation <operation> not supported for <addr_family>

Description: Most operations cannot be used with all address families. For example, the broadcast operation is not supported on the inet6 address family.

ifparse: no argument for <operation>

Description: Some operations, for example broadcast, require an argument.

Notes The ifparse command is classified as an obsolete interface. It will likely be removed in a future release. You should not develop applications that depend upon this interface.

Name iiadm – command–line interface to control Sun StorageTek Availability Suite Point-in-Time Copy operations

Synopsis *iiadm -e {ind | shd} master_vol shadow_vol bitmap_vol*
iiadm -ne ind master_vol shadow_vol bitmap_vol
iiadm [-p] [-n] {-c | -u} {s | m} volume_set
iiadm [-adDiLR] volume_set
iiadm [-p] [-n] -w volume_set
iiadm [-hiLLv]
iiadm -P delay units volume_set
iiadm -P volume_set
iiadm -A overflow_vol volume_set
iiadm [-OQ] overflow_vol
iiadm -E volume_set
iiadm [-IJ] volume_set bitmap
iiadm -g group_name [-aAcDDeEiLLmPRuw]
iiadm [-C] cluster_tag [options]

Description Point-in-Time Copy software is a point-in-time snapshot feature of the Solaris operating system.

A Point-in-Time Copy snapshot is an instantly-available, time-fixed, replicated view of a momentarily quiesced volume. Once a snapshot is taken, Point-in-Time Copy software allows immediate read/write access to both the master and shadow volume data.

Point-in-Time Copy software tracks the differences between the master and shadow volumes (caused by writes) from the moment that the snapshot was established. This capability allows applications accessing the master volume's data to move forward in time independently of applications accessing the shadow volume's data, and vice-versa.

The Point-in-Time Copy software's tracking of differences between the master and shadow volumes facilitates a fast resynchronization or a full copy at a later time. The volume resynchronization can occur from either shadow to master or master to shadow.

Instantly after the point-in-time is (re-)established (either when the CLI prompt returns or the next shell script command is read), the master volume can be remounted or the applications using them can be resumed. Also, the shadow volume can be mounted and immediately accessed.

The `iiadm` command line utility performs only one action per command invocation. Because of this, you cannot combine multiple options, except in combination with the following overall command modifiers:

- If no action item is entered, `iiadm` displays the list of Point-in-Time Copy sets (non-suspended) currently configured. If more than one action item, or an incorrectly specified action item is entered, `iiadm` displays the specific error message to `stderr`, followed by a brief usage summary.
- For the Point-in-Time Copy options `ENABLE (-e)`, `COPY (-c)` and `UPDATE (-u)`, there are two associated shadow volume selection qualifiers, `{ ind | dep }`, that are used to specify the type of Point-in-Time Copy volume set to create.

An independent (`ind`) snapshot causes Point-in-Time Copy software to perform a full volume copy operation from the master to the shadow. When the copy completes, the shadow volume data is identical to the master volume data at the moment that it was established. Create an independent shadow if you require two physical copies of the data. An independent shadow volume must be the same size or greater than the size of the master volume. Sun recommends that the master and shadow volumes be the same size for environments where resynchronization from shadow to master is a consideration.

A dependent (`dep`) snapshot causes Point-in-Time Copy software not to perform a full volume copy. The resulting shadow volume relies on the master volume for all unmodified data blocks, which are not copied until requested. Create a dependent shadow when you do not require two physical copies of the data. A dependent shadow volume can be either the same size or smaller than the master volume. A smaller shadow volume is called a *Compact Dependent Shadow Volume*, and is typically used when the amount of change that occurs to a Point-in-Time Copy volume set is small compared to the entire size of the master volume.

The following syntax allows you to create an exportable independent shadow volume in a Sun Cluster environment:

```
# iiadm -ne ind master shadow bitmap
```

An issue arises when using a Compact Dependent Shadow Volume in that its size is established at the time that the Point-in-Time Copy volume set is enabled. If the amount of change to the entire volume set over the duration of its usage exceeds the space allocated for the shadow volume, the shadow volume is marked as out of space. It is possible to read from the shadow volume even after it is out of space, until a portion of the data for which there was no room is requested. Once that happens, the read fails and the shadow volume is marked offline.

To address this issue, Point-in-Time Copy supports the ability to associate an *overflow* volume to an existing Point-in-Time Copy dependent volume set. Thus, if the size of the Compact Dependent Shadow Volume is too small, or an unscheduled amount of change occurs to the volume set, changed data can be redirected to the associated overflow volume. To facilitate efficient usage of this overflow volume, it can be associated with multiple Point-in-Time Copy volume sets on an as-needed basis.

Considerations Prior to invoking an Point-in-Time Copy enable, copy or update operation, Point-in-Time Copy assures that the shadow volume is not mounted, to prevent a file system panic from occurring. Also, it is suggested that you either unmount or suspend (quiesce) all applications using the master volume, for only the instant when the point-in-time snapshot is taken. This assures that an atomically consistent point-in-time snapshot is taken.

It is suggested that, if the master volume was suspended rather than unmounted, the new point-in-time shadow volume's integrity be validated using volume validation utilities, such as [fsck\(1M\)](#). The reason is that Point-in-Time Copy has made a point-in-time copy of a mounted master volume to an unmounted shadow volume. During the mounting of the shadow volume, the file system detects that it is in the mounted state. Typically this state occurs only when a system crashes, so the file system attempts to validate the integrity of the volume assuming a system failure occurred, not an Point-in-Time Copy.

ENVIRONMENT OPTIONS The `ii_bitmap` variable in the `/usr/kernel/drv/ii.conf` configuration file determines the bitmap volume operational semantics as follows:

- 0 Indicates that the bitmap is maintained in memory only or resume operation.
- 1 Indicates that the bitmap is maintained in memory and on disk. This is the default value.

If a system failure occurs while using `ii_bitmap=0`, the shadow volume might be inconsistent and fast resynchronization would not be possible.

If Point-in-Time Copy is used in conjunction with the Network Storage component Remote Mirror or in a Sun Cluster, set `ii_bitmap=1`.

The `ii_debug` variable in the `/usr/kernel/drv/ii.conf` configuration file determines the amount of information logging that is output to the system console `/dev/console` during Point-in-Time Copy processing.

- 0 Indicates that no logging is sent to the system console.
- 1 Indicates that informational logging is sent to the system console.
- 2 Indicates that developmental logging is sent to the system console.

Options The `iiadm` utility supports the following options.

`-e{ind|dep} master_vol shadow_vol bitmap_vol`
 Enable Point-in-Time Copy for the specified master, shadow, and bitmap volumes.

The enable shadow set processing assures that the specified volumes are accessible, that the `shadow_vol` is not mounted, and that the `bitmap_vol` is correctly sized for the type of shadow set being created. Additionally, it assures that the volumes are under control of the SV driver (if they are not, it puts them there), initializes the bitmap volume, and, if the volume set is an independent shadow set, a full copy operation is initiated.

On a successful enable, Point-in-Time Copy stores the specified *master_vol*, *shadow_vol* and *bitmap_vol* names, plus the enabling type (*ind* or *dep*), into the Point-in-Time Copy configuration store. The configuration store contains all currently configured Point-in-Time Copy Volume Sets and their associated configuration attributes. (See discussion above on independent and dependent shadow volume semantics.)

master_vol is the volume from which a point-in-time snapshot is made.

shadow_vol is the volume that contains the point-in-time snapshot.

bitmap_vol is used for tracking differences between the shadow and master volumes. When Point-in-Time Copy shadow operations are suspended or resumed, the bitmap volume (maintained in kernel memory) can be stored in or retrieved from permanent storage. The storage associated with the bitmap volume should be as redundant as that of the shadow volume storage.

The *shadow_vol* name is the name that the Point-in-Time Copy Shadow Set is known by for all *iiadm* options requiring specification of a *volume_set* name.

-d *volume_set*

Disable the Point-in-Time Copy volume set associated with the specified *volume_set*.

If Point-in-Time Copy was running in *independent* mode as specified in the **-e ind** options, above, the shadow volume data contains the same data as it did before it was disabled (assuming no writes have occurred). Users can access the master and shadow volumes, as they are now standalone point-in-time copies.

During the time that the full copy is active, an *independent* volume operates as though it is a dependent volume. To assure that the volume is no longer in full copy mode, issue the following command to wait for the full copy to complete:

```
# iiadm -w volume_set
```

[-p] **-u s** *volume_set*

Update the shadow volume from the master.

Updates a point-in-time copy of the master volume to the shadow volume. *volume_set* is the Point-in-Time Copy shadow set containing the master and shadow volumes. This option provides a fast resynchronization of the shadow volume, creating an incremental copy of the master. This update copies all 32KB segments flagged as different between the master and shadow volumes. It does not copy all master volume data, only changed data. While the data is being copied, the shadow is dependent upon the master volume.

Before using this option, momentarily quiesce the workload to the volumes; stop the host application from writing to the volumes. This ensures that the point-in-time data is consistent. You can visually check the status of this copy or update operation with *iiadm -i volume_set*, or interactively (by means of a shell or script) with *iiadm -w volume_set*, before using the target volume for any other operations.

This command supports PID (Process Identifier) locking, by using the option `-p`, `iiadm -p -u s`. Enabling this option prevents other processes from taking a new point-in-time snapshot, thus invalidating prior point-in-time data.

`[-p] [-n] -u m volume_set`

Updates a point-in-time copy of the master volume from the shadow. *volume_set* is the Point-in-Time Copy volume set containing the master and shadow. This option provides a fast resynchronization of the master volume, creating an incremental copy of the shadow. This update copies all 32KB segments flagged as different between the master and shadow volumes. It does not copy all shadow volume data, only changed data. While the data is being copied, the master is dependent upon the shadow volume.

Before using this option, momentarily quiesce the workload to the volumes; stop the host application from writing to the volumes. This ensures that the point-in-time data is consistent. You can visually check the status of this copy or update operation with `iiadm -i volume_set`, or interactively (by means of a shell or script) with `iiadm -w volume_set`, before using the target volume for any other operations.

This command is query enabled to prevent accidentally overwriting the data on a master volume. When this command option is used in scripts, add the `-n` option to prevent the query from occurring.

This command supports PID (Process Identifier) locking, by using the option `-p`, `iiadm -p -u m`. Enabling this option prevents other processes from taking a new point-in-time snapshot, thus invalidating prior point-in-time data.

`[-p] -c s volume_set`

Copy the master volume to the shadow.

Creates a point-in-time copy of the master volume to the shadow volume. *volume_set* is the Point-in-Time Copy volume set containing the master and shadow. This option writes all data in the point-in-time copy of the master volume to the shadow volume. While the data is being copied from master to shadow, the shadow is dependent on the master volume.

This option performs a full volume copy. Use `iiadm -u s` unless the integrity of the data on the independent shadow volume is in doubt. Otherwise, use this option to synchronize the master and shadow volumes; that is, make the data on each volume match.

Before using this option, momentarily quiesce the workload to the volumes; stop the host application from writing to the volumes. This ensures that the point-in-time data is consistent. You can visually check the status of this copy or update operation with `iiadm -i volume_set`, or interactively (by means of a shell or script) with `iiadm -w volume_set`, before using the target volume for any other operations.

This command supports PID (Process Identifier) locking, by using the `-p` option, `iiadm -p -c s`. Enabling this option prevents other processes from taking a new point-in-time snapshot, thus invalidating prior point-in-time data.

-c m *volume_set*

Copy the shadow volume to the master.

Creates a point-in-time copy of the shadow volume to the master volume. *volume_set* is the Point-in-Time Copy volume set containing the master and shadow volumes. This option writes all data in the point-in-time copy of the shadow volume to the master volume. While the data is being copied from the shadow to the master, the master is dependent upon the shadow volume.

This option performs a full volume copy. Use `iiadm -u m` unless the integrity of the data on the independent master is in doubt. Otherwise, use this option to synchronize the master and shadow volumes; that is, make the data on each volume match.

Before using this option, momentarily quiesce the workload to the volumes; stop the host application from writing to the volumes. This ensures that the point-in-time data is consistent. You can visually check the status of this copy or update operation with `iiadm -i volume_set`, or interactively (by means of a shell or script) with `iiadm -w volume_set`, before using the target volume for any other operations.

This command is query-enabled to prevent accidentally overwriting the data on a master volume. When this command option is used in scripts, add the `-n` option to prevent the query from occurring.

This command supports PID (Process IDentifier) locking, by using the `-p` option, `iiadm -p -c m`. Enabling this option prevents other processes from taking a new point-in-time snapshot, thus invalidating prior point-in-time data.

-a *volume_set*

Abort any current copy operation that might be active between the master and shadow volumes. *volume_set* is the Point-in-Time Copy volume set containing the master and shadow volumes. After executing `iiadm -a`, the update or copy to the target (master or shadow) volume is incomplete. The target volume is now a dependent copy of the source volume. Reissue the update or copy command option to resynchronize the volumes.

[-p] [-n] -w *volume_set*

Wait until any in-progress copy or update operation completes or is aborted. *volume_set* is the Point-in-Time Copy volume set containing the master and shadow volumes.

This option waits until the current Point-in-Time Copy operation is complete, thus preventing a subsequent `iiadm` command (from a shell or script) from executing. Use this command option when you need to be sure the copy or update operation has completed.

This command supports PID (Process IDentifier) unlocking. If a prior copy or update, using a command `iiadm -p {-c|-u} {m|s}`, was invoked with the `-p` option, upon completion of the wait processing, if the current PID was the PID that locked the point-in-time data, this option unlocks the data.

-i *volume_set*

Display status for the Point-in-Time Copy currently-enabled or -suspended volume set. *volume_set* is the Point-in-Time Copy volume set containing the master and shadow volumes. If no *volume_set* is specified, status is displayed for all Point-in-Time Copy volume sets that are configured.

-l

List all currently configured Point-in-Time Copy volumes.

-O *overflow_vol*

This option causes Point-in-Time Copy to initialize the specified *overflow_vol* for subsequent use as an overflow volume in conjunction with Compact Dependent Shadow Volumes. To facilitate efficient, shared usage of this overflow volume, it can be associated with multiple Point-in-Time Copy volume sets on an as-needed basis.

During initialization of the *overflow_vol*, the initiator of this option, must answer the following question: “Initialize this overflow volume? yes/no” A response of either “yes/no” is required before proceeding.

This option supports the -n option, so that the requested action is performed without prompting. This option is useful for inclusion in a script. The -n option must be specified first. For example, “iiadm -nO vol” is valid; “iiadm -On vol” is not.

Make sure you want to initialize the data on the specified *overflow_vol*, especially when using the -n option.

-A *overflow_vol volume_set*

This option enables the specified *overflow_vol*, for subsequent use as an overflow volume in a situation where the size of the Compact Dependent Shadow Volume is too small, or an unscheduled amount of change occurs to the volume set. Overflow changed data would be redirected to the associated overflow volume. *volume_set* is the Point-in-Time Copy volume set containing the master and shadow volumes.

If the *overflow_vol* has not been initialized, this option initializes the *overflow_vol* (see -O option), then attaches the *overflow_vol* to the *volume_set*.

If *overflow_vol* was previously initialized, this option attaches the *overflow_vol* to the *volume_set*.

This option supports the -n option, so that the requested action is performed without prompting. This option is useful for inclusion in a script. The -n option must be specified first. For example, “iiadm -nA vol” is valid; “iiadm -An vol” is not.

Make sure you want to initialize the data on the specified *overflow_vol*, especially when using the -n option.

-
- D *volume_set*
This option removes the overflow volume currently associated with the specified *volume_set*. If the overflow volume is currently in use by the *volume_set*, this operation fails with an “Overflow volume still in use” error message. To resolve this situation, perform one of the operations described below on the *volume_set*. These operations momentarily clear out all overflow writes that are associated with this volume set.
 - abort(-a)
Abort copy operation.
 - disable(-d)
Dissolve the volume set.
 - update(-u)
Update the volume set. - L
This option lists all overflow volumes which are associated with one or more volume sets.
 - Q *overflow_vol*
This option displays the current status of the *overflow_vol*.
 - E *volume_set*
Export the independent shadow volume of the Point-in-Time Copy volume set specified by *volume_set*. The shadow volume is to be made available to another host for read/write access, by means of an enabling technology, such as multi-ported devices. This other host is responsible for maintaining a bitmap of differences that is used to merge with locally recorded differences to the master when the shadow volume is rejoined to its master volume. While a shadow volume is exported it must not be subject to an update or copy operation. Perform an `iiadm -w volume_set` command prior to invoking an export command.
 - I *volume_set bitmap_vol*
Import the independent shadow volume of the Point-in-Time Copy volume set specified by *volume_set*. The shadow volume must have been previously exported from a host by means of an enabling technology, such as multi-ported devices. The import operation causes this host to start maintaining a bitmap of differences as the volume is modified. The *bitmap_vol* should not be the same as that used when the shadow volume was originally formed into a shadow group.

After the exported/imported independent shadow volume is no longer needed by the other node, you must enter a disable command so that the *bitmap_vol* and its associated *shadow_vol* are consistent, prior to performing a join operation. For example,

```
# iiadm -d volume_set
```

 - J *volume_set bitmap_vol*
Join the *volume_set*, using the *bitmap_vol*, with the master volume set of the Point-in-Time Copy volume set. The bitmap volume supplied is read and merged with the original

volume to reconstruct the original volume set consisting of the master, shadow, and bitmap volumes. The *bitmap_vol* to be merged is the one obtained on the node that had imported the independent shadow volume. There must be no write activity to the shadow volume on the importing machine from the time the bitmap is copied over until the shadow is once again imported.

`-g group_name -m volume_set [volume_set2 ...]`

Add one or more existing Point-in-Time Copy *volume_set(s)* into a user specified *group_name*. This association of one or more Point-in-Time Copy volume sets in a group allows the list of *iiadm* options shown below to be performed on all volume sets within the *group_name* as a whole.

Only the commands COPY (-c) and UPDATE (-u) are performed atomically across all Point-in-Time Copy sets within the group. All other grouped, *iiadm* commands are performed sequentially on each member of the group.

The syntax of an *iiadm* group command is as follows:

```
iiadm -g group_name [options]
```

The *options* are as follows:

- a
Abort copy operation on all sets within *group_name*.
- A
Attach *overflow_vol* to all sets within *group_name*.
- c {s | m}
Copy shadow/master for all sets within *group_name*.
- D
Detach *overflow_vol* from all sets within *group_name*.
- d
Disable all sets within *group_name*.
- E
Export all volume sets within *group_name*.
- i
Status of all volume sets within *group_name*.
- l
List all volume sets within *group_name*.
- L
List all groups.
- n
Do not ask if an update of the master volume is what the user really intended.

-
- P
Set parameters on all volume sets within *group_name*.
 - R
Reset all volume sets within *group_name*.
 - u {s | m}
Update shadow/master for all sets within *group_name*.
 - w
Wait for all volume sets within *group_name*.
 - g - " " -m *volume_set* [*volume_set2* ...]
Remove one or more existing Point-in-Time Copy *volume_set(s)* from their currently associated *group_name*. By default, or until moved into a user specified *group_name*, all Point-in-Time Copy *volume_set(s)* are in the blank (" ") group. This association allows all the previously documented *iiadm* group commands to be performed against the blank (" ") *iiadm group_name*.
 - C *cluster_tag*
This Point-in-Time Copy option is a modifier that limits configuration operations to only those volumes belonging to a Sun Cluster Resource Group, or Disk Group.

In a Sun Cluster where the volume manager is Sun Cluster-aware, *iiadm* automatically obtains the correct Disk Group information, therefore this option is typically not required unless the volumes are part of an encompassing Resource Group.

In a Sun Cluster where the volumes are accessible on the local node only, the special *cluster_tag* of *local* is used to indicate volumes that are not part of a Sun Cluster Resource Group or Disk Group.

If “-L” is given as a the *cluster_tag* argument, then *iiadm* lists all cluster tags associated with Point-in-Time Copy.

This option is invalid when used on a Solaris system on which the Sun Cluster package has not been installed or configured.
 - h
Prints the *iiadm* usage summary.
 - v
Display the current version of the Point-in-Time Copy software components.
- Contact Sun Enterprise Services for assistance in using the remaining commands in this section.
- P *delay unit volume_set*
Alter the Point-in-Time Copy volume set tuning parameters for the specified *volume_set* to *delay* ticks, every *unit* I/O's. Delay ranges from 2 to 10000 inclusive; unit ranges from 100 to 60000 inclusive.

-R *volume*

After a volume has failed, Point-in-Time Copy places it offline. After replacing the volume, place it back online using this option. Associated dependent volumes in the Point-in-Time Copy volume set are also placed online. After the volume is placed online, this command also starts any necessary point-in-time volume updates.

Exit Status 0 Command completed successfully.

>0 An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWiiir, SUNWiiu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [dscfg\(1M\)](#), [svadm\(1M\)](#), [ds.log\(4\)](#), [rdc.cf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [ii\(7D\)](#), [sv\(7D\)](#)

Name iicpbmp – copy Availability Suite Point-In-Time bitmap volumes

Synopsis `iicpbmp [-c] old_bitmap new_bitmap...`

Description The `iicpbmp` command copies an Availability Suite Point-in-Time bitmap volume, rewriting the bitmap header so that it is consistent with the new bitmap volume name. The configuration entry for the shadow set is rewritten to reflect the location of the new bitmap.

No checks on the current use of either the old or new bitmap volumes are made. The `iicpbmp` command should only be run when the Point-In-Time Copy shadow set using the old bitmap is suspended.

Options `-c` Do not attempt to update the Availability Suite configuration for the Point-in-Time shadow set that uses the bitmap. This option produces a duplicate of the bitmap but does not affect the shadow set using the old bitmap volume.

Operands `old_bitmap new_bitmap`
The old and new Point-In-Time bitmap volumes.

Warnings The `iicpbmp` should be run only when a system is in single-user mode. `iicpbmp` makes no attempt to check if an Point-In-Time Copy set is in use at the time the copy is made. Running `iicpbmp` without the `-c` flag while Point-In-Time Copy is using the shadow set results in inconsistencies in the shadow set the next time Point-In-Time Copy is started.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWiiir, SUNWiiu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [iiadm\(1M\)](#), [iicpshd\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name iicpshd – copy Availability Suite Point-in-Time shadow volume

Synopsis iicpshd [-s] *old_shadow new_shadow...*

Description The iicpshd command copies an Availability Suite Instant Image shadow volume, updating the bit map header and Availability Suite configuration to reflect the new shadow volume.

No checks on the current use of either the old or new shadow volumes are made. The iicpshd command should only be run when the Instant Image shadow set using the old shadow volume is suspended.

Options The iicpshd command supports the following option:

-s Update the StorageTek configuration information for the Point-in-Time shadow set, but do *not* copy data from the old shadow volume to the new shadow volume.

Operands A iicpshd command line has the following operands:

old_shadow new_shadow

iicpshd copies the data of the old Availability Suite Instant Image shadow volume to the new shadow volume and updates the bit map header and configuration data.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWiiir, SUNWiiu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [iiadm\(1M\)](#), [iicpbmp\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Warnings iicpshd should be run only when the system is in single-user mode. When you run iicpshd, the command makes no attempt to check if a Point-in-Time set is in use. Running iicpshd with the -s flag while Point-in-Time is using the old shadow volume can result in shadow volume data loss. If you use the -s option, you must manually copy the data on the old shadow volume to the new shadow volume.

Name ikeadm – manipulate Internet Key Exchange (IKE) parameters and state

Synopsis ikeadm [-np]
 ikeadm [-np] get [debug | priv | stats | defaults]
 ikeadm [-np] set [debug | priv] [level] [file]
 ikeadm [-np] [get | del] [p1 | rule | preshared] [id]
 ikeadm [-np] add [rule | preshared] { *description* }
 ikeadm [-np] token [login | logout] *PKCS#11-Token_Object*
 ikeadm [-np] [read | write] [rule | preshared | certcache] *file*
 ikeadm [-np] [dump | pls | rule | preshared]
 ikeadm [-np] flush [p1 | certcache]
 ikeadm help
 [get | set | add | del | read | write | dump | flush | token]

Description The ikeadm utility retrieves information from and manipulates the configuration of the Internet Key Exchange (IKE) protocol daemon, *in.iked(1M)*.

ikeadm supports a set of operations, which may be performed on one or more of the supported object types. When invoked without arguments, ikeadm enters interactive mode which prints a prompt to the standard output and accepts commands from the standard input until the end-of-file is reached.

Because ikeadm manipulates sensitive keying information, you must be superuser to use this command. Additionally, some of the commands available require that the daemon be running in a privileged mode, which is established when the daemon is started.

For details on how to use this command securely see [Security](#).

Options The following options are supported:

- n
Prevent attempts to print host and network names symbolically when reporting actions. This is useful, for example, when all name servers are down or are otherwise unreachable.
- p
Paranoid. Do not print any keying material, even if saving Security Associations. Instead of an actual hexadecimal digit, print an X when this flag is turned on.

Usage

Commands The following commands are supported:

add
Add the specified object. This option can be used to add a new policy rule or a new preshared key to the current (running) in.iked configuration. When adding a new

preshared key, the command cannot be invoked from the command line, as it will contain keying material. The rule or key being added is specified using appropriate id-value pairs as described in the ID FORMATS section.

del

Delete a specific object or objects from `in.iked`'s current configuration. This operation is available for IKE (Phase 1) SAs, policy rules, and preshared keys. The object to be deleted is specified as described in the Id Formats.

dump

Display all objects of the specified type known to `in.iked`. This option can be used to display all Phase 1 SAs, policy rules, preshared keys, or the certificate cache. A large amount of output may be generated by this command.

flush

Remove all IKE (Phase 1) SAs or cached certificates from `in.iked`.

Note that flushing the cert cache will also (as a side-effect) update IKE with any new certificates added or removed.

get

Lookup and display the specified object. May be used to view the current debug or privilege level, global statistics and default values for the daemon, or a specific IKE (Phase 1) SA, policy rule, or preshared key. The latter three object types require that identifying information be passed in; the appropriate specification for each object type is described below.

help

Print a brief summary of commands, or, when followed by a command, prints information about that command.

read

Update the current `in.iked` configuration by reading the policy rules or preshared keys from either the default location or from the file specified.

set

Adjust the current debug or privilege level. If the debug level is being modified, an output file may optionally be specified; the output file *must* be specified if the daemon is running in the background and is not currently printing to a file. When changing the privilege level, adjustments may only be made to lower the access level; it cannot be increased using `ikeadm`.

write

Write the current `in.iked` policy rule set or preshared key set to the specified file. A destination file must be specified. This command should not be used to overwrite the existing configuration files.

token

Log into a PKCS#11 token object and grant access to keying material or log out and invalidate access to keying material.

token can be run as a normal user with the following authorizations:

- token login: solaris.network.ipsec.ike.token.login
- token logout: solaris.network.ipsec.ike.token.logout

Object Types debug

Specifies the daemon's debug level. This determines the amount and type of output provided by the daemon about its operations. The debug level is actually a bitmask, with individual bits enabling different types of information.

Description	Flag	Nickname
Certificate management	0x0001	cert
Key management	0x0002	key
Operational	0x0004	op
Phase 1 SA creation	0x0008	phase1
Phase 2 SA creation	0x0010	phase2
PF_KEY interface	0x0020	pfkey
Policy management	0x0040	policy
Proposal construction	0x0080	prop
Door interface	0x0100	door
Config file processing	0x0200	config
Label processing	0x0400	label
All debug flags	0x07ff	all

When specifying the debug level, either a number (decimal or hexadecimal) or a string of nicknames may be given. For example, 88, 0x58, and phase1+phase2+policy are all equivalent, and will turn on debug for phase 1 sa creation, phase 2 sa creation, and policy management. A string of nicknames may also be used to remove certain types of information; all - op has the effect of turning on all debug *except* for operational messages; it is equivalent to the numbers 1019 or 0x3fb.

priv

Specifies the daemon's access privilege level. The possible values are:

Description	Level	Nickname
Base level	0	base

Access to preshared key info	1	modkeys
Access to keying material	2	keymat

By default, `in.iked` is started at the base level. A command-line option can be used to start the daemon at a higher level. `ikeadm` can be used to lower the level, but it cannot be used to raise the level.

Either the numerical level or the nickname may be used to specify the target privilege level.

In order to get, add, delete, dump, read, or write preshared keys, the privilege level must at least give access to preshared key information. However, when viewing preshared keys (either using the `get` or `dump` command), the key itself will only be available if the privilege level gives access to keying material. This is also the case when viewing Phase 1 SAs.

stats

Global statistics from the daemon, covering both successful and failed Phase 1 SA creation.

Reported statistics include:

- Count of current P1 SAs which the local entity initiated
- Count of current P1 SAs where the local entity was the responder
- Count of all P1 SAs which the local entity initiated since boot
- Count of all P1 SAs where the local entity was the responder since boot
- Count of all attempted P1 SAs since boot, where the local entity was the initiator; includes failed attempts
- Count of all attempted P1 SAs since boot, where the local entity was the responder; includes failed attempts
- Count of all failed attempts to initiate a P1 SA, where the failure occurred because the peer did not respond
- Count of all failed attempts to initiate a P1 SA, where the peer responded
- Count of all failed P1 SAs where the peer was the initiator
- Whether a PKCS#11 library is in use, and if applicable, the PKCS#11 library that is loaded. See [Example 11](#).

defaults

Display default values used by the `in.iked` daemon. Some values can be overridden in the daemon configuration file (see [ike.config\(4\)](#)); for these values, the token name is displayed in the `get defaults` output. The output will reflect where a configuration token has changed the default.

Default values might be ignored in the event a peer system makes a valid alternative proposal or they can be overridden by per-rule values established in `ike.config`. In such instances, a `get defaults` command continues to display the default values, not the values used to override the defaults.

p1

An IKE Phase 1 SA. A p1 object is identified by an IP address pair or a cookie pair; identification formats are described below.

rule

An IKE policy rule, defining the acceptable security characteristics for Phase 1 SAs between specified local and remote identities. A rule is identified by its label; identification formats are described below.

preshared

A preshared key, including the local and remote identification and applicable IKE mode. A preshared key is identified by an IP address pair or an identity pair; identification formats are described below.

Id Formats Commands like `add`, `del`, and `get` require that additional information be specified on the command line. In the case of the delete and get commands, all that is required is to minimally identify a given object; for the add command, the full object must be specified.

Minimal identification is accomplished in most cases by a pair of values. For IP addresses, the local `addr` and then the remote `addr` are specified, either in dot-notation for IPv4 addresses, colon-separated hexadecimal format for IPv6 addresses, or a host name present in the host name database. If a host name is given that expands to more than one address, the requested operation will be performed multiple times, once for each possible combination of addresses.

Identity pairs are made up of a local type-value pair, followed by the remote type-value pair. Valid types are:

prefix

An address prefix.

fqdn

A fully-qualified domain name.

domain

Domain name, synonym for `fqdn`.

user_fqdn

User identity of the form `user@fqdn`.

mailbox

Synonym for `user_fqdn`.

A cookie pair is made up of the two cookies assigned to a Phase 1 Security Association (SA) when it is created; first is the initiator's, followed by the responder's. A cookie is a 64-bit number.

Finally, a label (which is used to identify a policy rule) is a character string assigned to the rule when it is created.

Formatting a rule or preshared key for the add command follows the format rules for the `in.iked` configuration files. Both are made up of a series of id-value pairs, contained in curly braces (`{` and `}`). See [ike.config\(4\)](#) and [ike.preshared\(4\)](#) for details on the formatting of rules and preshared keys.

Security The `ikeadm` command allows a privileged user to enter cryptographic keying information. If an adversary gains access to such information, the security of IPsec traffic is compromised. The following issues should be taken into account when using the `ikeadm` command.

- Is the TTY going over a network (interactive mode)?
If it is, then the security of the keying material is the security of the network path for this TTY's traffic. Using `ikeadm` over a clear-text telnet or rlogin session is risky. Even local windows may be vulnerable to attacks where a concealed program that reads window events is present.
- Is the file accessed over the network or readable to the world (read/write commands)?
A network-mounted file can be sniffed by an adversary as it is being read. A world-readable file with keying material in it is also risky.

If your source address is a host that can be looked up over the network, and your naming system itself is compromised, then any names used will no longer be trustworthy.

Security weaknesses often lie in misapplication of tools, not the tools themselves. It is recommended that administrators are cautious when using the `ikeadm` command. The safest mode of operation is probably on a console, or other hard-connected TTY.

For additional information regarding this subject, see the afterward by Matt Blaze in Bruce Schneier's *Applied Cryptography: Protocols, Algorithms, and Source Code in C*.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Emptying out all Phase 1 Security Associations

The following command empties out all Phase 1 Security Associations:

```
example# ikeadm flush p1
```

EXAMPLE 2 Displaying all Phase 1 Security Associations

The following command displays all Phase 1 Security Associations:

```
example# ikeadm dump p1
```

EXAMPLE 3 Deleting a Specific Phase 1 Security Association

The following command deletes the specified Phase 1 Security Associations:

```
example# ikeadm del p1 local_ip remote_ip
```


EXAMPLE 4 Adding a Rule From a File

The following command adds a rule from a file:

```
example# ikeadm add rule rule_file
```

EXAMPLE 5 Adding a Preshared Key

The following command adds a preshared key:

```
example# ikeadm  
ikeadm> add preshared { localidtype ip localid local_ip  
         remoteidtype ip remoteid remote_ip ike_mode main  
         key 1234567890abcdef1234567890abcdef }
```

EXAMPLE 6 Saving All Preshared Keys to a File

The following command saves all preshared keys to a file:

```
example# ikeadm write preshared target_file
```

EXAMPLE 7 Viewing a Particular Rule

The following command views a particular rule:

```
example# ikeadm get rule rule_label
```

EXAMPLE 8 Reading in New Rules from `ike.config`

The following command reads in new rules from the `ike.config` file:

```
example# ikeadm read rules
```

EXAMPLE 9 Lowering the Privilege Level

The following command lowers the privilege level:

```
example# ikeadm set priv base
```

EXAMPLE 10 Viewing the Debug Level

The following command shows the current debug level

```
example# ikeadm get debug
```

EXAMPLE 11 Using stats to Verify Hardware Accelerator

The following example shows how stats may include an optional line at the end to indicate if IKE is using a PKCS#11 library to accelerate public-key operations, if applicable.

```
example# ikeadm get stats
Phase 1 SA counts:
Current:  initiator:    0  responder:    0
Total:    initiator:   21  responder:   27
Attempted: initiator:   21  responder:   27
Failed:   initiator:    0  responder:    0
           initiator fails include 0 time-out(s)
PKCS#11 library linked in from /opt/SUNWconn/lib/libpkcs11.so
example#
```

EXAMPLE 12 Displaying the Certificate Cache

The following command shows the certificate cache and the status of associated private keys, if applicable:

```
example# ikeadm dump certcache
```

EXAMPLE 13 Logging into a PKCS#11 Token

The following command shows logging into a PKCS#11 token object and unlocking private keys:

```
example# ikeadm token login "Sun Metaslot"
Enter PIN for PKCS#11 token:
ikeadm: PKCS#11 operation successful
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

non-zero An error occurred. Writes an appropriate error message to standard error.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Not an Interface

See Also [in.iked\(1M\)](#), [ike.config\(4\)](#), [ike.preshared\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [ipsec\(7P\)](#)

Schneier, Bruce, *Applied Cryptography: Protocols, Algorithms, and Source Code in C*, Second Edition, John Wiley & Sons, New York, NY, 1996.

Notes As `in.iked` can run only in the global zone and exclusive-IP zones, this command is not useful in shared-IP zones.

Name ikecert – manipulates the machine's on-filesystem public-key certificate databases

Synopsis ikecert certlocal
 [-a | -e | -h | -k | -l | -r | -U | -C | -L]
 [[-p] -T *PKCS#11 token identifier*]
 [*option_specific_arguments*]...

ikecert certdb [-a | -e | -h | -l | -r | -U | -C | -L]
 [[-p] -T *PKCS#11 token identifier*]
 [*option_specific_arguments*]...

ikecert certrldb [-a | -e | -h | -l | -r]
 [*option_specific_arguments*]...

ikecert tokens

Description The ikecert command manipulates the machine's on-filesystem public-key certificate databases. See the “Files” section, below.

ikecert has three subcommands, one for each of the three major repositories, plus one for listing available hardware tokens:

- certlocal deals with the private-key repository,
- certdb deals with the public-key repository, and:
- certrldb deals with the certificate revocation list (CRL) repository.
- tokens shows the available PKCS#11 tokens for a given PKCS#11 library.

The only supported PKCS#11 library and hardware is the Sun Cryptographic Accelerator 4000.

Options Except for tokens, each subcommand requires one option, possibly followed by one or more option-specific arguments.

The tokens subcommand lists all available tokens in the PKCS#11 library specified in `/etc/inet/ike/config`.

The following options are supported:

-a

certlocal

When specified with the certlocal subcommand, this option installs (adds) a private key into the Internet Key Exchange (IKE) local ID database. The key data is read from standard input, and is in either Solaris-only format or unencrypted PKCS#8 DER format. Key format is automatically

detected. PKCS#8 key files in PEM format and files in password protected, encrypted format are not recognized, but can be converted appropriately using tools available in OpenSSL.

This option cannot be used with PKCS#11 hardware objects when the corresponding public certificate is not already present in the IKE database. When importing both a public certificate and a private key, the public portion must be imported first using the `certdb` subcommand.

`certdb`

When specified with the `certdb` subcommand, this option reads a certificate from standard input and adds it to the IKE certificate database. The certificate must be a X.509 certificate in PEM Base64 or ASN.1 BER encoding. The certificate adopts the name of its identity.

This option can import a certificate into a PKCS#11 hardware key store one of two ways: Either a matching public key object *and* an existing private key object were created using the `certlocal -kc` option, or if a PKCS#11 token is explicitly specified using the `-T` option.

`certldb`

When specified with the `certldb` subcommand, this option installs (adds) a CRL into the IKE database. The CRL reads from standard input.

-e [-f pkcs8] slot

certlocal

When specified with the `certlocal` subcommand, this option extracts a private key from the IKE local ID database. The key data are written to standard output. The slot specifies which private key to extract. Private keys are only extracted in binary/ber format.

Use this option with extreme caution. See the “Security” section, below.

This option will not work with PKCS#11 hardware objects.

When used in conjunction with “-f pkcs8”, the private key is extracted in unencrypted PKCS#8 format.

-e [-f output-format] certspec

certdb

When specified with the `certdb` subcommand, this option extracts a certificate from the IKE certificate database which matches the `certspec` and writes it to standard output. The *output-format* option specifies the encoding format. Valid options are PEM and BER. This extracts the first matching identity. The default output format is PEM.

certrladb

When specified with the `certrladb` subcommand, this option extracts a CRL from the IKE database. The key data are written to standard output. The `certspec` specifies which CRL that is extracted. The first one that matches in the database is extracted. See NOTES, below, for details on `certspec`

```
-kc -m keysize -t keytype -D dname -A altname[ ... ]
[-S validity start_time][-F validity end_time]
[-T PKCS#11 token identifier]
```

patterns.

certlocal

When specified with the `certlocal` subcommand, this option generates a IKE public/private key pair and adds it into the local ID database. It also generates a certificate request and sends that to standard output. For details on the above options see [Notes](#) for details on the *dname* argument and see ALTERNATIVE NAMES for details on the *altname* argument(s) to this command.

If `-T` is specified, the hardware token will generate the pair of keys.

If `-p` is specified with `-T`, the PKCS#11 token pin is stored in the clear on-disk, with root-protected file permissions. If not specified, one must unlock the token with [ikeadm\(1M\)](#) once [in.iked\(1M\)](#) is running.

```
-ks -m keysize -t keytype -D dname -A altname[ ... ]
[-S validity start_time][-F validity end_time]
[-f output-format][[-p] -T PKCS#11 token identifier]
```

certlocal

When specified with the `certlocal` subcommand, generates a public/private key pair and adds it into the local ID database. This option also generates a self-signed certificate and installs it into the certificate database. See NOTES, below, for details on the *dname* and *altname* arguments to this command.

If `-T` is specified, the hardware token will generate the pair of keys, and the self-signed certificate will also be stored in the hardware.

`-l [-v] [slot]`

`certlocal`

When specified with the `certlocal` subcommand, this option lists private keys in the local ID database. The `-v` option switches output to a verbose mode where the entire certificate is printed.

Use the `-v` option with extreme caution. See the “Security” section, below. The `-v` option will not work with PKCS#11 hardware objects.

`-l [-v] [certspec]`

`certdb`

When specified with the `certdb` subcommand, this option lists certificates in the IKE certificate database matching the `certspec`, if any pattern is given. The list displays the identity string of the certificates, as well as, the private key if in the key database. The `-v` switches the output to a verbose mode where the entire certificate is printed.

If the matching certificate is on a hardware token, the token ID is also listed.

`certldb`

When specified with the `certldb` subcommand, this option lists the CRLs in the IKE database along with any certificates that reside in the database and match the Issuer Name. `certspec` can be used to

specify to list a specific CRL. The `-v` option switches the output to a verbose mode where the entire certificate is printed. See NOTES, below, for details on `certspec` patterns.

`-r slot`

`certlocal`

When specified with the `certlocal` subcommand, deletes the local ID in the specified slot. If there is a corresponding public key, it is not be deleted. If this slot is deemed as “corrupted” or otherwise unrecognizable, it is deleted as well.

If this is invoked on a PKCS#11 hardware object, it will also delete the PKCS#11 public key and private key objects. If the public key object was already deleted by `certdb -r`, that is not a problem.

`-r certspec`

`certdb`

Removes certificates from the IKE certificate database. Certificates matching the specified certificate pattern are deleted. Any private keys in the `certlocal` database corresponding to these certificates are not deleted. This removes the first matching identity.

If the pattern specifies a slot and the slot is deemed as “corrupted” or otherwise unrecognizable, it is deleted as well.

If this is invoked on a PKCS#11 hardware object, it will also delete the certificate and the PKCS#11 public key object. If the public key

object was already deleted by `certlocal -r`, that is not a problem.

`certldb`

When specified with the `certldb` subcommand, this option deletes the CRL with the given `certspec`.

-U slot

`certlocal`

When specified with the `certlocal` subcommand and the `-T` flag, this option unlinks a PKCS#11 private key object from the IKE database. There will be no attempt to access the hardware keystore or to validate or remove the on-token private key object. The object is simply disassociated from the IKE database.

`certdb`

When specified with the `certdb` subcommand and the `-T` flag, this option unlinks a PKCS#11 certificate object from the IKE database. There will be no attempt to access the hardware keystore or to validate or remove the on-token certificate or public key objects. The objects are simply disassociated from the IKE database.

-C certspec

`certlocal`

When specified with the `certlocal` subcommand, this option copies both the private key and its corresponding certificate and the public key from the on-disk keystore to the hardware keystore specified by its PKCS#11 token. This subcommand attempts

to create each of these components, even if one part fails. In all cases, the original on-disk private key and public certificate are still retained and must be deleted separately. Some hardware keystores, such as FIPS-140 compliant devices, may not support migration of private key objects in this manner.

certdb

When specified with the `certdb` subcommand, this option copies the certificate matching the given `certspec` and corresponding public key from the on-disk keystore to the hardware keystore specified by its PKCS#11 token. The original public certificate is still retained and must be deleted separately, if desired.

If `-p` is specified, the PKCS#11 token pin is stored in the clear on-disk, with root-protected file permissions. If not specified, one must unlock the token with `ikeadm(1M)` once `in.iked(1M)` is running.

-L pattern

certlocal

When specified with the `certlocal` subcommand, this option links an existing on-token private key object to the IKE database. The object itself remains on the token. This option simply lets the IKE infrastructure know that the object exists, as if it had been originally created on-token with the Solaris IKE utilities.

certdb

When specified with the `certdb` subcommand, this option links an

existing on-token certificate object to the IKE database. The object itself remains on the token. This option simply lets the IKE infrastructure know that the object exists, as if it had been originally created on-token with the Solaris IKE utilities.

If `-p` is specified, the PKCS#11 token pin is stored in the clear on-disk, with root-protected file permissions. If not specified, one must unlock the token with [ikeadm\(1M\)](#) once [in.iked\(1M\)](#) is running.

Parameters The following parameters are supported:

certspec

Specifies the pattern matching of certificate specifications. Valid `certspec`s are the Subject Name, Issuer Name, and Subject Alternative Names.

These can be specified as certificates that match the given `certspec` values and that do not match other `certspec` values. To signify a `certspec` value that is not supposed to be present in a certificate, place an `!` in front of the tag.

Valid `certspec`s are:

```
<Subject Names>  
SUBJECT=<Subject Names>  
ISSUER=<Issuer Names>  
SLOT=<Slot Number in the certificate database>
```

```
Example:"ISSUER=C=US, O=SUN" IP=1.2.3.4 !DNS=example.com  
Example:"C=US, O=CALIFORNIA" IP=5.4.2.1 DNS=example.com
```

Valid arguments to the alternative names are as follows:

```
IP=<IPv4 address>  
DNS=<Domain Name Server address>  
EMAIL=<email (RFC 822) address>  
URI=<Uniform Resource Indicator value>  
DN=<LDAP Directory Name value>  
RID=<Registered Identifier value>
```

Valid Slot numbers can be specified without the keyword tag. Alternative name can also be issued with keyword tags.

- A
Subject Alternative Names the certificate. The argument that follows the -A option should be in the form of *tag=value*. Valid tags are IP, DNS, EMAIL, URI, DN, and RID (See example below).
- D
X.509 distinguished name for the certificate subject. It typically has the form of: C=country, O=organization, OU=organizational unit, CN=common name. Valid tags are: C, O, OU, and CN.
- f
Encoding output format. pem for PEM Base64 or ber for ASN.1 BER. If -f is not specified, pem is assumed.
- F *validity_end_time*
Finish certificate validity time. If the -F flag is not specified, the validity end time is calculated at four years from the validity start time. See NOTES for an explanation for the validity date and time syntax.
- m
Key size. It can be 512, 1024, 2048, 3072, or 4096. Use the following command to determine the key sizes supported by the Solaris Cryptographic Framework:

% **cryptoadm list -vm**

The mechanisms displayed by the preceding command are described in [pkcs11_softtoken\(5\)](#). If your system has hardware acceleration, the mechanisms supported by the hardware will be listed in a separate section for each provider. Mechanisms can be any of:

CKM_RSA_PKCS_KEY_PAIR_GEN
CKM_DSA_KEY_PAIR_GEN
CKM_DH_PKCS_KEY_PAIR_GEN

Note – Some hardware does not support all key sizes. For example, the Sun Cryptographic Accelerator 4000's keystore (when using the -T option, below), supports only up to 2048-bit keys for RSA and 1024-bit keys for DSA.
- S *validity_start_time*
Start certificate validity time. If the -S flag is not specified, the current date and time is used for the validity start time. See NOTES, below, for an explanation for the validity date and time syntax.
- t
Key type. It can be rsa-sha1, rsa-md5, or dsa-sha1.
- T
PKCS#11 token identifier for hardware key storage. This specifies a hardware device instance in conformance to the PKCS#11 standard. A PKCS#11 library must be specified in /etc/inet/ike/config. (See [ike.config\(4\)](#).)

A token identifier is a 32-character space-filled string. If the token given is less than 32 characters long, it will be automatically padded with spaces.

If there is more than one PKCS#11 library on a system, keep in mind that only one can be specified at a time in `/etc/inet/ike/config`. There can be multiple tokens (each with individual key storage) for a single PKCS#11 library instance.

Security This command can save private keys of a public-private key pair into a file. Any exposure of a private key may lead to compromise if the key is somehow obtained by an adversary.

The PKCS#11 hardware object functionality can address some of the shortcomings of on-disk private keys. Because IKE is a system service, user intervention at boot is not desirable. The token's PIN, however, is still needed. The PIN for the PKCS#11 token, therefore, is stored where normally the on-disk cryptographic keys would reside. This design decision is deemed acceptable because, with a hardware key store, *possession* of the key is still unavailable, only *use* of the key is an issue if the host is compromised. Beyond the PIN, the security of `ikecert` then reduces to the security of the PKCS#11 implementation. The PKCS#11 implementation should be scrutinized also.

Refer to the afterword by Matt Blaze in Bruce Schneier's *Applied Cryptography: Protocols, Algorithms, and Source Code in C* for additional information.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Generating a Self-Signed Certificate

The following is an example of a self-signed certificate:

```
example# ikcert certlocal -ks -m 512 -t rsa-md5 -D "C=US, O=SUN" -A
IP=1.2.3.4
Generating, please wait...
Certificate generated.
Certificate added to database.
-----BEGIN X509 CERTIFICATE-----
MIIBRDCB76ADAgECAgEBMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBAUAMBsxCzAJBgNVBAYTA1VMTQww
CgYDVQQKEwNTVU4wHhcNMDEwMzE0MDEzMDEwMzE0MDEzMDEwMzE0MDEzMDEw
CQYDVQQGEwJVUzEMMAoGA1UEChMDU1VOMFowDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEBBQADSAAwRgJB
APDhqKgJgRoRUr6twTMTtSuNsReEnFoReVer!ztpXpQK6ybY1RH18JIqU/uCV/r
26R/cVXTy5qc5NbMwA40KzcCAS0jIDAeMAsGA1UdDwQEAwIFoDAPBgNVHRECDAG
hwQBAGMEMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBAUAA0EApTRD23KzN95GMvPD71hwwClukslKLVg8
f1xm9ZsHLPJLRxHFwsqqjAad4j4wwwriiUmGAHLTGB0lJmL8xsgxag==
-----END X509 CERTIFICATE-----
```

EXAMPLE 2 Generating a CA Request

Generating a CA request appears the same as the self-signed certificate. The only differences between the two is the option `-c` instead of `-s`, and the certificate data is a CA request.

```
example# ikcert certlocal -kc -m 512 -t rsa-md5 \
-D "C=US, O=SUN" -A IP=1.2.3.4
```

EXAMPLE 3 A CA Request Using a Hardware Key Store

The following example illustrates the specification of a token using the `-T` option.

```
example# # ikecert certlocal -kc -m 1024 -t rsa-md5 -T vca0-keystore \
-D "C=US, O=SUN" -A IP=1.2.3.4
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0

Successful completion.

non-zero

An error occurred. Writes an appropriate error message to standard error.

Files /etc/inet/secret/ike.privatekeys/*

Private keys. A private key *must* have a matching public-key certificate with the same filename in /etc/inet/ike/publickeys/.

/etc/inet/ike/publickeys/*

Public-key certificates. The names are only important with regard to matching private key names.

/etc/inet/ike/crls/*

Public key certificate revocation lists.

/etc/inet/ike/config

Consulted for the pathname of a PKCS#11 library.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [ikeadm\(1M\)](#), [in.iked\(1M\)](#), [getdate\(3C\)](#), [ike.config\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [pkcs11_softtoken\(5\)](#)

Schneier, Bruce. *Applied Cryptography: Protocols, Algorithms, and Source Code in C*. Second Edition. John Wiley & Sons. New York, NY. 1996.

RSA Labs, PKCS#11 v2.11: *Cryptographic Token Interface Standards*, November 2001.

Notes The following is the validity date and time syntax when the `-F` or `-S` flags are used:

For relative dates, the syntax is as follows:

```
{+, -}[Ns][Nm][Nh][Nd][Nw][NM][Ny]
```

where:

N
represents an integer

s
represents seconds

m
represents minutes

h
represents hours

d
represents days

w
represents weeks

M
represents months

y
represents years

These parameters can be given in any order. For example, “+3d12h” is three and a half days from now, and “-3y2M” is three years and 2 months ago.

All parameters with fixed values can be added up in absolute seconds. Months and years, which have variable numbers of seconds, are calculated using calendar time. Months and years, which are not of fixed length, are defined such that adding a year or month means the same day next year or month. For instance, if it is Jan 26, 2005 and the certificate should expire 3 years and 1 month from today, the expiration (end validity time) date will be Feb 26, 2008. Overflows are dealt with accordingly. For example, one month from Jan 31, 2005 is March 3, 2005, since February has only 28 days.

For absolute dates, the syntax of the date formats included in the file `/etc/datemsk` are accepted (See [getdate\(3C\)](#) for details). Any date string prepended with a “+” or “-” is treated as a time relative to the current time, while others are treated as absolute dates. Sanity checking is also done to ensure that the end validity date is greater than the start validity date. For example, the following command would create a certificate with start date 1 day and 2 hours ago and an end date of Jan 22nd, 2007 at 12:00:00 local time.

```
# ikecert certlocal -ks -t rsa-sha1 -m 1024 \  
-D "CN=mycert, O=Sun, C=US" \  
-S -1d2h -F "01/22/2007 12:00:00"
```

As in [iked\(1M\)](#) can run only in the global zone and exclusive-IP zones, this command is not useful in shared-IP zones.

Name ilbadm – establish and manipulate load balancing rules

Synopsis `ilbadm create-rule [-e] [-p] -i vip=value,port=value[,protocol=value]
-m lbalg=value,type=value[,proxy-src=ip-range][,pmask=mask]
[-h hc-name=value[,hc-port=value]]
[-t [conn-drain=N][,nat-timeout=N],[persist-timeout=N]]
-o servergroup=value name`

`ilbadm show-rule [-e|-d] [-f |[-p] -o key[,key ...]] [name ...]`

`ilbadm delete-rule -a | name ...`

`ilbadm enable-rule [name ...]`

`ilbadm disable-rule [name ...]`

`ilbadm show-statistics [-p] -o field[,field] [-thAdvi]
[-r rulename] | [-s servername] [interval [count]]`

`ilbadm create-servergroup [-s server=hostspect[:portspec...]] groupname`

`ilbadm delete-servergroup groupname`

`ilbadm show-servergroup [-s|-f|[-p] -o field[,field]] [[-v] name]`

`ilbadm enable-server server ...`

`ilbadm disable-server server ...`

`ilbadm show-server [[-p] -o field[,field...]] [rulename...]`

`ilbadm add-server -s server=value[,value ...] name`

`ilbadm remove-server -s server=value[,value ...] name`

`ilbadm create-healthcheck [-n] -h hc-test=value
[,hc-timeout=value][,hc-count=value][,hc-interval=value] hcname`

`ilbadm delete-healthcheck hcname`

`ilbadm show-healthcheck [hcname ...]`

`ilbadm show-hc-result [rule-name]`

`ilbadm show-nat [count]`

`ilbadm show-persist [count]`

`ilbadm export-config filename`

`ilbadm import-config [-p] filename`

Description The `ilbadm` command manipulates or displays information about Integrated Load Balancer (ILB) rules using the subcommands described below.

Rule names are case insensitive, but case is preserved as it is entered. Rule names are limited in length to 19 characters. Server names cannot exceed 14 characters.

All parseable output (invoked with the `-p` option) requires that the fields to be printed or displayed be specified with the `-o` option. Fields will be displayed in the same order they are encountered on the command line. Multiple fields are separated by the colon (`:`) character. If a colon or backslash (`\`) occurs in the displayed string itself, it will be preceded by a backslash. No headers will be displayed for parseable output.

Server IDs are generated by the system when a server is added, using either the `create-servergroup` or the `add-server` subcommands.

Server IDs are guaranteed to be unique within the server group. A rule can be attached to only one server group, with the result that serverIDs are unique for rules as well. Note that since more than one rule can attach to the same server group, the server ID alone is not sufficient to indicate a rule.

To be able to distinguish server IDs from hostnames, server IDs are prefixed with a leading underscore (`_`).

As noted below, the server group and healthcheck entities must be defined before they can be used in the `create-rule` subcommand.

Sub-commands Following are the `ilbadm` subcommands, along with their related options and operands. Note that subcommands have a normal and a short form; for example, `create-rule` and `create-rl`, saving you from having to type a few additional characters.

```
create-rule|create-rl [-e] [-p] -i incoming -m method_attributes -o outgoing_spec [-h
healthcheck] [-t timers] name
```

Creates a rule *name* with a set of specified characteristics. *incoming* and *method_attributes* are both specified as a set of *key=value* pairs. If *name* already exists, the command will fail. If a given tuple (virtual IP address, port(s), and protocol) matches another rule, the command will also fail. `create-rule` has the following options that control the overall effect of the command:

- e Enable the `create-rule` function. The default is that `create-rule` is disabled.
- p Create the rule as persistent (sticky). The default is that the rule exists only for the current session.

Keys and values are introduced by one-letter identifiers. These identifiers and their related keys and acceptable values are as follows.

-i
Introduces the matching criteria for incoming packets.

vip
(Virtual) destination IP address

- `port[-port]`
Port number or name, for example, `telnet` or `dns`. A port can be specified by port number or symbolic name (as in `/etc/services`). Port number ranges are also supported.
- `protocol`
TCP (the default) or UDP (see `/etc/services`).
- `-m`
Specifies the keys describing how to handle a packet.
- `lbalg`
The default is `roundrobin`, or its short form, `rr`. Other alternatives are: `hash-ip` (short form: `hip`), `hash-ip-port` (short form: `hipp`), `hash-ip-vip` (short form: `hipv`).
- `type`
Refers to topology of network. Can be `DSR` (or `dsr` or `d`), `NAT` (or `n` or `nat`), `HALF-NAT` (or `h` or `half-nat`).
- `proxy-src`
Required for full NAT only. Specifies the IP address range to use as the proxy source address range. The range is limited to ten IP addresses.
- `pmask`
Optional. Has an alias of: `stickiness`. Specifies that this rule is to be persistent. The argument is a prefix length in CIDR notation; that is, 0–32 for IPv4 and 0–128 for IPv6. Use the `-p` option to specify this keyword.
- `-o`
Specifies destination(s) for packets that match the criteria specified by the `-i` “clause”. This identifier has one well-known argument:
- `servergroup` Specify a single server group as target. The server group must already have been created.
- `-h`
The health check option has two arguments:
- `hc-name`
Specifies the name of a predefined health check method
- `hc-port`
Specifies the port(s) for the HC test program to check. The value can be keywords `ALL` or `ANY`, or a specific port number within the port range of the server group.
- `-t`
Specifies customized timers, in seconds. A value of `0` means to use the system default value. The following are valid modifiers for `-t`:

conn-drain

If a server's type is NAT or HALF-TYPE, `conn-drain` is the timeout after which the server's connection state is deleted following the server's removal from a rule. This deletion occurs even if the server is not idle.

The default for TCP is that the connection state remains stable until the connection is gracefully shutdown. The default for UDP is that the connection state remains stable until the connection has been idle for the period `nat-timeout`.

nat-timeout

Applies only to NAT and half-NAT type connections. If such a connection is idle for the `nat-timeout` period, the connection state will be removed. The default is 120 for TCP and 60 UDP.

persist-timeout

When persistent mapping is enabled, if a numeric-only mapping has not been used for `persist-timeout` seconds, the mapping will be removed. The default is 60.

Note that server group and health check must be defined before they can be used in `create-rule`.

delete-rule|delete-rl -a *name*[...]

Remove all information pertaining to rule *name*. If *name* does not exist, command will fail. `delete-rule` has one option:

-a

Delete all rules. (*name* is ignored.)

enable-rule|enable-rl *name*[...]

Enables a named rule, or all rules, if no name is specified). Enabling rules that are already enabled has no effect.

disable-rule|disable-rl *name*[...]

Disables a named rule, or all rules, if no name is specified. Disabling rules that are already disabled has no effect.

show-statistics|show-stats [[-p] -o *field*[,...]] [-tv] [-A | -d] [[-i] -r *rulename* | -s *servername*] [*interval* [*count*]]

Displays statistics, the output of which is subject to the use of the options described below. The syntax and semantics of this subcommand are modeled on `vmstat(1M)`.

-t

Prepend a timestamp with every sample.

-d

Display the delta over entire interval. The default is changes per second. Cannot be used with the `-a` option.

- A
Display absolute numbers. That is, numbers since module initialization, rule creation, and server addition. Cannot be used with the -d option.
- r *rulename*
Display statistics only for the specified *rulename*. In combination with the -i option, display a line for each server.
- s *servername*
Display statistics only for *server*. In combination with the -i option, display a line for each rule.
- i
Itemize the information displayed by the -r and -s options. These are the only options with which -i is valid. Does not work with the -v option.
- v
Display additional details for droppages. Note that, when the rule name is specified, drops are counted per rule and not per server. Does not work with the -i option.
- p
Display parseable format. Requires use of -o option.
- o *field*
Can be one or more from the list below. *field* can be uppercase or lowercase.
- | | |
|------------|---|
| PKT_P | Packets processed. |
| BYTES_P | Bytes processed. |
| PKT_U | Unprocessed packets. |
| BYTES_U | Unprocessed bytes. |
| PKT_D | Packets dropped. |
| BYTES_D | Bytes dropped. |
| ICMP_P | ICMP echo requests processed. |
| ICMP_D | ICMP echo requests dropped. |
| ICMP2BIG_P | ICMP fragmentation needed; message processed. |
| ICMP2BIG_D | Fragmentation needed; message dropped. |
| NOMEMP_D | Packets dropped because of out-of-memory condition. |
| NOPORTP_D | Packets dropped in NAT mode because no source port was available. |
- Note that when a question mark (?) is displayed as a column entry, it indicates that the proper value cannot be determined, most often because a rule or server was added or deleted.

Note that headers are displayed once for each ten samples. The timestamp format follows the `date(1)` format for the C locale. Neither the addition nor removal of a rule is detected.

`show-rule|show-rl [-d|-e] [-f] [-p] -o field[,...]` [*name...*]

Displays characteristics of the specified rules, or all, if no rule is specified. The subcommand has the following options:

- d
Display only disabled rules.
- e
Display only enabled rules.
- f
Display a full list.
- o *field[,...]*
Display output for *field(s)*. Cannot be used with -f option.
- p
Display parsable output in the format described in “Description”. Requires the -o option.

Note that the -o (with or without -p) and -f options are mutually exclusive.

`show-nat count`

Displays NAT table information. If *count* is specified, displays *count* entries from the NAT table. If no count is specified, displays the entire NAT table.

count

No assumptions should be made about the relative positions of elements in consecutive runs of this command. For example, executing `show-nat 10` twice is not guaranteed to display the same ten items twice, especially on a busy system.

Display format:

```
T: IP1 > IP2 >>> IP3 > IP4
```

These items are described as follows:

- T The transport protocol used in this entry.
- IP1 The client's IP address and port.
- IP2 The VIP and port.
- IP3 If half NAT mode, the client's IP address and port. If full NAT mode, the NAT'ed client's IP address and port.
- IP4 The backend server's IP address and port.

`show-persist|show-pt count`

Displays persistence table information. If *count* is specified, displays *count* entries from the table. If no count is specified, displays the entire persistence table.

No assumptions should be made about the relative positions of elements in consecutive runs of this command. For example, executing `show-persist 10` twice is not guaranteed to display the same ten items twice, especially on a busy system.

Display format:

R: IP1 --> IP2

These items are described as follows:

R

The rule this persistence entry is tied to.

IP1

The client's IP address and port.

IP2

The backend server's IP address.

`export-config|export-cf [filename]`

Exports the current configuration in a format suitable for re-import using `ilbadm import`. If no *filename* is specified, the subcommand writes to stdout.

`import-config|import-cf [-p] [filename]`

Reads configuration contents of a file. By default, this overrides any existing configuration. If no *filename* is specified, the subcommand reads from stdin. This subcommand has the following option:

-p

Preserve existing configuration and do incremental import.

`create-servergroup|create-sg [-s server=hostspec[:portspec...]] groupname`

Creates a server group. Additional servers can be added later using the `add-server` subcommand. Server groups are the only entity that can be used during rule creation to indicate back-end servers. If the specified server group is associated with one or more rules, the server is enabled when it is added. This subcommand has the following option and operands:

-s *server=hostspec[:portspec...]*

Specifies a list of servers to be added to the server group.

hostspec is a hostname or IP address. IPv6 addresses must be enclosed in brackets ([]) to distinguish them from “:*portspec*”

portspec is a service name or port number. If the port number is not specified, a number in the range 1–65535 is used.

`disable-server`|`disable-srv server`

Disable one or more server(s). That is, tell the kernel not to forward traffic to this server. `disable-server` applies to all rules that are attached to the server group this server is part of.

server can be a server ID, hostname, or IP address.

`enable-server`|`enable-srv server...`

Reenables disabled servers.

`show-server`|`show-srv` [[-p] -o *field*[,*field*...]] [*rulename*...]

Displays servers associated with named rules, or all servers if no *rulename* is specified. The subcommand has the following options.

-o *field*[,*field*...]

Display only the specified fields.

-p

Display fields in parsable format. Requires the -o option.

`delete-servergroup`|`delete-sg groupname`

Deletes a server group.

`show-servergroup`|`show-sg` [[-p] -o *field*[,...]] [*name*]

Lists a server group, or all server groups, if no *name* is specified. The subcommand has the following options:

-o *field*[,...]

Display output for *field*(s).

-p

Display parsable output in the format described in “Description”. Requires the -o option.

`add-server`|`add-srv -s server=value[, value...] servergroup`

Add specified server(s) to *servergroup*. See description of `create-servergroup` for definition of *value*.

-s

See `create-servergroup`.

Performing an `add-server` to a server group immediately after performing a `remove-server` on that server group might fail because of incomplete connection draining. Refer to the description of the `remove-server` subcommand for instructions on how to avoid this failure.

`remove-server`|`remove-srv -s server=value[, value...] servergroup`

Remove specified server(s) from *servergroup*.

-s

One or more of a server ID, hostname, or IP address.

If a server is being used by a NAT/half-NAT rule, it is recommended that the server be disabled (using `disable-server`) before removal. By disabling a server, the server enters the connection-draining state. After all of the connections are drained, the server can then be removed by `remove-server`. If the `conn-drain` timeout value is set, the connection-draining state will be finished upon conclusion of the timeout period. Note that the default `conn-drain` timeout is 0, meaning it will keep waiting until a connection is gracefully shut down.

```
create-healthcheck|create-hc [-n] -h hc-test=value,hc-timeout=value,
hc-count=num_value,hc-interval=value hcname
```

Sets up a health check object for rules to use. All servers associated with a rule are checked using the same test. A health check event of a server consists of one to `hc-count` number of `hc-test` executions. If an `hc-test`'s result shows a server to be unresponsive, further `hc-test` checks are made, up to `hc-count` invocations, before a server is considered to be down.

-h

The `hc-test` is performed `hc-count` times until it succeeds or `hc-timeout` has expired. For a given rule, all servers are checked using the same test. The tests are as follows:

`hc-test`

PING, TCP, external method (script or binary). An external method should be specified with a full path name.

`hc-timeout`

Threshold at which a test is considered failed following interim failures of `hc-test`. If you kill an `hc-test` test, the result is considered a failure. The default value is five seconds.

`hc-count`

Maximum number of attempts to run `hc-test` before marking a server as down. The default value is three iterations.

`hc-interval`

Interval between invocations of `hc-test`. This value must be greater than `hc-timeout` times `hc-count`. The default value is 30 seconds.

The following arguments are passed to external methods:

\$1

VIP (literal IPv4 or IPv6 address).

\$2

Server IP (literal IPv4 or IPv6 address).

\$3

Protocol (UDP, TCP as a string).

\$4

The load balance mode, DSR, NAT, HALF_NAT.

\$5

Numeric port.

\$6

Maximum time (in seconds) the method should wait before returning failure. If the method runs for longer, it can be killed, and the test considered failed.

External methods should return 0 (or the round-trip time to the back end server, in microseconds) for success and -1 if the server is considered down.

Before higher layer health check(s), TCP, UDP, and external tests start, a default ping test is performed first. The higher layer test will not be performed if ping fails. You can turn off the default ping check for these high layer health checks by through use of -n.

-n

Disable default ping test for high layer health check tests.

`delete-healthcheck|delete-hc hcname...`

Delete the named health check object(s) (*hcname*). If the given health check object is associated with enabled rule(s), deletion of the object will fail.

`show-healthcheck|show-hc [hcname...]`

List the health check information for the specified health check (*hcname*). If no health check is specified, list information for all existing health checks.

`show-hc-result|show-hc-res [rule-name]`

List the health check result for the servers that are associated with *rule-name*. If *rule-name* is not given, the health check results for all servers are displayed.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Configuring NAT Mode

The following commands create a rule with health check and timers set (port range shifting and session persistence).

```
# ilbadm create-healthcheck -h hc-test=tcp,hc-timeout=2,hc-count=3, \
  hc-interval=10 hc1
# ilbadm create-servergroup -s \
  server=60.0.0.10:6000-6009,60.0.0.11:7000-7009 sg1
# ilbadm create-rule -e -i vip=81.0.0.10,port=5000-5009,protocol=tcp \
-m lbalg=rr,type=NAT,proxy-src=60.0.0.101-60.0.0.104, \
  pmask=24 \
-h hc-name=hc1 \
-t conn-drain=180,nat-timeout=180,persist-timeout=180 \
-o servergroup=sg1 rule1
```

The following command creates a rule with the default timer values and without health check.

```
# ilbadm create-servergroup -s server=60.0.0.10 sg1
# lbadm create-rule -e -i vip=81.0.0.10,port=5000 \
  -m lbalg=rr,type=NAT,proxy-src=60.0.0.105 \
```

EXAMPLE 1 Configuring NAT Mode *(Continued)*

```

-o servergroup=sg1 rule1
# ilbadm add-server -e -s server=60.0.0.11sg1
# ilbadm enable-rule rule1

```

EXAMPLE 2 Configuring Half-NAT Mode

The following command configures half-NAT mode and exemplifies port range collapsing.

```

# ilbadm create-servergroup sg1
# ilbadm create-rule -e -i vip=81.0.0.10,port=5000-5009 \
-m lbalg=rr,type=h -o servergroup=sg1 rule1
# ilbadm add-server -s server=60.0.0.10:6000,60.0.0.11:7000 sg1

```

EXAMPLE 3 Configuring DSR Mode and Preparing Two Sets of Rules

The following command establishes two sets of rules to enable load balancing between HTTP and FTP traffic. Note both types of traffic traverse interface 60.0.0.10.

```

# ilbadm create-servergroup -s servers=60.0.0.9,60.0.0.10 websg
# ilbadm create-servergroup -s servers=60.0.0.10,60.0.0.11 ftpgroup

# ilbadm create-rule -e -i vip=81.0.0.10,port=80 \
-m lbalg=hash-ip-port,type=DSR \
-o servergroup=websg webrule
# ilbadm create-rule -e -i vip=81.0.0.10,port=ftp \
-m lbalg=hash-ip-port,type=DSR,pmask=24 \
-o servergroup=ftpgroup ftprule
# ilbadm create-rule -e -p -i vip=81.0.0.10,port=ftp-data \
-m lbalg=hash-ip-port,type=DSR,pmask=24 \
-o servergroup=ftpgroup ftpdatarule

```

EXAMPLE 4 Deleting Rule, Server Group, and Health Check

The following commands delete the rule, server group, and health check established in the first example.

```

# ilbadm ilbadm delete-rule -a
# ilbadm delete-servergroup sg1
# ilbadm delete-healthcheck hc1

```

EXAMPLE 5 Display a List of Rules

The following command displays a list of rules.

EXAMPLE 5 Display a List of Rules *(Continued)*

```
# ilbadm show-rule
RULENAME          STATUS LBALG      TYPE   PROTOCOL VIP  PORT
r2                 E     hash-ip    NAT    TCP 45.0.0.10 81
r1                 E     hash-ip    NAT    TCP 45.0.0.10 80

# ilbadm show-rule -f
      RULENAME: rule1
      STATUS: E
      PORT: 80
      PROTOCOL: TCP
      LBALG: roundrobin
      TYPE: HALF-NAT
      PROXY-SRC: --
      PERSIST: --
      HC-NAME: hc1
      HC-PORT: ANY
      CONN-DRAIN: 0
      NAT-TIMEOUT: 120
      PERSIST-TIMEOUT: 60
      SERVERGROUP: sg1
      VIP: 80.0.0.2
      SERVERS: _sg1.0,_sg1.1
```

EXAMPLE 6 Exporting and Importing Rules

The following commands show how to export rules to and import rules from stdout, and to/from a file.

```
# ilbadm export-config

create-servergroup ftpgroup
add-server -s server=10.1.1.3:21 ftpgroup
add-server -s server=10.1.1.4:21 ftpgroup
create-servergroup webgroup_v6
add-server -s server=[2000::ff]:80 webgroup_v6
create-rule -e protocol=tcp,VIP=1.2.3.4,port=ftp \
  -m lbalg=roundrobin,type=DSR \
  -o servergroup=ftpgroup rule4
create-rule protocol=tcp,VIP=2003::1,port=ftp \
  -m lbalg=roundrobin,type=DSR \
  -o servergroup=ftpgroup6 rule3
create-rule -e protocol=tcp,VIP=2002::1,port=http \
  -m lbalg=roundrobin,type=DSR \
  -o servergroup=webgrp_v6 RULE-all
```

The following command exports rules to a file.

EXAMPLE 6 Exporting and Importing Rules *(Continued)*

```
# ilbadm export-config /tmp/ilbrules
```

Following this command, /tmp/ilbrules contains the output displayed in the previous command.

The following command imports rules from a file.

```
# ilbadm import-config /tmp/ilbrules
```

This command replaces whatever rules were in place with the contents of /tmp/ilbrules.

The following command imports rules from stdin.

```
# cat /tmp/ilbrules | ilbadm import-config
```

The effect of this command is identical to the effect of the preceding command.

EXAMPLE 7 Creating a Single Health Check

The following command creates a single health check.

```
# ilbadm create-healthcheck -h hc-timeout=3,hc-count=2,hc-interval=8,\
    hc-test=tcp hc1
```

EXAMPLE 8 Listing All Healthchecks

The following command lists all extant health checks.

```
# ilbadm show-healthcheck
```

HCNAME	TIMEOUT	COUNT	INTERVAL	DEF_PING	TEST
hc1	2	1	10	Y	tcp
hc2	2	1	10	N	/usr/local/bin/probe

EXAMPLE 9 Deleting a Single Health Check

The following command deletes a single health check.

```
# ilbadm delete-healthcheck hc1
```

EXAMPLE 10 Displaying Statistics

The following command displays statistics at an interval of one seconds, for three iterations.

```
# ilbadm show-stats -A 1 3
```

PKT_P	BYTES_P	PKT_U	BYTES_U	PKT_D	BYTES_D
0	0	0	0	4	196

EXAMPLE 10 Displaying Statistics *(Continued)*

```
0      0      0      0      4      196
0      0      0      0      4      196
```

The following is the command you would use to display statistics in verbose mode at intervals of one second. Output is too wide to fit within the page boundary.

```
# ilbadm show-stats -v 1
```

The following command displays statistics for rule r1 at an interval of one second for three iterations.

```
# ilbadm show-stats -A -r r1 1 3
PKT_P  BYTES_P  PKT_U  BYTES_U  PKT_D  BYTES_D
0      0          0      0        4      196
0      0          0      0        4      196
0      0          0      0        4      196
```

The following command displays statistics for rule r1 for each of its servers, for an interval of one second and a count of 3.

```
# ilbadm show-stats -A -r r1 -i 1 3
SERVERNAME      PKT_P  BYTES_P
_sg1.0          0      0
_sg1.1          0      0
_sg1.2          0      0
_sg1.0          0      0
_sg1.1          0      0
_sg1.2          0      0
_sg1.0          0      0
_sg1.1          0      0
_sg1.2          0      0
```

The following command displays itemized statistics, with timestamps, for server `_sg1.0`, at an interval of one second and a count of 3.

```
# ilbadm show-stats -A -s _sg1.0 -it 1 3
RULENAME      PKT_P  BYTES_P  TIME
r1            0      0        2009-07-20:16.10.20
r1            0      0        2009-07-20:16.10.21
r1            0      0        2009-07-20:16.10.22
```

The following command displays statistics with specific option fields, at an interval of one second and a count of 3.

```
# ilbadm show-stats -o BYTES_D,TIME 1 3
BYTES_D  TIME
196      2009-07-20:16.14.25
0        2009-07-20:16.14.26
```

EXAMPLE 10 Displaying Statistics *(Continued)*

```
0          2009-07-20:16.14.27
```

EXAMPLE 11 Displaying Health Check Results

The following command displays the results of a health check.

```
# ilbadm show-hc-result rule1
RULENAME  HCNAME    SERVERID  STATUS  FAIL  LAST      NEXT      RTT
rule1     hc1       _sg1.0   dead    6    04:45:17  04:45:30  698
rule1     hc1       _sg1.1   alive   0    04:45:11  04:45:25  260
rule1     hc1       _sg1.2   unreach 6    04:45:17  04:45:30  0
```

EXAMPLE 12 Displaying the NAT Table

The following command displays the NAT table.

```
# ilbadm show-nat 5
UDP: 124.106.235.150.53688>85.0.0.1.1024>>>82.0.0.39.4127>82.0.0.56.1024
UDP: 71.159.95.31.61528> 85.0.0.1.1024>>> 82.0.0.39.4146> 82.0.0.55.1024
UDP: 9.213.106.54.19787> 85.0.0.1.1024>>> 82.0.0.40.4114> 82.0.0.55.1024
UDP: 118.148.25.17.26676> 85.0.0.1.1024>>>82.0.0.40.4112> 82.0.0.56.1024
UDP: 69.219.132.153.56132>85.0.0.1.1024>>>82.0.0.39.4134> 82.0.0.55.1024
```

In actual ilbadm output, spaces are interspersed for greater readability.

EXAMPLE 13 Displaying the Persistence Table

The following command displays the persistence table.

```
# ilbadm show-persist 5
rule2: 124.106.235.150 --> 82.0.0.56
rule3: 71.159.95.31 --> 82.0.0.55
rule3: 9.213.106.54 --> 82.0.0.55
rule1: 118.148.25.17 --> 82.0.0.56
rule2: 69.219.132.153 --> 82.0.0.55
```

EXAMPLE 14 Displaying Server Groups

The following command displays basic information about server groups.

```
# ilbadm show-servergroup
sg1: id:sg1.2 35.0.0.4:80
sg1: id:sg1.1 35.0.0.3:80
sg1: id:sg1.0 35.0.0.2:80
sg2: id:sg2.3 35.0.0.5:81
```

EXAMPLE 14 Displaying Server Groups *(Continued)*

```
sg2: id:sg2.2 35.0.0.4:81
sg2: id:sg2.1 35.0.0.3:81
sg2: id:sg2.0 35.0.0.2:81
```

The following command displays all available information about server groups.

```
# ilbadm show-servergroup -o all
sgname          serverID          minport maxport IP_address
sg1              _sg1.0           --      --      1.1.1.1
sg2              _sg2.1           --      --      1.1.1.6
sg3              _sg3.0           9001   9001   1.1.1.1
sg3              _sg3.1           9001   9001   1.1.1.2
sg3              _sg3.2           9001   9001   1.1.1.3
sg3              _sg3.3           9001   9001   1.1.1.4
sg3              _sg3.4           9001   9001   1.1.1.5
sg3              _sg3.5           9001   9001   1.1.1.6
sg3              _sg3.6           9001   9001   1.1.1.11
sg3              _sg3.7           9001   9001   1.1.1.12
sg3              _sg3.8           9001   9001   1.1.1.13
sg3              _sg3.9           9001   9001   1.1.1.14
sg3              _sg3.10          9001   9001   1.1.1.15
sg3              _sg3.11          9001   9001   1.1.1.16
sg4              _sg4.0           9001   9006   1.1.1.1
sg4              _sg4.1           9001   9006   1.1.1.6
```

EXAMPLE 15 List Servers Associated with a Rule

The following command lists the servers that are associated with a rule.

```
# ilbadm show-server r1
SERVERID        ADDRESS          PORT  RULENAME    STATUS  SERVERGROUP
_sg1.0          35.0.0.10       80    rule1       E      sg1
_sg1.1          35.0.0.11       80    rule1       E      sg1
_sg1.2          35.0.0.12       80    rule1       D      sg1
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWilbu
Interface Stability	Committed

See Also [ilbd\(1M\)](#), [vmstat\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name ilbd – ILB daemon

Synopsis /usr/lib/inet/ilbd

Description The Integrated Load Balancer (ILB) daemon, `ilbd`, provides user-level services for the ILB. It is a system daemon started by the Service Management Facility (see [smf\(5\)](#)). Its fault management resource identifier (FMRI) is:

```
svc:/network/loadbalancer/ilb:default
```

Note that `ilbd` is a Consolidation Private interface. See [attributes\(5\)](#).

`ilbd` provides no administrative interface. All ILB administration should be done through [ilbadm\(1M\)](#) or the programming library [libilb\(3LIB\)](#).

Options The `ilbd` daemon has no options.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Enabling the ILB Service

The following command enables the ILB service:

```
# svcadm enable svc:/network/loadbalancer/ilb:default
```

EXAMPLE 2 Disabling the ILB Service

The following command disables the ILB service:

```
# svcadm disable svc:/network/loadbalancer/ilb:default
```

Errors The `ilbd` daemon uses [syslog\(3C\)](#) to report status and error messages. All of the messages are logged with the LOG_DAEMON facility. Error messages are logged with the LOG_ERR and LOG_NOTICE priorities, and informational messages are logged with the LOG_INFO priority. The default entries in the `/etc/syslog.conf` file log all of the `ilbd` daemon error messages to the `/var/adm/messages` log.

Files /usr/lib/inet/ilbd
ILB daemon binary

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWilb
Interface Stability	Project Private

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [ilbadm\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [syslog\(3C\)](#), [libilb\(3LIB\)](#), [syslog.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Notes The `ilbd` service is managed by the service management facility, `smf(5)`, under the fault management resource identifier (FMRI):

```
svc:/network/loadbalancer/ilb:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using `svcadm(1M)`. The service's status can be queried using the `svcs(1)` command. To administer the service, the authorization `solaris.smf.manage.ilb` must be granted. Alternatively, the rights profile "ILB Management" can be granted.

The ILB service must be enabled for the `ilbadm(1M)` command and any other `libilib(3LIB)` client applications to function properly.

Name imqadmin – launch the Message Queue administration console

Synopsis /usr/bin/imqadmin [-javahome *path*]
 /usr/bin/imqadmin -h
 /usr/bin/imqadmin -v

Description imqadmin launches the graphical user interface application that performs most Message Queue administration tasks. These tasks include managing broker instances (including physical destinations) and administered objects.

Options The following options are supported:

-h Display usage help. The application is not launched.
 -javahome *path* Specify a path to an alternate Java 2 compatible runtime.
 -v Display version information.

Environment Variables The following environment variables affect the execution of this command:

IMQ_JAVAHOME Specify the Java 2 compatible runtime. When this environment variable is not set it defaults to /usr/j2se.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.
 >0 An error occurred.

Files \$HOME/.imq/admin/brokerlist.properties
 Contains user settings, a list of broker instances being managed.
 \$HOME/.imq/admin/objectstorelist.properties
 Contains user settings, a list of object stores being managed.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWiqu

See Also [imqbrokerd\(1M\)](#), [imqcmd\(1M\)](#), [imqdbmgr\(1M\)](#), [imqkeytool\(1M\)](#), [imqobjmgr\(1M\)](#), [imqusermgr\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Sun Java System Message Queue Administrator's Guide

Name imqbrokerd – start a Message Queue broker instance

Synopsis /usr/bin/imqbrokerd [*option*|PO]

/usr/bin/imqbrokerd -h

Description imqbrokerd starts an instance of the Message Queue broker. The Message Queue broker is the main component of a Message Queue message server. The broker performs reliable delivery of messages to and from Java Message Service (JMS) clients.

imqbrokerd uses command line options to specify broker configuration properties.

Options The following options are supported:

- backup *fileName* Back up a Master Broker's configuration change record to *fileName*. This option only applies to broker clusters.
- cluster *brokerList* Specify the list of broker instances which are connected in a cluster. This list is merged with the list in the imq.cluster.brokerlist property. This option only applies to broker clusters.

brokerList is a comma-separated list of broker instances, each specified by *hostName:port* (the host on which the broker instance is running and the port number it is using) If you don't specify a value for *hostName*, localhost is used. If you don't specify a value for *port*, the value of 7676 is used. For example: host1:8899,host2,:7878.
- dbpassword *password* Specify the password for a plugged-in JDBC-compliant database used as a Message Queue data store.
- dbuser *userName* Specify the user name for a plugged-in JDBC-compliant data store.
- Dproperty=*value* Set the specified broker configuration property to the *value*. The system does not validate either the configuration property or *value*. Therefore, spelling, formatting, and case is important. Message Queue can not set incorrect values passed using the -D option.
- force Perform action without user confirmation. This option only applies when you use the -remove *instance* option, which normally requires confirmation.

-
- | | |
|-------------------------------|--|
| -h | Display usage help. Execute nothing else on the command line. |
| -javahome <i>path</i> | Specify the path to an alternate Java 2-compatible Java Development Kit (JDK) or Java Runtime Environment (JRE) The default is to use the runtime bundled with the operating system. |
| -ldappassword <i>password</i> | Specify the password for accessing an LDAP user repository when using an LDAP server (as opposed to a built-in flat-file repository) to authenticate users of a Message Queue message server. |
| -license [<i>name</i>] | Specify the license to load, if different from the default for your Message Queue product edition. If you don't specify a license name, this lists all licenses installed on the system. Depending on the installed Message Queue edition, the values for <i>name</i> are pe (Platform Edition-basic features), try (Platform Edition-90-day trial enterprise features), and unl (Enterprise Edition). |
| -loglevel <i>level</i> | Specify the logging level. Valid values for <i>level</i> are NONE, ERROR, WARNING, or INFO. The default value is INFO. |
| -metrics <i>int</i> | Report metrics at a specific interval. Specify <i>int</i> as the number of seconds. |
| -name <i>brokerName</i> | Specify the instance name of this broker and use the corresponding instance configuration file. If you do not specify a broker name, the name of the file is set to imqbroker. If you run more than one instance of a broker on the same host, each must have a unique name. |
| -passfile <i>filename</i> | Specify the name of the file from which to read the passwords for the SSL keystore, LDAP user repository, or JDBC-compliant database. |
| -password <i>keypassword</i> | Specify the password for the SSL certificate keystore. |
| -port <i>number</i> | Specify the broker's Port Mapper port number. By default, this is set to 7676. To run two instances of a broker on the same server, each broker's Port |

-
- Mapper must have a different port number. JMS clients connect to the broker instance using this port number.
- remove *instance* Remove the broker instance. Delete the instance configuration file, log files, data store, and other files and directories associated with the broker instance. This option requires user confirmation unless you also specify the -force option.
- reset store|messages|durables|props Reset the data store (or a subset of the store) or resets the configuration properties of the broker instance when the broker instance is started. The action depends on the argument provided.
- store Clear all persistent data in the data store, including messages, durable subscriptions, and transaction information store.
- messages Clear all persistent messages durable.
- durables Clear all durable subscriptions.
- props Clear all configuration information in the config.props instance configuration file. All properties assume default values.
- restore *filename* Replace the Master Broker's configuration change record with the specified backup file. This file must have been previously created using the -backup option. This option only applies to broker clusters.
- shared Specify that the jms connection service be implemented using the shared threadpool model, in which threads are shared among connections to increase the number of connections supported by a broker instance.
- silent Turn off logging to the console.
- tty Display all messages be to the console. WARNING and ERROR level messages are displayed on the console by default.

<code>-upgrade-store-nobackup</code>	Specify that an earlier, incompatible version Message Queue data store is automatically removed when migrating to Message Queue 3.5 format. If you do not use this option, you must manually delete the earlier data store. This applies to both built-in (flat-file) persistence and plugged-in (JDBC-compliant) persistence. Migration of the earlier data store to a Message Queue 3.5 data store takes place the first time you start a Message Queue 3.5 broker instance on an earlier version data store.
<code>-version</code>	Display the version number of the installed product.
<code>-vmargs are [[arg]...]</code>	Specify arguments to pass to the Java VM. Separate arguments with spaces. If you want to pass more than one argument or if an argument contains a space, use enclosing quotation marks. For example: <code>imqbrokerd -tty -vmargs " -Xmx128m -Xincgc"</code>

Environment Variables The following environment variables affect the execution of this command:

`IMQ_JAVAHOME` Specify the Java 2 compatible runtime. When this environment variable is not set it defaults to `/usr/j2se`.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

`0` Successful completion.
`>0` An error occurred.

Files

- `/etc/init.d/imq`
Shell script for starting `imqbrokerd`. This file looks at the `/etc/imq/imqbrokerd.conf` file.
- `/etc/imq/imqbrokerd.conf`
Configuration file which controls the behavior of the broker startup script.
- `/etc/imq/passwd`
Flat file user repository for authenticating users.
- `/etc/imq/accesscontrol.properties`
Controls client access to broker functionality.
- `/etc/imq/passfile.sample`
Sample passfile used by the `-passfile` option.

/var/imq/instances/brokerName/props/config.properties
Broker instance configuration file.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWiqu

See Also [imqadmin\(1M\)](#), [imqcmd\(1M\)](#), [imqdbmgr\(1M\)](#), [imqkeytool\(1M\)](#), [imqobjmgr\(1M\)](#), [imqusermgr\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Sun Java System Message Queue Administrator's Guide

Name imqcmd – manage Message Queue brokers

Synopsis /usr/bin/imqcmd *subcommand argument [option|PO]*

/usr/bin/imqcmd [-h | -H]

/usr/bin/imqcmd -v

Description imqcmd manages the Message Queue broker, including resources such as connection services, physical destinations, durable subscriptions, and transactions. The utility provides a number of subcommands for managing these resources.

imqcmd supports many subcommands. Basic connection and authentication is required for the execution of every imqcmd subcommand. Use the -secure option to specify secure connections. Subcommands and their corresponding arguments and options follow the imqcmd command on the command line. See USAGE and OPTIONS.

Options The following options are supported:

-b *hostName:port* Specify the name of the host on which the broker instance is running and the port number it is using.

The default value is localhost : 7676. If you do not specify the -b option, imqcmd uses the default.

To specify port only, use: -b :7878. This is equivalent to -b localhost : 7878

To specify name only, use: -b somehost. This is equivalent to -b somehost : 7676.

-c *clientID* Specify the ID of the durable subscriber to a topic.

-d *topicName* Specify the name of the topic.

Use this option with the list dur and destroy dur subcommands.

-f Perform action without user confirmation.

Use this option with any subcommand.

-h Display usage help. Execute nothing else on the command line.

-H Display usage help, attribute list, and examples. Execute nothing else on the command line.

-int *interval* Specify the interval, in seconds, at which the metrics bkr, metrics dst, and metrics svc subcommands display metrics output.

Use this option with the metrics subcommand.

-javahome Specify an alternate Java 2 compatible runtime to use.

- m metricType* Specify the type of metric information to display.
- Use this option with the `metrics bkr`, `metrics dst`, and `metrics svc` subcommands. The value of *metricType* depends on whether the metrics are generated for a destination, a service, or a broker.
- Use one of the following values to specify *metricType*:
- | | |
|------------------|---|
| <code>ttl</code> | Total of messages in and out of the broker (default) |
| <code>rts</code> | Provides the same information as <code>ttl</code> , but specifies the number of messages per second |
| <code>cxn</code> | Connections, virtual memory heap, threads |
- The following command displays connection, VM heap, and threads metric information for the default broker instance (`localhost:7676`) every five seconds:
- ```
imqcmd metrics bkr -m cxn -int 5
```
- msp numSamples* Specify the number of samples the `metrics bkr`, `metrics dst`, and `metrics svc` subcommands display in the metrics output.
- n argumentName* Specify the name of the subcommand argument. Depending on the subcommand, this might be the name of a service, a physical destination, a durable subscription, or a transaction ID.
- o attribute=value* Specify the value of an attribute. Depending on the subcommand argument, this might be the attribute of a broker, service, or destination.
- p password* Specify the administrator password.
- This option is deprecated. Use the `-passfile` option instead.
- passfile* Specify the administrator password.
- pst pauseType* Specify whether producers, consumers, or both are paused when pausing a destination.
- Use this option with the `pause dst` subcommand. Use one of the following values:
- |                        |                                                             |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>CONSUMERS</code> | Pause delivery of messages to consumers.                    |
| <code>PRODUCERS</code> | Pause delivery of messages from producers.                  |
| <code>ALL</code>       | Pause delivery of messages to consumers and from producers. |

---

|                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                 | If the <code>-pst</code> option is not specified, pauses both consumers and producers (the equivalent of <code>-pst ALL</code> ).                                                                                              |
| <code>-rtm timeout</code>       | Specify the timeout period in seconds of an <code>imqcmd</code> subcommand. The default value is <code>10</code> .                                                                                                             |
| <code>-rtr numRetries</code>    | Specify the number of retries attempted after an <code>imqcmd</code> subcommand times out.<br><br>The default value is <code>5</code> .                                                                                        |
| <code>-s</code>                 | Silent mode. No output is displayed.                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|                                 | Use this option with any subcommand.                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <code>-secure</code>            | Specify a secure administration connection to the broker instance. You must first configure the broker to enable a secure connection service.<br><br>Use this option whenever you want a secure communication with the broker. |
| <code>-svn serviceName</code>   | Specify the service for which the connections are listed.<br><br>Use this option with the <code>list cxn</code> subcommand.                                                                                                    |
| <code>-t destinationType</code> | Specify the type of a destination: <code>t</code> (topic) or <code>q</code> (queue).                                                                                                                                           |
| <code>-tmp</code>               | Include temporary destinations when listing destinations using the <code>list dst</code> subcommand.                                                                                                                           |
| <code>-u name</code>            | Specify the administrator user name.<br><br>If you omit this value, you are prompted for it.                                                                                                                                   |
| <code>-v</code>                 | Display version information. Execute nothing else on the command line.                                                                                                                                                         |

## Usage

Subcommands and Options The following subcommands and associated arguments and options are supported:

`compact dst [-t type -n destName]`

Compact the flat-file data store for the destination of the specified type and name. If no type and name are specified, all destinations are compacted. Destinations must be paused before they can be compacted.

`commit txn -n transaction_id`

Commit the specified transaction

`create dst -t destinationType -n destName [-o attribute=value] [-o attribute=value1]...`  
 Create a destination of the specified type, with the specified name, and the specified attributes. Destination names must contain only alphanumeric characters (no spaces) and can begin with an alphabetic character or the underscore character (`_`).

`destroy dst -t destinationType -n destName`  
 Destroy the destination of the specified type and name.

`destroy dur -n subscrName -c client_id`  
 Destroy the specified durable subscription for the specified Client Identifier.

`list cxn [-s svn serviceName] [-b hostName:port]`  
 List all connections of the specified service name on the default broker or on a broker at the specified host and port. If the service name is not specified, all connections are listed.

`list dst [-t tmp]`  
 List all destinations, with option of listing temporary destinations as well.

`list dur -d destination`  
 List all durable subscriptions for the specified destination.

`list svc`  
 List all connection services on the broker instance.

`list txn`  
 List all transactions, being tracked by the broker.

`metrics bkr [-m metricType] [-i int interval] [-m msp numSamples]`  
 Display broker metrics for the broker instance.

Use the `-m` option to specify the type of metric to display. Use one of the following values to specify *metricType*:

`ttl` Specifies the total of messages in and out of the broker (default).

`rts` Provides the same information as `ttl`, but specifies the number of messages per second.

`cxn` Connections, virtual memory heap, threads.

Use the `-i` option to specify the interval (in seconds) at which to display the metrics. The default is 5 seconds.

Use the `-m` option to specify the number of samples displayed in the output. A value of `-1` means an unlimited number. The default value is `-1`.

`metrics dst -t type -n destName [-m metricType] [-i int interval] [-m msp numSamples]`  
 Displays metrics information for the destination of the specified type and name.

Use the `-m` option to specify the type of metrics to display. Use one of the following values to specify *metricType*:

- `ttl` Specifies the number of messages flowing in and out of the broker and residing in memory.
- `rts` Provides the same information as `ttl`, but specifies the number of messages per second.
- `con` Displays consumer related metrics.
- `dsk` Displays disk usage metrics.

Use the `-int` option to specify the interval (in seconds) at which to display the metrics. The default is 5 seconds.

Use the `-msp` option to specify the number of samples displayed in the output. A value of `-1` means an unlimited number. The default value is 5.

`metrics svc -n serviceName [-m metricType] [-int interval] [-msp numSamples]`

List metrics for the specified service on the broker instance. Use the `-m` option to specify the type of metric to display. Use one of the following values to specify *metricType*:

- `ttl` Total of messages in and out of the broker (default)
- `rts` Provides the same information as `ttl`, but specifies the number of messages per second
- `cxn` Connections, virtual memory heap, threads

Use the `-int` option to specify the interval (in seconds) at which to display the metrics. The default is 5 seconds.

Use the `-msp` option to specify the number of samples displayed in the output. A value of `-1` means an unlimited number. The default value is `-1`.

`pause bkr`  
Pause the broker instance.

`pause dst [-t type -n destName] [-pst pauseType]`  
Pause the delivery of messages to consumers (`-pst CONSUMERS`), or from producers (`-pst PRODUCERS`), or both (`-pst ALL`), for the destination of the specified type and name. If no destination type or name are specified, all destinations are paused.

`pause svc -n serviceName`  
Pause the specified service running on the broker instance. You cannot pause the administrative service.

`purge dst -t destinationType -n destName`  
Purge messages at the destination with the specified type and name.

`purge dur -n subscrName -c client_id`  
Purge all messages for the specified client identifier.

**query bkr**

List the current settings of properties of the broker instance. Show the list of running brokers (in a multi-broker cluster) that are connected to the specified broker.

**query dst -t *destinationType* -n *destName***

List information about the destination of the specified type and name.

**query svc -n *serviceName***

Display information about the specified service running on the broker instance.

**query txn -n *transaction\_id***

List information about the specified transaction.

**reload cls**

Forces all the brokers in a cluster to reload the `imq.cluster.brokerlist` property and update cluster information. This subcommand only applies to broker clusters.

**restart bkr**

Shut down and restart the broker instance. This command restarts the broker using the options specified when the broker was first started. If you want different options to be in effect, you must shut down the broker and then start it again, specifying the options you want.

**resume bkr**

Resume the broker instance.

**resume dst [-t *type*] [-n -*destName*]**

Resumes the delivery of messages for the paused destination of the specified type and name. If no destination type and name are specified, all destinations are resumed.

**resume svc -n *serviceName***

Resume the specified service running on the broker instance.

**rollback txn -n *transaction\_id***

Roll back the specified transaction.

**shutdown bkr**

Shut down the broker instance

**update bkr -o *attribute=value* [-o *attribute=value*]...**

Change the specified attributes for the broker instance.

**update dst -t *destinationType* -n *destName* -o *attribute=value* [-o *attribute=value1*]...**

Update the value of the specified attributes at the specified destination..

**update svc -n *serviceName* -o *attribute=value* [-o *attribute=value1*]...**

Update the specified attribute of the specified service running on the broker instance.

**Attribute Value Pairs** You can specify attributes with the create and update subcommands. Applicable attributes depend on the subcommand arguments.

The following attributes are supported:

## Queue (dst):

|                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| maxTotalMsgBytes       | Value: Integer (maximum total size of messages, in bytes)<br>Default: 0 (unlimited)                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| maxBytesPerMsg         | Value: Integer (maximum size of a single message, in bytes)<br>Default: 0 (unlimited)                                                                                                                                                                                |
| maxNumMsgs             | Value: Integer (maximum total number of messages)<br>Default: 0 (unlimited)                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| consumerFlowLimit      | Value: Integer Initial number of queued messages sent to active consumers before load-balancing starts A value of - 1 means an unlimited number.<br>Default: 1000                                                                                                    |
| isLocalOnly            | Value: Boolean (destination limited to delivering messages to local consumers only) Default: false                                                                                                                                                                   |
| limitBehavior          | Value: Specify how broker responds when memory-limit is reached. Use one of the following values:<br>FLOW_CONTROL      Slows down producers<br>REMOVE_OLDEST      Purges oldest messages<br>REJECT_NEWEST      Rejects the newest messages<br>Default: REJECT_NEWEST |
| localDeliveryPreferred | Value: Boolean Specify messages be delivered to remote consumers only if there are no consumers on the local broker. Requires that the destination not be restricted to local-only delivery (isLocalOnly = false)<br>Default: false                                  |
| maxNumActiveConsumers  | Value: Integer (maximum number of active consumers in load-balanced delivery) A value of - 1 means an unlimited number.<br>Default: 1                                                                                                                                |
| maxNumBackupConsumers  | Value: Integer (maximum number of backup consumers in load-balanced delivery) A value of - 1 means an unlimited number.<br>Default: 0                                                                                                                                |

|                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| maxNumProducers   | Value: (maximum total number of producers) A value of - 1 means an unlimited number.<br><br>Default: - 1                                                                                                                                                                         |
| useDMQ            | Specify whether a destination's dead messages are discarded or put on the dead message queue.<br><br>Default: true                                                                                                                                                               |
| Topic (dst):      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| consumerFlowLimit | Value: Integer Maximum number of messages delivered to a consumer in a single batch. A value of - 1 means an unlimited number.<br><br>Default: 1000                                                                                                                              |
| isLocalOnly       | Value: Boolean (destination limited to delivering messages to local consumers only)<br><br>Default: false                                                                                                                                                                        |
| limitBehavior     | Value: Specify how broker responds when memory-limit is reached. Use one of the following values:<br><br>FLOW_CONTROL      Slows down producers<br>REMOVE_OLDEST      Purges the oldest messages<br>REJECT_NEWEST      Rejects the newest messages<br><br>Default: REJECT_NEWEST |
| maxBytesPerMsg    | Value: Integer (maximum size of a single message, in bytes)<br><br>Default: 0 (unlimited)                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| maxNumMsgs        | Value: Integer (maximum total number of messages) A value of - 1 means an unlimited number.<br><br>Default: - 1                                                                                                                                                                  |
| maxNumProducers   | Value: (maximum total number of producers)<br><br>Default: 0 (unlimited)                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| maxTotalMsgBytes  | Value: Integer (maximum total size of messages, in bytes) A value of - 1 means an unlimited number.<br><br>Default: - 1                                                                                                                                                          |



---

|                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| useDMQ                                     | Specify whether a destination's dead messages are discarded or put on the dead message queue.<br><br>Default: <code>true</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Broker (bkr):                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| imq.autocreate.destination.useDMQ          | Value: Boolean. Set the <code>useDMQ</code> attribute to <code>true</code> to enable all autocreated physical destinations on a broker to use the dead message queue. Set the <code>useDMQ</code> attribute to <code>false</code> to disable all autocreated physical destinations on a broker from using the dead message queue.<br><br>Default: <code>true</code> |
| imq.autocreate.queue                       | Value: Boolean<br><br>Default: <code>true</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| imq.autocreate.queue.maxNumActiveConsumers | Value: Integer (maximum number of consumers that can be active in load-balanced delivery from an autocreated queue destination) A value of - 1 means an unlimited number.<br><br>Default: 1                                                                                                                                                                         |
| imq.autocreate.queue.maxNumBackupConsumers | Value: Integer (maximum number of backup consumers that can take the place of active consumers) A value of - 1 means an unlimited number.<br><br>Default: 0                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| imq.autocreate.topic                       | Value: Boolean<br><br>Default: <code>true</code>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| imq.cluster.url                            | Value: String (location of cluster configuration file)<br><br>Default: none                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| imq.log.file.rolloverbytes                 | Value: Integer (maximum size of a log file, in bytes)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

|                           |                                                             |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
|                           | Default: 0 (no rollover based on size)                      |
| imq.log.file.rolloversecs | Value: Integer (maximum age of a log file, in seconds)      |
|                           | Default: 0 (no rollover based on age)                       |
| imq.log.level             | Value: String (NONE, ERROR, WARNING, INFO)                  |
|                           | Default: INFO                                               |
| imq.message.max_size      | Value: Integer (maximum size of a single message, in bytes) |
|                           | Default: 70m                                                |
| imq.portmapper.port       | Value: Integer                                              |
|                           | Default: 7676                                               |
| imq.system.max_count      | Value: Integer (maximum total number of messages)           |
|                           | Default: 0 (no limit)                                       |
| imq.system.max_size       | Value: Integer (maximum total size of messages, in bytes)   |
|                           | Default: 0 (no limit)                                       |
| Service (svc):            |                                                             |
| maxThreads                | Value: Integer (maximum threads assigned)                   |
|                           | Default: Depends on service                                 |
| minThreads                | Value: Integer (minimum threads assigned)                   |
|                           | Default: Depends on service                                 |
| port                      | Value: Integer                                              |
|                           | Default: 0 (dynamically allocated)                          |

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Shutting Down a Broker

The following command shuts down a broker for hostname myserver on port 7676:

```
mqcmd shutdown bkr -b myserver:7676
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Restarting a Broker

The following command restarts a broker for hostname `myserver`:

```
imqcmd restart bkr -b myserver
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Pausing a Service

The following command pauses a broker for hostname `localhost` on port `7676`, with a *serviceName* of `jms`:

```
imqcmd pause svc -n jms -b :7676
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Resuming a Service

The following command resumes a service for hostname `localhost` on port `7676`, with a *serviceName* of `jms`:

```
imqcmd resume svc -n jms -b myserver:7676
```

**EXAMPLE 5** Creating a Queue Destination

The following command creates a queue destination for hostname `myserver` on port `7676`, with a *destName* of `myFQ`, a *queueDeliveryPolicy* of `Fai l over`, and a *maxBytesPerMsg* of `10000`:

```
imqcmd create dst -n myFQ -t q -o "queueDeliveryPolicy=f" \
 -o "maxBytesPerMsg=10000" -b myserver:7676
```

**EXAMPLE 6** Purging a Queue Destination

The following command purges a queue destination for hostname `myserver` on port `7676`, with a *destName* of `myFQ`:

```
imqcmd purge dst -n myFQ -t q -b myserver:7676
```

**EXAMPLE 7** Listing Destinations on a Broker

The following command lists destinations for hostname `myserver` on port `7676`:

```
imqcmd list dst -b myserver:7676
```

**EXAMPLE 8** Updating a Portmapper Port

The following command updates a portmapper port on hostname `myserver` from port `7676` to `7878`:

**EXAMPLE 8** Updating a Portmapper Port *(Continued)*

```
imqcmd update bkr -o "imq.portmapper.port=7878"
```

**EXAMPLE 9** Updating the Maximum Number of Messages in the Queue

The following command updates the maximum number of messages in the queue to **2000** for `myserver` on port **8080** with a *destName* of `TestQueue`:

```
imqcmd update dst -b myserver:8080 -n TestQueue -t q -o "maxNumMsgs=2000"
```

**EXAMPLE 10** Updating the Maximum Threads

The following command updates the maximum threads `jms` connection service to **200** for hostname `localhost` on port **7676**:

```
imqcmd update svc -n jms -o "minThreads=200"
```

**EXAMPLE 11** Listing Durable Subscriptions

The following command lists durable subscriptions for a topic with hostname `localhost` on port **7676** with a *destName* of `myTopic`:

```
imqcmd list dur -d myTopic
```

**EXAMPLE 12** Destroying Durable Subscriptions

The following command destroys subscriptions for hostname `localhost` on port **7676** with a *dursubName* of `myDurSub` and a *client\_ID* of `111.222.333.444`:

```
imqcmd destroy dur -n myDurSub -c "111.222.333.444"
```

**EXAMPLE 13** Listing All Transactions

The following command lists all transactions on a broker with hostname `localhost` on port **7676**:

```
imqcmd list txn
```

**EXAMPLE 14** Displaying Information About a Transaction

The following command displays information about a transaction with hostname `localhost` on port **7676**, and a *transactionID* of `1234567890`

```
imqcmd query txn -n 1234567890
```

**EXAMPLE 15** Committing a Transaction

The following command commits a transaction with hostname `localhost` on port `7676`, and a *transactionID* of `1234567890`:

```
imqcmd commit txn -n 1234567890
```

**Environment Variables** The following environment variables affect the execution of this command:

**IMQ\_JAVAHOME** Specify the Java 2 compatible runtime. When this environment variable is not set it defaults to `/usr/j2se`.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

`0` Successful completion.

`>0` An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWiqu         |

**See Also** [imqadmin\(1M\)](#), [imqbrokerd\(1M\)](#), [imqdbmgr\(1M\)](#), [imqkeytool\(1M\)](#), [imqobjmgr\(1M\)](#), [imqusermgr\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

*Sun Java System Message Queue Administrator's Guide*

**Name** imqdbmgr – manage a plugged-in JDBC-compliant Message Queue data store

**Synopsis** /usr/bin/imqdbmgr *subcommand argument* [ [*option*|P0]]

/usr/bin/imqdbmgr -h | -help

/usr/bin/imqdbmgr -v | -version

**Description** The imqdbmgr utility creates and manages a Java DataBase Connectivity (JDBC) compliant database used for Message Queue persistent storage.

The database can be either embedded or external. To use a JDBC-compliant database (and the imqdbmgr utility), you need to first set a number of JDBC-related properties in the broker instance configuration file. See the *Sun Java System Message Queue Administrator's Guide* for additional information.

imqdbmgr supports four management subcommands. These *subcommands*, and their corresponding *arguments* and *options* follow the imqdbmgr command on the command line. See USAGE and OPTIONS.

The following subcommands are supported:

- create      Create a Message Queue database schema.
- delete      Delete Message Queue database tables in the current data store.
- recreate    Delete Message Queue database tables and recreate Message Queue database schema in the current data store.
- reset       Reset the database table lock to allow other processes to access database tables.

The imqdbmgr subcommands support the following arguments:

- all          Indicates the subcommand applies to the data store, as well as the database tables.
- lck          Indicates the subcommand applies to the database table lock.
- oldtbl      Indicates the subcommand applies to an older version of the database tables.
- tbl          Indicates the subcommand applies to the database tables only.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- b *brokerName*      Specify the broker instance name and corresponding instance configuration properties. If this option is not specified, the default broker instance is assumed.
- c                    Use this option with the create, delete, recreate, or reset subcommands.
- D *property=value*    Set system property *property* to *value*.

|                    |                                                                          |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                    | Use this option with the create, delete, recreate, or reset subcommands. |
| -h   -help         | Display usage help. Execute nothing else on the command line.            |
| -p <i>password</i> | Specify the database password.                                           |
|                    | Use this option with the create, delete, recreate, or reset subcommands. |
| -u <i>userName</i> | Specify the database user name.                                          |
|                    | Use this option with the create, delete, recreate, or reset subcommands. |
| -v   -version      | Display version information. Execute nothing else on the command line.   |

**Usage** The following subcommands and associated arguments are supported:

|                                                           |                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| create all                                                | Create a new embedded data store and Message Queue database schema for a specified or default broker instance.                                                  |
| create tbl [-u <i>userName</i> ] [-p <i>password</i> ]    | Create Message Queue database schema in an existing data store for a specified or default broker instance.                                                      |
| delete tbl [-u <i>userName</i> ] [-p <i>password</i> ]    | Delete Message Queue database tables in the current data store for a specified or default broker instance.                                                      |
| delete oldtbl [-u <i>userName</i> ] [-p <i>password</i> ] | Delete the earlier version of Message Queue database tables. Used after the data store has been automatically migrated to the current version of Message Queue. |
| recreate tbl [-u <i>userName</i> ] [-p <i>password</i> ]  | Delete Message Queue database tables and recreate Message Queue database schema in the current data store for a specified or default broker instance.           |
| reset lck                                                 | Reset the database table lock to allow other processes to access database tables.                                                                               |

**Environment Variables** The following environment variables affect the execution of this command:

|              |                                                                                                            |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IMQ_JAVAHOME | Specify the Java 2 compatible runtime. When this environment variable is not set it defaults to /usr/j2se. |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

**Files** /var/imq/instances/*brokerName*/dbstore Recommended directory in which to create an embedded database.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWiqu         |

**See Also** [imqadmin\(1M\)](#), [imqbrokerd\(1M\)](#), [imqcmd\(1M\)](#), [imqusermgr\(1M\)](#), [imqkeytool\(1M\)](#), [imqobjmgr\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

*Sun Java System Message Queue Administrator's Guide*



**Name** imqkeytool – generate a self-signed certificate for secure communication

**Synopsis** /usr/bin/imqkeytool [-broker] [-servlet *keystore\_location*]  
/usr/bin/imqkeytool -h

**Description** The imqkeytool utility generates a self-signed certificate for secure communication. The certificate can be used by a broker instance to establish a secure connection with a client, or by a Message Queue-supplied HTTPS servlet to establish a secure connection with a broker instance. An HTTPS servlet is an SSL-enabled variant of the HyperText Transfer Protocol that establishes a secure connection with a broker instance.

Without an option, imqkeytool generates a self-signed certificate for a broker instance.

imqkeytool uses command line options to specify whether the certificate is used by a broker instance or by a servlet.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- broker                      Generate a self-signed certificate for the broker and places it in the Message Queue keystore. All broker instances running on a system must use the same certificate.
- h                              Display usage help. Do not execute anything else on the command line.
- servlet *keystore\_location*      Generate a self-signed certificate for an HTTPS servlet and places it in *keystore\_location*.  
  
*keystore\_location* refers to the location of the keystore. You should move this keystore to a location where it is accessible and readable by the Message Queue HTTPS servlet to establish a secure connection with a broker.

**Environment Variables** The following environment variables affect the execution of this command:

- IMQ\_JAVAHOME      Specify the Java 2 compatible runtime. When this environment variable is not set it defaults to /usr/j2se.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0      Successful completion.
- >0    An error occurred.

**Files** /etc/imq/keystore      Contains Message Queue keystore in which imqkeytool stores a self-signed certificate for brokers.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWiqu         |

**See Also** [imqadmin\(1M\)](#), [imqbrokerd\(1M\)](#), [imqcmd\(1M\)](#), [imqdbmgr\(1M\)](#), [imqobjmgr\(1M\)](#), [imqusermgr\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

*Sun Java System Message Queue Administrator's Guide*

**Name** imqobjmgr – manage Message Queue administered objects

**Synopsis** /usr/bin/imqobjmgr *subcommand* [[*option*]|P0]

/usr/bin/imqobjmgr -i *fileName*

/usr/bin/imqobjmgr -h | [-H] | -help | -Help

/usr/bin/imqobjmgr -v

**Description** imqobjmgr manages Message Queue administered objects in an object store accessible using JNDI. Administered objects allow JMS clients to be provider-independent by insulating them from provider-specific naming and configuration formats.

imqobjmgr supports five management subcommands. These *subcommands*, and their corresponding *options* follow the imqobjmgr command on the command line. See USAGE and OPTIONS.

The following subcommands are supported:

|        |                                                |
|--------|------------------------------------------------|
| add    | Add a new administered object                  |
| delete | Delete an administered object                  |
| list   | Display a list of administered objects         |
| query  | Display information about administered objects |
| update | Update administered objects                    |

You can use the -i option to specify the name of an input file that uses java property file syntax to represent all or part of any imqobjmgr subcommand clause. The -f, -s, and -pre options can be used with any imqobjmgr subcommand.

**Options** The following options are supported:

|                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -f                        | Perform action without user confirmation.                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| -h   -help                | Display usage help. Execute nothing else on the command line.                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| -H   -Help                | Display usage help, attribute list, and examples. Execute nothing else on the command line.                                                                                                                                                                        |
| -i <i>fileName</i>        | Specify the name of an input file containing all or part of the subcommand clause, specifying object type, lookup name, object attributes, object store attributes, or other options. Use this option for repetitive information, such as object store attributes. |
| -j <i>attribute=value</i> | Specify attributes necessary to identify and access a JNDI object store.                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| -j <i>javahome</i>        | Specify an alternate Java 2 compatible runtime to use. imqobjmgr uses the runtime bundled with the operating system by default.                                                                                                                                    |

|                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -l <i>lookupName</i>      | Specify the JNDI lookup name of an administered object. This name must be unique in the object store's context.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| -o <i>attribute=value</i> | Specify the attributes of an administered object.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| -pre                      | Run command in preview mode. Preview mode indicates what will be done without performing the command.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| -r <i>read-only_state</i> | Specify if an administered object is a read-only object. A value of true indicates the administered object is a read-only object. JMS clients cannot modify the attributes of read-only administered objects. The read-only state is set to false by default.                                                                                                                                            |
| -s                        | Silent mode. No output is displayed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| -t <i>type</i>            | Specify the type of an administered object:<br>q = queue<br>t = topic<br>cf = ConnectionFactory<br>qf = queueConnectionFactory<br>tf = topicConnectionFactory<br>xcf = XA ConnectionFactory (distributed transactions)<br>xqf = XA queueConnectionFactory (distributed transactions)<br>xtf = XA topicConnectionFactory (distributed transactions)<br>e = SOAP endpoint (used to support SOAP messaging) |
| -v                        | Display version information. Execute nothing else on the command line.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

**Usage** This section provides information on subcommands, options, and attribute value pairs.

**Subcommands and Options**

The following subcommands and corresponding options are supported:

**add** -t *type* -l *lookupName* [-o *attribute=value*]... -j *attribute=value*...

Add a new administered object of the specified type, lookup name, and object attributes to an object store.

**delete** -t *type* -l *lookupName* -j *attribute=value*...

Delete an administered object, of the specified type and lookup name from an object store.

**list** [-t *type*] -j *attribute=value*...

Display a list of administered objects of a specified type, or all administered objects, in an object store.

**query** -l *lookupName* -j *attribute=value*...

Display information about an administered object of a specified lookup name in an object store.

`update -l lookupName [-o attribute=value]... -j attribute=value...`

Update the specified attribute values of an administered object of the specified lookup name in an object store.

**Attribute Value Pairs** The following attribute value pairs are supported for the specified administered object types:

Type = ConnectionFactories: ConnectionFactory, TopicConnectionFactory, QueueConnectionFactory, XAConnectionFactory, XATopicConnectionFactory, and XAQueueConnectionFactory

`imqAckOnAcknowledge`

Value: String (true, false, not specified)

Default: not specified

`imqAckOnProduce`

Value: String (true, false, not specified)

Default: not specified

`imqAckTimeout`

Value: String (time in milliseconds)

Default: 0 (no timeout)

`imqAddressList`

Value: String

Default: not specified

`imqAddressListBehavior`

Value: String

Default: Priority

`imqAddressListIterations`

Value: Integer

Default: 1

`imqBrokerHostName`

Used if `imqConnectionType` is TCP or TLS. This attribute type is only supported in Message Queue 3.0.

Value: String

Default: localhost

`imqBrokerHostPort`

Used if `imqConnectionType` is TCP or TLS. This attribute type is only supported in Message Queue 3.0.

Value: Integer

Default: 7676

imqBrokerServicePort

Used if imqConnectionType is TCP or TLS. This attribute type is only supported in Message Queue 3.0.

Value: Integer

Default: 0

imqConfiguredClientID

Value: String (ID number)

Default: no ID specified

imqConnectionFlowCount

Value: Integer

Default: 100

imqConnectionFlowLimit

Value: Integer

Default: 1000

imqConnectionFlowLimitEnabled

Value: Boolean

Default: false

imqConnectionType

This attribute type is only supported in Message Queue 3.0.

Value: String (TCP, TLS, HTTP).

Default: TCP

imqConnectionURL

Used if imqConnectionType is HTTP. This attribute type is only supported in Message Queue 3.0.

Value: String

Default: `http://localhost/imq/tunnel`

imqConsumerFlowLimit

Value: Integer

Default: 1000

imqConsumerFlowThreshold  
Value: Integer  
Default: 50

imqDefaultPassword  
Value: String  
Default: guest

imqDefaultUsername  
Value: String  
Default: guest

imqDisableSetClientID  
Value: Boolean  
Default: false

imqJMSDeliveryMode  
Value: Integer (1=non-persistent, 2=persistent)  
Default: 2

imqJMSExpiration  
Value: Long (time in milliseconds)  
Default: 0 (does not expire)

imqJMSPriority  
Value: Integer (0 to 9)  
Default: 4

imqLoadMaxToServerSession  
Value: Boolean  
Default: true

imqOverrideJMSDeliveryMode  
Value: Boolean  
Default: false

imqOverrideJMSExpiration  
Value: Boolean  
Default: false

imqOverrideJMSHeadersToTemporaryDestinations  
Value: Boolean  
Default: false

imqOverrideJMSPriority

Value: Boolean

Default: false

imqQueueBrowserMaxMessagesPerRetrieve

Value: Integer

Default: 1000

imqBrowserRetrieveTimeout

Value: Long (time in milliseconds)

Default: 60,000

imqReconnectAttempts

Value: Integer

Default: 0

imqReconnectEnabled

Value: Boolean

Default: false

imqReconnectInterval

Value: Long (time in milliseconds)

Default: 3000

imqSetJMSXAppID

Value: Boolean

Default: false

imqSetJMSXConsumerTXID

Value: Boolean

Default: false

imqSetJMSXProducerTXID

Value: Boolean

Default: false

imqSetJMSXRcvTimestamp

Value: Boolean

Default: false

imqSetJMSXUserID

Value: Boolean

Default: false



**imqSSLIsHostTrusted**

Used if `imqConnectionType` is TLS. This attribute type is only supported in Message Queue 3.0.

Value: Boolean

Default: `true`

Type = Destinations: Topic and Queue

`imqDestinationDescription` Value: String

Default: no description

`imqDestinationName` Value: String

Default: `Untitled_Destination_Object`

Type = Endpoint (SOAP Endpoint)

`imqEndpointDescription` Value: String

Default: A description for the endpoint object

`imqEndpointName` Value: String

Default: `Untitled_Endpoint_Object`

`imqSOAPEndpointList` Value: String (one or more space-separated URLs)

Default: no url

### Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Adding a Topic Administered Object to an Object Store

Where JNDI lookup name=`myTopic` and `imqDestinationName=MyTestTopic`, the following command adds to an LDAP server object store:

```
imqobjmgr add -t t -l "cn=myTopic"\
-o "imqDestinationName=MyTestTopic"\
-j "java.naming.factory.initial=com.sun.jndi.ldap.LdapCtxFactory"\
-j "java.naming.provider.url=ldap://mydomain.com:389/o=imq"
```

Where JNDI lookup name=`myTopic` and `imqDestinationName=MyTestTopic`, the following command adds to a file system object store:

```
imqobjmgr add -t -l "cn=myTopic"\
-o "imqDestinationName=MyTestTopic"\
-j \
 "java.naming.factory.initial=com.sun.jndi.fscontext.RefFSContextFactory"\
-j "java.naming.provider.url=file:/home/foo/imq_admin_objects"
```

**EXAMPLE 1** Adding a Topic Administered Object to an Object Store *(Continued)*

Where JNDI lookup name=`myTopic` and `imqDestinationName=MyTestTopic`, the following command adds to a file system object store, using an input file:

```
imqobjmgr -i inputfile
```

The associated input file consists of the following:

```
cmdtype=add
obj.type=t
obj.lookupName=cn=myTopic
obj.attrs.imqDestinationName=MyTestTopic
objstore.attrs.java.naming.factory.initial=com.sun.jndi.fscontext.\
 RefFSContextFactory
objstore.attrs.java.naming.provider.url=file:/home/foo/imq_admin_objects
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Adding a QueueConnectionFactory Administered Object to an Object Store

Where JNDI lookup name=`myQCF`, read-only state=`true`, `imqAddressList=mq://foohost:777/jms`, the following command adds to an LDAP server object store:

```
imqobjmgr add -t qf -l "cn=myQCF" -r true\
-o "imqAddressList=mq://foohost:777/jms"
-j "java.naming.factory.initial=com.sun.jndi.ldap.LdapCtxFactory"
-j "java.naming.provider.url=ldap://mydomain.com:389/o=imq"
```

Where JNDI lookup name=`myQCF`, read-only state=`true`, `imqAddressList=mq://foohost:777/jms`, the following command adds to an LDAP server object store using an input file:

```
imqobjmgr -i inputfile
```

The associated input file consists of the following:

```
cmdtype=add
obj.type=qf
obj.lookupName=cn=myQCF
obj.readOnly=true
obj.attrs.imqAddressList=mq://foohost:777/jms
objstore.attrs.java.naming.factory.initial=com.sun.jndi.\
 ldap.LdapCtxFactory
objstore.attrs.java.naming.provider.url=ldap://mydomain.com:389/o=imq
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Adding a QueueConnectionFactory Administered Object to an Object Store  
(Continued)

Where JNDI lookup name=myQCF, read-only state=true, imqAddressList=mq://foohost:777/jms, the following command adds to an LDAP server object store, using both an input file and command options:

```
imqobjmgr add -t qf -l "cn=myQCF"\
-o "imqAddressList=mq://foohost:777/jms"\
-i inputfile
```

The associated input file consists of the following:

```
objstore.attrs.java.naming.factory.initial=com.sun.jndi.ldap.LdapCtxFactory
objstore.attrs.java.naming.provider.url=ldap://mydomain.com:389/o=imq
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Deleting a Topic Administered Object from an Object Store

Where JNDI lookup name=myTopic and no confirmation is requested, the following command deletes from an LDAP server object store:

```
imqobjmgr delete -f -l "cn=myTopic"\
-j "java.naming.factory.initial=com.sun.jndi.ldap.LdapCtxFactory"\
-j "java.naming.provider.url=ldap://mydomain.com:389/o=imq"
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Querying Information About a Topic Administered Object

Where JNDI lookup name=myTopic, the following command queries from an LDAP server object store using simple authentication scheme:

```
imqobjmgr query -l "cn=myTopic"\
-j "java.naming.factory.initial=com.sun.jndi.ldap.LdapCtxFactory"\
-j "java.naming.provider.url=ldap://mydomain.com:389/o=imq"\
-j "java.naming.security.authentication=simple"\
-j "java.naming.security.principal=uid=foo,ou=imqobjmgr,o=imq"\
-j "java.naming.security.credentials=foo"
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWiqu         |

**See Also** [imqadmin\(1M\)](#), [imqcmd\(1M\)](#), [imqbrokerd\(1M\)](#), [imqkeytool\(1M\)](#), [imqusermgr\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

*Sun Java System Message Queue Administrator's Guide*

**Name** imqusermgr – command utility for managing a Message Queue user repository

**Synopsis** /usr/bin/imqusermgr *subcommand* [*option*] [PO]

/usr/bin/imqusermgr -h

/usr/bin/imqusermgr -v

**Description** The imqusermgr utility manages a file-based user repository to authenticate and authorize users of a Message Queue message server.

imqusermgr provides subcommands for adding, deleting, updating, and listing user entries in the repository.

imqusermgr supports four management subcommands. These *subcommands*, and their corresponding *options* follow the imqusermgr command on the command line. See USAGE and OPTIONS.

The following subcommands are supported:

add        Add a new user and associated password to the repository.

delete     Delete a user from the repository.

list        Display information users in the repository.

update     Update the password or state of a user in the repository.

**Options** The following options are supported:

-a *active\_state*    Specify if user's state is active or inactive. An inactive user cannot create connections to the Message Queue message server.

Valid values for *active\_state* are `true` or `false`. Specify `true` for active or `false` for inactive. the default is `true`.

Use this option with the `update` subcommand.

-f                    Perform action without user confirmation.

Use this option with the `delete` and `update` subcommands.

-g *group*            Specify the group of the user.

Valid values for *group* are `admin`, `user`, and `anonymous`.

Use this option with the `add` subcommand.

-h                    Display usage help. Execute nothing else on the command line.

-i *brokerName*      Specify the broker instance user repository to which the command applied. If you do not specify *brokerName*, the default *brokerName* is assumed.

- Use this option with the add, delete, list, and update subcommands.
- p** *password* Specify user password.
- Use this option with the add and update subcommands.
- s** Silent mode. Display no output
- Use this option with the add, delete, and update subcommands.
- u** *userName* Specify user name.
- userName* cannot contain the following characters: asterisk (\*), colon (:), NEWLINE, or RETURN.
- Use this option with the add, delete, update and list subcommands.
- v** Display version information. Execute nothing else on the command line.

**Usage** The following subcommands and corresponding options are supported:

**add** -u *userName* -p *password* [-g *group*] [-s] [-i *brokerName*]

Add a new user and associated password to the repository, and optionally specify the user's group.

**delete** -u *userName* [-s] [-f] [-i *brokerName*]

Delete a user from the repository.

**list** [-u *user\_name*] [-i *brokerName*]

Display information about the specified user in the repository. If no user is specified, all users are displayed.

**update** -u *userName* -p *password* [-a *state*] [-s] [-f] [-i *brokerName*]

**update** -u *userName* -a *state* [-p *password*] [-s] [-f] [-i *brokerName*]

Update the password or state (or both) of a user.

**Environment Variables** The following environment variables affect the execution of this command:

**IMQ\_JAVAHOME** Specify the Java 2 compatible runtime. When this environment variable is not set, it defaults to `/usr/j2se`.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

**Files** `/etc/imq/passwd` Flat-file user repository.

---

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWiqu         |

**See Also** [imqadmin\(1M\)](#), [imqbrokerd\(1M\)](#), [imqcmd\(1M\)](#), [imqdbmgr\(1M\)](#), [imqkeytool\(1M\)](#), [imqobjmgr\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

*Sun Java System Message Queue Administrator's Guide*

**Name** in.chargend – UDP or TCP character generator service daemon

**Synopsis** in.chargend

FMRI `svc:/internet/chargen:default`

**Description** FMRI stands for Fault Management Resource Identifier. It is used to identify resources managed by the Fault Manager. See [fmd\(1M\)](#) and [smf\(5\)](#).

The `in.chargend` service provides the server-side of the character-generator protocol. This protocol is used for debugging and bandwidth measurement and is available on both TCP and UDP transports, through port 19.

The `in.chargend` service is an [inetd\(1M\)](#) [smf\(5\)](#) delegated service. The `in.chargend` detects which transport is requested by examining the socket it is passed by the `inetd` daemon.

**TCP-based service** Once a connection is established, the `in.chargend` generates a stream of data. Any data received is discarded. The server generates data until the client program terminates the connection. Note that the data flow is limited by TCP flow control mechanisms.

**UDP-based service** The `in.chargend` listens for UDP datagrams. When a datagram is received, the server generates a UDP datagram in response containing a random number of ASCII characters (ranging from 0 to 512 characters). Any received data is ignored.

The `in.chargend` data consists of a pattern of 72 character lines containing the printable, 7-bit ASCII characters. Each line is terminated with a carriage return and a line feed character.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWcnsu        |
| Interface Stability | Evolving        |

**See Also** [inetd\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

RFC 864



**Name** in.comsat, comsat – biff server

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/in.comsat

**Description** comsat is the server process which listens for reports of incoming mail and notifies users who have requested to be told when mail arrives. It is invoked as needed by [inetd\(1M\)](#), and times out if inactive for a few minutes.

comsat listens on a datagram port associated with the `biff` service specification (see [services\(4\)](#)) for one line messages of the form

*user@mailbox-offset*

If the *user* specified is logged in to the system and the associated terminal has the owner execute bit turned on (by a `biff y`), the *offset* is used as a seek offset into the appropriate mailbox file, and the first 7 lines or 560 characters of the message are printed on the user's terminal. Lines which appear to be part of the message header other than the From, To, Date, or Subject lines are not printed when displaying the message.

**Files** /var/adm/utmpx user access and administration information

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWrcmds       |

**See Also** [svcs\(1\)](#), [inetadm\(1M\)](#), [inetd\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [services\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

**Notes** The message header filtering is prone to error.

The `in.comsat` service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/comsat:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). Responsibility for initiating and restarting this service is delegated to [inetd\(1M\)](#). Use [inetadm\(1M\)](#) to make configuration changes and to view configuration information for this service. The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

**Name** in.daytimed – UDP or TCP daytime protocol service daemon

**Synopsis** in.daytimed

FMRI `svc:/internet/daytime:default`

**Description** FMRI stands for Fault Management Resource Identifier. It is used to identify resources managed by the Fault Manager. See [fmd\(1M\)](#) and [smf\(5\)](#).

The `in.daytimed` service provides the server-side of the daytime protocol. This protocol is used for debugging and bandwidth measurement and is available on both TCP and UDP transports, through port 13.

The `in.daytimed` service is an [inetd\(1M\)](#) [smf\(5\)](#) delegated service. The `in.daytimed` detects which transport is requested by examining the socket it is passed by the `inetd` daemon.

**TCP-based service** Once a connection is established, the `in.daytimed` generates the current date and time in [ctime\(3C\)](#) format as 7-bit ASCII and sends it through the connection. The server then closes the connection. Any data received from the client side of the connection is discarded.

**UDP-based service** The `in.daytimed` listens for UDP datagrams. When a datagram is received, the server generates the current date and time in [ctime\(3C\)](#) format as 7-bit ASCII and inserts it in a UDP datagram sent in response to the client's request. Any received data is ignored.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWcnsu        |
| Interface Stability | Evolving        |

**See Also** [inetd\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

RFC 867

**Name** in.dhcpd – Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol server

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/inet/in.dhcpd [-denv] [-h *relay\_hops*] [-i *interface*, ...]  
 [-l *syslog\_local\_facility*] [-b automatic | manual]  
 [-o *DHCP\_offer\_time*] [-t *dhcptab\_rescan\_interval*]  
 /usr/lib/inet/in.dhcpd [-dv] [-h *relay\_hops*] [-i *interface*, ...]  
 [-l *syslog\_local\_facility*] -r *IP\_address* | *hostname*, ...

**Description** in.dhcpd is a daemon that responds to Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) requests and optionally to BOOTP protocol requests. The daemon forks a copy of itself that runs as a background process. It must be run as root. The daemon has two run modes, DHCP server (with optional BOOTP compatibility mode) and BOOTP relay agent mode.

The first line in the SYNOPSIS section illustrates the options available in the DHCP/BOOTP server mode. The second line in the SYNOPSIS section illustrates the options available when the daemon is run in BOOTP relay agent mode.

The DHCP and BOOTP protocols are used to provide configuration parameters to Internet hosts. Client machines are allocated their IP addresses as well as other host configuration parameters through this mechanism.

The DHCP/BOOTP daemon manages two types of DHCP data tables: the `dhcptab` configuration table and the DHCP network tables.

See [dhcptab\(4\)](#) regarding the `dhcptab` configuration table and [dhcp\\_network\(4\)](#) regarding the DHCP network tables.

The `dhcptab` contains macro definitions defined using a `termcap`-like syntax which permits network administrators to define groups of DHCP configuration parameters to be returned to clients. However, a DHCP/BOOTP server always returns hostname, network broadcast address, network subnet mask, and IP maximum transfer unit (MTU) if requested by a client attached to the same network as the server machine. If those options have not been explicitly configured in the `dhcptab`, `in.dhcpd` returns reasonable default values.

The `dhcptab` is read at startup, upon receipt of a SIGHUP signal, or periodically as specified by the `-t` option. A SIGHUP (sent using the command `svcadm refresh network/dhcp-server`) causes the DHCP/BOOTP daemon to reread the `dhcptab` within an interval from 0-60 seconds (depending on where the DHCP daemon is in its polling cycle). For busy servers, users should run `svcadm restart network/dhcp-server` to force the `dhcptab` to be reread.

The DHCP network tables contain mappings of client identifiers to IP addresses. These tables are named after the network they support and the datastore used to maintain them.

The DHCP network tables are consulted during runtime. A client request received from a network for which no DHCP network table exists is ignored.

This command may change in future releases of Solaris software. Scripts, programs, or procedures that use this command might need modification when upgrading to future Solaris software releases. The command line options provided with the `in.dhcpd` daemon are used

only for the current session, and include only some of the server options you can set. The [dhcpsvc.conf\(4\)](#) contains all the server default settings, and can be modified by using the `dhcpcmgr` utility. See [dhcpsvc.conf\(4\)](#) for more details.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- `-b automatic | manual` This option enables BOOTP compatibility mode, allowing the DHCP server to respond to BOOTP clients. The option argument specifies whether the DHCP server should automatically allocate permanent lease IP addresses to requesting BOOTP clients if the clients are not registered in the DHCP network tables (`automatic`) or respond only to BOOTP clients who have been manually registered in the DHCP network tables (`manual`). This option only affects DHCP server mode.
- `-d` Debugging mode. The daemon remains as a foreground process, and displays verbose messages as it processes DHCP and/or BOOTP datagrams. Messages are displayed on the current TTY. This option can be used in both DHCP/BOOTP server mode and BOOTP relay agent mode.
- `-h relay_hops` Specifies the maximum number of relay agent hops that can occur before the daemon drops the DHCP/BOOTP datagram. The default number of relay agent hops is 4. This option affects both DHCP/BOOTP server mode and BOOTP relay agent mode.
- `-i interface, ...` Selects the network interfaces that the daemon should monitor for DHCP/BOOTP datagrams. The daemon ignores DHCP/BOOTP datagrams on network interfaces not specified in this list. This option is only useful on machines that have multiple network interfaces. If this option is not specified, then the daemon listens for DHCP/BOOTP datagrams on all network interfaces. The option argument consists of a comma-separated list of interface names. It affects both DHCP/BOOTP server and BOOTP relay agent run modes.
- `-l syslog_local_facility` The presence of this option turns on transaction logging for the DHCP server or BOOTP relay agent. The value specifies the `syslog` local facility (an integer from 0 to 7 inclusive) the DHCP daemon should use for tagging the transactions. Using a facility separate from the `LOG_DAEMON` facility allows the network administrator to capture these transactions separately from other DHCP daemon events for such

purposes as generating transaction reports. See [syslog\(3C\)](#), for details about local facilities. Transactions are logged using a record with 9 space-separated fields as follows:

1. Protocol:

Relay mode: "BOOTP"  
 Server mode: "BOOTP" or "DHCP" based upon client type.

2. Type:

Relay mode: "RELAY-CLNT", "RELAY-SRVR"  
 Server mode: "ASSIGN", "EXTEND", "RELEASE",  
 "DECLINE", "INFORM", "NAK" "ICMP-ECHO."

3. Transaction time: absolute time in seconds (unix time)

4. Lease time:

Relay mode: Always 0.  
 Server mode: 0 for ICMP-ECHO events, absolute time in seconds (unix time) otherwise

5. Source IP address: Dotted Internet form

Relay mode: Relay interface IP on RELAY-CLNT, INADDR\_ANY on RELAY-SRVR.  
 Server mode: Client IP.

6. Destination IP address: Dotted Internet form

Relay mode: Client IP on RELAY-CLNT, Server IP on RELAY-SRVR.  
 Server mode: Server IP.

7. Client Identifier: Hex representation (0-9, A-F)

Relay mode: MAC address  
 Server mode: BOOTP - MAC address; DHCP - client id

8. Vendor Class identifier (white space converted to periods (.)).

Relay mode: Always "N/A"  
 Server mode: Vendor class ID tokenized by converting white space characters to periods (.)

9. MAC address: Hex representation (0-9, A-F)

Relay mode: MAC address

Server mode: MAC address

The format of this record is subject to change between releases.

Transactions are logged to the console if daemon is in debug mode (-d).

Logging transactions impact daemon performance.

It is suggested that you periodically rotate the DHCP transaction log file to keep it from growing until it fills the filesystem. This can be done in a fashion similar to that used for the general system message log `/var/adm/messages` and is best accomplished using the facilities provided by [logadm\(1M\)](#).

-n Disable automatic duplicate IP address detection. When this option is specified, the DHCP server does not attempt to verify that an IP address it is about to offer a client is not in use. By default, the DHCP server pings an IP address before offering it to a DHCP/BOOTP client, to verify that the address is not in use by another machine.

-o *DHCP\_offer\_time* Specifies the number of seconds the DHCP server should cache the offers it has extended to discovering DHCP clients. The default setting is 10 seconds. On slow network media, this value can be increased to compensate for slow network performance. This option affects only DHCP server mode.

-r *IP\_address | hostname, . . .* This option enables BOOTP relay agent mode. The option argument specifies a comma-separated list of IP addresses or hostnames of DHCP or BOOTP servers to which the relay agent is to forward BOOTP requests. When the daemon is started in this mode, any DHCP tables are ignored, and the daemon simply acts as a BOOTP relay agent.

A BOOTP relay agent listens to UDP port 68, and forwards BOOTP request packets received on this port to the destinations specified on the command line. It supports the BROADCAST flag described in RFC 1542. A BOOTP relay

agent can run on any machine that has knowledge of local routers, and thus does not have to be an Internet gateway machine.

Note that the proper entries must be made to the `netmasks` database so that the DHCP server being served by the BOOTP relay agents can identify the subnet mask of the foreign BOOTP/DHCP client's network. See [netmasks\(4\)](#) for the format and use of this database.

|                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>-t <i>dhcptab_rescan_interval</i></code> | Specifies the interval in minutes that the DHCP server should use to schedule the automatic rereading of the <code>dhcptab</code> information. Typically, you would use this option if the changes to the <code>dhcptab</code> are relatively frequent. Once the contents of the <code>dhcptab</code> have stabilized, you can turn off this option to avoid needless reinitialization of the server.       |
| <code>-v</code>                                | Verbose mode. The daemon displays more messages than in the default mode. Note that verbose mode can reduce daemon efficiency due to the time taken to display messages. Messages are displayed to the current TTY if the debugging option is used; otherwise, messages are logged to the <code>syslogd</code> facility. This option can be used in both DHCP/BOOTP server mode and BOOTP relay agent mode. |

### Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Starting a DHCP Server in BOOTP Compatibility Mode

The following command starts a DHCP server in BOOTP compatibility mode, permitting the server to automatically allocate permanent IP addresses to BOOTP clients which are not registered in the server's table; limits the server's attention to incoming datagrams on network devices `le2` and `tr0`; drops BOOTP packets whose hop count exceeds 2; configures the DHCP server to cache extended DHCP offers for 15 seconds; and schedules `dhcptab` rescans to occur every 10 minutes:

```
in.dhcpd -i le2,tr0 -h 2 -o 15 -t 10 -b automatic
```

### **EXAMPLE 2** Starting the Daemon in BOOTP Relay Agent Mode

The following command starts the daemon in BOOTP relay agent mode, registering the hosts `bladerunner` and `10.0.0.5` as relay destinations, with debugging and verbose modes enabled, and drops BOOTP packets whose hop count exceeds 5:

```
in.dhcpd -d -v -h 5 -r bladerunner,10.0.0.5
```

**Files** /etc/inet/dhcpsvc.conf  
 /etc/init/hosts  
 /usr/lib/inet/dhcp/nsu/rfc2136.so.1

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWdhcsu       |
| Interface Stability | Evolving        |

**See Also** [svcs\(1\)](#), [cron\(1M\)](#), [dhcpgmr\(1M\)](#), [dhtadm\(1M\)](#), [inetadm\(1M\)](#), [inetd\(1M\)](#), [logadm\(1M\)](#), [pntadm\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [syslogd\(1M\)](#), [syslog\(3C\)](#), [dhcpsvc.conf\(4\)](#), [dhcp\\_network\(4\)](#), [dhcptab\(4\)](#), [ethers\(4\)](#), [hosts\(4\)](#), [netmasks\(4\)](#), [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [dhcp\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

*System Administration Guide: IP Services*

Alexander, S., and R. Droms, *DHCP Options and BOOTP Vendor Extensions*, RFC 2132, Silicon Graphics, Inc., Bucknell University, March 1997.

Droms, R., *Interoperation Between DHCP and BOOTP*, RFC 1534, Bucknell University, October 1993.

Droms, R., *Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol*, RFC 2131, Bucknell University, March 1997.

Wimer, W., *Clarifications and Extensions for the Bootstrap Protocol*, RFC 1542, Carnegie Mellon University, October 1993.

**Notes** The in.dhcpd service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/dhcp-server
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). Responsibility for initiating and restarting this service is delegated to [inetd\(1M\)](#). Use [inetadm\(1M\)](#) to make configuration changes and to view configuration information for this service. The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.



**Name** in.discardd – UDP or TCP discard protocol service

**Synopsis** in.discardd

FMRI `svc:/internet/discard:default`

**Description** FMRI stands for Fault Management Resource Identifier. It is used to identify resources managed by the Fault Manager. See [fmd\(1M\)](#) and [smf\(5\)](#).

The `in.discardd` service provides the server-side of the discard protocol. This protocol is used for debugging and bandwidth measurement and is available on both TCP and UDP transports through port 9.

The `in.discardd` service is an [inetd\(1M\)](#) [smf\(5\)](#) delegated service. The `in.discardd` detects which transport is requested by examining the socket it is passed by the `inetd` daemon.

The discard service simply throws away any data it receives from the client.

**TCP-based service** Once a connection is established, the `in.discardd` discards any data received. No response is generated. The connection remains open until the client terminates it.

**UDP-based service** The `in.discardd` listens for UDP datagrams. When a datagram is received, the server discards it. No response is sent.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWcnsu        |
| Interface Stability | Evolving        |

**See Also** [inetd\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

RFC 863

**Name** in.echod – UDP or TCP echo protocol service daemon

**Synopsis** in.echod

FMRI `svc:/internet/echo:default`

**Description** FMRI stands for Fault Management Resource Identifier. It is used to identify resources managed by the Fault Manager. See [fmd\(1M\)](#) and [smf\(5\)](#).

The `in.echod` service provides the server-side of the echo protocol. This protocol is used for debugging and bandwidth measurement and is available on both TCP and UDP transports, through port 7.

The `in.echod` service is an [inetd\(1M\)](#) [smf\(5\)](#) delegated service. The `in.echod` detects which transport is requested by examining the socket it is passed by the `inetd` daemon.

**TCP-based service** Once a connection is established, the `in.echod` echoes any data received from the client back to the client. The server echoes data until the client program terminates the connection.

**UDP-based service** The `in.echod` listens for UDP datagrams. When a datagram is received, the server creates a UDP datagram containing the data it received and sends it to the client.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNW            |
| Interface Stability | Evolving        |

**See Also** [inetd\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

RFC 862

**Name** inetadm – observe or configure inetd-controlled services

**Synopsis** inetadm

```
inetadm -?
inetadm -p
inetadm -l {FMRI | pattern}
inetadm -e {FMRI | pattern}
inetadm -d {FMRI | pattern}
inetadm -m {FMRI | pattern}... {name=value}...
inetadm -M {name=value}...
```

**Description** The `inetadm` utility provides the following capabilities for `inetd`-managed SMF services:

- Provides a list of all such services installed.
- Lists the services' properties and values.
- Allows enabling and disabling of services.
- Allows modification of the services' property values, as well as the default values provided by `inetd`.

See [smf\(5\)](#) for a description of an SMF service.

With no arguments, `inetadm` lists all services under [inetd\(1M\)](#) control, including such attributes as their current run state and whether or not they are enabled.

**Options** For options taking one or more FMRI operands (see [smf\(5\)](#) for a description of an FMRI), if the operand specifies a service (instead of a service instance), and that service has only a single instance, `inetadm` operates on that instance.

If a service name is supplied and it contains more than one instances or a pattern is supplied and it matches more than one instance, a warning message is displayed and that operand is ignored.

For those options taking *name=value* parameters, a description of each of the possible names and the allowed values is found in the [inetd\(1M\)](#) man page.

The following options are supported:

|    |                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -? | Display a usage message.                                                                                                                                                                           |
| -p | Lists all default <code>inet</code> service property values provided by <code>inetd</code> in the form of <i>name=value</i> pairs. If the value is of boolean type, it is listed as TRUE or FALSE. |

|                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>-l {FMRI   pattern}...</code>                | List all properties for the specified service instances as <i>name=value</i> pairs. In addition, if the property value is inherited from the default value provided by <code>inetd</code> , the <i>name=value</i> pair is identified by the token (default). Property inheritance occurs when properties do not have a specified service instance default. |
| <code>-e {FMRI   pattern}...</code>                | Enable the specified service instances.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <code>-d {FMRI   pattern}...</code>                | Disable the specified service instances.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <code>-m {FMRI   pattern}...{name=value}...</code> | Change the values of the specified properties of the identified service instances. Properties are specified as whitespace-separated <i>name=value</i> pairs. To remove an instance-specific value and accept the default value for a property, simply specify the property without a value, for example, <code>name=</code> .                              |
| <code>-M {name=value}...</code>                    | Change the values of the specified <code>inetd</code> default properties. Properties are specified as whitespace-separated <i>name=value</i> pairs.                                                                                                                                                                                                        |

### Examples EXAMPLE 1 Displaying Properties for a Service

The following command displays the properties for the `spray` service.

```
inetadm -l network/rpc/spray:default
SCOPE NAME=VALUE
 name="sprayd"
 endpoint_type="tli"
 proto="datagram_v"
 isrpc=TRUE
 rpc_low_version=1
 rpc_high_version=1
 wait=TRUE
 exec="/usr/lib/netsvc/spray/rpc.sprayd"
 user="root"
default bind_addr=""
default bind_fail_max=-1
default bind_fail_interval=-1
default max_con_rate=-1
default max_copies=-1
default con_rate_offline=-1
default failrate_cnt=40
default failrate_interval=60
default inherit_env=TRUE
default tcp_trace=FALSE
```

**EXAMPLE 1** Displaying Properties for a Service *(Continued)*

```
default tcp_wrappers=FALSE
default connection_backlog=10
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Displaying Default Properties

The following command displays default properties.

```
inetadm -p
NAME=VALUE
bind_addr=""
bind_fail_max=-1
bind_fail_interval=-1
max_con_rate=-1
max_copies=-1
con_rate_offline=-1
failrate_cnt=40
failrate_interval=60
inherit_env=TRUE
tcp_trace=FALSE
tcp_wrappers=FALSE
default connection_backlog=10
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Changing Property Values for a Service

The following command changes `rpc_high_version` to 3 and `tcp_trace` to TRUE for the `spray` service.

```
inetadm -m network/rpc/spray:default \
 rpc_high_version=3 tcp_trace=TRUE
inetadm -l network/rpc/spray:default
SCOPE NAME=VALUE
 name="sprayd"
 endpoint_type="tli"
 proto="datagram_v"
 isrpc=TRUE
 rpc_low_version=1
 rpc_high_version=3
 wait=TRUE
 exec="/usr/lib/netsvc/spray/rpc.sprayd"
 user="root"
default bind_addr=""
default bind_fail_max=-1
default bind_fail_interval=-1
default max_con_rate=-1
default max_copies=-1
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Changing Property Values for a Service *(Continued)*

```
default con_rate_offline=-1
default failrate_cnt=40
default failrate_interval=60
default inherit_env=TRUE
 tcp_trace=TRUE
default tcp_wrappers=FALSE
default connection_backlog=10
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Operation completed successfully.
- 1 A fatal error occurred. An accompanying error message will provide further information.
- 2 Invalid arguments were supplied, such as an ambiguous service FMRI or pattern.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWcsu         |
| Interface Stability | Evolving        |

**See Also** [inetd\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

**Name** inetconv – convert `inetd.conf` entries into smf service manifests, import them into smf repository

**Synopsis** inetconv -?

```
inetconv [-f] [-n] [-i srcfile] [-o destdir]
```

```
inetconv -e [-n] [-i srcfile]
```

**Description** The `inetconv` utility converts a file containing records of `inetd.conf(4)` into `smf(5)` service manifests, and then import those manifests into the smf repository. Once the `inetd.conf` file has been converted, the only way to change aspects of an inet service is to use the `inetadm(1M)` utility.

There is a one-to-one correspondence between a service line in the input file and the manifest generated. By default, the manifests are named using the following template:

```
<svcname>-<proto>.xml
```

The `<svcname>` token is replaced by the service's name and the `<proto>` token by the service's protocol. Any slash (/) characters that exist in the source line for the service name or protocol are replaced with underscores (\_).

The service line is recorded as a property of the converted service.

During the conversion process, if a service line is found to be malformed or to be for an internal `inetd` service, no manifest is generated and that service line is skipped.

The input file is left untouched by the conversion process.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- ? Display a usage message.
- e Enable smf services which are listed in the input file.
- f If a service manifest of the same name as the one to be generated is found in the destination directory, `inetconv` will overwrite that manifest if this option is specified. Otherwise, an error message is generated and the conversion of that service is not performed.
- i *srcfile* Permits the specification of an alternate input file *srcfile*. If this option is not specified, then the `inetd.conf(4)` file is used as input.
- n Turns off the auto-import of the manifests generated during the conversion process. Later, if you want to import a generated manifest into the `smf(5)` repository, you can do so through the use of the `svccfg(1M)` utility.

If the `-e` option is specified, the `-n` option only displays the smf services that would be enabled.

- o Permits the specification of an alternate destination directory *destdir* for the generated manifests. If this option is not specified, then the manifests are placed in `/var/svc/manifest/network/rpc`, if the service is a RPC service, or `/var/svc/manifest/network` otherwise.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Generating smf Manifests from `inetd.conf`

The following command generates `smf(5)` manifests from `inetd.conf(4)` and places them in `/var/tmp`, overwriting any preexisting manifests of the same name, and then imports them into the smf repository.

```
inetconv -f -o /var/tmp
100232/10 -> /var/tmp/100232_10-rpc_udp.xml
Importing 100232_10-rpc_udp.xml ...Done
telnet -> /var/tmp/telnet-tcp6.xml
Importing telnet-tcp6.xml ...Done
```

EXAMPLE 2 Generating Manifests from an Alternate Input File

The following command specifies a different input file and does not load the resulting manifests into the smf repository.

```
inetconv -n -i /export/test/inet.svcs -o /var/tmp
100232/10 -> /var/tmp/100232_10-rpc_udp.xml
telnet -> /var/tmp/telnet-tcp6.xml
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Operation completed successfully (no errors).
- 1 Invalid options specified.
- 2 One or more service lines are malformed, and thus no manifest(s) were generated for them.
- 3 An error occurred importing one or more of the generated manifests.
- 4 A system error occurred.

**Files** `/var/svc/manifest/network/{rpc}/<svcname>-<proto>.xml`  
default output manifest file name

**Attributes** See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWcsu         |
| Interface Stability | Evolving        |



**See Also** [inetadm\(1M\)](#), [inetd\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [inetd.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

**Name** inetd – Solaris Management Facility delegated restarter for inet services

**Synopsis** inetd [*configuration-file*] start | stop | refresh  
svc:/network/inetd:default

**Description** inetd is the delegated restarter for internet services for the Service Management Facility (SMF). Its basic responsibilities are to manage service states in response to administrative requests, system failures, and service failures; and, when appropriate, to listen for network requests for services.

Services are no longer managed by editing the inetd configuration file, [inetd.conf\(4\)](#). Instead, you use [inetconv\(1M\)](#) to convert the configuration file content into SMF format services, then manage these services using [inetadm\(1M\)](#) and [svcadm\(1M\)](#). Once a service has been converted by [inetconv](#), any changes to the legacy data in the inetd config file will not become effective. However, inetd does alert the administrator when it notices change in the configuration file. See the start description under the “inetd Methods” section for further information.

Also note that the current inetd cannot be run from outside the SMF. This means it cannot be run from the command line, as was supported by the previous inetd. If you attempt to do this, a message is sent to stderr displaying mappings between the options supported by the previous inetd to the SMF version of inetd.

inetd listens for connections on behalf of all services that are in either the on`line` or degraded state. A service enters one of these states when the service is enabled by the user and inetd manages to listen on its behalf. A listen attempt can fail if another server (whether standalone or a third-party internet service) is already listening on the same port. When this occurs, inetd logs this condition and continues trying to bind to the port at configured intervals a configured number of times. See the property `bind_fail_max` under “Service Properties” below, for more details.

The configuration of all inetd's managed SMF services is read when it is started. It is reread when inetd is refreshed, which occurs in response to an SMF request, or when it receives a SIGHUP signal. See the `refresh` description under “inetd Methods” for the behavior on configuration refresh.

You can use the [inetadm\(1M\)](#) or [svccfg\(1M\)](#) utilities to make configuration changes to Internet services within the SMF repository. [inetadm](#) has the advantage over [svccfg](#) in that it provides an Internet/RPC service context.

**Service States** As part of its service management duties, inetd implements a state machine for each of its managed services. The states in this machine are made up of the [smf\(5\)](#) set of states. The semantics of these states are as follows:

`uninitialized`  
inetd has yet to process this service.

**online**

The service is handling new network requests and might have existing connections active.

**degraded**

The service has entered this state because it was able to listen and process requests for some, but not all, of the protocols specified for the service, having exhausted its listen retries. Existing network connections might be active.

**offline**

Connections might be active, but no new requests are being handled. This is a transient state. A service might be `offline` for any of the following reasons:

- The service's dependencies are unmet. When its dependencies become met the service's state will be re-evaluated.
- The service has exceeded its configured connection rate limit, `max_con_rate`. The service's state is re-evaluated when its connection offline timer, `con_rate_offline`, expires.
- The service has reached its allowed number of active connections, `max_copies`. The service's state is re-evaluated when the number of active connections drops below `max_copies`.
- `inetd` failed to listen on behalf of the service on all its protocols. As mentioned above, `inetd` retries up to a configured maximum number of times, at configured intervals. The service's state is re-evaluated when either a listen attempt is successful or the retry limit is reached.

**disabled**

The service has been turned off by an administrator, is not accepting new connections, and has none active. Administrator intervention is required to exit this state.

**maintenance**

A service is in this state because it is either malfunctioning and needs administrator attention or because an administrator has requested it.

Events constituting malfunctioning include: `inetd`'s inability to listen on behalf on any of the service's protocols before exceeding the service's bind retry limit, non-start methods returning with non-success return values, and the service exceeding its failure rate.

You request the maintenance state to perform maintenance on the service, such as applying a patch. No new requests are handled in this state, but existing connections might be active. Administrator intervention is required to exit this state.

Use `inetadm(1M)` to obtain the current state of a managed service.

**Service Methods** As part of certain state transitions `inetd` will execute, if supplied, one of a set of methods provided by the service. The set of supported methods are:

**inetd\_start**

Executed to handle a request for an `online` or `degraded` service. Since there is no separate state to distinguish a service with active connections, this method is not executed as part of a state transition.

**inetd\_offline**

Executed when a service is taken from the `online` or `degraded` state to the `offline` state. For a `wait`-type service that at the time of execution is performing its own listening, this method should result in it ceasing listening. This method will be executed before the `disable` method in the case an `online`/`degraded` service is disabled. This method is required to be implemented for a `wait`-type service.

**inetd\_online**

Executed when a service transitions from the `offline` state to the `online` state. This method allows a service author to carry out some preparation prior to a service starting to handle requests.

**inetd\_disable**

Executed when a service transitions from the `offline` state to the `disabled` state. It should result in any active connections for a service being terminated.

**inetd\_refresh**

Executed when both of the following conditions are met:

- `inetd` is refreshed, by means of the framework or a `SIGHUP`, or a request comes in to refresh the service, and
- the service is currently in the `online` state and there are no configuration changes that would result in the service needing to be taken `offline` and brought back again.

The only compulsory method is the `inetd_start` method. In the absence of any of the others, `inetd` runs no method but behaves as if one was run successfully.

**Service Properties** Configuration for SMF-managed services is stored in the SMF repository. The configuration is made up of the basic configuration of a service, the configuration for each of the service's methods, and the default configuration applicable to all `inetd`-managed services.

For details on viewing and modifying the configuration of a service and the defaults, refer to [inetadm\(1M\)](#).

The basic configuration of a service is stored in a property group named `inetd` in the service. The properties comprising the basic configuration are as follows:

**bind\_addr**

The address of the network interface to which the service should be bound. An empty string value causes the service to accept connections on any network interface.

**bind\_fail\_interval**

The time interval in seconds between a failed bind attempt and a retry. The values 0 and -1 specify that no retries are attempted and the first failure is handled the same as exceeding `bind_fail_max`.

**bind\_fail\_max**

The maximum number of times `inetd` retries binding to a service's associated port before giving up. The value -1 specifies that no retry limit is imposed. If none of the service's protocols were bound to before any imposed limit is reached, the service goes to the maintenance state; otherwise, if not all of the protocols were bound to, the service goes to the degraded state.

**con\_rate\_offline**

The time in seconds a service will remain offline if it exceeds its configured maximum connection rate, `max_con_rate`. The values 0 and -1 specify that connection rate limiting is disabled.

**connection\_backlog**

The backlog queue size. Represents a limit on the number of incoming client requests that can be queued at the listening endpoints for servers.

**endpoint\_type**

The type of the socket used by the service or the value `tl` to signify a TLI-based service. Valid socket type values are: `stream`, `dgram`, `raw`, `seqpacket`.

**failrate\_cnt**

The count portion of the service's failure rate limit. The failure rate limit applies to wait-type services and is reached when *count* instances of the service are started within a given time. Exceeding the rate results in the service being transitioned to the maintenance state. This is different from the behavior of the previous `inetd`, which continued to retry every 10 minutes, indefinitely. The `failrate_cnt` check accounts for badly behaving servers that fail before consuming the service request and which would otherwise be continually restarted, taxing system resources. Failure rate is equivalent to the `-r` option of the previous `inetd`. The values 0 and -1 specify that this feature is disabled.

**failrate\_interval**

The time portion in seconds of the service's failure rate. The values 0 and -1 specify that the failure rate limit feature is disabled.

**inherit\_env**

If true, pass `inetd`'s environment on to the service's start method. Regardless of this setting, `inetd` will set the variables `SMF_FMRI`, `SMF_METHOD`, and `SMF_RESTARTER` in the start method's environment, as well as any environment variables set in the method context. These variables are described in [`smf\_method\(5\)`](#).

**isrpc**

If true, this is an RPC service.

**max\_con\_rate**

The maximum allowed connection rate, in connections per second, for a `nowait`-type service. The values `0` and `-1` specify that that connection rate limiting is disabled.

**max\_copies**

The maximum number of copies of a `nowait` service that can run concurrently. The values `0` and `-1` specify that copies limiting is disabled.

**name**

Can be set to one of the following values:

- a service name understood by `getservbyname(3SOCKET)`;
- if `isrpc` is set to `true`, a service name understood by `getrpcbyname(3NSL)`;
- if `isrpc` is set to `true`, a valid RPC program number.

**proto**

In the case of socket-based services, this is a list of protocols supported by the service. Valid protocols are: `tcp`, `tcp6`, `tcp6only`, `udp`, `udp6`, and `udp6only`. In the case of TLI services, this is a list of netids recognized by `getnetconfignt(3NSL)` supported by the service, plus the values `tcp6only` and `udp6only`. RPC/TLI services also support nettypes in this list, and `inetd` first tries to interpret the list member as a nettype for these service types. The values `tcp6only` and `udp6only` are new to `inetd`; these values request that `inetd` listen only for and pass on true IPv6 requests (not IPv4 mapped ones). See “Configuring Protocols for Sockets-Based Services,” below.

**rpc\_low\_version**

Lowest supported RPC version. Required when `isrpc` is set to `true`.

**rpc\_high\_version**

Highest supported RPC version. Required when `isrpc` is set to `true`.

**tcp\_keepalive**

If `true`, enable the periodic transmission of messages on a connected socket. If the connected party fails to respond to these messages, the connection is considered broken. This applies only to services with `endpoint_type` set to `streams` and `wait` set to `false`.

**tcp\_trace**

If `true`, and this is a `nowait`-type service, `inetd` logs the client's IP address and TCP port number, along with the name of the service, for each incoming connection, using the `syslog(3C)` facility. `inetd` uses the `syslog` facility code `daemon` and `notice` priority level. See `syslog.conf(4)` for a description of `syslog` codes and severity levels. This logging is separate from the logging done by the TCP wrappers facility.

`tcp_trace` is equivalent to the previous `inetd`'s `-t` option (and the `/etc/default/inetd` property `ENABLE_CONNECTION_LOGGING`).

**tcp\_wrappers**

If `true`, enable TCP wrappers access control. This applies only to services with `endpoint_type` set to `streams` and `wait` set to `false`. The `syslog` facility code `daemon` is used to log allowed connections (using the `notice` severity level) and denied traffic (using

the warning severity level). See [syslog.conf\(4\)](#) for a description of `syslog` codes and severity levels. The stability level of the TCP wrappers facility and its configuration files is External. As the TCP wrappers facility is not controlled by Sun, intra-release incompatibilities are not uncommon. See [attributes\(5\)](#).

For more information about configuring TCP wrappers, you can refer to the `tcpcd(1M)` and `hosts_access(4)` man pages, which are delivered as part of the Solaris operating system at `/usr/sfw/man`. These pages are not part of the standard Solaris man pages, available at `/usr/man`.

`tcp_wrappers` is equivalent to the previous `inetd`'s `/etc/default/inetd` property `ENABLE_TCPWRAPPERS`.

#### wait

If `true` this is a `wait`-type service, otherwise it is a `nowait`-type service. A `wait`-type service has the following characteristics:

- Its `inetd_start` method will take over listening duties on the service's bound endpoint when it is executed.
- `inetd` will wait for it to exit after it is executed before it resumes listening duties.

Datagram servers must be configured as being of type `wait`, as they are always invoked with the original datagram endpoint that will participate in delivering the service bound to the specified service. They do not have separate “listening” and “accepting” sockets. Connection-oriented services, such as TCP stream services can be designed to be either of type `wait` or `nowait`.

A number of the basic properties are optional for a service. In their absence, their values are taken from the set of default values present in the `defaults` property group in the `inetd` service. These properties, with their seed values, are listed below. Note that these values are configurable through [inetadm\(1M\)](#).

```
bind_fail_interval -1
bind_fail_max -1
con_rate_offline -1
connection_backlog 10
failrate_count 40
failrate_time 60
inherit_env true
max_con_rate -1
max_copies -1
tcp_keepalive false
tcp_trace false
tcp_wrappers false
```

Each method specified for a service will have its configuration stored in the SMF repository, within a property group of the same name as the method. The set of properties allowable for

these methods includes those specified for the services managed by `svc.startd(1M)`. (See `svc.startd(1M)` for further details.) Additionally, for the `inetd_start` method, you can set the `arg0` property.

The `arg0` property allows external wrapper programs to be used with `inetd` services. Specifically, it allows the first argument, `argv[0]`, of the service's start method to be something other than the path of the server program.

In the case where you want to use an external wrapper program and pass arguments to the service's daemon, the arguments should be incorporated as arguments to the wrapper program in the `exec` property. For example:

```
exec='/path/to/wrapper/prog service_daemon_args'
arg0='/path/to/service/daemon'
```

In addition to the special method tokens mentioned in `smf_method(5)`, `inetd` also supports the `:kill_process` token for `wait`-type services. This results in behavior identical to that if the `:kill` token were supplied, except that the `kill` signal is sent only to the parent process of the `wait`-type service's start method, not to all members of its encompassing process contract (see `process(4)`).

#### Configuring Protocols for Sockets-Based Services

When configuring `inetd` for a sockets-based service, you have the choice, depending on what is supported by the service, of the alternatives described under the `proto` property, above. The following are guidelines for which `proto` values to use:

- For a service that supports only IPv4: `tcp` and `udp`
- For a service that supports only IPv6: `tcp6only` and `udp6only`
- For a service that supports both IPv4 and IPv6:
  - Obsolete and not recommended: `tcp6` and `udp6`
  - Recommended: use two separate entries that differ only in the `proto` field. One entry has `tcp` and the other has `tcp6only`, or `udp` plus `udp6only`.

See `EXAMPLES` for an example of a configuration of a service that supports both IPv4 and IPv6.

#### inetd Methods

`inetd` provides the methods listed below for consumption by the master restarter, `svc.startd(1M)`.

##### `start`

Causes `inetd` to start providing service. This results in `inetd` beginning to handle `smf` requests for its managed services and network requests for those services that are in either the `online` or `degraded` state.

In addition, `inetd` also checks if the `inetd.conf(4)`-format configuration file it is monitoring has changed since the last `inetconv(1M)` conversion was carried out. If it has, then a message telling the administrator to re-run `inetconv` to effect the changes made is logged in `syslog`.



**stop**

Causes `inetd` to stop providing service. At this point, `inetd` transitions each of its services that are not in either the maintenance or disabled states to the `offline` state, running any appropriate methods in the process.

**refresh**

Results in a refresh being performed for each of its managed services and the `inetd.conf(4)` format configuration file being checked for change, as in the `start` method. When a service is refreshed, its behavior depends on its current state:

- if it is in the maintenance or disabled states, no action is performed because the configuration will be read and consumed when the service leaves the state;
- if it is in the `offline` state, the configuration will be read and any changes consumed immediately;
- if it is in the `online` or `degraded` state and the configuration has changed such that a re-binding is necessary to conform to it, then the service will be transitioned to the `offline` state and back again, using the new configuration for the bind;
- if it is in the `online` state and a re-binding is not necessary, then the `inetd_refresh` method of the service, if provided, will be run to allow `online_wait`-type services to consume any other changes.

**Options** No options are supported.

**Operands** *configuration-file*

Specifies an alternate location for the legacy service file (`inetd.conf(4)`).

`start|stop|refresh`

Specifies which of `inetd`'s methods should be run.

**Examples** **EXAMPLE 1** Configuring a Service that Supports Both IPv4 and IPv6

The following commands illustrate the existence of services that support both IPv4 and IPv6 and assign `proto` properties to those services.

```
example# svcs -a | grep mysvc
online 15:48:29 svc:/network/mysvc:dgram4
online 15:48:29 svc:/network/mysvc:dgram6
online 15:51:47 svc:/network/mysvc:stream4
online 15:52:10 svc:/network/mysvc:stream6

inetadm -M network/rpc/mysvc:dgram4 proto=udp
inetadm -M network/rpc/mysvc:dgram6 proto=udp6only
inetadm -M network/rpc/mysvc:stream4 proto=tcp
inetadm -M network/rpc/mysvc:stream6 proto=tcp6only
```

See `svcs(1)` and `inetadm(1M)` for descriptions of those commands.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWcsu         |
| Interface Stability | Evolving        |

**See Also** [fmd\(1M\)](#), [inetadm\(1M\)](#), [inetconv\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [svc.startd\(1M\)](#), [syslog\(3C\)](#), [getnetconfigent\(3NSL\)](#), [getrpcbyname\(3NSL\)](#), [getservbyname\(3SOCKET\)](#), [inetd.conf\(4\)](#), [process\(4\)](#), [syslog.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [smf\\_method\(5\)](#)

**Notes** The `inetd` daemon performs the same function as, but is implemented significantly differently from, the daemon of the same name in Solaris 9 and prior Solaris operating system releases. In the current Solaris release, `inetd` is part of the Solaris Management Facility (see [smf\(5\)](#)) and will run only within that facility.

The `/etc/default/inetd` file has been deprecated. The functionality represented by the properties `ENABLE_CONNECTION_LOGGING` and `ENABLE_TCP_WRAPPERS` are now available as the `tcp_trace` and `tcp_wrappers` properties, respectively. These properties are described above, under “Service Properties”.

**Name** in.fingerd, fingerd – remote user information server

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/in.fingerd

**Description** fingerd implements the server side of the Name/Finger protocol, specified in *RFC 742*. The Name/Finger protocol provides a remote interface to programs which display information on system status and individual users. The protocol imposes little structure on the format of the exchange between client and server. The client provides a single command line to the finger server which returns a printable reply.

fingerd waits for connections on TCP port 79. Once connected, it reads a single command line terminated by RETURN-LINEFEED and passes the arguments to [finger\(1\)](#), prepended with -s. fingerd closes its connections as soon as the output is finished.

**Files**

|                  |                                  |
|------------------|----------------------------------|
| /var/adm/utmpx   | User and accounting information. |
| /etc/passwd      | System password file.            |
| /var/adm/lastlog | Last login times.                |
| \$HOME/.plan     | User's plans.                    |
| \$HOME/.project  | User's projects.                 |

**Usage** fingerd and in.fingerd are IPv6-enabled. See [ip6\(7P\)](#).

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWrcmds       |

**See Also** [finger\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [inetadm\(1M\)](#), [inetd\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [ip6\(7P\)](#)

Harrenstien, Ken, *RFC 742, NAME/FINGER*, Network Information Center, SRI International, Menlo Park, Calif., December 1977.

**Notes** Connecting directly to the server from a TIP or an equally narrow-minded TELNET-protocol user program can result in meaningless attempts at option negotiation being sent to the server, which foul up the command line interpretation. fingerd should be taught to filter out IAC's and perhaps even respond negatively (IAC does not) to all option commands received.

The in.fingerd service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/finger:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). Responsibility for initiating and restarting this service is

delegated to [inetd\(1M\)](#). Use [inetadm\(1M\)](#) to make configuration changes and to view configuration information for this service. The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

**Name** infocmp – compare or print out terminfo descriptions

**Synopsis** /usr/bin/infocmp [-d] [-c] [-n] [-I] [-L] [-C] [-r] [-u]  
 [-s | d | i | l | c] [-v] [-V] [-l] [-w *width*]  
 [-A *directory*] [-B *directory*] [*termname*]. . .

**Description** infocmp compares a binary terminfo entry with other terminfo entries, rewrites a terminfo description to take advantage of the use= terminfo field, or prints out a terminfo description from the binary file ( *term* ) in a variety of formats. It displays boolean fields first, then numeric fields, followed by the string fields. If no options are specified and zero, or one *termname* is specified, the -I option is assumed. If more than one *termname* is specified, the -d option is assumed.

**Options** The -d , -c , and -n options can be used for comparisons. infocmp compares the terminfo description of the first terminal *termname* with each of the descriptions given by the entries for the other terminal's *termname*. If a capability is defined for only one of the terminals, the value returned will depend on the type of the capability: F for boolean variables, -1 for integer variables, and NULL for string variables.

- d Produce a list of each capability that is different between two entries. This option is useful to show the difference between two entries, created by different people, for the same or similar terminals.
- c Produce a list of each capability that is common between two entries. Capabilities that are not set are ignored. This option can be used as a quick check to see if the -u option is worth using.
- n Produce a list of each capability that is in neither entry. If no *termname* is given, the environment variable TERM will be used for both of the *termnames*. This can be used as a quick check to see if anything was left out of a description.

The -I , -L , and -C options will produce a source listing for each terminal named.

- I Use the terminfo names.
- L Use the long C variable name listed in < *term.h* >.
- C Use the termcap names. The source produced by the -C option may be used directly as a termcap entry, but not all of the parameterized strings may be changed to the termcap format. infocmp will attempt to convert most of the parameterized information, but anything not converted will be plainly marked in the output and commented out. These should be edited by hand.
- r When using -C , put out all capabilities in termcap form.

If no *termname* is given, the environment variable TERM will be used for the terminal name.

All padding information for strings will be collected together and placed at the beginning of the string where termcap expects it. Mandatory padding (padding information with a trailing '/') will become optional.

All `termcap` variables no longer supported by `terminfo`, but are derivable from other `terminfo` variables, will be displayed. Not all `terminfo` capabilities will be translated; only those variables which were part of `termcap` will normally be displayed. Specifying the `-r` option will take off this restriction, allowing all capabilities to be displayed in `termcap` form.

Note that because padding is collected to the beginning of the capability, not all capabilities are displayed. Mandatory padding is not supported. Because `termcap` strings are not as flexible, it is not always possible to convert a `terminfo` string capability into an equivalent `termcap` format. A subsequent conversion of the `termcap` file back into `terminfo` format will not necessarily reproduce the original `terminfo` source.

Some common `terminfo` parameter sequences, their `termcap` equivalents, and some terminal types which commonly have such sequences, are:

| <code>terminfo</code>                         | <code>termcap</code>                     | Representative Terminals |
|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <code>%p1%c</code>                            | <code>%. adm</code>                      |                          |
| <code>%p1%d</code>                            | <code>%d hp, ANSI standard, vt100</code> |                          |
| <code>%p1%'x'%'%+%c</code>                    | <code>%+x concept</code>                 |                          |
| <code>%i</code>                               | <code>%i ANSI standard, vt100</code>     |                          |
| <code>%p1%'?'%'x'%'&gt;%t%p1%'y'%'%+%;</code> | <code>%&gt;xy concept</code>             |                          |
| <code>%p2 is printed before %p1</code>        | <code>%r hp</code>                       |                          |

- u Produce a `terminfo` source description of the first terminal *termname* which is relative to the sum of the descriptions given by the entries for the other terminals' *termnames*. It does this by analyzing the differences between the first *termname* and the other *termnames* and producing a description with `use=` fields for the other terminals. In this manner, it is possible to retrofit generic `terminfo` entries into a terminal's description. Or, if two similar terminals exist, but were coded at different times, or by different people so that each description is a full description, using `infocmp` will show what can be done to change one description to be relative to the other.

A capability is displayed with an at-sign (@) if it no longer exists in the first *termname*, but one of the other *termname* entries contains a value for it. A capability's value is displayed if the value in the first *termname* is not found in any of the other *termname* entries, or if the first of the other *termname* entries that has this capability gives a different value for that capability.

The order of the other *termname* entries is significant. Since the `terminfo` compiler `tic` does a left-to-right scan of the capabilities, specifying two `use=` entries that contain differing entries for the same capabilities will produce different results, depending on the order in which the entries are given. `infocmp` will flag any such inconsistencies between the other *termname* entries as they are found.

Alternatively, specifying a capability *after* a `use=` entry that contains, it will cause the second specification to be ignored. Using `infocmp` to recreate a description can be a useful check to make sure that everything was specified correctly in the original source description.

Another error that does not cause incorrect compiled files, but will slow down the compilation time, is specifying superfluous use= fields. `infocmp` will flag any superfluous use= fields.

- s           Sorts the fields within each type according to the argument below:
  - d    Leave fields in the order that they are stored in the `terminfo` database.
  - i    Sort by `terminfo` name.
  - l    Sort by the long C variable name.
  - c    Sort by the `termcap` name.

If the `-s` option is not given, the fields are sorted alphabetically by the `terminfo` name within each type, except in the case of the `-C` or the `-L` options, which cause the sorting to be done by the `termcap` name or the long C variable name, respectively.

- v           Print out tracing information on standard error as the program runs.
- V           Print out the version of the program in use on standard error and exit.
- l           Print the fields one to a line. Otherwise, the fields are printed several to a line to a maximum width of 60 characters.
- width*     Changes the output to *width* characters.

The location of the compiled `terminfo` database is taken from the environment variable `TERMINFO`. If the variable is not defined, or the terminal is not found in that location, the system `terminfo` database, usually in `/usr/share/lib/terminfo`, is used. The options `-A` and `-B` may be used to override this location.

- A *directory*   Set `TERMINFO` for the first *termname*.
- B *directory*   Set `TERMINFO` for the other *termnames*. With this, it is possible to compare descriptions for a terminal with the same name located in two different databases. This is useful for comparing descriptions for the same terminal created by different people.

**Files** `/usr/share/lib/terminfo/?/*`   Compiled terminal description database.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWcsu         |

**See Also** [captainfo\(1M\)](#), [tic\(1M\)](#), [curses\(3CURSES\)](#), [terminfo\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** in.ftpd, ftpd – File Transfer Protocol Server

**Synopsis** in.ftpd [-4] [-A] [-a] [-C] [-d] [-I] [-i] [-K] [-L] [-l]  
 [-o] [-P *dataport*] [-p *ctrlport*] [-Q] [-q]  
 [-r *rootdir*] [-S] [-s] [-T *maxtimeout*] [-t *timeout*]  
 [-u *umask*] [-V] [-v] [-W] [-w] [-X]

**Description** in.ftpd is the Internet File Transfer Protocol (FTP) server process. The server may be invoked by the Internet daemon [inetd\(1M\)](#) each time a connection to the FTP service is made or run as a standalone server. See [services\(4\)](#).

**Options** in.ftpd supports the following options:

- 4                   When running in standalone mode, listen for connections on an AF\_INET type socket. The default is to listen on an AF\_INET6 type socket.
- a                   Enables use of the [ftppaccess\(4\)](#) file.
- A                   Disables use of the [ftppaccess\(4\)](#) file. Use of ftppaccess is disabled by default.
- C                   Non-anonymous users need local credentials (for example, to authenticate to remote file servers). So they should be prompted for a password unless they forwarded credentials as part of authentication.
- d                   Writes debugging information to [syslogd\(1M\)](#).
- i                   Logs the names of all files received by the FTP Server to [xferlog\(4\)](#). You can override the -i option through use of the [ftppaccess\(4\)](#) file.
- I                   Disables the use of AUTH and ident to determine the username on the client. See *RFC 931*. The FTP Server is built not to use AUTH and ident.
- K                   Connections are only allowed for users who can authenticate through the ftp AUTH mechanism. (Anonymous ftp may also be allowed if it is configured.) ftpd will ask the user for a password if one is required.
- l                   Logs each FTP session to [syslogd\(1M\)](#).
- L                   Logs all commands sent to in.ftpd to [syslogd\(1M\)](#). When the -L option is used, command logging will be on by default, once the FTP Server is invoked. Because the FTP Server includes USER commands in those logged, if a user accidentally enters a password instead of the username, the password will be logged. You can override the -L option through use of the [ftppaccess\(4\)](#) file.
- o                   Logs the names of all files transmitted by the FTP Server to [xferlog\(4\)](#). You can override the -o option through use of the [ftppaccess\(4\)](#) file.
- P *dataport*        The FTP Server determines the port number by looking in the [services\(4\)](#) file for an entry for the ftp-data service. If there is no entry,



- the daemon uses the port just prior to the control connection port. Use the `-P` option to specify the data port number.
- p *ctrlport* When run in standalone mode, the FTP Server determines the control port number by looking in the [services\(4\)](#) file for an entry for the `ftp` service. Use the `-p` option to specify the control port number.
  - Q Disables PID files. This disables user limits. Large, busy sites that do not want to impose limits on the number of concurrent users can use this option to disable PID files.
  - q Uses PID files. The `limit` directive uses PID files to determine the number of current users in each access class. By default, PID files are used.
  - r *rootdir* [chroot\(2\)](#) to *rootdir* upon loading. Use this option to improve system security. It limits the files that can be damaged should a break in occur through the daemon. This option is similar to anonymous FTP. Additional files are needed, which vary from system to system.
  - S Places the daemon in standalone operation mode. The daemon runs in the background. This is useful for startup scripts that run during system initialization. See [init.d\(4\)](#).
  - s Places the daemon in standalone operation mode. The daemon runs in the foreground. This is useful when run from `/etc/inittab` by [init\(1M\)](#).
  - T *maxtimeout* Sets the maximum allowable timeout period to *maxtimeout* seconds. The default maximum timeout limit is 7200 second (two hours). You can override the `-T` option through use of the [ftpaccess\(4\)](#) file.
  - t *timeout* Sets the inactivity timeout period to *timeout* seconds. The default timeout period is 900 seconds (15 minutes). You can override the `-t` option through use of the [ftpaccess\(4\)](#) file.
  - u *umask* Sets the default `umask` to *umask*.
  - V Displays copyright and version information, then terminate.
  - v Writes debugging information to [syslogd\(1M\)](#).
  - W Does not record user `login` and `logout` in the [wtmptx\(4\)](#) file.
  - w Records each user `login` and `logout` in the [wtmptx\(4\)](#) file. By default, logins and logouts are recorded.
  - X Writes the output from the `-i` and `-o` options to the [syslogd\(1M\)](#) file instead of [xferlog\(4\)](#). This allows the collection of output from several hosts on one central loghost. You can override the `-X` option through use of the [ftpaccess\(4\)](#) file.

Requests The FTP Server currently supports the following FTP requests. Case is not distinguished.

|      |                                                                                                                     |
|------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ABOR | Abort previous command.                                                                                             |
| ADAT | Send an authentication protocol message.                                                                            |
| ALLO | Allocate storage (vacuously).                                                                                       |
| AUTH | Specify an authentication protocol to be performed. Currently only "GSSAPI" is supported.                           |
| APPE | Append to a file.                                                                                                   |
| CCC  | Set the command channel protection mode to "Clear" (no protection). Not allowed if data channel is protected.       |
| CDUP | Change to parent of current working directory.                                                                      |
| CWD  | Change working directory.                                                                                           |
| DELE | Delete a file.                                                                                                      |
| ENC  | Send a privacy and integrity protected command (given in argument).                                                 |
| EPRT | Specify extended address for the transport connection.                                                              |
| EPSV | Extended passive command request.                                                                                   |
| HELP | Give help information.                                                                                              |
| LIST | Give list files in a directory ( <code>ls -lA</code> ).                                                             |
| LPRT | Specify long address for the transport connection.                                                                  |
| LPSV | Long passive command request.                                                                                       |
| MIC  | Send an integrity protected command (given in argument).                                                            |
| MKD  | Make a directory.                                                                                                   |
| MDTM | Show last time file modified.                                                                                       |
| MODE | Specify data transfer <i>mode</i> .                                                                                 |
| NLST | Give name list of files in directory ( <code>ls</code> ).                                                           |
| NOOP | Do nothing.                                                                                                         |
| PASS | Specify password.                                                                                                   |
| PASV | Prepare for server-to-server transfer.                                                                              |
| PBSZ | Specify a protection buffer size.                                                                                   |
| PROT | Specify a protection level under which to protect data transfers. Allowed arguments:<br>clear        No protection. |

---

|      |         |                                                                            |
|------|---------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|      | safe    | Integrity protection                                                       |
|      | private | Integrity and encryption protection                                        |
| PORT |         | Specify data connection port.                                              |
| PWD  |         | Print the current working directory.                                       |
| QUIT |         | Terminate session.                                                         |
| REST |         | Restart incomplete transfer.                                               |
| RETR |         | Retrieve a file.                                                           |
| RMD  |         | Remove a directory.                                                        |
| RNFR |         | Specify rename-from file name.                                             |
| RNTO |         | Specify rename-to file name.                                               |
| SITE |         | Use nonstandard commands.                                                  |
| SIZE |         | Return size of file.                                                       |
| STAT |         | Return status of server.                                                   |
| STOR |         | Store a file.                                                              |
| STOU |         | Store a file with a unique name.                                           |
| STRU |         | Specify data transfer <i>structure</i> .                                   |
| SYST |         | Show operating system type of server system.                               |
| TYPE |         | Specify data transfer type.                                                |
| USER |         | Specify user name.                                                         |
| XCUP |         | Change to parent of current working directory. This request is deprecated. |
| XCWD |         | Change working directory. This request is deprecated.                      |
| XMKD |         | Make a directory. This request is deprecated.                              |
| XPWD |         | Print the current working directory. This request is deprecated.           |
| XRMD |         | Remove a directory. This request is deprecated.                            |

The following nonstandard or UNIX specific commands are supported by the SITE request:

|             |                                                      |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| ALIAS       | List aliases.                                        |
| CDPATH      | List the search path used when changing directories. |
| CHECKMETHOD | List or set the checksum method.                     |
| CHECKSUM    | Give the checksum of a file.                         |

|        |                                                                      |
|--------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CHMOD  | Change mode of a file. For example, SITE CHMOD 755 <i>filename</i> . |
| EXEC   | Execute a program. For example, SITE EXEC program params             |
| GPASS  | Give special group access password. For example, SITE GPASS bar.     |
| GROUP  | Request special group access. For example, SITE GROUP foo.           |
| GROUPS | List supplementary group membership.                                 |
| HELP   | Give help information. For example, SITE HELP.                       |
| IDLE   | Set idle-timer. For example, SITE IDLE 60.                           |
| UMASK  | Change umask. For example, SITE UMASK 002.                           |

The remaining FTP requests specified in *RFC 959* are recognized, but not implemented.

The FTP server will abort an active file transfer only when the ABOR command is preceded by a Telnet “Interrupt Process” (IP) signal and a Telnet “Synch” signal in the command Telnet stream, as described in *RFC 959*. If a STAT command is received during a data transfer that has been preceded by a Telnet IP and Synch, transfer status will be returned.

in.ftpd interprets file names according to the “globbing” conventions used by [csh\(1\)](#). This allows users to utilize the metacharacters: \* ? [ ] { } ~

in.ftpd authenticates users according to the following rules:

First, the user name must be in the password data base, the location of which is specified in [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#). An encrypted password (an authentication token in PAM) must be present. A password must always be provided by the client before any file operations can be performed. For non-anonymous users, the PAM framework is used to verify that the correct password was entered. See SECURITY below.

Second, the user name must not appear in either the `/etc/ftpusers` or the `/etc/ftpd/ftpusers` file. Use of the `/etc/ftpusers` files is deprecated, although it is still supported.

Third, the users must have a standard shell returned by [getusershell\(3C\)](#).

Fourth, if the user name is anonymous or ftp, an anonymous ftp account must be present in the password file for user ftp. Use [ftpconfig\(1M\)](#) to create the anonymous ftp account and home directory tree.

Fifth, if the GSS-API is used to authenticate the user, then [gss\\_auth\\_rules\(5\)](#) determines user access without a password needed.

The FTP Server supports virtual hosting, which can be configured by using [ftpaddhost\(1M\)](#).

The FTP Server does not support sublogins.

**General FTP Extensions** The FTP Server has certain extensions. If the user specifies a filename that does not exist with a RETR (retrieve) command, the FTP Server looks for a conversion to change a file or directory that does into the one requested. See [ftpconversions\(4\)](#).

By convention, anonymous users supply their email address when prompted for a password. The FTP Server attempts to validate these email addresses. A user whose FTP client hangs on a long reply, for example, a multiline response, should use a dash (-) as the first character of the user's password, as this disables the Server's `reply()` function.

The FTP Server can also log all file transmission and reception. See [xferlog\(4\)](#) for details of the log file format.

The SITE EXEC command may be used to execute commands in the `/bin/ftp-exec` directory. Take care that you understand the security implications before copying any command into the `/bin/ftp-exec` directory. For example, do not copy `in/bin/sh`. This would enable the user to execute other commands through the use of `sh -c`. If you have doubts about this feature, do not create the `/bin/ftp-exec` directory.

**Security** For non-anonymous users, `in.ftpd` uses [pam\(3PAM\)](#) for authentication, account management, and session management, and can use Kerberos v5 for authentication.

The PAM configuration policy, listed through `/etc/pam.conf`, specifies the module to be used for `in.ftpd`. Here is a partial `pam.conf` file with entries for the `in.ftpd` command using the UNIX authentication, account management, and session management module.

```
ftp auth requisite pam_authtok_get.so.1
ftp auth required pam_dhkeys.so.1
ftp auth required pam_unix_auth.so.1

ftp account required pam_unix_roles.so.1
ftp account required pam_unix_projects.so.1
ftp account required pam_unix_account.so.1

ftp session required pam_unix_session.so.1
```

If there are no entries for the `ftp` service, then the entries for the “other” service will be used. Unlike `login`, `passwd`, and other commands, the `ftp` protocol will only support a single password. Using multiple modules will prevent `in.ftpd` from working properly.

To use Kerberos for authentication, a `host/<FQDN>` Kerberos principal must exist for each Fully Qualified Domain Name associated with the `in.ftpd` server. Each of these `host/<FQDN>` principals must have a keytab entry in the `/etc/krb5/krb5.keytab` file on the `in.ftpd` server. An example principal might be:

```
host/bigmachine.eng.example.com
```

See [kadmin\(1M\)](#) or [gkadmin\(1M\)](#) for instructions on adding a principal to a `krb5.keytab` file. See *System Administration Guide: Security Services* for a discussion of Kerberos authentication.

For anonymous users, who by convention supply their email address as a password, `in.ftpd` validates passwords according to the `passwd-check` capability in the `ftpaccess` file.

**Usage** The `in.ftpd` command is IPv6-enabled. See [ip6\(7P\)](#).

|              |                                                 |                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Files</b> | <code>/etc/ftpd/ftpaccess</code>                | FTP Server configuration file                                                                                                   |
|              | <code>/etc/ftpd/ftpconversions</code>           | FTP Server conversions database                                                                                                 |
|              | <code>/etc/ftpd/ftpgroups</code>                | FTP Server enhanced group access file                                                                                           |
|              | <code>/etc/ftpd/ftphosts</code>                 | FTP Server individual user host access file                                                                                     |
|              | <code>/etc/ftpd/ftpservers</code>               | FTP Server virtual hosting configuration file.                                                                                  |
|              | <code>/etc/ftpd/ftpusers</code>                 | File listing users for whom FTP login privileges are disallowed.                                                                |
|              | <code>/etc/ftpusers</code>                      | File listing users for whom FTP login privileges are disallowed. This use of this file is deprecated.                           |
|              | <code>/var/log/xferlog</code>                   | FTP Server transfer log file                                                                                                    |
|              | <code>/var/run/ftp.pids-<i>classname</i></code> |                                                                                                                                 |
|              | <code>/var/adm/wtmpx</code>                     | Extended database files that contain the history of user access and accounting information for the <code>wtmpx</code> database. |

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWftpu        |
| Interface Stability | External        |

**See Also** [csh\(1\)](#), [ftp\(1\)](#), [ftpcount\(1\)](#), [ftpwho\(1\)](#), [ls\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [ftpaddhost\(1M\)](#), [ftpconfig\(1M\)](#), [ftprestart\(1M\)](#), [ftpshut\(1M\)](#), [gkadmin\(1M\)](#), [inetadm\(1M\)](#), [inetd\(1M\)](#), [kadmin\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [syslogd\(1M\)](#), [chroot\(2\)](#), [umask\(2\)](#), [getpwent\(3C\)](#), [getusershell\(3C\)](#), [syslog\(3C\)](#), [ftpaccess\(4\)](#), [ftpconversions\(4\)](#), [ftpgroups\(4\)](#), [ftphosts\(4\)](#), [ftpservers\(4\)](#), [ftpusers\(4\)](#), [group\(4\)](#), [passwd\(4\)](#), [services\(4\)](#), [xferlog\(4\)](#), [wtmpx\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [gss\\_auth\\_rules\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authtok\\_check\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authtok\\_get\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authtok\\_store\(5\)](#), [pam\\_dhkeys\(5\)](#), [pam\\_passwd\\_auth\(5\)](#), [pam\\_unix\\_account\(5\)](#), [pam\\_unix\\_auth\(5\)](#), [pam\\_unix\\_session\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [ip6\(7P\)](#)

### *System Administration Guide: Security Services*

Allman, M., Ostermann, S., and Metz, C. *RFC 2428, FTP Extensions for IPv6 and NATs*. The Internet Society. September 1998.

Piscitello, D. *RFC 1639, FTP Operation Over Big Address Records (FOOBAR)*. Network Working Group. June 1994.

Postel, Jon, and Joyce Reynolds. *RFC 959, File Transfer Protocol (FTP)*. Network Information Center. October 1985.

St. Johns, Mike. *RFC 931, Authentication Server*. Network Working Group. January 1985.

Linn, J., *Generic Security Service Application Program Interface Version 2, Update 1, RFC 2743*. The Internet Society, January 2000.

Horowitz, M., Lunt, S., *FTP Security Extensions, RFC 2228*. The Internet Society, October 1997.

**Diagnostics** in.ftpd logs various errors to [syslogd\(1M\)](#), with a facility code of daemon.

**Notes** The anonymous FTP account is inherently dangerous and should be avoided when possible.

The FTP Server must perform certain tasks as the superuser, for example, the creation of sockets with privileged port numbers. It maintains an effective user ID of the logged in user, reverting to the superuser only when necessary.

The FTP Server no longer supports the `/etc/default/ftpd` file. Instead of using `UMASK=nnn` to set the umask, use the `defumask` capability in the `ftpaccess` file. The banner greeting text capability is also now set through the `ftpaccess` file by using the `greeting text capability` instead of by using `BANNER=" . . "`. However, unlike the `BANNER` string, the greeting text string is not passed to the shell for evaluation. See [ftpaccess\(4\)](#).

The `pam_unix(5)` module is no longer supported. Similar functionality is provided by [pam\\_authtok\\_check\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authtok\\_get\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authtok\\_store\(5\)](#), [pam\\_dhkeys\(5\)](#), [pam\\_passwd\\_auth\(5\)](#), [pam\\_unix\\_account\(5\)](#), [pam\\_unix\\_auth\(5\)](#), and [pam\\_unix\\_session\(5\)](#).

The in.ftpd service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/ftp
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). Responsibility for initiating and restarting this service is delegated to [inetd\(1M\)](#). Use [inetadm\(1M\)](#) to make configuration changes and to view configuration information for this service. The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

**Name** in.iked – daemon for the Internet Key Exchange (IKE)

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/inet/in.iked [-d] [-f *filename*] [-p *level*]  
/usr/lib/inet/in.iked -c [-f *filename*]

**Description** in.iked performs automated key management for IPsec using the Internet Key Exchange (IKE) protocol.

in.iked implements the following:

- IKE authentication with either pre-shared keys, DSS signatures, RSA signatures, or RSA encryption.
- Diffie-Hellman key derivation using either 768, 1024, or 1536-bit public key moduli.
- Authentication protection with cipher choices of AES, DES, Blowfish, or 3DES, and hash choices of either HMAC-MD5 or HMAC-SHA-1. Encryption in in.iked is limited to the IKE authentication and key exchange. See [ipsecesp\(7P\)](#) for information regarding IPsec protection choices.

in.iked is managed by the following [smf\(5\)](#) service:

```
svc:/network/ipsec/ike
```

This service is delivered disabled because the configuration file needs to be created before the service can be enabled. See [ike.config\(4\)](#) for the format of this file.

See “Service Management Facility” for information on managing the [smf\(5\)](#) service.

in.iked listens for incoming IKE requests from the network and for requests for outbound traffic using the PF\_KEY socket. See [pf\\_key\(7P\)](#).

in.iked has two support programs that are used for IKE administration and diagnosis: [ikeadm\(1M\)](#) and [ikecert\(1M\)](#).

The [ikeadm\(1M\)](#) command can read the `/etc/inet/ike/config` file as a rule, then pass the configuration information to the running in.iked daemon using a doors interface.

```
example# ikeadm read rule /etc/inet/ike/config
```

Refreshing the [ike smf\(5\)](#) service provided to manage the in.iked daemon sends a SIGHUP signal to the in.iked daemon, which will (re)read `/etc/inet/ike/config` and reload the certificate database.

The preceding two commands have the same effect, that is, to update the running IKE daemon with the latest configuration. See “Service Management Facility” for more details on managing the in.iked daemon.

When Trusted Extensions are enabled (see [labeld\(1M\)](#)), in.iked can be used in the global zone to negotiate labeled security associations. On labeled systems using in.iked, UDP ports



500 and 4500 must be configured as multi-level ports for the global zone in the `tnzonecfg` file (see `tnzonecfg(4)`, part of the *Solaris Trusted Extensions Reference Manual*). See [ike.config\(4\)](#) for more information on configuring `in.iked` to be label-aware.

Service Management Facility The IKE daemon (`in.iked`) is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#). The following group of services manage the components of IPsec:

```
svc:/network/ipsec/ipsecalgs (See ipsecalgs(1M))
svc:/network/ipsec/policy (See ipsecconf(1M))
svc:/network/ipsec/manual-key (See ipseckey(1M))
svc:/network/ipsec/ike (see ike.config(4))
```

The `manual-key` and `ike` services are delivered disabled because the system administrator must create configuration files for each service, as described in the respective man pages listed above.

The correct administrative procedure is to create the configuration file for each service, then enable each service using [svcadm\(1M\)](#).

The `ike` service has a dependency on the `ipsecalgs` and `policy` services. These services should be enabled before the `ike` service. Failure to do so results in the `ike` service entering maintenance mode.

If the configuration needs to be changed, edit the configuration file then refresh the service, as follows:

```
example# svcadm refresh ike
```

The following properties are defined for the `ike` service:

`config/admin_privilege`

Defines the level that [ikeadm\(1M\)](#) invocations can change or observe the running `in.iked`. The acceptable values for this property are the same as those for the `-p` option. See the description of `-p` in `OPTIONS`.

`config/config_file`

Defines the configuration file to use. The default value is `/etc/inet/ike/config`. See [ike.config\(4\)](#) for the format of this file. This property has the same effect as the `-f` flag. See the description of `-f` in `OPTIONS`.

`config/debug_level`

Defines the amount of debug output that is written to the `debug_logfile` file, described below. The default value for this is `op` or operator. This property controls the recording of information on events such as re-reading the configuration file. Acceptable value for `debug_level` are listed in the [ikeadm\(1M\)](#) man page. The value `all` is equivalent to the `-d` flag. See the description of `-d` in `OPTIONS`.

**config/debug\_logfile**

Defines where debug output should be written. The messages written here are from debug code within `in.iked`. Startup error messages are recorded by the [smf\(5\)](#) framework and recorded in a service-specific log file. Use any of the following commands to examine the logfile property:

```
example# svcs -l ike
example# svcprop ike
example# svccfg -s ike listprop
```

The values for these log file properties might be different, in which case both files should be inspected for errors.

**config/ignore\_errors**

A boolean value that controls `in.iked`'s behavior should the configuration file have syntax errors. The default value is `false`, which causes `in.iked` to enter maintenance mode if the configuration is invalid.

Setting this value to `true` causes the IKE service to stay online, but correct operation requires the administrator to configure the running daemon with [ikeadm\(1M\)](#). This option is provided for compatibility with previous releases.

These properties can be modified using [svccfg\(1M\)](#) by users who have been assigned the following authorization:

```
solaris.smf.value.ipsec
```

PKCS#11 token objects can be unlocked or locked by using `ikeadm` token login and `ikeadm` token logout, respectively. Availability of private keying material stored on these PKCS#11 token objects can be observed with: `ikeadm dump certcache`. The following authorizations allow users to log into and out of PKCS#11 token objects:

```
solaris.network.ipsec.ike.token.login
solaris.network.ipsec.ike.token.logout
```

See [auths\(1\)](#), [ikeadm\(1M\)](#), [user\\_attr\(4\)](#), [rbac\(5\)](#).

The service needs to be refreshed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#) before a new property value is effective. General, non-modifiable properties can be viewed with the [svcprop\(1\)](#) command.

```
svccfg -s ipsec/ike setprop config/config_file = \
/new/config_file
svcadm refresh ike
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, refreshing, and requesting restart can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). A user who has been assigned the authorization shown below can perform these actions:

```
solaris.smf.manage.ipsec
```

The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

The `in.iked` daemon is designed to be run under [smf\(5\)](#) management. While the `in.iked` command can be run from the command line, this is discouraged. If the `in.iked` command is to be run from the command line, the `ike smf(5)` service should be disabled first. See [svcadm\(1M\)](#).

**Options** The following options are supported:

- c            Check the syntax of a configuration file.
- d            Use debug mode. The process stays attached to the controlling terminal and produces large amounts of debugging output. This option is deprecated. See “Service Management Facility” for more details.
- f *filename*    Use *filename* instead of `/etc/inet/ike/config`. See [ike.config\(4\)](#) for the format of this file. This option is deprecated. See “Service Management Facility” for more details.
- p *level*        Specify privilege level (*level*). This option sets how much [ikeadm\(1M\)](#) invocations can change or observe about the running `in.iked`.

Valid *levels* are:

- 0    Base level
- 1    Access to preshared key info
- 2    Access to keying material

If `-p` is not specified, *level* defaults to 0.

This option is deprecated. See “Service Management Facility” for more details.

**Security** This program has sensitive private keying information in its image. Care should be taken with any core dumps or system dumps of a running `in.iked` daemon, as these files contain sensitive keying information. Use the [coreadm\(1M\)](#) command to limit any corefiles produced by `in.iked`.

|              |                                                 |                                                                                                                                                   |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Files</b> | <code>/etc/inet/ike/config</code>               | Default configuration file.                                                                                                                       |
|              | <code>/etc/inet/secret/ike.privatekeys/*</code> | Private keys. A private key <i>must</i> have a matching public-key certificate with the same filename in <code>/etc/inet/ike/publickeys/</code> . |
|              | <code>/etc/inet/ike/publickeys/*</code>         | Public-key certificates. The names are only important with regard to matching private key names.                                                  |
|              | <code>/etc/inet/ike/crls/*</code>               | Public key certificate revocation lists.                                                                                                          |
|              | <code>/etc/inet/secret/ike.preshared</code>     | IKE pre-shared secrets for Phase I authentication.                                                                                                |

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWcsu         |

**See Also** [svcs\(1\)](#), [coreadm\(1M\)](#), [ikeadm\(1M\)](#), [ikecert\(1M\)](#), [labeld\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [ike.config\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [ipsecesp\(7P\)](#), [pf\\_key\(7P\)](#)

See [tnzonecfg\(4\)](#), part of the *Solaris Trusted Extensions Reference Manual*.

Harkins, Dan and Carrel, Dave. *RFC 2409, Internet Key Exchange (IKE)*. Network Working Group. November 1998.

Maughan, Douglas, Schertler, M., Schneider, M., Turner, J. *RFC 2408, Internet Security Association and Key Management Protocol (ISAKMP)*. Network Working Group. November 1998.

Piper, Derrell, *RFC 2407, The Internet IP Security Domain of Interpretation for ISAKMP*. Network Working Group. November 1998.

---

|                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Name</b>        | init, telinit – process control initialization                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>Synopsis</b>    | <pre>/sbin/init [0123456abcQqSs] /etc/telinit [0123456abcQqSs]</pre>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <b>Description</b> | <p>init is the default primordial user process. (Options given to the kernel during boot may result in the invocation of an alternative primordial user process, as described on <a href="#">kernel(1M)</a>). init initiates the core components of the service management facility, <a href="#">svc.configd(1M)</a> and <a href="#">svc.startd(1M)</a>, and restarts these components if they fail. For backwards compatibility, init also starts and restarts general processes according to <a href="#">/etc/inittab</a>, as described below.</p> <p>The run levels and system booting descriptions given below are provided for compatibility purposes only, and otherwise made obsolete by the service management facility, <a href="#">smf(5)</a>.</p> <p><b>init Failure</b> If init exits for any reason other than system shutdown, it will be restarted with process-ID 1.</p> <p><b>Run Level Defined</b> At any given time, the system is in one of eight possible run levels. A run level is a software configuration under which only a selected group of processes exists. Processes spawned by init for each of these run levels are defined in <a href="#">/etc/inittab</a>. init can be in one of eight run levels, 0–6 and S or s (S and s are identical). The run level changes when a privileged user runs <a href="#">/sbin/init</a>.</p> <p><b>init and System Booting</b> When the system is booted, init is invoked and the following occurs. First, it reads <a href="#">/etc/default/init</a> to set environment variables. This is typically where TZ (time zone) and locale-related environments such as LANG or LC_CTYPE get set. (See the FILES section at the end of this page.) init then looks in <a href="#">/etc/inittab</a> for the <a href="#">initdefault</a> entry (see <a href="#">inittab(4)</a>). If the <a href="#">initdefault</a> entry:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>exists <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>init usually uses the run level specified in that entry as the initial run level to enter only if the options/milestone property has not been specified for <a href="#">svc.startd(1M)</a>.</li> </ul> </li> <li>does not exist <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The service management facility, <a href="#">smf(5)</a>, examines its configuration specified in <a href="#">svc.startd(1M)</a>, and enters the milestone specified by the options/milestone property.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>The <a href="#">initdefault</a> entry in <a href="#">/etc/inittab</a> corresponds to the following run levels:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>S or s <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>init goes to the single-user state. In this state, the system console device (<a href="#">/dev/console</a>) is opened for reading and writing and the command <a href="#">/sbin/su</a>, (see <a href="#">su(1M)</a>), is invoked. Use either init or telinit to change the run level of the system. Note that if the shell is terminated (using an end-of-file), init only re-initializes to the single-user state if <a href="#">/etc/inittab</a> does not exist.</li> </ul> </li> <li>0-6 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>init enters the corresponding run level. Run levels 0, 5, and 6 are reserved states for shutting the system down. Run levels 2, 3, and 4 are available as multi-user operating states.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> |

If this is the first time since power up that `init` has entered a run level other than single-user state, `init` first scans `/etc/inittab` for `boot` and `bootwait` entries (see [inittab\(4\)](#)). These entries are performed before any other processing of `/etc/inittab` takes place, providing that the run level entered matches that of the entry. In this way any special initialization of the operating system, such as mounting file systems, can take place before users are allowed onto the system. `init` then scans `/etc/inittab` and executes all other entries that are to be processed for that run level.

To spawn each process in `/etc/inittab`, `init` reads each entry and for each entry that should be respawned, it forks a child process. After it has spawned all of the processes specified by `/etc/inittab`, `init` waits for one of its descendant processes to die, a `powerfail` signal, or a signal from another `init` or `telinit` process to change the system's run level. When one of these conditions occurs, `init` re-examines `/etc/inittab`.

**inittab Additions** New entries can be added to `/etc/inittab` at any time; however, `init` still waits for one of the above three conditions to occur before re-examining `/etc/inittab`. To get around this, `init Q` or `init q` command wakes `init` to re-examine `/etc/inittab` immediately.

When `init` comes up at boot time and whenever the system changes from the single-user state to another run state, `init` sets the [ioctl\(2\)](#) states of the console to those modes saved in the file `/etc/ioctl.syscon`. `init` writes this file whenever the single-user state is entered.

**Run Level Changes** When a run level change request is made, `init` or a designate sends the warning signal (`SIGTERM`) to all processes that are undefined in the target run level. A minimum interval of five seconds is observed before `init` or its designate forcibly terminates these processes by sending a kill signal (`SIGKILL`). Additionally, `init` informs [svc.startd\(1M\)](#) that the run level is changing. [svc.startd\(1M\)](#) then restricts the system to the set of services which the milestone corresponding to the run-level change depends on.

When `init` receives a signal telling it that a process it spawned has died, it records the fact and the reason it died in `/var/adm/utmpx` and `/var/adm/wtmpx` if it exists (see [who\(1\)](#)). A history of the processes spawned is kept in `/var/adm/wtmpx`.

If `init` receives a `powerfail` signal (`SIGPWR`) it scans `/etc/inittab` for special entries of the type `powerfail` and `powerwait`. These entries are invoked (if the run levels permit) before any further processing takes place. In this way `init` can perform various cleanup and recording functions during the powerdown of the operating system.

**Environment Variables** in `/etc/default/init` You can set default values for environment variables, for such items as `timezone` and character formatting, in `/etc/default/init`. See the FILES section, below, for a list of these variables.

**telinit** `telinit`, which is linked to `/sbin/init`, is used to direct the actions of `init`. It takes a one-character argument and signals `init` to take the appropriate action.

**Security** `init` uses `pam(3PAM)` for session management. The PAM configuration policy, listed through `/etc/pam.conf`, specifies the session management module to be used for `init`. Here is a partial `pam.conf` file with entries for `init` using the UNIX session management module.

```
init session required pam_unix_session.so.1
```

If there are no entries for the `init` service, then the entries for the “other” service will be used.

**Options** 0

Go into firmware.

1

Put the system in system administrator mode. All local file systems are mounted. Only a small set of essential kernel processes are left running. This mode is for administrative tasks such as installing optional utility packages. All files are accessible and no users are logged in on the system.

This request corresponds to a request for `smf(5)` to restrict the system milestone to `svc:/milestone/single-user:default`.

2

Put the system in multi-user mode. All multi-user environment terminal processes and daemons are spawned. This state is commonly referred to as the multi-user state.

This request corresponds to a request for `smf(5)` to restrict the system milestone to `svc:/milestone/multi-user:default`.

3

Extend multi-user mode by making local resources available over the network.

This request corresponds to a request for `smf(5)` to restrict the system milestone to `svc:/milestone/multi-user-server:default`.

4

Is available to be defined as an alternative multi-user environment configuration. It is not necessary for system operation and is usually not used.

5

Shut the machine down so that it is safe to remove the power. Have the machine remove power, if possible.

6

Stop the operating system and reboot to the state defined by the `initdefault` entry in `/etc/inittab`.

On x86 systems, service `svc:/system/boot-config:default` is enabled by default. When the `config/fastreboot_default` property is set to `true`, `init 6` will bypass the firmware.

a,b,c

Process only those `/etc/inittab` entries having the a, b, or c run level set. These are pseudo-states, which may be defined to run certain commands, but which do not cause the current run level to change.

Q,q

Re-examine `/etc/inittab`.

S, s

Enter single-user mode. This is the only run level that doesn't require the existence of a properly formatted `/etc/inittab` file. If this file does not exist, then by default, the only legal run level that `init` can enter is the single-user mode. When in single-user mode, the filesystems required for basic system operation will be mounted. When the system comes down to single-user mode, these file systems will remain mounted (even if provided by a remote file server), and any other local filesystems will also be left mounted. During the transition down to single-user mode, all processes started by `init` or `init.d` scripts that should only be running in multi-user mode are killed. In addition, any process that has a `utmpx` entry will be killed. This last condition insures that all port monitors started by the SAC are killed and all services started by these port monitors, including `ttymon` login services, are killed.

This request corresponds to a request for [smf\(5\)](#) to restrict the system milestone to `svc:/milestone/single-user:default`.

**Files** `/dev/console`  
System console device.

`/etc/default/init`  
Contains environment variables and their default values. For example, for the `timezone` variable, `TZ`, you might specify `TZ=US/Pacific`. The variables are:

`TZ`

Either specifies the timezone information (see [ctime\(3C\)](#)) or the name of a timezone information file `/usr/share/lib/zoneinfo`.

Refer to the [TIMEZONE\(4\)](#) man page before changing this setting.

`CMASK`

The mask (see [umask\(1\)](#)) that `init` uses and that every process inherits from the `init` process. If not set, `init` uses the mask it inherits from the kernel. Note that `init` always attempts to apply a `umask` of `022` before creating a file, regardless of the setting of `CMASK`

`LC_CTYPE`

Character characterization information

`LC_MESSAGES`

Message translation

`LC_MONETARY`

Monetary formatting information



**LC\_NUMERIC**  
Numeric formatting information

**LC\_TIME**  
Time formatting information

**LC\_ALL**  
If set, all other LC\_\* environmental variables take-on this value.

**LANG**  
If LC\_ALL is not set, and any particular LC\_\* is also not set, the value of LANG is used for that particular environmental variable.

**/etc/inittab**  
Controls process dispatching by `init`.

**/etc/ioctl.syscon**  
ioctl states of the console, as saved by `init` when single-user state is entered.

**/etc/svc/volatile/init.state**  
init state necessary to recover from failure.

**/var/adm/utmpx**  
User access and administration information.

**/var/adm/wtmpx**  
History of user access and administration information.

**/var/run/initpipe**  
A named pipe used for internal communication.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWcsu         |

**See Also** [login\(1\)](#), [sh\(1\)](#), [stty\(1\)](#), [who\(1\)](#), [kernel\(1M\)](#), [shutdown\(1M\)](#), [su\(1M\)](#), [svc.configd\(1M\)](#), [svc.startd\(1M\)](#), [ttypmon\(1M\)](#), [ioctl\(2\)](#), [kill\(2\)](#), [ctime\(3C\)](#), [pam\(3PAM\)](#), [init.d\(4\)](#), [inittab\(4\)](#), [pam.conf\(4\)](#), [TIMEZONE\(4\)](#), [utmpx\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [pam\\_unix\\_session\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [termio\(7I\)](#)

**Diagnostics** If `init` finds that it is respawning an entry from `/etc/inittab` more than ten times in two minutes, it assumes that there is an error in the command string in the entry and generates an error message on the system console. It then refuses to respawn this entry until either five minutes has elapsed or it receives a signal from a user-spawned `init` or `telinit` command. This prevents `init` from eating up system resources when someone makes a typographical error in the `inittab` file, or a program is removed that is referenced in `/etc/inittab`.

**Notes** `init` and `telinit` can be run only by a privileged user.

The `S` or `s` state must not be used indiscriminately in `/etc/inittab`. When modifying this file, it is best to avoid adding this state to any line other than `initdefault`.

If a default state is not specified in the `initdefault` entry in `/etc/inittab`, state `6` is entered. Consequently, the system will loop by going to firmware and rebooting continuously.

If the `utmpx` file cannot be created when booting the system, the system will boot to state “`s`” regardless of the state specified in the `initdefault` entry in `/etc/inittab`. This can occur if the `/var` file system is not accessible.

When a system transitions down to the `S` or `s` state, the `/etc/nologin` file (see [nologin\(4\)](#)) is created. Upon subsequent transition to run level `2`, this file is removed.

`init` uses `/var/run/initpipe`, a named pipe, for internal communication.

The `pam_unix(5)` module is no longer supported. Similar functionality is provided by [pam\\_unix\\_session\(5\)](#).

**Name** init.sma – start and stop the snmpd daemon

**Synopsis** /etc/init.d/init.sma start | stop | restart | status

**Description** The `init.sma` utility is run automatically during installation and each time the system is rebooted. This utility manages the `snmpd`.

**Options** The following options are supported:

`start` Starts the `snmpd` daemon.  
`stop` Stops the `snmpd` daemon.  
`restart` Stops then starts the `snmpd` daemon.  
`status` Reports the `snmpd` daemon's status.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWsmagt       |
| Interface Stability | Unstable        |

**See Also** [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** init.wbem – start and stop the CIM Boot Manager

**Synopsis** `svccfg svc:/application/management/wbem start | stop`

**Description** The `init.wbem` utility is run automatically during installation, each time the system is rebooted, and by means of the `svccfg(1M)` command. This method manipulates the CIM Object Manager (CIMOM) and the Solaris Management Console server, both of which run combined in a single process. `init.wbem` can be used to start, stop, or retrieve status from the server.

**CIM Object Manager** The CIM Object Manager manages CIM objects on a WBEM-enabled system. A CIM object is a computer representation, or model, of a managed resource, such as a printer, disk drive, or CPU. CIM objects are stored internally as Java classes.

When a WBEM client application accesses information about a CIM object, the CIM Object Manager contacts either the appropriate provider for that object or the CIM Object Manager Repository. Providers are classes that communicate with managed objects to access data.

When a WBEM client application requests data from a managed resource that is not available from the CIM Object Manager Repository, the CIM Object Manager forwards the request to the provider for that managed resource. The provider dynamically retrieves the information.

At startup, the CIM Object Manager performs the following functions:

- Listens for RMI connections on RMI port 5987 and for XML/HTTP connections on HTTP port 5988.
- Sets up a connection to the CIM Object Manager Repository.
- Waits for incoming requests.

During normal operations, the CIM Object Manager performs the following functions:

- Performs security checks to authenticate user login and authorization to access namespaces.
- Performs syntactical and semantic checking of CIM data operations to ensure that they comply with the latest CIM Specification.
- Routes requests to the appropriate provider or to the CIM Object Manager Repository.
- Delivers data from providers and from the CIM Object Manager Repository to WBEM client applications.

A WBEM client application contacts the CIM Object Manager to establish a connection when it needs to perform WBEM operations, such as creating a CIM class or updating a CIM instance. When a WBEM client application connects to a CIM Object Manager, it gets a reference to the CIM Object Manager, which it then uses to request services and operations.

**Solaris Management Console Server** The Solaris Management Console server is the back end to the front end console, [smc\(1M\)](#). It provides tools for the console to download and performs common services for the console and its tools to use, such as authentication, authorization, logging, messaging, and persistence.

**System Booting** The `init.wbem` script is installed in the `/etc/init.d` directory.

**Options** The `init.wbem` function is implemented as a service management facility (SMF) method and is controlled by means of the [svcadm\(1M\)](#) command using the fault management resource identifier (FMRI) `svc:/application/management/wbem`.

The following options are supported through [svcadm\(1M\)](#):

```
start Starts the CIMOM and Solaris Management Console server on the local host.
stop Stops the CIMOM and Solaris Management Console server on the local host.
status Gets the status of the CIMOM and Solaris Management Console server on the
 local host.
```

The SMF property options/`tcp_listen` is used to control whether CIMOM and the Solaris Management console server will respond to requests from remote systems.

The specification:

```
svc:/application/management/wbem/options/tcp_listen = true
```

...allows remote access and `false` disallows remote access. `false` is the default value.

#### **Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Allowing Access to Remote Systems

The following commands enable CIMOM and the Solaris Management Console server to allow access from remote systems.

```
svccfg -s \
svc:/application/management/wbem setprop options/tcp_listen = true
svcadm refresh svc:/application/management/wbem
```

**Notes** When the `init.wbem` script is invoked by SMF, it does not run the CIMOM and Solaris Management Console server directly. The server process is in Java and is too heavyweight to be run immediately at system boot time. Instead, three lightweight processes listen on three different ports that the CIMOM and the Solaris Management Console server normally use. This acts similarly to [inetd\(1M\)](#).

Because Java programs cannot inherit file descriptors as other programs can, there is a small time period from when the first connection is made until the server is fully operational where client connections may be dropped. WBEM clients are immune to this, as they will retry until the server comes online. Solaris Management Console clients are not immune, and it may be necessary to manually reconnect, though this should not happen in the common case.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWwbcor       |

**See Also** [inetd\(1M\)](#), [mofcomp\(1M\)](#), [smc\(1M\)](#), [smcconf\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [wbemadmin\(1M\)](#), [wbemlogviewer\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

**Name** `inityp2l` – create NIS (YP) to LDAP configuration files

**Synopsis** `/usr/lib/netsvc/yp/inityp2l [-m mapping_file_name]  
[-c config_file_name]`

**Description** The `inityp2l` utility assists with creation of the `NISLDAPmapping` and `ypserv` files. See [NISLDAPmapping\(4\)](#) and [ypserv\(4\)](#). `inityp2l` examines the NIS maps on a system, and through a dialogue with the user, determines which NIS to (and from) LDAP mappings are required. A `NISLDAPmapping` file is then created based on this information. The utility asks users about their LDAP server configuration and a `ypserv` file is created based on this information.

The `inityp2l` utility handles mappings for standard NIS maps and the `auto.*` series of maps. If requested, it creates default mappings for custom maps, with each map entry represented as a single DIT string. `inityp2l` does not handle full custom mapping, but if requested, `inityp2l` will insert comments into the `NISLDAPmapping` file that indicate where these should be added.

To write to the `NISLDAPmapping` or `ypserv` files is potentially dangerous. `inityp2l` warns the user and asks for confirmation before:

1. it overwrites either file
2. it writes to the default `NISLDAPmapping` file location, if this file did not previously exist. This is important because the existence of a file in this location causes NIS components to work NIS to LDAP (N2L) mode when next restarted, rather than to traditional NIS mode.

`inityp2l` assists with rapid creation of a simple N2L configuration files. It is not a general purpose tool for the management of these files. An advanced user who would like to maintain the files or use custom mappings should examine the output of `inityp2l` and customize it by using a standard text editor.

**Options** `inityp2l` supports the following options:

- c Specify the name of the generated `ypserv` file. The default location is described in [Files](#).
- m Specify the name of the generated `NISLDAPmapping` file. The default is described in [Files](#).

|              |                                     |                                                                                                                         |
|--------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Files</b> | <code>/var/yp</code>                | The directory to be searched for candidate domains ( <code>/var/yp/*</code> ) and NIS maps ( <code>/var/yp/*/*</code> ) |
|              | <code>/var/yp/NISLDAPmapping</code> | The default location for the generated <code>NISLDAPmapping</code> file                                                 |
|              | <code>/etc/default/ypserv</code>    | The default location for the generated <code>ypserv</code> file                                                         |

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWypu         |
| Interface Stability | Obsolete        |

**See Also** [NISLDAPmapping\(4\)](#), [ypserv\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)



**Name** in.lpd – BSD print protocol adaptor

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/print/in.lpd

**Description** in.lpd implements the network listening service for the BSD print protocol specified in RFC 1179. The BSD print protocol provides a remote interface for systems to interact with a local spooling system. The protocol defines five standard requests from the client to the server: starting queue processing, transferring print jobs, retrieving terse status, retrieving verbose status, and canceling print jobs.

The in.lpd service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/lp
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). Responsibility for initiating and restarting this service is delegated to [inetd\(1M\)](#). Use [inetadm\(1M\)](#) to make configuration changes and to view configuration information for this service. The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

in.lpd uses the `config/log_from_remote` property to allow or disallow remote access. The default value of this property, `localhost`, disallows remote access.

inetd waits for connections on TCP port 515. Upon receipt of a connect request, in.lpd is started to service the connection. Once the request has been filled, in.lpd closes the connection and exits.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Allowing Remote Access

The following command allows remote access to in.lpd.

```
inetadm -m svc:/application/print/rfc1179:default bind_addr=""
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.  
non-zero An error occurred.

**Files** /etc/printers.conf System printer configuration database.  
printers.conf.byname NIS version of /etc/printers.conf.  
/usr/lib/print/bsd-adaptor/bsd\_\*.so\* Spooler translation modules.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWpcu         |

**See Also** [svcs\(1\)](#), [inetadm\(1M\)](#), [inetd\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [printers.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

**Name** in.mpathd – IP multipathing daemon

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/inet/in.mpathd

**Description** The in.mpathd daemon performs failure and repair detection for IP interfaces that have been placed into an IPMP group (or optionally, for all IP interfaces on the system). It also controls which IP interfaces in an IPMP group are “active” (being used by the system to send or receive IP data traffic) in a manner that is consistent with the administrator’s configured policy.

The in.mpathd daemon can detect IP interface failure and repair through two methods: by monitoring the IFF\_RUNNING flag for each IP interface (link-based failure detection), and by sending and receiving ICMP probes on each IP interface (probe-based failure detection). Link-based failure detection is instantaneous and is always enabled (provided the network driver supports the feature); probe-based failure detection must be enabled through the configuration of one or more test addresses (described below), but tests the entire IP interface send and receive path. The [ipmpstat\(1M\)](#) utility can be used to check which failure detection methods are enabled.

If only link-based failure detection is enabled, then the health of the interface is determined solely from the state of the IFF\_RUNNING flag. Otherwise, the interface is considered failed if either of the two methods indicate a failure, and repaired once both methods indicate the failure has been corrected. Not all interfaces in a group need to be configured with the same failure detection methods.

As mentioned above, to perform probe-based failure detection in.mpathd requires a test address on each IP interface for the purpose of sending and receiving probes. Each address must be marked NOFAILOVER (see [ifconfig\(1M\)](#)) and in.mpathd will be limited to probing targets on the same subnet. Each address may be configured statically or acquired by means of DHCP. To find targets, in.mpathd first consults the routing table for routes on the same subnet, and uses the specified next-hop. If no routes match, it sends all-hosts ICMP probes and selects a subset of the systems that respond. Thus, for probe-based failure detection to operate, there must be at least one neighbor on each subnet that responds to ICMP echo request probes. The [ipmpstat\(1M\)](#) utility can be used to display both the current probe target information and the status of sent probes.

Both IPv4 and IPv6 are supported. If an IP interface is plumbed for IPv4 and an IPv4 test address is configured then in.mpathd will start sending ICMPv4 probes over that IP interface. Similarly, if an IP interface is plumbed for IPv6 and an IPv6 test address is configured, then in.mpathd will start sending ICMPv6 probes over that IP interface. However, note that in.mpathd will ignore IPv6 test addresses that are not link-local. If both IPv4 and IPv6 are plumbed, it is sufficient to configure only one of the two, that is, either an IPv4 test address or an IPv6 test address. If both IPv4 and IPv6 test addresses are configured, in.mpathd probes using both ICMPv4 and ICMPv6.

As mentioned above, in.mpathd also controls which IP interfaces in an IPMP group are “active” (used by the system to send and receive IP data traffic). Specifically, in.mpathd tracks the administrative configuration of each IPMP group and attempts to keep the number of

active IP interfaces in each group consistent with that configuration. Therefore, if an active IP interface fails, `in.mpathd` will activate an `INACTIVE` interface in the group, provided one exists (it will prefer `INACTIVE` interfaces that are also marked `STANDBY`). Likewise, if an IP interface repairs and the resulting repair leaves the IPMP group with more active interfaces than the administrative configuration specifies, `in.mpathd` will deactivate one of the interfaces (preferably one marked `STANDBY`), except when the `FAILBACK` variable is used, as described below. Similar adjustments will be made by `in.mpathd` when offlining IP interfaces (for instance, in response to `if_mpadm(1M)`).

The `in.mpathd` daemon accesses three variable values in `/etc/default/mpathd`: `FAILURE_DETECTION_TIME`, `FAILBACK` and `TRACK_INTERFACES_ONLY_WITH_GROUPS`.

The `FAILURE_DETECTION_TIME` variable specifies the probe-based failure detection time. The shorter the failure detection time, the more probe traffic. The default value of `FAILURE_DETECTION_TIME` is 10 seconds. This means that IP interface failure will be detected by `in.mpathd` within 10 seconds. The IP interface repair detection time is always twice the value of `FAILURE_DETECTION_TIME`. Note that failures and repairs detected by link-based failure detection are acted on immediately, though `in.mpathd` may ignore link state changes if it suspects that the link state is flapping due to defective hardware; see `DIAGNOSTICS`.

By default, `in.mpathd` limits failure and repair detection to IP interfaces that are configured as part of a named IPMP group. Setting `TRACK_INTERFACES_ONLY_WITH_GROUPS` to `no` enables failure and repair detection on all IP interfaces, even if they are not part of a named IPMP group. IP interfaces that are tracked but not part of a named IPMP group are considered to be part of the “anonymous” IPMP group. In addition to having no name, this IPMP group is special in that its IP interfaces are not equivalent and thus cannot take over for one another in the event of an IP interface failure. That is, the anonymous IPMP group can only be used for failure and repair detection, and provides no high-availability or load-spreading.

As described above, when `in.mpathd` detects that an IP interface has repaired, it activates it so that it will again be used to send and receive IP data traffic. However, if `FAILBACK` is set to `no`, then the IP interface will only be activated if no other active IP interfaces in the group remain. However, the interface may subsequently be activated if another IP interface in the group fails.

**Files** `/etc/default/mpathd` Contains default values used by the `in.mpathd` daemon.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWcsr         |

**See Also** [if\\_mpadm\(1M\)](#), [ifconfig\(1M\)](#), [ipmpstat\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [icmp\(7P\)](#), [icmp6\(7P\)](#),

*System Administration Guide: IP Services*

**Diagnostics** IP interface *interface\_name* has a hardware address which is not unique in group *group\_name*; offlining

**Description:** For probe-based failure detection, load-spreading, and other code IPMP features to work properly, each IP interface in an IPMP group must have a unique hardware address. If this requirement is not met, `in.mpathd` will automatically offline all but one of the IP interfaces with duplicate hardware addresses.

IP interface *interface\_name* now has a unique hardware address in group *group\_name*; onlining

**Description:** The previously-detected duplicate hardware address is now unique, and therefore `in.mpathd` has brought *interface\_name* back online.

Test address *address* is not unique in group; disabling probe-based failure detection on *interface\_name*

**Description:** For `in.mpathd` to perform probe-based failure detection, each test address in the group must be unique.

No test address configured on interface *interface\_name* disabling probe-based failure detection on it

**Description:** For `in.mpathd` to perform probe-based failure detection on an IP interface, it must be configured with a test address: IPv4, IPv6, or both.

IP *interface\_name* in group *group\_name* is not plumbed for IPv[4|6], affecting IPv[4|6] connectivity

**Description:** All IP interfaces in a multipathing group must be homogeneously plumbed. For example, if one IP interface is plumbed for IPv4, then all IP interfaces in the group must be plumbed for IPv4, or IPv4 packets will not be able to be reliably sent and received. The STREAMS modules pushed on all IP interfaces must also be identical.

The link has come up on *interface\_name* more than 2 times in the last minute; disabling repair until it stabilizes.

**Description:** To limit the impact of interfaces with intermittent hardware (such as a bad cable), `in.mpathd` will not consider an IP interface with a frequently changing link state as repaired until the link state stabilizes.

Invalid failure detection time of *time*, assuming default 10000 ms

**Description:** An invalid value was encountered for `FAILURE_DETECTION_TIME` in the `/etc/default/mpathd` file.

Too small failure detection time of *time*, assuming minimum of 100 ms

**Description:** The minimum value that can be specified for `FAILURE_DETECTION_TIME` is currently 100 milliseconds.

Invalid value for `FAILBACK` *value*

**Description:** Valid values for the boolean variable `FAILBACK` are yes or no.

Invalid value for TRACK\_INTERFACES\_ONLY\_WITH\_GROUPS *value*

**Description:** Valid values for the boolean variable TRACK\_INTERFACES\_ONLY\_WITH\_GROUPS are yes or no.

Cannot meet requested failure detection time of *time* ms on (inet[6] *interface\_name*) new failure detection time for group *group\_name* is *time* ms

**Description:** The round trip time for ICMP probes is higher than necessary to maintain the current failure detection time. The network is probably congested or the probe targets are loaded. in.mpathd automatically increases the failure detection time to whatever it can achieve under these conditions.

Improved failure detection time *time* ms on (inet[6] *interface\_name*) for group *group\_name*

**Description:** The round trip time for ICMP probes has now decreased and in.mpathd has lowered the failure detection time correspondingly.

IP interface failure detected on *interface\_name*

**Description:** in.mpathd has detected a failure on *interface\_name*, and has set the IFF\_FAILED flag on *interface\_name*, ensuring that it will not be used for IP data traffic.

IP interface repair detected on *interface\_name*

**Description:** in.mpathd has detected a repair on *interface\_name*, and has cleared the IFF\_FAILED flag. Depending on the administrative configuration, the *interface\_name* may again be used for IP data traffic.

All IP interfaces in group *group* are now unusable

**Description:** in.mpathd has determined that none of the IP interfaces in *group* can be used for IP data traffic, breaking network connectivity for the group.

At least 1 IP interface (*interface\_name*) in group *group* is now usable

**Description:** in.mpathd has determined that at least one of the IP interfaces in *group* can again be used for IP data traffic, restoring network connectivity for the group.

The link has gone down on *interface\_name*

**Description:** in.mpathd has detected that the IFF\_RUNNING flag for *interface\_name* has been cleared, indicating that the link has gone down.

The link has come up on *interface\_name*

**Description:** in.mpathd has detected that the IFF\_RUNNING flag for *interface\_name* has been set, indicating that the link has come up.

**Name** in.ndpd – daemon for IPv6 autoconfiguration

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/inet/in.ndpd [-adt] [-f *config\_file*]

**Description** in.ndpd provides both the host and router autoconfiguration components of Neighbor Discovery for IPv6 and Stateless and Stateful Address Autoconfiguration for IPv6. In particular, in.ndpd implements:

- router discovery;
- prefix discovery;
- parameter discovery;
- invocation of stateful address autoconfiguration;
- stateless address autoconfiguration; and
- privacy extensions for stateless address autoconfiguration.

Other aspects of Neighbor Discovery are implemented by [ip6\(7P\)](#), including:

- address resolution;
- neighbor unreachability detection; and
- redirect.

The duplicate address detection function is implemented by the system kernel.

in.ndpd is managed by the service management facility (SMF), by means of the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/routing/ndp:default
```

If the `/etc/inet/ndpd.conf` file does not exist or does not set the variable `AdvSendAdvertisements` to true for a network interface, then in.ndpd will make the node a host for that interface, that is, sending router solicitation messages and then using router advertisement messages it receives to autoconfigure the node. Note that in.ndpd only autoconfigures the addresses of global or site-local scope from the prefix advertisement.

If `AdvSendAdvertisements` is set to true for an interface, then in.ndpd will perform router functions on that interface, that is, sending router advertisement messages to autoconfigure the attached hosts, but not use any advertisements it receives for autoconfiguration. However, when sending advertisements, in.ndpd will use the advertisements it sends itself to autoconfigure its prefixes.

Stateless autoconfiguration requires no manual configuration of hosts, minimal (if any) configuration of routers, and no additional servers. The stateless mechanism enables a host to generate its own addresses and uses local information as well as non-local information that is advertised by routers to generate the addresses. in.ndpd will plumb logical interfaces for each of these addresses.

Stateful autoconfiguration involves the [dhcpgent\(1M\)](#) daemon and the use of the DHCPv6 protocol. The dhcpgent daemon is responsible for plumbing the logical interfaces for the acquired addresses, maintaining the leases, and handling duplicate addresses. in.ndpd starts

the `dhcpageant` daemon automatically and signals when DHCPv6 should be started. `in.ndpd` also detects when `dhcpageant` configures the logical interfaces, and sets the appropriate prefix length on each according to received Routing Advertisement messages. `in.ndpd` will not stop `dhcpageant`; use [ifconfig\(1M\)](#) to control `dhcpageant` if necessary.

Temporary addresses that are autoconfigured for an interface can also be implemented. A temporary address token is enabled for one or more interfaces on a host. However, unlike standard, autoconfigured IPv6 addresses, a temporary address consists of the site prefix and a randomly generated 64 bit number. This random number becomes the interface ID segment of the IPv6 address. A link-local address is not generated with the temporary address as the interface ID.

If the kernel detects a duplicate temporary address, `in.ndpd` will automatically choose another.

Routers advertise all prefixes that have been assigned on the link. IPv6 hosts use Neighbor Discovery to obtain a subnet prefix from a local router. Hosts automatically create IPv6 addresses by combining the subnet prefix with an interface IDs that is generated from an interface's MAC address. In the absence of routers, a host can generate only link-local addresses. Link-local addresses can only be used for communication with nodes on the same link.

For information on how to enable IPv6 address autoconfiguration, see [System Administration Guide: IP Services](#)

**Options** Supported options and equivalent SMF service properties are listed below. SMF service properties are set using a command of the form:

```
routeadm -m ndp:default key=value
```

-a

Turn off stateless and stateful address auto configuration. When set, the daemon does not autoconfigure any addresses and does not renumber any addresses. This option does the same thing as the following lines in [ndpd.conf\(4\)](#):

```
ifdefault StatefulAddrConf off
ifdefault StatelessAddrConf off
```

Use of this option is equivalent to setting the `stateless_addr_conf` property to false.

-d

Turn on large amounts of debugging output on `stdout`. When set, the program runs in the foreground and stays attached to the controlling terminal. Use of this option is equivalent to setting the `debug` property to true.

-f *config\_file*

Use *config\_file* for configuration information instead of the default `/etc/inet/ndpd.conf`. Use of this option is equivalent to setting the `config_file` property to the configuration file to be used.



-t

Turn on tracing (printing) of all sent and received packets to stdout. When set, the program runs in the foreground and stays attached to the controlling terminal. As such, this option cannot be run under the SMF.

**Files** /etc/inet/ndpd.conf Configuration file. This file is not necessary on a host, but it is required on a router to enable in.ndpd to advertise autoconfiguration information to the hosts.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWcsu         |

**See Also** [dhcpgent\(1M\)](#), [ifconfig\(1M\)](#), [routedm\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [ndpd.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [icmp6\(7P\)](#), [ip6\(7P\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

*System Administration Guide: IP Services*

Narten, T., Nordmark, E., Simpson, W. *RFC 2461, Neighbor Discovery for IP Version 6 (IPv6)*. The Internet Society. December 1998.

Thomson, S., Narten, T. *RFC 2462, IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration*. The Internet Society. December 1998.

Narten, T., and Draves, R. *RFC 3041, Privacy Extensions for Stateless Address Autoconfiguration in IPv6*. The Internet Society. January 2001.

**Diagnostics** Receipt of a SIGHUP signal will make in.ndpd restart and reread /etc/inet/ndpd.conf.

**Notes** The in.ndpd daemon service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/routing/ndp:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#) or [routedm\(1M\)](#).

**Name** in.rarpd, rarpd – DARPA Reverse Address Resolution Protocol server

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/in.rarpd [-d] -a  
/usr/sbin/in.rarpd [-d] *device unit*

**Description** in.rarpd starts a daemon that responds to Reverse Address Resolution Protocol (RARP) requests. The daemon forks a copy of itself that runs in background. It must be run as root.

RARP is used by machines at boot time to discover their Internet Protocol (IP) address. The booting machine provides its Ethernet address in a RARP request message. Using the ethers and hosts databases, in.rarpd maps this Ethernet address into the corresponding IP address which it returns to the booting machine in an RARP reply message. The booting machine must be listed in both databases for in.rarpd to locate its IP address. in.rarpd issues no reply when it fails to locate an IP address.

in.rarpd uses the STREAMS-based Data Link Provider Interface (DLPI) message set to communicate directly with the datalink device driver.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- a Get the list of available network interfaces from IP using the SIOCGIFADDR ioctl and start a RARP daemon process on each interface returned.
- d Print assorted debugging messages while executing.

**Examples** **EXAMPLE 1** Starting An in.rarpd Daemon For Each Network Interface Name Returned From /dev/ip:

The following command starts an in.rarpd for each network interface name returned from /dev/ip:

```
example# /usr/sbin/in.rarpd -a
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Starting An in.rarpd Daemon On The Device /dev/le With The Device Instance Number 0

The following command starts one in.rarpd on the device /dev/le with the device instance number 0.

```
example# /usr/sbin/in.rarpd le 0
```

**Files** /etc/ethers File or other source, as specified by `nsswitch.conf(4)`.  
/etc/hosts File or other source, as specified by `nsswitch.conf(4)`.  
/tftpboot  
/dev/ip  
/dev/arp

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWbsu         |

**See Also** [svcs\(1\)](#), [boot\(1M\)](#), [ifconfig\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [ethers\(4\)](#), [hosts\(4\)](#), [netconfig\(4\)](#), [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [dlpi\(7P\)](#)

Finlayson, R., Mann, T., Mogul, J., and Theimer, M., *RFC 903, A Reverse Address Resolution Protocol*, Network Information Center, SRI International, June 1984.

**Notes** The `in.rarpd` service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/rarp
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

**Name** in.rdisc, rdisc – network router discovery daemon

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/in.rdisc [-a] [-f] [-s] [*send-address*] [*receive-address*]  
 /usr/sbin/in.rdisc -r [-p *preference*] [-T *interval*]  
 [*send-address*] [*receive-address*]

**Description** in.rdisc remains part of the software distribution of the Solaris Operating Environment. It is, however, not used by default. [in.routed\(1M\)](#) includes the functionality provided by in.rdisc. See [routeadm\(1M\)](#) for details of how to specify the IPV4 routing daemon.

in.rdisc implements the ICMP router discovery protocol. The first form of the command is used on hosts and the second form is used on routers.

in.rdisc can be invoked in either the first form (host mode) or second form (router mode).

On a host, in.rdisc populates the network routing tables with default routes. On a router, advertises the router to all the hosts.

in.rdisc is managed by the service management facility (SMF), by means of the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/routing/rdisc:default
```

**Host (First Form)** On a host, in.rdisc listens on the ALL\_HOSTS (224.0.0.1) multicast address for ROUTER\_ADVERTISE messages from routers. The received messages are handled by first ignoring those listed router addresses with which the host does not share a network. Among the remaining addresses, the ones with the highest preference are selected as default routers and a default route is entered in the kernel routing table for each one of them.

Optionally, in.rdisc can avoid waiting for routers to announce themselves by sending out a few ROUTER\_SOLICITATION messages to the ALL\_ROUTERS (224.0.0.2) multicast address when it is started.

A timer is associated with each router address. The address will no longer be considered for inclusion in the routing tables if the timer expires before a new *advertise* message is received from the router. The address will also be excluded from consideration if the host receives an *advertise* message with the preference being maximally negative or with a lifetime of zero.

**Router (Second Form)** When in.rdisc is started on a router, it uses the SIOCGIFCONF [ioctl\(2\)](#) to find the interfaces configured into the system and it starts listening on the ALL\_ROUTERS multicast address on all the interfaces that support multicast. It sends out *advertise* messages to the ALL\_HOSTS multicast address advertising all its IP addresses. A few initial *advertise* messages are sent out during the first 30 seconds and after that it will transmit *advertise* messages approximately every 600 seconds.

When in.rdisc receives a *solicitation* message, it sends an *advertise* message to the host that sent the *solicitation* message.

When `in.rdisc` is terminated by a signal, it sends out an *advertise* message with the preference being maximally negative.

**Options** Supported options and equivalent SMF service properties are listed below. SMF service properties are set using a command of the form:

```
routeadm -m rdisc:default key=value
```

- a Accept all routers independent of the preference they have in their *advertise* messages. Normally, `in.rdisc` only accepts (and enters in the kernel routing tables) the router or routers with the highest preference. Use of this option is equivalent to setting the `accept_all` property to true.
- f Run `in.rdisc` forever even if no routers are found. Normally, `in.rdisc` gives up if it has not received any *advertise* message after soliciting three times, in which case it exits with a non-zero exit code. If `-f` is not specified in the first form then `-s` must be specified. For SMF execution, this option is required.
- r Act as a router, rather than a host. Use of this option is equivalent to setting the `act_as_router` property to true.
- s Send three *solicitation* messages initially to quickly discover the routers when the system is booted. When `-s` is specified, `in.rdisc` exits with a non-zero exit code if it can not find any routers. This can be overridden with the `-f` option. This option is not compatible with SMF execution and is not supported for the `rdisc` service.
- p *preference* Set the preference transmitted in the *solicitation* messages. The default is zero. Use of this option is equivalent to setting the `preference` property.
- T *interval* Set the interval between transmitting the *advertise* messages. The default time is 600 seconds. Use of this option is equivalent to setting the `transmit_interval` property.

The `send-address` and `receive-address` daemon options can be set by means of the `send_address` and `receive_address` properties.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWroute       |

**See Also** [in.routed\(1M\)](#), [routeadm\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [ioctl\(2\)](#), [gateways\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [icmp\(7P\)](#), [inet\(7P\)](#)

Deering, S.E., editor, *ICMP Router Discovery Messages*, RFC 1256, Network Information Center, SRI International, Menlo Park, California, September 1991.

**Name** in.rexecd, rexecd – remote execution server

**Synopsis** in.rexecd

**Description** in.rexecd is the server for the [rexec\(3SOCKET\)](#) routine. The server provides remote execution facilities with authentication based on user names and passwords. It is invoked automatically as needed by [inetd\(1M\)](#), and then executes the following protocol:

1. The server reads characters from the socket up to a null (\0) byte. The resultant string is interpreted as an ASCII number, base 10.
2. If the number received in step 1 is non-zero, it is interpreted as the port number of a secondary stream to be used for the `stderr`. A second connection is then created to the specified port on the client's machine.
3. A null terminated user name of at most 16 characters is retrieved on the initial socket.
4. A null terminated password of at most 16 characters is retrieved on the initial socket.
5. A null terminated command to be passed to a shell is retrieved on the initial socket. The length of the command is limited by the upper bound on the size of the system's argument list.
6. rexecd then validates the user as is done at login time and, if the authentication was successful, changes to the user's home directory, and establishes the user and group protections of the user. If any of these steps fail the connection is aborted and a diagnostic message is returned.
7. A null byte is returned on the connection associated with the `stderr` and the command line is passed to the normal login shell of the user. The shell inherits the network connections established by rexecd.

**Usage** in.rexecd and rexecd are IPv6-enabled. See [ip6\(7P\)](#).

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWrcmds       |

**See Also** [svcs\(1\)](#), [inetd\(1M\)](#), [inetadm\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [rexec\(3SOCKET\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [ip6\(7P\)](#)

**Diagnostics** All diagnostic messages are returned on the connection associated with the `stderr`, after which any network connections are closed. An error is indicated by a leading byte with a value of 1 (0 is returned in step 7 above upon successful completion of all the steps prior to the command execution).

username too long            The name is longer than 16 characters.

password too long            The password is longer than 16 characters.

|                      |                                                                                                |
|----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| command too long     | The command line passed exceeds the size of the argument list (as configured into the system). |
| Login incorrect.     | No password file entry for the user name existed.                                              |
| Password incorrect.  | The wrong password was supplied.                                                               |
| No remote directory. | The <code>chdir</code> command to the home directory failed.                                   |
| Try again.           | A fork by the server failed.                                                                   |
| /usr/bin/sh: ...     | The user's login shell could not be started.                                                   |

**Notes** The `in.rexecd` service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/rexec:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). Responsibility for initiating and restarting this service is delegated to [inetd\(1M\)](#). Use [inetadm\(1M\)](#) to make configuration changes and to view configuration information for this service. The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

**Name** in.ripngd – network routing daemon for IPv6

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/in.ripngd [-s] [-q] [-t] [-p *n*] [-P] [-v ]  
[*logfile*]

**Description** in.ripngd is the IPv6 equivalent of [in.routed\(1M\)](#). It is invoked at boot time to manage the network routing tables. The routing daemon uses the Routing Information Protocol for IPv6.

in.ripngd is managed by the service management facility (SMF), by means of the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/routing/ripng:default
```

In normal operation, in.ripngd listens on the [udp\(7P\)](#) socket port 521 for routing information packets. If the host is an internetwork router, it periodically supplies copies of its routing tables to any directly connected hosts and networks.

When in.ripngd is started, it uses the [SIOCGLIFCONF ioctl\(2\)](#) to find those directly connected IPv6 interfaces configured into the system and marked “up”; the software loopback interface is ignored. If multiple interfaces are present, it is assumed the host will forward packets between networks. in.ripngd then multicasts a request packet on each IPv6 interface and enters a loop, listening for request and response packets from other hosts.

When a request packet is received, in.ripngd formulates a reply based on the information maintained in its internal tables. The response packet contains a list of known routes. With each route is a number specifying the number of bits in the prefix. The prefix is the number of bits in the high order part of an address that indicate the subnet or network that the route describes. Each route reported also has a “*hop count*” metric. A count of 16 or greater is considered “infinity.” The metric associated with each route returned provides a metric relative to the sender.

The request packets received by in.ripngd are used to update the routing tables if one of the following conditions is satisfied:

- No routing table entry exists for the destination network or host, and the metric indicates the destination is “reachable”, that is, the *hop count* is not infinite.
- The source host of the packet is the same as the router in the existing routing table entry. That is, updated information is being received from the very internetwork router through which packets for the destination are being routed.
- The existing entry in the routing table has not been updated for a period of time, defined to be 90 seconds, and the route is at least as cost-effective as the current route.
- The new route describes a shorter route to the destination than the one currently stored in the routing tables; this is determined by comparing the metric of the new route against the one stored in the table.



When an update is applied, `in.ripngd` records the change in its internal tables and generates a response packet to all directly connected hosts and networks. To allow possible unstable situations to settle, `in.ripngd` waits a short period of time (no more than 30 seconds) before modifying the kernel's routing tables.

In addition to processing incoming packets, `in.ripngd` also periodically checks the routing table entries. If an entry has not been updated for 3 minutes, the entry's metric is set to infinity and marked for deletion. Deletions are delayed an additional 60 seconds to insure the invalidation is propagated throughout the internet.

Hosts acting as internetwork routers gratuitously supply their routing tables every 30 seconds to all directly connected hosts and networks.

**Options** `in.ripngd` supports the options listed below. Listed with the options are the equivalent SMF property values. These are set for the `ripng:default` service with a command of the form:

```
routeadm -m ripng:default key=value
```

- p *n* Send and receive the routing packets from other routers using the UDP port number *n*. Use of this option is equivalent to setting the `udp_port` property.
- P Do not use poison reverse. Use of this option is equivalent to setting the `poison_reverse` property to false.
- q Do not supply routing information. Use of this option is equivalent to setting the `quiet_mode` property to true.
- s Force `in.ripngd` to supply routing information whether it is acting as an internetwork router or not. Use of this option is equivalent to setting the `supply_routes` property to true.
- t Print all packets sent or received to standard output. `in.ripngd` will not divorce itself from the controlling terminal. Accordingly, interrupts from the keyboard will kill the process. Not supported by the `ripng` service.
- v Print all changes made to the routing tables to standard output with a timestamp. Use of this option is equivalent to setting the `verbose` property to true.

Any other argument supplied to this option is interpreted as the name of the file in which the actions of `in.ripngd`, as specified by this option or by `-t`, should be logged instead of being sent to standard output.

The logfile can be specified for the `ripng` service by means of the `log_file` property.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWroute       |

**See Also** [in.routed\(1M\)](#), [routeadm\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [ioctl\(2\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [udp\(7P\)](#)

G. Malkin, R. Minnear, *RFC 2080, RIPng for IPv6*, January 1997.

**Notes** The kernel's routing tables may not correspond to those of `in.ripngd` for short periods of time while processes that utilize existing routes exit; the only remedy for this is to place the routing process in the kernel.

`in.ripngd` currently does not support all of the functionality of [in.routed\(1M\)](#). Future releases may support more if appropriate.

`in.ripngd` initially obtains a routing table by examining the interfaces configured on a machine. It then sends a request on all directly connected networks for more routing information. `in.ripngd` does not recognize or use any routing information already established on the machine prior to startup. With the exception of interface changes, `in.ripngd` does not see any routing table changes that have been done by other programs on the machine, for example, routes added, deleted or flushed by means of the [route\(1M\)](#) command. Therefore, these types of changes should not be done while `in.ripngd` is running. Rather, shut down `in.ripngd`, make the changes required, and then restart `in.ripngd`.

**Name** in.rlogind, rlogind – remote login server

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/in.rlogind [-k5ExXciPp] [-s tos] [-S keytab]  
[-M realm]

**Description** in.rlogind is the server for the [rlogin\(1\)](#) program. The server provides a remote login facility with authentication based on Kerberos V5 or privileged port numbers.

in.rlogind is invoked by [inetd\(1M\)](#) when a remote login connection is established. When Kerberos V5 authentication is required (see option -k below), the authentication sequence is as follows:

- Check Kerberos V5 authentication.
- Check authorization according to the rules in [krb5\\_auth\\_rules\(5\)](#).
- Prompt for a password if any checks fail and `/etc/pam.conf` is configured to do so.

In order for Kerberos authentication to work, a `host/<FQDN>` Kerberos principal must exist for each Fully Qualified Domain Name associated with the in.rlogind server. Each of these `host/<FQDN>` principals must have a keytab entry in the `/etc/krb5/krb5.keytab` file on the in.rlogind server. An example principal might be:

```
host/bigmachine.eng.example.com
```

See [kadmin\(1M\)](#) or [gkadmin\(1M\)](#) for instructions on adding a principal to a `krb5.keytab` file. See *System Administration Guide: Security Services* for a discussion of Kerberos authentication.

If Kerberos V5 authentication is not enabled, then the authentication procedure follows the standard `rlogin` protocol:

- The server checks the client's source port. If the port is not in the range 512-1023, the server aborts the connection.
- The server checks the client's source address. If an entry for the client exists in both `/etc/hosts` and `/etc/hosts.equiv`, a user logging in from the client is not prompted for a password. If the address is associated with a host for which no corresponding entry exists in `/etc/hosts`, the user is prompted for a password, regardless of whether or not an entry for the client is present in `/etc/hosts.equiv`. See [hosts\(4\)](#) and [hosts.equiv\(4\)](#).

Once the source port and address have been checked, in.rlogind allocates a pseudo-terminal and manipulates file descriptors so that the slave half of the pseudo-terminal becomes the `stdin`, `stdout`, and `stderr` for a login process. The login process is an instance of the [login\(1\)](#) program, invoked with the -r.

The login process then proceeds with the [pam\(3PAM\)](#) authentication process. See SECURITY below. If automatic authentication fails, it reprompts the user to login.

The parent of the login process manipulates the master side of the pseudo-terminal, operating as an intermediary between the login process and the client instance of the `rlogin` program. In normal operation, a packet protocol is invoked to provide Ctrl-S and Ctrl-Q type facilities and propagate interrupt signals to the remote programs. The login process propagates the client terminal's baud rate and terminal type, as found in the environment variable, `TERM`.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- 5 Same as `-k`, for backwards compatibility.
- c Requires Kerberos V5 clients to present a cryptographic checksum of initial connection information like the name of the user that the client is trying to access in the initial authenticator. This checksum provides additional security by preventing an attacker from changing the initial connection information. This option is mutually exclusive with the `-i` option.
- e Creates an encrypted session.
- E Same as `-e`, for backwards compatibility.
- i Ignores authenticator checksums if provided. This option ignores authenticator checksums presented by current Kerberos clients to protect initial connection information. Option `-i` is the opposite of option `-c`.
- k Allows Kerberos V5 authentication with the `.k5login` access control file to be trusted. If this authentication system is used by the client and the authorization check is passed, then the user is allowed to log in.
- M *realm* Uses the indicated Kerberos V5 realm. By default, the daemon will determine its realm from the settings in the `krb5.conf(4)` file.
- p Prompts for authentication only if other authentication checks fail.
- P Prompts for a password in addition to other authentication methods.
- s *tos* Sets the IP TOS option.
- S *keytab* Sets the KRB5 keytab file to use. The `/etc/krb5/krb5.keytab` file is used by default.
- x Same as `-e`, for backwards compatibility.
- X Same as `-e`, for backwards compatibility.

**Usage** `rlogind` and `in.rlogind` are IPv6-enabled. See [ip6\(7P\)](#). IPv6 is not currently supported with Kerberos V5 authentication.

Typically, Kerberized `rlogin` service runs on port 543 (`klogin`) and Kerberized, encrypted `rlogin` service runs on port 2105 (`eklogin`). The corresponding FMRI entries are:

```
svc:/network/login:klogin (rlogin with kerberos)
svc:/network/login:eklogin (rlogin with kerberos and encryption)
```

**Security** `in.rlogind` uses [pam\(3PAM\)](#) for authentication, account management, and session management. The PAM configuration policy, listed through `/etc/pam.conf`, specifies the modules to be used for `in.rlogind`. Here is a partial `pam.conf` file with entries for the `rlogin` command using the “rhosts” and UNIX authentication modules, and the UNIX account, session management, and password management modules.

```

rlogin auth sufficient pam_rhosts_auth.so.1
rlogin auth requisite pam_authtok_get.so.1
rlogin auth required pam_dhkeys.so.1
rlogin auth required pam_unix_auth.so.1

rlogin account required pam_unix_roles.so.1
rlogin account required pam_unix_projects.so.1
rlogin account required pam_unix_account.so.1

rlogin session required pam_unix_session.so.1

```

With this configuration, the server checks the client's source address. If an entry for the client exists in both `/etc/hosts` and `/etc/hosts.equiv`, a user logging in from the client is not prompted for a password. If the address is associated with a host for which no corresponding entry exists in `/etc/hosts`, the user is prompted for a password, regardless of whether or not an entry for the client is present in `/etc/hosts.equiv`. See [hosts\(4\)](#) and [hosts.equiv\(4\)](#).

When running a Kerberized `rlogin` service (with or without the encryption option), the `pam` service name that should be used is “krlogin”.

If there are no entries for the `rlogin` service, then the entries for the “other” service will be used. If multiple authentication modules are listed, then the user may be prompted for multiple passwords. Removing the `pam_rhosts_auth.so.1` entry will disable the `/etc/hosts.equiv` and `~/.rhosts` authentication protocol and the user would always be forced to type the password. The *sufficient* flag indicates that authentication through the `pam_rhosts_auth.so.1` module is sufficient to authenticate the user. Only if this authentication fails is the next authentication module used.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWrcmds       |

**See Also** [login\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [rlogin\(1\)](#), [gkadmin\(1M\)](#), [in.rshd\(1M\)](#), [inetadm\(1M\)](#), [inetd\(1M\)](#), [kadmin\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [pam\(3PAM\)](#), [hosts\(4\)](#), [hosts.equiv\(4\)](#), [krb5.conf\(4\)](#), [pam.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#), [krb5\\_auth\\_rules\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authtok\\_check\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authtok\\_get\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authtok\\_store\(5\)](#), [pam\\_dhkeys\(5\)](#), [pam\\_passwd\\_auth\(5\)](#), [pam\\_unix\\_account\(5\)](#), [pam\\_unix\\_auth\(5\)](#), [pam\\_unix\\_session\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

*System Administration Guide: Security Services*

**Diagnostics** All diagnostic messages are returned on the connection associated with the `stderr`, after which any network connections are closed. An error is indicated by a leading byte with a value of 1.

Hostname for your address unknown.      No entry in the host name database existed for the client's machine.

Try again.      A *fork* by the server failed.

/usr/bin/sh: ...      The user's login shell could not be started.

**Notes** The authentication procedure used here assumes the integrity of each client machine and the connecting medium. This is insecure, but it is useful in an “open” environment.

A facility to allow all data exchanges to be encrypted should be present.

The [pam\\_unix\(5\)](#) module is no longer supported. Similar functionality is provided by [pam\\_authtok\\_check\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authtok\\_get\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authtok\\_store\(5\)](#), [pam\\_dhkeys\(5\)](#), [pam\\_passwd\\_auth\(5\)](#), [pam\\_unix\\_account\(5\)](#), [pam\\_unix\\_auth\(5\)](#), and [pam\\_unix\\_session\(5\)](#).

The `in.rlogind` service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/login:rlogin (rlogin)
svc:/network/login:klogin (rlogin with kerberos)
svc:/network/login:eklogin (rlogin with kerberos and encryption)
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). Responsibility for initiating and restarting this service is delegated to [inetd\(1M\)](#). Use [inetadm\(1M\)](#) to make configuration changes and to view configuration information for this service. The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

**Name** in.routed, routed – network routing daemon

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/in.routed [-AdghmnqsStVz] [-T *tracefile* [-v]]  
[-F *net[/mask ][,metric]]* [-P *params*]

**Description** The daemon `in.routed`, often referred to as `routed`, is invoked at boot time to manage the network routing tables. It uses Routing Information Protocol, RIPv1 (RFC 1058), RIPv2 (RFC 2453), and Internet Router Discovery Protocol (RFC 1256) to maintain the kernel routing table. The RIPv1 protocol is based on the reference 4.3BSD daemon.

`in.routed` is managed by means of the service management facility (SMF), using the fault management resource identifier (FMRI):

```
svc:/network/routing/route:default
```

The daemon listens on a udp socket for the route service (see [services\(4\)](#)) for Routing Information Protocol packets. It also sends and receives multicast Router Discovery ICMP messages. If the host is a router, `in.routed` periodically supplies copies of its routing tables to any directly connected hosts and networks. It also advertises or solicits default routes using Router Discovery ICMP messages.

When started (or when a network interface is later turned on), `in.routed` uses an AF\_ROUTE address family facility to find those directly connected interfaces configured into the system and marked “up”. It adds necessary routes for the interfaces to the kernel routing table. Soon after being first started, and provided there is at least one interface on which RIP has not been disabled, `in.routed` deletes all pre-existing non-static routes in the kernel table. Static routes in the kernel table are preserved and included in RIP responses if they have a valid RIP metric (see [route\(1M\)](#)).

If more than one interface is present (not counting the loopback interface), it is assumed that the host should forward packets among the connected networks. After transmitting a RIP request and Router Discovery Advertisements or Solicitations on a new interface, the daemon enters a loop, listening for RIP request and response and Router Discovery packets from other hosts.

When a request packet is received, `in.routed` formulates a reply based on the information maintained in its internal tables. The response packet generated contains a list of known routes, each marked with a “hop count” metric (a count of 16 or greater is considered “infinite”). Advertised metrics reflect the metric associated with an interface (see [ifconfig\(1M\)](#)), so setting the metric on an interface is an effective way to steer traffic.

Responses do not include routes with a first hop on the requesting network, to implement in part split-horizon. Requests from query programs such as [rtquery\(1M\)](#) are answered with the complete table.

The routing table maintained by the daemon includes space for several gateways for each destination to speed recovery from a failing router. RIP response packets received are used to

update the routing tables, provided they are from one of the several currently recognized gateways or advertise a better metric than at least one of the existing gateways.

When an update is applied, `in.routed` records the change in its own tables and updates the kernel routing table if the best route to the destination changes. The change in the kernel routing table is reflected in the next batch of response packets sent. If the next response is not scheduled for a while, a flash update response containing only recently changed routes is sent.

In addition to processing incoming packets, `in.routed` also periodically checks the routing table entries. If an entry has not been updated for 3 minutes, the entry's metric is set to infinity and marked for deletion. Deletions are delayed until the route has been advertised with an infinite metric to insure the invalidation is propagated throughout the local internet. This is a form of poison reverse.

Routes in the kernel table that are added or changed as a result of ICMP Redirect messages are deleted after a while to minimize black-holes. When a TCP connection suffers a timeout, the kernel tells `in.routed`, which deletes all redirected routes through the gateway involved, advances the age of all RIP routes through the gateway to allow an alternate to be chosen, and advances the age of any relevant Router Discovery Protocol default routes.

Hosts acting as internetwork routers gratuitously supply their routing tables every 30 seconds to all directly connected hosts and networks. These RIP responses are sent to the broadcast address on nets that support broadcasting, to the destination address on point-to-point links, and to the router's own address on other networks. If RIPv2 is enabled, multicast packets are sent on interfaces that support multicasting.

If no response is received on a remote interface, if there are errors while sending responses, or if there are more errors than input or output (see [netstat\(1M\)](#)), then the cable or some other part of the interface is assumed to be disconnected or broken, and routes are adjusted appropriately.

The Internet Router Discovery Protocol is handled similarly. When the daemon is supplying RIP routes, it also listens for Router Discovery Solicitations and sends Advertisements. When it is quiet and listening to other RIP routers, it sends Solicitations and listens for Advertisements. If it receives a good Advertisement and it is not multi-homed, it stops listening for broadcast or multicast RIP responses. It tracks several advertising routers to speed recovery when the currently chosen router dies. If all discovered routers disappear, the daemon resumes listening to RIP responses. It continues listening to RIP while using Router Discovery if multi-homed to ensure all interfaces are used.

The Router Discovery standard requires that advertisements have a default "lifetime" of 30 minutes. That means should something happen, a client can be without a good route for 30 minutes. It is a good idea to reduce the default to 45 seconds using `-P rdisc_interval=45` on the command line or `rdisc_interval=45` in the `/etc/gateways` file. See [gateways\(4\)](#).



While using Router Discovery (which happens by default when the system has a single network interface and a Router Discover Advertisement is received), there is a single default route and a variable number of redirected host routes in the kernel table. On a host with more than one network interface, this default route will be via only one of the interfaces. Thus, multi-homed hosts running with `-q` might need the `no_rdisc` argument described below.

To support “legacy” systems that can handle neither RIPv2 nor Router Discovery, you can use the `pm_rdisc` parameter in the `/etc/gateways`. See [gateways\(4\)](#).

By default, neither Router Discovery advertisements nor solicitations are sent over point-to-point links (for example, PPP). The Solaris OE uses a netmask of all ones (255.255.255.255) on point-to-point links.

`in.routed` supports the notion of “distant” passive or active gateways. When the daemon is started, it reads the file `/etc/gateways` to find such distant gateways that cannot be located using only information from a routing socket, to discover if some of the local gateways are passive, and to obtain other parameters. Gateways specified in this manner should be marked passive if they are not expected to exchange routing information, while gateways marked active should be willing to exchange RIP packets. Routes through passive gateways are installed in the kernel's routing tables once upon startup and are not included in transmitted RIP responses.

Distant active gateways are treated like network interfaces. RIP responses are sent to the distant active gateway. If no responses are received, the associated route is deleted from the kernel table and RIP responses are advertised via other interfaces. If the distant gateway resumes sending RIP responses, the associated route is restored.

Distant active gateways can be useful on media that do not support broadcasts or multicasts but otherwise act like classic shared media, such as some ATM networks. One can list all RIP routers reachable on the HIPPI or ATM network in `/etc/gateways` with a series of “host” lines. Note that it is usually desirable to use RIPv2 in such situations to avoid generating lists of inferred host routes.

Gateways marked external are also passive, but are not placed in the kernel routing table, nor are they included in routing updates. The function of external entries is to indicate that another routing process will install such a route if necessary, and that other routes to that destination should not be installed by `in.routed`. Such entries are required only when both routers might learn of routes to the same destination.

**Options** Listed below are available options. Any other argument supplied is interpreted as the name of a file in which the actions of `in.routed` should be logged. It is better to use `-T` (described below) instead of appending the name of the trace file to the command. Associated SMF properties for these options are described, and can be set by means of a command of the form:

```
routeadm -m route:default name=value
```

-A

Do not ignore RIPv2 authentication if we do not care about RIPv2 authentication. This option is required for conformance with RFC 2453. However, it makes no sense and breaks using RIP as a discovery protocol to ignore all RIPv2 packets that carry authentication when this machine does not care about authentication. This option is equivalent to setting the `ignore_auth` property value to false.

-d

Do not run in the background. This option is meant for interactive use and is not usable under the SMF.

-F net [ /mask ] [ , metric ]

Minimize routes in transmissions via interfaces with addresses that match *net* (network number)/*mask* (netmask), and synthesizes a default route to this machine with the *metric*. The intent is to reduce RIP traffic on slow, point-to-point links, such as PPP links, by replacing many large UDP packets of RIP information with a single, small packet containing a “fake” default route. If *metric* is absent, a value of 14 is assumed to limit the spread of the “fake” default route. This is a dangerous feature that, when used carelessly, can cause routing loops. Notice also that more than one interface can match the specified network number and mask. See also -g. Use of this option is equivalent to setting the `minimize_routes` property.

-g

Used on internetwork routers to offer a route to the “default” destination. It is equivalent to -F 0/0, 1 and is present mostly for historical reasons. A better choice is -P pm\_rdisc on the command line or `pm_rdisc` in the `/etc/gateways` file. A larger metric will be used with the latter alternatives, reducing the spread of the potentially dangerous default route. The -g (or -P) option is typically used on a gateway to the Internet, or on a gateway that uses another routing protocol whose routes are not reported to other local routers. Note that because a metric of 1 is used, this feature is dangerous. Its use more often creates chaos with a routing loop than solves problems. Use of this option is equivalent to setting the `offer_default_route` property to true.

-h

Causes host or point-to-point routes not to be advertised, provided there is a network route going the same direction. That is a limited kind of aggregation. This option is useful on gateways to LANs that have other gateway machines connected with point-to-point links such as SLIP. Use of this option is equivalent to setting the `advertise_host_routes` property to false.

-m

Cause the machine to advertise a host or point-to-point route to its primary interface. It is useful on multi-homed machines such as NFS servers. This option should not be used except when the cost of the host routes it generates is justified by the popularity of the server. It is effective only when the machine is supplying routing information, because there is more than one interface. The -m option overrides the -q option to the limited extent

---

of advertising the host route. Use of this option is equivalent to setting the `advertise_host_routes_primary` property to true.

- n  
Do not install routes in kernel. By default, routes are installed in the kernel. Use of this option is equivalent to setting the `install_routes` property to false.
- P *params*  
Equivalent to adding the parameter line *params* to the `/etc/gateways` file. Can also be set by means of the `parameters` property.
- q  
Opposite of the `-s` option. This is the default when only one interface is present. With this explicit option, the daemon is always in “quiet mode” for RIP and does not supply routing information to other computers. Use of this option is equivalent to setting the `quiet_mode` property to true.
- s  
Force `in.routed` to supply routing information. This is the default if multiple network interfaces are present on which RIP or Router Discovery have not been disabled, and if the `/dev/ipn` variable `ip_forwarding` is set to 1. Use of this option is equivalent to setting the `supply_routes` property to true.
- S  
If `in.routed` is not acting as an internetwork router, instead of entering the whole routing table in the kernel, it enters only a default route for each internetwork router. This reduces the memory requirements without losing any routing reliability. This option is provided for compatibility with the previous, RIPv1-only `in.routed`. Use of this option is generally discouraged. Use of this option is equivalent to setting the `default_routes_only` property to true.
- t  
Runs in the foreground (as with `-d`) and logs the contents of the packets received (as with `-zz`). This is for compatibility with prior versions of Solaris and has no SMF equivalent.
- T *tracefile*  
Increases the debugging level to at least 1 and causes debugging information to be appended to the trace file. Because of security concerns, do not to run `in.routed` routinely with tracing directed to a file. Use of this option is equivalent to setting the `log_file` property to `tracefile` path.
- v  
Enables debug. Similar to `-z`, except, where `-z` increments `trace_level`, `-v` sets `trace_level` to 1. Also, `-v` requires the `-T` option. Use of this option is equivalent to setting the `debug` property to true.
- V  
Displays the version of the daemon.

-z

Increase the debugging level, which causes more information to be logged on the tracefile specified with -T or stdout. The debugging level can be increased or decreased with the SIGUSR1 or SIGUSR2 signals or with the [rtquery\(1M\)](#) command.

- Files** /etc/defaultrouter If this file is present and contains the address of a default router, the system startup script does not run in.routed. See [defaultrouter\(4\)](#).
- /etc/gateways List of distant gateways and general configuration options for in.routed. See [gateways\(4\)](#).

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWroute       |

**See Also** [route\(1M\)](#), [routeadm\(1M\)](#), [rtquery\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [ioctl\(2\)](#), [inet\(3SOCKET\)](#), [defaultrouter\(4\)](#), [gateways\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [icmp\(7P\)](#), [inet\(7P\)](#), [udp\(7P\)](#)

*Internet Transport Protocols, XSI 028112, Xerox System Integration Standard*

*Routing Information Protocol, v2 (RFC 2453, STD 0056, November 1998)*

*RIP-v2 MD5 Authentication (RFC 2082, January 1997)*

*Routing Information Protocol, v1 (RFC 1058, June 1988)*

*ICMP Router Discovery Messages (RFC 1256, September 1991)*

**Notes** In keeping with its intended design, this daemon deviates from RFC 2453 in two notable ways:

- By default, in.routed does not discard authenticated RIPv2 messages when RIP authentication is not configured. There is little to gain from dropping authenticated packets when RIPv1 listeners will gladly process them. Using the -A option causes in.routed to conform to the RFC in this case.
- Unauthenticated RIP requests are never discarded, even when RIP authentication is configured. Forwarding tables are not secret and can be inferred through other means such as test traffic. RIP is also the most common router-discovery protocol, and hosts need to send queries that will be answered.

in.routed does not always detect unidirectional failures in network interfaces, for example, when the output side fails.

**Name** in.rshd, rshd – remote shell server

**Synopsis** in.rshd [-k5eciU] [-s *tos*] [-S *keytab*] [-M *realm*]  
[-L *env\_var*] *host.port*

**Description** in.rshd is the server for the [rsh\(1\)](#) program. The server provides remote execution facilities with authentication based on Kerberos V5 or privileged port numbers.

in.rshd is invoked by [inetd\(1M\)](#) each time a shell service is requested.

When Kerberos V5 authentication is required (this can be set with Kerberos-specific options listed below), the following protocol is initiated:

1. Check Kerberos V5 authentication.
2. Check authorization according to rules in [krb5\\_auth\\_rules\(5\)](#).
3. A null byte is returned on the initial socket and the command line is passed to the normal login shell of the user. (The PATH variable is set to /usr/bin.) The shell inherits the network connections established by in.rshd.

In order for Kerberos authentication to work, a host/*<FQDN>* Kerberos principal must exist for each Fully Qualified Domain Name associated with the in.rshd server. Each of these host/*<FQDN>* principals must have a keytab entry in the /etc/krb5/krb5.keytab file on the in.rshd server. An example principal might be:

```
host/bigmachine.eng.example.com
```

See [kadmin\(1M\)](#) or [gkadmin\(1M\)](#) for instructions on adding a principal to a krb5.keytab file. See [System Administration Guide: Security Services](#) for a discussion of Kerberos authentication.

If Kerberos V5 authentication is not enabled, then in.rshd executes the following protocol:

1. The server checks the client's source port. If the port is not in the range 512-1023, the server aborts the connection. The client's host address (in hex) and port number (in decimal) are the arguments passed to in.rshd.
2. The server reads characters from the socket up to a null (\0) byte. The resultant string is interpreted as an ASCII number, base 10.
3. If the number received in step 2 is non-zero, it is interpreted as the port number of a secondary stream to be used for the stderr. A second connection is then created to the specified port on the client's machine. The source port of this second connection is also in the range 512-1023.
4. A null-terminated user name of at most 16 characters is retrieved on the initial socket. This user name is interpreted as the user identity on the *client's* machine.
5. A null terminated user name of at most 16 characters is retrieved on the initial socket. This user name is interpreted as a user identity to use on the *server's* machine.

6. A null terminated command to be passed to a shell is retrieved on the initial socket. The length of the command is limited by the upper bound on the size of the system's argument list.
7. `in.rshd` then validates the user according to the following steps. The remote user name is looked up in the password file and a `chdir` is performed to the user's home directory. If the lookup fails, the connection is terminated. If the `chdir` fails, it does a `chdir` to `/` (root). If the user is not the superuser, (user ID 0), and if the `pam_rhosts_auth` PAM module is configured for authentication, the file `/etc/hosts.equiv` is consulted for a list of hosts considered "equivalent". If the client's host name is present in this file, the authentication is considered successful. See the SECURITY section below for a discussion of PAM authentication.  
  
If the lookup fails, or the user is the superuser, then the file `.rhosts` in the home directory of the remote user is checked for the machine name and identity of the user on the client's machine. If this lookup fails, the connection is terminated
8. A null byte is returned on the initial connection and the command line is passed to the normal login shell of the user. The `PATH` variable is set to `/usr/bin`. The shell inherits the network connections established by `in.rshd`.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- 5 Same as `-k`, for backwards compatibility
- c Requires Kerberos V5 clients to present a cryptographic checksum of initial connection information like the name of the user that the client is trying to access in the initial authenticator. This checksum provides additional security by preventing an attacker from changing the initial connection information. This option is mutually exclusive with the `-i` option.
- e Requires the client to encrypt the connection.
- i Ignores authenticator checksums if provided. This option ignores authenticator checksums presented by current Kerberos clients to protect initial connection information. Option `-i` is the opposite of option `-c`.
- k Allows Kerberos V5 authentication with the `.k5login` access control file to be trusted. If this authentication system is used by the client and the authorization check is passed, then the user is allowed to log in.
- L *env\_var* List of environment variables that need to be saved and passed along.
- M *realm* Uses the indicated Kerberos V5 realm. By default, the daemon will determine its realm from the settings in the `krb5.conf(4)` file.
- s *tos* Sets the IP TOS option.
- S *keytab* Sets the KRB5 keytab file to use. The `/etc/krb5/krb5.keytab` file is used by default.

-U Refuses connections that cannot be mapped to a name through the `getnameinfo(3SOCKET)` function.

**Usage** `rshd` and `in.rshd` are IPv6-enabled. See [ip6\(7P\)](#). IPv6 is not currently supported with Kerberos V5 authentication.

The Kerberized `rshd` service runs on port 544 (kshell). The corresponding FMRI entry is:   
`svc:/network/shell:kshell (rshd with kerberos (ipv4 only))`

**Security** `in.rshd` uses [pam\(3PAM\)](#) for authentication, account management, and session management. The PAM configuration policy, listed through `/etc/pam.conf`, specifies the modules to be used for `in.rshd`. Here is a partial `pam.conf` file with entries for the `rsh` command using `rhosts` authentication, UNIX account management, and session management module.

|     |         |          |                        |
|-----|---------|----------|------------------------|
| rsh | auth    | required | pam_rhosts_auth.so.1   |
| rsh | account | required | pam_unix_roles.so.1    |
| rsh | session | required | pam_unix_projects.so.1 |
| rsh | session | required | pam_unix_account.so.1  |
| rsh | session | required | pam_unix_session.so.1  |

If there are no entries for the `rsh` service, then the entries for the “other” service are used. To maintain the authentication requirement for `in.rshd`, the `rsh` entry must always be configured with the `pam_rhosts_auth.so.1` module.

`in.rshd` can authenticate using Kerberos V5 authentication or [pam\(3PAM\)](#). For Kerberized `rsh` service, the appropriate PAM service name is `krsh`.

**Files** `/etc/hosts.equiv`

`$HOME/.k5login` File containing Kerberos principals that are allowed access.

`/etc/krb5/krb5.conf` Kerberos configuration file.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWrcmds       |

**See Also** [rsh\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [gkadmin\(1M\)](#), [inetadm\(1M\)](#), [inetd\(1M\)](#), [kadmin\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [pam\(3PAM\)](#), [getnameinfo\(3SOCKET\)](#), [hosts\(4\)](#), [krb5.conf\(4\)](#), [pam.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#), [krb5\\_auth\\_rules\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authtok\\_check\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authtok\\_get\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authtok\\_store\(5\)](#), [pam\\_dhkeys\(5\)](#), [pam\\_passwd\\_auth\(5\)](#), [pam\\_rhosts\\_auth\(5\)](#), [pam\\_unix\\_account\(5\)](#), [pam\\_unix\\_auth\(5\)](#), [pam\\_unix\\_session\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [ip6\(7P\)](#)

*System Administration Guide: Security Services*

**Diagnostics** The following diagnostic messages are returned on the connection associated with `stderr`, after which any network connections are closed. An error is indicated by a leading byte with a value of 1 in step 8 above (0 is returned above upon successful completion of all the steps prior to the command execution).

|                                    |                                                                                                |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| locuser too long                   | The name of the user on the client's machine is longer than 16 characters.                     |
| remuser too long                   | The name of the user on the remote machine is longer than 16 characters.                       |
| command too long                   | The command line passed exceeds the size of the argument list (as configured into the system). |
| Hostname for your address unknown. | No entry in the host name database existed for the client's machine.                           |
| Login incorrect.                   | No password file entry for the user name existed.                                              |
| Permission denied.                 | The authentication procedure described above failed.                                           |
| Can't make pipe.                   | The pipe needed for the <code>stderr</code> was not created.                                   |
| Try again.                         | A <i>fork</i> by the server failed.                                                            |

**Notes** The authentication procedure used here assumes the integrity of each client machine and the connecting medium. This is insecure, but it is useful in an “open” environment.

A facility to allow all data exchanges to be encrypted should be present.

The [pam\\_unix\(5\)](#) module is no longer supported. Similar functionality is provided by [pam\\_authtok\\_check\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authtok\\_get\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authtok\\_store\(5\)](#), [pam\\_dhkeys\(5\)](#), [pam\\_passwd\\_auth\(5\)](#), [pam\\_unix\\_account\(5\)](#), [pam\\_unix\\_auth\(5\)](#), and [pam\\_unix\\_session\(5\)](#).

The `in.rshd` service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/shell:default
```



Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using `svcadm(1M)`. Responsibility for initiating and restarting this service is delegated to `inetd(1M)`. Use `inetadm(1M)` to make configuration changes and to view configuration information for this service. The service's status can be queried using the `svcs(1)` command.

**Name** in.rwhod, rwhod – system status server

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/in.rwhod [-m *[ttl]*]

**Description** in.rwhod is the server which maintains the database used by the [rwho\(1\)](#) and [ruptime\(1\)](#) programs. Its operation is predicated on the ability to broadcast or multicast messages on a network.

in.rwhod operates as both a producer and consumer of status information. As a producer of information it periodically queries the state of the system and constructs status messages which are broadcast or multicast on a network. As a consumer of information, it listens for other in.rwhod servers' status messages, validating them, then recording them in a collection of files located in the directory `/var/spool/rwho`.

The rwho server transmits and receives messages at the port indicated in the rwho service specification, see [services\(4\)](#). The messages sent and received are defined in `/usr/include/protocols/rwhod.h` and are of the form:

```
struct outmp {
 char out_line[8]; /* tty name */
 char out_name[8]; /* user id */
 long out_time; /* time on */
};
struct whod {
 char wd_vers;
 char wd_type;
 char wd_fill[2];
 int wd_sendtime;
 int wd_recvtime;
 char wd_hostname[32];
 int wd_loadav[3];
 int wd_boottime;
 struct whoent {
 struct outmp we_utmp;
 int we_idle;
 } wd_we[1024 / sizeof (struct whoent)];
};
```

All fields are converted to network byte order prior to transmission. The load averages are as calculated by the [w\(1\)](#) program, and represent load averages over the 1, 5, and 15 minute intervals prior to a server's transmission. The host name included is that returned by the [uname\(2\)](#) system call. The array at the end of the message contains information about the users who are logged in to the sending machine. This information includes the contents of the [utmpx\(4\)](#) entry for each non-idle terminal line and a value indicating the time since a character was last received on the terminal line.

Messages received by the `rwho` server are discarded unless they originated at a `rwho` server's port. In addition, if the host's name, as specified in the message, contains any unprintable ASCII characters, the message is discarded. Valid messages received by `in.rwhod` are placed in files named `whod.hostname` in the directory `/var/spool/rwho`. These files contain only the most recent message, in the format described above.

Status messages are generated approximately once every 3 minutes.

**Options** The following options are supported:

`-m [ ttl ]` Use the `rwho` IP multicast address (224.0.1.3) when transmitting. Receive announcements both on this multicast address and on the IP broadcast address. If `ttl` is not specified `in.rwhod` multicasts on all interfaces but with the IP `TimeToLive` set to 1 (that is, packets are not forwarded by multicast routers.) If `ttl` is specified `in.rwhod` only transmits packets on one interface and setting the IP `TimeToLive` to the specified `ttl`.

**Files** `/var/spool/rwho/whod.*` information about other machines

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWrcmds       |

**See Also** [ruptime\(1\)](#), [rwho\(1\)](#), [w\(1\)](#), [uname\(2\)](#), [services\(4\)](#), [utmpx\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Warnings** This service can cause network performance problems when used by several hosts on the network. It is not run at most sites by default. If used, include the `-m` multicast option.

**Notes** This service takes up progressively more network bandwidth as the number of hosts on the local net increases. For large networks, the cost becomes prohibitive.

`in.rwhod` should relay status information between networks. People often interpret the server dying as a machine going down.

**Name** install – install commands

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/install -c *dira* [-m *mode*] [-u *user*] [-g *group*]  
 [-o] [-s] *file*

/usr/sbin/install -f *dirb* [-m *mode*] [-u *user*] [-g *group*]  
 [-o] [-s] *file*

/usr/sbin/install -n *dirc* [-m *mode*] [-u *user*] [-g *group*]  
 [-o] [-s] *file*

/usr/sbin/install -d | -i [-m *mode*] [-u *user*] [-g *group*]  
 [-o] [-s] *dirx...*

/usr/sbin/install [-m *mode*] [-u *user*] [-g *group*] [-o] [-s] *file*  
 [*dirx...*]

**Description** `install` is most commonly used in “makefiles” (see [make\(1S\)](#)) to install a file in specific locations, or to create directories within a file system. Each file is installed by copying it into the appropriate directory.

`install` uses no special privileges to copy files from one place to another. The implications of this are:

- You must have permission to read the files to be installed.
- You must have permission to copy into the destination directory.
- You must have permission to change the modes on the final copy of the file if you want to use the `-m` option.
- You must be super-user if you want to specify the ownership of the installed file with the `-u` or `-g` options. If you are not the super-user, the installed file is owned by you, regardless of who owns the original.

Note that if the `ROOT` environment variable is set, each of the default directory paths are prefixed by its value (for example, `$ROOT/bin` and so on).

`install` prints messages telling the user exactly what files it is replacing or creating and where they are going.

If no options or directories (*dirx...*) are given, `install` searches a set of default directories (`/bin`, `/usr/bin`, `/etc`, `/lib`, and `/usr/lib`, in that order) for a file with the same name as *file*. When the first occurrence is found, `install` issues a message saying that it is overwriting that file with *file*, and proceeds to do so. If the file is not found, the program states this and exits.

If one or more directories (*dirx...*) are specified after *file*, those directories are searched before the default directories.

This version of `install` (`/usr/sbin/install`) is not compatible with the `install` binaries in many versions of Unix other than Solaris. For a higher degree of compatibility with other Unix versions, use `/usr/ucb/install`, which is described in the [install\(1B\)](#) man page.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- c *dira* Install *file* in the directory specified by *dira*, if *file* does not yet exist. If it is found, *install* issues a message saying that the file already exists, and exits without overwriting it.
- f *dirb* Force *file* to be installed in given directory, even if the file already exists. If the file being installed does not already exist, the mode and owner of the new file is set to 755 and *bin*, respectively. If the file already exists, the mode and owner is that of the already existing file.
- n *dirc* If *file* is not found in any of the searched directories, it is put in the directory specified in *dirc*. The mode and owner of the new file is set to 755 and *bin*, respectively.
- d Create a directory. Missing parent directories are created as required as in *mkdir -p*. If the directory already exists, the owner, group and mode is set to the values given on the command line.
- i Ignore default directory list, searching only through the given directories (*dirx ...*).
- m *mode* The mode of the new file is set to *mode*. Set to 0755 by default.
- u *user* The owner of the new file is set to *user*. Only available to the super-user. Set to *bin* by default.
- g *group* The group id of the new file is set to *group*. Only available to the super-user. Set to *bin* by default.
- o If *file* is found, save the "found" file by copying it to *OLDfile* in the directory in which it was found. This option is useful when installing a frequently used file such as */bin/sh* or */lib/saf/ttymon*, where the existing file cannot be removed.
- s Suppress printing of messages other than error messages.

**Usage** See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of *install* when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (  $2^{31}$  bytes).

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWcsu         |

**See Also** [chgrp\(1\)](#), [chmod\(1\)](#), [chown\(1\)](#), [cp\(1\)](#), [install\(1B\)](#), [make\(1S\)](#), [mkdir\(1\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#)

**Name** installboot – install bootblocks in a disk partition

**Synopsis** `installboot [-F zfs|ufs|hsfs] bootblk raw-disk-device`

**Description** The `boot(1M)` program, `ufsboot`, is loaded from disk by the bootblock program which resides in the boot area of a disk partition. This program is filesystem-specific, and must match the type of filesystem on the disk to be booted.

The boot objects are platform-dependent and reside in the `/usr/platform/platform-name/lib/fs/file-system` directory. The platform name can be found using the `-i` option of `uname(1)`. The filesystem type can be found using:

```
% fstyp raw-disk-device
```

See `fstyp(1M)`.

The `installboot` utility is a SPARC only program. It is not supported on the x86 architecture. x86 users should use `installgrub(1M)` instead.

**Options** The following option is supported:

```
-F zfs|ufs|hsfs
```

Specifies the file system type of the boot block to be installed. Required if you wish to specify `zfs` or `hsfs`. The default is `ufs`.

**Operands** `bootblk`

The name of the bootblock code.

```
raw-disk-device
```

The name of the disk device onto which the bootblock code is to be installed; it must be a character device which is readable and writable. Naming conventions for a SCSI or IPI drive are `c?t?d?s?` and `c?d?s?` for an IDE drive.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Installing UFS Boot Block

To install a `ufs` boot block on slice 0 of target 0 on controller 1 of the platform where the command is being run, use:

```
installboot /usr/platform/'uname -i'/lib/fs/ufs/bootblk \
/dev/rdisk/c1t0d0s0
```

EXAMPLE 2 Installing ZFS Boot Block

To install a `ZFS` boot block on slice 0 of target 0 on controller 1 of the platform where the command is being run, use syntax such as the following:

```
installboot -F zfs /usr/platform/'uname -i'/lib/fs/zfs/bootblk \
/dev/rdisk/c1t1d0s0
```

**Files** /usr/platform/*platform-name*/lib/fs/ Directory where boot objects reside.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWcsu         |

**See Also** [kmbd\(1\)](#), [od\(1\)](#), [uname\(1\)](#), [boot\(1M\)](#), [fstyp\(1M\)](#), [init\(1M\)](#), [kernel\(1M\)](#), [monitor\(1M\)](#), [reboot\(1M\)](#), [rpc.bootparamd\(1M\)](#), [init.d\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

*Solaris 10 Installation Guide: Basic Installations*

**Warnings** The `installboot` utility fails if the `bootblk` or `openfirmware` files do not exist or if the raw disk device is not a character device.

**Name** installer – Solaris Web Start installer utility

**Synopsis** installer [-locales *list*] [-nodisplay] [-noconsole]  
[-debug]

**Description** The installer utility invokes a Web Start install wizard sequence which will lead the user through a sequence of installation panels. This installer utility is found on many CDs that are shipped with Solaris and it will be found among the top level files of these CDs.

When the installer is on a CD being accessed from a desktop file manager, the installer can be double clicked to start the installation sequence. If the user is not currently the system's root user, the root user password will be requested.

The installer utility can also be run from other UNIX scripts. Usually, a script is used in conjunction with the utility's `-nodisplay` option. Add the `-noconsole` option for non-interactive scripts.

**Options** The following options are supported:

`-locales list` Selects product translations for install, corresponding to the specified list of locales if the specified locale translations are present on the installation media. Locales are supplied in a comma-separated list following the `-locales` option. An example *list* would appear as follows:

```
installer -locales fr,de,it
```

This would install products with translations for the French, German, and Italian locales.

`-nodisplay` Runs the install without a graphical user interface. Use the default product install unless it was modified by the `-locales` options.

`-noconsole` Run the install without any interactive text console device. Useful when paired with `-nodisplay` for non-interactive UNIX script use.

`-debug` Outputs extra information about what the install is doing. Mainly for install diagnostic purposes.

**Files** /var/sadm/install/logs location of installation log files

**See Also** [prodreg\(1M\)](#)



**Name** installf – add a file to the software installation database

**Synopsis** installf [-c *class*] [ [-M] -R *root\_path*] [-V *fs\_file*] *pkginst* *pathname*  
           [*ftype* [*major minor*] [*mode owner group*]]

installf [-c *class*] [ [-M] -R *root\_path*] [-V *fs\_file*] *pkginst* -

installf -f [-c *class*] [ [-M] -R *root\_path*] [-V *fs\_file*] *pkginst*

**Description** installf informs the system that a pathname not listed in the [pkgmap\(4\)](#) file is being created or modified. It should be invoked before any file modifications have occurred.

When the second synopsis is used, the pathname descriptions will be read from standard input. These descriptions are the same as would be given in the first synopsis but the information is given in the form of a list. The descriptions should be in the form:

*pathname* [*ftype* [ *major minor* ] [ *mode owner group* ] ]

After all files have been appropriately created and/or modified, `installf` should be invoked with the `-f` synopsis to indicate that installation is final. Links will be created at this time and, if attribute information for a pathname was not specified during the original invocation of `installf`, or was not already stored on the system, the current attribute values for the pathname will be stored. Otherwise, `installf` verifies that attribute values match those given on the command line, making corrections as necessary. In all cases, the current content information is calculated and stored appropriately.

Package commands are [largefile\(5\)](#)-aware. They handle files larger than 2 GB in the same way they handle smaller files. In their current implementations, [pkgadd\(1M\)](#), [pkgtrans\(1\)](#) and other package commands can process a datastream of up to 4 GB.

**Options**

- c *class*           Class to which installed objects should be associated. Default class is none.
- f                   Indicates that installation is complete. This option is used with the final invocation of `installf` (for all files of a given class).
- M                   Instruct `installf` not to use the `$root_path/etc/vfstab` file for determining the client's mount points. This option assumes the mount points are correct on the server and it behaves consistently with Solaris 2.5 and earlier releases.
- R *root\_path*       Define the full path name of a directory to use as the *root\_path*. All files, including package system information files, are relocated to a directory tree starting in the specified *root\_path*. The *root\_path* can be specified when installing to a client from a server (for example, `/export/root/client1`).

`installf` inherits the value of the `PKG_INSTALL_ROOT` environment variable. (See ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES, below.) If `PKG_INSTALL_ROOT` is set, such as when the `-R` option is used with [pkgadd\(1M\)](#) or [pkgrm\(1M\)](#)

**Note** – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the `-R` option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).

|                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>-V fs_file</code> | Specify an alternative <i>fs_file</i> to map the client's file systems. For example, used in situations where the <code>\$root_path/etc/vfstab</code> file is non-existent or unreliable.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <b>Operands</b>         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <i>pkginst</i>          | Name of package instance with which the pathname should be associated.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <i>pathname</i>         | Pathname that is being created or modified.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <i>ftype</i>            | A one-character field that indicates the file type. Possible file types include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>b block special device</li><li>c character special device</li><li>d directory</li><li>e a file to be edited upon installation or removal</li><li>f a standard executable or data file</li><li>l linked file</li><li>p named pipe</li><li>s symbolic link</li><li>v volatile file (one whose contents are expected to change)</li><li>x an exclusive directory</li></ul> |
| <i>major</i>            | The major device number. The field is only specified for block or character special devices.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <i>minor</i>            | The minor device number. The field is only specified for block or character special devices.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <i>mode</i>             | The octal mode of the file (for example, 0664). A question mark (?) indicates that the mode will be left unchanged, implying that the file already exists on the target machine. This field is not used for linked or symbolically linked files.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <i>owner</i>            | The owner of the file (for example, bin or root). The field is limited to 14 characters in length. A question mark (?) indicates that the owner will be left unchanged, implying that the file already exists on the target machine. This field is not used for linked or symbolically linked files.                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <i>group</i>            | The group to which the file belongs (for example, bin or sys). The field is limited to 14 characters in length. A question mark (?) indicates that the group will be left unchanged, implying that the file already exists on the target                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

machine. This field is not used for linked or symbolically linked files.

### Examples EXAMPLE 1 Basic Usage

The following example shows the use of `installf`, invoked from an optional pre-install or post-install script:

```
create /dev/xt directory
(needs to be done before drvinstall)
installf $PKGINST /dev/xt d 755 root sys ||
 exit 2
majno='usr/sbin/drvinstall -m /etc/master.d/xt
-d $BASEDIR/data/xt.o -v1.0' ||
 exit 2
i=00
while [$i -lt $limit]
do
 for j in 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7
 do
 echo /dev/xtij c $majno 'expr $i ? 8 + $j'
 644 root sys |
 echo /dev/xtij=/dev/xt/ij
 done
 i='expr $i + 1'
 [$i -le 9] && i="0$i" #add leading zero
done | installf $PKGINST - || exit 2
finalized installation, create links
installf -f $PKGINST || exit 2
```

**Environment Variables** `installf` inherits the value of the following environment variable. This variable is set when `pkgadd(1M)` or `pkgrm(1M)` is invoked with the `-R` option.

**PKG\_INSTALL\_ROOT** If present, defines the full path name of a directory to use as the system's `PKG_INSTALL_ROOT` path. All product and package information files are then looked for in the directory tree, starting with the specified `PKG_INSTALL_ROOT` path. If not present, the default system path of `/` is used.

**Exit Status** `0` Successful operation.  
`>0` An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWcsu         |

**See Also** [pkginfo\(1\)](#), [pkgmk\(1\)](#), [pkgparam\(1\)](#), [pkgproto\(1\)](#), [pkgtrans\(1\)](#), [pkgadd\(1M\)](#), [pkgask\(1M\)](#), [pkgchk\(1M\)](#), [pkgrm\(1M\)](#), [removef\(1M\)](#), [pkgmap\(4\)](#), [space\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#)

*Application Packaging Developer's Guide*

**Notes** When *f*type is specified, all applicable fields, as shown below, must be defined:

| <i>f</i> type       | Required Fields              |
|---------------------|------------------------------|
| p, x, d, f, v, or e | mode owner group             |
| c or b              | major minor mode owner group |

The `installf` command will create directories, named pipes and special devices on the original invocation. Links are created when `installf` is invoked with the `-f` option to indicate installation is complete.

Links should be specified as *path1=path2*. *path1* indicates the destination and *path2* indicates the source file.

Files installed with `installf` will be placed in the class `none`, unless a class is defined with the command. Subsequently, they will be removed when the associated package is deleted. If this file should not be deleted at the same time as the package, be certain to assign it to a class which is ignored at removal time. If special action is required for the file before removal, a class must be defined with the command and an appropriate class action script delivered with the package.

When classes are used, `installf` must be used in one of the following forms:

```
installf -c class1 . . .
installf -f -c class1 . . .
installf -c class2 . . .
installf -f -c class2 . . .
```

**Name** installgrub – install GRUB in a disk partition or a floppy

**Synopsis** /sbin/installgrub [-fm] *stage1 stage2 raw-device*

**Description** The `installgrub` command is an x86–only program. GRUB stands for GRand Unified Bootloader.

`installgrub` installs GRUB stage 1 and stage 2 files on the boot area of a disk partition. If you specify the `-m` option, `installgrub` installs the stage 1 file on the master boot sector of the disk.

**Options** The `installgrub` command accepts the following options:

- f Suppresses interaction when overwriting the master boot sector.
- m Installs GRUB *stage1* on the master boot sector interactively. You must use this option if Solaris is installed on an extended partition.

**Operands** The `installgrub` command accepts the following operands:

- stage1* The name of the GRUB stage 1 file.
- stage2* The name of the GRUB stage 2 file.
- raw-device* The name of the device onto which GRUB code is to be installed. It must be a character device that is readable and writable. For disk devices, specify the slice where the GRUB menu file is located. (For Solaris it is the root slice.) For a floppy disk, it is `/dev/rdiskette`.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Installing GRUB on a Hard Disk Slice

The following command installs GRUB on a system where the root slice is `c0d0s0`:

```
example# /sbin/installgrub /boot/grub/stage1 \
 /boot/grub/stage2 /dev/rdisk/c0d0s0
```

EXAMPLE 2 Installing GRUB on a Floppy

The following command installs GRUB on a formatted floppy:

```
example# mount -F pcfs /dev/diskette /mnt
mkdir -p /mnt/boot/grub
cp /boot/grub/* /mnt/boot/grub
umount /mnt
cd /boot/grub
/sbin/installgrub stage1 stage2 /dev/rdiskette
```

**Files** /boot/grub Directory where GRUB files reside.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWcsu         |
| Interface Stability | Uncommitted     |

**See Also** [boot\(1M\)](#), [fdisk\(1M\)](#), [fmthard\(1M\)](#), [kernel\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Warnings** Installing GRUB on the master boot sector (-m option) overrides any boot manager currently installed on the machine. The system will always boot the GRUB in the Solaris partition regardless of which `fdisk` partition is active.

**Name** install\_scripts, add\_install\_client, add\_to\_install\_server, rm\_install\_client, setup\_install\_server, check – scripts used to install the Solaris software

**Synopsis** *media-mnt-pt/Solaris\_XX/Tools/add\_install\_client*  
 [-i *IP\_address*]  
 [-e *Ethernet\_address*] [-s *server\_name* : *path*]  
 [-c *server\_name* : *path*]  
 [-n [*server*] : *name\_service* [( *netmask*)]]  
 [-p *server\_name* : *path*]  
 [-t *install\_boot\_image\_path*] *host\_name platform\_group*

*media-mnt-pt/Solaris\_XX/Tools/add\_install\_client -d*  
 [-s *server\_name:path*]  
 [-c *server\_name:path*] [-p *server\_name:path*]  
 [-t *install\_boot\_image\_path*] [-f *boot\_file\_name*]  
*platform\_name platform\_group*

*media-mnt-pt/Solaris\_XX/Tools/add\_install\_client -d*  
 [-s *server\_name:path*]  
 [-c *server\_name:path*] [-p *server\_name:path*]  
 [-t *install\_boot\_image\_path*] [-f *boot\_file\_name*] -e *Ethernet\_address*  
 [-b *property=value*] *platform\_group*

*media-mnt-pt/Solaris\_XX/Tools/add\_to\_install\_server [-s]*  
 [-p *product\_image\_path*] *install\_server\_path*

*media-mnt-pt/Solaris\_XX/Tools/jumpstart\_sample/check*  
 [-p *install\_dir\_path*]  
 [-r *rulesfile*]

*media-mnt-pt/Solaris\_XX/Tools/rm\_install\_client host\_name*

*media-mnt-pt/Solaris\_XX/Tools/rm\_install\_client platform\_name*

*media-mnt-pt/Solaris\_XX/Tools/rm\_install\_client -e Ethernet\_address*

*media-mnt-pt/Solaris\_XX/Tools/rm\_install\_client -f boot\_file\_name*

*media-mnt-pt/Solaris\_XX/Tools/setup\_install\_server [-b]*  
 [-t *install\_boot\_image\_path*] [-w *wanboot\_image\_path*] *install\_dir\_path*

**Description** These commands are located on slice 0 of the Solaris Software and Solaris Installer CDs or DVDs. (The terms “CD” and “DVD” are hereafter referred to as “installation media”.) If the Solaris installation media has been copied to a local disk, *media\_mnt\_pt* is the path to the copied Solaris installation media. They can be used for a variety of installation tasks.

The *XX* in *Solaris\_XX* is the version number of the Solaris release being used.

There are three versions of the *add\_install\_client* command. See SYNOPSIS.

Use the following version of the *add\_install\_client* command to add clients for network installation (these commands update the [bootparams\(4\)](#) file). The *add\_install\_client* command must be run from the install server's Solaris installation image (a mounted Solaris

installation media or a Solaris installation media copied to disk) or the boot server's boot directory (if a boot server is required). The Solaris installation image or the boot directory must be the same Solaris release that you want installed on the client.

```
media-mnt-pt/Solaris_XX/Tools/add_install_client
 [-i IP_address]
 [-e Ethernet_address] [-s server_name : path]
 [-c server_name : path]
 [-n [server] : name_service [(netmask)]]
 [-p server_name : path] [-t install_boot_image_path]
 host_name platform_group
```

Use the following version of the `add_install_client` command to add support for instances of a platform within a platform group to the install server. This group is booted and configured using DHCP. The script performs the necessary configuration steps on the server, and prints the data that the user needs to add to the DHCP server for the group.

```
media-mnt-pt/Solaris_XX/Tools/add_install_client -d
 [-s server:path]
 [-c server:path] [-p server:path]
 [-t install boot image path]
 [-t install_boot_image_path] [-f boot file name]
 platform_name platform_group
```

Use the following version of the `add_install_client` command to add a single client to the install server. This client is booted and configured using DHCP. The script performs the necessary configuration steps on the server, and prints the data that the user needs to add to the DHCP server for the client. The `-f` flag used above needs to be added to the existing usage as well. `-f` allows the user to specify a boot file name to be used for a given client.

```
media-mnt-pt/Solaris_XX /Tools/add_install_client -d
 [-s server_name:path]
 [-c server_name:path] [-p server_name:path]
 [-t install_boot_image_path] [-f boot_file_name]
 -e Ethernet_address platform_group
 [-b property=value] platform_group
```

Always use the `-d` option when registering x86 Architecture Pre-boot eXecution Environment (PXE) clients. These clients use DHCP for their configuration.

Use `add_to_install_server` to merge other Solaris installation media with an existing image on a Net Install Server. Each installation media that can be merged (each OS CD or DVD, and the Language CD or DVD) has its own `add_to_install_server` script. Do not use `add_to_install_server` scripts with installation media other than the ones with which they were delivered.

Use `check` to validate the rules in a rules file (this is only necessary if a custom JumpStart installation is being set up).



Use `rm_install_client` to remove clients for network installation (these commands update the `bootparams(4)` file).

Use `setup_install_server` to copy the Solaris installation media to a disk (to set up an install server), to build a WANboot miniroot image (to set up a WANboot install server), or to copy just the boot software of the Solaris installation media to a disk (to set up a boot server). An install server is required to install clients over the network. A boot server is also required for network installations if the install server and clients to be installed are on different subnets (the boot server must be located on the client's subnet).

**Options** The `add_install_client` supports the following options:

**-b** *property=value*

Set a property value in the client-specific `menu.lst` file located on the boot server's TFTP directory, `/tftpboot` by default. Use this option to set boot properties that are specific to this client.

Use this option only with an x86 client and only in conjunction with the `-d` and `-e` options.

**-c** *server\_name:path*

This option is required only to specify a JumpStart directory for a custom JumpStart installation. *server\_name* is the host name of the server with a JumpStart directory. *path* is the absolute path to the JumpStart directory.

**-d**

Specify as a DHCP client.

**-e** *Ethernet\_address*

Specify the Ethernet address of the system to be installed.

**-f**

Specify the *boot\_file\_name* of the client to be installed.

**-i** *IP\_address*

Specify the IP address of the client to be installed.

**-n** [*server*]: *name\_service*[(*netmask*)]

This option specifies which name service should be used during system configuration. This sets the `ns` keyword in the `bootparams(4)` file.

*name\_service*

Valid entries are `nis` and `none`.

*netmask*

A series of four numbers separated by periods, specifying which portion of an IP address is the network part, and which is the host part.

*server*

The name of the server or IP address of the specified name service. If the server specified is on a different subnet, then the *netmask* may be needed to enable the client to contact

the server.

-p *server\_name: path*

This option is used to specify the NFS or ZFS shared directory that contains the user-defined `sysidcfg` file. When a client is booted, it attempts to read a file specifically named `sysidcfg` in this directory to obtain answers to the system and network identification questions. *server\_name* is either a valid host name or IP address. *path* is the absolute pathname of the directory on the file server that contains the `sysidcfg` file.

-s *server\_name: path*

This option is required only when using `add_install_client` from a boot server. Specify the name of the server and the absolute path of the Solaris installation image that is used for this installation. *path* is either the path to a mounted Solaris installation media or a path to a directory with a copy of the Solaris installation media.

-t

Allows you to specify an alternate miniroot

The `add_to_install_server` command supports the following options:

-p

Specifies the location of the installation media (containing the supplemental products) to be copied.

-s

Allows users to select from a list only the products needing installation.

The `check` command supports the following options:

-p *install\_dir\_path*

Validates the rules file by using the check script from a specified Solaris installation image, instead of the check script from the system you are using. *install\_dir\_path* is the path to a Solaris installation image on a local disk or a mounted Solaris installation media.

Use this option to run the most recent version of `check` if your system is running a previous version of Solaris.

-r *rulesfile*

Specifies a rules file other than the one named `rules`. Using this option, the validity of a rule can be tested before integrating it into the rules file. `check` reports whether or not the rule is valid, but it does not create the `rules.ok` file necessary for a custom JumpStart installation.

The `rm_install_client` command supports the following options:

-e *Ethernet\_address*

Specify the Ethernet address of the system to be removed.

-f

Specify the *boot\_file\_name* of the client to be removed.

The `setup_install_server` command supports the following options:

- b  
This option sets up the server only as a boot server.
- t  
This option allows an alternate miniroot to be specified.
- w  
This option builds a WANboot miniroot image.

**Operands** The `add_install_client` command supports the following operands:

*host\_name*

This is the name of the client to be installed.

*platform\_group*

Vendor-defined grouping of hardware platforms for the purpose of distributing specific software. Examples of valid platform groups are:

| System        | Platform Group |
|---------------|----------------|
| x86           | i86pc          |
| Sun Fire 4800 | sun4u          |

Use the `uname(1)` command (with the `-m` option) to determine a system's platform group.

*platform\_name*

Use the `uname(1)` command (with the `-i` option) to determine a system's platform name.

The following example shows the use of the `uname` command to determine the system platform name for an Ultra 10:

```
uname -i
```

The system responds with:

```
SUNW,Ultra-5_10
```

Therefore, the system's platform name is `SUNW,Ultra-5_10`.

The following command calls `add_install_client` for Ultra 10s:

```
add_install_client -d SUNW,Ultra-5_10 sun4u
```

For IA32 platforms, the platform name is always `SUNW.i86pc`.

The following command calls `add_install_client` for IA32 platforms:

```
add_install_client -d SUNW.i86pc i86pc
```

*install\_boot\_image\_path*

Pathname of alternate miniroot, specified with -t option.

The `rm_install_client` command supports the following operands:

*host\_name*

Name of the client to be removed.

*platform\_name*

The platform name of the client to be removed. See the description of this operand above.

*Ethernet\_address*

Ethernet address of the client to be removed.

*boot\_file\_name*

Name of the boot file to be removed.

The `setup_install_server` command supports the following operands:

*install\_dir\_path*

The absolute path of the directory in which the Solaris software is to be copied. The directory must be empty.

*wanboot\_image\_path*

The absolute path of the directory in which the file containing the WANboot miniroot image is to be created.

*install\_boot\_image\_path*

Pathname of alternate miniroot, specified with -t option.

### Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Using `add_install_client`

The following `add_install_client` commands add clients for network installation from a mounted Solaris installation media:

```
example# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/s0/Solaris_10/Tools
example# ./add_install_client system_2/sun4u
```

### **EXAMPLE 2** Using `add_install_client`

The following `add_install_client` commands add clients for network installation from a mounted Solaris installation media on an install server. The -c option specifies a server and path to a JumpStart directory that has a rules file and a profile file for performing a custom JumpStart installation. Also, the Solaris installation media has been copied to the `/export/install` directory:

```
example# cd /export/install/Solaris_10/Tools
example# /add_install_client
 -c install_server:/jumpstart system_1 i86pc\
example# ./add_install_client -c install_server:/jumpstart\
```

EXAMPLE 2 Using `add_install_client` (Continued)

```
system_2 i86pc
```

EXAMPLE 3 Using `add_install_client`

The following `add_install_client` command adds support for a specific sun4u platform machine (8:0:20:99:88:77) using the boot file: `sun4u.solaris10`.

```
example# add_install_client -d -f sun4u.solaris10\
-e 8:0:20:99:88:77 sun4u
```

EXAMPLE 4 Using `add_install_client`

The following `add_install_client` command adds x86 clients that use the PXE standard for network booting:

```
example# add_install_client -d -s svrname:/mnt/export/root\
SUNW.i86pc i86p
```

EXAMPLE 5 Using `add_to_install_server`

The following `add_to_install_server` command copies the packages in all the installation media's products directories to an existing install server:

```
example# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/s0
example# ./add_to_install_server /export/Solaris_10
```

EXAMPLE 6 Using `check`

The following `check` command validates the syntax of the rules file used for a custom JumpStart installation:

```
example# cd jumpstart_dir_path
example# ./check -p /cdrom/cdrom0/s0
```

EXAMPLE 7 Using `rm_install_client`

The following `rm_install_client` commands remove clients for network installation:

```
example# cd /export/install/Solaris_10/Tools
example# ./rm_install_client holmes
example# ./rm_install_client watson
```

**EXAMPLE 8** Using `setup_install_server`

The following `setup_install_server` command copies the mounted Solaris installation media to a directory named `/export/install` on the local disk:

```
example# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/s0/Solaris_10/Tools
example# ./setup_install_server /export/install
```

**EXAMPLE 9** Using `setup_install_server`

The following `setup_install_server` command copies the boot software of a mounted Solaris installation media to a directory named `/boot_dir` on a system that is going to be a boot server for a subnet:

```
example# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/s0/Solaris_10/Tools
example# ./setup_install_server -b /boot_dir
```

**EXAMPLE 10** Using `setup_install_server`

By default, `setup_install_server` looks for an installation boot directory at the Solaris `../Tools/Boot` location of the mount Solaris distribution disc.

If an alternate boot directory is required, such as one saved on a network boot server by way of an earlier `./setup_install_server -b /boot_dir` command, the `-t` option can be used.

```
example# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/s0/Solaris_10/Tools
example# ./setup_install_server -t /boot_dir /export/install
```

**EXAMPLE 11** Using `setup_install_server` with WANboot Option

The following `setup_install_server` command creates an image of the WANboot miniroot file system and stores it in the file `/wanboot_dir/miniroot`.

```
example# cd /cdrom/cdrom0/s0/Solaris_10/Tools
example# ./setup_install_server -w /wanboot_dir /export/install
```

**EXAMPLE 12** x86: Specifying a Serial Console to Use During a Network Installation (from Installation Media)

The following example illustrates how to add an x86 install client to an install server and specify a serial console to use during the installation. This example sets up the install client in the following manner:

- The `-d` option indicates that the client is set up to use DHCP to set installation parameters.
- The `-e` option indicates that this installation occurs only on the client with the ethernet address `00:07:e9:04:4a:bf`.

**EXAMPLE 12** x86: Specifying a Serial Console to Use During a Network Installation (from Installation Media) *(Continued)*

- The first and second uses of the `-b` option instruct the installation program to use the serial port `ttya` as an input and an output device.

```
install server# cd /export/boot/Solaris_10/Tools
install server# ./add_install_client -d -e "00:07:e9:04:4a:bf" \
-b "input-device=ttya" -b "output-device=ttya" \
i86pc
```

For a complete description of the boot property variables and values you can use with the `-b` option, see [eeprom\(1M\)](#).

**EXAMPLE 13** Specifying a Boot Device to Use During a Network Installation (from Installation Media)

The following example illustrates how to add an x86 install client to an install server and specify a boot device to use during the installation. If you specify the boot device when you set up the install client, you are not prompted for this information by the Device Configuration Assistant during the installation.

This example sets up the install client in the following manner:

- The `-d` option indicates that the client is set up to use DHCP to set installation parameters
- The `-e` option indicates that this installation occurs only on the client with the ethernet address `00:07:e9:04:4a:bf`.
- The first and second uses of the `-b` option instruct the installation program to use the serial port `ttya` as an input and an output device.
- The third use of the `-b` option instructs the installation program to use a specific boot device during the installation.
- The value of the boot device path varies based on your hardware..
- The `i86pc` platform name indicates that the client is an x86-based system.

```
install server# cd /export/boot/Solaris_10/Tools
install server# ./add_install_client -d -e "00:07:e9:04:4a:bf" \
-b "input-device=ttya" -b "output-device=ttya" \
-b "bootpath=/pci@0,0/pci108e,16a8@8" i86pc
```

For a complete description of the boot property variables and values you can use with the `-b` option, see [eeprom\(1M\)](#).

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0  
Successful completion.

1

An error has occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE                 |
|----------------|---------------------------------|
| Availability   | Solaris CD (Installation Media) |

**See Also** [uname\(1\)](#), [eeprom\(1M\)](#), [bootparams\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

*Solaris 10 Installation Guide: Basic Installations*



**Name** install-solaris – install the Solaris operating system

**Synopsis** install-solaris

**Description** install-solaris invokes the Solaris Install program. Depending on graphical capability and available memory at the time of invocation, install-solaris invokes either a text-based installer or a graphical installer.

The following minimum requirements for physical memory dictate which features are available during installation:

For SPARC machines:

- 128 MB Minimum physical memory for all installation types
- 228 MB Minimum physical memory required to display a window
- 512 MB Minimum physical memory required for graphical-based installation

For x86 machines:

- 256 MB Minimum physical memory for all installation types
- 256 MB Minimum physical memory required for windowing system
- 512 MB Minimum physical memory required for graphical-based installation

In some cases, even if the minimum physical memory is present, available virtual memory after system startup can limit the number of features available.

install-solaris exists only on the Solaris installation media (CD or DVD) and should be invoked only from there. Refer to the for more details.

install-solaris allows installation of the operating system onto any standalone system. install-solaris loads the software available on the installation media. Refer to the [Solaris 10 Installation Guide: Basic Installations](#) for disk space requirements.

**Usage** Refer to the [Solaris 10 Installation Guide: Basic Installations](#) for more information on the various menus and selections.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE                        |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Availability        | SUNWcdrom (Solaris installation media) |
| Interface Stability | Evolving                               |

**See Also** [pkginfo\(1\)](#), [install\(1M\)](#), [pkgadd\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

*Solaris 10 Installation Guide: Basic Installations*

**Notes** It is advisable to exit `install-solaris` by means of the exit options in the `install-solaris` menus.

**Name** in.stdiscover – Service Tag Discovery Daemon

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/inet/in.stdiscover

**Description** The in.stdiscover daemon allows a mechanism for discovering the location of the Service Tag Listener. By default, the in.stdiscover daemon listens for discovery probes (using a minimal built-in protocol) on UDP port 6481.

The daemon is under control of the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under its inetd framework. It only runs upon demand and exits when no longer in use.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWservicetagu |
| Interface Stability | Private         |

**See Also** [in.stlisten\(1M\)](#), [stclient\(1M\)](#)

**Name** in.stlisten – Service Tag Listener

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/inet/in.stlisten

**Description** The `in.stlisten` daemon allows a mechanism for discovering the location of the Service Tag. By default, the `in.stlisten` daemon listens for discovery probes (using a minimal built-in protocol) on TCP port 6481.

The daemon is under control of the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under its `inetd` framework. It only runs upon demand and exits when no longer in use.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWservicetagu |
| Interface Stability | Private         |

**See Also** [in.stdiscover\(1M\)](#), [stclient\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

**Notes** In open networks where the participants may not always be trusted, it is recommended that you deploy this daemon with the `passphrase-encryption` option. In [smf\(5\)](#) environments, the following command can be used to set the *passphrase*:

```
< prepare a text file "passfile" containing the passphrase >
chown svctag:daemon passfile
chmod 600 passfile
svccfg -s svc:/network/stlisten \
 setprop servicetag/passphrase=passfile
```

where *passfile* is the path of a file containing the intended *passphrase*.

This *passphrase* can be subsequently cleared as follows:

```
svccfg -s svc:/network/stlisten \
 setprop servicetag/passphrase=""
```

**Name** in.talkd, talkd – server for talk program

**Synopsis** in.talkd

**Description** talkd is a server used by the [talk\(1\)](#) program. It listens at the UDP port indicated in the “talk” service description; see [services\(4\)](#). The actual conversation takes place on a TCP connection that is established by negotiation between the two machines involved.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWrcmds       |

**See Also** [svcs\(1\)](#), [talk\(1\)](#), [inetadm\(1M\)](#), [inetd\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [services\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

**Notes** The protocol is architecture dependent.

The in.talkd service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/talk
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). Responsibility for initiating and restarting this service is delegated to [inetd\(1M\)](#). Use [inetadm\(1M\)](#) to make configuration changes and to view configuration information for this service. The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

**Name** in.telnetd, telnetd – DARPA TELNET protocol server

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/in.telnetd [-a *authmode*] [-EXUh] [-s *tos*]  
[-S *keytab*] [-M *realm*]

**Description** in.telnetd is a server that supports the DARPA standard TELNET virtual terminal protocol. in.telnetd is normally invoked in the internet server (see [inetd\(1M\)](#)), for requests to connect to the TELNET port as indicated by the /etc/services file (see [services\(4\)](#)).

in.telnetd operates by allocating a pseudo-terminal device for a client, then creating a login process which has the slave side of the pseudo-terminal as its standard input, output, and error. in.telnetd manipulates the master side of the pseudo-terminal, implementing the TELNET protocol and passing characters between the remote client and the login process.

When a TELNET session starts up, in.telnetd sends TELNET options to the client side indicating a willingness to do *remote echo* of characters, and to *suppress go ahead*. The pseudo-terminal allocated to the client is configured to operate in “cooked” mode, and with XTABS, ICRNL and ONLCR enabled. See [termio\(7I\)](#).

in.telnetd is willing to do: *echo*, *binary*, *suppress go ahead*, and *timing mark*. in.telnetd is willing to have the remote client do: *binary*, *terminal type*, *terminal size*, *logout option*, and *suppress go ahead*.

in.telnetd also allows environment variables to be passed, provided that the client negotiates this during the initial option negotiation. The DISPLAY environment variable may be sent this way, either by the TELNET general environment passing methods, or by means of the XDISPLOC TELNET option. DISPLAY can be passed in the environment option during the same negotiation where XDISPLOC is used. Note that if you use both methods, use the same value for both. Otherwise, the results may be unpredictable.

These options are specified in Internet standards *RFC 1096*, *RFC 1408*, *RFC 1510*, *RFC 1571*, *RFC 2941*, *RFC 2942*, *RFC 2946*, and *RFC 1572*. The following Informational draft is also supported: *RFC 2952*.

The banner printed by in.telnetd is configurable. The default is (more or less) equivalent to ‘uname -sr’ and will be used if no banner is set in /etc/default/telnetd. To set the banner, add a line of the form

```
BANNER=". . ."
```

to /etc/default/telnetd. Nonempty banner strings are fed to shells for evaluation. The default banner may be obtained by

```
BANNER="\r\n\r\n'uname -s' 'uname -r'\r\n\r\n"
```

and no banner will be printed if /etc/default/telnetd contains

```
BANNER=""
```

**Options** The following options are supported:

- a *authmode* This option may be used for specifying what mode should be used for authentication. There are several valid values for *authmode*:
  - valid Only allows connections when the remote user can provide valid authentication information to identify the remote user, and is allowed access to the specified account without providing a password.
  - user Only allows connections when the remote user can provide valid authentication information to identify the remote user. The `login(1)` command will provide any additional user verification needed if the remote user is not allowed automatic access to the specified account.
  - none This is the default state. Authentication information is not required. If no or insufficient authentication information is provided, then the `login(1)` program provides the necessary user verification.
  - off This disables the authentication code. All user verification happens through the `login(1)` program.
- E Disables encryption support negotiation.
- h Disables displaying host specific information before login has been completed.
- M *realm* Uses the indicated Kerberos V5 realm. By default, the daemon will determine its realm from the settings in the `krb5.conf(4)` file.
- s *tos* Sets the IP TOS option.
- S *keytab* Sets the KRB5 keytab file to use. The `/etc/krb5/krb5.keytab` file is used by default.
- U Refuses connections that cannot be mapped to a name through the `getnameinfo(3SOCKET)` function.
- X Disables Kerberos V5 authentication support negotiation.

**Usage** `telnetd` and `in.telnetd` are IPv6-enabled. See [ip6\(7P\)](#).

**Security** `in.telnetd` can authenticate using Kerberos V5 authentication, [pam\(3PAM\)](#), or both. By default, the telnet server will accept valid Kerberos V5 authentication credentials from a telnet client that supports Kerberos. `in.telnetd` can also support an encrypted session from such a client if the client requests it.

The telnet protocol only uses single DES for session protection—clients request service tickets with single DES session keys. The KDC must know that host service principals that offer the telnet service support single DES, which, in practice, means that such principals must have single DES keys in the KDC database.

In order for Kerberos authentication to work, a host/<FQDN> Kerberos principal must exist for each Fully Qualified Domain Name associated with the telnetd server. Each of these host/<FQDN> principals must have a keytab entry in the /etc/krb5/krb5.keytab file on the telnetd server. An example principal might be:

```
host/bigmachine.eng.example.com
```

See [kadmin\(1M\)](#) or [gkadmin\(1M\)](#) for instructions on adding a principal to a krb5.keytab file. See *System Administration Guide: Security Services* for a discussion of Kerberos authentication.

in.telnetd uses [pam\(3PAM\)](#) for authentication, account management, session management, and password management. The PAM configuration policy, listed through /etc/pam.conf, specifies the modules to be used for in.telnetd. Here is a partial pam.conf file with entries for the telnet command using the UNIX authentication, account management, session management, and password management modules.

```
telnet auth requisite pam_authtok_get.so.1
telnet auth required pam_dhkeys.so.1
telnet auth required pam_unix_auth.so.1

telnet account requisite pam_roles.so.1
telnet account required pam_projects.so.1
telnet account required pam_unix_account.so.1

telnet session required pam_unix_session.so.1

telnet password required pam_dhkeys.so.1
telnet password requisite pam_authtok_get.so.1
telnet password requisite pam_authtok_check.so.1
telnet password required pam_authtok_store.so.1
```

If there are no entries for the telnet service, then the entries for the "other" service will be used. If multiple authentication modules are listed, then the user may be prompted for multiple passwords.

For a Kerberized telnet service, the correct PAM service name is ktelnet.

**Files** /etc/default/telnetd



**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWtinetd      |

**See Also** [login\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [telnet\(1\)](#), [gkadmin\(1M\)](#), [inetadm\(1M\)](#), [inetd\(1M\)](#), [kadmin\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [pam\(3PAM\)](#), [getnameinfo\(3SOCKET\)](#), [issue\(4\)](#), [krb5.conf\(4\)](#), [pam.conf\(4\)](#), [services\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authtok\\_check\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authtok\\_get\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authtok\\_store\(5\)](#), [pam\\_dhkeys\(5\)](#), [pam\\_passwd\\_auth\(5\)](#), [pam\\_unix\\_account\(5\)](#), [pam\\_unix\\_auth\(5\)](#), [pam\\_unix\\_session\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [ip6\(7P\)](#), [termio\(7I\)](#)

*System Administration Guide: Security Services*

Alexander, S. *RFC 1572, TELNET Environment Option*. Network Information Center, SRI International, Menlo Park, Calif., January 1994.

Borman, Dave. *RFC 1408, TELNET Environment Option*. Network Information Center, SRI International, Menlo Park, Calif., January 1993.

Borman, Dave. *RFC 1571, TELNET Environment Option Interoperability Issues*. Network Information Center, SRI International, Menlo Park, Calif., January 1994.

Crispin, Mark. *RFC 727, TELNET Logout Option*. Network Information Center, SRI International, Menlo Park, Calif., April 1977.

Marcy, G. *RFC 1096, TELNET X Display Location Option*. Network Information Center, SRI International, Menlo Park, Calif., March 1989.

Postel, Jon, and Joyce Reynolds. *RFC 854, TELNET Protocol Specification*. Network Information Center, SRI International, Menlo Park, Calif., May 1983.

Waitzman, D. *RFC 1073, TELNET Window Size Option*. Network Information Center, SRI International, Menlo Park, Calif., October 1988.

Kohl, J., Neuman, C., *The Kerberos Network Authentication Service (V5), RFC 1510*. September 1993.

Ts'o, T. and J. Altman, *Telnet Authentication Option, RFC 2941*. September 2000.

Ts'o, T., *Telnet Authentication: Kerberos Version 5, RFC 2942*. September 2000.

Ts'o, T., *Telnet Data Encryption Option, RFC 2946*. September 2000.

Ts'o, T., *Telnet Encryption: DES 64 bit Cipher Feedback, RFC 2952*. September 2000.

**Notes** Some TELNET commands are only partially implemented.

Binary mode has no common interpretation except between similar operating systems.

The terminal type name received from the remote client is converted to lower case.

The *packet* interface to the pseudo-terminal should be used for more intelligent flushing of input and output queues.

`in.telnetd` never sends TELNET *go ahead* commands.

The `pam_unix(5)` module is no longer supported.. Similar functionality is provided by `pam_authok_check(5)`, `pam_authok_get(5)`, `pam_authok_store(5)`, `pam_dhkeys(5)`, `pam_passwd_auth(5)`, `pam_unix_account(5)`, `pam_unix_auth(5)`, and `pam_unix_session(5)`.

The `in.telnetd` service is managed by the service management facility, `smf(5)`, under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/telnet
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using `svcadm(1M)`. Responsibility for initiating and restarting this service is delegated to `inetd(1M)`. Use `inetadm(1M)` to make configuration changes and to view configuration information for this service. The service's status can be queried using the `svcs(1)` command.

**Name** in.ftpd, tftpd – Internet Trivial File Transfer Protocol server

**Synopsis** in.ftpd [-d] [-T *rexmtval*] [-s] [*homedir*]

**Description** tftpd is a server that supports the Internet Trivial File Transfer Protocol (TFTP).

Before responding to a request, the server attempts to change its current directory to *homedir*; the default directory is /tftpboot.

The use of tftpd does not require an account or password on the remote system. Due to the lack of authentication information, in.ftpd will allow only publicly readable files to be accessed. Files may be written only if they already exist and are publicly writable. Note that this extends the concept of “public” to include all users on all hosts that can be reached through the network. This may not be appropriate on all systems, and its implications should be considered before enabling this service.

in.ftpd runs with the user ID and group ID set to [GU] ID\_NOBODY under the assumption that no files exist with that owner or group. However, nothing checks this assumption or enforces this restriction.

**Options**

- d Debug. When specified it sets the SO\_DEBUG socket option.
- s Secure. When specified, the directory change to *homedir* must succeed. The daemon also changes its root directory to *homedir*.
- T *rexmtval* Specifies the value of the retransmission timeout in seconds. This also affects the maximum session timeout in that the latter is set to five times the retransmission timeout value.

**Usage** The in.ftpd server is IPv6-enabled. See [ip6\(7P\)](#).

in.ftpd supports transfers of greater than 32 MB, per RFC 2348.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWtftp        |

**See Also** [svcs\(1\)](#), [tftp\(1\)](#), [inetadm\(1M\)](#), [inetd\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [netconfig\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [ip6\(7P\)](#)

Malkin, G. and Harkin, A. *RFC 2347, TFTP Option Extension*. The Internet Society. May 1998

Malkin, G. and Harkin, A. *RFC 2348, TFTP Blocksize Option*. The Internet Society. May 1998

Malkin, G. and Harkin, A. *RFC 2349, TFTP Timeout Interval and Transfer Size Options*. The Internet Society. May 1998

Sollins, K.R. *RFC 1350, The TFTP Protocol (Revision 2)*. Network Working Group. July 1992.

**Notes** The `tftpd` server only acknowledges the transfer size option that is sent with a read request when the octet transfer mode is specified.

The `in.tftpd.1m` service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/tftp/udp6:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). Responsibility for initiating and restarting this service is delegated to [inetd\(1M\)](#). Use [inetadm\(1M\)](#) to make configuration changes and to view configuration information for this service. The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Unlike most [smf\(5\)](#) services, a manifest for the `tftp` service is not included in the system. To create one and enable this service, the administrator should:

1. Edit `/etc/inet/inetd.conf` and uncomment the `tftp` entry.
2. Run `/usr/sbin/inetconv`.

After you run `inetconv`, the `svc:/network/tftp/udp6:default` service is created and enabled.

**Name** in.timed – UDP or TCP time protocol service daemon

**Synopsis** in.timed

FMRI *svc:/internet/time:default*

**Description** FMRI stands for Fault Management Resource Identifier. It is used to identify resources managed by the Fault Manager. See [fmd\(1M\)](#) and [smf\(5\)](#).

The `in.timed` service provides the server-side of the time protocol. The time server sends to requestors the time in seconds since midnight, January 1, 1900. The time protocol is available on both TCP and UDP transports through port 37.

The `in.timed` service is an [inetd\(1M\)](#) [smf\(5\)](#) delegated service. The `in.timed` detects which transport is requested by examining the socket it is passed by the `inetd` daemon.

**TCP-based service** Once a connection is established, the `in.timed` sends the time as a 32-bit binary number and closes the connection. Any received data is ignored.

**UDP-based service** The `in.timed` listens for UDP datagrams. When a datagram is received, the server generates a UDP datagram containing the time as a 32-bit binary number and sends it to the client. Any received data is ignored.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWcnsu        |
| Interface Stability | Evolving        |

**See Also** [inetd\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

RFC 868

**Name** intrd – interrupt distribution daemon

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/intrd

**Description** The `intrd` daemon is started at boot time to monitor the assignments between interrupts and CPUs. If `intrd` decides that the current assignments are imbalanced and harmful to system performance, it will generate and implement new assignments.

Any notifications will be delivered via `syslogd(1M)`.

Because `intrd` dynamically monitors a system for optimal performance, it consumes a small amount of CPU time, even on an otherwise idle system. This behavior is normal.

**Attributes** See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWpmu         |
| Interface Stability | Unstable        |

**See Also** `svcs(1)`, `svcadm(1M)`, `syslogd(1M)`, `attributes(5)`, `smf(5)`

**Notes** The interrupt distribution daemon is managed by the service management facility, `smf(5)`, under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/intrd:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using `svcadm(1M)`. The service's status can be queried using the `svcs(1)` command.

**Name** intrstat – report interrupt statistics

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/intrstat [-c *cpulist* | -C *processor\_set\_id*] [-T u | d ]  
[-x *opt[=val]*] [*interval* [*count*]]

**Description** The `intrstat` utility gathers and displays run-time interrupt statistics. The output is a table of device names and CPU IDs, where each row of the table denotes a device, and each column of the table denotes a CPU. Each cell in the table contains both the raw number of interrupts for the given device on the given CPU, and the percentage of absolute time spent in that device's interrupt handler on that CPU.

The device name is given in the form of `{name}#{instance}`. The name is the normalized driver name, and typically corresponds to the name of the module implementing the driver. See `ddi_driver_name(9F)`. Many Sun-delivered drivers have their own manual pages. See `Intro(7)`.

If standard output is a terminal, the table contains as many columns of data as can fit within the terminal width. If standard output is not a terminal, the table contains at most four columns of data. By default, data is gathered and displayed for all CPUs. If the data cannot fit in a single table, it is printed across multiple tables. The set of CPUs for which data is displayed can be optionally specified with the `-c` or `-C` option.

By default, `intrstat` displays data once per second and runs indefinitely. Both of these behaviors can be optionally controlled with the `interval` and `count` parameters, respectively. See `OPERANDS`.

Because `intrstat` uses dynamic discovery, it reports only on devices that raise interrupts while the command is running. Any devices that are silent while `intrstat` is running are not displayed.

`intrstat` induces a small system-wide performance degradation. As a result, only the super-user can run `intrstat` by default. The *Solaris Dynamic Tracing Guide* explains how administrators can grant privileges to other users to permit them to run `intrstat`.

**Options** The following options are supported:

`-c cpulist`

Displays data for the CPUs specified by *cpulist*.

*cpulist* can be a single processor ID (for example, 4), a range of processor IDs (for example, 4-6), or a comma separated list of processor IDs or processor ID ranges (for example, 4, 5, 6 or 4, 6-8).

`-C processor_set_id`

Displays data for the CPUs in the processor set specified by *processor\_set\_id*.

`intrstat` modifies its output to always reflect the CPUs in the specified processor set. If a CPU is added to the set, `intrstat` modifies its output to include the added CPU. If a CPU is removed from the set, `intrstat` modifies its output to exclude the removed CPU. At most one processor set can be specified.

`-T u | d`

Display a time stamp.

Specify `u` for a printed representation of the internal representation of time. See [time\(2\)](#).

Specify `d` for standard date format. See [date\(1\)](#).

`-x opt[=val]`

Enable or modify a DTrace runtime option or D compiler option. The list of options is found in the *Solaris Dynamic Tracing Guide*. A boolean option is enabled by specifying its name. Options with values are set by separating the option name and value with an equal sign (=)

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

*count*

Indicates the number of intervals to execute before exiting.

*interval*

Indicates the number of seconds to be executed before exiting.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Using `intrstat` Without Options

Without options, `intrstat` displays a table of trap types and CPUs. At most, four columns can fit in the default terminal width. If there are more than four CPUs, multiple tables are displayed.

The following example runs `intrstat` on a uniprocessor Intel IA/32-based laptop:

```
example# intrstat
 device | cpu0 %tim
-----+-----
 ata#0 | 166 0.4
 ata#1 | 0 0.0
audioi810#0 | 6 0.0
 i8042#0 | 281 0.7
 iprb#0 | 6 0.0
 uhci#1 | 6 0.0
 uhci#2 | 6 0.0

 device | cpu0 %tim
-----+-----
 ata#0 | 161 0.5
 ata#1 | 0 0.0
audioi810#0 | 6 0.0
```



**EXAMPLE 1** Using intrstat Without Options (Continued)

```

i8042#0 | 303 0.6
iprb#0 | 6 0.0
uhci#1 | 6 0.0
uhci#2 | 6 0.0

```

...

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWdtrc        |
| Interface Stability | See below.      |

The command-line syntax is Evolving. The human-readable output is Unstable.

**See Also** [dtrace\(1M\)](#), [trapstat\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [Intro\(7\)](#), [ddi\\_driver\\_name\(9F\)](#)

*Solaris Dynamic Tracing Guide*

**Name** in.uucpd, uucpd – UUCP server

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/in.uucpd [-n]

**Description** in.uucpd is the server for supporting UUCP connections over networks.

in.uucpd is invoked by [inetd\(1M\)](#) when a UUCP connection is established, that is, a connection to the port indicated in the “uucp” service specification, and executes the following protocol. See [services\(4\)](#):

1. The server prompts with `login:.` The [uucico\(1M\)](#) process at the other end must supply a username.
2. Unless the username refers to an account without a password, the server then prompts with `Password:.` The `uucico` process at the other end must supply the password for that account.

If the username is not valid, or is valid but refers to an account that does not have `/usr/lib/uucp/uucico` as its login shell, or if the password is not the correct password for that account, the connection is dropped. Otherwise, `uucico` is run, with the user ID, group ID, group set, and home directory for that account, with the environment variables `USER` and `LOGNAME` set to the specified username, and with a `-u` flag specifying the username. Unless the `-n` flag is specified, entries are made in `/var/adm/utmpx`, `/var/adm/wtmpx`, and `/var/adm/lastlog` for the username. `in.uucpd` must be invoked by a user with appropriate privilege (usually root) in order to be able to verify that the password is correct.

**Security** in.uucpd uses [pam\(3PAM\)](#) for authentication, account management, and session management. The PAM configuration policy, listed through `/etc/pam.conf`, specifies the modules to be used for `in.uucpd`. Here is a partial `pam.conf` file with entries for `uucp` using the UNIX authentication, account management, and session management module.

```
uucp auth requisite pam_authtok_get.so.1
uucp auth required pam_dhkeys.so.1
uucp auth required pam_unix_auth.so.1

uucp account requisite pam_roles.so.1
uucp account required pam_projects.so.1
uucp account required pam_unix_account.so.1

uucp session required pam_unix_session.so.1
```

If there are no entries for the `uucp` service, then the entries for the “other” service will be used. If multiple authentication modules are listed, then the peer may be prompted for multiple passwords.

**Files**

|                               |                    |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|
| <code>/var/adm/utmpx</code>   | accounting         |
| <code>/var/adm/wtmpx</code>   | accounting         |
| <code>/var/adm/lastlog</code> | time of last login |

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWbnuu        |

**See Also** [svcs\(1\)](#), [inetadm\(1M\)](#), [inetd\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [uucico\(1M\)](#), [pam\(3PAM\)](#), [pam.conf\(4\)](#), [services\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authtok\\_check\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authtok\\_get\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authtok\\_store\(5\)](#), [pam\\_dhkeys\(5\)](#), [pam\\_passwd\\_auth\(5\)](#), [pam\\_unix\\_account\(5\)](#), [pam\\_unix\\_auth\(5\)](#), [pam\\_unix\\_session\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

**Diagnostics** All diagnostic messages are returned on the connection, after which the connection is closed.

|                  |                                                                                                                                                                                |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| user read        | An error occurred while reading the username.                                                                                                                                  |
| passwd read      | An error occurred while reading the password.                                                                                                                                  |
| Login incorrect. | The username is invalid or refers to an account with a login shell other than <code>/usr/lib/uucp/uucico</code> , or the password is not the correct password for the account. |

**Notes** The `in.uucpd` service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/uucp
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). Responsibility for initiating and restarting this service is delegated to [inetd\(1M\)](#). Use [inetadm\(1M\)](#) to make configuration changes and to view configuration information for this service. The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

The `pam_unix(5)` module is no longer supported. Similar functionality is provided by [pam\\_authtok\\_check\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authtok\\_get\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authtok\\_store\(5\)](#), [pam\\_dhkeys\(5\)](#), [pam\\_passwd\\_auth\(5\)](#), [pam\\_unix\\_account\(5\)](#), [pam\\_unix\\_auth\(5\)](#), and [pam\\_unix\\_session\(5\)](#).

**Name** iostat – report I/O statistics

**Synopsis** /usr/bin/iostat [-cCdDeEiImMnpPrstxXYZ] [-l *n*] [-T *u* | *d*]  
[*disk*]... [*interval* [*count*]]

**Description** The `iostat` utility iteratively reports terminal, disk, and tape I/O activity, as well as CPU utilization. The first line of output is for all time since boot; each subsequent line is for the prior interval only.

To compute this information, the kernel maintains a number of counters. For each disk, the kernel counts reads, writes, bytes read, and bytes written. The kernel also takes hi-res time stamps at queue entry and exit points, which allows it to keep track of the residence time and cumulative residence-length product for each queue. Using these values, `iostat` produces highly accurate measures of throughput, utilization, queue lengths, transaction rates and service time. For terminals collectively, the kernel simply counts the number of input and output characters.

During execution of the kernel status command, the state of the system can change. If relevant, a state change message is included in the `iostat` output, in one of the following forms:

```
<<device added: sd0>>
<<device removed: sd0>>
<<partition added: sd0,a>>
<<partition removed: sd0,a>>
<<NFS mounted: nfs1>>
<<NFS unmounted: nfs1>>
<<multi-path added: ssd4>>
<<multi-path removed: ssd4>>
<<controller added: c1>>
<<controller removed: c1>>
<<processors added: 1, 3>>
<<processors removed: 1, 3>>
```

Note that the names printed in these state change messages are affected by the `-n` and `-m` options as appropriate.

For more general system statistics, use `sar(1)`, `sar(1M)`, or `vmstat(1M)`.

**Output** The output of the `iostat` utility includes the following information.

|                     |                           |
|---------------------|---------------------------|
| <code>device</code> | name of the disk          |
| <code>r/s</code>    | reads per second          |
| <code>w/s</code>    | writes per second         |
| <code>kr/s</code>   | kilobytes read per second |

---

|                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                     | The average I/O size during the interval can be computed from $kr/s$ divided by $r/s$ .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <code>kw/s</code>   | kilobytes written per second                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|                     | The average I/O size during the interval can be computed from $kw/s$ divided by $w/s$ .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <code>wait</code>   | average number of transactions waiting for service (queue length)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|                     | This is the number of I/O operations held in the device driver queue waiting for acceptance by the device.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <code>actv</code>   | average number of transactions actively being serviced (removed from the queue but not yet completed)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|                     | This is the number of I/O operations accepted, but not yet serviced, by the device.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <code>svc_t</code>  | average response time of transactions, in milliseconds                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|                     | The <code>svc_t</code> output reports the overall <i>response</i> time, rather than the <i>service</i> time, of a device. The overall time includes the time that transactions are in queue and the time that transactions are being serviced. The time spent in queue is shown with the <code>-x</code> option in the <code>wsvc_t</code> output column. The time spent servicing transactions is the true service time. Service time is also shown with the <code>-x</code> option and appears in the <code>asvc_t</code> output column of the same report. |
| <code>%w</code>     | percent of time there are transactions waiting for service (queue non-empty)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <code>%b</code>     | percent of time the disk is busy (transactions in progress)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <code>wsvc_t</code> | average service time in wait queue, in milliseconds                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <code>asvc_t</code> | average service time of active transactions, in milliseconds                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <code>wt</code>     | the I/O wait time is no longer calculated as a percentage of CPU time, and this statistic will always return zero.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

**Options** The following options are supported:

- c Report the percentage of time the system has spent in user mode, in system mode, waiting for I/O, and idling. See the NOTES section for more information.
- C When the `-x` option is also selected, report extended disk statistics aggregated by *controller id*.
- d For each disk, report the number of kilobytes transferred per second, the number of transfers per second, and the average service time in milliseconds.
- D For each disk, report the reads per second, writes per second, and percentage disk utilization.

- e Display device error summary statistics. The total errors, hard errors, soft errors, and transport errors are displayed.
- E Display all device error statistics.
- i In -E output, display the Device ID instead of the Serial No. The Device Id is a unique identifier registered by a driver through [ddi\\_devid\\_register\(9F\)](#).
- I Report the counts in each interval, rather than rates (where applicable).
- l *n* Limit the number of disks included in the report to *n*; the disk limit defaults to 4 for -d and -D, and unlimited for -x. Note: disks explicitly requested (see *disk* below) are not subject to this disk limit.
- m Report file system mount points. This option is most useful if the -P or -p option is also specified or used in conjunction with -Xn or -en. The -m option is useful only if the mount point is actually listed in the output. This option can only be used in conjunction with the -n option.
- M Display data throughput in MB/sec instead of KB/sec.
- n Display names in descriptive format. For example, cXtYdZ, rmt/N, server:/export/path.  
  
By default, disks are identified by instance names such as `ssd23` or `md301`. Combining the -n option with the -x option causes disk names to display in the cXtYdZsN format which is more easily associated with physical hardware characteristics. The cXtYdZsN format is particularly useful in FibreChannel (FC) environments where the FC World Wide Name appears in the `t` field.
- p For each disk, report per-partition statistics in addition to per-device statistics.
- P For each disk, report per-partition statistics only, no per-device statistics.
- r Display data in a comma-separated format.
- s Suppress messages related to state changes.
- t Report the number of characters read and written to terminals per second.
- T u | d Display a time stamp.  
  
Specify u for a printed representation of the internal representation of time. See [time\(2\)](#). Specify d for standard date format. See [date\(1\)](#).
- X For disks under [scsi\\_vhci\(7D\)](#) control, in addition to disk *lun* statistics, also report statistics for *lun.controller*.
- x Report extended disk statistics. By default, disks are identified by instance names such as `ssd23` or `md301`. Combining the x option with the -n option causes disk names to display in the cXtYdZsN format, more easily associated with physical

hardware characteristics. Using the cXtYdZsN format is particularly helpful in the FibreChannel environments where the FC World Wide Name appears in the t field.

If no output display is requested (no -x, -e, -E), -x is implied.

-Y For disks under `scsi_vhci(7D)` control, in addition to disk *lun* statistics, also report statistics for *lun.targetport* and *lun.targetport.controller*.

In -n (descriptive) mode the *targetport* is shown in using the *target-port* property of the path. Without -n the *targetport* is shown using the shorter *port-id*. All target ports with the same *target-port* property value share the same *port-id*. The *target-port-to-port-id* association does not persist across reboot.

If no output display is requested (no -x, -e, -E), -x is implied.

-z Do not print lines whose underlying data values are all zeros.

The option set `-xcnCXtdz interval` is particularly useful for determining whether disk I/O problems exist and for identifying problems.

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

*count* Display only *count* reports.

*disk* Explicitly specify the disks to be reported; in addition to any explicit disks, any active disks up to the disk limit (see -l above) will also be reported.

*interval* Report once each *interval* seconds.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Using `iostat` to Generate User and System Operation Statistics

The following command displays two reports of extended device statistics, aggregated by *controller id*, for user (us) and system (sy) operations. Because the -n option is used with the -x option, devices are identified by controller names.

```
example% iostat -xcnCXtdz 5
```

```
Mon Nov 24 14:58:36 2003
```

```
cpu
```

```
us sy wt id
```

```
14 31 0 20
```

```
extended device statistics
```

| r/s   | w/s   | kr/s    | kw      | wait | actv  | wsvc_t | asvc_t | %w | %b | device |
|-------|-------|---------|---------|------|-------|--------|--------|----|----|--------|
| 3.8   | 29.9  | 145.8   | 44.0    | 0.0  | 0.2   | 0.1    | 6.4    | 0  | 5  | c0     |
| 666.3 | 814.8 | 12577.6 | 17591.1 | 91.3 | 82.3  | 61.6   | 55.6   | 0  | 2  | c12    |
| 180.0 | 234.6 | 4401.1  | 5712.6  | 0.0  | 147.7 | 0.0    | 356.3  | 0  | 98 | d10    |

**EXAMPLE 1** Using `iostat` to Generate User and System Operation Statistics (Continued)

```

Mon Nov 24 14:58:41 2003
 cpu
 us sy wt id
 11 31 0 22

 extended device statistics
 r/s w/s kr/s kw wait actv wsvc_t asvc_t %w %b device
 0.8 41.0 5.2 20.5 0.0 0.2 0.2 4.4 0 6 c0
565.3 581.7 8573.2 10458.9 0.0 26.6 0.0 23.2 0 3 c12
106.5 81.3 3393.2 1948.6 0.0 5.7 0.0 30.1 0 99 d10

```

**EXAMPLE 2** Using `iostat` to Generate TTY Statistics

The following command displays two reports on the activity of five disks in different modes of operation. Because the `-x` option is used, disks are identified by instance names.

```
example% iostat -x tc 5 2
```

```

 extended device statistics tty cpu
device r/s w/s kr/s kw/s wait actv svc_t %w %b tin tout us sy wt id
sd0 0.4 0.3 10.4 8.0 0.0 0.0 36.9 0 1 0 10 0 0 0 99
sd1 0.0 0.0 0.3 0.4 0.0 0.0 35.0 0 0
sd6 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0 0
nfs1 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0 0
nfs2 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.1 0.0 0.0 35.6 0 0

 extended device statistics tty cpu
device r/s w/s kr/s kw/s wait actv svc_t %w %b tin tout us sy wt id
sd0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0 0 0 155 0 0 0 100
sd1 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0 0
sd6 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0 0
nfs1 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0 0
nfs2 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0 0

```

**EXAMPLE 3** Using `iostat` to Generate Partition and Device Statistics

The following command generates partition and device statistics for each disk. Because the `-n` option is used with the `-x` option, disks are identified by controller names.

```
example% iostat -xnp
```

```

 extended device statistics
 r/s w/s kr/s kw/s wait actv wsvc_t asvc_t %w %b device
 0.4 0.3 10.4 7.9 0.0 0.0 0.0 36.9 0 1 c0t0d0

```



**EXAMPLE 3** Using `iostat` to Generate Partition and Device Statistics (Continued)

```
0.3 0.3 9.0 7.3 0.0 0.0 0.0 37.2 0 1 c0t0d0s0
0.0 0.0 0.1 0.5 0.0 0.0 0.0 34.0 0 0 c0t0d0s1
0.0 0.0 0.0 0.1 0.0 0.0 0.6 35.0 0 0 fuji:/export/home/user3
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Show Translation from Instance Name to Descriptive Name

The following example illustrates the use of `iostat` to translate a specific instance name to a descriptive name.

```
example% iostat -xn sd1
 extended device statistics
r/s w/s kr/s kw/s wait actv wsvc_t asvc_t %w %b device
0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0 0 c8t1d0
```

**EXAMPLE 5** Show Target Port and Controller Activity for a Specific Disk

In the following example, there are four controllers, all connected to the same target port.

```
iostat -Y ssd22
 extended device statistics
device r/s w/s kr/s kw/s wait actv svc_t %w %b
ssd22 0.2 0.0 1.5 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.7 0 0
ssd22.t2 0.2 0.0 1.5 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0 0
ssd22.t2.fp0 0.0 0.0 0.4 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0 0
ssd22.t2.fp1 0.0 0.0 0.4 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0 0
ssd22.t2.fp2 0.0 0.0 0.4 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0 0
ssd22.t2.fp3 0.0 0.0 0.4 0.0 0.0 0.0 0.0 0 0
```

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWcsu         |
| Interface Stability | See below.      |

Invocation is evolving. Human readable output is unstable.

**See Also** [date\(1\)](#), [sar\(1\)](#), [sar\(1M\)](#), [mpstat\(1M\)](#), [vmstat\(1M\)](#), [time\(2\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [scsi\\_vhci\(7D\)](#)

**Notes** The sum of CPU utilization might vary slightly from 100 because of rounding errors in the production of a percentage figure.

The `svc_t` response time is not particularly significant when the  $I/\theta$  ( $r/s+w/s$ ) rates are under 0.5 per second. Harmless spikes are fairly normal in such cases.

The `mpstat` utility reports the same `wt`, `usr`, and `sys` statistics. See [mpstat\(1M\)](#) for more information.

When executed in a zone and if the pools facility is active, `iostat(1M)` will only provide information for those processors in the processor set of the pool to which the zone is bound.

**Name** ipaddrsel – configure IPv6 default address selection

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/ipaddrsel  
 /usr/sbin/ipaddrsel -f *file*  
 /usr/sbin/ipaddrsel -d

**Description** Use the `ipaddrsel` utility to configure the IPv6 default address selection policy table. The policy table is a longest-matching-prefix lookup table that is used for IPv6 source address selection and for destination address ordering when resolving names to AF\_INET6 addresses. For a description of how the policy table is used for source address selection, see [inet6\(7P\)](#). For a description of how the policy table is used for destination address ordering, see [getaddrinfo\(3SOCKET\)](#).

The unmodified policy table is valid for all typical IPv6 deployments. Modify the table only if a circumstance exists for which the default behavior of the IPv6 source address selection or destination address ordering mechanism is unsatisfactory. See the [Examples](#) section for examples of such circumstances. You should carefully consider your addressing strategy before you change the table from the provided default.

When the `ipaddrsel` command is issued without any arguments, the address selection policy currently in use is printed. The format of the output is compatible with the format of the configuration file that the `-f` option accepts.

**Note** – If the `usesrc` subcommand to [ifconfig\(1M\)](#) is applied to a particular physical interface, the selection policy specified by `usesrc` overrides the source address selection policies specified by `ipaddrsel`. This is true for packets that are locally generated and for applications that do not choose a non-zero source address using [bind\(3SOCKET\)](#).

The Configuration File The configuration file that the `-f` option accepts can contain either comment lines or policy entries. Comment lines have a '#' character as the first non-blank character, and they are ignored by the `ipaddrsel` utility. Policy entry lines have the following format:

```
prefix/prefix_length precedence label [# comment]
```

The *prefix* must be an IPv6 prefix in a format consistent with [inet\(3SOCKET\)](#). The *prefix\_length* is an integer ranging from 0 to 128. The IPv6 source address selection and destination address ordering algorithms determine the precedence or label of an address by doing a longest-prefix-match lookup using the prefixes in this table, much like next-hop determination for a destination is done by doing a longest-prefix-match lookup using an IP routing table.

The precedence is a non-negative integer that represents how the destination address ordering mechanism will sort addresses returned from name lookups. In general, addresses with a higher precedence will be in front of addresses with a lower precedence. Other factors, such as destinations with undesirable source addresses can, however, override these precedence values.

The label is a string of at most fifteen characters, not including the NULL terminator. The label allows particular source address prefixes to be used with destination prefixes of the same label. Specifically, for a particular destination address, the IPv6 source address selection algorithm prefers source addresses whose label is equal that of the destination.

The label may be followed by an optional comment.

The file must contain a default policy entry, which is an entry with `::0/0` as its *prefix* and *prefix\_length*. This is to ensure that all possible addresses match a policy.

**Options** The `ipaddrsel` utility supports the following options:

- f *file* Replace the address selection policy table with the policy specified in the *file*.
- d Revert the kernel's address selection policy table back to the default table. Invoking `ipaddrsel` in this way only changes the currently running kernel's policy table, and does not alter the configuration file `/etc/inet/ipaddrsel.conf`. To revert the configuration file back to its default settings, use `ipaddrsel -d`, then dump the contents of the table to the configuration file by redirecting the output of `ipaddrsel` to `/etc/inet/ipaddrsel.conf`.

```
example# ipaddrsel -d
example# ipaddrsel > /etc/inet/ipaddrsel.conf
```

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 The Default Policy in `/etc/inet/ipaddrsel.conf`

The following example is the default policy that is located in `/etc/inet/ipaddrsel.conf`:

```
Prefix Precedence Label
::1/128 50 Loopback
::/96 20 IPv4-Compatible
::ffff:0.0.0.0/96 10 IPv4
2002::/16 30 6to4
::/0 40 Default
```

EXAMPLE 2 Assigning a Lower Precedence to Link-local and Site-local Addresses

By default, the destination address ordering rules sort addresses of smaller scope before those of larger scope. For example, if a name resolves to a global and a site-local address, the site local address would be ordered before the global address. An administrator can override this ordering rule by assigning a lower precedence to addresses of smaller scope, as the following table demonstrates.

```
Prefix Precedence Label
::1/128 50 Loopback
::/0 40 Default
2002::/16 30 6to4
fec0::/10 27 Site-Local
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Assigning a Lower Precedence to Link-local and Site-local Addresses (Continued)

|                   |                    |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| fe80::/10         | 23 Link-Local      |
| ::/96             | 20 IPv4_Compatible |
| ::ffff:0.0.0.0/96 | 10 IPv4            |

**EXAMPLE 3** Assigning Higher Precedence to IPv4 Destinations

By default, IPv6 addresses are ordered in front of IPv4 addresses in name lookups. `::ffff:0.0.0.0/96` has the lowest precedence in the default table. In the following example, IPv4 addresses are assigned higher precedence and are ordered in front of IPv6 destinations:

| # Prefix          | Precedence Label   |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| ::1/128           | 50 Loopback        |
| ::/0              | 40 Default         |
| 2002::/16         | 30 6to4            |
| ::/96             | 20 IPv4_Compatible |
| ::ffff:0.0.0.0/96 | 60 IPv4            |

**EXAMPLE 4** Ensuring that a Particular Source Address is Used

This example ensures that a particular source address is used only when communicating with destinations in a particular network.

The following policy table assigns a label of 5 to a particular source address on the local system, `2001:1111:1111::1`. The table assigns the same label to a network, `2001:2222:2222::/48`. The result of this policy is that the `2001:1111:1111::1` source address will only be used when communicating with destinations contained in the `2001:2222:2222::/48` network. For this example, this network is the `ClientNet`, which could represent a particular client's network.

| # Prefix              | Precedence Label   |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| ::1/128               | 50 Loopback        |
| 2001:1111:1111::1/128 | 40 ClientNet       |
| 2001:2222:2222::/48   | 40 ClientNet       |
| ::/0                  | 40 Default         |
| 2002::/16             | 30 6to4            |
| ::/96                 | 20 IPv4_Compatible |
| ::ffff:0.0.0.0/96     | 10 IPv4            |

This example assumes that the local system has one physical interface, and that all global prefixes are assigned to that physical interface.

**Exit Status** `ipaddrsel` returns the following exit values:

0 `ipaddrsel` successfully completed.

>0 An error occurred. If a failure is encountered, the kernel's current policy table is unchanged.

**Files** /etc/inet/ipaddrsel.conf The file that contains the IPv6 default address selection policy to be installed at boot time. This file is loaded before any Internet services are started.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWcsu         |
| Interface Stability | Evolving        |

**See Also** [nscd\(1M\)](#), [inet\(3SOCKET\)](#), [getaddrinfo\(3SOCKET\)](#), [ipaddrsel.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [inet6\(7P\)](#)

**Notes** The ipnodes cache kept by [nscd\(1M\)](#) contains addresses that are ordered using the destination address ordering algorithm, which is one of the reasons why `ipaddrsel` is called before `nscd` in the boot sequence. If `ipaddrsel` is used to change the address selection policy after `nscd` has started, you should invalidate the `nscd` ipnodes cache invalidated by invoking the following command:

```
example# /usr/sbin/nscd -i ipnodes
```

**Name** ipf – alter packet filtering lists for IP packet input and output

**Synopsis** ipf [-6AdDEInoPRrsVyzZ] [-l block | pass | nomatch]  
 [-T *optionlist*] [-F i | o | a | s | S] -f *filename*  
 [-f *filename...*]

**Description** The ipf utility is part of a suite of commands associated with the Solaris IP Filter feature. See [ipfilter\(5\)](#).

The ipf utility opens the filenames listed (treating a hyphen (-) as stdin) and parses the file for a set of rules which are to be added or removed from the packet filter rule set.

If there are no parsing problems, each rule processed by ipf is added to the kernel's internal lists. Rules are added to the end of the internal lists, matching the order in which they appear when given to ipf.

ipf's use is restricted through access to /dev/ipauth, /dev/ipL, and /dev/ipstate. The default permissions of these files require ipf to be run as root for all operations.

Enabling Solaris IP Filter Feature Solaris IP Filter is installed with the Solaris operating system. However, packet filtering is not enabled by default. Use the following procedure to activate the Solaris IP Filter feature.

1. Assume a role that includes the IP Filter Management rights profile (see [rbac\(5\)](#)) or become superuser.
2. Configure system and services' firewall policies. See [svc.ipfd\(1M\)](#) and [ipf\(4\)](#).
3. (Optional) Create a network address translation (NAT) configuration file. See [ipnat.conf\(4\)](#).
4. (Optional) Create an address pool configuration file. See [ippool\(4\)](#).

Create an `ippool.conf` file if you want to refer to a group of addresses as a single address pool. If you want the address pool configuration file to be loaded at boot time, create a file called `/etc/ipf/ippool.conf` in which to put the address pool. If you do not want the address pool configuration file to be loaded at boot time, put the `ippool.conf` file in a location other than `/etc/ipf` and manually activate the rules.

5. Enable Solaris IP Filter, as follows:

```
svcadm enable network/ipfilter
```

To re-enable packet filtering after it has been temporarily disabled either reboot the machine or enter the following command:

```
svcadm enable network/ipfilter
```

...which essentially executes the following ipf commands:

1. Enable Solaris IP Filter:

```
ipf -E
```

2. Load ipools:

# **ippool -f** <ippool configuration file>

See [ippool\(1M\)](#).

3. (Optional) Activate packet filtering:

**ipf -f** <ipf configuration file>

4. (Optional) Activate NAT:

**ipnat -f** <IPNAT configuration file>

See [ipnat\(1M\)](#).

**Note** – If you reboot your system, the IPfilter configuration is automatically activated.

**Options** The following options are supported:

-6

This option is required to parse IPv6 rules and to have them loaded. Loading of IPv6 rules is subject to change in the future.

-A

Set the list to make changes to the active list (default).

-d

Turn debug mode on. Causes a hex dump of filter rules to be generated as it processes each one.

-D

Disable the filter (if enabled). Not effective for loadable kernel versions.

-E

Enable the filter (if disabled). Not effective for loadable kernel versions.

-F i | o | a

Specifies which filter list to flush. The parameter should either be i (input), o (output) or a (remove all filter rules). Either a single letter or an entire word starting with the appropriate letter can be used. This option can be before or after any other, with the order on the command line determining that used to execute options.

-F s | S

To flush entries from the state table, use the -F option in conjunction with either s (removes state information about any non-fully established connections) or S (deletes the entire state table). You can specify only one of these two options. A fully established connection will show up in `ipfstat -s` output as 4/4, with deviations either way indicating the connection is not fully established.

-f *filename*

Specifies which files `ipf` should use to get input from for modifying the packet filter rule lists.



- 
- I  
Set the list to make changes to the inactive list.
  - l *pass | block | nomatch*  
Toggles default logging of packets. Valid arguments to this option are *pass*, *block* and *nomatch*. When an option is set, any packet which exits filtering and matches the set category is logged. This is most useful for causing all packets that do not match any of the loaded rules to be logged.
  - n  
Prevents *ipf* from making any *ioctl* calls or doing anything which would alter the currently running kernel.
  - o  
Force rules by default to be added/deleted to/from the output list, rather than the (default) input list.
  - P  
Add rules as temporary entries in the authentication rule table.
  - R  
Disable both IP address-to-hostname resolution and port number-to-service name resolution.
  - r  
Remove matching filter rules rather than add them to the internal lists.
  - s  
Swap the currently active filter list to be an alternative list.
  - T *optionlist*  
Allows run-time changing of IPFilter kernel variables. To allow for changing, some variables require IPFilter to be in a disabled state (-D), others do not. The *optionlist* parameter is a comma-separated list of tuning commands. A tuning command is one of the following:
    - list*  
Retrieve a list of all variables in the kernel, their maximum, minimum, and current value.
    - single variable name*  
Retrieve its current value.
    - variable name with a following assignment*  
To set a new value.

Examples follow:

```
Print out all IPFilter kernel tunable parameters
ipf -T list
```

```
Display the current TCP idle timeout and then set it to 3600
ipf -D -T fr_tcpidletimeout,fr_tcpidletimeout=3600 -E
```

```
Display current values for fr_pass and fr_chksrc, then set
fr_chksrc to 1.
ipf -T fr_pass,fr_chksrc,fr_chksrc=1
```

-v

Turn verbose mode on. Displays information relating to rule processing.

-V

Show version information. This will display the version information compiled into the ipf binary and retrieve it from the kernel code (if running or present). If it is present in the kernel, information about its current state will be displayed; for example, whether logging is active, default filtering, and so forth).

-y

Manually resync the in-kernel interface list maintained by IP Filter with the current interface status list.

-z

For each rule in the input file, reset the statistics for it to zero and display the statistics prior to them being zeroed.

-Z

Zero global statistics held in the kernel for filtering only. This does not affect fragment or state statistics.

**Files** /dev/ipauth

/dev/ipl

/dev/ipstate

Links to IP Filter pseudo devices.

/etc/ipf/ipf.conf

Location of ipf startup configuration file. See [ipf\(4\)](#).

/usr/share/ipfilter/examples/

Contains numerous IP Filter examples.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWipfu        |
| Interface Stability | Committed       |

**See Also** ipfstat(1M), ipmon(1M), ipnat(1M), ippool(1M), svcadm(1M), svc.ipfd(1M), ipf(4), ipnat.conf(4), ippool(4), attributes(5), ipfilter(5)

*System Administration Guide: IP Services*

**Diagnostics** Needs to be run as root for the packet filtering lists to actually be affected inside the kernel.

**Name** ipfs – saves and restores information for NAT and state tables

**Synopsis** ipfs [-nv] -l  
ipfs [-nv] -u  
ipfs [-nv] [-d *dirname*] -R  
ipfs [-nv] [-d *dirname*] -W  
ipfs [-nNSv] [-f *filename*] -r  
ipfs [-nNSv] [-f *filename*] -w  
ipfs [-nNSv] -f *filename* -i <*if1*>,<*if2*>

**Description** The ipfs utility enables the saving of state information across reboots. Specifically, the utility allows state information created for NAT entries and rules using "keep state" to be locked (modification prevented) and then saved to disk. Then, after a reboot, that information is restored. The result of this state-saving is that connections are not interrupted.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- d Change the default directory used with -R and -W options for saving state information.
- n Do not take any action that would affect information stored in the kernel or on disk.
- v Provides a verbose description of ipfs activities.
- N Operate on NAT information.
- S Operate on filtering state information.
- u Unlock state tables in the kernel.
- l Lock state tables in the kernel.
- r Read information in from the specified file and load it into the kernel. This requires the state tables to have already been locked and does not change the lock once complete.
- w Write information out to the specified file and from the kernel. This requires the state tables to have already been locked and does not change the lock once complete.
- R Restores all saved state information, if any, from two files, *ipstate.ipf* and *ipnat.ipf*, stored in the */var/db/ipf* directory. This directory can be changed with the -d option. The state tables are locked at the beginning of this operation and unlocked once complete.
- W Saves in-kernel state information, if any, out to two files, *ipstate.ipf* and *ipnat.ipf*, stored in the */var/db/ipf* directory. This directory can be changed with the -d option. The state tables are locked at the beginning of this operation and unlocked once complete.

- Files**
- /var/db/ipf/ipstate.ipf
  - /var/db/ipf/ipnat.ipf
  - /dev/ipl
  - /dev/ipstate
  - /dev/ipnat

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWipfu        |
| Interface Stability | Committed       |

**See Also** [ipf\(1M\)](#), [ipmon\(1M\)](#), [ipnat\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Diagnostics** Arguably, the `-W` and `-R` operations should set the locking and, rather than undo it, restore it to what it was previously.

Fragment table information is currently not saved.

**Name** ipfstat – reports on packet filter statistics and filter list

**Synopsis** ipfstat [-6aACdfghIilnoRstv]  
ipfstat [-C] [-D *addrport*] [-P *protocol*] [-S *addrport*]  
[-T *refreshtime*]

**Description** The ipfstat command is part of a suite of commands associated with the Solaris IP Filter feature. See [ipfilter\(5\)](#).

The ipfstat command examines /dev/kmem using the symbols `_fr_flags`, `_frstats`, `_filterin`, and `_filterout`. To run and work, it needs to be able to read both /dev/kmem and the kernel itself.

The default behavior of ipfstat is to retrieve and display the statistics which have been accumulated over time as the kernel has put packets through the filter.

The role of ipfstat is to display current kernel statistics gathered as a result of applying the filters in place (if any) to packets going in and out of the kernel. This is the default operation when no command line parameters are present. When supplied with either `-i` or `-o`, ipfstat will retrieve and display the appropriate list of filter rules currently installed and in use by the kernel.

ipfstat uses kernel device files to obtain information. The default permissions of these files require ipfstat to be run as root for all operations.

The ipfstat command supports the [kstat\(3KSTAT\)](#) kernel facility. Because of this support, as an alternative to ipfstat, you can use [kstat\(1M\)](#). For example:

```
kstat -m ipf
```

Using the ipfstat `-t` option causes ipfstat to enter the state top mode. In this mode the state table is displayed similarly to the way the Unix top utility displays the process table. The `-C`, `-D`, `-P`, `-S` and `-T` command line options can be used to restrict the state entries that will be shown and to specify the frequency of display updates.

In state top mode, use the following keys to influence the displayed information:

- d Select information to display.
- l Redraw the screen.
- q Quit the program.
- s Switch between different sorting criteria.
- r Reverse the sorting criteria.

States can be sorted by protocol number, by number of IP packets, by number of bytes, and by time-to-live of the state entry. The default is to sort by the number of bytes. States are sorted in descending order, but you can use the `r` key to sort them in ascending order.

It is not possible to interactively change the source, destination, and protocol filters or the refresh frequency. This must be done from the command line.

The screen must have at least 80 columns for correct display. However, `ipfstat` does not check the screen width.

Only the first  $X-5$  entries that match the sort and filter criteria are displayed (where  $X$  is the number of rows on the display). There is no way to see additional entries.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- 6 Display filter lists and states for IPv6, if available. This option might change in the future.
- a Display the accounting filter list and show bytes counted against each rule.
- A Display packet authentication statistics.
- C Valid only in combination with `-t`. Display “closed” states as well in the top. Normally, a TCP connection is not displayed when it reaches the `CLOSE_WAIT` protocol state. With this option enabled, all state entries are displayed.
- d Produce debugging output when displaying data.
- D *addrport* Valid only in combination with `-t`. Limit the state top display to show only state entries whose destination IP address and port match the *addrport* argument. The *addrport* specification is of the form *ipaddress[,port]*. The *ipaddress* and *port* should be either numerical or the string `any` (specifying any IP address and any port, in that order). If the `-D` option is not specified, it defaults to `-D any, any`.
- f Show fragment state information (statistics) and held state information (in the kernel) if any is present.
- g Show groups currently configured (both active and inactive).
- h Show per-rule the number of times each one scores a “hit”. For use in combination with `-i`.
- i Display the filter list used for the input side of the kernel IP processing.
- I Swap between retrieving `inactive/active` filter list details. For use in combination with `-i`.
- l When used with `-s`, show a list of active state entries (no statistics).
- n Show the rule number for each rule as it is printed.
- o Display the filter list used for the output side of the kernel IP processing.

- P *protocol* Valid only in combination with -t. Limit the state top display to show only state entries that match a specific protocol. The argument can be a protocol name (as defined in `/etc/protocols`) or a protocol number. If this option is not specified, state entries for any protocol are specified.
- R Disable both IP address-to-hostname resolution and port number-to-service name resolution.
- S *addrport* Valid only in combination with -t. Limit the state top display to show only state entries whose source IP address and port match the *addrport* argument. The *addrport* specification is of the form *ipaddress[,port]*. The *ipaddress* and *port* should be either numerical or the string any (specifying any IP address and any port, in that order). If the -S option is not specified, it defaults to -S any , any.
- s Show packet/flow state information (statistics only).
- T *refreshtime* Valid only in combination with -t. Specifies how often the state top display should be updated. The refresh time is the number of seconds between an update. Any positive integer can be used. The default (and minimal update time) is 1.
- t Show the state table in a way similar to the way the Unix utility, `top`, shows the process table. States can be sorted in a number of different ways.
- v Turn verbose mode on. Displays additional debugging information.

- Files**
- /dev/kmem
  - /dev/ksyms
  - /dev/ip`l`
  - /dev/ipstate

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWipfu        |
| Interface Stability | Committed       |

**See Also** [ipf\(1M\)](#), [kstat\(1M\)](#), [kstat\(3KSTAT\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [ipfilter\(5\)](#)

*System Administration Guide: IP Services*



**Name** ipmon – monitors /dev/ipl for logged packets

**Synopsis** ipmon [-abDFhnpstvxX] [-N *device*] [ [o] [NSI]] [-O [NSI]]  
[-P *pidfile*] [-S *device*] [-f *device*] [*filename*]

**Description** The ipmon command is part of a suite of commands associated with the Solaris IP Filter feature. See [ipfilter\(5\)](#).

The ipmon command opens /dev/ipl for reading and awaits data to be saved from the packet filter. The binary data read from the device is reprinted in human readable form. However, IP addresses are not mapped back to hostnames, nor are ports mapped back to service names. The output goes to standard output, by default, or a filename, if specified on the command line. Should the -s option be used, output is sent instead to [syslogd\(1M\)](#). Messages sent by means of syslog have the day, month, and year removed from the message, but the time (including microseconds), as recorded in the log, is still included.

Messages generated by ipmon consist of whitespace-separated fields. Fields common to all messages are:

- The date of packet receipt. This is suppressed when the message is sent to syslog.
- The time of packet receipt. This is in the form *HH:MM:SS.F*, for hours, minutes, seconds, and fractions of a second (which can be several digits long).
- The name of the interface on which the packet was processed, for example, *ib1*.
- The group and rule number of the rule, for example, *@0:17*. These can be viewed with [ipfstat -in](#) for input rules or [ipfstat -in](#) for output rules. See [ipfstat\(1M\)](#).
- The action: *p* for passed, *b* for blocked, *s* for a short packet, *n* did not match any rules, or *L* for a log rule.
- The addresses. This is actually three fields: the source address and port (separated by a comma), the symbol  $\rightarrow$ , and the destination address and port. For example:  
*209.53.17.22,80 → 198.73.220.17,1722.*
- *PR* followed by the protocol name or number, for example, *PR tcp*.
- *len* followed by the header length and total length of the packet, for example, *len 20 40*.

If the packet is a TCP packet, there will be an additional field starting with a hyphen followed by letters corresponding to any flags that were set. See [ipf.conf\(4\)](#) for a list of letters and their flags.

If the packet is an ICMP packet, there will be two fields at the end, the first always being *icmp*, the next being the ICMP message and submessage type, separated by a slash. For example, *icmp 3/3* for a port unreachable message.

**Options** The following options are supported:

-a

Open all of the device logfiles for reading log entries. All entries are displayed to the same output device (stderr or syslog).

- b  
For rules which log the body of a packet, generate hex output representing the packet contents after the headers.
- D  
Cause ipmon to turn itself into a daemon. Using subshells or backgrounding of ipmon is not required to turn it into an orphan so it can run indefinitely.
- f *device*  
Specify an alternative device/file from which to read the log information for normal IP Filter log records.
- F  
Flush the current packet log buffer. The number of bytes flushed is displayed, even if the result is zero.
- h  
Displays usage information.
- n  
IP addresses and port numbers will be mapped, where possible, back into hostnames and service names.
- N *device*  
Set the logfile to be opened for reading NAT log records from or to *device*.
- o *letter*  
Specify which log files from which to actually read data. N, NAT logfile; S, state logfile; I, normal IP Filter logfile. The -a option is equivalent to using -o NSI.
- O *letter*  
Specify which log files you do not wish to read from. This is most commonly used in conjunction with the -a. Letters available as parameters are the same as for -o.
- p  
Cause the port number in log messages always to be printed as a number and never attempt to look it up.
- P *pidfile*  
Write the PD of the ipmon process to a file. By default this is /var/run/ipmon.pid.
- s  
Packet information read in will be sent through syslogd rather than saved to a file. The default facility when compiled and installed is local0. The following levels are used:
  - LOG\_INFO  
Packets logged using the log keyword as the action rather than pass or block.
  - LOG\_NOTICE  
Packets logged that are also passed.

LOG\_WARNING  
Packets logged that are also blocked.

LOG\_ERR  
Packets that have been logged and that can be considered “short”.

-S *device*  
Set the logfile to be opened for reading state log records from or to *device*.

-t  
Read the input file/device in the way performed by [tail\(1\)](#).

-v  
Show TCP window, ack, and sequence fields

-x  
Show the packet data in hex.

-X  
Show the log header record data in hex.

- Files**
- /dev/ip<sub>l</sub>
  - /dev/ipnat
  - /dev/ipstate

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWipfu        |
| Interface Stability | Committed       |

**See Also** [ipf\(1M\)](#), [ipfstat\(1M\)](#), [ipnat\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [ipfilter\(5\)](#)

*System Administration Guide: IP Services*

**Diagnostics** ipmon expects data that it reads to be consistent with how it should be saved and aborts if it fails an assertion which detects an anomaly in the recorded data.

**Name** ipmpstat – display IPMP subsystem status

**Synopsis** ipmpstat [-n] [-o *field*[,...]] [-P]] [-a|-g|-i|-p|-t]

**Description** The `ipmpstat` command concisely displays information about the IPMP subsystem. It supports five different output modes, each of which provides a different view of the IPMP subsystem (address, group, interface, probe, and target), described below. At most one output mode may be specified per invocation, and the displayed information is guaranteed to be self-consistent. It also provides a parseable output format which may be used by scripts to examine the state of the IPMP subsystem. Only basic privileges are needed to invoke `ipmpstat`, with the exception of probe mode which requires all privileges.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- a  
Display IPMP data address information (“address” output mode).
- g  
Display IPMP group information (“group” output mode).
- i  
Display IP interface information (“interface” output mode).
- n  
Display IP addresses numerically, rather than attempting to resolve them to hostnames. This option may be used in any output mode.
- o *field*[,...]  
Display only the specified output fields, in order. The list of field names is case-insensitive and comma-separated. The field names that are supported depend on the selected output mode, described below. The special field name `all` may be used to display all fields for a given output mode.
- p  
Display IPMP probe information (“probe” output mode).
- t  
Display IPMP target information (“target” output mode).
- P  
Display using a machine-parseable format, described below. If this option is specified, an explicit list of fields must be specified using the `-o` option.

**Output Modes** The `ipmpstat` utility supports the output modes listed below. Note that these modes map to some of the options described above.

#### Address Mode

Address mode displays the state of all IPMP data addresses on the system. The following output fields are supported:

**ADDRESS**

The hostname (or IP address) associated with the information. Note that because duplicate down addresses may exist, the address must be taken together with the **GROUP** to form a unique identity. For a given IPMP group, if duplicate addresses exist, at most one will be displayed, and an up address will always take precedence.

**STATE**

The state of the address. Either up if the address is **IFF\_UP** (see [ifconfig\(1M\)](#)), or down if the address is not **IFF\_UP**.

**GROUP**

The IPMP IP interface hosting the address.

**INBOUND**

The underlying IP interface that will receive packets for this address. This may change in response to external events such as IP interface failure. If this field is empty, then the system will not accept IP packets sent to this address (for example, because the address is down or because there are no active IP interfaces left in the IPMP group).

**OUTBOUND**

The underlying IP interfaces that will send packets using this source address. This may change in response to external events such as IP interface failure. If this field is empty, then the system will not send packets with this address as a source (for example, because the address is down or because there are no active IP interfaces left in the IPMP group).

If **-o** is not specified, all output fields are displayed.

**Group Mode**

Group mode displays the state of all IPMP groups on the system. The following output fields are supported:

**GROUP**

The IPMP IP interface name associated with the information. For the anonymous group (see [in.mpathd\(1M\)](#)), this field will be empty.

**GROUPNAME**

The IPMP group name. For the anonymous group, this field will be empty.

**STATE**

The state of the group:

|                 |                                                        |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>ok</b>       | All interfaces in the group are usable.                |
| <b>degraded</b> | Some (but not all) interfaces in the group are usable. |
| <b>failed</b>   | No interfaces in the group are usable.                 |

**FDT**

The probe-based failure detection time. If probe-based failure detection is disabled, this field will be empty.

## INTERFACES

The list of underlying IP interfaces in the group. The list is divided into three parts:

1. Active interfaces are listed first and not enclosed in any brackets or parenthesis. Active interfaces are those being used by the system to send or receive data traffic.
2. INACTIVE interfaces are listed next and enclosed in parenthesis. INACTIVE interfaces are those that are functioning, but not being used according to administrative policy.
3. Unusable interfaces are listed last and enclosed in brackets. Unusable interfaces are those that cannot be used at all in their present configuration (for example, FAILED or OFFLINE).

If `-o` is not specified, all output fields are displayed.

## Interface Mode

Interface mode displays the state of all IP interfaces that are tracked by `in.mpathd` on the system. The following output fields are supported:

### INTERFACE

The IP interface name associated with the information.

### ACTIVE

Either yes or no, depending on whether the IP interface is being used by the system for IP data traffic.

### GROUP

The IPMP IP interface associated with the IP interface. For IP interfaces in the anonymous group (see `in.mpathd(1M)`), this field will be empty.

### FLAGS

Assorted information about the IP interface:

- i Unusable due to being INACTIVE.
- s Marked STANDBY.
- m Nominated to send/receive IPv4 multicast for its IPMP group.
- b Nominated to send/receive IPv4 broadcast for its IPMP group.
- M Nominated to send/receive IPv6 multicast for its IPMP group.
- d Unusable due to being down.
- h Unusable due to being brought OFFLINE by `in.mpathd` because of a duplicate hardware address.

### LINK

The state of link-based failure detection:

up

The link is up.

down

The link is down.

unknown

The network driver does not report link state changes.

PROBE

The state of probe-based failure detection:

ok

Probes detect no problems.

failed

Probes detect failure.

unknown

Probes cannot be sent since no suitable probe targets are known.

disabled

Probes have been disabled because a unique IP test address has not been configured.

STATE

The overall state of the interface:

ok

The interface is online and functioning properly based on the configured failure detection methods.

failed

The interface is online but has a link state of down or a probe state of failed.

offline

The interface is offline.

unknown

The interface is online but may or may not be functioning because the configured failure detection methods are in unknown states.

If `-o` is not specified, all output fields are displayed.

Probe Mode

Probe mode displays information about the probes being sent by `in.mpathd`. Unlike other output modes, this mode runs until explicitly terminated using Ctrl-C. The following output fields are supported:

TIME

The time the probe was sent, relative to when `ipmpstat` was started. If the probe was sent prior to starting `ipmpstat`, the time will be negative.

**PROBE**

An identifier representing the probe. The identifier will start at zero and will monotonically increment for each probe sent by `in.mpathd` over a given interface. To enable more detailed analysis by packet monitoring tools, this identifier matches the `icmp_seq` field of the ICMP probe packet.

**INTERFACE**

The IP interface the probe was sent on.

**TARGET**

The hostname (or IP address) of the target the probe was sent to.

**NETRTT**

The network round-trip-time for the probe. This is the time between when the IP module sends the probe and when the IP module receives the acknowledgment. If `in.mpathd` has concluded that the probe has been lost, this field will be empty.

**RTT**

The total round-trip-time for the probe. This is the time between when `in.mpathd` starts executing the code to send the probe, and when it completes processing the ack. If `in.mpathd` has concluded that the probe has been lost, this field will be empty. Spikes in the total round-trip time that are not present in the network round-trip time indicate that the local system itself is overloaded.

**RTTAVG**

The average round-trip-time to **TARGET** over **INTERFACE**. This aids identification of slow targets. If there is insufficient data to calculate the average, this field will be empty.

**RTTDEV**

The standard deviation for the round-trip-time to **TARGET** over **INTERFACE**. This aids identification of jittery targets. If there is insufficient data to calculate the standard deviation, this field will be empty.

If `-o` is not specified, all fields except for **RTTAVG** and **RTTDEV** are displayed.

**Target Mode**

Target mode displays IPMP probe target information. The following output fields are supported:

**INTERFACE**

The IP interface name associated with the information.

**MODE**

The probe target discovery mode:

- |                        |                                                        |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>routes</code>    | Probe targets found by means of the routing table.     |
| <code>multicast</code> | Probe targets found by means of multicast ICMP probes. |
| <code>disabled</code>  | Probe-based failure detection is disabled.             |



**TESTADDR**

The hostname (or IP address) that will be used for sending and receiving probes. If a unique test address has not been configured, this field will be empty. Note that if an IP interface is configured with both IPv4 and IPv6 test addresses, probe target information will be displayed separately for each test address.

**TARGETS**

A space-separated list of probe target hostnames (or IP addresses), in firing order. If no probe targets could be found, this field will be empty.

If `-o` is not specified, all output fields are displayed.

**Output Format** By default, `ipmpstat` uses a human-friendly tabular format for its output modes, where each row contains one or more fields of information about a given object, which is in turn uniquely identified by one or more of those fields. In this format, a header identifying the fields is displayed above the table (and after each screenful of information), fields are separated by whitespace, empty fields are represented by `--` (double hyphens), and other visual aids are used. If the value for a field cannot be determined, its value will be displayed as `"?"` and a diagnostic message will be output to standard error.

Machine-parseable format also uses a tabular format, but is designed to be efficient to programmatically parse. Specifically, machine-parseable format differs from human-friendly format in the following ways:

- No headers are displayed.
- Fields with empty values yield no output, rather than showing `--`.
- Fields are separated by a single colon (`:`), rather than variable amounts of whitespace.
- If multiple fields are requested, and a literal `:` or a backslash (`\`) occur in a field's value, they are escaped by prefixing them with `\`.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Obtaining Failure Detection Time of a Specific Interface

The following code uses the machine-parseable output format to create a ksh function that outputs the failure detection time of a given IPMP IP interface:

```
getfdt() {
 ipmpstat -gP -o group,fdt | while IFS=: read group fdt; do
 [["$group" = "$1"]] && { echo "$fdt"; return; }
 done
}
```

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

`/usr/sbin/ipmpstat:`

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE           | ATTRIBUTE VALUE  |
|--------------------------|------------------|
| Availability             | SUNWcsu          |
| Interface Stability      | Committed        |
| Machine-Parseable Format | Committed        |
| Human-Friendly Format    | Not-an-Interface |

/sbin/ipmpstat is not a Committed interface.

**See Also** [if\\_mpadm\(1M\)](#), [ifconfig\(1M\)](#), [in.mpathd\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** ipnat – user interface to the NAT subsystem

**Synopsis** ipnat [-CdFhlnRrsv] -f *filename*

**Description** The ipnat utility opens a specified file (treating - as stdin) and parses it for a set of rules that are to be added or removed from the IP NAT.

If there are no parsing problems, each rule processed by ipnat is added to the kernel's internal lists. Rules are appended to the internal lists, matching the order in which they appear when given to ipnat.

ipnat's use is restricted through access to /dev/ipauth, /dev/ipl, and /dev/ipstate. The default permissions of these files require ipnat to be run as root for all operations.

ipnat's use is restricted through access to /dev/ipnat. The default permissions of /dev/ipnat require ipnat to be run as root for all operations.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- C Delete all entries in the current NAT rule listing (NAT rules).
- d Turn debug mode on. Causes a hex dump of filter rules to be generated as it processes each one.
- F Delete all active entries in the current NAT translation table (currently active NAT mappings).
- f *filename* Parse specified file for rules to be added or removed from the IP NAT. *filename* can be stdin.
- h Print number of hits for each MAP/Redirect filter.
- l Show the list of current NAT table entry mappings.
- n Prevents ipf from doing anything, such as making ioctl calls, which might alter the currently running kernel.
- R Disable both IP address-to-hostname resolution and port number-to-service name resolution.
- r Remove matching NAT rules rather than add them to the internal lists.
- s Retrieve and display NAT statistics.
- v Turn verbose mode on. Displays information relating to rule processing and active rules/table entries.

|                         |                                                             |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Files</b> /dev/ipnat | Link to IP Filter pseudo device.                            |
| /dev/kmem               | Special file that provides access to virtual address space. |
| /etc/ipf/ipnat.conf     | Location of ipnat startup configuration file.               |

/usr/share/ipfilter/examples/     Contains numerous IP Filter examples.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWipfu        |
| Interface Stability | Committed       |

**See Also** [ipf\(1M\)](#), [ipfstat\(1M\)](#), [ipnat\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** ippool – user interface to the IP Filter pools

**Synopsis** ippool -a [-dnv] [-m *poolname*] [-o *role*] -i *ipaddr*  
[*/netmask*]

ippool -A [-dnv] [-m *poolname*] [-o *role*] [-S *seed*]  
[-t *type*]

ippool -f *file* [-dnv]

ippool -F [-dv] [-o *role*] [-t *type*]

ippool -h [-dv] [-m *poolname*] [-t *type*]

ippool -l [-dv] [-m *poolname*] [-t *type*]

ippool -r [-dnv] [-m *poolname*] [-o *role*] -i *ipaddr*  
[*/netmask*]

ippool -R [-dnv] [-m *poolname*] [-o *role*] [-t *type*]

ippool -s [-dtv] [-M *core*] [-N *namelist*]

**Description** The ippool utility is used to manage information stored in the IP pools subsystem of IP Filter software. Configuration file information can be parsed and loaded into the kernel and currently configured pools can be removed, changed, or inspected.

ippool's use is restricted through access to /dev/ippool. The default permissions of /dev/ippool require ippool to be run as root for all operations.

The command line options used are divided into two sections: the global options and the instance-specific options.

ippool's use is restricted through access to /dev/ipauth, /dev/ipl, and /dev/ipstate. The default permissions of these files require ippool to be run as root for all operations.

**Options** ippool supports the option categories described below.

**Global Options** The following global options are supported:

- d Toggle debugging of processing the configuration file.
- n Prevents ippool from doing anything, such as making ioctl calls, that would alter the currently running kernel.
- v Turn verbose mode on.

**Instance-Specific Options** The following instance-specific options are supported:

- a Add a new data node to an existing pool in the kernel.
- A Add a new (empty) pool to the kernel.
- f *file* Read in IP pool configuration information from *file* and load it into the kernel.
- F Flush loaded pools from the kernel.

- h Display a list of pools of the type: hash loaded in the kernel.
- l Display a list of pools of the type: tree loaded in the kernel.
- r Remove an existing data node from a pool in the kernel.
- R Remove an existing pool from within the kernel.
- s Display IP pool statistical information.

Other Options The following, additional options are supported:

- i *ipaddr[/netmask]* Sets the IP address for the operation being undertaken with an all-one's mask or, optionally, a specific netmask, given in either dotted-quad notation or as a single integer.
- m *poolname* Sets the pool name for the current operation.
- M *core* Specify an alternative path to /dev/kmem from which to retrieve statistical information.
- N *namelist* Specify an alternative path to lookup symbol name information when retrieving statistical information.
- o *role* Sets the role with which this pool is to be used. Currently only ipf, auth, and count are accepted as arguments to this option.
- S *seed* Sets the hashing seed to the number specified. For use with hash-type pools only.
- t *type* Sets the type of pool being defined. Must be one of pool, hash, or group-map.
- u When parsing a configuration file, rather than load new pool data into the kernel, unload it.

|              |                      |                                                             |
|--------------|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Files</b> | /dev/ippool          | Link to IP Filter pseudo device.                            |
|              | /dev/kmem            | Special file that provides access to virtual address space. |
|              | /etc/ipf/ippool.conf | Location of ippool startup configuration file.              |

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWipfu        |
| Interface Stability | Committed       |

**See Also** [ipf\(1M\)](#), [ipfstat\(1M\)](#), [ippool\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** ipqosconf – configure the IPQoS facility

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/ipqosconf  
/usr/sbin/ipqosconf -a *conf\_file* [-vs]  
/usr/sbin/ipqosconf -c  
/usr/sbin/ipqosconf -f  
/usr/sbin/ipqosconf -l  
/usr/sbin/ipqosconf -L

**Description** The ipqosconf utility configures the Quality of Service facility of the Internet Protocol (IP). Only superusers can use this command.

Without arguments, ipqosconf displays the actual IPQoS configuration.

Configuration is not preserved across reboot. You must apply the configuration every time that the machine reboots. To apply the configuration early in the boot phase, you can populate the /etc/inet/ipqosinit.conf file, which is then read from the svc:/network/initial:default service.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- a *conf\_file* Apply the configuration in *conf\_file*. If the *conf\_file* is –, ipqosconf reads from standard input.
- c Populate the boot file with the current configuration.
- f Flush the configuration.
- l List the current applied configuration.
- L List the current configuration in verbose mode.

In addition to the information that the -l option provides, the -L option provides filters and classes configured through other means than the ipqosconf command. This option also provides the full set of filters that were created by ipqosconf by representing a multi-homed host in a configuration file

- s Log messages to syslog during an -a operation.
- v Toggle verbose mode during an -a operation.

The -v option causes all messages to go to the console in addition to their normal destination. Messages intended to go to syslog, because the -s flag is set or because it is a log message, still go to syslog as well as the console.



**Configuration File** The configuration file is composed of a format version and a succession of configuration (action) blocks. There are different configuration blocks for each type of action that is being configured.

**Format Version** The first line of the configuration file specifies the format version contained in the configuration file.

The following entry specifies the format version:

```
fmt_version x.x
```

where *x.x* is the format version. 1.0 is the only supported version.

**Configuration Blocks** Following the format version, are a succession of configuration (action) blocks that are different for each type of action being configured. A configuration block always has the following structure:

```
action {
 name action_name
 module module_name
 params_clause | ""
 cf_clauses
}

action_name ::= string
module_name ::= ipgpc | dlcosmk | dscpmk | flowacct | tswtclmt |
 tokenmt

params_clause ::= params {
 parameters
 params_stats | ""
 }

parameters ::= prm_name_value parameters | ""

prm_name_value ::= param_name param_value
```

**Modules** The *param\_name* and the types of *param\_value* are specific to a given module.

```
params_stats ::= global_stats boolean

cf_clauses ::= class_clause cf_clauses |
 filter_clause cf_clauses | ""

class_clause ::= class {
 name class_name
 next_action next_action_name
 class_stats | ""
 }
```

```

class_name ::= string
next_action_name ::= string
class_stats ::= enable_stats boolean
boolean ::= TRUE | FALSE

```

```

filter_clause ::= filter {
 name filter_name
 class class_name
 parameters
 }

```

```

filter_name ::= string

```

There must be exactly one configuration block belonging to module `ipgpc`. The action must be named `ipgpc.classify`. All other actions should be reachable from `ipgpc` by way of parameters of type `action` or the `next_action` of a class.

The set of types that are used for parameters of the different modules are:

```

action ::= string
protocol ::= 1..255
port ::= 1..65535
uint8 ::= 0..255
uint32 ::= 0..4294967296
int32 ::= -2147483648..2147483648
address ::= <see the description section>
ifname ::= <interface name recognized by SIOGLIFINDEX ioctl>
enum ::= string | { string_list }
boolean ::= TRUE | FALSE
integer_array ::= { range_value_list }
map_index ::= uint32
address ::= ip_address | ip_node_name
user ::= uid | username
uid ::= 0..65535
username ::= string
string_list ::= string sl_entrys
sl_entrys ::= ',' string sl_entrys | ""
range_value_list ::= range_value_entry range_value_entrys
range_value_entry ::= range ':' integer_array_value
range ::= uint32 '-' uint32
integer_array_value ::= string | integer_array_number
integer_array_number ::= uint8 | uint32
range_value_entrys ::= ';' range_value_entry range_value_entrys | ""
ip_node_name ::= string
ip_address ::= v4_address | v6_address
v4_address ::= v4_ip_address / v4_cidr_mask |
v4_ip_address

```

```

v4_cidr_mask ::= 1-32
v6_address ::= v6_ip_address / v6_cidr_mask |
v6_ip_address
v6_cidr_mask ::= 1-128

```

METER module tokenmt configuration syntax:

```

red_action_name action
yellow_action_name action
green_action_name action
committed_rate uint32
committed_burst uint32
peak_rate uint32
<if present this signifies that this will be a two rate meter, not
 a single rate meter>
peak_burst uint32
<this is the 'peak' burst size for a two rate meter, but
 the 'excess' burst size for a single rate meter>
color_aware boolean
color_map integer_array
global_stats boolean

```

METER module tswtclmt configuration syntax:

```

red_action_name action
yellow_action_name action
green_action_name action
committed_rate uint32
peak_rate uint32
window uint32
global_stats boolean

```

MARKER module dscpmk configuration syntax:

```

next_action action
dscp_map int_array
dscp_detailed_stats boolean
global_stats boolean

```

MARKER module dlcosmk configuration syntax:

```

next_action action
cos map_index
global_stats boolean

```

CLASSIFIER module ipgpc configuration syntax:

```

user user
projid int32
if_name ifname

```

```

direction enum {
 LOCAL_IN,
 LOCAL_OUT,
 FWD_IN,
 FWD_OUT}
protocol protocol
dsfield uint8
dsfield_mask uint8
saddr address
daddr address
sport port
dport port
priority uint32
precedence uint32
ip_version enum {
 V4,
 V6 }
global_stats boolean

```

ACCOUNTING module flowacct configuration syntax:

```

next_action action
timer uint32
timeout uint32
max_limit uint32

```

- Types
- action* A string of characters with a matching action definition. The character string can be up to twenty three characters in length. To allow for spaces the string needs to be enclosed in quotes and cannot span lines. Two special actions are pre-defined and can not have an explicit action definition. The two pre-defined actions are `continue` and `drop`. `continue` causes the packet that is passed to it to continue normal processing. `drop` causes the packet that is passed to it to be dropped.
  - address* A machine name or address recognized by `getipnodebyname(3SOCKET)`. If a machine name is specified, and `ip_version` has been defined, the query is done using that address family. If a machine name is not specified and `ip_version` has not been defined, the query is done using the `AI_DEFAULT` flag to `getipnodebyname()` (`. . AF_INET6 . .`). CIDR address masks following an IP address are allowed. Specify the CIDR address masks as 1-32 (for v4) or 1-128 (for v6). CIDR addresses are disallowed for node names.
  - enum* Either one of the supported values or comma delimited list of support values, enclosed in curly braces.
  - ifname* A non-NULL, existing interface name recognized by the `SIOGLIFINDEX` socket ioctl.
  - integer\_array* A comma delimited set of *range/value* pairs, enclosed in curly braces.

---

|                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                        | Specify <i>range</i> in the format <i>x-y</i> , where <i>x</i> and <i>y</i> are integers that denote the range of array indexes to which the value applies. The minimum value for both <i>x</i> and <i>y</i> is 0. The maximum value for <i>x</i> is particular to the parameter. Any array indexes not referred to in the set of ranges are left at their previous value. |
| <i>map_index</i>       | A non-negative integer used as an index into any maps associated with a parameter of this type.<br><br>The maximum value of this type is dictated by the number of entries in the associated maps. The index starts at 0.                                                                                                                                                  |
| <i>port</i>            | Either a service name recognized by <code>getservbyname(3SOCKET)</code> or an integer 1-65535.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <i>protocol</i>        | Either a protocol name recognized by <code>getprotobyname(3SOCKET)</code> or an integer 1-255.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <i>string</i>          | A character string. Enclose <i>string</i> in quotes. <i>string</i> cannot span multiple lines.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <i>user</i>            | Either a valid user ID or username for the system that is being configured.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Parameters             | The configuration file can contain the following parameters                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <i>color_aware</i>     | A value of TRUE or FALSE, indicating whether or not the configured action takes account of the previous packet coloring when classifying.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <i>color_map</i>       | An integer array that defines which values of the <code>dscp</code> field correspond with which colors for when the <code>color_aware</code> parameter is set to TRUE.                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <i>committed_burst</i> | The committed burst size in bits.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <i>committed_rate</i>  | The committed rate in bits per second.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <i>cos</i>             | The value used to determine the underlying driver level priority applied to the packet which is defined in 802.1D.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <i>daddr</i>           | The destination address of the datagram.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <i>direction</i>       | The value used to build a filter matching only part of the traffic.<br><br>This parameter is of type enum with valid values of LOCAL_IN (local bound traffic), LOCAL_OUT (local sourced traffic), FWD_IN (forwarded traffic entering the system), and FWD_OUT (forwarded traffic exiting the system).                                                                      |
| <i>dport</i>           | The destination port of the datagram.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

---

|                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| dscp_detailed_stats | <p>A value of TRUE or FALSE that determines whether detailed statistics are switched on for this dscp action.</p> <p>Specify TRUE to switch on or FALSE to switch off.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| dscp_map            | <p>The <i>integer_array</i> that supplies the values that IP packets with a given dscp value have their dscp re-marked with.</p> <p>The existing value is used to index into the array where the new value is taken from. The array is of size 64, meaning valid indexes are 0-63 and valid values are also 0-63.</p>                                                                                                                                                                 |
| dsfield             | <p>The DS field of the IP datagram header. This is an 8-bit value, with each bit position corresponding with the same one in the header; this enables matches to be done on the CU bits. If you specify this parameter, you must also specify the <i>dsfield_mask</i> parameter.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| dsfield_mask        | <p>The mask applied to the <i>dsfield</i> parameter to determine the bits against which to match. This is an 8-bit value, with each bit position corresponding with the same one in the <i>dsfield</i> parameter.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| global_stats        | <p>A value of TRUE or FALSE to enable or disable the statistic collection for this action.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| green_action_name   | <p>The action to be executed for packets that are deemed to be green.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| if_name             | <p>The name of an interface recognized by the SIOGLIFINDEX ioctl. This parameter is of type <i>ifname</i>.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| ip_version          | <p>This parameter is of type enum and has valid values of V4 and V6.</p> <p>If it is set to V4 only then only <i>ipv4addresses</i> are requested for a specified hostname. If it is set to V6, only <i>ipv6</i> addresses are returned if there are any, otherwise <i>v4 mapped v6</i> addresses are returned. If both V4 and V6 are specified, or if <i>ip_version</i> is not specified, then both <i>ipv4</i> and <i>ipv6</i> addresses are requested for a specified hostname.</p> |
| max_limit           | <p>The maximum number of flow entries present at one time in the <i>flowacct</i> actions in the memory resident table.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| next_action         | <p>The action to be executed when the current action is complete.</p> <p>This value can be either the name of an action defined in the configuration file, or one of the two special action types: <i>drop</i> and <i>continue</i>.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| peak_burst          | <p>The peak burst size, for a two rate meter, or excess burst size, for a single rate meter, in bits.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| peak_rate           | <p>The peak rate in bits per second.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

|                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| precedence         | An integer that is used to order filters. If there are two matching filters that have the same priority value, the one with the lower precedence value is the one matched. This parameter should be used because the order of the filters in a configuration file has no influence on their relative precedence. |
| priority           | An integer that represents the relative priority of a filter. If there are two matching filters, the one with the higher priority value is the one matched. Multiple filters can have the same priority.                                                                                                         |
| projid             | The project ID of the process sending the data. This value is always -1 for received traffic.                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| protocol           | The Upper Layer Protocol against which this entry is matched.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| red_action_name    | The action to be executed for packets that are determined to be red.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| saddr              | The source address of the datagram.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| sport              | The source port of the datagram.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| timeout            | The timeout in milliseconds after which flows are written to the accounting file.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| timer              | The period in milliseconds at which timed-out flows are checked for.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| user               | The user ID or username of the process sending the data. This value is always -1 for received traffic.                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| window             | The window size in ms.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| yellow_action_name | The action to be executed for packets that are determined to be yellow.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

**Security** None.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Sending All Traffic From eng to the AF 1 Class of Service

This example sends all traffic from eng to the AF 1 class of service. It is documented in four separate steps:

The following step creates a tokenmt action with three outcomes:

```
#meter for class 1.
action {
 name AF_CL1
 module tokenmt
 params{
 committed_rate 64
 committed_burst 75
 peak_burst 150
 }
}
```

**EXAMPLE 1** Sending All Traffic From eng to the AF 1 Class of Service *(Continued)*

```

 global_stats TRUE
 red_action_name drop
 yellow_action_name markAF12
 green_action_name markAF11
 }
}

```

The following step creates two dscpmk actions:

```

#class 1, low drop precedence.
action {
 name markAF11
 module dscpmk
 params{
 dscp_map {0-63:28}
 dscp_detailed_stats TRUE
 global_stats TRUE
 next_action acct1
 }
}
#class 1, medium drop precedence.
action {
 name markAF12
 module dscpmk
 params {
 dscp_map {0-63:30}
 dscp_detailed_stats TRUE
 global_stats TRUE
 next_action acct1
 }
}
}

```

The following step creates an accounting action:

```

#billing for transmitted class 1 traffic.
action {
 name acct1
 module flowacct
 params {
 timer 10
 timeout 30
 global_stats TRUE
 }
 max_limit 1024
 next_action continue
}
}

```



**EXAMPLE 1** Sending All Traffic From eng to the AF 1 Class of Service *(Continued)*

The following step creates an ipgpc action:

```
#traffic from eng sent, traffic from ebay dropped.
action {
 name ipgpc.classify
 module ipgpc
 class {
 name from_eng
 enable_stats TRUE
 next_action AF_CL1
 }
 class {
 name from_eybay
 enable_stats TRUE
 next_action drop
 }

 filter {
 name from_eng
 saddr eng-subnet
 class from_eng
 }
 filter {
 name from_eybay
 saddr ebay-subnet
 class from_eybay
 }
}
```

|              |                              |                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Files</b> | /etc/inet/ipqosinit.conf     | Contains the IPQoS configuration loaded at boot time. If this file exists, it is read from the network/initial:default service. |
|              | /etc/inet/ipqosconf.1.sample | Sample configuration file for an application server                                                                             |
|              | /etc/inet/ipqosconf.2.sample | Sample configuration file that meters the traffic for a specified application                                                   |
|              | /etc/inet/ipqosconf.3.sample | Sample configuration file that marks the ethernet headers of web traffic with a given user priority                             |

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWqosu        |

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Interface Stability | Evolving        |

**See Also** `syslog(3C)`, `getipnodebyname(3SOCKET)`, `getprotobyname(3SOCKET)`, `getservbyname(3SOCKET)`, `attributes(5)`, `d1cosmk(7ipp)`, `dscpmk(7ipp)`, `flowacct(7ipp)`, `ipgpc(7ipp)`, `ipqos(7ipp)`, `tokenmt(7ipp)`, `tswtclmt(7ipp)`

**Diagnostics** `ipqosconf` sends messages to `syslog` of facility `user`, severity `notice` when any changes are made to the IPQoS configuration.

Errors that occur during an `ipqosconf` operation send an error message to the console by default. For the application of a new configuration if the `-s` option is set then these messages are sent to `syslog` as facility `user`, severity `error` instead. If the `-v` option is present during an application then all error and change notification messages are sent to the console as well as their default destination.

**Name** ipsecalgs – configure the IPsec protocols and algorithms table

**Synopsis** ipsecalgs

ipsecalgs -l

ipsecalgs -s

ipsecalgs -a [-P *protocol-number* | -p *protocol-name*] -k *keylen-list*  
 [-i *inc*] [-K *default-keylen*] -b *blocklen-list* -n *alg-names*  
 -N *alg-number* -m *mech-name* [-f] [-s]

ipsecalgs -P *protocol-number* -p *protocol-name*  
 [-e *exec-mode*] [-f] [-s]

ipsecalgs -r -p *protocol-name* [] -n *alg-name* [-s]

ipsecalgs -r -p *protocol-name* [] -N *alg-number* [-s]

ipsecalgs -R -P *protocol-number* [-s]

ipsecalgs -R -p *protocol-name* [-s]

ipsecalgs -e *exec-mode* -P *protocol-number* [-s]

ipsecalgs -e *exec-mode* -p *protocol-name* [-s]

**Description** Use the ipsecalgs command to query and modify the IPsec protocol and algorithms stored in /etc/inet/ipsecalgs. You can use the ipsecalgs command to do the following:

- list the currently defined IPsec protocols and algorithms
- modify IPsec protocols definitions
- modify IPsec algorithms definitions

Never edit the /etc/inet/ipsecalgs file manually. The valid IPsec protocols and algorithms are described by the ISAKMP DOI. See *RFC 2407*. In the general sense, a Domain of Interpretation (DOI) defines data formats, network traffic exchange types, and conventions for naming security-relevant information such as security policies or cryptographic algorithms and modes. For ipsecalgs, the DOI defines naming and numbering conventions for algorithms and the protocols they belong to. These numbers are defined by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA). Each algorithm belongs to a protocol. Algorithm information includes supported key lengths, block or MAC length, and the name of the cryptographic mechanism corresponding to that algorithm. This information is used by the IPsec modules, [ipsecesp\(7P\)](#) and [ipsecah\(7P\)](#), to determine the authentication and encryption algorithms that can be applied to IPsec traffic.

The following protocols are predefined:

|                 |                                                                                                           |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IPSEC_PROTO_ESP | Defines the encryption algorithms (transforms) that can be used by IPsec to provide data confidentiality. |
| IPSEC_PROTO_AH  | Defines the authentication algorithms (transforms) that can be used by IPsec to provide authentication.   |

The mechanism name specified by an algorithm entry must correspond to a valid Solaris Cryptographic Framework mechanism. You can obtain the list of available mechanisms by using the `cryptoadm(1M)` command.

Applications can retrieve the supported algorithms and their associated protocols by using the functions `getipsecalgbyname(3NSL)`, `getipsecalgbynum(3NSL)`, `getipseccprotobyname(3NSL)` and `getipseccprotobynum(3NSL)`.

Modifications to the protocols and algorithm by default update only the contents of the `/etc/inet/ipsecalgs` configuration file. In order for the new definitions to be used for IPsec processing, the changes must be communicated to the kernel using the `-s` option. See NOTES for a description of how the `ipsecalgs` configuration is synchronized with the kernel at system restart.

When invoked without arguments, `ipsecalgs` displays the list of mappings that are currently defined in `/etc/inet/ipsecalgs`. You can obtain the corresponding kernel table of protocols and algorithms by using the `-l` option.

**Options** `ipsecalgs` supports the following options:

`-a`

Adds an algorithm of the protocol specified by the `-P` option. The algorithm name(s) are specified with the `-n` option. The supported key lengths and block sizes are specified with the `-k`, `-i`, and `-b` options.

`-b`

Specifies the block or MAC lengths of an algorithm, in bytes. Set more than one block length by separating the values with commas.

`-e`

Designates the execution mode of cryptographic requests for the specified protocol in the absence of cryptographic hardware provider. See `cryptoadm(1M)`. *exec-mode* can be one of the following values:

`sync` Cryptographic requests are processed synchronously in the absence of a cryptographic hardware provider. This execution mode leads to better latency when no cryptographic hardware providers are available

`async` Cryptographic requests are always processed asynchronously in the absence of cryptographic hardware provider. This execution can improve the resource utilization on a multi-CPU system, but can lead to higher latency when no cryptographic hardware providers are available.

This option can be specified when defining a new protocol or to modify the execution mode of an existing protocol. By default, the `sync` execution mode is used in the absence of a cryptographic hardware provider.

- 
- f  
Used with the -a option to force the addition of an algorithm or protocol if an entry with the same name or number already exists.
- i  
Specifies the valid key length increments in bits. This option must be used when the valid key lengths for an algorithm are specified by a range with the -k option.
- K  
Specifies the default key lengths for an algorithm, in bits. If the -K option is not specified, the minimum key length will be determined as follows:
- If the supported key lengths are specified by range, the default key length will be the minimum key length.
  - If the supported key lengths are specified by enumeration, the default key length will be the first listed key length.
- k  
Specifies the supported key lengths for an algorithm, in bits. You can designate the supported key lengths by enumeration or by range.
- Without the -i option, -k specifies the supported key lengths by enumeration. In this case, *keylen-list* consists of a list of one or more key lengths separated by commas, for example:
- 128,192,256
- The listed key lengths need not be increasing, and the first listed key length will be used as the default key length for that algorithm unless the -K option is used.
- With the -i option, -k specifies the range of supported key lengths for the algorithm. The minimum and maximum key lengths must be separated by a dash ('-') character, for example:
- 32-448
- l  
Displays the kernel algorithm tables.
- m  
Specifies the name of the cryptographic framework mechanism name corresponding to the algorithm. Cryptographic framework mechanisms are described in the [cryptoadm\(1M\)](#) man page.
- N  
Specifies an algorithm number. The algorithm number for a protocol must be unique. IANA manages the algorithm numbers. See *RFC 2407*.
- n  
Specifies one or more names for an algorithm. When adding an algorithm with the -a option, *alg-names* contains a string or a comma-separated list of strings, for example:

des - cbs , des

When used with the `-r` option to remove an algorithm, *alg-names* contains one of the valid algorithm names.

`-P`

Adds a protocol of the number specified by *protocol-number* with the name specified by the `-p` option. This option is also used to specify an IPsec protocol when used with the `-a` and the `-R` options. Protocol numbers are managed by the IANA. See *RFC 2407*.

`-p`

Specifies the name of the IPsec protocol.

`-R`

Removes an IPsec protocol from the algorithm table. The protocol can be specified by number by using the `-P` option or by name by using the `-p` option. The algorithms associated with the protocol are removed as well.

`-r`

Removes the mapping for an algorithm. The algorithm can be specified by algorithm number using the `-N` option or by algorithm name using the `-A` option.

`-s`

Synchronizes the kernel with the contents of `/etc/inet/ipsecalgs`. The contents of `/etc/inet/ipsecalgs` are always updated, but new information is not passed on to the kernel unless the `-s` is used. See *NOTES* for a description of how the `ipsecalgs` configuration is synchronized with the kernel at system restart.

The following options allow optional parameters to be configured. These are currently only used for combined mode algorithms, that is, algorithms that provide encryption and authentication in a single operation.

`-I`

The length of the Initialization Vector (IV) in bytes. The default IV length is the same as the block length.

`-M`

The length of the MAC or ICV in bytes for combined mode algorithms.

`-S`

The number of bytes of salt needed by the algorithm. The salt needs to be provided by the key management mechanism.

`-F`

Algorithm flags. These influence the way in which the kernel handles security tasks, especially authentication, in the kernel. They are also used by [ipseckey\(1M\)](#) and [ipseccconf\(1M\)](#). Flags can be specified as a comma-separated list of tokens; see the example below. The following tokens are supported:

**COUNTERMODE**

The algorithm uses counter mode.

**COMBINED**

The algorithm provides encryption and authentication in the same operation.

**CCM**

The cryptographic framework mechanism needs a CK\_AES\_CCM\_PARAMS structure.

**GCM**

The cryptographic framework mechanism needs a CK\_AES\_GCM\_PARAMS structure.

The algorithm flags can be displayed with the `-l` option.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Adding a Protocol for IPsec Encryption

The following example shows how to add a protocol for IPsec encryption:

```
example# ipsecalgs -P 3 -p "IPSEC_PROTO_ESP"
```

## EXAMPLE 2 Adding the Blowfish Algorithm

The following example shows how to add the Blowfish algorithm:

```
example# ipsecalgs -a -P 3 -k 32-488 -K 128 -i 8 -n "blowfish" \
 -b 8 -N 7 -m CKM_BF_CBC
```

## EXAMPLE 3 Updating the Kernel Algorithm Table

The following example updates the kernel algorithm table with the currently defined protocol and algorithm definitions:

```
example# svcadm refresh ipsecalgs
```

## EXAMPLE 4 Adding the AES Galois/Counter Mode (GCM) Algorithm

The following command adds this algorithm.

```
example# ipsecalgs -a -P3 -k 128-256 -K 128 -i 64 -N 20 -b 16 \
 -n "aes-gcm16,aes-gcm" -m CKM_AES_GCM -M 16 -I 8 -S 4 \
 -F GCM,COMBINED,COUNTER
```

**Files** /etc/inet/ipsecalgs

File that contains the configured IPsec protocols and algorithm definitions. Never edit this file manually.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWcsu         |
| Interface Stability | Evolving        |

**See Also** [cryptoadm\(1M\)](#), [ipsecconf\(1M\)](#), [ipseckey\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [getipsecalgbyname\(3NSL\)](#), [getipsecprotobyname\(3NSL\)](#), [ike.config\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [ipsecah\(7P\)](#), [ipsecesp\(7P\)](#)

Piper, Derrell, *RFC 2407, The Internet IP Security Domain of Interpretation for ISAKMP*. Network Working Group. November 1998.

**Notes** When protocols or algorithm definitions that are removed or altered, services that rely upon these definitions can become unavailable. For example, if the IPSEC\_PROTO\_ESP protocol is removed, then IPsec cannot encrypt and decrypt packets.

Synchronization of the `ipsecalgs` configuration with the kernel at system startup is provided by the following [smf\(5\)](#) service:

```
svc:/network/ipsec/ipsecalgs:default
```

The IPsec services are delivered as follows:

```
svc:/network/ipsec/policy:default (enabled)
svc:/network/ipsec/ipsecalgs:default (enabled)
svc:/network/ipsec/manual-key:default (disabled)
svc:/network/ipsec/ike:default (disabled)
```

Services that are delivered disabled are delivered that way because the system administrator must create configuration files for those services before enabling them. See [ipseckey\(1M\)](#) and [ike.config\(4\)](#). The default policy for the `policy` service is to allow all traffic to pass without IPsec protection. See [ipsecconf\(1M\)](#).

The correct administrative procedure is to create the configuration file for each service, then enable each service using [svcadm\(1M\)](#), as shown in the following example:

```
example# svcadm enable ipsecalgs
```

The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

If the `ipsecalgs` configuration is modified, the new configuration should be resynchronized as follows:

```
example# svcadm refresh ipsecalgs
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, refreshing, and requesting restart can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). A user who has been assigned the authorization shown below can perform these actions:



solaris.smf.manage.ipsec

See [auths\(1\)](#), [user\\_attr\(4\)](#), [rbac\(5\)](#).

The ipsecalg [smf\(5\)](#) service does not have any user-configurable properties.

The [smf\(5\)](#) framework records any errors in the service-specific log file. Use any of the following commands to examine the `logfile` property:

```
example# svcs -l ipsecalg
example# svcprop ipsecalg
example# svccfg -s ipsecalg listprop
```

This command requires `sys_ip_config` privilege to operate and thus can run in the global zone and in exclusive-IP zones. All shared-IP zones share the same available set of algorithms; however, you can use [ipseconf\(1M\)](#) to set up system policy that uses differing algorithms for various shared-IP zones. All exclusive-IP zones have their own set of algorithms.

**Name** ipsecconf – configure system wide IPsec policy

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/ipsecconf  
 /usr/sbin/ipsecconf -a *file* [-q]  
 /usr/sbin/ipsecconf -c *file*  
 /usr/sbin/ipsecconf -d [-i *tunnel-name*] {*index*, *tunnel-name*, *index*}  
 /usr/sbin/ipsecconf -f [-i *tunnel-name*]  
 /usr/sbin/ipsecconf -F  
 /usr/sbin/ipsecconf -Fa *file* [-q]  
 /usr/sbin/ipsecconf -l [-i *tunnel-name*] [-n]  
 /usr/sbin/ipsecconf -L [-n]  
 /usr/sbin/ipsecconf -r *file* [-q]

**Description** The ipsecconf utility configures the IPsec policy for a host or for one of its tunnels. Once the policy is configured, all outbound and inbound datagrams are subject to policy checks as they exit and enter the host or tunnel. For the host policy, if no entry is found, no policy checks will be completed, and all the traffic will pass through. For a tunnel, if no entry is found and there is at least one entry for the tunnel, the traffic will automatically drop. The difference in behavior is because of the assumptions about IPsec tunnels made in many implementations. Datagrams that are being forwarded will not be subjected to policy checks that are added using this command. See [ifconfig\(1M\)](#) and [dladm\(1M\)](#) for information on how to protect forwarded packets. Depending upon the match of the policy entry, a specific action will be taken.

This command can be run only by superuser.

Each entry can protect traffic in either one direction (requiring a pair of entries) or by a single policy entry which installs the needed symmetric sadb rules.

When the command is issued without any arguments, the list of file policy entries loaded are shown. To display the (spd p.e.s) use the -l option. Both will display the index number for the entry. To specify a single tunnel's SPD, use the -i option in combination with -l. To specify all SPDs, both host and for all tunnels, use -L.

Note, since one file policy entry (FPE) can generate multiple SPD pol entries (SPEs), the list of FPEs may not show all the actual entries. However, it is still useful in determining what rules have been added to get the spd into its current state.

You can use the -d option with the index to delete a given policy in the system. If the -d option removes an FPE entry that produces multiple SPEs, only then SPD with the same policy index as the FPE will be removed. This can produce a situation where there may be SPEs when there are no FPEs.

As with -l, -d can use the -i flag to indicate a tunnel. An alternate syntax is to specify a tunnel name, followed by a comma (,), followed by an index. For example, ip.tun0, 1.

With no options, the entries are displayed in the order that they were added, which is not necessarily the order in which the traffic match takes place.

To view the order in which the traffic match will take place, use the `-l` option. The rules are ordered such that all bypass rules are checked first, then ESP rules, then AH rules. After that, they are checked in the order entered.

Policy entries are not preserved across system restarts. Permanent policy entries should be added to `/etc/inet/ipsecinit.conf`. This file is read by the following [smf\(5\)](#) service:

```
svc:/network/ipsec/policy
```

See **NOTES** for more information on managing IPsec security policy and **SECURITY** for issues in securing `/etc/inet/ipsecinit.conf`.

**Options** ipsecconf supports the following options:

`-a file`

Add the IPsec policy to the system as specified by each entry in the file. An IPsec configuration file contains one or more entries that specify the configuration. Once the policy is added, all outbound and inbound datagrams are subject to policy checks.

Entries in the files are described in the [Operands](#) section below. Examples can be found in the [Examples](#) section below.

Policy is latched for TCP/UDP sockets on which a [connect\(3SOCKET\)](#) or [accept\(3SOCKET\)](#) is issued. So, the addition of new policy entries may not affect such endpoints or sockets. However, the policy will be latched for a socket with an existing non-null policy. Thus, make sure that there are no preexisting connections that will be subject to checks by the new policy entries.

The feature of policy latching explained above may change in the future. It is not advisable to depend upon this feature.

The default behavior is to append new rules to the existing policy. If a new rule conflicts with an existing rule, an error is reported, the new rule will not be added.

To add a new rule that conflicts with an existing rule, the existing rule must be removed (see below) or the existing policy flushed. If the policy is flushed, IPsec will not protect any network traffic until a new policy is added.

The `-F` (flush) flag can be combined with `-a` to perform an atomic policy replacement; the existing policy will be replaced by the new policy described in the config file. By combining these two flags, there is not even a small window when the system is without a policy, which is the case when the flush and add commands are run sequentially.

`-c file`

Check the syntax of the configuration file and report any errors without making any changes to the policy. This option is useful when debugging configurations and when [smf\(5\)](#) reports a configuration error. See **SECURITY**.

**-d *index***

Delete the host policy denoted by the *index*. The *index* is obtained by invoking `ipsecconf` without any arguments, or with the `-l` option. See DESCRIPTION for more information. Once the entry is deleted, all outbound and inbound datagrams affected by this policy entry will not be subjected to policy checks. Be advised that with connections for which the policy has been latched, packets will continue to go out with the same policy, even if it has been deleted. It is advisable to use the `-l` option to find the correct policy *index*.

**-d *name,index***

Delete the policy entry denoted by *index* on a tunnel denoted by *name*. Since tunnels affect traffic that might originate off-node, latching does not apply as it does in the host policy case. Equivalent to: `-d index -i name`.

**-f**

Flush all the policies in the system. Constraints are similar to the `-d` option with respect to latching and host versus per-tunnel behavior.

**-F**

Flush all policies on all tunnels and also flush all host policies. See discussion of combining the `-F` and `-a` options, under `-a`, above.

**-i *name***

Specify a tunnel interface name for use with the `-d`, `-f`, or `-l` flags.

**-l**

Listing of a single policy table, defaulting to the host policy. When `ipsecconf` is invoked without any arguments, a complete list of policy entries with indexes added by the user since boot is displayed. The current table can differ from the previous one if, for example, a multi-homed entry was added or policy reordering occurred, or if a single rule entry generates two `spd` rules. In the case of a multi-homed entry, all the addresses are listed explicitly. If a mask was not specified earlier but was instead inferred from the address, it will be explicitly listed here. This option is used to view policy entries in the correct order. The outbound and inbound policy entries are listed separately.

**-L**

Lists all policy tables, including host policy and all tunnel instances (including configured but unplumbed).

If `-i` is specified, `-L` lists the policy table for a specific tunnel interface.

**-n**

Show network addresses, ports, protocols in numbers. The `-n` option may only be used with the `-l` option.

**-q**

Quiet mode. Suppresses the warning message generated when adding policies.

`-r file`

Remove IPsec policy rules from the system as specified by each entry in *file*. The format of the file contents is the same as is specified with the `-a` option. The file could be created with `ipsecconf -l` and then modified with an editor.

**Operands** Each policy entry contains three parts specified as follows:

```
{pattern} action {properties}
```

or

```
{pattern} action {properties} ["or" action {properties}]*
```

Every policy entry begins on a new line and can span multiple lines. If an entry exceeds the length of a line, you should split it only within a “braced” section or immediately before the first (left-hand) brace of a braced section. Avoid using the backslash character (`\`). See EXAMPLES.

The *pattern* section, as shown in the syntax above, specifies the traffic pattern that should be matched against the outbound and inbound datagrams. If there is a match, a specific *action* determined by the second argument will be taken, depending upon the *properties* of the policy entry.

If there is an `or` in the rule (multiple action-properties for a given pattern), a transmitter will use the first action-property pair that works, while a receiver will use any that are acceptable.

*pattern* and *properties* are name-value pairs where name and value are separated by a `<space>`, `<tab>` or `<newline>`. Multiple name-value pairs should be separated by `<space>`, `<tab>` or `<newline>`. The beginning and end of the pattern and properties are marked by `{` and `}` respectively.

Files can contain multiple policy entries. An unspecified name-value pair in the *pattern* will be considered as a wildcard. Wildcard entries match any corresponding entry in the datagram.

One thing to remember is that UDP port 500 is always bypassed regardless of any policy entries. This is a requirement for [in.iked\(1M\)](#) to work.

File can be commented by using a `#` as the first character. Comments may be inserted either at the beginning or the end of a line.

The complete syntax of a policy entry is:

```
policy ::= { <pattern1> } <action1> { <properties1> } |
 { <pattern2> } <action2> { <properties2> }
 ['or' <action2> { <properties2> }]*

pattern1 ::= <pattern_name_value_pair1>*

pattern2 ::= <pattern_name_value_pair2>*
```

```
action1 ::= apply | permit | bypass | pass
action2 ::= bypass | pass | drop | ipsec

properties1 ::= {<prop_name_value_pair1>}
properties2 ::= {<prop_name_value_pair2>}

pattern_name_value_pair1 ::=
 saddr <address>/<prefix> |
 src <address>/<prefix> |
 srcaddr <address>/<prefix> |
 smask <mask> |
 sport <port> |
 daddr <address>/<prefix> |
 dst <address>/<prefix> |
 dstaddr <address>/<prefix> |
 dmask <mask> |
 dport <port> |
 ulp <protocol> |
 proto <protocol> |
 type <icmp-type> |
 type <number>-<number> |
 code <icmp-code>
 code <number>-<number>
 tunnel <interface-name> |
 negotiate <tunnel,transport>

pattern_name_value_pair2 ::=
 raddr <address>/<prefix> |
 remote <address>/<prefix> |
 rport <port> |
 laddr <address>/<prefix> |
 local <address>/<prefix> |
 lport <port> |
 ulp <protocol> |
 type <icmp-type> |
 type <number>-<number> |
 code <icmp-code> |
 code <number>-<number>
 proto <protocol> |
 tunnel <interface-name> |
 negotiate <tunnel,transport> |
 dir <dir_val2>

address ::= <IPv4 dot notation> | <IPv6 colon notation> |
 <String recognized by gethostbyname>|
 <String recognized by getnetbyname>
```

```

prefix ::= <number>

mask ::= <0xhexdigit[hexdigit]> | <0Xhexdigit[hexdigit]> |
 <IPv4 dot notation>

port ::= <number>| <String recognized by getservbyname>

protocol ::= <number>| <String recognized by getprotobyname>

prop_name_value_pair1 ::=
 auth_algs <auth_alg> |
 encr_algs <encr_alg> |
 encr_auth_algs <auth_alg> |
 sa <sa_val> |
 dir <dir_val1>

prop_name_value_pair2 ::=
 auth_algs <auth_alg> |
 encr_algs <encr_alg> |
 encr_auth_algs <auth_alg> |
 sa <sa_val>

auth_alg ::= <auth_algname> ['(' <keylen> ')']
auth_algname ::= any | md5 | hmac-md5 | sha | sha1 | hmac-sha |
 hmac-sha1 | hmac-sha256 | hmac-sha384 |
 hmac-sha512 |<number>

encr_alg ::= <encr_algname> ['(' <keylen> ')']
encr_algname ::= any | aes | aes-cbc | des | des-cbc | 3des |
 3des-cbc | blowfish | blowfish-cbc | aes-ccm |
 aes-gcm | <number>

keylen ::= <number> | <number>'..' | '..'<number> | <number>'..' \
<number>

sa_val ::= shared | unique

dir_val1 ::= out | in
dir_val2 ::= out | in | both

number ::= < 0 | 1 | 2 ... 9> <number>
icmp-type ::= <number> | unreachable | echo | echorep | squench |
 redir | timex | paramprob | timest | timestrep |
 inforeq | inforep | maskreq | maskrep | unreachable6 |
 pkttoobig6 | timex6 | paramprob6 | echo6 | echorep6 |
 router-sol6 | router-ad6 | neigh-sol6 | neigh-ad6 |
 redir6

```

```

icmp-code ::= <number> | net-unr | host-unr | proto-unr | port-unr |
 needfrag | srcfail | net-unk | host-unk | isolate |
 net-prohib | host-prohib | net-tos | host-tos |
 filter-prohib | host-preced | cutoff-preced |
 no-route6 | adm-prohib6 | addr-unr6 | port-unr6 |
 hop-limex6 | frag-re-timex6 | err-head6 | unrec-head6 |
 unreq-opt6

```

Policy entries may contain the following (name value) pairs in the *pattern* field. Each (name value) pair may appear only once in given policy entry.

laddr/plen

local/plen

The value that follows is the local address of the datagram with the prefix length. Only plen leading bits of the source address of the packet will be matched. plen is optional. Local means destination on incoming and source on outgoing packets. The source address value can be a hostname as described in [getaddrinfo\(3SOCKET\)](#) or a network name as described in [getnetbyname\(3XNET\)](#) or a host address or network address in the Internet standard dot notation. See [inet\\_addr\(3XNET\)](#). If a hostname is given and [getaddrinfo\(3SOCKET\)](#) returns multiple addresses for the host, then policy will be added for each of the addresses with other entries remaining the same.

raddr/plen

remote/plen

The value that follows is the remote address of the datagram with the prefix length. Only plen leading bits of the remote address of the packet will be matched. plen is optional. Remote means source on incoming packets and destination on outgoing packets. The remote address value can be a hostname as described in [getaddrinfo\(3SOCKET\)](#) or a network name as described in [getnetbyname\(3XNET\)](#) or a host address or network address in the Internet standard dot notation. See [inet\\_addr\(3XNET\)](#). If a hostname is given and [getaddrinfo\(3SOCKET\)](#) returns multiple addresses for the host, then policy will be added for each of the addresses with other entries remaining the same.

src/plen

srcaddr/plen

saddr/plen

The value that follows is the source address of the datagram with the prefix length. Only *plen* leading bits of the source address of the packet will be matched. *plen* is optional.

The source address value can be a hostname as described in [getaddrinfo\(3SOCKET\)](#) or a network name as described in [getnetbyname\(3XNET\)](#) or a host address or network address in the Internet standard dot notation. See [inet\\_addr\(3XNET\)](#).

If a hostname is given and [getaddrinfo\(3SOCKET\)](#) returns multiple addresses for the host, then policy will be added for each of the addresses with other entries remaining the same.



daddr/plen  
 dest/plen  
 dstaddr/plen

The value that follows is the destination address of the datagram with the prefix length. Only *plen* leading bits of the destination address of the packet will be matched. *plen* is optional.

See *saddr* for valid values that can be given. If multiple source and destination addresses are found, then a policy entry that covers each source address-destination address pair will be added to the system.

*smask*

For IPv4 only. The value that follows is the source mask. If prefix length is given with *saddr*, this should not be given. This can be represented either in hexadecimal number with a leading 0x or 0X, for example, 0xffff0000, 0Xffff0000 or in the Internet decimal dot notation, for example, 255.255.0.0 and 255.255.255.0. The mask should be contiguous and the behavior is not defined for non-contiguous masks.

*smask* is considered only when *saddr* is given.

For both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses, the same information can be specified as a *slen* value attached to the *saddr* parameter.

*dmask*

Analogous to *smask*.

*lport*

The value that follows is the local port of the datagram. This can be either a port number or a string searched with a NULL proto argument, as described in [getservbyname\(3XNET\)](#)

*rport*

The value that follows is the remote port of the datagram. This can be either a port number or a string searched with a NULL proto argument, as described in [getservbyname\(3XNET\)](#)

*sport*

The value that follows is the source port of the datagram. This can be either a port number or a string searched with a NULL proto argument, as described in [getservbyname\(3XNET\)](#)

*dport*

The value that follows is the destination port of the datagram. This can be either a port number or a string as described in [getservbyname\(3XNET\)](#) searched with NULL proto argument.

proto *ulp*

The value that follows is the Upper Layer Protocol that this entry should be matched against. It could be a number or a string as described in [getprotobyname\(3XNET\)](#). If no *smask* or *plen* is specified, a *plen* of 32 for IPv4 or 128 for IPv6 will be used, meaning a host. If the *ulp* is *icmp* or *ipv6-icmp*, any action applying IPsec must be the same for all *icmp* rules.

**type** *num* or *num-num*

The value that follows is the ICMP type that this entry should be matched against. *type* must be a number from 0 to 255, or one of the appropriate *icmp-type* keywords. Also, *ulp* must be present and must specify either *icmp* or *ipv6-icmp*. A range of types can be specified with a hyphen separating numbers.

**code** *num* or *num-num*

The value that follows is the ICMP code that this entry should be matched against. The value following the keyword *code* must be a number from 0 to 254 or one of the appropriate *icmp-code* keywords. Also, *type* must be present. A range of codes can be specified with a hyphen separating numbers.

**tunnel** *name*

Specifies a tunnel network interface, as configured with [ifconfig\(1M\)](#). If a tunnel of *name* does not yet exist, the policy entries are added anyway, and joined with the tunnel state when it is created. If a tunnel is unplumbed, its policy entries disappear.

**negotiate** *tunnel***negotiate** *transport*

For per-tunnel security, specify whether the IPsec SAs protecting the traffic should be tunnel-mode SAs or transport-mode SAs. If transport-mode SAs are specified, no addresses can appear in the policy entry. Transport-mode is backward compatible with Solaris 9, and tunnel IPsec policies configured with [ifconfig\(1M\)](#) will show up as transport mode entries here.

Policy entries may contain the following (name-value) pairs in the properties field. Each (name-value) pair may appear only once in a given policy entry.

**auth\_algs**

An acceptable value following this implies that IPsec AH header will be present in the outbound datagram. Values following this describe the authentication algorithms that will be used while applying the IPsec AH on outbound datagrams and verified to be present on inbound datagrams. See *RFC 2402*.

This entry can contain either a string or a decimal number.

**string**

This should be either MD5 or HMAC-MD5 denoting the HMAC-MD5 algorithm as described in *RFC 2403*, and SHA1, or HMAC-SHA1 or SHA or HMAC-SHA denoting the HMAC-SHA algorithm described in *RFC 2404*. You can use the [ipsecalgs\(1M\)](#) command to obtain the complete list of authentication algorithms.

The string can also be ANY, which denotes no-preference for the algorithm. Default algorithms will be chosen based upon the SAs available at this time for manual SAs and the key negotiating daemon for automatic SAs. Strings are not case-sensitive.

**number**

A number in the range 1-255. This is useful when new algorithms can be dynamically loaded.

If *auth\_algs* is not present, the AH header will not be present in the outbound datagram, and the same will be verified for the inbound datagram.

**encr\_algs**

An acceptable value following this implies that IPsec ESP header will be present in the outbound datagram. The value following this describes the encryption algorithms that will be used to apply the IPsec ESP protocol to outbound datagrams and verify it to be present on inbound datagrams. See *RFC 2406*.

This entry can contain either a string or a decimal number. Strings are not case-sensitive.

**string**

Can be one of the following:

| string value:               | Algorithm Used: | See RFC: |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|----------|
| DES or DES-CBC              | DES-CBC         | 2405     |
| 3DES or 3DES-CBC            | 3DES-CBC        | 2451     |
| BLOWFISH or<br>BLOWFISH-CBC | BLOWFISH-CBC    | 2451     |
| AES or AES-CBC              | AES-CBC         | 2451     |
| AES-CCM                     | AES-CCM         | 4309     |
| AES-GCM                     | AES_GCM         | 4106     |

You can use the [ipsecalgs\(1M\)](#) command to obtain the complete list of authentication algorithms.

The value can be NULL, which implies a NULL encryption, pursuant to *RFC 2410*. This means that the payload will not be encrypted. The string can also be ANY, which indicates no-preference for the algorithm. Default algorithms will be chosen depending upon the SAs available at the time for manual SAs and upon the key negotiating daemon for automatic SAs. Strings are not case-sensitive.

**number**

A decimal number in the range 1-255. This is useful when new algorithms can be dynamically loaded.

**encr\_auth\_algs**

An acceptable value following *encr\_auth\_algs* implies that the IPsec ESP header will be present in the outbound datagram. The values following *encr\_auth\_algs* describe the

authentication algorithms that will be used while applying the IPsec ESP protocol on outbound datagrams and verified to be present on inbound datagrams. See *RFC 2406*. This entry can contain either a string or a number. Strings are case-insensitive.

**string**

Valid values are the same as the ones described for `auth_algs` above.

**number**

This should be a decimal number in the range 1-255. This is useful when new algorithms can be dynamically loaded.

If `encr_algs` is present and `encr_auth_algs` is not present in a policy entry, the system will use an ESP SA regardless of whether the SA has an authentication algorithm or not.

If `encr_algs` is not present and `encr_auth_algs` is present in a policy entry, null encryption will be provided, which is equivalent to `encr_algs` with NULL, for outbound and inbound datagrams.

If both `encr_algs` and `encr_auth_algs` are not present in a policy entry, ESP header will not be present for outbound datagrams and the same will be verified for inbound datagrams.

If both `encr_algs` and `encr_auth_algs` are present in a policy entry, ESP header with integrity checksum will be present on outbound datagrams and the same will be verified for inbound datagrams.

For `encr_algs`, `encr_auth_algs`, and `auth_algs` a key length specification may be present. This is either a single value specifying the only valid key length for the algorithm or a range specifying the valid minimum and/or maximum key lengths. Minimum or maximum lengths may be omitted.

**dir**

Values following this decides whether this entry is for outbound or inbound datagram. Valid values are strings that should be one of the following:

**out**

This means that this policy entry should be considered only for outbound datagrams.

**in**

This means that this policy entry should be considered only for inbound datagrams.

**both**

This means that this policy entry should be considered for both inbound and outbound datagrams

This entry is not needed when the action is “apply”, “permit” or “ipsec”. But if it is given while the action is “apply” or “permit”, it should be “out” or “in” respectively. This is mandatory when the action is “bypass”.

**sa**

Values following this decide the attribute of the security association. Value indicates whether a unique security association should be used or any existing SA can be used. If there is a policy requirement, SAs are created dynamically on the first outbound datagram using the key management daemon. Static SAs can be created using `ipseckey(1M)`. The values used here determine whether a new SA will be used/obtained. Valid values are strings that could be one of the following:

**unique**

Unique Association. A new/unused association will be obtained/used for packets matching this policy entry. If an SA that was previously used by the same 5 tuples, that is, {Source address, Destination address, Source port, Destination Port, Protocol (for example, TCP/UDP)} exists, it will be reused. Thus uniqueness is expressed by the 5 tuples given above. The security association used by the above 5 tuples will not be used by any other socket. For inbound datagrams, uniqueness will not be verified.

For tunnel-mode tunnels, `unique` is ignored. SAs are assigned per-rule in tunnel-mode tunnels. For transport-mode tunnels, `unique` is implicit, because the enforcement happens only on the outer-packet addresses and protocol value of either IPv4-in-IP or IPv6-in-IP.

**shared**

Shared association. If an SA exists already for this source-destination pair, it will be used. Otherwise a new SA will be obtained. This is the default.

This is mandatory only for outbound policy entries and should not be given for entries whose action is “bypass”. If this entry is not given for inbound entries, for example, when “dir” is in or “action” is permit, it will be assumed to be shared.

Action follows the pattern and should be given before properties. It should be one of the following and this field is mandatory.

**ipsec**

Use IPsec for the datagram as described by the properties, if the pattern matches the datagram. If `ipsec` is given without a `dir` spec, the pattern is matched to incoming and outgoing datagrams.

**apply**

Apply IPsec to the datagram as described by the properties, if the pattern matches the datagram. If `apply` is given, the pattern is matched only on the outbound datagram.

**permit**

Permit the datagram if the pattern matches the incoming datagram and satisfies the constraints described by the properties. If it does not satisfy the properties, discard the datagram. If `permit` is given, the pattern is matched only for inbound datagrams.

**bypass****pass**

Bypass any policy checks if the pattern matches the datagram. `dir` in the properties decides whether the check is done on outbound or inbound datagrams. All the `bypass` entries are checked before checking with any other policy entry in the system. This has the highest precedence over any other entries. `dir` is the only field that should be present when action is `bypass`.

#### drop

Drop any packets that match the pattern.

If the file contains multiple policy entries, for example, they are assumed to be listed in the order in which they are to be applied. In cases of multiple entries matching the outbound and inbound datagram, the first match will be taken. The system will reorder the policy entry, that is, add the new entry before the old entry, only when:

The level of protection is “stronger” than the old level of protection.

Currently, strength is defined as:

AH and ESP > ESP > AH

The standard uses of AH and ESP were what drove this ranking of “stronger”. There are flaws with this. ESP can be used either without authentication, which will allow cut-and-paste or replay attacks, or without encryption, which makes it equivalent or slightly weaker than AH. An administrator should take care to use ESP properly. See [ipsecesp\(7P\)](#) for more details.

If the new entry has `bypass` as action, `bypass` has the highest precedence. It can be added in any order, and the system will still match all the `bypass` entries before matching any other entries. This is useful for key management daemons which can use this feature to bypass IPsec as it protects its own traffic.

Entries with both AH (`auth_algs` present in the policy entry) and ESP (`encr_auth_algs` or `encr_auth_algs` present in the policy entry) protection are ordered after all the entries with AH and ESP and before any AH-only and ESP-only entries. In all other cases the order specified by the user is not modified, that is, newer entries are added at the end of all the old entries. See [Examples](#).

A new entry is considered duplicate of the old entry if an old entry matches the same traffic pattern as the new entry. See [Examples](#) for information on duplicates.

**Security** If, for example, the policy file comes over the wire from an NFS mounted file system, an adversary can modify the data contained in the file, thus changing the policy configured on the machine to suit his needs. Administrators should be cautious about transmitting a copy of the policy file over a network.

To prevent non-privileged users from modifying the security policy, ensure that the configuration file is writable only by trusted users.

The configuration file is defined by a property of the policy `smf(5)` service. The default configuration file, is `/etc/inet/ipsecinit.conf`. This can be changed using the `svccprop(1)` command. See NOTES for more details.

The policy description language supports the use of tokens that can be resolved by means of a name service, using functions such as `gethostbyname(3NSL)`. While convenient, these functions are only secure as the name service the system is configured to use. Great care should be taken to secure the name service if it is used to resolve elements of the security policy.

If your source address is a host that can be looked up over the network and your naming system itself is compromised, then any names used will no longer be trustworthy.

If the name switch is configured to use a name service that is not local to the system, bypass policy entries might be required to prevent the policy from preventing communication to the name service. See `nsswitch.conf(4)`.

Policy is latched for TCP/UDP sockets on which a `connect(3SOCKET)` or `accept(3SOCKET)` has been issued. Adding new policy entries will not have any effect on them. This feature of latching may change in the future. It is not advisable to depend upon this feature.

The `ipsecconf` command can only be run by a user who has sufficient privilege to open the `pf_key(7P)` socket. The appropriate privilege can be assigned to a user with the Network IPsec Management profile. See `profiles(1)`, `rbac(5)`, `prof_attr(4)`.

Make sure to set up the policies before starting any communications, as existing connections may be affected by the addition of new policy entries. Similarly, do not change policies in the middle of a communication.

Note that certain `ndd` tunables affect how policies configured with this tool are enforced; see `ipsecesp(7P)` for more details.

### Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Protecting Outbound TCP Traffic With ESP and the AES Algorithm

The following example specified that any TCP packet from spiderweb to arachnid should be encrypted with AES, and the SA could be a shared one. It does not verify whether or not the inbound traffic is encrypted.

```
#
Protect the outbound TCP traffic between hosts spiderweb
and arachnid with ESP and use AES algorithm.
#
{
 laddr spiderweb
 raddr arachnid
 ulp tcp
 dir out
} ipsec {
```

**EXAMPLE 1** Protecting Outbound TCP Traffic With ESP and the AES Algorithm *(Continued)*

```

 encr_algs AES
}

```

**EXAMPLE 2** Verifying Whether or Not Inbound Traffic is Encrypted

Example 1 does not verify whether or not the inbound traffic is encrypted. The entry in this example protects inbound traffic:

```

#
Protect the TCP traffic on inbound with ESP/DES from arachnid
to spiderweb
#
{
 laddr spiderweb
 raddr arachnid
 ulp tcp
 dir in
} ipsec {
 encr_algs AES
}

```

sa can be absent for inbound policy entries as it implies that it can be a shared one. Uniqueness is not verified on inbound. Note that in both the above entries, authentication was never specified. This can lead to cut and paste attacks. As mentioned previously, though the authentication is not specified, the system will still use an ESP SA with `encr_auth_alg` specified, if it was found in the SA tables.

**EXAMPLE 3** Protecting All Traffic Between Two Hosts

The following example protects both directions at once:

```

{
 laddr spiderweb
 raddr arachnid
 ulp tcp
} ipsec {
 encr_algs AES
}

```

**EXAMPLE 4** Authenticating All Inbound Traffic to the Telnet Port

This entry specifies that any inbound datagram to telnet port should come in authenticated with the SHA1 algorithm. Otherwise the datagram should not be permitted. Without this entry, traffic destined to port number 23 can come in clear. sa is not specified, which implies



**EXAMPLE 4** Authenticating All Inbound Traffic to the Telnet Port *(Continued)*

that it is shared. This can be done only for inbound entries. You need to have an equivalent entry to protect outbound traffic so that the outbound traffic is authenticated as well, remove the dir.

```
#
All the inbound traffic to the telnet port should be
authenticated.
#
{
 lport telnet
 dir in
} ipsec {
 auth_algs sha1
}
```

**EXAMPLE 5** Verifying Inbound Traffic is Null-Encrypted

The first entry specifies that any packet with address host-B should not be checked against any policies. The second entry specifies that all inbound traffic from network-B should be encrypted with a NULL encryption algorithm and the MD5 authentication algorithm. NULL encryption implies that ESP header will be used without encrypting the datagram. As the first entry is bypass it need not be given first in order, as bypass entries have the highest precedence. Thus any inbound traffic will be matched against all bypass entries before any other policy entries.

```
#
Make sure that all inbound traffic from network-B is NULL
encrypted, but bypass for host-B alone from that network.
Add the bypass first.
{
 raddr host-B
 dir in
} bypass {}

Now add for network-B.
{
 raddr network-B/16
 dir in
} ipsec {
 encr_algs NULL
 encr_auth_algs md5
}
```

**EXAMPLE 6** Entries to Bypass Traffic from IPsec

The first two entries provide that any datagram leaving the machine with source port 53 or coming into port number 53 should not be subjected to IPsec policy checks, irrespective of any other policy entry in the system. Thus the latter two entries will be considered only for ports other than port number 53.

```
#
Bypass traffic for port no 53
#
{lport 53} bypass {}
{rport 53} bypass {}
{raddr spiderweb } ipsec {encr_algs any sa unique}
```

**EXAMPLE 7** Protecting Outbound Traffic

```
#
Protect the outbound traffic from all interfaces.
#
{raddr spiderweb dir out} ipsec {auth_algs any sa unique}
```

If the [gethostbyname\(3XNET\)](#) call for spiderweb yields multiple addresses, multiple policy entries will be added for all the source address with the same properties.

```
{
 laddr arachnid
 raddr spiderweb
 dir in
} ipsec {auth_algs any sa unique}
```

If the [gethostbyname\(3XNET\)](#) call for spiderweb and the [gethostbyname\(3XNET\)](#) call for arachnid yield multiple addresses, multiple policy entries will be added for each (saddr daddr) pair with the same properties. Use `ipsecconf -l` to view all the policy entries added.

**EXAMPLE 8** Bypassing Unauthenticated Traffic

```
#
Protect all the outbound traffic with ESP except any traffic
to network-b which should be authenticated and bypass anything
to network-c
#
{raddr network-b/16 dir out} ipsec {auth_algs any}
{dir out} ipsec {encr_algs any}
{raddr network-c/16 dir out} bypass {} # NULL properties
```

Note that `bypass` can be given anywhere and it will take precedence over all other entries. `NULL` pattern matches all the traffic.

**EXAMPLE 9** Encrypting IPv6 Traffic with 3DES and MD5

The following entry on the host with the link local address `fe80::a00:20ff:fe21:4483` specifies that any outbound traffic between the hosts with IPv6 link-local addresses `fe80::a00:20ff:fe21:4483` and `fe80::a00:20ff:fe1f:e346` must be encrypted with 3DES and MD5.

```
{
 laddr fe80::a00:20ff:fe21:4483
 raddr fe80::a00:20ff:fe1f:e346
 dir out
} ipsec {
 encr_algs 3DES
 encr_auth_algs MD5
}
```

**EXAMPLE 10** Verifying IPv6 Traffic is Authenticated with SHA1

The following two entries require that all IPv6 traffic to and from the IPv6 site-local network `fec0:abcd::0/32` be authenticated with SHA1.

```
{raddr fec0:abcd::0/32} ipsec { auth_algs SHA1 }
```

**EXAMPLE 11** Key Lengths

```
use aes at any key length
{raddr spiderweb} ipsec {encr_algs aes}

use aes with a 192 bit key
{raddr spiderweb} ipsec {encr_algs aes(192)}

use aes with any key length up to 192 bits
i.e. 192 bits or less
{raddr spiderweb} ipsec {encr_algs aes(..192)}

use aes with any key length of 192 or more
i.e. 192 bits or more
{raddr spiderweb} ipsec {encr_algs aes(192..)}

#use aes with any key from 192 to 256 bits
{raddr spiderweb} ipsec {encr_algs aes(192..256)}

#use any algorithm with a key of 192 bits or longer
{raddr spiderweb} ipsec {encr_algs any(192..)}
```

**EXAMPLE 12** Correct and Incorrect Policy Entries

The following are examples of correctly formed policy entries:

**EXAMPLE 12** Correct and Incorrect Policy Entries *(Continued)*

```

{ raddr that_system rport telnet } ipsec { encr_algs 3des encr_auth_algs
sha1 sa shared}

{
 raddr that_system
 rport telnet
} ipsec {
 encr_algs 3des
 encr_auth_algs sha1
 sa shared
}

{ raddr that_system rport telnet } ipsec
 { encr_algs 3des encr_auth_algs sha1 sa shared}

{ raddr that_system rport telnet } ipsec
 { encr_algs 3des encr_auth_algs sha1 sa shared} or ipsec
 { encr_algs aes encr_auth_algs sha1 sa shared}

```

...and the following is an incorrectly formed entry:

```

{ raddr that_system rport telnet } ipsec
 { encr_algs 3des encr_auth_algs sha1 sa shared}
 or ipsec { encr_algs aes encr_auth_algs sha1 sa shared}

```

In the preceding, incorrect entry, note that the third line begins with “or ipsec”. Such an entry causes ipsecconf to return an error.

**EXAMPLE 13** Allowing Neighbor Discovery to Occur in the Clear

The following two entries require that all IPv6 traffic to and from the IPv6 site-local network `fec0:abcd::0/32` be authenticated with SHA1. The second entry allows neighbor discovery to operate correctly.

```

{raddr fec0:abcd::0/32} ipsec { auth_algs SHA1 }
{raddr fec0:abcd::0/32 ulp ipv6-icmp type 133-137 dir both }
 pass { }

```

**EXAMPLE 14** Using “or”

The following entry allows traffic using the AES or Blowfish algorithms from the remote machine spiderweb:

```

{raddr spiderweb} ipsec {encr_algs aes} or ipsec {encr_algs blowfish}

```

**EXAMPLE 15** Configuring a Tunnel to be Backward-Compatible with Solaris 9

The following example is equivalent to “encr\_algs aes encr\_auth\_algs md5” in [ifconfig\(1M\)](#):

```
{tunnel ip.tun0 negotiate transport} ipsec {encr_algs aes
 encr_auth_algs md5}
```

**EXAMPLE 16** Configuring a Tunnel to a VPN client with an Assigned Address

The following example assumes a distinct “inside” network with its own topology, such that a client's default route goes “inside”.

```
Unlike route(1m), the default route has to be spelled-out.
{tunnel ip.tun0 negotiate tunnel raddr client-inside/32
 laddr 0.0.0.0/0} ipsec {encr_algs aes encr_auth_algs sha1}
```

**EXAMPLE 17** Transit VPN router between Two Tunnelled Subnets and a Third

The following example specifies a configuration for a VPN router that routes between two tunnelled subnets and a third subnet that is on-link. Consider remote-site A, remote-site B, and local site C, each with a /24 address allocation.

```
ip.tun0 between me (C) and remote-site A.
Cover remote-site A to remote-side B.
{tunnel ip.tun0 negotiate tunnel raddr A-prefix/24 laddr
 B-prefix/24} ipsec {encr_algs 3des encr_auth_algs md5}

Cover remote-site A traffic to my subnet.
{tunnel ip.tun0 negotiate tunnel raddr A-prefix/24 laddr
 C-prefix/24} ipsec {encr_algs 3des encr_auth_algs md5}

ip.tun1 between me (C) and remote-site B.
Cover remote-site B to remote-site A.
{tunnel ip.tun1 negotiate tunnel raddr B-prefix/24 laddr
 A-prefix/24} ipsec {encr_algs aes encr_auth_algs sha1}

Cover remote-site B traffic to my subnet.
{tunnel ip.tun1 negotiate tunnel raddr B-prefix/24 laddr
 C-prefix/24} ipsec {encr_algs aes encr_auth_algs md5}
```

**EXAMPLE 18** Using Combined Mode Ciphers

Combined mode ciphers provide data privacy and message authentication in a single operation. They are treated as special versions of encr\_algs. They provide message authentication without the need to specify encr\_auth\_algs. The two combined mode ciphers supported are:

**EXAMPLE 18** Using Combined Mode Ciphers (Continued)

```

aes-ccm
 AES CCM Mode(Counter with CBC-MAC)

```

```

aes-gcm
 AES GCM Mode (Galois/Counter)

```

The parameters used are the same as any other `encr_algs` value. In both examples, the number in the algorithm token indicates the length of the Integrity Check Vector (ICV). See [ipsecalgs\(1M\)](#).

```

simple example using transport mode
{laddr 192.168.99.2 raddr 192.168.99.3} ipsec
 {encr_algs aes-gcm sa shared}
simple example using CCM mode and 128 bit keys
{laddr 192.168.99.100 raddr 192.168.99.200} ipsec
 {encr_algs aes-ccm(128) sa shared}

```

**Files** `/var/run/ipsecpolicy.conf`

Cache of IPsec policies currently configured for the system, maintained by `ipsecconf` command. Do not edit this file.

`/etc/inet/ipsecinit.conf`

File containing IPsec policies to be installed at system restart by the `policy smf(5)` service. See NOTES for more information.

`/etc/inet/ipsecinit.sample`

Sample input file for `ipseconf`.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWcsu         |
| Interface Stability | Committed       |

**See Also** [auths\(1\)](#), [profiles\(1\)](#), [svcp\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [in.iked\(1M\)](#), [init\(1M\)](#), [ifconfig\(1M\)](#), [ipsecalgs\(1M\)](#), [ipseckey\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [gethostbyname\(3NSL\)](#), [accept\(3SOCKET\)](#), [connect\(3SOCKET\)](#), [gethostbyname\(3XNET\)](#), [getnetbyname\(3XNET\)](#), [getprotobyname\(3XNET\)](#), [getservbyname\(3XNET\)](#), [getaddrinfo\(3SOCKET\)](#), [socket\(3SOCKET\)](#), [ike.config\(4\)](#), [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#), [prof\\_attr\(4\)](#), [user\\_attr\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [rbac\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [ipsecah\(7P\)](#), [ipsecesp\(7P\)](#), [pf\\_key\(7P\)](#)

Glenn, R. and Kent, S. *RFC 2410, The NULL Encryption Algorithm and Its Use With IPsec*. The Internet Society. 1998.

Kent, S. and Atkinson, R. *RFC 2402, IP Authentication Header*. The Internet Society. 1998.

Kent, S. and Atkinson, R. *RFC 2406, IP Encapsulating Security Payload (ESP)*. The Internet Society. 1998.

Madsen, C. and Glenn, R. *RFC 2403, The Use of HMAC-MD5-96 within ESP and AH*. The Internet Society. 1998.

Madsen, C. and Glenn, R. *RFC 2404, The Use of HMAC-SHA-1-96 within ESP and AH*. The Internet Society. 1998.

Madsen, C. and Doraswamy, N. *RFC 2405, The ESP DES-CBC Cipher Algorithm With Explicit IV*. The Internet Society. 1998.

Pereira, R. and Adams, R. *RFC 2451, The ESP CBC-Mode Cipher Algorithms*. The Internet Society. 1998.

Frankel, S. and Kelly, R. Glenn, *The AES Cipher Algorithm and Its Use With IPsec*. 2001.

**Diagnostics** Bad “string” on line *N*.

Duplicate “string” on line *N*.

*string* refers to one of the names in pattern or properties. A Bad string indicates that an argument is malformed; a Duplicate string indicates that there are multiple arguments of a similar type, for example, multiple Source Address arguments.

Interface name already selected

Dual use of -i *name* and *name,index* for an index.

Error before or at line *N*.

Indicates parsing error before or at line *N*.

Non-existent index

Reported when the *index* for delete is not a valid one.

spd\_msg return: File exists

Reported when there is already a policy entry that matches the traffic of this new entry.

**Notes** IPsec manual keys are managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#). The services listed below manage the components of IPsec. These services are delivered as follows:

```
svc:/network/ipsec/policy:default (enabled)
svc:/network/ipsec/ipsecalgs:default (enabled)
svc:/network/ipsec/manual-key:default (disabled)
svc:/network/ipsec/ike:default (disabled)
```

The manual-key service is delivered disabled. The system administrator must create manual IPsec Security Associations (SAs), as described in [ipseckey\(1M\)](#), before enabling that service.

The policy service is delivered enabled, but without a configuration file, so that, as a starting condition, packets are not protected by IPsec. After you create the configuration file `/etc/inet/ipsecinit.conf`, as described in this man page, and refresh the service (`svcadm refresh`, see below), the policy contained in the configuration file is applied. If there is an error in this file, the service enters maintenance mode.

Services that are delivered disabled are delivered that way because the system administrator must create configuration files for those services before enabling them. See [ike.config\(4\)](#) for the `ike` service.

See [ipsecalgs\(1M\)](#) for the `ipsecalgs` service.

The correct administrative procedure is to create the configuration file for each service, then enable each service using [svcadm\(1M\)](#).

If the configuration needs to be changed, edit the configuration file then refresh the service, as follows:

```
example# svcadm refresh policy
```

The [smf\(5\)](#) framework will record any errors in the service-specific log file. Use any of the following commands to examine the `logfile` property:

```
example# svcs -l policy
example# svcprop policy
example# svccfg -s policy listprop
```

The following property is defined for the `policy` service:

```
config/config_file
```

This property can be modified using [svccfg\(1M\)](#) by users who have been assigned the following authorization:

```
solaris.smf.value.ipsec
```

See [auths\(1\)](#), [user\\_attr\(4\)](#), [rbac\(5\)](#).

The service needs to be refreshed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#) before the new property is effective. General non-modifiable properties can be viewed with the [svccprop\(1\)](#) command.

```
svccfg -s ipsec/policy setprop config/config_file = /new/config_file
svcadm refresh policy
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, refreshing, and requesting restart can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). A user who has been assigned the authorization shown below can perform these actions:

```
solaris.smf.manage.ipsec
```

The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

The `ipsecconf` command is designed to be managed by the `policy smf(5)` service. While the `ipsecconf` command can be run from the command line, this is discouraged. If the `ipsecconf` command is to be run from the command line, the `policy smf(5)` service should be disabled first. See [svcadm\(1M\)](#).



**Name** ipseckey – manually manipulate an IPsec Security Association Database (SADB)

**Synopsis** ipseckey [-nvp]  
 ipseckey [-nvp] -f *filename*  
 ipseckey -c *filename*  
 ipseckey [-nvp] [delete | delete-pair | get] SA\_TYPE {EXTENSION *value...*}  
 ipseckey [-np] [monitor | passive\_monitor | pmonitor]  
 ipseckey [-nvp] flush {SA\_TYPE}  
 ipseckey [-nvp] dump {SA\_TYPE}  
 ipseckey [-nvp] save SA\_TYPE {*filename*}  
 ipseckey [-nvp] -s *filename*

**Description** The ipseckey command is used to manually manipulate the security association databases of the network security services, [ipsecah\(7P\)](#) and [ipsecesp\(7P\)](#). You can use the ipseckey command to set up security associations between communicating parties when automated key management is not available.

While the ipseckey utility has only a limited number of general options, it supports a rich command language. The user may specify requests to be delivered by means of a programmatic interface specific for manual keying. See [pf\\_key\(7P\)](#). When ipseckey is invoked with no arguments, it will enter an interactive mode which prints a prompt to the standard output and accepts commands from the standard input until the end-of-file is reached. Some commands require an explicit security association (“SA”) type, while others permit the SA type to be unspecified and act on all SA types.

ipseckey uses a PF\_KEY socket and the message types SADB\_ADD, SADB\_DELETE, SADB\_GET, SADB\_UPDATE, SADB\_FLUSH, and SADB\_X\_PROMISC. Thus, you must be a superuser to use this command.

ipseckey handles sensitive cryptographic keying information. Please read the [Security](#) section for details on how to use this command securely.

**Options** -c [*filename*]  
 Analogous to the -f option (see following), except that the input is not executed but only checked for syntactical correctness. Errors are reported to `stderr`. This option is provided to debug configurations without making changes. See [SECURITY](#) and “Service Management Facility” for more information.

-f [*filename*]  
 Read commands from an input file, *filename*. The lines of the input file are identical to the command line language. The load command provides similar functionality. The -s option or the save command can generate files readable by the -f argument.

- n  
Prevent attempts to print host and network names symbolically when reporting actions. This is useful, for example, when all name servers are down or are otherwise unreachable.
- p  
Paranoid. Do not print any keying material, even if saving SAs. Instead of an actual hexadecimal digit, print an X when this flag is turned on.
- s [*filename*]  
The opposite of the -f option. If '-' is given for a *filename*, then the output goes to the standard output. A snapshot of all current SA tables will be output in a form readable by the -f option. The output will be a series of add commands, but with some names not used. This occurs because a single name may often indicate multiple addresses.
- v  
Verbose. Print the messages being sent into the PF\_KEY socket, and print raw seconds values for lifetimes.

**Commands****add**

Add an SA. Because it involves the transfer of keying material, it cannot be invoked from the shell, lest the keys be visible in `ps(1)` output. It can be used either from the interactive `ipseckey>` prompt or in a command file specified by the -f command. The add command accepts all extension-value pairs described below.

**update**

Update SA lifetime, and in the cases of larval SAs (leftover from aborted automated key management), keying material and other extensions. Like add, this command cannot be invoked from the shell because keying material would be seen by the `ps(1)` command. It can be used either from the interactive `ipseckey>` prompt or in a command file specified by the -f command. The update command accepts all extension-value pairs, but normally is only used for SA lifetime updates.

**update-pair**

As update, but apply the update to the SA and its paired SA, if there is one.

**delete**

Delete a specific SA from a specific SADB. This command requires the `spi` extension, and the `dest` extension for IPsec SAs. Other extension-value pairs are superfluous for a delete message. If the SA to be deleted is paired with another SA, the SA is deleted and the paired SA is updated to indicate that it is now unpaired.

**delete-pair**

Delete a specific SA from a specific SADB. If the SA is paired with another SA, delete that SA too. This command requires the `spi` extension and the `dest` extension for the IPsec SA, or its pair.

**get**

Lookup and display a security association from a specific SADB. Like delete, this command only requires `spi` and `dest` for IPsec.

**flush**

Remove all SA for a given SA\_TYPE, or all SA for all types.

**monitor**

Continuously report on any PF\_KEY messages. This uses the SADB\_X\_PROMISC message to enable messages that a normal PF\_KEY socket would not receive to be received. See [pf\\_key\(7P\)](#).

**passive\_monitor**

Like monitor, except that it does not use the SADB\_X\_PROMISC message.

**pmonitor**

Synonym for passive\_monitor.

**dump**

Will display all SAs for a given SA type, or will display all SAs. Because of the large amount of data generated by this command, there is no guarantee that all SA information will be successfully delivered, or that this command will even complete.

**save**

Is the command analog of the -s option. It is included as a command to provide a way to snapshot a particular SA type, for example, esp or ah.

**help**

Prints a brief summary of commands.

**SA\_TYPE all**

Specifies all known SA types. This type is only used for the flush and dump commands. This is equivalent to having no SA type for these commands.

**ah**

Specifies the IPsec Authentication Header (“AH”) SA.

**esp**

Specifies the IPsec Encapsulating Security Payload (“ESP”) SA.

**Extension Value Types**

Commands like add, delete, get, and update require that certain extensions and associated values be specified. The extensions will be listed here, followed by the commands that use them, and the commands that require them. Requirements are currently documented based upon the IPsec definitions of an SA. Required extensions may change in the future. <number> can be in either hex (0xnnn), decimal (nnn) or octal (0nnn). <string> is a text string. <hexstr> is a long hexadecimal number with a bit-length. Extensions are usually paired with values; however, some extensions require two values after them.

**spi <number>**

Specifies the security parameters index of the SA. This extension is required for the add, delete, get and update commands.

`pair-spi <number>`

When `pair-spi` is used with the `add` or `update` commands, the SA being added or updated will be paired with the SA defined by `pair-spi`. A pair of SAs can be updated or deleted with a single command.

The two SAs that make up the pair need to be in opposite directions from the same pair of IP addresses. The command will fail if either of the SAs specified are already paired with another SA.

If the `pair-spi` token is used in a command and the SA defined by `pair-spi` does not exist, the command will fail. If the command was `add` and the pairing failed, the SA to be added will instead be removed.

`inbound | outbound`

These optional flags specify the direction of the SA. When the `inbound` or `outbound` flag is specified with the `add` command, the kernel will insert the new SA into the specified hash table for faster lookups. If the flag is omitted, the kernel will decide into which hash table to insert the new SA based on its knowledge the IP addresses specified with the `src` and `dst` extensions.

When these flags are used with the `update`, `delete`, `update-pair` or `get` commands, the flags provide a hint as to the hash table in which the kernel should find the SA.

`replay <number>`

Specifies the replay window size. If not specified, the replay window size is assumed to be zero. It is not recommended that manually added SAs have a replay window. This extension is used by the `add` and `update` commands.

`replay_value <number>`

Specifies the replay value of the SA. This extension is used by the `add` and `update` commands.

`state <string>|<number>`

Specifies the SA state, either by numeric value or by the strings “`larval`”, “`mature`”, “`dying`” or “`dead`”. If not specified, the value defaults to `mature`. This extension is used by the `add` and `update` commands.

`auth_alg <string>|<number>`

`authalg <string>|<number>`

Specifies the authentication algorithm for an SA, either by numeric value, or by strings indicating an algorithm name. Current authentication algorithms include:

HMAC - MD5

`md5`, `hmac-md5`

HMAC - SH-1

`sha`, `sha-1`, `hmac-sha1`, `hmac-sha`

#### HMAC-SHA-256

sha256, sha-256, hmac-sha256, hmac-sha-256

#### HMAC-SHA-384

sha384, sha-384, hmac-sha384, hmac-sha-384

#### HMAC-SHA-512

sha512, sha-512, hmac-sha512, hmac-sha-512

Often, algorithm names will have several synonyms. This extension is required by the `add` command for certain SA types. It is also used by the `update` command.

Use the `ipsecalgs(1M)` command to obtain the complete list of authentication algorithms.

`encr_alg <string>|<number>`

`encralg <string>|<number>`

Specifies the encryption algorithm for an SA, either by numeric value, or by strings indicating an algorithm name. Current encryption algorithms include DES (“des”), Triple-DES (“3des”), Blowfish (“blowfish”), and AES (“aes”). This extension is required by the `add` command for certain SA types. It is also used by the `update` command.

Use the `ipsecalgs(1M)` command to obtain the complete list of encryption algorithms.

The next six extensions are lifetime extensions. There are two varieties, “hard” and “soft”. If a hard lifetime expires, the SA will be deleted automatically by the system. If a soft lifetime expires, an `SADB_EXPIRE` message will be transmitted by the system, and its state will be downgraded to `dying` from `mature`. See `pf_key(7P)`. The `monitor` command to key allows you to view `SADB_EXPIRE` messages.

`idle_addtime <number>`

`idle_usetime <number>`

Specifies the number of seconds that this SA can exist if the SA is not used before the SA is revalidated. If this extension is not present, the default value is half of the `hard_addtime` (see below). This extension is used by the `add` and `update` commands.

`soft_bytes <number>`

`hard_bytes <number>`

Specifies the number of bytes that this SA can protect. If this extension is not present, the default value is zero, which means that the SA will not expire based on the number of bytes protected. This extension is used by the `add` and `update` commands.

`soft_addtime <number>`

`hard_addtime <number>`

Specifies the number of seconds that this SA can exist after being added or updated from a larval SA. An update of a mature SA does not reset the initial time that it was added. If this extension is not present, the default value is zero, which means the SA will not expire based on how long it has been since it was added. This extension is used by the `add` and `update` commands.

`soft_usetime <number>`

`hard_usetime <number>`

Specifies the number of seconds this SA can exist after first being used. If this extension is not present, the default value is zero, which means the SA will not expire based on how long it has been since it was added. This extension is used by the `add` and `update` commands.

`saddr address | name`

`srcaddr address | name`

`saddr6 IPv6 address`

`srcaddr6 IPv6 address`

`src address | name`

`src6 IPv6 address`

`srcaddr address` and `src address` are synonyms that indicate the source address of the SA. If unspecified, the source address will either remain unset, or it will be set to a wildcard address if a destination address was supplied. To not specify the source address is valid for IPsec SAs. Future SA types may alter this assumption. This extension is used by the `add`, `update`, `get` and `delete` commands.

`daddr <address>|<name>`

`dstaddr <address>|<name>`

`daddr6 <IPv6 address>|<name>`

`dstaddr6 <IPv6 address>|<name>`

`dst <addr>|<name>`

`dst6 <IPv6 address>|<name>`

`dstaddr <addr>` and `dst <addr>` are synonyms that indicate the destination address of the SA. If unspecified, the destination address will remain unset. Because IPsec SAs require a specified destination address and `spi` for identification, this extension, with a specific value, is required for the `add`, `update`, `get` and `delete` commands.

If a name is given, `ipseckey` will attempt to invoke the command on multiple SAs with all of the destination addresses that the name can identify. This is similar to how `ipseconf` handles addresses.

If `dst6` or `dstaddr6` is specified, only the IPv6 addresses identified by a name are used.

`sport <portnum>`

`sport` specifies the source port number for an SA. It should be used in combination with an upper-layer protocol (see below), but it does not have to be.

`dport <portnum>`

`dport` specifies the destination port number for an SA. It should be used in combination with an upper-layer protocol (see below), but it does not have to be.

`encap <protocol>`

Identifies the protocol used to encapsulate NAT-traversal IPsec packets. Other NAT-traversal parameters (`nat_*`) are below. The only acceptable value for `<protocol>` currently is `udp`.

proto <protocol number>

ulp <protocol number>

proto, and its synonym ulp, specify the IP protocol number of the SA.

nat\_loc <address>|<name>

If the local address in the SA (source or destination) is behind a NAT, this extension indicates the NAT node's globally-routable address. This address can match the SA's local address if there is a nat\_lport (see below) specified.

nat\_rem <address>|<name>

If the remote address in the SA (source or destination) is behind a NAT, this extension indicates that node's internal (that is, behind-the-NAT) address. This address can match the SA's local address if there is a nat\_rport (see below) specified.

nat\_lport <portnum>

Identifies the local UDP port on which encapsulation of ESP occurs.

nat\_rport <portnum>

Identifies the remote UDP port on which encapsulation of ESP occurs.

isrc <address> | <name>[/<prefix>]

innersrc <address> | <name>[/<prefix>]

isrc6 <address> | <name>[/<prefix>]

innersrc6 <address> | <name>[/<prefix>]

proxyaddr <address> | <name>[/<prefix>]

proxy <address> | <name>[/<prefix>]

isrc <address>[/<prefix>] and innersrc <address>[/<prefix>] are synonyms. They indicate the inner source address for a tunnel-mode SA.

An inner-source can be a prefix instead of an address. As with other address extensions, there are IPv6-specific forms. In such cases, use only IPv6-specific addresses or prefixes.

Previous versions referred to this value as the proxy address. The usage, while deprecated, remains.

idst <address> | <name>[/<prefix>]

innerdst <address> | <name>[/<prefix>]

idst6 <address> | <name>[/<prefix>]

innerdst6 <address> | <name>[/<prefix>]

idst <address>[/<prefix>] and innerdst <address>[/<prefix>] are synonyms. They indicate the inner destination address for a tunnel-mode SA.

An inner-destination can be a prefix instead of an address. As with other address extensions, there are IPv6-specific forms. In such cases, use only IPv6-specific addresses or prefixes.

innersport <portnum>

isport <portnum>

`innersport` specifies the source port number of the inner header for a tunnel-mode SA. It should be used in combination with an upper-layer protocol (see below), but it does not have to be.

`innerdport` <portnum>

`idport` <portnum>

`innerdport` specifies the destination port number of the inner header for a tunnel-mode SA. It should be used in combination with an upper-layer protocol (see below), but it does not have to be.

`iproto` <protocol number> `iulp` <protocol number>

`iproto`, and its synonym `iulp`, specify the IP protocol number of the inner header of a tunnel-mode SA.

`authkey` <hexstring>

Specifies the authentication key for this SA. The key is expressed as a string of hexadecimal digits, with an optional / at the end, for example, 123/12. Bits are counted from the most-significant bits down. For example, to express three '1' bits, the proper syntax is the string "e/3". For multi-key algorithms, the string is the concatenation of the multiple keys. This extension is used by the add and update commands.

`encrkey` <hexstring>

Specifies the encryption key for this SA. The syntax of the key is the same as `authkey`. A concrete example of a multi-key encryption algorithm is 3des, which would express itself as a 192-bit key, which is three 64-bit parity-included DES keys. This extension is used by the add and update commands.

`reserved_bits` <number>

The last <number> bits of the `encrkey` string are marked as reserved in the PF\_KEY message. This option is only for testing certain encryption algorithms.

Certificate identities are very useful in the context of automated key management, as they tie the SA to the public key certificates used in most automated key management protocols. They are less useful for manually added SAs. Unlike other extensions, `srcidtype` takes two values, a *type*, and an actual *value*. The type can be one of the following:

`prefix`

An address prefix.

`fqdn`

A fully-qualified domain name.

`domain`

Domain name, synonym for `fqdn`.

`user_fqdn`

User identity of the form `user@fqdn`.

`mailbox`

Synonym for `user_fqdn`.



The *value* is an arbitrary text string that should identify the certificate.

`srcidtype <type, value>`

Specifies a source certificate identity for this SA. This extension is used by the `add` and `update` commands.

`dstidtype <type, value>`

Specifies a destination certificate identity for this SA. This extension is used by the `add` and `update` commands

Label extensions are used on Trusted Extensions to associate sensitivity labels with the traffic carried inside a security association. These extensions are not allowed unless Trusted Extensions is enabled.

`label label`

Defines the sensitivity label of traffic carried by this SA. Disallowed on systems not using Trusted Extensions.

`outer-label label`

Defines the sensitivity of the ciphertext traffic belonging to this SA; this label will appear in the outer packet header. Disallowed on systems not using Trusted Extensions. Incorrect use of this extension might allow label policy to be circumvented.

`implicit-label label`

Defines the sensitivity of the ciphertext traffic belonging to this SA and request that this SA not contain an explicit on-the-wire label. Disallowed on systems not using Trusted Extensions. Incorrect use of this extension might allow label policy to be circumvented.

Tunnel Mode versus  
Transport Mode SAs

An IPsec SA is a Tunnel Mode SA if the “`proto`” value is either 4 (`ipip`) or 41 (`ipv6`) *and* there is an inner-address or inner-port value specified. Otherwise, the SA is a Transport Mode SA.

**Security** Keying material is very sensitive and should be generated as randomly as possible. Some algorithms have known weak keys. IPsec algorithms have built-in weak key checks, so that if a weak key is in a newly added SA, the `add` command will fail with an invalid value.

The `ipseckey` command allows a privileged user to enter cryptographic keying information. If an adversary gains access to such information, the security of IPsec traffic is compromised. The following issues should be taken into account when using the `ipseckey` command.

1. Is the TTY going over a network (interactive mode)?
  - If it is, then the security of the keying material is the security of the network path for this TTY's traffic. Using `ipseckey` over a clear-text `telnet` or `rlogin` session is risky.
  - Even local windows might be vulnerable to attacks where a concealed program that reads window events is present.
2. Is the file accessed over the network or readable to the world (`-f` option)?
  - A network-mounted file can be sniffed by an adversary as it is being read.
  - A world-readable file with keying material in it is also risky.

- The ipseckey command is designed to be managed by the manual - key [smf\(5\)](#) service. Because the [smf\(5\)](#) log files are world-readable, the ipseckey does not record any syntax errors in the log files, as these errors might include secret information.

If a syntax error is found when the manual - key [smf\(5\)](#) service is enabled, the service enters maintenance mode. The log file will indicate that there was a syntax error, but will not specify what the error was.

The administrator should use `ipseckey -c filename` from the command line to discover the cause of the errors. See [OPTIONS](#).

If your source address is a host that can be looked up over the network and your naming system itself is compromised, then any names used will not be trustworthy.

Security weaknesses often lie in misapplication of tools, not in the tools themselves.

Administrators are urged to be cautious when using ipseckey. The safest mode of operation is probably on a console or other hard-connected TTY.

For further thoughts on this subject, see the afterward by Matt Blaze in Bruce Schneier's *Applied Cryptography: Protocols, Algorithms, and Source Code in C*.

#### Service Management Facility

IPsec manual keys are managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#). The services listed below manage the components of IPsec. These services are delivered as follows:

```
svc:/network/ipsec/policy:default (enabled)
svc:/network/ipsec/ipsecalgs:default (enabled)
svc:/network/ipsec/manual-key:default (disabled)
svc:/network/ipsec/ike:default (disabled)
```

The manual-key service is delivered disabled. The system administrator must create manual IPsec Security Associations (SAs), as described in this man page, before enabling that service.

The policy service is delivered enabled, but without a configuration file, so that, as a starting condition, packets are not protected by IPsec. After you create the configuration file `/etc/inet/ipsecinit.conf` and refresh the service (`svcadm refresh`, see below), the policy contained in the configuration file is applied. If there is an error in this file, the service enters maintenance mode. See [ipseconf\(1M\)](#).

Services that are delivered disabled are delivered that way because the system administrator must create configuration files for those services before enabling them. See [ike.config\(4\)](#) for the `ike` service.

See [ipsecalgs\(1M\)](#) for the `ipsecalgs` service.

The correct administrative procedure is to create the configuration file for each service, then enable each service using [svcadm\(1M\)](#).

If the configuration needs to be changed, edit the configuration file then refresh the service, as follows:

```
example# svcadm refresh manual-key
```

*Warning:* To prevent ipseckey complaining about duplicate Associations, the ipseckey command flushes the Security Association Data Base (SADB) when the ipseckey command is run from [smf\(5\)](#), before adding any new Security Associations defined in the configuration file. This differs from the command line behavior where the SADB is not flushed before adding new Security Associations.

The [smf\(5\)](#) framework will record any errors in the service-specific log file. Use any of the following commands to examine the log file property:

```
example# svcs -l manual-key
example# svcprop manual-key
example# svccfg -s manual-key listprop
```

The following property is defined for the manual-key service:

```
config/config_file
```

This property can be modified using [svccfg\(1M\)](#) by users who have been assigned the following authorization:

```
solaris.smf.value.ipsec
```

See [auths\(1\)](#), [user\\_attr\(4\)](#), [rbac\(5\)](#).

The service needs to be refreshed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#) before the new property is effective. General non-modifiable properties can be viewed with the [svcprop\(1\)](#) command.

```
svccfg -s ipsec/manual-key setprop config/config_file = \
/new/config_file
svcadm refresh manual-key
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, refreshing, and requesting restart can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). A user who has been assigned the authorization shown below can perform these actions:

```
solaris.smf.manage.ipsec
```

The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

The ipseckey command is designed to be run under [smf\(5\)](#) management. While the ipsecconf command can be run from the command line, this is discouraged. If the ipseckey command is to be run from the command line, the manual-key [smf\(5\)](#) service should be disabled first. See [svcadm\(1M\)](#).

### Examples EXAMPLE1 Emptying Out All SAs

To empty out all SA:

```
example# ipseckey flush
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Flushing Out IPsec AH SAs Only

To flush out only IPsec AH SAs:

```
example# ipseckey flush ah
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Saving All SAs To Standard Output

To save all SAs to the standard output:

```
example# ipseckey save all
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Saving ESP SAs To The File /tmp/snapshot

To save ESP SAs to the file /tmp/snapshot:

```
example# ipseckey save esp /tmp/snapshot
```

**EXAMPLE 5** Deleting an IPsec SA

To delete an IPsec SA, only the SPI and the destination address are needed:

```
example# ipseckey delete esp spi 0x2112 dst 224.0.0.1
```

An alternative would be to delete the SA and the SAs pair if it has one:

```
example# ipseckey delete-pair esp spi 0x2112 dst 224.0.0.1
```

**EXAMPLE 6** Getting Information on an IPsec SA

Likewise, getting information on a SA only requires the destination address and SPI:

```
example# ipseckey get ah spi 0x5150 dst mypeer
```

**EXAMPLE 7** Adding or Updating IPsec SAs

Adding or updating SAs requires entering interactive mode:

```
example# ipseckey
ipseckey> add ah spi 0x90125 src me.domain.com dst you.domain.com \
 authalg md5 authkey 1234567890abcdef1234567890abcdef
ipseckey> update ah spi 0x90125 dst you.domain.com hard_bytes \
 16000000
ipseckey> exit
```

Adding two SAs that are linked together as a pair:

```
example# ipseckey
ipseckey> add esp spi 0x2345 src me.domain.com dst you.domain.com \
 authalg md5 authkey bde359723576fdea08e56cbe876e24ad \
```

**EXAMPLE 7** Adding or Updating IPsec SAs *(Continued)*

```

encralg des encrkey be02938e7def2839
ipseckey> add esp spi 0x5432 src me.domain.com dst you.domain.com \
authalg md5 authkey bde359723576fdea08e56cbe876e24ad \
encralg des encrkey be02938e7def2839 pair-spi 0x2345
ipseckey> exit

```

**EXAMPLE 8** Adding an SA in the Opposite Direction

In the case of IPsec, SAs are unidirectional. To communicate securely, a second SA needs to be added in the opposite direction. The peer machine also needs to add both SAs.

```

example# ipseckey
ipseckey> add ah spi 0x2112 src you.domain.com dst me.domain.com \
authalg md5 authkey bde359723576fdea08e56cbe876e24ad \
hard_bytes 16000000
ipseckey> exit

```

**EXAMPLE 9** Monitoring PF\_KEY Messages

Monitoring for PF\_KEY messages is straightforward:

```
example# ipseckey monitor
```

**EXAMPLE 10** Using Commands in a File

Commands can be placed in a file that can be parsed with the `-f` option. This file may contain comment lines that begin with the “#” symbol. For example:

```

This is a sample file for flushing out the ESP table and
adding a pair of SAs.

flush esp

Watch out! I have keying material in this file. See the
SECURITY section in this manual page for why this can be
dangerous .

add esp spi 0x2112 src me.domain.com dst you.domain.com \
 authalg md5 authkey bde359723576fdea08e56cbe876e24ad \
 encralg des encrkey be02938e7def2839 hard_usetime 28800
add esp spi 0x5150 src you.domain.com dst me.domain.com \
 authalg md5 authkey 930987dbe09743ade09d92b4097d9e93 \
 encralg des encrkey 8bd4a52e10127deb hard_usetime 28800

End of file - This is a gratuitous comment

```

**EXAMPLE 11** Adding SAs for IPv6 Addresses

The following commands from the interactive-mode create an SA to protect IPv6 traffic between the site-local addresses

```
example # ipseckey
ipseckey> add esp spi 0x6789 src6 fec0:bbbb::4483 dst6 fec0:bbbb::7843 \
 authalg md5 authkey bde359723576fdea08e56cbe876e24ad \
 encralg des encrkey be02938e7def2839 hard_usetime 28800
ipseckey>exit
```

**EXAMPLE 12** Linking Two SAs as a Pair

The following command links two SAs together, as a pair:

```
example# ipseckey update esp spi 0x123456 dst 192.168.99.2 \
pair-spi 0x654321
```

**Files** /etc/inet/secret/ipseckeys

Default configuration file used at boot time. See “Service Management Facility” and SECURITY for more information.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWcsu         |
| Interface Stability | Committed       |

**See Also** [ps\(1\)](#), [svccprop\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [ipsecconf\(1M\)](#), [ipsecalgs\(1M\)](#), [route\(1M\)](#), [svccadm\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [ike.config\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [ipsec\(7P\)](#), [ipsecah\(7P\)](#), [ipsecesp\(7P\)](#), [pf\\_key\(7P\)](#)

Schneier, B., *Applied Cryptography: Protocols, Algorithms, and Source Code in C*. Second ed. New York, New York: John Wiley & Sons, 1996.

**Diagnostics** The ipseckey command parses the configuration file and reports any errors. In the case of multiple errors, ipseckey reports as many of these as possible.

The ipseckey command does not attempt to use a COMMAND that has a syntax error. A COMMAND might be syntactically correct but can nevertheless generate an error because the kernel rejected the request made to [pf\\_key\(7P\)](#). This might occur because a key had an invalid length or because an unsupported algorithm was specified.

If there are any errors in the configuration file, ipseckey reports the number of valid COMMANDS and the total number of COMMANDS parsed.

Parse error on line *N*.

If an interactive use of ipseckey would print usage information, this would print instead.

Usually preceded by another diagnostic. Because COMMANDS can cover more than a single line in the configuration file by using the backslash character to delimit lines, its not always possible to pinpoint in the configuration file the exact line that caused the error.

Unexpected end of command line.

An additional argument was expected on the command line.

Unknown

A value for a specific extension was unknown.

Address type *N* not supported.

A name-to-address lookup returned an unsupported address family.

*N* is not a bit specifier

bit length *N* is too big for

string is not a hex string

Keying material was not entered appropriately.

Can only specify single

A duplicate extension was entered.

Don't use extension for *<string>* for *<command>*.

An extension not used by a command was used.

One of the entered values is incorrect: Diagnostic code *NN*: *<msg>*

This is a general invalid parameter error. The diagnostic code and message provides more detail about what precise value was incorrect and why.

**Notes** In spite of its IPsec-specific name, ipseckey is analogous to [route\(1M\)](#), in that it is a command-line interface to a socket-based administration engine, in this case, PF\_KEY. PF\_KEY was originally developed at the United States Naval Research Laboratory.

To have machines communicate securely with manual keying, SAs need to be added by all communicating parties. If two nodes wish to communicate securely, both nodes need the appropriate SAs added.

In the future ipseckey may be invoked under additional names as other security protocols become available to PF\_KEY.

This command requires `sys_ip_config` privilege to operate and thus can run in the global zone and in exclusive-IP zones. The global zone can set up security associations with ipseckey to protect traffic for shared-IP zones on the system.

**Name** iscsiadm – enable management of iSCSI initiators

**Synopsis** `iscsiadm subcommand direct-object [options] [operand]`

**Description** The `iscsiadm` command enables management of the iSCSI (Internet SCSI) initiator on a host. `iscsiadm` is implemented as a set of subcommands, many with their own options, which are described in the section for that subcommand. Options not associated with a particular subcommand are described under `OPTIONS`.

`iscsiadm` works only when the following service is online:

```
svc:/network/iscsi/initiator:default
```

The `iscsiadm` command supports the following subcommands, which are described in detail in subsections that follow:

`add`        Adds element(s) to an object.  
`list`       Lists element(s) of an object.  
`modify`    Modifies attributes of an object.  
`remove`    Removes an element from an object.

The `iscsiadm` subcommands operate on a *direct-object*. These are described in the section for each subcommand.

The `iscsiadm` command supports the Internet Storage Name Service (iSNS) for the discovery of iSCSI targets. The command supports the Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP) for authentication.

**add Subcommand** The syntax for the `add` subcommand is:

```
iscsiadm add direct_object [operands...]
```

The `add` subcommand adds the following *direct\_objects*:

```
discovery-address discovery-address [...]
```

Adds a target to a list of discovery addresses. A discovery address (as in the syntax shown below) is an IP *address:port* combination used in a `SendTargets` discovery session. Using this discovery approach, a target device can inform an initiator of the target address and target name of each target exposed by that device. Connection to a target is not attempted unless the `SendTargets` method of discovery has been enabled on the host. You enable this method with the `modify` subcommand.

The *discovery-address* parameter is formatted as:

```
<IP address>[:port]
```

If *port* is not specified, the default of 3260 will be used.



`isns-server isns-server [...]`

Add an iSNS server to the list of iSNS server addresses. An iSNS server address (specified in the syntax shown below) is an IP address-port combination used in an iSNS discovery session. By using iSNS discovery, an iSNS server can provide an initiator with information about a portal and the name of each target that belongs to the same discovery domain as that of the initiator. Connection to the iSNS server is not attempted unless the `modify` method of discovery has been enabled on the host. You enable this method with the `modify` subcommand, described below.

The *isns-server* parameter is formatted as:

*IP\_address[:port]*

If a port is not specified, the default of 3205 is used.

`static-config static_target [...]`

Adds a target to the list of statically configured targets. A connection to the target will not be attempted unless the static configuration method of discovery has been enabled.

The *static\_target* parameter is formatted as:

*<target-name>*, *<target address>[:port-number][,tpgt]*

*<target-name>* can be up to 223 characters.

`list` Subcommand The syntax for the `list` subcommand is:

```
iscsiadm list direct-object [options]
```

The `list` subcommand displays data for the following *direct-objects*:

`discovery`

Lists the discovery methods and their current activation state, enabled or disabled.

Discovery methods are:

- iSNS (Internet Storage Name Service)
- Static
- SendTargets

`initiator-node`

Lists information for the initiator node on the host. The iSCSI initiator node represents a logical HBA and is a logical host connection point for iSCSI targets. The parameter values listed in the response are default parameter settings for the initiator. Each connected target for an initiator can have parameter values that differ from the parameter values on the initiator node.

`static-config [static_target[, ...]]`

Lists the target name and address for specified targets or, if no static targets are specified, all statically discovered targets.

`target [-S] [-v] [target[, ...]]`

Lists a target's current parameters, connection state, and which method was used for the target's discovery. Reports information for specified targets or, if no targets are specified, all targets that have been discovered or have had parameters modified by the `modify target` subcommand.

When used with the `-S` option for a specified target, this subcommand returns:

- target name
- logical unit number
- vendor ID
- product ID
- OS device name (for example, `/dev/rdisk/c0t2d0s0`)

The `-v` options gives more details, such as the current login parameters, the detailed connection information, and the discovery method used to discover the target.

A return of `NA` as the discovery method parameter indicates that the target was created with a `iscsiadm modify target-param` command and does not exist as a discovered object. To remove such targets, use `iscsiadm remove target-param`.

`target-param [-v] target [...]`

Lists a target's default and user-defined parameters.

`discovery-address [-v] [discovery-address[, ...]]`

Lists the `discovery-address` objects that have been added using the `iscsiadm add discovery-address` subcommand.

When used with the `-v` option, lists all known targets at a specified `discovery-address`. The `-v` option returns one or more target names along with zero or more target addresses and associated target portal group tags (TPGT), if applicable.

`isns-server [-v] [isns-server[, ...]]`

Lists the `isns-server` objects that have been added using the `iscsiadm add isns-server` subcommand.

When used with the `-v` option, this subcommand lists all known targets at a specified `isns-server` address. The `-v` option returns one of more target names along with zero or more target addresses and associated target portal group tags, if applicable.

**modify Subcommand** The syntax for the `modify` subcommand is:

```
iscsiadm modify direct_object [options]
```

The `modify` subcommand supports the following *direct\_objects*:

`discovery [options]`

Enabling a discovery method initiates a discovery using that method. Disabling a discovery method that is currently enabled does not affect connections to any targets that have already been discovered by that method.

Options for modify discovery are as follows:

- i, -iSNS enable | disable  
Enable or disable iSNS discovery.
- s, --static enable | disable  
Enable or disable static discovery.
- t, --sendtargets enable | disable  
Enable or disable SendTargets discovery.

`initiator-node` [*options*]

Modifies an initiator's properties. If a target is currently connected, this operation can succeed. However, the modified set of parameters will not be in effect for that target until an existing connection session no longer exists and a new connection has been established. The options -C and --CHAP-secret require a CHAP secret entry in response to a prompt.

For iSCSI booting when the Solaris I/O multipathing feature (formerly known as Sun StorEdge Traffic Manager [STMS] or MPxIO) is disabled, you can modify only the following initiator-node options:

- -r, --radius-server
- -R, --radius-access
- -P, --radius-shared-secret

For iSCSI booting when the Solaris I/O multipathing feature is enabled, you can modify only the following initiator-node options:

- -h, --headerdigest
- -d, --datadigest
- -c, --configured-sessions

Options for modify `initiator-node` are as follows:

- A, --node-alias *<initiator node alias>*  
Modifies the initiator node alias. Maximum length of 223 characters.
- a, --authentication chap | none  
Sets the authentication mode.
- C, --CHAP-secret  
Sets the CHAP secret value. There is no default value. Maximum length is 16 characters; minimum required length is 12 characters.
- c, --configured-sessions *<num\_sessions>* | *<IP address>*[*<IP address>*...]  
Sets the number of configured iSCSI sessions that will be created for each iSCSI target. The feature should be used in combination with the Solaris I/O multipathing feature described in [scsi\\_vhci\(7D\)](#).
- d, --datadigest none | CRC32  
Sets whether CRC32 is enabled to check SCSI data transfers.

-H, --CHAP-name *CHAP name*  
Specifies a CHAP username. If you do not use this option, upon initialization, the CHAP name is set to the initiator node name. When the authentication method is set to CHAP (see -a/--authentication option, above), the CHAP username is displayed with the command `iscsiadm list initiator-node`.

-h, --headerdigest none | CRC32  
Sets whether CRC32 is enabled to check SCSI packet headers.

-N, --node-name <*initiator node name*>  
Modifies the initiator node name. Maximum of 223 characters.

**Note** – During Solaris installation, the initiator node name is set to a globally unique value. Changing this value can adversely affect operation within the iSCSI network.

-P, --radius-shared-secret (exclusive)  
Sets the RADIUS shared secret.

-R, --radius-access enable | disable  
Sets whether a RADIUS server will be used.

-r, --radius-server <*IP address*>[:<*port*>]  
Sets the IP address and port of the radius server to be used.

-T, --tunable-param <<*tunable-prop*>=<*value*>, ...>  
Specify one or more tunable parameters for all targets that initiator node connected.

**Note** – These values should only be modified by an administrator with a good working knowledge of the parameter's impact within the iSCSI network.

Supported tunable-prop options are:

recv-login-rsp-timeout  
Session Login Response Time

The `recv-login-rsp-timeout` option specifies how long iSCSI initiator will wait for the response of iSCSI session login request from the iSCSI target. Valid value is from 0 to 60\*60, default to 60 seconds.

conn-login-max  
Maximized Connection Retry Time

The `conn-login-max` option lets the iSCSI initiator reestablish the connection to the target in case of IO timeout or connection failure during the given time window. Valid value is from 0 to 60\*60, default to 180 seconds.

polling-login-delay  
Login Retry Time Interval

The `polling-login-delay` option specifies the time interval between each login retry when iSCSI initiator to target IO timeout or connection failure. Valid value is from 0 to 60\*60, default to 60 seconds.

`target-param` [*options*] *target*

Modifies a target's parameters. If a target is currently connected, the modify operation will succeed, although the modified settings might not take effect for a few seconds. To confirm that these settings are active, use `iscsiadm list target -v`. If a specified target is not associated with any discovery method, a target object is created with the specified parameters. After using this command to modify a target's parameters, the new parameters will persist until they are modified or removed with a `iscsiadm remove target-param` command on that target. The options `-C` and `--CHAP-secret` require a CHAP secret entry in response to a prompt.

Options for `modify target-param` are as follows:

- B, `--bi-directional-authentication` *enable* | *disable*  
Sets the bidirectional option. If set to *enable*, the initiator performs bidirectional authentication for the specified target.
- C, `--CHAP-secret`  
Sets the target's CHAP secret value. There is no default value. Maximum acceptable length is 16 characters.
- c, `--configured-sessions` *<num\_sessions>* | *<IP address>*[*,<IP address>...*]  
Sets the number of configured iSCSI sessions that will be created for each iSCSI target. The feature should be used in combination with the Solaris I/O multipathing feature described in [scsi\\_vhci\(7D\)](#).
- d, `--datadigest` *none* | *CRC32*  
Sets whether CRC32 is enabled or disabled for the data.
- H, `--CHAP-name` *CHAP name*  
Sets a CHAP username. If you do not use this option, upon initialization, the CHAP name is set to the target name. When the authentication method is set to CHAP (see `-a/--authentication` option, under the `initiator-node` direct object, above), the CHAP username is displayed with the command `iscsiadm list initiator-node`.
- h, `--headerdigest` *none* | *CRC32*  
Sets whether CRC32 is enabled or disabled for the header.
- p, `--login-param`  
Specify one or more login parameter settings.

**Note** – These values should only be modified by an administrator with a good working knowledge of the parameter's impact within the iSCSI network.

The login parameters are derived from iSCSI proposed standard RFC 3720. Valid values are:

|                    |                   |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| dataseqinorder     | yes or no         |
| defaulttime2retain | 0–3600            |
| defaulttime2wait   | 0–3600            |
| firstburstlength   | 512 to $2^{24-1}$ |
| immediatedata      | yes or no         |
| initialr2t         | yes or no         |
| maxburstlength     | 512 to $2^{24-1}$ |
| datapduinorder     | yes or no         |
| maxoutstandingr2t  | 1 to 65535        |
| maxrecvdatabseqlen | 512 to $2^{24-1}$ |

-T, --tunable-param <<tunable-prop>=<value>, ...>

Specify one or more tunable parameters for all targets that initiator node connected.

**Note** – Tunable values should only be modified by an administrator with a good working knowledge of the parameter's impact within the iSCSI network.

Supported *tunable-prop* options are:

recv-login-rsp-timeout  
Session Login Response Time

The `recv-login-rsp-timeout` option specifies how long iSCSI initiator will wait for the response of iSCSI session login request from the iSCSI target. Valid value is from 0 to 60\*60, default to 60 seconds.

conn-login-max  
Maximized Connection Retry Time

The `conn-login-max` option lets the iSCSI initiator reestablish the connection to the target in case of IO timeout or connection failure during the given time window. Valid value is from 0 to 60\*60, default to 180 seconds.

polling-login-delay  
Login Retry Time Interval

The `polling-login-delay` option specifies the time interval between each login retry when iSCSI initiator to target IO timeout or connection failure. Valid value is from 0 to 60\*60, default to 60 seconds.

remove Subcommand The syntax for the remove subcommand is:

```
iscsiadm remove direct_object
```

The remove subcommand supports the following *direct\_objects*:

`discovery-address` *discovery-address*, ...

Removes a target device from the list of discovery addresses. A discovery address (as in the syntax shown below) is an IP address-port combination used in a SendTargets discovery session. Using this discovery approach, a target device can inform an initiator of the target address and target name of each target exposed by that device. If any target exposed by the discovery address is currently mounted or there is active I/O on the device, an error of “logical unit in use” is returned and the operation fails. If the associated devices are not in use, they are removed.

*discovery-address* must be formatted as:

`<IP address>[:<port>]`

There are no options associated with this direct object.

`isns-server` *isns-server*, ...

Removes an iSNS server from the list of iSNS server addresses. An iSNS server address (specified in the syntax shown below) is an IP address-port combination used in an iSNS discovery session. By using iSNS discovery, an iSNS server can provide an initiator with information about a portal and the name of each target that belongs to the same discovery domain as that of the initiator. If any target discovered by means of iSNS is currently mounted or there is active I/O on the device, an error of “logical unit in use” is returned and the operation fails. If the associated devices are not in use, they are removed.

*isns-server* must be formatted as:

`IP_address[:port]`

There are no options associated with this direct object.

`static-config` *static\_target*, ...

Removes a target from the list of statically discovered targets. If the target being removed is currently mounted or there is active I/O on the device, an error of “logical unit in use” is returned and the operation fails. If a device is not in use, it will be removed.

*static\_target* must be formatted as:

`<target-name>, <target-address>[:port-number][, tpgt]`

There are no options associated with this direct object.

`target-param` *target-name*

Removes target specified by *target-name*. The target name is formatted as:

`<target-name>`

There are no options associated with this direct object. For iSCSI booting when the Solaris I/O multipathing feature (formerly known as Sun StorEdge Traffic Manager [STMS] or MPxIO) is enabled, you cannot remove the target.

Proper Use of Discovery Methods Do not configure a target to be discovered by both static and dynamic discovery methods. The consequence of using redundant discovery methods might be slow performance when communicating with the iSCSI target device.

**Options** The following generic options are supported:

- V, --version Displays version information. Stops interpretation of subsequent arguments.
- , --help Displays help information. Can be used following an `iscsiadm` command with no arguments, following a subcommand, or following a subcommand-direct object combination. Responds with help information appropriate for your entry. For example, if you enter:  

```
iscsiadm modify initiator-node --help
```

...`iscsiadm` responds with a display of the options available for that combination of subcommand and direct object.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Adding a Discovery Address

The following command uses the `add` subcommand to add a discovery address.

```
iscsiadm add discovery-address 10.0.0.1:3260 10.0.0.2:3260
```

EXAMPLE 2 Adding a Static Target

The following command uses the `add` subcommand to add a static target.

```
iscsiadm add static-config \
iqn.1999-08.com.array:sn.01234567,10.0.0.1:3260
```

EXAMPLE 3 Listing Current Discovery Settings

The following command uses the `list` subcommand to list current discovery settings.

```
iscsiadm list discovery
Discovery:
Static: enabled
Send Targets: disabled
iSNS: enabled
```

EXAMPLE 4 Obtaining Verbose Discovery Output

The following commands uses the `-v` option (one with, one without) with the `list` subcommand to obtain verbose output.



**EXAMPLE 4** Obtaining Verbose Discovery Output *(Continued)*

```
iscsiadm list discovery-address
Discovery Address: 10.0.0.1:3260
Discovery Address: 10.0.0.2:3260

iscsiadm list discovery-address -v 10.0.0.1:3260
Discovery Address: 10.0.0.1:3260
Target name: eui.210000203787d1f7
Target address: 10.0.0.1:3260
Target name: eui.210000203787a693
Target address: 10.0.0.1:3260
```

**EXAMPLE 5** Displaying Information on the Initiator

The following command uses the `list` subcommand to display information on the initiator.

```
iscsiadm list initiator-node
Initiator node name: iqn.1986-03.com.company.central.interopv20-1
Initiator node alias: interopv20-1
Login Parameters (Default/Configured):
Header Digest: NONE/NONE
Data Digest: NONE/NONE
Authentication Type: CHAP
CHAP Name: iqn.1986-03.com.company.central.interopv20-1
RADIUS Server: NONE
RADIUS access: disabled
Tunable Parameters (Default/Configured):
Session Login Response Time: 60/-
Maximum Connection Retry Time: 180/-
Login Retry Time Interval: 60/-
Configured Sessions: 1
```

**EXAMPLE 6** Displaying Static Configuration Information

The following command uses the `list` subcommand to display information about static configurations.

```
iscsiadm list static-config
Static target: eui.210000203787a693,10.0.0.1:3260
```

**EXAMPLE 7** Displaying Target Information

The following commands show the use of the `list` subcommand with various options to display information about targets.

**EXAMPLE 7** Displaying Target Information *(Continued)*

```
iscsiadm list target
Target: iqn.2004-05.com.abcStorage:Tgt-1
 Alias: -
 TPGT: 12288
 ISID: 4000002a0000
 Connections: 1# iscsiadm list target -v iqn.2004-05.com.abcStorage:Tgt-1
Target: iqn.2004-05.com.abcStorage:Tgt-1
 Alias: -
 TPGT: 12288
 ISID: 4000002a0000
 Connections: 1
 CID: 0
 IP address (Local): 10.4.52.158:32803
 IP address (Peer): 10.4.49.70:3260
 Discovery Method: SendTargets
 Login Parameters (Negotiated):
 Data Sequence In Order: yes
 Data PDU In Order: yes
 Default Time To Retain: 20
 Default Time To Wait: 2
 Error Recovery Level: 0
 First Burst Length: 65536
 Immediate Data: yes
 Initial Ready To Transfer (R2T): yes
 Max Burst Length: 262144
 Max Outstanding R2T: 1
 Max Receive Data Segment Length: 65536
 Max Connections: 1
 Header Digest: NONE
 Data Digest: NONE
iscsiadm list target -S iqn.2004-05.com.abcStorage:Tgt-1
Target: iqn.2004-05.com.abcStorage:Tgt-1
 Alias: -
 TPGT: 12288
 ISID: 4000002a0000
 Connections: 1
 LUN: 6
 Vendor: ABCStorage
 Product: iSCSI Target
 OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c3t1d0s2
 LUN: 5
 Vendor: ABCStorage
 Product: iSCSI Target
 OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c3t0d0s2
```

**EXAMPLE 8** Displaying Target Parameter Information

The following command uses the `list` subcommand to display target information for a specific target.

```
iscsiadm list target-param -v iqn.2004-05.com.abcStorage:Tgt-1
Target: iqn.2004-05.com.abcStorage:Tgt-1
Alias: -
Bi-directional Authentication: disabled
Authentication Type: NONE
Login Parameters (Default/Configured):
 Data Sequence In Order: yes/-
 Data PDU In Order: yes/-
 Default Time To Retain: 20/-
 Default Time To Wait: 2/-
 Error Recovery Level: 0/-
 First Burst Length: 65536/-
 Immediate Data: yes/-
 Initial Ready To Transfer (R2T): yes/-
 Max Burst Length: 262144/-
 Max Outstanding R2T: 1/-
 Max Receive Data Segment Length: 65536/-
 Max Connections: 1/-
 Header Digest: NONE/-
 Data Digest: NONE/-
Tunable Parameters (Default/Configured):
 Session Login Response Time: 60/-
 Maximum Connection Retry Time: 180/-
 Login Retry Time Interval: 60/-
Configured Sessions: 1
```

**EXAMPLE 9** Enabling Static Discovery Method

The following command uses the `modify` subcommand to enable the static discovery method.

```
iscsiadm modify discovery --static enable
```

**EXAMPLE 10** Setting the IP Address for the Radius Server

The following command uses the `modify` subcommand to set the IP address for the radius server, which will be used for CHAP authentication.

```
iscsiadm modify initiator --radius-server 10.0.0.1
```

**EXAMPLE 11** Setting the Node Name for Initiator

The following command uses the `modify` subcommand to set the node name for the initiator node.

```
iscsiadm modify initiator-node -N iqn.2004-10.com.SUN.host-1
```

**EXAMPLE 12** Changing Target Parameters

The following command uses the `modify` subcommand to change the target parameters for a specified target.

```
iscsiadm modify target-param -d none -h none eui.210000203787a693
```

**EXAMPLE 13** Removing a Discovery Address

The following command uses the `remove` subcommand to remove a discovery address.

```
iscsiadm remove discovery-address 10.0.0.1:3260
```

**EXAMPLE 14** Removing Target Parameters

The following command uses the `remove` subcommand to remove a set of target parameters.

```
iscsiadm remove target-param eui.210000203787a693
```

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWiscsiu      |
| Interface Stability | Committed       |

**See Also** [attributes\(5\)](#), [iscsi\(7D\)](#), [scsi\\_vhci\(7D\)](#)

*System Administration Guide: Devices and File Systems*

**Name** iscsitadm – administer iSCSI targets

**Synopsis** iscsitadm create [-? | --help] *object* [-? | --help]  
           [*options*] *operand*

iscsitadm modify [-? | --help] *object* [-? | --help]  
           [*options*] *operand*

iscsitadm delete [-? | --help] *object* [-? | --help]  
           [*options*] *operand*

iscsitadm list [-? | --help] *object* [-? | --help] [*options*]  
           *operand*

iscsitadm show [-? | --help] admin

iscsitadm show [-? | --help] *object* [-? | --help] [*options*]  
           [*operand*]

iscsitadm -? --help

**Description** The `iscsitadm` command enables you to manage Internet SCSI (iSCSI) target nodes. It is a companion to `iscsiadm(1M)`, which enables you to manage iSCSI initiator nodes.

The `iscsitadm` command has the following subcommands:

|                     |                                                       |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>create</code> | Creates a target using a local target as a reference. |
| <code>modify</code> | Modifies a target or a list of targets.               |
| <code>delete</code> | Deletes a target or a list of targets.                |
| <code>list</code>   | Lists names and information about targets.            |
| <code>show</code>   | Displays target-related statistics.                   |

The preceding subcommands work on the following objects:

|                        |                                                                                                                             |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>target</code>    | An iSCSI target node, or list of target nodes.                                                                              |
| <code>initiator</code> | An iSCSI initiator node, or list of initiator nodes.                                                                        |
| <code>admin</code>     | Stores administrative information, such as server locations and passwords.                                                  |
| <code>tpgt</code>      | Stands for TargetPortGroupTag. A number that represents a list of connections that an initiator can use for a given target. |
| <code>stats</code>     | Displays statistics; can accept interval and count values. Used only with the <code>show</code> subcommand.                 |

These objects are discussed in greater detail under the options descriptions for each subcommand.

As indicated in the SYNOPSIS, `iscsitadm` has two levels of help. If you invoke `-?` or `--help` following a subcommand, the command displays available operands, options, and objects. If you invoke an help option following an object, `iscsitadm` displays options and operands.

**Options** The `iscsitadm` options and objects are discussed below in the context of each subcommand. Note that the help options (`-?` or `--help`) are invoked as shown in the SYNOPSIS. See EXAMPLES.

**create Options** The following are the options and objects for the `create` subcommand:

```
target --size|-z lun_size [--lun number]
[--type disk|tape|raw] [--backing-store|-b pathname] local_name
```

Create a target using *local\_name* as a reference. *local\_name* is only used within the context `iscsitgtd`. `--size` is a multiplier and is specified as a number followed by a single letter. The letter is one of:

```
k kilobyte
m megabyte
g gigabyte
t terabyte
```

`--lun` specifies the logical unit number. `--type` specifies which type of emulation will occur for the LUN. `disk` and `tape` are the familiar devices. `raw` indicates that the emulator will use the uSCSI interface and pass the command blocks directly to and from the device. The use of `raw` also implies the option `--backing-store` will be entered. The argument to this option is the full pathname to the device node normally found in `/dev`. If you use `--backing-store`, the size of the store is determined by a SCSI `READ_CAPACITY` command or, if the backing store is a regular file, by `stat(2)`.

If *local\_name* already exists, a new target name is not generated for this LUN. The LUN is created within the *local\_name* storage hierarchy. You can use the `--backing-store` option to specify a different location for the data. If you use `--backing-store`, it is up to you to allocate actual storage instead of having the target create the data file.

```
initiator --iqn|-n iSCSI_node_name local_initiator
```

To use access control lists you must know the name of the initiator. Since the iSCSI initiator name can be quite long (223 bytes) and made up of a long list of numbers, it is best to enter this information once and then refer to the initiator using a simplified name of *local\_initiator*.

```
tpgt tpgt_number
```

If a host has multiple NICs, you might want to limit the number of connections that an initiator can use for a given target. To establish this limit, you must first create a TargetPortGroupTag (TPGT), which can be any number from 1 to 65535. Once this tag is created, the IP addresses of the NICs can be added to the TPGT, using the `modify`

subcommand. Then, the TPGT can itself be added to the target.

modify Options The following are the options and objects for the modify subcommand:

|                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| target --tpgt -p <i>local_tpgt local_target</i>       | Specifies one or more target portal groups to use when initiators reference <i>local_target</i> during discovery.                                                                                                                   |
| target --acl -l <i>local_initiator local_target</i>   | Adds to the list a local initiator that can access <i>local_target</i> . By adding an initiator to a target all initiators from that point on must be in the ACL.                                                                   |
| target --alias -a <i>TargetAlias local_target</i>     | Sets the alias if it was not done during the creation of the target or change an existing target's alias.                                                                                                                           |
| target --maxrecv -m <i>value local_target</i>         | Sets the MaxRecvDataSegmentLength, which can be any value between 512 to $(2^{24} - 1)$ . You can use this option to limit the amount of memory used by the target.                                                                 |
| initiator --chap-secret -C <i>local_initiator</i>     | Prompts the user to enter the value, using <a href="#">getpassphrase(3C)</a> . Associates the secret used for CHAP authentication during login with <i>local_initiator</i> .                                                        |
| initiator --chap-name -H <i>value local_initiator</i> | Specifies the CHAP username used during authentication.                                                                                                                                                                             |
| tpgt --ip-address -i <i>address tpgt_number</i>       | Adds the NIC's <i>address</i> to <i>tpgt_number</i> .                                                                                                                                                                               |
| admin --base-directory -d <i>directory</i>            | Sets the location of where to store the data files that represent the individual LUNs. This should be done before any other function is performed. Otherwise, an error will be generated when attempting to set a persistent value. |
| admin --chap-secret -C                                | Upon entering this option, you will be prompted to enter the value using <a href="#">getpassphrase(3C)</a> . For bidirectional authentication, this is the value used to generate a response to the initiator's challenge.          |
| admin --chap-name -H <i>value</i>                     | Specifies the user name portion of the CHAP protocol.                                                                                                                                                                               |

|                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| admin --radius-access -R enable   disable           | Enables or disables the use of the RADIUS server. Even with a RADIUS server address defined, the use of that server must be enabled. If the server becomes inaccessible and you need to fall back on configuration file access, you can use this option to disable the server.                    |
| admin --radius-server -r <i>hostname:port</i>       | Location of RADIUS server. <i>hostname</i> can be either a resolvable name or an IP address.                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| admin --radius-secret -P                            | Used to initiate contact with the RADIUS server. Interaction with server uses <a href="#">getpassphrase(3C)</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| admin --isns-access -S enable   disable             | Enables or disables access to an iSNS server. iSNS servers broadcast their locations.                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| admin --isns-server -s <i>hostname</i>              | Location of the iSNS server. “ <i>hostname</i> ” can be either a resolvable host name or an IP address.                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| admin --fast-write-ack -f enable   disable          | Enables or disables fast-write acknowledgment. You should enable this option only if a system is connected to the power grid through a UPS. Otherwise, data corruption could occur if power is lost and some writes that were acknowledged have not been completely flushed to the backing store. |
| delete Options                                      | The following are the options and objects for the delete subcommand:                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| target --lun -u <i>lun_number local_target</i>      | Removes information about the LUN identified by <i>lun_number</i> . This includes the data that is stored in the LUNs.                                                                                                                                                                            |
| target --acl -l <i>local_initiator local_target</i> | Remove access to <i>local_target</i> by <i>local_initiator</i> . If the initiator is currently logged into the target, this option sends an asynchronous event message to the initiator.                                                                                                          |
| target --tpgt -p <i>local_tpgt local_target</i>     | Removes the <i>local_tpgt</i> from <i>local_target</i> . Does not affect existing connections.                                                                                                                                                                                                    |



|                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>initiator --all -A <i>local_initiator</i></code>                     | Removes information about <i>local_initiator</i> . Does not affect current connections. This option search all targets, seeking those that reference <i>local_initiator</i> . On these, it performs the action defined by the command: |
| <code># iscsitadm delete target --acl <i>local_initiator target</i></code> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <code>tpgt --all -A <i>tpgt_number</i></code>                              | Removes from the system all knowledge of the target portal group identified by <i>tpgt_number</i> . This includes removal of the references by targets to this group.                                                                  |
| <code>tpgt --ip-address -i <i>address tpgt_number</i></code>               | Removes a NIC's address from the target portal group identified by <i>tpgt_number</i> . Does not affect current connections.                                                                                                           |

**list Options** The following are the options and objects for the `list` subcommand:

|                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>target [--verbose] [<i>local_target</i>]</code>        | By default, displays a list of target local names followed by the iSCSI TargetName, as it was created. By specifying <i>local_target</i> , the same information is displayed for that target and can be used to validate the name of <i>local_target</i> . With the <code>--verbose</code> option, information about the target's LUNs and current connections is displayed. |
| <code>target [-v -s <i>num</i>] [<i>local_target</i>]</code> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|                                                              | You can use the <a href="#">iostat(1M)</a> command to obtain information on the number of SCSI commands issued and sectors read and written.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <code>initiator [--verbose -v] <i>local_initiator</i></code> | Displays detailed information about <i>local_initiator</i> . Among this data is CHAP information, what target portal groups this initiator belongs to, and any available connections.                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <code>tpgt [--verbose -v] <i>tpgt_number</i></code>          | Displays detailed information about target group identified by <i>tpgt_number</i> . Among this data is the list of NICs that are a part of this target group.                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

**show Options** The following are the options and objects for the `show` subcommand:

**admin**

Displays a list of administrative information, including the base directory used by the target, CHAP, RADIUS, iSNS, and if fast writes are enabled.

**stats** [ **--interval** | **-I seconds** [ **--count** | **-N value** ] ] [ *local\_target* ]

Displays statistics for all available targets, unless you specify *local\_target*, in which case, displays statistics only for *local\_target*. If you use **--interval**, displays statistics for an interval specified by *seconds*. If you do not specify **--count**, the display continues until you enter a Control-C.

### Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Invoking Help

All of the commands shown below are valid ways of invoking help.

```
iscsitadm -?
iscsitadm modify -?
iscsitadm modify target -?
iscsitadm --help
iscsitadm create --help
iscsitadm create tpgt --help
```

### **EXAMPLE 2** Establishing Backing Store

The following command establishes the default location for the backing store. In addition to the backing store, certain configuration files will be stored in the same location.

```
iscsitadm modify admin --base-directory /zfs/data/targets
```

The short form of the **--base-directory** option is **-d**.

### **EXAMPLE 3** Simplest-Case Target Creation

The following command creates a target that will emulate an LBA device that has 10 GB of storage available. With the base directory set up and as well as a single target, it is possible to use the system as an iSCSI target. Note that because the LUN is not specified on the command line, it reverts to the default, 0.

```
iscsitadm create target --size 10g playarea
```

The short form of the **--size** option is **-z**.

### **EXAMPLE 4** Creating with Both Size and Backing Store

The following **iscsitadm create** command specifies LUN size and a backing store location. The result of this command is that the daemon will create a LUN file at the named location, of the specified size (20 GB).

```
iscsitadm create target -z 20g -b /zfs/mirror/data/payroll payroll
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Creating with Both Size and Backing Store (Continued)

A target such as the one created by the preceding command might be useful, for example, when most of the LUN can be created in a default area, using whatever redundancy is provided by the underlying file system. Alternatively, you might want to create a special LUN on a higher speed storage medium or one with better failover characteristics.

The long form of the `-z` option is `--size`. The long form of the `-b` option is `--backing-store`

**EXAMPLE 5** Specifying a Local Name for a SCSI Initiator

Consider that you want to restrict access to the `payroll` target, created in the previous example, to a limited set of initiators. Because the initiator names can be quite long (and therefore prone to be entered incorrectly), you create a local name for each initiator, as in the command below.

```
iscsitadm create initiator --iqn \
iqn.1986-03.com.example[node name continues...] multistrada
```

The short form of the `--iqn` option is `-q`.

**EXAMPLE 6** Granting an Initiator Access to a Target

Upon completion of the command below, only the initiator `multistrada` is allowed to log into the daemon and access the `payroll` target. This presents a potential gap in security, which is addressed in the following example.

```
iscsitadm modify target --acl multistrada payroll
```

The short form of the `--acl` option is `-l`.

**EXAMPLE 7** Adding CHAP Secret and Name for an Initiator

The initiator is allowed to identify itself. Because of this, it is prudent to add a CHAP secret and name for an initiator. This is accomplished with the following command.

```
iscsitadm modify initiator -C multistrada
```

The preceding command prompts you for a secret to use. This must be the same secret that was setup on the initiator with the local name of `multistrada`. If it is not, the target daemon will issue a challenge to `multistrada` when it attempts to login. A non-matching response will cause the target to drop the connection. If you have many targets that require authentication, it is probably best to setup a RADIUS server to administer the secrets.

The long form of the `-C` option is `--chap-secret`.

**EXAMPLE 8** Displaying Target Information

The following commands displays information about iSCSI targets.

```
iscsitadm list target
Target: vol0
 iSCSI Name: iqn.1986-03.com.sun:01:00093d12170c.434c5250.vol0
Target: disk0
 iSCSI Name: iqn.1986-03.com.sun:01:00093d12170c.434c6f05.disk0
```

The following command differs from the preceding in that it uses the verbose (-v) option and it specifies a single target.

```
iscsitadm list target -v vol0
Target: vol0
 iSCSI Name: iqn.1986-03.com.sun:01:00093d12170c.434c5250.vol0
 ACL list:
 TPGT list:
 LUN information:
 LUN: 0
 GUID: 010000093d12170c00002a00434c5251
 VID: SUN
 PID: SOLARIS
 Type: raw
 Size: 0x1400000 blocks
```

**EXAMPLE 9** Displaying Administrative Information

The following command uses the show subcommand to display administrative information.

```
iscsitadm show admin
iscsitadm:
 Base Directory: /zfs/stress/play/targets
 CHAP Name: Not set
 RADIUS Access: Not set
 RADIUS Server: Not set
 iSNS Access: Not set
 Fast Write ACK: Not set
```

**EXAMPLE 10** Displaying Statistics

The following command uses the show subcommand to display statistics.

```
iscsitadm show stats
 operations bandwidth
device read write read write

vol0 0 0 0K 0K
```

EXAMPLE 10 Displaying Statistics (Continued)

```
disk0 0 0 0K 0K
```

**Exit Status** 0 Command successful.

>0 An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWiscsitgtu   |
| Interface Stability | Volatile        |

**See Also** [iostat\(1M\)](#), [iscsiadm\(1M\)](#), [getpassphrase\(3C\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [rbac\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

**Notes** This command set is considered to be experimental. Future releases, both minor and micro, might introduce incompatible changes to the command set. A future release will stabilize the command set. Any future changes in stability level will be reflected in the ATTRIBUTES section of this man page.

The iSCSI Target daemon, `iscsitgtd`, is managed by the service management facility ([smf\(5\)](#)), under the fault management resource identifier (FMRI):

```
svc:/system/iscsitgt:default
```

Use `iscsitadm` to perform administrative actions, such as are performed by the `create`, `modify`, and `delete` subcommands, on iSCSI Target properties. Such actions require that you become superuser or assume the Primary Administrator role. See [rbac\(5\)](#).

**Name** iscsitgtd – iSCSI Target daemon

**Synopsis** iscsitgtd [-d *door\_file*]

**Description** The `iscsitgtd` daemon process implements the iSCSI configuration, control, and data paths, providing iSCSI Target Mode support in the Solaris operating system.

The configuration and control path is by means of the Solaris Doors subsystem (see [door\\_create\(3C\)](#)), and provides the interface between the iSCSI Target administration utility, [iscsitadm\(1M\)](#), persistence configuration data stored in the Service Configuration Facility (SCF) of the service management facility (SMF). See [smf\(5\)](#).

The data path managed by the daemon exists between TPC/IP port 3260, and the files, block devices, or raw SCSI devices configured as iSCSI target LUNs.

**Options** The following options is supported:

-d *door\_file*

Override the location of the Solaris Door used for configuration from `/var/run/iscsi_tgt_door` to a door of one's choosing.

Solaris Configuration Facility (SCF) The following options are supported:

PGR-basedir

SCSI-3 PGR base directory for ZVOL failover. Set to `/`.

daemonize

Run as Solaris daemon process. Either `true` or `false`.

dbg-lvl

Runtime debug level to console.

qlog-lvl

Runtime logging to `/tmp/target_log`.

The following are the logging values, in hexadecimal.

```
0x00001 - Connection errors
0x00002 - Connection login errors
0x00004 - Connection Non-I/O errors
0x00008 - Connection I/O errors
0x00010 - Session errors
0x00020 - Session login errors
0x00040 - Session Non-I/O errors
0x00080 - Session I/O errors
0x00100 - Emulation errors
0x00200 - Emulation Non-I/O errors
0x00400 - Emulation I/O errors
0x01000 - General errors
0x02000 - General details
0x04000 - iSNS details
```

0x10000 - SCSI-3 PGR errors  
 0x20000 - SCSI-3 PGR Non-I/O errors  
 0x40000 - SCSI-3 PGR I/O errors

**Examples** EXAMPLE1 Listing All iscsitgt Values

The following commands lists all iscsitgt values.

```
svccfg -s iscsitgt listprop iscsitgt
```

EXAMPLE2 Setting SCF Options

The following command sets the PGR-basedir option.

```
svccfg -s iscsitgt setprop iscsitgt/PGR-basedir = astring: "/"
```

The following command sets the dbg-lvl option.

```
svccfg -s iscsitgt setprop iscsitgt/dbg-lvl = integer: 0x80ffffff
```

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWiscsitgtu   |
| Interface Stability | Volatile        |

**See Also** [iscsitadm\(1M\)](#), [door\\_create\(3C\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

**Notes** The iSCSI Target daemon, `iscsitgd`, is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the fault management resource identifier:

```
svc:/system/iscsitgt:default
```

**Name** isns – Internet Storage Name Service

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/isns

**Description** The Internet Storage Name Service (iSNS) provides consolidated discovery services for Internet SCSI (iSCSI) and Internet Fibre Channel Protocol (iFCP) devices in an IP network. iSNS uses a client/server mechanism: servers store configuration information for clients, and provide that information upon a client's request. IETF RFC 4171 describes the protocols between the server and client.

This man page provides a summary of the Solaris iSNS server implementation. The current implementation does not support iFCP devices.

Solaris iSNS server is implemented as the daemon `isns`, which binds to the well-known port 3205 to service client requests. The daemon is started by the service management facility (`smf(5)`), using the fault management resource identifier (FMRI):

```
svc:/network/isns_server
```

Use `svcadm(1M)` to enable `isns`. Enabling the service means that it starts and runs automatically whenever the operating system is booted. The state of service can be displayed with the `svcs(1)` command.

The service properties listed below can be managed using `svccfg(1M)`. The default value is assigned per RFC 4171 and implementation choice.

`data_store_location`

Configuration data store location. The default location is `/etc/isns/isnsdata.xml`.

`ESI_retry_threshold_count`

Entity Status Inquiry retry threshold counter. The default count is 3.

`Management_SCNs_Enabled`

Boolean that determines whether Management State Change Notification is enabled. The default is yes.

`Authorized_Control_Nodes`

Control node names.

After changing a property value, you must use `svcadm(1M)` `refresh` to enable `isns` to recognize the new value. If you change the `data_store_location` property, you must enter a `svcadm restart` command for the change to take effect.

RFC 4171 defines the default discovery domain, the default domain set, and the “Default DD/DDS” setting with the intent of managing clients that have not been assigned to any user-defined discovery domain. The server adopts the following behaviors with respect to the default discovery domain and domain set:

- An unassigned client is added to the default discovery domain. A newly registered client or a client that was removed from its last discovery domain membership is considered to be an unassigned client.



- When a client gets assigned to a user-defined discovery domain, the server will remove the client from the default discovery domain.
- The default discovery domain set is allowed to be administratively activated or deactivated in order to let the administrator control discovery among clients in the default discovery domain.
- It is not allowed to administratively add a client to the default discovery domain, nor to administratively add a user-defined discovery domain to the default discovery domain set.
- The default state of the Default discovery domain set is inactive.

The `isns` server supports certain [rbac\(5\)](#) authorizations that allow you to administer `isns` activity. These authorizations include the following [auth\\_attr\(4\)](#) privileges:

`solaris.isnsmgr.write`

Required to create a discovery domain or domain set, to enable/disable a discovery domain set and to change grouping of iSNS clients in a discovery domain or grouping of discovery domains in a discovery domain set.

`solaris.smf.manage.isns`

Required to manage the `isns` server through the [smf\(5\)](#).

`solaris.smf.value.isns`

Required to change the SMF service properties associated with `isns`.

The iSNS Server Management profile (see [prof\\_attr\(4\)](#)) includes all of the preceding authorizations. See [rbac\(5\)](#) for an overview of roles and authorizations.

**Options** There are no options supported by the `isns` daemon.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Starting an `isns` Server

The following command starts the `isns` server.

```
svcadm enable svc:/network/isns_server
```

EXAMPLE 2 Stopping an `isns` Server

The following command stops the `isns` server.

```
svcadm disable svc:/network/isns_server
```

EXAMPLE 3 Changing an `isns` Property

The following sequence of commands changes the value of the `ESI_retry_threshold_count` property.

```
svccfg -s svc:/network/isns_server setprop \
config/ESI_retry_threshold_count = 6
svcadm refresh svc:/network/isns_server
```

**Files** /usr/sbin/isns  
iSNS daemon binary.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWisnsr       |
| Interface Stability | Standard        |

**See Also** [svcs\(1\)](#), [isnsadm\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [auth\\_attr\(4\)](#), [prof\\_attr\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [rbac\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

**Notes** It is strongly recommended that you restart the server (`svcadm restart`) after a service property is changed. This allows the server to apply a uniform setting for existing and new clients.

A control node, as described in RFC 4171, is not required to administer the server. Control node operations can be achieved through the [isnsadm\(1M\)](#) command interface on the local host. For example, `isnsadm` enables you to create a discovery domain and a discovery domain set and to add a member to it, in order to create discovery domain and discovery domain set associations.

**Name** isnsadm – administer the internet Storage Name Server (iSNS) server

**Synopsis** *isnsadm options*

*isnsadm subcommand [subcommand\_options] [operand]*

**Description** The *isnsadm* command is the command-line interface to the Internet Storage Name Service (iSNS) server. *isnsadm* comprises a set of subcommands, described in their own section, each of which accomplishes one of the iSNS server management functions.

For any operations that will change the iSNS configurations the `solaris.isnsmgr.write` authorization is required. Refer to [isns\(1M\)](#). For read operations, the command does not require special authorizations.

*isnsadm* has a set of general options and a set of subcommand-specific options. The first category is described under `OPTIONS`; the second category is described in the context of each subcommand description.

**Options** The following options are supported:

-?, --help

Displays context help. Stops interpretation of any subsequent arguments.

-V, --version

Displays version information. Stops interpretation of any subsequent arguments.

**Operands** The following operands are used by one or more *isnsadm* subcommands.

*iscsi-node-name*

iSCSI target or iSCSI initiator symbolic name. A string with a maximum length of 223 characters.

*discovery-domain-name*

Discovery domain symbolic name. A string with a maximum length of 256 characters.

*discovery-domain-set-name*

Discovery domain set symbolic name. A string with a maximum length of 256 characters.

**Subcommands** The *isnsadm* command supports the subcommands described below.

`add-dd` The `add-dd` subcommand adds a discovery domain to a discovery domain set.

The `add-dd` subcommand has the following syntax:

```
isnsadm add-dd option discovery-domain-name, ...
```

`add-dd` has the following option:

-s *discovery-domain-set-name*

Specifies a discovery domain set.

**add-node** The **add-node** subcommand adds a node to a specified discovery-domain.

The **add-node** subcommand has the following syntax:

```
isnsadm add-node option iscsi-node-name,...
```

**add-node** has the following options:

**-d, -dd** *discovery-domain-name*  
Specifies a discovery domain.

**create-dd** The **create-dd** subcommand creates a discovery domain with the name you specify.

The **create-dd** subcommand has the following syntax:

```
isnsadm create-dd discovery-domain-name, ...
```

**create-dd** has no options.

**create-dd-set** The **create-dd-set** subcommand creates a discovery domain set with the name you specify.

The **create-dd-set** subcommand has the following syntax:

```
isnsadm create-dd-set discovery-domain-set-name, ...
```

**create-dd-set** has no options.

**delete-dd** The **delete-dd** subcommand deletes a discovery domain of the name you specify.

The **delete-dd** subcommand has the following syntax:

```
isnsadm delete-dd discovery-domain-name, ...
```

**delete-dd** has no options.

**delete-dd-set** The **delete-dd-set** subcommand deletes a discovery domain set of the name you specify.

The **delete-dd-set** subcommand has the following syntax:

```
isnsadm delete-dd-set discovery-domain-set-name, ...
```

**delete-dd-set** has no options.

**disable-dd-set** The **disable-dd-set** subcommand disables a discovery domain set.

The **disable-dd-set** subcommand has the following syntax:

```
isnsadm disable-dd-set discovery-domain-set-name, ...
```

**disable-dd-set** has no options.

`enable-dd-set` The `enable-dd-set` subcommand enables a discovery domain set.

The `enable-dd-set` subcommand has the following syntax:

```
isnsadm enable-dd-set discovery-domain-set-name, ...
```

`enable-dd-set` has no options.

`list-dd` The `list-dd` subcommand displays information about discovery domains. If no operand is specified, it lists all discovery domains that currently exist on the iSNS server.

The `list-dd` subcommand has the following syntax:

```
isnsadm list-dd [option] [discovery-domain-name, ...]
```

`list-dd` supports the following option:

`-v, --verbose`

Displays the member contents of the discovery domain(s).

`list-dd-set` The `list-dd-set` subcommand lists the discovery domain sets, both enabled and disabled, that exist on the iSNS server. Note that there is no `dd-set` registration. If no operand is specified, it lists all of the discovery domain sets.

The `list-dd-set` subcommand has the following syntax:

```
isnsadm list-dd-set [option] [discovery-domain-set-name, ...]
```

`list-dd-set` supports the following option:

`-v, --verbose`

Shows all discovery domains within the discovery domain set.

`list-node` The `list-node` subcommand displays information about nodes that are currently registered with the iSNS server or that are not registered and belong to non-default discovery-domain(s). For the latter case, the node has its type field shown as unknown. If no operand is specified, `list-node` lists all nodes known by the iSNS server.

The `list-node` subcommand has the following syntax:

```
isnsadm list-node [options] [iscsi-node-name, ...]
```

`list-node` supports the following options:

`-t, --target`

Filters the list to display only iSCSI target nodes.

`-i, --initiator`

Filters the list to display only iSCSI initiator nodes.

`-v, --verbose`

Displays details about a node. Without this option, only the name, alias, and type information are displayed.

`modify-dd` The `modify-dd` subcommand modifies an attribute of a specified discovery domain.

The `modify-dd` subcommand has the following syntax:

```
isnsadm modify-dd option discovery-domain-name
```

`modify-dd` has the following option:

```
-n discovery-domain-name
```

Specifies the new name of a discovery domain to be applied to an existing discovery-domain.

`modify-dd-set` The `modify-dd-set` subcommand modifies a discovery domain set.

The `modify-dd-set` subcommand has the following syntax:

```
isnsadm modify-dd-set option discovery-domain-set-name
```

`modify-dd-set` has the following option:

```
-n discovery-domain-set-name
```

Specifies the new name of a discovery domain set to be applied to an existing discovery-domain-set.

`remove-dd` The `remove-dd` subcommand removes the association with a specified discovery domain set.

The `remove-dd` subcommand has the following syntax:

```
isnsadm remove-dd option discovery-domain-name, ...
```

`remove-dd` has the following option:

```
-s discovery-domain-set-name
```

Specifies the discovery domain set from which the discovery domain will be removed.

`remove-node` The `remove-node` subcommand removes a node.

The `remove-node` subcommand has the following syntax:

```
isnsadm remove-node option iscsi-node-name, ...
```

`remove-node` has the following option:

```
-d discovery-domain-name
```

Specifies the discovery domain from which a node will be removed.

`show-config` The `show-config` subcommand displays the iSNS server administrative settings. Note that the setting can be modified by means of the service management facility (see [smf\(5\)](#)). Refer to [isns\(1M\)](#).

The `show-config` subcommand has the following syntax:

```
isnsadm show-config
```

show-config has no options.

### Examples EXAMPLE 1 Displaying Clients

The following use of the list-node subcommand displays clients.

```
isnsadm list-node -v
iSCSI Name: iqn.1986-03.com.sun:01:000e0c9f10da.45173FEA.engr
 Alias: STK5320_NAS
 Type: Target
 Network Entity: SE5310
 Portal: 172.20.57.95:3260
 Portal Group: 1
 Portal: 172.20.56.95:3260
 Portal Group: 1
 DD Name: Default
iSCSI Name: iqn.1986-03.com.sun:01:000e0c9f10da.454F00A2.acct
 Alias:
 Type: Target
 Network Entity: SE5310
 Portal: 172.20.57.95:3260
 Portal Group: 1
 Portal: 172.20.56.95:3260
 Portal Group: 1
 DD Name: Default
iSCSI Name: iqn.1986-03.com.sun:01:e00000000000.46fd8e2b
 Alias: host-x2100
 Type: Initiator
 Network Entity: iqn.1986-03.com.sun:01:e00000000000.46fd8e2b
 Portal: 172.20.236.123:58530
 Portal Group: 1
 DD Name: Default
```

### EXAMPLE 2 Displaying a Discovery Domain

The following use of the list-dd subcommand displays discovery domains.

```
isnsadm list-dd -v
DD name: Default
 DD set(s): Default
 iSCSI Name: iqn.1986-03.com.sun:01:000e0c9f10da.45173FEA.engr
 iSCSI Name: iqn.1986-03.com.sun:01:000e0c9f10da.454F00A2.acct
 iSCSI name: iqn.1986-03.com.sun:01:e00000000000.46fd8e2b
 DD name: acct-dd
 DD name: engineering-dd
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Adding a Node

The following use of the `add-node` subcommand adds a node to a discovery domain, creating a discovery domain membership.

```
isnsadm add-node -d engineering-dd \
iqn.1986-03.com.sun:01:000e0c9f10da.454F00A2.engr
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Removing a Node

The following use of the `remove-node` subcommand removes a node from a discovery domain, thereby removing a discovery domain membership.

```
isnsadm remove-node -d acct-dd \
iqn.1986-03.com.sun:01:000e0c9f10da.454F00A2.acct
```

**EXAMPLE 5** Creating a Discovery Domain Set

The following use of the `create-dd-set` subcommand creates a discovery domain set.

```
isnsadm create-dd-set operation-dd-set
```

**EXAMPLE 6** Displaying a Discovery Domain Set

The following use of the `list-dd-set` subcommand displays discovery domain sets.

```
isnsadm list-dd-set -v
DD Set name: Default
 State: Disabled
 DD Name: Default
DD Set name: operation-dd-set
 State: Disabled
```

**EXAMPLE 7** Adding a Discovery Domain

The following use of the `add-dd` subcommand adds a discovery domain to a discovery domain set.

```
isnsadm add-dd -s operation-dd-set engineering-dd
```

**EXAMPLE 8** Displaying a Discovery Domain Set

The following use of the `list-dd-set` displays the attributes of a discovery domain set.

```
isnsadm list-dd-set
DD Set name: Default
 State: Disabled
```



**EXAMPLE 8** Displaying a Discovery Domain Set (Continued)

```

DD Name: Default
DD Set name: operation-dd-set
State: Disabled
DD Name: engineering-dd

```

**EXAMPLE 9** Enabling a Discovery Domain Set

The following use of the `enable-dd-set` subcommand enables a discovery domain set.

```
isnsadm enable-dd-set Default
```

**EXAMPLE 10** Disabling a Discovery Domain Set

The following use of the `disable-dd-set` subcommand disables a discovery domain set.

```
isnsadm disable-dd-set Default
```

**EXAMPLE 11** Displaying Administrative Settings

The following use of the `show-config` subcommand displays current administrative settings.

```
isnsadm show-config
Data Store Location: /etc/isns/isnsdata.xml
Entity Status Inquiry Non-Response Threshold: 3
Management SCN Enabled: yes
Authorized Control Node Names: -

```

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWisnsadm     |
| Interface Stability | Volatile        |

**See Also** [iscsiadm\(1M\)](#), [iscsitadm\(1M\)](#), [isns\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

**Notes** When a subcommand is invoked with multiple operands and there are failures on one or more, but not all, operands, `isnsadm` displays a generic message indicating partial failure, with list of failed operands. An error on a specific operand can be found by issuing the same subcommand on the failing operand.

**Name** itadm – administer iSCSI targets

**Synopsis** `itadm create-target [-a,--auth-method radius | chap | none | default] [-s,--chap-secret] [-S,--chap-secret-file path] [-u,--chap-user chap-user-name] [-n,--node-name target_node_name] [-l,--alias alias] [-t,--tpg tpg-name [, tpg-name]]`

`itadm modify-target [-a,--auth-method radius | chap | none | default] [-s,--chap-secret] [-S,--chap-secret-file path] [-u,--chap-user chap-user-name] [-n,--node-name new_target_node_name] [-l,--alias alias] [-t,--tpg tpg-name [, tpg-name]] target_node_name`

`itadm delete-target [-f,--force] target_node_name`

`itadm list-target [-v,--verbose] [target_node_name]`

`itadm create-tpg tpg_name IP-address[:port] [IP-address[:port]]...`

`itadm list-tpg [-v,--verbose] [tpg_name]`

`itadm delete-tpg [-f,--force] tpg_name`

`itadm create-initiator [-s,--chap-secret] [-S,--chap-secret-file path] [-u,--chap-user chap-user-name] initiator_node_name`

`itadm modify-initiator [-s,--chap-secret] [-S,--chap-secret-file path] [-u,--chap-user chap-user-name] initiator_node_name`

`itadm list-initiator [-v,--verbose] initiator_node_name`

`itadm delete-initiator initiator_node_name`

`itadm modify-defaults [-a,--auth-method radius | chap | none] [-r,--radius-server IP-address[:port]] [-d,--radius-secret] [-D,--radius-secret-file path] [-i,--isns enable | disable] [-I,--isns-server IP-address[:port] [, IP-address[:port]]]`

`itadm list-defaults`

**Description** The `itadm` command manages Internet SCSI (iSCSI) target nodes within the SCSI Target Mode Framework described in [stmfadm\(1M\)](#) and [libstmf\(3LIB\)](#). This allows the iSCSI initiators to access STMF logical units using the iSCSI protocol. In addition to iSCSI target nodes, `itadm` manages two other classes of managed objects: iSCSI Target Portal Groups, and iSCSI Initiator Node Contexts.

`itadm` is implemented as a set of subcommands with options and operands for each subcommand. These subcommands are described in their own section, below. In addition to its subcommands, `itadm` has a help command, which displays the utility's usage information. The help command is invoked with the `-?` option.

**iSCSI Target Portal Groups** An iSCSI Target Network Portal is an IP address and TCP port that can be used by an initiator node to connect to an iSCSI target. A collection of these portals is called a Target Portal Group (TPG). You can use a TPG to limit access to an iSCSI target. Use the `itadm modify -t`

command to bind a specific iSCSI target to the TPG. An iSCSI listener is created on each IP address that belongs to the TPG, and listens for connections to the iSCSI target.

A TPG is identified by a unique name provided when the TPG is created. A numerical “Target Portal Group Tag” from the range 2-65535 is automatically generated when the TPG is created. The Target Portal Group Tag 1 is reserved for the “default” target portal group that is used when no explicit Target Portal Groups are set on the target. The portal for the default TPG matches requests from all network interfaces on port 3260.

**iSCSI Initiator Node Contexts** Certain operations such as authentication by means of Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP) require parameters associated with a remote iSCSI Initiator Node. These parameters are associated with an iSCSI Initiator Node Context. An iSCSI Initiator Node Context is identified by its Initiator Node Name, formatted in either IQN or EUI format (see RFC 3720). For example:

```
iqn.1986-03.com.sun:01:e00000000000.47d55444
eui.02004567A425678D
```

**Specifying IP Addresses** A number of `itadm` subcommands require that you specify one or more IP addresses with optional port numbers. For IPv4, use standard dotted decimal notation. For IPv6, enclose addresses in square brackets. The following are example specifications.

```
IPv4: 10.2.4.1
 10.2.4.1:3260
IPv6: [1080:0:0:0:8:800:200C:417A]
 [1080:0:0:0:8:800:200C:417A]:3260
```

**Sub-commands** The following are the `itadm` subcommands with their options.

```
itadm create-target [-a,--auth-method radius | chap | none | default]
 [-s,--chap-secret]
 [-S,--chap-secret-file path] [-u,--chap-user chap-user-name]
 [-n,--node-name target_node_name] [-l,--alias alias]
 [-t,--tpg tpg-name[,tpg-name,...]]
```

Create a iSCSI target with the specified options. Options are as follows.

**-a,--auth-method radius | chap | none | default**  
Specifies the authentication method to use for the target. Valid values are `radius`, `chap`, and `none`. `chap` indicates that initiators connecting to this target must be authenticated using the Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP). `radius` indicates initiators should also be authenticated by means of CHAP but the required authentication parameters should be obtained from a central RADIUS server (see the `radius-server` and `radius-secret` options). `none` means that no authentication is required to connect to the target. `default` means the target will use the global setting of this property. (See the `modify-defaults` subcommand.)

**-s,--chap-secret**  
The CHAP secret to send during mutual CHAP authentication. There is no default for this property. Maximum length is 255 characters; minimum required length is 12 characters.

- S,--chap-secret-file *path*  
Path to a temporary file containing the CHAP secret as described in the -s option.
- u,--chap-user *chap-user-name*  
Specifies the CHAP username for a target for use in mutual CHAP authentication. This value is allowed only for targets, cannot be set globally, and is used only when the initiator node is configured to use mutual CHAP authentication. If no value is specified then the target node name is used as the username. See [iscsiadm\(1M\)](#).
- n,--node-name *target\_node\_name*  
An iSCSI Target Node is identified by its Target Node Name, formatted in either IQN or EUI format (see RFC 3720). This option establishes that name.
- l,--alias *alias*  
An alternate identifier associated with a target node. The identifier does not need to be unique.
- t,--tpg *tpg-name[,tpg-name,...]*  
A list of Target Portal Group (TPG) identifiers that specifies the TPGs that an initiator can use to access a specific target or the keyword `default`. If `default` is specified, the target will use the default portal, `INADDR_ANY:3260`.

```

itadm modify-target [-a,--auth-method radius | chap | none | default]
 [-s,--chap-secret] [-S,--chap-secret-file path]
 [-u,--chap-user chap-user-name] [-n,--node-name new_tgt_node_name]
 [-l,--alias alias] [-t,--tpg tpg-name[,tpg-name]] target_node_name

```

Modify an iSCSI target according to the specified options. Options are as follows.

- a,--auth-method `radius | chap | none | default`  
As described under the `create-target` subcommand, above.
- s,--chap-secret  
As described under the `create-target` subcommand, above.
- S,--chap-secret-file *path*  
As described under the `create-target` subcommand, above.
- u,--chap-user *chap-user-name*  
As described under the `create-target` subcommand, above. To remove an explicitly set CHAP username use `-u none`.
- n,--node-name *target\_node\_name*  
Renames the target. See also the description of `-n` under the `create-target` subcommand, above.
- l,--alias *alias*  
As described under the `create-target` subcommand, above. To remove an explicitly set alias use `-l none`.

-t,--tpg *tpg-name*[,*tpg-name*,...]

As described under the `create-target` subcommand, above.

itadm list-target itadm list-target [-v,--verbose] [*target\_node\_name*]

List information about the configured targets. If *target\_node\_name* is specified, list only the information for that target. Option is as follows.

-v,--verbose

Verbose mode.

itadm delete-target itadm delete-target [-f,--force] *target\_node\_name*

Delete the target specified by *target\_node\_name*. The target must be off line before it can be deleted. Option is as follows.

-f,--force

If the target persists in an online state, this option attempts to offline the target before deleting it.

itadm create-tpg itadm create-tpg *tpg\_name IP-address[:port]...*

Create an iSCSI target portal group made up of the specified portals and assign it the identifier *tpg\_name*. Each portal is an IP address and port pair. IPv4 portals are specified in dotted address notation, for example, 172.31.255.255. IPv6 portal addresses must be enclosed in square brackets.

This subcommand has no options.

itadm list-tpg itadm list-tpg [-v,--verbose] [*tpg\_name*]

List information about the configured target portal group. If *tpg\_name* is specified then list only the information about the target portal group associated with that *tpg\_name*. Option is as follows.

-v,--verbose

Verbose mode.

itadm delete-tpg itadm delete-tpg [-f,--force] *tpg\_name*

Delete the target portal group associated with *tpg\_name*. Option is as follows.

-f,--force

If the TPG is associated with any targets, the request to delete will be denied unless this option is specified.

itadm create-initiator itadm create-initiator [-s,--chap-secret] [-S,--chap-secret-file *path*]  
create-initiator [-u,--chap-user *chap-user-name*] *initiator\_node\_name*

Configure parameters associated with the remote initiator named *initiator\_node\_name*. Options are as follows.

`-s,--chap-secret`

As described under the `create-target` subcommand, above.

`-S,--chap-secret-file path`

As described under the `create-target` subcommand, above.

`-u,--chap-user chap-user-name`

Specifies the CHAP username for an initiator, for use in CHAP authentication. If no value is specified then the initiator node name is used as the username.

```
itadm modify-initiator [-s,--chap-secret] [-S,--chap-secret-file path]
 [-u,--chap-user chap-user-name] initiator_node_name
```

Modify parameters associated with the remote initiator named *initiator\_node\_name*. Options are as follows.

`-s,--chap-secret`

As described under the `create-target` subcommand, above.

`-S,--chap-secret-file path`

As described under the `create-target` subcommand, above.

`-u,--chap-user chap-user-name`

Specifies the CHAP username for an initiator, for use in CHAP authentication. If no value is specified then the initiator node name is used as the username.

```
itadm delete-initiator initiator_node_name
```

Delete parameters associated with the remote initiator named *initiator\_node\_name*. This subcommand has no options.

```
itadm list-initiator [-v,--verbose] initiator_node_name
```

List parameters associated with the initiator named *initiator\_node\_name*. Option is as follows.

`-v,--verbose`

Verbose mode.

```
itadm modify-defaults [-a,--auth-method radius | chap | none]
 [-r,--radius-server IP-address[:port]] [-d,--radius-secret]
 [-D,--radius-secret-file path][-i,--isns enable | disable]
 [-I,--isns-server IP-address[:port]][,IP-address[:port]]
```

Modify default parameters. Options are as follows.

`-a,--auth-method radius | chap | none`

Specifies the default authentication method to use for all targets. Valid values are `radius`, `chap`, and `none`. `chap` indicates that initiators connecting to this target must be authenticated using Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP). `radius` indicates initiators should also be authenticated by means of CHAP, but the required authentication parameters should be obtained from a central RADIUS server. (See

--radius-server and --radius-secret options.) none means that no authentication is required to connect to the target. Individual targets can override this global setting using the -a option of the create-target and modify-target subcommands.

-d,--radius-secret

RADIUS Shared Secret for centralized CHAP authentication.

-D,--radius-secret-file *path*

Path to a temporary file containing the CHAP secret as described in the -d option.

-i,--sns enable | disable

Specifies whether targets should be registered with the set of defined iSCSI Name Service (iSNS) servers.

-I,--isns-server *IP-address[:port][,IP-address[:port],...]*

Defines a list of iSNS servers with which iSCSI target nodes will be registered when the isns option associated with the respective target is set. Up to eight iSNS servers can be specified. To remove all iSNS servers, use -I none.

-r,--radius-server *IP-address[:port]*

Specify the IP address of the RADIUS server used for centralized CHAP authentication.

```
itadm itadm list-defaults
list-defaults
```

List information about the default properties. This subcommand has no options.

### Examples EXAMPLE 1 Creating a Target

The following command creates a target.

```
itadm create-target
Target iqn.1986-03.com.sun:02:72e1b181-7bce-c0e6-851e-ec0d8c714b7a
successfully created
```

### EXAMPLE 2 Creating a Target with a Specific Name

The following command creates a target with a specific IQN.

```
itadm create-target -n eui.20387ab8943ef7548
or:
itadm create-target \
-n iqn.1986-03.com.sun:02:a9a366f8-cc2b-f291-840948c7f29e
```

### EXAMPLE 3 Changing a Name

The following command changes an IQN for an existing target.

```
itadm modify-target -n eui.20387ab8943ef7548 \
iqn.1986-03.com.sun:02:a9a366f8-909b-cc2b-f291-840948c7f29e
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Setting up CHAP Authentication

The following command sets up CHAP authentication for a target using the default CHAP username.

```
itadm modify-initiator -s iqn.1986-03.com.sun:01:e00000000000.47d55444
Enter CHAP secret: *****
Re-enter secret: *****

itadm modify-target -a chap eui.20387ab8943ef7548
```

**EXAMPLE 5** Creating Target Portal Groups

The following command creates two target portal groups, A and B, using port 8000 for the addresses in TPG 2.

```
itadm create-tpg A 192.168.0.1 192.168.0.2
itadm create-tpg B 192.168.0.2:8000 192.168.0.2:8000
```

**EXAMPLE 6** Configuring a Target to Use TPGs

The following command configures a target to use TPGs A and B.

```
itadm modify-target -t A,B eui.20387ab8943ef7548
```

**EXAMPLE 7** Setting up RADIUS Authentication for Specific Target

The following command sets up RADIUS authentication for a specific target.

```
itadm modify-defaults -r 192.168.10.1 -d
Enter RADIUS secret: *****
Re-enter secret: *****

itadm modify-target -a radius eui.20387ab8943ef7548
```

**EXAMPLE 8** Setting up RADIUS Authentication for All Targets

The following command sets up RADIUS authentication for all targets.

```
itadm modify-defaults -d -r 192.168.10.1 -a radius
Enter RADIUS secret: *****
Re-enter secret: *****
```

The preceding command assumes all targets were created with `-a default`.

**EXAMPLE 9** Listing Default Properties

The following command lists default properties.



**EXAMPLE 9** Listing Default Properties (Continued)

```
itadm list-defaults
iSCSI Target Default Properties:

alias: none
auth: none
radiusserver: none
radiussecret: unset
isns: disabled
isnsserver: 2.3.4.5,4.5.6.7
```

**EXAMPLE 10** Listing Targets

The following command lists targets.

```
itadm list-target
TARGET NAME STATE SESSIONS
iqn.1986-03.com.sun:02:72e1b181-7bce-c0e6-851e-ec0d8cf14b7a online 0
iqn.1986-03.com.sun:02:2cb0c526-c05a-e279-e396-a367006f4227 online 0
iqn.1986-03.com.sun:02:d14125bb-1c9d-c28d-97b0-f89259b642f3 online 0
iqn.1986-03.com.sun:02:03ff9fc5-794a-e9b4-a081-bb82917c292a online 0
```

**EXAMPLE 11** Listing Targets (Verbose)

The following command lists targets with the verbose option.

```
itadm list-target -v
TARGET NAME STATE SESSIONS
iqn.1986-03.com.sun:02:d23e68d8-2d79-c988-98e7-a6361689d33c online 0
 alias: -
 auth: none (defaults)
 targetchapuser: -
 targetchapsecret: unset
 tpg-tags: default
iqn.1986-03.com.sun:02:94ec46d4-c8e1-6993-ef03-ffc1dcd66606 online 1
 alias: -
 auth: chap
 targetchapuser: -
 targetchapsecret: unset
 tpg-tags: nge1_ipv4 = 3
```

**EXAMPLE 12** Listing a Specific Target

The following command lists targets with the verbose option.

**EXAMPLE 12** Listing a Specific Target *(Continued)*

```
itadm list-target -v \
iqn.1986-03.com.sun:02:2cb0c526-c05a-e279-e396-a367006f4227
TARGET NAME STATE SESSIONS
iqn.1986-03.com.sun:02:2cb0c526-c05a-e279-e396-a367006f4227 online 1
 alias: -
 auth: chap
 targetchapuser: -
 targetchapsecret: unset
 tpg-tags: nge1_ipv4 = 3
```

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWiscsitu     |
| Interface Stability | Committed       |

**See Also** [iscsiadm\(1M\)](#), [stmfadm\(1M\)](#), [libstmf\(3LIB\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** `itu` – convert packages to Driver Update format and patch Solaris install media for Install Time Update

**Synopsis** `itu makedu -r solaris_release [-v] [-f] [-d output_dir] [-o iso_file] [-l iso_label] package [package...]`

`itu updatemedia -R media_root [-v] [-f] [-o iso_file] [-l iso_label] pkg_or_patch [pkg_or_patch...]`

`itu makeiso -o iso_file [-v] [-l iso_label] media_root`

**Description** The `itu` utility converts driver packages to Driver Update (DU) format and patches a Solaris install media with driver packages and patches for Install Time Update (ITU). `itu` has three subcommands: `makedu`, `updatemedia` and `makeiso`.

**Options** The following options are supported:

`-d output_dir`

Directory where the Driver Update directory is to be created.

`-f`

If `output_dir/DU` or `iso_file` already exists, remove it without asking first.

`-l iso_label`

Label/volume name of the ISO image (if `-o` option is specified).

`-o iso_file`

Path of the ISO image file to be created. For subcommands `updatemedia` and `makeiso`, it will be a bootable ISO image. This option must be specified for subcommand `makeiso`.

`-R media_root`

Top-level directory of on-disk image of Solaris installation media. This option must be specified for subcommand `updatemedia`.

`-r solaris_release`

Solaris release number for which the Driver Update is intended. It takes the form of the output of `uname -r`, for example, `5.10`. This option must be specified for subcommand `makedu`.

`-v`

Verbose. Multiple `-v` options increase verbosity.

**Sub-commands** The `itu` subcommands are described as follows.

**makedu** The `makedu` subcommand takes one or more driver packages as input and converts them to DU format. At the beginning of an interactive Solaris installation session, these driver updates can be applied to the running kernel, which will then also automatically apply them to the newly installed Solaris at the end of the installation process.

The `-r` option is required to specify the Solaris release number for which the driver updates apply. The `solaris_release` option argument takes the form `uname -r` output, for example, `5.10` or `5.11`.

If the `-d` option is specified, the resulting DU directory tree is placed in the directory *output\_dir*.

If the `-o` option is specified, a (non-bootable) ISO image of the DU directory tree is written in the file *iso\_file*. This ISO image can be burned onto a CD/DVD using `cdwr(1)` or `cdrecord(1)` (not a SunOS man page). See the “Examples” section below for an example of creating a DU on a floppy.

At least one of `-d` and `-o` option must be specified. If both are specified, then both an ISO image and a directory tree are generated.

**updatemedia** The `updatemedia` subcommand takes a list of driver packages and patches as input and applies them to the miniroot of a Solaris install media. It also places them in a subdirectory called ITUs under the Solaris install media's top-level directory:

*media\_root*/ITUs

When booting a system from the updated media, the patches and packages will be part of the booted Solaris image. They will also be applied to the target system being installed at the end of the installation process.

The `-R` option must be entered on the command line to specify the Solaris install media. Note that the install media must be on a location that is writable by `itu`.

If the `-o` option is specified, a bootable ISO image of the patched install media is also created in the file *iso\_file*. The ISO image can then be burned onto a CD or DVD.

**makeiso** The `makeiso` subcommand runs `mkisofs(8)` to create a bootable Solaris ISO image of the Solaris install media *media\_root* and writes it to the file *iso\_file*. The ISO image file can then be burned onto a CD or DVD with utilities such as `cdwr(1)` or `cdrecord(1)`. (Note that `mkisofs(8)` and `cdrecord(1)` are not SunOS man pages.)

**Caution** – The Solaris install media *media-root* must contain the file `boot/grub/stage2_eltorito`, which will be written to the media boot sectors. This file will be modified with some boot information, thus it has to be writable. If necessary, first save a copy, prior to running this subcommand.

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

*package* [*package*...]

One or more driver packages.

*pkg\_or\_patch* [*pkg\_or\_patch*...]

One or more patches or packages.

*media\_root*

The top-level directory of a Solaris install media.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Creating a DU CD/DVD

The following commands create a Driver Update CD/DVD containing the packages SAMPLEpkg1 and SAMPLEpkg2.

```
itu makedu -r 5.10 -o my.iso SAMPLEpkg1 SAMPLEpkg2
cdrw -i my.iso
```

## EXAMPLE 2 Creating a DU Floppy

The following commands create a Driver Update floppy containing the driver package MYdriver.

```
rmformat -F quick /dev/rdiskette
mkfs -F pcfs /dev/rdiskette
mount -F pcfs /dev/diskette /mnt
/usr/bin/itu makedu -r 5.10 -d /mnt /export/MYdriver
umount /mnt
dd if=/dev/rdiskette of=floppy.dd
```

The `itu` command above creates the DU directly onto the floppy mounted on `/mnt`. The `dd` invocation stores an image of the floppy in the file `floppy.dd`. This is useful for distributing a DU floppy in file form. From the file, the floppy can then be recreated as follows:

```
dd if=floppy.dd of=/dev/rdiskette
```

## EXAMPLE 3 Patching the Solaris Install Media

The following command patches the Solaris install media in `/export/s10u1` with patch `/opt/patches/123456-07` and driver package `/opt/pkg/MYdriver`. The command also creates a bootable ISO image with ISO label "MyS10U1" in the file `/tmp/dvd.iso`.

```
/usr/bin/itu updatemedia -R /export/s10u1 -o /tmp/dvd.iso -l MyS10U1 \
 /opt/patches/123456-07 /opt/pkg/MYdriver
```

## EXAMPLE 4 Creating a Bootable ISO Image

The following commands create the bootable ISO image `mydvd.iso` of the Solaris install image `/export/solaris-10u1` with ISO label "Special-S10".

```
/usr/bin/itu makeiso -o mydvd.iso -l "Special-S10" \
 /export/solaris-10u1
cdrw -i mydvd.iso
```

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWcsu         |
| Interface Stability | Committed       |

**See Also** [cdrw\(1\)](#), [patchadd\(1M\)](#), [pkgadd\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

[mkisofs\(8\)](#), (`/usr/share/man/man8/mkisofs.8`), in the SUNWfsman package (not a SunOS man page)

**Name** k5srvutil – host key table (keytab) manipulation utility

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/k5srvutil *operation* [-ik] [-f *filename*]

**Description** The `k5srvutil` command allows a system manager to list or change keys currently in his keytab or to add new keys to the keytab.

The operand *operation* must be one of the following:

- `list` Lists the keys in a keytab, showing version number and principal name.
- `change` Changes all the keys in the keytab to new randomly-generated keys, updating the keys in the Kerberos server's database to match those by using the `kadmin` protocol. If a key's version number does not match the version number stored in the Kerberos server's database, the operation fails. The old keys are retained so that existing tickets continue to work. If the `-i` flag is specified, `k5srvutil` prompts for yes or no before changing each key. If the `-k` option is used, the old and new keys are displayed.
- `delold` Deletes keys that are not the most recent version from the keytab. This operation should be used at some point after a change operation to remove old keys. If the `-i` flag is specified, `k5srvutil` asks the user whether the old keys associated with each principal should be removed.
- `delete` Deletes particular keys in the keytab, interactively prompting for each key.

In all cases, the default keytab file is `/etc/krb5.keytab` file unless this is overridden by the `-f` option.

`k5srvutil` uses the `kadmin(1M)` program to edit the keytab in place. However, old keys are retained, so they are available in case of failure.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- `-f filename` Specify a keytab file other than the default file, `/etc/krb5.keytab`.
- `-i` Prompts user before changing keys when using the `change` or `delold` operands.
- `-k` Displays old and new keys when using the `change` operand.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWkdcu        |
| Interface Stability | Committed       |

**See Also** [ktutil\(1\)](#), [kadmin\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)



**Name** kadb – a kernel debugger

## Synopsis

SPARC ok boot *device\_specifier* kadb [-d] [*boot-flags*]

x86 select (b)oot or (i)nterpreter: b kadb [-d] [*boot-flags*]

**Description** kadb, an interactive kernel debugger, has been replaced by [kmdb\(1\)](#). For backwards compatibility, the methods used to load kadb will be interpreted as requests to load [kmdb\(1\)](#). Unlike with the compatibility link from [adb\(1\)](#) to [mdb\(1\)](#), [kmdb\(1\)](#) will always load in its native user interface mode, regardless of the name used to load it.

[kmdb\(1\)](#) is based on [mdb\(1\)](#), and thus shares mdb's user interface style and feature set. The [mdb\(1\)](#) man page describes the features and operation of mdb. The [kmdb\(1\)](#) man page describes the differences between mdb and kmdb. This man page describes the major changes and incompatibilities between kadb and kmdb.

Consult the *Solaris Modular Debugger Guide* for a detailed description of both mdb and kmdb.

**Major changes** This section briefly lists the major differences between kadb and kmdb. It is not intended to be exhaustive.

**Debugger Loading and Unloading** [kmdb\(1\)](#) may be loaded at boot, as with kadb. It may also be loaded after boot, thus allowing for kernel debugging and execution control without requiring a system reboot. If [kmdb\(1\)](#) is loaded after boot, it may be unloaded.

**mdb Feature Set** The features introduced by [mdb\(1\)](#), including access to kernel type data, debugger commands (dcmds), debugger modules (dmods), and enhanced execution control facilities, are available under [kmdb\(1\)](#). Support for changing the representative CPU (:x) is available for both SPARC and x86. Furthermore, full execution-control facilities are available after the representative CPU has been changed.

**Significant Incompatibilities** This section lists the significant features that have changed incompatibly between kadb and [kmdb\(1\)](#). It is not intended to be exhaustive. All [kmdb\(1\)](#) commands referenced here are fully described in the [kmdb\(1\)](#) man page. A description as well as examples can be found in the *Solaris Modular Debugger Guide*.

**Deferred Breakpoints** The kadb-style “module#symbol:b” syntax is not supported under [kmdb\(1\)](#). Instead, use “::bp module‘symbol”.

**Watchpoints** The ::wp dcmd is the preferred way to set watchpoint with [kmdb](#). Various options are available to control the type of watchpoint set, including -p for physical watchpoints

(SPARC only), and `-i` for I/O port watchpoints (x86 only). `$l` is not supported, therefore, the watchpoint size must be specified for each watchpoint created.

**Access to I/O Ports (x86 only)**

The commands used to access I/O ports under `kadb` have been replaced with the `::in` and `::out` dcmds. These two dcmds allow both read and write of all I/O port sizes supported by `kadb`.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWcar         |

**See Also** [adb\(1\)](#), [mdb\(1\)](#), [kmdb\(1\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

*Solaris Modular Debugger Guide*

**Name** kadmin, kadmin.local – Kerberos database administration program

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/kadmin [-r *realm*] [-p *principal*] [-q *query*]  
 [-s *admin\_server* [:*port*]] [ [-c *credential\_cache*]  
 | [-k [-t *keytab*]] | [-w *password*]] [-x *db\_args*]...  
 /usr/sbin/kadmin.local [-r *realm*] [-p *principal*]  
 [-q *query*] [-d *dbname*] [-e "enc:salt..."] [-m] [-D]

**Description** kadmin and kadmin.local are interactive command-line interfaces to the Kerberos V5 administration system. They provide for the maintenance of Kerberos principals, policies, and service key tables (keytabs). kadmin and kadmin.local provide identical functionality; the difference is that kadmin.local can run only on the master KDC and does not use Kerberos authentication.

Except as explicitly noted otherwise, this man page uses kadmin to refer to both versions.

By default, both versions of kadmin attempt to determine your user name and perform operations on behalf of your “*username/admin*” instance. Operations performed are subject to privileges granted or denied to this user instance by the Kerberos ACL file (see [kadm5.acl\(4\)](#)). You may perform administration as another user instance by using the -p option.

The remote version, kadmin, uses Kerberos authentication and an encrypted RPC to operate securely from anywhere on the network. It normally prompts for a password and authenticates the user to the Kerberos administration server, kadmind, whose service principal is kadmin/*fqdn*. Some options specific to the remote version permit the password prompt to be bypassed. The -c option searches the named credentials cache for a valid ticket for the kadmin/*fqdn* service and uses it to authenticate the user to the Kerberos admin server without a password. The -k option searches a keytab for a credential to authenticate to the kadmin/*fqdn* service, and again no password is collected. If kadmin has collected a password, it requests a kadmin/*fqdn* Kerberos service ticket from the KDC, and uses that service ticket to interact with kadmind.

The local version, kadmin.local, must be run with an effective UID of root, and normally uses a key from the /var/krb5/.k5.*realm* stash file (see [kdb5\\_util\(1M\)](#)) to decrypt information from the database rather than prompting for a password. The -m option will bypass the .k5.*realm* stash file and prompt for the master password.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- c *credentials\_cache*  
 Search *credentials\_cache* for a service ticket for the kadmin/*fqdn* service; it can be acquired with the [kinit\(1\)](#) program. If this option is not specified, kadmin requests a new service ticket from the KDC, and stores it in its own temporary credentials cache.
- d *dbname*  
 Specify a non-standard database name. [Local only]
- D  
 Turn on debug mode. [Local only]

- e “*enc:salt ...*”  
Specify a different encryption type and/or key salt. [Local only]
- k [-t *keytab*]  
Use the default keytab (-k) or a specific keytab (-t *keytab*) to decrypt the KDC response instead of prompting for a password. In this case, the default principal will be `host/hos tname`. This is primarily used for keytab maintenance.
- m  
Accept the database master password from the keyboard rather than using the `/var/krb5/.k5.realm` stash file. [Local only]
- p *principal*  
Authenticate *principal* to the `kadmin/fqdn` service. Otherwise, `kadmin` will append `/admin` to the primary principal name of the default credentials cache, the value of the `USER` environment variable, or the username as obtained with `getpwnid`, in that order of preference.
- q *query*  
Pass *query* directly to `kadmin`, which will perform *query* and then exit. This can be useful for writing scripts.
- r *realm*  
Use *realm* as the default database realm.
- s *admin\_server*[:*port*]  
Administer the specified *admin* server at the specified port number (*port*). This can be useful in administering a realm not known to your client.
- w *password*  
Use *password* instead of prompting for one. Note that placing the password for a Kerberos principal with administration access into a shell script can be dangerous if unauthorized users gain read access to the script or can read arguments of this command through [ps\(1\)](#).
- x *db\_args*  
Pass database-specific arguments to `kadmin`. Supported arguments are for LDAP and the Berkeley-db2 plug-in. These arguments are:
  - `binddn=binddn`  
LDAP simple bind DN for authorization on the directory server. Overrides the `ldap_kadmin_dn` parameter setting in [krb5.conf\(4\)](#).
  - `bindpwd=bindpwd`  
Bind password.
  - `dbname=name`  
For the Berkeley-db2 plug-in, specifies a name for the Kerberos database.
  - `nconns=num`  
Maximum number of server connections.

`port=num`  
Directory server connection port.

**Commands** `list_requests`

Lists all the commands available for `kadmin`. Aliased by `lr` and `?`.

`get_privs`

Lists the current Kerberos administration privileges (ACLs) for the principal that is currently running `kadmin`. The privileges are based on the `/etc/krb5/kadm5.acl` file on the master KDC. Aliased by `getprivs`.

`add_principal [options] newprinc`

Creates a new principal, *newprinc*, prompting twice for a password. If the `-policy` option is not specified and a policy named `default` exists, then the `default` policy is assigned to the principal; note that the assignment of the `default` policy occurs automatically only when a principal is first created, so the `default` policy must already exist for the assignment to occur. The automatic assignment of the `default` policy can be suppressed with the `-clearpolicy` option. This command requires the `add` privilege. Aliased by `addprinc` and `ank`. The options are:

`-expire expdate`

Expiration date of the principal. See the Time Formats section for the valid absolute time formats that you can specify for *expdate*.

`-pwexpire pwexpdate`

Password expiration date. See the Time Formats section for the valid absolute time formats that you can specify for *pwexpdate*.

`-maxlife maxlife`

Maximum ticket life for the principal. See the Time Formats section for the valid time duration formats that you can specify for *maxlife*.

`-maxrenewlife maxrenewlife`

Maximum renewable life of tickets for the principal. See the Time Formats section for the valid time duration formats that you can specify for *maxrenewlife*.

`-kvno kvno`

Explicitly set the key version number.

`-policy policy`

Policy used by the principal. If both the `-policy` and `-clearpolicy` options are not specified, the `default` policy is used if it exists; otherwise, the principal will have no policy. Also note that the password and principal name must be different when you add a new principal with a specific policy or the `default` policy.

`-clearpolicy`

`-clearpolicy` prevents the `default` policy from being assigned when `-policy` is not specified. This option has no effect if the `default` policy does not exist.

`{-|+}allow_postdated`  
-allow\_postdated prohibits the principal from obtaining postdated tickets. (Sets the KRB5\_KDB\_DISALLOW\_POSTDATED flag.) +allow\_postdated clears this flag.

`{-|+}allow_forwardable`  
-allow\_forwardable prohibits the principal from obtaining forwardable tickets. (Sets the KRB5\_KDB\_DISALLOW\_FORWARDABLE flag.) +allow\_forwardable clears this flag.

`{-|+}allow_renewable`  
-allow\_renewable prohibits the principal from obtaining renewable tickets. (Sets the KRB5\_KDB\_DISALLOW\_RENEWABLE flag.) +allow\_renewable clears this flag.

`{-|+}allow_proxiabile`  
-allow\_proxiabile prohibits the principal from obtaining proxiabile tickets. (Sets the KRB5\_KDB\_DISALLOW\_PROXIABLE flag.) +allow\_proxiabile clears this flag.

`{-|+}allow_dup_skey`  
-allow\_dup\_skey disables user-to-user authentication for the principal by prohibiting this principal from obtaining a session key for another user. (Sets the KRB5\_KDB\_DISALLOW\_DUP\_SKEY flag.) +allow\_dup\_skey clears this flag.

`{-|+}requires_preauth`  
+requires\_preauth requires the principal to preauthenticate before being allowed to kinit. (Sets the KRB5\_KDB\_REQUIRES\_PRE\_AUTH flag.) -requires\_preauth clears this flag.

`{-|+}requires_hwauth`  
+requires\_hwauth requires the principal to preauthenticate using a hardware device before being allowed to kinit. (Sets the KRB5\_KDB\_REQUIRES\_HW\_AUTH flag.)  
-requires\_hwauth clears this flag.

`{-|+}allow_svr`  
-allow\_svr prohibits the issuance of service tickets for the principal. (Sets the KRB5\_KDB\_DISALLOW\_SVR flag.) +allow\_svr clears this flag.

`{-|+}allow_tgs_req`  
-allow\_tgs\_req specifies that a Ticket-Granting Service (TGS) request for a service ticket for the principal is not permitted. This option is useless for most things.  
+allow\_tgs\_req clears this flag. The default is +allow\_tgs\_req. In effect,  
-allow\_tgs\_req sets the KRB5\_KDB\_DISALLOW\_TGT\_BASED flag on the principal in the database.

`{-|+}allow_tix`  
-allow\_tix forbids the issuance of any tickets for the principal. +allow\_tix clears this flag. The default is +allow\_tix. In effect, -allow\_tix sets the KRB5\_KDB\_DISALLOW\_ALL\_TIX flag on the principal in the database.

- {-|+}needchange**  
 +needchange sets a flag in attributes field to force a password change; -needchange clears it. The default is -needchange. In effect, +needchange sets the KRB5\_KDB\_REQUIRES\_PWCHANGE flag on the principal in the database.
- {-|+}password\_changing\_service**  
 +password\_changing\_service sets a flag in the attributes field marking this as a password change service principal (useless for most things).  
 -password\_changing\_service clears the flag. This flag intentionally has a long name. The default is -password\_changing\_service. In effect, +password\_changing\_service sets the KRB5\_KDB\_PWCHANGE\_SERVICE flag on the principal in the database.
- randkey**  
 Sets the key of the principal to a random value.
- pw *password***  
 Sets the key of the principal to the specified string and does not prompt for a password. Note that using this option in a shell script can be dangerous if unauthorized users gain read access to the script.
- e "enc:salt ..."**  
 Override the list of enctype:salttype pairs given in `kdc.conf(4)` for setting the key of the principal. The quotes are necessary if there are multiple enctype:salttype pairs. One key for each similar enctype and same salttype will be created and the first one listed will be used. For example, in a list of two similar encryptions with the same salt, "des-cbc-crc:normal des-cbc-md5:normal", one key will be created and it will be of type des-cbc-crc:normal.

#### Example:

```
kadmin: addprinc tlyu/admin
WARNING: no policy specified for "tlyu/admin@ACME.COM";
defaulting to no policy.
Enter password for principal tlyu/admin@ACME.COM:
Re-enter password for principal tlyu/admin@ACME.COM:
Principal "tlyu/admin@ACME.COM" created.
kadmin:
```

#### Errors:

```
KADM5_AUTH_ADD (requires add privilege)

KADM5_BAD_MASK (should not happen)

KADM5_DUP (principal exists already)

KADM5_UNK_POLICY (policy does not exist)

KADM5_PASS_Q_* (password quality violations)
```

**delete\_principal** [-force] *principal*

Deletes the specified principal from the database. This command prompts for deletion, unless the -force option is given. This command requires the delete privilege. Aliased by delprinc.

Example:

```
kadmin: delprinc mwm_user
Are you sure you want to delete the principal
"mwm_user@ACME.COM"? (yes/no): yes
Principal "mwm_user@ACME.COM" deleted.
Make sure that you have removed this principal from
all kadmind ACLs before reusing.
kadmin:
```

Errors:

KADM5\_AUTH\_DELETE (requires delete privilege)

KADM5\_UNK\_PRINC (principal does not exist)

**modify\_principal** [*options*] *principal*

Modifies the specified principal, changing the fields as specified. The options are as above for add\_principal, except that password changing is forbidden by this command. In addition, the option -clearpolicy will clear the current policy of a principal. This command requires the modify privilege. Aliased by modprinc.

Errors:

KADM5\_AUTH\_MODIFY (requires modify privilege)

KADM5\_UNK\_PRINC (principal does not exist)

KADM5\_UNK\_POLICY (policy does not exist)

KADM5\_BAD\_MASK (should not happen)

**change\_password** [*options*] *principal*

Changes the password of *principal*. Prompts for a new password if neither -randkey or -pw is specified. Requires the changepw privilege, or that the principal that is running the program to be the same as the one changed. Aliased by cpw. The following options are available:

-randkey

Sets the key of the principal to a random value.

-pw *password*

Sets the password to the specified string. Not recommended.



-e “enc:salt ...”

Override the list of enctype:salttype pairs given in `kdc.conf(4)` for setting the key of the principal. The quotes are necessary if there are multiple enctype:salttype pairs. For each key, the first matching similar enctype and same salttype in the list will be used to set the new key(s).

-keepold

Keeps the previous kvno's keys around. There is no easy way to delete the old keys, and this flag is usually not necessary except perhaps for TGS keys as it will allow existing valid TGTs to continue to work.

Example:

```
kadmin: cpw systest
Enter password for principal systest@ACME.COM:
Re-enter password for principal systest@ACME.COM:
Password for systest@ACME.COM changed.
kadmin:
```

Errors:

KADM5\_AUTH\_MODIFY (requires the modify privilege)

KADM5\_UNK\_PRINC (principal does not exist)

KADM5\_PASS\_Q\_\* (password policy violation errors)

KADM5\_PASS\_REUSE (password is in principal's password history)

KADM5\_PASS\_TOOSOON (current password minimum life not expired)

`get_principal [-terse] principal`

Gets the attributes of *principal*. Requires the inquire privilege, or that the principal that is running the program to be the same as the one being listed. With the `-terse` option, outputs fields as quoted tab-separated strings. Aliased by `getprinc`.

Examples:

```
kadmin: getprinc tlyu/admin
Principal: tlyu/admin@ACME.COM
Expiration date: [never]
Last password change: Thu Jan 03 12:17:46 CET 2008
Password expiration date: [none]
Maximum ticket life: 24855 days 03:14:07
Maximum renewable life: 24855 days 03:14:07
Last modified: Thu Jan 03 12:17:46 CET 2008 (root/admin@ACME.COM)
Last successful authentication: [never]
Last failed authentication: [never]
Failed password attempts: 0
Number of keys: 5
Key: vno 2, AES-256 CTS mode with 96-bit SHA-1 HMAC, no salt
```

```

Key: vno 2, AES-128 CTS mode with 96-bit SHA-1 HMAC, no salt
Key: vno 2, Triple DES cbc mode with HMAC/sha1, no salt
Key: vno 2, ArcFour with HMAC/md5, no salt
Key: vno 2, DES cbc mode with RSA-MD5, no salt
Attributes: REQUIRES_PRE_AUTH
Policy: [none]
kadmin: getprinc -terse tlyu/admin
"tlyu/admin@ACME.COM" 0 1199359066 0 2147483647
"root/admin@ACME.COM" 1199359066 128 2 0 "[none]" 21474836
47 0 0 0 5 1 2 18 0 1 2
17 0 1 2 16 0 1 2 23 0 12
 3 0
kadmin:

```

Errors:

KADM5\_AUTH\_GET (requires the get [inquire] privilege)

KADM5\_UNK\_PRINC (principal does not exist)

`list_principals` [*expression*]

Retrieves all or some principal names. *expression* is a shell-style glob expression that can contain the wild-card characters `?`, `*`, and `[]`'s. All principal names matching the expression are printed. If no expression is provided, all principal names are printed. If the expression does not contain an `@` character, an `@` character followed by the local realm is appended to the expression. Requires the list privilege. Aliased by `listprincs`, `get_principals`, and `getprincs`.

Examples:

```

kadmin: listprincs test*
test3@ACME.COM
test2@ACME.COM
test1@ACME.COM
testuser@ACME.COM
kadmin:

```

`add_policy` [*options*] *policy*

Adds the named policy to the policy database. Requires the add privilege. Aliased by `addpol`. The following options are available:

`-maxlife` *maxlife*

sets the maximum lifetime of a password. See the Time Formats section for the valid time duration formats that you can specify for *maxlife*.

`-minlife` *minlife*

sets the minimum lifetime of a password. See the Time Formats section for the valid time duration formats that you can specify for *minlife*.

`-minlength` *length*

sets the minimum length of a password.

`-minclasses number`  
 sets the minimum number of character classes allowed in a password. The valid values are:

- 1  
only letters (himom)
- 2  
both letters and numbers (hi2mom)
- 3  
letters, numbers, and punctuation (hi2mom!)

`-history number`  
 sets the number of past keys kept for a principal.

Errors:

KADM5\_AUTH\_ADD (requires the add privilege)

KADM5\_DUP (policy already exists)

`delete_policy [-force] policy`

Deletes the named policy. Unless the `-force` option is specified, prompts for confirmation before deletion. The command will fail if the policy is in use by any principals. Requires the delete privilege. Aliased by `delpol`.

Example:

```
kadmin: del_policy guests
Are you sure you want to delete the
policy "guests"? (yes/no): yes
Policy "guests" deleted.
kadmin:
```

Errors:

KADM5\_AUTH\_DELETE (requires the delete privilege)

KADM5\_UNK\_POLICY (policy does not exist)

KADM5\_POLICY\_REF (reference count on policy is not zero)

`modify_policy [options] policy`

Modifies the named policy. Options are as above for `add_policy`. Requires the modify privilege. Aliased by `modpol`.

Errors:

KADM5\_AUTH\_MODIFY (requires the modify privilege)

KADM5\_UNK\_POLICY (policy does not exist)

**get\_policy** [-terse] *policy*

Displays the values of the named policy. Requires the inquire privilege. With the -terse flag, outputs the fields as quoted strings separated by tabs. Aliased by getpol.

Examples:

```
kadmin: get_policy admin
Policy: admin
Maximum password life: 180 days 00:00:00
Minimum password life: 00:00:00
Minimum password length: 6
Minimum number of password character classes: 2
Number of old keys kept: 5
Reference count: 17
kadmin: get_policy -terse
admin admin 15552000 0 6 2 5 17
kadmin:
```

Errors:

KADM5\_AUTH\_GET (requires the get privilege)

KADM5\_UNK\_POLICY (policy does not exist)

**list\_policies** [*expression*]

Retrieves all or some policy names. *expression* is a shell-style glob expression that can contain the wild-card characters ?, \*, and []. All policy names matching the expression are printed. If no expression is provided, all existing policy names are printed. Requires the list privilege. Aliased by listpols, get\_policies, and getpols.

Examples:

```
kadmin: listpols
test-pol dict-only once-a-min test-pol-nopw
kadmin: listpols t*
test-pol test-pol-nopw kadmin:
```

**ktadd** [-k *keytab*] [-q] [-e *enctype:salt*]

Adds a principal or all principals matching *princ-exp* to a keytab, randomizing each principal's key in the process.

ktadd requires the inquire and changepw privileges. An entry for each of the principal's unique encryption types is added, ignoring multiple keys with the same encryption type but different salt types. If the -k argument is not specified, the default keytab file, /etc/krb5/krb5.keytab, is used.

The “-e *enctype:salt*” option overrides the list of *enctypes* given in [krb5.conf\(4\)](#), in the permitted\_enctypes parameter. If “-e *enctype:salt*” is not used and permitted\_enctypes is not defined in [krb5.conf\(4\)](#), a key for each *enctype* supported by the system on which kadmin is run will be created and added to the keytab. Restricting the

*enctypes* of keys in the keytab is useful when the system for which keys are being created does not support the same set of *enctypes* as the KDC. Note that `ktadd` modifies the *enctype* of the keys in the principal database as well.

If the `-q` option is specified, less status information is displayed. Aliased by `xst`. The `-glob` option requires the `list` privilege. Also, note that if you use `-glob` to create a keytab, you need to remove `/etc/krb5/kadm5.keytab` and create it again if you want to use `-p */admin` with `kadmin`.

#### `princ-exp`

*princ-exp* follows the same rules described for the `list_principals` command.

Example:

```
kadmin: ktadd -k /tmp/new-keytab nfs/chicago
Entry for principal nfs/chicago with kvno 2,
encryption type DES-CBC-CRC added to keytab
WRFILE:/tmp/new-keytab.
kadmin:
```

#### `ktremove [-k keytab] [-q] principal [kvno | all | old]`

Removes entries for the specified principal from a keytab. Requires no privileges, since this does not require database access. If `all` is specified, all entries for that principal are removed; if `old` is specified, all entries for that principal except those with the highest `kvno` are removed. Otherwise, the value specified is parsed as an integer, and all entries whose `kvno` match that integer are removed. If the `-k` argument is not specified, the default keytab file, `/etc/krb5/krb5.keytab`, is used. If the `-q` option is specified, less status information is displayed. Aliased by `ktrem`.

Example:

```
kadmin: ktremove -k /tmp/new-keytab nfs/chicago
Entry for principal nfs/chicago with kvno 2
removed from keytab
WRFILE:/tmp/new-keytab.
kadmin:
```

#### `quit`

Quits `kadmin`. Aliased by `exit` and `q`.

**Time Formats** Various commands in `kadmin` can take a variety of time formats, specifying time durations or absolute times. The `kadmin` option variables *maxrenewlife*, *maxlife*, and *minlife* are time durations, whereas *expdate* and *pwexpdate* are absolute times.

Examples:

```
kadmin: modprinc -expire "12/31 7pm" jdb
kadmin: modprinc -maxrenewlife "2 fortnight" jdb
kadmin: modprinc -pwexpire "this sunday" jdb
kadmin: modprinc -expire never jdb
```

kadmin: **modprinc -maxlife "7:00:00pm tomorrow" jdb**

Note that times which do not have the “ago” specifier default to being absolute times, unless they appear in a field where a duration is expected. In that case, the time specifier will be interpreted as relative. Specifying “ago” in a duration can result in unexpected behavior.

The following time formats and units can be combined to specify a time. The time and date format examples are based on the date and time of July 2, 1999, 1:35:30 p.m.

| Time Format                           | Examples               |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>hh[:mm][:ss]</i> [am/pm/a.m./p.m.] | 1p.m., 1:35, 1:35:30pm |

| Variable  | Description                                                   |
|-----------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>hh</i> | hour (12-hour clock, leading zero permitted but not required) |
| <i>mm</i> | minutes                                                       |
| <i>ss</i> | seconds                                                       |

| Date Format            | Examples              |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>mm/dd[/yy]</i>      | 07/02, 07/02/99       |
| <i>yyyy-mm-dd</i>      | 1999-07-02            |
| <i>dd-month-yyyy</i>   | 02-July-1999          |
| <i>month [,yyyy]</i>   | Jul 02, July 02,1999  |
| <i>dd month[ yyyy]</i> | 02 JULY, 02 july 1999 |

| Variable     | Description                                                        |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>dd</i>    | day                                                                |
| <i>mm</i>    | month                                                              |
| <i>yy</i>    | year within century (00-38 is 2000 to 2038; 70-99 is 1970 to 1999) |
| <i>yyyy</i>  | year including century                                             |
| <i>month</i> | locale's full or abbreviated month name                            |

| Time Units | Examples |
|------------|----------|
|------------|----------|

|                   |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| [+ - #] year      | "-2 year"       |
| [+ - #] month     | "2 months"      |
| [+ - #] fortnight |                 |
| [+ - #] week      |                 |
| [+ - #] day       |                 |
| [+ - #] hour      |                 |
| [+ - #] minute    |                 |
| [+ - #] min       |                 |
| [+ - #] second    |                 |
| [+ - #] sec       |                 |
| tomorrow          |                 |
| yesterday         |                 |
| today             |                 |
| now               |                 |
| this              | "this year"     |
| last              | "last saturday" |
| next              | "next month"    |
| sunday            |                 |
| monday            |                 |
| tuesday           |                 |
| wednesday         |                 |
| thursday          |                 |
| friday            |                 |
| saturday          |                 |
| never             |                 |

You can also use the following time modifiers: first, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth, seventh, eighth, ninth, tenth, eleventh, twelfth, and ago.

**Environment Variables** See [environ\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following environment variables that affect the execution of kadmin:

**PAGER**

The command to use as a filter for paging output. This can also be used to specify options. The default is [more\(1\)](#).

**Files** `/var/krb5/principal`

Kerberos principal database.

`/var/krb5/principal.ulo`

The update log file for incremental propagation.

`/var/krb5/principal.kadm5`

Kerberos administrative database. Contains policy information.

`/var/krb5/principal.kadm5.lock`

Lock file for the Kerberos administrative database. This file works backwards from most other lock files (that is, `kadmin` will exit with an error if this file does *not* exist).

`/var/krb5/kadm5.dict`

Dictionary of strings explicitly disallowed as passwords.

`/etc/krb5/kadm5.acl`

List of principals and their `kadmin` administrative privileges.

`/etc/krb5/kadm5.keytab`

Keytab for `kadmin` principals: `kadmin/fqdn`, `changepw/fqdn`, and `kadmin/changepw`.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWkdcu        |
| Interface Stability | Committed       |

**See Also** [kpasswd\(1\)](#), [more\(1\)](#), [gkadmin\(1M\)](#), [kadmind\(1M\)](#), [kdb5\\_util\(1M\)](#), [kdb5\\_ldap\\_util\(1M\)](#), [kproplog\(1M\)](#), [kadm5.acl\(4\)](#), [kdc.conf\(4\)](#), [krb5.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#), [kerberos\(5\)](#), [krb5envvar\(5\)](#)

**History** The `kadmin` program was originally written by Tom Yu at MIT, as an interface to the OpenVision Kerberos administration program.

**Diagnostics** The `kadmin` command is currently incompatible with the MIT `kadmind` daemon interface, so you cannot use this command to administer an MIT-based Kerberos database. However, clients running the Solaris implementation of Kerberos can still use an MIT-based KDC.



**Name** kadmind – Kerberos administration daemon

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/krb5/kadmind [-d] [-m] [-p *port-number*] [-r *realm*]  
-x *db\_args*...

**Description** kadmind runs on the master key distribution center (KDC), which stores the principal and policy databases. kadmind accepts remote requests to administer the information in these databases. Remote requests are sent, for example, by [kpasswd\(1\)](#), [gkadmin\(1M\)](#), and [kadmin\(1M\)](#) commands, all of which are clients of kadmind. When you install a KDC, kadmind is set up in the `init` scripts to start automatically when the KDC is rebooted.

kadmind requires a number of configuration files to be set up for it to work:

`/etc/krb5/kdc.conf`

The KDC configuration file contains configuration information for the KDC and the Kerberos administration system. kadmind understands a number of configuration variables (called relations) in this file, some of which are mandatory and some of which are optional. In particular, kadmind uses the `acl_file`, `dict_file`, `admin_keytab`, and `kadmind_port` relations in the `[realms]` section. Refer to the [kdc.conf\(4\)](#) man page for information regarding the format of the KDC configuration file.

`/etc/krb5/kadm5.keytab`

kadmind requires a keytab (key table) containing correct entries for the `kadmin/fqdn`, `kadmin/changepw` and `kadmin/changepw` principals for every realm that kadmind answers requests. The keytab can be created with the [kadmin\(1M\)](#) or [kdb5\\_util\(1M\)](#) command. The location of the keytab is determined by the `admin_keytab` relation in the `kdc.conf(4)` file.

`/etc/krb5/kadm5.acl`

kadmind uses an ACL (access control list) to determine which principals are allowed to perform Kerberos administration actions. The path of the ACL file is determined by the `acl_file` relation in the `kdc.conf` file. See [kdc.conf\(4\)](#). For information regarding the format of the ACL file, refer to [kadm5.acl\(4\)](#).

The kadmind daemon will need to be restarted to reread the `kadm5.acl` file after it has been modified. You can do this, as root, with the following command:

```
svcadm restart svc:/network/security/kadmin:default
```

After kadmind begins running, it puts itself in the background and disassociates itself from its controlling terminal.

kadmind can be configured for incremental database propagation. Incremental propagation allows slave KDC servers to receive principal and policy updates incrementally instead of receiving full dumps of the database. These settings can be changed in the `kdc.conf(4)` file:

```
sunw_dbprop_enable = [true | false]
```

Enable or disable incremental database propagation. Default is `false`.

`sunw_dbprop_master_uologsize = N`

Specifies the maximum amount of log entries available for incremental propagation to the slave KDC servers. The maximum value that this can be is 2500 entries. Default value is 1000 entries.

The `kprop/<hostname>@<REALM>` principal must exist in the master's `kadm5.keytab` file to enable the slave to authenticate incremental propagation from the master. In the principal syntax above, `<hostname>` is the master KDC's host name and `<REALM>` is the realm in which the master KDC resides.

Kerberos client machines can automatically migrate Unix users to the default Kerberos realm specified in the local `krb5.conf(4)`, if the user does not have a valid kerberos account already. You achieve this by using the `pam_krb5_migrate(5)` service module for the service in question. The Kerberos service principal used by the client machine attempting the migration needs to be validated using the `u` privilege in `kadm5.acl(4)`. When using the `u` privilege, `kadmin` validates user passwords using PAM, specifically using a PAM\_SERVICE name of `k5migrate` by calling `pam_authenticate(3PAM)` and `pam_acct_mgmt(3PAM)`.

A suitable PAM stack configuration example for `k5migrate` would look like:

```
k5migrate auth required pam_unix_auth.so.1
k5migrate account required pam_unix_account.so.1
```

**Options** The following options are supported:

`-d`

Specifies that `kadmin` does not put itself in the background and does not disassociate itself from the terminal. In normal operation, you should use the default behavior, which is to allow the daemon to put itself in the background.

`-m`

Specifies that the master database password should be retrieved from the keyboard rather than from the stash file. When using `-m`, the `kadmin` daemon receives the password prior to putting itself in the background. If used in combination with the `-d` option, you must explicitly place the daemon in the background.

`-p port-number`

Specifies the port on which the `kadmin` daemon listens for connections. The default is controlled by the `kadmin_port` relation in the `kdc.conf(4)` file.

`-r realm`

Specifies the default realm that `kadmin` serves. If `realm` is not specified, the default `realm` of the host is used. `kadmin` answers requests for any realm that exists in the local KDC database and for which the appropriate principals are in its keytab.

`-x db_args`

Pass database-specific arguments to `kadmin`. Supported arguments are for LDAP and the Berkeley-db2 plug-in. These arguments are:

`binddn=binddn`

LDAP simple bind DN for authorization on the directory server. Overrides the `ldap_kadmin_dn` parameter setting in `krb5.conf(4)`.

`bindpwd=bindpwd`

Bind password.

`dbname=name`

For the Berkeley-db2 plug-in, specifies a name for the Kerberos database.

`nconns=num`

Maximum number of server connections.

`port=num`

Directory server connection port.

**Files** `/var/krb5/principal`

Kerberos principal database.

`/var/krb5/principal.ulo`

The update log file for incremental propagation.

`/var/krb5/principal.kadm5`

Kerberos administrative database containing policy information.

`/var/krb5/principal.kadm5.lock`

Kerberos administrative database lock file. This file works backwards from most other lock files (that is, `kadmin` exits with an error if this file does not exist).

`/var/krb5/kadm5.dict`

Dictionary of strings explicitly disallowed as passwords.

`/etc/krb5/kadm5.acl`

List of principals and their `kadmin` administrative privileges.

`/etc/krb5/kadm5.keytab`

Keytab for `kadmin` principals: `kadmin/fqdn`, `changepw/fqdn`, and `kadmin/changepw`.

`/etc/krb5/kdc.conf`

KDC configuration information.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWkdcu        |
| Interface Stability | Evolving        |

**See Also** [kpasswd\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [gkadmin\(1M\)](#), [kadmin\(1M\)](#), [kadmin\(1M\)](#), [kdb5\\_util\(1M\)](#), [kdb5\\_ldap\\_util\(1M\)](#), [kproplog\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [pam\\_acct\\_mgmt\(3PAM\)](#), [pam\\_authenticate\(3PAM\)](#), [kadm5.acl\(4\)](#), [kdc.conf\(4\)](#), [krb5.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [kerberos\(5\)](#), [krb5envvar\(5\)](#), [pam\\_krb5\\_migrate\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

**Notes** The Kerberos administration daemon (`kadmin`) is now compliant with the change-password standard mentioned in RFC 3244, which means it can now handle change-password requests from non-Solaris Kerberos clients.

The `kadmin` service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/security/kadmin
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

**Name** kcfD – kernel-level cryptographic framework daemon

**Synopsis** kcfD

**Description** The kcfD daemon helps in managing CPU usage by cryptographic operations performed in software by kernel threads. The system utilization associated with these threads is charged to the kcfD process. It also does module verification for kernel cryptographic modules.

Only a privileged user can run this daemon.

The kcfD daemon is automatically invoked in run level 1, after /usr is mounted. A previously invoked kcfD daemon that is still running must be stopped before invoking another kcfD command.

Manually starting and restarting kcfD is not recommended. If it is necessary to do so, use the [cryptoadm\(1M\)](#) start and stop subcommands.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0        Daemon started successfully.

> 1      Daemon failed to start.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE  |
|---------------------|------------------|
| Availability        | SUNWcsl/SUNWcslx |
| Interface Stability | Evolving         |

**See Also** [cryptoadm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** kclient – set up a machine as a Kerberos client

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/kclient [-n] [-R *realm*] [-k *kdc*] [-a *adminuser*]  
[-c *filepath*] [-d *dnsarg*] [-f *fqdn\_list*] [-h *logical\_host\_name*]  
[-k *kdc\_list*] [-m *master\_kdc*] [-p *profile*] [-s *pam\_service*]  
[-T *kdc\_vendor*]

**Description** By specifying the various command options, you can use the `kclient` utility to:

- Configure a machine as a Kerberos client for a specified realm and for KDC by setting up `krb5.conf(4)`.
- Add the Kerberos host principal to the local host's keytab file (`/etc/krb5/krb5.keytab`).
- Set up the machine to do kerberized NFS.
- Bring over a master `krb5.conf` copy from a specified pathname.
- Setup a machine to do server and/or host/domain name-to-realm mapping lookups by means of DNS.
- Configure a Kerberos client to use an MS Active Directory server. This generates a keytab file with the Kerberos client's service keys populated.
- Setup a Kerberos client that has no service keys. This is useful when the client does not require service keys, because the client does not wish to host a service that uses Kerberos for security.
- Configure a Kerberos client that is part of a cluster. This option requires the logical host name of the cluster so that the proper service keys are created and populated in the client's keytab file.
- Setup a Kerberos client to join an environment that consists of Kerberos servers that are non-Solaris and non-MS Active Directory servers.
- Configure `pam.conf(4)` to use Kerberos authentication for specified services.
- Configure the client as a simple NTP broadcast/multicast client.
- Specify custom domain/host name-to-realm name mappings.
- Setup the Kerberos client to use multiple KDC servers.

The `kclient` utility needs to be run on the client machine with root permission and can be run either interactively or non-interactively. In the non-interactive mode, the user feeds in the required inputs by means of a profile, command-line options, or a combination of profile and command-line options. The user is prompted for “required” parameter values (`realm` and `adminuser`), if found missing in the non-interactive run. The interactive mode is invoked when the utility is run without any command-line arguments.

Both the interactive and non-interactive forms of `kclient` can add the `host/fqdn` entry to the local host's keytab file. They also can require the user to enter the password for the administrative user requested, to obtain the Kerberos Ticket Granting Ticket (TGT) for `adminuser`. The `host/fqdn`, `nfs/fqdn`, and `root/fqdn` principals can be added to the KDC database (if not already present) before their possible addition to the local host's keytab.

The `kclient` utility assumes that the local host has been setup for DNS and requires the presence of a valid `resolv.conf(4)`. Also, `kclient` can fail if the local host time is not synchronized with that of the KDC. For Kerberos to function the local host time must be within five minutes of that of the KDC. It is advised that both systems run some form of time synchronization protocol, such as the Network Time Protocol (NTP). See the `ntpd` man page, delivered in the `SUNWntpu` package (not a SunOS man page).

**Options** The non-interactive mode supports the following options:

- n  
Set up the machine for kerberized NFS. This involves making changes to `krb5*` security flavors in `nfssec.conf(4)`. This option will also add `nfs/fqdn` and `root/fqdn` entries to the local host's keytab file if the `-K` option has not been specified.
- R [ *realm* ]  
Specifies the Kerberos realm.
- k *kdc\_list*  
The `-k` option specifies the KDC host names for the Kerberos client. *kdc\_list* is a comma-separated list of KDCs. If the `-m` option is not used, it is assumed that the first (or only) host in *kdc\_list* is the master KDC host name. Note that the list specified is used verbatim. This is helpful when specifying non-fully qualified KDC host names that can be canonicalized by DNS.
- a [ *adminuser* ]  
Specifies the Kerberos administrative user.
- T *kdc\_vendor*  
Configure the Kerberos client to associate with a third party server. Valid *kdc\_vendor* currently supported are:
  - `ms_ad`  
Microsoft Active Directory
  - `mit`  
MIT KDC server
  - `heimdal`  
Heimdal KDC server
  - `shishi`  
Shishi KDC server

Knowing the administrative password will be required to associate the client with the server if the `ms_ad` option is specified.
- c [ *filepath* ]  
Specifies the pathname to the `krb5.conf(4)` master file, to be copied over to the local host. The path specified normally points to a master copy on a remote host and brought over to the local host by means of NFS.

**-d** [*dnsarg*]

Specifies the DNS lookup option to be used and specified in the `krb5.conf(4)` file. Valid *dnsarg* entries are: `none`, `dns_lookup_kdc`, `dns_lookup_realm` and `dns_fallback`. Any other entry is considered invalid. The latter three *dnsarg* values assume the same meaning as those described in `krb5.conf`. `dns_lookup_kdc` implies DNS lookups for the KDC and the other servers. `dns_lookup_realm` is for host/domain name-to-realm mapping by means of DNS. `dns_fallback` is a superset and does DNS lookups for both the servers and the host/domain name-to-realm mapping. A lookup option of `none` specifies that DNS is not be used for any kind of mapping lookup.

**-D** *domain\_list*

Specifies the host and/or domain names to be mapped to the Kerberos client's default realm name. *domain\_list* is a comma-separated list, for example “`example.com,host1.example.com`”. If the `-D` option is not used, then only the client's domain is used for this mapping. For example, if the client is `host1.eng.example.com`, then the domain that is mapped to the `EXAMPLE.COM` realm is `example.com`.

**-K**

Configure the Kerberos client without service keys, which are usually stored in `/etc/krb5/krb5.keytab`. This is useful in the following scenarios:

- The client IP address is dynamically assigned and therefore does not host Kerberized services.
- Client has a static IP address, but does not want to host any Kerberized services.
- Client has a static IP address, but the local administrator does not currently have service keys available for the machine. It is expected that, at a later time, these keys will be installed on the machine.

**-f** [*fqdn\_list*]

This option creates a service principal entry (`host/nfs/root`) associated with each of the listed *fqdn*'s, if required, and subsequently adds the entries to the local host's `keytab`.

*fqdn\_list* is a comma-separated list of one or more fully qualified DNS domain names.

This option is especially useful in Kerberos realms having systems offering kerberized services, but situated in multiple different DNS domains.

**-h** *logical\_host\_name*

Specifies that the Kerberos client is a node in a cluster. The *logical\_host\_name* is the logical host name given to the cluster. The resulting `/etc/krb5/krb5.conf` and `/etc/krb5/krb5.keytab` files must be manually copied over to the other members of the cluster.

**-m** *master\_kdc*

This option specifies the master KDC to be used by the Kerberos client. *master\_kdc* is the host name of the master KDC for the client. If the `-m` option is not used, then it is assumed that the first KDC host name listed with the `-k` option is the master KDC.



**-p** [*profile*]

Specifies the profile to be used to enable the reading in of the values of all the parameters required for setup of the machine as a Kerberos client.

The profile should have entries in the format:

*PARAM* <*value*>

Valid *PARAM* entries are: REALM, KDC, ADMIN, FILEPATH, NFS, DNSLOOKUP, FQDN, NOKEY, NOSOL, LHN, KDCVENDOR, RMAP, MAS, and PAM.

These profile entries correspond to the **-R** [*realm*], **-k** [*kdc*], **-a** [*adminuser*], **-c** [*filepath*], **-n**, **-d** [*dnsarg*], **-f** [*fqdn\_list*], **-K**, **-h** [*logical\_host\_name*], **-T** [*kdc\_vendor*], **-D** [*domain\_list*], **-m** [*master\_kdc*], and **-s** [*pam\_service*] command-line options, respectively. Any other *PARAM* entry is considered invalid and is ignored.

The NFS profile entry can have a value of 0 (do nothing) or 1 (operation is requested). Any other value is considered invalid and is ignored.

Keep in mind that the command line options override the *PARAM* values listed in the profile.

**-s** *pam\_service*

Specifies that the PAM service names, listed in *pam\_service*, are authenticated through Kerberos before any other type of authentication. Using this option updates `pam.conf(4)` to include `pam_krb5(5)` to existing authentication stacks for the specified service(s) in *pam\_service*. An example of a possible *pam\_service* value is: `gdm, sshd-kbdint`.

## Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Setting Up a Kerberos Client Using Command-Line Options

To setup a Kerberos client using the `clntconfig/admin` administrative principal for realm 'ABC.COM', `kdc 'example1.com'` and that also does kerberized NFS, enter:

```
/usr/sbin/kclient -n -R ABC.COM -k example1.com -a clntconfig
```

Alternatively, to set up a Kerberos client using the `clntconfig/admin` administrative principal for the realm 'EAST.ABC.COM', `kdc 'example2.east.abc.com'` and that also needs service principal(s) created and/or added to the local `keytab` for multiple DNS domains, enter:

```
/usr/sbin/kclient -n -R EAST.ABC.COM -k example2.east.abc.com \
-f west.abc.com,central.abc.com -a clntconfig
```

Note that the `krb5` administrative principal used by the administrator needs to have only `add`, `inquire`, `change-pwd` and `modify` privileges (for the principals in the KDC database) in order for the `kclient` utility to run. A sample `kadm5.acl(4)` entry is:

```
clntconfig/admin@ABC.COM acmi
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Setting Up a Kerberos Client Using the Profile Option

To setup a Kerberos client using the `clntconfig/admin` administrative principal for realm 'ABC.COM', kdc 'example1.com' and that also copies over the master `krb5.conf` from a specified location, enter:

```
/usr/sbin/kclient -p /net/example1.com/export/profile.krb5
```

The contents of `profile.krb5`:

```
REALM ABC.COM
KDC example1
ADMIN clntconfig
FILEPATH /net/example1.com/export/krb5.conf
NFS 0
DNSLOOKUP none
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Setting Up a Kerberos Client That Has a Dynamic IP Address

In this example a Kerberos client is a DHCP client that has a dynamic IP address. This client does not wish to host any Kerberized services and therefore does not require a `keytab (/etc/krb5/krb5.keytab)` file.

For this type of client the administrator would issue the following command to configure this machine to be a Kerberos client of the ABC.COM realm with the KDC server `kdc1.example.com`:

```
/usr/sbin/kclient -K -R EXAMPLE.COM -k kdc1.example.com
```

- Files**
- `/etc/krb5/kadm5.acl`  
Kerberos access control list (ACL) file.
  - `/etc/krb5/krb5.conf`  
Default location for the local host's configuration file.
  - `/etc/krb5/krb5.keytab`  
Default location for the local host's keytab file.
  - `/etc/nfssec.conf`  
File listing NFS security modes.
  - `/etc/resolv.conf`  
DNS resolver configuration file.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWkdcu        |

---

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Interface Stability | Committed       |

**See Also** [encrypt\(1\)](#), [ksh93\(1\)](#), [ldapdelete\(1\)](#), [ldapmodify\(1\)](#), [ldapsearch\(1\)](#), [dd\(1M\)](#), [smbadm\(1M\)](#), [kadm5.acl\(4\)](#), [krb5.conf\(4\)](#), [nfssec.conf\(4\)](#), [pam.conf\(4\)](#), [resolv.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [pam\\_krb5\(5\)](#)

**Notes** `fqdn` stands for the Fully Qualified Domain Name of the local host. The `kclient` utility saves copies of both the [krb5.conf\(4\)](#) and [nfssec.conf\(4\)](#) files to files with corresponding names and `.sav` extensions. The optional copy of the [krb5.conf\(4\)](#) master file is neither encrypted nor integrity-protected and it takes place over regular NFS.

**Name** kdb5\_ldap\_util – Kerberos configuration utility

**Synopsis** kdb5\_ldap\_util [-D *user\_dn* [-w *passwd*]] [-H *ldap\_uri*] *command*  
[*command\_options*]

**Description** The `kdb5_ldap_util` utility allows an administrator to manage realms, Kerberos services, and ticket policies. The utility offers a set of general options, described under `OPTIONS`, and a set of commands, which, in turn, have their own options. Commands and their options are described in their own subsections, below.

**Options** `kdb5_ldap_util` has a small set of general options that apply to the `kdb5_ldap_util` utility itself and a larger number of options that apply to specific commands. A number of these command-specific options apply to multiple commands and are described in their own section, below.

General Options The following general options are supported:

-D *user\_dn*

Specifies the distinguished name (DN) of a user who has sufficient rights to perform the operation on the LDAP server.

-H *ldap\_uri*

Specifies the URI of the LDAP server.

-w *passwd*

Specifies the password of *user\_dn*. This option is not recommended.

Common Command-specific Options The following options apply to a number of `kdb5_ldap_util` commands.

-subtrees *subtree\_dn\_list*

Specifies the list of subtrees containing the principals of a realm. The list contains the DNs of the subtree objects separated by a colon.

-sscope *search\_scope*

Specifies the scope for searching the principals under a subtree. The possible values are 1 or one (one level), 2 or sub (subtrees).

-containerref *container\_reference\_dn*

Specifies the DN of the container object in which the principals of a realm will be created. If the container reference is not configured for a realm, the principals will be created in the realm container.

-maxtktlife *max\_ticket\_life*

Specifies maximum ticket life for principals in this realm.

-maxrenewlife *max\_renewable\_ticket\_life*

Specifies maximum renewable life of tickets for principals in this realm.

-r *realm*

Specifies the Kerberos realm of the database; by default the realm returned by `krb5_default_local_realm(3)` is used.

**kdb5\_ldap\_util** The `kdb5_ldap_util` utility comprises a set of commands, each with its own set of options.  
**Commands** These commands are described in the following subsections.

The `create` Command The `create` command creates a realm in a directory. The command has the following syntax:

```
create \
[-subtrees subtree_dn_list]
[-sscope search_scope]
[-containerref container_reference_dn]
[-k mkeytype]
[-m|-P password] -sf stashfilename]
[-s]
[-r realm]
[-maxtktlife max_ticket_life]
[-kdc dn kdc_service_list]
[-admin dn admin_service_list]
[-maxrenewlife max_renewable_ticket_life]
[ticket_flags]
```

The `create` command has the following options:

- subtree *subtree\_dn\_list*  
See “Common Command-specific Options,” above.
- sscope *search\_scope*  
See “Common Command-specific Options,” above.
- containerref *container\_reference\_dn*  
See “Common Command-specific Options,” above.
- k *mkeytype*  
Specifies the key type of the master key in the database; the default is that given in `kdc.conf(4)`.
- m  
Specifies that the master database password should be read from the TTY rather than fetched from a file on the disk.
- P *password*  
Specifies the master database password. This option is not recommended.
- sf *stashfilename*  
Specifies the stash file of the master database password.
- s  
Specifies that the stash file is to be created.
- maxtktlife *max\_ticket\_life*  
See “Common Command-specific Options,” above.
- maxrenewlife *max\_renewable\_ticket\_life*  
See “Common Command-specific Options,” above.

-r *realm*

See “Common Command-specific Options,” above.

*ticket\_flags*

Specifies the ticket flags. If this option is not specified, by default, none of the flags are set. This means all the ticket options will be allowed and no restriction will be set. See “Ticket Flags” for a list and descriptions of these flags.

The `modify` Command The `modify` command modifies the attributes of a realm. The command has the following syntax:

```
modify \
[-subtrees subtree_dn_list]
[-sscope search_scope]
[-containerref container_reference_dn]
[-r realm]
[-maxttlifetime max_ticket_life]
[-maxrenewlife max_renewable_ticket_life]
[ticket_flags]
```

The `modify` command has the following options:

-subtree *subtree\_dn\_list*

See “Common Command-specific Options,” above.

-sscope *search\_scope*

See “Common Command-specific Options,” above.

-containerref *container\_reference\_dn*

See “Common Command-specific Options,” above.

-maxttlifetime *max\_ticket\_life*

See “Common Command-specific Options,” above.

-maxrenewlife *max\_renewable\_ticket\_life*

See “Common Command-specific Options,” above.

-r *realm*

See “Common Command-specific Options,” above.

*ticket\_flags*

Specifies the ticket flags. If this option is not specified, by default, none of the flags are set. This means all the ticket options will be allowed and no restriction will be set. See “Ticket Flags” for a list and descriptions of these flags.

The `view` Command The `view` command displays the attributes of a realm. The command has the following syntax:

```
view [-r realm]
```

The `view` command has the following option:

*-r realm*  
See “Common Command-specific Options,” above.

The `destroy` Command The `destroy` command destroys a realm, including the master key stash file. The command has the following syntax:

```
destroy [-f] [-r realm]
```

The `destroy` command has the following options:

*-f*  
If specified, `destroy` does not prompt you for confirmation.

*-r realm*  
See “Common Command-specific Options,” above.

The `list` Command The `list` command displays the names of realms. The command has the following syntax:

```
list
```

The `list` command has no options.

The `stashrvpw` Command The `stashrvpw` command enables you to store the password for service object in a file so that a KDC and Administration server can use it to authenticate to the LDAP server. The command has the following syntax:

```
stashrvpw [-f filename] servicedn
```

The `stashrvpw` command has the following option and argument:

*-f filename*  
Specifies the complete path of the service password file. The default is:

```
/var/krb5/service_passwd
```

*servicedn*  
Specifies the distinguished name (DN) of the service object whose password is to be stored in file.

The `create_policy` Command The `create_policy` command creates a ticket policy in a directory. The command has the following syntax:

```
create_policy \
[-r realm]
[-maxtktlife max_ticket_life]
[-maxrenewlife max_renewable_ticket_life]
[ticket_flags]
policy_name
```

The `create_policy` command has the following options:

*-r realm*  
See “Common Command-specific Options,” above.

`-maxttl` *max\_ticket\_life*

See “Common Command-specific Options,” above.

`-maxrenew` *max\_renewable\_ticket\_life*

See “Common Command-specific Options,” above.

*ticket\_flags*

Specifies the ticket flags. If this option is not specified, by default, none of the flags are set.

This means all the ticket options will be allowed and no restriction will be set. See “Ticket Flags” for a list and descriptions of these flags.

*policy\_name*

Specifies the name of the ticket policy.

The `modify_policy` Command The `modify_policy` command modifies the attributes of a ticket policy. The command has the following syntax:

```
modify_policy \
[-r realm]
[-maxttl max_ticket_life]
[-maxrenew max_renewable_ticket_life]
[ticket_flags]
policy_name
```

The `modify_policy` command has the same options and argument as those for the `create_policy` command.

The `view_policy` Command The `view_policy` command displays the attributes of a ticket policy. The command has the following syntax:

```
view_policy [-r realm] policy_name
```

The `view_policy` command has the following options:

`-r realm`

See “Common Command-specific Options,” above.

*policy\_name*

Specifies the name of the ticket policy.

The `destroy_policy` Command The `destroy_policy` command destroys an existing ticket policy. The command has the following syntax:

```
destroy_policy [-r realm] [-force] policy_name
```

The `destroy_policy` command has the following options:

`-r realm`

See “Common Command-specific Options,” above.



- force  
Forces the deletion of the policy object. If not specified, you will be prompted for confirmation before the policy is deleted. Enter yes to confirm the deletion.

*policy\_name*  
Specifies the name of the ticket policy.

The `list_policy` Command The `list_policy` command lists the ticket policies in the default or a specified realm. The command has the following syntax:

```
list_policy [-r realm]
```

The `list_policy` command has the following option:

-r *realm*  
See “Common Command-specific Options,” above.

**Ticket Flags** A number of `kdb5_ldap_util` commands have `ticket_flag` options. These flags are described as follows:

```
{-|+}allow_dup_skey
 -allow_dup_skey disables user-to-user authentication for principals by prohibiting
 principals from obtaining a session key for another user. This setting sets the
 KRB5_KDB_DISALLOW_DUP_SKEY flag. +allow_dup_skey clears this flag.

{-|+}allow_forwardable
 -allow_forwardable prohibits principals from obtaining forwardable tickets. This setting
 sets the KRB5_KDB_DISALLOW_FORWARDABLE flag. +allow_forwardable clears this flag.

{-|+}allow_postdated
 -allow_postdated prohibits principals from obtaining postdated tickets. This setting sets
 the KRB5_KDB_DISALLOW_POSTDATED flag. +allow_postdated clears this flag.

{-|+}allow_proxiabile
 -allow_proxiabile prohibits principals from obtaining proxiabile tickets. This setting sets
 the KRB5_KDB_DISALLOW_PROXIABLE flag. +allow_proxiabile clears this flag.

{-|+}allow_renewable
 -allow_renewable prohibits principals from obtaining renewable tickets. This setting sets
 the KRB5_KDB_DISALLOW_RENEWABLE flag. +allow_renewable clears this flag.

{-|+}allow_svr
 -allow_svr prohibits the issuance of service tickets for principals. This setting sets the
 KRB5_KDB_DISALLOW_SVR flag. +allow_svr clears this flag.

{-|+}allow_tgs_req
 -allow_tgs_req specifies that a Ticket-Granting Service (TGS) request for a service ticket
 for principals is not permitted. This option is useless for most purposes. +allow_tgs_req
 clears this flag. The default is +allow_tgs_req. In effect, -allow_tgs_req sets the
 KRB5_KDB_DISALLOW_TGT_BASED flag on principals in the database.
```

**{- |+}allow\_tix**  
 -allow\_tix forbids the issuance of any tickets for principals. +allow\_tix clears this flag. The default is +allow\_tix. In effect, -allow\_tix sets the KRB5\_KDB\_DISALLOW\_ALL\_TIX flag on principals in the database.

**{- |+}needchange**  
 +needchange sets a flag in the attributes field to force a password change; -needchange clears that flag. The default is -needchange. In effect, +needchange sets the KRB5\_KDB\_REQUIRES\_PWCHANGE flag on principals in the database.

**{- |+}password\_changing\_service**  
 +password\_changing\_service sets a flag in the attributes field marking a principal as a password-change-service principal (a designation that is most often not useful). -password\_changing\_service clears the flag. That this flag has a long name is intentional. The default is -password\_changing\_service. In effect, +password\_changing\_service sets the KRB5\_KDB\_PWCHANGE\_SERVICE flag on principals in the database.

**{- |+}requires\_hwauth**  
 +requires\_hwauth requires principals to preauthenticate using a hardware device before being allowed to **kinit(1)**. This setting sets the KRB5\_KDB\_REQUIRES\_HW\_AUTH flag. -requires\_hwauth clears this flag.

**{- |+}requires\_preauth**  
 +requires\_preauth requires principals to preauthenticate before being allowed to **kinit(1)**. This setting sets the KRB5\_KDB\_REQUIRES\_PRE\_AUTH flag. -requires\_preauth clears this flag.

### Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Using create

The following is an example of the use of the **create** command.

```
kdb5_ldap_util -D cn=admin,o=org -H ldaps://ldap-server1.mit.edu \
create -subtrees o=org -sscope SUB -r ATHENA.MIT.EDU
Password for "cn=admin,o=org": password entered
Initializing database for realm 'ATHENA.MIT.EDU'
You will be prompted for the database Master Password.
It is important that you NOT FORGET this password.
Enter KDC database master key: master key entered
Re-enter KDC database master key to verify: master key re-enteredjjjjjj
```

### **EXAMPLE 2** Using modify

The following is an example of the use of the **modify** command.

```
kdb5_ldap_util -D cn=admin,o=org -H ldaps://ldap-server1.mit.edu \
modify +requires_preauth -r ATHENA.MIT.EDU
Password for "cn=admin,o=org": password entered
Password for "cn=admin,o=org": password entered
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Using view

The following is an example of the use of the view command.

```
kdb5_ldap_util -D cn=admin,o=org -H ldaps://ldap-server1.mit.edu \
view -r ATHENA.MIT.EDU
 Password for "cn=admin,o=org":
 Realm Name: ATHENA.MIT.EDU
 Subtree: ou=users,o=org
 Subtree: ou=servers,o=org
 SearchScope: ONE
 Maximum ticket life: 0 days 01:00:00
 Maximum renewable life: 0 days 10:00:00
 Ticket flags: DISALLOW_FORWARDABLE REQUIRES_PWCHANGE
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Using destroy

The following is an example of the use of the destroy command.

```
kdb5_ldap_util -D cn=admin,o=org -H ldaps://ldap-server1.mit.edu \
destroy -r ATHENA.MIT.EDU
Password for "cn=admin,o=org": password entered
Deleting KDC database of 'ATHENA.MIT.EDU', are you sure?
(type 'yes' to confirm)? yes
OK, deleting database of 'ATHENA.MIT.EDU'...
```

**EXAMPLE 5** Using list

The following is an example of the use of the list command.

```
kdb5_ldap_util -D cn=admin,o=org -H ldaps://ldap-server1.mit.edu list
Password for "cn=admin,o=org": password entered
Re-enter Password for "cn=admin,o=org": password re-entered
ATHENA.MIT.EDU
OPENLDAP.MIT.EDU
MEDIA-LAB.MIT.EDU
```

**EXAMPLE 6** Using stasshrwpw

The following is an example of the use of the stasshrwpw command.

```
kdb5_ldap_util stasshrwpw -f \
/home/andrew/conf_keyfile cn=service-kdc,o=org
Password for "cn=service-kdc,o=org": password entered
Re-enter password for "cn=service-kdc,o=org": password re-entered
```

**EXAMPLE 7** Using `create_policy`

The following is an example of the use of the `create_policy` command.

```
kdb5_ldap_util -D cn=admin,o=org -H ldaps://ldap-server1.mit.edu \
create_policy -r ATHENA.MIT.EDU \
-maxtktlife "1 day" -maxrenewlife "1 week" \
-allow_postdated +needchange -allow_forwardable tktpolicy
Password for "cn=admin,o=org": password entered
```

**EXAMPLE 8** Using `modify_policy`

The following is an example of the use of the `modify_policy` command.

```
kdb5_ldap_util -D cn=admin,o=org -H ldaps://ldap-server1.mit.edu \
modify_policy -r ATHENA.MIT.EDU \
-maxtktlife "60 minutes" -maxrenewlife "10 hours" \
+allow_postdated -requires_preauth tktpolicy
Password for "cn=admin,o=org": password entered
```

**EXAMPLE 9** Using `view_policy`

The following is an example of the use of the `view_policy` command.

```
kdb5_ldap_util -D cn=admin,o=org -H ldaps://ldap-server1.mit.edu \
view_policy -r ATHENA.MIT.EDU tktpolicy
Password for "cn=admin,o=org": password entered
 Ticket policy: tktpolicy
 Maximum ticket life: 0 days 01:00:00
 Maximum renewable life: 0 days 10:00:00
 Ticket flags: DISALLOW_FORWARDABLE REQUIRES_PWCHANGE
```

**EXAMPLE 10** Using `destroy_policy`

The following is an example of the use of the `destroy_policy` command.

```
kdb5_ldap_util -D cn=admin,o=org -H ldaps://ldap-server1.mit.edu \
destroy_policy -r ATHENA.MIT.EDU tktpolicy
Password for "cn=admin,o=org": password entered
This will delete the policy object 'tktpolicy', are you sure?
(type 'yes' to confirm)? yes
** policy object 'tktpolicy' deleted.
```

**EXAMPLE 11** Using `list_policy`

The following is an example of the use of the `list_policy` command.

**EXAMPLE 11** Using `list_policy` (Continued)

```
kdb5_ldap_util -D cn=admin,o=org -H ldaps://ldap-server1.mit.edu \
list_policy -r ATHENA.MIT.EDU
Password for "cn=admin,o=org": password entered
tktpolicy
tmppolicy
userpolicy
```

**EXAMPLE 12** Using `setsrvpw`

The following is an example of the use of the `setsrvpw` command.

```
kdb5_ldap_util setsrvpw -D cn=admin,o=org setsrvpw \
-fileonly -f /home/andrew/conf_keyfile cn=service-kdc,o=org
Password for "cn=admin,o=org": password entered
Password for "cn=service-kdc,o=org": password entered
Re-enter password for "cn=service-kdc,o=org": password re-entered
```

**EXAMPLE 13** Using `create_service`

The following is an example of the use of the `create_service` command.

```
kdb5_ldap_util -D cn=admin,o=org create_service \
-kdc -randpw -f /home/andrew/conf_keyfile cn=service-kdc,o=org
Password for "cn=admin,o=org": password entered
File does not exist. Creating the file /home/andrew/conf_keyfile...
```

**EXAMPLE 14** Using `modify_service`

The following is an example of the use of the `modify_service` command.

```
kdb5_ldap_util -D cn=admin,o=org modify_service \
-realm ATHENA.MIT.EDU cn=service-kdc,o=org
Password for "cn=admin,o=org": password entered
Changing rights for the service object. Please wait ... done
```

**EXAMPLE 15** Using `view_service`

The following is an example of the use of the `view_service` command.

```
kdb5_ldap_util -D cn=admin,o=org view_service \
cn=service-kdc,o=org
Password for "cn=admin,o=org": password entered
 Service dn: cn=service-kdc,o=org
 Service type: kdc
 Service host list:
```

**EXAMPLE 15** Using `view_service` (Continued)

```
Realm DN list: cn=ATHENA.MIT.EDU,cn=Kerberos,cn=Security
```

**EXAMPLE 16** Using `destroy_service`

The following is an example of the use of the `destroy_service` command.

```
kdb5_ldap_util -D cn=admin,o=org destroy_service \
cn=service-kdc,o=org
Password for "cn=admin,o=org": password entered
This will delete the service object 'cn=service-kdc,o=org', are you sure?
(type 'yes' to confirm)? yes
** service object 'cn=service-kdc,o=org' deleted.
```

**EXAMPLE 17** Using `list_service`

The following is an example of the use of the `list_service` command.

```
kdb5_ldap_util -D cn=admin,o=org list_service
Password for "cn=admin,o=org": password entered
cn=service-kdc,o=org
cn=service-adm,o=org
cn=service-pwd,o=org
```

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWkrbu        |
| Interface Stability | Volatile        |

**See Also** [kinit\(1\)](#), [kadmin\(1M\)](#), [kdc.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** kdb5\_util – Kerberos Database maintenance utility

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/kdb5\_util [-d *dbname*] [-f *stashfile\_name*]  
 [-k *mkeytype*] [-m ] [-M *mkeyname*] [-P *password*] [-r *realm*]  
 [-x *db\_args*]... *cmd*

**Description** The kdb5\_util utility enables you to create, dump, load, and destroy the Kerberos V5 database. You can also use kdb5\_util to create a stash file containing the Kerberos database master key.

**Options** The following options are supported:

-d *dbname*

Specify the database name. .db is appended to whatever name is specified. You can specify an absolute path. If you do not specify the -d option, the default database name is /var/krb5/principal.

-f *stashfile\_name*

Specify the stash file name. You can specify an absolute path.

-k *mkeytype*

Specify the master key type. Valid values are des3-cbc-sha1, des-cbc-crc, des-cbc-md5, des-cbc-raw, arcfour-hmac-md5, arcfour-hmac-md5-exp, aes128-cts-hmac-sha1-96, and aes256-cts-hmac-sha1-96.

-m

Enter the master key manually.

-M *mkeyname*

Specify the master key name.

-P *password*

Use the specified *password* instead of the stash file.

-r *realm*

Use *realm* as the default database realm.

-x *db\_args*

Pass database-specific arguments to kadmin. Supported arguments are for LDAP and the Berkeley-db2 plug-in. These arguments are:

binddn=*binddn*

LDAP simple bind DN for authorization on the directory server. Overrides the ldap\_kadmin\_dn parameter setting in *krb5.conf*(4).

bindpwd=*bindpwd*

Bind password.

dbname=*name*

For the Berkeley-db2 plug-in, specifies a name for the Kerberos database.

`nconns=num`  
Maximum number of server connections.

`port=num`  
Directory server connection port.

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

*cmd*

Specifies whether to create, destroy, dump, or load the database, or to create a stash file.

You can specify the following commands:

`create -s`

Creates the database specified by the `-d` option. You will be prompted for the database master password. If you specify `-s`, a stash file is created as specified by the `-f` option. If you did not specify `-f`, the default stash file name is `/var/krb5/.k5.realm`. If you use the `-f`, `-k`, or `-M` options when you create a database, then you must use the same options when modifying or destroying the database.

`destroy`

Destroys the database specified by the `-d` option.

`stash`

Creates a stash file. If `-f` was not specified, the default stash file name is `/var/krb5/.k5.realm`. You will be prompted for the master database password. This command is useful when you want to generate the stash file from the password.

`dump [-old] [-b6] [-b7] [-ov] [-verbose] [-mkey_convert] [-new_mkey_file mkey_file]`  
`[-rev] [-recurse] [filename [principals...]]`

Dumps the current Kerberos and KADM5 database into an ASCII file. By default, the database is dumped in current format, “`kdb5_util load_dumpversion 5`”. If *filename* is not specified or is the string “-”, the dump is sent to standard output. Options are as follows:

`-old`

Causes the dump to be in the Kerberos 5 Beta 5 and earlier dump format (“`kdb5_edit load_dump version 2.0`”).

`-b6`

Causes the dump to be in the Kerberos 5 Beta 6 format (“`kdb5_edit load_dump version 3.0`”).

`-b7`

Causes the dump to be in the Kerberos 5 Beta 7 format (“`kdb5_util load_dump version 4`”). This was the dump format produced on releases prior to 1.2.2.

`-ov`

Causes the dump to be in `ovsec_adm_export` format.



- verbose  
Causes the name of each principal and policy to be displayed as it is dumped.
- mkey\_convert  
Prompts for a new master key. This new master key will be used to re-encrypt the key data in the dumpfile. The key data in the database will not be changed.
- new\_mkey\_file *mkey\_file*  
The filename of a stash file. The master key in this stash file will be used to re-encrypt the key data in the dumpfile. The key data in the database will not be changed.
- rev  
Dumps in reverse order. This might recover principals that do not dump normally, in cases where database corruption has occurred.
- recurse  
Causes the dump to walk the database recursively (bt ree only). This might recover principals that do not dump normally, in cases where database corruption has occurred. In cases of such corruption, this option will probably retrieve more principals than will the -rev option.

`load [-old] [-b6] [-b7] [-ov] [-hash] [-verbose] [-update] filename dbname  
[admin_dbname]`

Loads a database dump from *filename* into *dbname*. Unless the -old or -b6 option is specified, the format of the dump file is detected automatically and handled appropriately. Unless the -update option is specified, load creates a new database containing only the principals in the dump file, overwriting the contents of any existing database. The -old option requires the database to be in the Kerberos 5 Beta 5 or earlier format (“kdb5\_edit load\_dump version 2.0”).

- b6  
Requires the database to be in the Kerberos 5 Beta 6 format (“kdb5\_edit load\_dump version 3.0”).
- b7  
Requires the database to be in the Kerberos 5 Beta 7 format (“kdb5\_util load\_dump version 4”).
- ov  
Requires the database to be in ovsec\_adm\_import format. Must be used with the -update option.
- hash  
Requires the database to be stored as a hash. If this option is not specified, the database will be stored as a bt ree. This option is not recommended, as databases stored in hash format are known to corrupt data and lose principals.
- verbose  
Causes the name of each principal and policy to be displayed as it is dumped.

**-update**

Records from the dump file are added to or updated in the existing database. Otherwise, a new database is created containing only what is in the dump file and the old one is destroyed upon successful completion.

*filename*

Required argument that specifies a path to a file containing database dump.

*dbname*

Required argument that overrides the value specified on the command line or overrides the default.

*admin\_dbname*

Optional argument that is derived from *dbname* if not specified.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Creating File that Contains Information about Two Principals

The following example creates a file named `slavedata` that contains the information about two principals, `jdb@ACME.COM` and `pak@ACME.COM`.

```
/usr/krb5/bin/kdb5_util dump -verbose slavedata
jdb@ACME.COM pak@ACME.COM
```

**Files** /var/krb5/principal

Kerberos principal database.

/var/krb5/principal.kadm5

Kerberos administrative database. Contains policy information.

/var/krb5/principal.kadm5.lock

Lock file for the Kerberos administrative database. This file works backwards from most other lock files (that is, `kadmin` exits with an error if this file does not exist).

/var/krb5/principal.ulog

The update log file for incremental propagation.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWkdcu        |
| Interface Stability | Evolving        |

**See Also** [kpasswd\(1\)](#), [gkadmin\(1M\)](#), [kadmin\(1M\)](#), [kadmind\(1M\)](#), [kadmin.local\(1M\)](#), [kdb5\\_ldap\\_util\(1M\)](#), [kproplog\(1M\)](#), [kadm5.acl\(4\)](#), [kdc.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [kerberos\(5\)](#)

**Name** kdcmgr – set up a Kerberos Key Distribution Center (KDC)

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/kdcmgr [-a *admprincipal*] [-e *enctype*]  
[-h] [-p *pwfile*] [-r *realm*] *subcommand*

**Description** Use the kdcmgr utility to do the following:

- Configure a master Key Distribution Center (KDC) server.
- Configure a slave KDC. This assumes that a master KDC has already been configured. The default propagation method configured is incremental propagation. See [kpropd\(1M\)](#).
- Specify a list of slave KDCs to configure service principals and create access control list for those slaves on the master KDC.

If you specify no options, kdcmgr prompts you for required information, including a password to generate the master key and a password for the administrative principal. When you specify sufficient options, you are still prompted for these passwords, unless you specified the -p *pwfile* option.

The kdcmgr utility must be run as superuser or by someone who has the Primary Administrator role. The command must be run on the server from which it is invoked.

Note that kdcmgr requires the user to enter sensitive information, such as the password used to generate the database's master key and the password for the administrative principal. Great care must be taken to ensure that the connection to the server is secured over the network, by using a protocol such as [ssh\(1\)](#).

You must also exercise great care when selecting the administrative and master key passwords. They should be derived from non-dictionary words and a long string of characters consisting of all of the following character classes:

- special characters (for example, !@#\$%^&\*)
- numerals (0-9)
- uppercase letters
- lowercase letters

**Options** The following options are supported:

-a *admprincipal*

When creating a master KDC, specifies the administrative principal, *admprincipal*, that will be created.

When creating a slave KDC, *admprincipal* is used to authenticate as the administrative principal.

If you omit -a, the suggested default administrative principal name is the output of [logname\(1\)](#) appended by /admin.

**-e *enctype***

Specifies the encryption type to be used when creating the key for the master key, which is used to encrypt all principal keys in the database. The set of valid encryption types used here are described in [krb5.conf\(4\)](#) under the `permitted_encytypes` option. Note that the encryption type specified here must be supported on all KDCs or else they will not be able to decrypt any of the principal keys. Solaris 9 and earlier releases support only the `des-cbc-crc` encryption type for the master key. Therefore, if any of the master or slave KDCs are of these older releases, then `-e des-cbc-crc` would need to be specified on all KDCs configured with `kdcmgr`.

The default encryption type is `aes128-cts-hmac-sha1-96`.

**-h**

Displays usage information for `kdcmgr`.

**-p *pwfile***

Provides the location of the password file that contains the password used to create the administrative principal and/or master key.

*Warning:* This option should be used with great care. Make sure that this *pwfile* is accessible only by a privileged user and on a local file system. Once the KDC has been configured, you should remove *pwfile*.

**-r *realm***

Set the default realm for this server.

If the `-r` option is not specified, `kdcmgr` attempts to obtain the machine's local domain name by submitting the canonical form of the machine's host name to DNS and using the return value to derive the domain name. If successful, the domain name is converted to uppercase and proposed as the default realm name.

**Subcommands** The following subcommands are supported:

`create [ master ]`

`create [ -m masterkdc ] slave`

Creates a KDC. If no option is specified, an attempt to create a master KDC is made.

`create [ master ]`

Create a master KDC. Upon successful configuration the [krb5kdc\(1M\)](#) and [kadmind\(1M\)](#) are enabled on the machine.

`create [ -m masterkdc ] slave`

Configures a slave KDC. After configuration, the [krb5kdc\(1M\)](#) and [kpropd\(1M\)](#) services are enabled on the machine.

*masterkdc* specifies the master KDC to authenticate and with which to perform administrative tasks. If the `-m` option is not specified, you are prompted for a master KDC host name.

**destroy**

Remove all Kerberos configuration and database files associated with the KDC server. A confirmation is required before these files are deleted.

**status**

Determines the role of the KDC, master or slave, and outputs this and the state of such associated processes as:

- [krb5kdc\(1M\)](#)
- [kadmind\(1M\)](#)
- [kpropd\(1M\)](#)

The subcommand also displays information on incremental propagation if the configuration has this feature enabled, as well as any issues with dependent files.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Setting up a Master KDC

The following command configures a master KDC with the administrative principal `user1/admin` and with the realm name `EXAMPLE.COM`:

```
$ kdcmgr -a user1/admin -r EXAMPLE.COM create
```

Note that a password will be required to assign to the newly created `user1/admin` principal. The password for the master key will also need to be provided.

## EXAMPLE 2 Setting up a Slave KDC

The following command configures a slave KDC, authenticates with the administrative principal `user1/admin`, specifies `kdc1` as the master, and uses the `EXAMPLE.COM` realm name:

```
$ kdcmgr -a user1/admin -r EXAMPLE.COM create -m kdc1 slave
```

Note that you must enter the correct password for `user1/admin` and that the master KDC must already have been created before entering this command. The correct password for the master key is also required.

- Files**
- `/etc/krb5/krb5.conf`  
Main Kerberos configuration file.
  - `/etc/krb5/kdc.conf`  
KDC configuration, used by both master and slave servers.
  - `/etc/krb5/krb5.keytab`  
Default location of the local host's service keys.
  - `/etc/krb5/kadm5.acl`  
Kerberos administrative access control list (ACL).
  - `/etc/krb5/kadm5.keytab`  
Service keys specific to [kadmind\(1M\)](#).

`/var/krb5/principal`  
Kerberos principal database.

`/var/krb5/principal.kadm5`  
Kerberos policy database.

`/etc/krb5/kpropd.acl`  
Used by slaves to indicate from which server to receive updates.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWkdcu        |
| Interface Stability | See below       |

The command line interface (CLI) is Uncommitted. The CLI output is Not an Interface.

**See Also** [logname\(1\)](#), [ssh\(1\)](#), [kadmin\(1M\)](#), [kadmind\(1M\)](#), [kdb5\\_util\(1M\)](#), [kdb5\\_ldap\\_util\(1M\)](#), [kpropd\(1M\)](#), [krb5kdc\(1M\)](#), [ping\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [kdc.conf\(4\)](#), [krb5.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** kernel – UNIX system executable file containing basic operating system services

**Synopsis** kernel-name [-asrvx] [-m *smf\_options*] [-i *altinit*]

**Description** The operating system image, or kernel, is the collection of software comprising the image files (`unix` and `genunix`) and the modules loaded at any instant in time. The system will not function without a kernel to control it.

The kernel is loaded by the [boot\(1M\)](#) command in a machine-specific way. The kernel may be loaded from disk, CD-ROM, or DVD (`diskfull` boot) or over the network (`diskless` boot). In either case, the directories under `/platform` and `/kernel` must be readable and must contain executable code which is able to perform the required kernel service. If the `-a` flag is given, the user is able to supply different pathnames for the default locations of the kernel and modules. See [boot\(1M\)](#) for more information on loading a specific kernel.

The `moddir` variable contains a list of module directories separated by whitespace. `moddir` can be set in the `/etc/system` file. The minimal default is:

```
/platform/platform-name/kernel /kernel /usr/kernel
```

This default can be supplemented by a specific platform. It is common for many SPARC systems to override the default path with:

```
/platform/platform-name/kernel:/platform/hardware-class-name\
/kernel:/kernel:/usr/kernel
```

where *platform-name* can be found using the `-i` option of [uname\(1\)](#), and *hardware-class-name* can be found using the `-m` option of [uname\(1\)](#).

The kernel configuration can be controlled using the `/etc/system` file (see [system\(4\)](#)).

`genunix` is the platform-independent component of the base kernel.

**Options** The following options are supported:

`-a`

Asks the user for configuration information, such as where to find the system file, where to mount root, and even override the name of the kernel itself. Default responses will be contained in square brackets ([ ]), and the user may simply enter RETURN to use the default response (note that RETURN is labeled ENTER on some keyboards). To help repair a damaged `/etc/system` file, enter `/dev/null` at the prompt that asks for the pathname of the system configuration file. See [system\(4\)](#).

`-i altinit`

Select an alternative executable to be the primordial process. *altinit* must be a valid path to an executable. The default primordial process is [init\(1M\)](#).

`-m smf_options`

The *smf\_options* include two categories of options to control booting behavior of the service management facility: recovery options and messages options.

Message options determine the type and amount of messages that [smf\(5\)](#) displays during boot. Service options determine the services which are used to boot the system.

#### Recovery options

##### *debug*

Prints standard per-service output and all `svc.startd` messages to log.

##### *milestone=[milestone]*

Boot with some SMF services temporarily disabled, as indicated by *milestone*. *milestone* can be “none”, “single-user”, “multi-user”, “multi-user-server”, or “all”. See the *milestone* subcommand of [svcadm\(1M\)](#).

#### Messages options

##### *quiet*

Prints standard per-service output and error messages requiring administrative intervention.

##### *verbose*

Prints standard per-service output with more informational messages.

-r

Reconfiguration boot. The system will probe all attached hardware devices and configure the logical namespace in `/dev`. See [add\\_drv\(1M\)](#) and [rem\\_drv\(1M\)](#) for additional information about maintaining device drivers.

-s

Boots only to init level 's'. See [init\(1M\)](#).

-v

Boots with verbose messages enabled. If this flag is not given, the messages are still printed, but the output is directed to the system logfile. See [syslogd\(1M\)](#).

-x

Does not boot in clustered mode. This option only has an effect when a version of Sun Cluster software that supports this option has been installed.

**Examples** See [boot\(1M\)](#) for examples and instructions on how to boot.

#### **Files** /kernel

Contains kernel components common to all platforms within a particular instruction set that are needed for booting the system. of the core image file.

`/platform/platform-name/kernel`

The platform-specific kernel components.

`/platform/hardware-class-name/kernel`

The kernel components specific to this hardware class.



`/usr/kernel`

Contains kernel components common to all platforms within a particular instruction set.

The directories in this section can potentially contain the following subdirectories:

`drv`

Loadable device drivers

`exec`

The modules that execute programs stored in various file formats.

`fs`

File system modules

`misc`

Miscellaneous system-related modules

`sched`

Operating system schedulers

`strmod`

System V STREAMS loadable modules

`sys`

Loadable system calls

SPARC `cpu`

Processor specific modules

`tod`

Time-Of-Day hardware interface modules

As only 64-bit SPARC platforms are supported, all SPARC executable modules are contained within `sparcv9` directories in the directories listed above.

x86 `mach`

x86 hardware support

Modules comprising the 32-bit x86 kernel are contained in the above directories, with the 64-bit x86 kernel components contained within `amd64` subdirectories.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE   |
|----------------|-------------------|
| Availability   | SUNWcar, SUNWcarx |

**See Also** [kmdb\(1\)](#), [uname\(1\)](#), [isainfo\(1\)](#), [add\\_drv\(1M\)](#), [boot\(1M\)](#), [init\(1M\)](#), [rem\\_drv\(1M\)](#), [savecore\(1M\)](#), [svc.startd\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [syslogd\(1M\)](#), [system\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [devfs\(7FS\)](#)

SPARC Only [monitor\(1M\)](#)

**Diagnostics** The kernel gives various warnings and error messages. If the kernel detects an unrecoverable fault, it will panic or halt.

**Notes** Reconfiguration boot will, by design, not remove /dev entries for some classes of devices that have been physically removed from the system.

**Name** keyserv – server for storing private encryption keys

**Synopsis** keyserv [-c] [-d | -e] [-D] [-n] [-s *sizespec*]

**Description** keyserv is a daemon that is used for storing the private encryption keys of each user logged into the system. These encryption keys are used for accessing secure network services such as secure NFS.

Normally, root's key is read from the file `/etc/.rootkey` when the daemon is started. This is useful during power-fail reboots when no one is around to type a password.

keyserv does not start up if the system does not have a secure rpc domain configured. Set up the domain name by using the `/usr/bin/domainname` command. Usually the `svc:/system/identity:domain` service reads the domain from `/etc/defaultdomain`. Invoking the `domainname` command without arguments tells you if you have a domain set up.

The `/etc/default/keyserv` file contains the following default parameter settings. See [Files](#).

|                                 |                                                                                                                                                                          |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>ENABLE_NOBODY_KEYS</code> | Specifies whether default keys for nobody are used.                                                                                                                      |
|                                 | <code>ENABLE_NOBODY_KEYS=NO</code> is equivalent to the <code>-d</code> command-line option. The default value for <code>ENABLE_NOBODY_KEYS</code> is <code>YES</code> . |

**Options** The following options are supported:

- c Do not use disk caches. This option overrides any `-s` option.
- D Run in debugging mode and log all requests to keyserv.
- d Disable the use of default keys for nobody. See [Files](#).
- e Enable the use of default keys for nobody. This is the default behavior. See [Files](#).
- n Root's secret key is not read from `/etc/.rootkey`. Instead, keyserv prompts the user for the password to decrypt root's key stored in the `publickey` database and then stores the decrypted key in `/etc/.rootkey` for future use. This option is useful if the `/etc/.rootkey` file ever gets out of date or corrupted.
- s *sizespec* Specify the size of the extended Diffie-Hellman common key disk caches. The *sizespec* can be one of the following forms:
 

|                            |                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>mechtype=size</code> | <code>size</code> is an integer specifying the maximum number of entries in the cache, or an integer immediately followed by the letter <i>M</i> , denoting the maximum size in MB. |
| <code>size</code>          | This form of <i>sizespec</i> applies to all caches.                                                                                                                                 |

Note that the `des` mechanism, `AUTH_DES`, does not use a disk cache.

**Files** /etc/.rootkey

/etc/default/keyserv      Contains default settings. You can use command-line options to override these settings.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWcsu         |

**See Also** [keylogin\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [keylogout\(1\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [publickey\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

**Notes** The keyserv service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/rpc/keyserv:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

**Name** killall – kill all active processes

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/killall [*signal*]

**Description** killall is used by [shutdown\(1M\)](#) to kill all active processes not directly related to the shutdown procedure.

killall terminates all processes with open files so that the mounted file systems will be unbusied and can be unmounted.

killall sends *signal* (see [kill\(1\)](#)) to the active processes. If no *signal* is specified, a default of 15 is used.

The killall command can be run only by the super-user.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWcsu         |

**See Also** [kill\(1\)](#), [ps\(1\)](#), [fuser\(1M\)](#), [shutdown\(1M\)](#), [signal\(3C\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** kprop – Kerberos database propagation program

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/krb5/kprop [-d] [-f *file*] [-p *port-number*]  
[-r *realm*] [-s *keytab*] [*host*]

**Description** kprop is a command-line utility used for propagating a Kerberos database from a master KDC to a slave KDC. This command must be run on the master KDC. See the *Solaris System Administration Guide, Vol. 6* on how to set up periodic propagation between the master KDC and slave KDCs.

To propagate a Kerberos database, the following conditions must be met:

- The slave KDCs must have an `/etc/krb5/kpropd.acl` file that contains the principals for the master KDC and all the slave KDCs.
- A keytab containing a host principal entry must exist on each slave KDC.
- The database to be propagated must be dumped to a file using `kdb5_util(1M)`.

**Options** The following options are supported:

|                       |                                                                                                |
|-----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -d                    | Enable debug mode. Default is debug mode disabled.                                             |
| -f <i>file</i>        | File to be sent to the slave KDC. Default is the <code>/var/krb5/slave_dataatrans</code> file. |
| -p <i>port-number</i> | Propagate <i>port-number</i> . Default is port 754.                                            |
| -r <i>realm</i>       | Realm where propagation will occur. Default <i>realm</i> is the local realm.                   |
| -s <i>keytab</i>      | Location of the keytab. Default location is <code>/etc/krb5/krb5.keytab</code> .               |

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

*host* Name of the slave KDC.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Propagating the Kerberos Database

The following example propagates the Kerberos database from the `/tmp/slave_data` file to the slave KDC `london`. The machine `london` must have a host principal keytab entry and the `kpropd.acl` file must contain an entry for the all the KDCs.

```
kprop -f /tmp/slave_data london
```

|              |                                         |                                                                |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Files</b> | <code>/etc/krb5/kpropd.acl</code>       | List of principals of all the KDCs; resides on each slave KDC. |
|              | <code>/etc/krb5/krb5.keytab</code>      | Keytab for Kerberos clients.                                   |
|              | <code>/var/krb5/slave_dataatrans</code> | Kerberos database propagated to the KDC slaves.                |

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWkdcu        |

**See Also** [kpasswd\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [gkadmin\(1M\)](#), [inetadm\(1M\)](#), [inetd\(1M\)](#), [kadmind\(1M\)](#), [kadmin.local\(1M\)](#), [kdb5\\_util\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [kadm5.acl\(4\)](#), [kdc.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [kerberos\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

*System Administration Guide: Security Services*

**Name** kpropd – Kerberos propagation daemon for slave KDCs

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/krb5/kpropd [-d] [-f *temp\_dbfile*] [-F *dbfile*]  
 [-p *kdb\_util*] [-P *port\_number*] [-r *realm*]  
 [-s *srv\_tabfile*] [-S] [-a *acl\_file*]

**Description** The kpropd command runs on the slave KDC server. It listens for update requests made by [kprop\(1M\)](#) from the master KDC and periodically requests incremental updates from the master KDC.

When the slave receives a kprop request from the master, kpropd copies principal data to a temporary text file. Next, kpropd invokes [kdb5\\_util\(1M\)](#) (unless a different database utility is selected) to load the text file in database format.

When the slave periodically requests incremental updates, kpropd update its `principal.u` log file with any updates from the master. [kproplog\(1M\)](#) can be used to view a summary of the update entry log on the slave KDC.

kpropd is not configured for incremental database propagation by default. These settings can be changed in the `kdc.conf(4)` file:

|                                                  |                                                                                                                               |
|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>sunw_dbprop_enable = [true   false]</code> | Enables or disables incremental database propagation. Default is <code>false</code> .                                         |
| <code>sunw_dbprop_slave_poll = N[s, m, h]</code> | Specifies how often the slave KDC polls for any updates that the master might have. Default is <code>2m</code> (two minutes). |

The `kprop/<hostname>@<REALM>` principal must exist in the slave's `keytab` file to enable the master to authenticate incremental propagation requests from the slave. In this syntax, `<hostname>` is the slave KDC's host name and `<REALM>` is the realm in which the slave KDC resides.

**Options** The following options are supported:

|                                    |                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>-d</code>                    | Enable debug mode. Default is debug mode disabled.                                                                                |
| <code>-f <i>temp_dbfile</i></code> | The location of the slave's temporary principal database file. Default is <code>/var/krb5/from_master</code> .                    |
| <code>-F <i>dbfile</i></code>      | The location of the slave's principal database file. Default is <code>/var/krb5/principal</code> .                                |
| <code>-p <i>kdb_util</i></code>    | The location of the Kerberos database utility used for loading principal databases. Default is <code>/usr/sbin/kdb5_util</code> . |
| <code>-P <i>port_number</i></code> | Specifies the port number on which kpropd will listen. Default is 754 (service name: <code>krb5_prop</code> ).                    |
| <code>-r <i>realm</i></code>       | Specifies from which Kerberos realm kpropd will receive information. Default is specified in <code>/etc/krb5/krb5.conf</code> .   |



- s *srv\_tabfile*      The location of the service table file used to authenticate the kpropd daemon.
- S                      Run the daemon in standalone mode, instead of having `inetd` listen for requests. Default is non-standalone mode.
- a *acl\_file*            The location of the kpropd's access control list to verify if this server can run the kpropd daemon. The file contains a list of principal name(s) that will be receiving updates. Default is `/etc/krb5/kpropd.acl`.

|              |                                        |                                                                              |
|--------------|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Files</b> | <code>/var/krb5/principal</code>       | Kerberos principal database.                                                 |
|              | <code>/var/krb5/principal.ulong</code> | The update log file.                                                         |
|              | <code>/etc/krb5/kdc.conf</code>        | KDC configuration information.                                               |
|              | <code>/etc/krb5/kpropd.acl</code>      | List of principals of all the KDCs; resides on each slave KDC.               |
|              | <code>/var/krb5/from_master</code>     | Temporary file used by kpropd before loading this to the principal database. |

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWkdcu        |
| Interface Stability | Evolving        |

**See Also** [kdb5\\_util\(1M\)](#), [kprop\(1M\)](#), [kproplog\(1M\)](#), [kdc.conf\(4\)](#), [krb5.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [kerberos\(5\)](#)

**Notes** The kprop service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/security/krb5_prop:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). Responsibility for initiating and restarting this service is delegated to [inetd\(1M\)](#). Use [inetadm\(1M\)](#) to make configuration changes and to view configuration information for this service. The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

**Name** kproplog – display the contents of the Kerberos principal update log

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/kproplog [-h | -e *num*]

**Description** The kproplog displays the contents of the Kerberos principal update log to standard output. This command can be used to keep track of the incremental updates to the principal database, which is enabled by default. The /var/krb5/principal.u`log` file contains the update log maintained by the [kadmind\(1M\)](#) process on the master KDC server and the [kpropd\(1M\)](#) process on the slave KDC servers. When updates occur, they are logged to this file. Subsequently any KDC slave configured for incremental updates will request the current data from the master KDC and update their principal.u`log` file with any updates returned.

The kproplog command can only be run on a KDC server by someone with privileges comparable to the superuser. It will display update entries for that server only.

If no options are specified, the summary of the update log is displayed. If invoked on the master, all of the update entries are also displayed. When invoked on a slave KDC server, only a summary of the updates are displayed, which includes the serial number of the last update received and the associated time stamp of the last update.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- h Display a summary of the update log. This information includes the database version number, state of the database, the number of updates in the log, the time stamp of the first and last update, and the version number of the first and last update entry.
- e *num* Display the last *num* update entries in the log. This is useful when debugging synchronization between KDC servers.
- v Display individual attributes per update. An example of the output generated for one entry:

```
Update Entry
 Update serial # : 4
 Update operation : Add
 Update principal : test@EXAMPLE.COM
 Update size : 424
 Update committed : True
 Update time stamp : Fri Feb 20 23:37:42 2004
 Attributes changed : 6
 Principal
 Key data
 Password last changed
 Modifying principal
 Modification time
 TL data
```

---

**Files** /var/krb5/principal.ulo The update log file for incremental propagation.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWkdcu        |
| Interface Stability | Evolving        |

**See Also** [kpasswd\(1\)](#), [gkadmin\(1M\)](#), [kadmind\(1M\)](#), [kadmin\(1M\)](#), [kadm5\\_util\(1M\)](#), [kprop\(1M\)](#), [kproxd\(1M\)](#), [kadm5\\_acl\(4\)](#), [kdc.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [kerberos\(5\)](#)

**Name** krb5kdc – KDC daemon

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/krb5/krb5kdc [-d *dbpath*] [-r *realm*] [-m]  
 [-k *masterenctype*] [-M *masterkeyname*]  
 [-p *port*] [-n] [-x *db\_args*]. . .

**Description** krb5kdc is the daemon that runs on the master and slave KDCs to process the Kerberos tickets. For Kerberos to function properly, krb5kdc must be running on at least one KDC that the Kerberos clients can access. Prior to running krb5kdc, you must initialize the Kerberos database using [kdb5\\_util\(1M\)](#). See the *System Administration Guide: Security Services* for information regarding how to set up KDCs and initialize the Kerberos database.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- d *dbpath*  
Specify the path to the database; default value is /var/krb5.
- k *masterenctype*  
Specify the encryption type for encrypting the database. The default value is des-cbc-crc. des3-cbc-sha1, arcfour-hmac-md5, arcfour-hmac-md5-exp, aes128-cts-hmac-sha1-96, and aes256-cts-hmac-sha1-96 are also valid.
- m  
Specify that the master key for the database is to be entered manually.
- M *masterkeyname*  
Specify the principal to retrieve the master Key for the database.
- n  
Specify that krb5kdc should not detach from the terminal.
- p *port*  
Specify the port that will be used by the KDC to listen for incoming requests.
- r *realm*  
Specify the realm name; default is the local realm name.
- x *db\_args*  
Pass database-specific arguments to kadmin. Supported arguments are for the LDAP plug-in. These arguments are:
  - binddn=binddn*  
Specifies the DN of the object used by the KDC server to bind to the LDAP server. This object should have the rights to read the realm container, principal container and the subtree that is referenced by the realm. Overrides the `ldap_kdc_dn` parameter setting in [krb5.conf\(4\)](#).
  - bindpwd=bindpwd*  
Specifies the password for the above-mentioned *binddn*. It is recommended not to use this option. Instead, the password can be stashed using the `stashes rvpw` command of [kdb5\\_util\(1M\)](#).

`nconns=num`

Specifies the number of connections to be maintained per LDAP server.

`host=ldapuri`

Specifies, by an LDAP URI, the LDAP server to which to connect.

**Files** `/var/krb5/principal.db`

Kerberos principal database.

`/var/krb5/principal.kadm5`

Kerberos administrative database. This file contains policy information.

`/var/krb5/principal.kadm5.lock`

Kerberos administrative database lock file. This file works backwards from most other lock files (that is, `kadmin` will exit with an error if this file does *not* exist).

`/etc/krb5/kdc.conf`

KDC configuration file. This file is read at startup.

`/etc/krb5/kpropd.acl`

File that defines the access control list for propagating the Kerberos database using `kprop`.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWkdcu        |

**See Also** [kill\(1\)](#), [kpasswd\(1\)](#), [gkadmin\(1M\)](#), [kadmind\(1M\)](#), [kadmin.local\(1M\)](#), [kdb5\\_util\(1M\)](#), [kdb5\\_ldap\\_util\(1M\)](#), [logadm\(1M\)](#), [krb5.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [krb5envvar\(5\)](#), [kerberos\(5\)](#),

*System Administration Guide: Security Services*

**Notes** The following signal has the specified effect when sent to the server process using the [kill\(1\)](#) command:

SIGHUP

`krb5kdc` closes and re-opens log files that it directly opens. This can be useful for external log-rotation utilities such as [logadm\(1M\)](#). If this method is used for log file rotation, set the [krb5.conf\(4\)](#) `kdc_rotate` period relation to `never`.

**Name** ksslcfg – enable and configure SMF instance of Kernel SSL

**Synopsis** ksslcfg create -f pkcs11 -T *token\_label* -C *certificate\_label*  
 [-d *softtoken\_directory*]  
 [-p *password\_file* [-u *username*]]  
 [-h *ca\_certchain\_file*] [-c *ciphersuites*]  
 [-t *ssl\_session\_cache\_timeout*]  
 [-z *ssl\_session\_cache\_size*] [-v] -x *proxy\_port* [*host*] *ssl\_port*

ksslcfg create -f pkcs12 -i *cert\_and\_key\_pk12file*  
 [-p *password\_file* [-u *username*]]  
 [-c *ciphersuites*] [-t *ssl\_session\_cache\_timeout*]  
 [-z *ssl\_session\_cache\_size*] [-v] -x *proxy\_port* [*host*] *ssl\_port*

ksslcfg create -f pem -i *cert\_and\_key\_pemfile*  
 [-p *password\_file* [-u *username*]]  
 [-c *ciphersuites*] [-t *ssl\_session\_cache\_timeout*]  
 [-z *ssl\_session\_cache\_size*] [-v] -x *proxy\_port* [*host*] *ssl\_port*

ksslcfg delete [-v] [*host*] *ssl\_port*

ksslcfg -V

ksslcfg -?

**Description** ksslcfg manages [smf\(5\)](#) instances for the Kernel SSL proxy module. An SSL-enabled web server can use the services of its Kernel SSL proxy to improve the performance of the HTTPS packets processing. It does so by creating an instance of the Kernel SSL service, specifying the SSL proxy port and parameters, and by listening on the proxy port.

The create subcommand creates an instance and enables the service for the given address and SSL port.

The delete subcommand disables the service for the given address and port, if it is enabled, and deletes the instance from the SMF repository.

ksslcfg can be run as root or by other users assigned to the Network Security profile. See [rbac\(5\)](#) and [user\\_attr\(4\)](#). You must run ksslcfg to configure your Kernel SSL proxy before you start your application.

ksslcfg allows you to specify an *ssl\_port* operand, described under OPERANDS, and, with the -x option, a *proxy\_port* value. When specified for use with the Kernel SSL proxy, these values cannot also be configured for the Solaris Network Cache and Acceleration (NCA) feature. See [nca\(1\)](#) for a description of the NCA feature.

The Fault Managed Resource Identifier (FMRI) for the kernel SSL proxy instances is `svc://network/ssl/proxy.ksslcfg` creates an instance of that service unique to the combination of host and SSL port. Instance FMRI for particular proxy entries can be found with [svcs\(1\)](#) and used for dependencies of other services.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- `-c ciphersuites` Set of ciphers a client is allowed to negotiate in a sorted order. The supported SSL version3 and TLS ciphers are listed below. Note that the names are case-insensitive.

```
rsa_rc4_128_sha
rsa_rc4_128_md5
rsa_aes_256_cbc_sha
rsa_aes_128_cbc_sha
rsa_3des_edc_cbc_sha
rsa_des_cbc_sha
```
- `-f key_format` Uses the certificate/key format specified in *key\_format*. The supported options are pkcs11, pkcs12, and pem.
- `-i key_and_certificate_file` When pkcs12 or pem is specified with the `-f` option, reads a key and a certificate of the web server from *key\_and\_certificate\_file*. This file can also contain any intermediate CA certificates that form the certificate chain to the root CA for the server certificate. These certificates must follow the server certificate in the file and the order must be bottom up: lowest level CA certificate followed by the next higher level CA certificate, and so on.
- `-C certificate_label` PKCS#11 can store multiple certificates in single token. This option enables you to specify a single certificate, identified by *certificate\_label*. This label must match the CKA\_LABEL on the certificate object in the token specified by `-T`. This option is to be used only with `-f pkcs11`.
- `-d softtoken_directory` This option is applicable only with the pkcs11 key format, when the token label is the Sun Software PKCS#11 softtoken. Use this option to override the default location of the PKCS#11 softtoken directory (`$HOME/.sunw`). See [pkcs11\\_softtoken\(5\)](#).
- `-h ca_certchain_file` When pkcs11 is specified with the `-f` option, reads a set of intermediate CA certificates that form the certificate chain to the root CA for the server certificate (specified with the `-C` option), from *ca\_certchain\_file*. The file must be in PEM format.
- `-p password_file` Obtains the password used to encrypt the private key from *password\_file*. When using the pkcs11 option (see `-f`, above), the password is used to authenticate the user to the PKCS #11 token.

---

|                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -t <i>ssl_session_cache_timeout</i> | The timeout value, in seconds, for an SSL session. It corresponds to <code>SSL3SessionTimeout</code> of the Sun ONE web server configuration or <code>SSLSessionCacheTimeout</code> of <code>mod_ssl</code> .  |
| -T <i>token_label</i>               | When <code>pkcs11</code> is specified with <code>-f</code> , uses the PKCS#11 token specified in <i>token_label</i> . Use <code>cryptoadm list -v</code> to display all PKCS#11 tokens available.              |
| -u <i>username</i>                  | The username of the user who owns the password file. If omitted, the system will try to read the password file as root.                                                                                        |
| -v                                  | Verbose mode.                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| -V                                  | Displays the version.                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| -x <i>proxy_port</i>                | The SSL proxy port. The port number is designated exclusively for clear-text HTTP communication between the web server and the kernel SSL proxy module. No external HTTP packets are delivered to this port.   |
| -z <i>ssl_session_cache_size</i>    | The maximum number of SSL sessions that can be cached. It corresponds to <code>SSLCacheEntries</code> of the Sun ONE web server configuration. When this option is not specified, the default is 5000 entries. |
| -?                                  | Displays the usage of the command.                                                                                                                                                                             |

**Operands** [*host*] [*ssl\_port*] The address and the port of the web server for which the kernel SSL entry is created. If *host* is omitted, the entry will be used for all requests that arrived at the *ssl\_port*, regardless of the destination address. Both a host name and an IP address are acceptable forms for *host*. *ssl\_port* is required. Typically, this has a value of 443.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Create and Enable a Kernel SSL Instance

The following command creates and enables a Kernel SSL instance using a certificate and a key in PKCS#11 format.

```
ksslcfg create -f pkcs11 -T "Sun Software PKCS#11 softtoken" \
-C "Server-Cert" -p /some/directory/password -u webservd \
-x 8080 www.mysite.com 443

% svcs svc:/network/ssl/proxy
STATE STIME FMRI
online Sep_27 svc:/network/ssl/proxy:kssl-www-mysite-com-443
```



**EXAMPLE 2** Create and Enable a Default Instance for All Addresses

The following command creates and enables a default instance for all addresses from a certificate and key in a pkcs#12 file.

```
ksslcfg create -x 8888 -f pkcs12 -i /some/directory/keypair.p12 \
 -p /some/directory/password -u webservd 443
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Create and Enable an Instance with Specific Cipher Suites

The following command creates and enables an instance with specific cipher suites.

```
ksslcfg create -x 8080 -f pem \
 -i /some/directory/keypair.pem -p /some/directory/password \
 -c "rsa_rc4_128_md5,rsa_rc4_128_sha" \
 209.249.116.195 443
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Disable and Delete an Instance

The following command disables and deletes an instance.

```
ksslcfg delete www.mysite.com 443
```

**Exit Status** 0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWksslu       |
| Interface Stability | See below.      |

Command line options are Evolving; command output is Unstable. The FMRI service name (svc://network/ssl/proxy) is Unstable, as is the FMRI instance's name format. The utility name is Stable.

**See Also** [nca\(1\)](#), [svccprop\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [cryptoadm\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [user\\_attr\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [pkcs11\\_softtoken\(5\)](#), [rbac\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

**Notes** `ksslcfg create` without an host argument creates an `INADDR_ANY` smf instance. `ksslcfg delete` without an host argument deletes only the `INADDR_ANY` instance. `ksslcfg delete` needs a host argument to delete any non-`INADDR_ANY` instance.

On a system with [zones\(5\)](#) installed, the `ksslcfg` command can be used only in the global zone at this time.

**Name** kstat – display kernel statistics

**Synopsis** kstat [-lpq] [-T u | d ] [-c *class*] [-m *module*]  
 [-i *instance*] [-n *name*] [-s *statistic*]  
 [interval [count]]

kstat [-lpq] [-T u | d ] [-c *class*]  
 [*module:instance:name:statistic*] . . .  
 [interval [count]]

**Description** The `kstat` utility examines the available kernel statistics, or `kstats`, on the system and reports those statistics which match the criteria specified on the command line. Each matching statistic is printed with its module, instance, and name fields, as well as its actual value.

Kernel statistics may be published by various kernel subsystems, such as drivers or loadable modules; each `kstat` has a module field that denotes its publisher. Since each module might have countable entities (such as multiple disks associated with the `sd(7D)` driver) for which it wishes to report statistics, the `kstat` also has an instance field to index the statistics for each entity; `kstat` instances are numbered starting from zero. Finally, the `kstat` is given a name unique within its module.

Each `kstat` may be a special `kstat` type, an array of name-value pairs, or raw data. In the name-value case, each reported value is given a label, which we refer to as the statistic. Known raw and special `kstats` are given statistic labels for each of their values by `kstat`; thus, all published values can be referenced as `module:instance:name:statistic`.

When invoked without any module operands or options, `kstat` will match all defined statistics on the system. Example invocations are provided below. All times are displayed as fractional seconds since system boot.

**Options** The tests specified by the following options are logically ANDed, and all matching `kstats` will be selected. A regular expression containing shell metacharacters must be protected from the shell by enclosing it with the appropriate quotes.

The argument for the `-c`, `-i`, `-m`, `-n`, and `-s` options may be specified as a shell glob pattern, or a Perl regular expression enclosed in `'` characters.

- `-c class` Displays only `kstats` that match the specified class. *class* is a kernel-defined string which classifies the “type” of the `kstat`.
- `-i instance` Displays only `kstats` that match the specified instance.
- `-l` Lists matching `kstat` names without displaying values.
- `-m module` Displays only `kstats` that match the specified module.
- `-n name` Displays only `kstats` that match the specified name.
- `-p` Displays output in parseable format. All example output in this document is given in this format. If this option is not specified, `kstat` produces output in a human-readable, table format.

- q            Displays no output, but return appropriate exit status for matches against given criteria.
- s *statistic*    Displays only kstats that match the specified statistic.
- T d | u        Displays a time stamp before each statistics block, either in `date(1)` format (d) or as an alphanumeric representation of the value returned by `time(2)` (u).

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

|                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>module:instance:name:statistic</i> | Alternate method of specifying module, instance, name, and statistic as described above. Each of the module, instance, name, or statistic specifiers may be a shell glob pattern or a Perl regular expression enclosed by '/' characters. It is possible to use both specifier types within a single operand. Leaving a specifier empty is equivalent to using the '*' glob pattern for that specifier. |
| <i>interval</i>                       | The number of seconds between reports.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <i>count</i>                          | The number of reports to be printed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

**Examples** In the following examples, all the command lines in a block produce the same output, as shown immediately below. The exact statistics and values will of course vary from machine to machine.

EXAMPLE 1 Using the kstat Command

```
example$ kstat -p -m unix -i 0 -n system_misc -s 'avenrun*'
example$ kstat -p -s 'avenrun*'
example$ kstat -p 'unix:0:system_misc:avenrun*'
example$ kstat -p '::::avenrun*'
example$ kstat -p '::::/^avenrun_\d+min$/'
```

```
unix:0:system_misc:avenrun_15min 3
unix:0:system_misc:avenrun_1min 4
unix:0:system_misc:avenrun_5min 2
```

EXAMPLE 2 Using the kstat Command

```
example$ kstat -p -m cpu_stat -s 'intr*'
example$ kstat -p cpu_stat::::/^intr/
```

```
cpu_stat:0:cpu_stat0:intr 29682330
cpu_stat:0:cpu_stat0:intrblk 87
cpu_stat:0:cpu_stat0:intrthread 15054222
cpu_stat:1:cpu_stat1:intr 426073
cpu_stat:1:cpu_stat1:intrblk 51
cpu_stat:1:cpu_stat1:intrthread 289668
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Using the kstat Command *(Continued)*

```

cpu_stat:2:cpu_stat2:intr 134160
cpu_stat:2:cpu_stat2:intrblk 0
cpu_stat:2:cpu_stat2:intrthread 131
cpu_stat:3:cpu_stat3:intr 196566
cpu_stat:3:cpu_stat3:intrblk 30
cpu_stat:3:cpu_stat3:intrthread 59626

```

**EXAMPLE 3** Using the kstat Command

```

example$ kstat -p :::state '::::avenrun*'
example$ kstat -p :::state :::/^avenrun/

```

```

cpu_info:0:cpu_info0:state on-line
cpu_info:1:cpu_info1:state on-line
cpu_info:2:cpu_info2:state on-line
cpu_info:3:cpu_info3:state on-line
unix:0:system_misc:avenrun_15min 4
unix:0:system_misc:avenrun_1min 10
unix:0:system_misc:avenrun_5min 3

```

**EXAMPLE 4** Using the kstat Command

```

example$ kstat -p 'unix:0:system_misc:avenrun*' 1 3
unix:0:system_misc:avenrun_15min 15
unix:0:system_misc:avenrun_1min 11
unix:0:system_misc:avenrun_5min 21

```

```

unix:0:system_misc:avenrun_15min 15
unix:0:system_misc:avenrun_1min 11
unix:0:system_misc:avenrun_5min 21

```

```

unix:0:system_misc:avenrun_15min 15
unix:0:system_misc:avenrun_1min 11
unix:0:system_misc:avenrun_5min 21

```

**EXAMPLE 5** Using the kstat Command

```

example$ kstat -p -T d 'unix:0:system_misc:avenrun*' 5 2
Thu Jul 22 19:39:50 1999
unix:0:system_misc:avenrun_15min 12
unix:0:system_misc:avenrun_1min 0
unix:0:system_misc:avenrun_5min 11

```

```

Thu Jul 22 19:39:55 1999
unix:0:system_misc:avenrun_15min 12
unix:0:system_misc:avenrun_1min 0
unix:0:system_misc:avenrun_5min 11

```

**EXAMPLE 6** Using the kstat Command

```
example$ kstat -p -T u 'unix:0:system_misc:avenrun*'
932668656
unix:0:system_misc:avenrun_15min 14
unix:0:system_misc:avenrun_1min 5
unix:0:system_misc:avenrun_5min 18
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 One or more statistics were matched.
- 1 No statistics were matched.
- 2 Invalid command line options were specified.
- 3 A fatal error occurred.

**Files** /dev/kstat kernel statistics driver

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWcsu         |

**See Also** [date\(1\)](#), [sh\(1\)](#), [time\(2\)](#), [gmatch\(3GEN\)](#), [kstat\(3KSTAT\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [kstat\(7D\)](#), [sd\(7D\)](#), [kstat\(9S\)](#)

**Notes** If the pattern argument contains glob or Perl RE metacharacters which are also shell metacharacters, it will be necessary to enclose the pattern with appropriate shell quotes.

**Name** kttk\_warnd – Kerberos warning daemon

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/krb5/kttk\_warnd

**Description** kttk\_warnd is a daemon on Kerberos clients that can warn users when their Kerberos tickets are about to expire or renew the tickets before they expire. It is invoked by inetd when a ticket-granting ticket (TGT) is obtained for the first time, such as after using the kinit command. kttk\_warnd can be configured through the /etc/krb5/warn.conf file on the client. In warn.conf, you can specify that you be supplied notice, through syslog or terminal or mail, of ticket expiration or to renew the TGT.

**Files** /etc/krb5/warn.conf Kerberos warning configuration file

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Interface Stability | Evolving        |

**See Also** [svcs\(1\)](#), [inetadm\(1M\)](#), [inetd\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [warn.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [kerberos\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

**Notes** The kttk\_warnd service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/security/kttk_warn:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). Responsibility for initiating and restarting this service is delegated to [inetd\(1M\)](#). Use [inetadm\(1M\)](#) to make configuration changes and to view configuration information for this service. The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

**Name** labeld – Trusted Extensions label daemon

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/labeld

**Description** The `labeld` daemon is a system daemon which is started at boot time when Trusted Extensions is enabled. This daemon is started automatically and should not be invoked directly. It does not constitute a programming interface.

To enable Trusted Extensions, enter the following at the command line:

```
% svcadm enable svc:/system/labeld
```

Because Trusted Extensions affects the initialization and operation of zones, all zones must be removed before enabling Trusted Extensions. After enabling, the system should be rebooted to allow Trusted Extensions to come up properly initialized.

Enabling or disabling Trusted Extensions can only be done by a user or role with the `solaris.smf.manage.labels` authorization. (For example, a user or role that has either the Information Security or Object Label Management Rights Profile, or superuser.)

Other configuration steps are needed before using Trusted Extensions functionality. For more information, see the *Solaris Trusted Extensions Installation and Configuration Guide*.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWtsu         |
| Interface Stability | Unstable        |

**See Also** [svcs\(1\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [syslogd\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

*Solaris Trusted Extensions Administrator's Procedures*

**Notes** The [labels\(5\)](#) service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/labeld:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.



**Name** labelit – list or provide labels for file systems

**Synopsis** labelit [-F *FSType*] [-V] [-o *FSType-specific-options*] *special*  
[*operands*]

**Description** The labelit utility is used to write or display labels on unmounted disk file systems.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- F *FSType* Specify the *FSType* on which to operate. The *FSType* should either be specified here or be determinable from `/etc/vfstab` by matching the *special* with an entry in the table. If no matching entry is found, the default file system type specified in `/etc/default/fs` will be used.
- V Echo complete command line. This option may be used to verify and validate the command line. Additional information obtained using a `/etc/vfstab` lookup is included in the output. The command is not executed.
- o Specify *FSType*-specific options. See the manual page for the labelit module specific to the file system type.

**Operands** The following operands are supported. If no operands are specified, labelit will display the value of the labels.

- special* The disk partition (for example, `/dev/rdisk/c0t3d0s6`). The device may not be on a remote machine.
- operands* *FSType*-specific operands. Consult the manual page of the *FSType*-specific labelit command for detailed descriptions.

**Usage** See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of labelit when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (  $2^{31}$  bytes).

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Write or display of labels was successful.
- non-zero An error occurred.

**Files**

- `/etc/vfstab` List of default parameters for each file system.
- `/etc/default/fs` Default local file system type. Default values can be set for the following flags in `/etc/default/fs`. For example:
  - LOCAL=ufs
  - LOCAL The default partition for a command if no *FSType* is specified.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWcsu         |

**See Also** [labelit\\_hsf\(1M\)](#), [labelit\\_udfs\(1M\)](#), [labelit\\_ufs\(1M\)](#), [volcopy\(1M\)](#), [vfstab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#)

**Notes** This utility may not be supported for all *FSTypes*.

**Name** labelit\_hfsfs – provide and print labels for hfsfs file systems

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/labelit -F hfsfs [*generic\_options*]  
[-o *specific\_options*] *special*

**Description** labelit can be used to provide labels for unmounted CD-ROM images (CD-ROMs may not be labeled, as they are read-only media).

*generic\_options* are options supported by the generic labelit command.

If no *specific\_options* are specified, labelit prints the current value of all label fields.

The *special* name should be the physical disk section (for example, /dev/dsk/c0d0s6).

**Options** -o Use one or more of the following *name=value* pairs separated by commas (with no intervening spaces) to specify values for specific label fields. According to the ISO 9660 specification, only certain sets of characters may be used to fill in these labels. Thus, “d-characters” below refers to the characters ‘A’ through ‘Z’, the digits ‘0’ through ‘9’, and the ‘\_’ (underscore) character. “a-characters” below refers to ‘A’ through ‘Z’, ‘0’ through ‘9’, space, and the following characters: !"%&'()\*+,-./:;<=>?\_.

absfile= Abstract file identifier, d-characters, 37 characters maximum.

applid= Application identifier, d-characters, 128 characters maximum.

bibfile= Bibliographic file identifier, d-characters, 37 characters maximum.

copyfile= Copyright file identifier, d-characters, 128 maximum.

prepid= Data preparer identifier, d-characters, 128 maximum.

pubid= Publisher identifier, d-characters, 128 maximum.

sysid= System identifier, a-characters, 32 maximum.

volid= Volume identifier, d-characters, 32 maximum.

volsetid= Volume set identifier, d-characters, 128 maximum.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWcsu         |

**See Also** [labelit\(1M\)](#), [volcopy\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** labelit\_udfs – provide and print labels for udf file systems

**Synopsis** labelit -F udfs [*generic\_options*] [-o *specific\_options*] *special*  
[*fsname volume*]

**Description** The labelit command writes labels on an unmounted disk that contains a universal disk file (udf) system. These labels can be used to identify volumes.

**Options** The following options are supported:

|                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>generic_options</i>     | Specify <i>generic_options</i> supported by the generic labelit command. See <a href="#">labelit(1M)</a> for descriptions of supported options.                                                                                                                                |
| -o <i>specific_options</i> | Specify udfs-file-system-specific options in a comma-separated list with no intervening spaces. The following <i>specific_options</i> are available:                                                                                                                           |
| lvinfo1= <i>string</i>     | Specify information to be inserted in the LVInfo1 field of the Implementation Use Volume Descriptor. Information in LVInfo1 is generally used to identify the person creating the file system. The maximum length of the string specified is 35 bytes.                         |
| lvinfo2= <i>string</i>     | Specify information to be inserted into the LVInfo2 field of the Implementation Use Volume Descriptor. Information in LVInfo2 is generally used to identify the organization responsible for creating the file system. The maximum length of the string specified is 35 bytes. |
| lvinfo3= <i>string</i>     | Specify information to be inserted into the LVInfo3 field of the Implementation Use Volume Descriptor. Information in LVInfo3 is generally used to identify the contact information for the medium. The maximum length of the string specified is 35 bytes.                    |

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

|                |                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>special</i> | Specify <i>special</i> as the physical disk slice, for example, /dev/rdisk/c0t0d0s6. The device can not be on a remote machine. |
| <i>fsname</i>  | Specify <i>fsname</i> as the mount point, (for example, root, u1, and so forth), of the file system.                            |
| <i>volume</i>  | Specify <i>volume</i> as the physical volume name.                                                                              |

If none of the options (*fsname*, *volume*, *specific\_options*) is specified, labelit prints the current values of *fsname*, *volume*, LVInfo1, LVInfo2 and LVInfo3.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0            Successful completion.

non-zero    An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWudf         |

**See Also** [labelit\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** labelit\_ufs – provide and print labels for ufs file systems

**Synopsis** labelit -F ufs [*generic\_options*] *special* [*fsname volume*]

**Description** labelit is used to write labels on unmounted disk file systems. Such labels may be used to uniquely identify volumes and are used by volume-oriented programs such as [volcopy\(1M\)](#).

**Options** The following option is supported:

*generic\_options* options supported by the generic labelit command. See [labelit\(1M\)](#).

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

*special* name should be the physical disk section (for example, /dev/dsk/c0d0s6). The device may not be on a remote machine.

*fsname* represents the mount point (for example, root, u1, and so on) of the file system.

*volume* may be used to represent the physical volume name.

If *fsname* and *volume* are not specified, labelit prints the current values of these labels. Both *fsname* and *volume* are limited to six or fewer characters.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0 Write or display of labels was successful.

non-zero An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWcsu         |

**See Also** [labelit\(1M\)](#), [volcopy\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [ufs\(7FS\)](#)

**Name** latencytop – report latency-related statistics in system and in applications

**Synopsis** latencytop [-t *interval*] [-o *log\_file*] [-k *log\_level*]  
[-f [no]*feature*,...] [-l *log\_interval*] [-h]

**Description** LatencyTOP is an observability tool that reports statistics about latencies in the system and in applications. The tool reports statistics about where and what kind of latencies are happening in the system and in the applications that are running on the system. The statistics then can be used to improve performance throughput of applications and system, as you remove the identified latencies.

The tool analyzes system activity periodically and displays the data in the output window. Two types of latencies are tracked: an LWP going in and out of sleep and an LWP spinning order to acquire a synchronization object. The tool uses the Solaris DTrace framework to collect the statistics corresponding to these two scenarios of inactivity of the system and application LWPs.

The output window is divided into two sections. An upper part displays the system-wide statistics, while the lower part displays statistics about individual processes. The user can navigate the list of processes (using the left- and right-arrow keys) and select the list they are interested in. The tool will then display statistics about that selected process in the lower part of the window. If the t or T key is pressed, the tool displays the LWP-specific view of that selected process. The t or T key can be used to toggle between the process-view and the thread-view.

During execution, a user can force a refresh of the analysis by pressing the r or R key. The interval time is restored to the default or to a specified value (if -t was used). To quit the application, the user must press the q or Q key.

**Options** The following options are supported:

-f, --feature [no]*feature1*,[no]*feature2*,...

Enables/disables features in LatencyTOP. Features can be only one of the following:

[no]filter

Filter large interruptible latencies, for example, sleep. The default is off.

[no]sched

Monitors sched (PID=0). The default is off.

[no]subj

Monitors synchronize objects. The default is on.

[no]low

Lower overhead by sampling small latencies. Enabling this feature will lower CPU utilization by estimating small latencies statistically. Use it for heavy workloads such as a very busy web server. The default is off.

-h

Displays the command's usage.

- k *log\_level*  
Specifies the level of logging in the log file. Valid values are:
  - 0 none (default)
  - 1 unknown
  - 2 all
- l [*log\_interval*]  
Writes data to the log file every *log\_interval* seconds; *log\_interval* must be greater than 60.
- o *log\_file*  
Specifies the log file where output will be written. The default log file is `/var/log/latencytop.log`.
- t *interval*  
Specifies the interval, in seconds, at which the tool collects statistics from the system. The possible values are between 1 and 60; the default is 5 seconds.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Running the Tool

The following command launches the tool with default values for options.

```
% latencytop
```

## EXAMPLE 2 Setting the Interval

The following command sets the sampling interval to two seconds.

```
% latencytop -t 2
```

## EXAMPLE 3 Specifying the Log File

The following command sets the log file to `/tmp/latencytop.log`.

```
% latencytop -o /tmp/latencytop.log
```

## EXAMPLE 4 Specifying the Log Level

The following command sets the log level to `all`.

```
% latencytop -l 2
```

## EXAMPLE 5 Enabling Tracing of Latencies

The following command enables the tracing of latencies caused by synchronization objects.

```
% latencytop -f subj
```



**Exit Status** 0  
Successful operation.

1  
An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Architecture        | x86, SPARC      |
| Availability        | SUNWlatencytop  |
| Interface Stability | Volatile        |

**See Also** [dtrace\(1M\)](#), [kstat\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Usage** You must have DTrace privileges to run LatencyTOP.

**Name** ldapaddent – create LDAP entries from corresponding /etc files

**Synopsis** ldapaddent [-cpv] [-a *authenticationMethod*] [-b *baseDN*]  
 -D *bindDN* [-w *bind\_password*] [-j *passwdFile*] [-f *filename*]  
*database*

ldapaddent [-cpv] -a sasl/GSSAPI [-b *baseDN*] [-f *filename*]  
*database*

ldapaddent -d [-v] [-a *authenticationMethod*] [-D *bindDN*]  
 [-w *bind\_password*] [-j *passwdFile*] *database*

ldapaddent [-cpv] -h *LDAP\_server[:serverPort]* [-M *domainName*]  
 [-N *profileName*] [-P *certifPath*] [-a *authenticationMethod*]  
 [-b *baseDN*] -D *bindDN* [-w *bind\_password*] [-f *filename*]  
 [-j *passwdFile*] *database*

ldapaddent [-cpv] -h *LDAP\_server[:serverPort]* [-M *domainName*]  
 [-N *profileName*] [-P *certifPath*] [-a *authenticationMethod*]  
 [-b *baseDN*] [-f *filename*] *database*

ldapaddent -d [-v] -h *LDAP\_server[:serverPort]* [-M *domainName*]  
 [-N *profileName*] [-P *certifPath*] [-a *authenticationMethod*]  
 [-b *baseDN*] -D *bindDN* [-w *bind\_password*] [-j *passwdFile*]  
*database*

**Description** ldapaddent creates entries in LDAP containers from their corresponding /etc files. This operation is customized for each of the standard containers that are used in the administration of Solaris systems. The *database* argument specifies the type of the data being processed. Legal values for this type are one of *aliases*, *auto\_\**, *bootparams*, *ethers*, *group*, *hosts* (including both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses), *ipnodes* (alias for *hosts*), *netgroup*, *netmasks*, *networks*, *passwd*, *shadow*, *protocols*, *publickey*, *rpc*, and *services*. In addition to the preceding, the *database* argument can be one of the RBAC-related files (see [rbac\(5\)](#)):

- /etc/user\_attr
- /etc/security/auth\_attr
- /etc/security/prof\_attr
- /etc/security/exec\_attr

By default, ldapaddent reads from the standard input and adds this data to the LDAP container associated with the database specified on the command line. An input file from which data can be read is specified using the *-f* option.

If you specify the *-h* option, ldapaddent establishes a connection to the server indicated by the option in order to obtain a DUAProfile specified by the *-N* option. The entries will be stored in the directory described by the configuration obtained.

By default (if the *-h* option is not specified), entries will be stored in the directory based on the client's configuration. To use the utility in the default mode, the Solaris LDAP client must be set up in advance.

The location where entries are to be written can be overridden by using the `-b` option.

If the entry to be added exists in the directory, the command displays an error and exits, unless the `-c` option is used.

Although, there is a `shadow` database type, there is no corresponding shadow container. Both the `shadow` and the `passwd` data is stored in the `people` container itself. Similarly, data from `networks` and `netmasks` databases are stored in the `networks` container.

The `user_attr` and `audit_user` data is stored by default in the `people` container. The `prof_attr` and `exec_attr` data is stored by default in the `SolarisProfAttr` container.

You must add entries from the `passwd` database before you attempt to add entries from the `shadow` database. The addition of a `shadow` entry that does not have a corresponding `passwd` entry will fail.

The `passwd` database must precede both the `user_attr` and `audit_user` databases.

For better performance, the recommended order in which the databases should be loaded is as follows:

- `passwd` database followed by `shadow` database
- `networks` database followed by `netmasks` database
- `bootparams` database followed by `ethers` database

Only the first entry of a given type that is encountered will be added to the LDAP server. The `ldapaddent` command skips any duplicate entries.

**Options** The `ldapaddent` command supports the following options:

`-a authenticationMethod`

Specify authentication method. The default value is what has been configured in the profile. The supported authentication methods are:

```
simple
sasl/CRAM-MD5
sasl/DIGEST-MD5
sasl/GSSAPI
tls:simple
tls:sasl/CRAM-MD5
tls:sasl/DIGEST-MD5
```

Selecting `simple` causes passwords to be sent over the network in clear text. Its use is strongly discouraged. Additionally, if the client is configured with a profile which uses no authentication, that is, either the `credentialLevel` attribute is set to `anonymous` or `authenticationMethod` is set to `none`, the user must use this option to provide an authentication method. If the authentication method is `sasl/GSSAPI`, `bindDN` and `bindPassword` is not required and the `hosts` and `ipnodes` fields of `/etc/nsswitch.conf` must be configured as:

hosts: dns files  
ipnodes: dns files

See `nsswitch.conf(4)`.

- b *baseDN*  
Create entries in the *baseDN* directory. *baseDN* is not relative to the client's default search base, but rather, it is the actual location where the entries will be created. If this parameter is not specified, the first search descriptor defined for the service or the default container will be used.
- c  
Continue adding entries to the directory even after an error. Entries will not be added if the directory server is not responding or if there is an authentication problem.
- D *bindDN*  
Create an entry which has write permission to the *baseDN*. When used with -d option, this entry only needs read permission.
- d  
Dump the LDAP container to the standard output in the appropriate format for the given database.
- f *filename*  
Indicates input file to read in an `/etc/` file format.
- h *LDAP\_server[:serverPort]*  
Specify an address (or a name) and an optional port of the LDAP server in which the entries will be stored. The current naming service specified in the `nsswitch.conf` file is used. The default value for the port is 389, except when TLS is specified as the authentication method. In this case, the default LDAP server port number is 636.
- j *passwdFile*  
Specify a file containing the password for the bind DN or the password for the SSL client's key database. To protect the password, use this option in scripts and place the password in a secure file. This option is mutually exclusive of the -w option.
- M *domainName*  
The name of a domain served by the specified server. If not specified, the default domain name will be used.
- N *profileName*  
Specify the DUAProfile name. A profile with such a name is supposed to exist on the server specified by -h option. Otherwise, a default DUAProfile will be used. The default value is default.

**-P *certifPath***

The certificate path for the location of the certificate database. The value is the path where security database files reside. This is used for TLS support, which is specified in the `authenticationMethod` and `serviceAuthenticationMethod` attributes. The default is `/var/ldap`.

**-p**

Process the password field when loading password information from a file. By default, the password field is ignored because it is usually not valid, as the actual password appears in a shadow file.

**-w *bindPassword***

Password to be used for authenticating the *bindDN*. If this parameter is missing, the command will prompt for a password. NULL passwords are not supported in LDAP.

When you use `-w bindPassword` to specify the password to be used for authentication, the password is visible to other users of the system by means of the `ps` command, in script files or in shell history.

If you supply “-” (hyphen) as a password, you will be prompted to enter a password.

**-v**

Verbose.

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

***database***

The name of the database or service name. Supported values are: `aliases`, `auto_*`, `bootparams`, `ethers`, `group`, `hosts` (including IPv6 addresses), `netgroup`, `netmasks`, `networks`, `passwd`, `shadow`, `protocols`, `publickey`, `rpc`, and `services`. Also supported are `auth_attr`, `prof_attr`, `exec_attr`, `user_attr`, and `projects`.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Adding Password Entries to the Directory Server

The following example shows how to add password entries to the directory server:

```
example# ldapaddent -D "cn=directory manager" -w secret \
 -f /etc/passwd passwd
```

EXAMPLE 2 Adding Group Entries

The following example shows how to add group entries to the directory server using `sasl/CRAM-MD5` as the authentication method:

```
example# ldapaddent -D "cn=directory manager" -w secret \
 -a "sasl/CRAM-MD5" -f /etc/group group
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Adding auto\_master Entries

The following example shows how to add auto\_master entries to the directory server:

```
example# ldapaddent -D "cn=directory manager" -w secret \
-f /etc/auto_master auto_master
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Dumping passwd Entries from the Directory to File

The following example shows how to dump password entries from the directory to a file foo:

```
example# ldapaddent -d passwd > foo
```

**EXAMPLE 5** Adding Password Entries to a Specific Directory Server

The following example shows how to add password entries to a directory server that you specify:

```
example# ldapaddent -h 10.10.10.10:3890 \
-M another.domain.name -N special_duaprofile \
-D "cn=directory manager" -w secret \
-f /etc/passwd passwd
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0  
Successful completion.

>0  
An error occurred.

**Files** /var/ldap/ldap\_client\_file  
/var/ldap/ldap\_client\_cred  
Files containing the LDAP configuration of the client. These files are not to be modified manually. Their content is not guaranteed to be human readable. Use [ldapclient\(1M\)](#) to update these files.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWnisu        |
| Interface Stability | Committed       |

**See Also** `ldap(1)`, `ldaplist(1)`, `ldapmodify(1)`, `ldapmodrdn(1)`, `ldapsearch(1)`, `idsconfig(1M)`, `ldapclient(1M)`, `suninstall(1M)`, `nsswitch.conf(4)`, `attributes(5)`

*System Administration Guide: Security Services*

**Caution** Currently StartTLS is not supported by `libldap.so.5`, therefore the port number provided refers to the port used during a TLS open, rather than the port used as part of a StartTLS sequence. For example:

```
-h foo:1000 -a tls:simple
```

The preceding refers to a raw TLS open on host `foo` port 1000, not an open, StartTLS sequence on an unsecured port 1000. If port 1000 is unsecured the connection will not be made.

**Name** ldap\_cachemgr – LDAP daemon to manage client configuration for LDAP based Network Information Service lookups

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/ldap/ldap\_cachemgr [-l *log-file*] [-g]

**Description** The ldap\_cachemgr daemon is a process that provides an up-to-date configuration cache for LDAP naming services. It is started during multi-user boot.

The ldap\_cachemgr utility provides caching for all parameters as specified and used by the LDAP naming service clients. The ldap\_cachemgr utility uses the cache files which are originally created by executing the [ldapclient\(1M\)](#) utility, as cold start files. Updates to the cache files take place dynamically if profiles are used to configure the client. See the `init` option to [ldapclient\(1M\)](#).

The ldap\_cachemgr utility helps improve the performance of the clients that are using LDAP as the Naming service repository. In order for the LDAP naming services to function properly, the ldap\_cachemgr daemon must be running. ldap\_cachemgr also improves system security by making the configuration files readable by superuser only.

The cache maintained by this daemon is shared by all the processes that access LDAP Naming information. All processes access this cache through a door call. On startup, ldap\_cachemgr initializes the cache from the cache files. See [ldapclient\(1M\)](#). Thus, the cache survives machine reboots.

The ldap\_cachemgr daemon also acts as its own administration tool. If an instance of ldap\_cachemgr is already running, commands are passed transparently to the running version.

**Options** The following options are supported:

-g

Print current configuration and statistics to standard output. This is the only option executable without superuser privileges.

-l *log-file*

Cause ldap\_cachemgr to use a log file other than the default `/var/ldap/cachemgr.log`.

**Examples** **EXAMPLE 1** Stopping and Restarting the ldap\_cachemgr Daemon

The following example shows how to stop and to restart the ldap\_cachemgr daemon.

```
example# svcadm disable network/ldap/client
example# svcadm enable network/ldap/client
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Forcing ldap\_cachemgr to Reread Configuration Files

The following example shows how to force ldap\_cachemgr to reread the `/var/ldap/ldap_client_file` and `/var/ldap/ldap_client_cred` files

```
example# pkill -HUP ldap_cachemgr
```



**Files** /var/ldap/cachemgr.log  
Default log file.

/var/ldap/ldap\_client\_file

/var/ldap/ldap\_client\_cred

Files containing the LDAP configuration of the client. These files are not to be modified manually. Their content is not guaranteed to be human readable. Use [ldapclient\(1M\)](#) to update these files.

**Warnings** The ldap\_cachemgr utility is included in the current Solaris release on an uncommitted basis only. It is subject to change or removal in a future minor release.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWnisu        |

**See Also** [ldap\(1\)](#), [ldapadd\(1\)](#), [ldapdelete\(1\)](#), [ldaplist\(1\)](#), [ldapmodify\(1\)](#), [ldapmodrdn\(1\)](#), [ldapsearch\(1\)](#), [pkill\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [idsconfig\(1M\)](#), [ldapaddent\(1M\)](#), [ldapclient\(1M\)](#), [suninstall\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [signal.h\(3HEAD\)](#), [resolv.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

**Notes** The ldap\_cachemgr service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/ldap/client
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

**Name** ldapclient – initialize LDAP client machine or output an LDAP client profile in LDIF format

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/ldapclient [-v | -q] init [-a profileName=*profileName*]  
 [-a domainName=*domain*] [-a proxyDN=*proxyDN*]  
 [-a proxyPassword=*password*]  
 [-a authenticationMethod=*authenticationMethod*]  
 [-a enableShadowUpdate=true | false]  
 [-a adminDN=*adminDN*]  
 [-a adminPassword=*adminPassword*]  
 [-a certificatePath=*path*] [-d *bindDN*] [-w *bindPassword*]  
 [-j *passwdFile*] [-y *passwdFile*]  
 [-z *adminrPasswdFile*] LDAP\_server[:*port\_number*]  
 /usr/sbin/ldapclient [-v | -q] manual [-a attrName=*attrVal*]  
 /usr/sbin/ldapclient [-v | -q] mod [-a attrName=*attrVal*]  
 /usr/sbin/ldapclient [-v | -q] list  
 /usr/sbin/ldapclient [-v | -q] uninit  
 /usr/sbin/ldapclient [-v | -q] genprofile -a profileName=*profileName*  
 [-a attrName=*attrVal*]

**Description** The ldapclient utility can be used to:

- initialize LDAP client machines
- restore the network service environment on LDAP clients
- list the contents of the LDAP client cache in human readable format.

The `init` form of the `ldapclient` utility is used to initialize an LDAP client machine, using a profile stored on an LDAP server specified by `LDAP_server`. The LDAP client will use the attributes in the specified profile to determine the configuration of the LDAP client. Using a configuration profile allows for easy installation of LDAP client and propagation of configuration changes to LDAP clients. The `ldap_cachemgr(1M)` utility will update the LDAP client configuration when its cache expires by reading the profile. For more information on the configuration profile refer to IETF document *A Configuration Schema for LDAP Based Directory User Agents*.

The `manual` form of the `ldapclient` utility is used to initialize an LDAP client machine manually. The LDAP client will use the attributes specified on the command line. Any unspecified attributes will be assigned their default values. At least one server must be specified in the `defaultServerList` or the `preferredServerList` attributes. The `domainName` attribute must be specified if the client's `domainName` is not set.

The `mod` form of the `ldapclient` utility is used to modify the configuration of an LDAP client machine that was setup manually. This option modifies only those LDAP client configuration attributes specified on the command line. The `mod` option should only be used on LDAP clients that were initialized using the `manual` option.

Regardless of which method is used for initialization, if a client is to be configured to use a `proxy credentialLevel`, proxy credentials must be provided using `-a proxyDN=proxyDN` and `-a proxyPassword=proxyPassword` options. However, if `-a proxyPassword=proxyPassword` is not specified, `ldapclient` will prompt for it. Note that NULL passwords are not allowed in LDAP. If a `self credentialLevel` is configured, `authenticationMethod` must be `sasl/GSSAPI`.

Similarly, if a client is to be configured to enable shadow information update and use a proxy `credentialLevel`, administrator credentials must be provided using `-a adminDN=adminDN` and `-a adminPassword=adminPassword`. However, the shadow information update does not need the administrator credentials if a `self credentialLevel` is configured.

If any file is modified during installation, it will be backed up to `/var/ldap/restore`. The files that are typically modified during initialization are:

- `/etc/nsswitch.conf`
- `/etc/defaultdomain` (if it exists)
- `/var/yp/binding/'domainname'` (for a NIS(YP) client)
- `/var/nis/NIS_COLD_START` (for a NIS+ client)
- `/var/ldap/ldap_client_file` (for an existing LDAP client)
- `/var/ldap/ldap_client_cred` (for an existing LDAP client)

`ldapclient` does not set up a client to resolve hostnames using DNS. It simply copies `/etc/nsswitch.ldap` to `/etc/nsswitch.conf`. If you prefer to use DNS for host resolution, please refer to the DNS documentation for information on setting up DNS. See [resolv.conf\(4\)](#). If you want to use `sasl/GSSAPI` as the authentication method, you have to use DNS for hosts and ipnodes resolution.

The `list` form of the `ldapclient` utility is used to list the LDAP client configuration. The output will be human readable. LDAP configuration files are not guaranteed to be human readable. Note that for security reason, the values for `adminDN` and `adminPassword` will not be displayed.

The `uninit` form of the `ldapclient` utility is used to uninitialized the network service environment, restoring it to the state it was in prior to the last execution of `ldapclient` using `init` or `manual`. The restoration will succeed only if the machine was initialized with the `init` or `manual` form of `ldapclient`, as it uses the backup files created by these options.

The `genprofile` option is used to write an LDIF formatted configuration profile based on the attributes specified on the command line to standard output. This profile can then be loaded into an LDAP server to be used as the client profile, which can be downloaded by means of the `ldapclient init` command. Loading the LDIF formatted profile to the directory server can be done through [ldapadd\(1\)](#), or through any server specific import tool. Note that the attributes `proxyDN`, `proxyPassword`, `certificatePath`, `domainName`, `enableShadowUpdate`, `adminDN`, and `adminPassword` are not part of the configuration profile and thus are not permitted.

You must have superuser privileges to run the `ldapclient` command, except with the `genprofile` option.

To access the information stored in the directory, clients can either authenticate to the directory, or use an unauthenticated connection. The LDAP client is configured to have a credential level of either `anonymous` or `proxy`. In the first case, the client does not authenticate to the directory. In the second case, client authenticates to the directory using a proxy identity for read access, and using an administrator identity for write access if `enableShadowUpdate` is configured. In the third case, client authenticates to the directory using a Kerberos principal that is mapped to an LDAP identity by the LDAP server. Refer to the chapter on implementing security in the *System Administration Guide: Naming and Directory Services (DNS, NIS, and LDAP)* or your appropriate directory server documentation for identity mapping details.

If a client is configured to use an identity, you can configure which authentication method the client will use. The LDAP client supports the following authentication methods:

```
none
simple
sasl/CRAM-MD5
sasl/DIGEST-MD5
sasl/GSSAPI
tls:simple
tls:sasl/CRAM-MD5
tls:sasl/DIGEST-MD5
```

Note that some directory servers may not support all of these authentication methods. For `simple`, be aware that the bind password will be sent in the clear to the LDAP server. For those authentication methods using TLS (transport layer security), the entire session is encrypted. You will need to install the appropriate certificate databases to use TLS.

Commands The following commands are supported:

```
init
 Initialize client from a profile on a server.

manual
 Manually initialize client with the specified attribute values.

mod
 Modify attribute values in the configuration file after a manual initialization of the client.

list
 Write the contents of the LDAP client cache to standard output in human readable form.

uninit
 Uninitialize an LDAP client, assuming that ldapclient was used to initialize the client.
```

**genprofile**

Generate a configuration profile in LDIF format that can then be stored in the directory for clients to use, with the `init` form of this command.

**Attributes** The following attributes are supported:

**adminDN**

Specify the Bind Distinguished Name for the administrator identity that is used for shadow information update. This option is required if the credential level is `proxy`, and `enableShadowUpdate` is set to `true`. There is no default value.

**adminPassword**

Specify the administrator password. This option is required if the credential level is `proxy`, and `enableShadowUpdate` is set to `true`. There is no default value.

**attributeMap**

Specify a mapping from an attribute defined by a service to an attribute in an alternative schema. This can be used to change the default schema used for a given service. The syntax of `attributeMap` is defined in the profile IETF draft. This option can be specified multiple times. The default value for all services is `NULL`. In the example,

```
attributeMap: passwd:uid=employeeNumber
```

the LDAP client would use the LDAP attribute `employeeNumber` rather than `uid` for the `passwd` service. This is a multivalued attribute.

**authenticationMethod**

Specify the default authentication method used by all services unless overridden by the `serviceAuthenticationMethod` attribute. Multiple values can be specified by using a semicolon-separated list. The default value is `none`. For those services that use `credentialLevel` and `credentialLevel` is `anonymous`, this attribute is ignored. Services such as `pam_ldap` will use this attribute, even if `credentialLevel` is `anonymous`. The supported authentication methods are described above. If the authenticationMethod is `sasl/GSSAPI`, the `hosts` and `ipnodes` of `/etc/nsswitch.conf` must be configured with DNS support, for example:

```
hosts: dns files
ipnodes: dns files
```

**bindTimeLimit**

The maximum time in seconds that a client should spend performing a bind operation. Set this to a positive integer. The default value is 30.

**certificatePath**

The certificate path for the location of the certificate database. The value is the path where security database files reside. This is used for TLS support, which is specified in the `authenticationMethod` and `serviceAuthenticationMethod` attributes. The default is `/var/ldap`.

**credentialLevel**

Specify the credential level the client should use to contact the directory. The credential levels supported are either `anonymous` or `proxy`. If a proxy credential level is specified, then the `authenticationMethod` attribute must be specified to determine the authentication mechanism. Also, if the credential level is `proxy` and at least one of the authentication methods require a bind DN, the `proxyDN` and `proxyPassword` attribute values must be set. In addition, if `enableShadowUpdate` is set to `true`, the `adminDN` and `adminPassword` values must be set. If a self credential level is specified, the `authenticationMethod` must be `sasl/GSSAPI`.

**defaultSearchBase**

Specify the default search base DN. There is no default. The `serviceSearchDescriptor` attribute can be used to override the `defaultSearchBase` for given services.

**defaultSearchScope=one | sub**

Specify the default search scope for the client's search operations. This default can be overridden for a given service by specifying a `serviceSearchDescriptor`. The default is one level search.

**defaultServerList**

A space separated list of server names or server addresses, either IPv4 or IPv6. If you specify server names, be sure that the LDAP client can resolve the name without the LDAP name service. You must resolve the LDAP servers' names by using either `files` or `dns`. If the LDAP server name cannot be resolved, your naming service will fail.

The port number is optional. If not specified, the default LDAP server port number 389 is used, except when TLS is specified in the authentication method. In this case, the default LDAP server port number is 636.

The format to specify the port number for an IPv6 address is:

```
[ipv6_addr]:port
```

To specify the port number for an IPv4 address, use the following format:

```
ipv4_addr:port
```

If the host name is specified, use the format:

```
host_name:port
```

If you use TLS, the LDAP server's hostname must match the hostname in the TLS certificate. Typically, the hostname in the TLS certificate is a fully qualified domain name. With TLS, the LDAP server host addresses must resolve to the hostnames in the TLS certificate. You must use `files` or `dns` to resolve the host address.

**domainName**

Specify the DNS domain name. This becomes the default domain for the machine. The default is the current domain name. This attribute is only used in client initialization.

`enableShadowUpdate=true | false`

Specify whether the client is allowed to update shadow information. If set to `true` and the credential level is `proxy`, `adminDN` and `adminPassword` must be specified.

`followReferrals=true | false`

Specify the referral setting. A setting of `true` implies that referrals will be automatically followed and `false` would result in referrals not being followed. The default is `true`.

`objectclassMap`

Specify a mapping from an `objectclass` defined by a service to an `objectclass` in an alternative schema. This can be used to change the default schema used for a given service. The syntax of `objectclassMap` is defined in the profile IETF draft. This option can be specified multiple times. The default value for all services is `NULL`. In the example,

```
objectclassMap=passwd:posixAccount=unixAccount
```

the LDAP client would use the LDAP `objectclass` of `unixAccount` rather than the `posixAccount` for the `passwd` service. This is a multivalued attribute.

`preferredServerList`

Specify the space separated list of server names or server addresses, either IPv4 or IPv6, to be contacted before servers specified by the `defaultServerList` attribute. If you specify server names, be sure that the LDAP client can resolve the name without the LDAP name service. You must resolve the LDAP servers' names by using either `files` or `dns`. If the LDAP server name cannot be resolved, your naming service will fail.

The port number is optional. If not specified, the default LDAP server port number 389 is used, except when TLS is specified in the authentication method. In this case, the default LDAP server port number is 636.

The format to specify the port number for an IPv6 address is:

```
[ipv6_addr]:port
```

To specify the port number for an IPv4 address, use the following format:

```
ipv4_addr:port
```

If the host name is specified, use the format:

```
host_name:port
```

If you use TLS, the LDAP server's hostname must match the hostname in the TLS certificate. Typically, the hostname in the TLS certificate is a fully qualified domain name. With TLS, the LDAP server host addresses must resolve to the hostnames in the TLS certificate. You must use `files` or `dns` to resolve the host address.

`profileName`

Specify the profile name. For `ldapclient init`, this attribute is the name of an existing profile which may be downloaded periodically depending on the value of the `profileTTL` attribute. For `ldapclient genprofile`, this is the name of the profile to be generated. The default value is `default`.

**profileTTL**

Specify the TTL value in seconds for the client information. This is only relevant if the machine was initialized with a client profile. If you do not want [ldap\\_cachemgr\(1M\)](#) to attempt to refresh the LDAP client configuration from the LDAP server, set `profileTTL` to 0 (zero). Valid values are either zero 0 (for no expiration) or a positive integer in seconds. The default value is 12 hours.

**proxyDN**

Specify the Bind Distinguished Name for the proxy identity. This option is required if the credential level is proxy, and at least one of the authentication methods requires a bind DN. There is no default value.

**proxyPassword**

Specify client proxy password. This option is required if the credential level is proxy, and at least one of the authentication methods requires a bind DN. There is no default.

**searchTimeLimit**

Specify maximum number of seconds allowed for an LDAP search operation. The default is 30 seconds. The server may have its own search time limit.

**serviceAuthenticationMethod**

Specify authentication methods to be used by a service in the form *servicename:authenticationmethod*, for example:

```
pam_ldap:tls:simple
```

For multiple authentication methods, use a semicolon-separated list. The default value is no service authentication methods, in which case, each service would default to the `authenticationMethod` value. The supported authentications are described above.

Three services support this feature: `passwd-cmd`, `keyerv`, and `pam_ldap`. The `passwd-cmd` service is used to define the authentication method to be used by [passwd\(1\)](#) to change the user's password and other attributes. The `keyerv` service is used to identify the authentication method to be used by the [chkey\(1\)](#) and [newkey\(1M\)](#) utilities. The `pam_ldap` service defines the authentication method to be used for authenticating users when [pam\\_ldap\(5\)](#) is configured. If this attribute is not set for any of these services, the `authenticationMethod` attribute is used to define the authentication method. This is a multivalued attribute.

**serviceCredentialLevel**

Specify credential level to be used by a service. Multiple values can be specified in a space-separated list. The default value for all services is NULL. The supported credential levels are: `anonymous` or `proxy`. At present, no service uses this attribute. This is a multivalued attribute.

**serviceSearchDescriptor**

Override the default base DN for LDAP searches for a given service. The format of the descriptors also allow overriding the default search scope and search filter for each service.



The syntax of `serviceSearchDescriptor` is defined in the profile IETF draft. The default value for all services is NULL. This is a multivalued attribute. In the example,

```
serviceSearchDescriptor=passwd:ou=people,dc=a1,dc=acme,dc=com?one
```

the LDAP client would do a one level search in `ou=people,dc=a1,dc=acme,dc=com` rather than `ou=people,defaultSearchBase` for the `passwd` service.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- a *attrName=attrValue*  
Specify *attrName* and its value. See SYNOPSIS for a complete list of possible attribute names and values.
- D *bindDN*  
Specifies an entry that has read permission for the requested database.
- j *passwdFile*  
Specify a file containing the password for the bind DN or the password for the SSL client's key database. To protect the password, use this option in scripts and place the password in a secure file. This option is mutually exclusive of the `-w` option.
- q  
Quiet mode. No output is generated.
- v  
Verbose output.
- w *bindPassword*  
Password to be used for authenticating the bind DN. If this parameter is missing, the command will prompt for a password. NULL passwords are not supported in LDAP.  
  
When you use `-w bindPassword` to specify the password to be used for authentication, the password is visible to other users of the system by means of the `ps` command, in script files, or in shell history.  
  
If you supply “-” (hyphen) as a password, the command will prompt for a password.
- y *passwdFile*  
Specify a file containing the password for the proxy DN. To protect the password, use this option in scripts and place the password in a secure file. This option is mutually exclusive of the `-a proxyPassword` option.
- z *adminrPasswdFile*  
Specify a file containing the password for the `adminDN`. To protect the password, use this option in scripts and place the password in a secure file. This option is mutually exclusive of the `-a adminPassword` option.

**Operands** The following operand is supported:

*LDAP\_server*

An address or a name for the LDAP server from which the profile will be loaded. The current naming service specified in the `nsswitch.conf` file is used. Once the profile is loaded, the `preferredServerList` and `defaultServerList` specified in the profile are used.

**Examples** **EXAMPLE 1** Setting Up a Client By Using the Default Profile Stored on a Specified LDAP Server

The following example shows how to set up a client using the default profile stored on the specified LDAP server. This command will only be successful if either the credential level in the profile is set to `anonymous` or the authentication method is set to `none`.

```
example# ldapclient init 172.16.100.1
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Setting Up a Client By Using the `simple` Profile Stored on a Specified LDAP Server

The following example shows how to set up a client using the `simple` profile stored on the specified LDAP server. The `domainname` is set to `xyz.mycompany.com` and the `proxyPassword` is `secret`.

```
example# ldapclient init -a profileName=simple \
-a domainName=xyz.mycompany.com \
-a proxyDN=cn=proxyagent,ou=profile,dc=xyz,dc=mycompany,dc=com \
-a proxyPassword=secret '['fe80::a00:20ff:fea3:388']':386
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Setting Up a Client Using Only One Server

The following example shows how to set up a client using only one server. The authentication method is set to `none`, and the search base is `dc=mycompany,dc=com`.

```
example# ldapclient manual -a authenticationMethod=none \
-a defaultSearchBase=dc=mycompany,dc=com \
-a defaultServerList=172.16.100.1
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Setting Up a Client Using Only One Server That Does Not Follow Referrals

The following example shows how to set up a client using only one server. The credential level is set to `proxy`. The authentication method is `sasl/CRAM-MD5`, with the option not to follow referrals. The domain name is `xyz.mycompany.com`, and the LDAP server is running on port number 386 at IP address `172.16.100.1`.

```
example# ldapclient manual \
-a credentialLevel=proxy \
-a authenticationMethod=sasl/CRAM-MD5 \
-a proxyPassword=secret \

```

EXAMPLE 4 Setting Up a Client Using Only One Server That Does Not Follow Referrals (Continued)

```
-a proxyDN=cn=proxyagent,ou=profile,dc=xyz,dc=mycompany,dc=com \
-a defaultSearchBase=dc=xyz,dc=mycompany,dc=com \
-a domainName=xyz.mycompany.com \
-a followReferrals=false \
-a defaultServerList=172.16.100.1:386
```

EXAMPLE 5 Using genprofile to Set Only the defaultSearchBase and the Server Addresses

The following example shows how to use the genprofile command to set the defaultSearchBase and the server addresses.

```
example# ldapclient genprofile -a profileName=myprofile \
-a defaultSearchBase=dc=eng,dc=sun,dc=com \
-a "defaultServerList=172.16.100.1 172.16.234.15:386" \
> myprofile.ldif
```

EXAMPLE 6 Creating a Profile on IPv6 servers

The following example creates a profile on IPv6 servers

```
example# ldapclient genprofile -a profileName=eng \
-a credentialLevel=proxy \
-a authenticationMethod=sasl/DIGEST-MD5 \
-a defaultSearchBase=dc=eng,dc=acme,dc=com \
-a "serviceSearchDescriptor=passwd:ou=people,dc=a1,dc=acme,dc=com?one"\
-a preferredServerList= '['fe80::a00:20ff:fea3:388']' \
-a "defaultServerList='['fec0::111:a00:20ff:fea3:edcf']' \
 '['fec0::111:a00:20ff:feb5:e41']'" > eng.ldif
```

EXAMPLE 7 Creating a Profile That Overrides Every Default Value

The following example shows a profile that overrides every default value.

```
example# ldapclient genprofile -a profileName=eng \
-a credentialLevel=proxy -a authenticationMethod=sasl/DIGEST-MD5 \
-a bindTimeLimit=20 \
-a defaultSearchBase=dc=eng,dc=acme,dc=com \
-a "serviceSearchDescriptor=passwd:ou=people,dc=a1,dc=acme,dc=com?one"\
-a serviceAuthenticationMethod=pam_ldap:tls:simple \
-a defaultSearchScope=sub \
-a attributeMap=passwd:uid=employeeNumber \
-a objectClassMap=passwd:posixAccount=unixAccount \
-a followReferrals=false -a profileTTL=6000 \
-a preferredServerList=172.16.100.30 -a searchTimeLimit=30 \
-a "defaultServerList=172.16.200.1 172.16.100.1 192.168.5.6" > eng.ldif
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 The command successfully executed.
- 1 An error occurred. An error message is output.
- 2 proxyDN and proxyPassword attributes are required, but they are not provided.

**Files**

- /var/ldap/ldap\_client\_cred
- /var/ldap/ldap\_client\_file  
Contain the LDAP configuration of the client. These files are not to be modified manually. Their content is not guaranteed to be human readable. Use `ldapclient` to update them.
- /etc/defaultdomain  
System default domain name, matching the domain name of the data in the LDAP servers. See `defaultdomain(4)`.
- /etc/nsswitch.conf  
Configuration file for the name-service switch. See `nsswitch.conf(4)`.
- /etc/nsswitch.ldap  
Sample configuration file for the name-service switch configured with LDAP and files.

**Attributes** See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWnisu        |
| Interface Stability | Evolving        |

**See Also** `chkey(1)`, `ldap(1)`, `ldapadd(1)`, `ldapdelete(1)`, `ldaplist(1)`, `ldapmodify(1)`, `ldapmodrdn(1)`, `ldapsearch(1)`, `idsconfig(1M)`, `ldapaddent(1M)`, `ldap_cachemgr(1M)`, `suninstall(1M)`, `defaultdomain(4)`, `nsswitch.conf(4)`, `resolv.conf(4)`, `attributes(5)`

**Caution** Currently StartTLS is not supported by `libldap.so.5`, therefore the port number provided refers to the port used during a TLS open, rather than the port used as part of a StartTLS sequence. To avoid timeout delays, mixed use of TLS and non-TLS authentication mechanisms is not recommended.

For example:

```
-h foo:1000 -a authenticationMethod=tls:simple
```

...or:

```
defaultServerList= foo:1000
authenticationMethod= tls:simple
```

The preceding refers to a raw TLS open on host `foo` port `1000`, not an open, StartTLS sequence on an unsecured port `1000`. If port `1000` is unsecured the connection will not be made.

As a second example, the following will incur a significant timeout delay while attempting the connection to `foo:636` with an unsecured bind.

```
defaultServerList= foo:636 foo:389
authenticationMethod= simple
```

**Name** ldmad – Logical Domains Agents daemon

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/ldoms/ldmad

**Description** The ldmad daemon is part of the framework that enables Logical Domain agents to run on a Logical Domain. A Logical Domain agent is a component that interacts with the control domain for providing features or information.

ldmad is responsible for running agents on a Logical Domain and must be enabled to ensure proper functionality of all features provided by the domain manager on the control domain. It is started at boot time and has no configuration options.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWldomu       |
| Interface Stability | Unstable        |

**See Also** [svcs\(1\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [syslog\(3C\)](#), [syslog.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

**Errors** ldmad uses [syslog\(3C\)](#) to report status and error messages. All of the messages are logged with the LOG\_DAEMON facility. Error messages are logged with the LOG\_ERR and LOG\_NOTICE priorities, and informational messages are logged with the LOG\_INFO priority. The default entries in the /etc/syslog.conf file log all of the ldmad error messages to the /var/adm/messages log.

**Notes** The ldmad service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/ldoms/agents:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

**Name** link, unlink – link and unlink files and directories

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/link *existing-file new-file*  
 /usr/xpg4/bin/link *existing-file new-file*  
 /usr/sbin/unlink *file*

**Description** The `link` and `unlink` commands link and unlink files and directories. Only super-users can use these commands on directories.

Use `link` to create a new file that points to an existing file. The *existing-file* and *new-file* operands specify the existing file and newly-created files. See OPERANDS.

`link` and `unlink` directly invoke the `link(2)` and `unlink(2)` system calls, performing exactly what they are told to do and abandoning all error checking. This differs from the `ln(1)` command. See `ln(1)`.

While linked files and directories can be removed using `unlink`, it is safer to use `rm(1)` and `rmdir(1)` instead. See `rm(1)` and `rmdir(1)`.

/usr/xpg4/bin/link If the existing file being hard linked is itself a symbolic link, then the newly created file (*new-file*) will be a hard link to the file referenced by the symbolic link, not to the symbolic link object itself (*existing-file*).

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

*existing-file* Specifies the name of the existing file to be linked.  
*file* Specifies the name of the file to be unlinked.  
*new-file* Specifies the name of newly created (linked) file.

**Environment Variables** See `environ(5)` for descriptions of the following environment variables that affect the execution of `link`: `LANG`, `LC_ALL`, `LC_CTYPE`, `LC_MESSAGES`, and `NLSPATH`.

**Attributes** See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWcsu         |

/usr/xpg4/bin/link

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWxcu4        |
| Interface Stability | Standard        |

**See Also** [ln\(1\)](#), [rm\(1\)](#), [link\(2\)](#), [unlink\(2\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#), [standards\(5\)](#)



**Name** listdgrp – lists members of a device group

**Synopsis** /usr/bin/listdgrp *dgroup*...

**Description** listdgrp displays the members of the device groups specified by the *dgroup* list.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 An example of listdgrp.

The following example lists the devices that belong to group partitions:

```
example% listdgrp partitions
 root
 swap
 usr
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 Command was syntax incorrect, an invalid option used, or an internal error occurred.
- 2 A device group table could not be opened for reading.
- 3 A device group *dgroup* could not be found in the device group table.

**Files** /etc/dgroup.tab Device group table.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWcsu         |

**See Also** [putdgrp\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** listen – network listener daemon

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/saf/listen [-m *devstem*] *net\_spec*

**Description** The `listen` process “listens” to a network for service requests, accepts requests when they arrive, and invokes servers in response to those service requests. The network listener process may be used with any connection-oriented network (more precisely, with any connection-oriented transport provider) that conforms to the Transport Layer Interface (TLI) Specification.

The listener internally generates a pathname for the minor device for each connection; it is this pathname that is used in the `utmpx` entry for a service, if one is created. By default, this pathname is the concatenation of the prefix `/dev/netspec` with the decimal representation of the minor device number. In either case, the representation of the minor device number will be at least two digits (for example, 05 or 27), or longer when it is necessary to accommodate minor device numbers larger than 99.

**Server Invocation** When a connection indication is received, the listener creates a new transport endpoint and accepts the connection on that endpoint. Before giving the file descriptor for this new connection to the server, any designated STREAMS modules are pushed and the configuration script is executed, (if one exists). This file descriptor is appropriate for use with either TLI (see `t_sync(3NSL)`) or the sockets interface library.

By default, a new instance of the server is invoked for each connection. When the server is invoked, file descriptor 0 refers to the transport endpoint, and is open for reading and writing. File descriptors 1 and 2 are copies of file descriptor 0; no other file descriptors are open. The service is invoked with the user and group IDs of the user name under which the service was registered with the listener, and with the current directory set to the HOME directory of that user.

Alternatively, a service may be registered so that the listener will pass connections to a standing server process through a FIFO or a named stream, instead of invoking the server anew for each connection. In this case, the connection is passed in the form of a file descriptor that refers to the new transport endpoint. Before the file descriptor is sent to the server, the listener interprets any configuration script registered for that service using `doconfig(3NSL)`, although `doconfig` is invoked with both the `NORUN` and `NOASSIGN` flags. The server receives the file descriptor for the connection in a `strrecvfd` structure using an `I_RECVFD` `ioctl(2)`.

For more details about the listener and its administration, see `nlsadmin(1M)`.

**Options** -m*devstem* The listener will use *devstem* as the prefix for the pathname.

**Files** /etc/saf/pmtag/\*

**Attributes** See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWcsu         |

**See Also** `nlsadmin(1M)`, `pmadm(1M)`, `sac(1M)`, `sacadm(1M)`, `ioctl(2)`, `doconfig(3NSL)`, `nlsgetcall(3NSL)`, `nlsprovider(3NSL)`, `t_sync(3NSL)`, `attributes(5)`, `streamio(7I)`

*System Administration Guide: Basic Administration*

**Notes** When passing a connection to a standing server, the user and group IDs contained in the `strrecvfd` structure will be those for the listener (that is, they will both be 0); the user name under which the service was registered with the listener is not reflected in these IDs.

When operating multiple instances of the listener on a single transport provider, there is a potential race condition in the binding of addresses during initialization of the listeners, if any of their services have dynamically assigned addresses. This condition would appear as an inability of the listener to bind a static-address service to its otherwise valid address, and would result from a dynamic-address service having been bound to that address by a different instance of the listener.

**Name** llc2\_loop – loopback diagnostics to test the driver, adapter and network.

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/llc2/llc2\_loop2 [-v] *ppa*  
 /usr/lib/llc2/llc2\_loop3 *ppa sap frames*  
 /usr/lib/llc2/llc2\_loop3 *ppa type frames*  
 /usr/lib/llc2/llc2\_loop4 [-v] *ppa*

## Description

**Loop 2** The loop2 test sends a NULL XID frame to the broadcast (all 1's) destination MAC address. The source SAP (Service Access Point) value used is 0x04 (SNA's SAP). Therefore, if SNA is running on the system, the loop2 test will fail. The destination SAP value is the NULL SAP (0x00). This test finds out who is listening and can receive frames sent out from a node. The verbose (-v) option displays the MAC address of responding nodes. All possible responders may not be displayed, since the loop2 test only waits for responses for 2 seconds, but during this time 50-200 nodes may be displayed. The most likely error is:

Unexpected DLPI primitive *x*, expected *y*.

where *x* = 5 and *y* = 6. From /usr/include/sys/dlpi.h, the expected return value from one of the DLPI primitives is 6 (DL\_OK\_ACK), but instead a 5 (DL\_ERROR\_ACK) was received. This can occur for two reasons:

- The loop2 command was issued to a non-existent PPA (Physical Point of Attachment).
- The SAP (0x04) is already in use (for example, the SNA subsystem is up).

**Loop 3** The loop3 test sends 1,495 byte Unnumbered Information (UI) frames to the NULL (all 0's) destination MAC address. This should be used along with data capture either on the local node or another node on the same LAN to verify the transmission of data. The *ppa* argument specifies the adapter on which to run the test. The *ppa* is the relative physical position of the adapter and may be ascertained by viewing the adapter configuration (see [llc2\\_config\(1\)](#)). For Token Ring or Ethernet, specify an even *sap* value from 2 through 254, or, for Ethernet only, any *type* value from 1519 (0x05ef) through 65535 (0xffff). It is advised to pick a value that is easily recognized when the data capture output is viewed. *frames* is the decimal number of 1,495 bytes packets to transmit. The test will only display a message if a failure occurs.

**Loop 4** The loop4 test sends a TEST frame (no information field) to the broadcast (all 1's) destination MAC address. The source SAP value used is 0x04 (SNA's SAP). Therefore, if SNA is running on the system, the loop4 test will fail. The destination SAP value is the NULL SAP (0x00). This test finds out who is listening and can receive frames sent out from a node. The verbose (-v) option displays the MAC address of responding nodes. All possible responders may not be displayed since the loop4 test only waits for responses for 2 seconds, but during this time 50-200 nodes may be displayed. The loop4 test displays information similar to the following example if other nodes are listening and respond (verbose mode):

-Attaching  
 -Binding

```

-Sending TEST
-Responders
 1-0000c0c12449
 2-08000e142990
 3-08000e142a51
 4-0000c0450044
 5-0000c0199e46
-Unbinding
-Detaching
5 nodes responding

```

The errors displayed are the same as for loop2.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWllc         |

**See Also** [llc2\\_config\(1\)](#), [llc2\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [llc2\(7D\)](#)

**Notes** For information about how to start the service, see [llc2\(7D\)](#)

**Name** lms – allow applications to access the Intel Active Management Technology

**Synopsis** lms

**Description** The Local Manageability Service, lms, allows applications to access the Intel Active Management Technology (Intel AMT) ME (Management Engine) using the local HECI interface. LMS is dependent on the HECI driver.

To use lms, ensure that the Intel AMT Manageability Interface driver is installed and connected to the ME.

lms is intended to be run as a daemon. Messages from the service are sent to the syslog. LMS messages are marked with a source of "LMS".

For an example of how to enable the LMS service using SMF, see EXAMPLES.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Enabling the LMS service using SMF

The following example enables the LMS service using SMF:

```
svcadm enable network/lms
```

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Architecture        | x86             |
| Availability        | SUNWamt-lms     |
| Interface Stability | Volatile        |

**See Also** [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

**Name** localeadm – query and configure locales

**Synopsis** localeadm [-lcst] [-q *locale* | *region*] [-h] [-d *device*]...  
 localeadm -r *locale* | *region* [-t] [-v] [-m] [-R *root\_path*]  
 localeadm -a *locale* | *region* [-t] [-v] [-m] [-d *device*]...  
 [-R *root\_path*]  
 localeadm -f *locale* | *region* [-t] [-v] [-m] [-d *device*]...  
 [-R *root\_path*]  
 localeadm -h  
 localeadm -C

**Description** The localeadm utility queries and configures Solaris locales through a command line interface.

In query (-q) or list (-l) modes, localeadm displays information about locale packages that are installed on the system or that reside on a particular device or directory.

To make it easier for users to pick out locales, the output from localeadm consists of a list of country or region names rather than a list of packages. Users can use the output to determine which locales or regions to add or remove.

When the user specifies a locale or region to add or remove using the name given by the output of the list mode, localeadm calculates which locale packages need to be changed and add or remove them. localeadm uses pkgadd(1M) or pkgrm(1M) to add or remove packages.

If the locales changed were Asian locales, then extra processes such as input method server daemons might need to be started before the new locales work properly. Once the locales are installed, the user is prompted to either reboot the machine or manually start the daemons. The user is also given a list of daemons which need to be started.

All locales are part of a set geographic region. A locale is an indivisible part of a region. You cannot have a locale which doesn't exist in a region, or a region without locales. If you choose to add or remove a particular locale, all of the locales in the region to which it belongs will be added or removed. Likewise, if you query a locale, localeadm checks the system for the region of which the local is part.

**Options** The following options are supported:

-a *locale* | *region*     Add the packages for locale (*locale*) or geographic region *region* to the system.

Specify *locale* or *region* as the short name displayed by the -l option. For example, the -l option outputs Australasia (aau), therefore, the argument for -a is aau.

This option requires the `-d` option with arguments. If necessary packages are already installed, `localeadm` does not overwrite them. It simply skips such packages.

If you use the `-a` and `-m` options with a locale that has already been added without desktop translated message packages, it adds the desktop translated message packages for that locale to the system.

Only superusers or others who have been assigned package administration access through role-based access control can use this option. See [rbac\(5\)](#) for information on adding and removing packages. See [smc\(1M\)](#) for information on setting up and adding users to a package manager role.

- `-c` Display the locale name with codeset in [locale\(1\)](#) format.

Use this option in conjunction with the `-l` option to display the locale name with codeset in the format shown by the [locale\(1\)](#) command. For example, it displays `fr_FR.ISO8859-1` as opposed to `french`.
- `-C` Enable user to recreate the `Locale_config` file based on the images available to them. This attempts to ensure that any inaccuracies (more likely for non-GA versions) in the bundled configuration file are addressed.
- `-d device` Install or list locales from packages located in *device*. Specify *device* as a full path name to a directory containing Solaris packages or the path to the top directory of a complete Solaris image. You can also specify *device* as a device alias such as `/cdrom/cdrom0`, a device nickname as defined by [eject\(1\)](#), or an alternative device nickname such as `cdrom`, `dvd` or `dvdrom`. If the packages are to be installed from a series of CDROM images, then multiple images can be specified in a comma separated list. The same device or nickname can be repeated to indicate multiple loadings of different media at the same device.
- `-f` Check the pkgs modified by a previous add or remove operation to ensure all pkgs were added or removed properly. If a pkg was incorrectly added due to a `pkgadd` or `pkgrm` failure, the pkg is backed out and reinstalled.

Only superusers or others who have been assigned package administration access through role-based access control can use this option. See [rbac\(5\)](#) for information on adding and removing packages. See [smc\(1M\)](#) for information on setting up and adding users to a package manager role.



- 
- h** Print a short help message. The help message lists all the flags and their usage.
- l** List all the locales that are installed on the system or available on an install media. The list is sorted by geographic region.
- When you specify the **-d** option with **-l**, `localedm` lists all of the locales or regions available on the device pointed to by the **-d** option arguments.
- When you do not specify the **-d** option, `localedm -l` lists all of the locales or regions installed on the current system.
- When you specify the **-t** option with **-l**, `localedm` lists all of the locales or regions that could possibly be added to the system.
- m** Deselect translated message packages.
- By default, with the **-a** option, `localedm` adds the translated desktop message packages for the locale or region specified in the **-a** option argument. If you use the **-a** option with the **-m** option, the desktop translated message packages for the locale or region will not be added, thus effectively disabling the desktop translated messages support for that locale or region. If used with the **-r** option, `localedm` will remove only the translated desktop message packages for the locale or region specified in the **-r** option argument.
- If you use the **-m** option with a locale that has already been added without the translated desktop message packages it adds the translated desktop message packages for that locale to the system.
- q *locale* | *region*** Query the system to see if the locale (*locale*) or geographic region *region* are already installed. The expected input for a locale or region name is the name displayed by the **-l** option.
- r *locale* | *region*** Remove the packages for locale (*locale*) or geographic region (*region*) from the system.
- Specify *locale* or *region* as the short name displayed by the **-l** option. For example, the **-l** option outputs `Australasia (aua)`, therefore, the argument for **-a** is `aua`.
- Only superusers or others who have been assigned package administration access through role-based access control can use this option. See [rbac\(5\)](#) for information on adding and removing packages. See [smc\(1M\)](#) for information on setting up and adding users to a package manager role.

- R *root\_path*** Define the full path name of a directory to use as the root path. All files, including package system information files, are relocated to a directory tree starting in the specified *root\_path*. You can specify *root\_path* when you install to a client from a server.
- Note** – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the **-R** option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).
- s** Display only the geographic regions of specific locales or regions.
- Use this option in conjunction with the **-l** option to display listed regions or locales.
- t** Test mode.
- Use this option with **-a**, **-f** or **-r** to list all operations to be done. It will not actually add or remove packages.
- Use the this option with **-l** to list all of the locales or regions that could possibly be added to the system.
- v** Print out messages produced during a `pkgadd` or `pkgrm` command.
- This option works on `localeadm add` and `remove` commands. It does not work on individual `pkgadd` or `pkgrm` commands. It displays additional information, but only as part of the larger program.

### Examples

**EXAMPLE 1** Listing All of the Locales and Codesets

The following example lists all of the geographic regions installed on the machine. All locales in the regions are listed by their codesets:

```
example% localeadm -lc
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Listing the Regions Available on a Solaris CD or DVD

The following example command checks the `Solaris_10/Product` directory of the CD or DVD mounted on `/cdrom/cdrom0`. It also lists the names of the regions that can be installed from packages in that directory. The **-s** option displays the region names without any locales.

```
example% localeadm -ls -d /cdrom/cdrom0
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Querying for a Locale

The following example queries whether the Central European region called `ceu` on the current machine.

```
example% localeadm -q ceu
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Removing Western European Locales

The following example removes all packages associated with the Western Europe region from the system, except for those packages needed by other regions.

```
example% localeadm -r weu
```

**EXAMPLE 5** Adding Russian Locales

The following example installs the Eastern Europe region, of which Russian locale is a part, from packages located in `/net/sparc_images/export/pkggs`.

```
example# localeadm -a ru_RU -d /net/sparc_images/export/pkggs
```

**EXAMPLE 6** Adding the Traditional Chinese Locale

The following example adds the Traditional Chinese region to the system. This differs from the previous example in that Traditional Chinese is installed as a geographic region rather than just a locale. This is the case for all Asian languages, for example, `zh_TW`, `zh_CN`, `zh_HK`, `hi_IN`, `th_TH`, `ko_KR`, `ja`.

```
localeadm -a zh_TW -d /net/sparc_images/export/pkggs
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned when you invoke `localedm` without the `-q` (query) option:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 An error occurred.

The following exit values are returned when you invoke `localedm` with the `-q` (query) option:

- 0 Successful search. The locale or region was found.
- 1 Unsuccessful search. The locale or region was not found.
- 2 An error occurred.

**Files** /var/sadm/install/logs/localeadmin\_install.*date*  
/var/sadm/install/logs/localeadmin\_uninstall.*date*  
Log files for installation and removal operations.

*date* is specified in YYYY\_MM\_DD format. If a particular day has multiple installs, *date* has a period (.) followed by a number appended to it, for example, 2003\_10\_20.1, 2003\_10\_20.2.

/tmp/locales.list  
File that contains the output of the -l option.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWladm        |
| Interface Stability | Evolving        |

**See Also** [eject\(1\)](#), [locale\(1\)](#), [pkgadd\(1M\)](#), [pkgrm\(1M\)](#), [smc\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [rbac\(5\)](#)

*International Language Environments Guide*

**Name** `localectr` – customize and build new locales

**Synopsis** `/usr/bin/localectr`

```

/usr/bin/localectr -l locale1,locale2... [-d destination_path]
 [-c compiler_path] [-r 0 | 1 | 2] [-i pkginfo_template]
 [-p pkgname_prefix]

/usr/bin/localectr -h
/usr/bin/localectr -q
/usr/bin/localectr -V

```

**Description** The `localectr` utility allows new locales to be customized and built. The output of `localectr` is an installable package containing the compiled shared object binary which contains the locale data information as well as a number of other supporting files that are required to have a fully working locale on the system.

Once generated, the package can be added to the system by using the [pkgadd\(1M\)](#) command and removed with [pkgrm\(1M\)](#).

Depending on your default system login, you might have to reset your user environment after you add a locale. If `dtlogin(1X)` (for the CDE user environment) is the default system login, you need to restart `dtlogin`. No action is required if `gdm(1)` (for the Gnome user environment) is the default login.

There are two interfaces to `localectr`, command line (CLI) and graphical user interface (GUI). To customize the locale data, you must use the GUI. To create locales with standard locale data according to Unicode's Common Locale Data Repository (CLDR), the CLI is sufficient.

With the CLI it is also possible to generate several locales in a single step, with a separate package being generated for each locale. With the GUI, a single locale is processed at a time.

To launch the GUI, run the `localectr` command with no options. To run from the CLI, use the appropriate options as described below.

`localectr` uses the [localedef\(1\)](#) utility to build the locale data binary shared object. Therefore, access to a C compiler is required in order to run `localectr` successfully, as this is also required by `localedef`.

`localectr` is mainly concerned with locale data. However, in order to create a fully working locale on the system with `localectr`, many features, such as fonts, translations and input methods, are also required. Depending on what locales are already installed on the system, the relevant features might or might not be present on the system. If they are not present, then [localeadm\(1M\)](#) should be used to add the relevant packages before adding packages created by `localectr`. `localectr` bundles locale data for the latest set of locales available in Unicode's CLDR. A user can also create a locale not available in CLDR by supplying her own data in the `localectr` GUI.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- c *compiler\_path*  
Specify the path to the C compiler that is used to compile the locale data into a shared object binary. Not required if the compiler is already in the user's PATH.
- d *destination\_path*  
Specify the path to the directory where the created package is to be stored.
- h  
Displays the usage message.
- i *template\_file*  
The full path to user defined `pkginfo(4)` template file.
- l *locale1,locale2...*  
Specify a comma-separated list of locale(s) to generate. Locale names are in the form: *locale.codeset@variant*, where *codeset* and *variant* are optional. The default and only allowed *codeset* is UTF-8. The default *variant* is `localectr`.
- p  
The package name prefix
- q  
Queries `localectr` for a complete list of locales for which locale data is defined in `localectr`. When `localectr` is run from the CLI, the locale(s) specified with the `-l` option must be on this list in order for an installable locale package to be generated.
- r  
Specify the range of Unicode characters for which locale data rules in the LC\_CTYPE and LC\_COLLATE categories are to be generated. There are three valid options:
  - 0  
Locale data rules are restricted to the exemplar or to commonly used characters of the locale in question.
  - 1  
Locale data rules are restricted to the Unicode plane 0 characters, whose codepoints fall in the range `u0000-uFFFF`.
  - 2  
Locale data rules are generated for all codepoints defined in the latest version of Unicode that is supported by the system on which `localectr` is being run.
- V  
Shows the version of this software.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Launching the GUI

The following example launches the `localectr` GUI.

```
example% localectr
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Generating Locale for Afrikaans (South Africa) with Default Locale Data

The following example generates a package in the specified destination directory, which can be used to install the Afrikaans (`af_ZA.UTF-8`) locale on the system. The package name is composed of a prefix followed by the hyphen separated ISO-639 language code, the ISO-3166 country code, the locale encoding and an optional user-defined tag. The resulting package can then be added to the system using [pkgadd\(1M\)](#).

```
example% localectr -l af_ZA -d /tmp
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Generating Several South Africa Locales with Full Unicode Range of Characters

The following example generates an installable package for each of the specified locales.

```
example% localectr -l af_ZA,en_ZA,xh_ZA,zu_ZA -d /tmp -r 2
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Generating the Irish Locale with a User-Specified Tag

The following example will generate a locale whose full name is `ga_IE.UTF-8@mycompanyname`.

```
example% localectr -l ga_IE@mycompanyname -d /tmp
```

**Exit Status** The following exit codes are returned:

```
0
 Successful completion
```

```
>0
 An error occurred.
```

**Files** `/usr/bin/localectr`  
 Wrapper script that launches locale creator.

`/usr/lib/localectr`  
 Jar files, scripts, and locale data repository needed to run the application.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE   |
|----------------|-------------------|
| Availability   | SUNWlocalecreator |

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Interface Stability | See below.      |

Interface stability is Committed for command-line options and is Uncommitted for other interfaces.

**See Also** [locale\(1\)](#), [localedef\(1\)](#), [localeadm\(1M\)](#), [pkgadd\(1M\)](#), [pkgrm\(1M\)](#), [pkginfo\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

[dtlogin\(1X\)](#), [gdm\(1\)](#)(these are not SunOS man pages)

*International Language Environments Guide*



**Name** locator – location indicator control

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/locator [-f | -n]

**Description** The locator command sets or queries the state of the system locator if such a device exists.

Without options, the locator command reports the current state of the system.

The privileges required to use this command are hardware dependent. Typically, only the super user can get or set a locator.

**Options** The following options are supported:

-f Turns the locator off.

-n Turns the locator on.

**Examples** **EXAMPLE 1** Using the locator Command on a Platform Which Has a System Locator LED

When issued on a platform which has a system locator LED, the following command turns the locator on:

```
locator -n
locator
The 'system' locator is on
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Using the locator Command on a Platform Which Does Not Have a System Locator LED

When issued on a platform which does not have a system locator LED, the following command attempts to turn the locator on. The command returns an error message.

```
locator -n
'system' locator not found
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 Invalid command line input.
- 2 The requested operation failed.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWcsu         |

**See Also** [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** lockd – network lock daemon

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/nfs/lockd [-g *graceperiod*] [-l *listen\_min\_backlog*]  
[-t *timeout*] [*nthreads*]

**Description** The lockd utility is part of the NFS lock manager, which supports record locking operations on NFS files. See [fcntl\(2\)](#) and [lockf\(3C\)](#). The lock manager provides the following two functions:

- It forwards [fcntl\(2\)](#) locking requests for NFS mounted file systems to the lock manager on the NFS server.
- It generates local file locking operations in response to requests forwarded from lock managers running on NFS client machines.

State information kept by the lock manager about these locking requests can be lost if the lockd is killed or the operating system is rebooted. Some of this information can be recovered as follows. When the server lock manager restarts, it waits for a grace period for all client-site lock managers to submit reclaim requests. Client-site lock managers, on the other hand, are notified by the status monitor daemon, [statd\(1M\)](#), of the restart and promptly resubmit previously granted lock requests. If the lock daemon fails to secure a previously granted lock at the server site, then it sends SIGLOST to a process.

Administrators can make changes to the startup parameters for lockd by logging in as root and editing the /etc/default/nfs file (See [nfs\(4\)](#)).

**Options** The following options are supported:

- |                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -g <i>graceperiod</i>        | Deprecated in favor of GRACE_PERIOD. Specify the number of seconds that all clients (both NLM and NFSv4) have to reclaim locks after the server reboots. It also controls the NFSv4 lease interval. This option is equivalent to the LOCKD_GRACE_PERIOD parameter. |
| -l <i>listen_min_backlog</i> | Specify the listener backlog ( <i>listen_min_backlog</i> ). <i>listen_min_backlog</i> is the number connect requests that are queued and waiting to be processed before new connect requests start to get dropped.                                                 |
| -t <i>timeout</i>            | Specify the number of seconds to wait before retransmitting a lock request to the remote server. The default value is 5 seconds. Equivalent of the LOCKD_RETRANSMIT_TIMEOUT parameter in the nfs file.                                                             |

**Operands** *nthreads* Specify the maximum number of concurrent threads that the server can handle. This concurrency is achieved by up to *nthreads* threads created as needed in the kernel. *nthreads* should be based on the load expected on this server. If *nthreads* is not specified, the maximum number of concurrent threads will default to 20. Equivalent of the LOCKD\_SERVERS parameter in the nfs file.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWnfscu       |

**See Also** [svcs\(1\)](#), [automountd\(1M\)](#), [clear\\_locks\(1M\)](#), [mount\\_nfs\(1M\)](#), [share\(1M\)](#), [share\\_nfs\(1M\)](#), [statd\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [fcntl\(2\)](#), [lockf\(3C\)](#), [nfs\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

**Notes** The lockd service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/nfs/nlockmgr
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

If it is disabled, it will be enabled by [mount\\_nfs\(1M\)](#), [share\\_nfs\(1M\)](#), and [automountd\(1M\)](#) unless its `application/auto_enable` property is set to `false`.

This daemon might not exist in a future release of Solaris.

**Name** lockfs – change or report file system locks

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/lockfs [-adehnuw] [-c *string*] [*file-system*]. . .

**Description** lockfs is used to change and report the status of file system locks. lockfs reports the lock status and unlocks the file systems that were improperly left locked.

Using lockfs to lock a file system is discouraged because this requires extensive knowledge of SunOS internals to be used effectively and correctly.

When invoked with no arguments, lockfs lists the UFS file systems that are locked. If *file-system* is not specified, and -a is specified, lockfs is run on all mounted, UFS type file systems.

**Options** The options are mutually exclusive: wndheuf. If you do specify more than one of these options on a lockfs command line, the utility does not protest and invokes only the last option specified. In particular, you cannot specify a flush (-f) and a lock (for example, -w) on the same command line. However, all locking operations implicitly perform a flush, so the -f is superfluous when specifying a lock.

You must be super-user to use any of the following options, with the exception of -a, -f and -v.

The following options are supported.

-a

Apply command to all mounted, UFS type file systems. *file-system* is ignored when -a is specified.

-c *string*

Accept a string that is passed as the comment field. The -c only takes affect when the lock is being set using the -d, -h, -n, -u, or -w options.

-d

Delete-lock (dlock) the specified *file-system*. dlock suspends access that could remove directory entries.

-e

Error-lock (elock) the specified *file-system*. elock blocks all local access to the locked file system and returns EWOULDBLOCK on all remote access. File systems are elocked by UFS on detection of internal inconsistency. They may only be unlocked after successful repair by fsck, which is usually done automatically (see [mount\\_ufs\(1M\)](#)). elocked file systems can be unmounted.

-f

Force a synchronous flush of all data that is dirty at the time fsflush is run to its backing store for the named file system (or for all file systems.)

It is a more reliable method than using [sync\(1M\)](#) because it does not return until all possible data has been pushed. In the case of UFS filesystems with logging enabled, the log is also rolled before returning. Additional data can be modified by the time `fsflush` exits, so using one of the locking options is more likely to be of general use.

- h  
Hard-lock (`hlock`) the specified *file-system*. `hlock` returns an error on every access to the locked file system, and cannot be unlocked. `hlocked` file systems can be unmounted.
- n  
Name-lock (`nlock`) the specified *file-system*. `nlock` suspends accesses that could change or remove existing directories entries.
- u  
Unlock (`unlock`) the specified *file-system*. `unlock` awakens suspended accesses.
- v  
Enable verbose output.
- w  
Write-lock (`wlock`) the specified *file-system*. `wlock` suspends writes that would modify the file system. Access times are not kept while a file system is write-locked.

**Operands** The following operands are supported.

*file-system*

A list of path names separated by whitespace. Note that *file-system* can be a directory rather than the specific name of a file system, such as `/` or `/usr`. For example, if you specify `/export/home` as an argument to a `lockfs` command and `/export/home` is mounted on the root (`/`) file system, the `lockfs` command will take effect on the root file system.

**Usage** See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of `lockfs` when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte ( $2^{31}$  bytes).

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Using `lockfs -a`

In the following examples, *filesystem* is the pathname of the mounted-on directory (mount point). Locktype is one of “write,” “name,” “delete,” “hard,” or “unlock”. When enclosed in parenthesis, the lock is being set. Comment is a string set by the process that last issued a lock command.

The following example shows the `lockfs` output when only the `-a` option is specified.

```
example# /usr/sbin/lockfs -a
```

| Filesystem | Locktype | Comment |
|------------|----------|---------|
| /          | unlock   |         |

**EXAMPLE 1** Using lockfs -a (Continued)

---

```
/var unlock
```

---

```
example#
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Using lockfs -w

The following example shows the lockfs output when the -w option is used to write lock the /var file system and the comment string is set using the -c option. The -a option is then specified on a separate command line.

```
example# /usr/sbin/lockfs -w -c "lockfs: write lock example" /var
example# /usr/sbin/lockfs -a
```

---

| Filesystem | Locktype | Comment                    |
|------------|----------|----------------------------|
| /          | unlock   |                            |
| /var       | write    | lockfs: write lock example |

---

```
example#
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Using lockfs -u

The following example shows the lockfs output when the -u option is used to unlock the /var file system and the comment string is set using the -c option.

```
example# /usr/sbin/lockfs -uc "lockfs: unlock example" /var
example# /usr/sbin/lockfs /var
```

---

| Filesystem | Locktype | Comment                |
|------------|----------|------------------------|
| /var       | unlock   | lockfs: unlock example |

---

```
example#
```

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWcsu         |

**See Also** [kill\(1\)](#), [mount\\_ufs\(1M\)](#), [sync\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#), [ufs\(7FS\)](#),

*System Administration Guide: Basic Administration*

**Diagnostics** *file system*: Not owner

You must be root to use this command.

*file system* :Deadlock condition detected/avoided

A file is enabled for accounting or swapping, on *file system*.

*file system*: Device busy

Another process is setting the lock on *file system*.



**Name** lockstat – report kernel lock and profiling statistics

**Synopsis** lockstat [-ACEHI] [-e *event\_list*] [-i *rate*]  
 [-b | -t | -h | -s *depth*] [-n *nrecords*]  
 [-l *lock* [, *size*]] [-d *duration*]  
 [-f *function* [, *size*]] [-T] [-ckgWRpP] [-D *count*]  
 [-o *filename*] [-x *opt* [=val]] *command* [*args*]

**Description** The `lockstat` utility gathers and displays kernel locking and profiling statistics. `lockstat` allows you to specify which events to watch (for example, spin on adaptive mutex, block on read access to rwlock due to waiting writers, and so forth) how much data to gather for each event, and how to display the data. By default, `lockstat` monitors all lock contention events, gathers frequency and timing data about those events, and displays the data in decreasing frequency order, so that the most common events appear first.

`lockstat` gathers data until the specified command completes. For example, to gather statistics for a fixed-time interval, use `sleep(1)` as the command, as follows:

```
example# lockstat sleep 5
```

When the `-I` option is specified, `lockstat` establishes a per-processor high-level periodic interrupt source to gather profiling data. The interrupt handler simply generates a `lockstat` event whose caller is the interrupted PC (program counter). The profiling event is just like any other `lockstat` event, so all of the normal `lockstat` options are applicable.

`lockstat` relies on DTrace to modify the running kernel's text to intercept events of interest. This imposes a small but measurable overhead on all system activity, so access to `lockstat` is restricted to super-user by default. The system administrator can permit other users to use `lockstat` by granting them additional DTrace privileges. Refer to the *Solaris Dynamic Tracing Guide* for more information about DTrace security features.

**Options** The following options are supported:

**Event Selection** If no event selection options are specified, the default is `-C`.

`-A`

Watch all lock events. `-A` is equivalent to `-CH`.

`-C`

Watch contention events.

`-E`

Watch error events.

`-e event_list`

Only watch the specified events. *event\_list* is a comma-separated list of events or ranges of events such as 1,4-7,35. Run `lockstat` with no arguments to get a brief description of all events.

- H  
Watch hold events.
- I  
Watch profiling interrupt events.
- i *rate*  
Interrupt rate (per second) for -I. The default is 97 Hz, so that profiling doesn't run in lockstep with the clock interrupt (which runs at 100 Hz).
- Data Gathering -x *arg[=val]*  
Enable or modify a DTrace runtime option or D compiler option. The list of options is found in the *Solaris Dynamic Tracing Guide*. Boolean options are enabled by specifying their name. Options with values are set by separating the option name and value with an equals sign (=).
- Data Gathering (Mutually Exclusive) -b  
Basic statistics: lock, caller, number of events.
- h  
Histogram: Timing plus time-distribution histograms.
- s *depth*  
Stack trace: Histogram plus stack traces up to *depth* frames deep.
- t  
Timing: Basic plus timing for all events [default].
- Data Filtering -d *duration*  
Only watch events longer than *duration*.
- f *func[,size]*  
Only watch events generated by *func*, which can be specified as a symbolic name or hex address. *size* defaults to the ELF symbol size if available, or 1 if not.
- l *lock[,size]*  
Only watch *lock*, which can be specified as a symbolic name or hex address. *size* defaults to the ELF symbol size or 1 if the symbol size is not available.
- n *nrecords*  
Maximum number of data records.
- T  
Trace (rather than sample) events [off by default].
- Data Reporting -c  
Coalesce lock data for lock arrays (for example, `pse_mutex[ ]`).
- D *count*  
Only display the top *count* events of each type.

- g  
Show total events generated by function. For example, if `foo()` calls `bar()` in a loop, the work done by `bar()` counts as work generated by `foo()` (along with any work done by `foo()` itself). The `-g` option works by counting the total number of stack frames in which each function appears. This implies two things: (1) the data reported by `-g` can be misleading if the stack traces are not deep enough, and (2) functions that are called recursively might show greater than 100% activity. In light of issue (1), the default data gathering mode when using `-g` is `-s 50`.
- k  
Coalesce PCs within functions.
- o *filename*  
Direct output to *filename*.
- P  
Sort data by (*count \* time*) product.
- p  
Parsable output format.
- R  
Display rates (events per second) rather than counts.
- W  
Whichever: distinguish events only by caller, not by lock.
- w  
Wherever: distinguish events only by lock, not by caller.

**Display Formats** The following headers appear over various columns of data.

- Count or ops/s  
Number of times this event occurred, or the rate (times per second) if `-R` was specified.
- indv  
Percentage of all events represented by this individual event.
- genr  
Percentage of all events generated by this function.
- cuml  
Cumulative percentage; a running total of the individuals.
- rcnt  
Average reference count. This will always be 1 for exclusive locks (mutexes, spin locks, rwlocks held as writer) but can be greater than 1 for shared locks (rwlocks held as reader).
- nsec  
Average duration of the events in nanoseconds, as appropriate for the event. For the profiling event, duration means interrupt latency.

**Lock**

Address of the lock; displayed symbolically if possible.

**CPU+PIL**

CPU plus processor interrupt level (PIL). For example, if CPU 4 is interrupted while at PIL 6, this will be reported as `cpu[4]+6`.

**Caller**

Address of the caller; displayed symbolically if possible.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Measuring Kernel Lock Contention

example# **lockstat sleep 5**

Adaptive mutex spin: 2210 events in 5.055 seconds (437 events/sec)

| Count | indv | cuml | rcnt | nsec | Lock          | Caller               |
|-------|------|------|------|------|---------------|----------------------|
| 269   | 12%  | 12%  | 1.00 | 2160 | service_queue | background+0xdc      |
| 249   | 11%  | 23%  | 1.00 | 86   | service_queue | qenable_locked+0x64  |
| 228   | 10%  | 34%  | 1.00 | 131  | service_queue | background+0x15c     |
| 68    | 3%   | 37%  | 1.00 | 79   | 0x30000024070 | untimeout+0x1c       |
| 59    | 3%   | 40%  | 1.00 | 384  | 0x300066fa8e0 | background+0xb0      |
| 43    | 2%   | 41%  | 1.00 | 30   | rqcred_lock   | svc_getreq+0x3c      |
| 42    | 2%   | 43%  | 1.00 | 341  | 0x30006834eb8 | background+0xb0      |
| 41    | 2%   | 45%  | 1.00 | 135  | 0x30000021058 | untimeout+0x1c       |
| 40    | 2%   | 47%  | 1.00 | 39   | rqcred_lock   | svc_getreq+0x260     |
| 37    | 2%   | 49%  | 1.00 | 2372 | 0x300068e83d0 | hmemstart+0x1c4      |
| 36    | 2%   | 50%  | 1.00 | 77   | 0x30000021058 | timeout_common+0x4   |
| 36    | 2%   | 52%  | 1.00 | 354  | 0x300066fa120 | background+0xb0      |
| 32    | 1%   | 53%  | 1.00 | 97   | 0x30000024070 | timeout_common+0x4   |
| 31    | 1%   | 55%  | 1.00 | 2923 | 0x300069883d0 | hmemstart+0x1c4      |
| 29    | 1%   | 56%  | 1.00 | 366  | 0x300066fb290 | background+0xb0      |
| 28    | 1%   | 57%  | 1.00 | 117  | 0x3000001e040 | untimeout+0x1c       |
| 25    | 1%   | 59%  | 1.00 | 93   | 0x3000001e040 | timeout_common+0x4   |
| 22    | 1%   | 60%  | 1.00 | 25   | 0x30005161110 | sync_stream_buf+0xdc |
| 21    | 1%   | 60%  | 1.00 | 291  | 0x30006834eb8 | putq+0xa4            |
| 19    | 1%   | 61%  | 1.00 | 43   | 0x3000515dcb0 | mdf_alloc+0xc        |
| 18    | 1%   | 62%  | 1.00 | 456  | 0x30006834eb8 | qenable+0x8          |
| 18    | 1%   | 63%  | 1.00 | 61   | service_queue | queuerun+0x168       |
| 17    | 1%   | 64%  | 1.00 | 268  | 0x30005418ee8 | vmem_free+0x3c       |

[...]

R/W reader blocked by writer: 76 events in 5.055 seconds (15 events/sec)

| Count | indv | cuml | rcnt | nsec     | Lock          | Caller           |
|-------|------|------|------|----------|---------------|------------------|
| 23    | 30%  | 30%  | 1.00 | 22590137 | 0x300098ba358 | ufs_dirlook+0xd0 |
| 17    | 22%  | 53%  | 1.00 | 5820995  | 0x3000ad815e8 | find_bp+0x10     |
| 13    | 17%  | 70%  | 1.00 | 2639918  | 0x300098ba360 | ufs_iget+0x198   |
| 4     | 5%   | 75%  | 1.00 | 3193015  | 0x300098ba360 | ufs_getattr+0x54 |

**EXAMPLE 1** Measuring Kernel Lock Contention *(Continued)*

```

 3 4% 79% 1.00 7953418 0x3000ad817c0 find_bp+0x10
 3 4% 83% 1.00 935211 0x3000ad815e8 find_read_lof+0x14
 2 3% 86% 1.00 16357310 0x300073a4720 find_bp+0x10
 2 3% 88% 1.00 2072433 0x300073a4720 find_read_lof+0x14
 2 3% 91% 1.00 1606153 0x300073a4370 find_bp+0x10
 1 1% 92% 1.00 2656909 0x300107e7400 ufs_iget+0x198
[...]
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Measuring Hold Times

```

example# lockstat -H -D 10 sleep 1
Adaptive mutex spin: 513 events
```

| Count | indv | cuml | rcnt | nsec | Lock             | Caller            |
|-------|------|------|------|------|------------------|-------------------|
| 480   | 5%   | 5%   | 1.00 | 1136 | 0x300007718e8    | putnext+0x40      |
| 286   | 3%   | 9%   | 1.00 | 666  | 0x3000077b430    | getf+0xd8         |
| 271   | 3%   | 12%  | 1.00 | 537  | 0x3000077b430    | msgio32+0x2fc     |
| 270   | 3%   | 15%  | 1.00 | 3670 | 0x300007718e8    | strgetmsg+0x3d4   |
| 270   | 3%   | 18%  | 1.00 | 1016 | 0x300007c38b0    | getq_noenab+0x200 |
| 264   | 3%   | 20%  | 1.00 | 1649 | 0x300007718e8    | strgetmsg+0xa70   |
| 216   | 2%   | 23%  | 1.00 | 6251 | tcp_mi_lock      | tcp_snmp_get+0xfc |
| 206   | 2%   | 25%  | 1.00 | 602  | thread_free_lock | clock+0x250       |
| 138   | 2%   | 27%  | 1.00 | 485  | 0x300007c3998    | putnext+0xb8      |
| 138   | 2%   | 28%  | 1.00 | 3706 | 0x300007718e8    | strrput+0x5b8     |

[...]

**EXAMPLE 3** Measuring Hold Times for Stack Traces Containing a Specific Function

```

example# lockstat -H -f tcp_rput_data -s 50 -D 10 sleep 1
Adaptive mutex spin: 11 events in 1.023 seconds (11
events/sec)
```

| Count | indv | cuml | rcnt | nsec | Lock          | Caller               |
|-------|------|------|------|------|---------------|----------------------|
| 9     | 82%  | 82%  | 1.00 | 2540 | 0x30000031380 | tcp_rput_data+0x2b90 |

  

| nsec  | Time Distribution | count | Stack                  |
|-------|-------------------|-------|------------------------|
| 256   | @@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@  | 5     | tcp_rput_data+0x2b90   |
| 512   | @@@@@             | 2     | putnext+0x78           |
| 1024  | @@@               | 1     | ip_rput+0xec4          |
| 2048  |                   | 0     | _c_putnext+0x148       |
| 4096  |                   | 0     | hmeread+0x31c          |
| 8192  |                   | 0     | hmeintr+0x36c          |
| 16384 | @@@               | 1     | sbus_intr_wrapper+0x30 |

[...]

**EXAMPLE 3** Measuring Hold Times for Stack Traces Containing a Specific Function (Continued)

```

Count indiv cuml rcnt nsec Lock Caller
 1 9% 91% 1.00 1036 0x30000055380 freemsg+0x44

 nsec ----- Time Distribution ----- count Stack
 1024 |@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@ 1 freemsg+0x44
 tcp_rput_data+0x2fd0
 putnext+0x78
 ip_rput+0xec4
 _c_putnext+0x148
 hmeread+0x31c
 hmeintr+0x36c

sbus_intr_wrapper+0x30

[...]
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Basic Kernel Profiling

For basic profiling, we don't care whether the profiling interrupt sampled `foo()+0x4c` or `foo()+0x78`; we care only that it sampled somewhere in `foo()`, so we use `-k`. The CPU and PIL aren't relevant to basic profiling because we are measuring the system as a whole, not a particular CPU or interrupt level, so we use `-w`.

```

example# lockstat -kIW -D 20 ./polltest
Profiling interrupt: 82 events in 0.424 seconds (194
events/sec)
```

```

Count indiv cuml rcnt nsec Hottest CPU+PIL Caller

 8 10% 10% 1.00 698 cpu[1] utl0
 6 7% 17% 1.00 299 cpu[0] read
 5 6% 23% 1.00 124 cpu[1] getf
 4 5% 28% 1.00 327 cpu[0] fifo_read
 4 5% 33% 1.00 112 cpu[1] poll
 4 5% 38% 1.00 212 cpu[1] uiomove
 4 5% 43% 1.00 361 cpu[1] mutex_tryenter
 3 4% 46% 1.00 682 cpu[0] write
 3 4% 50% 1.00 89 cpu[0] pcache_poll
 3 4% 54% 1.00 118 cpu[1] set_active_fd
 3 4% 57% 1.00 105 cpu[0] syscall_trap32
 3 4% 61% 1.00 640 cpu[1] (usermode)
 2 2% 63% 1.00 127 cpu[1] fifo_poll
 2 2% 66% 1.00 300 cpu[1] fifo_write
 2 2% 68% 1.00 669 cpu[0] releasef
 2 2% 71% 1.00 112 cpu[1] bt_getlowbit
```

## EXAMPLE 4 Basic Kernel Profiling (Continued)

```

 2 2% 73% 1.00 247 cpu[1] splx
 2 2% 76% 1.00 503 cpu[0] mutex_enter
 2 2% 78% 1.00 467 cpu[0]+10 disp_lock_enter
 2 2% 80% 1.00 139 cpu[1] default_copyin

```

[...]

## EXAMPLE 5 Generated-load Profiling

In the example above, 5% of the samples were in `poll()`. This tells us how much time was spent inside `poll()` itself, but tells us nothing about how much work was *generated* by `poll()`; that is, how much time we spent in functions called by `poll()`. To determine that, we use the `-g` option. The example below shows that although `polltest` spends only 5% of its time in `poll()` itself, `poll()`-induced work accounts for 34% of the load.

Note that the functions that generate the profiling interrupt (`lockstat_intr()`, `cyclic_fire()`, and so forth) appear in every stack trace, and therefore are considered to have generated 100% of the load. This illustrates an important point: the generated load percentages do *not* add up to 100% because they are not independent. If 72% of all stack traces contain both `foo()` and `bar()`, then both `foo()` and `bar()` are 72% load generators.

```
example# lockstat -kgIW -D 20 ./polltest
```

```
Profiling interrupt: 80 events in 0.412 seconds (194 events/sec)
```

```

Count genr cuml rcnt nsec Hottest CPU+PIL Caller

 80 100% ---- 1.00 310 cpu[1] lockstat_intr
 80 100% ---- 1.00 310 cpu[1] cyclic_fire
 80 100% ---- 1.00 310 cpu[1] cbe_level14
 80 100% ---- 1.00 310 cpu[1] current_thread
 27 34% ---- 1.00 176 cpu[1] poll
 20 25% ---- 1.00 221 cpu[0] write
 19 24% ---- 1.00 249 cpu[1] read
 17 21% ---- 1.00 232 cpu[0] write32
 17 21% ---- 1.00 207 cpu[1] pcache_poll
 14 18% ---- 1.00 319 cpu[0] fifo_write
 13 16% ---- 1.00 214 cpu[1] read32
 10 12% ---- 1.00 208 cpu[1] fifo_read
 10 12% ---- 1.00 787 cpu[1] utl0
 9 11% ---- 1.00 178 cpu[0] pcacheset_resolve
 9 11% ---- 1.00 262 cpu[0] uiomove
 7 9% ---- 1.00 506 cpu[1] (usermode)
 5 6% ---- 1.00 195 cpu[1] fifo_poll
 5 6% ---- 1.00 136 cpu[1] syscall_trap32
 4 5% ---- 1.00 139 cpu[0] releasef
 3 4% ---- 1.00 277 cpu[1] polllock

```

**EXAMPLE 5** Generated-load Profiling (Continued)

-----  
 [...]

**EXAMPLE 6** Gathering Lock Contention and Profiling Data for a Specific Module

In this example we use the `-f` option not to specify a single function, but rather to specify the entire text space of the `sbus` module. We gather both lock contention and profiling statistics so that contention can be correlated with overall load on the module.

```
example# modinfo | grep sbus
```

```
24 102a8b6f b8b4 59 1 sbus (SBus (sysio) nexus driver)
```

```
example# lockstat -kICE -f 0x102a8b6f,0xb8b4 sleep 10
```

```
Adaptive mutex spin: 39 events in 10.042 seconds (4 events/sec)
```

| Count | indv | cuml | rcnt | nsec | Lock          | Caller          |
|-------|------|------|------|------|---------------|-----------------|
| 15    | 38%  | 38%  | 1.00 | 206  | 0x30005160528 | sync_stream_buf |
| 7     | 18%  | 56%  | 1.00 | 14   | 0x30005160d18 | sync_stream_buf |
| 6     | 15%  | 72%  | 1.00 | 27   | 0x300060c3118 | sync_stream_buf |
| 5     | 13%  | 85%  | 1.00 | 24   | 0x300060c3510 | sync_stream_buf |
| 2     | 5%   | 90%  | 1.00 | 29   | 0x300060c2d20 | sync_stream_buf |
| 2     | 5%   | 95%  | 1.00 | 24   | 0x30005161cf8 | sync_stream_buf |
| 1     | 3%   | 97%  | 1.00 | 21   | 0x30005161110 | sync_stream_buf |
| 1     | 3%   | 100% | 1.00 | 23   | 0x30005160130 | sync_stream_buf |

[...]

```
Adaptive mutex block: 9 events in 10.042 seconds (1 events/sec)
```

| Count | indv | cuml | rcnt | nsec    | Lock          | Caller          |
|-------|------|------|------|---------|---------------|-----------------|
| 4     | 44%  | 44%  | 1.00 | 156539  | 0x30005160528 | sync_stream_buf |
| 2     | 22%  | 67%  | 1.00 | 763516  | 0x30005160d18 | sync_stream_buf |
| 1     | 11%  | 78%  | 1.00 | 462130  | 0x300060c3510 | sync_stream_buf |
| 1     | 11%  | 89%  | 1.00 | 288749  | 0x30005161110 | sync_stream_buf |
| 1     | 11%  | 100% | 1.00 | 1015374 | 0x30005160130 | sync_stream_buf |

[...]

```
Profiling interrupt: 229 events in 10.042 seconds (23 events/sec)
```

| Count | indv | cuml | rcnt | nsec | Hottest CPU+PIL | Caller                |
|-------|------|------|------|------|-----------------|-----------------------|
| 89    | 39%  | 39%  | 1.00 | 426  | cpu[0]+6        | sync_stream_buf       |
| 64    | 28%  | 67%  | 1.00 | 398  | cpu[0]+6        | sbus_intr_wrapper     |
| 23    | 10%  | 77%  | 1.00 | 324  | cpu[0]+6        | iommu_dvma_kaddr_load |
| 21    | 9%   | 86%  | 1.00 | 512  | cpu[0]+6        | iommu_tlb_flush       |



**EXAMPLE 6** Gathering Lock Contention and Profiling Data for a Specific Module *(Continued)*

```

14 6% 92% 1.00 342 cpu[0]+6 iommu_dvma_unload
13 6% 98% 1.00 306 cpu[1] iommu_dvma_sync
 5 2% 100% 1.00 389 cpu[1] iommu_dma_bindhdl

```

-----  
[...]

**EXAMPLE 7** Determining the Average PIL (processor interrupt level) for a CPU

```
example# lockstat -Iw -l cpu[3] ./testprog
```

Profiling interrupt: 14791 events in 152.463 seconds (97 events/sec)

```
Count indiv cuml rcnt nsec CPU+PIL Hottest Caller
```

```

13641 92% 92% 1.00 253 cpu[3] (usermode)
 579 4% 96% 1.00 325 cpu[3]+6 ip_ocsum+0xe8
 375 3% 99% 1.00 411 cpu[3]+10 splx
 154 1% 100% 1.00 527 cpu[3]+4 fas_intr_svc+0x80
 41 0% 100% 1.00 293 cpu[3]+13 send_mondo+0x18
 1 0% 100% 1.00 266 cpu[3]+12 zsa_rxint+0x400

```

-----  
[...]

**EXAMPLE 8** Determining which Subsystem is Causing the System to be Busy

```
example# lockstat -s 10 -I sleep 20
```

Profiling interrupt: 4863 events in 47.375 seconds (103 events/sec)

```
Count indiv cuml rcnt nsec CPU+PIL Caller
```

```

1929 40% 40% 0.00 3215 cpu[0] usec_delay+0x78
nsec ----- Time Distribution ----- count Stack
4096 |@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@@ 1872 ata_wait+0x90
 8192 | 27 acersb_get_intr_status+0x34
16384 | 29 ata_set_feature+0x124
32768 | 1 ata_disk_start+0x15c
 ata_hba_start+0xbc
 ghd_waitq_process_and \
 _mutex_hold+0x70
 ghd_waitq_process_and \
 _mutex_exit+0x4
 ghd_transport+0x12c
 ata_disk_tran_start+0x108

```

**EXAMPLE 8** Determining which Subsystem is Causing the System to be Busy (Continued)

[...]

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWdtrc        |

**See Also** [dtrace\(1M\)](#), [plockstat\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [lockstat\(7D\)](#), [mutex\(9F\)](#), [rwlock\(9F\)](#)

*Solaris Dynamic Tracing Guide*

**Notes** The profiling support provided by `lockstat -I` replaces the old (and undocumented) `/usr/bin/kgmon` and `/dev/profile`.

Tail-call elimination can affect call sites. For example, if `foo()+0x50` calls `bar()` and the last thing `bar()` does is call `mutex_exit()`, the compiler can arrange for `bar()` to branch to `mutex_exit()` with a return address of `foo()+0x58`. Thus, the `mutex_exit()` in `bar()` will appear as though it occurred at `foo()+0x58`.

The PC in the stack frame in which an interrupt occurs can be bogus because, between function calls, the compiler is free to use the return address register for local storage.

When using the `-I` and `-s` options together, the interrupted PC will usually not appear anywhere in the stack since the interrupt handler is entered asynchronously, not by a function call from that PC.

The `lockstat` technology is provided on an as-is basis. The format and content of `lockstat` output reflect the current Solaris kernel implementation and are therefore subject to change in future releases.

**Name** lofiadm – administer files available as block devices through lofi

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/lofiadm -a *file* [*device*]  
 /usr/sbin/lofiadm -c *crypto\_algorithm* -a *file* [*device*]  
 /usr/sbin/lofiadm -c *crypto\_algorithm* -k *raw\_key\_file* -a *file* [*device*]  
 /usr/sbin/lofiadm -c *crypto\_algorithm* -T *token\_key* -a *file* [*device*]  
 /usr/sbin/lofiadm -c *crypto\_algorithm* -T *token\_key*  
 -k *wrapped\_key\_file* -a *file* [*device*]  
 /usr/sbin/lofiadm -c *crypto\_algorithm* -e -a *file* [*device*]  
 /usr/sbin/lofiadm -C *algorithm* [-s *segment\_size*] *file*  
 /usr/sbin/lofiadm -d *file* | *device*  
 /usr/sbin/lofiadm -U *file*  
 /usr/sbin/lofiadm [ *file* | *device*]

**Description** lofiadm administers lofi, the loopback file driver. lofi allows a file to be associated with a block device. That file can then be accessed through the block device. This is useful when the file contains an image of some filesystem (such as a floppy or CD-ROM image), because the block device can then be used with the normal system utilities for mounting, checking or repairing filesystems. See [fsck\(1M\)](#) and [mount\(1M\)](#).

Use lofiadm to add a file as a loopback device, remove such an association, or print information about the current associations.

Encryption and compression options are mutually exclusive on the command line. Further, an encrypted file cannot be compressed later, nor can a compressed file be encrypted later.

The lofi driver is not available and will not work inside a zone.

**Options** The following options are supported:

-a *file* [*device*]  
 Add *file* as a block device.

If *device* is not specified, an available device is picked.

If *device* is specified, lofiadm attempts to assign it to *file*. *device* must be available or lofiadm will fail. The ability to specify a device is provided for use in scripts that wish to reestablish a particular set of associations.

-C {*gzip* | *gzip-N* | *lzma*}  
 Compress the file with the specified compression algorithm.

The gzip compression algorithm uses the same compression as the open-source gzip command. You can specify the gzip level by using the value *gzip-N* where *N* is 6 (fast) or 9

(best compression ratio). Currently, `gzip`, without a number, is equivalent to `gzip-6` (which is also the default for the `gzip` command).

`lzma` stands for the LZMA (Lempel-Ziv-Markov) compression algorithm.

Note that you cannot write to a compressed file, nor can you mount a compressed file read/write.

`-d file | device`

Remove an association by *file* or *device* name, if the associated block device is not busy, and deallocates the block device.

`-s segment_size`

The segment size to use to divide the file being compressed. *segment\_size* can be an integer multiple of 512.

`-U file`

Uncompress a compressed file.

The following options are used when the file is encrypted:

`-c crypto_algorithm`

Select the encryption algorithm. The algorithm must be specified when encryption is enabled because the algorithm is not stored in the disk image.

If none of `-e`, `-k`, or `-T` is specified, `lofiadm` prompts for a passphrase, with a minimum length of eight characters, to be entered. The passphrase is used to derive a symmetric encryption key using PKCS#5 PBKD2.

`-k raw_key_file | wrapped_key_file`

Path to raw or wrapped symmetric encryption key. If a PKCS#11 object is also given with the `-T` option, then the key is wrapped by that object. If `-T` is not specified, the key is used raw.

`-T token_key`

The key in a PKCS#11 token to use for the encryption or for unwrapping the key file.

If `-k` is also specified, `-T` identifies the unwrapping key, which must be an RSA private key.

`-e`

Generate an ephemeral symmetric encryption key.

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

*crypto\_algorithm*

One of: `aes-128-cbc`, `aes-192-cbc`, `aes-256-cbc`, `des3-cbc`, `blowfish-cbc`.

*device*

Display the file name associated with the block device *device*.

Without arguments, print a list of the current associations. Filenames must be valid absolute pathnames.

When a file is added, it is opened for reading or writing by root. Any restrictions apply (such as restricted root access over NFS). The file is held open until the association is removed. It is not actually accessed until the block device is used, so it will never be written to if the block device is only opened read-only.

*file*

Display the block device associated with *file*.

*raw\_key\_file*

Path to a file of the appropriate length, in bits, to use as a raw symmetric encryption key.

*token\_key*

PKCS#11 token object in the format:

*token\_name:manufacturer\_id:serial\_number:key\_label*

All but the key label are optional and can be empty. For example, to specify a token object with only its key label MyLofiKey, use:

```
-T :::MyLofiKey
```

*wrapped\_key\_file*

Path to file containing a symmetric encryption key wrapped by the RSA private key specified by -T.

### Examples EXAMPLE 1 Mounting an Existing CD-ROM Image

You should ensure that Solaris understands the image before creating the CD. `lofi` allows you to mount the image and see if it works.

This example mounts an existing CD-ROM image (`sparc.iso`), of the Red Hat 6.0 CD which was downloaded from the Internet. It was created with the `mkisofs` utility from the Internet.

Use `lofiadm` to attach a block device to it:

```
lofiadm -a /home/mike_s/RH6.0/sparc.iso
/dev/lofi/1
```

`lofiadm` picks the device and prints the device name to the standard output. You can run `lofiadm` again by issuing the following command:

```
lofiadm
Block Device File Options
/dev/lofi/1 /home/mike_s/RH6.0/sparc.iso -
```

Or, you can give it one name and ask for the other, by issuing the following command:

```
lofiadm /dev/lofi/1
/home/mike_s/RH6.0/sparc.iso
```

**EXAMPLE 1** Mounting an Existing CD-ROM Image *(Continued)*

Use the mount command to mount the image:

```
mount -F hsfs -o ro /dev/lofi/1 /mnt
```

Check to ensure that Solaris understands the image:

```
df -k /mnt
Filesystem kbytes used avail capacity Mounted on
/dev/lofi/1 512418 512418 0 100% /mnt
ls /mnt
./ RedHat/ doc/ ls-lR rr_moved/
../ TRANS.TBL dosutils/ ls-lR.gz sbin@
.buildlog bin@ etc@ misc/ tmp/
COPYING boot/ images/ mnt/ usr@
README boot.cat* kernels/ modules/
RPM-PGP-KEY dev@ lib@ proc/
```

Solaris can mount the CD-ROM image, and understand the filenames. The image was created properly, and you can now create the CD-ROM with confidence.

As a final step, unmount and detach the images:

```
umount /mnt
lofiadm -d /dev/lofi/1
lofiadm
Block Device File Options
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Mounting a Floppy Image

This is similar to the first example.

Using `lofi` to help you mount files that contain floppy images is helpful if a floppy disk contains a file that you need, but the machine which you are on does not have a floppy drive. It is also helpful if you do not want to take the time to use the `dd` command to copy the image to a floppy.

This is an example of getting to MDB floppy for Solaris on an x86 platform:

```
lofiadm -a /export/s28/MDB_s28x_wos/latest/boot.3
/dev/lofi/1
mount -F pcfs /dev/lofi/1 /mnt
ls /mnt
./ COMMENT.BAT* RC.D/ SOLARIS.MAP*
../ IDENT* REPLACE.BAT* X/
APPEND.BAT* MAKEDIR.BAT* SOLARIS/
umount /mnt
lofiadm -d /export/s28/MDB_s28x_wos/latest/boot.3
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Making a UFS Filesystem on a File

Making a UFS filesystem on a file can be useful, particularly if a test suite requires a scratch filesystem. It can be painful (or annoying) to have to repartition a disk just for the test suite, but you do not have to. You can newfs a file with lofi

Create the file:

```
mkfile 35m /export/home/test
```

Attach it to a block device. You also get the character device that newfs requires, so newfs that:

```
lofiadm -a /export/home/test
/dev/lofi/1
newfs /dev/rlofi/1
newfs: construct a new file system /dev/rlofi/1: (y/n)? y
/dev/rlofi/1: 71638 sectors in 119 cylinders of 1 tracks, 602 sectors
 35.0MB in 8 cyl groups (16 c/g, 4.70MB/g, 2240 i/g)
super-block backups (for fsck -F ufs -o b=#) at:
 32, 9664, 19296, 28928, 38560, 48192, 57824, 67456,
```

Note that ufs might not be able to use the entire file. Mount and use the filesystem:

```
mount /dev/lofi/1 /mnt
df -k /mnt
Filesystem kbytes used avail capacity Mounted on
/dev/lofi/1 33455 9 30101 1% /mnt
ls /mnt
./ ../ lost+found/
umount /mnt
lofiadm -d /dev/lofi/1
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Creating a PC (FAT) File System on a Unix File

The following series of commands creates a FAT file system on a Unix file. The file is associated with a block device created by lofiadm.

```
mkfile 10M /export/test/testfs
lofiadm -a /export/test testfs
/dev/lofi/1
Note use of rlofi, not lofi, in following command.
mkfs -F pcfs -o nofdisk,size=20480 /dev/rlofi/1
Construct a new FAT file system on /dev/rlofi/1: (y/n)? y
mount -F pcfs /dev/lofi/1 /mnt
cd /mnt
df -k .
Filesystem kbytes used avail capacity Mounted on
/dev/lofi/1 10142 0 10142 0% /mnt
```

**EXAMPLE 5** Compressing an Existing CD-ROM Image

The following example illustrates compressing an existing CD-ROM image (`solaris.iso`), verifying that the image is compressed, and then uncompressing it.

```
lofiadm -C gzip /export/home/solaris.iso
```

Use `lofiadm` to attach a block device to it:

```
lofiadm -a /export/home/solaris.iso
/dev/lofi/1
```

Check if the mapped image is compressed:

```
lofiadm
Block Device File Options
/dev/lofi/1 /export/home/solaris.iso Compressed(gzip)
/dev/lofi/2 /export/home/regular.iso -
```

Unmap the compressed image and uncompress it:

```
lofiadm -d /dev/lofi/1
lofiadm -U /export/home/solaris.iso
```

**EXAMPLE 6** Creating an Encrypted UFS File System on a File

This example is similar to the example of making a UFS filesystem on a file, above.

Create the file:

```
mkfile 35m /export/home/test
```

Attach the file to a block device and specify that the file image is encrypted. As a result of this command, you obtain the character device, which is subsequently used by `newfs`:

```
lofiadm -c aes-256-cbc -a /export/home/secrets
Enter passphrase: My-M0th3r;l0v3s_m3+4lw4ys! (not echoed)
Re-enter passphrase: My-M0th3r;l0v3s_m3+4lw4ys! (not echoed)
/dev/lofi/1

newfs /dev/rlofi/1
newfs: construct a new file system /dev/rlofi/1: (y/n)? y
/dev/rlofi/1: 71638 sectors in 119 cylinders of 1 tracks, 602 sectors
 35.0MB in 8 cyl groups (16 c/g, 4.70MB/g, 2240 i/g)
super-block backups (for fsck -F ufs -o b=#) at:
32, 9664, 19296, 28928, 38560, 48192, 57824, 67456,
```

The mapped file system shows that encryption is enabled:

```
lofiadm
Block Device File Options
/dev/lofi/1 /export/home/secrets Encrypted
```



**EXAMPLE 6** Creating an Encrypted UFS File System on a File *(Continued)*

Mount and use the filesystem:

```
mount /dev/lofi/1 /mnt
cp moms_secret_*_recipe /mnt
ls /mnt
./ moms_secret_cookie_recipe moms_secret_soup_recipe
../ moms_secret_fudge_recipe moms_secret_stuffing_recipe
lost+found/ moms_secret_meatloaf_recipe moms_secret_waffle_recipe
umount /mnt
lofiadm -d /dev/lofi/1
```

Subsequent attempts to map the filesystem with the wrong key or the wrong encryption algorithm will fail:

```
lofiadm -c blowfish-cbc -a /export/home/secrets
Enter passphrase: mommy (not echoed)
Re-enter passphrase: mommy (not echoed)
lofiadm: could not map file /root/lofi: Invalid argument
lofiadm
Block Device File Options
#
```

Attempts to map the filesystem without encryption will succeed, however attempts to mount and use the filesystem will fail:

```
lofiadm -a /export/home/secrets
/dev/lofi/1
lofiadm
Block Device File Options
/dev/lofi/1 /export/home/secrets -
mount /dev/lofi/1 /mnt
mount: /dev/lofi/1 is not this fstype
#
```

**Environment Variables** See [environ\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following environment variables that affect the execution of `lofiadm`: `LC_CTYPE`, `LC_MESSAGES` and `NLSPATH`.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

```
0
 Successful completion.
>0
 An error occurred.
```

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWcsu         |

**See Also** [fsck\(1M\)](#), [mount\(1M\)](#), [mount\\_ufs\(1M\)](#), [newfs\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [lofi\(7D\)](#), [lofs\(7FS\)](#)

**Notes** Just as you would not directly access a disk device that has mounted file systems, you should not access a file associated with a block device except through the `lofi` file driver. It might also be appropriate to ensure that the file has appropriate permissions to prevent such access.

The abilities of `lofiadm`, and who can use them, are controlled by the permissions of `/dev/lofiectl`. Read-access allows query operations, such as listing all the associations. Write-access is required to do any state-changing operations, like adding an association. As shipped, `/dev/lofiectl` is owned by `root`, in group `sys`, and mode `0644`, so all users can do query operations but only `root` can change anything. The administrator can give users write-access, allowing them to add or delete associations, but that is very likely a security hole and should probably only be given to a trusted group.

When mounting a filesystem image, take care to use appropriate mount options. In particular, the `nosuid` mount option might be appropriate for UFS images whose origin is unknown. Also, some options might not be useful or appropriate, like `logging` or `forcedirectio` for UFS. For compatibility purposes, a raw device is also exported along with the block device. For example, [newfs\(1M\)](#) requires one.

The output of `lofiadm` (without arguments) might change in future releases.

**Name** logadm – manage endlessly growing log files

**Synopsis** logadm  
logadm [-options] logname...

**Description** logadm is a general log rotation tool that is suitable for running from [cron\(1M\)](#).

Without arguments, logadm reads the `/etc/logadm.conf` file, and for every entry found in that file checks the corresponding log file to see if it should be rotated. Typically this check is done each morning by an entry in the root's crontab.

If the *logname* argument is specified, logadm renames the corresponding log file by adding a suffix so that the most recent log file ends with `.0` (that is, *logfile.0*), the next most recent ends with `.1` (that is, *logfile.1*), and so forth. By default, ten versions of old log files are kept (that is, *logfile.0* through *logfile.9*). At the point when what would be the eleventh file is logged, logadm automatically deletes the oldest version to keep the count of files at ten.

logadm takes a number of *options*. You can specify these options on the command line or in the `/etc/logadm.conf` file. The logadm command searches `/etc/logadm.conf` for lines of the form *logname options*

#### *logname*

Identifies an entry in `/etc/logadm.conf`. This can be a name or the pathname of the log file. If you specify a log file, rather than a name, for this field, it must be a fully qualified pathname.

#### *options*

Identifies command line options exactly as they would be entered on the command line. This allows commonly used log rotation policies to be stored in the `/etc/logadm.conf` file. See EXAMPLES.

If *options* are specified both in `/etc/logadm.conf` and on the command line, those in the `/etc/logadm.conf` file are applied first. Therefore, the command line options override those in `/etc/logadm.conf`.

Log file names specified in `/etc/logadm.conf` may contain filename substitution characters such as `*` and `?`, that are supported by [csh\(1\)](#).

Two options control when a log file is rotated. They are: `-s size -p period`.

When using more than one of these options at a time, there is an implied *and* between them. This means that all conditions must be met before the log is rotated.

If neither of these two options are specified, the default conditions for rotating a log file are: `-s 1b -p 1w`, which means the log file is only rotated if the size is non-zero and if at least 1 week has passed since the last time it was rotated.

By specifying `-p never` as a rotation condition, any other rotation conditions are ignored and `logadm` moves on to the expiration of old log files. By specifying `-p now` as a rotation condition, a log rotation is forced.

Unless specified by the `-o`, `-g`, or `-m` options, `logadm` replaces the log file (after renaming it) by creating an empty file whose owner, group ID, and permissions match the original file.

Three options control when old log files are expired: `-A age` `-C count` `-S size`. These options expire the oldest log files until a particular condition or conditions are met. For example, the combination `-C 5` and the `-S 10m` options expires old log files until there are no more than 5 of the *and* their combined disk usage is no more than 10 megabytes. If none of these options are specified, the default expiration is `-C 10` which keeps ten old log files. If no files are to be expired, use `-C 0` to prevent expiration by default.

**Options** The following options are supported:

`-a post_command`

Execute the *post\_command* after renaming the log file. *post\_command* is passed to `sh -c`.

Specify *post\_command* as a valid shell command. Use quotes to protect spaces or shell metacharacters in *post\_command*.

This option can be used to restart a daemon that is writing to the file. When rotating multiple logs with one `logadm` command, *post\_command* is executed only once after all the logs are rotated, not once per rotated log.

`-A age`

Delete any versions that have not been modified for the amount of time specified by *age*.

Specify *age* as a number followed by an `h` (hours), `d` (days), `w`(weeks), `m` (months), or `y` (years).

`-b pre_command`

Execute *pre\_command* before renaming the log file. *pre\_command* is passed to `sh -c`.

Specify *pre\_command* as a valid shell command. Use quotes to protect spaces or shell metacharacters in the *pre\_command*.

This option can be used to stop a daemon that is writing to the file. When rotating multiple logs with one `logadm` command, *pre\_command* is executed only once before all the logs are rotated, not once per rotated log.

`-c`

Rotate the log file by copying it and truncating the original logfile to zero length, rather than renaming the file.

`-C count`

Delete the oldest versions until there are not more than *count* files left.

---

If no expire options (-A, -C, or -S) are specified, -C 10 is the default. To prevent the default expire rule from being added automatically, specify -C 0.

-e *mail\_addr*

Send error messages by email to *mail\_addr*.

As logadm is typically run from [cron\(1M\)](#), error messages are captured by cron and mailed to the owner of the crontab.

This option is useful if you want the mail regarding error messages to go to another address instead. If no errors are encountered, no mail message is generated.

-E *cmd*

Execute *cmd* to expire the file, rather than deleting the old log file to expire it.

*cmd* is passed it to `sh -c`. The file is considered expired after *cmd* completes. If the old log file is not removed or renamed by the *cmd*, logadm considers it for expiration the next time that it runs on the specified log file. If present, the keyword `$file` is expanded in the specified *cmd* to the name of the file being expired.

This option is useful for tasks such as mailing old log files to administrators, or copying old log files to long term storage.

-f *conf\_file*

Use *conf\_file* instead of `/etc/logadm.conf`.

This option allows non-root users to keep their own logadm configuration files.

-g *group*

Create a new empty file with the ID specified by *group*, instead of preserving the group ID of the log file.

Specify *group* by name or by numeric group ID, as accepted by [chgrp\(1\)](#).

This option requires the ability to change file group ownership using the [chgrp\(1\)](#) command.

-h

Print a help message that describes logadm's options.

-l

Use local time rather than the Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) when naming rotated log files (see the discussion of percent sequences in the templates supplied with the -t option).

-m *mode*

Create a new empty file with the mode specified by *mode*, instead of preserving the mode of the log file.

Specify *mode* in any form that is accepted by the [chmod\(1\)](#) command.

**-M *cmd***

Use *cmd* to rename the log file. If the keyword *\$file* is specified, it is expanded to the name of the log file. Similarly, the keyword *\$nfile* is expanded to the new name of the log file. The *\$nfile* keyword is only available with commands provided with the **-M** option. After the command completes, the log file is replaced by the rotate file. The default *cmd* is “/bin/mv *\$file**\$nfile*”.

**-n**

Print the actions that the `logadm` command will perform without actually performing them.

This option is useful for checking arguments before making any changes to the system.

It is important to remember, however, that since log rotating actions are only printed with this option, `logadm` might not find files that need expiring, but if run without the **-n** `logadm` might create a file that needs expiring by performing the log rotating actions. Therefore, if you see no files being expired with the **-n** option, files still might be expired without it.

**-N**

Prevent an error message if the specified logfile does not exist. Normally, `logadm` produces an error message if the log file is not found. With **-N**, if the log file doesn't exist `logadm` moves on to the expire rules (if any) and then to the next log file (if any), without creating the empty replacement log file.

**-o *owner***

Create the new empty file with *owner*, instead of preserving the owner of the log file.

Specify *owner* in any form that is accepted by the `chown(1)` command.

**-p *period***

Rotate a log file after the specified time period (*period*).

Specify *period* as a number followed by *d* for days, *h* for hours, *w* for weeks, *m* for months (30 days) or *y* for years. There are also two special values for period: *now* and *never*. “**-p now**” forces log rotation. “**-p never**” forces no log rotation.

**-P *timestamp***

Used by `logadm` to record the last time the log was rotated in `/etc/logadm.conf`.

This option uses *timestamp* to determine if the log rotation period has passed. The format of *timestamp* matches the format generated by `ctime(3C)`, with quotes around it to protect embedded spaces. *timestamp* is always recorded in the Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) timezone.

**-r**

Remove any entries corresponding to the specified *logname* from the `/etc/logadm.conf`.

**-R *cmd***

Run the *cmd* when an old log file is created by a log rotation. If the keyword *\$file* is embedded in the specified command, it is expanded to the name of the old log file just created by log rotation.

This option is useful for processing log file contents after rotating the log. *cmd* is executed by passing it to `sh -c`. When rotating multiple logs with one `logadm` command, the command supplied with `-R` is executed once every time a log is rotated. This is useful for post-processing a log file (that is, sorting it, removing uninteresting lines, etc.). The `-a` option is a better choice for restarting daemons after log rotation.

**-s *size***

Rotate the log file only if its size is greater than or equal to *size*.

Specify *size* as a number followed by the letter `b` for bytes, `k` for kilobytes, `m` for megabytes, or `g` for gigabytes.

**-S *size***

Delete the oldest versions until the total disk space used by the old log files is less than the specified size.

Specify *size* as a number followed by the letter `b` for bytes, `k` for kilobytes, `m` for megabytes, or `g` for gigabytes.

**-t *template***

Specify the template to use when renaming log files.

*template* can be a simple name, such as `/var/adm/oldfile`, or it can contain special keywords which are expanded by `logadm` and are in the form *\$word*. Allowed sequences are:

***\$basename***

The log file name, without the directory name

***\$dirname***

The directory of the file to be rotated

***\$domain***

Expands to the output of `domainname`

***\$file***

The full path name of the file to be rotated

***\$isa***

Expands to the output of `uname -p`

***\$machine***

Expands to the output of `uname -m`

***\$n***

The version number, `0` is most recent, `1` is next most recent, and so forth

*\$N*

The same as *\$n*, but starts at 1 instead of zero

*\$nodename*

Expands to the output of `uname -n`

*\$platform*

Expands to the output of `uname -i`

*\$release*

Expands to the output of `uname -r`

*\$secs*

The number of seconds since `00:00:00 UTC, January 1, 1970`

*\$zonename*

Expands to the output of `zonename(1)`.

To actually have the dollar sign character in the file name, use `$$`. Any percent sequences allowed by `strftime(3C)` are also allowed, for example, `%d` expands to the day of the month. To actually have a percent sign character in the file name, use `%%`. Both dollar-sign keywords and percent sequences can appear anywhere in the template. If the template results in a pathname with non-existent directories, they are created as necessary when rotating the log file.

If no `-t` option is specified, the default template is `$file.$n`. Actual *rotation* of log files, where each version is shifted up until it expires is done using the `$n` keyword. If the template does not contain the `$n` keyword, the log file is simply renamed to the new name and then the expire rules, if any, are applied.

**-T** *pattern*

Normally `logadm` looks for a list of old log files by turning the template (specified with the `-t` option) into a pattern and finding existing files whose names match that pattern. The `-T` option causes the given pattern to be used instead.

This option is useful if another program fiddles with the old log file names, like a cron job to compress them over time. The pattern is in the form of a pathname with special characters such as `*` and `?` as supported by `csh(1)` filename substitution.

**-v**

Print information about the actions being executed in verbose mode.

**-V**

Validate the configuration file.

This option validates that an entry for the specified *logname* exists in the `/etc/logadm.conf` file and is syntactically correct. If *logname* is not specified, all entries in the configuration file are validated. If a *logname* argument is specified, the command validates the syntax of that entry. If the entry is found, it is printed and the exit value of the command is true. Otherwise the exit value is false.



**-w *entryname***

Write an entry into the config file (that is, `/etc/logadm.conf`) that corresponds to the current command line arguments. If an entry already existed for the specified *entryname*, it is removed first. This is the preferred method for updating `/etc/logadm.conf`, because it prevents syntax errors. The *entryname* is an argument to an invocation of `logadm`. *entryname* might be chosen as something easy to remember or it can be the pathname of the log file. If a pathname, rather than a name is used, it must be a fully qualified pathname.

If no log file name is provided on a `logadm` command line, the entry name is assumed to be the same as the log file name. For example, the following two lines achieve the same thing, keeping two copies of rotated log files:

```
% logadm -C2 -w mylog /my/really/long/log/file/name
% logadm -C2 -w /my/really/long/log/file/name
```

**-z *count***

Compress old log files after all other commands have been executed. *count* of the most recent log files are left uncompressed, therefore making the *count* most recent files easier to peruse. Use *count* of zero to compress all old logs.

The compression is done with `gzip(1)` and the resulting log file has the suffix of `.gz`.

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

***logname***

Identifies the name of the entry in `/etc/logadm.conf`. If the log file name is specified in the *logname* field, it is assumed that *logname* is the same as the actual log file name.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Rotating a File and Keeping Previous Versions

The following example rotates the `/var/adm/exacct/proc` file, keeping ten previous versions in `/var/adm/exacct/proc.0` through `/var/adm/exacct/proc.9`.

Tell `logadm` to copy the file and truncate it.

```
% logadm -c /var/adm/exacct/proc
```

EXAMPLE 2 Rotating `syslog`

The following example rotates `syslog` and keeps eight log files. Old log files are put in the directory `/var/oldlogs` instead of `/var/log`:

```
% logadm -C8 -t '/var/oldlogs/syslog.$n' /var/log/syslog
```

EXAMPLE 3 Rotating `/var/adm/sulog` and Expiring Based on Age

The following entry in the `/etc/logadm.conf` file rotates the `/var/adm/sulog` file and expires any copies older than 30 days.

**EXAMPLE 3** Rotating /var/adm/sulog and Expiring Based on Age (Continued)

```
/var/adm/sulog -A 30d
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Rotating Files and Expiring Based on Disk Usage

The following entry in the /etc/logadm.conf file rotates the /var/adm/sulog file and expires old log files when more than 100 megabytes are used by the sum of all the rotated log files.

```
/var/adm/sulog -S 100m
```

**EXAMPLE 5** Creating an Entry that Stores the Logfile Name

This example creates an entry storing the log file name and the fact that we want to keep 20 copies in /etc/logadm.conf, but the -p never means the entry is ignored by the normal logadm run from root's crontab every morning.

```
% logadm -w locallog /usr/local/logfile -C20 -p never
```

Use the following entry on the command line to override the -p never option:

```
% logadm -p now locallog
```

**EXAMPLE 6** Rotating the apache Error and Access Logs

The following example rotates the apache error and access logs monthly to filenames based on current year and month. It keeps the 24 most recent copies and tells apache to restart after renaming the logs.

This command is run once, and since the -w option is specified, an entry is made in /etc/logadm.conf so the apache logs are rotated from now on.

```
% logadm -w apache -p 1m -C 24\
-t '/var/apache/old-logs/$basename.%Y-%m'\
-a '/usr/apache/bin/apachectl graceful'\
'/var/apache/logs/*{access,error}_log'
```

This example also illustrates that the entry name supplied with the -w option doesn't have to match the log file name. In this example, the entry name is apache and once the line has been run, the entry in /etc/logadm.conf can be forced to run by executing the following command:

```
% logadm -p now apache
```

Because the expression matching the apache log file names was enclosed in quotes, the expression is stored in /etc/logadm.conf, rather than the list of files that it expands to. This means that each time logadm runs from cron it expands that expression and checks all the log files in the resulting list to see if they need rotating.

**EXAMPLE 6** Rotating the apache Error and Access Logs *(Continued)*

The following command is an example without the quotes around the log name expression. The shell expands the last argument into a list of log files that exist at the time the command is entered, and writes an entry to `/etc/logadm.conf` that rotates the files.

```
logadm -w apache /var/apache/logs/*_log
```

**Files** `/etc/logadm.conf`  
configuration file for `logadm` command

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWcsu         |
| Interface Stability | Evolving        |

**See Also** [chgrp\(1\)](#), [chmod\(1\)](#), [chown\(1\)](#), [csh\(1\)](#), [gzip\(1\)](#), [cron\(1M\)](#), [ctime\(3C\)](#), [strftime\(3C\)](#), [logadm.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Notes** When `logadm` applies expire conditions (supplied by the `-A`, `-C`, and `-S` options), it deletes files, the oldest first, until the conditions are satisfied. If the template used for naming the old logs contained `$n` or `$N`, `logadm` picks the highest value of `$n` or `$N` found in the old log file names first. If the template used is something else, `logadm` uses the modification time to determine which files to expire first. This may not be the expected behavior if an old log file has been modified since it was rotated.

Depending on log file sizes and number of log files, log file rotations can be very time-consuming.

By default, `logadm` works in GMT. Therefore, all entries written to the `/etc/logadm.conf` file (see [logadm.conf\(4\)](#)) will have a GMT timestamp. Users can use the `-l` option to set `logadm` to local time.

**Name** logins – list user and system login information

**Synopsis** /usr/bin/logins [-admopstux] [-g *group...*]  
[-l *login\_name...*]

**Description** This command displays information on user and system logins known to the system. Contents of the output is controlled by the command options and can include the following: user or system login, user id number, passwd account field value (user name or other information), primary group name, primary group id, multiple group names, multiple group ids, home directory, login shell, and four password aging parameters. The default information is the following: login id, user id, primary group name, primary group id and the account field value. Output is sorted by user id, system logins, followed by user logins.

**Options** Options may be used together. If so, any login that matches any criteria are displayed.

The following options are supported:

- a Add two password expiration fields to the display. The fields show how many days a password can remain unused before it automatically becomes inactive, and the date that the password expires.
- d Selects logins with duplicate uids.
- g *group* Selects all users belonging to group, sorted by login. Multiple groups can be specified as a comma-separated list. When the -l and -g options are combined, a user is only listed once, even if the user belongs to more than one of the selected groups.
- l *login\_name...* Selects the requested login. Multiple logins can be specified as a comma-separated list. Depending on the nameservice lookup types set in /etc/nsswitch.conf, the information can come from the /etc/passwd and /etc/shadow files and other nameservices. When the -l and -g options are combined, a user is only listed once, even if the user belongs to more than one of the selected groups.
- m Displays multiple group membership information.
- o Formats output into one line of colon-separated fields.
- p Selects logins with no passwords.
- s Selects all system logins.
- t Sorts output by login instead of by uid.
- u Selects all user logins.
- x Prints an extended set of information about each selected user. The extended information includes home directory, login shell and password aging information, each displayed on a separate line. The password information currently consists of password status:

- NP Account has no password
- LK Account is locked for UNIX authentication
- NL Account is a no login account
- PS Account probably has a valid password
- UN Account password status is unknown. That is, it is not a recognizable hashed password or any of the above entries. See [crypt\(3C\)](#) for valid password hashes.

If the login is passworded, status is followed by the date the password was last changed, the number of days required between changes, and the number of days allowed before a change is required. The password aging information shows the time interval that the user receives a password expiration warning message (when logging on) before the password expires.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWcsu         |

**See Also** [passwd\(1\)](#), [crypt\(3C\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** lpadmin – configure the LP print service

**Synopsis** lpadmin -p *printer* {*options*}

lpadmin -x *dest*

lpadmin -d [*dest*]

lpadmin -S *print-wheel* -T [-A *alert-type*] [-W *minutes*]  
[-Q *requests*]

**Description** lpadmin configures the LP print service by defining printers and devices. It is used to add and change printers, to remove printers from service, to set or change the system default destination, to define alerts for printer faults, and to mount print wheels.

**Options** The lpadmin command has options for:

- Adding or changing a printer
- Removing a printer destination
- Setting or changing the system default destination
- Setting an alert for a print wheel

The options for each of the above categories are specified in the following subsections.

Several options support the use of lists. A list might contain, for example, user names, printers, printer forms, or content types. A list of multiple items can have the form of either comma-separated names or have the entire list enclosed by double quotes with a space between each name. For example, both lists below are acceptable:

```
one, two, three
"one two three"
```

**Adding or Changing a Printer** The first form of the lpadmin command (lpadmin -p *printer* {*options*}) configures a new printer or changes the configuration of an existing printer. It also starts the print scheduler.

When creating a new printer, one of three options (-v, -U, or -s) must be supplied. In addition, only one of the following can be supplied: -e, -i, or -m; if none of these three options is supplied, the model standard is used. The -h and -l options are mutually exclusive. Printer and class names must be no longer than 14 characters and must consist entirely of the characters A-Z, a-z, 0-9, dash (-) and underscore (\_). If -s is specified, the following options are invalid: -A, -e, -F, -h, -i, -l, -M, -m, -o, -U, -v, and -W.

The following options can appear in any order.

**-A *alert-type* [-W *minutes*]**

The -A option is used to define an alert that informs the administrator when a printer fault is detected, and periodically thereafter, until the printer fault is cleared by the administrator. The *alert-types* are:

**mail** Send the alert message using mail (see [mail\(1\)](#)) to the administrator.

---

|                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>write</code>         | Write the message to the terminal on which the administrator is logged in. If the administrator is logged in on several terminals, one is chosen arbitrarily.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <code>quiet</code>         | Do not send messages for the current condition. An administrator can use this option to temporarily stop receiving further messages about a known problem. Once the fault has been cleared and printing resumes, messages are sent again when another fault occurs with the printer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <code>showfault</code>     | Attempt to execute a fault handler on each system that has a print job in the queue. The fault handler is <code>/etc/lp/alerts/printer</code> . It is invoked with three parameters: <i>printer_name</i> , <i>date</i> , <i>file_name</i> . The <i>file_name</i> is the name of a file containing the fault message.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <code>none</code>          | Do not send messages; any existing alert definition for the printer is removed. No alert is sent when the printer faults until a different alert-type (except <code>quiet</code> ) is used.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <code>shell-command</code> | Run the <i>shell-command</i> each time the alert needs to be sent. The shell command should expect the message in standard input. If there are blank spaces embedded in the command, enclose the command in quotes. Notice that the <code>mail</code> and <code>write</code> values for this option are equivalent to the values <code>mail user-name</code> and <code>write user-name</code> respectively, where <i>user-name</i> is the current name for the administrator. This is the login name of the person submitting this command unless he or she has used the <code>su</code> command to change to another user ID. If the <code>su</code> command has been used to change the user ID, then the <i>user-name</i> for the new ID is used. |
| <code>list</code>          | Display the type of the alert for the printer fault. No change is made to the alert.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

When a fault occurs, the printing subsystem displays a message indicating that printing for a specified printer has stopped and the reason for the stoppage. The message also indicates that printing will restart in a few minutes and that you can enter an `enable` command if you want to restart sooner than that.

Following a fault that occurs in the middle of a print job, the job is reprinted from the beginning. An exception to this occurs when you enter a command, such as the one shown below, that changes the page list to be printed.

```
% lp -i request-id -P ...
```

For a given print request, the presence of multiple reasons for failure indicate multiple attempts at printing.

The LP print service can detect printer faults only through an adequate fast filter and only when the standard interface program or a suitable customized interface program is used. Furthermore, the level of recovery after a fault depends on the capabilities of the filter.

If, instead of a single printer, the keyword `all` is displayed in an alert, the alert applies to all printers.

If the `-W` option is not used to arrange fault alerting for *printer*, the default procedure is to mail one message to the administrator of *printer* per fault. This is equivalent to specifying `-W once` or `-W 0`. If *minutes* is a number greater than zero, an alert is sent at intervals specified by *minutes*.

`-c class`

Insert *printer* into the specified *class*. *class* is created if it does not already exist. This option requires the `-U dial-info` or `-v device` options.

`-D comment`

Save this *comment* for display whenever a user asks for a full description of *printer* (see [lpstat\(1\)](#)). The LP print service does not interpret this comment.

`-e printer`

Copy the interface program of an existing *printer* to be the interface program for *printer*. (Options `-i` and `-m` must not be specified with this option.)

`-f allow:form-list`

`-f deny:form-list`

Allow or deny the forms in *form-list* to be printed on *printer*. By default no forms are allowed on a new printer.

For each printer, the LP print service keeps two lists of forms: an “allow-list” of forms that can be used with the printer, and a “deny-list” of forms that cannot be used with the printer. With the `-f allow` option, the forms listed are added to the allow-list and removed from the deny-list. With the `-f deny` option, the forms listed are added to the deny-list and removed from the allow-list.

If the allow-list is not empty, only the forms in the list can be used on the printer, regardless of the contents of the deny-list. If the allow-list is empty, but the deny-list is not, the forms in the deny-list cannot be used with the printer. All forms can be excluded from a printer by specifying `-f deny:all`. All forms can be used on a printer (provided the printer can handle all the characteristics of each form) by specifying `-f allow:all`.

The LP print service uses this information as a set of guidelines for determining where a form can be mounted. Administrators, however, are not restricted from mounting a form on any printer. If mounting a form on a particular printer is in disagreement with the information in the allow-list or deny-list, the administrator is warned but the mount is accepted. Nonetheless, if a user attempts to issue a print or change request for a form and printer combination that is in disagreement with the information, the request is accepted



only if the form is currently mounted on the printer. If the form is later unmounted before the request can print, the request is canceled and the user is notified by mail.

If the administrator tries to specify a form as acceptable for use on a printer that does not have the capabilities needed by the form, the command is rejected.

Notice the other use of `-f`, with the `-M` option, below.

The `-T` option must be invoked first with `lpadmin` to identify the printer type before the `-f` option can be used.

#### `-F` *fault-recovery*

This option specifies the recovery to be used for any print request that is stopped because of a printer fault, according to the value of *fault-recovery*:

`continue` Continue printing on the top of the page where printing stopped. This requires a filter to wait for the fault to clear before automatically continuing.

`beginning` Start printing the request again from the beginning.

`wait` Disable printing on *printer* and wait for the administrator or a user to enable printing again.

During the wait, the administrator or the user who submitted the stopped print request can issue a change request that specifies where printing should resume. (See the `-i` option of the `lp` command.) If no change request is made before printing is enabled, printing resumes at the top of the page where stopped, if the filter allows; otherwise, the request is printed from the beginning.

#### `-h`

Indicate that the device associated with the printer is hardwired. If neither of the mutually exclusive options, `-h` and `-l`, is specified, `-h` is assumed.

#### `-i` *interface*

Establish a new interface program for *printer*. *interface* is the pathname of the new program. (The `-e` and `-m` options must not be specified with this option.)

#### `-I` *content-type-list*

Allow *printer* to handle print requests with the content types listed in a *content-type-list*.

The type `simple` is recognized as the default content type for files in the UNIX system. A `simple` type of file is a data stream containing only printable ASCII characters and the following control characters:

| Control Char | Octal Value | Meaning                    |
|--------------|-------------|----------------------------|
| BACKSPACE    | 10          | Move back one char, except |

| Control Char          | Octal Value | Meaning                              |
|-----------------------|-------------|--------------------------------------|
|                       |             | at beginning of line                 |
| TAB                   | 11          | Move to next tab stop                |
| LINEFEED<br>(newline) | 12          | Move to beginning of<br>next line    |
| FORMFEED              | 14          | Move to beginning of<br>next page    |
| RETURN                | 15          | Move to beginning of<br>current line |

To prevent the print service from considering `simple` a valid type for the printer, specify either an explicit value (such as the printer type) in the *content-type-list*, or an empty list. If you do want `simple` included along with other types, you must include `simple` in the *content-type-list*.

In addition to content types defined by the print administrator, the type `PostScript` is recognized and supported by the Solaris print subsystem. This includes filters to support `PostScript` as the printer content type.

The type `any` is recognized as a special content type for files. When declared as the input type for a printer, it signals the print sub-system not to do any filtering on the file before sending it to the printer.

Except for `simple` and `any`, each *content-type* name is determined by the administrator. If the printer type is specified by the `-T` option, then the printer type is implicitly considered to be also a valid content type.

`-l`

Indicate that the device associated with *printer* is a login terminal. The LP scheduler (`lp sched`) disables all login terminals automatically each time it is started. (The `-h` option must not be specified with this option.)

`-m model`

Select *model* interface program, provided with the LP print service, for the printer. (Options `-e` and `-i` must not be specified with this option.)

`-M -f form-name [-a [-o filebreak]] [-t tray-number]`

Mount the form *form-name* on *printer*. Print requests that need the pre-printed form *form-name* is printed on *printer*. If more than one printer has the form mounted and the user has specified any (with the `-d` option of the `lp` command) as the printer destination, then the print request is printed on the one printer that also meets the other needs of the request.

The page length and width, and character and line pitches needed by the form are compared with those allowed for the printer, by checking the capabilities in the `terminfo` database for the type of printer. If the form requires attributes that are not available with the printer, the administrator is warned but the mount is accepted. If the form lists a print wheel as mandatory, but the print wheel mounted on the printer is different, the administrator is also warned but the mount is accepted.

If the `-a` option is given, an alignment pattern is printed, preceded by the same initialization of the physical printer that precedes a normal print request, with one exception: no banner page is printed. Printing is assumed to start at the top of the first page of the form. After the pattern is printed, the administrator can adjust the mounted form in the printer and press return for another alignment pattern (no initialization this time), and can continue printing as many alignment patterns as desired. The administrator can quit the printing of alignment patterns by typing `q`.

If the `-o filebreak` option is given, a formfeed is inserted between each copy of the alignment pattern. By default, the alignment pattern is assumed to correctly fill a form, so no formfeed is added.

If the `-t tray-number` option is specified, printer tray *tray-number* is used.

A form is “unmounted” either by mounting a new form in its place or by using the `-f none` option. By default, a new printer has no form mounted.

Notice the other use of `-f` without the `-M` option above.

#### `-M -S print-wheel`

Mount the *print-wheel* on *printer*. Print requests that need the *print-wheel* are printed on *printer*. If more than one printer has *print-wheel* mounted and the user has specified any (with the `-d` option of the `lp` command) as the printer destination, then the print request is printed on the one printer that also meets the other needs of the request.

If the *print-wheel* is not listed as acceptable for the printer, the administrator is warned but the mount is accepted. If the printer does not take print wheels, the command is rejected.

A print wheel is “unmounted” either by mounting a new print wheel in its place or by using the option `-S none`. By default, a new printer has no print wheel mounted.

Notice the other uses of the `-S` option without the `-M` option described below.

#### `-n ppdfilename`

Specify a PPD file for creating and modifying printer queues. *ppdfilename* is the full path and file name to the PPD file. Used in conjunction with the `-p`, `-d`, `-x`, or `-S` options.

#### `-o option`

The `-o` option defines default printer configuration values given to an interface program. The default can be explicitly overwritten for individual requests by the user (see `lp(1)`), or taken from a preprinted form description (see `lpforms(1M)` and `lp(1)`).

There are several options which are predefined by the system. In addition, any number of key-value pairs can be defined. See the section “Predefined Options Used with the -o Option”, below.

**-P *paper-name***

Specify a paper type list that the printer supports.

**-r *class***

Remove *printer* from the specified *class*. If *printer* is the last member of *class*, then *class* is removed.

**-S *list***

Allow either the print wheels or aliases for character sets named in *list* to be used on the printer.

If the printer is a type that takes print wheels, then *list* is a comma or space separated list of print wheel names. These are the only print wheels considered mountable on the printer. (You can always force a different print wheel to be mounted.) Until the option is used to specify a list, no print wheels are considered mountable on the printer, and print requests that ask for a particular print wheel with this printer are rejected.

If the printer is a type that has selectable character sets, then *list* is a list of character set name “mappings” or aliases. Each “mapping” is of the form *known-name=alias*. The *known-name* is a character set number preceded by *cs* (such as *cs3* for character set three) or a character set name from the `terminfo` database entry *csnm*. See `terminfo(4)`. If this option is not used to specify a list, only the names already known from the `terminfo` database or numbers with a prefix of *cs* is acceptable for the printer. If *list* is the word *none*, any existing print wheel lists or character set aliases are removed.

Notice the other uses of the -S with the -M option described above.

The -T option must be invoked first with `lpadmin` to identify the printer type before the -S option can be used.

**-s *system-name***

The -s option can be used for both remote or local printers. For remote printers:

-s *system-name*[!*printer-name*] (UUCP format)

-s *printer-name*@*system-name* (RCMD format)

Make a remote printer (one that must be accessed through another system) accessible to users on your system. *system-name* is the name of the remote system on which the remote printer is located it. *printer-name* is the name used on the remote system for that printer. For example, if you

want to access *printer1* on *system1* and you want it called *printer2* on your system:

```
-p printer2 -s system1!printer1
```

```
-p printer2 -s printer1@system1
```

-s *scheme://end-point* (URI format)

Make a remote printer (one that must be accessed through another system) accessible to users on your system. The supported schemes include `lpd` and `ipp`. Specify URI's using the `lpd` format as follows:

```
lpd://server/printers/queue[#Solaris]
```

URI's using the `ipp` format are defined by the remote print server. They are generally of the format:

```
ipp://server/printers/queue
```

In either case, *server* specifies the hostname or IP address of the remote print server, *queue* specifies the name of the print queue on the remote print server, and the optional `#Solaris` specifies that the remote print server is a Solaris server when `lpd` URI format is being used.

For example:

```
-p printer -s lpd://server/printers/queue#Solaris
```

```
-p printer -s ipp://server/printers/queue
```

For local printers:

-s "localhost" Use `localhost` for the *system-name* to be used by the print service. In an environment where the nodename is variable, print queues are invalidated when the nodename changes. Using `localhost` as the *system-name* allows print queues to be maintained across changing nodenames. The *system-name*, as used by the print service, is only set to `localhost` when explicitly set with this option; by default, `lpadmin` sets *system-name* to *nodename*. For example, if you want to configure a new printer on the local system, and want it called *printer3*:

```
-p printer3 -s localhost -v device
```

This option should never be used when creating name service maps.

**-T *printer-type-list***

Identify the printer as being of one or more *printer-types*. Each *printer-type* is used to extract data from the `terminfo` database; this information is used to initialize the printer before printing each user's request. Some filters might also use a *printer-type* to convert content for the printer. If this option is not used, the default *printer-type* is unknown. No information is extracted from `terminfo` so each user request is printed without first initializing the printer. Also, this option must be used if the following are to work: `-o cpi`, `-o lpi`, `-o width`, and `-o length` options of the `lpadmin` and `lp` commands, and the `-S` and `-f` options of the `lpadmin` command.

If the *printer-type-list* contains more than one type, then the *content-type-list* of the `-I` option must either be specified as `simple`, as empty (`-I ""`), or not specified at all.

**-t *number-of-trays***

Specify the number of trays when creating the printer.

**-u `allow:login-ID-list`**

**-u `deny:login-ID-list`**

Allow or deny the users in *login-ID-list* access to the printer. By default all users are allowed on a new printer. The *login-ID-list* argument can include any or all of the following constructs:

|                                      |                                        |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>login-ID</i>                      | a user on any system                   |
| <i>system-name!</i> <i>login-ID</i>  | a user on system <i>system-name</i>    |
| <i>system-name!</i> <code>all</code> | all users on system <i>system-name</i> |
| <code>all!</code> <i>login-ID</i>    | a user on all systems                  |
| <code>all</code>                     | all users on all systems               |

For each printer, the LP print service keeps two lists of users: an "allow-list" of people allowed to use the printer, and a "deny-list" of people denied access to the printer. With the `-u allow` option, the users listed are added to the allow-list and removed from the deny-list. With the `-u deny` option, the users listed are added to the deny-list and removed from the allow-list.

If the allow-list is not empty, only the users in the list can use the printer, regardless of the contents of the deny-list. If the allow-list is empty, but the deny-list is not, the users in the deny-list cannot use the printer. All users can be denied access to the printer by specifying `-u deny:all`. All users can use the printer by specifying `-u allow:all`.

The `-U` option allows your print service to access a remote printer. (It does not enable your print service to access a remote printer service.) Specifically, `-U` assigns the "dialing" information *dial-info* to the printer. *dial-info* is used with the `dial` routine to call the printer. Any network connection supported by the Basic Networking Utilities works.

*dial-info* can be either a phone number for a modem connection, or a system name for other kinds of connections. Or, if `-U direct` is given, no dialing takes place, because the name `direct` is reserved for a printer that is directly connected. If a system name is given, it is used to search for connection details from the file `/etc/uucp/Systems` or related files. The Basic Networking Utilities are required to support this option. By default, `-U direct` is assumed.

`-v device`

Associate a *device* with *printer*. *device* is the path name of a file that is writable by `lp`. Notice that the same *device* can be associated with more than one printer.

`-v scheme://end-point`

Associate a network attached device with printer.

*scheme* is the method or protocol used to access the network attached device and *end-point* is the information necessary to contact that network attached device. Use of this device format requires the use of the `uri` interface script and can only be used with the `smb` scheme at this time.

For example:

```
lpadmin -p queue -v smb://smb-service/printer -m uri
```

See the `/usr/sfw/man/man1m/smbpool.1m` man page for details.

Removing a Printer  
Destination

The `-x dest` option removes the destination *dest* (a printer or a class), from the LP print service. If *dest* is a printer and is the only member of a class, then the class is deleted, too. If *dest* is `all`, all printers and classes are removed. If there are no remaining local printers and the scheduler is still running, the scheduler is shut down.

No other *options* are allowed with `-x`.

Setting/Changing the  
System Default  
Destination

The `-d [dest]` option makes *dest* (an existing printer or class) the new system default destination. If *dest* is not supplied, then there is no system default destination. No other *options* are allowed with `-d`.

Setting an Alert for a  
Print Wheel

`-S print-wheel [-A alert-type] [-W minutes] [-Q requests] -T`

The `-S print-wheel` option is used with the `-A alert-type` option to define an alert to mount the print wheel when there are jobs queued for it. If this command is not used to arrange alerting for a print wheel, no alert is sent for the print wheel. Notice the other use of `-A`, with the `-p` option, above.

The *alert-types* are:

|                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>mail</code>  | Send the alert message using the <code>mail</code> command to the administrator.                                                                                                                     |
| <code>write</code> | Write the message, using the <code>write</code> command, to the terminal on which the administrator is logged in. If the administrator is logged in on several terminals, one is arbitrarily chosen. |

|                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>quiet</code>   | Do not send messages for the current condition. An administrator can use this option to temporarily stop receiving further messages about a known problem. Once the <i>print-wheel</i> has been mounted and subsequently unmounted, messages are sent again when the number of print requests reaches the threshold specified by the <code>-Q</code> option.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <code>none</code>    | Do not send messages until the <code>-A</code> option is given again with a different <i>alert-type</i> (other than <code>quiet</code> ).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <i>shell-command</i> | Run the <i>shell-command</i> each time the alert needs to be sent. The shell command should expect the message in standard input. If there are blanks embedded in the command, enclose the command in quotes. Notice that the <code>mail</code> and <code>write</code> values for this option are equivalent to the values <code>mail user-name</code> and <code>write user-name</code> respectively, where <i>user-name</i> is the current name for the administrator. This is the login name of the person submitting this command unless he or she has used the <code>su</code> command to change to another user ID. If the <code>su</code> command has been used to change the user ID, then the <i>user-name</i> for the new ID is used. |
| <code>list</code>    | Display the type of the alert for the print wheel on standard output. No change is made to the alert.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

The message sent appears as follows:

```
The print wheel print-wheel needs to be mounted
on the printer(s):
printer(integer1requests) integer2 print requests
await this print wheel.
```

The printers listed are those that the administrator had earlier specified were candidates for this print wheel. The number *integer1* listed next to each printer is the number of requests eligible for the printer. The number *integer2* shown after the printer list is the total number of requests awaiting the print wheel. It is less than the sum of the other numbers if some requests can be handled by more than one printer.

If the *print-wheel* is `all`, the alerting defined in this command applies to all print wheels already defined to have an alert.

If the `-W` option is not given, the default procedure is that only one message is sent per need to mount the print wheel. Not specifying the `-W` option is equivalent to specifying `-W once` or `-W 0`. If *minutes* is a number greater than zero, an alert is sent at intervals specified by *minutes*.

If the `-Q` option is also given, the alert is sent when a certain number (specified by the argument *requests*) of print requests that need the print wheel are waiting. If the `-Q` option is not given, or *requests* is `1` or `any` (which are both the default), a message is sent as soon as



anyone submits a print request for the print wheel when it is not mounted.

**Predefined Options Used with the -o Option** A number of options, described below, are predefined for use with -o. These options are used for adjusting printer capabilities, adjusting printer port characteristics, configuring network printers, and controlling the use of banner. The -o also supports an arbitrary *keyword=value* format, which is referred to below as an undefined option.

**Adjusting Printer Capabilities** The length, width, cpi, and lpi parameters can be used in conjunction with the -o option to adjust printer capabilities. The format of the parameters and their values is as follows:

```
length=scaled-decimal-number
width=scaled-decimal-number
cpi=scaled-decimal-number
lpi=scaled-decimal-number
```

The term *scaled-decimal-number* refers to a non-negative number used to indicate a unit of size. The type of unit is shown by a "trailing" letter attached to the number. Three types of *scaled-decimal-numbers* can be used with the LP print service: numbers that show sizes in centimeters (marked with a trailing c); numbers that show sizes in inches (marked with a trailing i); and numbers that show sizes in units appropriate to use (without a trailing letter), that is, lines, characters, lines per inch, or characters per inch.

The option values must agree with the capabilities of the type of physical printer, as defined in the terminfo database for the printer type. If they do not, the command is rejected.

The defaults are defined in the terminfo entry for the specified printer type. The defaults can be reset by:

```
lpadmin -p printername -o length=
lpadmin -p printername -o width=
lpadmin -p printername -o cpi=
lpadmin -p printername -o lpi=
```

**Adjusting Printer Port Characteristics** You use the stty keyword in conjunction with the o option to adjust printer port characteristics. The general form of the stty portion of the command is:

```
stty="stty-option-list"
```

The *stty-option-list* is not checked for allowed values, but is passed directly to the stty program by the standard interface program. Any error messages produced by stty when a request is processed (by the standard interface program) are mailed to the user submitting the request.

The default for stty is:

```
stty="'9600 cs8 -cstopb -parenb ixon
 -ixany opost -olcuc onlcr
 -ocrnl -onocr
 -onlret -ofill nl0 cr0 tab0 bs0 vt0 ff0'"
```

The default can be reset by:

```
lpadmin -p printername -o stty=
```

#### Configuring Network Printers

The `dest`, `protocol`, `bsdctrl`, and `timeout` parameters are used in conjunction with the `-o` option to configure network printers. The format of these keywords and their assigned values is as follows:

```
dest=string protocol=string bsdctrl=string \
timeout=non-negative-integer-seconds
```

These four options are provided to support network printing. Each option is passed directly to the interface program; any checking for allowed values is done there.

The value of `dest` is the name of the destination for the network printer; the semantics for value `dest` are dependent on the printer and the configuration. There is no default.

The value of option `protocol` sets the over-the-wire protocol to the printer. The default for option `protocol` is `bsd`. The value of option `bsdctrl` sets the print order of control and data files (BSD protocol only); the default for this option is `control file first`. The value of option `timeout` sets the seed value for backoff time when the printer is busy. The default value for the `timeout` option is 10 seconds. The defaults can be reset by:

```
lpadmin -p printername -o protocol=
lpadmin -p printername -o bsdctrl=
lpadmin -p printername -o timeout=
```

#### Controlling the Use of the Banner Page

Use the following commands to control the use of the banner page:

```
lpadmin -p printer -o nobanner
lpadmin -p printer -o banner
lpadmin -p printer -o banner=always
lpadmin -p printer -o banner=never
lpadmin -p printer -o banner=optional
```

The first and fifth commands (`-o nobanner` and `-o banner=optional`) are equivalent. The default is to print the banner page, unless a user specifies `-o nobanner` on an `lp` command line.

The second and third commands (`-o banner` and `-o banner=always`) are equivalent. Both cause a banner page to be printed always, even if a user specifies `lp -o nobanner`. The root user can override this command.

The fourth command (`-o banner=never`) causes a banner page never to be printed, even if a user specifies `lp -o banner`. The root user can override this command.

#### Undefined Options

The `-o` option supports the use of arbitrary, user-defined options with the following format:

*key=value*

Each *key=value* is passed directly to the interface program. Any checking for allowed values is done in the interface program.

Any default values for a given *key=value* option are defined in the interface program. If a default is provided, it can be reset by typing the key without any value:

```
lpadm -p printername -o key=
```

```
lpadm -p printer -o foo | nofoo Sets boolean values foo=true | foo=false.
```

**Examples** In the following examples, *prtr* can be any name up to 14 characters and can be the same name as the [ping\(1M\)](#) name.

**EXAMPLE 1** Configuring an HP Postscript Printer with a Jet Direct Network Interface

The following example configures an HP postscript printer with a jet direct network interface:

```
example# lpadm -p prtr -v /dev/null -m netstandard \
 -o dest=ping_name_of_prtr:9100 -o protocol=tcp -T PS -I \
 postscript
example# enable prtr
example# accept prtr
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Configuring a Standard Postscript Network Printer

The following example configures a standard postscript network printer:

```
example# lpadm -p prtr -v /dev/null -m netstandard \
 -o dest=ping_name_of_prtr -T PS -I postscript
example# enable prtr
example# accept prtr
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0            Successful completion.  
non-zero    An error occurred.

**Files** /var/spool/lp/\*  
/etc/lp  
/etc/lp/alerts/printer    Fault handler for lpadm  
/etc/printers.conf        System printer configuration database

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWpcu         |
| Interface Stability | Obsolete        |

**See Also** [enable\(1\)](#), [lp\(1\)](#), [lpstat\(1\)](#), [mail\(1\)](#), [stty\(1\)](#), [accept\(1M\)](#), [lpforms\(1M\)](#), [lpsched\(1M\)](#), [lpssystem\(1M\)](#), [ping\(1M\)](#), [dial\(3NSL\)](#), [terminfo\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

*System Administration Guide: Basic Administration*

**Notes** When using `lpadmin` to provide access to a remote printer, remote configuration data is stored in `/etc/printers.conf`. This data includes a `bsdaddr` and a `printer-uri-supported` attribute. The data in this file can be shared through the use of a network name service or replicated across multiple systems. If the data is shared, it is important to make sure that the `bsdaddr` and `printer-uri-supported` contain hostname information that is correctly resolved on all hosts sharing this data. Also, the `printer-uri-supported` is the preferred means of accessing remote print service. The `bsdaddr` is supplied for backward compatibility with Solaris 2.6-10 systems.

**Name** lpfilter – administer filters used with the LP print service

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/lpfilter -f *filter-name*  
 {- | -i | -l | -x | -F *pathname*}

**Description** The `lpfilter` command is used to add, change, delete, or list a filter used with the LP print service. These filters convert the content of a file to have a content type acceptable to a printer.

**Options** Arguments consist of the `-f filter-name` option and exactly one of the arguments appearing within braces (`{ }`) in the SYNOPSIS.

- Adds or changes a filter as specified from standard input. The format of the input is specified below. If `-f all` is specified with the `–` option, the specified change is made to all existing filters. This is not useful.
- `-f filter-name` Specifies the *filter-name* of the filter to be added, changed, reset, deleted, or listed. The filter name `all` is a special filter name defined below. The `-f` option is required.
- `-F pathname` Adds or changes a filter as specified by the contents of the file *pathname*. The format of the file's contents is specified below. If `-f all` is specified with the `-F` option, the specified change is made to all existing filters. This is not useful.
- `-i` Resets a filter to its default settings. Using `-f all` with the `-i` option restores all filters for which predefined settings are available to their original settings.
- `-l` Lists a filter description. Using `-f all` with the `-l` option produces a list of all filters.
- `-x` Deletes a filter. Using `-f all` with the `-x` option results in all filters being deleted.

## Usage

**Adding or Changing a Filter** The filter named in the `-f` option is added to the filter table. If the filter already exists, its description is changed to reflect the new information in the input.

When `–` is specified, standard input supplies the filter description. When `-F` is specified, the file *pathname* supplies the filter description. One of these two options must be specified to add or change a filter.

When an existing filter is changed with the `-F` or `–` option, lines in the filter description that are not specified in the new information are not changed. When a new filter is added with this command, unspecified lines receive default values. See below.

Filters are used to convert the content of a request from its initial type into a type acceptable to a printer. For a given print request, the LP print service knows the following:

- The content type of the request (specified by `lp -T` or determined implicitly).
- The name of the printer (specified by `lp -d`).
- The printer type (specified by `lpadmin -T`).  
The printer type is intended to be a printer model, but some people specify it with a content type even though `lpadmin -I` is intended for this purpose.
- The content types acceptable to the printer (specified by `lpadmin -I`).  
The values specified by the `lpadmin -T` are treated as if they were specified by the `-I` option as well.
- The modes of printing asked for by the originator of the request (specified by various options to `lp`).

The system uses the above information to construct a list of one or more filters that converts the document's content type into a content type acceptable to the printer and consumes all `lp` arguments that invoke filters (`-y` and `-P`).

The contents of the file (specified by the `-F` option) and the input stream from standard input (specified by `-`) must consist of a series of lines, such that each line conforms to the syntax specified by one of the seven lines below. All lists are comma or space separated. Each item contains a description.

Input types: *content-type-list*  
 Output types: *content-type-list*  
 Printer types: *printer-type-list*  
 Printers: *printer-list*  
 Filter type: *filter-type*  
 Command: *shell-command*  
 Options: *template-list*

- |               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Input types   | This gives the content types that can be accepted by the filter. The default is any. The document content type must be a member of this list for the initial filter in the sequence.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Output types  | This gives the content types that the filter can produce from any of the input (content) types. The default is any. The intersection of the output types of this list and the content types acceptable to the printer (from <code>lpadmin -I</code> and <code>lpadmin -T</code> ) must be non-null for the last filter in the sequence. For adjacent filters in the sequence, the intersection of output types of one and the input types of the next must be non-null. |
| Printer types | This gives the printer types for which this printer can be used. The LP print service will restrict the use of the filter to these printer types (from <code>lpadmin -T</code> ). The default is any.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

|             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Printers    | This gives the names of the printers for which the filter can be used. The LP print service will restrict the use of the filter to just the printers named. The default is any.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Filter type | This marks the filter as a slow filter or a fast filter. Slow filters are generally those that take a long time to convert their input (that is, minutes or hours). They are run before the job is scheduled for a printer, to keep the printers from being tied up while the filter is running. If a listed printer is on a remote system, the filter type for it must have the value <code>sLow</code> . That is, if a client defines a filter, it must be a slow filter. Fast filters are generally those that convert their input quickly (that is, faster than the printer can process the data), or those that must be connected to the printer when run. Fast filters will be given to the interface program to run while connected to the physical printer. |
| Command     | This specifies which program to run to invoke the filter. The full program pathname as well as fixed options must be included in the <i>shell-command</i> ; additional options are constructed, based on the characteristics of each print request and on the <code>Options</code> field. A command must be given for each filter. The command must accept a data stream as standard input and produce the converted data stream on its standard output. This allows filter pipelines to be constructed to convert data not handled by a single filter.                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Options     | This is a comma-separated list of templates used by the LP print service to construct options to the filter from the characteristics of each print request listed in the table later. The <code>-y</code> and <code>-P</code> arguments to the <code>lp</code> command cause a filter sequence to be built even if there is no need for a conversion of content types.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

In general, each template is of the following form:

*keyword pattern = replacement*

The *keyword* names the characteristic that the template attempts to map into a filter-specific option; each valid *keyword* is listed in the table below.

A *pattern* is one of the following: a literal pattern of one of the forms listed in the table, a single asterisk (\*), or a regular expression. If *pattern* matches the value of the characteristic, the template fits and is used to generate a filter-specific option. The *replacement* is what will be used as the option.

Regular expressions are the same as those found on the [regexp\(5\)](#) manual page. This includes the `\(...\)` and `\n` constructions, which can be used to extract portions of the *pattern* for copying into the *replacement*, and the `&`, which can be used to copy the entire *pattern* into the *replacement*.

The *replacement* can also contain a *\**; it too, is replaced with the entire *pattern*, just like the *&* of [regexp\(5\)](#).

The keywords are:

| lp Option      | Characteristic               | keyword            | Possible <i>patterns</i>               |
|----------------|------------------------------|--------------------|----------------------------------------|
| -T             | Content type<br>(input)      | INPUT              | content-type                           |
| Not applicable | Content type<br>(output)     | OUTPUT             | content-type                           |
| not applicable | Printer type                 | TERM               | printer-type                           |
| -d             | Printer name                 | PRINTER            | <i>printer-name</i>                    |
| -f, -o cpi=    | Character pitch              | CPI                | integer                                |
| -f, -o lpi=    | Line pitch                   | LPI                | integer                                |
| -f, -o length= | Page length                  | LENGTH             | integer                                |
| -f, -o width=  | Page width                   | WIDTH              | integer                                |
| -P             | Pages to print               | PAGES              | page-list                              |
| -S             | Character set<br>Print wheel | CHARSET<br>CHARSET | character-set-name<br>print-wheel-name |
| -f             | Form name                    | FORM               | form-name                              |
| -y             | Modes                        | MODES              | mode                                   |
| -n             | Number of<br>copies          | COPIES             | <i>integer</i>                         |

**Resetting a Filter to Defaults** If the filter named is one originally delivered with the LP print service, the *-i* option restores the original filter description.

**Deleting a Filter** The *-x* option is used to delete the filter specified in *filter-name* from the LP filter table.

**Listing a Filter Description** The *-l* option is used to list the description of the filter named in *filter-name*. If the command is successful, the following message is sent to standard output:

Input types: *content-type-list*  
 Output types: *content-type-list*  
 Printer types: *printer-type-list*



Printers: *printer-list*  
 Filter type: *filter-type*  
 Command: *shell-command*  
 Options: *template-list*

If the command fails, an error message is sent to standard error.

Large File Behavior See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of `lpfilter` when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (  $2^{31}$  bytes).

### Examples

**EXAMPLE 1** Printing with the landscape option

For example, the template

```
MODES landscape = -l
```

shows that if a print request is submitted with the `-y landscape` option, the filter will be given the option `-l`.

**EXAMPLE 2** Selecting the printer type

As another example, the template

```
TERM * = -T *
```

shows that the filter will be given the option `-T printer-type` for whichever *printer-type* is associated with a print request using the filter.

**EXAMPLE 3** Using the keywords table

Consider the template

```
MODES prwidth=\(.*\) = -w\1
```

Suppose a user gives the command

```
lp -y prwidth=10
```

From the table above, the LP print service determines that the `-y` option is handled by a `MODES` template. The `MODES` template here works because the pattern `prwidth=)` matches the `prwidth=10` given by the user. The replacement `-w\1` causes the LP print service to generate the filter option `-w10`. If necessary, the LP print service will construct a filter pipeline by concatenating several filters to handle the user's file and all the print options. See [sh\(1\)](#) for a description of a pipeline. If the print service constructs a filter pipeline, the `INPUT` and `OUTPUT` values used for each filter in the pipeline are the types of input and output for that filter, not for the entire pipeline.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

*non-zero* An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWpsu         |

**See Also** [lp\(1\)](#), [sh\(1\)](#), [lpadmin\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#), [regexp\(5\)](#)

*System Administration Guide: Basic Administration*

**Notes** If the `lp` command specifies more than one document, the filtering chain is determined by the first document. Other documents may have a different format, but they will print correctly only if the filter chain is able to handle their format.

**Name** lpforms – administer forms used with the LP print service

**Synopsis** `lpforms -f form-name option`

```
lpforms -f form-name -A alert-type [-P paper-name [-d]]
 [-Q requests] [-W minutes]
```

**Description** The `lpforms` command administers the use of preprinted forms, such as company letterhead paper, with the LP print service. A form is specified by its *form-name*. Users may specify a form when submitting a print request (see `lp(1)`). The argument `all` can be used instead of *form-name* with either of the command lines shown above. The first command line allows the administrator to add, change, and delete forms, to list the attributes of an existing form, and to allow and deny users access to particular forms. The second command line is used to establish the method by which the administrator is alerted that the form *form-name* must be mounted on a printer.

**Options** The following options are supported:

`-f form-name` Specify a form.

The first form of `lpforms` requires that one of the following *options* (`-`, `-l`, `-F`, `-x`) must be used:

`-F pathname` To add or change form *form-name*, as specified by the information in *pathname*.

`-` To add or change form *form-name*, as specified by the information from standard input.

`-l` To list the attributes of form *form-name*.

`-x` To delete form *form-name* (this option must be used separately; it may not be used with any other option).

The second form of the `lpforms` command requires the `-A alert-type` option. The other options are optional.

`-A alert-type` Defines an alert to mount the form when there are queued jobs which need it.

`-P paper-name [-d]` Specify the paper name when creating the form. If `-d` is specified, this paper is the default.

`-Q requests` An alert will be sent when a certain number of print requests that need the form are waiting.

`-W minutes` An alert will be sent at intervals specified by minutes.

## Usage

## Adding or Changing a Form

The `-F pathname` option is used to add a new form, *form-name*, to the LP print service, or to change the attributes of an existing form. The form description is taken from *pathname* if the `-F` option is given, or from the standard input if the `-` option is used. One of these two options must be used to define or change a form.

*pathname* is the path name of a file that contains all or any subset of the following information about the form.

Page length: *scaled-decimal-number1*  
 Page width: *scaled-decimal-number2*  
 Number of pages: *integer*  
 Line pitch: *scaled-decimal-number3*  
 Character pitch: *scaled-decimal-number4*  
 Character set choice: *character-set/print-wheel* [mandatory]  
 Ribbon color: *ribbon-color*  
 Comment:  
*comment*  
 Alignment pattern: [*content-type*]  
*content*

The term “scaled-decimal-number” refers to a non-negative number used to indicate a unit of size. The type of unit is shown by a “trailing” letter attached to the number. Three types of scaled decimal numbers can be used with the LP print service: numbers that show sizes in centimeters (marked with a trailing *c*); numbers that show sizes in inches (marked with a trailing *i*); and numbers that show sizes in units appropriate to use (without a trailing letter); lines, characters, lines per inch, or characters per inch.

Except for the last two lines, the above lines may appear in any order. The `Comment :` and *comment* items must appear in consecutive order but may appear before the other items, and the `Alignment pattern:` and the *content* items must appear in consecutive order at the end of the file. Also, the *comment* item may not contain a line that begins with any of the key phrases above, unless the key phrase is preceded with a `>` sign. Any leading `>` sign found in the *comment* will be removed when the comment is displayed. There is no case distinction among the key phrases.

When this command is issued, the form specified by *form-name* is added to the list of forms. If the form already exists, its description is changed to reflect the new information. Once added, a form is available for use in a print request, except where access to the form has been restricted, as described under the `-u` option. A form may also be allowed to be used on certain printers only.

A description of each form attribute is below:

|                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Page length and Page Width | Before printing the content of a print request needing this form, the generic interface program provided with the LP print service will initialize the physical printer to handle pages <i>scaled-decimal-number1</i> long, and |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

---

|                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                | <p><i>scaled-decimal-number2</i> wide using the printer type as a key into the <code>terminfo(4)</code> database. The page length and page width will also be passed, if possible, to each filter used in a request needing this form.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Number of pages                | <p>Each time the alignment pattern is printed, the LP print service will attempt to truncate the <i>content</i> to a single form by, if possible, passing to each filter the page subset of <i>1-integer</i>.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Line pitch and Character pitch | <p>Before printing the content of a print request needing this form, the interface program provided with the LP print service will initialize the physical printer to handle these pitches, using the printer type as a key into the <code>terminfo(4)</code> database. Also, the pitches will be passed, if possible, to each filter used in a request needing this form. <i>scaled-decimal-number3</i> is in lines-per-centimeter if a <i>c</i> is appended, and lines-per-inch otherwise; similarly, <i>scaled-decimal-number4</i> is in characters-per-centimeter if a <i>c</i> is appended, and characters-per-inch otherwise. The character pitch can also be given as <i>elite</i> (12 characters-per-inch), <i>pica</i> (10 characters-per-inch), or <i>compressed</i> (as many characters-per-inch as possible).</p> |
| Character set choice           | <p>When the LP print service alerts an administrator to mount this form, it will also mention that the print wheel <i>print-wheel</i> should be used on those printers that take print wheels. If printing with this form is to be done on a printer that has selectable or loadable character sets instead of print wheels, the interface programs provided with the LP print service will automatically select or load the correct character set. If <i>mandatory</i> is appended, a user is not allowed to select a different character set for use with the form; otherwise, the character set or print wheel named is a suggestion and a default only.</p>                                                                                                                                                               |
| Ribbon color                   | <p>When the LP print service alerts an administrator to mount this form, it will also mention that the color of the ribbon should be <i>ribbon-color</i>.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Comment                        | <p>The LP print service will display the <i>comment</i> unaltered when a user asks about this form (see <code>lpstat(1)</code>).</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |

## Alignment pattern

When mounting this form, an administrator can ask for the *content* to be printed repeatedly, as an aid in correctly positioning the preprinted form. The optional *content-type* defines the type of printer for which *content* had been generated. If *content-type* is not given, *simple* is assumed. Note that the *content* is stored as given, and will be readable only by the user `lp`.

When an existing form is changed with this command, items missing in the new information are left as they were. When a new form is added with this command, missing items will get the following defaults:

```
Page Length: 66
Page Width: 80
Number of Pages: 1
Line Pitch: 6
Character Pitch: 10
Character Set Choice: any
Ribbon Color: any
```

**Deleting a Form** LP print service" The `-x` option is used to delete the form *form-name* from the LP print service.

**Listing Form Attributes** The `-l` option is used to list the attributes of the existing form *form-name*. The attributes listed are those described under Adding and Changing a Form, above. Because of the potentially sensitive nature of the alignment pattern, only the administrator can examine the form with this command. Other people may use the `lpstat(1)` command to examine the non-sensitive part of the form description.

**Allowing and Denying Access to a Form** The `-u` option, followed by the argument `allow:login-ID-list` or `-u deny:login-ID-list` lets you determine which users will be allowed to specify a particular form with a print request. This option can be used with the `-F` or `-` option, each of which is described above under Adding or Changing a Form.

The *login-ID-list* argument may include any or all of the following constructs:

|                                      |                                        |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>login-ID</i>                      | A user on any system                   |
| <i>system_name!</i> <i>login-ID</i>  | A user on system <i>system_name</i>    |
| <i>system_name!</i> <code>all</code> | All users on system <i>system_name</i> |
| <code>all!<i>login-ID</i></code>     | A user on all systems                  |
| <code>all</code>                     | All users on all systems               |

The LP print service keeps two lists of users for each form: an "allow-list" of people allowed to use the form, and a "deny-list" of people that may not use the form. With the `-u allow` option,

the users listed are added to the allow-list and removed from the deny-list. With the `-u deny` option, the users listed are added to the deny-list and removed from the allow-list. (Both forms of the `-u` option can be run together with the `-F` or the `-` option.)

If the allow-list is not empty, only the users in the list are allowed access to the form, regardless of the content of the deny-list. If the allow-list is empty but the deny-list is not, the users in the deny-list may not use the form, (but all others may use it). All users can be denied access to a form by specifying `-f deny:all`. All users can be allowed access to a form by specifying `-f allow:all`. (This is the default.)

#### Setting an Alert to Mount a Form

The `-f form-name` option is used with the `-A alert-type` option to define an alert to mount the form when there are queued jobs which need it. If this option is not used to arrange alerting for a form, no alert will be sent for that form.

The method by which the alert is sent depends on the value of the *alert-type* argument specified with the `-A` option. The *alert-types* are:

|                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>mail</code>          | Send the alert message using the <code>mail</code> command to the administrator.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <code>write</code>         | Write the message, using the <code>write</code> command, to the terminal on which the administrator is logged in. If the administrator is logged in on several terminals, one is arbitrarily chosen.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <code>quiet</code>         | Do not send messages for the current condition. An administrator can use this option to temporarily stop receiving further messages about a known problem. Once the form <i>form-name</i> has been mounted and subsequently unmounted, messages will again be sent when the number of print requests reaches the threshold specified by the <code>-Q</code> option.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <code>showfault</code>     | Attempt to execute a form alert handler on each system that has a print job for that form in the queue. The fault handler is <code>/etc/lp/alerts/form</code> . It is invoked with three parameters: <i>form_name</i> , <i>date</i> , <i>file_name</i> . <i>file_name</i> is the name of a file containing the form alert message.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <code>none</code>          | Do not send messages until the <code>-A</code> option is given again with a different <i>alert-type</i> (other than <code>quiet</code> ).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <code>shell-command</code> | Run the <i>shell-command</i> each time the alert needs to be sent. The shell command should expect the message in standard input. If there are blank spaces embedded in the command, enclose the command in quotes. Note that the <code>mail</code> and <code>write</code> values for this option are equivalent to the values <code>mail login-ID</code> and <code>write login-ID</code> respectively, where <i>login-ID</i> is the current name for the administrator. This will be the login name of the person submitting this command unless he or she has used the <code>su</code> command to change to another login-ID. If the <code>su</code> command has been used to change the user ID, then the <i>user-name</i> for the new ID is used. |

`list` Display the type of the alert for the form on standard output. No change is made to the alert.

The message sent appears as follows:

```
The form form-name needs to be mounted
on the printer(s):printer (integer1 requests).
integer2 print requests await this form.
Use the ribbon-color ribbon.
Use the print-wheel print wheel, if appropriate.
```

The printers listed are those that the administrator has specified as candidates for this form. The number *integer1* listed next to each printer is the number of requests eligible for the printer. The number *integer2* shown after the list of printers is the total number of requests awaiting the form. It will be less than the sum of the other numbers if some requests can be handled by more than one printer. The *ribbon-color* and *print-wheel* are those specified in the form description. The last line in the message is always sent, even if none of the printers listed use print wheels, because the administrator may choose to mount the form on a printer that does use a print wheel.

Where any color ribbon or any print wheel can be used, the statements above will read:

```
Use any ribbon.
Use any print-wheel.
```

If *form-name* is any, the *alert-type* defined in this command applies to any form for which an alert has not yet been defined. If *form-name* is `all`, the *alert-type* defined in this command applies to all forms.

If the `-W minutes` option is not given, the default procedure is that only one message will be sent per need to mount the form. Not specifying the `-W` option is equivalent to specifying `-W` once or `-W 0`. If *minutes* is a number greater than 0, an alert will be sent at intervals specified by *minutes*.

If the `-Q requests` option is also given, the alert will be sent when a certain number (specified by the argument *requests*) of print requests that need the form are waiting. If the `-Q` option is not given, or the value of *requests* is 1 or any (which are both the default), a message is sent as soon as anyone submits a print request for the form when it is not mounted.

#### Listing the Current Alert

The `-f` option, followed by the `-A` option and the argument `list` is used to list the *alert-type* that has been defined for the specified form *form-name*. No change is made to the alert. If *form-name* is recognized by the LP print service, one of the following lines is sent to the standard output, depending on the type of alert for the form.

- When *requests* requests are queued: `alert withshell-command every minutes minutes`
- When *requests* requests are queued: `write to user-name every minutes minutes`



- When *requests* requests are queued: mail to *user-name* every *minutes* minutes
- No alert

The phrase every *minutes* minutes is replaced with once if *minutes* (*-Wminutes*) is 0.

- Terminating an Active Alert** The *-A quiet* option is used to stop messages for the current condition. An administrator can use this option to temporarily stop receiving further messages about a known problem. Once the form has been mounted and then unmounted, messages will again be sent when the number of print requests reaches the threshold *requests*.
- Removing an Alert Definition** No messages will be sent after the *-A none* option is used until the *-A* option is given again with a different *alert-type*. This can be used to permanently stop further messages from being sent as any existing alert definition for the form will be removed.
- Large File Behavior** See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of lpforms when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (  $2^{31}$  bytes).

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- non-zero An error occurred.

**Files** /etc/lp/alerts/form Fault handler for lpform.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWpsu         |

**See Also** [lp\(1\)](#), [lpstat\(1\)](#), [lpadmin\(1M\)](#), [terminfo\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#)

*System Administration Guide: Basic Administration*

**Name** lpget – get printing configuration

**Synopsis** lpget [-k *key*] [*destination...* | *list*]

**Description** The lpget utility reads printing configuration information from the configuration databases in \$HOME/.printers, /etc/printers.conf, printers.conf.byname, and printers.org\_dir printer. This information, called a *configuration report*, is displayed to the standard output. See [printers\(4\)](#) and [printers.conf\(4\)](#) for information about the printer configuration databases.

lpget displays a configuration report for all keys for the specified destination or destinations by default. Use the -k option to display a configuration report for specific keys. Use the list operand to display a configuration report for all configured destinations.

**Options** The following option is supported:

-k *key* Displays a configuration report for *key*. See [printers.conf\(4\)](#) for information about specifying *key*.

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

*destination* Displays a configuration report for *destination*. Destination can be either a printer or a class of printers. See [lpadmin\(1M\)](#). Specify *destination* using atomic or POSIX-style (*server:destination*) names. See [printers.conf\(4\)](#) for information regarding the naming conventions for atomic names and [standards\(5\)](#) for information concerning POSIX.

*list* Displays a configuration report for all configured destinations.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Displaying a Configuration Report for the bsdaddr Key

The following example displays a configuration report for the bsdaddr key for printer catalpa.

```
example% lpget -k bsdaddr catalpa
```

EXAMPLE 2 A Configuration Report for all Keys for all Configured Destinations

The following example displays a configuration report for all keys for all configured destinations.

```
example% lpget list
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

non-zero An error occurred.

**Files** /etc/printers.conf      System printer configuration database.  
 \$HOME/.printers            User-configurable printer database.  
 printers.conf.byname      NIS version of /etc/printers.conf.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE  | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| Availability    | SUNWpcu         |
| Stability Level | Stable          |

**See Also** [ldap\(1\)](#), [lp\(1\)](#), [lpc\(1B\)](#), [lpq\(1B\)](#), [lpr\(1B\)](#), [lpstat\(1\)](#), [lpadmin\(1M\)](#), [lpset\(1M\)](#), [printers\(4\)](#), [printers.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [standards\(5\)](#)

*System Administration Guide: Naming and Directory Services (DNS, NIS, and LDAP)*

**Notes** Be mindful of the following if the LDAP database is used as the name service. If the [ldapclient\(1M\)](#) server is a replica LDAP server, LDAP printer database updates may not appear immediately, as the replica server may not have been updated by the master server and can be out of sync. For example, a printer that you deleted by using [lpset\(1M\)](#) may still appear in the printer list you display with [lpget](#) until the replica is updated from the master. Replica servers vary as to how often they are updated from the master. Refer to the *System Administration Guide: Naming and Directory Services (DNS, NIS, and LDAP)* for more information on LDAP replication.

**Name** lpmove – move print requests

**Synopsis** lpmove [*request-ID*] *destination*

lpmove *source destination*

**Description** The lpmove command moves print requests queued by lp(1) or lpr(1B) between destinations.

The first form of lpmove moves specific print requests (*request-ID*) to a specific *destination*.

The second form of the lpmove command moves all print requests from one destination (*destination1*) to another (*destination2*). This form of lpmove also rejects new print requests for *destination1*.

lpmove moves individual requests or entire queues only within an instance of a print service, not between a local and a remote queues or local queues on different instances of a print service. Requests can only be moved if the print service or protocol supports it. The LP print server and IPP print protocol both support moving requests between queues. The BSD print protocol does not.

When moving requests, lpmove does not check the acceptance status of the destination to which the print requests are being moved (see accept(1M)). lpmove does not move requests that have options (for example, content type or requiring a special form) that cannot be handled by the new destination.

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

*request-ID* The specific print request to be moved. Specify *request-ID* as the identifier associated with a print request as reported by lpstat. See lpstat(1).

*destination* The name of the printer or class of printers (see lpadmin(1M)) to which lpmove moves a *specified* print request. Specify *destination* using atomic, URI-style (*scheme://endpoint*), POSIX-style (*server: destination*) syntax.

*source* The name of the destination from which lpmove moves *all* print requests. Specify *destination* using atomic, URI-style (*scheme://endpoint*), POSIX-style (*server: destination*) syntax.

See printers.conf(4) for information regarding the naming conventions for atomic names and standards(5) for information regarding POSIX.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

non-zero An error occurred.

|              |                    |                                       |
|--------------|--------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>Files</b> | /etc/printers.conf | System printer configuration database |
|              | \$HOME/.printers   | User-configurable printer database    |
|              | ou=printers        | LDAP version of /etc/printers.conf    |

---

printers.conf.byname NIS version of /etc/printers.conf

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWlp-cmds     |
| Interface Stability | Obsolete        |

**See Also** [lp\(1\)](#), [lpr\(1B\)](#), [lpstat\(1\)](#), [accept\(1M\)](#), [lpadmin\(1M\)](#), [lpsched\(1M\)](#), [printers.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [standards\(5\)](#)

*System Administration Guide: Solaris Printing*

**Notes** When IPP is in use, the user is prompted for a passphrase if the remote print service is configured to require authentication.

**Name** lpsched – start the LP print service

**Synopsis** lpsched [-f *num\_filters*] [-n *num\_notifiers*] [-p *fd\_limit*]  
[-r *reserved\_fds*]

**Description** The lpsched command starts or restarts the LP print service.

The lpshut command stops the LP print service. Printers that are restarted using lpsched reprint (in their entirety) print requests that were stopped by lpshut. See [lpshut\(1M\)](#).

It is recommended that you start and stop the LP print service using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). See NOTES.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- f *num\_filters* Specifies the number of concurrent slow filters that may be run on a print server. A default value of 1 is used if none is specified. Depending on server configuration, a value of 1 may cause printers to remain idle while there are jobs queued to them.
- n *num\_notifiers* Specifies the number of concurrent notification processes that can run on a print server. A default value of 1 is used when none is specified.
- p *fd\_limit* Specifies the file descriptor resource limit for the lpsched process. A default value of 4096 is used if none is specified. On extremely large and active print servers, it may be necessary to increase this value.
- r *reserved\_fds* Specifies the number of file descriptors that the scheduler reserves for internal communications under heavy load. A default value of 2 is used when none is specified. It should not be necessary to modify this value unless instructed to do so when troubleshooting problems under high load.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- non-zero An error occurred.

**Files** /var/spool/lp/\* LP print queue.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWpsu         |

**See Also** [lp\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [lpstat\(1\)](#), [lpadmin\(1M\)](#), [lpmove\(1M\)](#), [lpshut\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

*System Administration Guide: Basic Administration*

**Notes** The `lpsched` service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/application/print/server
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

**Name** lpset – set printing configuration in /etc/printers.conf or other supported databases

**Synopsis** lpset [-n system | fnsldap] [-x]  
 [ [-D binddn] [-w passwd] [-h ldaphost]]  
 [-a key=value] [-d key] destination

**Description** The lpset utility sets printing configuration information in the system configuration databases. Use lpset to create and update printing configuration in /etc/printers.conf. See [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#) and [printers.conf\(4\)](#).

Only a superuser or a member of Group 14 may execute lpset.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- n system|ldap      Create or update the configuration information for the *destination* entry in /etc/printers.conf or LDAP printer contexts. *system* specifies that the information is created or updated in /etc/printers.conf. *ldap* specifies that the information is written to an LDAP server. See [Notes](#).
  
- If -n is not specified, *system* is the default.
- x                    Remove all configuration for the *destination* entry from the database specified by the -n option.
  
- a key=value        Configure the specified *key=value* pair for the *destination*. See [printers.conf\(4\)](#) for information regarding the specification of *key=value* pairs.
  
- d key                Delete the configuration option specified by *key* for the *destination* entry. See [printers.conf\(4\)](#) for information regarding the specification of *key* and *key=value* pairs.
  
- D binddn            Use the distinguished name (DN) *binddn* to bind to the LDAP directory server.
  
- w passwd            Use *passwd* as the password for authentication to the LDAP directory server.
  
- h ldaphost         Specify an alternate host on which the LDAP server is running. This option is only used when *ldap* is specified as the naming service. If this option is not specified, the default is the current host system.

**Operands** The following operand is supported:

- destination*        Specifies the entry in /etc/printers.conf, *printers.org\_dir*, or LDAP, in which to create or modify information. *destination* names a printer of class of printers. See [lpadmin\(1M\)](#). Each entry in *printers.conf* describes one destination. Specify *destination* using atomic names. POSIX-style destination names are not acceptable. See [printers.conf\(4\)](#) for information regarding the naming conventions for atomic names and [standards\(5\)](#) for information



regarding POSIX.

**Examples** **EXAMPLE 1** Removing All Existing Printing Configuration Information

The following example removes all existing printing configuration information for destination dogs from `/etc/printers.conf`:

```
example% lpset -x dogs
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Setting a key=value Pair

The following example sets the user-equivalence=true *key=value* pair for destination tabloid in the NIS context:

```
example% lpset -n nis -a user-equivalence=true tabloid
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Setting a key=value Pair in LDAP

```
example% lpset -n ldap -h ldapl.xyz.com -D "cn=Directory Manager" \
-w passwd -a key1=value1 printer1
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.  
non-zero An error occurred.

**Files** `/etc/printers.conf` System configuration database.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE  | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| Availability    | SUNWpcu         |
| Stability Level | Stable          |

**See Also** [ldap\(1\)](#), [lp\(1\)](#), [lpc\(1B\)](#), [lpq\(1B\)](#), [lpr\(1B\)](#), [lpstat\(1\)](#), [ldapclient\(1M\)](#), [lpadmin\(1M\)](#), [lpget\(1M\)](#), [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#), [printers\(4\)](#), [printers.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [standards\(5\)](#)

*System Administration Guide: Naming and Directory Services (DNS, NIS, and LDAP)*

**Notes** If the `ldap` database is used, the printer administrator should be mindful of the following when updating printer information.

1. Because the domain information for the printer being updated is extracted from the [ldapclient\(1M\)](#) configuration, the LDAP server being updated must host the same domain that is used by the current [ldapclient\(1M\)](#) server.

2. If the LDAP server being updated is a replica LDAP server, the updates will be referred to the master LDAP server and completed there. The updates might be out of sync and not appear immediately, as the replica server may not have been updated by the master server. For example, a printer that you deleted by using `lpset` may still appear in the printer list you display with `lpget` until the replica is updated from the master. Replica servers vary as to how often they are updated from the master. See *System Administration Guide: Solaris Printing* for information on LDAP server replication.
3. Although users can use the LDAP command line utilities `ldapadd(1)` and `ldapmodify(1)` to update printer entries in the directory, the preferred method is to use `lpset`. Otherwise, if the `ldapadd` and `ldapmodify` utilities are used, the administrator must ensure that the `printer-name` attribute value is unique within the `ou=printers` container on the LDAP server. If the value is not unique, the result of modifications done using `lpset` or the Solaris Print Manager, `printmgr(1M)` may be unpredictable.

**Name** lpshut – stop the LP print service

**Synopsis** lpshut

**Description** The lpshut command stops the LP print service.

Printers that are printing when lpshut is invoked stop printing. Start or restart printers using [lpsched\(1M\)](#).

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

non-zero An error occurred.

**Files** /var/spool/lp/\* LP print queue.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWpsu         |

**See Also** [lp\(1\)](#), [lpstat\(1\)](#), [lpadmin\(1M\)](#), [lpmove\(1M\)](#), [lpsched\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

*System Administration Guide: Basic Administration*

**Name** lpsystem – register remote systems with the print service

**Description** The lpsystem command is obsolete, and could be removed at any time. The print system no longer uses the information generated by lpsystem. See [lpadmin\(1M\)](#), [lpusers\(1M\)](#) or [printers.conf\(4\)](#) for equivalent functionality.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE  | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| Availability    | SUNWpcu         |
| Stability Level | Obsolete*       |

\* This command could be removed at any time.

**See Also** [lpadmin\(1M\)](#), [lpusers\(1M\)](#), [printers.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** lpusers – set printing queue priorities

**Synopsis** `lpusers -d priority-level`  
`lpusers -q priority-level -u login-ID-list`  
`lpusers -u login-ID-list`  
`lpusers -q priority-level`  
`lpusers -l`

**Description** The `lpusers` command sets limits to the queue priority level that can be assigned to jobs submitted by users of the LP print service.

The first form of the command (with `-d`) sets the system-wide priority default to *priority-level*, where *priority-level* is a value of 0 to 39, with 0 being the highest priority. If a user does not specify a priority level with a print request (see `lp(1)`), the default priority level is used. Initially, the default priority level is 20.

The second form of the command (with `-q` and `-u`) sets the default highest *priority-level* (0-39) that the users in *login-ID-list* can request when submitting a print request. The *login-ID-list* argument may include any or all of the following constructs:

|                                      |                                         |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>login-ID</i>                      | A user on any system                    |
| <i>system_name</i> ! <i>login-ID</i> | A user on the system <i>system_name</i> |
| <i>system_name</i> !all              | All users on system <i>system_name</i>  |
| all! <i>login-ID</i>                 | A user on all systems                   |
| all                                  | All users on all systems                |

Users that have been given a limit cannot submit a print request with a higher priority level than the one assigned, nor can they change a request that has already been submitted to have a higher priority. Any print requests submitted with priority levels higher than allowed will be given the highest priority allowed.

The third form of the command (with `-u`) removes any explicit priority level for the specified users.

The fourth form of the command (with `-q`) sets the default highest priority level for all users not explicitly covered by the use of the second form of this command.

The last form of the command (with `-l`) lists the default priority level and the priority limits assigned to users.

**Options** The following options are supported:

`-d priority-level` Set the system-wide priority default to *priority-level*.

- l List the default priority level and the priority limits assigned to users.
- q *priority-level* Set the default highest priority level for all users not explicitly covered.
- q *priority-level* - u *login-ID-list* Set the default highest *priority-level* that the users in *login-ID-list* can request when submitting a print request.
- u *login-ID-list* Remove any explicit priority level for the specified users.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- non-zero An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWpsu         |

**See Also** [lp\(1\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** lu – FMLI-based interface to Live Upgrade functions

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/lu

**Description** Sun no longer recommends use of the `lu` command. The `lu` command displays a character user interface (CUI). The underlying command sequence for the CUI--typically `lucreate`, `luupgrade`, and `luactivate`--is straightforward to use. The SEE ALSO section below highlights the full Solaris Live Upgrade command set.

The `lu` program is part of a suite of commands that make up the Live Upgrade feature of the Solaris operating environment. See [live\\_upgrade\(5\)](#) for a description of the Live Upgrade feature.

The `lu` program is a Forms and Menu Language Interpreter-based user interface. (See [fmli\(1\)](#) for a description of the Forms and Menu Language Interpreter.) `lu` enables you to create and upgrade boot environments (BEs) and perform other administrative tasks on BEs. The `lu` program performs a subset of the functions provided by the Live Upgrade command-line utilities.

Users of `lu` should be aware of the following:

- `lu` is a deprecated interface. It will be replaced in the future and should not be depended on for critical functionality.
- All new Live Upgrade features are being implemented in the Live Upgrade command-line utilities. No new features are being made available in `lu`.
- The `lu` command is not internationalized. It will not be internationalized in a future release.

`lu` should be used for learning or experimenting only. For any production use or to use the full capabilities of Live Upgrade, use the Live Upgrade command-line utilities.

Invocation of the `lu` command requires root privileges.

The `lu` command accepts no arguments. After invoking `lu`, you receive a display with the following options:

- |          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Activate | Activate a boot environment. This option designates that the system boot from the specified BE upon next reboot. This option is equivalent to the command-line <a href="#">luactivate(1M)</a> utility.                                                                                |
| Cancel   | Cancel a copy job. Live Upgrade allows you to schedule the copy, upgrade, and flash functions (all described below) at a later time. The cancel function enables you to cancel a scheduled job. This function is equivalent to the command-line <a href="#">lucancel(1M)</a> utility. |
| Compare  | Compare the contents of BEs. Enables you to obtain a detailed comparison of two BEs. Equivalent to the command-line <a href="#">lucompare(1M)</a> utility.                                                                                                                            |

|                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Copy           | Start/schedule a copy. Copies the contents of one BE to another. Equivalent of the command-line <code>lumake(1M)</code> utility. At any time, you can have only one Live Upgrade operation scheduled.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Create         | Create a boot environment. Implements a subset of the functions performed by the command-line <code>lucreate(1M)</code> utility.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Current        | Display the name of the current boot environment. Equivalent of the command-line <code>lucurr(1M)</code> utility.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Delete         | Delete a boot environment. Equivalent of the command-line <code>ludelete(1M)</code> utility.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| List           | List the file systems of a boot environment. Equivalent of the command-line <code>lufslist(1M)</code> utility.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Rename         | Change the name of a boot environment. Equivalent of the command-line <code>lurename(1M)</code> utility.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Status         | List the status of all boot environments. Equivalent of the command-line <code>lustatus(1M)</code> utility.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Upgrade        | Upgrade a boot environment or upgrade the OS on an inactive BE. This option enables you to upgrade to a new operating system or install new packages or patches on a specified BE. Implements a subset of the functions performed by the command-line <code>luupgrade(1M)</code> utility. Note that if you are performing an upgrade that requires more than one CD, you must use the <code>-i</code> option of <code>luupgrade</code> .                                           |
| Flash          | Flash a boot environment. This option enables you to install an operating system on a BE from a flash archive. You can perform the same function with <code>luupgrade(1M)</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Help           | Displays help information. There are also context-specific help screens for many of the options.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Exit           | Exit <code>lu</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Navigation     | You navigate through <code>lu</code> 's various screens using arrow keys and function keys (usually F2 through F9 on the keyboard of a Sun desktop system). Available key functions are displayed at the base of the <code>lu</code> screen. You can use Ctrl-F, plus a number key, to duplicate a function key. For example, press Ctrl-F and the number key 2 to duplicate the F2 key.<br><br>In a screen for a given option, you can press Esc to obtain context-specific help. |
| Display Issues | When viewing the FMLI interface remotely, such as over a <code>tip</code> line, you might need to set the <code>TERM</code> environment variable to <code>VT220</code> . When using the FMLI interface in a CDE environment use <code>dtterm</code> , rather than <code>xterm</code> , as the value of the <code>TERM</code> variable.                                                                                                                                             |



The `lu` command supports only single-byte environments.

**Common Functions** Most of the options listed above offer the following functions. These functions are accessible through function keys indicated at the base of the screen.

**Choice** Available to you whenever you have a field that can be filled in. Pressing the Choice function key gives you a popup screen displaying a list of alternatives. For example, for options involving copying or upgrading BEs, you receive a list of available BEs. You can then use arrow and function keys to make a selection from this popup. The choice function is useful because it prevents you from selecting an invalid alternative. In our example, it prevents you from choosing a BE that is not available for a copy or upgrade operation. Such non-availability might occur when a BE is in the midst of an upgrade.

**Cancel** Cancel an operation.

**Save** Proceed with an operation.

**Other Functions** The “Create” option, described above, offers the following functions:

**Split** Split a file system. For example, you can split a `/` file system into `/`, `/usr`, and `/var`. To split a file system, you must have disk slices available on which to mount the separated file system(s). If you do not, `lu` invokes the [format\(1M\)](#) utility, in which you can use the `partition` option to create a new disk slice.

**Merge** Join one or more file systems with its (or their) parent file system. For example, using a source BE that has separate `/`, `/usr`, and `/var` file systems, you can merge these file systems under `/` on a target BE.

**Files** `/etc/lutab` list of BEs on the system

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWluu         |

**See Also** [luactivate\(1M\)](#), [lucancel\(1M\)](#), [lucompare\(1M\)](#), [lucreate\(1M\)](#), [lucurr\(1M\)](#), [ludelete\(1M\)](#), [ludesc\(1M\)](#), [lufslist\(1M\)](#), [lumake\(1M\)](#), [lumount\(1M\)](#), [lurenname\(1M\)](#), [lustatus\(1M\)](#), [luupgrade\(1M\)](#), [lutab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [live\\_upgrade\(5\)](#)

*Solaris Installation Guide*

**Warnings** The `lu` command is a deprecated interface. See DESCRIPTION.

**Name** luactivate – activate a boot environment

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/luactivate [-l *error\_log*] [-o *outfile*] [-s]  
[*BE\_name*] [-X]

**Description** The `luactivate` command is part of a suite of commands that make up the Live Upgrade feature of the Solaris operating environment. See [live\\_upgrade\(5\)](#) for a description of the Live Upgrade feature.

The `luactivate` command, with no arguments, displays the name of the boot environment (BE) that will be active upon the next reboot of the system. When an argument (a BE) is specified, `luactivate` activates the specified BE.

`luactivate` activates a BE by making the BE's root partition bootable. On an x86 machine, this might require that you take steps following the completion of `luactivate`. If so, `luactivate` displays the correct steps to take.

To successfully activate a BE, that BE must meet the following conditions:

- The BE must have a status of “complete,” as reported by [lustatus\(1M\)](#).
- If the BE is not the current BE, you cannot have mounted the partitions of that BE (using [lumount\(1M\)](#) or [mount\(1M\)](#)).
- The BE you want to activate cannot be involved in an [lucompare\(1M\)](#) operation.

After activating a specified BE, `luactivate` displays the steps to be taken for fallback in case of any problem on the next reboot. Make note of these instructions and follow them exactly, if necessary.

**Note** – Before booting a new BE, you must run `luactivate` to specify that BE as active. `luactivate` performs a number of tasks, described below, that ensure correct operation of the BE. In some cases, a BE is not bootable until after you have run the command.

The `luactivate` command performs the following tasks:

- The first time you boot from a newly created BE, Live Upgrade software synchronizes this BE with the BE that was last active. (This is not necessarily the BE that was the source for the newly created BE.) “Synchronize” here means that certain system files and directories are copied from the last-active BE to the BE being booted. (See [synclist\(4\)](#).) Live Upgrade software does not perform this synchronization after a BE's initial boot, unless you use the `-s` option, described below.
- If `luactivate` detects conflicts between files that are subject to synchronization, it issues a warning and does not perform the synchronization for those files. Activation can complete successfully, in spite of such a conflict. A conflict can occur if you upgrade one BE or another to a new operating system version or if you modify system files (for example, `/etc/passwd`) on one of the BEs.

- `luactivate` checks to see whether upgrade problems occurred. For example, packages required for the correct operation of the operating system might be missing. This package check is done for the global zone as well as all non-global zones inside of the BE. The command can issue a warning or, if a BE is incomplete, can refuse activation.
- `luactivate` determines whether the bootstrap program requires updating and takes steps to update if necessary. If a bootstrap program changed from one operating release to another, an incorrect bootstrap program might render an upgraded BE unbootable. See [installboot\(1M\)](#).
- `luactivate` modifies the root partition ID on a Solaris x86 disk to enable multiple BEs to reside on a single disk. In this configuration, if you do not run `luactivate`, booting of the BE will fail. See [fmthard\(1M\)](#) and [dkio\(7I\)](#).

The `luactivate` command requires root privileges.

**Options** The `luactivate` command has the following options:

- l *error\_log* Error and status messages are sent to *error\_log*, in addition to where they are sent in your current environment.
- o *outfile* All command output is sent to *outfile*, in addition to where it is sent in your current environment.
- s Causes synchronization to occur (see DESCRIPTION) even if next boot of a specified BE is not the first boot of that BE. Use this option with great caution, because you might not be aware or in control of changes that might have occurred in the last-active BE.

If using `-s`, take special care when booting to an earlier release of Solaris than what is installed on the last-active BE. For example, consider that the last-active BE contains Solaris 9 and you want to activate a BE that contains Solaris 2.6. If you forced synchronization with the `-s` option, the BE containing Solaris 2.6 might be synchronized with files that, while compatible with Solaris 9, might not work under Solaris 2.6.

- X Enable XML output. Characteristics of XML are defined in DTD, in `/usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/lu_cli.dtd.<num>`, where `<num>` is the version number of the DTD file.

**Operands** *BE\_name* Name of the BE to be activated.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.

**Files** /etc/lutab list of BEs on the system  
/usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/lu\_cli.dtd.<num> Live Upgrade DTD (see -X option)

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWluu         |

**See Also** [lucancel\(1M\)](#), [lucompare\(1M\)](#), [lucreate\(1M\)](#), [lucurr\(1M\)](#), [ludelete\(1M\)](#), [ludesc\(1M\)](#), [lufsls\(1M\)](#), [lumake\(1M\)](#), [lumount\(1M\)](#), [lurename\(1M\)](#), [lustatus\(1M\)](#), [luupgrade\(1M\)](#), [lutab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [live\\_upgrade\(5\)](#), [zones\(5\)](#)

**Name** lucancel – cancel a scheduled Live Upgrade copy/create procedure

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/lucancel [-l *error\_log*] [-o *outfile*] [-X]

**Description** The `lucancel` command is part of a suite of commands that make up the Live Upgrade feature of the Solaris operating environment. See [live\\_upgrade\(5\)](#) for a description of the Live Upgrade feature.

The `lucancel` command cancels a boot environment (BE) creation or upgrade that was scheduled in the FMLI-based interface, [lu\(1M\)](#), or the repopulation of a BE, scheduled with [lumake\(1M\)](#). Note that Sun recommends against the use of the `lu` command.

`lucancel` does not cancel a job that is active (that is, is in the process of creation or repopulation).

The `lucancel` command requires root privileges.

**Options** The `lucancel` command has the following options:

- l *error\_log* Error and status messages are sent to *error\_log*, in addition to where they are sent in your current environment.
- o *outfile* All command output is sent to *outfile*, in addition to where it is sent in your current environment.
- X Enable XML output. Characteristics of XML are defined in DTD, in `/usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/lu_cli.dtd.<num>`, where `<num>` is the version number of the DTD file.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.

**Files** `/etc/lutab` list of BEs on the system

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWluu         |

**See Also** [luactivate\(1M\)](#), [lucompare\(1M\)](#), [lucreate\(1M\)](#), [lucurr\(1M\)](#), [ludelete\(1M\)](#), [ludesc\(1M\)](#), [lufslis\(1M\)](#), [lumake\(1M\)](#), [lumount\(1M\)](#), [lurename\(1M\)](#), [lustatus\(1M\)](#), [luupgrade\(1M\)](#), [lutab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [live\\_upgrade\(5\)](#)

**Name** lucompare – compare boot environments

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/lucompare [-i *infile* | -t] [-o *outfile*] *BE\_name*  
[-X]  
  
/usr/sbin/lucompare [-C *file* [-o *outfile*]] [-X]

**Description** The lucompare command is part of a suite of commands that make up the Live Upgrade feature of the Solaris operating environment. See [live\\_upgrade\(5\)](#) for a description of the Live Upgrade feature.

The lucompare command compares the contents of the current boot environment (BE) with the contents of another BE. With the -C option, lucompare compares file statistics so that you can determine which files have changed on a BE since a specified time, such as the creation time of a BE. A specified BE must be inactive and in the complete state, as reported by the [lustatus\(1M\)](#) command. Also, a BE cannot have a copy job scheduled, which is also reported by [lustatus\(1M\)](#). A specified BE cannot have any partitions mounted with [lumount\(1M\)](#) or [mount\(1M\)](#).

For each file system defined for a specified BE, lucompare compares all files with the files with the same pathnames in the current BE. The files present in the active BE, but not in the specified BE, and vice-versa, are reported. You also have the option to specify a list of files to be compared.

If you specify the -C option, instead of doing an absolute comparison of the current BE with a target BE, lucompare compares the files in a specified BE with the list of files recorded in a file. When a BE is created, [lucreate\(1M\)](#) creates a file named :<*BE\_name*> in /etc/lu/compare. You can use the -C option to compare the files in a specified BE to this snapshot in /etc/lu/compare or you can compare the BE to a file previously created with the -o option. Comparing a BE to its own snapshot in /etc/lu/compare enables you to determine which files have changed on the BE since its creation.

By default, the output of lucompare is written to stdout. With the -C option, you must use the -o option to specify an output file. The output for lucompare is a list of files that differ in permissions, owner, group, or sum, along with the reason for difference. The output format is shown below:

```
> active BE
< BE_name
reason
> file_name:owner:group:number_of_links:mode:type: size
or major_minor number:checksum
< file_name:owner:group:number_of_links:mode:type: size
or major_minor number:checksum
```

The above fields are obtained from the [stat\(2\)](#) structure of the file.

The *type* field can be one of the following:

SYMLINK     symbolic link

|        |                   |
|--------|-------------------|
| FIFO   | FIFO file         |
| CHRSPC | character special |
| BLKSPC | block special     |
| DIR    | directory         |
| REGFIL | regular file      |
| UNKNOW | unknown file type |

lucompare computes checksums only if the file on the specified BE matches its counterpart on the active BE in all of the fields described above. If the checksums differ, lucompare appends the differing checksums to the entries for the compared files.

The lucompare command requires root privileges.

**Options** The lucompare command has the following options:

|                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>-C <i>file</i></b>    | Compare file statistics of BE with those recorded in <i>file</i> . <i>file</i> can be the snapshot created at BE creation time, /etc/lu/compare/<BE_name>, or a file previously created with the -o option. You must use the -o option with this option. |
| <b>-i <i>infile</i></b>  | Compare files listed in <i>infile</i> . The files to be compared should be an absolute filename. If the entry in the file is a directory, then comparison is recursive with respect to the directory. Mutually exclusive of -t.                          |
| <b>-o <i>outfile</i></b> | Send output of differences to <i>outfile</i> . You must use this option if you use -C.                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <b>-t</b>                | Compare only nonbinary files. This is achieved by performing a <a href="#">file(1)</a> command on each file in the tree walk and only comparing text files. Mutually exclusive of -i.                                                                    |
| <b>-X</b>                | Enable XML output. Characteristics of XML are defined in DTD, in /usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/lu_cli.dtd.<num>, where <num> is the version number of the DTD file.                                                                                             |

**Operands** *BE\_name* Name of the BE to which the active BE will be compared. You cannot specify a BE that is involved in another Live Upgrade operation, or specify a BE for which you have mounted partitions (using [lumount\(1M\)](#) or [mount\(1M\)](#)).

**Examples** **EXAMPLE 1** Checking Differences Since BE Creation

The following command lists the differences in the BE s8u5 between its creation time and the present.

```
lucompare -C /etc/lu/compare/:s8u5 -o /var/tmp/compare.out s8u5
```

**EXAMPLE 1** Checking Differences Since BE Creation *(Continued)*

Note that `/etc/lu/compare/s8u5` is the file created by `lucreate` upon creation of a BE. The list of differences is sent to `/var/tmp/compare.out`.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

**Files** `/etc/lutab` list of BEs on the system  
`/usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/lu_cli.dtd.<num>` Live Upgrade DTD (see `-X` option)

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWluu         |

**See Also** [luactivate\(1M\)](#), [lucancel\(1M\)](#), [lucreate\(1M\)](#), [lucurr\(1M\)](#), [ludelete\(1M\)](#), [ludesc\(1M\)](#), [lufslst\(1M\)](#), [lumake\(1M\)](#), [lumount\(1M\)](#), [lurename\(1M\)](#), [lustatus\(1M\)](#), [luupgrade\(1M\)](#), [lutab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [live\\_upgrade\(5\)](#)

**Notes** The `lucompare` command makes no attempt to reconcile any differences it detects between BEs.



**Name** lucreate – create a new boot environment

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/lucreate [-A *BE\_description*] [-c *BE\_name*]  
 [-C ( *boot\_device* | - )] -n *BE\_name*  
 [-f *exclude\_list\_file*] [-I] [-\ error\_log]  
 [-o *outfile*] [-s ( - | *source\_BE\_name* )]  
 [ [-M *slice\_list\_file* [-M] . . . ]  
 [-m *mount\_point:device* [ , *volume* ] :*fs\_options*[:*zonename*] [-m . . . ] ] |  
 [-p *zfs\_root\_pool*]  
 [-x *exclude* [-x] . . . ] [-X] [-y *include* [-y] . . . ]  
 [-Y *include\_list\_file*] [-z *filter\_list*]

**Description** The `lucreate` command is part of a suite of commands that make up the Live Upgrade feature of the Solaris operating environment. See [live\\_upgrade\(5\)](#) for a description of the Live Upgrade feature and its associated terminology.

The `lucreate` command offers a set of command line options that enable you to perform the following functions:

- Create a new boot environment (BE), based on the current BE.
- Create a new BE, based on a BE other than the current BE.
- Join or separate the file systems of a BE onto a new BE. For example, join `/var` and `/opt` under `/`, or separate these directories to be mounted under different disk slices.
- Specify separate file systems belonging to a particular zone inside of the new BE. (See [zones\(5\)](#).)
- Create the file systems for a BE, but leave those file systems unpopulated.

If `lucreate` is invoked without the `-m`, `-M`, or `-p` options (described below), it brings up an FMLI-based interface that provides curses-based screens for Live Upgrade administration. Note that the FMLI-based interface does not support all of the Live Upgrade features supported by the command-line version of `lucreate`. Also, Sun is not committed to ongoing development of the FMLI-based interface.

With the `-p` option, `lucreate` supports the creation of BEs on ZFS file systems. The source BE can be a UFS root file system on a disk slice or a ZFS file system in an existing ZFS storage pool. `lucreate` provides a convenient means of migrating a BE from a UFS root file system to a ZFS root file system. You cannot create a BE on a UFS file system from a source BE on a ZFS file system.

The creation of a BE includes selecting the disk or device slices for all the mount points of the BE. Slices can be physical disks or logical devices, such as Solaris Volume Manager volumes. You can also change the mount points of the BE using the SPLIT and MERGE functions of the FMLI-based configuration screen.

Upon successful creation of a BE, you can use [lustatus\(1M\)](#) to view the state of that BE and [lufsList\(1M\)](#) to view the BE's file systems. You can use [luupgrade\(1M\)](#) to upgrade the OS on that BE and [luactivate\(1M\)](#) to make a BE active, that is, designate it as the BE to boot from at the next reboot of the system.

**Note** – Before booting a new BE, you must run `luactivate` to specify that BE as active. `luactivate` performs a number of tasks that ensure correct operation of the BE. In some cases, a BE is not bootable until after you have run the command. See [luactivate\(1M\)](#) for a list of the operations performed by that command.

The `lucreate` command makes a distinction between the file systems that contain the OS—/, /usr, /var, and /opt—and those that do not, such as /export, /home, and other, user-defined file systems. The file systems in the first category cannot be shared between the source BE and the BE being created; they are always copied from the source BE to the target BE. By contrast, the user-defined file systems are shared by default. For Live Upgrade purposes, the file systems that contain the OS are referred to as non-shareable (or *critical*) file systems; other file systems are referred to as shareable. A non-shareable file system listed in the source BE's `vfstab` is copied to a new BE. For a shareable file system, if you specify a destination slice, the file system is copied. If you do not, the file system is shared.

When migrating from a UFS-based BE to a ZFS-based BE, you cannot migrate shared UFS file systems to ZFS. Also, when the source and destination BEs are both ZFS-based, you cannot copy shared file systems. Such file systems can only be shared.

The `lucreate` command copies all non-global zones from the current BE to the BE being created. For non-global zones residing in a non-shared file system, the new BE gets a copy of the zone in its non-shared file system. For non-global zones residing in a shared file system, `lucreate` makes a copy of the zone for the new BE in that shared file system and uses a different `zonepath` (see [zoneadm\(1M\)](#)) for the zone. The `zonepath` used is of the form `zonepath-newBE`. This prevents BEs from sharing the same non-global zone in the shared file system. When the new BE gets booted, the zone in the shared file system belonging to the new BE has its `zonepath` renamed to `zonepath` and the zone in the shared file system belonging to the original BE has its `zonepath` renamed to `zonepath-origBE`.

If a zone exists in a non-shared file system, the zone is automatically copied when the UFS root file system is migrated to a ZFS root file system. If a zone exists in a shared UFS file system, to migrate to a ZFS root file system, you must first upgrade the zone, as in previous Solaris releases. A zone in a non-shared file system within a ZFS BE is cloned when upgrading to a ZFS BE within the same ZFS pool.

The `lucreate` command supports a limited subset of Solaris Volume Manager functions. In particular, using `lucreate` with the `-m` option, you can:

- Create a mirror.
- Detach existing SVM concatenations from mirrors. Similarly, you can attach existing Solaris Volume Manager concatenations to mirrors. These can be mirrors that were created in Solaris Volume Manager or those created by `lucreate`.

- Create a single-slice concatenation and attach a single disk slice to it.
- Detach a single disk slice from a single-slice concatenation.
- Attach multiple single-slice concatenations to a mirror. `lucreate` can attach as many of these concatenations as are allowed by Solaris Volume Manager.

`lucreate` does not allow you to attach multiple disk slices or multiple storage devices to a concatenation. Similarly, it does not allow you to detach multiple slices or devices from a concatenation.

If you use Solaris Volume Manager volumes for boot environments, it is recommended that you use `lucreate` rather than Solaris Volume Manager commands to manipulate these volumes. The Solaris Volume Manager software has no knowledge of boot environments, whereas the `lucreate` command contains checks that prevent you from inadvertently destroying a boot environment by, for example, overwriting or deleting a Solaris Volume Manager volume.

If you have already used Solaris Volume Manager software to create complex Solaris Volume Manager volumes (for example, RAID-5 volumes), Live Upgrade will support the use of these. However, to create and manipulate these complex objects, you must use Solaris Volume Manager software. As described above, the use of Solaris Volume Manager software, rather than the `lucreate` command, entails the risk of destroying a boot environment. If you do use Solaris Volume Manager software, use `lufslist(1M)` to determine which devices are in use for boot environments.

Except for a special use of the `-s` option, described below, you must have a source BE for the creation of a new BE. By default, it is the current BE. You can use the `-s` option to specify a BE other than the current BE.

When creating a new BE on a UFS file system, `lucreate` enables you to exclude and include certain files from the source BE. You perform this inclusion or exclusion with the `-f`, `-x`, `-y`, `-Y`, and `-z` options, described below. See the subsection on combining these options, following **OPTIONS**, below.

By default, all swap partitions on a UFS-based source BE are shared with a UFS-based target BE. For UFS-based target BEs, you can use the `-m` option (see below) to specify an additional or new set of swap partitions on the source BE for sharing with the target. When a UFS-based source BE is copied to a ZFS target BE, `lucreate` creates in the new BE a swap area and a dump device on separate ZFS volumes. When both the source and target BEs are ZFS-based and are in the same pool, both BEs use the same swap volume. If source and target are in different pools, a new swap volume is created in the pool of the target BE.

The `lucreate` command allows you to assign a description to a BE. A description is an optional attribute of a BE that can be of any format or length. It might be, for example, a text string or binary data. After you create a BE, you can change a BE description with the `ludesc(1M)` utility.

The `lucreate` command requires root privileges or that you assume the Primary Administrator role.

**Options** The `lucreate` command has the options listed below. Note that a BE name must not exceed 30 characters in length and must consist only of alphanumeric characters and other ASCII characters that are not special to the Unix shell. See the “Quoting” section of [sh\(1\)](#). The BE name can contain only single-byte, 8-bit characters; it cannot contain whitespace characters.

Omission of `-m`, `-M`, and `-p` options (described below) in an `lucreate` command line invokes the FMLI-based interface, which allows you to select disk or device slices for a UFS-based BE.

**-A *BE\_description***

Assigns the *BE\_description* to a BE. *BE\_description* can be a text string or other characters that can be entered on a Unix command line. See [ludesc\(1M\)](#) for additional information on BE descriptions.

**-c *BE\_name***

Assigns the name *BE\_name* to the current BE. This option is not required and can be used only when the first BE is created. For the first time you run `lucreate`, for a UFS-based BE, if you omit `-c`, `lucreate` supplies a default name according to the following rules:

1. If the physical boot device can be determined, the base name of that device is used to name the new boot environment. For example, if the physical boot device is `/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s0`, `lucreate` names the new boot environment `c0t0d0s0`.
2. If the physical boot device cannot be determined, the operating system name (from `uname -s`) and operating system release level (from `uname -r`) are combined to produce the name of the new boot environment. For example, if `uname -s` returns `SunOS` and `uname -r` returns `5.9`, then `lucreate` assigns the name `SunOS5.9` to the new boot environment.
3. If `lucreate` can determine neither boot device nor operating system name, it assigns the name `current` to the new boot environment.

For a ZFS-based BE, the default BE name is the base name of the root file system.

If you use the `-c` option after the first boot environment is created, the option is ignored if the name specified is the same as the current boot environment name. If the name is different, `lucreate` displays an error message and exits.

**-C (*boot\_device* | -)**

Provided for occasions when `lucreate` cannot figure out which physical storage device is your boot device. This might occur, for example, when you have a mirrored root device on the source BE on an x86 machine. The `-C` specifies the physical boot device from which the source BE is booted. Without this option, `lucreate` attempts to determine the physical device from which a BE boots. If the device on which the root file system is located is not a physical disk (for example, if `root` is on a Solaris Volume Manager volume) and `lucreate` is able to make a reasonable guess as to the physical device, you receive the query:

Is the physical device *devname* the boot device for the logical device *devname*?

If you respond *y*, the command proceeds.

If you specify `-C boot_device`, `lucreate` skips the search for a physical device and uses the device you specify. The `-` (hyphen) with the `-C` option tells `lucreate` to proceed with whatever it determines is the boot device. If the command cannot find the device, you are prompted to enter it.

If you omit `-C` or specify `-C boot_device` and `lucreate` cannot find a boot device, you receive an error message.

Use of the `-C -` form is a safe choice, because `lucreate` either finds the correct boot device or gives you the opportunity to specify that device in response to a subsequent query.

`-f exclude_list_file`

Use the contents of *exclude\_list\_file* to exclude specific files (including directories) from the newly created BE. *exclude\_list\_file* contains a list of files and directories, one per line. If a line item is a file, only that file is excluded; if a directory, that directory and all files beneath that directory, including subdirectories, are excluded.

This option is not supported when the source BE is on a ZFS file system.

`-I`

Ignore integrity check. Prior to creating a new BE, `lucreate` performs an integrity check, to prevent you from excluding important system files from the BE. Use this option to override this integrity check. The trade-off in use of this option is faster BE creation (with `-I`) versus the risk of a BE that does not function as you expect.

`-l error_log`

Error messages and other status messages are sent to *error\_log*, in addition to where they are sent in your current environment.

`-m mount_point:device[,volume]:fs_option[:zonename]`

`[-m mount_point:device:fs_option[:zonename]] ...`

Specifies the `vfstab(4)` information for a new UFS-based BE. The file systems specified as arguments to `-m` can be on the same disk or can be spread across multiple disks.

The `-m` option is not supported for BEs based on ZFS file systems. This option also does not support EFI-labeled disks.

*mount\_point* can be any valid mount point or `-` (hyphen), indicating a swap partition. The *device* field can be one of the following:

- The name of a disk slice, of the form `/dev/dsk/cnumtnumdnumsnnum`.
- The name of a Solaris Volume Manager volume, of the form `/dev/md/dsk/dnum`.
- The name of a Solaris Volume Manager disk set, of the form `/dev/md/setname/dsk/dnum`.

- The name of a Veritas volume, of the form `/dev/vx/dsk/dgname/volname`.
- The keyword `merged`, indicating that the file system at the specified mount point is to be merged with its parent.
- The keyword `shared`, indicating that all of the swap partitions in the source BE are to be shared with the new BE.

The `-m` option enables you to attach a physical disk device to a Solaris Volume Manager single-slice concatenation or attach a Solaris Volume Manager volume to a mirror. Both operations are accomplished with the `attach` keyword, described below. With this option, you have the choice of specifying a concatenation or mirror or allowing `lucreate` to select one for you. To specify a concatenation or mirror, append a comma and the name of the Solaris Volume Manager logical device to the device name to which the logical device is being attached. If you omit this specification, `lucreate` selects a concatenation or mirror from a list of free devices. See EXAMPLES.

The `fs_option` field can be one or more of the keywords listed below. The first two keywords specify types of file systems. The remaining keywords specify actions to be taken on a file system. When you specify multiple keywords, separate these with a comma.

|                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>ufs</code>      | Create the file system as a UFS volume.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <code>vx</code>       | Create the file system as a Veritas volume.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <code>preserve</code> | Preserve the file system contents of the specified physical storage device. Use of this keyword presumes that the device's file system and its contents are appropriate for the specified mount point. For a given mount point, you can use <code>preserve</code> with only one device. This keyword enables you to bypass the default steps of creating a new file system on the specified storage device, then copying the file system contents from the source BE to the specified device. When you use <code>preserve</code> , <code>lucreate</code> checks that the storage device's contents is suitable for a specified file system. This check is limited and cannot guarantee suitability. |
| <code>mirror</code>   | Create a mirror on the specified storage device. The specified storage device must be a correctly named (for example, <code>/dev/md/dsk/d10</code> ) logical device that can serve as a mirror. In subsequent <code>-m</code> options, you must specify <code>attach</code> (see below) to attach at least one physical device to the new mirror.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <code>attach</code>   | Attach a physical storage device, contained by a volume, to the mirror or single-slice concatenation associated with a specified mount point. When using <code>attach</code> , if you want to attach a disk to a specific mirror or concatenation, you append a comma and the name of that logical device to the device name. If you omit the comma and the concatenation name, <code>lucreate</code> selects a free mirror or single-slice concatenation as the container volume for the storage device. See EXAMPLES.                                                                                                                                                                             |

lucreate allows you to create only concatenations that contain a single physical drive and allows you to attach up to four such concatenations to a mirror.

**detach** Detach a physical storage device from the mirror or concatenation associated with a specified mount point.

The optional *zonename* field specifies the name of an installed non-global zone. It is used to specify a separate file system that belongs to the particular zone, named *zonename*, that exists in the new BE being created.

At minimum, you must specify one disk or device slice, for root. You can do this with *-m*, *-M* (described below), or in the FMLI-based interface. You must specify an *-m* argument for each file system you want to create on a new BE. For example, if you have three file systems on a source BE (say, */*, */usr*, and */var*) and want these three entities as separate file systems on a new BE, you must specify three *-m* arguments. If you were to specify only one, in our example, */*, */usr*, and */var* would be merged on the new BE into a single file system, under */*.

When using the *-m* option to specify swap partition(s), you can designate device(s) currently used for swap on any BE and any unused devices. Regarding swap assignments, you have the following choices:

- Omit any specification of swap devices, in which case all swap devices associated with the source BE will be used by the new BE.
- Specify one or more swap devices, in which case the new BE will use only the specified swap devices and not automatically share the swap devices associated with the source BE.
- Specify one or more swap devices and use the syntax *-m - : shared : swap*, in which case the new BE will use the specified swap devices and will share swap devices with the source BE.

See EXAMPLES, below.

#### *-M slice\_list*

List of *-m* options, collected in the file *slice\_list*. Specify these arguments in the format specified for *-m*. Comment lines, beginning with a hash mark (*#*), are ignored. The *-M* option is useful where you have a long list of file systems for a BE. Note that you can combine *-m* and *-M* options. For example, you can store swap partitions in *slice\_list* and specify */* and */usr* slices with *-m*.

The *-M* option is not supported for BEs based on ZFS file systems.

The *-m* and *-M* options support the listing of multiple slices for a given mount point. In processing these slices, *lucreate* skips any unavailable slices and selects the first available slice. See EXAMPLES.

-n *BE\_name*

The name of the BE to be created. *BE\_name* must be unique on a given system.

-o *outfile*

All command output is sent to *outfile*, in addition to where it is sent in your current environment.

-p *zfs\_root\_pool*

Specifies the ZFS pool in which a new BE will reside.

This option can be omitted if the source and target BEs are within the same pool.

The -p option does not support the splitting and merging of file systems in a target BE that is supported by the -m option.

-s (- | *BE\_name*)

Source for the creation of the new BE. This option enables you to use a BE other than the current BE as the source for creation of a new BE.

If you specify a hyphen (-) as an argument to -s, `lucrate` creates the new BE, but does not populate it. This variation of the -s option is intended for the subsequent installation of a flash archive on the unpopulated BE using `luupgrade(1M)`. See `flar(1M)`.

-x *exclude*

Exclude the file or directory *exclude* from the newly created BE. If *exclude* is a directory, `lucrate` excludes that directory and all files beneath that directory, including subdirectories.

This option is not supported when the source BE is on a ZFS file system.

-X

Enable XML output. Characteristics of XML are defined in DTD, in `/usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/lu_cli.dtd.<num>`, where `<num>` is the version number of the DTD file.

-y *include*

Include the file or directory *include* in the newly created BE. If *include* is a directory, `lucrate` includes that directory and all files beneath that directory, including subdirectories.

This option is not supported when the source BE is on a ZFS file system.

-Y *include\_list\_file*

Use the contents of *include\_list\_file* to include specific files (including directories) from the newly created BE. *include\_list\_file* contains a list of files and directories, one per line. If a line item is a file, only that file is included; if a directory, that directory and all files beneath that directory, including subdirectories, are included.

This option is not supported when the source BE is on a ZFS file system.



`-z filter_list_file`

`filter_list_file` contains a list of items, files and directories, one per line. Each item is preceded by either a +, indicating the item is to be included in the new BE, or -, indicating the item is to be excluded from the new BE.

This option is not supported when the source BE is on a ZFS file system.

#### Combining File Inclusion and Exclusion Options

When a source BE is on a UFS file system, the `lucreate` command allows you to include or exclude specific files and directories when creating a new BE. You can include files and directories with:

- the `-y include` option
- the `-Y include_list_file` option
- items with a leading + in the file used with the `-z filter_list` option

You can exclude files and directories with:

- the `-x exclude` option
- the `-f exclude_list_file` option
- items with a leading - in the file used with the `-z filter_list` option

If the parent directory of an excluded item is included with include options (for example, `-y include`), then only the specific file or directory specified by `exclude` is excluded. Conversely, if the parent directory of an included file is specified for exclusion, then only the file `include` is included. For example, if you specify:

```
-x /a -y /a/b
```

all of /a except for /a/b is excluded. If you specify:

```
-y /a -x /a/b
```

all of /a except for /a/b is included.

**Examples** The `lucreate` command produces copious output. In the following examples, this output is not reproduced, except where it is needed for clarity.

#### EXAMPLE 1 Creating a New Boot Environment for the First Time

The following command sequence creates a new boot environment on a machine on which a BE has never been created. All non-shareable (critical) file systems are mounted under `/`.

```
lucreate -c first_disk -m /:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s0:ufs -n second_disk
many lines of output
lucreate: Creation of Boot Environment <second_disk> successful.
```

The following command, like the preceding, creates a new boot environment on a machine on which a BE has never been created. However, the following command differs in two respects: the `-c` option is omitted and the `/usr` file system is mounted on its own disk slice, separate from `/`.

**EXAMPLE 1** Creating a New Boot Environment for the First Time *(Continued)*

```
lucreate -m /:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s0:ufs -m /usr:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s1:ufs \
-n second_disk
lucreate: Please wait while your system configuration is determined.
many lines of output
lucreate: Creation of Boot Environment c0t4d0s0 successful.
```

In the absence of the `-c` option, `lucreate` assigns the name `c0t4d0s0`, the base name of the root device, to the new boot environment.

The same command is entered, with the addition of `-c`:

```
lucreate -c first_disk -m /:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s0:ufs \
-m /usr:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s1:ufs -n second_disk
many lines of output
lucreate: Creation of Boot Environment <second_disk> successful.
```

Following creation of a BE, you use [luupgrade\(1M\)](#) to upgrade the OS on the new BE and [luactivate\(1M\)](#) to make that BE the BE you will boot from upon the next reboot of your machine. Note that the swap partition and all shareable file systems for `first_disk` will be available to (shared with) `second_disk`.

```
luupgrade -u -n second_disk \
-s /net/installmachine/export/solarisX/OS_image
many lines of output
luupgrade: Upgrade of Boot Environment <second_disk> successful.

luactivate second_disk
```

See [luupgrade\(1M\)](#) and [luactivate\(1M\)](#) for descriptions of those commands.

**EXAMPLE 2** Creating a BE Using a Source Other than the Current BE

The following command uses the `-s` option to specify a source BE other than the current BE.

```
lucreate -s third_disk -m /:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s0:ufs \
-m /usr:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s1:ufs -n second_disk
many lines of output
lucreate: Creation of Boot Environment <second_disk> successful.
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Migrating a BE from a UFS Root File System to a ZFS Root File System

The following command creates a BE of a ZFS root file system from a UFS root file system. The current BE, `c1t0d0s0`, containing a UFS root file system, is identified by the `-c` option. The new BE, `zfsBE`, is identified by the `-n` option. A ZFS storage pool must exist before the `lucreate` operation and must be created with slices rather than whole disks to be upgradeable and bootable.

**EXAMPLE 3** Migrating a BE from a UFS Root File System to a ZFS Root File System (Continued)

```
zpool create rpool mirror c1t0d0s0 c2t0d0s0
lucreate -c c1t0d0s0 -n zfsBE -p rpool
```

Note that if the current BE also resides on the ZFS pool `rpool`, the `-p` option could be omitted. For example:

```
lucreate -n zfsBE
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Creating a BE from a Flash Archive

Performing this task involves use of `lucreate` with the `-s` option and `luupgrade`.

```
lucreate -s - -m /:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s0:ufs -m /usr:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s1:ufs \
-n second_disk
brief messages
lucreate: Creation of Boot Environment <second_disk> successful.
```

With the `-s` option, the `lucreate` command completes its work within seconds. At this point, you can use `luupgrade` to install the flash archive:

```
luupgrade -f -n second_disk \
-s /net/installmachine/export/solarisX/OS_image \
-J "archive_location http://example.com/myflash.flar"
```

See [luupgrade\(1M\)](#) for a description of that command.

**EXAMPLE 5** Sharing and Adding Swap Partitions

In the simplest case, if you do not specify any swap partitions in an `lucreate` command, all swap partitions in the source BE are shared with the new BE. For example, assume that the current BE uses `/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s7` as its swap partition. You enter the command:

```
lucreate -n second_disk -m /:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s0:ufs
many lines of output
lucreate: Creation of Boot Environment <second_disk> successful.
```

Upon conclusion of the preceding command, the partition `/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s7` will be used by the BE `second_disk` when that BE is activated and booted.

If you want a new BE to use a different swap partition from that used by the source BE, enter one or more `-m` options to specify a new partition or new partitions. Assume, once again, that the current BE uses `/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s7` as its swap partition. You enter the command:

```
lucreate -m /:/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s0:ufs -m -:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s1:swap \
-m -:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s2:swap -n second_disk
many lines of output
lucreate: Creation of Boot Environment <second_disk> successful.
```

**EXAMPLE 5** Sharing and Adding Swap Partitions (Continued)

Upon activation and boot, the new BE `second_disk` will use `/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s1` and `/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s2` and will not use `/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s7`, the swap partition used by the source BE.

Assume you want the new BE `second_disk` to share the source BE's swap partition *and* have an additional swap partition. You enter:

```
lucreate -m /:/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s0:ufs -m -:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s1:swap \
-m -:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s2:swap -n second_disk
many lines of output
lucreate: Creation of Boot Environment <second_disk> successful.
```

Upon activation and boot, the new BE `second_disk` will use for swapping `/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s7`, shared with the source BE, and, in addition, `/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s1`.

**EXAMPLE 6** Using Swap Partitions on Multiple Disks

The command below creates a BE on a second disk and specifies swap partitions on both the first and second disks.

```
lucreate -m /:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s0:ufs -m -:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s1:swap \
-m -:/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s1:swap -n second_disk
many lines of output
lucreate: Creation of Boot Environment <second_disk> successful.
```

Following completion of the preceding command, the BE `second_disk` will use both `/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s1` and `/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s1` as swap partitions. These swap assignments take effect only after booting from `second_disk`. If you have a long list of swap partitions, it is useful to use the `-M` option, as shown below.

**EXAMPLE 7** Using a Combination of `-m` and `-M` Options

In this example, a list of swap partitions is collected in the file `/etc/lu/swapslices`. The location and name of this file is user-defined. The contents of `/etc/lu/swapslices`:

```
-:/dev/dsk/c0t3d0s2:swap
-:/dev/dsk/c0t3d0s2:swap
-:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s2:swap
-:/dev/dsk/c0t5d0s2:swap
-:/dev/dsk/c1t3d0s2:swap
-:/dev/dsk/c1t4d0s2:swap
-:/dev/dsk/c1t5d0s2:swap
```

This file is specified in the following command:

**EXAMPLE 7** Using a Combination of `-m` and `-M` Options (Continued)

```
lucreate -m /:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s0:ufs -m /usr:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s1:ufs \
-M /etc/lu/swapslices -n second_disk
many lines of output
lucreate: Creation of Boot Environment <second_disk> successful.
```

The BE `second_disk` will swap onto the partitions specified in `/etc/lu/swapslices`.

**EXAMPLE 8** Copying Versus Sharing

The following command copies the user file system `/home` (in addition to the non-shareable file systems `/` and `/usr`) from the current BE to the new BE:

```
lucreate -m /:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s0:ufs -m /usr:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s1:ufs \
-m /home:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s4:ufs -n second_disk
```

The following command differs from the preceding in that the `-m` option specifying a destination for `/home` is omitted. The result of this is that `/home` will be shared between the current BE and the BE `second_disk`.

```
lucreate -m /:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s0:ufs -m /usr:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s1:ufs \
-n second_disk
```

**EXAMPLE 9** Using Solaris Volume Manager Volumes

The command shown below does the following:

1. Creates the mirror `d10` and establishes this mirror as the receptacle for the root file system.
2. Attaches `c0t0d0s0` and `c0t1d0s0` to single-slice concatenations `d1` and `d2`, respectively. Note that the specification of these volumes is optional.
3. Attaches the concatenations associated with `c0t0d0s0` and `c0t1d0s0` to mirror `d10`.
4. Copies the current BE's root file system to mirror `d10`, overwriting any `d10` contents.

```
lucreate -m /:/dev/md/dsk/d10:ufs,mirror \
-m /:/dev/md/dsk/d1:attach \
-m /:/dev/dsk/c0t1d0s0,d2:attach -n newBE
```

The following command differs from the preceding only in that concatenations for the physical storage devices are not specified. In this example, `lucreate` chooses concatenation names from a list of free names and attaches these volumes to the mirror specified in the first `-m` option.

```
lucreate -m /:/dev/md/dsk/d10:ufs,mirror \
-m /:/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s0:attach \
-m /:/dev/dsk/c0t1d0s0:attach -n newBE
```

**EXAMPLE 9** Using Solaris Volume Manager Volumes *(Continued)*

The following command differs from the preceding commands in that one of the physical disks is detached from a mirror before being attached to the mirror you create. Also, the contents of one of the physical disks is preserved. The command does the following:

1. Creates the mirror `d10` and establishes this mirror as the receptacle for the root file system.
2. Detaches `c0t0d0s0` from the mirror to which it is currently attached.
3. Attaches `c0t0d0s0` and `c0t1d0s0` to concatenations `d1` and `d2`, respectively. Note that the specification of these concatenations is optional.
4. Preserves the contents of `c0t0d0s0`, which presumes that `c0t0d0s0` contains a valid copy of the current BE's root file system.
5. Attaches the concatenations associated with `c0t0d0s0` and `c0t1d0s0` (`d1` and `d2`) to mirror `d10`.

```
lucreate -m /:/dev/md/dsk/d10:ufs,mirror \
-m /:/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s0,d1:detach,attach,preserve \
-m /:/dev/dsk/c0t1d0s0,d2:attach -n newBE
```

The following command is a follow-on to the first command in this set of examples. This command detaches a concatenation (containing `c0t0d0s0`) from one mirror (`d10`, in the first command) and attaches it to another (`d20`), preserving its contents.

```
lucreate -m /:/dev/md/dsk/d20:ufs,mirror \
-m /:/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s0:detach,attach,preserve -n nextBE
```

The following command creates two mirrors, placing the `/` file system of the new BE on one mirror and the `/opt` file system on the other.

```
lucreate -m /:/dev/md/dsk/d10:ufs,mirror \
-m /:/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s0,d1:attach \
-m /:/dev/dsk/c1t0d0s0,d2:attach \
-m /opt:/dev/md/dsk/d11:ufs,mirror \
-m /opt:/dev/dsk/c2t0d0s1,d3:attach \
-m /opt:/dev/dsk/c3t1d0s1,d4:attach -n anotherBE
```

**EXAMPLE 10** Invoking FMLI-based Interface

This example is included for historical purposes as the `lu` interface is now obsolete.

The command below, by omitting `-m` or `-M` options, invokes `lu`, the FMLI-based interface for Live Upgrade operations.

```
lucreate -n second_disk
```

The preceding command uses the current BE as the source for the target BE `second_disk`. In the FMLI interface, you can specify the target disk slices for `second_disk`. The following command is a variation on the preceding:

**EXAMPLE 10** Invoking FMLI-based Interface (Continued)

```
lucreate -n second_disk -s third_disk
```

In the preceding command, a source for the target BE is specified. As before, the FMLI interface comes up, enabling you to specify target disk slices for the new BE.

**EXAMPLE 11** Merging File Systems

The command below merges the `/usr/opt` file system into the `/usr` file system. First, here are the disk slices in the BE `first_disk`, expressed in the format used for arguments to the `-m` option:

```
:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s0:ufs
/usr:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s1:ufs
/usr/opt:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s3:ufs
```

The following command creates a BE `second_disk` and performs the merge operation, merging `/usr/opt` with its parent, `/usr`.

```
lucreate -m /:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s0:ufs -m /usr:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s1:ufs \
-m /usr/opt:merged:ufs -n second_disk
```

**EXAMPLE 12** Splitting a File System

Assume a source BE with `/`, `/usr`, and `/var` all mounted on the same disk slice. The following command creates a BE `second_disk` that has `/`, `/usr`, and `/var` all mounted on different disk slices.

```
lucreate -m /:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s0:ufs -m /usr:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s1:ufs \
/var:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s3:ufs -n second_disk
```

This separation of a file system's (such as root's) components onto different disk slices is referred to as splitting a file system.

**EXAMPLE 13** Specifying Alternative Slices

The following command uses multiple `-m` options as alternative disk slices for the new BE `second_disk`.

```
lucreate -m /:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s0:ufs -m /:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s1:ufs \
-m /:/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s5:ufs -n second_disk
many lines of output
lucreate: Creation of Boot Environment <second_disk> successful.
```

The preceding command specifies three possible disk slices, `s0`, `s1`, and `s5` for the `/` file system. `lucreate` selects the first one of these slices that is not being used by another BE. Note that the `-s` option is omitted, meaning that the current BE is the source BE for the creation of the new

**EXAMPLE 13** Specifying Alternative Slices *(Continued)*

BE.

**EXAMPLE 14** Specifying Separate File Systems for Non-Global Zones

The following command specifies a separate file system belonging to the zone, `zone1`, within the new BE, `second_disk`.

```
lucreate -n second_disk -m /:/dev/dsk/c0d0s3:ufs \
-m /export/home:/dev/dsk/c0d0s5:ufs:zone1
```

The zone named `zone1`, inside the new BE, has a separate disk slice allocated for its `/export/home` file system.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.

**Files** `/etc/lutab` list of BEs on the system  
`/usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/lu_cli.dtd.<num>` Live Upgrade DTD (see `-X` option)

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWluu         |

**See Also** [luactivate\(1M\)](#), [lucancel\(1M\)](#), [lucompare\(1M\)](#), [lucurr\(1M\)](#), [ludelete\(1M\)](#), [ludesc\(1M\)](#), [lufslist\(1M\)](#), [lumake\(1M\)](#), [lumount\(1M\)](#), [lurename\(1M\)](#), [lustatus\(1M\)](#), [luupgrade\(1M\)](#), [zfs\(1M\)](#), [zpool\(1M\)](#), [zoneadm\(1M\)](#), [lutab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [live\\_upgrade\(5\)](#), [zones\(5\)](#)

**Notes** As is true for any Solaris operating system upgrade (and not a feature of Live Upgrade), when splitting a directory into multiple mount points, hard links are not maintained across file systems. For example, if `/usr/test1/buglist` is hard linked to `/usr/test2/buglist`, and `/usr/test1` and `/usr/test2` are split into separate file systems, the link between the files will no longer exist. If `lucreate` encounters a hard link across file systems, the command issues a warning message and creates a symbolic link to replace the lost hard link.

`lucreate` cannot prevent you from making invalid configurations with respect to non-shareable file systems. For example, you could enter an `lucreate` command that would create separate file systems for `/` and `/kernel`—an invalid division of `/`. The resulting BE would be unbootable. When creating file systems for a boot environment, the rules are identical to the rules for creating file systems for the Solaris operating environment.



Mindful of the principle described in the preceding paragraph, consider the following:

- In a source BE, you must have valid `vfstab` entries for every file system you want to copy to or share with a new BE.
- You cannot create a new BE on a disk with overlapping partitions (that is, partitions that share the same physical disk space). The `lucreate` command that specifies such a disk might complete, but the resulting BE would be unbootable.

**Note** – As stated in the description of the `-m` option, if you use Solaris Volume Manager volumes for boot environments, use `lucreate` rather than Solaris Volume Manager commands to manipulate these volumes. The Solaris Volume Manager software has no knowledge of boot environments; the `lucreate` command contains checks that prevent you from inadvertently destroying a boot environment by, for example, overwriting or deleting a Solaris Volume Manager volume.

For versions of the Solaris operating system prior to Solaris 10, Live Upgrade supports the release it is distributed on and up to three marketing releases back. For example, if you obtained Live Upgrade with Solaris 9 (including a Solaris 9 upgrade), that version of Live Upgrade supports Solaris versions 2.6, Solaris 7, and Solaris 8, in addition to Solaris 9. No version of Live Upgrade supports a Solaris version prior to Solaris 2.6.

Starting with version 10 of the Solaris operating system, Live Upgrade supports the release it is distributed on and up to two marketing releases back. For example, if you obtained Live Upgrade with Solaris 10 (including a Solaris 10 upgrade), that version of Live Upgrade supports Solaris 8 and Solaris 9, in addition to Solaris 10. For instructions on adding Live Upgrade packages for the release you want to install, see *Solaris 10 5/08 Installation Guide: Solaris Live Upgrade and Upgrade Planning*.

Correct operation of Solaris Live Upgrade requires that a limited set of patch revisions be installed for a given OS version. Before installing or running Live Upgrade, you are required to install the limited set of patch revisions. Make sure you have the most recently updated patch list by consulting <http://sunsolve.sun.com>. Search for the infodoc 72099 on the SunSolve web site.

**Name** lucurr – display the name of the active boot environment

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/lucurr [-l *error\_log*] [-m *mount\_point*]  
[-o *outfile*] [-X]

**Description** The lucurr command is part of a suite of commands that make up the Live Upgrade feature of the Solaris operating environment. See [live\\_upgrade\(5\)](#) for a description of the Live Upgrade feature.

The lucurr command displays the name of the currently running boot environment (BE). If no BEs are configured on the system, lucurr displays the message "No Boot Environments are defined". Note that lucurr reports only the name of the current BE, not the BE that will be active upon the next reboot. Use [lustatus\(1M\)](#) or [luaactivate\(1M\)](#) for this information.

The lucurr command requires root privileges.

**Options** The lucurr command has the following options:

- l *error\_log* Error and status messages are sent to *error\_log*, in addition to where they are sent in your current environment.
- m *mount\_point* Returns the name of the BE that owns *mount\_point*, where *mount\_point* is the mount point of a BE's root file system. This can be a mount point of the current BE or the mount point of a BE other than the current BE. If the latter, the file system of the BE must have been mounted with [lumount\(1M\)](#) or [mount\(1M\)](#) before entering this option.
- o *outfile* All command output is sent to *outfile*, in addition to where it is sent in your current environment.
- X Enable XML output. Characteristics of XML are defined in DTD, in /usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/lu\_cli.dtd.<num>, where <num> is the version number of the DTD file.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.

**Files** /etc/lutab list of BEs on the system  
/usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/lu\_cli.dtd.<num> Live Upgrade DTD (see -X option)

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWluu         |

**See Also** luactivate(1M), lucancel(1M), lucompare(1M), lucreate(1M), ludelete(1M), ludesc(1M), lufslist(1M), lumake(1M), lumount(1M), lurename(1M), lustatus(1M), luupgrade(1M), lutab(4), attributes(5), live\_upgrade(5)

**Name** ludelete – delete a boot environment

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/ludelete [-l *error\_log*] [-o *outfile*] *BE\_name* [-X]

**Description** The ludelete command is part of a suite of commands that make up the Live Upgrade feature of the Solaris operating environment. See [live\\_upgrade\(5\)](#) for a description of the Live Upgrade feature.

The ludelete command deletes all records associated with a boot environment (BE) on all defined complete BEs. A complete BE is one that is not participating in an [lucreate\(1M\)](#), [luupgrade\(1M\)](#), or [lucompare\(1M\)](#) operation. Use [lustatus\(1M\)](#) to determine a BE's status. You can delete neither the current BE, nor the BE that will become current upon the next reboot.

ludelete does not alter any files on the BE being deleted.

The ludelete command requires root privileges.

**Options** The ludelete command has the following options:

- l *error\_log* Error and status messages are sent to *error\_log*, in addition to where they are sent in your current environment.
- o *outfile* All command output is sent to *outfile*, in addition to where it is sent in your current environment.
- X Enable XML output. Characteristics of XML are defined in DTD, in `/usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/lu_cli.dtd.<num>`, where `<num>` is the version number of the DTD file.

**Operands** *BE\_name* Name of the BE to be deleted.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.

**Files** /etc/lutab list of BEs on the system  
 /usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/lu\_cli.dtd.<num> Live Upgrade DTD (see -X option)

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWluu         |

**See Also** `lu(1M)`, `luactivate(1M)`, `lucancel(1M)`, `lucompare(1M)`, `lucreate(1M)`, `lucurr(1M)`, `ludesc(1M)`, `lufslist(1M)`, `lumake(1M)`, `lumount(1M)`, `lurename(1M)`, `lustatus(1M)`, `luupgrade(1M)`, `lutab(4)`, `attributes(5)`, `live_upgrade(5)`

**Name** ludesc – display or set boot environment description

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/ludesc {-A *BE\_description*} | {-f {*filename* | -}}  
[-l *error\_log*] [-o *outfile*] [-X]  
  
/usr/sbin/ludesc -n *BE\_name* [-f *filename* | -]  
[-l *error\_log*] [-o *outfile*] [-X]  
  
/usr/sbin/ludesc -n *BE\_name* [-l *error\_log*] [-o *outfile*]  
[-X] *BE\_description*

**Description** The ludesc command is part of a suite of commands that make up the Live Upgrade feature of the Solaris operating environment. See [live\\_upgrade\(5\)](#) for a description of the Live Upgrade feature.

The ludesc command allows you to manipulate boot environment (BE) descriptions. A BE description is an optional attribute of a BE. It can be text or binary data. For example, it might be a string such as “S9 beta test BE” or it might be a file that contains 8-bit multi-byte characters. The ludesc command in general and the options to manipulate binary-format descriptions in particular are suitable for use in programs.

You create a BE description using ludesc or [lucreate\(1M\)](#). Only ludesc allows you to change a BE description or add a description following BE creation.

While a BE description is associated with a BE name, it is not interchangeable with that name. No Live Upgrade command allows you to specify a BE description instead of a BE name when performing an operation on a BE.

A shell might restrict what you enter for a BE description (in both ludesc and [lucreate\(1M\)](#)). In entering a description, use the following guidelines:

- Always enclose a description in single quotes ('), unless the description includes a single quote.
- If your description includes a single quote, enclose the description in double quotes (“). You then must use an escape sequence (usually a backslash [\]) to enter a character that is special to the shell. See [sh\(1\)](#) for a list of special characters and a description of the escape sequence mechanism.

Descriptions that include many special characters might be more conveniently inserted in a file (-f option) than entered on a command line (-A option).

When ludesc outputs a BE description, it does so exactly as the description was entered. Because of this feature, a description that is a text string does not have a concluding newline, which means the system prompt immediately follows the last character of the description.

The ludesc command requires root privileges.

**Options** The `ludesc` command has the following options:

- A *BE\_description* Displays the BE name associated with *BE\_description*.
- f *{filename | -}* Specify the BE description contained in *filename* or read from `stdin`. When used without `-n`, displays the BE name associated with the specified BE description. Used with `-n`, changes the description for the specified BE to the description specified with `-f`.
- l *error\_log* Error and status messages are sent to *error\_log*, in addition to where they are sent in your current environment.
- n *BE\_name* With no other arguments, displays the BE description for the specified BE. With the `-f` option or the *BE\_description* operand, changes the description for the specified BE to that specified with `-f` or *BE\_description*.
- o *outfile* All command output is sent to *outfile*, in addition to where it is sent in your current environment.
- X Enable XML output. Characteristics of XML are defined in DTD, in `/usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/lu_cli.dtd.<num>`, where `<num>` is the version number of the DTD file.

**Operands** *BE\_description* Used only with the `-n` option. *BE\_description* replaces the current BE description for the specified BE.

**Examples** The following are examples of the use of `ludesc`.

**EXAMPLE 1** Basic Use

The first command, below, assigns a description to a BE. The second command returns the name of the BE associated with the specified description. The last command returns the description associated with a specified BE.

```
ludesc -n first_disk 'Test disk'
Setting description for boot environment <first_disk>.
Propagating the change of BE description to all BEs.

ludesc -A 'Test disk'
first_disk
#

ludesc -n first_disk
Test disk#
```

As seen above and noted in the DESCRIPTION, `ludesc` does not append a newline to the display of BE description that is a text string.

**EXAMPLE 2** Using Binary Files

The following commands are analogs of the preceding examples, substituting a binary file—here, a file containing a description in Russian, using the Cyrillic alphabet—for a text string. In the third command, note the use of a file to capture output. Sending output of a binary file to the console can produce erratic results.

```
ludesc -n first_disk -f arrayBE.ru
Setting description for boot environment <first_disk>.
Propagating the change of BE description to all BEs.

ludesc -f arrayBE.ru
first_disk

ludesc -n first_disk > /tmp/arrayBE.out
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.  
>0 An error occurred.

**Files** /etc/lutab list of BEs on the system  
/usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/lu\_cli.dtd.<num> Live Upgrade DTD (see -X option)

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWluu         |

**See Also** [luactivate\(1M\)](#), [lucancel\(1M\)](#), [lucompare\(1M\)](#), [lucreate\(1M\)](#), [ludelete\(1M\)](#), [lufslist\(1M\)](#), [lumake\(1M\)](#), [lumount\(1M\)](#), [lurename\(1M\)](#), [lustatus\(1M\)](#), [luupgrade\(1M\)](#), [lutab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [live\\_upgrade\(5\)](#)



**Name** lufslis – list configuration of a boot environment

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/lufslis [-l *error\_log*] [-o *outfile*] *BE\_name* [-X]

**Description** The lufslis command is part of a suite of commands that make up the Live Upgrade feature of the Solaris operating environment. See [live\\_upgrade\(5\)](#) for a description of the Live Upgrade feature.

The lufslis command lists the configuration of a boot environment (BE). The output contains the disk slice (file system), file system type, and file system size for each BE mount point. The output also notes any separate file systems that belong to a non-global zone inside the BE being displayed.

The following is an example of lufslis output, which shows a separate filesystem for the zone, zone1, within the BE being displayed.

```
lufslis BE_name
Filesystem fstype size(Mb) Mounted on

/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s1 swap 512.11 -
/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s3 ufs 3738.29 /
/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s4 ufs 510.24 /opt

 zone zone1 within boot environment BE_name
/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s7 ufs 7000.48 /export
```

File system type can be ufs, swap, or vxfs, for a Veritas file system. Under the Filesystem heading can be a disk slice or a logical device, such as a disk metadvice used by volume management software.

The lufslis command requires root privileges or the Primary Administrator role.

**Options** The lufslis command has the following options:

- l *error\_log*    Error and status messages are sent to *error\_log*, in addition to where they are sent in your current environment.
- o *outfile*        All command output is sent to *outfile*, in addition to where it is sent in your current environment.
- X                Enable XML output. Characteristics of XML are defined in DTD, in /usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/lu\_cli.dtd.<num>, where <num> is the version number of the DTD file.

**Operands** *BE\_name*    Name of the BE for which file systems are to be reported. You cannot specify a BE that is involved in another Live Upgrade operation.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

**Files** /etc/lutab list of BEs on the system  
/usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/lu\_cli.dtd.<num> Live Upgrade DTD (see -X option)

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWluu         |

**See Also** [luactivate\(1M\)](#), [lucancel\(1M\)](#), [lucompare\(1M\)](#), [lucreate\(1M\)](#), [lucurr\(1M\)](#), [ludelete\(1M\)](#), [ludesc\(1M\)](#), [lumake\(1M\)](#), [lumount\(1M\)](#), [lurename\(1M\)](#), [lustatus\(1M\)](#), [luupgrade\(1M\)](#), [lutab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [live\\_upgrade\(5\)](#), [zones\(5\)](#)

**Name** lumake – populate a boot environment

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/lumake [-l *error\_log*] [-o *outfile*] [-s *source\_BE*] -n *BE\_name*  
[-X]  
  
/usr/sbin/lumake [-l *error\_log*] -t *time* [-o *outfile*]  
[-s *source\_BE*] -n *BE\_name* [-m *email\_address*] [-X]

**Description** The lumake command is part of a suite of commands that make up the Live Upgrade feature of the Solaris operating environment. See [live\\_upgrade\(5\)](#) for a description of the Live Upgrade feature.

The lumake command populates (that is, copies files to) the file systems of a specified boot environment (BE) by copying files from the corresponding file systems of the active or a source (-s) BE. Any existing data on the target BE are destroyed. All file systems on the target BE are re-created.

The target BE must already exist. Use [lucreate\(1M\)](#) to create a new BE.

The lumake command requires root privileges.

**Options** The lumake command has the following options:

- n *BE\_name*           Name of the BE to be populated.
- s *source\_BE*        The optional name of a source BE. If you omit this option, lumake uses the current BE as the source. A BE must have the status "complete" before you can copy from it. Use [lustatus\(1M\)](#) to determine a BE's status.
- l *error\_log*        Error and status messages are sent to *error\_log*, in addition to where they are sent in your current environment.
- o *outfile*           All command output is sent to *outfile*, in addition to where it is sent in your current environment.
- t *time*             Setup a batch job to populate the specified BE at a specified time. The time is given in the format specified by the [at\(1\)](#) man page. At any time, you can have only one Live Upgrade operation scheduled. You can use [lucancel\(1M\)](#) to cancel a scheduled lumake operation.
- m *email\_address*   Allows you to email lumake output to a specified address upon command completion. There is no checking of *email\_address*. Use this option in conjunction with -t, to obtain notification of batch command completion. If you use -m with options other than -t, no email is sent.
- X                    Enable XML output. Characteristics of XML are defined in DTD, in /usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/lu\_cli.dtd. <num>, where <num> is the version number of the DTD file.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

**Files** /etc/lutab list of BEs on the system  
/usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/lu\_cli.dtd.<num> Live Upgrade DTD (see -X option)

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWluu         |

**See Also** [luactivate\(1M\)](#), [lucancel\(1M\)](#), [lucompare\(1M\)](#), [lucreate\(1M\)](#), [lucurr\(1M\)](#), [ludelete\(1M\)](#), [ludesc\(1M\)](#), [lufslis\(1M\)](#), [lumount\(1M\)](#), [lurename\(1M\)](#), [lustatus\(1M\)](#), [luupgrade\(1M\)](#), [lutab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [live\\_upgrade\(5\)](#)

**Name** lumount, luumount – mount or unmount all file systems in a boot environment

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/lumount [-l *error\_log*] [-o *outfile*] *BE\_name*  
           [*mount\_point*] [-X]  
 /usr/sbin/lumount  
 /usr/sbin/luumount [-f]  
           { [-n] *BE\_name* | [-m] *mount\_point* | *block\_device* }  
           [-l *error\_log*] [-o *outfile*] [-X]

**Description** The lumount and luumount commands are part of a suite of commands that make up the Live Upgrade feature of the Solaris operating environment. See [live\\_upgrade\(5\)](#) for a description of the Live Upgrade feature.

The lumount and luumount commands enable you to mount or unmount all of the file systems in a boot environment (BE). This allows you to inspect or modify the files in a BE while that BE is not active. By default, lumount mounts the file systems on a mount point of the form *.alt.BE\_name*, where *BE\_name* is the name of the BE whose file systems are being mounted. See NOTES.

lumount and luumount also mount or unmount all installed non-global zones within the BE. For each running, mounted, or ready non-global zone in the current BE, lumount mounts all file systems in the mounted BE that belong to the non-global zone, at the specified mount point in the non-global zone. This provides the non-global zone administrator access to the corresponding file systems that exist in the mounted BE.

When invoked with no arguments, lumount returns the name(s) of the mounted BEs on a system.

The lumount and luumount commands require root privileges or the Primary Administrator role.

**Options** The lumount and luumount commands have the following options:

- f                   For luumount only, forcibly unmount a BE's file systems after attempting (and failing) an unforced unmount. This option is analogous to the [mount\(1M\) -f](#) option.
- l *error\_log*       Error and status messages are sent to *error\_log*, in addition to where they are sent in your current environment.
- m *mount\_point*   luumount unmounts the file systems of the BE that owns *mount\_point*. See description of *mount\_point* under OPERANDS, below. The use of -m is optional when specifying a mount point for luumount.
- n *BE\_name*         Name of the BE whose file systems will be unmounted. See description of *BE\_name* under OPERANDS, below. The use of -n is optional when specifying a BE name for luumount.

- o *outfile* All command output is sent to *outfile*, in addition to where it is sent in your current environment.
- X Enable XML output. Characteristics of XML are defined in DTD, in `/usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/lu_cli.dtd.<num>`, where `<num>` is the version number of the DTD file.

For `lumount`, if you supply an argument and specify neither `-m` nor `-n`, the command determines whether your argument is a BE name, a mount point, or a block device. If it is one of these three and the argument is associated with a BE that has mounted file systems, `lumount` unmounts the file systems of that BE. Otherwise, `lumount` returns an error.

|                 |                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------------|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Operands</b> | <i>BE_name</i>      | Name of the BE whose file systems will be mounted or unmounted. This is a BE on the current system other than the active BE. Note that, for successful completion of an <code>lumount</code> or <code>luumount</code> command, the status of a BE must be complete, as reported by <code>lustatus(1M)</code> . Also, none of the BE's disk slices can be mounted (through use of <code>mount(1M)</code> ).                                  |
|                 | <i>mount_point</i>  | For <code>lumount</code> , a mount point to use instead of the default <code>/.alt.BE_name</code> . If <i>mount_point</i> does not exist, <code>lumount</code> creates it. For <code>luumount</code> , the BE associated with <i>mount_point</i> will have its file systems unmounted. Note that default mount points are automatically deleted upon unmounting with <code>luumount</code> . Mount points that you specify are not deleted. |
|                 | <i>block_device</i> | For <code>luumount</code> only, <i>block_device</i> is the root slice of a BE, such as <code>/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s0</code> . <code>luumount</code> unmounts the file systems of the BE associated with <i>block_device</i> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

### Examples

**EXAMPLE 1** Specifying a Mount Point

The following command creates the mount point `/test` and mounts the file systems of the BE `second_disk` on `/test`.

```
lumount second_disk /test
/test
```

You can then `cd` to `/test` to view the file systems of `second_disk`. If you did not specify `/test` as a mount point, `lumount` would create a default mount point named `/.alt.second_disk`.

If you have installed non-global zones on your system, this command will also mount all non-global zones in `second_disk` inside their corresponding non-global zones in the currently running system at the mount point `/test` (or `/.alt.second_disk` if a mount point was not specified).

**EXAMPLE 2** Unmounting File Systems

The following command unmounts the file systems of the BE `second_disk`. In this example, we `cd` to `/` to ensure we are not in any of the file systems in `second_disk`.

```
cd /
lumount second_disk
#
```

If `/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s0` were the root slice for `second_disk`, you could enter the following command to match the effect of the preceding command.

```
cd /
lumount /dev/dsk/c0t4d0s0
#
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

```
0 Successful completion.
>0 An error occurred.
```

**Files** `/etc/lutab` list of BEs on the system  
`/usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/lu_cli.dtd.<num>` Live Upgrade DTD (see `-X` option)

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWluu         |

**See Also** [luactivate\(1M\)](#), [lucancel\(1M\)](#), [lucompare\(1M\)](#), [lucreate\(1M\)](#), [lucurr\(1M\)](#), [ludelete\(1M\)](#), [ludesc\(1M\)](#), [lufslist\(1M\)](#), [lumake\(1M\)](#), [lurename\(1M\)](#), [lustatus\(1M\)](#), [luupgrade\(1M\)](#), [lutab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [live\\_upgrade\(5\)](#), [zones\(5\)](#)

**Notes** If a BE name contains slashes (`/`), `lumount` replaces those slashes with colons in a default mount point name. For example:

```
lumount 'first/disk'
/.alt.first:disk
```

**Name** lurename – change the name of a boot environment

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/lurename -e *BE\_name* -n *new\_name* [-l *error\_log*]  
[-o *outfile*] [-X]

**Description** The lurename command is part of a suite of commands that make up the Live Upgrade feature of the Solaris operating environment. See [live\\_upgrade\(5\)](#) for a description of the Live Upgrade feature.

The lurename command renames the boot environment (BE) *BE\_name* to *new\_name*.

The string *new\_name* must not exceed 30 characters in length and must consist only of alphanumeric characters and other ASCII characters that are not special to the Unix shell. See the “Quoting” section of [sh\(1\)](#). The BE name can contain only single-byte, 8-bit characters. It cannot contain whitespace characters. Also, *new\_name* must be unique on the system.

A BE must have the status “complete” before you rename it. Use [lustatus\(1M\)](#) to determine a BE's status. Also, you cannot rename a BE that has file systems mounted with [lumount\(1M\)](#) or [mount\(1M\)](#).

Renaming a BE is often useful when you upgrade the BE from one Solaris release to another. For example, following an operating system upgrade, you might rename the BE `solaris7` to `solaris8`.

The lurename command requires root privileges.

**Options** The lurename command has the options listed below.

- e *BE\_name* Name of the BE whose name you want to change.
- l *error\_log* Error and status messages are sent to *error\_log*, in addition to where they are sent in your current environment.
- n *new\_name* New name of the BE. *new\_name* must be unique on a given system.
- o *outfile* All command output is sent to *outfile*, in addition to where it is sent in your current environment.
- X Enable XML output. Characteristics of XML are defined in DTD, in `/usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/lu_cli.dtd.<num>`, where `<num>` is the version number of the DTD file.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.



---

**Files** /etc/lutab list of BEs on the system  
/usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/lu\_cli.dtd.<num> Live Upgrade DTD (see -X option)

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWluu         |

**See Also** [luactivate\(1M\)](#), [lucancel\(1M\)](#), [lucompare\(1M\)](#), [lucreate\(1M\)](#), [lucurr\(1M\)](#), [ludelete\(1M\)](#), [ludesc\(1M\)](#), [lufslist\(1M\)](#), [lumake\(1M\)](#), [lumount\(1M\)](#), [lustatus\(1M\)](#), [luupgrade\(1M\)](#), [lutab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [live\\_upgrade\(5\)](#)

**Name** lustatus – display status of boot environments

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/lustatus [-l *error\_log*] [-o *outfile*] [*BE\_name*]  
[-X]

**Description** The `lustatus` command is part of a suite of commands that make up the Live Upgrade feature of the Solaris operating environment. See [live\\_upgrade\(5\)](#) for a description of the Live Upgrade feature.

The `lustatus` command displays the status information of the boot environment (BE) *BE\_name*. If no BE is specified, the status information for all BEs on the system is displayed.

The headings in the `lustatus` information display are described as follows:

|                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Boot Environment Name | Name of the BE.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Is Complete           | Indicates whether a BE is able to be booted. Any current activity or failure in an <a href="#">lucreate(1M)</a> or <a href="#">luupgrade(1M)</a> operation causes a BE to be incomplete. For example, if there is a copy operation proceeding on or scheduled for a BE, that BE is considered incomplete. |
| Active Now            | Indicates whether the BE is currently active. The “active” BE is the one currently booted.                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Active On Reboot      | Indicates whether the BE becomes active upon next reboot of the system.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Can Delete            | Indicates that no copy, compare, or upgrade operations are being performed on a BE. Also, none of that BE's file systems are currently mounted. With all of these conditions in place, the BE can be deleted.                                                                                             |
| Copy Status           | Indicates whether the creation or repopulation of a BE is scheduled or active (that is, in progress). A status of ACTIVE, COMPARING (from <a href="#">lucompare(1M)</a> ), UPGRADING, or SCHEDULED prevents you performing Live Upgrade copy, rename, or upgrade operations.                              |

The following is an example `lustatus` display:

```

Boot Environment Is Active Active Can Copy
Name Complete Now On Reboot Delete Status

disk_a_S7 yes yes yes no -
disk_b_S7db yes no no no UPGRADING
disk_b_S8 no no no no -
S9testbed yes no no yes -

```

Note that you could not perform copy, rename, or upgrade operations on `disk_b_S8`, because it is not complete, nor on `disk_b_S7db`, because a Live Upgrade operation is pending.

The `lustatus` command requires root privileges.

**Options** The `lustatus` command has the following options:

- `-l error_log` Error and status messages are sent to `error_log`, in addition to where they are sent in your current environment.
- `-o outfile` All command output is sent to `outfile`, in addition to where it is sent in your current environment.
- `-X` Enable XML output. Characteristics of XML are defined in DTD, in `/usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/lu_cli.dtd.<num>`, where `<num>` is the version number of the DTD file.

**Operands** `BE_name` Name of the BE for which to obtain status. If `BE_name` is omitted, `lustatus` displays status for all BEs in the system.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- `0` Successful completion.
- `>0` An error occurred.

**Files** `/etc/lutab` list of BEs on the system  
`/usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/lu_cli.dtd.<num>` Live Upgrade DTD (see `-X` option)

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWluu         |

**See Also** [luactivate\(1M\)](#), [lucancel\(1M\)](#), [lucompare\(1M\)](#), [lucreate\(1M\)](#), [lucurr\(1M\)](#), [ludesc\(1M\)](#), [ludelete\(1M\)](#), [lufslis\(1M\)](#), [lumake\(1M\)](#), [lumount\(1M\)](#), [lurename\(1M\)](#), [luupgrade\(1M\)](#), [lutab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [live\\_upgrade\(5\)](#)

**Name** luupgrade – installs, upgrades, and performs other functions on software on a boot environment

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/luupgrade [-iIufpPtTcC] [*options*]

**Description** The `luupgrade` command is part of a suite of commands that make up the Live Upgrade feature of the Solaris operating environment. See [live\\_upgrade\(5\)](#) for a description of the Live Upgrade feature.

The `luupgrade` command enables you to install software on a specified boot environment (BE). Specifically, `luupgrade` performs the following functions:

- Upgrades an operating system image on a BE (-u option). The source for the image can be any valid Solaris installation medium, including a Solaris Flash archive.
- Extract a Solaris Flash archive onto a BE (-f option). (See [flar\(1M\)](#).)
- Add a package to (-p) or remove a package from (-P) a BE.
- Add a patch to (-t) or remove a patch from (-T) a BE.
- Check (-C) or obtain information about (-I) packages.
- Check an operating system installation medium (-c).

Before using `luupgrade`, you must have created a BE, using the [lucreate\(1M\)](#) command. You can upgrade only BEs other than the current BE.

The functions described in the preceding list each has its own set of options, which are described separately for each function.

Note that, for successful completion of an `luupgrade` operation, the status of a BE must be complete, as reported by [lustatus\(1M\)](#). Also, the BE must not have any mounted disk slices, mounted either with [lumount\(1M\)](#) or [mount\(1M\)](#).

`luupgrade` allows you to install an operating system image from a different marketing release of the Solaris operating system from the release running on the machine from which you invoke `luupgrade`. This feature has the following conditions:

- You can install Live Upgrade packages (SUNWluu, SUNWlur, and SUNWlucfg) from a given release of the Solaris operating system on a machine running a previous release. You can install these packages on a machine running a version of Solaris that is up to three releases prior to the release of the Live Upgrade packages. Live Upgrade is not supported on Solaris releases prior to Solaris 2.6. Thus, you can, for example, install Solaris 2.9 packages on Solaris 2.8, 2.7, and 2.6 machines.
- You can upgrade to a release of the Solaris operating system that is the same as the release of the Live Upgrade packages installed on a machine. This feature allows you to upgrade to Solaris upgrade releases within a marketing release. For example, if have the Solaris 9 FCS Live Upgrade packages installed on a machine, you can use `luupgrade` to upgrade a BE to the Solaris 9 update 3 release of the Solaris operating system.

See the *Solaris Installation Guide* for instructions on installing Live Upgrade packages.

The `luupgrade` command requires root privileges.

Options that Apply to All Uses

The following options are available for all uses of `luupgrade`:

- l *error\_log*      Error and status messages are sent to *error\_log*, in addition to where they are sent in your current environment.
- o *outfile*        All command output is sent to *outfile*, in addition to where it is sent in your current environment.
- N                    Dry-run mode. Enables you to determine whether your command arguments are correctly formed. Does not apply to the -c (check medium) function.
- X                    Enable XML output. Characteristics of XML are defined in DTD, in `/usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/lu_cli.dtd.<num>`, where `<num>` is the version number of the DTD file.

Upgrading an Operating System Image

The `luupgrade` command uses -u to upgrade an operating system image. The syntax is as follows:

```
luupgrade -u -n BE_name [-l error_log] [-o outfile] [-N]
-s os_image_path [-j profile_path [-D]]
```

The first option, -u, indicates the function to perform—to install an OS image. The remaining options for this use of `luupgrade`, shown above, are described as follows:

- n *BE\_name*            Name of the BE to receive an OS upgrade.
- s *os\_image\_path*    Path name of a directory containing an OS image. This can be a directory on an installation medium such as a DVD or CD, or can be an NFS or UFS directory.
- j *profile\_path*      Path to a JumpStart profile. See the section "JumpStart Profile Keywords," below, for a list of valid keywords for use in a profile invoked by `luupgrade`. See [pfinstall\(1M\)](#) and the Solaris installation documentation for information on the JumpStart software.
- D                    Tests the profile values provided with -j against the disk configuration of the specified BE. The upgrade is not performed. The effect of this option is a dry run to test your profile. `luupgrade` creates log files, specified in its output, which allow you to examine the command's results.

Before upgrading a boot environment, do the following:

- Run `analyze_patches`.
- Install Live Upgrade packages for the operating system version to which you are upgrading.

The `analyze_patches` command is available in the `/Misc` directory on the Solaris software DVD (formerly the Solaris installation CD). This command determines which patches would be removed as a result of the upgrade. Then, following the upgrade, you can reinstall the list of patches provided by `analyze_patches`.

The Live Upgrade packages, `SUNWluu`, `SUNWlur`, and `SUNWlucfg`, are available on the Solaris software DVD (or CD, depending on the Solaris version). Before running `luupgrade` with the `-u` option, ensure that you have installed the packages from the version of Solaris to which you want to upgrade.

Note that if you are upgrading from a medium with multiple components, such as from multiple DVDs, use `luupgrade` with the `-i` option, as described in the section below, to install software from the second and any following media.

Continuing an Upgrade  
by Running an Installer  
Program

The `luupgrade` command uses `-i` to run an installer program. As discussed below, its primary use is following an invocation of `luupgrade` with the `-u` option. The syntax for `-i` is as follows:

```
luupgrade -i -n BE_name [-l error_log] [-o outfile] [-N]
-s installation_medium [-O "installer_options"]
```

The first option, `-i`, indicates the function to perform—to run an installer program on the installation medium specified with `-s`. The remaining options for this use of `luupgrade`, shown above, are described as follows:

- `-n BE_name` Name of the BE on which software is to be installed.
- `-O "installer_options"` Options passed directly to the Solaris installer program. See [installer\(1M\)](#) for descriptions of the installer options.
- `-s installation_medium` Path name of an installation medium. This can be a DVD, CD, or an NFS or UFS directory.

With the `-i` option, `luupgrade` looks for an installation program on the specified medium and runs that program.

The primary use of the `-i` option is to upgrade an operating system image from a multiple-component medium, such as multiple DVDs. In this use, an `luupgrade` command with the `-i` option follows an invocation of `luupgrade` with `-u`. See `EXAMPLES`. The `-u` option is described above.

Installing from a Solaris  
Flash Archive

The `luupgrade` command uses `-f` to install an operating system from a Solaris Flash archive. Note that installing an archive overwrites all files on the target BE. The syntax is as follows:

```
luupgrade -f -n BE_name [-l error_log] [-o outfile] [-N] [-D]
-s os_image_path (-a archive | -j profile_path | -J "profile")
```

The first option, `-f`, indicates the function to perform—to install an OS from a Solaris Flash archive. The remaining options for this use of `luupgrade`, shown above, are described as follows:

- `-n BE_name`            Name of the BE to receive an OS installation.
- `-D`                        Tests the profile values provided with `-j` or `-J` against the disk configuration of the specified BE. The upgrade is not performed. The effect of this option is a dry run to test your profile. `luupgrade` creates log files, specified in its output, which allow you to examine the command's results.
- `-s os_image_path`       Path name of a directory containing an OS image. This can be a directory on an installation medium, such as a DVD or CD, or can be an NFS or UFS directory.
- `-a archive`              Path to the Solaris Flash archive when the archive is available on the local file system. You must specify one of `-a`, `-j`, or `-J`.
- `-j profile_path`        Path to a JumpStart profile that is configured for a Solaris Flash installation. See the section "JumpStart Profile Keywords," below, for a list of valid keywords for use in a profile invoked by `luupgrade`. See [pfinstall\(1M\)](#) and the Solaris installation documentation for information on the JumpStart software. You must specify one of `-a`, `-j`, or `-J`.
- `-J "profile"`            Entry from a JumpStart profile that is configured for a Solaris Flash installation. The only valid keyword for this option is `archive_location`. See [pfinstall\(1M\)](#) and the Solaris installation documentation for information on the JumpStart software. You must specify one of `-a`, `-j`, or `-J`.

Note that the version of the OS image specified with `-s` must be identical to the version of the OS contained in the Solaris Flash archive specified with the `-a`, `-j`, or `-J` options.

Adding or Removing Packages    The `luupgrade` command uses `-p` to add a package and `-P` to remove a package. The syntax is as follows:

For adding packages:

```
luupgrade -p -n BE_name [-l error_log][-o outfile] [-N]
-s packages_path [-O "pkgadd_options"] [-a admin]
[pkginst [pkginst...]]
```

For removing packages:

```
luupgrade -P -n BE_name [-l error_log][-o outfile] [-N]
[-O "pkgrm_options"] [pkginst [pkginst...]]
```

The first option, `-p`, to add packages, or `-P` to remove packages, indicates the function to perform. The remaining options for this use of `luupgrade`, shown above, are described as follows:

|                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>-n <i>BE_name</i></code>                                                 | Name of the BE to which packages will be added or from which packages will be removed.                                                                                                                                               |
| <code>-s <i>packages_path</i></code>                                           | (For adding packages only.) Path name of a directory containing packages to add. You can substitute <code>-d</code> for <code>-s</code> . The <code>-d</code> support is for <a href="#">pkgadd(1M)</a> compatibility.               |
| <code>-d <i>packages_path</i></code>                                           | Identical to <code>-s</code> . Use of <code>-s</code> is recommended.                                                                                                                                                                |
| <code>-O "<i>pkgadd_options</i>"</code> or <code>"<i>pkgrm_options</i>"</code> | Options passed directly to <code>pkgadd</code> (for <code>-p</code> ) or <code>pkgrm</code> (for <code>-P</code> ). See <a href="#">pkgadd(1M)</a> and <a href="#">pkgrm(1M)</a> for descriptions of the options for those commands. |
| <code>-a <i>admin</i></code>                                                   | (For adding packages only.) Path to an admin file. Identical to the <code>pkgadd -a</code> option. Use of the <code>-a</code> option here is identical to <code>-O "-a <i>admin</i>"</code>                                          |
| <code><i>pkginst</i> [ <i>pkginst...</i> ]</code>                              | Zero or more packages to add or remove. For adding packages, the default is to add all of the packages specified with the <code>-s</code> option, above. Separate multiple package names with spaces.                                |

It is critically important that any packages you add be compliant with the SVR4 Advanced Packaging Guidelines. See WARNINGS, below.

Adding or Removing Patches The `luupgrade` command uses `-t` to add a patch and `-T` to remove a patch. The syntax is as follows:

For adding patches:

```
luupgrade -t -n BE_name [-l error_log][-o outfile] [-N]
-s patch_path [-O "patchadd_options"] [patch_name [patch_name...]]
```

For removing patches:

```
luupgrade -T -n BE_name [-l error_log][-o outfile] [-N]
[-O "patchrm_options"] [patch_name [patch_name...]]
```

The first option, `-t`, to add patches, or `-T` to remove patches, indicates the function to perform. The remaining options for this use of `luupgrade`, shown above, are described as follows:



|                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>-n <i>BE_name</i></code>                                        | Name of the BE to which patches will be added or from which patches will be removed.                                                                                                                                        |
| <code>-s <i>patch_path</i></code>                                     | (For adding patches only.) Path name of a directory containing patches to add or path name of a <code>patch_order</code> file.                                                                                              |
| <code>-O "<i>patchadd_options</i>" or "<i>patchrm_options</i>"</code> | Options passed directly to <code>patchadd</code> (for <code>-p</code> ) or <code>patchrm</code> (for <code>-P</code> ). See <a href="#">patchadd(1M)</a> or <a href="#">patchrm(1M)</a> for a description of these options. |
| <code><i>patch_name</i> [<i>patch_name...</i>]</code>                 | Zero or more patches to add or remove. For adding patches, the default is to add all of the patches specified with the <code>-s</code> option, above. Separate multiple patch names with spaces.                            |

It is critically important that any patches you add be compliant with the SVR4 Advanced Packaging Guidelines. See WARNINGS, below.

#### Checking or Returning Information on Packages

Use the `-C` to perform a [pkgchk\(1M\)](#) on all or the specified packages on a BE. Use the `-I` option to perform a [pkginfo\(1\)](#).

For performing a `pkgchk`:

```
luupgrade -C -n BE_name [-l error_log][-o outfile] [-N]
[-O "pkgchk_options"][pkginst [pkginst...]]
```

For performing a `pkginfo`:

```
luupgrade -I -n BE_name [-l error_log][-o outfile] [-N]
[-O "pkginfo_options"][pkginst [pkginst...]]
```

The first option, `-C`, for `pkgchk`, or `-I`, for `pkginfo`, indicates the function to perform. The remaining options for this use of `luupgrade`, shown above, are described as follows:

|                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>-n <i>BE_name</i></code>                                      | Name of the BE on which packages will be checked or on whose packages information will be returned.                                                                                                                    |
| <code>-O "<i>pkgchk_options</i>" or "<i>pkginfo_options</i>"</code> | Options passed directly to <code>pkgchk</code> (for <code>-C</code> ) or <code>pkginfo</code> (for <code>-I</code> ). See <a href="#">pkgchk(1M)</a> or <a href="#">pkginfo(1)</a> for a description of these options. |
| <code><i>pkginst</i> [<i>pkginst...</i>]</code>                     | Zero or more packages to check or for which to have information returned. If you omit package names, <code>luupgrade</code> returns information on all of the packages on the BE. Separate multiple                    |

package names with spaces.

Checking an OS Installation Medium With the `-c` option, `luupgrade` allows you to check that a local or remote medium, such as a DVD or CD, is a valid installation medium. The `-c` option returns useful information about the specified medium. The syntax for this use of `luupgrade` is as follows:

```
luupgrade -c [-l error_log] [-o outfile] -s path_to_medium
```

The first option, `-c`, indicates the function to perform—to check on an installation medium. The `-s` option, shown above, is described as follows:

`-s path_to_medium` Path name to an installation medium such as a DVD or CD.

JumpStart Profile Keywords This section specifies the Solaris JumpStart keywords that can be used in a profile with `luupgrade`, using the `-j` option in conjunction with the `-u` (upgrade) or `-f` (flash) options. For `-u`, there are no required keywords. For `-f`, you must specify a value for `install_type`: `flash_install` for a full flash archive or `flash_update` for a differential flash archive. Also for the `-f` option with the `-j` option, you must specify the `-a` (archive location) option or specify the `archive_location` keyword in your profile.

The `archive_location` keyword is the only valid argument for the `-J` option.

The following optional keywords are sometimes used in profiles used with the `-u` and `-f` options:

|                       |                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>cluster</code>  | Designates the software group to add to the system.                                                                                                                |
| <code>geo</code>      | Designates the regional locale or locales that you want to install on or add to a system. See the <i>Solaris Installation Guide</i> for a list of possible values. |
| <code>isa_bits</code> | Specifies whether 64-bit or 32-bit packages are to be installed. Valid values are 64 and 32.                                                                       |
| <code>locale</code>   | Designates the locale packages you want to install on or add to a system. See the <i>Solaris Installation Guide</i> for a list of possible values.                 |
| <code>package</code>  | Specifies a package to be added to or deleted from a system.                                                                                                       |

The following keywords must not be used in a profile used with `luupgrade`:

- `boot_device`
- `dontuse`
- `fdisk`
- `filesystem`
- `layout_constraint`
- `noreboot`
- `partitioning`
- `root_device`
- `usedisk`

See the *Solaris Installation Guide* for descriptions of all JumpStart profile keywords and instructions for creating a JumpStart profile.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Removing, then Adding Packages

The following example removes from then adds a set of packages to a boot environment.

```
luupgrade -P -n second_disk SUNwabc SUNwdef SUNwghi
```

Now, to add the same packages:

```
luupgrade -p -n second_disk -s /net/installmachine/export/packages \
SUNwabc SUNwdef SUNwghi
```

The following command adds the `-O` option to the preceding command. This option passes arguments directly to `pkgadd`.

```
luupgrade -p -n second_disk -s /net/installmachine/export/packages \
-O "-r /net/testmachine/export/responses" SUNwabc SUNwdef SUNwghi
```

See [pkgadd\(1M\)](#) for a description of the options for that command.

EXAMPLE 2 Upgrading to a New OS from a Combined Image

The following example upgrades the operating environment on a boot environment. The source image is stored as a combined image on a remote disk or on a DVD.

```
luupgrade -u -n second_disk \
-s /net/installmachine/export/solarisX/OS_image
```

Following the command above you could enter the command below to activate the upgraded BE.

```
luactivate second_disk
```

Then, upon the next reboot, `second_disk` would become the current boot environment. See [luactivate\(1M\)](#).

EXAMPLE 3 Upgrading to a New OS from Multiple CDs

The following example is a variation on the preceding. The OS upgrade resides on two CDs. To begin the upgrade on a SPARC machine, you enter:

```
luupgrade -u -n second_disk -s /cdrom/cdrom0/s0
```

On x86 machines, replace the `s0` in the argument to `-s` with `s2`.

When the installer is finished with the contents of the first CD, insert the next CD in the drive and enter the following:

**EXAMPLE 3** Upgrading to a New OS from Multiple CDs *(Continued)*

```
luupgrade -i -n second_disk -s /cdrom/cdrom0 \
-O "-nodisplay -noconsole"
```

Note the use of `-i` rather than `-u` in the preceding. Were there additional CDs, you would enter the same command as the one immediately above. The `-O` options, above, are passed to [installer\(1M\)](#). If you omit these options, a graphical interface is invoked following the insertion and reading of the second CD. See [installer\(1M\)](#) for a description of the `-O` options.

Note that a multiple-CD upgrade is not complete until you have entered and completed `luupgrade` commands for all of the CDs in a set. Following installation of packages from a CD, you might receive a message such as:

```
WARNING: <num> packages must be installed on boot environment <disk_device>.
```

Such a message indicates the requirement that you install packages from one or more additional CDs, as in the example above. If you do not complete package installation, you will not be able to use `luactivate` to activate (designate for booting) the upgraded BE.

**EXAMPLE 4** Upgrading Using a JumpStart Profile

The following example command uses the `-D` option to test the profile `/home2/profiles/test.profile`.

```
luupgrade -u -n second_disk \
-s /net/installmachine/export/solarisX/OS_image \
-j /home2/profiles/test.profile -D
```

Assuming the results of this command were acceptable, you could omit the `-D` in the preceding command to perform the upgrade.

**EXAMPLE 5** Installing a New OS from a Solaris Flash Archive

The following example installs the operating environment on a boot environment, using a Solaris Flash archive. The file pointed to by `-J` is a JumpStart profile that specifies a flash installation.

```
luupgrade -f -n second_disk \
-s /net/installmachine/export/solarisX/OS_image \
-J "archive_location http://example.com/myflash.flar"
```

The following command differs from the preceding only in that `-j` replaces `-J`. You could append the `-D` option to either of these commands to test the profile prior to actually performing the flash installation.

**EXAMPLE 5** Installing a New OS from a Solaris Flash Archive *(Continued)*

```
luupgrade -f -n second_disk \
-s /net/installmachine/export/solarisX/OS_image \
-j /net/example/flash_archives/flash_gordon
```

Either of the preceding commands works for a full or differential flash installation. Whether a flash installation is differential or full is determined by the value of the `install_type` keyword in the profile. See “JumpStart Profile Keywords,” above.

**EXAMPLE 6** Obtaining Information on Packages

The following example runs a `pkgchk` on the packages `SUNWluu`, `SUNWlur`, and `SUNWlucfg`, passing to `pkgchk` the `-v` option.

```
luupgrade -C -n second_disk -O "-v" SUNWluu SUNWlur SUNWlucfg
```

The following command runs `pkginfo` on the same set of packages:

```
luupgrade -I -n second_disk -O "-v" SUNWluu SUNWlur SUNWlucfg
```

For both commands, if the package names were omitted, `luupgrade` returns package information on all of the packages in the specified BE. See [pkgchk\(1M\)](#) and [pkginfo\(1\)](#) for a description of the options for those commands.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.

**Files** `/etc/lutab` list of BEs on the system  
`/usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/lu_cli.dtd.<num>` Live Upgrade DTD (see `-X` option in “Options that Apply to All Uses,” above)

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWluu         |

**See Also** [installer\(1M\)](#), [luactivate\(1M\)](#), [lucancel\(1M\)](#), [lucompare\(1M\)](#), [lucreate\(1M\)](#), [lucurr\(1M\)](#), [ludelete\(1M\)](#), [ludesc\(1M\)](#), [lufsls\(1M\)](#), [lumake\(1M\)](#), [lumount\(1M\)](#), [lurename\(1M\)](#), [lustatus\(1M\)](#), [lutab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [live\\_upgrade\(5\)](#), [zones\(5\)](#)

**Warnings** For adding packages or patches (-p, -P, -t, or -T), `luupgrade` requires packages or patches that comply with the SVR4 Advanced Packaging Guidelines and the guidelines spelled out in Appendix C of the *Solaris 10 Installation Guide: Basic Installations*. This means that the package or patch is compliant with the `pkgadd(1M)` or `patchadd(1M)` -R option, described in the man pages for those utilities. While nearly all Sun packages and patches conform to these guidelines, Sun cannot guarantee the conformance of packages and patches from third-party vendors. Some older Sun packages and patches might not be -R compliant. If you encounter such a package or patch, please report it to Sun. A non-conformant package can cause the package- or patch-addition software in `luupgrade` to fail or, worse, alter the current BE.

**Notes** For versions of the Solaris operating system prior to Solaris 10, Live Upgrade supports the release it is distributed on and up to three marketing releases back. For example, if you obtained Live Upgrade with Solaris 9 (including a Solaris 9 upgrade), that version of Live Upgrade supports Solaris versions 2.6, Solaris 7, and Solaris 8, in addition to Solaris 9. No version of Live Upgrade supports a Solaris version prior to Solaris 2.6.

Starting with version 10 of the Solaris operating system, Live Upgrade supports the release it is distributed on and up to two marketing releases back. For example, if you obtained Live Upgrade with Solaris 10 (including a Solaris 10 upgrade), that version of Live Upgrade supports Solaris 8 and Solaris 9, in addition to Solaris 10. For instructions on adding Live Upgrade packages for the release you want to install, see *Solaris 10 5/08 Installation Guide: Solaris Live Upgrade and Upgrade Planning*.

Correct operation of Solaris Live Upgrade requires that a limited set of patch revisions be installed for a given OS version. Before installing or running Live Upgrade, you are required to install the limited set of patch revisions. Make sure you have the most recently updated patch list by consulting <http://sunsolve.sun.com>. Search for the infodoc 72099 on the SunSolve web site.

**Name** luxadm – administer Sun Fire 880 storage subsystem and FC\_AL devices

**Synopsis** luxadm [*options*]... *subcommand* [*options*]... *enclosure*  
[,*dev*] | *pathname*...

**Description** The luxadm program is an administrative command that manages the SENA, Sun Fire 880 internal storage subsystem, and individual Fiber Channel Arbitrated Loop (FC\_AL) devices. luxadm performs a variety of control and query tasks depending on the command line arguments and options used.

The command line must contain a subcommand. The command line may also contain options, usually at least one enclosure name or pathname, and other parameters depending on the subcommand. You need specify only as many characters as are required to uniquely identify a subcommand.

Specify the device that a subcommand interacts with by entering a pathname. For the SENA subsystem, a disk device or enclosure services controller may instead be specified by entering the World Wide Name (WWN) for the device or a port to the device. The device may also be specified by entering the name of the SENA enclosure, and an optional identifier for the particular device in the enclosure. The individual FC\_AL devices may be specified by entering the WWN for the device or a port to the device.

**Pathname** Specify the device or controller by either a complete physical pathname or a complete logical pathname.

For SENA, a typical physical pathname for a device is:

```
/devices/sbus@1f,0/SUNW,socal@1,0/sf@0,0/ssd@w2200002037000f96,
0:a,raw
```

For all SENA IBs (Interface Boards) and Sun Fire 880 SES device controllers on the system, a logical link to the physical paths is kept in the directory /dev/es. An example of a logical link is /dev/es/ses0.

The WWN may be used in place of the pathname to select an FC\_AL device, SENA subsystem IB, or Sun Fire 880 internal storage subsystem. The WWN is a unique 16 hexadecimal digit value that specifies either the port used to access the device or the device itself. A typical WWN value is:

```
2200002037000f96
```

See NOTES for more information on the WWN formats.

For a disk in a Sun Fire 880 internal storage subsystem, a typical physical pathname is:

```
/devices/pci@8,600000/SUNW,qlc@2/fp@0,0/ssd@w2100002037a6303c,0:a
```

and a typical logical pathname is:

```
/dev/rdisk/c2t8d0s2
```

For individual FC\_AL devices, a typical physical pathname is:

```
/devices/sbus@3.0/SUNW,socal@d,10000/sf@0,0/ssd@w2200002037049fc3,0:a,raw
```

and a typical logical pathname is:

```
/dev/rdisk/c1t0d0s2
```

**Enclosure** For SENA, a device may be identified by its enclosure name and slotname:

```
box_name[, fslot_number]
```

```
box_name[, rslot_number]
```

*box\_name* is the name of the SENA enclosure, as specified by the `enclosure_name` subcommand. When used without the optional *slot\_number* parameter, the *box\_name* identifies the SENA subsystem IB.

*f* or *r* specifies the front or rear slots in the SENA enclosure.

*slot\_number* specifies the slot number of the device in the SENA enclosure, 0-6 or 0-10.

For a Sun Fire 880 internal storage subsystem, a device may also be identified by its enclosure name and slot name. However, there is only one set of disks:

```
box_name[, sslot_number]
```

*box\_name* is the name of the Sun Fire 880 enclosure, as specified by the `enclosure_name` subcommand. When used without the optional *slot\_number* parameter, *box\_name* identifies the Sun Fire 880 internal storage subsystem enclosure services device. Use *s* to specify the disk slot number in the Sun Fire 880 internal storage subsystem, 0 - 11.

See [disks\(1M\)](#) and [devlinks\(1M\)](#) for additional information on logical names for disks and subsystems.

**Options** The following options are supported by all subcommands:

- e Expert mode. This option is not recommended for the novice user.
- v Verbose mode.

Options that are specific to particular subcommands are described with the subcommand in the USAGE section.

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

*enclosure*

The *box\_name* of the SENA or Sun Fire 880 internal storage subsystem.

*fibre\_channel\_HBA\_port*

The path to the host controller port. A typical path is:

```
/devices/pci@8,600000/pci@1/SUNW,qlc@4/fp@0,0:devctl
```



*pathname*

The logical or physical path of a SENA IB, Sun Fire 880 internal storage subsystem, or disk device. *pathname* can also be the WWN of a SENA IB, SENA disk, or individual FC\_AL device.

**Usage**

Subcommands `display enclosure[,dev] ... | pathname ...`  
`display -p pathname ...`  
`display -r enclosure[,dev] ... | pathname ...`  
`display -v enclosure[,dev] ... | pathname ...`

Displays enclosure or device specific data.

Subsystem data consists of enclosure environmental sense information and status for all subsystem devices, including disks.

Disk data consists of inquiry, capacity, and configuration information.

- p Displays performance information for the device or subsystem specified by *pathname*. This option only applies to subsystems that accumulate performance information.
- r Displays error information for the FC\_AL device specified by the *pathname*, or, if the path is a SENA, for all devices on the loop. The -r option only applies to SENA subsystems and individual FC\_AL devices.
- v Displays in verbose mode, including mode sense data.

`download [ -s ] [ -f filename_path ] enclosure . .`

Download the prom image pointed to the SENA subsystem Interface Board unit or the Sun Fire 880 internal storage subsystem specified by the enclosure or *pathname*.

When the SENA's download is complete, the SENA will be reset and the downloaded code executed. If no filename is specified, the default prom image will be used. The default prom image for the SENA is in the directory `usr/lib/locale/C/LC_MESSAGES` and is named `ibfirmware`

When the Sun Fire 880 internal storage subsystem's download is complete, the subsystem resets and the downloaded code begins execution. The default firmware image for the Sun Fire 880 internal storage subsystem is in:

`/usr/platform/SUNW,Sun-Fire-880/lib/images/int_fcbpl_fw.`

- s Save. The -s option is used to save the downloaded firmware in the FEPROM. If -s is not specified, the downloaded firmware will not be saved across power cycles.

The -s option does not apply to the Sun Fire 880 internal storage subsystem as it always stores downloaded firmware in the flash memory.

When using the `-s` option, the `download` subcommand modifies the FEPROM on the subsystem and should be used with *caution*.

`enclosure_name new_name enclosure | pathname`

Change the enclosure name of the enclosure or enclosures specified by the enclosure or pathname. The new name (*new\_name*) must be 16 or less characters. Only alphabetic or numeric characters are acceptable. This subcommand applies only to the SENA and the Sun Fire 880 internal storage subsystem.

`failover primary | secondary pathname`

Select which Sun Storage T3 storage array partner group controller accesses a given logical volume. If `primary` is specified, the logical volume is accessed through the primary controller. If `secondary` is specified, the logical volume is accessed through the secondary controller specified by *pathname*.

`fcal_s_download [ -f fcode-file ]`

Download the fcode contained in the file *fcode-file* into *all* the FC100/S Sbus Cards. This command is interactive and expects user confirmation before downloading the fcode.

Use `fcal_s_download` *only* in single-user mode. Using `fcal_s_download` to update a host adapter while there is I/O activity through that adapter *will* cause the adapter to reset. Newly updated FCode will not be executed or visible until a system reboot.

`-f fcode-file` When invoked without the `-f` option, the current version of the fcode in each FC100/S Sbus card is printed.

`fcode_download -p`

`fcode_download -d dir-name`

Locate the installed FC/S, FC100/S, FC100/P, or FC100/2P host bus adapter cards and download the FCode files in *dir-name* to the appropriate cards. The command determines the correct card for each type of file, and is interactive. User confirmation is required before downloading the FCode to each device.

Use `fcode_download` to load FCode only in single-user mode. Using `fcode_download` to update a host adapter while there is I/O activity through that adapter causes the adapter to reset. Newly updated FCode will not be executed or visible until a system reboot.

`-d dir-name` Download the FCode files contained in the directory *dir-name* to the appropriate adapter cards.

`-p` Prints the current version of FCode loaded on each card. No download is performed.

`inquiry enclosure[,dev] . . . | pathname . . .`

Display the inquiry information for the selected device specified by the enclosure or pathname.

`insert_device [ enclosure,dev ... ]`

Assist the user in the hot insertion of a new device or a chain of new devices. Refer to NOTES for limitations on hotplug operations. This subcommand applies only to the SENA, Sun Fire 880 internal storage subsystem, and individual FC\_AL drives. For the SENA, if more than one enclosure has been specified, concurrent hot insertions on multiple busses can be performed. With no arguments to the subcommand, entire enclosures or individual FC\_AL drives can be inserted. For the SENA or the Sun Fire 880 internal storage subsystem, this subcommand guides the user interactively through the hot insertion steps of a new device or chain of devices. If a list of disks was entered it will ask the user to verify the list of devices to be inserted is correct, at which point the user can continue or quit. It then interactively asks the user to insert the disk(s) or enclosure(s) and then creates and displays the logical pathnames for the devices.

`led enclosure,dev ... | pathname ...`

Display the current state of the LED associated with the disk specified by the enclosure or pathname. This subcommand only applies to subsystems that support this functionality.

`led_blink enclosure,dev ... | pathname ...`

Requests the subsystem to start blinking the LED associated with the disk specified by the enclosure or pathname. This subcommand only applies to subsystems that support this functionality.

`led_off enclosure,dev ... | pathname ...`

Requests the subsystem to disable (turn off) the LED associated with the disk specified by the enclosure or pathname. On a SENA subsystem, this may or may not cause the LED to turn off or stop blinking depending on the state of the SENA subsystem. Refer to the SENA Array Installation and Service Manual (p/n 802-7573). This subcommand only applies to subsystems that support this functionality.

`led_on pathname ...`

Requests the subsystem to enable (turn on) the LED associated with the disk specified by the pathname. This subcommand only applies to subsystems that support this functionality.

`power_off [ -F ] enclosure[,dev] ... | pathname ...`

When a SENA is addressed, this subcommand causes the SENA subsystem to go into the power-save mode. The SENA drives are not available when in the power-save mode. When a drive in a SENA is addressed the drive is set to the drive off/unmated state. In the drive off/unmated state, the drive is spun down (stopped) and in bypass mode. This command does not apply to the Sun Fire 880 internal storage subsystem.

-F The force option only applies to the SENA. Instructs luxadm to attempt to power off one or more devices even if those devices are being used by this host (and are, therefore, busy).

*Warning:* Powering off a device which has data that is currently being used will cause unpredictable results. Users should attempt to power off the device normally (without -F) first, only resorting to this option when sure of the consequences of

overriding normal checks.

`power_on enclosure[, dev] . .`

Causes the SENA subsystem to go out of the power-save mode, when this subcommand is addressed to a SENA.. When this subcommand is addressed to a drive the drive is set to its normal start-up state. This command does not apply to the Sun Fire 880 internal storage subsystem.

`probe [-p]`

Finds and displays information about all attached SENA subsystems, Sun Fire 880 internal storage subsystems, and individual FC\_AL devices, including the logical pathname, the WWNs, and enclosure names. This subcommand warns the user if it finds different SENAs with the same enclosure names.

`-p` Includes the physical pathname in the display.

`qlgc_s_download [-f fcode-file]`

Download the FCode contained in the file *fcode-file* into all the FC100/P, FC100/2P PCI host adapter cards. This command is interactive and expects user confirmation before downloading the FCode to each device. Only use `qlgc_s_download` in single-user mode. Using `qlgc_s_download` to update a host adapter while there is I/O activity through that adapter will cause the adapter to reset. Newly updated FCode will not be executed or visible until a system reboot.

`-f fcode-file` When invoked without the `-f` option, the current version of the FCode in each FC100/P, FC100/2P PCI card is printed.

`release pathname`

Release a reservation held on the specified disk. The pathname should be the physical or logical pathname for the disk.

This subcommand is included for historical and diagnostic purposes only.

`remove_device [-F] enclosure[,dev] . . . | pathname . . .`

Assists the user in hot removing a device or a chain of devices. This subcommand can also be used to remove entire enclosures. This subcommand applies to the SENA, Sun Fire 880 internal storage subsystem, and individual FC\_AL drives. Refer to NOTES for limitations on hotplug operations. For the SENA, Sun Fire 880 internal storage subsystem, and individual FC\_AL devices, this subcommand guides the user through the hot removal of a device or devices. During execution it will ask the user to verify the list of devices to be removed is correct, at which point the user can continue or quit. It then prepares the disk(s) or enclosure(s) for removal and interactively asks the user to remove the disk(s) or enclosure(s).

For Multi-Hosted disk, the steps taken are:

- Issue the `luxadm remove_device` command on the first host. When prompted to continue, wait.

- Issue the `luxadm remove_device` command on the secondary hosts. When prompted to continue, wait.
  - Continue with the `remove_device` command on the first host. Remove the device when prompted to do so.
  - Complete the `luxadm remove_device` command on the additional hosts.
- F Instructs `luxadm` to attempt to hot plug one or more devices even if those devices are being used by this host (and are, therefore, *busy* or *reserved*), to *force* the hotplugging operation.

*Warning:* Removal of a device which has data that is currently being used will cause unpredictable results. Users should attempt to hotplug normally (without -F) first, only resorting to this option when sure of the consequences of overriding normal hotplugging checks.

|                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>reserve <i>pathname</i></code>             | Reserve the specified disk for exclusive use by the issuing host. The <i>pathname</i> used should be the physical or logical <i>pathname</i> for the disk.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|                                                  | This subcommand is included for historical and diagnostic purposes only.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <code>set_boot_dev [ -y ] <i>pathname</i></code> | Set the boot-device variable in the system PROM to the physical device name specified by <i>pathname</i> , which can be a block special device or the <i>pathname</i> of the directory on which the boot file system is mounted. The command normally runs interactively requesting confirmation for setting the default boot-device in the PROM. The -y option can be used to run it non-interactively, in which case no confirmation is requested or required. |
| <code>start <i>pathname</i></code>               | Spin up the specified disk(s) in a SENA.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <code>stop <i>pathname</i>...</code>             | Spin down the specified disks in a SENA.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

SENA, Sun Fire 880  
Internal Storage  
Subsystem, and  
Individual FC\_AL Drive  
Expert Mode  
Subcommands

The following subcommands are for expert use only, and are applicable only to the SENA, Sun Fire 880 internal storage subsystem, and fiber channel loops. They should only be used by users that are knowledgeable about the SENA subsystem and fiber channel loops.

If you specify a disk to an expert subcommand that operates on a bus, the subcommand operates on the bus to which the specified disk is attached.

-e bypass [ -ab ] *enclosure,dev*  
-e bypass -f *enclosure*

Request the enclosure services controller to set the LRC (Loop Redundancy Circuit) to the bypassed state for the port and device specified.

|                               |                                                                                                                                               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                               |                                                                                                                                               | This subcommand supports the following options:                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                               | -a                                                                                                                                            | Bypass port a of the device specified.                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|                               | -b                                                                                                                                            | Bypass port b of the device specified.                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| -e dump_map                   | <i>fibre_channel_HBA_port</i>                                                                                                                 | Display WWN data for a target device or host bus adapter on the specified fibre channel port. If there are no target devices on the specified port, an error is returned.                                                           |
| -e enable                     | [ -ab ] <i>enclosure,dev</i>                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| -e enable                     | -f <i>enclosure</i>                                                                                                                           | Request the enclosure services controller to set the LRC (Loop Redundancy Circuit) to the enabled state for the port and device specified.                                                                                          |
|                               |                                                                                                                                               | This subcommand supports the following options:                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                               | -a                                                                                                                                            | Enable port a of the device specified.                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|                               | -b                                                                                                                                            | Enable port b of the device specified.                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| -e forcelp                    | <i>enclosure[,dev] ...  pathname ...</i>                                                                                                      | Force the link to reinitialize, using the Loop Initialization Primitive (LIP) sequence. The enclosure or pathname can specify any device on the loop. Use the pathname to specify a specific path for multiple loop configurations. |
|                               |                                                                                                                                               | This is an expert only command and should be used with caution. It will reset all ports on the loop.                                                                                                                                |
| -e rdls                       | <i>enclosure[,dev] ...  pathname ...</i>                                                                                                      | Read and display the link error status information for all available devices on the loop that contains the device specified by the enclosure or pathname.                                                                           |
| Other Expert Mode Subcommands | See NOTES for limitations of these subcommands. They should only be used by users that are knowledgeable about the systems they are managing. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

These commands do not apply to the Sun Fire 880 internal storage subsystem.

|                                  |                                                    |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| -e bus_getstate <i>pathname</i>  | Get and display the state of the specified bus.    |
| -e bus_quiesce <i>pathname</i>   | Quiesce the specified bus.                         |
| -e bus_reset <i>pathname</i>     | Reset the specified bus only.                      |
| -e bus_resetall <i>pathname</i>  | Reset the specified bus and all devices.           |
| -e bus_unquiesce <i>pathname</i> | Unquiesce the specified bus. the specified device. |
| -e dev_getstate <i>pathname</i>  | Get and display the state of the specified device. |
| -e dev_reset <i>pathname</i>     | Reset the specified device.                        |
| -e offline <i>pathname</i>       | Take the specified device offline.                 |
| -e online <i>pathname</i>        | Put the specified device online.                   |

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Displaying the SENAs and Individual FC\_AL Devices on a System

The following example finds and displays all of the SENAs and individual FC\_AL devices on a system:

```
example% luxadm probe
```

EXAMPLE 2 Displaying a SENA or Sun Fire 880 Internal Storage Subsystem

The following example displays a SENA or Sun Fire 880 internal storage subsystem:

```
example% luxadm display /dev/es/ses0
```

EXAMPLE 3 Displaying Two Subsystems

The following example displays two subsystems using the enclosure names:

```
example% luxadm display BOB system1
```

EXAMPLE 4 Displaying Information about the First Disk

The following example displays information about the first disk in the front of the enclosure named BOB. Use *f* to specify the front disks. Use *r* to specify the rear disks.

```
example% luxadm display BOB,f0
```

**EXAMPLE 5** Displaying Information on a Sun Fire 880 Internal Storage Subsystem

The Sun Fire 880 internal storage subsystem has only one set of disks. In this case, use `s` to specify the slot:

```
example% luxadm display BOB,s0
```

**EXAMPLE 6** Displaying Information about a SENA disk, an Enclosure, or an Individual FC\_AL Drive

The following example displays information about a SENA disk, an enclosure, or an individual FC\_AL drive with the port WWN of 2200002037001246:

```
example% luxadm display 2200002037001246
```

**EXAMPLE 7** Using Unique Characters to Issue a Subcommand

The following example uses only as many characters as are required to uniquely identify a subcommand:

```
example% luxadm disp BOB
```

**EXAMPLE 8** Displaying Error Information

The following example displays error information about the loop that the enclosure BOB is on:

```
example% luxadm display -r BOB
```

**EXAMPLE 9** Downloading New Firmware into the Interface Board

The following example downloads new firmware into the Interface Board in the enclosure named BOB (using the default path for the file to download):

```
example% luxadm download -s BOB
```

**EXAMPLE 10** Displaying Information from the SCSI Inquiry Command

The following example displays information from the SCSI inquiry command from all individual disks on the system, using only as many characters as necessary to uniquely identify the inquiry subcommand:

```
example% luxadm inq /dev/rdisk/c?t?d?s2
```



**EXAMPLE 11** Hotplugging

The following example hotplugs a new drive into the first slot in the front of the enclosure named BOB:

```
example% luxadm insert_device BOB,f0
```

The following example hotplugs a new drive into the first slot in the Sun Fire 880 internal storage subsystem named SF880-1:

```
example% luxadm insert_device SF880-1,s0
```

**EXAMPLE 12** Running an Expert Subcommand

The following example runs an expert subcommand. The subcommand forces a loop initialization on the loop that the enclosure BOB is on:

```
example% luxadm -e forcelpip BOB
```

**EXAMPLE 13** Using the Expert Mode Hot Plugging Subcommands

An example of using the expert mode hot plugging subcommands to hot remove a disk follows. See NOTES for hot plugging limitations.

The first step reserves the SCSI device so that it can't be accessed by way of its second SCSI bus:

```
example# luxadm reserve /dev/rdisk/c1t8d0s2
```

**EXAMPLE 14** Taking the Disk to be Removed Offline

The next two steps take the disk to be removed offline then quiesce the bus:

```
example# luxadm -e offline /dev/rdisk/c1t8d0s2
example# luxadm -e bus_quiesce /dev/rdisk/c1t8d0s2
```

**EXAMPLE 15** Unquiescing the Bus

The user then removes the disk and continues by unquiescing the bus, putting the disk back online, then unreserving it:

```
example# luxadm -e bus_unquiesce /dev/rdisk/c1t8d0s2
example# luxadm -e online /dev/rdisk/c1t8d0s2
example# luxadm release /dev/rdisk/c1t8d0s2
```

**Environment Variables** See [environ\(5\)](#) for a description of the LANG environment variable that affects the execution of luxadm.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 An error occurred.

**Files** `usr/lib/firmware/fc_s/fc_s_fcode`  
`usr/lib/locale/C/LC_MESSAGES/ibfirmware`

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| usr/sbin | ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------|----------------|-----------------|
|          | Availability   | SUNWluxop       |

**See Also** [devlinks\(1M\)](#), [disks\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#), [ses\(7D\)](#)

*SENA Array Installation and Service Manual* (p/n 802-7573).

*RAID Manager 6.1 Installation and Support Guide Answerbook*

*RAID Manager 6.1 User's Guide Answerbook*

**Notes** See the *SENA Array Installation and Service Manual* for additional information on the SENA. Refer to *Tutorial for SCSI use of IEEE Company\_ID*, R. Snively, for additional information regarding the IEEE extended WWN. See **SEE ALSO**. Currently, only some device drivers support hot plugging. If hot plugging is attempted on a disk or bus where it is not supported, an error message of the form:

```
luxadm: can't acquire "PATHNAME": No such file or directory
```

will be displayed.

You must be careful not to quiesce a bus that contains the root or the `/usr` filesystems or any swap data. If you do quiesce such a bus a deadlock can result, requiring a system reboot.

**Name** m64config, SUNWm64\_config – configure the M64 Graphics Accelerator

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/m64config [-defaults] [-depth 8 | 24 | 32]  
 [-dev *device-filename*] [-file machine | system]  
 [-prconf] [-propt]  
 [-res *video-mode* [now | try] [noconfirm | nocheck ]]  
 /usr/sbin/m64config [-prconf] [-propt]  
 /usr/sbin/m64config [-help] [-res ?]

**Description** m64config configures the M64 Graphics Accelerator and some of the X11 window system defaults for M64.

The first form of m64config stores the specified options in the OWconfig file. These options will be used to initialize the M64 device the next time the window system is run on that device. Updating options in the OWconfig file provides persistence of these options across window system sessions and system reboots.

The second and third forms which invoke only the -prconf, -propt, -help, and -res ? options do not update the OWconfig file. Additionally, for the third form all other options are ignored.

Options may be specified for only one M64 device at a time. Specifying options for multiple M64 devices requires multiple invocations of m64config.

Only M64-specific options can be specified through m64config. The normal window system options for specifying default depth, default visual class and so forth are still specified as device modifiers on the openwin command line. See the for details.

The user can also specify the OWconfig file that is to be updated. By default, the machine-specific file in the /etc/openwin directory tree is updated. The -file option can be used to specify an alternate file to use. For example, the system-global OWconfig file in the /usr/openwin directory tree can be updated instead.

Both of these standard OWconfig files can only be written by root. Consequently, the m64config program, which is owned by the root user, always runs with setuid root permission.

**Options** -defaults

Resets all option values to their default values.

-depth 8 | 24 | 32

Sets the depth (bits per pixel) on the device. Possible values are 8, 24, or 32 (where 32 uses 24 bits per pixel). Log out of the current window system session and log back in for the change to take effect. 24 or 32 enables TrueColor graphics in the window system, at the expense of screen resolution.

The 32 setting enables simultaneous 8- and 24-bit color windows on m64 devices that support it. With setting 32, -propt shows depth 32 and -prconf shows depth 24. To check

window depth, use the `xwininfo` utility. The `xwininfo` utility is usually shipped in the package containing frame buffer software (such as `SUNWxwpl1t`).

The maximum resolution that is available with 24 bits per pixel depends on the amount of memory installed on the PGX card. For 2-MB PGX cards, the maximum available resolution is 800x600. For 4-MB cards, it is 1152x900. For 8-MB cards, it is 1920x1080. If there is not enough memory for the specified combination of resolution and depth, `m64config` displays an error message and exits.

**-dev *device-filename***

Specifies the M64 special file. If not specified, `m64config` will try `/dev/fbs/m640` through `/dev/fbs/m648` until one is found.

**-file *machine|system***

Specifies which OWconfig file to update. If `machine`, the machine-specific OWconfig file in the `/etc/openwin` directory tree is used. If `system`, the global OWconfig file in the `/usr/openwin` directory tree is used. If the file does not exist, it is created. This option has no effect unless other options are specified. The default is `machine`.

**-help**

Prints a list of the `m64config` command line options, along with a brief explanation of each.

**-prconf**

Prints the M64 hardware configuration. The following is a typical display using the `-prconf` option:

```

--- Hardware Configuration for /dev/fbs/m640 ---
ASIC: version 0x41004754
DAC: version 0x0
PROM: version 0x0
Card possible resolutions: 640x480x60, 800x600x75, 1024x768x60
 1024x768x70, 1024x768x75, 1280x1024x75, 1280x1024x76
 1280x1024x60, 1152x900x66, 1152x900x76, 1280x1024x67
 960x680x112S, 960x680x108S, 640x480x60i, 768x575x50i
 1280x800x76, 1440x900x76, 1600x1000x66, 1600x1000x76
 vga, svga, 1152, 1280, stereo, ntsc, pal
Monitor possible resolutions: 720x400x70, 720x400x85, 640x480x60
 640x480x67, 640x480x72, 640x480x75, 800x600x56, 800x600x60
 800x600x72, 800x600x75, 832x624x75, 1024x768x85, 1024x768x60
 1024x768x70, 1024x768x75, 1280x1024x75, 1280x1024x76,
 1152x900x66, 1152x900x76, 1280x1024x67, 960x680x112S
 vga, svga, 1152, 1280, stereo
Possible depths: 8, 24
Current resolution setting: 1280x1024x76
Current depth: 8

```

**-propt**

Prints the current values of all M64 options in the OWconfig file specified by the `-file` option for the device specified by the `-dev` option. Prints the values of options as they will be in the OWconfig file after the call to `m64config` completes. The following is a typical display using the `-propt` option:

```
--- OpenWindows Configuration for /dev/fbs/m640 ---
OWconfig: machine
Video Mode: not set
Depth: 8
```

**-res *video-mode* [ now | try [ noconfirm | nocheck ] ]**

Specifies the video mode used to drive the monitor connected to the specified M64 device. Video modes are built-in. *video-mode* has the format of *widthxheightxrate*. *width* is the screen width in pixels, *height* is the screen height in pixels, and *rate* is the vertical frequency of the screen refresh. As a convenience, `-res` also accepts formats with `@` preceding the refresh rate instead of `x`. For example, `1280x1024@76`.

A list of valid video modes is obtained by issuing the following command: `m64config -res '??'`. Note that the `?` must be quoted. Not all resolutions are supported by both the video board and by the monitor. `m64config` will not permit you to set a resolution the board does not support, and will request confirmation before setting a resolution the monitor does not support.

**Symbolic names**

For convenience, some video modes have symbolic names defined for them. Instead of the form *widthxheightxrate*, one of these names may be supplied as the argument to `-res`. The meaning of the symbolic name `none` is that when the window system is run the screen resolution will be the video mode that is currently programmed in the device.

| Name | Corresponding Video Mode                    |
|------|---------------------------------------------|
| svga | 1024x768x60                                 |
| 1152 | 1152x900x76                                 |
| 1280 | 1280x1024x76                                |
| none | (video mode currently programmed in device) |

The `-res` option also accepts additional sub-options immediately following the video mode specification. Any or all of these may be present.

**nocheck**      If present, the normal error checking based on the monitor sense code will be suspended. The video mode specified by the user will be accepted regardless of whether it is appropriate for the currently attached monitor.

This option is useful if a different monitor is to be connected to the M64 device. *Use of this option implies noconfirm as well.*

**noconfirm** Using the `-res` option, the user could potentially put the system into an unusable state, a state where there is no video output. This can happen if there is ambiguity in the monitor sense codes for the particular code read. To reduce the chance of this, the default behavior of `m64config` is to print a warning message to this effect and to prompt the user to find out if it is okay to continue. The `noconfirm` option instructs `m64config` to bypass this confirmation and to program the requested video mode anyway. This option is useful when `m64config` is being run from a shell script.

**now** If present, not only will the video mode be updated in the `OWconfig` file, but the M64 device will be immediately programmed to display this video mode. (This is useful for changing the video mode before starting the window system).

It is inadvisable to use this sub-option with `m64config` while the configured device is being used (for example, while running the window system); unpredictable results may occur. To run `m64config` with the `now` sub-option, first bring the window system down. If the `now` sub-option is used within a window system session, the video mode will be changed immediately, but the width and height of the affected screen won't change until the window system is exited and reentered again. Consequently, this usage is strongly discouraged.

**try** If present, the specified video mode will be programmed on a trial basis. The user will be asked to confirm the video mode by typing `y` within 10 seconds. Or the user may terminate the trial before 10 seconds are up by typing any character. Any character other than `'y'` or carriage return is considered a no and the previous video mode will be restored and `m64config` will not change the video mode in the `OWconfig` file (other options specified will still take effect). If a carriage return is typed, the user is prompted for a yes or no answer on whether to keep the new video mode.

This sub-option should not be used with `m64config` while the configured device is being used (for example, while running the window system) as unpredictable results may occur. To run `m64config` with the `try` sub-option, the window system should be brought down first.

**Defaults** For a given invocation of `m64config` command line if an option does not appear on the command line, the corresponding `OWconfig` option is not updated; it retains its previous value.

When the window system is run, if an M64 option has never been specified by `m64config`, a default value is used. The option defaults are as follows:

| Option | Default       |
|--------|---------------|
| -dev   | /dev/fbs/m640 |
| -file  | machine       |
| -res   | none          |

The default for the `-res` option of `none` means that when the window system is run the screen resolution will be the video mode that is currently programmed in the device.

This provides compatibility for users who are used to specifying the device resolution through the PROM. On some devices (for example, GX) this is the only way of specifying the video mode. This means that the PROM ultimately determines the default M64 video mode.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Switching the Monitor Type

The following example switches the monitor type to the maximum resolution of 1280 x 1024 at 76 Hz:

```
example% /usr/sbin/m64config -res 1280x1024x76
```

|              |                                  |                                                  |
|--------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Files</b> | /dev/fbs/m640                    | device special file                              |
|              | /etc/openwin/server/etc/OWconfig | system config file (creates or updates the file) |
|              | /usr/lib/fbconfig/SUNWm64_config | symbolic link to usr/sbin/m64config              |

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWm64cf       |

**See Also** [attributes\(5\)](#), [m64\(7D\)](#)





## REFERENCE

# System Administration Commands - Part 2

**Name** mail.local – store mail in a mailbox

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/mail.local [-f *sender*] [-d] *recipient*

**Description** mail.local reads the standard input up to an end-of-file and appends it to each user's mail file (mailbox). This program is intended to be used by [sendmail\(1M\)](#) as a mail delivery agent for local mail. It is not a user interface agent.

Messages are appended to the user's mail file in the /var/mail directory. The user must be a valid user name.

Each delivered mail message in the mailbox is preceded by a "Unix From line" with the following format:

```
From sender_address time_stamp
```

The *sender\_address* is extracted from the SMTP envelope address (the envelope address is specified with the -f option).

A trailing blank line is also added to the end of each message.

The mail files are locked with a .lock file while mail is appended.

The mail files are created with mode 660, owner is set to *recipient*, and group is set to mail. If the "biff" service is returned by [getservbyname\(3SOCKET\)](#), the biff server is notified of delivered mail. This program also computes the Content-Length: header which will be used by the mailbox reader to mark the message boundary.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- f *sender* Specifies the "envelope from address" of the message. This flag is technically optional, but should be used.
- d Specifies the recipient of the message. This flag is also optional and is supported here for backward compatibility. That is, mail.local *recipient* is the same as mail.local -d *recipient*.
- l Turn on LMTP mode.
- r *from* Specify the sender's name (for backward compatibility).
- 7 Do not advertise 8BITMIME support in LMTP mode.
- b Return a permanent error instead of a temporary error if a mailbox exceeds quota.

**Operands** The following operand is supported:

*recipient* The recipient of the mail message.

**Environment Variables** TZ Used to set the appropriate time zone on the timestamp.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful operation.

>0 An error occurred.

**Files** /tmp/local.XXXXXXX temporary files

/tmp/lochd.XXXXXXX temporary files

/var/mail/user\_name user's mail file

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWsndmu       |

**See Also** [mail\(1\)](#), [comsat\(1M\)](#), [sendmail\(1M\)](#), [getservbyname\(3SOCKET\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** makedbm – make a dbm file, or get a text file from a dbm file

**Synopsis** makedbm [-b] [-l] [-s] [-E] [-i *yp\_input\_file*]  
 [-o *yp\_output\_name*] [-d *yp\_domain\_name*]  
 [-m *yp\_master\_name*] [-S *delimiter*]  
 [-D *number\_of\_delimiters*] *infile outfile*  
 makedbm [-u *dbmfilename*]

**Description** The makedbm utility takes the *infile* and converts it to a pair of files in ndbm format (see [ndbm\(3C\)](#)), namely *outfile.pag* and *outfile.dir*. Each line of the input file is converted to a single dbm record. All characters up to the first TAB or SPACE form the key, and the rest of the line is the data. If a line ends with '\ (backslash), the data for that record is continued on to the next line. makedbm does not treat '#' (pound-sign) as a special character.

Because makedbm is mainly used in generating dbm files for the NIS name service, it generates a special entry with the key *yp\_last\_modified*, which is the date of *infile* (or the current time, if *infile* is '-'). The entries that have keys with the prefix *yp\_* are interpreted by NIS server utilities.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- b Insert the YP\_INTERDOMAIN into the output. This key causes [ypserv\(1M\)](#) to use DNS for host name and address lookups for hosts not found in the maps.
- d *yp\_domain\_name* Create a special entry with the key *yp\_domain\_name*.
- D *number\_of\_delimiters* Specify *number\_of\_delimiters* to skip before forming the key.
- E Delimiters are escaped.
- i *yp\_input\_file* Create a special entry with the key *yp\_input\_file*.
- l Lower case. Convert the keys of the given map to lower case, so that, for example, host name matches succeed independent of upper or lower case distinctions.
- m *yp\_master\_name* Create a special entry with the key *yp\_master\_name*. If no master host name is specified, *yp\_master\_name* is set to the local host name.
- o *yp\_output\_name* Create a special entry with the key *yp\_output\_name*.
- s Secure map. Accept connections from secure NIS networks only.
- S *delimiter* Specify the *delimiter* to use instead of the default delimiter for forming the key.
- u *dbmfilename* Undo a dbm file. Prints out the file in text format, one entry per line, with a single space separating keys from values.

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

*infile* Input file for makedbm. If *infile* is '-' (dash), the standard input is read.

*outfile* One of two output files in ndbm format: *outfile.pag* and *outfile.dir*.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWcsu         |

**See Also** [ypserv\(1M\)](#), [ndbm\(3C\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** makemap – create database maps for sendmail

**Synopsis** makemap [-N] [-d] [-f] [-o] [-r] [-s] [-v] [-C *file*]  
[-c *cache**size*] [-D *comment**char*] [-e] [-l] [-t *delim*]  
[-u] *mantype mapname*

**Description** makemap creates the database maps used by the keyed map lookups in [sendmail\(1M\)](#). makemap reads from the standard input and outputs to the specified *mapname*.

In all cases, makemap reads lines from the standard input consisting of two words separated by whitespace. The first is the database key, the second is the value. The value may contain *%n* strings to indicated parameter substitution. Literal percents should be doubled (*%%*). Blank lines and lines beginning with *#* are ignored.

makemap handles three different database formats. Database format is selected using the *maptype* parameter. See OPERANDS.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- c *cache**size* Use the specified hash and B-Tree cache size (*cache**size*).
- C *file* Use the specified sendmail configuration file (*file*) for looking up the TrustedUser option.
- d Allow duplicate keys in the map. This is only allowed on B-Tree format maps. If two identical keys are read, both be inserted into the map.
- D *comment**char* Use the specified character to indicate a comment (which is ignored) instead of the default of *#*.
- e Allow empty value (right hand side).
- f Normally, all upper case letters in the key are folded to lower case. This flag disables that behavior. This is intended to mesh with the -f flag in the K line in `sendmail.cf`. The value is never case folded.
- l List supported map types.
- N Include the null byte that terminates strings in the map. This must match the -N flag in the K line in `sendmail.cf`
- o Append to an old file. This allows you to augment an existing file.
- r Allow replacement of existing keys. Normally makemap complains if you repeat a key, and does not do the insert.
- s Ignore safety checks on maps being created. This includes checking for hard or symbolic links in world writable directories.
- t *delim* Use the specified delimiter (*delim*) instead of whitespace.

- u Dump (unmap) the content of the database to standard output. Note that, if the -t option is also provided, the specified delimiter is used when the content is dumped instead of whitespace.
- v Verbosely print what it is doing.

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

- mapname* File name of the database map being created.
- maptype* Specifies the database format. The following *maptype* parameters are available:
  - dbm Specifies DBM format maps.
  - bt ree Specifies B-Tree format maps.
  - hash Specifies hash format maps.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWsndmu       |

**See Also** [editmap\(1M\)](#), [sendmail\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** makeuuid – generate Universal Unique Identifiers

**Synopsis** makeuuid [-e *ether*] [-n *count*] [-R *root*]

**Description** The makeuuid command generates UUIDs (Universal Unique Identifiers) conforming to the OSF DCE specification for UUIDs. The specification states:

"A UUID is an identifier that is unique across both space and time, with respect to the space of all UUIDs. A UUID can be used for multiple purposes, from tagging objects with an extremely short lifetime, to reliably identifying very persistent objects across a network.

"The generation of UUIDs does not require a registration authority for each single identifier. Instead, it requires a unique value over space for each UUID generator. This spatially unique value is [normally] specified as an IEEE 802 address, which is usually already applied to network-connected systems."

The makeuuid command generates one or more UUIDs on the standard output.

**Options** The makeuuid command supports the following options:

- e *ether* Supplies an alternate address to be used in the generation of the UUIDs. Normally, the system's Ethernet address is acquired and used during the generation of a UUID. However, this requires root privileges to open and read the network devices. If this is not possible, you must supply an alternate Ethernet address.
- n *count* Generate multiple UUIDs. This option generates the specified number of UUIDs, one per line. Using this form is more efficient than, and functionally equivalent to, calling the makeuuid command multiple times. This can be used, for example, when a large number of UUIDs need to be generated for a given application.
- R *root* Use *root* as the root filesystem path when updating the shared state file (see FILES). The shared state file must be writable by the user running makeuuid, otherwise no UUIDs will be generated and the command will return in failure.

**Note** – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the -R option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).

**Usage** Normally, you run the makeuuid command with root privileges, as the Ethernet address and state files can be easily accessed and updated. If this is not possible, you must use the -R and -e options to specify an alternate root and Ethernet address to use when calculating the UUIDs.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Generating Multiple UUIDs

The following command generates 3000 UUIDs:

```
example# makeuuid -n 3000
```



**EXAMPLE 2** Invoking Without Root Privileges

If you cannot obtain root privileges, you must specify an alternate Ethernet address and state file location:

```
example% makeuuid -e 11:22:33:44:55:66 -R /export/root/example2
```

See the caveat on the use of the `-R` option in the description of that option, above.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 Out of memory.
- 1 Invalid Ethernet address given or access denied.

**Files** `/var/sadm/system/uuid_state` UUID state file. Use of time values is one way that UUID generators, such as `makeuuid`, guarantee uniqueness. A state file is a mechanism that allows `makeuuid` to "remember" the last time value it used so it can increment that value for use in a new UUID. See the Internet Draft "UUIDs and GUIDs," dated February 4, 1998, for details on the state file mechanism.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWwsr2        |

**See Also** [prodreg\(1M\)](#), [Intro\(3\)](#), [libwsreg\(3LIB\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Notes** The formal UUID specification is in the OSF DCE specification, available at [www.opengroup.org](http://www.opengroup.org). As of the date of publication of this man page, a copy of the specification is available at:

<http://www.opengroup.org/onlinepubs/9629399/apdxa.htm>

Sun has no control over the availability of documents on the [www.opengroup.org](http://www.opengroup.org) web site.

**Name** masfcnv – SNMP configuration migration script

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/sma\_snmp/masfcnv [-cimnrs] [-l *agentmaster*]  
[-p *enabledisableerror*] [-t *noneadd*]  
[-u *agentmastererror*] [-y *agentmastererror*]

masfcnv [-V]

masfcnv [-?]

**Description** The `masfcnv` script is used to assist the system administrator in migrating an existing set of configuration files for the Sun SNMP Management Agent for Sun Fire and Netra Systems (MASF) to the Systems Management Agent (SMA).

The script accepts as input the currently installed set of MASF and SMA configuration files and outputs a new set of SMA configuration files. Existing SMA configuration files are backed up by appending `.bak` to the filename. The administrator can choose to output the new configuration to standard output, instead of replacing the current configuration, by specifying the `-n` option.

The migration script must be run as the superuser. Failure to do so causes the script to exit with an error message. Before running the script you should ensure that both the SMA and MASF agents are not running. If the agents are running they will be shut down by the script.

The migration script installs a new startup script for the MASF agent in `/etc/init.d`, as well as a backup of the old script. During migration, MASF will be configured as an AgentX subagent of SMA. All migration settings will be migrated to the SMA configuration file.

The migration script aborts if any unrecognized directives are found in either the MASF configuration files or the SMA configuration files. This can be overridden with the `-i` option. If this option is selected, the behavior is to retain unrecognized directives that were present in the SMA configuration, but remove those present in the MASF configuration.

The migration script then proceeds to migrate access control and trap configuration. As a side effect of running the migration script, the following directives might be expanded by the script into multiple directives with an equivalent interpretation:

- `rwcommunity`
- `rocommunity`
- `rwuser`
- `rouser`
- `trapcommunity`
- `trapsink`
- `trap2sink`
- `informsink`

- Access Control Migration Access control directives are expanded into the equivalent `com2sec`, `group`, `access` and `view` directives. Existing group names are renamed by prepending a prefix to avoid conflict with any which may already be defined in SMA.
- When migrating SNMPv1 or v2c access control, a conflict can occur if both MASF and SMA configuration files have defined access permissions for the same community and source address. The default behavior is to abort with a message, unless a use of the `-y` option specifies otherwise. If `-y agent` is specified then the MASF configuration takes precedence. If `-y master` is specified then the SMA configuration is retained.
- When migrating USM configuration (SNMPv3), a conflict can occur if both SMA and MASF configurations define a user with the same `securityName`. If this occurs, the behavior of the script is determined by the `-u` option. If `-u agent` is specified, the configuration of the user defined in the MASF configuration files is the one that is retained. Otherwise, if the `-u master` option is specified, the use defined in the SMA configuration files is retained.
- By default, the migration script attempts to migrate USM users from MASF to SMA. The script determines whether there are any SNMPv3 users present in the SMA configuration and whether the default `engineID` has been overridden in the SMA configuration files. If neither of these conditions obtain, then the any `usmUser` statements containing localized authentication keys can be migrated to SMA, along with the MASF `engineID`. This results in the `engineID` of the SMA master agent changing.
- If the script determines that there are existing SNMPv3 users or a manually configured `engineID` present in the SMA configuration, only those users defined in `createUser` statements are transferred. Those users that were defined in `usmUser` statements are transferred but will have their passwords reset to a random value. You should notify your users of their new password or reset the password yourself by editing the newly-generated configuration file.
- Trap/Inform Migration The migration script performs a check to determine whether a trap destination defined for MASF is already specified in an existing SMA `trapsink`, `trap2sink` or `informsink` directive. If this is the case, then the directive in the MASF configuration will be discarded to avoid duplicate traps/informs being received.
- `trapsink`, `trap2sink` and `informsink` directives specified in the existing SMA configuration are considered valid destinations for MASF traps/informs and will receive them from the MASF subagent after migration.
- If the `-t none` option was specified on the command line, the migration script carries over any remaining MASF trap/inform directives without modification.
- If the `-t add` option was specified (the default), the migration script expands any `trapsink`, `trap2sink`, or `informsink` directives to use the `TARGET-MIB` and `NOTIFICATION-MIB`. The `TARGET-MIB` specifies targets using IP addresses, so it might be desirable to use the `-t none` option if, for example, the network allocates IP addresses to hostnames dynamically by means of DHCP.

The expanded directives defines filters specific to the MASF agent so that traps from other subagents will not be received by migrated trap destinations. Existing filters present in the SMA configuration are, by default, not modified and might or might not receive MASF traps, depending upon the filters that were originally defined for them.

If the `-l` option is specified, any filters already defined in the `TARGET-MIB` and the `NOTIFICATION-MIB` for SMA are extended to include traps from MASF. In the event that a trap destination is already configured in the `TARGET-MIB` with the same target address and community as an existing MASF trap/inform sink, a conflict will arise.

If `-l agent` was specified and a conflict arises, the migration script uses the target SNMP parameters (that is, the SNMP version and choice of trap/inform) defined by the MASF `trap/informsink` directive to send traps to this destination. Otherwise, if the `-l master` option was specified, the conflict will be resolved using the target SNMP parameters specified in the SMA configuration.

**Miscellaneous** If the migration script encounters in the MASF configuration file any of the directives listed below and the directives are either not present or differ from the SMA configuration, the script will log a warning message.

- `syslocation`
- `syscontact`
- `sysname`
- `syssservices`
- `agentgroup`
- `agentuser`
- `authtrapenable`

**Options** The following options are supported:

- `-?`
- `--help` Displays usage information.
- `-c`
- `--no-community` Do not transfer v1/v2c communities.
- `-i`
- `--ignore-unrecognized-directives` Continue processing if unrecognized directives are present.
- `-l agent | master`
- `--master-trap-target=agent | master` If `agent` is specified, the existing SMA trap targets will be configured to receive traps that were previously sent to destinations for the Sun Fire SNMP agent. If `master` is specified, the targets will be configured to receive Sun Fire SNMP traps, but existing SNMP target parameters will be used.

---

|                                           |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -m                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| --no-usmuser                              | Do not transfer usm (v3) users.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| -n                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| --dry-run                                 | Run the migration without modifying any files. If an error arises, continue processing. This can be used to determine the likely migration issues.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| -p enable   disable   error               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| --use-agent-port=enable   disable   error | Indicates whether the port originally used by the Sun Fire SNMP agent should be used by the SMA agent after migration (if the two agents are using different ports). If enable is specified, then the port used by the Sun Fire SNMP agent will also be used by the SMA agent after migration. If disable is specified, the ports used by SMA will not be updated by the migration tool. If the error option is specified and the SMA agent is not already using the same ports as those used by the original Sun Fire SNMP agent, an error is reported and the migration process is terminated. If no option is specified the default behavior is equivalent to the error flag. |
| -r                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| --no-trap                                 | Do not transfer trap destinations.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| -s                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| --skip-user                               | If a user is found in the MASF configuration file that cannot be created in the new configuration because of a change in the engine ID, then output a message indicating that the user could not be migrated (needs to be manually recreated) and continue processing. If this option is not present, the migration tool will consider such a situation as an error and abort.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| -t none   add                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| --trap-filter=none   add                  | If none is specified then the script will copy trap directives directly. The administrator might need to manually update the                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

|                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                                  | <p>configuration file to ensure traps are only delivered to their intended destinations. If <code>add</code> is specified, trap filters will be constructed so that traps originating from the original Sun Fire SNMP agent are delivered only to the destinations that originally received them. The default behavior is <code>add</code>.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <code>-u agent   master   error</code><br><code>--select-user=agent   master   error</code>      | <p>Specifies that if a user with the same name is found in both configuration files that the conflict is to be resolved using the specified configuration file as input. Selecting a user from a particular file will also cause the group declaration for that user to be taken from the same file. If <code>agent</code> is specified then the user will be taken from the configuration file for the Sun Fire SNMP Agent. If <code>master</code> is specified, the user will be taken from the SMA configuration. Otherwise, if <code>error</code> is given, the script will terminate. If this option is not present, the default behavior is equivalent to the <code>error</code> flag.</p> |
| <code>-V</code><br><code>--version</code>                                                        | <p>Display the version of this script.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <code>-y agent   master   error</code><br><code>--select-community=agent   master   error</code> | <p>Specifies that if a community with the same name is found in both configuration files that the conflict is to be resolved using the specified configuration file as input. If <code>agent</code> is specified then the community will be taken from the configuration file for the Sun Fire SNMP Agent. If <code>master</code> is specified, the community will be taken from the SMA configuration. Otherwise, if <code>error</code> is given, the script will terminate. If this option is not present, the default behavior is equivalent to the <code>error</code> flag.</p>                                                                                                              |

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Simplest Case

The command shown below is appropriate for a simple migration. The migration fails if there are any potential conflicts.

```
masfcnv
```

## EXAMPLE 2 Migrating Such That MASF Settings Override

To migrate the MASF configuration such that it will always succeed, that MASF settings will override in the event of a conflict with SMA, and that access will still be provided on the original MASF port, enter:

```
masfcnv -is -l agent -p enable -u agent -y agent
```

## EXAMPLE 3 Dry Run, Retaining SMA Settings

To attempt a dry run and migrate the configuration such that any conflicts will be resolved by retaining existing SMA settings, enter:

```
masfcnv -l master -u master -y master
```

**Exit Status** 0 Success.  
non-zero A problem occurred during migration.

**Files** /etc/sma/snmp/snmpd.conf  
/var/sma\_snmp/snmpd.conf SMA configuration files  
/etc/opt/SUNWmasf/conf/snmpd.conf  
/var/opt/SUNWmasf/snmpd.dat MASF configuration files  
/tmp/sma\_migration.log masfcnv log file

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWsmcmd       |
| Interface Stability | Stable          |

**See Also** [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Notes** The former path to this utility, /usr/sfw/lib, is now a link to /usr/lib.

**Name** mdlogd – Solaris Volume Manager daemon

**Synopsis** mdlogd

**Description** mdlogd implements a simple daemon that watches the system console looking for messages written by the Solaris Volume Manager. When a Solaris Volume Manager message is detected, mdlogd sends a generic SNMP trap.

To enable traps, you must configure mdlogd into the SNMP framework. See *Solaris Volume Manager Administration Guide*.

**Usage** mdlogd implements the following SNMP MIB:

```
SOLARIS-VOLUME-MGR-MIB DEFINITIONS ::= BEGIN
 IMPORTS
 enterprises FROM RFC1155-SMI
 DisplayString FROM SNMPv2-TC;

 -- Sun Private MIB for Solaris Volume Manager

 sun OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= { enterprises 42 }
 sunSVM OBJECT IDENTIFIER ::= { sun 104 }

 -- this is actually just the string from /dev/log that
 -- matches the md: regular expressions.
 -- This is an interim SNMP trap generator to provide
 -- information until a more complete version is available.

 -- this definition is a formalization of the old
 -- Solaris DiskSuite mdlogd trap mib.

 svmOldTrapString OBJECT-TYPE
 SYNTAX DisplayString (SIZE (0..255))
 ACCESS read-only
 STATUS mandatory
 DESCRIPTION
 "This is the matched string that
 was obtained from /dev/log."
 ::= { sunSVM 1 }

 -- SVM Compatibility (error trap)

 svmNotice TrapTRAP-TYPE
 ENTERPRISE sunSVM
 VARIABLES { svmOldTrapString }
 DESCRIPTION
 "SVM error log trap for NOTICE.
 This matches 'NOTICE: md:'"
```



```

 ::= 1

svmWarningTrap TRAP-TYPE
 ENTERPRISE sunSVM
 VARIABLES { svmOldTrapString }
 DESCRIPTION
 "SVM error log trap for WARNING..
 This matches 'WARNING: md:'"

 ::= 2

svmPanicTrap TRAP-TYPE
 ENTERPRISE sunSVM
 VARIABLES { svmOldTrapString }
 DESCRIPTION
 "SVM error log traps for PANIC..
 This matches 'PANIC: md:'"

 ::= 3

END

```

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE    |
|---------------------|--------------------|
| Availability        | SUNWlvma, SUNWlvmr |
| Interface Stability | Obsolete           |

**See Also** [snmpdx\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

*Solaris Volume Manager Administration Guide*

**Name** mdmonitord – daemon to monitor metadevices

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/mdmonitord [-t *time\_interval*]

**Description** The mdmonitord utility is part of Solaris Volume Manager. It monitors and checks RAID1 (mirrors), RAID5 and hot spares.

There are two methods for checking:

- At fixed time intervals.
- When a RAID-1 (mirror), RAID-5, or hot spare fails. A failure generates an error event which triggers a check of these metadevices.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- t Time interval in seconds. The default value is 0, which causes probes to occur only upon an error. If you want to run mdmonitord at a regular interval, a value of 1800 (seconds, every half hour) is recommended as a starting point.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWmdu         |

**See Also** [svcs\(1\)](#), [metaclear\(1M\)](#), [metadb\(1M\)](#), [metadetach\(1M\)](#), [metahs\(1M\)](#), [metainit\(1M\)](#), [metaoffline\(1M\)](#), [metaonline\(1M\)](#), [metaparam\(1M\)](#), [metarecover\(1M\)](#), [metarename\(1M\)](#), [metareplace\(1M\)](#), [metaroot\(1M\)](#), [metaset\(1M\)](#), [metassist\(1M\)](#), [metastat\(1M\)](#), [metasync\(1M\)](#), [metattach\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [md.tab\(4\)](#), [md.cf\(4\)](#), [mddb.cf\(4\)](#), [md.tab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [md\(7D\)](#)

*Solaris Volume Manager Administration Guide*

**Notes** Since frequent probes can affect performance, it is recommended that the intervals between probes be limited.

The mdmonitord service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/mdmonitor
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

**Name** mdnsd – Multicast DNS daemon

**Synopsis** mdnsd [-debug]

**Description** mdnsd is the daemon program for Multicast DNS and DNS Service Discovery.

The mdnsd daemon listens on UDP port 5353 for Multicast DNS Query packets. When it receives a query for which it knows an answer, mdnsd issues the appropriate Multicast DNS Reply packet.

The mdnsd daemon also performs Multicast DNS Queries on behalf of client processes, and maintains a cache of the replies.

The mdnsd daemon has no user-specifiable command-line argument, and users should not run mdnsd manually. The mdnsd daemon should be managed by the Solaris Management Facility (SMF) and should be administered by the [svcadm\(1M\)](#) command using the following fault management resource identifier (FMRI):

```
svc:/network/dns/multicast:default
```

To examine mdnsd's internal state for debugging and diagnostic purposes, send it a SIGUSR1 signal, and it will then log a snapshot summary of its internal state using the [syslog\(3C\)](#) facility. mdnsd uses the syslog facility code daemon and info priority level.

**Options** The mdnsd daemon recognizes the following option:

**-debug** Debug mode. The mdnsd daemon sends output to the standard error, and does not run in the background. This option is only intended for debugging the daemon.

**CONFIGURATION** Multicast DNS can be used to look up host names and host addresses by specifying mdns as a source for hosts and ipnodes in the name service switch configuration file [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#). The configuration options for host name and host address queries using Multicast DNS are stored in the SMF repository. This configuration can be modified by the [svccfg\(1M\)](#) command using the following fault management resource identifier (FMRI):

```
svc:/network/dns/multicast:default
```

The configuration options for host name and host address queries using Multicast DNS are stored in a property group named “nss\_mdns\_config”. The properties that make up the configuration options are as follows:

**search** A list of search domains for host name look up. By default, no search domains are included in the configuration. The search list is currently limited to six domains.

**valid** A list of valid domains checked before Multicast DNS is used to look up the host name or host address for a domain. Domains specified in the search list are always included in the valid list. The valid domain list is currently limited to ten domains.

Please note the above configuration options are Volatile and may change in a future release.

**Files** /usr/lib/inet/mdnsd

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWdsdu        |
| Interface Stability | Volatile        |

**See Also** [dns-sd\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [syslog\(3C\)](#), [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

For information on Multicast DNS, see <http://www.multicastdns.org/>

For information on DNS Service Discovery, see <http://www.dns-sd.org/>

**Name** medstat – check the status of mediator hosts for a given diskset

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/medstat [-q] -s *setname*

**Description** If a specified diskset has been configured for mediators, medstat attempts to contact these hosts to see if they are accessible and returns the results of the communication.

**Options** -q This optional argument disables the printing of informative text. When used with -q, medstat still prints error messages and returns a result code.

-s *setname* Specifies the name of a diskset on which medstat will work.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Checking diskset

This example checks the mediator hosts for the selected diskset.

```
medstat -s relo-red
```

The name of the diskset is `relo-red`. The medstat command prints the status for each mediator host. Additionally, if the mediator quorum is met, either through a “golden” mediator host or because half+1 of the mediator hosts respond, the exit code is 0. If the quorum is not met, then the exit code is 1. If no mediator hosts have been configured for the named diskset, the exit code is 2. The status field will contain one of the following values: Unreachable, Bad, Fatal, or Ok, where Unreachable indicates an RPC/communication problem, Bad indicates an error in the mediator data, Fatal indicates any other error condition, and Ok indicates no error conditions.

**Files** /etc/lvm/mddb Contains the mediator data for a host that has been selected as a mediator host.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWmdu         |
| Interface Stability | Evolving        |

**See Also** [metaclear\(1M\)](#), [metadb\(1M\)](#), [metadetach\(1M\)](#), [metahs\(1M\)](#), [metainit\(1M\)](#), [metaoffline\(1M\)](#), [metaonline\(1M\)](#), [metaparam\(1M\)](#), [metareplace\(1M\)](#), [metaroot\(1M\)](#), [metaset\(1M\)](#), [metastat\(1M\)](#), [metasync\(1M\)](#), [metattach\(1M\)](#), [md.cf\(4\)](#), [md.tab\(4\)](#), [mddb.cf\(4\)](#), [mddb\(4\)](#), [mediator\(7D\)](#)

Sun Cluster documentation, *Solaris Volume Manager Administration Guide*

**Notes** This command is designed for use in the high availability product.

**Name** metaclear – delete active metadevices and hot spare pools

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/metaclear -h  
 /usr/sbin/metaclear [-s *setname*] -a [-f]  
 /usr/sbin/metaclear *component*  
 /usr/sbin/metaclear [-s *setname*] [-f] *metadevice... hot\_spare\_pool...*  
 /usr/sbin/metaclear [-s *setname*] -r [-f] *metadevice... hot\_spare\_pool...*  
 /usr/sbin/metaclear [-s *setname*] -p *component*  
 /usr/sbin/metaclear [-s *setname*] -p *metadevice*

**Description** The `metaclear` command deletes the specified metadevice or `hot_spare_pool`, or purges all soft partitions from the designated component. Once a metadevice or hot spare pool is deleted, it must be re-created using `metainit` before it can be used again.

Any metadevice currently in use (open) cannot be deleted.

**Options** Root privileges are required for all of the following options except `-h`.

- a Deletes all metadevices and configured hot spare pools in the set named by `-s`, or the local set by default.
- f Deletes (forcibly) a metadevice that contains a subcomponent in an error state.
- h Displays usage message.
- p Deletes (purges) all soft partitions from the specified metadevice or component.
- r Recursively deletes specified metadevices and hot spare pools, but does not delete metadevices on which others depend.
- s *setname* Specifies the name of the diskset on which `metaclear` will work. Using the `-s` option causes the command to perform its administrative function within the specified diskset. Without this option, the command performs its function on local metadevices and/or hot spare pools.

**Operands** *metadevice ...* Specifies the name(s) of the metadevice(s) to be deleted.

*component* Specifies the `c*d*t*s*` name(s) of the components containing soft partitions to be deleted.

*hot\_spare\_pool ...* Specifies the name(s) of the hot spare pools to be deleted. Names for hot spare pools can be any legal file name that is composed of alphanumeric characters, a dash (“-”), an underscore (“\_”), or a period (“.”). Names must begin with a letter. The words “all” and “none” are reserved and cannot be used.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Deleting Various Devices

The following example deletes a metadevice named `d10`.

```
metaclear /dev/md/dsk/d10
```

The following example deletes all local metadevices and hot spare pools on the system.

```
metaclear -a
```

The following example deletes a mirror, `mymirror`, with a submirror in an error state.

```
metaclear -f mymirror
```

The following example deletes a hot spare pool, `hsp001`.

```
metaclear hsp001
```

The following example deletes a soft partition, `d23`.

```
metaclear d23
```

The following example purges all soft partitions on the slice `c2t3d5s2` if those partitions are not being used by other metadevices or are not open.

```
metaclear -p c2t3d5s2
```

The following example purges soft partitions from a metadevice.

```
metaclear -p d2
d3: Soft Partition is cleared
d4: Soft Partition is cleared
d5: Soft Partition is cleared
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWmdm         |
| Interface Stability | Stable          |

**See Also** [mdmonitord\(1M\)](#), [metadb\(1M\)](#), [metadetach\(1M\)](#), [metahs\(1M\)](#), [metainit\(1M\)](#), [metaoffline\(1M\)](#), [metaonline\(1M\)](#), [metaparam\(1M\)](#), [metarecover\(1M\)](#), [metarename\(1M\)](#),



metareplace(1M), metaroot(1M), metaset(1M), metassist(1M), metastat(1M),  
metasync(1M), metattach(1M), md.tab(4), md.cf(4), mddb.cf(4), md.tab(4), attributes(5),  
md(7D)

*Solaris Volume Manager Administration Guide*

**Name** metadb – create and delete replicas of the metadb state database

**Synopsis** /sbin/metadb -h  
/sbin/metadb [-s *setname*]  
/sbin/metadb [-s *setname*] -a [-f] [-k *system-file*] mddbnn  
/sbin/metadb [-s *setname*] -a [-f] [-k *system-file*]  
[-c *number*] [-l *length*] *slice*...  
/sbin/metadb [-s *setname*] -d [-f] [-k *system-file*] mddbnn  
/sbin/metadb [-s *setname*] -d [-f] [-k *system-file*] *slice*...  
/sbin/metadb [-s *setname*] -i  
/sbin/metadb [-s *setname*] -p [-k *system-file*]  
[*mddb.cf-file*]

**Description** The metadb command creates and deletes replicas of the metadb state database. State database replicas can be created on dedicated slices, or on slices that will later become part of a simple metadb (concatenation or stripe) or RAID5 metadb. Do not place state database replicas on fabric-attached storage, SANs, or other storage that is not directly attached to the system and available at the same point in the boot process as traditional SCSI or IDE drives. See NOTES.

The metadb state database contains the configuration of all metadatabases and hot spare pools in the system. Additionally, the metadb state database keeps track of the current state of metadatabases and hot spare pools, and their components. Solaris Volume Manager automatically updates the metadb state database when a configuration or state change occurs. A submirror failure is an example of a state change. Creating a new metadb is an example of a configuration change.

The metadb state database is actually a collection of multiple, replicated database copies. Each copy, referred to as a replica, is subject to strict consistency checking to ensure correctness.

Replicated databases have an inherent problem in determining which database has valid and correct data. To solve this problem, Volume Manager uses a *majority consensus algorithm*. This algorithm requires that a majority of the database replicas be available before any of them are declared valid. This algorithm strongly encourages the presence of at least three initial replicas, which you create. A consensus can then be reached as long as at least two of the three replicas are available. If there is only one replica and the system crashes, it is possible that all metadb configuration data can be lost.

The majority consensus algorithm is conservative in the sense that it will fail if a majority consensus cannot be reached, even if one replica actually does contain the most up-to-date data. This approach guarantees that stale data will not be accidentally used, regardless of the failure scenario. The majority consensus algorithm accounts for the following: the system will

stay running with exactly half or more replicas; the system will panic when less than half the replicas are available; the system will not reboot without one more than half the total replicas.

When used with no options, the `metadb` command gives a short form of the status of the metadvice state database. Use `metadb -i` for an explanation of the flags field in the output.

The initial state database is created using the `metadb` command with both the `-a` and `-f` options, followed by the slice where the replica is to reside. The `-a` option specifies that a replica (in this case, the initial) state database should be created. The `-f` option forces the creation to occur, even though a state database does not exist. (The `-a` and `-f` options should be used together only when no state databases exist.)

Additional replicas beyond those initially created can be added to the system. They contain the same information as the existing replicas, and help to prevent the loss of the configuration information. Loss of the configuration makes operation of the metadevices impossible. To create additional replicas, use the `metadb -a` command, followed by the name of the new slice(s) where the replicas will reside. All replicas that are located on the same slice must be created at the same time.

To delete all replicas that are located on the same slice, the `metadb -d` command is used, followed by the slice name.

When used with the `-i` option, `metadb` displays the status of the metadvice state databases. The status can change if a hardware failure occurs or when state databases have been added or deleted.

To fix a replica in an error state, delete the replica and add it back again.

The metadvice state database (`mddb`) also contains a list of the replica locations for this set (local or shared diskset).

The local set `mddb` can also contain host and drive information for each of the shared disksets of which this node is a member. Other than the diskset host and drive information stored in the local set `mddb`, the local and shared diskset `mddb`s are functionality identical.

The `mddb`s are written to during the resync of a mirror or during a component failure or configuration change. A configuration change or failure can also occur on a single replica (removal of a `mddb` or a failed disk) and this causes the other replicas to be updated with this failure information.

**Options** Root privileges are required for all of the following options except `-h` and `-i`.

The following options can be used with the `metadb` command. Not all the options are compatible on the same command line. Refer to the SYNOPSIS to see the supported use of the options.

- a  
Attach a new database device. The `/kernel/drv/md.conf` file is automatically updated with the new information and the `/etc/lvm/mddb.cf` file is updated as well. An alternate way to create replicas is by defining them in the `/etc/lvm/md.tab` file and specifying the assigned name at the command line in the form, `mddbnn`, where *nn* is a two-digit number given to the replica definitions. Refer to the `md.tab(4)` man page for instructions on setting up replicas in that file.
- c *number*  
Specifies the number of replicas to be placed on each device. The default number of replicas is 1.
- d  
Deletes all replicas that are located on the specified *slice*. The `/kernel/drv/md.conf` file is automatically updated with the new information and the `/etc/lvm/mddb.cf` file is updated as well.
- f  
The `-f` option is used to create the initial state database. It is also used to force the deletion of replicas below the minimum of one. (The `-a` and `-f` options should be used together only when no state databases exist.)
- h  
Displays a usage message.
- i  
Inquire about the status of the replicas. The output of the `-i` option includes characters in front of the device name that represent the status of the state database. Explanations of the characters are displayed following the replica status and are as follows:
  - d  
replica does not have an associated device ID.
  - o  
replica active prior to last `mddb` configuration change
  - u  
replica is up to date
  - l  
locator for this replica was read successfully
  - c  
replica's location was in `/etc/lvm/mddb.cf`
  - p  
replica's location was patched in kernel
  - m  
replica is master, this is replica selected as input

- 
- r  
replica does not have device relocation information
  - t  
tagged data is associated with the replica
  - W  
replica has device write errors
  - a  
replica is active, commits are occurring to this
  - M  
replica had problem with master blocks
  - D  
replica had problem with data blocks
  - F  
replica had format problems
  - S  
replica is too small to hold current database
  - R  
replica had device read errors
  - B  
tagged data associated with the replica is not valid
- k *system-file*  
Specifies the name of the kernel file where the replica information should be written. The default *system-file* is `/kernel/drv/md.conf`. This option is for use with the local diskset only.
- l *length*  
Specifies the size of each replica. The default *length* is 8192 blocks, which should be appropriate for most configurations. “Replica” sizes of less than 128 blocks are not recommended.
- p  
Specifies updating the system file (`md.conf`) in the current working directory with entries from the `/etc/lvm/mddb.cf` file. This option is normally used to update a newly built system before it is booted for the first time. If the system has been built on a system other than the one where it will run, the location of the `mddb.cf` on the local machine can be passed as an argument. The system file to be updated can be changed using the `-k` option. This option is for use with the local diskset only.

**-s setname**

Specifies the name of the diskset on which the metadb command will work. Using the -s option will cause the command to perform its administrative function within the specified diskset. Without this option, the command will perform its function on local database replicas.

**slice**

Specifies the logical name of the physical slice (partition), such as /dev/dsk/c0t0d0s3.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Creating Initial State Database Replicas

The following example creates the initial state database replicas on a new system.

```
metadb -a -f c0t0d0s7 c0t1d0s3 c1t0d0s7 c1t1d0s3
```

The -a and -f options force the creation of the initial database and replicas. You could then create metadevices with these same slices, making efficient use of the system.

## EXAMPLE 2 Adding Two Replicas on Two New Disks

This example shows how to add two replicas on two new disks that have been connected to a system currently running Volume Manager.

```
metadb -a c0t2d0s3 c1t1d0s3
```

## EXAMPLE 3 Deleting Two Replicas

This example shows how to delete two replicas from the system. Assume that replicas have been set up on /dev/dsk/c0t2d0s3 and /dev/dsk/c1t1d0s3.

```
metadb -d c0t2d0s3 c1t1d0s3
```

Although you can delete all replicas, you should never do so while metadevices still exist. Removing all replicas causes existing metadevices to become inoperable.

**Files** /etc/lvm/mddb.cf

Contains the location of each copy of the metadevice state database.

/etc/lvm/md.tab

Workspace file for metadevice database configuration.

/kernel/drv/md.conf

Contains database replica information for all metadevices on a system. Also contains Solaris Volume Manager configuration information.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0

successful completion

>0  
 an error occurred

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWmdr         |
| Interface Stability | Stable          |

**See Also** [mdmonitord\(1M\)](#), [metaclear\(1M\)](#), [metadetach\(1M\)](#), [metahs\(1M\)](#), [metainit\(1M\)](#), [metaoffline\(1M\)](#), [metaonline\(1M\)](#), [metaparam\(1M\)](#), [metarecover\(1M\)](#), [metarename\(1M\)](#), [metareplace\(1M\)](#), [metaroot\(1M\)](#), [metaset\(1M\)](#), [metassist\(1M\)](#), [metastat\(1M\)](#), [metasync\(1M\)](#), [metattach\(1M\)](#), [md.tab\(4\)](#), [md.cf\(4\)](#), [mddb.cf\(4\)](#), [md.tab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [md\(7D\)](#)

*Solaris Volume Manager Administration Guide*

**Notes** Replicas cannot be stored on fabric-attached storage, SANs, or other storage that is not directly attached to the system. Replicas must be on storage that is available at the same point in the boot process as traditional SCSI or IDE drives. A replica can be stored on a:

- Dedicated local disk partition
- Local partition that will be part of a volume
- Local partition that will be part of a UFS logging device

**Name** metadevadm – update metadvice information

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/metadevadm [-h] [-n] [ [-l]-r] [-s *setname*]  
[-u *disk\_specifier*] [-v]

**Description** The metadevadm command facilitates the administration of device ID entries in Solaris Volume Manager. Use this command when the pathname stored in the metadvice state database no longer correctly addresses the device or when a disk drive has had its device ID changed.

This command requires root privileges.

**Options** The following options are supported.

- h Provide a help display.
- l Specify that metadevadm log to [syslog\(3C\)](#). metadevadm logs to the DAEMON facility at the ERR level by default. See [syslog.conf\(4\)](#) for additional information on changing logging levels.  
  
Use this option anytime. It is most useful in startup scripts and less useful interactively.
- n Emulate the effect of a command, without making any changes to the system.
- r Recompute the pathname and disk specifier (including slice) associated with all devices in the metadvice state database if the device supports device IDs. If a device does not support device IDs or the device is not available, then no action is taken for that device.  
  
Use this option when the disk has been moved or readdressed.  
  
This option is run automatically at boot time to detect device ID changes and update the state database.
- s *setname* Specify the name of the disk set on which metadevadm works. This option causes the command to perform its administrative function within the specified disk set. Without this option, the command performs its function on devices in the local disk set.
- u *disk\_specifier* Obtain the device ID associated with the *disk\_specifier* (for example, c1t2d0) of a device and update the metadvice state database. If the device ID has not changed this option does nothing. Use this option when a disk drive has had its device ID changed during a firmware upgrade or due to changing the controller of a storage subsystem.
- v Execute in verbose mode. This option has no effect when used with -u. Verbose is the default.



**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Updating Device ID of Disk

The following example updates the device c2t3d0:

```
metadevadm -u c2t3d0
Updating SLVM device relocation information for c2t3d0.
Old device reloc information: id19280192391293123012012010012012091398
New device reloc information: id19380192391293123012012010012012091398
```

The following example is a variation of the preceding, using the full pathname.

```
metadevadm -u /dev/dsk/c2t3d0
```

The following example uses the `-n` option, which means that the command is emulated, but does not take effect. Note that when the `-v` option is used with `-u`, `-v` has no effect (verbose is the default).

```
metadevadm -u -v -n c2t3d0
Updating SLVM device relocation information for c2t3d0.
Old device reloc information: id19280192391293123012012010012012091398
New device reloc information: id19380192391293123012012010012012091398
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Recomputing Pathnames

In the following example, all device names are valid.

```
metadevadm -r
Disk movement detected.
Updating device names in SLVM.
```

In the following example, once again device names are valid.

```
metadevadm -r -v
Disk movement detected.
Updating device names in SLVM.
c0t0d0s0 changed to c0t0d1s0 from device relocation information
id120981231kmlsdjaasdkfjadfjakds
```

In the following example, metadevadm detects an invalid device name.

```
metadevadm -r
Invalid device relocation information detected in SLVM.
Please check status of following disk(s):
c3t0d0
```

**Return Values** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Command was successful.
- 1 metadevadm encountered an error condition.

- 2 An invalid device ID was detected when using the `-r` option. This is for use in the `rc2.d` script. See [init.d\(4\)](#).

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWmdu         |
| Interface Stability | Stable          |

**See Also** [mdmonitord\(1M\)](#), [metaclear\(1M\)](#), [metadb\(1M\)](#), [metadetach\(1M\)](#), [metahs\(1M\)](#), [metainit\(1M\)](#), [metaoffline\(1M\)](#), [metaonline\(1M\)](#), [metaparam\(1M\)](#), [metarecover\(1M\)](#), [metarename\(1M\)](#), [metareplace\(1M\)](#), [metaroot\(1M\)](#), [metaset\(1M\)](#), [metassist\(1M\)](#), [metastat\(1M\)](#), [metasync\(1M\)](#), [metattach\(1M\)](#), [md.tab\(4\)](#), [md.cf\(4\)](#), [mddb.cf\(4\)](#), [md.tab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [md\(7D\)](#)

*Solaris Volume Manager Administration Guide*

**Name** metahs – manage hot spares and hot spare pools

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/metahs [-s *setname*] -a all *component*  
 /usr/sbin/metahs [-s *setname*] -a *hot\_spare\_pool* [*component*]  
 /usr/sbin/metahs [-s *setname*] -d *hot\_spare\_pool* [*component*]  
 /usr/sbin/metahs [-s *setname*] -d all *component*  
 /usr/sbin/metahs [-s *setname*] -e *component*  
 /usr/sbin/metahs [-s *setname*] -r *hot\_spare\_pool component-old*  
 /usr/sbin/metahs [-s *setname*] -r all *component-old component-new*  
 /usr/sbin/metahs [-s *setname*] -i [*hot\_spare\_pool*]...

**Description** The metahs command manages existing hot spares and hot spare pools. It is used to add, delete, enable, and replace components (slices) in hot spare pools. Like the `metainit` command, the metahs command can also create an initial hot spare pool. The metahs command does not replace a component of a metadevice. This function is performed by the `metareplace` command.

Hot spares are always in one of three states: available, in-use, or broken. Available hot spares are running and ready to accept data, but are not currently being written to or read from. In-use hot spares are currently being written to and read from. Broken hot spares are out of service and should be repaired. The status of hot spares is displayed when metahs is invoked with the `-i` option.

Solaris Volume Manager supports storage devices and logical volumes, including hot spares, greater than 1 terabyte (TB) when Solaris 10 is running a 64-bit kernel.

If a system with large volumes or hot spares is rebooted under a 32-bit Solaris 10 kernel, the large volumes are visible through `metastat` output, but they cannot be accessed, modified or deleted, and no new large volumes can be created. Any volumes or file systems on a large volume in this situation are also unavailable. If a system with large volumes is rebooted under a version of Solaris prior to Solaris 10, Solaris Volume Manager will not start. All large volumes must be removed before Solaris Volume Manager runs under another version of the Solaris Operating Environment.

**Options** Root privileges are required for any of the following options except `-i`.

The following options are supported:

|                                               |                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -a all <i>component</i>                       | Add <i>component</i> to all hot spare pools. all is not case sensitive.                                                          |
| -a <i>hot_spare_pool</i> [ <i>component</i> ] | Add the <i>component</i> to the specified <i>hot_spare_pool</i> . <i>hot_spare_pool</i> is created if it does not already exist. |

|                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>-d all component</i>                              | Delete <i>component</i> from all the hot spare pools. The <i>component</i> cannot be deleted if it is in the in-use state.                                                                                                                                 |
| <i>-d hot_spare_pool [component]</i>                 | Delete <i>hot_spare_pool</i> , if the <i>hot_spare_pool</i> is both empty and not referenced by a metadvice. If <i>component</i> is specified, it is deleted from the <i>hot_spare_pool</i> . Hot spares in the in-use state cannot be deleted.            |
| <i>-e component</i>                                  | Enable <i>component</i> to be available for use as a hot spare. The <i>component</i> can be enabled if it is in the broken state and has been repaired.                                                                                                    |
| <i>-i [hot_spare_pool . . .]</i>                     | Display the status of the specified <i>hot_spare_pool</i> or for all hot spare pools if one is not specified.                                                                                                                                              |
| <i>-r all component-old component-new</i>            | Replace <i>component-old</i> with <i>component-new</i> in all hot spare pools which have the component associated. Components cannot be replaced from any hot spare pool if the old hot spare is in the in-use state.                                      |
| <i>-r hot_spare_pool component-old component-new</i> | Replace <i>component-old</i> with <i>component-new</i> in the specified <i>hot_spare_pool</i> . Components cannot be replaced from a hot spare pool if the old hot spare is in the in-use state.                                                           |
| <i>-s setname</i>                                    | Specify the name of the diskset on which metahs works. Using the <i>-s</i> option causes the command to perform its administrative function within the specified diskset. Without this option, the command performs its function on local hot spare pools. |

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

|                       |                                                                                                                                                  |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>component</i>      | The logical name for the physical slice (partition) on a disk drive, such as <code>/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s2</code> .                                    |
| <i>hot_spare_pool</i> | Names for hot spare pools can be any legal file name that is composed of alphanumeric characters, a dash (“-”), an underscore (“_”), or a period |

---

(“.“). Names must begin with a letter. The words “all” and “none” are reserved and cannot be used.

**Examples** **EXAMPLE 1** Adding a Hot Spare to a Hot Spare Pool

The following example adds a hot spare `/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s7` to a hot spare pool `mirror1_pool`:

```
metahs -a mirror1_pool c0t0d0s7
```

When the hot spare is added to the pool, the existing order of the hot spares already in the pool is preserved. The new hot spare is added at the end of the list of hot spares in the hot spare pool specified.

**EXAMPLE 2** Adding a Hot Spare to All Currently Defined Pools

This example adds a hot spare to the hot spare pools that are currently defined:

```
metahs -a all c0t0d0s7
```

The keyword `all` in this example specifies adding the hot spare, `/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s7`, to all the hot spare pools.

**EXAMPLE 3** Deleting a Hot Spare

This example deletes a hot spare, `/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s7`, from a hot spare pool, `hsp003`:

```
metahs -d hsp003 c0t0d0s7
```

When you delete a hot spare, the position of the remaining hot spares in the pool changes to reflect the new order. For instance, if in this example `/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s7` were the second of three hot spares, after deletion the third hot spare would move to the second position.

**EXAMPLE 4** Replacing a Hot Spare

This example replaces a hot spare that was previously defined:

```
metahs -r hsp001 c0t1d0s0 c0t3d0s0
```

In this example, the hot spare `/dev/dsk/c0t1d0s0` is replaced by `/dev/dsk/c0t3d0s0`. The order of the hot spares does not change.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWmdu         |
| Interface Stability | Stable          |

**See Also** [mdmonitor\(1M\)](#), [metaclear\(1M\)](#), [metadb\(1M\)](#), [metadetach\(1M\)](#), [metainit\(1M\)](#), [metaoffline\(1M\)](#), [metaonline\(1M\)](#), [metaparam\(1M\)](#), [metarecover\(1M\)](#), [metarename\(1M\)](#), [metareplace\(1M\)](#), [metaroot\(1M\)](#), [metaset\(1M\)](#), [metassist\(1M\)](#), [metastat\(1M\)](#), [metasync\(1M\)](#), [metattach\(1M\)](#), [md.tab\(4\)](#), [md.cf\(4\)](#), [mddb.cf\(4\)](#), [md.tab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [md\(7D\)](#)

*Solaris Volume Manager Administration Guide*

**Warnings** Do not create large (>1 TB) volumes if you expect to run the Solaris Operating Environment with a 32-bit kernel or if you expect to use a version of the Solaris Operating Environment prior to Solaris 10.

**Name** metaimport – imports disk sets into existing Solaris Volume Manager configurations

**Synopsis** metaimport -s *setname* [-n] [-f] [-v] [*disks*]...

metaimport -r [-v] [*disks*]...

metaimport -V

metaimport -?

**Description** The metaimport command allows the importing of disk sets, including replicated disk sets, into an existing Solaris Volume Manager configuration. Replicated disk sets are disk sets created using remote replication software.

The default Solaris Volume Manager configuration specifies a maximum number of disk sets that can be configured. The metaimport command fails if importing the disk set would result in exceeding the number of disk sets configured on the system. To increase the number of disk sets allowed on a system, see the *Solaris Volume Manager Administration Guide*.

Use [metaset\(1M\)](#) or [metastat\(1M\)](#) to view the configuration of the imported set.

You must run metaimport as root.

metaimport requires a functional Solaris Volume Manager configuration before it runs.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- f Force the import, even if a quorum of replicas from the imported disk set is not available. This option could result in corrupt configurations and should only be used when metaimport fails with the “Insufficient quorum detected; exiting” error. If only a partial disk set is available, this option might be necessary to successfully import. Some or all data could be corrupted or unavailable when importing a partial set or a set lacking a replica quorum.
- n Does not actually perform the operation, but shows the output or errors that would have resulted from the operation, had it been run.
- r Report on the non-configured disk sets found on the system. If no disk device or LUN is specified, metaimport reports on all non-configured disk sets attached to the system. When the name of one disk is specified, metaimport reports on the disk set (or virtual LUN) containing the specified disk. If two or more disks are specified, metaimport reports on the set (or sets, if they belong to different disk sets) containing the specified disks. If two or more disks are specified, metaimport reports on the set (or sets, if they belong to different disk sets) containing the specified disks.

This option can be used in conjunction with the -v option to give verbose output on each disk set reported.

- s *setname* Specify the disk set name to use when importing. The imported disk set will be called *setname*, without regard to the name it may have had on a different system.
- v Verbose. Provides detailed information about the metadb replica location and status. It also provides detailed information about the disk set configuration and status similar to the “metastat -c” output.
- V Version information.
- ? Display a help message.

### Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Importing a Disk Set

The following example creates a disk set called `blue` and identifies `c1t5d0` as a disk containing a state database replica from the disk set being imported.

```
metainport -s blue c1t5d0
```

### **EXAMPLE 2** Reporting Disk Sets to Import

The following example scans all disks and LUNs attached to the system and configured as part of the system. It scans for disks that could be part of a disk set to be imported. Components that are already part of the Solaris Volume Manager configuration are ignored.

This use of `metainport` provides suggested forms of the `metainport` command to use to actually import the disk sets that have been found. You can specify a component on the command line to reduce the scope of the scan and generate results more quickly.

```
metainport -r
```

**Exit Status** 0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWmdu         |
| Interface Stability | Stable          |

**See Also** [mdmonitord\(1M\)](#), [metaclear\(1M\)](#), [metadb\(1M\)](#), [metadetach\(1M\)](#), [metahs\(1M\)](#), [metainit\(1M\)](#), [metaoffline\(1M\)](#), [metaonline\(1M\)](#), [metaparam\(1M\)](#), [metarecover\(1M\)](#), [metareplace\(1M\)](#), [metaroot\(1M\)](#), [metaset\(1M\)](#), [metastat\(1M\)](#), [metasync\(1M\)](#), [metattach\(1M\)](#), [md.tab\(4\)](#), [md.cf\(4\)](#), [mddb.cf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

*Solaris Volume Manager Administration Guide*



**Name** metainit – configure metadevices

**Synopsis** /sbin/metainit -h

/sbin/metainit [*generic options*] *concat/stripe numstripes width component...* [-i *interlace*]

/sbin/metainit [*width component...* [-i *interlace*]] [-h *hot\_spare\_pool*]

/sbin/metainit [*generic options*] *mirror -m submirror* [*read\_options*] [*write\_options*] [*pass\_num*]

/sbin/metainit [*generic options*] *RAID -r component...* [-i *interlace*] [-h *hot\_spare\_pool*] [-k] [-o *original\_column\_count*]

/sbin/metainit [*generic options*] *hot\_spare\_pool* [*hotspare...*]

/sbin/metainit [*generic options*] *metadevice-name*

/sbin/metainit [*generic options*] -a

/sbin/metainit [*generic options*] *softpart -p [-e] component* [-A *alignment*] *size*

/sbin/metainit -r

**Description** The metainit command configures metadevices and hot spares according to the information specified on the command line. Alternatively, you can run metainit so that it uses configuration entries you specify in the /etc/lvm/md.tab file (see [md.tab\(4\)](#)). All metadevices must be set up by the metainit command before they can be used.

Solaris Volume Manager supports storage devices and logical volumes greater than 1 terabyte (TB) when a system runs a 64-bit Solaris kernel. Support for large volumes is automatic. If a device greater than 1 TB is created, Solaris Volume Manager configures it appropriately and without user intervention.

If a system with large volumes is rebooted under a 32-bit Solaris kernel, the large volumes are visible through `metastat` output. Large volumes cannot be accessed, modified or deleted, and no new large volumes can be created. Any volumes or file systems on a large volume in this situation are unavailable. If a system with large volumes is rebooted under a version of Solaris prior to the Solaris 9 4/03 release, Solaris Volume Manager does not start. You must remove all large volumes before Solaris Volume Manager runs under an earlier version of the Solaris Operating System.

If you edit the /etc/lvm/md.tab file to configure metadevices, specify one complete configuration entry per line. You then run the metainit command with either the -a option, to activate all metadevices you entered in the /etc/lvm/md.tab file, or with the metadevice name corresponding to a specific configuration entry.

`metainit` does not maintain the state of the volumes that would have been created when `metainit` is run with both the `-a` and `-n` flags. Any volumes in `md.tab` that have dependencies on other volumes in `md.tab` are reported as errors when `metainit -a -n` is run, although the operations might succeed when `metainit -a` is run. See [md.tab\(4\)](#).

Solaris Volume Manager never updates the `/etc/lvm/md.tab` file. Complete configuration information is stored in the metadvice state database, not `md.tab`. The only way information appears in `md.tab` is through editing it by hand.

When setting up a disk mirror, the *first* step is to use `metainit` create a one-on-one concatenation for the root slice. See [EXAMPLES](#).

**Options** The following options are supported:

Generic Options Root privileges are required for all of the following options except `-h`.

The following generic options are supported:

`-f`

Forces the `metainit` command to continue even if one of the slices contains a mounted file system or is being used as swap, or if the stripe being created is smaller in size than the underlying soft partition. This option is required when configuring mirrors on root (`/`), swap, and `/usr`.

`-h`

Displays usage message.

`-n`

Checks the syntax of your command line or `md.tab` entry without actually setting up the metadvice. If used with `-a`, all devices are checked but not initialized.

`-r`

Only used in a shell script at boot time. Sets up all metadvice that were configured before the system crashed or was shut down. The information about previously configured metadvice is stored in the metadvice state database (see [metadb\(1M\)](#)).

`-s setname`

Specifies the name of the diskset on which `metainit` works. Without the `-s` option, the `metainit` command operates on your local metadvice and/or hotspares.

Concat/Stripe Options The following concat/stripe options are supported:

*concat/stripe*

Specifies the metadvice name of the concatenation, stripe, or concatenation of stripes being defined.

*numstripes*

Specifies the number of individual stripes in the metadvice. For a simple stripe, *numstripes* is always 1. For a concatenation, *numstripes* is equal to the number of slices. For a concatenation of stripes, *numstripes* varies according to the number of stripes.

*width*

Specifies the number of slices that make up a stripe. When *width* is greater than 1, the slices are striped.

*component*

The logical name for the physical slice (partition) on a disk drive, such as `/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s0`. For RAID level 5 metadevices, a minimum of three slices is necessary to enable striping of the parity information across slices.

*-i interlace*

Specifies the interlace size. This value tells Solaris Volume Manager how much data to place on a slice of a striped or RAID level 5 metadvice before moving on to the next slice. *interlace* is a specified value, followed by either 'k' for kilobytes, 'm' for megabytes, or 'b' for blocks. The characters can be either uppercase or lowercase. The *interlace* specified cannot be less than 16 blocks, or greater than 100 megabytes. If *interlace* is not specified, it defaults to 512 kilobytes.

*-h hot\_spare\_pool*

Specifies the *hot\_spare\_pool* to be associated with the metadvice. If you use the command line, the hot spare pool must have been previously created by the `metainit` command before it can be associated with a metadvice. Use `/-h hspnnn` when the concat/striped being created is to be used as a submirror.

Names for hot spare pools can be any legal file name that is composed of alphanumeric characters, a dash ("-"), an underscore ("\_"), or a period ("."). Names must begin with a letter. The words "all" and "none" are reserved and cannot be used.

Mirror Options The following mirror options are supported:

*mirror -m submirror*

Specifies the metadvice name of the mirror. The `-m` indicates that the configuration is a mirror. *submirror* is a metadvice (stripe or concatenation) that makes up the initial one-way mirror. Solaris Volume Manager supports a maximum of four-way mirroring. When defining mirrors, first create the mirror with the `metainit` command as a one-way mirror. Then attach subsequent submirrors using the `metatatch` command. This method ensures that Solaris Volume Manager properly syncs the mirrors. (The second and any subsequent submirrors are first created using the `metainit` command.)

*read\_options*

The following read options for mirrors are supported:

*-g*

Enables the geometric read option, which results in faster performance on sequential reads.

*-r*

Directs all reads to the first submirror. This should only be used when the devices comprising the first submirror are substantially faster than those of the second mirror. This flag cannot be used with the `-g` flag.

If neither the `-g` nor `-r` flags are specified, reads are made in a round-robin order from all submirrors in the mirror. This enables load balancing across the submirrors.

#### *write\_options*

The following write options for mirrors are supported:

`-S`

Performs serial writes to mirrors. The first submirror write completes before the second is started. This can be useful if hardware is susceptible to partial sector failures. If `-S` is not specified, writes are replicated and dispatched to all mirrors simultaneously.

#### *pass\_num*

A number in the range 0-9 at the end of an entry defining a mirror that determines the order in which that mirror is resynced during a reboot. The default is 1. Smaller pass numbers are resynced first. Equal pass numbers are run concurrently. If 0 is used, the resync is skipped. 0 should be used only for mirrors mounted as read-only, or as swap.

RAID Level 5 Options The following RAID level 5 options are available:

#### *RAID -r*

Specifies the name of the RAID level 5 metadvice. The `-r` specifies that the configuration is RAID level 5.

`-k`

For RAID level 5 metadvice, informs the driver that it is not to initialize (zero the disk blocks) due to existing data. Only use this option to recreate a previously created RAID level 5 device.

Use the `-k` option with extreme caution. This option sets the disk blocks to the OK state. If any errors exist on disk blocks within the metadvice, Solaris Volume Manager might begin fabricating data. Instead of using the `-k` option, you might want to initialize the device and restore data from tape.

#### `-o original_column_count`

For RAID level 5 metadvice, used with the `-k` option to define the number of original slices in the event the originally defined metadvice was grown. This is necessary since the parity segments are not striped across concatenated devices.

Use the `-o` option with extreme caution. This option sets the disk blocks to the OK state. If any errors exist on disk blocks within the metadvice, Solaris Volume Manager might begin fabricating data. Instead of using the `-o` option, you might want to initialize the device and restore data from tape.

Soft Partition Options The following soft partition options are supported:

#### *softpart -p [-e] component [-A alignment] size*

The *softpart* argument specifies the name of the soft partition. The `-p` specifies that the configuration is a soft partition.

The `-e` specifies that the entire disk specified by *component* as `c*t*d*` should be repartitioned and reserved for soft partitions. The specified component is repartitioned such that slice 7 reserves space for system (state database replica) usage and slice 0 contains all remaining space on the disk. Slice 7 is a minimum of 4MB, but can be larger, depending on the disk geometry. The newly created soft partition is placed on slice 0 of the device.

The *component* argument specifies the disk (`c*t*d*`), slice (`c*t*d*s*`), or meta device (`d*`) from which to create the soft partition. The *size* argument determines the space to use for the soft partition and can be specified in `K` or `k` for kilobytes, `M` or `m` for megabytes, `G` or `g` for gigabytes, `T` or `t` for terabyte (one terabyte is the maximum size), and `B` or `b` for blocks (sectors). All values represent powers of 2, and upper and lower case options are equivalent. Only integer values are permitted.

The `-A` alignment option sets the value of the soft partition extent alignment. This option is used when it is important to specify a starting offset for the soft partition. It preserves the data alignment between the metadvice address space and the address space of the underlying physical device. For example, a hardware device that does checksumming should not have its I/O requests divided by Solaris Volume Manager. In this case, use a value from the hardware configuration as the value for the alignment. When you use this option in conjunction with a software I/O load, the alignment value corresponds to the I/O load of the application. This prevents I/O from being divided unnecessarily and affecting performance.

The literal `all`, used instead of specifying *size*, specifies that the soft partition should occupy all available space on the device.

Hot Spare Pool Options The following hot spare pool options are supported:

*hot\_spare\_pool* [ *hotspare...* ]

When used as arguments to the `metainit` command, *hot\_spare\_pool* defines the name for a hot spare pool, and *hotspare...* is the logical name for the physical slice(s) for availability in that pool. Names for hot spare pools can be any legal file name that is composed of alphanumeric characters, a dash (“-”), an underscore (“\_”), or a period (“.”). Names must begin with a letter. The words “all” and “none” are reserved and cannot be used.

md . tab File Options The following md . tab file options are supported:

*metadvice-name*

When the `metainit` command is run with a *metadvice-name* as its only argument, it searches the `/etc/lvm/md . tab` file to find that name and its corresponding entry. The order in which entries appear in the `md . tab` file is unimportant. For example, consider the following `md . tab` entry:

```
d0 2 1 c1t0d0s0 1 c2t1d0s0
```

When you run the command `metainit d0`, it configures metadvice `d0` based on the configuration information found in the `md . tab` file.

-a

Activates all metadevices defined in the `md.tab` file.

`metainit` does not maintain the state of the volumes that would have been created when `metainit` is run with both the `-a` and `-n` flags. If a device `d0` is created in the first line of the `md.tab` file, and a later line in `md.tab` assumes the existence of `d0`, the later line fails when `metainit -an` runs (even if it would succeed with `metainit -a`).

### Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Creating a One-on-One Concatenation

The following command creates a one-on-one concatenation for the root slice. This is the first step you take when setting up a mirror for the root slice (and any other slice that cannot be unmounted). The `-f` option is required to create a volume with an existing file system, such as `root(/)`.

```
metainit -f dl 1 1 c0t0d0s0
```

The preceding command makes `d1` a one-on-one concatenation, using the root slice. You can then enter:

```
metainit d0 -m d1
```

...to make a one-way mirror of the root slice.

### **EXAMPLE 2** Concatenation

All drives in the following examples have the same size of 525 Mbytes.

This example shows a metadvice, `/dev/md/dsk/d7`, consisting of a concatenation of four slices.

```
metainit d7 4 1 c0t1d0s0 1 c0t2d0s0 1 c0t3d0s0 1 /dev/dsk/c0t4d0s0
```

The number 4 indicates there are four individual stripes in the concatenation. Each stripe is made of one slice, hence the number 1 appears in front of each slice. The first disk sector in all of these devices contains a disk label. To preserve the labels on devices `/dev/dsk/c0t2d0s0`, `/dev/dsk/c0t3d0s0`, and `/dev/dsk/c0t4d0s0`, the metadisk driver must skip at least the first sector of those disks when mapping accesses across the concatenation boundaries. Because skipping only the first sector would create an irregular disk geometry, the entire first cylinder of these disks is skipped. This allows higher level file system software to optimize block allocations correctly.

### **EXAMPLE 3** Stripe

This example shows a metadvice, `/dev/md/dsk/d15`, consisting of two slices.

```
metainit d15 1 2 c0t1d0s0 c0t2d0s0 -i 32k
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Stripe (Continued)

The number 1 indicates that one stripe is being created. Because the stripe is made of two slices, the number 2 follows next. The optional `-i` followed by 32k specifies the interlace size as 32 Kbytes. If the interlace size were not specified, the stripe would use the default value of 16 Kbytes.

**EXAMPLE 4** Concatenation of Stripes

This example shows a metadvice, `/dev/md/dsk/d75`, consisting of a concatenation of two stripes of three disks.

```
metainit d75 2 3 c0t1d0s0 c0t2d0s0 \
 c0t3d0s0 -i 16k \
 3 c1t1d0s0 c1t2d0s0 c1t3d0s0 -i 32k
```

On the first line, the `-i` followed by 16k specifies that the stripe interlace size is 16 Kbytes. The second set specifies the stripe interlace size as 32 Kbytes. If the second set did not specify 32 Kbytes, the set would use the default interlace value of 16 Kbytes. The blocks of each set of three disks are interlaced across three disks.

**EXAMPLE 5** Mirroring

This example shows a two-way mirror, `/dev/md/dsk/d50`, consisting of two submirrors. This mirror does not contain any existing data.

```
metainit d51 1 1 c0t1d0s0
metainit d52 1 1 c0t2d0s0
metainit d50 -m d51
metattach d50 d52
```

In this example, two submirrors, `d51` and `d52`, are created with the `metainit` command. These two submirrors are simple concatenations. Next, a one-way mirror, `d50`, is created using the `-m` option with `d51`. The second submirror is attached later using the `metattach` command. When creating a mirror, any combination of stripes and concatenations can be used. The default read and write options in this example are a round-robin read algorithm and parallel writes to all submirrors.

**EXAMPLE 6** Creating a metadvice in a diskset

This example shows a metadvice, `/dev/md/dsk/d75`, consisting of a concatenation of two stripes within a diskset called `set1`.

```
metainit -s set1 d75 2 3 c2t1d0s0 c2t2d0s0 \
 c2t3d0s0 -i 32k
metainit -s set1 d51 1 1 c2t1d0s0
```

**EXAMPLE 6** Creating a metadevice in a diskset *(Continued)*

```
metainit -s set1 d52 1 1 c3t1d0s0
metainit -s set1 d50 -m d51
metattach -s set1 d50 d52
```

In this example, a diskset is created using the `metaset` command. Metadevices are then created within the diskset using the `metainit` command. The two submirrors, `d51` and `d52`, are simple concatenations. Next, a one-way mirror, `d50`, is created using the `-m` option with `d51`. The second submirror is attached later using the `metattach` command. When creating a mirror, any combination of stripes and concatenations can be used. The default read and write options in this example are a round-robin read algorithm and parallel writes to all submirrors.

**EXAMPLE 7** RAID Level 5

This example shows a RAID level 5 device, `d80`, consisting of three slices:

```
metainit d80 -r c1t0d0s0 c1t1d0s0 c1t3d0s0 -i 20k
```

In this example, a RAID level 5 metadevice is defined using the `-r` option with an interlace size of 20 Kbytes. The data and parity segments are striped across the slices, `c1t0d0s0`, `c1t2d0s0`, and `c1t3d0s0`.

**EXAMPLE 8** Soft Partition

The following example shows a soft partition device, `d1`, built on metadevice `d100` and 100 Mbytes (indicated by `100M`) in size:

```
metainit d1 -p d100 100M
```

The preceding command creates a 100 Mbyte soft partition on the `d100` metadevice. This metadevice could be a RAID level 5, stripe, concatenation, or mirror.

**EXAMPLE 9** Soft Partition on Full Disk

The following example shows a soft partition device, `d1`, built on disk `c3t4d0`:

```
metainit d1 -p -e c3t4d0 9G
```

In this example, the disk is repartitioned and a soft partition is defined to occupy all 9 Gbytes of disk `c3t4d0s0`.

**EXAMPLE 10** Soft Partition Taking All Available Space

The following example shows a soft partition device, `d1`, built on disk `c3t4d0`:

```
metainit d1 -p -e c3t4d0 all
```



**EXAMPLE 10** Soft Partition Taking All Available Space (Continued)

In this example, the disk is repartitioned and a soft partition is defined to occupy all available disk space on slice `c3t4d0s0`.

**EXAMPLE 11** Hot Spare

This example shows a two-way mirror, `/dev/md/dsk/d10`, and a hot spare pool with three hot spare components. The mirror does not contain any existing data.

```
metainit hsp001 c2t2d0s0 c3t2d0s0 c1t2d0s0
metainit d41 1 1 c1t0d0s0 -h hsp001
metainit d42 1 1 c3t0d0s0 -h hsp001
metainit d40 -m d41
metattach d40 d42
```

In this example, a hot spare pool, `hsp001`, is created with three slices from three different disks used as hot spares. Next, two submirrors are created, `d41` and `d42`. These are simple concatenations. The `metainit` command uses the `-h` option to associate the hot spare pool `hsp001` with each submirror. A one-way mirror is then defined using the `-m` option. The second submirror is attached using the `metattach` command.

**EXAMPLE 12** Setting the Value of the Soft Partition Extent Alignment

This example shows how to set the alignment of the soft partition to 1 megabyte.

```
metainit -s red d13 -p c1t3d0s4 -A 1m 4m
```

In this example the soft partition, `d13`, is created with an extent alignment of 1 megabyte. The `metainit` command uses the `-A` option with an alignment of `1m` to define the soft partition extent alignment.

**Files** `/etc/lvm/md.tab`

Contains list of metadevice and hot spare configurations for batch-like creation.

**Warnings** This section contains information on different types of warnings.

**Devices and Volumes Greater Than 1 TB** Do not create large (>1 TB) volumes if you expect to run the Solaris Operating Environment with a 32-bit kernel or if you expect to use a version of the Solaris Operating Environment prior to Solaris 10.

**Multi-Way Mirror** Do not use the `metainit` command to create a multi-way mirror. Rather, create a one-way mirror with `metainit` then attach additional submirrors with `metattach`. When the `metattach` command is not used, no resync operations occur and data could become corrupted.

If you use `metainit` to create a mirror with multiple submirrors, the following message is displayed:

WARNING: This form of metainit is not recommended.  
 The submirrors may not have the same data.  
 Please see ERRORS in metainit(1M) for additional information.

**Truncation of Soft Partitions** When creating stripes on top of soft partitions it is possible for the size of the new stripe to be less than the size of the underlying soft partition. If this occurs, metainit fails with an error indicating the actions required to overcome the failure.

If you use the `-f` option to override this behavior, the following message is displayed:

WARNING: This form of metainit is not recommended.  
 The stripe is truncating the size of the underlying device.  
 Please see ERRORS in metainit(1M) for additional information.

**Write-On-Write Problem** When mirroring data in Solaris Volume Manager, transfers from memory to the disks do not all occur at exactly the same time for all sides of the mirror. If the contents of buffers are changed while the data is in-flight to the disk (called write-on-write), then different data can end up being stored on each side of a mirror.

This problem can be addressed by making a private copy of the data for mirror writes, however, doing this copy is expensive. Another approach is to detect when memory has been modified across a write by looking at the dirty-bit associated with the memory page. Solaris Volume Manager uses this dirty-bit technique when it can. Unfortunately, this technique does not work for raw I/O or direct I/O. By default, Solaris Volume Manager is tuned for performance with the liability that mirrored data might be out of sync if an application does a “write-on-write” to buffers associated with raw I/O or direct I/O. Without mirroring, you were not guaranteed what data would actually end up on media, but multiple reads would return the same data. With mirroring, multiple reads can return different data. The following line can be added to `/etc/system` to cause a stable copy of the buffers to be used for all raw I/O and direct I/O write operations.

```
set md_mirror:md_mirror_wow_flg=0x20
```

Setting this flag degrades performance.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0  
 Successful completion.

>0  
 An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWmdr         |

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Interface Stability | Stable          |

**See Also** `mdmonitord(1M)`, `metaclear(1M)`, `metadb(1M)`, `metadetach(1M)`, `metahs(1M)`, `metaoffline(1M)`, `metaonline(1M)`, `metaparam(1M)`, `metarecover(1M)`, `metarename(1M)`, `metareplace(1M)`, `metaroot(1M)`, `metaset(1M)`, `metassist(1M)`, `metastat(1M)`, `metasync(1M)`, `metattach(1M)`, `md.tab(4)`, `md.cf(4)`, `mddb.cf(4)`, `md.tab(4)`, `attributes(5)`, `md(7D)`

*Solaris Volume Manager Administration Guide*

**Limitations** Recursive mirroring is not allowed; that is, a mirror cannot appear in the definition of another mirror.

Recursive logging is not allowed; that is, a trans metadvice cannot appear in the definition of another metadvice.

Stripes, concatenations, and RAID level 5 metadevices must consist of slices only.

Mirroring of RAID level 5 metadevices is not allowed.

Soft partitions can be built on raw devices, or on stripes, RAID level 5, or mirrors.

RAID level 5 or stripe metadevices can be built directly on soft partitions.

**Notes** Trans metadevices have been replaced by UFS logging. Existing trans devices are *not* logging--they pass data directly through to the underlying device. See `mount_ufs(1M)` for more information about UFS logging.

**Name** metaoffline, metaonline – place submirrors offline and online

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/metaoffline -h  
/usr/sbin/metaoffline [-s *setname*] [-f] *mirror submirror*  
/usr/sbin/metaonline -h  
/usr/sbin/metaonline [-s *setname*] *mirror submirror*

**Description** The `metaoffline` command prevents Solaris Volume Manager from reading and writing to the submirror that has been taken offline. While the submirror is offline, all writes to the mirror will be kept track of (by region) and will be written when the submirror is brought back online. The `metaoffline` command can also be used to perform online backups: one submirror is taken offline and backed up while the mirror remains accessible. (However, if this is a two-way mirror, data redundancy is lost while one submirror is offline.) The `metaoffline` command differs from the `metadetach` command because it does not sever the logical association between the submirror and the mirror. To completely remove a submirror from a mirror, use the `metadetach` command.

A submirror that has been taken offline will only remain offline until the `metaonline` command is invoked or the system is rebooted.

When the `metaonline` command is used, reading from and writing to the submirror resumes. A resync is automatically invoked to resync the regions written while the submirror was offline. Writes are directed to the submirror during resync. Reads, however, will come from a different submirror. Once the resync operation completes, reads and writes are performed on that submirror. The `metaonline` command is only effective on a submirror of a mirror that has been taken offline.

The `metaoffline` and `metaonline` commands can not be used on RAID 1 volumes in application-based recovery (ABR) mode.

A submirror that has been taken offline with the `metaoffline` command can only be mounted as read-only.

**Options** Root privileges are required for all of the following options except `-h`.

- `-f` Forces offlining of submirrors that have slices requiring maintenance.
- `-h` Displays usage message.
- `-s setname` Specifies the name of the diskset on which `metaoffline` and `metaonline` will work. Using the `-s` option will cause the command to perform its administrative function within the specified diskset. Without this option, the command will perform its function on local metadevices.
- mirror* Specifies the metadvice name of the mirror from which the submirror will be either taken offline or put online.

*submirror* Specifies the metadvice name of the submirror to be either taken offline or put online.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Taking a Submirror Offline

This example takes one submirror, `mymirror_sub1`, offline from mirror `mymirror`.

```
metaoffline mymirror mymirror_sub1
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWmdu         |
| Interface Stability | Stable          |

**See Also** [mdmonitor\(1M\)](#), [metaclear\(1M\)](#), [metadb\(1M\)](#), [metadetach\(1M\)](#), [metahs\(1M\)](#), [metainit\(1M\)](#), [metaparam\(1M\)](#), [metarecover\(1M\)](#), [metarename\(1M\)](#), [metareplace\(1M\)](#), [metaroot\(1M\)](#), [metaset\(1M\)](#), [metassist\(1M\)](#), [metastat\(1M\)](#), [metasync\(1M\)](#), [metattach\(1M\)](#), [md.tab\(4\)](#), [md.cf\(4\)](#), [mddb.cf\(4\)](#), [md.tab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [md\(7D\)](#)

*Solaris Volume Manager Administration Guide*

**Notes** The `metaonline` and `metaoffline` commands are not applicable to mirrors in application-based recovery (ABR) mode.

**Name** metaparam – modify parameters of metadevices

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/metaparam -h  
 /usr/sbin/metaparam [-s *setname*]  
           [*concat/stripe* or *RAID5 options*] *concat/stripe RAID*  
 /usr/sbin/metaparam [-s *setname*] [*mirror options*] *mirror*

**Description** The metaparam command is used to display or modify current parameters of metadevices.

If just the metadvice is specified as an argument to the metaparam command, the current settings are displayed.

The metaparam command enables most metadvice (volume) parameters to be changed. Only the interlace value cannot be changed by metaparam, because it is established when the metadvice is created and cannot be changed thereafter.

**Options** Root privileges are required for all of the options.

The following options are supported:

-h

Displays usage message.

-s *setname*

Specify the name of the diskset on which metaparam works. Using the -s option causes the command to perform its administrative function within the specified diskset. Without this option, the command performs its function on local metadevices.

**Concat/STRIPE Or  
Raid5 Options**

-h*hot\_spare\_pool* | none

Specifies the hot spare pool to be used by a metadvice. If none is specified, the metadvice is disassociated with the hot spare pool assigned to it. If the metadvice is currently using a hot spare, then metaparam cannot replace the hot spare pool.

*concat/stripe* | *RAID*

Specifies the metadvice name of the concatenation, stripe, or concatenation of stripes, or of the RAID5 metadvice.

**Mirror Options**

-r *roundrobin* | *geometric* | *first*

Modifies the read option for a mirror. The -r option must be followed by either *roundrobin*, *geometric*, or *first*. *roundrobin*, which is the default action under the metainit command, specifies reading the disks in a round-robin (load balancing) method. *geometric* allows for faster performance on sequential reads. *first* specifies reading only from the first submirror.

-w *parallel* | *serial*

Modifies the write option for a mirror. The -w option must be followed by either *parallel* or *serial*. *parallel*, the default action under the metainit command, specifies that all writes are parallel. *serial* specifies that all writes are serial.

**-p** *pass\_number*

A number from 0-to-9 that specifies the order in which a mirror is resynced during reboot. The default is 1. Smaller pass numbers are resynced first. Equal pass numbers are run concurrently. If 0 is used, the mirror resync is skipped. 0 should only be used for mirrors mounted as read-only, or as swap.

*mirror*

Specifies the metadvice name of the mirror.

**Examples** **EXAMPLE 1** Associating Hot Spare Pool with RAID5 Metadvice

This example associates a hot spare pool, `user_pool`, with a RAID5 metadvice, `user_raid`.

```
metaparam -h user_pool user_raid
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Changing Read Option to Geometric

This example changes the read option on a mirror `d50` from the default of `roundrobin` to `geometric`.

```
metaparam -r geometric d50
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0  
Successful completion.

>0  
An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWmdu         |
| Interface Stability | Stable          |

**See Also** [mdmonitord\(1M\)](#), [metaclear\(1M\)](#), [metadb\(1M\)](#), [metadetach\(1M\)](#), [metahs\(1M\)](#), [metainit\(1M\)](#), [metaoffline\(1M\)](#), [metaonline\(1M\)](#), [metarecover\(1M\)](#), [metarename\(1M\)](#), [metareplace\(1M\)](#), [metaroot\(1M\)](#), [metaset\(1M\)](#), [metassist\(1M\)](#), [metastat\(1M\)](#), [metasync\(1M\)](#), [metattach\(1M\)](#), [md.tab\(4\)](#), [md.cf\(4\)](#), [mddb.cf\(4\)](#), [md.tab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [md\(7D\)](#)

*Solaris Volume Manager Administration Guide*

**Name** metarecover – recover soft partition information

**Synopsis** /sbin/metarecover [-n] [-v] [-s *setname*] *component* -p  
/sbin/metarecover [-n] [-v] [-s *setname*] *component* -p {-d}  
/sbin/metarecover [-n] [-v] [-s *setname*] *component* -p {-m}

**Description** The `metarecover` command scans a specified component to look for soft partition configuration information and to regenerate the configuration.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- d Recover soft partitions in the metadvice state database from the extent headers on the device. Options -d and -m are mutually exclusive.
- m Regenerate the extent headers and reapplies them to the underlying device based on the soft partitions listed in the metadvice state database. Options -d and -m are mutually exclusive.
- n Do not actually perform the operation. Show the output or errors that would have resulted from the operation, had it been run.
- p Regenerate soft partitions based on the metadvice state database or extent headers on the underlying device. If neither -d nor -m are specified, this option compares the soft partition information in the metadvice state database to the extent headers.
- s *setname* Specify the name of the diskset on which `metarecover` works. Using the `s` option causes the command to perform its function within the specified diskset. Without the `-s` option, the `metarecover` command operates on the metadevices and/or hot spare pools in the local diskset.  
  
This option is required to recover former `sps` from a diskset component or `raw-device`. *setname* must be identical to the former *setname* in which the `sps` were created. The set numbers, however, seem irrelevant.
- v Verbose mode, displaying the changes being made.

**Operands** The following operand is supported:

*component* Specifies the `c*t*d*s*` number of the disk or slice containing the partitions, or the device name (for example, `d10`) of the metadvice containing the partitions.

*component* can be a slice name, component name, `/dev/dsk` path, or `/dev/rdisk` path.



**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Updating Metadevice State Database Based on Disk Extent Headers

A disk containing soft partitions is moved from one system to another. The system administrator would like to use the existing soft partitions. `metarecover` updates the metadevice state database based on the extent headers on the disk.

```
metarecover -v c0t3d0s2 -p -d
```

## EXAMPLE 2 Updating Metadevice State Database Based on Incomplete Soft Partition Creation

A system crashes in the middle of creating a new soft partition. The soft partition is in the creating state and the driver does not let that device be opened. `metarecover` rewrites the extent headers for the partially created soft partition and mark it as Okay.

```
metarecover -v c0t3d0s2 -p -m
```

## EXAMPLE 3 Updating Extent Headers Based on Metadevice State Database

Someone accidentally overwrote a portion of a disk leaving extent headers destroyed. `metarecover` rewrites the extent headers to ensure a valid soft partition configuration, though user data is not recovered.

```
metarecover -v d5 -m
```

The following example implements the same command using a descriptive name.

```
metarecover -v myvolume -m
```

## EXAMPLE 4 Validating Soft Partition Configuration

To validate the existing soft partition configuration, use `metarecover` with only the `-p` flag.

```
metarecover c0t3d0s2 -p
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWmdr         |
| Interface Stability | Stable          |

**See Also** `mdmonitord(1M)`, `metaclear(1M)`, `metadb(1M)`, `metadetach(1M)`, `metahs(1M)`, `metainit(1M)`, `metaoffline(1M)`, `metaonline(1M)`, `metaparam(1M)`, `metarename(1M)`, `metareplace(1M)`, `metaroot(1M)`, `metaset(1M)`, `metassist(1M)`, `metastat(1M)`, `metasync(1M)`, `metattach(1M)`, `md.tab(4)`, `md.cf(4)`, `mddb.cf(4)`, `md.tab(4)`, `attributes(5)`, `md(7D)`

*Solaris Volume Manager Administration Guide*

**Name** metarename – rename metadevice or switch layered metadevice names

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/metarename [-s *setname*] *metadevice1* *metadevice2*  
 /usr/sbin/metarename [-s *setname*] [-f] -x *metadevice1* *metadevice2*  
 /usr/sbin/metarename -h

**Description** There are two ways to use `metarename`, one with and one without the `-x` option. The first method (without `-x`) renames an existing metadevice to a new name. This makes managing the metadevice namespace easier. The metadevice being renamed cannot be mounted or open, nor can the new name already exist. For example, to rename a metadevice that contains a mounted file system, you would first need to unmount the file system.

With the second way to use `metarename`, using the `-x` option, `metarename` switches (exchanges) the names of an existing layered metadevice and one of its subdevices. In Solaris Volume Manager terms, a layered metadevice can be either a mirror or a trans metadevice. The `-x` option enables you to switch the metadevice names of a mirror and one of its submirrors, or a trans metadevice and its master device.

`metarename -x` makes it easier to mirror or unmirror an existing stripe or concatenation, and to remove a trans device.

When used to mirror an existing stripe or concatenation, you must stop access to the device. For example, if the device contains a mounted file system, you must first unmount the file system before doing the rename.

You can also use the `metarename -x` command to untrans a trans metadevice from an existing device. This applies only to the master device. You cannot remove a logging device with `metarename`. Before you can rename a trans device, you must detach the logging device. Then you must stop access to the trans metadevice itself.

You cannot rename or switch metadevices that are in an error state or that have subcomponents in an error state, or metadevices actively using a hot spare replacement.

You can only switch metadevices that have a direct child/parent relationship. You could not, for example, directly exchange a stripe in a mirror that is a master device with the trans metadevice.

You must use the `-f` flag when switching members of a trans metadevice.

Only metadevices can be switched, not slices.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- f Force the switching of trans metadevice members.
- h Display a help message.

- `-s setname` Specifies the name of the diskset on which `metarename` will work. Using the `-s` option will cause the command to perform its administrative function within the specified diskset. Without this option, the command will perform its function on the local metadevices.
- `-x` Exchange the metadevice names *metadevice1* and *metadevice2*.
- metadevice1* Specifies the metadevice to be renamed or switched.
- metadevice2* Specifies the target metadevice name for the rename or switch operation.

### Examples EXAMPLE 1 Renaming a Metadevice

This example renames a metadevice named `d10` to `account_records`. Note that `account_records` must not exist for the rename to succeed.

```
metarename d10 account_records
```

### EXAMPLE 2 Creating a Two-Way Mirror

This example creates a two-way mirror from an existing stripe named `d1` with a mounted file system, `/home2`.

```
metainit d2 1 1 c13d0s1
metainit -f d20 -m d1
umount /home2
metarename -x d20 d1
metattach d1 d2
mount /home2
```

First, a second concatenation `d2`, is created. (`d1` already exists.) The `metainit` command creates a one-way mirror, `d20`, from `d1`. Next, you unmount the file system and switch `d1` for `d20`, making `d1` the top-level device (mirror). You attach the second submirror, `d2`, to create a two-way mirror. Lastly, you remount the file system.

### EXAMPLE 3 Mounting a Mirrored File System on Stripe

This example takes an existing mirror named `d1` with a mounted file system, and ends up with the file system mounted on a stripe `d1`.

```
umount /fs2
metarename -x d1 d20
metadetach d20 d1
metaclear -r d20
mount /fs2
```

First, you unmount the file system, then switch the mirror `d1` and its submirror `d20`. This makes the mirror into `d20`. Next, you detach `d1` from `d20`, then delete the mirror `d20` and its

**EXAMPLE 3** Mounting a Mirrored File System on Stripe (Continued)

other submirror. You then remount the file system.

**EXAMPLE 4** Deleting a Trans Metadevice

This example deletes a trans metadevice named `d10` while its mount point is `/myhome`. The master device, which is a stripe, is named `d2`. The logging device, also a stripe, is named `d5`.

```
umount /myhome
metadetach d10
metarename -f -x d10 d2
metaclear d2
metaclear d5
fsck /dev/md/dsk/d10
mount /myhome
```

You unmount the file system first, then detach the trans metadevice's logging device. The trans metadevice is switched with the master device, making the trans metadevice `d2` and the underlying stripe `d10`. You clear the trans metadevice `d2` and the logging device `d5`. `d10` must be `fsck'd`, and then the file system is remounted.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWmdu         |
| Interface Stability | Stable          |

**See Also** [mdmonitord\(1M\)](#), [metaclear\(1M\)](#), [metadb\(1M\)](#), [metadetach\(1M\)](#), [metahs\(1M\)](#), [metainit\(1M\)](#), [metaoffline\(1M\)](#), [metaonline\(1M\)](#), [metaparam\(1M\)](#), [metarecover\(1M\)](#), [metareplace\(1M\)](#), [metaroot\(1M\)](#), [metaset\(1M\)](#), [metassist\(1M\)](#), [metastat\(1M\)](#), [metasync\(1M\)](#), [metattach\(1M\)](#), [md.tab\(4\)](#), [md.cf\(4\)](#), [mddb.cf\(4\)](#), [md.tab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [md\(7D\)](#)

*Solaris Volume Manager Administration Guide*

**Limitations** Renaming and exchanging metadevice names can only be used for metadevices. A physical slice cannot be renamed to a metadevice, nor can a metadevice be exchanged with a physical slice name.

Metadevice names are strings of the pattern  $d<xyz>$  where  $xyz$  is a value between 0 and 8192. You cannot use logical names for metadevices.

**Notes** Trans metadevices have been replaced by UFS logging. Existing trans devices are *not* logging--they pass data directly through to the underlying device. See [mount\\_ufs\(1M\)](#) for more information about UFS logging.

**Name** metareplace – enable or replace components of submirrors or RAID5 metadevices

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/metareplace -h  
 /usr/sbin/metareplace [-s *setname*] -e *mirror component*  
 /usr/sbin/metareplace [-s *setname*] *mirror component-old component-new*  
 /usr/sbin/metareplace [-s *setname*] -e *RAID component*  
 /usr/sbin/metareplace [-s *setname*] [-f] *RAID component-old component-new*

**Description** The metareplace command is used to enable or replace components (slices) within a submirror or a RAID5 metadvice.

When you replace a component, the metareplace command automatically starts resyncing the new component with the rest of the metadvice. When the resync completes, the replaced component becomes readable and writable. If the failed component has been hot spare replaced, the hot spare is placed in the available state and made available for other hot spare replacements.

Note that the new component must be large enough to replace the old component.

A component may be in one of several states. The Last Erred and the Maintenance states require action. Always replace components in the Maintenance state first, followed by a resync and validation of data. After components requiring maintenance are fixed, validated, and resynced, components in the Last Erred state should be replaced. To avoid data loss, it is always best to back up all data before replacing Last Erred devices.

**Options** Root privileges are required for all of the following options except -h.

- e Transitions the state of *component* to the available state and resyncs the failed component. If the failed component has been hot spare replaced, the hot spare is placed in the available state and made available for other hot spare replacements. This command is useful when a component fails due to human error (for example, accidentally turning off a disk), or because the component was physically replaced. In this case, the replacement component must be partitioned to match the disk being replaced before running the metareplace command.
- f Forces the replacement of an errored component of a metadvice in which multiple components are in error. The component determined by the `metastat display` to be in the "Maintenance" state must be replaced first. This option may cause data to be fabricated since multiple components are in error.
- h Display help message.
- s *setname* Specifies the name of the diskset on which metareplace will work. Using the -s option will cause the command to perform its administrative

function within the specified diskset. Without this option, the command will perform its function on local metadevices.

|                      |                                                                                                               |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>mirror</i>        | The metadvice name of the mirror.                                                                             |
| <i>component</i>     | The logical name for the physical slice (partition) on a disk drive, such as <code>/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s2</code> . |
| <i>component-old</i> | The physical slice that is being replaced.                                                                    |
| <i>component-new</i> | The physical slice that is replacing <i>component-old</i> .                                                   |
| <i>RAID</i>          | The metadvice name of the RAID5 device.                                                                       |

### Examples EXAMPLE 1 Recovering from Error Condition in RAID5 Metadvice

This example shows how to recover when a single component in a RAID5 metadvice is errored.

```
metareplace d10 c3t0d0s2 c5t0d0s2
```

In this example, a RAID5 metadvice `d10` has an errored component, `c3t0d0s2`, replaced by a new component, `c5t0d0s2`.

### EXAMPLE 2 Use of -e After Physical Disk Replacement

This example shows the use of the `-e` option after a physical disk in a submirror (a submirror of mirror `mymirror1`, in this case) has been replaced.

```
metareplace -e mymirror1 c1t4d0s2
```

Note: The replacement disk must be partitioned to match the disk it is replacing before running the `metareplace` command.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWmdu         |
| Interface Stability | Stable          |



**See Also** `mdmonitord(1M)`, `metaclear(1M)`, `metadb(1M)`, `metadetach(1M)`, `metahs(1M)`, `metainit(1M)`, `metaoffline(1M)`, `metaonline(1M)`, `metaparam(1M)`, `metarecover(1M)`, `metarename(1M)`, `metaroot(1M)`, `metaset(1M)`, `metassist(1M)`, `metastat(1M)`, `metasync(1M)`, `metattach(1M)`, `md.tab(4)`, `md.cf(4)`, `mddb.cf(4)`, `md.tab(4)`, `attributes(5)`, `md(7D)`

*Solaris Volume Manager Administration Guide*

**Name** metaroot – setup system files for root (/) metadvice

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/metaroot -h

```
/usr/sbin/metaroot [-n] [-k system-name] [-v vfstab-name]
 [-c mddb.cf-name] [-m md.conf-name] [-R root-path] device
```

**Description** The metaroot command edits the /etc/vfstab and /etc/system files so that the system may be booted with the root file system (/) on an appropriate metadvice. The only metadvice that support the root file system are a stripe with only a single slice or a mirror on a single-slice stripe.

If necessary, the metaroot command can reset a system that has been configured to boot the root file system (/) on a metadvice so that it uses a physical slice.

**Options** Root privileges are required for all of the following options except -h.

The following options are supported:

- c *mddb.cf-name* Use *mddb.cf-name* instead of the default /etc/lvm/mddb.cf file as a source of metadvice database locations.
- h Display a usage message.
- k *system-name* Edit a user-supplied *system-name* instead of the default /etc/system system configuration information file.
- m *md.conf-name* Edit the configuration file specified by *md.conf-name* rather than the default, /kernel/drv/md.conf.
- n Print what would be done without actually doing it.
- R *root-path* When metaroot modifies system files, it accesses them in their relative location under *root-path*.

The -R option cannot be used in combination with the -c, -k, -m, or -v options.

**Note** – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the -R option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).

- v *vfstab-name* Edit *vfstab-name* instead of the default /etc/vfstab table of file system defaults.

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

- device* Specifies either the metadvice or the conventional disk device (slice) used for the root file system (/).

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Specifying Root File System on Metadevice

The following command edits `/etc/system` and `/etc/vfstab` to specify that the root file system is now on metadevice `d0`.

```
metaroot d0
```

The following example shows the same command using a descriptive name for the metadevice.

```
metaroot newrootfilesystem
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Specifying Root File System on SCSI Disk

The following command edits `/etc/system` and `/etc/vfstab` to specify that the root file system is now on the SCSI disk device `/dev/dsk/c0t3d0s0`.

```
metaroot /dev/dsk/c0t3d0s0
```

|              |                                  |                                                                        |
|--------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Files</b> | <code>/etc/system</code>         | System configuration information file. See <a href="#">system(4)</a> . |
|              | <code>/etc/vfstab</code>         | File system defaults.                                                  |
|              | <code>/etc/lvm/mddb.cf</code>    | Metadevice state database locations.                                   |
|              | <code>/kernel/drv/md.conf</code> | Configuration file for the metadevice driver, <code>md</code> .        |

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWmdu         |
| Interface Stability | Stable          |

**See Also** [mdmonitor\(1M\)](#), [metaclear\(1M\)](#), [metadb\(1M\)](#), [metadetach\(1M\)](#), [metahs\(1M\)](#), [metainit\(1M\)](#), [metaoffline\(1M\)](#), [metaonline\(1M\)](#), [metaparam\(1M\)](#), [metarecover\(1M\)](#), [metarename\(1M\)](#), [metareplace\(1M\)](#), [metaset\(1M\)](#), [metassist\(1M\)](#), [metastat\(1M\)](#), [metasync\(1M\)](#), [metattach\(1M\)](#), [md.tab\(4\)](#), [md.cf\(4\)](#), [mddb.cf\(4\)](#), [md.tab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [md\(7D\)](#)

*Solaris Volume Manager Administration Guide*

**Name** metaset – configure disk sets

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/metaset -s *setname* [-M-a -h *hostname*]  
 /usr/sbin/metaset -s *setname* -A {enable | disable}  
 /usr/sbin/metaset -s *setname* [-A {enable | disable}] -a -h *hostname*...  
 /usr/sbin/metaset -s *setname* -a [-l *length*] [-L *drivename*...  
 /usr/sbin/metaset -s *setname* -C {take | release | purge}  
 /usr/sbin/metaset -s *setname* -d [-f] -h *hostname*...  
 /usr/sbin/metaset -s *setname* -d [-f] *drivename*...  
 /usr/sbin/metaset -s *setname* -j  
 /usr/sbin/metaset -s *setname* -r  
 /usr/sbin/metaset -s *setname* -w  
 /usr/sbin/metaset -s *setname* -t [-f] [-u *tagnumber*] [y]  
 /usr/sbin/metaset -s *setname* -b  
 /usr/sbin/metaset -s *setname* -P  
 /usr/sbin/metaset -s *setname* -q  
 /usr/sbin/metaset -s *setname* -o [-h *hostname*]  
 /usr/sbin/metaset [-s *setname*]  
 /usr/sbin/metaset [-s *setname*] -a | -d  
 [ [m] *mediator\_host\_list*]

**Description** The `metaset` command administers sets of disks in named disk sets. Named disk sets include any disk set that is not in the local set. While disk sets enable a high-availability configuration, Solaris Volume Manager itself does not actually provide a high-availability environment.

A single-owner disk set configuration manages storage on a SAN or fabric-attached storage, or provides namespace control and state database replica management for a specified set of disks.

In a shared disk set configuration, multiple hosts are physically connected to the same set of disks. When one host fails, another host has exclusive access to the disks. Each host can control a shared disk set, but only one host can control it at a time.

When you add a new disk to any disk set, Solaris Volume Manager checks the disk format. If necessary, it repartitions the disk to ensure that the disk has an appropriately configured reserved slice 7 (or slice 6 on an EFI labelled device) with adequate space for a state database replica. The precise size of slice 7 (or slice 6 on an EFI labelled device) depends on the disk geometry. For traditional disk sets, the slice is no less than 4 Mbytes, and probably closer to 6 Mbytes, depending on where the cylinder boundaries lie. For multi-owner disk sets, the slice is

a minimum of 256 Mbytes. The minimal size for slice 7 might change in the future. This change is based on a variety of factors, including the size of the state database replica and information to be stored in the state database replica.

For use in disk sets, disks must have a dedicated slice (six or seven) that meets specific criteria:

- The slice must start at sector 0
- The slice must include enough space for disk label
- The state database replicas cannot be mounted
- The slice does not overlap with any other slices, including slice 2

If the existing partition table does not meet these criteria, or if the `-L` flag is specified, Solaris Volume Manager repartitions the disk. A small portion of each drive is reserved in slice 7 (or slice 6 on an EFI labelled device) for use by Solaris Volume Manager. The remainder of the space on each drive is placed into slice 0. Any existing data on the disks is lost by repartitioning.

After you add a drive to a disk set, it can be repartitioned as necessary, with the exception that slice 7 (or slice 6 on an EFI labelled device) is not altered in any way.

After a disk set is created and metadevices are set up within the set, the metadvice name is in the following form:

```
/dev/md/setname/{dsk,rsk}/dnumber
```

where *setname* is the name of the disk set, and *number* is the number of the metadvice (0-127).

If you have disk sets that you upgraded from Solstice DiskSuite software, the default state database replica size on those sets is 1034 blocks, not the 8192 block size from Solaris Volume Manager. Also, slice 7 on the disks that were added under Solstice DiskSuite are correspondingly smaller than slice 7 on disks that were added under Solaris Volume Manager.

If disks you add to a disk set have acceptable slice 7s (that start at cylinder 0 and that have sufficient space for the state database replica), they are not reformatted.

Hot spare pools within local disk sets use standard Solaris Volume Manager naming conventions. Hot spare pools with shared disk sets use the following convention:

```
setname/hot_spare_pool
```

where *setname* is the name of the disk set, and *hot\_spare\_pool* is the name of the hot spare pool associated with the disk set.

Multi-node  
Environment

To create and work with a disk set in a multi—node environment, `root` must be a member of Group 14 on all hosts, or the `/ . rhosts` file must contain an entry for all other host names. This is not required in a SunCluster 3.x environment.

**Tagged data** Tagged data occurs when there are different versions of a disk set's replicas. This tagged data consists of the set owner's nodename, the hardware serial number of the owner and the time it was written out to the available replicas. The system administrator can use this information to determine which replica contains the correct data.

When a disk set is configured with an even number of storage enclosures and has replicas balanced across them evenly, it is possible that up to half of the replicas can be lost (for example, through a power failure of half of the storage enclosures). After the enclosure that went down is rebooted, half of the replicas are not recognized by SVM. When the set is retaken, the `metaset` command returns an error of "stale databases", and all of the metadevices are in a read-only state.

Some of the replicas that are not recognized need to be deleted. The action of deleting the replicas also causes updates to the replicas that are not being deleted. In a dual hosted disk set environment, the second node can access the deleted replicas instead of the existing replicas when it takes the set. This leads to the possibility of getting the wrong replica record on a disk set take. An error message is displayed, and user intervention is required.

Use the `-q` to query the disk set and the `-t`, `-u`, and `-y`, options to select the tag and take the disk set. See `OPTIONS`.

**Mediator Configuration** SVM provides support for a low-end HA solution consisting of two hosts that share only two strings of drives. The hosts in this type of configuration, referred to as *mediators* or mediator hosts, run a special daemon, `rpc.metamedd(1M)`. The mediator hosts take on additional responsibilities to ensure that data is available in the case of host or drive failures.

A mediator configuration can survive the failure of a single host or a single string of drives, without administrative intervention. If both a host and a string of drives fail (multiple failures), the integrity of the data cannot be guaranteed. At this point, administrative intervention is required to make the data accessible. See `mediator(7D)` for further details.

Use the `-m` option to add or delete a mediator host. See `OPTIONS`.

**Options** The following options are supported:

`-a drivename`

Add drives or hosts to the named set. For a drive to be accepted into a set, the drive must not be in use within another metadvice or disk set, mounted on, or swapped on. When the drive is accepted into the set, it is repartitioned and the metadvice state database replica (for the set) can be placed on it. However, if a slice 7 (or slice 6 on an EFI labelled device), starts at cylinder 0, and is large enough to hold a state database replica, then the disk is not repartitioned. Also, a drive is not accepted if it cannot be found on all hosts specified as part of the set. This means that if a host within the specified set is unreachable due to network problems, or is administratively down, the add fails.

Specify a drive name in the form `cnumtnumdnum`. Do not specify a slice number (`snum`). For drives in a Sun Cluster, you must specify a complete pathname for each drive. Such a name has the form:

`/dev/did/[r]dsk/dnum`

`-a | -d | -m mediator_host_list`

Add (`-a`) or delete (`-d`) mediator hosts to the specified disk set. A *mediator\_host\_list* is the [nodename\(4\)](#) of the mediator host to be added and (for adding) up to two other aliases for the mediator host. The nodename and aliases for each mediator host are separated only by commas. Up to three mediator hosts can be specified for the named disk set. Specify only the nodename of that host as the argument to `-m` to delete a mediator host.

In a single `metaset` command you can add or delete up to three mediator hosts. See [EXAMPLES](#).

`-A {enable | disable}`

Specify auto-take status for a disk set. If auto-take is enabled for a set, the disk set is automatically taken at boot, and file systems on volumes within the disk set can be mounted through `/etc/vfstab` entries. Only a single host can be associated with an auto-take set, so attempts to add a second host to an auto-take set or attempts to configure a disk set with multiple hosts as auto-take fails with an error message. Disabling auto-take status for a specific disk set causes the disk set to revert to normal behavior. That is, the disk set is potentially shared (non-concurrently) among hosts, and unavailable for mounting through `/etc/vfstab`.

`-b`

Insure that the replicas are distributed according to the replica layout algorithm. This can be invoked at any time, and does nothing if the replicas are correctly distributed. In cases where the user has used the `metadb` command to manually remove or add replicas, this command can be used to insure that the distribution of replicas matches the replica layout algorithm.

`-C {take | release | purge}`

Do not interact with the Cluster Framework when used in a Sun Cluster 3 environment. In effect, this means do not modify the Cluster Configuration Repository. These options should only be used to fix a broken disk set configuration.

`take`

Take ownership of the disk set but do not inform the Cluster Framework that the disk set is available. This option is not for use with a multi-owner disk set.

`release`

Release ownership of the disk set without informing the Cluster Framework. This option should only be used if the disk set ownership was taken with the corresponding `-C take` option. This option is not for use with a multi-owner disk set.

`purge`

Remove the disk set without informing the Cluster Framework that the disk set has been purged. This option should only be used when the disk set is not accessible and requires rebuilding.

**-d** *drivename*

Delete drives or hosts from the named disk set. For a drive to be deleted, it must not be in use within the set. The last host cannot be deleted unless all of the drives within the set are deleted. Deleting the last host in a disk set destroys the disk set.

Specify a drive name in the form *cnumtnumdnum*. Do not specify a slice number (*snum*). For drives in a Sun Cluster, you must specify a complete pathname for each drive. Such a name has the form:

```
/dev/did/[r]dsk/dnum
```

This option fails on a multi-owner disk set if attempting to withdraw the master node while other nodes are in the set.

**-f**

Force one of three actions to occur: takes ownership of a disk set when used with **-t**; deletes the last disk drive from the disk set; or deletes the last host from the disk set. Deleting the last drive or host from a disk set requires the **-d** option.

When used to forcibly take ownership of the disk set, this causes the disk set to be grabbed whether or not another host owns the set. All of the disks within the set are taken over (reserved) and fail fast is enabled, causing the other host to panic if it had disk set ownership. The metadvice state database is read in by the host performing the take, and the shared metadvice contained in the set are accessible.

You can use this option to delete the last drive in the disk set, because this drive would implicitly contain the last state database replica.

You can use **-f** option to delete hosts from a set. When specified with a partial list of hosts, it can be used for one-host administration. One-host administration could be useful when a host is known to be non-functional, thus avoiding timeouts and failed commands. When specified with a complete list of hosts, the set is completely deleted. It is generally specified with a complete list of hosts to clean up after one-host administration has been performed.

**-h** *hostname...*

Specify one or more host names to be added to or deleted from a disk set. Adding the first host creates the set. The last host cannot be deleted unless all of the drives within the set have been deleted. The host name is not accepted if all of the drives within the set cannot be found on the specified host. The host name is the same name found in `/etc/nodename`.

**-j**

Join a host to the owner list for a multi-owner disk set. The concepts of take and release, used with traditional disk sets, do not apply to multi-owner sets, because multiple owners are allowed.

As a host boots and is brought online, it must go through three configuration levels to be able to use a multi-owner disk set:

1. It must be included in the cluster nodelist, which happens automatically in a cluster or single-node situation.



2. It must be added to the multi-owner disk set with the `-a -h` options documented elsewhere in this man page
3. It must join the set. When the host is first added to the set, it is automatically joined.

On manual restarts, the administrator must manually issue

```
metaset -s multinodesetname -j
```

to join the host to the owner list. After the cluster reconfiguration, when the host reenters the cluster, the node is automatically joined to the set. The `metaset -j` command joins the host to all multi-owner sets that the host has been added to. In a single node situation, joining the node to the disk set starts any necessary resynchronizations.

**-L**

When adding a disk to a disk set, force the disk to be repartitioned using the standard Solaris Volume Manager algorithm. See DESCRIPTION.

**-l *length***

Set the size (in blocks) for the metadevice state database replica. The length can only be set when adding a new drive; it cannot be changed on an existing drive. The default (and maximum) size is 8192 blocks, which should be appropriate for most configurations. Replica sizes of less than 128 blocks are not recommended.

**-M**

Specify that the disk set to be created or modified is a multi-owner disk set that supports multiple concurrent owners.

This option is required when creating a multi-owner disk set. Its use is optional on all other operations on a multi-owner disk set and has no effect. Existing disk sets cannot be converted to multi-owner sets.

**-o**

Return an exit status of 0 if the local host or the host specified with the `-h` option is the owner of the disk set.

**-P**

Purge the named disk set from the node on which the `metaset` command is run. The disk set must not be owned by the node that runs this command. If the node does own the disk set, the command fails.

If you need to delete a disk set but cannot take ownership of the set, use the `-P` option.

**-q**

Displays an enumerated list of tags pertaining to “tagged data” that can be encountered during a take of the ownership of a disk set.

This option is not for use with a multi-owner disk set.

-r

Release ownership of a disk set. All of the disks within the set are released. The metadevices set up within the set are no longer accessible.

This option is not for use with a multi-owner disk set.

-s *setname*

Specify the name of a disk set on which `metaset` works. If no *setname* is specified, all disk sets are returned.

-t

Take ownership of a disk set safely. If `metaset` finds that another host owns the set, this host is not be allowed to take ownership of the set. If the set is not owned by any other host, all the disks within the set are owned by the host on which `metaset` was executed. The metadevice state database is read in, and the shared metadevices contained in the set become accessible. The `-t` option takes a disk set that has stale databases. When the databases are stale, `metaset` exits with code 66, and prints a message. At that point, the only operations permitted are the addition and deletion of replicas. Once the addition or deletion of the replicas has been completed, the disk set should be released and retaken to gain full access to the data.

This option is not for use with a multi-owner disk set.

-u *tagnumber*

Once a tag has been selected, a subsequent take with `-u tagnumber` can be executed to select the data associated with the given *tagnumber*.

w

Withdraws a host from the owner list for a multi-owner disk set. The concepts of take and release, used with traditional disk sets, do not apply to multi-owner sets, because multiple owners are allowed.

Instead of releasing a set, a host can issue

```
metaset -s multinodesetname -w
```

to withdraw from the owner list. A host automatically withdraws on a reboot, but can be manually withdrawn if it should not be able to use the set, but should be able to rejoin at a later time. A host that withdrew due to a reboot can still appear joined from other hosts in the set until a reconfiguration cycle occurs.

`metaset -w` withdraws from ownership of all multi-owner sets of which the host is a member. This option fails if you attempt to withdraw the master node while other nodes are in the disk set owner list. This option cancels all resyncs running on the node. A cluster reconfiguration process that is removing a node from the cluster membership list effectively withdraws the host from the ownership list.

-y

Execute a subsequent take. If the take operation encounters “tagged data,” the take operation exits with code 2. You can then run the `metaset` command with the `-q` option to see an enumerated list of tags.

### Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Defining a Disk Set

This example defines a disk set.

```
metaset -s relo-red -a -h red blue
```

The name of the disk set is `relo-red`. The names of the first and second hosts added to the set are `red` and `blue`, respectively. (The hostname is found in `/etc/nodename`.) Adding the first host creates the disk set. A disk set can be created with just one host, with the second added later. The last host cannot be deleted until all of the drives within the set have been deleted.

### **EXAMPLE 2** Adding Drives to a Disk Set

This example adds drives to a disk set.

```
metaset -s relo-red -a c2t0d0 c2t1d0 c2t2d0 c2t3d0 c2t4d0 c2t5d0
```

The name of the previously created disk set is `relo-red`. The names of the drives are `c2t0d0`, `c2t1d0`, `c2t2d0`, `c2t3d0`, `c2t4d0`, and `c2t5d0`. There is no slice identifier (“`sx`”) at the end of the drive names.

### **EXAMPLE 3** Adding Multiple Mediator Hosts

The following command adds three mediator hosts to the specified disk set.

```
metaset -s mydiskset -a -m myhost1,alias1 myhost2,alias2 myhost3,alias3
```

### **EXAMPLE 4** Purging a Disk Set from the Node

The following command purges the disk set `relo-red` from the node:

```
metaset -s relo-red -P
```

### **EXAMPLE 5** Querying a Disk Set for Tagged Data

The following command queries the disk set `relo-red` for a list of the tagged data:

```
metaset -s relo-red -q
```

This command produces the following results:

The following tag(s) were found:

```
1 - vha-1000c - Fri Sep 20 17:20:08 2002
2 - vha-1000c - Mon Sep 23 11:01:27 2002
```

**EXAMPLE 6** Selecting a tag and taking a Disk set

The following command selects a tag and takes the disk set `relo-red`:

```
metaset -s relo-red -t -u 2
```

**EXAMPLE 7** Defining a Multi-Owner Disk Set

The following command defines a multi-owner disk set:

```
metaset -s blue -M -a -h hahost1 hahost2
```

The name of the disk set is `blue`. The names of the first and second hosts added to the set are `hahost1` and `hahost2`, respectively. The hostname is found in `/etc/nodename`. Adding the first host creates the multi-owner disk set. A disk set can be created with just one host, with additional hosts added later. The last host cannot be deleted until all of the drives within the set have been deleted.

**Files** `/etc/lvm/md.tab`  
Contains list of metadvice configurations.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0  
Successful completion.

>0  
An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWmdu         |
| Interface Stability | Stable          |

**See Also** [mdmonitord\(1M\)](#), [metaclear\(1M\)](#), [metadb\(1M\)](#), [metadetach\(1M\)](#), [metahs\(1M\)](#), [metainit\(1M\)](#), [metaoffline\(1M\)](#), [metaonline\(1M\)](#), [metaparam\(1M\)](#), [metarecover\(1M\)](#), [metarename\(1M\)](#), [metareplace\(1M\)](#), [metaroot\(1M\)](#), [metassist\(1M\)](#), [metastat\(1M\)](#), [metasync\(1M\)](#), [metattach\(1M\)](#), [md.tab\(4\)](#), [md.cf\(4\)](#), [mddb.cf\(4\)](#), [md.tab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [md\(7D\)](#)

*Solaris Volume Manager Administration Guide*

**Notes** Disk set administration, including the addition and deletion of hosts and drives, requires all hosts in the set to be accessible from the network.

**Name** metassist – automated volume creation utility to support Solaris Volume Manager

**Synopsis** metassist -V

metassist -?

metassist create [-v *n*] [-c] -F *config\_file*

metassist create [-v *n*] [-c | -d] -F *request\_file*

metassist create [-v *n*] [-c | -d] [-f] [-n *name*]

[-p *datapaths*] [-r *redundancy*]

[-a *available* [, *available*, |PO]]

[-u *unavailable* [, *unavailable*, |PO]] -s *setname* -S *size*

metassist create -?

**Description** The `metassist` command provides assistance, through automation, with common Solaris Volume Manager tasks.

**SUBCOMMANDS** The following subcommands are supported:

**create** The `create` subcommand creates one or more Solaris Volume Manager volumes. You can specify this request on the command line or in a file specified on the command line.

If you create a volume using the command line, you can specify the characteristics of the volume in terms of the desired quality of service it will provide - its size, the number of redundant copies of the data it contains, the number of data paths by which it is accessible, and whether faulty components are replaced automatically. The diskset in which the volume will reside and the volume's size must be specified on the command line in this form of the command.

If you create a volume using a request in a file, you can specify the characteristics of the volume in terms of the quality of service they provide, as on the command line. Alternatively, the file can specify the types and component parts of the volume, (for example, mirrors, stripes, concatenations, and their component slices). The file may also specify volumes partly in terms of their types and partly in terms of their component parts, and may specify the characteristics of more than one volume. All volumes specified in a file must reside in the same diskset, whose name must be specified in the file.

If you specify the `-c` or `-d` option on the command line, the command runs without creating an actual volume or volumes. Instead, it outputs either a Bourne shell command script (`-c` option) or a volume configuration (`-d` option). The command script, when run, creates the specified volume or volumes. The volume configuration specifies the volume or volumes in complete detail, naming all their components.

The input file given on the command line can take one of the following forms:

- a volume request, which specifies a request for a volume with explicit attributes and components, or matching a given quality of service
- a volume configuration, produced by a previous execution of the command

**Options** The following option is mandatory if you specify a volume request or volume configuration in a file:

-F *config\_file* | *request\_file* Specify the volume request or volume configuration file to process. If *config\_file* or *request\_file* is -, it is read from standard input.

The -d option cannot be specified when *inputfile* is a volume configuration file.

The following options are mandatory if you specify a volume request on the command line:

-s *set* Specify the disk set to use when creating volumes. All the volumes and hot spare pools are created in this disk set. If necessary, disks are moved into the diskset for use in the volumes and hot spare pools. If the diskset doesn't exist the command creates it. This option is required. `metassist` works entirely within a named disk set. Use of the local, or unnamed disk set, is not allowed.

-S *size* Specify the size of the volume to be created. The size argument consists of a numeric value (a decimal can be specified) followed by KB, MB, GB, or TB, indicating kilobytes, megabytes, gigabytes, or terabytes, respectively. Case is ignored when interpreting this option. This option is required.

The following options are optional command line parameters:

-a *device1, device2, . . .* Explicitly specify the devices that can be used in the creation of this volume. Named devices may be controllers or disks. Only used when specifying a volume on the command line.

-c Output the command script that would implement the specified or generated volume configuration. The command script is not run, and processing stops at this stage.

-d Output the volume configuration that satisfies the specified or generated volume request. No command script is generated or executed, and processing stops at this stage.

-f Specify whether the volume should support automatic component replacement after a fault. If this option is specified, a mirror is created and its submirrors are associated with a hot spare.

-n *name* Specify the name of the new volume. See [metainit\(1M\)](#) for naming guidelines.

---

|                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -p <i>n</i>                       | Specify the number of required paths to the storage volume. The value of <i>n</i> cannot be greater than the number of different physical paths and logical paths to attached storage. Only used when specifying a volume on the command line.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| -r <i>n</i>                       | Specify the redundancy level (0-4) of the data. The default is 0. Only used when specifying a volume on the command line. If redundancy is 0, a stripe is created. If redundancy is 1 or greater, a mirror with this number of submirrors is created. In this case, the volume can suffer a disk failure on <i>n</i> - 1 copies without data loss. With the use of hot spares (see the -f option), a volume can suffer a disk failure on <i>n</i> +hsp - 1 volumes without data loss, assuming non-concurrent failures. |
| -u <i>device1, device2, . . .</i> | Explicitly specify devices to exclude in the creation of this volume. Named devices can be controllers or disks. You can use this option alone, or to exclude some of the devices listed as available with the -a option, Only used when specifying a volume on the command line.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| -v <i>value</i>                   | Specify the level of verbosity. Values from 0 to 2 are available, with higher numbers specifying more verbose output when the command is run. -v 0 indicates silent output, except for errors or other critical messages. The default level is 1.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| -V                                | Display program version information.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| -?                                | Display help information. This option can follow a subcommand for subcommand-specific help.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

### Examples EXAMPLE 1 Creating a Mirror

The following example creates a two-way, 36Gb mirror on available devices from controller 1 and controller 2. It places the volume in diskset `mirrorset`.

```
metassist create -r 2 -a c1,c2 -s mirrorset -S 36GB
```

### EXAMPLE 2 Creating a Mirror with Additional Fault Tolerance

The following example creates a two-way, 36Gb mirror on available devices from controller 1 and controller 2. It provides additional fault tolerance in the form of a hot spare. It places the volume in diskset `mirrorset`.

```
metassist create -f -r 2 -a c1,c2 -s mirrorset -S 36GB
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Creating a Three-way Mirror and Excluding Devices

The following example creates a three-way, 180Gb mirror from storage devices on controller 1 or controller 2. It excludes the disks `c1t2d0` and `c2t2d1` from the volume. It places the volume in diskset `mirrorset`.

```
metassist create -r 3 -a c1,c2 -u c1t2d0, c2t2d1 \
-s mirrorset -S 180GB
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Determining and Implementing a Configuration

The following example determines and implements a configuration satisfying the request specified in a request file:

```
metassist create -F request.xml
```

**EXAMPLE 5** Determining a Configuration and Saving It in a volume-config File

The following example determines a configuration which satisfies the given request. It saves the configuration in a volume-config file without implementing it:

```
metassist create -d -F request.xml > volume-config
```

**EXAMPLE 6** Determining a Configuration and Saving It in a Shell Script

The following example determines a configuration which satisfies the given request. It saves the configuration in a shell script without implementing it:

```
metassist create -c -F request.xml > setupvols.sh
```

**EXAMPLE 7** Implementing the Given volume-config

The following example implements the given volume-config:

```
metassist create -F config.xml
```

**EXAMPLE 8** Converting the Given volume-config to a Shell Script

The following example converts the given volume-config to a shell script that you can run later:

```
metassist create -c -F config.xml > setupvols.sh
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.



>0 An error occurred.

**Files** /usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/volume-request.dtd  
 /usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/volume-defaults.dtd  
 /usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/volume-config.dtd

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWmdr         |
| Interface Stability | Stable          |

**See Also** [mdmonitord\(1M\)](#), [metaclear\(1M\)](#), [metadb\(1M\)](#), [metadetach\(1M\)](#), [metahs\(1M\)](#), [metainit\(1M\)](#), [metaoffline\(1M\)](#), [metaonline\(1M\)](#), [metaparam\(1M\)](#), [metarecover\(1M\)](#), [metarename\(1M\)](#), [metareplace\(1M\)](#), [metaroot\(1M\)](#), [metaset\(1M\)](#), [metastat\(1M\)](#), [metasync\(1M\)](#), [metattach\(1M\)](#), [md.tab\(4\)](#), [md.cf\(4\)](#), [mddb.cf\(4\)](#), [md.tab\(4\)](#), [volume-config\(4\)](#), [volume-request\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [md\(7D\)](#)

**Notes** The quality of service arguments are mutually exclusive with the `-F inputfile` argument.

When specifying a request file or quality of service arguments on the command line, the `/etc/default/metassist.xml` file is read for global and per-disk set defaults.

Characteristics of this file are specified in the DTD, in `/usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/volume-defaults.dtd`.

Characteristics of the XML request file are specified in the DTD, in `/usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/volume-request.dtd`.

Characteristics of the XML configuration file are specified in the DTD, in `/usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/volume-config.dtd`.

This command must be run as root.

This command requires a functional Solaris Volume Manager configuration before it runs.

**Name** metastat – display status for metadevice or hot spare pool

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/metastat -h

```
/usr/sbin/metastat [-a] [-B] [-D] [-c] [-i] [-p] [-q]
 [-s setname] [-t] [metadevice...] [hot_spare_pool...]
```

```
/usr/sbin/metastat [-a] [-B] [-D] [-c] [-i] [-p] [-q]
 [-s setname] component...
```

**Description** The metastat command displays the current status for each metadevice (including stripes, concatenations, concatenations of stripes, mirrors, RAID5, soft partitions, and trans devices) or hot spare pool, or of specified metadevices, components, or hot spare pools.

It is helpful to run the metastat command after using the metatatch command to view the status of the metadevice.

metastat displays the state of each Solaris Volume Manager RAID-1 volume on the system. The possible states include:

|                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Okay              | The device reports no errors.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Needs maintenance | A problem has been detected. This requires that the system administrator replace the failed physical device. Volumes displaying Needs maintenance have incurred no data loss, although additional failures could risk data loss. Take action as quickly as possible.                                                                                                                       |
| Last erred        | A problem has been detected. Data loss is a possibility. This might occur if a component of a submirror fails and is not replaced by a hot spare, therefore going into Needs maintenance state. If the corresponding component also fails, it would go into Last erred state and, as there is no remaining valid data source, data loss could be a possibility.                            |
| Unavailable       | A device cannot be accessed, but has not incurred errors. This might occur if a physical device has been removed with Solaris Dynamic Reconfiguration (DR) features, thus leaving the Solaris Volume Manager volume unavailable. It could also occur if an array or disk is powered off at system initialization, or if a >1TB volume is present when the system is booted in 32-bit mode. |

After the storage has been made available, run the metastat command with the -i option to update the status of the metadevices. This clears the unavailable state for accessible devices.

See the *Solaris Volume Manager Administration Guide* for instructions on replacing disks and handling volumes in Needs maintenance or Last erred states.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- a Display all disk sets. Only metadevices in disk sets that are owned by the current host are displayed.
- B Display the current status of all of the 64-bit metadevices and hot spares.
- c Display concise output.  
  
There is one line of output for each metadvice. The output shows the basic structure and the error status, if any, for each metadvice.  
  
The -c output format is distinct from the -p output format. The -p option does not display metadvice status and is not intended as human-readable output.
- D Display the current status of all of the descriptive name metadevices and hotspares.
- h Display usage message.
- i Check the status of RAID-1 (mirror) volumes, RAID-5 volumes, and hot spares. The inquiry checks each metadvice for accessibility, starting at the top level metadvice. When problems are discovered, the metadvice state databases are updated as if an error had occurred.
- p Display the list of active metadevices and hot spare pools in the same format as `md.tab`. See `md.tab(4)`.  
  
The -p output is designed for snapshotting the configuration for later recovery or setup.
- q Display the status for metadevices without the device relocation information.
- s *setname* Specify the name of the disk set on which `metastat` works. Using the -s option causes the command to perform its administrative function within the specified disk set. Without this option, the command performs its function on metadevices and hot spare pools in the local disk set.
- t Display the current status and timestamp for the specified metadevices and hot spare pools. The timestamp provides the date and time of the last state change.

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

- component* Display the status of the component hosting a soft partition, including extents, starting blocks, and block count.
- hot\_spare\_pool* Display the status of the specified hot spare pool(s).

*metadevice* Display the status of the specified metadevice(s). If a trans metadevice is specified, the status of the master and log devices is also displayed. Trans metadevices have been replaced by UFS logging. See NOTES.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Output Showing Mirror with Two Submirrors

The following example shows the partial output of the `metastat` command after creating a mirror, `opt_mirror`, consisting of two submirrors, `opt_sub1` and `opt_sub2`.

```
metastat opt_mirror
opt_mirror: Mirror
 Submirror 0: opt_sub1
 State: Okay
 Submirror 1: opt_sub2
 State: Resyncing
 Resync in progress: 15 % done
 Pass: 1
 Read option: roundrobin (default)
 Write option: parallel (default)
 Size: 2006130 blocks
 .
 .
 .
```

EXAMPLE 2 Soft Partition on Mirror with Submirror

The following example shows the partial output of the `metastat` command after creating a soft partition, `d3`, on `concat d2`, which is built on a soft partition.

```
metastat
d2: Concat/Stripe
 Size: 204800 blocks
 Stripe 0:
 Device Start Block Dbase State Hot Spare
 d0 0 No Okay
d0: Soft Partition
 Component: c0t3d0s0
 Status: Okay
 Size: 204800 blocks
 Extent Start Block Block count
 0 129 204800
d3: Soft Partition
 Component: d2
 Status: Okay
 Size: 202752 blocks
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Soft Partition on Mirror with Submirror *(Continued)*

| Extent | Start Block | Block count |
|--------|-------------|-------------|
| 0      | 129         | 202752      |

**EXAMPLE 3** Trans Metadevice

The following example shows the output of the `metastat` command after creating a trans metadevice.

```
metastat
d2: Concat/Stripe
 Size: 204800 blocks
 Stripe 0:
 Device Start Block Dbase State Hot Spare
 d0 0 No Okay
d0: Soft Partition
 Component: c0t3d0s0
 Status: Okay
 Size: 204800 blocks
 Extent Start Block Block count
 0 129 204800
d3: Soft Partition
 Component: d2
 Status: Okay
 Size: 202752 blocks
 Extent Start Block Block count
 0 129 202752
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Multi-owner disk set

The following example shows the output of the `metastat` command with a multi-owner disk set and application-based mirror resynchronization option. Application-based resynchronization is set automatically if needed.

```
metastat -s oban
oban/d100: Mirror
 Submirror 0: oban/d10
 State: Okay
 Submirror 1: oban/d11
 State: Okay
 Pass: 1
 Read option: roundrobin (default)
 Write option: parallel (default)
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Multi-owner disk set *(Continued)*

```
Resync option: application based
Owner: None
Size: 1027216 blocks (501 MB)
```

```
oban/d10: Submirror of oban/d100
```

```
State: Okay
Size: 1027216 blocks (501 MB)
Stripe 0:
 Device Start Block Dbase State Reloc Hot Spare
 c1t3d0s0 0 No Okay
```

```
oban/d11: Submirror of oban/d100
```

```
State: Okay
Size: 1027216 blocks (501 MB)
Stripe 0:
 Device Start Block Dbase State Reloc Hot Spare
 c1t4d0s0 0 No Okay
```

**Warnings** metastat displays states as of the time the command is entered. It is unwise to use the output of the metastat -p command to create a `md.tab(4)` file for a number of reasons:

- The output of metastat -p might show hot spares being used.
- It might show mirrors with multiple submirrors. See [metainit\(1M\)](#) for instructions for creating multi-way mirrors using metainit and metattach.
- A slice may go into an error state after metastat -p is issued.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

```
0 Successful completion.
>0 An error occurred.
```

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWmdr         |
| Interface Stability | Stable          |

**See Also** [mdmonitor\(1M\)](#), [metaclear\(1M\)](#), [metadb\(1M\)](#), [metadetach\(1M\)](#), [metahs\(1M\)](#), [metainit\(1M\)](#), [metaoffline\(1M\)](#), [metaonline\(1M\)](#), [metaparam\(1M\)](#), [metarecover\(1M\)](#), [metarename\(1M\)](#), [metareplace\(1M\)](#), [metaroot\(1M\)](#), [metaset\(1M\)](#), [metassist\(1M\)](#), [metasync\(1M\)](#), [metattach\(1M\)](#), [md.tab\(4\)](#), [md.cf\(4\)](#), [mddb.cf\(4\)](#), [md.tab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [md\(7D\)](#)

*Solaris Volume Manager Administration Guide*

**Notes** Trans metadevices have been replaced by UFS logging. Existing trans devices are *not* logging--they pass data directly through to the underlying device. See [mount\\_ufs\(1M\)](#) for more information about UFS logging.

**Name** metasync – handle metadvice resync during reboot

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/metasync -h  
/usr/sbin/metasync [-s *setname*] [*buffer\_size*] *metadvice*  
/usr/sbin/metasync [-s *setname*] -r [*buffer\_size*]  
/usr/sbin/metasync -p *metadvice*  
/usr/sbin/metasync -c *metadvice*

**Description** The `metasync` command starts a resync operation on the specified *metadvice*. All components that need to be resynced are resynced. If the system crashes during a RAID5 initialization, or during a RAID5 resync, either an initialization or resync restarts when the system reboots.

Applications are free to access a metadvice at the same time that it is being resynced by `metasync`. Also, `metasync` performs the copy operations from inside the kernel, which makes the utility more efficient.

Use the `-r` option in boot scripts to resync all possible submirrors.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- c *metadvice* Cancels the resync that is in progress on the specified metadvice. The resync will be stopped at its current point and can be resumed by running the “`metasync metadvice`” command. This option only applies to RAID1 volumes.
- h Displays usage message.
- p *metadvice* Regenerates parity information for RAID5 metadevices.
- s *setname* Specifies the name of the diskset on which `metasync` will work. Using the `-s` option will cause the command to perform its administrative function within the specified diskset. Without this option, the command will perform its function on local metadevices.
- r Specifies that the `metasync` command handle special resync requirements during a system reboot. `metasync -r` should only be invoked from the `svc:/system/mdmonitor` service. The `metasync` command only resyncs those metadevices that need to be resynced. `metasync` schedules all the mirror resyncs according to their pass numbers.

To override the default `buffer_size` value used by the `svc:/system/mdmonitor` service, you can edit `/etc/system` to specify:

```
set md_mirror:md_resync_bufsz = 2048
```

so that resyncs occur as quickly as possible.



**Operands** *buffer\_size* Specifies the size (number of 512-byte disk blocks) of the internal copy buffer for the mirror resync. The size defaults to 1024 512-byte disk blocks. It can be no more than 2048 blocks. For best performance (quickest completion of the resync), 2048 blocks is the recommended size.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWmdu         |

**See Also** [mdmonitord\(1M\)](#), [metaclear\(1M\)](#), [metadb\(1M\)](#), [metadetach\(1M\)](#), [metahs\(1M\)](#), [metainit\(1M\)](#), [metaoffline\(1M\)](#), [metaonline\(1M\)](#), [metaparam\(1M\)](#), [metarecover\(1M\)](#), [metarename\(1M\)](#), [metareplace\(1M\)](#), [metaroot\(1M\)](#), [metaset\(1M\)](#), [metassist\(1M\)](#), [metastat\(1M\)](#), [metattach\(1M\)](#), [md.tab\(4\)](#), [md.cf\(4\)](#), [mddb.cf\(4\)](#), [md.tab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [md\(7D\)](#)

*Solaris Volume Manager Administration Guide*

**Notes** The metasync service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/mdmonitor
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

**Name** metattach, metadetach – attach or detach a metadvice

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/metattach [-h]  
/usr/sbin/metattach [-s *setname*] *mirror* [*metadvice*]  
/usr/sbin/metattach [-s *setname*] [-i *interlace*] *concat/stripe component...*  
/usr/sbin/metattach [-s *setname*] *RAID component...*  
/usr/sbin/metattach [-s *setname*] [-A *alignment*] *softpart size | all*  
/usr/sbin/metadetach [-s *setname*] [-f] *mirror submirror*  
/usr/sbin/metadetach [-s *setname*] [-f] *trans*

**Description** metattach adds submirrors to a mirror, grows metadevices, or grows soft partitions. Growing metadevices can be done without interrupting service. To grow the size of a mirror or trans, the slices must be added to the submirrors or to the master devices.

Solaris Volume Manager supports storage devices and logical volumes greater than 1 terabyte (TB) when a system runs a 64-bit Solaris kernel. Support for large volumes is automatic. If a device greater than 1 TB is created, Solaris Volume Manager configures it appropriately and without user intervention.

If a system with large volumes is rebooted under a 32-bit Solaris kernel, the large volumes are visible through `metastat` output. Large volumes cannot be accessed, modified or deleted, and no new large volumes can be created. Any volumes or file systems on a large volume in this situation are also unavailable. If a system with large volumes is rebooted under a version of Solaris prior to the Solaris 9 4/03 release, Solaris Volume Manager does not start. You must remove all large volumes before Solaris Volume Manager runs under an earlier version of the Solaris Operating System.

Solaris Volume Manager supports one-to-four-way mirrors. You can only attach a metadvice to a mirror if there are three or fewer submirrors beneath the mirror. Once a new metadvice is attached to a mirror, `metattach` automatically starts a resync operation to the new submirror.

`metadetach` detaches submirrors from mirrors and logging devices from trans metadevices.

When a submirror is detached from a mirror, it is no longer part of the mirror, thus reads and writes to and from that metadvice by way of the mirror are no longer performed through the mirror. Detaching the only existing submirror is not allowed. Detaching a submirror that has slices reported as needing maintenance (by `metastat`) is not allowed unless the `-f` (force) flag is used.

`metadetach` also detaches the logging device from a trans. This step is necessary before you can clear the trans volume. Trans metadevices have been replaced by UFS logging. Existing trans devices are not logging. They pass data directly through to the underlying device. See [mount\\_ufs\(1M\)](#) for more information about UFS logging.

Detaching the logging device from a busy trans device is not allowed unless the `-f` (force) flag is used. Even so, the logging device is not actually detached until the trans is idle. The trans is in the *Detaching* state (`metastat`) until the logging device is detached.

**Options** Root privileges are required for all of the following options except `-h`.

The following options are supported:

- `-A alignment` Set the value of the soft partition extent alignment. Use this option when it is important specify a starting offset for the soft partition. It preserves the data alignment between the metadvice address space and the address space of the underlying physical device.

For example, a hardware device that does checksumming should not have its I/O requests divided by Solaris Volume Manager. In this case, use a value from the hardware configuration as the value for the alignment. When using this option in conjunction with a software I/O load, the alignment value corresponds to the I/O load of the application. This prevents I/O from being divided unnecessarily and affecting performance.
- `-f` Force the detaching of metadevices that have components that need maintenance or are busy. You can use this option only when a mirror is in a maintenance state that can be fixed with `metareplace(1M)`. If the mirror is in a maintenance state that can only be fixed with `metasync(1M)` (as shown by the output of `metastat(1M)`), `metadetch -f` has no effect, because the mirrors must be resynchronized before one of them can be detached.
- `-h` Display a usage message.
- `-i interlace` Specify the interlace value for stripes, where `size` is a specified value followed by either `k` for kilobytes, `m` for megabytes, or `b` for blocks. The units can be either uppercase or lowercase. If `size` is not specified, the size defaults to the interlace size of the last stripe of the metadvice. When an interlace size change is made on a stripe, it is carried forward on all stripes that follow.
- `-s setname` Specify the name of the diskset on which the `metattach` command or the `metadetch` command works.. Using the `-s` option causes the command to perform its administrative function within the specified diskset. Without this option, the command performs its function on local metadevices.

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

- `component` The logical name for the physical slice (partition) on a disk drive, such as `/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s2`, being added to the concatenation, stripe, concatenation of stripes, or RAID5 metadvice.
- `concat/stripe` The metadvice name of the concatenation, stripe, or concatenation of stripes.

|                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>log</i>               | The metadvice name of the logging device to be attached to the trans metadvice.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <i>metadvice</i>         | The metadvice name to be attached to the mirror as a submirror. This metadvice must have been previously created by the <code>metainit</code> command.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <i>mirror</i>            | The name of the mirror.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <i>RAID</i>              | The metadvice name of the RAID5 metadvice.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <i>size</i>   <i>all</i> | The amount of space to add to the soft partition in K or k for kilobytes, M or m for megabytes, G or g for gigabytes, T or t for terabytes, and B or b for blocks (sectors). All values represent powers of 2, and upper and lower case options are equivalent. Only integer values are permitted. The literal <code>all</code> specifies that the soft partition should grow to occupy all available space on the underlying volume. |
| <i>softpart</i>          | The metadvice name of the existing soft partition.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <i>submirror</i>         | The metadvice name of the submirror to be detached from the mirror.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <i>trans</i>             | The metadvice name of the trans metadvice (not the master or logging device).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Concatenating a New Slice to a Metadvice

This example concatenates a single new slice to an existing metadvice, `Volume.1`. Afterwards, you would use the `growfs(1M)` command to expand the file system.

```
metattach Volume.1 /dev/dsk/c0t1d0s2
```

## EXAMPLE 2 Detaching Logging Device from Trans Metadvice

This example detaches the logging device from a trans metadvice `d9`. Notice that you do not have to specify the logging device itself, as there can only be one.

```
metadetach d9
```

## EXAMPLE 3 Expanding a RAID5 Metadvice

This example expands a RAID5 metadvice, `d45`, by attaching another slice.

```
metattach d45 /dev/dsk/c3t0d0s2
```

When you add additional slices to a RAID5 metadvice, the additional space is devoted to data. No new parity blocks are allocated. The data on the added slices is, however, included in the overall parity calculations, so it is protected against single-device failure.

**EXAMPLE 4** Expanding a Soft Partition

The following example expands a soft partition, `d42`, attaching all space available on the underlying device.

```
metattach d42 all
```

When you add additional space to a soft partition, the additional space is taken from any available space on the slice and might not be contiguous with the existing soft partition.

**EXAMPLE 5** Adding Space to Two-Way Mirror

This example adds space to a two-way mirror by adding a slice to each submirror. Afterwards, you would use the [growfs\(1M\)](#) command to expand the file system.

```
metattach d9 /dev/dsk/c0t2d0s5
metattach d10 /dev/dsk/c0t3d0s5
```

This example tells the mirror to grow to the size of the underlying devices

```
metattach d11
```

This example increases the size of the UFS on the device so the space can be used.

```
growfs -M /export /dev/md/rdisk/d11
```

**EXAMPLE 6** Detaching a Submirror from a Mirror

This example detaches a submirror, `d2`, from a mirror, `d4`.

```
metadetach d4 d2
```

**EXAMPLE 7** Adding Four Slices to Metadevice

This example adds four slices to an existing metadevice, `d9`. Afterwards, you would use the [growfs\(1M\)](#) command to expand the file system.

```
metattach d9 /dev/dsk/c0t1d0s2 /dev/dsk/c0t2d0s2 \\
/dev/dsk/c0t3d0s2 /dev/dsk/c0t4d0s2
```

**EXAMPLE 8** Setting the Value of the Soft Partition Extent Alignment

This example shows how to set the alignment of the soft partition to 1mb when the soft partition is expanded.

```
metattach -s red -A 2m d13 1m
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWmdu         |
| Interface Stability | Stable          |

**See Also** [mdmonitord\(1M\)](#), [metaclear\(1M\)](#), [metadb\(1M\)](#), [metahs\(1M\)](#), [metainit\(1M\)](#), [metaoffline\(1M\)](#), [metaonline\(1M\)](#), [metaparam\(1M\)](#), [metarecover\(1M\)](#), [metarename\(1M\)](#), [metareplace\(1M\)](#), [metaroot\(1M\)](#), [metaset\(1M\)](#), [metassist\(1M\)](#), [metastat\(1M\)](#), [metasync\(1M\)](#), [md.tab\(4\)](#), [md.cf\(4\)](#), [mddb.cf\(4\)](#), [md.tab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [md\(7D\)](#)

*Solaris Volume Manager Administration Guide*

**Warnings** This section provides information regarding warnings for devices greater than 1 TB and for multi-way mirrors.

**Devices and Volumes Greater Than 1 TB** Do not create large (>1 TB) volumes if you expect to run the Solaris Operating System with a 32-bit kernel or if you expect to use a version of the Solaris Operating System prior to Solaris 9 4/03.

**Multi-Way Mirrors** When a submirror is detached from its mirror, the data on the metadevice might not be the same as the data that existed on the mirror prior to running `metadetach`. In particular, if the `-f` option was needed, the metadevice and mirror probably do not contain the same data.

**Notes** Trans metadevices have been replaced by UFS logging. Existing trans devices are *not* logging. They pass data directly through to the underlying device. See [mount\\_ufs\(1M\)](#) for more information about UFS logging.

**Name** mib2mof – generate MOF file(s) from input SNMP MIB file(s)

**Synopsis** /usr/sadm/bin/mib2mof [-n] [-d *directory*] [-q] [-c] [-a]  
[-h] *files*

**Description** The `mib2mof` utility reads input Management Information Base (MIB) files and produces one or more Managed Object Format (MOF) files. MOF files contain a Common Information Model (CIM) class declaration that represents the MIB for the Solaris Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) provider. The SNMP provider allows Web-Based Enterprise Management (WBEM) applications to access SNMP device information.

SNMP scalar variables map to properties in the CIM class. Qualifiers on each property convey the following MIB information for each scalar variable:

- syntax
- read/write access
- OID (Object Identifier)
- description (optional)
- index (if the variable is within a group [sequence] that defines a row)

The syntax of an SNMP scalar variable is represented in a CIM class by the property's CIM datatype. All properties are marked with write access (true or false).

The following table shows how a Solaris SNMP datatype in a MIB maps to a Web-Based Enterprise Management (WBEM) CIM datatype and then to an SNMP datatype used by the WBEM SNMP API:

| SNMP SMI Datatype                | SNMP Ver. | CIM Datatype | SNMP API Object type |
|----------------------------------|-----------|--------------|----------------------|
| INTEGER                          | v1        | sint32       | SnmpInt              |
| OCTET STRING                     | v1        | string       | SnmpString           |
| OBJECT IDENTIFIER                | v1        | string       | SnmpOid              |
| IpAddress                        | v1        | string       | SnmpIpAddress        |
| Counter                          | v1        | uint32       | SnmpCounter          |
| Gauge                            | v1        | uint32       | SnmpGauge            |
| TimeTicks                        | v1        | uint32       | SnmpTimeticks        |
| Opaque                           | v1        | sint8[]      | SnmpOpaque           |
| DisplayString - see OCTET STRING | v1        |              |                      |
| NetworkAddress - see IpAddress   | v1        |              |                      |
| Counter32 - see Counter          | v2        |              |                      |
| Counter64                        | v2        | uint64       | SnmpCounter64        |
| Integer32                        | v2        | sint32       | SnmpInt              |
| Gauge32 - see Gauge              | v2        |              |                      |
| Unsigned32                       | v2        | uint32       | SnmpGauge            |
| TruthValue                       | v2        | sint32       | SnmpInt              |
| BITS - see OCTET STRING          | v2        |              |                      |

The `mib2mof` utility includes its required `Solaris_SNMPmib_core.txt` file (containing core MIB definitions), installed in `/usr/sadm/mof`. The `mib2mof` utility looks first for `mib` core file in local directory. If this file is not found in the local directory, `mib2mof` looks in `/usr/sadm/mof`.

A MOF file is generated for each SNMP group and table row sequence (that is, the columns in one row) found in the supplied MIBs. (This does not include the core MIB definitions contained in the `Solaris_SNMPmib_core.txt` file.)

There is no MOF file or property for an SNMP table - all table access is through the rows and columns of the table, and the SNMP variable for the table is marked as inaccessible in the MIB.

The MOF file created contains a CIM class that represents an SNMP group or row and a CIM class to represent a CIM association. The output file name (and CIM class) is of the format `<SNMP_><MIB name><Group name>.mof`.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- a Generate MOF files for all of the input MIB files. If -a is not given, a MOF file is generated only for the last file of the input list.
- c Do not use the default `Solaris_SNMPmib_core.txt` definitions file shipped with the Solaris SNMP Provider for WBEM. If this option is specified, you must specify another `MIB_CORE` definitions file as one of the input files.
- d *directory* Generate output MOF files in the specified directory.
- h Show how to invoke `mib2mof` and list its arguments.
- n Parse the input MIB files without generating any output.
- q Include the `DESCRIPTION` clause of `SNMP OBJECT - TYPE` as a qualifier in the generated MOF file.

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

*files* List of SNMP MIB files to be converted.

**Exit Status** The `mib2mof` utility terminates with exit status 0.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWwbcou       |

**See Also** [init.wbem\(1M\)](#), [mofcomp\(1M\)](#), [wbemadmin\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)



**Name** mibiisa – Sun SNMP Agent

**Synopsis** mibiisa [-ar] [-c *config-dir*] [-d *debug-level*] [-p *port*]  
[-t *cache-timer*]

**Description** The mibiisa utility is an RFC 1157-compliant SNMP agent. It supports MIB-II as defined in *RFC 1213*, with Sun extensions under Sun's enterprise number. The MIB (Management Information Base) is both readable and writable. The mibiisa utility supports all SNMP protocol operations including GET-REQUEST, GETNEXT-REQUEST, SET-REQUEST, GET-REPLY, and TRAP.

The SMA (Systems Management Agent) is the default SNMP agent in Solaris. MIB-II subagent mibiisa does not run by default. To enable mibiisa, rename the configuration file from `/etc/snmp/conf/mibiisa.rsrc` to `/etc/snmp/conf/mibiisa.rsrc`. SMA has the capability to handle any MIB-II requests.

The mibiisa utility supports the coldStart, linkUp, linkDown, and authentication traps. The authentication trap may be disabled by a command-line switch, which itself may be overridden by a management station writing to a MIB variable in the standard SNMP MIB group.

The mibiisa utility supports four distinct views of the MIB. The view used for any request is determined by the community string contained in that request.

To enhance security, mibiisa supports an option to block all writes to the MIB. You can also limit the set of management stations from which the agent will accept requests in the configuration file used when starting the mibiisa. See the [Security](#) section for more information.

Unless overridden, mibiisa uses UDP port 161, the standard SNMP port. The mibiisa utility issues traps through the same port on which it receives SNMP requests.

The mibiisa utility must run with super-user privileges and is typically started at system startup via `/etc/rc3.d`. mibiisa may not be started using [inetd\(1M\)](#). When started, mibiisa detaches itself from the keyboard, disables all signals except SIGKILL, SIGILL, SIGUSR1, and SIGUSR2, and places itself in the background.

**Options** The following options are supported by mibiisa:

- a Disable the generation of authentication traps. However, an SNMP manager may write a value into `snmpEnableAuthenTraps` to enable or disable authentication traps.
- c *config-dir* Specify a directory where it expects `snmpd.conf` file, on startup. The default directory is `/etc/snmp/conf`.
- d *debug-level* Debug. A value of 0 disables all debug and is the default. Levels 1 through 3 represent increasing levels of debug output. When mibiisa receives the

signal SIGUSR1, it resets the debug-level to 0. When `mibiisa` receives the signal SIGUSR2, it increments the debug-level by one.

Debug output is sent to the standard output in effect at the time `mibiisa` is started. No matter what debug level is in effect, certain significant events are logged in the system log.

- `port` Define an alternative UDP port on which `mibiisa` listens for incoming requests. The default is UDP port 161.
- `r` Place the MIB into read-only mode.
- `cache-timer` By default, information fetched from the kernel is considered to be valid for 45 seconds from the time it is retrieved. This cache lifetime may be altered with this parameter. You cannot set `cache-timer` to any value less than 1.

**Configuration File** The `snmpd.conf` file is used for configuration information. Each entry in the file consists of a keyword followed by a parameter string. The keyword must begin in the first position. Parameters are separated from the keyword and from one another by white space. Case in keywords is ignored. Each entry must be contained on a single line. All text following (and including) a pound sign (#) is ignored. Keywords currently supported are:

|                                           |                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>sysdescr</code>                     | The value to be used to answer queries for <code>sysDescr</code> .                                                                                  |
| <code>syscontact</code>                   | The value to be used to answer queries for <code>sysContact</code> .                                                                                |
| <code>syslocation</code>                  | The value to be used to answer queries for <code>sysLocation</code> .                                                                               |
| <code>trap</code>                         | The parameter names one or more hosts to receive traps. Only five hosts may be listed.                                                              |
| <code>system-group-read-community</code>  | The community name to get read access to the system group and Sun's extended system group.                                                          |
| <code>system-group-write-community</code> | The community name to get write access to the system group and Sun's extended system group.                                                         |
| <code>read-community</code>               | The community name to get read access to the entire MIB.                                                                                            |
| <code>write-community</code>              | The community name to get write access to the entire MIB (implies read access).                                                                     |
| <code>trap-community</code>               | The community name to be used in traps.                                                                                                             |
| <code>kernel-file</code>                  | The name of the file to use for kernel symbols.                                                                                                     |
| <code>managers</code>                     | The names of hosts that may send SNMP queries. Only five hosts may be listed on any one line. This keyword may be repeated for a total of 32 hosts. |

`newdevice` The additional devices which are not built in SNMPD. The format is as follows: `newdevice type speed name` where `newdevice` is the keyword, `type` is an integer which has to match your schema file, `speed` is the new device's speed, and `name` is this new device's name.

An example `snmpd.conf` file is shown below:

```
sysdescr Sun SNMP Agent, Sun Fire 4800, Company
 Property Number 123456
syscontact Cliff Claven
sysLocation Room 1515, building 1
#
system-group-read-community public
system-group-write-community private
#
read-community all_public
write-community all_private
#
trap localhost
trap-community SNMP-trap
#
#kernel-file /vmunix
#
managers lvs golden
managers swap
```

**Installation** The `mibiisa` utility and its configuration file, `snmpd.conf`, may be placed in any directory. However for Solaris 2.4 and subsequent releases, use `/usr/lib/snmp` for `mibiisa` itself and `/etc/snmp/conf` for the configuration file. You can modify the configuration file as appropriate. If you make any changes to `snmpd.conf` file keyword values, you must kill and restart `mibiisa` for the changes to take effect.

Your `/etc/services` file (or NIS equivalent) should contain the following entries:

|                        |                      |                       |                                             |
|------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <code>snmp</code>      | <code>161/udp</code> |                       | <code># Simple Network Mgmt Protocol</code> |
| <code>snmp-trap</code> | <code>162/udp</code> | <code>snmptrap</code> | <code># SNMP trap (event) messages</code>   |

The following is an example for Solaris 2.x and releases compatible with Solaris 2.x, such as Solaris 9:

```
#
Start the SNMP agent
#
```

```

if [-f /etc/snmp/conf/snmpd.conf -a -x
 /usr/lib/snmp/mibiisa];
then
/opt/SUNWconn/snm/agents/snmpd
echo 'Starting SNMP-agent.'
```

**Security** SNMP, as presently defined, offers relatively little security. The `mibiisa` utility accepts requests from other machines, which can have the effect of disabling the network capabilities of your computer. To limit the risk, the configuration file lets you specify a list of up to 32 manager stations from which `mibiisa` will accept requests. If you do not specify any such manager stations, `mibiisa` accepts requests from anywhere.

The `mibiisa` utility also allows you to mark the MIB as “read-only” by using the `-r` option.

`mibiisa` supports four different community strings. These strings, however, are visible in the configuration file and within the SNMP packets as they flow on the network.

The configuration file should be owned by, and readable only by super-user. In other words the mode should be:

```

-rw----- 1 root 2090 Oct 17 15:04 /etc/snmp/conf/snmpd.conf
```

Managers can be restricted based on the community strings. This can be configured by creating an optional secondary configuration file `/etc/snmp/conf/mibiisa.acl`. To enable such a restriction, add the security line in the `/etc/snmp/conf/mibiisa.rsrc` file.

An example `mibiisa.acl` file is as follows:

```

acl = {
 {
 communities = public
 access = read-only
 managers = xyz
 }
 {
 communities = private
 access = read-write
 managers = abc,pqrs
 }
}
```

An example `mibiisa.rsrc` file is as follows:

```

resource =
{
 {
 registration_file = "/etc/snmp/conf/mibiisa.reg"
 security = "/etc/snmp/conf/mibiisa.acl"
 policy = "spawn"
 type = "legacy"
```

```

 command = "/usr/lib/snmp/mibiisa -r -p $PORT"
 }
}

```

**Mib** This section discusses some of the differences between the `mibiisa` MIB and the standard MIB-II (as defined in RFC 1213).

The following variables are read-only in the `mibiisa` MIB:

```

sysName
atIfIndex
ipDefaultTTL

```

These variables are read-write in the standard MIB-II.

The `mibiisa` MIB Address Translation tables support limited write access: only `atPhysAddress` may be written, either to change the physical address of an existing entry or to delete an entire ARP table entry.

The `mibiisa` MIB IP Net to Media table supports limited write access: only `ipNetToMediaPhysAddress` and `ipNetToMediaType` may be written, either to change the physical address of an existing entry or to delete an entire ARP table entry.

The following variables are read-write in the `mibiisa` MIB; however, these variables have fixed values. Any new values “set” to them are accepted, but have no effect:

```

ipRoutIfIndex
ipRouteMetric1
ipRouteMetric2
ipRouteMetric3
ipRouteMetric4
ipRouteType
ipRouteAge
ipRouteMask
ipRouteMetric5

```

The following `mibiisa` MIB variable reflects the actual state of the related table entry. “Sets” are accepted but have no effect:

```

tcpConnState

```

The following `mibiisa` MIB variables are readable, but return a fixed value:

---

|                                 |           |
|---------------------------------|-----------|
| <code>icmpInDestUnreachs</code> | Returns 1 |
| <code>icmpInTimeExcds</code>    | Returns 1 |
| <code>icmpInParmProbs</code>    | Returns 1 |
| <code>icmpInSrcQuenchs</code>   | Returns 1 |

---

---

|                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| icmpInRedirects      | Returns 1           |
| icmpInEchos          | Returns 1           |
| icmpInEchoReps       | Returns 1           |
| icmpInTimestamps     | Returns 1           |
| icmpInTimestampReps  | Returns 1           |
| icmpInAddrMasks      | Returns 1           |
| icmpInAddrMaskReps   | Returns 1           |
| icmpOutDestUnreachs  | Returns 1           |
| icmpOutTimeExcds     | Returns 1           |
| icmpOutParmProbs     | Returns 1           |
| icmpOutSrcQuenchs    | Returns 1           |
| icmpOutRedirects     | Returns 1           |
| icmpOutEchos         | Returns 1           |
| icmpOutEchoReps      | Returns 1           |
| icmpOutTimestamps    | Returns 1           |
| icmpOutTimestampReps | Returns 1           |
| icmpOutAddrMasks     | Returns 1           |
| icmpOutAddrMaskReps  | Returns 1           |
| ifInUnknownProtos    | Returns 0           |
| ipAdEntBcastAddr     | Returns 1           |
| ipAdEntReasmMaxSiz   | Returns 65535       |
| ipRouteMetric1       | Returns -1          |
| ipRouteMetric2       | Returns -1          |
| ipRouteMetric3       | Returns -1          |
| ipRouteMetric4       | Returns -1          |
| ipRouteAge           | Returns 0           |
| ipRouteMetric5       | Returns -1          |
| ipNetToMediaType     | Returns (3) dynamic |
| ipRoutingDiscards    | Returns 0           |

---

The following variables return a fixed value of 0 for drivers not conforming to the GLD framework (see [gld\(7D\)](#)), including the old LAN drivers on SPARC machines:

|                              |           |
|------------------------------|-----------|
| <code>ifInOctets</code>      | Returns 0 |
| <code>ifInNUcastPkts</code>  | Returns 0 |
| <code>ifInDiscards</code>    | Returns 0 |
| <code>ifOutOctets</code>     | Returns 0 |
| <code>ifOutNUcastPkts</code> | Returns 0 |
| <code>ifOutDiscards</code>   | Returns 0 |

**Schema Attributes** The following describes the attributes in the group and table definitions in the `/var/snmp/mib/sun.mib` file.

**system** The `system` group reports statistics about a particular system (for example, a workstation or a printer).

`sysDescr` – A textual description of the entity. This value should include the full name and version identification of the system's hardware type, software operating-system, and networking software. This value must only contain printable ASCII characters. (string[255])

`sysObjectID` – The vendor's authoritative identification of the network management subsystem contained in the entity. This value is allocated within the SMI enterprises subtree (1.3.6.1.4.1) and provides an easy and unambiguous means for determining what type of equipment is being managed. For example, if vendor “Flintstones, Inc.” was assigned the subtree 1.3.6.1.4.1.4242, it could assign the identifier 1.3.6.1.4.1.4242.1.1 to its “Fred Router.” (objectid)

`sysUpTime` – Time (in hundredths of a second) since the network management portion of the system was last reinitialized. (timeticks)

`sysContact` – The textual identification of the contact person for this managed node, together with information on how to contact this person. (string[255])

`sysName` – An administratively-assigned name for this managed node. By convention, this is the node's fully-qualified domain name. (string[255])

`sysLocation` – The physical location of this node (for example, “telephone closet, 3rd floor” (string[255]))

`sysServices` – A value indicating the set of services that this entity primarily offers. (int) The value is a sum. This sum initially takes the value zero. Then, for each layer L in the range 1 through 7 for which this node performs transactions, 2 raised to (L - 1) is added to the sum. For example, a node that performs primarily routing functions would have a value of 4

$(2^{**}(3-1))$ ). In contrast, a node that is a host offering application services would have a value of 72 ( $2^{**}(4-1) + 2^{**}(7-1)$ ). Note that in the context of the Internet suite of protocols, values should be calculated accordingly:

| Layer | Functionality                         |
|-------|---------------------------------------|
| 1     | physical (such as repeaters)          |
| 2     | datalink/subnetwork (such as bridges) |
| 3     | internet (such as IP gateways)        |
| 4     | end-to-end (such as IP hosts)         |
| 7     | applications (such as mail relays)    |

For systems including OSI protocols, Layers 5 and 6 may also be counted.

**interfaces** The `interfaces` group reports the number of interfaces handled by the agent.

**ifNumber** – The number of network interfaces, regardless of their current state, present on this system. (int)

**ifTable** The `ifTable` is a table of interface entries. The number of entries is given by the value of `ifNumber`.

**ifIndex** – A unique value for each interface. Its value ranges between 1 and the value of `ifNumber`. The value for each interface must remain constant at least from one reinitialization of the entity's network management system to the next reinitialization. (int)

**ifDescr** – A textual string containing information about the interface. This string should include the name of the manufacturer, the product name, and the version of the hardware interface. (string[255])

**ifType** – The type of interface, distinguished according to the physical/link protocol(s) immediately below the network layer in the protocol stack. (enum)

**ifMtu** – The size of the largest datagram that can be sent/received on the interface, specified in octets. For interfaces used for transmitting network datagrams, this is the size of the largest network datagram that can be sent on the interface. (int)

**ifSpeed** – An estimate of the interface's current bandwidth in bits-per-second. For interfaces that do not vary in bandwidth, or for those where no accurate estimation can be made, this object should contain the nominal bandwidth. (gauge)

**ifPhysAddress** – The interface's address at the protocol layer immediately below the network layer in the protocol stack. For interfaces without such an address (for example, a serial line), this object should contain an octet string of zero length. (octet[128])



- `ifAdminStatus` – The desired state of the interface. The `testing(3)` state indicates that no operational packets can be passed. (enum)
- `ifOperStatus` – The current operational state of the interface. The `testing(3)` state indicates that no operational packets can be passed. (enum)
- `ifLastChange` – The value of `sysUpTime` at the time the interface entered its current operational state. If the current state was entered prior to the last reinitialization of the local network management subsystem, then this object contains a zero value. (timeticks)
- `ifInOctets` – The total number of octets received on the interface, including framing characters. (counter) Returns a fixed value of 0.
- `ifInUcastPkts` – The number of subnetwork-unicast packets delivered to a higher-layer protocol. (counter)
- `ifInNUcastPkts` – The number of non-unicast (that is, subnetwork- broadcast or subnetwork-multicast) packets delivered to a higher-layer protocol. (counter) Returns a fixed value of 0.
- `ifInDiscards` – The number of inbound packets chosen to be discarded, even though no errors had been detected to prevent their being deliverable to a higher-layer protocol. One possible reason for discarding such a packet could be to free up buffer space. (counter) Returns a fixed value of 0.
- `ifInErrors` – The number of inbound packets that contained errors preventing them from being deliverable to a higher-layer protocol. (counter)
- `ifInUnknownProtos` – The number of packets received via the interface that were discarded because of an unknown or unsupported protocol. (counter) Returns a fixed value of 0.
- `ifOutOctets` – The total number of octets transmitted out of the interface, including framing characters. (counter) Returns a fixed value of 0.
- `ifOutUcastPkts` – The total number of packets that higher-level protocols requested be transmitted to a subnetwork-unicast address, including those that were discarded or not sent. (counter)
- `ifOutNUcastPkts` – The total number of packets that higher-level protocols requested be transmitted to a non- unicast (that is, a subnetwork-broadcast or subnetwork-multicast) address, including those that were discarded or not sent. (counter) Returns a fixed value of 0.
- `ifOutDiscards` – The number of outbound packets that were chosen to be discarded even though no errors had been detected to prevent their being transmitted. One possible reason for discarding such a packet could be to free up buffer space. (counter) Returns a fixed value of 0.
- `ifOutErrors` – The number of outbound packets that could not be transmitted because of errors. (counter)

`ifOutQLen` – The length of the output packet queue (in packets). (gauge)

`ifSpecific` – A reference to MIB definitions specific to the particular media being used to realize the interface. For example, if the interface is realized by an Ethernet, then the value of this object refers to a document defining objects specific to Ethernet. If this information is not present, its value should be set to the OBJECT IDENTIFIER { 0 0 }, which is a syntactically valid object identifier. Any conformant implementation of ASN.1 and BER must be able to generate and recognize this value. (objectid)

`atTable` `atTable` Address Translation tables contain the NetworkAddress to physical address equivalences. Some interfaces do not use translation tables for determining address equivalences (for example, DDN-X.25 has an algorithmic method). If all interfaces are of this type, then the Address Translation table is empty, that is, has zero entries.

`atIfIndex` – The interface on which this entry's equivalence is effective. The interface identified by a particular value of this index is the same interface as identified by the same value of `ifIndex`. (int)

`atPhysAddress` – The media-dependent physical address. (octet[128]) Setting this object to a null string (one of zero length) has the effect of invalidating the corresponding entry in the `atTable` object. That is, it effectively dissociates the interface identified with said entry from the mapping identified with said entry. It is an implementation-specific matter as to whether the agent removes an invalidated entry from the table. Accordingly, management stations must be prepared to receive tabular information from agents that corresponds to entries not currently in use. Proper interpretation of such entries requires examination of the relevant `atPhysAddress` object.

`atNetAddress` – The NetworkAddress (that is, the IP address) corresponding to the media-dependent physical address. (netaddress)

`ip` The `ip` group reports statistics about the Internet Protocol (IP) group.

`ipForwarding` – The indication of whether this entity is acting as an IP gateway in respect to the forwarding of datagrams received by, but not addressed to, this entity. IP gateways forward datagrams. IP hosts do not— except those source-routed via the host. (enum)

Note that for some managed nodes, this object may take on only a subset of the values possible. Accordingly, it is appropriate for an agent to return a “badValue” response if a management station attempts to change this object to an inappropriate value.

`ipDefaultTTL` – The default value inserted into the Time-To-Live field of the IP header of datagrams originated at this entity, whenever a TTL value is not supplied by the transport layer protocol. (int)

`ipInReceives` – The total number of input datagrams received from interfaces, including those received in error. (counter)

**ipInHdrErrors** – The number of input datagrams discarded due to errors in their IP headers, including bad checksums, version number mismatch, other format errors, time-to-live exceeded, errors discovered in processing their IP options, and so on. (counter)

**ipInAddrErrors** – The number of input datagrams discarded because the IP address in their IP header's destination field was not a valid address to be received at this entity. This count includes invalid addresses (for example, 0.0.0.0) and addresses of unsupported Classes (for example, Class E). For entities that are not IP Gateways and therefore do not forward datagrams, this counter includes datagrams discarded because the destination address was not a local address. (counter)

**ipForwDatagrams** – The number of input datagrams for which this entity was not their final IP destination, as a result of which an attempt was made to find a route to forward them to that final destination. In entities that do not act as IP Gateways, this counter will include only those packets that were Source-Routed via this entity, and the Source-Route option processing was successful. (counter)

**ipInUnknownProtos** – The number of locally-addressed datagrams received successfully but discarded because of an unknown or unsupported protocol. (counter)

**ipInDiscards** – The number of input IP datagrams for which no problems were encountered to prevent their continued processing, but which were discarded, for example, for lack of buffer space. Note that this counter does not include any datagrams discarded while awaiting reassembly. (counter)

**ipInDelivers** – The total number of input datagrams successfully delivered to IP user-protocols (including ICMP). (counter)

**ipOutRequests** – The total number of IP datagrams that local IP user-protocols (including ICMP) supplied to IP in requests for transmission. Note that this counter does not include any datagrams counted in **ipForwDatagrams**. (counter)

**ipOutDiscards** – The number of output IP datagrams for which no problem was encountered to prevent their transmission to their destination, but which were discarded (for example, for lack of buffer space). Note that this counter would include datagrams counted in **ipForwDatagrams** if any such packets met this (discretionary) discard criterion. (counter)

**ipOutNoRoutes** – The number of IP datagrams discarded because no route could be found to transmit them to their destination. Note that this counter includes any packets counted in **ipForwDatagrams** which meet this “no-route” criterion. Note that this includes any datagrams that a host cannot route because all its default gateways are down. (counter)

**ipReasmTimeout** – The maximum number of seconds that received fragments are held while they are awaiting reassembly at this entity. (int)

**ipReasmReqds** – The number of IP fragments received that needed to be reassembled at this entity. (counter)

- `ipReasmOKs` – The number of IP datagrams successfully reassembled. (counter)
- `ipReasmFails` – The number of failures detected by the IP reassembly algorithm, for whatever reason: timed out, errors, and the like. Note that this is not necessarily a count of discarded IP fragments since some algorithms (notably the algorithm in RFC 815) can lose track of the number of fragments by combining them as they are received. (counter)
- `ipFragOKs` – The number of IP datagrams that have been successfully fragmented at this entity. (counter)
- `ipFragFails` – The number of IP datagrams that have been discarded because they needed to be fragmented at this entity but could not be, for example, because their “Don't Fragment” flag was set. (counter)
- `ipFragCreates` – The number of IP datagram fragments that have been generated as a result of fragmentation at this entity. (counter)
- `ipRoutingDiscards` – The number of routing entries that were chosen to be discarded even though they were valid. One possible reason for discarding such an entry could be to free-up buffer space for other routing entries. (counter) Returns a fixed value of 0.
- `ipAddrTable` `ipAddrTable` is a table of addressing information relevant to this entity's IP addresses.
- `ipAdEntAddr` – The IP address to which this entry's addressing information pertains. (netaddress)
- `ipAdEntIfIndex` – The index value that uniquely identifies the interface to which this entry is applicable. The interface identified by a particular value of this index is the same interface as identified by the same value of `ifIndex`. (int)
- `ipAdEntNetMask` – The subnet mask associated with the IP address of this entry. The value of the mask is an IP address with all the network bits set to 1, and all the hosts bits set to 0. (netaddress)
- `ipAdEntBcastAddr` – The value of the least-significant bit in the IP broadcast address used for sending datagrams on the (logical) interface associated with the IP address of this entry. For example, when the Internet standard all-ones broadcast address is used, the value will be 1. This value applies to both the subnet and network broadcasts addresses used by the entity on this (logical) interface. (int) Returns a fixed value of 1.
- `ipAdEntReasmMaxSize` – The size of the largest IP datagram that this entity can reassemble from incoming IP fragmented datagrams received on this interface. (int) Returns a fixed value of 65535.
- `ipRouteTable` The `ipRouteTable` is this entity's IP Routing table.
- `ipRouteDest` – The destination IP address of this route. An entry with a value of 0.0.0.0 is considered a default route. Multiple routes to a single destination can appear in the table, but

access to such multiple entries is dependent on the table- access mechanisms defined by the network management protocol in use. (netaddress)

`ipRouteIfIndex` – The index value that uniquely identifies the local interface through which the next hop of this route should be reached. The interface identified by a particular value of this index is the same interface as identified by the same value of `ifIndex`. (int)

`ipRouteMetric1` – The primary routing metric for this route. The semantics of this metric are determined by the routing-protocol specified in the route's `ipRouteProto` value. If this metric is not used, its value should be set to `-1`. (int) Returns a fixed value of `-1`.

`ipRouteMetric2` – An alternate routing metric for this route. The semantics of this metric are determined by the routing-protocol specified in the route's `ipRouteProto` value. If this metric is not used, its value should be set to `-1`. (int) Returns a fixed value of `-1`.

`ipRouteMetric3` – An alternate routing metric for this route. The semantics of this metric are determined by the routing-protocol specified in the route's `ipRouteProto` value. If this metric is not used, its value should be set to `-1`. (int) Returns a fixed value of `-1`.

`ipRouteMetric4` – An alternate routing metric for this route. The semantics of this metric are determined by the routing-protocol specified in the route's `ipRouteProto` value. If this metric is not used, its value should be set to `-1`. (int) Returns a fixed value of `-1`.

`ipRouteNextHop` – The IP address of the next hop of this route. (In the case of a route bound to an interface that is realized via a broadcast media, the value of this field is the agent's IP address on that interface.) (netaddress)

`ipRouteType` – The type of route. Note that the values `direct (3)` and `indirect (4)` refer to the notion of direct and indirect routing in the IP architecture. (enum)

Setting this object to the value `invalid (2)` has the effect of invalidating the corresponding entry in the `ipRouteTable` object. That is, it effectively dissociates the destination identified with said entry from the route identified with said entry. It is an implementation-specific matter as to whether the agent removes an invalidated entry from the table. Accordingly, management stations must be prepared to receive tabular information from agents that corresponds to entries not currently in use. Proper interpretation of such entries requires examination of the relevant `ipRouteType` object.

`ipRouteProto` – The routing mechanism through which this route was learned. Inclusion of values for gateway routing protocols is not intended to imply that hosts should support those protocols. (enum)

`ipRouteAge` – The number of seconds since this route was last updated or otherwise determined to be correct. Note that no semantics of “too old” can be implied except through knowledge of the routing protocol by which the route was learned. (int) Returns a fixed value of `0`.

**ipRouteMask** – Indicate the mask to be logical-ANDed with the destination address before being compared to the value in the **ipRouteDest** field. For those systems that do not support arbitrary subnet masks, an agent constructs the value of the **ipRouteMask** by determining whether the value of the correspondent **ipRouteDest** field belongs to a class-A, B, or C network, and then using one of:

| Mask          | Network |
|---------------|---------|
| 255.0.0.0     | class-A |
| 255.255.0.0   | class-B |
| 255.255.255.0 | class-C |

If the value of the **ipRouteDest** is 0.0.0.0 (a default route), then the mask value is also 0.0.0.0. It should be noted that all IP routing subsystems implicitly use this mechanism. (netaddress)

**ipRouteMetric5** – An alternate routing metric for this route. The semantics of this metric are determined by the routing-protocol specified in the route's **ipRouteProto** value. If this metric is not used, its value should be set to -1. (int) Returns a fixed value of -1.

**ipRouteInfo** – A reference to MIB definitions specific to the particular routing protocol responsible for this route, as determined by the value specified in the route's **ipRouteProto** value. If this information is not present, its value should be set to the OBJECT IDENTIFIER { 0 0 }, which is a syntactically valid object identifier. Any conformant implementation of ASN.1 and BER must be able to generate and recognize this value. (objectid)

**ipNetToMediaTable** The **ipNetToMediaTable** is the IP Address Translation table used for mapping from IP addresses to physical addresses.

**ipNetToMediaIfIndex** – The interface on which this entry's equivalence is effective. The interface identified by a particular value of this index is the same interface as identified by the same value of **ifIndex**. (int)

**ipNetToMediaPhysAddress** – The media-dependent physical address. (octet[128])

**ipNetToMediaNetAddress** – The **IpAddress** corresponding to the media- dependent physical address. (netaddress)

**ipNetToMediaType** – The type of mapping. (enum) Returns a fixed value of (3)dynamic. Setting this object to the value **invalid(2)** has the effect of invalidating the corresponding entry in the **ipNetToMediaTable**. That is, it effectively dissociates the interface identified with said entry from the mapping identified with said entry. It is an implementation-specific matter as to whether the agent removes an invalidated entry from the table. Accordingly, management stations must be prepared to receive tabular information from agents that corresponds to entries not currently in use. Proper interpretation of such entries requires examination of the relevant **ipNetToMediaType** object.

---

`icmp` The `icmp` group reports statistics about the ICMP group.

`icmpInMsgs` – The total number of ICMP messages that the entity received. Note that this counter includes all those counted by `icmpInErrors`. (counter)

`icmpInErrors` – The number of ICMP messages that the entity received but determined as having ICMP-specific errors (bad ICMP checksums, bad length, and the like.). (counter)

`icmpInDestUnreachs` – The number of ICMP Destination Unreachable messages received. (counter)

`icmpInTimeExcds` – The number of ICMP Time Exceeded messages received. (counter)

`icmpInParmProbs` – The number of ICMP Parameter Problem messages received. (counter)

`icmpInSrcQuenchs` – The number of ICMP Source Quench messages received. (counter)

`icmpInRedirects` – The number of ICMP Redirect messages received. (counter)

`icmpInEchos` – The number of ICMP Echo (request) messages received. (counter)

`icmpInEchoReps` – The number of ICMP Echo Reply messages received. (counter)

`icmpInTimestamps` – The number of ICMP Timestamp (request) messages received. (counter)

`icmpInTimestampReps` – The number of ICMP Timestamp Reply messages received. (counter)

`icmpInAddrMasks` – The number of ICMP Address Mask Request messages received. (counter)

`icmpInAddrMaskReps` – The number of ICMP Address Mask Reply messages received. (counter)

`icmpOutMsgs` – The total number of ICMP messages that this entity attempted to send. Note that this counter includes all those counted by `icmpOutErrors`. (counter)

`icmpOutErrors` – The number of ICMP messages that this entity did not send due to problems discovered within ICMP, such as a lack of buffers. This value should not include errors discovered outside the ICMP layer, such as the inability of IP to route the resultant datagram. In some implementations there may be no types of errors that contribute to this counter's value. (counter)

`icmpOutDestUnreachs` – The number of ICMP Destination Unreachable messages sent. (counter)

`icmpOutTimeExcds` – The number of ICMP Time Exceeded messages sent. (counter)

`icmpOutParmProbs` – The number of ICMP Parameter Problem messages sent. (counter)

- `icmpOutSrcQuenches` – The number of ICMP Source Quench messages sent. (counter)
- `icmpOutRedirects` – The number of ICMP Redirect messages sent. For a host, this object will always be zero, since hosts do not send redirects. (counter)
- `icmpOutEchos` – The number of ICMP Echo (request) messages sent. (counter)
- `icmpOutEchoReps` – The number of ICMP Echo Reply messages sent. (counter)
- `icmpOutTimestamps` – The number of ICMP Timestamp (request) messages sent. (counter)
- `icmpOutTimestampReps` – The number of ICMP Timestamp Reply messages sent. (counter)
- `icmpOutAddrMasks` – The number of ICMP Address Mask Request messages sent. (counter)
- `icmpOutAddrMaskReps` – The number of ICMP Address Mask Reply messages sent. (counter)
- `tcp` The `tcp` group reports statistics about the TCP group.
- `tcpRtoAlgorithm` – The algorithm used to determine the timeout value used for retransmitting unacknowledged octets. (enum)
- `tcpRtoMin` – The minimum value permitted by a TCP implementation for the retransmission timeout, measured in milliseconds. More refined semantics for objects of this type depend upon the algorithm used to determine the retransmission timeout. In particular, when the timeout algorithm is `rsre(3)`, an object of this type has the semantics of the `LBOUND` quantity described in RFC 793. (int)
- `tcpRtoMax` – The maximum value permitted by a TCP implementation for the retransmission timeout, measured in milliseconds. More refined semantics for objects of this type depend upon the algorithm used to determine the retransmission timeout. In particular, when the timeout algorithm is `rsre(3)`, an object of this type has the semantics of the `UBOUND` quantity described in RFC 793. (int)
- `tcpMaxConn` – The limit on the total number of TCP connections that the entity can support. In entities where the maximum number of connections is dynamic, this object should contain the value `-1`. (int)
- `tcpActiveOpens` – The number of times that TCP connections have made a direct transition to the `SYN-SENT` state from the `CLOSED` state. (counter)
- `tcpPassiveOpens` – The number of times that TCP connections have made a direct transition to the `SYN-RCVD` state from the `LISTEN` state. (counter)
- `tcpAttemptFails` – The number of times that TCP connections have made a direct transition to the `CLOSED` state from either the `SYN-SENT` state or the `SYN-RCVD` state, plus the number of times TCP connections have made a direct transition to the `LISTEN` state from the `SYN-RCVD` state. (counter)



`tcpEstabResets` – The number of times TCP connections have made a direct transition to the CLOSED state from either the ESTABLISHED state or the CLOSE-WAIT state. (counter)

`tcpCurrEstab` – The number of TCP connections for which the current state is either ESTABLISHED or CLOSE-WAIT. (gauge)

`tcpInSegs` – The total number of segments received, including those received in error. This count includes segments received on currently established connections. (counter)

`tcpOutSegs` – The total number of segments sent, including those on current connections but excluding those containing only retransmitted octets. (counter)

`tcpRetransSegs` – The total number of segments retransmitted - that is, the number of TCP segments transmitted containing one or more previously transmitted octets. (counter)

`tcpInErrs` – The total number of segments received in error (for example, bad TCP checksums). (counter)

`tcpOutRsts` – The number of TCP segments sent containing the RST flag. (counter)

`tcpConnTable` The `tcpConnTable` is a table containing TCP connection-specific information.

`tcpConnState` – The state of this TCP connection. (enum)

The only value that may be set by a management station is `deleteTCB(12)`. Accordingly, it is appropriate for an agent to return a “badValue” response if a management station attempts to set this object to any other value.

If a management station sets this object to the value `deleteTCB(12)`, then this has the effect of deleting the TCB (as defined in RFC 793) of the corresponding connection on the managed node. This results in immediate termination of the connection.

As an implementation-specific option, an RST segment may be sent from the managed node to the other TCP endpoint. (Note, however, that RST segments are not sent reliably.)

`tcpConnLocalAddress` – The local IP address for this TCP connection. For a connection in the listen state that is willing to accept connections for any IP interface associated with the node, the value 0.0.0.0 is used. (netaddress)

`tcpConnLocalPort` – The local port number for this TCP connection. (int)

`tcpConnRemAddress` – The remote IP address for this TCP connection. (netaddress)

`tcpConnRemPort` – The remote port number for this TCP connection. (int)

`udp` The `udp` group reports statistics about the UDP group.

`udpInDatagrams` – The total number of UDP datagrams delivered to UDP users. (counter)  
Returns a fixed value of 0.

`udpNoPorts` – The total number of received UDP datagrams for which there was no application at the destination port. (counter) Returns a fixed value of 0.

`udpInErrors` – The number of received UDP datagrams that could not be delivered for reasons other than the lack of an application at the destination port. (counter)

`udpOutDatagrams` – The total number of UDP datagrams sent from this entity. (counter) Returns a fixed value of 0.

`udpTable` The `udpTable` is a table containing UDP listener information.

`udpLocalAddress` – The local IP address for this UDP listener. For a UDP listener that is willing to accept datagrams for any IP interface associated with the node, the value 0.0.0.0 is used. (netaddress)

`udpLocalPort` – The local port number for this UDP listener. (int)

`snmp` The `snmp` group reports statistics about the SNMP group.

`snmpInPkts` – The total number of Messages delivered to the SNMP entity from the transport service. (counter)

`snmpOutPkts` – The total number of SNMP Messages passed from the SNMP protocol entity to the transport service. (counter)

`snmpInBadVersions` – The total number of SNMP Messages delivered to the SNMP protocol entity that were for an unsupported SNMP version. (counter)

`snmpInBadCommunityNames` – The total number of SNMP Messages delivered to the SNMP protocol entity that used a SNMP community name not known to said entity. (counter)

`snmpInBadCommunityUses` – The total number of SNMP Messages delivered to the SNMP protocol entity, which represented an SNMP operation not allowed by the SNMP community named in the Message. (counter)

`snmpInASNParseErrs` – The total number of ASN.1 or BER errors encountered by the SNMP protocol entity when decoding received SNMP Messages. (counter)

`snmpInTooBigs` – The total number of SNMP PDUs delivered to the SNMP protocol entity for which the value of the error-status field is “tooBig.” (counter)

`snmpInNoSuchNames` – The total number of SNMP PDUs delivered to the SNMP protocol entity for which the value of the error-status field is “noSuchName.” (counter)

`snmpInBadValues` – The total number of SNMP PDUs delivered to the SNMP protocol entity for which the value of the error-status field is “badValue.” (counter)

`snmpInReadOnly` – The total number valid SNMP PDUs delivered to the SNMP protocol entity for which the value of the error-status field is “readOnly.” It should be noted that it is a protocol error to generate an SNMP PDU that contains the value “readOnly” in the error-status field. This object is provided as a means of detecting incorrect implementations of the SNMP. (counter)

`snmpInGenErrs` – The total number of SNMP PDUs delivered to the SNMP protocol entity for which the value of the error-status field is “genErr.” (counter)

`snmpInTotalReqVars` – The total number of MIB objects successfully retrieved by the SNMP protocol entity as the result of receiving valid SNMP Get-Request and Get-Next PDUs. (counter)

`snmpInTotalSetVars` – The total number of MIB objects successfully altered by the SNMP protocol entity as the result of receiving valid SNMP Set-Request PDUs. (counter)

`snmpInGetRequests` – The total number of SNMP Get-Request PDUs accepted and processed by the SNMP protocol entity. (counter)

`snmpInGetNexts` – The total number of SNMP Get-Next PDUs accepted and processed by the SNMP protocol entity. (counter)

`snmpInSetRequests` – The total number of SNMP Set-Request PDUs accepted and processed by the SNMP protocol entity. (counter)

`snmpInGetResponses` – The total number of SNMP Get-Response PDUs accepted and processed by the SNMP protocol entity. (counter)

`snmpInTraps` – The total number of SNMP Trap PDUs accepted and processed by the SNMP protocol entity. (counter)

`snmpOutTooBig` – The total number of SNMP PDUs generated by the SNMP protocol entity for which the value of the error-status field is “tooBig.” (counter)

`snmpOutNoSuchNames` – The total number of SNMP PDUs generated by the SNMP protocol entity for which the value of the error-status is “noSuchName.” (counter)

`snmpOutBadValues` – The total number of SNMP PDUs generated by the SNMP protocol entity for which the value of the error-status field is “badValue.” (counter)

`snmpOutGenErrs` – The total number of SNMP PDUs generated by the SNMP protocol entity for which the value of the error-status field is “genErr.” (counter)

`snmpOutGetRequests` – The total number of SNMP Get-Request PDUs which have been generated by the SNMP protocol entity. (counter)

`snmpOutGetNexts` – The total number of SNMP Get-Next PDUs generated by the SNMP protocol entity. (counter)

`snmpOutSetRequests` – The total number of SNMP Set-Request PDUs generated by the SNMP protocol entity. (counter)

`snmpOutGetResponses` – The total number of SNMP Get-Response PDUs generated by the SNMP protocol entity. (counter)

`snmpOutTraps` – The total number of SNMP Trap PDUs generated by the SNMP protocol entity. (counter)

`snmpEnableAuthenTraps` – Indicates whether the SNMP agent process is permitted to generate authentication-failure traps. The value of this object overrides any configuration information. As such, it provides a means whereby all authentication-failure traps may be disabled. (enum)

Note that this object must be stored in non-volatile memory, so that it remains constant between reinitializations of the network management system.

The following are Sun-specific group and table definitions.

`sunSystem` The `sunSystem` group reports general system information.

`agentDescr` – The SNMP agent's description of itself. (string[255])

`hostID` – The unique Sun hardware identifier. The value returned is four byte binary string. (octet[4])

`motd` – The first line of `/etc/motd`. (string[255])

`unixTime` – The UNIX system time. Measured in seconds since January 1, 1970 GMT. (counter)

`sunProcessTable` The `sunProcessTable` table reports UNIX process table information.

`psProcessID` – The process identifier for this process. (int)

`psParentProcessID` – The process identifier of this process's parent. (int)

`psProcessSize` – The combined size of the data and stack segments (in kilobytes.) (int)

`psProcessCpuTime` – The CPU time (including both user and system time) consumed so far. (int)

`psProcessState` – The run-state of the process. (octet[4])

---

|   |              |
|---|--------------|
| R | Runnable     |
| T | Stopped      |
| P | In page wait |

---

---

|   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| D | Non-interruptable wait          |
| S | Sleeping (less than 20 seconds) |
| I | Idle (more than 20 seconds)     |
| Z | Zombie                          |

---

psProcessWaitChannel – Reason process is waiting. (octet[16])

psProcessTTY – Terminal, if any, controlling this process. (octet[16])

psProcessUserName – Name of the user associated with this process. (octet[16])

psProcessUserID – Numeric form of the name of the user associated with this process. (int)

psProcessName – Command name used to invoke this process. (octet[64])

psProcessStatus – Setting this variable will cause a signal of the set value to be sent to the process. (int)

sunHostPerf The sunHostPerf group reports hostperf information.

rsUserProcessTime – Total number of timeticks used by user processes since the last system boot. (counter)

rsNiceModeTime – Total number of timeticks used by “nice” mode since the last system boot. (counter)

rsSystemProcessTime – Total number of timeticks used by system processes since the last system boot. (counter)

rsIdleModeTime – Total number of timeticks in idle mode since the last system boot. (counter)

rsDiskXfer1 – Total number of disk transfers since the last boot for the first of four configured disks. (counter)

rsDiskXfer2 – Total number of disk transfers since the last boot for the second of four configured disks. (counter)

rsDiskXfer3 – Total number of disk transfers since the last boot for the third of four configured disks. (counter)

rsDiskXfer4 – Total number of disk transfers since the last boot for the fourth of four configured disks. (counter)

rsVPagesIn – Number of pages read in from disk. (counter)

rsVPagesOut – Number of pages written to disk. (counter)

rsVSwapIn – Number of pages swapped in. (counter)

rsVSwapOut – Number of pages swapped out. (counter)

rsVIntr – Number of device interrupts. (counter)

rsIfInPackets – Number of input packets. (counter)

rsIfOutPackets – Number of output packets. (counter)

rsIfInErrors – Number of input errors. (counter)

rsIfOutErrors – Number of output errors. (counter)

rsIfCollisions – Number of output collisions. (counter)

|              |                            |                           |
|--------------|----------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>Files</b> | /etc/snmp/conf/snmpd.conf  | configuration information |
|              | /etc/snmp/conf/mibiisa.acl | access control file       |
|              | /var/snmp/mib/sun.mib      | standard SNMP MIBII file  |

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWmibii       |
| Interface Stability | Obsolete        |

**See Also** [inetd\(1M\)](#), [select\(3C\)](#), [recvfrom\(3SOCKET\)](#), [sendto\(3SOCKET\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [gld\(7D\)](#)

|                    |                          |                                                                                                              |
|--------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Diagnostics</b> | cannot dispatch request  | The proxy cannot dispatch the request. The rest of the message indicates the cause of the failure.           |
|                    | select(3C) failed        | A <a href="#">select(3C)</a> call failed. The rest of the message indicates the cause of the failure.        |
|                    | sendto(3SOCKET) failed   | A <a href="#">sendto(3SOCKET)</a> call failed. The rest of the message indicates the cause of the failure.   |
|                    | recvfrom(3SOCKET) failed | A <a href="#">recvfrom(3SOCKET)</a> call failed. The rest of the message indicates the cause of the failure. |
|                    | no response from system  | The SNMP agent on the target system does not respond to SNMP requests. This error might indicate that the    |

---

|                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                  | SNMP agent is not running on the target system, the target system is down, or the network containing the target system is unreachable.                                                                   |
| response too big                 | The agent could not fit the results of an operation into a single SNMP message. Split large groups or tables into smaller entities.                                                                      |
| missing attribute                | An attribute is missing from the requested group.                                                                                                                                                        |
| bad attribute type               | An object attribute type received from the SNMP agent that does not match the attribute type specified by the proxy agent schema. The rest of the message indicates the expected type and received type. |
| cannot get sysUpTime             | The proxy agent cannot get the variable <i>sysUpTime</i> from the SNMP agent.                                                                                                                            |
| sysUpTime type bad               | The variable <i>sysUpTime</i> received from the SNMP agent has the wrong data type.                                                                                                                      |
| unknown SNMP error               | An unknown SNMP error was received.                                                                                                                                                                      |
| bad variable value               | The requested specified an incorrect syntax or value for a set operation.                                                                                                                                |
| variable is read only            | The SNMP agent did not perform the set request because a variable to set may not be written.                                                                                                             |
| general error                    | A general error was received.                                                                                                                                                                            |
| cannot make request PDU          | An error occurred building a request PDU.                                                                                                                                                                |
| cannot make request varbind list | An error occurred building a request variable binding list.                                                                                                                                              |
| cannot parse response PDU        | An error occurred parsing a response PDU.                                                                                                                                                                |

|                                            |                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| request ID - response ID mismatch          | The response ID does not match the request ID.                                                                                       |
| string contains non-displayable characters | A displayable string contains non-displayable characters.                                                                            |
| cannot open schema file                    | An error occurred opening the proxy agent schema file.                                                                               |
| cannot parse schema file                   | The proxy agent couldn't parse the proxy agent schema file.                                                                          |
| cannot open host file                      | An error occurred opening the file associated with the <i>na.snmp.hostfile</i> keyword in <i>/etc/snmp/conf/snmpd.conf</i>           |
| cannot parse host file                     | The proxy agent was unable to parse the file associated with the <i>na.snmp.hostfile</i> keyword in <i>/etc/snmp/conf/snm.conf</i> . |
| attribute unavailable for set operations   | The set could not be completed because the attribute was not available for set operations.                                           |

**Bugs** The *mibiisa* utility returns the wrong interface speed for the SBUS FDDI interface (for example, “bf0”).

The *mibiisa* utility does not return a MAC address for the SBUS FDDI interface (for example, “bf0”).

Process names retrieved from *mibiisa* contain a leading blank space.

When you change attribute values in the system group with an SNMP set request, the change is effective only as long as *mibiisa* is running. *mibiisa* does not save the changes to */etc/snmp/conf/snmpd.conf*.



**Name** mkbootmedia – create bootable Solaris ISO image

**Synopsis** `/usr/bin/mkbootmedia -v [-l label] media-root iso`

**Description** The `mkbootmedia` utility takes *media-root* (the root of an on-disk Solaris install media) as input and creates a bootable Solaris ISO image in the file *iso*, using `mkisofs(8)`. The file can then be burned onto a CD/DVD with utilities such as `cdrw(1)` or `cdrecord(1)`. (Neither `mkisofs(8)` nor `cdrecord(1)` are SunOS man pages.)

**Caution** – The directory tree *media-root* must contain the file `boot/grub/stage2_eltorito`, which will be written to the media boot sectors. This file will be modified with some boot information, thus it must be writable. If necessary, first save a copy prior to running this utility.

**Options** The following options are supported:

`-l label`  
Sets *label* as the label/volume name of the ISO image.

`-v`  
Verbose. Multiple `-v` options increase verbosity.

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

*media-root*  
Top-level directory of an on-disk Solaris install media.

*iso*  
Name of the output file which will contain the resulting ISO image.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Creating an ISO Image and Burning a CD/DVD

The following commands create an ISO image from the content of `s10u1` and burn the image to a CD/DVD.

```
/usr/bin/mkbootmedia s10u1 s10u1.iso
/usr/bin/cdrw -i s10u1.iso
```

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWcsu         |
| Interface Stability | Committed       |

**See Also** [cdrw\(1\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

`mkisofs(8)`, (`/usr/share/man/man8/mkisofs.8`), in the `SUNWfsm` package (not a SunOS man page)

**Name** mkdevalloc – Make device\_allocate entries

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/mkdevalloc

**Description** The mkdevalloc command writes to standard out a set of [device\\_allocate\(4\)](#) entries describing the system's frame buffer, audio and removable media devices.

The mkdevalloc command is used by the [init.d\(4\)](#) scripts to create or update the /etc/security/device\_allocate file.

Entries are generated based on the device special files found in /dev. For the different categories of devices, the mkdevalloc command checks for the following files under /dev:

```
audio /dev/audio, /dev/audioctl, /dev/sound/...
tape /dev/rst*, /dev/nrst*, /dev/rmt/...
floppy /dev/diskette, /dev/fd*, /dev/rdiskette, /dev/rfd*
removable disk /dev/sr*, /dev/nsr*, /dev/dsk/c0t?d0s?, /dev/rdisk/c0t?d0s?
frame buffer /dev/fb
```

All entries set the *device-minimum* and *device-maximum* fields to the hex representations of ADMIN\_LOW and ADMIN\_HIGH, respectively. The *device-authorization* field is set to solaris.device.allocate, except for the framebuffer entry, where it is set to \*. The *device-name*, *device-type* and *device-clean* fields are set to the following values:

|                | device-name      | device-type | device-clean        |
|----------------|------------------|-------------|---------------------|
| audio          | audio            | audio       | audio_clean_wrapper |
| tape           | mag_tape_0,1,... | st          | st_clean            |
| floppy         | floppy_0,1,...   | fd          | disk_clean          |
| removable disk | cdrom_0,1,...    | sr          | disk_clean          |
| frame buffer   | framebuffer      | fb          | /bin/true           |

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWcsu         |
| Interface Stability | Obsolete        |

**See Also** [allocate\(1\)](#), [bsmconv\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Notes** mkdevalloc might not be supported in a future release of the Solaris operating system.

**Name** mkdevmaps – make device\_maps entries

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/mkdevmaps

**Description** The mkdevmaps command writes to standard out a set of [device\\_maps\(4\)](#) entries describing the system's frame buffer, audio, and removable media devices.

The mkdevmaps command is used by the [init.d\(4\)](#) scripts to create or update the /etc/security/device\_maps file.

Entries are generated based on the device special files found in /dev. For the different categories of devices, the mkdevmaps command checks for the following files under /dev:

```
audio /dev/audio, /dev/audioctl, /dev/sound/...
tape /dev/rst*, /dev/nrst*, /dev/rmt/...
floppy /dev/diskette, /dev/fd*, /dev/rdiskette, /dev/rfd*
removable disk /dev/dsk/c0t?d0s?, /dev/rdisk/c0t?d0s?
frame buffer /dev/fb
```

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWcsu         |
| Interface Stability | Obsolete        |

**See Also** [allocate\(1\)](#), [bsmconv\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Notes** mkdevmaps might not be supported in a future release of the Solaris operating system.

**Name** mkfifo – make FIFO special file

**Synopsis** /usr/bin/mkfifo [-m *mode*] *path*...

ksh93 mkfifo [ *options* ] *file*...

## Description

/usr/bin/mkfifo The `mkfifo` utility creates the FIFO special files named by its argument list. The arguments are taken sequentially, in the order specified; and each FIFO special file is either created completely or, in the case of an error or signal, not created at all.

If errors are encountered in creating one of the special files, `mkfifo` writes a diagnostic message to the standard error and continues with the remaining arguments, if any.

The `mkfifo` utility calls the library routine `mkfifo(3C)`, with the *path* argument is passed as the *path* argument from the command line, and *mode* is set to the equivalent of `a=rw`, modified by the current value of the file mode creation mask `umask(1)`.

ksh93 The `mkfifo` utility creates one or more FIFOs. By default, the mode of the created FIFO is `a=rw` minus the bits set in `umask(1)`.

## Options

/usr/bin/ksh93 The following option is supported for /usr/bin/mkfifo:

-m *mode* Set the file permission bits of the newly-created FIFO to the specified *mode* value. The *mode* option-argument will be the same as the *mode* operand defined for the `chmod(1)` command. In *<symbolicmode>* strings, the *op* characters + and - will be interpreted relative to an assumed initial mode of `a=rw`.

ksh93 The following option is supported for ksh93:

-m *mode*  
-mode=*mode* Set the mode of the created FIFO to *mode*. The *mode* option-argument is a symbolic or octal mode as in `chmod(1)`. Relative modes assume an initial mode of `a=rw`.

**Operands** The following operand is supported:

*file* A path name of the FIFO special file to be created.

**Usage** See `largefile(5)` for the description of the behavior of `mkfifo` when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (  $2^{31}$  bytes).

**Environment Variables** See `environ(5)` for descriptions of the following environment variables that affect the execution of `mkfifo`: `LANG`, `LC_ALL`, `LC_CTYPE`, `LC_MESSAGES`, and `NLSPATH`.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 All the specified FIFO special files were created successfully.
- >0 An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWesu         |
| Interface Stability | Standard        |

**See Also** [chmod\(1\)](#), [umask\(1\)](#), [mkfifo\(3C\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#), [standards\(5\)](#)

**Name** mkfile – create a file

**Synopsis** `mkfile [-nv] size [g | k | b | m] filename...`

**Description** `mkfile` creates one or more files that are suitable for use as NFS-mounted swap areas, or as local swap areas. When a root user executes `mkfile()`, the sticky bit is set and the file is padded with zeros by default. When non-root users execute `mkfile()`, they must manually set the sticky bit using `chmod(1)`. The default `size` is in bytes, but it can be flagged as gigabytes, kilobytes, blocks, or megabytes, with the `g`, `k`, `b`, or `m` suffixes, respectively.

**Options**

- `-n` Create an empty *filename*. The `size` is noted, but disk blocks are not allocated until data is written to them. Files created with this option cannot be swapped over local UFS mounts.
- `-v` Verbose. Report the names and sizes of created files.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

`0` Success.  
`>0` An error occurred.

**Usage** See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of `mkfile` when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte ( $2^{31}$  bytes).

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWcsu         |
| Interface Stability | Committed       |

**See Also** [chmod\(1\)](#), [swap\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#)

**Name** mkfs – construct a file system

**Synopsis** `mkfs [-F FSType] [generic_options]  
[-o FSType-specific_options] raw_device_file  
[operands]`

**Description** The `mkfs` utility constructs a file system on the *raw\_device\_file* by calling the specific `mkfs` module indicated by `-F FSType`.

Note: ufs file systems are normally created with the `newfs(1M)` command.

*generic\_options* are independent of file system type. *FSType-specific\_options* is a comma-separated list of *keyword=value* pairs (with no intervening spaces), which are *FSType*-specific. *raw\_device\_file* specifies the disk partition on which to write the file system. It is required and must be the first argument following the *specific\_options* (if any). *operands* are *FSType*-specific. See the *FSType*-specific manual page of `mkfs` (for example, `mkfs_ufs(1M)`) for a detailed description.

**Options** The following are the generic options for `mkfs`:

- F Specify the *FSType* to be constructed. If `-F` is not specified, the *FSType* is determined from `/etc/vfstab` by matching the *raw\_device\_file* with a `vfstab` entry, or by consulting the `/etc/default/fs` file.
- V Echo the complete command line, but do not execute the command. The command line is generated by using the options and arguments provided and adding to them information derived from `/etc/vfstab` or `/etc/default/fs`. This option may be used to verify and validate the command line.
- m Return the command line which was used to create the file system. The file system must already exist. This option provides a means of determining the command used in constructing the file system.
- o Specify *FSType*-specific options. See the manual page for the `mkfs` module specific to the file system type.

**Usage** See `largefile(5)` for the description of the behavior of `mkfs` when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte ( $2^{31}$  bytes).

**Files**

|                              |                                                                                                                                                   |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>/etc/default/fs</code> | Default file system type. Default values can be set for the following flags in <code>/etc/default/fs</code> . For example: <code>LOCAL=ufs</code> |
|                              | <code>LOCAL</code> The default partition for a command if no <i>FSType</i> is specified.                                                          |
| <code>/etc/vfstab</code>     | List of default parameters for each file system                                                                                                   |

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWcsu         |

**See Also** [mkfs\\_ufs\(1M\)](#), [newfs\(1M\)](#), [vfstab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#)

Manual pages for the *FSType*-specific modules of `mkfs`.

**Notes** This command might not be supported for all *FSTypes*.

You can use `lofiadm` to create a file that appears to a `mkfs` command as a raw device. You can then use a `mkfs` command to create a file system on that device. See [lofiadm\(1M\)](#) for examples of creating a UFS and a PC (FAT) file system (using [mkfs\\_ufs\(1M\)](#) and [mkfs\\_pcfs\(1M\)](#)) on a device created by `lofiadm`.



**Name** mkfs\_pcfs – construct a FAT file system

**Synopsis** `mkfs -F pcfs [generic_options] [-o FSType_specific_options] raw_device_file`

**Description** The pcfs-specific module of mkfs constructs a File Allocation Table (FAT) on removable media (diskette, JAZ disk, ZIP disk, PCMCIA card), a hard disk, or a file (see NOTES). FATs are the standard MS-DOS and Windows file system format. Note that you can use [fdformat\(1\)](#) to construct a FAT file system only on a diskette or PCMCIA card.

mkfs for pcfs determines an appropriate FAT size for the medium, then it installs an initial boot sector and an empty FAT. A sector size of 512 bytes is used. mkfs for pcfs can also install the initial file in the file system (see the pcfs-specific `-o i` option). This first file can optionally be marked as read-only, system, and/or hidden.

If you want to construct a FAT with mkfs for pcfs on a medium that is not formatted, you must first perform a low-level format on the medium with [fdformat\(1\)](#) or [format\(1M\)](#). Non-diskette media must also be partitioned with the [fdisk\(1M\)](#) utility. Note that all existing data on the diskette or disk partition, if any, is destroyed when a new FAT is constructed.

*generic\_options* are supported by the generic mkfs command. See [mkfs\(1M\)](#) for a description of these options.

*raw\_device\_file* indicates the device on which to write unless the `-o N` option has been specified, or if the `-V` or `-m` generic options are passed from the generic mkfs module.

**Options** See [mkfs\(1M\)](#) for the list of supported generic options.

The following options are supported:

- |                                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>-o <i>FSType_specific_options</i></code> | Specify pcfs file system-specific options in a comma-separated list with no intervening spaces. If invalid options are specified, a warning message is printed and the invalid options are ignored.                                                                              |
| <code>b=<i>label</i></code>                    | Label the media with volume label. The volume label is restricted to 11 uppercase characters.                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <code>B=<i>filename</i></code>                 | Install <i>filename</i> as the boot loader in the file system's boot sector. If you don't specify a boot loader, an MS-DOS boot loader is installed. The MS-DOS boot loader requires specific MS-DOS system files to make the diskette bootable. See NOTES for more information. |
| <code>fat=<i>n</i></code>                      | The size of a FAT entry. Currently, 12, 16, and 32 are valid values. The default is 12 for diskettes, 16 for larger media.                                                                                                                                                       |

|                                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>h</code>                 | Mark the first file installed as a hidden file. The <code>-i</code> option must also be specified.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <code>hidden=<i>n</i></code>   | Set the number of hidden sectors to <i>n</i> . This is the number of sectors on the physical disk preceding the start of the volume (which is the boot sector itself). This defaults to 0 for diskettes or a computed value (based on the <code>fdisk</code> table) for disks. This option may be used only in conjunction with the <code>nofdisk</code> option. |
| <code>i=<i>filename</i></code> | Install <i>filename</i> as the initial file in the new file system. The initial file's contents are guaranteed to occupy consecutive clusters at the start of the files area. When creating bootable media, a boot program should be specified as the initial file.                                                                                              |
| <code>nofdisk</code>           | Do not attempt to find an <code>fdisk</code> table on the medium. Instead rely on the <code>size</code> option for determining the partition size. By default, the created FAT is 16 bits and begins at the first sector of the device. This origination sector can be modified with the <code>hidden</code> option ( <code>-h</code> ).                         |
| <code>nsect=<i>n</i></code>    | The number of sectors per track on the disk. If not specified, the value is determined by using a <code>dkio(7I)</code> ioctl to get the disk geometry, or (for diskette) from the results of an <code>FDIOGCHAR</code> ioctl.                                                                                                                                   |
| <code>ntrack=<i>n</i></code>   | The number of tracks per cylinder on the disk. If not specified, the value is determined by using a <code>dkio(7I)</code> ioctl to get the disk geometry, or (for diskette) from the results of an <code>FDIOGCHAR</code> ioctl.                                                                                                                                 |
| <code>N</code>                 | No execution mode. Print normal output, but do not actually write the file system to the medium. This is most useful when used in conjunction with the <code>verbose</code> option.                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <code>r</code>                 | Mark the first file installed as read-only. The <code>-i</code> option must also be specified.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <code>reserve=<i>n</i></code>  | Set the number of reserved sectors to <i>n</i> . This is the number of sectors in the volume,                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

preceding the start of the first FAT, including the boot sector. The value should always be at least 1, and the default value is exactly 1.

|                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| s              | Mark the first file installed as a system file. The <code>-i</code> option must also be specified.                                                                                                                           |
| size= <i>n</i> | The number of sectors in the file system. If not specified, the value is determined from the size of the partition given in the fdisk table or (for diskette) by way of computation using the <code>FDIIOGCHAR</code> ioctl. |
| spc= <i>n</i>  | The size of the allocation unit for space within the file system, expressed as a number of sectors. The default value depends on the FAT entry size and the size of the file system.                                         |
| v              | Verbose output. Describe, in detail, operations being performed.                                                                                                                                                             |

**Files** *raw\_device\_file* The device on which to build the FAT. The device name for a diskette must be specified as `/dev/rdiskette0` for the first diskette drive, or `/dev/rdiskette1` for a second diskette drive. For non-diskette media, a disk device name must be qualified with a suffix to indicate the proper partition. For example, in the name `/dev/rdisk/c0t0d0p0:c`, the `:c` suffix indicates that the first partition on the disk should receive the new FAT.

For a file, *raw\_device\_file* is the block device name returned by [lofiadm\(1M\)](#).

**Examples** The media in these examples must be formatted before running `mkfs` for `pcfs`. See `DESCRIPTION` for more details.

**EXAMPLE 1** Creating a FAT File System on a Diskette

The following command creates a FAT file system on a diskette:

```
mkfs -F pcfs /dev/rdiskette
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Creating a FAT File System on a Disk

The following command creates a FAT file system on the second fdisk partition of a disk attached to an x86 based system:

```
mkfs -F pcfs /dev/rdisk/c0d0p0:d
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Creating a FAT File System on a ZIP Disk

The following command creates a FAT file system on a ZIP disk located on a SPARC based system:

```
mkfs -F pcfs /dev/rdisk/c0t4d0s2:c
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Creating a FAT File System on a JAZ Disk

The following command creates a FAT file system on a JAZ disk located on a SPARC based system and overrides the sectors/track and tracks/cylinder values obtained from the device's controller:

```
mkfs -F pcfs -o nsect=32,ntrack=64 /dev/rdisk/c0t3d0s2:c
```

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWesu         |
| Interface Stability | Stable          |

**See Also** [fdformat\(1\)](#), [fdisk\(1M\)](#), [format\(1M\)](#), [lofiadm\(1M\)](#), [mkfs\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [fd\(7D\)](#), [dkio\(7I\)](#), [fdio\(7I\)](#)

**Notes** The default MS-DOS boot loader, which is installed by default if `-o B` is not specified, requires specific MS-DOS system files to make the diskette bootable. These MS-DOS files are not installed when you format a diskette with `mkfs` for `pcfs`, which makes a diskette formatted this way not bootable. Trying to boot from it on an x86 based system will result in the following message:

```
Non-System disk or disk error
Replace and strike any key when ready
```

You must format a diskette with the DOS `format` command to install the specific MS-DOS system files required by the default boot loader.

You can use `lofiadm` to create a file that appears to a `mkfs` command (for example, `mkfs_pcfs` or `mkfs_ufs`) as a raw device. You can then use a `mkfs` command to create a file system on that device. See [lofiadm\(1M\)](#) for examples of creating a UFS and a PC (FAT) file system on a device created by `lofiadm`.

**Name** mkfs\_udfs – construct a udfs file system

**Synopsis** mkfs -F udfs [*generic\_options*] [-o *specific\_options*] *raw\_device\_file* [*size*]

**Description** This is the universal disk format file system (udfs) -specific module of the mkfs command. mkfs constructs a udfs file system with a root directory.

**Options** See mkfs(1M) for the list of supported *generic\_options*.

The following options are supported:

-o *specific\_options* Specify a udfs-specific option. Specify udfs file system specific options in a comma-separated list with no intervening spaces. If invalid options are specified, a warning message is printed and the invalid options are ignored.

The following *specific\_options* are available:

N Print the file system parameters without actually creating the file system.

label=*string* Specify the label to be written into the volume header structures. Specify *string* as the name of the label. If *string* is not specified, a default *string* is generated in the form of \*NoLabel\*.

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

*raw\_device\_file* Specify the disk partition on which to write.

*size* Specify the number of 512-byte blocks in the file system.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWudf         |

**See Also** [fsck\(1M\)](#), [mkfs\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Diagnostics** not currently a valid file system

The specified device does not contain a valid udfs file system.

Invalid size: larger than the partition size

Number of blocks given as parameter to create the file system is larger than the size of the device specified.

is mounted can't mkfs

Device is in use, cannot create file system when the device is in use.

preposterous size

Negative size parameter provided is invalid.

sector size must be between 512, 8192 bytes

Sector size given is not in the valid range.

Volume integrity sequence descriptors too long

File set descriptor too long.

Not enough space to create volume integrity sequence or file set descriptor.

mkfs: argument out of range

One of the arguments is out of range.

mkfs: bad numeric arg

One of the arguments is potentially a bad numeric.

**Notes** You can use `lofiadm` to create a file that appears to a `mkfs` command (for example, `mkfs_pcfs` or `mkfs_ufs`) as a raw device. You can then use a `mkfs` command to create a file system on that device. See [lofiadm\(1M\)](#) for examples of creating a UFS and a PC (FAT) file system on a device created by `lofiadm`.

**Name** mkfs\_ufs – construct a UFS file system

**Synopsis** `mkfs -F ufs [generic_options] [-o FSType_specific_options] raw_device_file [size]`

**Description** The UFS-specific module of `mkfs` builds a UFS file system with a root directory and a lost+found directory (see [fsck\(1M\)](#)).

The UFS-specific `mkfs` is rarely run directly. Use the [newfs\(1M\)](#) command instead.

*raw\_device\_file* indicates the disk partition on which to create the new file system. If the `-o N`, `-V`, or `-m` options are specified, the *raw\_device\_file* is not actually modified. *size* specifies the number of disk sectors in the file system, where a disk sector is usually 512 bytes. This argument must follow the *raw\_device\_file* argument and is required (even with `-o N`), unless the `-V` or `-m` generic options are specified.

*generic\_options* are supported by the generic `mkfs` command. See [mkfs\(1M\)](#) for a description of these options.

**Options** The following generic options are supported:

- `-m` Print the command line that was used to create the existing file system.
- `-V` Print the current `mkfs` command line.

**Options** The following UFS-specific options are supported:

- `-o` Use one or more of the following values separated by commas (with no intervening spaces) to specify UFS-specific options:
 

|                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>apc=<i>n</i></code>    | The number of alternate sectors per cylinder to reserve for bad block replacement for SCSI devices only. The default is 0.<br><br>This option is not applicable for disks with EFI labels and is ignored.                                                                        |
| <code>bsize=<i>n</i></code>  | The logical block size of the file system in bytes, either 4096 or 8192. The default is 8192. The sun4u architecture does not support the 4096 block size.                                                                                                                       |
| <code>calcbinsb</code>       | Sends to stdout a binary (machine-readable) version of the superblock that would be used to create a file system with the specified configuration parameters.                                                                                                                    |
| <code>calcsb</code>          | Sends to stdout a human-readable version of the superblock that would be used to create a file system with the specified configuration parameters.                                                                                                                               |
| <code>cgsize=<i>n</i></code> | The number of cylinders per cylinder group, ranging from 16 to 256. The default is calculated by dividing the number of sectors in the file system by the number of sectors in a gigabyte. Then, the result is multiplied by 32. The default value is always between 16 and 256. |

|                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                          | <p>The per-cylinder-group meta data must fit in a space no larger than what is available in one logical file system block. If too large a <code>cgsize</code> is requested, it is changed by the minimum amount necessary.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <code>fragsize=n</code>  | <p>The smallest amount of disk space in bytes that can be allocated to a file. <code>fragsize</code> must be a power of 2 divisor of <code>bsize</code>, where:</p> <p><math>bsize / fragsize</math> is 1, 2, 4, or 8.</p> <p>This means that if the logical block size is 4096, legal values for <code>fragsize</code> are 512, 1024, 2048, and 4096. When the logical block size is 8192, legal values are 1024, 2048, 4096, and 8192. The default value is 1024.</p> <p>For file systems greater than 1 terabyte or for file systems created with the <code>mtb=y</code> option, <code>fragsize</code> is forced to match block size (<code>bsize</code>).</p>                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <code>free=n</code>      | <p>The minimum percentage of free space to maintain in the file system between 0% and 99%, inclusively. This space is off-limits to users. Once the file system is filled to this threshold, only the superuser can continue writing to the file system.</p> <p>The default is <math>((64 \text{ Mbytes} / \text{partition size}) * 100)</math>, rounded down to the nearest integer and limited between 1% and 10%, inclusively.</p> <p>This parameter can be subsequently changed using the <a href="#">tunefs(1M)</a> command.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <code>gap=n</code>       | <p>Rotational delay. This option is obsolete in the Solaris 10 release. The value is always set to 0, regardless of the input value.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <code>maxcontig=n</code> | <p>The maximum number of logical blocks, belonging to one file, that are allocated contiguously. The default is calculated as follows:</p> <p><math>maxcontig = \text{disk drive maximum transfer size} / \text{disk block size}</math></p> <p>If the disk drive's maximum transfer size cannot be determined, the default value for <code>maxcontig</code> is calculated from kernel parameters as follows:</p> <p>If <code>maxphys</code> is less than <code>ufs_maxmaxphys</code>, which is typically 1 Mbyte, then <code>maxcontig</code> is set to <code>maxphys</code>. Otherwise, <code>maxcontig</code> is set to <code>ufs_maxmaxphys</code>.</p> <p>You can set <code>maxcontig</code> to any positive integer value.</p> <p>The actual value will be the lesser of what has been specified and what the hardware supports.</p> |



---

|                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                        | You can subsequently change this parameter by using <a href="#">tunefs(1M)</a> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <code>mtb=y</code>     | Set the parameters of the file system to allow eventual growth to over a terabyte in total file system size. This option sets <i>fragsize</i> to be the same as <i>bsize</i> , and sets <i>nbpi</i> to 1 Mbyte, unless the <code>-i</code> option is used to make it even larger. If you explicitly set the <i>fragsize</i> or <i>nbpi</i> parameters to values that are incompatible with this option, the user-supplied value of <i>fragsize</i> or <i>nbpi</i> is ignored.                                                                       |
| <code>N</code>         | Print out the file system parameters that would be used to create the file system without actually creating the file system.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <code>nbpi=n</code>    | The number of bytes per inode, which specifies the density of inodes in the file system. The number is divided into the total size of the file system to determine the number of inodes to create.<br><br>This value should reflect the expected average size of files in the file system. If fewer inodes are desired, a larger number should be used. To create more inodes, a smaller number should be given. The default is 2048.<br><br>The number of inodes can increase if the file system is expanded with the <code>growfs</code> command. |
| <code>nrpos=n</code>   | The number of different rotational positions in which to divide a cylinder group. The default is 8.<br><br>This option is not applicable for disks with EFI labels and is ignored.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <code>nsect=n</code>   | The number of sectors per track on the disk. The default is 32.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <code>ntrack=n</code>  | The number of tracks per cylinder on the disk. The default is 16.<br><br>This option is not applicable for disks with EFI labels and is ignored.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <code>opt=s   t</code> | The file system can either be instructed to try to minimize the <i>time</i> spent allocating blocks, or to try to minimize the <i>space</i> fragmentation on the disk. The default is <i>time</i> .<br><br>This parameter can be subsequently changed with the <a href="#">tunefs(1M)</a> command.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <code>rps=n</code>     | The rotational speed of the disk, in revolutions per second. The default is 60.<br><br>Note that you specify <i>rps</i> for <code>mkfs</code> and <i>rpm</i> for <code>newfs</code> .<br><br>This option is not applicable for disks with EFI labels and is ignored.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

Alternatively, parameters can be entered as a list of space-separated values (without keywords) whose meaning is positional. In this case, the `-o` option is omitted and the list follows the size operand. This is the way `newfs` passes the parameters to `mkfs`.

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

*raw\_device\_file* The disk partition on which to write.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWcsu         |

**See Also** [fsck\(1M\)](#), [mkfs\(1M\)](#), [newfs\(1M\)](#), [tunefs\(1M\)](#), [dir\\_ufs\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [ufs\(7FS\)](#)

**Diagnostics** The following error message typically occurs with very high density disks. On such disks, the file system structure cannot encode the proper disk layout information. However, such disks have enough onboard intelligence to make up for any layout deficiencies, so there is no actual impact on performance. The warning that performance might be impaired can be safely ignored.

```
Warning: insufficient space in super block for
rotational layout tables with nsect sblock.fs_nsect
and ntrak sblock.fs_ntrak. (File system performance may be impaired.)
```

The following error message occurs when the disk geometry results in a situation where the last truncated cylinder group cannot contain the correct number of data blocks. Some disk space is wasted.

```
Warning: inode blocks/cyl group (grp) >= data blocks (num) in last cylinder
```

If there is only one cylinder group and if the above condition holds true, `mkfs` fails with the following error:

```
File system creation failed. There is only one cylinder group and that is
not even big enough to hold the inodes.
```

The following error message occurs when the best calculated file system layout is unable to include the last few sectors in the last cylinder group. This is due to the interaction between how much space is used for various pieces of meta data and the total blocks available in a cylinder group. Modifying `nbp1` and `cpg` might reduce this number, but it is rarely worth the effort.

```
Warning: num sector(s) in last cylinder group unallocated
```

**Notes** You can use `lofiadm` to create a file that appears to the `mkfs` command (for example, `mkfs_pcfs` or `mkfs_ufs`) as a raw device. You can then use the `mkfs` command to create a file system on that device. See [lofiadm\(1M\)](#) for examples of creating a UFS and a PC (FAT) file system on a device created by `lofiadm`.

Both the block and character devices, such as devices in `/dev/dsk` and `/dev/rdisk`, must be available prior to running the `mkfs` command.

**Name** mknod – make a special file

**Synopsis** mknod *name* b *major minor*  
 mknod *name* c *major minor*  
 mknod *name* p

**Description** mknod makes a directory entry for a special file.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- b Create a block-type special file.
- c Create a character-type special file.
- p Create a FIFO (named pipe).

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

- major* The *major* device number.
- minor* The *minor* device number; can be either decimal or octal. The assignment of major device numbers is specific to each system. You must be the super-user to use this form of the command.
- name* A special file to be created.

**Usage** See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of mknod when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (  $2^{31}$  bytes).

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWcsu         |

**See Also** [ftp\(1\)](#), [in.ftpd\(1M\)](#), [mknod\(2\)](#), [symlink\(2\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#)

**Notes** If [mknod\(2\)](#) is used to create a device, the major and minor device numbers are always interpreted by the kernel running on that machine.

With the advent of physical device naming, it would be preferable to create a symbolic link to the physical name of the device (in the `/devices` subtree) rather than using mknod.

**Name** mkntfs – create an NTFS file system

**Synopsis** mkntfs [*options*] *device* [*number\_of\_sectors*]

```
mkntfs [-C] [-c cluster-size] [-F] [-f] [-H heads] [-h] [-I]
 [-L volume-label] [-l] [-n] [-p part-start-sect] [-Q] [-q]
 [-S sectors-per-track] [-s sector-size] [-T] [-V] [-v]
 [-z mft-zone-multiplier] [--debug] device [number-of-sectors]
```

**Description** The `mkntfs` utility is used to create an NTFS file system on a device, usually a disk partition, or file. The *device* operand is the special file corresponding to the device; for example, `/dev/dsk/c0d0p0`. The *number-of-sectors* operand is the number of blocks on the device. If omitted, `mkntfs` automatically figures the file system size.

**Options** Supported options are listed below. Most options have both single-letter and full-name forms. Multiple single-letter options that do not take an argument can be combined. For example, `-fv` is the equivalent of `-f -v`. A full-name option can be abbreviated to a unique prefix of its name.

Options are divided among basic, advanced, output, and help options, as listed below.

**Basic Options** `-C, --enable-compression`

Enable compression on the volume.

`-f, --fast` or `-q, --quick`

Perform quick (fast) format. This option skips both zeroing of the volume and bad sector checking.

`-L, --label string`

Set the volume label for the filesystem to *string*.

`-n, --no-action`

Causes `mkntfs` to not actually create a file system, but display what it would do if it were to create a file system. All formatting steps are carried out except the actual writing to the device.

**Advanced Options** `-c, --cluster-size bytes`

Specify the size of clusters in bytes. Valid cluster size values are powers of two, with at least 256, and at most 65536, bytes per cluster. If omitted, `mkntfs` uses 4096 bytes as the default cluster size.

Note that the default cluster size is set to be at least equal to the sector size, as a cluster cannot be smaller than a sector. Also, note that values greater than 4096 have the side effect that compression is disabled on the volume. This is due to limitations in the NTFS compression algorithm used by Windows.

`-F, --force`

Force `mkntfs` to run, even if the specified device is not a block special device, or appears to be mounted.

- H, --heads *num*  
Specify the number of heads. The maximum is 65535 (0xffff). If omitted, mkntfs attempts to determine the number of heads automatically. If that fails a default of 0 is used. Note that specifying *num* is required for Windows to be able to boot from the created volume.
- I, --no-indexing  
Disable content indexing on the volume. This option is only meaningful on Windows 2000 and later. Windows NT 4.0 and earlier ignore this, as they do not implement content indexing.
- p, --partition-start *sector*  
Specify the partition start sector. The maximum is 4294967295 ( $2^{32-1}$ ). If omitted, mkntfs attempts to determine *sector* automatically. If that fails, a default of 0 is used. Note that specifying *sector* is required for Windows to be able to boot from the created volume.
- S, --sectors-per-track *num*  
Specify the number of sectors per track. The maximum is 65535 (0xffff). If omitted, mkntfs attempts to determine the number of sectors-per-track automatically and if that fails a default of 0 is used. Note that sectors-per-track is required for Windows to be able to boot from the created volume.
- s, --sector-size *bytes*  
Specify the size of sectors in bytes. Valid sector size values are 256, 512, 1024, 2048, and 4096. If omitted, mkntfs attempts to determine the sector-size automatically. If that fails, a default of 512 bytes per sector is used.
- T, --zero-time  
Fake the time to be 00:00:00 UTC, Jan 1, 1970, instead of the current system time. This can be useful for debugging purposes.
- z, --mft-zone-multiplier *num*  
Set the master file table (MFT) zone multiplier, which determines the size of the MFT zone to use on the volume. The MFT zone is the area at the beginning of the volume reserved for the MFT, which stores the on-disk inodes (MFT records). It is noteworthy that small files are stored entirely within the inode; thus, if you expect to use the volume for storing large numbers of very small files, it is useful to set the zone multiplier to a higher value. Although the MFT zone is resized on the fly as required during operation of the NTFS driver, choosing an optimal value reduces fragmentation. Valid values are 1, 2, 3, and 4. The values have the following meaning:

| MFT zone multiplier | MFT zone size (% of volume size) |
|---------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1                   | 12.5% (default)                  |
| 2                   | 25.0%                            |
| 3                   | 37.5%                            |
| 4                   | 50.0%                            |

- Output Options
- - debug  
Includes the verbose output from the -v option, as well as additional output useful for debugging mkntfs.
  - q, - - quiet  
Verbose execution. Errors are written to stderr, no output to stdout occurs at all. Useful if mkntfs is run in a script.
  - v, - - verbose  
Verbose execution.

- Help Options
- h, - - help  
Show a list of options with a brief description of each one.
  - l, - - license  
Display the mkntfs licensing information and exit.
  - V, - - version  
Display the mkntfs version number and exit.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWntfsprogs   |
| Interface Stability | Uncommitted     |

**See Also** [ntfsprogs\(1M\)](#), [ntfsresize\(1M\)](#), [ntfsundelete\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

<http://wiki.linux-ntfs.org>

**Authors** mkntfs was written by Anton Altaparmakov, Richard Russon, Erik Sornes and Szabolcs Szakacsits.

**Name** mkpwdict – maintain password-strength checking database

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/mkpwdict [-s *dict1*,... ,*dictN*]  
[-d *destination-path*]

**Description** The mkpwdict command adds words to the dictionary-lookup database used by [pam\\_authtok\\_check\(5\)](#) and [passwd\(1\)](#).

Files containing words to be added to the database can be specified on the command-line using the -s flag. These source files should have a single word per line, much like /usr/share/lib/dict/words.

If -s is omitted, mkpwdict will use the value of DICTIIONLIST specified in /etc/default/passwd (see [passwd\(1\)](#)).

The database is created in the directory specified by the -d option. If this option is omitted, mkpwdict uses the value of DICTIIONBDBDIR specified in /etc/default/passwd (see [passwd\(1\)](#)). The default location is /var/passwd.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- s Specifies a comma-separated list of files containing words to be added to the dictionary-lookup database.
- d Specifies the target location of the dictionary-database.

**Files** /etc/default/passwd See [passwd\(1\)](#).  
/var/passwd default destination directory

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWcsu         |
| Interface Stability | Evolving        |

**See Also** [passwd\(1\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authtok\\_check\(5\)](#)



**Name** mmsadm – administration command for the Media Management System

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/mmsadm [-h | -?]

```

mmsadm discover [-H] [-t library|drive|vol] [-S ACSLS-host[:port]] -a
mmsadm create -t library|drive|mpool|dpool|app|voltype
 -o option=x [-o option2=y...] name
mmsadm delete -t library|drive|mpool|dpool|app|voltype
 [-f] name
mmsadm set -t library|drive|mpool|dpool|app|voltype
 -o option=x [-o option2=y...] name
mmsadm list [-vH] -t library|drive|mpool|dpool|app|voltype
 -o option=x [-o option2=y...] [-F filter [-F filter2...]] [name]
mmsadm passwd [-P file] name
mmsadm online -t library|drive name
mmsadm offline -t library|drive name
mmsadm add-volume -l library -o voltype=type -x vol1[,vol2,...] mpool
mmsadm remove-volume -x [-l library] [-x vol1[,vol2,...]] mpool
mmsadm label [-n] [-A application] [-l library]
 [-P file]volume[,volume,...]
mmsadm showreq [-H] [drivename]
mmsadm accept [-r "reason"] requestid
mmsadm reject [-r "reason"] requestid
mmsadm dbbackup directory
mmsadm dbrestore file
mmsadm mount [-n] [-N] [-d drive] [-D density] -A application -l library
 [-P passwordfile] [-u username] [-b blocksize] [-R]
 [-M mode[,mode...]] volume
mmsadm unmount [-A application] [-P file] [-f] volume|pseudodevice

```

**Description** The Media Management System (MMS) is a software interface that manages removable storage media such as tape libraries, tape drives, media pools, tape volumes, and disk resources that emulate tape drives and tape volumes. It is an implementation of the IEEE 1244 specification for removable media.

The MMS consists of an MM server and database that control various library managers and drive managers. Administrators use mmsadm and its subcommands to configure and maintain storage resources from a variety of vendors. The MMS management commands, such as

mmsadm, construct and issue the most frequently-used Media Management Protocol (MMP) commands, handling all events and acknowledgments. The MMP is defined in the IEEE 1244 specification.

The `mmsinit(1M)` command must be run to initialize MMS on a system before you can use the `mmsadm` command.

The `mmsadm` command is RBAC-compliant. (See [rbac\(5\)](#).) Required authorizations vary among individual subcommands and are listed in the descriptions of those subcommands.

**Sub-commands** The `mmsadm` supports the subcommands listed below. Each subcommand description includes a description of that subcommand's options and operands. A `mmsadm` command takes the form:

```
mmsadm subcommand [options]
```

discover  
Subcommand

The `discover` subcommand displays the library, drives, or volumes on an Automated Control System Library Server (ACSL) server, or the tape drives connected to the local system. Use this command to determine what resources are available and whether they have been configured for use with MMS.

`discover` requires the `solaris.smf.read.mms` authorization. The subcommand has the following syntax:

```
mmsadm discover [-H] [-t library|drive|vol]
 [-S ACSLS-host[:port]] -a
```

The subcommand options are described as follows.

-a

Displays all discovered resources, including those configured for MMS. By default, only unconfigured resources are displayed.

-H

Displays the resources in a manner parseable by scripts. The display does not include headers and it separates fields with a tab character.

-S ACSLS-host[:port]

Displays resources managed by the specified server and port. The default port number is 50004. If the `-S` option is not used, the command displays tape drives connected to the local system.

-t library|drive|vol

Displays only the specified type of resource:

-t library

Shows discovered libraries.

-t drive

Shows discovered drives.

`-t vol`  
Shows discovered volumes.

If this option is not used, library and drive resources are included in the display. The number of volumes can be large so their discovery must be requested explicitly.

create and set  
Subcommands The `create` subcommand configures the resource to be managed by MMS. The `set` subcommand modifies the attributes of a resource managed by MMS. These subcommands share a common set of options.

ACSLs-controlled libraries and disk archiving libraries are supported. Libraries must be configured before any drive pool and drives managed in that library can be configured, or any volumes managed by the library added to media pools. `voltype` must be configured before adding volumes to media pools.

The `create` and `set` subcommands require the `solaris.smf.modify.mms`, `solaris.smf.value.mms`, `solaris.mms.*`, and `solaris.smf.read.mms` authorizations, with the exception of changing tracing attributes. If changing the size of trace files or trace level, only `solaris.mms.device.log` and `solaris.smf.read.mms` authorizations are required.

These subcommands have the following syntax:

```
create -t library|drive|mpool|dpool|app|voltype
 -o option=x [-o option2=y...] name
```

```
set -t library|drive|mpool|dpool|app|voltype
 -o option=x [-o option2=y...] name
```

The subcommand options and operand are described as follows.

`-t type`  
Specifies the type of resource being created or modified. *type* can be one of:

|                      |                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>library</code> | Tape library                                                                                                                                                   |
| <code>drive</code>   | Tape or disk archiving drive                                                                                                                                   |
| <code>mpool</code>   | Media pool                                                                                                                                                     |
| <code>dpool</code>   | Drive pool                                                                                                                                                     |
| <code>app</code>     | MMS-aware application                                                                                                                                          |
| <code>voltype</code> | An MMS construct to map tape cartridge types (such as LTO3) to a user-defined type. Allows the user to specify a default cartridge size for this type of tape. |

`-o option=x [-o option2=y...]`  
Options are key/value pairs and are specific to the resource type.

Library Options:

*hwtype=type*

Specify one of the supported library types: L180, L500, L700, SL500, SL8500, or SL3000. This option is required for `create` operations.

For disk archiving libraries, specify `DISK`.

The following are options for real network attached libraries.

*acs=acs\_number*

Specifies the ACSLS ACS number for the library, as shown by the `discover` subcommand. Required for `create`.

*lsm=lsm\_number*

Specifies the ACSLS LSM number for the library, as shown by the `discover` subcommand. Required for `create`.

*serialno=serial\_num*

Specifies the serial number of the library as reported by the `discover` subcommand. Required for `create`.

*acsls=host[:port]*

Identifies the host and port number of the ACSLS server controlling the library. If not specified, the default port is `50004`. Required for `create`.

The following are options for disk archiving libraries.

*dkpath=path*

Defines the default path of the `DISK` library. The path specifies the parent directory of the library and its name must not be the last component of the path.

*dkaltpath=host1@directory1[,host2@directory2]*

Defines the path of a `DISK` library in a host which cannot use the default path to access the `DISK` library. The path specifies the parent directory of the library and its name must not be the last component of the path.

All libraries have the following options.

*msg-level=emergency|alert|critical|error|warning|notice|information|debug*

Specifies the level of detail in messages written to the log file. The default level is `error`.

*trace-level=emergency|alert|critical|error|warning|notice|information|debug*

Specifies the level of detail in messages written to the trace file. The default level is `error`.

*trace-file-size=size*

Specifies the maximum size of the trace file before it is rotated and restarted. Specify the size using a value and the character that identifies the unit:

- K for kilobytes
- M for megabytes

- G for gigabytes

The default size is 10 megabytes. To set the maximum size of the trace file to 15 megabytes (for example), enter:

```
trace-file-size=15M
```

Drive Options:

*hwtype=type*

Specifies the drive type as reported from the `discover` subcommand. Required for `create`.

*serialno=serial*

Specifies the serial number of the drive as reported from the `discover` subcommand. Required for `create`.

*library=library\_name*

Defines the MMS identifier of the library controlling this drive as reported from the `list` subcommand. Required for `create`.

*connection=host,[host]*

Identifies the host name or IP address to which the drive is physically connected. If the drive is multiported, enter each host separated by a comma. Required for `create`.

*apps=app1[,app2,...]*

Specifies which applications registered with MMS can use this drive. To specify that more than one application can use this drive, enter each application name, separated by commas.

*msg-level=emergency|alert|critical|error|warning|notice|information|debug*

Specifies the level of detail in messages written to the log file. The default level is `error`.

*trace-level=emergency|alert|critical|error|warning|notice|information|debug*

Specifies the level of detail in messages written to the trace file. The default level is `error`.

*trace-file-size=size*

Specifies the maximum size of the trace file before it is rotated and restarted. Specify the size using a value and the character that identifies the unit:

- K for kilobytes
- M for megabytes
- G for gigabytes

The default size is 10 megabytes. To set the maximum size of the trace file to 15 megabytes (for example), enter:

```
trace-file-size=15M
```

`unload-time=num_minutes`

Specifies the maximum time an unused volume is left in a drive before it is ejected. After an application has finished using a volume, it is often left in the drive. This is to speed up requests if the same volume is needed again in a short amount of time. This option ensures the drive is emptied and available to load other volumes when requested. The default number of minutes is 60.

`reserve=yes|no`

Defines whether access to a drive is enforced. Use `yes` to use SCSI reserve and release commands to enforce access to the drive. Use `no` to not use SCSI reservations. Use `no` only if the drive behaves improperly when access is enforced, or if the drive does not support the SCSI reservation commands. The default value is `yes`.

### Drive Pool Options

Specifies which applications registered with MMS can use this drive pool. To specify that more than one application can use this pool, enter each application name, separated by commas.

### Media Pool Options

`apps=app1[,app2,...]`

Specifies which applications registered with MMS can use this media pool. To specify that more than one application can use this pool, enter each application name, separated by commas.

### Application Options

`retain=num_days`

Specifies the number of days that the volume's data is preserved after the expiration date defined by the application for a volume. The default value is 0.

`validate-expiration=yes|no`

Specifies whether overwriting unexpired files is allowed. Use `no` to allow overwriting of unexpired volume files. Use `yes` to prevent overwriting unexpired volume files. The default value is `no`.

`validate-valid=yes|no`

Specifies whether the volume identifier is verified. Use `yes` to verify that the volume ID obtained from the `mmsadm mount` command matches the volume identifier on the volume label. Use `no` to specify that this verification is not done. The default value is `yes`.

`validate-filename=yes|no`

Specifies whether the file name is verified. Use `yes` to verify that the file name obtained from the `mmsadm mount` command matches the file name on the HDR1 header label of the file. Use `no` to specify that this verification is not done. The default value is `no`.

`overwrite-existing=yes|no|ask`

This option is only for unlabeled volumes that are not blank. It specifies whether the data on an unlabeled volume can be overwritten. The default is `yes` to indicate data can be overwritten. Use `no` to reject any write requests. Use `ask` to prompt an operator for his wish when a write request is received.

### System Options

`log-level=emergency|alert|critical|error|warning|notice|information|debug`

Specifies the level of detail in messages written to the log file. The default level is `error`.

`num-restarts=num`

Specifies the number of attempts to start a failed daemon before the drive or library associated with the daemon is disabled and requires the `mmsadm online` command to be run after the problem with the system or device is resolved. Use a value of `-1` for unlimited restart attempts. The default value is `3`.

`attended=yes|no`

Specify whether MMS makes operator requests when an operation cannot be automatically satisfied. An example of such a case would be if a mount request was made for a tape volume that had been physically removed from a library. The default action, `yes`, indicates that an operator is available to respond. Use `no` to specify that no operator is available. If no operator is available, all operator requests are rejected.

`num-sockets=num`

Specifies the number of open file descriptors the MM daemon can have at one time. On a resource-constrained system, set this value to a number between `30` and `65536`. It is not recommended to set the value to less than `256`. The default value is `-1`, meaning an unlimited number of file descriptors.

`disk-timeout=seconds`

Specifies the time a disk archiving drive manager waits for the file system containing a disk archiving volume to become available. It is strongly recommended to set the time to a minimum of `120` seconds (two minutes). Use a value of `0` to specify no expiration time.

### dkvol Options

`dirname=path`

Required by (and only valid for) `create`. Specifies the directory in which the new disk archiving volume will be created.

`size=num`

Valid only for `create`. Specifies the size, in megabytes, of the disk archiving volume.

`readonly=true|false`

Sets the volume to read-only or to allow write operations. The default is `false`, meaning that the disk archiving volume is writeable.

`mpool=pool_name`

Media pool to which this disk archiving volume will be added after it is created. This option is required for `create`.

**dkdrive Options**

`apps=app1[,app2,...]`

Specifies which applications registered with MMS can use this drive. To specify that more than one application can use this drive, enter each application name, separated by commas.

`msg-level=emergency|alert|critical|error|warning|notice|information|debug`

Specifies the level of detail in messages written to the log file. The default level is `error`.

`trace-level=emergency|alert|critical|error|warning|notice|information|debug`

Specifies the level of detail in messages written to the trace file. The default level is `error`.

`trace-file-size=size`

Specifies the maximum size of the trace file before it is rotated and restarted. Specify the size using a value and the character that identifies the unit:

- K for kilobytes
- M for megabytes
- G for gigabytes

The default size is 10 megabytes. To set the maximum size of the trace file to 15 megabytes (for example), enter:

```
trace-file-size=15M
```

`unload-time=num_minutes`

Specifies the maximum time an unused volume is left in a drive before it is ejected. After an application has finished using a volume, it is often left in the drive. This is to speed up requests if the same volume is needed again in a short amount of time. This option ensures the drive is emptied and available to load other volumes when requested. The default number of minutes is 60.

**voltype Options**

`mediatype=type`

One of the supported media types: 9940, 9940\_worm, 9840, 9840\_worm, 9840C\_worm, 9840D\_worm, LT01, LT02, LT03, LT03\_worm, LT04, LT04\_worm, SDLT2, and DISK. This option is required for `create`.

`size=num`

The size, in megabytes, of the this volume type. This option is required for `create`.

The `create` and `set` subcommands have the following operand.



*name*

Specifies the name of the resource being added or modified. With the exception of applications, names are simple text strings, and they must be unique for their resource type. Recommended naming conventions are:

For a library: *LIB\_type\_serial*

Example: LIB\_L180\_MPC02209500

For a drive: *DRV\_type\_serial*

Example: DRV\_T9940B\_479000010675

For a disk archive volume: *VOL\_xxxxxx*

Application names must reflect the name the application itself is going to use when communicating with MMS. Check the application documentation to find this value.

**delete Subcommand** The delete subcommand deletes the entry for the specified resource from the MMS configuration. Use caution when removing media pools, as this might result in data loss. If the resource to be deleted is determined to be in use, the operation will be rejected unless the `-f` option is specified.

Deleting a library involves deleting all associated drives, and removing volumes managed by this library from media pools. Deleting a library is prohibited if any of its associated drives is actively in use, or any of its volumes have been used by an application.

Deleting a drive is prohibited if it is actively in use.

Deleting a drive pool is prohibited if any of its drives is being used by an application.

Deleting a media pool is prohibited if any of its volumes is being used by an application.

Deleting an application will cause all volumes that have been used by that application to be recycled and made available for reuse. Ensure that all required data has been copied from these volumes before deleting the application.

Deleting a `vol` type is prohibited if any volumes are assigned that type. The `-f` option cannot be used to force this operation.

The delete subcommand requires the `solaris.smf.value.mms` and `solaris.mms.*` authorizations.

This subcommand has the following syntax:

```
mmsadm delete -t library|drive|mpool|dpool|app|voltype
[-f] name
```

The subcommand has the following options:

-f  
Forces the removal of the specified resource, subject to the restrictions outlined above.

-t *library|drive|mpool|dpool|app|voltype*  
Specifies the type of resource being deleted.

The subcommand has the following operand:

*name*  
Identifies the resource as reported by the `list` subcommand.

`list` Subcommand The `list` subcommand displays all of the storage resources or messages that meet the criteria specified in the options, filter, and name parameters. This subcommand is available to any user.

This subcommand has the following syntax:

```
mmsadm list [-vH] -t library|drive|mpool|dpool|app|voltype
 -o option[, -o option2, ...] [-F filter [-F filter2...]] [name]
```

The `list` subcommand has all of the options that are supported by the `create` and `set` subcommands. See the section on these subcommands for descriptions of those options. In addition to these options, `list` has the options and operand listed below.

-v  
Verbose.

-H  
Displays the information in a manner parseable by scripts. The display does not include headers and it separates fields with a tab character.

-t *type*  
One of:

- app
- drive
- library
- mpool
- dpool
- voltype

-o *option[, -o option2,...]*  
Specifies which properties of a resource are displayed. For example, to list only drive names and their respective states, enter:

```
% mmsadm list -t drive -o name,state
```

-F *filter [-F filter2...]*  
Restricts the listed items to those with specified filter. Filter names are the same as option names, and results are restricted to those resources that match the option value. For example, to show all drives of type LT04, enter:

```
mmsadm list -t drive -F hwtype=LT04
```

Each resource type has its own options. All options are listed below. Most options are in common with the `create` subcommand; see the section on that subcommand for descriptions of these common options. Those options that are supported only by the `list` subcommand have their descriptions below.

### Library Options

Options in common with `set`:

- `acs`
- `acsls`
- `hwtype`
- `lsm`
- `msg-level`
- `serialno`
- `trace-file-size`
- `trace-level`

The following library options are unique to `list`.

`create-time`

The date and time when the library was added to the MMS.

`state`

The current state of the library, one of `ready`, `offline`, or `broken`.

### Drive Options

Options in common with `set`:

- `apps`
- `connection`
- `hwtype`
- `library`
- `msg-level`
- `reserve`
- `serialno`
- `trace-file-size`
- `trace-level`
- `unload-time`

The following drive options are unique to `list`.

`create-time`

The date and time when the drive was added to the MMS.

`device-name`

The Unix device name of the drive, if available.

**last-mount**

The date and time when the drive was last mounted.

**state**

The current state of the drive, one of ready, offline, or broken.

**total-mount-time**

The total amount of time the drive has had tapes mounted.

**volume**

The volume name of the volume loaded in the drive, if any.

**Media Pool Options**

There is one option in common with `create`, `apps`.

The following media pool options are unique to `list`.

**create-time**

The date and time the media pool was created.

**free**

The total amount of free space remaining on volumes in the media pool.

**size**

The total capacity of the media pool.

**used**

The total amount of data on volumes in the media pool.

**Application Options**

All of the application options are in common with `create`. These options are as follows:

- `overwrite-existing`
- `retain`
- `validate-expiration`
- `validate-filename`
- `validate-volid`

**System Options**

Options in common with `set`:

- `acsls-install-dir`
- `attended`
- `disk-timeout`
- `host`
- `log-file`
- `log-level`
- `port`

- num-restarts
- num-sockets

There is one system option unique to list.

active-sessions

Brief listing of active sessions.

Volume Options

All of the volume options are unique to list.

apps

Lists the application that has stored data on this volume.

create-time

Date and time this volume was added to the MMS.

free

Amount of free space on the volume.

last-mounted

Date and time this volume was last mounted.

library

Lists the library controlling this volume.

mpool

Media pool, of which this volume is a member.

num-mounts

Number of times this volume has been mounted.

size

Size of the volume.

total-mount-time

Total amount of time this volume has been mounted.

used

Amount of data written to the volume.

voltype

Lists the volume type as was specified when the volume was added to a media pool.

Volume Type Options

Both of the volume type options are unique to list.

mtype

MMS media type associated with this voltype.

size

Default size, in megabytes, for volumes of this type.

The `passwd` Subcommand The `passwd` subcommand changes the password for the MMS administrator, MMS Database administrator, or for MMS applications. If the `-P` option is not specified, the user will be prompted to enter the password.

The `passwd` subcommand has the following syntax.

```
mmsadm passwd [-P passwdfile] name
```

This subcommand requires the `solaris.smf.value.mms` and `solaris.mms.*` authorizations.

The `passwd` subcommand has the following option.

`-P passwdfile`

Path to a temporary file containing the password.

The `passwd` subcommand has the following operand.

*name*

Use `admin` to change the MMS administrative password. Use `dbadmin` to change the MMS database administrative password. Use the application name to change the password for any other application.

The `online` and `offline` Subcommands The `online` and `offline` subcommands control whether the specified library or drive is available to clients. If a library is set to `offline`, all drives and volumes managed by that library are unavailable. If a drive is set to `offline`, no volume can be mounted or accessed on that drive.

The syntax for the `online` and `offline` subcommands is as follows:

```
mmsadm online -t library | drive name
```

```
mmsadm offline -t library | drive name
```

The `online` and `offline` subcommands require the `solaris.smf.read.mms` and `solaris.mms.device.state.*` authorizations.

The `online` and `offline` subcommands have the following option.

`-t library | drive`

Specifies the type of resource to make unavailable or to restore.

`drive`

Tape or disk archiving drive.

`library`

Tape library.

The `online` and `offline` subcommands have the following operand.

*name*

Name of the library or drive, as reported by the `list` subcommand

The `label`  
Subcommand

The `label` subcommand labels specified volumes. The subcommand has the following syntax:

```
mmsadm label [-n] -l library -A application [-P file]
 volume[, volume, ...]
```

The `label` subcommand requires the `solaris.smf.read.mms` and `solaris.mms.media.*` authorizations.

The `label` subcommand has the following options.

`-l library`

Name of the library holding the volume.

`-n`

Do not mount the volume. If this is not specified, the specified volume will be mounted and header labels will be written.

`-A application`

Name of the application to which this volume will be assigned after labeling.

`-P file`

Path to a file containing the application password. If a file name is not provided, the user is prompted for the password.

The `label` subcommand has the following operand.

*volume*[,*volume*,...]

Volume(s) to be labeled.

The `add-volume`  
Subcommand

The `add-volume` subcommand adds new volumes to the specified media pool. The subcommand has the following syntax:

```
mmsadm add-volume -l library_name -o voltype=type
 -x vol1[, vol2, ...] mpool
```

The `add-volume` subcommand requires the `solaris.smf.read.mms` and `solaris.mms.media.*` authorizations.

The `add-volume` subcommand has the following options.

`-l library_name`

Name of the library from which volumes are selected.

`-o voltype=type`

Volumes to be added will be assigned the `voltype` specified here. To add volumes of different types to the same media pool, use the `mmsadm add-volume` command multiple times, specifying a different `voltype` each time.

*-x vol1[,vol2,...]*

A comma-separated list of unused volumes in the specified library.

The `add-volume` subcommand has the following operand.

*mpool*

Name of the media pool as reported by the `list` subcommand.

The `remove-volume`  
Subcommand

The `remove-volume` subcommand removes volumes from the specified media pools. If a volume is being used by an application, the force option, `-f`, is required. If the option is not included in the command, the request is rejected. This subcommand prompts for confirmation unless `-f` is provided. The subcommand has the following syntax:

```
mmsadm remove-volume -f -x [-l library] vol1[,vol2,...] mpool
```

The `remove-volume` subcommand requires the `solaris.smf.read.mms` and `solaris.mms.media.*` authorizations.

The `remove-volume` subcommand has the following options.

`-f`

Forces the removal of the specified volume(s), even if they are in use by an application.

`-l library_name`

Name of the library from which volumes are removed.

*-x vol1[,vol2,...]*

A comma-separated list of volumes.

The `remove-volume` subcommand has the following operand.

*mpool*

Name of the media pool as reported by the `list` subcommand.

The `showreq`  
Subcommand

The `showreq` subcommand lists any pending operator requests, each with a request identifier. The subcommand has the following syntax:

```
mmsadm showreq [-H] [drivename]
```

The `showreq` subcommand does not require any authorizations.

The `showreq` subcommand has the following option.

`-H`

Displays the requests in a manner parseable by scripts. The display does not include headers; fields are separated with a tab character.

The `showreq` subcommand has the following operand.

*drivename*

Displays the requests only for the specified drive.



- 
- The `accept` Subcommand
- The `accept` subcommand accepts the operator request so that the MMS can proceed with the operation. The subcommand has the following syntax.
- ```
mmsadm accept [-r "response text"] requestid
```
- The `accept` subcommand requires the `solaris.mms.request.*` and `solaris.smf.read.mms` authorizations.
- The `accept` subcommand has the following option.
- r “*response text*”
Displays the text that explains the reason for the action.
- The `accept` subcommand has the following operand.
- requestid*
The identifier of the operator request, as displayed by the `mmsadm showreq` command.
- The `reject` Subcommand
- The `reject` subcommand rejects the operator request. The subcommand has the following syntax.
- ```
mmsadm reject [-r "response text"] requestid
```
- The `reject` subcommand requires the `solaris.mms.request.*` and `solaris.smf.read.mms` authorizations.
- The `reject` subcommand has the following option.
- r “*response text*”  
Displays the text that explains the reason for the action.
- The `reject` subcommand has the following operand.
- requestid*  
The identifier of the operator request, as displayed by the `mmsadm showreq` command.
- The `dbbackup` Subcommand
- The `dbbackup` subcommand creates a backup file containing the contents of the MMS database. This file can be used to restore the MMS database in the case of accidental removal, corruption, or other destructive event. It is strongly suggested this backup file be created on a regular basis, and backed up as part of the system backups. The subcommand has the following syntax.
- ```
mmsadm dbbackup directory
```
- The `dbbackup` subcommand requires the `solaris.smf.manage.mms`, `solaris.smf.value.mms`, and `solaris.mms.*` authorizations.
- The `dbbackup` subcommand has the following operand.
- directory*
Specifies the location where the database backup files will be stored.

The `dbrestore` Subcommand The `dbrestore` subcommand restores the MMS database from the specified file. The database is restored to the state it was in at the time the file was created by the `mmsadm dbbackup` command. The subcommand has the following syntax

```
mmsadm dbrestore filename
```

The `dbrestore` subcommand requires the `solaris.smf.manage.mms` and `solaris.smf.value.mms` authorizations.

The `dbrestore` subcommand has the following operand.

filename

Specifies the complete pathname to the file containing the backup of the MMS database.

The `mount` Subcommand The `mount` subcommand mounts a specified volume. The subcommand has the following syntax.

```
mmsadm mount [-n] [-N] [-d drive] [-D density]
-A application -l library [-P file] [-u username]
-b blocksize [-R] [-M mode[,mode...] volume
```

The `mount` subcommand requires the `solaris.mms.io.[read|write|*]` authorization.

The `mount` subcommand has the following options.

-A *application*

Application name to be used when authenticating with the MM server. The name is the identifier used by the application itself, according to its API documentation.

-b *blocksize*

Specifies the largest block that the application can write to the tape drive for both variable and fixed blocks. Default is 262144. The maximum size depends on the drive type:

9940 and 9840

1 - 262144. If you specify `fixed` for the `-M` option (described below), must be an even number.

LTO (all models)

1 - 16777215. If you specify `fixed` for the `-M` option (described below).

The choice of variable or fixed block is specified in the argument to the `-M` (mode) option. If you specify `fixed`, then `-b` is the block size because you can only read and write blocks in the block size you specified.

-d *drive*

Drive on which to mount a volume. If this option is not specified, the MM server selects a drive based on availability and capability.

-D *density*

Specifies the output density. Can be one of:

- `high`

- medium
 - low
 - compressed
 - den_9840
 - den_T9840C
 - den_T9940A
 - den_T9940B
- l *library_name*
Library containing the volume to be mounted.
- M *mode[,mode...]*
The *mode* argument can be one or more of *creat*, *old*, *st_nobsd*, *st_tm*, *raw*, *mms*, *compression*, *nocompression*, *variable*, *block*.
- n
Specifies *norewind*.
- N
Specifies *nowait*.
- P *file*
Path to a file containing the application password. If a file name is not provided, the user is prompted for the password.
- R
Specifies a read-only mount. The default is read/write.
- u *username*
Specifies the user who will own the pseudodevice created by mount.

The mount subcommand has the following operand.

volume
Volume to be mounted.

The unmount Subcommand The unmount subcommand unmounts the specified volume or MMS pseudodevice. The subcommand has the following syntax.

```
mmsadm unmount [-f] [-l library_name] [-A application]
[-P file] volume|pseudodevice
```

The unmount subcommand requires the `solaris.mms.io.[read|write|*]` authorization.

The unmount subcommand has the following options.

- A *application*
Application name to be used when authenticating with the MM server.
- f
Forces an unmount operation of this volume even if it is in use by another user.

-l *library_name*
Library containing the mounted volume. Required only if using the volume name operand.

-P *file*
Path to a temporary file containing the application password.

The unmount subcommand has one of the following operands.

pseudodevice
Device path as returned from the mmsadm mount command. If this form of unmount is used, the library need not be specified.

volume
Volume to be unmounted.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Displaying Available Libraries

To display all libraries available to be managed by the MMS, enter:

```
# mmsadm discover -t library -S my-acsls-server
```

EXAMPLE 2 Creating a Library

To create a library in the MMS, enter:

```
# mmsadm create -t library -o acsls=my-acsls-server -o acs=0 \  
-o lsm=1 -o hwtype=L180 -o serialno=7493476 LIB_L180_7493476
```

EXAMPLE 3 Creating a Drive

To create a drive in the MMS, enter:

```
# mmsadm create -t drive -o library=LIB_L180_7493476 \  
-o hwtype=LT02 -o serialno=6453805873 \  
-o connection=myhost DRV_LT02_6453805873
```

EXAMPLE 4 Making Library Available

To make a library available for use, enter:

```
# mmsadm online LIB_L180_7493476
```

EXAMPLE 5 Registering an Application

To register an application, enter:

```
# mmsadm create -t app -P /var/tmp/app_passwd MyBackupApp
```

EXAMPLE 6 Allowing an Application to Use a Drive

To allow the MyBackupApp application to use a drive, enter:

```
# mmsadm set -t drive -o apps=MyBackupApp DRV_LT02_6453805873
```

EXAMPLE 7 Listing Volumes in a Library

To show volumes in library L700_99987004 of type LT03, enter:

```
# mmsadm list -t vol -o library=L700_99987004 -F mtype=LT03
```

EXAMPLE 8 Listing Unconfigured Volumes

To show volumes not yet configured for the MMS, enter:

```
# mmsadm discover -t vol -S my_acsls_server
```

EXAMPLE 9 Configure an MMS for Three Applications

The following sequence of commands illustrates the process of configuring a Media Management System for three applications, engineering, finance, and backup.

Initialize the MM server and set the administrator password to mmsadm2008 in the password file, mmsadm_passwd:

```
# mmsinit -P ~/mmsadm_passwd
```

Create an application for the engineering application:

```
# mmsadm create -t app -P ~/eng_passwd eng
```

Create an application for the finance application:

```
# mmsadm create -t app -P ~/finance_passwd finance
```

Create an application for the backup application:

```
# mmsadm create -t app -P ~/backup_passwd backup
```

Create an L700 library named library1:

```
# mmsadm create -t library -o acsls=mms-280-1 -o hwtype=L700 \
-o acs=0 -o lsm=0 -o serialno=MPC02201638 library1
```

Create a drive pool named org_dpool, to be shared between the engineering and finance applications:

```
# mmsadm create -t dpool -o apps=eng,finance org_dpool
```

Create a drive pool named shared_dpool, to be shared by the engineering, finance, and backup applications:

EXAMPLE 9 Configure an MMS for Three Applications *(Continued)*

```
# mmsadm create -t dpool -o apps=eng,finance,backup shared_dpool
```

Create an exclusive drive pool for the backup application named `bk_dpool`:

```
# mmsadm create -t dpool -o apps=backup bk_dpool
```

Add a 9940 drive named `drive1` shared by the engineering and finance applications:

```
# mmsadm create -t drive -o hwtype=9940 -o serialno=479000002009 \  
-o library=library1 -o dpool=org_dpool drive1
```

Add a 9940 drive named `drive2` shared by the engineering, finance, and backup applications:

```
# mmsadm create -t drive -o hwtype=9940 -o serialno=479000001954 \  
-o library=library1 -o dpool=shared_dpool drive2
```

Add an exclusive 9940 drive named `drive3` for the backup application:

```
# mmsadm create -t drive -o hwtype=9940 -o serialno=479000001944 \  
-o library=library1 -o dpool=bk_dpool drive3
```

Create media pool for the engineering and finance applications named `org_mpool`:

```
# mmsadm create -t mpool -o apps=eng,finance org_mpool
```

Create an exclusive media pool for the backup application named `bk_mpool`:

```
# mmsadm create -t mpool -o apps=backup bk_mpool
```

Add three volumes to the engineering and finance media pool:

```
# mmsadm add-volume -l library1 -o voltype=9940 \  
-x 000220,000221,000222 org_mpool
```

Add two volumes to the backup media pool:

```
# mmsadm add-volume -l library1 -o voltype=9940 \  
-x 000230,000231 bk_mpool
```

Write a volume label on the volume. The volume becomes owned by the engineering application. The finance or backup applications are, as a result, not able to use the volume:

```
# mmsadm label -P ~/eng_passwd -l library1 -A eng 000220
```

Verify that the engineering application owns the volume:

```
# mmsadm label -P ~/finance_passwd -l library1 -A finance 000220
```

Write a volume label for the finance application:

```
# mmsadm label -P ~/finance_passwd -l library1 -A finance 000221
```

Write a volume label for the backup application:

EXAMPLE 9 Configure an MMS for Three Applications *(Continued)*

```
# mmsadm label -P ~/backup_passwd -l library1 -A backup 000230
```

Mount media for the engineering, finance and backup applications. The handle returned by the mount command will be used as a normal /dev/rmt entry:

```
# mmsadm mount -P ~/eng_passwd -l library1 -A eng 000220
# mmsadm mount -P ~/finance_passwd -l library1 -A finance 000221
# mmsadm mount -P ~/backup_passwd -l library1 -A backup 000230
```

Unmount the media and unload the drives:

```
# mmsadm unmount -P ~/eng_passwd -U -l library1 -A eng 000220
# mmsadm unmount -P ~/finance_passwd -U -l library1 -A finance 000221
# mmsadm unmount -P ~/backup_passwd -U -l library1 -A backup 000230
```

EXAMPLE 10 Configure an MMS for Disk Archiving

The following sequence of commands configures a Media Management System for disk archiving.

Create a test application:

```
# mmsadm create -t app -P ~/test_passwd test
```

Create a disk archiving library named dklib1:

```
# mmsadm create -t library -o hwtype=DISK -o dkpath=/dskpool dklib1
```

Create a disk archiving media pool named dkcart1:

```
# mmsadm create -t mpool -o apps=test dkcart1
```

Create three 100 GB volumes for disk archiving and place the volumes in the media pool:

```
# mmsadm add-volume -l dklib1 -o voltype=DISK -x 000000,000001,000002 \
-o size=100g dkcart1
```

Create a disk archiving drive pool named dkdrives:

```
# mmsadm create -t dpool -o apps=test dkdrives
```

Create a disk archiving drive and place it in the drive pool:

```
# mmsadm create -t drive -o hwtype=DISK -o library=dklib1 \
-o dpool=dkdrives dkdrive1
```

Create volume labels. The volume will be labeled when it is mounted:

```
# mmsadm label -P ~/test_passwd -n -l dklib1 -A test 000000
# mmsadm label -P ~/test_passwd -n -l dklib1 -A test 000001
# mmsadm label -P ~/test_passwd -n -l dklib1 -A test 000002
```

EXAMPLE 10 Configure an MMS for Disk Archiving (Continued)

Mount the volume 000000. Use the returned tape handle in a subsequent tar command:

```
# mmsadm mount -P ~/test_passwd -n -l dklib1 -A test 000000
```

Show the file sizes of the disk archiving volume before creating tar archive:

```
% ls -la /dskpool/dklib1/000000
```

Create a disk archiving tar archive:

```
# tar -cvf <mms_handle> /var > /tmp/out$$ 2>&1
```

Show the file sizes of the disk archiving volume after creating the tar archive:

```
% ls -la /dskpool/dklib1/000000
```

Unmount and unload the volume from the drive:

```
# mmsadm unmount -P ~/test_passwd -U -l dklib1 -A test 000000
```

Exit Status 0

Command succeeded.

>0

An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWmmsu
Interface Stability	Committed

See Also [mmsclient\(1M\)](#), [mmsexplorer\(1M\)](#), [mmsinit\(1M\)](#), [mount\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [mms\(5\)](#), [rbac\(5\)](#)

Name mmsclient – send script commands to Media Management server

Synopsis /usr/bin/mmsclient [-f *filename*] [-A *application-name*] [-c *clientname*]
 [-i *instancename*] [-n *network_config_file*] [-P *password*]
 [-p *portnumber*] [-s *hostname:port*] [-t *tag*]
 /usr/bin/mmsclient -h

Description The `mmsclient` command creates a session with a Media Management (MM) server, enabling you to send Media Management Protocol (MMP) commands to the server and receive responses from that server. When used with the `-f` option (see below), `mmsclient` runs a script file that performs MMP operations. See `mmsclient_script(4)` for a description of the script file.

The MMP and the commands in the script file are based, in part, on IEEE 1244, the Media Management System (MMS) standards.

To run `mmsclient`, you must become superuser, or assume the Primary Administrator role.

Options The following options are supported:

- A *application-name*
 Specifies the MMS application name to use for the current session. The default application name is MMS.
- c *client-name*
 Specifies the MMS client from which commands are sent to the MMS server. The default is `localhost`. Note that this is not the host name for the MMS, which you specify with the `-s` option (see below).
- f *filename*
 Specifies the name of the file containing the MMP commands. See `mmsclient_script(4)` for a description of the script file.
- h
 Display usage information.
- i *instance-name*
 Specifies the MMS application instance to use for this session. If administrative tasks such as creating or deleting objects are planned for the session, specify the instance as `Admin`.
- n *network_config_file*
 Defines the configuration for the application client that runs the script, including the default values. To run the script of MMP commands, the application client can be configured explicitly, can use the default values, or can be modified using the values in this XML file. See `EXAMPLES`.
- P *password-file*
 Specifies the full path to a file containing the password for the application specified with the `-A` option. If the command does not contain the `-P` option, you are prompted for the password. There is no default.

- p *portnumber*
Specify port number of MMS server.
- s *hostname[:port]*
Specifies the MMS server and, optionally, the port number, to which you send MMP commands. If you do not specify *port*, the port number defaults to 7151.
- t *tag*
Specify a tag for identifying an MMS session. You can match against *tag* to query information related to a session. The default tag is `mmsclient -pid=pid`, where *pid* is the PID of the MMS client.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Example of a Network Configuration File

The following example configuration file, `net_cfg.xml`, specifies the conditions under which the MMP commands are performed:

```
<!-- Client Configuration -->
<mms_cfg>
  <!-- Network Configuration -->
  <mms_network_cfg
    host = "localhost"
    port = "7151"
    name = "MMS"
    instance = "admin"
    language = "MMP"
    version = "1.0"
    password = "summer05"
    <!-- mm_password = "MMS Media Manager" -->
    ssl_enabled = "false"
    ssl_cert_file = "/var/mms/ssl/pub/mms.pem"
    ssl_pass_file = "/var/mms/ssl/pub/mms_pass"
    <!-- ssl_crl_file = "/var/mms/ssl/pub/mms_crl.pem" -->
  />
</mms_cfg>
```

EXAMPLE 2 Running a Script with Default Connections

The following command runs a script named `test_beginend` with the default connections:

```
# mmsclient -f test_beginend
```

EXAMPLE 3 Specifying a Client by Host Name and Port Number

The following command runs a script named `test_beginend` that connects to an MMS server on a host named `x4200` and port number 1492 as the HSM admin:

```
# mmsclient -f test_beginend -A HSM -i admin -t HSM_test_session \  
-s x4200:1492
```

EXAMPLE 4 Using a Network Configuration File and Specifying an Interactive Session

The following command connects to the MMS server defined in the `net_cfg.xml` file and runs an interactive session:

```
# mmsclient -n net_cfg.xml
```

Exit Status

0
Success.

!=0
An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWmmsu
Interface Stability	Volatile

See Also [mmsadm\(1M\)](#), [mmsexplorer\(1M\)](#), [mmsinit\(1M\)](#), [mmsclient_script\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

IEEE 1244, *IEEE Storage Systems Standards*, a set of MMS standards

Name mmsexplorer – generate diagnostic report for Media Management System

Synopsis mmsexplorer -u [*report_name*] [*num_lines*]

Description The mmsexplorer command creates a diagnostic report of the activities of the Media Management System (MMS) server configuration and collects log information. It constructs the diagnostic report from the most recent entries in the MMS log file, MMS database, and MMS trace file.

The MMS is a software interface, consisting of library managers and drive managers, that manages storage resources such as tape libraries, tape drives, media pools, tape volumes, and the disk resources that emulate tape drives and tape volumes.

By default, mmsexplorer generates a compressed report. Use the -u option to generate an uncompressed file.

To run mmsexplorer, you must become superuser, or assume the Primary Administrator role.

Options The following options are supported:

-u

Generates the diagnostic report file in an uncompressed format.

report_name

Specifies the name of the diagnostic report file. The default name and location is:

/tmp/MMSreport.<*hostname.YYYYMMDD.HHMMZ*>.tar.gz

num_lines

Specifies the number of lines to capture from each file that contributes to the diagnostic report. The default is 1000 lines.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Creating Diagnostic Report Using Default Values

The following command creates a diagnostic report using all default values. The MMS server is running on a host named x400. This name is reflected in the name of the diagnostic file.

```
# mmsexplorer
```

```
Report name:    /tmp/MMSreport.x4200.20080530.1247CDT.tar.gz
Lines per file: 1000
Output format:  tar.gz (default) Use -u for unarchived/uncompressed.
```

```
Please wait.....
Please wait.....
Please wait.....
Please wait.....
Please wait.....
Please wait..
```

EXAMPLE 1 Creating Diagnostic Report Using Default Values *(Continued)*

The following files should now be ftp'ed to your support provider as ftp type binary.

```
/tmp/MMSreport.x4200.20080530.1247CDT.tar.gz
```

EXAMPLE 2 Creating an Uncompressed Diagnostic Report

The following command creates an uncompressed diagnostic report. As in the previous example, the MMS server is running on a host named x400.

```
# mmsexplorer
```

```
Report name:      /tmp/MMSreport.x4200.20080530.1252CDT
Lines per file:  1000
Output format:   unarchived/uncompressed
```

```
Please wait.....
Please wait.....
Please wait.....
Please wait.....
Please wait.....
Please wait.....
Please wait..
```

The following files should now be ftp'ed to your support provider as ftp type binary.

```
/tmp/MMSreport.x4200.20080530.1252CDT
/tmp/MMSreport.x4200.20080530.1252CDT.database.gz
/tmp/MMSreport.x4200.20080530.1252CDT.trace.tar.gz
```

Exit Status 0

Success.

!=0

An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWsmms
Interface Stability	Volatile

See Also [mmsadm\(1M\)](#), [mmsclient\(1M\)](#), [mmsclient\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes The diagnostic report generated by `mmexplorer` can be sent to your Sun authorized service provider or to Sun's technical support, as specified in your maintenance contract.

Name mmsinit – initialize MMS services

Synopsis /usr/bin/mmsinit -t *server* [-o *optionname=value* [-o *optionname2=value*]...] [-P *passwordfile*]

Description The `mmsinit` command initializes the Media Management System (MMS) environment and enables MMS services. An MMS server runs the Media Management (MM) daemon, which controls access to MMS-managed storage resources, and hosts the MMS database. Run this command once to start MMS services with the specified attributes. To change the attributes after this command has been invoked, use the `mmsadm(1M)` command.

The `mmsinit` command requires the `-t server` argument, to specify the server on which MMS services will run.

To run `mmsinit`, you must become superuser, or assume the Primary Administrator role.

Options The following options are supported:

`-o optionname=value...`

Specify one or more of the options and values listed below.

`log-level=emergency|alert|critical|error|warning|notice|information|debug`

Sets the severity level of messages to be included in the log file. Default level is `error`, logging all error messages.

`num-restarts=num`

Specifies the number of attempts to start a failed daemon before the drive or library associated with the daemon is disabled and requires the `mmsadm online` command to be run after the problem with the system or device is resolved. Use a value of `-1` for unlimited restart attempts. The default value is `3`.

`attended=yes|no`

Specify whether MMS makes operator requests when an operation cannot be automatically satisfied. An example of such a case would be if a mount request was made for a tape volume that had been physically removed from a library. The default action, `yes`, indicates that an operator is available to respond.

`num-sockets=num`

Specifies the number of open file descriptors the MM daemon can have at one time. On a resource-constrained system, set this value to a number between `30` and `65536`. It is not recommended to set the value to less than `256`. The default value is `-1`, which sets number of file descriptors to the maximum supported.

`disk-timeout=seconds`

Specifies the time a disk archiving drive manager waits for the file system containing a disk archiving volume to become available. It is strongly recommended to set the time to a minimum of `120` seconds (two minutes). Use a value of `0` to specify no expiration time.

-P *passwordfile*

Path to a file containing the MMS administrative password. If this option is not specified, the user will be prompted for the password. A password must contain at least eight characters.

Exit Status 0

Successful completion.

!=0

An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWmmsu
Interface Stability	Volatile

See Also [mmsadm\(1M\)](#), [mmsclient\(1M\)](#), [mmsexplorer\(1M\)](#), [mmsclient_script\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

IEEE 1244, *IEEE Storage Systems Standards*, a set of MMS standards

Notes When MMS is added to the Automated Cartridge System Library Software (ACSL) environment, the ACSLS configuration must be modified to allow them to work together. See the procedure for performing these modifications at the OpenSolaris web site for MMS:

<http://opensolaris.org/os/project/mms/>

The preceding URL is valid as of the date of publication of this man page.

Name modinfo – display information about loaded kernel modules

Synopsis /usr/sbin/modinfo [-c] [-w] [-i *module-id*]

Description The `modinfo` utility displays information about the loaded modules. The format of the information is as follows:

```
Id Loadaddr Size Info Rev Module Name
```

where *Id* is the module ID, *Loadaddr* is the starting text address in hexadecimal, *Size* is the size of text, data, and bss in hexadecimal bytes, *Info* is module specific information, *Rev* is the revision of the loadable modules system, and *Module Name* is the filename and description of the module.

The module specific information is the block and character major numbers for drivers, the system call number for system calls, and unspecified for other module types.

Options The following options are supported:

- c Display the number of instances of the module loaded and the module's current state.
- i *module-id* Display information about this module only.
- w Do not truncate module information at 80 characters.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Displaying the Status of a Module

The following example displays the status of module 2:

```
example% modinfo -i 2
Id  Loadaddr  Size Info Rev Module Name
2   ff08e000  1734  -   1  swappgeneric (root and swap configuration)
```

EXAMPLE 2 Displaying the Status of Kernel Modules

The following example displays the status of some kernel modules:

```
example% modinfo
Id Loadaddr  Size Info Rev Module Name
2  ff08e000  1734  -   1  swappgeneric
4  ff07a000  3bc0  -   1  specfs (filesystem for specfs)
6  ff07dbc0  2918  -   1  TS (time sharing sched class)
7  ff0804d8   49c  -   1  TS_DPTBL (Time sharing dispatch table)
8  ff04a000  24a30 2   1  ufs (filesystem for ufs)
9  ff080978  c640 226  1  rpcmod (RPC syscall)
9  ff080978  c640  -   1  rpcmod (rpc interface str mod)
10 ff08cfb8  2031c  -   1  ip (IP Streams module)
10 ff08cfb8  2031c  2   1  ip (IP Streams device)
```

EXAMPLE 3 Using the -c Option

Using the `modinfo` command with the `-c` option displays the number of instances of the module loaded and the module's current state.

```
example% modinfo -c
```

Id	Loadcnt	Module Name	State
1	0	krtld	UNLOADED/UNINSTALLED
2	0	genunix	UNLOADED/UNINSTALLED
3	0	platmod	UNLOADED/UNINSTALLED
4	0	SUNW,UltraSPARC-IIi	UNLOADED/UNINSTALLED
5	0	cl_bootstrap	UNLOADED/UNINSTALLED
6	1	specfs	LOADED/INSTALLED
7	1	swapgeneric	UNLOADED/UNINSTALLED
8	1	TS	LOADED/INSTALLED
9	1	TS_DPTBL	LOADED/INSTALLED
10	1	ufs	LOADED/INSTALLED
11	1	fssnap_if	LOADED/INSTALLED

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [modload\(1M\)](#), [modunload\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name modload – load a kernel module

Synopsis modload [-p] [-e *exec_file*] *filename*

Description The modload command loads the loadable module *filename* into the running system.

filename is an object file produced by `ld -r`. If *filename* is an absolute pathname then the file specified by that absolute path is loaded. If *filename* does not begin with a slash (/), then the path to load *filename* is relative to the current directory unless the `-p` option is specified.

The kernel's `modpath` variable can be set using the `/etc/system` file. The default value of the kernel's `modpath` variable is set to the path where the operating system was loaded. Typically this is `/kernel /usr/kernel`.

For example, the following command looks for `./drv/foo`:

```
example# modload drv/foo
```

The following command looks for `/kernel/drv/foo` and then `/usr/kernel/drv/foo`:

```
example# modload -p drv/foo
```

Options The following options are supported:

- `-e exec_file` Specify the name of a shell script or executable image file that is executed after the module is successfully loaded. The first argument passed is the module ID (in decimal). The other argument is module specific. The module specific information is: the block and character major numbers for drivers, the system call number for system calls, or, for other module types, the index into the appropriate kernel table. See [modinfo\(1M\)](#)
- `-p` Use the kernel's internal `modpath` variable as the search path for the module.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [ld\(1\)](#), [add_drv\(1M\)](#), [kernel\(1M\)](#), [modinfo\(1M\)](#), [modunload\(1M\)](#), [system\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [modldrv\(9S\)](#), [modlinkage\(9S\)](#), [modlstrmod\(9S\)](#), [module_info\(9S\)](#)

Writing Device Drivers

Notes Use [add_drv\(1M\)](#) to add device drivers, not modload. See *Writing Device Drivers* for procedures on adding device drivers.

Name modunload – unload a module

Synopsis modunload -i *module_id* [-e *exec_file*]

Description modunload unloads a loadable module from the running system. The *module_id* is the ID of the module as shown by [modinfo\(1M\)](#). If ID is 0, all modules that were autoloaded which are unloadable, are unloaded. Modules loaded by [modload\(1M\)](#) are not affected.

Options The following options are supported:

- e *exec_file* Specify the name of a shell script or executable image file to be executed before the module is unloaded. The first argument passed is the module id (in decimal). There are two additional arguments that are module specific. For loadable drivers, the second argument is the driver major number. For loadable system calls, the second argument is the system call number. For loadable exec classes, the second argument is the index into the `execsw` table. For loadable filesystems, the second argument is the index into the `vfs` table. For loadable streams modules, the second argument is the index into the `fmodsw` table. For loadable scheduling classes, the second argument is the index into the class array. Minus one is passed for an argument that does not apply.
- i *module_id* Specify the module to be unloaded.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [modinfo\(1M\)](#), [modload\(1M\)](#), [update_drv\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes The modunload command is often used on driver modules to force the system to reread the associated driver configuration file. While this works in the current Solaris release, it is not the supported way to reread the configuration file and is not guaranteed to work in future releases. The supported way for rereading driver configuration file is through the [update_drv\(1M\)](#) command.

Name mofcomp – compile MOF files into CIM classes

Synopsis /usr/sadm/bin/mofcomp [-c *cimom_hostname*] [-h]
 [-j *filename*] [-n *namespace*] [-o *dirname*]
 [-p *password*] [-CIQ] [-u *username*] [-v] [-version]
 [-x] *file*

Description The `mofcomp` utility is executed during installation to compile managed object format (MOF) files that describe the Common Information Model (CIM) and Solaris Schemas into the CIM Object Manager Repository, a central storage area for management data. The CIM Schema is a collection of class definitions used to represent managed objects that occur in every management environment. The Solaris Schema is a collection of class definitions that extend the CIM Schema and represent managed objects in a typical Solaris operating environment.

The `mofcomp` utility must be run as root or as a user with write access to the namespace in which you are compiling.

MOF is a language for defining CIM classes and instances. MOF files are ASCII text files that use the MOF language to describe CIM objects. A CIM object is a computer representation or model of a managed resource, such as a printer, disk drive, or CPU.

Many sites store information about managed resources in MOF files. Because MOF can be converted to Java, Java applications that can run on any system with a Java Virtual Machine can interpret and exchange this information. You can also use the `mofcomp` utility to compile MOF files at any time after installation.

Options The following options are supported:

- c *cimom_hostname* Specify a remote system running the CIM Object Manager.
- C Run the compiler set with the class option, which updates a class if it exists, and returns an error if the class does not exist. If you do not specify this option, the compiler adds a CIM class to the connected namespace, and returns an error if the class already exists.
- h List the arguments to the `mofcomp` utility.
- I Run the compiler set with the instance option, which updates an instance if it exists, and returns an error if the instance does not exist. If you do not specify this option, the compiler adds a CIM instance to the connected namespace, and returns an error if the instance already exists.
- j *filename* Generate Java Beans and Java Interfaces to manage the CIM instances related to the CIM classes in the MOF being compiled.

The contents of *filename* are:

```
PACKAGE=Java package name
IMPORTS=import1:...:importN
```

<EXCEPTIONS=*exception1*:...:*exceptionN*

PACKAGE is a valid Java package name to include in all generated Java source. IMPORTS is an optional colon separated list of valid Java classes to be imported in all generated Java source. EXCEPTIONS is an optional colon separated list of valid Java exceptions to be thrown by the methods in all generated Java source.

- n *namespace* Requests that the compiler load the MOF file into the namespace specified as *namespace*. The default namespace (`root\cimv2`) is used unless this switch is used or a `#pragma namespace ("namespace")` statement appears in the MOF file. If both the `-n namespace` switch and the `#pragma namespace` construct are used, all namespaces are created, but the objects are created only in the `#pragma namespaces`.
- o *dirname* Run compiler in standalone mode, without the CIM Object Manager. Specify *dirname* as the directory in which the compiler output is to be stored. In this mode, the CIM Object Manager need not be running.
- p *password* Specify a password for connecting to the CIM Object Manager. Use this option for compilations that require privileged access to the CIM Object Manager. If you specify both `-p` and `-u`, you must type the password on the command line, which can pose a security risk. A more secure way to specify a password is to specify `-u` but not `-p`, so that the compiler will prompt for the password.
- Q Run the compiler set with the `qualifier types` option, which updates a qualifier type if it exists, and returns an error if the qualifier type does not exist. If you do not specify this option, the compiler adds a CIM qualifier type to the connected namespace, and returns an error if the qualifier type already exists.
- u *username* Specify user name for connecting to the CIM Object Manager. Use this option for compilations that require privileged access to the CIM Object Manager. If you specify both `-p` and `-u`, you must type the password on the command line, which can pose a security risk. A more secure way to specify a password is to specify `-u` but not `-p`, so that the compiler will prompt for the password.
- v Run the compiler in verbose mode, which displays compiler messages.
- version Display the version of the MOF compiler.
- x Generate XML documents for the CIM classes defined in the input MOF file.

Operands The following operands are supported:

file The pathname of the file to be compiled.

Exit Status The mof comp utility exits with 0 upon success and a positive integer upon failure.

Files MOF files are installed in /usr/sadm/mof.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWwbcor

See Also [init.wbem\(1M\)](#), [mofreg\(1M\)](#), [wbemadmin\(1M\)](#), [wbemlogviewer\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [wbem\(5\)](#)

Name mofreg – register MOF classes with WBEM services

Synopsis /usr/sadm/bin/mofreg -r *tag file*

/usr/sadm/bin/mofreg -s

/usr/sadm/bin/mofreg -u *tag [file]*

Description The `mofreg` command is used by package and patch install scripts, or by any applications that wish to register managed object format (MOF) classes with Sun The Web-Based Enterprise Management (WBEM) services.

The WBEM services daemon (Common Information Model or CIM object manager) processes at start up the files that are specified by `mofreg` commands. Files are processed in the order that the individual `mofreg` commands are executed.

As an alternative to using the `mofreg` command, MOFs can be registered or unregistered by manipulating directories in `/var/sadm/wbem/logr`. Instead of running the `mofreg -r tag file` version of the command you can create a directory named `tag` under `/var/sadm/wbem/logr/preReg` and copy `file` to the `tag` directory.

Similarly, instead of running the `mofreg -u tag [file]` command, you can create a directory named `tag` under `/var/sadm/wbem/logr/preUnreg` and copy the optional `file` to the `tag` directory.

The entries are processed in increasing order of last modification time of the `tag` directories. If you issue `mofreg` commands in rapid succession, the timestamps might be the same. If you have a situation where the timestamp order is critical, you can place appropriate sleeps between the successive registration or unregistration operations. As with the `mofreg` command, processing is done at next restart or by using the `-s` option.

This alternative mechanism is typically used in package install scripts which do not have access to `/usr`, and therefore do not have access to the `mofreg` command. This case arises when packages are installed for diskless clients.

Options The following options are supported:

`-r tag file` The *file* argument is the actual MOF registration file. Its form is identical to the MOF syntax as defined by the Distributed Management Task Force (DMTF). The only difference is the addition of the following 3 new pseudo-pragmas, which are variations of the namespace pragma. The name of file cannot end in `.unreg`.

```
#pragma namespace("__create")
#pragma namespace("__delete")
#pragma namespace("__modify")
```

These three pragmas are used specify if the elements following the pragmas should be created, deleted, or modified by the CIM object manager. The `__delete` pragma can currently only be applied for a `mofreg -u` command.

The *tag* argument is a unique string that specifies the identity of the registry action. This tag can be set to the package name or the patch number if the `mofreg` script is being invoked through packages/patches, though any tag can be specified.

Errors and warnings that are encountered when the CIM object manager handles the `mofreg` script are logged. Processing of the `mofreg` script stops at the first error. Specific warnings include:

Element already defined - the element already exists and cannot be created.

Element not found - the element does not exist and cannot be modified.

The error conditions are:

Key modification - A class cannot be modified if its keys are being changed.

Other mod compilation errors.

- s Forces the CIM object manager to immediately process outstanding registry requests, instead of at the next restart. This currently requires Java.
- u *tag* [*file*] Undoes the operations performed during `mof registry`.

The *tag* argument must correspond to the value set during the original `mofreg` invocation. If no `mofreg` was done with the original *tag*, the command does not succeed.

If required, an *unreg* file can be specified. If no *unreg* file is specified, the CIM object manager automatically undoes the actions of the registry. Any class created by the registry process is removed and any classes modified by the registry revert to the old state.

The `mofreg` command does not take care of cases where packages and patches make conflicting changes to classes. This should be taken care of by the standard patch and package conflict resolution.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 An error occurred. The reason for error is displayed.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWwbcou

See Also [init.wbem\(1M\)](#), [mofcomp\(1M\)](#), [wbemadmin\(1M\)](#), [wbemlogviewer\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [wbem\(5\)](#)

Name	monitor – SPARC system PROM monitor
Synopsis	<p>STOP–A</p> <p>BREAK</p> <p>initial system power-on</p> <p>exit from a client program, e.g., the Operating System</p>
Description	The CPU board of a workstation contains one or more EPROMs or EEPROMs. The program which executes from the PROMs is referred to as “the monitor”. Among other things, the monitor performs system initialization at power-on and provides a user interface.
Monitor Prompt	<p>The monitor of earlier workstations was known as the SunMON monitor and displayed the > for its prompt. See the SunMON MONITOR USAGE section for further details.</p> <p>Existing workstations use a monitor which is known as the OpenBoot monitor. The OpenBoot monitor typically displays ok as its prompt, but it may also display the > prompt under certain circumstances.</p> <p>If the 'auto-boot?' NVRAM parameter is set to 'false' when the workstation is powered on, the system does not attempt to boot and the monitor issues its prompt. If 'auto-boot' is set to 'true', the system initiates the boot sequence. The boot sequence can be aborted by simultaneously pressing two keys on the system's keyboard: L1 and A (on older keyboards), or Stop and A (on newer keyboards). Either a lower case a or an upper case A works for the keyboard abort sequence. If a console has been attached by way of one of the system's serial ports then the abort sequence can be accomplished by sending a BREAK. See tip(1).</p> <p>When the NVRAM 'security-mode' parameter has been turned on, or when the value of the 'sunmon-compat?' parameter is true, then the OpenBoot monitor displays the message: Type b (boot), c (continue), or n (new command mode)</p> <p>and the > prompt appears.</p>
Openboot Prom Usage	Some of the more useful commands that can be issued from OpenBoot's ok prompt are described here. Refer to the book for a complete list of commands.
Help	Help for various functional areas of the OpenBoot monitor can be obtained by typing help. The help listing provides a number of other key words which can then be used in the help command to provide further details.
NVRAM Parameters	<p>Each workstation contains one or more NVRAM devices which contains unique system ID information, as well as a set of user-configurable parameters. The NVRAM parameters allow the user a certain level of flexibility in configuring the system to act in a given manner under a specific set of circumstances.</p> <p>See eeprom(1M) for a description of the parameters and information regarding setting the parameters from the OS level.</p>

The following commands can be used at the OpenBoot monitor to access the NVRAM parameters.

<code>printenv</code>	Used to list the NVRAM parameters, along with their default values and current values.
<code>setenv <i>pn pv</i></code>	Used to set or modify a parameter. The <i>pn</i> represents the parameter name, and <i>pv</i> represents the parameter value.
<code>set-default <i>pn</i></code>	Used to set an individual parameter back to its default value.
<code>set-defaults</code>	Used to reset all parameters to their default values. (Note that 'set-defaults' only affects parameters that have assigned default values.)

Security Parameters Newer OpenBoot monitors contain user interfaces that support the storage and listing of keys for later use by client programs.

<code>list-security-keys</code>	Lists the names of keys currently stored on a machine.
<code>set-security-key <i>keyname</i> [<i>keydata</i>]</code>	Stores key data <i>keydata</i> in a key named <i>keyname</i> . Actual key data can be up to 32 bytes in length. The maximum length of <i>keyname</i> is 64 bytes, which allows for the hex-formatted ASCII used to present the key data. If <i>keydata</i> is not present, <i>keyname</i> and its corresponding data is deleted.

Hardware Checks and Diagnostics The following commands are available for testing or checking the system's hardware. If the 'diag-switch?' NVRAM parameter is set to true when the system is powered on, then a Power-On Self Test (POST) diagnostic is run, if present, sending its results messages to the system's serial port A. Not all of the commands shown are available on all workstations.

<code>test-all</code>	Run the diagnostic tests on each device which has provided a self-test.
<code>test floppy</code>	Run diagnostics on the system's floppy device.
<code>test /memory</code>	Run the main memory tests. If the NVRAM parameter 'diag-switch?' is set to true, then all of main memory is tested. If the parameter is false then only the amount of memory specified in the 'selftest-#megs' NVRAM parameter is tested.
<code>test net</code>	Test the network connection for the on-board network controller.
<code>watch-net</code>	Monitor the network attached to the on-board net controller.
<code>watch-net-all</code>	Monitor the network attached to the on-board net controller, as well as the network controllers installed in SBus slots.
<code>watch-clock</code>	Test the system's clock function.

System Information The following commands are available for displaying information about the system. Not all commands are available on all workstations.

banner	Display the power-on banner.
.enet-addr	Display the system's Ethernet address.
.idprom	Display the formatted contents of the IDPROM.
module-info	Display information about the system's processor(s).
probe-scsi	Identify the devices attached to the on-board SCSI controller.
probe-scsi-all	Identify the devices attached to the on-board SCSI controller as well as those devices which are attached to SBus SCSI controllers.
show-disks	Display a list of the device paths for installed SCSI disk controllers.
show-displays	Display a list of the device paths for installed display devices.
show-nets	Display a list of the device paths for installed Ethernet controllers.
show-sbus	Display list of installed SBus devices.
show-tapes	Display a list of the device paths for installed SCSI tape controllers.
show-ttys	Display a list of the device paths for tty devices.
.traps	Display a list of the SPARC trap types.
.version	Display the version and date of the OpenBoot PROM.

Emergency Commands These commands must be typed from the keyboard, they do not work from a console which is attached by way of the serial ports. With the exception of the Stop-A command, these commands are issued by pressing and holding down the indicated keys on the keyboard immediately after the system has been powered on. The keys must be held down until the monitor has checked their status. The Stop-A command can be issued at any time after the console display begins, and the keys do not need to be held down once they've been pressed. The Stop-D, Stop-F and Stop-N commands are not allowed when one of the security modes has been set. Not all commands are available on all workstations.

Stop (L1)	Bypass the Power-On Self Test (POST). This is only effective if the system has been placed into the diagnostic mode.
Stop-A (L1-A)	Abort the current operation and return to the monitor's default prompt.
Stop-D (L1-D)	Set the system's 'diag-switch?' NVRAM parameter to 'true', which places the system in diagnostic mode. POST diagnostics, if present, are run, and the messages are displayed by way of the system's serial port A.
Stop-F (L1-F)	Enter the OpenBoot monitor before the monitor has probed the system for devices. Issue the 'fexit' command to continue with system initialization.

Stop-N (L1-N) Causes the NVRAM parameters to be reset to their default values. Note that not all parameters have default values.

Line Editor Commands The following commands can be used while the monitor is displaying the ok prompt. Not all of these editing commands are available on all workstations.

CTRL-A Place the cursor at the start of line.

CTRL-B Move the cursor backward one character.

ESC-B Move the cursor backward one word.

CTRL-D Erase the character that the cursor is currently highlighting.

ESC-D Erase the portion of word from the cursor's present position to the end of the word.

CTRL-E Place the cursor at the end of line.

CTRL-F Move the cursor forward one character.

ESC-F Move the cursor forward one word.

CTRL-H Erase the character preceding the cursor (also use Delete or Back Space)

ESC-H Erase the portion of the word which precedes the cursor (use also CTRL-W)

CTRL-K Erase from the cursor's present position to the end of the line.

CTRL-L Show the command history list.

CTRL-N Recall the next command from the command history list

CTRL-P Recall a previous command from the command history list.

CTRL-Q Quote the next character (used to type a control character).

CTRL-R Retype the current line.

CTRL-U Erase from the cursor's present position to the beginning of the line.

CTRL-Y Insert the contents of the memory buffer into the line, in front (to the left) of the cursor.

nvrarc The nvrarc is an area of the system's NVRAM where users may store Forth programs. The programs which are stored in the nvrarc are executed each time the system is reset, provided that the 'use-nvrarc?' NVRAM parameter has been set to 'true'. Refer to the book for information on how to edit and use the nvrarc.

Restricted Monitor The command 'old-mode' is used to move OpenBoot into a restricted monitor mode, causing the > prompt to be displayed. Only three commands are allowed while in the restricted monitor; the 'go' command (to resume a program which was interrupted with the Stop-A command), the 'n' command (to return to the normal OpenBoot monitor), and boot

commands. The restricted monitor's boot commands approximate the older SunMON monitor's boot command syntax. If a 'security-mode' has been turned on then the restricted monitor becomes the default monitor environment. The restricted monitor may also become the default environment if the 'sunmon-compat?' NVRAM parameter is set to true. Not all workstations have the 'sunmon-compat?' parameter.

SunMON Prom Usage

The following commands are available systems with older SunMON-based PROM:

+|-

Increment or decrement the current address and display the contents of the new location.

^C *source destination n*

(caret-C) Copy, byte-by-byte, a block of length *n* from the source address to the *destination* address.

^I *program*

(caret-I) Display the compilation date and location of *program*.

^T *virtual_address*

(caret-T) Display the physical address to which *virtual_address* is mapped.

b [!] [*device* [(*c, u, p*)]] [*pathname*] [*arguments_list*]

b[?]

Reset appropriate parts of the system and bootstrap a program. A '!' (preceding the *device* argument) prevents the system reset from occurring. Programs can be loaded from various devices (such as a disk, tape, or Ethernet). 'b' with no arguments causes a default boot, either from a disk, or from an Ethernet controller. 'b?' displays all boot devices and their *devices*.

<i>device</i>	one of
le	Lance Ethernet
ie	Intel Ethernet
sd	SCSI disk, CDROM
st	SCSI 1/4" or 1/2" tape
fd	Diskette
id	IPI disk
mt	Tape Master 9-track 1/2" tape
xd	Xylogics 7053 disk
xt	Xylogics 1/2" tape
xy	Xylogics 440/450 disk
<i>c</i>	A controller number (0 if only one controller),

- u* A unit number (0 if only one driver), and
- p* A partition.
- pathname* A pathname for a program such as */stand/diag*.
- arguments_list* A list of up to seven arguments to pass to the program being booted.

c [*virtual_address*]

Resume execution of a program. When given, *virtual_address* is the address at which execution resumes. The default is the current PC. Registers are restored to the values shown by the *d*, and *r* commands.

d [*window_number*]

Display (dump) the state of the processor. The processor state is observable only after:

- An unexpected trap was encountered.
- A user program dropped into the monitor (by calling *abortent*).
- The user manually entered the monitor by typing L1-A or BREAK.

The display consists of the following:

- The special registers: PSR, PC, nPC, TBR, WIM, and Y
- Eight global registers
- 24 window registers (8 *in*, 8 *local*, and 8 *out*), corresponding to one of the 7 available windows. If a Floating-Point Unit is on board, its status register along with 32 floating-point registers are also shown.

window_number Display the indicated *window_number*, which can be any value between 0 and 6, inclusive. If no window is specified and the PSR's current window pointer contains a valid window number, registers from the window that was active just prior to entry into the monitor are displayed. Otherwise, registers from window 0 are displayed.

e [*virtual_address*] [*action*] . . .

Open the 16-bit word at *virtual_address* (default zero). The address is interpreted in the address space defined by the *s* command. See the *a* command for a description of *action*.

f *virtual_address1* *virtual_address2* *pattern* [*size*]

Fill the bytes, words, or long words from *virtual_address1* (lower) to *virtual_address2* (higher) with the constant, *pattern*. The *size* argument can take one of the following values:

- b byte format (the default)
- w word format
- l long word format

For example, the following command fills the address block from 0x1000 to 0x2000 with the word pattern, 0xABCD:

f 1000 2000 ABCD W

g [*vector*] [*argument*]

g [*virtual_address*] [*argument*]

Goto (jump to) a predetermined or default routine (first form), or to a user-specified routine (second form). The value of *argument* is passed to the routine. If the *vector* or *virtual_address* argument is omitted, the value in the PC is used as the address to jump to.

To set up a predetermined routine to jump to, a user program must, prior to executing the monitor's g command, set the variable *romp->v_vector_cmd to be equal to the virtual address of the desired routine. Predetermined routines need not necessarily return control to the monitor.

The default routine, defined by the monitor, prints the user-supplied *vector* according to the format supplied in *argument*. This format can be one of:

%x hexadecimal

%d decimal

g0

Force a panic and produce a crash dump when the monitor is running as a result of the system being interrupted,

g4

(Sun-4 systems only) Force a kernel stack trace when the monitor is running as a result of the system being interrupted,

h

Display the help menu for monitor commands and their descriptions. To return to the monitor's basic command level, press ESCAPE or q before pressing RETURN.

i [*cache_data_offset*] [*action*] . . .

Modify cache data RAM command. Display and/or modify one or more of the cache data addresses. See the a command for a description of *action*.

j [*cache_tag_offset*] [*action*] . . .

Modify cache tag RAM command. Display and/or modify the contents of one or more of the cache tag addresses. See the a command for a description of *action*.

k [*reset_level*]

Reset the system, where *reset_level* is:

0 Reset VMEbus, interrupt registers, video monitor (Sun-4 systems). This is the default.

1 Software reset.

2 Power-on reset. Resets and clears the memory. Runs the EPROM-based diagnostic self test, which can take several minutes, depending upon how much memory is being tested.

kb

Display the system banner.

l [*virtual_address*] [*action*] . . .

Open the long word (32 bit) at memory address *virtual_address* (default zero). The address is interpreted in the address space defined by the s command (below). See the a command for a description of *action*.

m [*virtual_address*] [*action*] . . .

Open the segment map entry that maps *virtual_address* (default zero). The address is interpreted in the address space defined by the s command. See the a command for a description of *action*.

ne

ni

Disable, enable, or invalidate the cache, respectively.

o [*virtual_address*] [*action*] . . .

Open the byte location specified by *virtual_address* (default zero). The address is interpreted in the address space defined by the s command. See the a command for a description of *action*.

p [*virtual_address*] [*action*]. . .

Open the page map entry that maps *virtual_address* (default zero) in the address space defined by the s command. See the a command for a description of *action*.

q [*eeeprom_offset*] [*action*] . . .

Open the EEPROM *eeeprom_offset* (default zero) in the EEPROM address space. All addresses are referenced from the beginning or base of the EEPROM in physical address space, and a limit check is performed to insure that no address beyond the EEPROM physical space is accessed. This command is used to display or modify configuration parameters, such as: the amount of memory to test during self test, whether to display a standard or custom banner, if a serial port (A or B) is to be the system console, etc. See the a command for a description of *action*.

r [*register_number*]

r [*register_type*]

r [*w window_number*]

Display and/or modify one or more of the IU or FPU registers. A hexadecimal *register_number* can be one of:

0x00–0x0f window(0,i0)–window(0,i7), window(0,i0)–window(0,i7)

0x16–0x1f window(1,i0)–window(1,i7), window(1,i0)–window(1,i7)

0x20–0x2f window(2,i0)–window(2,i7), window(2,i0)–window(2,i7)

0x30–0x3f window(3,i0)–window(3,i7), window(3,i0)–window(3,i7)

0x40–0x4f window(4,i0)–window(4,i7), window(4,i0)–window(4,i7)

0x50–0x5f	window(5,i0)–window(5,i7), window(5,i0)—window(5,i7)
0x60–0x6f	window(6,i0)–window(6,i7), window(6,i0)—window(6,i7)
0x70–0x77	g0, g1, g2, g3, g4, g5, g6, g7
0x78–0x7d	PSR, PC, nPC, WIM, TBR, Y.
0x7e–0x9e	FSR, f0–f31

Register numbers can only be displayed after an unexpected trap, a user program has entered the monitor using the *abortent* function, or the user has entered the monitor by manually typing L1–A or BREAK.

If a *register_type* is given, the first register of the indicated type is displayed. *register_type* can be one of:

f	floating-point
g	global
s	special

If *w* and a *window_number* (0–6) are given, the first *in*-register within the indicated window is displayed. If *window_number* is omitted, the window that was active just prior to entering the monitor is used. If the PSR's current window pointer is invalid, window 0 is used.

s [*asi*]

Set or display the Address Space Identifier. With no argument, s displays the current Address Space Identifier. The *asi* value can be one of:

0x2	control space
0x3	segment table
0x4	Page table
0x8	user instruction
0x9	supervisor instruction
0xa	user data
0xb	supervisor data
0xc	flush segment
0xd	flush page
0xe	flush context
0xf	cache data

u [echo]

u [*port*] [*options*] [*baud_rate*]

u [u] [*virtual_address*]

With no arguments, display the current I/O device characteristics including: current input device, current output device, baud rates for serial ports A and B, an input-to-output echo indicator, and virtual addresses of mapped UART devices. With arguments, set or configure the current I/O device. With the u argument (uu. . .), set the I/O device to be the *virtual_address* of a UART device currently mapped.

echo Can be either e to enable input to be echoed to the output device, or ne, to indicate that input is not echoed.

port Assign the indicated *port* to be the current I/O device. *port* can be one of:

- a serial port A
- b serial port B
- k the workstation keyboard
- s the workstation screen

baud_rate Any legal baud rate.

options can be any combination of:

- i input
- o output
- u UART
- e echo input to output
- ne do not echo input
- r reset indicated serial port (a and b ports only)

If either a or b is supplied, and no *options* are given, the serial port is assigned for both input and output. If k is supplied with no options, it is assigned for input only. If s is supplied with no options, it is assigned for output only.

v *virtual_address1* *virtual_address2* [size]

Display the contents of *virtual_address1* (lower) *virtual_address2* (higher) in the format specified by size:

- b byte format (the default)
- w word format
- l long word format

Enter return to pause for viewing; enter another return character to resume the display. To terminate the display at any time, press the space bar.

For example, the following command displays the contents of virtual address space from address `0x1000` to `0x2000` in word format:

```
v 1000 2000 W
```

w [*virtual_address*] [*argument*]

Set the execution vector to a predetermined or default routine. Pass *virtual_address* and *argument* to that routine.

To set up a predetermined routine to jump to, a user program must, prior to executing the monitor's w command, set the variable `*romp->v_vector_cmd` to be equal to the virtual address of the desired routine. Predetermined routines need not necessarily return control to the monitor.

The default routine, defined by the monitor, prints the user-supplied *vector* according to the format supplied in *argument*. This format can be one of:

%x hexadecimal

%d decimal

x

Display a menu of extended tests. These diagnostics permit additional testing of such things as the I/O port connectors, video memory, workstation memory and keyboard, and boot device paths.

y c *context_number*

y p|s *context_number virtual_address*

Flush the indicated context, context page, or context segment.

c flush context *context_number*

p flush the page beginning at *virtual_address* within context *context_number*

s flush the segment beginning at *virtual_address* within context *context_number*

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Architecture	SPARC

See Also [tip\(1\)](#), [boot\(1M\)](#), [eeprom\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name mount, umount – mount or unmount file systems and remote resources

Synopsis mount [-p | -v]

```
mount [-F FSType] [generic_options] [-o specific_options]
      [-O] special | mount_point
```

```
mount [-F FSType] [generic_options] [-o specific_options]
      [-O] special mount_point
```

```
mount -a [-F FSType] [-V] [current_options]
      [-o specific_options] [mount_point]...
```

```
umount [-f] [-V] [-o specific_options] special | mount_point
```

```
umount -a [-f] [-V] [-o specific_options] [mount_point]...
```

Description mount attaches a file system to the file system hierarchy at the *mount_point*, which is the pathname of a directory. If *mount_point* has any contents prior to the mount operation, these are hidden until the file system is unmounted.

umount unmounts a currently mounted file system, which may be specified either as a *mount_point* or as *special*, the device on which the file system resides.

The table of currently mounted file systems can be found by examining the mounted file system information file. This is provided by a file system that is usually mounted on `/etc/mnttab`. The mounted file system information is described in [mnttab\(4\)](#). Mounting a file system adds an entry to the mount table; a `umount` removes an entry from the table.

When invoked with both the *special* and *mount_point* arguments and the `-F` option, `mount` validates all arguments except for *special* and invokes the appropriate *FSType*-specific mount module. If invoked with no arguments, `mount` lists all the mounted file systems recorded in the mount table, `/etc/mnttab`. If invoked with a partial argument list (with only one of *special* or *mount_point*, or with both *special* or *mount_point* specified but not *FSType*), `mount` will search `/etc/vfstab` for an entry that will supply the missing arguments. If no entry is found, and the *special* argument starts with `/`, the default local file system type specified in `/etc/default/fs` will be used. Otherwise the default remote file system type will be used. The default remote file system type is determined by the first entry in the `/etc/dfs/fstypes` file. After filling in missing arguments, `mount` will invoke the *FSType*-specific mount module.

For file system types that support it, a file can be mounted directly as a file system by specifying the full path to the file as the *special* argument. In such a case, the `nosuid` option is enforced. If specific file system support for such loopback file mounts is not present, you can still use [lofiadm\(1M\)](#) to mount a file system image. In this case, no special options are enforced.

Only a user with sufficient privilege (at least `PRIV_SYS_MOUNT`) can mount or unmount file systems using `mount` and `umount`. However, any user can use `mount` to list mounted file systems and resources.

Options -F *FSType*

Used to specify the *FSType* on which to operate. The *FSType* must be specified or must be determinable from `/etc/vfstab`, or by consulting `/etc/default/fs` or `/etc/dfs/fstypes`.

-a [*mount_points...*]

Perform mount or umount operations in parallel, when possible.

If mount points are not specified, mount will mount all file systems whose `/etc/vfstab` “mount at boot” field is yes. If mount points are specified, then `/etc/vfstab` “mount at boot” field will be ignored.

If mount points are specified, umount will only umount those mount points. If none is specified, then umount will attempt to unmount all file systems in `/etc/mnttab`, with the exception of certain system required file systems: `/`, `/usr`, `/var`, `/var/adm`, `/var/run`, `/proc`, `/dev/fd` and `/tmp`.

-f

Forcibly unmount a file system.

Without this option, umount does not allow a file system to be unmounted if a file on the file system is busy. Using this option can cause data loss for open files; programs which access files after the file system has been unmounted will get an error (EIO).

-p

Print the list of mounted file systems in the `/etc/vfstab` format. Must be the only option specified. See BUGS.

-v

Print the list of mounted file systems in verbose format. Must be the only option specified.

-V

Echo the complete command line, but do not execute the command. umount generates a command line by using the options and arguments provided by the user and adding to them information derived from `/etc/mnttab`. This option should be used to verify and validate the command line.

generic_options

Options that are commonly supported by most *FSType*-specific command modules. The following options are available:

-m

Mount the file system without making an entry in `/etc/mnttab`.

-g

Globally mount the file system. On a clustered system, this globally mounts the file system on all nodes of the cluster. On a non-clustered system this has no effect.

-o

Specify *FSType*-specific options in a comma separated (without spaces) list of suboptions and keyword-attribute pairs for interpretation by the *FSType*-specific module of the command. (See [mount_ufs\(1M\)](#).) When you use -o with a file system that has an entry in `/etc/vfstab`, any mount options entered for that file system in `/etc/vfstab` are ignored.

The following options are supported:

`devices` | `nodevices`

Allow or disallow the opening of device-special files. The default is `devices`.

If you use `nosuid` in conjunction with `devices`, the behavior is equivalent to that of `nosuid`.

`exec` | `noexec`

Allow or disallow executing programs in the file system. Allow or disallow [mmap\(2\)](#) with `PROT_EXEC` for files within the file system. The default is `exec`.

`loop`

Ignored for compatibility.

`nbmand` | `nonbmand`

Allow or disallow non-blocking mandatory locking semantics on this file system. Non-blocking mandatory locking is disallowed by default.

If the file system is mounted with the `nbmand` option, then applications can use the [fcntl\(2\)](#) interface to place non-blocking mandatory locks on files and the system enforces those semantics. If you enable this option, it can cause standards conformant applications to see unexpected errors.

To avoid the possibility of obtaining mandatory locks on system files, do not use the `nbmand` option with the following file systems:

```
/
/usr
/etc
/var
/proc
/dev
/devices
/system/contract
/system/object
/etc/mnttab
/etc/dfs/sharetab
```

Do not use the `remount` option to change the `nbmand` disposition of the file system. The `nbmand` option is mutually exclusive of the global option. See -g.

ro | rw

Specify read-only or read-write. The default is rw.

setuid | nosetuid

Allow or disallow setuid or setgid execution. The default is setuid.

If you specify setuid in conjunction with nosuid, the behavior is the same as nosuid.

nosuid is equivalent to nosetuid and nodevices. When suid or nosuid is combined with setuid or nosetuid and devices or nodevices, the most restrictive options take effect.

This option is highly recommended whenever the file system is shared by way of NFS with the root= option. Without it, NFS clients could add setuid programs to the server or create devices that could open security holes.

suid | nosuid

Allow or disallow setuid or setgid execution. The default is suid. This option also allows or disallows opening any device-special entries that appear within the filesystem.

nosuid is equivalent to nosetuid and nodevices. When suid or nosuid is combined with setuid or nosetuid and devices or nodevices, the most restrictive options take effect.

This option is highly recommended whenever the file system is shared using NFS with the root=*option*, because, without it, NFS clients could add setuid programs to the server, or create devices that could open security holes.

-O

Overlay mount. Allow the file system to be mounted over an existing mount point, making the underlying file system inaccessible. If a mount is attempted on a pre-existing mount point without setting this flag, the mount will fail, producing the error “device busy”.

-r

Mount the file system read-only.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Mounting and Unmounting a DVD Image Directly

The following commands mount and unmount a DVD image.

```
# mount -F hsfs /images/solaris.iso /mnt/solaris-image
# umount /mnt/solaris-image
```

Usage See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of mount and umount when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (2³¹ bytes).

Files /etc/mnttab

Table of mounted file systems.

/etc/default/fs

Default local file system type. Default values can be set for the following flags in /etc/default/fs. For example: LOCAL=ufs

LOCAL:

The default partition for a command if no *FSType* is specified.

/etc/vfstab

List of default parameters for each file system.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [lofiadm\(1M\)](#), [mount_cachefs\(1M\)](#), [mount_hsf\(1M\)](#), [mount_nfs\(1M\)](#), [mount_pcfs\(1M\)](#), [mount_smbfs\(1M\)](#), [mount_tmpfs\(1M\)](#), [mount_udfs\(1M\)](#), [mount_ufs\(1M\)](#), [mountall\(1M\)](#), [umountall\(1M\)](#), [fcntl\(2\)](#), [mmap\(2\)](#), [mnttab\(4\)](#), [vfstab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#), [privileges\(5\)](#), [lofs\(7FS\)](#), [pcfs\(7FS\)](#)

Notes If the directory on which a file system is to be mounted is a symbolic link, the file system is mounted on the directory to which the symbolic link refers, rather than on top of the symbolic link itself.

Bugs The `mount -p` output is incorrect for `cachefs`.

Name mountall, umountall – mount, unmount multiple file systems

Synopsis mountall [-F *FSType*] [-l | -r] [*file_system_table*]
 umountall [-k] [-s] [-F *FSType*] [-l | -r] [-n] [-Z]
 mountall [-k] [-s] [-h *host*] [-n] [-Z]

Description mountall is used to mount file systems specified in a file system table. The file system table must be in [vfstab\(4\)](#) format. If no *file_system_table* is specified, /etc/vfstab is used. If – is specified as *file_system_table*, mountall reads the file system table from the standard input. mountall mounts only those file systems with the mount at boot field set to yes in the *file_system_table*.

For each file system in the file system table, the following logic is executed: if there exists a file /usr/lib/fs/*FSType*/fsckall, where *FSType* is the type of the file system, save that file system in a list to be passed later, and all at once, as arguments to the /usr/lib/fs/*FSType*/fsckall script. The /usr/lib/fs/*FSType*/fsckall script checks all of the file systems in its argument list to determine whether they can be safely mounted. If no /usr/lib/fs/*FSType*/fsckall script exists for the *FSType* of the file system, the file system is individually checked using [fsck\(1M\)](#). If the file system does not appear mountable, it is fixed using fsck before the mount is attempted. File systems with a – entry in the fsckdev field are mounted without first being checked.

umountall causes all mounted file systems in the current zone except root, /usr, /var, /var/adm, /var/run, /proc, and /dev/fd to be unmounted. If the *FSType* is specified, mountall and umountall limit their actions to the *FSType* specified. There is no guarantee that umountall unmounts *busy* file systems, even if the -k option is specified.

Options The following options are supported:

- F Specify the *FSType* of the file system to be mounted or unmounted.
- h *host* Unmount all file systems listed in /etc/mnttab that are remote-mounted from host.
- k Use the fuser -k *mount-point* command. See the [fuser\(1M\)](#) for details. The -k option sends the SIGKILL signal to each process using the file. As this option spawns kills for each process, the kill messages might not show up immediately. There is no guarantee that umountall unmounts *busy* file systems, even if the -k option is specified.
- l Limit the action to local file systems.
- n List the actions that would be performed for the specified options, but do not actually execute these actions. Repeating the command without the -n option executes the listed actions, assuming that the /etc/mnttab file has not changed in the interval prior to repeating the command.
- r Limit the action to remote file system types.

- s Do not perform the umount operation in parallel.
- Z Apply the action(s) only to the file systems mounted in non-global zones. By default, `umountall` unmounts only file systems mounted in the current zone. Option -Z is ignored if used in a non-global zone.

Files `/etc/mnttab`
Mounted file system table

`/etc/vfstab`
Table of file system defaults

`/usr/lib/fs/FSType/fsckall`
Script called by `mountall` to perform the file system check of all file systems of type *FSType*

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Committed
Output Stability	Uncommitted

See Also [fsck\(1M\)](#), [fuser\(1M\)](#), [mount\(1M\)](#), [mnttab\(4\)](#), [vfstab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Diagnostics No messages are printed if the file systems are mountable and clean.
Error and warning messages come from [fsck\(1M\)](#) and [mount\(1M\)](#).

Notes At this time, NFS is the only remote file system supported by the `-l`, `-r`, and `-h` options.

Name mount_cacheFs – mount CacheFS file systems

Synopsis mount -F cacheFs [*generic_options*] -o backfstype=*file_system_type*
 [*specific_options*]
 [-O] *special mount_point*

Description The CacheFS-specific version of the mount command mounts a cached file system; if necessary, it NFS-mounts its back file system. It also provides a number of CacheFS-specific options for controlling the caching process. For more information regarding back file systems, refer to the *System Administration Guide: Basic Administration*.

mount_cacheFs cannot be used with replicated NFS mounts. mount_cacheFs creates a pass through when used with an NFS version 4 mount. No caching is performed.

Options To mount a CacheFS file system, use the generic mount command with the -F option followed by the argument cacheFs.

See mount(1M) for a list of supported *generic_options*.

-o *specific_options* Specify CacheFS file system specific options in a comma-separated list with no intervening spaces.

acdirmax=*n* Specifies that cached attributes are held for no more than *n* seconds after directory update. After *n* seconds, all directory information is purged from the cache. The default value is 30 seconds.

acdirmin=*n* Specifies that cached attributes are held for at least *n* seconds after directory update. After *n* seconds, CacheFS checks to see if the directory modification time on the back file system has changed. If it has, all information about the directory is purged from the cache and new data is retrieved from the back file system. The default value is 30 seconds.

acregmax=*n* Specifies that cached attributes are held for no more than *n* seconds after file modification. After *n* seconds, all file information is purged from the cache. The default value is 30 seconds.

<code>acregmin=<i>n</i></code>	Specifies that cached attributes are held for at least <i>n</i> seconds after file modification. After <i>n</i> seconds, CacheFS checks to see if the file modification time on the back file system has changed. If it has, all information about the file is purged from the cache and new data is retrieved from the back file system. The default value is 30 seconds.
<code>actimeo=<i>n</i></code>	Sets <code>acregmin</code> , <code>acregmax</code> , <code>acdirmin</code> , and <code>acdirmax</code> to <i>n</i> .
<code>backfstype=<i>file_system_type</i></code>	The file system type of the back file system (can be <code>nfs</code> or <code>hfs</code>).
<code>backpath=<i>path</i></code>	Specifies where the back file system is already mounted. If this argument is not supplied, CacheFS determines a mount point for the back file system. The back file system must be read-only.
<code>cachedir=<i>directory</i></code>	The name of the cache directory.
<code>cacheid=<i>ID</i></code>	<i>ID</i> is a string specifying a particular instance of a cache. If you do not specify a cache ID, CacheFS will construct one.
<code>demandconst</code>	Verifies cache consistency only when explicitly requested, rather than the periodic checking that is done by default. A consistency check is requested by using the <code>-s</code> option of the <code>cfsadmin(1M)</code> command. This option is useful for back file systems that change infrequently, for example, <code>/usr/openwin.demandconst</code> and <code>noconst</code> are mutually exclusive.
<code>local-access</code>	Causes the front file system to interpret the mode bits used for access checking instead of having the back file system verify access

		permissions. Do not use this argument with secure NFS.
	<code>noconst</code>	Disables cache consistency checking. By default, periodic consistency checking is enabled. Specify <code>noconst</code> only when you know that the back file system will not be modified. Trying to perform cache consistency check using <code>cfsadmin -s</code> will result in error. <code>demandconst</code> and <code>noconst</code> are mutually exclusive.
	<code>write-around non-shared</code>	Write modes for CacheFS. The <code>write-around</code> mode (the default) handles writes the same as NFS does; that is, writes are made to the back file system, and the affected file is purged from the cache. You can use the <code>non-shared</code> mode when you are sure that no one else will be writing to the cached file system. In this mode, all writes are made to both the front and the back file system, and the file remains in the cache.
	<code>-O</code>	Overlay mount. Allows the filesystem to be mounted over an existing mount point, making the underlying filesystem inaccessible. If a mount is attempted on a pre-existing mount point without setting this flag, mount will fail with the error: <code>mount -F cacheofs: mount failed Device busy.</code>

Examples EXAMPLE 1 CacheFS-mounting a File System

The following example CacheFS-mounts the file system `server1:/user2`, which is already NFS-mounted on `/usr/abc` as `/xyz`.

```
example# mount -F cacheofs -o backfstype=nfs,backpath=/usr/abc,
    cachedir=/cache1 server1:/user2 /xyz
```

The lines similar to the following appear in the `/etc/mnttab` file after the `mount` command is executed:

```
server1:/user2 /usr/abc nfs
/usr/abc /cache1/xyz cacheofs backfstype=nfs
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [cfsadmin\(1M\)](#), [fsck_cachefs\(1M\)](#), [mount\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#) *System Administration Guide: Basic Administration*

Bugs The output for the *generic_option* -p output is incorrect for cachefs.

Name mountd – server for NFS mount requests and NFS access checks

Synopsis /usr/lib/nfs/mountd [-v] [-r]

Description mountd is an RPC server that answers requests for NFS access information and file system mount requests. It reads the file /etc/dfs/sharetab to determine which file systems are available for mounting by which remote machines. See [sharetab\(4\)](#). nfsd running on the local server will contact mountd the first time an NFS client tries to access the file system to determine whether the client should get read-write, read-only, or no access. This access can be dependent on the security mode used in the remoted procedure call from the client. See [share_nfs\(1M\)](#).

The command also provides information as to what file systems are mounted by which clients. This information can be printed using the [showmount\(1M\)](#) command.

The mountd daemon is automatically invoked by [share\(1M\)](#).

Only super user can run the mountd daemon.

Options The options shown below are supported for NVSv2/v3 clients. They are not supported for Solaris NFSv4 clients.

-r Reject mount requests from clients. Clients that have file systems mounted will not be affected.

-v Run the command in verbose mode. Each time mountd determines what access a client should get, it will log the result to the console, as well as how it got that result.

Files /etc/dfs/sharetab shared file system table

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWnfssu

See Also [nfsd\(1M\)](#), [share\(1M\)](#), [share_nfs\(1M\)](#), [showmount\(1M\)](#), [nfs\(4\)](#), [sharetab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes Since mountd must be running for nfsd to function properly, mountd is automatically started by the svc:/network/nfs/server service. See [nfs\(4\)](#).

Some routines that compare hostnames use case-sensitive string comparisons; some do not. If an incoming request fails, verify that the case of the hostname in the file to be parsed matches the case of the hostname called for, and attempt the request again.

Name mount_hfs – mount hfs file systems

Synopsis mount -F hfs [generic_options]
 [-o *FSType-specific_options*] [-O] *special* | *mount_point*

mount -F hfs [generic_options]
 [-o *FSType-specific_options*] [-O] *special mount_point*

Description mount attaches an ISO 9660 filesystem (the High Sierra file system, hfs, is a draft predecessor to ISO 9660, so the name reflects the filesystem's history) to the file system hierarchy at the *mount_point*, which is the pathname of a directory. If *mount_point* has any contents prior to the mount operation, these are hidden until the file system is unmounted.

If mount is invoked with *special* or *mount_point* as the only arguments, mount will search /etc/vfstab to fill in the missing arguments, including the *FSType-specific_options*; see [mount\(1M\)](#) for more details.

The hfs file system supports direct mounting of files containing the file system as well as block devices. See [mount\(1M\)](#) and [lofiadm\(1M\)](#).

A file system conforming to ISO 9660 can contain extensions that allow it to overcome limitations of the original ISO 9660:1988 (version 1) standard. The following types of extensions are supported by hfs:

Rock Ridge extensions

This is the preferred type of extension as it allows file attributes, name length, and types equivalent to those on other UNIX-style filesystems. Example of supported features are device special files, POSIX permissions, symbolic links, and filenames of up to 255 bytes in length. Rock Ridge extensions also remove the ISO9660:1988 restriction on maximum nesting depth for directories (eight levels). hfs automatically detects the presence of Rock Ridge extensions and uses them, unless mount options are specified to disable the use of Rock Ridge or to use a different extension.

ISO9660:1999 (version 2) extensions

The first version of ISO9660, released in 1988, supported only uppercase ASCII filenames of no more than 31 characters in length. ISO9660 version 2, released in 1999, provides an extension that allows filenames of at least 207 bytes that can use UTF-8 characters and removes the limitation on the nesting depth for directories. Unlike Rock Ridge, it does not provide support for UNIX-style file types and file attributes. hfs automatically detects this extension and will use it for filename lookup if no Rock Ridge extensions are found on the media.

Joliet extensions

The Joliet extension was devised by Microsoft to allow Unicode (UCS-2) long filenames with CDROM-based media. It allows filename lengths of up to 110 Unicode characters and does not support UNIX-style file types and attributes. hfs falls back to using Joliet if such an extension is present and neither Rock Ridge nor ISO9660 version 2 extensions are found.

If filenames are longer than the 64 UCS-2 characters officially allowed by Microsoft (that is, 110 Unicode characters), they can translate to up to 330 UTF-8 octets. Filenames that translate to more than 255 UTF-8 octets will be truncated.

Options *generic_options*

See [mount\(1M\)](#) for the list of supported options.

-o

Specify `hfs` file system specific options. If invalid options are specified, a warning message is printed and the invalid options are ignored. The following options are available:

`global` | `noglobal`

If `global` is specified and supported on the file system, and the system in question is part of a cluster, the file system will be globally visible on all nodes of the cluster. If `noglobal` is specified, the mount will not be globally visible. The default behavior is `noglobal`.

`ro`

Mount the file system read-only. This option is required.

`rr` | `nrr`

Enable (`rr`) or disable (`nrr`) the use of Rock Ridge. `rr` is the default and need not be specified. If you use `nrr` and Rock Ridge extensions are present in the file system, ignore them and search for other available extensions or fall back to plain ISO9660.

`vers2` | `novers2`

Enable or disable the use of ISO9660 version 2 extensions. If `vers2` is specified and ISO9660 version 2 extensions are available, `hfs` will use ISO9660 version 2 even if the file system contains the preferred Rock Ridge extensions as well. If `novers2` is specified, it will fall back to using either Joliet extensions or plain ISO9660 even if ISO9660 version 2 extensions are available.

`joliet` | `nojoliet`

Enable or disable the use of Joliet extensions. If `joliet` is specified and Joliet extensions are available, `hfs` will use them even if the file system contains the preferred Rock Ridge and/or ISO9660 version 2 extensions. If `nojoliet` is specified, it will fall back to using plain ISO9660.

`notraildot`

File names on High Sierra file systems consist of a proper name and an extension separated by a '.' (dot) character. By default, the separating dot is always considered part of the file's name for all file access operations, even if there is no extension present. Specifying `notraildot` makes it optional to specify the trailing dot to access a file whose name lacks an extension.

Exceptions: This option is effective only on file systems for which Rock Ridge, ISO9660 version 2 or Joliet extensions are not active, either because they are not present on the CD-ROM, or they have been deliberately disabled via the `nrr`, `novers2` and `nojoliet` option. If either extension is active, `hfs` quietly ignores this option.

nomap`l`case

File names on High Sierra/ISO9660 CD-ROMs with no extensions present should be uppercase characters only. By default, `hfs` maps file names read from a non-Rock Ridge disk to all lowercase characters. `nomaplcase` turns off this mapping. The exceptions for `notraildot` discussed above apply to `nomaplcase`.

-O

Overlay mount. Allow the file system to be mounted over an existing mount point, making the underlying file system inaccessible. If a mount is attempted on a preexisting mount point without setting this flag, the mount will fail, producing the error: `device busy`.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Mounting and Unmounting a DVD Image Directly

The following commands mount and unmount a DVD image.

```
# mount -F hfs /images/solaris.iso /mnt/solaris-image
# umount /mnt/solaris-image
```

Files `/etc/mnttab`
table of mounted file systems

`/etc/vfstab`
list of default parameters for each file system

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [lofiadm\(1M\)](#), [mount\(1M\)](#), [mountall\(1M\)](#), [mount\(2\)](#), [mnttab\(4\)](#), [vfstab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes If the directory on which a file system is to be mounted is a symbolic link, the file system is mounted on the directory to which the symbolic link refers, rather than on top of the symbolic link itself.

Name mount_nfs – mount remote NFS resources

Synopsis mount [-F nfs] [*generic_options*] [-o *specific_options*] [-O] *resource*
 mount [-F nfs] [*generic_options*] [-o *specific_options*] [-O] *mount_point*
 mount [-F nfs] [*generic_options*] [-o *specific_options*]
 [-O] *resource mount_point*

Description The mount utility attaches a named *resource* to the file system hierarchy at the pathname location *mount_point*, which must already exist. If *mount_point* has any contents prior to the mount operation, the contents remain hidden until the *resource* is once again unmounted.

mount_nfs starts the [lockd\(1M\)](#) and [statd\(1M\)](#) daemons if they are not already running.

If the resource is listed in the `/etc/vfstab` file, the command line can specify either *resource* or *mount_point*, and mount consults `/etc/vfstab` for more information. If the -F option is omitted, mount takes the file system type from `/etc/vfstab`.

If the resource is not listed in the `/etc/vfstab` file, then the command line must specify both the *resource* and the *mount_point*.

host can be an IPv4 or IPv6 address string. As IPv6 addresses already contain colons, enclose *host* in a pair of square brackets when specifying an IPv6 address string. Otherwise the first occurrence of a colon can be interpreted as the separator between the host name and path, for example, `[1080::8:800:200C:417A]:tmp/file`. See [inet\(7P\)](#) and [inet6\(7P\)](#).

host:pathname

Where *host* is the name of the NFS server host, and *pathname* is the path name of the directory on the server being mounted. The path name is interpreted according to the server's path name parsing rules and is not necessarily slash-separated, though on most servers, this is the case.

nfs://host[:port]/pathname

This is an NFS URL and follows the standard convention for NFS URLs as described in *NFS URL Scheme*, RFC 2224. See the discussion of URL's and the public option under NFS FILE SYSTEMS for a more detailed discussion.

host:pathname nfs://host[:port]/pathname

host:pathname is a comma-separated list of *host:pathname*.

See the discussion of replicated file systems and failover under NFS FILE SYSTEMS for a more detailed discussion.

hostlist pathname

hostlist is a comma-separated list of hosts.

See the discussion of replicated file systems and failover under NFS FILE SYSTEMS for a more detailed discussion.

The `mount` command maintains a table of mounted file systems in `/etc/mnttab`, described in [mnttab\(4\)](#).

`mount_nfs` supports both NFSv3 and NFSv4 mounts. The default NFS version is NFSv4.

Options See [mount\(1M\)](#) for the list of supported *generic_options*. See [share_nfs\(1M\)](#) for a description of server options.

`-o specific_options`

Set file system specific options according to a comma-separated list with no intervening spaces.

`acdirmax=n`

Hold cached attributes for no more than *n* seconds after directory update. The default value is 60.

`acdirmin=n`

Hold cached attributes for at least *n* seconds after directory update. The default value is 30.

`acregmax=n`

Hold cached attributes for no more than *n* seconds after file modification. The default value is 60.

`acregmin=n`

Hold cached attributes for at least *n* seconds after file modification. The default value is 3.

`actimeo=n`

Set *min* and *max* times for regular files and directories to *n* seconds. See “File Attributes,” below, for a description of the effect of setting this option to 0.

See “Specifying Values for Attribute Cache Duration Options,” below, for a description of how `acdirmax`, `acdirmin`, `acregmax`, `acregmin`, and `actimeo` are parsed on a `mount` command line.

`bg | fg`

If the first attempt fails, retry in the background, or, in the foreground. The default is `fg`.

`forcedirectio | noforcedirectio`

If `forcedirectio` is specified, then for the duration of the mount, forced direct I/O is used. If the filesystem is mounted using `forcedirectio`, data is transferred directly between client and server, with no buffering on the client. If the filesystem is mounted using `noforcedirectio`, data is buffered on the client. `forcedirectio` is a performance option that is of benefit only in large sequential data transfers. The default behavior is `noforcedirectio`.

`grpuid`

By default, the GID associated with a newly created file obeys the System V semantics; that is, the GID is set to the effective GID of the calling process. This behavior can be

overridden on a per-directory basis by setting the set-GID bit of the parent directory; in this case, the GID of a newly created file is set to the GID of the parent directory (see [open\(2\)](#) and [mkdir\(2\)](#)). Files created on file systems that are mounted with the `grp_id` option obeys BSD semantics independent of whether the set-GID bit of the parent directory is set; that is, the GID is unconditionally inherited from that of the parent directory.

`hard | soft`

Continue to retry requests until the server responds (`hard`) or give up and return an error (`soft`). The default value is `hard`. Note that NFSv4 clients do not support soft mounts.

`intr | nointr`

Allow (do not allow) keyboard interrupts to kill a process that is hung while waiting for a response on a hard-mounted file system. The default is `intr`, which makes it possible for clients to interrupt applications that can be waiting for a remote mount.

`llock`

Use local locking (no lock manager). Note that this is a private interface.

`noac`

Suppress data and attribute caching. The data caching that is suppressed is the write-behind. The local page cache is still maintained, but data copied into it is immediately written to the server.

`nocto`

Do not perform the normal close-to-open consistency. When a file is closed, all modified data associated with the file is flushed to the server and not held on the client. When a file is opened the client sends a request to the server to validate the client's local caches. This behavior ensures a file's consistency across multiple NFS clients. When `nocto` is in effect, the client does not perform the flush on close and the request for validation, allowing the possibility of differences among copies of the same file as stored on multiple clients.

This option can be used where it can be guaranteed that accesses to a specified file system are made from only one client and only that client. Under such a condition, the effect of `nocto` can be a slight performance gain.

`port=n`

The server IP port number. The default is `NFS_PORT`. If the `port` option is specified, and if the resource includes one or more NFS URLs, and if any of the URLs include a port number, then the port number in the option and in the URL must be the same.

`posix`

Request POSIX.1 semantics for the file system. Requires a mount Version 2 [mountd\(1M\)](#) on the server. See [standards\(5\)](#) for information regarding POSIX.

`proto=netid | rdma`

By default, the transport protocol that the NFS mount uses is the first available RDMA transport supported both by the client and the server. If no RDMA transport is found, then it attempts to use a TCP transport or, failing that, a UDP transport, as ordered in the `/etc/netconfig` file. If it does not find a connection oriented transport, it uses the first available connectionless transport.

Use this option to override the default behavior.

`proto` is set to the value of `netid` or `rdma`. `netid` is the value of the `network_id` field entry in the `/etc/netconfig` file.

The UDP protocol is not supported for NFS Version 4. If you specify a UDP protocol with the `proto` option, NFS version 4 is not used.

`public`

The `public` option forces the use of the public file handle when connecting to the NFS server. The resource specified might not have an NFS URL. See the discussion of URLs and the `public` option under NFS FILE SYSTEMS for a more detailed discussion.

`quota | noquota`

Enable or prevent `quota(1M)` to check whether the user is over quota on this file system; if the file system has quotas enabled on the server, quotas are still checked for operations on this file system.

`remount`

Remounts a read-only file system as read-write (using the `rw` option). This option cannot be used with other `-o` options, and this option works only on currently mounted read-only file systems.

`retrans=n`

Set the number of NFS retransmissions to `n`. The default value is 5. For connection-oriented transports, this option has no effect because it is assumed that the transport performs retransmissions on behalf of NFS.

`retry=n`

The number of times to retry the mount operation. The default for the mount command is 10000.

The default for the automounter is 0, in other words, do not retry. You might find it useful to increase this value on heavily loaded servers, where automounter traffic is dropped, causing unnecessary server not responding errors.

`rsize=n`

Set the read buffer size to a maximum of `n` bytes. The default value is 1048576 when using connection-orientated transports with Version 3 or Version 4 of the NFS protocol, and 32768 when using connection-less transports. The default can be

negotiated down if the server prefers a smaller transfer size. “Read” operations may not necessarily use the maximum buffer size. When using Version 2, the default value is 32768 for all transports.

sec=mode

Set the security *mode* for NFS transactions. If *sec=* is not specified, then the default action is to use AUTH_SYS over NFS Version 2 mounts, use a user-configured default auth over NFS version 3 mounts, or to negotiate a mode over Version 4 mounts.

The preferred mode for NFS Version 3 mounts is the default mode specified in `/etc/nfssec.conf` (see [nfssec.conf\(4\)](#)) on the client. If there is no default configured in this file or if the server does not export using the client's default mode, then the client picks the first mode that it supports in the array of modes returned by the server. These alternatives are limited to the security flavors listed in `/etc/nfssec.conf`.

NFS Version 4 mounts negotiate a security mode when the server returns an array of security modes. The client attempts the mount with each security mode, in order, until one is successful.

Only one mode can be specified with the *sec=* option. See [nfssec\(5\)](#) for the available *mode* options.

secure

This option has been deprecated in favor of the *sec=dh* option.

timeo=n

Set the NFS timeout to *n* tenths of a second. The default value is 11 tenths of a second for connectionless transports, and 600 tenths of a second for connection-oriented transports. This value is ignored for connectionless transports. Such transports might implement their own timeouts, which are outside the control of NFS.

vers=NFS version number

By default, the version of NFS protocol used between the client and the server is the highest one available on both systems. The default maximum for the client is Version 4. This can be changed by setting the `NFS_CLIENT_VERSMAX` parameter in `/etc/default/nfs` to a valid version (2, 3, or 4). If the NFS server does not support the client's default maximum, the next lowest version attempted until a matching version is found.

wsiz=n

Set the write buffer size to a maximum of *n* bytes. The default value is 1048576 when using connection-orientated transports with Version 3 or Version 4 of the NFS protocol, and 32768 when using connection-less transports. The default can be negotiated down if the server prefers a smaller transfer size. “Write” operations may not necessarily use the maximum buffer size. When using Version 2, the default value is 32768 for all transports.

xattr | noxattr

Allow or disallow the creation and manipulation of extended attributes. The default is xattr. See [fsattr\(5\)](#) for a description of extended attributes.

-O

Overlay mount. Allow the file system to be mounted over an existing mount point, making the underlying file system inaccessible. If a mount is attempted on a pre-existing mount point without setting this flag, the mount fails, producing the error “device busy.”

Nfs File Systems Background versus Foreground

File systems mounted with the `bg` option indicate that mount is to retry in the background if the server's mount daemon ([mountd\(1M\)](#)) does not respond. `mount` retries the request up to the count specified in the `retry=n` option. (Note that the default value for `retry` differs between `mount` and `automount`. See the description of `retry`, above.) Once the file system is mounted, each NFS request made in the kernel waits `timeo=n` tenths of a second for a response. If no response arrives, the time-out is multiplied by 2 and the request is retransmitted. When the number of retransmissions has reached the number specified in the `retrans=n` option, a file system mounted with the `soft` option returns an error on the request; one mounted with the `hard` option prints a warning message and continues to retry the request.

Hard versus Soft

File systems that are mounted read-write or that contain executable files should always be mounted with the `hard` option. Applications using `soft` mounted file systems can incur unexpected I/O errors, file corruption, and unexpected program core dumps. The `soft` option is not recommended.

Authenticated requests

The server can require authenticated NFS requests from the client. `sec=dh` authentication might be required. See [nfssec\(5\)](#).

URLs and the public option

If the `public` option is specified, or if the `resource` includes an NFS URL, `mount` attempts to connect to the server using the public file handle lookup protocol. See *WebNFS Client Specification*, RFC 2054. If the server supports the public file handle, the attempt is successful; `mount` does not need to contact the server's [rpcbind\(1M\)](#) and the [mountd\(1M\)](#) daemons to get the port number of the mount server and the initial file handle of `pathname`, respectively. If the NFS client and server are separated by a firewall that allows all outbound connections through specific ports, such as `NFS_PORT`, then this enables NFS operations through the firewall. The `public` option and the NFS URL can be specified independently or together. They interact as specified in the following matrix:

	Resource Style	
	<i>host:pathname</i>	NFS URL
public option	Force public file handle and fail	Force public file handle and fail

	mount if not supported.	mount if not supported.
	Use Native paths.	Use Canonical paths.
default	Use MOUNT protocol.	Try public file handle with Canonical paths. Fall back to MOUNT protocol if not supported.

A Native path is a path name that is interpreted according to conventions used on the native operating system of the NFS server. A Canonical path is a path name that is interpreted according to the URL rules. See *Uniform Resource Locators (URL)*, RFC 1738. See [Examples](#) for uses of Native and Canonical paths.

Replicated file systems and failover

resource can list multiple read-only file systems to be used to provide data. These file systems should contain equivalent directory structures and identical files. It is also recommended that they be created by a utility such as [rdist\(1\)](#). The file systems can be specified either with a comma-separated list of *host:/pathname* entries and/or NFS URL entries, or with a comma-separated list of hosts, if all file system names are the same. If multiple file systems are named and the first server in the list is down, failover uses the next alternate server to access files. If the read-only option is not chosen, replication is disabled. File access, for NFS Versions 2 and 3, is blocked on the original if NFS locks are active for that file.

File Attributes To improve NFS read performance, files and file attributes are cached. File modification times get updated whenever a write occurs. However, file access times can be temporarily out-of-date until the cache gets refreshed.

The attribute cache retains file attributes on the client. Attributes for a file are assigned a time to be flushed. If the file is modified before the flush time, then the flush time is extended by the time since the last modification (under the assumption that files that changed recently are likely to change soon). There is a minimum and maximum flush time extension for regular files and for directories. Setting `actimeo=n` sets flush time to *n* seconds for both regular files and directories.

Setting `actimeo=0` disables attribute caching on the client. This means that every reference to attributes is satisfied directly from the server though file data is still cached. While this guarantees that the client always has the latest file attributes from the server, it has an adverse effect on performance through additional latency, network load, and server load.

Setting the `noac` option also disables attribute caching, but has the further effect of disabling client write caching. While this guarantees that data written by an application is written directly to a server, where it can be viewed immediately by other clients, it has a significant adverse effect on client write performance. Data written into memory-mapped file pages ([mmap\(2\)](#)) are not written directly to this server.

Specifying Values for Attribute Cache Duration Options

The attribute cache duration options are `acdirmax`, `acdirmin`, `acregmax`, `acregmin`, and `actimeo`, as described under `OPTIONS`. A value specified for `actimeo` sets the values of all attribute cache duration options except for any of these options specified following `actimeo` on a `mount` command line. For example, consider the following command:

```
example# mount -o acdirmax=10,actimeo=1000 server:/path /localpath
```

Because `actimeo` is the last duration option in the command line, its value (`1000`) becomes the setting for all of the duration options, including `acdirmax`. Now consider:

```
example# mount -o actimeo=1000,acdirmax=10 server:/path /localpath
```

Because the `acdirmax` option follows `actimeo` on the command line, it is assigned the value specified (`10`). The remaining duration options are set to the value of `actimeo` (`1000`).

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Mounting an NFS File System

To mount an NFS file system:

```
example# mount serv:/usr/src /usr/src
```

EXAMPLE 2 Mounting An NFS File System Read-Only With No suid Privileges

To mount an NFS file system read-only with no suid privileges:

```
example# mount -r -o nosuid serv:/usr/src /usr/src
```

EXAMPLE 3 Mounting An NFS File System Over Version 2, with the UDP Transport

To mount an NFS file system over Version 2, with the UDP transport:

```
example# mount -o vers=2,proto=udp serv:/usr/src /usr/src
```

EXAMPLE 4 Mounting an NFS File System Using An NFS URL

To mount an NFS file system using an NFS URL (a canonical path):

```
example# mount nfs://serv/usr/man /usr/man
```

EXAMPLE 5 Mounting An NFS File System Forcing Use Of The Public File Handle

To mount an NFS file system and force the use of the public file handle and an NFS URL (a canonical path) that has a non 7-bit ASCII escape sequence:

```
example# mount -o public nfs://serv/usr/%A0abc /mnt/test
```

EXAMPLE 6 Mounting an NFS File System Using a Native Path

To mount an NFS file system using a native path (where the server uses colons (“:”) as the component separator) and the public file handle:

```
example# mount -o public serv:C:doc:new /usr/doc
```

EXAMPLE 7 Mounting a Replicated Set of NFS File Systems with the Same Pathnames

To mount a replicated set of NFS file systems with the same pathnames:

```
example# mount serv-a,serv-b,serv-c:/usr/man /usr/man
```

EXAMPLE 8 Mounting a Replicated Set of NFS File Systems with Different Pathnames

To mount a replicated set of NFS file systems with different pathnames:

```
example# mount serv-x:/usr/man,serv-y:/var/man,nfs://serv-z/man /usr/man
```

Files

- /etc/mnttab
table of mounted file systems
- /etc/dfs/fstypes
default distributed file system type
- /etc/vfstab
table of automatically mounted resources

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWnfscu

See Also [rdist\(1\)](#), [lockd\(1M\)](#), [mountall\(1M\)](#), [mountd\(1M\)](#), [nfsd\(1M\)](#), [quota\(1M\)](#), [statd\(1M\)](#), [mkdir\(2\)](#), [mmap\(2\)](#), [mount\(2\)](#), [open\(2\)](#), [umount\(2\)](#), [mnttab\(4\)](#), [nfs\(4\)](#), [nfssec.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [fsattr\(5\)](#), [nfssec\(5\)](#), [standards\(5\)](#), [inet\(7P\)](#), [inet6\(7P\)](#), [lofs\(7FS\)](#)

Callaghan, Brent, *WebNFS Client Specification*, RFC 2054, October 1996.

Callaghan, Brent, *NFS URL Scheme*, RFC 2224, October 1997.

Berners-Lee, Masinter & McCahill, *Uniform Resource Locators (URL)*, RFC 1738, December 1994.

Notes An NFS server should not attempt to mount its own file systems. See [lofs\(7FS\)](#).

If the directory on which a file system is to be mounted is a symbolic link, the file system is mounted on *the directory to which the symbolic link refers*, rather than being mounted on top of the symbolic link itself.

SunOS 4.x used the `bi`od maintenance procedure to perform parallel read-ahead and write-behind on NFS clients. SunOS 5.x made `bi`od obsolete with multi-threaded processing, which transparently performs parallel read-ahead and write-behind.

Since the root (`/`) file system is mounted read-only by the kernel during the boot process, only the `remount` option (and options that can be used in conjunction with `remount`) affect the root (`/`) entry in the `/etc/vfstab` file.

`mount_cache`fs cannot be used with replicated NFS mounts or any NFS Version 4 mount.

The NFS client service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/nfs/client:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name mount_pcfs – mount pcfs file systems

Synopsis mount -F pcfs [*generic_options*]
 [-o *FSType-specific_options*] *special* | *mount_point*
 mount -F pcfs [*generic_options*]
 [-o *FSType-specific_options*] *special* *mount_point*

Description mount attaches an MS-DOS file system (pcfs) to the file system hierarchy at the *mount_point*, which is the pathname of a directory. If *mount_point* has any contents prior to the mount operation, these are hidden until the file system is unmounted.

The pcfs file system supports direct mounting of files containing the file system as well as block devices. See [mount\(1M\)](#) and [lofiadm\(1M\)](#).

If mount is invoked with *special* or *mount_point* as the only arguments, mount will search /etc/vfstab to fill in the missing arguments, including the *FSType-specific_options*; see [mount\(1M\)](#) for more details.

The *special* argument can be one of two special device file types:

- A floppy disk, such as /dev/diskette0 or /dev/diskette1.
- A DOS logical drive on a hard disk expressed as *device-name:logical-drive*, where *device-name* specifies the special block device-file for the whole disk and *logical-drive* is either a drive letter (c through z) or a drive number (1 through 24). Examples are /dev/dsk/c0t0d0p0:c and /dev/dsk/c0t0d0p0:1.

The *special* device file type must have a formatted MS-DOS file system with either a 12-bit, 16-bit, or 32-bit File Allocation Table.

Options *generic_options*
 See [mount\(1M\)](#) for the list of supported options.

-o
 Specify pcfs file system-specific options. The following options are supported:

clamptime | noclamptime

File timestamps in pcfs cover a range between January 1st 1980 and December 31st 2127. This is not equal to the range of time_t on Unix for either 32-bit or 64-bit applications. In particular, 32-bit applications fail with EOVERFLOW errors on the stat(2) system call when timestamps beyond the range of 32-bit time_t are encountered. In order to prevent such spurious failures, pcfs by default clamps timestamps to the common subset of possible pcfs timestamps and the range available to 32-bit applications in Unix. The clamptime mount option therefore is active by default. If you want access to the full range of possible timestamps on pcfs, mount the file system with the noclamptime mount option. Note that if noclamptime is used, only 64-bit applications will have access to timestamps beyond January 19th 2038, 03:14:06 UTC; 32-bit applications will encounter EOVERFLOW errors.

`foldcase` | `nofoldcase`

Force uppercase characters in filenames to lowercase when reading them from the filesystem. This is for compatibility with the previous behavior of `pcfs`. The default is `nofoldcase`.

`hidden` | `nohidden`

Allow or disallow listing of files with hidden or system bits set. Option `hidden` is the default. When `nohidden` is effect, hidden and system files are neither visible nor accessible. Note that PCFS in previous releases of the Solaris operating system used the `nohidden` option as the default.

`atime` | `noatime`

Enable or disable write access timestamps on DOS-formatted media. Default for fixed disks is `atime`, while for removable media `noatime` is used. The latter default is so that writes to flash-based media (“memory sticks”) can be minimized, to prolong lifetime.

`timezone=timezone`

Timestamps on DOS-formatted media are recorded in the local time of the recording system. This can cause confusion when accessing removable media in which the recording and receiving system use different time zones. Use this option to force media timestamps to be interpreted for a specific time zone. The `mount_pcfs` command converts the given time zone name into a numerical offset that is passed to the `pcfs` kernel module, using the same rules as described in [environ\(5\)](#) for the `TZ` environment variable. By default, the `timezone` value is taken from the `TZ` environment variable.

Files `/etc/mnttab`
table of mounted file systems

`/etc/vfstab`
list of default parameters for each file system

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWesu

See Also [lofiadm\(1M\)](#), [mount\(1M\)](#), [mountall\(1M\)](#), [mount\(2\)](#), [stat\(2\)](#), [time\(2\)](#), [mnttab\(4\)](#), [vfstab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#), [pcfs\(7FS\)](#)

Notes If the directory on which a file system is to be mounted is a symbolic link, the file system is mounted on the directory to which the symbolic link refers, rather than on top of the symbolic link itself.

Name mount_smbfs, umount_smbfs – mount and unmount a shared resource from a CIFS file server

Synopsis /sbin/mount [-F smbfs] [*generic-options*] [-o *name=value*] [-O] *resource*
 /sbin/mount [-F smbfs] [*generic-options*] [-o *name=value*] [-O] *mount-point*
 /sbin/mount [-F smbfs] [*generic-options*] [-o *name=value*]
 [-O] *resource mount-point*
 /sbin/umount [-F smbfs] [*generic-options*] *mount-point*

Description The mount utility attaches a named resource, *resource*, to the file system hierarchy at the path name location, *mount-point*, which must already exist.

If *mount-point* has any contents prior to the mount operation, those contents remain hidden until the resource is unmounted. An authorized user with the SYS_MOUNT privilege can perform a mount operation. Also, a user can perform SMBFS mount operations on a directory the user owns.

If the resource is listed in the /etc/vfstab file, you can specify either *resource* or *mount-point* as the mount command will consult the /etc/vfstab file for more information. If the -F option is omitted, mount takes the file system type from the entry in the /etc/vfstab file.

If the resource is not listed in the /etc/vfstab file, the command line must specify both *resource* and *mount-point*.

The umount utility detaches a mounted file system from the file system hierarchy. An authorized user with the SYS_MOUNT privilege can perform a umount operation. Also, a user can perform SMBFS unmount operations on a directory the user owns.

The network/smb/client service must be enabled to successfully mount a CIFS share. This service is enabled, by default.

To enable the service, enter the following [svcadm\(1M\)](#) command:

```
# svcadm enable network/smb/client
```

Operands The mount command supports the following operands:

resource // [*workgroup*;] [*user*[:*password*]@] *server/share*

The name of the resource to be mounted. In addition to its name, you can specify the following information about the resource:

- *password* is the password associated with *user*. If *password* is not specified, the mount first attempts to use the password stored by the smbutil login command (if any). If that password fails to authenticate, the mount_smbfs prompts you for a password.
- *server* is the DNS or NetBIOS name of the remote computer.
- *share* is the resource name on the remote server.

- *user* is the remote user name. If *user* is omitted, the logged in user ID is used.
- *workgroup* is the name of the workgroup or the Windows domain in which the user name is defined.

If the resource includes a workgroup, you must escape the semicolon that appears after the workgroup name to prevent it from being interpreted by the command shell. For instance, surround the entire resource name with double quotes: `mount -F smbfs "//SALES;george@RSERVER" /mnt.`

mount-point

The path to the location where the file system is to be mounted or unmounted. The mount command maintains a table of mounted file systems in the `/etc/mnttab` file. See the [mnttab\(4\)](#) man page.

Options See the [mount\(1M\)](#) man page for the list of supported *generic-options*.

`-o name=value` or

`-o name`

Sets the file system-specific properties. You can specify more than one name-value pair as a list of comma-separated pairs. No spaces are permitted in the list. The properties are as follows:

`acdirmax=n`

Hold cached attributes for no more than *n* seconds after directory update. The default value is 60.

`acdirmin=n`

Hold cached attributes for at least *n* seconds after directory update. The default value is 30.

`acregmax=n`

Hold cached attributes for no more than *n* seconds after file modification. The default value is 60.

`acregmin=n`

Hold cached attributes for at least *n* seconds after file modification. The default value is 3.

`actimeo=n`

Set minimum and maximum times for regular files and directories to *n* seconds. See “File Attributes,” below, for a description of the effect of setting this option to 0.

See “Specifying Values for Attribute Cache Duration Options,” below, for a description of how `acdirmax`, `acdirmin`, `acregmax`, `acregmin`, and `actimeo` are parsed on a mount command line.

dirperms=octaltriplet

Specifies the permissions to be assigned to directories. The value must be specified as an octal triplet, such as 755. The default value for the directory mode is taken from the `fileperms` setting, with execute permission added where `fileperms` has read permission.

Note that these permissions have no relation to the rights granted by the CIFS server.

fileperms=octaltriplet

Specifies the permissions to be assigned to files. The value must be specified as an octal triplet, such as 644. The default value is 700.

Note that these permissions have no relation to the rights granted by the CIFS server.

gid=groupid

Assigns the specified group ID to files. The default value is the group ID of the directory where the volume is mounted.

intr|nointr

Enable (or disable) cancellation of `smbfs(7FS)` I/O operations when the user interrupts the calling thread (for example, by hitting Ctrl-C while an operation is underway). The default is `intr` (interruption enabled), so cancellation is normally allowed.

noac

Suppress attribute caching. Local `stat(2)` calls always request attributes from the CIFS server.

noprompt

Suppresses the prompting for a password when mounting a share. This property enables you to permit anonymous access to a share. Anonymous access does not require a password.

The mount operation fails if a password is required, the `noprompt` property is set, and no password is stored by the `smbutil login` command.

retry_count=number

Specifies the number of SMBFS retries to attempt before the connection is marked as broken. By default, 4 attempts are made.

The `retry_count` property value set by the `mount` command overrides the global value set in `SMF` or the value set in your `.nsmbrc` file.

timeout=seconds

Specifies the CIFS request timeout. By default, the timeout is 15 seconds.

The `timeout` property value set by the `mount` command overrides the global value set in `SMF` or the value set in your `.nsmbrc` file.

`uid=userid`

Assigns the specified user ID files. The default value is the owner ID of the directory where the volume is mounted.

`xattr|noxattr`

Enable (or disable) Solaris Extended Attributes in this mount point. This option defaults to `xattr` (enabled Extended Attributes), but note: if the CIFS server does not support CIFS “named streams”, [smbfs\(7FS\)](#) forces this option to `noxattr`. When a mount has the `noxattr` option, attempts to use Solaris Extended attributes fail with `EINVAL`.

`-O`

Overlays mount. Allow the file system to be mounted over an existing mount point, making the underlying file system inaccessible. If a mount is attempted on a pre-existing mount point without setting this flag, the mount fails, producing the error “device busy.”

File Attributes To improve `smbfs` performance, file attributes are cached. File modification times get updated whenever any local modifications occur. However, file access times can be temporarily out-of-date until the cache gets refreshed.

The attribute cache retains file attributes on the client. Attributes for a file are assigned a time to be flushed. If the file is modified before the flush time, then the flush time is extended by the time since the last modification (under the assumption that files that changed recently are likely to change soon). There is a minimum and maximum flush time extension for regular files and for directories. Setting `actimeo=n` sets flush time to n seconds for both regular files and directories.

Setting `actimeo=n` disables attribute caching on the client. This means that every reference to attributes is satisfied directly from the server. While this guarantees that the client always has the latest file attributes from the server, it has an adverse effect on performance through additional latency, network load, and server load.

Setting the `noac` option also disables attribute caching. When `smbfs` is enhanced to support write caching, this option will have the further effect of disabling that write caching.

Specifying Values for Attribute Cache Duration Options

The attribute cache duration options are `acdirmax`, `acdirmin`, `acregmax`, `acregmin`, and `actimeo`, as described under `OPTIONS`, above. A value specified for `actimeo` sets the values of all attribute cache duration options except for any of these options specified following `actimeo` on a mount command line. For example, consider the following command:

```
# mount -F smbfs -o acdirmax=10,actimeo=1000 \
  //server/share /mountpoint
```

Because `actimeo` is the last duration option in the command line, its value (`1000`) becomes the setting for all of the duration options, including `acdirmax`. Now consider:

```
# mount -F smbfs -o actimeo=1000,acdirmax=10 \
  //server/share /mountpoint
```

Because the `actimeo` option follows `actimeo` on the command line, it is assigned the value specified (10). The remaining duration options are set to the value of `actimeo` (1000).

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Mounting an SMBFS Share

The following example shows how to mount the `/tmp` share from the nano server in the SALES workgroup on the local `/mnt` mount point. You must supply the password for the root user to successfully perform the mount operation.

```
# mount -F smbfs "//SALES;root@nano.sfbay/tmp" /mnt
Password:
```

EXAMPLE 2 Verifying That an SMBFS File System Is Mounted

The following example shows how to mount the `/tmp` share from the nano server on the local `/mnt` mount point. You must supply the password for the root user to successfully perform the mount operation.

```
# mount -F smbfs //root@nano.sfbay/tmp /mnt
Password:
```

You can verify that the share is mounted in the following ways:

- View the file system entry in the `/etc/mnttab` file.

```
# grep root /etc/mnttab
//root@nano.sfbay/tmp /mnt smbfs dev=4900000 1177097833
```

- View the output of the mount command.

```
# mount | grep root
/mnt on //root@nano.sfbay/tmp read/write/setuid/devices/dev=4900000 on
Fri Apr 20 13:37:13 2007
```

- View the output of the `df /mnt` command.

```
# df /mnt
/mnt                (//root@nano.sfbay/tmp): 3635872 blocks      -1 files
```

Obtain information about the mounted share by viewing the output of the `df -k /mnt` command.

```
# df -k /mnt
Filesystem          kbytes  used  avail capacity Mounted on
//root@nano.sfbay/tmp
                    1882384 64448 1817936    4%    /mnt
```

EXAMPLE 3 Unmounting a CIFS Share

This example assumes that a CIFS share has been mounted on the `/mnt` mount point. The following command line unmounts the share from the mount point.

EXAMPLE 3 Unmounting a CIFS Share (Continued)# **umount** /mnt**Files** /etc/mnttab

Table of mounted file systems.

/etc/dfs/fstypes

Default distributed file system type.

/etc/vfstab

Table of automatically mounted resources.

\$HOME/.nsmbrc

User-settable mount point configuration file to store the description for each connection.

Attributes See the [attributes\(5\)](#) man page for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWsmbfscu
Interface Stability	Committed

See Also [smbutil\(1\)](#), [mount\(1M\)](#), [mountall\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [acl\(2\)](#), [fcntl\(2\)](#), [link\(2\)](#), [mknod\(2\)](#), [mount\(2\)](#), [stat\(2\)](#), [symlink\(2\)](#), [umount\(2\)](#), [mnttab\(4\)](#), [nsmbrc\(4\)](#), [vfstab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [pcfs\(7FS\)](#), [smbfs\(7FS\)](#)**Authors** This manual page contains material originally authored by Boris Popov, bpATbutya.kz, bpATFreeBSD.org.**Notes** The Solaris CIFS client always attempts to use `gethostbyname()` to resolve host names. If the host name cannot be resolved, the CIFS client uses NetBIOS name resolution (NBNS). By default, the Solaris CIFS client permits the use of NBNS to enable Solaris CIFS clients in Windows environments to work without additional configuration.

Since NBNS has been exploited in the past, you might want to disable it. To disable NBNS, set the `nbns-enabled` service management facility property to `false`. By default, `nbns-enabled` is set to `true`.

If the directory on which a file system is to be mounted is a symbolic link, the file system is mounted on the directory to which the symbolic link refers, rather than being mounted on top of the symbolic link itself.

Name mount_tmpfs – mount tmpfs file systems

Synopsis mount [-F tmpfs] [-o *specific_options*] [-O] *special mount_point*

Description tmpfs is a memory based file system which uses kernel resources relating to the VM system and page cache as a file system.

mount attaches a tmpfs file system to the file system hierarchy at the pathname location *mount_point*, which must already exist. If *mount_point* has any contents prior to the mount operation, these remain hidden until the file system is once again unmounted. The attributes (mode, owner, and group) of the root of the tmpfs filesystem are inherited from the underlying *mount_point*, provided that those attributes are determinable. If not, the root's attributes are set to their default values.

The *special* argument is usually specified as swap but is in fact disregarded and assumed to be the virtual memory resources within the system.

Options -o *specific_options* Specify tmpfs file system specific options in a comma-separated list with no intervening spaces. If invalid options are specified, a warning message is printed and the invalid options are ignored. The following options are available:

size=*sz* The *sz* argument controls the size of this particular tmpfs file system. If the argument is has a 'k' suffix, the number will be interpreted as a number of kilobytes. An 'm' suffix will be interpreted as a number of megabytes. No suffix is interpreted as bytes. In all cases, the actual size of the file system is the number of bytes specified, rounded up to the physical pagesize of the system.

xattr | noxattr Allow or disallow the creation and manipulation of extended attributes. The default is xattr. See [fsattr\(5\)](#) for a description of extended attributes.

-O Overlay mount. Allow the file system to be mounted over an existing mount point, making the underlying file system inaccessible. If a mount is attempted on a pre-existing mount point without setting this flag, the mount will fail, producing the error device busy.

Files /etc/mnttab Table of mounted file systems

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [mount\(1M\)](#), [mkdir\(2\)](#), [mount\(2\)](#), [open\(2\)](#), [umount\(2\)](#), [mnttab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [fsattr\(5\)](#), [tmpfs\(7FS\)](#)

Notes If the directory on which a file system is to be mounted is a symbolic link, the file system is mounted on the directory to which the symbolic link refers, rather than on top of the symbolic link itself.

Name mount_udfs – mount a udfs file system

Synopsis mount -F udfs [*generic_options*] [-o *specific_options*]
[-O] *special mount_point*

mount -F udfs [*generic_options*] [-o *specific_options*]
[-O] *special* | *mount_point*

Description The mount utility attaches a udfs file system to the file system hierarchy at the *mount_point*, which is the pathname of a directory. If *mount_point* has any contents prior to the mount operation, these are hidden until the file system is unmounted.

If mount is invoked with either *special* or *mount_point* as the only arguments, mount searches /etc/vfstab to fill in the missing arguments, including the *specific_options*. See [mount\(1M\)](#).

The udfs file system supports direct mounting of files containing the file system as well as block devices. See [mount\(1M\)](#) and [lofiadm\(1M\)](#).

If *special* and *mount_point* are specified without any *specific_options*, the default is rw.

If the directory on which a file system is to be mounted is a symbolic link, the file system is mounted on the directory to which the symbolic link refers, rather than on top of the symbolic link itself.

Options See [mount\(1M\)](#) for the list of supported *generic_options*.

The following options are supported:

-o *specific_options*

Specify udfs file system specific options in a comma-separated list with no intervening spaces. The following *specific_options* are available:

m

Mount the file system without making an entry in /etc/mnttab.

remount

Remount the file system as read-write. The option is used in conjunction with the rw option.

A file system mounted read-only can be remounted as read-write. This option fails if the file system is not currently mounted.

-O

Overlay mount. Allow the file system to be mounted over an existing mount point, making the underlying file system inaccessible. If a mount is attempted on a pre-existing mount point without setting this flag, the mount fails, producing the error device busy.

Files /etc/mnttab
Table of mounted file systems

/etc/vfstab
List of default parameters for each file system

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWudf

See Also [fsck\(1M\)](#), [fsck_udfs\(1M\)](#), [lofiadm\(1M\)](#), [mount\(1M\)](#), [mountall\(1M\)](#), [mount\(2\)](#), [mnttab\(4\)](#), [vfstab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Diagnostics

not super user
The command is run by a non-root user. Run as root.

no such device
The device name specified does not exist.

not a directory
The specified mount point is not a directory.

is not an udfs file system
The device specified does not contain a udf 1.50 file system or the udfs file system module is not available.

is already mounted
The specified device is already in use.

not a block device
The device specified is not a block device. Use block device to mount.

write-protected
The device is read-only.

is corrupted. needs checking
The file system is in an inconsistent state. Run `fsck`.

Notes Copy-protected files can be stored on DVD-ROM media using Universal Disk Format (UDF). Reading these copy-protected files is not possible as this involves an authentication process. Unless an authentication process between the host and the drive is completed, reading these copy-protected files after mounting and before the authentication process, returns an error.

Name mount_ufs – mount ufs file systems

Synopsis mount -F ufs [*generic_options*] [-o *specific_options*]
 [-O] *special* | *mount_point*

mount -F ufs [*generic_options*] [-o *specific_options*]
 [-O] *special* *mount_point*

Description The mount utility attaches a ufs file system to the file system hierarchy at the *mount_point*, which is the pathname of a directory. If *mount_point* has any contents prior to the mount operation, these are hidden until the file system is unmounted.

The ufs file system supports direct mounting of files containing the file system as well as block devices. See [mount\(1M\)](#) and [lofiadm\(1M\)](#).

If mount is invoked with *special* or *mount_point* as the only arguments, mount will search /etc/vfstab to fill in the missing arguments, including the *specific_options*. See [mount\(1M\)](#).

If *special* and *mount_point* are specified without any *specific_options*, the default is rw.

If the directory on which a file system is to be mounted is a symbolic link, the file system is mounted on the directory to which the symbolic link refers, rather than on top of the symbolic link itself.

Options See [mount\(1M\)](#) for the list of supported *generic_options*.

The following options are supported:

-o *specific_options*

Specify ufs file system specific options in a comma-separated list with no intervening spaces. If invalid options are specified, a warning message is printed and the invalid options are ignored. The following options are available:

df_{ratime} | nod_{ratime}

By default, writing access time updates to the disk may be deferred (df_{ratime}) for the file system until the disk is accessed for a reason other than updating access times. nod_{ratime} disables this behavior.

If power management is enabled on the system, do not set nod_{ratime} unless noa_{time} is also set. If you set nod_{ratime} without setting noa_{time}, the disk is spun up every time a file within a file system on the disk is accessed - even if the file is not modified.

for_{cedirectio} | nofor_{cedirectio}

If for_{cedirectio} is specified and supported by the file system, then for the duration of the mount, forced direct I/O will be used. If the filesystem is mounted using for_{cedirectio}, data is transferred directly between user address space and the disk. If the filesystem is mounted using nofor_{cedirectio}, data is buffered in kernel address space when data is transferred between user address space and the disk. for_{cedirectio} is a performance option that is of benefit only in large sequential data transfers. The default behavior is nofor_{cedirectio}.

`global` | `noglobal`

If `global` is specified and supported on the file system, and the system in question is part of a cluster, the file system will be globally visible on all nodes of the cluster. If `noglobal` is specified, the mount will not be globally visible. The default behavior is `noglobal`.

`intr` | `nointr`

Allow (do not allow) keyboard interrupts to kill a process that is waiting for an operation on a locked file system. The default is `intr`.

`largefiles` | `nolargefiles`

If `nolargefiles` is specified and supported by the file system, then for the duration of the mount it is guaranteed that all regular files in the file system have a size that will fit in the smallest object of type `off_t` supported by the system performing the mount. The mount will fail if there are any files in the file system not meeting this criterion. If `largefiles` is specified, there is no such guarantee. The default behavior is `largefiles`.

If `nolargefiles` is specified, `mount` will fail for `ufs` if the file system to be mounted has contained a large file (a file whose size is greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte) since the last invocation of `fsck` on the file system. The large file need not be present in the file system at the time of the mount for the mount to fail; it could have been created previously and destroyed. Invoking `fsck` (see [fsck_ufs\(1M\)](#)) on the file system will reset the file system state if no large files are present. After invoking `fsck`, a successful mount of the file system with `nolargefiles` specified indicates the absence of large files in the file system; an unsuccessful mount attempt indicates the presence of at least one large file.

`logging` | `nologging`

If `logging` is specified, then logging is enabled for the duration of the mounted file system. Logging is the process of storing transactions (changes that make up a complete UFS operation) in a log before the transactions are applied to the file system. Once a transaction is stored, the transaction can be applied to the file system later. This prevents file systems from becoming inconsistent, therefore reducing the possibility that `fsck` might run. And, if `fsck` is bypassed, logging generally reduces the time required to reboot a system.

The default behavior is `logging` for all UFS file systems.

The log is allocated from free blocks in the file system, and is sized approximately 1 Mbyte per 1 Gbyte of file system, up to a maximum of 256 Mbytes. The log size may be larger (up to a maximum of 512 Mbytes) dependent upon the number of cylinder groups present in the file system.

Logging is enabled on any UFS file system, including root (`/`), except under the following conditions:

- When logging is specifically disabled.
- If there is insufficient file system space for the log. In this case, the following message is displayed and file system is still mounted:

```
# mount /dev/dsk/c0t4d0s0 /mnt
/mnt: No space left on device
Could not enable logging for /mnt on /dev/dsk/c0t4d0s0.
```

The log created by UFS logging is continually flushed as it fills up. The log is totally flushed when the file system is unmounted or as a result of the `lockfs -f` command.

m

Mount the file system without making an entry in `/etc/mnttab`.

noatime

By default, the file system is mounted with normal access time (`atime`) recording. If `noatime` is specified, the file system will ignore access time updates on files, except when they coincide with updates to the `ctime` or `mtime`. See [stat\(2\)](#). This option reduces disk activity on file systems where access times are unimportant (for example, a Usenet news spool).

`noatime` turns off access time recording regardless of `dfertime` or `nodftime`.

The POSIX standard requires that access times be marked on files. `-noatime` ignores them unless the file is also modified.

nosec

By default, Access Control Lists (ACLs) are supported on a mounted UFS file system. Use this option to disallow the setting or any modification of an ACL on a file within a mounted UFS file system. See [getfacl\(1\)](#) for background on ACLs.

onerror = *action*

This option specifies the action that UFS should take to recover from an internal inconsistency on a file system. Specify *action* as `panic`, `lock`, or `umount`. These values cause a forced system shutdown, a file system lock to be applied to the file system, or the file system to be forcibly unmounted, respectively. The default is `panic`.

quota

Quotas are turned on for the file system.

remount

Remounts a file system with a new set of options. All options not explicitly set with `remount` revert to their default values.

rq

Read-write with quotas turned on. Equivalent to `rw, quota`.

xattr | noxattr

Allow or disallow the creation and manipulation of extended attributes. The default is `xattr`. See [fsattr\(5\)](#) for a description of extended attributes.

-O

Overlay mount. Allow the file system to be mounted over an existing mount point, making the underlying file system inaccessible. If a mount is attempted on a pre-existing mount

point without setting this flag, the mount will fail, producing the error “device busy”.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Turning Off (and On) Logging

The following command turns off logging on an already mounted file system. The subsequent command restores logging.

```
# mount -F ufs -o remount,noLogging /export
# (absence of message indicates success)
# mount -F ufs -o remount,logging /export
```

In the preceding commands, the `-F ufs` option is not necessary.

Files `/etc/mnttab`
table of mounted file systems

`/etc/vfstab`
list of default parameters for each file system

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [getfacl\(1\)](#), [fsck\(1M\)](#), [fsck_ufs\(1M\)](#), [lofiadm\(1M\)](#), [mount\(1M\)](#), [mountall\(1M\)](#), [fcntl\(2\)](#), [mount\(2\)](#), [stat\(2\)](#), [mnttab\(4\)](#), [vfstab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [fsattr\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#)

Notes Since the root (`/`) file system is mounted read-only by the kernel during the boot process, only the `remount` option (and options that can be used in conjunction with `remount`) affect the root (`/`) entry in the `/etc/vfstab` file.

Name mpathadm – multipath discovery and administration

Synopsis mpathadm *subcommand direct-object [options] [operand]*

Description The mpathadm command enables multipathing discovery and management. The mpathadm command is implemented as a set of subcommands, many with their own options, that are described in the section for that subcommand. Options not associated with a particular subcommand are described under OPTIONS. The mpathadm subcommands operate on a *direct-object*. These are described in this section for each subcommand. The *direct-objects*, *initiator-port*, *target-port*, and *logical-unit* in the subcommands are consistent with SCSI standard definitions.

The mpathadm command supports the following subcommands, which are described in detail in subsections that follow.

list	Display a list of discovered instances for a given object.
show	Display information about a given object instance.
modify	Modify properties of an object.
enable	Enable an object.
disable	Disable an object.
failover	Cause target port group failover for a logical-unit.
override	Set a path to be used over other paths on a logical-unit.

The mpathadm subcommands operate on a *direct-object*. These are described in this section for each subcommand.

list Subcommand The syntax for the list subcommand is:

```
# mpathadm list direct-object [operands...]
```

The list subcommand displays data for following direct-objects:

mpath-support [*mpath-support-name, ...*]

List the multipathing support that can be administered by this CLI. This presents itself in the form of a library name registered through the MPAPI framework. If no mpath-support name *mpath-support-name* is specified, all registered multipathing support libraries will be displayed.

initiator-port [*initiator-port-name, ...*]

List the initiator ports that are discovered on this system. If no *initiator-port-name* is specified, all discovered initiator ports are displayed.

{*logical-unit* | *lu*} [*options*] [*logical-unit-name, ...*]

List the information on multipath logical units. If no *logical-unit-name* is specified, all discovered logical-units will be displayed.

Options for `list logical-unit` are as follows:

- n, --name *name* Return the logical unit name that is associated with the given name string. This name can be extracted from the output of the `mpathadm show lu` command.
- t, --target-port *target-port-name* Return the list of logical units names that are associated with the given *target-port-name*.

`show` Subcommand The syntax for the `show` subcommand is:

```
# mpathadm show direct-object [operands...]
```

The `show` subcommand displays detailed information for following the direct-objects:

```
mpath-support [mpath-support-name, ...]
```

Show the detailed information on the given *mpath-support-name* if the name exists. If the given *mpath-support-name* supports only a limited set of device products, the list of device products will be listed as part of the output.

```
initiator-port initiator-port-name[,initiator-port-name, ...]
```

Show the detailed information for the given *initiator-port-name*.

```
{logical-unit | lu} [logical-unit-name, ...]
```

Display the detailed information on multipath logical unit(s), including path and target port group information. Note that the name property in the logical unit information represents the identifier for this LUN, derived from the hardware, and used by this system. If the name is derived from SCSI Inquiry Vital Product Data (VPD) page 83h, the name type property represents an associated identifier type defined by the SCSI standards.

`modify` Subcommand The syntax for the `modify` subcommand is:

```
# mpathadm modify direct-object [options] [operands...]
```

The `modify` subcommand modifies characteristics of the following direct-objects:

```
mpath-support [options] mpath-support-name, ...
```

Configuration management of an *mpath-support*. Options to modify *mpath-support* are as follows:

`Set auto failback` Applicable only when *mpath-support* provides auto failback support.

`Set auto probing` Applicable only when *mpath-support* provides auto probing support.

`Change the default load balance type`. The load balance type is one of the

`{logical-unit | lu} [options] logical-unit-name, ...`

supported types listed in the `show mpath-support` output.

Configuration management of a logical unit. Options to modify `logical-unit` are as follows:

`Set auto-failback` Applicable only when `mpath-support` provides auto failback support

`Set auto-probing` Applicable only when `mpath-support` provides auto probing support.

`Set load-balance-type` Applicable only when load balance configuration is supported at the logical unit level.

`enable` Subcommand The syntax for the `enable` subcommand is:

```
# mpathadm enable [options]
```

The `enable` subcommand supports the following direct-objects to be enabled:

```
path -i initiator-port-name -t target-port-name
-l logical-unit-name
```

The path that consists of the specified initiator port, target port, and logical unit will be enabled.

`disable` Subcommand The syntax for the `disable` subcommand is:

```
# mpathadm disable [options]
```

The `disable` subcommand supports the following direct-objects to be disabled:

```
path -i initiator-port-name -t target-port-name
-l logical-unit-name
```

The path that consists of the specified initiator port, target port, and logical unit will be disabled.

`failover` Subcommand The syntax for the `failover` subcommand is:

```
# mpathadm failover direct-object [operand]
```

The `failover` subcommand supports failover for the following direct-objects:

```
{logical-unit | lu} logical-unit-name
```

The target port group will failover when the given logical-unit is asymmetric and supports explicit

state change. The currently active target port group will be changed to the standby state and the standby target port group will be active.

override Subcommand The syntax for the **override** subcommand is:

```
# mpathadm override [options]
```

The **override** subcommand controls whether or not the following direct-objects override another:

```
path {-i initiator-port-name -t target-port-name | -c}
-l logical-unit-name
```

Cause a path that consists of the specified initiator port, target port, and logical unit to override other paths on the logical unit. Once a path overrides other paths, the **mpath-support** uses only that path regardless of any other path selection configuration. The **-c** option cancels the setting. The path that consists of the specified initiator port, target port, and logical unit will be disabled.

Options for **override path** are as follows:

- | | |
|--|--|
| -i, --initiator-port <i>initiator-port-name</i> | Represent the initiator port element of a path. Options -t and -l must also be included. |
| -t, --target-port <i>target-port-name</i> | Represent the target port element of a path. Options -i and -l must also be included. |
| -l, --logical-unit <i>logical-unit</i> | Represent the logical unit element of a path. Options -i and -t must also be included. |
| -c, --cancel | Cancels overriding setting for the given logical unit. Option -l must also be included. |

Options The following options are supported:

- | | |
|----------------------|--|
| -V, --version | Display the version information. |
| -, --help | Display context help. Can be used following an mpathadm command with no arguments, following a subcommand, or following a subcommand direct-object combination. Responds with help information appropriate for your entry. For example, if you enter: |

```
# mpathadm add mpath-support-help
```

... **mpathadm** responds with a display of the options available for that combination of subcommand and direct-object.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Obtaining a List of Multipathing Support

The following command uses the `list` subcommand to list all currently registered `mpath-support` libraries.

```
# mpathadm list mpath-support
mpath-support: libmpscsi_vhci.so
```

EXAMPLE 2 Displaying the Properties of a Particular Multipathing Support

The following command uses the `show` subcommand to display the properties for a currently registered `mpath-support` library.

```
# mpathadm show mpath-support libmpscsi_vhci.so
mpath-support: libmpscsi_vhci.so
  Vendor: Sun Microsystems
  Driver Name: scsi_vhci
  Default Load Balance: round-robin
  Supported Load Balance Types:
    round-robin
    logical-block
  Allows To Activate Target Port Group Access: yes
  Allows Path Override: no
  Supported Auto Failback Config: 1
  Auto Failback: on
  Failback Polling Rate (current/max): 0/0
  Supported Auto Probing Config: 0
  Auto Probing: NA
  Probing Polling Rate (current/max): NA/NA
  Supported Devices:
    Vendor: SUN
    Product: T300
    Revision:
    Supported Load Balance Types:
      round-robin
    Vendor: SUN
    Product: T4
    Revision:
    Supported Load Balance Types:
      round-robin
```

EXAMPLE 3 Obtaining a List of Initiator Ports Discovered Through the `mpath-support` Libraries

The following command uses the `list initiator-port` subcommand to display a list of initiator ports discovered by the currently registered `mpath-support` libraries.

EXAMPLE 3 Obtaining a List of Initiator Ports Discovered Through the mpath-support Libraries
(Continued)

```
# mpathadm list initiator-port
Initiator-Port: iqn.1986-03.com.sun:01:080020b7ac2b.437a3b3e,4000002a0000
Initiator-Port: 2000000173018713
Initiator-Port: 2000000173818713
```

EXAMPLE 4 Displaying the Properties of a Particular Initiator Port

The following command uses the `show initiator-port` subcommand to display the properties of a particular initiator port discovered using the `list initiator-port` subcommand in an example above.

```
# mpathadm show initiator-port 2000000173018713
initiator-port:      2000000173018713
      Transport Type:      Fibre Channel
      OS device File:      devices/pci@1f,4000/pci@2/SUNW,q1ca@5/fp@0,0:fc
```

EXAMPLE 5 Displaying the Properties of a Particular Logical Unit

The following command uses the `show logical-unit` subcommand to display the properties of the logical unit with the specified name.

```
# mpathadm show lu /dev/rdisk/c4t60003BA27D2120004204AC2B000DAB00d0s2
Logical Unit: /dev/rdisk/c4t60003BA27D2120004204AC2B000DAB00d0s2
      mpath-support libmpscsi_vhci.so
      Vendor: SUN
      Product: T4
      Revision: 0301
      Name Type: SCSI Inquiry VPD Page 83 type 3
      Name: 60003ba27d2120004204ac2b000dab00
      Asymmetric: yes
      Current Load Balance: round-robin
      Logical Unit Group ID: NA
      Aauto Failback: on
      Auto Probing: NA
```

Paths:

```
      Initiator Port Name: 2000000173818713
      Target Port Name: 20030003ba27d212
      Override Path: NA
      Path State: OK
      Disabled: no
```

```
      Initiator Port Name: 2000000173018713
      Target Port Name: 20030003ba27d095
```

EXAMPLE 5 Displaying the Properties of a Particular Logical Unit *(Continued)*

```
Override Path: NA
Path State: OK
Disabled: no
```

Target Port Group:

```
ID: 2
Explicit Failover: yes
Access State: standby
Target Ports:
    Name: 20030003ba27d212
    Relative ID: 0
```

```
ID: 5
Explicit Failover: yes
Access State: active
Target Ports
    Name: 20030003ba27d095
    Relative ID: 0
```

EXAMPLE 6 Enabling a Path

The following command uses the `enable path` subcommand to enable the path with the specified initiator port, target port, and logical unit.

```
# mpathadm enable path -i 2000000173018713 -t 20030003ba27d095 \
-l /dev/rdisk/c4t60003BA27D2120004204AC2B000DAB00d0s2
```

EXAMPLE 7 Modifying `mpath-support` To Turn On `autofailback`

```
# mpathadm modify mpath-support -a on libmpscsi_vhci.so
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWmpapi
	SUNWmpapir (exec_attr(4) entry)
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [stmsboot\(1M\)](#), [libMPAPI\(3LIB\)](#), [exec_attr\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name mpstat – report per-processor or per-processor-set statistics

Synopsis /usr/bin/mpstat [-aq] [-p | -P *set*] [-T u | d] [*interval* [*count*]]

Description The `mpstat` command reports processor statistics in tabular form. Each row of the table represents the activity of one processor. The first table summarizes all activity since boot. Each subsequent table summarizes activity for the preceding interval. All values are rates listed as events per second unless otherwise noted.

During execution of the kernel status command, the state of the kernel can change. If relevant, a state change message is included in the `mpstat` output, in one of the following forms:

```
<<processor 3 moved from pset: -1 to: 1>>
<<pset destroyed: 1>>
<<pset created: 1>>
<<processors added: 1, 3>>
<<processors removed: 1, 3>>
```

The `mpstat` command reports the following information:

CPU or SET Without the `-a` option, `mpstat` reports CPU statistics for a processor ID. With the `-a` option, `mpstat` reports SET statistics for a processor set ID.

<code>minf</code>	minor faults
<code>mjf</code>	major faults
<code>xcal</code>	inter-processor cross-calls
<code>intr</code>	interrupts
<code>ithr</code>	interrupts as threads (not counting clock interrupt)
<code>csw</code>	context switches
<code>icsw</code>	involuntary context switches
<code>migr</code>	thread migrations (to another processor)
<code>smtx</code>	spins on mutexes (lock not acquired on first try)
<code>srw</code>	spins on readers/writer locks (lock not acquired on first try)
<code>syscl</code>	system calls
<code>usr</code>	percent user time
<code>sys</code>	percent system time
<code>wt</code>	the I/O wait time is no longer calculated as a percentage of CPU time, and this statistic will always return zero.
<code>idl</code>	percent idle time

size number of processors in the requested processor set
 set processor set membership of each CPU

Options The following options are supported:

-a Aggregate output by processor set. Sort the output by set. The default output is sorted by CPU number.
 -p Report processor set membership of each CPU. Sort the output by set. The default output is sorted by CPU number.
 -P *set* Display only those processors in the specified *set*.
 -q Suppress messages related to state changes.
 -T u | d Specify u for a printed representation of the internal representation of time. See [time\(2\)](#). Specify d for standard date format. See [date\(1\)](#).
interval Report once each *interval* seconds.
count Only print *count* reports.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Using `mpstat` to Generate User and System Operation Statistics

The following command generates processor statistics over a five-second interval in two reports. The command shows the processor set membership of each CPU. The default output is sorted by CPU number, aggregated by *processor set*, for user (*usr*) and system (*sys*) operations.

```
example% mpstat -ap 5 2
```

```
SET minf mjf xcal intr ithr csw icsw migr smtx srw syscl usr sys wt idl size
  0   6   0  355  291  190  22   0   0   0   0   43   0   2   0  43   1
  1  24  17  534  207  200  70   1   0   2   0  600   4   1   0  84   2
  2  19   7  353  325  318  44   0   0   5   0  345   1   1   0  94   3
  3  36   2  149  237  236  14   0   0   4   0   97   0   0   0  98   2
SET minf mjf xcal intr ithr csw icsw migr smtx srw syscl usr sys wt idl size
  0   1   0  720  405  304  55   0   0  18   0   12   0  15   0  81   1
  1   0  69 1955  230  200 313  33   4  41   9 7086  34  10   0  19   2
  2   0  46  685  314  300 203  11   0  54   1 5287  36   6   0  28   3
  3   0   0   14  386  384   0   0   0   0   0   0   0   0  100  2
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Interface Stability	See below.

Invocation is evolving. Human readable output is unstable.

See Also [sar\(1\)](#), [date\(1\)](#), [iostat\(1M\)](#), [sar\(1M\)](#), [vmstat\(1M\)](#), [time\(2\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes The sum of CPU utilization might vary slightly from 100 due to rounding errors in the production of a percentage figure.

The total time used for CPU processing is the sum of `usr` and `sys` output values, reported for user and system operations. The `idl` value reports the time that the CPU is idle for any reason other than pending disk I/O operations.

Run the `iostat` command with the `-x` option to report I/O service times in `svc_t` output. The `iostat` utility also reports the same `wt`, user (`us`), and system (`sy`) statistics. See [iostat\(1M\)](#) for more information.

When executing in a zone and if the pools facility is active, `mpstat(1M)` will only provide information for those processors which are a member of the processor set of the pool to which the zone is bound.

Name msgid – generate message IDs

Synopsis /usr/sbin/msgid

Description The msgid utility generates message IDs.

A message ID is a numeric identifier that uniquely identifies a message. Although the probability of two distinct messages having the same ID is high, this can be greatly reduced with the appropriate priority or facility.level designator (see [syslogd\(1M\)](#)). Specifically, the message ID is a hash signature on the message's unexpanded format string, generated by STRLOG_MAKE_MSGID() as defined in <sys/strlog.h>.

[syslogd\(1M\)](#) is a simple filter that takes strings as input and produces those same strings, preceded by their message IDs, as output. Every message logged by syslogd(1M) includes the message ID. The message ID is intended to serve as a small, language-independent identifier.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Using the msgid command to generate a message ID

The following example uses the msgid command to generate a message ID for the echo command.

```
example# echo hello | msgid205790 hello
```

EXAMPLE 2 Using the msgid command to generate a message catalog

The following example uses the msgid command to enumerate all of the messages in the binary ufs, to generate a message catalog.

```
example# strings /kernel/fs/ufs | msgid
```

```
137713 free:
    freeing free frag, dev:0x%lx, blk:%ld, cg:%d, ino:%lu, fs:%s
567420 iallocg: block not in mapfs = %s
845546 alloc: %s: file system full
...
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [syslogd\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [log\(7D\)](#)

Name mvdir – move a directory

Synopsis /usr/sbin/mvdir *dirname name*

Description mvdir moves directories within a file system. *dirname* must be a directory. If *name* does not exist, it will be created as a directory. If *name* does exist, and is a directory, *dirname* will be created as *name/dirname*. *dirname* and *name* may not be on the same path; that is, one may not be subordinate to the other. For example:

example% mvdir x/y x/z

is legal, but

example% mvdir x/y x/y/z

is not.

Operands *dirname* The name of the directory that is to be moved to another directory in the filesystem.

name The name of the directory into which *dirname* is to be moved. If *name* does not exist, it will be created. It may not be on the same path as *dirname*.

Usage See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of mvdir when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (2³¹ bytes).

Exit Status 0 Successful operation.

>0 Operation failed.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [mkdir\(1\)](#), [mv\(1\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#)

Name named, in.named – Internet domain name server

Synopsis named [-fgsvv] [-c *config-file*] [-d *debug-level*] [-m *flag*]
 [-n *#cpus*] [-p *port*] [-S *#max-socks*] [-t *directory*]
 [-u *user*] [-x *cache-file*] [-4 | -6]

Description The named utility is a Domain Name System (DNS) server, part of the BIND 9 distribution from ISC. For more information on the DNS, see RFCs 1033, 1034, and 1035.

When invoked without arguments, named reads the default configuration file /etc/named.conf, reads any initial data, and listens for queries.

in.named is a link to named.

Options The following options are supported:

- 4
Use only IPv4 transport. By default, both IPv4 and IPv6 transports can be used. Options -4 and -6 are mutually exclusive.
- 6
Use only IPv6 transport. By default, both IPv4 and IPv6 transports can be used. Options -4 and -6 are mutually exclusive.
- c *config-file*
Use *config-file* as the configuration file instead of the default /etc/named.conf. To ensure that reloading the configuration file continues to work after the server has changed its working directory due to a possible *directory* option in the configuration file, *config-file* should be an absolute pathname.
- d *debug-level*
Set the daemon's debug level to *debug-level*. Debugging traces from named become more verbose as the debug level increases.
- f
Run the server in the foreground (that is, do not run as a daemon).
- g
Run the server in the foreground and force all logging to stderr.
- m *flag*
Turn on memory usage debugging flags. Possible flags are usage, trace, and record, size, and mctx. These correspond to the ISC_MEM_DEBUGXXXX flags described in <isc/mem.h>.
- n *#cpus*
Create *#cpus* worker threads to take advantage of multiple CPUs. If not specified, named will try to determine the number of CPUs present and create one thread per CPU. If it is unable to determine the number of CPUs, a single worker thread will be created.
- p *port*
Listen for queries on port *port*. If not specified, the default is port 53.

-S #max-socks

Allow named to use up to #max-socks sockets.

This option should be unnecessary for the vast majority of users. The use of this option could even be harmful, because the specified value might exceed the limitation of the underlying system API. It therefore should be set only when the default configuration causes exhaustion of file descriptors and the operational environment is known to support the specified number of sockets. Note also that the actual maximum number is normally a little smaller than the specified value because named reserves some file descriptors for its internal use.

-S

Write memory usage statistics to *stdout* on exit.

This option is mainly of interest to BIND 9 developers and might be removed or changed in a future release.

-t directory

Change the root directory using [chroot\(2\)](#) to *directory* after processing the command line arguments, but before reading the configuration file.

This option should be used in conjunction with the -u option, as chrooting a process running as root does not enhance security on most systems; the way `chroot()` is defined allows a process with root privileges to escape a chroot jail.

-u user

Set the real user ID using [setuid\(2\)](#) to *user* after completing privileged operations, such as creating sockets that listen on privileged ports.

-V

Report the version number and build options, and exit.

-v

Report the version number and exit.

-x cache-file

Load data from *cache-file* into the cache of the default view.

Do not use this option. It is of interest only to BIND 9 developers and might be removed or changed in a future release.

Extended Description

This section describes additional attributes of named.

SMF Properties

When starting named from the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), named configuration is read from the service configuration repository. Use [svccprop\(1\)](#) to list the properties and [svccfg\(1M\)](#) to make changes.

The following application configuration properties are available to administrators:

`options/server`

Specifies the server executable to be used instead of the default server, `/usr/sbin/named`.

`options/configuration_file`

Specifies the configuration file to be used instead of the default, `/etc/named.conf`. A directory option might be specified in the configuration file. To ensure that reloading the configuration file continues to work in such a situation, `configuration_file` should be specified as an absolute pathname. This pathname should not include the `chroot_dir` pathname. This property is the equivalent of the `-c` option.

`options/ip_interfaces`

Specifies over which IP transport, IPv4 or IPv6, BIND will transmit. Possible values are IPv4 or IPv6. Any other setting assumes `all`, the default. This property is the equivalent of command line option `-4` or `-6`

`options/listen_on_port`

Specifies the default UDP and TCP port to be used for listening to DNS requests. This property is the equivalent of the command line option `-p port`.

`options/debug_level`

Specifies the default debug level. The default is 0, which means no debugging. The higher the number the more verbose debug information becomes. Equivalent of the command line option `-d debug_level`.

`options/threads`

Specifies the number of CPU worker threads to create. The default of 0 causes named to try and determine the number of CPUs present and create one thread per CPU. Equivalent of command line option `-n #cpus`.

`options/chroot_dir`

Specifies the directory to be used as the root directory after processing SMF properties and the command line arguments but before reading the configuration file. Use this property when using a `chroot(2)` environment. Synonymous to command line option `-t pathname`.

When using `chroot(2)`, named is unable to disable itself when receiving `rndc(1M)` `stop` or `halt` commands. Instead, you must use the `svcadm(1M)` `disable` command.

In the event of a configuration error originating in one of the above SMF application options, named displays a message providing information about the error and the parameters that need correcting. The process then exits with exit code `SMF_EXIT_ERR_CONFIG`.

At startup, in the event of an error other than a configuration error, named exits with exit code `SMF_EXIT_ERR_FATAL`. Both of this code and `SMF_EXIT_ERR_CONFIG` cause the start method, `smf_method(5)`, to place the service in the maintenance state, which can be observed with the `svcs(1)` command `svcs -x`.

In addition to the properties listed above, the following property can be used to invoke named as a user other than root:

start/user

Specifies the identity of the user that is invoking named. See [smf_method\(5\)](#) and [chroot\(2\)](#). Note that the user must have `solaris.smf.manage.bind` authorization. Without this role the named will be unable to manage its SMF FMRI and named will automatically be restarted by the SMF after an [rndc\(1M\)](#) `stop` or `halt` command. See EXAMPLES for a sequence of commands that establishes the correct authorization.

SIGNALS In routine operation, signals should not be used to control the nameserver; [rndc\(1M\)](#) should be used instead.

SIGHUP

Force a reload of the server.

SIGINT, SIGTERM

Shut down the server.

The result of sending any other signals to the server is undefined.

Configuration The named configuration file is too complex to describe in detail here. A list of configuration options is provided in the `named.conf` man page shipped with the BIND 9 distribution. A complete description is provided in the *BIND 9 Administrator Reference Manual*.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Configuring named to Transmit Only over IPv4 Networks

The following command sequence configures named such that it will transmit only over IPv4 networks.

```
# svccfg -s svc:network/dns/server:default setprop \  
> options/ip_interfaces=IPv4  
# svcadm refresh svc:network/dns/server:default  
#
```

EXAMPLE 2 Listing Current Configuration File and Setting an Alternative File

The following sequence of commands lists the current named configuration file and sets an alternative file.

```
# svcprop -p options/configuration_file dns/server:default  
/etc/named.conf  
# svccfg -s dns/server:default setprop \  
> options/configuration_file=/var/named/named.conf  
# svcadm refresh dns/server:default  
# svcprop -p options/configuration_file dns/server:default  
/var/named/named.conf
```

EXAMPLE 3 Establishing Appropriate Authorization for named

To have named start with the `solaris.smf.manage.bind` authorization, perform the steps shown below.

Add the user `dnsadmin` to the `solaris.smf.manage.bind` role:

```
# usermod -A solaris.smf.manage.bind dnsadmin
Observe effect of command:
# tail -1 /etc/user_attr
dnsadmin:::type=normal;auths=solaris.smf.manage.bind
```

Modify the service properties:

```
# svccfg
svc:> select svc:/network/dns/server:default
svc:/network/dns/server:default> setprop start/user = dnsadmin
svc:/network/dns/server:default> setprop start/group = dnsadmin
svc:/network/dns/server:default> exit
# svcadm refresh svc:/network/dns/server:default
# svcadm restart svc:/network/dns/server:default
```

Because only root has write access to create the default process-ID file, `/var/run/named/named.pid`, named must be configured to use an alternative path for the user `dnsadmin`. Here is an example of how to accomplish this:

```
# mkdir /var/named/tmp
# chown dnsadmin /var/named/tmp
```

Shown below is what you must add to `named.conf` to make use of the directory created above.

```
# head /etc/named.conf
options {
directory "/var/named";
pid-file "/var/named/tmp/named.pid";
};
```

Files `/etc/named.conf`
 default configuration file

`/var/run/named/named.pid`
 default process-ID file

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWbind
Interface Stability	External

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [named-checkconf\(1M\)](#), [named-checkzone\(1M\)](#), [rndc\(1M\)](#), [rndc-confgen\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [svcprop\(1\)](#), [chroot\(2\)](#), [setuid\(2\)](#), [bind\(3SOCKET\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [smf_method\(5\)](#)

RFC 1033, RFC 1034, RFC 1035

See the *BIND 9 Administrator's Reference Manual*. As of the date of publication of this man page, this document is available at <https://www.isc.org/software/bind/documentation>.

The `named.conf` man page shipped with the BIND 9 distribution

- Name** named-checkconf – named configuration file syntax checking tool
- Synopsis** named-checkconf [-hvjz] [-t *directory*] *filename*
- Description** The named-checkconf utility checks the syntax, but not the semantics, of a specified configuration file.
- Options** The following options are supported:
- h
Display the usage summary and exit.
 - j
When loading a zonefile, read the journal if it exists.
 - t *directory*
Change the root directory to *directory* so that include directives in the configuration file are processed as if run by a named configuration whose root directory has been similarly changed.
 - v
Print the version of the named-checkconf program and exit.
 - z
Perform a test load of the master zones found in named.conf.
- Operands** The following operands are supported:
- filename*
The name of the configuration file to be checked. If not specified, it defaults to /etc/named.conf.
- Exit Status**
- 0
No errors were detected.
 - 1
An error was detected.
- Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWbind
Interface Stability	External

See Also [named\(1M\)](#), [named-checkzone\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

See the BIND 9 *Administrator's Reference Manual*. As of the date of publication of this man page, this document is available at <https://www.isc.org/software/bind/documentation>.

Name named-checkzone, named-compilezone – zone file validity checking or converting tool

Synopsis named-checkzone [-Ddhjqv] [-c *class*] [-F *format*] [-f *format*]
[-i *mode*] [-k *mode*] [-M *mode*] [-m *mode*] [-n *mode*]
[-o *filename*] [-S *mode*] [-s *style*] [-t *directory*]
[-W *mode*] [-w *directory*] *zonename filename*

named-compilezone [-Ddjqv] [-C *mode*] [-c *class*] [-F *format*]
[-f *format*] [-i *mode*] [-k *mode*] [-m *mode*] [-n *mode*]
[-o *filename*] [-s *style*] [-t *directory*]
[-W *mode*] [-w *directory*] *zonename filename*

Description The named-checkzone utility checks the syntax and integrity of a zone file. It performs the same checks as [named\(1M\)](#) does when loading a zone. The named-checkzone utility is useful for checking zone files before configuring them into a name server.

named-compilezone is similar to named-checkzone, differing in that it always dumps the zone contents to a specified file in a specified format. Additionally, it applies stricter check levels by default, since the dump output will be used as an actual zone file loaded by [named\(1M\)](#). Unless manually specified otherwise, the check levels must be at least as strict as those specified in the named configuration file.

Options For either or both utilities, the following options are supported:

-c *class*

Specify the class of the zone. If not specified, “IN” is assumed.

-D

Dump zone file in canonical format.

-d

Enable debugging.

-F *format*

Specify the format of the output file specified. Possible formats are text (default) and raw. For named-checkzone, this does not cause any effects unless it dumps the zone contents.

-f *format*

Specify the format of the zone file. Possible formats are text (default) and raw.

-h

Display usage message for named-checkzone.

-i *mode*

Perform post-load zone integrity checks. Possible modes are full (default), full-sibling, local, local-sibling, and none.

Mode full checks that MX records refer to the A or AAAA record (both in-zone and out-of-zone hostnames). Mode local checks only MX records that refer to in-zone hostnames.

Mode `full` checks that SRV records refer to the A or AAAA record (both in-zone and out-of-zone hostnames). Mode `local` checks only SRV records that refer to in-zone hostnames.

Mode `full` checks that delegation NS records refer to A or AAAA record (both in-zone and out-of-zone hostnames). It also checks that glue address records in the zone match those advertised by the child. Mode `local` checks only NS records that refer to in-zone hostnames or check that some required glue exists, that is, when the nameserver is in a child zone.

Mode `full-sibling` and `local-sibling` disable sibling glue checks, but are otherwise the same as `full` and `local`, respectively.

Mode `none` disables the checks.

-k *mode*

Perform “check-name” checks with the specified failure mode. Possible modes are `fail` (default for `named-compilezone`), `warn` (default for `named-checkzone`) and `ignore`.

-j

Read the journal, if it exists, when loading the zone file.

-M *mode*

Check if an MX record refers to a CNAME. Possible modes are `fail`, `warn` (default) and `ignore`.

-m *mode*

Specify whether MX records should be checked to see if they are addresses. Possible modes are `fail`, `warn` (default) and `ignore`.

-n *mode*

Specify whether NS records should be checked to see if they are addresses. Possible modes are `fail` (default for `named-compilezone`), `warn` (default for `named-checkzone`) and `ignore`.

-o *filename*

Write zone output to *filename*. If *filename* is - (a hyphen), then write to standard out. The hyphen mandatory for `named-compilezone`

-q

Run in quiet mode, reporting only the exit status.

-S *mode*

Check if a SRV record refers to a CNAME. Possible modes are `fail`, `warn` (default) and `ignore`.

-s *style*

Specify the style of the dumped zone file. Possible styles are `full` (default) and `relative`. The `full` format is most suitable for processing automatically by a separate script. The `relative` format is more human-readable and is thus suitable for editing by hand. For

named - checkzone this option does not cause any effects unless it dumps the zone contents. It also has no effect if the output format is not text.

-t *directory*

chroot to *directory* so that include directives in the configuration file are processed as if run by a similarly chrooted named.

-v

Print the version of the named - checkzone program and exit.

-W *mode*

Specify whether to check for non-terminal wildcards. Non-terminal wildcards are almost always the result of a failure to understand the wildcard matching algorithm (RFC 1034). Possible modes are warn (default) and ignore.

-w *directory*

chdir to *directory* so that relative filenames in master file \$INCLUDE directives work. This is similar to the directory clause in named.conf.

Operands The following operands are supported:

filename

The name of the zone file.

zonename

The domain name of the zone being checked.

Exit Status 0

No errors were detected.

1

An error was detected.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWbind
Interface Stability	External

See Also [named\(1M\)](#), [named-checkconf\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

RFC 1035

See the BIND 9 *Administrator's Reference Manual*. As of the date of publication of this man page, this document is available at <https://www.isc.org/software/bind/documentation>.

Name ncaconfd – Solaris Network Cache and Accelerator (NCA) configuration daemon

Synopsis /usr/lib/inet/ncaconfd [-al] *interface1* [*interface2* ...]

Description Use the ncaconfd utility to set up NCA on a system. At boot time, the ncakmod initialization script reads in [nca.if\(4\)](#) to determine on which interface(s) NCA should run. ncaconfd then sets up the interface.

ncaconfd also operates as a daemon if the nca_active key is set to enabled in [ncakmod.conf\(4\)](#) file. In this case, ncaconfd will continue as a daemon after all the NCA interfaces have been set up, listening for routing changes. The changes are then passed to NCA to control which interface NCA should use to make active outgoing TCP connections.

Options The following options are supported:

- a Enable active connections.
- l Enable logging.

Files /etc/nca/ncakmod.conf

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWncau
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [nca\(1\)](#), [ncakmod\(1\)](#), [nca.if\(4\)](#), [ncakmod.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name ncheck – generate a list of path names versus i-numbers

Synopsis ncheck [-F *FSType*] [-V] [*generic_options*]
[-o *FSType-specific_options*] [*special*] . . .

Description ncheck with no options generates a path-name versus i-number list of all files on *special*. If *special* is not specified on the command line the list is generated for all *specials* in */etc/vfstab* which have a numeric *fsckpass*. *special* is the raw device on which the file system exists.

Options

- F Specify the *FSType* on which to operate. The *FSType* should either be specified here or be determinable from */etc/vfstab* by finding an entry in the table that has a numeric *fsckpass* field and an *fsckdev* that matches *special*.
- V Echo the complete command line, but do not execute the command. The command line is generated by using the options and arguments provided by the user and adding to them information derived from */etc/vfstab*. This option may be used to verify and validate the command line.
- generic_options* Options that are commonly supported by most *FSType*-specific command modules. The following options are available:
 - i *i-list* Limit the report to the files on the *i-list* that follows. The *i-list* must be separated by commas with no intervening spaces.
 - a Print the names “.” and “..” which are ordinarily suppressed.
 - s Report only special files and files with set-user-ID mode. This option may be used to detect violations of security policy.
- o Specify *FSType-specific_options* in a comma separated (without spaces) list of suboptions and keyword-attribute pairs for interpretation by the *FSType*-specific module of the command.

Usage See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of ncheck when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (2^{31} bytes).

Files */etc/vfstab* list of default parameters for each file system

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [vfstab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#) Manual pages for the *FSType*-specific modules of ncheck

Notes This command may not be supported for all *FSTypes*.

Name ncheck_ufs – generate pathnames versus i-numbers for ufs file systems

Synopsis ncheck -F ufs [*generic_options*] [-o m] [*special*]...

Description ncheck -F ufs generates a pathname versus i-number list of files for the ufs file system residing on *special*. Names of directory files are followed by '/. '.

Options See [ncheck\(1M\)](#) for the list of *generic_options* supported.

- o Specify ufs file system specific options. The available option is:
 - m Print mode information.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [ff\(1M\)](#), [ncheck\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Diagnostics When the file system structure is improper, '??' denotes the "parent" of a parentless file and a pathname beginning with './.' denotes a loop.

Name nnd – get and set driver configuration parameters

Synopsis nnd [-set] *driver parameter* [*value*]

Description nnd gets and sets selected configuration parameters in some kernel drivers. Currently, nnd only supports the drivers that implement the TCP/IP Internet protocol family. Each driver chooses which parameters to make visible using nnd. Since these parameters are usually tightly coupled to the implementation, they are likely to change from release to release. Some parameters may be read-only.

If the -set option is omitted, nnd queries the named *driver*, retrieves the value associated with the specified *parameter*, and prints it. If the -set option is given, nnd passes *value*, which must be specified, down to the named *driver* which assigns it to the named *parameter*.

By convention, drivers that support nnd also support a special read-only *parameter* named “?” which can be used to list the parameters supported by the driver.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Getting Parameters Supported By The TCP Driver

To see which parameters are supported by the TCP driver, use the following command:

```
example% nnd /dev/tcp \?
```

The parameter name “?” may need to be escaped with a backslash to prevent its being interpreted as a shell meta character.

The following command sets the value of the parameter *ip_forwarding* in the dual stack IP driver to zero. This disables IPv4 packet forwarding.

```
example% nnd -set /dev/ip ip_forwarding 0
```

Similarly, in order to disable IPv6 packet forwarding, the value of parameter *ip6_forwarding*

```
example% nnd -set /dev/ip ip6_forwarding 0
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [nca\(1\)](#), [dladm\(1M\)](#), [ioctl\(2\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [arp\(7P\)](#), [ip\(7P\)](#), [ip6\(7P\)](#), [tcp\(7P\)](#), [udp\(7P\)](#)

Notes The parameters supported by each driver may change from release to release. Like programs that read /dev/kmem, user programs or shell scripts that execute nnd should be prepared for parameter names to change.

The `ioctl()` command that nnd uses to communicate with drivers is likely to change in a future release. User programs should avoid making dependencies on it.

The use of `nnd` to administer Layer 2 (Data Link layer) drivers is strongly discouraged as this capability is to be obsoleted in a future release, replaced by [`dladm\(1M\)`](#). Please refer to the driver-specific man page in section 7D of the SunOS man pages.

The meanings of many `nnd` parameters make sense only if you understand how the driver is implemented.

If a TCP driver sends a report that is truncated, it could be because that driver uses `nnd` for transporting the report. `nnd` imposes a 64K limit on such reports.

Name ndmpadm – administer Network Data Management Protocol activities

Synopsis /usr/sbin/ndmpadm [-?] *subcommand* [*options*] [*direct-object*]

Description The ndmpadm command can be used to query the [ndmpd\(1M\)](#) daemon to get the status of active sessions, terminate a session, query backup devices, and set or get the current NDMP (Network Data Management Protocol) service variables and properties. ndmpadm is implemented as a set of subcommands, many with their own direct object, which are described in the section for a given subcommand. Certain subcommands support options, which are described along with the subcommand.

The ndmpadm command supports the following subcommands:

disable

Disable the specified authentication password handling.

enable

Enable the specified authentication password handling.

get

Get the value of an NDMP configuration property.

kill-sessions

Terminate an active session.

set

Set the value of an NDMP configuration property.

show-devices

Get a list of tape devices connected to the server.

show-sessions

Display the details of active NDMP sessions.

Options The following option is supported:

-? Display a list of all subcommands and options.

Sub-commands The ndmpadm command supports the subcommands described below.

disable Subcommand The syntax for the `disable` subcommand is:

```
# ndmpadm disable -a auth-type
```

This subcommand disables the authentication type specified by *auth-type* for an NDMP client's remote access. Valid values for *auth-type* are `cram-md5` or `cleartext`.

enable Subcommand The syntax for the `enable` subcommand is:

```
# ndmpadm enable -a auth-type -u username
```

This subcommand prompts for the user's password twice for confirmation and activates the specified authentication type with the given username and password for NDMP client access. Valid values for *auth-type* are *cram-md5* or *clear-text*.

get Subcommand The syntax for the `get` subcommand is:

```
# ndmpadm get [-p] [property] [[-p] property=value]...
```

The property names are the same as used for the `set` subcommand and are described below. If you do not specify a property, the `get` subcommand returns all configuration properties.

kill-sessions Subcommand The `kill-sessions` subcommand allows you to terminate the session number *ID*.

The syntax for the `kill-sessions` subcommand is:

```
# ndmpadm kill-sessions ID
```

set Subcommand The syntax for the `set` subcommand is:

```
# ndmpadm set [-p] property=value [[-p] property=value]...
```

The properties you can set with the `set` subcommand are described in the [ndmp\(4\)](#) man page.

show-devices Subcommand The syntax for the `show-devices` subcommand is:

```
# ndmpadm show-devices
```

This subcommand lists the name, vendor, serial number, and other information about the current tape drive and libraries connected to the system.

show-sessions Subcommand The `show-sessions` subcommand displays details of a session. The syntax for the `show-sessions` subcommand is:

```
# ndmpadm show-sessions [-i tape,scsi,data,mover] [ID]
```

The `show-sessions` subcommand supports the following arguments:

`-i tape,scsi,data,mover`

Identify a type of interface about which to obtain data. If no interface is specified, `show-sessions` displays information for all types of interfaces.

ID

Identifies a particular session about which to display data. If no *ID* is specified, `show-sessions` displays data for all sessions.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Obtaining the Status of All NDMP Connections

The following command obtains status on all connections.

```
# ndmpadm show-devices
```

EXAMPLE 2 Obtaining the Status of Certain Types of Connections

The following command obtains status on tape and SCSI interfaces.

```
# ndmpadm show-sessions -i scsi,tape
```

EXAMPLE 3 Limiting Protocol Version

The following command limits the use of the NDMP protocol to version 3.

```
# ndmpadm set -p version=3
```

EXAMPLE 4 Turning on Debugging

The following command enables debugging. It also sets the NDMP protocol to version 3.

```
# ndmpadm set -p debug-level=1 -p version=3
```

EXAMPLE 5 Obtaining Current Version Number

The following command obtains the version number of the currently running NDMP.

```
# ndmpadm get -p version
```

EXAMPLE 6 Disconnecting a Specific Session

The command shown below disconnects session 5. The session number was previously obtained from an `ndmpadm show-sessions` command.

```
# ndmpadm kill-session 5
```

EXAMPLE 7 Obtaining the Values for All NDMP Properties

The following command obtains the values for all NDMP properties.

```
# ndmpadm get
```

EXAMPLE 8 Enabling CRAM-MD5 Authentication

The following command enables CRAM-MD5 authentication.

```
# ndmpadm enable -a cram-md5 -u admin
```

```
Enter new password:*****
```

```
Re-enter password:*****
```

EXAMPLE 9 Disabling Clear Text Password Authentication

The following command disables clear text password authentication.

```
# ndmpadm disable -a cleartext
```

- Exit Status**
- 0 Successful completion.
 - 1 An error occurred, such as the ndmpd daemon is not running, that prevented ndmpadm from contacting the demon.
 - 2 Invalid command-line options were specified.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWndmpu, SUNWndmpr
Interface Stability	Committed

See Also [dump\(1\)](#), [tar\(1\)](#), [ndmpd\(1M\)](#), [ndmpstat\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [syslogd\(1M\)](#), [ndmp\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Notes The [ndmpd\(1M\)](#) daemon is managed by the service management facility ([smf\(5\)](#)), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/ndmpd
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as setting and getting a property can be alternatively performed using [svccfg\(1M\)](#). For example to enable Direct Access Recovery (DAR) mode:

```
# svccfg -s svc:/system/ndmpd
svc:/system/ndmpd> setprop ndmpd/dar-support = yes
```

...and to get the list of properties:

```
# svccfg -s svc:/system/ndmpd
svc:/system/ndmpd> listprop
```

Name ndmpd – Network Data Management Protocol daemon

Synopsis /usr/lib/ndmp/ndmpd [-d]

Description The ndmpd daemon handles client Network Data Management Protocol (NDMP) requests. NDMP is an open, enterprise-wide, network-based data management protocol used for backup and recovery. The ndmpd daemon enables users to manage data backup and recovery using Data Management Application (DMA) clients. The NDMP protocol is used to coordinate data movement and control between a DMA and an NDMP server or between two NDMP servers.

By default, ndmpd is disabled.

Options The following option is supported:

-d
Debugging mode; log file will be created.

Exit Status

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 An error occurred that prevented the ndmpd daemon from initializing, such as failure to fork a process, mutex initialization.
- 2 Invalid command-line options were specified.

Files

- /usr/lib/ndmp/ndmpd
Network data management protocol server binary.
- /var/ndmp/ndmp.log
Network data management protocol log messages file. This file is deleted upon reboot.
- /var/ndmp/dumpdates
A text file that stores information about the date and the level of dump backups.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWndmpu, SUNWndmpr
Interface Stability	Committed

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [ndmpadm\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [syslogd\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Notes The ndmpd daemon is managed by the service management facility ([smf\(5\)](#)), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/ndmp:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name ndmpstat – show NDMP backup progress statistics

Synopsis ndmpstat [*tapes*] [*interval* [*count*]]

Description The ndmpstat utility reports Network Data Management Protocol (NDMP) statistics, among which are NDMP worker threads, disk IO, tape IO, files operation, performance, and backup activity.

ndmpstat reports the aggregate statistics for all tapes and disks. In order to obtain statistics for specific tape devices, the tape device name should be passed as argument to the utility.

When invoked, ndmpstat begins its display with a one-line summary of the NDMP daemon activity since the NDMP service was invoked.

Display Fields The fields in ndmpstat output are described as follows:

wthr

Report the number of worker threads in each of the four following states:

r

the number of worker threads running

w

the number of blocked worker threads that are waiting for resources such as I/O and paging

b

the number of backup operations currently running

r

the number of restore operations currently running

file

Report on usage of filesystem.

rd

the number of files being read

wr

the number of files being written

disk

Report the number of disk operations per interval.

rd

the number of disk blocks being read

wr

the number of disk blocks being written

tape

Report the number of tape operations per interval. There are slots for up to four tapes, labeled with a single number. The number indicates the name of the device under /dev/rmt.

rd

the number of tape blocks being read

wr

the number of tape blocks being written

bytes

Report the number of bytes transferred. This is the aggregate value of both tape and disk devices. The number is in kilobytes.

rd

the number of kilobytes being read

wr

the number of kilobytes being written

perf

Displays a rough estimate of performance of the backup/restore operation in megabytes per second.

bk

backup performance

rs

restore performance

prcnt

Display the comparative usage of resources, in percent.

dsk

disk I/O time

tpe

tape I/O time

otr

other time (memory or idle)

See EXAMPLES.

Operands The following operands are supported:

- | | |
|--------------|---|
| <i>count</i> | Specifies the number of times that the statistics display is repeated. |
| <i>tape</i> | Specifies which tapes are to be given priority in the output. A command line is limited to a maximum of four tape devices. A common tape name is /dev/rmt/ <i>n</i> , where <i>n</i> is an integer. |

interval Specifies the number of seconds over which ndmpstat summarizes activity. The specified interval remains in effect till the command is terminated.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Using ndmpstat

The following command displays a summary of NDMP daemon activity at five-second intervals.

```
example% ndmpstat 5
wthr      file      disk      tape      bytes      perf      prcnt
r w b r rd wr   rd wr   rd wr   rd wr   bk rs dsk tpe otr
1 0 3 6 50 9   1250 0   32544 4455  42335 3234  5 4  20  40  40
1 0 0 1 1 0   128 0   0 128   64 64  1 0  0  80  20
1 0 0 1 2 0   128 0   0 0     64 0  1 0  80  0  20
1 0 0 1 1 0   128 0   0 0     64 0  1 0  80  0  20
1 0 0 1 3 0   128 0   0 0     64 0  0 0  80  0  20
1 0 0 1 1 0   128 0   0 128   64 64  1 0  0  80  20
^C
example%
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWndmpu
Interface Stability	See below

Invocation is evolving. Human readable output is unstable.

See Also [iostat\(1M\)](#), [mpstat\(1M\)](#), [ndmpd\(1M\)](#), [ndmpadm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes Performance numbers are not accurate and are rounded up at the MB/sec. boundary.

Name netservices – enable or disable network services

Synopsis netservices open
netservices limited

Description The `net services` command uses the Solaris service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), to control services that accept over the network from remote clients.

When `net services` is invoked with the `limited` command-line argument, all network services except the secure shell daemon, `sshd(1M)`, are either disabled or constrained to respond to local requests only.

Invoking `net services` with the `open` command-line argument enables a large set of network services, as in previous releases of Solaris.

To customize the configuration set enabled by `net services`, use [svcadm\(1M\)](#) to enable or disable individual services. Use [svccfg\(1M\)](#) to set properties that determine whether a service accepts input from remote clients. See the man pages for individual services for the names of service instances and their properties.

Note that the `net services` command has an interface stability of `Obsolete`.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Obsolete

See Also [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [sshd\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Name netstat – show network status

Synopsis netstat [-anvR] [-f *address_family*] [-P *protocol*]
netstat -g [-nv] [-f *address_family*]
netstat -p [-n] [-f *address_family*]
netstat -s [-f *address_family*] [-P *protocol*]
 [-T u | d] [*interval* [*count*]]
netstat -m [-T u | d] [-v] [*interval* [*count*]]
netstat -i [-I *interface*] [-an] [-f *address_family*]
 [-T u | d] [*interval* [*count*]]
netstat -r [-anvR] [-f *address_family* | *filter*]
netstat -M [-ns] [-f *address_family*]
netstat -D [-I *interface*] [-f *address_family*]
netstat -d [-f *address_family*]

Description The `netstat` command displays the contents of certain network-related data structures in various formats, depending on the options you select.

The `netstat` command has the several forms shown in the SYNOPSIS section, above, listed as follows:

- The first form of the command (with no required arguments) displays a list of active sockets for each protocol.
- The second, third, and fourth forms (-g, -p, and -s options) display information from various network data structures.
- The fifth form (-m option) displays STREAMS memory statistics.
- The sixth form (-i option) shows the state of the interfaces.
- The seventh form (-r option) displays the routing table.
- The eighth form (-M option) displays the multicast routing table.
- The ninth form (-D option) displays the state of DHCP on one or all interfaces.
- The tenth form (-d option) displays the table of destination cache entries.

These forms are described in greater detail below.

With no arguments (the first form), `netstat` displays connected sockets for PF_INET, PF_INET6, and PF_UNIX, unless modified otherwise by the -f option.

Options -a

Show the state of all sockets, all routing table entries, or all interfaces, both physical and logical. Normally, listener sockets used by server processes are not shown. Under most conditions, only interface, host, network, and default routes are shown and only the status of physical interfaces is shown.

-d

Show the destination cache entry table. See `DISPLAYS`, below.

-f *address_family*

Limit all displays to those of the specified *address_family*. The value of *address_family* can be one of the following:

inet For the AF_INET address family showing IPv4 information.

inet6 For the AF_INET6 address family showing IPv6 information.

unix For the AF_UNIX address family.

-f *filter*

With -r only, limit the display of routes to those matching the specified filter. A filter rule consists of a *keyword:value* pair. The known keywords and the value syntax are:

af:{inet|inet6|unix|number} Selects an address family. This is identical to -f *address_family* and both syntaxes are supported.

outif:{name|ifIndex|any|none} Selects an output interface. You can specify the interface by name (such as hme0) or by ifIndex number (for example, 2). If any is used, the filter matches all routes having a specified interface (anything other than null). If none is used, the filter matches all routes having a null interface. Note that you can view the index number (*ifIndex*) for an interface with the -a option of `ifconfig(1M)`.

dst:{ip-address[/mask]|any|none} Selects a destination IP address. If specified with a mask length, then any routes with matching or longer (more specific) masks are selected. If any is used, then all but addresses but 0 are selected. If none is used, then address 0 is selected.

flags:[+ -]?[ABDGHLSU]+ Selects routes tagged with the specified flags. By default, the flags as specified must be set in order to match. With a leading +, the flags specified must be set but others are ignored. With a leading -, the flags specified must not be set and others are permitted.

You can specify multiple instances of -f to specify multiple filters. For example:

```
% netstat -nr -f outif:hme0 -f outif:hme1 -f dst:10.0.0.0/8
```

The preceding command displays routes within network 10.0.0.0/8, with mask length 8 or greater, and an output interface of either hme0 or hme1, and excludes all other routes.

- g
Show the multicast group memberships for all interfaces. If the -v option is included, source-specific membership information is also displayed. See `DISPLAYS`, below.
- i
Show the state of the interfaces that are used for IP traffic. Normally this shows statistics for the physical interfaces. When combined with the -a option, this will also report information for the logical interfaces. See `ifconfig(1M)`.
- m
Show the STREAMS memory statistics.
- n
Show network addresses as numbers. `netstat` normally displays addresses as symbols. This option may be used with any of the display formats.
- p
Show the net to media tables. See `DISPLAYS`, below.
- r
Show the routing tables. Normally, only interface, host, network, and default routes are shown, but when this option is combined with the -a option, all routes will be displayed, including cache. If you have not set up a multicast route, -ra might not show any multicast routing entries, although the kernel will derive such an entry if needed.
- s
Show per-protocol statistics. When used with the -M option, show multicast routing statistics instead. When used with the -a option, per-interface statistics will be displayed, when available, in addition to statistics global to the system. See `DISPLAYS`, below.
- T u | d
Display a time stamp.

Specify u for a printed representation of the internal representation of time. See `time(2)`.
Specify d for standard date format. See `date(1)`.
- v
Verbose. Show additional information for the sockets, STREAMS memory statistics, routing table, and multicast group memberships.
- I *interface*
Show the state of a particular interface. *interface* can be any valid interface such as hme0 or eri0. Normally, the status and statistics for physical interfaces are displayed. When this option is combined with the -a option, information for the logical interfaces is also reported.

- M
Show the multicast routing tables. When used with the `-s` option, show multicast routing statistics instead.
- P *protocol*
Limit display of statistics or state of all sockets to those applicable to *protocol*. The protocol can be one of `ip`, `ipv6`, `icmp`, `icmpv6`, `icmp`, `icmpv6`, `igmp`, `udp`, `tcp`, `rawip`. `rawip` can also be specified as `raw`. The command accepts protocol options only as all lowercase.
- D
Show the status of DHCP configured interfaces.
- R
This modifier displays extended security attributes for sockets and routing table entries. The `-R` modifier is available only if the system is configured with the Solaris Trusted Extensions feature.

With `-r` only, this option displays the routing entries' gateway security attributes. See [route\(1M\)](#) for more information on security attributes.

When displaying socket information using the first form of the command, this option displays additional information for Multi-Level Port (MLP) sockets. This includes:

- The label for the peer if the socket is connected.
- The following flags can be appended to the socket's "State" output:
 - P The socket is a MLP on zone-private IP addresses.
 - S The socket is a MLP on IP addresses shared between zones.

Operands *interval* Display statistics accumulated since last display every *interval* seconds, repeating forever, unless *count* is specified. When invoked with *interval*, the first row of netstat output shows statistics accumulated since last reboot.

The following options support *interval*: `-i`, `-m`, `-s` and `-Ms`. Some values are configuration parameters and are just redisplayed at each interval.

count Display interface statistics the number of times specified by *count*, at the interval specified by *interval*.

Displays

Active Sockets (First Form) The display for each active socket shows the local and remote address, the send and receive queue sizes (in bytes), the send and receive windows (in bytes), and the internal state of the protocol.

The symbolic format normally used to display socket addresses is either:

`hostname.port`

when the name of the host is specified, or

network.port

if a socket address specifies a network but no specific host.

The numeric host address or network number associated with the socket is used to look up the corresponding symbolic hostname or network name in the *hosts* or *networks* database.

If the network or hostname for an address is not known, or if the `-n` option is specified, the numerical network address is shown. Unspecified, or “wildcard”, addresses and ports appear as an asterisk (*). For more information regarding the Internet naming conventions, refer to [inet\(7P\)](#) and [inet6\(7P\)](#).

For SCTP sockets, because an endpoint can be represented by multiple addresses, the verbose option (`-v`) displays the list of all the local and remote addresses.

TCP Sockets The possible state values for TCP sockets are as follows:

BOUND	Bound, ready to connect or listen.
CLOSED	Closed. The socket is not being used.
CLOSING	Closed, then remote shutdown; awaiting acknowledgment.
CLOSE_WAIT	Remote shutdown; waiting for the socket to close.
ESTABLISHED	Connection has been established.
FIN_WAIT_1	Socket closed; shutting down connection.
FIN_WAIT_2	Socket closed; waiting for shutdown from remote.
IDLE	Idle, opened but not bound.
LAST_ACK	Remote shutdown, then closed; awaiting acknowledgment.
LISTEN	Listening for incoming connections.
SYN_RECEIVED	Initial synchronization of the connection under way.
SYN_SENT	Actively trying to establish connection.
TIME_WAIT	Wait after close for remote shutdown retransmission.

SCTP Sockets The possible state values for SCTP sockets are as follows:

CLOSED	Closed. The socket is not being used.
LISTEN	Listening for incoming associations.
ESTABLISHED	Association has been established.
COOKIE_WAIT	INIT has been sent to the peer, awaiting acknowledgment.

COOKIE_ECHOED	State cookie from the INIT-ACK has been sent to the peer, awaiting acknowledgement.
SHUTDOWN_PENDING	SHUTDOWN has been received from the upper layer, awaiting acknowledgement of all outstanding DATA from the peer.
SHUTDOWN_SENT	All outstanding data has been acknowledged in the SHUTDOWN_SENT state. SHUTDOWN has been sent to the peer, awaiting acknowledgement.
SHUTDOWN_RECEIVED	SHUTDOWN has been received from the peer, awaiting acknowledgement of all outstanding DATA.
SHUTDOWN_ACK_SENT	All outstanding data has been acknowledged in the SHUTDOWN_RECEIVED state. SHUTDOWN_ACK has been sent to the peer.

Network Data
Structures (Second
Through Fifth Forms)

The form of the display depends upon which of the -g, -m, -p, or -s options you select.

- g Displays the list of multicast group membership.
- m Displays the memory usage, for example, STREAMS mblks.
- p Displays the net to media mapping table. For IPv4, the address resolution table is displayed. See [arp\(1M\)](#). For IPv6, the neighbor cache is displayed.
- s Displays the statistics for the various protocol layers.

The statistics use the MIB specified variables. The defined values for ipForwarding are:

- forwarding(1) Acting as a gateway.
- not-forwarding(2) Not acting as a gateway.

The IPv6 and ICMPv6 protocol layers maintain per-interface statistics. If the -a option is specified with the -s option, then the per-interface statistics as well as the total sums are displayed. Otherwise, just the sum of the statistics are shown.

For the second, third, and fourth forms of the command, you must specify at least -g, -p, or -s. You can specify any combination of these options. You can also specify -m (the fifth form) with any set of the -g, -p, and -s options. If you specify more than one of these options, netstat displays the information for each one of them.

Interface Status (Sixth
Form)

The interface status display lists information for all current interfaces, one interface per line. If an interface is specified using the -I option, it displays information for only the specified interface.

The list consists of the interface name, mtu (maximum transmission unit, or maximum packet size)(see [ifconfig\(1M\)](#)), the network to which the interface is attached, addresses for each interface, and counter associated with the interface. The counters show the number of input

packets, input errors, output packets, output errors, and collisions, respectively. For Point-to-Point interfaces, the Net/Dest field is the name or address on the other side of the link.

If the `-a` option is specified with either the `-i` option or the `-I` option, then the output includes names of the physical interface(s), counts for input packets and output packets for each logical interface, plus additional information.

If the `-n` option is specified, the list displays the IP address instead of the interface name.

If an optional *interval* is specified, the output will be continually displayed in *interval* seconds until interrupted by the user or until *count* is reached. See OPERANDS.

The physical interface is specified using the `-I` option. When used with the *interval* operand, output for the `-I` option has the following format:

input		eri0			output			input		(Total)	output	
packets	errs	packets	errs	colls	packets	errs	packets	errs	packets	errs	colls	
227681	0	659471	1	502	261331	0	99597	1	502			
10	0	0	0	0	10	0	0	0	0	0	0	
8	0	0	0	0	8	0	0	0	0	0	0	
10	0	2	0	0	10	0	2	0	0	0	0	

If the input interface is not specified, the first interface of address family `inet` or `inet6` will be displayed.

Routing Table (Seventh Form)

The routing table display lists the available routes and the status of each. Each route consists of a destination host or network, and a gateway to use in forwarding packets. The *flags* column shows the status of the route. These flags are as follows:

- U Indicates route is up.
- G Route is to a gateway.
- H Route is to a host and not a network.
- M Redundant route established with the `-multirt` option.
- S Route was established using the `-setsrc` option.
- D Route was created dynamically by a redirect.
- B Packets will be silently dropped (RTF_BLACKHOLE set).
- R Packets will be dropped with ICMP error sent (RTF_REJECT set).
- I Indirect routes (gateway not directly reachable) established with the `-indirect` option.

If the `-a` option is specified, there will be routing entries with the following flags:

- b Broadcast addresses.

- C Clones interface host route entries for on-link destinations.
- L Local addresses for the host.

Interface routes are created for each interface attached to the local host; the gateway field for such entries shows the address of the outgoing interface.

The use column displays the number of packets sent or forwarded using the route in question.

The *interface* entry indicates the network interface utilized for the route.

Multicast Routing
Tables (Eighth Form)

The multicast routing table consists of the virtual interface table and the actual routing table.

DHCP Interface
Information (Ninth
Form)

The DHCP interface information consists of the interface name, its current state, lease information, packet counts, and a list of flags.

The states correlate with the specifications set forth in *RFC 2131*.

Lease information includes:

- when the lease began;
- when lease renewal will begin; and
- when the lease will expire.

The flags currently defined include:

BOOTP The interface has a lease obtained through BOOTP (IPv4 only).

BUSY The interface is busy with a DHCP transaction.

PRIMARY The interface is the primary interface. See `dhcpcinfo(1)` and `ifconfig(1M)`.

FAILED The interface is in failure state and must be manually restarted.

Packet counts are maintained for the number of packets sent, the number of packets received, and the number of lease offers declined by the DHCP client. All three counters are initialized to zero and then incremented while obtaining a lease. The counters are reset when the period of lease renewal begins for the interface. Thus, the counters represent either the number of packets sent, received, and declined while obtaining the current lease, or the number of packets sent, received, and declined while attempting to obtain a future lease.

Destination Cache
Entry Table (Tenth
Form)

The destination cache entry display shows the recorded path MTU, the age (in seconds) of the entry, and flags. The P flag indicates that a path MTU is recorded. The S flag indicates that the path MTU is smaller than the minimum that IP will allow. The U flag indicates that some transport metrics (round-trip time, and so forth) are cached in the destination cache entry.

Files /etc/default/inet_type DEFAULT_IP setting

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [arp\(1M\)](#), [dhcpinfo\(1\)](#), [dhcpageant\(1M\)](#), [ifconfig\(1M\)](#), [iostat\(1M\)](#), [kstat\(1M\)](#), [mibiisa\(1M\)](#), [savecore\(1M\)](#), [vmstat\(1M\)](#), [hosts\(4\)](#), [inet_type\(4\)](#), [networks\(4\)](#), [protocols\(4\)](#), [services\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [dhcp\(5\)](#), [kstat\(7D\)](#), [inet\(7P\)](#), [inet6\(7P\)](#)

Droms, R., *RFC 2131, Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol*, Network Working Group, March 1997.

Droms, R. *RFC 3315, Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol for IPv6 (DHCPv6)*. Cisco Systems. July 2003.

Notes When displaying interface information, `netstat` honors the `DEFAULT_IP` setting in `/etc/default/inet_type`. If it is set to `IP_VERSION4`, then `netstat` will omit information relating to IPv6 interfaces, statistics, connections, routes and the like.

However, you can override the `DEFAULT_IP` setting in `/etc/default/inet_type` on the command-line. For example, if you have used the command-line to explicitly request IPv6 information by using the `inet6` address family or one of the IPv6 protocols, it will override the `DEFAULT_IP` setting.

If you need to examine network status information following a kernel crash, use the [mdb\(1\)](#) utility on the [savecore\(1M\)](#) output.

The `netstat` utility obtains TCP statistics from the system by opening `/dev/tcp` and issuing queries. Because of this, `netstat` might display an extra, unused connection in IDLE state when reporting connection status.

Previous versions of `netstat` had undocumented methods for reporting kernel statistics published using the [kstat\(7D\)](#) facility. This functionality has been removed. Use [kstat\(1M\)](#) instead.

`netstat` restricts its output to information that is relevant to the zone in which `netstat` runs. (This is true for both shared-IP and exclusive-IP zones.)

Name netstrategy – return network configuration information

Synopsis /sbin/netstrategy

Description The `netstrategy` command determines the network configuration strategy in use on a system and returns information in a form that is easily consumable by a script. The command returns three tokens:

<root filesystem type> <primary interface> <network config strategy>

These tokens are described as follows:

<root filesystem type>

Type of filesystem that contains the bootable kernel, as would be specified in the *fstype* column of the `mnttab(4)`.

<primary interface>

Name of the primary network interface. For a diskless machine, this is the interface used to load the kernel.

<network config strategy>

The means by which a system obtains its IP address for booting. This can be one of `rarp`, `dhcp`, or `none`.

The `netstrategy` command is not intended for use on a command line.

Options The `netstrategy` command has no options.

Exit Status 0 Success.

!=0 An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsr
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [ifconfig\(1M\)](#), [mnttab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name newaliases – rebuild the data base for the mail aliases file

Synopsis newaliases

Description newaliases rebuilds the random access data base for the mail aliases file /etc/mail/aliases.

newaliases accepts all the flags that [sendmail\(1M\)](#) accepts. However, most of these flags have no effect, except for the -C option and three of the Processing Options that can be set from a configuration file with the -o option:

-C /path/to/alt/config/file	Use alternate configuration file.
-oAfile	Specify possible alias files.
-oLn	Set the default log level to <i>n</i> . Defaults to 9.
-on	Validate the RHS of aliases when rebuilding the aliases(4) database.

newaliases runs in verbose mode (-v option) automatically.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Running the newaliases Command

The following command runs newaliases on an alias file different from the /etc/mail/aliases default in [sendmail\(1M\)](#):

```
example% newaliases -oA/path/to/alternate/alias/file
```

Exit Status newaliases returns an exit status describing what it did. The codes are defined in /usr/include/sysexits.h.

EX_OK	Successful completion on all addresses.
EX_NOUSER	User name not recognized.
EX_UNAVAILABLE	Catchall. Necessary resources were not available.
EX_SYNTAX	Syntax error in address.
EX_SOFTWARE	Internal software error, including bad arguments.
EX_OSERR	Temporary operating system error, such as “cannot fork”.
EX_NOHOST	Host name not recognized.
EX_TEMPFAIL	Message could not be sent immediately, but was queued.

Files	/etc/aliases	Symbolic link to /etc/mail/aliases
	/etc/mail/aliases.pag	
	/etc/mail/aliases.dir	ndbm files maintained by newaliases
	/etc/mail/aliases.db	Berkeley DataBase file maintained by newaliases

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWsndmu

See Also [sendmail\(1M\)](#), [aliases\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name newfs – construct a UFS file system

Synopsis newfs [-NSBTv] [*mkfs-options*] *raw-device*

Description newfs is a "friendly" front-end to the [mkfs\(1M\)](#) program for making UFS file systems on disk partitions. newfs calculates the appropriate parameters to use and calls mkfs.

If run interactively (that is, standard input is a tty), newfs prompts for confirmation before making the file system.

If the -N option is not specified and the inodes of the device are not randomized, newfs calls [fsirand\(1M\)](#).

You must be super-user or have appropriate write privileges to use this command, except when creating a UFS file system on a *diskette*. See EXAMPLES.

Creating a
Multiterabyte UFS File
System

Keep the following limitations in mind when creating a multiterabyte UFS file system:

- *nbpi* is set to 1 Mbyte unless you specifically set it higher. You cannot set *nbpi* lower than 1 Mbyte on a multiterabyte UFS file system.
- *fragsize* is set equal to *bsize*.

Options The following options are supported:

-N

Print out the file system parameters that would be used to create the file system without actually creating the file system. [fsirand\(1M\)](#) is not called here.

-S

Sends to stdout a human-readable version of the superblock that would be used to create a filesystem with the specified configuration parameters.

-B

Sends to stdout a binary (machine-readable) version of the superblock that would be used to create a filesystem with the specified configuration parameters.

-T

Set the parameters of the file system to allow eventual growth to over a terabyte in total file system size. This option sets *fragsize* to be the same as *bsize*, and sets *nbpi* to 1 Mbyte, unless the -i option is used to make it even larger. If you use the -f or -i options to specify a *fragsize* or *nbpi* that is incompatible with this option, the user-supplied value of *fragsize* or *nbpi* is ignored.

-v

Verbose. newfs prints out its actions, including the parameters passed to mkfs.

mkfs-options

Options that override the default parameters are:

-a *apc*

The number of alternate sectors per cylinder to reserve for bad block replacement for SCSI devices only. The default is 0.

This option is not applicable for disks with EFI labels and is ignored.

-b *bsize*

The logical block size of the file system in bytes, either 4096 or 8192. The default is 8192. The sun4u architecture does not support the 4096 block size.

-c *cgsize*

The number of cylinders per cylinder group, ranging from 16 to 256. The default is calculated by dividing the number of sectors in the file system by the number of sectors in a gigabyte. Then, the result is multiplied by 32. The default value is always between 16 and 256.

mkfs can override this value. See [mkfs_ufs\(1M\)](#) for details.

This option is not applicable for disks with EFI labels and is ignored.

-C *maxcontig*

The maximum number of logical blocks, belonging to one file, that are allocated contiguously. The default is calculated as follows:

$$\text{maxcontig} = \text{disk drive maximum transfer size} / \text{disk block size}$$

If the disk drive's maximum transfer size cannot be determined, the default value for `maxcontig` is calculated from kernel parameters as follows:

If `maxphys` is less than `ufs_maxmaxphys`, which is typically 1 Mbyte, then `maxcontig` is set to `maxphys`. Otherwise, `maxcontig` is set to `ufs_maxmaxphys`.

You can set `maxcontig` to any positive integer value.

The actual value will be the lesser of what has been specified and what the hardware supports.

You can subsequently change this parameter by using [tunefs\(1M\)](#).

-d *gap*

Rotational delay. This option is obsolete in the Solaris 10 release. The value is always set to 0, regardless of the input value.

-f *fragsize*

The smallest amount of disk space in bytes that can be allocated to a file. *fragsize* must be a power of 2 divisor of *bsize*, where:

$$\text{bsize} / \text{fragsize} \text{ is } 1, 2, 4, \text{ or } 8.$$

This means that if the logical block size is 4096, legal values for *fragsize* are 512, 1024, 2048, and 4096. When the logical block size is 8192, legal values are 1024, 2048, 4096, and 8192. The default value is 1024.

For file systems greater than 1 terabyte or for file systems created with the `-T` option, *fragsize* is forced to match block size (*bsize*).

`-i nbpi`

The number of bytes per inode, which specifies the density of inodes in the file system. The number is divided into the total size of the file system to determine the number of inodes to create.

This value should reflect the expected average size of files in the file system. If fewer inodes are desired, a larger number should be used. To create more inodes, a smaller number should be given. The default for *nbpi* is as follows:

Disk size	Density
Less than 1GB	2048
Less than 2GB	4096
Less than 3GB	6144
3GB to 1 Tbyte	8192
Greater than 1 Tbyte or created with <code>-T</code>	1048576

The number of inodes can increase if the file system is expanded with the `growfs` command.

`-m free`

The minimum percentage of free space to maintain in the file system, between 0% and 99%, inclusively. This space is off-limits to users. Once the file system is filled to this threshold, only the super-user can continue writing to the file system.

The default is $((64 \text{ Mbytes/partition size}) * 100)$, rounded down to the nearest integer and limited between 1% and 10%, inclusively.

This parameter can be subsequently changed using the `tunefs(1M)` command.

`-n nrpos`

The number of different rotational positions in which to divide a cylinder group. The default is 8.

This option is not applicable for disks with EFI labels and is ignored.

`-o space | time`

The file system can either be instructed to try to minimize the *time* spent allocating blocks, or to try to minimize the *space* fragmentation on the disk. The default is *time*.

This parameter can subsequently be changed with the `tunefs(1M)` command.

-r *rpm*

The rotational speed of the disk in revolutions per minute. The default is driver- or device-specific.

Note that you specify *rpm* for *newfs* and *rps* for *mkfs*.

This option is not applicable for disks with EFI labels and is ignored.

-s *size*

The size of the file system in sectors. The default is to use the entire partition.

-t *ntrack*

The number of tracks per cylinder on the disk. The default is taken from the disk label.

This option is not applicable for disks with EFI labels and is ignored.

Operands The following operands are supported:

raw-device

The name of a raw special device residing in the /dev directory (for example, /dev/rdisk/c0t0d0s6) on which to create the file system.

Usage See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of *newfs* when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (2^{31} bytes).

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Displaying the Parameters for the Raw Special Device

The following example verbosely displays the parameters for the raw special device, *c0t0d0s6*. It does not actually create a new file system:

```
example# newfs -Nv /dev/rdisk/c0t0d0s6
mkfs -F ufs -o N /dev/rdisk/c0t0d0s6 1112940 54 15 8192 1024 16 10 60
2048 t 0 -1 8 /dev/rdisk/c0t0d0s6: 1112940 sectors in
1374 cylinders of 15 tracks, 54 sectors 569.8MB in 86 cyl
groups (16 c/g, 6.64MB/g, 3072 i/g) super-block backups
(for fsck -b #) at:
32, 13056, 26080, 39104, 52128, 65152, 78176, 91200, 104224, . . .
```

EXAMPLE 2 Creating a UFS File System

The following example creates a UFS file system on a diskette that is managed by a volume manager that makes use of the mount point /vol.

```
example% newfs /vol/dev/aliases/floppy0
newfs: construct a new file system /vol/dev/aliases/floppy0: (y/n)? y
/vol/dev/aliases/floppy0: 2880 sectors in 80 cylinders of 2 tracks,
18 sectors 1.4MB in 5 cyl groups (16 c/g, 0.28MB/g, 128 i/g)
super-block backups (for fsck -F ufs -o b=#) at:
32, 640, 1184, 1792, 2336, . . .
```

EXAMPLE 3 Creating a UFS File System That Will Eventually Be Grown to a Multiterabyte UFS File System

The following example creates a UFS file system that will eventually be grown to a multiterabyte UFS file system.

This command creates a 800-Gbyte file system on the volume, `/dev/md/rdisk/d99`.

```
# newfs -T /dev/md/rdisk/d99
newfs: construct a new file system /dev/md/rdisk/d99: (y/n)? y
/dev/md/rdisk/d99: 1677754368 sectors in 45512 cylinders of
144 tracks, 256 sectors
819216.0MB in 1821 cyl groups (25 c/g, 450.00MB/g, 448 i/g) . . .
```

Then, if you increase the volume size for this file system, you can use the `growfs` command to expand the file system. The file system is grown to 1.2 terabytes in this example:

```
# growfs -v /dev/md/rdisk/d99
/usr/lib/fs/ufs/mkfs -G /dev/md/rdisk/d99 2516631552 /dev/md/rdisk/d99:
2516631552 sectors in 68268 cylinders of 144 tracks, 256 sectors
1228824.0MB in 2731 cyl groups (25 c/g, 450.00MB/g, 448 i/g) . . .
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0

The operation was successful.

1, 10

Usage error or internal error. A message is output to `STDERR` explaining the error.

Other exit values may be returned by `mkfs(1M)`, which is called by `newfs`.

Attributes See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also `fsck(1M)`, `fsck_ufs(1M)`, `fsirand(1M)`, `mkfs(1M)`, `mkfs_ufs(1M)`, `tunefs(1M)`, `attributes(5)`, `largefile(5)`, `ufs(7FS)`

Diagnostics `newfs`: No such file or directory
The device specified does not exist, or a disk partition was not specified.

special: cannot open

You must write access to the device to use this command.

Name newkey – create a new Diffie-Hellman key pair in the publickey database

Synopsis newkey -h *hostname* [-s nis | files | ldap]
 newkey -u *username* [-s nis | files | ldap]

Description newkey establishes new public keys for users and machines on the network. These keys are needed when using secure RPC or secure NFS service.

newkey prompts for a password for the given *username* or *hostname* and then creates a new public/secret Diffie-Hellman 192 bit key pair for the user or host. The secret key is encrypted with the given password. The key pair can be stored in the `/etc/publickey` file or the NIS publickey map.

newkey consults the `publickey` entry in the name service switch configuration file (see [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#)) to determine which naming service is used to store the secure RPC keys. If the `publickey` entry specifies a unique name service, newkey will add the key in the specified name service. However, if there are multiple name services listed, newkey cannot decide which source to update and will display an error message. The user is required to specify the source explicitly with the `-s` option.

In the case of NIS, newkey should be run by the superuser on the master NIS server for that domain.

In the case of LDAP, newkey should be run by the superuser on a machine that also recognizes the directory manager's bind distinguished name (DN) and password to perform an LDAP update for the host.

Options

- h *hostname* Create a new public/secret key pair for the privileged user at the given *hostname*. Prompts for a password for the given *hostname*.
- u *username* Create a new public/secret key pair for the given *username*. Prompts for a password for the given *username*.
- s nis
- s files
- s ldap Update the database in the specified source: `nis` (for NIS), `files`, or `ldap` (LDAP). Other sources may be available in the future.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [chkey\(1\)](#), [keylogin\(1\)](#), [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#), [publickey\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name nfs4cbd – NFS Version 4 callback daemon

Synopsis /usr/lib/nfs/nfs4cbd

Description The `nfs4cbd` daemon manages communication endpoints for the NFS Version 4 protocol callback program. `nfs4cbd` runs on the NFS Version 4 client and creates a listener port for each transport over which callbacks can be sent.

The `nfs4cbd` daemon is provided for the exclusive use of the NFS version 4 client.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWnfscu

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [mount_nfs\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Notes The `nfs4cbd` service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/nfs/cbd
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

If it is disabled, it will be enabled by [mount_nfs\(1M\)](#) and [automountd\(1M\)](#) on the first NFSv4 mount, unless its `application/auto_enable` property is set to `false`.

This daemon might not exist in a future release of Solaris.

Name nfsd – NFS daemon

Synopsis /usr/lib/nfs/nfsd [-a] [-c #_conn] [-l *listen_backlog*]
[-p *protocol*] [-t *device*] [*nservers*]

Description nfsd is the daemon that handles client file system requests. Only users with {PRIV_SYS_NFS} and sufficient privileges to write to /var/run can run this daemon.

The nfsd daemon is automatically invoked using [share\(1M\)](#) with the -a option.

By default, nfsd starts over the TCP and UDP transports for versions 2 and 3. By default, it starts over the TCP for version 4. You can change this with the -p option.

A previously invoked nfsd daemon started with or without options must be stopped before invoking another nfsd command.

To change startup parameters for nfsd, use the [sharectl\(1M\)](#) and [sharemgr\(1M\)](#) commands.

Options The following options are supported:

- a Start a NFS daemon over all available connectionless and connection-oriented transports, including UDP and TCP. Equivalent of setting the NFSD_PROTOCOL parameter to ALL in the nfs file.
- c #_conn This sets the maximum number of connections allowed to the NFS server over connection-oriented transports. By default, the number of connections is unlimited. Equivalent of the NFSD_MAX_CONNECTIONS parameter in the nfs file.
- l Set connection queue length for the NFS TCP over a connection-oriented transport. The default value is 32 entries. Equivalent of the NFSD_LISTEN_BACKLOG parameter in the nfs file.
- p *protocol* Start a NFS daemon over the specified protocol. Equivalent of the NFSD_PROTOCOL parameter in the nfs file.
- t *device* Start a NFS daemon for the transport specified by the given device. Equivalent of the NFSD_DEVICE parameter in the nfs file.

Operands The following operands are supported:

- nservers* This sets the maximum number of concurrent NFS requests that the server can handle. This concurrency is achieved by up to *nservers* threads created as needed in the kernel. *nservers* should be based on the load expected on this server. 16 is the usual number of *nservers*. If *nservers* is not specified, the maximum number of concurrent NFS requests will default to 1. Equivalent of the NFSD_SERVERS parameter in the nfs file.

Usage If the `NFS_PORTMON` variable is set in `/etc/system`, then clients are required to use privileged ports (ports < `IPPORT_RESERVED`) to get NFS services. This variable is equal to zero by default. This variable has been moved from the “nfs” module to the “nfsrv” module. To set the variable, edit the `/etc/system` file and add this entry:

```
set nfssrv:nfs_portmon = 1
```

Exit Status 0 Daemon started successfully.

1 Daemon failed to start.

Files

<code>.nfsXXX</code>	Client machine pointer to an open-but-unlinked file.
<code>/etc/default/nfs</code>	Contains startup parameters for <code>nfsd</code> .
<code>/etc/system</code>	System configuration information file.
<code>/var/nfs/v4_state</code>	
<code>/var/nfs/v4_oldstate</code>	Directories used by the server to manage client state information. These directories should not be removed.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWnfssu

See Also [ps\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [mountd\(1M\)](#), [share\(1M\)](#), [sharectl\(1M\)](#), [sharemgr\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [nfs\(4\)](#), [sharetab\(4\)](#), [system\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

System Administration Guide: Naming and Directory Services (DNS, NIS, and LDAP)

Notes Manually starting and restarting `nfsd` is not recommended. If it is necessary to do so, use `svcadm` to enable or disable the `nfs` service (`svc:/network/nfs/server`). If it is disabled, it will be enabled by [share_nfs\(1M\)](#), unless its `application/auto_enable` property is set to `false`. See the *System Administration Guide: Naming and Directory Services (DNS, NIS, and LDAP)*, and [svcadm\(1M\)](#) for more information.

The `nfsd` service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/nfs/server
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

If `nfsd` is killed with `SIGTERM`, it will not be restarted by the service management facility. Instead, `nfsd` can be restarted by other signals, such as `SIGINT`.

Name nfslogd – nfs logging daemon

Synopsis /usr/lib/nfs/nfslogd

Description The `nfslogd` daemon provides operational logging to the Solaris NFS server. It is the `nfslogd` daemon's job to generate the activity log by analyzing the RPC operations processed by the NFS server. The log will only be generated for file systems exported with logging enabled. This is specified at file system export time by means of the `share_nfs(1M)` command.

NFS server logging is not supported on Solaris machines that are using NFS Version 4.

Each record in the log file includes a time stamp, the IP address (or hostname if it can be resolved) of the client system, the file or directory name the operation was performed on, and the type of operation. In the basic format, the operation can either be an input (i) or output (o) operation. The basic format of the NFS server log is compatible with the log format generated by the Washington University FTPd daemon. The log format can be extended to include directory modification operations, such as `mkdir`, `rmdir`, and `remove`. The extended format is not compatible with the Washington University FTPd daemon format. See `nfslog.conf(4)` for details.

The NFS server logging mechanism is divided in two phases. The first phase is performed by the NFS kernel module, which records raw RPC requests and their results in work buffers backed by permanent storage. The location of the work buffers is specified in the `/etc/nfs/nfslog.conf` file. Refer to `nfslog.conf(4)` for more information. The second phase involves the `nfslogd` user-level daemon, which periodically reads the work buffers, interprets the raw RPC information, groups related RPC operations into single transaction records, and generates the output log. The `nfslogd` daemon then sleeps waiting for more information to be logged to the work buffers. The amount of time that the daemon sleeps can be configured by modifying the `IDLE_TIME` parameter in `/etc/default/nfslogd`. The work buffers are intended for internal consumption of the `nfslogd` daemon.

NFS operations use file handles as arguments instead of path names. For this reason the `nfslogd` daemon needs to maintain a database of file handle to path mappings in order to log the path name associated with an operation instead of the corresponding file handle. A file handle entry is added to the database when a client performs a lookup or other NFS operation that returns a file handle to the client.

Once an NFS client obtains a file handle from a server, it can hold on to it for an indefinite time, and later use it as an argument for an NFS operation on the file or directory. The NFS client can use the file handle even after the server reboots. Because the database needs to survive server reboots, it is backed by permanent storage. The location of the database is specified by the `htable` parameter in the `/etc/nfs/nfslog.conf` file. This database is intended for the internal use of the `nfslogd` daemon.

In order to keep the size of the file handle mapping database manageable, `nfslogd` prunes the database periodically. It removes file handle entries that have not been accessed in more than a specified amount of time. The `PRUNE_TIMEOUT` configurable parameter in

`/etc/default/nfslogd` specifies the interval length between successive runs of the pruning process. A file handle record will be removed if it has not been used since the last time the pruning process was executed. Pruning of the database can effectively be disabled by setting the `PRUNE_TIMEOUT` as high as `INT_MAX`.

When pruning is enabled, there is always a risk that a client may have held on to a file handle longer than the `PRUNE_TIMEOUT` and perform an NFS operation on the file handle after the matching record in the mapping database had been removed. In such case, the pathname for the file handle will not be resolved, and the log will include the file handle instead of the pathname.

There are various configurable parameters that affect the behavior of the `nfslogd` daemon. These parameters are found in `/etc/default/nfslogd` and are described below:

<code>UMASK</code>	Sets the file mode for the log files, work buffer files and file handle mapping database.
<code>MIN_PROCESSING_SIZE</code>	Specifies the minimum size, in bytes, that the buffer file must reach before processing the work information and writing to the log file. The value of <code>MIN_PROCESSING_SIZE</code> must be between 1 and <code>ulimit</code> .
<code>IDLE_TIME</code>	Specifies the amount of time, in seconds, the daemon should sleep while waiting for more information to be placed in the buffer file. <code>IDLE_TIME</code> also determines how often the configuration file will be reread. The value of <code>IDLE_TIME</code> must be between 1 and <code>INT_MAX</code> .
<code>MAX_LOGS_PRESERVE</code>	The <code>nfslogd</code> periodically cycles its logs. <code>MAX_LOGS_PRESERVE</code> specifies the maximum number of log files to save. When <code>MAX_LOGS_PRESERVE</code> is reached, the oldest files will be overwritten as new log files are created. These files will be saved with a numbered extension, beginning with <code>filename.0</code> . The oldest file will have the highest numbered extension up to the value configured for <code>MAX_LOGS_PRESERVE</code> . The value of <code>MAX_LOGS_PRESERVE</code> must be between 1 and <code>INT_MAX</code> .
<code>CYCLE_FREQUENCY</code>	Specifies how often, in hours, the log files are cycled. <code>CYCLE_FREQUENCY</code> is used to insure that the log files do not get too large. The value of <code>CYCLE_FREQUENCY</code> must be between 1 and <code>INT_MAX</code> .
<code>MAPPING_UPDATE_INTERVAL</code>	Specifies the time interval, in seconds, between updates of the records in the file handle to path mapping tables. Instead of updating the <code>atime</code> of a record each time that record is accessed, it is only updated if it has aged based on this

parameter. The record access time is used by the pruning routine to determine whether the record should be removed from the database. The value of this parameter must be between 1 and INT_MAX.

PRUNE_TIMEOUT

Specifies when a database record times out, in hours. If the time that elapsed since the record was last accessed is greater than PRUNE_TIMEOUT then the record can be pruned from the database. The default value for PRUNE_TIMEOUT is 168 hours (7 days). The value of PRUNE_TIMEOUT must be between 1 and INT_MAX.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0 Daemon started successfully.

1 Daemon failed to start.

Files /etc/nfs/nfslogtab
 /etc/nfs/nfslog.conf
 /etc/default/nfslogd

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWnfssu

See Also [share_nfs\(1M\)](#), [nfslog.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name nfsmapid – NFS user and group id mapping daemon

Synopsis /usr/lib/nfs/nfsmapid

Description The `nfsmapid` daemon maps to and from NFS version 4 owner and owner_group identification attributes and local UID and GID numbers used by both the NFS version 4 client and server.

`nfsmapid` uses the `passwd` and `group` entries in the `/etc/nsswitch.conf` file to direct how it performs the mappings.

The `nfsmapid` daemon has no external, customer-accessible interfaces. You can, however, administratively configure `nfsmapid` in one of the following ways:

- Specify the `NFSMAPID_DOMAIN` parameter in `nfs(4)`
- Specify the `_nfsv4idmapdomain` DNS resource record.

Please refer to the *System Administration Guide: Network Services* for further details.

Attributes See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWnfscu

See Also `svcs(1)`, `automountd(1M)`, `groupdel(1M)`, `groupmod(1M)`, `mount_nfs(1M)`, `passmgmt(1M)`, `svcadm(1M)`, `share_nfs(1M)`, `userdel(1M)`, `usermod(1M)`, `nfs(4)`, `attributes(5)`, `smf(5)`

System Administration Guide: Network Services

Notes The `nfsmapid` service is managed by the service management facility, `smf(5)`, under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/nfs/mapid
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using `svcadm(1M)`. The service's status can be queried using the `svcs(1)` command.

If it is disabled, it will be enabled by `mount_nfs(1M)`, `share_nfs(1M)`, and `automountd(1M)`, unless its `application/auto_enable` property is set to `false`.

`nfsmapid` caches a user's UID and GID. If a user subsequently changes a UID or GID, using one of the utilities listed below, the `nfsmapid` cache becomes stale. At this point, any NFS operation that gets or set attributes will result in the exchange of this stale information. To resolve this situation, restart `nfsmapid`, as follows:

```
# svcadm restart svc:/network/nfs/mapid:default
```

The utilities that allow you to change UID and GID are:

- `usermod(1M)`
- `userdel(1M)`
- `groupmod(1M)`
- `groupdel(1M)`
- `passmgmt(1M)`

The `nfsmapid` daemon might not exist in a future release of Solaris.

Name nfsref – NFS referral utility

Synopsis nfsref [-t *svc_type*] add *path location* [*location ...*]
nfsref [-t *svc_type*] remove *path*
nfsref [-t *svc_type*] lookup *path*

Description The `nfsref` command manages NFS Version 4 referrals, which are server-side pointers used to redirect clients to actual locations of file systems. Referrals are based on reparse points (see [reparse\(1M\)](#) and [libreparse\(3LIB\)](#)). The path arguments in all forms of the synopsis refer to the path to the reparse point symbolic link. This command currently implements one “service type” - `nfs-basic`, which is the default.

The first form of the command, `nfsref add`, creates a referral pointing to the specified locations. If a reparse point does not exist, one is created. If it does exist, NFS service data is added or replaces existing NFS service data. Each location has a `host:/path` format. The path can contain spaces, which must be escaped to ensure proper shell parsing.

The second form of the command, `nfsref delete`, removes an NFS referral. It removes NFS service data from the specified reparse point, and removes the reparse point if there are no other types of service data present.

The third form of the command, `nfsref lookup`, displays the locations to which the specified NFS referral points.

Options The following options are supported:

-t *svc_type*
Specify a service type. Currently, only `nfs-basic` is supported.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Adding an NFS Referral

The following command creates an NFS referral at the server path `/pool/home/bob`, pointing to the resource `homeserver:/homepool/bob`.

```
# nfsref add /pool/home/bob homeserver:/homepool/bob
Created reparse point /pool/home/bob
```

```
# nfsref lookup /pool/home/bob
homeserver:/homepool/bob
```

EXAMPLE 2 Removing an NFS Referral

The following command removes an NFS referral at the server path `/pool/home/bob`.

```
# nfsref remove /pool/home/bob homeserver:/homepool/bob
Removed svc_type 'nfs-basic' from /pool/home/bob
```

Exit Status 0
Successful completion.

>0
An error occurred.

Files /usr/lib/reparsed/*.so.1
Per-service plugins for reparsed.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWnfssu
Interface Stability	Consolidation Private

See Also [reparsed\(1M\)](#), [libreparse\(3LIB\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name nfsstat – NFS statistics

Synopsis nfsstat [-cnrsza] [-T u | d] [-v *version*] [*interval* [*count*]]

nfsstat -m [*pathname*]...

Description nfsstat displays statistical information about the NFS and RPC (Remote Procedure Call), interfaces to the kernel. It can also be used to reinitialize this information. If no options are given the default is as follows:

nfsstat -csnra

The default displays everything, but reinitializes nothing.

Options -a

Display NFS_ACL information.

-c

Display client information. Only the client side NFS, RPC, and NFS_ACL information is printed. Can be combined with the -n, -r, and -a options to print client side NFS, RPC, and NFS_ACL information only.

-m [*pathname...*]

Display statistics for each NFS mounted file system. If *pathname* is not specified, displays statistics for all NFS mounted file systems. If *pathname* is specified, displays statistics for the NFS mounted file systems indicated by *pathname*.

This includes the server name and address, mount flags, current read and write sizes, the retransmission count, the attribute cache timeout values, failover information, and the timers used for dynamic retransmission. The dynamic retransmission timers are displayed only where dynamic retransmission is in use. By default, NFS mounts over the TCP protocols and NFS Version 3 mounts over either TCP or UDP do not use dynamic retransmission.

If you specify the -m option, this is the only option that nfsstat uses. If you specify other options with -m, you receive an error message alerting that the -m flag cannot be combined with other options.

-n

Display NFS information. NFS information for both the client and server side are printed. Can be combined with the -c and -s options to print client or server NFS information only.

-r

Display RPC information.

-s

Display server information.

-T u | d

Display a time stamp.

Specify *u* for a printed representation of the internal representation of time. See [time\(2\)](#).
Specify *d* for standard date format. See [date\(1\)](#).

-v *version*

Specify which NFS version for which to print statistics. When followed by the optional *version* argument, (2|3|4), specifies statistics for that version. By default, prints statistics for all versions.

-z

Zero (reinitialize) statistics. This option is for use by the super user only, and can be combined with any of the above options to zero particular sets of statistics after printing them.

Operands The following operands are supported:

count

Display only count reports

interval

Report once each interval seconds.

pathname

Specify the pathname of a file in an NFS mounted file system for which statistics are to be displayed.

Displays The server RPC display includes the following fields:

badcalls

The total number of calls rejected by the RPC layer (the sum of *badlen* and *xdrcall* as defined below).

badlen

The number of RPC calls with a length shorter than a minimum-sized RPC call.

calls

The total number of RPC calls received.

dupchecks

The number of RPC calls that looked up in the duplicate request cache.

dupreqs

The number of RPC calls that were found to be duplicates.

nullrcv

The number of times an RPC call was not available when it was thought to be received.

xdrcall

The number of RPC calls whose header could not be XDR decoded.

The server NFS display shows the number of NFS calls received (*calls*) and rejected (*badcalls*), and the counts and percentages for the various calls that were made.

The server NFS_ACL display shows the counts and percentages for the various calls that were made.

The client RPC display includes the following fields:

`calls`

The total number of RPC calls made.

`badcalls`

The total number of calls rejected by the RPC layer.

`badverfs`

The number of times the call failed due to a bad verifier in the response.

`badxids`

The number of times a reply from a server was received which did not correspond to any outstanding call.

`cantconn`

The number of times the call failed due to a failure to make a connection to the server.

`cantsend`

The number of times a client was unable to send an RPC request over a connectionless transport when it tried to do so.

`interrupts`

The number of times the call was interrupted by a signal before completing.

`newcreds`

The number of times authentication information had to be refreshed.

`nomem`

The number of times the call failed due to a failure to allocate memory.

`retrans`

The number of times a call had to be retransmitted due to a timeout while waiting for a reply from the server. Applicable only to RPC over connection-less transports.

`timeouts`

The number of times a call timed out while waiting for a reply from the server.

`timers`

The number of times the calculated time-out value was greater than or equal to the minimum specified time-out value for a call.

The client NFS display shows the number of calls sent and rejected, as well as the number of times a CLIENT handle was received (`clgets`), the number of times the CLIENT handle cache had no unused entries (`cltoomany`), as well as a count of the various calls and their respective percentages.

The client NFS_ACL display shows the counts and percentages for the various calls that were made.

The `-m` option includes information about mount flags set by mount options, mount flags internal to the system, and other mount information. See [mount_nfs\(1M\)](#).

The following mount flags are set by mount options:

`forcedirectio`

Data transferred directly between client and server, with no buffering on client.

`grpuid`

BSD group id inheritance. See description in [mount_nfs\(1M\)](#).

`hard`

Hard mount.

`intr`

Interrupts allowed on hard mount.

`llock`

Local locking being used (no lock manager). Note that this is a private interface.

`noac`

Client is not caching attributes.

`nointr`

No interrupts allowed on hard mount.

`nocto`

No close-to-open consistency.

`retrans`

NFS retransmissions.

`rpctimesync`

RPC time sync.

`rsize`

Read buffer size in bytes.

`sec`

`sec` has one of the following values:

`dh`

des-style authentication (encrypted timestamps).

`krb5`

kerberos v5-style authentication.

`krb5i`

kerberos v5-style authentication with integrity.

`krb5p`
kerberos v5-style authentication with privacy.

`none`
No authentication.

`short`
Short hand UNIX-style authentication.

`sys`
UNIX-style authentication (UID, GID).

`soft`
Soft mount.

`timeo`
Initial NFS timeout, in tenths of a second.

`wsize`
Write buffer size in bytes.

The following mount flags are internal to the system:

`acl`
Server supports NFS_ACL.

`down`
Server is down.

`dynamic`
Dynamic transfer size adjustment.

`link`
Server supports links.

`mirrormount`
Mounted automatically by means of the `mirrormount` mechanism.

`printed`
“Not responding” message printed.

`readdironly`
Use `readdir` instead of `readdirplus`.

`referral`
Mounted automatically by means of the `referral` mechanism.

`symlink`
Server supports symbolic links.

The following flags relate to additional mount information:

`proto`
Protocol.

`vers`
NFS version.

The `-m` option also provides attribute cache timeout values. The following fields in `-m` output provide timeout values for attribute cache:

`acdirmax`
Maximum seconds to hold cached directory attributes.

`acdirmin`
Minimum seconds to hold cached directory attributes.

`acregmax`
Maximum seconds to hold cached file attributes.

`acregmin`
Minimum seconds to hold cached file attributes.

The following fields in `-m` output provide failover information:

`currserver`
Which server is currently providing NFS service. See the [System Administration Guide: IP Services](#) for additional details.

`failover`
How many times a new server has been selected.

`noresponse`
How many times servers have failed to respond.

`remap`
How many times files have been re-evaluated to the new server.

The fields in `-m` output shown below provide information on dynamic retransmissions. These items are displayed only where dynamic retransmission is in use.

`cur`
Current backed-off retransmission value, in milliseconds.

`dev`
Estimated deviation, in milliseconds.

`srtt`
The value for the smoothed round-trip time, in milliseconds.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0
Successful completion.

>0

An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWnfscu

See Also [mount_nfs\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Solaris 10 Installation Guide: Basic Installations

System Administration Guide: IP Services

Name nlsadmin – network listener service administration

Synopsis /usr/sbin/nlsadmin -x
 /usr/sbin/nlsadmin [*options*] *net_spec*
 /usr/sbin/nlsadmin [*options*] -N *port_monitor_tag*
 /usr/sbin/nlsadmin -V
 /usr/sbin/nlsadmin -c *cmd* | -o *streamname* [-p *modules*]
 [-A *address* | -D] [-R *prognum* : *versnum*]

Description nlsadmin is the administrative command for the network listener process(es) on a machine. Each network has at least one instance of the network listener process associated with it; each instance (and thus, each network) is configured separately. The listener process “listens” to the network for service requests, accepts requests when they arrive, and invokes servers in response to those service requests. The network listener process may be used with any network (more precisely, with any connection-oriented transport provider) that conforms to the transport provider specification.

nlsadmin can establish a listener process for a given network, configure the specific attributes of that listener, and start and kill the listener process for that network. nlsadmin can also report on the listener processes on a machine, either individually (per network) or collectively.

net_spec represents a particular listener process. Specifically, *net_spec* is the relative path name of the entry under /dev for a given network (that is, a transport provider). *address* is a transport address on which to listen and is interpreted using a syntax that allows for a variety of address formats. By default, *address* is interpreted as the symbolic ASCII representation of the transport address. An *address* preceded by \x will let you enter an address in hexadecimal notation. Note that *address* must appear as a single word to the shell, thus it must be quoted if it contains any blanks.

Changes to the list of services provided by the listener or the addresses of those services are put into effect immediately.

Options nlsadmin may be used with the following combinations of options and arguments:

-x	Report the status of all of the listener processes installed on this machine.
<i>net_spec</i>	Print the status of the listener process for <i>net_spec</i> .
-q <i>net_spec</i>	Query the status of the listener process for the specified network, and reflects the result of that query in its exit code. If a listener process is active, nlsadmin will exit with a status of 0; if no process is active, the exit code will be 1; the exit code will be greater than 1 in case of error.

-
- v *net_spec*** Print a verbose report on the servers associated with *net_spec*, giving the service code, status, command, and comment for each. It also specifies the *uid* the server will run as and the list of modules to be pushed, if any, before the server is started.
- z *service_code net_spec*** Print a report on the server associated with *net_spec* that has service code *service_code*, giving the same information as in the **-v** option.
- q -z *service_code net_spec*** Query the status of the service with service code *service_code* on network *net_spec*, and exits with a status of 0 if that service is enabled, 1 if that service is disabled, and greater than 1 in case of error.
- l *address net_spec*** Change or set the transport address on which the listener listens (the general listener service). This address can be used by remote processes to access the servers available through this listener (see the **-a** option, below).
- If *address* is just a dash (“-”), *nlsadmin* reports the address currently configured, instead of changing it.
- A change of address takes effect immediately.
- t *address net_spec*** Change or set the address on which the listener listens for requests for terminal service but is otherwise similar to the **-l** option above. A terminal service address should not be defined unless the appropriate remote login software is available; if such software is available, it must be configured as service code 1 (see the **-a** option, below).
- i *net_spec*** Initialize an instance of the listener for the network specified by *net_spec*; that is, create and initialize the files required by the listener as well as starting that instance of the listener. Note that a particular instance of the listener should be initialized only once. The listener must be initialized before assigning addresses or services.
- a *service_code*** [**-p *modules***] [**-w *name***] **-c *cmd* -y *comment net_spec***
- Add a new service to the list of services available through the indicated listener. *service_code* is the code for the service, *cmd* is the command to be invoked in response to that service code, comprised of the full path name of the server and its arguments, and *comment* is a brief (free-form) description of the service for use in various reports. Note that *cmd* must appear as a single word to the shell; if arguments are required,

the *cmd* and its arguments must be enclosed in quotation marks. The *comment* must also appear as a single word to the shell. When a service is added, it is initially enabled (see the *-e* and *-d* options, below).

Service codes are alphanumeric strings, and are administered by AT&T. The numeric service codes 0 through 100 are reserved for internal use by the listener. Service code 0 is assigned to the *nlps* server, which is the service invoked on the general listening address. In particular, code 1 is assigned to the remote login service, which is the service automatically invoked for connections to the terminal login address.

If the *-p* option is specified, then *modules* will be interpreted as a list of STREAMS modules for the listener to push before starting the service being added. The modules are pushed in the order they are specified. *modules* should be a comma-separated list of modules, with no white space included.

If the *-w* option is specified, then *name* is interpreted as the user name from */etc/passwd* that the listener should look up. From the user name, the listener obtains the user ID, the group ID(s), and the home directory for use by the server. If *-w* is not specified, the default is to use the user name *listen*.

A service must explicitly be added to the listener for each network on which that service is to be available. This operation will normally be performed only when the service is installed on a machine, or when populating the list of services for a new network.

-r service_code net_spec

Remove the entry for the *service_code* from that listener's list of services. This is normally done only in conjunction with the de-installation of a service from a machine.

-e service_code net_spec

-d service_code net_spec

Enable or disable (respectively) the service indicated by *service_code* for the specified network. The service must previously have been added to the listener for that network (see the *-a* option, above). Disabling a service will cause subsequent service requests for that service to be denied, but the processes from any prior service requests that are still running will continue unaffected.

-s *net_spec*

-k *net_spec*

Start and kill (respectively) the listener process for the indicated network. These operations are normally performed as part of the system startup and shutdown procedures. Before a listener can be started for a particular network, it must first have been initialized (see the -i option, above). When a listener is killed, processes that are still running as a result of prior service requests will continue unaffected.

Under the Service Access Facility, it is possible to have multiple instances of the listener on a single *net_spec*. In any of the above commands, the option -N *port_monitor_tag* may be used in place of the *net_spec* argument. This argument specifies the tag by which an instance of the listener is identified by the Service Access Facility. If the -N option is not specified (that is, the *net_spec* is specified in the invocation), then it will be assumed that the last component of the *net_spec* represents the tag of the listener for which the operation is destined. In other words, it is assumed that there is at least one listener on a designated *net_spec*, and that its tag is identical to the last component of the *net_spec*. This listener may be thought of as the primary, or default, listener for a particular *net_spec*.

nlsadmin is also used in conjunction with the Service Access Facility commands. In that capacity, the following combinations of options can be used:

-V

Write the current version number of the listener's administrative file to the standard output. It is used as part of the `sacadm` command line when `sacadm` adds a port monitor to the system.

-c *cmd* | -o *streamname* [-p *modules*] [-A *address* | -D] [-R *prognum* : *versnum*]

Format the port monitor-specific information to be used as an argument to [pmadm\(1M\)](#)

The -c option specifies the full path name of the server and its arguments. *cmd* must appear as a single word to the shell, and its arguments must therefore be surrounded by quotes.

The -o option specifies the full path name of a FIFO or named stream through which a standing server is actually receiving the connection.

If the -p option is specified, then *modules* will be interpreted as a list of STREAMS modules for the listener to push before starting the service being added. The modules are pushed in the order in which they are specified. *modules* must be a comma-separated list, with no white space included.

If the -A option is specified, then *address* will be interpreted as the server's private address. The listener will monitor this address on behalf of the service and will dispatch all calls arriving on this address directly to the designated service. This option may not be used in conjunction with the -D option.

If the `-D` option is specified, then the service is assigned a private address dynamically, that is, the listener will have the transport provider select the address each time the listener begins listening on behalf of this service. For RPC services, this option will often be used in conjunction with the `-R` option to register the dynamically assigned address with the rpcbinder. This option may not be used in conjunction with the `-A` option.

When the `-R` option is specified, the service is an RPC service whose address, program number, and version number should be registered with the rpcbinder for this transport provider. This registration is performed each time the listener begins listening on behalf of the service. *prognum* and *versnum* are the program number and version number, respectively, of the RPC service.

`nlsadmin` may be invoked by any user to generate reports; all operations that affect a listener's status or configuration may only be run by a super-user.

The options specific to the Service Access Facility may not be used together with any other options.

Errors If successful, `nlsadmin` exits with a status of 0. If `nlsadmin` fails for any reason, it exits with a status greater than or equal to 2. See `-q` option for a return status of 1.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [listen\(1M\)](#), [pmadm\(1M\)](#), [rpcbind\(1M\)](#), [sacadm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

System Administration Guide: Basic Administration

Notes Dynamically assigned addresses are not displayed in reports as statically assigned addresses are.

Name nscadm – network storage control utility

Synopsis nscadm freeze *device*
 nscadm unfreeze *device*
 nscadm isfrozen *device*

Description The nscadm command performs several network storage control functions.

The nscadm freeze command closes existing references to the specified device, and blocks future accesses. This allows maintenance of virtual volume device drivers (for example, RAID 0, RAID 1, RAID 5) to be performed without shutting down the system.

The nscadm unfreeze command reverses the effects of nscadm freeze for the specified device.

The nscadm isfrozen command returns the current status of the specified device.

Options The nscadm command supports the following option.

-h Display the usage menu.

Operands The nscadm command line supports the following operand.

device
 Specifies the storage device to be acted upon by nscadm.

Exit Status For the freeze and unfreeze, subcommands nscadm returns the following exit values:

0 Success
 255 Error

For the isfrozen subcommand, nscadm returns the following exit values:

0 Device is currently frozen.
 1 Device is not currently frozen.
 255 Error

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWscmr, SUNWscmu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [scmadm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name nscd – name service cache daemon

Synopsis /usr/sbin/nscd [-f *configuration-file*] [-g] [-e *cachename*, yes
| no] [-i *cachename*]

Description The nscd daemon is a process that provides a cache for most name service requests. The default *configuration-file* /etc/nscd.conf determines the behavior of the cache daemon. See [nscd.conf\(4\)](#).

nscd provides caching for the [passwd\(4\)](#), [group\(4\)](#), [hosts\(4\)](#), [ipnodes\(4\)](#), [exec_attr\(4\)](#), [prof_attr\(4\)](#), [user_attr\(4\)](#), [ethers\(4\)](#), [rpc\(4\)](#), [protocols\(4\)](#), [networks\(4\)](#), [bootparams\(4\)](#), [audit_user\(4\)](#), [auth_attr\(4\)](#), [services\(4\)](#), [netmasks\(4\)](#), [printers\(4\)](#), [project\(4\)](#) databases through standard libc interfaces, such as [gethostbyname\(3NSL\)](#), [getipnodebyname\(3SOCKET\)](#), [gethostbyaddr\(3NSL\)](#), and others. The shadow file is specifically not cached. [getspnam\(3C\)](#) calls remain uncached as a result.

Each cache has a separate time-to-live for its data. By default, modifying the local database (/etc/hosts, /etc/passwd, and so forth) causes that cache to become invalidated upon the next call to nscd.

If [resolv.conf\(4\)](#) or [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#) is modified (the file's modified-timestamp changes), it causes nscd to restart, which effectively clears all caches. See [nscd.conf\(4\)](#).

nscd also acts as its own administration tool. If an instance of nscd is already running, commands are passed to the running version transparently.

When running with per-user lookups enabled (see [nscd.conf\(4\)](#)), nscd forks one and only one child process (that is, a per-user nscd) on behalf of the user making the request. The per-user nscd will use the credentials of the user to open a per-user connection to the name repository configured for the per-user style of lookups. The lookup will be performed in the child process. The results are cached in the process and are available only to the same user. The caches are managed exactly the same as the main nscd daemon manages its own caches. Subsequent requests from the user will be handled by that per-user nscd until it terminates. The per-user nscd uses a configurable inactivity time-to-live (TTL) value and terminates itself after the inactivity TTL expires.

The maximum number of per-user nscds that can be created by the main nscd is configurable (see [nscd.conf\(4\)](#)). After the maximum number of them are created, the main nscd will use an LRU algorithm to terminate less active child nscds as needed.

The main nscd daemon creates, monitors, and manages all the child nscds. It creates a user's own nscd upon receiving the user's first per-user lookup. When the nscd daemon is started, if per-user lookups are enabled, it checks to ensure all conditions are met before getting ready to create a per-user nscd. When the daemon is stopped, it terminates all the per-user nscds under its control.

Per-user nscds use the same configuration as the main nscd. They read and use the same default configuration file or the one specified with the -f command line option. Once the configuration is read, the per-user nscd will use it for its entire lifetime.

Options Several of the options described below require a *cachename* specification. Supported values for *cachename* are: passwd, group, hosts, ipnodes, exec_attr, prof_attr, user_attr, ethers, rpc, protocols, networks, bootparams, audit_user, auth_attr, services, netmasks, printers, and project.

-f *configuration-file*

Causes nscd to read its configuration data from the specified file.

-g

Prints current configuration and statistics to standard output. This is the only option executable by non-root users.

-e *cachename*, yes|no

Enables or disables the specified cache.

-i *cachename*

Invalidate the specified cache.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Stopping and restarting the nscd daemon.

```
example# svcadm disable system/name-service-cache
```

```
example# svcadm enable system/name-service-cache
```

Files /etc/nscd.conf Determines the behavior of the cache daemon

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [getspnam\(3C\)](#), [gethostbyname\(3NSL\)](#), [getipnodebyname\(3SOCKET\)](#), [audit_user\(4\)](#), [auth_attr\(4\)](#), [bootparams\(4\)](#), [ethers\(4\)](#), [exec_attr\(4\)](#), [group\(4\)](#), [hosts\(4\)](#), [netmasks\(4\)](#), [networks\(4\)](#), [nscd.conf\(4\)](#), [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#), [passwd\(4\)](#), [printers\(4\)](#), [prof_attr\(4\)](#), [project\(4\)](#), [protocols\(4\)](#), [resolv.conf\(4\)](#), [rpc\(4\)](#), [services\(4\)](#), [user_attr\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes The output from the -g option to nscd is subject to change. Do not rely upon it as a programming interface.

The nscd service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/name-service-cache
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name nslookup – query Internet name servers interactively

Synopsis nslookup [-option] [name | -] [server]

Description The nslookup utility is a program to query Internet domain name servers. It has two modes: interactive and non-interactive. Interactive mode allows the user to query name servers for information about various hosts and domains or to print a list of hosts in a domain. Non-interactive mode is used to print just the name and requested information for a host or domain.

Parameters Interactive mode is entered in the following cases:

1. No arguments are given (the default name server is used).
2. The first argument is a hyphen (-) and the second argument is the host name or Internet address of a name server.

Non-interactive mode is used when the name or Internet address of the host to be looked up is given as the first argument. The optional second argument specifies the host name or address of a name server.

Options can also be specified on the command line if they precede the arguments and are prefixed with a hyphen. For example, to change the default query type to host information, and the initial timeout to 10 seconds, type:

```
nslookup -query=hinfo -timeout=10
```

Interactive Commands host [server]
Look up information for host using the current default server or using server, if specified. If host is an Internet address and the query type is A or PTR, the name of the host is returned. If host is a name and does not have a trailing period, the search list is used to qualify the name. To look up a host not in the current domain, append a period to the name.

server *domain*

lserver *domain*

Change the default server to *domain*; lserver uses the initial server to look up information about *domain*, while server uses the current default server. If an authoritative answer can't be found, the names of servers that might have the answer are returned.

root

Not implemented.

finger

Not implemented.

ls

Not implemented.

view

Not implemented.

help

Not implemented.

?

Not implemented.

exit

Exits the program.

set *keyword*[=*value*]

This command is used to change state information that affects the lookups. Valid keywords are:

all

Prints the current values of the frequently used options to set. Information about the current default server and host is also printed.

class=*value*

Change the query class to one of:

IN

the Internet class

CH

the Chaos class

HS

the Hesiod class

ANY

wildcard

The class specifies the protocol group of the information.

(Default = IN; abbreviation = c l)

[no]debug

Turn on or off the display of the full response packet and any intermediate response packets when searching.

(Default = nodebug; abbreviation = [no]deb)

[no]d2

Turn debugging mode on or off. This displays more about what nslookup is doing.

(Default = nod2)

domain=*name*

Sets the search list to *name*.

[no]search

If the lookup request contains at least one period but doesn't end with a trailing period, append the domain names in the domain search list to the request until an answer is received.

(Default = search)

port=*value*

Change the default TCP/UDP name server port to *value*.

(Default = 53; abbreviation = po)

querytype=*value***type=*value***

Change the top of the information query.

(Default = A; abbreviations = q, ty)

[no]recurse

Tell the name server to query other servers if it does not have the information. (Default = recurse; abbreviation = [no]rec)

retry=*number*

Set the number of retries to number.

timeout=*number*

Change the initial timeout interval for waiting for a reply to number seconds.

[no]vc

Always use a virtual circuit when sending requests to the server.

(Default = novc)

[no]fail

Try the next nameserver if a nameserver responds with SERVFAIL or a referral (**no fail**) or terminate query (**fail**) on such a response.

(Default = no fail)

Files /etc/resolv.conf
resolver configuration file

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWbindc
Interface Stability	External

See Also [dig\(1M\)](#), [host\(1M\)](#), [named\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

See the BIND 9 *Administrator's Reference Manual*. As of the date of publication of this man page, this document is available at <https://www.isc.org/software/bind/documentation>.

Notes BIND 9 nslookup is deprecated and not as full featured as its BIND 8 version. For more features and functionality refer to [dig\(1M\)](#).

nslookup and [dig\(1M\)](#) now report “Not Implemented” as NOTIMP rather than NOTIMPL. This will have impact on scripts that are looking for NOTIMPL.

Name nsupdate – Dynamic DNS update utility

Synopsis nsupdate [-dv] [-y *keyname:secret* | -k *keyfile*] [-t *timeout*]
[-u *udptimeout*] [-r *udpretries*] [*filename*]

Description The nsupdate utility submits Dynamic DNS Update requests as defined in RFC 2136 to a name server. This utility allows resource records to be added or removed from a zone without manually editing the zone file. A single update request can contain requests to add or remove more than one resource record.

Zones that are under dynamic control with nsupdate or a DHCP server should not be edited by hand. Manual edits could conflict with dynamic updates and cause data to be lost.

The resource records that are dynamically added or removed with nsupdate must be in the same zone. Requests are sent to the zone's master servers identified by the MNAME field of the zone's SOA record.

Transaction signatures can be used to authenticate the Dynamic DNS updates using the TSIG resource record type described in RFC 2845. The signatures rely on a shared secret that should only be known to nsupdate and the name server. Currently, the only supported encryption algorithm for TSIG is HMAC-MD5, which is defined in RFC 2104. Once other algorithms are defined for TSIG, applications will need to ensure that they select the appropriate algorithm as well as the key when authenticating each other. For instance, suitable key and server statements would be added to `/etc/named.conf` so that the name server can associate the appropriate secret key and algorithm with the IP address of the client application that will be using TSIG authentication. The nsupdate utility does not read `/etc/named.conf`.

The nsupdate utility uses the -y or -k option to provide the shared secret needed to generate a TSIG record for authenticating Dynamic DNS update requests. These options are mutually exclusive. See OPTIONS.

Options The following options are supported:

- d Operate in debug mode. This provides tracing information about the update requests that are made and the replies received from the name server.
- k *keyfile* Read the shared secret from the file *keyfile*, whose name is of the form `K{name}.+157.+.random.private`. For historical reasons, the file `K{name}.+157.+.random.key` must also be present.
- r *udpretries* Set the number of UDP retries. The default is 3 retries. If *udpretries* is set to zero, only one update request is made.
- t *timeout* Set *timeout* interval in seconds before update is aborted. The default is 300 seconds. A setting of zero disables the timeout.
- u *udptimeout* Set interval in seconds between UDP retries, the default is 3 seconds. A setting of zero causes the interval to be calculated based on the timeout (-t) and the number of UDP retries (-r).

- v Use a TCP connection. Using a TCP connection could be preferable when a batch of update requests is made. By default, nsupdate uses UDP to send update requests to the name server.
- y *keyname:secret* Generate a signature from *keyname:secret*, where *keyname* is the name of the key and *secret* is the base64 encoded shared secret.
- Use of the -y option is discouraged because the shared secret is supplied as a command line argument in clear text and could be visible in the output from [ps\(1\)](#) or in a history file maintained by the user's shell.

Input Format The nsupdate utility reads input from *filename* or the standard input. Each command is supplied on exactly one line of input. Some commands are for administrative purposes. The others are either update instructions or prerequisite checks on the contents of the zone. These checks set conditions that some name or set of resource records (RRset) either exists or is absent from the zone. These conditions must be met if the entire update request is to succeed. Updates will be rejected if the tests for the prerequisite conditions fail.

Every update request consists of zero or more prerequisites and zero or more updates. This condition allows a suitably authenticated update request to proceed if some specified resource records are present or missing from the zone. A blank input line (or the send command) causes the accumulated commands to be sent as one Dynamic DNS update request to the name server.

The command formats and their meaning are as follows:

server servername [*port*]

Send all dynamic update requests to the name server *servername*. When no *server* statement is provided, nsupdate sends updates to the master server of the correct zone. The MNAME field of that zone's SOA record identifies the master server for that zone. The *port* argument is the port number on *servername* where the dynamic update requests get sent. If no port number is specified, the default DNS port number of 53 is used.

local address [*port*]

Send all dynamic update requests using the local *address*. When no *local* statement is provided, nsupdate sends updates using an address and port chosen by the system. The *port* argument can also be used to make requests come from a specific port. If no port number is specified, the system assigns one.

zone zonenumber

Specify that all updates are to be made to the zone *zonenumber*. If no zone statement is provided, nsupdate attempts to determine the correct zone to update based on the rest of the input.

class classname

Specify the default class. If no class is specified the default class is IN.

key name secret

Specify that all updates are to be TSIG signed using the *name secret* pair. The key command overrides any key specified on the command line with *-y* or *-k*.

prereq nxdomain domain-name

Require that no resource record of any type exists with the name *domain-name*.

prereq yxdomain domain-name

Require that *domain-name* exists (has as at least one resource record, of any type).

prereq nxrrset domain-name [class] type

Require that no resource record exists of the specified *type*, *class* and *domain-name*. If *class* is omitted, IN (internet) is assumed.

prereq yxrrset domain-name [class] type

Require that a resource record of the specified *type*, *class* and *domain-name* must exist. If *class* is omitted, IN (internet) is assumed.

prereq yxrrset domain-name [class] type data...

The *data* from each set of prerequisites of this form sharing a common *type*, *class*, and *domain-name* are combined to form a set of RRs. This set of RRs must exactly match the set of RRs existing in the zone at the given *type*, *class*, and *domain-name*. The *data* are written in the standard text representation of the resource record's RDATA.

update delete domain-name [ttl] [class] [type [data...]]

Delete any resource records named *domain-name*. If *type* and *data* are provided, only matching resource records are removed. The internet class is assumed if *class* is not supplied. The *ttl* is ignored, and is only provided for compatibility.

update add domain-name ttl [class] type data...

Add a new resource record with the specified *ttl*, *class* and *data*.

show

Display the current message, containing all of the prerequisites and updates specified since the last send.

send

Sends the current message. This is equivalent to entering a blank line.

answer

Displays the answer.

Lines beginning with a semicolon are comments and are ignored.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Inserting and Deleting Resource Records from the Zone

The examples below show how `nsupdate` could be used to insert and delete resource records from the `example.com` zone. Notice that the input in each example contains a trailing blank line so that a group of commands are sent as one dynamic update request to the master name server for `example.com`.

EXAMPLE 1 Inserting and Deleting Resource Records from the Zone *(Continued)*

```
# nsupdate
> update delete oldhost.example.com A
> update add newhost.example.com 86400 A 172.16.1.1
> send
```

Any A records for `oldhost.example.com` are deleted. An A record for `newhost.example.com` with IP address `172.16.1.1` is added. The newly-added record has a 1 day TTL (86400 seconds).

EXAMPLE 2 Adding CNAME Only If No Records Exist

The following command adds a CNAME only if no records already exist for it.

```
# nsupdate
> prereq nxdomain nickname.example.com
> update add nickname.example.com 86400 CNAME somehost.example.com
> send
```

The prerequisite condition gets the name server to check that there are no resource records of any type for `nickname.example.com`. If there are, the update request fails. If this name does not exist, a CNAME for it is added. This action ensures that when the CNAME is added, it cannot conflict with the long-standing rule in RFC 1034 that a name must not exist as any other record type if it exists as a CNAME. (The rule has been updated for DNSSEC in RFC 4035 to allow CNAMEs to have RSIG, DNSKEY, and NSEC records.)

Files	<code>/etc/resolv.conf</code>	used to identify default name server
	<code>K{name}+.157.+.random}.key</code>	base-64 encoding of HMAC-MD5 key created by <code>dnssec-keygen(1M)</code> .
	<code>K{name}+.157.+.random}.private</code>	base-64 encoding of HMAC-MD5 key created by <code>dnssec-keygen(1M)</code>

Bugs The TSIG key is redundantly stored in two separate files. This is a consequence of `nsupdate` using the DST library for its cryptographic operations and could change in future releases.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWbind
Interface Stability	External

See Also [named\(1M\)](#), [dnssec-keygen\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

RFC 2136, RFC 3007, RFC 2104, RFC 2845, RFC 1034, RFC 2535, RFC 2931, RFC 4035

Name ntfscat – display NTFS files and streams on the standard output

Synopsis ntfscat [*options*] *device* [*file*]

Description The ntfscat command reads a file or stream from an NTFS volume and display the contents on the standard output.

The case of the filename passed to ntfscat is ignored.

Options Supported options are listed below. Most options have both single-letter and full-name forms. Multiple single-letter options that do not take an argument can be combined. For example, -fv is the equivalent of -f -v. A full-name option can be abbreviated to a unique prefix of its name.

-a, --attribute *type*

Display the contents of a particular attribute type. By default, the unnamed \$DATA attribute will be shown. The attribute can be specified by a number in decimal or hexadecimal, or by name.

Hex	Decimal	Name
0x10	16	"\$STANDARD_INFORMATION"
0x20	32	"\$ATTRIBUTE_LIST"
0x30	48	"\$FILE_NAME"
0x40	64	"\$OBJECT_ID"
0x50	80	"\$SECURITY_DESCRIPTOR"
0x60	96	"\$VOLUME_NAME"
0x70	112	"\$VOLUME_INFORMATION"
0x80	128	"\$DATA"
0x90	144	"\$INDEX_ROOT"
0xA0	160	"\$INDEX_ALLOCATION"
0xB0	176	"\$BITMAP"
0xC0	192	"\$REPARSE_POINT"
0xD0	208	"\$EA_INFORMATION"
0xE0	224	"\$EA"
0xF0	240	"\$PROPERTY_SET"
0x100	256	"\$LOGGED_UTILITY_STREAM"

The attribute names can be specified without the leading dollar sign (\$) symbol. If you use the \$ symbol, you must quote the name to prevent the shell from interpreting the name.

-f, --force

Overrides some sensible defaults, such as not using a mounted volume. Use this option with caution.

-h, --help

Show a list of options with a brief description of each.

-i, --inode *num*

Specify a file by its inode number instead of its name.

- n, --attribute-name *name*
Display the attribute identified by *name*.
- q, --quiet
Suppress some debug, warning, and error messages.
- V, --version
Show the version number, copyright, and license information.
- v, --verbose
Display more debug, warning, and error messages.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Displaying Contents of File in Root

The following command displays the contents of a file in the root of an NTFS volume.

```
# ntfscat /dev/dsk/c0d0p1 boot.ini
```

EXAMPLE 2 Displaying Contents of File in Subdirectory

The following command displays the contents of a file in a subdirectory of an NTFS volume.

```
# ntfscat /dev/dsk/c0d0p1 /winnt/system32/drivers/etc/hosts
```

EXAMPLE 3 Display Contents of an Attribute

The following command displays the contents of the \$INDEX_ROOT attribute of the root directory (inode 5).

```
# ntfscat /dev/dsk/c0d0p1 -a INDEX_ROOT -i 5
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWntfsprogs
Interface Stability	Uncommitted

See Also [ntfsls\(1M\)](#), [ntfsprogs\(1M\)](#), [parted\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

<http://wiki.linux-ntfs.org>

Authors ntfscat was written by Richard Russon, Anton Altaparmakov and Szabolcs Szakacsits.

Name ntfsclone – clone, image, restore, or rescue an NTFS

Synopsis ntfsclone [*options*] *source*
 ntfsclone --save-image [*options*] *source*
 ntfsclone --resotore-image [*options*] *source*
 ntfsclone --metadata [*options*] *source*

Description The `ntfsclone` utility efficiently clones (which includes copy, save, backup, and restore operations) or rescues an NTFS filesystem to a sparse file, an image, a device (partition), or to standard output. It works at disk sector level and copies only the written data (that is, not empty space). Unused disk space becomes zero (cloning to sparse file), encoded with control codes (saving in special image format), left unchanged (cloning to a disk/partition) or filled with zeros (cloning to standard output).

`ntfsclone` can be useful in making backups—taking an exact snapshot of an NTFS filesystem—and restoring it later on. It also can be used to test NTFS read/write functionality and allows you to troubleshoot users' issues using the clone, without the risk of destroying the original file system.

If not using the special image format (see section of the same name below), the clone is an exact copy of the original NTFS file system, from sector to sector. Thus, it can also be mounted just like the original NTFS filesystem. For example, if you clone to a file and the kernel has a loopback device and NTFS support, then the file can be mounted using:

```
# mount -t ntfs -o loop ntfsclone.img
```

Windows Cloning You must exercise great care to copy, move or restore a system or boot partition to another computer, or to a different disk or partition (for example, `/dev/dsk/c0d0p1` to `/dev/dsk/c0d0p2`, `/dev/dsk/c0d0p1` to `/dev/dsk/c0d1p1` or to a different disk sector offset).

Under most circumstances, to enable Windows to boot you must copy, move, or restore NTFS to the same partition that has the following characteristics as the original partition and disk:

- starts at the same sector
- on the same type of disk
- having the same BIOS legacy cylinder setting

The `ntfsclone` utility guarantees an exact copy of NTFS but does not deal with booting issues. This is by design: `ntfsclone` is a file system, not a system, utility. Its goal is only NTFS cloning, not Windows cloning. Because of this, `ntfsclone` can be used as a very fast and reliable building block for Windows cloning, but is not a complete answer. You can find useful tips on NTFS cloning at the NTFS web site, <http://wiki.linux-ntfs.org>.

Sparse Files A file containing unallocated blocks (holes) is referred to as a “sparse file”. The reported size of such files is always higher than the disk space consumed by them. The `du(1)` command reports the real disk space used by a sparse file. The holes are always read as zeros. All major Linux file

systems, such as, ext2, ext3, reiserfs, Reiser4, JFS, and XFS support sparse files. However, the ISO 9600 CD-ROM file system, as one example, does not.

Special Image Format It is recommended that you save an NTFS filesystem to a special image format. Instead of representing unallocated blocks as holes, they are encoded using control codes. Thus, the image saves space without requiring sparse file support. The image format is ideal for streaming file system images over the network. The disadvantage of the special image format is that you cannot mount the image directly; you must first restore it.

To save an image using the special image format, use the `-s` or the `--save-image` option. To restore an image, use the `-r` or the `--restore-image` option. Note that you can restore images from standard input by using a hyphen (`-`) as the source file.

Metadata-only Cloning Using the `-m` or `--metadata` option, `ntfsclone` can save only the NTFS metadata and the clone still will be mountable. In this usage, all non-metadata file content is lost; reading back the data results in all zeros.

The metadata-only image can be compressed very well, usually to a size in the range of 1 to 8 MB. It is convenient to transfer such an image for investigation and troubleshooting.

In metadata-only mode, `ntfsclone` saves none of the user's data, which includes the resident user's data embedded into metadata. All is filled with zeros. Moreover, all the file timestamps, and deleted and unused spaces inside the metadata are filled with zeros. Thus, this mode is inappropriate, for example, for forensic analyses.

Note that filenames are not removed. Because a filename might contain sensitive information, consider the possibilities for breaches of security or privacy before sending out a metadata-only image.

Options Supported options are listed below. Most options have both single-letter and full-name forms. Multiple single-letter options that do not take an argument can be combined. For example, `-fv` is the equivalent of `-f -v`. A full-name option can be abbreviated to a unique prefix of its name.

`-f, --force`

Forces `ntfsclone` to proceed, even if the filesystem is marked "dirty" following a consistency check.

`-h, --help`

Show a list of options with a brief description of each one.

`-i, --ignore-fs-check`

Ignore the result of the file system consistency check. This option can be used only with the `--meta-data` option. Any clusters that cause an inconsistency are saved.

`-m, --metadata`

Clone only metadata. With this option, you must clone only to a file.

`-o, --output file`

Clone NTFS to the non-existent *file*. If *file* is a hyphen (`-`), clone to the standard output.

- O, --overwrite *file*
Clone NTFS to *file*, overwriting *file* if it already exists.
- rescue
Ignore disk read errors so that a disk having bad sectors, for example, a failing disk, can be rescued with minimal impact on the disk. `ntfscclone` works at the lowest, sector level in this mode, enabling more data to be rescued. The contents of the unreadable sectors are filled with the question mark (?) character; the beginning of such sectors are marked by the string: `BadSector`.
- r, --restore- image *source*
Restore from the special image format specified by *source*. If *source* is a hyphen (-), the image is read from the standard input.
- s, --save- image
Save to the special image format. In terms of space usage and speed, this is the most efficient option if imaging is done to the standard output. This option is useful for image compression, encryption, or streaming through a network.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Cloning with Overwrite Option

The following command clones with the `--overwrite` option.

```
# ntfscclone --overwrite /dev/dsk/c0d2p1 /dev/dsk/c0d0p1
```

EXAMPLE 2 Saving to Special Image Format

The following command clones to the special image format to its original partition.

```
# ntfscclone --save-image --output backup.img /dev/dsk/c0d0p1
```

EXAMPLE 3 Restoring from a Special Image File

The following command restores an NTFS from a special image file.

```
# ntfscclone --restore-image --overwrite /dev/dsk/c0d0p1 backup.img
```

EXAMPLE 4 Saving to a Compressed Image

The following command saves an NTFS to a compressed image file.

```
# ntfscclone --save-image -o - /dev/dsk/c0d0p1
```

EXAMPLE 5 Restoring from a Compressed Image

The following command restores an NTFS volume from a compressed image file.

```
# gunzip -c backup.img.gz | \  
ntfscclone --restore-image --overwrite /dev/dsk/c0d0p1 -
```

EXAMPLE 6 Backing up to a Remote Host Using ssh

The following command backs up to a remote host, using [ssh\(1\)](#). Note that ssh will probably require a password.

```
# ntfscclone --save-image --output - /dev/dsk/c0d0p1 | \  
gzip -c | ssh host 'cat > backup.img.gz'
```

EXAMPLE 7 Restoring from a Remote Host Using ssh

The following command backs up to a remote host, using [ssh\(1\)](#). Note that ssh will probably require a password.

```
# ssh host 'cat backup.img.gz' | gunzip -c | \  
ntfscclone --restore-image --overwrite /dev/dsk/c0d0p1 -
```

EXAMPLE 8 Streaming an Image File from a Web Server

The following command streams an image file from a web server and restore it to a partition.

```
# wget -qO - http://server/backup.img | \  
ntfscclone --restore-image --overwrite /dev/dsk/c0d0p1 -
```

EXAMPLE 9 Cloning to a New File

The following command clones an NTFS volume to a non-existent file.

```
# ntfscclone --output ntfs-clone.img /dev/dsk/c0d0p1
```

EXAMPLE 10 Packing NTFS Metadata

The following command packs NTFS metadata into an image file. Note that bzip2 takes a much longer time than gzip, but produces an archive that is up to ten times smaller than the latter produces.

```
# ntfscclone --metadata --output ntfsmeta.img /dev/dsk/c0d0p1  
bzip2 ntfsmeta.img
```

EXAMPLE 11 Unpacking NTFS Metadata

The following command unpacks NTFS metadata into a sparse file.

```
# bunzip2 -c ntfsmeta.img.bz2 | \  
cp --sparse=always /proc/self/fd/0 ntfsmeta.img
```

Exit Status The return code is zero on success, non-zero otherwise.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWntfsprogs
Interface Stability	Uncommitted

See Also [du\(1\)](#), [ssh\(1\)](#), [ntfsresize\(1M\)](#), [ntfsundelete\(1M\)](#), [parted\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

<http://wiki.linux-ntfs.org>

Authors `ntfsclose` was written by Szabolcs Szakacsits with contributions from Per Olofsson (special image format support) and Anton Altaparmakov.

Name ntfscluster – identify files in a specified region of an NTFS volume

Synopsis ntfscluster [*options*] *device*

Description The `ntfscluster` utility has three modes of operation: `info`, `sector`, and `cluster`, described as follows.

Info

The default mode, `info` is currently not implemented. It will display general information about the NTFS volume when it is working.

Sector

The `sector` mode displays a list of files that have data in the specified range of sectors. This mode is put in effect by the `--sector` option.

Cluster

The `cluster` mode displays a list of files that have data in the specified range of clusters. When the cluster size is one sector, this is equivalent to the `sector` mode of operation. This mode is put in effect by the `--cluster` option.

Options Supported options are listed below. Most options have both single-letter and full-name forms. Multiple single-letter options that do not take an argument can be combined. For example, `-fv` is the equivalent of `-f -v`. A full-name option can be abbreviated to a unique prefix of its name.

`-c, --cluster range`

Any files whose data is in this range of clusters will be displayed.

`-F, --filename filename`

Display information about *filename*.

`-f, --force`

Overrides some sensible defaults, such as not working with a mounted volume. Use this option with caution.

`-h, --help`

Show a list of options with a brief description of each.

`-I, --inode num`

Show information about this inode.

`-i, --info`

This option is not yet implemented.

`-q, --quiet`

Suppress some debug, warning, and error messages.

`-s, --sector range`

Any files whose data is in this range of sectors will be displayed.

`-V, --version`

Show the version number, copyright, and license information.

`-v, --verbose`

Display more debug, warning, and error messages.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Displaying Information About a Volume

The following command displays information about the volume `/dev/dsk/c0d0p1`.

```
# ntfscluster /dev/dsk/c0d0p1
```

EXAMPLE 2 Displaying List of Files in a Cluster Range

The following command looks for files in the first 500 clusters of `/dev/dsk/c0d0p1`.

```
# ntfscluster -c 0-500 /dev/dsk/c0d0p1
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWntfsprogs
Interface Stability	Uncommitted

See Also [ntfsinfo\(1M\)](#), [ntfsprogs\(1M\)](#), [parted\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

<http://wiki.linux-ntfs.org>

Authors `ntfscluster` was written by Richard Russon, with contributions from Anton Altaparmakov.

Name ntfscmp – compare two NTFS file systems and report the differences

Synopsis ntfscmp [*options*] *device1 device2*

Description The `ntfscmp` utility compares all aspects of two NTFS file systems and reports all differences it finds. The file systems can be on block devices or in image files. `ntfscmp` can be used for volume verification. However, its primary purpose is to be an efficient development tool, used to quickly locate, identify, and check the correctness of the metadata changes made to NTFS.

If one is interested only in the NTFS metadata changes, it can be useful to compare the metadata images created by using the `--metadata` option of `ntfscclone(1M)` to eliminate the usually uninteresting timestamp changes.

The terse output of `ntfscmp` is intentional, because the provided information is sufficient to determine exact differences. More copious output can be obtained by using `diff(1)` to compare the verbose output of `ntfsinfo(1M)` for each reported inode.

Options Supported options are listed below. Options have both single-letter and full-name forms.

`-h, --help`

Display help and exit.

`-P, --no-progress-bar`

Do not show progress bars.

`-v, --verbose`

Display more debug, warning, and error messages.

Exit Status The exit code is 0 on success, non-zero otherwise.

Attributes See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWntfsprogs
Interface Stability	Uncommitted

See Also `diff(1)`, `ntfscat(1M)`, `ntfscclone(1M)`, `ntfsinfo(1M)`, `ntfsprogs(1M)`, `parted(1M)`, `attributes(5)`

<http://wiki.linux-ntfs.org>

Authors `ntfscmp` was written by Szabolcs Szakacsits.

Name ntfscp – copy file to an NTFS volume

Synopsis ntfscp [*options*] *device source_file destination*

Description The ntfscp utility copies files to an NTFS volume. *destination* (see Synopsis) can be either a file or a directory. If *destination* is a directory specified by name, *source_file* is copied into this directory. If *destination* is a directory specified by inode number, an unnamed data attribute is created for this inode and *source_file* is copied into it. Consider possible negative consequence before specifying a directory by inode number: it is unusual to have an unnamed data stream in a directory.

Data Streams All data on NTFS is stored in streams, which can have names. A file can have more than one data stream, but exactly one must have no name. The size of a file is the size of its unnamed data stream. Usually, when you do not specify a stream name, you are seeking access to the unnamed data stream. If you want access to a named data stream, you need to add `:stream_name` to the filename. For example, by opening `some.mp3:artist` you will open stream `artist` in `some.mp3`. In an operating system, such as Windows, that prevents you from accessing named data streams, you need to use some program like FAR or utilities from cygwin to access those streams.

Options Supported options are listed below. Most options have both single-letter and full-name forms. Multiple single-letter options that do not take an argument can be combined. For example, `-fv` is the equivalent of `-f -v`. A full-name option can be abbreviated to a unique prefix of its name.

`-a, --attribute num`

Write to attribute designated by *num*.

`-f, --force`

Overrides some sensible defaults, such as not working with a mounted volume. Use this option with caution.

`-h, --help`

Show a list of options with a brief description of each one.

`-i, --inode`

Treat *destination* (see Synopsis) as inode number.

`-N, --attr-name name`

Write to attribute with this name.

`-n, --no-action`

Use this option to make a test run before doing the actual copy operation. Volume will be opened read-only and no write will be done.

`-q, --quiet`

Suppress some debug, warning, and error messages.

`-V, --version`

Show the version number, copyright, and license information.

-v, --verbose

Display more debug, warning, and error messages.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Copying from Home to Root Directory

The following command copies `new_boot.ini` from `/home/user` as `boot.ini` to the root of an `/dev/dsk/c0d0p1` NTFS volume.

```
# ntfscp /dev/dsk/c0d0p1 /home/user/new_boot.ini boot.ini
```

EXAMPLE 2 Copying a Stream

The following command copies `myfile` to `C:\some\path\myfile:stream` (assume that `/dev/dsk/c0d0p1` drive designator is C).

```
# ntfscp -N stream /dev/dsk/c0d0p1 myfile /some/path
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWntfsprogs
Interface Stability	Uncommitted

See Also [ntfsresize\(1M\)](#), [ntfsprogs\(1M\)](#), [parted\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

<http://wiki.linux-ntfs.org>

Authors `ntfscp` was written by Yura Pakhuchiy, with contributions from Anton Altaparmakov and Hil Liao.

Name ntfsfix – fix common errors and force operating system to check NTFS

Synopsis `ntfsfix [options] device`

Description The `ntfsfix` utility fixes some common NTFS problems. Note that it is not a version of `chkdsk`. It repairs some fundamental NTFS inconsistencies, resets the NTFS journal file, and schedules an NTFS consistency check for the next reboot of the operating system.

Run `ntfsfix` on an NTFS volume if you think it was damaged by the operating system or in some other way and it cannot be mounted.

Options Supported options are listed below.

`-h, --help`

Show a list of options with a brief description of each.

`-V, --version`

Show the version number, copyright, and license information.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWntfsprogs
Interface Stability	Uncommitted

See Also [mkntfs\(1M\)](#), [ntfsprogs\(1M\)](#), [parted\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

<http://wiki.linux-ntfs.org>

Authors `ntfsfix` was written by Anton Altaparmakov, with contributions from Szabolcs Szakacsits.

Name ntfsinfo – dump a file's attributes

Synopsis ntfsinfo [*options*] *device*

Description The `ntfsinfo` utility dumps the attributes of inode *inode-number* or the file *path-filename* and/or information about the MFT (`-m` option). Run `ntfsinfo` without arguments for a full list of options.

Options Supported options are listed below. Most options have both single-letter and full-name forms. Multiple single-letter options that do not take an argument can be combined. For example, `-fv` is the equivalent of `-f -v`. A full-name option can be abbreviated to a unique prefix of its name.

`-F, --file file`

Show information about *file*.

`-f, --force`

Overrides some sensible defaults, such as not overwriting an existing file. Use this option with caution.

`-h, --help`

Show a list of options with a brief description of each.

`-i, --inode num`

Show information about inode identified by *num*.

`-m, --mft`

Show information about the volume.

`-q, --quiet`

Suppress some debug, warning, and error messages.

`-t, --notime`

Do not display timestamps in the output.

`-V, --version`

Show the version number, copyright, and license information.

`-v, --verbose`

Display more debug, warning, and error messages.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWntfsprogs
Interface Stability	Uncommitted

See Also [ntfsprogs\(1M\)](#), [ntfsundelete\(1M\)](#), [parted\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

<http://wiki.linux-ntfs.org>

Authors `ntfsinfo` was written by Matthew J. Fanto, Anton Altaparmakov, Richard Russon, Szabolcs Szakacsits, Yuval Fleidel, Yura Pakhuchiy and Cristian Klein.

Name ntfslabel – display or change the label on an NTFS file system

Synopsis ntfslabel [*options*] *device* [*new_label*]

Description The `ntfslabel` utility displays or changes the file system label on the NTFS file system located on *device* (see *Synopsis*).

If the optional argument *new_label* is not present, `ntfslabel` displays the current file system label.

If the optional argument *new_label* is present, `ntfslabel` sets the file system label to be *new_label*. NTFS file system labels can be at most 128 Unicode characters long; if *new_label* is longer than 128 Unicode characters, `ntfslabel` truncates it and displays a warning message.

It is also possible to set the file system label using the `-L` option of `mkntfs(1M)` during creation of the file system.

Options Supported options are listed below. Most options have both single-letter and full-name forms. Multiple single-letter options that do not take an argument can be combined. For example, `-fv` is the equivalent of `-f -v`. A full-name option can be abbreviated to a unique prefix of its name.

`-f, --force`

Overrides some sensible defaults, such as not working with a mounted volume. Use this option with caution.

`-h, --help`

Show a list of options with a brief description of each.

`-n, --no-action`

Do not actually write a new label to disk.

`-q, --quiet`

Suppress some debug, warning, and error messages.

`-V, --version`

Show the version number, copyright, and license information.

`-v, --verbose`

Display more debug, warning, and error messages.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWntfsprogs
Interface Stability	Uncommitted

See Also [mkntfs\(1M\)](#), [ntfsprogs\(1M\)](#), [parted\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

<http://wiki.linux-ntfs.org>

Authors ntfsLabel was written by Matthew J. Fanto, with contributions from Anton Altaparmakov and Richard Russon.

Name ntfsls – list directory contents on an NTFS file system

Synopsis ntfsls [*options*] *device*

Description The `ntfsls` utility lists information about the files specified by the `PATH` option (the root directory by default). *device* (see Synopsis) is the special file corresponding to the device (for example, `/dev/dsk/c0d0p0num`) or an NTFS image file.

Options Supported options are listed below. Most options have both single-letter and full-name forms. Multiple single-letter options that do not take an argument can be combined. For example, `-fv` is the equivalent of `-f -v`. A full-name option can be abbreviated to a unique prefix of its name.

`-a, --all`

Display all files. If this option is not specified file names in the POSIX namespace are not displayed.

`-F, --classify`

Append one of the indicators shown below to entries.

* / = @ |

`-f, --force`

Force execution. For example, this option is necessary to run on an NTFS partition stored in a normal file.

`-h, --help`

Display usage information and exit.

`-i, --inode`

Display the inode number of each file. This is the MFT reference number, in NTFS terminology.

`-l, --long`

Use a long listing format.

`-p, --path path`

The directory whose contents to list or the file (including the path) about which to display information.

`-q, --quiet`

Suppress some debug, warning, and error messages.

`-R, --recursive`

Show the contents of all directories beneath the specified directory.

`-s, --system`

Unless this options is specified, all files beginning with a dollar sign character will not be listed, as these files are usually system files.

`-v, --verbose`

Display more debug, warning, and error messages.

-V, --version

Display the ntfsls version number and exit.

-x, --dos

Display short file names, that is, files in the DOS namespace, instead of long file names, that is, files in the WIN32 namespace.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWntfsprogs
Interface Stability	Uncommitted

See Also , [ntfsprogs\(1M\)](#), [parted\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

<http://wiki.linux-ntfs.org>

Authors This version of ntfsls was written by Lode Leroy, Anton Altaparmakov, Richard Russon, Carmelo Kintana and Giang Nguyen.

Name ntfsprogs – list of NTFS tools

Synopsis ntfsprogs

Description ntfsprogs is the name of a suite of NTFS utilities based around a shared library. The tools are available for free and come with full source code. The tools are listed below.

[mkntfs\(1M\)](#)

Create an NTFS filesystem.

[ntfscat\(1M\)](#)

Dump a file's content to the standard output.

[ntfsclone\(1M\)](#)

Efficiently clone, backup, restore, or rescue NTFS.

[ntfscluster\(1M\)](#)

Locate the files that use the specified sectors or clusters.

[ntfscmp\(1M\)](#)

Compare two NTFS file systems and report the differences.

[ntfscp\(1M\)](#)

Copy a file to an NTFS volume.

[ntfsfix\(1M\)](#)

Check and fix some common errors, clear the log file, and make the operating system perform a thorough check next time it boots.

[ntfsinfo\(1M\)](#)

Show information about NTFS or one of the files or directories within it.

[ntfslabel\(1M\)](#)

Show, or set, an NTFS filesystem's volume label.

[ntfsls\(1M\)](#)

List information about files in a directory residing on an NTFS.

[ntfsmount\(1M\)](#) (not a SunOS man page)

Read-write NTFS user space driver.

[ntfsresize\(1M\)](#)

Resize NTFS without losing data.

[ntfsundelete\(1M\)](#)

Recover deleted files from NTFS.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWntfsprogs
Interface Stability	Uncommitted

See Also [parted\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

<http://wiki.linux-ntfs.org>

Authors The tools were written by Anton Altaparmakov, Carmelo Kintana, Cristian Klein, Erik Sornes, Giang Nguyen, Holger Ohmacht, Lode Leroy, Matthew J. Fanto, Per Olofsson, Richard Russon, Szabolcs Szakacsits, Yura Pakhuchiy, and Yuval Fleidel.

Name ntfsresize – resize an NTFS file system without data loss

Synopsis `ntfsresize [options] --info device`
`ntfsresize [options] [--size size[k|M|G]] device`

Description The `ntfsresize` program safely resizes Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows 2000, Windows NT4 and Longhorn NTFS filesystems without data loss. All NTFS versions used by 32-bit and 64-bit Windows “operating systems” are supported. Defragmentation is not required prior to resizing, because `ntfsresize` can relocate any data if needed, without risking data integrity.

`ntfsresize` can be used to shrink or enlarge any NTFS file system located on an unmounted device (usually a disk partition). The new file system will have a size that you specify. The size parameter can have one of the optional modifiers `k`, `M`, `G`, denoting, respectively, kilobytes, megabytes, or gigabytes. `ntfsresize` conforms to the SI, ATA, an IEEE standards and the disk manufacturers by supporting $k=10^3$, $M=10^6$ and $G=10^9$.

If both `---info` and `---size` options are omitted then the NTFS file system will be enlarged to the underlying device size.

To resize a file system on a partition, you must resize both the file system and the partition, by editing the partition table on the disk. Similarly to other command-line file system resizers, `ntfsresize` does not manipulate the size of the partitions. To do that you must use a disk partitioning tool, such as `fdisk(1M)`. Alternatively, you could use one of the many user friendly partitioners that uses `ntfsresize` internally. Such partitioners include, among others, Mandriva's DiskDrake, QTParted, SUSE/Novell's YaST Partitioner, IBM's EVMS, GParted, or Debian/Ubuntu's Partman.

Back up your data and your partition table before using any partitioning tool. For an NTFS file system, you can use `ntfsclone(1M)` as a means of backup.

To shrink an NTFS partition, first use `ntfsresize` to shrink the size of the file system. Then use a utility such as `fdisk(1M)` to shrink the size of the partition by deleting the partition and recreating it with the smaller size. Do not make the partition smaller than the new size of NTFS; otherwise, you will not be able to boot from that partition. If you mistakenly made a too-small partition, you would have to recreate the partition to be as large as newly sized NTFS file system.

To enlarge an NTFS file system, you must first enlarge the size of the underlying partition. You can use `fdisk(1M)` to delete the partition and recreate it with a larger size. Make sure the newly sized partition does not overlap with any other partition. Then use `ntfsresize` to enlarge the file system.

When recreating a partition, make sure you create it at the same starting sector and with the same partition type as was used in the partition you are replacing. Otherwise, you will not be able to access your file system. Use the `fdisk u` command to switch from the default cylinder

unit to the reliable sector unit. Also, if the bootable flag was set in the old partition, make sure to set it in the recreated partition. Otherwise, you might not be able to boot from the new partition.

Extended Description There are a handful of very rarely met restrictions in the use of `ntfsresize`. An example of such a restriction occurs with a file system stored on a disk having unknown bad sectors. Relocation of the first MFT extent and resizing into the middle of a `$MFTMirr` extent are not supported. These cases are detected and resizing is restricted to a safe size or the closest safe size is displayed.

Upon completion of a resizing, `ntfsresize` schedules an NTFS consistency check. In Windows, this check is performed by `chkdsk`. Upon the first subsequent reboot into Windows, you will note `chkdsk` running in a blue background. This is normal. Windows might force a quick reboot after the consistency check. Depending on your hardware configuration, Windows might alert you to a systems setting change and recommend or require a reboot. Acknowledge the message and reboot a second time.

Options Supported options are listed below. Most options have both single-letter and full-name forms. Multiple single-letter options that do not take an argument can be combined. For example, `-fv` is the equivalent of `-f -v`. A full-name option can be abbreviated to a unique prefix of its name.

`-b, --bad-sectors`

By default, `ntfsresize` exits upon encountering bad sectors. This option allows the utility to proceed in spite of such sectors.

Prior using this option, it is strongly recommended that you use `ntfscclone(1M)` with the `--rescue` option to make a backup, then, in Windows, run `chkdsk /f /r volume:` from the command line. If the disk guarantee displays as valid, then replace it, as it is defective. Note that no software can repair bad sector errors. The most that can be done is to work around these defects.

This option has no effect if a disk has no bad sectors.

`-f, --force`

`ntfsresize` always marks a file system for consistency check before a real (not using `--no-action`) resize operation and it leaves that way for extra safety. Thus, if an NTFS file system was marked by `ntfsresize`, it is safe to use this option. You must use this option, if you need to resize several times without booting into Windows between each resizing step.

`-h, --help`

Display usage information and exit.

`-i, --info`

Used when you want to shrink a file system. Causes `ntfsresize` to determine the smallest shrunken file system size supported. Most of the time the smallest size is the space already used on the file system. `ntfsresize` does not shrink a file system to a smaller size than what is returned by this option. Depending on several factors, it might be unable to shrink to this

theoretical size. Although the integrity of your data should be never at risk, it is nevertheless strongly recommended to make a test run by using the `--no-action` option before actual resizing.

Based on testing, the smallest attainable size is approximately space used in the file system plus 20–200 MB. Note also that Windows might need an additional 50–100 MB to boot safely.

This option never causes any changes to the file system; the partition is opened read-only.

`-n, --no-action`

Use this option to make a test run before doing the resize operation. Volume will be opened read-only and `ntfsresize` displays what it would do if it were to resize the file system. Proceed with the actual resizing only if the test run passed.

`-P, --no-progress-bar`

Do not display progress bars during `ntfsresize` operation.

`-s, --size size[k|M|G]`

Resize file system to *size* bytes. The new file system will have a size that you specify. The size parameter can have one of the optional modifiers `k`, `M`, `G`, denoting, respectively, kilobytes, megabytes, or gigabytes. `ntfsresize` conforms to the SI, ATA, an IEEE standards and the disk manufacturers by supporting $k=10^3$, $M=10^6$ and $G=10^9$. Before performing an actual resizing, run `ntfsresize` with the `--no-action` option, along with this option, first.

`-v, --verbose`

Display copious output.

`-V, --version`

Display the version number of `ntfsresize`.

Exit Status Display zero on success, non-zero otherwise.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWntfsprogs
Interface Stability	Uncommitted

See Also [fdisk\(1M\)](#), [ntfscclone\(1M\)](#), [parted\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

<http://wiki.linux-ntfs.org>

Notes In Linux version 2.6, with partitions that have been manipulated by [parted\(1M\)](#), use of `ntfsresize` preceded corruption of partition tables, which resulted in unbootable Windows systems. This occurred even if the NTFS file system was consistent. This problem is independent of NTFS and, thus, `ntfsresize`. Moreover, `ntfsresize` never touches the

partition table. Under the conditions just described, you can, in the BIOS, change Disk Access Mode to LBA to regain the ability to boot. For further discussion of this condition see the ntfsresize FAQ at: <http://mlf.linux.rulez.org/mlf/ezaz/ntfsresize.html>.

Authors ntfsresize was written by Szabolcs Szakacsits, with contributions from Anton Altaparmakov and Richard Russon.

Name ntfsundelete – recover a deleted file from an NTFS volume

Synopsis ntfsundelete [*options*] *device*

Description The ntfsundelete utility can, under the right circumstances, recover a deleted file from an NTFS volume. The command has three modes of operation:

Scan

The default mode, `scan` simply reads an NTFS Volume and looks for files that have been deleted. It then displays a list, giving the inode number, name, and size of each deleted file.

Undelete

The undelete mode takes the files either matching the regular expression (option `-m`) or specified by the *inode-expressions* and recovers as much of the data as possible. It saves the result to another location.

Copy

The “wizard’s” option. Saves a portion of the MFT to a file, which can be useful when debugging ntfsundelete.

There are many circumstances under which ntfsundelete is unable to recover a file. For example, consider the following scenario. When a file is deleted the MFT Record is marked as not in use and the bitmap representing the disk usage is updated. If the power is not turned off immediately, the free space, where the file used to reside might get overwritten. Worse, the MFT Record might be reused for another file. If this happens, it is impossible to tell where the file was on disk.

Even if all the clusters of a file are not in use, there is no guarantee that they have not been overwritten by some short-lived file.

ntfsundelete cannot recover compressed or encrypted files. During a scan, it will display such a file as being 0% recoverable.

Locale In NTFS, all filenames are stored as Unicode. A filename is converted into the current locale for display by ntfsundelete. The utility has successfully displayed Chinese pictogram filenames and then correctly recovered them.

Extended MFT Records In rare circumstances, a single MFT Record will not be large enough to hold the metadata describing a file (a file would have to be in hundreds of fragments for this to happen). In these cases, one MFT record might hold the filename, while another will hold the information about the data. ntfsundelete will not try and piece together such records. It will simply list unnamed files with data.

Recovered File's Size and Creation Date To recover a file, ntfsundelete has to read the file's metadata. Unfortunately, when a file is deleted, the metadata can be left in an inconsistent state. For example, the file size might be recorded as zero; the creation date of a file might be set to the time it was deleted or to a random time. In such situations, ntfsundelete picks the largest file size it finds and writes that to disk. It also tries to set the file's creation date to the last-modified date. This date might be the correct last modified date, or something unexpected.

Options Supported options are listed below. Most options have both single-letter and full-name forms. Multiple single-letter options that do not take an argument can be combined. For example, `-fv` is the equivalent of `-f -v`. A full-name option can be abbreviated to a unique prefix of its name.

`-b, --byte num`

Fill in the parts of unrecoverable file clusters with byte represented by *num*. The default is zeros.

`-C, --case`

Make filename search, when attempting a match with the `--match` option, case-sensitive. The default filename search is case-insensitive.

`-c, --copy range`

This “wizard” option writes a block of MFT FILE records to a file. The default file is `mft` which will be created in the current directory. This option can be combined with the `--output` and `--destination` options.

`-d, --destination dir`

Specify the location of the output file for the `--copy` and `--undelete` options.

`-f, --force`

Overrides some sensible defaults, such as not overwriting an existing file. Use this option with caution.

`-h, --help`

Show a list of options with a brief description of each one.

`-i, --inodes range`

Recover the files within the specified range of inode numbers. *range* can be a single inode number, several numbers separated by commas, or a range separated by a dash (-).

`-m, --match pattern`

Filter the output by looking only for filenames that match *pattern*. The pattern can include the wildcards `?`, matching exactly one character, or `*`, matching zero or more characters. By default, the matching is case-insensitive. To make the search case-sensitive, use the `--case` option.

`-O, --optimistic`

Recover parts of the file even if they are currently marked as in use.

`-o, --output file`

Set the name of the output file created by the `--copy` or `--undelete` options.

`-P, --parent`

Display the parent directory of a deleted file.

`-p, --percentage num`

Filter the output of the `--scan` option by matching only files with *num* percent of recoverable content.

- q, --quiet
Reduce the amount of output to a minimum. This option is not useful with the --scan option.
- s, --scan
Search through an NTFS volume and display a list of files that could be recovered. This is the default action of ntfsundelete. This list can be filtered by filename, size, percentage recoverable, or last modification time, using the --match, --size, --percent, and --time options, respectively.

In the output from this option, the %age (percentage) field displays how much of a file can potentially be recovered.
- S, --size *range*
Filter the output of the --scan option by looking for a particular range of file sizes. *range* can be specified as two numbers separated by a hyphen (-). A unit of size can be abbreviated using the suffixes k, m, g, and t, for kilobytes, megabytes, gigabytes, and terabytes respectively.
- t, --time *since*
Filter the output of the --scan option. Match only files that have been altered since this time. The time must be given as number and a suffix of d, w, m, or y for, respectively, days, weeks, months, or years.
- T, --truncate
The default behavior of ntfsundelete is to round *up* a file's size to the nearest cluster (which will be a multiple of 512 bytes). In cases where the utility has complete data about the size of a file, this option restores the file to exactly that size.
- u, --undelete
Specifies undelete mode. You can specify the files to be recovered using by using --match or --inodes options. This option can be combined with --output, --destination, and --byte.

When the file is recovered it will be given its original name, unless the --output option is used.
- v, --verbose
Increase the amount of output that ntfsundelete displays.
- V, --version
Display the version number, copyright, and license for ntfsundelete.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Searching for Deleted Files

The following command searches for deleted files on a specific device.

```
# ntfsundelete /dev/dsk/c0d0p1
```

EXAMPLE 2 Scanning for Files Matching a Wildcard

The following command searches for deleted files that match *.doc.

```
# ntfsundelete /dev/dsk/c0d0p1 -s -m '*.doc'
```

EXAMPLE 3 Searching for Files of a Certain Size

The following command looks for deleted files between 5000 and 6000000 bytes, with at least 90% of the data recoverable, on /dev/dsk/c0d0p1.

```
# ntfsundelete /dev/dsk/c0d0p1 -S 5k-6m -p 90
```

EXAMPLE 4 Searching for Recently Changed Files

The following command searches for deleted files altered in the last two days.

```
# ntfsundelete /dev/dsk/c0d0p1 -t 2d
```

EXAMPLE 5 Specifying an Inode Range

The following command undeletes inodes 2, 5 and 100 to 131 of device /dev/sda1.

```
# ntfsundelete /dev/sda1 -u -i 2,5,100-131
```

EXAMPLE 6 Specifying an Output File and Directory

The following command undeletes inode number 3689, names the file work.doc, and stores it in the user's home directory.

```
# ntfsundelete /dev/dsk/c0d0p1 -u -i 3689 -o work.doc -d ~
```

EXAMPLE 7 Saving MFT Records

The following command saves MFT records 3689 to 3690 to a file debug.

```
# ntfsundelete /dev/dsk/c0d0p1 -c 3689-3690 -o debug
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWntfsprogs
Interface Stability	Uncommitted

See Also [ntfscdclone\(1M\)](#), [ntfsresize\(1M\)](#), [parted\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

<http://wiki.linux-ntfs.org>

Authors `ntfsundelete` was written by Richard Russon and Holger Ohmacht, with contributions from Anton Altaparmakov.

Name nwamd – network auto-magic daemon

Synopsis /lib/inet/nwamd

Description nwamd is a system daemon to manage network interfaces.

This daemon is started automatically and should not be invoked directly. It does not constitute a programming interface.

Operation Whether this daemon is enabled or not depends on your installation medium. To check from within the GNOME desktop environment, double click on the “Network Manager” icon to open the “Connection Properties” window. If “Configure network automatically” is checked, then auto-magic mode is enabled. To check from the command line, enter the following:

```
% svcs svc:/network/physical
```

Two instances will be listed, one online and the other disabled. If the “nwam” instance is online, then this daemon is running.

To switch between manual and auto-magic mode, you can use the Network Monitor applet available within the GNOME desktop environment. You can also switch manually from the command line by entering:

```
% svcadm disable svc:/network/physical:default  
% svcadm enable svc:/network/physical:nwam
```

To go from auto-magic mode to manual mode:

```
% svcadm disable svc:/network/physical:nwam  
% svcadm enable svc:/network/physical:default
```

When switching modes like this, keep in mind that all network interfaces will be brought down then back up. Therefore, if a different IP address is configured in this process, existing applications and sessions might be disrupted.

There is a limitation that only one link is active at a time in auto-magic mode. This mode is not recommended for machines that use more than one link at a time. For machines with wired and wireless links, wired link are preferred by default, although this can be adjusted from the GNOME NWAM Manager menu (right-click on the icon), or from the command line, by editing the plain text file `/etc/nwam/llp`. For the latter (hand-editing) procedure, the first instance of a link in `/etc/nwam/llp` sets the priority of that link. Subsequent instances of that link set parameters associated with the interface on that link.

The `/etc/nwam/llp` interface is volatile and might change in a future release.

Static IP Addresses A static IP address can be configured by changing the line in the `/etc/nwam/llp` file that contains an interface name and the name of the method for obtaining an IP address. It might look like:

```
nge0    dhcp
```

Change this line to one that looks like:

```
nge0    static  I1.I2.I3.I4/P
```

...where the *I*'s are the digits of the IPv4 address and the *P* is an optional prefix. If the prefix is not provided, it is derived, using classful assumptions.

Configuring IPv6 IPv6 is configured by default on a link. It can also be explicitly added in the `/etc/nwam/ulp` file by providing a line that contains an interface name and the string `ipv6`. It might look like:

```
nge0    ipv6
```

If IPv6 should not be plumbed on a given link, a `noipv6` entry should be created in the `/etc/nwam/ulp` file for that link. It might look like:

```
nge0    noipv6
```

An optional static IPv6 address can be provided on the same line, immediately after the `ipv6` token. Whether you provide a static address or not, IPv6 will use DHCPv6 or stateless address configuration, as directed by the local network configuration.

PROFILES All interfaces listed in this section are volatile and may change in a future release. They are documented here so that those wishing to experiment with this may do so.

Profiles are a mechanism for making multiple related changes to the system configuration after IP service is available.

There is no direct support for the profiles yet, but a “roll your own” mechanism is provided for now. Once an interface is brought up and an IP address is configured for it, the daemon looks for the file `/etc/nwam/ulp/check-conditions`. If this file exists and is executable, it is run. This should print a single line of output, which is the name of the profile that the user wishes to activate based on the current conditions. If such a line is read successfully (*foo* in this example), then `/etc/nwam/ulp/foo/bringup` is executed. Likewise, when the interface gets torn down for whatever reason, `/etc/nwam/ulp/foo/teardown` is executed. The “bringup” and “teardown” scripts are invoked via `pfexec(1)` with default basic privileges. Samples for each of these scripts can be found at:

- <http://opensolaris.org/os/project/nwam/prototype/check-conditions>
- <http://opensolaris.org/os/project/nwam/prototype/bringup>
- <http://opensolaris.org/os/project/nwam/prototype/teardown>

Wireless If no wired link is available, a scan for wireless LANs is done, and the resulting list offered via a GUI popup window prompts the console user to select a preference. If a successful connection is made, the WLAN in question is stored in the plain text file `/etc/nwam/known_wifi_nets` and the daemon may connect to any WLAN in that list without prompting the user again. If a user wishes to add other preferences or revoke existing ones, he can do so by bringing up the NWAM Manager menu with right-click on the icon, and then selecting “Manage Favorite Wireless Networks...”. A user can also edit the `known_wifi_nets` file directly. This interface is volatile and might change in a future release.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsr
Interface Stability	Volatile

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

See also `nwam-manager(1M)`, available in the JDS/GNOME man page collection.

Notes The networking service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/physical
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name obpsym – Kernel Symbolic Debugging for OpenBoot Firmware

Synopsis modload -p misc/obpsym

Description obpsym is a kernel module that installs OpenBoot callback handlers that provide kernel symbol information to OpenBoot. OpenBoot firmware user interface commands use the callbacks to convert numeric *addresses* to kernel symbol names for display purposes, and to convert kernel symbol names to numeric *literals* allowing symbolic names to be used as input arguments to user interface commands.

Once obpsym is installed, kernel symbolic names may be used anywhere at the OpenBoot firmware's user interface command prompt in place of a literal (numeric) string. For example, if obpsym is installed, the OpenBoot firmware commands `ct race` and `dis` typically display symbolic names and offsets in the form *modname:symbolname + offset*. User interface Commands such as `dis` can be given a kernel symbolic name such as `ufs:ufs_mount` instead of a numeric address.

Placing the command

```
forceload: misc/obpsym
```

into the `system(4)` file forces the kernel module `misc/obpsym` to be loaded and activates the kernel callbacks during the kernel startup sequence.

obpsym may be useful as a kernel debugger in situations where other kernel debuggers are not useful. For example, on SPARC machines, if obpsym is loaded, you may be able to use the OpenBoot firmware's `ct race` command to display symbolic names in the stack backtrace after a watchdog reset.

Kernel Symbolic Name Syntax The syntax for a kernel symbolic name is:

```
[ module-name : ] symbol-name
```

Where *module-name* is the name of the kernel module that the symbol *symbol-name* appears in. A NULL module name is taken as “all modules, in no particular order” by obpsym. The module name `unix` is equivalent to a NULL module name, so that conflicts with words defined in the firmware's vocabulary can be avoided.

Typically, OpenBoot firmware reads a word from the input stream and looks the word up in its internal *vocabulary* before checking if the word is a *literal*. Thus, kernel symbols, such as `reset` may be given as `unix:reset` to avoid the unexpected side effect of the firmware finding and executing a matching word in its vocabulary.

Files	<code>/etc/system</code>	System configuration information file.
	<code>/platform/platform-name/kernel/misc/obpsym</code>	Platform-specific kernel symbol information.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcar

See Also [kmdb\(1\)](#), [uname\(1\)](#), [kernel\(1M\)](#), [modload\(1M\)](#), [modunload\(1M\)](#), [system\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Warnings Some OpenBoot firmware user interface commands may use system resources incompatibly with the way they are used by the Unix kernel. These commands and the use of this feature as a kernel debugger may cause interactions that the Unix kernel is not prepared to deal with. If this occurs, the Unix kernel and/or the OpenBoot firmware user interface commands may react unpredictably and may panic the system, or may hang or may cause other unpredictable results. For these reasons, the use of this feature is only minimally supported and recommended to be used only as a kernel debugger of last resort.

If a breakpoint or watchpoint is triggered while the console frame buffer is powered off, the system can crash and be left in a state from which it is difficult to recover. If one of these is triggered while the monitor is powered off, you will not be able to see the debugger output.

Notes *platform-name* can be found using the `-i` option of [uname\(1\)](#)

obpsym is supported only on architectures that support OpenBoot firmware.

On some systems, OpenBoot must be completely RAM resident so the obpsym symbol callback support can be added to the firmware, if the firmware doesn't include support for the symbol callbacks. On these systems, obpsym may complain that it requires that “you must use ramforth to use this module”.

See the for details on how to use the *ramforth* command, how to place the command into *nvrnrc*, and how to set *use-nvrnrc?* to `true`. On systems with version 1.x OpenBoot firmware, *nvrnrc* doesn't exist, and the *ramforth* command must be typed manually after each reset, in order to use this module.

Once installed, the symbol table callbacks can be disabled by using the following OpenBoot firmware command:

```
0 0 set-symbol-lookup
```

Name oplhpd – Hot plug daemon for SPARC Enterprise Server line

Synopsis /usr/platform/SUNW,SPARC-Enterprise/lib/sparcv9/lib/oplhp

Description The hot plug daemon for SPARC Enterprise Servers is a daemon process that runs on the SUNW,SPARC-Enterprise family of servers. The daemon is started by the service management facility (see [smf\(5\)](#)) and communicates with the service processor when hot plug PCI cassettes change their dynamic reconfiguration state.

The service FMRI for oplhpd is:

```
svc:/platform/sun4u/oplhp:default
```

A domain supports only one running oplhpd process at a time.

Errors OPLHPD uses [syslog\(3C\)](#) to report status and error messages. All of the messages are logged with the LOG_DAEMON facility.

Error messages are logged with the LOG_ERR and LOG_NOTICE priorities, and informational messages are logged with the LOG_DEBUG priority. The default entries in the /etc/syslog.conf file log all of the OPLHPD error messages to the /var/adm/messages log.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWdcsu, SUNWdcsr
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [inetadm\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [syslog\(3C\)](#), [syslog.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Name parse_dynamic_clustertoc – parse clustertoc file based on dynamic entries

Synopsis *cdrom/export/exec/sparc.Solaris_2.x/sbin/install.d/parse_dynamic_clustertoc*
cdrom/export/exec/i386.Solaris_2.x/sbin/install.d/parse_dynamic_clustertoc

Description This script parses the `clustertoc` file before the `suninstall(1M)` process is run. `parse_dynamic_clustertoc` is called by a modified `sysconfig` script on the install CD. When `parse_dynamic_clustertoc` runs, it reads the `clustertoc` and when it encounters `SUNW_CSRMBRIFF` lines, it either checks the platform using the script's builtin function, or calls an external script. The script exits with a 0 if the cluster entry is included, otherwise it will be ignored. If the cluster entry is to be included, the `SUNW_CSRMBRIFF=(test test_arg)cluster` line is converted to `SUNW_CSRMEMBER=cluster`.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Checking For an SX Framebuffer

The following is an example of a simple external test to check for an SX Framebuffer. The entry in the `clustertoc` file is shown and following that is the script that must be placed in the `install.d/dynamic_test` directory.

```
SUNW_CSRMBRIFF=(smcc.dctoc sx)SUNWCsx
#!/bin/sh
#
# Likewise, this file is expected to live under $(TESTDIR).
#
case "$1"
in
    sx)    prtconf -p | grep 'SUNW,sx' 1> /dev/null;;
esac
```

Files *cdrom/Solaris_2.x/locale/C/.clustertoc.dynamic*
 Dynamic version of the `clustertoc` file

cdrom/export/exec/sparc.Solaris_2.x/sbin/install.d/dynamic_test
 Directory that contains any additional tests

cdrom/export/exec/i386.Solaris_2.x/sbin/install.d/dynamic_test
 Directory that contains any additional tests

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SHWPcdrom (Solaris CD)

See Also [suninstall\(1M\)](#), [clustertoc\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name parted – partition manipulation program

Synopsis parted [*options*] [*device* [*options...*]....]

Description parted is a disk partitioning and partition resizing program. It allows you to create, destroy, resize, move, and copy ext2, ext3, linux-swap, FAT, FAT32, and reiserfs partitions. It can create, resize, and move Macintosh HFS partitions, as well as detect jfs, ntfs, ufs, and xfs partitions. It is useful for creating space for new operating systems, reorganizing disk usage, and copying data to new hard disks.

This manual page documents parted briefly. Complete parted documentation is distributed with the package in “GNU Info” format.

parted is implemented with a set of top-level options and a set of subcommands, most of which have their own options and operands. These subcommands are described below. parted has an optional operand:

device The block device to be used. When none is given, parted uses the first block device it finds.

Options The following options are supported:

- h, --help
 Displays a help message.
- i, --interactive
 Prompts for user intervention.
- l, --list
 Lists partition layout on all block devices.
- m, --machine
 Displays machine-parseable output.
- s, --script
 Never prompts for user intervention.
- v, --version
 Displays the version number.

Sub-commands If you omit a subcommand in a parted command line, the utility issues a command prompt.

check *partition*
 Do a simple check on *partition*.

cp [*source-device*] *source dest*
 Copy the source partition's filesystem on *source-device* (or the current device if no other device was specified) to the *dest* partition on the current device.

help *command*
 Display general help, or help on a command, if specified.

`mkfs partition fs-type`

Make a filesystem *fs-type* on *partition*. *fs-type* can be one of `fat16`, `fat32`, `ext2`, `linux-wap`, or `reiserfs`.

`mklabel label-type`

Create a new disk label (partition table) of *label-type*. *label-type* should be one of `bsd`, `dvh`, `gpt`, `loop`, `mac`, `msdos`, `pc98`, or `sun`.

`mkpart part-type [fs-type] start end`

Make a *part-type* partition with file system *fs-type* (if specified), beginning at *start* and ending at *end* (by default, in megabytes). *fs-type* can be one of `fat16`, `fat32`, `ext2`, `HFS`, `linux-swap`, `NTFS`, `reiserfs`, or `ufs`. *part-type* should be one of `primary`, `logical`, or `extended`.

`mkpart fs part-type fs-type start end`

Make a *part-type* partition with file system *fs-type*, beginning at *start* and ending at *end* (by default, in megabytes).

`move partition start end`

Move partition so that it begins at *start* and ends at *end*. Note that `move` never changes the minor number.

`name partition name`

Set the name of partition to *name*. This option works only on Mac, PC98, and GPT disk labels. The name can be placed in quotes, if necessary.

`print`

Display the partition table.

`quit`

Exit from `parted`.

`rescue start end`

Rescue a lost partition that was located somewhere between *start* and *end*. If a partition is found, `parted` will ask if you want to create an entry for it in the partition table.

`resize partition start end`

Resize the file system on *partition* so that it begins at *start* and ends at *end* (by default, in megabytes).

`rm partition`

Delete *partition*.

`select device`

Choose *device* as the current device to edit. *device* should usually be a Solaris or Linux hard disk device, but it can be a partition, software raid device, or an SVM or LVM logical volume if necessary.

`set partition flag state`

Change the state of the *flag* on *partition* to *state*. Supported flags are: `boot`, `root`, `swap`, `hidden`, `raid`, `lvm`, `lba`, and `pa1o`. *state* should be either `on` or `off`.

unit *unit*

Set *unit* as the unit to use when displaying locations and sizes, and for interpreting those given by the user when not suffixed with an explicit unit. *unit* can be one of s (sectors), B (bytes), kB, MB, GB, TB, % (percentage of device size), cyl (cylinders), chs (cylinders, heads, sectors), or compact (megabytes for input, and a human-friendly form for output).

version

Display version information and a copyright message.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWparted
Interface Stability	Uncommitted

See Also [fdisk\(1M\)](#), [mkfs\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

The parted program is fully documented in the `info(1)` format GNU partitioning software manual.

Author This manual page was written by Timshel Knoll for the Debian GNU/Linux system. It is here adapted for the Solaris operating system.

Name passmgmt – password files management

Synopsis passmgmt -a *options name*
 passmgmt -m *options name*
 passmgmt -d *name*

Description The passmgmt command updates information in the password files. This command works with both /etc/passwd and /etc/shadow.

passmgmt -a adds an entry for user *name* to the password files. This command does not create any directory for the new user and the new login remains locked (with the string *LK* in the password field) until the [passwd\(1\)](#) command is executed to set the password.

passmgmt -m modifies the entry for user *name* in the password files. The name field in the /etc/shadow entry and all the fields (except the password field) in the /etc/passwd entry can be modified by this command. Only fields entered on the command line will be modified.

passmgmt -d deletes the entry for user *name* from the password files. It will not remove any files that the user owns on the system; they must be removed manually.

passmgmt can be used only by the super-user.

Options

- c *comment* A short description of the login, enclosed in quotes. It is limited to a maximum of 128 characters and defaults to an empty field.
- e *expire* Specify the expiration date for a login. After this date, no user will be able to access this login. The expire option argument is a date entered using one of the date formats included in the template file /etc/datemsk. See [getdate\(3C\)](#).
- f *inactive* The maximum number of days allowed between uses of a login ID before that ID is declared invalid. Normal values are positive integers. A value of 0 defeats the status.
 Changing the password reactivates an account for the inactivity period.
- g *gid* GID of *name*. This number must range from 0 to the maximum non-negative value for the system. The default is 1.
- h *homedir* Home directory of *name*. It is limited to a maximum of 256 characters and defaults to /usr/*name*.
- K *key=value* Set a *key=value* pair. See [user_attr\(4\)](#), [auth_attr\(4\)](#), and [prof_attr\(4\)](#). The valid *key=value* pairs are defined in [user_attr\(4\)](#), but the “type” key is subject to the [usermod\(1M\)](#) and [rolemod\(1M\)](#) restrictions. Multiple *key=value* pairs may be added with multiple -K options.

- k *skel_dir* A directory that contains skeleton information (such as `.profile`) that can be copied into a new user's home directory. This directory must already exist. The system provides the `/etc/skel` directory that can be used for this purpose.
- l *logname* This option changes the *name* to *logname*. It is used only with the `-m` option. The total size of each login entry is limited to a maximum of 511 bytes in each of the password files.
- o This option allows a UID to be non-unique. It is used only with the `-u` option.
- s *shell* Login shell for *name*. It should be the full pathname of the program that will be executed when the user logs in. The maximum size of *shell* is 256 characters. The default is for this field to be empty and to be interpreted as `/usr/bin/sh`.
- u *uid* UID of the *name*. This number must range from 0 to the maximum non-negative value for the system. It defaults to the next available UID greater than 99. Without the `-o` option, it enforces the uniqueness of a UID.

Files `/etc/passwd`
`/etc/shadow`
`/etc/opasswd`
`/etc/oshadow`

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [passwd\(1\)](#), [rolemod\(1M\)](#), [useradd\(1M\)](#), [userdel\(1M\)](#), [usermod\(1M\)](#), [auth_attr\(4\)](#), [passwd\(4\)](#), [prof_attr\(4\)](#), [shadow\(4\)](#), [user_attr\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Exit Status The `passmgmt` command exits with one of the following values:

- 0 Success.
- 1 Permission denied.
- 2 Invalid command syntax. Usage message of the `passmgmt` command is displayed.
- 3 Invalid argument provided to option.
- 4 UID in use.
- 5 Inconsistent password files (for example, *name* is in the `/etc/passwd` file and not in the `/etc/shadow` file, or vice versa).

- 6 Unexpected failure. Password files unchanged.
- 7 Unexpected failure. Password file(s) missing.
- 8 Password file(s) busy. Try again later.
- 9 *name* does not exist (if -m or -d is specified), already exists (if -a is specified), or *logname* already exists (if -m -l is specified).

Notes Do not use a colon (:) or RETURN as part of an argument. It is interpreted as a field separator in the password file. The `passmgmt` command will be removed in a future release. Its functionality has been replaced and enhanced by `useradd`, `userdel`, and `usermod`. These commands are currently available.

This command only modifies password definitions in the local `/etc/passwd` and `/etc/shadow` files. If a network name service such as NIS is being used to supplement the local files with additional entries, `passmgmt` cannot change information supplied by the network name service.

Name patchadd – apply a patch package to a system running the Solaris operating system

Synopsis patchadd [-dun] [-G] [-B *backout_dir*] [-k *keystore*]
[-P *passwd*] [-t] [-x *proxy*] {*patch*} |
{-M *patch_location* [*patch_list*]} [-C *net_install_image* |
-R *client_root_path* | -S *service*]

patchadd -p
[-C *net_install_image* | -R *client_root_path* | -S *service*]

Description patchadd applies a patch package to a system running the Solaris 2.x operating environment or later Solaris environments (such as Solaris 10) that are compatible with Solaris 2.x. This patch installation utility cannot be used to apply Solaris 1 patches. patchadd must be run as root.

The patchadd command has the following forms:

- The first form of patchadd installs one or more patches to a system, client, service, or to the miniroot of a Net Install Image.
- The second form of patchadd displays installed patches on the client, service, or to the miniroot of a Net Install Image.

Starting with version 10 of the Solaris operating system, patchadd performs validity and dependency checking among a collection of patches that you specify with the -M source specifier. See the description of -M under OPERANDS, below.

With respect to [zones\(5\)](#), when invoked in the global zone, by default, patchadd patches all appropriate packages in all zones. Patching behavior on system with zones installed varies according to the following factors:

- use of the -G option (described below)
- setting of the SUNW_PKG_ALLZONES variable in the pkginfo file (see [pkginfo\(4\)](#))
- type of zone, global or local (non-global) in patchadd which is invoked

The interaction of the factors above is specified in “Interaction of -G and pkginfo Variable in Zones,” below.

When you add patches to packages on a Solaris system with zones installed, you will see numerous zones-related messages, the frequency and content of which depend on whether you invoke patchadd in a global or local zone, the setting of SUNW_PKG_ALLZONES, and the use of the -G option.

The *patch*, -M, -C, -R, and -S arguments shown in the SYNOPSIS are described under OPERANDS, following OPTIONS.

Options The following options are supported:

-
- B *backout_dir*
Saves backout data to a directory other than the package database. Specify *backout_dir* as an absolute path name.
 - d
Does not back up the files to be patched. *The patch cannot be removed.*
 - G
Add patch(es) to packages in the current zone only. When used in the global zone, the patch is added to packages in the global zone only and is not propagated to packages in any existing or yet-to-be-created non-global zone. When used in a non-global zone, the patch is added to packages in the non-global zone only. See “Interaction of -G and pkginfo Variable in Zones,” below.
 - k *keystore*
Use *keystore* as the location to get trusted certificate authority certificates when verifying digital signatures found in each patch. If no keystore is specified, then the default keystore locations are searched for valid trusted certificates. See KEY STORE LOCATIONS in [pkgadd\(1M\)](#) for more information.
 - n
Tells patchadd to ignore the signature and not to validate it. This should be used only when the content of the patch is known and trusted, and is primarily included to allow patchadd to apply a patch on systems without the ability to verify the patch signature, such as Solaris 8.
 - p
In the second form, displays a list of the patches currently applied.
 - P *passwd*
Password to use to decrypt the keystore specified with -k, if required. See PASS PHRASE ARGUMENTS in [pkgadd\(1M\)](#) for more information about the format of this option's argument.
 - t
Maintains the patchadd return codes from the Solaris release prior to Solaris 10. On a system with [zones\(5\)](#) installed, a return code of 0 indicates success. Any other return code indicates failure.
 - u
Turns off validation against other required or incompatible patches. Use extreme caution when using this option. Its use can precipitate unanticipated bad consequences.
 - x *proxy*
Specify a HTTP[S] proxy to use when downloading packages. The format of proxy is *host:port*, where *host* is the hostname of the HTTP[S] proxy, and *port* is the port number associated with the proxy. This switch overrides all other methods of specifying a proxy. See ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES in [pkgadd\(1M\)](#) for more information on alternate methods of specifying a default proxy.

Operands The following operands are supported:

Sources `patchadd` must be supplied a source for retrieving the patch. Specify sources using the syntax shown below.

patch

The absolute path name to *patch_id* or a URI pointing to a signed patch.

`/var/sadm/spool/patch/104945-02` is an example of a *patch*.

`https://syrinx.eng:8887/patches/104945-02` is an example of a URI pointing to a signed patch.

-M *patch_location* [*patch_list*]

Specifies the patches to be installed by directory location or URL and, optionally, the name of a file containing a patch list.

When using a directory as the *patch_location*, specify that directory as an absolute path name. Specify a URL as the server and path name that contains the spooled patches. The optional *patch_list* is the name of the file at a specified location containing the patches to be installed.

-M *patch_location patch_id* [*patch_id...*]

Specifies the patches to be installed by directory location or URL, and patch number.

To use the directory location or URL and the patch number, specify *patch_location* as the absolute path name of the directory that contains spooled patches. Specify a URL as the server and path name that contains the spooled patches. Specify *patch_id* as the patch number of a given patch. `104945-02` is an example of a *patch_id*. `104945-02` is also an example of a patchid in `104945-02.jar`.

Note that `patchadd` does not require a list of patches. Among a collection of patches—residing in a directory, specified in a list, or entered on a command line—`patchadd` performs validity and dependency checking. Specifically, the command does the following:

- Determines whether a patch is applicable for a system. For example, if the package to be patched is not installed, `patchadd` does not attempt to add the patch.
- Establishes dependencies among valid patches and orders the installation of patches accordingly.

Most users will find the easiest way to specify a source for `patchadd` is to specify only a *patch_location* containing a set of patches.

Destinations By default, `patchadd` applies a patch to the specified destination. If no destination is specified, then the current system (the one with its root filesystem mounted at `/`) is assumed to be the destination for the patch. You can specify a destination in the following ways:

-C *net_install_image*

Patches the files located on the miniroot on a Net Install Image created by

`setup_install_server`. Specify *net_install_image* as the absolute path name to a Solaris 8 or compatible version boot directory. See EXAMPLES.

You should use the `-C` option only to install patches that are recommended for installation to the miniroot. Patches that are recommended for installation to the miniroot usually include install-related patches such as package commands, and Sun install and patch installation tools. If you apply too many patches to the miniroot it can grow too large to fit into memory during a net installation of Solaris. Use the `-B` option and the `-C` option together so the miniroot does not get too large. See `-B`, above.

Note that in the current release and in certain versions of Solaris 10, the miniroot is compressed. To determine whether the miniroot is compressed on your system, look for a file called `sparc.miniroot` or `x86.miniroot` under `/boot`, on the boot medium. Before you can patch a compressed miniroot, you must perform certain steps. See “Patching a Compressed Miniroot” below.

-R *client_root_path*

Locates all patch files generated by `patchadd` under the directory *client_root_path*. *client_root_path* is the directory that contains the bootable root of a client from the server's perspective. Specify *client_root_path* as the absolute path name to the beginning of the directory tree under which all patch files generated by `patchadd` are to be located. `-R` cannot be specified with the `-S` option. See NOTES.

Note – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the `-R` option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).

-S *service*

Specifies an alternate service (for example, `Solaris_8`). This service is part of the server and client model, and can only be used from the server's console. Servers can contain shared `/usr` file systems that are created by [smosservice\(1M\)](#). These service areas can then be made available to the clients they serve. `-S` cannot be specified with the `-R` option. See NOTES.

Patching a Compressed Miniroot

The Solaris operating system uses a compressed miniroot. The compressed miniroot was adopted first in Solaris for x86 and then in Solaris for SPARC over the course of Solaris 10 update releases. See below for an easy way to determine whether your Solaris system uses a compressed miniroot.

To patch a system with a compressed miniroot (full or partial), you must unpack and then repack the miniroot before and after running `patchadd` with the `-C` destination specifier. Use the procedure shown below and accompanying example commands.

1. Unpack the compressed miniroot:

```
# /boot/solaris/bin/root_archive unpackmedia \
/export/home/altuser/testdir /export/home/altuser/mr
```

2. Run `patchadd` with `-C` to patch the miniroot:

```
# patchadd -C /export/home/altuser/mr \
/var/sadm/spool/104945-02
```

3. Repack the miniroot:

```
# /boot/solaris/bin/root_archive packmedia \
/export/home/altuser/testdir /export/home/altuser/mr
```

At this point, you can use [setup_install_server\(1M\)](#) to install the patched miniroot on an install server. See [root_archive\(1M\)](#) for a description of that command.

To determine whether a Solaris image uses a compressed miniroot, check for the presence of either an `x86.miniroot` or `sparc.miniroot` file under `/boot` on the boot medium.

Interaction of -G and
pkginfo Variable in
Zones

The following list specifies the interaction between the -G option and the `SUNW_PKG_ALLZONES` variable (see [pkginfo\(4\)](#)) when adding a patch in global and local (non-global) zones.

global zone, -G specified

If *any* packages have `SUNW_PKG_ALLZONES` set to true: Error; nothing changes.

If *no* packages have `SUNW_PKG_ALLZONES` set to true: Apply patch to package(s) in global zone only.

global zone, -G not specified

If *any* packages have `SUNW_PKG_ALLZONES` set to true: Apply patch to appropriate package(s) in all zones.

If *no* packages have `SUNW_PKG_ALLZONES` set to true: Apply patch to appropriate package(s) in all zones.

local zone, -G specified or not specified

If *any* packages have `SUNW_PKG_ALLZONES` set to true: Error; nothing changes.

If *no* packages have `SUNW_PKG_ALLZONES` set to true: Apply patch package(s) in local zone only.

Keystore Locations See the section KEYSTORE LOCATIONS in the [pkgadd\(1M\)](#) man page for details.

Keystore And Certificate Formats See the section KEYSTORE AND CERTIFICATE FORMATS in the [pkgadd\(1M\)](#) man page for details.

Examples The examples in this section are all relative to the `/usr/sbin` directory.

EXAMPLE 1 Installing a Patch to a Standalone Machine

The following example installs a patch to a standalone machine:

```
example# patchadd /var/sadm/spool/104945-02
```

EXAMPLE 2 Installing a Patch to a Client From the Server's Console

The following example installs a patch to a client from the server's console:

```
example# patchadd -R /export/root/client1 /var/sadm/spool/104945-02
```

EXAMPLE 3 Installing a Patch to a Service From the Server's Console

The following example installs a patch to a service from the server's console:

```
example# patchadd -S Solaris_8 /var/sadm/spool/104945-02
```

EXAMPLE 4 Installing Multiple Patches in a Single Invocation

The following example installs multiple patches in a single patchadd invocation:

```
example# patchadd -M /var/sadm/spool 104945-02 104946-02 102345-02
```

EXAMPLE 5 Installing Multiple Patches Specifying List of Patches to Install

The following example installs multiple patches specifying a file with the list of patches to install:

```
example# patchadd -M /var/sadm/spool patchlist
```

EXAMPLE 6 Installing Multiple Patches to a Client and Saving the Backout Data

The following example installs multiple patches to a client and saves the backout data to a directory other than the default:

```
example# patchadd -M /var/sadm/spool -R /export/root/client1 \  
-B /export/backoutrepository 104945-02 104946-02 102345-02
```

EXAMPLE 7 Installing a Patch to a Solaris 8 or Compatible Version Net Install Image

The following example installs a patch to a Solaris 8 or compatible version Net Install Image:

```
example# patchadd -C /export/Solaris_8/Tools/Boot \  
/var/sadm/spool/104945-02
```

EXAMPLE 8 Installing a Patch to a Compressed Miniroot

The following example installs a patch to a compressed miniroot, such as one finds on a Solaris x86 machine that supports GRUB-style booting. This example assumes that /export/Solaris_11/Tools/Boot contains the unpacked miniroot. After applying the patch, the miniroot needs to be repacked

EXAMPLE 8 Installing a Patch to a Compressed Miniroot *(Continued)*

```
example# patchadd -C /export/Solaris_11/Tools/Boot \
/var/sadm/spool/104945-02
```

See “Patching a Compressed Miniroot,” above, for information on Solaris versions that use a compressed miniroot.

EXAMPLE 9 Installing a Patch to an Uncompressed Miniroot

The following example installs a patch to a miniroot on a Solaris machine that does not have a compressed miniroot.

```
example# patchadd -C /export/Solaris_9/Tools/Boot \
/var/sadm/spool/104945-02
```

See “Patching a Compressed Miniroot,” above, for information on Solaris versions that use a compressed miniroot.

EXAMPLE 10 Displaying the Patches Installed on a Client

The following example displays the patches installed on a client:

```
example# patchadd -R /export/root/client1 -p
```

Note the caveat on the use of the -R option in the description of that option, above.

EXAMPLE 11 Installing a Digitally Signed Set of Patches

The following example installs multiple patches, some of which have been signed, using the supplied keystore, password, and HTTP proxy.

```
example# patchadd -k /etc/mycerts -P pass:abcd -x webcache.eng:8080 \
-M http://www.sun.com/solaris/patches/latest 101223-02 102323-02
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0
Successful completion.

>0
An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWswmt, SUNWcsu

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [cpio\(1\)](#), [pkginfo\(1\)](#), [patchrm\(1M\)](#), [pkgadd\(1M\)](#), [pkgadm\(1M\)](#), [pkgchk\(1M\)](#), [pkgrm\(1M\)](#), [setup_install_server\(1M\)](#), [smpatch\(1M\)](#), [showrev\(1M\)](#), [pkginfo\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [grub\(5\)](#), [zones\(5\)](#)

Diagnostics The following messages might help in determining some of the most common problems associated with installing a patch.

Patch Installation errors Message

The prepatch script exited with return code *retcode*.
patchadd is terminating.

Explanation and Recommended Action

The prepatch script supplied with the patch exited with a return code other than 0. Run a script trace of the prepatch script and find out why the prepatch had a bad return code. Add the -x option to the first line of the prepatch script to fix the problem and run patchadd again.

Message

The signature on patch patch_id was unable to be verified.
patchadd is terminating.

Explanation and Recommended Action

The digital signature on a patch was unable to be verified given the keystore in use and the signature on the patch. Check the keystore to make sure it has the requisite trust anchor(s) required to validate the signature on the package and that the package has not been tampered with.

Message

The postpatch script exited with return code *retcode*.
Backing out patch.

Explanation and Recommended Action

The postpatch script provided with the patch exited with an error code other than 0. This script is mostly used to cleanup files (that is, when a package is known to have ownership or permission problems) attributes that do not correspond to the patch package's objects. After the user has noted all validation errors and taken the appropriate action for each one, the user should re-run patchadd using the -u (unconditional) option. This time, the patch installation will ignore validation errors and install the patch anyway.

Message

Insufficient space in /var/sadm/patch to save old files.
(For 2.4 systems and previous)

Explanation and Recommended Action

There is insufficient space in the `/var/sadm/patch` directory to save old files. The user has three options for handling this problem: Use the `-B` option while invoking `patchadd`. This option will direct `patchadd` to: save the backout data to the user specified file system, generate additional disk space by deleting unneeded files, or override the saving of the old files by using the `-d` (do not save) option when running `patchadd`.

If the user elects not to save the old versions of the files to be patched, `patchrm` *cannot* be used. One way to regain space on a system is to remove the save area for previously applied patches. Once the user has decided that it is unlikely that a patch will be backed out, the user can remove the files that were saved by `patchadd`. The following commands should be executed to remove the saved files for `patch` *patch_id*:

```
cd /var/sadm/patch/patch_id  
rm -r save/*  
rm .oldfilessaved
```

After these commands have been executed, `patch` *patch_id* can no longer be backed out.

Message

```
Insufficient space in /var/sadm/pkg/PKG/save to save old files.  
(For 2.5 systems and later)
```

Explanation and Recommended Action

There is insufficient space in the `/var/sadm/pkg/PKG/save` directory to save old files. The user has three options for handling this problem: (1) Use the `-B` option while invoking `patchadd`. This option will direct `patchadd` to save the backout data to the user specified file system. (See synopsis above.) (2) Generate additional disk space by deleting unneeded files, or (3) override the saving of the old files by using the `-d` (do not save) option when running `patchadd`. However, if the user elects not to save the old versions of the files to be patched, `patchrm` *cannot* be used. One way to regain space on a system is to remove the save area for previously applied patches. Once the user has decided that it is unlikely that a patch will be backed out, the user can remove the files that were saved by `patchadd`. The following commands should be executed to remove the saved files for `patch` *patch_id*:

```
cd /var/sadm/pkg/pkgabbrev/save  
rm -r patch_id
```

After these commands have been executed, `patch` *patch_id* can no longer be backed out.

Message

```
Save of old files failed.  
(For 2.4 systems and previous)
```

Explanation and Recommended Action

Before applying the patch, the patch installation script uses `cpio` to save the old versions of the files to be patched. This error message means that the `cpio` failed. The output of the `cpio` would have been preceded this message. The user should take the appropriate action to correct the `cpio` failure. A common reason for failure will be insufficient disk space to save the old versions of the files. The user has two options for handling insufficient disk space: (1) generate additional disk space by deleting unneeded files, or (2) override the saving of the old files by using the `-d` option when running `patchadd`. However if the user elects not to save the old versions of the files to be patched, the patch *cannot* be backed out.

Message

```
Pkgadd of pkgname package failed with error code code.  
See /tmp/log.patch_id for reason for failure.
```

Explanation and Recommended Action

The installation of one of the patch packages failed. `patchadd` will backout the patch to leave the system in its pre-patched state. See the log file for the reason for failure. Correct the problem and reapply the patch.

Message

```
Pkgadd of pkgname package failed with error code code.  
Will not backout patch...patch re-installation.  
Warning: The system may be in an unstable state!  
See /tmp/log.patch_id for reason for failure.
```

Explanation and Recommended Action

The installation of one of the patch packages failed. `patchadd` will *not* backout the patch. You may manually backout the patch using `patchrm`, then re-apply the entire patch. Look in the log file for the reason `pkgadd` failed. Correct the problem and re-apply the patch.

Message

```
patchadd is unable to find the INST_RELEASE file. This file  
must be present for patchadd to function correctly.
```

Explanation and Recommended Action

The `INST_RELEASE` file is missing from the system. This file is created during either initial installation or during an update.

Message

```
A previous installation of patch patch_id was invoked  
that saved files that were to be patched. Since files  
were saved, you must run this instance of patchadd  
without the -d option.
```

Explanation and Recommended Action

If a patch was previously installed without using the `-d` option, then the re-installation attempt must also be invoked without the `-d` option. Execute `patchadd` without the `-d` option.

Message

```
A previous installation of patch patch_id was invoked
with the -d option. (i.e. Do not save files that would
be patched) Therefore, this invocation of patchadd
must also be run with the -d option.
```

Explanation and Recommended Action

If a patch was previously installed using the `-d` option, then the re-installation attempt must also be invoked with the `-d` option. Execute `patchadd` with the `-d` option.

Diagnostic Reference The patch installation messages listed below are not necessarily considered errors, as indicated in the explanations given. These messages are, however, recorded in the patch installation log for diagnostic reference.

Message

```
Package not patched:
PKG=SUNxxxx
Original package not installed
```

Explanation and Recommended Action

One of the components of the patch would have patched a package that is not installed on your system. This is not necessarily an error. A patch may fix a related bug for several packages.

For example, suppose a patch fixes a bug in both the `online-backup` and `fddi` packages. If you had `online-backup` installed but didn't have `fddi` installed, you would get the message:

```
Package not patched:
PKG=SUNwbf
Original package not installed
```

This message only indicates an error if you thought the package was installed on your system. If this is the case, take the necessary action to install the package, backout the patch (if it installed other packages) and re-install the patch.

Message

```
Package not patched:
PKG=SUNxxx
ARCH=xxxxxxx
VERSION=xxxxxxx
Architecture mismatch
```

Explanation and Recommended Action

One of the components of the patch would have patched a package for an architecture different from your system. This is not necessarily an error. Any patch to one of the architecture-specific packages might contain one element for each of the possible architectures. For example, assume you are running on a sun4u. If you were to install a patch to package SUNWcar, you would see the following (or similar) messages:

```
Package not patched:
PKG=SUNWcar
ARCH=sparc.sun4c
VERSION=11.5.0,REV=2.0.18
Architecture mismatch
```

```
Package not patched:
PKG=SUNWcar
ARCH=sparc.sun4u
VERSION=11.5.0,REV=2.0.18
Architecture mismatch
```

```
Package not patched:
PKG=SUNWcar
ARCH=sparc.sun4e
VERSION=11.5.0,REV=2.0.18
```

```
Package not patched:
PKG=SUNWcar
ARCH=sparc.sun4
VERSION=11.5.0,REV=2.0.18
Architecture mismatch
```

These messages indicate an error condition only if patchadd does not correctly recognize your architecture.

Message

```
Package not patched:
PKG=SUNxxxx
ARCH=xxxx
VERSION=xxxxxxx
Version mismatch
```

Explanation and Recommended Action

The version of software to which the patch is applied is not installed on your system. For example, if you were running Solaris 8, and you tried to install a patch against Solaris 9, you would see the following (or similar) message:

```
Package not patched:
PKG=SUNWcsu
ARCH=sparc
```

```
VERSION=10.0.2
Version mismatch
```

This message does not necessarily indicate an error. If the version mismatch was for a package you needed patched, either get the correct patch version or install the correct package version. Then backout the patch (if necessary) and reapply.

Message

```
Re-installing Patch.
```

Explanation and Recommended Action

The patch has already been applied, but there is at least one package in the patch that could be added. For example, if you applied a patch that had both Openwindows and Answerbook components, but your system did not have Answerbook installed, the Answerbook parts of the patch would not have been applied. If, at a later time, you pkgadd Answerbook, you could re-apply the patch, and the Answerbook components of the patch would be applied to the system.

Message

```
patchadd Interrupted.
patchadd is terminating.
```

Explanation and Recommended Action

patchadd was interrupted during execution (usually through pressing CTRL-c).
patchadd will clean up its working files and exit.

Message

```
patchadd Interrupted.
Backing out Patch...
```

Explanation and Recommended Action

patchadd was interrupted during execution (usually through pressing CTRL-c).
patchadd will clean up its working files, backout the patch, and exit.

Notes To successfully install a patch to a client or server, patchadd must be issued twice, once with the -R option and once with the -S option. This guarantees that the patch is installed to both the /usr and root partitions. This is necessary if there are both /usr and root packages in the patch.

pkgadd is invoked by patchadd and executes the installation scripts in the *pkg/install* directory. The checkinstall script is executed with its ownership set to user install, if there is no user install then pkgadd executes the checkinstall script as noaccess. The SVR4 ABI states that the checkinstall shall only be used as an information gathering script. If the permissions for the checkinstall script are changed to something other than the initial settings, pkgadd may not be able to open the file for reading, thus causing the patch installation to abort with the following error:

```
pkgadd: ERROR: checkinstall script did not complete successfully.
```

The permission for the `checkinstall` script should not be changed. Contents of log file for a successful installation: `patchadd` redirects `pkgadd`'s output to the patch installation log file. For a successful installation, `pkgadd` will produce the following message that gets inserted into the log file:

```
This appears to be an attempt to install the same architecture
and version of a package which is already installed. This
installation will attempt to overwrite this package.
This message does not indicate a failure, it represents the
correct behavior by pkgadd when a patch installs correctly.
```

This message does not indicate a failure, it represents the correct behavior by `pkgadd` when a patch installs correctly.

On client server machines the patch package is *not* applied to existing clients or to the client root template space. Therefore, when appropriate, *all client machines will need the patch applied directly using this same patchadd method on the client*. See instructions above for applying patches to a client. A bug affecting a package utility (for example, `pkgadd`, `pkgrm`, `pkgchk`) could affect the reliability of `patchadd` or `patchrm`, which use package utilities to install and backout the patch package. It is recommended that any patch that fixes package utility problems be reviewed and, if necessary, applied before other patches are applied. Existing patches are:

Solaris 2.5.1 Sparc Platform Edition:
104578

Solaris 2.5.1 Intel Platform Edition:
104579

Solaris 2.6 Sparc Platform Edition:
106292

Solaris 2.6 Intel Platform Edition:
106293

Warnings Certain patches are classified as “deferred activation” patches (sometimes with initial capitals, as “Deferred Activation” patches). Under conditions indicated below, such patches require special treatment. A patch's README file specifies whether that patch is of the deferred activation variety. (Search on “Deferred Activation” in the README file.)

If you are installing or removing a patch that uses deferred activation patching, you must check on the following:

- On a system running zones, all non-global zones must be in a halted state for adding or removing a patch.
- Deferred activation patching requires the loopback file system (`lofs`) in order to complete safely. Systems running Sun Cluster 3.1 or Sun Cluster 3.2 are likely to have `lofs` turned off because of restrictions on HA-NFS functionality when `lofs` is enabled. Therefore,

before a deferred activation patch is installed or removed, you must re-enable the loopback file system by commenting out the following line in the `/etc/system` file:

```
exclude: lofs
```

Then, reboot your system and install or remove the patch. After you have completed the patch operation, uncomment the line cited above, then reboot to resume normal operation.

Name patchrm – remove a Solaris patch package and restore previously saved files

Synopsis patchrm [-f] [-G] [-B *backout_dir*]
 [-C *net_install_image* | -R *client_root_path* | -S *service*]
 [-t] *patch_id*

Description patchrm removes a patch package and restores previously saved files to a system running the Solaris 2.x operating environment or later Solaris environments (such as Solaris 8) that are compatible with Solaris 2.x. patchrm cannot be used with Solaris 1 patches. patchrm must be run as root.

With respect to [zones\(5\)](#), when invoked in the global zone, by default, patchrm patches all appropriate packages in all zones. Patch removal behavior in a zones environment varies according to the following factors:

- use of the -G option (described below)
- setting of the SUNW_PKG_ALLZONES variable in the pkginfo file (see [pkginfo\(4\)](#)).
- type of zone, global or local (non-global) in patchrm which is invoked

The interaction of the factors above is specified in “Interaction of -G and pkginfo Variable in Zones,” below.

When you remove patches from packages on a Solaris system with zones installed, you will see numerous zones-related messages, the frequency and content of which depend on whether you invoke patchrm in a global or local zone, the setting of SUNW_PKG_ALLZONES, and the use of the -G option.

Options The following options are supported:

-B *backout_dir*

Removes a patch whose backout data has been saved to a directory other than the package database. This option is only needed if the original backout directory, supplied to the patchadd command at installation time, has been moved. Specify *backout_dir* as an absolute path name.

-C *net_install_image*

Removes the patched files located on the mini root on a Net Install Image created by setup_install_server. Specify *net_install_image* as the absolute path name to a Solaris 2.6 or compatible version boot directory. See EXAMPLES.

-f

Forces the patch removal regardless of whether the patch was superseded by another patch.

-G

Remove patch(es) to packages in the current zone only. When used in the global zone, the patch is removed from packages in the global zone only and is not removed from packages in any existing non-global zone. When used in a non-global zone, the patch is removed from packages in the non-global zone only. See “Interaction of -G and pkginfo Variable in Zones,” below.

-R *client_root_path*

Locates all patch files generated by patchrm under the directory *client_root_path*. *client_root_path* is the directory that contains the bootable root of a client from the server's perspective. Specify *client_root_path* as the absolute path name to the beginning of the directory tree under which all patch files generated from patchrm will be located. -R cannot be specified with the -S option.

Note – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the -R option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).

-S *service*

Specifies an alternate service (for example, Solaris_2.3). This service is part of the server and client model, and can only be used from the server's console. Servers can contain shared /usr file systems that are created by [smosservice\(1M\)](#). These service areas can then be made available to the clients they serve. -S cannot be specified with the -R option.

-t

Maintains the patchrm return codes from the Solaris release prior to Solaris 10. On a system with [zones\(5\)](#) installed, a return code of 0 indicates success. Any other return code indicates failure.

Interaction of -G and
pkginfo Variable in
Zones

The following list specifies the interaction between the -G option and the SUNW_PKG_ALLZONES variable (see [pkginfo\(4\)](#)) when removing a patch in global and local (non-global) zones.

global zone, -G specified

If *any* packages have SUNW_PKG_ALLZONES set to true: Error; nothing changes.

If *no* packages have SUNW_PKG_ALLZONES set to true: Remove patch from package(s) in global zone only.

global zone, -G not specified

If *any* packages have SUNW_PKG_ALLZONES set to true: Remove patch from appropriate package(s) in all zones.

If *no* packages have SUNW_PKG_ALLZONES set to true: Remove patch from appropriate package(s) in all zones.

local zone, -G specified or not specified

If *any* packages have SUNW_PKG_ALLZONES set to true: Error; nothing changes.

If *no* packages have SUNW_PKG_ALLZONES set to true: Remove patch from package(s) in local zone only.

Operands The following operands are supported:

patch_id

The patch number of a given patch. 104945-02 is an example of a *patch_id*.

Examples The examples in this section assume that patch 104945-02 has been installed to the system prior to removal. All of the examples are relative to the `/usr/sbin` directory.

EXAMPLE 1 Removing a Patch From a Stand-alone System

The following example removes a patch from a standalone system:

```
example# patchrm 104945-02
```

EXAMPLE 2 Removing a Patch From a Client's System From the Server's Console

The following example removes a patch from a client's system from the server's console:

```
example# patchrm -R /export/root/client1 104945-02
```

Note the caveat on the use of the `-R` option in the description of that option, above.

EXAMPLE 3 Removing a Patch From a Server's Service Area

The following example removes a patch from a server's service area:

```
example# patchrm -S Solaris_2.3 104945-02
```

EXAMPLE 4 Removing a Patch From a Net Install Image

The following example removes a patch from a Net Install Image:

```
example# patchrm -C /export/Solaris_2.6/Tools/Boot 104945-02
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0
Successful completion.

>0
An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWswmt, SUNWcsu

Diagnostics The following messages may help in determining some of the most common problems associated with backing out a patch.

Message

```
prebackout patch exited with return code code.
patchrm exiting.
```

Explanation and Recommended Action

The prebackout script supplied with the patch exited with a return code other than 0. Generate a script trace of the prebackout script to determine why the prebackout script failed. Add the -x option to the first line of the prepatch script to fix the problem and run patchadd again.

Message

postbackout patch exited with return code *code*.
patchrm exiting.

Explanation and Recommended Action

The postbackout script supplied with the patch exited with a return code other than 0. Look at the postbackout script to determine why it failed. Add the -x option to the first line of the prepatch script to fix the problem, and, if necessary, *re-execute the postbackout script only*.

Message

Only one service may be defined.

Explanation and Recommended Action

You have attempted to specify more than one service from which to backout a patch. Different services must have their patches backed out with different invocations of patchrm.

Message

The -S and -R arguments are mutually exclusive.

Explanation and Recommended Action

You have specified both a non-native service and a *client_root_path* from which to backout a patch. These two arguments are mutually exclusive. If backing out a patch from a non-native *usr* partition, the -S option should be used. If backing out a patch from a client's root partition (either native or non-native), the -R option should be used.

Message

The *service* service cannot be found on this system

Explanation and Recommended Action

You have specified a non-native service from which to backout a patch, but the specified service is not installed on your system. Correctly specify the service when backing out the patch.

Message

Only one *client_root_path* may be defined.

Explanation and Recommended Action

You have specified more than one *client_root_path* using the -R option. The -R option may be used only once per invocation of patchrm.

Message

The *dir* directory cannot be found on this system.

Explanation and Recommended Action

You have specified a directory using the -R option which is either not mounted, or does not exist on your system. Verify the directory name and re-backout the patch.

Message

Patch *patch_id* has not been successfully installed to this system.

Explanation and Recommended Action

You have attempted to backout a patch that is not installed on this system. If you must restore previous versions of patched files, you may have to restore the original files from the initial installation CD.

Message

Patch *patch_id* has not been successfully applied to this system.
Will remove directory *dir*.

Explanation and Recommended Action

You have attempted to back out a patch that is not applied to this system. While the patch has not been applied, a residual `/var/sadm/patch/patch_id` (perhaps from an unsuccessful `patchadd`) directory still exists. The patch cannot be backed out. If you must restore old versions of the patched files, you may have to restore them from the initial installation CD.

Message

This patch was obsoleted by patch *patch_id*.
Patches must be backed out in the reverse order in which they were installed. Patch backout aborted.

Explanation and Recommended Action

You are attempting to backout patches out of order. Patches should never be backed-out out of sequence. This could undermine the integrity of the more current patch.

Message

Patch *patch_id* is required to be installed by an already installed *patch_id*.
It cannot be backed out until the required patch is backed out first.

Explanation and Recommended Action

Backout the patch that is required to be installed then backout the desired patch.

Message

The installation of patch *patch_id* was interrupted.

Explanation and Recommended Action

A previous installation was interrupted. The interrupted patch needs to be installed before backing out the desired patch.

Message

Patch *patch_id* was installed without backing up the original files. It cannot be backed out.

Explanation and Recommended Action

Either the `-d` option of `patchadd` was set when the patch was applied, or the save area of the patch was deleted to regain space. As a result, the original files are not saved and `patchrm` cannot be used. The original files can only be recovered from the original installation CD.

Message

`pkgadd` of *pkgname* package failed return code *code*.
See `/var/sadm/patch/patch_id/log` for reason for failure.

Explanation and Recommended Action

The installation of one of patch packages failed. See the log file for the reason for failure. Correct the problem and run the backout script again.

Message

Restore of old files failed.

Explanation and Recommended Action

The backout script uses the `cpio` command to restore the previous versions of the files that were patched. The output of the `cpio` command should have preceded this message. The user should take the appropriate action to correct the `cpio` failure. This is for Solaris 2.4 or previous versions.

See Also [cpio\(1\)](#), [pkginfo\(1\)](#), [patchadd\(1M\)](#), [pkgadd\(1M\)](#), [pkgchk\(1M\)](#), [pkgrm\(1M\)](#), [showrev\(1M\)](#), [pkginfo\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [zones\(5\)](#)

Notes On client server machines the patch package is *not* removed from existing clients or from client root template space. Therefore, when appropriate, *all client machines will need the patch removed directly using this same patchrm method on the client*. A bug affecting a package utility (for example, `pkgadd`, `pkgrm`, `pkgchk`) could affect the reliability of `patchadd` or `patchrm` which use package utilities to install and backout the patch package. It is recommended that any patch that fixes package utility problems be reviewed and, if necessary, applied before other patches are applied. Existing patches are:

Solaris 2.1:

patch 100901

Solaris 2.2:

101122

Solaris 2.3:

10133

Solaris 2.4 Sparc Platform Edition:

102039

Solaris 2.4 Intel Platform Edition:

102041

Solaris 2.5.1 Sparc Platform Edition:

104578

Solaris 2.51 Intel Platform Edition:

104579

Solaris 2.6 Sparc Platform Edition:

106292

Solaris 2.6 Intel Platform Edition:

106293

Warnings Certain patches are classified as “deferred activation” patches (sometimes with initial capitals, as “Deferred Activation” patches). Under conditions indicated below, such patches require special treatment. A patch's README file specifies whether that patch is of the deferred activation variety. (Search on “Deferred Activation” in the README file.)

If you are installing or removing a patch that uses deferred activation patching, you must check on the following:

- On a system running zones, all non-global zones must be in a halted state for adding or removing a patch.
- Deferred activation patching requires the loopback file system (`lofs`) in order to complete safely. Systems running Sun Cluster 3.1 or Sun Cluster 3.2 are likely to have `lofs` turned off because of restrictions on HA-NFS functionality when `lofs` is enabled. Therefore, before a deferred activation patch is installed or removed, you must re-enable the loopback file system by commenting out the following line in the `/etc/system` file:

```
exclude: lofs
```

Then, reboot your system and install or remove the patch. After you have completed the patch operation, uncomment the line cited above, then reboot to resume normal operation.

Name pbind – control and query bindings of processes or LWPs

Synopsis pbind -b *processor_id* *pid* [/lwpid] ...

pbind [-q] [*pid* [/lwpid]] ...

pbind -Q [*processor_id*] ...

pbind -u *pid* [/lwpid] ...

pbind -U [*processor_id*] ...

Description pbind controls and queries bindings of processes and LWPs (lightweight processes) to processors. pbind can also remove processor bindings that were previously established.

When an LWP is bound to a processor, it will be executed only by that processor except when the LWP requires a resource that is provided only by another processor. The binding is not exclusive, that is, the processor is free to execute other LWPs as well.

Bindings are inherited, so new LWPs and processes created by a bound LWP will have the same binding. Binding an interactive shell to a processor, for example, binds all commands executed by the shell.

Superusers may bind or unbind any process or LWP, while other users can bind or unbind any process or LWP for which they have permission to signal, that is, any process that has the same effective user ID as the user.

Options The following options are supported:

-b *processor_id*

Binds all or a subset of the LWPs of the specified processes to the processor *processor_id*. Specify *processor_id* as the processor ID of the processor to be controlled or queried. *processor_id* must be present and on-line. Use the `ps rinfo` command to determine whether or not *processor_id* is present and on-line. See [psrinfo\(1M\)](#).

-q

Displays the bindings of the specified processes or of all processes. If a process is composed of multiple LWPs which have different bindings and the LWPs are not explicitly specified, the bindings of only one of the bound LWPs will be displayed. The bindings of a subset of LWPs can be displayed by appending “/lwpids” to the process IDs. Multiple LWPs may be selected using “-” and “;” delimiters. See EXAMPLES.

-Q

Displays the LWPs bound to the specified list of processors, or all LWPs with processor bindings. For processes composed of multiple LWPs, the bindings of individual LWPs will be displayed.

-u

Removes the bindings of all or a subset of the LWPs of the specified processes, allowing them to be executed on any on-line processor.

-U

Removes the bindings of all LWPs bound to the specified list of processors, or to any processor if no argument is specified.

Operands The following operands are supported:

pid

The process ID of the process to be controlled or queried.

lwpid

The set of LWP IDs of the specified process to be controlled or queried. The syntax for selecting LWP IDs is as follows:

2,3,4-8	LWP IDs 2, 3, and 4 through 8
-4	LWPs whose IDs are 4 or below
4-	LWPs whose IDs are 4 or above

processor_id

The processor ID of the processor to be controlled or queried.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Binding Processes

The following example binds processes 204 and 223 to processor 2:

```
example% pbind -b 2 204 223
process id 204: was 2, now 2
process id 223: was 3, now 2
```

EXAMPLE 2 Unbinding a Process

The following example unbinds process 204:

```
example% pbind -u 204
```

EXAMPLE 3 Querying Bindings

The following example queries bindings. It demonstrates that process 1 is bound to processor 0, process 149 has at least one LWP bound to CPU3, and process 101 has no bound LWPs.

```
example% pbind -q 1 149 101
process id 1: 0
process id 149: 3
process id 101: not bound
```

EXAMPLE 4 Querying LWP Bindings

The following example queries bindings of LWPs. It demonstrates that LWP 1 of process 149 is bound to CPU3, and LWP 2 of process 149 is not bound.

EXAMPLE 4 Querying LWP Bindings *(Continued)*

```
example% pbind -q 149/1-2
lwp id 149/1: 3
lwp id 149/2: not bound
```

EXAMPLE 5 Querying LWP Bindings for Processor 2:

The following example queries all LWPs bound to processor 2:

```
example% pbind -Q 2
lwp id 149/4: 2
lwp id 149/5: 2
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0
Successful completion.

>0
An error occurred.

See Also [psradm\(1M\)](#), [psrinfo\(1M\)](#), [psrset\(1M\)](#), [processor_bind\(2\)](#), [processor_info\(2\)](#), [sysconf\(3C\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Diagnostics pbind: cannot query pid 31: No such process
The process specified did not exist or has exited.

pbind: cannot bind pid 31: Not owner
The user does not have permission to bind the process.

pbind: cannot bind pid 31: Invalid argument
The specified processor is not on-line.

Name pfinstall – tests installation profiles

Synopsis /usr/sbin/install.d/pfinstall -D | -d *disk_config*
[-c *CDpath*] *profile*

Description After you create a profile, you can use the `pfinstall` command to test the profile and see if it does what you want before using it to install or upgrade a system. `pfinstall` enables you to test a profile against:

- The system's disk configuration where `pfinstall` is being run.
- Other disks by using a disk configuration file that represents a structure of a disk. See NOTES on how to create a disk configuration file.

To successfully and accurately test a profile for a particular Solaris release, you must test a profile within the Solaris environment of the same release. For example, if you want to test a profile for Solaris 2.10, you have to run the `pfinstall` command on a system running Solaris 2.10.

So, on a system running Solaris 2.10, you can test Solaris 2.10 initial installation profiles. However, if you want to test a Solaris 2.10 upgrade profile on a system running a previous version of Solaris, or if you don't have a Solaris 2.10 system installed yet to test Solaris 2.10 initial installation profiles, you have to boot a system from a Solaris 2.10 CD image and temporarily create a Solaris 2.10 install environment. Then, you can run `pfinstall` in the Solaris 2.10 install environment to test your profiles.

To create a temporary Solaris operating system install environment, boot a system from a Solaris CD image (just as you would to install), answer any system identification questions, choose the Solaris Interactive Installation program, and exit out of the first screen that is presented. Then, from the shell, you can execute the `pfinstall` command.

Options The following options are supported:

- c *CDpath* The path to the Solaris installation image. This is required if the image is not mounted on `/cdrom`. (For example, use this option if you copied the installation image to disk or mounted the CD-ROM on a directory other than `/cdrom`.) When testing a profile on an x86 machine, the miniroot needs to be unpacked before using -c option. See EXAMPLES, below, for the procedure to unpack the miniroot.
- d *disk_config* `pfinstall` uses a disk configuration file, *disk_config*, to test the profile. See NOTES on how to create a disk configuration file. You must specify either this option or the -D option to test the profile (see WARNINGS). This option cannot be used with an upgrade profile (`install_type` upgrade). You must always test an upgrade profile against a system's disk configuration (-D option).
- D `pfinstall` uses the system's disk configuration to test the profile. You must specify either this option or the -d option to test the profile (see WARNINGS).

Operands The following operands are supported:

profile The file name of the profile to test. If *profile* is not in the directory where `pfinstall` is being run, you must specify the path.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Testing an Upgrade Profile

The following example tests an upgrade profile, `upgrade.prof`, on a system with a previous version of the Solaris software installed.

1. Boot the system to be upgraded from the Solaris image chosen for the upgrade, just as you would to install. The image can be located in the system's local CD-ROM or on an install server.
2. Answer the system configuration questions, if prompted.
3. If you are presented with a choice of installation options, choose the Solaris Interactive Installation program.
4. Exit from the first screen of the Solaris Interactive Installation program.
After the Solaris Interactive Installation program exits, a shell prompt is displayed.
5. Create a temporary mount point:

```
example# mkdir /tmp/mnt
```

6. Mount the directory that contains the profile(s) you want to test.

If you want to mount a remote NFS file system (for systems on the network), enter:

```
example# mount -F nfs server_name:path /tmp/mnt
```

If you want to mount a UFS-formatted diskette, enter:

```
example# mount -F ufs /dev/diskette /tmp/mnt
```

If you want to mount a PCFS-formatted diskette, enter:

```
example# mount -F pcfs /dev/diskette /tmp/mnt
```

7. Change directory to `/tmp/mnt` where the profile resides:

```
example# cd /tmp/mnt
```

8. Test the `upgrade.prof` profile:

```
example# /usr/sbin/install.d/pfinstall -D upgrade.prof
```

EXAMPLE 2 Testing the `basic.prof` Profile on an x86 Machine (Includes Unpacking miniroot)

The following example tests the `basic.prof` profile against the disk configuration on a Solaris 8 system where `pfinstall` is being run. The path to the Solaris CD image is specified because Volume Management is being used.

EXAMPLE 2 Testing the `basic.prof` Profile on an x86 Machine (Includes Unpacking miniroot)
(Continued)

```
example# /usr/sbin/install.d/pfinstall -D -c /cdrom/cdrom0/s0 basic.prof
```

When testing a profile on an x86 machine, before using `pfinstall` with `-c` option, use the following procedure to unpack the miniroot:

1. Uncompress the miniroot archive into a temporary file. The miniroot archive is under `/cdrom/cdrom0/s0`.

```
# /usr/bin/gzcat /cdrom/cdrom0/boot/x86.miniroot > \
/tmp/x86_miniroot_gz
```

2. Create the miniroot device using `lofiadm(1M)`:

```
/usr/sbin/lofiadm -a /tmp/x86_miniroot_gz
/dev/lofi/1
```

3. Mount the miniroot under miniroot directory using the `lofi` device returned by `lofiadm` in the previous step:

```
# /usr/sbin/mount -F ufs /dev/lofi/1 \
/cdrom/cdrom0/Solaris_10/Tools/Boot
```

4. Now run `pfinstall` with `-D` option:

```
# /usr/sbin/install.d/pfinstall -D -c /cdrom/cdrom0/ jumpstart.profile
```

5. After `pfinstall` testing is completed, unmount the `lofi` device:

```
# /usr/sbin/umount /dev/lofi/1
```

6. Delete the `lofi` device:

```
# /usr/sbin/lofiadm -d /tmp/x86_miniroot_gz
```

EXAMPLE 3 Testing the `basic.prof` Profile Against Disk Config File

The following example tests the `basic.prof` profile against the `535_test` disk configuration file. This example uses a Solaris CD image located in the `/export/install` directory, and `pfinstall` is being run on a Solaris 2.6 system.

```
example# /usr/sbin/install.d/pfinstall -d 535_test \
-c /export/install basic.prof
```

Exit Status

0	Successful (system rebooted).
1	Successful (system not rebooted).
2	An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWinst

See Also [fdisk\(1M\)](#), [lofiadm\(1M\)](#), [prtvtoc\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Solaris 10 Installation Guide: Basic Installations

Warnings If the `-d` or `-D` option is not specified, `pfinstall` may perform an actual installation on the system by using the specified profile, and the data on the system may be overwritten.

Notes You have to test a profile on a system with the same platform type for which the profile was created.

SPARC To create a disk configuration file (`-d` option) for a SPARC based system:

1. Locate a SPARC based system with a disk that you want to test.
2. Create a disk configuration file by redirecting the output of the [prtvtoc\(1M\)](#) command to a file.

```
example# prtvtoc /dev/rdisk/c0t3d0s2 > 535_disk
```

3. (Optional.) Concatenate disk configuration files into a single file to test a profile against multiple disks. The target numbers in the disk device names must be unique.

```
example# cat 535_disk 1G_disk > mult_disks
```

x86 To create a disk configuration file (`-d` option) for an x86 based system:

1. Locate an x86 based system with a disk that you want to test.
2. Create part of the disk configuration file by saving the output of the [fdisk\(1M\)](#) command to a file:

```
example# fdisk -R -W 535_disk /dev/rdisk/c0t3d0p0
```

3. Append the output of the [prtvtoc\(1M\)](#) command to the disk configuration file.

```
example# prtvtoc /dev/rdisk/c0t3d0s2 >> 535_disk
```

4. (Optional.) Concatenate disk configuration files into a single file to test a profile against multiple disks. The target numbers in the disk device names must be unique.

```
example# cat 535_disk 1G_disk > mult_disks
```

To test a profile with a specific system memory size, set `SYS_MEMSIZE` to the specific memory size (in Mbytes) before running `pfinstall`:

```
example# SYS_MEMSIZE=memory_size
```

```
example# export SYS_MEMSIZE
```

Name pgxconfig, GFXconfig, TSIgfxp_config – configure the PGX32 (Raptor GFX) Graphics Accelerator

Synopsis /usr/sbin/pgxconfig [-dev *device-filename*]
 [-res *video-mode* [try | noconfirm | nocheck]]
 [-file *machine* | system] [-depth 8 | 24]
 [-24only true | false] [-cachedpixmap true | false]
 [-defaults]
 /usr/sbin/pgxconfig [-propt] [-prconf]
 /usr/sbin/pgxconfig [-help] [-res ?]
 /usr/sbin/pgxconfig [-i]

Description The pgxconfig utility configures the PGX32 (Raptor GFX) Graphics Accelerator and some of the X11 window system defaults for PGX32 (Raptor GFX). A previous version of this utility was named GFXconfig.

The first form of pgxconfig shown in the synopsis above stores the specified options in the OWconfig file. These options are used to initialize the PGX32 (Raptor GFX) device the next time the window system is run on that device. Updating options in the OWconfig file provides persistence of these options across window system sessions and system reboots.

The second, third, and fourth forms, which invoke only the -prconf, -propt, -help, and -res ? options, do not update the OWconfig file. For the third form all other options are ignored.

The -i option starts pgxconfig in interactive mode.

Options may be specified for only one PGX32 (Raptor GFX) device at a time.

Only PGX32 (Raptor GFX)-specific options can be specified through pgxconfig. The normal window system options for specifying default depth, default visual class and so forth are still specified as device modifiers on the openwin command line. See the Xsun(1) manual page available with the SUNWxwman package.

The user can also specify the OWconfig file that is to be updated. By default, the machine-specific file in the /usr/openwin directory tree is updated. The -file option can be used to specify an alternate file to use. For example, the system-global OWconfig file in the /etc/openwin directory tree can be updated instead.

Both of these standard OWconfig files can only be written by root.

Options The following options are supported:

-cachedpixmap true false	When set to false, it forces the PGX32 (Raptor GFX) device to use 24-bit only when running OpenWindows. The default value is true.
----------------------------	--

	Certain applications make use of a cached pixmap when writing to the display device. Such a technique can cause garbled output and can cause the X server to crash. If you experience such behavior, try setting the <code>-cachedpixmap</code> option to <code>false</code> .
<code>-defaults</code>	Reset all option values to their default values.
<code>-depth 8 24</code>	Sets the screen depth to 8 or 24 bits per pixel. 24 bits per pixel enables TrueColor graphics in the window system.
<code>-dev device-filename</code>	Specify the PGX32 (Raptor GFX) special file. The default is <code>/dev/fbs/gfxp0</code> , or <code>/dev/fbs/raptor0</code> if applicable.
<code>-file machine system</code>	Specifies which <code>OWconfig</code> file to update. If <i>machine</i> is specified, the machine-specific <code>OWconfig</code> file in the <code>/etc/openwin</code> directory tree is updated. If <i>system</i> is specified, the global <code>OWconfig</code> file in the <code>/usr/openwin</code> directory tree is updated. If the specified file does not exist, it is created. This option has no effect unless other options are specified. The default is <i>machine</i> .
<code>-help</code>	Print a list of the <code>pgxconfig</code> command line options, along with a brief explanation of each.
<code>-i</code>	Start <code>pgxconfig</code> in interactive mode.
<code>-prconf</code>	Print the PGX32 (Raptor GFX) hardware configuration. The following is a typical display:
	<pre> --- Hardware Configuration for /dev/fbs/gfxp0 --- DAC: version 0x0 Type: Board: PROM: version 0x0 PROM Information: RAM: EDID Data: Monitor Sense ID: </pre>

Card possible resolutions: 640x480x60, 800x600x75, 1024x768x60
 1024x768x70, 1024x768x75, 1280x1024x75, 1280x1024x76
 1280x1024x60, 1152x900x66, 1152x900x76, 1280x1024x67
 960x680x112S, 960x680x108S, 640x480x60i, 768x575x50i,
 1280x800x76, 1440x900x76, 1600x1000x66, 1600x1000x76,
 vga, svga, 1152, 1280, stereo, ntsc, pal

Monitor possible resolutions: 720x400x70, 720x400x88, 640x480x60
 640x480x67, 640x480x72, 640x480x75, 800x600x56,
 800x600x60, 800x600x72, 800x600x75, 832x624x75,
 1024x768x87, 1024x768x60, 1024x768x70, 1024x768x75,
 1280x1024x75, 1280x1024x76, 1152x900x66, 1152x900x76,
 1280x1024x67, 960x680x112S, vga, svga, 1152, 1280
 stereo

Current resolution setting: 1280x1024x76
 Possible depths: 8, 24, 8+24
 Current depth: 8

-propt

Print the current values of all PGX32 (Raptor GFX) options in the OWconfig file specified by the -file option for the device specified by the -dev option. Print the values of options as they would be in the OWconfig file after the call to pgxconfig would have completed. The following is a typical display:

```
--- OpenWindows Configuration for /dev/fbs/gfxp0 ---
OWconfig: machine
Video Mode: not set
Depth: 8+24
```

-res *video-mode* [try | noconfirm | nocheck]

Specify the built-in video mode used to drive the monitor connected to the specified PGX32 (Raptor GFX) device.

The format for *video-mode* can be one of the following:

widthxheightxrate The *width* is the screen width in pixels, *height* is the screen height in pixels, and *rate* is the vertical frequency of the screen refresh. As a convenience, -res

also accepts formats with @ prepended to the refresh rate rather than x. For example: 1280x1024@76. The list can be obtained by running `pgxconfig` with the `-res ?` option (the third form shown in the command synopsis above). Note that not all resolutions are supported by both the video board and by the monitor. The `pgxconfig` utility will not permit you to set a resolution not supported by the board unless the `noconfirm` or `nocheck` option is specified. It will also request confirmation before setting a resolution not supported by the monitor if the `nocheck` option is not specified.

Symbolic names

For convenience, the video modes listed below have symbolic names defined. Rather than the form *widthxheightxrate*, the symbolic name may be supplied as the argument to

- res. If the symbolic name is none, the screen resolution will be the video mode that is currently programmed in the device when the window system is run.

svga	1024x768x60
1152	1152x900x76
1280	1280x1024x76
vga	640x480x60
none	default console resolution

The - res option also accepts additional, optional arguments immediately following the video mode specification. Any or all of these may be present.

noconfirm Using the - res option, the user could put the system into an unusable state, a state where there is no video output. This can happen if there is ambiguity in the monitor sense codes for the particular code read. To reduce the chance of this occurring, the default behavior of `pgxconfig` is to print a warning message to this effect and to prompt the user to find out if it is okay to continue. The `noconfirm` option instructs `pgxconfig` to bypass this confirmation and to

- program the requested video mode anyway. This option is useful when `pgxconfig` is being run from a shell script.
- `nocheck` If present, normal error checking based on the monitor sense code is suspended. The video mode specified by the user will be accepted regardless of whether it is appropriate for the currently attached monitor. (This option is useful if a different monitor is to be connected to the PGX32 (Raptor GFX) device). Use of this option implies `noconfirm` as well.
- `try` This option allows the user to test the specified resolution before committing it. It displays a pattern on the screen with the specified resolution. If the test pattern appears correctly, the user may answer "y" to the query. The other permissible answer is "n".
- This sub-option should not be used with `pgxconfig` while the configured device is being used (for example, while running the window system) as unpredictable results may occur. To run `pgxconfig` with the `try` sub-option, the window system should be brought down first.

-
- | | |
|----------|--|
| - res ? | Print the list of possible resolutions supported by the PGX32 and the monitor. |
| - 24only | Force the PGX32 (Raptor GFX) device to use 24 bit only when running Openwindows. |

Defaults For a given invocation of `pgxconfig`, if an option does not appear on the command line, the corresponding `OWconfig` option is not updated; it retains its previous value, except for `-depth` and `-24only`.

A default value is used if a PGX32 (Raptor GFX) option has not been specified with `pgxconfig` when the window system is run. The option defaults are as follows:

- | | |
|--------|----------------|
| - dev | /dev/fbs/gfxp0 |
| - file | system |
| - res | none |

The default of `none` for the `-res` option indicates that when the window system is run, the screen resolution will be the video mode that is currently programmed in the device.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Switching the Resolution on the Monitor Type

The following example switches the monitor type to the resolution of 1280 x 1024 at 76 Hz:

```
example# /usr/sbin/pgxconfig -res 1280x1024x76
```

Files	/dev/fbs/gfxp0	device special file
	/usr/openwin/server/etc/OWconfig	system configuration file
	/etc/openwin/server/etc/OWconfig	machine configuration file

See Also *PGX32 Installation Manual*

Name picld – PICL daemon

Synopsis /usr/lib/picl/picld

Description The Platform Information and Control Library (PICL) provides a mechanism to publish platform-specific information for clients to access in a platform-independent way. `picld` maintains and controls access to the PICL information from clients and plug-in modules. The daemon is started in both single-user and multi-user boot mode.

Upon startup, the PICL daemon loads and initializes the plug-in modules. These modules use the `libpicltree(3PICLTREE)` interface to create nodes and properties in the PICL tree to publish platform configuration information. After the plug-in modules are initialized, the daemon opens the PICL daemon door to service client requests to access information in the PICL tree.

PICL Tree The PICL tree is the repository of all the nodes and properties created by the plug-in modules to represent the platform configuration. Every node in the PICL tree is an instance of a well-defined PICL class. The name of the base PICL class is `picl`, which defines a basic set of properties that all nodes in the tree must possess. Two of those properties are `name` and `_class`, where `name` contains the name of the node, and the `_class` contains the PICL class name of the node. Certain nodes in the PICL tree have well-known names. For example, the name of the root node of the PICL tree is `/` and the name of the root node of the sub-tree containing platform device nodes is `platform`.

PICL plug-in Modules The PICL plug-in modules are shared objects that publish platform-specific data in the PICL tree. They are located in well-known directories so that the daemon can locate and load them.

Plug-in modules are located in one of the following plug-in directories depending on the platform-specific nature of the data that they collect and publish:

```
/usr/platform/'uname -i'/lib/picl/plugins  
/usr/platform/'uname -m'/lib/picl/plugins
```

A plug-in module can specify its dependency on another plug-in module using the `-l` or `-R` linker option. The plug-ins are loaded by the daemon using `dlopen(3C)` according to the specified dependencies. Each plug-in module must define a `.init` section, which is executed when the plug-in module is loaded, to register themselves with the daemon. See `picld_plugin_register(3PICLTREE)` for additional information on plug-in registration.

The plug-in modules use the `libpicltree(3PICLTREE)` interface to publish nodes and properties in the PICL tree so that clients can access them.

When the PICL daemon invokes the initialization routine of the plug-in module, the plug-in collects the platform information and creates nodes and/or properties to represent the configuration in the PICL tree. A plug-in can create additional threads to monitor the platform configuration and update the PICL tree with any changes. This enables a PICL plug-in to operate as a daemon within the PICL framework.

An environmental monitor is an example of a plug-in module that uses a thread to monitor the temperatures and fan speeds of the platform, then publishes the environmental information in the PICL tree so clients can access them.

Clients use the [libpicl\(3PICL\)](#) interface to send requests to `picld` for accessing the PICL tree.

Exit Status `picld` does not return an exit status.

Files `/var/run/picld_door` PICL daemon door
`/usr/lib/picl/picld` PICL daemon

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWpicld

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [dlopen\(3C\)](#), [libpicl\(3PICL\)](#), [libpicltree\(3PICLTREE\)](#), [picld_log\(3PICLTREE\)](#), [picld_plugin_register\(3PICLTREE\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Notes The `picld` service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/picl
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name ping – send ICMP (ICMP6) ECHO_REQUEST packets to network hosts

Synopsis /usr/sbin/ping *host* [*timeout*]

```
/usr/sbin/ping -s [-l | -U] [-abdLlNrRv] [-A addr_family]
  [-c traffic_class] [-g gateway [-g gateway...]]
  [-N next_hop_router] [-F flow_label] [-I interval]
  [-i interface] [-P tos] [-p port] [-t tll] host
  [data_size] [npackets]
```

Description The utility ping utilizes the ICMP (ICMP6 in IPv6) protocol's ECHO_REQUEST datagram to elicit an ICMP (ICMP6) ECHO_RESPONSE from the specified *host* or network *gateway*. If *host* responds, ping will print:

```
host is alive
```

on the standard output and exit. Otherwise, after *timeout* seconds, it will write:

```
no answer from host
```

The default value of *timeout* is 20 seconds.

When you specify the *s* flag, sends one datagram per second (adjust with *-I*) and prints one line of output for every ECHO_RESPONSE that it receives. ping produces no output if there is no response. In this second form, ping computes round trip times and packet loss statistics; it displays a summary of this information upon termination or timeout. The default *data_size* is 56 bytes, or you can specify a size with the *data_size* command-line argument. If you specify the optional *npackets*, ping sends ping requests until it either sends *npackets* requests or receives *npackets* replies.

When using ping for fault isolation, first ping the local host to verify that the local network interface is running.

Options The following options are supported:

-A addr_family

Specify the address family of the target host. *addr_family* can be either *inet* or *inet6*. Address family determines which protocol to use. For an argument of *inet*, IPv4 is used. For *inet6*, IPv6 is used.

By default, if the name of a host is provided, not the literal IP address, and a valid IPv6 address exists in the name service database, ping will use this address. Otherwise, if the name service database contains an IPv4 address, it will try the IPv4 address.

Specify the address family *inet* or *inet6* to override the default behavior. If the argument specified is *inet*, ping will use the IPv4 address associated with the host name. If none exists, ping will state that the host is unknown and exit. It does not try to determine if an IPv6 address exists in the name service database.

If the specified argument is *inet6*, ping uses the IPv6 address that is associated with the host name. If none exists, ping states that the host is unknown and exits.

-
- F *flow_label*
Specify the flow label of probe packets. The value must be an integer in the range from 0 to 1048575. This option is valid only on IPv6.
 - D
Turn off fragmentation. For IPv4, this means setting the Don't Fragment bit. For IPv4 and IPv6, this means do not allow fragmentation as the datagrams are sent. If the *data_size* exceeds the MTU, then ping might report that sending failed due to Message too long.
 - I *interval*
Turn on the statistics mode and specify the interval between successive transmissions. The default is one second. See the discussion of the -s option.
 - L
Turn off loopback of multicast packets. Normally, members are in the host group on the outgoing interface, a copy of the multicast packets will be delivered to the local machine.
 - N *next_hop_router*
Specify a next-hop router so that the probe packet goes through the specified router along its path to the target host. This option essentially bypasses the system routing table and leaves the probe packet header unmodified. Only one next-hop router can be specified.
 - P *tos*
Set the type of service (*tos*) in probe packets to the specified value. The default is zero. The value must be an integer in the range from 0 to 255. Gateways also in the path can route the probe packet differently, depending upon the value of *tos* that is set in the probe packet. This option is valid only on IPv4.
 - R
Record route. Sets the IPv4 record route option, which stores the route of the packet inside the IPv4 header. The contents of the record route are only printed if the -v and -s options are given. They are only set on return packets if the target host preserves the record route option across echos, or the -l option is given. This option is valid only on IPv4.
 - U
Send UDP packets instead of ICMP (ICMP6) packets. ping sends UDP packets to consecutive ports expecting to receive back ICMP (ICMP6) PORT_UNREACHABLE from the target host.
 - a
ping all addresses, both IPv4 and IPv6, of the multihomed destination. The output appears as if ping has been run once for each IP address of the destination. If this option is used together with -A, ping probes only the addresses that are of the specified address family. When used with the -s option and *npackets* is not specified, ping continuously probes the destination addresses in a round robin fashion. If *npackets* is specified, ping sends *npackets* number of probes to each IP address of the destination and then exits.

- b
Bypass the global IPsec policy and send and receive packets in the clear for this connection only. This option can be used to troubleshoot network connectivity independent of IPsec. Because this option bypasses system-wide policy for this connection, it can only be used by superuser or a user granted the `sys_net_config` privilege.
- c *traffic_class*
Specify the traffic class of probe packets. The value must be an integer in the range from 0 to 255. Gateways along the path can route the probe packet differently, depending upon the value of *traffic_class* set in the probe packet. This option is valid only on IPv6.
- d
Set the `SO_DEBUG` socket option.
- g *gateway*
Specify a loose source route gateway so that the probe packet goes through the specified host along the path to the target host. The maximum number of gateways is 8 for IPv4 and 127 for IPv6. Note that some factors such as the link MTU can further limit the number of gateways for IPv6.
- i *interface_address*
Specify the outgoing interface address to use for multicast packets for IPv4 and both multicast and unicast packets for IPv6. The default interface address for multicast packets is determined from the (unicast) routing tables. *interface_address* can be a literal IP address, for example, `10.123.100.99`, or an interface name, for example, `eri0`, or an interface index, for example `2`.
- l
Use to send the probe packet to the given host and back again using loose source routing. Usually specified with the `-R` option. If any gateways are specified using `-g`, they are visited twice, both to and from the destination. This option is ignored if the `-U` option is used.
- n
Show network addresses as numbers. `ping` normally does a reverse name lookup on the IP addresses it extracts from the packets received. The `-n` option blocks the reverse lookup, so `ping` prints IP addresses instead of host names.
- p *port*
Set the base UDP *port* number used in probes. This option is used with the `-U` option. The default base *port* number is 33434. The `ping` utility starts setting the destination port number of UDP packets to this base and increments it by one at each probe.
- r
Bypass the normal routing tables and send directly to a host on an attached network. If the host is not on a directly attached network, an error is returned. This option can be used to ping a local host through an interface that has been dropped by the router daemon. See [in. routed\(1M\)](#).

- s
Send one datagram per second and collect statistics.
- t *tll*
Specify the IPv4 time to live, or IPv6 hop limit, for unicast and multicast packets. The default time to live (hop limit) for unicast packets can be set with the `ndd` module, `/dev/icmp`, using the `icmp_ipv4_ttl` variable for IPv4 and the `icmp_ipv6_hoplimit` variable for IPv6. The default time to live (hop limit) for multicast is one hop. See **EXAMPLES**. For further information, see [ndd\(1M\)](#).
- v
Verbose output. List any ICMP (ICMP6) packets, other than replies from the target host.

Operands *host*
The network host

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Using ping With IPv6

This example shows `ping` sending probe packets to all the IPv6 addresses of the host `xyz`, one at a time. It sends an ICMP6 ECHO_REQUEST every second until the user interrupts it.

```
istanbul% ping -s -A inet6 -a xyz
PING xyz: 56 data bytes
64 bytes from xyz (4::114:a00:20ff:ab3d:83ed): icmp_seq=0. time=0.479 ms
64 bytes from xyz (fec0::114:a00:20ff:ab3d:83ed): icmp_seq=1. time=0.843 ms
64 bytes from xyz (4::114:a00:20ff:ab3d:83ed): icmp_seq=2. time=0.516 ms
64 bytes from xyz (fec0::114:a00:20ff:ab3d:83ed): icmp_seq=3. time=4.943 ms
64 bytes from xyz (4::114:a00:20ff:ab3d:83ed): icmp_seq=4. time=0.485 ms
64 bytes from xyz (fec0::114:a00:20ff:ab3d:83ed): icmp_seq=5. time=2.201 ms
^C
----xyz PING Statistics----
6 packets transmitted, 6 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip (ms)  min/avg/stddev = 0.479/1.583/4.943/1.823
```

EXAMPLE 2 Using `ndd` to Set the `icmp_ipv6_hoplimit`

This example shows the `ndd` module, `/dev/icmp`, used to set the `icmp_ipv6_hoplimit`.

```
# ndd -set /dev/icmp icmp_ipv6_hoplimit 100
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0
Successful operation; the machine is alive.

non-zero
An error has occurred. Either a malformed argument has been specified, or the machine was not alive.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWbip

See Also [ifconfig\(1M\)](#), [in.routed\(1M\)](#), [nnd\(1M\)](#), [netstat\(1M\)](#), [rpcinfo\(1M\)](#), [traceroute\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [icmp\(7P\)](#), [icmp6\(7P\)](#)

Name pkg2du – convert driver packages to Driver Update format

Synopsis /usr/bin/pkg2du [-f] [-v] [-d *dir*] [-o *iso*] [-l *label*]
[-r *release*] *pkg* [*pkg* ...]

Description The /usr/bin/pkg2du utility takes one or more packages as input and converts them to Driver Update (DU) format. If the -d option is specified, the resulting DU directory tree is placed in the directory *dir*. If the -o option is specified, a Solaris ISO image of the DU directory tree is written in the file *iso*. The ISO image can be burned onto CD/DVD using [cdrw\(1\)](#) or [cdrecord\(1\)](#) (not a SunOS man page) and used during Solaris installation.

At least one of the -d and -o options must be specified. If both are specified, then both an ISO image and a directory tree are generated.

Options The following options are supported:

- d *dir*
Directory where the DU directory should be created.
- o *iso*
Create a Solaris ISO image of the DU directory.
- f
If *dir*/DU or *iso* exists, remove it without asking first.
- l *label*
Label/volume name of the ISO image (if -o option is specified).
- r *release*
Solaris release number to use. It takes the form of the return from `uname -r` command, for example, 5.10. If unspecified, the release number of the currently running Solaris is used.
- v
Verbose. Multiple -v options increase verbosity.

Operands The following operands are supported:

pkg [*pkg*...]
One or more packages to be converted to DU format.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Creating a DU CD/DVD

The following commands create a DU CD or DVD containing packages SUNWfoo and SUNWbar.

```
# /usr/bin/pkg2du -r 5.10 -o my.iso SUNWfoo SUNWbar
# /usr/bin/cdrw -i my.iso
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Committed

See Also [cdrw\(1\)](#), [mkbootmedia\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

[mkisofs\(8\)](#), (`/usr/share/man/man8/mkisofs.8`), in the SUNWfsman package (not a SunOS man page)

Name pkgadd – transfer software packages to the system

Synopsis pkgadd [-nv] [-a *admin*] [-G] [-x *proxy*]
 [[-M] -R *root_path*] [-r *response*] [-k *keystore*]
 [-P *passwd*] [-V *fs_file*]
 [-d *device* | -d *datastream pkginst* | all]
 [*pkginst* | -Y *category* [, *category*]...]
 pkgadd -s [-d *device* | -d *datastream pkginst* | all]
 [*pkginst* | -Y *category* [, *category*]...]

Description pkgadd transfers the contents of a software package from the distribution medium or directory to install it onto the system. Used without the -d *device* source specifier, pkgadd looks in the default spool directory (/var/spool/pkg) for the package. Used with the -s option, it writes the package to a spool directory instead of installing it.

The pkgadd utility requires an amount of temporary space the size of the package that is being installed. pkgadd determines which temporary directory to use by checking for the existence of the \$TMPDIR environment variable. If \$TMPDIR is not defined, pkgadd uses P_tmpdir from stdio.h. P_tmpdir has a default of /var/tmp/.

Certain unbundled and third-party packages are no longer entirely compatible with the latest version of pkgadd. These packages require user interaction throughout the installation and not just at the very beginning, or require that their request scripts be run as the root user.

To install these older packages (released prior to Solaris 2.4), set the following environment variable: NONABI_SCRIPTS=TRUE

As long as this environment variable is set, pkgadd permits keyboard interaction throughout the installation and package request scripts are run as root.

If you have package request scripts that require running as user root (instead of noaccess [the default] or user install), use the rscript_alt parameter in the [admin\(4\)](#) file to make an appropriate selection. See [admin\(4\)](#).

Note that, in Solaris 8 and Solaris 9, the default user when running a request script was either root or nobody, depending on the operating system's patch level. In the current release, the default user is noaccess.

When running pkgadd in the global zone (see [zones\(5\)](#)), a package that contains a request script (see [pkgask\(1M\)](#)) is added only to the global zone. The package is not propagated to any current or yet-to-be-installed non-global zone. This behavior mimics the effect of the -G option, described below.

Package commands are [largefile\(5\)](#)-aware. They handle files larger than 2 GB in the same way they handle smaller files. In their current implementations, pkgadd, [pkgtrans\(1\)](#) and other package commands can process a datastream of up to 4 GB.

The -d, -Y, and *pkginst* arguments shown in the SYNOPSIS are described under OPERANDS, following OPTIONS.

Options The supported options are described as follows. The *-d device* source specifier is described under OPERANDS, below.

-a *admin*

Define an installation administration file, *admin*, to be used in place of the default administration file. The token *none* overrides the use of any *admin* file, and thus forces interaction with the user. Unless a full path name is given, pkgadd first looks in the current working directory for the administration file. If the specified administration file is not in the current working directory, pkgadd looks in the */var/sadm/install/admin* directory for the administration file.

-G

Add package(s) in the current zone only. When used in the global zone, the package is added to the global zone only and is not propagated to any existing or yet-to-be-created non-global zone. When used in a non-global zone, the package(s) are added to the non-global zone only.

This option causes package installation to fail if, in the *pkginfo* file for a package, *SUNW_PKG_ALLZONES* is set to true. See [pkginfo\(4\)](#).

-k *keystore*

Use *keystore* as the location from which to get trusted certificate authority certificates when verifying digital signatures found in packages. If no keystore is specified, then the default keystore locations are searched for valid trusted certificates. See KEYSTORE LOCATIONS for more information.

-M

Instruct pkgadd not to use the *\$root_path/etc/vfstab* file for determining the client's mount points. This option assumes the mount points are correct on the server and it behaves consistently with Solaris 2.5 and earlier releases.

-n

Installation occurs in non-interactive mode. Suppress output of the list of installed files. The default mode is interactive.

-P *passwd*

Password to use to decrypt keystore specified with *-k*, if required. See PASS PHRASE ARGUMENTS for more information about the format of this option's argument.

-r *response*

Identify a file or directory which contains output from a previous [pkgask\(1M\)](#) session. This file supplies the interaction responses that would be requested by the package in interactive mode. *response* must be a full pathname.

-R *root_path*

Define the full path name of a directory to use as the *root_path*. All files, including package system information files, are relocated to a directory tree starting in the specified *root_path*. The *root_path* may be specified when installing to a client from a server (for example, */export/root/client1*).

Note – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the `-R` option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).

`-s spool`

Write the package into the directory *spool* instead of installing it.

`-v`

Trace all of the scripts that get executed by `pkgadd`, located in the `pkginst/install` directory. This option is used for debugging the procedural and non-procedural scripts.

`-V fs_file`

Specify an alternative *fs_file* to map the client's file systems. For example, used in situations where the `$root_path/etc/vfstab` file is non-existent or unreliable.

`-x proxy`

Specify a HTTP[S] proxy to use when downloading packages. The format of proxy is *host:port*, where *host* is the hostname of the HTTP[S] proxy, and *port* is the port number associated with the proxy. This switch overrides all other methods of specifying a proxy. See ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES for more information on alternate methods of specifying a default proxy.

When executed without options or operands, `pkgadd` uses `/var/spool/pkg` (the default spool directory).

Operands The following operands are supported:

Sources By default, `pkgadd` looks in the `/var/spool/pkg` directory when searching for instances of a package to install or spool. Optionally, the source for the package instances to be installed or spooled can be specified using:

`-d device`

`-d datastream pkgname,... | all`

Install or copy a package from *device*. *device* can be any of the following:

- A full path name to a directory or the identifiers for tape, floppy disk, or removable disk (for example, `/var/tmp` or `/floppy/floppy_name`).
- A device alias (for example, `/floppy/floppy0`).
- A datastream created by `pkgtrans` (see [pkgtrans\(1\)](#)).
- A URL pointing to a datastream created by `pkgtrans`. The supported Universal Resource Identifiers (URIs) are `http:` and `https:`.

The second form of the `-d` specifier, above, indicates the syntax you use when specifying a datastream. In this case you must specify either a comma-separated list of package names or the keyword `all`.

Instances By default, pkgadd searches the specified source, and presents an interactive menu allowing the user to select which package instances found on the source are to be installed. As an alternative, the package instances to be installed can be specified using:

pkginst

The package instance or list of instances to be installed. The token `all` may be used to refer to all packages available on the source medium. The format *pkginst*.`*` can be used to indicate all instances of a package.

The asterisk character (`*`) is a special character to some shells and may need to be escaped. In the C-Shell, the asterisk must be surrounded by single quotes (`'`) or preceded by a backslash (`\`).

`-Y category[,category...]`

Install packages based on the value of the CATEGORY parameter stored in the package's `pkginfo(4)` file. All packages on the source medium whose CATEGORY matches one of the specified categories will be selected for installation or spooling.

Keystore Locations Package and patch tools such as pkgadd or patchadd use a set of trusted certificates to perform signature validation on any signatures found within the packages or patches. If there are no signatures included in the packages or patches then signature validation is skipped. The certificates can come from a variety of locations. If `-k keystore` is specified, and *keystore* is a directory, then *keystore* is assumed to be the base directory of the certificates to be used. If *keystore* is a file, then the file itself is assumed to have all required keys and certificates. When `-k` is not specified, then `/var/sadm/security` is used as the base directory.

Within the specified base directory, the store locations to be searched are different based on the application doing the searching and the type of store being searched for. The following directories are searched in the specified order:

1. `<store_dir>/<app_name>/<store_type>`
2. `<store_dir>/<store_type>`

Where `<store_dir>` is the directory specified by `-k`, `<app_name>` is the name of the application doing the searching, and `<store_type>` is one of `keystore` (for private keys), `certstore` (for untrusted public key certificates), or `truststore` (for trusted certificate authority certificates).

For example, when pkgadd is run with `-k /export/certs`, then the following locations are successively searched to find the trust store:

1. `/export/certs/pkgadd/truststore`
2. `/export/certs/truststore`

This searching order enables administrators to have a single location for most applications, and special certificate locations for certain applications.

Keystore And Certificate Formats

The packaging and patching utilities, such as `pkgtrans` and `patchadd`, require access to a set of keys and certificates in order to sign, and optionally verify, packages and patches.

The keystore files found by following the search pattern specified in `KEYSTORE LOCATIONS` must each be a self-contained PKCS#12-format file.

When signing a package with `pkgtrans`, if a `certstore` has more than one public key certificate, then each public key must have a `friendlyName` attribute in order to be identifiable and selectable with the `-a` option when signing packages or patches. In addition, the public key certificate selected with `-a` and found in the `certstore` must have an associated private key in the keystore.

Several browsers and utilities can be used to export and import certificates and keys into a PKCS#12 keystore. For example, a trusted certificate can be exported from Mozilla, and then imported into a PKCS#12 keystore for use with `pkgadd` with the OpenSSL Toolkit.

Pass Phrase Arguments

`pkgtrans` and `pkgadd` accept password arguments, typically using `-p` to specify the password. These allow the password to be obtained from a variety of sources. Both of these options take a single argument whose format is described below. If no password argument is given and a password is required then the user is prompted to enter one: this will typically be read from the current terminal with echoing turned off.

`pass:password`

The actual password is *password*. Because the password is visible to utilities such as `ps` this form should only be used where security is not important.

`env:var`

Obtain the password from the environment variable *var*. Because the environment of other processes is visible on certain platforms this option should be used with caution.

`file:pathname`

The first line contained within *pathname* is the password. *pathname* need not refer to a regular file: it could, for example, refer to a device or named pipe. For example, to read the password from standard input, use `file:/dev/stdin`.

`console`

Read the password from `/dev/tty`.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Installing a Package from a Solaris DVD

The following example installs a package from a Solaris DVD. You are prompted for the name of the package you want to install.

```
example# pkgadd -d /cdrom/cdrom0/s0/Solaris_10/Product
```

EXAMPLE 2 Installing a Set of Packages from a Datastream

The example command shown below installs all of the packages in the datastream specified by the `-d` source specifier. Prior to this command, this datastream must have been created with the `pkgtrans(1)` command.

```
example# pkgadd -d /var/tmp/datastream all
```

The keyword `all` specifies that all of the packages found in the designated datastream will be installed.

Exit Status	0	Successful completion
	1	Fatal error.
	2	Warning.
	3	Interruption.
	4	Administration.
	5	Administration. Interaction is required. Do not use <code>pkgadd -n</code> .
	10	Reboot after installation of all packages.
	20	Reboot after installation of this package.

Environment Variables	HTTPPROXY	Specifies an HTTP proxy host. Overrides administration file setting, and <code>http_proxy</code> environment variable.
	HTTPPROXYPORT	Specifies the port to use when contacting the host specified by <code>HTTPPROXY</code> . Ignored if <code>HTTPPROXY</code> is not set.
	http_proxy	URL format for specifying proxy host and port. Overrides administration file setting.
Files	<code>/var/sadm/install/logs/</code>	Location where <code>pkgadd</code> logs an instance of software installation.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWpkgcmds
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [pkginfo\(1\)](#), [pkgmk\(1\)](#), [pkgparam\(1\)](#), [pkgproto\(1\)](#), [pkgtrans\(1\)](#), [installf\(1M\)](#), [pkgadm\(1M\)](#), [pkgask\(1M\)](#), [pkgchk\(1M\)](#), [pkgrm\(1M\)](#), [removef\(1M\)](#), [admin\(4\)](#), [pkginfo\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#), [zones\(5\)](#)

Application Packaging Developer's Guide

<http://www.openssl.org>

Notes When transferring a package to a spool directory, the `-r`, `-n`, and `-a` options cannot be used.

The `-r` option can be used to indicate a directory name as well as a filename. The directory can contain numerous response files, each sharing the name of the package with which it should be associated. This would be used, for example, when adding multiple interactive packages with one invocation of `pkgadd`. In this situation, each package would need a response file. If you create response files with the same name as the package (for example, `pkinst1` and `pkinst2`), then name the directory in which these files reside after the `-r`.

The `-n` option causes the installation to halt if any interaction is needed to complete it.

If the default *admin* file is too restrictive, the administration file may need to be modified to allow for total non-interaction during a package installation. See [admin\(4\)](#) for details.

If a package stream is specified with `-d`, and a digital signature is found in that stream, the default behavior is to attempt to validate the certificate and signature found. This behavior can be overridden with *admin* file settings. See [admin\(4\)](#) for more information.

Name pkgadm – manage packaging and patching system

Synopsis pkgadm addcert [-ty] [-a *app*] [-k *keystore*] [-e *keyfile*]
 [-f *format*] [-n *name*] [-P *passarg*]
 [-p *import_passarg*] [-R *rootpath*] certfile

pkgadm removecert [-a *app*] [-k *keystore*] -n *name*
 [-P *passarg*] [-R *rootpath*]

pkgadm listcert [-a *app*] [-f *format*] [-k *keystore*] -n *name*
 [-P *passarg*] [-o *outfile*] [-R *rootpath*]

pkgadm dbstatus [-R *rootpath*]

pkgadm sync [-R *rootpath*] [-q]

pkgadm -V

pkgadm -?

Description The pkgadm utility is used for managing the packaging and patching system. It has several subcommands that perform various operations relating to packaging. The pkgadm command includes subcommands for managing certificates and keys used.

Managing Keys and Certificates

pkgadm maintains the packaging-system-wide keystore in `/var/sadm/security`, and individual user's certificates in `~/.pkg/security`. The following subcommands operate on the package keystore database:

addcert

Add (import) a certificate into the database, with optional trust. Once added, trusted certificates can be used to verify signed packages and patches. Non-trusted user certificates and their associated keys can be used to sign packages and patches. Added user certificates are *not* used to build certificate chains during certificate verification.

removecert

Removes a user certificate/private key pair, or a trusted certificate authority certificate from the keystore. Once removed, the certificate and keys cannot be used.

listcert

Print details of one or more certificates in the keystore.

sync

Writes the contents file and rolls the contents log file. With use of the -q option, forces the contents file server to quit.

Internal Install Database

The Solaris operating system relies upon enhanced System V revision 4 (SVr4) packages as the basis for its software installation and revision management. The package maintenance software stores information about installed packages in an internal database. The pkgadm subcommand `dbstatus` is used to determine how the package internal database is implemented. The `dbstatus` command returns a string that indicates the type of internal database in use. In

the current implementation, the `dbstatus` command always returns the string text, which indicates that the `contents(4)` package database is in use. Future releases of Solaris might supply alternative database implementations.

Options The following options are supported:

-a *app*

If this option is used, then the command only affects the keystore associated with a particular application. Otherwise, the global keystore is affected.

-e *keyfile*

When adding a non-trusted certificate/key combination, this option can be used to specify the file that contains the private key. If this option is not used, the private key must be in the same file as the certificate being added.

-f *format*

When adding certificates, this specifies the format to expect certificates and private keys in. Possible values when adding are:

pem

Certificate and any private key uses PEM encoding.

der

Certificate and any private key uses DER encoding.

When printing certificates, this specifies the output format used when printing. Acceptable values for format are:

pem

Output each certificate using PEM encoding.

der

Output each certificate using DER encoding.

text

Output each certificate in human-readable format.

-k *keystore*

Overrides the default location used when accessing the keystore.

-n *name*

Identifies the entity in the store on which you want to operate. When adding a user certificate, or removing certificates, this name is required. The name is associated with the certificate/key combination, and when adding, can be used later to reference the entity. When printing certificates, if no alias is supplied, then all keystore entities are printed.

-o *outfile*

Output the result of the command to *outfile*. Only used when examining (printing) certificates from the key store. Standard out is the default.

- P *passarg*
Password retrieval method to use to decrypt keystore specified with -k, if required. See PASS PHRASE ARGUMENTS in [pkgadd\(1M\)](#) for more information about the format of this option's argument. `console` is the default.
- p *import_passarg*
This option's argument is identical to -P, but is used for supplying the password used to decrypt the certificate and/or private key being added. `console` is the default.
- q
(Applies to sync subcommand.) Shuts down the contents file cache daemon.
- R *rootpath*
Defines the full name of a directory to use as the root (/) path. The default user location of the certificate operations is `/${HOME}/.pkg`. If the -R option is supplied, the certificates and keys will be stored under `<alroot>/var/sadm/security`. Note that this operation fails if the user does not have sufficient permissions to access this directory. The `listcert` command requires read permission, while `addcert` and `removecert` require both read and write permission.

Note – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the -R option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).
- t
Indicates the certificate being added is a trusted CA certificate. The details of the certificate (including the Subject Name, Validity Dates, and Fingerprints) are printed and the user is asked to verify the data. This verification step can be skipped with -y. When importing a trusted certificate, a private key should not be supplied, and will be rejected if supplied. Once a certificate is trusted, it can be used as a trust anchor when verifying future untrusted certificates.
- V
Print version associated with packaging tools.
- y
When adding a trusted certificate, the details of the certificate (Subject name, Issuer name, Validity dates, Fingerprints) are shown to the user and the user is asked to verify the correctness before proceeding. With -y, this additional verification step is skipped.
- ?
Print help message.

Operands The following operand is supported:

`certfile`

File containing the certificate and optional private key, used when adding a trust anchor or certificate/key combination. Certificates must be encoded using PEM or binary DER.

Keystore Aliases All keystore entries (user cert/key and trusted certificate entries) are accessed via unique aliases. Aliases are case-sensitive.

An alias is specified when you add an entity to a keystore using the `addcert` or `trustcert` subcommand. If an alias is not supplied for a trust anchor, the trust anchor's Common Name is used as the alias. An alias is required when adding a signing certificate or chain certificate. Subsequent `pkgcert` or other package tool commands must use this same alias to refer to the entity.

Keystore Passwords See the [pkgadd\(1M\)](#) man page for a description of the passwords supplied to the `pkgadm` utility.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Adding a Trust Anchor

The following example adds a well-known and trusted certificate to be used when verifying signatures on packages.

```
example% pkgadm addcert -t /tmp/certfile.pem
```

EXAMPLE 2 Adding a Signing Certificate

The following example adds a signing certificate and associated private key, each of which is in a separate file, which can then be used to sign packages.

```
example% pkgadm addcert -a pkgtrans -e /tmp/keyfile.pem \
/tmp/certfile.pem
```

EXAMPLE 3 Printing Certificates

The following example prints all certificates in the root keystore.

```
example% pkgadm listcert
```

Exit Status 0
successful completion

non-zero
fatal error

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWpkgcmdsu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [pkginfo\(1\)](#), [pkgmk\(1\)](#), [pkgparam\(1\)](#), [pkgproto\(1\)](#), [pkgtrans\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [installf\(1M\)](#), [pkgadd\(1M\)](#), [pkgask\(1M\)](#), [pkgrm\(1M\)](#), [removef\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [admin\(4\)](#), [contents\(4\)](#), [exec_attr\(4\)](#), [pkginfo\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [rbac\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Application Packaging Developer's Guide

Notes The service for pkgadm is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/pkgserv
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name pkgask – stores answers to a request script

Synopsis pkgask [-d *device*] [-R *root_path*] -r *response* *pkginst*...

Description pkgask allows the administrator to store answers to an interactive package (one with a request script, that is, a user-created file that must be named request). Invoking this command generates a response file that is then used as input at installation time. The use of this response file prevents any interaction from occurring during installation since the file already contains all of the information the package needs.

Options The following options are supported

- d *device* Run the request script for a package on *device*. *device* can be a directory pathname or the identifiers for tape, floppy disk or removable disk (for example, /var/tmp, /dev/diskette, and /dev/dsk/c1d0s0). The default device is the installation spool directory.
- R *root_path* Define the full path name of a directory to use as the *root_path*. All files, including package system information files, are relocated to a directory tree starting in the specified *root_path*.

Note – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the -R option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).
- r *response* Identify a file or directory which should be created to contain the responses to interaction with the package. The name must be a full pathname. The file, or directory of files, can later be used as input to the [pkgadd\(1M\)](#) command.

Operands The following operands are supported:

- pkginst* Specify the package instance, or list of instances for which request scripts will be created. The token all may be used to refer to all packages available on the source medium.

Exit Status 0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [pkginfo\(1\)](#), [pkgmk\(1\)](#), [pkgparam\(1\)](#), [pkgproto\(1\)](#), [pkgtrans\(1\)](#), [installf\(1M\)](#), [pkgadd\(1M\)](#), [pkgchk\(1M\)](#), [pkgrm\(1M\)](#), [removef\(1M\)](#), [admin\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Application Packaging Developer's Guide

Notes The `-r` option can be used to indicate a directory name as well as a filename. The directory name is used to create numerous response files, each sharing the name of the package with which it should be associated. This would be used, for example, when you will be adding multiple interactive packages with one invocation of [pkgadd\(1M\)](#). Each package would need a response file. To create multiple response files with the same name as the package instance, name the directory in which the files should be created and supply multiple instance names with the `pkgask` command. When installing the packages, you will be able to identify this directory to the [pkgadd\(1M\)](#) command.

If the default `admin` file is too restrictive, the administration file may need to be modified to allow for total non-interaction during a package installation. See [admin\(4\)](#) for details.

Name pkgchk – check package installation accuracy

Synopsis pkgchk [-l | -acfnqv_x] [-i *file* | -]
 [-p *path*... | -P *partial-path*...] [-R *root_path*]
 [[-m *pkgmap* [-e *envfile*]] | pkginst... | -Y *category,category*|P0]
 pkgchk -d *device* [-l | -fv] [-i *file* | -] [-M] [-p *path*]...
 [-V *fs_file*]
 [pkginst... | -Y *category*[,*category*|P0]]

Description pkgchk checks the accuracy of installed files or, by using the -l option, displays information about package files. pkgchk checks the integrity of directory structures and files. Discrepancies are written to standard error along with a detailed explanation of the problem.

The first synopsis defined above is used to list or check the contents and/or attributes of objects that are currently installed on the system, or in the indicated pkgmap. Package names may be listed on the command line, or by default, the entire contents of a machine will be checked.

The second synopsis is used to list or check the contents of a package which has been spooled on the specified device, but not installed. Note that attributes cannot be checked for spooled packages.

Options The following options are supported:

- a
Audit the file attributes only and do not check file contents. Default is to check both.
- c
Audit the file contents only and do not check file attributes. Default is to check both.
- d *device*
Specify the device on which a spooled package resides. *device* can be a directory path name or the identifiers for tape, floppy disk, or removable disk (for example, /var/tmp or /dev/diskette).
- e *envfile*
Request that the package information file named as *envfile* be used to resolve parameters noted in the specified pkgmap file.
- f
Correct file attributes if possible. If used with the -x option, this option removes hidden files. When pkgchk is invoked with this option, it creates directories, named pipes, links, and special devices if they do not already exist. If the -d option calls out an uninstalled package, the -f option will only take effect if the package is in directory (not stream) format. All file attributes will be set to agree with the entries in the pkgmap file except that setuid, setgid, and sticky bits will not be set in the mode.

- i *file* | -
Read a list of path names from *file* or from stdin (-) and compare this list against the installation software database or the indicated pkgmap file. Path names that are not contained in *file* or stdin are not checked.
- l
List information on the selected files that make up a package. This option is not compatible with the -a, -c, -f, -g, and -v options.
- m pkgmap
Check the package against the package map file, pkgmap.
- M
Instruct pkgchk not to use the *\$root_path/etc/vfstab* file for determining the client's mount points. This option assumes the mount points are correct on the server and it behaves consistently with Solaris 2.5 and earlier releases.
- n
Do not check volatile or editable files' contents. This should be used for most post-installation checking.
- p *path*
Check the accuracy only of the path name or path names listed. *path* can be one or more path names separated by commas (or by whitespace, if the list is quoted).

To specify a *path* that includes a comma, you must use the -i option, described above. See EXAMPLES.
- P *partial-path*
Check the accuracy of only the partial path name or path names listed. *partial-path* can be one or more partial path names separated by commas (or by whitespace, if the list is quoted). This option can be used instead of -p and is not compatible with the other option. This option matches any path name that contains the string contained in the partial path. See the note about paths that contain commas in the description of -p.
- q
Quiet mode. Do not give messages about missing files.
- R *root_path*
Define the full name of a directory to use as the *root_path*. All files, including package system information files, are relocated to a directory tree starting in the specified *root_path*. The *root_path* may be specified when installing to a client from a server (for example, /export/root/client1).

Note – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the -R option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).

- v
Verbose mode. Files are listed as processed.
- V *fs_file*
Specify an alternative *fs_file* to map the client's file systems. For example, used in situations where the `$root_path/etc/vfstab` file is non-existent or unreliable.
- x
Search exclusive directories, looking for files which exist that are not in the installation software database or the indicated pkgmap file.
- Y *category*
Check packages based on the value of the CATEGORY parameter stored in the installed or spooled package's `pkginfo(4)` file.

Operands *pkginst*

The package instance or instances to be checked. The format *pkginst*. * can be used to check all instances of a package. The default is to display all information about all installed packages.

The asterisk character (*) is a special character to some shells and may need to be escaped. In the C-Shell, an asterisk must be surrounded by single quotes (') or preceded by a backslash (\);

partial-path

A portion of a path, such as a file or directory name.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Using pkgchk for Displaying Package Installation Information

The following example displays package installation information for `/usr/bin/l`s:

```
example% pkgchk -l -p /usr/bin/l
```

EXAMPLE 2 Checking on Java Font Properties

The following example displays package installation information for all Java font properties installed on the system.

```
example% pkgchk -l -P font.properties
```

EXAMPLE 3 Specifying a Path That Contains a Comma

Assume you want to specify the path:

```
/platform/SUNW,Netra-T12/lib
```

List this path in a file. Here is one way in which you can do that:

```
example% echo "/platform/SUNW,Netra-T12/lib" > /tmp/p
```

EXAMPLE 3 Specifying a Path That Contains a Comma (Continued)

You can then enter:

```
example% pkgchk -i /tmp/p -l
Pathname: /platform/SUNW,Netra-T12/lib
Type: directory
Expected mode: 0755
Expected owner: root
Expected group: bin
Referenced by the following packages:
    SUNWcar
Current status: installed
```

Exit Status 0
Successful completion.

>0
An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [pkginfo\(1\)](#), [pkgtrans\(1\)](#), [pkgadd\(1M\)](#), [pkgask\(1M\)](#), [pkgrm\(1M\)](#), [pkginfo\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#)

Application Packaging Developer's Guide

Notes Package commands are [largefile\(5\)](#)-aware. They handle files larger than 2 GB in the same way they handle smaller files. In their current implementations, [pkgadd\(1M\)](#), [pkgtrans\(1\)](#) and other package commands can process a datastream of up to 4 GB.

Name pkgcond – determine type and capability of target

Synopsis /usr/bin/pkgcond [-nv] *condition*

Description The pkgcond command allows you to determine the type of target being operated on (global zone, non-global zone, diskless client, and so forth) and the capabilities available for that type of client (can add a driver, path is writable, and so forth). The pkgcond command is intended to be invoked from package and patch scripts, but can also be used in situations that mimic the context of these scripts. See NOTES for further guidance.

pkgcond has one mandatory argument, a condition. The command tests whether the condition is true for the specified path. The condition can be one of the following:

- can_add_driver [*path*]
- can_remove_driver [*path*]
- can_update_driver [*path*]
- is_alternative_root [*path*]
- is_boot_environment [*path*]
- is_diskless_client [*path*]
- is_global_zone [*path*]
- is_mounted_miniroot [*path*]
- is_netinstall_image [*path*]
- is_nonglobal_zone [*path*]
- is_path_writable *path*
- is_running_system [*path*]
- is_sparse_root_nonglobal_zone [*path*]
- is_what [*path*]
- is_whole_root_nonglobal_zone [*path*]

The *path* argument usually denotes the root of the global zone or non-global zone, or alternate root. If *path* is optional and not specified, the default is */*.

The behavior of the *is_what* condition is somewhat special, because it displays results of all other conditions to standard output.

Options The following options are supported:

- n
Negate return status (0 becomes 1 and 1 becomes 0). It negates results in the case of *is_what* condition.
- v
Verbose mode. Displays detailed data about intermediate checks performed.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Listing All Available Information

The following command lists all available information about the current running system, in a user-friendly way.

EXAMPLE 1 Listing All Available Information (Continued)

```
example# pkgcond -n is_what
```

EXAMPLE 2 Determining if Target is an Alternate Root

The following command determines whether an alternate boot environment exists under `/altroot_mount`.

```
example# pkgcond is_alternative_root /altroot_mount
```

Exit Status

- 0
Condition is true unless `-n` was specified.
- 1
Condition is false unless `-n` was specified.
- 2
Command line usage error.
- 3
Command failed to perform the test due to a fatal error.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsr
Interface Stability	Uncommitted

See Also [pkgtrans\(1\)](#), [pkgadd\(1M\)](#), [pkgask\(1M\)](#), [pkgchk\(1M\)](#), [pkgrm\(1M\)](#), [pkginfo\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes Supported usage of `pkgcond` is subject to the following constraints:

1. Do not use `pkgcond` outside of the Solaris marketing release in which it is provided (for example, do not use Solaris 10 `pkgcond` against a Solaris 9 target).
2. Restrict use of the optional path argument according to the following rules:
 - The command `pkgcond condition $ROOTDIR` can be used in patch level scripts.
 - The command `pkgcond condition $PKG_INSTALL_ROOT` can be used in package level scripts.
 - A command of the form `pkgcond condition without` the optional path argument can be used in any context.

Use of `pkgcond` with an arbitrary path argument is *not* recommended or supported, as the results returned might not be accurate.

Name pkgrm – remove a package from the system

Synopsis pkgrm [-nv] [-a *admin*] [[-A | -M] -R *root_path*]
 [-V *fs_file*]
 [pkginst... | -Y *category[,category|PO]*]
 pkgrm -s *spool*
 [pkginst... | -Y *category[,category|PO]*]

Description pkgrm will remove a previously installed or partially installed package from the system. A check is made to determine if any other packages depend on the one being removed. If a dependency exists, the action taken is defined in the *admin* file.

The default state for the command is in interactive mode, meaning that prompt messages are given during processing to allow the administrator to confirm the actions being taken. Non-interactive mode can be requested with the *-n* option.

The *-s* option can be used to specify the directory from which spooled packages should be removed.

Certain unbundled and third-party packages are no longer entirely compatible with the latest version of pkgrm. These packages require user interaction throughout the removal and not just at the very beginning.

To remove these older packages (released prior to Solaris 2.4), set the following environment variable: `NONABI_SCRIPTS=TRUE` pkgrm permits keyboard interaction throughout the removal as long as this environment variable is set.

Options The following options are supported:

-a *admin*

Use the installation administration file, *admin*, in place of the default *admin* file. pkgrm first looks in the current working directory for the administration file. If the specified administration file is not in the current working directory, pkgrm looks in the `/var/sadm/install/admin` directory for the administration file.

-A

Remove the package files from the client's file system, absolutely. If a file is shared with other packages, the default behavior is to not remove the file from the client's file system.

-M

Instruct pkgrm not to use the `$root_path/etc/vfstab` file for determining the client's mount points. This option assumes the mount points are correct on the server and it behaves consistently with Solaris 2.5 and earlier releases.

-n

Non-interactive mode. If there is a need for interaction, the command will exit.

Use of this option requires that at least one package instance be named upon invocation of the command. Certain conditions must exist for a package to be removed non-interactively or a non-restrictive `admin` file needs to be used.

-R *root_path*

Defines the full path name of a directory to use as the *root_path*. All files, including package system information files, are relocated to a directory tree starting in the specified *root_path*.

Note – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the `-R` option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).

-s *spool*

Remove the specified package(s) from the directory *spool*. The default directory for spooled packages is `/var/sadm/pkg`.

-v

Trace all of the scripts that get executed by `pkgrm`, located in the *pkginst/install* directory. This option is used for debugging the procedural and non-procedural scripts.

-V *fs_file*

Specify an alternative *fs_file* to map the client's file systems. Used in situations where the `$root_path/etc/vfstab` file is non-existent or unreliable.

-Y *category*

Remove packages based on the value of the `CATEGORY` parameter stored in the installed or spooled package's [pkginfo\(4\)](#) file. No package with the `CATEGORY` value of `system` can be removed from the file system with this option.

Operands The following operand is supported:

pkginst

Specifies the package to be removed. The format *pkginst*.`*` can be used to remove all instances of a package.

The asterisk character (`*`) is a special character to some shells and may need to be escaped. In the C-Shell, "`*`" must be surrounded by single quotes (`'`) or preceded by a backslash (`\`).

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Removing All Instances of SUNWjunk from `client1`

The following example removes all instances of SUNWjunk from `client1`:

```
example% pkgrm -R /export/root/client1 SUNWjunk*
```

Note the caveat on the use of the `-R` option in the description of that option, above.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0
Successful completion.
- 1
Fatal error.
- 2
Warning.
- 3
Interruption.
- 4
Administration.
- 10
Reboot after removal of all packages.
- 20
Reboot after removal of this package.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [pkginfo\(1\)](#), [pkgmk\(1\)](#), [pkgparam\(1\)](#), [pkgproto\(1\)](#), [pkgtrans\(1\)](#), [installf\(1M\)](#), [pkgadd\(1M\)](#), [pkgask\(1M\)](#), [pkgchk\(1M\)](#), [removef\(1M\)](#), [admin\(4\)](#), [pkginfo\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#)

Application Packaging Developer's Guide

Notes Package commands are [largefile\(5\)](#)-aware. They handle files larger than 2 GB in the same way they handle smaller files. In their current implementations, [pkgadd\(1M\)](#), [pkgtrans\(1\)](#) and other package commands can process a datastream of up to 4 GB.

Name plockstat – report user-level lock statistics

Synopsis plockstat [-vACHV] [-n *count*] [-s *depth*] [-e *secs*]
[-x *arg* [=val]] *command* [*arg*]...
plockstat [-vACHV] [-n *count*] [-s *depth*] [-e *secs*]
[-x *arg* [=val]] -p *pid*

Description The plockstat utility gathers and displays user-level locking statistics. By default, plockstat monitors all lock contention events, gathers frequency and timing data about those events, and displays the data in decreasing frequency order, so that the most common events appear first.

plockstat gathers data until the specified command completes or the process specified with the -p option completes.

plockstat relies on DTrace to instrument a running process or a command it invokes to trace events of interest. This imposes a small but measurable performance overhead on the processes being observed. Users must have the dt race_proc privilege and have permission to observe a particular process with plockstat. Refer to the *Solaris Dynamic Tracing Guide* for more information about DTrace security features.

Options The following options are supported:

- A Watch all lock events. This option is equivalent to -CH.
- C Watch contention events.
- H Watch hold events.
- e *secs* Exit after the number of seconds specified have elapsed.
- n *count* Display only the specified number of entries for each output category.
- s *depth* Record a stack trace rather than just the calling function.
- p *pid* Specify a process ID from which plockstat is to gather data.
- v Print out a message to indicate that tracing has started.
- x *arg*[=*val*] Enable or modify a DTrace runtime option or D compiler option. The list of options is found in the *Solaris Dynamic Tracing Guide*. Boolean options are enabled by specifying their name. Options with values are set by separating the option name and value with an equals sign (=).
- V Print the Dtrace commands used to gather the data. The output can then be used directly with the dt race(1M) command.

Operands The following operands are supported:

- arg* A string to be passed as an argument to *command*.
- command* The name of a utility to be invoked.

count A positive integer value.

pid A process identifier for a process to be monitored.

secs Duration specified as a positive integer number of seconds.

Display Headers The following headers appear over columns of data in `plockstat` output.

Count
Number of times an event occurred.

nsec
Average duration of an event, in nanoseconds.

Lock
Address of a lock, displayed symbolically if possible.

Caller
Address of a caller, displayed symbolically if possible.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWdtrc
Interface Stability	See below.

The command-line syntax is Evolving. The human-readable output is Unstable.

See Also [dtrace\(1M\)](#), [lockstat\(1M\)](#), [mutex_init\(3C\)](#), [pthread_mutex_lock\(3C\)](#), [pthread_rwlock_rdlock\(3C\)](#), [pthread_rwlock_wrlock\(3C\)](#), [pthread_rwlock_unlock\(3C\)](#), [rwlock\(3C\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [fasttrap\(7D\)](#)

Solaris Dynamic Tracing Guide

Name pmadm – port monitor administration

Synopsis pmadm -a [-p *pmtag* | -t *type*] -s *svctag* -i *id* -m *pmspecific* -v *ver*
[-f *xu*]
[-y *comment*] [-z *script*]

pmadm -r -p *pmtag* -s *svctag*

pmadm -e -p *pmtag* -s *svctag*

pmadm -d -p *pmtag* -s *svctag*

pmadm -l [-t *type* | -p *pmtag*] [-s *svctag*]

pmadm -L [-t *type* | -p *pmtag*] [-s *svctag*]

pmadm -g -p *pmtag* -s *svctag* [-z *script*]

pmadm -g -s *svctag* -t *type* -z *script*

Description pmadm is the administrative command for the lower level of the Service Access Facility hierarchy, that is, for service administration. A port may have only one service associated with it although the same service may be available through more than one port. In order to uniquely identify an instance of a service, the pmadm command must identify both the port monitor or port monitors through which the service is available (-p or -t) and the service (-s). See [Options](#).

pmadm performs the following functions:

- adds or removes a service
- enables or disables a service
- installs or replaces a per-service configuration script
- prints requested service information

Any user on the system may invoke pmadm to request service status (-l or -L) or to print per-service configuration scripts (-g without the -z option). pmadm with other options may be executed only by a privileged user.

Options The following options are supported:

- a Add a service. pmadm adds an entry for the new service to the port monitor's administrative file. Because of the complexity of the options and arguments that follow the -a option, it may be convenient to use a command script or the menu system to add services.
- d Disable a service. Add x to the flag field in the entry for the service *svctag* in the port monitor's administrative file. This is the entry used by port monitor *pmtag*. See the -f option, below, for a description of the flags available.

- e Enable a service. Remove *x* from the flag field in the entry for the service *svctag* in the port monitor administrative file. This is the entry used by port monitor *pmtag*. See the -f option, below, for a description of the flags available.
- f *xu* The -f option specifies one or both of the following two flags which are then included in the flag field of the entry for the new service in the port monitor's administrative file. If the -f option is not included, no flags are set and the default conditions prevail. By default, a new service is enabled and no utmpx entry is created for it. An -f option without a following argument is illegal.
- x* Do not enable the service *svctag* available through port monitor *pmtag*.
- u* Create a utmpx entry for service *svctag* available through port monitor *pmtag*.
- g Print, install, or replace a per-service configuration script. The -g option with a -p option and a -s option prints the per-service configuration script for service *svctag* available through port monitor *pmtag*. The -g option with a -p option, a -s option, and a -z option installs the per-service configuration script contained in the file *script* as the per-service configuration script for service *svctag* available through port monitor *pmtag*. The -g option with a -s option, a -t option, and a -z option installs the file *script* as the per-service configuration script for service *svctag* available through any port monitor of type *type*. Other combinations of options with -g are invalid.
- i *id* *id* is the identity that is to be assigned to service *svctag* when it is started. *id* must be an entry in */etc/passwd*.
- l The -l option requests service information. Used by itself and with the options described below, it provides a filter for extracting information in several different groupings.
- l By itself, the -l option lists all services on the system.
- l -p *pmtag* Lists all services available through port monitor *pmtag*.
- l -s *svctag* Lists all services with tag *svctag*.
- l -p *pmtag*-*svctag* Lists service *svctag*.
- l -t *type* Lists all services available through port monitors of type *type*.
- l -t *type*-*svctag* Lists all services with tag *svctag* available through a port monitor of type *type*.

- Other combinations of options with `-l` are invalid.
- `-L` The `-L` option is identical to the `-l` option except that output is printed in a condensed format.
 - `-m pmspecific` *pmspecific* is the port monitor-specific portion of the port monitor administrative file entry for the service.
 - `-p pmtag` Specifies the tag associated with the port monitor through which a service (specified as `-s svctag`) is available.
 - `-r` Remove a service. When `pmadm` removes a service, the entry for the service is removed from the port monitor's administrative file.
 - `-s svctag` Specifies the service tag associated with a given service. The service tag is assigned by the system administrator and is part of the entry for the service in the port monitor's administrative file.
 - `-t type` Specifies the port monitor type.
 - `-v ver` Specifies the version number of the port monitor administrative file. The version number may be given as
`-v 'pmspec -V`
where *pmspec* is the special administrative command for port monitor *pmtag*. This special command is `ttysadm` for `ttymon` and `nlsadmin` for `listen`. The version stamp of the port monitor is known by the command and is returned when *pmspec* is invoked with a `-V` option.
 - `-y comment` Associate *comment* with the service entry in the port monitor administrative file.
 - `-z script` Used with the `-g` option to specify the name of the file that contains the per-service configuration script. Modifying a configuration script is a three-step procedure. First a copy of the existing script is made (`-g` alone). Then the copy is edited. Finally, the copy is put in place over the existing script (`-g` with `-z`).

Options that request information write the requested information to the standard output. A request for information using the `-l` option prints column headers and aligns the information under the appropriate headings. In this format, a missing field is indicated by a hyphen. A request for information in the condensed format using the `-L` option prints the information in colon-separated fields; missing fields are indicated by two successive colons. `#` is the comment character.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Adding a Service to a Port Monitor with the Tag pmtag

The following command adds a service to a port monitor with tag pmtag and gives the service the tag svctag. The port monitor-specific information is generated by specpm. The service defined by svctag will be invoked with identity root.

```
pmadm -a -p pmtag -s svctag -i root -m 'specpm -a arg1 -b arg2'-v 'specpm -V'
```

EXAMPLE 2 Adding a Service with Service Tab svctag

The following command adds a service with service tag svctag, identity guest, and port monitor-specific information generated by specpm to all port monitors of type type:

```
pmadm -a -s svctag -i guest -t type -m 'specpm -a arg1 -b arg2'-v 'specpm -V'
```

EXAMPLE 3 Removing a Service

The following command removes the service svctag from port monitor pmtag:

```
pmadm -r -p pmtag -s svctag
```

EXAMPLE 4 Enabling a Service

The following command enables the service svctag available through port monitor pmtag:

```
pmadm -e -p pmtag -s svctag
```

EXAMPLE 5 Disabling a Service

The following command disables the service svctag available through port monitor pmtag:

```
pmadm -d -p pmtag -s svctag
```

EXAMPLE 6 Listing Status Information

The following command lists status information for all services:

```
pmadm -l
```

EXAMPLE 7 Listing Status Information

The following command lists status information for all services available through the port monitor with tag ports:

```
pmadm -l -p ports
```

EXAMPLE 8 Listing Status Information in Condensed Format

The following command lists the status information for all services available through the port monitor with tag `ports` in condensed format:

```
pmadm -L -p ports
```

EXAMPLE 9 Listing Status Information for All Services

List status information for all services available through port monitors of type `listen`:

```
pmadm -l -t listen
```

EXAMPLE 10 Printing the per-service Configuration

The following command prints the per-service configuration script associated with the service `svctag` available through port monitor `pmtag`:

```
pmadm -g -p pmtag -s svctag
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful operation.

>0 Operation failed.

Files `/etc/saf/pmtag/_config`

`/etc/saf/pmtag/svctag`

`/var/saf/pmtag/*`

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [sac\(1M\)](#), [sacadm\(1M\)](#), [doconfig\(3NSL\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name pmconfig – Configure the Power Management system

Synopsis /usr/sbin/pmconfig [-r]

Description The pmconfig utility sets the Power Management and suspend-resume configuration. User has permission to change Power Management configuration using pmconfig only if he is allowed to do so according to PMCHANGEPERM keyword of /etc/default/power. User has permission to change the suspend-resume configuration using pmconfig only if he is allowed to do so according to the CPRCHANGEPERM keyword of /etc/default/power. See FILES section below for a description of the PMCHANGEPERM and CPRCHANGEPERM keywords of /etc/default/power.

Based on user permissions, pmconfig first resets the Power Management and/or suspend-resume state back to its default and then reads the new Power Management and/or suspend-resume configuration from /etc/power.conf and issues the commands to activate the new configuration. The pmconfig utility is run at system boot. This utility can also be run from the command line after manual changes have been made to the /etc/power.conf file. For editing changes made to the /etc/power.conf file to take effect, users must run pmconfig.

The preferred interface for changing Power Management and suspend-resume configuration is dtpower(1M).

Options The following options are supported:

- r Reset Power Management and suspend-resume state to default and exit. User must have both Power Management and suspend-resume configuration permission for this option.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Upon successful completion
- >0 An error occurred

Files

/etc/power.conf	System Power Management configuration file
/etc/default/power	File that controls permissions for system's Power Management and suspend-resume features. The PMCHANGEPERM keyword controls the Power Management configuration permissions, while the CPRCHANGEPERM keyword controls the suspend-resume configuration permissions.

Allowed values are:

- all Any user can change the configuration.
- No one except super-user can change the configuration.

- <user1, user2, ...> A user in this user list or a super-user can change the configuration. The user list is a space and/or comma (,) separated list. You must enclose the list in < and > characters.
- console-owner A user who owns the system console device node or a super-user can change the configuration.

The default values are PMCHANGEPERM=console-owner and CPRCHANGEPERM=console-owner.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWpmu
Interface stability	Unstable

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [powerd\(1M\)](#), [power.conf\(4\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [cpr\(7\)](#), [pm\(7D\)](#)

Using Power Management

Notes The pmconfig service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/power:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Diagnostics If the program cannot open the configuration file, it prints an error message to standard error. If the program encounters a syntax error in the configuration file, it prints an error message and the line number of the error in the configuration file. It then skips the rest of the information on that line and processes the next line. Any configuration information already processed on the line containing the error is used. If user does not have permission to change Power Management and/or suspend-resume configuration, and configuration file has entries for which user doesn't have permission, it process the entries for which user has permissions and prints error on rest.

Name pntadm – DHCP network table management utility

Synopsis pntadm -C [-r *resource*] [-p *path*] [-u *uninterpreted*] *network*

```
pntadm -A name_IP_address [-c comment] [-e mm/dd/yyyy]
[-f num | keywords] [-h client_hostname]
[-i [-a] client_ID] [-m [-y] macro] [-s server]
[-r resource] [-p path] [-u uninterpreted] network
```

```
pntadm -M name_IP_address [-c comment] [-e mm/dd/yyyy]
[-f num | keywords] [-h client_hostname]
[-i [-a] client ID] [-m [-y] macro]
[-n new_client_IP_address] [-s server] [-r resource]
[-p path] [-u uninterpreted] network
```

```
pntadm -D name_IP_address [-y] [-r resource] [-p path]
[-u uninterpreted] network
```

```
pntadm -P [-v] [-x] [-r resource] [-p path]
[-u uninterpreted] network
```

```
pntadm -R [-r resource] [-p path] [-u uninterpreted] network
```

```
pntadm -L [-r resource] [-p path] [-u uninterpreted]
```

```
pntadm -B [-v] [batchfile]
```

Description The pntadm command is used to manage the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) network tables. It is used to add and remove networks under DHCP management, and add, delete, or modify IP address records within network tables, or to view tables. For a description of the format of DHCP network tables, see [dhcp_network\(4\)](#).

pntadm can be run as root or by other users assigned to the DHCP Management profile. See [rbac\(5\)](#) and [user_attr\(4\)](#).

If the networks you want to add are subnetted, you need to update the [netmasks\(4\)](#) table.

One of the following options (function flags) must be specified with the pntadm command: -A, -B, -C, -D, -L, -M, -P, or -R.

Options The following options are supported:

-A *name_IP_address*

Add a client entry with hostname or client IP address, *name_IP_address*, to the named DHCP network table.

The following sub-options are optional:

-c *comment*

Comment text. The default is NULL.

-e *mm/dd/yyyy*

Absolute lease. The default is 0.

-f *num* | *keywords*

Flag value. The default is 00.

The flag (-f) option can be specified either as a single number denoting the intended flag value, or as a series of the following keywords, combined using the plus (+) symbol:

DYNAMIC or 00

Server manager's assignment.

PERMANENT or 01

Lease on entry is permanent.

MANUAL or 02

Administrator managed assignment.

UNUSABLE or 04

Entry is not valid.

BOOTP or 08

Entry reserved for BOOTP clients.

For a more detailed description of the flag values, see [dhcp_network\(4\)](#).

-h *client_hostname*

Client hostname. The default is NULL.

When the -h option is used in this mode, the *client_hostname* is added to the hosts table within the resource used for storing host names (files or DNS). The command will fail if this *client_hostname* is already present in the hosts table.

-i *client_ID* [-a]

Client identifier [-a]. The default is 00.

The -i option modified with -a specifies that the client identifier is in ASCII format, and thus needs to be converted to hexadecimal format before insertion into the table.

-m *macro* [-y]

Macro name. Default is UNKNOWN.

The -m option modified with -y verifies the existence of the named macro in the `dhcptab` table before adding the entry.

-s *server*

Server IP or name. Default is system name (uname -n).

-B

Activate batch mode. `pntadm` will read from the specified file or from standard input a series of `pntadm` commands and execute them within the same process. Processing many `pntadm` commands using this method is much faster than running an executable batchfile itself. Batch mode is recommended for using `pntadm` in scripts.

The following sub-option is optional:

- v
Display commands to standard output as they are processed.
 - C
Create the DHCP network table for the network specified by *network*. See [Operands](#). For details, see [dhcp_network\(4\)](#) and [networks\(4\)](#).
 - D *name_IP_address*
Delete the specified client entry with hostname or client IP address, *name_IP_address*, in the named DHCP network table. (See [dhcp_network\(4\)](#).)
- The following sub-option is optional:
- y
Remove associated host table entry. The -y option requests that all hostnames associated with the IP address in the hosts table in the resource be removed.
- L
List the DHCP network tables presently configured, one per line, on standard output. If none are found, no output is printed and an exit status of 0 is returned.
- M *name_IP_address*
Modify the specified client entry with hostname or client IP address, *name_IP_address*, in the named DHCP network table. See [dhcp_network\(4\)](#). The default for the sub-options is what they currently are set to.
- The following sub-options are optional.
- c *comment*
New comment text.
 - e *mm/dd/yy*
New absolute lease expiration date. Time defaults to 12:00 AM of the day specified.
 - f *num | keyboard*
New flag value, see explanation following the description of the -A option.
 - h *host_name*
New client hostname.
- The -h option allows you to change the current *hostname* associated with the IP address or to add a new *hostname* to the hosts table if an entry associated with this IP address does not exist.
- i *client_ID*
New client identifier [-a].
 - m *macro* [-y]
Macro name defined in `dhcptab`.

-n new_client_IP_address
New IP address.

-s server
New server IP or name.

For more detailed description of the sub-options and flag values, see [dhcp_network\(4\)](#).

-P
Display the named DHCP network table.

The following sub-options are optional:

-v
Display lease time in full verbose format and resolve IP addresses for the clients and server to hostnames.

-x
Display lease time in raw format.

These flag codes are used with the **-P** sub-options:

<i>-v</i>	<i>-x</i>	Description
D	00	DYNAMIC
P	01	PERMANENT
M	02	MANUAL
U	04	UNUSABLE
B	08	BOOTP

See [dhcp_network\(4\)](#) for information on these sub-options and associated flag codes.

-p path
Override the [dhcpsvc.conf\(4\)](#) configuration value for data store resource path, *path* See [dhcpsvc.conf\(4\)](#)

-R
Remove the named DHCP network table. See [dhcp_network\(4\)](#).

-r data_store_resource
Override the `/etc/inet/dhcpsvc.conf` configuration value for RESOURCE= with the *data_store_resource* specified. See the [dhcpsvc.conf\(4\)](#) man page for more details on resource type, and the for more information about adding support for other data stores.

-u uninterpreted

Data which will be ignored by pntadm, but passed to the currently configured public module to be interpreted by the data store. This might be used for a database account name or other authentication or authorization parameters required by a particular data store.

Operands The following operand is supported:

network

The network address or network name which corresponds to the dhcp network table. See [dhcp_network\(4\)](#).

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Creating a Table for the 10.0.0.0 DHCP Network

The following command creates a table for the 10.0.0.0 (subnetted to class C) DHCP network table. Note that if you have an alias for this network in your [networks\(4\)](#) table, you can use that value rather than the dotted Internet Address notation.

```
example# pntadm -C 10.0.0.0
```

EXAMPLE 2 Adding an Entry to the 10.0.0.0 Table

The following command adds an entry to the 10.0.0.0 table in the files resource in the /var/mydhcp directory:

```
example# pntadm -r SUNWfiles -p /var/mydhcp -A 10.0.0.1 10.0.0.0
```

EXAMPLE 3 Modifying the 10.0.0.1 Entry of the 10.0.0.0 Table

The following command modifies the 10.0.0.1 entry of the 10.0.0.0 table, changing the macro name to Green, setting the flags field to MANUAL and PERMANENT:

```
example# pntadm -M 10.0.0.1 -m Green -f 'PERMANENT+MANUAL' 10.0.0.0
```

EXAMPLE 4 Changing the 10.0.0.1 Entry to 10.0.0.2

The following command changes the 10.0.0.1 entry to 10.0.0.2, making an entry in the [hosts\(4\)](#) table called myclient:

```
example# pntadm -M 10.0.0.1 -n 10.0.0.2 -h myclient 10.0.0.0
```

EXAMPLE 5 Setting the Client ID as ASCII

The following command sets the client ID as ASCII aruba.foo.com for the myclient entry:

```
example# pntadm -M myclient -i 'aruba.foo.com' -a 10.0.0.0
```

EXAMPLE 6 Deleting the myClientEntry from the 10.0.0.0 Table

The following command deletes the myClient (10.0.0.2) entry from the 10.0.0.0 table:

```
example# pntadm -D myclient 10.0.0.0
```

EXAMPLE 7 Listing the Configured DHCP Network Tables

The following command lists the configured DHCP network tables:

```
example# pntadm -L
192.168.0.0
10.0.0.0
```

EXAMPLE 8 Executing pntadm Commands in Batch Mode

The following command runs a series of pntadm commands contained in a batch file:

```
example# pntadm -B addclients
```

- Exit Status**
- 0 Successful completion.
 - 1 Object already exists.
 - 2 Object does not exist.
 - 3 Non-critical error.
 - 4 Critical error.

- Files**
- /etc/inet/dhcpsvc.conf
 - /etc/inet/hosts

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWdhcsu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also `dhcpconfig(1M)`, `dhcpmgr(1M)`, `dhcp_network(4)`, `dhcpsvc.conf(4)`, `dhcptab(4)`, `hosts(4)`, `netmasks(4)`, `networks(4)`, `user_attr(4)`, `attributes(5)`, `dhcp(5)`, `dhcp_modules(5)`, `rbac(5)`

System Administration Guide: IP Services

Alexander, S., and R. Droms, *DHCP Options and BOOTP Vendor Extensions*, RFC 1533, Lachman Technology, Inc., Bucknell University, October 1993.

Droms, R., *Interoperation Between DHCP and BOOTP*, RFC 1534, Bucknell University, October 1993.

Droms, R., *Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol*, RFC 1541, Bucknell University, October 1993.

Wimer, W., *Clarifications and Extensions for the Bootstrap Protocol*, RFC 1542, Carnegie Mellon University, October 1993.

Name polkit-is-privileged – check PolicyKit privileges

Synopsis polkit-is-privileged [-hvV] -u *user* -p *privilege* [-r *resource*]

Description The `polkit-is-privileged` command queries system policy to determine whether a user is allowed for a given privilege and resource. The resource name can be omitted. On the Solaris operating system, RBAC authorizations names should be used as privilege names.

Currently, the only consumer of PolicyKit is [hald\(1M\)](#).

Options The following options are supported:

-h, --help	Display list of options and exit.
-p <i>privilege</i> , --privilege <i>privilege</i>	Name of privilege associated with user. Command tests for this privilege.
-r <i>resource</i> , --resource <i>resource</i>	Name of resource associated with user and privilege. Command tests for this resource.
-u <i>user</i> , --user <i>user</i>	User name or user id that is tested for.
-v, --verbose	Verbose mode.
-V, --version	Displays version number.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWhalr
Interface Stability	Volatile

See Also [auths\(1\)](#), [profiles\(1\)](#), [hald\(1M\)](#), [getauthattr\(3SECDB\)](#), [auth_attr\(4\)](#), [policy.conf\(4\)](#), [prof_attr\(4\)](#), [user_attr\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name pooladm – activate and deactivate the resource pools facility

Synopsis /usr/sbin/pooladm [-n] [-s] [-c] [*filename*] | -x
/usr/sbin/pooladm [-d | -e]

Description The pooladm command provides administrative operations on pools and sets. pooladm reads the specified filename and attempts to activate the pool configuration contained in it.

Before updating the current pool run-time configuration, pooladm validates the configuration for correctness.

Without options, pooladm prints out the current running pools configuration.

Options The following options are supported:

- c Instantiate the configuration at the given location. If a filename is not specified, it defaults to /etc/pooladm.conf.
- d Disable the pools facility so that pools can no longer be manipulated.
- e Enable the pools facility so that pools can be manipulated.
- n Validate the configuration without actually updating the current active configuration. Checks that there are no syntactic errors and that the configuration can be instantiated on the current system. No validation of application specific properties is performed.
- s Update the specified location with the details of the current dynamic configuration.

This option requires update permission for the configuration that you are going to update. If you use this option with the -c option, the dynamic configuration is updated before the static location.
- x Remove the currently active pool configuration. Destroy all defined resources, and return all formerly partitioned components to their default resources.

Operands The following operands are supported:

filename Use the configuration contained within this file.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Instantiating a Configuration

The following command instantiates the configuration contained at /home/admin/newconfig:

```
example# /usr/sbin/pooladm -c /home/admin/newconfig
```

EXAMPLE 2 Validating the Configuration Without Instantiating It

The following command attempts to instantiate the configuration contained at `/home/admin/newconfig`. It displays any error conditions that it encounters, but does not actually modify the active configuration.

```
example# /usr/sbin/pooladm -n -c /home/admin/newconfig
```

EXAMPLE 3 Removing the Current Configuration

The following command removes the current pool configuration:

```
example# /usr/sbin/pooladm -x
```

EXAMPLE 4 Enabling the Pools Facility

The following command enables the pool facility:

```
example# /usr/sbin/pooladm -e
```

EXAMPLE 5 Enabling the Pools Facility Using SMF

The following command enables the pool facility through use of the Service Management Facility. See [smf\(5\)](#).

```
example# /usr/sbin/svcadm enable svc:/system/pools:default
```

EXAMPLE 6 Saving the Active Configuration to a Specified Location

The following command saves the active configuration to `/tmp/state.backup`:

```
example# /usr/sbin/pooladm -s /tmp/state.backup
```

Files `/etc/pooladm.conf` Configuration file for `pooladm`.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWpool
Interface Stability	See below.

The invocation is Evolving. The output is Unstable.

See Also [poolcfg\(1M\)](#), [poolbind\(1M\)](#), [psrset\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [pset_destroy\(2\)](#), [libpool\(3LIB\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

System Administration Guide: Virtualization Using the Solaris Operating System

Notes Resource bindings that are not presented in the form of a binding to a partitionable resource, such as the scheduling class, are not necessarily modified in a `pooladm -x` operation.

The pools facility is not active by default when Solaris starts. `pooladm -e` explicitly activates the pools facility. The behavior of certain APIs related to processor partitioning and process binding are modified when pools is active. See [libpool\(3LIB\)](#).

You cannot enable the pools facility on a system where processor sets have been created. Use the [psrset\(1M\)](#) command or [pset_destroy\(2\)](#) to destroy processor sets manually before you enable the pools facility.

Because the Resource Pools facility is an [smf\(5\)](#) service, it can also be enabled and disabled using the standard SMF interfaces.

Name poolbind – bind processes, tasks, or projects or query binding of processes to resource pools

Synopsis /usr/sbin/poolbind -p *poolname* -e *command* [*arguments*]...

/usr/sbin/poolbind -p *poolname* [-i *idtype*] *id*...

/usr/sbin/poolbind -q *pid*...

/usr/sbin/poolbind -Q *pid*...

Description The poolbind command allows an authorized user to bind zones, projects, tasks, and processes to pools. With the -e option (see below), it can execute a command you specify, placing the executed command in a specified pool. It can also enable you to query a process to determine which pool a process is bound to.

Options The following options are supported:

-e *command* [*arguments*...] Executes *command*, bound to the pool you specify with -p.

-i *idtype* This option, together with the *idlist* arguments, specifies one or more processes to which the poolbind command is to apply. The interpretation of *idlist* depends on the value of *idtype*. The valid *idtype* arguments and corresponding interpretations of *idlist* are as follows:

pid *idlist* is a list of process IDs. Binds the specified processes to the specified pool. This is the default behavior if no *idtype* is specified.

taskid *idlist* is a list of task IDs. Bind all processes within the list of task IDs to the specified pool.

projid *idlist* is a list of project IDs. Bind all processes within the list of projects to the specified pool. Each project ID can be specified as either a project name or a numerical project ID. See [project\(4\)](#).

zoneid *idlist* is a list of zone IDs. Bind all processes within the list of zones to the specified pool. Each zone ID can be specified as either a zone name or a numerical zone ID. See [zones\(5\)](#).

-p *poolname* Specifies the name of a pool to which the specified zone, project, tasks, or processes are to be bound.

-q *pid* ... Queries the pool bindings for a given list of process IDs. If the collection of resources associated with the process does not correspond to any currently existing pool, or if there are multiple pools with the set of resources that the process is bound to, the query fails for that particular process ID.

`-Q pid ...`

Queries the resource bindings for a given list of process IDs. The resource bindings are each reported on a separate line.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Binding All Processes

The following command binds all processes in projects 5 and 7 to the pool `web_app`:

```
example# /usr/sbin/poolbind -p web_app -i projid 5 7
```

EXAMPLE 2 Binding the Running Shell

The following command binds the running shell to the pool `web_app`:

```
example# /usr/sbin/poolbind -p web_app $$
```

EXAMPLE 3 Querying the Pool Bindings

The following command queries the bindings to verify that the shell is bound to the given pool:

```
example# /usr/sbin/poolbind -q $$
```

EXAMPLE 4 Querying the Resource Bindings

The following command queries the bindings to verify that the shell is bound to the given resources:

```
example# /usr/sbin/poolbind -Q $$
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 Requested operation could not be completed.
- 2 Invalid command line options were specified.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWpool
Interface Stability	See below.

The invocation is Evolving. The output is Unstable.

See Also [pooladm\(1M\)](#), [poolcfg\(1M\)](#), [libpool\(3LIB\)](#), [project\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [zones\(5\)](#)

System Administration Guide: Virtualization Using the Solaris Operating System

Name poolcfg – create and modify resource pool configuration files

Synopsis /usr/sbin/poolcfg -c *command* [-d | [*filename*]]
 /usr/sbin/poolcfg -f *command_file* [-d | [*filename*]]
 /usr/sbin/poolcfg -h

Description The poolcfg utility provides configuration operations on pools and sets. These operations are performed upon an existing configuration and take the form of modifications to the specified configuration file. If you use the -d option, the modifications occur to the kernel state. Actual activation of the resulting configuration is achieved by way of the pooladm(1M) utility.

Pools configuration files are structured files that must have been constructed using poolcfg itself or libpool(3LIB) directly.

An invocation of poolcfg with the pool dynamic location and write permission will hang if the dynamic location has already been opened for writing.

The configurations which are created by this utility can be used by pooladm to instantiate the configuration upon a target host.

Options The following options are supported:

- c *command* Specify *command* as an editing command. See USAGE.
- d Operate directly on the kernel state. No *filename* is allowed.
- f *command_file* Take the commands from *command_file*. *command_file* consists of editing commands, one per line.
- h Display extended information about the syntax of editing commands.

Usage

Scripts A script consists of editing commands, one per line, of the following:

info [*entity-name*]

Display configuration (or specified portion) in human readable form to standard output. If no entity is specified, system information is displayed. Therefore, poolcfg -c 'info' afile is an equivalent invocation to poolcfg -c 'info system name' afile.

create *entity-name* [*property-list*]

Make an entity of the specified type and name.

destroy *entity-name*

Remove the specified entity.

modify *entity-name* [*property-list*]

Change the listed properties on the named entity.

associate *pool-name* [*resource-list*]

Connect one or more resources to a pool, or replace one or more existing connections.

transfer to [*resourcetype*] *name*[*component-list*]

Transfer one or more discrete components to a resource .

transfer [*quantity*] from [*resourcetype*] [*src*] to [*tgt*]

Transfer a resource quantity from *src* to *tgt*.

transfer [*quantity*] to [*resourcetype*] [*tgt*] from [*src*]

Transfer a resource quantity to *tgt* from *src*.

discover

Create a system entity, with one pool entity and resources to match current system configuration. All discovered resources of each resource type are recorded in the file, with the single pool referring to the default resource for each resource type.

This command is a NO-OP when `poolcfg` operates directly on the kernel. See the `-d` option.

You should avoid use of this command. The preferred method for creating a configuration is to export the dynamic configuration using `pooladm(1M)` with the `-s` option.

rename *entity-name* to *new-name*

Change the name of an entity on the system to its new name.

Property Lists The property list is specified by:

```
( proptype name = value [ ; proptype name = value ]* )
```

where the last definition in the sequence for a given proptype, name pair is the one that holds. For property deletion, use `~ proptype name`.

Resource Lists A resource list is specified by:

```
( resourcetype name [ ; resourcetype name ]* )
```

where the last specification in the sequence for a resource is the one that holds. There is no deletion syntax for resource lists.

Component Lists A component list is specified by:

```
( componenttype name [ ; componenttype name ]* )
```

where the last specification in the sequence for a component is the one that holds. There is no deletion syntax for component lists.

Recognized Entities system Machine level entity
 pool Named collection of resource associations

Resource Types pset Processor set resource

PropertyTypes	boolean	Takes one of two values true or false.
	int	A 64-bit signed integer value.
	uint	A 64-bit unsigned integer value.
	string	Strings are delimited by quotes ("), and support the character escape sequences defined in formats(5) .
	float	Scientific notation is not supported.

Examples

EXAMPLE 1 Writing a poolcfg Script

The following `poolcfg` script creates a pool named `Accounting`, and a processor set, `small-1`. The processor set is created first, then the pool is created and associated with the set.

```
create pset small-1 ( uint pset.min = 1 ; uint pset.max = 4)
create pool Accounting
associate pool Accounting ( pset small-1 )
```

EXAMPLE 2 Reporting on pool_0

The following command reports on `pool_0` to standard output in human readable form:

```
# poolcfg -c 'info pool pool_0' /etc/pooladm.conf
```

EXAMPLE 3 Destroying pool_0 and Its Associations

The following command destroys `pool_0` and associations, but not the formerly associated resources:

```
# poolcfg -c 'destroy pool pool_0' /etc/pooladm.conf
```

EXAMPLE 4 Displaying the Current Configuration

The following command displays the current configuration:

```
$ poolcfg -c 'info' /etc/pooladm.conf
system example_system
    int system.version 1
    boolean system.bind-default true
    string system.comment Discovered by libpool

    pool pool_default
        boolean pool.default true
        boolean pool.active true
        int pool.importance 5
        string pool.comment
```

EXAMPLE 4 Displaying the Current Configuration *(Continued)*

```

string.pool.scheduler FSS
pset pset_default

pset pset_default
int pset.sys_id -1
string pset.units population
boolean pset.default true
uint pset.max 4294967295
uint pset.min 1
string pset.comment
boolean pset.escapable false
uint pset.load 0
uint pset.size 2

cpu
int cpu.sys_id 0
string cpu.comment

cpu
int cpu.sys_id 2
string cpu.comment

```

EXAMPLE 5 Moving cpu with ID 2 to Processor Set pset1 in the Kernel

The following command moves cpu with ID 2 to processor set pset1 in the kernel:

```
# poolcfg -dc 'transfer to pset pset1 ( cpu 2 )'
```

EXAMPLE 6 Moving 2 cpus from Processor Set pset1 to Processor Set pset2 in the Kernel

The following command moves 2 cpus from processor set pset1 to processor set pset2 in the kernel:

```
# poolcfg -dc 'transfer 2 from pset pset1 to pset2'
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWpool
Interface Stability	See below.

The invocation is Committed. The output is Uncommitted.

See Also pooladm(1M), poolbind(1M), libpool(3LIB), attributes(5), formats(5)

System Administration Guide: Virtualization Using the Solaris Operating System

Name pool – automated resource pools partitioning daemon

Synopsis pool [-l *level*]

Description pool provides automated resource partitioning facilities. pool can be enabled or disabled using the Solaris Service Management Facility, [smf\(5\)](#). pool requires the Resource Pools facility to be active in order to operate.

The dynamic resource pools service's fault management resource identifier (FMRI) is:

```
svc:/system/pools/dynamic
```

The resource pools service's FMRI is:

```
svc:/system/pools
```

pool's configuration details are held in a [libpool\(3LIB\)](#) configuration and you can access all customizable behavior from this configuration.

pool periodically examines the load on the system and decides whether intervention is required to maintain optimal system performance with respect to resource consumption. pool also responds to externally initiated (with respect to pool) changes of either resource configuration or objectives.

If intervention is required, pool attempts to reallocate the available resources to ensure that performance objectives are satisfied. If it is not possible for pool to meet performance objectives with the available resources, then a message is written to the log. pool allocates scarce resources according to the objectives configured by the administrator. The system administrator must determine which resource pools are most deserving of scarce resource and indicate this through the importance of resource pools and objectives.

Options The following options are supported:

-l *level* Specify the verbosity level for logging information.

Specify *level* as ALERT, CRIT, ERR, WARNING, NOTICE, INFO, and DEBUG. If *level* is not supplied, then the default logging level is INFO.

ALERT A condition that should be corrected immediately, such as a corrupted system database.

CRIT Critical conditions, such as hard device errors.

ERR Errors.

WARNING Warning messages.

NOTICE Conditions that are not error conditions, but that may require special handling.

INFO Informational messages.

DEBUG Messages that contain information normally of use only when debugging a program.

When invoked manually, with the `-l` option, all log output is directed to standard error.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Modifying the Default Logging Level

The following command modifies the default logging level to ERR:

```
# /usr/lib/pool/poold -l ERR
```

EXAMPLE 2 Enabling Dynamic Resource Pools

The following command enables dynamic resource pools:

```
# /usr/sbin/svcadm enable svc:/system/pools/dynamic
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWpool
Interface Stability	See below.

The invocation is Evolving. The output is Unstable.

See Also [pooladm\(1M\)](#), [poolbind\(1M\)](#), [poolcfg\(1M\)](#), [poolstat\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [pool_set_status\(3POOL\)](#), [libpool\(3LIB\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

System Administration Guide: Virtualization Using the Solaris Operating System

Name poolstat – report active pool statistics

Synopsis poolstat [-p *pool-list*] [-r *rset-list*] [-T u | d] [*interval* [*count*]]

poolstat [-p *pool-list*] [-o *format* -r *rset-list*]
[-T u | d] [*interval* [*count*]]

Description The poolstat utility iteratively examines all active pools on the system. It reports statistics based on the selected output mode. poolstat provides options to examine only specified pools and report resource set-specific statistics.

Without options, poolstat examines all pools, reports basic statistics for their resource sets, and exits.

DISPLAY FORMATS In default output format, poolstat outputs a header line and a line for each pool. The line begins with the pool ID and its name, followed by a column of statistical data for the processor set attached to the pool.

The columns are defined as follows:

id Pool ID.

pool Pool name.

rid Resource set id.

rset Resource set name.

type Resource set type.

min Minimum resource set size.

max Maximum resource set size.

size Current resource set size.

used The measure of how much of the resource set is currently in use. This is calculated as the percentage utilization of the resource set multiplied by its size. If resource set has been reconfigured during last sampling interval, this value might be not reported (-).

load The absolute representation of the load that is put on the resource set. For the definition of this property see [libpool\(3LIB\)](#).

Options The following options are supported:

-o *format* Report statistics according to the format specification given in format. See DISPLAY FORMATS.

The -o option accepts lists as arguments. Items in a list can be either separated by commas or enclosed in quotes and separated by commas or spaces.

You can specify multiple -o options. The format specification is interpreted as the whitespace separated concatenation of all the format option arguments.

- The `-o` option must be used in conjunction with the `-r` option.
- `-p pool-list` Report only pools whose names are in the given list. If the `-r` option is also used, this option selects only resource sets which belong to pools in the given list. Statistics for pools or resource sets are reported in the same order in which pool names are listed on the `pool-list`. Pool can be specified by name or by ID.
- The `-p` option accepts lists as arguments. Items in a `pool-list` can only be separated by spaces.
- `-r rset-list` Report resource set statistics. If the `rset-list` argument is “all”, then all possible resource set types are selected.
- The `-r` option accepts lists as arguments. Items in a list can be either separated by commas or enclosed in quotes and separated by commas or spaces.
- The following resource set types are supported:
- | | |
|------|------------------------|
| all | All resource set types |
| pset | Processor set |
- `-T u | d` Display a time stamp.
- Specify `u` for a printed representation of the internal representation of time. See [time\(2\)](#). Specify `d` for standard date format. See [date\(1\)](#).

Operands The following operands are supported:

- `count` The number of times that the statistics are repeated. By default, `poolstat` reports statistics only once.
- If neither interval nor count are specified, statistics are reported once. If interval is specified and count is not, statistics are reported indefinitely.
- `interval` The sampling interval in seconds.
- If neither interval nor count are specified, statistics are reported once. If interval is specified and count is not, statistics are reported indefinitely.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Using `poolstat`

The following example shows the default output from the `poolstat` utility:

```
% poolstat
          pset
id pool      size used load
0 pool_default 4  3.6 6.2
1 pool_admin   4  3.3 8.4
```

EXAMPLE 2 Reporting Resource Set Statistics

The following example reports resource set statistics.

```
% poolstat -r pset
id pool          type rid rset          min max size used load
0 pool_default   pset  -1 pset_default   1 65K  2 1.2 8.3
1 pool_admin     pset   1 pset_admin     1  1   1 0.4 5.2
2 pool_other     pset  -1 pset_default   1 65K  2 1.2 8.3
```

Resource sets attached to multiple pools, as `pset_default` in the example above, are listed multiple times, once for each pool.

EXAMPLE 3 Restricting the Output to the List of Pools

The following example restricts the output to the list of pools

```
% poolstat -p pool_default
          pset
id pool          size used load
0 pool_default   8  5.3 10.3

% poolstat -p 'pool_admin pool_default'
          pset
id pool          size used load
1 pool_admin     6  4.3  5.3
0 pool_default   2  1.9  2.0

% poolstat -r all -p 'pool_admin pool_default'
id pool          type rid rset          min max size used load
1 pool_admin     pset   1 pset_admin     1  1   1 0.9 2.3
2 pool_default   pset  -1 pset_default   1 65K  2 2.0 2.0
```

EXAMPLE 4 Customizing Output

The following example customizes output:

```
% poolstat -r -o pool,rset,size,load
pool          rset          size load
pool_default   pset_default   4  4.5
pool_admin     pset_admin     4  2.1
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 An error occurred.

2 Invalid command line options were specified.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWpool
Stability	Evolving

See Also [libpool\(3LIB\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

System Administration Guide: Virtualization Using the Solaris Operating System

Notes The system ids associated with resources can change after the system reboots or the resource configuration is altered.

Name ports – creates /dev entries and inittab entries for serial lines

Synopsis /usr/sbin/ports [-r *rootdir*]

Description [devfsadm\(1M\)](#) is now the preferred command for /dev and /devices and should be used instead of ports.

The ports command creates symbolic links in the /dev/term and /dev/cua directories to the serial-port character device files in /devices and adds new entries in /etc/inittab for non-system ports found. System-board ports are given single lower-case letters for names (such as a and b) while other ports are named numerically.

ports searches the kernel device tree to find the serial devices attached to the system. It also checks /dev/term and /dev/cua to see what symbolic links to serial devices already exist. ports then performs the following:

1. Assigns new numbers (or letters for system-board ports) to ports that are attached to the system but do not have /dev/term and /dev/cua entries. The numbers or letters assigned are the lowest-unused numbers or letters.
2. Removes dangling links: links from /dev/term and /dev/cua pointing to no-longer-existing ports.
3. Creates new /dev/term and /dev/cua links for new serial devices.
4. Invokes [sacadm\(1M\)](#) to make new port monitor entries for the new devices. This is not done automatically for on-board ports; on workstations these ports are often not used for dial-in sessions, so a port-monitor for one of these ports must be created explicitly.

If the configuration has not changed, ports exits without doing anything.

Notice to Driver Writers ports considers devices with a node type of DDI_NT_SERIAL, DDI_NT_SERIAL_MB, DDI_NT_SERIAL_DO, or DDI_NT_SERIAL_MB_DO to be serial port devices. Devices with one of these node types must create minor device names that obey the following conventions when calling [ddi_create_minor_node\(9F\)](#).

- The minor name for non-system port devices (DDI_NT_SERIAL) consists of an ASCII numeric string, where the first port on the device is named 0, the second named 1, the third named 2, up to the number of ports provided by the device.
- The minor name for non-system dialout devices (DDI_NT_SERIAL_DO) is the ASCII numeric port name, concatenated with ,cu. For example, the minor name for the first dialout port on the serial board is 0,cu.
- The minor name for system-board port devices (DDI_NT_SERIAL_MB) consists of a string containing a single ASCII lowercase character, where the first port on the device is named a, the second is named b, the third is named c, for all ports on the device (or up through port z).
- The minor name for system-board dialout devices (DDI_NT_SERIAL_MB_DO) consists of the lowercase character port name, concatenated with ,cu. For example, the minor name for the first dialout port on the on-board serial device is a,cu.

To prevent disks from attempting to automatically generate links for a device, drivers must specify a private node type and refrain from using one of the above node types when calling `ddi_create_minor_node(9F)`.

Options The following options are supported:

- `r rootdir` Causes ports to presume that the `/dev/term`, `/dev/cua`, and `/devices` directories are found under `rootdir`, not directly under `/`. If this argument is specified, `sacadm(1M)` is not invoked, since it would update terminal administration files under `/etc` without regard to the `rootdir`.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Creating the Serial and Dialout Minor Device Nodes

The following example creates the serial and dialout minor device nodes from the `xkserial` driver's `attach(9E)` function:

```
/*
 * Create the minor number by combining the instance number
 * with the port number.
 */ #define XKNUMPORTS      8
#define XKMINORNUM(i, p)  ((i) << 4 | (p))
#define XKMINORNUM_DO(i, p) ((i) << 4 | (p) | 0x80)
int
xkserialattach(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_attach_cmd_t cmd)
{
    int instance, portnum;
    char name[8];
    /* other stuff in attach... */
    instance = ddi_get_instance(dip);
    for (portnum = 0; portnum < XKNUMPORTS; portnum++) {
        /*
         * create the serial port device
         */
        sprintf(name, "%d", portnum);
        ddi_create_minor_node(dip, name, S_IFCHR,
            XKMINORNUM(instance, portnum), DDI_NT_SERIAL, 0);

        /*
         * create the dialout device
         */
        sprintf(name, "%d,cu", portnum);
        ddi_create_minor_node(dip, name, S_IFCHR,
            XKMINORNUM_DO(instance, portnum), DDI_NT_SERIAL_DO, 0);
    }
}
```

EXAMPLE 2 Installing the xkserial Port Driver on a Sun Fire 4800

The following example installs the xkserial port driver on a Sun Fire 4800 (with the driver controlling the fictional XKSerial 8 port serial board), with these special files in /devices:

```
# ls -l /devices/ssm@0,0/pci@18,700000/pci@1/xkserial@f,800000/
crw-r----- 1 root sys  32,  16 Aug 29 00:02 xkserial@2000:0
crw-r----- 1 root sys  32, 144 Aug 29 00:02 xkserial@2000:0,cu
crw-r----- 1 root sys  32,  17 Aug 29 00:02 xkserial@2000:1
crw-r----- 1 root sys  32, 145 Aug 29 00:02 xkserial@2000:1,cu
crw-r----- 1 root sys  32,  18 Aug 29 00:02 xkserial@2000:2
crw-r----- 1 root sys  32, 146 Aug 29 00:02 xkserial@2000:2,cu
crw-r----- 1 root sys  32,  19 Aug 29 00:02 xkserial@2000:3
crw-r----- 1 root sys  32, 147 Aug 29 00:02 xkserial@2000:3,cu
crw-r----- 1 root sys  32,  20 Aug 29 00:02 xkserial@2000:4
crw-r----- 1 root sys  32, 148 Aug 29 00:02 xkserial@2000:4,cu
crw-r----- 1 root sys  32,  21 Aug 29 00:02 xkserial@2000:5
crw-r----- 1 root sys  32, 149 Aug 29 00:02 xkserial@2000:5,cu
crw-r----- 1 root sys  32,  22 Aug 29 00:02 xkserial@2000:6
crw-r----- 1 root sys  32, 150 Aug 29 00:02 xkserial@2000:6,cu
crw-r----- 1 root sys  32,  23 Aug 29 00:02 xkserial@2000:7
crw-r----- 1 root sys  32, 151 Aug 29 00:02 xkserial@2000:7,cu
```

/dev/term contain symbolic links to the serial port device nodes in /devices

```
# ls -l /dev/term
/dev/term/0 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkserial@2000:0
/dev/term/1 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkserial@2000:1
/dev/term/2 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkserial@2000:2
/dev/term/3 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkserial@2000:3
/dev/term/4 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkserial@2000:4
/dev/term/5 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkserial@2000:5
/dev/term/6 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkserial@2000:6
/dev/term/7 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkserial@2000:7
```

and /dev/cua contain symbolic links to the dialout port device nodes in /devices

```
# ls -l /dev/cua
/dev/cua/0 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkserial@2000:0,cu
/dev/cua/1 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkserial@2000:1,cu
/dev/cua/2 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkserial@2000:2,cu
/dev/cua/3 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkserial@2000:3,cu
/dev/cua/4 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkserial@2000:4,cu
/dev/cua/5 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkserial@2000:5,cu
/dev/cua/6 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkserial@2000:6,cu
/dev/cua/7 -> ../../devices/[...]/xkserial@2000:7,cu
```

Files /dev/term/*n* Logical serial port devices
/dev/cua/*n* Logical dialout port devices
/etc/inittab
/etc/saf/*

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [add_drv\(1M\)](#), [devfsadm\(1M\)](#), [drvconfig\(1M\)](#), [pmadm\(1M\)](#), [sacadm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [devfs\(7FS\)](#), [attach\(9E\)](#), [ddi_create_minor_node\(9F\)](#)

Writing Device Drivers

Name powerd – power manager daemon

Synopsis /usr/lib/power/powerd [-n]

Description The powerd daemon is started by [pmconfig\(1M\)](#) to monitor system activity and perform an automatic shutdown using the suspend-resume feature. When the system is suspended, complete current state is saved on the disk before power is removed. On reboot, the system automatically starts a resume operation and the system is restored to the same state it was in immediately prior to suspend.

Immediately prior to system shutdown, the daemon notifies [syslogd\(1M\)](#) of the shutdown, which broadcasts a notification.

Options The following option is supported:

-n No broadcast mode. The daemon silently shuts down the system without notifying [syslogd\(1M\)](#).

Files /etc/power.conf Power Management configuration information file

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWpmu
Interface Stability	Unstable

See Also [pmconfig\(1M\)](#), [dtpower\(1M\)](#), [syslogd\(1M\)](#), [power.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [cpr\(7\)](#), [pm\(7D\)](#)

Using Power Management

Name powertop – report and analyze events that affect power management

Synopsis powertop [-c *processor_id*] [-d *count*] [-t *interval*] [-v] [-h]

Description PowerTOP is an observability tool that shows how effectively the system is taking advantage of the CPU's power management features. By running the tool on an otherwise idle system, the user can see for how long the CPU is running at different power states. Ideally, an unutilized (idle) system spends 100% of its time running at the lowest power state, but because of background user and kernel activity (random software periodically waking to poll status), idle systems can consume more power than they should.

The tool analyzes system activity periodically and displays a summary of how long the processor is executing at each supported power state. It also displays the top activities responsible for causing the CPU to wake up and use more energy. This report allows the user to identify and diagnose problematic areas of the system and optimize its power efficiency.

PowerTOP averages the amount of activity that is preventing the CPU from entering a lower power state and presents it on the “Wakeup-from-idle per second” field. This value represents the total number of wake-ups divided by the current interval. Notice that not all events are displayed on the screen at all times.

During execution, a user can force a refresh of the analysis by pressing the R key. The interval time is restored to the default or to a specified value. To quit the application, the user must press the Q key.

If you are running as root (superuser) or in the Primary Administrator role, the tool makes suggestions as how the system can be improved from a power management perspective.

PowerTOP allows you to freeze each of its three subwindows, enabling you to better analyze each subwindow's contents. When you have three different DTrace scripts running at the same time, freezing subwindows lowers CPU consumption. This feature is activated by pressing the i, f, or e key while the tool running. Pressing one of these keys freezes the idle, frequency, or event report, respectively. Pressing it once more, unfreezes it. This feature is most useful when invoked while the application being analyzed is running.

PowerTOP runs on [xVM\(5\)](#) domains. However, the report for idle state transitions might or might not be accurate as the physical CPU can be shared by different virtual CPUs. Both wakeup count and event report displays information regarding the current virtualized environment.

Options The following options are supported:

- c [*processor_id*]
Specifies which CPU the tool should observe.
- d [*count*]
Dumps the results of *count* analysis of system activity to the screen.
- h
Displays the command's usage.

-t [*interval*]

Specifies the interval, in seconds, at which the tool analyzes the system. The possible values are in the range of 1 through 30; the default is 5 seconds.

-v

Switches to verbose mode, including noting firings of the kernel cyclic subsystem in the event report.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Setting the Interval

The following command sets the interval to two seconds.

```
% powertop -t 2
```

EXAMPLE 2 Analyzing and Dumping System Activity

The following command analyzes and dumps system activity to the standard output four times.

```
% powertop -d 4
```

EXAMPLE 3 Reporting Cyclic Subsystem Activity

The following command reports cyclic subsystem activity.

```
% powertop -v
```

EXAMPLE 4 Analyzing Activity on a Specific Processor

The following command runs PowerTOP and only displays data for CPU 3:

```
% powertop -c 3
```

Exit Status 0

Successful operation.

1

An error occurred.

2

Incorrect usage.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Architecture	x86, SPARC
Availability	SUNWpowertop

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Interface Stability	Volatile

See Also [kstat\(1M\)](#), [pmconfig\(1M\)](#), [powerd\(1M\)](#), [psrinfo\(1M\)](#), [uadmin\(2\)](#), [libdevinfo\(3LIB\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [xVM\(5\)](#), [cpr\(7\)](#), [pm\(7D\)](#), [pm-components\(9P\)](#), [removable-media\(9P\)](#)

Among non-SunOS man pages, [xscreensaver\(1\)](#) and [dtpower\(1M\)](#).

Usage You must have DTrace privileges to run PowerTOP and root (superuser) privileges or assume the Primary Administrator role for the tool to suggest improvements to the system.

Name ppdmgr – utility for managing PPD files

Synopsis ppdmgr -a *ppd_filename_path* [-L *label*] [-R *ppd_repository_name*] [-w]
 ppdmgr -r [-L *label*] [-R *ppd_repository_name*]
 ppdmgr -u [-L *label*] [-R *ppd_repository_name*]

Description The PPD File Manager adds PPD files to the print system's PPD file repositories. When changes in the PPD file repositories are made by the utility, they are reflected in the Solaris Print Manager (see [printmgr\(1M\)](#)) GUI printer driver field when adding or modifying local attached or network attached printers.

Multiple PPD file repositories may be available. PPD files that are supplied with the system are available in the “system” repository. PPD files that are supplied by third party vendors may be available in the “vendor” repository. PPD files that are supplied by system administrators may be available in the “admin” repository, and PPD files that are added using this utility are available in the “user” repository. When this utility is used to update or rebuild printer information reflected in the [printmgr\(1M\)](#), the special reserved repository name “all” can be used to specify all of the available PPD file repositories.

PPD files are grouped under a user-provided “label” within the print system's PPD file repository to allow easier selection of a printer driver through the [printmgr](#) GUI. The special reserved label name “all” can be used to specify all of the available labels in a PPD file repository. The results are undefined if a label name contains characters that are not in the portable filename character set or if a label name starts with a hyphen (-). A label name may not contain a semi-colon (:).

Options The following subcommand are supported:

-a *ppd_file_path*

Adds a copy of *ppd_file_path* to the system under the specified label in the specified repository, where *ppd_file_path* is the full path and file name to the PPD file. The utility accepts a valid PPD file with either a .ppd or .ppd.gz (zipped) extension.

-L *label*

Specifies a label to group PPD files under. When specified with the -a option, the default label is “user”. When specified with the -r or -u option, the default label is “all”. The following are reserved labels:

 caches may never be specified

 ppdcache may never be specified

 manufaliases may never be specified

 all applies the specified action to all labels in a repository, and may only be specified with the -r or -u option.

 SUNW* anything starting with SUNW is reserved and should not be specified with the -a option.

-R repository_name

Specifies the name of a PPD file repository representing one of the PPD file installation locations. Possible repository names include: “user”, “admin”, “vendor”, “system”, and “all”.

The repository name “all” signifies all of the possible repository names. The default repository name is “user”. Only the “user” or “admin” repository may be specified with the -a option.

-r

Rebuilds the cache information for the specified label in the specified repository.

-u

Updates the cache information for the specified label in the specified repository.

-w

Write the full path of the added PPD file. This option is only valid with the -a option. Otherwise, this option is ignored.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Adding a copy of a PPD file to the repository

The following commands add a copy of a PPD file to the “user” repository under the “user” label:

```
# ppdmgr -a /net/somesystem/ppdfiles/ppdfile.ppd
```

or

```
# ppdmgr -a /net/somesystem/ppdfiles/ppdfile.ppd -L user
```

The following command adds a copy of a PPD file to the “user” repository under the “Photo” label and write the full path of the added copy to standard output:

```
# ppdmgr -a /net/somesystem/ppdfiles/ppdfile.ppd -L "Photo" -w
```

EXAMPLE 2 Updating the cache for the PPD files

The following commands update the cache for the PPD files under the “all” labels in the “user” repository:

```
# ppdmgr -u
```

or

```
# ppdmgr -u -R user -L all
```

The following command updates the cache for the PPD files under the “photo” label in the “user” repository:

```
# ppdmgr -u -R user -L Photo
```

EXAMPLE 3 Rebuilding the cache for the PPD files

The following command rebuilds the cache for the PPD files under the “Photo” label in the “user” repository:

```
# ppdmgr -r -R user -L Photo
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWpsr
Interface Stability	Committed

See Also [printmgr\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name pppd – point to point protocol daemon

Synopsis pppd [*tty_name*] [*speed*] [*options*]

Description The point-to-point protocol (PPP) provides a method for transmitting datagrams over serial point-to-point links. PPP is composed of three components: a facility for encapsulating datagrams over serial links, an extensible link control protocol (LCP), and a family of network control protocols (NCP) for establishing and configuring different network-layer protocols.

The encapsulation scheme is provided by driver code in the kernel. pppd provides the basic LCP authentication support and several NCPs for establishing and configuring the Internet Protocol (referred to as the IP Control Protocol or “IPCP”) and IPv6 (IPV6CP).

Options The following sections discuss the pppd options:

Options Files Options are taken from files and the command line. pppd reads options from the files `/etc/ppp/options`, `$HOME/.ppprc` and `/etc/ppp/options.ttyname` (in that order) before processing the options on the command line. (Command-line options are scanned for the terminal name before the `options.ttyname` file is read.) To form the name of the `options.ttyname` file, the initial `/dev/` is removed from the terminal name, and any remaining forward slash characters (`/`) are replaced with dots. For example, with serial device `/dev/cua/a`, option file `/etc/ppp/options.cua.a` is read.

An options file is parsed into a series of words that are delimited by whitespace. Whitespace can be included in a word by enclosing the word in double-quotes (`"`). A backslash (`\`) quotes the succeeding character. A hash (`#`) starts a comment, which continues until the end of the line. There is no restriction on using the `file` or `call` options within an options file.

Frequently Used Options	<code><tty_name></code>	Communicate over the named device. The string <code>/dev/</code> is prepended if necessary. If no device name is given, or if the name of the terminal connected to the standard input is given, pppd uses that terminal and does not fork to put itself in the background. A value for this option from a privileged source cannot be overridden by a non-privileged user.
	<code><speed></code>	Set the baud rate to <code><speed></code> (a decimal number). The default is to leave the baud rate unchanged. This option is normally needed for dial-out only.
	<code>asynmap <map></code>	Set the async character map to <code><map></code> . The map describes which control characters cannot be successfully received over the serial line. pppd asks the peer to send these characters as a 2-byte escape sequence. The argument is a 32 bit hex number, with each bit representing a character to escape. Bit 0 (00000001) represents the character 0x00; bit 31 (80000000) represents the character 0x1f or <code>^_</code> . If multiple <code>asynmap</code> options are given, the values are ORed together. If no <code>asynmap</code> option is given, pppd attempts to negotiate a value of 0. If the

	peer agrees, this disables escaping of the standard control characters. Use the <code>default-asyncmap</code> option to disable negotiation and escape all control characters.
<code>auth</code>	Require the peer to authenticate itself before allowing network packets to be sent or received. This option is the default if the system has a default route. If the <code>auth</code> or the <code>noauth</code> option is not specified, <code>pppd</code> allows the peer to use only those IP addresses to which the system does not already have a route.
<code>call name</code>	Read options from the file <code>/etc/ppp/peers/name</code> . This file may contain privileged options, including <code>noauth</code> , even if <code>pppd</code> is not being run by root. The <code>name</code> string may not begin with a slash (“/”) or include consecutive periods (“.”) as a pathname component.
<code>callback number</code>	Request a callback to the given telephone number using Microsoft CBCP.
<code>connect script</code>	Use the executable or shell command specified by <code>script</code> to set up the serial line. This script would typically use the chat(1M) program to dial the modem and start the remote PPP session. A value for this option originating from a privileged source cannot be overridden by a non-privileged user.
<code>crtcts</code>	Use hardware flow control, that is, RTS/CTS, to control the flow of data on the serial port. If the <code>crtcts</code> , <code>nocrtcts</code> , <code>cdtrcts</code> or <code>nocdrcts</code> option is not provided, the hardware flow control setting for the serial port is left unchanged. Some serial ports lack a true RTS output and use this mode to implement unidirectional flow control. The serial port suspends transmission when requested by the modem by means of CTS but cannot request the modem to stop sending to the computer. This mode allows the use of DTR as a modem control line.
<code>default route</code>	Add a default route to the system routing tables when IPCP negotiation successfully completes, using the peer as the gateway. This entry is removed when the PPP connection is broken. This option is privileged if the <code>ndefault route</code> option is specified.
<code>disconnect script</code>	Run the executable or shell command specified by <code>script</code> after <code>pppd</code> terminates the link. Typically, this script is used to command the modem to hang up if hardware modem control signals are not available. <code>disconnect</code> is not run if the modem has already hung up. A value for this option originating from a privileged source cannot be overridden by a non-privileged user.
<code>escape xx,yy,...</code>	Specifies that certain characters be escaped on transmission regardless of whether the peer requests them to be escaped with its <code>async control</code>

character map. The characters to be escaped are specified as a list of hex numbers separated by commas. Note that almost any character can be specified for the escape option, unlike the `asynmap` option which allows only control characters to be specified. Characters that cannot be escaped are those containing hex values 0x20 through 0x3f and 0x5e.

<code>file name</code>	Read options from file <i>name</i> . If this option is used on the command line or in <code>\$HOME/.ppprc</code> , the file must be readable by the user invoking <code>pppd</code> . See Options Files for a list of files that <code>pppd</code> always reads, regardless of the use of this option.
<code>init script</code>	Run the executable or shell command specified by <i>script</i> to initialize the serial line. This script would typically use the chat(1M) program to configure the modem to enable auto-answer. A value for this option from a privileged source cannot be overridden by a non-privileged user.
<code>lock</code>	Directs <code>pppd</code> to create a UUCP-style lock file for the serial device to ensure exclusive access to the device.
<code>mru n</code>	Set the Maximum Receive Unit (MRU) value to <i>n</i> . <code>pppd</code> asks the peer to send packets of no more than <i>n</i> bytes. Minimum MRU value is 128. Default MRU value is 1500. A value of 296 is recommended for slow links (40 bytes for TCP/IP header + 256 bytes of data). For IPv6, MRU must be at least 1280.
<code>mtu n</code>	Set the Maximum Transmit Unit (MTU) value to <i>n</i> . Unless the peer requests a smaller value via MRU negotiation, <code>pppd</code> requests the kernel networking code to send data packets of no more than <i>n</i> bytes through the PPP network interface. For IPv6, MTU must be at least 1280.
<code>passive</code>	Enables the "passive" option in the LCP. With this option, <code>pppd</code> attempts to initiate a connection; if no reply is received from the peer, <code>pppd</code> waits passively for a valid LCP packet instead of exiting, as it would without this option.

Options `<local_IP_address>:<remote_IP_address>`

Set the local and/or remote interface IP addresses. Either one may be omitted, but the colon is required. The IP addresses are specified with a host name or in decimal dot notation, for example: `:10.1.2.3`. The default local address is the first IP address of the system unless the `noipdefault` option is provided. The remote address is obtained from the peer if not specified in any option. Thus, in simple cases, this option is not required. If a local and/or remote IP address is specified with this option, `pppd` will not accept a different value from the peer in the IPCP negotiation unless the `ipcp-accept-local` and/or `ipcp-accept-remote` options are given, respectively.

allow-fcs *fcs-type*

Set allowable FCS type(s) for data sent to the peer. The *fcs-type* is a comma-separated list of "crc16", "crc32", "null", or integers. By default, all known types are allowed. If this option is specified and the peer requests a type not listed, a LCP Configure-Nak is sent to request only the listed types.

allow-ip *address(es)*

Allow peers to use the given IP address or subnet without authenticating themselves. The parameter is parsed in the same manner as each element of the list of allowed IP addresses is parsed in the secrets files. See the [Authentication](#) section for more details.

bsdcomp *nr,nt*

Request that the peer compress packets that it sends using the BSD-Compress scheme, with a maximum code size of *nr* bits, and agree to compress packets sent to the peer with a maximum code size of *nt* bits. If *nt* is not specified, it defaults to the value given for *nr*. Values in the range 9 to 15 may be used for *nr* and *nt*; larger values provide better compression but consume more kernel memory for compression dictionaries. Alternatively, a value of 0 for *nr* or *nt* disables compression in the corresponding direction. Use `nobsdcomp` or `bsdcomp 0` to disable BSD-Compress compression entirely. If this option is read from a privileged source, a nonprivileged user may not specify a code size larger than the value from the privileged source.

cdtrcts

Use a non-standard hardware flow control such as DTR/CTS to control the flow of data on the serial port. If the `crtcts`, `nocrtcts`, `cdtrcts` or `nocdtrcts` option is not specified, the hardware flow control setting for the serial port is left unchanged. Some serial ports lack a true RTS output. Such serial ports use this mode to implement true bi-directional flow control. Note that this flow control mode does not permit using DTR as a modem control line.

chap-interval *n*

If this option is given, pppd will rechallenge the peer every *n* seconds.

chap-max-challenge *n*

Set the maximum number of CHAP challenge transmissions to *n* (default 10).

chap-restart *n*

Set the CHAP restart interval (retransmission timeout for challenges) to *n* seconds. The default is 3.

connect-delay *n*

Wait for up to *n* milliseconds after the connect script finishes for a valid PPP packet from the peer. When the wait period elapses or when a valid PPP packet is received from the peer, pppd begins negotiation by sending its first LCP packet. The default value is 1000 (1 second). A wait period applies only if the `connect` or `pty` option is used.

datarate *n*

Set maximum data rate to *n* (in bytes per second) when using the `pty`, `notty`, `record`, or `socket` options.

debug

Enables connection debugging facilities. If this option is given, pppd logs the contents of all control packets sent or received in a readable form. The packets are logged through syslog with facility daemon and level debug. This information can be directed to a file by configuring `/etc/syslog.conf` appropriately.

default-asynmap

Disable asynmap negotiation, forcing all control characters to be escaped for both the transmit and the receive direction.

default-fcs

Disable FCS Alternatives negotiation entirely. By default, no FCS Alternatives option is sent to the peer, but the option is accepted. If this option is specified by the peer, then LCP Configure-Reject is sent.

default-mru

Disable MRU [Maximum Receive Unit] negotiation. With this option, pppd uses the default MRU value of 1500 bytes for the transmit and receive directions.

deflate *nr,nt,e*

Request that the peer compress packets that it sends, using the deflate scheme, with a maximum window size of 2^{nr} bytes, and agree to compress packets sent to the peer with a maximum window size of 2^{nt} bytes and effort level of e (1 to 9). If nt is not specified, it defaults to the value given for nr . If e is not specified, it defaults to 6. Values in the range 9 to 15 may be used for nr and nt ; larger values provide better compression but consume more kernel memory for compression dictionaries. (Value 8 is not permitted due to a zlib bug.) Alternatively, a value of 0 for nr or nt disables compression in the corresponding direction. Use `nodelate` or `deflate 0` to disable deflate compression entirely. (Note: pppd requests deflate compression in preference to BSD-Compress if the peer can do either.) If this option is read from a privileged source, a nonprivileged user may not specify a code size larger than the value from the privileged source.

demand

Initiate the link only on demand, that is, when data traffic is present. With this option, the remote IP address must be specified by the user on the command line or in an options file. pppd initially configures and enables the interface for IP traffic without connecting to the peer. When traffic is available, pppd connects to the peer and performs negotiation, authentication and other actions. When completed, pppd passes data packets across the link. The demand option implies the persist option. If this behavior is not desired, use the nopersist option after the demand option. The idle and holdoff options can be used in conjunction with the demand option.

domain *d*

Append the domain name d to the local host name for authentication purposes. For example, if `gethostname()` returns the name `porsche`, but the fully qualified domain name is `porsche.Quotron.COM`, you could specify `domain Quotron.COM`. With this configuration, pppd uses the name `porsche.Quotron.COM` for accessing secrets in the secrets file and as the default name when authenticating to the peer. This option is privileged.

endpoint *endpoint-value*

Set the endpoint discriminator (normally used for RFC 1990 Multilink PPP operation).

The *endpoint-value* consists of a class identifier and a class-dependent value. The class identifier is one of "null," "local," "IP," "MAC," "magic," "phone," or a decimal integer. If present, the class-dependent value is separated from the identifier by a colon (":") or period ("."). This value may be a standard dotted-decimal IP address for class "IP," an optionally colon-or-dot separated hex Ethernet address for class "MAC" (must have 6 numbers), or an arbitrary string of bytes specified in hex with optional colon or dot separators between bytes. Although this option is available, this implementation does not support multilink.

fcs *fcs-type*

Set FCS type(s) desired for data sent by the peer. The *fcs-type* is a comma-separated list of `crc16`, `crc32`, `null`, or integers. By default, an FCS Alternatives option is not specified, and the medium-dependent FCS type is used. If this option is specified and the peer sends an LCP Configure-Nak, only the listed types are used. If none are in common, the FCS Alternatives option is omitted from the next LCP Configure-Request to drop back to the default.

hide-password

When logging the contents of PAP packets, this option causes pppd to exclude the password string from the log. This is the default.

holdoff *n*

Specifies how many seconds to wait before re-initiating the link after it terminates. This option is effective only if the `persist` or `demand` option is used. The holdoff period is not applied if the link is terminated because it was idle.

ident *string*

Set the LCP Identification string. The default value is a version string similar to that displayed by the `--version` option.

idle *n*

Specifies that pppd must disconnect if the link is idle for *n* seconds. The link is idle when no data packets (i.e. IP packets) are being sent or received. Do not use this option with the `persist` option but without the `demand` option.

ipcp-accept-local

With this option, pppd accepts the peer's idea of the local IP address, even if the local IP address is specified in an option.

ipcp-accept-remote

With this option, pppd accepts the peer's idea of its remote IP address, even if the remote IP address is specified in an option.

ipcp-max-configure *n*

Set the maximum number of IPCP Configure-Request transmissions to *n* (default 10).

- `ipcp-max-failure n`
Set the maximum number of IPCP Configure-NAKs sent before sending Configure-Rejects instead to *n* (default 10).
- `ipcp-max-terminate n`
Set the maximum number of IPCP terminate-request transmissions to *n* (default 3).
- `ipcp-restart n`
Set the IPCP restart interval (retransmission timeout) to *n* seconds (default 3).
- `ipparam string`
Provides an extra parameter to the ip-up and ip-down scripts. When this option is given, the *string* supplied is given as the sixth parameter to those scripts. See the [Scripts](#) section.
- `ipv6 <local_interface_identifier>, <remote_interface_identifier>`
Set the local and/or remote 64-bit interface identifier. Either one may be omitted. The identifier must be specified in standard ASCII notation of IPv6 addresses (for example: `::dead:beef`). If the `ipv6cp-use-ipaddr` option is given, the local and remote identifiers are derived from the respective IPv4 addresses (see above). The `ipv6cp-use-persistent` option can be used instead of the `ipv6 <local>, <remote>` option.
- `ipv6cp-accept-local`
Accept peer's interface identifier for the local link identifier.
- `ipv6cp-max-configure n`
Set the maximum number of IPv6CP Configure-Request transmissions to *n* (default 10).
- `ipv6cp-max-failure n`
Set the maximum number of IPv6CP Configure-NAKs sent before sending Configure-Rejects instead to *n* (default 10).
- `ipv6cp-max-terminate n`
Set the maximum number of IPv6CP terminate-request transmissions to *n* (default 3).
- `ipv6cp-restart n`
Set the IPv6CP restart interval (retransmission timeout) to *n* seconds (default 3).
- `ipv6cp-use-ipaddr`
If either the local or remote IPv6 address is unspecified, use the corresponding configured IPv4 address as a default interface identifier. (This option uses the configured addresses, not the negotiated addresses. Do not use it with `ipcp-accept-local` if the local IPv6 identifier is unspecified or with `ipcp-accept-remote` if the remote IPv6 identifier is unspecified.)
- `ipv6cp-use-persistent`
Use uniquely-available persistent value for link local address.
- `kdebug n`
Enable debugging code in the kernel-level PPP driver. Argument *n* is the sum of the following values: 1 to enable general debug messages, 2 to request that contents of received

packets be printed, and 4 to request contents of transmitted packets be printed. Messages printed by the kernel are logged by `syslogd(1M)` to a file directed in the `/etc/syslog.conf` configuration file. Do not use the `kdebug` option to debug failed links. Use the `debug` option instead.

`lcp-echo-failure` *n*

If this option is given, `pppd` presumes the peer to be dead if *n* LCP Echo-Requests are sent without receiving a valid LCP Echo-Reply. If this happens, `pppd` terminates the connection. This option requires a non-zero value for the `lcp-echo-interval` parameter. This option enables `pppd` to terminate after the physical connection is broken (for example, if the modem has hung up) in situations where no hardware modem control lines are available.

`lcp-echo-interval` *n*

If this option is given, `pppd` sends an LCP Echo-Request frame to the peer every *n* seconds. Normally the peer responds to the Echo-Request by sending an Echo-Reply. This option can be used with the `lcp-echo-failure` option to detect that the peer is no longer connected.

`lcp-max-configure` *n*

Set the maximum number of LCP Configure-Request transmissions to *n* (default 10).

`lcp-max-failure` *n*

Set the maximum number of LCP Configure-NAKs sent before starting to send Configure-Rejects instead to *n* (default 10).

`lcp-max-terminate` *n*

Set the maximum number of LCP Terminate-Request transmissions to *n* (default 3).

`lcp-restart` *n*

Set the LCP restart interval (retransmission timeout) to *n* seconds (default 3).

`linkname` *name*

Sets the logical name of the link to *name*. `pppd` creates a file named `ppp-name.pid` in `/var/run` containing its process ID. This is useful in determining which instance of `pppd` is responsible for the link to a given peer system. This is a privileged option.

`local`

Do not use modem control lines. With this option, `pppd` ignores the state of the CD (Carrier Detect) signal from the modem and does not change the state of the DTR (Data Terminal Ready) signal.

`logfd` *n*

Send log messages to file descriptor *n*. `pppd` sends log messages to (at most) one file or file descriptor (as well as sending the log messages to `syslog`), so this option and the `logfile` option are mutually exclusive. By default `pppd` sends log messages to `stdout` (file descriptor 1) unless the serial port is open on `stdout`.

`logfile` *filename*

Append log messages to the file *filename* (and send the log messages to `syslog`). The file is opened in append mode with the privileges of the user who invoked `pppd`.

login

Use the system password database for authenticating the peer using PAP, and record the user in the system `wtmp` file. Note that the peer must have an entry in the `/etc/ppp/pap-secrets` file and the system password database to be allowed access.

maxconnect *n*

Terminate the connection after it has been available for network traffic for *n* seconds (that is, *n* seconds after the first network control protocol starts). An LCP Time-Remaining message is sent when the first NCP starts, and again when 5, 2, and 0.5 minutes are remaining.

maxfail *n*

Terminate after *n* consecutive failed connection attempts. A value of 0 means no limit. The default value is 10.

modem

Use the modem control lines. This option is the default. With this option, `pppd` waits for the CD (Carrier Detect) signal from the modem to be asserted when opening the serial device (unless a connect script is specified), and drops the DTR (Data Terminal Ready) signal briefly when the connection is terminated and before executing the connect script.

ms-dns <*addr*>

If `pppd` is acting as a server for Microsoft Windows clients, this option allows `pppd` to supply one or two DNS (Domain Name Server) addresses to the clients. The first instance of this option specifies the primary DNS address; the second instance (if given) specifies the secondary DNS address. If the first instance specifies a name that resolves to multiple IP addresses, then the first two addresses are used. (This option is present in some older versions of `pppd` under the name `dns-addr`.)

ms-lanman

If `pppd` connects as a client to a Microsoft server and uses MS-CHAPv1 for authentication, this option selects the LAN Manager password style instead of Microsoft NT.

ms-wins <*addr*>

If `pppd` acts as a server for Microsoft Windows or Samba clients, this option allows `pppd` to supply one or two WINS (Windows Internet Name Services) server addresses to the clients. The first instance of this option specifies the primary WINS address; the second instance (if given) specifies the secondary WINS address. As with `ms-dns`, if the name specified resolves to multiple IP addresses, then the first two will be taken as primary and secondary.

name *name*

Set the name of the local system for authentication purposes to *name*. This is a privileged option. With this option, `pppd` uses lines in the secrets files that have *name* as the second field to look for a secret to use in authenticating the peer. In addition, unless overridden with the user option, *name* is used as the name to send to the peer when authenticating the local system. (Note that `pppd` does not append the domain name to *name*.)

no-accm-test

Disable use of `asynctest` (ACCM) checking using LCP Echo-Request messages. If the `lcp-echo-failure` is used on an asynchronous line, `pppd` includes all control characters in the first *n* LCP Echo-Request messages. If the `asynctest` is set incorrectly, the link drops rather than continue operation with random failures. This option disables that feature.

noaccomp

Disable HDLC Address/Control compression in both directions (send and receive).

noauth

Do not require the peer to authenticate itself. This option is privileged.

nobsdcomp

Disables BSD-Compress compression; `pppd` will not request or agree to compress packets using the BSD-Compress scheme. This option is not necessary if `noccp` is specified.

noccp

Disable CCP (Compression Control Protocol) negotiation. This option should only be required if the peer has bugs or becomes confused by requests from `pppd` for CCP negotiation. If CCP is disabled, then BSD and deflate compression do not need to be separately disabled.

nocrtscts

Disable hardware flow control (i.e. RTS/CTS) on the serial port. If the `crtscts`, `nocrtscts`, `cdtrcts` or `nocdtrcts` options are not given, the hardware flow control setting for the serial port is left unchanged.

nocdtrcts

This option is a synonym for `nocrtscts`. Either option will disable both forms of hardware flow control.

nodefaultroute

Disable the `defaultroute` option. You can prevent non-root users from creating default routes with `pppd` by placing this option in the `/etc/ppp/options` file.

nodeflate

Disables deflate compression; `pppd` will not request or agree to compress packets using the deflate scheme. This option is not necessary if `noccp` is specified.

nodeflatedraft

Do not use Internet Draft (incorrectly assigned) algorithm number for deflate compression. This option is not necessary if `noccp` is specified.

nodetach

Do not detach from the controlling terminal. Without this option, `pppd` forks to become a background process if a serial device other than the terminal on the standard input is specified.

noendpoint

Do not send or accept the Multilink Endpoint Discriminator option.

noident

Disable use of LCP Identification. LCP Identification messages will not be sent to the peer, but received messages will be logged. (Specify this option twice to completely disable LCP Identification. In this case, pppd sends LCP Code-Reject in response to received LCP Identification messages.)

noip

Disable IPCP negotiation and IP communication. Use this option only if the peer has bugs or becomes confused by requests from pppd for IPCP negotiation.

noipv6

Disable IPv6CP negotiation and IPv6 communication. IPv6 is not enabled by default.

noipdefault

Disables the default behavior when no local IP address is specified, which is to determine (if possible) the local IP address from the hostname. With this option, the peer must supply the local IP address during IPCP negotiation (unless it specified explicitly on the command line or in an options file).

nolog

Do not send log messages to a file or file descriptor. This option cancels the `logfd` and `logfile` options. `nologfd` acts as an alias for this option.

nomagic

Disable magic number negotiation. With this option, pppd cannot detect a looped-back line. Use this option only if the peer has bugs. Do not use this option to work around the “Serial line is looped back” error message.

nopam

This privileged option disables use of pluggable authentication modules. If this option is specified, pppd reverts to standard authentication mechanisms. The default is not to use PAM.

nopcomp

Disable protocol field compression negotiation in the receive and the transmit direction.

nopersist

Exit once a connection has been made and terminated. This is the default unless the `persist` or `demand` option is specified.

noplink

Cause pppd to use `I_LINK` instead of `I_PLINK`. This is the default. When `I_LINK` is used, the system cleans up terminated interfaces (even when `SIGKILL` is used) but does not allow [ifconfig\(1M\)](#) to unplumb PPP streams or insert or remove modules dynamically. Use the `plink` option if [ifconfig\(1M\)](#) `modinsert`, `modremove` or `unplumb` support is needed.

nopredictor1

Do not accept or agree to Predictor-1 compression. (This option is accepted for compatibility. The implementation does not support Predictor-1 compression.)

noproxyarp

Disable the proxyarp option. If you want to prevent users from creating proxy ARP entries with pppd, place this option in the `/etc/ppp/options` file.

notty

Normally, pppd requires a terminal device. With this option, pppd allocates itself a pseudo-tty master/slave pair and uses the slave as its terminal device. pppd creates a child process to act as a character shunt to transfer characters between the pseudo-tty master and its standard input and output. Thus, pppd transmits characters on its standard output and receives characters on its standard input even if they are not terminal devices. This option increases the latency and CPU overhead of transferring data over the ppp interface as all of the characters sent and received must flow through the character shunt process. An explicit device name may not be given if this option is used.

novj

Disable Van Jacobson style TCP/IP header compression in both the transmit and the receive direction.

novjccomp

Disable the connection-ID compression option in Van Jacobson style TCP/IP header compression. With this option, pppd does not omit the connection-ID byte from Van Jacobson compressed TCP/IP headers, nor does it ask the peer to do so. This option is unnecessary if `novj` is specified.

pam

This privileged option enables use of PAM. If this is specified, pppd uses the `pam(3PAM)` framework for user authentication with a service name of "ppp" if the `login` option and PAP authentication are used. The default is not to use PAM.

papcrypt

Indicates that pppd should not accept a password which, before encryption, is identical to the secret from the `/etc/ppp/pap-secrets` file. Use this option if the secrets in the `pap-secrets` file are in `crypt(3C)` format.

pap-max-authreq *n*

Set the maximum number of PAP authenticate-request transmissions to *n* (default 10).

pap-restart *n*

Set the PAP restart interval (retransmission timeout) to *n* seconds (default 3).

pap-timeout *n*

Set the maximum time that pppd waits for the peer to authenticate itself with PAP to *n* seconds (0= no limit). The default is 30 seconds.

password *string*

Password string for authentication to the peer.

persist

Do not exit after a connection is terminated; instead try to reopen the connection.

plink

Cause pppd to use I_PLINK instead of I_LINK. The default is to use I_LINK, which cleans up terminated interface (even if SIGKILL is used), but does not allow **ifconfig(1M)** to unplumb PPP streams or insert or remove modules dynamically. Use this option if **ifconfig(1M)** modinsert/modremove/unplumb support is needed. See also the **plumbed** option.

plugin filename

Load the shared library object file *filename* as a plugin. This is a privileged option. Unless the filename specifies an explicit path, */etc/ppp/plugins* and */usr/lib/inet/ppp* will be searched for the object to load in that order.

plumbed

This option indicates that pppd should find a plumbed interface and use that for the session. If IPv4 addresses or IPv6 interface IDs or link MTU are otherwise unspecified, they are copied from the interface selected. This mode mimics some of the functionality of the older **aspppd** implementation and may be helpful when pppd is used with external applications that use **ifconfig(1M)**.

pppmux timer

Enable PPP Multiplexing option negotiation and set transmit multiplexing timeout to *timer* microseconds.

privgroup group-name

Allows members of group *group-name* to use privileged options. This is a privileged option. Because there is no guarantee that members of *group-name* cannot use pppd to become root themselves, you should be careful using this option. Consider it equivalent to putting the members of *group-name* in the root or sys group.

proxyarp

Add an entry to the system's Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) table with the IP address of the peer and the Ethernet address of this system. When you use this option, the peer appears to other systems to be on the local Ethernet. The remote address on the PPP link must be in the same subnet as assigned to an Ethernet interface.

pty script

Specifies that the command *script*, and not a specific terminal device is used for serial communication. pppd allocates itself a pseudo-tty master/slave pair and uses the slave as its terminal device. *script* runs in a child process with the pseudo-tty master as its standard input and output. An explicit device name may not be given if this option is used. (Note: if the **record** option is used in conjunction with the **pty** option, the child process will have pipes on its standard input and output.)

receive-all

With this option, pppd accepts all control characters from the peer, including those marked in the **receive asynmap**. Without this option, pppd discards those characters as specified in *RFC 1662*. This option should be used only if the peer has bugs, as is often found with dial-back implementations.

record *filename*

Directs pppd to record all characters sent and received to a file named *filename*. *filename* is opened in append mode, using the user's user-ID and permissions. Because this option uses a pseudo-tty and a process to transfer characters between the pseudo-tty and the real serial device, it increases the latency and CPU overhead of transferring data over the PPP interface. Characters are stored in a tagged format with timestamps that can be displayed in readable form using the pppdump(1M) program. This option is generally used when debugging the kernel portion of pppd (especially CCP compression algorithms) and not for debugging link configuration problems. See the debug option.

remotename *name*

Set the assumed name of the remote system for authentication purposes to *name*. Microsoft WindowsNT does not provide a system name in its CHAP Challenge messages, and this option is often used to work around this problem.

refuse-chap

With this option, pppd will not agree to authenticate itself to the peer using standard Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP). (MS-CHAP is not affected.)

refuse-mschap

Do not agree to authenticate to peer with MS-CHAPv1. If this option is specified, requests for MS-CHAPv1 authentication from the peer are declined with LCP Configure-Nak. That option does not disable any other form of CHAP.

refuse-mschapv2

Do not agree to authenticate to peer with MS-CHAPv2. If specified, this option requests that MS-CHAPv2 authentication from the peer be declined with LCP Configure-Nak. That option does not disable any other form of CHAP.

refuse-pap

With this option, pppd will not agree to authenticate itself to the peer using Password Authentication Protocol (PAP).

require-chap

Require the peer to authenticate itself using standard CHAP authentication. MS-CHAP is not affected.

require-mschap

Require the peer to authenticate itself using MS-CHAPv1 authentication.

require-mschapv2

Require the peer to authenticate itself using MS-CHAPv2 authentication.

require-pap

Require the peer to authenticate itself using PAP authentication.

show-password

When logging contents of PAP packets, this option causes pppd to show the password string in the log message.

silent

With this option, pppd will not transmit LCP packets to initiate a connection until a valid LCP packet is received from the peer. This is like the “passive” option with older versions of pppd and is retained for compatibility, but the current *passive* option is preferred.

small-accm-test

When checking the *asynmap* (ACCM) setting, pppd uses all 256 possible values by default. See *no-accm-test*. This option restricts the test so that only the 32 values affected by standard ACCM negotiation are tested. This option is useful on very slow links.

socket *host:port*

Connect to given host and port using TCP and run PPP over this connection.

sync

Use synchronous HDLC serial encoding instead of asynchronous. The device used by pppd with this option must have sync support. Currently supports *zs*, *se*, and *hsi* drivers.

unit *n*

Set PPP interface unit number to *n*, if possible.

updetach

With this option, pppd detaches from its controlling terminal after establishing the PPP connection. When this is specified, messages sent to *stderr* by the connect script, usually [chat\(1M\)](#), and debugging messages from the *debug* option are directed to pppd's standard output.

usehostname

Enforce the use of the hostname with domain name appended, if given, as the name of the local system for authentication purposes. This overrides the *name* option. Because the *name* option is privileged, this option is normally not needed.

usepeerdns

Ask the peer for up to two DNS server addresses. Addresses supplied by the peer, if any, are passed to the */etc/ppp/ip-up* script in the environment variables *DNS1* and *DNS2*. In addition, pppd creates an */etc/ppp/resolv.conf* file containing one or two nameserver lines with the address(es) supplied by the peer.

user *name*

Sets the name used for authenticating the local system to the peer to *name*.

vj-max-slots *n*

Sets the number of connection slots to be used by the Van Jacobson TCP/IP header compression and decompression code to *n*, which must be between 2 and 16 (inclusive).

welcome *script*

Run the executable or shell command specified by *script* before initiating PPP negotiation, after the connect script, if any, has completed. A value for this option from a privileged source cannot be overridden by a non-privileged user.

xonxoff

Use software flow control, that is, XON/XOFF, to control the flow of data on the serial port.

Obsolete Options The following options are obsolete:

- +ua *name* Read a PAP user name and password from the file *name*. This file must have two lines for name and password. Name and password are sent to the peer when the peer requests PAP authentication.
- +ipv6 Enable IPv6 and IPv6CP without specifying interface identifiers.
- version Show version number and exit.
- help Show brief help message and exit.

Extended Description

The following sections discuss miscellaneous features of pppd:

Security pppd allows system administrators to provide legitimate users with PPP access to a server machine without fear of compromising the security of the server or the network it runs on. Access control is provided by restricting IP addresses the peer may use based on its authenticated identity (if any), and through restrictions on options a non-privileged user may use. Options that permit potentially insecure configurations are privileged. Privileged options are accepted only in files that are under the control of the system administrator or when pppd is being run by root.

By default, pppd allows an unauthenticated peer to use a given IP address only if the system does not already have a route to that IP address. For example, a system with a permanent connection to the wider Internet will normally have a default route, meaning all peers must authenticate themselves to set up a connection. On such a system, the `auth` option is the default. Conversely, a system with a PPP link that comprises the only connection to the Internet probably does not possess a default route, so the peer can use virtually any IP address without authenticating itself.

Security-sensitive options are privileged and cannot be accessed by a non-privileged user running pppd, either on the command line, in the user's `$HOME/.ppprc` file, or in an options file read using the `file` option. Privileged options may be used in `/etc/ppp/options` file or in an options file read using the `call` option. If pppd is run by the root user, privileged options can be used without restriction. If the `/etc/ppp/options` file does not exist, then only root may invoke pppd. The `/etc/ppp/options` file must be created (but may be empty) to allow ordinary non-root users to access pppd.

When opening the device, pppd uses the invoking user's user ID or the root UID (that is, 0), depending if the device name was specified by the user or the system administrator. If the device name comes from a privileged source, that is, `/etc/ppp/options` or an options file read using the `call` option, pppd uses full root privileges when opening the device. Thus, by creating an appropriate file under `/etc/ppp/peers`, the system administrator can allow users

to establish a PPP connection via a device that they would not normally have access to. Otherwise pppd uses the invoking user's real UID when opening the device.

Authentication During the authentication process, one peer convinces the other of its identity by sending its name and some secret information to the other. During authentication, the first peer becomes the "client" and the second becomes the "server." Authentication names can (but are not required to) correspond to the peer's Internet hostnames.

pppd supports four authentication protocols: the Password Authentication Protocol (PAP) and three forms of the Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol (CHAP). With the PAP protocol, the client sends its name and a cleartext password to the server to authenticate itself. With CHAP, the server initiates the authentication exchange by sending a challenge to the client who must respond with its name and a hash value derived from the shared secret and the challenge.

The PPP protocol is symmetrical, meaning that each peer may be required to authenticate itself to the other. Different authentication protocols and names can be used for each exchange.

By default, pppd authenticates if requested and does not require authentication from the peer. However, pppd does not authenticate itself with a specific protocol if it has no secrets that can do so.

pppd stores authentication secrets in the `/etc/ppp/pap-secrets` (for PAP), and `/etc/ppp/chap-secrets` (for CHAP) files. Both files use the same format. pppd uses secrets files to authenticate itself to other systems and to authenticate other systems to itself.

Secrets files contain one secret per line. Secrets are specific to a particular combination of client and server and can only be used by that client to authenticate itself to that server. Each line in a secrets file has a minimum of three fields that contain the client and server names followed by the secret. Often, these three fields are followed by IP addresses that are used by clients to connect to a server.

A secrets file is parsed into words, with client name, server name and secrets fields allocated one word each. Embedded spaces or other special characters within a word must be quoted or escaped. Case is significant in all three fields.

A secret beginning with an at sign ("@") is followed by the name of a file containing the secret. An asterisk (*) as the client or server name matches any name. When choosing a match, pppd selects the one with the fewest wildcards. Succeeding words on a line are interpreted by pppd as acceptable IP addresses for that client. IP Addresses are disallowed if they appear in lines that contain only three words or lines whose first word begins with a hyphen ("-"). To allow any address, use "*". An address starting with an exclamation point ("!") indicates that the specified address is not acceptable. An address may be followed by "/" and a number *n* to indicate a whole subnet (all addresses that have the same value in the most significant *n* bits).

In this form, the address may be followed by a plus sign ("+") to indicate that one address from the subnet is authorized, based on the ppp network interface unit number in use. In this case, the host part of the address is set to the unit number, plus one.

When authenticating the peer, pppd chooses a secret with the peer's name in the first field of the secrets file and the name of the local system in the second field. The local system name defaults to the hostname, with the domain name appended if the `domain` option is used. The default can be overridden with the `name` option unless the `usehostname` option is used.

When authenticating to the peer, pppd first determines the name it will use to identify itself to the peer. This name is specified with the `user` option. If the `user` option is not used, the name defaults to the host name of the local system. pppd then selects a secret from the secrets file by searching for an entry with a local name in the first field and the peer's name in the second field. pppd will know the name of the peer if standard CHAP authentication is used because the peer will have sent it in the Challenge packet. However, if MS-CHAP or PAP is being used, pppd must determine the peer's name from the options specified by the user. The user can specify the peer's name directly with the `remoteName` option. Otherwise, if the remote IP address was specified by a name, rather than in numeric form, that name will be used as the peer's name. If that fails, pppd uses the null string as the peer's name.

When authenticating the peer with PAP, the supplied password is compared with data in the secrets file. If the password and secret do not match, the password is encrypted using `crypt()` and checked against the secret again. If the `papcrypt` option is given, the first unencrypted comparison is omitted for better security, and entries must thus be in encrypted `crypt(3C)` form.

If the `login` option is specified, the username and password are also checked against the system password database. This allows you to set up the `pap-secrets` file to enable PPP access only to certain users, and to restrict the set of IP addresses available to users. Typically, when using the `login` option, the secret in `/etc/ppp/pap-secrets` would be "", which matches any password supplied by the peer. This makes having the same secret in two places unnecessary. When `login` is used, the `pam` option enables access control through `pam(3PAM)`.

Authentication must be completed before IPCP (or other network protocol) can be started. If the peer is required to authenticate itself and fails, pppd closes LCP and terminates the link. If IPCP negotiates an unacceptable IP address for the remote host, IPCP is closed. IP packets are sent or received only when IPCP is open.

To allow hosts that cannot authenticate themselves to connect and use one of a restricted set of IP addresses, add a line to the `pap-secrets` file specifying the empty string for the client name and secret.

Additional pppd options for a given peer may be specified by placing them at the end of the secrets entry, separated by two dashes (--). For example

```
peername servername secret ip-address -- novj
```

Routing When IPCP negotiation is complete, pppd informs the kernel of the local and remote IP addresses for the PPP interface and creates a host route to the remote end of the link that enables peers to exchange IP packets. Communication with other machines generally requires further modification to routing tables and/or Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) tables. In most cases the default route and/or proxyarp options are sufficient for this, but further intervention may be necessary. If further intervention is required, use the `/etc/ppp/ip-up` script or a routing protocol daemon.

To add a default route through the remote host, use the `default route` option. This option is typically used for “client” systems; that is, end-nodes that use the PPP link for access to the general Internet.

In some cases it is desirable to use proxy ARP, for example on a server machine connected to a LAN, to allow other hosts to communicate with the remote host. `proxyarp` instructs pppd to look for a network interface on the same subnet as the remote host. That is, an interface supporting broadcast and ARP that is not a point-to-point or loopback interface and that is currently up. If found, pppd creates a permanent, published ARP entry with the IP address of the remote host and the hardware address of the network interface.

When the `demand` option is used, the interface IP addresses are already set at the time when IPCP comes up. If pppd cannot negotiate the same addresses it used to configure the interface, it changes the interface IP addresses to the negotiated addresses. This may disrupt existing connections. Using demand dialing with peers that perform dynamic IP address assignment is not recommended.

Scripts pppd invokes scripts at various stages during processing that are used to perform site-specific ancillary processing. These scripts may be shell scripts or executable programs. pppd does not wait for the scripts to finish. The scripts are executed as root (with the real and effective user-id set to 0), enabling them to update routing tables, run privileged daemons, or perform other tasks. Be sure that the contents of these scripts do not compromise your system's security. pppd runs the scripts with standard input, output and error redirected to `/dev/null`, and with an environment that is empty except for some environment variables that give information about the link. The pppd environment variables are:

<code>DEVICE</code>	Name of the serial tty device.
<code>IFNAME</code>	Name of the network interface.
<code>IPLOCAL</code>	IP address for the link's local end. This is set only when IPCP has started.
<code>IPREMOTE</code>	IP address for the link's remote end. This is set only when IPCP has started.
<code>PEERNAME</code>	Authenticated name of the peer. This is set only if the peer authenticates itself.
<code>SPEED</code>	Baud rate of the tty device.
<code>ORIG_UID</code>	Real user-id of user who invoked pppd.

PPLOGNAME Username of the real user-id who invoked pppd. This is always set.

pppd also sets the following variables for the ip-down and auth-down scripts:

CONNECT_TIME Number of seconds between the start of PPP negotiation and connection termination.

BYTES_SENT Number of bytes sent at the level of the serial port during the connection.

BYTES_RCVD Number of bytes received at the level of the serial port during the connection.

LINKNAME Logical name of the link, set with the linkname option.

If they exist, pppd invokes the following scripts. It is not an error if they do not exist.

/etc/ppp/auth-up Program or script executed after the remote system successfully authenticates itself. It is executed with five command-line arguments: interface-name peer-name user-name tty-device speed. Note that this script is not executed if the peer does not authenticate itself, for example, when the noauth option is used.

/etc/ppp/auth-down Program or script executed when the link goes down if /etc/ppp/auth-up was previously executed. It is executed in the same manner with the same parameters as /etc/ppp/auth-up.

/etc/ppp/ip-up A program or script that is executed when the link is available for sending and receiving IP packets (that is, IPCP has come up). It is executed with six command-line arguments: interface-name tty-device speed local-IP-address remote-IP-address ipparam.

/etc/ppp/ip-down A program or script which is executed when the link is no longer available for sending and receiving IP packets. This script can be used for undoing the effects of the /etc/ppp/ip-up script. It is invoked in the same manner and with the same parameters as the ip-up script.

/etc/ppp/ipv6-up Similar to /etc/ppp/ip-up, except that it is executed when the link is available for sending and receiving IPv6 packets. Executed with six command-line arguments: interface-name tty-device speed local-link-local-address remote-link-local-address ipparam.

/etc/ppp/ipv6-down Similar to /etc/ppp/ip-down, but executed when IPv6 packets can no longer be transmitted on the link. Executed with the same parameters as the ipv6-up script.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Using the auth Option

The following examples assume that the `/etc/ppp/options` file contains the `auth` option.

`pppd` is commonly used to dial out to an ISP. You can do this using the “`pppd call isp`” command where the `/etc/ppp/peers/isp` file is set up to contain a line similar to the following:

```
cua/a 19200 crtscts connect '/usr/bin/chat -f /etc/ppp/chat-isp' noauth
```

For this example, `chat(1M)` is used to dial the ISP's modem and process any login sequence required. The `/etc/ppp/chat-isp` file is used by `chat` and could contain the following:

```
ABORT "NO CARRIER"
ABORT "NO DIALTONE"
ABORT "ERROR"
ABORT "NO ANSWER"
ABORT "BUSY"
ABORT "Username/Password Incorrect"
"" "at"
OK "at&f&d2&c1"
OK "atdt2468135"
"name:" "^Umyuserid"
"word:" "\qmypassword"
"ispts" "\q^Uppp"
"^^^Uppp--"
```

See the `chat(1M)` man page for details of chat scripts.

EXAMPLE 2 Using `pppd` with `proxyarp`

`pppd` can also provide a dial-in `ppp` service for users. If the users already have login accounts, the simplest way to set up the `ppp` service is to let the users log in to their accounts and run `pppd` as shown in the following example:

```
example% pppd proxyarp
```

EXAMPLE 3 Providing a User with Access to PPP Facilities

To provide a user with access to the PPP facilities, allocate an IP address for the user's machine, create an entry in `/etc/ppp/pap-secrets` or `/etc/ppp/chap-secrets`. This enables the user's machine to authenticate itself. For example, to enable user “Joe” using machine “joespc” to dial in to machine “server” and use the IP address “joespc.my.net,” add the following entry to the `/etc/ppp/pap-secrets` or `/etc/ppp/chap-secrets` files:

```
joespc    server    "joe's secret"    joespc.my.net
```

EXAMPLE 3 Providing a User with Access to PPP Facilities (Continued)

Alternatively, you can create another username, for example "ppp," whose login shell is `/usr/bin/pppd` and whose home directory is `/etc/ppp`. If you run `pppd` this way, add the options to the `/etc/ppp/.ppprc` file.

If your serial connection is complex, it may be useful to escape such control characters as XON (^Q) and XOFF (^S), using `asynmap a0000`. If the path includes a `telnet`, escape ^] (`asynmap 200a0000`). If the path includes a `rlogin` command, add `escape ff` option to the options, because `rlogin` removes the window-size-change sequence [`0xff, 0xff, 0x73, 0x73`, followed by any 8 bytes] from the stream.

Exit Status The `pppd` exit status indicates errors or specifies why a link was terminated. Exit status values are:

- 0 `pppd` has detached or the connection was successfully established and terminated at the peer's request.
- 1 An immediately fatal error occurred. For example, an essential system call failed.
- 2 An error was detected in the options given. For example, two mutually exclusive options were used, or `/etc/ppp/options` is missing and the user is not root.
- 3 `pppd` is not `setuid-root` and the invoking user is not root.
- 4 The kernel does not support PPP. For example, the PPP kernel driver is not included or cannot be loaded.
- 5 `pppd` terminated because it was sent a SIGINT, SIGTERM or SIGHUP signal.
- 6 The serial port could not be locked.
- 7 The serial port could not be opened.
- 8 The connect script failed and returned a non-zero exit status.
- 9 The command specified as the argument to the `pty` option could not be run.
- 10 The PPP negotiation failed because no network protocols were able to run.
- 11 The peer system failed or refused to authenticate itself.
- 12 The link was established successfully, but terminated because it was idle.
- 13 The link was established successfully, but terminated because the connect time limit was reached.
- 14 Callback was negotiated and an incoming call should arrive shortly.
- 15 The link was terminated because the peer is not responding to echo requests.
- 16 The link was terminated by the modem hanging up.

- 17 The PPP negotiation failed because serial loopback was detected.
- 18 The init script failed because a non-zero exit status was returned.
- 19 Authentication to the peer failed.

Files	<code>/var/run/spppn.pid</code>	Process-ID for pppd process on PPP interface unit <i>n</i> .
	<code>/var/run/ppp-name.pid</code>	Process-ID for pppd process for logical link name (see the <code>Linkname</code> option).
	<code>/etc/ppp/pap-secrets</code>	Username, passwords and IP addresses for PAP authentication. This file should be owned by root and not readable or writable by any other user, otherwise pppd will log a warning.
	<code>/etc/ppp/chap-secrets</code>	Names, secrets and IP addresses for all forms of CHAP authentication. The <code>/etc/ppp/pap-secrets</code> file should be owned by root should not readable or writable by any other user, otherwise, pppd will log a warning.
	<code>/etc/ppp/options</code>	System default options for pppd, read before user default options or command-line options.
	<code>\$HOME/.ppprc</code>	User default options, read before <code>/etc/ppp/options.ttyname</code> .
	<code>/etc/ppp/options.ttyname</code>	System default options for the serial port in use; read after <code>\$HOME/.ppprc</code> . The <code>ttyname</code> component of this filename is formed when the initial <code>/dev/</code> is stripped from the port name (if present), and slashes (if any) are converted to dots.
	<code>/etc/ppp/peers</code>	Directory with options files that may contain privileged options, even if pppd was invoked by a user other than root. The system administrator can create options files in this directory to permit non-privileged users to dial out without requiring the peer to authenticate, but only to certain trusted peers.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWpppdu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [chat\(1M\)](#), [ifconfig\(1M\)](#), [crypt\(3C\)](#), [pam\(3PAM\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Haskin, D., Allen, E. *RFC 2472 – IP Version 6 Over PPP*. Network Working Group. December 1998.

Jacobson, V. *RFC 1144, Compressing TCP/IP Headers for Low-Speed Serial Links*. Network Working Group. February, 1990

Lloyd, B., Simpson, W. *RFC 1334, PPP Authentication Protocols*. Network Working Group. October 1992.

McGregor, G. *RFC 1332, The PPP Internet Protocol Control Protocol (IPCP)*. Network Working Group. May 1992.

Rivest, R. *RFC 1321, The MD5 Message-Digest Algorithm*. Network Working Group. April 1992

Simpson, W. *RFC 1661, The Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP)*. Network Working Group. July 1994.

Simpson, W. *RFC 1662, HDLC-like Framing*. Network Working Group. July 1994.

Notes These signals affect pppd behavior:

SIGINT, SIGTERM	Terminate the link, restore the serial device settings and exit.
SIGHUP	Terminate the link, restore the serial device settings and close the serial device. If the <code>persist</code> or <code>demand</code> option is specified, pppd attempts to reopen the serial device and start another connection after the holdoff period. Otherwise pppd exits. If received during the holdoff period, SIGHUP causes pppd to end the holdoff period immediately.
SIGUSR1	Toggles the state of the <code>debug</code> option and prints link status information to the log.
SIGUSR2	Causes pppd to renegotiate compression. This is useful to re-enable compression after it has been disabled as a result of a fatal decompression error. (Fatal decompression errors generally indicate a bug in an implementation.)

Diagnostics Messages are sent to the syslog daemon using facility `LOG_DAEMON`. To see error and debug messages, edit the `/etc/syslog.conf` file to direct the messages to the desired output device or file, or use the `updetach` or `logfile` options.

The `debug` option causes the contents of all LCP, PAP, CHAP or IPCP control packets sent or received to be logged. This is useful if PPP negotiation does not succeed or if authentication fails.

Debugging can also be enabled or disabled by sending a SIGUSR1 signal, which acts as a toggle to the pppd process.

Name pppoe – PPPoE chat utility

Synopsis pppoe [-o*milliseconds*] [-s*milliseconds*] [-v] *device*
 [*service* [[except] *server*... [only]]]
 pppoe [-o*milliseconds*] [-v] -i [*device*]

Description The pppoe utility implements the client-side negotiation of PPPoE. It is intended to be used with the [pppd\(1M\)](#) connect option, in the same manner as the [chat\(1M\)](#) utility is used for asynchronous dial-up PPP.

When given with the -i flag, pppoe sends out a broadcast query on the given interface named by the *device* parameter. You can specify no other arguments in this mode. All responding PPPoE servers and the offered services are displayed on standard output.

Otherwise, when given without the -i flag, pppoe does the full PPPoE client-side negotiation. The *device* parameter is the intended Ethernet interface, and must already be plumbed with [sppptun\(1M\)](#). The optional *service* parameter specifies a particular service desired; other offered services will be ignored. The optional *server* parameter specifies a specific server desired. You can specify *server* as an Ethernet address in the usual x:x:x:x:x format (with "*" in any of the six byte positions interpreted to mean "any"), or as a symbolic name resolved through /etc/ethers (or NIS), or as a PPPoE access concentrator name. The sense of the match (true or false) can be inverted by specifying the keyword *except* before this string. This parameter can be specified more than once, and the first match is taken.

If you specify the *server* parameter, then the selected servers become "preferred." If no preferred server responds, then the first responding server is used instead. To exclude non-matching servers entirely, append the keyword *only*.

Options The following options are supported:

- i Sends out broadcast query over interface specified by *device*.
- o Sets the initial wait time in milliseconds for PADO from the server before PADI is retried. The default is 500 milliseconds for normal operation, or 3000 milliseconds (3 seconds) for inquiry (-i) mode.
- s Sets the initial wait time in milliseconds for PADS from the server before PADR is retried. The default is 2000 milliseconds (2 seconds).
- v Displays verbose progress messages, including all PPPoE messages sent, and all state machine transitions.

You normally do not need to adjust the parameters set with -o and -s. They are provided for coping with unusually slow servers.

Operands The following operands are supported:

device plumbed Ethernet interface

server preferred server or, if you specify only, the specified server
service desired service; other available services are ignored

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Connecting to Any Service on hme0

The following command enables you to connect to any PPPoE service on hme0:

```
# /usr/bin/pppd sppptun plugin pppoe.so \  
connect "/usr/lib/inet/pppoe hme0" debug
```

Often, a command such as the preceding is specified in an /etc/ppp/peers file instead. For example, enter the following in /etc/ppp/peers/myisp:

```
sppptun  
plugin pppoe.so  
connect "/usr/lib/inet/pppoe hme0"  
debug
```

To invoke the PPP connection described in the file, enter:

```
% /usr/bin/pppd call myisp
```

Note that, because the /etc/ppp/peers files are considered privileged by pppd, you need not be root to invoke the preceding command.

EXAMPLE 2 Connecting to a Particular Service

A more complex example: on hme0, connect to only the internet service offered by PPPoE servers with access concentrator name isp, but not to any Ethernet addresses starting with 40:0:1a.

```
# /usr/lib/inet/pppoe hme0 internet except 40:0:1a:*:*:* isp only
```

Note that the except 40:0:1a:*:*:* filter must come before isp, because the filters are first-match.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.
>0 An error occurred.

Files	/usr/lib/inet/pppoe	executable command
	/dev/sppptun	Solaris PPP tunneling device driver.
	/etc/ppp/connect-errors	usual location of error output (see DIAGNOSTICS, below)

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWpppdt

See Also [pppd\(1M\)](#), [sppptun\(1M\)](#), [pppoed\(1M\)](#), [sppptun\(7M\)](#)

RFC 2516, Method for Transmitting PPP Over Ethernet (PPPoE), Mamakos et al, February 1999

Diagnostics Error messages are written to standard error, which is normally redirected by `pppd` to `/etc/ppp/connect-errors`. The errors can also be redirected to `pppd`'s standard output by using the `updetach` option.

If you specify the `-v`, verbose progress messages are displayed, including all PPPoE messages sent, and all state machine transitions. Specifying the `updetach` or `nodetach` `pppd` option is helpful when using verbose mode.

Name pppoed – PPPoE server daemon

Synopsis ppoed [*options*]

Description The pppoed daemon implements the server-side negotiation of PPPoE. When a client requests service from this daemon, a copy of [pppd\(1M\)](#) is invoked to handle the actual PPP communication.

At startup, options are read from the command line and the `/etc/ppp/pppoe` file. After these options have been read, options in the per-device `/etc/ppp/pppoe.device` files are read, using the device names specified on the command line or in `/etc/ppp/pppoe`. Device names are not permitted in the per-device files. It is not an error if any of these files are absent; missing files are ignored.

Options are reread in the same order on SIGHUP. Except for the possibility of short delays due to the processing time, SIGHUP does not interfere with any client operations. Current status, including options read, is dumped to `/tmp/pppoed.pid` on SIGINT.

The options are used to set up a list of services to be offered to PPPoE clients on the broadcast domains (Ethernet subnets) specified by the named devices. Option parsing is always in one of two modes, either global mode or service mode. The initial mode at the beginning of each file (and the command line) is global mode. Options specified in global mode serve as default values for subsequently defined services. Service mode is entered by the `service name` option. In this mode, the named option is defined. Options that appear in this mode override any global mode definitions for the current service.

The option parsing follows standard shell tokenizing rules, using whitespace to delimit tokens, quotes to enclose strings that can contain whitespace, and escape sequences for special characters. Environment variables are substituted using familiar `$VAR` and `${VAR}` syntax and set using `NEWVAR=string`. Variables are both usable in subsequent options and provided to the [pppd\(1M\)](#) processes spawned for each client, but they are interpreted as they are encountered during option processing. Thus, all set variables are seen by all processes spawned; position in the configuration files has no effect on this.

Options The pppoed daemon supports the following options:

`client [except] client-list` This option restricts the clients that may receive the service. If the `except` keyword is given, then the clients on the list cannot access the service, but others can. If this keyword is not given, then only the listed clients can access the service.

This option can be specified more than once for a given service. For a given client, first match among all listed options encountered specifies the handling. If it matches an option with `except` specified, then access is denied. Otherwise, it is granted. The `client` list within a service is prepended to any list specified in the global context.

If no `client` options are given or if all options are specified with `except`, then all clients are permitted by default. If any `client` options without `except` are specified, then no clients are permitted by default.

The *client-list* is a comma-separated list of client identifiers. The match is made if any client on the list matches; thus, these are logically "ORed" together. Each client identifier can be either a symbolic name (resolved through `/etc/ethers` or NIS, as defined by `/etc/nsswitch.conf`) or a hexadecimal Ethernet address in the format `x:x:x:x:x:x`. In the latter case, any byte of the address can be "*", which matches any value in that position. For example, `40:0:1a:*:*:*` matches Ethernet adapters from the manufacturer assigned block `40:0:1a`.

<code>debug</code>	Increase debug logging detail level by one. The detail levels are 0 (no logging), 1 (errors only; the default), 2 (warnings), 3 (informational messages), and 4 (debug messages). Log messages are written by default to <code>syslog(3C)</code> using facility <i>daemon</i> (see the <code>log</code> option below). When specified on the command line or in the global context of the <code>/etc/ppp/pppoe</code> file, this option also sets the daemon's default (non-service-related) detail level.
<code>device device-list</code>	Specify the devices on which the service is available. The <i>device-list</i> is a comma-separated list of logical device names (without the leading <code>/dev/</code>), such as <code>hme0</code> . This option is ignored if encountered in the per-device <code>/etc/ppp/pppoe.device</code> files.
<code>extra string</code>	Specifies extra options to <code>pppd(1M)</code> . It defaults to <code>"plugin pppoe.so directtty"</code> and usually does not need to be overridden.
<code>file path</code>	Suspends parsing of the current file, returns to global mode, and reads options from <i>path</i> . This file must be present and readable; if it is not, an error is logged. When the end of that file is reached, processing returns to the current file and the mode is reset to global again.

The global mode options specified in files read by this command use the options set in the current file's global mode; this condition extends to any file included by those files. All files read are parsed as though the command line had specified this option, and thus inherit the command line's global modes.

	This option can be used to revert to global mode at any point in an option file by specifying <code>file /dev/null</code> .
<code>group name</code>	Specifies the group ID (symbolic or numeric) under which <code>pppd</code> is executed. If <code>pppoed</code> is not run as root, this option is ignored.
<code>log path</code>	Specifies an alternate debug logging file. Debug messages are sent to this file instead of <code>syslog</code> . The special name <code>syslog</code> is recognized to switch logging back to <code>syslog</code> . When specified on the command line or in the global context of the <code>/etc/ppp/pppoe</code> file, this option also sets the daemon's default (non-service-related) log file.
<code>nodebug</code>	Set debug logging detail level to 0 (no logging). When specified on the command line or in the global context of the <code>/etc/ppp/pppoe</code> file, this option also sets the daemon's default (non-service-related) detail level.
<code>nowildcard</code>	Specifies that the current service should not be included in response to clients requesting "any" service. The client must ask for this service by name. When specified on the command line or in the global context of the <code>/etc/ppp/pppoe</code> file, this option causes <code>pppoed</code> to ignore all wildcard service requests.
<code>path path</code>	Specifies the path to the <code>pppd</code> executable. Defaults to <code>/usr/bin/pppd</code> .
<code>pppd string</code>	Passes command-line arguments to <code>pppd</code> . It can be used to set the IP addresses or configure security for the session. The default value is the empty string.
<code>server string</code>	Specifies the PPPoE Access Concentrator name to be sent to the client. It defaults to "Solaris PPPoE".
<code>service name</code>	Closes any service being defined and begins definition of a new service. The same service name can be used without conflict on multiple devices. If the same service name is used on a single device, then the last definition encountered during parsing overrides all previous definitions.
<code>user name</code>	Specifies the user ID, symbolic or numeric, under which <code>pppd</code> is executed. If <code>pppoed</code> is not run as root, this option is ignored.
<code>wildcard</code>	Specifies that the service should be included in responses to client queries that request "any" service, which is done by requesting a service name of length zero. When specified on the command line or in the global context of the

/etc/ppp/pppoe file, this option causes pppoe to ignore all wildcard service requests. This is the default.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Configuring for Particular Services

In the /etc/ppp/pppoe file:

```
service internet
  device $DEV
  pppd "proxyarp 192.168.1.1:"
service debugging
  device hme0,$DEV
  pppd "debug proxyarp 192.168.1.1:"
```

You then invoke the daemon with:

```
example% /usr/lib/inet/pppoed DEV=eri0
```

The lines in /etc/ppp/pppoe and the preceding command result in offering services "internet" and "debugging" (and responding to wildcard queries) on interface eri0, and offering only service "debugging" on interface hme0.

Signals The pppoe daemon responds to the following signals:

SIGHUP Causes pppoe to reparse the original command line and all configuration files, and close and reopen any log files.

SIGINT Causes a snapshot of the state of the pppoe daemon to be written to /tmp/pppoed.*pid* (where *pid* is the decimal process ID of the daemon).

Files	/usr/lib/inet/pppoed	executable command
	/dev/sppptun	Solaris PPP tunneling device driver
	/etc/ppp/pppoe	main configuration option file
	/etc/ppp/pppoe. <i>device</i>	per-device configuration option file
	/etc/ppp/pppoe-errors	location of output from pppd's stderr
	/etc/ppp/pppoe.if	list of Ethernet interfaces to be plumbed at boot time
	/tmp/pppoed. <i>pid</i>	ASCII text file containing dumped pppoe state information

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWpppdt

See Also [pppd\(1M\)](#), [pppoe\(1M\)](#), [sppptun\(1M\)](#), [sppptun\(7M\)](#)

Mamakos, L., et al. *RFC 2516, A Method for Transmitting PPP Over Ethernet (PPPoE)*. Network Working Group. February 1999

Notes Because `pppd` is installed setuid root, this daemon need not be run as root. However, if it is not run as root, the `user` and `group` options are ignored.

The Ethernet interfaces to be used must be plumbed for PPPoE using the [sppptun\(1M\)](#) utility before services can be offered.

The daemon operate runs even if there are no services to offer. If you want to modify a configuration, it is not necessary to terminate the daemon. Simply use `kill -HUP pppoe` after updating the configuration files.

The PPPoE protocol is far from perfect. Because it runs directly over Ethernet, there is no possibility of security and the MTU is limited to 1492 (violating RFC 1661's default value of 1500). It is also not possible to run the client and the server of a given session on a single machine with a single Ethernet interface for testing purposes. The client and server portions of a single session must be run on separate Ethernet interfaces with different MAC addresses.

Name pppstats – print PPP statistics

Synopsis pppstats [-a] [-v] [-r] [-z] [-c <count>] [-w <secs>]
[interface]

Description The pppstats utility reports PPP-related statistics at regular intervals for the specified PPP interface. If the interface is unspecified, pppstats defaults to sppp0. The display is split horizontally into input and output sections containing columns of statistics describing the properties and volume of packets received and transmitted by the interface.

Options The pppstats options are:

- a Display absolute values rather than deltas. With this option, all reports show statistics for the time elapsed since the link was initiated. Without this option, the second and subsequent reports show statistics for the time since the last report.
- c *count* Repeat the display *count* times. If this option is not specified, the default repeat count is 1 if the -w option is not specified, otherwise infinity.
- r Display additional statistics summarizing the compression ratio achieved by the packet compression algorithm in use.
- v Display additional statistics relating to the performance of the Van Jacobson TCP header compression algorithm.
- w *wait* Pause *wait* seconds between each display. If this option is not specified, the default interval is five seconds.
- z Instead of the standard display, show statistics indicating the performance of the packet compression algorithm in use.

Extended Description The following fields are printed on the input side when the -z option is not used:

- IN Total number of bytes received by this interface.
- PACK Total number of packets received by this interface.
- VJCOMP Number of header-compressed TCP packets received by this interface.
- VJUNC Number of header-uncompressed TCP packets received by this interface. Not reported when the -r option is specified.
- VJERR Number of corrupted or bogus header-compressed TCP packets received by this interface. Not reported when the -r option is specified.
- VJTOSS Number of VJ header-compressed TCP packets dropped on reception by this interface because of preceding errors. Only reported when the -v option is specified.
- NON-VJ Total number of non-TCP packets received by this interface. Only reported when the -v option is specified.

RATIO	Compression ratio achieved for received packets by the packet compression scheme in use, defined as the uncompressed size divided by the compressed size. Only reported when the - r option is specified.
UBYTE	Total number of bytes received, after decompression of compressed packets. Only reported when the - r option is specified.

The following fields are printed on the output side:

OUT	Total number of bytes transmitted from this interface.
PACK	Total number of packets transmitted from this interface.
VJCOMP	Number of TCP packets transmitted from this interface with VJ-compressed TCP headers.
VJUNC	Number of TCP packets transmitted from this interface with VJ-uncompressed TCP headers. Not reported when the - r option is specified.
NON-VJ	Total number of non-TCP packets transmitted from this interface. Not reported when the - r option is specified.
VJSRCH	Number of searches for the cached header entry for a VJ header compressed TCP packet. Only reported when the - v option is specified.
VJMISS	Number of failed searches for the cached header entry for a VJ header compressed TCP packet. Only reported when the - v option is specified.
RATIO	Compression ratio achieved for transmitted packets by the packet compression scheme in use, defined as the size before compression divided by the compressed size. Only reported when the - r option is specified.
UBYTE	Total number of bytes to be transmitted before packet compression is applied. Only reported when the - r option is specified.

When the - z option is specified, `pppstats` displays the following fields relating to the packet compression algorithm currently in use. If packet compression is not in use, these fields display zeroes. The fields displayed on the input side are:

COMPRESSED BYTE	Number of bytes of compressed packets received.
COMPRESSED PACK	Number of compressed packets received.
INCOMPRESSIBLE BYTE	Number of bytes of incompressible packets (that is, those which were transmitted in uncompressed form) received.
INCOMPRESSIBLE PACK	Number of incompressible packets received.
COMP RATIO	Recent compression ratio for incoming packets, defined as the uncompressed size divided by the compressed size (including both compressible and incompressible packets).

The fields displayed on the output side are:

COMPRESSED BYTE	Number of bytes of compressed packets transmitted.
COMPRESSED PACK	Number of compressed packets transmitted.
INCOMPRESSIBLE BYTE	Number of bytes of incompressible packets received; that is, those that were transmitted by the peer in uncompressed form.
INCOMPRESSIBLE PACK	Number of incompressible packets transmitted.
COMP RATIO	Recent compression ratio for outgoing packets.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWpppdu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [pppd\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name pprosetup – setup program for Patch Manager

Synopsis /usr/sbin/pprosetup [-a *admin-email-addr*] [-b *backout-dir*]
 [-c *config-name*] [-C] [-d *patch-dir*]
 [-D | -M *day-of-month* | -W *day-of-week*] [-s *hh:mm*]
 [-h] [-H] [-i [none | *patch-property-list*]] [-L]
 [-p [none | standard]] [-P *patch-source-url*]
 [-q *sequester-dir*] [-u *user-name*]
 [-U *proxy-user-name*] [-x [*host:port*]]

Description **Note** – This command is deprecated. Use the `smatch set`, `smatch unset`, and `smatch get` commands instead. See the [smatch\(1M\)](#) man page.

Use the `pprosetup` command, as superuser, to configure your patch management environment by doing the following:

- Scheduling the patch operations
- Setting a patch policy
- Specifying patch directories
- Specifying the hardware on the system
- Specifying alternate configurations

Scheduling the Patch Operations Schedule the automatic synchronization of patches with Sun's patch base. This scheduling makes the `pprosv` command run in *automatic mode*. This mode is set up by using the cron interface. Use the `-C`, `-D`, `-M`, `-s`, and `-W` options to perform the scheduling tasks.

If you do not want to schedule patch operations, you can run the `pprosv` and `smatch` commands in *manual mode*, which means running the tool from the command line.

Note that midnight is represented as 00:00.

Note – The `smatch` command does not directly support this mechanism for scheduling patch operations. You can set up a schedule by using `cron` to run `smatch` in local mode. See the [smatch\(1M\)](#) man page.

Setting a Patch Policy Patches are classified as being standard or nonstandard. A *standard patch* can be applied by `pprosv` in automatic mode. Such a patch is associated with the standard patch property. A *nonstandard patch* is one that has one of the following characteristics:

- A patch that is associated with the `rebootafter`, `rebootimmediate`, `reconfigafter`, `reconfigimmediate`, or `singleuser` properties. This nonstandard patch can be applied by running the `pprosv` command or the `smatch` command in manual mode.
- A patch that is associated with the `interactive` property. Such a patch cannot be applied by using the `smatch` command.

Use `pprosetup` to schedule patch operations to run in *automatic mode*. Patches are applied based on the policy, which you can set by running `pprosetup`.

Use `pprosetup -p` to specify the types of patches to apply in automatic mode. You can set a policy to apply no patches (`none`) or standard patches (`standard`).

Use `pprosetup -i` to specify the types of patches to apply in *manual* mode. Such patches might include those that require a reboot and those that must be applied while the system is in single-user mode. Specify the types of patches that can be applied by using the following command:

```
# pprosetup -i patch-property-list
```

patch-property-list is a colon-separated list of one or more of the following patch properties:

<code>interactive</code>	A patch that cannot be applied by running the usual patch management tools (<code>pprosvc</code> , <code>smpatch</code> , or <code>patchadd</code>). Before this patch is applied, the user must perform special actions. Such actions might include checking the serial number of a disk drive, stopping a critical daemon, or reading the patch's README file.
<code>rebootafter</code>	The effects of this patch are not visible until after the system is rebooted.
<code>rebootimmediate</code>	When this patch is applied, the system becomes unstable until the system is rebooted. An unstable system is one in which the behavior is unpredictable and data might be lost.
<code>reconfigafter</code>	The effects of this patch are not visible until after a reconfiguration reboot (<code>boot -r</code>). See the boot(1M) man page.
<code>reconfigimmediate</code>	When this patch is applied, the system becomes unstable until the system gets a reconfiguration reboot (<code>boot -r</code>). An unstable system is one in which the behavior is unpredictable and data might be lost.
<code>singleuser</code>	Do not apply this patch while the system is in multiuser mode. You must apply this patch on a quiet system with no network traffic and with extremely restricted I/O activity.
<code>standard</code>	This patch can be applied while the system is in multiuser mode. The effects of the patch are visible as soon as it is applied unless the application being patched is running while the patch is applied. In this case, the effects of the patch are visible after the affected application is restarted.

Note – The `smpatch` command only supports the patch policy for manual mode.

Specifying Patch Directories

Use the following options to specify the directories in which to store patch-related data:

- Use the `-b` option to specify the directory in which to store backout data. During a patch backout operation, the data is retrieved from this directory to restore the system to its state prior to applying the patch.
- Use the `-d` option to specify the download directory in which to store patches that are downloaded from the Sun patch server. This directory is also the location from which patches are applied.

- Use the `-q` option to specify the directory in which to store patches that cannot be applied automatically. Such patches are called *sequestered patches*.

Note – The `sequester` directory is not used by the `smatch` command.

Specifying the Hardware on the System

Use the `-H` option to run a program that helps you determine the hardware that is attached to the host system, such as firmware, disk array systems, and tape storage systems.

Use this option to select the hardware that applies to this system. Select the sequence number of the specific hardware. A confirmation page lists the selections.

Save the specified hardware configuration information to a file. Then, the system responds by performing the appropriate actions.

Note – The `smatch` command does not support this feature for specifying hardware on your system.

Specifying Alternate Configurations

The `pprosetup` command uses a configuration file to specify the collection of patches with which to perform patch operations. By default, all of the patches from the Sun patch server are available for patch operations.

The `-c` option enables you to specify an alternate configuration.

Sun currently provides one alternate configuration, which is called the recommended configuration. This configuration includes only those patches that have been declared significant. Such patches include security patches and patches that address known performance and availability problems.

You can use the `-c recommended` option when you schedule patch operations. For example, the following command schedules monthly patch operations that use the recommended configuration:

```
# pprosetup -c recommended -M 15 -s 23:30
```

To cancel a schedule that uses the recommended configuration, type:

```
# pprosetup -c recommended -C
```

You are permitted to modify the recommended configuration by using the `-c` option. See **EXAMPLES**.

Note – The `smatch` command does not support this feature for specifying alternate configurations.

Options The following options are supported:

<code>-a admin-email-addr</code>	Is the email address of the patch administrator. Email notification is sent to describe the patches downloaded, the
----------------------------------	---

patches applied, and any error events that occurred when running the `pprosv -i -n` command.

Note – This option does not affect the `smpatch` command.

-b *backout-dir*

Stores backout data in the specified directory.

The backout data is used whenever you use the `patchrm` command to remove a patch that has already been applied to your system. The data is used to restore a system to the state it was in before you applied a particular patch. Since backout data might be quite large, store the data in a large partition that holds large transitory data. Such a partition might be `/var`.

If you do not specify the `-b` option, the backout data is stored in the default locations used by `patchadd`. These locations are the `save` directories of the packages that were modified by the patch. For example, if a patch modifies the `SUNWcsr` package, the backout data for that package is stored in the `/var/sadm/pkg/SUNWcsr/save` directory.

To specify the backout directory, use the `smpatch set` command to set the `patchpro.backout.directory` parameter.

Note – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the `-b` option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).

-C

Clears the existing patch service schedule.

Note – This feature is not supported by the `smpatch` command.

-c *config-name*

Uses the *config-name* configuration for patch operations. When this option is included in any `pprosetup` command, the entire command applies to the specified configuration.

Note – This feature is not supported by the `smpatch` command.

-d *patch-dir*

Is the directory in which to download the patches that are appropriate for this host system. This directory is also the

location from which patches are applied. By default, the download directory is `/var/sadm/spool`.

Note – To specify the download directory, use the `smpatch set` command to set the `patchpro.download.directory` parameter.

- D** Schedules the automatic analysis, download, and optional application of patches on a daily basis. This option is equivalent to executing the `pprosv -i -n` command on a daily basis. See the [crontab\(1\)](#) man page.
- The policy defined by the `-p` option determines whether no patches (`pprosetup -p none`) are applied or whether standard patches (`pprosetup -p standard`) are applied. By default, no patches are applied.
- This option is mutually exclusive with the `-M` option and the `-W` option.
- Note** – This feature is not supported by the `smpatch` command.
- h** Displays information about command-line options.
- H** Establishes a dialog with the user to determine what hardware is attached to the host system.
- Note** – This feature is not supported by the `smpatch` command.
- i [none | *patch-property-list*]** Specifies the policy for applying patches in manual mode.
- No patches are applied when `none` is specified. *patch-property-list* is a colon-separated list of one or more of the following patch properties: `interactive`, `rebootafter`, `rebootimmediate`, `reconfigafter`, `reconfigimmediate`, `singleuser`, and `standard`. See [Setting a Patch Policy](#).
- Note** – To specify the patch policy, use the `smpatch set` command to set the `patchpro.install.types` parameter.
- L** Displays the configuration parameter settings of your patch management environment.
- This option is mutually exclusive with the other options.

<i>-M day-of-month</i>	<p>Note – To view the configuration parameter settings, use the <code>smpatch get</code> command.</p> <p>Schedules the automatic analysis, download, and optional application of patches on a monthly basis.</p> <p>The policy defined by the <code>-p</code> option determines whether no patches (<code>pprosetup -p none</code>) are applied or whether standard patches (<code>pprosetup -p standard</code>) are applied. By default, no patches are applied.</p> <p><i>day-of-month</i> is a numerical value from 1-28, which represents the day of the month. Note that the values 29, 30, and 31 are invalid. See the crontab(1) man page.</p> <p>This option is mutually exclusive with the <code>-D</code> option and the <code>-W</code> option.</p> <p>Note – This feature is not supported by the <code>smpatch</code> command.</p>
<i>-p [none standard]</i>	<p>Specifies the policy for applying patches in automatic mode.</p> <p>No patches are applied when none, the default, is specified.</p> <p>When standard is specified, only standard patches are applied.</p> <p>Note – This feature is not supported by the <code>smpatch</code> command.</p>
<i>-P patch-source-url</i>	<p>Is the URL that points to the collection of patches. The default is the Sun patch server, which has the following URL:</p> <pre>https://updateserver.sun.com/solaris/</pre> <p>Note – To specify the URL that points to the collection of patches, use the <code>smpatch set</code> command to set the <code>patchpro.patch.source</code> parameter.</p>
<i>-q sequester-dir</i>	<p>Is the directory in which patches are moved if they cannot be automatically applied. By default, the sequester directory is <code>/var/sadm/spool/patchproSequester</code>.</p> <p>Note – The sequester directory is not used by the <code>smpatch</code> command.</p>

- s *hh:mm*** Optionally sets the time of day to perform patch operations, which by default, is midnight local time.
- hh* is a value from 00-23, which specifies the hour. *mm* is a value from 00-59, which specifies the minute.
- Use this option with the **-D**, **-M**, and **-W** options.
- Note** – This feature is not supported by the `smpatch` command.
- u *user-name*** Is the user name with which to obtain contract patches from Sun.
- Store the corresponding SunSpectrum user's password in the `lib/.sunsolvepw` file. If PatchPro is installed in the default location, this file is in the `/opt/SUNWppro` directory.
- Keep the password safe by setting the owner, group, and permissions to `root`, `sys`, and `0600`, respectively.
- Note** – This file method of supplying passwords is no longer supported.
- Note** – To specify this user, use the `smpatch set` command to set the `patchpro.sun.user` parameter. Also, specify this user's password by setting the `patchpro.sun.passwd` parameter.
- U *proxy-user-name*** Is the user name required for authentication of the web proxy, if applicable.
- Store the corresponding user's password in the `lib/.proxypw` file. If PatchPro is installed in the default location, this file is in the `/opt/SUNWppro` directory.
- Keep the password safe by setting the owner, group, and permissions to `root`, `sys`, and `0600`, respectively.
- Note** – This file method of supplying passwords is no longer supported.
- Note** – To specify this user, use the `smpatch set` command to set the `patchpro.proxy.user` parameter. Also, specify this user's password by setting the `patchpro.proxy.passwd` parameter.

`-W day-of-week`

Schedules the automatic analysis, download, and optional application of patches on a weekly basis.

day-of-week is a numerical value from 0-6, which represents the day of the week. 0 represents Sunday. See the [crontab\(1\)](#) man page.

The policy defined by the `-p` option determines whether no patches (`pprosetup -p none`) are applied or whether standard patches (`pprosetup -p standard`) are applied. By default, no patches are applied.

This option is mutually exclusive with the `-D` option and the `-M` option.

Note – This feature is not supported by the `smatch` command.

`-x [host:port]`

Specifies the web proxy. If your system is behind a firewall, use this option to specify your web proxy. Get the name of the web proxy and its port from your system administrator or network administrator.

Note – To specify the web proxy host name and port, use the `smatch set` command to set the `patchpro.proxy.host` and `patchpro.proxy.port` parameters, respectively.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Scheduling Daily Patch Operations in Automatic Mode

```
# pprosetup -D
```

Schedules `smatch` update to run in automatic mode daily at midnight local time.

EXAMPLE 2 Scheduling Weekly Patch Operations in Automatic Mode

```
# pprosetup -W 0 -s 00:45
```

Schedules `smatch` update to run in automatic mode every Sunday at 12:45 a.m. local time.

EXAMPLE 3 Scheduling Monthly Patch Operations in Automatic Mode

```
# pprosetup -M 15 -s 02:30
```

Schedules `smatch` update to run in automatic mode on the 15th day of every month at 2:30 a.m. local time.

EXAMPLE 4 Canceling Scheduled Jobs

```
# pprosetup -C
```

Cancels the scheduled jobs that use the default configuration.

EXAMPLE 5 Specifying the Patch Policy for Manual Mode

```
# pprosetup -i standard:singleuser:reconfigafter:rebootafter
```

Specifies the policy for applying patches in manual mode. This policy permits you to apply the following types of patches to your system in manual mode:

- Standard patches
- Patches that must be applied in single-user mode
- Patches that require that the system undergo a reconfiguration reboot after they have been applied
- Patches that require that the system undergo a reboot after they have been applied

EXAMPLE 6 Specifying the Patch Policy for Automatic Mode

```
# pprosetup -p none
```

Specifies that no patches are automatically applied.

```
# pprosetup -p standard
```

Specifies that *only* standard patches can be downloaded and applied.

EXAMPLE 7 Specifying an Alternate Download Directory

```
# pprosetup -d /export/home/patches
```

Specifies that patches are downloaded to the `/export/home/patches` directory.

EXAMPLE 8 Specifying an Alternate Sequester Directory

```
# pprosetup -q /export/home/patches/sequester
```

Specifies that sequestered patches are stored in the `/export/home/patches/sequester` directory.

EXAMPLE 9 Identifying the Hardware on Your System

```
# pprosetup -H
```

EXAMPLE 9 Identifying the Hardware on Your System (Continued)

Enables a patch analysis to determine whether your system needs specific patches based on your hardware configuration. This command only helps you identify hardware products from Sun Network Storage.

EXAMPLE 10 Configuring Your System to Obtain Contract Patches

```
# pprosetup -u myuser
# echo mypasswd > /opt/SUNWppro/lib/.sunso1vepw
```

Enables your contract user, `myuser`, to obtain the contract patches.

Ensure that the contract user's password is safe by setting the owner, group, and permissions of the `.sunso1vepw` file to `root`, `sys`, and `0600`, respectively.

EXAMPLE 11 Specifying a Web Proxy

```
# pprosetup -x webaccess.corp.net.com:8080
```

Specifies the host name, `webaccess.corp.net.com`, and port, `8080`, of the web proxy to use.

EXAMPLE 12 Scheduling Daily Patch Operations to Use the recommended Configuration

```
# pprosetup -c recommended -D -s 23:00
```

Schedules a daily patch analysis that uses the `recommended` configuration. You can use the alternate configuration in conjunction with or in place of a full analysis.

```
# pprosetup -c recommended -C
```

Cancels this job that uses the `recommended` configuration.

EXAMPLE 13 Modifying the recommended Configuration

```
# pprosetup -c recommended -a recommended@local
```

Modifies the `recommended` configuration to send email notifications to the `recommended@local` email alias about each scheduled analysis that uses the `recommended` cluster. Any scheduled operation that uses the `recommended` configuration will send notification to the alias you specify.

EXAMPLE 14 Creating a New Configuration

```
# pprosetup -c export -d /export/patches
```

EXAMPLE 14 Creating a New Configuration *(Continued)*

Creates a new configuration named `export` that downloads patches to the `/export/patches` directory. After executing this command, you can schedule patch operations or manually run patch operations that use the `export` configuration by running the `pprosetup` or `pprosvc` commands, respectively.

```
# pprosvc -c export -d
```

Downloads patches to the download directory specified by the `export` configuration.

Attributes See the [attributes\(5\)](#) man page for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWpprou
Interface Stability	Obsolete

See Also [crontab\(1\)](#), [boot\(1M\)](#), [patchadd\(1M\)](#), [patchrm\(1M\)](#), [pprosvc\(1M\)](#), [smpatch\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name pprosv – automation service program for Patch Manager

Synopsis `/usr/sbin/pprosv [-c config-name]`
`[-d [-p patch-id [,patch-id]...]] [-h]`
`[-i [-n] [-p patch-id [,patch-id]...]] [-l]`

Description **Note** – This command is deprecated. Use the `smatch analyze`, `smatch download`, and `smatch update` commands instead. See the [smatch\(1M\)](#) man page.

Use the `pprosv` command to analyze a system to determine the list of appropriate patches, download the patches, and apply them. This command invokes patch operations in response to a user request or at a scheduled time. You must run this command as superuser.

The `pprosv` command enables you to do the following:

- Analyze the host system for appropriate patches based on an established configuration
- Generate the list of appropriate patches
- Download the patches to your host system from the Sun patch server
- Apply the patches based on a patch policy

Use the `pprosv -i` command to analyze a system, download the appropriate patches, and apply them. If analysis determines that patches are needed, the `pprosv` command downloads them and applies them.

Specify other options to automate a subset of the patch management tasks. If you specify the `-d` option, your system is analyzed and the appropriate patches are downloaded to your system. If you specify the `-l` option, your system is analyzed and the appropriate patches are listed.

The list of patches that is generated by the analysis is based on all of the available patches from the Sun patch server. No explicit information about your host system or its network configuration is transmitted to Sun. Only a request for the Sun patch set is transmitted. The patch set is scanned for patches that are appropriate for this host system, the results are displayed, and those patches are optionally downloaded.

The `-d`, `-i`, and `-l` options are mutually exclusive.

Use the `-p` option to specify the patches on which to operate. You can use the `-p` option with the `-d` and `-i` options.

Options The following options are supported:

`-c config-name` Uses an alternate configuration for the current patch operation. Use the `pprosetup` command to create new configurations.

A configuration named `recommended` is included. For more information, see “Specifying Alternate Configurations” in the [pprosetup\(1M\)](#) man page.

Note – This feature is not supported by the `smpatch` command.

-d Downloads the patches that are appropriate for this host system. The patches are downloaded to the designated download directory.

This option generates a list of appropriate patches, as does the `-l` option. However, instead of just displaying the list of patches, the `-d` option displays and downloads the patches from the Sun patch server. The patches are downloaded using a secure connection, and all patches are authenticated using digital signature technology. Only patches that are signed with a Sun digital signature are stored in your download directory.

Note – Specifying this option is equivalent to running the `smpatch download` command.

-h Displays information about the command-line options.

-i Applies the patches based on the patch policy. This option analyzes your system to generate a list of appropriate patches. If analysis determines that patches are needed, the patches are downloaded and applied. If no patches are permitted to be applied in *automatic* mode (by running `pprosetup -p none`), this option is identical to specifying the `-d` option.

If only standard patches are permitted to be applied in automatic mode (by running `pprosetup -p standard`), all standard patches are applied.

Note – Specifying this option is equivalent to running the `smpatch update` command.

-l Generates a list of the patches that are appropriate for this host system.

Note – Specifying this option is equivalent to running the `smpatch analyze` command.

-n Runs `pprosv` in *automatic mode*. The command that the `cron` job specifies is `pprosv -i -n`. To schedule patch operations to run in automatic mode, see the [pprosetup\(1M\)](#) man page.

In automatic mode, the patch administrator (specified by the `-a` option) receives email notifications that describe the patches you downloaded and applied, and any error events that occurred.

Do not use this option on the command line.

Standard patches do not require any special actions on the part of the user. Such patches can be applied by using the `patchadd` command (see the [patchadd\(1M\)](#) man page) and do not need the host system to reboot for the patch to take effect.

All nonstandard patches are moved to the sequester directory if you use the `-n` option to run in automatic mode. If you run in manual mode, however, nonstandard patches that have properties that match the policy specified by `pprosetup -i` are applied. The rest of the nonstandard patches are moved to the sequester directory. You can apply patches from this directory at a later time. Patches, whether standard or nonstandard, that depend on sequestered patches are not applied under any circumstances. Such patches are placed in the sequester directory.

For any patch that is placed in the sequester directory, refer to the patch's README file to determine how to apply it to your system.

Note – This feature is not supported by the `smpatch` command.

`-p [patch-id[,patch-id,...]]`

Designates the specific patches on which to operate. Use this option with the `-d` option or the `-i` option. The list of patch IDs must be separated by commas.

The specified patches are adjusted to use the current versions based on the patch baseline. Patches that are required by the specified patches are added to the complete list of patches to be applied.

Note – Specifying this option is equivalent to specifying the `-i` option to the `smpatch analyze`, `smpatch download`, and `smpatch update` commands.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Applying Specific Patches in Manual Mode

```
# pprosv -i -p 102893-01,106895-09,106527-05
```

Applies patches 102893-01, 106895-09, and 106527-05 to the local system in manual mode.

EXAMPLE 2 Analyzing a System and Downloading Appropriate Patches

```
# pprosv -i
```

EXAMPLE 2 Analyzing a System and Downloading Appropriate Patches *(Continued)*

Performs an analysis of the current system and downloads the appropriate patches based on all the patches from the Sun patch server. The resulting list of patches can be very long.

EXAMPLE 3 Applying Patches From the Recommended Configuration

```
# pprosv -c recommended -i
```

Uses the recommended configuration to perform an analysis of the current system and downloads the appropriate patches. Standard patches and those needed from the recommended configuration are applied to the system based on the established patch policy. For information about setting the patch policy for manual mode, see the description of the `-i` option on the [pprosetup\(1M\)](#) man page.

Attributes See the [attributes\(5\)](#) man page for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWpprou
Interface Stability	Obsolete

See Also [patchadd\(1M\)](#), [patchrm\(1M\)](#), [pprosetup\(1M\)](#), [smc\(1M\)](#), [smpatch\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name praudit – print contents of an audit trail file

Synopsis praudit [-lrsx] [-ddel] [filename]...

Description praudit reads the listed *filenames* (or standard input, if no *filename* is specified) and interprets the data as audit trail records as defined in [audit.log\(4\)](#). By default, times, user and group IDs (UIDs and GIDs, respectively) are converted to their ASCII representation. Record type and event fields are converted to their ASCII representation. A maximum of 100 audit files can be specified on the command line.

Options The following options are supported:

-ddel

Use *del* as the field delimiter instead of the default delimiter, which is the comma. If *del* has special meaning for the shell, it must be quoted. The maximum size of a delimiter is three characters. The delimiter is not meaningful and is not used when the -x option is specified.

-l

Print one line per record.

-r

Print records in their raw form. Times, UIDs, GIDs, record types, and events are displayed as integers. This option is useful when naming services are offline. The -r option and the -s option are exclusive. If both are used, a format usage error message is output.

-s

Display records in their short form. Numeric fields' ASCII equivalents are looked up by means of the sources specified in the `/etc/nsswitch.conf` file (see [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#)). All numeric fields are converted to ASCII and then displayed. The short ASCII representations for the record type and event fields are used. This option and the -r option are exclusive. If both are used, a format usage error message is output.

-x

Print records in XML form. Tags are included in the output to identify tokens and fields within tokens. Output begins with a valid XML prolog, which includes identification of the DTD which can be used to parse the XML.

Files `/etc/security/audit_event`
Audit event definition and class mappings.

`/etc/security/audit_class`
Audit class definitions.

`/usr/share/lib/xml/dtd`
Directory containing the versioned DTD file referenced in XML output, for example, `adt_record.dtd.1`.

`/usr/share/lib/xml/style`
Directory containing the versioned XSL file referenced in XML output, for example, `adt_record.xsl.1`.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	See below

The command stability is evolving. The output format is unstable.

See Also [bsmconv\(1M\)](#), [getent\(1M\)](#), [audit\(2\)](#), [getauditflags\(3BSM\)](#), [getpwuid\(3C\)](#), [gethostbyaddr\(3NSL\)](#), [ethers\(3SOCKET\)](#), [getipnodebyaddr\(3SOCKET\)](#), [audit.log\(4\)](#), [audit_class\(4\)](#), [audit_event\(4\)](#), [group\(4\)](#), [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#), [passwd\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

See the section on Solaris Auditing in *System Administration Guide: Security Services*.

Notes This functionality is available only if the Solaris Auditing feature has been enabled. See [bsmconv\(1M\)](#) for more information.

Name printmgr – Solaris Print Manager is a graphical user interface for managing printers in a network

Synopsis /usr/sadm/admin/bin/printmgr

Description Solaris Print Manager is a Java-based graphical user interface that enables you to manage local and remote printer access. This tool can be used in the following name service environments: LDAP, NIS, and files. You must be logged in as superuser to use this tool.

Using Solaris Printer Manager is the preferred method for managing printer access because Solaris Print Manager centralizes printer information when it is used in a name service environment.

Adding printer information to a name service makes access to printers available to all systems on the network and generally makes printer administration easier because all the information about printers is centralized.

Solaris Print Manager may be run on a remote system with the display sent to the local system. See the *System Administration Guide: Solaris Printing* for instructions on setting the DISPLAY environment variable.

Using Solaris Print Manager to perform printer-related tasks automatically updates the appropriate printer databases. Solaris Print Manager also includes a command-line console that displays the lp command line for the add, modify, and delete printer operations. Errors and warnings may also be displayed when Printer Manager operations are performed.

Help is available by clicking the Help button.

Usage Solaris Print Manager enables you to do the following tasks:

Select a Name Service	Select a name service for retrieving or changing printer information.
Add Access to a Printer	Add printer access on a printer client using Solaris Print Manager.
Add an Attached Printer	After physically attaching the printer to a system, use Solaris Print Manager to install a local printer and make it available for printing.
Add a Network Printer	After physically attaching the printer to a system, use Solaris Print Manager to install a local printer and make it available for printing.
Modify Printer Properties	After adding access to a printer or adding an attached or network printer, you can modify certain printer attributes.
Delete a Printer	Delete access to a printer from the print client or delete a printer from the print server or from the name service environment.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWppm

See Also [ldap\(1\)](#), [lpget\(1M\)](#), [lpset\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

System Administration Guide: Solaris Printing for information on LDAP server replication.

Although users can use the LDAP command line utilities [ldapadd\(1\)](#) and [ldapmodify\(1\)](#) to update printer entries in the directory, the preferred method is to use [lpset](#). Otherwise, if the [lpadd](#) and [lpmodify](#) utilities are used, the administrator must ensure that the `printer-name` attribute value is unique within the `ou=printers` container on the LDAP server. If the value is not unique, the result of modifications done using [lpset](#) or the Solaris Print Manager, [printmgr](#) may be unpredictable.

-
- Name** print-service – select, report, import, export active print service on a system
- Synopsis** print-service [-s *service* [-m] | -q | -e *file* | -i *file*]
- Description** The print-service utility manages print service selection, as well as export and import of basic print queue configuration.
- Only a user root privileges or with the Printer Management profile can change the active print service or import print queue configuration.
- Options** The following options are supported:
- s *service*
Select the active print service for on a host. *service* can be one of lp or cups.
 - m
Migrate print queue configuration during print service selection.
 - q
Report the active print service on a host.
 - e *file*
Export basic print queue configuration to a file.
 - i *file*
Import basic print queue configuration from a file.
- Examples**
- EXAMPLE 1** Selecting a Print Service
- The following command selects the CUPS print service as the active print service on a host.
- ```
print-service -s cups
```
- EXAMPLE 2** Reporting the Active Print Service
- The following command reports the active print service on a host.
- ```
# print-service -q
```
- EXAMPLE 3** Exporting a Print Queue Configuration
- The following command exports the print queue configuration from the active print service.
- ```
print-service -e /tmp/queues
```
- EXAMPLE 4** Importing a Print Queue Configuration
- The following command imports the print queue configuration to the active print service.
- ```
# print-service -i /tmp/queues
```

Exit Status 0

Successful completion.

non-zero

An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWpcu
Interface Stability	Obsolete

See Also [Intro\(1\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes The print queue configuration saved and restored during export, import, and migration is limited to queue name and device name. It is likely that further configuration changes will be required before imported or migrated print queues become usable.

Name privatepw – administer FTP Server enhanced group access file

Synopsis privatepw [-c] [-f *ftpgroups*] [-g *real_group_name*] *accessgroup*
 privatepw -d [-f *ftpgroups*] *accessgroup*
 privatepw -l [-f *ftpgroups*]
 privatepw -V

Description The `privatepw` utility is an administrative tool to add, delete and list enhanced access group information in the `ftpgroups` file. See [ftpgroups\(4\)](#).

When `privatepw` is used without options, the help usage message is displayed. The `privatepw` utility prompts for a password when adding an enhanced access group entry or modifying an existing one.

Options The following options are supported by the `privatepw` utility:

- c Create a new `ftpgroups` file for the specified *accessgroup*.
- d Delete information about the specified *accessgroup* from the `ftpgroups` file.
- f *ftpgroups* Use the specified `ftpgroups` file for all updates.
- g *group* Set the real system group to the *group* specified. *group* is a valid group name returned by [getgrnam\(3C\)](#). If the real system group is not supplied with the -g option when adding an enhanced access group entry, the `privatepw` utility prompts for it.
- l List the contents of the `ftpgroups` file.
- V Display program copyright and version information, then terminate.

Operands The following operands are supported:

accessgroup The name of the enhanced access group to create or update. It consists of an arbitrary string of alphanumeric and punctuation characters. See [ftpgroups\(4\)](#).

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.

Files /etc/ftpd/ftpgroups
 /etc/group

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWftpu
Interface Stability	External

See Also [in.ftpd\(1M\)](#), [getgrnam\(3C\)](#), [ftpgroups\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name prodreg – Solaris Product Registry administration

Synopsis prodreg [--help] | [*subcommand operand* |PO]

Description The prodreg utility browses, unregisters, and uninstalls components in the Solaris Product Registry.

Some installers make use of the [libwsreg\(3LIB\)](#) interface to register information. The Solaris Product Registry contains information about this installed software.

The database associated with the Solaris Product Registry is relative to the root of the installed file system. Normally, this is the root of the file system (/). Sometimes, an alternate root, with a different Solaris Product Registry install database is used, as during live upgrade installation. See [live_upgrade\(5\)](#).

The Registry database informs installers about installed software. The Registry and the prodreg utility do not directly perform installation or deinstallation. prodreg supports installers which are executed externally and launched by the prodreg utility or other means.

Depending on the subcommand, the prodreg command offers equivalent functions from the command line or a GUI viewer. Two versions of the GUI viewer are available. The default is the Java Swing GUI. The other version, the Java awt GUI is provided for environments without Java Swing support.

The only feature which exists in the CLI which is not present in the GUI is the unregister subcommand. It is possible for the product registry to become corrupted, if for example, some software is removed manually instead of by means of an uninstaller program. These entries can confuse installers which are run subsequently. The unregister subcommand allows stale entries to be removed, even forcefully. Care should be exercised when unregistering software with the recursive or force options so that valid entries in the registry are not removed by mistake.

The prodreg command, whether it launches the GUI or the command line interface browser, displays the contents of the registry at that time only. If software is installed or uninstalled subsequent to or concurrent with launching either prodreg viewer, the view can be inconsistent with the Solaris Product Registry.

Subcommands You can specify options to the prodreg command without specifying a subcommand. If the subcommand is omitted, the swing subcommand is assumed.

The following subcommands are supported:

awt Launch the Java awt GUI.

The awt subcommand has the following format:

```
awt [-R alt_root | --help]
```

browse

Display the Solaris Product Registry using a command line interface. The text output of this command displays identifying information of any component in the product registry tree, including its ancestors and children. If you repeatedly invoke this subcommand, you can interactively browse the product registry.

The database components are related as a tree. Components may have one or more children. Except for the root, components have one parent. This subcommand displays the ancestors and children for a given component in the Solaris Product Registry database.

Each time the `prodreg browse` subcommand is executed, one component in the Registry is shown, along with its ancestry to the root of the Registry, as well as the component's children. To browse in the `prodreg` GUI, a user selects a node to expand and clicks on it. The analogous activity using the command line interface is to browse on children of nodes successively, which effectively expands a view into the registry.

Start by browsing the root of the Registry with `prodreg browse`. Select components to expand the scope of the browsing activity. Use browse numbers as a convenience during this interactive browsing, but not in scripts. Browse numbers can change from one session to the next or on different systems. This is because browse numbers are generated as they are first used, by a given user on a particular system.

The `browse` subcommand has the following format:

```
browse [-R alt_root] [-u uuid [-i instance | -p location]]
browse [-R alt_root] -n bnum [-i instance | -p location]
browse [-R alt_root] -m name
browse --help
```

This following information is output for each component:

BROWSE # This is the browse number associated with each component. This number can be used as an argument to either the `prodreg browse` or `info` subcommands as a convenience

+/-/. The `+` indicates a component in the tree with children who are not shown. `-` indicates a component with children of which at least one child is being shown. The `.` indicates a component which has no children. This field is

arranged so that each space (reading left to right) depicts a successive generation.

UUID	This is the component's unique identifier.
#	This is the instance number of the component. Software components can be installed multiple times. The software registry assigns a unique instance to each one.
NAME	Each component in the Solaris Product Registry database has a localized name which is displayed in this field. It is possible that this name may not be unique in the registry since there could be another component that has the same name.

The browse subcommand provides four distinct options for viewing the registry database. If multiple instances are associated with the same component, then the output of the subcommand is the ambiguous list. The request must be made unambiguous. The instance or location operands can be used to disambiguate the browse subcommand when used with the -u or -n options.

- If no operand information is given, the root of the registry tree is displayed, as well as its children. This is the starting point for interactive browsing of the entire registry database.
- If the browse number is given, the component associated is output.
- If the uuid is given, the component associated with it is output.
- If the name is given, the component associated with it is output.

info

Display attributes for any component in the Solaris Product Registry by supplying identifying information for the component.

Components in the product registry are associated with attributes. These attributes are composed of a *name* and a single *value* string.

This subcommand outputs attribute information associated with components in the Solaris Product Registry. Individual components in the product registry are specified as for the browse subcommand, except that either the *uuid*, *name* or *bnum* must be specified.

If a component requested is ambiguous as it has more than one instance or the name is assigned to more than one component in the registry, the list of possibilities is output, not the attribute information.

The default output of this subcommand is a complete list of each attributes, each on a new line. The attribute name is followed by a colon (:) and a SPACE. The attribute value follows, after which a RETURN is appended. Other options include can be specified using `-a` and `-d`.

The `info` subcommand has the following format:

```
info --help
info [-R alt_root] -u uuid [-i instance | -p location]
info [-R alt_root] -n bnum [-i instance | -p location]
info [-R alt_root] -m name [-a attr | -d ]
```

`help | --help | -?`

Display help text.

The `help` subcommand has the following format:

```
help | --help | -?
```

`swing`

Launch the Java Swing GUI. If the Java Swing GUI is not available, this subcommand fails.

The `swing` subcommand has the following format:

```
swing [-R alt_root | --help]
```

`version | --version | -V`

Outputs a current version string.

The `version` subcommand has the following format:

```
version | --version | -V
```

`unregister`

Unregister an entry in the registry.

Remove a component from the Solaris Product Registry. The component corresponding to the *uuid* specified with the `-u` option must be a single instance. If it is not, the subcommand fails and returns the list of instances with the associated *uuid*. The subcommand must be reissued using either `-p` or `-i` to uniquely determine which component instance to unregister.

The `unregister` subcommand fails if there are components in the registry which depend on the component which is to be unregistered.

The `unregister` subcommand fails if the user does not have write access to the registry. See [wsreg_can_access_registry\(3WSREG\)](#). The `unregister` subcommand fails if the user attempts to unregister a system component, instead of a component registered with the Solaris Product Registry. System components include those which include the attribute `PKG` and certain special Registry nodes including the following:

UUID	Name
root	System Registry
a01ee8dd-1dd1-11b2-a3f2-0800209a5b6b	Solaris System Software
8f64eabf-1dd2-11b2-a3f1-0800209a5b6b	Unclassified Software
b96ae9a9-1dd1-11b2-a3f2-0800209a5b6b	System Software Localizations
b1c43601-1dd1-11b2-a3f2-0800209a5b6b	Additional System Software
a8dcab4f-1dd1-11b2-a3f2-0800209a5b6b	Software Localizations

Before the `unregister` subcommand with the `-f` option is used, you should carefully review what components depend upon the component which is to be unregistered. The `-r` option is even more dangerous, since all children and software components depending upon the component are also deregistered. You can obtain the list of dependent components for a component with UUID *uuid* using:

```
prodreg info -u uuid -a "Dependent Components"
```

You can obtain a list of required components using:

```
prodreg info -u <uuid> -a "Required Components"
```

The output lists the name, UUID and instance of the component.

The `unregister` subcommand has the following format:

```
unregister [-R alt_root] [-fr] -u uuid [-p location | -i instance]  
unregister --help
```

`uninstall`

Launch an uninstaller program.

Each component in the registry can have an uninstaller associated with it. This subcommand executes this associated installer, if there is one, for a component in the registry given by the `-u` option. If there is no uninstaller associated with the component, the subcommand fails. If the component given by the `-u` option is not unique (as there is more than one instance of the component installed), the subcommand outputs a list of all instances. The subcommand must then be reissued using `-i` or `-p`

to disambiguate the uuid given with the `-u` option. Finally, if the component to uninstall is depended upon by other components, the command fails.

The command may also launch an uninstaller with a `-x` option. No checks for whether this uninstalls a component upon which other components depend in this case.

The `uninstall` command is not executed if the user does not have write access to the registry. See [wsreg_can_access_registry\(3WSREG\)](#).

The `uninstall` command has the following format:

```
uninstall [-R alt_root] [-f] -u uuid -p location
uninstall [-R alt_root] -i instance[arguments ...]
uninstall --help
```

Options The `awt` subcommand supports the following options:

- `--help` Display help text, do not launch the viewer.
- `-R alt_root` Use the specified alternate root to locate the database to display with the GUI viewer.

See OPERANDS for information regarding specification of *alt_root*.

Note – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the `-R` option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).

The `browse` subcommand supports the following options:

- `--help` Display help text, do not execute the browse subcommand.
- `-i instance` Output the specified component instance.
- `-m name` Output the component instances associated with the name.
- `-n bnum` Output the component instances associated with the browse number.
- `-p location` Output the component instance installed in the specified location. The install location for a component can be obtained using the 'info' subcommand.
- `-R alt_root` Use the specified alternate root to locate the database.

Note – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the `-R` option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).

`-u uuid` Output the component instances associated with the *uuid*.

The `info` subcommand supports the following options:

`-a attr` Output only the attribute whose name is given by the operand '*attr*', instead of all attributes of the specified component.

`-d` Output only the attribute whose name is `isDamaged`, instead of all attributes of the specified component. If the value is set to `true`, this attribute indicates that the component in the registry

`-help` Output help text, do not execute the `browse` subcommand.

`-i instance` The instance operand distinguishes among multiple instances of components with the same *uuid* or `browse` number.

`-m name` The name operand indicates one or more components in the registry.

`-n bnum` Output the attributes of the component instance associated with the `browse` number *bnum*. If there is more than one instance, the command must be disambiguated using the `-i` or `-p` options.

`-p location` The install location indicated distinguishes among multiple instances of components with the same *uuid* or `browse` number.

`-R alt_root` Use the specified alternate root to locate the database.

Note – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the `-R` option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).

`-u uuid` Output the attributes of the component instance associated with the *uuid*. If there is more than one instance, the subcommand must be disambiguated using the `-i` or `-p` options.

The `swing` subcommand supports the following options:

`-help` Output help text, do not execute the `install` subcommand.

`-R alt_root` Use the specified alternate root to locate the database.

Note – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the `-R` option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global

zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).

The `uninstall` subcommand supports the following options:

- f Force the uninstall. A forced subcommand uninstalls all instances of a component, even if there are multiple ambiguous instances of the `uuid` operand.
- help Output help text, do not execute the `unregister` subcommand.
- i *instance* Disambiguate the `uuid` operand.
- p *location* Disambiguate the `uuid` operand. *location* corresponds to the where the software component was installed.
- R *alt_root* Use the specified alternate root to locate the database.

Note – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the -R option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).
- u *uuid* Unregister the `uuid` component. If this component has been installed multiple times, the instance to unregister must be indicated unambiguously by using the -i or -p option.

The `unregister` subcommand supports the following options:

- f Force the unregistration. A forced subcommand unregisters a component even if there are other components which are dependent on this component.
- help Output help text, do not execute the `unregister` subcommand.
- i *instance* Disambiguate the `uuid` operand.
- p *location* Disambiguate the `uuid` operand. The *location* corresponds to the where the software component was installed.
- r Causes a recursive deregistration of a component as well as that component's children and dependencies.
- R *alt_root* Use the specified alternate root to locate the database.

Note – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the -R option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).
- u *uuid* Unregister component `uuid` of the component to unregister. If this component has been installed multiple times, the instance to unregister must be indicated unambiguously by using the -i or -p option.

Operands The following operands are supported:

- alt_root* Pathname to a file indicating an alternate root. The Solaris Product Registry database is located relative to the alternate root. If database relative to this location does not exist, it is created.
- Note** – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced by *alt_root*. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).
- attr* Name of an attribute. This operand is used only with the `info` subcommand. If *attr* is associated with a component, the attribute name and value is displayed.
- bnum* The browse number.
- Each component in the Solaris Product Registry is associated with a browse number. This number is generated for the convenience of an interactive user. The browse number can change if the system is rebooted or reinstalled. Do not store or use the browse number except to facilitate the `browse` and `info` subcommands. Browse numbers are always output by the `prodreg browse` subcommand. Only these values can be used as input values to the `browse` or `info` subcommand.
- instance* Software can be installed in more than one location. The Solaris Product Registry associates a unique instance number for each. The `browse` subcommand shows the instance number associated with each component in the registry. The *instance* operand is used to distinguish between installed, and possibly different, copies of software, when such exist.
- location* A path to a specific file or directory in the file system. This operand indicates the installed location of registered software. For instance, if software is installed relative to `/usr/local` the value of this operand would be `/usr/local`. The *install location* is used to installer or to indicate the location of an installer or to disambiguate which instance is intended, of a software component which can have multiple instances.
- name* Each software component in the Solaris Product Registry is associated with a name. This name is output by the `browse` subcommand. Some subcommands allow the user to input the software by name as an operand as a convenience. These names might not be unique. If the user supplies an ambiguous name, for which more than one components exist, the subcommand outputs a list of possible choices. The name can be localized; depending on the language setting the name can differ.
- uuid* Each software component in the Solaris Product Registry is associated with a unique identifier. This identifier is a handle which accesses an entry in the registry database. The *uuid* corresponds to the component irrespective of how many

instances of the component have been installed, and what the localized name of the component is.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Using the prodreg Command to Browse

Browsing is performed by means of the prodreg browse subcommand. Using these requests iteratively, one can peruse the tree, much as one would using a GUI by expanding components which are collections of other components. Browsing using browse numbers for convenience should be done only during this iterative browsing process, since the numbers are generated as a result of the browsing operation.

Evoking the browse subcommand without any arguments browses from the top of the registry. The output varies depending on the software installed on a particular system.

```
$ prodreg browse
BROWSE # +/-/.  UUID                                     #  NAME
=====  =====  =====
1      -      root                                     1  System
                                           Registry
2      +      a01ee8dd-1dd1-11b2-a3f2-0800209a5b6b  1  Solaris 10
                                           System
                                           Software
3      +      8f64eabf-1dd2-11b2-a3f1-0800209a5b6b  1  Unclassified
                                           Software
```

The output of this command lists the browse number, UUID, instance number and name of the root component and its children. The ancestors of a component, each parent up to the root, are also shown. The +/-/. column indicates whether the component in the tree is an expanded parent (-), a child with children (+) or a child without children (.).

EXAMPLE 2 Requesting Information About the Components in a Tree

The UUID, name and browse number fields can be used to request browsing information about components in the tree. The next example shows how a component can be browsed by UUID.

```
$ prodreg browse -u a01ee8dd-1dd1-11b2-a3f2-0800209a5b6b
BROWSE # +/-/.  UUID                                     #  NAME
=====  =====  =====
1      -      root                                     1  System
                                           Registry
2      -      a01ee8dd-1dd1-11b2-a3f2-0800209a5b6b  1  Solaris 10
                                           System
                                           Software
4      +      b96ae9a9-1dd1-11b2-a3f2-0800209a5b6b  1  System
                                           Software
                                           Localizations
```

EXAMPLE 2 Requesting Information About the Components in a Tree (Continued)

```
5          +   SUNWCall          1 Entire
                                   Distribution
```

EXAMPLE 3 Browsing a Node by Name

The following example shows how a node can be browsed by name.

```
$ prodreg browse -m "System Software Localizations"
BROWSE # +/-/.  UUID                                     #  NAME
===== =====
1          -    root                                     1  System
                                   Registry
2          -    a01ee8dd-1dd1-11b2-a3f2-0800209a5b6b  1  Solaris 10
                                   System
                                   Software
4          -    b96ae9a9-1dd1-11b2-a3f2-0800209a5b6b  1  System
                                   Software
                                   Localizations
316         .    SUNWceuow                               1  Central
                                   Europe OW
                                   Support
317         .    SUNWcsfw                               1  Simplified
                                   Chinese
                                   freeware
                                   message
318         .    SUNWceuox                               1  Central
                                   Europe
                                   64-bit OS
                                   Support
```

EXAMPLE 4 Browsing Iteratively

Additional output has been omitted. As a convenience, the browse number can be used for iterative browsing. This number should not be stored, as it differs depending on which system the prodreg command is run on, which user is running the command, and the log in session in which the command is run.

```
$ prodreg browse -n 3
BROWSE # +/-/.  UUID                                     #  NAME
===== =====
1          -    root                                     1  System
                                   Registry
2          -    a01ee8dd-1dd1-11b2-a3f2-0800209a5b6b  1  Solaris 10
```

EXAMPLE 4 Browsing Iteratively (Continued)

5	-	SUNWCall	1	System Software Entire Software Distribution
6	.	SUNWrsmo	1	RSMPI Operations Registration Module
7	+	SUNWCjvx	1	JavaVM (64-bit)
8	.	SUNWrsmx	1	Remote Shared Memory (64-bit)
9	+	SUNWCacc	1	System Accounting

EXAMPLE 5 Browsing Using an Ambiguous Value

If the requested value is ambiguous, the list of ambiguous instances are displayed. In the following example, there are two distinct software components with the same name.

```
$ ./prodreg browse -m JavaVM
```

The request failed because multiple components correspond to the criteria given. Use the list of possible components given below, select one and try again.

BROWSE #	+/-/.	UUID	#	NAME
12	.	org.spybeam.javavm	1	JavaVM
51	.	SUNWCjv	1	JavaVM

Issue one of the following requests again:

```
$ prodreg browse -u SUNWCjv
```

or

```
$ prodreg browse -u org.spybeam.javavm
```

EXAMPLE 6 Browsing Multiple Installations of Software

Another possible ambiguous response arises when a particular software component is installed multiple times. In the example below Example software is registered three times.

EXAMPLE 6 Browsing Multiple Installations of Software (Continued)

```
$ prodreg browse -m Example
```

The request failed because multiple components correspond to the criteria given. Use the list of possible components given below, select one and try again.

BROWSE #	+/-/. UUID	#	NAME
7	. org.spybeam.example	2	Example
7	. org.spybeam.example	3	Example
7	. org.spybeam.example	1	Example

The component requested could not be found.

EXAMPLE 7 Browsing Using a Particular Instance

The request can be repeated specifying a particular instance to disambiguate it. It is also possible to disambiguate a request with the `-p` option, followed by the install location. In this case, to browse the first instance of the Example software, one would use the command:

```
$ prodreg browse -u org.spybeam.example -i 1
```

EXAMPLE 8 Using the `info` Subcommand

The install location, as well as other attributes of a component can be obtained with the `info` subcommand. The `info` subcommand accepts the same disambiguating options and returns all the attributes of a component, each on a single line.

```
$ prodreg info -m Example
```

The request failed because multiple components correspond to the criteria given. Use the list of possible components given below, select one and try again.

BROWSE #	+/-/. UUID	#	NAME
7	. org.spybeam.example	2	Example
7	. org.spybeam.example	3	Example
7	. org.spybeam.example	1	Example

The component requested could not be found.

This variation of the `info` subcommand outputs all information associated with instance 1 of the Example component. The output from this variation is not displayed

```
$ prodreg info -u org.spybeam.example -i 1
```

EXAMPLE 9 Obtaining Information on the Install Location

You can use the `info` subcommand to obtain the install location and other attributes of a component. The `info` subcommand accepts the same disambiguating options as the `browse` subcommand. It returns all the attributes of a component, each on a single line. You can also request a single attribute.

The following command outputs the value of the install location attribute:

```
$ prodreg info -n 23 -a Location
```

EXAMPLE 10 Identifying and Unregistering Damaged Software

Removing installed software without using the associated uninstaller can damage the software in the registry. A damaged component indicates that certain software is installed, when in fact it is not present. A component can be damaged by removing files or packages directly, without running the associated uninstaller. The general rule to follow is: If software has been installed by an installer program, it should be uninstalled using the supplied uninstaller program.

This example shows how to identify and repair damaged software components so that software can be reinstalled.

Browsing for `Examplesoft`, produces the following:

```
$ prodreg browse -m Examplesoft
BROWSE # +/-/. UUID # NAME
=====
1 - root 1 System
Registry
2 + a01ee8dd-1dd1-11b2-a3f2-0800209a5b6b 1 Solaris 10
System
Software
3 + 8f64eabf-1dd2-11b2-a3f1-0800209a5b6b 1 Unclassified
Software
4 - 95842091-725a-8501-ef29-0472985982be 1 ExampleSoft
233 . 90209809-9785-b89e-c821-0472985982be 1 Example Doc
234 . EXS0zzt 1
235 . EXS0blob 1 Example Data
```

The `Examplesoft` child `EXS0zzt`, representing a package component of registered software does not display its name. This is likely to be because the software `Examplesoft` is damaged. Verify this with the following command:

```
$ prodreg info -u 95842091-725a-8501-ef29-0472985982be \
-i 1 -d
isDamaged=TRUE
```

EXAMPLE 10 Identifying and Unregistering Damaged Software *(Continued)*

Since Damaged is TRUE, some part of ExampleSoft is damaged. The following command lists the packages which make up ExampleSoft:

```
$ prodreg info \  
    -u 95842091-725a-8501-ef29-0472985982be\  
    -i 1 -a PKGS pkgs:  
EXSOztt EXSOblob
```

Use the pkginfo command to verify if EXSO is installed:

```
$ pkginfo EXSOztt  
ERROR: information for "EXSOztt" was not found  
$ pkginfo EXSOblob  
application EXSOblob      Example Data
```

The output of these commands shows that the package EXSOztt has been removed, probably with the pkgrm command. The ExampleSoft software will probably not function. To repair the software, one should run the uninstaller registered with ExampleSoft. You probably need to run the uninstaller with root permissions, as it unregisters the software and runs pkgrm commands. Both of these operations require root permissions.

```
# prodreg uninstall -u 95842091-725a-8501-ef29-0472985982be -i 1  
The install program requested could not be found.
```

Something is wrong, or else you would be able to access uninstall program to uninstall the software. One possibility is that the uninstaller program has been removed manually. It is possible to determine where the uninstaller is located by requesting the uninstall program attribute:

```
$ prodreg info -m ExampleSoft -a uninstallprogram  
uninstallprogram: /usr/bin/java -mx64m -classpath  
/var/sadm/prod/org.example.ExampleSoft/987573587 uninstall_ExampleSoft
```

Check to see if there is an uninstaller in the registered location.

```
# ls /var/sadm/prod/org.example.ExampleSoft/987573587  
/var/sadm/prod/org.example.ExampleSoft/987573587:  
No such file or directory
```

Since there is no uninstaller at the desired location, you have two options. One is to load the uninstaller from back up storage and run it manually. Use the command line stored in the registry:

```
# /usr/bin/java -mx64m -classpath \  
    /var/sadm/prod/org.example.ExampleSoft/987573587 \  
    uninstall_ExampleSoft
```

If there is no other possibility, manually unregister the software.

EXAMPLE 10 Identifying and Unregistering Damaged Software *(Continued)*

```
# prodreg unregister -u 95842091-725a-8501-ef29-0472985982be -i 1
```

This does not remove the remaining package EXSOblob. You must do this manually.

```
# pkgrm EXSOblob
```

EXAMPLE 11 Removing Multiple Components

Component A has children B and C, and C has children D and E, and the you wish to remove all of the components at once. This is useful if the whole hierarchy has to be reinstalled and the uninstaller has been lost or cannot be run

```
$ prodreg browse -u UUID-of-C
BROWSE # +/-/. UUID # NAME
=====
1 - root 1 System Registry
2 + a01ee8dd-1dd1-11b2-a3f2-0800209a5b6b 1 Solaris 10 System Software
3 + 8f64eabf-1dd2-11b2-a3f1-0800209a5b6b 1 Unclassified Software
1423 - UUID-of-A 1 Example A
1436 . UUID-of-B 1 Example B
1437 - UUID-of-C 1 Example C
1462 . UUID-of-D 1 Example D
1463 . UUID-of-E 1 Example E

# prodreg uninstall -u UUID-of-A -i 1
```

The `uninstall` subcommand can fail various ways, for example if the java classes have been removed, if the user has insufficient permissions or if Java software is not present on the system. The recursive unregistration subcommand is very powerful and dangerous. Not only does it unregister every child of a component, it also unregisters every component which depends upon the component to unregister. It is a good idea to view all information about the component to determine if any components will be unintentionally unregistered with `UUID-of-A`.

```
$ prodreg info -u UUID-of-A
Title: Example A Software
Version: 5.8.0.2001.11.02
Location: /usr
Vendor: Example Vendor
uninstallprogram: /usr/bin/java -mx64m -classpath
/var/sadm/prod/org.example.ExampleA/90820965 uninstall_ExampleA
```

EXAMPLE 11 Removing Multiple Components (Continued)

```

vendorurl: http://www.example.org
description: Example A Software has many uses
Supported Languages: en

```

Child Components:

Name	UUID	#
-----	-----	-
Example B	UUID-of-B	1
Example C	UUID-of-C	1

Required Components:

Name	UUID	#
-----	-----	-
Example B	UUID-of-B	1
Example C	UUID-of-C	1

No software depends on Example A, or else an additional field, Dependent Components would be shown. To further ensure that there are no surprises, one should examine the dependent components and children of UUID-of-B and UUID-of-C, all the components which depend on UUID-of-B, UUID-of-C and their children, and so on.

If you examine the browse tree, you know the entire list of descendents of UUID-of-A. You can also examine the dependent component attributes of all of Example A's descendents.

```
$ prodreg info -u UUID-of-B -i 1 -a "Dependent Components"
```

Dependent Components:

Name	UUID	#
-----	-----	-
Example A	UUID-of-A	1

```
$ prodreg info -u UUID-of-C -i 1 -a "Dependent Components"
```

Dependent Components:

Name	UUID	#
-----	-----	-
Example A	UUID-of-A	1

```
$ prodreg info -u UUID-of-D -i 1 -a "Dependent Components"
```

Dependent Components:

Name	UUID	#
-----	-----	-
Example C	UUID-of-C	1

```
$ prodreg info -u UUID-of-E -i 1 -a "Dependent Components"
```

Dependent Components:

Name	UUID	#
-----	-----	-

EXAMPLE 11 Removing Multiple Components *(Continued)*

```
Example C                                UUID-of-C                                1
```

A recursive unregistration of Example A only results in unregistering Example A and its descendents, as intended.

```
# prodreg unregister -r -u UUID-of-A -i 1
```

EXAMPLE 12 Reinstalling a Damaged Component

In this example, there is a component, Software ZZZ which is depended upon by other software. Software ZZZ has been damaged and you need to reinstall it. The reinstallation is impossible until Software ZZZ is unregistered.

First, you check what depends upon Software ZZZ:

```
$ prodreg info -m "Software ZZZ" -a "Dependent Components"
```

Dependent Components:

Name	UUID	#
-----	-----	-
Software Foobar	d9723500-9823-1432-810c-0100e09832ff	1

Normally, you would have to uninstall Software Foobar before unregistering Software ZZZ, since Software Foobar depends on Software ZZZ. You decide that it is impossible or unreasonable to reinstall Software Foobar. Performing a recursive unregister of Software ZZZ is not an option as it would unregister Software Foobar as well. Instead you can do a forced unregister of Software ZZZ. The UUID of Software ZZZ is 90843fb1-9874-3a20-9b88-984b32098432.

```
# prodreg unregister -f -u 90843fb1-9874-3a20-9b88-984b32098432 -i 1
```

You can then reinstall Software ZZZ:

```
# /usr/bin/java -cp /usr/installers/org.example.softwarezzz
```

Bugs The registry can become out of date because of software being manually removed, or removed using `pkgrm(1M)` directly. To avoid damaging the registry, use uninstall programs to remove software which was initially installed using an install program.

Environment Variables The following environment variable affects the execution of `prodreg`:

PKG_INSTALL_ROOT If present, defines the full path name of a directory to use as the system's `PKG_INSTALL_ROOT` path. All product and package information files are then looked for in the directory tree, starting with the specified `PKG_INSTALL_ROOT` path. If not present, the default system path of `/` is used.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWwsr2, SUNWwsrv
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [pkgadd\(1M\)](#), [pkgrm\(1M\)](#), [wsreg_can_access_registry\(3WSREG\)](#), [libwsreg\(3LIB\)](#), [live_upgrade\(5\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Application Packaging Developer's Guide

Notes The prodreg GUI and command line interface view both the Solaris Product Registry and the package database. Both look like components in the registry, but some of these cannot be unregistered or uninstalled. Packages do not have an associated uninstaller, so they cannot be uninstalled using the prodreg `uninstall` subcommand. Solaris packages cannot be unregistered using the prodreg `unregister` subcommand. Packages are removed using the [pkgrm\(1M\)](#) command, after which time the packages do not appear in the GUI or CLI prodreg viewer.

It is preferable to remove software using the uninstaller associated with the software installed than to remove individual packages using [pkgrm\(1M\)](#), since the uninstaller software takes care of comprehensive removal of all resources associated with the installed software, including unregistering information in Registry and removing the appropriate packages.

The prodreg `uninstall` subcommand launches an external program. The command line conventions of these programs have to be used to indicate the alternate root for the product registry. Another possibility is to use the `PKG_INSTALL_ROOT` environment variable for this purpose as the install program is executed in the same environment as prodreg. Uninstall programs are frequently java classes which require Java to be installed. If Java software has been removed or is missing from a Solaris distribution, it is impossible to run java based uninstallers.

Only the prodreg `unregister` and `uninstall` subcommands can only be run with root permissions. This is because they modify the product registry in the case of `unregister`, and remove packages in the case of `uninstall`. The other operations merely read the registry and can be run with any user permissions. The prodreg `uninstall` subcommand might require root permissions as well, as installers can execute commands such as [pkgadd\(1M\)](#) or [pkgrm\(1M\)](#) which require root permissions to run.

Attributes associated with components are documented in various places -primarily in the *Application Packaging Developer's Guide*. The attributes associated with the Solaris Product Registry itself are described in the following glossary.

Dependent Components	List of components upon which the component depends.
Location	The location relative to which software was installed.
pkgs	List of packages which correspond to the component. These packages are added with <code>pkgadd</code> after the component is registered. They are removed with <code>pkgrm</code> before the component is unregistered.
Required Components	List of components on which the component depends.
Source	Media from which the install was done.
Supported Languages	List of locales for which there are registered titles.
Title	<i>Name</i> given by the <code>prodreg browse</code> subcommand. This name can be localized to the locale in which the shell is running.
Unique Name	Name used by previous versions of the Solaris Product Registry. This value is often set to the package name corresponding to a given component in the registry.
Vendor	Vendor who produced the component.
Version	Version string associated with the component.

The Registry can contain components which do not correspond to software actually installed on the system. This can be detected several ways. The easiest is to check using the `info` subcommand if a component is damaged. Another way is to determine where software was installed using the `info` subcommand, and verify it is still there.

- Name** projadd – administer a new project on the system
- Synopsis** projadd [-n] [-f *filename*] [-p *projid* [-o]] [-c *comment*]
 [-U *user* [,*user*]...] [-G *group* [,*group*]...]
 [[-K *name* [=value [,value]...]...]] *project*
- Description** projadd adds a new project entry to the /etc/project file. If the files backend is being used for the project database, the new project is available for use immediately upon the completion of the projadd command.
- Options** The following options are supported:
- c *comment* Add a project comment. Comments are stored in the project's entry in the /etc/project file. Generally, comments contain a short description of the project and are used as the field for the project's full name.

Specify *comment* as a text string. *comment* cannot contain a colon (:) or NEWLINE.
 - f *filename* Specify the project file to modify. If no *filename* is specified, the system project file, /etc/project, is modified.
 - G *group*[,*group*...] Specify a group list for the project.
 - K *name* [=value[,value...]] Specify an attribute list for the project. Multiple -K options can be specified to set values on multiple keys, such as:

-K *key1*=*value1* -K "*key2*=(*value2a*) , (*value2b*)"

Resource control attributes use parentheses to specify values for a key. Because many user shells interpret parentheses as special characters, it is best to enclose an argument to -K that contains parentheses with double quotes, as shown above and in EXAMPLES, below. See [resource_controls\(5\)](#) for a description of the resource controls you can specify for a project.
 - n Syntax check. Check the format of the existing system project file and modifications only. The contents of the existing project file, such as user names, group names, and resources that are specified in the project attributes are not checked.
 - o This option allows the project ID specified by the -p option to be non-unique within the project file.
 - p *projid* Set the project ID of the new project.

Specify *projid* as a non-negative decimal integer below UID_MAX as defined in `limits.h`. *projid* defaults to the next available

unique number above the highest number currently assigned. For example, if *projids* 100, 105, and 200 are assigned, the next default *projid* is 201. *projids* between 0-99 are reserved by SunOS.

`-U user[,user...]` Specify a user list for the project.

Operands The following operands are supported:

project The name of the project to create. The *project* operand is a string consisting of characters from the set of alphabetic characters, numeric characters, underline (`_`), and hyphen (`-`). The period (`.`) is reserved for projects with special meaning to the operating system. The first character of the project name must be a letter. An error message is displayed if these restrictions are not met.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Adding a Project

The following command creates the project `salesaudit` and sets the resource controls specified as arguments to the `-K` option.

```
projadd -p 111 -G sales,finance -c "Auditing Project" \
-K "rcap.max-rss=10GB" \
-K "process.max-file-size=(priv,50MB,deny)" \
-K "task.max-lwps=(priv,100,deny)" salesaudit
```

This command would produce the following entry in `/etc/project`:

```
salesaudit:111:Auditing Project::sales,finance: \
process.max-file-size=(priv,52428800,deny); \
rcap.max-rss=10737418240;task.max-lwps=(priv,100,deny)
```

Note that the preceding would appear as one line in `/etc/project`.

Comparing the `projadd` command and resulting output in `/etc/project`, note the effect of the scaling factor in the resource cap (`rcap.max-rss=10GB`) and the resource control (`process.max-file-size=(priv,50MB,deny)`). Modifiers, such as B, KB, and MB, and scaling factors are specified in [resource_controls\(5\)](#).

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 2 The command syntax was invalid. A usage message for `projadd` is displayed.
- 3 An invalid argument was provided to an option.
- 4 The *projid* given with the `-p` option is already in use.
- 5 The project files contain an error. See [project\(4\)](#).
- 6 The project to be added, group, user, or resource does not exist.

- 9 The project is already in use.
 10 Cannot update the /etc/project file.

Files /etc/project System project file

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWesu
Interface Stability	See below.

Invocation is evolving. Human readable output is unstable.

See Also [projects\(1\)](#), [groupadd\(1M\)](#), [groupdel\(1M\)](#), [groupmod\(1M\)](#), [grpck\(1M\)](#), [projdel\(1M\)](#), [projmod\(1M\)](#), [useradd\(1M\)](#), [userdel\(1M\)](#), [usermod\(1M\)](#), [project\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [resource_controls\(5\)](#)

Notes In case of an error, `projadd` prints an error message and exits with a non-zero status.

`projadd` adds a project definition only on the local system. If a network name service such as NIS or LDAP is being used to supplement the local /etc/project file with additional entries, `projadd` cannot change information supplied by the network name service.

Name projdel – delete a project from the system

Synopsis projdel [-f *filename*] *project*

Description The projdel utility deletes a project from the system and makes the appropriate changes to the system file.

Options The following options are supported:

-f *filename* Specify the project file to modify. If no *filename* is specified, the system project file, /etc/project, is modified.

Operands The following operands are supported:

project The name of the project to be deleted.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 2 The command syntax was invalid. A usage message for projdel is displayed.
- 3 An invalid argument was provided to an option.
- 4 The *projid* given with the -p option is already in use.
- 5 The project files contain an error. See [project\(4\)](#).
- 6 The project to be modified, group, user, or resource does not exist.
- 9 The project is already in use.
- 10 Cannot update the /etc/project file.

Files /etc/project System project file

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWesu
Interface stability	See below.

Invocation is evolving. Human readable output is unstable.

See Also [projects\(1\)](#), [groupadd\(1M\)](#), [groupdel\(1M\)](#), [groupmod\(1M\)](#), [grpck\(1M\)](#), [logins\(1M\)](#), [projadd\(1M\)](#), [projmod\(1M\)](#), [useradd\(1M\)](#), [userdel\(1M\)](#), [usermod\(1M\)](#), [project\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Diagnostics In case of an error, `projdel` prints an error message and exits with a non-zero status.

Notes `projdel` deletes a project definition only on the local system. If a network name service such as NIS or LDAP is being used to supplement the local `/etc/project` file with additional entries, `projdel` cannot change information supplied by the network name service.

Name projmod – modify a project's information on the system

Synopsis projmod [-n] [-A|-f *filename* | -]

```
projmod [-n] [-A|-f filename | -] [-p projid [-o]]
      [-c comment] [-a|-s|-r] [-U user [,user...] ]
      [-G group [,group]...] ]
      [ [-K name [=value [,value]...]...] ]
      [-l new_projectname] project
```

Description The projmod utility modifies a project's definition on the system. projmod changes the definition of the specified project and makes the appropriate project-related system file and file system changes.

Options The following options are supported:

- A Apply the project's resource controls, as defined in the system's project database, to the project if it is active.
- a Specify that the users, groups, attributes, or attribute values specified by the -U, -G or -K options should be added to the project, rather than replacing the existing member or attribute list.
- c *comment* Specify *comment* as a text string. Generally, *comment* contains a short description of the project. This information is stored in the project's `/etc/project` entry.
- f *filename* | - Specify the project file to modify or validate or specify input from stdin for validation. As noted under OPERANDS, if you do not specify a project in a projmod command line, projmod validates the argument to -f. If you do not use this option, the system project file, `/etc/project`, is modified.
- G *group* [,*group*...] Specify a replacement list of member groups of the project. When used in conjunction with the -a or -r options, this option specifies a list of groups to be added or removed from the project.
- K *name* [=value[,value...]] Specify a replacement list of project attributes for the project. When used in conjunction with the -a, -r, or -s options, this option specifies a list of attribute values to be added, removed, or replaced in the project. Attributes must be delimited by semicolons (;). Multiple -K options can be specified to set, add, remove, or substitute values on multiple keys, such as:

```
-K key1=value1 -K "key2=(value2a) , (value2b)"
```

Resource control attributes use parentheses to specify values for a key. Because many user shells interpret parentheses as special

characters, it is best to enclose an argument to `-K` that contains parentheses with double quotes, as shown above and in EXAMPLES, below. See [resource_controls\(5\)](#) for a description of the resource controls you can specify for a project.

- `-l new_projectname` Specify the new project name for the project. The *new_projectname* argument is a string consisting of characters from the set of alphabetic characters, numeric characters, period (`.`), underline (`_`), and hyphen (`-`). The first character should be alphabetic. An error message is written if these restrictions are not met. The project name must also be unique within the project file.
- `-n` Syntax check. Check the format of the existing system project file and modifications only. The contents of the existing project file, such as user names, group names, and resources that are specified in the project attributes are not checked.
- `-o` This option allows the project ID specified by the `-p` option to be non-unique within the project file.
- `-p projid` Specify a new project ID for the project. It must be a non-negative decimal integer less than MAXUID as defined in `param.h`. This value must be unique within the project file if the `-o` option is not specified.
- `-r` Specify that the users, groups, attributes, or attribute values specified by the `-U`, `-G` or `-K` options should be removed from the project, rather than replacing the existing member or attribute list.
- `-s` Specify that the list of attributes specified by the `-K` option should have their values replaced. If the attributes do not exist, they are added as if the `a` option was used. This option has no effect the `-U` or `-G` options.
- `-U user [,user...]` Specify a replacement list of member users of the project. When used in conjunction with the `-a` or `-r` options, this option specifies a list of users to be added or removed from the project.

Operands The following operands are supported:

- project* An existing project name to be modified or displayed.
- (none)* If no operand is given, the project file is validated without modifying any project.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Using the -K Option for Addition of an Attribute Value

Consider the following `project(4)` entry:

```
salesaudit:111:Auditing Project::sales,finance: \  
  process.max-file-size=(priv,52428800,deny); \  
  task.max-lwps=(priv,100,deny)
```

The preceding would appear as one line in `/etc/project`. For this and the following examples, the focus is on the attributes field in the project entry. That is, the last field, the field following the last semicolon.

The attributes field for the project `salesaudit` lists the following resource control:

```
task.max-lwps=(priv,1000,signal=KILL)
```

The following `projmod` command adds an action clause to the preceding entry:

```
# projmod -a -K "task.max-lwps=(priv,100,deny)" salesaudit
```

...with the resulting attributes field in the entry for `salesaudit`:

```
task.max-lwps=(priv,100,deny),(priv,1000,signal=KILL)
```

EXAMPLE 2 Using the -K Option for the Substitution of an Attribute Value

Assume an attributes field in a `project(4)` entry for the project `salesaudit` that lists the following resource control:

```
task.max-lwps=(priv,100,deny),(priv,1000,signal=KILL)
```

The following `projmod` command substitutes the action clause specified in the command for the action clauses in the preceding entry:

```
# projmod -s -K "task.max-lwps=(priv,500,signal=SIGSTOP)" salesaudit
```

...with the resulting attributes field in the entry for `salesaudit`:

```
task.max-lwps=(priv,500,signal=SIGSTOP)
```

EXAMPLE 3 Using the -K Option for Removal of an Attribute Value

Assume an attributes field in a `project(4)` entry for a project `salesaudit` that lists the following resource control:

```
task.max-lwps=(priv,100,deny),(priv,1000,signal=KILL)
```

The following `projmod` command removes the first action clause from the preceding entry:

```
# projmod -r -K "task.max-lwps=(priv,100,deny)" salesaudit
```


EXAMPLE 3 Using the -K Option for Removal of an Attribute Value (Continued)

...with the resulting attributes field in the entry for salesaudit:

```
task.max-lwps=(priv,1000,signal=KILL)
```

EXAMPLE 4 Specifying Multiple Attribute Values

Suppose you want to achieve the following resource controls for the project salesaudit:

```
task.max-lwps=(priv,100,deny)
process.max-file-size=(priv,50MB,deny)
```

The following projmod command adds these resource controls for salesaudit:

```
# projmod -a -K "task.max-lwps=(priv,100,deny)" \
-K "process.max-file-size=(priv,50MB,deny)" salesaudit
```

...with the resulting attributes field in the entry for salesaudit:

```
task.max-lwps=(priv,100,deny);process.max-file-size=(priv,52428800,deny)
```

In this example, note the effect of the use of the modifier and scaling factor for the resource control process.max-file-size. The specification in projmod:

```
"process.max-file-size=(priv,50MB,deny)"
```

...becomes, in /etc/project:

```
process.max-file-size=(priv,52428800,deny)
```

That is, 50MB is expanded to 52428800. The modifiers, such as MB, and scaling factors you can use for resource controls are specified in [resource_controls\(5\)](#).

EXAMPLE 5 Binding a Pool to a Project

The following command sets the project.pool attribute for the project sales.

```
# projmod -a -K project.pool=salespool sales
```

EXAMPLE 6 Evaluating Input from stdin

The following command uses the -f option without a project name operand to evaluate the contents of an NIS projects map.

```
# ypcat project | projmod -f -
```

Exit Status In case of an error, `projmod` prints an error message and exits with one of the following values:

The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 2 The command syntax was invalid. A usage message for `projmod` is displayed.
- 3 An invalid argument was provided to an option.
- 4 The *projid* given with the `-p` option is already in use.
- 5 The project files contain an error. See [project\(4\)](#).
- 6 The project to be modified, group, user, or resource does not exist.
- 9 The project is already in use.
- 10 Cannot update the `/etc/project` file.

Files

- `/etc/group` System file containing group definitions
- `/etc/project` System project file
- `/etc/passwd` System password file
- `/etc/shadow` System file containing users' encrypted passwords and related information

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWesu
Interface Stability	See below.

Invocation is evolving. Human readable output is unstable.

See Also [groupadd\(1M\)](#), [groupdel\(1M\)](#), [groupmod\(1M\)](#), [projadd\(1M\)](#), [projdel\(1M\)](#), [useradd\(1M\)](#), [userdel\(1M\)](#), [usermod\(1M\)](#), [passwd\(4\)](#), [project\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [resource_controls\(5\)](#)

Notes The `projmod` utility modifies project definitions only in the local `/etc/project` file. If a network name service such as NIS or LDAP is being used to supplement the local files with additional entries, `projmod` cannot change information supplied by the network name service. However `projmod` verifies the uniqueness of project name and project ID against the external name service.

Name prstat – report active process statistics

Synopsis prstat [-acHJLmRrtTv] [-d u | d] [-C *psrsetlist*] [-h *lgrplist*]
 [-j *projlist*] [-k *tasklist*] [-n *ntop[,nbottom]*]
 [-p *pidlist*] [-P *cpulist*] [-s *key* | -S *key*]
 [-u *euidlist*] [-U *uidlist*] [-z *zoneidlist*] [-Z]
 [*interval* [*count*]]

Description The `prstat` utility iteratively examines all active processes on the system and reports statistics based on the selected output mode and sort order. `prstat` provides options to examine only processes matching specified PIDs, UIDs, zone IDs, CPU IDs, and processor set IDs.

The `-j`, `-k`, `-C`, `-p`, `-P`, `-u`, `-U`, and `-z` options accept lists as arguments. Items in a list can be either separated by commas or enclosed in quotes and separated by commas or spaces.

If you do not specify an option, `prstat` examines all processes and reports statistics sorted by CPU usage.

Options The following options are supported:

- a
Report information about processes and users. In this mode `prstat` displays separate reports about processes and users at the same time.
- c
Print new reports below previous reports instead of overprinting them.
- C *psrsetlist*
Report only processes or lwps that are bound to processor sets in the given list. Each processor set is identified by an integer as reported by [psrset\(1M\)](#). The load averages displayed are the sum of the load averages of the specified processor sets (see [pset_getloadavg\(3C\)](#)). Processes with one or more LWPs bound to processor sets in the given list are reported even when the `-L` option is not used.
- d u | d
Specify `u` for a printed representation of the internal representation of time. See [time\(2\)](#). Specify `d` for standard date format. See [date\(1\)](#).
- h *lgrplist*
Report only processes or lwps whose home *lgroup* is in the given list of *lgroups*. No processes or lwps will be listed for invalid *lgroups*.
- H
Report information about home *lgroup*. In this mode, `prstat` adds an extra column showing process or lwps home *lgroup* with the header LGRP.
- j *projlist*
Report only processes or lwps whose project ID is in the given list. Each project ID can be specified as either a project name or a numerical project ID. See [project\(4\)](#).

- J
Report information about processes and projects. In this mode `prstat` displays separate reports about processes and projects at the same time.
- k *tasklist*
Report only processes or lwps whose task ID is in *tasklist*.
- L
Report statistics for each light-weight process (LWP). By default, `prstat` reports only the number of LWPs for each process.
- m
Report microstate process accounting information. In addition to all fields listed in `-v` mode, this mode also includes the percentage of time the process has spent processing system traps, text page faults, data page faults, waiting for user locks and waiting for CPU (latency time).
- n *ntop*[,*nbottom*]
Restrict number of output lines. The *ntop* argument determines how many lines of process or lwp statistics are reported, and the *nbottom* argument determines how many lines of user, task, or projects statistics are reported if the `-a`, `-t`, `-T`, or `-J` options are specified. By default, `prstat` displays as many lines of output that fit in a window or terminal. When you specify the `-c` option or direct the output to a file, the default values for *ntop* and *nbottom* are 15 and 5.
- p *pidlist*
Report only processes whose process ID is in the given list.
- P *cpulist*
Report only processes or lwps which have most recently executed on a CPU in the given list. Each CPU is identified by an integer as reported by `psrinfo(1M)`.
- R
Put `prstat` in the real time scheduling class. When this option is used, `prstat` is given priority over time-sharing and interactive processes. This option is available only for superuser.
- r
Disable lookups for user names and project names. (Note that this does not apply to lookups for the `-j`, `-u`, or `-U` options.)
- s *key*
Sort output lines (that is, processes, lwps, or users) by *key* in descending order. Only one *key* can be used as an argument.

There are five possible key values:

cpu
Sort by process CPU usage. This is the default.

-
- `pri`
Sort by process priority.
 - `rss`
Sort by resident set size.
 - `size`
Sort by size of process image.
 - `time`
Sort by process execution time.
 - `-S key`
Sort output lines by *key* in ascending order. Possible *key* values are the same as for the `-s` option. See `-s`.
 - `-t`
Report total usage summary for each user. The summary includes the total number of processes or LWPs owned by the user, total size of process images, total resident set size, total cpu time, and percentages of recent cpu time and system memory.
 - `-T`
Report information about processes and tasks. In this mode `prstat` displays separate reports about processes and tasks at the same time.
 - `-u euidlist`
Report only processes whose effective user ID is in the given list. Each user ID may be specified as either a login name or a numerical user ID.
 - `-U uidlist`
Report only processes whose real user ID is in the given list. Each user ID may be specified as either a login name or a numerical user ID.
 - `-v`
Report verbose process usage. This output format includes the percentage of time the process has spent in user mode, in system mode, and sleeping. It also includes the number of voluntary and involuntary context switches, system calls and the number of signals received. Statistics that are not reported are marked with the `-` sign.
 - `-z zoneidlist`
Report only processes or LWPs whose zone ID is in the given list. Each zone ID can be specified as either a zone name or a numerical zone ID. See `zones(5)`.
 - `-Z`
Report information about processes and zones. In this mode, `prstat` displays separate reports about processes and zones at the same time.

Output The following list defines the column headings and the meanings of a `prstat` report:

- `PID`
The process ID of the process.

USERNAME

The real user (login) name or real user ID.

SWAP

The total virtual memory size of the process, including all mapped files and devices, in kilobytes (K), megabytes (M), or gigabytes (G).

RSS

The resident set size of the process (RSS), in kilobytes (K), megabytes (M), or gigabytes (G). The RSS value is an estimate provided by [proc\(4\)](#) that might underestimate the actual resident set size. Users who want to get more accurate usage information for capacity planning should use the `-x` option to [pmap\(1\)](#) instead.

STATE

The state of the process:

cpuN

Process is running on CPU *N*.

sleep

Sleeping: process is waiting for an event to complete.

wait

Waiting: process is waiting for CPU usage to drop to the CPU-caps enforced limits. See the description of CPU-caps in [resource_controls\(5\)](#).

run

Runnable: process in on run queue.

zombie

Zombie state: process terminated and parent not waiting.

stop

Process is stopped.

PRI

The priority of the process. Larger numbers mean higher priority.

NICE

Nice value used in priority computation. Only processes in certain scheduling classes have a nice value.

TIME

The cumulative execution time for the process.

CPU

The percentage of recent CPU time used by the process. If executing in a non-global zone and the pools facility is active, the percentage will be that of the processors in the processor set in use by the pool to which the zone is bound.

PROCESS

The name of the process (name of executed file).

LWPID

The lwp ID of the lwp being reported.

NLWP

The number of lwps in the process.

With the some options, in addition to a number of the column headings shown above, there are:

NPROC

Number of processes in a specified collection.

MEMORY

Percentage of memory used by a specified collection of processes.

The following columns are displayed when the `-v` or `-m` option is specified

USR

The percentage of time the process has spent in user mode.

SYS

The percentage of time the process has spent in system mode.

TRP

The percentage of time the process has spent in processing system traps.

TFL

The percentage of time the process has spent processing text page faults.

DFL

The percentage of time the process has spent processing data page faults.

LCK

The percentage of time the process has spent waiting for user locks.

SLP

The percentage of time the process has spent sleeping.

LAT

The percentage of time the process has spent waiting for CPU.

VCX

The number of voluntary context switches.

ICX

The number of involuntary context switches.

SCL

The number of system calls.

SIG

The number of signals received.

Under the `-L` option, one line is printed for each lwp in the process and some reporting fields show the values for the lwp, not the process.

The following column is displayed when the `-H` option is specified:

LGRP

The home *lgroup* of the process or lwp.

Operands The following operands are supported:

count

Specifies the number of times that the statistics are repeated. By default, `prstat` reports statistics until a termination signal is received.

interval

Specifies the sampling interval in seconds; the default interval is 5 seconds.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Reporting the Five Most Active Super-User Processes

The following command reports the five most active super-user processes running on CPU1 and CPU2:

```
example% prstat -u root -n 5 -P 1,2 1 1
```

PID	USERNAME	SWAP	RSS	STATE	PRI	NICE	TIME	CPU	PROCESS/LWP	
306	root	3024K	1448K	sleep	58	0	0:00.00	0.3%	sendmail/1	
102	root	1600K	592K	sleep	59	0	0:00.00	0.1%	in.rdisc/1	
250	root	1000K	552K	sleep	58	0	0:00.00	0.0%	utmpd/1	
288	root	1720K	1032K	sleep	58	0	0:00.00	0.0%	sac/1	
1	root	744K	168K	sleep	58	0	0:00.00	0.0%	init/1	
TOTAL:		25, load averages: 0.05, 0.08, 0.12								

EXAMPLE 2 Displaying Verbose Process Usage Information

The following command displays verbose process usage information about processes with lowest resident set sizes owned by users `root` and `john`.

```
example% prstat -S rss -n 5 -vc -u root,john
```

PID	USERNAME	USR	SYS	TRP	TFL	DFL	LCK	SLP	LAT	VCX	ICX	SCL	SIG	PROCESS/LWP
1	root	0.0	0.0	-	-	-	-	100	-	0	0	0	0	init/1
102	root	0.0	0.0	-	-	-	-	100	-	0	0	3	0	in.rdisc/1
250	root	0.0	0.0	-	-	-	-	100	-	0	0	0	0	utmpd/1
1185	john	0.0	0.0	-	-	-	-	100	-	0	0	0	0	csh/1
240	root	0.0	0.0	-	-	-	-	100	-	0	0	0	0	powerd/4
TOTAL:		71, load averages: 0.02, 0.04, 0.08												

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0
Successful completion.

1
An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [date\(1\)](#), [lgrpinfo\(1\)](#), [plgrp\(1\)](#), [proc\(1\)](#), [ps\(1\)](#), [time\(2\)](#), [psrinfo\(1M\)](#), [psrset\(1M\)](#), [sar\(1M\)](#), [pset_getloadavg\(3C\)](#), [proc\(4\)](#), [project\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [resource_controls\(5\)](#), [zones\(5\)](#)

Notes The snapshot of system usage displayed by `prstat` is true only for a split-second, and it may not be accurate by the time it is displayed. When the `-m` option is specified, `prstat` tries to turn on microstate accounting for each process; the original state is restored when `prstat` exits. See [proc\(4\)](#) for additional information about the microstate accounting facility.

The total memory size reported in the SWAP and RSS columns for groups of processes can sometimes overestimate the actual amount of memory used by processes with shared memory segments.

Name prtconf – print system configuration

Synopsis /usr/sbin/prtconf [-V] | [-F] | [-x] | [-bpv] | [-acdDPv]
[*dev_path*]

Description The prtconf command prints the system configuration information. The output includes the total amount of memory, and the configuration of system peripherals formatted as a device tree.

If a device path is specified on the command line for those command options that can take a device path, prtconf will only display information for that device node.

Options The following options are supported:

- a Display all the ancestors device nodes, up to the root node of the device tree, for the device specified on the command line.
- b Display the firmware device tree root properties for the purpose of platform identification. These properties are “name”, “compatible”, “banner-name” and “model”.
- c Display the device subtree rooted at the device node specified on the command line, that is, display all the children of the device node specified on the command line.
- d Display vendor ID and device ID for PCI and PCI Express devices, in addition to the nodename.
- D For each system peripheral in the device tree, displays the name of the device driver used to manage the peripheral.
- F A SPARC-only option. Returns the device path name of the console frame buffer, if one exists. If there is no frame buffer, prtconf returns a non-zero exit code. This flag must be used by itself. It returns only the name of the console, frame buffer device or a non-zero exit code. For example, if the console frame buffer on a SUNW,Ultra-30 is ffb, the command returns: /SUNW,ffb@1e,0:ffb0. This option could be used to create a symlink for /dev/ffb to the actual console device.
- p Displays information derived from the device tree provided by the firmware (PROM) on SPARC platforms or the booting system on x86 platforms. The device tree information displayed using this option is a snapshot of the initial configuration and may not accurately reflect reconfiguration events that occur later.
- P Includes information about pseudo devices. By default, information regarding pseudo devices is omitted.
- v Specifies verbose mode.
- V Displays platform-dependent PROM (on SPARC platforms) or booting system (on x86 platforms) version information. This flag must be used by itself. The output is a string. The format of the string is arbitrary and platform-dependent.

- x Reports if the firmware on this system is 64-bit ready. Some existing platforms may need a firmware upgrade in order to run the 64-bit kernel. If the operation is not applicable to this platform or the firmware is already 64-bit ready, it exits silently with a return code of zero. If the operation is applicable to this platform and the firmware is not 64-bit ready, it displays a descriptive message on the standard output and exits with a non-zero return code. The hardware platform documentation contains more information about the platforms that may need a firmware upgrade in order to run the 64-bit kernel.

This flag overrides all other flags and must be used by itself.

Operands The following operands are supported:

dev_path The path to a target device minor node, device nexus node, or device link for which device node configuration information is displayed

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 No error occurred.
- non-zero With the -F option (SPARC only), a non-zero return value means that the output device is not a frame buffer. With the -x option, a non-zero return value means that the firmware is not 64-bit ready. In all other cases, a non-zero return value means that an error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWesu
Interface Stability	Unstable

See Also [fuser\(1M\)](#), [modinfo\(1M\)](#), [sysdef\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Sun Hardware Platform Guide

SPARC Only [openprom\(7D\)](#)

Notes The output of the `prtconf` command is highly dependent on the version of the PROM installed in the system. The output will be affected in potentially all circumstances.

The `driver not attached` message means that no driver is currently attached to that instance of the device. In general, drivers are loaded and installed (and attached to hardware instances) on demand, and when needed, and may be uninstalled and unloaded when the device is not in use.

On x86 platforms, the use of `prtconf -vp` provides a subset of information from `prtconf -v`. The value of integer properties from `prtconf -vp` might require byte swapping for correct interpretation.

Name prtdiag – display system diagnostic information

Synopsis /usr/sbin/prtdiag [-v] [-l]

Description prtdiag displays system configuration and diagnostic information on sun4u, sun4v, and x86 systems.

The diagnostic information lists any failed field replaceable units (FRUs) in the system.

The interface, output, and location in the directory hierarchy for prtdiag are uncommitted and subject to change in future releases.

prtdiag does not display diagnostic information and environmental status when executed on the Sun Enterprise 10000 server. See the /var/opt/SUNWssp/adm/\${SUNW_HOSTNAME}/messages file on the system service processor (SSP) to obtain such information for this server.

Options The following options are supported:

- l Log output. If failures or errors exist in the system, output this information to [syslogd\(1M\)](#) only.
- v Verbose mode. Displays the time of the most recent AC Power failure, and the most recent hardware fatal error information, and (if applicable) environmental status. The hardware fatal error information is useful to repair and manufacturing for detailed diagnostics of FRUs.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 No failures or errors are detected in the system.
- 1 Failures or errors are detected in the system.
- 2 An internal prtdiag error occurred, for example, out of memory.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWkvm
Interface Stability	Unstable*

*The output is unstable.

See Also [modinfo\(1M\)](#), [prtconf\(1M\)](#), [psrinfo\(1M\)](#), [sysdef\(1M\)](#), [syslogd\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [openprom\(7D\)](#)

Notes Not all diagnostic and system information is available on every Solaris platform, and therefore cannot be displayed by `prtdiag`. On those platforms, further information can be obtained from the System Controller.

Name prtdscp – display DSCP IP addresses

Synopsis prtdscp [-v]
prtdscp [-v] -h
prtdscp [-v] -d
prtdscp [-v] -s

Description prtdscp displays the IP addresses associated with a Domain to Service Processor Communications Protocol (DSCP) link. If no arguments are specified, prtdscp displays the IP addresses on both ends of the DSCP link. The IP address of either the Service Processor or domain side can be displayed separately by the use of the -s or -d options, respectively.

Options The following options are supported:

- v Verbose mode. Print additional details about the program's internal progress to stderr.
- h Help. Print a brief synopsis of the program's usage and exit. All other command line arguments are ignored.
- d Display only the local domain's IP address.
- s Display only the remote Service Processor's IP address.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Displaying both addresses

The following example displays both the local domain's IP address and the remote SP's IP address:

```
# prtdscp
Domain Address: 192.168.103.2
SP Address: 192.168.103.1
```

EXAMPLE 2 Displaying the local IP address

The following example displays the local domain's IP address:

```
# prtdscp -d
192.168.103.2
```

EXAMPLE 3 Displaying the remote IP address

The following example display the remote SP's IP address:

```
# prtdscp -s
192.168.103.1
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWdscpr.u, SUNWdscpu.u
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name prtf ru – print FRUID-specific information about the FRUs on a system or domain

Synopsis /usr/sbin/prtf ru [-d] | [-clx] [*container*]

Description The `prtf ru` utility is used to obtain FRUID data from the system or domain. Its output is that of a tree structure echoing the path in the FRU (Field-Replaceable Unit) tree to each container. When a container is found, the data from that container is printed in a tree-like structure as well.

`prtf ru` without any arguments will print the FRU hierarchy and all of the FRUID container data. `prtf ru` prints to stdout which may be redirected to a file.

Options The following options are supported:

- c Prints *only* the containers and their data. This option does not print the FRU tree hierarchy.
- d Prints a DTD for the current registry to stdout.
- l Prints *only* the FRU tree hierarchy. This option does not print the container data.
- x Prints in XML format with a system identifier (SYSTEM) of `prtf rureg.dtd`.

Options -c and -l can be used together to obtain a list of the containers.

Operands The following operand is supported:

container The name of a particular container in the FRU hierarchy, that is, either the name or path/name of a container as displayed in the -l option.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 All information was found and printed successfully.
- >0 An error has occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWfruid

See Also [fruadm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name prtpicl – print PICL tree

Synopsis /usr/sbin/prtpicl [-c *picl_class*] [-v]

Description The `prtpicl` command prints the PICL tree maintained by the PICL daemon. The output of `prtpicl` includes the name and PICL class of the nodes.

Options The following options are supported:

-c *picl_class* Print only the nodes of the named PICL class.

-v Print in verbose mode. In verbose mode, `prtpicl` prints a list of properties and values for each node. Verbose mode is disabled by default.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

non-zero An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWpiclu

See Also [picld\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name prvtoc – report information about a disk geometry and partitioning

Synopsis prvtoc [-fhs] [-t *vfstab*] [-m *mnttab*] *device*

Description The prvtoc command allows the contents of the label to be viewed. The command can be used only by the super-user.

The *device* name can be the file name of a raw device in the form of /dev/rdisk/c?t?d?s2 or can be the file name of a block device in the form of /dev/dsk/c?t?d?s2.

Options The following options are supported:

- f Report on the disk free space, including the starting block address of the free space, number of blocks, and unused partitions.
- h Omit the headers from the normal output.
- m *mnttab* Use *mnttab* as the list of mounted filesystems, in place of /etc/mnttab.
- s Omit all headers but the column header from the normal output.
- t *vfstab* Use *vfstab* as the list of filesystem defaults, in place of /etc/vfstab.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Using the prvtoc Command

The following example uses the prvtoc command on a 424-megabyte hard disk:

```
example# prvtoc /dev/rdisk/c0t3d0s2
* /dev/rdisk/c0t3d0s2 partition map
*
* Dimension:
*   512 bytes/sector
*   80 sectors/track
*   9 tracks/cylinder
*   720 sectors/cylinder
*   2500 cylinders
*   1151 accessible cylinders
*
* Flags:
*  1: unmountable
* 10: read-only
* *
* *
* *
* Partition  Tag  Flags  First  Sector  Last
* Partition  Tag  Flags  Sector Count  Sector  Mount Directory
*   0         2   00      0    76320  76319  /
*   1         3   01   76320 132480 208799
*   2         5   00      0   828720 828719
*   5         6   00  208800 131760 340559  /opt
*   6         4   00  340560 447120 787679  /usr
*   7         8   00  787680  41040 828719  /export/home
example#
```

EXAMPLE 1 Using the `prvtoc` Command (Continued)

The data in the Tag column above indicates the type of partition, as follows:

<i>Name</i>	<i>Number</i>
UNASSIGNED	0x00
BOOT	0x01
ROOT	0x02
SWAP	0x03
USR	0x04
BACKUP	0x05
STAND	0x06
VAR	0x07
HOME	0x08
ALTSCTR	0x09
CACHE	0x0a
RESERVED	0x0b

The data in the Flags column above indicates how the partition is to be mounted, as follows:

<i>Name</i>	<i>Number</i>
MOUNTABLE, READ AND WRITE	0x00
NOT MOUNTABLE	0x01
MOUNTABLE, READ ONLY	0x10

EXAMPLE 2 Using the `prvtoc` Command with the `-f` Option

The following example uses the `prvtoc` command with the `-f` option on a 424-megabyte hard disk:

```
example# prvtoc -f /dev/rdisk/c0t3d0s2
FREE_START=0 FREE_SIZE=0 FREE_COUNT=0 FREE_PART=34
```

EXAMPLE 3 Using the prvtoc Command on a Disk Over One Terabyte

The following example uses the prvtoc command on a disk over one terabyte:

```
example# prvtoc /dev/rdisk/c1t1d0s2
* /dev/rdisk/c1t1d0s2 partition map
*
* Dimensions:
*   512 bytes/sector
* 3187630080 sectors
* 3187630013 accessible sectors
*
* Flags:
*  1: unmountable
* 10: read-only
*
*
* Partition  Tag  Flags      First Sector   Sector Count   Last Sector  Mount Directory
0           2   00           34    262144    262177
1           3   01      262178    262144    524321
6           4   00      524322 3187089340 3187613661
8          11   00 3187613662    16384 318763004
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [devinfo\(1M\)](#), [fmthard\(1M\)](#), [format\(1M\)](#), [mount\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Warnings The mount command does not check the "not mountable" bit.

Name psradm – change processor operational status

Synopsis psradm -f | -i | -n | -s [-v] [-F] *processor_id*

psradm -a -f | -i | -n | -s [-v] [-F]

Description The psradm utility changes the operational status of processors. The legal states for the processor are on-line, off-line, spare, faulted, and no-intr.

An on-line processor processes LWPs (lightweight processes) and can be interrupted by I/O devices in the system.

An off-line processor does not process any LWPs. Usually, an off-line processor is not interruptible by I/O devices in the system. On some processors or under certain conditions, it might not be possible to disable interrupts for an off-line processor. Thus, the actual effect of being off-line might vary from machine to machine.

A spare processor does not process any LWPs. A spare processor can be brought on-line, off-line or to no-intr by a privileged user of the system or by the kernel in response to changes in the system state.

A faulted processor is identified by the kernel, which monitors the behavior of processors over time. A privileged user can set the state of a faulted processor to be on-line, off-line, spare or no-intr, but must use the force option to do so.

A no-intr processor processes LWPs but is not interruptible by I/O devices.

A processor can not be taken off-line or made spare if there are LWPs that are bound to the processor unless the additional -F option is used. The -F option removes processor bindings of such LWPs before changing the processor's operational status. On some architectures, it might not be possible to take certain processors off-line or spare if, for example, the system depends on some resource provided by the processor.

At least one processor in the system must be able to process LWPs. At least one processor must also be able to be interrupted. Since an off-line or spare processor can be interruptible, it is possible to have an operational system with one processor no-intr and all other processors off-line or spare but with one or more accepting interrupts.

If any of the specified processors are powered off, psradm might power on one or more processors.

Only users with the PRIV_SYS_RES_CONFIG privilege can use the psradm utility.

Options The following options are supported:

- a Perform the action on all processors, or as many as possible.
- f Take the specified processors off-line.

- F Force the transition to the additional specified state. Required if one or more of the specified processors was in the faulted state. Set the specified processors to faulted, if no other transition option was specified. Forced transitions can only be made to faulted, spare, or off-line states. Administrators are encouraged to use the -Q option for [pbind\(1M\)](#) to find out which threads will be affected by forced a processor state transition.
- i Set the specified processors no-intr.
- n Bring the specified processors on-line.
- s Make the specified processors spare.
- v Output a message giving the results of each attempted operation.

Operands The following operands are supported:

processor_id The processor ID of the processor to be set on-line or off-line, spare, or no-intr.

Specify *processor_id* as an individual processor number (for example, 3), multiple processor numbers separated by spaces (for example, 1 2 3), or a range of processor numbers (for example, 1-4). It is also possible to combine ranges and (individual or multiple) *processor_ids* (for example, 1-3 5 7-8 9).

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Setting Processors to off-line

The following example sets processors 2 and 3 off-line:

```
% psradm -f 2 3
```

EXAMPLE 2 Setting Processors to no-intr

The following example sets processors 1 and 2 no-intr:

```
% psradm -i 1 2
```

EXAMPLE 3 Setting Processors to spare

The following example sets processors 1 and 2 spare, even if either of the processors was in the faulted state:

```
% psradm -F -s 1 2
```

EXAMPLE 4 Setting All Processors on-line

```
% psradm -a -n
```

EXAMPLE 5 Forcing Processors to off-line

The following example sets processors 1 and 2 offline, and revokes the processor bindings from the processes bound to them:

```
% psradm -F -f 1 2
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

Files /etc/wtmpx Records logging processor status changes

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [pbind\(1M\)](#), [psrinfo\(1M\)](#), [psrset\(1M\)](#), [p_online\(2\)](#), [processor_bind\(2\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Diagnostics psradm: processor 4: Invalid argument
The specified processor does not exist in the configuration.

psradm: processor 3: Device busy
The specified processor could not be taken off-line because it either has LWPs bound to it, is the last on-line processor in the system, or is needed by the system because it provides some essential service.

psradm: processor 3: Device busy
The specified processor could not be set no-interrupt because it is the last interruptible processor in the system, or it is the only processor in the system that can service interrupts needed by the system.

psradm: processor 3: Device busy
The specified processor is powered off, and it cannot be powered on because some platform-specific resource is unavailable.

psradm: processor 0: Not owner
The user does not have permission to change processor status.

psradm: processor 2: Operation not supported
The specified processor is powered off, and the platform does not support power on of individual processors.

Name psrinfo – displays information about processors

Synopsis psrinfo [-p] [-v] [*processor_id*] ...
psrinfo [-p] -s *processor_id*

Description psrinfo displays information about processors. Each physical processor may support multiple virtual processors. Each virtual processor is an entity with its own interrupt ID, capable of executing independent threads.

Without the *processor_id* operand, psrinfo displays one line for each configured processor, displaying whether it is on-line, non-interruptible (designated by no-intr), spare, off-line, faulted or powered off, and when that status last changed. Use the *processor_id* operand to display information about a specific processor. See OPERANDS.

Options The following options are supported:

-s *processor_id* Silent mode. Displays 1 if the specified processor is fully on-line. Displays 0 if the specified processor is non-interruptible, spare, off-line, faulted or powered off.

Use silent mode when using psrinfo in shell scripts.

-p Display the number of physical processors in a system.

When combined with the -v option, reports additional information about each physical processor.

-v Verbose mode. Displays additional information about the specified processors, including: processor type, floating point unit type and clock speed. If any of this information cannot be determined, psrinfo displays unknown.

When combined with the -p option, reports additional information about each physical processor.

Operands The following operands are supported:

processor_id The processor ID of the processor about which information is to be displayed.

Specify *processor_id* as an individual processor number (for example, 3), multiple processor numbers separated by spaces (for example, 1 2 3), or a range of processor numbers (for example, 1-4). It is also possible to combine ranges and (individual or multiple) *processor_ids* (for example, 1-3 5 7-8 9).

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Displaying Information About All Configured Processors in Verbose Mode

The following example displays information about all configured processors in verbose mode.

```
psrinfo -v
```

EXAMPLE 2 Determining If a Processor is On-line

The following example uses `psrinfo` in a shell script to determine if a processor is on-line.

```
if [ "psrinfo -s 3 2> /dev/null" -eq 1 ]
then
    echo "processor 3 is up"
fi
```

EXAMPLE 3 Displaying Information About the Physical Processors in the System

With no additional arguments, the `-p` option displays a single integer: the number of physical processors in the system:

```
> psrinfo -p
      8
```

`psrinfo` also accepts command line arguments (processor IDs):

```
> psrinfo -p 0 512 # IDs 0 and 512 exist on the
1                # same physical processor

> psrinfo -p 0 1  # IDs 0 and 1 exist on different
2                # physical processors
```

In this example, virtual processors 0 and 512 exist on the same physical processor. Virtual processors 0 and 1 do not. This is specific to this example and is not a general rule.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

```
0      Successful completion.
>0    An error occurred.
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [psradm\(1M\)](#), [p_online\(2\)](#), [processor_info\(2\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Diagnostics psrinfo: processor 9: Invalid argument The specified processor does not exist.

Name psrset – creation and management of processor sets

Synopsis psrset -a [-F] *processor_set_id processor_id...*
psrset -b *processor_set_id pid [/lwpid]...*
psrset -c [-F] [*processor_id*]...
psrset -d *processor_set_id*...
psrset -e *processor_set_id command [argument(s)]*
psrset -f *processor_set_id*
psrset [-i] [*processor_set_id*]...
psrset -n *processor_set_id*
psrset -p [*processor_id*]...
psrset [-q] [*pid [/lwpid]*]...
psrset -Q [*processor_set_id*]...
psrset -r [-F] *processor_id*...
psrset -u *pid [/lwpid]*...
psrset -U [*processor_set_id*]...

Description The psrset utility controls the management of processor sets. Processor sets allow the binding of processes or LWPs to groups of processors, rather than just a single processor. Processors assigned to processor sets can run only LWPs that have been bound to that processor set.

This command cannot be used to modify processor disposition when pools are enabled. Use [pooladm\(1M\)](#) and [poolcfg\(1M\)](#) to modify processor set configuration through the resource pools facility.

Options The following options are supported:

- a Assign the specified processors to the specified processor set. With the additional -F option, all LWPs bound to the specified processors will be unbound prior to changing processor sets.

This option is restricted to users with the PRIV_SYS_RES_CONFIG privilege.

- b Bind all or a subset of the LWPs of the specified processes to the specified processor set.

LWPs bound to a processor set are restricted to run only on the processors in that set. Processes can only be bound to non-empty processor sets, that is, processor sets that have had processors assigned to them.

Bindings are inherited, so new LWPs and processes created by a bound LWP have the same binding. Binding an interactive shell to a processor, for example, binds all commands executed by the shell.

This option is restricted to users with the `PRIV_SYS_RES_CONFIG` privilege.

- c Create a new processor set and displays the new processor set ID. With the additional `-F` option, all LWPs bound to the specified processors will be unbound prior to assigning them to the processor set being created.

If a list of processors is given, it also attempts to assign those processors to the processor set. If this succeeds, the processors are idle until LWPs are bound to the processor set. This option is restricted to users with the `PRIV_SYS_RES_CONFIG` privilege.

Only a limited number of processor sets can be active (created and not destroyed) at a given time. This limit is always be greater than the number of processors in the system. If the `-c` option is used when the maximum number of processor sets is already active, the command fails.

The following format is used for the first line of output of the `-c` option when the `LC_MESSAGES` locale category specifies the “C” locale. In other locales, the strings `created`, `processor`, and `set` can be replaced with more appropriate strings corresponding to the locale.

```
"created processor set %d\n" processor set ID
```

- d Remove the specified processor set, releasing all processors and processes associated with it.

This option is restricted to users with the `PRIV_SYS_RES_CONFIG` privilege.

- e Execute a command (with optional arguments) in the specified processor set.

The command process and any child processes are executed only by processors in the processor set.

This option is restricted to users with the `PRIV_SYS_RES_CONFIG` privilege.

- f Disables interrupts for all processors within the specified processor set. See [psradm\(1M\)](#).

If some processors in the set cannot have their interrupts disabled, the other processors still have their interrupts disabled, and the command reports an error and return non-zero exit status.

This option is restricted to users with the `PRIV_SYS_RES_CONFIG` privilege.

- F Forces the specified processor set operation by unbinding all threads bound to the specified processor. Only the -a or the -r option can be used in combination with this option. Administrators are encouraged to use the -Q option for [pbind\(1M\)](#) to find out which threads will be affected by such operation.
- i Display a list of processors assigned to each named processor set. If no argument is given, a list of all processor sets and the processors assigned to them is displayed. This is also the default operation if the `psrset` command is not given an option.
- n Enable interrupts for all processors within the specified processor set. See [psradm\(1M\)](#).

This option is restricted to users with the `PRIV_SYS_RES_CONFIG` privilege.
- p Display the processor set assignments for the specified list of processors. If no argument is given, the processor set assignments for all processors in the system is given.
- q Display the processor set bindings of the specified processes or of all processes. If a process is composed of multiple LWPs which have different bindings and the LWPs are not explicitly specified, the bindings of only one of the bound LWPs is displayed. The bindings of a subset of LWPs can be displayed by appending `"/lwpids"` to the process IDs. Multiple LWPs may be selected using `"-"` and `","` delimiters. See `EXAMPLES`.
- Q Display the LWPs bound to the specified list of processor sets, or all LWPs with processor set bindings.
- r Remove a list of processors from their current processor sets. Processors that are removed return to the general pool of processors.

Processors with LWPs bound to them using [pbind\(1M\)](#) can be assigned to or removed from processor sets using the -F option.

This option is restricted to users with the `PRIV_SYS_RES_CONFIG` privilege.
- u Remove the processor set bindings of a subset or all the LWPs of the specified processes, allowing them to be executed on any on-line processor if they are not bound to individual processors through `pbind`.

Users with the `PRIV_SYS_RES_CONFIG` privilege can unbind any process or LWP from any active processor set. Other users can unbind processes and LWPs from processor sets that do not have the `PSET_NOESCAPE` attribute set. In addition, the user must have permission to control the affected processes; the real or effective user ID of the user must match the real or saved user ID of the target processes.
- U Removes the bindings of all LWPs bound to the specified list of processor sets, or to any processor set if no argument is specified.

Operands The following operands are supported:

<i>pid</i>	Specify <i>pid</i> as a process ID.
<i>lwpid</i>	The set of LWPIDs of the specified process to be controlled or queried. The syntax for selecting LWP IDs is as follows:
2,3,4-8	LWP IDs 2, 3, and 4 through 8
-4	LWPs whose IDs are 4 or below
4-	LWPs whose IDs are 4 or above
<i>processor_id</i>	Specify <i>processor_id</i> as an individual processor number (for example, 3), multiple processor numbers separated by spaces (for example, 1 2 3), or a range of processor numbers (for example, 1-4). It is also possible to combine ranges and (individual or multiple) <i>processor_ids</i> (for example, 1-3 5 7-8 9).
<i>processor_set_id</i>	Specify <i>processor_set_id</i> as a processor set ID.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0	Successful completion.
non-0	An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Stability Level	Stable

See Also [pbind\(1M\)](#), [pooladm\(1M\)](#), [poolcfg\(1M\)](#), [psradm\(1M\)](#), [psrinfo\(1M\)](#), [processor_bind\(2\)](#), [processor_info\(2\)](#), [pset_bind\(2\)](#), [pset_create\(2\)](#), [pset_info\(2\)](#), [sysconf\(3C\)](#), [libpool\(3LIB\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [privileges\(5\)](#)

Diagnostics The following output indicates that the specified process did not exist or has exited:

```
psrset: cannot query pid 31: No such process
```

The following output indicates that the user does not have permission to bind the process:

```
psrset: cannot bind pid 31: Not owner
```

The following output indicates that the user does not have permission to assign the processor:

```
psrset: cannot assign processor 4: Not owner
```

The following output indicates that the specified processor is not on-line, or the specified processor does not exist.

```
psrset: cannot assign processor 8: Invalid argument
```

The following output indicates that an LWP in the specified process is bound to a processor and cannot be bound to a processor set that does not include that processor:

```
psrset: cannot bind pid 67: Device busy
```

The following output indicates that the specified processor could not be added to the processor set. This can be due to bound LWPs on that processor, or because that processor cannot be combined in the same processor set with other processors in that set, or because the processor is the last one in its current processor set:

```
psrset: cannot assign processor 7: Device busy
```

The following output indicates that the specified processor set does not exist:

```
psrset: cannot execute in processor set 8: Invalid argument
```

The following output indicates that the maximum number of processor sets allowed in the system is already active:

```
psrset: cannot create processor set: Not enough space
```

The following output indicates that the pools facility is active.

```
psrset: cannot assign processor 7: Operation not supported
psrset: cannot bind pid 31: Operation not supported
psrset: cannot bind pid 31: Operation not supported
psrset: could not create processor set: Operation not supported
psrset: could not remove processor set 1: Operation not supported
psrset: cannot exec in processor set 1: Operation not supported
psrset: cannot remove processor 7: Operation not supported
psrset: cannot unbind pid 31: Operation not supported
```


Name putdev – edits device table

Synopsis putdev -a *alias* [*attribute=value* [...]]
 putdev -m *device attribute=value* [*attribute = value* [...]]
 putdev -d *device* [*attribute* [...]]

Description putdev adds a new device to the device table, modifies an existing device description or removes a device entry from the table. The first synopsis is used to add a device. The second synopsis is used to modify existing entries by adding or changing attributes. If a specified attribute is not defined, this option adds that attribute to the device definition. If a specified attribute is already defined, it modifies the attribute definition. The third synopsis is used to delete either an entire device entry or, if the attribute argument is used, to delete an attribute assignment for a device.

Options The following options are supported:

- a Add a device to the device table using the specified attributes. The device must be referenced by its `alias`.
- d Remove a device from the device table, when executed without the *attributes* argument. Used with the *attribute* argument, it deletes the given attribute specification for *device* from the table.
- m Modify a device entry in the device table. If an entry already exists, it adds any specified attributes that are not defined. It also modifies any attributes which already have a value with the value specified by this command.

Operands The following operands are supported:

alias Designates the alias of the device to be added.

attribute Designates a device attribute to be added, modified, or deleted. Can be any of the device attributes described under `DEVICE ATTRIBUTES` except `alias`. This prevents an accidental modification or deletion of a device's alias from the table.

device Designates the pathname or alias of the device whose attribute is to be added, modified, or removed.

value Designates the value to be assigned to a device's attribute.

Device Attributes The following list shows the standard device attributes, used by applications such as [ufsdump\(1M\)](#) and [ufsrestore\(1M\)](#), which can be defined for a device. You are not limited to this list, you can define any attribute you like.

`alias` The unique name by which a device is known. No two devices in the database may share the same alias name. The name is limited in length to 14 characters and should contain only alphanumeric characters and the following special characters if they are escaped with a backslash: underscore (`_`), dollar sign (`$`), hyphen (`-`), and period (`.`).

<code>bdevice</code>	The pathname to the block special device node associated with the device, if any. The associated major/minor combination should be unique within the database and should match that associated with the <code>cdevice</code> field, if any. (It is the administrator's responsibility to ensure that these major/minor numbers are unique in the database.)
<code>capacity</code>	The capacity of the device or of the typical volume, if removable.
<code>cdevice</code>	The pathname to the character special device node associated with the device, if any. The associated major/minor combination should be unique within the database and should match that associated with the <code>bdevice</code> field, if any. (It is the administrator's responsibility to ensure that these major/minor numbers are unique in the database.)
<code>cyl</code>	Used by the command specified in the <code>mkfscmd</code> attribute.
<code>desc</code>	A description of any instance of a volume associated with this device (such as floppy diskette).
<code>dpartlist</code>	The list of disk partitions associated with this device. Used only if <code>type=disk</code> . The list should contain device aliases, each of which must have <code>type=dpart</code> .
<code>dparttype</code>	The type of disk partition represented by this device. Used only if <code>type=dpart</code> . It should be either <code>fs</code> (for file system) or <code>dp</code> (for data partition).
<code>erasescmd</code>	The command string that, when executed, erases the device.
<code>fmtcmd</code>	The command string that, when executed, formats the device.
<code>fsname</code>	The file system name on the file system administered on this partition, as supplied to the <code>/usr/sbin/labelit</code> command. This attribute is specified only if <code>type=dpart</code> and <code>dparttype=fs</code> .
<code>gap</code>	Used by the command specified in the <code>mkfscmd</code> attribute.
<code>mkfscmd</code>	The command string that, when executed, places a file system on a previously formatted device.
<code>mountpt</code>	The default mount point to use for the device. Used only if the device is mountable. For disk partitions where <code>type=dpart</code> and <code>dparttype=fs</code> , this attribute should specify the location where the partition is normally mounted.
<code>nblocks</code>	The number of blocks in the file system administered on this partition. Used only if <code>type=dpart</code> and <code>dparttype=fs</code> .
<code>ninodes</code>	The number of inodes in the file system administered on this partition. Used only if <code>type=dpart</code> and <code>dparttype=fs</code> .
<code>norewind</code>	The name of the character special device node that allows access to the serial device without rewinding when the device is closed.

pathname	Defines the pathname to an i-node describing the device (used for non-block or character device pathnames, such as directories).
type	A token that represents inherent qualities of the device. Standard types include: 9-track, ctape, disk, directory, diskette, dpart, and qtape.
volname	The volume name on the file system administered on this partition, as supplied to the <code>/usr/sbin/labelit</code> command. Used only if <code>type=dpart</code> and <code>dparttype=fs</code> .
volume	A text string used to describe any instance of a volume associated with this device. This attribute should not be defined for devices which are not removable.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 Command syntax was incorrect, an invalid option was used, or an internal error occurred.
- 2 The device table could not be opened for reading, or a new device table could not be created.
- 3 If executed with the `-a` option, indicates that an entry in the device table with the alias `alias` already exists. If executed with the `-m` or `-d` options, indicates that no entry exists for device *device*.
- 4 Indicates that `-d` was requested and one or more of the specified attributes were not defined for the device.

Files `/etc/device.tab`

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [devattr\(1M\)](#), [putdgrp\(1M\)](#), [ufsdump\(1M\)](#), [ufsrestore\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

System Administration Guide: Basic Administration

Name putdgrp – edits device group table

Synopsis putdgrp [-d] *dgroup* [*device*] . . .

Description putdgrp modifies the device group table. It performs two kinds of modification. It can modify the table by creating a new device group or removing a device group. It can also change group definitions by adding or removing a device from the group definition.

When the command is invoked with only a *dgroup* specification, the command adds the specified group name to the device group table if it does not already exist. If the -d option is also used with only the *dgroup* specification, the command deletes the group from the table.

When the command is invoked with both a *dgroup* and a *device* specification, it adds the given device name(s) to the group definition. When invoked with both arguments and the -d option, the command deletes the device name(s) from the group definition.

When the command is invoked with both a *dgroup* and a *device* specification and the device group does not exist, it creates the group and adds the specified devices to that new group.

Options The following options are supported:

-d Delete the group or, if used with *device*, delete the device from a group definition.

Operands The following operands are supported:

dgroup Specify a device group name.

device Specify the pathname or alias of the device that is to be added to, or deleted from, the device group.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 Command syntax was incorrect, an invalid option was used, or an internal error occurred.
- 2 Device group table could not be opened for reading or a new device group table could not be created.
- 3 If executed with the -d option, indicates that an entry in the device group table for the device group *dgroup* does not exist and so cannot be deleted. Otherwise, indicates that the device group *dgroup* already exists and cannot be added.
- 4 If executed with the -d option, indicates that the device group *dgroup* does not have as members one or more of the specified devices. Otherwise, indicates that the device group *dgroup* already has one or more of the specified devices as members.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Adding a new device group.

The following example adds a new device group:

```
example# putdgrp floppies
```

EXAMPLE 2 Adding a device to a device group.

The following example adds a device to a device group:

```
example# putdgrp floppies diskette2
```

EXAMPLE 3 Deleting a device group.

The following example deletes a device group:

```
example# putdgrp -d floppies
```

EXAMPLE 4 Deleting a device from a device group.

The following example deletes a device from a device group:

```
example# putdgrp -d floppies diskette2
```

Files /etc/dgroup.tab

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [listdgrp\(1M\)](#), [putdev\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name pwck, grpck – password/group file checkers

Synopsis /usr/sbin/pwck [*filename*]
/usr/sbin/grpck [*filename*]

Description pwck scans the password file and notes any inconsistencies. The checks include validation of the number of fields, login name, user ID, group ID, and whether the login directory and the program-to-use-as-shell exist. The default password file is /etc/passwd.

grpck verifies all entries in the group file. This verification includes a check of the number of fields, group name, group ID, whether any login names belong to more than NGROUPS_MAX groups, and that all login names appear in the password file. grpck also issues a warning if it finds an entry (a single line) in the group file longer than 2047 characters. Such an entry causes group maintenance commands, such as [groupdel\(1M\)](#) and [groupmod\(1M\)](#), to fail.

The default group file is /etc/group.

All messages regarding inconsistent entries are placed on the stderr stream.

Files

- /etc/group
- /etc/passwd

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [groupdel\(1M\)](#), [groupmod\(1M\)](#), [getpwent\(3C\)](#), [group\(4\)](#), [passwd\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Diagnostics Group entries in /etc/group with no login names are flagged.

Group file '*filename*' is empty

The /etc/passwd or /etc/group file is an empty file.

cannot open file *filename*: No such file or directory

The /etc/passwd or /etc/group file does not exist.

Notes If no filename argument is given, grpck checks the local group file, /etc/group, and also makes sure that all login names encountered in the checked group file are known to the system [getpwent\(3C\)](#) routine. This means that the login names may be supplied by a network name service.

Name pwconv – installs and updates `/etc/shadow` with information from `/etc/passwd`

Synopsis pwconv

Description The `pwconv` command creates and updates `/etc/shadow` with information from `/etc/passwd`.

`pwconv` relies on a special value of 'x' in the password field of `/etc/passwd`. This value of 'x' indicates that the password for the user is already in `/etc/shadow` and should not be modified.

If the `/etc/shadow` file does not exist, this command will create `/etc/shadow` with information from `/etc/passwd`. The command populates `/etc/shadow` with the user's login name, password, and password aging information. If password aging information does not exist in `/etc/passwd` for a given user, none will be added to `/etc/shadow`. However, the last changed information will always be updated.

If the `/etc/shadow` file does exist, the following tasks will be performed:

Entries that are in the `/etc/passwd` file and not in the `/etc/shadow` file will be added to the `/etc/shadow` file.

Entries that are in the `/etc/shadow` file and not in the `/etc/passwd` file will be removed from `/etc/shadow`.

Password attributes (for example, password and aging information) that exist in an `/etc/passwd` entry will be moved to the corresponding entry in `/etc/shadow`.

The `pwconv` command can only be used by the super-user.

Files `/etc/opasswd`

`/etc/oshadow`

`/etc/passwd`

`/etc/shadow`

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [passwd\(1\)](#), [passmgmt\(1M\)](#), [usermod\(1M\)](#), [passwd\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Diagnostics `pwconv` exits with one of the following values:

- 0 SUCCESS.
- 1 Permission denied.
- 2 Invalid command syntax.

- 3 Unexpected failure. Conversion not done.
- 4 Unexpected failure. Password file(s) missing.
- 5 Password file(s) busy. Try again later.
- 6 Bad entry in `/etc/shadow` file.

-
- Name** quot – summarize file system ownership
- Synopsis** quot [-acfhnv] *filesystem* . . .
 quot -a [-cfhnv]
- Description** quot displays the number of blocks (1024 bytes) in the named *filesystem* (one or more) currently owned by each user. There is a limit of 2048 blocks. Files larger than this will be counted as a 2048 block file, but the total block count will be correct.
- Options** The following options are supported:
- a Generate a report for all mounted file systems.
 - c Display three columns giving a file size in blocks, the number of files of that size, and a cumulative total of blocks containing files of that size or a smaller size.
 - f Display three columns giving, for each user, the number of blocks owned, the count of number of files, and the user name. This option is incompatible with the -c and -v options.
 - h Estimate the number of blocks in the file. This does not account for files with holes in them.
 - n Attach names to the list of files read from standard input. quot -n cannot be used alone, because it expects data from standard input. For example, the pipeline

```
ncheck myfilesystem | sort +0n | quot -n myfilesystem
```

will produce a list of all files and their owners. This option is incompatible with all other options.
 - v In addition to the default output, display three columns containing the number of blocks not accessed in the last 30, 60, and 90 days.
- Operands** *filesystem* mount-point of the filesystem(s) being checked
- Usage** See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of quot when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (2^{31} bytes).
- Exit Status** 0 Successful operation.
 32 Error condition (bad or missing argument, bad path, or other error).
- Files** /etc/mnttab Lists mounted file systems.
 /etc/passwd Used to obtain user names
- Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [du\(1\)](#), [mnttab\(4\)](#), [passwd\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#)

Notes This command can only be used by the super-user.

Name quota – display a user's ufs or zfs file system disk quota and usage

Synopsis quota [-v] [*username*]

Description quota displays users' UFS or ZFS disk usage and limits. Only the super-user may use the optional *username* argument to view the limits of other users.

quota without options only display warnings about mounted file systems where usage is over quota. Remotely mounted file systems which do not have quotas turned on are ignored.

username can be the numeric UID of a user.

Options -v Display user's quota on all mounted file systems where quotas exist.

Usage See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of quota when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (2^{31} bytes).

Files /etc/mnttab list of currently mounted filesystems

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [edquota\(1M\)](#), [quotaon\(1M\)](#), [quotacheck\(1M\)](#), [repquota\(1M\)](#), [rquotad\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#), [zones\(5\)](#)

Notes quota displays quotas for NFS mounted UFS- or ZFS-based file systems if the rquotad daemon is running. See [rquotad\(1M\)](#). In a [zones\(5\)](#) environment, quota displays quotas only for the zone in which it is invoked.

quota can display entries for the same file system multiple times for multiple mount points. For example,

```
# quota -v user1
```

might display identical quota information for user1 at the mount points /home/user1, /home/user2, and /home/user, if all three mount points are mounted from the same file system with quotas turned on.

Name quotacheck – ufs file system quota consistency checker

Synopsis quotacheck [-fp] [-v] *filesystem*...

quotacheck -a [-fpv]

Description quotacheck examines each mounted ufs file system, builds a table of current disk usage, and compares this table against the information stored in the file system's disk quota file. If any inconsistencies are detected, both the quota file and the current system copy of the incorrect quotas are updated.

filesystem is either a file system mount point or the block device on which the file system resides.

quotacheck expects each file system to be checked to have a quota file named *quotas* in the root directory. If none is present, quotacheck will not check the file system.

quotacheck accesses the character special device in calculating the actual disk usage for each user. Thus, the file systems that are checked should be quiescent while quotacheck is running.

Options The following options are supported:

- a Check the file systems which */etc/mnttab* indicates are ufs file systems. These file systems must be read-write mounted with disk quotas enabled, and have an *rq* entry in the *mntopts* field in */etc/vfstab*.
- f Force check on file systems with logging enabled. Use in combination with the -p option.
- p Check quotas of file systems in parallel. For file systems with logging enabled, no check is performed unless the -f option is also specified.
- v Indicate the calculated disk quotas for each user on a particular file system. quotacheck normally reports only those quotas modified.

Usage See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of quotacheck when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (2^{31} bytes).

Files */etc/mnttab* Mounted file systems
/etc/vfstab List of default parameters for each file system

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [edquota\(1M\)](#), [quota\(1M\)](#), [quotaon\(1M\)](#), [repquota\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#), [quotactl\(7I\)](#), [mount_ufs\(1M\)](#)

Name quotaon, quotaoff – turn ufs file system quotas on and off

Synopsis quotaon [-v] *filesystem* . . .

quotaon -a [-v]

quotaoff [-v] *filesystem* . . .

quotaoff -a [-v]

Description quotaon turns on disk quotas for one or more ufs file systems.

Before a file system may have quotas enabled, a file named `quotas`, owned by root, must exist in the root directory of the file system. See [edquota\(1M\)](#) for details on how to modify the contents of this file.

quotaoff turns off disk quotas for one or more ufs file systems.

The file systems specified must already be mounted.

These commands update the `mntopts` field of the appropriate entries in `/etc/mnttab` to indicate when quotas are on or off for each file system. If quotas are on, the string `quota` will be added to `mntopts`; if quotas are off, the `quota` string is not present.

filesystem must be either the mount point of a file system, or the block device on which the file system resides.

Options

quotaon -a This option is normally used at boot time to enable quotas. It applies only to those file systems in `/etc/vfstab` which have “rq” in the `mntopts` field, are currently mounted “rw”, and have a `quotas` file in the root directory.

-v Display a message for each file system after quotas are turned on.

quotaoff -a Force all file systems in `/etc/mnttab` to have their quotas disabled.

-v Display a message for each file system affected.

Usage See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of `quotaon` and `quotaoff` when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (2^{31} bytes).

Files `/etc/mnttab` mounted file systems

`/etc/vfstab` list of default parameters for each file system

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [edquota\(1M\)](#), [quota\(1M\)](#), [quotacheck\(1M\)](#), [repquota\(1M\)](#), [mnttab\(4\)](#), [vfstab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#), [quotactl\(7I\)](#)

Name raidctl – RAID hardware utility

Synopsis raidctl -C "disks" [-r *raid_level*] [-z *capacity*] [-s *stripe_size*] [-f] controller

raidctl -d [-f] *volume*

raidctl -F *filename* [-f] *controller*|PO

raidctl -a {set | unset} -g *disk* {*volume* | *controller*}

raidctl -p "*param=value*" [-f] *volume*

raidctl -c [-f] [-r *raid_level*] *disk1* *disk2* [*disk3*...]

raidctl -l -g *disk* *controller*

raidctl -l *volume*

raidctl -l *controller*|PO

raidctl [-l]

raidctl -S [*volume* | *controller*]

raidctl -S -g *disk* *controller*

raidctl -h

Description The `raidctl` utility is a hardware RAID configuration tool that supports different RAID controllers by providing a CLI (command-line interface) to end-users to create, delete or display RAID volume(s). The utility can also be used to set properties of a volume, assign hot-spare (HSP) disks to volumes or controllers, and to update firmware/fcode/BIOS for RAID controllers.

The `raidctl` utility requires privileges that are controlled by the underlying file-system permissions. Only privileged users can manipulate the RAID system configuration. If a non-privileged user attempts to run `raidctl`, the command fails with an exit status of 1.

The `raidctl` utility, as described in this man page, defines a broad set of command line options to provide management for full-featured RAID controllers. However, support for a given option depends on two elements:

- the presence of a software driver
- the firmware level of the RAID device

The dependency on a software driver is due to the design of `raidctl`. The utility is built on a common library that enables the insertion of plug-in modules for different drivers. Currently, the Solaris operating system is shipped with a plug-in for the `mpt` driver. This plug-in does not support all of the `raidctl` options. On a given storage device, options might be further limited by the device's firmware level.

The level of support for the various `raidctl` options cannot be determined by `raidctl`. The user must rely on the documentation for his RAID controller or hardware platform.

Currently, `raidctl` provides some level of support for the following RAID controllers:

- LSI1020 SCSI HBA
- LSI1030 SCSI HBA
- LSI1064 SAS HBA
- LSI1068 SAS HBA

All of the above HBAs are maintained by the `mpt` driver, on X86-32/64 and SPARC platforms.

Options The following options are supported:

`-c "disks" [-r raid_level] [-z capacity] [-s stripe_size] [-f] controller`
Create a RAID volume using specified disks.

When creating a RAID volume using this option, the identity of the newly created volume is automatically generated and `raidctl` reports it to the user.

The argument specified by this option contains the elements used to form the volume that will be created. Elements can be either disks or sub-volumes, where disks are separated by space(s) and a sub-volume is a set of disks grouped by parenthesis. All disks should be in `C.ID.L` expression (for example, `0.1.2` represents a physical disk of channel 0, target id 1, and logical unit number 2). The argument must match the RAID level specified by the `-r` option, even if it's omitted. This means the argument can only be:

for RAID 0

At least 2 disks

for RAID 1

Only 2 disks

for RAID 1E

At least 3 disks

for RAID 5

At least 3 disks

for RAID 10

At least 2 sub-volumes, each sub-volume must be formed by 2 disks

for RAID 50

At least 2 sub-volumes, each sub-volume must be formed by at least 3 disks, and the disk amount in each sub-volume should be the same

For example, the expression `"0.0.0 0.1.0"` means that the 2 specified disks form a RAID volume, which can either be a RAID 0 or a RAID 1 volume. `"(0.0.0 0.1.0)(0.2.0 0.3.0)"` means that the first 2 disks and the last 2 disks form 2 sub-volumes, and that these 2 sub-volumes form a RAID 10 volume. See the `EXAMPLES` section for more samples.

The `-r` option specifies the RAID level of the volume that will be created. Possible levels are 0, 1, 1E, 5, 10, 50. If this option is omitted, `raidctl` creates a RAID 1 volume by default.

The `-z` option specifies the capacity of the volume that will be created. The unit can be tera-bytes, giga-bytes, or mega-bytes (for example, 2t, 10g, 20m, and so on). If this option is omitted, `raidctl` calculates the maximum capacity of the volume that can be created by the specified disks and uses this value to create the volume.

The `-s` option specifies the stripe size of the volume that will be created. The possible values are 512, 1k, 2k, 4k, 8k, 16k, 32k, 64k, or 128k. If this option is omitted, `raidctl` chooses an appropriate value for the volume (for example, 64k).

In some cases, the creation of a RAID volume may cause data on specified disks to be lost (for instance, on LSI1020, LSI1030, SAS1064, or SAS1068 HBAs), and `raidctl` prompts the user for confirmation about the creation. Use the `-f` option to force the volume creation without prompting the user for confirmation.

The controller argument is used to identify which RAID controller the specified disks belongs. The `-l` option can be used to list the controller's ID number.

-d [-f] *volume*

Delete the RAID volume specified as *volume*. The volume is specified in canonical form (for example, `c0t0d0`).

When a volume is deleted, all data is lost. Therefore, unless the `-f` option is specified, `raidctl` prompts the user for confirmation before deleting the volume.

When a RAID 1 volume is deleted from a LSI1020, LSI1030, SAS1064, or SAS1068 HBA, the primary and secondary disks are “split”. If the volume was in SYNCING state, the primary will contain the data, and the secondary will not. If the volume state was OPTIMAL, both disks will contain a complete image of the data.

-F *filename* [-f] *controller*...

Update the firmware running on the specified controller(s). The `raidctl` utility prompts the user for confirmation of this action, unless the `-f` option is provided.

-a {set | unset} -g *disk* {*volume* | *controller*}

If the volume is specified, `raidctl` sets or unsets the disk as a local hot-spare disk dedicated to the volume, depending on the value specified by the `-a` option. If the controller is specified, `raidctl` sets or unsets the disk as a global hot-spare disk.

-p "*param=value*" [-f] *volume*

Change the property value for a given RAID volume. This option can be used to change cache write policy or to activate a volume. When changing the cache write policy, *param* should be the string `wp` (`SET_WR_POLICY`), and *value* can be either `on` or `off`. When used to activate a volume, *param* should be `state` and *value* should be `activate`.

Changing a RAID volume's property may affect the internal behavior of the RAID controller, so `raidctl` prompts the user for a confirmation before applying the change, unless the `-f` option is specified.

`-c [-f] [-r raid_level] disk1 disk2 [disk3...]`

Create a volume using the specified disks. This is an alternative to the `-C` option with similar functionality. This option is preserved for compatibility reasons, but only works with LSI1020, LSI1030, SAS1064, and SAS1068 HBAs to create RAID 0, RAID 1, or RAID 1E volumes. For other HBAs, the user can only use the `-C` option.

The `-r` option can be used to specify the RAID level of the target volume. If the `-r` option is omitted, `raidctl` will create a RAID 1 volume.

Disks must be specified in Solaris canonical format (for example, `c0t0d0`).

Creating a RAID 1 volume with this option replaces the contents of `disk2` with the contents of `disk1`.

When the user creates a RAID volume with this option, the RAID volume assumes the identity of `disk1`. Other disks become invisible and the RAID volume appears as one disk.

Creating a volume with this option is by default interactive. The user must answer a prompt affirmatively to create the volume. Use the `-f` option to force the volume creation without prompting the user for confirmation.

`-l -g disk controller`

Display information about the specified disk of the given controller. The output includes the following information:

Disk

Displays the disk in `C.ID.L` expression `disk`.

Vendor

Displays the vendor ID string.

Product

Displays the product ID string.

Capacity

Displays the total capacity of the disk.

Status

Displays the current status of disk. The status can be either “GOOD” (operating normally), “FAILED” (non-functional), or “MISSING” (disk not present).

HSP

Indicates if the disk has been set as a global hot-spare disk, local hot-spare disk, or a normal one. If it is a local hot-spare disk, all volumes which this disk is assigned to are displayed.

GUID

GUID string for the specified disk. This is an additional datum and might be unavailable in some cases.

-l volume

Display information about the specified volume. The output includes the following information:

Volume

Displays volume in canonical format.

Sub

Displays sub-volumes, if the specified volume is of RAID 10 or RAID 50 volume.

Disk

Displays all disks that form the specified volume.

Stripe Size

Displays the stripe size of the volume.

Status

Displays the status of the specified volume, or the sub-volumes or disks that form the specified volume. For an inactive volume, the status should be **INACTIVE**; otherwise it can be **OPTIMAL** (operating optimally), **DEGRADED** (operating with reduced functionality), **FAILED** (non-functional), or **SYNC** (disks are syncing). For a disk, the status can be **GOOD**, **FAILED**, or **MISSING**.

Cache

Indicates whether the cache is applied to I/O write activities. The cache can be either "ON" or "OFF".

RAID level

Displays the RAID level. The RAID level can be either 0, 1, 1E, 5, 10, or 50.

-l controller ...

Display information about the specified controller(s). The output includes the following information:

Controller

Displays the RAID controller's ID number.

Type

Displays the RAID controller's product type.

fw_version

Displays the controller's firmware version.

[-l]

List all RAID related objects that the `raidctl` utility can manipulate, including all available RAID controllers, RAID volumes, and physical disks. The `-l` option can be omitted.

The output includes the following information:

Controller

Displays the RAID controller's ID number.

Volume

Displays the logical RAID volume name.

Disk

Displays the RAID disk in C . ID . L expression.

-S [volume | controller]

Takes a snapshot of the RAID configuration information including all available RAID devices, RAID controllers, volumes, and disks.

Each line of the output specifies a RAID device and its related information, separated by space(s). All volumes and disks belong to the last specified controller.

The output lists the following information:

Controller

Displays the controller ID number, and the controller type string in double-quotation marks.

Volume

Displays the RAID volume name, number of component disks, the C . ID . L expression of the component disks, the RAID level, and the status. The status can be either OPTIMAL, DEGRADED, FAILED, or SYNCING.

Disk

Displays the C . ID . L expression of the disk, and the status. The status can be either GOOD, FAILED, or HSP (disk has been set as a stand-by disk).

If a volume or a controller is specified, a snapshot is only taken of the information for the specified volume or controller.

-S -g *disk controller*

Takes a snapshot of the information for the specified disk.

-h

Print out the usage string.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Creating the RAID Configuration

The following command creates a RAID 0 volume of 10G on controller 0, and the stripe size will be set to 64k:

```
# raidctl -C "0.0.0 0.2.0" -r 0 -z 10g -s 64k 0
```

The following command creates a RAID 1 volume on controller 2:

```
# raidctl -C "0.0.0 1.1.0" -r 1 2
```

The following command creates a RAID 5 volume on controller 2:

```
# raidctl -C "0.0.0 0.1.0 0.2.0" -r 5 2
```

EXAMPLE 1 Creating the RAID Configuration *(Continued)*

The following command creates a RAID 10 volume on controller 0:

```
# raidctl -C "(0.0.0 0.1.0)(0.2.0 0.3.0)" -r 10 0
```

The following command creates a RAID 50 volume on controller 0:

```
# raidctl -C "(0.0.0 0.1.0 0.2.0)(0.3.0 0.4.0 0.5.0)" -r 50 0
```

EXAMPLE 2 Displaying the RAID Configuration

The following command displays all available controllers, volumes, and disks:

```
# raidctl -l

Controller: 0
Controller: 2
    Volume: c2t0d0
    Disk: 0.0.0
    Disk: 0.1.0
    Disk: 0.2.0
    Disk: 0.3.0(HSP)
```

The following command displays information about controller 2:

```
# raidctl -l 2

Controller      Type          Fw_version
-----
c2              LSI 1030     1.03.39.00
```

The following command displays information about the specified volume:

```
# raidctl -l c2t0d0

Volume          Size  Stripe  Status  Cache  RAID
  Sub          Disk  Size    Size           Level
-----
c2t0d0          10240M 64K    OPTIMAL ON    RAID5
              0.0.0  5120M      GOOD
              0.1.0  5120M      GOOD
              0.2.0  5120M      GOOD
```

The following command displays information about disk 0.0.0 on controller 0:

```
# raidctl -l -g 0.0.0 0

Disk  Vendor  Product          Firmware Capacity      Status  HSP
```

```
-----
0.0.0  HITACHI H101473SCSUN72G SQ02      68.3G          GOOD    N/A
GUID:2000000cca02536c
```

EXAMPLE 3 Deleting the RAID Configuration

The following command deletes a volume:

```
# raidctl -d c0t0d0
```

EXAMPLE 4 Updating Flash Images on the Controller

The following command updates flash images on the controller 0:

```
# raidctl -F lsi_image.fw 0
```

EXAMPLE 5 Setting or Unsetting a Hot-Spare Disk

The following command sets disk 0.3.0 on controller 2 as a global hot-spare disk:

```
# raidctl -a set -g 0.3.0 2
```

The following command sets disk 0.3.0 on controller 2 as a local hot-spare disk to volume c2t0d0:

```
# raidctl -a set -g 0.3.0 c2t0d0
```

The following command converts disk 0.3.0 on controller 2 from a global hot-spare disk to a normal one:

```
# raidctl -a unset -g 0.3.0 2
```

The following command removes disk 0.3.0 from being a local hot-spare disk from volume c2t0d0:

```
# raidctl -a unset -g 0.3.0 c2t0d0
```

EXAMPLE 6 Setting the Volume's Property

The following command sets the write policy of the volume to “off”:

```
# raidctl -a set -p "wp=off" c0t0d0
```

EXAMPLE 7 Creating Volumes with the -c Option

The following command creates a RAID 1 volume:

```
# raidctl -c c0t0d0 c0t1d0
```

The following command creates a RAID 0 volume:

EXAMPLE 7 Creating Volumes with the -c Option (Continued)

```
# raidctl -c -r 0 c0t1d0 c0t2d0 c0t3d0
```

EXAMPLE 8 Taking a Snapshot of the RAID Configuration

The following command takes a snapshot of all RAID devices:

```
# # raidctl -S

1 "LSI 1030"
c1t1d0 2 0.2.0 0.3.0 1 DEGRADED
0.2.0 GOOD
0.3.0 FAILED
```

The following command takes a snapshot about volume c1t0d0:

```
# raidctl -S c1t0d0

c1t0d0 2 0.0.0 0.1.0 1 OPTIMAL
```

The following command takes a snapshot about disk 0.1.0 on controller 1:

```
# raidctl -S -g 0.1.0 1

0.1.0 GOOD
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

```
0
    Successful completion.
1
    Invalid command line input or permission denied.
2
    Request operation failed.
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Committed

See Also [attributes\(5\)](#), [mpt\(7D\)](#)

System Administration Guide: Basic Administration

Warnings Do not create raid volumes on internal SAS disks if you are going to use the Solaris Multipathing I/O feature (also known as MPxIO). Creating a new raid volume under Solaris Multipathing will give your root device a new GUID which does not match the GUID for the existing devices. This will cause a boot failure since your root device entry in `/etc/vfstab` will not match.

Notes The `-z` option is not supported on systems that use the `mpt` driver and LSI RAID controllers.

Name ramdiskadm – administer ramdisk pseudo device

Synopsis /usr/sbin/ramdiskadm -a *name size* [g | m | k | b]
/usr/sbin/ramdiskadm -d *name*
/usr/sbin/ramdiskadm

Description The `ramdiskadm` command administers [ramdisk\(7D\)](#), the ramdisk driver. Use `ramdiskadm` to create a new named ramdisk device, delete an existing named ramdisk, or list information about existing ramdisks.

Ramdisks created using `ramdiskadm` are not persistent across reboots.

Options The following options are supported:

-a *name size* Create a ramdisk named *name* of size *size* and its corresponding block and character device nodes.

name must be composed only of the characters a-z, A-Z, 0-9, _ (underbar), and - (hyphen), but it must not begin with a hyphen. It must be no more than 32 characters long. Ramdisk names must be unique.

The size can be a decimal number, or, when prefixed with 0x, a hexadecimal number, and can specify the size in bytes (no suffix), 512-byte blocks (suffix b), kilobytes (suffix k), megabytes (suffix m) or gigabytes (suffix g). The size of the ramdisk actually created might be larger than that specified, depending on the hardware implementation.

If the named ramdisk is successfully created, its block device path is printed on standard out.

-d *name* Delete an existing ramdisk of the name *name*. This command succeeds only when the named ramdisk is not open. The associated memory is freed and the device nodes are removed.

You can delete only ramdisks created using `ramdiskadm`. It is not possible to delete a ramdisk that was created during the boot process.

Without options, `ramdiskadm` lists any existing ramdisks, their sizes (in decimal), and whether they can be removed by `ramdiskadm` (see the description of the -d option, above).

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Creating a 2MB Ramdisk Named mydisk

```
# ramdiskadm -a mydisk 2m  
/dev/ramdisk/mydisk
```

EXAMPLE 2 Listing All Ramdisks

```
# ramdiskadm
Block Device          Size  Removable
/dev/ramdisk/miniroot 134217728 No
/dev/ramdisk/certfs   1048576 No
/dev/ramdisk/mydisk   2097152 Yes
```

Exit Status ramdiskadm returns the following exit values:

```
0    Successful completion.
>0   An error occurred.
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsr
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [attributes\(5\)](#), [ramdisk\(7D\)](#)

Notes The abilities of ramdiskadm and the privilege level of the person who uses the utility are controlled by the permissions of /dev/ramdiskctl. Read access allows query operations, for example, listing device information. Write access is required to do any state-changing operations, for example, creating or deleting ramdisks.

As shipped, /dev/ramdiskctl is owned by root, in group sys, and mode 0644, so all users can do query operations but only root can perform state-changing operations. An administrator can give write access to non-privileged users, allowing them to add or delete ramdisks. However, granting such ability entails considerable risk; such privileges should be given only to a trusted group.

Name rcapadm – configure resource capping daemon

Synopsis rcapadm

```
rcapadm [ [-n] -E | -D]
        [-i interval=value, ..., interval=value] [-c percent]
        [-z zonename -m maxvalue]
```

Description The rcapadm command allows a user with the privileges described below to configure various attributes of the resource capping daemon. If used without arguments, rcapadm displays the current status of the resource capping daemon if it has been configured. See [rcapd\(1M\)](#) for more information.

In the current release of the Solaris operating environment, rcapadm is available to users with all privileges and to users who have the Process Management profile in their list of profiles. The System Administrator role includes the Process Management profile.

Options -c percent

Set the minimum physical memory utilization for memory cap enforcement. Caps will not be enforced until the physical memory available to processes is low. The *percent* value should be in the range 0 to 100. The minimum (and default) value is 0, which means that memory caps are always enforced.

-D

Disable the resource capping daemon so that it will not be started when the system is booted. Also stop the resource capping daemon now, if the -n option is not specified and it is currently running.

-E

Enable the resource capping daemon so that it will be started each time the system is booted. Also start the resource capping daemon now, if the -n option is not specified and it is not currently running.

-i interval=value, ..., interval=value

Set intervals for various periodic operations performed by rcapd. All intervals are specified in seconds. You can set the following intervals:

scan The interval at which rcapd scans for new processes. The default scan interval is every 15 seconds. The minimum value is 1 second.

sample The interval of process resident set size sampling. The default sample interval is every 5 seconds. The minimum value is 1 second.

<code>report</code>	The interval at which various paging statistics are updated by <code>rcapd</code> , in seconds. These statistics can be viewed by using <code>rcaps tat(1SRM)</code> . The default reporting interval is every 5 seconds. When the interval is set to 0, statistics will not be updated.
	Note – Paging refers to the act of relocating portions of memory, called pages, to or from physical memory. <code>rcapd</code> pages out the most infrequently used pages.
<code>config</code>	The reconfiguration interval, in seconds. At each reconfiguration event, <code>rcapd</code> checks its configuration file for updates, and scans the project databases for new project caps. The default reconfiguration interval is every 60 seconds. The minimum interval is 0. When the interval is set to 0, no periodic reconfiguration occurs, although the running daemon can still be reconfigured by sending it <code>SIGHUP</code> .
<code>-m maxvalue</code>	Used in conjunction with the <code>-z</code> option. Specifies a value for <code>rcap.max-rss</code> , a dynamically-set cap on the usage of physical memory for the zone specified by <code>-z</code> . You can apply a scale (K, M, G, T) to the value you specify. K means kilobyte; M, megabyte; G, gigabyte; and T, terabyte. For example, <code>100M</code> is 100 megabytes.
<code>-n</code>	Do not affect the running state of the resource capping daemon when enabling or disabling it.
<code>-z zonename</code>	Used in conjunction with the <code>-m</code> option. Specifies the zone for which you are dynamically specifying a cap on physical memory usage (using <code>-m</code>).

Note – To set a persistent cap on memory usage within a zone, use `zonecfg(1M)`.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Configuring the Resource Capping Daemon with Immediate Enforcement

```
# rcapadm -E -i scan=15,sample=5,report=5,config=60 -c 0
```

EXAMPLE 2 Specifying a Resource Cap for a Zone

The command shown below specifies the maximum amount of memory that can be consumed by a specified zone. Note that this value lasts only until the next reboot. To set a persistent cap, use [zonecfg\(1M\)](#).

```
# rcapadm -z testzone -m 512M
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion. The modifications to the current configuration were valid and made successfully.
- 1 An error occurred. A fatal error occurred either in obtaining or modifying the resource capping configuration.
- 2 Invalid command-line options were specified.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWrcapu
Interface Stability	Evolving

The `-z` and `-m` options are committed interfaces.

See Also [rcapstat\(1\)](#), [rcapd\(1M\)](#), [zonecfg\(1M\)](#), [project\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [zones\(5\)](#)

“Physical Memory Control Using the Resource Capping Daemon” in *System Administration Guide: Virtualization Using the Solaris Operating System*

Name rcapd – resource cap enforcement daemon

Synopsis rcapd [-d]

Description The rcapd daemon enforces resource caps on collections of processes. Per-project and per-zone physical memory caps are supported. For information about projects, see [project\(4\)](#). For zones information, see [zones\(5\)](#)

When the resident set size (RSS) of a collection of processes exceeds its cap, rcapd takes action and reduces the RSS of the collection.

The virtual memory system divides physical memory into segments known as pages. To read data from a file into memory, the virtual memory system reads in individual pages. To reduce resource consumption, the daemon can page out, or relocate, infrequently used pages to an area outside of physical memory.

In the project file, caps are defined for projects that have positive values for the following project attribute:

`rcap.max-rss` The total amount of physical memory, in bytes, that is available to the project's member processes

See [project\(4\)](#) for a description of project attributes.

For a system with one or more zones, you can dynamically set the `rcap.max-rss` value for a zone with [rcapadm\(1M\)](#). To set a persistent cap on memory usage within a zone, you use [zonecfg\(1M\)](#).

You configure rcapd through the use of [rcapadm\(1M\)](#). The daemon can be monitored with [rcapstat\(1\)](#). Configuration changes are incorporated into rcapd by sending it SIGHUP (see [kill\(1\)](#)), or according to the configuration interval (see [rcapadm\(1M\)](#)).

Options The following option is supported:

-d Enable debug mode. Messages are displayed on the invoking user's terminal.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Setting Resident Set Size Cap Attribute

The following line in the `/etc/project` database sets an RSS cap of 1073741824 bytes for a project named `foo`.

```
foo:100::foo,root::rcap.max-rss=10737418240
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 An error occurred.
- 2 Invalid command-line options were specified.

Files /etc/project Project database.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWrcapu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [rcapstat\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [rcapadm\(1M\)](#), [zonecfg\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [project\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [zones\(5\)](#)

“Physical Memory Control Using the Resource Capping Daemon” in *System Administration Guide: Virtualization Using the Solaris Operating System*

Notes If killed with SIGKILL, rcapd can leave processes in a stopped state. Use SIGTERM to cause rcapd to terminate properly.

A collection's RSS can exceed its cap for some time before the cap is enforced, even if sufficient pageable memory is available. This period of time can be reduced by shortening the RSS sampling interval with rcapadm.

The rcapd service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/rcap:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name rctladm – display or modify global state of system resource controls

Synopsis rctladm [-lu] [-e *action*] [-d *action*] [*name...*]

Description The rctladm command allows the examination and modification of active resource controls on the running system. An instance of a resource control is referred to as an *rctl*. See [setrctl\(2\)](#) for a description of an *rctl*; see [resource_controls\(5\)](#) for a list of the *rctls* supported in the current release of the Solaris operating system. Logging of *rctl* violations can be activated or deactivated system-wide and active *rctls* (and their state) can be listed.

An rctladm command without options is the equivalent of an rctladm with the -l option. See the description of -l below.

Options The following options are supported:

-d *action*

-e *action*

Disable (-d) or enable (-e) the global action on the specified *rctls*. If no *rctl* is specified, no action is taken and an error status is returned. You can use the special token *all* with the disable option to deactivate all global actions on a resource control.

You can set the *syslog* action to a specific degree by assigning a severity level. To do this, specify *syslog=level*, where *level* is one of the string tokens given as valid severity levels in [syslog\(3C\)](#). You can omit the common LOG_ prefix on the severity level. Note that not all *rctls* support the *syslog* action. See [resource_controls\(5\)](#).

-l

List information about *rctls*. The name, global event actions and statuses, and global flags are displayed. If one or more name operands are specified, only those *rctls* matching the names are displayed.

-u

Configure resource controls based on the contents of */etc/rctladm.conf*. Any name operands are ignored.

Operands The following operands are supported:

name

The name of the *rctl* to operate on. Multiple *rctl* names can be specified. If no names are specified, and the list action has been specified, then all *rctls* are listed. If the enable or disable action is specified, one or more *rctl* names must be specified.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Activating System Logging for Specific Violations

The following command activates system logging of all violations of *task.max-lwps*.

```
# rctladm -e syslog task.max-lwps
#
```

EXAMPLE 2 Examining the Current Status of a Specific Resource

The following command examines the current status of the `task.max-lwps` resource.

```
$ rctldm -l task.max-lwps
task.max-lwps          syslog=DEBUG
$
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0
Successful completion.
- 1
A fatal error occurred. A message is written to standard error to indicate each resource control for which the operation failed. The operation was successful for any other resource controls specified as operands.
- 2
Invalid command line options were specified.

Files `/etc/rctldm.conf`

Each time `rctldm` is executed, it updates the contents of `rctldm.conf` with the current configuration.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWesu

See Also [setrctl\(2\)](#), [getrctl\(2\)](#), [prctl\(1\)](#), [rctlblk_get_global_flags\(3C\)](#), [rctlblk_get_global_action\(3C\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [resource_controls\(5\)](#)

Notes By default, there is no global logging of `rctl` violations.

Name rdate – set system date from a remote host

Synopsis rdate *hostname*

Description rdate sets the local date and time from the *hostname* given as an argument. You must have the authorization `solaris.system.date` on the local system. Typically, rdate is used in a startup script.

rdate requests are responded to by the “time” service on the specified host. To enable the “time” service, use the following commands:

```
svcadm enable time:stream
svcadm enable time:dgram
```

Usage The rdate command is IPv6-enabled. See [ip6\(7P\)](#).

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWrcmdc

See Also [inetd\(1M\)](#), [inetd.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [ip6\(7P\)](#)

Name reboot – restart the operating system

Synopsis /usr/sbin/reboot [-dlnq] [*boot_arguments*]
/usr/sbin/reboot [-f [-e *environment*] | -p] [-dlnq] [*boot_arguments*]

Description The reboot utility restarts the kernel. The kernel is loaded into memory by the PROM monitor, which transfers control to the loaded kernel.

On x86 systems, when the `-f` flag is specified, the running kernel will load the next kernel into memory, then transfer control to the newly loaded kernel. This form of reboot is shown in the second synopsis, above.

Although reboot can be run by the super-user at any time, [shutdown\(1M\)](#) is normally used first to warn all users logged in of the impending loss of service. See [shutdown\(1M\)](#) for details.

The reboot utility performs a [sync\(1M\)](#) operation on the disks, and then a multi-user reboot is initiated. See [init\(1M\)](#) for details. On x86 systems, reboot may also update the boot archive as needed to ensure a successful reboot.

The reboot utility normally logs the reboot to the system log daemon, [syslogd\(1M\)](#), and places a shutdown record in the login accounting file `/var/adm/wtmpx`. These actions are inhibited if the `-n` or `-q` options are present.

Normally, the system reboots itself at power-up or after crashes.

Options The following options are supported:

`-d`

Force a system crash dump before rebooting. See [dumpadm\(1M\)](#) for information on configuring system crash dumps.

`-e`

If `-f` is present, reboot to the specified boot environment.

`-f`

Fast reboot, bypassing firmware and boot loader. The new kernel will be loaded into memory by the running kernel, and control will be transferred to the newly loaded kernel. If disk or kernel arguments are specified, they must be specified before other boot arguments.

This option is currently available only on x86 systems.

Service `svc:/system/boot-config:default` is enabled by default. It requires `solaris.system.shutdown` as `action_authorization` and `value_authorization`. When the `config/fastreboot_default` property is set to `true`, reboot will behave as `reboot -f`. The value of this property can be changed using [svccfg\(1M\)](#) and [svcadm\(1M\)](#), to control the default reboot behavior.

See EXAMPLES for details.

- l
Suppress sending a message to the system log daemon, `syslogd(1M)` about who executed `reboot`.
- n
Avoid calling `sync(2)` and do not log the reboot to `syslogd(1M)` or to `/var/adm/wtmpx`. The kernel still attempts to sync filesystems prior to reboot, except if the `-d` option is also present. If `-d` is used with `-n`, the kernel does not attempt to sync file systems.
- p
Reboot to prom. This flag can be used to reboot the system through firmware without changing the default reboot behavior as denoted by the `config/fastreboot_default` property setting in `system/boot-config` service.

This option is currently available only on x86 systems. The `-p` and `-f` options are mutually exclusive.
- q
Quick. Reboot quickly and ungracefully, without shutting down running processes first.

Operands The following operands are supported:

boot_arguments

An optional *boot_arguments* specifies arguments to the `uadmin(2)` function that are passed to the boot program and kernel upon restart. The form and list of arguments is described in the `boot(1M)` and `kernel(1M)` man pages.. If the arguments are specified, whitespace between them is replaced by single spaces unless the whitespace is quoted for the shell. If the *boot_arguments* begin with a hyphen, they must be preceded by the `--` delimiter (two hyphens) to denote the end of the reboot argument list.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Passing the `-r` and `-v` Arguments to boot

In the following example, the delimiter `--` (two hyphens) must be used to separate the options of `reboot` from the arguments of `boot(1M)`.

```
example# reboot -dl -- -rv
```

EXAMPLE 2 Rebooting Using a Specific Disk and Kernel

The following example reboots using a specific disk and kernel.

```
example# reboot disk1 kernel.test/unix
```

EXAMPLE 3 Fast Rebooting

The following examples use the `-f` option to perform fast reboots.

If service `svc:/system/boot-config:default` is enabled and property `config/fastreboot_default` is set to `true`, the `-f` option can be omitted.

EXAMPLE 3 Fast Rebooting (Continued)

The following command reboots to the default entry in the GRUB (see [grub\(5\)](#)) menu file `menu.lst`.

```
example# reboot -f
```

The following command reboots to another UFS root disk.

```
example# reboot -f -- '/dev/dsk/c1d0s0'
```

The following command reboots to another ZFS root pool.

```
example# reboot -f -- 'rpool/ROOT/root2'
```

The following command reboots to mykernel on the same disk with `-k` option.

```
example# reboot -f -- '/platform/i86pc/mykernel/amd64/unix -k'
```

The following command reboots to mykernel off another root disk mounted on `/mnt`.

```
example# reboot -f -- '/mnt/platform/i86pc/mykernel/amd64/unix -k'
```

The following command reboots to `/platform/i86pc/kernel/$ISADIR/unix` on another boot environment named `second_root`.

```
example# reboot -f -e second_root
```

The following command reboots to the same kernel with `-kv` options.

```
example# reboot -f -- '-kv'
```

The following commands disable the fast-reboot-by-default behavior.

```
example# svccfg -s "system/boot-config:default" \  
setprop config/fastreboot_default=false  
example# svcadm refresh svc:/system/boot-config:default
```

The following commands re-enable the fast-reboot-by-default behavior.

```
example# svccfg -s "system/boot-config:default" \  
setprop config/fastreboot_default=true  
example# svcadm refresh svc:/system/boot-config:default
```

EXAMPLE 4 Rebooting to a Particular GRUB Menu

The following commands will reboot to entry 2 in the GRUB menu.

```
example# bootadm list-menu  
the location for the active GRUB menu is: /rpool/boot/grub/menu.lst  
default 0  
timeout 10
```

EXAMPLE 4 Rebooting to a Particular GRUB Menu *(Continued)*

```

0 zfsbe1
1 zfsbe1 failsafe
2 zfsbe2
3 zfsbe2 Solaris xVM
4 zfsbe2 failsafe
example# reboot 2

```

Files /var/adm/wtmpx
login accounting file

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [mdb\(1\)](#), [boot\(1M\)](#), [dumpadm\(1M\)](#), [fsck\(1M\)](#), [halt\(1M\)](#), [init\(1M\)](#), [kernel\(1M\)](#), [shutdown\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [sync\(1M\)](#), [syslogd\(1M\)](#), [sync\(2\)](#), [uadmin\(2\)](#), [reboot\(3C\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [grub\(5\)](#)

Notes The reboot utility does not execute the scripts in `/etc/rcnum.d` or execute shutdown actions in [inittab\(4\)](#). To ensure a complete shutdown of system services, use [shutdown\(1M\)](#) or [init\(1M\)](#) to reboot a Solaris system.

Name rem_drv – remove a device driver from the system

Synopsis rem_drv [-b *basedir*] *device_driver*

Description The rem_drv command informs the system that the device driver *device_driver* is no longer valid. If possible, rem_drv unloads *device_driver* from memory. rem_drv also updates the system driver configuration files.

If rem_drv has been executed, the next time the system is rebooted it automatically performs a reconfiguration boot (see [kernel\(1M\)](#)).

Options The following options are supported:

-b *basedir*

Sets the path to the root directory of the diskless client. Used on the server to execute rem_drv for a client. The client machine must be rebooted to unload the driver.

Note – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the -b option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).

-C

Remove dangling device attribute nodes bound to the driver being removed. This causes any device ownership or permissions customizations made to any node not to be preserved if the driver is added back. Recommended for use when reprovisioning a machine from one configuration or use to another where past administrative customizations might not be desired.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Removing the sd Driver

The following example removes the sd driver from use:

```
example% rem_drv sd
```

EXAMPLE 2 Removing a Diskless Client

The following example removes the driver from the sun1 diskless client. The driver is not uninstalled or unloaded until the client machine is rebooted.

```
example% rem_drv -b /export/root/sun1 sd
```

Note the caveat on the use of the -b option in the description of that option, above.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [add_drv\(1M\)](#), [kernel\(1M\)](#), [update_drv\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [zones\(5\)](#), [devfs\(7FS\)](#)

Name remove_allocatable – remove entries from allocation databases

Synopsis /usr/sbin/remove_allocatable [-f] -n *name*
 /usr/sbin/remove_allocatable [-f] [-d] -t *dev-type*

Description remove_allocatable removes entries of user allocatable devices from the device allocation mechanism. remove_allocatable also removes entries of some non-allocatable devices, such as printers, whose label range is managed by the mechanism.

Options The following options are supported:

- d Removes system-supplied default attributes of the device type that is specified with -t.
- f Force the removal of an entry. remove_allocatable exits with an error if this option is not specified when an entry with the specified device name no longer exists.
- n *name* Removes the entry for the device *name*.
- t *dev-type* Removes devices of type *dev-type*.

Exit Status When successful, remove_allocatable returns an exit status of 0 (true). remove_allocatable returns a nonzero exit status in the event of an error. The exit codes are as follows:

- 1 Invocation syntax error
- 2 Unknown system error
- 3 Device *name* or *dev-type* not found. This error occurs only when the -f option is not specified.
- 4 Permission denied. User does not have DAC or MAC access to database.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWtsu
Interface Stability	See below.

The invocation is Uncommitted. The options are Uncommitted. The output is Not-an-Interface.

See Also [allocate\(1\)](#), [deallocate\(1\)](#), [add_allocatable\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [device_clean\(5\)](#)

Notes The functionality described on this manual page is available only if the system is configured with Trusted Extensions.

Name removef – remove a file from software database

Synopsis removef [[-M] -R *root_path*] [-V *fs_file*] *pkginst path* . . .
removef [[-M] -R *root_path*] [-V *fs_file*] -f *pkginst*

Description removef informs the system that the user, or software, intends to remove a pathname. Output from removef is the list of input pathnames that may be safely removed (no other packages have a dependency on them).

Options The following options are supported:

-f

After all files have been processed, removef should be invoked with the -f option to indicate that the removal phase is complete.

-M

Instruct removef not to use the *\$root_path/etc/vfstab* file for determining the client's mount points. This option assumes the mount points are correct on the server and it behaves consistently with Solaris 2.5 and earlier releases.

-R *root_path*

Define the full path name of a directory to use as the *root_path*. All files, including package system information files, are relocated to a directory tree starting in the specified *root_path*. The *root_path* may be specified when installing to a client from a server (for example, */export/root/client1*).

removef inherits the value of the `PKG_INSTALL_ROOT` environment variable. (See `ENVIRONMENT VARIABLES`, below.) If `PKG_INSTALL_ROOT` is set, such as when the -R option is used with [pkgadd\(1M\)](#) or [pkgrm\(1M\)](#)

Note – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the -R option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).

-V *fs_file*

Specify an alternative *fs_file* to map the client's file systems. For example, used in situations where the *\$root_path/etc/vfstab* file is non-existent or unreliable.

Operands The following operands are supported:

path

The pathname to be removed.

pkginst

The package instance from which the pathname is being removed.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Using removef

The following example uses the `removef` command in an optional pre-install script:

```
echo "The following files are no longer part of this package
    and are being removed."
removef $PKGINST /myapp/file1 /myapp/file2 |
while read pathname
do
    echo "$pathname"
    rm -f $pathname
done
removef -f $PKGINST || exit 2
```

Environment Variables `removef` inherits the value of the following environment variable. This variable is set when [pkgadd\(1M\)](#) or [pkgrm\(1M\)](#)

`PKG_INSTALL_ROOT`

If present, defines the full path name of a directory to use as the system's `PKG_INSTALL_ROOT` path. All product and package information files are then looked for in the directory tree, starting with the specified `PKG_INSTALL_ROOT` path. If not present, the default system path of `/` is used.

Exit Status 0
Successful completion.

>0
An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [pkginfo\(1\)](#), [pkgmk\(1\)](#), [pkgparam\(1\)](#), [pkgproto\(1\)](#), [pkgtrans\(1\)](#), [installf\(1M\)](#), [pkgadd\(1M\)](#), [pkgask\(1M\)](#), [pkgchk\(1M\)](#), [pkgrm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#)

Application Packaging Developer's Guide

Notes Package commands are [largefile\(5\)](#)-aware. They handle files larger than 2 GB in the same way they handle smaller files. In their current implementations, [pkgadd\(1M\)](#), [pkgtrans\(1\)](#) and other package commands can process a datastream of up to 4 GB.

Name reparse – reparse point daemon

Synopsis /usr/lib/reparse/reparse

Description The reparse daemon processes kernel upcalls to interpret “reparse points”, which are the basis of Microsoft DFS referrals and NFS referrals support on Solaris CIFS and NFS file servers. Only the root user or a user with equivalent privileges can run this daemon. The daemon is under SMF control.

Exit Status 0
Daemon started successfully.

>0
Daemon failed to start.

Error information is reported to syslog at level LOG_ERR.

Files /usr/lib/reparse/*.so.1
Per-service plugins for reparse.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsr
Interface Stability	Consolidation Private

See Also [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [syslogd\(1M\)](#), [libreparse\(3LIB\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes Do not manually stop, start or restart the reparse daemon. If you need to change the state of the daemon, use these commands:

```
# svcadm disable svc:/system/filesystem/reparse
# svcadm enable svc:/system/filesystem/reparse
# svcadm restart svc:/system/filesystem/reparse
```

See [svcadm\(1M\)](#) for additional information.

Name repquota – summarize quotas for a ufs file system

Synopsis repquota [-v] *filesystem* . . .
repquota -a [-v]

Description repquota prints a summary of the disk usage and quotas for the specified ufs file systems. The current number of files and amount of space (in kilobytes) is printed for each user along with any quotas created with [edquota\(1M\)](#).

The *filesystem* must have the file quotas in its root directory.

Only the super-user may view quotas which are not their own.

Options The following options are supported:

- a Report on all mounted ufs file systems that have `rq` in the `mntopts` field of the `/etc/vfstab` file.
- v Report quotas for all users, even those who do not consume resources.

Usage See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of repquota when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (2^{31} bytes).

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [edquota\(1M\)](#), [quota\(1M\)](#), [quotacheck\(1M\)](#), [quotaon\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#), [quotactl\(7I\)](#)

Name re-preinstall – installs the JumpStart software on a system

Synopsis `cdrom-mnt-pt/Solaris_XX/Tools/Boot/usr/sbin/install.d/re-preinstall`
[-m *Solaris_boot_dir*]
[-k *platform_name*] *target-slice*

Description re-preinstall installs the JumpStart software (preinstall boot image) on a system, so you can power-on the system and have it automatically install the Solaris software (perform a JumpStart installation on the system). When you turn on a re-preinstalled system, the system looks for the JumpStart software on the system's default boot disk. All new SPARC systems have the JumpStart software already preinstalled. The *XX* in *Solaris_XX* is the version number of the Solaris release being used.

You can use the re-preinstall command in several ways. The most common way is to run re-preinstall on a system to install the JumpStart software on its own default boot disk. This is useful if you want to restore a system to its original factory conditions. (See the first procedure described in EXAMPLES.)

You can also run re-preinstall on a system to install JumpStart software on any attached disk (non-boot disk). After you install the JumpStart software on a disk, you can move the disk to a different system and perform a JumpStart installation on the different system. (See the second procedure described in EXAMPLES.)

re-preinstall creates a standard file system on the specified *target-slice* (usually slice 0), and re-preinstall makes sure there is enough space on the *target-slice* for the JumpStart software. If sufficient space is not available, re-preinstall fails with the following message:

```
re-preinstall: target-slice too small xx Megabytes required
```

You can use the [format\(1M\)](#) command to create sufficient space on the *target-slice* for the JumpStart software.

Options The following options are supported:

- k *platform_name* Platform name of the system that will use the disk with the JumpStart software. The default is the platform name of the system running re-preinstall. (Use the [uname\(1\)](#) command (-i option) to determine a system's platform name.)
- m *Solaris_boot_dir* Absolute path to the `Solaris_XX/Tools/Boot` subdirectory of a mounted Solaris CD or a Solaris CD copied to disk that re-preinstall uses to install the JumpStart software. The default is root (/), which is where the Solaris CD is mounted in single-user mode.

Operands The following operands are supported:

- target-slice* Device name of the disk slice where the JumpStart software will be installed (usually slice 0), for example, `c0t3d0s0`.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Installing the JumpStart Software on a System's Own Default Boot Disk

The following procedure installs the JumpStart software on a system's own default boot disk:

1. From the `ok` prompt, boot the system from the Solaris media CD or DVD in single-user mode:

```
ok boot cdrom -s
```

2. The following command installs the Jumpstart software on the System default boot disk, `c0t0d0s0` on a Solaris system:

```
example# /usr/sbin/install.d/re-preinstall c0t0d0s1
```

3. Reboot the slice:

```
example# reboot disk:b
```

EXAMPLE 2 Installing the JumpStart Software on a System's Attached (non-boot) Disk

The following procedure installs the JumpStart software on a system's attached (non-boot) disk:

1. Mount the Solaris CD or DVD if volume management is not running or CD or DVD is not mounted.
2. Use the [format\(1M\)](#) command to determine the target-slice where JumpStart will be installed.
3. Use the [uname\(1\)](#) command (`-i` option) to determine the platform name of the system that will use the re-preinstalled disk
4. Run `re-preinstall` with the `-m Solaris_boot_dir` option if the Solaris CD or DVD is not mounted on `/cdrom`.

The following command installs the JumpStart software on the system's attached disk for a system with a Sun4u kernel architecture, and it uses the Solaris CD or DVD mounted with a volume manager on a Solaris system:

```
example# /cdrom/cdrom/s1/usr/bin/install.d/re-preinstall -m
/cdrom/cdrom/s1 -k sun4u c0t2d0s0
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 An error has occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcdrom (Solaris CD, SPARC Platform Edition)

See Also [uname\(1\)](#), [eeprom\(1M\)](#), [format\(1M\)](#), [mount\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Solaris 10 Installation Guide: Basic Installations

Name rmmount – removable media mounter for CD-ROM, floppy, Jaz drive, and others

Synopsis /usr/sbin/rmmount [-D]

Description The rmmount utility is a removable media mounter that is executed by volume management whenever a removable medium, such as a CD-ROM or a floppy, is inserted. Removable media is managed by an application or a volume manager. rmmount can also be called by using [volrmmount\(1\)](#).

Upon insertion of a medium and following invocation of the [volcheck\(1\)](#) command, rmmount determines what type of file system (if any) is on that medium. If a file system is present, rmmount mounts the file system in one of the locations listed below.

For a diskette (floppy):

/floppy/floppy0	symbolic link to mounted floppy in local floppy drive
/floppy/floppy_name	mounted named floppy
/floppy/unnamed_floppy	mounted unnamed floppy

For a CD-ROM or a DVD-ROM:

/cdrom/cdrom0	symbolic link to mounted CD-ROM in local CD-ROM drive
/cdrom/CD-ROM_name	mounted named CD-ROM
/cdrom/CD-ROM_name/partition	mounted named CD-ROM with partitioned file system
/cdrom/unnamed_cdrom	mounted unnamed CD-ROM

For a Zip drive:

/rmdisk/zip0	symbolic link to mounted Zip medium in local Zip drive
/rmdisk/Zip_name	mounted named Zip medium
/rmdisk/Zip_name/partition	mounted named Zip medium with partitioned file system
/rmdisk/unnamed_zip	mounted unnamed Zip medium

For a Jaz drive:

/rmdisk/jaz0	symbolic link to mounted Jaz medium in local Jaz drive
/rmdisk/Jaz_name	mounted named Jaz medium
/rmdisk/Jaz_name/partition	mounted named Jaz medium with partitioned file system
/rmdisk/unnamed_Jaz	mounted unnamed Jaz medium

For a generic “rmdisk” drive:

<code>/rmdisk/rmdisk0</code>	symbolic link to mounted removable medium in local removable medium drive
<code>/rmdisk/rmdisk_name</code>	mounted named removable medium
<code>/rmdisk/rmdisk_name/partition</code>	mounted named removable medium with partitioned file system
<code>/rmdisk/unnamed_rmdisk</code>	mounted unnamed removable medium

If the media is read-only (for example, a CD-ROM or a floppy with write-protect tab set), the file system is mounted read-only.

If a file system is not identified, `rmmount` does not mount a file system. See the [System Administration Guide: Basic Administration](#) for more information on the location of CD-ROM, floppy, and other media without file systems.

If a file system type has been determined, it is then checked to see that it is “clean.” If the file system is “dirty,” `fsck -p` (see [fsck\(1M\)](#)) is run in an attempt to clean it. If `fsck` fails, the file system is mounted read-only.

After the mount is complete, “actions” associated with the media type are executed. These actions allow for the notification to other programs that new media are available.

Actions are executed in the order in which they appear in the configuration file. The action function can return either 1 or 0. If it returns 0, no further actions will be executed. This allows the function to control which applications are executed.

In order to execute an action, `rmmount` performs a `dlopen(3C)` on the shared object and calls the action function defined within it. The definition of the interface to actions can be found in `/usr/include/rmmount.h`.

File systems mounted by `rmmount` are always mounted with the `nosuid` flag set, thereby disabling `setuid` programs and access to block or character devices in that file system. Upon ejection, `rmmount` unmounts mounted file systems and executes actions associated with the media type. If a file system is “busy” (that is, it contains the current working directory of a live process), the ejection will fail.

Options `-D` Turn on the debugging output from the `rmmount dprintf` calls.

Files `/usr/lib/rmmount/*.so.1` shared objects used by `rmmount`.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWvolu

See Also [volcheck\(1\)](#), [volrmmount\(1\)](#), [fsck\(1M\)](#), [dlopen\(3C\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

System Administration Guide: Basic Administration

Name rmt – remote magtape protocol module

Synopsis /usr/sbin/rmt

Description rmt is a program used by the remote dump and restore programs in manipulating a magnetic tape drive through an interprocess communication connection. rmt is normally started up with an [rexec\(3SOCKET\)](#) or [rcmd\(3SOCKET\)](#) call.

The rmt program accepts requests that are specific to the manipulation of magnetic tapes, performs the commands, then responds with a status indication. All responses are in ASCII and in one of two forms. Successful commands have responses of:

*A*number\n where *number* is an ASCII representation of a decimal number.

Unsuccessful commands are responded to with:

Error-number\n*error-message*\n where *error-number* is one of the possible error numbers described in [Intro\(3\)](#), and *error-message* is the corresponding error string as printed from a call to [perror\(3C\)](#).

The protocol consists of the following commands:

<i>S</i> \n	Return the status of the open device, as obtained with a MTIOCGET ioctl call. If the operation was successful, an “ack” is sent with the size of the status buffer, then the status buffer is sent (in binary).
<i>C</i> <i>device</i> \n	Close the currently open device. The <i>device</i> specified is ignored.
<i>I</i> <i>operation</i> \n <i>ncount</i> \n	Perform a MTIOCOP ioctl(2) command using the specified parameters. The parameters are interpreted as the ASCII representations of the decimal values to place in the <i>mt_op</i> and <i>mt_count</i> fields of the structure used in the ioctl call. When the operation is successful the return value is the <i>count</i> parameter.
<i>L</i> <i>offset</i> \n <i>nwhence</i> \n	Perform an lseek(2) operation using the specified parameters. The response value is returned from the lseek call.
<i>O</i> <i>device</i> \n <i>mode</i> \n	Open the specified <i>device</i> using the indicated <i>mode</i> . <i>device</i> is a full pathname, and <i>mode</i> is an ASCII representation of a decimal number suitable for passing to open(9E) . If a device is already open, it is closed before a new open is performed.
<i>R</i> <i>count</i> \n	Read <i>count</i> bytes of data from the open device. rmt performs the requested read(9E) and responds with <i>Acount-read</i> \n if the read was successful; otherwise an error in standard format is returned. If the read was successful, the data read is sent.
<i>W</i> <i>count</i> \n	Write data onto the open device. rmt reads <i>count</i> bytes from the connection, aborting if a premature EOF is encountered. The

response value is returned from the `write(9E)` call.

Any other command causes `rmt` to exit.

Attributes See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWrcmdc

See Also `ufsdump(1M)`, `ufsrestore(1M)`, `Intro(3)`, `ioctl(2)`, `lseek(2)`, `perorr(3C)`, `rcmd(3SOCKET)`, `rexec(3SOCKET)`, `attributes(5)`, `mtio(7I)`, `open(9E)`, `read(9E)`, `write(9E)`

Diagnostics All responses are of the form described above.

Bugs Do not use this for a remote file access protocol.

Name rmvolmgr – HAL-aware removable volume manager

Synopsis /usr/sbin/rmvolmgr [-chns]

Description The `rmvolmgr` command is a volume manager that can automatically mount and unmount removable media and hot-pluggable storage. The default mount point is `/media`.

`rmvolmgr` is one of a number of Hardware Abstraction Layer (HAL)-aware tools that are shipped with the Solaris operating system. See [hald\(1M\)](#).

Multiple instances of `rmvolmgr` can be run simultaneously. A system instance of `rmvolmgr` runs by default as a service management facility (SMF) service (see [smf\(5\)](#)). Its fault management resource identifier (FMRI) is:

```
svc:/system/filesystem/rmvolmgr
```

You can run your own instance of `rmvolmgr` by adding it to the `.xinitrc` file or a similar session startup script. In such a case, the *system* `rmvolmgr` instance will not manage volumes that belong to you, the owner of the startup script. For example, a user logged on to the workstation console (`/dev/console`) who invokes his own instance of `rmvolmgr` will own locally connected devices, such as CD-ROM drives and devices connected to the local USB or FireWire ports.

In addition to mounting volumes under `/media`, `rmvolmgr` also creates legacy symbolic links under `/cdrom`, `/floppy`, and `/rmdisk`.

`rmvolmgr` also provides backwards compatibility with CDE removable media interfaces by maintaining notification files under `/tmp/.removable`. This functionality can be disabled by using the `-c` option.

The `-c` and `-n` options can also be specified as SMF properties. See “Examples.”

Options The following options are supported:

- c Disable CDE compatibility.
- h Display help information and exit.
- n Do not create legacy mountpoint symbolic links.
- s Invoke in system instance mode.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Using SMF Properties to Set Options

The following [svccfg\(1M\)](#) command and subcommands use SMF properties to set the `-c` and `-n` options.

```
example# svccfg
svc:> select rmvolmgr
svc:/system/filesystem/rmvolmgr> listprop rmvolmgr/*
rmvolmgr/legacy_mountpoints    boolean true
```


EXAMPLE 1 Using SMF Properties to Set Options *(Continued)*

```

rmvolmgr/cde_compatible      boolean true
svc:/system/filesystem/rmvolmgr> setprop \
rmvolmgr/legacy_mountpoints=false
svc:/system/filesystem/rmvolmgr> setprop rmvolmgr/cde_compatible=false
svc:/system/filesystem/rmvolmgr> exit
example#

```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWhalr
Interface Stability	Volatile

See Also [hald\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [hal\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Name rndc – name server control utility

Synopsis rndc [-V] [-b *src-addr*] [-c *config-file*] [-k *key-file*] [-s *server*]
[-p *port*] [-y *key_id*] *command*

Description The rndc utility controls the operation of a name server. It supersedes the ndc utility that was provided in previous BIND releases. If rndc is invoked with no command line options or arguments, it prints a short summary of the supported commands and the available options and their arguments.

The rndc utility communicates with the name server over a TCP connection, sending commands authenticated with digital signatures. The only supported authentication algorithm in the current versions of rndc and [named\(1M\)](#) is HMAC-MD5, which uses a shared secret on each end of the connection. This algorithm provides TSIG-style authentication for the command request and the name server's response. All commands sent over the channel must be signed by a *key_id* known to the server.

The rndc utility reads a configuration file to determine how to contact the name server and decide what algorithm and key it should use.

Options The following options are supported:

-b *source-address*

Use *source-address* as the source address for the connection to the server. Multiple instances are permitted to allow setting of both the IPv4 and IPv6 source addresses.

-c *config-file*

Use *config-file* as the configuration file instead of the default `/etc/rndc.conf`.

-k *key-file*

Use *key-file* as the key file instead of the default, `/etc/rndc.key`. The key in `/etc/rndc.key` is used to authenticate commands sent to the server if the *config-file* does not exist.

-s *server*

The *server* argument is the name or address of the server that matches a server statement in the configuration file for rndc. If no server is supplied on the command line, the host named by the default-server clause in the options statement of the rndc configuration file is used.

-p *port*

Send commands to TCP port *port* instead of BIND 9's default control channel port, 953.

-V

Enable verbose logging.

-y *key_id*

Use the key *key_id* from the configuration file. The *key_id* argument must be known by named with the same algorithm and secret string for control message validation to succeed. If no *key_id* is specified, rndc will first look for a key clause in the server statement of the

server being used, or if no server statement is present for that host, then the default-key clause of the options statement. The configuration file contains shared secrets that are used to send authenticated control commands to name servers. It should therefore not have general read or write access.

For the complete set of commands supported by rncd, see the *BIND 9 Administrator Reference Manual* or run rncd without arguments to see its help message.

Limitations The rncd utility does not support all the commands of the BIND 8 ndc utility.

There is no way to provide the shared secret for a *key_id* without using the configuration file.

Several error messages tend toward the cryptic.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWbindc
Interface Stability	External

See Also [named\(1M\)](#), [rncd-confgen\(1M\)](#), [named.conf\(4\)](#), [rncd.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

See the *BIND 9 Administrator's Reference Manual*. As of the date of publication of this man page, this document is available at <https://www.isc.org/software/bind/documentation>.

Name rndc-confgen – rndc key generation tool

Synopsis rndc-confgen [-ah] [-b *keysize*] [-c *keyfile*] [-k *keyname*]
[-p *port*] [-r *randomfile*] [-s *address*] [-t *chrootdir*]
[-u *user*]

Description The `rndc-confgen` utility generates configuration files for [rndc\(1M\)](#). This utility can be used as a convenient alternative to writing by hand the `rndc.conf(4)` file and the corresponding `controls` and key statements in `named.conf`. It can also be run with the `-a` option to set up a `rndc.key` file and avoid altogether the need for a `rndc.conf` file and a `controls` statement.

Options The following options are supported:

-a

Perform automatic `rndc` configuration. This option creates a file `rndc.key` in `/etc` (or however `sysconfdir` was specified when BIND was built) that is read by both `rndc` and [named\(1M\)](#) on startup. The `rndc.key` file defines a default command channel and authentication key allowing `rndc` to communicate with `named` with no further configuration.

Running `rndc-confgen` with `-a` specified allows BIND 9 and `rndc` to be used as drop-in replacements for BIND 8 and `ndc`, with no changes to the existing BIND 8 `named.conf` file.

If a more elaborate configuration than that generated by `rndc-confgen -a` is required, for example if `rndc` is to be used remotely, you should run `rndc-confgen` without the `-a` option and set up `rndc.conf` and `named.conf` files, as directed.

-b *keysize*

Specify the size of the authentication key in bits. The *keysize* argument must be between 1 and 512 bits; the default is 128.

-c *keyfile*

Used with the `-a` option to specify an alternate location for `rndc.key`.

-h

Print a short summary of the options and arguments to `rndc-confgen`.

-k *keyname*

Specify the key name of the `rndc` authentication key. The *keyname* argument must be a valid domain name. The default is `rndc-key`.

-p *port*

Specify the command channel port where `named` listens for connections from `rndc`. The default is 953.

-r *randomfile*

Specify a source of random data for generating the authorization. By default, `/dev/random` is used. The *randomdev* argument specifies the name of a character device or file containing random data to be used instead of the default. The special value `keyboard` indicates that keyboard input should be used.

- s *address*
Specify the IP address where named listens for command channel connections from rndc. The default is the loopback address 127.0.0.1.
- t *chrootdir*
Used with the -a option to specify a directory where named will run after the root directory is changed with [chroot\(2\)](#). An additional copy of the rndc.key will be written relative to this directory so that it will be found by the named in the new directory.
- u *user*
Used with the -a option to set the owner of the rndc.key file generated. If -t is also specified only the file in the chroot area has its owner changed.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Create Automatic rndc Configuration

The following command creates an automatic rndc configuration, so that rndc can be used immediately.

```
# rndc-confgen -a
```

EXAMPLE 2 Print a Sample rndc.conf File

The following command prints a sample rndc.conf file with corresponding control and key statements. These statements can subsequently be manually inserted in the file named.conf.

```
# rndc-confgen
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWbindc
Interface Stability	External

See Also [chroot\(2\)](#), [named\(1M\)](#), [rndc\(1M\)](#), [rndc.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

See the BIND 9 *Administrator's Reference Manual*. As of the date of publication of this man page, this document is available at <https://www.isc.org/software/bind/documentation>.

Name roleadd – administer a new role account on the system

Synopsis roleadd [-c *comment*] [-d *dir*] [-e *expire*] [-f *inactive*]
 [-g *group*] [-G *group* [, *group*...]] [-m [-k *skel_dir*]]
 [-u *uid* [-o]] [-s *shell*]
 [-A *authorization* [,*authorization*...]] [-K *key=value*] *role*

roleadd -D [-b *base_dir*] [-e *expire*] [-f *inactive*]
 [-g *group*] [-A *authorization* [,*authorization*...]]
 [-P *profile* [,*profile*...]] [-K *key=value*]

Description roleadd adds a role entry to the /etc/passwd and /etc/shadow and /etc/user_attr files. The -A and -P options respectively assign authorizations and profiles to the role. Roles cannot be assigned to other roles. The -K option adds a *key=value* pair to /etc/user_attr for a role. Multiple *key=value* pairs can be added with multiple -K options.

roleadd also creates supplementary group memberships for the role (-G option) and creates the home directory (-m option) for the role if requested. The new role account remains locked until the [passwd\(1\)](#) command is executed.

Specifying roleadd -D with the -g, -b, -f, -e, or -K option (or any combination of these option) sets the default values for the respective fields. See the -D option. Subsequent roleadd commands without the -D option use these arguments.

The system file entries created with this command have a limit of 512 characters per line. Specifying long arguments to several options can exceed this limit.

The role (*role*) field accepts a string of no more than eight bytes consisting of characters from the set of alphabetic characters, numeric characters, period (.), underscore (_), and hyphen (-). The first character should be alphabetic and the field should contain at least one lower case alphabetic character. A warning message is written if these restrictions are not met. A future Solaris release might refuse to accept role fields that do not meet these requirements.

The *role* field must contain at least one character and must not contain a colon (:) or a newline (\n).

Options The following options are supported:

- A *authorization* One or more comma separated authorizations defined in [auth_attr\(4\)](#). Only a user or role who has grant rights to the authorization can assign it to an account
- b *base_dir* The default base directory for the system if -d *dir* is not specified. *base_dir* is concatenated with the account name to define the home directory. If the -m option is not used, *base_dir* must exist.
- c *comment* Any text string. It is generally a short description of the role. This information is stored in the role's /etc/passwd entry.

-
- d *dir*** The home directory of the new role. It defaults to *base_dir/account_name*, where *base_dir* is the base directory for new login home directories and *account_name* is the new role name.
- D** Display the default values for *group*, *base_dir*, *skel_dir*, *shell*, *inactive*, *expire* and *key=value* pairs. When used with the **-g**, **-b**, **-f**, or **-K**, options, the **-D** option sets the default values for the specified fields. The default values are:
- | | |
|---|------------------|
| <i>group</i> | other (GID of 1) |
| <i>base_dir</i> | /home |
| <i>skel_dir</i> | /etc/skel |
| <i>shell</i> | /bin/pfsh |
| <i>inactive</i> | 0 |
| <i>expire</i> | Null |
| <i>auths</i> | Null |
| <i>profiles</i> | Null |
| <i>key=value</i> (pairs defined in user_attr(4)) | not present |
- e *expire*** Specify the expiration date for a role. After this date, no user is able to access this role. The expire option argument is a date entered using one of the date formats included in the template file */etc/datemsk*. See [getdate\(3C\)](#).
- If the date format that you choose includes spaces, it must be quoted. For example, you can enter *10/6/90* or *October 6, 1990*. A null value (" ") defeats the status of the expired date. This option is useful for creating temporary roles.
- f *inactive*** The maximum number of days allowed between uses of a role ID before that ID is declared invalid. Normal values are positive integers. A value of 0 defeats the status.
- g *group*** An existing group's integer ID or character-string name. Without the **-D** option, it defines the new role's primary group membership and defaults to the default group. You can reset this default value by invoking `roleadd -D -g group`.
- G *group*** An existing group's integer ID or character-string name. It defines the new role's supplementary group membership. Duplicates between *group* with the **-g** and **-G** options are ignored. No more than `NGROUPS_MAX` groups can be specified.

- k *skel_dir*** A directory that contains skeleton information (such as `.profile`) that can be copied into a new role's home directory. This directory must already exist. The system provides the `/etc/skel` directory that can be used for this purpose.
- K *key=value*** A *key=value* pair to add to the role's attributes. Multiple `-K` options can be used to add multiple *key=value* pairs. The generic `-K` option with the appropriate key can be used instead of the specific implied key options (`-A` and `-P`). See [user_attr\(4\)](#) for a list of valid *key=value* pairs. The "type" key is not a valid key for this option. Keys can not be repeated.
- m** Create the new role's home directory if it does not already exist. If the directory already exists, it must have read, write, and execute permissions by *group*, where *group* is the role's primary group.
- o** This option allows a UID to be duplicated (non-unique).
- P *profile*** One or more comma-separated execution profiles defined in [prof_attr\(4\)](#).
- s *shell*** Full pathname of the program used as the user's shell on login. It defaults to an empty field causing the system to use `/bin/pfsh` as the default. The value of *shell* must be a valid executable file.
- u *uid*** The UID of the new role. This UID must be a non-negative decimal integer below `MAXUID` as defined in `<sys/param.h>`. The UID defaults to the next available (unique) number above the highest number currently assigned. For example, if UIDs 100, 105, and 200 are assigned, the next default UID number is 201. (UIDs from 0-99 are reserved for possible use in future applications.)

Files `/etc/datemsk`

`/etc/passwd`

`/etc/shadow`

`/etc/group`

`/etc/skel`

`/usr/include/limits.h`

`/etc/user_attr`

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [passwd\(1\)](#), [pfexec\(1\)](#), [profiles\(1\)](#), [roles\(1\)](#), [users\(1B\)](#), [groupadd\(1M\)](#), [groupdel\(1M\)](#), [groupmod\(1M\)](#), [grpck\(1M\)](#), [logins\(1M\)](#), [pwck\(1M\)](#), [userdel\(1M\)](#), [usermod\(1M\)](#), [getdate\(3C\)](#), [auth_attr\(4\)](#), [passwd\(4\)](#), [prof_attr\(4\)](#), [user_attr\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Diagnostics In case of an error, `roleadd` prints an error message and exits with a non-zero status.

The following indicates that `login` specified is already in use:

```
UX: roleadd: ERROR: login is already in use. Choose another.
```

The following indicates that the `uid` specified with the `-u` option is not unique:

```
UX: roleadd: ERROR: uid uid is already in use. Choose another.
```

The following indicates that the `group` specified with the `-g` option is already in use:

```
UX: roleadd: ERROR: group group does not exist. Choose another.
```

The following indicates that the `uid` specified with the `-u` option is in the range of reserved UIDs (from 0-99):

```
UX: roleadd: WARNING: uid uid is reserved.
```

The following indicates that the `uid` specified with the `-u` option exceeds `MAXUID` as defined in `<sys/param.h>`:

```
UX: roleadd: ERROR: uid uid is too big. Choose another.
```

The following indicates that the `/etc/passwd` or `/etc/shadow` files do not exist:

```
UX: roleadd: ERROR: Cannot update system files - login cannot be created.
```

Notes If a network name service such as NIS is being used to supplement the local `/etc/passwd` file with additional entries, `roleadd` cannot change information supplied by the network name service.

Name roledel – delete a role's login from the system

Synopsis roledel [-r] *role*

Description The roledel utility deletes a role account from the system and makes the appropriate account-related changes to the system file and file system. roledel also removes the role from each user's list of assumable roles.

Options The following options are supported:

- r Remove the role's home directory from the system. This directory must exist. The files and directories under the home directory will no longer be accessible following successful execution of the command.

Operands The following operands are supported:

role An existing role name to be deleted.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 2 Invalid command syntax. A usage message for the roledel command is displayed.
- 6 The account to be removed does not exist.
- 8 The account to be removed is in use.
- 10 Cannot update the /etc/group or /etc/user_attr file but the login is removed from the /etc/passwd file.
- 12 Cannot remove or otherwise modify the home directory.

Files

/etc/passwd	system password file
/etc/shadow	system file containing roles' encrypted passwords and related information
/etc/group	system file containing group definitions
/etc/user_attr	system file containing additional role attributes

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [auths\(1\)](#), [passwd\(1\)](#), [profiles\(1\)](#), [roles\(1\)](#), [users\(1B\)](#), [groupadd\(1M\)](#), [groupdel\(1M\)](#), [groupmod\(1M\)](#), [logins\(1M\)](#), [roleadd\(1M\)](#), [rolemod\(1M\)](#), [useradd\(1M\)](#), [userdel\(1M\)](#), [usermod\(1M\)](#), [passwd\(4\)](#), [prof_attr\(4\)](#), [user_attr\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes The `roledel` utility only deletes an account definition that is in the local `/etc/group`, `/etc/passwd`, `/etc/shadow`, and `/etc/user_attr` file. If a network name service such as NIS or NIS+ is being used to supplement the local `/etc/passwd` file with additional entries, `roledel` cannot change information supplied by the network name service.

Name rolemod – modify a role's login information on the system

Synopsis rolemod [-u *uid* [-o]] [-g *group*] [-G *group* [, *group*...]]
 [-d *dir* [-m]] [-s *shell*] [-c *comment*] [-l *new_name*]
 [-f *inactive*] [-e *expire*]
 [-A *authorization* [, *authorization*]]
 [-P *profile* [, *profile*]] [-K *key=value*] *role*

Description The `rolemod` utility modifies a role's login information on the system. It changes the definition of the specified login and makes the appropriate login-related system file and file system changes.

The system file entries created with this command have a limit of 512 characters per line. Specifying long arguments to several options may exceed this limit.

Options The following options are supported:

-A *authorization*

One or more comma separated authorizations as defined in [auth_attr\(4\)](#). Only role with grant rights to the `authorization` can assign it to an account. This replaces any existing authorization setting. If no authorization list is specified, the existing setting is removed.

-c *comment*

Specify a comment string. *comment* can be any text string. It is generally a short description of the login, and is currently used as the field for the user's full name. This information is stored in the user's `/etc/passwd` entry.

-d *dir*

Specify the new home directory of the role. It defaults to `base_dir/login`, where `base_dir` is the base directory for new login home directories, and `login` is the new login.

-e *expire*

Specify the expiration date for a role. After this date, no role will be able to access this login. The expire option argument is a date entered using one of the date formats included in the template file `/etc/datemsk`. See [getdate\(3C\)](#).

For example, you may enter `10/6/90` or `October 6, 1990`. A value of `''` defeats the status of the expired date.

-f *inactive*

Specify the maximum number of days allowed between uses of a login ID before that login ID is declared invalid. Normal values are positive integers. A value of `0` defeats the status.

-g *group*

Specify an existing group's integer ID or character-string name. It redefines the role's primary group membership.

-G *group*

An existing group's integer ID or character-string name. It defines the new user's supplementary group membership. Duplicates between group with the `-g` and `-G` options

are ignored. No more than `NGROUPS_MAX` groups can be specified. GIDs 0-99 are reserved for allocation by the Solaris Operating System.

-K *key=value*

Replace existing or add to a role's *key=value* pair attributes. Multiple `-K` options can be used to replace or add multiple *key=value* pairs. However, keys must not be repeated. The generic `-K` option with the appropriate key may be used instead of the specific implied key options (`-A` and `-P`). See [user_attr\(4\)](#) for a list of valid *key=value* pairs.

The keyword `type` can be specified with the value `role` or the value `normal`. When using the value `normal`, the account changes from a role user to a normal user; using the value `role` keeps the account a role user.

-l *new_logname*

Specify the new login name for the role. The *new_logname* argument is a string no more than eight bytes consisting of characters from the set of alphabetic characters, numeric characters, period (`.`), underline (`_`), and hyphen (`-`). The first character should be alphabetic and the field should contain at least one lower case alphabetic character. A warning message will be written if these restrictions are not met. A future Solaris release may refuse to accept login fields that do not meet these requirements. The *new_logname* argument must contain at least one character and must not contain a colon (`:`) or NEWLINE (`\n`).

-m

Move the role's home directory to the new directory specified with the `-d` option. If the directory already exists, it must have permissions read/write/execute by *group*, where *group* is the role's primary group.

-o

This option allows the specified UID to be duplicated (non-unique).

-P *profile*

One or more comma-separated execution profiles defined in [auth_attr\(4\)](#). This replaces any existing profile setting. If no profile list is specified, the existing setting is removed.

-s *shell*

Specify the full pathname of the program that is used as the role's shell on login. The value of *shell* must be a valid executable file.

-u *uid*

Specify a new UID for the role. It must be a non-negative decimal integer less than `MAXUID` as defined in `<param.h>`. The UID associated with the role's home directory is not modified with this option; a role will not have access to their home directory until the UID is manually reassigned using [chown\(1\)](#).

Operands The following operands are supported:

login

An existing login name to be modified.

Exit Status In case of an error, `rolemod` prints an error message and exits with one of the following values:

- 2
The command syntax was invalid. A usage message for the `rolemod` command is displayed.
- 3
An invalid argument was provided to an option.
- 4
The *uid* given with the `-u` option is already in use.
- 5
The password files contain an error. [pwconv\(1M\)](#) can be used to correct possible errors. See [passwd\(4\)](#).
- 6
The login to be modified does not exist, the *group* does not exist, or the login shell does not exist.
- 8
The login to be modified is in use.
- 9
The *new_logname* is already in use.
- 10
Cannot update the `/etc/group` or `/etc/user_attr` file. Other update requests will be implemented.
- 11
Insufficient space to move the home directory (`-m` option). Other update requests will be implemented.
- 12
Unable to complete the move of the home directory to the new home directory.

Files

- `/etc/group`
system file containing group definitions
- `/etc/datemsk`
system file of date formats
- `/etc/passwd`
system password file
- `/etc/shadow`
system file containing users' and roles' encrypted passwords and related information
- `/etc/user_attr`
system file containing additional user and role attributes

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [chown\(1\)](#), [passwd\(1\)](#), [users\(1B\)](#), [groupadd\(1M\)](#), [groupdel\(1M\)](#), [groupmod\(1M\)](#), [logins\(1M\)](#), [pwconv\(1M\)](#), [roleadd\(1M\)](#), [roledel\(1M\)](#), [useradd\(1M\)](#), [userdel\(1M\)](#), [usermod\(1M\)](#), [getdate\(3C\)](#), [auth_attr\(4\)](#), [passwd\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name root_archive – manage bootable miniroot archives

Synopsis /boot/solaris/bin/root_archive pack *archive root*
/boot/solaris/bin/root_archive unpack *archive root*
/boot/solaris/bin/root_archive packmedia *solaris_image root*
/boot/solaris/bin/root_archive unpackmedia *solaris_image root*

Description The root_archive utility is used to manipulate boot archives and the bootable miniroot(s) in a Solaris install image. The utility can pack and unpack boot archives and image miniroots. Both ufs and hsf(s) (iso9660) format archives can be unpacked, although only ufs format is generated when packing.

For normal, boot-related system administration, [bootadm\(1M\)](#) is recommended. root_archive's primary purpose is to enable OEMs to add or update a driver or other component on the Solaris install media.

A miniroot and a boot archive is closely associated with the release it is intended to boot. To ensure that the tools and system services used to construct the miniroot match, miniroot manipulation must be performed only on a system running the same release for which the miniroot is intended to install.

Subcommands The root_archive command has the following subcommands:

pack <i>archive root</i>	Pack the contents of the root directory into the boot archive <i>archive</i> .
unpack <i>archive root</i>	Unpack the contents of the boot archive named <i>archive</i> to the directory named <i>root</i> .
packmedia <i>solaris_image root</i>	Create and pack the miniroot(s) in <i>solaris_image</i> from the contents of the directory named <i>root</i> .
unpackmedia <i>solaris_image root</i>	Unpack the contents of the miniroot(s) in <i>solaris_image</i> to the directory named <i>root</i> .

The contents of a miniroot are constructed to need the requirements of the release. When unpacking a miniroot, all the contents of the miniroot(s) are unpacked. When packing a miniroot, the source directory must contain all the necessary components with which to construct a miniroot. In general, this can only be achieved by first unpacking an existing miniroot.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Unpacking the Miniroots in a Solaris x86 Install Image

The following command unpacks the miniroots in a Solaris image to the root directory in /export/release/latest.

```
# root_archive unpackmedia \  
/export/nv/solarisdvd.nvx_dvd/latest /export/release/latest/root
```


EXAMPLE 1 Unpacking the Miniroots in a Solaris x86 Install Image *(Continued)*

In the preceding, `/export/nv/solarisdvd.nvx_dvd/latest` represents a path to a Solaris x86 install image and `/export/release/latest/root` is a directory that will be purged or created, as necessary.

EXAMPLE 2 Packing the Miniroots in a Solaris x86 Install Image

The following command creates and packs the miniroot(s) in a Solaris image from the contents of the directory `/export/release/latest/root`.

```
# root_archive packmedia \  
/export/nv/solarisdvd.nvx_dvd/latest /export/release/latest/root
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 The command completed successfully.
- 1 The command exited due to an error.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Committed

See Also [cpio\(1\)](#), [bootadm\(1M\)](#), [mount\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [lofi\(7D\)](#)

Name route – manually manipulate the routing tables

Synopsis route [-fnvq] *sub-command* [[*modifiers*] *args*]

route [-fnvq] [-p [-R *root-dir*]] add | delete [*modifiers*] *destination gateway*
[*args*]

route [-fnvq] change | get [*modifiers*] *destination*
[*gateway* [*args*]]

route [-fn] monitor [*modifiers*]

route [-fnvq] flush [*modifiers*]

route -p [-R *root-dir*] show

Description route manually manipulates the network routing tables. These tables are normally maintained by the system routing daemon, such as [in.routed\(1M\)](#) and [in.ripngd\(1M\)](#).

route supports a limited number of general options, but a rich command language. Users can specify an arbitrary request that can be delivered by means of the programmatic interface discussed in [route\(7P\)](#).

route uses a routing socket and the new message types RTM_ADD, RTM_DELETE, RTM_GET, and RTM_CHANGE. While only superusers can modify routing tables, the RTM_GET operation is allowed for non-privileged users.

- Options**
- f Flush the routing tables of all gateway entries. If you use the -f option in conjunction with any of the route sub-commands, route flushes the gateways before performing the sub-command. Specify the table to flush by placing the inet or inet6 modifier immediately after the -f option. If unspecified, flushing IPv4 (inet) routes is the default.
 - n Prevent attempts to print host and network names symbolically when reporting actions. This option is useful when name servers are unavailable.
 - p Make changes to the network route tables persistent across system restarts. The operation is applied to the network routing tables first and, if successful, is then applied to the list of saved routes used at system startup. In determining whether an operation was successful, a failure to add a route that already exists or to delete a route that is not in the routing table is ignored. Particular care should be taken when using host or network names in persistent routes, as network-based name resolution services are not available at the time routes are added at startup.
 - q Suppress all output.
 - R *root-dir* Specify an alternate root directory where route applies changes. This option is ignored unless used in conjunction with the -p option. When -R is specified, route changes are applied only to the list of saved routes to be used at startup, *not* to the network routing tables. In addition, certain checks, such as the

existence of network interfaces used with `-ifp`, are skipped. This can be useful from within JumpStart scripts, where the root directory of the system being modified is in a location other than `/`.

`-v` Print additional details in verbose mode.

Subcommands The following subcommands are supported:

`add` Add a route.

`change` Change aspects of a route (such as its gateway).

`delete` Delete a specific route.

`flush` Remove all gateway entries from the routing table.

`get` Look up and display the route for a destination.

`monitor` Continuously report any changes to the routing information base, routing lookup misses, or suspected network partitionings.

`show` Display the list of routes to be applied at system startup. Can be used only in conjunction with the `-p` option.

The `add` and `delete` sub-commands have the following syntax:

```
route [ -fnvq ] cmd destination gateway [metric/netmask]
```

where *cmd* is `add` or `delete`, *destination* is the destination host or network, and *gateway* is the next-hop intermediary through which packets should be routed. Modifiers described in OPERANDS can be placed anywhere on the command line.

The `get` and `change` sub-commands have the following syntax:

```
route [ -fnvq ] cmd destination [gateway [metric/netmask]]
```

where *cmd* is `get` or `change`, *destination* is the destination host or network, and *gateway* is the next-hop intermediary through which packets should be routed. Modifiers described in OPERANDS can be placed anywhere on the command line.

The `monitor` sub-command has the following syntax:

```
route monitor [ -inet | -inet6 ]
```

Operands `route` executes its sub-commands on routes to destinations by way of gateways.

Destinations and Gateways By default, destination and gateway addresses are interpreted as IPv4 addresses. All symbolic names are tried first as a host name, using `getipnodebyname(3SOCKET)`. If this lookup fails in the `AF_INET` case, `getnetbyname(3SOCKET)` interprets the name as that of a network.

Including an optional modifier on the command line before the address changes how the route sub-command interprets it.

The following modifiers are supported:

- inet Force the address to be interpreted as an IPv4 address, that is, under the AF_INET address family.
- inet6 Force the address to be interpreted as an IPv6 address, that is, under the AF_INET6 address family.

For IPv4 addresses, routes to a particular host are by default distinguished from those to a network by interpreting the Internet address specified as the destination. If the destination has a *local address part* (that is, the portion not covered by the netmask) of 0, or if the destination is resolved as the symbolic name of a network, then the route is assumed to be to a network; otherwise, it is presumed to be a route to a host.

You can force this selection by using one of the following modifiers:

- host Force the destination to be interpreted as a host.
- net Force the destination to be interpreted as a network.

For example:

Destination	Destination Equivalent
128.32	-host 128.0.0.32
128.32.130	-host 128.32.0.130
-net 128.32	128.32.0.0
-net 128.32.130	128.32.130.0

Two modifiers avoid confusion between addresses and keywords (for example., host used as a symbolic host name). You can distinguish a *destination* by preceding it with the -dst modifier. You can distinguish a gateway address by using the -gateway modifier. If the destination is directly reachable by way of an interface requiring no intermediary IP router to act as a gateway, this can be indicated by using the -interface or -iface modifier.

In the following example, the route does not refer to an external gateway (router), but rather to one of the machine's interfaces. Packets with IP destination addresses matching the destination and mask on such a route are sent out on the interface identified by the gateway address. For interfaces using the ARP protocol, this type of route is used to specify that all matching destinations are local to the physical link. That is, a host could be configured to ARP for all addresses, without regard to the configured interface netmask, by adding a default route using this command. For example:

```
example# route add default hostname -interface
```

where gateway address *hostname* is the name or IP address associated with the network interface over which all matching packets should be sent. On a host with a single network interface, *hostname* is usually the same as the *nodename* returned by the `uname -n` command. See [uname\(1\)](#).

For backward compatibility with older systems, directly reachable routes can also be specified by placing a `0` after the gateway address:

```
example# route add default hostname 0
```

This value was once a route metric, but this metric is no longer used. If the value is specified as `0`, then the destination is directly reachable (equivalent to specifying `-interface`). If it is non-zero but cannot be interpreted as a subnet mask, then a gateway is used (default).

With the `AF_INET` address family or an IPv4 address, a separate subnet mask can be specified. This can be specified in one of the following ways:

- IP address following the gateway address. This is typically specified in *decimal dot* notation as for `inet_addr(3SOCKET)` rather than in symbolic form.
- IP address following the `-netmask` qualifier.
- Slash character and a decimal length appended to the destination address.

If a subnet mask is not specified, the mask used is the subnet mask of the output interface selected by the gateway address, if the classful network of the destination is the same as the classful network of the interface. Otherwise, the classful network mask for the destination address is used.

Each of the following examples creates an IPv4 route to the destination `192.0.2.32` subnet with a subnet mask of `255.255.255.224`:

```
example# route add 192.0.2.32/27 somegateway
example# route add 192.0.2.32 -netmask 255.255.255.224 somegateway
example# route add 192.0.2.32 somegateway 255.255.255.224
```

For IPv6, only the slash format is accepted. The following example creates an IPv6 route to the destination `3ffe::` with a netmask of 16 one-bits followed by 112 zero-bits.

```
example# route add -inet6 3ffe::/16 somegateway
```

In cases where the gateway does not uniquely identify the output interface (for example, when several interfaces have the same address), you can use the `-ifp ifname` modifier to specify the interface by name. For example, `-ifp lo0` associates the route with the `lo0` interface. If the named interface is an underlying interface in an IPMP (IP multipathing) group, then requests to add a route will automatically be translated to the corresponding IPMP IP interface, and requests to delete or change a route on an underlying interface will fail.

When the routing table contains several equal routes, that is, routes for the same destination and mask, then IP attempts to spread the traffic over those routes. The spreading is such that an individual transport connection uses the same route to avoid packet reordering as seen by, for example, TCP. The details of the spreading algorithm is not documented and is likely to evolve over time.

Routing Flags Routes have associated flags that influence operation of the protocols when sending to destinations matched by the routes. These flags can be set (and in some cases cleared, indicated by ~) by including the following modifiers on the command line:

Modifier	Flag	Description
-interface	~RTF_GATEWAY	Destination is directly reachable
-iface	~RTF_GATEWAY	Alias for interface modifier
-static	RTF_STATIC	Manually added route
-nostatic	~RTF_STATIC	Pretend route was added by kernel or routing daemon
-reject	RTF_REJECT	Emit an ICMP unreachable when matched
-blackhole	RTF_BLACKHOLE	Silently discard packets during updates
-proto1	RTF_PROTO1	Set protocol specific routing flag #1
-proto2	RTF_PROTO2	Set protocol specific routing flag #2
-private	RTF_PRIVATE	Do not advertise this route
-multirt	RTF_MULTIRT	Creates the specified redundant route
-setsrc	RTF_SETSRC	Assigns the default source address
-indirect	RTF_INDIRECT	Allows adding routes where gateway is not on-link

The optional `-indirect` modifier allows adding routes where the gateway is not directly reachable. When an indirect route is the best match for a packet to be sent or forwarded, then IP proceeds to look up that gateway to find a route that is directly reachable. The `-indirect` modifier can be used even if the gateway is directly reachable.

The optional modifiers `-rtt`, `-rttvar`, `-sendpipe`, `-recvpipe`, `-mtu`, `-hopcount`, `-expire`, and `-ssthresh` provide initial values to quantities maintained in the routing entry by transport level protocols, such as TCP. These can be individually locked either by preceding each modifier to be locked by the `-lock` meta-modifier, or by specifying that all ensuing metrics can be locked by the `-lockrest` meta-modifier.

Some transport layer protocols can support only some of these metrics. The following optional modifiers are supported:

`-expire` Lifetime for the entry. This optional modifier is not currently supported.

- hopcount Maximum hop count. This optional modifier is not currently supported.
- mtu Maximum MTU in bytes.
- recvpipe Receive pipe size in bytes.
- rtt Round trip time in microseconds.
- rttvar Round trip time variance in microseconds.
- sendpipe Send pipe size in bytes.
- ssthresh Send pipe size threshold in bytes.
- secattr Security attributes of the route. This modifier is available only if the system is configured with the Solaris Trusted Extensions feature.

The `-secattr` modifier has the following format:

```
min_sl=val,max_sl=val,doi=val,cipso
```

or:

```
sl=VAL,doi=VAL,cipso
```

In the first form, above, the *val* for `min_sl` and `max_sl` is a sensitivity label in either hex or string form. The *val* for `doi` is a non-negative integer. The route will apply only for packets with the same domain of interpretation as defined by the `doi` value and within the accreditation range defined by the `min_sl` and `max_sl` values. The `cipso` keyword is optional and set by default. Valid `min_sl`, `max_sl` and `doi` keyword/value pairs are mandatory. Note that if *val* contains a space, it must be protected by double quotes.

The second form, above, is equivalent to specifying the first form with the same VAL for `min_sl` and `max_sl`. The second form should be used for the `get` command, because `get` uses only a single sensitivity label.

Compatibility The modifiers `host` and `net` are taken to be equivalent to `-host` and `-net`. To specify a symbolic address that matches one of these names, use the `dst` or `gateway` keyword to distinguish it. For example: `-dst host`

The following two flags are also accepted for compatibility with older systems, but have no effect.

Modifier	Flag
<code>-cloning</code>	RTF_CLONING
<code>-xresolve</code>	RTF_XRESOLVE

The `-ifa` hostname modifier is also accepted, but has no effect.

Files	<code>/etc/defaultrouter</code>	List of default routers
	<code>/etc/hosts</code>	List of host names and net addresses
	<code>/etc/networks</code>	List of network names and addresses

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [uname\(1\)](#), [in.ripngd\(1M\)](#), [in.routed\(1M\)](#), [netstat\(1M\)](#), [routed\(1M\)](#), [ioctl\(2\)](#), [getipnodebyname\(3SOCKET\)](#), [getnetbyname\(3SOCKET\)](#), [inet_addr\(3SOCKET\)](#), [defaultrouter\(4\)](#), [hosts\(4\)](#), [networks\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [arp\(7P\)](#), [ip\(7P\)](#), [route\(7P\)](#), [routing\(7P\)](#)

Diagnostics	<code>add [host network] destination:gateway flags</code>	The specified route is being added to the tables. The values printed are from the routing table entry supplied in the ioctl(2) call. If the gateway address used was not the primary address of the gateway (the first one returned by getipnodebyname(3SOCKET)) the gateway address is printed numerically as well as symbolically.
	<code>delete [host network] destination:gateway flags</code>	
	<code>change [host network] destination:gateway flags</code>	As add, but when deleting or changing an entry.
	<code>destination done</code>	When the <code>-f</code> flag is specified, or the <code>flush</code> sub-command is used, each routing table entry deleted is indicated with a message of this form.
	Network is unreachable	An attempt to add a route failed because the gateway listed was not on a directly-connected network. Give the next-hop gateway instead.
	not in table	A delete operation was attempted for an entry that is not in the table.
	entry exists	An add operation was attempted for a route that already exists in the kernel.

routing table overflow	An operation was attempted, but the system was unable to allocate memory to create the new entry.
insufficient privileges	An attempt to add, delete, change, or flush a route failed because the calling process does not have appropriate privileges.

Notes Specifying that destinations are local (with the `-interfacemodifier`) assumes that the routers implement proxy ARP, meaning that they respond to ARP queries for all reachable destinations. Normally, using either router discovery or RIP is more reliable and scalable than using proxy ARP. See [in.routed\(1M\)](#) for information related to RIP.

Combining the all destinations are local route with subnet or network routes can lead to unpredictable results. The search order as it relates to the all destinations are local route are undefined and can vary from release to release.

Name routeadm – IP forwarding and routing configuration

Synopsis routeadm [-p *option*]]
routeadm [-R *root-dir*] [-e *option ...*] [-d *option...*]
[-r *option...*] [-s *var=value*]
routeadm [-l *fmri*]
routeadm [-m *fmri key=value [key=value]...*]
routeadm [-u]

Description The routeadm command is used to administer system-wide configuration for IP forwarding and routing. IP forwarding is the passing of IP packets from one network to another; IP routing is the use of a routing protocol to determine routes.

IP forwarding and routing functions are also represented as services within the service management facility (SMF), and can be administered by means of [svcadm\(1M\)](#) also, using the following fault management resource identifiers (FMRI):

```
svc:/network/ipv4-forwarding:default
svc:/network/ipv6-forwarding:default
svc:/network/routing/route:default
svc:/network/routing/ripng:default
```

See EXAMPLES for relevant examples.

In addition to enabling and disabling routing and forwarding, routeadm is used to interact with SMF-based routing daemon services. Routing daemon services are identified by the presence of a routeadm application property group, which routeadm uses in administering the given service. Routing daemon services can also specify properties relating to their operation in the routing application property group; these can be modified by means of routeadm -m. If an FMRI for a service without such a property group is specified, an error is issued and the operation is not carried out. If a routing daemon has not been converted to SMF, the `ipv4[or 6]-routing-daemon`, `ipv4[or 6]-routing-daemon-args`, and `ipv4[or 6]-routing-stop-cmd` variables can be used to specify the appropriate daemon for IPv4 or IPv6 routing. routeadm will then run that daemon using the `svc:/network/routing/legacy-routing:ipv4[or 6]` service as appropriate. This conversion process occurs when you issue an enable (-e), disable (-d) or an update (-u) command.

The first usage, in the SYNOPSIS above, reports the current configuration.

Options The following command-line options are supported:

-p *option*
Print the configuration in parseable format. If *option* is specified, only the configuration for the specified option or variable is displayed.

-
- R *root-dir*
Specify an alternate root directory where routeadm applies changes. This can be useful from within JumpStart scripts, where the root directory of the system being modified is mounted elsewhere.

Note – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the -R option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).
 - e *option...*
Enable the specified option. The effect is to prepare the associated services (svc:/network/ipv4-forwarding:default in the case of ipv4-forwarding) for enabling. By means of the routing-svcs variable, the routing daemons are specified to be enabled on subsequent boot or when routeadm -u is run.
 - d *option...*
Disable the specified option. The effect is to prepare the associated services (svc:/network/ipv4-forwarding:default in the case of ipv4-forwarding) for enabling. By means of the routing-svcs variable, the routing daemons are specified to be disabled on subsequent boot or when routeadm -u is run.
 - l *fmri*
List all properties in the routing application property group for the SMF routing daemon service.
 - m *fmri key=value*
Change property value of property *key* to *value* in routing application property group for the SMF routing daemon service. For multi-valued properties, the property name can be used multiple times in the modify operation, and each associated value will be added.
 - r *option...*
Revert the specified option to the system default. The system defaults are specified in the description of each *option*.
 - u
Apply the currently configured options to the running system. These options might include enabling or disabling IP forwarding and launching or killing routing daemons, if any are specified. It does not alter the state of the system for those settings that have been set to default. This option is meant to be used by administrators who do not want to reboot to apply their changes. In addition, this option upgrades non-SMF configurations from the invocations of daemon stop commands, which might include a set of arguments, to a simple enabling of the appropriate service.
 - s *key=value*
Specify string values for specific variables in a comma-separated list with no intervening spaces. If invalid options are specified, a warning message is displayed and the program exits. The following variables can be specified:

routing-svcs=*fmrulist*

Specifies the routing daemon services to be enabled. Routing daemon services are determined to be IPv4 or IPv6 (and so enabled or disabled when `routeadm -e/-d ipv4(6)-routing` is run) on the basis of property values in the `routeadm` application property group. Default: `route:default ripng:default`

ipv4-routing-daemon=<*full_path_to_routing_daemon*>

Specifies the routing daemon to be started when `ipv4-routing` is enabled. The routing daemon specified must be an executable binary or shell-script. If the specified program maps to an SMF service, the service will be used, and daemon arguments to the program will be transferred to the properties of the service at enable time. Default: ""

ipv4-routing-daemon-args=<*args*>

Specifies the startup arguments to be passed to the `ipv4-routing-daemon` when `ipv4-routing` is enabled. Default: no arguments

ipv4-routing-stop-cmd=<*command*>

Specifies the command to be executed to stop the routing daemon when `ipv4-routing` is disabled. <*command*> can be an executable binary or shell-script, or a string that can be parsed by `system(3C)`. Default: ""

ipv6-routing-daemon=<*full_path_to_routing_daemon*>

Specifies the routing daemon to be started when `ipv6-routing` is enabled. The routing daemon specified must be an executable binary or shell-script. If the specified program maps to an SMF service, the service will be used, and daemon arguments to the program will be transferred to the properties of the service at enable time. Default: ""

ipv6-routing-daemon-args=<*args*>

Specifies the startup arguments to be passed to the `ipv6-routing-daemon` when `ipv6-routing` is enabled. Default: ""

ipv6-routing-stop-cmd=<*command*>

Specifies the command to be executed to stop the routing daemon when `ipv6-routing` is disabled. <*command*> can be an executable binary or shell-script, or a string that can be parsed by `system(3C)`. Default: ""

Multiple `-e`, `-d`, and `-r` options can be specified on the command line. Changes made by `-e`, `-d`, and `-r` are persistent, but are not applied to the running system unless `routeadm` is called later with the `-u` option.

Use the following options as arguments to the `-e`, `-d`, and `-r` options (shown above as *option...*).

ipv4-forwarding

Controls the global forwarding configuration for all IPv4 interfaces. The system default is disabled. If enabled, IP will forward IPv4 packets to and from interfaces when appropriate. If disabled, IP will not forward IPv4 packets to and from interfaces when appropriate. The SMF service associated with this configuration variable is

`svc:/network/routing/ipv4-forwarding`. This service will be enabled or disabled as appropriate when `routeadm` is called with the `u` option. As an alternative, you can use `svcadm(1M)`. Services that require `ipv4-forwarding` to be enabled should specify a dependency on this service.

`ipv4-routing`

Determines whether an IPv4 routing daemon is run. The system default is enabled unless the `/etc/defaultrouter` file exists (see `defaultrouter(4)`), in which case the default is disabled. The value of this option reflects the state of all IPv4 routing services, such that if any IPv4 routing service is enabled, `ipv4-routing` is enabled. This allows users to interact with routing services using `svcadm(1M)`, as well as through `routeadm`. IPv4 routing services, specified by means of the `routing-svcs` variable, will be prepared for enable on next boot when the user explicitly enables `ipv4-routing`. The SMF routing daemon service for `in.routed` (`svc:/network/routing/route:default`) is specified by default.

`ipv6-forwarding`

Controls the global forwarding configuration for all IPv6 interfaces. The system default is disabled. If enabled, IP will forward IPv6 packets to and from interfaces when appropriate. If disabled, IP will not forward IPv6 packets to and from interfaces when appropriate. The SMF service associated with this configuration variable is `svc:/network/routing/ipv6-forwarding`. This service will be enabled or disabled as appropriate when `routeadm` is called with the `-u` option, or `svcadm(1M)` is used. Services that require `ipv6-forwarding` to be enabled should specify a dependency on this service.

`ipv6-routing`

Determines whether an IPv6 routing daemon is run. The system default is disabled. The value of this option reflects the state of all IPv6 routing services, such that, if any IPv6 routing service is enabled, `ipv6-routing` is enabled. This allows users to interact with routing services via `svcadm(1M)` as well as through `routeadm`. IPv6 routing services, specified by means of the `routing-svcs` variable, will be prepared for enable on next boot when the user explicitly enables `ipv6-routing`. The SMF routing daemon service for `in.ripngd` (`svc:/network/routing/ripng:default`) is specified by default.

The forwarding and routing settings are related but not mutually dependent. For example, a router typically forwards IP packets and uses a routing protocol, but nothing would prevent an administrator from configuring a router that forwards packets and does not use a routing protocol. In that case, the administrator would enable forwarding, disable routing, and populate the router's routing table with static routes.

The forwarding settings are global settings. Each interface also has an `IFF_ROUTER` forwarding flag that determines whether packets can be forwarded to or from a particular interface. That flag can be independently controlled by means of `ifconfig(1M)`'s `router` option. When the global forwarding setting is changed (that is, `-u` is issued to change the value from enabled to disabled or vice-versa), all interface flags in the system are changed simultaneously to reflect the new global policy. Interfaces configured by means of DHCP automatically have their interface-specific `IFF_ROUTER` flag cleared.

When a new interface is plumbed by means of `ifconfig`, the value of the interface-specific forwarding flag is set according to the current global forwarding value. Thus, the forwarding value forms the “default” for all new interfaces.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Enabling IPv4 Forwarding

IPv4 forwarding is disabled by default. The following command enables IPv4 forwarding:

```
example# routeadm -e ipv4-forwarding
```

EXAMPLE 2 Apply Configured Settings to the Running System

In the previous example, a system setting was changed, but will not take effect until the next reboot unless a command such as the following is used:

```
example# routeadm -u
```

An alternative to the above two steps is to simply enable the equivalent SMF service:

```
example# svcadm enable svc:/network/ipv4-forwarding
```

...or, using the abbreviated FMRI:

```
example# svcadm enable ipv4-forwarding
```

EXAMPLE 3 Making a Setting Revert to its Default

To make the setting changed in the first example revert to its default, enter the following:

```
example# routeadm -r ipv4-forwarding
```

```
example# routeadm -u
```

EXAMPLE 4 Starting `in.routed` with the `-q` Flag

Setting the `-q` flag is represented in the SMF service by setting the `quiet_mode` property to true. The following sequence of commands starts `in.routed` with the `-q` flag:

```
example# routeadm -m route:default quiet_mode=true
```

```
example# routeadm -e ipv4-routing -u
```

See [in.routed\(1M\)](#) for details of property names and how they relate to daemon behavior.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- !=0 An error occurred while obtaining or modifying the system configuration.

Files /etc/inet/routing.conf Parameters for IP forwarding and routing. (Not to be edited.)

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Stable

See Also [ifconfig\(1M\)](#), [in.routed\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [gateways\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Name rpcbind – universal addresses to RPC program number mapper

Synopsis rpcbind [-d] [-w]

Description rpcbind is a server that converts RPC program numbers into universal addresses. It must be running on the host to be able to make RPC calls on a server on that machine.

When an RPC service is started, it tells rpcbind the address at which it is listening, and the RPC program numbers it is prepared to serve. When a client wishes to make an RPC call to a given program number, it first contacts rpcbind on the server machine to determine the address where RPC requests should be sent.

rpcbind should be started before any other RPC service. Normally, standard RPC servers are started by port monitors, so rpcbind must be started before port monitors are invoked.

When rpcbind is started, it checks that certain name-to-address translation-calls function correctly. If they fail, the network configuration databases can be corrupt. Since RPC services cannot function correctly in this situation, rpcbind reports the condition and terminates.

rpcbind maintains an open transport end for each transport that it uses for indirect calls. This is the UDP port on most systems.

The rpcbind service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/rpc/bind
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). rpcbind can only be started by the superuser or someone in the Primary Administrator role.

The configuration properties of this service can be modified with [svccfg\(1M\)](#).

The following SMF property is used to allow or disallow access to rpcbind by remote clients:

```
config/local_only = true
```

The default value, true, shown above, disallows remote access; a value of false allows remote access. See EXAMPLES.

The FMRI `svc:/network/rpc/bind` property group `config` contains the following property settings:

<code>enable_tcpwrappers</code>	Specifies that the TCP wrappers facility is used to control access to TCP services. The value true enables checking. The default value for <code>enable_tcpwrappers</code> is false. If the <code>enable_tcpwrappers</code> parameter is enabled, then all calls to rpcbind originating from non-local addresses are automatically wrapped by the TCP wrappers facility. The <code>syslog</code> facility code <code>daemon</code> is used to log
---------------------------------	---

allowed connections (using the `info` severity level) and denied traffic (using the `warning` severity level). See `syslog.conf(4)` for a description of `syslog` codes and severity levels. The stability level of the TCP wrappers facility and its configuration files is External. As the TCP wrappers facility is not controlled by Sun, intrarelease incompatibilities are not uncommon. See `attributes(5)`.

<code>verbose_logging</code>	Specifies whether the TCP wrappers facility logs all calls or just the denied calls. The default is <code>false</code> . This option has no effect if TCP wrappers are not enabled.
<code>allow_indirect</code>	Specifies whether <code>rpcbind</code> allows indirect calls at all. By default, <code>rpcbind</code> allows most indirect calls, except to a number of standard services (<code>key serv</code> , <code>automount</code> , <code>mount</code> , <code>nfs</code> , <code>rquota</code> , and selected NIS and <code>rpcbind</code> procedures). Setting <code>allow_indirect</code> to <code>false</code> causes all indirect calls to be dropped. The default is <code>true</code> . NIS broadcast clients rely on this functionality on NIS servers.

Options The following options are supported:

- d Run in debug mode. In this mode, `rpcbind` does not fork when it starts. It prints additional information during operation, and aborts on certain errors. With this option, the name-to-address translation consistency checks are shown in detail.
- w Do a warm start. If `rpcbind` aborts or terminates on `SIGINT` or `SIGTERM`, it writes the current list of registered services to `/var/run/portmap.file` and `/var/run/rpcbind.file`. Starting `rpcbind` with the `-w` option instructs it to look for these files and start operation with the registrations found in them. This allows `rpcbind` to resume operation without requiring all RPC services to be restarted.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Allowing Remote Access

The following sequence of commands allows remote access to `rpcbind`.

```
# svccfg -s svc:/network/rpc/bind setprop config/local_only = false
# svcadm refresh svc:/network/rpc/bind
```

Files	<code>/var/run/portmap.file</code>	Stores the information for RPC services registered over IP based transports for warm start purposes.
	<code>/var/run/rpcbind.file</code>	Stores the information for all registered RPC services for warm start purposes.

Attributes See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	See below.

TCP wrappers is External.

See Also [smf\(5\)](#), [rpcinfo\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [rpcbind\(3NSL\)](#), [syslog.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

For information on the TCP wrappers facility, see the `hosts_access(4)` man page, delivered as part of the Solaris operating environment in `/usr/sfw/man` and available in the `SUNWtcpd` package.

Notes Terminating `rpcbind` with `SIGKILL` prevents the warm-start files from being written.

All RPC servers are restarted if the following occurs: `rpcbind` crashes (or is killed with `SIGKILL`) and is unable to write the warm-start files; `rpcbind` is started without the `-w` option after a graceful termination. Otherwise, the warm start files are not found by `rpcbind`.

Name rpc.bootparamd, bootparamd – boot parameter server

Synopsis /usr/sbin/rpc.bootparamd [-d]

Description rpc.bootparamd is a server process that provides information from a bootparams database to diskless clients at boot time. See [bootparams\(4\)](#)

The source for the bootparams database is determined by the [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#) file (on the machine running the rpc.bootparamd process).

Options The following options are supported:

-d Display debugging information.

Files /etc/bootparams boot parameter data base

/etc/nsswitch.conf configuration file for the name-service switch

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWbsu

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [bootparams\(4\)](#), [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Notes A diskless client requires service from at least one rpc.bootparamd process running on a server that is on the same IP subnetwork as the diskless client.

Some routines that compare hostnames use case-sensitive string comparisons; some do not. If an incoming request fails, verify that the case of the hostname in the file to be parsed matches the case of the hostname called for, and attempt the request again.

The rpc.bootparamd service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/rpc/bootparams
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name rpcinfo – report RPC information

Synopsis rpcinfo [-m | -s] [*host*]
rpcinfo -p [*host*]
rpcinfo -T *transport host prognum [versnum]*
rpcinfo -l [-T *transport*] *host prognum versnum*
rpcinfo [-n *portnum*] -u *host prognum [versnum]*
rpcinfo [-n *portnum*] -t *host prognum [versnum]*
rpcinfo -a *serv_address -T transport prognum [versnum]*
rpcinfo -b [-T *transport*] *prognum versnum*
rpcinfo -d [-T *transport*] *prognum versnum*

Description rpcinfo makes an RPC call to an RPC server and reports what it finds.

In the first synopsis, rpcinfo lists all the registered RPC services with rpcbind on *host*. If *host* is not specified, the local host is the default. If -s is used, the information is displayed in a concise format.

In the second synopsis, rpcinfo lists all the RPC services registered with rpcbind, version 2. Note that the format of the information is different in the first and the second synopsis. This is because the second synopsis is an older protocol used to collect the information displayed (version 2 of the rpcbind protocol).

The third synopsis makes an RPC call to procedure 0 of *prognum* and *versnum* on the specified *host* and reports whether a response was received. *transport* is the transport which has to be used for contacting the given service. The remote address of the service is obtained by making a call to the remote rpcbind.

The *prognum* argument is a number that represents an RPC program number (see [rpc\(4\)](#)).

If a *versnum* is specified, rpcinfo attempts to call that version of the specified *prognum*. Otherwise, rpcinfo attempts to find all the registered version numbers for the specified *prognum* by calling version 0, which is presumed not to exist; if it does exist, rpcinfo attempts to obtain this information by calling an extremely high version number instead, and attempts to call each registered version. Note that the version number is required for -b and -d options.

The EXAMPLES section describe other ways of using rpcinfo.

Options -T *transport* Specify the transport on which the service is required. If this option is not specified, rpcinfo uses the transport specified in the NETPATH environment variable, or if that is unset or NULL, the transport in the [netconfig\(4\)](#) database is used. This is a generic option, and can be used in conjunction with other options as shown in the SYNOPSIS.

-
- a *serv_address* Use *serv_address* as the (universal) address for the service on *transport* to ping procedure 0 of the specified *prognum* and report whether a response was received. The -T option is required with the -a option. If *versnum* is not specified, *rpcinfo* tries to ping all available version numbers for that program number. This option avoids calls to remote *rpcbind* to find the address of the service. The *serv_address* is specified in universal address format of the given transport.
 - b Make an RPC broadcast to procedure 0 of the specified *prognum* and *versnum* and report all hosts that respond. If *transport* is specified, it broadcasts its request only on the specified transport. If broadcasting is not supported by any transport, an error message is printed. Use of broadcasting should be limited because of the potential for adverse effect on other systems.
 - d Delete registration for the RPC service of the specified *prognum* and *versnum*. If *transport* is specified, unregister the service on only that transport, otherwise unregister the service on all the transports on which it was registered. Only the owner of a service can delete a registration, except the superuser, who can delete any service.
 - l Display a list of entries with a given *prognum* and *versnum* on the specified *host*. Entries are returned for all transports in the same protocol family as that used to contact the remote *rpcbind*.
 - m Display a table of statistics of *rpcbind* operations on the given *host*. The table shows statistics for each version of *rpcbind* (versions 2, 3 and 4), giving the number of times each procedure was requested and successfully serviced, the number and type of remote call requests that were made, and information about RPC address lookups that were handled. This is useful for monitoring RPC activities on *host*.
 - n *portnum* Use *portnum* as the port number for the -t and -u options instead of the port number given by *rpcbind*. Use of this option avoids a call to the remote *rpcbind* to find out the address of the service. This option is made obsolete by the -a option.
 - p Probe *rpcbind* on *host* using version 2 of the *rpcbind* protocol, and display a list of all registered RPC programs. If *host* is not specified, it defaults to the local host. This option is not useful for IPv6; use -s (see below) instead. Note that version 2 of the *rpcbind* protocol was previously known as the portmapper protocol.
 - s Display a concise list of all registered RPC programs on *host*. If *host* is not specified, it defaults to the local host.

- t Make an RPC call to procedure 0 of *prognum* on the specified *host* using TCP, and report whether a response was received. This option is made obsolete by the -T option as shown in the third synopsis.
- u Make an RPC call to procedure 0 of *prognum* on the specified *host* using UDP, and report whether a response was received. This option is made obsolete by the -T option as shown in the third synopsis.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 RPC services.

To show all of the RPC services registered on the local machine use:

```
example% rpcinfo
```

To show all of the RPC services registered with `rpcbind` on the machine named `klaxon` use:

```
example% rpcinfo klaxon
```

The information displayed by the above commands can be quite lengthy. Use the `-s` option to display a more concise list:

```
example% rpcinfo -s klaxon
```

program	vrnsn	netid(s)	service	owner
100000	2,3,4	tcp,udp,ticlts,ticots,ticotsord	rpcbind	superuser
100008	1	ticotsord,ticots,ticlts,udp,tcp	walld	superuser
100002	2,1	ticotsord,ticots,ticlts,udp,tcp	rusersd	superuser
100001	2,3,4	ticotsord,ticots,tcp,ticlts,udp	rstatd	superuser
100012	1	ticotsord,ticots,ticlts,udp,tcp	sprayd	superuser
100007	3	ticotsord,ticots,ticlts,udp,tcp	ypbind	superuser
100029	1	ticotsord,ticots,ticlts	keyserv	superuser
100078	4	ticotsord,ticots,ticlts	-	superuser
100024	1	ticotsord,ticots,ticlts,udp,tcp	status	superuser
100021	2,1	ticotsord,ticots,ticlts,udp,tcp	nlockmgr	superuser
100020	1	ticotsord,ticots,ticlts,udp,tcp	llockmgr	superuser

To show whether the RPC service with program number *prognum* and version *versnum* is registered on the machine named `klaxon` for the transport TCP use:

```
example% rpcinfo -T tcp klaxon prognum versnum
```

To show all RPC services registered with version 2 of the `rpcbind` protocol on the local machine use:

```
example% rpcinfo -p
```

To delete the registration for version 1 of the `walld` (program number `100008`) service for all transports use:

```
example# rpcinfo -d 100008 1
```

or

```
example# rpcinfo -d walld 1
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [rpcbind\(1M\)](#), [rpc\(3NSL\)](#), [netconfig\(4\)](#), [rpc\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name rpc.mdcommd – multi-node disk set services

Synopsis /usr/sbin/rpc.mdcommd

Description rpc.mdcommd is an [rpc\(4\)](#) daemon that functions as a server process. rpc.mdcommd manages communication among hosts participating in a multi-node disk set configuration.

rpc.mdcommd is invoked by [inetd\(1M\)](#).

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWmfu
Stability	Evolving

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [inetadm\(1M\)](#), [inetd\(1M\)](#), [metaset\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [rpc\(3NSL\)](#), [rpc\(4\)](#), [services\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Solaris Volume Manager Administration Guide

Notes The rpc.mdcommd service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/rpc/mdcomm
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). Responsibility for initiating and restarting this service is delegated to [inetd\(1M\)](#). Use [inetadm\(1M\)](#) to make configuration changes and to view configuration information for this service. The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name rpc.metad – remote metaset services

Synopsis /usr/sbin/rpc.metad

Description rpc.metad is an [rpc\(4\)](#) daemon (functioning as a server process) that is used to manage local copies of metadvice diskset information. The rpc.metad daemon is controlled by [inetadm\(1M\)](#).

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWmdu

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [inetadm\(1M\)](#), [inetd\(1M\)](#), [metaset\(1M\)](#), [rpc.metamhd\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [rpc\(3NSL\)](#), [services\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Solaris Volume Manager Administration Guide

Notes The rpc.metad service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/rpc/meta:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). Responsibility for initiating and restarting this service is delegated to [inetd\(1M\)](#). Use [inetadm\(1M\)](#) to make configuration changes and to view configuration information for this service. The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name rpc.metamedd – remote mediator services

Synopsis /usr/sbin/rpc.metamedd

Description rpc.metamedd is an [rpc\(4\)](#) server which is used to manage mediator information for use in 2-string HA configurations. The rpc.metamedd daemon is controlled by [inetadm\(1M\)](#).

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWmdu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [inetadm\(1M\)](#), [inetd\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [rpc\(4\)](#), [services\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Sun Cluster documentation, *Solaris Volume Manager Administration Guide*

Notes The rpc.metamedd service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/rpc/metamed:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). Responsibility for initiating and restarting this service is delegated to [inetd\(1M\)](#). Use [inetadm\(1M\)](#) to make configuration changes and to view configuration information for this service. The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name rpc.metamhd – remote multihost disk services

Synopsis /usr/sbin/rpc.metamhd

Description rpc.metamhd is an [rpc\(4\)](#) daemon (functioning as a server process) that is used to manage multi-hosted disks. The rpc.metamhd daemon is controlled by [inetadm\(1M\)](#).

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWmdu

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [inetadm\(1M\)](#), [inetd\(1M\)](#), [metaset\(1M\)](#), [rpc.metad\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [rpc\(3NSL\)](#), [services\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Solaris Volume Manager Administration Guide

Notes The rpc.metamhd service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/rpc/metamh:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). Responsibility for initiating and restarting this service is delegated to [inetd\(1M\)](#). Use [inetadm\(1M\)](#) to make configuration changes and to view configuration information for this service. The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name rpc.rexd, rexd – RPC-based remote execution server

Synopsis /usr/sbin/rpc.rexd [-s]

Description rpc.rexd is the Sun RPC server for remote program execution. This daemon is started by [inetd\(1M\)](#) whenever a remote execution request is made.

For non-interactive programs, the standard file descriptors are connected directly to TCP connections. Interactive programs involve pseudo-terminals, in a fashion that is similar to the login sessions provided by [rlogin\(1\)](#). This daemon may use NFS to mount file systems specified in the remote execution request.

There is a 10240 byte limit for arguments to be encoded and passed from the sending to the receiving system.

Options The following option is supported:

- s Secure. When specified, requests must have valid DES credentials. If the request does not have a DES credential it is rejected. The default publickey credential is rejected. Only newer [on\(1\)](#) commands send DES credentials.

If access is denied with an authentication error, you may have to set your publickey with the [chkey\(1\)](#) command.

Specifying the -s option without presenting secure credentials will result in an error message: Unix too weak auth (DesONly)!

Security rpc.rexd uses [pam\(3PAM\)](#) for account and session management. The PAM configuration policy, listed through /etc/pam.conf, specifies the modules to be used for rpc.rexd. Here is a partial pam.conf file with rpc.rexd entries for account and session management using the UNIX module.

```
rpc.rexd  account requisite      pam_roles.so.1
rpc.rexd  account required        pam_projects.so.1
rpc.rexd  account required        pam_unix_account.so.1

rpc.rexd  session required      pam_unix_session.so.1
```

If there are no entries for the rpc.rexd service, the entries for the "other" service will be used. rpc.rexd uses the `getpwnid()` call to determine whether the given user is a legal user.

Files

/dev/pts <i>n</i>	Pseudo-terminals used for interactive mode
/etc/passwd	Authorized users
/tmp_rex/rexd??????	Temporary mount points for remote file systems

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWnisu

See Also [chkey\(1\)](#), [on\(1\)](#), [rlogin\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [inetadm\(1M\)](#), [inetd\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [pam\(3PAM\)](#), [pam.conf\(4\)](#), [publickey\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [pam_authok_check\(5\)](#), [pam_authok_get\(5\)](#), [pam_authok_store\(5\)](#), [pam_dhkeys\(5\)](#), [pam_passwd_auth\(5\)](#), [pam_unix_account\(5\)](#), [pam_unix_auth\(5\)](#), [pam_unix_session\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Diagnostics Diagnostic messages are normally printed on the console, and returned to the requestor.

Notes Root cannot execute commands using rexd client programs such as [on\(1\)](#).

The [pam_unix\(5\)](#) module is no longer supported. Similar functionality is provided by [pam_authok_check\(5\)](#), [pam_authok_get\(5\)](#), [pam_authok_store\(5\)](#), [pam_dhkeys\(5\)](#), [pam_passwd_auth\(5\)](#), [pam_unix_account\(5\)](#), [pam_unix_auth\(5\)](#), and [pam_unix_session\(5\)](#).

The `rpc.rexd` service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/rpc/rex:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). Responsibility for initiating and restarting this service is delegated to [inetd\(1M\)](#). Use [inetadm\(1M\)](#) to make configuration changes and to view configuration information for this service. The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name rpc.rstatd, rstatd – kernel statistics server

Synopsis /usr/lib/netsvc/rstat/rpc.rstatd

Description rpc.rstatd is a server which returns performance statistics obtained from the kernel. [rup\(1\)](#) uses rpc.rstatd to collect the uptime information that it displays.

rpc.rstatd is an RPC service.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWrcmds

See Also [rup\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [inetadm\(1M\)](#), [inetd\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [services\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Notes The rpc.rstatd service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/rpc/rstat:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). Responsibility for initiating and restarting this service is delegated to [inetd\(1M\)](#). Use [inetadm\(1M\)](#) to make configuration changes and to view configuration information for this service. The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name rpc.rusersd, rusersd – network username server

Synopsis /usr/lib/netsvc/rusers/rpc.rusersd

Description rpc.rusersd is a server that returns a list of users on the host. The rpc.rusersd daemon may be started by [inetd\(1M\)](#) or [listen\(1M\)](#).

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWrcmds

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [inetadm\(1M\)](#), [inetd\(1M\)](#), [listen\(1M\)](#), [pmadm\(1M\)](#), [sacadm\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Notes The rpc.rusersd service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/rpc/rusers:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). Responsibility for initiating and restarting this service is delegated to [inetd\(1M\)](#). Use [inetadm\(1M\)](#) to make configuration changes and to view configuration information for this service. The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name rpc.rwalld, rwalld – network rwall server

Synopsis /usr/lib/netsvc/rwall/rpc.rwalld

Description rpc.rwalld is a server that handles [rwall\(1M\)](#) requests. It is implemented by calling [wall\(1M\)](#) on all the appropriate network machines. The rpc.rwalld daemon may be started by [inetd\(1M\)](#) or [listen\(1M\)](#).

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWrcmds

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [inetadm\(1M\)](#), [inetd\(1M\)](#), [listen\(1M\)](#), [rwall\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [wall\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Notes The rpc.rwalld service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/rpc/wall:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). Responsibility for initiating and restarting this service is delegated to [inetd\(1M\)](#). Use [inetadm\(1M\)](#) to make configuration changes and to view configuration information for this service. The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name rpc.smsserverd – removable media device server

Synopsis /usr/lib/smedia/rpc.smsserverd

Description `rpc.smsserverd` is a server that handles requests from client applications, such as volume management software, for access to removable media devices. In addition to volume management software, `rmformat(1)` and the CDE Filemanager (when performing removable media operations) are `rpc.smsserverd` clients. The `rpc.smsserverd` daemon is started by `inetd(1M)` when a client makes a call to a Solaris-internal library to access a SCSI, IDE, or USB device. The daemon is not started if a client attempts to access a floppy or PCMCIA device. Once started, the daemon remains active until such time as it is idle for three minutes or more.

The `rpc.smsserverd` daemon is provided for the exclusive use of the client applications mentioned above. It has no external, customer-accessible interfaces, including no configuration file.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWvolu

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [inetadm\(1M\)](#), [inetd\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Notes The `rpc.smsserverd` service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/rpc/smsserver
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). Responsibility for initiating and restarting this service is delegated to [inetd\(1M\)](#). Use [inetadm\(1M\)](#) to make configuration changes and to view configuration information for this service. The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name rpc.sprayd, sprayd – spray server

Synopsis /usr/lib/netsvc/spray/rpc.sprayd

Description rpc.sprayd is a server that records the packets sent by [spray\(1M\)](#). The rpc.sprayd daemon may be started by [inetd\(1M\)](#) or [listen\(1M\)](#).

The service provided by rpc.sprayd is not useful as a networking benchmark as it uses unreliable connectionless transports, (udp for example). It can report a large number of packets dropped when the drops were caused by the program sending packets faster than they can be buffered locally (before the packets get to the network medium).

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWrcmds

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [inetadm\(1M\)](#), [inetd\(1M\)](#), [listen\(1M\)](#), [pmadm\(1M\)](#), [sacadm\(1M\)](#), [spray\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Notes The rpc.sprayd service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/rpc/spray:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). Responsibility for initiating and restarting this service is delegated to [inetd\(1M\)](#). Use [inetadm\(1M\)](#) to make configuration changes and to view configuration information for this service. The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name rpc.yppasswdd, yppasswdd – server for modifying NIS password file

Synopsis /usr/lib/netsvc/yp/rpc.yppasswdd [-D *directory*]
 [-nogecos] [-noshell] [-nopw]
 [-m *argument1 argument2...*]

/usr/lib/netsvc/yp/rpc.yppasswdd
 [*passwordfile adjunctfile*]
 [-nogecos] [-noshell] [-nopw]
 [-m *argument1 argument2...*]

Description `rpc.yppasswdd` is a server that handles password change requests from `yppasswd(1)`. It changes a password entry in the `passwd`, `shadow`, and `security/passwd.adjunct` files. The `passwd` and `shadow` files provide the basis for the `passwd.byname` and `passwd.byuid` maps. The `passwd.adjunct` file provides the basis for the `passwd.adjunct.byname` and `passwd.adjunct.byuid` maps. Entries in the `passwd`, `shadow` or `passwd.adjunct` files are changed only if the password presented by `yppasswd(1)` matches the encrypted password of the entry. All password files are located in the `PWDIR` directory.

If the `-D` option is given, the `passwd`, `shadow`, or `passwd.adjunct` files are placed under the directory path that is the argument to `-D`.

If the `-noshell`, `-nogecos` or `-nopw` options are given, these fields cannot be changed remotely using `chfn`, `chsh`, or `passwd(1)`.

If the `-m` option is given, a `make(1S)` is performed in `/var/yp` after any of the `passwd`, `shadow`, or `passwd.adjunct` files are modified. All arguments following the flag are passed to `make`.

The second of the listed syntaxes is provided only for backward compatibility. If the second syntax is used, the `passwordfile` is the full pathname of the password file and `adjunctfile` is the full pathname of the optional `passwd.adjunct` file. If a shadow file is found in the same directory as `passwordfile`, the `shadowfile` is used as described above. Use of this syntax and the discovery of a `shadowfile` file generates diagnostic output. The daemon, however, starts normally.

The first and second syntaxes are mutually exclusive. You cannot specify the full pathname of the `passwd`, `passwd.adjunct` files and use the `-D` option at the same time.

The daemon is started automatically on the master server of the `passwd` map by `ypstart(1M)`, which is invoked at boot time by the `svcs:/network/nis/server:default` service.

The server does not insist on the presence of a shadow file unless there is no `-D` option present or the directory named with the `-D` option is `/etc`. In addition, a `passwd.adjunct` file is not necessary. If the `-D` option is given, the server attempts to find a `passwd.adjunct` file in the `security` subdirectory of the named directory. For example, in the presence of `-D /var/yp` the server checks for a `/var/yp/security/passwd.adjunct` file.

If only a `passwd` file exists, then the encrypted password is expected in the second field. If both a `passwd` and a `passwd.adjunct` file exist, the encrypted password is expected in the second field of the adjunct file with `##username` in the second field of the `passwd` file. If all three files are in use, the encrypted password is expected in the shadow file. Any deviation causes a password update to fail.

If you remove or add a shadow or `passwd.adjunct` file after `rpc.yppasswdd` has started, you must stop and restart the daemon to enable it to recognize the change. See [ypstart\(1M\)](#) for information on restarting the daemon.

The `rpc.yppasswdd` daemon considers a shell that has a name that begins with 'r' to be a restricted shell. By default, the daemon does not check whether a shell begins with an 'r'. However, you can tell it to do so by uncommenting the `check_restricted_shell_name=1` line in `/etc/default/yppasswdd`. The result will be to restrict a user's ability to change from his default shell. See [yppasswdd\(4\)](#).

On start up, `yppasswdd` checks for the existence of a NIS to LDAP (N2L) configuration file, `/var/yp/NISLDAPmapping`. If the configuration file is present, the daemon runs in N2L mode. If the file is not present, `yppasswdd` runs in traditional, non-N2L mode.

In N2L mode, changes are written directly to the Directory Information Tree (DIT). If the changes are written successfully, the NIS map is updated. The NIS source files, `passwd`, `shadow`, and `passwd.adjunct`, for example, are not updated. Thus, in N2L mode, the `-D` option is meaningless. In N2L mode, `yppasswdd` propagates changes by calling [yppush\(1M\)](#) instead of [ypmake\(1M\)](#). The `-m` option is thus unused.

During an NIS-to-LDAP transition, the `yppasswdd` daemon uses the N2L-specific map, `ageing.byname`, to read and write password aging information to the DIT. If you are not using password aging, then the `ageing.byname` mapping is ignored.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWypu

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [make\(1S\)](#), [passwd\(1\)](#), [yppasswdd\(1\)](#), [inetd\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [ypmake\(1M\)](#), [yppush\(1M\)](#), [ypstart\(1M\)](#), [NISLDAPmapping\(4\)](#), [passwd\(4\)](#), [shadow\(4\)](#), [ypfiles\(4\)](#), [yppasswdd\(4\)](#), [ypserv\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Notes If `make` has not been installed and the `-m` option is given, the daemon outputs a warning and proceeds, effectively ignoring the `-m` flag.

When using the `-D` option, you should make sure that the `PWDIR` of the `/var/yp/Makefile` is set accordingly.

The second listed syntax is supplied only for backward compatibility and might be removed in a future release of this daemon.

The Network Information Service (NIS) was formerly known as Sun Yellow Pages (YP). The functionality of the two remains the same; only the name has changed. The name Yellow Pages is a registered trademark in the United Kingdom of British Telecommunications PLC, and cannot be used without permission.

The NIS server service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svcs:/network/nis/server:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name rpc.yupdated, ypupdated – server for changing NIS information

Synopsis /usr/lib/netsvc/yp/rpc.yupdated [-is]

Description ypupdated is a daemon that updates information in the Network Information Service (NIS). ypupdated consults the [updaters\(4\)](#) file in the /var/yp directory to determine which NIS maps should be updated and how to change them.

By default, the daemon requires the most secure method of authentication available to it, either DES (secure) or UNIX (insecure).

On start up, ypupdated checks for the existence of a NIS to LDAP (N2L) configuration file, /var/yp/NISLDAPmapping. If the file is present, ypupdated generates an informational message and exits. ypupdated is not supported in N2L mode.

Options

- i Accept RPC calls with the insecure AUTH_UNIX credentials. This allows programmatic updating of the NIS maps in all networks.
- s Accept only calls authenticated using the secure RPC mechanism (AUTH_DES authentication). This disables programmatic updating of the NIS maps unless the network supports these calls.

Files /var/yp/updaters Configuration file for rpc.yupdated command.

/var/yp/NISLDAPmapping Configuration file for N2L

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWypu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [keyserv\(1M\)](#), [updaters\(4\)](#), [NISLDAPmapping\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

System Administration Guide: Naming and Directory Services (DNS, NIS, and LDAP)

Notes The Network Information Service (NIS) was formerly known as Sun Yellow Pages (YP). The functionality of the two services remains the same. Only the name has changed. The name Yellow Pages is a registered trademark in the United Kingdom of British Telecommunications PLC, and it must not be used without permission.

Name rquotad – remote quota server

Synopsis /usr/lib/nfs/rquotad

Description rquotad is an [rpc\(4\)](#) server which returns quotas for a user of a local file system which is mounted by a remote machine over the NFS. The results are used by [quota\(1M\)](#) to display user quotas for remote file systems. The rquotad daemon is normally invoked by [inetd\(1M\)](#).

Usage See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of rquotad when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (2^{31} bytes).

Files quotas quota file at a UFS file system root

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWnfssu

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [automountd\(1M\)](#), [inetadm\(1M\)](#), [inetd\(1M\)](#), [mount_nfs\(1M\)](#), [quota\(1M\)](#), [share_nfs\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [rpc\(4\)](#), [services\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Solaris 10 Installation Guide: Basic Installations

Notes The rquotad service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/nfs/rquota
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). Responsibility for initiating and restarting this service is delegated to [inetd\(1M\)](#). Use [inetadm\(1M\)](#) to make configuration changes and to view configuration information for this service. The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

If it is disabled, it will be enabled by [mount_nfs\(1M\)](#), [share_nfs\(1M\)](#), and [automountd\(1M\)](#) unless its application/auto_enable property is set to false.

Name rsh, restricted_shell – restricted shell command interpreter

Synopsis /usr/lib/rsh [-acefhiknprstuvx] [*argument*] . . .

Description rsh is a limiting version of the standard command interpreter sh, used to restrict logins to execution environments whose capabilities are more controlled than those of sh (see [sh\(1\)](#) for complete description and usage).

When the shell is invoked, it scans the environment for the value of the environmental variable, SHELL. If it is found and rsh is the file name part of its value, the shell becomes a restricted shell.

The actions of rsh are identical to those of sh, except that the following are disallowed:

- changing directory (see [cd\(1\)](#)),
- setting the value of \$PATH,
- specifying path or command names containing /,
- redirecting output (> and >>).

The restrictions above are enforced after *.profile* is interpreted.

A restricted shell can be invoked in one of the following ways:

1. rsh is the file name part of the last entry in the /etc/passwd file (see [passwd\(4\)](#));
2. the environment variable SHELL exists and rsh is the file name part of its value; the environment variable SHELL needs to be set in the *.login* file;
3. the shell is invoked and rsh is the file name part of argument 0;
4. the shell is invoked with the -r option.

When a command to be executed is found to be a shell procedure, rsh invokes sh to execute it. Thus, it is possible to provide to the end-user shell procedures that have access to the full power of the standard shell, while imposing a limited menu of commands; this scheme assumes that the end-user does not have write and execute permissions in the same directory.

The net effect of these rules is that the writer of the *.profile* (see [profile\(4\)](#)) has complete control over user actions by performing guaranteed setup actions and leaving the user in an appropriate directory (probably *not* the login directory).

The system administrator often sets up a directory of commands (that is, /usr/sbin) that can be safely invoked by a restricted shell. Some systems also provide a restricted editor, red.

Exit Status Errors detected by the shell, such as syntax errors, cause the shell to return a non-zero exit status. If the shell is being used non-interactively execution of the shell file is abandoned. Otherwise, the shell returns the exit status of the last command executed.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [Intro\(1\)](#), [cd\(1\)](#), [login\(1\)](#), [rsh\(1\)](#), [sh\(1\)](#), [exec\(2\)](#), [passwd\(4\)](#), [profile\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes The restricted shell, `/usr/lib/rsh`, should not be confused with the remote shell, `/usr/bin/rsh`, which is documented in [rsh\(1\)](#).

Name `rtc` – provide all real-time clock and GMT-lag management

Synopsis `/usr/sbin/rtc [-c] [-z zone-name]`

Description On x86 systems, the `rtc` command reconciles the difference in the way that time is established between UNIX and MS-DOS systems. UNIX systems utilize Greenwich Mean Time (GMT), while MS-DOS systems utilize local time.

Without arguments, `rtc` displays the currently configured time zone string. The currently configured time zone string is based on what was last recorded by `rtc -z zone-name`.

The `rtc` command is not normally run from a shell prompt; it is generally invoked by the system. Commands such as [date\(1\)](#) and [rdate\(1M\)](#), which are used to set the time on a system, invoke `/usr/sbin/rtc -c` to ensure that daylight savings time (DST) is corrected for properly.

Options

- `-c` This option checks for DST and makes corrections if necessary. It is normally run once a day by a cron job.
If there is no RTC time zone or `/etc/rtc_config` file, this option will do nothing.
- `-z zone-name` This option, which is normally run by the system at software installation time, is used to specify the time zone in which the RTC is to be maintained. It updates the configuration file `/etc/rtc_config` with the name of the specified zone and the current GMT lag for that zone. If there is an existing `rtc_config` file, this command will update it. If not, this command will create it.

Files `/etc/rtc_config` The data file used to record the time zone and GMT lag. This file is completely managed by `/usr/sbin/rtc`, and it is read by the kernel.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Architecture	x86
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [date\(1\)](#), [rdate\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name rtquery – query routing daemons for their routing tables

Synopsis rtquery [-np1] [-w *timeout*] [-r *addr*] [-a *secret*] *host*...
rtquery [-t *operation*] *host*...

Description The rtquery command is used to query a RIP network routing daemon, *in.routed(1M)* or GateD, for its routing table by sending a request or poll command. The routing information in any routing response packets returned is displayed numerically and symbolically.

By default, rtquery uses the request command. When the -p option is specified, rtquery uses the poll command, an undocumented extension to the RIP protocol supported by GateD. When querying GateD, the poll command is preferred over the request command because the response is not subject to Split Horizon and/or Poisoned Reverse, and because some versions of GateD do not answer the request command. *in.routed* does not answer the poll command, but recognizes requests coming from rtquery and so answers completely.

The rtquery command is also used to turn tracing on or off in *in.routed*.

Options The following options are supported:

-a <i>passwd=XXX</i>	
-a <i>md5_passwd=XXX KeyID</i>	Causes the query to be sent with the indicated cleartext or MD5 password.
-n	Displays only the numeric network and host addresses instead of both numeric and symbolic names.
-p	Uses the poll command to request full routing information from GateD. This is an undocumented extension RIP protocol supported only by GateD.
-r <i>addr</i>	Asks about the route to destination <i>addr</i> .
-t <i>operation</i>	Changes tracing, where <i>operation</i> is one of the actions listed below. Requests from processes not running with UID 0 or on distant networks are generally ignored by the daemon except for a message in the system log. GateD is likely to ignore these debugging requests.
on= <i>tracefile</i>	Turns tracing on, directing tracing into the specified file. That file must have been specified when the daemon was started or have the name, <code>/var/log/in.routed.trace</code> .
more	Increases the debugging level.
off	Turns off tracing.

- `dump` Dumps the daemon's routing table to the current trace file.
- `-w timeout` Changes the delay for an answer from each host. By default, each host is given 15 seconds to respond.
- `-1` Queries using RIP version 1 instead of RIP version 2.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- `0` Successful completion.
- `>0` An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWroute

See Also [in.routed\(1M\)](#), [route\(1M\)](#), [gateways\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [icmp\(7P\)](#), [inet\(7P\)](#), [udp\(7P\)](#)

Routing Information Protocol, RIPv1, RFC 1058

Routing Information Protocol, RIPv2, RFC 2453, STD 0056

Name runacct – run daily accounting

Synopsis /usr/lib/acct/runacct [*mdd* [*state*]]

Description runacct is the main daily accounting shell procedure. It is normally initiated using cron. runacct processes connect, fee, disk, and process accounting files. It also prepares summary files for prdaily or billing purposes. runacct is distributed only to source code licensees.

runacct takes care not to damage active accounting files or summary files in the event of errors. It records its progress by writing descriptive diagnostic messages into active. When an error is detected, a message is written to /dev/console, mail (see mail(1)) is sent to root and adm, and runacct terminates. runacct uses a series of lock files to protect against re-invocation. The files lock and lock1 are used to prevent simultaneous invocation, and lastdate is used to prevent more than one invocation per day.

runacct breaks its processing into separate, restartable *states* using statefile to remember the last *state* completed. It accomplishes this by writing the *state* name into statefile. runacct then looks in statefile to see what it has done and to determine what to process next. *states* are executed in the following order:

SETUP	Move active accounting files into working files.
WTMPFIX	Verify integrity of wtmpx file, correcting date changes if necessary.
CONNECT	Produce connect session records in tacct.h format.
PROCESS	Convert process accounting records into tacct.h format.
MERGE	Merge the connect and process accounting records.
FEES	Convert output of chargefee into tacct.h format, merge with connect, and process accounting records.
DISK	Merge disk accounting records with connect, process, and fee accounting records.
MERGETACCT	Merge the daily total accounting records in dayacct with the summary total accounting records in /var/adm/acct/sum/tacct.
CMS	Produce command summaries.
USEREXIT	Any installation dependent accounting programs can be included here.
CLEANUP	Clean up temporary files and exit. To restart runacct after a failure, first check the active file for diagnostics, then fix any corrupted data files, such as pacct or wtmpx. The lock, lock1, and lastdate files must be removed before runacct can be restarted. The argument <i>mdd</i> is necessary if runacct is being restarted. <i>mdd</i> specifies the month and day for which runacct will rerun the accounting. The entry point for processing is based on the contents of statefile; to override this, include the desired <i>state</i> on the command line to designate where processing should begin.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Starting runacct

The following example starts runacct:

```
example% nohup runacct 2> /var/adm/acct/nite/fd2log &
```

EXAMPLE 2 Restarting runacct

The following example restarts runacct:

```
example% nohup runacct 0601 2>> /var/adm/acct/nite/fd2log &
```

EXAMPLE 3 Restarting runacct at a Specific State

The following example restarts runacct at a specific state:

```
example% nohup runacct 0601 MERGE 2>> /var/adm/acct/nite/fd2log &
```

Files /var/adm/wtmpx History of user access and administration information
 /var/adm/pacctincr
 /var/adm/acct/nite/active
 /var/adm/acct/nite/dayacct
 /var/adm/acct/nite/lock
 /var/adm/acct/nite/lock1
 /var/adm/acct/nite/lastdate
 /var/adm/acct/nite/statefile

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWaccu

See Also [acctcom\(1\)](#), [mail\(1\)](#), [acct\(1M\)](#), [acctcms\(1M\)](#), [acctcon\(1M\)](#), [acctmerg\(1M\)](#), [acctprc\(1M\)](#), [acctsh\(1M\)](#), [cron\(1M\)](#), [fwtmp\(1M\)](#), [acct\(2\)](#), [acct.h\(3HEAD\)](#), [utmpx\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes It is not recommended to restart runacct in the *SETUP state*. Run SETUP manually and restart using:

```
runacct mmd WTMPFIX
```

If runacct failed in the *PROCESS state*, remove the last *ptacct* file because it will not be complete.

The runacct command can process a maximum of

- 6000 distinct sessions
- 1000 distinct terminal lines
- 2000 distinct login names

during a single invocation of the command. If at some point the actual number of any one of these items exceeds the maximum, the command will not succeed.

Do not invoke runacct at the same time as ckpacct, as there may be a conflict if both scripts attempt to execute turnacct switch simultaneously.

Name rwall – write to all users over a network

Synopsis `/usr/sbin/rwall hostname...`
`/usr/sbin/rwall -n netgroup...`
`/usr/sbin/rwall -h hostname -n netgroup`

Description rwall reads a message from standard input until EOF. It then sends this message, preceded by the line:

Broadcast Message . . .

to all users logged in on the specified host machines. With the `-n` option, it sends to the specified network groups.

Options `-n netgroup` Send the broadcast message to the specified network groups.
`-h hostname` Specify the hostname, the name of the host machine.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWrcmdc

See Also [inetd\(1M\)](#), [listen\(1M\)](#), [pmadm\(1M\)](#), [sacadm\(1M\)](#), [wall\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes The timeout is fairly short to allow transmission to a large group of machines (some of which may be down) in a reasonable amount of time. Thus the message may not get through to a heavily loaded machine.

Name sac – service access controller

Synopsis sac -t *sanity_interval*
/usr/lib/saf/sac

Description The Service Access Controller (SAC) is the overseer of the server machine. It is started when the server machine enters multiuser mode. The SAC performs several important functions as explained below.

- Customizing the SAC Environment** When sac is invoked, it first looks for the per-system configuration script /etc/saf/_sysconfig. sac interprets _sysconfig to customize its own environment. The modifications made to the SAC environment by _sysconfig are inherited by all the children of the SAC. This inherited environment may be modified by the children.
- Starting Port Monitors** After it has interpreted the _sysconfig file, the sac reads its administrative file /etc/saf/_sactab. _sactab specifies which port monitors are to be started. For each port monitor to be started, sac forks a child (see [fork\(2\)](#)) and creates a utmpx entry with the type field set to LOGIN_PROCESS. Each child then interprets its per-port monitor configuration script /etc/saf/pmtag/_config, if the file exists. These modifications to the environment affect the port monitor and will be inherited by all its children. Finally, the child process execs the port monitor, using the command found in the _sactab entry. (See [sacadm](#); this is the command given with the -c option when the port monitor is added to the system.)
- Polling Port Monitors to Detect Failure** The -t option sets the frequency with which sac polls the port monitors on the system. This time may also be thought of as half of the maximum latency required to detect that a port monitor has failed and that recovery action is necessary.
- Administrative functions** The Service Access Controller represents the administrative point of control for port monitors. Its administrative tasks are explained below.
- When queried (sacadm with either -l or -L), the Service Access Controller returns the status of the port monitors specified, which sacadm prints on the standard output. A port monitor may be in one of six states:
- | | |
|----------|---|
| ENABLED | The port monitor is currently running and is accepting connections. See sacadm(1M) with the -e option. |
| DISABLED | The port monitor is currently running and is not accepting connections. See sacadm with the -d option, and see NOTRUNNING, below. |
| STARTING | The port monitor is in the process of starting up. STARTING is an intermediate state on the way to ENABLED or DISABLED. |
| FAILED | The port monitor was unable to start and remain running. |
| STOPPING | The port monitor has been manually terminated but has not completed its shutdown procedure. STOPPING is an intermediate state on the way to NOTRUNNING. |

NOTRUNNING The port monitor is not currently running. (See `sacadm` with `-k`.) This is the normal “not running” state. When a port monitor is killed, all ports it was monitoring are inaccessible. It is not possible for an external user to tell whether a port is not being monitored or the system is down. If the port monitor is not killed but is in the `DISABLED` state, it may be possible (depending on the port monitor being used) to write a message on the inaccessible port telling the user who is trying to access the port that it is disabled. This is the advantage of having a `DISABLED` state as well as the `NOTRUNNING` state.

When a port monitor terminates, the SAC removes the `utmpx` entry for that port monitor.

The SAC receives all requests to enable, disable, start, or stop port monitors and takes the appropriate action.

The SAC is responsible for restarting port monitors that terminate. Whether or not the SAC will restart a given port monitor depends on two things:

- The restart count specified for the port monitor when the port monitor was added by `sacadm`; this information is included in `/etc/saf/pmtag/_sactab`.
- The number of times the port monitor has already been restarted.

Security `sac` uses [pam\(3PAM\)](#) for session management. The PAM configuration policy, listed through `/etc/pam.conf`, specifies the session management module to be used for `sac`. Here is a partial `pam.conf` file with entries for `sac` using the UNIX session management module.

```
sac session required pam_unix_session.so.1
```

If there are no entries for the `sac` service, then the entries for the “other” service will be used.

Options `-t sanity_interval` Sets the frequency (*sanity_interval*) with which `sac` polls the port monitors on the system.

- Files**
- `/etc/saf/_sactab`
 - `/etc/saf/_sysconfig`
 - `/var/adm/utmpx`
 - `/var/saf/_log`

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [pmadm\(1M\)](#), [sacadm\(1M\)](#), [fork\(2\)](#) [pam\(3PAM\)](#), [pam.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [pam_authtok_check\(5\)](#), [pam_authtok_get\(5\)](#), [pam_authtok_store\(5\)](#), [pam_dhkeys\(5\)](#), [pam_passwd_auth\(5\)](#), [pam_unix_account\(5\)](#), [pam_unix_auth\(5\)](#), [pam_unix_session\(5\)](#)

Notes The `pam_unix(5)` module is no longer supported. Similar functionality is provided by `pam_authok_check(5)`, `pam_authok_get(5)`, `pam_authok_store(5)`, `pam_dhkeys(5)`, `pam_passwd_auth(5)`, `pam_unix_account(5)`, `pam_unix_auth(5)`, and `pam_unix_session(5)`.

The service access controller service is managed by the service management facility, `smf(5)`, under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/sac:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using `svcadm(1M)`. The service's status can be queried using the `svcs(1)` command.

Name sacadm – service access controller administration

Synopsis sacadm -a -p *pmtag* -t *type* -c *cmd* -v *ver* [-f *dx*] [-n *count*]
[-y *comment*] [-z *script*]

sacadm -r -p *pmtag*

sacadm -s -p *pmtag*

sacadm -k -p *pmtag*

sacadm -e -p *pmtag*

sacadm -d -p *pmtag*

sacadm -l [-p *pmtag* | -t *type*]

sacadm -L [-p *pmtag* | -t *type*]

sacadm -g -p *pmtag* [-z *script*]

sacadm -G [-z *script*]

sacadm -x [-p *pmtag*]

Description sacadm is the administrative command for the upper level of the Service Access Facility hierarchy (port monitor administration). sacadm performs the following functions:

- adds or removes a port monitor
- starts or stops a port monitor
- enables or disables a port monitor
- installs or replaces a per-system configuration script
- installs or replaces a per-port monitor configuration script
- prints requested port monitor information

Requests about the status of port monitors (-l and -L) and requests to print per-port monitor and per-system configuration scripts (-g and -G without the -z option) may be executed by any user on the system. Other sacadm commands may be executed only by the super-user.

Options -a Add a port monitor. When adding a port monitor, sacadm creates the supporting directory structure in /etc/saf and /var/saf and adds an entry for the new port monitor to /etc/saf/_sactab. The file _sactab already exists on the delivered system. Initially, it is empty except for a single line, which contains the version number of the Service Access Controller. Unless the command line that adds the new port monitor includes the -f option with the -x argument, the new port monitor will be started. Because of the complexity of the options and arguments that follow the -a option, it may be convenient to use a command script or the menu system to add port monitors.

-c *cmd* Execute the command string *cmd* to start a port monitor. The -c option may be used only with a -a. A -a option requires a -c.

-
- d Disable the port monitor *pmtag*.
 - e Enable the port monitor *pmtag*.
 - f dx The -f option specifies one or both of the following two flags which are then included in the flags field of the `_sactab` entry for the new port monitor. If the -f option is not included on the command line, no flags are set and the default conditions prevail. By default, a port monitor is started. A -f option with no following argument is illegal.
 - d Do not enable the new port monitor.
 - x Do not start the new port monitor.
 - g The -g option is used to request output or to install or replace the per-port monitor configuration script `/etc/saf/pmtag/_config`. -g requires a -p option. The -g option with only a -p option prints the per-port monitor configuration script for port monitor *pmtag*. The -g option with a -p option and a -z option installs the file `script` as the per-port monitor configuration script for port monitor *pmtag*. Other combinations of options with -g are invalid.
 - G The -G option is used to request output or to install or replace the per-system configuration script `/etc/saf/_sysconfig`. The -G option by itself prints the per-system configuration script. The -G option in combination with a -z option installs the file `script` as the per-system configuration script. Other combinations of options with a -G option are invalid.
 - k Stop port monitor *pmtag*.
 - l The -l option is used to request port monitor information. The -l by itself lists all port monitors on the system. The -l option in combination with the -p option lists only the port monitor specified by *pmtag*. A -l in combination with the -t option lists all port monitors of type *type*. Any other combination of options with the -l option is invalid.
 - L The -L option is identical to the -l option except that the output appears in a condensed format.
 - n *count* Set the restart count to *count*. If a restart count is not specified, count is set to 0. A count of 0 indicates that the port monitor is not to be restarted if it fails.
 - p *pmtag* Specifies the tag associated with a port monitor.
 - r Remove port monitor *pmtag*. `sacadm` removes the port monitor entry from `/etc/saf/_sactab`. If the removed port monitor is not running, then no further action is taken. If the removed port monitor is running, the Service Access Controller (SAC) sends it SIGTERM to indicate that it should shut down. Note that the port monitor's directory structure remains intact.

- s Start a port monitor. The SAC starts the port monitor *pmtag*.
- t type Specifies the port monitor type.
- v ver Specifies the version number of the port monitor. This version number may be given as
 - v '*pmspec -V*'
 where *pmspec* is the special administrative command for port monitor *pmtag*. This special command is *tttyadm* for *ttymon* and *nlsadmin* for *listen*. The version stamp of the port monitor is known by the command and is returned when *pmspec* is invoked with a *-V* option.
- x The *-x* option by itself tells the SAC to read its database file (*_sactab*). The *-x* option with the *-p* option tells port monitor *pmtag* to read its administrative file.
- y comment Include *comment* in the *_sactab* entry for port monitor *pmtag*.
- z script Used with the *-g* and *-G* options to specify the name of a file that contains a configuration script. With the *-g* option, *script* is a per-port monitor configuration script; with *-G* it is a per-system configuration script. Modifying a configuration script is a three-step procedure. First a copy of the existing script is made (*-g* or *-G*). Then the copy is edited. Finally, the copy is put in place over the existing script (*-g* or *-G* with *-z*).

Output If successful, *sacadm* will exit with a status of 0. If *sacadm* fails for any reason, it will exit with a nonzero status. Options that request information will write the information on the standard output. In the condensed format (*-L*), port monitor information is printed as a sequence of colon-separated fields; empty fields are indicated by two successive colons. The standard format (*-l*) prints a header identifying the columns, and port monitor information is aligned under the appropriate headings. In this format, an empty field is indicated by a hyphen. The comment character is #.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 A sample output of the *sacadm* command.

The following command line adds a port monitor. The port monitor tag is *npack*; its type is *listen*; if necessary, it will restart three times before failing; its administrative command is *nlsadmin*; and the configuration script to be read is in the file *script*:

```
sacadm -a -p npack -t listen -c /usr/lib/saf/listen npack
-v 'nlsadmin -V' -n 3 -z script
```

Remove a port monitor whose tag is *pmtag*:

```
sacadm -r -p pmtag
```

Start the port monitor whose tag is *pmtag*:

EXAMPLE 1 A sample output of the `sacadm` command. *(Continued)*

```
sacadm -s -p pmtag
```

Stop the port monitor whose tag is `pmtag`:

```
sacadm -k -p pmtag
```

Enable the port monitor whose tag is `pmtag`:

```
sacadm -e -p pmtag
```

Disable the port monitor whose tag is `pmtag`:

```
sacadm -d -p pmtag
```

List status information for all port monitors:

```
sacadm -l
```

List status information for the port monitor whose tag is `pmtag`:

```
sacadm -l -p pmtag
```

List the same information in condensed format:

```
sacadm -L -p pmtag
```

List status information for all port monitors whose type is `listen`:

```
sacadm -l -t listen
```

Replace the per-port monitor configuration script associated with the port monitor whose tag is `pmtag` with the contents of the file `file.config`:

```
sacadm -g -p pmtag -z file.config
```

Files `/etc/saf/_sactab`
`/etc/saf/_sysconfig`
`/etc/saf/pmtag/_config`

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [pmdm\(1M\)](#), [sac\(1M\)](#), [doconfig\(3NSL\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name saf – Service Access Facility

Description The SAF generalizes the procedures for service access so that login access on the local system and network access to local services are managed in similar ways. Under the SAF, systems may access services using a variety of port monitors, including ttymon, the listener, and port monitors written expressly for a user's application. The manner in which a port monitor observes and manages access ports is specific to the port monitor and not to any component of the SAF. Users may therefore extend their systems by developing and installing their own port monitors. One of the important features of the SAF is that it can be extended in this way by users.

Relative to the SAF, a service is a process that is started. There are no restrictions on the functions a service may provide. The SAF consists of a controlling process, the service access controller (SAC), and two administrative levels corresponding to two levels in the supporting directory structure. The top administrative level is concerned with port monitor administration, the lower level with service administration. The SAC is documented in the [saf\(1M\)](#) man page. The administrative levels and associated utilities are documented in the *System Administration Guide - Volume II*. The requirements for writing port monitors and the functions a port monitor must perform to run under the SAF and the SAC are documented here.

Port Monitors A port monitor is a process that is responsible for monitoring a set of homogeneous, incoming ports on a machine. A port monitor's major purpose is to detect incoming service requests and to dispatch them appropriately.

A port is an externally seen access point on a system. A port may be an address on a network (TSAP or PSAP), a hardwired terminal line, an incoming phone line, etc. The definition of what constitutes a port is strictly a function of the port monitor itself.

A port monitor performs certain basic functions. Some of these are required to conform to the SAF; others may be specified by the requirements and design of the port monitor itself. Port monitors have two main functions: managing ports and monitoring ports for indications of activity.

Port Management The first function of a port monitor is to manage a port. The actual details of how a port is managed are defined by the person who defines the port monitor. A port monitor is not restricted to handling a single port; it may handle multiple ports simultaneously.

Some examples of port management are setting the line speed on incoming phone connections, binding an appropriate network address, reinitializing the port when the service terminates, outputting a prompt, etc.

Activity Monitoring The second function of a port monitor is to monitor the port or ports for which it is responsible for indications of activity. Two types of activity may be detected.

The first is an indication to the port monitor to take some port monitor-specific action. Pressing the break key to indicate that the line speed should be cycled is an example of a port monitor activity. Not all port monitors need to recognize and respond to the same indications. The indication used to attract the attention of the port monitor is defined by the person who defines the port monitor.

The second is an incoming service request. When a service request is received, a port monitor must be able to determine which service is being requested from the port on which the request is received. The same service may be available on more than one port.

Other Port Monitor Functions

This section briefly describes other port monitor functions.

Restricting Access to the System

A port monitor must be able to restrict access to the system without disturbing services that are still running. In order to do this, a port monitor must maintain two internal states: enabled and disabled. The port monitor starts in the state indicated by the ISTATE environment variable provided by the sac. See sac(1M) for details. Enabling or disabling a port monitor affects all ports for which the port monitor is responsible. If a port monitor is responsible for a single port, only that port will be affected. If a port monitor is responsible for multiple ports, the entire collection of ports will be affected. Enabling or disabling a port monitor is a dynamic operation: it causes the port monitor to change its internal state. The effect does not persist across new invocations of the port monitor. Enabling or disabling an individual port, however, is a static operation: it causes a change to an administrative file. The effect of this change will persist across new invocations of the port monitor.

Creating utmpx Entries

Port monitors are responsible for creating utmpx entries with the type field set to USER_PROCESS for services they start. If this action has been specified, by using the -fu option in the pmadm command line that added the service, these utmpx entries may

Port Monitor Process IDs and Lock Files

in turn be modified by the service. When the service terminates, the `utmpx` entry must be set to `DEAD_PROCESS`.

Changing the Service Environment: Running

When a port monitor starts, it writes its process id into a file named `_pid` in the current directory and places an advisory lock on the file.

Terminating a Port Monitor

[doconfig\(3NSL\)](#) Before invoking the service designated in the port monitor administrative file, `_pmtab`, a port monitor must arrange for the per-service configuration script to be run, if one exists, by calling the library function [doconfig\(3NSL\)](#). Because the per-service configuration script may specify the execution of restricted commands, as well as for other security reasons, port monitors are invoked with root permissions. The details of how services are invoked are specified by the person who defines the port monitor.

A port monitor must terminate itself gracefully on receipt of the signal `SIGTERM`. The termination sequence is the following:

1. The port monitor enters the stopping state; no further service requests are accepted.
2. Any attempt to re-enable the port monitor will be ignored.
3. The port monitor yields control of all ports for which it is responsible. It must be possible for a new instantiation of the port monitor to start correctly while a previous instantiation is stopping.
4. The advisory lock on the process id file is released. Once this lock is released, the contents of the process id file are undefined and a new invocation of the port monitor may be started.

SAF Files This section briefly covers the files used by the SAF.

The Port Monitor Administrative File A port monitor's current directory contains an administrative file named `_pmtab`; `_pmtab` is maintained by the `pmadm` command in conjunction with a port monitor-specific administrative command.

The port monitor administrative command for a listen port monitor is `nlsadmin(1M)`; the port monitor administrative command for `ttymon` is `ttymax(1M)`. Any port monitor written by a user must be provided with an administrative command specific to that port monitor to perform similar functions.

Per-Service Configuration Files A port monitor's current directory also contains the per-service configuration scripts, if they exist. The names of the per-service configuration scripts correspond to the service tags in the `_pmtab` file.

Private Port Monitor Files A port monitor may create private files in the directory `/var/saf/tag`, where `tag` is the name of the port monitor. Examples of private files are log files or temporary files.

The SAC/Port Monitor Interface The SAC creates two environment variables for each port monitor it starts: `PMTAG` and `ISTATE`.

This variable is set to a unique port monitor tag by the SAC. The port monitor uses this tag to identify itself in response to `sac` messages. `ISTATE` is used to indicate to the port monitor what its initial internal state should be. `ISTATE` is set to “enabled” or “disabled” to indicate that the port monitor is to start in the enabled or disabled state respectively.

The SAC performs a periodic sanity poll of the port monitors. The SAC communicates with port monitors through FIFOs. A port monitor should open `_pmpipe`, in the current directory, to receive messages from the SAC and `./_sacpipe` to send return messages to the SAC.

Message Formats This section describes the messages that may be sent from the SAC to a port monitor (`sac` messages), and from a port monitor to the SAC (port monitor messages). These messages are sent through FIFOs and are in the form of C structures.

sac Messages The format of messages from the SAC is defined by the structure `sacmsg`:

```
struct sacmsg
{
    int sc_size; /* size of optional data portion */
    char sc_type; /* type of message */
}
```

```
};
```

The SAC may send four types of messages to port monitors. The type of message is indicated by setting the `sc_type` field of the `sacmsg` structure to one of the following:

```
SC_STATUS      status request
SC_ENABLE      enable message
SC_DISABLE     disable message
SC_READDB     message indicating that the port monitor's _pmtab file should be read
```

The `sc_size` field indicates the size of the optional data part of the message. See “Message Classes.” For Solaris, `sc_size` should always be set to 0. A port monitor must respond to every message sent by the sac.

Port Monitor Messages The format of messages from a port monitor to the SAC is defined by the structure `pmsg`:

```
struct pmsg {
    char pm_type;           /* type of message */
    uchar_t pm_state;      /* current state of port monitor */
    char pm_maxclass;      /* maximum message class this port
                           monitor understands */
    char pm_tag[PMTAGSIZE + 1]; /* port monitor's tag */
    int pm_size;           /* size of optional data portion */
};
```

Port monitors may send two types of messages to the SAC. The type of message is indicated by setting the `pm_type` field of the `pmsg` structure to one of the following:

```
PM_STATUS      state information
PM_UNKNOWN     negative acknowledgment
```

For both types of messages, the `pm_tag` field is set to the port monitor's tag and the `pm_state` field is set to the port monitor's current state. Valid states are:

```
PM_STARTING    starting
PM_ENABLED     enabled
PM_DISABLED    disabled
PM_STOPPING    stopping
```

The current state reflects any changes caused by the last message from the SAC. The status message is the normal return message. The negative acknowledgment should be sent only when the message received is not understood. `pm_size` indicates the size of the optional data part of the message. `pm_maxclass` is used to specify a message class. Both are discussed under

“Message Classes.” In Solaris, always set `pm_maxclass` to 1 and `sc_size` to 0. Port monitors may never initiate messages; they may only respond to messages that they receive.

Message Classes The concept of message class has been included to accommodate possible SAF extensions. The messages described above are all class 1 messages. None of these messages contains a variable data portion; all pertinent information is contained in the message header. If new messages are added to the protocol, they will be defined as new message classes (for example, class 2). The first message the SAC sends to a port monitor will always be a class 1 message. Since all port monitors, by definition, understand class 1 messages, the first message the SAC sends is guaranteed to be understood. In its response to the SAC, the port monitor sets the `pm_maxclass` field to the maximum message class number for that port monitor. The SAC will not send messages to a port monitor from a class with a larger number than the value of `pm_maxclass`. Requests that require messages of a higher class than the port monitor can understand will fail. For Solaris, always set `pm_maxclass` to 1.

For any given port monitor, messages of class `pm_maxclass` and messages of all classes with values lower than `pm_maxclass` are valid. Thus, if the `pm_maxclass` field is set to 3, the port monitor understands messages of classes 1, 2, and 3. Port monitors may not generate messages; they may only respond to messages. A port monitor's response must be of the same class as the originating message. Since only the SAC can generate messages, this protocol will function even if the port monitor is capable of dealing with messages of a higher class than the SAC can generate. `pm_size` (an element of the `pmsg` structure) and `sc_size` (an element of the `sacmsg` structure) indicate the size of the optional data part of the message. The format of this part of the message is undefined. Its definition is inherent in the type of message. For Solaris, always set both `sc_size` and `pm_size` to 0.

Administrative Interface This section discusses the port monitor administrative files available under the SAC.

The SAC Administrative File `_sactab` The service access controller's administrative file contains information about all the port monitors for which the SAC is responsible. This file exists on the delivered system. Initially, it is empty except for a single comment line that contains the version number of the SAC. Port monitors are added to the system by making entries in the SAC's administrative file. These entries should be made using the administrative command `sacadm(1M)` with a `-a` option. `sacadm(1M)` is also used to remove entries from the SAC's administrative file. Each entry in the SAC's administrative file contains the following information.

PMTAG A unique tag that identifies a particular port monitor. The system administrator is responsible for naming a port monitor. This tag is then used by the SAC to identify the port monitor for all administrative purposes. PMTAG may consist of up to 14 alphanumeric characters.

PMTYPE The type of the port monitor. In addition to its unique tag, each port monitor has a type designator. The type designator identifies a group of port monitors that are different invocations of the same entity. `ttymon` and `listen` are examples of valid port monitor types. The type designator is used to facilitate the administration of

groups of related port monitors. Without a type designator, the system administrator has no way of knowing which port monitor tags correspond to port monitors of the same type. PMTYPE may consist of up to 14 alphanumeric characters.

FLGS The flags that are currently defined are:

- d When started, do not enable the port monitor.
- x Do not start the port monitor.

If no flag is specified, the default action is taken. By default a port monitor is started and enabled.

RCNT The number of times a port monitor may fail before being placed in a failed state. Once a port monitor enters the failed state, the SAC will not try to restart it. If a count is not specified when the entry is created, this field is set to 0. A restart count of 0 indicates that the port monitor is not to be restarted when it fails.

COMMAND A string representing the command that will start the port monitor. The first component of the string, the command itself, must be a full path name.

The Port Monitor
Administrative File
_pmtab

Each port monitor will have two directories for its exclusive use. The current directory will contain files defined by the SAF (`_pmtab`, `_pid`) and the per-service configuration scripts, if they exist. The directory `/var/saf/pmtag`, where `pmtag` is the tag of the port monitor, is available for the port monitor's private files. Each port monitor has its own administrative file. The `pmadm(1M)` command should be used to add, remove, or modify service entries in this file. Each time a change is made using `pmadm(1M)`, the corresponding port monitor rereads its administrative file. Each entry in a port monitor's administrative file defines how the port monitor treats a specific port and what service is to be invoked on that port. Some fields must be present for all types of port monitors. Each entry must include a service tag to identify the service uniquely and an identity to be assigned to the service when it is started (for example, `root`).

The combination of a service tag and a port monitor tag uniquely define an instance of a service. The same service tag may be used to identify a service under a different port monitor. The record must also contain port monitor specific data (for example, for a `ttymon` port monitor, this will include the prompt string which is meaningful to `ttymon`). Each type of port monitor must provide a command that takes the necessary port monitor-specific data as arguments and outputs these data in a form suitable for storage in the file. The `ttyadm(1M)` command does this for `ttymon` and `nlsadmin(1M)` does it for `listen`. For a user-defined port monitor, a similar administrative command must also be supplied. Each service entry in the port monitor administrative file must have the following format and contain the information listed below:

```
svctag:flgs:id:reserved:reserved:reserved:pmspecific# comment
```

SVCTAG is a unique tag that identifies a service. This tag is unique only for the port monitor through which the service is available. Other port monitors may offer the same or other services with the same tag. A service requires both a port monitor tag and a service tag to identify it uniquely. SVCTAG may consist of up to 14 alphanumeric characters. The service entries are defined as:

FLGS	Flags with the following meanings may currently be included in this field: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> x Do not enable this port. By default the port is enabled. u Create a utmpx entry for this service. By default no utmpx entry is created for the service.
ID	The identity under which the service is to be started. The identity has the form of a login name as it appears in <code>/etc/passwd</code> .
PMSPECIFIC	Examples of port monitor information are addresses, the name of a process to execute, or the name of a STREAMS-based pipe to pass a connection through. This information will vary to meet the needs of each different type of port monitor.
COMMENT	A comment associated with the service entry. Port monitors may ignore the <i>u</i> flag if creating a utmpx entry for the service is not appropriate to the manner in which the service is to be invoked. Some services may not start properly unless utmpx entries have been created for them (for example, login). Each port monitor administrative file must contain one special comment of the form: <pre># VERSION=value</pre> <p>where <i>value</i> is an integer that represents the port monitor's version number. The version number defines the format of the port monitor administrative file. This comment line is created automatically when a port monitor is added to the system. It appears on a line by itself, before the service entries.</p>

Monitor-Specific
Administrative
Command

Previously, two pieces of information included in the `_pmtab` file were described: the port monitor's version number and the port monitor part of the service entries in the port monitor's `_pmtab` file. When a new port monitor is added, the version number must be known so that the `_pmtab` file can be correctly initialized. When a new service is added, the port monitor part of the `_pmtab` entry must be formatted correctly. Each port monitor must have an administrative command to perform these two tasks. The person who defines the port monitor must also define such an administrative command and its input options. When the command is invoked with these options, the information required for the port monitor part of the service entry must be correctly formatted for inclusion in the port monitor's `_pmtab` file and must be written to the standard output. To request the version number the command must be invoked with a `-V` option; when it is invoked in this way, the port monitor's current

version number must be written to the standard output. If the command fails for any reason during the execution of either of these tasks, no data should be written to standard output.

The Port Monitor/Service Interface

The interface between a port monitor and a service is determined solely by the service. Two mechanisms for invoking a service are presented here as examples.

New Service Invocations The first interface is for services that are started anew with each request. This interface requires the port monitor to first `fork(2)` a child process. The child will eventually become the designated service by performing an `exec(1)`. Before the `exec(1)` happens, the port monitor may take some port monitor-specific action; however, one action that must occur is the interpretation of the per-service configuration script, if one is present. This is done by calling the library routine `doconfig(3NSL)`.

Standing Service Invocations The second interface is for invocations of services that are actively running. To use this interface, a service must have one end of a stream pipe open and be prepared to receive connections through it.

Port Monitor Requirements

To implement a port monitor, several generic requirements must be met. This section summarizes these requirements. In addition to the port monitor itself, an administrative command must be supplied.

Initial Environment When a port monitor is started, it expects an initial execution environment in which:

- It has no file descriptors open
- It cannot be a process group leader
- It has an entry in `/etc/utmpx` of type `LOGIN_PROCESS`
- An environment variable, `ISTATE`, is set to “enabled” or “disabled” to indicate the port monitor's correct initial state
- An environment variable, `PMTAG`, is set to the port monitor's assigned tag
- The directory that contains the port monitor's administrative files is its current directory
- The port monitor is able to create private files in the directory `/var/saf/tag`, where `tag` is the port monitor's tag
- The port monitor is running with user id 0 (root)

Important Files Relative to its current directory, the following key files exist for a port monitor.

<code>_config</code>	The port monitor's configuration script. The port monitor configuration script is run by the SAC. The SAC is started by <code>init(1M)</code> as a result of an entry in <code>/etc/inittab</code> that calls <code>sac(1M)</code> .
<code>_pid</code>	The file into which the port monitor writes its process id.
<code>_pmtab</code>	The port monitor's administrative file. This file contains information about the ports and services for which the port monitor is responsible.
<code>_pmpipe</code>	The FIFO through which the port monitor will receive messages from the SAC.
<code>svctag</code>	The per-service configuration script for the service with the tag <code>svctag</code> .
<code>../_sacpipe</code>	The FIFO through which the port monitor will send messages to <code>sac(1M)</code> .

Port Monitor Responsibilities

A port monitor is responsible for performing the following tasks in addition to its port monitor function:

- Write its process id into the file `_pid` and place an advisory lock on the file
- Terminate gracefully on receipt of the signal SIGTERM
- Follow the protocol for message exchange with the SAC

A port monitor must perform the following tasks during service invocation:

- Create a `utmpx` entry if the requested service has the `u` flag set in `_pmtab`
- Port monitors may ignore this flag if creating a `utmpx` entry for the service does not make sense because of the manner in which the service is to be invoked. On the other hand, some services may not start properly unless `utmpx` entries have been created for them.
- Interpret the per-service configuration script for the requested service, if it exists, by calling the `doconfig(3NSL)` library routine

Configuration Files and Scripts

The library routine `doconfig(3NSL)`, defined in `libnsl.so`, interprets the configuration scripts contained in the files `/etc/saf/_sysconfig` (the per-system configuration file), and `/etc/saf/pmtag/_config` (per-port monitor configuration files); and in `/etc/saf/pmtag/svctag` (per-service configuration files). Its syntax is:

```
#include <sac.h>
int doconfig (int fd, char *script, long rflag);
```

`script` is the name of the configuration script; `fd` is a file descriptor that designates the stream to which stream manipulation operations are to be applied; `rflag` is a bitmask that indicates the mode in which script is to be interpreted. `rflag` may take two values, `NORUN` and `NOASSIGN`,

which may be or'd. If *rflag* is zero, all commands in the configuration script are eligible to be interpreted. If *rflag* has the NOASSIGN bit set, the assign command is considered illegal and will generate an error return. If *rflag* has the NORUN bit set, the run and runwait commands are considered illegal and will generate error returns. If a command in the script fails, the interpretation of the script ceases at that point and a positive integer is returned; this number indicates which line in the script failed. If a system error occurs, a value of -1 is returned. If a script fails, the process whose environment was being established should not be started. In the example, `doconfig(3NSL)` is used to interpret a per-service configuration script.

```
. . .
    if ((i = doconfig (fd, svctag, 0)) != 0){
        error ("doconfig failed on line %d of script %s",i,svctag);
    }
}
```

The Per-System Configuration File

The per-system configuration file, `/etc/saf/_sysconfig`, is delivered empty. It may be used to customize the environment for all services on the system by writing a command script in the interpreted language described in this chapter and on the `doconfig(3NSL)` manpage. When the SAC is started, it calls the `doconfig(3NSL)` function to interpret the per-system configuration script. The SAC is started when the system enters multiuser mode.

Per-Port Monitor Configuration Files

Per-port monitor configuration scripts (`/etc/saf/pmtag/_config`) are optional. They allow the user to customize the environment for any given port monitor and for the services that are available through the ports for which that port monitor is responsible. Per-port monitor configuration scripts are written in the same language used for per-system configuration scripts. The per-port monitor configuration script is interpreted when the port monitor is started. The port monitor is started by the SAC after the SAC has itself been started and after it has run its own configuration script, `/etc/saf/_sysconfig`. The per-port monitor configuration script may override defaults provided by the per-system configuration script.

Per-Service Configuration Files

Per-service configuration files allow the user to customize the environment for a specific service. For example, a service may require special privileges that are not available to the general user.

Using the language described in the [doconfig\(3NSL\)](#) manpage, you can write a script that will grant or limit such special privileges to a particular service offered through a particular port monitor. The per-service configuration may override defaults provided by higher-level configuration scripts. For example, the per-service configuration script may specify a set of STREAMS modules other than the default set.

The Configuration Language	<p>The language in which configuration scripts are written consists of a sequence of commands, each of which is interpreted separately. The following reserved keywords are defined: <code>assign</code>, <code>push</code>, <code>pop</code>, <code>runwait</code>, and <code>run</code>. The comment character is <code>#</code>. Blank lines are not significant. No line in a command script may exceed 1024 characters.</p>
	<p><code>assign</code> <i>variable</i>=<i>value</i></p> <p>Used to define environment variables; <i>variable</i> is the name of the environment variable and <i>value</i> is the value to be assigned to it. The value assigned must be a string constant; no form of parameter substitution is available. <i>value</i> may be quoted. The quoting rules are those used by the shell for defining environment variables. <code>assign</code> will fail if space cannot be allocated for the new variable or if any part of the specification is invalid.</p>
	<p><code>push</code> <i>module1</i>[,<i>module2</i>, <i>module3</i>, . . .]</p> <p>Used to push STREAMS modules onto the stream designated by <code>fd</code>; <i>module1</i> is the name of the first module to be pushed, <i>module2</i> is the name of the second module to be pushed, and so on. The command will fail if any of the named modules cannot be pushed. If a module cannot be pushed, the subsequent modules on the same command line will be ignored and modules that have already been pushed will be popped.</p>
	<p><code>pop</code> [<i>module</i>]</p> <p>Used to pop STREAMS modules off the designated stream. If <code>pop</code> is invoked with no arguments, the top module on the stream is popped. If an argument is given, modules will be popped one at a time until the named module is at the top of the stream. If the named module is not on the designated stream, the stream is left as it was and the command fails. If <i>module</i> is the special</p>

keyword ALL, then all modules on the stream will be popped. Only modules above the topmost driver are affected.

`runwait` command

The `runwait` command runs a command and waits for it to complete; `command` is the path name of the command to be run. The command is run with `/bin/sh -c` prepended to it; shell scripts may thus be executed from configuration scripts. The `runwait` command will fail if `command` cannot be found or cannot be executed, or if `command` exits with a nonzero status.

`run` command

The `run` command is identical to `runwait` except that it does not wait for `command` to complete; `command` is the path name of the command to be run. `run` will not fail unless it is unable to create a child process to execute the command. Although they are syntactically indistinguishable, some of the commands available to `run` and `runwait` are interpreter built-in commands. Interpreter built-ins are used when it is necessary to alter the state of a process within the context of that process. The `doconfig` interpreter built-in commands are similar to the shell special commands and, like these, they do not spawn another process for execution. See the `sh(1)` man page. The initial set of built-in commands is: `cd`, `ulimit`, `umask`.

Sample Port Monitor Code This example shows an example of a “null” port monitor that simply responds to messages from the SAC.

```
># include <stdlib.h>
# include <stdio.h>
# include <unistd.h>
# include <fcntl.h>
# include <signal.h>
# include <sac.h>

char Scratch[BUFSIZ]; /* scratch buffer */
char Tag[PMTAGSIZE + 1]; /* port monitor's tag */
FILE *Fp; /* file pointer for log file */
FILE *Tfp; /* file pointer for pid file */
char State; /* portmonitor's current state*/

main(argc, argv)
```

```

    int argc;
    char *argv[];
{
    char *istate;
    strcpy(Tag, getenv("PMTAG"));
/*
 * open up a log file in port monitor's private directory
 */
    sprintf(Scratch, "/var/saf/%s/log", Tag);
    Fp = fopen(Scratch, "a+");
    if (Fp == (FILE *)NULL)
        exit(1);
    log(Fp, "starting");
/*
 * retrieve initial state (either "enabled" or "disabled") and set
 * State accordingly
 */
    istate = getenv("ISTATE");
    sprintf(Scratch, "ISTATE is %s", istate);
    log(Fp, Scratch);
    if (!strcmp(istate, "enabled"))
        State = PM_ENABLED;
    else if (!strcmp(istate, "disabled"))
        State = PM_DISABLED;
    else {
        log(Fp, "invalid initial state");
        exit(1);
    }
    sprintf(Scratch, "PMTAG is %s", Tag);
    log(Fp, Scratch);
/*
 * set up pid file and lock it to indicate that we are active
 */
    Tfp = fopen("_pid", "w");
    if (Tfp == (FILE *)NULL) {
        log(Fp, "couldn't open pid file");
        exit(1);
    }
    if (lockf(fileno(Tfp), F_TEST, 0) < 0) {
        log(Fp, "pid file already locked");
        exit(1);
    }

    log(Fp, "locking file");
    if (lockf(fileno(Tfp), F_LOCK, 0) < 0) {
        log(Fp, "lock failed");
        exit(1);
    }

```

```
    }
    fprintf(Tfp, "%d", getpid());
    fflush(Tfp);

/*
 * handle poll messages from the sac ... this function never returns
 */
    handlepoll();
    pause();
    fclose(Tfp);
    fclose(Fp);
}

handlepoll()
{
    int pfd; /* file descriptor for incoming pipe */
    int sfd; /* file descriptor for outgoing pipe */
    struct sacmsg sacmsg; /* incoming message */
    struct pmmsg pmmsg; /* outgoing message */
/*
 * open pipe for incoming messages from the sac
 */
    pfd = open("_pmpipe", O_RDONLY|O_NONBLOCK);
    if (pfd < 0) {
        log(Fp, "_pmpipe open failed");
        exit(1);
    }
/*
 * open pipe for outgoing messages to the sac
 */
    sfd = open("../_sacpipe", O_WRONLY);
    if (sfd < 0) {
        log(Fp, "_sacpipe open failed");
        exit(1);
    }
/*
 * start to build a return message; we only support class 1 messages
 */
    strcpy(pmmsg.pm_tag, Tag);
    pmmsg.pm_size = 0;
    pmmsg.pm_maxclass = 1;
/*
 * keep responding to messages from the sac
 */
    for (;;) {
        if (read(pfd, &sacmsg, sizeof(sacmsg)) != sizeof(sacmsg)) {
            log(Fp, "_pmpipe read failed");
        }
    }
}
```

```

        exit(1);
    }
/*
 * determine the message type and respond appropriately
 */
    switch (sacmsg.sc_type) {
        case SC_STATUS:
            log(Fp, "Got SC_STATUS message");
            pmmsg.pm_type = PM_STATUS;
            pmmsg.pm_state = State;
            break;
        case SC_ENABLE:
            /*note internal state change below*/
            log(Fp, "Got SC_ENABLE message");
            pmmsg.pm_type = PM_STATUS;
            State = PM_ENABLED;
            pmmsg.pm_state = State;
            break;
        case SC_DISABLE:
            /*note internal state change below*/
            log(Fp, "Got SC_DISABLE message");
            pmmsg.pm_type = PM_STATUS;
            State = PM_DISABLED;
            pmmsg.pm_state = State;
            break;
        case SC_READDB:
            /*
             * if this were a fully functional port
             * monitor it would read _pmtab here
             * and take appropriate action
             */
            log(Fp, "Got SC_READDB message");
            pmmsg.pm_type = PM_STATUS;
            pmmsg.pm_state = State;
            break;
        default:
            sprintf(Scratch, "Got unknown message <%d>",
                sacmsg.sc_type);
            log(Fp, Scratch);
            pmmsg.pm_type = PM_UNKNOWN;
            pmmsg.pm_state = State;
            break;
    }
/*
 * send back a response to the poll
 * indicating current state
 */

```

```

        if (write(sfd, &pmmsg, sizeof(pmmsg)) != sizeof(pmmsg))
            log(Fp, "sanity response failed");
    }
}
/*
 * general logging function
 */
log(fp, msg)
    FILE *fp;
    char *msg;
{
    fprintf(fp, "%d; %s\n", getpid(), msg);
    fflush(fp);
}

```

The sac.h Header File The following example shows the sac.h header file.

```

/* length in bytes of a utmpx id */
# define IDLEN 4
/* wild character for utmpx ids */
# define SC_WILDC 0xff
/* max len in bytes for port monitor tag */
# define PMTAGSIZE 14
/*
 * values for rflag in doconfig()
 */
/* don't allow assign operations */
# define NOASSIGN 0x1
/* don't allow run or runwait operations */
# define NORUN 0x2
/*
 * message to SAC (header only). This header is forever fixed. The
 * size field (pm_size) defines the size of the data portion of the
 * message, which follows the header. The form of this optional data
 * portion is defined strictly by the message type (pm_type).
 */
struct pmmsg {
    char pm_type;           /* type of message */
    uchar_t pm_state;      /* current state of pm */
    char pm_maxclass;      /* max message class this port monitor
                           understands */
    char pm_tag[PMTAGSIZE + 1]; /* pm's tag */
    int pm_size;           /* size of opt data portion */
};
/*
 * pm_type values
 */
# define PM_STATUS 1 /* status response */

```



```

# define PM_UNKNOWN 2 /* unknown message was received */
/*
 * pm_state values
 */
/*
 * Class 1 responses
 */
# define PM_STARTING 1 /* monitor in starting state */
# define PM_ENABLED 2 /* monitor in enabled state */
# define PM_DISABLED 3 /* monitor in disabled state */
# define PM_STOPPING 4 /* monitor in stopping state */
/*
 * message to port monitor
 */
struct sacmsg {
    int sc_size; /* size of optional data portion */
    char sc_type; /* type of message */
};
/*
 * sc_type values
 * These represent commands that the SAC sends to a port monitor.
 * These commands are divided into "classes" for extensibility. Each
 * subsequent "class" is a superset of the previous "classes" plus
 * the new commands defined within that "class". The header for all
 * commands is identical; however, a command may be defined such that
 * an optional data portion may be sent in addition to the header.
 * The format of this optional data piece is self-defining based on
 * the command. The first message sent by the SAC
 * will always be a class 1 message. The port monitor response
 * indicates the maximum class that it is able to understand. Another
 * note is that port monitors should only respond to a message with
 * an equivalent class response (i.e. a class 1 command causes a
 * class 1 response).
 */
/*
 * Class 1 commands (currently, there are only class 1 commands)
 */
# define SC_STATUS 1 /* status request */
# define SC_ENABLE 2 /* enable request */
# define SC_DISABLE 3 /* disable request */
# define SC_READDB 4 /* read pmtab request */
/*
 * 'errno' values for Saferrno, note that Saferrno is used by both
 * pmadm and sacadm and these values are shared between them
 */
# define E_BADARGS 1 /* bad args/ill-formed cmd line */
# define E_NOPRIV 2 /* user not priv for operation */

```

```
# define E_SAFERR 3 /* generic SAF error */
# define E_SYSERR 4 /* system error */
# define E_NOEXIST 5 /* invalid specification */
# define E_DUP 6 /* entry already exists */
# define E_PMRUN 7 /* port monitor is running */
# define E_PMNOTRUN 8 /* port monitor is not running */
# define E_RECOVER 9
/* in recovery */
```

Directory Structure This section gives a description of the SAF files and directories.

<code>/etc/saf/_sysconfig</code>	The per-system configuration script.
<code>/etc/saf/_sactab</code>	The SAC's administrative file. Contains information about the port monitors for which the SAC is responsible.
<code>/etc/saf/pmtag</code>	The home directory for port monitor <i>pmtag</i> .
<code>/etc/saf/pmtag/_config</code>	The per-port monitor configuration script for port monitor <i>pmtag</i> .
<code>/etc/saf/pmtag/_pmtab</code>	Port monitor <i>pmtag</i> 's administrative file. Contains information about the services for which <i>pmtag</i> is responsible.
<code>/etc/saf/pmtag/svctag</code>	The file in which the per-service configuration script for service <i>svctag</i> (available through port monitor <i>pmtag</i>) is placed.
<code>/etc/saf/pmtag/_pid</code>	The file in which a port monitor writes its process id in the current directory and places an advisory lock on the file.
<code>/etc/saf/pmtag/_pmpipe</code>	The file in which the port monitor receives messages from the SAC and <code>../_sacpipe</code> and sends return messages to the SAC.
<code>/var/saf/_log</code>	The SAC's log file.
<code>/var/saf/pmtag</code>	The directory for files created by port monitor <i>pmtag</i> , for example its log file.

List Of Commands The following administrative commands relate to SAF.

`sacadm(1M)` port monitor administrative command
`pmadm(1M)` service administration command

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsr

See Also [exec\(1\)](#), [sh\(1\)](#), [init\(1M\)](#), [nlsadmin\(1M\)](#), [pmadm\(1M\)](#), [sac\(1M\)](#), [sacadm\(1M\)](#), [ttyadm\(1M\)](#), [fork\(2\)](#), [doconfig\(3NSL\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name sar, sa1, sa2, sadc – system activity report package

Synopsis /usr/lib/sa/sadc [*t n*] [*ofile*]
 /usr/lib/sa/sa1 [*t n*]
 /usr/lib/sa/sa2 [-aAbcdgkmpqruvw] [-e *time*] [-f *filename*]
 [-i *sec*] [-s *time*]

Description System activity data can be accessed at the special request of a user (see [sar\(1\)](#)) and automatically, on a routine basis, as described here. The operating system contains several counters that are incremented as various system actions occur. These include counters for CPU utilization, buffer usage, disk and tape I/O activity, TTY device activity, switching and system-call activity, file-access, queue activity, inter-process communications, and paging. For more general system statistics, use [iostat\(1M\)](#), [sar\(1\)](#), or [vmstat\(1M\)](#).

sadc and two shell procedures, sa1 and sa2, are used to sample, save, and process this data.

sadc, the data collector, samples system data *n* times, with an interval of *t* seconds between samples, and writes in binary format to *ofile* or to standard output. The sampling interval *t* should be greater than 5 seconds; otherwise, the activity of sadc itself may affect the sample. If *t* and *n* are omitted, a special record is written. This facility can be used at system boot time, when booting to a multi-user state, to mark the time at which the counters restart from zero. For example, when accounting is enabled, the svc:/system/sar:default service writes the restart mark to the daily data file using the command entry:

```
su sys -c "/usr/lib/sa/sadc /var/adm/sa/sa'date +%d'"
```

The shell script sa1, a variant of sadc, is used to collect and store data in the binary file /var/adm/sa/sadd, where dd is the current day. The arguments *t* and *n* cause records to be written *n* times at an interval of *t* seconds, or once if omitted. The following entries in /var/spool/cron/crontabs/sys will produce records every 20 minutes during working hours and hourly otherwise:

```
0 * * * 0-6 /usr/lib/sa/sa1
20,40 8-17 * * 1-5 /usr/lib/sa/sa1
```

See [crontab\(1\)](#) for details.

The shell script sa2, a variant of sar, writes a daily report in the file /var/adm/sa/sar'dd. See the OPTIONS section in [sar\(1\)](#) for an explanation of the various options. The following entry in /var/spool/cron/crontabs/sys will report important activities hourly during the working day:

```
5 18 * * 1-5 /usr/lib/sa/sa2 -s 8:00 -e 18:01 -i 1200 -A
```

Files	/tmp/sa.adrfl	address file
	/var/adm/sa/sadd	Daily data file
	/var/adm/sa/sar'dd	Daily report file

/var/spool/cron/crontabs/sys

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWaccu

See Also [crontab\(1\)](#), [sar\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [timex\(1\)](#), [iostat\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [vmstat\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

System Administration Guide: Advanced Administration

Notes The sar service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/sar
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name sasinfo – Serial Attached SCSI HBA port command line interface

Synopsis sasinfo hba [-v] [*HBA_Name*]...

sasinfo hba-port [-lvy] [-a *HBA_Name*] [*HBA_port_name*]...

sasinfo expander [-vt] [-p *HBA_port_Name*] [*Expander_SAS_Addr*]...

sasinfo target-port [-s | -v] [*Target_port_SAS_Addr*]...

sasinfo logical-unit | lu [-v] [*device_path*]...

sasinfo [-V]

sasinfo [-?]

Description The `sasinfo` utility is a command line interface that collects administrative information on Serial Attached SCSI-2 (SAS-2) host bus adapter (HBA) that supports the Storage Management HBA API (SM-HBA). The utility reports attributes of HBA ports and of expander devices and SCSI target devices that might be connected to those HBA ports.

`sasinfo` is implemented as a set of subcommands, described below.

Sub-commands The following subcommands are supported by `sasinfo`.

hba

Lists information for the HBA referenced by the specified *HBA_name*. If *HBA_name* is not specified, all HBAs on the host will be listed.

hba-port

Lists information for the HBA port referenced by the specified *HBA_port_Name*. If *HBA_port_Name* is not specified, all HBA ports on the host will be listed. Note that HBA ports can be dynamically configured/unconfigured so that the number of HBA ports on an HBA can change as connections to target devices are established. With no connections to a storage device, no HBA port is configured.

expander

Lists hierarchical view of the expander referenced by the specified *Expander_SAS_Addr*. If no argument is specified, all expanders that are visible across all HBA ports on the host will be listed.

target-port

Lists information for those target ports referenced by *Target_port_SAS_Addr* address. If no argument is specified, all target ports that are visible on the host will be listed.

logical-unit | lu

Lists the logical unit referenced by the specified *device_path*. If *device_path* is not specified, all SAS logical units will be listed, including the SAS Management Protocol (SMP) target port.

Options The following options are supported.

- ?, --help
Displays usage information
- a, --hba *HBA_Name*
Retrieve HBA port information from the *HBA_Name* of an HBA on the host. The -a option can only be used with the hba-port subcommand.
- l, --phy-linkstat
Lists the link error statistics information for the phys on the HBA port referenced by the specified *HBA_port_Name* or all HBA ports if no HBA port is specified. This option is used only with the hba-port subcommand.
- p *HBA_port_SAS_Addr*, --port *HBA_port_SAS_Addr*
Retrieve remote port information from the *HBA_port_SAS_Addr* of the local HBA port on the host. The -p option can be used only with the expander subcommand.
- s, --scsi
Lists SCSI attributes for target ports that are requested for display. This option is only used for the target-port subcommand.
- v, --verbose
Display details on hardware information, such as SAS address, topology device, and so forth, based on which subcommand is invoked.
- V, --version
Displays the version information.
- y, --phy
Lists the phy information on the HBA port specified by *HBA_port_Name* or all HBA ports if no HBA port is specified. This option is used only with the hba-port subcommand.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Listing All HBAs

The following command lists all HBAs on the host.

```
# sasinfo hba
HBA Name: SUNW-pmcs-0
HBA Name: SUNW-pmcs-1
```

EXAMPLE 2 Listing All HBAs with Details

The following command lists all HBAs on the host, along with related details. Note that each HBA has two HBA ports configured, with each HBA port connected to a storage device.

```
# sasinfo hba -v
HBA Name: SUNW-pmcs-0
  Manufacturer: sun
  Model: SAS Gen-2
```

EXAMPLE 2 Listing All HBAs with Details *(Continued)*

```

    Firmware Version: 1.1
    FCode/BIOS Version: 1.1
    Serial Number: 111-11111
    Driver Name: smvsl
    Driver Version: 1.1
    Number of HBA Ports: 2
HBA Name: SUNW-pmcs-1
    Manufacturer: sun
    Model: SAS Gen-2
    Firmware Version: 1.1
    FCode/BIOS Version: 1.1
    Serial Number: 111-11111
    Driver Name: smvsl
    Driver Version: 1.1
    Number of HBA Ports: 2

```

EXAMPLE 3 Listing All HBA Ports

The following command lists all HBA ports on the host.

```

# sasinfo hba-port
HBA Name: SUNW-pmcs-0
    HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c1
    HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c2
HBA Name: SUNW-pmcs-1
    HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c3
    HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c4

```

EXAMPLE 4 Listing all HBA Ports with Details

The following command lists all HBA ports, with accompanying details.

```

# sasinfo hba-port -v
HBA Name: SUNW-pmcs-0
    HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c1
        Type: sas-device
        State: online
        Local SAS Address: 5000c5000d756aa
        Attached Port SAS Address: 50800201a5a502bf
        Number of Phys: 4
    HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c25000c5000d756cc
        Type: sas-device
        State: online
        Local SAS Address: 5000c5000d756aa
        Attached Port SAS Address: 50800201a5a503bf
        Number of Phys: 4

```


EXAMPLE 4 Listing all HBA Ports with Details *(Continued)*

```

HBA Name: SUNW-pmcs-1
  HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c3
    Type: sas-device
    State: online
    Local SAS Address: 5000c50000d756cc
    Attached Port SAS Address: 50800201a5a504bf
    Number of Phys: 4
  HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c4
    Type: sas-device
    State: online
    Local SAS Address: 5000c50000d756cc
    Attached Port SAS Address: 50800201a5a505bf
    Number of Phys: 4

```

EXAMPLE 5 Listing phy Information for All HBA Ports

The following command lists phy information for all HBA ports.

```

# sasinfo hba-port -y
HBA Name: SUNW-pmcs-0
  HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c1
    Phy Information:
      Identifier: 0
        State: enabled
        HardwareLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
        ProgrammedLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
        NegotiatedLinkRate: 3Gbit
      Identifier: 1
        State: enabled
        HardwareLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
        ProgrammedLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
        NegotiatedLinkRate: 3Gbit
      Identifier: 2
        State: enabled
        HardwareLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
        ProgrammedLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
        NegotiatedLinkRate: 3Gbit
      Identifier: 3
        State: enabled
        HardwareLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
        ProgrammedLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
        NegotiatedLinkRate: 3Gbit
  HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c2
    Phy Information:
      Identifier: 4
        State: enabled

```

EXAMPLE 5 Listing phy Information for All HBA Ports *(Continued)*

```
HardwareLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
ProgrammedLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
NegotiatedLinkRate: 3Gbit
Identifier: 5
State: enabled
HardwareLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
ProgrammedLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
NegotiatedLinkRate: 3Gbit
Identifier: 6
State: enabled
HardwareLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
ProgrammedLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
NegotiatedLinkRate: 3Gbit
Identifier: 7
State: enabled
HardwareLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
ProgrammedLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
NegotiatedLinkRate: 3Gbit
HBA Name: SUNW-pmcs-1
HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c3
Phy Information:
Identifier: 0
State: enabled
HardwareLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
ProgrammedLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
NegotiatedLinkRate: 3Gbit
Identifier: 1
State: enabled
HardwareLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
ProgrammedLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
NegotiatedLinkRate: 3Gbit
Identifier: 2
State: enabled
HardwareLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
ProgrammedLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
NegotiatedLinkRate: 3Gbit
Identifier: 3
State: enabled
HardwareLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
ProgrammedLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
NegotiatedLinkRate: 3Gbit
HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c4
Phy Information:
Identifier: 4
State: enabled
HardwareLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
```

EXAMPLE 5 Listing phy Information for All HBA Ports (Continued)

```

    ProgrammedLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
    NegotiatedLinkRate: 3Gbit
Identifier: 5
    State: enabled
    HardwareLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
    ProgrammedLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
    NegotiatedLinkRate: 3Gbit
Identifier: 6
    State: enabled
    HardwareLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
    ProgrammedLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
    NegotiatedLinkRate: 3Gbit
Identifier: 7
    State: enabled
    HardwareLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
    ProgrammedLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
    NegotiatedLinkRate: 3Gbit

```

EXAMPLE 6 Listing phy Link Error Statistics for a Specific HBA Port

The following command lists phy link error statistics for a particular port.

```

# sasinfo hba-port -ly /dev/cfg/c1
HBA Name: SUNW-pmcs-0
HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c1
Phy Information:
Identifier: 0
    State: enabled
    HardwareLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
    ProgrammedLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
    NegotiatedLinkRate: 3Gbit
    Link Error Statistics:
        Invalid Dword: 0
        Running Disparity Error: 0
        Loss of Dword Sync: 0
        Reset Problem: 0
Identifier: 1
    State: enabled
    HardwareLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
    ProgrammedLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
    NegotiatedLinkRate: 3Gbit
    Link Error Statistics:
        Invalid Dword: 0
        Running Disparity Error: 0
        Loss of Dword Sync: 0
        Reset Problem: 0

```

EXAMPLE 6 Listing phy Link Error Statistics for a Specific HBA Port *(Continued)*

```

Identifier: 2
  State: enabled
  HardwareLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
  ProgrammedLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
  NegotiatedLinkRate: 3Gbit
  Link Error Statistics:
    Invalid Dword: 0
    Running Disparity Error: 0
    Loss of Dword Sync: 0
    Reset Problem: 0
Identifier: 3
  State: enabled
  HardwareLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
  ProgrammedLinkRate(Min/Max): 1.5Gbit/3Gbit
  NegotiatedLinkRate: 3Gbit
  Link Error Statistics:
    Invalid Dword: 0
    Running Disparity Error: 0
    Loss of Dword Sync: 0
    Reset Problem: 0

```

EXAMPLE 7 Listing Expanders Connected to an HBA Port

The following command lists all expanders that are visible through the specified HBA port.

```

# sasinfo expander -p /dev/cfg/c1
HBA Name: SUNW-pmcs-0
HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c1
  Expander SAS Address(Tier 1): 50800201a5a502bf
    Expander SAS Address(Tier 2): 50800201a5a50233
    Expander SAS Address(Tier 2); 5000c5000d2da812
  Expander SAS Address(Tier 1): 50800201a5a503bf
    Expander SAS Address(Tier 2): 50800201a5a502d2
    Expander SAS Address(Tier 2); 5000c5000d2da823

```

EXAMPLE 8 Listing Detailed Information on Expanders

The following command lists detailed information on all expanders that are visible through the specified HBA port.

```

# sasinfo expander -v -p /dev/cfg/c1
HBA Name: SUNW-pmcs-0
HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c1
  Expander SAS Address(Tier 1): 50800201a5a502bf
    OS Device Name: /dev/smp/expd0
    State: online

```

EXAMPLE 8 Listing Detailed Information on Expanders (Continued)

```

Expander SAS Address(Tier 2): 50800201a5a50233
  OS Device Name: /dev/smp/expd2
  State: online
Expander SAS Address(Tier 2); 5000c5000d2da812
  OS Device Name: /dev/smp/expd3
  State: online
Expander SAS Address(Tier 1): 50800201a5a503bf
  OS Device Name: /dev/smp/expd1
  State: online
  Expander SAS Address(Tier 2): 50800201a5a502d2
    OS Device Name: /dev/smp/expd3
    State: online
  Expander SAS Address(Tier 2); 5000c5000d2da823
    OS Device Name: /dev/smp/expd4
    State: online

```

EXAMPLE 9 Listing Target Ports Attached to Expanders

The following command lists all target ports that are attached to expanders connected to a specified HBA port.

```

# sasinfo expander -t -p /dev/cfg/c1
HBA Name: SUNW-pmcs-0
HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c1
  Expander SAS Address(Tier 1): 50800201a5a502bf
    Target Port SAS Address: 50800201a5a504f1
      Expander SAS Address(Tier 2): 50800201a5a50233
        Target Port SAS Address: 50800201a5a502be
        Target Port SAS Address: 5000c5000d2da8b2
      Expander SAS Address(Tier 2); 5000c5000d2da812
        Target Port SAS Address: 50800201a5a502be
        Target Port SAS Address: 50800201a5a508b2
    Expander SAS Address(Tier 1): 50800201a5a503bf
      Target Port SAS Address: 50800201a5a50421
        Expander SAS Address(Tier 2): 50800201a5a502d2
          Target Port SAS Address: 50800201a5a503be
          Target Port SAS Address: 5000c5000d2da7be
        Expander SAS Address(Tier 2); 5000c5000d2da823
          Target Port SAS Address: 50800201a5a503be
          Target Port SAS Address: 5000c5000d2da7be

```

EXAMPLE 10 Listing Target Port Information

The following command lists all target ports discovered on the host.

EXAMPLE 10 Listing Target Port Information (Continued)

```
# sasinfo target-port
Target Port SAS Address: 5000c5000bae4009
Target Port SAS Address: 5000c5000baef4b1
Target Port SAS Address: 5000c5000bae3fe1
Target Port SAS Address: 5000c5000bae49d9
Target Port SAS Address: 5000c5000bae36c5
```

EXAMPLE 11 Listing Target Port Information with Topology Details

The following command lists all target ports with the HBA port and expander that they are connected to.

```
# sasinfo target-port -v
Target Port SAS Address: 5000c5000bae4009
  Type: SAS Device
  HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c7
    Expander Device SAS Address: 500e004aaaaaaa3f
  HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c5
    Expander Device SAS Address: 500e004aaaaaaa3f
Target Port SAS Address: 5000c5000baef4b1
  Type: SAS Device
  HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c7
    Expander Device SAS Address: 500e004aaaaaaa3f
  HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c5
    Expander Device SAS Address: 500e004aaaaaaa3f
Target Port SAS Address: 5000c5000bae3fe1
  Type: SAS Device
  HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c7
    Expander Device SAS Address: 500e004aaaaaaa3f
  HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c5
    Expander Device SAS Address: 500e004aaaaaaa3f
Target Port SAS Address: 5000c5000bae49d9
  Type: SAS Device
  HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c7
    Expander Device SAS Address: 500e004aaaaaaa3f
  HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c5
    Expander Device SAS Address: 500e004aaaaaaa3f
Target Port SAS Address: 5000c5000bae36c5
  Type: SAS Device
  HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c7
    Expander Device SAS Address: 500e004aaaaaaa3f
  HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c5
    Expander Device SAS Address: 500e004aaaaaaa3f
```

EXAMPLE 12 Listing Target Ports with SCSI Information

The following command lists all target port details, including SCSI information for each target port.

```
# sasinfo target-port -s 5000c5000bae4009
Target Port SAS Address: 5000c5000bae4009
  Type: SAS Device
    HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c7
      Expander Device SAS Address: 500e004aaaaaaa3f
        LUN : 0
          OS Device Name : /dev/rdisk/c6t5000C5000BAE400Bd0s2
          Vendor: Sun
          Product: J4400
          Device Type: Disk
    HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c5
      Expander Device SAS Address: 500e004aaaaaaa3f
        LUN : 0
          OS Device Name : /dev/rdisk/c6t5000C5000BAE400Bd0s2
          Vendor: Sun
          Product: J4400
          Device Type: Disk
```

EXAMPLE 13 Listing the Logical Units

The following command lists the logical units on a host.

```
# sasinfo logical-unit
OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F2300B4904Ed0s2
OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B4AFd0s2
```

EXAMPLE 14 Listing Additional Information on Logical Units

The following command displays additional logical unit information using the -v option for device /dev/rmt/On.

```
# sasinfo lu -v
OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F2300B4904Ed0s2
  HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c1
    Target Port SAS Address: 50020f2300b4904e
      LUN: 0
        Vendor: Sun
        Product: J4400
        Device Type: Disk
OS Device Name: /dev/rdisk/c4t50020F230000B4AFd0s2
  HBA Port Name: /dev/cfg/c1
    Target Port SAS Address: 50020f230063100b
```

EXAMPLE 14 Listing Additional Information on Logical Units *(Continued)*

LUN: 0
Vendor: Sun
Product: J4400
Device Type: Disk

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWsmhba
Interface Stability	Committed

See Also [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name savecore – save a crash dump of the operating system

Synopsis /usr/bin/savecore [-Lvd] [-f *dumpfile*] [*directory*]

Description The savecore utility saves a crash dump of the kernel (assuming that one was made) and writes a reboot message in the shutdown log. It is invoked by the dumpadm service each time the system boots.

savecore can be configured by [dumpadm\(1M\)](#) to save crash dump data in either a compressed or uncompressed format. For the compressed format, savecore saves the crash dump data in the file *directory/vmcore.N.z*, where *N* in the pathname is replaced by a number which increments by one each time savecore is run in *directory*. The compressed file can be uncompressed in a separate step using the -f *dumpfile* option. For the uncompressed format, savecore saves the crash dump data in the file *directory/vmcore.N* and the kernel's namelist in *directory/unix.N*.

Before writing out a crash dump, savecore reads a number from the file *directory/minfree*. This is the minimum number of kilobytes that must remain free on the file system containing *directory*. If after saving the crash dump the file system containing *directory* would have less free space the number of kilobytes specified in *minfree*, the crash dump is not saved. If the *minfree* file does not exist, savecore assumes a *minfree* value of 1 megabyte.

The savecore utility also logs a reboot message using facility LOG_AUTH (see [syslog\(3C\)](#)). If the system crashed as a result of a panic, savecore logs the panic string too.

Options The following options are supported:

- d Disregard dump header valid flag. Force savecore to attempt to save a crash dump even if the header information stored on the dump device indicates the dump has already been saved.
- f *dumpfile* Save a crash dump from the specified file instead of from the system's current dump device. When given *directory/vmcore.N.z*, uncompress the file to *vmcore.N* and *unix.N*, where *N* is the same number as in the compressed name.

This option may also be useful if the information stored on the dump device has been copied to an on-disk file by means of the [dd\(1M\)](#) command.
- L Save a crash dump of the live running Solaris system, without actually rebooting or altering the system in any way. This option forces savecore to save a live snapshot of the system to the dump device, and then immediately to retrieve the data and to write it out to a new set of crash dump files in the specified directory. Live system crash dumps can only be performed if you have configured your system to have a dedicated dump device using [dumpadm\(1M\)](#).

savecore -L does not suspend the system, so the contents of memory continue to change while the dump is saved. This means that live crash dumps are not fully self-consistent.

-v Verbose. Enables verbose error messages from savecore.

Operands The following operands are supported:

directory Save the crash dump files to the specified directory. If *directory* is not specified, savecore saves the crash dump files to the default savecore *directory*, configured by [dumpadm\(1M\)](#).

- Files**
- *directory/vmcore.N*
 - *directory/unix.N*
 - *directory/bounds*
 - *directory/minfree*
 - */var/crash/'uname -n'* (default crash dump directory)

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [adb\(1\)](#), [mdb\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [dd\(1M\)](#), [dumpadm\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [syslog\(3C\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Notes The system crash dump service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/dumpadm:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

If the dump device is also being used as a swap device, you must run savecore very soon after booting, before the swap space containing the crash dump is overwritten by programs currently running.

Name sbdadm – SCSI Block Disk command line interface

Synopsis sbdadm create-lu [-s, --size *size*] *filename*

sbdadm delete-lu *lu_name*

sbdadm import-lu *lu_name*

sbdadm list-lu *lu_name*

sbdadm modify-lu [-s, --size *size*] *lu_name* | *filename*

Description The sbdadm command creates and manages SCSI-block-device-based logical units that are registered with the SCSI Target Mode Framework (STMF).

Sub-commands The sbdadm command supports the subcommands listed below. Note that if you enter a question mark as an argument to the command (sbdadm ?), sbdadm responds with a help display.

create-lu [-s, --size *size*] *filename*

Create a logical unit that can be registered with the STMF. For the -s option, *size* is an integer followed by one of the following letters, to indicate a unit of size:

k kilobyte

m megabyte

g gigabyte

t terabyte

p petabyte

e exabyte

If you do not specify *size*, the size defaults to the size of *filename*.

The size specified can exceed the size of the file or device.

delete-lu *lu_name*

Deletes an existing logical unit that was created using sbdadm create-lu. This effectively unloads the logical unit from the STMF framework. Any existing data on the logical unit remains intact.

import-lu *lu_name*

Imports and loads a logical unit into the STMF that was previously created using sbdadm create-lu and was since deleted from the STMF using sbdadm delete-lu. On success, the logical unit is again made available to the STMF. *filename* is the filename used in the sbdadm create-lu command for this logical unit.

list-lu

List all logical units that were created using the sbdadm create-lu command.

`modify-lu [-s, --size size] lu_name | filename`

Modifies attributes of an logical unit created using the `sbdadm create-lu` command. For the `-s` option, *size* is an integer value followed by a unit specifier. The unit specifiers are as described above under `create-lu`. When this option is specified, the existing size of the logical unit is changed to the new size.

The size specified can exceed the size of the file or device represented by *lu_name*.

Operands `sbdadm` use the following operands:

filename

Name of an existing file or a fully qualified path to a raw block device.

lu_name

The 32-byte hexadecimal representation of the logical unit.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Creating a Logical Unit

The following series of commands creates a 10-gigabyte logical unit.

```
# touch /export/lun/0
# sbdadm create-lu -s 10g /export/lun/0
# sbdadm create-lu /dev/rdisk/c1t1d0s0
```

EXAMPLE 2 Listing Logical Units

The following command lists all logical units.

```
# sbdadm list-lu
Found 2 LU(s)
```

GUID	DATA SIZE	SOURCE
6000ae4000144f21d92c47b0dd650002	10737352704	/export/lun/0
6000ae4000144f21d92c47b0de300032	134283264	/dev/rdisk/c1t1d0s0

Exit Status 0

Successful completion.

non-zero

An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWstmfu
Interface Stability	Obsolete Committed

See Also [stmfadm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name scadm – administer System Controller (SC)

Synopsis /usr/platform/*platform-name*/sbin/scadm *subcommand* [*option*]
[*argument*] . . .

Description The scadm utility administers the System Controller (SC). This utility allows the host server to interact with the SC.

The scadm utility *must* be run as root.

The interface, output, and location in the directory hierarchy for scadm are uncommitted and might change.

platform-name is the name of the platform implementation. Use the uname -i command to identify the platform implementation. See [uname\(1\)](#).

The scadm utility has a number of subcommands. Some subcommands have specific options and arguments associated with them. See SUBCOMMANDS, OPTIONS, OPERANDS, and USAGE.

SUBCOMMANDS Subcommands immediately follow the scadm command on the command line, and are separated from the command by a SPACE.

The following subcommands are supported

consolehistory

Display the SC's console log. The SC maintains a running log which captures all console output. This log is maintained as a first-in, first-out buffer: New console output may displace old console output if the buffer is full. By default, only the last eight kilobytes of the console log file are displayed.

The optional -a argument specifies that the entire console log file be displayed.

It is possible for the SC to fill this log more quickly than the consolehistory subcommand can read it. This means that it is possible for some log data to be lost before it can be displayed. If this happens, the consolehistory subcommand displays “scadm: lost <number> bytes of console log data” in the log output, to indicate that some data was lost.

The format for the consolehistory subcommand is:

```
scadm consolehistory [-a]
```

The consolehistory subcommand is not available on all platforms. If this command is used on a platform that does not support it, scadm prints this message:

```
scadm: command/option not supported
```

and exit with non-zero status.

date

Display the SC's time and date

The format for the date subcommand is:

scadm date

download

Program the SC's firmware.

There are two parts to the firmware, the boot monitor and the main image.

By default, The `scadm` command's `download` programs the main firmware image. The `boot` argument selects programming of the boot monitor.

The format for the `download` subcommand is:

```
scadm download [boot] file
```

fruhistory

Display the contents of the “field replacable unit” log maintained by the SC. By default, only the last eight kilobytes of the fru history log file are displayed. The data in contained this log contains snapshots of the SC's “showfru” command, taken whenever the system is reset, or a hot-plug event is detected by the SC.

The optional `-a` argument specifies that the entire fru log file be displayed.

It is possible for the SC to fill this log more quickly than the `fruhistory` subcommand can read it. This means that it is possible for some log data to be lost before it can be displayed. If this happens, the `fruhistory` subcommand displays “scadm: lost <number> bytes of fru log data” in the log output, to indicate that some data was lost.

The format for the `fruhistory` subcommand is:

```
scadm fruhistory [-a]
```

The `fruhistory` subcommand is not available on all platforms. If this command is used on a platform which does not support it, `scadm` prints this message:

```
scadm: command/option not supported
```

and exit with non-zero status.

help

Display a list of commands.

The format for the `help` subcommand is:

```
scadm help
```

loghistory

Display the most recent entries in the SC event log. The optional `-a` argument causes the entire event log history to be displayed. The `-a` argument is available only on platforms which support large log files. On platforms which do not support large log files, this flag has no additional effect.

It is possible for the SC to fill this log more quickly than the `loghistory` subcommand can read it. This means that it is possible for some log data to be lost before it can be displayed. If this happens, the `loghistory` subcommand displays “scadm: lost <number> events” in the log output, to indicate that some data was lost.

The format for the `loghistory` subcommand is:

```
scadm loghistory [-a]
```

resetrsc

Reset the SC. There are two types of resets allowed, a hard reset and a soft reset. The hard reset is done by default. The soft reset can be selected by using the `-s` option.

The format for the `resetrsc` subcommand is:

```
scadm resetrsc [-s]
```

send_event

Manually send a text based event. The SC can forward the event to the SC event log. You can configure the `-c` option to send a critical warning to email, alert to logged in SC users, and `syslog`. Critical events are logged to `syslog(3C)`. There is an 80 character limit to the length of the associated text message.

The format for the `send_event` subcommand is:

```
scadm send_event [-c] "message"
```

set

Set SC configuration variables to a value.

Examples of SC configuration variables include: SC IP address `netsc_ipaddr` and SC Customer Information `sc_customerinfo`. See the output from the `scadm help` command for a complete list of SC configuration variables.

The format for the `set` subcommand is:

```
scadm set variable value
```

show

Display the current SC configuration variable settings. If no variable is specified, `scadm` shows all variable settings.

The format for the `show` subcommand is:

```
scadm show [variable]
```

shownetwork

Display the current network configuration parameters for SC.

The format for the `shownetwork` subcommand is:

```
scadm shownetwork
```


useradd

Add user accounts to the SC. The SC supports up to sixteen separate users.

The format for the `useradd` subcommand is:

```
scadm useradd username
```

userdel

Delete a user account from SC.

The format for the `userdel` subcommand is:

```
scadm userdel username
```

userpassword

Set a password for the user account specified. This password overrides any existing password currently set. There is no verification of the old password before setting the new password.

The format for the `userpassword` subcommand is:

```
scadm userpassword username
```

userperm

Set the permission level for the user.

The format for the `userperm` subcommand is:

```
scadm userperm username [aucr]
```

usershow

Display details on the specified user account. If a username is not specified, all user accounts are displayed.

The format for the `usershow` subcommand is:

```
scadm usershow username
```

version

Display the version numbers of the SC and its components.

The format for the `version` subcommand is:

```
scadm version [-v]
```

Options The `reset rsc`, `send_event`, and `version` subcommands have associated options. Options follow subcommands on the command line and are separated from the subcommand by a SPACE.

The `reset rsc` subcommand supports the following options:

-s

Perform a soft reset instead of a hard reset. A hard reset physically resets the SC hardware. The SC software jumps to the boot firmware, simulating a reset, for a soft reset.

The `send_event` subcommand supports the following options:

`-c`

Send a critical event. Without the `-c`, `send_event` sends a warning.

The `version` subcommand supports the following options:

`-v`

Display a verbose output of version numbers and associated information.

The `consolehistory`, `fruhistory`, and `loghistory` subcommands support the following option:

`-a`

Display the entire log. These subcommands normally display only the most recent log data. This flag causes them to display the entire log.

Operands The `download`, `send_event`, `set`, `show`, `useradd`, `userdel`, `userperm`, `usershow`, `userpassword`, and `userperm` subcommands have associated arguments (operands).

If the subcommand has an option, the arguments follow the option on the command line and is separated from the option by a SPACE. If the subcommand does not have an option, the arguments follow the subcommand on the command line and are separated from the subcommand by a SPACE. If there are more than one arguments, they are separated from each other by a SPACE.

The `download` subcommand supports the following arguments:

`boot`

Program the boot monitor portion of the flash. The main portion of the flash is programmed without any arguments

file

Specify *file* as the path to where the boot or main firmware image resides for download.

Examples of *file* are:

`/usr/platform/platform_type/lib/image/alommainfw`

or

`/usr/platform/platform_type/lib/image/alombootfw`

The `send_event` subcommand supports the following arguments:

“message”

Describe event using the text contained in *message*. Enclose *message* in quotation marks.

The `set` subcommand supports the following arguments:

variable

Set SC configuration *variable*.

value

Set SC configuration variable to *value*.

The show subcommand supports the following arguments:

variable

Display the value of that particular variable.

The useradd subcommand supports the following arguments:

username

Add new SC account *username*.

The userdel subcommand supports the following arguments:

username

Remove SC account *username*.

The userperm subcommand supports the following arguments:

-aucr

Set permissions for SC user accounts. If no permissions are specified, all four permissions are disabled and read only access is assigned.

The following are the definitions for permissions:

a

Allow user to administer or change the SC configuration variables

u

Allow user to use the user commands to modify SC accounts

c

Allow user to connect to console.

r

Allow user to reset SC and to power on and off the host.

username

Change permissions on SC account *username*.

The -user show subcommand supports the following arguments:

username

Display information on SC account *username*. If *username* is not specified, all accounts are displayed.

The userpassword subcommand supports the following arguments:

username

Set SC password for *username*.

The userperm subcommand supports the following arguments:

username

Change SC permissions for *username*.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Displaying the SC's Date and Time

The following command displays the SC's date and time.

```
scadm date
```

EXAMPLE 2 Setting the SC's Configuration Variables

The following command sets the SC's configuration variable `netsc_ipaddr` to `192.168.1.2`:

```
scadm set netsc_ipaddr 192.168.1.2
```

EXAMPLE 3 Displaying the Current SC's Configuration Settings:

The following command displays the current SC configuration settings:

```
scadm show
```

EXAMPLE 4 Displaying the Current Settings for a Variable

The following command displays the current settings for the `sys_hostname` variable:

```
scadm show sys_hostname
```

EXAMPLE 5 Sending a Text-Based Critical Event

The following command sends a critical event to the SC logs, alerts the current SC users, and sends an event to `syslog(3C)`:

```
scadm send_event -c "The UPS signaled a loss in power"
```

EXAMPLE 6 Sending an Informational Text-Based Event

The following command sends a non-critical informational text based event to the SC event log:

```
scadm send_event "The disk is close to full capacity"
```

EXAMPLE 7 Adding a User To the SC

The following command adds user `rscroot` to the SC:

```
scadm useradd rscroot
```

EXAMPLE 8 Deleting a User From the SC

The following command deletes user `olduser` from the SC:

```
scadm userdel olduser
```

EXAMPLE 9 Displaying User Details

The following command displays details of all user accounts:

```
scadm usershow
```

EXAMPLE 10 Displaying Details for a Specific User

The following command displays details of user account `rscroot`:

```
scadm usershow rscroot
```

EXAMPLE 11 Setting the User Permission Level

The following command sets the full permission level for user `rscroot` to `aucr`:

```
scadm userperm rscroot aucr
```

EXAMPLE 12 Setting the User Permission Level

The following command sets only console access for user `newuser` to `c`:

```
scadm userperm newuser c
```

EXAMPLE 13 Setting the User Permission Level

The following command sets the permission level for user `newuser` to read only access:

```
scadm userperm newuser
```

EXAMPLE 14 Displaying the Current Network Parameters

The following command displays the current network configuration parameters for the SC:

```
scadm shownetwork
```

EXAMPLE 15 Viewing the Consolehistory

The following command displays the content console in the SC event log:

```
scadm consolehistory [-a]
```

EXAMPLE 16 Viewing the Fruhistory

The following command displays the content of the “field replacable unit” in the SC event log:

```
scadm fruhistory [-a]
```

EXAMPLE 17 Viewing the Loghistory

The following command displays the most recent entries in the SC event log:

```
scadm loghistory [-a]
```

EXAMPLE 18 Displaying Verbose Information

The following command displays verbose version information on the SC and its components:

```
scadm version -v
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0

Successful completion.

non-zero

An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWkvm
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [uname\(1\)](#), [syslog\(3C\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name sckmd – Sun cryptographic key management daemon

Synopsis /usr/platform/sun4u/lib/sckmd

Description sckmd is a server process that resides on a high-end system domain to maintain the Internet Protocol Security (IPsec) Security Associations (SAs) needed to secure communications between a Service Processor or System Controller (SC) and platform management software running within a domain. The [cvcd\(1M\)](#) and [dcs\(1M\)](#) daemons use these Security Associations. See [ipsec\(7P\)](#) for a description of Security Associations.

The sckmd daemon receives SAs from the Service Processor or SC and installs these SAs in a domain's Security Association Database (SADB) using [pf_key\(7P\)](#).

sckmd starts up at system boot time as an SMF service. The FMRI for the sckmd service is:

```
svc:/platform/sun4u/sckmd:default
```

A domain supports only one running sckmd process at a time.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWscmx.u, SUNWscmu.u, SUNWscmkr
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [cvcd\(1M\)](#), [dcs\(1M\)](#), [ipseconf\(1M\)](#), [ipsecalgs\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [ipsec\(7P\)](#), [ipsecah\(7P\)](#), [ipsecesp\(7P\)](#), [pf_key\(7P\)](#)

Notes The sckmd service is used only on Sun Fire high-end systems and the SPARC Enterprise Server family. It provides a mechanism for exchanging IPsec keys between a domain and its System Controller (SC) or Service Processor. These platforms use IPsec to secure the communications between the SC or Service Processor and certain platform-specific daemons in the domain. Such daemons currently include [cvcd\(1M\)](#) and [dcs\(1M\)](#).

The documentation for each platform that supports sckmd describes how to configure its use of IPsec for such communications. Also, the documentation for each specific application describes how to configure its security policies and IPsec options in a manner appropriate for the target platform. Refer to the platform- and application-specific documentation for detailed information.

Name scmadm – storage cache manager administration utility

Synopsis scmadm

scmadm -h

scmadm -e

scmadm -d

scmadm -v

scmadm -C [*parameter* [= [*value*]] ...]

scmadm -o {*system* | *cd* | *device*} [*option*]

scmadm -m {*cd* | *diskname* | *all*}

Description The scmadm command provides various options for controlling and gathering information about a storage device cache.

Options If no options are specified, scmadm displays a list of configured cache descriptors with disknames, options, and global options. The scmadm command supports the following options:

-h

Displays usage information for the scmadm command.

-e

Reads the configuration and enables the storage device cache with those parameters. See [dscfg\(1M\)](#).

-d

Shuts down the storage device cache.

-v

Displays the cache version number.

-C [*parameter*[=*value*]] ...]

Sets or displays the configuration parameters. If the -C option is specified with no arguments the current cache configuration parameters are displayed. If *parameter* is specified, the current value of *parameter* is displayed. If *parameter=value* is specified, the current value of *parameter* is displayed and the parameter is changed to *value*. If *value* is omitted, or if *value* is specified as the null string, “”, or as “-”, the parameter is deleted from the configuration and the system uses the default value. Multiple parameters can be specified in a single invocation of the scmadm command. A change in a configuration parameter takes effect only when the cache is next restarted.

-o { *system* | *cd* | *diskname* } [*option*]

Sets or displays the options for the system or for the cache device specified by *cd* or *diskname*. If the *option* *rdcache* or *nordcache* is specified, the system or specified cache device is set to that option. The option is saved as part of the configuration so that the option persists. See [dscfg\(1M\)](#). To notify the system to “forget” about a saved option, use

the forget option. This does not change the option; it just removes the option from the saved configuration. If no option is specified, current options are displayed. The `rdcache` option is set as the default. The *options* are defined as follows:

`rdcache`

Data blocks are likely to be referenced again and should remain in cache.

`nordcache`

Data blocks are unlikely to be referenced again and should be treated as least recently used, so that other blocks can remain in the cache longer.

`-m { cd | diskname | all }`

Displays the cache descriptor and diskname map for the device specified by `cd` or *diskname* or, if you specify `all`, displays the cache descriptors and diskname map for all storage devices on the system.

Exit Status The `scmadm` command returns 0 for success, non-zero for error.

Files `/dev/sdbc`

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWscmr, SUNWscmu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [dscfg\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Diagnostics `scmadm` fails if there is insufficient contiguous memory.

Name sconadm – register system information

Synopsis /usr/sbin/sconadm register -a
 [-e softwareUpdate | -E softwareUpdate]
 [-h *hostname*] [-l *logfile*] [-N]
 [-p *proxy_host[:proxy_port]*]
 [-r *registration_profile*] [-u *username*]
 [-x *proxy_username*]
 /usr/sbin/sconadm proxy [-l *logfile*]
 [-p *proxy_host[:proxy_port]*]
 [-r *registration_profile*] [-x *proxy_username*]

Description The sconadm utility is a command-line version of the Basic Registration GUI. In the first form of the command in the SYNOPSIS, sconadm uses the register subcommand to register a host with a registration server. In the second form, sconadm uses the proxy subcommand to configure all of the components for software update to use an HTTP web proxy.

The parameters specified with -u, -e (or -E), -h, -p, and -x override values specified in your registration profile. A template for this profile, owned by root, with read-only permissions, is stored in /usr/lib/breg/data/RegistrationProfile.properties. See [registration_profile\(4\)](#).

For the proxy subcommand, the proxy password is stored in the RegistrationProfile.properties file, available if proxy authentication is needed. Storage in the profile prevents proxy passwords from being exposed as part of a listing of processes on a system.

Options The following options are supported:

-a	Accept “Terms of Use and Binary Code License”. Absence of this option means that you do not accept the license.
-e softwareUpdate	Enable client to be managed at the Sun-hosted Update Connection Service.
-E softwareUpdate	Disable client's ability to be managed at the Sun-hosted Update Connection Service.
-h <i>hostname</i>	Hostname of the machine you want to register.
-l <i>logfile</i>	Pathname of log file.
-N	Never register.
-p <i>proxy_host[:proxy_port]</i>	Proxy host name and optional proxy port number.
-r <i>registration_profile</i>	Pathname to a registration profile.
-u <i>username</i>	User name (a Sun Online Account).
-x <i>proxy_username</i>	User name on the proxy host.

Examples Unless specified otherwise, the commands below require root privileges or privileges equivalent to root. See [privileges\(5\)](#).

EXAMPLE 1 Registering a New System

Assume a file `registrationprofile.properties` in `/tmp` that contains the following:

```
userName=user123
password=abc123
hostName=
subscriptionKey=
portalEnabled=false
proxyHostName=
proxyPort=
proxyUserName=
proxyPassword=
```

To register a new system using the profile above, you enter:

```
/usr/sbin/sconadm register -a -r /tmp/registrationprofile.properties
```

EXAMPLE 2 Reregistering a System with a Different User

Assume a file `registrationprofile.properties` in `/tmp` with the contents shown below. Note the changed specification for `userName` and `password`.

```
userName=newuser
password=newpassword
hostName=
subscriptionKey=
portalEnabled=false
proxyHostName=
proxyPort=
proxyUserName=
proxyPassword=
```

To reregister a new system using the profile above, you enter the same command you entered to register the system:

```
/usr/sbin/sconadm register -a -r /tmp/registrationprofile.properties
```

EXAMPLE 3 Reregistering a System, Adding a Sun Subscription Key

Modify `registrationprofile.properties` as follows:

```
userName=newuser
password=newpassword
hostName=
```

EXAMPLE 3 Reregistering a System, Adding a Sun Subscription Key *(Continued)*

```
subscriptionKey=abc12345678
portalEnabled=false
proxyHostName=
proxyPort=
proxyUserName=
proxyPassword=
```

Run the command:

```
/usr/sbin/sconadm register -a -r /tmp/registrationprofile.properties
```

EXAMPLE 4 Reregistering and Enabling Access to all Update Connection Services

Modify `registrationprofile.properties` as follows:

```
userName=newuser
password=newpassword
hostName=
subscriptionKey=abc12345678
portalEnabled=false
proxyHostName=
proxyPort=
proxyUserName=
proxyPassword=
```

Note that `portalEnabled` is set to `false`. Run the command:

```
/usr/sbin/sconadm register -a -r /tmp/registrationprofile.properties \
-e softwareUpdate
```

EXAMPLE 5 Never Registering

To never register a system, enter:

```
/usr/sbin/sconadm register -N
```

EXAMPLE 6 Using a Proxy Server With Proxy Authentication

Edit `registrationprofile.properties` as follows:

```
userName=
password=
hostName=
subscriptionKey=
portalEnabled=
proxyHostName=webcache.mycompany.com
```

EXAMPLE 6 Using a Proxy Server With Proxy Authentication *(Continued)*

```

proxyPort=8080
proxyUserName=myCompanyProxyUserName
proxyPassword=myCompanyProxyPassword

```

Run the command:

```
/usr/sbin/sconadm proxy -r /tmp/registrationprofile.properties
```

EXAMPLE 7 Changing Proxy Host Settings

Edit `registrationprofile.properties` as follows:

```

userName=
password=
hostName=
subscriptionKey=
portalEnabled=
proxyHostName=webcache.mycompany.com
proxyPort=8080
proxyUserName=myCompanyProxyUserName
proxyPassword=myCompanyProxyPassword

```

Run the command:

```
/usr/sbin/sconadm proxy -r /tmp/registrationprofile.properties
```

Then, change the `proxyHostName` value by running the following command:

```
/usr/sbin/sconadm proxy -r /tmp/registrationprofile.properties \
-p newproxy.mycompany.com
```

After the preceding command all proxies use `newproxy.mycompany.com`.

EXAMPLE 8 Resetting a System Not to Use a Proxy

Edit `registrationprofile.properties` as follows:

```

userName=
password=
hostName=
subscriptionKey=
portalEnabled=
proxyHostName=
proxyPort=
proxyUserName=
proxyPassword=

```

EXAMPLE 8 Resetting a System Not to Use a Proxy *(Continued)*

Note that values for all proxy fields are null.

Run the command:

```
/usr/sbin/sconadm proxy -r /tmp/registrationprofile.properties
```

Exit Status 0 Success.

>0 An error occurred.

Files /usr/lib/breg/data/RegistrationProfile.properties
Registration profile template.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWbrg
Interface Stability	Stable

See Also [registration_profile\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [privileges\(5\)](#)

Name sdpadm – SDP system configuration administration

Synopsis /usr/sbin/sdpadm status | enable | disable

Description The sdpadm command is used to display the system state of the Sockets Direct Protocol (SDP) protocol. The sdpadm command can optionally be used to set the state of the SDP protocol. See [sdp\(7D\)](#).

By default the SDP protocol is disabled on the system. It can be enabled by using sdpadm enable.

Options The following subcommands are supported:

status Displays the system status of the SDP protocol

enable Enables the SDP protocol

disable Disables the SDP protocol

Usage The required privileges to change the state of the SDP protocol are controlled by the network configuration policy. If a user does not have the correct privileges to set the SDP policy, sdpadm returns the current state of SDP without having changed the state.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWibsdpu
Interface Stability	Uncommitted

See Also [attributes\(5\)](#), [sdp\(7D\)](#)

Infiniband Specification Volume 1 (<http://www.infinibandta.org>)

Name sendmail – send mail over the internet

Synopsis /usr/lib/sendmail [-Ac] [-Am] [-ba] [-bD] [-bd] [-bi] [-bl] [-bm] [-bp] [-bP] [-bs] [-bt] [-bv] [-B *type*] [-C *file*] [-D *logfile*] [-d *X*] [-F *fullname*] [-f *name*] [-G] [-h *N*] [-L *tag*] [-M *xvalue*] [-N *notifications*] [-n] [-O*option* =*value*] [-o *xvalue*] [-p *protocol*] [-Q [*reason*]] [-q [*time*]] [-q *Xstring*] [-R *ret*] [-r *name*] [-t] [-V *envid*] [-v] [-X *logfile*] [*address*]. . .

Description The sendmail utility sends a message to one or more people, routing the message over whatever networks are necessary. sendmail does internetwork forwarding as necessary to deliver the message to the correct place.

sendmail is not intended as a user interface routine. Other programs provide user-friendly front ends. sendmail is used only to deliver pre-formatted messages.

With no flags, sendmail reads its standard input up to an EOF, or a line with a single dot, and sends a copy of the letter found there to all of the addresses listed. It determines the network to use based on the syntax and contents of the addresses.

Local addresses are looked up in the local [aliases\(4\)](#) file, or in a name service as defined by the [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#) file, and aliased appropriately. In addition, if there is a .forward file in a recipient's home directory, sendmail forwards a copy of each message to the list of recipients that file contains. Refer to the NOTES section for more information about .forward files. Aliasing can be prevented by preceding the address with a backslash.

There are several conditions under which the expected behavior is for the alias database to be either built or rebuilt. This cannot occur under any circumstances unless root owns *and* has exclusive write permission to the /etc/mail/aliases* files.

If a message is found to be undeliverable, it is returned to the sender with diagnostics that indicate the location and nature of the failure; or, the message is placed in a dead .letter file in the sender's home directory.

Service Management The sendmail service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifiers:

```
svc:/network/smtp:sendmail
svc:/network/sendmail-client:default
```

Administrative actions on these services, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The services' status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

These are separate services rather than instances of the same service so that other services can properly express any dependencies. In particular, here are some guidelines about which service/instance should be depended on for which purposes:

- For a service that uses `sendmail` to send mail, an optional dependency on the service `svc:/network/sendmail-client` might be in order.
- For a service that needs to receive mail in general, but does not depend on `sendmail` being the particular SMTP receiver, a dependency on the service `svc:/network/smtp` might be in order.
- For a service that needs to interact with `sendmail` in particular, such as a `Milter`, a dependency on the instance `svc:/network/smtp:sendmail` might be in order.

For the last two, note the difference, as the latter has the `:sendmail` instance specification, whereas the former does not, thus representing the more general service.

Enabling Access to Remote Clients

On an unmodified system, access to `sendmail` by remote clients is enabled and disabled through the service management facility (see [smf\(5\)](#)). In particular, remote access is determined by the value of the `local_only` SMF property:

```
svc:/network/smtp:sendmail/config/local_only = true
```

A setting of `true`, as above, disallows remote access; `false` allows remote access. The default value is `true`.

The following example shows the sequence of SMF commands used to enable `sendmail` to allow access to remote systems:

```
# svccfg -s svc:/network/smtp:sendmail setprop config/local_only = false
# svcadm refresh svc:/network/smtp:sendmail
# svcadm restart svc:/network/smtp:sendmail
```

See [svcadm\(1M\)](#) and [svccfg\(1M\)](#).

Note, however, on a system where any of the [sendmail\(4\)](#) files have been customized, setting this property might not have the intended effect. See [sendmail\(4\)](#) for details.

Automated Rebuilding of Configuration Files

See [sendmail\(4\)](#) for details on which service properties can be set to automate (re)building of configuration files when the service is started.

Restricting Host Access

`sendmail` uses TCP Wrappers to restrict access to hosts. It uses the service name of `sendmail` for `hosts_access()`. For more information on TCP Wrappers, see [tcpd\(1M\)](#) and [hosts_access\(4\)](#) in the `SUNWtcpd` package. [tcpd\(1M\)](#) and [hosts_access\(4\)](#) are not part of the Solaris man pages.

Startup Options

The `/etc/default/sendmail` file stores startup options for `sendmail` so that the options are not removed when a host is upgraded. See also [sendmail\(4\)](#) for details on which service properties can be set to automate (re)building of configuration files when the service is started.

You can use the following variables in the `/etc/default/sendmail` startup file:

CLIENTOPTIONS=string

Selects additional options to be used with the client daemon, which looks in the client-only queue (`/var/spool/clientmqueue`) and acts as a client queue runner. No syntax checking is done, so be careful when making changes to this variable.

CLIENTQUEUEINTERVAL=#

Similar to the `QUEUEINTERVAL` option, `CLIENTQUEUEINTERVAL` sets the time interval for mail queue runs. However, the `CLIENTQUEUEINTERVAL` option controls the functions of the client daemon, instead of the functions of the master daemon. Typically, the master daemon is able to deliver all messages to the SMTP port. However, if the message load is too high or the master daemon is not running, then messages go into the client-only queue, `/var/spool/clientmqueue`. The client daemon, which checks in the client-only queue, then acts as a client queue processor.

ETRN_HOSTS=string

Enables an SMTP client and server to interact immediately without waiting for the queue run intervals, which are periodic. The server can immediately deliver the portion of its queue that goes to the specified hosts. For more information, refer to the [etrn\(1M\)](#) man page.

MODE=-bd

Selects the mode to start `sendmail` with. Use the `-bd` option or leave it undefined.

OPTIONS=string

Selects additional options to be used with the master daemon. No syntax checking is done, so be careful when making changes to this variable.

QUEUEINTERVAL=#

Sets the interval for mail queue runs on the master daemon. `#` can be a positive integer that is followed by either `s` for seconds, `m` for minutes, `h` for hours, `d` for days, or `w` for weeks. The syntax is checked before `sendmail` is started. If the interval is negative or if the entry does not end with an appropriate letter, the interval is ignored and `sendmail` starts with a queue interval of 15 minutes.

QUEUEOPTIONS=p

Enables one persistent queue runner that sleeps between queue run intervals, instead of a new queue runner for each queue run interval. You can set this option to `p`, which is the only setting available. Otherwise, this option is not set.

Mail Filter API `sendmail` supports a mail filter API called “milter”. For more information, see `/usr/include/libmilter/README` and <http://www.milter.org>

Options The following options are supported:

`-Ac`

Uses `submit.cf` even if the operation mode does not indicate an initial mail submission.

`-Am`

Uses `sendmail.cf` even if the operation mode indicates an initial mail submission.

- ba
Goes into ARPANET mode. All input lines must end with a RETURN-LINEFEED, and all messages are generated with a RETURN-LINEFEED at the end. Also, the From: and Sender: fields are examined for the name of the sender.
- bd
Runs as a daemon in the background, waiting for incoming SMTP connections.
- bD
Runs as a daemon in the foreground, waiting for incoming SMTP connections.
- bi
Initializes the [aliases\(4\)](#) database. Root must own *and* have exclusive write permission to the /etc/mail/aliases* files for successful use of this option.
- bl
Runs as a daemon (like -bd) but accepts only loopback SMTP connections.
- bm
Delivers mail in the usual way (default).
- bp
Prints a summary of the mail queues.
- bP
Prints the number of entries in the queues. This option is only available with shared memory support.
- bs
Uses the SMTP protocol as described in RFC 2821. This flag implies all the operations of the -ba flag that are compatible with SMTP.
- bt
Runs in address test mode. This mode reads addresses and shows the steps in parsing; it is used for debugging configuration tables.
- bv
Verifies names only. Does not try to collect or deliver a message. Verify mode is normally used for validating users or mailing lists.
- B *type*
Indicates body *type* (7BIT or 8BITMIME).
- C *file*
Uses alternate configuration file.
- D *logfile*
Send debugging output to the indicated log file instead of stdout.
- d *X*
Sets debugging value to *X*.

- f *name*
Sets the name of the “from” person (that is, the sender of the mail).
- F *fullname*
Sets the full name of the sender.
- G
When accepting messages by way of the command line, indicates that they are for relay (gateway) submission. When this flag is set, `sendmail` might complain about syntactically invalid messages, for example, unqualified host names, rather than fixing them. `sendmail` does not do any canonicalization in this mode.
- h *N*
Sets the hop count to *N*. The hop count is incremented every time the mail is processed. When it reaches a limit, the mail is returned with an error message, the victim of an aliasing loop.
- L *tag*
Sets the identifier used in `syslog` messages to the supplied *tag*.
- M*xvalue*
Sets macro *x* to the specified *value*.
- n
Does not do aliasing.
- N *notifications*
Tags all addresses being sent as wanting the indicated *notifications*, which consists of the word “NEVER” or a comma-separated list of “SUCCESS”, “FAILURE”, and “DELAY” for successful delivery, failure and a message that is stuck in a queue somewhere. The default is “FAILURE,DELAY”.
- o*xvalue*
Sets option *x* to the specified *value*. Processing Options are described below.
- O*option=value*
Sets *option* to the specified *value* (for long from names). Processing Options are described below.
- p *protocol*
Sets the sending protocol. The *protocol* field can be in form *protocol: host* to set both the sending protocol and the sending host. For example: `-pUUCP: uunet` sets the sending *protocol* to UUCP and the sending host to uunet. Some existing programs use `-oM` to set the *r* and *s* macros; this is equivalent to using `-p`.
- q[*time*]
Processes saved messages in the queue at given intervals. If *time* is omitted, processes the queue once. *time* is given as a tagged number, where *s* is seconds, *m* is minutes, *h* is hours, *d* is days, and *w* is weeks. For example, `-q1h30m` or `-q90m` would both set the timeout to one hour thirty minutes.

By default, sendmail runs in the background. This option can be used safely with `-bd`.

- qp[*time* -]
Similar to `-q[time]`, except that instead of periodically forking a child to process the queue, sendmail forks a single persistent child for each queue that alternates between processing the queue and sleeping. The sleep time (*time*) is specified as the argument; it defaults to 1 second. The process always sleeps at least 5 seconds if the queue was empty in the previous queue run.
- qf
Processes saved messages in the queue once and does not `fork(2)`, but runs in the foreground.
- qG *name*
Processes jobs in queue group called *name* only.
- q[!]I *substr*
Limits processed jobs to those containing *substr* as a substring of the queue ID or not when ! is specified.
- q[!]Q *substr*
Limits processed jobs to those quarantined jobs containing *substr* as a substring of the quarantine *reason* or not when ! is specified.
- q[!]R *substr*
Limits processed jobs to those containing *substr* as a substring of one of the recipients or not when ! is specified.
- q[!]S *substr*
Limits processed jobs to those containing *substr* as a substring of the sender or not when ! is specified.
- Q[*reason*]
Quarantines a normal queue item with the given reason or unquarantines a quarantined queue item if no reason is given. This should only be used with some sort of item matching as described above.
- r *name*
An alternate and obsolete form of the `-f` flag.
- R *ret*
Identifies the information you want returned if the message bounces. *ret* can be HDRS for headers only or FULL for headers plus body.
- t
Reads message for recipients. To:, Cc:, and Bcc: lines are scanned for people to send to. The Bcc: line is deleted before transmission. Any addresses in the argument list is suppressed. The NoRecipientAction Processing Option can be used to change the behavior when no legal recipients are included in the message.

-v

Goes into verbose mode. Alias expansions are announced, and so forth.

-V *envid*

The indicated *envid* is passed with the envelope of the message and returned if the message bounces.

-X *logfile*

Logs all traffic in and out of `sendmail` in the indicated *logfile* for debugging mailer problems. This produces a lot of data very quickly and should be used sparingly.

Processing Options There are a number of “random” options that can be set from a configuration file. Options are represented by a single character or by multiple character names. The syntax for the single character names of is:

Oxvalue

This sets option *x* to be *value*. Depending on the option, *value* may be a string, an integer, a boolean (with legal values t, T, f, or F; the default is TRUE), or a time interval.

The multiple character or long names use this syntax:

O Longname=argument

This sets the option *Longname* to be *argument*. The long names are beneficial because they are easier to interpret than the single character names.

Not all processing options have single character names associated with them. In the list below, the multiple character name is presented first followed by the single character syntax enclosed in parentheses.

AliasFile (*Afile*)

Specifies possible alias files.

AliasWait (*a N*)

If set, waits up to *N* minutes for an “@:” entry to exist in the `aliases(4)` database before starting up. If it does not appear in *N* minutes, issues a warning. Defaults to 10 minutes.

AllowBogusHELO

Allows a HELO SMTP command that does not include a host name. By default this option is disabled.

BadRcptThrottle=*N*

If set and more than the specified number of recipients in a single SMTP envelope are rejected, sleeps for one second after each rejected RCPT command.

BlankSub (*Bc*)

Sets the blank substitution character to *c*. Unquoted spaces in addresses are replaced by this character. Defaults to SPACE (that is, no change is made).

-
- CACertFile**
File containing one CA cert.
- CACertPath**
Path to directory with certs of CAs.
- CheckAliases (n)**
Validates the RHS of aliases when rebuilding the `aliases(4)` database.
- CheckpointInterval (CN)**
Checkpoints the queue every *N* (default 10) addresses sent. If your system crashes during delivery to a large list, this prevents retransmission to any but the last *N* recipients.
- ClassFactor (*zfact*)**
The indicated factor *fact* is multiplied by the message class (determined by the `Precedence:` field in the user header and the P lines in the configuration file) and subtracted from the priority. Thus, messages with a higher `Priority:` are favored. Defaults to 1800.
- ClientCertFile**
File containing the cert of the client, that is, this cert is used when `sendmail` acts as client.
- ClientKeyFile**
File containing the private key belonging to the client cert.
- ClientPortOptions**
Sets client SMTP options. The options are key=value pairs. Known keys are:
- Addr *Address Mask***
Address Mask defaults to `INADDR_ANY`. The address mask can be a numeric address in dot notation or a network name.
 - Family**
Address family (defaults to `INET`).
 - Listen**
Size of listen queue (defaults to 10).
 - Port**
Name/number of listening port (defaults to `smtp`).
 - RcvBufSize**
The size of the TCP/IP receive buffer.
 - SndBufSize**
The size of the TCP/IP send buffer.
 - Modifier**
Options (flags) for the daemon. Can be:
 - h**
Uses name of interface for HELO command.

If `h` is set, the name corresponding to the outgoing interface address (whether chosen by means of the `Connection` parameter or the default) is used for the HELO/EHLO command.

`ColonOkInAddr`

If set, colons are treated as a regular character in addresses. If not set, they are treated as the introducer to the RFC 822 “group” syntax. This option is on for version 5 and lower configuration files.

`ConnectionCacheSize (kN)`

The maximum number of open connections that are to be cached at a time. The default is 1. This delays closing the current connection until either this invocation of `sendmail` needs to connect to another host or it terminates. Setting it to 0 defaults to the old behavior, that is, connections are closed immediately.

`ConnectionCacheTimeout (Ktimeout)`

The maximum amount of time a cached connection is permitted to idle without activity. If this time is exceeded, the connection is immediately closed. This value should be small (on the order of ten minutes). Before `sendmail` uses a cached connection, it always sends a NOOP (no operation) command to check the connection. If the NOOP command fails, it reopens the connection. This keeps your end from failing if the other end times out. The point of this option is to be a good network neighbor and avoid using up excessive resources on the other end. The default is five minutes.

`ConnectionRateThrottle`

The maximum number of connections permitted per second. After this many connections are accepted, further connections are delayed. If not set or ≤ 0 , there is no limit.

`ConnectionRateWindowSize`

Define the length of the interval for which the number of incoming connections is maintained. The default is 60 seconds.

`ControlSocketName`

Name of the control socket for daemon management. A running `sendmail` daemon can be controlled through this Unix domain socket. Available commands are: `help`, `restart`, `shutdown`, and `status`. The `status` command returns the current number of daemon children, the free disk space (in blocks) of the queue directory, and the load average of the machine expressed as an integer. If not set, no control socket is available. For the sake of security, this Unix domain socket must be in a directory which is accessible only by root; `/var/spool/mqueue/.smcontrol` is recommended for the socket name.

`CRLFile`

File containing certificate revocation status, useful for X.509v3 authentication.

`DaemonPortOptions (Options)`

Sets server SMTP options. The options are *key=value* pairs. Known keys are:

Name

User-definable name for the daemon (defaults to “Daemon#”). Used for error messages and logging.

Addr

Address mask (defaults INADDR_ANY).

The address mask may be a numeric address in dot notation or a network name.

Family

Address family (defaults to INET).

InputMailFilters

List of input mail filters for the daemon.

Listen

Size of listen queue (defaults to 10).

Modifier

Options (flags) for the daemon; can be a sequence (without any delimiters) of:

a

Requires authentication.

b

Binds to interface through which mail has been received.

c

Performs hostname canonification (.cf).

f

Requires fully qualified hostname (.cf).

h

Uses name of interface for HELO command.

u

Allows unqualified addresses (.cf).

C

Does not perform hostname canonification.

E

Disallows ETRN (see RFC 2476).

Name

User-definable name for the daemon (defaults to Daemon#). Used for error messages and logging.

Port

Name/number of listening port (defaults to smtp).

ReceiveSize

The size of the TCP/IP receive buffer.

SendSize

The size of the TCP/IP send buffer.

children

Maximum number of children per daemon. See `MaxDaemonChildren`.

DeliveryMode

Delivery mode per daemon. See `DeliveryMode`.

refuseLA

RefuseLA per daemon.

delayLA

DelayLA per daemon.

queueLA

QueueLA per daemon.

`sendmail` listens on a new socket for each occurrence of the `DaemonPortOptions` option in a configuration file.

DataFileBufferSize

Sets the threshold, in bytes, before a memory-based queue data file becomes disk-based. The default is 4096 bytes.

DeadLetterDrop

Defines the location of the system-wide `dead.letter` file, formerly hard-coded to `/var/tmp/dead.letter`. If this option is not set (the default), `sendmail` does not attempt to save to a system-wide `dead.letter` file in the event it cannot bounce the mail to the user or postmaster. Instead, it renames the `qf` file as it has in the past when the `dead.letter` file could not be opened.

DefaultCharSet

Sets the default character set to use when converting unlabeled 8 bit input to MIME.

DefaultUser (*ggid*) or (*uid*)

Sets the default group ID for mailers to run in to *gid* or set the default userid for mailers to *uid*. Defaults to 1. The value can also be given as a symbolic group or user name.

DelayLA=*LA*

When the system load average exceeds *LA*, `sendmail` sleeps for one second on most SMTP commands and before accepting connections.

DeliverByMin=*time*

Sets minimum time for Deliver By SMTP Service Extension (RFC 2852). If 0, no time is listed, if less than 0, the extension is not offered, if greater than 0, it is listed as minimum time for the EHLO keyword DELIVERBY.

DeliveryMode (*dx*)

Delivers in mode *x*. Legal modes are:

i

Delivers interactively (synchronously).

b
Delivers in background (asynchronously).

d
Deferred mode. Database lookups are deferred until the actual queue run.

q
Just queues the message (delivers during queue run).

Defaults to **b** if no option is specified, **i** if it is specified but given no argument (that is, **Od** is equivalent to **Odi**).

DHParameters

File containing the DH parameters.

DialDelay

If a connection fails, waits this many seconds and tries again. Zero means “do not retry”.

DontBlameSendmail

If set, overrides the file safety checks. This compromises system security and should not be used. See <http://www.sendmail.org/tips/DontBlameSendmail.html> for more information.

DontExpandCnames

If set, `$(... $)` lookups that do DNS-based lookups do not expand CNAME records.

DontInitGroups

If set, the `initgroups(3C)` routine is never invoked. If you set this, agents run on behalf of users only have their primary (`/etc/passwd`) group permissions.

DontProbeInterfaces

If set, `sendmail` does not insert the names and addresses of any local interfaces into the `=$w` class. If set, you must also include support for these addresses, otherwise mail to addresses in this list bounces with a configuration error.

DontPruneRoutes (R)

If set, does not prune route-addr syntax addresses to the minimum possible.

DoubleBounceAddress

If an error occurs when sending an error message, sends that “double bounce” error message to this address.

EightBitMode (8)

Uses 8-bit data handling. This option requires one of the following keys. The key can be selected by using just the first character, but using the full word is better for clarity.

mimify

Does any necessary conversion of 8BITMIME to 7-bit.

pass

Passes unlabeled 8-bit input through as is.

strict

Rejects unlabeled 8-bit input.

ErrorHeader (*Efile/message*)

Appends error messages with the indicated message. If it begins with a slash, it is assumed to be the pathname of a file containing a message (this is the recommended setting). Otherwise, it is a literal message. The error file might contain the name, email address, and/or phone number of a local postmaster who could provide assistance to end users. If the option is missing or NULL, or if it names a file which does not exist or which is not readable, no message is printed.

ErrorMode (*ex*)

Disposes of errors using mode *x*. The values for *x* are:

e

Mails back errors and gives 0 exit status always.

m

Mails back errors.

p

Prints error messages (default).

q

No messages, just gives exit status.

w

Writes back errors (mail if user not logged in).

FallbackMXhost (*vfallbackhost*)

If specified, the *fallbackhost* acts like a very low priority MX on every host. This is intended to be used by sites with poor network connectivity.

FallBackSmartHost

If specified, the *fallBackSmartHost* is used in a last-ditch effort for each host. This is intended to be used by sites with “fake internal DNS”. That is, a company whose DNS accurately reflects the world inside that company’s domain but not outside.

FastSplit

If set to a value greater than zero (the default is one), it suppresses the MX lookups on addresses when they are initially sorted, that is, for the first delivery attempt. This usually results in faster envelope splitting unless the MX records are readily available in a local DNS cache. To enforce initial sorting based on MX records set *FastSplit* to zero. If the mail is submitted directly from the command line, then the value also limits the number of processes to deliver the envelopes; if more envelopes are created they are only queued up and must be taken care of by a queue run. Since the default submission method is by way of SMTP (either from a MUA or by way of the Message Submission Program [MSP]), the value of *FastSplit* is seldom used to limit the number of processes to deliver the envelopes.

ForkEachJob (Y)

If set, delivers each job that is run from the queue in a separate process. Use this option if you are short of memory, since the default tends to consume considerable amounts of memory while the queue is being processed.

ForwardPath (J*path*)

Sets the path for searching for users' .forward files. The default is \$z/.forward. Some sites that use the automounter may prefer to change this to /var/forward/\$u to search a file with the same name as the user in a system directory. It can also be set to a sequence of paths separated by colons; sendmail stops at the first file it can successfully and safely open. For example, /var/forward/\$u:\$z/.forward searches first in /var/forward/*username* and then in *~username*/.forward (but only if the first file does not exist). Refer to the NOTES section for more information.

HelloName=*name*

Sets the name to be used for HELO/EHLO (instead of \$j).

HelpFile (H*file*)

Specifies the help file for SMTP.

HoldExpensive (c)

If an outgoing mailer is marked as being expensive, does not connect immediately.

HostsFile

Sets the file to use when doing “file” type access of host names.

HostStatusDirectory

If set, host status is kept on disk between sendmail runs in the named directory tree. If a full path is not used, then the path is interpreted relative to the queue directory.

IgnoreDots (i)

Ignores dots in incoming messages. This is always disabled (that is, dots are always accepted) when reading SMTP mail.

LogLevel (Ln)

Sets the default log level to *n*. Defaults to 9.

(M*x value*)

Sets the macro *x* to *value*. This is intended only for use from the command line.

MailboxDatabase

Type of lookup to find information about local mail boxes, defaults to pw which uses [getpwnam\(3C\)](#). Other types can be introduced by adding them to the source code, see [libsm/mbdb.c](#) for details.

MatchGECOS (G)

Tries to match recipient names using the GECOS field. This allows for mail to be delivered using names defined in the GECOS field in /etc/passwd as well as the login name.

MaxDaemonChildren

The maximum number of children the daemon permits. After this number, connections are rejected. If not set or ≤ 0 , there is no limit.

MaxHopCount (hN)

The maximum hop count. Messages that have been processed more than N times are assumed to be in a loop and are rejected. Defaults to 25.

MaxMessageSize

The maximum size of messages that are accepted (in bytes).

MaxMimeHeaderLength=M[/N]

Sets the maximum length of certain MIME header field values to M characters. For some of these headers which take parameters, the maximum length of each parameter is set to N if specified. If $/N$ is not specified, one half of M is used. By default, these values are 0, meaning no checks are done.

MaxNOOPCommands=N

Overrides the default of 20 for the number of useless commands.

MaxQueueChildren=N

When set, this limits the number of concurrent queue runner processes to N . This helps to control the amount of system resources used when processing the queue. When there are multiple queue groups defined and the total number of queue runners for these queue groups would exceed **MaxQueueChildren** then the queue groups are not all run concurrently. That is, some portion of the queue groups run concurrently such that **MaxQueueChildren** is not exceeded, while the remaining queue groups are run later (in round robin order). See **MaxRunnersPerQueue**.

MaxQueueRunSize

If set, limits the maximum size of any given queue run to this number of entries. This stops reading the queue directory after this number of entries is reached; job priority is not used. If not set, there is no limit.

MaxRunnersPerQueue=N

This sets the default maximum number of queue runners for queue groups. Up to N queue runners work in parallel on a queue group's messages. This is useful where the processing of a message in the queue might delay the processing of subsequent messages. Such a delay can be the result of non-erroneous situations such as a low bandwidth connection. The can be overridden on a per queue group basis by setting the **Runners** option. The default is 1 when not set.

MeToo (M)

Sends to me too, even if I am in an alias expansion.

MaxRecipientsPerMessage

If set, allows no more than the specified number of recipients in an SMTP envelope. Further recipients receive a 452 error code and are deferred for the next delivery attempt.

MinFreeBlocks (*bN/M*)

Insists on at least *N* blocks free on the file system that holds the queue files before accepting email by way of SMTP. If there is insufficient space, `sendmail` gives a 452 response to the MAIL command. This invites the sender to try again later. The optional *M* is a maximum message size advertised in the ESMTP EHLO response. It is currently otherwise unused.

MinQueueAge

Specifies the amount of time a job must sit in the queue between queue runs. This allows you to set the queue run interval low for better responsiveness without trying all jobs in each run. The default value is 0.

MustQuoteChars

Specifies the characters to be quoted in a full name phrase. `&`, `;`, `\` `()` `[]` are quoted automatically.

NiceQueueRun

Specifies the priority of queue runners. See [nice\(1\)](#).

NoRecipientAction

Sets action if there are no legal recipient files in the message. The legal values are:

add-apparently-to

Adds an `Apparently-to:` header with all the known recipients (which may expose blind recipients).

add-bcc

Adds an empty `Bcc:` header.

add-to

Adds a `To:` header with all the known recipients (which may expose blind recipients).

add-to-undisclosed

Adds a `To: undisclosed-recipients:` header.

none

Does nothing, that is, leaves the message as it is.

OldStyleHeaders (*o*)

Assumes that the headers may be in old format, that is, spaces delimit names. This actually turns on an adaptive algorithm: if any recipient address contains a comma, parenthesis, or angle bracket, it is assumed that commas already exist. If this flag is not on, only commas delimit names. Headers are always output with commas between the names.

OperatorChars or *\$o*

Defines the list of characters that can be used to separate the components of an address into tokens.

PidFile

Specifies the filename of the pid file. The default is `/var/run/sendmail.pid`. The filename is macro-expanded before it is opened, and unlinked when `sendmail` exits.

PostmasterCopy (*Ppostmaster*)

If set, copies of error messages are sent to the named *postmaster*. Only the header of the failed message is sent. Since most errors are user problems, this is probably not a good idea on large sites, and arguably contains all sorts of privacy violations, but it seems to be popular with certain operating systems vendors.

PrivacyOptions (*popt,opt,...*)

Sets privacy options. Privacy is really a misnomer; many of these options are just a way of insisting on stricter adherence to the SMTP protocol.

The *goaway* pseudo-flag sets all flags except *noreceipts*, *restrictmailq*, *restrictqrun*, *restrictexpand*, *noetrn*, and *nobodyreturn*. If *mailq* is restricted, only people in the same group as the queue directory can print the queue. If queue runs are restricted, only root and the owner of the queue directory can run the queue. The *restrict-expand* pseudo-flag instructs sendmail to drop privileges when the *-bv* option is given by users who are neither root nor the *TrustedUser* so users cannot read private aliases, forwards, or *:include:* files. It adds the *NonRootSafeAddr* to the “DontBlame-Sendmail” option to prevent misleading unsafe address warnings. It also overrides the *-v* (verbose) command line option to prevent information leakage. Authentication Warnings add warnings about various conditions that may indicate attempts to fool the mail system, such as using a non-standard queue directory.

The options can be selected from:

authwarnings

Puts X-Authentication-Warning: headers in messages.

goaway

Disallows essentially all SMTP status queries.

needexpnhelo

Insists on HELO or EHLO command before EXPN.

needmailhelo

Insists on HELO or EHLO command before MAIL.

needvrfyhelo

Insists on HELO or EHLO command before VRFY.

noactualrecipient

Do not put an X-Actual-Recipient line in a DNS that reveals the actual account to which an address is mapped.

noetrn

Disallows ETRN entirely.

noexpn

Disallows EXPN entirely.

noreceipts

Prevents return receipts.

nobodyreturn

Does not return the body of a message with DSNs.

novrfy

Disallows VRFY entirely.

public

Allows open access.

restrictexpand

Restricts -bv and -v command line flags.

restrictmailq

Restricts mailq command.

restrictqrun

Restricts -q command line flag.

ProcessTitlePrefix *string*

Prefixes the process title shown on “/usr/ucb/ps auxww” listings with *string*. The string is macro processed.

QueueDirectory (*Qdir*)

Uses the named *dir* as the queue directory.

QueueFactor (*qfactor*)

Uses *factor* as the multiplier in the map function to decide when to just queue up jobs rather than run them. This value is divided by the difference between the current load average and the load average limit (x flag) to determine the maximum message priority to be sent. Defaults to 600000.

QueueFileMode=*mode*

Defaults permissions for queue files (octal). If not set, sendmail uses 0600 unless its real and effective uid are different in which case it uses 0644.

QueueLA (*xLA*)

When the system load average exceeds *LA*, just queues messages (that is, does not try to send them). Defaults to eight times the number of processors online when sendmail starts.

QueueSortOrder=*algorithm*

Sets the algorithm used for sorting the queue. Only the first character of the value is used. Legal values are host (to order by the name of the first host name of the first recipient), filename (to order by the name of the queue file name), time (to order by the submission/creation time), random (to order randomly), modification (to order by the modification time of the qf file (older entries first)), none (to not order), and priority (to order by message priority). Host ordering makes better use of the connection cache, but may tend to process low priority messages that go to a single host over high priority

messages that go to several hosts; it probably shouldn't be used on slow network links. Filename and modification time ordering saves the overhead of reading all of the queued items before starting the queue run. Creation (submission) time ordering is almost always a bad idea, since it allows large, bulk mail to go out before smaller, personal mail, but may have applicability on some hosts with very fast connections. Random is useful if several queue runners are started by hand which try to drain the same queue since odds are they are working on different parts of the queue at the same time. Priority ordering is the default.

QueueTimeout (*Trtime/wtime*)

Sets the queue timeout to *rtime*. After this interval, messages that have not been successfully sent are returned to the sender. Defaults to five days (5d). The optional *wtime* is the time after which a warning message is sent. If it is missing or 0, then no warning messages are sent.

RandFile

File containing random data (use prefix `file:`) or the name of the UNIX socket if EGD is used (use prefix `egd:`). Note that Solaris supports `random(7D)`, so this does not need to be specified.

RecipientFactor (*yfact*)

The indicated factor *fact* is added to the priority (thus *lowering* the priority of the job) for each recipient, that is, this value penalizes jobs with large numbers of recipients. Defaults to 30000.

RefuseLA (*XLA*)

When the system load average exceeds *LA*, refuses incoming SMTP connections. Defaults to 12 times the number of processors online when `sendmail` starts.

RejectLogInterval

Log interval when refusing connections for this long (default: 3h).

ResolverOptions (*I*)

Tunes DNS lookups.

RetryFactor (*Zfact*)

The indicated factor *fact* is added to the priority every time a job is processed. Thus, each time a job is processed, its priority is decreased by the indicated value. In most environments this should be positive, since hosts that are down are all too often down for a long time. Defaults to 90000.

RrtImpliesDsn

If this option is set, a Return-Receipt-To: header causes the request of a DSN, which is sent to the envelope sender as required by RFC 1891, not to the address given in the header.

RunAsUser

If set, becomes this user when reading and delivering mail. Intended for use of firewalls where users do not have accounts.

SafeFileEnvironment

If set, sendmail does a chroot into this directory before writing files.

SaveFromLine (f)

Saves Unix-style From lines at the front of headers. Normally they are assumed redundant and discarded.

SendMimeErrors (j)

If set, sends error messages in MIME format (see RFC 2045 and RFC 1344 for details). If disabled, sendmail does not return the DSN keyword in response to an EHLO and does not do Delivery Status Notification processing as described in RFC 1891.

ServerCertFile

File containing the cert of the server, that is, this cert is used when sendmail acts as server.

ServerKeyFile

File containing the private key belonging to the server cert.

ServiceSwitchFile

Defines the path to the service-switch file. Since the service-switch file is defined in the Solaris operating environment this option is ignored.

SevenBitInput (7)

Strips input to seven bits for compatibility with old systems. This should not be necessary.

SharedMemoryKey

Specifies key to use for shared memory segment. If not set (or 0), shared memory is not be used. If this option is set, sendmail can share some data between different instances. For example, the number of entries in a queue directory or the available space in a file system. This allows for more efficient program execution, since only one process needs to update the data instead of each individual process gathering the data each time it is required.

SharedMemoryKeyFile=*file*

If SharedMemoryKeyFile is set to -1, the automatically selected shared memory key will be stored in the specified file.

SingleLineFromHeader

If set, From: lines that have embedded newlines are unwrapped onto one line.

SingleThreadDelivery

If this option and the HostStatusDirectory option are both set, uses single thread deliveries to other hosts.

SmtPgreetingMessage or \$e

Specifies the initial SMTP greeting message.

SoftBounce

If set, issue temporary errors (4xy) instead of permanent errors (5xy). This can be useful during testing of a new configuration to avoid erroneous bouncing of mail.

StatusFile (*Sfile*)

Logs statistics in the named *file*. By default, this is `/etc/mail/sendmail.st`. As root, you must `touch(1)` this file to enable `mailstats(1)`.

SuperSafe (*s*)

This option can be set to `True`, `False`, `Interactive`, or `PostMilter`. If set to `True`, `sendmail` is set to super-safe when running things, that is, always instantiate the queue file, even if you are going to attempt immediate delivery. `sendmail` always instantiates the queue file before returning control to the client under any circumstances. This should really always be set to `True`. The `Interactive` value has been introduced in 8.12 and can be used together with `DeliveryMode=i`. It skips some synchronization calls which are effectively doubled in the code execution path for this mode. If set to `PostMilter`, `sendmail` defers synchronizing the queue file until any milters have signaled acceptance of the message. `PostMilter` is useful only when `sendmail` is running as an SMTP server; in all other situations it acts the same as `True`.

TempFileMode (*Fmode*)

Specifies the file mode for queue files.

Timeout (*rtimeouts*)

Timeout reads after time interval. The *timeouts* argument is a list of *keyword=value* pairs. All but *command* apply to client SMTP. For backward compatibility, a timeout with no *keyword=* part is set all of the longer values. The recognized timeouts and their default values, and their minimum values specified in RFC 1123 section 5.3.2 are:

`connect`
all connections for a single delivery attempt [0, unspecified]

`command`
command read [1h, 5m]

`connect`
initial connect [0, unspecified]

`control`
complete control socket transaction [2m, none]

`datablock`
data block read [1h, 3m]

`datafinal`
reply to final . in data [1h, 10m]

`datainit`
reply to DATA command [5m, 2m]

`fileopen`
file open [60sec, none]

`helo`
reply to HELO or EHLO command [5m, none]

`hoststatus`
 host retry [30m, unspecified]

`iconnect`
 first attempt to connect to a host [0, unspecified]

`ident`
 IDENT protocol timeout [5s, none]

`initial`
 wait for initial greeting message [5m, 5m]

`lhlo`
 wait for reply to an LMTP LHLO command [2m, unspecified]

`mail`
 reply to MAIL command [10m, 5m]

`misc`
 reply to NOOP and VERB commands [2m, none]

`queuereturn`
 undeliverable message returned [5d]

`queuwarn`
 deferred warning [4h]

`quit`
 reply to QUIT command [2m, none]

`rcpt`
 reply to RCPT command [1h, 5m]

`resolver.retrans`
 Resolver's retransmission time interval (in seconds) [varies]. Sets both
 `Timeout.resolver.retrans.first` and `Timeout.resolver.retrans.normal`.

`resolver.retrans.first`
 Resolver's retransmission time interval (in seconds) for the first attempt to deliver a
 message [varies].

`resolver.retrans.normal`
 Resolver's retransmission time interval (in seconds) for all look-ups except the first
 delivery attempt [varies].

`resolver.retry`
 Number of times to retransmit a resolver query [varies]. Sets both
 `Timeout.resolver.retry.first` and `Timeout.resolver.retry.normal`.

`resolver.retry.first`
 Number of times to retransmit a resolver query for the first attempt to deliver a message
 [varies].

resolver.retry.normal

Number of times to retransmit a resolver query for all look-ups except the first delivery attempt [varies].

rset

reply to RSET command [5m, none]

starttls

response to an SMTP STARTTLS command [1h]

TimeZoneSpec (*tzinfo*)

Sets the local time zone info to *tzinfo*, for example, "PST8PDT". Actually, if this is not set, the TZ environment variable is cleared (so the system default is used); if set but null, the user's TZ variable is used, and if set and non-null, the TZ variable is set to this value.

TLSSrvOptions

If this option is 'V', then no client verification is performed, that is, the server does not ask for a certificate.

TrustedUser

The user parameter can be a user name (looked up in the passwd map) or a numeric user id. Trusted user for file ownership and starting the daemon. If set, generated alias databases and the control socket (if configured) are automatically owned by this user.

TryNullMXList (w)

If you are the "best" (that is, lowest preference) MX for a given host, you should normally detect this situation and treat that condition specially, by forwarding the mail to a UUCP feed, treating it as local, or whatever. However, in some cases (such as Internet firewalls) you may want to try to connect directly to that host as though it had no MX records at all. Setting this option causes `sendmail` to try this. The downside is that errors in your configuration are likely to be diagnosed as "host unknown" or "message timed out" instead of something more meaningful. This option is deprecated.

UnixFromLine or \$l

The "From" line used when sending to files or programs.

UnsafeGroupWrites

If set, group-writable `:include:` and `.forward` files are considered "unsafe", that is, programs and files cannot be directly referenced from such files.

UseErrorsTo (l)

If there is an `Errors-To:` header, sends error messages to the addresses listed there. They normally go to the envelope sender. Use of this option causes `sendmail` to violate RFC 1123. This option is not recommended and deprecated.

UseMSP

Uses as mail submission program, that is, allows group writable queue files if the group is the same as that of a `set-group-id` `sendmail` binary.

UserDatabaseSpec (U)

Defines the name and location of the file containing User Database information.

Verbose (v)

Runs in verbose mode. If this is set, `sendmail` adjusts the `HoldExpensive` and `DeliveryMode` options so that all mail is delivered completely in a single job so that you can see the entire delivery process. The `Verbose` option should *never* be set in the configuration file; it is intended for command line use only.

XscriptFileBufferSize

Sets the threshold, in bytes, before a memory-based queue transcript file becomes disk-based. The default is 4096 bytes.

If the first character of the user name is a vertical bar, the rest of the user name is used as the name of a program to pipe the mail to. It may be necessary to quote the name of the user to keep `sendmail` from suppressing the blanks from between arguments.

If invoked as `newaliases`, `sendmail` rebuilds the alias database, so long as the `/etc/mail/aliases*` files are owned by root *and* root has exclusive write permission. If invoked as `mailq`, `sendmail` prints the contents of the mail queue.

Operands *address*

address of an intended recipient of the message being sent.

Usage See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of `sendmail` when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (2^{31} bytes).

Exit Status `sendmail` returns an exit status describing what it did. The codes are defined in `/usr/include/sysexits.h`.

EX_OK

Successful completion on all addresses.

EX_NOUSER

User name not recognized.

EX_UNAVAILABLE

Catchall. Necessary resources were not available.

EX_SYNTAX

Syntax error in address.

EX_SOFTWARE

Internal software error, including bad arguments.

EX_OSERR

Temporary operating system error, such as “cannot fork”.

EX_NOHOST

Host name not recognized.

EX_TEMPFAIL

Message could not be sent immediately, but was queued.

Environment Variables No environment variables are used. However, sendmail's start-up script, invoked by [svcadm\(1M\)](#), reads `/etc/default/sendmail`. In this file, if the variable `ETRN_HOSTS` is set, the start-up script parses this variable and invokes [etrn\(1M\)](#) appropriately. `ETRN_HOSTS` should be of the form:

```
"s1:c1.1,c1.2      s2:c2.1 s3:c3.1,c3.2,c3.3"
```

That is, white-space separated groups of `server:client` where `client` can be one or more comma-separated names. The `:client` part is optional. `server` is the name of the server to prod; a mail queue run is requested for each `client` name. This is comparable to running:

```
/usr/lib/sendmail -qR client
```

on the host `server`.

Files `dead.letter`

Unmailable text

`/etc/default/sendmail`

Contains default settings. You can override some of the settings by command line options.

`/etc/mail/aliases`

Mail aliases file (ASCII)

`/etc/mail/aliases.db`

Database of mail aliases (binary)

`/etc/mail/aliases.dir`

Database of mail aliases (binary)

`/etc/mail/aliases.pag`

Database of mail aliases (binary)

`/etc/mail/sendmail.cf`

Defines environment for sendmail

`/etc/mail/submit.cf`

Defines environment for MSP

`/etc/mail/trusted-users`

Lists users that are “trusted”, that is, able to set their envelope from address using `-f` without generating a warning message. Note that this file is consulted by the default `sendmail.cf`, but not by the default `submit.cf`, in which the line referring to `/etc/mail/trusted-users` is commented out. See [sendmail\(4\)](#) for instructions on making changes to `submit.cf` and `sendmail.cf`.

`/var/spool/clientmqueue/*`

Temporary files and queued mail

`/var/spool/mqueue/*`
 Temporary files and queued mail

`~/.forward`
 List of recipients for forwarding messages

`/usr/include/libmilter/README`
 Describes the steps needed to compile and run a filter

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWsndmu

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [biff\(1B\)](#), [mail\(1\)](#), [mailq\(1\)](#), [mailx\(1\)](#), [nice\(1\)](#), [check-hostname\(1M\)](#), [check-permissions\(1M\)](#), [etrn\(1M\)](#), [newaliases\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [fork\(2\)](#), [getpwnam\(3C\)](#), [getusershell\(3C\)](#), [resolver\(3RESOLV\)](#), [aliases\(4\)](#), [hosts\(4\)](#), [sendmail\(4\)](#), [shells\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [random\(7D\)](#)

[tcpd\(1M\)](#), [hosts_access\(4\)](#) in the SUNWtcpd package.

RFC 2821 *Simple Mail Transfer Protocol*, John Klensin, April 2001.

RFC 2822 *Internet Message Format*, Pete Resnick, April 2001.

sendmail, Third Edition, Bryan Costales with Eric Allman, O'Reilly & Associates, Inc., 2003.

<http://www.sendmail.org>

<http://www.milter.org>

Notes The `sendmail` program requires a fully qualified host name when starting. A script has been included to help verify if the host name is defined properly (see [check-hostname\(1M\)](#)).

The permissions and the ownership of several directories have been changed in order to increase security. In particular, access to `/etc/mail` and `/var/spool/mqueue` has been restricted.

Security restrictions have been placed users using `.forward` files to pipe mail to a program or redirect mail to a file. The default shell (as listed in `/etc/passwd`) of these users must be listed in `/etc/shells`. This restriction does not affect mail that is being redirected to another alias.

Additional restrictions have been put in place on `.forward` and `:include:` files. These files and the directory structure that they are placed in cannot be group- or world-writable. See [check-permissions\(1M\)](#).

If you have interfaces that map to domains that have MX records that point to non-local destinations, you might need to enable the `DontProbeInterfaces` option to enable delivery to those destinations. In its default startup behavior, `sendmail` probes each interface and adds an

interface's IP addresses, as well as any domains that those addresses map to, to its list of domains that are considered local. For domains thus added, being on the list of local domains is equivalent to having a 0-preference MX record, with `localhost` as the MX value. If this is not the result you want, enable `DontProbeInterfaces`.

Name setuname – change machine information

Synopsis setuname [-t] [-n *node*] [-s *name*]

Description The setuname utility changes the parameter value for the system name and node name. Each parameter can be changed using setuname and the appropriate option.

Either or both the -s and -n options must be given when invoking setuname.

The system architecture may place requirements on the size of the system and network node name. The command will issue a fatal warning message and an error message if the name entered is incompatible with the system requirements.

Options The following options are supported:

- n *node* Changes the node name. *node* specifies the new network node name and can consist of alphanumeric characters and the special characters dash, underbar, and dollar sign.
- s *name* Changes the system name. *name* specifies new system name and can consist of alphanumeric characters and the special characters dash, underbar, and dollar sign.
- t Temporary change. No attempt will be made to create a permanent change.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes setuname attempts to change the parameter values in two places: the running kernel and, as necessary per implementation, to cross system reboots. A temporary change changes only the running kernel.

Name sf880drd – Sun Fire 880 Dynamic Reconfiguration daemon

Synopsis sf880drd

Description The Sun Fire 880 Dynamic Reconfiguration daemon, `sf880drd`, is part of the PCI and system bus hotplug framework. `sf880drd` starts at boot time. It has no configuration options and does not report any system status.

`sf880drd` implements the Sun Fire 880 console-less system administration (per-slot pushbuttons and LED status indicators). It also manages various aspects of CPU/memory hotplug.

Files /usr/platform/SUNW,Sun-Fire-880/lib/sf880drd

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWsfdr.u

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [cfgadm\(1M\)](#), [cfgadm_pci\(1M\)](#), [cfgadm_sbd\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Notes The `sf880drd` service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/platform/sun4u/sf880drd
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name sftp-server – SFTP server subsystem

Synopsis /usr/lib/ssh/sftp-server [-f *log_facility*] [-l *log_level*]

Description sftp-server implements the server side of the SSH File Transfer Protocol as defined in the IETF draft-ietf-secsh-filexfer.

sftp-server is a subsystem for [sshd\(1M\)](#) and must not be run directly. Command-line flags to sftp-server should be specified in the Subsystem declaration. See [sshd_config\(4\)](#) for more information.

To enable the sftp-server subsystem for sshd add the following to /etc/ssh/sshd_config:

```
Subsystem sftp /usr/lib/ssh/sftp-server
```

See [sshd_config\(4\)](#) for a description of the format and contents of that file.

There is no relationship between the protocol used by sftp-server and the FTP protocol (RFC 959) provided by in.ftpd.

Options Valid options are listed below. As stated above, these are to be specified in the Subsystem declation of sshd_config.

-f *log_facility*

Specifies the facility code that is used when logging messages from sftp-server. The possible values are: DAEMON, USER, AUTH, LOCAL0, LOCAL1, LOCAL2, LOCAL3, LOCAL4, LOCAL5, LOCAL6, LOCAL7. The default is AUTH.

-l *log_level*

Specifies which messages will be logged by sftp-server. The possible values are: QUIET, FATAL, ERROR, INFO, VERBOSE, DEBUG, DEBUG1, DEBUG2, and DEBUG3. INFO and VERBOSE log transactions that sftp-server performs on behalf of the client. DEBUG and DEBUG1 are equivalent. DEBUG2 and DEBUG3 each specify higher levels of debugging output. The default is ERROR.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

Files /usr/lib/ssh/sftp-server Server-side binary.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWsshdu
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [sftp\(1\)](#), [ssh\(1\)](#), [ssh-add\(1\)](#), [ssh-keygen\(1\)](#), [sshd\(1M\)](#), [sshd_config\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name share – make local resource available for mounting by remote systems

Synopsis share [-p] [-F *FSType*] [-o *specific_options*] [-d *description*]
[*pathname*]

Description The share command exports, or makes a resource available for mounting, through a remote file system of type *FSType*. If the option -F *FSType* is omitted, the first file system type listed in /etc/dfs/fstypes is used as default. For a description of NFS specific options, see [share_nfs\(1M\)](#). *pathname* is the pathname of the directory to be shared. When invoked with no arguments, share displays all shared file systems.

Options -d *description*

The -d flag may be used to provide a description of the resource being shared.

-F *FSType*

Specify the filesystem type.

-o *specific_options*

The *specific_options* are used to control access of the shared resource. (See [share_nfs\(1M\)](#) for the NFS specific options.) They may be any of the following:

rw

pathname is shared read/write to all clients. This is also the default behavior.

rw=*client[:client]...*

pathname is shared read/write only to the listed clients. No other systems can access *pathname*.

ro

pathname is shared read-only to all clients.

ro=*client[:client]...*

pathname is shared read-only only to the listed clients. No other systems can access *pathname*.

Separate multiple options with commas. Separate multiple operands for an option with colons. See EXAMPLES.

-p

Causes the share operation to persist across reboots.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Sharing a Read-Only Filesystem

This line will share the /disk file system read-only at boot time.

```
share -F nfs -o ro /disk
```

EXAMPLE 2 Invoking Multiple Options

The following command shares the filesystem `/export/manuals`, with members of the `netgroup` having read-only access and users on the specified host having read-write access.

```
share -F nfs -o ro=netgroup_name,rw=host1:host2:host3 /export/manuals
```

Files `/etc/dfs/dfstab`

List of share commands to be executed at boot time. Note that you can invoke `share` from a command line and use the `-p` option, described above, as an alternative to editing this file.

`/etc/dfs/fstypes`

List of file system types; NFS is the default.

`/etc/dfs/sharetab`

System record of shared file systems.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [mountd\(1M\)](#), [nfsd\(1M\)](#), [share_nfs\(1M\)](#), [shareall\(1M\)](#), [unshare\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes Export (old terminology): file system sharing used to be called exporting on SunOS 4.x, so the `share` command used to be invoked as [exportfs\(1B\)](#) or `/usr/sbin/exportfs`.

If `share` commands are invoked multiple times on the same filesystem, the last `share` invocation supersedes the previous—the options set by the last `share` command replace the old options. For example, if read-write permission was given to `usera` on `/somefs`, then to give read-write permission also to `userb` on `/somefs`:

```
example% share -F nfs -o rw=usera:userb /somefs
```

This behavior is not limited to sharing the root filesystem, but applies to all filesystems.

Name shareall, unshareall – share, unshare multiple resources

Synopsis shareall [-F *FSType* [, *FSType*]...] [-| *file*]
unshareall [-F *FSType* [, *FSType*]...]

Description When used with no arguments, shareall shares all resources from *file*, which contains a list of share command lines. If the operand is a hyphen (-), then the share command lines are obtained from the standard input. Otherwise, if neither a *file* nor a hyphen is specified, then the file */etc/dfs/dfstab* is used as the default.

Resources may be shared by specific file system types by specifying the file systems in a comma-separated list as an argument to -F.

unshareall unshares all currently shared resources. Without a -F flag, it unshares resources for all distributed file system types.

Options -F *FSType* Specify file system type. Defaults to the first entry in */etc/dfs/fstypes*.

Files */etc/dfs/dfstab*

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [share\(1M\)](#), [unshare\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name sharectl – configure and manage file sharing service

Synopsis sharectl [-h]
 sharectl status [-h] [*protocol*]
 sharectl get [-h] [-p *property*]... *protocol*
 sharectl set [-h] [-p *property=value*]... *protocol*

Description The sharectl command operates on file-sharing protocols, such as NFS. The command sets the client and server operational properties, takes and restores configuration snapshots, and gets status of the protocol service.

The get and set subcommands (see below) require root privileges or that you assume the Primary Administrator role. A non-privileged user can change the Solaris CIFS client's persistent settings when granted the SMBFS Management rights profile in the /etc/user_attr file. See [user_attr\(4\)](#) and [rbac\(5\)](#). An authorized user can use sharectl to set global values for Solaris CIFS server properties in the Solaris server management facility. See [smb\(4\)](#).

Options The following options are supported:

-h
 Displays usage message.
 -p *property*[=*value*]
 Specifies a property. See “Subcommands,” below.

Subcommands sharectl supports the subcommands described below. The form of a sharectl command is:

```
# sharectl subcommand [option]
```

get [-p <i>property</i>] <i>protocol</i>	Get the property values for the specified protocol. If no -p option is provided, get all the properties for the specified protocol. For NFS, properties correspond to entries in the /etc/default/nfs file. See nfs(4) .
set [-p <i>property=value</i>]... <i>protocol</i>	Set properties for the specified file sharing protocol.
status [<i>protocol</i>]	Display status of the specified protocol, or, if no protocol is specified, of all file-sharing protocols.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Setting a Property

The following command sets the minimum version of the server NFS protocol to version 3.

```
% sharectl -p server_versmin=3 nfs
```

EXAMPLE 2 Getting Properties

The following command gets the properties for the NFS protocol.

EXAMPLE 2 Getting Properties *(Continued)*

```
% sharectl get nfs
lockd_listen_backlog=32
lockd_servers=20
lockd_retransmit_timeout=5
grace_period=90
nfsmapid_domain=sun.com
servers=16
server_versmin=2
server_versmax=4
max_connections=-1
```

The following command gets the value of the `grace_period` property for the NFS protocol.

```
% sharectl get -p grace_period nfs
grace_period=90
```

EXAMPLE 3 Obtaining Status

The following command obtains the status of all file-sharing protocols on a system.

```
% sharectl status
nfs      enabled
```

EXAMPLE 4 Configuring Global Settings

The following command shows how an authorized user can use `sharectl` commands to configure global settings for the `ex.com` environment in the service management facility (SMF). See [nsmbr\(4\)](#) for a description of the example environment, `ex.com`. See [smf\(5\)](#) for a description of the SMF.

```
# sharectl set -p section=default -p workgroup=SALES \
-p timeout=5 smbfs
# sharectl set -p section=FSERVER -p addr=fserv.ex.com smbfs
# sharectl set -p section=RSERVER -p workgroup=REMGROUP \
-p addr=rserv.ex.com smbfs
# sharectl set -p section=RSERVER:george -p timeout=30 smbfs
# sharectl set -p section="SSERV:*:POKY" -p addr=sserv.ex.com \
-p timeout=25 smbfs
```

EXAMPLE 5 Displaying Current Settings

The following command shows how an authorized user can use the `sharectl get` command to view the global settings for `smbfs` in the SMF. The values shown are those set by the previous example.

EXAMPLE 5 Displaying Current Settings *(Continued)*

```
% # sharectl get smbfs
[default]
workgroup=SALES
timeout=5
[FSERVER]
addr=fserv.ex.com
[RSERVER]
workgroup=REMGROUP
addr=rserv.ex.com
[RSERVER:george]
timeout=30
[SSERV:*:POKY]
addr=sserv.ex.com
timeout=25
```

Exit Status 0 Successful completion.

non-zero Command failed.

Files /usr/include/libshare.h Error codes used for exit status.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Committed

See Also [sharemgr\(1M\)](#), [nfs\(4\)](#), [nsmbr\(4\)](#), [user_attr\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [rbac\(5\)](#), [smb\(4\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [standards\(5\)](#)

Name sharemgr – configure and manage file sharing

Synopsis sharemgr *subcommand* [*options*]

```

add-share [-nth] [-r resource-name] [-d "description text"]
  -s sharepath group

create [-nvh] [-P proto [-p property=value]] group

delete [-nvh] [-P proto] [-f] group

disable [-nvh] [-a | group...]

enable [-nvh] [-a | group...]

list [-vh] [-P proto]

move-share [-nv] -s sharepath destination-group

remove-share [-fnvh] -s sharepath group

set [-nvh] -P proto [-p property=value]... [-S optionset]
  [-s sharepath] group

set-share [-nh] [-r resource] [-d "description text"]
  -s sharepath group

show [-pvxh] [-P proto] [group]...

unset [-nvh] -P proto [-S optionset] [-p property]...
  group

share [-F fstype] [-p] [-o optionlist] [-d description]
  [pathname [resourcename]]

unshare [-F fstype] [-p] [-o optionlist] sharepath

```

Description The sharemgr command configures share groups and the shares contained within them.

A group name must conform to service management facility (SMF) (see [smf\(5\)](#)) service-naming conventions, thus is limited to starting with an alphabetic character, with the rest of the name consisting only of alphanumeric characters plus - (hyphen) and _ (underbar).

Subcommands that result in a configuration change support a dry-run option. When dry-run (-n) is specified, the syntax and validity of the command is tested but the configuration is not actually updated.

For all subcommands, the -h option lists usage and help information.

For subcommands with the verbose (-v) option, additional information will be provided. For example, in conjunction with the -n option, verbose mode will also indicate whether the current user has sufficient permissions to accomplish the operation.

There are two groups that are created automatically. The default group always exists and covers legacy NFS shares only. The zfs group will be created when ZFS shares are enabled.

The options shown in the SYNOPSIS section are described in the context of each subcommand. All subcommands except `list` and `show` require root privileges or that you assume the Primary Administrator role.

Subcommands With no subcommand entered, a `sharemgr` command with the `-h` option displays a usage message for all subcommands.

The following subcommands follow `sharemgr` on a command line. Commands take the form:

```
% sharemgr <subcommand> [options]
```

```
create [-nvh] [-P proto [-p property=value]] group
```

Create a new group with specified name.

If `-n` is specified, the command checks only the validity of the command and that the group does not already exist.

If no protocol is specified, all known protocols are enabled for the specified group. If a protocol is specified, only that protocol is enabled. You can specify properties for a specified protocol.

If *group* exists, use of `-P` adds the specified protocol to that group.

As an example of the `create` subcommand, the following command creates a new group with the name `mygroup`.

```
# sharemgr create mygroup
```

Because no protocol was specified in the preceding command, all defined protocols will be enabled on the group.

```
delete [-nvh] [-P proto] [-f] group
```

Delete the specified group. If the group is not empty, you can use the `-f` option to force the deletion, which unshares and removes all shares from the group before removing the group itself.

If you specify a protocol, rather than deleting the whole group, this subcommand deletes the protocol from the group.

The `-n` option can be used to test the syntax of the command.

As an example, the following command removes the group `mygroup` from the configuration if it is empty.

```
# sharemgr delete mygroup
```

The following command removes any existing shares prior to removing the group.

```
# sharemgr delete -f mygroup
```

Note the use of the force (`-f`) option, above.

```
list [-vh] [-P proto]
```

List the defined groups.

If a protocol is specified, list only those groups that have the specified protocol defined.

If the verbose option is specified, the current state of the group and all protocols enabled on the group are listed as well. For example:

```
# sharemgr list -v
mygroup    enabled    nfs
rdonlygrp  disabled   nfs
```

```
show [-pvxh] [-P proto] [group...]
```

Shows the contents of the specified group(s).

If the verbose option is specified, the resource name and description of each share is displayed if they are defined. Otherwise, only the share paths are displayed. Also, when temporary shares are listed, they are prefixed with an asterisk (*).

If the -p option is specified, all options defined for the protocols of the group are displayed, in addition to the display without options. If the -P option is used, the output is limited to those groups that have the specified protocol enabled. If the -x option is specified, output is in XML format and the -p and -v options are ignored, because all information is included in the XML.

The following example illustrates the use of the -p option.

```
# sharemgr show -p mygroup
default nfs=(
    * /data/backup
mygroup nfs=(nosuid=true)
    /export/home/home0
    /export/home/home1
```

The following example illustrates the use of the -v option.

```
# sharemgr show -v mygroup
mygroup
    HOME0=/export/home/home0    "Home directory set 0"
    HOME1=/export/home/home1    "Home directory set 1"
```

ZFS managed shares are handled in a way similar to the way NFS shares are handled. These shares appear as subgroups within the parent group `zfs`. The subgroups are always prefixed with `zfs/` and use the ZFS dataset name for the rest of the name. The mount point and any sub-mounts that inherit sharing are shown as the shares of the subgroup. For example:

```
# sharemgr show -vp zfs
zfs      nfs=(
    zfs/ztest
```

```

/ztest
/ztest/backups

```

set [-nvh] -P *proto* [-S *optionset*] [-p *property=value*]* [-s *share path*] *group*
 Set protocol-specific properties on the specified group.

The -P option is required and must specify a valid protocol.

Optionsets are protocol-specific sets of properties that can be negotiated by the protocol client. For NFS, optionsets are equivalent to security modes as defined in [nfssec\(5\)](#). If -S *optionset* is specified, the properties are applied to the selected optionset. Otherwise they are applied to the general optionset.

Together, -P and -S select a specific view of the group's options on which to work.

Property values are strings. A specified property is set to a new value if the property already exists or is added to the protocol if it does not already exist.

In the general case, at least one property must be set. If -S is specified, properties can be omitted and the specified optionset is enabled for the protocol.

The -s option allows setting properties on a per-share basis. While this is supported, it should be limited to managing legacy shares and to the occasional need for an override of a group-level property or placing an additional property on one share within a group.

An example of this subcommand:

```
# sharemgr set -P nfs -p anon=1234 mygroup
```

The preceding command adds the property anon=1234 to the nfs view of group mygroup. If mygroup has existing shares, they will all be reshared with the new property value(s).

unset [-nvh] -P *proto* [-S *optionset*] [-p *property*]* [-s *sharepath*] *group*
 Unset the specified properties for the protocol or for the specified *optionset* of the protocol.

In the general case, at least one property must be set. If -S is specified, properties can be omitted and the specified optionset is removed from the protocol.

The -s option allows removing a share-specific property.

An example of this subcommand:

```
# sharemgr unset -P nfs -p anon mygroup
```

The preceding command removes the anon= property from the nfs view of group mygroup. If mygroup has existing shares, they will all be reshared with the new property value(s).

add-share [-nth] [-r *resource-name*] [-d "*description text*"] -s *sharepath* *group*
 Add a new share to the specified group.

The -s option is mandatory and takes a full directory path.

If either or both of `-d` and `-r` are specified, they specify values associated with the share. `-d` provides a description string to document the share and `-r` provides a protocol-independent resource name. Resource names are not used by NFS at this time but can be specified. These names currently follow the same naming rules as group names.

The temporary option (`-t`) results in the share being shared but not stored in the configuration repository. This option is intended for shares that should not survive a reboot or server restart, or for testing purposes. Temporary shares are indicated in the `show` subcommand output with an asterisk (*) preceding the share.

If *sharepath* is a ZFS path and that path is added to the `zfs` group, `sharemgr` creates a new ZFS subgroup; the new share is added to that subgroup. Any ZFS sub-file systems under the ZFS filesystem designated by *sharepath* will inherit the shared status of *sharepath*.

The effect of the `add-share` subcommand on a ZFS dataset is determined by the values of the `sharesmb` and `sharenfs` properties of that dataset.

See [zfs\(1M\)](#) for a description of the `sharesmb` and `sharenfs` properties.

The following are examples of the `add-share` subcommand.

```
# sharemgr add-share -s /export/home/home0 -d "home \
directory set 0" -r HOME0 mygroup
```

```
# sharemgr add-share -s /export/home/home1 -d "home \
directory set 1" -r HOME1 mygroup
```

The preceding commands add `/export/home/home0` and `/export/home/home1` to the group `mygroup`. A descriptive comment and a resource name are included.

`move-share [-nvh] -s sharepath destination-group`

Move the specified share from the group it is currently in to the specified destination group. The `move-share` subcommand does not create a group. A specified group must exist for the command to succeed.

The following is an example of this subcommand.

```
# sharemgr move-share -s /export/home/home1 newgroup
```

Assuming `/export/home/home1` is in the group `mygroup`, the preceding command moves `/export/home/home1` to the group `newgroup` and unshares and then reshares the directory with the properties associated with `newgroup`.

`remove-share [-fnvh] -s sharepath group`

Remove the specified share from the specified group. The force (`-f`) option forces the share to be removed even if it is busy.

You must specify the full path for *sharepath*. For group, use the subgroup as displayed in the output of the `sharemgr show` command. Note that if there are subshares that were created by inheritance, these will be removed, along with the parent shares.

`set-share [-nvh] [-r resource] [-d "description text"] -s sharepath group`
 Set or change the specified share's description and resource values. One use of `set-share` is to rename a resource. The syntax for this use of the subcommand is:

```
# sharemgr set-share -r current_name=new_name -s sharepath group
```

`enable [-nvh] [group... | -a]`
 Enable the specified group(s), or (with `-a`) all groups, and start sharing the contained shares. This state persists across reboots.

An enabled group will be shared whenever the corresponding SMF service instance is enabled. `sharemgr` will start the SMF service instance if it is not currently online.

`disable [-nvh] [group... | -a]`
 Disable the specified group(s), or (with `-a`) all groups, and unshare the shares that they contain. This state persists across reboots.

A disabled group will not be shared even if the corresponding SMF service instance is online. This feature is useful when you do not want a group of shares to be started at boot time.

`start [-vh] [-P proto] [group... | -a]`
 Start the specified group, or (with `-a`) all groups. The `start` subcommand is similar to `enable` in that all shares are started, but `start` works only on groups that are enabled. `start` is used by the SMF to start sharing at system boot.

A group will not start sharing if it is in the `sharemgr disabled` state. However, the corresponding SMF service instance will be started.

Note that the `start` subcommand is similar to the `shareall(1M)` command in that it starts up only the configured shares. That is, the enabled shares will start being shared, but the configuration state is left the same. The command:

```
# sharemgr start -a
```

...is equivalent to:

```
# shareall
```

`stop [-vh] [-P proto] [group... | -a]`
 Stop the specified group, or (with `-a`) all groups. The `stop` subcommand is similar to `disable` in that all shares are no longer shared, but it works only on groups that are enabled. `stop` is used by the SMF to stop sharing at system shutdown.

Note that the `stop` subcommand is similar to the `shareall(1M)` command in that all active shares are unshared, but the configuration is left the same. That is, the shares are stopped but the service instances are left enabled. The command:

```
# sharemgr stop -a
```

...is equivalent to:

unshareall

`share [-F fstype] [-p] [-o optionlist] [-d description] [pathname [resourcename]]`
 Shares the specified path in the default share group. This subcommand implements the [share\(1M\)](#) functionality. Shares that are shared in this manner will be transient shares. Use of the `-p` option causes the shares to be persistent.

`unshare [-F fstype] [-p] [-o optionlist] sharepath`
 Unshares the specified share. This subcommand implements the [unshare\(1M\)](#) functionality. By default, the unshare is temporary. The `-p` option is provided to remove the share from the configuration in a way that persists across reboots.

Supported Properties Properties are protocol-specific. Currently, only the NFS and SMB protocols are supported. Properties have the following characteristics:

- Values of type *boolean* take either `true` or `false`.
- Values of type *value* take a numeric value.
- Values of type *file* take a file name and not a file path.
- Values of type *access-list* are described in detail following the descriptions of the NFS properties.

The general properties supported for NFS are:

abe=*boolean*

Set the access-based enumeration (ABE) policy for a share. When set to `true`, ABE filtering is enabled on this share and directory entries to which the requesting user has no access will be omitted from directory listings returned to the client. When set to `false` or not defined, ABE filtering will not be performed on this share. This property is not defined by default.

disabled

Disable ABE for this share.

enabled

Enable ABE for this share.

aclok=*boolean*

Allows the NFS server to do access control for NFS Version 2 clients (running SunOS 2.4 or earlier). When `aclok` is set on the server, maximum access is given to all clients. For example, with `aclok` set, if anyone has read permissions, then everyone does. If `aclok` is not set, minimum access is given to all clients.

ad-container

Specifies the AD container in which to publish shares.

The AD container is specified as a comma-separated list of attribute name-value pairs using the LDAP distinguished name (DN) or relative distinguished name (RDN) format. The DN or RDN must be specified in LDAP format using the `cn=`, `ou=`, and `dc=` prefixes:

- `cn` represents the common name

- `ou` represents the organizational unit
- `dc` represents the domain component

`cn=`, `ou=` and `dc=` are attribute types. The attribute type used to describe an object's RDN is called the naming attribute, which, for ADS, includes the following object classes:

- `cn` for the user object class
- `ou` for the organizational unit (OU) object class
- `dc` for the domainDns object class

`anon=uid`

Set `uid` to be the effective user ID of unknown users. By default, unknown users are given the effective user ID `UID_NOBODY`. If `uid` is set to `-1`, access is denied.

`catia=boolean`

CATIA V4 uses characters in file names that are considered to be invalid by Windows. CATIA V5 is available on Windows. A CATIA V4 file could be inaccessible to Windows clients if the file name contains any of the characters that are considered illegal in Windows. By default, CATIA character substitution is not performed.

If the `catia` property is set to true, the following character substitution is applied to file names.

CATIA V4 UNIX	CATIA V5 Windows	
"	\250 0x00a8	Dieresis
*	\244 0x00a4	Currency Sign
/	\370 0x00f8	Latin Small Letter O with Stroke
:	\367 0x00f7	Division Sign
<	\253 0x00ab	Left-Pointing Double Angle Quotation Mark
>	\273 0x00bb	Right-Pointing Double Angle Quotation Mark
?	\277 0x00bf	Inverted Question Mark
\	\377 0x00ff	Latin Small Letter Y with Dieresis
	\246 0x00a6	Broken Bar

`cksum=cksumlist`

Set the share to attempt to use end-to-end checksums. The value `cksumlist` specifies the checksum algorithms that should be used.

`csc=value`

Set the client-side caching policy for a share. Client-side caching is a client feature and offline files are managed entirely by the clients.

The following are valid values for the `csc` property:

- `manual` – Clients are permitted to cache files from the specified share for offline use as requested by users. However, automatic file-by-file reintegration is not permitted. `manual` is the default value.
- `auto` – Clients are permitted to automatically cache files from the specified share for offline use and file-by-file reintegration is permitted.

- `vdo` – Clients are permitted to automatically cache files from the specified share for offline use, file-by-file reintegration is permitted, and clients are permitted to work from their local cache even while offline.
- `disabled` – Client-side caching is not permitted for this share.

guestok=boolean

Set the guest access policy for the share. When set to `true` guest access is allowed on this share. When set to `false` or not defined guest access is not allowed on this share. This property is not defined by default.

An `idmap(1M)` name-based rule can be used to map `guest` to any local username, such as `guest` or `nobody`. If the local account has a password in `/var/smb/smbpasswd` the guest connection will be authenticated against that password. Any connection made using an account that maps to the local `guest` account will be treated as a guest connection.

Example name-based rule:

```
# idmap add winname:Guest unixuser:guest
```

index=file

Load *file* rather than a listing of the directory containing this file when the directory is referenced by an NFS URL.

log=tag

Enables NFS server logging for the specified system. The optional tag determines the location of the related log files. The tag is defined in `etc/nfs/nfslog.conf`. If no tag is specified, the default values associated with the global tag in `etc/nfs/nfslog.conf` is used. Support of NFS server logging is available only for NFS Version 2 and Version 3 requests.

noaclfab=boolean

Allows NFS servers to not return fabricated ACLs to NFS clients. The default behavior for NFS servers is to fabricate ACLs. If `noaclfab` is set to `true`, then the NFS server does not fabricate ACLs, which is the appropriate choice if the underlying filesystem does not support the POSIX Draft ACL.

nosub=boolean

Prevents clients from mounting subdirectories of shared directories. For example, if `/export` is shared with the `nosub` option on server `wool` then an NFS client cannot do:

```
# mount -F nfs wool:/export/home/mnt
```

NFS Version 4 does not use the MOUNT protocol. The `nosub` option applies only to NFS Version 2 and Version 3 requests.

nosuid=boolean

By default, clients are allowed to create files on a shared file system with the `setuid` or `setgid` mode enabled. Specifying `nosuid` causes the server file system to silently ignore any attempt to enable the `setuid` or `setgid` mode bits.

public=boolean

Moves the location of the public file handle from root (/) to the exported directory for WebNFS-enabled browsers and clients. This option does not enable WebNFS service; WebNFS is always on. Only one file system per server can have the `public` property. You can apply the `public` property only to a share and not to a group.

NFS also supports negotiated optionsets for supported security modes. The security modes are documented in [nfssec\(5\)](#). The properties supported for these optionsets are:

charset=access-list

Where *charset* is one of: `euc-cn`, `euc-jp`, `euc-jpms`, `euc-kr`, `euc-tw`, `iso8859-1`, `iso8859-2`, `iso8859-5`, `iso8859-6`, `iso8859-7`, `iso8859-8`, `iso8859-9`, `iso8859-13`, `iso8859-15`, `koi8-r`.

Clients that match the *access-list* for one of these properties will be assumed to be using that character set and file and path names will be converted to UTF-8 for the server.

ro=access-list

Sharing is read-only to the clients listed in *access-list*; overrides the `rw` suboption for the clients specified. See the description of *access-list* below.

rw=access-list

Sharing is read-write to the clients listed in *access-list*; overrides the `ro` suboption for the clients specified. See the description of *access-list* below.

none=access-list

Access is not allowed to any client that matches the access list. The exception is when the access list is an asterisk (*), in which case `ro` or `rw` can override `none`.

root=access-list

Only root users from the hosts specified in *access-list* have root access. See details on *access-list* below. By default, no host has root access, so root users are mapped to an anonymous user ID (see the `anon=uid` option described above). Netgroups can be used if the file system shared is using UNIX authentication (`AUTH_SYS`).

root_mapping=uid

For a client that is allowed root access, map the root UID to the specified user id.

window=value

When sharing with `sec=dh` (see [nfssec\(5\)](#)), set the maximum lifetime (in seconds) of the RPC request's credential (in the authentication header) that the NFS server allows. If a credential arrives with a lifetime larger than what is allowed, the NFS server rejects the request. The default value is 30000 seconds (8.3 hours). This property is ignored for security modes other than `dh`.

The general properties supported for SMB are:

ro=access-list

Sharing is read-only to the clients listed in *access-list*; overrides the *rw* suboption for the clients specified. See the description of *access-list* below.

rw=access-list

Sharing is read-write to the clients listed in *access-list*; overrides the *ro* suboption for the clients specified. See the description of *access-list* below.

none=access-list

Access is not allowed to any client that matches the access list. The exception is when the access list is an asterisk (*), in which case *ro* or *rw* can override none.

Access List Argument The *access-list* argument is either the string "*" to represent all hosts or a colon-separated list whose components can be any number of the following:

hostname

The name of a host. With a server configured for DNS or LDAP naming in the [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#) *hosts* entry, a hostname must be represented as a fully qualified DNS or LDAP name.

netgroup

A *netgroup* contains a number of hostnames. With a server configured for DNS or LDAP naming in the [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#) *hosts* entry, any hostname in a *netgroup* must be represented as a fully qualified DNS or LDAP name.

domainname.suffix

To use domain membership the server must use DNS or LDAP, rather than, for example, NIS, to resolve hostnames to IP addresses. That is, the *hosts* entry in the [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#) must specify *dns* or *ldap* ahead of *nis*, because only DNS and LDAP return the full domain name of the host. Other name services, such as NIS, cannot be used to resolve hostnames on the server because, when mapping an IP address to a hostname, they do not return domain information. For example, for the IP address 172.16.45.9:

NIS

Returns: myhost

DNS or LDAP

Returns: myhost.mydomain.mycompany.com

The domain name suffix is distinguished from hostnames and *netgroups* by a prefixed dot. For example:

rw=.mydomain.mycompany.com

A single dot can be used to match a hostname with no suffix. For example, the specification:

rw=.

...matches *mydomain* but not *mydomain.mycompany.com*. This feature can be used to match hosts resolved through NIS rather than DNS and LDAP.

network

The network or subnet component is preceded by an at-sign (@). It can be either a name or a dotted address. If a name, it is converted to a dotted address by `getnetbyname(3SOCKET)`. For example:

```
=@mynet
```

...is equivalent to:

```
=@172.16 or =@172.16.0.0
```

The network prefix assumes an octet-aligned netmask determined from the zeroth octet in the low-order part of the address up to and including the high-order octet, if you want to specify a single IP address. In the case where network prefixes are not byte-aligned, the syntax allows a mask length to be specified explicitly following a slash (/) delimiter. For example:

```
=@theoethernet/17 or =@172.16.132/22
```

...where the mask is the number of leftmost contiguous significant bits in the corresponding IP address.

A prefixed minus sign (-) denies access to a component of *access-list*. The list is searched sequentially until a match is found that either grants or denies access, or until the end of the list is reached. For example, if host terra is in the netgroup engineering, then:

```
rw=-terra:engineering
```

...denies access to terra, but:

```
rw=engineering:-terra
```

...grants access to terra.

Exit Status 0 Successful completion.
 98 Service is offline and cannot be enabled (start only).
other non-zero Command failed.

Files /usr/include/libshare.h Error codes used for exit status.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Committed

See Also [idmap\(1M\)](#), [sharectl\(1M\)](#), [zfs\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [nfssec\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [standards\(5\)](#)

Name share_nfs – make local NFS file systems available for mounting by remote systems

Synopsis share [-d *description*] [-F *nfs*] [-o *specific_options*] *pathname*

Description The share utility makes local file systems available for mounting by remote systems. It starts the [nfsd\(1M\)](#) and [mountd\(1M\)](#) daemons if they are not already running.

If no argument is specified, then share displays all file systems currently shared, including NFS file systems and file systems shared through other distributed file system packages.

Options The following options are supported:

-d *description*

Provide a comment that describes the file system to be shared.

-F *nfs*

Share NFS file system type.

-o *specific_options*

Specify *specific_options* in a comma-separated list of keywords and attribute-value-assertions for interpretation by the file-system-type-specific command. If *specific_options* is not specified, then by default sharing is read-write to all clients. *specific_options* can be any combination of the following:

aclok

Allows the NFS server to do access control for NFS Version 2 clients (running SunOS 2.4 or earlier). When aclok is set on the server, maximal access is given to all clients. For example, with aclok set, if anyone has read permissions, then everyone does. If aclok is not set, minimal access is given to all clients.

anon=*uid*

Set *uid* to be the effective user ID of unknown users. By default, unknown users are given the effective user ID UID_NOBODY. If *uid* is set to -1, access is denied.

charset=*access_list*

Where *charset* is one of: euc-cn, euc-jp, euc-jpms, euc-kr, euc-tw, iso8859-1, iso8859-2, iso8859-5, iso8859-6, iso8859-7, iso8859-8, iso8859-9, iso8859-13, iso8859-15, koi8-r.

Clients that match the *access_list* for one of these properties will be assumed to be using that character set and file and path names will be converted to UTF-8 for the server.

index=*file*

Load *file* rather than a listing of the directory containing this file when the directory is referenced by an NFS URL.

log=*tag*

Enables NFS server logging for the specified file system. The optional tag determines the location of the related log files. The *tag* is defined in `etc/nfs/nfslog.conf`. If no *tag* is

specified, the default values associated with the *global tag* in `etc/nfs/nfslog.conf` is used. Support of NFS server logging is only available for NFS Version 2 and Version 3 requests.

`noaclfab`

Allows NFS servers to not return fabricated ACLs to NFS clients. The default behavior for NFS servers is to fabricate ACLs. If `noaclfab` is set, then the NFS server does not fabricate ACLs, which is the appropriate choice if the underlying filesystem does not support the POSIX Draft ACL.

`none=access_list`

Access is not allowed to any client that matches the access list. The exception is when the access list is an asterisk (*), in which case `ro` or `rw` can override none.

`nosub`

Prevents clients from mounting subdirectories of shared directories. For example, if `/export` is shared with the `nosub` option on server *foeey* then a NFS client cannot do:

```
mount -F nfs foeey:/export/home/mnt
```

NFS Version 4 does not use the MOUNT protocol. The `nosub` option only applies to NFS Version 2 and Version 3 requests.

`nosuid`

By default, clients are allowed to create files on the shared file system with the `setuid` or `setgid` mode enabled. Specifying `nosuid` causes the server file system to silently ignore any attempt to enable the `setuid` or `setgid` mode bits.

`public`

Moves the location of the public file handle from `root (/)` to the exported directory for WebNFS-enabled browsers and clients. This option does not enable WebNFS service; WebNFS is always on. Only one file system per server may use this option. Any other option, including the `-ro=list` and `-rw=list` options can be included with the `public` option.

`ro`

Sharing is read-only to all clients.

`ro=access_list`

Sharing is read-only to the clients listed in *access_list*; overrides the `rw` suboption for the clients specified. See *access_list* below.

`root=access_list`

Only root users from the hosts specified in *access_list* have root access. See *access_list* below. By default, no host has root access, so root users are mapped to an anonymous user ID (see the `anon=uid` option described above). Netgroups can be used if the file system shared is using UNIX authentication (`AUTH_SYS`).

`root_mapping=uid`

For a client that is allowed root access, map the root UID to the specified user id.

`rw`

Sharing is read-write to all clients.

`rw=access_list`

Sharing is read-write to the clients listed in *access_list*; overrides the `ro` suboption for the clients specified. See *access_list* below.

`sec=mode[:mode]. . .`

Sharing uses one or more of the specified security modes. The *mode* in the `sec=mode` option must be a node name supported on the client. If the `sec=` option is not specified, the default security mode used is `AUTH_SYS`. Multiple `sec=` options can be specified on the command line, although each mode can appear only once. The security modes are defined in [nfssec\(5\)](#).

Each `sec=` option specifies modes that apply to any subsequent `window=`, `rw`, `ro`, `rw=`, `ro=` and `root=` options that are provided before another `sec=` option. Each additional `sec=` resets the security mode context, so that more `window=`, `rw`, `ro`, `rw=`, `ro=` and `root=` options can be supplied for additional modes.

`sec=none`

If the option `sec=none` is specified when the client uses `AUTH_NONE`, or if the client uses a security mode that is not one that the file system is shared with, then the credential of each NFS request is treated as unauthenticated. See the `anon=uid` option for a description of how unauthenticated requests are handled.

`secure`

This option has been deprecated in favor of the `sec=dh` option.

`window=value`

When sharing with `sec=dh`, set the maximum life time (in seconds) of the RPC request's credential (in the authentication header) that the NFS server allows. If a credential arrives with a life time larger than what is allowed, the NFS server rejects the request. The default value is 30000 seconds (8.3 hours).

access_list The *access_list* argument is a colon-separated list whose components may be any number of the following:

`hostname`

The name of a host. With a server configured for DNS or LDAP naming in the `nsswitch` “hosts” entry, any hostname must be represented as a fully qualified DNS or LDAP name.

`netgroup`

A netgroup contains a number of hostnames. With a server configured for DNS or LDAP naming in the `nsswitch` “hosts” entry, any hostname in a netgroup must be represented as a fully qualified DNS or LDAP name.

`domain name suffix`

To use domain membership the server must use DNS or LDAP to resolve hostnames to IP addresses; that is, the “hosts” entry in the `/etc/nsswitch.conf` must specify “dns” or

"ldap" ahead of "nis", since only DNS and LDAP return the full domain name of the host. Other name services like NIS cannot be used to resolve hostnames on the server because when mapping an IP address to a hostname they do not return domain information. For example,

```
NIS 172.16.45.9 --> "myhost"
```

and

```
DNS or LDAP 172.16.45.9 -->
             "myhost.mydomain.mycompany.com"
```

The domain name suffix is distinguished from hostnames and netgroups by a prefixed dot. For example,

```
rw=.mydomain.mycompany.com
```

A single dot can be used to match a hostname with no suffix. For example,

```
rw=.
```

matches "mydomain" but not "mydomain.mycompany.com". This feature can be used to match hosts resolved through NIS rather than DNS and LDAP.

network

The network or subnet component is preceded by an at-sign (@). It can be either a name or a dotted address. If a name, it is converted to a dotted address by [getnetbyname\(3SOCKET\)](#). For example,

```
=@mynet
```

would be equivalent to:

```
=@172.16 or =@172.16.0.0
```

The network prefix assumes an octet-aligned netmask determined from the zeroth octet in the low-order part of the address up to and including the high-order octet, if you want to specify a single IP address (see below). In the case where network prefixes are not byte-aligned, the syntax allows a mask length to be specified explicitly following a slash (/) delimiter. For example,

```
=@theothernet/17 or =@172.16.132/22
```

...where the mask is the number of leftmost contiguous significant bits in the corresponding IP address.

When specifying individual IP addresses, use the same @ notation described above, without a netmask specification. For example:

```
=@172.16.132.14
```

Multiple, individual IP addresses would be specified, for example, as:

```
root=@172.16.132.20:@172.16.134.20
```

A prefixed minus sign (-) denies access to that component of *access_list*. The list is searched sequentially until a match is found that either grants or denies access, or until the end of the list is reached. For example, if host "terra" is in the "engineering" netgroup, then

```
rw=- terra:engineering
```

denies access to terra but

```
rw=engineering:-terra
```

grants access to terra.

Operands The following operands are supported:

pathname

The pathname of the file system to be shared.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Sharing A File System With Logging Enabled

The following example shows the /export file system shared with logging enabled:

```
example% share -o log /export
```

The default global logging parameters are used since no tag identifier is specified. The location of the log file, as well as the necessary logging work files, is specified by the global entry in /etc/nfs/nfslog.conf. The `nfslogd(1M)` daemon runs only if at least one file system entry in /etc/dfs/dfstab is shared with logging enabled upon starting or rebooting the system. Simply sharing a file system with logging enabled from the command line does not start the `nfslogd(1M)`.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0

Successful completion.

>0

An error occurred.

Files /etc/dfs/fstypes
list of system types, NFS by default

/etc/dfs/sharetab
system record of shared file systems

/etc/nfs/nfslogtab
system record of logged file systems

/etc/nfs/nfslog.conf
logging configuration file

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWnfssu

See Also [mount\(1M\)](#), [mountd\(1M\)](#), [nfsd\(1M\)](#), [nfslogd\(1M\)](#), [share\(1M\)](#), [unshare\(1M\)](#), [getnetbyname\(3SOCKET\)](#), [nfslog.conf\(4\)](#), [netgroup\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [nfssec\(5\)](#)

Notes If the `sec=` option is presented at least once, all uses of the `window=`, `rw`, `ro`, `rw=`, `ro=` and `root=` options must come after the first `sec=` option. If the `sec=` option is not presented, then `sec=sys` is implied.

If one or more explicit `sec=` options are presented, `sys` must appear in one of the options mode lists for accessing using the `AUTH_SYS` security mode to be allowed. For example:

```
share -F nfs /var
share -F nfs -o sec=sys /var
```

grants read-write access to any host using `AUTH_SYS`, but

```
share -F nfs -o sec=dh /var
```

grants no access to clients that use `AUTH_SYS`.

Unlike previous implementations of `share_nfs`, access checking for the `window=`, `rw`, `ro`, `rw=`, and `ro=` options is done per NFS request, instead of per mount request.

Combining multiple security modes can be a security hole in situations where the `ro=` and `rw=` options are used to control access to weaker security modes. In this example,

```
share -F nfs -o sec=dh,rw,sec=sys,rw=hosta /var
```

an intruder can forge the IP address for `hosta` (albeit on each NFS request) to side-step the stronger controls of `AUTH_DES`. Something like:

```
share -F nfs -o sec=dh,rw,sec=sys,ro /var
```

is safer, because any client (intruder or legitimate) that avoids `AUTH_DES` only gets read-only access. In general, multiple security modes per `share` command should only be used in situations where the clients using more secure modes get stronger access than clients using less secure modes.

If `rw=`, and `ro=` options are specified in the same `sec=` clause, and a client is in both lists, the order of the two options determines the access the client gets. If client `hosta` is in two `netgroups - group1` and `group2` - in this example, the client would get read-only access:

```
share -F nfs -o ro=group1,rw=group2 /var
```

In this example `hosta` would get read-write access:

```
share -F nfs -o rw=group2,ro=group1 /var
```

If within a `sec=` clause, both the `ro` and `rw=` options are specified, for compatibility, the order of the options rule is not enforced. All hosts would get read-only access, with the exception to those in the read-write list. Likewise, if the `ro=` and `rw` options are specified, all hosts get read-write access with the exceptions of those in the read-only list.

The `ro=` and `rw=` options are guaranteed to work over UDP and TCP but may not work over other transport providers.

The `root=` option with `AUTH_SYS` is guaranteed to work over UDP and TCP but may not work over other transport providers.

The `root=` option with `AUTH_DES` is guaranteed to work over any transport provider.

There are no interactions between the `root=` option and the `rw`, `ro`, `rw=`, and `ro=` options. Putting a host in the root list does not override the semantics of the other options. The access the host gets is the same as when the `root=` options is absent. For example, the following `share` command denies access to `hostb`:

```
share -F nfs -o ro=hosta,root=hostb /var
```

The following gives read-only permissions to `hostb`:

```
share -F nfs -o ro=hostb,root=hostb /var
```

The following gives read-write permissions to `hostb`:

```
share -F nfs -o ro=hosta,rw=hostb,root=hostb /var
```

If the file system being shared is a symbolic link to a valid pathname, the canonical path (the path which the symbolic link follows) are shared. For example, if `/export/foo` is a symbolic link to `/export/bar` (`/export/foo -> /export/bar`), the following `share` command results in `/export/bar` as the shared pathname (and not `/export/foo`).

```
example# share -F nfs /export/foo
```

An NFS mount of `server:/export/foo` results in `server:/export/bar` really being mounted.

This line in the `/etc/dfs/dfstab` file shares the `/disk` file system read-only at boot time:

```
share -F nfs -o ro /disk
```

The same command entered from the command line does not share the `/disk` file system unless there is at least one file system entry in the `/etc/dfs/dfstab` file. The [mountd\(1M\)](#) and [nfsd\(1M\)](#) daemons only run if there is a file system entry in `/etc/dfs/dfstab` when starting or rebooting the system.

The [mountd\(1M\)](#) process allows the processing of a path name the contains a symbolic link. This allows the processing of paths that are not themselves explicitly shared with `share_nfs`. For example, `/export/foo` might be a symbolic link that refers to `/export/bar` which has

been specifically shared. When the client mounts `/export/foo` the `mountd` processing follows the symbolic link and responds with the `/export/bar`. The NFS Version 4 protocol does not use the `mountd` processing and the client's use of `/export/foo` does not work as it does with NFS Version 2 and Version 3 and the client receives an error when attempting to mount `/export/foo`.

Name showmount – show remote mounts

Synopsis /usr/sbin/showmount [-ade] [hostname]

Description showmount lists the clients that have remotely mounted a filesystem from *host*. This information is maintained by the [mountd\(1M\)](#) server on *host*, and is saved across crashes in the file `/etc/rmtab`. The default value for *host* is the value returned by [hostname\(1\)](#).

The showmount command does not display the names of NFS Version 4 clients.

Options -a Print all remote mounts in the format:

hostname : directory

where *hostname* is the name of the client, and *directory* is the root of the file system that has been mounted.

-d List directories that have been remotely mounted by clients.

-e Print the list of shared file systems.

Files /etc/rmtab

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWnfscu

See Also [hostname\(1\)](#), [mountd\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Solaris 10 Installation Guide: Basic Installations

Bugs If a client crashes, its entry will not be removed from the list of remote mounts on the server.

Name showrev – show machine, software revision, and patch revision information

Synopsis /usr/bin/showrev [-a] [-p | -p -R *root_path*] [-w]
[-c *command*] [-s *hostname*]

Description showrev displays revision information for the current hardware and software. With no arguments, showrev shows the system revision information including hostname, hostid, release, kernel architecture, application architecture, hardware provider, domain, and kernel version.

If a command is supplied with the -c option, showrev shows the PATH and LD_LIBRARY_PATH and finds out all the directories within the PATH that contain it. For each file found, its file type, revision, permissions, library information, and checksum are printed as well.

Options The following options are supported:

- a Print all system revision information available. Window system and patch information are added.
 - c *command* Print the revision information about *command*.
 - p Print only the revision information about patches.
 - R *root_path* Define the full path name of a directory to use as the *root_path*. By specifying the root path, showrev retrieves the revision information about the patch from package system information files located under a directory tree starting at *root_path*. The *root_path* can be specified when retrieving installed patch information in a client from a server, for example, /export/root/client1.
- Note** – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the -R option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).
- s *hostname* Perform this operation on the specified *hostname*. The -s operation completes correctly only when *hostname* is running Solaris 2.5 or compatible versions.
 - w Print only the OpenWindows revision information.

Output Varies, based on flags passed. If no flags are passed, output similar to the following appears:

```

Hostname: system1
Hostid: 7233808e
Release: 5.10
Kernel architecture: sun4u
Application architecture: sparc
Hardware provider: Sun_Microsystems
Domain: a.network.COM
Kernel version: SunOS 5.10 generic

```

Exit Status The following error values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWadmc

See Also [arch\(1\)](#), [ldd\(1\)](#), [mcs\(1\)](#), [sum\(1\)](#), [patchadd\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Bugs For the `-s` option to work when `hostname` is running a version of Solaris prior to 2.5, the Solstice AdminSuite must be installed on `hostname`.

Name shutdown – shut down system, change system state

Synopsis /usr/sbin/shutdown [-y] [-g *grace-period*] [-i *init-state*]
[*message*]

Description shutdown is executed by the super user to change the state of the machine. In most cases, it is used to change from the multi-user state (state 2) to another state.

By default, shutdown brings the system to a state where only the console has access to the operating system. This state is called single-user.

Before starting to shut down daemons and killing processes, shutdown sends a warning message and, by default, a final message asking for confirmation. *message* is a string that is sent out following the standard warning message "The system will be shut down in . . ." If the string contains more than one word, it should be contained within single (') or double (") quotation marks.

The warning message and the user provided *message* are output when there are 7200, 3600, 1800, 1200, 600, 300, 120, 60, and 30 seconds remaining before shutdown begins. See EXAMPLES.

System state definitions are:

- state 0 Stop the operating system.
- state 1 State 1 is referred to as the administrative state. In state 1 file systems required for multi-user operations are mounted, and logins requiring access to multi-user file systems can be used. When the system comes up from firmware mode into state 1, only the console is active and other multi-user (state 2) services are unavailable. Note that not all user processes are stopped when transitioning from multi-user state to state 1.
- state s, S State s (or S) is referred to as the single-user state. All user processes are stopped on transitions to this state. In the single-user state, file systems required for multi-user logins are unmounted and the system can only be accessed through the console. Logins requiring access to multi-user file systems cannot be used.
- state 5 Shut the machine down so that it is safe to remove the power. Have the machine remove power, if possible. The rc0 procedure is called to perform this task.
- state 6 Stop the operating system and reboot to the state defined by the `initdefault` entry in `/etc/inittab`. The rc6 procedure is called to perform this task.

- Options**
- y Pre-answer the confirmation question so the command can be run without user intervention.
 - g *grace-period* Allow the super user to change the number of seconds from the 60-second default.

-i *init-state* If there are warnings, *init-state* specifies the state *init* is to be in. By default, system state 's' is used.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Using shutdown

In the following example, shutdown is being executed on host foo and is scheduled in 120 seconds. The warning message is output 2 minutes, 1 minute, and 30 seconds before the final confirmation message.

```
example# shutdown -i S -g 120 "==== disk replacement ====="
Shutdown started.  Tue Jun  7 14:51:40 PDT 1994

Broadcast Message from root (pts/1) on foo Tue Jun  7 14:51:41. . .
The system will be shut down in 2 minutes
==== disk replacement =====
Broadcast Message from root (pts/1) on foo Tue Jun  7 14:52:41. . .
The system will be shut down in 1 minutes
==== disk replacement =====
Broadcast Message from root (pts/1) on foo Tue Jun  7 14:53:41. . .
The system will be shut down in 30 seconds
==== disk replacement =====
Do you want to continue? (y or n):
```

Files /etc/inittab controls process dispatching by *init*

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

See Also [boot\(1M\)](#), [halt\(1M\)](#), [init\(1M\)](#), [killall\(1M\)](#), [reboot\(1M\)](#), [ufsdump\(1M\)](#), [init.d\(4\)](#), [inittab\(4\)](#), [nologin\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes When a system transitions down to the S or s state, the /etc/nologin file (see [nologin\(4\)](#)) is created. Upon subsequent transition to state 2 (multi-user state), this file is removed by a script in the /etc/rc2.d directory.

Name slpd – Service Location Protocol Daemon

Synopsis /usr/lib/inet/sldap [-f *configuration-file*]

Description The slpd daemon provides common server functionality for the Service Location Protocol (“SLP”) versions 1 and 2, as defined by IETF in *RFC 2165* and *RFC 2608*. SLP provides a scalable framework for the discovery and selection of network services.

slpd provides the following framework services:

Directory Agent	This service automatically caches service advertisements from service agents to provide them to user agents, and makes directory agent advertisements of its services. This service is optional. slpd does not provide directory agent service by default. Directory agents are not databases, and they do not need to be maintained.
Service Agent Server	All service agents on the local host register and deregister with this server. This service responds to all requests for services, and forwards registrations to directory agents. By default, slpd is a service agent server.
Passive Directory Agent Discovery	This service listens for directory agent advertisements and maintains a table of active directory agents. When a user agent wishes to discover a directory agent, it can simply query slpd, obviating the need to perform discovery by means of multicast. By default, slpd performs this service.
Proxy Registration	This service can act as a proxy service agent for services that cannot register themselves. slpd reads the proxy registration file for information on services it is to proxy. By default, no services are registered by proxy.

All configuration options are available from the configuration file. slpd reads its configuration file upon startup.

Stop and start the slpd daemon using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). Use the command `svcadm enable network/slp` to start the slpd daemon. Use the command `svcadm disable network/slp` to stop it.

The file `/etc/inet/slp.conf` must exist before the slp service can start the daemon. Only the example file `/etc/inet/slp.conf.example` is present by default. To enable SLP, copy `/etc/inet/slp.conf.example` to `/etc/inet/slp.conf`.

Options The following options are supported:

-f *configuration-file* Specify an alternate configuration file

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Stopping the slpd daemon

The following command stops the slpd daemon:

```
example# svcadm disable network/slp
```

EXAMPLE 2 Restarting the slpd daemon

The following command restarts the slpd daemon:

```
example# svcadm restart network/slp
```

Files /etc/inet/slp.conf The default configuration file

slpd.reg The proxy registration file

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWslpu, SUNWslpr
CSI	Enabled
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [slp_api\(3SLP\)](#), [slp.conf\(4\)](#), [slpd.reg\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [slp\(7P\)](#)

System Administration Guide: Network Services

Guttman, E., Perkins, C., Veizades, J., and Day, M., *RFC 2608, Service Location Protocol, Version 2*, The Internet Society, June 1999.

Notes The slpd service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/slp
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name smatrrpop – populate security attribute databases in a name service

Synopsis smatrrpop [-c] [-f] [-m] [-p *policy*] [-r] -s *scope* -t *scope*
[-v] *database*

Description The smatrrpop command updates the `auth_attr(4)`, `exec_attr(4)`, `prof_attr(4)`, and `user_attr(4)` role-based access control databases in a target NIS, LDAP, or local `/etc` files name service from the corresponding databases in a source name service or files.

This command processes the table entries from the source database and merges each source entry field into the same field in the corresponding table entry in the target database. If a source entry does not exist in the target database, the entry is created. If the source entry exists in the target database, the fields are merged or replaced according to the command options.

Any errors encountered while updating the target entry are reported to `stdout`, and the command continues with the next source database entry.

Options The following options are supported:

-c Performs cross-table checking. If you specify this option and a check error occurs, a message identifying the check error is written to `stdout`.

The target entry values are checked against entries in related databases:

- `auths` values — Each value must exist as the name of an authorization in the `auth_attr(4)` database.
- `profiles` values — Each value must exist as a name of a profile in the `prof_attr(4)` database.
- `roles` values — Each value must exist as the name of a role identity in the `user_attr(4)` database.
- For each `exec_attr(4)` entry in the source database, the name must exist as the name of a profile in the `prof_attr(4)` database.

-f Specifies that the value in each field in the source entry replaces the value in the corresponding field in the target entry, if the source entry field has a non-empty value.

-m For the `auths`, `profiles`, and `roles` attributes, specifies that the values in each field in the source entry are merged with the values in the corresponding target entry field. If a source value does not exist in the target field, the value is appended to the set of target values. If the target field is empty, the source values replace the target field. The attribute values that merge depend on the database being updated:

- `prof_attr(4)` — the `auths` and `profiles` attribute values are merged.
- `user_attr(4)` — the `auths`, `profiles`, and `roles` attribute values are merged.
- `exec_attr(4)` — the `uid`, `gid`, `euid`, and `egid` values are merged.

- p *policy*** Specifies the value of the *policy* field in the `exec_attr(4)` database. Valid values are `user` (standard Solaris superuser) and `tsol` (Trusted Solaris). If you specify this option, only the entries in the source `exec_attr` database with the specified *policy* are processed. If you omit this option, all entries in the source `exec_attr` database are processed.
- r** Specifies that role identities in the `user_attr(4)` database in the source name service are processed. If you omit this option, only the normal user entries in the `user_attr` source database are processed.
- s *scope*** Specifies the source name service or local file directory for database updates, using the following syntax:

type:*/server/domain*

where *type* indicates the type of name service. Valid values for *type* are:

- `file` — local files
- `nis` — NIS name service
- `ldap` — LDAP name service

server indicates the local host name of the Solaris system on which the `smattrpop` command is executed, and on which both the source and target databases exist.

domain specifies the management domain name for the name service.

You can use two special cases of *scope* values:

- To indicate the databases in the `/etc/security` local system directory, use the `scope file:/server`, where *server* is the name of the local system.
- To load from databases in an arbitrary directory on the Solaris server, use the `scope file:/server/pathname`, where *server* is the name of the local system and *pathname* is the fully-qualified directory path name to the database files.

- t *scope*** Specifies the target name service or local file directory for database updates, using the following syntax:

type:*/server/domain*

where *type* indicates the type of name service. Valid values for *type* are:

- `file` — local files
- `nis` — NIS name service
- `ldap` — LDAP name service

server indicates the local host name of the Solaris system on which the `smattrpop` command is executed, and on which both the source and target databases exist.

domain specifies the management domain name for the name service.

You can use two special cases of *scope* values:

- To indicate the databases in the `/etc/security` local system directory, use the scope `file:/server`, where *server* is the name of the local system.
- To update to databases in an arbitrary directory on the Solaris server, use the scope `file:/server/pathname`, where *server* is the name of the local system and *pathname* is the fully-qualified directory path name to the database files.

`-v` Specifies that verbose messages are written. A message is written to `stdout` for each entry processed.

Operands The following operands are supported:

database Populates one or all databases. You can specify either the name of the database you want to process (for example, `auth_attr`), or `all` to process all databases. If you specify `all`, the databases are processed in the following order:

1. `auth_attr(4)`
2. `prof_attr(4)`
3. `exec_attr(4)`
4. `user_attr(4)`

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Populating all tables in the NIS name service

The following example merges the values from all four attribute databases in the `/etc/security` directory of the local system into the corresponding tables in the NIS domain, `east.example.com`. The command is executed on the master server, `hoosier`, for the NIS domain and the source files are in the `/etc` and `/etc/security` directories on the NIS master server. No cross-table checking is performed. A summary message indicating the number of entries processed and updated for each table is written to `stdout`.

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smatrrpop -s file:/hoosier \  
-t nis:/hoosier/east.example.com all
```

Environment Variables See [environ\(5\)](#) for a description of the `JAVA_HOME` environment variable, which affects the execution of the `smatrrpop` command. If this environment variable is not specified, the `/usr/java` location is used. See [smc\(1M\)](#).

Exit Status Any errors encountered while updating the target entry are reported to `stdout`. The following exit values are returned:

- 0 The specified tables were updated. Individual entries may have encountered checking errors.
- 1 A syntax error occurred in the command line.
- 2 A fatal error occurred and the tables were not completely processed. Some entries may have been updated before the failure.

Files /etc/security/auth_attr Authorization description database. See [auth_attr\(4\)](#).
/etc/security/exec_attr Execution profiles database. See [exec_attr\(4\)](#).
/etc/security/prof_attr Profile description database. See [prof_attr\(4\)](#).
/etc/user_attr Extended user attribute database. See [user_attr\(4\)](#).

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWmga

See Also [smc\(1M\)](#), [smexec\(1M\)](#), [smprofile\(1M\)](#), [auth_attr\(4\)](#), [exec_attr\(4\)](#), [prof_attr\(4\)](#), [user_attr\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#)

Name smbadm – configure and manage CIFS local groups and users, and manage domain membership

Synopsis smbadm add-member -m *member* [[-m *member*] |PO] *group*

smbadm create [-d *description*] *group*

smbadm delete *group*

smbadm disable-user *username*

smbadm enable-user *username*

smbadm get [[-p *property*] |PO] *group*

smbadm join -u *username domain*

smbadm join -w *workgroup*

smbadm list

smbadm remove-member -m *member* [[-m *member*] |PO] *group*

smbadm rename *group new-group*

smbadm set -p *property=value* [[-p *property=value*] |PO] *group*

smbadm show [-m] [-p] [*group*]

Description The smbadm command is used to configure CIFS local groups and to manage domain membership. You can also use the smbadm command to enable or disable SMB password generation for individual local users.

CIFS local groups can be used when Windows accounts must be members of some local groups and when Windows style privileges must be granted. Solaris local groups cannot provide these functions.

There are two types of local groups: user defined and built-in. Built-in local groups are predefined local groups to support common administration tasks.

In order to provide proper identity mapping between CIFS local groups and Solaris groups, a CIFS local group must have a corresponding Solaris group. This requirement has two consequences: first, the group name must conform to the intersection of the Windows and Solaris group name rules. Thus, a CIFS local group name can be up to eight (8) characters long and contain only lowercase characters and numbers. Second, a Solaris local group has to be created before a CIFS local group can be created.

Built-in groups are standard Windows groups and are predefined by the CIFS service. The built-in groups cannot be added, removed, or renamed, and these groups do not follow the CIFS local group naming conventions.

When the CIFS server is started, the following built-in groups are available:

Administrators

Group members can administer the system.

Backup Operators

Group members can bypass file access controls to back up and restore files.

Power Users

Group members can share directories.

Solaris local users must have an SMB password for authentication and to gain access to CIFS resources. This password is created by using the `passwd(1)` command when the `pam_smb_password` module is added to the system's PAM configuration. See the `pam_smb_password(5)` man page.

The `disable-user` and `enable-user` subcommands control SMB password-generation for a specified local user. When disabled, the user is prevented from connecting to the Solaris CIFS service. By default, SMB password-generation is enabled for all local users.

To reenab a disabled user, you must use the `enable-user` subcommand and then reset the user's password by using the `passwd` command. The `pam_smb_passwd.so.1` module must be added to the system's PAM configuration to generate an SMB password.

Escaping Backslash Character

For the `add-member`, `remove-member`, and `join` (with `-u`) subcommands, the backslash character (`\`) is a valid separator between member or user names and domain names. The backslash character is a shell special character and must be quoted. For example, you might escape the backslash character with another backslash character: `domain\\username`. For more information about handling shell special characters, see the man page for your shell.

Operands The `smbadm` command uses the following operands:

domain

Specifies the name of an existing Windows domain to join.

group

Specifies the name of the CIFS local group.

username

Specifies the name of a Solaris local user.

Sub-commands The `smbadm` command includes these subcommands:

`add-member -m member [[-m member] ...] group`

Adds the specified member to the specified CIFS local group. The `-m member` option specifies the name of a CIFS local group member. The member name must include an existing user name and an optional domain name.

Specify the member name in either of the following formats:

`[domain\]username`

`[domain/]username`

For example, a valid member name might be `sales\terry` or `sales/terry`, where `sales` is the Windows domain name and `terry` is the name of a user in the `sales` domain.

`create [-d description] group`

Creates a CIFS local group with the specified name. You can optionally specify a description of the group by using the `-d` option.

`delete group`

Deletes the specified CIFS local group. The built-in groups cannot be deleted.

`disable username`

Disables SMB password-generation capabilities for the specified local user. A disabled local user is prevented from accessing the system by means of the CIFS service. When a local user account is disabled, you cannot use the `passwd` command to modify the user's SMB password until the user account is reenabled.

`enable username`

Enables SMB password-generation capabilities for the specified local user. After the password-generation capabilities are reenabled, you must use the `passwd` command to generate the SMB password for the local user before he can connect to the CIFS service.

The `passwd` command manages both the Solaris password and SMB password for this user if the `pam_smb_passwd` module has been added to the system's PAM configuration.

`get [[-p property=value] ...] group`

Retrieves property values for the specified group. If no property is specified, all property values are shown.

`join -u username domain`

Joins a Windows domain or a workgroup.

The default mode for the CIFS service is workgroup mode, which uses the default workgroup name, `WORKGROUP`.

An authenticated user account is required to join a domain, so you must specify the Windows administrative user name with the `-u` option. If the password is not specified on the command line, the user is prompted for it. This user should be the domain administrator or any user who has administrative privileges for the target domain.

username and *domain* can be entered in any of the following formats:

```
username[+password] domain
domain\username[+password]
domain/username[+password]
username@domain
```

...where *domain* can be the NetBIOS or DNS domain name.

If a machine trust account for the system already exists on a domain controller, any authenticated user account can be used when joining the domain. However, if the machine trust account does *not* already exist, an account that has administrative privileges on the domain is required to join the domain.

`join -w workgroup`

Joins a Windows domain or a workgroup.

The `-w workgroup` option specifies the name of the workgroup to join when using the `join` subcommand.

`list`

Shows information about the current workgroup or domain. The information typically includes the workgroup name or the primary domain name. When in domain mode, the information includes domain controller names and trusted domain names.

Each entry in the output is identified by one of the following tags:

- [*] - Primary domain
- [.] - Local domain
- [-] - Other domains
- [+] - Selected domain controller

`remove-member -m member [[-m member] ...] group`

Removes the specified member from the specified CIFS local group. The `-m member` option specifies the name of a CIFS local group member. The member name must include an existing user name and an optional domain name.

Specify the member name in either of the following formats:

`[domain\]username`
`[domain/]username`

For example, a valid member name might be `sales\terry` or `sales/terry`, where `sales` is the Windows domain name and `terry` is the name of a user in the `sales` domain.

`rename group new-group`

Renames the specified CIFS local group. The group must already exist. The built-in groups cannot be renamed.

`set -p property=value [[-p property=value] ...] group`

Sets configuration properties for a CIFS local group. The description and the privileges for the built-in groups cannot be changed.

The `-p property=value` option specifies the list of properties to be set on the specified group.

The group-related properties are as follows:

`backup=[on|off]`

Specifies whether members of the CIFS local group can bypass file access controls to back up file system objects.

`description=description-text`

Specifies a text description for the CIFS local group.

restore=[on|off]

Specifies whether members of the CIFS local group can bypass file access controls to restore file system objects.

take-ownership=[on|off]

Specifies whether members of the CIFS local group can take ownership of file system objects.

show [-m] [-p] [*group*]

Shows information about the specified CIFS local group or groups. If no group is specified, information is shown for all groups. If the -m option is specified, the group members are also shown. If the -p option is specified, the group privileges are also shown.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

Attributes See the [attributes\(5\)](#) man page for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWsmbsu
Utility Name and Options	Uncommitted
Utility Output Format	Not-An-Interface
smbadm join	Obsolete

See Also [passwd\(1\)](#), [groupadd\(1M\)](#), [idmap\(1M\)](#), [idmapd\(1M\)](#), [kclient\(1M\)](#), [share\(1M\)](#), [sharectl\(1M\)](#), [sharemgr\(1M\)](#), [smbd\(1M\)](#), [smbstat\(1M\)](#), [smb\(4\)](#), [smbautohome\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [pam_smb_passwd\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Name smbd – CIFS server daemon

Synopsis /usr/lib/smb/rv/smbd

Description The smbd daemon handles CIFS/SMB requests from CIFS clients, such as Windows clients. Only processes with {PRIV_SYS_SMB} and sufficient privileges to write the /var/run directory can run this daemon.

The smbd daemon is automatically invoked by using the sharemgr command over all available transports. By default, smbd starts over the NetBIOS-Over-TCP (NBT) and TCP transports.

When smbd is started over NBT, the following services are started:

- The NetBIOS name service is started on UDP port 137.
- The NetBIOS datagram service is started on UDP port 138.
- The NetBIOS session service is started on TCP port 139.

When the smbd daemon is started over TCP, the CIFS service is started on TCP port 445.

Only one instance of smbd may be running at a time.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Daemon exited cleanly.
- 95 Daemon exited with a fatal error.
- 96 Daemon exited with a configuration error.

Attributes See the [attributes\(5\)](#) man page for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWsmbsu
Interface Stability	Uncommitted

See Also [ps\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [sharectl\(1M\)](#), [sharemgr\(1M\)](#), [smbadm\(1M\)](#), [smbstat\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [smb\(4\)](#), [smbautohome\(4\)](#), [system\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Notes Use the svcadm command to perform administrative actions on the smbd service, such as enabling, disabling, or restarting the service. Use the svcs command to query the service status.

The smbd service is managed by the service management facility under the service identifier svc:/network/smb/server.

If the smbd service is disabled, it will be enabled by the [sharemgr\(1M\)](#) command, unless its auto_enable property is set to false.

Name smbiod – SMB client I/O daemon

Synopsis /usr/lib/smbfs/smbiod

Description smbiod is a helper program that initiates an SMB reconnection, when needed.

When a user runs an `smbutil` or `mount_smbfs` command, an `smbiod` process is started and continues to run until that user no longer has any SMB client connections. Only one `smbiod` process runs for each user that has SMB client connections.

Each `smbiod` process instantiates a door service on one of the following files:

- /tmp/.smbiod-*UID* file for normal users
- /var/run/smbiod-0 file for superuser

The `smbiod` daemon has no external, customer-accessible interfaces.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.

Files

/usr/lib/smbfs/smbiod	SMB I/O daemon.
/tmp/.smbiod- <i>UID</i>	File on which to instantiate a door service for user <i>UID</i> .
/var/run/smbiod-0	File on which to instantiate a door service for superuser.

Attributes See the [attributes\(5\)](#) man page for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWsmbsu
Interface Stability	Uncommitted

See Also [ps\(1\)](#), [smbutil\(1\)](#), [mount_smbfs\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smbfs\(7FS\)](#)

Name `smbios` – display the contents of a System Management BIOS image

Synopsis `smbios [-BeOsx] [-i id] [-t type] [-w file] [file]`

Description The `smbios` utility displays the contents of the System Management BIOS (SMBIOS) image exported by the current system or stored in a file. SMBIOS is an industry-standard mechanism for low-level system software to export hardware configuration information to higher-level system management software. The SMBIOS data format itself is defined by the Distributed Management Task Force (DMTF). Refer to <http://www.dmtf.org> for more information about SMBIOS and to obtain a copy of the SMBIOS specification and implementation guidelines.

The SMBIOS image consists of a table of structures, each describing some aspect of the system software or hardware configuration. By default, `smbios` displays the entire contents of the current SMBIOS image. If the `-s` option is specified, `smbios` displays a summary of the structures that are present in the image. If the `-w` option is specified, `smbios` writes a copy of the SMBIOS image to the specified file. `smbios` can then be applied to the resulting file to display its content.

`smbios` attempts to display each structure and its content in a human-readable fashion. If `smbios` does not recognize a structure's type or content, the raw hexadecimal data for the structure is displayed.

Options The following options are supported:

- `-B` Disable header validation for broken BIOSes.

By default, `smbios` attempts to validate the SMBIOS header by verifying the anchor strings, header checksums, and version number. This option might be necessary when a BIOS has a non-compliant header.
- `-e` Display the contents of the SMBIOS entry point rather than the contents of the SMBIOS structure table.
- `-i id` Display only the specified structure, named by its integer id.
- `-O` Display obsolete structure types.

By default, `smbios` elides output for structures whose type is marked as obsolete in the DMTF SMBIOS specification.
- `-s` Display only a summary listing of the structure identifiers and types, instead of the content of each selected structure.
- `-t type` Display only those structures whose type matches the specified integer type, as defined in the DMTF SMBIOS specification.
- `-w file` Write a copy of the SMBIOS image to the specified file and exit.

The SMBIOS entry point is written to the start of the file with its structure table address set to the file offset of the structure table, and a new entry point checksum is computed.

-x Display raw hexadecimal data for the selected structures in addition to human-readable output.

By default, hexadecimal data is only displayed if `smbios` cannot display human-readable output for the selected structures.

Operands The following operands are supported:

file Specifies an alternate SMBIOS image to display instead of the current system's SMBIOS image.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion. All structures in the SMBIOS image were examined successfully.
- 1 A fatal error occurred, such as failure to open the specified file or device, or corruption in the image.
- 2 Invalid command-line options were specified.

Files `/dev/smbios` Kernel SMBIOS image device. This device special file is used to export a snapshot of the current system SMBIOS image.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	See below.

The command-line options are Evolving. The human-readable output is Unstable.

See Also [prtdiag\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smbios\(7D\)](#)

System Management BIOS Reference Specification (see <http://www.dmtf.org>)

Notes The implementation of a System Management BIOS image is entirely at the discretion of the system and BIOS vendors. Not all systems export an SMBIOS. The SMBIOS structure content varies widely between systems and BIOS vendors and frequently does not comply with the guidelines included in the specification. Some structure fields might not be filled in by the BIOS at all, and others might be filled in with non-conforming values.

Name smbstat – show Solaris CIFS file server statistics

Synopsis smbstat [-di]

Description The `smbstat` command shows statistical information for the `smbd` server. When the `-i` option is specified, the `smbstat` command shows general information about the CIFS service. For instance, `smbstat -i` shows the number of sessions, connections, and open files. The `-d` option shows dispatched CIFS request counters.

By default, the `smbstat` command shows all statistics.

Options The `smbstat` command includes the following options:

`-d`

Shows all the dispatched CIFS requests on the CIFS server. This option shows count statistics based on request activity.

`-i`

Shows the following information for the CIFS server:

`connections`

Number of CIFS connections.

`open_files`

Number of files open on the CIFS server.

`sessions`

Number of active CIFS sessions.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

>0 An error occurred.

Attributes See the [attributes\(5\)](#) man page for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWsmbsu
Interface Stability	Uncommitted
Utility Output Format	Not-an-Interface

See Also [sharectl\(1M\)](#), [sharemgr\(1M\)](#), [smbadm\(1M\)](#), [smbstat\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name smc – start the Solaris Management Console

Synopsis smc [*subcommand*] [*args*]

```
smc [ subcommand] [ args] -T tool_name
    [ - - tool_args]
```

Description The smc command starts the Solaris Management Console. The Solaris Management Console is a graphical user interface that provides access to Solaris system administration tools. It relies on Solaris Management Console servers running on one or more computers to perform modifications and report data. Each of these servers is a repository for code which the console can retrieve after the user of the console has authenticated himself or herself to the server.

The console can also retrieve toolboxes from the server. These toolboxes are descriptions of organized collections of tools available on that and possibly other servers. Once one of these toolboxes is loaded, the console will display it and the tools referenced in it.

The console can also run in a terminal (non-graphically), for use over remote connections or non-interactively from a script.

For information on the use of the graphical console, and for more detailed explanations of authentication, tools, and toolboxes, please refer to the Solaris Management Console online help available under the “Help” menu in the Solaris Management Console. To enable an NIS map to be managed from the Solaris Management Console, you must use the `smc edit` command to create a new toolbox for that map and enter the information about your NIS server where necessary. For instructions on creating a new toolbox, in the Solaris Management Console Help menu, select “Contents,” then “About the Solaris Management Console Editor,” then “To Create a Toolbox.”

Subcommands The smc *subcommands* are:

- `open` The default subcommand for the Solaris Management Console is `open`. This will launch the console and allow you to run tools from the toolboxes you load. It does not need to be specified explicitly on the command line.
- `edit` The `edit` subcommand will also launch the console, like the `open` subcommand. However, after loading a toolbox, you will not be able to run the referenced tools. Instead, you will be able to edit that toolbox, that is, add, remove, or modify any tools or folders in that toolbox.

SMF Administration The Solaris Management Console is implemented as a method that is managed by the service management facility (SMF) (see [smf\(5\)](#)), under the fault management resource identifier (FMRI):

```
svc:/application/management/wbem:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#).

The configuration properties of this service can be modified with [svccfg\(1M\)](#).

Through `svcadm`, the Solaris Management Console supports the following actions:

- `start` Starts the CIM Object Manager (CIMOM) and Solaris Management Console server on the local host.
- `stop` Stops the CIMOM and Solaris Management Console server on the local host.
- `status` Gets the status of the CIMOM and Solaris Management Console server on the local host.

Controlling Remote Access The Solaris Management Console supports an SMF property that controls remote access to WBEM-based applications, which include the Solaris Management Console. The property, `options/tcp_listen`, has default value of `false`, which disallows remote access. The value `true` allows remote access. See `EXAMPLES`.

Options The following options are supported. These letter options can also be specified by their equivalent option words preceded by a double dash. For example, you can use either `-D` or `--domain` with the *domain* argument.

If *tool_args* are specified, they must be preceded by the `-` option and separated from the double dashes by a space.

`- --auth-data 13;file`

Specifies a file which the console can read to collect authentication data. When running the Solaris Management Console non-interactively, the console will still need to authenticate itself with the server to retrieve tools. This data can either be passed on the command line using the `-u`, `-p`, `-r`, and `-l` options (which is insecure, because any user can see this data), or it can be placed in a file for the console to read. For security reasons, this file should be readable only by the user running the console, although the console does not enforce this restriction.

The format of *file* is:

```
hostname=host name
username=user name
password=password for user name
rolename=role name
rolepassword=password for role name
```

Only one set of

```
hostname-username-password-rolename-rolepassword
```

-B - --toolbox <i>13;toolbox</i>	<p>may be specified in any one file. If the rolename is not specified, no role will be assumed.</p> <p>Loads the specified toolbox. <i>toolbox</i> can be either a fully-qualified URL or a filename. If you specify an HTTP URL as, for example,</p> <p>http://host_name:port/ . . .</p> <p>it must point to a <i>host_name</i> and <i>port</i> on which an Solaris Management Console server is running. If you omit <i>port</i>, the default port, 898, is used. This option overrides the -H option.</p>
-D - --domain <i>13;domain</i>	<p>Specifies the default domain that you want to manage. The syntax of <i>domain</i> is <i>type:host_name/domain_name</i>, where <i>type</i> is <i>nis</i>, <i>dns</i>, <i>ldap</i>, or <i>file</i>; <i>host_name</i> is the name of the machine that serves the domain; and <i>domain_name</i> is the name of the domain you want to manage. This option applies only to a single tool run in the terminal console.</p> <p>If you do not specify this option, the Solaris Management Console assumes the <i>file</i> default domain on whatever server you choose to manage, meaning that changes are local to the server. Toolboxes can change the domain on a tool-by-tool basis; this option specifies the domain for all other tools.</p>
-h - --help	<p>Prints a usage statement about the <i>smc</i> command and its subcommands to the terminal window. To print a usage statement for one of the subcommands, enter -h after the subcommand.</p>
-H - --hostname <i>13;host_name:port</i>	<p>Specifies the <i>host_name</i> and <i>port</i> to which you want to connect. If you do not specify a <i>port</i>, the system connects to the default port, 898. If you do not specify <i>host_name:port</i>, the Solaris Management Console connects to the local host on port 898. You may still have to choose a toolbox to load into the console. To override this behavior, use the -B option (see above), or set your console preferences to load a “home toolbox” by default.</p>

<code>-Jjava_option</code>	Specifies an option that can be passed directly to the Java runtime (see <code>java(1)</code>). Do not enter a space between <code>-J</code> and the argument. This option is most useful for developers.
<code>-l - --rolepassword 13;role_password</code>	Specifies the password for the <i>role_name</i> . If you specify a <i>role_name</i> but do not specify a <i>role_password</i> , the system prompts you to supply a <i>role_password</i> . Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.
<code>-p - --password 13;password</code>	Specifies the password for the <i>user_name</i> . If you do not specify a password, the system prompts you for one. Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.
<code>-r - --rolename 13;role_name</code>	Specifies a role name for authentication. If you are running the Solaris Management Console in a terminal and you do not specify this option, no role is assumed. The GUI console may prompt you for a role name, although you may not need to assume a role.
<code>-s - --silent</code>	Disables informational messages printed to the terminal.
<code>-t</code>	Runs the Solaris Management Console in terminal mode. If this option is not given, the Solaris Management Console will automatically run in terminal mode if it cannot find a graphical display.
<code>- --trust</code>	Trusts all downloaded code implicitly. Use this option when running the terminal console non-interactively and you cannot let the console wait for user input.
<code>-T - --tool 13;tool_name</code>	Runs the tool with the Java class name that corresponds to <i>tool_name</i> . If you do not specify this option and the Solaris Management Console is running in terminal mode, the system prompts you. If the Solaris Management Console is running in graphical mode, the system either loads a toolbox or prompts you for one (see options <code>-H</code> and <code>-B</code>).

<code>-u - --username <i>l3;user_name</i></code>	Specifies the user name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, the user identity running the console process is assumed.
<code>-v - --version</code>	Prints the version of the Solaris Management Console to the terminal. In the graphical console, this information can be found in the About box, available from the Help menu.
<code>-y - --yes</code>	Answers yes to all yes/no questions. Use this option when running the terminal console non-interactively and you cannot let the console wait for user input.

Examples

EXAMPLE 1 Printing a Usage Statement

The following prints a usage statement about the `smc` command to the terminal window:

```
smc --help
```

EXAMPLE 2 Using SMF Property to Allow Remote Access

The following sequence of commands allows remote access to WBEM-based applications, including the Solaris Management Console.

```
# svccfg -s svc:/application/management/wbem \  
    setprop options/tcp_listen = true  
# svcadm refresh svc:/application/management/wbem
```

EXAMPLE 3 Passing an Option to Java

The following passes an option through to the Java VM, which sets the `com.example.boolean` system property to `true`. This system property is only an example; the Solaris Management Console does not use it.

```
smc -J-Dcom.example.boolean=true
```

Environment Variables See [environ\(5\)](#) for a description of the following environment variable that affects the execution of the `smc` command:

JAVA_HOME If you do not specify this environment variable, your `PATH` is searched for a suitable java. Otherwise, the `/usr/j2se` location is used.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned. Other error codes may be returned if you specify a tool (using `-T tool_name`) that has its own error codes. See the documentation for the appropriate tool.

0 Successful completion.

1 An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWmcc

See Also [auths\(1\)](#), [java\(1\)](#), [profiles\(1\)](#), [roles\(1\)](#), [smcconf\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [X\(7\)](#)

Name smccompile – build class list and compile Solaris Management Console service beans for remote use

Synopsis /usr/sadm/bin/smccompile -c *beanname*

/usr/sadm/bin/smccompile -j tool | service [-n *altjarname*] *jarfile*

/usr/sadm/bin/smccompile -j library [-n *altjarname*] ALLTOOL | ALLSERVICE | ALL | *attachedBeanname*

Description The smccompile command is used by developers of tools, services, and libraries for the Solaris Management Console. For information regarding the Solaris Management Console, see [smc\(1M\)](#).

smccompile compiles service class files given by the bean name for use with the Solaris Management Console. This step builds the extra proxy and stub classes for services to be used with Solaris Management Console tools. Solaris Management Console requires running smccompile -c before creating service jar files, and smccompile -j after creating tool, service, and library jars.

smccompile, in conjunction with [smcregister\(1M\)](#), is intended to replace the smconf command as the preferred interface for managing the Solaris Management Console repository as well as toolboxes from within scripts, due to significant performance enhancements over smconf.

Options The following options are supported:

ALL	Specify that the library being registered to or unregistered from the repository is for use by all tools and services.
ALLSERVICE	Specify that the library being registered to or unregistered from the repository is for use by all services.
ALLTOOL	Specify that the library being registered to or unregistered from the repository is for use by all tools.
<i>attachedBeanname</i>	Specify the name of a registered jar to which the library jarfile should be attached to (or detached from). This is typically the same as <i>altjarname</i> (if provided) or <i>jarfile</i> used to register the jar to which this library is being attached or detached. An attached library means the library is only available for use by the tool or service to which it is being attached.
<i>beanname</i>	The full package path of the bean name to be compiled. An example bean name is: com.mycompany.myproduct.MyService.
-c	Compile and build service class files for the specified bean name. This step builds the extra proxy and stub classes for services to be used with Solaris Management Console tools. You must run smccompile with this option before creating service type jar files.

- `-j` Build a list of classes in text format, suitable as input to `smcregister` for registration with the Solaris Management Console repository. The output is written to standard out and should be redirected to a file. You must run `smccompile` with this option after creating any tool, service, or library jar.
- `jarfile` Specify the full path to the jar file to be registered. The name must be in the form `beaname.jar`, where `beaname` is the package path to the bean. If it is not, an alternate name must be given in that form using the `-n` option.
- `-n altjarname` Rename the jarfile in the repository to `altjarname`. Typically, this is the full bean name. For example, if the jarfile was `MyTool.jar`, then `altjarname` might be `com.mycompany.myproduct.MyTool.jar`. It is recommended that an `altjarname` containing the full package path be used. You must use this same name when registering the jar with `smcregister`.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Compiling a Service

The following command takes a Solaris Management Console service and builds its proxy and stub classes to make the service usable by Solaris Management Console tools:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smccompile -c com.mycompany.myproject.MyServiceImpl
```

EXAMPLE 2 Building a Class List for a Service

The following command builds the class list file (`classlist.txt`) for a service suitable for use with the `smcregister(1M)` command:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smccompile -j service \  
-n com.mycompany.myproject.MyServiceImpl.jar \  
${HOME}/workarea/MyServiceImpl.jar > classlist.txt
```

The following command does the same thing without specifying an alternate name:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smccompile -j service \  
${HOME}/workarea/com.mycompany.myproject.MyServiceImpl.jar > classlist.txt
```

EXAMPLE 3 Building a Class List for a Tool

The following command builds the class list file (`classlist.txt`) for a tool suitable for use with the `smcregister(1M)` command:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smccompile -j tool \  
-n com.mycompany.myproject.MyTool.jar \  
${HOME}/workarea/MyTool.jar > classlist.txt
```

EXAMPLE 3 Building a Class List for a Tool *(Continued)*

The following command does the same thing without specifying an alternate name:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smccompile -j tool \  
    ${HOME}/workarea/com.mycompany.myproject.MyTool.jar > classlist.txt
```

EXAMPLE 4 Building a Class List for a Library Attached to All Tools

The following command builds the class list file (`classlist.txt`) for a library suitable for use with the `smregister(1M)` command, and is attached to all tools:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smccompile -j library \  
    -n com.mycompany.myproject.MyLibrary.jar \  
    ALLTOOL ${HOME}/workarea/MyLibrary.jar > classlist.txt
```

The following command does the same thing without specifying an alternate name:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smccompile -j library \  
    ALLTOOL \  
    ${HOME}/workarea/com.mycompany.myproject.MyLibrary.jar > classlist.txt
```

EXAMPLE 5 Building a Class List for a Library Attached to a Specific Tool

The following command builds the class list file (`classlist.txt`) for a library suitable for use with the `smregister(1M)` command, and is attached to a specific tool:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smccompile -j library \  
    -n com.mycompany.myproject.MyLibrary.jar \  
    com.mycompany.myproject.MyTool.jar \  
    ${HOME}/workarea/MyLibrary.jar > classlist.txt
```

The following command does the same thing without specifying an alternate name:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smccompile -j library \  
    com.mycompany.myproject.MyTool.jar \  
    ${HOME}/workarea/com.mycompany.myproject.MyLibrary.jar > classlist.txt
```

Environment Variables See [environ\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following environment variables that affect the execution of `smccompile`:

JAVA_HOME If you do not specify this environment variable, your `PATH` is searched for a suitable java. Otherwise, the `/usr/j2se` location is used.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWMc

See Also [smc\(1M\)](#), [smccnf\(1M\)](#), [smcregister\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#)

Notes All standard shell quoting rules apply.

Name smccnf – configure the Solaris Management Console

Synopsis /usr/sadm/bin/smccnf [-h] [-v] toolbox [*action*] [*target*]
[*parameters*] [*options*]

/usr/sadm/bin/smccnf [-h] [-v] repository [*action*]
[*target*] [*parameters*] [*options*]

Description The smccnf command configures the Solaris Management Console. See [smc\(1M\)](#). This command enables you to add to, remove from, and list the contents of the toolboxes and bean repository.

Using smccnf to edit toolboxes is not as feature-rich as using the graphical editor in Solaris Management Console. The command line interface is intended for use in packaging scripts that do not require user interaction. To edit all the properties of a toolbox or to modify the hierarchy of folders in a toolbox, you must use the specialized graphical editor, that is, smc edit. See [smc\(1M\)](#).

smcregister is intended to replace the smccnf command as the preferred interface for managing the Solaris Management Console repository as well as toolboxes from within scripts, due to significant performance enhancements over smccnf. See [smcregister\(1M\)](#), [smccompile\(1M\)](#), and the Solaris Management Console SDK Guide at [/usr/sadm/lib/smc/docs/sdkguide/index.html](#) for details.

Options The following options are supported:

- h Prints out a usage summary for the command.
- v Verbose option. Displays the debugging output at any time.

toolbox configuration	<i>action</i>	Legal values are:
	add	Adds a <i>target</i> to the toolbox. Specify the path to the toolbox using the -B <i>toolboxpath</i> option and, optionally, provide locale information with the -L <i>locale</i> option.
	remove	Removes a <i>target</i> from the toolbox. Specify the path to the toolbox using the -B <i>toolboxpath</i> option and, as an alternative, provide locale information with the -L <i>locale</i> option.
	create	Creates a new toolbox with no tools in it. The only <i>target</i> recognized is toolbox.
	list	Lists the contents of the toolbox. No <i>target</i> is recognized. If you specify a <i>parameter</i> , it is taken as the path to a toolbox and the contents of that toolbox are listed. If you do not specify a <i>parameter</i> , the contents of the default toolbox are listed.
	<i>target</i>	Legal values are:

tool If the *action* is specified as `add`, this target adds a native Solaris Management Console tool from the toolbox. The required *parameter* is the full Java classname of the tool you are adding. If you specify a folder name with the `-F` option, the tool is placed inside that folder (the folder will not be created if it does not already exist). Otherwise, the tool is appended to the end of the toolbox and not placed inside any folder.

If the *action* is specified as `remove`, this target removes a native Solaris Management Console tool from the toolbox. The required *parameter* is the full Java classname of the tool you want to remove. If you specify a folder name with the `-F` option, any tool with the given name in that folder will be removed. If no folder name is specified, all tools with the given name in the toolbox are removed.

For the tool to appear in the console, the tool must also be registered in the repository. See the *repository configuration* section below for more information. If a tool is referenced in a toolbox but is not registered, it will not appear in the console when the toolbox is loaded.

Removing a tool from a toolbox does not remove the tool from the server repository.

tbxURL If the *action* is specified as `add` or `remove`, this target adds to or removes from the toolbox a link to another toolbox. The required *parameter* is the URL to the other toolbox.

The properties of addition and removal are the same as for the *tool target*.

toolbox If the *action* is specified as `create`, this target creates a skeleton toolbox with no tools. The required *parameters* are: the toolbox name, description, and small and large icon paths. These must be followed by the `-B toolboxpath` and `-D scope` options.

legacy If the *action* is specified as `add` or `remove`, this target adds or removes legacy applications (command-line, X-windows, and web-based) to or from the toolbox. The `-N`, `-T`, `-E`, and `-B` options are required. The `-A` option is optional. Placement in the toolbox with the `-F` option follows the same rules as for the `tool` and `tbxURL` targets. See *NOTES* for more information about legacy applications.

<i>folder</i>	<p>If the <i>action</i> is specified as <i>add</i>, this target adds a folder to the toolbox. The required <i>parameters</i> are: the folder name, description, and small and large icon paths.</p> <p>If the <i>action</i> is specified as <i>remove</i>, this target removes a folder from the toolbox. If the folder to be removed is itself inside a folder, the containing folder must be specified with the <i>-F</i> option.</p>
<i>parameters</i>	Specifies values that might be required, depending on the combination of <i>action</i> and <i>target</i> .
<i>options</i>	Supported options for various <i>action</i> and <i>target</i> combinations for the toolbox configuration are:
<i>-A parameters</i>	Specifies the parameters to pass to the legacy application. This option is available only for the legacy target.
<i>-B toolboxpath</i>	Specifies the path of the toolbox that is being modified. If this option is not given, the modifications will be performed on the default toolbox, This Computer.
<i>-D scope</i>	<p>Specifies the scope (domain) in which the tool should be run. The legal values for <i>scope</i> are <i>file</i>, <i>nis</i>, <i>dns</i>, and <i>ldap</i>. This can also be specified for a folder or a toolbox.</p> <p>In the former case, all tools in that folder and its subfolders are run in that scope; in the latter, all tools in the toolbox are run in that scope.</p>
<i>-E appPath</i>	Specifies the absolute executable path of the legacy application. This option is available only for the legacy target.
<i>-F folder</i>	Specifies the full path of the container folder. If this option is not given, the default folder is the 'root' folder of the toolbox.
<i>-H [host_name][:port]</i>	Specifies the host and port from which a tool should be loaded. If <i>host_name</i> is not given, the default host is used. The default host is <i>localhost</i> , if the toolbox is loaded from the local file system, or the host from which the toolbox is loaded if loaded from a remote Solaris Management Console server. If <i>:port</i> is not given, the default port will be used. If

this option is not given at all, both the default host and the default port are used.

- L *locale* Specifies the locale of the toolbox that is being modified. The default is the C locale.
- N *appName* Specifies the name of the legacy application being registered. This is the name that appears in the console. This option is available only for the legacy target.
- P *key:value* Specifies the key/value pairs that define parameters to a tool. Multiple key/value pairs can be specified at a time.
- T *appType* Specifies the legacy application type. Legal values are CLI, XAPP, or HTML. This option is available only for the legacy target.

repository configuration The Solaris Management Console repository stores information about the registered tools and services, as well as libraries (for instance, resource jars) and properties attached to tools or services.

action Legal values are:

- add** Adds information to the repository. If the -f option is given to add, the information overwrites any information of the same name already in the repository. If the -f option is not given, an error might be returned if the information is already in the repository.
- remove** Removes information from the repository.
- list** Lists the contents of the repository:
 - All registered tools
 - All registered services
 - All libraries attached to all tools
 - All libraries attached to all services
 - All libraries attached to all tools and services

target Legal values are:

- bean** If the *action* is specified as add, this target will add a tool or service bean (which kind is determined by the contents of the bean) to the repository. The required *parameter* is the path to the jar file that contains the bean to be added.

If the *action* is specified as remove, this target will remove a tool or service bean from the repository. The required *parameter* is the full Java classname of the desired bean.

- library** If the *action* is specified as `add`, this target adds a “library” jar file to a tool or service bean. The two required *parameters* are the full Java classname of the desired bean and the path to the jar file to be attached. The bean name can also be one of the “pseudo-beans,” `ALL`, `ALLTOOL`, or `ALLSERVICE`, in which case the library is attached, respectively, to all beans, all tools, or all services in the repository.
- If the *action* is specified as `remove`, this target detaches a “library” jar file from a tool or service bean. The two required *parameters* are the full Java classname of the desired bean and the name of the jar file that is attached. As with the `add` action, the three “pseudo-beans” `ALL`, `ALLTOOL`, or `ALLSERVICE` can be used.
- property** If the *action* is specified as `add`, this target defines a property on a tool or service. One or more key/value pairs must be specified in the form,
- `-P key=value`
- Following this property list is a “pseudo-bean name,” *pseudoBeanName*, as defined for the `library` target, on which the properties are defined. Optionally, a library name can follow the “pseudo-bean” name, in which case the properties are defined on the library that is attached to the named bean.
- If the *action* is specified as `remove`, this target undefines a property on a tool or service. The key/value pairs, “pseudo-bean” name, and optional library are specified for the `add` action.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Adding Legacy Applications to a Toolbox

The following command adds to the default toolbox the command line interface (CLI) application, `/usr/bin/ls`, with arguments `-al -R`, giving it the name, `Directory Listing`:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smccnf toolbox add legacy -N "Directory Listing" \
-T CLI -E /usr/bin/ls -A "-al -R"
```

EXAMPLE 2 Adding a Folder to a Toolbox

The following command adds to the standard Management Tools toolbox a folder with the name, `New Folder`, the description, `This is a new folder`, and the small and large icons, `folder_s.gif` and `folder_l.gif`:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smccnf toolbox add folder "New Folder" \
"This is a new folder" folder_s.gif folder_l.gif \
-B /var/sadm/smc/toolboxes/smc/smc.tbx
```

EXAMPLE 3 Adding a Native Solaris Management Console Tool to a Toolbox

The following command adds a native Solaris Management Console tool to the default toolbox. The Java classname of the tool is `HelloWorld.client>HelloTool` (the name, description, and icons visible in the console are provided by the tool itself). When loaded, it is run in the NIS domain, `syrix`, which is hosted by the machine, `temple`, and is retrieved from port 2112 on the machine from which the toolbox was loaded:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smcconf toolbox add tool HelloWorld.client>HelloTool \  
-D nis:/temple/syrix -H :2112
```

EXAMPLE 4 Adding an Solaris Management Console Tool to the Repository

The following command adds the Java bean found in `HelloWorld.jar` to the repository. The jar file contains information that the bean is a tool:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smcconf repository add bean HelloWorld.jar
```

EXAMPLE 5 Removing an Solaris Management Console Service from the repository

The following command removes a Java bean from the repository. Although the name of the bean implies that it is a service, that is merely a convention; the repository knows whether a particular registered bean is a tool or a service:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smcconf repository remove bean \  
HelloWorld.server>HelloService
```

EXAMPLE 6 Attaching a Library to a Tool

The following command adds the library jar file, `HelloWorld_fr.jar` (probably a French localized version of the `HelloTool`'s resources) to the bean, `HelloWorld.client>HelloTool`:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smcconf repository add library \  
HelloWorld.client>HelloTool HelloWorld_fr.jar
```

EXAMPLE 7 Attaching a Library to all Tools

The following command adds the library jar file, `widgets.jar`, to all tools in the repository. The library probably contains a widget set that might be useful to any registered tools:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smcconf repository add library ALLTOOL widgets.jar
```

Environment Variables See [environ\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following environment variables that affect the execution of the `smcconf` command:

JAVA_HOME	If you do not specify this environment variable, your PATH is searched for a suitable java. Otherwise, the /usr/j2se location is used.
DISPLAY	If you do not set this environment variable, set it to null, or set it to an X(7) display to which you are not authorized to connect, the Solaris Management Console starts in terminal mode instead of graphical mode.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0	Successful completion.
1	An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWmc

See Also [smc\(1M\)](#), [smccompile\(1M\)](#), [smcregister\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#)

Notes All standard shell quoting rules apply.

Legacy applications (X-windows, command-line, and web-based applications) are handled differently from “native” Solaris Management Console tools. Legacy tools are handled by an instantiation of a native Solaris Management Console tool, LegacyAppLauncher, which, through the toolbox, is given the necessary information to run the legacy application: path, options, and so forth. Thus, you do not register a legacy application into the repository as you would a native Solaris Management Console tool. Instead, legacy applications appear only in toolboxes.

Name smcregister – configure the Solaris Management Console

Synopsis /usr/sadm/bin/smcregister [-h] *tool* [-n *altjarname*] *jarfile classlistfile xmlfile*
 /usr/sadm/bin/smcregister [-h] *service* [-n *altjarname*] *jarfile classlistfile xmlfile*
 [*native_lib_list*]
 /usr/sadm/bin/smcregister [-h] *library* [-n *altjarname*] *jarfile classlistfile* | none ALLTOOL | ALLSERVICE | ALL
 /usr/sadm/bin/smcregister [-h] *tool* | *service* -u *jarfile*
 /usr/sadm/bin/smcregister [-h] *library* -u *jarfile* ALL | ALLTOOL | ALLSERVICE | *Attachedbeaname*
 /usr/sadm/bin/smcregister [-h] *toolbox* [-D] [*action*] [-f]
 [*target*] [*parameters*] [*options*]
 /usr/sadm/bin/smcregister [-h] *property* *key value* ALL | ALLTOOL | ALLSERVICE | *Attachedbeaname*
 /usr/sadm/bin/smcregister [-h] *property* -u *key* ALL | ALLTOOL | ALLSERVICE | *Attachedbeaname*
 /usr/sadm/bin/smcregister [-h] *repository* *list*
 /usr/sadm/bin/smcregister [-h] *scripts* *regscript unregscript*

Description The smcregister command configures the Solaris Management Console. For information regarding the Solaris Management Console, see [smc\(1M\)](#). This command enables you to add to, remove from, and list the contents of toolboxes and the Solaris Management Console repository.

smcregister also allows you to register scripts to perform registrations and unregistrations. Typically, a package containing one or more tools or services posts tool and service registrations immediately after installation. On Solaris, this is by way of invocations of smcregister from within a package post-install script. Similarly, unregistrations would be posted from within a package pre-remove script. These are per-machine registrations - that is, registration requests must be posted on each machine on which the Solaris Management Console server will be running. However, due to the way that diskless clients are installed, registration requests cannot be made at install time. Therefore, packages should include and install registration and unregistration scripts, and then register these scripts during installation by way of the scripts subcommand. These scripts should contain tool, toolbox, service, library or property configurations in any of its forms as listed in this man page. While these scripts function very much like package post-install and pre-remove scripts, do not assume the normal package environment is available. However, PATH can assumed to be /usr/sbin:/usr/bin

Using smcregister to edit toolboxes is not as feature-rich as using the Solaris Management Console's graphical editor. The command line interface is intended for use in packaging scripts that do not require user interaction. To edit all the properties of a toolbox or to modify the hierarchy of folders in a toolbox, you must use the specialized graphical editor, that is, smc edit. See [smc\(1M\)](#).

`smcregister` is intended to replace the `smcconf` command as the preferred interface for managing the Solaris Management Console repository as well as toolboxes from within scripts, due to significant performance enhancements over `smcconf`.

Options The following options are supported:

	<code>-h</code>	Prints out a usage summary for the command.
Scripts Configuration	<code>regscript</code>	The full path of a script containing registration commands. The script is executed upon the next restart of the Solaris Management Console server after the package containing the script is installed.
	<code>unregscript</code>	The full path of a script containing unregistration commands. The script is executed upon the next restart of the Solaris Management Console server after the package containing the script is removed.
Toolbox Configuration	<code>action</code>	Legal values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <code>add</code> Adds a target to the toolbox. Specify the path to the toolbox using the <code>-B toolboxpath</code> option and, optionally, provide locale information with the <code>-L locale</code> option. <code>create</code> Creates a new toolbox with no tools in it. The only target recognized is <code>toolbox</code>. <code>list</code> Lists the contents of the toolbox. No target is recognized. If you specify a parameter, it is taken as the path to a toolbox and the contents of that toolbox are listed. If you do not specify a parameter, the contents of the default toolbox are listed. <code>remove</code> Removes a target from the toolbox. Specify the path to the toolbox using the <code>-B toolboxpath</code> option and, optionally, provide locale information with the <code>-L locale</code> option.
	<code>-D</code>	Defers execution of the <code>toolbox</code> command until the Solaris Management Console server is restarted. This is a convenient option for use in packaging scripts during install and un-install. Additionally, the command runs much faster than if run interactively (without <code>-D</code>).
	<code>target</code>	Legal values are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <code>folder</code> If the action is specified as <code>add</code>, this target adds a folder to the toolbox. There are four required parameters: the folder name, description, and small and large icon paths. If the action is specified as <code>remove</code>, this target removes a folder from the toolbox. If the folder to be removed is itself inside a folder, the containing folder must be specified with the <code>-F</code> option. <code>legacy</code> If the action is specified as <code>add</code> or <code>remove</code>, this target adds or removes legacy applications (command line, X-windows, and

web-based) to or from the toolbox. The `-N`, `-T`, `-E`, and `-B` options are required, and the `-A` option is optional. Placement in the toolbox with the `-F` option follows the same rules as for the `tool` and `tbxURL` targets. See NOTES for more information about legacy applications.

tbxURL If the action is specified as `add` or `remove`, this target adds to or removes from the toolbox a link to another toolbox. The required parameter is the URL to the other toolbox. The properties of addition and removal are the same as for the `tool` target.

tool If the action is specified as `add`, this target adds a native Solaris Management Console tool from the toolbox. The required parameter is the full Java classname of the tool you are adding. If you specify a folder name with the `-F` option, the tool is placed inside that folder (the folder will not be created if it does not already exist). Otherwise, the tool is appended to the end of the toolbox and not placed inside any folder. If the action is specified as `remove`, this target removes a native Solaris Management Console tool from the toolbox. The required parameter is the full Java classname of the tool you wish to remove. If you specify a folder name with the `-F` option, any tool with the given name in that folder will be removed. If no folder name is specified, all tools with the given name in the toolbox will be removed. For the tool to show up in the console, the tool must also be registered in the repository. See the repository configuration section below for more information. If a tool is referenced in a toolbox but is not registered, it will not appear in the console when the toolbox is loaded. Removing a tool from a toolbox does not remove the tool from the server repository.

toolbox If the action is specified as `create`, this target creates a skeleton toolbox with no tools. There are four required parameters: the toolbox name, description, and small and large icon paths. These must be followed by the `-B toolboxpath` and `-D scope` options.

parameters Specifies values that may be required depending on the combination of action and target.

options Supported options for various action and target combinations for the toolbox configuration are:

`-A` Specifies the parameters to pass to the legacy application. This option is available only for the legacy target.

-
- B Specifies the path of the toolbox that is being modified. If this option is not given, the modifications will be performed on the default toolbox, *This Computer*.
- D Specifies the scope (domain) in which the tool should be run. The legal values for scope are *file*, *nis*, *dns*, and *ldap*. This may also be specified for a folder or a toolbox. In the former case, all tools in that folder and its subfolders will be run in that scope; in the latter, all tools in the toolbox will be run in that scope.
- E Specifies the absolute executable path of the legacy application. This option is available only for the legacy target.
- f If the -f option is given to add, the information will overwrite any information of the same name already in the toolbox. If the -f option is not given, an error may be returned if the information is already in the toolbox.
- F *folder* Specifies the full path of the container folder. If this option is not given, the default folder is the *root* folder of the toolbox.
- H [*host_name*][:*port*] Specifies the host and port from which a tool should be loaded. If *host_name* is not given, the default host (*localhost*, if the toolbox is loaded from the local filesystem, or the host from which the toolbox is loaded if loaded from a remote Solaris Management Console server) will be used. If *port* is not given, the default port will be used. If this option is not given at all, both the default host and the default port will be used.
- L *locale* Specifies the locale of the toolbox which is being modified. The default is the C locale.
- N *appName* Specifies the name of the legacy application being registered. This is the name that will appear in the console. This option is available only for the legacy target.

	-P <i>key:value</i>	Specifies the key/value pairs that define parameters to a tool. Multiple key/value pairs can be specified at a time.
	-T <i>appType</i>	Specifies the legacy application type. Legal values are CLI, XAPP, or HTML. This option is available only for the legacy target.
Tool, Service, and Library Configuration	See NOTES for more information about registration and unregistration of tools, services, and libraries.	
	ALL	Specify that the library being registered to or unregistered from the repository is for use by all tools and services.
	ALLSERVICE	Specify that the library being registered to or unregistered from the repository is for use by all services.
	ALLTOOL	Specify that the library being registered to or unregistered from the repository is for use by all tools.
	<i>attachedBeannname</i>	The name of a registered jar to which the library jarfile should be attached to (or detached from). This is typically the same as <i>altjarnname</i> (if provided) or <i>jarfile</i> used to register the jar to which this library is being attached or detached. An attached library means the library is only available for use by the tool or service to which it is being attached.
	<i>classlistfile</i>	The classlist text file generated from the smccompile(1M) command. Library registration does not require that a classlist file be specified. Instead, you can substitute the keyword none in place of the classlist path argument to smregister, in which case one will be generated automatically. Generating the classlist automatically during server startup will cause the next server restart to take longer, so it is strongly suggested that developers always provide a classlist file with their libraries. Auto-generation is more appropriately used to register 3rd-party library jars.
	<i>jarfile</i>	The full path to the jar file to be registered/unregistered. The name must be in the form <i>beannname.jar</i> , where <i>beannname</i> is the package path to the bean. If it is not, an alternate name must be given in that form using the -n option.
	-n <i>altjarnname</i>	Rename the jarfile in the repository to <i>altjarnname</i> . This would typically be the full bean name. For example, if the jarfile was MyTool.jar, then <i>altjarnname</i> might be com.mycompany.myproduct.MyTool.jar. It is recommended that an <i>altjarnname</i> containing the full package path be used.

<i>native_lib_list</i>	List of up to 4 native libraries that can be associated with a service bean.
-u	The operation will be to un-register the jar with the Solaris Management Console repository. The jarfile argument must be identical to the <i>altjarname</i> used to register the jar (if provided), or jarfile.
xmlfile	The xml descriptor file that describes this jarfile. Every tool or services must have one. See the Solaris Management Console SDK Guide located at <code>/usr/sadm/lib/smc/docs/sdkguide/index.html</code> .

Repository Configuration The Solaris Management Console repository stores information about the registered tools and services, as well as libraries (for instance, resource jars) and properties attached to tools or services.

- list** Lists the contents of the repository:
- All registered tools
 - All registered services
 - All libraries attached to all tools
 - All libraries attached to all services
 - All libraries attached to all tools and services

Property Configuration See NOTES for more information about registration and unregistration of properties. If registering a property, this defines a property on a tool or service. Only one key value pair at a time can be registered.

beanname The name of a registered jar on which the properties will be defined. Optionally, a library name may follow the bean name, in which case the properties are defined on the library that is attached to the named bean.

If unregistering a property, this undefines a property from a tool or service. Only one key value pair at a time can be registered. The key, *beanname*, and optional library are specified as for registering a property.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Adding Legacy Applications to a Toolbox

The following command adds to the default toolbox the Command Line Interface (CLI) application, `/usr/bin/ls` with arguments `-al -R`, giving it the name, Directory Listing:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smcregister toolbox add legacy -N "Directory Listing" \
-T CLI -E /usr/bin/ls -A "-al -R"
```

Use this variation to defer execution of this command until the Solaris Management Console server is restarted:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smcregister toolbox -D add legacy -N "Directory Listing" \
-T CLI -E /usr/bin/ls -A "-al -R"
```

EXAMPLE 2 Adding a Folder to a Toolbox

The following command adds to the standard Management Tools toolbox a folder with the name, New Folder, the description, This is a new folder, and the small and large icons, folder_s.gif and folder_l.gif:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smregister toolbox add folder "New Folder" \  
    "This is a new folder" folder_s.gif folder_l.gif \  
    -B /var/sadm/smc/toolboxes/smc/smc.tbx
```

EXAMPLE 3 Adding a Native Solaris Management Console Tool to a Toolbox

The following command adds a native Solaris Management Console tool to the default toolbox. The Java classname of the tool is com.mycompany.myproject.client.MyTool (the name, description, and icons visible in the console are provided by the tool itself). When loaded, it will be run in the NIS domain, syrinx, which is hosted by the machine, temple, and will be retrieved from port 2112 on the machine from which the toolbox was loaded.

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smregister toolbox add tool \  
    com.mycompany.myproject.client.MyTool \  
    -D nis:/temple/syrinx -H :2112
```

EXAMPLE 4 Adding an Solaris Management Console Tool to the Repository

The following command adds the Java bean found in MyTool.jar to the repository. The xml file contains information about the tool. The classlist file would have been generated by smccompile -j:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smregister tool -n com.mycompany.myproject.client.MyTool.jar \  
    ${HOME}/workarea/MyTool.jar \  
    ${HOME}/workarea/MyTool_classlist.txt \  
    ${HOME}/workarea/MyTool.xml
```

Use this variation to add an Solaris Management Console tool to the repository without specifying an alternate name:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smregister tool \  
    ${HOME}/workarea/com.mycompany.myproject.client.MyTool.jar \  
    ${HOME}/workarea/MyTool_classlist.txt \  
    ${HOME}/workarea/MyTool.xml
```

EXAMPLE 5 Adding an Solaris Management Console Service to the Repository

The following command adds the Java bean found in `MyServiceImpl.jar` to the repository. The `xml` file contains information about the service. The `classlist` file would have been generated by `smccompile -j`. The extra proxy and stub classes included in the jar would have been generated by `smccompile -c`:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smcregister service \  
  -n com.mycompany.myproject.server.MyServiceImpl.jar \  
  ${HOME}/workarea/MyServiceImpl.jar \  
  ${HOME}/workarea/MyServiceImpl_classlist.txt \  
  ${HOME}/workarea/MyServiceImpl.xml
```

Use this variation to add a Solaris Management Console service to the repository without specifying an alternate name:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smcregister service \  
  ${HOME}/workarea/com.mycompany.myproject.server.MyServiceImpl.jar \  
  ${HOME}/workarea/MyServiceImpl_classlist.txt \  
  ${HOME}/workarea/MyServiceImpl.xml
```

EXAMPLE 6 Removing an Solaris Management Console Tool From the Repository

The following command removes a Java tool bean from the repository:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smcregister tool \  
  -u com.mycompany.myproject.client.MyTool.jar
```

EXAMPLE 7 Removing an Solaris Management Console Service From the Repository

The following command removes a Java service bean from the repository:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smcregister service \  
  -u com.mycompany.myproject.server.MyServiceImpl.jar
```

EXAMPLE 8 Attaching a Library to a Specific Tool

The following command adds the library jar file, `MyTool_fr.jar` (probably a French localized version of the `MyTool`'s resources) to the bean, `com.mycompany.myproject.client.MyTool`:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smcregister library \  
  -n MyTool_fr.jar \  
  ${HOME}/workarea/MyTool_fr.jar \  
  ${HOME}/workarea/MyTool_fr_classlist.txt \  
  com.mycompany.myproject.client.MyTool
```

EXAMPLE 9 Attaching a Library to All Tools

The following command adds the library jar file, widgets.jar, to all tools in the repository. The library probably contains a widget set which might be useful to any registered tools. The classlist file would have been generated by `smc compile -j`.

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smcregister library \  
    ${HOME}/workarea/lib/widgets.jar\  
    ${HOME}/workarea/lib/widgets_classlist.txt \  
    ALLTOOL
```

Alternatively, to add a 3rd-party library jar to all tools, replace the classlist file with none:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smcregister library \  
    /opt/lib/XYZwidgets.jar none ALLTOOL
```

EXAMPLE 10 Detaching a Library from All Tools

The following command removes the Java library bean from the repository:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smcregister library -u MyTool_fr.jar ALLTOOL
```

EXAMPLE 11 Detaching a Library from a Specific Tool

The following command detaches the library jar file, MyTool_fr.jar (probably a French localized version of the MyTool's resources) from the bean `com.mycompany.myproject.client.MyTool`, and removes it from the repository:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smcregister library -u MyTool_fr.jar \  
    com.mycompany.myproject.client.MyTool
```

EXAMPLE 12 Registering Scripts

The following command registers the following scripts containing registration and unregistration commands. `MyProduct_reg.sh` will be executed upon the next server restart after the file is installed by the owning package. `MyProduct_unreg.sh` will be executed upon the next server restart after the file is removed by the owning package:

```
/usr/sadm/bin/smcregister scripts \  
    /usr/sadm/lib/myProduct/MyProduct_reg.sh \  
    /usr/sadm/lib/myProduct/MyProduct_unreg.sh
```

Environment Variables See [environ\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following environment variables that affect the execution of `smcregister`:

JAVA_HOME If you do not specify this environment variable, your `PATH` is searched for a suitable java. Otherwise, the `/usr/j2se` location is used.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWmc

See Also [smc\(1M\)](#), [smcconf\(1M\)](#), [smccompile\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#)

Notes All standard shell quoting rules apply.

Legacy applications (X-windows, command-line, and web-based applications) are handled differently from native Solaris Management Console tools. Legacy tools are handled by an instantiation of a native Solaris Management Console tool, LegacyAppLauncher, which, through the toolbox, is given the necessary information to run the legacy application: path, options, and so forth. Thus, you do not register a legacy application into the repository as you would a native Solaris Management Console tool. Instead, legacy applications appear only in toolboxes.

Registration and unregistration of tools, services, libraries, and properties do not take effect until the Solaris Management Console server is restarted. Run `/etc/init.d/init.wbem stop` followed by `/etc/init.d/init.wbem start`

Name smcron – manage jobs in the crontab database

Synopsis /usr/sadm/bin/smcron *subcommand* [*auth_args*] - -
[*subcommand_args*]

Description The smcron command manages jobs in the [crontab\(1\)](#) database.

subcommands smcron *subcommands* are:

- add** Adds a job to the crontab(1) database. To add a job, the administrator must have the `solaris.jobs.user` authorization. To add a job to another user's crontab file, the administrator must have the `solaris.jobs.admin` authorization.
- delete** Deletes a job from the crontab(1) database. To delete a job, the administrator must have the `solaris.jobs.user` authorization. To delete a job from another user's crontab file, the administrator must have the `solaris.jobs.admin` authorization.
- list** Lists one or more jobs in the crontab(1) database. To list all jobs, the administrator must have the `solaris.jobs.user` authorization. To list a job in another user's crontab file, the administrator must have the `solaris.jobs.admin` authorization. No authorization is needed to list a user's own jobs.
- modify** Modifies a job in the crontab(1) database. To modify a job, the administrator must have the `solaris.jobs.user` authorization. To modify a job in another user's crontab file, the administrator must have the `solaris.jobs.admin` authorization.

Options The smcron authentication arguments, *auth_args*, are derived from the [smc\(1M\)](#) arg set and are the same regardless of which subcommand you use. The smcron command requires the Solaris Management Console to be initialized for the command to succeed (see [smc\(1M\)](#)). After rebooting the Solaris Management Console server, the first Solaris Management Console connection might time out, so you might need to retry the command.

The subcommand-specific options, *subcommand_args*, must come after the *auth_args* and must be separated from them by the - - option.

auth_args The valid *auth_args* are -D, -H, -l, -p, -r, and -u; they are all optional. If no *auth_args* are specified, certain defaults will be assumed and the user may be prompted for additional information, such as a password for authentication purposes. These letter options can also be specified by their equivalent option words preceded by a double dash. For example, you can use either -D or - --domain with the *domain* argument.

-D | - --domain *13;domain* Specifies the default domain that you want to manage. smcron accepts only `file` for this option. `file` is also the default value.

	The file default domain means that changes are local to the server. Toolboxes can change the domain on a tool-by-tool basis; this option specifies the domain for all other tools.
<code>-H - --hostname <i>13;host_name:port</i></code>	Specifies the <i>host_name</i> and <i>port</i> to which you want to connect. If you do not specify a <i>port</i> , the system connects to the default port, 898. If you do not specify <i>host_name:port</i> , the Solaris Management Console connects to the local host on port 898. You may still have to choose a toolbox to load into the console. To override this behavior, use the <code>smcron(1M) -B</code> option, or set your console preferences to load a “home toolbox” by default.
<code>-l - --rolepassword <i>13;role_password</i></code>	Specifies the password for the <i>role_name</i> . If you specify a <i>role_name</i> but do not specify a <i>role_password</i> , the system prompts you to supply a <i>role_password</i> . Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.
<code>-p - --password <i>13;password</i></code>	Specifies the password for the <i>user_name</i> . If you do not specify a password, the system prompts you for one. Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.
<code>-r - --rolename <i>13;role_name</i></code>	Specifies a role name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, no role is assumed.
<code>-u - --username <i>13;user_name</i></code>	Specifies the user name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, the user identity running the console process is assumed.
<code>- -</code>	This option is required and must always follow the preceding options. If you do not enter the preceding options, you must still enter the <code>- -</code> option.

subcommand_args For the time-related subcommands described below, `-m`, `-M`, `-t`, and `-w`, you can enter multiple arguments, separated only by commas. `smcron` will construct `crontab` entries appropriate for your arguments. See EXAMPLES.

Note: Descriptions and other arg options that contain white spaces must be enclosed in double quotes.

- For subcommand `add`:

- *c command* Specifies the command that you want to run.
- *h* (Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.
- *m day_of_month* (Optional) Specifies the day of the month you want to run the job. Valid values are 1–31. If you specify both - *t* and - *m* options, the job executes one day per month at the time specified by - *t*.
- *M month* (Optional) Specifies the month that you want to run the job. Valid values are 1–12. If you specify both - *t* and - *M* options, the job executes during the specified month at the time specified by - *t*.
- *n name* Specifies the unique name of the job.
- *o owner* (Optional) Specifies the user name that is the owner of the job. If you do not specify this option, the user name specified by the - *U* option is assumed.
- *t time_of_day* Specifies the time (in *hh:mm*) that you want to execute the command. If no other time-related options are specified (- *m*, - *M*, or - *w*), the job executes every day at the time specified by - *t*. If you specify both - *t* and - *w* options, the job executes one day per week at the time specified by - *t*. If you specify both - *t* and - *m* options, the job executes one day per month at the time specified by - *t*. If you specify both - *t* and - *M* options, the job executes each day during the specified month at the time specified by - *t*.
- *w day_of_week* (Optional) Specifies the day of the week you want to execute the command. Valid values are as follows:
 - 0=Sunday
 - 1=Monday
 - 2=Tuesday
 - 3=Wednesday
 - 4=Thursday
 - 5=Friday
 - 6=SaturdayIf you specify both - *t* and - *w* options, the job executes one day per week at the time specified by - *t*.

- For subcommand `delete`:

- *h* (Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.
- *n name* Specifies the unique name of the job.
- *o owner* (Optional) Specifies the user name that is the owner of the job. If you do not specify this option, the user name specified by the - *U* option is assumed.

- For subcommand `list`:
 - f *n|s|v* (Optional) Specifies the format of the output. See EXAMPLES for examples of each output type.
 - *n* — Displays the data in native format, as it appears in the `crontab(1)` database.
 - *s* — Default format. Displays the data in summary format.
 - *v* — Displays the data in verbose format.
 - h (Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.
 - o *owner* (Optional) Lists all jobs for the specified owner (user name). If you do not specify this option, all jobs in the `crontab(1)` database are listed.
- For subcommand `modify`:
 - c *command* (Optional) Specifies the command that you want to run.
 - h (Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.
 - m *day_of_month* (Optional) Specifies the day of the month you want to run the job. Valid values are 1–31. If you specify both -t and -m options, the job executes one day per month at the time specified by -t.
 - M *month* (Optional) Specifies the month that you want to run the job. Valid values are 1–12. If you specify both -t and -M options, the job executes during the specified month at the time specified by -t.
 - n *name* Specifies the current unique name of the job.
 - N *new_name* (Optional) Specifies the new unique name of the job.
 - o *owner* (Optional) Specifies the user name that is the owner of the job. If you do not specify this option, the user name specified by the -U option is assumed.
 - O *new_owner* (Optional) Specifies the new owner of the job.
 - t *time_of_day* (Optional) Specifies the time (in *hh:mm*) that you want to execute the command. If no other time-related options are specified (-m, -M, or -w), then the job executes every day at the time specified by -t. If you specify both -t and -w options, the job executes one day per week at the time specified by -t. If you specify both -t and -m options, the job executes one day per month at the time specified by -t. If you specify both -t and -M, then the job executes each day during the specified month at the time specified by -t.
 - w *day_of_week* (Optional) Specifies the day of the week you want to execute the command. Valid values are as follows:
 - 0=Sunday

- 1=Monday
- 2=Tuesday
- 3=Wednesday
- 4=Thursday
- 5=Friday
- 6=Saturday

If you specify both `-t` and `-w` options, the job executes one day per week at the time specified by `-t`.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Adding a Job

The following adds a new job, owned by root, that removes the old log files from `/tmp` daily at 1:30 AM.

```
./smcron add -H myhost -u root -p mypassword -- -n "Remove old logs" \  
-t 1:30 -c "rm /tmp/*.log" -o root
```

EXAMPLE 2 Deleting a Job

The following deletes the job `Remove old logs` owned by root:

```
./smcron delete -H myhost -u root -p mypassword -- \  
-n "Remove old logs" -o root
```

EXAMPLE 3 Listing Jobs in Native Format

The following lists all jobs in native, or `crontab(1)`, format:

```
./smcron list -H myhost -u root -p mypassword -- -f n  
MINUTE HOUR DATE MONTH DAY COMMAND  
  
10 3 * * * /usr/sbin/logadm  
15 3 * * 0 /usr/lib/fs/nfs/nfsfind  
1 2 * * * [ -x /usr/sbin/rtc ] && /usr/sbin/rtc -c > /dev/null 2>&1  
30 3 * * * [ -x /usr/lib/gss/gsscred_clean ] && /usr/lib/gss/gsscred_clean
```

EXAMPLE 4 Listing Jobs in Standard Format

The following lists all jobs owned by `lp` in standard format:

```
./smcron list -H myhost -u root -p mypassword -- -f s -o lp  
NAME::OWNER::SCHEDULE::COMMAND  
  
NoName_1765663371::lp::Weekly on Sundays at 3:13 AM::cd /var/lp/logs;  
if [ -f requests ]; then if [ -f requests.1 ]; then /bin/mv requests.1  
requests.2; fi; /usr/bin/cp requests requests.1; > requests; fi
```

EXAMPLE 4 Listing Jobs in Standard Format (Continued)

```
NoName_512822673::lp::Weekly on Sundays at 4:15 AM::cd /var/lp/logs;
  if [ -f lpsched ]; then if [ -f lpsched.1 ]; then /bin/mv lpsched.1
  lpsched.2; fi; /usr/bin/cp lpsched lpsched.1; >lpsched; fi
```

EXAMPLE 5 Listing jobs in verbose format

The following lists all jobs in verbose format:

```
./smcron list -H myhost -u root -p mypassword -- -f v
NAME::OWNER::SCHEDULE::NEXT_RUN::STATUS::COMMAND
```

```
NoName_1075488942::root::Advanced:::Finished on Feb 10 3:10 with code 1
::/etc/cron.d/logchecker
databackup::root::Weekly on Sundays at 3:10 AM::3/19/00 3:10 AM
::Finished on Sep 19 3:10::/usr/lib/newsyslog
runlog::root::Daily at 2:01 AM::3/14/00 2:01 AM::Finished on Feb 11
2:01 AM::/usr/sbin/rtc
```

EXAMPLE 6 Changing a Job

The following modifies the job Remove old logs owned by root to execute daily at 2:00 AM:

```
./smcron modify -H myhost -u root -p mypassword -- -n "Remove old logs" \
  -o root -t 2:00
```

EXAMPLE 7 Specifying Multiple Time Arguments

smcron allows you to specify a range of times for all of its time-related subcommands, -m, -M, -t, and -w. For example, the following command:

```
# smcron add -u root -p xxxx -- -n cronjob1 -w 1-4,5 \
-t 12:00,13:15,14:30 -c ls
```

...creates the following entry in crontab:

```
0,15,30 12,13,14 * * 1,2,3,4,6 ls #cronjob1
```

This job would run on Monday through Thursday and Saturday at the following times:

```
12:00 12:15 12:30
13:00 13:15 13:30
14:00 14:15 14:30
```

Environment Variables See [environ\(5\)](#) for a description of the JAVA_HOME environment variable, which affects the execution of the smcron command. If this environment variable is not specified, the /usr/java location is used. See [smc\(1M\)](#).

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 Invalid command syntax. A usage message displays.
- 2 An error occurred while executing the command. An error message displays.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWmga

See Also [crontab\(1\)](#), [cron\(1M\)](#), [smc\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#)

Notes The timezone of the cron daemon sets the system-wide timezone for cron entries. This, in turn, is by set by default system-wide using /etc/default/init.

If some form of *daylight savings* or *summer/winter time* is in effect, then jobs scheduled during the switchover period could be executed once, twice, or not at all.

Name smcwebserver – manage the server for the Sun Web Console

Synopsis `/usr/sbin/smcwebserver subcommand options`

Description The smcwebserver utility manages the Sun Web Console server. Sun Web Console is a browser-based interface that performs systems management. System administrators can manage systems, devices and services from the console.

When the console webserver is running, you can view the console by opening a browser and pointing to:

`https://host:6789`

host is the machine where the console has been installed and the console server is running.

The smcwebserver service is managed by the service management facility (SMF) (see [smf\(5\)](#)), under the fault management resource identifier (FMRI):

`svc:/system/webconsole`

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). smcwebserver can only be started by the superuser or someone in the Primary Administrator role.

The configuration properties of this service can be modified with [svccfg\(1M\)](#).

smcwebserver supports an SMF property that controls remote access to the Sun Web Console server. The property, `options/tcp_listen`, has a default value of `false`, which disallows remote access. The value `true` allows remote access. See [EXAMPLES](#).

Subcommands The following subcommands are supported:

disable Disable automatic start or stop during system boot or shutdown. Until the administrator reruns the script with the smcwebserver `enable` subcommand the webserver can be started/stopped only when the administrator executes the script manually using the following command:

```
# /usr/sbin/smcwebserver [start | stop]
```

enable Enable the webserver to startup automatically during subsequent system boot and gracefully stop during system shutdown.

restart Stop and subsequently start the console webserver.

The format of the restart subcommand is:

```
restart [-U username]
```

start Start the console webserver.

The format of the start subcommand is:

```
start [-U username]  
stop    Stop the console webserver.  
status  Display status of the console webserver.  
  
The format of the status subcommand is:  
  
status [-p]
```

Options The following options are supported:

<code>-U <i>username</i> --username <i>username</i></code>	The user identity to run the server as. Once the server has successfully started under the specified identity, all subsequent starts will automatically be done under that identity until you change it via this option, or by changing the <code>com.sun.web.console.user</code> configuration property via the <code>smreg(1M)</code> command. The default is to run the server under the <code>noaccess</code> identity.
<code>-p --parseable</code>	Display non-localized output suitable for programmatic parsing. If the server is running, the output will be: <code>running=yes</code> If the server is not running, the output will be: <code>running=no</code>
<code>-h --help -?</code>	Display the usage statement.
<code>-V --version</code>	Display console version information.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Displaying the Usage Statement

The following command displays the `smcwebserver` usage statement:

```
% smcwebserver --help
```

EXAMPLE 2 Determining if the Server is Running

The following shell command will start the server if it is not already running.

```
ans='smcwebserver -p | grep running | cut -d"=" -f2'  
if [ "$ans" = "no" ]; then  
    smcwebserver start  
fi
```

EXAMPLE 3 Using SMF Property to Allow Remote Access

The following sequence of commands allows remote access to the Sun Web Console server.

```
# svccfg -s svc:/system/webconsole \
  setprop options/tcp_listen = true
# svcadm refresh svc:/system/webconsole
```

Environment Variables See [environ\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following environment variables that affect the execution of smcwebserver:

JAVA_HOME If you do not specify this environment variable, your PATH is searched for a suitable java. Otherwise, depending on the OS, the following default locations are used:

Solaris: /usr/j2se

Linux: /usr/java/j2sdk1.4*

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWmcon
Interface Stability	Stable

See Also [smreg\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Name smdiskless – manage diskless client support for a server

Synopsis /usr/sadm/bin/smdiskless *subcommand* [*auth_args*] - -
[*subcommand_args*]

Description The smdiskless command manages diskless client support for a server.

smdiskless *subcommands* are:

- add** Adds a new diskless client to a server. There are two usages for this command. The user can either specify all the optional arguments directly on the command line, or provide a [sysidcfg\(4\)](#) formatted file as input. A future enhancement will allow specifying both a [sysidcfg\(4\)](#) formatted file and optional arguments, which will override the values in the [sysidcfg\(4\)](#) file.
- delete** Deletes an existing diskless client from the system databases and removes any server support associated with the host, depending on the *os_server* type.
- list** Lists existing diskless clients served by *os_server*.
- modify** Modifies the specified attributes of the diskless client *os_server*.

Options The smdiskless authentication arguments, *auth_args*, are derived from the [smc\(1M\)](#) arg set and are the same regardless of which subcommand you use. The smdiskless command requires the Solaris Management Console to be initialized for the command to succeed (see [smc\(1M\)](#)). After rebooting the Solaris Management Console server, the first Solaris Management Console connection might time out, so you might need to retry the command.

The subcommand-specific options, *subcommand_args*, must come after the *auth_args* and must be separated from them by the - - option.

auth_args The valid *auth_args* are -D, -H, -l, -p, -r, and -u; they are all optional. If no *auth_args* are specified, certain defaults will be assumed and the user may be prompted for additional information, such as a password for authentication purposes. These letter options can also be specified by their equivalent option words preceded by a double dash. For example, you can use either -D or - --domain.

Note – smdiskless supports the --auth-data *file* option, which enables you to specify a file the console can read to collect authentication data. See [smc\(1M\)](#) for a description of this option.

-D | - --domain *13;domain* Specifies the default domain that you want to manage. The syntax of *domain* is *type:/host_name/domain_name*, where *type* is nis, dns, ldap, or file; *host_name* is the name of the machine that serves the domain; and *domain_name* is the name of the domain you want to manage.

	If you do not specify this option, the Solaris Management Console assumes the <code>file</code> default domain on whatever server you choose to manage, meaning that changes are local to the server. Toolboxes can change the domain on a tool-by-tool basis; this option specifies the domain for all other tools.
<code>-H - --hostname 13;host_name:port</code>	Specifies the <i>host_name</i> and <i>port</i> to which you want to connect. If you do not specify a <i>port</i> , the system connects to the default port, 898. If you do not specify <i>host_name:port</i> , the Solaris Management Console connects to the local host on port 898. You may still have to choose a toolbox to load into the console. To override this behavior, use the <code>smc(1M) -B</code> option, or set your console preferences to load a “home toolbox” by default.
<code>-l - --rolepassword 13;role_password</code>	Specifies the password for the <i>role_name</i> . If you specify a <i>role_name</i> but do not specify a <i>role_password</i> , the system prompts you to supply a <i>role_password</i> . Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.
<code>-p - --password 13;password</code>	Specifies the password for the <i>user_name</i> . If you do not specify a password, the system prompts you for one. Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.
<code>-r - --rolename 13;role_name</code>	Specifies a role name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, no role is assumed.
<code>-u - --username 13;user_name</code>	Specifies the user name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, the user identity running the console process is assumed.
<code>- -</code>	This option is required and must always follow the preceding options. If you do not enter the preceding options, you must still enter the <code>- -</code> option.

subcommand_args *Note:* Descriptions and other arg options that contain white spaces must be enclosed in double quotes.

- For subcommand `add`:
 - h (Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.
 - i *IP_address* Specifies the IP address for the host in the form of 172.16.200.1.
 - e *ethernet_addr* Specifies the Ethernet address.
 - n *host* Specifies the client name.
 - o *os_server* (optional) Specifies the name of the host where the OS service filesystems reside. If this option is not specified, the host will be the same as that specified in the `smc(1M) -D` option. This option is useful in the event that the name service server and the OS server are not the same machine.
 - x *os=platform* Specifies the operating system. The syntax for *platform* is as follows:
instruction_set.implementation.Solaris_version
where
 - *instruction_set* is one of `sparc` or `i386`
 - *implementation* is the implementation architecture, that is, `i86pc` and `sun4u`.
 - *version* is the Solaris version number. The supported *version* numbers are 2.6, 2.7 (for Solaris 7), 8, 9, and 10. Examples are:
`sparc.sun4u.Solaris_8`
 - x *root=pathname* (Optional) Specifies the absolute path of the directory in which to create the root directory for diskless clients. The default (and recommended) *pathname* is `/export/root/client_name`.
 - x *swap=pathname* (Optional) Specifies the absolute path of the directory in which to create the swap file for diskless clients. The default (and recommended) *pathname* is `/export/swap/client_name`.
 - x *swapsize=size* (Optional) Specifies the size, in megabytes, of the swap file for diskless clients. The default swap size is 24M.
 - x *dump=pathname* (Optional) Specifies the absolute path of the dump directory for diskless clients. The default (and recommended) *pathname* is `/export/dump/client_name`.
 - x *dumpsize=size* (Optional) Specifies the size, in megabytes, of the dump file for diskless clients. The default swap size is 24M.
 - x *pw=Y* (Optional) Prompts for the system's root password. The default is not to prompt.

The following options are used to configure workstations on first boot by `sysidtool(1M)`. They can either be specified on the command line, or in a `sysidcfg(4)` formatted file. *Note:* Use the `sysidcfg(4)` file to:

- Add a DNS client.
- Specify use of the LDAP name service.
- Specify a security policy.

The keywords and functions supported by `sysidtool` and `sysidcfg` vary among Solaris releases. Consult the man pages for your operating system release (`uname -r`) to determine the level of support available.

<code>-x tz=<i>timezone</i></code>	(Optional) Specifies the path of a timezone file, relative to <code>/usr/share/lib/zoneinfo</code> . The default is the server's timezone.
<code>-x ns=NIS NONE</code>	(Optional) Specifies the client's nameservice. This is either NIS or NONE. Use a <code>sysidcfg(4)</code> file to specify DNS or LDAP. The default <code>ns</code> value is NONE, which results in the use of the files source in <code>nsswitch.conf</code> . See <code>nsswitch.conf(4)</code> for a description of the files source.
<code>-x nameserver=<i>hostname</i></code>	(Optional) Specifies the nameserver's hostname. The default is the server's nameserver.
<code>-x domain=<i>domain</i></code>	(Optional) Specifies the client's domain. The default is the server's domain.
<code>-x nameserver_ipaddress=<i>ip_address</i></code>	(Optional) Specifies the nameserver's IP address.
<code>-x netmask=<i>ip_address</i></code>	(Optional) Specifies the client's IP address netmask. The default is the server's netmask.
<code>-x locale=<i>locale</i></code>	(Optional) Specifies the client's system locale. The default is the C locale.
<code>-x terminal=<i>term</i></code>	(Optional) Specifies the workstation's terminal type, typically, <code>sun</code> or <code>xterms</code> .
<code>-x passwd=<i>root_password</i></code>	(Optional) Specifies the system's root password. The default is no password.
<code>-x sysidcfg=<i>path_to_sysidcfg_file</i></code>	(Optional) Specifies the file to be placed in the <code>/etc</code> directory of the diskless client. On first boot, <code>/etc/.UNCONFIGURED</code> exists and <code>sysidtool(1M)</code> will run. If a file called

/etc/sysidcfg exists, sysidtool(1M) reads this file and uses the information for system configuration.

- For subcommand `delete`:
 - h (Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.
 - n *host* Specifies the hostname of the diskless client to delete. This host is deleted from relevant tables and OS Services for this client are deleted.
 - o *os_server* (Optional) Specifies the name of the host where the OS service filesystems reside. If this option is not specified, the host will be the same as that specified in the `smc(1M) -D` option. This option is useful in the event that the name service server and the OS server are not the same machine.
- For subcommand `list`:
 - h (Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.
 - o *os_server* (Optional) Specifies the name of the host where the OS service filesystems reside. If this option is not specified, the host will be the same as that specified in the `smc(1M) -D` option. This option is useful in the event that the name service server and the OS server are not the same machine.
- For subcommand `modify`:
 - e *ethernet_addr* Changes the specified diskless client's ethernet address to *ethernet_addr*.
 - h (Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.
 - n *host* Specifies the host name of the diskless client to modify.
 - o *os_server* (Optional) Specifies the name of the host where the OS service filesystems reside. If this option is not specified, the host will be the same as that specified in the `smc(1M) -D` option. This option is useful in the event that the name service server and the OS server are not the same machine.
 - x *tz=timezone* (Optional) Changes the specified diskless client's timezone.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Creating a new diskless client

The following command adds a new diskless client named `client1` which will run Solaris 10 on a sun4u machine:

```
example% /usr/sadm/bin/smdiskless add -- -i 172.16.200.1 \
-e 8:0:11:12:13:14 -n client1 -x os=sparc.sun4u.Solaris_10 \
-x root=/export/root/client1 -x swap=/export/swap/client1 \
-x swappsize=32 -x tz=US/Eastern -x locale=en_US
```


EXAMPLE 2 Listing the diskless clients served by a host

The following command lists the diskless clients running on the OS server, `osserver`:

```
example% /usr/sadm/bin/smdiskless list -D file:/osserver/osserver -- \
-o osserver
```

EXAMPLE 3 Modifying the attributes of the diskless client host

The following command modifies the ethernet address for the client named `client1` on the OS server, `osserver`, to be `8:0:11:12:13:15`:

```
example% /usr/sadm/bin/smdiskless modify -D file:/osserver/osserver -- \
-o osserver -n client1 -e 8:0:11:12:13:15
```

Environment Variables See [environ\(5\)](#) for a description of the `JAVA_HOME` environment variable, which affects the execution of the `smdiskless` command. If this environment variable is not specified, the `/usr/java1.2` location is used. See [smc\(1M\)](#).

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 Invalid command syntax. A usage message displays.
- 2 An error occurred while executing the command. An error message displays.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWdclnt

See Also [smc\(1M\)](#), [smoservice\(1M\)](#), [sysidtool\(1M\)](#), [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#), [sysidcfg\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#)

Name smexec – manage entries in the `exec_attr` database

Synopsis `/usr/sadm/bin/smexec subcommand [auth_args] - -`
`[subcommand_args]`

Description The `smexec` command manages an entry in the `exec_attr(4)` database in the local `/etc` files name service or an NIS name service.

subcommands smexec *subcommands* are:

`add`

Adds a new entry to the `exec_attr(4)` database. To add an entry to the `exec_attr` database, the administrator must have the `solaris.profmgr.execattr.write` authorization.

`delete`

Deletes an entry from the `exec_attr(4)` database. To delete an entry from the `exec_attr` database, the administrator must have the `solaris.profmgr.execattr.write` authorization.

`modify`

Modifies an entry in the `exec_attr(4)` database. To modify an entry in the `exec_attr` database, the administrator must have the `solaris.profmgr.execattr.write` authorization.

Options The `smexec` authentication arguments, *auth_args*, are derived from the `smc(1M)` arg set and are the same regardless of which subcommand you use. The `smexec` command requires the Solaris Management Console to be initialized for the command to succeed (see `smc(1M)`). After rebooting the Solaris Management Console server, the first Solaris Management Console connection might time out, so you might need to retry the command.

The subcommand-specific options, *subcommand_args*, must come after the *auth_args* and must be separated from them by the `- -` option.

auth_args The *auth_args* `-D`, `-H`, `-l`, `-p`, `-r`, and `-u` are described below. They are all optional. These options are a subset of the full complement of supported options described in `smc(1M)`.

If no *auth_args* are specified, certain defaults will be assumed and the user may be prompted for additional information, such as a password for authentication purposes. These letter options can also be specified by their equivalent option words preceded by a double dash. For example, you can use either `-D` or `--domain` with the *domain* argument.

`-D | - --domain I3;domain`

Specifies the default domain that you want to manage. The syntax of *domain* is *type:/host_name/domain_name*, where *type* is `nis`, `dns`, `ldap`, or `file`; *host_name* is the name of the machine that serves the domain; and *domain_name* is the name of the domain you want to manage.

If you do not specify this option, the Solaris Management Console assumes the `file` default domain on whatever server you choose to manage, meaning that changes are local to the server. Toolboxes can change the domain on a tool-by-tool basis; this option specifies the domain for all other tools.

- H | - `--hostname 13;host_name:port`
Specifies the `host_name` and `port` to which you want to connect. If you do not specify a `port`, the system connects to the default port, 898. If you do not specify `host_name:port`, the Solaris Management Console connects to the local host on port 898. You may still have to choose a toolbox to load into the console. To override this behavior, use the [smc\(1M\)](#) `-B` option, or set your console preferences to load a “home toolbox” by default.
- l | - `--rolepassword 13;role_password`
Specifies the password for the `role_name`. If you specify a `role_name` but do not specify a `role_password`, the system prompts you to supply a `role_password`. Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.
- p | - `--password 13;password`
Specifies the password for the `user_name`. If you do not specify a password, the system prompts you for one. Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.
- r | - `--rolename 13;role_name`
Specifies a role name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, no role is assumed.
- u | - `--username 13;user_name`
Specifies the user name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, the user identity running the console process is assumed.
- -
This option is required and must always follow the preceding options. If you do not enter the preceding options, you must still enter the `- -` option.

subcommand_args **Note:** Descriptions and other arg options that contain white spaces must be enclosed in double quotes.

To add or change privileges, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.privilege.write` authorization. See [privileges\(5\)](#).

- For subcommand `add`:

- c `command_path|CDE_action`
Specifies the full path to the command or CDE action associated with the new `exec_attr` entry. Specifying a CDE action is available only if the system is configured with Solaris Trusted Extensions. `smexec` automatically detects when a system is running these extensions.

- g *egid*
(Optional) Specifies the effective group ID that executes with the command.
- G *gid*
(Optional) Specifies the real group ID that executes with the command.
- h
(Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.
- n *profile_name*
Specifies the name of the profile associated with the new `exec_attr` entry.
- t *type*
Specifies the type for the command. Currently, the only acceptable value for *type* is `cmd`.
- u *euid*
(Optional) Specifies the effective user ID that executes with the command.
- U *uid*
(Optional) Specifies the real user ID that executes with the command.
- M *limit_privs*
Specifies the privilege name(s) to add to the new `exec_attr(4)` entry. The default is `all` for *limit* privilege.

To add or change privileges, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.privilege.write` authorization. See [privileges\(5\)](#).

- I *inheritable_privs*
Specifies the inheritable privilege name(s) to add to the new `exec_attr(4)` entry.

- For subcommand `delete`:

- c *command_path|CDE_action*
Specifies the full path to the command or CDE action associated with the `exec_attr` entry. Specifying a CDE action is available only if the system is configured with Solaris Trusted Extensions. `smexec` automatically detects when a system is running these extensions.

- h
(Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.

- n *profile_name*
Specifies the name of the profile associated with the `exec_attr` entry.

- t *type*
Specifies the type `cmd` for command. Currently, the only acceptable value for *type* is `cmd`.

- For subcommand `modify`:

- c *command_path|CDE_action*
Specifies the full path to the command or CDE action associated with the `exec_attr` entry you want to modify. Specifying a CDE action is available only if the system is configured with Solaris Trusted Extensions. `smexec` automatically detects when a system is running these extensions.
- g *egid*
(Optional) Specifies the new effective group ID that executes with the command.
- G *gid*
(Optional) Specifies the new real group ID that executes with the command.
- h
(Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.
- n *profile_name*
Specifies the name of the profile associated with the `exec_attr` entry.
- t *type*
Specifies the type `cmd` for command. Currently, the only acceptable value for *type* is `cmd`.
- u *euid*
(Optional) Specifies the new effective user ID that executes with the command.
- U *uid*
(Optional) Specifies the new real user ID that executes with the command.
- M *limit_privs*
Specifies the privilege name(s) to modify in an `exec_attr(4)` entry. The default is `all` for `limit` privilege.

To add or change privileges, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.privilege.write` authorization. See `privileges(5)`.
- I *inheritable_privs*
Specifies the inheritable privilege name(s) to modify in an `exec_attr(4)` entry.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Creating an `exec_attr` Database Entry

The following creates a new `exec_attr` entry for the User Manager profile on the local file system. The entry type is `cmd` for the command `/usr/bin/cp`. The command has an effective user ID of `0` and an effective group ID of `0`.

```
./smexec add -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root -- -n "User Manager" \  
-t cmd -c /usr/bin/cp -u 0 -g 0
```

EXAMPLE 2 Deleting an `exec_attr` Database Entry

The following example deletes an `exec_attr` database entry for the User Manager profile from the local file system. The entry designated for the command `/usr/bin/cp` is deleted.

EXAMPLE 2 Deleting an `exec_attr` Database Entry *(Continued)*

```
./smexec delete -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root -- -n "User Manager" \  
-t cmd -c /usr/bin/cp
```

EXAMPLE 3 Modifying an `exec_attr` Database Entry

The following modifies the attributes of the `exec_attr` database entry for the User Manager profile on the local file system. The `/usr/bin/cp` entry is modified to execute with the real user ID of 0 and the real group ID of 0.

```
./smexec modify -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root -- -n "User Manager" \  
-t cmd -c /usr/bin/cp -U 0 -G 0
```

Environment Variables See [environ\(5\)](#) for a description of the `JAVA_HOME` environment variable, which affects the execution of the `smexec` command. If this environment variable is not specified, the `/usr/java` location is used. See [smc\(1M\)](#).

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0
Successful completion.
- 1
Invalid command syntax. A usage message displays.
- 2
An error occurred while executing the command. An error message displays.

Files The following file is used by the `smexec` command:

`/etc/security/exec_attr`
Rights profiles database. See [exec_attr\(4\)](#).

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWmga
Interface Stability	Evolving

See Also [smc\(1M\)](#), [exec_attr\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#)

Name smgroup – manage group entries

Synopsis /usr/sadm/bin/smgroup *subcommand* [*auth_args*] - -
[*subcommand_args*]

Description The smgroup command manages one or more group definitions in the group database for the appropriate files in the local /etc files name service or an NIS name service.

The following smgroup *subcommands* are supported

- add** Adds a new group entry. To add an entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.write` authorization.
- delete** Deletes a group entry. You can delete only one entry at a time. To delete an entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.write` authorization. *Note:* You cannot delete the system groups with IDs less than 100, or the groups 60001, 60002, or 65534.
- list** Lists one or more group entries in the form of a three-column list, containing the group name, group ID, and group members, separated by colons (:). To list entries, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.read` authorization.
- modify** Modifies a group entry. To modify an entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.write` authorization.

Options The smgroup authentication arguments, *auth_args*, are derived from the `smc(1M)` arg set and are the same regardless of which subcommand you use. The smgroup command requires the Solaris Management Console to be initialized for the command to succeed (see `smc(1M)`). After rebooting the Solaris Management Console server, the first Solaris Management Console connection might time out, so you might need to retry the command.

The subcommand-specific options, *subcommand_args*, must come after the *auth_args* and must be separated from them by the - - option.

auth_args The valid *auth_args* are -D, -H, -l, -p, -r, and -u; they are all optional. If no *auth_args* are specified, certain defaults will be assumed and the user may be prompted for additional information, such as a password for authentication purposes. These letter options can also be specified by their equivalent option words preceded by a double dash. For example, you can use either -D or - --domain.

The following *auth_args* are supported:

- D | - --domain *I3;domain* Specifies the default domain that you want to manage. The syntax of *domain* is *type:/host_name/domain_name*, where *type* is *nis*, *dns*, *ldap* or *file*; *host_name* is the name of

the machine that serves the domain; and *domain_name* is the name of the domain you want to manage.

If you do not specify this option, the Solaris Management Console assumes the `file` default domain on whatever server you choose to manage, meaning that changes are local to the server. Toolboxes can change the domain on a tool-by-tool basis; this option specifies the domain for all other tools.

`-H | - --hostname 13;host_name:port`

Specifies the *host_name* and *port* to which you want to connect. If you do not specify a *port*, the system connects to the default port, 898. If you do not specify *host_name:port*, the Solaris Management Console connects to the local host on port 898. You may still have to choose a toolbox to load into the console. To override this behavior, use the `smc(1M) -B` option, or set your console preferences to load a “home toolbox” by default.

`-l | - --rolepassword 13;role_password`

Specifies the password for the *role_name*. If you specify a *role_name* but do not specify a *role_password*, the system prompts you to supply a *role_password*. Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.

`-p | - --password 13;password`

Specifies the password for the *user_name*. If you do not specify a password, the system prompts you for one. Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.

`-r | - --rolename 13;role_name`

Specifies a role name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, no role is assumed.

`-u | - --username 13;user_name`

Specifies the user name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, the user identity running the console process is assumed.

`- -`

This option is required and must always follow the preceding options. If you do not enter the preceding options, you must still enter the `- -` option.

subcommand_args Descriptions and other argument options that contain white spaces must be enclosed in double quotes.

The `add` subcommand supports the following *subcommand_args*:

- g *gid* (Optional) Specifies the group ID for the new group. The group ID must be a non-negative decimal integer with a maximum value of 2MB (2,147,483,647). Group IDs 0–99 are reserved for the system and should be used with care. If you do not specify a *gid*, the system automatically assigns the next available *gid*. To maximize interoperability and compatibility, administrators are recommended to assign groups using the range of GIDs below 60000 where possible.
- h (Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.
- m *group_member1* -m *group_member2* . . . (Optional) Specifies the new members to add to the group.
- n *group_name* Specifies the name of the new group. The group name must be unique within a domain, contain 2–32 alphanumeric characters, begin with a letter, and contain at least one lowercase letter.

The `delete` subcommand supports the following *subcommand_args*:

- h (Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.
- n *group_name* Specifies the name of the group you want to delete.

The `list` subcommand supports the following *subcommand_args*:

- h (Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.
- n *group_name* (Optional) Specifies the name of the group you want to list. If you do not specify a group name, all groups are listed.

The `modify` subcommand supports the following *subcommand_args*:

- h (Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.

- `-m group_member1 -m group_member2...` (Optional) Specifies the new members to add to the group. Note that `group_member` overwrites the existing member list in the group file.
- `-n group_name` Specifies the name of the group you want to modify.
- `-N new_group` (Optional) Specifies the new group name. The group name must be unique within a domain, contain 2–32 alphanumeric characters, begin with a letter, and contain at least one lowercase letter.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Creating a Test Group

The following creates the `test_group` group entry with a group ID of 123 and adds `test_member1` and `test_member2` to the group:

```
./smgroup add -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root -- -n test_group \  
            -m test_member1 -m test_member2 -g 123
```

EXAMPLE 2 Deleting a Group

The following deletes `test_group`:

```
./smgroup delete -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root -- -n test_group
```

EXAMPLE 3 Displaying All Groups

The following displays all groups in a three-column list showing the group name, group ID, and group members:

```
./smgroup list -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root --
```

EXAMPLE 4 Displaying a Group

The following displays the `group_1` data in a three-column list showing the group name, group ID, and group members:

```
./smgroup list -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root -- -n group_1
```

EXAMPLE 5 Renaming a Group

The following renames a group from `finance` to `accounting`:

EXAMPLE 5 Renaming a Group *(Continued)*

```
./smgroup modify -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root -- \
-n finance -N accounting
```

Environment Variables See [environ\(5\)](#) for a description of the JAVA_HOME environment variable, which affects the execution of the smgroup command. If this environment variable is not specified, the /usr/java location is used. See [smc\(1M\)](#).

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 Invalid command syntax. A usage message displays.
- 2 An error occurred while executing the command. An error message displays.

Files The following files are used by the smgroup command:

/etc/group Group file. See [group\(4\)](#).

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWmga

See Also [smc\(1M\)](#), [group\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#)

Name smlog – manage and view WBEM log files

Synopsis /usr/sadm/bin/smlog *subcommand* [*auth_args*] --
[*subcommand_args*]

Description The smlog command manages WBEM log files and allows a user to view WBEM log file records.

Subcommands The smlog command supports the following subcommands:

backup Backs up the entries in the current WBEM log file. The backup command then creates a new log file and makes this log file the current log file.

delete Deletes an existing (backed up) WBEM log file.

list Lists the names of all the WBEM log files available for viewing.

view Allows the user to view the contents of the specified WBEM log file.

Options The smlog authentication arguments, *auth_args*, are derived from the [smc\(1M\)](#) arg set and are the same regardless of which subcommand you use. The smlog command requires the Solaris Management Console to be initialized for the command to succeed (see [smc\(1M\)](#)). After rebooting the Solaris Management Console server, the first Solaris Management Console connection might time out, so you might need to retry the command.

The subcommand-specific options, *subcommand_args*, must come after the *auth_args* and must be separated from them by the - – option.

auth_args The valid *auth_args* are -D, -H, -l, -p, -r, and -u; they are all optional. If no *auth_args* are specified, certain defaults will be assumed and the user may be prompted for additional information, such as a password for authentication purposes. These letter options can also be specified by their equivalent option words preceded by a double dash. For example, you can use either -D or - --domain with the *domain* argument.

-D | - --domain *13;domain* Specifies the default domain that you want to manage. smlog accepts only *file* for this option. *file* is also the default value.

The *file* default domain means that changes are local to the server. Toolboxes can change the domain on a tool-by-tool basis; this option specifies the domain for all other tools.

-H | - --hostname *13;host_name;port* Specifies the *host_name* and *port* to which you want to connect. If you do not specify a *port*, the system connects to the default port, 898. If you do not specify *host_name;port*, the Solaris Management Console connects to the local host on port 898. You may still have to choose a

toolbox to load into the console. To override this behavior, use the `smc -B` option (see [smc\(1M\)](#)), or set your console preferences to load a “home toolbox” by default.

<code>-l - --rolepassword 13;role_password</code>	Specifies the password for the <i>role_name</i> . If you specify a <i>role_name</i> but do not specify a <i>role_password</i> , the system prompts you to supply a <i>role_password</i> . Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.
<code>-p - --password 13;password</code>	Specifies the password for the <i>user_name</i> . If you do not specify a password, the system prompts you for one. Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.
<code>-r - --rolename 13;role_name</code>	Specifies a role name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, no role is assumed.
<code>-u - --username 13;user_name</code>	Specifies the user name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, the user identity running the console process is assumed.
<code>- -</code>	This option is required and must always follow the preceding options. If you do not enter the preceding options, you must still enter the <code>- -</code> option.

`subcommand_args` Descriptions and other `arg` options that contain white spaces must be enclosed in double quotes.

The `backup` subcommand supports the following `subcommand_args`:

`-h` Displays the command's usage statement.

This `subcommand_arg` is optional.

The `delete` subcommand supports the following `subcommand_args`:

`-h` Displays the command's usage statement.

This `subcommand_arg` is optional.

`-n name` Specifies the name of the log file you want to delete.

The `list` subcommand supports the following `subcommand_args`:

-h Displays the command's usage statement.

This *subcommand_arg* is optional.

The view subcommand supports the following *subcommand_args*:

-h Displays the command's usage statement.

This *subcommand_arg* is optional.

-n *name* Specifies the name of the log file you want to view.

-v Displays the data in verbose format.

This *subcommand_arg* is optional.

Examples

EXAMPLE 1 Listing WBEM Log Files

The following command lists all available WBEM log files:

```
./smlog list -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root --
```

```
Log.01/03/2001.14:38:29
Log.01/04/2001.16:34:59
Log.01/08/2001.14:13:33
Log.01/11/2001.18:39:53
Log.01/12/2001.10:31:31
Log.12/21/2000.17:41:11
```

EXAMPLE 2 Displaying a WBEM Log File

The following command displays the contents of a log file:

```
./smlog view -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root -- -n Log.01/04/2001.16:34:59
```

Date and Time	Client	User	Source	Severity	Cate gory
1/5/01 5:22:47 PM	hostname1	root	Solaris_OsService	Informational	Appl ication log
1/5/01 5:21:46 PM	hostname1	root	Solaris_OsService	Informational	Appl ication log

The smlog output wraps when it exceeds 80 characters.

Environment Variables See [environ\(5\)](#) for a description of the JAVA_HOME environment variable, which affects the execution of the smlog command. If this environment variable is not specified, the /usr/java1.2 location is used. See [smc\(1M\)](#).

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 Invalid command syntax. A usage message displays.
- 2 An error occurred while executing the command. An error message displays.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWmga

See Also [smc\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#)

Name smmaillist – manage email alias entries

Synopsis /usr/sadm/bin/smmaillist *subcommand* [*auth_args*] - -
[*subcommand_args*]

Description The smmaillist command manages one or more email alias entries for the appropriate files in the local /etc files name service or an NIS name service.

subcommands smmaillist *subcommands* are:

- add** Creates a new email alias definition and adds it to the appropriate files. To add an entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.write` authorization.
- delete** Deletes an email alias entry. You can delete only one entry at a time. To delete an entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.write` authorization. *Note:* You cannot delete Postmaster or Mailer-Daemon aliases.
- list** Lists one or more email alias entries. To list an entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.read` authorization.
- modify** Modifies an email alias entry. To modify an entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.write` authorization.

Options The smmaillist authentication arguments, *auth_args*, are derived from the [smc\(1M\)](#) arg set and are the same regardless of which subcommand you use. The smmaillist command requires the Solaris Management Console to be initialized for the command to succeed (see [smc\(1M\)](#)). After rebooting the Solaris Management Console server, the first Solaris Management Console connection might time out, so you might need to retry the command.

The subcommand-specific options, *subcommand_args*, must come after the *auth_args* and must be separated from them by the - - option.

auth_args The valid *auth_args* are -D, -H, -l, -p, -r, and -u; they are all optional. If no *auth_args* are specified, certain defaults will be assumed and the user may be prompted for additional information, such as a password for authentication purposes. These letter options can also be specified by their equivalent option words preceded by a double dash. For example, you can use either -D or - --domain with the *domain* argument.

-D | - --domain *13;domain* Specifies the default domain that you want to manage. The syntax of *domain* is *type:/host_name/domain_name*, where *type* is `nis`, `dns`, `ldap`, or `file`; *host_name* is the name of the machine that serves the domain; and *domain_name* is the name of the domain you want to manage.

	If you do not specify this option, the Solaris Management Console assumes the <code>file</code> default domain on whatever server you choose to manage, meaning that changes are local to the server. Toolboxes can change the domain on a tool-by-tool basis; this option specifies the domain for all other tools.
<code>-H - --hostname <i>13;host_name:port</i></code>	Specifies the <i>host_name</i> and <i>port</i> to which you want to connect. If you do not specify a <i>port</i> , the system connects to the default port, 898. If you do not specify <i>host_name:port</i> , the Solaris Management Console connects to the local host on port 898. You may still have to choose a toolbox to load into the console. To override this behavior, use the <code>smc(1M) -B</code> option, or set your console preferences to load a “home toolbox” by default.
<code>-l - --rolepassword <i>13;role_password</i></code>	Specifies the password for the <i>role_name</i> . If you specify a <i>role_name</i> but do not specify a <i>role_password</i> , the system prompts you to supply a <i>role_password</i> . Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.
<code>-p - --password <i>13;password</i></code>	Specifies the password for the <i>user_name</i> . If you do not specify a password, the system prompts you for one. Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.
<code>-r - --rolename <i>13;role_name</i></code>	Specifies a role name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, no role is assumed.
<code>-u - --username <i>13;user_name</i></code>	Specifies the user name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, the user identity running the console process is assumed.
<code>- -</code>	This option is required and must always follow the preceding options. If you do not enter the preceding options, you must still enter the <code>- -</code> option.

subcommand_args *Note:* Descriptions and other arg options that contain white spaces must be enclosed in double quotes.

- For subcommand `add`:
 - a *address1* -a *address2*... (Optional) Specifies the new email address. See [sendmail\(1M\)](#).
 - h (Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.
 - n *alias_name* Specifies the name of the alias you want to add. See [sendmail\(1M\)](#).
- For subcommand `delete`:
 - h (Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.
 - n *alias_name* Specifies the alias you want to delete.
- For subcommand `list`:
 - h (Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.
 - n *alias_name* (Optional) Specifies the name of the alias you want to display. If you do not specify an alias, all aliases are listed.
- For subcommand `modify`:
 - a *address1* -a *address2*... (Optional) Specifies new email address(es) to replace the existing one(s). See [sendmail\(1M\)](#).
 - h (Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.
 - n *alias_name* (Optional) Specifies the name of the alias you want to modify.
 - N *new_alias_name* Specifies the new alias name. Use only when renaming an alias. See [sendmail\(1M\)](#).

Examples

EXAMPLE 1 Creating an alias

The following creates the `coworkers` alias and adds the following member list: `bill@machine1`, `sue@machine2`, and `me@machine3` to the alias.

```
./smmaillist add -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root -- -n coworkers \  
-a bill@machine1 -a sue@machine2 -a me@machine3
```

EXAMPLE 2 Deleting a mail alias

The following deletes the `my_alias` alias:

```
./smmaillist delete -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root -- -n my_alias
```

EXAMPLE 3 Displaying members of a mail alias

The following displays the list of members belonging to the `my_alias` alias:

```
./smaillist list -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root -- -n my_alias
```

EXAMPLE 4 Displaying members of all mail aliases

The following displays the list of members belonging to all mail aliases:

```
./smaillist list -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root --
```

EXAMPLE 5 Renaming a mail alias

The following renames the `current_name` mail alias to `new_name`:

```
./smaillist modify -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root -- \
    -n current_name -N new_name
```

EXAMPLE 6 Redefining an address list

The following changes the recipients of the alias `my_alias` to `bill@machine1`. Any previous recipients are deleted from the alias.

```
./smaillist modify -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root -- \
    -n my_alias -a bill@machine1
```

Environment Variables See [environ\(5\)](#) for a description of the `JAVA_HOME` environment variable, which affects the execution of the `smaillist` command. If this environment variable is not specified, the `/usr/java` location is used. See [smc\(1M\)](#).

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 Invalid command syntax. A usage message displays.
- 2 An error occurred while executing the command. An error message displays.

Files The following files are used by the `smaillist` command:
`/var/mail/aliases` Aliases for [sendmail\(1M\)](#). See [aliases\(4\)](#).

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWmga

See Also [sendmail\(1M\)](#), [smc\(1M\)](#), [aliases\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#)

Name smmultiuser – manage bulk operations on user accounts

Synopsis /usr/sadm/bin/smmultiuser *subcommand* [*auth_args*] - -
[*subcommand_args*]

Description The smmultiuser command allows bulk operations on user entries in the local /etc filesystem or an NIS name service, using either an input file or piped input. *Note:* Both input files and piped input contain a cleartext (non-encrypted) password for each new user entry.

subcommands smmultiuser *subcommands* are:

- add** Adds multiple user entries to the appropriate files. To add an entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.write` authorization.
- delete** Deletes one or more user entries from the appropriate files. To delete an entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.write` authorization.
- modify** Modifies existing user entries in the user account database. To modify an entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.write` authorization. Here is the list of what can be modified using the `modify` subcommand:
 1. UserName (only under certain conditions; see Note 2 in NOTES).
 2. Password (only under certain conditions; see Note 3 in NOTES). To modify a password, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.pswd` authorization.
 3. Description.
 4. Primary Group ID.
 5. Shell type.
 6. FullName.

Options The smmultiuser authentication arguments, *auth_args*, are derived from the [smc\(1M\)](#) arg set and are the same regardless of which subcommand you use. The smmultiuser command requires the Solaris Management Console to be initialized for the command to succeed (see [smc\(1M\)](#)). After rebooting the Solaris Management Console server, the first Solaris Management Console connection might time out, so you might need to retry the command.

The subcommand-specific options, *subcommand_args*, must come after the *auth_args* and must be separated from them by the - - option.

auth_args The valid *auth_args* are -D, -H, -l, -p, -r, -t rust, and -u; they are all optional. If no *auth_args* are specified, certain defaults will be assumed and the user may be prompted for additional information, such as a password for authentication purposes. These letter options can also be specified by their equivalent option words preceded by a double dash. For example, you can use either -D or - --domain.

-D | - --domain *13;domain*

Specifies the default domain that you want to manage. The syntax of *domain* is

type:host_name/domain_name, where *type* is *nis*, *dns*, *ldap*, or *file*; *host_name* is the name of the machine that serves the domain; and *domain_name* is the name of the domain you want to manage.

If you do not specify this option, the Solaris Management Console assumes the *file* default domain on whatever server you choose to manage, meaning that changes are local to the server. Toolboxes can change the domain on a tool-by-tool basis; this option specifies the domain for all other tools.

-H | **-** *--hostname* *13;host_name:port*

Specifies the *host_name* and *port* to which you want to connect. If you do not specify a *port*, the system connects to the default port, 898. If you do not specify *host_name:port*, the Solaris Management Console connects to the local host on port 898. You may still have to choose a toolbox to load into the console. To override this behavior, use the [smc\(1M\)](#) **-B** option, or set your console preferences to load a “home toolbox” by default.

-l | **-** *--rolepassword* *13;role_password*

Specifies the password for the *role_name*. If you specify a *role_name* but do not specify a *role_password*, the system prompts you to supply a *role_password*. Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.

-p | **-** *--password* *13;password*

Specifies the password for the *user_name*. If you do not specify a password, the system prompts you for one. Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.

-r | **-** *--rolename* *13;role_name*

Specifies a role name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, no role is assumed.

- *--trust*

Trusts all downloaded code implicitly. Use this option when running the terminal console non-interactively and you cannot let the console wait for user input.

If using piped input into any of the `smmultiuser` subcommands, it will now be necessary to use the `-t trust` option with the `-L logfile` option. See EXAMPLES.

`-u | -` `--username I3;user_name`

Specifies the user name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, the user identity running the console process is assumed.

`- -`

This option is required and must always follow the preceding options. If you do not enter the preceding options, you must still enter the `- -` option.

subcommand_args *Note:* Descriptions and other arg options that contain white spaces must be enclosed in double quotes.

- For subcommand `add`:

`-h` (Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.

`-i input_file` Specifies the input file containing the user account information. After the command is executed, the input file is removed. The input file must follow the `/etc/passwd` file format. If you do not specify the `-i input_file` option, you must include a `pipedReader` operand immediately before the command. See EXAMPLES.

`-L logfile` (Optional) Specifies the full pathname to the text file that stores the command's success/failure data. *Note:* This text file is an ASCII—formatted log file; it is different from and unrelated to the output of the normal logging mechanism that also occurs within the Log Viewer tool. The `-L logfile` option is used to dump additional logging information to a text file.

- For subcommand `delete`:

`-h` (Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.

`-i input_file` Specifies the input file containing the user account information. After the command is executed, the input file is removed. The input file must follow the `/etc/passwd` file format. If you do not specify the `-i input_file` option, you must include a `pipedReader` operand immediately before the command. See EXAMPLES.

`-L logfile` (Optional) Specifies the full pathname to the text file that stores the command's success/failure data.

- For subcommand `modify`:

`-h` (Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.

- i *input_file* Specifies the input file containing the user account information. After the command is executed, the input file is removed. The input file must follow the `/etc/passwd` file format. If you do not specify the `-i input_file` option, you must include a *pipedReader* operand immediately before the command. See EXAMPLES. *Note:* When modifying passwords, use the pipedReader input, since it is more secure than keeping passwords in a file. See Note 1 in NOTES.
- L *logfile* (Optional) Specifies the full pathname to the text file that stores the command's success/failure data.

Operands The following operands are supported:

- pipedReader* You must include *pipedReader* if you do not specify an *input_file*. Include the pipedReader input immediately before the command. The pipedReader input must follow the `/etc/passwd` file format. See EXAMPLES. *Note:* Use the `-t trust` option when using pipedReader input with the `-L logfile` option to avoid the user prompt from the Security Alert Manager, which normally asks the user whether the log file should be created. Without the `-t trust` option, the pipedReader input is improperly taken as the answer to the prompt before the user can answer “Y” or “N”, and the logging operation will probably fail.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Creating multiple user accounts

The following reads in user account data from the `/tmp/foo` file and creates new user accounts on the local file system. The input file is formatted in the `/etc/passwd` format.

```
./smmultiuser add -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root -- -i /tmp/foo
```

EXAMPLE 2 Deleting multiple user accounts

The following reads in user account data from the `/tmp/foo` file and deletes the named user accounts from the local file system:

```
./smmultiuser delete -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root -- -i /tmp/foo
```

EXAMPLE 3 Creating a log file with pipedReader input

The following example shows the use of the `smc(1M) -t trust` option that is required when creating a log file. It is applicable to the `delete` and `modify` subcommands also.

```
cat /tmp/users.txt | smmultiuser add --trust -- -L /tmp/mylog.txt
```

Environment Variables See [environ\(5\)](#) for a description of the `JAVA_HOME` environment variable, which affects the execution of the `smprofile` command. If this environment variable is not specified, the `/usr/java` location is used. See [smc\(1M\)](#).

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 Invalid command syntax. A usage message displays.
- 2 An error occurred while executing the command. An error message displays.

Files The following files are used by the `smprofile` command:

`/etc/passwd` Contains the file format to use for the *input_file* and *piped_input*. See [passwd\(4\)](#).

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWmga

See Also [smc\(1M\)](#), [passwd\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#)

- Notes**
- The file format used by both the `add` and `modify` subcommands is the `/etc/passwd` format. But there is an allowance for a mutated version of this file format that contains an extra field at the end of each line to be used for the Full Name. If the extra field is appended to the end of each line, it will be used for the Full Name value, but if it is omitted, it will be assumed that no FullName modification is being done. The extra field is separated with a colon (:), just like all the other fields.
 Example of regulation `/etc/passwd` entry:

```
rick2:x:101:10:description1:/home/rick2:/bin/sh
```

 Example of `/etc/passwd` variant entry:

```
rick2:x:101:10:description1:/home/rick2:/bin/sh:Ricks_fullname
```
 - The modifies are all done based on lookups of the user name in the user tables. If a user name can not be found in this lookup, a secondary check will be made to see if the `uid` and `FullName` can be found in the user tables. If they are both found, assume that a user rename has occurred. If neither can be found, assume that the user account does not exist and cannot be modified.
 - If no password is supplied, assume that there is no change to the password information. If a password is being changed, it should be supplied in cleartext as piped input, although this is not required. The password can be supplied in the input file also. Once read in, the password will be changed accordingly.

Name smoservice – manage OS services

Synopsis /usr/sadm/bin/smoservice *subcommand* [*auth_args*] - -
[*subcommand_args*]

Description The smoservice command manages OS services.

smoservice *subcommands* are:

- add** Adds the specified OS services.
- delete** Deletes the specified OS services.
- list** Either lists all the installed OS services for the server if you do not specify a hostname, or lists the OS services for the specified diskless client if you do specify a hostname.
- patch** Manages patches on all existing diskless clients. For example, you can use this subcommand to initially establish a patch spool directory on an OS server. Then, you can apply the patch to the spool area, verifying the patch as needed. Once the patch exists in the spool area, you can apply the patch to the clone area. In addition, you can migrate the patched clone area to clients.

Options The smoservice authentication arguments, *auth_args*, are derived from the [smc\(1M\)](#) arg set and are the same regardless of which subcommand you use. The smoservice command requires the Solaris Management Console to be initialized for the command to succeed (see [smc\(1M\)](#)). After rebooting the Solaris Management Console server, the first Solaris Management Console connection might time out, so you might need to retry the command.

The subcommand-specific options, *subcommand_args*, must come after the *auth_args* and must be separated from them by the - - option.

auth_args The valid *auth_args* are -D, -H, -l, -p, -r, and -u; they are all optional. If no *auth_args* are specified, certain defaults will be assumed and the user may be prompted for additional information, such as a password for authentication purposes. These letter options can also be specified by their equivalent option words preceded by a double dash. For example, you can use either -D or - --domain.

-D | - --domain *13;domain* Specifies the default domain that you want to manage. The syntax of *domain* is *type:/host_name/domain_name*, where *type* is nis, dns, ldap, or file; *host_name* is the name of the machine that serves the domain; and *domain_name* is the name of the domain you want to manage.

If you do not specify this option, the Solaris Management Console assumes the file default

-H - --hostname <i>13;host_name:port</i>	domain on whatever server you choose to manage, meaning that changes are local to the server. Toolboxes can change the domain on a tool-by-tool basis; this option specifies the domain for all other tools.
-l - --rolepassword <i>13;role_password</i>	Specifies the <i>host_name</i> and <i>port</i> to which you want to connect. If you do not specify a <i>port</i> , the system connects to the default port, 898. If you do not specify <i>host_name:port</i> , the Solaris Management Console connects to the local host on port 898. You may still have to choose a toolbox to load into the console. To override this behavior, use the smc(1M) -B option, or set your console preferences to load a “home toolbox” by default.
-p - --password <i>13;password</i>	Specifies the password for the <i>role_name</i> . If you specify a <i>role_name</i> but do not specify a <i>role_password</i> , the system prompts you to supply a <i>role_password</i> . Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.
-r - --rolename <i>13;role_name</i>	Specifies the password for the <i>user_name</i> . If you do not specify a password, the system prompts you for one. Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.
-u - --username <i>13;user_name</i>	Specifies a role name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, no role is assumed.
- -	Specifies the user name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, the user identity running the console process is assumed.
- -	This option is required and must always follow the preceding options. If you do not enter the preceding options, you must still enter the - - option.

subcommand_args Note: Descriptions and other arg options that contain white spaces must be enclosed in double quotes.

- For subcommand add:

-h (Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.

-o *os_server* (Optional) Specifies the name of the host where the OS service filesystems reside. If this option is not specified, the host will be the same as that specified in the [smc\(1M\)](#) -D option. This option is useful in the event that the name service server and the OS server are not the same machine.

-x *mediapath=path* Specifies the full path to the Solaris CD image.

-x *platform=platform* Specifies the OS service to add. The instruction architecture, machine class, OS, and version are given in the form:

instruction_set.machine_class.Solaris_os_version

for example, `sparc.sun4m.Solaris_10`

-x *cluster=cluster* Specifies the Solaris cluster to install. For example, `SUNWCa11`.

-x *locale=locale[locale, ...]* (Optional) Specifies the locales to install from the specified cluster. A comma-delimited list of locales can be specified.

■ For subcommand `delete`:

-h (Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.

-o *os_server* (Optional) Specifies the name of the host where the OS service filesystems reside. If this option is not specified, the host will be the same as that specified in the [smc\(1M\)](#) -D option. This option is useful in the event that the name service server and the OS server are not the same machine.

-x *rmplatform=platform* Specifies the OS service to remove. The instruction architecture, machine class, OS, and version are given in the form:

instruction_set.machine_class.Solaris_os_version

for example, `sparc.all.Solaris_10`. *Note:* Only a machine class of `all` is supported.

■ For subcommand `list`:

-h (Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.

-o *os_server* (Optional) Specifies the name of the host where the OS service filesystems reside. If this option is not specified, the host will be the same as that specified in the [smc\(1M\)](#) -D option. This option is useful in the event that the name service server and the OS server are not the same machine.

■ For subcommand `patch`:

-
- a *patch_directory/patch_ID* Adds the specified patch, *patch_ID*, to the spool directory. *patch_directory* specifies the source path of the patch to be spooled which includes the patchid directory name. Patches are spooled to `/export/diskless/Patches/`. If the patch being added obsoletes an existing patch in the spool, the obsolete patch is moved to the archive area, `/export/diskless/Patches/Archive` (to be restored if this new patch is ever removed).
- h (Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.
- m (Optional) Synchronizes spooled patches with offline copies of each diskless client OS service on the server. Spooled patches and applied patches are compared so that newly spooled patches can be installed and patches recently removed from the spool can be backed out. This option does not apply to patches directly to diskless client OS services or diskless clients; the `-u` option must be used to update the services and clients with the changes. Clients are not required to be down at this time, as all patching is done off line. *Note:* The server is fully available during this operation.
- P Lists all currently spooled patches with an associated synopsis. The list is split up into sections detailing the patches for each OS and architecture in this format:
- ```
Solaris os_rell architecture1:
patchid Synopsis
patchid Synopsis
.....
Solaris os_rell architecture2:
patchid Synopsis
.....
```
- r *patchid* Removes the specified patchid from the spool if it is not a requirement for any of the other patches in the spool. All archived patches that were obsoleted by the removed patch are restored to the spool.
- U (Optional) Updates all diskless client OS services and diskless clients with any changes after synchronizing patches with the `-m` option. Clients must be brought down during this operation. Once execution has completed, each client should be booted again.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Creating a new OS service

The following command adds an OS service for Solaris 10 for the sun4u machine class where the OS server is *not* using a name service:

```
example% /usr/sadm/bin/smosservice add -- \
-x mediapath=/net/imageserver/5.8/sparc \
-x platform=sparc.sun4u.Solaris_10 \
-x cluster=SUNWCXall -x locale=en_US
```

The following command adds an OS service for Solaris 10 for the sun4u machine class where the OS server is using NIS, the NIS server is nissserver, the OS server is ossserver, and the port to which you connect on ossserver is 898:

```
example% /usr/sadm/bin/smosservice add -D nis:/nissserver/my.domain.com -- \
-H ossserver:898 -- \
-x mediapath=/net/imageserver/5.8/sparc \
-x platform=sparc.sun4u.Solaris_10 \
-x cluster=SUNWCXall -x locale=en_US \
-o ossserver
```

In the preceding example, the OS service is placed in /export on ossserver, while the hosts.byaddr, ethers, and bootparams maps are updated on the NIS server.

**EXAMPLE 2** Deleting an OS service

The following command deletes the OS service for Solaris 10 for the sun4u machine class where the OS server is using NIS, the NIS server is nissserver, and the OS server is ossserver:

```
example% /usr/sadm/bin/smosservice delete\
-D nis:/nissserver/my.domain.com -- \
-x rmplatform=sparc.all.Solaris_10 \
-o ossserver
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Listing installed OS services

The following command lists the OS services installed on the machine, ossserver:

```
example% /usr/sadm/bin/smosservice list \
-D file:/osserver/osserver -- -o ossserver
```

**Environment Variables** See [environ\(5\)](#) for a description of the JAVA\_HOME environment variable, which affects the execution of the smoservice command. If this environment variable is not specified, the /usr/java1.2 location is used. See [smc\(1M\)](#).

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

- 1 Invalid command syntax. A usage message displays.
- 2 An error occurred while executing the command. An error message displays.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability   | SUNWdclnt       |

**See Also** [smc\(1M\)](#), [smdiskless\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#)

**Name** smpatch – download, apply, and remove updates

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/smpatch add -i *update-id* [*auth-opts*]  
 [-i *update-id*] |PO [-d *update-dir*] [-b *BE\_name*]  
 [-n *system-name*] |PO [-x *mlist=system-list-file*] [-V]

/usr/sbin/smpatch add -x *idlist=update-list-file*  
 [*auth-opts*]  
 [-d *update-dir*] [-n *system-name*] |PO  
 [-b *BE\_name*] [-x *mlist=system-list-file*] [-V]

/usr/sbin/smpatch analyze [*auth-opts*] [-i *update-id*] |PO  
 [-n *system-name*] |PO  
 [-x *idlist=update-list-file*] [-V]

/usr/sbin/smpatch download [*auth-opts*] [-i *update-id*] |PO  
 [-d *update-dir*] [-f] [-n *system-name*] |PO  
 [-t] [-x *idlist=update-list-file*] [-V]

/usr/sbin/smpatch get [*auth-opts*] [-n *system-name*] |PO  
 [*parameter-name*]... [-V]

/usr/sbin/smpatch messages [-a] [-V]

/usr/sbin/smpatch order -i *update-id* [*auth-opts*]  
 [-i *update-id*] |PO [-d *update-dir*]  
 [-n *system-name*] |PO [-V]

/usr/sbin/smpatch order -x *idlist=update-list-file*  
 [*auth-opts*]  
 [-d *update-dir*] [-n *system-name*] |PO [-V]

/usr/sbin/smpatch remove -i *update-id* [*auth-opts*]  
 [-n *system-name*] |PO [-b *BE\_name*] [-V]

/usr/sbin/smpatch set [*auth-opts*] [-n *system-name*] |PO  
*parameter-name=parameter-value*... [-V]

/usr/sbin/smpatch unset [*auth-opts*] [-n *system-name*] |PO  
*parameter-name*... [-V]

/usr/sbin/smpatch update [*auth-opts*] [-i *update-id*] |PO  
 [-d *update-dir*] [-n *system-name*] |PO [-b *BE\_name*]  
 [-x *idlist=update-list-file*] [-V]

**Description** The smpatch command manages the update process on a single system or on multiple systems. Use this command to download, apply, and remove updates. Also, use the smpatch command to configure the update management environment for your system.

If you want to run the smpatch command in remote mode, your system must run at least the Developer Solaris Software Group of the Solaris 10 system.

The smpatch analyze command determines the updates that are appropriate for the systems you want to update. The smpatch command can download and apply updates that you specify



on the command line. Or, `smpatch` can download and apply updates based on an analysis of one or more systems. Use the `-i` option or the `-x idlist=` option to specify the particular updates.

All of the systems on which you want to apply updates must be running the same version of the Solaris Operating System, have the same hardware architecture, and have the same updates applied.

The list of updates that is generated by the analysis is based on all of the available updates from the Sun update server. No explicit information about your host system or its network configuration is transmitted to Sun. Only a request for the Sun update set is transmitted. The update set is scanned for updates that are appropriate for this host system, the results are displayed, and those updates are optionally downloaded.

`smpatch` supports the Live Upgrade feature of the Solaris operating system (see [live\\_upgrade\(5\)](#)). Through the `add`, `remove`, and `update` subcommands, described below, `smpatch` enables you to perform operations on a boot environment (BE). A BE is an operating system image, consisting of a particular set of operating system and application software packages.

The `smpatch` command supports the following subcommands:

#### `add`

Applies one or more updates to one or more systems. You must specify at least one update to apply. By default, updates are applied to the local system.

This subcommand attempts to apply *only* the updates you specify. If you specify an update that depends on another that has not been applied, the `add` command fails to apply the update you specified.

This subcommand does not apply updates based on the specified update policy. To apply updates based on the update policy, use the `update` subcommand.

Use the `-i` or `-x idlist=` option to specify the updates to apply. Note that all of the updates you specify, and those on which they depend, must exist in the download directory.

Use the `-n` or the `-x mlist=` option to specify the systems on which to apply updates.

Optionally use the `-d` option to specify an alternate download directory.

If the updates on which the specified updates depend are unavailable, run the `smpatch download` subcommand to obtain the updates you need.

When you use the `-b BE_name` option, the `add` subcommand applies a specified update to the BE `BE_name`, rather than to the currently running operating system. Upon successful installation of the update, `smpatch` activates `BE_name` (see [luactivate\(1M\)](#)) and informs you that you can, at that point, boot from `BE_name`.

#### `analyze`

Analyzes a system to generate a list of the appropriate updates.

After analyzing the system, use the `update` subcommand or the `download` and `add` subcommands to download and apply the updates to your systems.

The list of updates is written to standard output, so you can redirect standard output to a file to create an update list.

If you supply a list of one or more updates, the list is augmented with the updates on which those updates depend. The list is also put in an order suitable for applying updates.

The `smpatch analyze` command depends on network services that are not available while the system is in single-user mode.

#### `download`

Downloads updates from the Sun update server to a system. You can optionally specify which updates to download. You can also specify the name of a system and download the appropriate updates to that system.

Use the `-i` or `-x idlist=` option to specify the updates to download.

Use the `-f` option to force the download of the exact update revision specified by `-i update-id`. If `-i update-id` does not specify a revision, the highest revision of the update is downloaded.

Use the `-t` option to download the README file for the update specified by `-i update-id`. If `-i update-id` does not specify a revision, the README file for the highest revision of the update is downloaded.

Use the `-n` option to analyze a remote system and to determine which updates to download. The updates, and those on which they depend, are downloaded from the Sun update server to the download directory of the system you specified.

The `smpatch download` command depends on network services that are not available while the system is in single-user mode.

#### `get`

Lists one or more of the `smpatch` configuration parameter values. See "Configuring Your Update Management Environment."

To see values for all parameters, run the `smpatch get` command with no arguments. The output shows an entry for all configuration parameters. Each entry appears on a line by itself. Each entry includes three fields: the parameter name, the value you have assigned it, and its default value. The fields are separated by one or more tab characters.

The following values have special meaning: `-` means that no value is set, `""` means that the value is the null string, `\-` means that the value is `-`, and `\"` means that the value is `""` (two double quotes).

In addition to these special values, these special characters might appear in the output: `\t` for a tab, `\n` for a newline, and `\\` for a backslash.

To see values for particular parameters, run the `smpatch get` command with one or more parameter names. The output lists one parameter value per line in the order in which the parameter names are specified on the command line.

#### messages

Displays messages from the message-of-the-day (MOTD) file. This file stores messages, some of which can be urgent, from Sun. By default, when there is a new message in this file, the message shown below is displayed in `stderr`:

```
You have new messages. To retrieve: smpatch messages [-a]
```

The preceding message appears at the top of any `smpatch analyze/download/update` reports. The `-a` option to the `messages` subcommand displays all messages. Without the `-a` option, only new (that is, as yet unread) messages are displayed.

The receiving of messages from the software update client is controlled by the property:

```
patchpro.report.motd.messages
```

When this property is enabled, the default condition, the client receives messages from Sun. To disable this property, enter:

```
smpatch set patchpro.report.motd.messages=false
```

#### order

Sorts a list of updates into an order that can be used to apply updates.

The list of updates is written to standard output, so you can redirect standard output to a file to create an update list.

Use the `-i` or `-x idlist=` option to specify the updates to order. Note that all of the updates you specify must exist in the download directory.

#### remove

Removes a single update from a single system.

Use the `-i` option to specify which update to remove. Do not use the `-x idlist=` option. Optionally, use the `-n` option to specify the name of a system. Do not use the `-x mlist=` option. By default, the update is removed from the local system.

If the update that you want to remove is required by one or more of the updates that have already been applied to the system, the update is not removed.

When you use the `-b BE_name` option, the `remove` subcommand removes a specified update from the BE `BE_name`, rather than from the currently running operating system.

#### set

Sets the values of one or more configuration parameters. Nothing is written to standard output or standard error when you set parameters, even if a parameter value you set is invalid. This command does not validate the values you set.

**unset**

Resets one or more configuration parameters to the default values. You must specify at least one configuration parameter.

**update**

Updates a single local or remote system by applying appropriate updates. This subcommand analyzes the system, then downloads the appropriate updates from the Sun update server to your system. After the availability of the updates has been confirmed, the updates are applied based on the update policy.

By default, standard updates and those that have `rebootafter` or `reconfigafter` properties are applied.

If an update does not meet the policy for applying updates, the update is not applied. Instead, the ID of the update is written to a file in the download directory. After the update ID is written to the file, `smpatch` continues to apply the other updates. Later, you can use `patchadd` to manually apply any updates listed in this file. The updates listed in the file are still in the download directory.

When you use the `-b BE_name` option, the `update` subcommand applies an update to the BE `BE_name`, rather than to the currently running operating system. Upon successful installation of the update, `smpatch` activates `BE_name` (see [luactivate\(1M\)](#)) and informs you that you can, at that point, boot from `BE_name`.

Installation instructions for updates that require special handling are included in the README file for each update.

The `smpatch update` command depends on network services that are not available while the system is in single-user mode.

**Using Local Mode or Remote Mode**

Starting with Solaris 9, the `smpatch` command is available in two modes: local mode and remote mode. *Local mode* can be run only on the local system and can be run by users who have the appropriate authorizations. This mode can be run while the system is in single-user mode. *Remote mode* can be used to perform tasks on remote systems and can be run by users or roles that have the appropriate authorizations.

By default, local mode is run. In local mode, the Solaris WBEM services are not used, and none of the authentication options or those options that refer to remote systems are available. The command in local mode runs faster than in remote mode.

If the Solaris WBEM services are running and you specify any of the remote or authentication options, the command in remote mode is used.

On Solaris 8 systems, the `smpatch` command only supports local mode operations.

**Specifying the Source of Updates** Your system must specify the source of updates to use. By default, you obtain updates from the Sun update server. However, you can also obtain updates from an update server on your intranet or from a local collection of updates on your system.

You must specify the URL that points to the collection of updates. By default, the Sun update server is the source of updates. The URL is:

```
https://getupdates.sun.com/solaris/
```

The URL must point to an update server or to a collection of updates that is available to the local system. The value of this URL cannot be null.

**Configuring Your Update Management Environment** You can use the `smpatch set` command to configure the update management environment for your system. Use these parameters:

```
patchpro.patchset
```

Name of the update set to use. The default name is `current`.

```
patchpro.download.directory
```

Path of the directory where downloaded updates are stored and from which updates are applied. The default location is `/var/sadm/spool`.

```
patchpro.backout.directory
```

Path of the directory where update backout data is saved. When an update is removed, the data is retrieved from this directory as well. By default, backout data is saved in the package directories.

```
patchpro.patch.source
```

URL that points to the collection of updates. The default URL is that of the Sun update server, `https://getupdates.sun.com/solaris/`.

```
patchpro.proxy.host
```

Host name of your web proxy. By default, no web proxy is specified, and a direct connection to the Internet is assumed.

```
patchpro.proxy.port
```

Port number used by your web proxy. By default, no web proxy is specified, and a direct connection to the Internet is assumed. The default port is `8080`.

```
patchpro.proxy.user
```

Your user name used by your web proxy for authentication.

```
patchpro.proxy.passwd
```

Password used by your web proxy for authentication.

```
patchpro.install.types
```

Your policy for applying updates. The value is a list of zero or more colon-separated update properties that are permitted to be applied by an update operation (`smpatch update`).

This policy *only* affects which updates are installed on your system. The policy does not affect which updates are downloaded.

By default, updates that have the `standard`, `rebootafter`, and `reconfigafter` properties can be applied. See “Setting an Update Policy.”

Setting an Update Policy Updates are classified as being standard or nonstandard. A *standard update* can be applied by `smpatch update`. Such an update is associated with the `standard` update property. `smpatch` applies standard updates immediately. These updates require no system restart. A *nonstandard update* has one of the following characteristics:

- An update that is associated with the `rebootafter`, `rebootimmediate`, `reconfigafter`, `reconfigimmediate`, or `singleuser` properties. Such a nonstandard update can be applied automatically during a system shutdown if permitted by the policy.
- An update that is associated with the `interactive` property. Such an update cannot be applied by using automated installation mechanisms like `smpatch update`. When you attempt to apply one of these updates using `smpatch update`, the update will be downloaded but not installed. You must examine the update's README file and perform whatever manual steps it describes. Typically, you are instructed to apply the update manually using `patchadd` or `smpatch add`.

Use `smpatch set` to specify the types of updates that `smpatch` can additionally apply during an update operation. Such updates might include those that require a reboot and those that must be applied while the system is in single-user mode.

This policy only affects which updates are installed on your system. The policy does not affect which updates are downloaded.

Specify the types of updates that can be applied by using the following command:

```
smpatch set patchpro.install.types=update-property-list
```

*update-property-list* is a colon-separated list of one or more of the following update properties:

`interactive`

An update that cannot be applied by running the usual update management tools (`pprosvd`, `smpatch`, or `patchadd`). Before this update is applied, the user must perform special actions. Such actions might include checking the serial number of a disk drive, stopping a critical daemon, or reading the update's README file.

`rebootafter`

The effects of this update are not visible until after the system is rebooted.

`rebootimmediate`

When this update is applied, the system becomes unstable until the system is rebooted. An unstable system is one in which the behavior is unpredictable and data might be lost.

`reconfigafter`

The effects of this update are not visible until after a reconfiguration reboot (`boot -r`). See the [boot\(1M\)](#) man page.

**reconfigimmediate**

When this update is applied, the system becomes unstable until the system gets a reconfiguration reboot (boot -r). An unstable system is one in which the behavior is unpredictable and data might be lost.

**singleuser**

Do not apply this update while the system is in multiuser mode. You must apply this update on a quiet system with no network traffic and with extremely restricted I/O activity.

**standard**

This update can be applied while the system is in multiuser mode. The effects of the update are visible as soon as it is applied unless the application being updated is running while the update is applied. In this case, the effects of the update are visible after the affected application is restarted.

**Options** The `smpatch` command supports two kinds of options: authentication options and subcommand options.

**Authentication Options** The `smpatch` authentication options, *auth-opts*, apply to all of the subcommands.

If no authentication options are specified, certain defaults are assumed and the user might be prompted for additional information, such as a password for authentication purposes.

These authentication options are only available if the Solaris Management Console and the Solaris WBEM services are available on the local system. If the WBEM services are not running on the local system, `smpatch` performs update operations on the local system only. You can also “force” the use of the local-mode `smpatch` command by using the `-L` option.

The single letter options can also be specified by their equivalent option words preceded by two hyphens. For example, you can specify either `-l` or `--rolepassword`.

The following authentication options are supported:

**-H** | `--hostname` *host-name:port*

Specifies the host and port to which you want to connect. If you do not specify a port, the system connects to the default port, 898. If you do not specify a host (*host-name:port*), the Solaris Management Console connects to the local host on port 898. You might still have to choose a toolbox to load into the console. To override this behavior, use the `smc -B` command, or set your console preferences to load a home toolbox by default.

**-L**

Forces the `smpatch` command to use local mode, which does not rely on Solaris WBEM services. On Solaris 8 systems, this option does not do anything.

This option is mutually exclusive with the other authentication options.

- l | --rolepassword *role-password*  
Specifies the password for *role-name*. If you specify *role-name* but do not specify *role-password*, you are prompted to supply *role-password*. Because passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, this option is considered to be insecure.
- p | --password *password*  
Specifies the password for *user-name*. If you do not specify a password, you are prompted to supply one. Because passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, this option is considered to be insecure.
- r | --rolename *role-name*  
Specifies a role name for authentication. If this option is not specified, no role is assumed.
- u | --username *user-name*  
Specifies the user name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, the user identity running the console process is assumed.

Subcommand Options The following options pertain to the `smpatch` subcommands:

- b *BE\_name*  
Specifies the name of BE that is to be created and updated (for the `add` and `update` subcommands), or to be removed, for the `remove` subcommand.
- d *update-dir*  
Specifies an alternate download directory in which updates are downloaded and from which they are applied.  
  
The default download directory is `/var/sadm/spool`.  
  
The directory must be writable by `root` and be publicly readable.  
  
*update-dir* uses one of the following forms:
  - For remote mode, specify *host-name*: */update-dir*, where */update-dir* is a fully qualified, shared directory.
  - For local mode, specify */update-dir*, which is a fully qualified, shared directory.  
This option is supported by the `add`, `download`, `order`, and `update` subcommands.
- f  
Forces the download of the exact update revision specified by `-i update-id`. If `-i update-id` does not specify a revision, the highest revision of the update is downloaded.  
  
This option is supported by the `download` subcommand.
- h  
Displays information about the command-line options for the specified subcommand.  
This option is mutually exclusive with all other options.



---

**-i *update-id***

Specifies the ID of an update.

You can specify more than one update ID by using the **-i** option for each update. You can also use the **-x idlist=** option to point to a list of update IDs.

When using the **remove** subcommand, you can specify exactly one update ID.

This option is supported by the **add**, **analyze**, **download**, **order**, **remove**, and **update** subcommands.

**-n *system-name***

Specifies the name of the system on which to manage updates.

When using the **add** subcommand, you can specify more than one system by using the **-n** option for each system. When using the **analyze**, **download**, **remove**, and **update** subcommands, you can only specify a single system.

To specify more than one system for the **smpatch add** command, use the **-x mlist=** option. This option enables you to specify a list of systems instead of using the **-n** option to specify each system. The **-n** option and the **-x mlist=** option are mutually exclusive.

If you do not specify this option, the system is assumed to be the one specified by the **-H** option.

This option is supported only if the Solaris Management Console and the Solaris WBEM services are running on the local system and any system that is specified by this option.

This option is supported by the **add**, **analyze**, **download**, **get**, **order**, **remove**, **set**, **unset**, and **update** subcommands.

**-t**

Downloads the README file associated with the update specified by **-i *update-id***. If **-i *update-id*** does not specify a revision, the README file for the highest revision of the update is downloaded.

This option is supported by the **download** subcommand.

**-V**

Displays version information for an **smpatch** subcommand.

**-x idlist=*update-list-file***

Specifies the name of a file, *update-list-file*, that contains a list of updates to download or apply.

Each update ID in the file must be terminated by a newline character. The file name you specify must be a full path name.

You can use the **-i** option to specify a list of update IDs.

This option is supported by the `add`, `analyze`, `download`, `order`, and `update` subcommands.

`-x mlist=system-list-file`

Specifies the name of a file, *system-list-file*, that contains a list of systems on which to manage updates.

Each system name must be terminated by a newline character. The file name you specify must be a full path name.

You can use the `-n` option to specify a list of systems instead of using the `-x mlist=` option. The `-n` option and the `-x mlist=` option are mutually exclusive.

This option is supported only if the Solaris Management Console and the Solaris WBEM services are running on the local system and any system that is specified in *system-list-file*.

This option is supported by the `add` subcommand.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Analyzing Your System to Obtain the List of Appropriate Updates for the Local System

```
smpatch analyze
```

Shows how to analyze your system to obtain the list of appropriate updates. After the analysis, you can download and apply the updates to your system.

EXAMPLE 2 Analyzing Your System to Obtain the List of Appropriate Updates for Another System

```
smpatch analyze -n lab1
```

Shows how to analyze a different system, `lab1`, to obtain the list of appropriate updates. After the analysis, you can download and apply the updates to that system.

EXAMPLE 3 Applying Updates to Multiple Systems

```
smpatch add -i 102893-01 -i 106895-09 -i 106527-05 \
-d fileserver:/files/updates/s10 -n lab1 -n lab2
```

Applies updates `102893-01`, `106895-09`, and `106527-05` to the systems `lab1` and `lab2`. The updates are located in the `/files/updates/s10` directory on the system named `fileserver`.

EXAMPLE 4 Applying Updates by Using an Update List File

```
smpatch add -x idlist=/tmp/update/update_file \
-d /net/fileserver/export/updatespool/Solaris10 -n lab1 -n lab2
```

Applies the updates specified in the file `/tmp/update/update_file` to the systems `lab1` and `lab2`. The updates are located in the NFS-mounted directory named `/net/fileserver/export/updatespool/Solaris10`.

**EXAMPLE 5** Applying Updates by Using an Update List File and a System List File

```
smpatch add -x idlist=/tmp/update/update_file \
-x mlist=/tmp/update/sys_file
```

Applies the updates listed in the file `/tmp/update/update_file` to the systems listed in the file `/tmp/update/sys_file`. The updates are located in the default `/var/sadm/spool` directory on the local system.

**EXAMPLE 6** Analyzing a System and Downloading Updates From the Sun Update Server

```
smpatch download -n lab1
```

Analyzes the `lab1` system and downloads the appropriate updates from the Sun update server to the download directory.

**EXAMPLE 7** Downloading Updates From the Sun Update Server

The command below downloads the `102893-01` and `106895-09` updates from the Sun update server to the `/files/updates/s10` directory.

```
smpatch download -i 102893-01 -i 106895-09 -d /files/updates/s10
```

**EXAMPLE 8** Downloading Specific Update Revisions From the Sun Update Server

The command below downloads the `102893-01` and `106895-02` updates from the Sun update server. The specific revisions are downloaded, not the highest available revision.

```
smpatch download -f -i 102893-01 -i 106895-02
```

**EXAMPLE 9** Downloading the Highest Available Update Revisions From the Sun Update Server

The command below downloads the `102893-01` and `106895-09` updates, which are the highest available revisions, from the Sun update server.

```
smpatch download -f -i 102893 -i 106895
```

**EXAMPLE 10** Downloading Update README Files From the Sun Update Server

The command below downloads the README files for updates `102893-01` and `106895-02`. Because update `102893` was specified without a revision number, the README file for the highest available update revision, `102893-01`, is downloaded from the Sun update server.

```
smpatch download -t -i 102893 -i 106895-02
```

**EXAMPLE 11** Listing All Configuration Parameter Values

```
smpatch get -p password
Loading Tool: com.sun.admin.patchmgr.cli.PatchMgrCli from mars
Login to mars as user root was successful.
Download of com.sun.admin.patchmgr.cli.PatchMgrCli from mars
was successful.
```

On machine mars:

```
patchpro.backout.directory - ""
patchpro.download.directory - /var/sadm/spool
patchpro.install.types - rebootafter:reconfigafter:standard
patchpro.patch.source - https://getupdates.sun.com/solaris/
patchpro.patchset - current
patchpro.proxy.host - ""
patchpro.proxy.passwd **** ****
patchpro.proxy.port - 8080
patchpro.proxy.user - ""
patchpro.sun.passwd **** ****
patchpro.sun.user - ""
```

Lists the configuration settings for the system.

**EXAMPLE 12** Listing One or More Configuration Parameter Values

```
smpatch get -L patchpro.patch.source patchpro.download.directory
https://getupdates.sun.com/solaris/
/var/sadm/spool
```

Uses `smpatch` in local mode to list the values of the `patchpro.patch.source` and the `patchpro.download.directory` parameters.

**EXAMPLE 13** Reordering a List of Updates

```
smpatch order -x idlist=/tmp/plist
```

Reorders the update list called `/tmp/plist` in an order that is suitable for applying the updates.

**EXAMPLE 14** Removing an Update

```
smpatch remove -i 102893-01
```

Removes update `102893-01`.

**EXAMPLE 15** Specifying the Update Policy

The following command specifies the update policy.

```
smpatch set \
patchpro.install.types=standard:singleuser:reconfigafter:rebootafter
```

Specifies the update policy for your system. The following types of updates are allowed to be applied to your system:

- Standard updates
- Updates that must be applied in single-user mode
- Updates that require that the system undergo a reconfiguration reboot after they have been applied
- Updates that require that the system undergo a reboot after they have been applied

**EXAMPLE 16** Changing the Download Directory Location

```
smpatch set patchpro.download.directory=/export/home/updates
```

**EXAMPLE 17** Specifying a Local Web Proxy

```
smpatch set patchpro.proxy.host=webaccess.corp.net.com \
patchpro.proxy.port=8080
```

Specifies the host name, `webaccess.corp.net.com`, and port, `8080`, of the local web proxy.

**EXAMPLE 18** Resetting a Configuration Parameter Value

```
smpatch unset patchpro.patch.source
```

Resets the value of the `patchpro.patch.source` parameter to its default value, which is the URL that points to the Sun update server.

**EXAMPLE 19** Updating Your System

```
smpatch update -L
```

Analyzes your local system, determines the appropriate updates, downloads those updates to the download directory, and applies those updates.

**EXAMPLE 20** Adding an Update to a BE

The following command adds a specific update to the BE `altboot`.

```
smpatch add -b altboot 111111-01
```

Following successful completion of this command, you can then boot from `altboot`.

**EXAMPLE 21** Updating a BE

The following command performs an update on the BE `altboot`.

```
smpatch update -b altboot
```

This command performs all of the usual analysis and dependency checking that occurs with any update command. Following successful completion of this command, you can then boot from `altboot`.

**EXAMPLE 22** Obtaining smpatch Version Number

The following command returns the version number for an smpatch subcommand.

```
smpatch update -V
1.0.9
```

**Environment Variables** See [environ\(5\)](#) for a description of the `JAVA_HOME` environment variable, which affects the execution of the smpatch command. The default value of this variable is `/usr/java`. See the [smc\(1M\)](#) man page.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0  
Successful completion.
- 1  
Invalid command syntax. A usage message displays.
- 2  
An error occurred while executing the command. An error message displays.

**Attributes** See the [attributes\(5\)](#) man page for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWswmt        |
| Interface Stability | Evolving        |

**See Also** [boot\(1M\)](#), [luactivate\(1M\)](#), [patchadd\(1M\)](#), [patchrm\(1M\)](#), [smc\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#), [live\\_upgrade\(5\)](#)

*Sun Update Manager 1.0 Administration Guide*

**Name** smprofile – manage profiles in the `prof_attr` and `exec_attr` databases

**Synopsis** `/usr/sadm/bin/smprofile subcommand [ auth_args ] - -`  
`[subcommand_args]`

**Description** The `smprofile` command manages one or more profiles in the `prof_attr(4)` or `exec_attr(4)` databases in the local `/etc` files name service or an NIS name service.

*subcommands* `smprofile` *subcommands* are:

- `add` Adds a new profile (right) to the `prof_attr(4)` database. To add a profile, the administrator must have the `solaris.profmgr.write` authorization.
- `delete` Deletes a profile from the `prof_attr(4)` database, deletes all associated entries from the `exec_attr(4)` database, and deletes the assigned profile from the `user_attr(4)` database. To delete a profile, the administrator must have the `solaris.profmgr.execattr.write` and `solaris.profmgr.write` authorization.
- `list` Lists one or more profiles from the `prof_attr(4)` or `exec_attr(4)` databases. To list a profile, the administrator must have the `solaris.profmgr.read` authorization.
- `modify` Modifies a profile in the `prof_attr(4)` database. To modify a profile, the administrator must have the `solaris.profmgr.write` authorization.

**Options** The `smprofile` authentication arguments, *auth\_args*, are derived from the `smc(1M)` arg set and are the same regardless of which subcommand you use. The `smprofile` command requires the Solaris Management Console to be initialized for the command to succeed (see `smc(1M)`). After rebooting the Solaris Management Console server, the first Solaris Management Console connection might time out, so you might need to retry the command.

The subcommand-specific options, *subcommand\_args*, must come after the *auth\_args* and must be separated from them by the `- -` option.

*auth\_args* The valid *auth\_args* are `-D`, `-H`, `-l`, `-p`, `-r`, and `-u`; they are all optional. If no *auth\_args* are specified, certain defaults will be assumed and the user may be prompted for additional information, such as a password for authentication purposes. These letter options can also be specified by their equivalent option words preceded by a double dash. For example, you can use either `-D` or `- --domain` with the *domain* argument.

`-D | - --domain 13;domain` Specifies the default domain that you want to manage. The syntax of *domain* is *type:/host\_name/domain\_name*, where *type* is `nis`, `dns`, `ldap`, or `file`; *host\_name* is the name of the machine that serves the domain; and *domain\_name* is the name of the domain you want to manage.

|                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                     | If you do not specify this option, the Solaris Management Console assumes the <code>file</code> default domain on whatever server you choose to manage, meaning that changes are local to the server. Toolboxes can change the domain on a tool-by-tool basis; this option specifies the domain for all other tools.                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <code>-H   - --hostname 13;host_name:port</code>    | Specifies the <i>host_name</i> and <i>port</i> to which you want to connect. If you do not specify a <i>port</i> , the system connects to the default port, 898. If you do not specify <i>host_name:port</i> , the Solaris Management Console connects to the local host on port 898. You may still have to choose a toolbox to load into the console. To override this behavior, use the <code>smc(1M) -B</code> option, or set your console preferences to load a “home toolbox” by default. |
| <code>-l   - --rolepassword 13;role_password</code> | Specifies the password for the <i>role_name</i> . If you specify a <i>role_name</i> but do not specify a <i>role_password</i> , the system prompts you to supply a <i>role_password</i> . Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <code>-p   - --password 13;password</code>          | Specifies the password for the <i>user_name</i> . If you do not specify a password, the system prompts you for one. Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <code>-r   - --rolename 13;role_name</code>         | Specifies a role name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, no role is assumed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <code>-u   - --username 13;user_name</code>         | Specifies the user name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, the user identity running the console process is assumed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <code>- -</code>                                    | This option is required and must always follow the preceding options. If you do not enter the preceding options, you must still enter the <code>- -</code> option.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

*subcommand\_args* *Note:* Descriptions and other arg options that contain white spaces must be enclosed in double quotes.



To add privileges to or modify privileges in a profile entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.privilege.write` authorization. See [privileges\(5\)](#).

- For subcommand `add`:

- a *addauth1* -a *addauth2* ... (Optional) Specifies the authorization name(s) to add to the new profile. The administrator must have the `solaris.profmgr.write` authorization and must have the corresponding “grant” authorization. A “grant” authorization is one in which the lowest component of the authorization name is replaced by the word `grant`. For example, to grant some profile the `solaris.role.write` authorization, the administrator needs that authorization and also the `solaris.role.grant` authorization. For more information on granting authorizations, see [auth\\_attr\(4\)](#).
- d *description* Specifies the description of the new profile.
- h (Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.
- m *html\_help* Specifies the HTML help file name for the new profile. The help file name must be put in the `/usr/lib/help/profiles/locale/C` directory.
- n *name* Specifies the name of the new profile.
- p *addprof1* -p *addprof2* ... (Optional) Specifies the supplementary profile name(s) to add to the new profile.
- I *inherited\_privs* Specifies the inherited privilege name(s) to add to the new [prof\\_attr\(4\)](#) entry.

To add privileges to or modify privileges in a profile entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.privilege.write` authorization. See [privileges\(5\)](#).

- For subcommand `delete`:

- h (Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.
- n *name* Specifies the name of the profile you want to delete.

- For subcommand `list`:

- h (Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.
- l (Optional) Displays the detailed output for each profile in a block of *key:value* pairs, followed by a blank line that delimits

each profile block. Each *key:value* pair is displayed on a separate line. All the attributes associated with a profile from the `prof_attr` and `exec_attr` databases are displayed. If you do not specify this option, only the specified profile name(s) and associated profile description(s) are displayed.

`-n name1 -n name2 ...` (Optional) Specifies the profile(s) that you want to display. If you do not specify a profile name, all profiles are displayed.

■ For subcommand `modify`:

`-a addauth1 -a addauth2 ...` (Optional) Specifies the authorization name(s) to add to the profile. The administrator must currently have been granted each of the specified authorizations and must have the ability to grant each of those authorizations to other users or roles. For more information on granting authorizations, see [auth\\_attr\(4\)](#).

`-d description` (Optional) Specifies the new description of the profile.

`-h` (Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.

`-m html_help` (Optional) Specifies the new HTML help file name of the profile. If you change this name, you must accordingly rename the help file name entered in the `/usr/lib/help/profiles/locale/C` directory.

`-n name` Specifies the name of the profile you want to modify.

`-p addprof1 -p addprof2 ...` (Optional) Specifies the supplementary profile name(s) to add to the profile. The administrator must have the `solaris.profmgr.assign` authorization to add any profile and the `solaris.profmgr.delegate` authorization to add any profile that has been assigned to the authenticated user.

`-q delprof1 -q delprof2 ...` (Optional) Specifies the supplementary profile name(s) to delete from the profile. The administrator must have the `solaris.profmgr.assign` authorization to delete any profile and the `solaris.profmgr.delegate` authorization to delete any profile that has been assigned to the authenticated user.

`-r delauth1 -r delauth2 ...` (Optional) Specifies the authorization name(s) to delete from the profile. The administrator must have the `solaris.profmgr.write` authorization and must have the corresponding “grant” authorization. For more information about “grant” authorizations, see the `-a` option description for the `add` subcommand above.

`-I inherited_privs` Specifies the inherited privilege name(s) to modify in the `prof_attr(4)` entry.

To add privileges to or modify privileges in a profile entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.privilege.write` authorization. See [privileges\(5\)](#).

### Examples

#### EXAMPLE 1 Creating a new profile

The following creates a new User Manager profile on the local file system. The new profile description is Manage users and groups, and the authorizations assigned are `solaris.admin.usermgr.write` and `solaris.admin.usermgr.read`. The supplementary profile assigned is Operator. The help file name is `RtUserMgmt.html`.

```
./smprofile add -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root -- -n "User Manager" \
 -d "Manage users and groups" -a solaris.admin.usermgr.write \
 -a solaris.admin.usermgr.read -p Operator -m RtUserMgmt.html
```

#### EXAMPLE 2 Deleting a profile

The following deletes the User Manager profile from the local file system:

```
./smprofile delete -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root -- -n "User Manager"
```

#### EXAMPLE 3 Listing all profiles

The following lists all profiles and their associated profile descriptions on the local file system.

```
./smprofile list -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root --
```

#### EXAMPLE 4 Modifying a profile

The following modifies the User Manager profile on the local file system. The new profile description is Manage world, the new authorization assignment is `solaris.admin.usermgr.*` authorizations, and the new supplementary profile assignment is All. (The `-a` option argument must be enclosed in double quotes when the wildcard character (\*) is used.)

```
./smprofile modify -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root -- -n "User Manager" \
 -d "Manage world" -a "solaris.admin.usermgr.*" -p All
```

### Environment Variables

See [environ\(5\)](#) for a description of the `JAVA_HOME` environment variable, which affects the execution of the `smprofile` command. If this environment variable is not specified, the `/usr/java` location is used. See [smc\(1M\)](#).

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 Invalid command syntax. A usage message displays.
- 2 An error occurred while executing the command. An error message displays.

**Files** The following files are used by the `smprofile` command:

- `/etc/security/exec_attr` Rights profiles database. See [exec\\_attr\(4\)](#).
- `/etc/security/prof_attr` Profile description database. See [prof\\_attr\(4\)](#).
- `/etc/user_attr` Extended user attribute database. See [user\\_attr\(4\)](#).

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE      | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability        | SUNWmga         |
| Interface Stability | Evolving        |

**See Also** [smc\(1M\)](#), [auth\\_attr\(4\)](#), [exec\\_attr\(4\)](#), [prof\\_attr\(4\)](#), [user\\_attr\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#)

**Name** smreg – register objects for the Sun Web Console

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/smreg [-h | --help] *subcommand options*

**Description** The smreg utility is a Command Line Interface (CLI) -based registration mechanism to manage the information in the console's registration databases. smreg adds management web applications, libraries, and configuration information to registration databases. It also validates an application's deployment descriptor to make sure it has certain required tags that enable the application to run in the console.

smreg has four subcommands: add, remove, check, and list.

**Subcommands** The following subcommands are supported:

**add** Registers objects of a specified type. If the object is already registered, any new registration will replace the previous registration. The application registration descriptor `app.xml` is verified to ensure that meets some initial requirements.

The format of the add subcommand is:

`add -a [-x context] path`

`add -d path`

`add -l [-L] [-n lib_name] -s ALL | app_name path`

`add -m -b behavior [-s service] -o name=value ... module`

`add -p [-c | -e] name=value ...`

`add -h`

**remove** Unregisters named objects.

The format of the remove subcommand is:

`remove -a app_name | context`

`remove -n app_name | -d path`

`remove -l -s ALL | app_name lib_name`

`remove -m [-s service] module`

`remove -p [-c | -e] name ...`

`remove -h`

**check** Check an application.

The check subcommand parses the application's `web.xml` file to make sure that it has the *filter* and *filter-mapping* tags. The console requires these tags to run an application.

The required tags are as follows:

```
<filter>
 <filter-name>SessionManagerFilter</filter-name>
 <filter-class>
 com.sun.management.services.session.AppSessionManagerFilter
 </filter-class>
 <init-param>
 <param-name>ignore-paths</param-name>
 <param-value>
 images/*
 </param-value>
 </init-param>
</filter>
<filter-mapping>
 <filter-name>SessionManagerFilter</filter-name>
 <url-pattern>/*</url-pattern>
</filter-mapping>
```

Elements in the `web.xml` file must appear in a fixed order. For example, the *filter* tag must appear in the `web.xml` file before the *filter-mapping* tag. For more information, see the *Java Servlet Specifications 2.3*.

The `smreg check` subcommand parses the application's `web.xml` file, checking for the existence of these tags and for the correct tag content. That is, the embedded *filter-name* tag content must be `SessionManagerFilter`, and the *filter-class* tag content must be:

```
com.sun.management.services.session.AppSessionManagerFilter
```

If the tag content is not correct, the application will not be registered.

If the tags are not included in the application's `web.xml` file, the script prints to standard output a corrected version the `web.xml` file, with the tags embedded in the correct location. Because multiple *filter* tags are allowed in a file, `smreg` also includes the new tags as the first in a series.

The format for the check subcommand is:

```
check [-d] path
```

```
check -h
```

The `-d` is used strictly to maintain interface compatibility with 1.0-based application packages, and is otherwise ignored.

**list** Prints list of registered objects.

The format of the list subcommand is:

```
list [-a | -l | -m | -p]
```

If no options are specified, then all registered objects are listed.

**Options** The following options are supported:

**-a** | **--application**

Object type is an application.

See *app\_name* under ARGUMENTS for more information on the name by which an application is registered.

**-b** *behavior* | **--behavior** *behavior*

A flag value that controls behavior as authentication proceeds down the login module stack. See *behavior* under ARGUMENTS for more information on values allowed.

**-c** *name=value ...* | **--configuration** *name=value ...*

When used with **-p**, this option specifies that the property arguments are server configuration properties. The *name=value* pairs are written to a datastore, to be read during the next server startup. Any property name can be created, but only those recognized by the server will have any effect.

**-d** *path* | **--directory** *path*

This option is deprecated and is preserved only for compatibility with existing 1.0-based applications. It will be removed in a future release.

When used with the “add” subcommand, it has the same effect as “-a”.

When used with the “remove” subcommand, *path* is the path to the original installation location of the application. This path will be mapped to the registered *app\_name* so that the application can be unregistered using “smreg remove -a *app\_name*”. When used with the “check” subcommand, **-d** is ignored. The **-d** option is preserved strictly to maintain 1.0 interface compatibility.

**-e** *name=value ...* | **--environment** *name=value ...*

When used with **-p**, this option specifies that the property arguments are server environment properties. The *name=value* pairs are placed into the server's environment during the next server startup. Any environment name can be created, and is available for use by any application.

**-h** | **-?** | **--help**

Displays command and subcommand usage information.

**-l** | **--library**

Object type is a library JAR file.

Library JAR files that are not installed in the same location as the application, or are not registered at the same time as the application (for example, localization JAR files), can be registered separately by using this option. See *lib\_name* under ARGUMENTS for more information on the name by which a library is registered.

A library can be registered with global scope so that it can be used by all applications, by specifying the `-s ALL` option. A library can be registered so that it may only be used by a specific application, by specifying the `-s app_name` option. If a library must be shared by more than one application but not globally, then a separate registration is required for each instance in which the library is to be shared.

`-L | --link`

Specifies to register the library JAR as a symbolic link rather than as a file copy. This option is ignored on operating systems which do not support symbolic links.

`-m | --module`

Object type is a login module.

`-n [app_name | lib_name] | --name [app_name | lib_name]`

When used with the “`add -l`” subcommand, specifies the name by which an application or library is known to the registration service.

When used with the “`remove`” subcommand, specifies the name by which an application is known to the registry service. “`remove -n`” is deprecated and is preserved only for compatibility with existing 1.0-based applications. It will be removed in a future release.

See *app\_name* under ARGUMENTS for more information on the name by which an application is registered.

See *lib\_name* under ARGUMENTS for more information on the name by which a library is registered.

`-o name=value ... | --option name=value ...`

Options specific to the login module implementation. The options are specified as *name=value* pairs, each preceded by the `-o` option. Values containing more than one word must be enclosed in double quotes (“”).

`-p | --properties`

Object type is properties. This option is specified for use with either `-c` (for configuration properties) or `-e` (for environment properties). If neither `-c` nor `-e` are specified, then `-c` is assumed.

See the PROPERTIES section for information on specific configuration properties that are useful to a system administrator.

`-s [ALL | app_name] | --scope [ALL | app_name]`

When used with `-l`, specifies the sharing scope for the library being registered. A scope of ALL makes the library available to all applications. A scope of *app\_name* makes the library



available only to the application already registered as *app\_name*. See *app\_name* under ARGUMENTS for more information on the name by which an application is registered.

**-s *service* | --scope *service***

When used with **-m**, specifies the login service scope for the module. If not specified, the default is ConsoleLogin, which is the web console's browser login service.

**-V | --version**

Display console version information.

**-x *context* | --context *context***

The deployment context path for an application. This option is to be used to register applications built with the SDK version 2.1 or greater. If not provided and the application is unpacked, the context is the parent directory of the application's WEB-INF directory. This option is ignored when registering applications built with an SDK version prior to 2.1.

**Arguments** The subcommand arguments are:

<i>app_name</i>	The unique name of the registered application in the format of <i>pluginName_version</i> , where <i>pluginName</i> and <i>version</i> are tags extracted from the application's registration descriptor, <i>app.xml</i> . All subsequent references to the registered application must then be made by using this registered name.
<i>path</i>	When used with the “add -a”, “add -d”, or “remove -d” subcommands, the full directory path where the application has been installed.  When used with the check subcommand, if it is a directory then it is the full directory path where the application has been installed. If it is a file, then it is the path to a <i>web.xml</i> -compliant file.  When used with the “add -l” subcommand, the full path where the library JAR file is installed.
<i>behavior</i>	Specifies the authentication behavior. The possible values are: <i>required</i> , <i>requisite</i> , <i>sufficient</i> , or <i>optional</i> .
<i>lib_name</i>	The name by which a library JAR file is known to the registration service. By default, libraries will be registered using the basename of the path to the library. This default value can be overridden by using the <b>-n <i>lib_name</i></b> option to register the object by using a globally unique name.
<i>module</i>	The fully-qualified class name of the module. For example: <code>com.sun.management.services.authentication.MyLoginModule</code>

**Properties** While the list of configuration properties is unlimited, certain properties that may be useful to a system administrator are mentioned here:

<code>session.timeout.value</code>	This is the time interval of no user activity after which the user will be prompted to log in again to continue. The default session
------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

timeout is 15 minutes. Setting the value to -1 means there is no timeout. To set the session timeout to 5 minutes, run the following command:

```
smreg add -p -c session.timeout.value=5
```

debug.trace.path

This is the directory where log files are created. The default is /var/log/webconsole. To set the directory to /tmp/logs, run the following command:

```
smreg add -p -c debug.trace.path=/tmp/logs
```

java.home

This is the path to the Java Development Kit (JDK) that will be used to run the web server. The default is /usr/j2se on Solaris and /usr/java/j2sdk1.4.2 on Linux. To set the path to /usr/jdk142, run the following command:

```
smreg add -p -c java.home=/usr/jdk142
```

java.options

This contains the options for configuring the Java Virtual machine (JVM). The defaults are “-server -XX:+BackgroundCompilation”. To include setting the initial Java heap size to 64MB, run the following command:

```
smreg add -p -c java.options="-Xms64 \
-server -XX:+BackgroundCompilation"
```

### Examples EXAMPLE 1 Registering an unpacked Application

The following command registers an application which has been installed unpacked in /opt/myCompany/myApp:

```
smreg add -a /opt/myCompany/myApp
```

### EXAMPLE 2 Unregistering an Application

The following command unregisters an application previous registered with an *app\_name* of com.myCompany.myApp\_1.2:

```
smreg remove -a com.myCompany.myApp_1.2
```

### EXAMPLE 3 Registering a Library JAR File with Global Scope

The following command registers myLibrary.jar, installed in /opt/myCompany/MyApp, as com\_myCompany\_myLibrary.jar for use by all applications:

```
smreg add -l -n com_myCompany_myLibrary.jar \
-s ALL /opt/myCompany/MyApp/myLibrary.jar
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Registering a Library JAR file with a Specific Application Scope

The following command registers `Utilities.jar`, installed in `/opt/SomeCompany/lib`, with the application already registered as `com.myCompany.myApp_1.2`:

```
smreg add -l -s com.myCompany.myApp_1.2 \
/opt/SomeCompany/lib/Utilities.jar
```

**EXAMPLE 5** Unregister a Library JAR File from Global Scope

The following command unregisters `com_myCompany_myLibrary.jar` from global scope so that it is not available to applications:

```
smreg remove -l -s ALL com_myCompany_myLibrary.jar
```

**EXAMPLE 6** Unregister a Library JAR File from a Specific Application Scope

The following command unregisters `Utilities.jar` so that it is not available to the registered application `com.myCompany.myApp_1.2`:

```
smreg remove -l -s com.myCompany.myApp_1.2 Utilities.jar
```

**EXAMPLE 7** Checking that Application's Deployment Descriptor Meets Sun Web Console Guidelines

Either of the following commands to check to see if the deployment descriptor located at `/opt/myCompany/myApp/WEB-INF/lib/web.xml` meets the Sun Web Console guideline:

```
smreg check /opt/myCompany/myApp# smreg check /opt/myCompany/myApp/WEB-INF/lib/web.xml
```

**EXAMPLE 8** Registering an Environment Property

The following command registers the environment property name `GREETING` with value "Hello World" and the name `FOO` with the value "bar" so that they appear in the server's environment and are available to any application:

```
smreg add -p -e GREETING="Hello World" FOO=bar
```

**EXAMPLE 9** Unregistering an Environment Property

The following command unregisters the environment property names `GREETING` and `FOO` so that they no longer appear in the server's environment and are not available to any application:

```
smreg remove -p -e GREETING FOO
```

**EXAMPLE 10** Registering a Login Module

The following command registers the module class `com.sun.management.services.authentication.myLoginModule` with “requisite” behavior and a `commandPath` argument:

```
smreg add -m -b requisite \<\
 -o commandPath="/usr/lib/webconsole" \<\
 com.sun.management.services.authentication.myLoginModule
```

**EXAMPLE 11** Unregistering a Login Module

The following command unregisters the module class `com.sun.management.services.authentication.myLoginModule`:

```
smreg remove -m com.sun.management.services.authentication.myLoginModule
```

**EXAMPLE 12** Print a List of All Registered Applications

```
smreg list -a
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 Usage error: missing or malformed arguments.
- 2 An error occurred that prevents registration - either a console configuration problem, or badly-formatted `web.xml` or `app.xml`.
- 3 Unable to determine OS for this machine.
- 4 Detected OS for this machine is not supported.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWmcon
Interface Stability	Obsolete

**See Also** [smcwebserver\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** smrole – manage roles and users in role accounts

**Synopsis** /usr/sadm/bin/smrole *subcommand* [ *auth\_args*] - -  
[*subcommand\_args*]

**Description** The smrole command manages roles and adds or deletes users in role accounts.

*subcommands* smrole *subcommands* are:

add

Adds a new role entry. To add an entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.role.write` authorization.

delete

Deletes one or more roles. To delete an entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.role.write` authorization.

list

Lists one or more roles. If you do not specify a role name, all roles are listed. To list an entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.read` authorization.

modify

Adds or deletes users from a role account. To modify an entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.role.write` authorization.

**Options** The smrole authentication arguments, *auth\_args*, are derived from the [smc\(1M\)](#) arg set and are the same regardless of which subcommand you use. The smrole command requires the Solaris Management Console to be initialized for the command to succeed (see [smc\(1M\)](#)). After rebooting the Solaris Management Console server, the first Solaris Management Console connection might time out, so you might need to retry the command.

The subcommand-specific options, *subcommand\_args*, must come after the *auth\_args* and must be separated from them by the - - option.

*auth\_args* The *auth\_args* are -D, -H, -l, -p, -r, and -u are described below. They are all optional. These options are a subset of the full complement of supported options described in [smc\(1M\)](#).

If no *auth\_args* are specified, certain defaults will be assumed and the user may be prompted for additional information, such as a password for authentication purposes. These letter options can also be specified by their equivalent option words preceded by a double dash. For example, you can use either -D or - -domain with the *domain* argument.

-D | - -domain *I3;domain*

Specifies the default domain that you want to manage. The syntax of *domain* is *type:/host\_name/domain\_name*, where *type* is nis, dns, ldap, or file; *host\_name* is the name of the machine that serves the domain; and *domain\_name* is the name of the domain you want to manage.

If you do not specify this option, the Solaris Management Console assumes the `file` default domain on whatever server you choose to manage, meaning that changes are local to the server. Toolboxes can change the domain on a tool-by-tool basis; this option specifies the domain for all other tools.

**-H** | **-** `--hostname` *13;host\_name:port*

Specifies the *host\_name* and *port* to which you want to connect. If you do not specify a *port*, the system connects to the default port, 898. If you do not specify *host\_name:port*, the Solaris Management Console connects to the local host on port 898. You may still have to choose a toolbox to load into the console. To override this behavior, use the [smc\(1M\)](#) `-B` option, or set your console preferences to load a “home toolbox” by default.

**-l** | **-** `--rolepassword` *13;role\_password*

Specifies the password for the *role\_name*. If you specify a *role\_name* but do not specify a *role\_password*, the system prompts you to supply a *role\_password*. Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.

**-p** | **-** `--password` *13;password*

Specifies the password for the *user\_name*. If you do not specify a password, the system prompts you for one. Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.

**-r** | **-** `--rolename` *13;role\_name*

Specifies a role name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, no role is assumed.

**-u** | **-** `--username` *13;user\_name*

Specifies the user name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, the user identity running the console process is assumed.

**-** **-**

This option is required and must always follow the preceding options. If you do not enter the preceding options, you must still enter the `- -` option.

*subcommand\_args* **Note:** Descriptions and other `arg` options that contain white spaces must be enclosed in double quotes.

To add or change privileges, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.privilege.write` authorization. See [privileges\(5\)](#).

- For subcommand `add`:

**-a** *adduser1 -a adduser2...*

(Optional) Specifies the user name(s) to add to the new role. The administrator must have the `solaris.role.assign` authorization.

**-c** *comment*

(Optional) Includes a short description of the role. Consists of a string of up to 256 printable characters, excluding the colon (:).

- 
- d *dir*  
(Optional) Specifies the home directory of the new role, limited to 1024 characters.
  - F *full\_name*  
(Optional) Specifies the full, descriptive name of the role. The *full\_name* must be unique within a domain, and can contain alphanumeric characters and spaces. If you use spaces, you must enclose the *full\_name* in double quotes.
  - G *group1* -G *group2* . . .  
(Optional) Specifies the new role's supplementary group membership in the system group database with the character string names of one or more existing groups. *Note:* You cannot assign a primary group to a role. A role's primary group is always `sysadmin` (group 14).
  - h  
(Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.
  - n *rolename*  
Specifies the name of the role you want to create.
  - p *addprof1* -p *addprof2* . . .  
(Optional) Specifies the profile(s) to add to the role. To assign a profile to a role, the administrator must have the `solaris.profmgr.assign` or `solaris.profmgr.delegate` authorization.
  - P *password*  
(Optional) Specifies the role's password. The *password* can contain up to eight characters. If you do not specify a password, the system prompts you for one. To set the password, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.pswd` authorization. *Note:* When you specify a password using the -P option, you type the password in plain text. Specifying a password using this method introduces a security gap while the command is running. However, if you do not specify a password (and the system prompts you for one), the echo is turned off when you type in the password.
  - s *shell*  
(Optional) Specifies the full pathname of the program used as the role's shell on login. Valid entries are `/bin/pfsh` (C shell), `/bin/pfksh` (Korn shell), and `/bin/pfsh` (Bourne shell), the default.
  - u *uid*  
(Optional) Specifies the ID of the role you want to add. If you do not specify this option, the system assigns the next available unique ID greater than 100.
  - x *autohome=Y|N*  
(Optional) Sets the role's home directory. The home directory path in the password entry is set to `/home/login name`.
  - x *perm=home\_perm*  
(Optional) Sets the permissions on the role's home directory. *perm* is interpreted as an octal number, and the default is `0775`.

-x *serv=homedir\_server*

(Optional) If -D is nis or ldap, use this option to specify the name of the server where the user's home directory resides. Users created in a local scope must have their home directory server created on their local machines.

-M *limit\_privs*

Specifies the privilege name(s) to add to the new `user_attr(4)` entry. The default is all for `limit` privilege.

To add or change privileges, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.privilege.write` authorization. See `privileges(5)`.

-D *default\_privs*

Specifies the default privilege name(s) to add to the new `user_attr(4)` entry.

The options to the add subcommand listed below are available only if a system is configured with Solaris Trusted Extensions. `smrole` automatically detects when a system is running these extensions.

-x *clear=clearanceval*

(Optional) Specifies the role's clearance. *clearanceval* can be a string value or a hex value. If this option is not specified, the default, `admin_high`, is in effect. To set the clearance, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.labels` authorization.

-x *label=labelval*

(Optional) Specifies the role's minimum label. *labelval* can be a string label or a hex label. If this option is not specified, the default, `admin_low`, is in effect. To set the minimum label, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.labels` authorization.

-x *labelview=HIDE|SHOW*

(Optional) Specifies the second part of the `labelview key-value` pair. If `SHOW` is specified, `labelview=*showsl` will be recorded. If `HIDE` is specified, `labelview=*hidesl` will be recorded. The asterisk portion can be replaced by "internal," "external," or ""(null). If this option is not specified, the default, `SHOW`, is in effect.

-x *view=INTERNAL|EXTERNAL|DEFAULT*

(Optional) Specifies the label view type for the `labelview` in `user_attr`. If `INTERNAL` is specified, `labelview=internal` will be recorded; if `EXTERNAL` is specified, `labelview=external` will be recorded; if `DEFAULT` is specified, nothing will be recorded in `user_attr`. If this option is not specified, the default, `INTERNAL`, is in effect.

- For subcommand `delete`:

-h

(Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.



- 
- n *rolename1* -n *rolename2* . . .  
Specifies the name of the role(s) you want to delete.
  - For subcommand `list`:
    - h  
(Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.
    - l  
(Optional) Displays the output for each user in a block of *key:value* pairs (for example, `user name: root`), followed by a blank line that delimits each user block. Each *key:value* pair is displayed on a separate line. The keys are: `autohome setup`, `comment`, `home directory`, `login shell`, `primary group`, `secondary groups`, `server`, `user ID (UID)`, and `user name`.
    - n *role1* -n *role2* . . .  
(Optional) Specifies the role(s) that you want to list. If you do not specify a role name, all roles are listed.
  - For subcommand `modify`:
    - a *adduser1* -a *adduser2* . . .  
(Optional) Specifies the user name(s) to add to the new role. The administrator must have the `solaris.role.assign` authorization, or must have the `solaris.role.delegate` authorization and be a member of the role being modified.
    - c *comment*  
(Optional) Includes a short description of the role. Consists of a string of up to 256 printable characters, excluding the colon (:).
    - d *dir*  
(Optional) Specifies the home directory of the new role, limited to 1024 characters.
    - F *full\_name*  
(Optional) Specifies the full, descriptive name of the role. The *full\_name* must be unique within a domain, and can contain alphanumeric characters and spaces. If you use spaces, you must enclose the *full\_name* in double quotes.
    - G *group1* -G *group2* . . .  
(Optional) Specifies the new role's secondary group membership in the system group database with the character string names of one or more existing groups. *Note:* You cannot assign a primary group to a role. A role's primary group is always `sysadmin` (group 14).
    - h  
(Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.
    - n *rolename*  
Specifies the name of the role you want to modify.

- N *new\_rolename*  
(Optional) Specifies the new name of the role.
- p *addprof1* -p *addprof2* . . .  
(Optional) Specifies the profile(s) to add to the role. To assign a profile to a role, the administrator must have the `solaris.profmgr.assign` or `solaris.profmgr.delegate` authorization.
- P *password*  
(Optional) Specifies the role's password. The *password* can contain up to eight characters. To set the password, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.pswd` authorization. *Note:* When you specify a password, you type the password in plain text. Specifying a password using this method introduces a security gap while the command is running.
- q *delprof1* -q *delprof2* . . .  
(Optional) Specifies the profile(s) to delete from the role.
- r *deluser1* -r *deluser2* . . .  
(Optional) Specifies the user name(s) to delete from the role.
- s *shell*  
(Optional) Specifies the full pathname of the program used as the role's shell on login. Valid entries are `/bin/pfsh` (C shell), `/bin/pfksh` (Korn shell), and `/bin/pfsh` (Bourne shell), the default.
- x *autohome*=Y|N  
(Optional) Sets the role's home directory. The home directory path in the password entry is set to `/home/login_name`.
- x *perm*=*home\_perm*  
(Optional) Sets the permissions on the role's home directory. *perm* is interpreted as an octal number, and the default is 0775.
- M *limit\_privs*  
Specifies the privilege name(s) to modify in a `user_attr(4)` entry.  
  
To add or change privileges, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.privilege.write` authorization. See [privileges\(5\)](#).
- D *default\_privs*  
Specifies the default privilege name(s) to modify in a `user_attr(4)` entry.

The options to the `modify` subcommand listed below are available only if a system is configured with Solaris Trusted Extensions. `smrole` automatically detects when a system is running these extensions.

- x `clear=clearanceval`  
(Optional) Specifies the role's clearance. *clearanceval* can be a string value or a hex value. If this option is not specified, the default, `admin_high`, is in effect. To set the clearance, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.labels` authorization.
- x `label=labelval`  
(Optional) Specifies the role's minimum label. *labelval* can be a string label or a hex label. If this option is not specified, the default, `admin_low`, is in effect. To set the minimum label, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.labels` authorization.
- x `labelview=HIDE|SHOW`  
(Optional) Specifies the second part of the `labelview key-value` pair. If `SHOW` is specified, `labelview=*showsl` will be recorded. If `HIDE` is specified, `labelview=*hidesl` will be recorded. The asterisk portion can be replaced by "internal," "external," or ""(null). If this option is not specified, the default, `SHOW`, is in effect.
- x `view=INTERNAL|EXTERNAL|DEFAULT`  
(Optional) Specifies the label view type for the `labelview` in `user_attr`. If `INTERNAL` is specified, `labelview=internal` will be recorded; if `EXTERNAL` is specified, `labelview=external` will be recorded; if `DEFAULT` is specified, nothing will be recorded in `user_attr`. If this option is not specified, the default, `INTERNAL`, is in effect.

### Examples EXAMPLE 1 Creating a Role Account

The following creates the `role1` account with a full name of Engineering Admin and a password of `abc123` on the local file system, and assigns `user1` and `user2` to the role. This role has Name Service Security and Audit Review rights. The system assigns the next available unique UID greater than 100.

```
./smrole add -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root -- -n role1 \
 -F "Engineering Admin" -P abc123 -a user1 -a user2 \
 -p "Name Service Security" -p "Audit Review"
```

### EXAMPLE 2 Deleting Role Accounts

The following deletes the `role1` and `role2` accounts from the local file system.

```
./smrole delete -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root -- -n role1 -n role2
```

### EXAMPLE 3 Listing Role Accounts

The following lists all role accounts on the local file system in summary form.

```
./smrole list -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root --
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Modifying a Role Account

The following modifies the `role1` account so the role defaults to the Korn shell, includes the `user3` account, and does not include the `user2` account.

```
./smrole modify -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root -- -n role1 \
-s /bin/pfksh -a user3 -r user2
```

**Environment Variables** See [environ\(5\)](#) for a description of the `JAVA_HOME` environment variable, which affects the execution of the `smrole` command. If this environment variable is not specified, the `/usr/java` location is used. See [smc\(1M\)](#).

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 Invalid command syntax. A usage message displays.
- 2 An error occurred while executing the command. An error message displays.

**Files** The following files are used by the `smrole` command:

- `/etc/aliases`  
Mail aliases. See [aliases\(4\)](#).
- `/etc/auto_home`  
Automatic mount points. See [automount\(1M\)](#).
- `/etc/group`  
Group file. See [group\(4\)](#).
- `/etc/passwd`  
Password file. See [passwd\(4\)](#).
- `/etc/security/policy.conf`  
Configuration file for security policy. See [policy.conf\(4\)](#).
- `/etc/shadow`  
Shadow password file. See [shadow\(4\)](#).
- `/etc/user_attr`  
Extended user attribute database. See [user\\_attr\(4\)](#).

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWmga

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Interface Stability	Evolving

**See Also** [automount\(1M\)](#), [smc\(1M\)](#), [aliases\(4\)](#), [group\(4\)](#), [passwd\(4\)](#), [policy.conf\(4\)](#), [shadow\(4\)](#), [user\\_attr\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#)

**Name** smrsh – restricted shell for sendmail

**Synopsis** `smrsh -c command`

**Description** The `smrsh` program is intended as a replacement for the `sh` command in the prog mailer in [sendmail\(1M\)](#) configuration files. The `smrsh` program sharply limits commands that can be run using the |program syntax of `sendmail`. This improves overall system security. `smrsh` limits the set of programs that a programmer can execute, even if `sendmail` runs a program without going through an `alias` or `forward` file.

Briefly, `smrsh` limits programs to be in the directory `/var/adm/sm.bin`, allowing system administrators to choose the set of acceptable commands. It also rejects any commands with the characters: `, <, >, |, ;, &, $, \r` (RETURN), or `\n` (NEWLINE) on the command line to prevent end run attacks.

Initial pathnames on programs are stripped, so forwarding to `/usr/ucb/vacation`, `/usr/bin/vacation`, `/home/server/mydir/bin/vacation`, and `vacation` all actually forward to `/var/adm/sm.bin/vacation`.

System administrators should be conservative about populating `/var/adm/sm.bin`. Reasonable additions are utilities such as [vacation\(1\)](#) and `procmail`. Never include any shell or shell-like program (for example, `perl`) in the `sm.bin` directory. This does not restrict the use of shell or perl scrips in the `sm.bin` directory (using the `#!` syntax); it simply disallows the execution of arbitrary programs.

**Options** The following options are supported:

`-c command` Where *command* is a valid command, executes *command*.

**Files** `/var/adm/sm.bin` directory for restricted programs

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsr, SUNWcsu

**See Also** [sendmail\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** smserialport – manage serial port

**Synopsis** /usr/sadm/bin/smserialport *subcommand* [*auth\_args*] --  
[*subcommand\_args*]

**Description** The smserialport command manages serial ports.

Sub-commands The following smserialport sub-commands (*subcommand*) are supported:

configure	Configures a serial port's basic settings for a device such as a terminal, modem or no connection.
delete	Deletes a given port. You can disable a port and prevent new services from being spawned for incoming connections, without interfering with existing services.
list	Lists all serial ports.
modify	Modifies a serial port's parameters.

**Options** There are two kinds of options: authentication arguments (*args*) and sub-command arguments (*subcommand\_args*).

Authentication Arguments The smserialport authentication arguments, *args*, are derived from the [smc\(1M\)](#) argument set and are the same regardless of which sub-command you use.

Valid *args* are -D, -H, -l, -p, -r, and -u; they are all optional. If no *args* are specified, certain defaults will be assumed and the user may be prompted for additional information, such as a password for authentication purposes.

The single letter options can also be specified by their equivalent option words preceded by a double dash. For example, you can use either -D or --domain.

Descriptions and other arg options that contain white spaces must be enclosed in double quotes.

The following authentication arguments (*args*) are supported:

-D   --domain <i>domain</i>	Specifies the default domain that you want to manage. smserialport accepts only the <i>file</i> value for this option. <i>file</i> is also the default value.
	The <i>file</i> default domain means that changes are local to the server. Toolboxes can change the domain on a tool-by-tool basis; this option specifies the <i>domain</i> for all other tools.
-H   --hostname <i>host_name:port</i>	Specifies the host and port to which you want to connect. If you do not specify a port, the system connects to the default port, 898. If you do not specify

a host (*host\_name:port*, the Solaris Management Console connects to the local host on port 898. You may still have to choose a toolbox to load into the console. To override this behavior, use the `smc -B` option, or set your console preferences to load a home toolbox by default.

- l | --rolepassword *role\_password*
Specifies the password for the *role\_name*. If you specify a *role\_name* but do not specify a *role\_password*, the system prompts you to supply a *role\_password*. Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.
- p | --password *password*
Specifies the password for the *user\_name*. If you do not specify a password, the system prompts you for one. Because passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, this option is considered insecure.
- r | --rolename *role\_name*
Specifies a role name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, no role is assumed.
- u | --username *user\_name*
Specifies the user name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, the user identity running the console process is assumed.
- This option is required and must always follow the preceding options. If you do not enter the preceding options, you must still enter the -- option.

Sub-command Arguments    The sub-command specific options, *subcommand\_args*, must come after the *args* and must be separated from them by the -- option. Enclose descriptions and *arg* options that contain white space in double quotes.

`configure`    The `configure` sub-command requires the following sub-command argument:

`-n port_name`    Specifies the name of the serial port to reconfigure.

The following sub-command arguments are optional for the `configure` sub-command:

`-b baudrate`    Specifies the port baud rate. The supported baud rate are 38400, 19200, 9600, 4800, 2400, 1200, 300 and auto. The default is 9600.



	-c <i>comment</i>	Specifies a short comment description of the service. The default is a description of the requested device type.
	-h	Displays the command's usage statement.
	-l <i>login_prompt</i>	Specifies the login prompt. The default is <i>tty'port_name' login:</i> .
	-t <i>terminal_type</i>	Specifies the terminal type. The default is <i>tvi925</i> .
	-x device= <i>device_name</i>	Specifies the device to be configured. Valid <i>device_names</i> are: <i>terminal</i> , <i>modemdialin</i> , <i>modemdialout</i> , <i>modemdialinout</i> or <i>initializeonly</i> for no connection. The default is <i>terminal</i> .
	-x service=y   n	Specifies the status of service, that is <i>y</i> for enabled or <i>n</i> for disabled. The default is <i>y</i> .
delete	The delete sub-command requires the following sub-command arguments:	
	-n <i>port_name</i>	Specifies the name of the serial port to be disabled.
	The following sub-command arguments are optional for the delete sub-command:	
	-h	Displays the command's usage statement.
list	The list sub-command does not require any sub-command arguments.	
	The following sub-command arguments are optional for the list sub-command:	
	-h	Displays the command's usage statement.
	-v	Displays the data in verbose format.
modify	The modify sub-command requires the following sub-command arguments:	
	-n <i>port_name</i>	Specifies the name of the serial port to modify.
	The following sub-command arguments are optional for the modify sub-command:	
	-b <i>baudrate</i>	Specifies the port baud rate. The supported baud rate are 38400, 19200, 9600, 4800, 2400, 1200, 300 and auto.
	-c <i>comment</i>	A short comment description of the service.
	-h	Displays the command usage statement.

-l <i>login_prompt</i>	Specifies the login prompt.
-t <i>terminal_type</i>	Specifies the terminal type.
-x bidirectional=y   n	Specifies the bi-directional port flag, y for set or n for not set. When this flag is set, the line can be used in both directions.
-x connect_on_carrier=y   n	Specifies if to connect on carrier, that is y or n.
-x initialize_only=y   n	Specifies if the service invocation. If y the service is invoked only once. This can be used to configure a particular device without actually monitoring it, as with software carrier.
-x service_program= <i>command</i>	Specifies the full pathname of the service command to invoke when a connection request is received.
-x service_status=y   n	Specifies the status of service, that is y for enabled or n for disabled.
-x software_carrier=y   n	Specifies the carrier detection. y for software or n for hardware.
-x timeout= <i>timeout</i>	Specifies the time to close a port if the open on the port succeeds, and no input data is received in timeout seconds. The supported <i>timeout</i> are never, 30, 60 and 90.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Listing Serial Ports

The following example lists the serial ports:

```
example% ./smserialport list -H myhost -u root -p mypassword --
```

Port	Service	Baud-Rate	Terminal-Type	Prompt	Comment
a	enabled	9600	xterm	as	welcome
b	enabled	9600	tvi925	ttyb login:	

EXAMPLE 2 Modifying Serial Ports

The following example contains two commands. The first command modifies serial port b for a baud rate of 4800, an xterm as terminal type, a b: for login prompt and a comment. The second command lists the ports.

**EXAMPLE 2** Modifying Serial Ports *(Continued)*

```
example% ./smserialport modify -H myhost -u root -p mypassword -- \
-n b -b 4800 -t xterm -l b: -c "modified port b"
```

```
example% ./smserialport list -H myhost -u root -p mypassword --
```

Port	Service	Baud-Rate	Terminal-Type	Prompt	Comment
a	enabled	9600	xterm	as	welcome
b	enabled	4800	xterm	b:	modified port b

**EXAMPLE 3** Deleting a Serial Port

The following example contains two commands. The first command deletes serial port b. The second command lists the ports.

```
example% ./smserialport delete -H myhost -u root \
-p mypassword -- -n b
```

```
example% ./smserialport list -H myhost -u root -p mypassword --
```

Port	Service	Baud-Rate	Terminal-Type	Prompt	Comment
a	enabled	9600	xterm	as	welcome
b	disabled	9600	tvi925	ttyb login:	

**EXAMPLE 4** Configuring a Serial Port

The following example contains two commands. The first command configures serial port b for a bi-directional modem. The second command lists the ports.

```
example% ./smserialport configure -H myhost -u root \
-p mypassword -- -n b -x device=modemdialinout
```

```
example% ./smserialport list -H myhost -u root -p mypassword --
```

Port	Service	Baud-Rate	Terminal-Type	Prompt	Comment
a	enabled	9600	xterm	as	welcome
b	enabled	9600	tvi925	ttyb login:	Modem - Dial In and Out

**Environment Variables**

See [environ\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following environment variables that affect the execution of `smserialport`: `JAVA_HOME`. If this environment variable is not specified, the `/usr/java` location is used. See [smc\(1M\)](#).

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 Invalid command syntax. A usage message displays.
- 2 An error occurred while executing the command. An error message displays.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWmga

**See Also** [tip\(1\)](#), [pmadm\(1M\)](#), [sacadm\(1M\)](#), [smc\(1M\)](#), [ttyadm\(1M\)](#), [ttymon\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#)

**Name** smtnrhdb – manage entries in the tnrhdb database

**Synopsis** /usr/sadm/bin/smtnrhdb *subcommand* [*auth\_args*] -- *subcommand\_args*

**Description** The smtnrhdb command adds, modifies, deletes, and lists entries in the tnrhdb database.

The tnrhdb database specifies which remote-host template to use for each host, including the local host, in the distributed system. If a host's IP address cannot be matched to some entry in the tnrhdb database, communication with the host is not permitted.

The smtnrhdb command requires the Solaris Management Console to be initialized for the command to succeed (see [smc\(1M\)](#)). After rebooting the Solaris Management Console server, the first smc connection can time out, so you might need to retry the command.

**Valid Host Addresses and Wildcards** The trusted network software uses a network “longest prefix of matching bits” mechanism when looking for a host. The software looks first for the IP address of the host. If the software does not find this address, then the software falls back to searching for an IP address with the longest prefix of a matching bit pattern, and so on.

**Note** – The actual numeric value of the subnet address or other subnetting information on the system (for example, from the [netmasks\(4\)](#) file) are not considered by this mechanism.

Using the “longest prefix of matching bits” mechanism, an IPv4 address of 0.0.0.0 is a wildcard address with a prefix length of 0 and hence matches any IPv4 address. For more information about prefix lengths in IPv4 and IPv6 addresses, see [System Administration Guide: IP Services](#).

The smtnrhdb command accepts a hostname, IP address, and wildcard address with an optional prefix as valid addresses. See *subcommand\_args*, below, for the format of valid addresses.

**Sub-commands** smtnrhdb *subcommands* are:

**add**

Adds a new entry to the tnrhdb database. To add an entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.network.host.write` and `solaris.network.security.write` authorizations.

**delete**

Deletes an entry from the tnrhdb database. To delete an entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.network.host.write` and `solaris.network.security.write` authorizations.

**list**

Lists all entries in the tnrhdb database. To list an entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.network.host.read` and `solaris.network.security.read` authorizations.

**modify**

Modifies an entry in the tnrhdb database. To modify an entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.network.host.write` and `solaris.network.security.write` authorizations.

**Options** The `smtnrhdb` authentication arguments, *auth\_args*, are derived from the `smc` arg set. These arguments are the same regardless of which subcommand you use.

The subcommand-specific options, *subcommand\_args*, must be preceded by the `--` option.

*auth\_args* The valid *auth\_args* are `-D`, `-H`, `-l`, `-p`, `-r`, and `-u`; they are all optional. If no *auth\_args* are specified, certain defaults will be assumed and the user might be prompted for additional information, such as a password for authentication purposes. These letter options can also be specified by their equivalent option words preceded by a double dash. For example, you can use either `-D` or `--domain`.

`-D` | `--domain` *domain*

Specifies the default domain that you want to manage. The syntax of *domain=type:/host\_name/domain\_name*, where *type* is `dns`, `ldap`, or `file`; *host\_name* is the name of the server; and *domain\_name* is the name of the domain you want to manage.

If you do not specify this option, the Solaris Management Console assumes the `file` default domain on whatever server you choose to manage, meaning that changes are local to the server. Toolboxes can change the domain on a tool-by-tool basis; this option specifies the domain for all other tools.

`-H` | `--hostname` *host\_name:port*

Specifies the *host\_name* and *port* to which you want to connect. If you do not specify a *port*, the system connects to the default port, 898. If you do not specify *host\_name:port*, the Solaris Management Console connects to the local host on port 898.

`-l` | `--rolepassword` *role\_password*

Specifies the password for the *role\_name*. If you specify a *role\_name* but do not specify a *role\_password*, the system prompts you to supply a *role\_password*. Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.

`-p` | `--password` *password*

Specifies the password for the *user\_name*. If you do not specify a password, the system prompts you for one. Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.

`-r` | `--rolename` *role\_name*

Specifies a role name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, no role is assumed.

`-u` | `--username` *user\_name*

Specifies the user name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, the user identity running the console process is assumed.

`--`

This option is required and must always follow the preceding options. If you do not enter the preceding options, you must still enter the `--` option.

*subcommand\_args* *Note:* Descriptions and other arg options that contain white spaces must be enclosed in double quotes.

- h  
Displays the command's usage statement.
- H *hostname*  
Specifies the name of the host. For the list subcommand, the hostname argument is not specified. This is not required if the ipaddress subcommand argument is specified.
- i *ipaddress*  
Specifies the IP address of the host. This is not required if the hostname subcommand argument is specified. This option is not valid with the -w option.
- n *templatename*  
Specifies the name of an existing template.
- p *prefixlen*  
Specifies the prefix length (in bits) of a wildcard representation of the IP address. The prefix is the left-most portion of the IP address. This option is valid only with the -w option. For example, when the value of -w *ipaddress-wildcard* is 192.168.0.0, a *prefixlen* value of 24 indicates that the wildcard matches all addresses on the 192.168.0 network. With a *prefixlen* of 32, the wildcard 192.168.0.0 matches all addresses on the 192.168.0.0 network.
- w *ipaddress-wildcard*  
Specifies the IP address of the subnet using a wildcard.
  - One of the following sets of arguments must be specified for subcommand add:
    - H *hostname* -n *templatename* |
    - i *ipaddress* -n *templatename* |
    - w *ipaddress-wildcard* -n *templatename* [ -p *prefixlen* ] |
    - h
  - One of the following sets of arguments must be specified for subcommand modify:
    - H *hostname* -n *templatename* |
    - i *ipaddress* -n *templatename* |
    - w *ipaddress-wildcard* -n *templatename* [ -p *prefixlen* ] |
    - h
  - One of the following sets of arguments must be specified for subcommand delete:
    - H *hostname* |
    - i *ipaddress* |
    - w *ipaddress-wildcard* [ -p *prefixlen* ] |
    - h
  - The subcommand list takes the following argument:
    - h

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Specifying the Template Name for a Wildcard IP Address

The admin role specifies the template name, `cipso_lan`, for a series of hosts that use the IP address wildcard `192.168.113.0` on the local file system. Since no authorization arguments were specified, the administrator connects to port 898 of the local host on the local server with the file domain type, which are the defaults. The administrator is prompted for the admin password.

```
$ usr/sadm/bin/smtnrhdb add -- -w 192.168.113.0 -n cipso_lan
```

EXAMPLE 2 Deleting an Entry in the `tnrhdb` Database

The admin role connects to port 898 (which happens to be the default) of the LDAP server and deletes a host entry from the database by specifying its IP address, `192.168.113.8`. Since the domain was not specified, the file domain type and local server are used by default. The administrator is prompted for the admin password.

```
usr/sadm/bin/smtnrhdb delete \
-D ldap:/example.domain -i 192.168.113.8
```

EXAMPLE 3 Adding a Subnet to the `tnrhdb` Database

The following command adds all the addresses on the `192.168.55.0` subnet, from `192.168.55.1` to `192.168.55.255`, to the `tnrhdb` database:

```
usr/sadm/bin/smtnrhdb add \
-D file:/machine1.ExampleCo.COM/machine1.ExampleCo.COM \
-- -w 192.168.55.0 -n cipso
Authenticating as user: root
Type /? for help, pressing <enter> accepts the default denoted by []
Please enter a string value for: password ::
Loading Tool: com.exampleco.admin.hostmgr.cli.smtnrhdb.HostMgrTnrhdbCli
from machine1.ExampleCo.COM
Login to machine1.ExampleCo.COM as user root was successful.
Download of com.exampleco.admin.hostmgr.cli.smtnrhdb.HostMgrTnrhdbCli
from machine1.ExampleCo.COM
was successful.
```

EXAMPLE 4 Adding Subnet `192.168.0` to the `tnrhdb` Database

The following command adds all the addresses on the `192.168.0` subnet, from `192.168.0.1` to `192.168.0.255` to the `tnrhdb` database. The prefix, `24`, indicates that the first 24 bits (`192.168.0`) are fixed. Only the final zero is a wildcard.

```
usr/sadm/bin/smtnrhdb add \
-D file:/machine1.ExampleCo.COM/machine1.ExampleCo.COM \
-- -w 192.168.0.0 -p 24 -n cipso
```



**EXAMPLE 4** Adding Subnet 192.168.0 to the tnrhdb Database (Continued)

Login to machine1.ExampleCo.COM as user root was successful.  
 Download of com.exampleco.admin.hostmgr.cli.smtnrhdb.HostMgrTnrhdbCli  
 from machine1.ExampleCo.COM was successful.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0  
Successful completion.
- 1  
Invalid command syntax. A usage message displays.
- 2  
An error occurred while executing the command. An error message displays.

**Files** The following files are used by the smtnrhdb command:

/etc/security/tsol/tnrhdb  
 Trusted network remote-host database.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWmgts
Interface Stability	Committed

**See Also** [smc\(1M\)](#), [netmasks\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

*System Administration Guide: Security Services*

**Notes** The functionality described on this manual page is available only if the system is configured with Trusted Extensions.

**Name** smtnrhttp – manage entries in the trusted network template database

**Synopsis** /usr/sadm/bin/smtnrhttp *subcommand* [*auth\_args*] -- [*subcommand\_args*]

**Description** The smtnrhttp command adds, modifies, deletes, and lists entries in the tnrhttp database.

smtnrhttp *subcommands* are:

- add** Adds a new entry to the tnrhttp database. To add an entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.network.security.read` and `solaris.network.security.write` authorizations.
- modify** Modifies an entry in the tnrhttp database. To modify an entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.network.security.read` and `solaris.network.security.write` authorizations.
- delete** Deletes an entry from tnrhttp database. To delete an entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.network.security.read` and `solaris.network.security.write` authorizations.
- list** Lists entries in the tnrhttp database. To list an entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.network.security.read` authorizations.

**Options** The smtnrhttp authentication arguments, *auth\_args*, are derived from the smc argument set and are the same regardless of which subcommand you use. The smtnrhttp command requires the Solaris Management Console to be initialized for the command to succeed (see [smc\(1M\)](#)). After rebooting the Solaris Management Console server, the first smc connection can time out, so you might need to retry the command.

The subcommand-specific options, *subcommand\_args*, must be *preceded* by the -- option.

*auth\_args* The valid *auth\_args* are -D, -H, -l, -p, -r, and -u; they are all optional. If no *auth\_args* are specified, certain defaults will be assumed and the user might be prompted for additional information, such as a password for authentication purposes. These letter options can also be specified by their equivalent option words preceded by a double dash. For example, you can use either -D or --domain.

-D | --domain *domain*

Specifies the default domain that you want to manage. The syntax of *domain=type:/host\_name/domain\_name*, where *type* is `dns`, `ldap`, or `file`; *host\_name* is the name of the server; and *domain\_name* is the name of the domain you want to manage.

If you do not specify this option, the Solaris Management Console assumes the `file` default domain on whatever server you choose to manage, meaning that changes are local to the server. Toolboxes can change the domain on a tool-by-tool basis; this option specifies the domain for all other tools.

- H | --hostname *host\_name:port*  
Specifies the *host\_name* and *port* to which you want to connect. If you do not specify a *port*, the system connects to the default port, 898. If you do not specify *host\_name:port*, the Solaris Management Console connects to the local host on port 898.
- l | --rolepassword *role\_password*  
Specifies the password for the *role\_name*. If you specify a *role\_name* but do not specify a *role\_password*, the system prompts you to supply a *role\_password*. Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.
- p | --password *password*  
Specifies the password for the *user\_name*. If you do not specify a password, the system prompts you for one. Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.
- r | --rolename *role\_name*  
Specifies a role name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, no role is assumed.
- u | --username *user\_name*  
Specifies the user name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, the user identity running the console process is assumed.
- This option is required and must always follow the preceding options. If you do not enter the preceding options, you must still enter the -- option.

*subcommand\_args* Descriptions and other argument options that contain white spaces must be enclosed in double quotes.

- h Displays the command's usage statement.
- n *templatename* Specifies the name of the template.
- t *hosttype* Specifies the host type of the new host. Valid values are `unlabeled` and `cipso`. The `cipso` host type is for hosts that use CIPSO (Common IP Security Options - Tag Type 1 only) to label packets.
- x *doi=doi-value* Specifies the DOI value (the domain of interpretation). In the case of the `unlabeled` host type, this is the domain of interpretation for the `def_label`.

The domain of interpretation defines the set of rules for translating between the external or internal representation of the security attributes and their network representation. When systems that are configured with Trusted Extensions software have the same `doi`, they share that set of rules. In the case of the `unlabeled` host type, these systems also share the same

interpretation for the default attributes that are assigned to the unlabeled templates that have that same `doi`.

- x `max=maximum-label` Specifies the maximum label. Together with `min`, this value specifies the label accreditation range for the remote hosts that use this template. Values can be a hex value or string (such as `admin_high`).
- x `min=minimum-label` Specifies the minimum label. Together with `max`, this value specifies the label accreditation range for the remote hosts that use this template. For gateway systems, `min` and `max` define the default range for forwarding labeled packets. The label range for routes is typically set by using a [route\(1M\)](#) subcommand with the `-secattr` option. When the label range for routes is not specified, the `min` to `max` range in the security template is used. Values can be a hex value or string (such as `admin_low`).
- x `label=default-label` Specifies the default label to be applied to incoming data from remote hosts that do not support these attributes. This option does not apply if `hosttype` is `cipso`. Values can be a hex value or string (such as `admin_low`).
- x `slset=l1,l2,l3,l4` Specifies a set of sensitivity labels. For gateway systems, the labels in `slset` are used for forwarding labeled packets. `slset` is optional. You can specify up to four label values, separated by commas. Values can be a hex value or string (such as `admin_low`).

- One of the following sets of arguments must be specified for subcommand `add`:

```
-n template name (
 -t cipso [-x doi=doi-value -x min=minimum-label -x max=maximum-label -x
 slset=l1,l2,l3,l4] |
 -t unlabeled [-x doi=doi-value -x min=minimum-label -x max=maximum-label -x
 label=default-label -x slset=l1,l2,l3,l4] |
 -h
)
```

- One of the following sets of arguments must be specified for subcommand `modify`:

```
-n template name (
 -t cipso [-x doi=doi-value -x min=minimum-label -x max=maximum-label -x
 slset=l1,l2,l3,l4] |
 -t unlabeled [-x doi=doi-value -x min=minimum-label -x max=maximum-label -x
 label=default-label -x slset=l1,l2,l3,l4] |
 -h
)
```

)

If the host type is changed, all options for the new host type must be specified.

- One of the following sets of arguments must be specified for subcommand `delete`:

-n *templatename* |

-h

- The following argument can be specified for subcommand `list`:

-n *templatename* |

-h

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Adding a New Entry to the Network Template Database

The admin role connects to port 898 of the LDAP server and creates the `unlabeled_ntk` entry in the `tnrhttp` database. The new template is assigned a host type of `unlabeled`, a domain of interpretation of `1`, minimum label of `public`, maximum label of `restricted`, and a default label of `needtoknow`. The administrator is prompted for the admin password.

```
$ /usr/sadm/bin/smtnrhttp \
add -D ldap:directoryname -H servername:898 -- \
-n unlabeled_ntk -t unlabeled -x DOI=1 \
-x min=public -x max=restricted -x label="need to know"
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 Invalid command syntax. A usage message displays.
- 2 An error occurred while executing the command. An error message displays.

**Files** The following files are used by the `smtnrhttp` command:

`/etc/security/tsol/tnrhttp` Trusted network remote-host templates.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWmgts
Interface Stability	Committed

**See Also** [smc\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Notes** The functionality described on this manual page is available only if the system is configured with Trusted Extensions.

**Warnings** Changing a template while the network is up can change the security view of an undetermined number of hosts.

Allowing unlabeled hosts onto a Solaris Trusted Extensions network is a security risk. To avoid compromising the rest of your network, such hosts must be *trusted* in the sense that the administrator is certain that these unlabeled hosts will not be used to compromise the distributed system. These hosts should also be physically protected to restrict access to authorized individuals. If you cannot guarantee that an unlabeled host is physically secure from tampering, it and similar hosts should be isolated on a separate branch of the network.

If the security template is modified while the network is up, the changes do not take effect immediately unless `tnctl(1M)` is used to update the template entries. Otherwise, the changes take effect when next polled by the trusted network daemon, `tnd(1M)`. Administrators are allowed to add new templates and modify attributes of existing templates while the network is up.

**Name** smtnzonecfg – manage entries in the zone configuration database for Trusted Extensions networking

**Synopsis** /usr/sadm/bin/smtnzonecfg *subcommand* [*auth\_args*] -- [*subcommand\_args*]

**Description** The smtnzonecfg command adds, modifies, deletes, and lists entries in the tzonecfg database.

smtnzonecfg *subcommands* are:

- add** Adds a new entry to the tzonecfg database. To add an entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.network.host.write` and `solaris.network.security.write` authorizations.
- modify** Modifies an entry in the tzonecfg database. To modify an entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.network.host.write` and `solaris.network.security.write` authorizations.
- delete** Deletes an entry from the tzonecfg database. To delete an entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.network.host.write` and `solaris.network.security.write` authorizations.
- list** Lists entries in the tzonecfg database. To list an entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.network.host.read` and `solaris.network.security.read` authorizations.

**Options** The smtnzonecfg authentication arguments, *auth\_args*, are derived from the `smc` argument set and are the same regardless of which subcommand you use. The smtnzonecfg command requires the Solaris Management Console to be initialized for the command to succeed (see [smc\(1M\)](#)). After rebooting the Solaris Management Console server, the first `smc` connection can time out, so you might need to retry the command.

The subcommand-specific options, *subcommand\_args*, must be *preceded* by the `--` option.

*auth\_args* The valid *auth\_args* are `-D`, `-H`, `-l`, `-p`, `-r`, and `-u`; they are all optional. If no *auth\_args* are specified, certain defaults will be assumed and the user can be prompted for additional information, such as a password for authentication purposes. These letter options can also be specified by their equivalent option words preceded by a double dash. For example, you can use either `-D` or `--domain`.

`-D` | `--domain` *domain*

Specifies the default domain that you want to manage. The syntax of `domain=type:/host_name/domain_name`, where *type* is `dns`, `ldap`, or `file`; *host\_name* is the name of the server; and *domain\_name* is the name of the domain you want to manage.

If you do not specify this option, the Solaris Management Console assumes the `file` default domain on whatever server you choose to manage, meaning that changes are local to the server. Toolboxes can change the domain on a tool-by-tool basis. This option specifies the domain for all other tools.

- H | --hostname *host\_name:port*  
Specifies the *host\_name* and *port* to which you want to connect. If you do not specify a *port*, the system connects to the default port, 898. If you do not specify *host\_name:port*, the Solaris Management Console connects to the local host on port 898.
- l | --rolepassword *role\_password*  
Specifies the password for the *role\_name*. If you specify a *role\_name* but do not specify a *role\_password*, the system prompts you to supply a *role\_password*. Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.
- p | --password *password*  
Specifies the password for the *user\_name*. If you do not specify a password, the system prompts you for one. Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.
- r | --rolename *role\_name*  
Specifies a role name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, no role is assumed.
- u | --username *user\_name*  
Specifies the user name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, the user identity running the console process is assumed.
- This option is required and must always follow the preceding options. If you do not enter the preceding options, you must still enter the -- option.

*subcommand\_args* Descriptions and other argument options that contain white spaces must be enclosed in double quotes.

- h  
Displays the command's usage statement.
- n *zonename*  
Specifies the zone name for the entry. This name is used when the zone is configured. See [zonecfg\(1M\)](#), under the -z zonename option, for the constraints on zone names. The specified zone name must be one of the configured zones on the system. The following command returns a list of configured zones:  

```
/usr/sbin/zoneadm list -c
```
- l *label*  
Specifies the label for the zone. This field is used to label the zone when the zone is booted. Each zone must have a unique label.
- x *polycymatch=0|1*  
Specifies the policy match level for non-transport traffic. Only values of 0 (match the label) or 1 (be within the label range of the zone) are accepted.



ICMP packets that are received on the global zone IP address are accepted based on the label range of the global zone's security template if the global zone's *polycymatch* field is set to 1. When this field is set to 0 for a zone, the zone will not respond to an ICMP echo request from a host with a different label.

This subcommand argument is optional. If not specified, it will have a default value of 0.

- x *m1pzone*=""*port/protocol*  
Specifies the multilevel port configuration entry for zone-specific IP addresses. Multiple *port/protocol* combinations are separated by a semi-colon. The empty string can be specified to remove all existing MLP zone values. This subcommand argument is optional.

An MLP is used to provide multilevel service in the global zone as well as in non-global zones. As an example of how a non-global zone can use an MLP, consider setting up two labeled zones, `internal` and `public`. The `internal` zone can access company networks; the `public` zone can access public internet but not the company's internal networks. For safe browsing, when a user in the `internal` zone wants to browse the Internet, the `internal` zone browser forwards the URL to the `public` zone, and the web content is then displayed in a `public` zone web browser. That way, if the download in `public` zone compromises the web browser, it cannot affect the company's internal network. To set this up, TCP port 8080 in the `public` zone is an MLP (`8080/tcp`), and the security template for the `public` zone has a label range from `PUBLIC` to `INTERNAL`.

- x *m1pshared*=""*port/protocol*  
Specifies the multilevel port configuration entry for shared IP addresses. Multiple *port/protocol* combinations are separated by a semi-colon. The empty string can be specified to remove all existing MLP shared values. This subcommand argument is optional.

A shared IP address can reduce the total number of IP addresses that are needed on the system, especially when configuring a large number of zones. Unlike the case of the zone-specific IP address, when MLPs are declared on shared IP addresses, only the global zone can receive the incoming network traffic that is destined for the MLP.

- One of the following sets of arguments must be specified for subcommand `add`:

```
-n zonename -l label [-x polycymatch=policy-match-level \
-x m1pzone=port/protocol;... | \
-x m1pshared=port/protocol;...]
-h
```

- One of the following sets of arguments must be specified for subcommand `modify`:

```
-n zonename [-l label] [-x polycymatch=policy-match-level \
-x m1pzone=port/protocol;... | \
-x m1pshared=port/protocol;...]
-h
```

- One of the following arguments must be specified for subcommand `delete`:

```
-n zonename |
-h
```

- The following argument can be specified for subcommand `list`:

```
-n zonename |
-h
```

### Examples

#### EXAMPLE 1 Adding a New Entry to the Zone Configuration Database

The admin role creates a new zone entry, `public`, with a label of `public`, a policy match level of 1, and a shared MLP port and protocol of 666 and TCP. The administrator is prompted for the admin password.

```
$ /usr/sadm/bin/smtzonecfg add -- -n public -l public \
-x policymatch=1 -x mlpshared=666/tcp
```

#### EXAMPLE 2 Modifying an Entry in the Zone Configuration Database

The admin role changes the `public` entry in the `tnzonecfg` database to `needtoknow`. The administrator is prompted for the admin password.

```
$ /usr/sadm/bin/smtzonecfg modify -- -n public -l needtoknow
```

#### EXAMPLE 3 Listing the Zone Configuration Database

The admin role lists the entries in the `tnzonecfg` database. The administrator is prompted for the admin password.

```
$ /usr/sadm/bin/smtzonecfg list --
```

### Exit Status

The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 Invalid command syntax. A usage message displays.
- 2 An error occurred while executing the command. An error message displays.

### Files

The following files are used by the `smtzonecfg` command:

`/etc/security/tsol/tnzonecfg` Trusted zone configuration database.

### Attributes

See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWmgts
Interface Stability	Committed

**See Also** [smc\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Notes** The functionality described on this manual page is available only if the system is configured with Trusted Extensions.

**Name** smuser – manage user entries

**Synopsis** /usr/sadm/bin/smuser *subcommand* [ *auth\_args*] - -  
[*subcommand\_args*]

**Description** The smuser command manages one or more user entries in the local /etc filesystem or an NIS target name service.

*subcommands* smuser *subcommands* are:

add

Adds a new user entry to the appropriate files. You can use a template and input file instead of supplying the additional command line options. If you use a template and command line options, the command line options take precedence and override any conflicting template values. To add an entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.write` authorization.

delete

Deletes one or more user entries from the appropriate files. To delete an entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.write` authorization. *Note:* You cannot delete the system accounts with IDs less than 100, or 60001, 60002, or 65534.

list

Lists one more user entries from the appropriate files. To list entries, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.read` authorization.

modify

Modifies a user entry in the appropriate files. To modify an entry, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.write` authorization.

**Options** The smuser authentication arguments, *auth\_args*, are derived from the [smc\(1M\)](#) arg set and are the same regardless of which subcommand you use. The smuser command requires the Solaris Management Console to be initialized for the command to succeed (see [smc\(1M\)](#)). After rebooting the Solaris Management Console server, the first Solaris Management Console connection might time out, so you might need to retry the command.

The subcommand-specific options, *subcommand\_args*, must come after the *auth\_args* and must be separated from them by the - - option.

*auth\_args* The valid *auth\_args* are -D, -H, -l, -p, -r, and -u are described below. They are all optional. These options are a subset of the full complement of supported options described in [smc\(1M\)](#).

If no *auth\_args* are specified, certain defaults will be assumed and the user may be prompted for additional information, such as a password for authentication purposes. These letter options can also be specified by their equivalent option words preceded by a double dash. For example, you can use either -D or - --domain with the *domain* argument.

- D** | - *—domain* *I3;domain*  
 Specifies the default domain that you want to manage. The syntax of *domain* is *type:/host\_name/domain\_name*, where *type* is *nis*, *dns*, *ldap*, or *file*; *host\_name* is the name of the machine that serves the domain; and *domain\_name* is the name of the domain you want to manage.
- If you do not specify this option, the Solaris Management Console assumes the *file* default domain on whatever server you choose to manage, meaning that changes are local to the server. Toolboxes can change the domain on a tool-by-tool basis; this option specifies the domain for all other tools.
- H** | - *—hostname* *I3;host\_name:port*  
 Specifies the *host\_name* and *port* to which you want to connect. If you do not specify a *port*, the system connects to the default port, 898. If you do not specify *host\_name:port*, the Solaris Management Console connects to the local host on port 898. You may still have to choose a toolbox to load into the console. To override this behavior, use the [smc\(1M\)](#) **-B** option, or set your console preferences to load a “home toolbox” by default.
- l** | - *—rolepassword* *I3;role\_password*  
 Specifies the password for the *role\_name*. If you specify a *role\_name* but do not specify a *role\_password*, the system prompts you to supply a *role\_password*. Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.
- p** | - *—password* *I3;password*  
 Specifies the password for the *user\_name*. If you do not specify a password, the system prompts you for one. Passwords specified on the command line can be seen by any user on the system, hence this option is considered insecure.
- r** | - *—rolename* *I3;role\_name*  
 Specifies a role name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, no role is assumed.
- u** | - *—username* *I3;user\_name*  
 Specifies the user name for authentication. If you do not specify this option, the user identity running the console process is assumed.
- -**  
 This option is required and must always follow the preceding options. If you do not enter the preceding options, you must still enter the **- -** option.

*subcommand\_args* *Note:* Descriptions and other arg options that contain whitespace must be enclosed in double quotes.

To add or change privileges, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.privilege.write` authorization. See [privileges\(5\)](#).

- For subcommand add:

- c *comment*  
(Optional) Includes a short description of the login, which is typically the user's name. Consists of a string of up to 256 printable characters, excluding the colon (:).
- d *dir*  
(Optional) Specifies the home directory of the new user, limited to 1024 characters.
- e *ddmmyyyy*  
(Optional) Specifies the expiration date for a login. After this date, no user can access this login. This option is useful for creating temporary logins. Specify a null value (“”) to indicate that the login is always valid. The administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.pswd` authorization.
- f *inactive*  
(Optional) Specifies the maximum number of days allowed between uses of a login ID before that ID is declared invalid. Normal values are positive integers. Enter zero to indicate that the login account is always active.
- F *full\_name*  
(Optional) Specifies the full, descriptive name of the user. The *full\_name* must be unique within a domain and can contain alphanumeric characters and spaces. If you use spaces, you must enclose the *full\_name* in double quotes.
- g *group*  
(Optional) Specifies the new user's primary group membership in the system group database with an existing group's integer ID.
- G *group1 -G group2 . . .*  
(Optional) Specifies the new user's supplementary group membership in the system group database with the character string names of one or more existing groups. Duplicates of groups specified with the -g and -G options are ignored.
- h  
(Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.
- n *login*  
Specifies the new user's login name. The login name must be unique within a domain, contain 2–32 alphanumeric characters, begin with a letter, and contain at least one lowercase letter.
- P *password*  
(Optional) Specifies up to an eight-character password assigned to the user account.  
*Note:* When you specify a password, you type the password in plain text. Specifying a password using this method introduces a security gap while the command is running. To set the password, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.pswd` authorization.

- 
- s *shell*  
(Optional) Specifies the full pathname (limited to 1024 characters) of the program used as the user's shell on login. Valid entries are a user-defined shell, `/bin/csh` (C shell), `bin/ksh` (Korn shell), and the default, `/bin/sh` (Bourne shell).
  - t *template*  
(Optional) Specifies a template, created using the User Manager tool, that contains a set of pre-defined user attributes. You may have entered a name service server in the template. However, when a user is actually added with this template, if a name service is unavailable, the user's local server will be used for both the Home Directory Server and Mail Server.
  - u *uid*  
(Optional) Specifies the user ID of the user you want to add. If you do not specify this option, the system assigns the next available unique user ID greater than 100.
  - x *autohome=Y|N*  
(Optional) Sets the home directory to automount if set to Y. The user's home directory path in the password entry is set to `/home/login name`.
  - x *mail=mail\_server*  
(Optional) Specifies the host name of the user's mail server, and creates a mail file on the server. Users created in a local scope must have a mail server created on their local machines.
  - x *perm=home\_perm*  
(Optional) Sets the permissions on the user's home directory. *perm* is interpreted as an octal number, and the default is `0775`.
  - x *pwmax=days*  
(Optional) Specifies the maximum number of days that the user's password is valid. The administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.pswd` authorization.
  - x *pwmin=days*  
(Optional) Specifies the minimum number of days between user password changes. The administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.pswd` authorization.
  - x *pwwarn=days*  
(Optional) Specifies the number of days relative to *pwmax* that the user is warned about password expiration prior to the password expiring. The administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.pswd` authorization.
  - x *serv=homedir\_server*  
(Optional) Specifies the name of the server where the user's home directory resides. Users created in a local scope must have their home directory server created on their local machines.
  - M *limit\_privs*  
Specifies the privilege name(s) to add to the new `user_attr(4)` entry. The default is `all` for limit privilege.

To add or change privileges, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.privilege.write` authorization. See [privileges\(5\)](#).

-D *default\_privs*

Specifies the default privilege name(s) to add to the new `user_attr(4)` entry.

The following options to the `add` subcommand are available only if a system is configured with Solaris Trusted Extensions. `smuser` automatically detects when a system is running these extensions.

-x *clear=clearanceval*

(Optional) Specifies the role's clearance. *clearanceval* can be a string value or a hex value. If this option is not specified, the default is the user's system default clearance. To set the clearance, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.labels` authorization.

-x *idlecmd=LOGOUT|LOCK*

Specifies the command to execute if the system has been idled. If `LOGOUT` is specified, `idlecmd=logout` will be recorded in `user_attr`. If `LOCK` is specified, `idlecmd=lock` will be recorded in `user_attr`. If this option is not specified, the default is the `IDLECMD` in the `/etc/security/policy.conf` file.

-x *idletime=minutes*

(Optional) Specifies the number of minutes before the specified idle command gets executed. Any integer value in the range from 1 to 120 is valid. This value is recorded in `user_attr` as `idletime=val`. If this option is not specified, the default is the `IDLETIME` in the `/etc/security/policy.conf` file.

-x *label=labelval*

(Optional) Specifies the user's minimum label. *labelval* can be a string label or a hex label. If this option is not specified, the default is the user's system default minimum label. To set the minimum label, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.labels` authorization.

-x *labelview=HIDE|SHOW*

(Optional) Specifies the second part of the `labelview key-value` pair. If `SHOW` is specified, `labelview=*showsl` will be recorded. If `HIDE` is specified, `labelview=*hidesl` will be recorded. The asterisk portion can be replaced by "internal,", "external,", or ""(null). If this option is not specified, the default is the `LABELVIEW` in the `/etc/security/policy.conf` file.

-x *lock=Y|N*

(Optional) Specifies if an account is locked after a specified number of failed logins. This value is recorded in `user_attr` as `lock_after_retries`. If this option is not specified, the default is the `LOCK_AFTER_RETRIES` in the `/etc/security/policy.conf` file.



- 
- x *view*=INTERNAL|EXTERNAL|DEFAULT  
(Optional) Specifies the label view type for the `labelview` in `user_attr`. If `INTERNAL` is specified, `labelview=internal` will be recorded; if `EXTERNAL` is specified, `labelview=external` will be recorded; if `DEFAULT` is specified, nothing will be recorded in `user_attr`. If this option is not specified, the default action, that nothing gets recorded in `user_attr`, is in effect.
  - For subcommand `delete`:
    - h  
(Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.
    - n *login1*  
Specifies the login name of the user you want to delete.
    - n *login2* ...  
(Optional) Specifies the additional login name(s) of the user(s) you want to delete.
  - For subcommand `list`:
    - h  
(Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.
    - l  
Displays the output for each user in a block of *key:value* pairs (for example, `user name: root`) followed by a blank line to delimit each user block. Each *key:value* pair is displayed on a separate line. The keys are: `autohome setup`, `comment`, `days to warn`, `full name`, `home directory`, `home directory permissions`, `login shell`, `mail server`, `max days change`, `max days inactive`, `min days change`, `password expires`, `password type`, `primary group`, `rights`, `roles`, `secondary groups`, `server`, `user ID (UID)`, and `user name`.
    - n *login1*  
Specifies the login name of the user you want to list.
    - n *login2* ...  
(Optional) Specifies the additional login name(s) of the user(s) you want to list.
  - For subcommand `modify`:
    - a *addrole1* -a *addrole2* ...  
(Optional) Specifies the role(s) to add to the user account. To assign a role to a user, the administrator must have the `solaris.role.assign` authorization or must have the `solaris.role.delegate` authorization and be a member of each of the roles specified.
    - c *comment*  
(Optional) Describes the changes you made to the user account. Consists of a string of up to 256 printable characters, excluding the colon (:).
    - d *description*  
(Optional) Specifies the user's home directory, limited to 1024 characters.

- e *ddmmyyyy*  
(Optional) Specifies the expiration date for a login in a format appropriate to the locale. After this date, no user can access this login. This option is useful for creating temporary logins. Specify a null value (“”) to indicate that the login is always valid.
- f *inactive*  
(Optional) Specifies the maximum number of days allowed between uses of a login ID before the ID is declared invalid. Normal values are positive integers. Specify zero to indicate that the login account is always active.
- F *full\_name*  
(Optional) Specifies the full, descriptive name of the user. The *full\_name* must be unique within a domain and can contain alphanumeric characters and spaces. If you use spaces, you must enclose the *full\_name* in double quotes.
- g *group*  
(Optional) Specifies the new user's primary group membership in the system group database with an existing group's integer ID.
- G *group1 -G group2 . . .*  
(Optional) Specifies the new user's supplementary group membership in the system group database with the character string names of one or more existing groups. Duplicates of groups specified with the -g and -G options are ignored.
- h  
(Optional) Displays the command's usage statement.
- n *name*  
Specifies the user's current login name.
- N *new\_name*  
(Optional) Specifies the user's new login name. The login name must be unique within a domain, contain 2–32 alphanumeric characters, begin with a letter, and contain at least one lowercase letter.
- p *addprof1 -p addprof2 . . .*  
(Optional) Specifies the profile(s) to add to the user account. To assign a profile to a user, the administrator must have the `solaris.profmgr.assign` or `solaris.profmgr.delegate` authorization.
- P *password*  
(Optional) Specifies up to an eight-character password assigned to the user account.  
  
When you specify a password, you type the password in plain text. Specifying a password using this method introduces a security gap while the command is running.
- q *delprof1 -q delprof2 . . .*  
(Optional) Specifies the profile(s) to delete from the user account.

- r *delrole1* -r *delrole2* . . .  
(Optional) Specifies the role(s) to delete from the user account.
- s *shell*  
(Optional) Specifies the full pathname (limited to 1024 characters) of the program used as the user's shell on login. Valid entries are a user-defined shell, `/bin/csh` (C shell), `bin/ksh` (Korn shell), and the default, `/bin/sh` (Bourne shell).l)
- x *autohome*=Y|N  
(Optional) Sets up the home directory to automount if set to Y. The user's home directory path in the password entry is set to `/home/login name`.
- x *pwmax*=*days*  
(Optional) Specifies the maximum number of days that the user's password is valid.
- x *pwmin*=*days*  
(Optional) Specifies the minimum number of days between password changes.
- x *pwwarn*=*days*  
(Optional) Specifies the number of days relative to *pwmax* that the user is warned about password expiration before the password expires.
- M *limit\_privs*  
Specifies the privilege name(s) to modify in the `user_attr(4)` entry. The default is `all` for limit privilege.  
  
To add or change privileges, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.privilege.write` authorization. See [privileges\(5\)](#).
- D *default\_privs*  
Specifies the default privilege name(s) to modify in the `user_attr(4)` entry.

The following options to the `modify` subcommand are available only if a system is configured with Solaris Trusted Extensions. `smuser` automatically detects when a system is running these extensions.

- x *clear*=*clearanceval*  
(Optional) Specifies the role's clearance. *clearanceval* can be a string value or a hex value. If this option is not specified, the default is the user's system default clearance. To set the clearance, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.labels` authorization.
- x *idlecmd*=LOGOUT|LOCK  
Specifies the command to execute if the system has been idled. If LOGOUT is specified, `idlecmd=logout` will be recorded in `user_attr`. If LOCK is specified, `idlecmd=lock` will be recorded in `user_attr`. If this option is not specified, the default is the IDLECMD in the `/etc/security/policy.conf` file.

- x *idletime=minutes*  
(Optional) Specifies the number of minutes before the specified idle command gets executed. Any integer value in the range from 1 to 120 is valid. This value is recorded in `user_attr` as `idletime=val`. If this option is not specified, the default is the `IDLETIME` in the `/etc/security/policy.conf` file.
- x *label=labelval*  
(Optional) Specifies the user's minimum label. *labelval* can be a string label or a hex label. If this option is not specified, the default is the user's system default minimum label. To set the minimum label, the administrator must have the `solaris.admin.usermgr.labels` authorization.
- x *labelview=HIDE|SHOW*  
(Optional) Specifies the second part of the `labelview key-value` pair. If `SHOW` is specified, `labelview=*showsl` will be recorded. If `HIDE` is specified, `labelview=*hidesl` will be recorded. The asterisk portion can be replaced by "internal," "external," or ""(null). If this option is not specified, the default is the `LABELVIEW` in the `/etc/security/policy.conf` file.
- x *lock=Y|N*  
(Optional) Specifies if an account is locked after a specified number of failed logins. This value is recorded in `user_attr` as `lock_after_retries`. If this option is not specified, the default is the `LOCK_AFTER_RETRIES` in the `/etc/security/policy.conf` file.
- x *view=INTERNAL|EXTERNAL|DEFAULT*  
(Optional) Specifies the label view type for the `labelview` in `user_attr`. If `INTERNAL` is specified, `labelview=internal` will be recorded; if `EXTERNAL` is specified, `labelview=external` will be recorded; if `DEFAULT` is specified, nothing will be recorded in `user_attr`. If this option is not specified, the default action, that nothing gets recorded in `user_attr`, is in effect.

### Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Creating a New User Account

The following creates a new user account on the local file system. The account name is `user1`, and the full name is Joe Smith. The comment field verifies that the account is for Joe Smith. The system will assign the next available user ID greater than 100 to this account. There is no password set for this account, so when Joe Smith logs in for the first time, he will be prompted to enter a password.

```
./smuser add -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root -- -F "Joe Smith" \
 -n user1 -c "Joe's account"
```

### **EXAMPLE 2** Deleting a User Account

The following deletes the `user1` account from the local file system:

```
./smuser delete -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root -- -n user1
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Listing All User Accounts

The following lists all user accounts on the local file system in summary form:

```
./smuser list -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root --
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Modifying a User Account

The following modifies the user1 account to default to a Korn shell, and assigns the account to the qa\_group secondary group.

```
./smuser modify -H myhost -p mypasswd -u root -- -n user1 \
-s /bin/ksh -G qa_group
```

**Environment Variables** See [environ\(5\)](#) for a description of the JAVA\_HOME environment variable, which affects the execution of the smuser command. If this environment variable is not specified, the /usr/java location is used. See [smc\(1M\)](#).

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 Invalid command syntax. A usage message displays.
- 2 An error occurred while executing the command. An error message displays.

**Files** The following files are used by the smuser command:

- /etc/aliases  
Mail aliases. See [aliases\(4\)](#).
- /etc/auto\_home  
Automatic mount points. See [automount\(1M\)](#).
- /etc/group  
Group file. See [group\(4\)](#).
- /etc/passwd  
Password file. See [passwd\(4\)](#).
- /etc/security/policy.conf  
Configuration file for security policy. See [policy.conf\(4\)](#).
- /etc/shadow  
Shadow password file. See [shadow\(4\)](#).
- /etc/user\_attr  
Extended user attribute database. See [user\\_attr\(4\)](#).

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWmga
Interface Stability	Evolving

**See Also** [automount\(1M\)](#), [smc\(1M\)](#), [aliases\(4\)](#), [group\(4\)](#), [passwd\(4\)](#), [policy.conf\(4\)](#), [shadow\(4\)](#), [user\\_attr\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#)

**Name** sndradm – control Sun StorageTek Availability Suite Remote Mirror operations

**Synopsis** sndradm -I a *master shadow bitmap*  
 sndradm -I d *master shadow bitmap*  
 sndradm -h *usage message*  
 sndradm -v *version information*  
 sndradm [*options*] -e [*sndr\_set*]  
 sndradm [*options*] -E [*sndr\_set*]  
 sndradm [*options*] -d [*sndr\_set*]  
 sndradm [*options*] -D b|lock [*sndr\_set*]  
 sndradm [*options*] -D nob|lock [*sndr\_set*]  
 sndradm [*options*] -l [*sndr\_set*]  
 sndradm [*options*] -m [*sndr\_set*]  
 sndradm [*options*] -m -r [*sndr\_set*]  
 sndradm [*options*] -u [*sndr\_set*]  
 sndradm [*options*] -u -r [*sndr\_set*]  
 sndradm [*options*] -w [*sndr\_set*]  
 sndradm [*options*] -H [*sndr\_set*]  
 sndradm [*options*] -p [*sndr\_set*]  
 sndradm [*options*] -P [*sndr\_set*]  
 sndradm [*options*] -q a *volume* [*sndr\_set*]  
 sndradm [*options*] -q d [*sndr\_set*]  
 sndradm [*options*] -q r *volume* [*sndr\_set*]  
 sndradm [*options*] -i [*sndr\_set*]  
 sndradm [*options*] -a *value* [*sndr\_set*]  
 sndradm [*options*] -A *value* [*sndr\_set*]  
 sndradm [*options*] -F *value* [*sndr\_set*]  
 sndradm [*options*] -W *value* [*sndr\_set*]  
 sndradm [*options*] -R  
 sndradm [*options*] -R b p *bitmap* [*sndr\_set*]  
 sndradm [*options*] -R b s *bitmap* [*sndr\_set*]  
 sndradm [*options*] -R C *tag* [*sndr\_set*]

```
s ndradm [options] -R g io_groupname [s ndr_set]
```

```
s ndradm [options] -R m sync [s ndr_set]
```

```
s ndradm [options] -R m async [s ndr_set]
```

```
s ndradm [options] -R -f volset-file
```

```
s ndradm [options] -R r [s ndr_set] *
```

**Description** The `/usr/sbin/s ndradm` command is the administrative command line interface for the Sun StorageTek Availability Suite Remote Mirror software. Remote Mirror enables you to replicate disks between different physically-separate Sun servers in real time. Remote Mirror is conceptually similar to the local disk mirroring scheme of RAID 1 but it performs its replication operations over longer distances.

If you do not specify a Remote Mirror set (*s ndr\_set*) on the command line, `s ndradm` operates on all configured Remote Mirror sets.

The `s ndradm` command generates an entry in the Availability Suite log file, `/var/adm/ds.log` (see [ds.log\(4\)](#)), for all operations except print (`-p`, `-P` and `-i`), help (`-h`), and version (`-v`).

**Options** The `s ndradm` utility supports the following options:

`-f volset-file`

Specifies a file containing the *s ndr\_set* information for one or more Remote Mirror sets in the same format as the fully specified command line *s ndr\_set* documented below.

`-g io_groupname`

Limits operations to only those Remote Mirror sets belonging to *io\_groupname*.

The *io\_groupname* for a given set must be consistent across both the primary and the secondary hosts.

`-C tag`

On a clustered node, limits operations to only those Remote Mirror sets belonging to the cluster resource group or disk group name specified by *tag*. This option is not valid on a system that is not clustered.

`-n`

Does not prompt the user after starting a Remote Mirror operation using `s ndradm`. For all but the printing, help, and version options, the default behavior is to prompt for a response. For example, after starting a full synchronization from the primary to the secondary volume, Remote Mirror prompts: "Overwrite secondary with primary? (Y/N) [N]".

*s ndr\_set*

Specifies the Remote Mirror set. For a set that has already been enabled, this can be a *set\_name* in the format *shost:sdev*. You can supply a fully specified Remote Mirror set in the same format as a configuration file:

```
p host pdev pbitmap shost sdev sbitmap ip {sync | async} \
[g io_groupname] [C tag]
```



These parameters are described as follows:

*phost*

Specifies the server on which the primary volume resides.

*pdev*

Specifies the primary volume partition to be replicated. Specify full pathnames only (for example, `/dev/rdisk/c0t1d0s2`).

*pbitmap*

Specifies the volume partition on which the bitmap (scoreboard log) of the primary partition is stored. Specify full pathnames only (for example, `/dev/rdisk/c0t1d0s3`).

*shost*

Specifies the server on which the secondary volume resides.

*sdev*

Specifies the secondary volume partition. Specify full path names only (for example, `/dev/rdisk/c0t1d0s4`).

*sbitmap*

Specifies the volume partition on which the bitmap (scoreboard log) of the secondary partition is stored. Specify full path names only (for example, `/dev/rdisk/c0t1d0s5`).

*ip*

Specifies the network transfer protocol.

*sync | async*

Specifies the Remote Mirror operating mode. `sync` is the Remote Mirror mode where the I/O operation is not confirmed as complete until the remote volume has been updated. `async` is the Remote Mirror mode where the primary host I/O operation is confirmed as complete before updating the remote volume.

*io\_groupname*

Specifies the name of the Remote Mirror consistency group to which the Remote Mirror set belongs. In asynchronous mode, write ordering must be preserved across all replicating volumes in a Remote Mirror consistency group. This ensures that the secondary volumes belonging to the group contains a valid point-in-time copy of the corresponding primary volumes.

When adding an existing set to a consistency group or when enabling a set to be in a group, the set must be configured with the same group name on both the primary and the secondary hosts.

*tag*

For operation within a cluster, this specifies the disk group name or resource tag of the local data and bitmap volumes in cases where this is not implied by the name of the volume (for example, `/dev/rdisk/md/dg/vol` and `/dev/vx/rdisk/dg/vol` both indicate a disk group name of `dg`). It is the responsibility of the user to ensure that the cluster tag specified to the Remote Mirror matches the appropriate cluster resource group tag, and

to keep all the Availability Suite services up to date in the event of cluster resource group reconfigurations. It is illegal to specify the cluster resource tag on a system that is not clustered.

**Parameters** A valid `sndradm` command must specify one of the parameters listed below.

**-I a** *master shadow bitmap*

Add an `ndr_ii` entry with the specified master, shadow, and bitmap to the Availability Suite configuration file. See [sndrsyncd\(1M\)](#). If the corresponding Point-in-Time Copy set does not exist, it is enabled when the next `sync` command is issued on the related volume(s). When no longer required, this Point-in-Time Copy set can be disabled by `iiadm -d`. See [iiadm\(1M\)](#)

**-I d** *master shadow bitmap*

Delete the `ndr_ii` entry with the specified master, shadow, and bitmap from the Availability Suite configuration file. Use the `dscfg` command to list `ndr_ii` configuration entries.

**-a** *value*

Specifies the value, on or off, of the automatic sync variable for the set. Once `autosync` has been requested for a set, the functionality is active from the time a sync operation is requested until the set is manually put into logging mode. Once the set is manually put into logging mode, the `autosync` functionality is not active and remains inactive until the next time a sync request is made. To check whether `autosync` is active, use `sndradm -P`. To check whether `autosync` has been requested for a set, look for the "auto=on;" tag for the set in the output of `dscfg -l`. See [sndrsyncd\(1M\)](#).

**-A** *value*

Specifies the maximum number of threads that can be created to process the asynchronous queue when a set is replicating in asynchronous mode. The default is 2.

**-W** *value*

Specifies the maximum number of writes that can be queued to a set replicating in asynchronous mode. The default is 4096. For example, set this value to 1 to ensure that the secondary volume is never more than one write operation behind the primary volume.

Tuning the maximum number of writes is only valid for sets using memory-based async I/O queues. This value is ignored when disk based I/O queues are used.

**-D** {`block` | `noblock`}

Toggles the `block|noblock` attribute of a disk-based queue. The default setting is `block`. If the I/O fill rate is larger than the drain rate for enough time for the queue to fill, incoming I/O is blocked until there is adequate space on the queue for it. This is to preserve write ordering whether it is one volume or across many volumes in the same consistency group. If `noblock` is set, and incoming I/O fills the queue, the I/O is not blocked. Instead, the set is put into logging and the disk queue contents are disregarded. An ensuing update sync synchronizes the latest data to the secondary site.

- F *value*  
Specifies the maximum number of 512-byte FBAs that can be queued in kernel memory to a set replicating in asynchronous mode. The default is 16384.  
  
Tuning the maximum number of FBAs is valid only for sets using memory-based async I/O queues. This value is ignored when disk-based I/O queues are used.
- h  
Prints the `sndradm` usage summary.
- v  
Prints the Remote Mirror version number.
- e  
Enables Remote Mirror for the set and enables scoreboard logging. The scoreboard is set to indicate that a full synchronization is required. Details of the set are saved in the current configuration. See [dscfg\(1M\)](#). The local volume and the bitmap volume are enabled for the Storage Volume driver (see [sv\(7D\)](#)).
- E  
Enables Remote Mirror for the set and enables scoreboard logging. The scoreboard is cleared to indicate that the primary and secondary volumes are already guaranteed to be fully synchronized. Details of the set are saved in the current configuration. See [dscfg\(1M\)](#). The local volume and the bitmap volume are enabled for the Storage Volume driver (see [sv\(7D\)](#)).
- d  
Disables Remote Mirror for the set and halts any current synchronization operations. `sndradm -d` also discards any active scoreboards that track temporary differences between primary and secondary volumes.
- l  
Stops Remote Mirror replication and copy operations between primary and secondary volumes and starts independent Remote Mirror scoreboard logging on these volumes. When all the sets in a consistency group are replicating, it means that the secondary volumes contain a valid point-in-time copy of the corresponding primary volumes. Under this condition, as soon as one Remote Mirror set drops into logging mode, the `rdc` kernel module drops all the other sets in the group into logging mode automatically. This ensures that the secondary volumes still contains a valid point-in-time copy. To resume the Remote Mirror after using the `-l` parameter, use the `-m` parameter to perform a full resynchronization or the `-u` parameter to perform an update resynchronization (based on the scoreboard).  
  
This option does not work on the secondary for any volumes that are currently synchronizing.
- w  
Waits for a synchronization copy to complete or abort, or returns immediately if invoked on the secondary system.

- H  
Reports on the health of the network link used by the specified volume set. The health of the link is reported as active or inactive. Active means that the network link is actively being used for replicating or resynchronizing data, and is therefore in good health. Inactive means that the network link is not actively being used for replicating or resynchronizing data, which might indicate a problem with the link.
- p  
Displays a list of configured Remote Mirror volumes or sets.
- P  
Displays a list of configured Remote Mirror volumes or sets with extra details. (See state descriptions, below.)
- q a *volume*  
Add a disk queue to a set or group. This operation is valid when the set or group is in logging mode.
- q d  
Remove a disk queue from a set or group. This operation is valid when the set or group is in logging mode.
- q r *volume*  
Replace a disk queue for a group or set. The queue is removed from the set or group as in the queue-disable operation and the new disk queue is added as in the queue-add operation. This operation is valid when the set or group is in logging mode.
- i  
Displays a list of configured Remote Mirror volumes or sets in the same format as the *volset-file*.
- R  
Attempt to reset a Remote Mirror set's error condition such as failed bitmaps.
- R b p *bitmap*  
Reconfigure a Remote Mirror set's primary bitmap. This command should be entered on both primary and secondary servers. It is only possible to reconfigure the primary bitmap for one set at a time.
- R b s *bitmap*  
Reconfigure a Remote Mirror set's secondary bitmap. This command should be entered on both primary and secondary servers. It is only possible to reconfigure the secondary bitmap for one set at a time.
- R C *tag*  
Reconfigure the cluster tag, or disk group name, of a Remote Mirror set's local volumes, in those cases where this is not indicated by the pathname. This does not affect the remote volumes. This parameter cannot be used on a system that is not clustered.

**-Rm {sync | async}**

Reconfigure the replication mode of a Remote Mirror set. The sets belonging to a consistency group must be either all synchronous or all asynchronous. It is not possible to mix modes within a group.

**-Rg *group***

Reconfigure the consistency group of a Remote Mirror set. This command should be entered with the same group name on both primary and secondary servers.

To remove a set from a consistency group, specify the null string (“”) when reconfiguring the consistency group.

The following parameters can be issued only from the primary server:

**-m**

Starts a full volume copy from the primary volume to the secondary volume, and concurrently enables Remote Mirror replication of new updates from the primary volume to the secondary volume. Use this parameter when the primary and secondary volumes might be different and no logging information exists to incrementally resynchronize the volumes. See EXIT STATUS.

**-r**

Reverses the direction of the synchronization so the primary volume is synchronized from the secondary volume. Use this parameter with the **-m** or **-u** parameter. **-m -r** starts a full volume copy from the secondary (source) volume to the primary (target) volume but concurrently enables Remote Mirror replication of new updates from the primary (source) volume to the secondary (target) volume, ensuring the volume sets remain synchronized. Use **-m -r** when the primary and secondary volume content might differ and the secondary has the desired contents, yet no logging information exists to incrementally resynchronize the volumes (using **-u**). **-u -r** resynchronizes the primary (target) volume from the secondary (source) volume, using the Remote Mirror scoreboard logs maintained while replication was suspended. It then resumes Remote Mirror replication of new updates from the primary volume to the secondary volume so that the volume sets remain synchronized. Quiesce the workload to the volume sets during the restore/refresh operation. This action ensures that the primary and secondary volumes match before replication of new updates resumes.

**-u**

Updates a Remote Mirror volume set. This parameter resynchronizes a Remote Mirror volume set. Only the blocks logged as changed in the Remote Mirror scoreboards are updated. Enables Remote Mirror replication for the primary volume and also uses the Remote Mirror scoreboard logs to start the resynchronization process so that the corresponding secondary volume matches the primary volume.

States Returned from  
sndradm -P

The following are the states that can be returned from `sndradm -P`.

**volume failed**

An I/O operation to the local data volume has failed

**bitmap failed**

An I/O operation to the local bitmap volume has failed

**disk queue failed**

An I/O operation to disk queue volume has failed

**need sync**

A sync to this volume has been interrupted. It needs to be completed (or restored via Point-in-Time Copy). The direction of the data flow must not be changed until one or the other is done.

**need reverse sync**

A reverse sync to this volume has been interrupted. It needs to be completed (or restored via Point-in-Time Copy). The direction of the data flow must not be changed until one or the other is done.

**logging**

Incoming writes are logged in the bitmap only. Data is not replicated to the remote site. need sync, need reverse sync, and queuing are all substates of logging such that writes are logged in the bitmap, but not replicated. Queuing mode (described below) logs the writes to the bitmap, and queues the request for later replication by the async flushers.

**reverse syncing**

A secondary to primary copy is in progress.

**syncing**

A primary to secondary copy is in progress.

**queuing**

During normal async replication using disk queues, i/o is placed on the disk queue to be replicated by the async flusher threads. In the event of a temporary link failure, the set transitions to queuing mode. The queue is not discarded, as it would be with memory based queues. Instead, data is logged in the bitmap and placed on the queue. When the link comes up, and `s ndradm -u` is issued, (automated by turning autosync on for the set) the flushers restarts. This preserves write ordering through a temporary link outage. If write ordering is not necessary, and only the latest data is needed, the set can be put into logging manually (`s ndradm -l`) and an update sync issued (`s ndradm -u`). This action discards the data on the queue, and fast resyncs using the bitmap. If the queue fills before the link comes back and the update sync is issued, the queue is discarded and the set put into logging mode to avoid application hangs.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Enabling a Remote Mirror Set

The following command enables a Remote Mirror asynchronous set on host `example`, where `example` is the primary host and `example-remote` is the secondary host.

```
example% s ndradm -e example /dev/rdisk/c1t0d0s1 /dev/rdisk/c1t1d0s3 \
example-remote /dev/rdisk/c2t3d0s5 /dev/rdisk/c2t4d0s5 ip async
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Adding a Disk Queue to an Asynchronous Set

The following command adds a disk queue volume to an asynchronous set.

```
example% sndradm -q a /dev/rdisk/c1t2d0s3 \
example-remote:/dev/rdisk/c2t3d0s5
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Removing a Disk Queue from an Asynchronous Set

The following command removes the disk queue volume from a set with a disk queue volume attached to it.

```
example% sndradm -q d example-remote:/dev/rdisk/c2t3d0s5
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Disabling a Remote Mirror Set

The following command disables a Remote Mirror set enabled on host `example`.

```
example% sndradm -d example-remote:/dev/rdisk/c2t3d0s5
```

**Exit Status** 0 Command completed successfully.

>0 An error occurred.

When the `-m` or `-u` option is executed in a script, the exit status following one of these options always returns success, regardless of the current status of the Remote Mirror set.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWrdcr, SUNWrdu
Interface Stability	Evolving

**See Also** [dscfg\(1M\)](#), [sndrd\(1M\)](#), [sndrsyncd\(1M\)](#), [ds.log\(4\)](#), [rdc.cf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [sv\(7D\)](#)

**Name** sndrd – Remote Mirror daemon

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/sndrd [-c *max\_connections*] [-l *listen\_backlog*]

**Description** The sndrd daemon processes client Remote Mirror requests. Only the root user or a user with equivalent privileges can run this daemon. The daemon is automatically invoked in run level 2. sndrd restarts the TCP transport layers.

Administrators wanting to change startup parameters for sndrd should, as root or equivalent, make changes in the /etc/default/sndr file rather than editing the /lib/svc/method/svc-rdcsyncd file. See [sndr\(4\)](#).

**Options** The sndrd daemon supports the following options:

-c *max\_connections*

Sets the maximum number of connections allowed to the server over connection-oriented transports. By default, the number of connections is 16.

-l *listen\_backlog*

Sets connection queue length for the RDC TCP over a connection-oriented transport. The default value is 10 entries.

**Exit Status** 0 Daemon started successfully.

>0 Daemon failed to start.

Error information is reported to syslog at level LOG\_ERR.

**Files** /lib/svc/method/svc-rdcsyncd  
Shell script for starting sndrd.

/lib/svc/method/svc-rdc  
Shell script for stopping sndrd.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWrdcr, SUNWrdcu
Interface Stability	Evolving

**See Also** [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [syslogd\(1M\)](#), [ds.log\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Notes** Do not manually stop the sndrd daemon. If you need to manually stop sndrd perform these steps. This stops both the sndrd and sndrsyncd daemons.

```
svcadm disable svc:/system/nws_rdc
```

```
svcadm disable svc:/system/nws_rdcsyncd
```



Do not manually start or restart the sndrd daemon. If you need to manually start sndrd perform these steps. This starts both the sndrd and sndrsyncd daemons.

```
svcadm enable svc:/system/nws_rdc
```

```
svcadm enable svc:/system/nws_rdcsyncd
```

See [svcadm\(1M\)](#) for additional information.

**Name** sndrsyncd – Availability Suite Remote Mirror update resynchronization daemon

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/sndrsyncd

**Description** The sndrsyncd daemon automates update resynchronization after a network or machine failure and invokes Point-in-Time Copy copies when needed to protect the data volumes being updated during a resynchronization.

The daemon is notified by the kernel when a network link being used by Remote Mirror goes down and invokes the [sndradm\(1M\)](#) command with the -u option to resynchronize all Remote Mirror sets which have autosync switched on and are using the network link. See [sndradm\(1M\)](#) for details on how to configure autosync for a Remote Mirror set.

The daemon is also notified when any Remote Mirror resynchronization starts or completes. The daemon takes Point-in-Time Copy snapshots, if configured in the Availability Suite configuration file. On a secondary server, the daemon checks if a file system is currently mounted on the secondary volume and informs the kernel not to allow the synchronization to start if the file system is currently mounted.

**Exit Status** 0 Daemon started successfully.

>0 Daemon failed to start.

**Files** /lib/svc/method/svc-rdcsyncd  
Shell script for starting sndrsyncd.

/lib/svc/method/svc-rdc  
Shell script for stopping sndrsyncd.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWrdcr, SUNWrdcu
Interface Stability	Evolving

**See Also** [iiadm\(1M\)](#), [sndradm\(1M\)](#), [sndrd\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [ds.log\(4\)](#), [rdc.cf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Notes** Do not manually stop the sndrsyncd daemon. If you need to manually stop sndrsyncd perform these steps. This stops both the sndrd and sndrsyncd daemons.

```
svcadm disable svc:/system/nws_rdc
```

```
svcadm disable svc:/system/nws_rdcsyncd
```

Do not manually start or restart the sndrsyncd daemon. If you need to manually start sndrsyncd perform these steps. This starts both the sndrd and sndrsyncd daemons.

```
svcadm enable svc:/system/nws_rdc
```

```
svcadm enable svc:/system/nws_rdcsyncd
```

See [svcadm\(1M\)](#) for additional information.

**Name** snmpdx – Sun Solstice Enterprise Master Agent

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/snmp/snmpdx [-hy] [-a *filename*] [-c *config-dir*]  
 [-d *debug-level*] [-i *filename*] [-m GROUP -m SPLIT]  
 [-o *filename*] [-p *port*] [-r *filename*]

**Description** The Master Agent, snmpdx, is the main component of Solstice Enterprise Agent (SEA) technology. It runs as a daemon process and listens to User Datagram Protocol (UDP) port 161 for SNMP requests. The Master Agent also opens another port to receive SNMP trap notifications from various subagents. These traps are forwarded to various managers, as determined by the configuration file.

Upon invocation, snmpdx reads its various configuration files and takes appropriate actions by activating subagents, determining the subtree Object Identifier (OID) for various subagents, populating its own Management Information Bases (MIBs), and so forth. The Master Agent invokes subagents, registers subagents, sends requests to subagents, receives responses from subagents, and traps notifications from subagents.

The Master Agent is invoked by the service management facility [smf\(5\)](#) at boot time if `svc:/application/management/snmpdx` is enabled (see NOTES) and contents of the resource configuration file `/etc/snmp/conf/snmpdx.rsrc` are non-trivial.

**Note** – The SMA (Systems Management Agent) is the default SNMP agent in the Solaris operating system. snmpdx is Obsolete and may not be supported in a future release of Solaris.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- a*filename* Specify the full path of the access control file used by the Master Agent. The default access control file is `/etc/snmp/conf/snmpdx.acl`.
- c*config-dir* Specify the full path of the directory containing the Master Agent configuration files. The default directory is `/etc/snmp/conf`.
- d*debug-level* Debug. Levels from 0 to 4 are supported, giving various levels of debug information. The default is 0 which means no debug information is given.
- h Help. Print the command line usage.
- i*filename* Specify the full path of the enterprise-name OID map. This file contains the PID used by the Master Agent for recovery after a crash. It contains tuples of the UNIX process ID, port number, resource name, and agent name. The default file is `/var/snmp/snmpdx.st`.
- m GROUP | -m SPLIT Specify the mode to use for forwarding of SNMP requests.
  - GROUP Multiple variables can be included in each request from the Master Agent to the subagents. This results in, at most, one send-request per agent.

**SPLIT** Each variable in the incoming request results in one send-request to each subagent.

The default is **GROUP**.

- ofilename** Specify the full path of the file containing the tuple (enterprise-name, OID). For example, (Sun Microsystems, 1.3.1.6.1.4.32). The Master Agent uses this file as a base for look-up in the trap-filtering and forwarding process. The default file is `/etc/snmp/conf/enterprises.oid`.
- pport** Specify the port number. The default port number is 161.
- rfilename** Specify the full path of the resource file to be used by the Master Agent. This file stores information about the subagents that the Master Agent invokes and manages. The default resource file is `/etc/snmp/conf/snmpdx.rsrc`.
- y** Set a recovery indicator to invoke the recovery module. The recovery process discovers which subagents in the previous session are still active; those subagents not active are re-spawned by the Master Agent.

<b>Files</b>	<code>/etc/snmp/conf/enterprises.oid</code>	Enterprise-name OID map
	<code>/etc/snmp/conf/snmpdx.acl</code>	Access control file
	<code>/etc/snmp/conf/snmpdx.rsrc</code>	Resource configuration file
	<code>/var/snmp/snmpdx.st</code>	Master Agent status file
	<code>/var/snmp/mib/snmpdx.mib</code>	Master Agent MIB file

**Exit Status** The following error values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- non-zero An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWsasnm
Interface Stability	Obsolete

**See Also** [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

**Notes** The snmpdx service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/application/management/snmpdx
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

**Name** snmpXwbemd – SNMP Adapter Subagent for WBEM

**Synopsis** /usr/sadm/lib/wbem/snmpXwbemd [-d] [-h] [-p *port*]

**Description** The snmpXwbemd daemon is a subagent in the Web-Based Enterprise Management (WBEM) services package.

This daemon maps the Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) requests forwarded by the Solstice Enterprise Agents (SEA) Master Agent [snmpdx\(1M\)](#) into one or more equivalent WBEM Common Information Model (CIM) properties and instances. Further, it remaps the response from the CIM Object Manager into a SNMP response, which it passes back to [snmpdx\(1M\)](#).

A mapping file contains the corresponding Object Identifier (OID), class name, property name, and Abstract Syntax Notation 1 (ASN.1) type for each object. You can also create your own mapping file.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- d Displays all debug information.
- h Displays help by printing the correct command line usage.
- p Specifies the port number to use.

**Operands** The following operand is supported:

*port* Specifies the port number you want to use.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 An Example of a 050SUNWwbcou.map File

This mapping file that Sun Microsystems provides contains definitions of objects, in this format:

```
#
#pragma ident "@(#)050SUNWwbcou.map 1.0 01/04/03 SMI"
#
Copyright (c) 2001 by Sun Microsystems, Inc.
All rights reserved.
#
*** Description of contents ***
#
First non-commented non-blank line contains required Version label.
Remaining non-commented non-blank lines are considered map entries
used as described below:
#
Column 1 - SNMP OID - Uniquely describes an SNMP variable
Column 2 - CIM Class Name - CIM class associated with this variable
Column 3 - CIM Property Name - CIM property that maps to SNMP OID variable
Column 4 - ASN.1 type - SNMP datatype that dictates how data is mapped
```

**EXAMPLE 1** An Example of a 050SUNWwbcou.map File (Continued)

```

to/from SNMP requests. Supported types are: SnmpString, SnmpOid,
SnmpTimeticks, SnmpCounter, SnmpInt, SnmpGauge, SnmpIpAddress,
SnmpOpaque)
Column 5 and greater are ignored
#
Version 1.0

1.3.6.1.2.1.1.1.0 Solaris_ComputerSystem Description SnmpString
1.3.6.1.2.1.1.3.0 Solaris_OperatingSystem LastBootUpTime SnmpTimeticks
1.3.6.1.2.1.1.4.0 Solaris_ComputerSystem PrimaryOwnerContact SnmpString
1.3.6.1.2.1.1.5.0 Solaris_ComputerSystem Name SnmpString

1.3.6.1.2.1.25.1.5.0 Solaris_OperatingSystem NumberOfUsers SnmpGauge
1.3.6.1.2.1.25.1.6.0 Solaris_OperatingSystem NumberOfProcesses SnmpGauge
1.3.6.1.2.1.25.1.7.0 Solaris_OperatingSystem MaxNumberOfProcesses SnmpGauge
1.3.6.1.2.1.25.1.2.0 Solaris_OperatingSystem LocalDateTime SnmpString

```

Each definition of an object in this file contains an OID, its corresponding CIM class name, its corresponding CIM property name, and its corresponding ASN.1 type. Each of these elements is separated by a space character.

**Files** /var/sadm/wbem/snmp/map/050SUNWwbcou.map The SNMP Adapter Subagent for WBEM MIB-2 mapping file that Sun Microsystems provides contains SNMP Management Information Base (MIB) definitions for the CIM instrumentation that SNMP manages.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes.

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWwbcou
CSI	Enabled
Interface Stability	Evolving
MT-Level	Safe



**See Also** [snmpdx\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** snoop – capture and inspect network packets

**Synopsis** snoop [-aqrCDINPSvV] [-t [r | a | d]] [-c *maxcount*]  
[-d *device*] [-i *filename*] [-n *filename*] [-o *filename*]  
[-p *first* [, *last*]] [-s *snaplen*] [-x *offset* [, *length*]]  
[*expression*]

**Description** From a datalink or IP interface, snoop captures packets and displays their contents. If the datalink or IP interface is not specified, snoop will pick a datalink to use, giving priority to datalinks that have been plumbed for IP traffic. snoop uses the [pfmod\(7M\)](#) and [bufmod\(7M\)](#) STREAMS modules to provide efficient capture of packets from the network. Captured packets can be displayed as they are received or saved to a file (which is *RFC 1761*-compliant) for later inspection.

snoop can display packets in a single-line summary form or in verbose multi-line forms. In summary form, with the exception of certain VLAN packets, only the data pertaining to the highest level protocol is displayed. If a packet has a VLAN header and its VLAN ID is non-zero, then snoop will show that the packet is VLAN tagged. For example, an NFS packet will have only NFS information displayed. Except for VLAN information under the condition just described, the underlying RPC, UDP, IP, and Ethernet frame information is suppressed, but can be displayed if either of the verbose options are chosen.

In the absence of a name service, such as LDAP or NIS, snoop displays host names as numeric IP addresses.

snoop requires an interactive interface.

**Options** -C

List the code generated from the filter expression for either the kernel packet filter, or snoop's own filter.

-D

Display number of packets dropped during capture on the summary line.

-N

Create an IP address-to-name file from a capture file. This must be set together with the -i option that names a capture file. The address-to-name file has the same name as the capture file with *.names* appended. This file records the IP address to hostname mapping at the capture site and increases the portability of the capture file. Generate a *.names* file if the capture file is to be analyzed elsewhere. Packets are not displayed when this flag is used.

-I *interface*

Capture IP packets from the network using the IP interface specified by *interface*, for example, *lo0*. The [ifconfig\(1M\)](#) command can be used to list available IP interfaces. The -I and -d options are mutually exclusive.

-P

Capture packets in non-promiscuous mode. Only broadcast, multicast, or packets addressed to the host machine will be seen.

- 
- S  
Display size of the entire link layer frame in bytes on the summary line.
  - V  
Verbose summary mode. This is halfway between summary mode and verbose mode in degree of verbosity. Instead of displaying just the summary line for the highest level protocol in a packet, it displays a summary line for each protocol layer in the packet. For instance, for an NFS packet it will display a line each for the ETHER, IP, UDP, RPC and NFS layers. Verbose summary mode output may be easily piped through `grep` to extract packets of interest. For example, to view only RPC summary lines, enter the following: `example# snoop -i rpc.cap -V | grep RPC`
  - a  
Listen to packets on `/dev/audio` (warning: can be noisy).
  - c *maxcount*  
Quit after capturing *maxcount* packets. Otherwise keep capturing until there is no disk space left or until interrupted with Control-C.
  - d *datalink*  
Capture link-layer packets from the network using the DLPI datalink specified by *datalink*, for example, `bge0` or `net0`. The `dladm(1M) show-link` subcommand can be used to list available datalinks. The `-d` and `-I` options are mutually exclusive.
  - i *filename*  
Display packets previously captured in *filename*. Without this option, `snoop` reads packets from the network interface. If a *filename*.`names` file is present, it is automatically loaded into the `snoop` IP address-to-name mapping table (See `-N` flag).
  - n *filename*  
Use *filename* as an IP address-to-name mapping table. This file must have the same format as the `/etc/hosts` file (IP address followed by the hostname).
  - o *filename*  
Save captured packets in *filename* as they are captured. (This *filename* is referred to as the “capture file”.) The format of the capture file is RFC 1761-compliant. During packet capture, a count of the number of packets saved in the file is displayed. If you wish just to count packets without saving to a file, name the file `/dev/null`.
  - p *first* [ , *last* ]  
Select one or more packets to be displayed from a capture file. The *first* packet in the file is packet number 1.
  - q  
When capturing network packets into a file, do not display the packet count. This can improve packet capturing performance.

-r

Do not resolve the IP address to the symbolic name. This prevents snoop from generating network traffic while capturing and displaying packets. However, if the -n option is used, and an address is found in the mapping file, its corresponding name will be used.

-s *snaplen*

Truncate each packet after *snaplen* bytes. Usually the whole packet is captured. This option is useful if only certain packet header information is required. The packet truncation is done within the kernel giving better utilization of the streams packet buffer. This means less chance of dropped packets due to buffer overflow during periods of high traffic. It also saves disk space when capturing large traces to a capture file. To capture only IP headers (no options) use a *snaplen* of 34. For UDP use 42, and for TCP use 54. You can capture RPC headers with a *snaplen* of 80 bytes. NFS headers can be captured in 120 bytes.

-t [ r | a | d ]

Time-stamp presentation. Time-stamps are accurate to within 4 microseconds. The default is for times to be presented in d (delta) format (the time since receiving the previous packet). Option a (absolute) gives wall-clock time. Option r (relative) gives time relative to the first packet displayed. This can be used with the -p option to display time relative to any selected packet.

-v

Verbose mode. Print packet headers in lots of detail. This display consumes many lines per packet and should be used only on selected packets.

-x*offset* [ , *length*]

Display packet data in hexadecimal and ASCII format. The *offset* and *length* values select a portion of the packet to be displayed. To display the whole packet, use an *offset* of 0. If a *length* value is not provided, the rest of the packet is displayed.

### Operands *expression*

Select packets either from the network or from a capture file. Only packets for which the expression is true will be selected. If no expression is provided it is assumed to be true.

Given a filter expression, snoop generates code for either the kernel packet filter or for its own internal filter. If capturing packets with the network interface, code for the kernel packet filter is generated. This filter is implemented as a streams module, upstream of the buffer module. The buffer module accumulates packets until it becomes full and passes the packets on to snoop. The kernel packet filter is very efficient, since it rejects unwanted packets in the kernel before they reach the packet buffer or snoop. The kernel packet filter has some limitations in its implementation; it is possible to construct filter expressions that it cannot handle. In this event, snoop tries to split the filter and do as much filtering in the kernel as possible. The remaining filtering is done by the packet filter for snoop. The -C flag can be used to view generated code for either the packet filter for the kernel or the packet filter for snoop. If packets are read from a capture file using the -i option, only the packet filter for snoop is used.

A filter *expression* consists of a series of one or more boolean primitives that may be combined with boolean operators (AND, OR, and NOT). Normal precedence rules for boolean operators apply. Order of evaluation of these operators may be controlled with parentheses. Since parentheses and other filter expression characters are known to the shell, it is often necessary to enclose the filter expression in quotes. Refer to [Example 2](#) for information about setting up more efficient filters.

The primitives are:

*host hostname*

True if the source or destination address is that of *hostname*. The *hostname* argument may be a literal address. The keyword *host* may be omitted if the name does not conflict with the name of another expression primitive. For example, *pinky* selects packets transmitted to or received from the host *pinky*, whereas *pinky and dinky* selects packets exchanged between hosts *pinky* AND *dinky*.

The type of address used depends on the primitive which precedes the *host* primitive. The possible qualifiers are *inet*, *inet6*, *ether*, or *none*. These three primitives are discussed below. Having none of the primitives present is equivalent to “*inet host hostname* or *inet6 host hostname*”. In other words, *snoop* tries to filter on all IP addresses associated with *hostname*.

*inet* or *inet6*

A qualifier that modifies the *host* primitive that follows. If it is *inet*, then *snoop* tries to filter on all IPv4 addresses returned from a name lookup. If it is *inet6*, *snoop* tries to filter on all IPv6 addresses returned from a name lookup.

*ipaddr*, *atalkaddr*, or *etheraddr*

Literal addresses, IP dotted, AppleTalk dotted, and Ethernet colon are recognized. For example,

- “172.16.40.13” matches all packets with that IP
- “2::9255:a00:20ff:fe73:6e35” matches all packets with that IPv6 address as source or destination;
- “65281.13” matches all packets with that AppleTalk address;
- “8:0:20:f:b1:51” matches all packets with the Ethernet address as source or destination.

An Ethernet address beginning with a letter is interpreted as a hostname. To avoid this, prepend a zero when specifying the address. For example, if the Ethernet address is *aa:0:45:23:52:44*, then specify it by add a leading zero to make it *0aa:0:45:23:52:44*.

*from* or *src*

A qualifier that modifies the following *host*, *net*, *ipaddr*, *atalkaddr*, *etheraddr*, *port* or *rpc* primitive to match just the source address, port, or RPC reply.

**to or dst**

A qualifier that modifies the following *host*, *net*, *ipaddr*, *atalkaddr*, *etheraddr*, *port* or *rpc* primitive to match just the destination address, *port*, or *RPC* call.

**ether**

A qualifier that modifies the following *host* primitive to resolve a name to an Ethernet address. Normally, IP address matching is performed. This option is not supported on media such as IPoIB (IP over InfiniBand).

**ethertype *number***

True if the Ethernet type field has value *number*. If *number* is not 0x8100 (VLAN) and the packet is VLAN tagged, then the expression will match the encapsulated Ethernet type.

**ip, ip6, arp, rarp, pppoe, pppoes**

True if the packet is of the appropriate ethertype.

**vlan**

True if the packet has ethertype VLAN and the VLAN ID is not zero.

**vlan-id *id***

True for packets of ethertype VLAN with the *id id*.

**pppoe**

True if the ethertype of the packet is either pppoe or pppoes.

**broadcast**

True if the packet is a broadcast packet. Equivalent to `ether[2:4] = 0xffffffff` for Ethernet. This option is not supported on media such as IPoIB (IP over InfiniBand).

**multicast**

True if the packet is a multicast packet. Equivalent to “`ether[0] & 1 = 1`” on Ethernet. This option is not supported on media such as IPoIB (IP over InfiniBand).

**bootp, dhcp**

True if the packet is an unfragmented IPv4 UDP packet with either a source port of BOOTPS (67) and a destination port of BOOTPC (68), or a source port of BOOTPC (68) and a destination of BOOTPS (67).

**dhcp6**

True if the packet is an unfragmented IPv6 UDP packet with either a source port of DHCPV6-SERVER (547) and a destination port of DHCPV6-CLIENT (546), or a source port of DHCPV6-CLIENT (546) and a destination of DHCPV6-SERVER (547).

**apple**

True if the packet is an Apple Ethertalk packet. Equivalent to “`ethertype 0x809b` or `ethertype 0x80f3`”.

**decnet**

True if the packet is a DECNET packet.

greater *length*

True if the packet is longer than *length*.

less *length*

True if the packet is shorter than *length*.

udp, tcp, icmp, icmp6, ah, esp

True if the IP or IPv6 protocol is of the appropriate type.

net *net*

True if either the IP source or destination address has a network number of *net*. The from or to qualifier may be used to select packets for which the network number occurs only in the source or destination address.

port *port*

True if either the source or destination port is *port*. The *port* may be either a port number or name from `/etc/services`. The tcp or udp primitives may be used to select TCP or UDP ports only. The from or to qualifier may be used to select packets for which the *port* occurs only as the source or destination.

rpc *prog* [ , *vers* [ , *proc* ] ]

True if the packet is an RPC call or reply packet for the protocol identified by *prog*. The *prog* may be either the name of an RPC protocol from `/etc/rpc` or a program number. The *vers* and *proc* may be used to further qualify the program *version* and *procedure* number, for example, `rpc nfs, 2, 0` selects all calls and replies for the NFS null procedure. The to or from qualifier may be used to select either call or reply packets only.

zone *zoneid*

True if *zoneid* matches either the source or destination *zoneid* of a packet received on an ipnet device.

ldap

True if the packet is an LDAP packet on port 389.

gateway *host*

True if the packet used *host* as a gateway, that is, the Ethernet source or destination address was for *host* but not the IP address. Equivalent to “ether host *host* and not host *host*”.

nofrag

True if the packet is unfragmented or is the first in a series of IP fragments. Equivalent to `ip[6:2] & 0x1fff = 0`.

*expr* *relop* *expr*

True if the relation holds, where *relop* is one of `>`, `<`, `>=`, `<=`, `=`, `!=`, and *expr* is an arithmetic expression composed of numbers, packet field selectors, the length primitive, and arithmetic operators `+`, `-`, `*`, `&`, `|`, `^`, and `%`. The arithmetic operators within *expr* are evaluated before the relational operator and normal precedence rules

apply between the arithmetic operators, such as multiplication before addition. Parentheses may be used to control the order of evaluation. To use the value of a field in the packet use the following syntax:

*base*[*expr* [: *size* ] ]

where *expr* evaluates the value of an offset into the packet from a *base* offset which may be *ether*, *ip*, *ip6*, *udp*, *tcp*, or *icmp*. The *size* value specifies the size of the field. If not given, 1 is assumed. Other legal values are 2 and 4. For example,

`ether[0] & 1 = 1`

is equivalent to `multicast`

`ether[2:4] = 0xffffffff`

is equivalent to `broadcast`.

`ip[ip[0] & 0xf * 4 : 2] = 2049`

is equivalent to `udp[0:2] = 2049`

`ip[0] & 0xf > 5`

selects IP packets with options.

`ip[6:2] & 0x1fff = 0`

eliminates IP fragments.

`udp and ip[6:2]&0x1fff = 0 and udp[6:2] != 0`

finds all packets with UDP checksums.

The `length` primitive may be used to obtain the length of the packet. For instance “`length > 60`” is equivalent to “greater 60”, and “`ether[length - 1]`” obtains the value of the last byte in a packet.

**and**

Perform a logical AND operation between two boolean values. The AND operation is implied by the juxtaposition of two boolean expressions, for example “`dinky pinky`” is the same as “`dinky AND pinky`”.

**or or ,**

Perform a logical OR operation between two boolean values. A comma may be used instead, for example, “`dinky, pinky`” is the same as “`dinky OR pinky`”.

**not or !**

Perform a logical NOT operation on the following boolean value. This operator is evaluated before AND or OR.

**slp**

True if the packet is an SLP packet.



sctp  
True if the packet is an SCTP packet.

ospf  
True if the packet is an OSPF packet.

### Examples EXAMPLE 1 Using the snoop Command

Capture all packets and display them as they are received:

```
example# snoop
```

Capture packets with host funky as either the source or destination and display them as they are received:

```
example# snoop funky
```

Capture packets between funky and pinky and save them to a file. Then inspect the packets using times (in seconds) relative to the first captured packet:

```
example# snoop -o cap funky pinky
```

```
example# snoop -i cap -t r | more
```

To look at selected packets in another capture file:

```
example# snoop -i pkts -p 99,108
```

```
99 0.0027 boutique -> sunroof NFS C GETATTR FH=8E6
100 0.0046 sunroof -> boutique NFS R GETATTR OK
101 0.0080 boutique -> sunroof NFS C RENAME FH=8E6C MTra00192 to .nfs08
102 0.0102 marmot -> viper NFS C LOOKUP FH=561E screen.r.13.i386
103 0.0072 viper -> marmot NFS R LOOKUP No such file or directory
104 0.0085 bugbomb -> sunroof RLOGIN C PORT=1023 h
105 0.0005 kandinsky -> sparky RSTAT C Get Statistics
106 0.0004 beebledbrox -> sunroof NFS C GETATTR FH=0307
107 0.0021 sparky -> kandinsky RSTAT R
108 0.0073 office -> jeremiah NFS C READ FH=2584 at 40960 for 8192
```

To look at packet 101 in more detail:

```
example# snoop -i pkts -v -p101
```

```
ETHER: ----- Ether Header -----
```

```
ETHER:
```

```
ETHER: Packet 101 arrived at 16:09:53.59
```

```
ETHER: Packet size = 210 bytes
```

```
ETHER: Destination = 8:0:20:1:3d:94, Sun
```

```
ETHER: Source = 8:0:69:1:5f:e, Silicon Graphics
```

```
ETHER: Ethertype = 0800 (IP)
```

```
ETHER:
```

```
IP: ----- IP Header -----
```

```
IP:
```

```
IP: Version = 4, header length = 20 bytes
```

## EXAMPLE 1 Using the snoop Command (Continued)

```
IP: Type of service = 00
IP: ..0. = routine
IP: ...0 = normal delay
IP: 0... = normal throughput
IP: 0.. = normal reliability
IP: Total length = 196 bytes
IP: Identification 19846
IP: Flags = 0X
IP: .0.. = may fragment
IP: ..0. = more fragments
IP: Fragment offset = 0 bytes
IP: Time to live = 255 seconds/hops
IP: Protocol = 17 (UDP)
IP: Header checksum = 18DC
IP: Source address = 172.16.40.222, boutique
IP: Destination address = 172.16.40.200, sunroof
IP:
UDP: ----- UDP Header -----
UDP:
UDP: Source port = 1023
UDP: Destination port = 2049 (Sun RPC)
UDP: Length = 176
UDP: Checksum = 0
UDP:
RPC: ----- SUN RPC Header -----
RPC:
RPC: Transaction id = 665905
RPC: Type = 0 (Call)
RPC: RPC version = 2
RPC: Program = 100003 (NFS), version = 2, procedure = 1
RPC: Credentials: Flavor = 1 (Unix), len = 32 bytes
RPC: Time = 06-Mar-90 07:26:58
RPC: Hostname = boutique
RPC: Uid = 0, Gid = 1
RPC: Groups = 1
RPC: Verifier : Flavor = 0 (None), len = 0 bytes
RPC:
NFS: ----- SUN NFS -----
NFS:
NFS: Proc = 11 (Rename)
NFS: File handle = 000016430000000100080000305A1C47
NFS: 597A0000000800002046314AFC450000
NFS: File name = MTra00192
NFS: File handle = 000016430000000100080000305A1C47
NFS: 597A0000000800002046314AFC450000
NFS: File name = .nfs08
NFS:
```

**EXAMPLE 1** Using the snoop Command *(Continued)*

To view just the NFS packets between sunroof and boutique:

```
example# snoop -i pkts rpc nfs and sunroof and boutique
1 0.0000 boutique -> sunroof NFS C GETATTR FH=8E6C
2 0.0046 sunroof -> boutique NFS R GETATTR OK
3 0.0080 boutique -> sunroof NFS C RENAME FH=8E6C MTra00192 to .nfs08
```

To save these packets to a new capture file:

```
example# snoop -i pkts -o pkts.nfs rpc nfs sunroof boutique
```

To view encapsulated packets, there will be an indicator of encapsulation:

```
example# snoop ip-in-ip
sunroof -> boutique ICMP Echo request (1 encap)
```

If -V is used on an encapsulated packet:

```
example# snoop -V ip-in-ip
sunroof -> boutique ETHER Type=0800 (IP), size = 118 bytes
sunroof -> boutique IP D=172.16.40.222 S=172.16.40.200 LEN=104, ID=27497
sunroof -> boutique IP D=10.1.1.2 S=10.1.1.1 LEN=84, ID=27497
sunroof -> boutique ICMP Echo request
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Setting Up A More Efficient Filter

To set up a more efficient filter, the following filters should be used toward the end of the expression, so that the first part of the expression can be set up in the kernel: greater, less, port, rpc, nofrag, and relop. The presence of OR makes it difficult to split the filtering when using these primitives that cannot be set in the kernel. Instead, use parentheses to enforce the primitives that should be OR'd.

To capture packets between funky and pinky of type tcp or udp on port 80:

```
example# snoop funky and pinky and port 80 and tcp or udp
```

Since the primitive port cannot be handled by the kernel filter, and there is also an OR in the expression, a more efficient way to filter is to move the OR to the end of the expression and to use parentheses to enforce the OR between tcp and udp:

```
example# snoop funky and pinky and (tcp or udp) and port 80
```

**Exit Status** 0 Successful completion.

1 An error occurred.

<b>Files</b>	/dev/audio	Symbolic link to the system's primary audio device.
	/dev/null	The null file.
	/etc/hosts	Host name database.
	/etc/rpc	RPC program number data base.
	/etc/services	Internet services and aliases.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWrcmdc

**See Also** [dladm\(1M\)](#), [ifconfig\(1M\)](#), [netstat\(1M\)](#), [hosts\(4\)](#), [rpc\(4\)](#), [services\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [audio\(7I\)](#), [ipnet\(7D\)](#), [bufmod\(7M\)](#), [dlpi\(7P\)](#), [pfmod\(7M\)](#)

Callaghan, B. and Gilligan, R. *RFC 1761, Snoop Version 2 Packet Capture File Format*. Network Working Group. February 1995.

**Warnings** The processing overhead is much higher for real-time packet interpretation. Consequently, the packet drop count may be higher. For more reliable capture, output raw packets to a file using the `-o` option and analyze the packets offline.

Unfiltered packet capture imposes a heavy processing load on the host computer, particularly if the captured packets are interpreted real-time. This processing load further increases if verbose options are used. Since heavy use of `snoop` may deny computing resources to other processes, it should not be used on production servers. Heavy use of `snoop` should be restricted to a dedicated computer.

`snoop` does not reassemble IP fragments. Interpretation of higher level protocol halts at the end of the first IP fragment.

`snoop` may generate extra packets as a side-effect of its use. For example it may use a network name service (NIS) to convert IP addresses to host names for display. Capturing into a file for later display can be used to postpone the address-to-name mapping until after the capture session is complete. Capturing into an NFS-mounted file may also generate extra packets.

Setting the `snaplen` (`-s` option) to small values may remove header information that is needed to interpret higher level protocols. The exact cutoff value depends on the network and protocols being used. For NFS Version 2 traffic using UDP on 10 Mb/s Ethernet, do not set `snaplen` less than 150 bytes. For NFS Version 3 traffic using TCP on 100 Mb/s Ethernet, `snaplen` should be 250 bytes or more.

`snoop` requires information from an RPC request to fully interpret an RPC reply. If an RPC reply in a capture file or packet range does not have a request preceding it, then only the RPC reply header will be displayed.

**Name** soconfig – configure transport providers for use by sockets

**Synopsis** /sbin/soconfig -f *file*  
 /sbin/soconfig *family type protocol [path]*

**Description** The soconfig utility configures the transport provider driver for use with sockets. It specifies how the family, type, and protocol parameters in the `socket(3SOCKET)` call are mapped to the name of a transport provider such as `/dev/tcp`. This utility can be used to add an additional mapping or remove a previous mapping.

The `init(1M)` utility uses soconfig with the `sock2path(4)` file during the booting sequence.

**Options** The following options are supported:

-f *file* Set up the soconfig configuration for each driver according to the information stored in *file*. A soconfig file consists of lines of at least the first three fields listed below, separated by spaces:

*family type protocol path*

These fields are described in the OPERANDS section below.

An example of *file* can be found in the EXAMPLES section below.

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

<i>family</i>	The protocol family as listed in the <code>/usr/include/sys/socket.h</code> file, expressed as an integer.
<i>type</i>	The socket type as listed in the <code>/usr/include/sys/socket.h</code> file, expressed as an integer.
<i>protocol</i>	The protocol number as specified in the family-specific <code>include</code> file, expressed as an integer. For example, for <code>AF_INET</code> this number is specified in <code>/usr/include/netinet/in.h</code> . An unspecified protocol number is denoted with the value zero.
<i>module   path</i>	The module name or path name of a device that corresponds to the transport provider, such as <code>tcp</code> or <code>/dev/tcp</code> . Modules must reside in <code>kernel/socketmod</code> . A device name must begin with <code>/dev</code> . If this parameter is specified, the configuration will be added for the specified family, type, and protocol. If this parameter is not specified, the configuration will be removed.

**Examples** EXAMPLE1 Using soconfig

The following example sets up a module for family `AF_INET` and type `SOCK_STREAM`:

```
example# soconfig 2 2 0 tcp
```

EXAMPLE 1 Using soconfig (Continued)

The following example sets up /dev/tcp for family AF\_INET and type SOCK\_STREAM:

```
example# soconfig 2 2 0 /dev/tcp
```

The following is a sample file used with the -f option. Comment lines begin with a hash mark (#):

```
Family Type Protocol Module | Path
 2 2 0 tcp
 2 2 6 tcp

 2 1 0 udp
 2 1 17 udp

 1 2 0 /dev/ticotsord
 1 1 0 /dev/ticlts

 2 4 0 icmp
```

**Files** /etc/sock2path File containing mappings from sockets to transport providers.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsr

**See Also** [init\(1M\)](#), [sock2path\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

*Network Interface Guide*

**Name** soladdapp – add an application to the Solstice application registry

**Synopsis** /usr/snadm/bin/soladdapp [-r *registry*] -n *name* -i *icon* -e *executable*  
[*args*]

**Description** soladdapp adds an application to the Solstice application registry. After it is added, the application is displayed in the Solstice Launcher main window (see [solstice\(1M\)](#)).

**Options**

- r *registry* Define the full path name of the Solstice registry file.
- n *name* Define the name of the tool to be registered.
- i *icon* Define the full path name of the tool icon.
- e *executable* Define the full path name of the tool.
- args* Specify any arguments to use with the tool.

When executed without options, soladdapp uses /opt/SUNWadm/etc/.solstice\_registry (the default registry path).

**Return Values**

- 0 on success
- 1 on failure
- 2 if the registry is locked
- 3 if the entry is a duplicate.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 A sample display of the soladdapp command.

The following adds an application called Disk Manager to the Solstice application registry for display in the Solstice Launcher main window.

```
soladdapp -r /opt/SUNWadm/etc/.solstice_registry -n "Disk Manager"
-i /opt/SUNWdsk/etc/diskmgr.xpm -e /opt/SUNWdsk/bin/diskmgr
```

**Files** /opt/SUNWadm/etc/.solstice\_registry The default registry path.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWsadml

**See Also** [solde1app\(1M\)](#), [solstice\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Notes** Globally registered applications are used by local and remote users sharing the software in a particular /opt directory. They can be added only using soladdapp.

**Name** solde1app – remove an application from the Solstice application registry

**Synopsis** /usr/snadm/bin/solde1app [-r *registry*] -n *name*

**Description** solde1app removes an application from the Solstice application registry. After removal, the application is no longer displayed in the Solstice Launcher main window (see [solstice\(1M\)](#)).

**Options** -r *registry* Define the full path name of the Solstice registry file.  
-n *name* Define the name of the tool to be removed.

When executed without options, solde1app uses /opt/SUNWadm/etc/.solstice\_registry (the default registry path).

**Return Values**

- 0 on success
- 1 on failure
- 2 if the registry is locked
- 3 if *name* is not found in the registry
- 4 if the named registry or default registry is not found

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 A sample display of the solde1app command.

The following removes an application called Disk Manager from the Solstice application registry and the Solstice Launcher main window.

```
solde1app -r /opt/SUNWadm/etc/.solstice_registry -n "Disk Manager"
```

**Files** /opt/SUNWadm/etc/.solstice\_registry The default registry file.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWsadml

**See Also** [soladdapp\(1M\)](#), [solstice\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Notes** Globally registered applications are used by local and remote users sharing the software in a particular /opt directory. They can be removed only using solde1app.



**Name** solstice – access system administration tools with a graphical user interface

**Synopsis** /bin/solstice

**Description** solstice used on a system presents the Solstice Launcher, a graphical user interface that provides access to the Solstice AdminSuite product family of system administration tools. The tools that appear in the launcher depend on what Solstice products you installed on your system.

Help is available by using the Help button.

**Usage** The Solstice Launcher allows you to do the following tasks:

Launch applications	Use the Solstice Launcher to launch system administration tools.
Register applications	Use the Solstice Launcher to add and register applications locally with the launcher.
Remove applications	Use the Solstice Launcher to remove locally registered applications.
Customize application properties	Use the Solstice Launcher to show, hide, or remove applications in the launcher, reorder the icons, change the launcher window width, modify applications properties, and add applications.

**Files** /\$HOME/.solstice\_registry Local registry information.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWsadml

**See Also** [soladdapp\(1M\)](#), [soldeapp\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Notes** The Solstice Launcher adds or removes local applications that are private to the user (not local to the system) only. The properties of globally registered applications that are used by local and remote users sharing the software from a particular /opt directory cannot be modified from the Solstice Launcher. To register global applications for use by local and remote users, use the [soladdapp\(1M\)](#) command. To remove globally registered applications, use the [soldeapp\(1M\)](#) command.

**Name** sppptun – PPP tunneling driver utility

**Synopsis** sppptun plumb

sppptun plumb [-s *sap*] *protocol device*

sppptun unplumb *interface*

sppptun query

**Description** The sppptun utility is used to configure and query the Solaris PPP tunneling device driver, /dev/sppptun. Currently, only PPP over Ethernet (PPPoE) is supported, so the plumb and unplumb arguments are used to specify Ethernet interfaces that are to be used for PPPoE, and the query option lists the plumbed interfaces.

The use of sppptun to add interfaces is similar to the use of [ifconfig\(1M\)](#) to add interfaces to IP. The plumbing is done once for each interface, preferably at system start-up time, and is not normally manipulated on a running system. If multiple instances of PPP are run over a single interface, they share the plumbing to that interface. Plumbing for each session is not required (and not possible for PPPoE).

The proper way to plumb interfaces for PPPoE is to list the interfaces, one per line, in the /etc/ppp/pppoe.if file. If alternate Ethertype (SAP) values are necessary, then include the PPPoE Session and Discovery Stage values as hexadecimal on the same line. The line format is:

```
interface [session [discovery]]
```

The defaults are the Ethernets specified in RFC 2516, and most users should not need to set these values. See the examples for one possible use.

**Usage** sppptun plumb

When specified with no additional arguments, the plumb argument lists the protocols that are supported by the utility. These are the strings that are used as the *protocol* argument below.

sppptun plumb [-s *sap*] *protocol device*

This plumbs a new interface into the driver. The *protocol* parameter is pppoe for the PPP-carrying “Session Stage” connection or pppoeD for the PPPoE “Discovery Stage” connection. Both connections must be present for each Ethernet interface that is to be used for PPPoE. The *device* parameter is the path name of the Ethernet interface to use (use [ifconfig\(1M\)](#) to list available devices). If the path begins with /dev/, then this portion may be omitted.

The -s *sap* option can be specified to use an alternate Ethertype (SAP) for the selected protocol. The *sap* value must be given in

```
sppptun unplumb interface
```

hexadecimal. Some access servers use Ethertypes for PPPoE different from those in RFC 2516. The defaults are 8864 for pppoe and 8863 for pppoe.

This removes an existing interface from the driver and terminates any PPP sessions that were using the interface. The *interface* parameter is the name of the interface as reported when the interface was plumbed.

```
sppptun query
```

Displays the canonical names of all interfaces plumbed into the /dev/sppptun device driver.

### Examples

**EXAMPLE 1** Setting up to Use PPPoE on hme0

Plumb the hme0 interface.

```
sppptun plumb pppoe hme0
hme0:pppoe
sppptun plumb pppoe hme0
hme0:pppoe
```

Remove the hme0 interface.

```
sppptun unplumb hme0:pppoe
sppptun unplumb hme0:pppoe
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Script to Remove All Plumbed Interfaces

```
#!/bin/sh
for intf in `sppptun query`
do
 sppptun unplumb $intf
done
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Interoperating with 3COM HomeConnect Dual Link ADSL

```
dladm show-link
LINK CLASS MTU STATE OVER
nge0 phys 1500 up --
echo nge0 3c13 3c12 > /etc/ppp/pppoe.if
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 One or more errors occurred.

**Files** /etc/ppp/pppoe.if list of Ethernet interfaces to be plumbed at boot time  
/usr/sbin/sppptun executable command  
/dev/sppptun Solaris PPP tunneling device driver

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWpppdt

**See Also** [pppd\(1M\)](#), [pppoc\(1M\)](#), [pppoed\(1M\)](#), [sppptun\(7M\)](#)

*RFC 2516, Method for Transmitting PPP Over Ethernet (PPPoE)*, Mamakos et al, February 1999

**Name** spray – spray packets

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/spray [-c *count*] [-d *delay*] [-l *length*]  
[-t *nettype*] *host*

**Description** spray sends a one-way stream of packets to *host* using RPC, and reports how many were received, as well as the transfer rate. The *host* argument can be either a name or an Internet address.

spray is not useful as a networking benchmark, as it uses unreliable connectionless transports, UDP for example. spray can report a large number of packets dropped when the drops were caused by spray sending packets faster than they can be buffered locally, that is, before the packets get to the network medium.

- Options**
- c *count* Specify how many packets to send. The default value of *count* is the number of packets required to make the total stream size 100000 bytes.
  - d *delay* Specify how many microseconds to pause between sending each packet. The default is 0.
  - l *length* The *length* parameter is the numbers of bytes in the Ethernet packet that holds the RPC call message. Since the data is encoded using XDR, and XDR only deals with 32 bit quantities, not all values of *length* are possible, and spray rounds up to the nearest possible value. When *length* is greater than 1514, then the RPC call can no longer be encapsulated in one Ethernet packet, so the *length* field no longer has a simple correspondence to Ethernet packet size. The default value of *length* is 86 bytes, the size of the RPC and UDP headers.
  - t *nettype* Specify class of transports. Defaults to netpath. See [rpc\(3NSL\)](#) for a description of supported classes.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWrcmdc

**See Also** [rpc\(3NSL\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** sshd – secure shell daemon

**Synopsis** sshd [-deiqtD46] [-b *bits*] [-f *config\_file*]  
[-g *login\_grace\_time*] [-h *host\_key\_file*]  
[-k *key\_gen\_time*] [-p *port*] [-v *client\_protocol\_id*]

**Description** The sshd (Secure Shell daemon) is the daemon program for [ssh\(1\)](#). Together these programs replace `rlogin` and `rsh`, and provide secure encrypted communications between two untrusted hosts over an insecure network. The programs are intended to be as easy to install and use as possible.

sshd is the daemon that listens for connections from clients. It forks a new daemon for each incoming connection. The forked daemons handle key exchange, encryption, authentication, command execution, and data exchange.

This implementation of sshd supports both SSH protocol versions 1 and 2 simultaneously. Because of security weaknesses in the v1 protocol, sites should run only v2, if possible. In the default configuration, only protocol v2 is enabled for the server. To enable v1 and v2 simultaneously, see the instructions in [sshd\\_config\(4\)](#).

Support for v1 is provided to help sites with existing ssh v1 clients and servers to transition to v2. v1 might not be supported in a future release.

SSH Protocol Version 1 Each host has a host-specific RSA key (normally 1024 bits) used to identify the host. Additionally, when the daemon starts, it generates a server RSA key (normally 768 bits). This key is normally regenerated every hour if it has been used, and is never stored on disk.

Whenever a client connects the daemon responds with its public host and server keys. The client compares the RSA host key against its own database to verify that it has not changed. The client then generates a 256-bit random number. It encrypts this random number using both the host key and the server key, and sends the encrypted number to the server. Both sides then use this random number as a session key which is used to encrypt all further communications in the session. The rest of the session is encrypted using a conventional cipher, currently Blowfish or 3DES, with 3DES being used by default. The client selects the encryption algorithm to use from those offered by the server.

Next, the server and the client enter an authentication dialog. The client tries to authenticate itself using `rhosts` authentication, `rhosts` authentication combined with RSA host authentication, RSA challenge-response authentication, or password-based authentication.

Rhosts authentication is normally disabled because it is fundamentally insecure, but can be enabled in the server configuration file if desired. System security is not improved unless [rshd\(1M\)](#), [rlogind\(1M\)](#), [rexecd\(1M\)](#), and [rexid\(1M\)](#) are disabled (thus completely disabling [rlogin\(1\)](#) and [rsh\(1\)](#) into the machine).

**SSH Protocol Version 2** Version 2 works similarly to version 1: Each host has a host-specific DSA/RSA key. However, when the daemon starts, it does not generate a server key. Forward security is provided through a Diffie-Hellman key agreement. This key agreement results in a shared session key. The rest of the session is encrypted using a symmetric cipher, currently 128-bit AES, Blowfish, 3DES, or AES. The client selects the encryption algorithm to use from those offered by the server. Additionally, session integrity is provided through a cryptographic message authentication code (hmac - sha1 or hmac - md5).

Protocol version 2 provides a public key based user authentication method (PubKeyAuthentication) GSS-API based user authentication, conventional password authentication, and a generic prompt/reply protocol for password-based authentication.

**Command Execution and Data Forwarding** If the client successfully authenticates itself, a dialog for preparing the session is entered. At this time the client can request things like allocating a pseudo-tty, forwarding X11 connections, forwarding TCP/IP connections, or forwarding the authentication agent connection over the secure channel.

Finally, the client either requests a shell or execution of a command. The sides then enter session mode. In this mode, either side may send data at any time, and such data is forwarded to/from the shell or command on the server side, and the user terminal on the client side.

When the user program terminates and all forwarded X11 and other connections have been closed, the server sends command exit status to the client, and both sides exit.

sshd can be configured using command-line options or the configuration file `/etc/ssh/ssh_config`, described in [ssh\\_config\(4\)](#). Command-line options override values specified in the configuration file.

sshd rereads its configuration file when it receives a hangup signal, SIGHUP, by executing itself with the name it was started as, that is, `/usr/lib/ssh/sshd`.

**Host Access Control** The sshd daemon uses TCP Wrappers to restrict access to hosts. It uses the service name of sshd for `hosts_access()`. For more information on TCP Wrappers see [tcpd\(1M\)](#) and [hosts\\_access\(3\)](#) man pages, which are part of the `SUNWs fman` package (they are not SunOS man pages). TCP wrappers binaries, including `libwrap`, are in `SUNWtcpd`, a required package for `SUNWsshdu`, the package containing sshd.

**Options** The options for sshd are as follows:

**-b** *bits*

Specifies the number of bits in the server key (the default is 768).

**-d**

Debug mode. The server sends verbose debug output to the system log, and does not put itself in the background. The server also will not fork and will only process one connection. This option is only intended for debugging for the server. Multiple `-d` options increase the debugging level. Maximum is 3.

- e  
When this option is specified, `sshd` will send the output to standard error instead of to the system log.
- f *configuration\_file*  
Specifies the name of the configuration file. The default is `/etc/ssh/sshd_config`. `sshd` refuses to start if there is no configuration file.
- g *login\_grace\_time*  
Gives the grace time for clients to authenticate themselves (the default is 300 seconds). If the client fails to authenticate the user within this number of seconds, the server disconnects and exits. A value of zero indicates no limit.
- h *host\_key\_file*  
Specifies a file from which a host key is read. This option must be given if `sshd` is not run as root (as the normal host key files are normally not readable by anyone but root). The default is `/etc/ssh/ssh_host_key` for protocol version 1, and `/etc/ssh/ssh_host_rsa_key` and `/etc/ssh/ssh_host_dsa_key` for protocol version 2. It is possible to have multiple host key files for the different protocol versions and host key algorithms.
- i  
Specifies that `sshd` is being run from `inetd`. `sshd` is normally not run from `inetd` because it needs to generate the server key before it can respond to the client, and this may take tens of seconds. Clients would have to wait too long if the key was regenerated every time. However, with small key sizes (for example, 512) using `sshd` from `inetd` may be reasonable.
- k *key\_gen\_time*  
(SSHv1-specific) Specifies how often the server key is regenerated (the default is 3600 seconds, or one hour). The motivation for regenerating the key fairly often is that the key is not stored anywhere, and after about an hour, it becomes impossible to recover the key for decrypting intercepted communications even if the machine is cracked into or physically seized. A value of zero indicates that the key will never be regenerated.
- o *option*  
Can be used to specify options in the format used in the configuration file. This is useful for specifying options for which there are no separate command-line flags.
- p *port*  
Specifies the port on which the server listens for connections (the default is 22).
- q  
Quiet mode. Nothing is sent to the system log. Normally the beginning, authentication, and termination of each connection is logged.
- t  
Test mode. Check only the validity of the configuration file and the sanity of the keys. This is useful for updating `sshd` reliably as configuration options might change.



- D  
When this option is specified `sshd` does not detach and does not become a daemon. This allows easy monitoring of `sshd`.
- 4  
Forces `sshd` to use IPv4 addresses only.
- 6  
Forces `sshd` to use IPv6 addresses only.

### Extended Description

`authorized_keys` File  
Format

The `$HOME/.ssh/authorized_keys` file lists the public keys that are permitted for RSA authentication in protocol version 1 and for public key authentication (`PubkeyAuthentication`) in protocol version 2. The `AuthorizedKeysFile` configuration option can be used to specify an alternative file.

Each line of the file contains one key (empty lines and lines starting with a hash mark [#] are ignored as comments).

For each RSA key for protocol version 1, the file consists of the following space-separated fields:

*options bits exponent modulus comment*

For the public key for protocol version 2, the file consists of the following space-separated fields:

*options key-type base64-encoding-key comment*

For protocol version 2, *key-type* is one of `ssh-rsa` or `ssh-dsa`.

The *options* field is optional; its presence is determined by whether the line starts with a number. (The option field never starts with a number.) The *bits*, *exponent*, and *modulus* fields give the RSA key; the *comment* field is a convenient place for you to identify the key.

Lines in this file are usually several hundred bytes long (because of the size of the key modulus). You will find it very inconvenient to type them in; instead, copy the public key file and edit it.

Permissions of this file must be set so that it is not world or group writable. See the `StrictModes` option of `sshd_config(4)`.

The *options* (if present) consist of comma-separated option specifications. No spaces are permitted, except within double quotes. The following option specifications are supported:

`from="pattern-list"`

Specifies that, in addition to public key authentication, the canonical name of the remote host must be present in the comma-separated list of patterns ('\*' and '?' serve as wildcards). The list can also contain negated patterns by prefixing the patterns with '!'. If the canonical host name matches a negated pattern, the key is not accepted.

The purpose of this option is to give you the option of increasing security: public key authentication by itself does not trust the network or name servers or anything but the key. However, if someone manages to steal the key, possession of the key would permit the intruder to log in from anywhere in the world. This option makes using a stolen key more difficult, because name servers and routers would have to be compromised, in addition to just the key.

`command="command"`

Specifies that the *command* is executed whenever this key is used for authentication. The command supplied by the user (if any) is ignored. The command is run on a pty if the client requests a pty; otherwise it is run without a tty. If an 8-bit clean channel is required, one must not request a pty or should specify no-pty. You can include a quote in the command by escaping it with a backslash. This option might be useful to restrict certain public keys from performing a specific operation. An example is a key that permits remote backups but nothing else. Note that the client can specify TCP/IP and/or X11 forwarding unless they are explicitly prohibited from doing so. Also note that this option applies to shell, command, or subsystem execution.

`environment="NAME=value"`

Specifies that the string *NAME=value* is to be added to the environment when logging in using this key. Environment variables set this way override other default environment values. Multiple options of this type are permitted. Environment processing is disabled by default and is controlled via the `PermitUserEnvironment` option.

`no-port-forwarding`

Forbids TCP/IP forwarding when this key is used for authentication. Any port forward requests by the client will return an error. This might be used, for example, in connection with the `command` option.

`no-X11-forwarding`

Forbids X11 forwarding when this key is used for authentication. Any X11 forward requests by the client will return an error.

`no-agent-forwarding`

Forbids authentication agent forwarding when this key is used for authentication.

`no-pty`

Prevents tty allocation (a request to allocate a pty will fail).

`permiptopen="host:port"`

Limit local ssh -L port forwarding such that it can connect only to the specified host and port. IPv6 addresses can be specified with an alternative syntax: *host/port*. You can invoke multiple `permiptopen` options, with each instance separated by a comma. No pattern matching is performed on the specified hostnames. They must be literal domains or addresses.

`ssh_known_hosts` File Format The `/etc/ssh/ssh_known_hosts` and `$HOME/.ssh/known_hosts` files contain host public keys for all known hosts. The global file should be prepared by the administrator (optional), and the per-user file is maintained automatically: whenever the user connects from an unknown host its key is added to the per-user file.

For the RSA key for protocol version 1, these files consist of the following space-separated fields:

```
hostnames bits exponent modulus comment
```

For the public key for protocol version 2, these files consist of the following space-separated fields:

```
hostnames key-type base64-encoding-key comment
```

For protocol version 2, *key-type* is one of `ssh-rsa` or `ssh-dsa`.

Hostnames is a comma-separated list of patterns (\* and ? act as wildcards); each pattern in turn is matched against the canonical host name (when authenticating a client) or against the user-supplied name (when authenticating a server). A pattern can also be preceded by ! to indicate negation: if the host name matches a negated pattern, it is not accepted (by that line) even if it matched another pattern on the line.

Alternately, hostnames can be stored in a hashed form, which hides host names and addresses should the file's contents be disclosed. Hashed hostnames start with a vertical bar (|) character. Only one hashed hostname can appear on a single line and none of the above negation or wildcard operators may be applied.

Bits, exponent, and modulus are taken directly from the RSA host key; they can be obtained, for example, from `/etc/ssh/ssh_host_rsa_key.pub`. The optional comment field continues to the end of the line, and is not used.

Lines starting with a hash mark (#) and empty lines are ignored as comments.

When performing host authentication, authentication is accepted if any matching line has the proper key. It is thus permissible (but not recommended) to have several lines or different host keys for the same names. This will inevitably happen when short forms of host names from different domains are put in the file. It is possible that the files contain conflicting information; authentication is accepted if valid information can be found from either file.

The lines in these files are typically hundreds of characters long. You should definitely not type in the host keys by hand. Rather, generate them by a script or by taking `/etc/ssh/ssh_host_rsa_key.pub` and adding the host names at the front.

## Environment Variables

`sshd` sets the following environment variables for commands executed by `ssh` users:

### DISPLAY

Indicates the location of the X11 server. It is automatically set by `sshd` to point to a value of the form `hostname:n`, where *hostname* indicates the host where the shell runs, and *n* is an integer greater than or equal to 1. `ssh` uses this special value to forward X11 connections

over the secure channel. Unless you have important reasons to do otherwise, you should not set `DISPLAY` explicitly, as that will render the X11 connection insecure and will require you to manually copy any required authorization cookies.

**HOME**

Set to the path of the user's home directory.

**LANG, LC\_ALL, LC\_COLLATE, LC\_CTYPE, LC\_MESSAGES, LC\_MONETARY, LC\_NUMERIC, LC\_TIME**

A locale setting. The locale defaults to that of `sshd` (usually the system-wide default locale), or is negotiated between the client and server during initial key exchange (as per RFC 4253).

Following initial key exchange, each of the variables can be overridden in the following sequence:

1. If a locale setting is set in a client's environment and that client supports "Environment Variable Passing" (see RFC 4254), then the setting will be passed over to the server side.
2. If the public key authentication method was used to authenticate the server and the `PermitUserEnvironment` variable in `sshd_config(4)` is set to `yes` on the server side, then the setting can be changed through the use of the `environment` option in the client's `AuthorizedKeysFile` file.
3. The setting can be change in the client's `~/.ssh/environment` file on the server.

See `PermitUserEnvironment` in `sshd_config(4)` as to when the `AuthorizedKeysFile` and `~/.ssh/environment` files are processed and used for setting the user environment.

**LOGNAME**

Synonym for `USER`. Set for compatibility with systems that use this variable.

**MAIL**

Set to point to the user's mailbox.

**SSH\_AUTH\_SOCK**

Indicates the path of a `unix`-domain socket used to communicate with the agent.

**SSH\_CONNECTION**

Identifies the client and server ends of the connection. The variable contains four space-separated values: client IP address, client port number, server IP address and server port number.

**SSH\_CLIENT**

Identifies the client end of the connection. The variable contains three space-separated values: client IP address, client port number, and server port number.

**SSH\_TTY**

Set to the name of the `tty` (path to the device) associated with the current shell or command. If the current session has no `tty`, this variable is not set.

**TZ**

Indicates the present timezone, if `TIMEZONE` is set in `/etc/default/login` or if `TZ` was set when the daemon was started.

**HZ**

If set in `/etc/default/login`, the daemon sets it to the same value.

**SHELL**

The user's shell, if `ALTSHELL=YES` in `/etc/default/login`.

**PATH**

Set to the value of `PATH` or `SUPATH` (see [login\(1\)](#)) in `/etc/default/login`, or, if not set, to `/usr/bin:/bin`.

**USER**

Set to the name of the user logging in.

Additionally, `sshd` reads `$HOME/.ssh/environment` and adds lines of the format `VARNAME=value` to the environment.

**Examples** In the following examples, certain lines might wrap due to line length limits in your display. You should nevertheless consider the wrapped line as a single line.

**EXAMPLE 1** `authorized_key` File Entries

The following are examples of `authorized_key` file entries for protocol 1:

```
1024 33 12121...312314325 ylo@foo.bar
```

```
from="*.niksula.hut.fi,!pc.niksula.hut.fi" 1024 35 23...2334 ylo@niksula
```

```
command="dump /home",no-pty,no-port-forwarding 1024 33 23...2323 backup.hut.fi
```

**EXAMPLE 2** `authorized_key` File Entries for Protocol 2

The following are examples of `authorized_key` file entries for protocol 2:

```
ssh-rsa AAAAB3NzaC1y...EU88ovYKg4GfclWGCFYTuw8= ylo@foo.bar
```

```
from="*.niksula.hut.fi" ssh-rsa AAAAB3NzaC...uw8= ylo@niksula
```

```
command="dump /home",no-pty,no-port-forwarding ssh-rsa AA..8= backup.hut.fi
```

**EXAMPLE 3** `ssh_known_hosts` File Entries for Protocol 1

The following are examples of `ssh_known_hosts` file entries for protocol 1:

```
closenet,closenet.hut.fi,...,130.233.208.41 1024 37 159...93 closenet.hut.fi
```

**EXAMPLE 4** ssh\_known\_hosts File Entries for Protocol 2

The following are examples of ssh\_known\_hosts file entries for protocol 2:

```
closenet,closenet.hut.fi,...,130.233.208.41 ssh-rsa AA..8= closenet.hut.fi
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.

**Files** /etc/default/login

Contains defaults for several sshd\_config parameters, environment variables, and other environmental factors.

The following parameters affect environment variables (see [login\(1\)](#) and descriptions of these variables, above):

- TIMEZONE
- HZ
- ALTSHELL
- PATH
- SUPATH

The following /etc/default/login parameters supply default values for corresponding sshd\_config(4) parameters:

- CONSOLE (see PermitRootLogin in sshd\_config(4))
- PASSREQ (see PermitEmptyPasswords in sshd\_config(4))
- TIMEOUT (see LoginGraceTime in sshd\_config(4))

The following /etc/default/login parameters:

- UMASK
- ULIMIT

...set the [umask\(2\)](#) and file size limit of, respectively, the shells and commands spawned by sshd.

Finally, two /etc/default/login parameters affect the maximum allowed login attempts per-connection using interactive user authentication methods (for example, keyboard-interactive but not publickey), as per [login\(1\)](#):

- RETRIES
- SYSLOG\_FAILED\_LOGINS

/etc/ssh/sshd\_config

Contains configuration data for sshd. This file should be writable by root only, but it is recommended (though not necessary) that it be world-readable.

`/etc/ssh/ssh_host_key`

`/etc/ssh/ssh_host_dsa_key`

`/etc/ssh/ssh_host_rsa_key`

Contains the private part of the host key. This file should only be owned by root, readable only by root, and not accessible to others. `sshd` does not start if this file is group/world-accessible.

`/etc/ssh/ssh_host_key.pub`

`/etc/ssh/ssh_host_dsa_key.pub`

`/etc/ssh/ssh_host_rsa_key.pub`

Contains the public part of the host key. This file should be world-readable but writable only by root. Its contents should match the private part. This file is not used for encryption; it is provided only for the convenience of the user so its contents can be copied to known hosts files. These two files are created using [ssh-keygen\(1\)](#).

`/var/run/sshd.pid`

Contains the process ID of the `sshd` listening for connections. If there are several daemons running concurrently for different ports, this contains the pid of the one started last. The content of this file is not sensitive; it can be world-readable. You can use the `PidFile` keyword in `sshd_config` to specify a file other than `/var/run/sshd.pid`. See [sshd\\_config\(4\)](#).

`/etc/ssh/ssh_known_hosts` and `$HOME/.ssh/known_hosts`

These files are consulted when using `rhosts` with public key host authentication to check the public key of the host. The key must be listed in one of these files to be accepted. The client uses the same files to verify that the remote host is the one it intended to connect. These files should be writable only by root or the owner. `/etc/ssh/ssh_known_hosts` should be world-readable, and `$HOME/.ssh/known_hosts` can but need not be world-readable.

`/etc/nologin`

If this file exists, `sshd` refuses to let anyone except root log in. The contents of the file are displayed to anyone trying to log in, and non-root connections are refused. The file should be world-readable.

`$HOME/.ssh/authorized_keys`

Lists the public keys (RSA or DSA) that can be used to log into the user's account. This file must be readable by root. This might, on some machines, imply that it is world-readable if the user's home directory resides on an NFS volume. It is recommended that it not be accessible by others. The format of this file is described above. Users will place the contents of their `identity.pub`, `id_dsa.pub` and/or `id_rsa.pub` files into this file, as described in [ssh-keygen\(1\)](#).

`$HOME/.rhosts`

This file contains host-username pairs, separated by a space, one per line. The given user on the corresponding host is permitted to log in without password. The same file is used by `rlogind` and `rshd`. The file must be writable only by the user; it is recommended that it not

be accessible by others. It is also possible to use `netgroups` in the file. Either host or user name may be of the form `+@groupname` to specify all hosts or all users in the group.

#### `$HOME/.shosts`

For `ssh`, this file is exactly the same as for `.rhosts`. However, this file is not used by `rlogin` and `rshd`, so using this permits access using SSH only.

#### `/etc/hosts.equiv`

This file is used during `.rhosts` authentication. In its simplest form, this file contains host names, one per line. Users on these hosts are permitted to log in without a password, provided they have the same user name on both machines. The host name can also be followed by a user name; such users are permitted to log in as any user on this machine (except `root`). Additionally, the syntax `+@group` can be used to specify `netgroups`. Negated entries start with a hyphen (-).

If the client host/user is successfully matched in this file, login is automatically permitted, provided the client and server user names are the same. Additionally, successful RSA host authentication is normally required. This file must be writable only by root; it is recommended that it be world-readable.

Warning: It is almost never a good idea to use user names in `hosts.equiv`. Beware that it really means that the named user(s) can log in as anybody, which includes `bin`, `daemon`, `adm`, and other accounts that own critical binaries and directories. For practical purposes, using a user name grants the user root access. Probably the only valid use for user names is in negative entries. This warning also applies to `rsh/rlogin`.

#### `/etc/ssh/moduli`

A private file.

#### `/etc/ssh/shosts.equiv`

This file is processed exactly as `/etc/hosts.equiv`. However, this file might be useful in environments that want to run both `rsh/rlogin` and `ssh`.

#### `$HOME/.ssh/environment`

This file is read into the environment at login (if it exists). It can contain only empty lines, comment lines (that start with `#`), and assignment lines of the form `name=value`. The file should be writable only by the user; it need not be readable by anyone else. Environment processing is disabled by default and is controlled by means of the `PermitUserEnvironment` option.

#### `$HOME/.ssh/rc`

If this file exists, it is run with `/bin/sh` after reading the environment files but before starting the user's shell or command. If X11 spoofing is in use, this will receive the `proto` cookie pair in standard input (and `DISPLAY` in environment). This must call `xauth` in that case.

The primary purpose of `$HOME/.ssh/rc` is to run any initialization routines that might be needed before the user's home directory becomes accessible; AFS is a particular example of



such an environment. If this file exists, it is run with `/bin/sh` after reading the environment files, but before starting the user's shell or command. It must not produce any output on `stdout`; `stderr` must be used instead. If X11 forwarding is in use, it will receive the proto cookie pair in its standard input and `DISPLAY` in its environment. The script must call `xauth` because `sshd` will not run `xauth` automatically to add X11 cookies.

This file will probably contain some initialization code followed by something similar to:

```
if read proto cookie && [-n "$DISPLAY"]
then
 if ['echo $DISPLAY | cut -c1-10' = 'localhost:']
 then
 # X11UseLocalhost=yes
 echo add unix:'echo $DISPLAY |
 cut -c11-' $proto $cookie
 else
 # X11UseLocalhost=no
 echo add $DISPLAY $proto $cookie
 fi | xauth -q -
fi
```

If this file does not exist, `/etc/ssh/sshrd` is run, and if that does not exist, `xauth` is used to store the cookie. `$HOME/.ssh/rc` should be writable only by the user, and need not be readable by anyone else.

`/etc/ssh/sshrd`

Similar to `$HOME/.ssh/rc`. This can be used to specify machine-specific login-time initializations globally. This file should be writable only by root, and should be world-readable.

**Security** `sshd` supports the use of several user authentication mechanisms: a public key system where keys are associated with users (through users' `authorized_keys` files), a public key system where keys are associated with hosts (see the `HostbasedAuthentication` configuration parameter), a GSS-API based method (see the `GssAuthentication` and `GssKeyEx` configuration parameters) and three initial authentication methods: `none`, `password`, and a generic prompt/reply protocol, `keyboard-interactive`.

`sshd` negotiates the use of the GSS-API with clients only if it has a GSS-API acceptor credential for the “host” service. This means that, for GSS-API based authentication, the server must have a Kerberos V keytab entry (see below) or the equivalent for any other GSS-API mechanism that might be installed.

In order for Kerberos authentication to work, a `host/<FQDN>Kerberos` principal must exist for each Fully Qualified Domain Name associated with the `in.sshd` server. Each of these `host/<FQDN>` principals must have a keytab entry in the `/etc/krb5/krb5.keytab` file on the `in.sshd` server. An example principal might be:

```
host/bigmachine.eng.example.com
```

See [kadmin\(1M\)](#) or [gkadmin\(1M\)](#) for instructions on adding a principal to a `krb5.keytab` file. See *System Administration Guide: Security Services* for a discussion of Kerberos authentication.

GSS-API authorization is covered in [gss\\_auth\\_rules\(5\)](#).

`sshd` uses [pam\(3PAM\)](#) for the three initial authentication methods as well as for account management, session management, and password management for all authentication methods.

Specifically, `sshd` calls `pam_authenticate()` for the “none,” “password” and “keyboard-interactive” SSHv2 `userauth` types, as well as for the null and password authentication methods for SSHv1. Other SSHv2 authentication methods do not call `pam_authenticate()`. `pam_acct_mgmt()` is called for each authentication method that succeeds.

`pam_setcred()` and `pam_open_session()` are called when authentication succeeds and `pam_close_session()` is called when connections are closed.

`pam_open_session()` and `pam_close_session()` are also called when SSHv2 channels with `ptys` are opened and closed.

Each SSHv2 `userauth` type has its own PAM service name:

SSHv2 Userauth	PAM Service Name
none	sshd-none
password	sshd-password
keyboard-interactive	sshd-kbdint
pubkey	sshd-pubkey
hostbased	sshd-hostbased
gssapi-with-mic	sshd-gssapi
gssapi-keyex	sshd-gssapi

For SSHv1, `sshd-v1` is always used.

If `pam_acct_mgmt()` returns `PAM_NEW_AUTHTOK_REQD` (indicating that the user's authentication tokens have expired), then `sshd` forces the use of “keyboard-interactive” `userauth`, if version 2 of the protocol is in use. The “keyboard-interactive” `userauth` will call `pam_chauthtok()` if `pam_acct_mgmt()` once again returns `PAM_NEW_AUTHTOK_REQD`. By this means, administrators are able to control what authentication methods are allowed for SSHv2 on a per-user basis.

Setting up Host-based Authentication To establish host-based authentication, you must perform the following steps:

- Configure the client.
- Configure the server.
- Publish known hosts.
- Make appropriate entries in `/etc/ssh/shosts.equiv` and `~/.shosts`.

These steps are expanded in the following paragraphs.

- On a client machine, in the system-wide client configuration file, `/etc/ssh/ssh_config`, you must have the entry:

```
HostbasedAuthentication yes
```

See [ssh\\_config\(4\)](#) and [ssh-keysign\(1M\)](#).

- On the server, in the system-wide server configuration file, `/etc/ssh/sshd_config`, you must have the entry:

```
HostbasedAuthentication yes
```

If per-user `.shost` files are to be allowed (see last step), in the same file, you must have:

```
IgnoreRhosts no
```

See [sshd\\_config\(4\)](#) for a description of these keywords.

- To publish known hosts, you must have entries for the clients from which users will be allowed host-based authentication. Make these entries in either or both of the system-wide file (`/etc/ssh/ssh_known_hosts`) or the per-user file (`~/.ssh/known_hosts`).
- Note that `sshd` uses `.shosts`, not `.rhosts`. If you want the functionality provided by `.rhosts`, but do not want to use `rlogin` or `rsh` because of their security shortcomings, you can use `.shosts` in conjunction with `sshd`. To use this feature, make appropriate entries in `/etc/ssh/shosts.equiv` and `~/.shosts`, in the format specified in [rhosts\(4\)](#).

For the vast majority of network environments, `.shosts` is preferred over `.rhosts`.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWsshdu
Interface Stability	Evolving

The interface stability of `/etc/ssh/moduli` is Private.

**See Also** [login\(1\)](#), [scp\(1\)](#), [ssh\(1\)](#), [ssh-add\(1\)](#), [ssh-agent\(1\)](#), [ssh-keygen\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [gkadmin\(1M\)](#), [kadmin\(1M\)](#), [sftp-server\(1M\)](#), [ssh-keysign\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [pam\(3PAM\)](#), [rhosts\(4\)](#), [ssh\\_config\(4\)](#), [sshd\\_config\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [gss\\_auth\\_rules\(5\)](#), [kerberos\(5\)](#), [pam\\_roles\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

*System Administration Guide: Security Services*

**Notes** The sshd service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/ssh:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

sshd always sets PAM\_RHOST and sets PAM\_AUSER in the case of host-based userauth. This behavior allows for remote logins to roles using host-based authentication. See [pam\\_roles\(5\)](#).

**Name** ssh-keysign – ssh helper program for host-based authentication

**Synopsis** ssh-keysign

**Description** ssh-keysign is used by [ssh\(1\)](#) to access the local host keys and generate the digital signature required during host-based authentication with SSH protocol version 2. This signature is of data that includes, among other items, the name of the client host and the name of the client user.

ssh-keysign is disabled by default and can be enabled only in the global client configuration file `/etc/ssh/ssh_config` by setting `HostbasedAuthentication` to `yes`.

ssh-keysign is not intended to be invoked by the user, but from `ssh`. See [ssh\(1\)](#) and [sshd\(1M\)](#) for more information about host-based authentication.

**Files**

<code>/etc/ssh/ssh_config</code>	Controls whether ssh-keysign is enabled.
<code>/etc/ssh/ssh_host_dsa_key</code> <code>/etc/ssh/ssh_host_rsa_key</code>	These files contain the private parts of the host keys used to generate the digital signature. They should be owned by root, readable only by root, and not accessible to others. Because they are readable only by root, ssh-keysign must be set -uid root if host-based authentication is used.

**Security** ssh-keysign will not sign host-based authentication data under the following conditions:

- If the `HostbasedAuthentication` client configuration parameter is not set to `yes` in `/etc/ssh/ssh_config`. This setting cannot be overridden in users' `~/.ssh/ssh_config` files.
- If the client hostname and username in `/etc/ssh/ssh_config` do not match the canonical hostname of the client where ssh-keysign is invoked and the name of the user invoking ssh-keysign.

In spite of ssh-keysign's restrictions on the contents of the host-based authentication data, there remains the ability of users to use it as an avenue for obtaining the client's private host keys. For this reason host-based authentication is turned off by default.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWsshu
Interface Stability	Evolving

**See Also** [ssh\(1\)](#), [sshd\(1M\)](#), [ssh\\_config\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Authors** Markus Friedl, markus@openbsd.org

**History** ssh-keysign first appeared in Ox 3.2.

**Name** statd – network status monitor

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/nfs/statd

**Description** statd is an intermediate version of the status monitor. It interacts with [lockd\(1M\)](#) to provide the crash and recovery functions for the locking services on NFS. statd keeps track of the clients with processes which hold locks on a server. When the server reboots after a crash, statd sends a message to the statd on each client indicating that the server has rebooted. The client statd processes then inform the lockd on the client that the server has rebooted. The client lockd then attempts to reclaim the lock(s) from the server.

statd on the client host also informs the statd on the server(s) holding locks for the client when the client has rebooted. In this case, the statd on the server informs its lockd that all locks held by the rebooting client should be released, allowing other processes to lock those files.

lockd is started by [automountd\(1M\)](#), [mount\\_nfs\(1M\)](#), and [share\(1M\)](#) if NFS automounts are needed.

<b>Files</b> /var/statmon/sm	lists hosts and network addresses to be contacted after a reboot
/var/statmon/sm.bak	lists hosts and network addresses that could not be contacted after last reboot
/var/statmon/state	includes a number which changes during a reboot
/usr/include/rpcsvc/sm_inter.x	contains the rpcgen source code for the interface services provided by the statd daemon.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWnfscu

**See Also** [svcs\(1\)](#), [automountd\(1M\)](#), [lockd\(1M\)](#), [mount\\_nfs\(1M\)](#), [share\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

*System Administration Guide: IP Services*

**Notes** The crash of a server is only detected upon its recovery.

The statd service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/nfs/status
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using `svcadm(1M)`. The service's status can be queried using the `svcs(1)` command.

If it is disabled, it will be enabled by `mount_nfs(1M)`, `share_nfs(1M)`, and `automountd(1M)` unless its `application/auto_enable` property is set to `false`.



**Name** stclient – Service Tag Administration Program

**Synopsis** stclient -x | -E [-r *root\_dir*]

```
stclient -a [-i instance_URN] -p product_name -e product_version
-t product_URN [-F parent_URN] -P product_parent
[-I product_defined_instance_id] -m product_vendor -A platform_arch
-z container -S source [-r root_dir]
```

```
stclient -u -i instance_URN -F parent_URN -I product_defined_instance_id
[-r root_dir]
```

```
stclient -d -i instance_URN [-r root_dir]
```

```
stclient -g -i instance_URN [-r root_dir]
```

```
stclient -f -t product_URN [-r root_dir]
```

```
stclient -h
```

```
stclient -v
```

**Description** The `stclient` command displays, finds, adds, updates and deletes records in the Service Tag registry. The registry is in the XML file `/var/sadm/servicetag/registry/servicetag.xml`, and contains the inventory of the product instances installed in the machine. Each record has a unique product instance identifier which is generated when the service tag is added in the registry. This product instance identifier is used as a key when finding, updating or deleting the service tag records. The extract option prints out the registry contents in XML format in stdout.

The `stclient` command also runs in interactive mode. This mode is invoked by running `stclient` without any parameters. A menu of all the available options are displayed, and the user is prompted to enter different parameters depending on the option chosen.

Any user can extract or get the contents of the registry, but only users with the appropriate privileges, the “svctag” user, or the creator of the service tag is authorized to update or delete a service tag record.

**Options** The following options are supported:

-p <i>product_name</i>	Sets the product name of the service tag to be added. For example, “ <code>stclient -p “Solaris 10 Operating System”</code> ” sets the product name to the “Solaris 10 Operating System”.
-e <i>product_version</i>	Sets the product version of the service tag to be added. For example, “ <code>stclient -r 5.10</code> ” sets the product version to “5.10”.
-t <i>product_URN</i>	Sets the Sun product unique identifier of the service tag to be added. For example, “ <code>stclient -t urn:uuid:5005588c-36f3-11d6-9cec-fc96f718e113</code> ” sets

- the Sun product unique identifier to “urn:uuid:5005588c-36f3-11d6-9cec-fc96f718e113”.
- i instance\_URN* Sets the product instance unique identifier of the service tag. For example, “stclient -i 3a444ab2-1dd2-11b2-a69d-830020782a6b” sets the product instance unique identifier to “3a444ab2-1dd2-11b2-a69d-830020782a6b”. This field may also be set when the service tag is added but is not typically used. The generation of the instance ID is normally left to the stclient.
- F product\_parent\_URN* Sets the Sun product unique identifier of parent product. For example, “stclient -F urn:uuid:5005588c-36f3-11d6-9cec-fc96f718e113” sets the Sun product unique identifier of parent product to “urn:uuid:5005588c-36f3-11d6-9cec-fc96f718e113”.
- P product\_parent* Sets the parent product of the service tag. For example, “stclient -P JES” sets the product parent to “JES”.
- I product\_defined\_instance\_id* Sets the product defined instance identifier. For example, “stclient -I ser:abc-klm-000-7190” sets the product defined instance identifier to “ser:abc-klm-000-7190”.
- m product\_vendor* Sets the vendor of the product. For example, “stclient -m Sun” sets the product vendor to “Sun”.
- A platform\_arch* Sets the platform architecture that the product is running on. For example, “stclient -A sparc” sets the platform architecture to “sparc”.
- z container* Sets the container that the product is running on. For example, “stclient -z “global zone”” sets the container to “global zone”.
- S source* Sets the source of this service tag, naming the entity that created it.
- r root\_dir* Sets the root directory where the command searches for the registry. The command searches /var/sadm/servicetag/registry by default. When this option is used, the command looks for the Registry in the specified root directory, (for example, “-r /home/user1” searches /home/user1/var/sadm/servicetag). This is typically used for testing.

## Operands

- Function Letters** The function portion of the key is specified by one of the following letters:
- x** Extract. Extracts and prints the contents of the Service Tag registry in XML format. An alternate root directory may be specified for testing purposes.
  - a** Add. Adds a service tag in the registry. A unique product instance identifier may be supplied and is automatically generated if not provided. This field is returned by the command. The required fields for add are product name, product version, product URN, product parent, vendor, platform architecture, container and source.
  - u** Update. Updates a service tag in the registry using the product instance URN as the key. The parent URN and product defined instance id fields can be updated.
  - d** Delete. Deletes a service tag in the registry using the product instance URN as the key.
  - E** Extract Environment. Enumerates to standard output the environmental or “agent” information associated with the registered Service Tags on this system.
  - g** Get. Gets and prints a service tag from the registry using the product instance URN as the key.
  - f** Find. Finds and prints all the instance URNs of a given product URN.
  - h** Help. Displays the command options.
  - v** Version. Displays the version number of the command.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0** Successful completion.
- > 0** An error occurred.

**Examples** **EXAMPLE 1** Adding a Service Tag in the Registry

To add a service tag, enter the following:

```
stclient -a -p "Java Enterprise Web Server 6.0" -e 6.0 \
 -t urn:uuid:f2b8b59c-6eba-11d7-986f-9f5d47ec72fe \
 -P Java Enterprise Server -m Sun -A sparc -z global -S patch
```

The screen displays the following:

```
Java Enterprise Web Server 6.0 6.0 added
Product instance URN=urn:st:7fc61914-1dd2-11b2-b992-830020782a6b
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Updating a Service Tag in the Registry

To update a service tag, enter the following:

**EXAMPLE 2** Updating a Service Tag in the Registry *(Continued)*

```
stclient -u -i 7fc61914-1dd2-11b2-b992-830020782a6b \
-I urn:st:product.defined.id
```

The screen displays the following:

```
Service tag updated
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Extracting a Service Tag Registry

To extract a service tag, enter the following:

```
stclient -x
```

The screen displays output similar to the following:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<registry urn="urn:uuid:1234ab-00e1-11b3-98737646873" version="1.0">
 <service_tag>
 .
 .
 .
 </service_tag>
</registry>
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Finding all product instances

To find all product instances, enter the following:

```
stclient -f -t urn:uuid:f2b8b59c-6eba-11d7-986f-9f5d47ec72fe \
fc61914-1dd2-11b2-b992-830020782a6b
```

**EXAMPLE 5** Listing the Environmental Information

To list the environmental information associated with the registered Service Tags on this system, enter the following:

```
stclient -E
```

The screen displays output similar to the following:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<agent>
 <agent_urn>urn:st:af15ee62-0bb3-ef2d-fa96-85a11996cc71</agent_urn>
 .
 .
 .
```

---

**EXAMPLE 5** Listing the Environmental Information *(Continued)*

```
</system_info>
</agent>
```

**Environment Variables** See [environ\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following environment variables that affect the execution of `stclient`: `LANG`, `LC_ALL`, `LC_CTYPE`, `LC_MESSAGES`, and `NLSPATH`.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWservicetagu
Interface Stability	Committed

**See Also** [in.stdiscover\(1M\)](#), [in.stlisten\(1M\)](#)

**Name** stmfadm – SCSI target mode framework command line interface

**Synopsis** stmfadm add-hg-member -g, --group-name *group-name* *group-member...*  
stmfadm add-tg-member -g, --group-name *group-name* *group-member...*  
stmfadm add-view [-n, --lun *logical-unit-number*  
-t, --target-group *group-name* -h, --host-group *group-name*] *lu-name*  
stmfadm create-hg *group-name*  
stmfadm create-lu [-p, --lu-prop *logical-unit-property=val*  
-s, --size *size*] *lu-file*  
stmfadm create-tg *group-name*  
stmfadm delete-hg *group-name*  
stmfadm delete-lu *lu-name*  
stmfadm delete-tg *group-name*  
stmfadm import-lu *lu-file*  
stmfadm list-hg [-v] [*host-group-name...*]  
stmfadm list-tg [-v] [*target-group-name...*]  
stmfadm list-lu [-v] [*lu-name...*]  
stmfadm list-target [-v] [*target-name...*]  
stmfadm list-view -l, --lu-name *lu-name* [*entry-name...*]  
stmfadm list-state  
stmfadm modify-lu [-p, --lu-prop *logical-unit-property=val*  
-s, --size *size*, -f, --file] *lu-name|lu-file*  
stmfadm online-lu *lu-name*  
stmfadm offline-lu *lu-name*  
stmfadm online-lu *target-name*  
stmfadm offline-lu *target-name*  
stmfadm remove-hg-member -g, --group-name *group-name* *group-member...*  
stmfadm remove-tg-member -g, --group-name *group-name* *group-member...*  
stmfadm remove-view -l, --lu-name *lu-name* *entry-name*

**Description** The stmfadm command configures logical units within the SCSI Target Mode Framework (STMF) framework. The framework and this man page use the following terminology:

*initiator*

A device responsible for issuing SCSI I/O commands to a SCSI target and logical unit.

*target*

A device responsible for receiving SCSI I/O commands for a logical unit.

*logical unit*

A device within a target responsible for executing SCSI I/O commands.

*logical unit number*

The identifier of a logical unit within a target.

*initiator group*

An initiator group is a set of one or more initiators that are combined for the purposes of being applied to a *view* (see below). An initiator cannot be a member of more than one initiator group.

*target group*

A target group is a set of one or more SCSI target ports that are treated the same when creating a *view* (see below). The set of logical units that a particular SCSI initiator can see is determined by the combined set of views.

Each logical unit has a set of view entries, and each view entry specifies a target group, host group, and a LUN. An initiator from that host group, when connecting through that target group, is able to identify and connect to that logical unit using the specified LUN. You can use views to restrict the set of logical units that a specific initiator can see, and assign the set of LUNs that will be used.

*view*

A view defines the association of an initiator group, a target group, and a logical unit number with a specified logical unit. Any view entry added to a logical unit must not be in conflict with existing view entries for that logical unit. A view entry is considered to be in conflict when an attempt is made to duplicate the association of any given initiator, target and logical unit number. As an example, logical unit LU\_0 has the following view entry associated with it:

```
Logical Unit: LU_0
 View Entry: 0
 initiator group: HostA
 target group: All targets
 logical unit number: 32
```

If you attempted the following:

```
stmf add-view -n 31 -h HostA LU_0
```

...the operation would return an error with a message indicating that the view entry is in conflict with one or more existing view entries. This conflict arises because the existing view entry, 0, already has mapped LU\_0 to logical unit number 32 for the initiator group HostA.

**Sub-commands** The `stmfadm` command supports the subcommands listed below.

`add-view [-n, --lun logical-unit-number -t, --target-group group-name -h, --host-group group-name] lu-name`

Adds a logical unit view entry to a logical unit *lu-name*, where *lu-name* is the STMF name for the logical unit as displayed by the `list-lu` subcommand. The `add-view` subcommand provides the user with a mechanism to implement access control for a logical unit and also provides a means of assigning a logical unit number to a logical unit for a given set of initiators and targets. A logical unit will not be available to any initiators until at least one view is applied. Each view entry gets assigned an entry name, which can be used to reference the entry in the `remove-view` and `list-view` subcommands.

`add-view` supports the following options:

`-n, --lun logical-unit-number`

*logical-unit-number* is an integer in the range 0-16383 to be assigned to the logical unit for this view entry. If this option is not specified, a logical unit number will be assigned by the STMF framework.

`-t, --target-group group-name`

*group-name* is the name of a target group previously created using the STMF `create-tg` subcommand. If this option is not specified, the logical unit will be available through all targets.

`-h, --host-group group-name`

*group-name* is the name of an host group previously created using the STMF `create-hg` subcommand. If this option is not specified, the logical unit will be available to all initiators that log in to the STMF framework.

`add-hg-member -g group-name group member...`

Add a host group member to a host group. *group-name* must be an existing group created using the `create-hg` subcommand. *group member* can be specified as *name\_type.name\_value*, where *name\_type* can be one of the following:

```
wn
iqn
eui
```

...and *name\_value* is the value of the initiator name. As an example, to add a fibre channel initiator port world-wide name `200000e08b909221` to the host group `HostA`, the command would be:

```
stmfadm add-hg-member -g HostA wwn.200000e08b909221
```

To add an iSCSI initiator node member with the name `iqn.1986-03.com.sun:01.46f7e262` to `HostA`, the command would be:

```
stmfadm add-hg-member -g HostA iqn.1986-03.com.sun:01.46f7e262
```

Alternatively, members can be specified using their SCSI name string identifiers. To add the two initiators above using their SCSI name string identifiers, the commands would be:



```
stmfadm add-hg-member -g HostA eui.200000e08b909221
stmfadm add-hg-member -g HostA iqn.1986-03.com.sun:01.46f7e262
```

A host group member cannot be a member of more than one host group.

**add-tg-member** -g *group-name* *group member...*

Add a target group member to a target group. *group-name* must be an existing group created using the `create-tg` subcommand. *group member* can be specified as *name\_type.name\_value*, where *name\_type* can be one of the following:

```
wwn
iqn
eui
```

...and *name\_value* is the value of the target name. As an example, to add a fibre channel target port world-wide name 501000e092376af7 to the target group TG0, the command would be:

```
stmfadm add-tg-member -g TG0 wwn.501000e092376af7
```

To add an iSCSI target member with the name iqn.1986-03.com.sun:target.01.01110 to TG0, the command would be:

```
stmfadm add-tg-member -g TG0 iqn.1986-03.com.sun:target.01.01110
```

Alternatively, members can be specified using their SCSI name string identifiers. To add the two targets above using their SCSI name string identifiers, the commands would be:

```
stmfadm add-tg-member -g TG0 eui.501000e092376af7
stmfadm add-tg-member -g TG0 iqn.1986-03.com.sun:target.01.01110
```

A target group member cannot be a member of more than one target group.

**create-hg** *group-name*

Create an initiator group with the name *group-name*. *group-name* is a string of Unicode characters with a maximum length of 255. The group name must be unique within the STMF system.

**create-lu** [-p, --lu-prop *logical-unit-property=val* --s, --size *size*] *lu-file*

Create a logical unit that can be registered with STMF. For the -p option, *logical-unit-property* can be one of the following properties:

**alias**

Up to 255 characters, representing a user-defined name for the device. The default is the name of the backing store.

**blk**

Specifies the block size for the device. The default is 512.

**guid**

Thirty-two hexadecimal ASCII characters representing a valid NAA Registered Extended Identifier. The default is set by the STMF to a generated value.

**host-id**

Eight hexadecimal ASCII characters representing the host ID assignment. This will be used to generate the globally unique identifier (GUID) for the logical unit. The default is the value returned by `hostid(1)`.

**meta**

Metadata file name. When specified, will be used to hold the SCSI metadata for the logical unit. There is no default.

**mgmt-url**

Up to 1024 characters representing a Management Network Address URL. More than one URL can be passed as a single parameter by using space-delimited URLs enclosed inside a single pair of quotation marks (").

**oui**

Organizational Unique Identifier. Six hexadecimal ASCII characters representing the IEEE OUI company ID assignment. This will be used to generate the device identifier (GUID). The default is `00144F`.

**pid**

Sixteen characters of product identification SCSI SPC-3. This value will be reflected in the Standard INQUIRY data returned for the device. The default is `COMSTAR`.

**serial**

Serial Number. Specifies the SCSI Vital Product Data Serial Number (page `80h`). It is a character value up to 252 bytes in length. There is no default value.

**vid**

Eight characters of vendor identification per SCSI SPC-3. This value will be reflected in the Standard INQUIRY data returned for the device. The default is `SUN`.

**wcd**

Write-back cache disable. Specify `true` or `false` to determine write-back cache disable behavior. The default is the write-back cache setting of the backing store device specified by the *lu-file* argument.

**wp**

Write-protect bit. Specify `true` or `false` to determine whether the device reports as write-protected. The default is `false`.

For the `-s` option, *size* is an integer followed by one of the following letters, to indicate a unit of size:

- k kilobyte
- m megabyte
- g gigabyte
- t terabyte

p petabyte

e exabyte

*lu-file* is the file to be used as the backing store for the logical unit. If the `-s` option is not specified, the size of the specified *lu-file* will be used as the size of the logical unit. Logical units registered with the STMF require space for the metadata to be stored. When a `zvol` is specified as the backing store device, the default will be to use a special property of the `zvol` to contain the metadata. For all other devices, the default behavior will be to use the first 64k of the device. An alternative approach would be to use the `meta` property in a `create-lu` command to specify an alternate file to contain the metadata. It is advisable to use a file that can provide sufficient storage of the logical unit metadata, preferably 64k.

`create-tg group-name`

Create a target group with the name *group-name*. *group-name* is a string of Unicode characters with a maximum length of 255. The group name must be unique within the STMF system.

`delete-hg group-name`

Delete the host group that identified by *group-name*.

`delete-lu lu-name`

Deletes an existing logical unit that was created using `stmfadm create-lu`. This effectively unloads the logical unit from the STMF framework. Any existing data on the logical unit remains intact.

`delete-tg group-name`

Delete the target group that identified by *group-name*.

`import-lu lu-file`

Imports and loads a logical unit into the STMF that was previously created using `stmfadm create-lu` and was then deleted from the STMF using `stmfadm delete-lu`. On success, the logical unit is again made available to the STMF. *lu-file* is the filename used in the `stmfadm create-lu` command. If this logical unit is using a separate metadata file, the filename in the `meta` property value that was used in the `stmfadm create-lu` command must be used here.

`list-hg [-v, -verbose] [host-group-name...]`

Lists information for the host group in the system referenced by *host-group-name*. If *host-group-name* is not specified, all host groups in the system will be listed. If the `-v` or `-verbose` option is specified, all members within a host group are displayed.

`list-lu [-v, -verbose] [lu-name...]`

Lists information for the logical unit in the system referenced by *lu-name*. If *lu-name* is not specified, all logical units in the system will be listed. If the `-v` or `-verbose` option is specified, additional information about the logical unit will be displayed.

`list-target [-v,--verbose] [target-name...]`

Lists information for the target port in the system referenced by *target-name*. If target name is not specified, all target ports in the system will be listed. If the `-v` or `--verbose` option is specified, additional information about the target along with SCSI session information for logged-in initiators is displayed.

`list-tg [-v,--verbose] [target-group-name...]`

Lists information for the target group in the system referenced by *target-group-name*. If *target-group-name* is not specified, all target groups in the system will be listed. If the `--v` or `--verbose` option is specified, all members within a target group are displayed.

`list-view --l,--lu-name lu-name [entry-name...]`

Lists the view entry for the logical unit referenced by *lu-name*. If *entry-name* is not specified, all view entries for the specified logical unit will be listed.

`modify-lu [-p,--lu-prop logical-unit-property=val --s,--size size, -f,--file] lu-name|lu-file`

Modifies attributes of a logical unit created using the `stmfadm create-lu` command. For the `-p` option, *logical-unit-property* can be one of the following properties:

**alias**

Up to 255 characters, representing a user-defined name for the device. The default is the name of the backing store.

**mgmt-url**

Up to 1024 characters representing a Management Network Address URL. More than one URL can be passed as a single parameter by using space-delimited URLs enclosed inside a single pair of quotation marks ("").

**wcd**

Write-back cache disable. Specify `true` or `false` to determine write-back cache disable behavior. The default is the write-back cache setting of the backing store device specified by the *lu-file* argument.

**wp**

Write-protect bit. Specify `true` or `false` to determine whether the device reports as write-protected. The default is `false`.

For the `-s` option, *size* is an integer followed by one of the following letters, to indicate a unit of size:

k	kilobyte
m	megabyte
g	gigabyte
t	terabyte
p	petabyte

e exabyte

*lu-name* is the guid of the logical unit to be modified. If the -f option is specified, the operand is interpreted as a file name. This provides the ability to modify a logical unit that is not currently imported into the STMF.

**online-lu** *lu-name*

Online a logical unit currently registered with the STMF.

**online-target** *target-name*

Online the specified target.

**offline-lu** *lu-name*

Offline a logical unit currently registered with the STMF.

**offline-target** *target-name*

Online the specified target.

**list-state**

Lists the operational and configuration state of the STMF.

**remove-hg-member** -g *group-name* *group member*

Removes a host group member from a host group. *group-name* must be an existing group created using the **create-hg** subcommand. *group member* can be specified as *name\_type.name\_value*, where *name\_type* can be one of the following:

wn  
iqn  
eui

...and *name\_value* is the value of the initiator name. As an example, to remove the fibre channel initiator port world-wide name 200000e08b909221 from the host group HostA, the command would be:

```
stmfadm remove-hg-member -g HostA wwn.200000e08b909221
```

To remove the iSCSI initiator node member with the name iqn.1986-03.com.sun:01.46f7e262 from HostA, the command would be:

```
stmfadm remove-hg-member -g HostA iqn.1986-03.com.sun:01.46f7e262
```

Alternatively, members can be specified using their SCSI name string identifiers. To remove the two initiators above using their SCSI name string identifiers, the commands would be:

```
stmfadm remove-hg-member -g HostA eui.200000e08b909221
stmfadm remove-hg-member -g HostA iqn.1986-03.com.sun:01.46f7e262
```

**remove-tg-member** -g *group-name* *group member*

Removes a target group member from a target group. *group-name* must be an existing group created using the **create-tg** subcommand. *group member* can be specified as *name\_type.name\_value*, where *name\_type* can be one of the following:

```
wwn
iqn
eui
```

...and *name\_value* is the value of the target name. As an example, to remove the fibre channel target port world-wide name `501000e092376af7` from the target group `TG0`, the command would be:

```
stmfadm remove-tg-member -g TG0 wwn.501000e092376af7
```

To remove the iSCSI target member with the name `iqn.1986-03.com.sun:target.01.01110` from `TG0`, the command would be:

```
stmfadm remove-tg-member -g TG0 iqn.1986-03.com.sun:target.01.01110
```

Alternatively, members can be specified using their SCSI name string identifiers. To remove the two targets above using their SCSI name string identifiers, the commands would be:

```
stmfadm remove-tg-member -g TG0 eui.501000e092376af7
```

```
stmfadm remove-tg-member -g TG0 iqn.1986-03.com.sun:target.01.01110
```

```
remove-view -l, --lu-name lu-name entry-name
```

Removes one or more logical unit view entries from a logical unit.

### Examples

**EXAMPLE 1** Creating a Host group with Two Initiator Ports

The following commands use the `create-hg` and `add-hg-member` subcommands to create a host group and add two initiator ports to that host group.

```
stmfadm create-hg host-group-a
stmfadm add-hg-member -g host-group-a wwn.210105b0000d92d0
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Adding a View Entry to a Logical Unit

The following command uses the `add-view` subcommand to allow access from `host-group-a` to a logical unit.

```
stmfadm add-view -h host-group-a 6000AE40C5000000000046FC4FEA001C
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Listing a View Entry

The following command uses the `list-view` subcommand to list all view entries for the specified logical unit.

```
stmfadm list-view -l 6000AE40C5000000000046FC4FEA001C
View Entry: 0
 Host group : host-group-a
 Target group : All
 LUN : 0
```

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWstmfu
Interface Stability	Committed

**See Also** [hostid\(1\)](#), [sbdadm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** stmsboot – administration program for the Solaris I/O multipathing feature

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/stmsboot [[-D (fp | mpt | iscsi) ] -d | -e | -u]  
| -L | -l *controller\_number*]

**Description** The Solaris I/O multipathing feature is a multipathing solution for storage devices that is part of the Solaris operating environment. This feature was formerly known as Sun StorEdge Traffic Manager (STMS) or MPxIO.

The stmsboot program is an administrative command to manage enumeration of multipath-capable devices with Solaris I/O multipathing. Solaris I/O multipathing-enabled devices are enumerated under `scsi_vhci(7D)`, providing multipathing capabilities. Solaris I/O multipathing-disabled devices are enumerated under the physical controller.

In the `/dev` and `/devices` trees, Solaris I/O multipathing-enabled devices receive new names that indicate that they are under Solaris I/O multipathing control. This means a device will have a different name from its original name (after enabling) when it is under Solaris I/O multipathing control. The stmsboot command automatically updates `/etc/vfstab` and dump configuration to reflect the device names changes when enabling or disabling Solaris I/O multipathing. One reboot is required for changes to take effect.

**Options** The following options are supported:

`-e [ -D fp | mpt | iscsi ]`

Enables Solaris I/O multipathing on all supported multipath-capable controller ports, including `fp(7d)`, `mpt(7D)`, and `iscsi(7D)` port drivers. Multipath-capable ports include fibre channel (`fp(7d)`) controller ports and SAS (`mpt(7D)`) controller ports. Following this enabling, you are prompted to reboot. During the reboot, `vfstab` and the dump configuration will be updated to reflect the device name changes. Specifying either `-D mpt` or `-D fp` limits the enabling operation to ports attached using the specified driver.

`-d [ -D fp | mpt | iscsi ]`

Disables Solaris I/O multipathing on all supported multipath-capable controller ports, including `fp(7d)`, `mpt(7D)`, and `iscsi(7D)` port drivers. Multipath-capable ports include fibre channel (`fp(7d)`) controller ports and SAS (`mpt(7D)`) controller ports. Following this disabling, you are prompted to reboot. During the reboot, `vfstab` and the dump configuration will be updated to reflect the device name changes. Specifying either `-D mpt` or `-D fp` limits the disabling operation to ports attached using the specified driver.

`-u [ -D fp | mpt | iscsi ]`

Updates `vfstab` and the dump configuration after you have manually modified the configuration to have Solaris I/O multipathing enabled or disabled on specific `fp(7d)`, `mpt(7D)`, and `iscsi(7D)` controller ports. This option prompts you to reboot. During the reboot, `vfstab` and the dump configuration will be updated to reflect the device name changes.



-L

Display the device name changes from non-Solaris I/O multipathing device names to Solaris I/O multipathing device names for multipath-enabled controller ports. If Solaris I/O multipathing is not enabled, then no mappings are displayed.

-l *controller\_number*

Display the device name changes from non-Solaris I/O multipathing device names to Solaris I/O multipathing device names for the specified controller. If Solaris I/O multipathing is not enabled, then no mappings are displayed.

**Usage** The primary function of `stmsboot` is to control the enabling and disabling of Solaris I/O multipathing on the host. The utility automatically updates `vfstab(4)` and `dumpadm(1M)` configuration to reflect device name changes. The system administrator is responsible for modifying application configuration (for example, backup software, DBMS, and so forth) to reflect updated device names.

The `-L` and `-l` options display the mapping between multipathed and non-multipathed device names. These options function only after changes to the Solaris I/O multipathing configuration have taken effect, that is, following the reboot after invoking `stmsboot -e`.

ZFS datasets, including ZFS root datasets, are correctly handled by `stmsboot`.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Enabling Solaris I/O Multipathing

To enable Solaris I/O multipathing for all multipath-capable controllers, run:

```
stmsboot -e
```

To enable Solaris I/O multipathing on multipath-capable `mpt(7D)` controller ports, enter:

```
stmsboot -D mpt -e
```

To enable Solaris I/O Multipathing on multipath-capable fibre channel controller ports, enter:

```
stmsboot -D fp -e
```

To enable Solaris I/O Multipathing on multipath-capable iSCSI controller ports, enter:

```
stmsboot -D iscsi -e
```

EXAMPLE 2 Disabling Solaris I/O Multipathing

To disable Solaris I/O multipathing on all multipath-capable controllers, enter:

```
stmsboot -d
```

To disable Solaris I/O multipathing on multipath-capable `mpt(7D)` controller ports, enter:

```
stmsboot -D mpt -d
```

To disable Solaris I/O multipathing on multipath-capable iSCSI controller ports, enter:

**EXAMPLE 2** Disabling Solaris I/O Multipathing *(Continued)*

```
stmsboot -D iscsi -d
```

To disable Solaris I/O multipathing on multipath-capable fibre channel controller ports, enter:

```
stmsboot -D fp -d
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Enabling Solaris I/O Multipathing on Selected Ports

To enable Solaris I/O multipathing on specific fibre channel controller ports and disable the feature on others, manually edit the `/kernel/drv/fp.conf` file. (See [fp\(7d\)](#).) The following command will update [vfstab\(4\)](#) and [dumpadm\(1M\)](#) configurations to reflect the changed device names:

```
stmsboot -u
```

A similar procedure involving the `/kernel/drv/mpt.conf` file should be followed for devices attached by means of the [mpt\(7D\)](#) driver. For devices attached by means of the [iscsi\(7D\)](#) driver, follow a similar procedure that uses the `/kernel/drv/iscsi.conf` file.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu, SUNWcslr
Interface Stability	Obsolete

**See Also** [dumpadm\(1M\)](#), [fsck\(1M\)](#), [mpathadm\(1M\)](#), [ufsdump\(1M\)](#), [zfs\(1M\)](#), [zpool\(1M\)](#), [ufsdump\(4\)](#), [vfstab\(4\)](#), [emlxs\(7D\)](#), [fcp\(7D\)](#), [fp\(7d\)](#), [iscsi\(7D\)](#), [mpt\(7D\)](#), [qlc\(7D\)](#), [scsi\\_vhci\(7D\)](#)

*Solaris SAN Configuration and Multipathing Guide* (see <http://docs.sun.com>)

Consult a particular storage product's system administrator's guide and release notes for further information specific to that product.

**Notes** Solaris I/O multipathing is not supported on all devices. After enabling Solaris I/O multipathing, only supported devices are placed under Solaris I/O multipathing control. Non-supported devices remain unchanged.

For Solaris releases prior to the current release, the `-e` and `-d` options replace `mpxio-disable` property entries with a global `mpxio-disable` entry in `fp.conf`.

Enabling Solaris I/O Multipathing on a Sun StorEdge Disk Array

The following applies to Sun StoreEdge T3, 3910, 3960, 6120, and 6320 storage subsystems.

To place your Sun StorEdge disk subsystem under Solaris I/O multipathing control, in addition to enabling Solaris I/O multipathing, the `mp_support` of the subsystem must be set to `mpxio` mode. The preferred sequence is to change the subsystem's `mp_support` to `mpxio` mode, then run `stmsboot -e`. If Solaris I/O multipathing is already enabled but the subsystem's `mp_support` is not in `mpxio` mode, then change the `mp_support` to `mpxio` mode and run `stmsboot -u`.

Refer to the *Sun StorEdge Administrator's Guide* for your subsystem for more details.

Using `ufsdump`

The `ufsdump(1M)` command records details of filesystem dumps in `/etc/dumpdates` (see `ufsdump(4)`). Among other items, the entries contain device names. An effect of the “active” `stmsboot` options (`-e`, `-d`, and `-u`) is to change the device name of a storage device.

Because `stmsboot` does not modify `dumpdates`, entries will refer to obsolete device names, that is, device names that were in effect before Solaris I/O multipathing configuration changes were performed. In this situation `ufsdump` will behave as if no previous dump of the filesystem had been performed. A level 0 dump will be performed.

Procedure to Use `stmsboot` in Conjunction with Sun Cluster

If possible, invoke `stmsboot -e` before installing Sun Cluster software. After executing `stmsboot`, install Sun Cluster software normally.

If Sun Cluster software is installed before executing `stmsboot`, follow this procedure:

On each machine in the cluster where Solaris I/O multipathing is required, execute:

```
stmsboot -e
```

...and allow the system to reboot.

When the system comes up, enter the following two commands:

```
1. # /usr/cluster/bin/scdidadm -C
```

```
2. # /usr/cluster/bin/scdidadm -r
```

The preceding commands update `did` mappings with new device names while preserving `did` instance numbers for disks that are connected to multiple cluster nodes. `did` instance numbers of the local disks might not be preserved. For this reason, the `did` disk names for local disks might change.

```
3. Update /etc/vfstab to reflect any new did disk names for your local disks.
```

```
4. Reboot the system.
```

To disable the Solaris multipathing feature, use `stmsboot -d` (instead of `stmsboot -e`), then follow the procedure above.

To view mappings between the old and new device names, run `stmsboot -L`. To view `did` device name mappings, run `/usr/cluster/bin/scdidadm -L`.

With active-passive storage arrays, it is possible that while your host is rebooting the array controller could failover the path that a particular target is using. In this scenario, [fsck\(1M\)](#) will fail to open the physical path listed in `/etc/vfstab`. The `svc:/system/filesystem/local:default` SMF service will transition to a maintenance state as a result. To rectify this, consult the documentation for your storage array to failback the path. The [mpathadm\(1M\)](#) can assist with determining the active and passive path(s).

**Limitations** On x86 platforms, the current Solaris release does not support disabling Solaris I/O multipathing of boot devices attached by means of fibre channel. Solaris I/O multipathing is always enabled for supported fibre channel-attached boot devices. Disabling Solaris I/O multipathing in this situation must be performed on a per-port basis. See [fp\(7d\)](#).

Executing `devfsadm -C` removes obsolete device entries that `stmsboot` relies on. This will prevent correct operation of the `-d` option for boot devices (regardless of platform type) and the `-L` option.

**Name** strace – print STREAMS trace messages

**Synopsis** strace [*mid sid level*]...

**Description** `strace` without arguments writes all STREAMS event trace messages from all drivers and modules to its standard output. These messages are obtained from the STREAMS log driver (see [log\(7D\)](#)). If arguments are provided, they must be in triplets of the form *mid*, *sid*, *level*, where *mid* is a STREAMS module ID number, *sid* is a sub-ID number, and *level* is a tracing priority level. Each triplet indicates that tracing messages are to be received from the given module/driver, sub-ID (usually indicating minor device), and priority level equal to, or less than the given level. The token `all` may be used for any member to indicate no restriction for that attribute.

The format of each trace message output is:

```
<seq> <time> <ticks> <level> <flags> <mid> <sid> <text>
```

```
<seq> trace sequence number
```

```
<time> time of message in hh:mm:ss
```

```
<ticks> time of message in machine ticks since boot
```

```
<level> tracing priority level
```

```
<flags> E : message is also in the error log
 F : indicates a fatal error
 N : mail was sent to the system administrator (hardcoded as root)
```

```
<mid> module ID number of source
```

```
<sid> sub-ID number of source
```

```
<text> formatted text of the trace message
```

Once initiated, `strace` will continue to execute until terminated by the user.

**Examples** **EXAMPLE 1** A sample output of the `strace` command:

The following example outputs all trace messages from the module or driver whose module ID is 41:

```
strace 41 all all
```

The following example outputs those trace messages from driver or module ID 41 with sub-IDs 0, 1, or 2:

```
strace 41 0 1 41 1 1 41 2 0
```

Messages from sub-IDs 0 and 1 must have a tracing level less than or equal to 1. Those from sub-ID 2 must have a tracing level of 0.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

**See Also** [attributes\(5\)](#), [log\(7D\)](#)

*STREAMS Programming Guide*

- Notes**
- There is no restriction to the number of `strace` processes opening the STREAMS log driver at a time.
  - The log-driver records the list of the triplets specified in the command invocation, and compares each potential trace message against this list to decide if it should be formatted and sent up to the `strace` process. Hence, long lists of triplets will have a greater impact on overall STREAMS performance. Running `strace` will have the most impact on the timing of the modules and drivers generating the trace messages that are sent to the `strace` process. If trace messages are generated faster than the `strace` process can handle them, some of the messages will be lost. This last case can be determined by examining the sequence numbers on the trace messages output.

**Name** strclean – STREAMS error logger cleanup program

**Synopsis** strclean [-a *age*] [-d *logdir*]

**Description** strclean is used to clean up the STREAMS error logger directory on a regular basis (for example, by using cron). By default, all files with names matching `error.*` in `/var/adm/streams` that have not been modified in the last three days are removed.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- a *age*        The maximum age in days for a log file can be changed using the -a option.
- d *logdir*     A directory other than `/var/adm/streams` can be specified using the -d option.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 A sample of using the strclean command.

This example has the same result as running strclean with no arguments:

```
example% strclean -d /var/adm/streams -a 3
```

**Files** /var/adm/streams/error.\*

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

**See Also** [cron\(1M\)](#), [strerr\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

*STREAMS Programming Guide*

**Notes** strclean is typically run from cron on a daily or weekly basis.

**Name** strerr – STREAMS error logger daemon

**Synopsis** strerr

**Description** strerr receives error log messages from the STREAMS-based log driver (see [log\(7D\)](#)) and appends them to a log file. The resultant error log files reside in the directory `/var/adm/streams`, and are named `error.mm-dd`, where *mm* is the month and *dd* is the day of the messages contained in each log file.

The format of an error log message is:

```
<seq> <time> <ticks> <flags> <mid> <sid> <text>
```

<seq> error sequence number

<time> time of message in hh:mm:ss

<ticks> time of message in machine ticks since boot priority level

<flags> T : the message was also sent to a tracing process F : indicates a fatal error N : send mail to the system administrator (hardcoded as root)

<mid> module ID number of source

<sid> sub-ID number of source

<text> formatted text of the error message

Messages that appear in the error log are intended to report exceptional conditions that require the attention of the system administrator. Those messages which indicate the total failure of a STREAMS-based driver or module should have the F flag set. Those messages requiring the immediate attention of the administrator will have the N flag set, which causes the error logger to send the message to the system administrator using `mail`. The priority level usually has no meaning in the error log but will have meaning if the message is also sent to a tracer process.

Once initiated, strerr continues to execute until terminated by the user. It is commonly executed asynchronously.

**Files** `/var/adm/streams/error.mm-dd` error log file.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

**See Also** [attributes\(5\)](#), [log\(7D\)](#)

*STREAMS Programming Guide*



**Notes** There is no restriction to the number of `strerr` processes opening the STREAMS-based log driver at a time.

If a module or driver is generating a large number of error messages, running the error logger will cause a degradation in STREAMS performance. If a large burst of messages are generated in a short time, the log driver may not be able to deliver some of the messages. This situation is indicated by gaps in the sequence numbering of the messages in the log files.

**Name** sttydefs – maintain line settings and hunt sequences for TTY ports

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/sttydefs -a *ttlabel* [-b] [-f *final-flags*]  
 [-i *initial-flags*] [-n *nextlabel*]  
 /usr/sbin/sttydefs -l [*ttlabel*]  
 /usr/sbin/sttydefs -r *ttlabel*

**Description** sttydefs is an administrative command that maintains the line settings and hunt sequences for the system's TTY ports by making entries in, and deleting entries from the /etc/ttydefs file.

sttydefs with a -a or -r option may be invoked only by the super-user. sttydefs with -l may be invoked by any user on the system.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- a *ttlabel* Add a record to the `tttydefs` file, using *ttlabel* as its label. The following describes the effect of the -b, -n, -i, or -f options when used in conjunction with the -a option:
- b Enable autobaud. Autobaud allows the system to set the line speed of a given TTY port to the line speed of the device connected to the port without the user's intervention.
- f *final-flags* Specify the value to be used in the *final-flags* field in /etc/ttydefs. *final-flags* must be in a format recognized by the stty command. *final-flags* are the `termio(7I)` settings used by `ttymon` after receiving a successful connection request and immediately before invoking the service on the port. If this option is not specified, sttydefs will set *final-flags* equal to the `termio(7I)` flags 9600 and sane.
- i *initial-flags* Specify the value to be used in the *initial-flags* field in /etc/ttydefs. *initial-flags* must be in a format recognized by the stty command. These flags are used by `ttymon` when searching for the correct baud rate. They are set prior to writing the prompt. If this option is not specified, sttydefs will set *initial-flags* equal to the `termio(7I)` flag 9600.
- n *nextlabel* Specify the value to be used in the *nextlabel* field in /etc/ttydefs. If this option is not specified, sttydefs will set *nextlabel* equal to *ttlabel*.
- l [*ttlabel*] If a *ttlabel* is specified, sttydefs displays the record from /etc/ttydefs whose TTY label matches the specified *ttlabel*. If no *ttlabel* is specified, sttydefs displays the entire contents of /etc/ttydefs. sttydefs verifies that each entry it displays is correct and that the entry's *nextlabel* field references an existing
- r *ttlabel* Remove any record in the `tttydefs` file that has *ttlabel* as its label.

**Output** If successful, `sttydefs` will exit with a status of 0. `sttydefs -l` will generate the requested information and send it to standard output.

**Examples** **EXAMPLE 1** A sample of `sttydefs` command.

The following command lists all the entries in the `ttydefs` file and prints an error message for each invalid entry that is detected.

```
example# sttydefs -l
```

The following shows a command that requests information for a single label and its output:

```
example# sttydefs -l 9600

9600:9600 hupcl erase ^h:9600 sane ixany tab3 hupcl erase ^h::4800

ttylabel: 9600
initial flags: 9600 hupcl erase ^h
final flags: 9600 sane ixany tab3 hupcl erase ^h
autobaud: no
nextlabel: 4800
```

The following sequence of commands will add the labels 1200, 2400, 4800, and 9600 and put them in a circular list:

```
sttydefs -a 1200 -n 2400 -i 1200 -f "1200 sane"
sttydefs -a 2400 -n 4800 -i 2400 -f "2400 sane"
sttydefs -a 4800 -n 9600 -i 4800 -f "4800 sane"
sttydefs -a 9600 -n 1200 -i 9600 -f "9600 sane"
```

**Files** /etc/ttydefs

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

**See Also** [attributes\(5\)](#), [termio\(7I\)](#)

**Name** su – become superuser or another user

**Synopsis** su [-] [*username* [arg...]]

**Description** The su command allows one to become another user without logging off or to assume a role. The default user *name* is root (superuser).

To use su, the appropriate password must be supplied (unless the invoker is already root). If the password is correct, su creates a new shell process that has the real and effective user ID, group IDs, and supplementary group list set to those of the specified *username*. Additionally, the new shell's project ID is set to the default project ID of the specified user. See [getproject\(3PROJECT\)](#), [setproject\(3PROJECT\)](#). The new shell will be the shell specified in the shell field of *username*'s password file entry (see [passwd\(4\)](#)). If no shell is specified, /usr/bin/sh is used (see [sh\(1\)](#)). If superuser privilege is requested and the shell for the superuser cannot be invoked using [exec\(2\)](#), /sbin/sh is used as a fallback. To return to normal user ID privileges, type an EOF character (CTRL-D) to exit the new shell.

Any additional arguments given on the command line are passed to the new shell. When using programs such as sh, an *arg* of the form `-c string` executes *string* using the shell and an *arg* of `-r` gives the user a restricted shell.

To create a login environment, the command “su -” does the following:

- In addition to what is already propagated, the LC\* and LANG environment variables from the specified user's environment are also propagated.
- Propagate TZ from the user's environment. If TZ is not found in the user's environment, su uses the TZ value from the TIMEZONE parameter found in /etc/default/login.
- Set MAIL to /var/mail/new\_user.

If the first argument to su is a dash (-), the environment will be changed to what would be expected if the user actually logged in as the specified user. Otherwise, the environment is passed along, with the exception of \$PATH, which is controlled by PATH and SUPATH in /etc/default/su.

All attempts to become another user using su are logged in the log file /var/adm/sulog (see [sulog\(4\)](#)).

**Security** su uses [pam\(3PAM\)](#) with the service name su for authentication, account management, and credential establishment.

**Examples** **EXAMPLE 1** Becoming User bin While Retaining Your Previously Exported Environment

To become user bin while retaining your previously exported environment, execute:

```
example% su bin
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Becoming User bin and Changing to bin's Login Environment

To become user bin but change the environment to what would be expected if bin had originally logged in, execute:

```
example% su - bin
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Executing command with user bin's Environment and Permissions

To execute command with the temporary environment and permissions of user bin, type:

```
example% su - bin -c "command args"
```

**Environment Variables** Variables with LD\_ prefix are removed for security reasons. Thus, su bin will not retain previously exported variables with LD\_ prefix while becoming user bin.

If any of the LC\_\* variables ( LC\_CTYPE, LC\_MESSAGES, LC\_TIME, LC\_COLLATE, LC\_NUMERIC, and LC\_MONETARY) (see [environ\(5\)](#)) are not set in the environment, the operational behavior of su for each corresponding locale category is determined by the value of the LANG environment variable. If LC\_ALL is set, its contents are used to override both the LANG and the other LC\_\* variables. If none of the above variables are set in the environment, the "C" (U.S. style) locale determines how su behaves.

LC_CTYPE	Determines how su handles characters. When LC_CTYPE is set to a valid value, su can display and handle text and filenames containing valid characters for that locale. su can display and handle Extended Unix Code (EUC) characters where any individual character can be 1, 2, or 3 bytes wide. su can also handle EUC characters of 1, 2, or more column widths. In the "C" locale, only characters from ISO 8859-1 are valid.
LC_MESSAGES	Determines how diagnostic and informative messages are presented. This includes the language and style of the messages, and the correct form of affirmative and negative responses. In the "C" locale, the messages are presented in the default form found in the program itself (in most cases, U.S. English).

<b>Files</b>	\$HOME/.profile	user's login commands for sh and ksh
	/etc/passwd	system's password file
	/etc/profile	system-wide sh and ksh login commands
	/var/adm/sulog	log file
	/etc/default/su	the default parameters in this file are:
	SULOG	If defined, all attempts to su to another user are logged in the indicated file.

CONSOLE	If defined, all attempts to su to root are logged on the console.
PATH	Default path. (/usr/bin:)
SUPATH	Default path for a user invoking su to root. (/usr/sbin:/usr/bin)
SYSLOG	Determines whether the <a href="#">syslog(3C)</a> LOG_AUTH facility should be used to log all su attempts. LOG_NOTICE messages are generated for su's to root, LOG_INFO messages are generated for su's to other users, and LOG_CRIT messages are generated for failed su attempts.

/etc/default/login the default parameters in this file are:

TIMEZONE Sets the TZ environment variable of the shell.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

**See Also** [csh\(1\)](#), [env\(1\)](#), [ksh\(1\)](#), [login\(1\)](#), [roles\(1\)](#), [sh\(1\)](#), [syslogd\(1M\)](#), [exec\(2\)](#), [getproject\(3PROJECT\)](#), [setproject\(3PROJECT\)](#), [pam\(3PAM\)](#), [pam\\_authenticate\(3PAM\)](#), [pam\\_acct\\_mgmt\(3PAM\)](#), [pam\\_setcred\(3PAM\)](#), [pam.conf\(4\)](#), [passwd\(4\)](#), [profile\(4\)](#), [sulog\(4\)](#), [syslog\(3C\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#)

**Name** sulogin – access single-user mode

**Synopsis** sulogin

**Description** The `su`login utility is automatically invoked by `init` when the system is first started. It prompts the user to type a user name and password to enter system maintenance mode (single-user mode) or to type EOF (typically CTRL-D) for normal startup (multi-user mode). The user should never directly invoke `su`login. The user must have the `solaris.system.maintenance` authorization.

The `su`login utility can prompt the user to enter the root password on a variable number of serial console devices, in addition to the traditional console device. See [consadm\(1m\)](#) and [msglog\(7D\)](#) for a description of how to configure a serial device to display the single-user login prompt.

**Files** /etc/default/sulogin

Default value can be set for the following flag:

PASSREQ

Determines if login requires a password. Default is PASSREQ=YES.

/etc/default/login

Default value can be set for the following flag:

SLEEPTIME

If present, sets the number of seconds to wait before login failure is printed to the screen and another login attempt is allowed. Default is 4 seconds. Minimum is 0 seconds. Maximum is 5 seconds.

Both [su\(1M\)](#) and [login\(1\)](#) are affected by the value of SLEEPTIME.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsr

**See Also** [auths\(1\)](#), [login\(1\)](#), [consadm\(1m\)](#), [init\(1M\)](#), [su\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [msglog\(7D\)](#)

**Notes** By default, the root user has all authorizations.

Granting the `solaris.system.maintenance` authorization to the Console User Rights Profile may have an undesirable side effect of granting the currently logged in user maintenance mode access. The `solaris.system.maintenance` authorization should be directly granted to appropriate users rather than through the Console User Rights Profile.

**Name** suninstall – install the Solaris operating system

**Synopsis** suninstall

**Description** [install-solaris\(1M\)](#) is now the preferred command for starting and restarting the Solaris Installation program. It should be used instead of `suninstall`. `suninstall` is symbolically linked to `install-solaris`.

`suninstall` is a forms-based and graphical subsystem for installing the operating system.

`suninstall` exists only on the Solaris installation media (CD or DVD) and should only be invoked from there. Refer to the *Solaris 10 Installation Guide: Basic Installations* for more details.

`suninstall` allows installation of the operating system onto any standalone system. `suninstall` loads the software available on the installation media. Refer to the *Solaris 10 Installation Guide: Basic Installations* for disk space requirements.

**Usage** Refer to the *Solaris 10 Installation Guide: Basic Installations* for more information on the various menus and selections.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcdrom (Solaris installation media)

**See Also** [pkginfo\(1\)](#), [install\(1M\)](#), [install-solaris\(1M\)](#), [pkgadd\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

*Solaris 10 Installation Guide: Basic Installations*

**Notes** It is advisable to exit `suninstall` by means of the exit options in the `suninstall` menus.



**Name** SUNWgfb\_config – fbconfig module for configuring Sun XVR-1000 Graphics Accelerator

**Synopsis** fbconfig [-dev *device-filename*]  
 [-active a | b | both | auto]  
 [-res *video-mode* [now | try] [noconfirm]]  
 [-file machine | system]  
 [-doublewide enable | disable | reverse]  
 [-doublehigh enable | disable | reverse]  
 [-multisample enable | disable | auto [static | dynamic]]  
 [-samples *samples-per-pixel*]  
 [-g *gamma-correction-value*] [-master a | b | input]  
 [-clearpixel0 | 255]

fbconfig [-dev *device-filename*] -stream a | b  
 [-port hd15 | dvid | svideo | auto]  
 [-res *video-mode* [now | try] [noconfirm]]  
 [-file machine | system]  
 [-offset *xoff-value* [*yoff-value*]]  
 [-slave [enable | disable] [internal | external]]

fbconfig [-dev *device-filename*] -defaults

fbconfig [-dev *device-filename*]  
 [-propt | -prconf | -res \?]

fbconfig [-help | -list]

**Description** SUNWgfb\_config is the Sun XVR-1000 Graphics Accelerator device dependent layer for [fbconfig\(1M\)](#). It configures the Sun XVR-1000 Graphics Accelerator and some of the X11 window system defaults. The device can drive two monitors, each with a unique video stream (called stream a and stream b).

The first form of SUNWgfb\_config shown in the synopsis above sets card options, which are options common to both stream a and stream b, and apply to the entire card.

The second form is used to set stream options, which are options specific to either stream a or stream b. The second form usage requires the -stream option to define which stream is affected.

Both the first form and the second form store the specified options in the OWconfig file. These options will be used to initialize the device the next time the window system is run on that device. Updating options in the OWconfig file provides persistence of these options across window system sessions and system reboots. For -res with now or try, -slave, -master, -port, and -g, the device will be immediately programmed.

The third form, which invokes the -defaults option, sets all card options and all stream options to their default values and saves these defaults in the OWconfig file.

The fourth form, which invokes the -prconf, -propt, and -res \? options, queries the device for status that is card-specific.

The fifth form, which invokes the `-help`, and `-list` options, provides instruction on using `SUNWgfb_config` and a list of available devices. Additionally for the fifth form, all other options are ignored.

You can specify options for only one device at a time. Specifying options for multiple devices requires multiple invocations of `SUNWgfb_config`.

Only Sun XVR-1000 Graphics Accelerator-specific options can be specified through `SUNWgfb_config`. The normal window system options for specifying default depth, default visual class, and so forth are still specified as device modifiers on the command line when the X server is started.

You can also specify the `OWconfig` file that is to be updated. By default, the machine-specific file in the `/etc/openwin` directory tree is updated. You can use the `-file` option to specify an alternate file. For example, the system-global `OWconfig` file in the `/usr/openwin` directory tree can be updated instead.

<b>General Options</b>	<code>-dev <i>device-filename</i></code>	Specifies the device's special file. The default is <code>/dev/fb</code> .
	<code>-file <i>machine system</i></code>	Specifies which <code>OWconfig</code> file to update. If <i>machine</i> is specified, the machine-specific <code>OWconfig</code> file in the <code>/etc/openwin</code> directory tree is updated. If <i>system</i> is specified, the global <code>OWconfig</code> file in the <code>/usr/openwin</code> directory tree is updated. If the specified file does not exist, it is created. This option has no effect unless other options are specified. The default is <i>machine</i> .
	<code>-res <i>video-mode</i>[<i>now   try</i>] [<i>noconfirm</i>]</code>	Specifies the video mode used to drive the monitor connected to the specified device. If <code>-res</code> is invoked with <i>now</i> or <i>try</i> , you must specify a <code>-stream</code> option or a device, such as <code>/dev/fbs/gfb0a</code> . If <code>-active</code> is set to both or <i>auto</i> , then both stream <i>video-mode</i> values will be modified.  The <i>video-mode</i> argument specifies resolution and timing information for the display (for example, <code>SUNW_STD_1280x1024x76</code> ). The naming convention for the <i>video-mode</i> specifier is:  <i>origin_type_widthxheightxrate</i>  The elements of the specifier are described as follows:

<i>origin</i>	This can be one of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ SUNW, Sun derived resolution</li> <li>▪ VESA, Video Electronics Standards Association-derived resolution</li> <li>▪ other, other source</li> </ul>
<i>type</i>	This can be one of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ STD, normal resolution, usable by most display devices</li> <li>▪ DIG, resolution tuned only for LCD flat panels</li> <li>▪ INT, interlaced</li> <li>▪ STEREO, stereo</li> </ul>
<i>width</i>	screen width in pixels
<i>height</i>	screen height in pixels
<i>rate</i>	vertical frequency of the screen refresh

Note that some video-modes supported by the device, might not be supported by the monitor. The list of video-modes supported by the device and the monitor can be obtained by running `SUNWgfb_config` with the `- res \?` option (the fourth form shown in the command synopsis above).

The `- res` option also accepts additional, optional arguments, listed below, immediately following the video mode specification. Either `now` or `try` (`try` subsumes `now`) and `noconfirm` can be present.

*now*            If present, not only is the video mode updated in the `OWconfig` file, but the device is immediately programmed to display this video mode. This is useful for changing the video mode before starting the window system.

**Note** – It is recommended that you not use this suboption with `SUNWgfb_config` while the configured device is being used (for example, while running the window system). Unpredictable results can occur. To run `SUNWgfb_config` with the `now` suboption, first bring the window system down. If the `now` suboption is used within a window system session, the video mode is changed immediately, but the width and height of the affected screen do not change until the window system is exited and reentered. In addition, the system might not recognize changes in stereo mode.

`noconfirm` Using the `-res` option, the user can put the system into an unusable state, with no video output. To reduce the chance of this, the default behavior of `SUNWgfb_config` is to display a warning message and to ask the user whether to continue. The `noconfirm` bypasses this confirmation. This option is useful when `SUNWgfb_config` is being run from a shell script.

`try` If present, the specified video mode will be programmed on a trial basis. The user is asked to confirm the video mode by typing `y` within 10 seconds. Alternatively, the user can

terminate the trial before 10 seconds elapse by typing any character other than **y** or carriage return. Such input is considered a no and the previous video mode is restored. With a negative response, `SUNWgfb_config` does not change the video mode in the `OWconfig` file; other options specified still take effect. If a carriage return is typed, the user is asked (**y** or **n**) whether to keep the new video mode.

This sub-option should not be used with `SUNWgfb_config` while the configured device is being used (for example, while running the window system) as unpredictable results may occur. To run `SUNWgfb_config` with the `try` sub-option, the window system should be brought down first.

`-defaults`

Resets all option values to their default values. Writes these values to the `OWconfig` file.

`-propt`

Displays the current values of all options in the `OWconfig` file specified by the `-file` option for the device specified by the `-dev` option. Displays the values of options as they will be in the `OWconfig` file after the call to `SUNWgfb_config` completes. The following is an example display:

```
--- OpenWindows Configuration for /dev/fbs/gfb0 ---
OWconfig: machine
Active Streams: both
Samples Per Pixel: 2
Multisample Allocation Model: static
```

Multisample Mode: auto  
 Doublewide: disable  
 Gamma Correction Value: 2.22

--- OpenWindows Configuration for Stream a ---  
 Video Mode: SUNW\_STD\_1280x1024x76

--- OpenWindows Configuration for Stream b ---  
 Video Mode: VESA\_STD\_640x480x60

-prconf Displays the XVR-1000 hardware  
configuration. The following is an example  
display:

```
--- Hardware Configuration for /dev/fb (SUNWgfb0) ---
Type: Sun Graphics Accelerator
Part: 501-5865
Memory:
 MAJC: 32MB
 Texture: 256MB total
 3DRAM64: 5.0M pixels
```

Versions: FCode 1.14 MCode 0.19 MAJC 2.1 FBC3 3.0 XChip 2.0

Video Streams:

```
Stream a
 Current resolution Setting: SUNW_STD_1280x1024x76
 Monitor/EDID data (13W3)
 Monitor Manufacturer: SUN
 Monitor Name: GDM-5410
 EDID: Version 1, Revision 2

Stream b
 Current resolution Setting: VESA_STD_640x480x60
 Port: svideo
```

-help Displays a list of the SUNWgfb\_config  
command line options, along with a brief  
explanation of each.

-res \? Displays list of defined *video-mode* names.

### Card Options

-active a | b | both | auto  
 Specifies which streams are enabled. both select both streams. The default is auto, which means whichever stream is chosen by the console.

-multisample enable | disable | auto [ static | dynamic ]  
 The suboptions for -multisample are described as follows:  
 disable No multisample is possible.

- 
- enable      Multisample is possible but is selected on a per-application basis.
  - auto        All Sun OpenGL applications are rendered using multisampling.
  - static      Multisample allocation occurs at X startup/config load time. The config *samples-per-pixel* or *max* parameter specifies the depth that is pre-allocated.
  - dynamic     OpenGL tasks allocate buffers themselves.
- samples *samples-per-pixel*  
 Specifies the number of samples/pixel to pre-allocate in static mode. Provides a hint to OpenGL in dynamic mode. The allowable choices for *samples-per-pixel* are 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 8, 10, 16, and max. The default is max, which means to use the maximum number of samples that can be supported with the amount of memory available.
- doublewide enable | disable | reverse  
 This option makes it easy for you to combine both streams into one side-by-side virtual display. If you specify enable, stream a is to the left of stream b. If reverse is specified, stream b is to the left of stream a. Both will be the same resolution defined with the -res option. If you specify disable, only one stream will be enabled. -doublewide precludes -doublehigh.
- doublehigh enable | disable | reverse  
 This option makes it easy for you to combine both streams into one virtual display, with one monitor on a shelf above the other. If you specify enable, stream a is above stream b. If reverse is specified, stream b is above stream a. Both will be the same resolution defined with the -res option. If you specify disable, only one stream will be enabled. -doublehigh precludes -doublewide.
- g *gamma-correction value*  
 This option changes the gamma correction value. By default the gamma correction value is 2.22. Any value less than zero is illegal. This option can be used while the window system is running. Changing the gamma correction value will affect all the windows being displayed using gamma-corrected visuals. The gamma correction value is also saved in the *OWconfig* file for the next time the window system starts.
- master a | b | input  
 This option controls the setting frame pins on the stereo/sync connector on the device. It also controls which stream drives stereo glasses, which attach to the same connector.
- If a (the default) or b is selected, the card is setup to be a sync master, and the frame sync signal from the corresponding stream will be sent out this connector.
- If you select input, the card is setup to take its frame sync from another card through this connector. This sync can then be used to sync either or both streams by setting the stream-specific -slave option(s) to external.
- If stereo glasses are used, the a or b options select which stream is used for the sync signal to the glasses.

`-clearpixel 0 | 255`

Selects the overlay transparent color. This is the pixel value (color index) used by the transparent overlay visual to display the underlay (RGB) pixel contents. The default is 255 (all bits 1), but some applications require 0. All other color indices display a colormap color.

**Stream Options** `-stream a | b`

Specifies for which stream options will be set. It is a required option for each of the other options in this section. It is optional for `-res`. Only one `-stream` option can be specified.

`-port hd15 | dvid | svideo | auto`

Directs stream `b` to the appropriate output connector: `hd-15`, `dvid`, or `svideo`. If `auto`, then the output connector for stream `b` is selected by the console. Stream `a` is always output through the 13W3 connector.

`-offset xoff-value [yoff-value]`

Offsets the display of the stream (specified by `-stream`) relative to the adjoining edge of the other stream when `doublewide` or `doublehigh` is enabled. This can be used to cause an overlap.

*xoff-value*      Number of pixels offset in horizontal direction for the right-hand stream when `doublewide` is enabled. Positive direction is to the right (create a gap); negative is to the left (overlap the streams). Default is 0, which means the two edges touch.

*yoff-value*      Number of pixels offset in vertical direction for the bottom stream when `doublehigh` is enabled. Positive direction is down (create a gap); negative is up (overlap the streams). Default is 0, which means the two edges touch.

`-slave [enable | disable] [internal | external]`

This option allows you to specify the sync source for the specified stream. `internal` indicates that the sync source is the other stream of this device. `external` indicates the sync is taken from a source outside the device. If you use `external`, you also need to use the card option `-master input`.

**Defaults** For a given invocation of `SUNWgfb_config`, if an option does not appear on the command line, the corresponding `OWconfig` option is not updated. It retains its previous value.

When the window system is run, if an option has never been specified through `SUNWgfb_config`, a default value is used. The option defaults are as follows:

Option	Default
<code>-dev</code>	<code>/dev/fb</code>
<code>-file</code>	<code>machine</code>
<code>-res</code>	<code>none</code>



---

-samples	max
-multisample	enable/dynamic
-clearpixel	255
-master	a
-slave	disable/external
-doublewide	not set
-g	2.22
-active	auto
-port	auto
-offset	0/0

---

The default for the `-res` option of `none` means that, when the window system is run, the screen resolution will be the video mode that is currently programmed in the device. This provides compatibility for users who are used to specifying the device resolution through the PROM.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Switching Resolution of a Monitor

The following example switches to the resolution of 1280 by 1024 at 76 Hz:

```
example% fbconfig -stream a -res -SUNW_STD_1280x1024x76
```

**Files** /usr/lib/fbconfig/SUNWgfb\_config device special file

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWgfbcf

**See Also** [fbconfig\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

See the `dtlogin(1)` man page in the CDE man page collection. Also useful is the `Xsun(1)` man page in the OpenWindows man page collection.

**Name** SUNWifb\_config – configure the Sun Expert3D Graphics Accelerator

**Synopsis** `/usr/lib/fbconfig/SUNWifb_config [-dev device-filename]  
 [-res video-mode [now | try] [noconfirm | nocheck]]  
 [-file machine | system] [-deflinear true | false]  
 [-defoverlay true | false]  
 [-linearorder first | last]  
 [-overlayorder first | last]  
 [-expvis enable | disable] [-slave enable | disable]  
 [-accum enable | disable] [-g gamma-correction-value]  
 [-gfile gamma-correction-file] [-propt] [-prconf]  
 [-defaults] [-slave] [] [-samples 1 | 2 | 4 | 8 | 16]  
 [-multisample enable | disable | auto]`

`/usr/lib/fbconfig/SUNWifb_config [-propt] [prconf]`

`/usr/lib/fbconfig/SUNWifb_config [-help] [-res \?]`

**Description** SUNWifb\_config configures the Sun Expert3D Graphics Accelerator, Sun Expert3D-Lite, and Sun XVR-500 Graphics Accelerators, and some of the X11 window system defaults for the graphics accelerator.

The first form of SUNWifb\_config shown in the synopsis above stores the specified options in the OWconfig file. These options will be used to initialize the Sun Expert3D device the next time the window system is run on that device. Updating options in the OWconfig file provides persistence of these options across window system sessions and system reboots.

The second and third forms of SUNWifb\_config, which invoke only the -prconf, -propt, -help, and -res \? options, do not update the OWconfig file. Additionally, for the third form of the command, all other options are ignored.

Options may be specified for only one Sun Expert3D device at a time. Specifying options for multiple Sun Expert3D devices requires multiple invocations of SUNWifb\_config.

Only options specific to the Sun Expert3D device can be specified through SUNWifb\_config. The normal window system options for specifying default depth, default visual class and so forth are still specified as device modifiers on the openwin command line (see the Xsun(1) manual page in the ).

**Options** The following options are supported:

<code>-dev <i>device-filename</i></code>	Specifies the Sun Expert3D special file. The default is <code>/dev/fbs/ifb0</code> .
<code>-file<i>machine</i>   system</code>	Specifies which OWconfig file to update. If <i>machine</i> is specified, the machine-specific OWconfig file in the <code>/etc/openwin</code> directory tree is updated. If <i>system</i> is specified, the global OWconfig file in the <code>/usr/openwin</code> directory tree is updated. If the

- res *video-mode*

specified file does not exist, it is created. This option has no effect unless other options are specified. The default is *machine*.

Specifies the video mode used to drive the monitor connected to the specified Sun Expert3D device.

The format of these built-in video modes is:

*widthxheightxrate* where *width* is the screen width in pixels, *height* is the screen height in pixels, and *rate* is the vertical frequency of the screen refresh. The s suffix of 960x680x112s and 960x680x108s means that these are stereo video modes. The i suffix of 640x480x60i and 768x575x50i designates interlaced video timing. If absent, non-interlaced timing will be used. As a convenience, - res also accepts formats with @ (at sign) in front of the refresh rate instead of x. For example: 1280x1024@76. Note that some video-modes supported by the Sun Expert3D device might not be supported by the monitor. The list of video-modes supported by the Sun Expert3D device and the monitor can be obtained by running SUNWifb\_config with the - res \? option (shown in the command synopsis above). The following is a list of all possible video-modes supported on the Sun Expert3D device:

1024x768x60  
1024x768x70  
1024x768x75  
1024x768x75  
1024x768x77  
1024x800x84  
1152x900x66  
1152x900x76  
1280x800x76  
1280x1024x60  
1280x1024x67  
1280x1024x76  
1280x1024x85  
1280x1024x112s  
(Stereo)  
960x680x112s (Stereo)  
960x680x108s (Stereo)  
640x480x60  
640x480x60i  
(Interlaced)  
768x575x50i  
(Interlaced)  
1440x900x76  
1600x1000x66  
1600x1000x76  
1600x1280x76  
1792x1344x75  
1920x1080x72  
1920x1200x70  
1920x1200x75

#### Symbolic names

For convenience, some of the above video modes have symbolic names defined for them. Instead of the form *width x height x rate*, one of these names may be supplied as the argument to `-res`. The meaning of the symbolic name `none` is that when the window system is run the screen resolution will be the

video mode that is currently programmed in the device.

Name	Corresponding Video Mode
----- svga	1024x768x60
1152	1152x900x76
1280	1280x1024x76
stereo	960x680x112s
ntsc	640x480x60i
pal	768x575x50i
none	(see text above)

The `res` option also accepts additional, optional arguments immediately following the video mode specification. Any or all of the following might be present.

`now`

If present, not only will the video mode be updated in the `OWconfig` file, but the Sun Expert3D device will be immediately programmed to display this video mode. (This is useful for changing the video mode before starting the window system).

Note that it is inadvisable to use this suboption with `SUNWfb_config` while the configured device is being used (for example, while running the window system); unpredictable results might occur. To run `SUNWfb_config` with the `now` suboption, first bring the window system down. If the `now` suboption is used within a window system

session, the video mode will be changed immediately, but the width and height of the affected screen will not change until the window system is exited and reentered again. In addition, the system may not recognize changes in stereo mode.

Consequently, this usage is strongly discouraged.

`noconfirm`

Using the `-res` option, the user could potentially put the system into an unusable state, a state where there is no video output. This can happen if there is ambiguity in the monitor sense codes for the particular code read. To reduce the chance of this, the default behavior of `SUNWifb_config` is to print a warning message to this effect and to prompt the user to find out if it is okay to continue. The `noconfirm` option instructs `SUNWifb_config` to bypass this confirmation and to program the requested video mode anyway. This option is useful when `SUNWifb_config` is being run from a shell script.

`nocheck`

If present, the normal error checking based on the monitor sense code (described above) will be suspended. The video mode specified by the user

will be accepted regardless of whether it is appropriate for the currently attached monitor. (This option is useful if a different monitor is to be connected to the Sun Expert3D device). Use of this option implies `noconfirm` as well.

`try`

If present, the specified video mode will be programmed on a trial basis. The user will be asked to confirm the video mode by typing `y` within 10 seconds. Or the user may terminate the trial before 10 seconds are up by typing any character. Any character other than `y` or carriage return is considered a no and the previous video mode will be restored and `SUNWifb_config` will not change the video mode in the `OWconfig` file (other options specified will still take effect). If a carriage return is typed, the user is prompted for a yes or no answer on whether to keep the new video mode.

This sub-option should not be used with `SUNWifb_config` while the configured device is being used (for example, while running the window system) as unpredictable results may occur. To run `SUNWifb_config` with the

`try` sub-option, the window system should be brought down first.

`-deflinear true | false`

The Sun Expert3D device possesses two types of visuals: linear and nonlinear. Linear visuals are gamma corrected and nonlinear visuals are not. There are two visuals that have both linear and nonlinear versions: 24-bit TrueColor and 8-bit StaticGray. If `true`, the default visual is set to the linear visual that satisfies other specified default visual selection options (specifically, the `Xsun(1)` `-defdepth` and `-defclass` options described in the ). If `false`, or if there is no linear visual that satisfies the other default visual selection options, the non-linear visual specified by these other options will be chosen to be the default. This option cannot be used when the `-defoverlay` option is present, because the Sun Expert3D does not possess a linear overlay visual.

`-defoverlay true | false`

The Sun Expert3D device provides an 8-bit PseudoColor visual whose pixels are disjoint from the rest of the Sun Expert3D visuals. This is called the overlay visual. Windows created in this visual will not damage windows created in other visuals. The converse, however, is not true. Windows created in other visuals will damage overlay windows. If the value of this option is `true`, the overlay visual will be made the default visual. If `false`, the nonoverlay visual that satisfies the other default visual selection options, such as `-defdepth` and `-defclass`, will be chosen as the default visual. See the `Xsun(1)` manual page in the . Whenever `-defoverlay true` is used, the default depth and class chosen on the `openwin` command line must be 8-bit PseudoColor. If not, a warning message will be printed and the `-defoverlay` option will be treated as `false`. This option cannot be used when the `-deflinear` option is present, because the Sun Expert3D device does not possess a linear overlay visual.

`-linearorder first | last`

If `first`, linear visuals will come before their non-linear counterparts on the X11 screen visual



---

	list for the Sun Expert3D screen. If <code>last</code> , the nonlinear visuals will come before the linear ones.
<code>-overlayorder first   last</code>	If <code>first</code> , the depth 8 PseudoColor Overlay visual will come before the non-overlay visual on the X11 screen visual list for the Sun Expert3D screen. If <code>last</code> , the non-overlay visual will come before the overlay one.
<code>-expvis enable   disable</code>	If enabled, OpenGL Visual Expansion will be activated. Multiple instances of selected visual groups (8-bit PseudoColor, 24-bit TrueColor, and so forth) can be found in the screen visual list.
<code>-slave enable   disable</code>	If enabled, the video for this frame buffer will be synced with the video of the display which is connected to it. For applications which support it buffers will also be swapped synchronously.
<code>-accum enable   disable</code>	If enabled, frame buffer memory is allocated for accelerated accumulation buffer for windows. If disabled, software accumulation buffering will be done for windows. Accelerated accumulation buffers for pBuffers are always available as memory allows.
<code>-g gamma-correction_value</code>	This option allows changing the gamma correction value. All linear visuals provide gamma correction. By default the gamma correction value is 2.22. Any value less than zero is illegal. The gamma correction value is applied to the linear visual, which then has an effective gamma value of 1.0, which is the value returned by <code>XSolarisGetVisualGamma()</code> . See <code>XSolarisGetVisualGamma(3)</code> for a description of that function. This option can be used while the window system is running. Changing the gamma correction value will affect all the windows being displayed using the linear visuals.
<code>-gfile gamma-correction_file</code>	This option loads gamma correction table from the specified file. This file should be formatted to provide the gamma correction values for R, G and B channels on each line. Each of these values should be in hexadecimal format and separated

from each other by at least one space. Also, this file should provide 1024 such triplets. An example of this file is as follows.

```
0x00 0x00 0x000
0x01 0x01 0x001
0x02 0x02 0x002
...
...
0x3ff 0x3ff 0x3ff
```

Using this option, the gamma correction table can be loaded while the window system is running. The new gamma correction will affect all the windows being displayed using the linear visuals. Note that, when gamma correction is being done using a user-specified table, the gamma correction value is undefined. By default, the window system assumes a gamma correction value of 2.22 and loads the gamma table it creates corresponding to this value.

`-defaults`

Resets all option values to their default values.

`-propt`

Prints the current values of all Sun Expert3D options in the `OWconfig` file specified by the `-file` option for the device specified by the `-dev` option. Prints the values of options as they will be in the `OWconfig` file after the call to `SUNWifb_config` completes. This is a typical display:

```
--- OpenWindows Configuration for /dev/fbs/ifb0 ---
OWconfig: machine
Video Mode: 1280x1024x76
Accum: Disabled (do not allocate an accumulation buffer)
Default Visual: Non-Linear Normal Visual
Visual Ordering: Linear Visuals are last
 Overlay Visuals are last
OpenGL Visual Expansion: enabled
Gamma Correction Value: 2.22
Gamma Correction Table: Available
```

`-prconf`

Prints the Sun Expert3D hardware configuration. This is a typical display:

```
--- Hardware Configuration for /dev/fbs/ifb0 ---
PROM Information: @(#)ifb.fth 1.25 99/10/12 SMI
EDID Data: Available - EDID version 1 revision 1
```

Monitor possible resolutions: 1024x768x60, 1024x768x70, 1024x768x75,  
1152x900x66, 1152x900x76, 1280x1024x67, 1280x1024x76, 960x680x112s,  
640x480x60  
Current resolution setting: 1280x1024x76

`-help` Prints a list of the `SUNWifb_config` command-line options, along with a brief explanation of each.

`-samples 1 | 2 | 4 | 8 | 16` Requested number of samples to compute per display pixel. The requested number of samples per pixel will be used if `-multisample` is not disabled and resources exist for the request.

Query the number of samples used with `-propt` (see above) or the `xglnfo` utility. The `xglnfo` utility can return the number of multisamples after you specify the option `-multisample enable`.

The default is 16.

`-multisample enable | disable | auto` If set to `disable`, no multisample is possible. If set to `enable`, multisample is possible but is selected on a per-window basis using a library interface. If set to `auto`, all Sun OpenGL windows are rendered using multisampling.

Query the number of samples used with `-propt` (see above) or the `xglnfo` utility. The `xglnfo` utility can return the number of multisamples if `-multisample` is set to `enable`.

The default is `disable`.

The `xglnfo` utility is shipped with the Sun OpenGL package, `SUNWglrt`. The man page for `xglnfo` is part of another Sun OpenGL package, `SUNWgl doc`.

**Defaults** For a given invocation of `SUNWifb_config` command line if an option does not appear on the command line, the corresponding `OWconfig` option is not updated; it retains its previous value. When the window system is run, if an Sun Expert3D option has never been specified via `SUNWifb_config`, a default value is used. The option defaults are as follows:

Option	Default
-----	
<code>-dev</code>	<code>/dev/fbs/ifb0</code>
<code>-file</code>	<code>machine</code>
<code>-res</code>	<code>none</code>
<code>-deflinear</code>	<code>false</code>
<code>-defoverlay</code>	<code>false</code>

```

-linearorder last
-overlayorder last
-expvis enable
-slave disable
-accum enable
-g 2.22
-samples 16
-multisample disable

```

The default for the `-res` option of none means that, when the window system is run, the screen resolution will be the video mode that is currently programmed in the device. This design choice provides compatibility for users who are used to specifying the device resolution through the PROM. On some devices (for example, GX), this is the only way of specifying the video mode. This means that the PROM ultimately determines the default Sun Expert3D video mode.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Changing Monitor Resolution

The following example switches the monitor type to the resolution of 1280 x 1024 at 76 Hz:

```
example% /usr/lib/fbconfig/SUNWifb_config -res 1280x1024x76
```

**Files** /dev/fbs/ifb0 device special file

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWifbcf

**See Also** [attributes\(5\)](#), [mmap\(2\)](#), [ifb\(7d\)](#), [fbio\(7I\)](#)

**Name** SUNWjfb\_config – fbconfig module for configuring the Sun XVR-600 and XVR-1200 Graphics Devices

**Synopsis** fbconfig [-dev *device-filename*]  
 [-res *video-mode* [now | try] [noconfirm | nocheck]]  
 [-file machine | system] [-deflinear true | false]  
 [-defoverlay true | false]  
 [-linearorder first | last]  
 [-outputs swapped | direct]  
 [-slave disable | multiview | stereo | bnc]  
 [-accum enable | disable] [-g *gamma-correction-value*]  
 [-gfile *gamma-correction-file*]  
 [-fake8 enable | disable]  
 [-doublewide enable | disable]  
 [-doublehigh enable | disable]  
 [-multisample available | disable | forceon]  
 [-samples 1 | 2 | 4 | 8 | 16 | adaptive]  
 [-defdepth 8 | 24] [-offset *xval yval*] [-propt]  
 [-prconf] [-defaults]  
  
 fbconfig [-propt] [-prconf]  
  
 fbconfig [-help] [-res ?]

**Description** SUNWjfb\_config configures the Sun XVR-600 and XVR-1200 Graphics Accelerator and some of the X11 window system defaults for the Sun XVR-600 and XVR-1200.

You can specify options for only one device at a time. If you want to specify options for multiple devices, you must invoke the SUNWjfb\_config utility multiple times.

You can use the SUNWjfb\_config utility to specify Sun XVR-600 or XVR-1200 specific options. Use the normal window system options to specify default depth, default visual class and so forth. Specify these as device modifiers on the command line. See Xsun(1)

You can also specify which OWconfig file to update. By default, SUNWjfb\_config updates the machine-specific file in the /etc/openwin. You can specify an alternate file by using the -file option. For example, the system-global OWconfig file in the /usr/openwin directory tree can be updated instead.

Both of these standard OWconfig files can only be written by root. Consequently, the SUNWjfb\_config program, which is owned by the root user, always runs with setuid root permission.

The first form of SUNWjfb\_config shown in the SYNOPSIS section stores the specified options in the OWconfig file. These options initialize the Sun XVR-600 and XVR-1200 device the next time the window system is run on that device. Updating options in the OWconfig file provides persistence of these options across window system sessions and system reboots.

The second and third forms which invoke only the `-prconf`, `-propt`, `-help`, and `-res ?` options, do not update the `OWconfig` file. Additionally, for the third form all other options are ignored.

**Options** The following options are supported:

`-accum enable | disable`

Enable or disable frame buffer memory. If enabled, frame buffer memory is allocated for the accelerated accumulation buffer for windows. If disabled, software accumulation buffering for windows is used. Accelerated accumulation buffers for pBuffers are always available as memory allows.

`-dev device-filename`

Specify the SunSun XVR-600 or XVR-1200 special file. The default is `/dev/fbs/jfb0`.

`-defaults`

Reset all option values except `-dev` to their default values.

This option sets the resolution override to none which implies the last video mode setting is preserved. If no monitor is attached, the video mode is set to 1152x900x66.

`-deflinear true | false`

Both the Sun XVR-600 and XVR-1200 possess two types of visuals: linear and nonlinear. Linear visuals are gamma corrected and nonlinear visuals are not. There are two visuals that have both linear and nonlinear versions: 24-bit TrueColor and 8-bit StaticGray.

If the value of this option is `true`, the default visual is set to the linear visual that satisfies other specified default visual selection options (specifically, the `Xsun defdepth` and `defclass` options; see `Xsun(1)`). If `false`, or if there is no linear visual that satisfies the other default visual selection options, the non-linear visual specified by these other options is chosen as the default visual. This option cannot be used when the `-defoverlay` option is present, because the Sun XVR-600 and XVR-1200 do not possess a linear overlay visual.

`-defoverlay true | false`

Both the Sun XVR-600 and XVR-1200 provide an 8-bit PseudoColor visual whose pixels are disjoint from the rest of the visuals. This is called the overlay visual. Windows created in this visual will not damage windows created in other visuals. The converse, however, is not true. Windows created in other visuals will damage overlay windows.

If the value of this option is `true`, the overlay visual is the default visual. If `false`, the nonoverlay visual that satisfies the other default visual selection options, such as `defdepth` and `defclass`, is chosen as the default visual. See `Xsun(1)`. Whenever `-defoverlay true` is used, the default depth and class chosen on the `openwin` command line must be 8-bit PseudoColor. If not, a warning message is printed and the `-defoverlay` option is treated as `false`. This option cannot be used when the `-deflinear` option is present, because the Sun XVR-600 and XVR-1200 do not possess a linear overlay visual.

**-defdepth 8 | 24**

Set the depth (bits per pixel) on the device. Possible values for the `-defdepth` option are 8 or 24. You must log out of the current window system session and log back in again for the change to take effect. Any depth setting in the Xserver command line takes precedence over what is set using `fbconfig`. The default is determined by the X Server `smf(5)` default depth property. You can query this property with the following command:

```
% /usr/sbin/svccfg -s svc:/application/x11/x11-server listprop \
'options/default_depth'
```

**-doublehigh enable | disable**

Configure the two outputs of the Sun XVR-1200 into one vertical virtual display. The default is `disable`.

This option is not applicable to the Sun XVR-600 device.

**-doublewide enable | disable**

Configure the two outputs of the Sun XVR-1200 into one horizontal virtual display. The default is `disable`.

This option is not applicable to the Sun XVR-600 device.

**-fake8 enable | disable**

Enable or disable simple 8 bit X windows to be rendered without a hardware colormap to reduce colormap flashing. You might notice performance reductions. The default is `disable`.

**-file machine|system**

Specifies which `OWconfig` file to update. If *machine* is specified, the machine-specific `OWconfig` file in the `/etc/openwin` directory tree is updated. If *system* is specified, the global `OWconfig` file in the `/usr/openwin` directory tree is updated. If the specified file does not exist, it is created. This option has no effect unless other options are specified. The default is *machine*.

**-g *gamma-correction value***

Change the gamma correction value. All linear visuals provide gamma correction. By default, the gamma correction value is 2.22. Any value less than zero is illegal. This option can be used while the window system is running. Changing the gamma correction value affects all of the windows displayed by linear visuals.

**-gfile *gamma-correction file***

Load the gamma correction table from the file specified by *gamma-correction file*. You should format this file to provide the gamma correction values for R, G, and B channels on each line. Specify each value in hexadecimal format and separate it from another value by at least 1 space. The *gamma-correction file* should provide 1024 such triplets.

You can load the gamma correction table with this option can while the window system is running. The new gamma correction affects all the window being displayed using the linear visuals. When gamma correction is done using a user specified table, the gamma correction

value is undefined. By default, the window system assumes a gamma correction value of 2.22 and loads the gamma table it creates corresponding to this value.

The following is an example of a *gamma-correction file* file:

```
0x000 0x000 0x000
0x001 0x001 0x001
0x002 0x002 0x002
...
...
0x3ff 0x3ff 0x3ff
```

**-help**

Print a list of the SUNWjfb\_config command line options, along with a brief explanation of each.

**-multisample available | disable | forceon**

If set to `disable`, no multisample is possible. If set to `available`, multisample is possible but is selected on a per-window basis using a library interface. If set to `forceon`, all Sun OpenGL windows are rendered using multisampling. Query the number of samples used with `-propt` or the `xglinf`(1) utility. The `xglinf` utility can return the number of multisamples if `-multisample` is set to enable. The default is `disable`.

**-offset *xval yval***

Adjust the position of the specified stream by the value specified. This option is only implemented in `-doublewide` and `-doublehigh` modes. For `-doublewide`, use the *xval* to position the rightmost stream. Negative is left (overlaps with the left stream). For `-doublehigh`, use the *yval* to position the bottom stream. Negative is up (overlaps with top stream). The default is `[0, 0]`.

**-outputs swapped | direct**

If either `-doublewide` or `-doublehigh` are enabled, reverse the position of the two outputs relative to each other. The default is `direct`.

**-propt**

Print the current values of all Sun XVR-600 and XVR-1200 options in the OWconfig file specified by the `-file` option for the device specified by the `-dev` option. Print the values of options as they will be in the OWconfig file after the call to SUNWjfb\_config completes.

This is a typical display:

```
fbconfig -dev jfb2 -propt

--- OpenWindows Configuration for /dev/fbs/jfb2 ---

OWconfig: machine
Video Mode: 1280x1024x60
Accum: Enabled (allocate an accumulation buffer if possible)

Multisample Information:
```



Multisample Mode: Disabled (multisample visuals  
will not be available)  
Samples Per Pixel: N/A (multisampling disabled)

Screen Information:  
DoubleWide: Disabled  
DoubleHigh: Disabled  
Output Configuration: Direct  
Offset/Overlap: [0, 0]

Visual Information:  
Default Visual: Non-Linear Normal Visual  
Visual Ordering: Linear Visuals are last  
Gamma Correction Value: 2.22  
Gamma Correction Table: Available  
Fake8 rendering: disabled  
Default Visual Depth (defdepth): 8

-prconf

Print the Sun XVR-1200 hardware configuration. This is a typical display:

```
fbconfig -dev jfb2 -prconf
```

```
--- Hardware Configuration for /dev/fbs/jfb2 ---
```

```
Type: XVR-1200
Sun Serial Number: 3753101000022
Hardware Revision: -01 rev01
Manufacture Date: Thu Aug 8 12:54:16 2002
PROM Information: @(#)jfb.fth 1.8 02/10/18 SMI
```

```
Monitor/Resolution Information:
 EDID Data: Available - EDID version 1 revision 3
 Monitor type: Sun P/N 365-1415 S/N 0216ME0353
 Current resolution setting: 1280x1024x60 (custom)
 Monitor possible resolutions: 1024x768x60, 1024x768x70,
 1024x768x75, 1152x900x66, 1280x1024x60, 1280x1024x75,
 1280x1024x76, 640x480x60, 800x600x75
```

```
FrameLock Configuration:
 Slave Mode: Disabled
```

```
Memory Information:
 Total Video Memory: 134217728
 Video Memory Used: 15728640
 Total Texture Memory: 268435456
 Texture Memory Used: 0
 Total Display List Memory: 33554432
```

`-res video-mode [ now | try [ noconfirm | nocheck ] ]`

Specify the video mode of the monitor connected to the specified Sun XVR-600 or XVR-1200 device.

The `-res` option requires you to specify the video-mode. You can specify *video-mode* in the format of *widthxheightxrate* or as a symbolic name.

*widthxheightxrate*

Specify *video-mode* in the format of *widthxheightxrate*, where *width* is the screen width in pixels, *height* is the screen height in pixels, and *rate* is the vertical frequency of the screen refresh.

You can use the `s` suffix to specify stereo video modes. The `s` suffix of `960x680x112s` and `960x680x108s` means that these are stereo video modes.

The `-res` option also accepts formats with `@` (at sign) in front of the refresh rate instead of `x`, (`280x1024@76`). Some video-modes, supported by Sun XVR-600 and XVR-1200, might not be supported by the monitor.

The list of video-modes supported by the Sun XVR-600 and XVR-1200 device and the monitor can be obtained by running `SUNWjfb_config` with the `-res ?` option. See SYNOPSIS.

### Symbolic Names

Some video modes have symbolic names defined for them. Instead of using the *widthxheightxrate* format, you can specify one of the symbolic names as the argument to the `-res` option. The meaning of the symbolic name `none` is that when the window system is run the screen resolution will be the video mode that is currently programmed in the device.

The following symbolic names and their corresponding video modes are supported:

<code>svga</code>	<code>1024x768x60</code>
<code>1152</code>	<code>1152x900x76</code>
<code>1280</code>	<code>1280x1024x76</code>
<code>stereo</code>	<code>960x680x112s</code>
<code>ntsc</code>	<code>640x480x60i</code>
<code>pal</code>	<code>768x575x50i</code>
<code>none</code>	Programmed video mode

The `-res` option accepts additional, optional arguments immediately following the video mode specification. The following additional, optional arguments are supported:

#### `now`

If present, updates the video mode to be updated in the `OWconfig` file. Programs the Sun XVR-600 or XVR-1200 device to display the video mode. This is useful for changing the video mode before starting the window system.

Do not use this suboption with `SUNWjfb_config` while the configured device is being used, for example, while running the window system. Unpredictable results can occur.

If you want to run `SUNWjfb_config` with the `now` suboption, first bring the window system down. If you use the `now` suboption within a window system session, the video mode is changed immediately. The width and height of the affected screen will not change until the window system is exited and re-entered again. Additionally, the system might not recognize changes in stereo mode. This usage is discouraged.

#### `noconfirm`

Using the `-res` option, the user could potentially put the system into an unusable state, a state where there is no video output. This can happen if there is ambiguity in the monitor sense codes for the particular code read. To reduce the chance of this, the default behavior of `SUNWjfb_config` is to print a warning message to this effect and to prompt the user to find out if it is okay to continue. The `-noconfirm` option instructs `SUNWjfb_config` to bypass this confirmation and to program the requested video mode anyway. This option is useful when `SUNWjfb_config` is run from a shell script.

#### `nocheck`

If present, the normal error checking based on the monitor sense code is suspended. The video mode specified is accepted regardless of whether it is appropriate for the currently attached monitor. This option is useful if a different monitor is to be connected to the Sun XVR-600 or XVR-1200 device. Use of this option implies `noconfirm`.

#### `try`

If present, programs the specified video mode on a trial basis. You are asked to confirm the video mode by entering a `y` within 10 seconds. You can terminate the trial before 10 seconds by entering any character but `y` or `RETURN`.

Terminating the trial by entering a character other than `y` or `RETURN` restores the previous video mode. `SUNWjfb_config` does not change the video mode in the `OWconfig` file. Other specified options still take effect. If a carriage return is typed, the user is prompted for a yes or no answer on whether to keep the new video mode. This option implies the `now` suboption.

If you want to run `SUNWjfb_config` with the `now` suboption, first bring the window system down. If you use the `now` suboption within a window system session, the video mode is changed immediately. The width and height of the affected screen will not change until the window system is exited and re-entered again. Additionally, the system might not recognize changes in stereo mode. This usage is strongly discouraged.

#### `-samples 1 | 4 | 8 | 16 | adaptive`

Request the number of samples to compute per display pixel. The requested number of samples per pixel will be used if `-multisample` is not disabled and resources exist for the request. If set to `adaptive`, variable multisampling is possible, with the minimum samples per pixel set to 2. Query the number of samples used with `-propt` or the `xglnfo(1)` utility. The `xglnfo` utility can return the number of multisamples after you specify the option `-multisample enable`. The default is 16.

`-slave disable | multiview | stereo | bnc`

Enable or disable a specific port. Specify `multiview` for the DB9 connector, `stereo` for the mini-DIN connector, or `bnc` for the bnc connector. Specify `disable` to disable a specific port. If set, the option is an exclusive slave instance in the Framelock Configuration Setup. The default is `disable`.

`multiview` and `bnc` are only applicable to the Sun XVR-1200 device.

**Defaults** For a given invocation of `SUNWjfb_config` command line if an option does not appear on the command line, the corresponding `OWconfig` option is not updated; it retains its previous value.

When the window system is run, if an option has never been specified by way of `SUNWjfb_config`, a default value is used. The options and their corresponding defaults are as follows:

Option	Default
<code>-dev</code>	<code>/dev/fbs/jfb0</code>
<code>-file</code>	<code>machine</code>
<code>-res</code>	<code>none</code>
<code>-deflinear</code>	<code>false</code>
<code>-defoverlay</code>	<code>false</code>
<code>-linearorder</code>	<code>last</code>
<code>-slave</code>	<code>disable</code>
<code>-accum</code>	<code>enable</code>
<code>-g</code>	<code>2.22</code>
<code>-samples</code>	<code>16</code>
<code>-multisample</code>	<code>disable</code>
<code>-doublewide</code>	<code>disable</code>
<code>-doublehigh</code>	<code>disable</code>
<code>-outputs</code>	<code>direct</code>
<code>-offset</code>	<code>[0,0]</code>

The default for the `-res` option of `none` means that when the window system is run the screen resolution will be the video mode that is currently programmed in the device.

This provides compatibility for users who are used to specifying the device resolution through the PROM. This means that the PROM ultimately determines the default video mode.

**Examples** **EXAMPLE 1** Switching the Resolution of the Monitor Type

The following example switches the monitor type to 1280 × 1024 at 76 Hz resolution:

```
example% fbconfig -dev jfb0 -res 1280x1024x76
```

**Files** /dev/fbs/jfbn

Device special file for the XVR-600 or XVR-1200 high performance single screen

/dev/fbs/jfbna

Device special file for the XVR-1200 first video out

/dev/fbs/jfbnb

Device special file for the XVR-1200 second video out

/usr/lib/jfb.unicode

jfb microcode file

/usr/sbin/jfbdaemon

jfb microcode loader file

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWjfbcf

**See Also** [fbconfig\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [mmap\(2\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [fbio\(7I\)](#), [jfb\(7D\)](#)

The Xsun (1) man page, which is not part of the SunOS man page collection.

**Name** SUNWkfb\_config – fbconfig module for configuring the Sun XVR-2500 Graphics Device

**Synopsis** `/usr/lib/fbconfig/SUNWkfb_config [-dev device-filename]`  
`[-res video-mode] [-file machine | system]`  
`[-deflinear true | false] [-defoverlay true | false]`  
`[-deftransparent true | false]`  
`[-slave disable | multiview]`  
`[-g gamma-correction-value]`  
`[-gfile gamma-correction-file]`  
`[-doublewide enable | disable]`  
`[-doublehigh enable | disable]`  
`[-multisample available | disable | forceon]`  
`[-samples 1 | 2 | 4 | 8 | 16] [-offset xval yval]`  
`[-propt] [-prconf] [-defaults]`

`/usr/lib/fbconfig/SUNWkfb_config [-propt] [-prconf]`

`/usr/lib/fbconfig/SUNWkfb_config [-help] [-res ?]`

**Description** SUNWkfb\_config configures the Sun XVR-2500 Graphics Accelerator and some of the X11 window system defaults for the Sun XVR-2500.

The first form of SUNWkfb\_config shown in the SYNOPSIS section stores the specified options in the OWconfig file. These options initialize the Sun XVR-2500 device the next time the window system is run on that device. Updating options in the OWconfig file provides persistence of these options across window system sessions and system reboots.

The second and third forms which invoke only the -prconf, -propt, -help, and -res ? options, do not update the OWconfig file. For the third form, all other options are ignored.

You can specify options for only one device at a time. If you want to specify options for multiple devices, invoke the SUNWkfb\_config utility multiple times.

Only the Sun XVR-2500 options can be specified through the SUNWkfb\_config utility. Use the normal window system options to specify default depth (see [svccfg\(1M\)](#)), default visual class and so forth. Specify these as device modifiers on the command line. See [Xsun\(1\)](#).

You can also specify which OWconfig file to update. By default, SUNWkfb\_config updates the machine-specific file in the /etc/openwin directory tree. Use the -file option to specify an alternate file. For example, the system-global OWconfig file in the /usr/openwin directory tree can be updated instead.

Both of these standard OWconfig files can only be written by root. Consequently, the SUNWkfb\_config program, which is owned by the root user, always runs with setuid root permission.

**Options** The following options are supported:

`-defaults`

Resets all option values except `-dev` to their default values. This option sets the resolution override to `none` which implies that the last video mode setting is preserved. If no monitor is attached, the video mode is set to 1152x900x66.

`-deflinear true | false`

This option selects the default X visual. The Sun XVR-2500 device supports two types of visuals: linear and nonlinear. Linear visuals are gamma corrected and nonlinear visuals are not.

If the value of this option is `true`, the default visual is set to default depth 24 and the default class is TrueColor with gamma correction enabled. If `false`, a non-linear visual that satisfies the other default visual selection options, such as the default depth and default class, is chosen as the default visual. See `Xsun(1)`.

The `-deflinear`, `-defoverlay`, and `-deftransparent` options all select the default X visual. Only one option may be enabled at the same time. If more than one of these options is entered, the last selection takes precedence and the other options are disabled.

`-defoverlay true | false`

This option selects the default X visual. The Sun XVR-2500 device provides an 8-bit PseudoColor visual whose pixels are disjoint from the rest of the visuals. This is called the overlay visual. Windows created in this visual will not damage windows created in other visuals. The converse, however, is not true. Windows created in other visuals will damage overlay windows.

If the value of this option is `true`, the overlay visual is the default visual. The default depth is 8 bit and the default class is PseudoColor. If `false`, the `nonoverlay`

visual that satisfies the other default visual selection options, such as the default depth and the default class, is chosen as the default visual. See Xsun(1).

The `-deflinear`, `-defoverlay`, and `-deftransparent` options all select the default X visual. Only one option may be enabled at the same time. If more than one of these options is entered, the last selection takes precedence and the other options are disabled.

`-deftransparent true | false`

This option selects the default X visual. The Sun XVR-2500 device provides an 8-bit PseudoColor visual whose pixels are disjoint from the rest of the visuals. This is called the overlay visual. Windows created in this visual will not damage windows created in other visuals.

If the value of this option is `true`, the overlay visual used as the default is a transparent overlay visual. A visual with transparency supports a colormap with 255 colors and one transparent pixel. The default depth is 8 bit and the default class is PseudoColor. If `false`, the nonoverlay visual that satisfies the other default visual selection options, such as the default depth and the default class, is chosen as the default visual. See Xsun(1).

The `-deflinear`, `-defoverlay`, and `-deftransparent` options all select the default X visual. Only one option may be enabled at the same time. If more than one of these options is entered, the last selection takes precedence and the other options are disabled.

`-dev device-filename`

Specifies the SunXVR-2500 special file. The default is `/dev/fbs/kfb0`.



- 
- doublehigh enable | disable  
Configures the two outputs of the Sun XVR-2500 device into one vertical virtual display. The default is `disable`.
- doublewide enable | disable  
Configures the two outputs of the Sun XVR-2500 device into one horizontal virtual display. The default is `disable`.
- file machine | system  
Specifies which `OWconfig` file to update. If *machine* is specified, the machine-specific `OWconfig` file in the `/etc/openwin` directory tree is updated. If *system* is specified, the global `OWconfig` file in the `/usr/openwin` directory tree is updated. If the specified file does not exist, it is created. This option has no effect unless other options are specified. The default is *machine*.
- g gamma-correction value  
Changes the gamma correction value. All linear visuals provide gamma correction. By default, the gamma correction value is 2.22. Any value less than zero is illegal. This option can be used while the window system is running. Changing the gamma correction value affects all of the windows displayed by linear visuals.
- gfile gamma-correction file  
Loads the gamma correction table from the file specified by *gamma-correction file*. Format this file to provide the gamma correction values for R, G, and B channels on each line. Specify each value in hexadecimal format, separated from another value by at least one space. The *gamma-correction file* file should provide 1024 such triplets.
- You can load the gamma correction table with this option while the window system is running. The new gamma correction affects all the windows being displayed using the linear visuals. When gamma correction is done using a user specified table, the gamma correction value is undefined. By default, the window system

assumes a gamma correction value of 2.22 and loads the gamma table it creates corresponding to this value.

The following is an example of a *gamma-correction file* file:

```
0x000 0x000 0x000
0x001 0x001 0x001
0x002 0x002 0x002
...
...
0x3ff 0x3ff 0x3ff
```

-help

Prints a list of the SUNWkfb\_config command line options, along with a brief explanation of each.

-multisample available | disable | forceon

If set to `disable`, no multisample is possible. If set to `available`, multisample is possible but is selected on a per-window basis using a library interface. If set to `forceon`, all Sun OpenGL windows are rendered using multisampling. Query the number of samples used with `-propt` or the `xglnfo(1)` utility. The `xglnfo` utility can return the number of multisamples if `-multisample` is set to `available`. The default is `disable`.

-offset *xval yval*

Adjusts the position of the specified stream by the value specified. This option is only implemented in `-doublewide` and `-doublehigh` modes. For `-doublewide`, use the *xval* to position the rightmost stream. Negative is left (overlaps with the left stream). For `-doublehigh`, use the *yval* to position the bottom stream. Negative is up (overlaps with top stream). The default is `[0, 0]`.

-prconf

Prints the Sun XVR-2500 hardware configuration. This is a typical display:

```
--- Hardware Configuration for /dev/fbs/kfb2 ---
```

```
Type: XVR-2500
```

```
PROM Information: @(#) xvr2500.fth 14.106 05/08/15 SMI
```

## Monitor/Resolution Information:

```

Monitor Manufacturer: SUN
Product code: 1352
Serial #: 7225675
Manufacture date: 1997, week 51
Monitor dimensions: 48x31 cm
Monitor preferred resolution: 1920x1200x70
Separate sync supported: yes
Composite sync supported: yes
EDID: Version 1, Revision 1
Supported resolutions: 1920x1200x70, SUNW_STD_1600x1000x76,
SUNW_STD_1600x1000x66, SUNW_STD_1440x900x76, 1920x1080x70,
1600x900x76, 1600x900x66, 1440x810x76, 1280x720x76,
1920x1080x72, VESA_STD_720x400x70, VESA_STD_720x400x88,
VESA_STD_640x480x60, VESA_STD_640x480x67,
VESA_STD_800x600x56, VESA_STD_800x600x60,
VESA_STD_800x600x72, VESA_STD_800x600x75,
VESA_STD_1024x768x70, VESA_STD_1280x1024x75,
Current resolution setting: SUNW_STD_1280x1024x76

```

## Framelock Configuration:

```
Slave Mode: Disabled
```

```
-propt
```

Prints the current values of all Sun XVR-2500 options in the OWconfig file specified by the `-file` option for the device specified by the `-dev` option. Prints the values of options as they will be in the OWconfig file after the call to SUNWkfb\_config completes.

This is a typical display:

```
--- OpenWindows Configuration for /dev/fbs/kfb2 ---
```

```
OWconfig: machine
Video Mode: SUNW_STD_1280x1024x76
```

## Multisample Information:

```

Multisample Mode: Disabled (multisample visuals
will not be available)
Samples Per Pixel: N/A (multisampling disabled)

```

## Screen Information:

```

DoubleWide: Disabled
DoubleHigh: Disabled
Offset/Overlap: [0, 0]

```

**Visual Information:**

Default Visual: Non-Linear Normal Visual

Gamma Correction Value: using gamma value 2.22

**- res *video-mode***

Specifies the video mode of the monitor connected to the specified Sun XVR-2500 device.

You must specify the video mode with the - res option. You can specify *video-mode* in the format of *widthxheightxrate* or as a symbolic name. The format of these built-in video modes is:

*widthxheightxrate*     *width* is the screen width in pixels, *height* is the screen height in pixels, and *rate* is the vertical frequency of the screen refresh.

You can use the *s* suffix to specify stereo video modes. The *s* suffix of *960x680x112s* and *960x680x108s* means that these are stereo video modes.

As a convenience, the - res option also accepts formats with @ (at sign) in front of the refresh rate instead of *x*, as for example, *1280x1024@76*. Some video-modes supported by the Sun XVR-2500 device may not be supported by the monitor.

You can obtain the list of video-modes supported by the Sun XVR-2500 device and the monitor by running `SUNWkfb_config` with the `- res ?` option. See SYNOPSIS.

### *Symbolic Names*

Some video modes have symbolic names defined for them. Instead of using the *widthxheightxrate* format, you can specify one of the symbolic names as the argument to the `- res` option. The meaning of the symbolic name `none` is that when the window system is run, the screen resolution is the video mode that is currently programmed in the device.

The following symbolic names and their corresponding video modes are supported:

Name	Corresponding Video Mode
<code>svga</code>	<code>1024x768x60</code>
<code>1152</code>	<code>1152x900x76</code>
<code>1280</code>	<code>1280x1024x76</code>
<code>stereo</code>	<code>960x680x112s</code>
<code>none</code>	(see text above)

`-samples 1 | 2 | 4 | 8 | 16`

Requests the number of samples to compute per display pixel. The requested number of samples per pixel is used if `-multisample` is not disabled and resources exist for the request. Query the number of samples used with `-propt` or the `xglnfo(1)` utility. The `xglnfo` utility can return the number of multisamples after you specify the option `-multisample` available. The default is 4.

`-slave disable | multiview`

If you set the `multiview` argument for the `-slave` option, the device synchronizes video with a master through the multiview ribbon cable. Both devices should be running the same resolution and the option should be issued when the window system is running. The default is `disable`.

**Defaults** For a given invocation of the `SUNWkfb_config` command line, if an option does not appear on the command line, the corresponding `OWconfig` option is not updated and retains its previous value.

When the window system is run, if a Sun XVR-2500 option has never been specified by way of `SUNWkfb_config`, a default value is used. The options and their corresponding defaults are as follows:

Option	Default
<code>-dev</code>	<code>/dev/fbs/kfb0</code>
<code>-file</code>	<code>machine</code>
<code>-res</code>	<code>none</code>
<code>-deflinear</code>	<code>false</code>
<code>-defoverlay</code>	<code>false</code>
<code>-deftransparent</code>	<code>false</code>
<code>-slave</code>	<code>disable</code>
<code>-g</code>	<code>2.22</code>
<code>-samples</code>	<code>4</code>
<code>-multisample</code>	<code>disable</code>

Option	Default
-doublewide	disable
-doublehigh	disable
-outputs	direct
-offset	[0,0]

The default for the `-res` option of none means that when the window system is run, the screen resolution is the video mode that is currently programmed in the device.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Switching the Resolution of the Monitor Type

The following example switches the monitor type to 1280 × 1024 at 76 Hz resolution:

```
example% fbconfig -dev kfb0 -res 1280x1024x76
```

**Files** /dev/fbs/kfbn Device special file for the XVR-2500 high performance single screen  
 /usr/sbin/kfbdaemon The kfb memory manager

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWkfbcf
Interface Stability	Evolving

**See Also** [fbconfig\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [mmap\(2\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [kfb\(7D\)](#), [fbio\(7I\)](#)

See the Xsun(1) man page in the OpenWindows man page collection and the xglinfo(1) man page in the Sun Open GL man page collection.

**Name** SUNWnfb\_config – fbconfig module for configuring XVR-300 Graphics Accelerator

**Synopsis** fbconfig [-dev *device-filename*]  
 [-res *video-mode* [now | try] [noconfirm | nocheck]]  
 [-file *machine* | system] [-fake8 enable | disable]  
 [-doublewide enable | disable]  
 [-doublehigh enable | disable]  
 [-clone enable | disable] [-outputs swapped | direct]  
 [-depth 8 | 24] [-offset *xval yval*] [-defaults]  
 fbconfig [-propt] [-prconf]  
 fbconfig [-help] [-res ?]

**Description** SUNWnfb\_config is the XVR-300 device dependent layer for fbconfig. It configures the XVR-300 Graphics Accelerator and some of the X11 window system defaults for XVR-300. The XVR-300 provides the capability to drive two monitors, each with a unique video stream (Stream #1 and Stream #2).

The first form of SUNWnfb\_config shown in the SYNOPSIS section sets options for the XVR-300. This form stores the specified options in the OWconfig file. These options will be used to initialize the XVR-300 device the next time the window system is run on that device. Updating options in the OWconfig file provides persistence of these options across window system sessions and system reboots. For -res now, the XVR-300 device will be immediately programmed.

The second form, which invokes the -prconf and -propt options, queries the XVR-300 for status.

The third form, which invokes the -help and -res ? options, provides instruction on using SUNWnfb\_config. Additionally, for the third form all other options are ignored.

Options may be specified for only one XVR-300 device at a time. Specifying options for multiple XVR-300 devices requires multiple invocations of SUNWnfb\_config.

Only XVR-300-specific options can be specified through SUNWnfb\_config. The normal window system options for specifying default depth, default visual class and so forth can still be specified as device modifiers on the command line when the X Server is started. See the dtlogin(1) reference to Xservers File.

The user can also specify the OWconfig file that is to be updated. By default, the machine-specific file in the /etc/openwin directory tree is updated. The -file option can be used to specify an alternate file to use. For example, the system-global OWconfig file in the /usr/openwin directory tree can be updated instead.

**Options** -dev *device-filename*  
 Specifies the XVR-300 special file. The default is /dev/fb.



-file machine | system

Specifies which OWconfig file to update. If machine, the machine-specific OWconfig file in the /etc/openwin directory tree is used. If system, the global OWconfig file in the /usr/openwin directory tree is used. If the file does not exist, it is created.

-res *video-mode* [now | try] [noconfirm | nocheck ]

Specifies the video mode used to drive the monitor connected to the specified XVR-300 device. Video modes are built-in.

*video-mode* Specifies resolution and timing information for the display (for example, 1280x1024x76). The format of the *video-mode* specifier is: *widthxheightxrate*. *width* is the screen width in pixels, *height* is the screen height in pixels, and *rate* is the vertical frequency of the screen refresh. As a convenience, -res also accepts formats with @ preceding the refresh rate instead of x. For example, 1280x1024@76.

Symbolic names. For convenience, some video modes have symbolic names defined for them. Instead of the form *widthxheightxrate*, one of these names may be supplied as the argument to -res. The meaning of the symbolic name none is that when the window system is run, the screen resolution will be the video mode that is currently programmed in the device.

Some video-modes supported by XVR-300 may not be supported by the monitor. The list of video-modes supported by the XVR-300 device and the monitor can be obtained by running SUNWnfb\_config with the -res ? option (the third form shown in the command SYNOPSIS section).

-res option arguments. The -res option also accepts additional, optional arguments immediately following the video mode specification. Any or all of these may be present.

*now* If present, not only will the video mode be updated in the OWconfig file, but the XVR-300 device will be immediately programmed to display this video mode. (This is useful for changing the video mode before starting the window system).

It is inadvisable to use this suboption with SUNWnfb\_config while the configured device is being used (for example, while running the window system) because unpredictable results may occur. To run SUNWnfb\_config with the now suboption, first bring the window system down. If the now suboption is used within a window system session, the video mode will be changed immediately, but the width and height of the affected screen won't change until the

window system is exited and reentered again. Consequently, this usage is discouraged.

`noconfirm` Using the `-res` option, the user could put the system into an unusable state, which has no video output. To reduce the chance of this, the default behavior of `SUNWnfb_config` is to print a warning message and to ask the user whether to continue. The `noconfirm` suboption bypasses this confirmation. This suboption is useful when `SUNWnfb_config` is being run from a shell script.

`nocheck` If present, the normal error checking based on the monitor sense code will be suspended. The video mode specified by the user will be accepted regardless of whether it is appropriate for the currently attached monitor. This suboption is useful if a different monitor is to be connected to the XVR-300 device. Use of this suboption implies `noconfirm` as well.

`try` If present, the specified video mode will be programmed on a trial basis. The user will be asked to confirm the video mode by typing 'y' within 10 seconds. Or the user may terminate the trial before 10 seconds are up by typing any character. Any character other than 'y' or carriage return is considered a no and the previous video mode will be restored and `SUNWnfb_config` will not change the video mode in the `OWconfig` file (other options specified will still take effect). If a carriage return is typed, the user is prompted for a yes or no answer on whether to keep the new video mode. This option implies the `now` suboption (see the warning note on the `now` suboption).

`-doublewide enable | disable`

This option allows you to configure the two outputs of the Sun XVR-300 into one horizontal virtual display. Both video outputs will be set to the same resolution. Default is `disable`.

`-doublehigh enable | disable`

This option allows you to configure the two outputs of the Sun XVR-300 into one vertical virtual display. Both video outputs will be set to the same resolution. Default is `disable`.

`-clone enable | disable`

If this option is set to `enable`, the two outputs will display identically. Default is `disable`.

`-outputs swapped | direct`

If either `doublewide` or `doublehigh` is enabled, this option allows you to reverse the positions of the two outputs relative to each other. Default is `direct`.

- fake8 enable | disable  
If enabled, simple 8 bit X windows will be rendered without a hardware colormap to reduce colormap flashing. Some performance reductions may be observed. Default is `disable`.
- depth 8 | 24  
Sets the default depth for the window system to start with. Possible values are 8 or 24. Log out of the current window system session and log back in for the change to take effect. Any `defdepth` setting in the Xserver command line takes precedence over what is set using `fbconfig`. Default is 24. This option is only supported on Solaris 9. For Solaris 10 and above, use `/usr/sbin/svccfg` to configure depth.
- offset *xval* *yval*  
Adjusts the position of the specified stream by the value specified. Currently only implemented in `-doublewide` and `-doublehigh` modes. For `-doublewide`, the *xval* is used to position the rightmost stream. Negative is left (overlaps with the left stream). For `-doublehigh`, the *yval* is used to position the bottom stream. Negative is up (overlaps with top stream). Positive values are treated as 0. Default is [0, 0]
- defaults  
Resets all option values to their default values.
- propt  
Prints the current values of all XVR-300 options in the `OWconfig` file specified by the `-file` option for the device specified by the `-dev` option. Prints the values of options as they will be in the `OWconfig` file after the call to `SUNWnfb_config` completes. This is a typical display:  
  

```

--- Graphics Configuration for /dev/fbs/nfb0 ---

OWconfig: machine
Video Mode: NONE

Screen Information:
 Doublewide: Disable
 Doublehigh: Disable
 Clone: Disable
 Offset/Overlap: [0, 0]
 Output Configuration: Direct
 Fake8 Rendering: Disable

```
- prconf  
Prints the XVR-300 hardware configuration. This is a typical display:  
  

```

--- Hardware Configuration for /dev/fbs/nfb0 ---

Type: XVR-300
ASIC: version 0x5b64 REV : version 0x3800080
PROM: version 1.6

Monitor/Resolution Information:

```

## Monitor 1:

Monitor Manufacturer: SUN  
Product code: 1383  
Serial #: 18499659  
Manufacture date: 1999, week 36  
Monitor dimensions: 39x29 cm  
Monitor preferred resolution: SUNW\_STD\_1280x1024x76  
Separate sync supported: yes  
Composite sync supported: yes  
EDID: Version 1, Revision 1  
Monitor Supported resolutions from EDID: SUNW\_STD\_1280x1024x76,  
SUNW\_STD\_1152x900x76, 1600x1200x75, SUNW\_STD\_1280x1024x76,  
SUNW\_STD\_1152x900x76, VESA\_STD\_1280x1024x75,  
SUNW\_STD\_1280x1024x67, SUNW\_STD\_1152x900x66,  
VESA\_STD\_1024x768x75, SUNW\_STD\_1600x1200x75, 960x720x112,  
VESA\_STD\_720x400x70, VESA\_STD\_720x400x88, VESA\_STD\_640x480x60,  
VESA\_STD\_640x480x67, VESA\_STD\_640x480x72, VESA\_STD\_640x480x75,  
VESA\_STD\_800x600x56, VESA\_STD\_800x600x60, VESA\_STD\_800x600x72,  
VESA\_STD\_800x600x75, VESA\_STD\_832x624x75, VESA\_STD\_1024x768x60,  
VESA\_STD\_1024x768x70, VESA\_STD\_1024x768x75,  
VESA\_STD\_1280x1024x75, APPLE\_1152x870x75  
Current resolution setting: 1280x1024x76

## Monitor 2:

Monitor Manufacturer: SUN  
Product code: 1352  
Serial #: 7225675  
Manufacture date: 1997, week 51  
Monitor dimensions: 48x31 cm  
Monitor preferred resolution: 1920x1200x70  
Separate sync supported: yes  
Composite sync supported: yes  
EDID: Version 1, Revision 1  
Monitor Supported resolutions from EDID: 1920x1200x70,  
SUNW\_STD\_1600x1000x76, SUNW\_STD\_1600x1000x66,  
SUNW\_STD\_1440x900x76, 1920x1080x70,  
1600x900x76, 1600x900x66, 1440x810x76, 1280x720x76,  
1920x1080x72, VESA\_STD\_720x400x70, VESA\_STD\_720x400x88,  
VESA\_STD\_640x480x60, VESA\_STD\_640x480x67, VESA\_STD\_640x480x72,  
VESA\_STD\_640x480x75, VESA\_STD\_800x600x56, VESA\_STD\_800x600x60,  
VESA\_STD\_800x600x72, VESA\_STD\_800x600x75, VESA\_STD\_832x624x75,  
VESA\_STD\_1024x768x60, VESA\_STD\_1024x768x70,  
VESA\_STD\_1024x768x75, VESA\_STD\_1280x1024x75, APPLE\_1152x870x75  
Current resolution setting: 1152x900x66

**-help**

Prints a list of the SUNWnfb\_config command line options, along with a brief explanation of each.

- res ?  
Prints list of defined *video-mode* names.

**Defaults** For a given invocation of a `SUNWnfb_config` command line if an option does not appear on the command line, the corresponding `OWconfig` option is not updated and retains its previous value.

When the window system is run, if an XVR-300 option has never been specified via `SUNWnfb_config`, a default value is used. The option defaults are as follows:

Option	Default
-dev	/dev/fb
-file	machine
-res	none
-fake8	disable
-doublewide	disable
-doublehigh	disable
-clone	disable
-outputs	direct
-offset	[0,0]

The default for the `-res` option of `none` means that when the window system is run, the screen resolution will be the video mode that is currently programmed in the XVR-300 PROM.

This provides compatibility for users who are used to specifying the device resolution through the XVR-300 PROM. On some devices (for example, GX) this is the only way of specifying the video mode. This means that the PROM ultimately determines the default XVR-300 video mode.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Switching the monitor type

The following example switches the monitor type to the resolution of 1280 × 1024 at 76 Hz:

```
example% fbconfig -res 1280x1024x76
```

<b>Files</b>	/dev/fbs/nfbn	Device special file for XVR-300 single screen
	/dev/fbs/nfbna	Device special file for the XVR-300 first video out
	/dev/fbs/nfbnb	Device special file for the XVR-300 second video out
	/usr/lib/fbconfig/SUNWnfb_config	Device dependent configuration module

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWnfbcf
Interface Stability	Evolving

**See Also** [fbconfig\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [nfb\(7D\)](#)

See the `dtlogin(1)` man page in the CDE man page collection. Also useful is the `XSun(1)` man page in the OpenWindows man page collection.

**Name** SUNWpfb\_config – fbconfig module for configuring the XVR-50 and the Sun XVR-100 Graphics Accelerator

**Synopsis** For XVR-50:

```
/usr/lib/fbconfig/SUNWpfb_config [-dev device-filename]
 [-res video-mode [now | try] [noconfirm | nocheck]]
 [-file machine | system]
 [-fake8 enable | disable]
 [-g enable | disable | gamma-value]
 [-defaults]
```

For Sun XVR-100:

```
/usr/lib/fbconfig/SUNWpfb_config [-dev device-filename]
 [-res video-mode [now | try] [noconfirm | nocheck]]
 [-file machine | system]
 [-fake8 enable | disable]
 [-g enable | disable | gamma-value]
 [-doublewide enable | disable]
 [-doublehigh enable | disable]
 [-outputs swapped | direct]
 [-depth 8 | 24]
 [-offset xval yval]
 [-defaults]
```

For Sun XVR-100 and XVR-50:

```
/usr/lib/fbconfig/SUNWpfb_config [-pt] [-prconf]
/usr/lib/fbconfig/SUNWpfb_config [-help] [-res \?]
```

**Description** SUNWpfb\_config is the XVR-50 and the Sun XVR-100 device dependent layer for [fbconfig\(1M\)](#). It configures the XVR-50 and the Sun XVR-100 Graphics Accelerator and some of the X11 window system defaults for the XVR-50 and Sun XVR-100. The Sun XVR-100 provides the capability to drive two monitors, each with a unique video stream (Stream #1 and Stream #2). The XVR-50 drives one video stream.

The first two forms of SUNWpfb\_config shown in the SYNOPSIS section sets options for the XVR-50 and the Sun XVR-100 devices. It stores the specified options in the OWconfig file. These options initialize the XVR-50 and the Sun XVR-100 devices the next time the window system is run on that device. Updating options in the OWconfig file provides persistence of these options across window system sessions and system reboots. The XVR-50 and the Sun XVR-100 devices are immediately programmed if you specify the -res now.

The third form, which invokes the -prconf and -propt options, queries the XVR-50 and the Sun XVR-100 device for status.

The fourth form, which invokes the -help, and -res \? options, provides instruction on using SUNWpfb\_config. Additionally, for the fourth form all other options are ignored.

You can only specify options for only one XVR-50 or Sun XVR-100 device at a time. If you want to specify options for multiple XVR-50 or Sun XVR-100 devices, you must use multiple invocations of the `SUNWpfb_config` command.

You can only use `SUNWpfb_config` to specify XVR-50 or Sun XVR-100 specific options. You can use the normal window system options to specify the default depth, default visual class and so forth as device modifiers on the command line when the X Server is started. See `dtlogin(1)` for information regarding the Xservers File.

You can also specify the `OWconfig` file to update. The machine-specific file in the `/etc/openwin` directory tree is updated by default. You can use the `-file` option to specify an alternate file. For example, you can update the system-global `OWconfig` file in the `/usr/openwin` directory tree instead.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- defaults  
Reset all option values to their default values.
- depth 8 | 24  
Set the depth (bits per pixel) for the window system. Possible values for the `-depth` option are 8 or 24. You must log out of the current window system session and log back in again for the change to take effect. Any depth setting in the Xserver command line takes precedence over what is set using `fbconfig`. The default is 8. This option is only available with Solaris 8 or Solaris 9.
- dev *device-filename*  
Specify the XVR-50 or the Sun XVR-100 special file. The default is `/dev/fb`.
- doublehigh enable | disable  
Configure the two outputs of the Sun XVR-100 into one vertical virtual display. You must log out of the current window system session and log back in again for the change to take effect. The default is `disable`.
- doublewide enable | disable  
Configure the two outputs of the Sun XVR-100 into one horizontal virtual display. You must log out of the current window system session and log back in again for the change to take effect. The default is `disable`.
- fake8 enable | disable  
Enable or disable simple 8 bit X windows to be rendered without a hardware colormap to reduce colormap flashing. You might notice performance reductions. You must log out of the current window system session and log back in again for the change to take effect. The default is `disable`.
- file machine | system  
Specifies which `OWconfig` file to update. If `machine` is specified, the machine-specific `OWconfig` file in the `/etc/openwin` directory tree is updated. If `system` is specified, the



global `OWconfig` file in the `/usr/openwin` directory tree is updated. If the specified file does not exist, it is created. This option has no effect unless other options are specified. The default is `machine`.

`-g enable | disable | gamma-value`

This option allows you to change the gamma correction value. All linear visuals provide gamma correction. By default, the gamma correction value is 2.22. Any value less than zero is illegal.

This option can be used while the window system is running. Changing the gamma correction value will affect all the windows being displayed using the linear visuals. You must log out of the current window system session and log back in again for the change to take effect. The default is `disable`.

`-help`

Print a list of the `SUNWpfb_config` command line options, along with a brief explanation of each option.

`-offset xval yval`

Adjust the position of the secondary stream on the Sun XVR-100. This option is currently implemented only for the `-doublewide` and `-doublehigh` modes. For `-doublewide`, use the `xval` to position the DVI stream, if `-outputs` are direct (VGA stream if `-outputs` are swapped). A negative value specifies the overlapped region with the primary stream. This is similar for `-doublehigh`, except the `yval` is used. Positive values are treated as 0. You must log out of the current window system session and log back in again for the change to take effect. The default is `[0, 0]`.

`-outputs swapped | direct`

Reverse the positions of the `-doublewide` or `-doublehigh` outputs relative to each other on the Sun XVR-100. You must log out of the current window system session and log back in again for the change to take effect. The default is `direct`.

`-propt`

Print the current values of all XVR-50 and Sun XVR-100 options in the `OWconfig` file specified by the `-file` option for the device specified by the `-dev` option. Print the values of options as they will be in the `OWconfig` file after the call to `SUNWpfb_config` completes.

This is a typical display for the Sun XVR-100:

```
--- Graphics Configuration for /dev/fbs/pfb0 ---
```

```
OWconfig: machine
Video Mode: not set
Depth: not set
```

```
Screen Information:
 Doublewide: Disable
 Doublehigh: Disable
 Offset/Overlap: [0.0]
```

```

Output Configuration: Direct
Fake8 Rendering: Disable
Gamma Configuration: Disable

```

**-prconf**

Print the XVR-50 and Sun XVR-100 hardware configuration.

This is a typical display:

```
--- Hardware Configuration for /dev/fbs/pfb0 ---
```

```
Type: XVR-100
ASIC: version 0x5159 REV : version 0x3000000
PROM: version 4.2
```

Monitor/Resolution Information:

```
EDID Data: Not Available
Current resolution setting: 1152x900x66
```

Depth Information:

```
Possible depths: 8, 24
Current depth: 8
```

**-res *video-mode* [ now | try [ noconfirm | nocheck ] ]**

Specify the video mode that drives the monitor connected to the specified XVR-50 or Sun XVR-100 device.

Video modes are built-in. The **-res** option requires you to specify the video-mode. You can specify *video-mode* in the format of *widthxheightxrate* or as a symbolic name.

**video-mode**            Specify *video-mode* in the format of *widthxheightxrate*, where *width* is the screen width in pixels, *height* is the screen height in pixels, and *rate* is the vertical frequency of the screen refresh. An example video mode specified in this format is 1280x1024x60.

The **-res** option also accepts formats with @ preceding the refresh rate instead of x (1280x1024@60).

**Symbolic Names**        Some video modes have symbolic names defined for them. Instead of the form *widthxheightxrate* format, you can specify one of the symbolic names as the argument to the **-res** option. The meaning of the symbolic name “none” is that when the window system is run the screen resolution is the video mode that is currently programmed in the device.

The following symbolic names and their corresponding video modes are supported:

Name	Corresponding Video Mode
svga	1024x768x60

1152	1152x900x76
1280	1280x1024x75
none	Programmed video mode

Some video-modes, supported by XVR-50 and Sun XVR-100, might not be supported by the monitor. Use the `- res \?` option to obtain the list of video-modes supported by the XVR-50 and Sun XVR-100 device and the monitor.

The `-res` option also accepts additional, optional arguments immediately following the video mode specification. The following additional, optional arguments are supported:

- `nocheck` If present, the normal error checking based on the monitor sense code is suspended. The video mode specified by the user is accepted regardless of whether it is appropriate for the currently attached monitor. This option is useful if a different monitor is to be connected to the XVR-50 or the Sun XVR-100 device. Use of this option implies `noconfirm` as well.
- `noconfirm` You could put the system into an unusable state using the `-res` option, which has no video output. To reduce the chance of this, the default behavior of `SUNWpfb_config` is to print a warning message and to ask the user whether to continue. The `noconfirm` option bypasses this confirmation. This option is useful when you are running `SUNWpfb_config` from a shell script.
- `now` If present, updates the video mode in the `OWconfig` file and immediately programs the XVR-50 or Sun XVR-100 device to display this video mode. This is useful for changing the video mode before starting the window system.

Do not use this suboption with `SUNWpfb_config` while the configured device is being used (for example, while running the window system) as unpredictable results can occur.

If you want to run `SUNWpfb_config` with the `now` suboption, first bring the window system down, and executed from the console command line. If you use the `now` option within a window system session, the video mode is changed immediately. The width and height of the affected screen will not change until the window system is exited and re-entered again. Additionally, the system might not recognize changes in stereo mode. This usage is discouraged.

- `try` If present, programs the specified video mode on a trial basis. You are asked to confirm the video mode by entering a `y` within 10 seconds. You can terminate the trial before 10 seconds by entering any character but `y` or `<RETURN>`.

This sub-option should not be used with `SUNWpfbconfig` while the configured device is being used (for example, while running the window system) as unpredictable results may occur. To run `SUNWpfbconfig` with the `try` sub-option, the window system should be brought down first, and executed from the console command line.

`- res \?`

Print a list of defined *video-mode* names.

**Defaults** For a given invocation of `SUNWpfb_config` command line if an option does not appear on the command line, the corresponding `OWconfig` option is not updated; it retains its previous value.

When the window system is run, if a `XVR-50` or `Sun XVR-100` option has never been specified by `SUNWpfb_config`, a default value is used. The options and their corresponding defaults for a `XVR-50` are as follows:

Option	Default
<code>-dev</code>	<code>/dev/fb</code>
<code>-file</code>	<code>machine</code>
<code>-res</code>	<code>none</code>
<code>-fake8</code>	<code>disable</code>
<code>-g</code>	<code>disable</code>

The options and their corresponding defaults for a `Sun XVR-100` are as follows:

Option	Default
<code>-dev</code>	<code>/dev/fb</code>
<code>-file</code>	<code>machine</code>
<code>-res</code>	<code>none</code>
<code>-fake8</code>	<code>disable</code>
<code>-g</code>	<code>disable</code>
<code>-depth</code>	<code>8 (Solaris 8 and Solaris 9)</code>
<code>-doublewide</code>	<code>disable</code>
<code>-doublehigh</code>	<code>disable</code>
<code>-outputs</code>	<code>direct</code>
<code>-offset</code>	<code>[0,0]</code>

The default for the `-res` option `none` means that when the window system is run, the screen resolution will be the video mode that is currently programmed in the `XVR-50` or `Sun XVR-100 PROM`.

This provides compatibility for users who are used to specifying the device resolution through the `XVR-50` or the `Sun XVR-100 PROM`. On some devices (e.g. `GX`) this is the only way of specifying the video mode. This means that the `PROM` ultimately determines the default `XVR-50` or `Sun XVR-100 video mode`.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Switching the Monitor Type

The following example switches the monitor type to the resolution of 1280 × 1024 at 60 Hz:

```
example% fbconfig -res 1280x1024x60
```

<b>Files</b>	/dev/fbs/pfbn	Device special file for XVR-50 or Sun XVR-100 single screen
	/dev/fbs/pfbna	Device special file for the Sun XVR-100 first video out
	/dev/fbs/pfbnb	Device special file for the Sun XVR-100 second video out
	/usr/lib/fbconfig/SUNWpfb_config	Device special file

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWpfbcf

**See Also** [fbconfig\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [pfb\(7D\)](#)

[XSun\(1\)](#), [dtlogin\(1X\)](#)

**Name** SUNWzulu\_config – fbconfig module for configuring SunXVR-4000 Graphics Accelerator

**Synopsis** fbconfig [-dev *device-filename*] [-file machine | system]  
           [options... | -defaults]

fbconfig [-dev *device-filename*] [-propt] [-prconf]

fbconfig [-dev *device-filename*] [-list | -help | -res \?]

fbconfig [-dev *device-filename*]  
           [-doublewide enable | disable]  
           [-doublehigh enable | disable]  
           [-outputs direct | swapped | streamA | streamB]  
           [-master a | b] [-clearpixel 0 | 255]

fbconfig [-dev *device-filename*] [-res *video\_mode*]  
           [-multisample available | disable | forceon]  
           [-samples *samples-per-pixel*]  
           [-jitter regular | random | permuted | auto]

fbconfig [-dev *device-filename*] [-stream a | b]  
           [-filter cylinder | gaussian | mitchell | catmull]  
           -filter\_file *filter\_filename*  
           [-offset *xoff-value yoff-value*]  
           [-g *gamma-correction-value*]  
           [-slave [ enable | disable] [frameLock [internal | external] |  
           genlock | bothlock]]  
           [-genlock [defaults] [hphase  $\pm hphs$ ] [vphase  $\pm vphs$ ]  
           [sync [auto | tip | tri | slice]] [pol [auto | pos | neg]]]

**Description** SUNWzulu\_config is the Sun XVR-4000 Graphics Accelerator device-dependent layer for [fbconfig\(1M\)](#). It configures the Sun XVR-4000 Graphics Accelerator and some of the X11 window system defaults and some interactions with 3D-accelerated graphics (through OpenGL).

The first through third synopses, above, show the general form of a SUNWzulu\_config command. The fourth synopsis (with -res as the first option) shows card options. The fifth synopsis is for managed-area options. The sixth and last synopsis shows stream options. These option categories—card, managed-area, and streams—are used mainly to explain the SUNWzulu\_config functions. Where appropriate, you can use options of different types on the same command line.

The Sun XVR-4000 device can support one or two unique video streams (called stream a and stream b), each of which can drive a display device.

**Option Classes** The many options that fbconfig can select on the Sun XVR-4000 Graphics Accelerator are divided into the following categories:

general options                      Shared among different invocation forms or used for query without selecting device settings.

card options	Of the entire XVR-4000 Graphics Accelerator, shared between up to two video streams.
managed area options	Pertain to an area of the frame buffer managed by X and possibly shared between two video streams.
stream options	Specific to a video stream.

#### Device Usage and Invocation Forms

To use the device to provide a single X managed area with one video stream, use a stream-independent device argument (for example, `-dev zulu0`) without a trailing `a` or `b`. The device name (for example, `/dev/fb` or `/dev/fbs/zulu0`), without any trailing stream indicator should appear on the `Xsun` command line. Stream options will control `stream a` (the only stream used).

To enable two streams from a single X managed area (without needing X's `+xinerama` option), use the device name (for example, `-dev zulu0`) without any trailing `a` or `b`. Enable card option `-doublewide` or `-doublehigh`. Without using the `-stream` option, any stream options you specify are applied to both streams. Stream options can differ between the video streams if `fbconfig` is be run separately for each stream, using the `-stream a | b` option, as shown in EXAMPLES (second example), below.

To use the device's two streams as independent X screens, run `fbconfig` separately for each stream (`-dev zulu0a` and `-dev zulu0b`), as shown in EXAMPLES (third example). Card options `-doublehigh` and `-doublewide` are not available. The device names with trailing stream indicators (for example, `/dev/fbs/zulu0a` and `/dev/fbs/zulu0b`) must be added to the `Xsun` command line to use these independent X screens. The `-stream` option is not needed; the stream is implied by the stream-specific device name.

The `fbconfig` utility checks settings for the two stream devices to assure X can use them simultaneously. Therefore, you might need to use `fbconfig` to reduce resource consumption (for example, `-samples`) used by one stream's device (for example, `zulu0a`) before you can use `fbconfig` to increase consumption by the other stream's device (for example, `zulu0b`).

The first form of `SUNWzulu_config` shown in SYNOPSIS, above, stores the specified options in the `OWconfig` file associated with the device and (for stream options) the stream. These options are used to initialize the device the next time the window system is started on that device-filename. Updating options in the `OWconfig` file provides persistence of these options across window system sessions and system reboots. You can select the `OWconfig` file that is to be updated using the `-file` option. For `-jitter` and all stream options, the device will also be immediately programmed.

The second form, which invokes any of the `-prconf` and `-propt` options, queries the device for status that is card-specific.

The third form, which invokes the `-help`, `-list`, or `-res \?` options, provides instruction on using `SUNWzulu_config`, a list of available devices, or a list of available resolutions. When using this form, all other options are ignored.

You can specify options for only one device at a time. Specifying options for multiple devices (or multiple independent X managed areas or streams) requires multiple invocations of `fbconfig`.

Only Sun XVR-4000 Graphics Accelerator-specific options can be specified through `SUNWzulu_config`. Window system options for specifying default depth, default visual class, `-nobanner`, and so forth are still specified as device modifiers on the Xsun command line when the X server is started, probably in CDE's `Xservers` file. See the `Xsun(1)` man page in the OpenWindows man page collection and `/usr/dt/config/Xservers`.

**Options** This section is subdivided into general, card, managed area, and stream options.

- General Options
- `-dev device-filename` Specifies the device's special file, such as `/dev/fbs/zulu0` or the basename such as `zulu0` as a shorthand. The default is `/dev/fb`. See "Device Usage and Invocation Forms," above.
  - `-file machine|system` Specifies which `OWconfig` file to update. If *machine* is specified, the machine-specific `OWconfig` file in the `/etc/openwin` directory tree is updated. If *system* is specified, the global `OWconfig` file in the `/usr/openwin` directory tree is updated. If the specified file does not exist, it is created. This option has no effect unless other options are specified. The default is *machine*.
  - `-defaults` Resets all option values to their default values, listed in the DEFAULTS section, below. For example, invoking `-defaults` on `zulu0`, `zulu0a`, or `zulu0b` will reset all card, managed area, and stream options for all these `zulu0` subdevices.
  - `-propt` Displays the current values of all options in the `OWconfig` file specified by the `-file` option for the device specified by the `-dev` option. Displays the values of options as they will be in the `OWconfig` file after the call to `SUNWzulu_config` completes. The following is an example display:

```
--- OpenWindows Configuration for /dev/fbs/zulu0 ---
```

```
OWconfig File: machine
```

```
Card:
```

```
Double(wide/high): disable
Stream to Port Mapping: direct (Stream A to Port A; B to B)
Clearpixel Value: 255
```

```
Managed Area:
```



```

Resolution: SUNW_STD_1280x1024x76
Samples Per Pixel: max
Multisample Mode: forceon
Jitter Table: auto

```

## Video Streams:

```

Stream A:
 Offset (x,y): (0, 0)
 Gamma Correction Value: 2.22
 Filter Type: mitchell

```

```

Stream B:
 Offset (x,y): (0, 0)
 Gamma Correction Value: 2.22
 Filter Type: mitchell

```

## Framelock:

```

Framelock/Stereo Port: Output from Stream A
Stream A Sync: Free Run (no frame sync)
Stream B Sync: Free Run (no frame sync)

```

**-prconf**

Displays the current XVR-4000 hardware configuration, including version numbers of each class of chip. The following is an example display:

```

--- Hardware Configuration for /dev/fbs/zulu0 ---
Type: XVR-4000 Graphics Accelerator
Part: 501-5588

```

## Memory:

```

MAJC: 128MB
Texture: 1GB total
3DRAM64: 10.0M samples

```

## Versions:

```

Fcode 1.19 MCode 1.4 MAJC 2.1
FBC3 3.0 Master 1.0 Convolve 0.0
Sched 1.0 I/O 1.0 FPGA 0.0

```

## Power Level:

```

Monitor Power: On
Board Power: On

```

## Video Streams:

```

Stream A:
 Current resolution setting: SUNW_STD_1280x1024x76
 Flags: Allocated Default Primary
 Samples per pixel: 6

```

```

Port: 13W3a
Monitor/EDID data (13W3)
 Monitor Manufacturer: SUN
 Monitor Name: GDM-5410
 EDID: Version 1, Revision 2

```

## Stream B:

```

Current resolution setting: SUNW_STD_1280x1024x76
Flags: Allocated
Samples per pixel: 2
Port: 13W3b
Monitor/EDID data (13W3)
 Monitor Manufacturer: SUN
 EDID: Version 1, Revision 3

```

- help                    Displays a list of the SUNWzulu\_config command line options, along with a brief explanation of each.
- res \?                 Displays list of defined video mode names supported by the XVR-4000 Graphics Accelerator and the display device.
- CardOptions -doublewide enable | disable                 This option makes it easy for you to combine both streams into one side-by-side virtual display. When enabled with -outputs direct, stream a is to the left of stream b. Both streams will use the same video mode defined with the -res option. If you specify disable, only stream a will be enabled. Enabling -doublewide disables -doublehigh.
- doublehigh enable | disable                                This option makes it easy for you to combine both streams into one virtual display with one display device above the other. When enabled with -outputs direct, stream a is above stream b. Both streams will use the same video mode defined with the -res option. If you specify disable, only stream a will be enabled. Enabling -doublehigh disables -doublewide.
- outputs direct | swapped | streamA | streamB             Controls the internal routing of video streams to output ports (that is, backplane 13W3 connectors). The choices are:

<code>direct</code>	Stream a to output port a, stream b to output port b
<code>swapped</code>	Stream a to output port b, stream b to output port a
<code>streamA</code>	Stream a to both output ports
<code>streamB</code>	Stream b to both output ports

The default is `direct`. `swapped` can be used to reverse the connectors when `-doublewide` or `-doublehigh` is enabled. The `streamA` and `streamB` arguments are incompatible with stream-specific device names (for example, `zulu0a` or `zulu0b`). When the `-res` option selects an S-video (NTSC or PAL composite) video mode, the `svideo` output port is automatically selected, sometimes overriding `-outputs` selection.

`-master a | b`

This option controls which stream drives the `FIELD` and `FRAME_OUT` pins on the device's stereo/sync connector. This pin can drive stereo shutter glasses, and allow another device to framelock to this device's output. The default is `a`.

Independent of this option, the `-slave external` option allows a stream to sync to another card by means of this connector's `FIELD_IN` pin.

`-clearpixel 0 | 255`

Selects the overlay transparent color. This is the pixel value (color index) used by the transparent overlay visual to display the underlay (RGB) pixel contents. The default is 255 (all bits 1), but some applications require 0. All other color indices display a colormap color.

Managed Area Options `-res video_mode`

The `video_mode` argument specifies resolution and timing information for the display (for example,

SUNW\_STD\_1280x1024x76). The naming convention for the video mode specifier is:

*origin\_type\_widthxheightxrate*

The elements of the specifier are described as follows:

<i>origin</i>	This can be one of:
SUNW	Sun-derived resolution
VESA	Video Electronics Standards Association-derived resolution
<i>other</i>	other source
<i>type</i>	This can be one or more of:
STD	normal resolution, usable by most display devices
DIG	resolution tuned only for LCD flat panels
INT	interlaced
STEREO	stereo
<i>width</i>	screen width in pixels
<i>height</i>	screen height in pixels
<i>rate</i>	vertical frequency of the screen refresh (in hertz, that is, video frames per second)

Note that some video modes supported by the XVR-4000 might not be supported by the display device. The list of video modes supported by the device and the display device can be obtained by running `SUNWzulu_config` with the `-res \?` option.

`-multisample available | disable | forceon`

The `-multisample` option controls whether a multisample buffer is allocated

by the window system and used by OpenGL applications. The suboptions are:

- |                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>disable</code>   | No multisample rendering is possible. Only one sample per pixel is allocated, despite the <code>-samples</code> option value. Furthermore, display filtering is disabled.                                                                            |
| <code>available</code> | Multisample is possible but is selected on a per-application basis. (Each process may choose whether to multisample at the density allocated when the window system started, or not to multisample at all. Intermediate densities are not possible.) |
| <code>forceon</code>   | Sun OpenGL will use multisample rendering for all applications. There may be a minor performance penalty for rendering at higher sample densities.                                                                                                   |

Multisample allocation occurs when the window system starts up. This is the only allocation mode supported on the Sun XVR-4000 Graphics Accelerator.

`-samples samples-per-pixel`

Specifies the number of samples per pixel to allocate when multisample is not `disable`. Allowable choices are 1 to 16 or `max`, but a very high sample density can be allocated only at low resolution. Setting sample density to 1 is not equivalent to disabling multisampling; samples will still be subject to filtering and jitter. Sample resolutions (without frame rates) and their maximum sample densities follow.

Resolution	Maximum Density	Maximum Balanced Density
width by height	(single stream)	(one stream + another)
1920 by 1200	4 samples	2 + 2 samples
1600 by 1200	5 samples	3 + 2 samples
1600 by 1024	6 samples	3 + 3 samples
1280 by 1024	8 samples	4 + 4 samples
1152 by 900	9 samples	5 + 4 samples
1024 by 800	11 samples	5 + 5 samples
800 by 600	15 samples	7 + 7 samples
768 by 575	15 samples	7 + 7 samples
640 by 480	16 samples	9 + 9 samples

The default is max, which means to use the maximum number of samples that can be supported with the amount of memory available, possibly dependent on the video timing (horizontal frequency).

For dual independent streams, if the first stream used by the window system (typically, the first in the Xservers file) chooses max, it takes most of the memory and video resources. The second stream can then use only a low sample density. If it also chooses max, X automatically finds the highest sample density remaining, such as 1 or 2 samples per pixel. To assign sample density more evenly, set each stream's density explicitly. SUNWzulu\_config allows a combination of resolutions and sample densities only if they will coexist successfully. You might have to reduce one stream's sample density (or choose max) before you can increase the other stream's.

-jitter regular | random | permuted | auto

Indirectly determines the subpixel (X,Y) locations of the samples stored in the

sample buffer. (The sample density also affects the sample locations.) Choices are:

- |          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| regular  | Samples are regularly-spaced both vertically and horizontally. The sample locations repeat every pixel or two in X and Y.                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| random   | Samples are pseudo-randomly (irregularly) spaced within the pixel. The sample locations repeat every 2 pixels in X and Y.                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| permuted | Samples are pseudo-randomly spaced within the pixel, and also permuted (stirred) in hardware so that the sample locations repeat every 128 pixels in X and Y. At moderate to high sample density, this choice can improve visual quality. At low sample density, straight lines or edges can appear jagged. |
| auto     | Automatically selects the best jitter option for the current sample density. This is the default.                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

The same jitter selection must be used by OpenGL when rendering and by the display subsystem when refreshing the display from the sample buffer. The jitter value is changed immediately in hardware, but any multisamples already in the sample buffer were rendered using the prior jitter selection; that will look incorrect (for example, unstraight lines or edges) if the jitter selection is changed.

When a new OpenGL application starts up, it will render using the new jitter selection. (The window system need not be restarted.) The jitter value is also saved in the `OWconfig` file for the next time the window system starts.

Stream Options `-stream a | b`

Determines whether stream options will be set for stream a or stream b. The "Device Usage and Invocation Forms" section, above, describes the usage and the default. The `-stream` option is required only to set different stream options for the two video streams enabled using card option `-doublewide` or `-doublehigh`.

`-filter cylinder | gaussian | mitchell | catmull`

`-filter_file filter_filename`

There are two ways to configure filtering. The `-filter` option is the simpler. It selects from these predefined filters:

<code>cylinder</code>	Poorest visual quality, most like a box filter.
<code>gaussian</code>	Blurriest; suitable for users who want to forgo detail to avoid all visible sampling artifacts.
<code>mitchell</code>	The best photo-realistic compromise between sharp detail and noticeable blurriness. This filter is the default.
<code>catmull</code>	The Catmull-Rom filter produces images a little sharper than Mitchell, but are more likely to have visible sampling artifacts, widely known as "jaggies".

The `-filter_file` option allows a user to provide his own filter by producing a filter file and copying or linking it into the directory `/etc/openwin/server/etc/filters` or `/usr/openwin/server/etc/filters`. (Both directories are writable by super-user by default.) The `filter_filename` must not start with `/` or `./` nor contain the substring `././`, but can contain subdirectory components.

`fbconfig` and X search the directories above in the order listed. If the `filter_filename` is present and valid, the file takes precedence over a predefined filter.

The format of the file is a sequence of floating-point radius and weight values, each value separated by whitespace. Radius values must be monotonically increasing from 0. Weight values must be between -1.0 and +1.0, inclusive. Though more values can be present in the file, only values through radius 2.0 are used. Whitespace and comment lines prefixed with a hash mark (`#`) are ignored.

Example files contain the (irregular) radius values for which the device uses weight values. The file reader interpolates between existing values if the required radius is not present.



A valid filter option is changed immediately in hardware and saved in the `OWconfig` file for the next time the window system starts. However, when `multisample` is disabled, no filtering occurs.

`-offset xoff-value yoff-value`

Offsets the display of the stream (specified by `-stream`) relative to the adjoining edge of the other stream when `doublewide` or `doublehigh` is enabled. This can be used to cause an overlap.

*xoff-value*      Number of pixels offset in horizontal direction for the righthand stream when `doublewide` is enabled. Positive direction is to the right (create a gap); negative is to the left (overlap the streams). Default is 0, which means the two edges abut.

*yoff-value*      Number of pixels offset in vertical direction for the bottom stream when `doublehigh` is enabled. Positive direction is down (create a gap); negative is up (overlap the streams). Default is 0, which means the two edges touch.

`-g gamma-correction-value`

This option changes the gamma correction value. By default the gamma correction value is 2.22. Any value less than zero is illegal. This option can be used while the window system is running. Changing the gamma correction value will affect all the windows being displayed using gamma-corrected visuals. The gamma correction value is also saved in the `OWconfig` file for the next time the window system starts.

`-slave [enable | disable]`

`[framelock [internal | external] | genlock | bothlock ]`

This option allows you to enable a synchronization technique for the specified stream. Available techniques:

`framelock [internal | external]`      This provides "asynchronous frame reset": multiple streams all start a frame at roughly the same time. This allows stereo shutters to view the same eye's image from all the synchronized display devices. Using `framelock` requires the incoming synchronization signal have the same frame rate as the stream's video format.

When using `framelock` (or `bothlock`), you can also specify the synchronization source:

`internal`      Indicates that the sync source is the other stream of this device.

`external`      Indicates the sync is taken from a source outside the device. Using `external` requires a Frame Lock Cable (part number 530-2754) to be

connected. If `-slave enable` is used without specifying a technique, `frameLock external` is used.

<code>genlock</code>	This provides pixel-accurate horizontal synchronization, which is important in some video mixing situations. Use of <code>genlock</code> requires a genlock cable. Use of <code>bothlock</code> is recommended, when possible. Certain video formats are incompatible with <code>genlock</code> .
<code>bothlock</code>	This enables both <code>frameLock</code> and <code>genlock</code> techniques, and requires both <code>frameLock</code> (if <code>external</code> ) and <code>genlock</code> cables.
<code>-genlock [defaults] [hphase <math>\pm</math>hphs][vphase <math>\pm</math>vphs] [sync [auto tip tri slice]] [pol [auto pos neg]]</code>	When <code>-slave</code> is enabled and the <code>genlock</code> technique is selected, the selections chosen with the <code>-genlock</code> option determine <code>genlock</code> details. These details are used immediately by the hardware, and saved in the <code>OWconfig</code> file for future use. Note that they may no longer be desired after changing to a different video format.
<code>defaults</code>	Reset all <code>genlock</code> details to their defaults.
<code>hphase <math>\pm</math>hphs</code>	The horizontal phase allows a pixel offset between the external video format and the stream's output. It may be specified as an absolute integer ranging from 0 to the total number of pixel clocks in a horizontal period (active video plus blanked pixels). Or, if the <code>hphs</code> starts with a <code>+</code> or <code>-</code> , the value will be added to the current horizontal phase and saved, modulo the valid range. Small deltas can be used repeatedly until the desired effect is observed.
<code>vphase <math>\pm</math>vphs</code>	The vertical phase allows a scanline offset between the external video format and the stream's output. It can be specified as an absolute integer ranging from 0 to the total number of scanlines in a frame (active video plus blanked scanlines). Or, if the <code>vphs</code> starts with a <code>+</code> or <code>-</code> , the value will be added to the current vertical phase and saved, modulo the valid range. Small deltas can be used repeatedly until the desired effect is observed.
<code>sync [auto tip slice tri]</code>	This option controls the details of input sync signal sampling, if necessary: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>auto</code> Sample the <code>genlock</code> input pulses as most appropriate for the (Sun) video format. This is</li> </ul>

the default, and should be used whenever the sync master is also a Sun video format.

**tip** Consider the sync to have occurred at the minimum signal value. This can be used with RS-170 (NTSC or PAL) or with TTL signals.

**slice** Consider the frame sync to have occurred halfway between the minimum and maximum value (sync tip and back porch "blank" levels). This can be used with RS-170 (NTSC or PAL) or with TTL signals.

**tri** Synchronize to a tri-level signal, used by HDTV analog formats.

**pol [auto|pos|neg]** When the sync master is not a Sun video format, it might be necessary to choose which edge of the genlock input sync pulse should be used for genlock.

**auto** Choose rising or falling edge for sync pulse, whichever is most appropriate for the video format. This is the default, and should be used whenever the sync master is also a Sun video format.

**pos** Synchronize with a rising edge of a sync pulse.

**neg** Synchronize with a falling edge of a sync pulse.

**Defaults** For a given invocation of `SUNWzulu_config`, if an option does not appear on the command line, the corresponding `OWconfig` option is not updated. It retains its previous value.

When the window system starts, if an option has never been specified through `SUNWzulu_config`, a default value is used. The option defaults are as follows:

Option Class	Option	Default
General	-dev	/dev/fb
General	-file	machine (/etc/openwin/server/etc/OWconfig)
Card	-doublewide	disable
Card	-doublehigh	disable
Card	-master	a
Card	-outputs	direct
Card	-clearpixel	255
Managed Area	-res	SUNW_STD_1280x1024x76

Managed Area	-multisample	forceon
Managed Area	-samples	max
Managed Area	-jitter	auto
Stream	-offset	0,0
Stream	-filter	mitchell
Stream	-slave	disable/external/frameclock
Stream	-genlock	hphase 0/vphase 0/auto/auto
Stream	-g	2.22

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Switching Resolution of a Monitor

The following example switches to the resolution of 1280 by 1024 at 76 hertz:

```
% fbconfig -dev zulu0 -res SUNW_STD_1280x1024x76
```

## EXAMPLE 2 Using Two Side-by-side Monitors with One Large X Screen

The following example enables use of two side-by-side monitors to display together a single large shared X window system "screen" (frame buffer managed area):

```
% fbconfig -dev zulu0 -doublewide enable
```

If the wrong monitor is on the left, they can be swapped in software:

```
% fbconfig -dev zulu0 -outputs swapped
```

A stream option selects a Gaussian (blurry) filter for video stream b:

```
% fbconfig -dev zulu0 -stream b -filter gaussian
```

For the two examples above, the factory-installed `/usr/dt/config/Xservers` file is sufficient (if `/dev/fb` is a link to the Sun XVR-4000 Graphics Accelerator device). If an `/etc/dt/config/Xservers` file exists, for Example 1 or 2, the file would refer to device `zulu0` (not `zulu0a` or `zulu0b`):

```
:0 Local local_uid@console root /usr/openwin/bin/Xsun -dev /dev/fbs/zulu0
```

## EXAMPLE 3 Using Two Displays as Independent X Screens

The following example enables use of two displays, each with their own X window system managed frame buffer area and resolution. The larger resolution is not multisampled or filtered, so the smaller resolution will have more samples available to it.

```
% fbconfig -dev zulu0a -res SUNW_STD_1920x1200x75 -multisample disable
% fbconfig -dev zulu0b -res SUNW_STD_1280x1024x76 -samples max
```

In this example, and assuming the display device for stream b is to the right of that for stream a, the `/etc/dt/config/Xservers` file might contain (as one long line):

**EXAMPLE 3** Using Two Displays as Independent X Screens (Continued)

```
:0 Local local_uid@console root /usr/openwin/bin/Xsun -nobanner
 -dev /dev/fbs/zulu0a -dev /dev/fbs/zulu0b right
```

**Files**

/dev/fb	default device file
/usr/lib/fbconfig/SUNWzulu_config	device configuration program
/etc/openwin/server/etc/filters/	root file system directory for filter files
/usr/openwin/server/etc/filters/	/usr file system directory for filter files

An administrator might also have to edit /etc/dt/config/Xservers.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWzuluc

**See Also** [fbconfig\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

See the `dtlogin(1)` man page in the CDE man page collection. Also useful is the `Xsun(1)` man page in the OpenWindows man page collection.

**Name** svadm – command line interface to control Availability Suite Storage Volume operations

**Synopsis** svadm -h  
svadm -v  
svadm [-C *tag*]  
svadm [-C *tag*] -i  
svadm [-C *tag*] -e {-f *config\_file* | volume}  
svadm [-C *tag*] -d {-f *config\_file* | volume}  
svadm [-C *tag*] -r {-f *config\_file* | volume}

**Description** The svadm command controls the Storage Volume (SV) driver by providing facilities to enable and disable the SV driver for specified volumes, and to dynamically reconfigure the system.

**Options** If you specify no arguments to an svadm command, the utility displays the list of volumes currently under SV control. svadm supports the following options:

-C *tag*

On a clustered node, limits operations to only those volumes belonging to the cluster resource group, or disk group name, specified by tag. This option is illegal on a system that is not clustered. The special *tag*, local, can be used to limit operations to only those volumes that cannot switch over to other nodes in the cluster.

-d

Disables the SV devices specified on the command line or in the configuration file. If -C tag is specified with this option, then the volume should be in this cluster disk group.

-e

Enables the SV devices specified on the command line or in the configuration file. Details of the volume are saved in the current configuration. See [dscfg\(1M\)](#). If -C tag is specified with this option, then the volume should be in this cluster disk group.

-f *config\_file*

Specifies a configuration file that contains a list of volumes. A command reads this volume list and then perform the operation. The format of the *config\_file* is a simple list of volume pathnames, one per line. Blank lines and lines starting with the comment character (#) are ignored.

-h

Displays the svadm usage summary.

-i

Displays extended status for the volumes currently under SV control.

-r

When a *config\_file* is specified, reconfigure the running system to match the configuration specified in the *config\_file*. When the -C option is specified, compare the cluster tag for each

volume and change it to *cluster\_tag*. If a volume is specified with this option, it is valid only to reconfigure the cluster tag associated with the volume. The `-e` or `-d` options should be used to enable or disable single volumes.

`-v`

Displays the SV version number.

**Usage** When an SV volume is enabled, normal system call access to the device (see [Intro\(2\)](#)) is redirected into the StoreEdge architecture software. This allows standard applications to use StorageTek features such as Sun StorageTek Point-in-Time Copy and Remote Mirror Software.

The `svadm` command generates an entry in the Availability Suite log file, `/var/adm/ds.log` (see [ds.log\(4\)](#)), when performing enable (`-e`) and disable (`-d`) operations.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWspsvr, SUNWspsvu
Interface Stability	Evolving

**See Also** [dscfg\(1M\)](#), [ds.log\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [sv\(7D\)](#)

**Name** svcadm – manipulate service instances

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/svcadm [-v] enable [-rst] {*FMRI* | *pattern*}...  
/usr/sbin/svcadm [-v] disable [-st] {*FMRI* | *pattern*}...  
/usr/sbin/svcadm [-v] restart {*FMRI* | *pattern*}...  
/usr/sbin/svcadm [-v] refresh {*FMRI* | *pattern*}...  
/usr/sbin/svcadm [-v] clear {*FMRI* | *pattern*}...  
/usr/sbin/svcadm [-v] mark [-It] *instance\_state*  
{*FMRI* | *pattern*}...  
/usr/sbin/svcadm [-v] milestone [-d] *milestone\_FMRI*

**Description** svcadm issues requests for actions on services executing within the service management facility (see [smf\(5\)](#)). Actions for a service are carried out by its assigned service restarter agent. The default service restarter is `svc.startd` (see [svc.startd\(1M\)](#)).

**Options** The following options are supported:

-v Print actions verbosely to standard output.

### Subcommands

Common Operations The subcommands listed below are used during the typical administration of a service instance.

For subcommands taking one or more operands, if the operand specifies a service (instead of a service instance), and that service has only a single instance, svcadm operates on that instance. If an abbreviated *FMRI* (a fault management resource identifier) or pattern matches more than one service, a warning message is displayed and that operand is ignored. See [smf\(5\)](#).

In the case that the service has more than one instance, svcadm return a non-zero exit status.

`enable [-rst] {FMRI | pattern}...` Enables the service instances specified by the operands. For each service instance, the assigned restarter will try to bring it to the online state. This action requires permission to modify the “general” property group of the service instance (see [smf\\_security\(5\)](#)).

If the `-r` option is specified, svcadm enables each service instance and recursively enables its dependencies.

If the `-s` option is specified, svcadm enables each service instance and then waits for each service instance to enter the online or degraded state. svcadm



---

	will return early if it determines that the service cannot reach these states without administrator intervention.
	If the <code>-t</code> option is specified, <code>svcadm</code> temporarily enables each service instance. Temporary enable only lasts until reboot. This action requires permission to modify the “restarter_actions” property group of the service instance (see <a href="#">smf_security(5)</a> ). By default, <code>enable</code> is persistent across reboot.
<code>disable [-st] {FMRI   pattern}...</code>	Disables the service instance specified by the operands. For each service instance, the assigned restarter will try to bring it to the disabled state. This action requires permission to modify the “general” property group of the service instance (see <a href="#">smf_security(5)</a> ).
	If the <code>-s</code> option is specified, <code>svcadm</code> disables each service instance and then waits for each service instance to enter the disabled state. <code>svcadm</code> will return early if it determines that the service cannot reach this state without administrator intervention.
	If the <code>-t</code> option is specified, <code>svcadm</code> temporarily disables each service instance. Temporary disable only lasts until reboot. This action requires permission to modify the “restarter_actions” property group of the service instance (see <a href="#">smf_security(5)</a> ). By default, <code>disable</code> is persistent across reboot.
<code>restart {FMRI   pattern}...</code>	Requests that the service instances specified by the operands be restarted. This action requires permission to modify the “restarter_actions” property group of the service instance (see <a href="#">smf_security(5)</a> ).
	This subcommand can restart only those services that are in the online or degraded states, as those states are defined in <a href="#">smf(5)</a> .
<code>refresh {FMRI   pattern}...</code>	For each service instance specified by the operands, requests that the assigned restarter update the service's running configuration snapshot with the values from the current configuration. Some of these values take effect immediately (for example, dependency changes). Other values do not take effect until the next service restart. See the restarter and service documentation for more information.

If the service is managed by `svc.startd(1M)`, the `refresh` method will be invoked if it exists to request the service reread its own configuration. For other restarters, see the restarter documentation.

This action requires permission to modify the “restarter\_actions” property group of the service instance (see `smf_security(5)`).

`clear {FMRI | pattern}...`

For each service instance specified by the operands, if the instance is in the `maintenance` state, signal to the assigned restarter that the service has been repaired. If the instance is in the `degraded` state, request that the assigned restarter take the service to the `online` state. This action requires permission to modify the “restarter\_actions” property group of the service instance (see `smf_security(5)`).

Exceptional Operations The following subcommands are used for service development and temporary administrative manipulation.

`mark [-It] instance_state {FMRI | pattern}...`

If `instance_state` is “`maintenance`”, then for each service specified by the operands, `svcadm` requests that the assigned restarter place the service in the `maintenance` state. See `svc.startd(1M)` and `inetd(1M)` for a detailed description of the actions taken for each restarter.

If `instance_state` is “`degraded`”, then for services specified by the operands in the `online` state, `svcadm` requests that the restarters assigned to the services move them into the `degraded` state.

If the `-I` option is specified, the request is flagged as immediate.

The `-t` option is only valid for `maintenance` requests. When this option is specified, the request is flagged as temporary, and its effect will only last until the next reboot.

`milestone [-d] milestone_FMRI`

If `milestone_FMRI` is the keyword “`none`”, all services other than the master restarter,

`svc:/system/svc/restarter:default`, will be temporarily disabled.

If `milestone_FMRI` is the keyword “all”, temporary enable and disable requests for all services will be nullified.

If `milestone_FMRI` is one of the following:

```
svc:/milestone/single-user:default
svc:/milestone/multi-user:default
svc:/milestone/multi-user-server:default
```

then temporary enable and disable requests for the indicated service and all services it depends on (directly or indirectly) will be nullified. All other services will be temporarily disabled.

Changing the system's current milestone with the “milestone” subcommand will not change the current run level of the system. To change the system's run level, invoke `/sbin/init` directly.

This action requires permission to modify the “options\_ovr” property group of the `svc:/system/svc/restarter:default` service instance (see [smf\\_security\(5\)](#)).

The `-d` option immediately changes the milestone to the requested milestone, as above. Additionally, it makes the specified milestone the default boot milestone, which persists across reboot. The default milestone is defined by the `options/milestone` property on the master restarter,

```
svc:/system/svc/restarter:default
```

If this property is absent, “all” is the default. This action requires permission to modify the “options” property group of the `svc:/system/svc/restarter:default` service instance (see [smf\\_security\(5\)](#)).

Operands The following operands are supported:

*FMRI* An *FMRI* that specifies one or more instances. *FMRI*s can be abbreviated by specifying the instance name, or the trailing portion of the service name. For example, given the *FMRI*:

```
svc:/network/smtp:sendmail
```

All the following are valid abbreviations:

```
sendmail
:sendmail
smtp
smtp:sendmail
network/smtp
```

While the following are invalid:

```
mail
network
network/smt
```

If the *FMRI* specifies a service, then the command applies to all instances of that service. Abbreviated forms of *FMRI*s are unstable, and should not be used in scripts or other permanent tools.

*pattern* A pattern that is matched against the *FMRI*s of service instances according to the “globbing” rules described by `fnmatch(5)`. If the pattern does not begin with “svc:”, then “svc:” is prepended.

If an abbreviated *FMRI* or pattern matches more than one service, a warning message is displayed and that operand is ignored.

### Examples EXAMPLE 1 Restarting a Service Instance

The following command restarts the NFS server. The full *FMRI* for the default service instance is: `svc:/network/nfs/server:default`

However, you can abbreviate the full *FMRI* as follows:

```
svcadm restart nfs/server
```

### EXAMPLE 2 Disabling the Standard HTTP Server

The following command disables the standard HTTP server, using an abbreviated *FMRI*:

```
$ svcadm disable http
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Enabling an Instance and Its Dependent Instances

The following command enables the `foo:bar` instance, and all instances on which it depends:

```
$ svcadm enable -r foo:bar
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Synchronously enabling an instance

The following command enables the `foo:bar` instance. The command will not return until the instance comes online or `svcadm` determines it is not possible for the service to come online.

```
$ svcadm enable -s foo:bar
```

**EXAMPLE 5** Restricting and Restoring the Running Services

The following command restricts the running services to single user mode:

```
svcadm milestone milestone/single-user
```

The following command restores the running services:

```
svcadm milestone all
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 A fatal error occurred. One or more error messages are displayed on standard error.
- 2 Invalid command line options were specified.
- 3 `svcadm` determined that a service instance that it was waiting for could not reach the desired state without administrator intervention due to a problem with the service instance itself.
- 4 `svcadm` determined that a service instance that it was waiting for could not reach the desired state without administrator intervention due to a problem with the service's dependencies.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	See below.

The interactive output is Uncommitted. The invocation and non-interactive output are Committed.

**See Also** [svcprop\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [inetd\(1M\)](#), [init\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [svc.startd\(1M\)](#), [libscf\(3LIB\)](#), [contract\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [smf\\_security\(5\)](#)

**Notes** The amount of time `svcadm` will spend waiting for services and their dependencies to change state is implicitly limited by their method timeouts. For example, a service using the default restarter whose start method hangs will be transitioned to the maintenance state when its timeout expires. `svcadm` will then consider it impossible for this service to come online without administrator intervention.

Attempts to synchronously enable a service which depends (directly or indirectly) on a file may fail with an exit status indicating that dependencies are unsatisfied if the caller does not have the privileges necessary to search the directory containing the file. This limitation may be removed in a future Solaris release.

**Name** svccfg – import, export, and modify service configurations

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/svccfg [-v] [-s *FMRI*]  
 /usr/sbin/svccfg [-v] [-s *FMRI*] *subcommand* [args]...  
 /usr/sbin/svccfg [-v] [-s *FMRI*] -f *command-file*

**Description** The `svccfg` command manipulates data in the service configuration repository. `svccfg` can be invoked interactively, with an individual subcommand, or by specifying a command file that contains a series of subcommands.

Changes made to an existing service in the repository typically do not take effect for that service until the next time the service instance is refreshed. See the `refresh` subcommand on the [svcadm\(1M\)](#) man page for more details.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- f *command-file*  
 Reads and executes `svccfg` subcommands from *command-file*.
- s *FMRI*  
 Selects the entity indicated by *FMRI* (a fault management resource identifier) before executing any subcommands. See [smf\(5\)](#).
- v  
 Verbose.

**Subcommands** Subcommands are divided into the categories specified in the subsections that follow.

All subcommands that accept *FMRI*s also accept abbreviated or globbed patterns. Instances and services can be abbreviated by specifying the instance name, or the trailing portion of the service name. For example, given the *FMRI*:

```
svc:/network/smtp:sendmail
```

All the following are valid abbreviations:

```
sendmail
:sendmail
smtp
smtp:sendmail
network/smtp
```

While the following are invalid:

```
mail
network
network/smt
```

Abbreviated forms of *FMRI*s are unstable, and should not be used in scripts or other permanent tools. If a pattern matches more than one instance or service, an error message is printed and no action is taken.

- General Subcommands
- end
  - exit
  - quit
    - Exits immediately.
  - repository *repfile*
    - Uses *repfile* as a repository. By default, svccfg(1M) uses the system repository.
    - Use repository only with files from the identical version of Solaris, including patches, that you are currently running. Do not use this subcommand with the system repository, `/etc/svc/repository.db`.
  - set [-v|-V]
    - Sets optional behavior. If no options are specified, set displays the options currently in effect.
    - v
      - Turns on verbose mode.
    - V
      - Turns off verbose mode.
- Service Profile Subcommands
- apply [-n] *file*
    - If a *file* is a service profile, properties, including general/enabled, that are specified in the file are modified in the SMF repository. Not-yet-existent properties and property groups will be created. The type of the pre-existing property *groups* will not be changed by the profile. Existing properties (as distinguished from property groups) *can* have their type changed by the profile. Nonexistent services and instances are ignored. Services and instances modified by the profile will be refreshed. If -n is specified, the profile is processed and no changes are applied to the SMF repository. Any syntax error found will be reported on stderr and an exit code of 1 will be returned. See [smf\(5\)](#) for a description of service profiles. This command requires privileges to modify properties in the service and instance. See [smf\\_security\(5\)](#) for the privileges required to modify properties. If *file* is not a service profile, the subcommand fails.
  - extract [> *file*]
    - Prints a service profile which represents the enabled status of the service instances in the repository to standard output. The output may be redirected to a file.
- Service Manifest Subcommands
- archive [-a]
    - Dumps a full XML service description for all services, instances, and their persistent properties in the repository. This does not include transient properties such as service state, and is suitable for a relocatable repository backup.
    - Without the -a option, property groups containing protected information (identified by the presence of the `read_authorization` property—see [smf\\_security\(5\)](#)) will be archived without their property values. When the -a option is specified, all values will be archived. An error results if there are insufficient privileges to read these values.



`export [-a] service_FMRI [>file]`

The service description for the specified service and its instances is written to standard output or redirected to the given file. Dependencies with a boolean “external” property set to true are omitted in the belief that they were created on behalf of another service.

Without the `-a` option, property groups containing protected information (identified by the presence of the `read_authorization` property—see [smf\\_security\(5\)](#)) will be exported without their property values. When the `-a` option is specified, all values will be archived. An error results if there are insufficient privileges to read these values.

Note that `export` requires a service FMRI. If you specify an instance (including an abbreviation, such as `apache2` or `sendmail`, that specifies an instance), the command fails.

`import [-V] file`

If *file* is a service manifest, then the services and instances it specifies are imported into the repository. According to the file, dependencies may be created in other services. See [smf\(5\)](#) for a description of service manifests. See [smf\\_security\(5\)](#) for the privileges required to create and modify service configurations.

Services and instances in the manifest will be validated against template data in the manifest and the repository, and warnings will be issued for all template violations. See [smf\\_template\(5\)](#) for a description of templates. If the `-V` option is specified, manifests that violate the defined templates will fail to import. In interactive invocations of `svccfg`, `-V` is the default behavior.

For existing services and instances, properties which have not changed since the last `import` snapshot was taken are upgraded to those specified by the manifest. Conflicts (properties which have been changed both in the repository and the manifest) are reported on the standard error stream. `svccfg` will never upgrade the “general/enabled” and “general/restarter” properties, since they represent administrator preference.

`inventory file`

If *file* is determined to be a service manifest, then the FMRIs of the services and instances the *file* describes are printed. For each service, the FMRIs of its instances are displayed before the FMRI of the service.

`restore`

Restores the contents of the repository from a full XML service description previously created by the `archive` subcommand. If the archive was generated without the use of the `-a` option, the contents of the repository following completion of the restore will not include the values of any read-protected properties (see [smf\\_security\(5\)](#)). If these are required, they must be restored manually.

Restoring an archive which is inconsistent with currently installed software (including patch revisions) might yield unpredictable results. Therefore, prior to restoring an archive, all system and application software, including any service manifests, should be restored to the same state it was in at the time the archive was made.

**validate** [*file* | *fmri*]

The `validate` subcommand can operate on a manifest file, an instance FMRI, or the current instance or snapshot entity selection. When an argument is specified, `svccfg` will check to see whether the specified file exists. If the file exists, it will be validated. If a file of the specified name does not exist, the argument is treated as an FMRI pattern. If a conflict arises between a filename and an FMRI, use the `svc:` and `file:` prefixes to tell `svccfg` how to interpret the argument.

When you specify a file, the file is processed in a manner similar to `import -V`, but no changes are made to the repository. If any errors are detected, `svccfg` displays the errors and exits with a nonzero exit status.

For an instance *fmri*, instance entity selection, or snapshot entity selection, the specified instance in its composed form (see “Properties and Property Groups” in [smf\(5\)](#)) will be validated against template data in the repository. Instance FMRI and instance entity selections use the “running” snapshot for validation. Warnings will be issued for all template violations. See [smf\\_template\(5\)](#) for a description of templates.

Entity Selection,  
Modification, and  
Navigation  
Subcommands

An “entity” refers to a scope, service, or service instance.

**add** *name*

A new entity with the given name is created as a child of the current selection. See [smf\\_security\(5\)](#) for the privileges required to create entities.

**delete** [-f] {*name* | *fmri*}

The named child of the current selection or the entity specified by *fmri* is deleted. Attempts to delete service instances in the “online” or “degraded” state will fail unless the `-f` flag is specified. If a service or service instance has a “dependents” property group of type “framework”, then for each of its properties with type “astring” or “fmri”, if the property has a single value which names a service or service instance then the dependency property group in the indicated service or service instance with the same name as the property will be deleted. See [smf\\_security\(5\)](#) for the privileges required to delete service configurations.

**list** [*pattern*]

The child entities of the current selection whose names match the glob pattern *pattern* are displayed (see [fnmatch\(5\)](#)). ‘properties’ is also listed for property-bearing entities, namely services and service instances.

**select** {*name* | *fmri*}

If the argument names a child of the current selection, it becomes the current selection. Otherwise, the argument is interpreted as an FMRI and the entity that the argument specifies becomes the current selection.

**unselect**

The parent of the current selection becomes the current selection.

Property Inspection  
and Modification  
Subcommands

`addpg name type [flags]`

Adds a property group with the given *name* and *type* to the current selection. *flags* is a string of characters which designates the flags with which to create the property group. 'P' represents SCF\_PG\_FLAG\_NONPERSISTENT (see `scf_service_add_pg(3SCF)`). See `smf_security(5)` for the privileges required to create property groups.

`addpropvalue pg/name [type:] value`

Adds the given value to a property. If *type* is given and the property exists, then if *type* does not agree with the property's *type*, the subcommand fails. The values may be enclosed in double-quotes. String values containing double-quotes or backslashes must be enclosed by double-quotes and the contained double-quotes and backslashes must be quoted by backslashes. Nonexistent properties are created, in which case the *type* specifier must be present. See `scf_value_create(3SCF)` for a list of available property types. See `smf_security(5)` for the privileges required to modify properties. The new value will be appended to the end of the list of property values associated with the property.

`delpg name`

Deletes the property group *name* of the current selection. See `smf_security(5)` for the privileges required to delete property groups.

`delprop pg[/name]`

Deletes the named property group or property of the current selection. See `smf_security(5)` for the privileges required to delete properties.

`delpropvalue pg/name globpattern`

Deletes all values matching the given *glob* pattern in the named property. Succeeds even if no values match. See `smf_security(5)` for the privileges required to modify properties.

`describe [-v] [-t] [propertygroup/property]`

Describes either the current or the possible settings.

When invoked without arguments, `describe` gives basic descriptions (if available) of the currently selected entity and all of its currently set property groups and properties. A property group or specific property can be queried by specifying either the property group name, or the property group name and property name, separated by a slash (/), as an argument.

The `-v` option gives all information available, including descriptions for current settings, constraints, and other possible setting choices.

The `-t` option shows only the template data for the selection (see `smf_template(5)`), and does not display the current settings for property groups and properties.

`editprop`

Comments of commands to reproduce the property groups and properties of the current selection are placed in a temporary file and the program named by the EDITOR environment variable is invoked to edit it. Upon completion, the commands in the

temporary file are executed. The default editor is `vi(1)`. See `smf_security(5)` for the privileges required to create, modify, or delete properties.

#### `listpg [pattern]`

Displays the names, types, and flags of property groups of the current selection. If an argument is given, it is taken as a glob pattern and only property groups with names which match the argument are listed.

In interactive mode, a basic description of the property groups is also given.

#### `listprop [pattern]`

Lists property groups and properties of the current selection. For property groups, names, types, and flags are listed. For properties, names (prepended by the property group name and a slash (/)), types, and values are listed. See `scf_value_create(3SCF)` for a list of available property types. If an argument is supplied it is taken as a glob pattern and only property groups and properties with names which match the argument are listed.

#### `setenv [-i | -s] [-m method_name] envvar value`

Sets a method environment variable for a service or instance by changing the “environment” property in the `method_name` property group, if that property group has type “method”. If `method_name` is not specified and the `-i` option is used, the “method\_context” property group is used, if an instance is currently selected. If the `-s` option is used and a service is currently selected, its “method\_context” property group is used. If the `-s` option is used and an instance is currently selected, the “method\_context” property group of its parent is used. If neither the `-i` option nor the `-s` option is used, the “start” property group is searched for in the currently selected entity and, if an instance is currently selected, its parent is also searched. If the “inetd\_start” property group is not located, it is searched for in a similar manner.

Once the property is located, all values which begin with `envvar` followed by a “=” are removed, and the value “`envvar=value`” is added. See `smf_security(5)` for the privileges required to modify properties.

#### `setprop pg/name = [type:] value`

#### `setprop pg/name = [type:] ([values ...])`

Sets the `name` property of the `pg` property group of the current selection to the given values of type `type`. See `scf_value_create(3SCF)` for a list of available property types. If the property already exists and the `type` disagrees with the existing `type` on the property, the subcommand fails. Values may be enclosed in double-quotes. String values which contain double-quotes or backslashes must be enclosed by double-quotes and the contained double-quotes and backslashes must be quoted by backslashes. If the named property does not exist, it is created, as long as the type is specified. See `smf_security(5)` for the privileges required to create or modify properties. Multiple values will be stored in the order in which they are specified.

#### `unsetenv [-i | -s] [-m method_name] envvar value`

Removes a method environment variable for a service or instance by changing the “environment” property in the `method_name` property group, if that property group has

type “method”. If *method\_name* is not specified and the `-i` option is used, the “method\_context” property group is used, if an instance is currently selected. If the `-s` option is used and a service is currently selected, its “method\_context” property group is used. If the `-s` option is used and an instance is currently selected, the “method\_context” property group of its parent is used. If neither the `-i` option nor the `-s` option is used, the “start” property group is searched for in the currently selected entity and, if an instance is currently selected, its parent is also searched. If the “inetd\_start” property group is not located, it is searched for in a similar manner.

Once the property is located, all values which begin with *envvar* followed by “=” are removed. See [smf\\_security\(5\)](#) for the privileges required to modify properties.

Snapshot Navigation  
and Selection  
Subcommands

`listsnap`

Displays snapshots available for the currently selected instance.

`revert [snapshot]`

Reverts the properties of the currently selected instance and its service to those recorded in the named snapshot. If no argument is given, use the currently selected snapshot and deselect it on success. The changed property values can be made active via the `refresh` subcommand of [svcadm\(1M\)](#). See [smf\\_security\(5\)](#) for the privileges required to change properties.

`selectsnap [name]`

Changes the current snapshot to the one named by *name*. If no *name* is specified, deselect the currently selected snapshot. Snapshots are read-only.

Instance  
Subcommands

`refresh`

Commit the values from the current configuration to the running snapshot, making them available for use by the currently selected instance. If the repository subcommand has not been used to select a repository, direct the instance's restarter to reread the updated configuration.

**Examples** `EXAMPLE 1` Importing a Service Description

The following example imports a service description for the `seismic` service in the XML manifest specified on the command line.

```
svccfg import /var/svc/manifest/site/seismic.xml
```

Note that the manifest must follow the format specified in [service\\_bundle\(4\)](#).

`EXAMPLE 2` Exporting a Service Description

To export a service description on the local system:

```
svccfg export dumpadm >/tmp/dump.xml
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Deleting a Service Instance

To delete a service instance:

```
svccfg delete network/inetd-upgrade:default
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Checking Properties in an Alternate Repository

To examine the state of a service's properties after loading an alternate repository, use the sequence of commands shown below. One might use such commands, for example, to determine whether a service was enabled in a particular repository backup.

```
svccfg
svc:> repository /etc/svc/repository-boot
svc:> select telnet:default
svc:/network/telnet:default> listprop general/enabled
general/enabled boolean false
svc:/network/telnet:default> exit
```

**EXAMPLE 5** Enabling Debugging

To modify LD\_PRELOAD for a start method and enable the use of `libumem(3LIB)` with debugging features active:

```
$ svccfg -s system/service setenv LD_PRELOAD libumem.so
$ svccfg -s system/service setenv UMEM_DEBUG default
```

**EXAMPLE 6** Using describe Subcommand

The following command illustrates the use of the describe subcommand.

```
svccfg -s console-login describe ttymon
ttymon application
ttymon/device astring /dev/console
 terminal device to be used for the console login prompt
ttymon/label astring console
 appropriate entry from /etc/ttydefs
...
```

**Environmental Variables** EDITOR The command to run when the editprop subcommand is used. The default editor is `vi(1)`.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

```
0
 Successful execution.
```

- 1  
One or more subcommands resulted in failure. Error messages are written to the standard error stream.
- 2  
Invalid command line options were specified.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	See below.

The interactive output is Uncommitted. The invocation and non-interactive output are Committed.

**See Also** [svcprop\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [svc.configd\(1M\)](#), [libscf\(3LIB\)](#), [libumem\(3LIB\)](#), [scf\\_service\\_add\\_pg\(3SCF\)](#), [scf\\_value\\_create\(3SCF\)](#), [contract\(4\)](#), [service\\_bundle\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [fnmatch\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [smf\\_method\(5\)](#), [smf\\_security\(5\)](#), [smf\\_template\(5\)](#)

**Name** svc.configd – Service Management Facility repository daemon

**Synopsis** /lib/svc/bin/svc.configd

**Description** svc.configd is the repository daemon for the Service Management Facility. svc.configd is invoked automatically during system startup, and restarted if any failures occur. svc.configd should never be invoked directly.

Interaction with svc.configd is by way of [libscf\(3LIB\)](#) and the command line tools: [svcs\(1\)](#), [svccprop\(1\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), and [svccfg\(1M\)](#).

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsr

**See Also** [svcs\(1\)](#), [svccprop\(1\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [libscf\(3LIB\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)



---

<b>Name</b>	svc.ipfd – IP Filter firewall monitoring daemon
<b>Synopsis</b>	/lib/svc/bin/svc.ipfd svc:/network/ipfilter:default
<b>Description</b>	<p>The <code>svc.ipfd</code> daemon monitors actions on services that use firewall configuration and initiates update services' IP Filter configuration. The daemon allows the system to react to changes in system's firewall configuration in an incremental fashion, at a per-service level.</p> <p>A service's firewall policy is activated when it is enabled, deactivated when it is disabled, and updated when its configuration property group is modified. <code>svc.ipfd</code> monitors the services management facility (SMF) repository for these actions and invokes the IP Filter rule-generation process to carry out the service's firewall policy.</p> <p>This daemon is started by the <code>network/ipfilter</code> service either through the <code>start</code> or <code>refresh</code> method. Thus, the daemon inherits the environment variables and credentials from the method and runs as root with all zone privileges.</p>
Firewall Static Configuration	<p>A static definition describes a service's network resource configuration that is used to generate service-specific IPF rules. The per-service <code>firewall_context</code> property group contains a service's static definition, similar to the <code>inetd</code> property group in <code>inetd</code> managed services. This property group supports:</p> <p><code>firewall_context/name</code> For non-<code>inetd</code> services. The IANA name or RPC name, equivalent to the <code>inetd/name</code> property.</p> <p><code>firewall_context/isrpc</code> For non-<code>inetd</code> services. A boolean property where a <code>true</code> value indicates an RPC service, equivalent to the <code>inetd/isrpc</code> property. For RPC services, the value of <code>firewall_context/name</code> is not an IANA name but is either an RPC program number or name. See <a href="#">rpc(4)</a>.</p> <p>Additionally, some services may require a mechanism to generate and supply their own IPF rules. An optional property <code>ipf_method</code>, provides a mechanism to allow such custom rule generation:</p> <p><code>firewall_context/ipf_method</code> A command. Normally a script that generates IPF rules for a service. The framework does not generate rules for services with this property definition. Rather, the framework expects these services to provide their own rules.</p> <p>A service's <code>ipf_method</code> specifies a command that takes an additional argument, its own fault management resource identifier (FMRI), and generates the service's firewall rules and outputs those rules to stdout. To generate rules for a service with the <code>ipf_method</code> property, the framework execs the command specified in <code>ipf_method</code>, passing the service FMRI as the additional argument, and stores the rules for that service by redirecting the command output,</p>

the rules, to the service's rule file. Because an `ipf_method` is exec'ed from the context of either the `network/ipfilter` `start` or `refresh` method process, it inherits the execution context and runs as root.

The service static configuration is delivered by the service developer and not intended to be modified by users. These properties are only modified upon installation of an updated service definition.

Firewall Policy Configuration

A per-service property group, `firewall_config`, stores the services' firewall policy configuration. Because `network/ipfilter:default` is responsible for two firewall policies, the Global Default and Global Override system-wide policies (as explained in `ipfilter(5)`), it has two property groups, `firewall_config_default` and `firewall_config_override`, to store the respective system-wide policies.

Below are the properties, their possible values, and corresponding semantics:

`policy`

The `policy` has the following modes:

`none` policy mode

No access restriction. For a global policy, this mode allows all incoming traffic. For a service policy, this mode allows all incoming traffic to its service.

`deny` policy mode

More restrictive than `none`. This mode allows incoming traffic from all sources except those specified in the `apply_to` property.

`allow` policy mode

Most restrictive mode. This mode blocks incoming traffic from all sources except those specified in the `apply_to` property.

`apply_to`

A multi-value property listing network entities to enforce the chosen policy mode. Entities listed in `apply_to` property will be denied if `policy` is `deny` and allowed if `policy` is `allow`.

The syntax for possible values are:

<code>host:</code>	<code>host:IP</code>	"host:192.168.84.14"
<code>subnet:</code>	<code>network:IP/netmask</code>	"network:129.168.1.5/24"
<code>ippool:</code>	<code>pool:pool number</code>	"pool:77"
<code>interface:</code>	<code>if:interface_name</code>	"if:e1000g0"

`exceptions`

A multi-value property listing network entities to be excluded from the `apply_to` list. For example, when `deny` policy is applied to a subnet, exceptions can be made to some hosts in that subnet by specifying them in the `exceptions` property. This property has the same value syntax as `apply_to` property.

For individual network services only:

**firewall\_config/policy**

A service's policy can also be set to `use_global`. Services with `use_global` policy mode inherits the Global Default firewall policy.

For the Global Default only:

**firewall\_config\_default/policy**

Global Default policy, `firewall_config` property group in `svc:/network/ipfilter:default`, can also be set to `custom`. Users can set `policy` to `custom` to use prepopulated IP Filter configuration, for example, an existing IP Filter configuration or custom configurations that cannot be provided by the framework. This Global Default-only policy mode allows users to supply a text file containing the complete set of IPF rules. When `custom` mode is selected, the specified set of IPF rules is *complete* and the framework will not generate IPF rules from configured firewall policies.

**firewall\_config\_default/custom\_policy\_file**

A file path to be used when Global Default policy is set to `custom`. The file contains a set of IPF rules that provide the desired IP Filter configuration. For example, users with existing IPF rules in `/etc/ipf/ipf.conf` can execute the following commands to use the existing rules:

1. Set custom policy:

```
svccfg -s ipfilter:default setprop \
 firewall_config_default/policy = astring: "custom"
```

2. Specify custom file:

```
svccfg -s ipfilter:default setprop \
 firewall_config_default/custom_policy_file = astring: \
 "/etc/ipf/ipf.conf"
```

3. Refresh configuration:

```
svcadm refresh ipfilter:default
```

**firewall\_config\_default/open\_ports**

Non-service program requiring allowance of its incoming traffic can request that the firewall allow traffic to its communication ports. This multi-value property contains protocol and port(s) tuple in the form:

```
"{tcp | udp}:{PORT | PORT-PORT}"
```

Initially, the system-wide policies are set to `none` and network services' policies are set to `use_global`. Enabling `network/ipfilter` activates the firewall with an empty set of IP Filter rules, since system-wide policy is `none` and all services inherit that policy. To configure a more restrictive policy, use [svccfg\(1M\)](#) to modify network services and system-wide policies.

A user configures firewall policy by modifying the service's `firewall_config` property group. A new authorization, `solaris.smf.value.firewall.config`, is created to allow delegation

of the firewall administration privilege to users. Users with Service Operator privileges will need this new authorization to be able to configure firewall policy.

**Firewall Availability** During boot, a firewall is configured for enabled services prior to the starting of those services. Thus, services are protected on boot. While the system is running, administrative actions such as service restarting, enabling, and refreshing may cause a brief service vulnerability during which the service runs while its firewall is being configured.

`svc.ipfd` monitors a service's start and stop events and configures or unconfigures a service's firewall at the same time that SMF is starting or stopping the service. Because the two operations are simultaneous, there is a possible window of exposure (less than a second) if the service is started before its firewall configuration completed. RPC services typically listen on ephemeral addresses, which are not known until the services are actually running. Thus RPC services are subjected to similar exposure since their firewalls are not configured until the services are running.

**Developer Documentation** Services providing remote capabilities are encouraged to participate in the firewall framework to control network access to the service. While framework integration is not mandatory, remote access to services that are not integrated in the framework may not function correctly when a system-wide policy is configured.

Integrating a service into the framework is as straightforward as defining two additional property groups and their corresponding properties in the service manifest. IP Filter rules are generated when a user enables the service. In the non-trivial case of custom rule generation, where a shell script is required, there are existing scripts that can be used as examples.

The additional property groups, `firewall_config` and `firewall_context`, stores firewall policy configuration and provides static firewall definition, respectively. Below is a summary of new property groups and properties and their appropriate default values.

Firewall policy configuration:

`firewall_config`

Access to the system is protected by a new authorization definition and a user-defined property type. The new authorization should be assigned to the property group `value_authorization` in a way such as:

```
<propval name='value_authorization' type='astring'
value='solaris.smf.value.firewall.config' />
```

A third party should follow the service symbol namespace convention to generate a user-defined type. Sun-delivered services can use `com.sun.fw_configuration` as the property type.

See “Firewall Policy Configuration,” above, for more information.

`firewall_config/policy`

This property's initial value should be `use_global` since services, by default, inherit the Global Default firewall policy.

`firewall_config/apply_to`  
 An empty property, this property has no initial value.

`firewall_config/exceptions`  
 An empty property, this property has no initial value.

Firewall static definition:

`firewall_context`  
 A third party should follow service symbol namespace convention to generate a user-defined type, Sun delivered services can use `com.sun_fw_definition` as the property type.

See “Firewall Static Configuration,” above, for more information.

`firewall_context/name`  
 Service with well-known, IANA defined port, which can be obtained by [getservbyname\(3SOCKET\)](#). The service's IANA name is stored in this property. For RPC services, the RPC program number is stored in this property.

`firewall_context/isrpc`  
 For RPC services, this property should be created with its value set to `true`.

`firewall_context/ipf_method`  
 In general, the specified firewall policy is used to generate IP Filter rules to the service's communication port, derived from the `firewall_context/name` property. Services that do not have IANA-defined ports and are not RPC services will need to generate their own IP Filter rules. Services that generate their own rules may choose not to have `firewall_context/name` and `firewall_context/isrpc` properties. See the following services:

```
svc:/network/ftp:default
svc:/network/nfs/server:default
svc:/network/ntp:default
```

...and others with the `ipf_method` for guidance.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu, SUNWipfr
Interface Stability	Committed

**See Also** [svccprop\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [ipf\(1M\)](#), [svccadm\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [getservbyname\(3SOCKET\)](#), [rpc\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [ipfilter\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

**Name** svc.startd – Service Management Facility master restarter

**Synopsis** /lib/svc/bin/svc.startd  
svc:/system/svc/restarter:default

**Description** `svc.startd` is the master restarter daemon for Service Management Facility (SMF) and the default restarter for all services. `svc.startd` starts, stops, and restarts services based on administrative requests, system failures, or application failures.

`svc.startd` maintains service state, as well as being responsible for managing faults in accordance with the dependencies of each service.

`svc.startd` is invoked automatically during system startup. It is restarted if any failures occur. `svc.startd` should never be invoked directly.

See [smf\\_restarter\(5\)](#) for information on configuration and behavior common to all restarters.

[svcs\(1\)](#) reports status for all services managed by the Service Configuration Facility. [svcadm\(1M\)](#) allows manipulation of service instances with respect to the service's restarter.

**Environment Variables** Environment variables with the “SMF\_” prefix are reserved and may be overwritten.

`svc.startd` supplies the “SMF\_” environment variables specified in [smf\\_method\(5\)](#) to the method. `PATH` is set to “`/usr/sbin:/usr/bin`” by default. By default, all other environment variables supplied to `svc.startd` are those inherited from [init\(1M\)](#).

Duplicate entries are reduced to a single entry. The value used is undefined. Environment entries that are not prefixed with “`<name>=`” are ignored.

**Restarter Options** `svc.startd` is not configured by command line options. Instead, configuration is read from the service configuration repository. You can use [svccfg\(1M\)](#) to set all options and properties.

The following configuration variables in the `options` property group are available to developers and administrators:

#### `boot_messages`

An *astring* (as defined in `scf_value_is_type`; see [scf\\_value\\_create\(3SCF\)](#)) that describes the default level of messages to print to the console during boot. The supported message options include `quiet` and `verbose`. The `quiet` option prints minimal messages to console during boot. The `verbose` option prints a single message per service started to indicate success or failure. You can use the `boot -m` option to override the `boot_messages` setting at boot time. See [kernel\(1M\)](#).

#### Logging

Control the level of global service logging for `svc.startd`. An *astring* (as defined in `scf_value_is_type`; see [scf\\_value\\_create\(3SCF\)](#)) that describes the default level of messages to log to `syslog` (see [syslog\(3C\)](#) and `svc.startd`'s global logfile,

`/var/svc/log/svc.startd.log`. The supported message options include `quiet`, `verbose`, and `debug`. The `quiet` option sends error messages requiring administrative intervention to the console, `syslog` and `svc.startd`'s global logfile. The `verbose` option sends error messages requiring administrative intervention to the console, `syslog` and `svc.startd`'s global logfile, and information about errors which do not require administrative intervention to `svc.startd`'s global logfile. A single message per service started is also sent to the console. The `debug` option sends `svc.startd` debug messages to `svc.startd`'s global logfile, error messages requiring administrative intervention to the console, `syslog` and `svc.startd`'s global logfile, and a single message per service started to the console.

#### milestone

An FMRI which determines the milestone used as the default boot level. Acceptable options include only the major milestones:

```
svc:/milestone/single-user:default
svc:/milestone/multi-user:default
svc:/milestone/multi-user-server:default
```

or the special values `all` or `none`. `all` represents an idealized milestone that depends on every service. `none` is a special milestone where no services are running apart from the master `svc:/system/svc/restarter:default`. By default, `svc.startd` uses `all`, a synthetic milestone that depends on every service. If this property is specified, it overrides any `initdefault` setting in [inittab\(4\)](#).

#### system/reconfigure

Indicates that a reconfiguration reboot has been requested. Services with actions that must key off of a reconfiguration reboot may check that this property exists and is set to 1 to confirm a reconfiguration boot has been requested.

This property is managed by `svc.startd` and should not be modified by the administrator.

Configuration errors, such as disabling `svc.startd` are logged by `syslog`, but ignored.

**SERVICE STATES** Services managed by `svc.startd` can appear in any of the states described in [smf\(5\)](#). The state definitions are unmodified by this restarter.

**SERVICE REPORTING** In addition to any logging done by the managed service, `svc.startd` provides a common set of service reporting and logging mechanisms.

Reporting properties `svc.startd` updates a common set of properties on all services it manages. These properties are a common interface that can be used to take action based on service instance health. The [svcs\(1\)](#) command can be used to easily display these properties.

#### restarter/state

#### restarter/next\_state

The current and next (if currently in transition) state for an instance.

restarter/auxiliary\_state

A caption detailing additional information about the current instance state. The auxiliary state available for services managed by `svc.startd` is:

maintenance

fault\_threshold\_reached  
 stop\_method\_failed  
 administrative\_request

restarter/state\_timestamp

The time when the current state was reached.

restarter/contract

The primary process contract ID, if any, that under which the service instance is executing.

*Logs*

By default, `svc.startd` provides logging of significant restarter actions for the service as well as method standard output and standard error file descriptors to `/var/svc/log/service:instance.log`. The level of logging to system global locations like `/var/svc/log/svc.startd.log` and `syslog` is controlled by the `options/logging` property.

**SERVICE DEFINITION** When developing or configuring a service managed by `svc.startd`, a common set of properties are used to affect the interaction between the service instance and the restarter.

*Methods*

The general form of methods for the fork/exec model provided by `svc.startd` are presented in [smf\\_method\(5\)](#). The following methods are supported as required or optional by services managed by `svc.startd`.

**refresh** Reload any appropriate configuration parameters from the repository or `config` file, without interrupting service. This is often implemented using `SIGHUP` for system daemons. If the service is unable to recognize configuration changes without a restart, no refresh method is provided.

This method is optional.

**start** Start the service. Return success only after the application is available to consumers. Fail if a conflicting instance is already running, or if the service is unable to start.

This method is required.

**stop** Stop the service. In some cases, the stop method can be invoked when some or all of the service has already been stopped. Only return an error if the service is not entirely stopped on method return.

This method is required.



If the service does not need to take any action in a required method, it must specify the `: true` token for that method.

`svc.startd` honors any method context specified for the service or any specific method. The method expansion tokens described in [smf\\_method\(5\)](#) are available for use in all methods invoked by `svc.startd`.

### *Properties*

An overview of the general properties is available in [smf\(5\)](#). The specific way in which these general properties interacts with `svc.startd` follows:

#### `general/enabled`

If `enabled` is set to `true`, the restarter attempts to start the service once all its dependencies are satisfied. If set to `false`, the service remains in the disabled state, not running.

#### `general/restarter`

If this FMRI property is empty or set to `svc:/system/svc/restarter:default`, the service is managed by `svc.startd`. Otherwise, the restarter specified is responsible (once it is available) for managing the service.

#### `general/single_instance`

If `single_instance` is set to `true`, `svc.startd` only allows one instance of this service to transition to online or degraded at any time.

Additionally, `svc.startd` managed services can define the optional properties listed below in the `startd` property group.

#### `startd/duration`

The `duration` property defines the service's model. It can be set to `transient`, `child` also known as “wait” model services, or `contract` (the default).

#### `startd/ignore_error`

The `ignore_error` property, if set, specifies a comma-separated list of ignored events. Legitimate string values in that list are `core` and `signal`. The default is to restart on all errors.

#### `startd/need_session`

The `need_session` property, if set to `true`, indicates that the instance should be launched in its own session. The default is not to do so.

#### `startd/utmpx_prefix`

The `utmpx_prefix` string property defines that the instance requires a valid `utmpx` entry prior to start method execution. The default is not to create a `utmpx` entry.

**SERVICE FAILURE** `svc.startd` assumes that a method has failed if it returns a non-zero exit code or if fails to complete before the timeout specified expires. If `$SMF_EXIT_ERR_CONFIG` or `$SMF_EXIT_ERR_FATAL` is returned, `svc.startd` immediately places the service in the

maintenance state. For all other failures, `svc.startd` places the service in the offline state. If a service is offline and its dependencies are satisfied, `svc.startd` tries again to start the service (see [smf\(5\)](#)).

If a contract or transient service does not return from its start method before its defined timeout elapses, `svc.startd` sends a `SIGKILL` to the method, and returns the service to the offline state.

If three failures happen in a row, or if the service is restarting more than once a second, `svc.startd` places the service in the maintenance state.

The conditions of service failure are defined by a combination of the service model (defined by the `startd/duration` property) and the value of the `startd/ignore_error` property.

A contract model service fails if any of the following conditions occur:

- all processes in the service exit
- any processes in the service produce a core dump
- a process outside the service sends a service process a fatal signal (for example, an administrator terminates a service process with the `kill` command)

The last two conditions may be ignored by the service by specifying `core` and/or `signal` in `startd/ignore_error`.

Defining a service as transient means that `svc.startd` does not track processes for that service. Thus, the potential faults described for contract model services are not considered failures for transient services. A transient service only enters the maintenance state if one of the method failure conditions occurs.

“wait” model services are restarted whenever the child process associated with the service exits. A child process that exits is not considered an error for “wait” model services, and repeated failures do not lead to a transition to maintenance state.

**LEGACY SERVICES** `svc.startd` continues to provide support for services invoked during the startup run level transitions. Each `/etc/rc?.d` directory is processed after all managed services which constitute the equivalent run level milestone have transitioned to the online state. Standard `init` scripts placed in the `/etc/rc?.d` directories are run in the order of their sequence numbers.

The milestone to run-level mapping is:

milestone/single-user	Single-user (5)
milestone/multi-user	Multi-user (2)
milestone/multi-user-server	Multi-user with network services (3)

Additionally, `svc.startd` gives these legacy services visibility in SMF by inserting an instance per script into the repository. These legacy instances are visible using standard SMF interfaces such as [svcs\(1\)](#), always appear in the LEGACY-RUN state, cannot be modified, and can not be specified as dependencies of other services. The initial start time of the legacy service is captured as a convenience for the administrator.

**Files** `/var/svc/log` Directory where `svc.startd` stores log files.  
`/etc/svc/volatile` Directory where `svc.startd` stores log files in early stages of boot, before `/var` is mounted read-write.

**Example** EXAMPLE 1 Turning on Verbose Logging

To turn on verbose logging, type the following:

```
/usr/sbin/svccfg -s system/svc/restarter:default
svc:/system/svc/restarter:default> addpg options application
svc:/system/svc/restarter:default> setprop options/logging = \
astring: verbose
svc:/system/svc/restarter:default> exit
```

This request will take effect on the next restart of `svc.startd`.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

**See Also** [svcs\(1\)](#), [svccfg\(1\)](#), [kernel\(1M\)](#), [init\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [svc.configd\(1M\)](#), [setsid\(2\)](#), [syslog\(3C\)](#), [libscf\(3LIB\)](#), [scf\\_value\\_create\(3SCF\)](#), [contract\(4\)](#), [init.d\(4\)](#), [process\(4\)](#), [inittab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [smf\\_method\(5\)](#)

**Name** swap – swap administrative interface

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/swap -a *swapname* [*swaplow*] [*swaplen*]  
/usr/sbin/swap -d *swapname* [*swaplow*]  
/usr/sbin/swap -l [-h | -k]  
/usr/sbin/swap -s [-h]

**Description** The swap utility provides a method of adding, deleting, and monitoring the system swap areas used by the memory manager.

**Options** The following options are supported:

-a *swapname* [*swaplow*] [*swaplen*]

Add the specified swap area. This option can only be used by the superuser or by one who has assumed the Primary Administrator role. *swapname* is the name of the swap area or regular file. For example, on system running a UFS root file system, specify a slice, such as /dev/dsk/c0t0d0s1, or a regular file for a swap area. On a system running a ZFS file system, specify a ZFS volume, such as /dev/zvol/dsk/rpool/swap, for a swap area. Using a regular file for swap is not supported on a ZFS file system. In addition, you cannot use the same ZFS volume for both the swap area and a dump device when the system is running a ZFS root file system.

*swaplow* is the offset in 512-byte blocks into the file where the swap area should begin. *swaplen* is the desired length of the swap area in 512-byte blocks. The value of *swaplen* can not be less than 16. For example, if *n* blocks are specified, then (*n*-1) blocks would be the actual swap length. *swaplen* must be at least one page in length. The size of a page of memory can be determined by using the `pagesize` command. See [pagesize\(1\)](#). Since the first page of a swap file is automatically skipped, and a swap file needs to be at least one page in length, the minimum size should be a multiple of 2 `pagesize` bytes. The size of a page of memory is machine-dependent.

*swaplow* + *swaplen* must be less than or equal to the size of the swap file. If *swaplen* is not specified, an area will be added starting at *swaplow* and extending to the end of the designated file. If neither *swaplow* nor *swaplen* are specified, the whole file will be used except for the first page. Swap areas are normally added automatically during system startup by the /sbin/swapadd script. This script adds all swap areas which have been specified in the /etc/vfstab file; for the syntax of these specifications, see [vfstab\(4\)](#).

To use an NFS or local file system *swapname*, you should first create a file using [mkfile\(1M\)](#). A local file system swap file can now be added to the running system by just running the `swap -a` command. For NFS mounted swap files, the server needs to export the file. Do this by performing the following steps:

1. Add the following line to /etc/dfs/dfstab:

```
share -F nfs -o \
 rw=clientname, root=clientname path-to-swap-file
```

2. Run `shareall(1M)`.
3. Have the client add the following line to `/etc/vfstab`:

```
server:path-to-swap-file - local-path-to-swap-file nfs \
- - - local-path-to-swap-file - - swap - - -
```

4. Have the client run `mount`:
5. The client can then run `swap -a` to add the swap space:

```
swap -a local-path-to-swap-file
```

**-d *swapname***

Delete the specified swap area. This option can only be used by the super-user. *swapname* is the name of the swap file: for example, `/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s1` or a regular file. *swaplow* is the offset in 512-byte blocks into the swap area to be deleted. If *swaplow* is not specified, the area will be deleted starting at the second page. When the command completes, swap blocks can no longer be allocated from this area and all swap blocks previously in use in this swap area have been moved to other swap areas.

**-h**

All sizes are scaled to a human readable format. Scaling is done by repetitively dividing by 1024.

**-k**

Write the files sizes in units of 1024 bytes.

**-l**

List the status of all the swap areas. The output has five columns:

**path**

The path name for the swap area.

**dev**

The major/minor device number in decimal if it is a block special device; zeroes otherwise.

**swaplo**

The *swaplow* value for the area in 512-byte blocks.

**blocks**

The *swapplen* value for the area in 512-byte blocks.

**free**

The number of 512-byte blocks in this area that are not currently allocated.

The list does not include swap space in the form of physical memory because this space is not associated with a particular swap area.

If `swap -l` is run while `swapname` is in the process of being deleted (by `swap -d`), the string INDEL will appear in a sixth column of the swap stats.

-s

Print summary information about total swap space usage and availability:

allocated

The total amount of swap space in bytes currently allocated for use as backing store.

reserved

The total amount of swap space in bytes not currently allocated, but claimed by memory mappings for possible future use.

used

The total amount of swap space in bytes that is either allocated or reserved.

available

The total swap space in bytes that is currently available for future reservation and allocation.

These numbers include swap space from all configured swap areas as listed by the `-l` option, as well swap space in the form of physical memory.

**Usage** On the 32-bit operating system, only the first 2 Gbytes -1 are used for swap devices greater than or equal to 2 Gbytes in size. On the 64-bit operating system, a block device larger than 2 Gbytes can be fully utilized for swap up to  $2^{63} - 1$  bytes.

**Environment Variables** See [environ\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following environment variables that affect the execution of swap: LC\_CTYPE and LC\_MESSAGE.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

**See Also** [pagesize\(1\)](#), [mkfile\(1M\)](#), [shareall\(1M\)](#), [getpagesize\(3C\)](#), [vfstab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#)

**Notes** For information about setting up a swap area with ZFS, see the *ZFS Administration Guide*.

**Warnings** No check is done to determine if a swap area being added overlaps with an existing file system.

**Name** sync – update the super block

**Synopsis** sync

**Description** sync executes the sync system primitive. If the system is to be stopped, sync must be called to ensure file system integrity. It will flush all previously unwritten system buffers out to disk, thus assuring that all file modifications up to that point will be saved. See [sync\(2\)](#) for details.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

**See Also** [sync\(2\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** syncinit – set serial line interface operating parameters

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/syncinit *device*  
 [ [*baud\_rate*] | [*keyword=value*,]... | [*single-word option*]]

**Description** The syncinit utility allows the user to modify some of the hardware operating modes common to synchronous serial lines. This can be useful in troubleshooting a link, or necessary to the operation of a communications package.

If run without options, syncinit reports the options as presently set on the port. If options are specified, the new settings are reported after they have been made.

**Options** Options to syncinit normally take the form of a keyword, followed by an equal sign and a value. The exception is that a baud rate may be specified as a decimal integer by itself. Keywords must begin with the value shown in the options table, but may contain additional letters up to the equal sign. For example, loop= and loopback= are equivalent.

The following options are supported:

Keyword	Value	Effect
loop	yes	Set the port to operate in internal loopback mode. The receiver is electrically disconnected from the DCE receive data input and tied to the outgoing transmit data line. Transmit data is available to the DCE. The Digital Phase-Locked Loop (DPLL) may not be used as a clock source in this mode. If no other clocking options have been specified, perform the equivalent of txc=baud and rxc=baud.
	no	Disable internal loopback mode. If no other clocking options have been specified, perform the equivalent of txc=txc and rxc=rxc.
echo	yes	Set the port to operate in auto-echo mode. The transmit data output is electrically disconnected from the transmitter and tied to the receive data input. Incoming receive data is still visible. Use of this mode in combination with local loopback mode has no value, and should be rejected by the device driver. The auto-echo mode is useful to make a system become the endpoint of a remote loopback test.
	no	Disable auto-echo mode.
nrzi	yes	Set the port to operate with NRZI data encoding.
	no	Set the port to operate with NRZ data encoding.
txc	txc	Transmit clock source will be the TxC signal (pin 15).
	rxc	Transmit clock source will be the RxC signal (pin 17).
	baud	Transmit clock source will be the internal baud rate generator.
	pll	Transmit clock source will be the output of the DPLL circuit.



rx	rx	Receive clock source will be the RxC signal (pin 17).
	tx	Receive clock source will be the TxC signal (pin 15).
	baud	Receive clock source will be the internal baud rate generator.
	pll	Receive clock source will be the output of the DPLL circuit.
speed	<i>integer</i>	Set the baud rate to <i>integer</i> bits per second.

There are also several single-word options that set one or more parameters at a time:

Keyword	Equivalent to Options:
external	txc=txc rxc=rx
sender	txc=baud rxc=rx
internal	txc=pll rxc=pll
stop	speed=0

### Examples EXAMPLE 1 Using syncinit

The following command sets the first CPU port to loop internally, using internal clocking and operating at 38400 baud:

```
example# syncinit zsh0 38400 loop=yes
device: /dev/zsh ppa: 0
speed=38400, loopback=yes, echo=no, nrzi=no, txc=baud, rxc=baud
```

The following command sets the same port's clocking, local loopback and baud rate settings to their default values:

```
example# syncinit zsh0 stop loop=no
device: /dev/zsh ppa: 0
speed=0, loopback=no, echo=no, nrzi=no, txc=txc, rxc=rx
```

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

**See Also** [syncloop\(1M\)](#), [syncstat\(1M\)](#), [Intro\(2\)](#), [ioctl\(2\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [zsh\(7D\)](#)

**Diagnostics** *device* missing minor device number The name *device* does not end in a decimal number that can be used as a minor device number.

bad speed: *arg*

The string *arg* that accompanied the speed= option could not be interpreted as a decimal integer.

Bad arg: *arg*

The string *arg* did not make sense as an option.

ioctl failure code = *errno*

An [ioctl\(2\)](#) system call failed. The meaning of the value of *errno* may be found in [Intro\(2\)](#).

**Warnings** Do not use `syncinit` on an active serial link, unless needed to resolve an error condition. Do not use this command casually or without being aware of the consequences.

**Name** syncloop – synchronous serial loopback test program

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/syncloop [-cdlstv] *device*

**Description** The syncloop command performs several loopback tests that are useful in exercising the various components of a serial communications link.

Before running a test, syncloop opens the designated port and configures it according to command line options and the specified test type. It announces the names of the devices being used to control the hardware channel, the channel number (ppa) corresponding to the *device* argument, and the parameters it has set for that channel. It then runs the loopback test in three phases.

The first phase is to listen on the port for any activity. If no activity is seen for at least four seconds, syncloop proceeds to the next phase. Otherwise, the user is informed that the line is active and that the test cannot proceed, and the program exits.

In the second phase, called the "first-packet" phase, syncloop attempts to send and receive one packet. The program will wait for up to four seconds for the returned packet. If no packets are seen after five attempts, the test fails with an excoriating message. If a packet is returned, the result is compared with the original. If the length and content do not match exactly, the test fails.

The final phase, known as the "multiple-packet" phase, attempts to send many packets through the loop. Because the program has verified the integrity of the link in the first-packet phase, the test will not fail after a particular number of timeouts. If a packet is not seen after four seconds, a message is displayed. Otherwise, a count of the number of packets received is updated on the display once per second. If it becomes obvious that the test is not receiving packets during this phase, the user may wish to stop the program manually. The number and size of the packets sent during this phase is determined by default values, or by command line options. Each returned packet is compared with its original for length and content. If a mismatch is detected, the test fails. The test completes when the required number of packets have been sent, regardless of errors.

After the multiple-packet phase has completed, the program displays a summary of the hardware event statistics for the channel that was tested. The display takes the following form:

```
CRC errors Aborts Overruns Underruns In<-Drops-> Out
 0 0 0 0 0 0
```

This is followed by an estimated line speed, which is an approximation of the bit rate of the line, based on the number of bytes sent and the actual time that it took to send them.

**Options** The options for syncloop are described in the following table:

Option	Parameter	Default	Description
-c	<i>packet_count</i>	100	Specifies the number of packets to be sent in the multiple-packet phase.
-d	<i>hex_data_byte</i>	<i>random</i>	Specifies that each packet will be filled with bytes with the value of <i>hex_data_byte</i> .
-l	<i>packet_length</i>	100	Specifies the length of each packet in bytes.
-s	<i>line_speed</i>	9600	Bit rate in bits per second.
-v			Sets verbose mode. If data errors occur, the expected and received data is displayed.
-t	<i>test_type</i>	<i>none</i>	A number, from 1 to 4, that specifies which test to perform. The values for <i>test_type</i> are as follows: 1: Internal loopback test. Port loopback is on. Transmit and receive clock sources are internal (baud rate generator). 2: External loopback test. Port loopback is off. Transmit and receive clock sources are internal. Requires a loopback plug suitable to the port under test. 3: External loopback test. Port loopback is off. Transmit and receive clock sources are external (modem). Requires that one of the local modem, the remote modem, or the remote system be set in a loopback configuration. 4: Test using predefined parameters. User defines hardware configuration and may select port parameters using the <a href="#">syncinit(1M)</a> command.

All numeric options except -d are entered as decimal numbers (for example, -s 19200). If you do not provide the -t *test\_type* option, syncloop prompts for it.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 A sample display of using the syncloop command.

In the following command syncloop uses a packet length of 512 bytes over the first CPU port:

```
example# syncloop -l 512 zsh0
```

In response to the above command, syncloop prompts you for the test option you want.

The following command performs an internal loopback test on the first CPU port, using 5000 packets and a bit rate of 56Kbps:

```
example# syncloop -t 1 -s 56000 -c 5000 zsh0
```

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

**See Also** [syncinit\(1M\)](#), [syncstat\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [zsh\(7D\)](#)

- Diagnostics**
- |                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>device</i> missing minor device number    | The name <i>device</i> does not end in a decimal number that can be used as a minor device number.                                                                                                                     |
| invalid packet length: <i>nnn</i>            | The packet length was specified to be less than zero or greater than 4096.                                                                                                                                             |
| poll: nothing to read                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| poll: nothing to read or write.              | The <a href="#">poll(2)</a> system call indicates that there is no input pending and/or that output would be blocked if attempted.                                                                                     |
| len <i>xxx</i> should be <i>yyy</i>          | The packet that was sent had a length of <i>yyy</i> , but was received with a length of <i>xxx</i> .                                                                                                                   |
| <i>nnn</i> packets lost in outbound queueing |                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| <i>nnn</i> packets lost in inbound queueing  | A discrepancy has been found between the number of packets sent by syncloop and the number of packets the driver counted as transmitted, or between the number counted as received and the number read by the program. |
- Warnings** To allow its tests to run properly, as well as prevent disturbance of normal operations, syncloop should only be run on a port that is not being used for any other purpose at that time.

**Name** syncstat – report driver statistics from a synchronous serial link

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/syncstat [-c] *device* [*interval*]

**Description** The `syncstat` command reports the event statistics maintained by a synchronous serial device driver. The report may be a single snapshot of the accumulated totals, or a series of samples showing incremental changes. Prior to these it prints the device name being used to query a particular device driver, along with a number indicating the channel number (ppa) under control of that driver.

Event statistics are maintained by a driver for each physical channel that it supports. They are initialized to zero at the time the driver module is loaded into the system, which may be either at boot time or when one of the driver's entry points is first called.

The *device* argument is the name of the serial device as it appears in the `/dev` directory. For example, `zsh0` specifies the first on-board serial device.

The following is a breakdown of `syncstat` output:

---

<code>speed</code>	The line speed the device has been set to operate at. It is the user's responsibility to make this value correspond to the modem clocking speed when clocking is provided by the modem.
<code>ipkts</code>	The total number of input packets.
<code>opkts</code>	The total number of output packets.
<code>undrun</code>	The number of transmitter underrun errors.
<code>ovrrun</code>	The number of receiver overrun errors.
<code>abort</code>	The number of aborted received frames.
<code>crc</code>	The number of received frames with CRC errors.
<code>isize</code>	The average size (in bytes) of input packets.
<code>osize</code>	The average size (in bytes) of output packets.

---

**Options** -c Clear the accumulated statistics for the device specified. This may be useful when it is not desirable to unload a particular driver, or when the driver is not capable of being unloaded.

*interval* `syncstat` samples the statistics every *interval* seconds and reports incremental changes. The output reports line utilization for input and output in place of average packet sizes. These are the relationships between bytes transferred and the baud rate, expressed as percentages. The loop repeats indefinitely, with a column heading printed every twenty lines for convenience.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Sample output from the syncstat command:

```
example# syncstat zsh0
```

```
speed ipkts opkts undrun ovrrun abort crc isize osize
9600 15716 17121 0 0 1 3 98 89
```

```
example# syncstat -c zsh0
```

```
speed ipkts opkts undrun ovrrun abort crc isize osize
9600 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
```

In the following sample output a new line of output is generated every five seconds:

```
example# syncstat zsh0 5
```

```
ipkts opkts undrun ovrrun abort crc iutil outil
12 10 0 0 0 0 5% 4%
22 60 0 0 0 0 3% 90%
36 14 0 0 0 1 51% 2%
```

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

**See Also** [syncinit\(1M\)](#), [syncloop\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [zsh\(7D\)](#)

<b>Diagnosics</b> bad interval: <i>arg</i>	The argument <i>arg</i> is expected to be an interval and could not be understood.
<i>device</i> missing minor device number	The name <i>device</i> does not end in a decimal number that can be used as a minor device number.
baud rate not set	The <i>interval</i> option is being used and the baud rate on the device is zero. This would cause a divide-by-zero error when computing the line utilization statistics.

**Warnings** Underrun, overrun, frame-abort, and CRC errors have a variety of causes. Communication protocols are typically able to handle such errors and initiate recovery of the transmission in which the error occurred. Small numbers of such errors are not a significant problem for most protocols. However, because the overhead involved in recovering from a link error can be much greater than that of normal operation, high error rates can greatly degrade overall link throughput. High error rates are often caused by problems in the link hardware, such as

cables, connectors, interface electronics or telephone lines. They may also be related to excessive load on the link or the supporting system.

The percentages for input and output line utilization reported when using the *interval* option may occasionally be reported as slightly greater than 100% because of inexact sampling times and differences in the accuracy between the system clock and the modem clock. If the percentage of use greatly exceeds 100%, or never exceeds 50%, then the baud rate set for the device probably does not reflect the speed of the modem.



**Name** sysdef – output system definition

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/sysdef [-i] [-n *namelist*]  
 /usr/sbin/sysdef [-h] [-d] [-i] [-D]

**Description** The sysdef utility outputs the current system definition in tabular form. It lists all hardware devices, as well as pseudo devices, system devices, loadable modules, and the values of selected kernel tunable parameters.

It generates the output by analyzing the named bootable operating system file (*namelist*) and extracting the configuration information from it.

The default system *namelist* is /dev/kmem.

- Options**
- i Prints the configuration information from /dev/kmem. This is the default and only needs to be specified if the configuration information from both /dev/kmem and the system file specified with the “-n *namelist*” option is needed.
  - n *namelist* Specifies a *namelist* other than the default (/dev/kmem). The *namelist* specified must be a valid bootable operating system.
  - h Prints the identifier of the current host in hexadecimal. If sysdef -h is executed within a non-global zone and the zone emulates a host identifier, then the zone's host identifier is printed. This numeric value is not guaranteed to be unique.
  - d The output includes the configuration of system peripherals formatted as a device tree.
  - D For each system peripheral in the device tree, display the name of the device driver used to manage the peripheral.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Sample output format

The following example displays the format of the sysdef -d output:

```
example% sysdef -d
Node 'SUNW,Ultra-5_10', unit #-1
 Node 'packages', unit #-1 (no driver)
 Node 'terminal-emulator', unit #-1 (no driver)
 Node 'deblocker', unit #-1 (no driver)
 Node 'obp-tftp', unit #-1 (no driver)
 Node 'disk-label', unit #-1 (no driver)
 Node 'SUNW,builtin-drivers', unit #-1 (no driver)
 Node 'sun-keyboard', unit #-1 (no driver)
 Node 'ufs-file-system', unit #-1 (no driver)
 Node 'chosen', unit #-1 (no driver)
 Node 'openprom', unit #-1 (no driver)
```

**EXAMPLE 1** Sample output format (Continued)

```

Node 'client-services', unit #-1 (no driver)
Node 'options', unit #0
Node 'aliases', unit #-1 (no driver)
Node 'memory', unit #-1 (no driver)
Node 'virtual-memory', unit #-1 (no driver)
Node 'pci', unit #0
 Node 'pci', unit #0
 Node 'ebus', unit #0
 Node 'auxio', unit #-1 (no driver)
 Node 'power', unit #0
 Node 'SUNW,pll', unit #-1 (no driver)
 Node 'se', unit #0 (no driver)
 Node 'su', unit #0
 Node 'su', unit #1
 Node 'ecpp', unit #-1 (no driver)
 Node 'fdthree', unit #0
 Node 'eeprom', unit #-1 (no driver)
 Node 'flashprom', unit #-1 (no driver)
 Node 'SUNW,CS4231', unit #0 (no driver)
 Node 'network', unit #0
 Node 'SUNW,m64B', unit #0
 Node 'ide', unit #0
 Node 'disk', unit #-1 (no driver)
 Node 'cdrom', unit #-1 (no driver)
 Node 'sd', unit #1
 Node 'dad', unit #1
 Node 'pci', unit #-1 (no driver)
 Node 'SUNW,UltraSPARC-IIi', unit #-1 (no driver)
Node 'pseudo', unit #0

```

*[output truncated]*

**Files** /dev/kmem default operating system image

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

**See Also** [hostid\(1\)](#), [prtconf\(1M\)](#), [nlist\(3ELF\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [zones\(5\)](#)

**Name** syseventadm – sysevent event specification administration

**Synopsis** syseventadm add [-R *rootdir*] [-v *vendor*] [-p *publisher*]  
 [-c *class*] [-s *subclass*] [-u *username*] *path* [*args*]  
 syseventadm remove [-R *rootdir*] [-v *vendor*] [-p *publisher*]  
 [-c *class*] [-s *subclass*] [-u *username*] [*path* [*args*]]  
 syseventadm list [-R *rootdir*] [-v *vendor*] [-p *publisher*]  
 [-c *class*] [-s *subclass*] [-u *username*] [*path* [*args*]]  
 syseventadm restart

**Description** The syseventadm command is an administrative front-end to add, remove and list sysevent event handlers. You can also restart the sysevent daemon by use of the restart command. syseventadm can only be run by root.

The syseventadm add command adds a handler for a sysevent event specified by at least one of vendor, publisher or class. If *class* is specified, it may be qualified with a *sub-class*. Only the values specified for *vendor*, *publisher*, *class* and *sub-class* when adding the handler are matched against sysevent events to determine if the specification matches the event and the handler should be run. *path* is the full pathname of the command to be run in response to matching events, with optional arguments (*args*). If username is specified, the command is invoked as user *username*, otherwise as root.

The syseventadm remove command removes handlers for matching sysevent event specifications. Event specifications may be matched by specifying at least one of *vendor*, *publisher*, *class*, *username* or *path*. If *class* is specified, it may be qualified with a *sub-class*. Any of *vendor*, *publisher*, *class*, *sub-class*, *username*, *path* or *args* not specified match the corresponding fields of all events. Handlers for all matching specifications are removed.

The syseventadm list command lists the handlers for matching sysevent event specifications using the same match criteria as the remove command but without the requirement that at least one of *vendor*, *publisher*, *class*, *username* or *path* be specified. With no match criteria, all specifications are listed. The list command output format is: [vendor=*vendor*] [publisher=*publisher*] [class=*class*] [subclass=*subclass*] [username=*username*] *path* [*args*] where each of *class*, *sub-class*, *vendor*, *publisher* and *username* is listed only if part of the match criteria for the listed specification.

The syseventadm restart command informs the syseventd daemon to reread the sysevent registry after a change has been made by adding or removing one or more sysevent handler specifications.

**Argument Macro Substitution** The sysevent handling facility provides extensive macro capability for constructing the command line arguments to be executed in response to an event. Macro expansion applies only to the command line *args* specified for an event handler, with macros expanded with data from the event itself. Pre-defined macros are provided for the event *class*, *subclass*, *publisher* and *vendor* information. Macros not matching one of the pre-defined macro names cause the

attribute list attached to the event to be searched for an attribute of that name, with the value of the matching attribute substituted on the command line.

Macros are introduced by the `$` character, with the macro name being the following token separated by a SPACE or TAB character. If the macro name is embedded in text, it may be delineated by `{` and `}`. A `\` before the `$` causes macro expansion not to occur.

<code>\$class</code>	The class string defining the event
<code>\$publisher</code>	The publisher string defining the event
<code>\$sequence</code>	The sequence number of the event.
<code>\$subclass</code>	The subclass string defining the event
<code>\$timestamp</code>	The timestamp of the event.
<code>\$vendor</code>	The vendor string defining the event

Macro names other than those pre-defined are compared against the attribute list provided with the event. An attribute with name matching the macro name causes the value of the attribute to be substituted as ASCII text on the generated command line.

Use of a macro for which no attribute with that name is defined, or for which multiple attributes with that name are provided, cause an error and the command is not invoked.

Attributes with signed data types (`DATA_TYPE_INT16`, `DATA_TYPE_INT32` and `DATA_TYPE_INT64`) are expanded as decimal digits.

Attributes with unsigned data types (`DATA_TYPE_BYTE`, `DATA_TYPE_UINT16`, `DATA_TYPE_UINT32`, `DATA_TYPE_UINT64` and `DATA_TYPE_HTTPTIME`) are expanded as hexadecimal digits with a `0x` prefix.

Attributes with string data type (`DATA_TYPE_STRING`) are expanded with the string data. The data is not quoted. If it is desired that the quoted strings be generated on the command line, put quotes around the macro call in the arguments.

Array types are expanded with each element expanded as defined for that scalar type, with a space separating each element substitution.

**Options** The `add`, `list` and `remove` subcommands support the following options:

- `-c class` Specify the event class, *class*.
- `-p publisher` Specify the event publisher, *publisher*.
- `-R rootdir` Specify an alternate root path, *rootdir*.

**Note** – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the `-R` option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system,

might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).

- s *subclass* Specify the event subclass, *subclass*.
- u *username* Specify the username (*username*) to invoke the command.
- v *vendor* Specify the vendor (*vendor*) that defines the event. Events defined by third-party software should specify the company's stock symbol as *vendor*. Sun-defined events use SUNW.

**Operands** The add, list and remove subcommands support the following options:

- args* Command arguments
- path* Full path of command to be run in response to event

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Adding an Event Handler

The following example adds an event handler for an event defined by vendor MYCO (“My Company”), class EC\_ENV and sub-class ESC\_ENV\_TEMP. The command to be run is /opt/MYCOenv/bin/ec\_env\_temp, with arguments being the class name, sub-class name and pathname derived from the event attributes. The \$ characters are preceded by a backslash to circumvent shell interpretation. There is no need to restart the service after the change since the registry is maintained on \$ALROOT.

```
syseventadm add -R \${ALROOT} -v MYCO -c EC_ENV -s ESC_ENV_TEMP \
/opt/MYCOenv/bin/ec_env_temp \${class} \${subclass} \${pathname}
```

Note the caveat on the use of the -R option in the description of that option, above.

EXAMPLE 2 Removing an Event Handler

The following example removes the event handler added in Example 1.

```
syseventadm remove -R \${ALROOT} -v MYCO -c EC_ENV -s ESC_ENV_TEMP \
/opt/MYCOenv/bin/ec_env_temp \${class} \${subclass} \${pathname}
```

Note the caveat on the use of the -R option in the description of that option, above.

EXAMPLE 3 Listing Event Handlers

The following example lists all event handlers for events of class EC\_ENV, subclass ESC\_ENV\_TEMP, as defined by vendor MYCO:

```
syseventadm list -v MYCO -c EC_ENV -s ESC_ENV_TEMP \
vendor=MYCO class=EC_ENV subclass=ESC_ENV_TEMP \
/opt/MYCOenv/bin/ec_env_temp \${class} \${subclass} \${pathname}
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Listing Event Handlers

The following example lists all event handlers defined by vendor VRTS.

```
syseventadm list -v VRTS
```

**EXAMPLE 5** Removing Event Handlers

The following example removes all event handlers defined by vendor VRTS, and restarts service.

```
syseventadm remove -v VRTS
syseventadm restart
```

**EXAMPLE 6** Listing All Event Handlers Specified to Run a Command

The following example lists all event handlers specified to run the command `/opt/MYCOenv/bin/ec_env_temp`:

```
syseventadm list /opt/MYCOenv/bin/ec_env_temp
```

**EXAMPLE 7** Removing Event Handlers and Restarting Service

The following example removes all event handlers specified to run the command `/opt/MYCOenv/bin/ec_env_temp`, and restarts service:

```
syseventadm remove /opt/MYCOenv/bin/ec_env_temp
syseventadm restart
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 No matching event specification found (remove or list commands only).
- 2 Incorrect command usage.
- 3 Permission denied.
- 4 Command failed.
- 5 Out of memory.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

---

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

**See Also** [syseventd\(1M\)](#), [sysevent\\_post\\_event\(3SYSEVENT\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [ddi\\_log\\_sysevent\(9F\)](#)

**Notes** To avoid upgrade problems, packages delivering a sysevent event handler should install the event handler by running `syseventadm` from the package's postinstall script. The event handler can then be removed by running `syseventadm` from the package's preremove script using the same arguments as when added.

**Name** syseventconfd – kernel system event command invocation daemon

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/sysevent/syseventconfd [-r *rootdir*]

**Description** syseventconfd is the user-level daemon that invokes user-level commands in response to kernel system events received from [syseventd\(1M\)](#).

**Options** The following options are supported:

-r *rootdir* Cause syseventconfd to use an alternate root path when creating its door. The root path must match the root path used to invoke syseventd.

**Files** /etc/sysevent/syseventconfd\_event\_service  
syseventconfd event service door file

/usr/lib/sysevent/modules/sysevent\_conf\_mod.so  
syseventd loadable module (SLM) managing sysevent.conf files

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

**See Also** [svcs\(1\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [syseventd\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

**Notes** The syseventconfd service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/sysevent:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.



**Name** syseventd – kernel system event notification daemon

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/sysevent/syseventd [-d *debug\_level*] [-r *rootdir*]

**Description** syseventd is a user-level daemon that accepts delivery of system event buffers from the kernel. Once an event buffer has been delivered to syseventd, it, in turn, attempts to propagate the event to all interested end event subscribers.

Event subscribers take the form of a syseventd loadable module (SLM). syseventd passes the event buffer to each of its subscribers and in return expects a notification as to the successful or unsuccessful delivery attempt.

Upon successful delivery of the event buffer to all interested event subscribers, syseventd frees the event buffer from the kernel event queue.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- d *debug\_level* Enable debug mode. Messages are printed to the invoking user's terminal.
- r *rootdir* Cause syseventd to use an alternate root path when creating its door and lock files. Modules continue to be loaded from the standard module directories.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- non-zero An error occurred.

**Files** /etc/sysevent/syseventd\_daemon.lock  
daemon lock file

/etc/sysevent/sysevent\_door  
kernel to syseventd door file

/usr/lib/sysevent/modules  
SLM directory repository

/usr/platform/'uname -i'/lib/sysevent/modules  
SLM directory repository

/usr/platform/'uname -m'/lib/sysevent/modules  
SLM directory repository

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

**See Also** [svcs\(1\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [syseventconfd\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

**Notes** The syseventd service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/sysevent:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

**Name** sysidconfig – execute system configuration applications, or define set of system configuration applications

**Synopsis** sysidconfig [-lv] [-a *application*] [-b *basedir*]  
[-r *application*]

**Description** Invoked without any options, the `sysidconfig` program executes a list of applications. An application on this list is referred to as a “system configuration application.” Every application on this list will be passed one command-line argument, `-c`. This flag will cause the system configuration application to perform its configuration function. Without options, `sysidconfig` should only be invoked by startup scripts, which occurs during the initial installation and during a reconfigure reboot.

All applications on the list will be executed, if possible. All activity taken by the `sysidconfig` program is logged in the `sysidconfig` log file, `/var/log/sysidconfig.log`. If one or more of the applications on the list are either not present at execution time, are not executable, or execute but return a failure code upon completion, then that information will be logged as well. Successful completion of the program can be assumed if no error message is present in the log file. Programs are executed sequentially, with only one configuration application active at a time.

Executed with the `-l`, `-a`, or `-r` options, the `sysidconfig` program allows the super-user to list the defined configuration applications, and to add items to or remove items from that list. Running `sysidconfig` with options is the only way to view or manipulate the list. Only the super-user can execute the `sysidconfig` program with options.

The `-b` and `-v` options change the behavior of `sysidconfig`, and can be used with or without the list manipulation options discussed above. The `-b basedir` option is used to specify a reference root directory other than the default, `/`. The `-v` option duplicates the log file output on `stdout`.

By default, no SPARC based applications exist on this list.

This application is an extension of the [sysidtool\(1M\)](#) suite of programs. It is executed during initial installation and during a reconfigure reboot, before the window system has been started. Graphical User Interface (GUI) applications will not execute successfully if they are added to the list of configuration applications via `sysidconfig -a`.

This program is referenced, but not fully described, in the [sysidtool\(1M\)](#) manual page.

**Options** The valid options are:

`-a application`

Add the named application to the list of defined applications. When next invoked without arguments, `sysidconfig` will run this newly added application after all previously defined applications. *application* must be a fully qualified path name that is not currently on the list of applications to execute.

**-b *basedir***

Specify an alternate base directory (`/` is defined as the default base directory if no other is specified). The specified directory is used as the root directory when adding, listing, removing, or executing configuration applications. The log file where information is recorded is in `/var/log`, relative to the specified *basedir*. In the log file, the *basedir* is not noted. This means, for example, that if the super-user on a diskless client's server executes:

```
sysidconfig -b /export/root/client -a /sbin/someapp
```

then the diskless client *client* would have `/sbin/someapp` executed upon reconfigure reboot. The diskless client's log file would note that `/sbin/someapp` was added, not `/export/root/client/sbin/someapp`.

**Note** – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the `-b` option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).

**-l**

List defined configuration applications. Applications will be executed one at a time, in the order shown in the list.

**-r *application***

Remove the named application from the list of defined applications. *application* must be a fully qualified path name and it must be on the existing list of applications to execute.

**-v**

Verbose mode. This option echoes all information sent to the log file to `stdout`. Such information includes timestamp information about when the program was executed, the names of applications being executed, and results of those executions.

**Return Values** The `sysidconfig` program will return `0` if it completes successfully.

When executed with the `-r` or `-a` options, error conditions or warnings will be reported on `stderr`. If the requested action completes successfully, an exit code of `0` will be returned.

**Errors** EPERM

The program was executed by a user other than the super-user.

## EINVAL

Option `-l`, `-a`, or `-r` was passed and the action could not be completed successfully.

**Files** `/var/log/sysidconfig.log`  
sysidconfig log file

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWadmap

**See Also** [sys-unconfig\(1M\)](#), [sysidtool\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Diagnostics** When run without options, a log of the sysidconfig program's activity can be found in `/var/log/sysidconfig.log`. This file contains a timestamp log of each program executed, its resulting `stderr` output, and its exit code. If an application in the list was not found or is not executable, that will also be noted.

**Name** sysidtool, sysidnet, sysidns, sysidsys, sysidroot, sysidpm, sysidnfs4, sysidkbd – system configuration

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/sysidnet  
/usr/sbin/sysidns  
/usr/sbin/sysidsys  
/usr/sbin/sysidroot  
/usr/sbin/sysidpm  
/usr/sbin/sysidnfs4  
/usr/sbin/sysidkbd

**Description** sysidtool is a suite of programs that configure a new system, or one that has been unconfigured with [sys-unconfig\(1M\)](#). The sysidtool programs run automatically at system installation, or during the first boot after a machine has been successfully unconfigured.

These programs have no effect except at such times, and should never be run manually.

The sysidtool programs set up the appropriate information in the machine's configuration files, in the kernel, and on the machine's network interface. The following list shows the available commands and the information for which each of the commands lists.

**sysidnet:** network configuration

Machine's default locale. Machine's console type. Machine's host name. Machine's IP address.

**sysidns:** name service configuration

Name service choice: NIS, DNS, LDAP, or none. Machine's IP subnet mask (if no NIS server can automatically be located on the machine's sub-network. Domain name for chosen name service. Hostname and IP address of name server(s). DNS search list (DNS name service only)

**sysidsys:** miscellaneous system configuration

Machine's IP subnet mask (if an NIS server was automatically located on the machine's sub-network). Machine's time zone. Date and time.

**sysidroot:** control superuser information

Machine's root password.

**sysidpm:** power management configuration

Auto-shutdown confirmation if the system is Energystar-V2 compliant, that is, a new system model shipped after October 1, 1995.

**sysidnfs4:** NFSv4 domain configuration

Domain name to be used by NFSv4 client(s) and server(s) to transmit user and group id's as strings of the general form “[user|group]@domain”.

`sysidkbd`: keyboard layout configuration

The corresponding keytable is loaded into the kernel according to the configured keyboard layout.

`sysidconfig`: host- or platform-specific configuration

This command controls specification and execution of custom configuration applications that can be specified for a particular host or a particular platform. See [sysidconfig\(1M\)](#).

The `sysidtool` programs attempt to obtain system configuration information from various name service databases, for example, NIS, or from the [sysidcfg\(4\)](#) file, and you are prompted to provide the information if it cannot be found. However, you can avoid one or more of the prompts by preconfiguring the appropriate configuration information in the name service databases or in the [sysidcfg\(4\)](#) file.

To preconfigure the information in the name service databases, you must use the name service commands or the Solstice AdminSuite tools. See *Solaris 10 Installation Guide: Basic Installations* for more details about how to preconfigure the system configuration information.

The machine's configuration information is set up in its `/etc` and `/var` files.

If a system has more than one network interface, you can use `sysidtool` to configure all interfaces on the system.

You cannot use the name service databases or the [sysidcfg\(4\)](#) file to suppress the Power Management configuration prompt. However, you can suppress it by creating either the `/autoshutdown` or `/noautoshutdown` file before installation reboot. Accordingly, the auto-shutdown feature is silently configured. The `/autoshutdown` or `/noautoshutdown` files are removed by `sysidpm` before it exits.

`sysidnfs4` installs the `/etc/.NFS4inst_state.domain` file upon the successful configuration of the NFSv4 domain name. If this file is present during system reboot, the `sysidnfs4` program is run but no prompts are displayed. The suppression of prompts is intended for system upgrades, in which a system configuration typically stays unchanged. The stability level of this interface is obsolete

`sysidkbd` prompts for the keyboards with zero-bCountryCode and then sets the keyboard layout string in the `/etc/default/kbd` file. If the `sysidkbd` gets the valid keyboard layout string, the string will be set into the entry "LAYOUT=" in the file.

**Files** `/etc/.UNCONFIGURED`  
`/etc/nodename`  
`/etc/hostname.??[0-9]`  
`/etc/default/init`  
`/etc/defaultdomain`  
  
`/etc/passwd` password file. See [passwd\(4\)](#).

/etc/shadow shadow password file. See [shadow\(4\)](#).

/etc/inet/hosts

/etc/inet/netmasks

/var/yp/aliases

/var/yp/binding/\*/ypservers

/etc/.sysIDtool.state

/etc/power.conf Power Management configuration file. See [power.conf\(4\)](#).

/etc/.PM\_RECONFIGURE If this file is present during system reboot, the `sysidpm` program is run. This file is removed by `sysidpm`.

/etc/.NFS4inst\_state.domain

/etc/default/kdb

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWadmap, SUNWpmu

**See Also** [powerd\(1M\)](#), [sys-unconfig\(1M\)](#), [sysidconfig\(1M\)](#), [passwd\(4\)](#), [power.conf\(4\)](#), [shadow\(4\)](#), [sysidcfg\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

*Solaris 10 Installation Guide: Basic Installations*



**Name** syslogd – log system messages

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/syslogd [-d] [-f *configfile*] [-m *markinterval*]  
[-p *path*] [-t | -T]

**Description** syslogd reads and forwards system messages to the appropriate log files or users, depending upon the priority of a message and the system facility from which it originates. The configuration file `/etc/syslog.conf` (see [syslog.conf\(4\)](#)) controls where messages are forwarded. syslogd logs a mark (timestamp) message every *markinterval* minutes (default 20) at priority LOG\_INFO to the facility whose name is given as mark in the `syslog.conf` file.

A system message consists of a single line of text, which may be prefixed with a priority code number enclosed in angle-brackets (< >); priorities are defined in `<sys/syslog.h>`.

syslogd reads from the STREAMS log driver, `/dev/log`, and from any transport provider specified in `/etc/netconfig`, `/etc/net/transport/hosts`, and `/etc/net/transport/services`.

syslogd reads the configuration file when it starts up, and again whenever it receives a HUP signal (see [signal.h\(3HEAD\)](#)), at which time it also closes all files it has open, re-reads its configuration file, and then opens only the log files that are listed in that file. syslogd exits when it receives a TERM signal.

As it starts up, syslogd creates the file `/var/run/syslog.pid`, if possible, containing its process identifier (PID).

If message ID generation is enabled (see [log\(7D\)](#)), each message will be preceded by an identifier in the following format: `[ID msgid facility.priority]`. *msgid* is the message's numeric identifier described in [msgid\(1M\)](#). *facility* and *priority* are described in [syslog.conf\(4\)](#). `[ID 123456 kern.notice]` is an example of an identifier when message ID generation is enabled.

If the message originated in a loadable kernel module or driver, the kernel module's name (for example, `ufs`) will be displayed instead of `unix`. See [EXAMPLES](#) for sample output from syslogd with and without message ID generation enabled.

In an effort to reduce visual clutter, message IDs are not displayed when writing to the console; message IDs are only written to the log file. See [Examples](#).

The `/etc/default/syslogd` file contains the following default parameter settings, which are in effect if neither the `-t` nor `-T` option is selected. See [FILES](#).

The recommended way to allow or disallow message logging is through the use of the service management facility ([smf\(5\)](#)) property:

```
svc:/system/system-log/config/log_from_remote
```

This property specifies whether remote messages are logged. `log_from_remote=true` is equivalent to the `-t` command-line option and `false` is equivalent to the `-T` command-line option. The default value for `-log_from_remote` is `false`. See [NOTES](#), below.

**LOG\_FROM\_REMOTE**

Specifies whether remote messages are logged. LOG\_FROM\_REMOTE=NO is equivalent to the -t command-line option. The default value for LOG\_FROM\_REMOTE is YES.

**Options** The following options are supported:

-d

Turn on debugging. This option should only be used interactively in a root shell once the system is in multi-user mode. It should *not* be used in the system start-up scripts, as this will cause the system to hang at the point where syslogd is started.

-f *configfile*

Specify an alternate configuration file.

-m *markinterval*

Specify an interval, in minutes, between mark messages.

-p *path*

Specify an alternative log device name. The default is /dev/log.

-T

Enable the syslogd UDP port to turn on logging of remote messages. This is the default behavior. See [Files](#).

-t

Disable the syslogd UDP port to turn off logging of remote messages. See [Files](#).

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 syslogd Output Without Message ID Generation Enabled

The following example shows the output from syslogd when message ID generation *is not* enabled:

```
Sep 29 21:41:18 cathy unix: alloc /: file system full
```

EXAMPLE 2 syslogd Output with ID generation Enabled

The following example shows the output from syslogd when message ID generation *is* enabled. The message ID is displayed when writing to log file/var/adm/messages.

```
Sep 29 21:41:18 cathy ufs: [ID 845546 kern.notice]
 alloc /: file system full
```

EXAMPLE 3 syslogd Output with ID Generation Enabled

The following example shows the output from syslogd when message ID generation *is* enabled when writing to the console. Even though message ID is enabled, the message ID is not displayed at the console.

```
Sep 29 21:41:18 cathy ufs: alloc /: file system full
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Enabling Acceptance of UDP Messages from Remote Systems

The following commands enable `syslogd` to accept entries from remote systems.

```
svccfg -s svc:/system/system-log setprop config/log_from_remote = true
svcadm restart svc:/system/system-log
```

<b>Files</b>	<code>/etc/syslog.conf</code> Configuration file
	<code>/var/run/syslog.pid</code> Process ID
	<code>/etc/default/syslogd</code> Contains default settings. You can override some of the settings by command-line options.
	<code>/dev/log</code> STREAMS log driver
	<code>/etc/netconfig</code> Transport providers available on the system
	<code>/etc/net/transport/hosts</code> Network hosts for each transport
	<code>/etc/net/transport/services</code> Network services for each transport

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

**See Also** [logger\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [msgid\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [syslog\(3C\)](#), [syslog.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [signal.h\(3HEAD\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [log\(7D\)](#)

**Notes** The `mark` message is a system time stamp, and so it is only defined for the system on which `syslogd` is running. It can not be forwarded to other systems.

When `syslogd` receives a HUP signal, it attempts to complete outputting pending messages, and close all log files to which it is currently logging messages. If, for some reason, one (or more) of these files does not close within a generous grace period, `syslogd` discards the pending messages, forcibly closes these files, and starts reconfiguration. If this shutdown procedure is disturbed by an unexpected error and `syslogd` cannot complete reconfiguration, `syslogd` sends a mail message to the superuser on the current system stating that it has shut down, and exits.

Care should be taken to ensure that each window displaying messages forwarded by `syslogd` (especially console windows) is run in the system default locale (which is `syslogd`'s locale). If this advice is not followed, it is possible for a `syslog` message to alter the terminal settings for that window, possibly even allowing remote execution of arbitrary commands from that window.

The `syslogd` service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/system-log:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

When `syslogd` is started by means of [svcadm\(1M\)](#), if a value is specified for `LOG_FROM_REMOTE` in the `/etc/defaults/syslogd` file, the SMF property

```
svc:/system/system-log/config/log_from_remote
```

 is set to correspond to the `LOG_FROM_REMOTE` value and the `/etc/default/syslogd` file is modified to replace the `LOG_FROM_REMOTE` specification with the following comment:

```
LOG_FROM_REMOTE is now set using svccfg(1m), see syslogd(1m).
```

If neither `LOG_FROM_REMOTE` nor `svc:/system/system-log/config/log_from_remote` are defined, the default is to log remote messages.

On installation, the initial value of `svc:/system/system-log/config/log_from_remote` is `false`.

**Name** sys-unconfig – undo a system's configuration

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/sys-unconfig

**Description** The `sys-unconfig` command is used to restore a system's configuration to an “as-manufactured” state, ready to be reconfigured again. The system's configuration consists of hostname, Network Information Service (NIS) domain name, timezone, IP address, IP subnet mask, and root password. This operation is the inverse of those performed by the [sysidnet\(1M\)](#), [sysidns\(1M\)](#), and [sysidsys\(1M\)](#) programs run at boot. See [sysidtool\(1M\)](#).

`sys-unconfig` does the following:

- Saves current `/etc/inet/hosts` file information in `/etc/inet/hosts.saved`.
- If the current `/etc/vfstab` file contains NFS mount entries, saves the `/etc/vfstab` file to `/etc/vfstab.orig`.
- Restores the default `/etc/inet/hosts` file.
- Removes the default hostname in `/etc/hostname.interface` files for all interfaces configured when this command is run. To determine which interfaces are configured, run the command `'ifconfig -a'`. The `/etc/hostname.interface` files corresponding to all of the interfaces listed in the resulting output, with the exception of the loopback interface (`lo0`), will be removed.
- Removes the default domainname in `/etc/defaultdomain`.
- Restores the timezone to PST8PDT in `/etc/TIMEZONE`.
- Disables the Network Information Service (NIS) if NIS was configured.
- Removes the file `/etc/inet/netmasks`.
- Removes the file `/etc/defaultrouter`.
- Removes the password set for root in `/etc/shadow`.
- Removes the file `/etc/.rootkey`.
- Executes all system configuration applications. These applications are defined by prior executions of a `sysidconfig -a application`. (See [sysidconfig\(1M\)](#)). When `sys-unconfig` is run, all system configuration applications are passed one argument, `-u`.
- Removes the file `/etc/resolv.conf`.
- Removes the file `/etc/sysidcfg`.
- Disables LDAP by removing `/var/ldap/ldap_client_cache`, `/var/ldap/ldap_client_file`, `/var/ldap/ldap_client_cred`, and `/var/ldap/cachemgr.log`.
- Regenerates keys for [sshd\(1M\)](#).

When `sys-unconfig` is finished, it performs a system shutdown. `sys-unconfig` is a potentially dangerous utility and can only be run by the super user.

<b>Files</b>	/etc/default/init	process control initialization
	/etc/defaultdomain	determines host's domain name
	/etc/defaultrouter	specifies an IPv4 host's default router
	/etc/hostname. <i>interface</i>	identifies symbolic host name associated with network interface <i>interface</i>
	/etc/inet/hosts	host name database
	/etc/inet/netmasks	network mask database
	/etc/nodename	local source for system name
	/etc/.rootkey	super-user's secret key
	/etc/shadow	shadow password file
	/etc/sysidcfg	system identification configuration file for diskless booting
	/etc/vfstab	virtual file system table
	/var/yp/binding/*/ypservers	identifies NIS servers to which the client is allowed to bind

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWadmap

**See Also** [init\(1M\)](#), [sshd\(1M\)](#), [sysidconfig\(1M\)](#), [sysidtool\(1M\)](#), [hosts\(4\)](#), [netmasks\(4\)](#), [shadow\(4\)](#), [sysidcfg\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Notes** `sys-unconfig` is not available on diskless clients.

**Name** tapes – creates /dev entries for tape drives attached to the system

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/tapes [-r *root\_dir*]

**Description** [devfsadm\(1M\)](#) is now the preferred command for /dev and /devices and should be used instead of tapes.

tapes creates symbolic links in the /dev/rmt directory to the actual tape device special files under the /devices directory tree. tapes searches the kernel device tree to see what tape devices are attached to the system. For each equipped tape drive, the following steps are performed:

1. The /dev/rmt directory is searched for a /dev/rmt/*n* entry that is a symbolic link to the /devices special node of the current tape drive. If one is found, this determines the logical controller number of the tape drive.
2. The rest of the special devices associated with the drive are checked, and incorrect symbolic links are removed and necessary ones added.
3. If none are found, a new logical controller number is assigned (the lowest-unused number), and new symbolic links are created for all the special devices associated with the drive.

tapes does not remove links to non-existent devices; these must be removed by hand.

tapes is run each time a reconfiguration-boot is performed, or when [add\\_drv\(1M\)](#) is executed.

**Notice to Driver Writers** [tapes\(1M\)](#) considers all devices with the node type DDI\_NT\_TAPE to be tape devices; these devices must have their minor name created with a specific format. The minor name encodes operational modes for the tape device and consists of an ASCII string of the form [ *l,m,h,c,u* ][ *b* ][ *n* ].

The first character set is used to specify the tape density of the device, and are named low (*l*), medium (*m*), high (*h*), compressed (*c*), and ultra (*u*). These specifiers only express a relative density; it is up to the driver to assign specific meanings as needed. For example, 9 track tape devices interpret these as actual bits-per-inch densities, where *l* means 800 BPI, *m* means 1600 BPI, and *h* means 6250 BPI, whereas 4mm DAT tapes defines *l* as standard format, and *m*, *h*, *c* and *u* as compressed format. Drivers may choose to implement any or all of these format types.

During normal tape operation (non-BSD behavior), once an EOF mark has been reached, subsequent reads from the tape device return an error. An explicit IOCTL must be issued to space over the EOF mark before the next file can be read. *b* instructs the device to observe BSD behavior, where reading at EOF will cause the tape device to automatically space over the EOF mark and begin reading from the next file.

*n* or no-rewind-on-close instructs the driver to not rewind to the beginning of tape when the device is closed. Normal behavior for tape devices is to reposition to BOT when closing. See [mtio\(7I\)](#).

The minor number for tape devices should be created by encoding the device's instance number using the tape macro `MTMINOR` and `ORing` in the proper combination of density, BSD behavior, and no-rewind flags. See [mtio\(7I\)](#).

To prevent tapes from attempting to automatically generate links for a device, drivers must specify a private node type and refrain from using the node type string `DDI_NT_TAPE` when calling [ddi\\_create\\_minor\\_node\(9F\)](#).

**Options** The following options are supported:

`-r root_dir` Causes tapes to presume that the `/dev/rmt` directory tree is found under `root_dir`, not directly under `/`.

**Errors** If tapes finds entries of a particular logical controller linked to different physical controllers, it prints an error message and exits without making any changes to the `/dev` directory, since it cannot determine which of the two alternative logical to physical mappings is correct. The links should be manually corrected or removed before another reconfiguration boot is performed.

**Examples** **EXAMPLE 1** Creating Tape Device Nodes From Within the Driver's `attach()` Function

This example demonstrates creating tape device nodes from within the `xktape` driver's [attach\(9E\)](#) function.

```
#include <sys/mtio.h>
struct tape_minor_info {
 char *minor_name;
 int minor_mode;
};
/*
 * create all combinations of logical tapes
 */
static struct tape_minor_info example_tape[] = {
 {"", 0}, /* default tape */
 {"l", MT_DENSITY1},
 {"lb", MT_DENSITY1 | MT_BSD},
 {"lbn", MT_DENSITY1 | MT_BSD | MT_NOREWIND},
 {"m", MT_DENSITY2},
 {"mb", MT_DENSITY2 | MT_BSD},
 {"mbn", MT_DENSITY2 | MT_BSD | MT_NOREWIND},
 {"h", MT_DENSITY3},
 {"hb", MT_DENSITY3 | MT_BSD},
 {"hbn", MT_DENSITY3 | MT_BSD | MT_NOREWIND},
 {"c", MT_DENSITY4},
 {"cb", MT_DENSITY4 | MT_BSD},
 {"cbn", MT_DENSITY4 | MT_BSD | MT_NOREWIND},
 {NULL, 0},
};
```



---

**EXAMPLE 1** Creating Tape Device Nodes From Within the Driver's `attach()` Function *(Continued)*

```

int
xktapeattach(dev_info_t *dip, ddi_attach_cmd_t cmd)
{
 int instance;
 struct tape_minor_info *mdp;
 /* other stuff in attach... */
 instance = ddi_get_instance(dip);

 for (mdp = example_tape; mdp->minor_name != NULL; mdp++) {
 ddi_create_minor_node(dip, mdp->minor_name, S_IFCHR,
 (MTMINOR(instance) | mdp->minor_mode), DDI_NT_TAPE, 0);
 }
}

```

Installing the `xktape` driver on a Sun Fire 4800, with the driver controlling a SCSI tape (target 4 attached to an `isp(7D)` SCSI HBA) and performing a reconfiguration-boot creates the following special files in `/devices`.

```

ls -l /devices/ssm@0,0/pci@18,700000/pci@1/SUNW,isp@two@4
crw-rw-rw- 1 root sys 33,136 Aug 29 00:02 xktape@4,0:
crw-rw-rw- 1 root sys 33,200 Aug 29 00:02 xktape@4,0:b
crw-rw-rw- 1 root sys 33,204 Aug 29 00:02 xktape@4,0:bn
crw-rw-rw- 1 root sys 33,152 Aug 29 00:02 xktape@4,0:c
crw-rw-rw- 1 root sys 33,216 Aug 29 00:02 xktape@4,0:cb
crw-rw-rw- 1 root sys 33,220 Aug 29 00:02 xktape@4,0:cbn
crw-rw-rw- 1 root sys 33,156 Aug 29 00:02 xktape@4,0:cn
crw-rw-rw- 1 root sys 33,144 Aug 29 00:02 xktape@4,0:h
crw-rw-rw- 1 root sys 33,208 Aug 29 00:02 xktape@4,0:hb
crw-rw-rw- 1 root sys 33,212 Aug 29 00:02 xktape@4,0:hbn
crw-rw-rw- 1 root sys 33,148 Aug 29 00:02 xktape@4,0:hn
crw-rw-rw- 1 root sys 33,128 Aug 29 00:02 xktape@4,0:l
crw-rw-rw- 1 root sys 33,192 Aug 29 00:02 xktape@4,0:lb
crw-rw-rw- 1 root sys 33,196 Aug 29 00:02 xktape@4,0:lbn
crw-rw-rw- 1 root sys 33,132 Aug 29 00:02 xktape@4,0:ln
crw-rw-rw- 1 root sys 33,136 Aug 29 00:02 xktape@4,0:m
crw-rw-rw- 1 root sys 33,200 Aug 29 00:02 xktape@4,0:mb
crw-rw-rw- 1 root sys 33,204 Aug 29 00:02 xktape@4,0:mbn
crw-rw-rw- 1 root sys 33,140 Aug 29 00:02 xktape@4,0:mn
crw-rw-rw- 1 root sys 33,140 Aug 29 00:02 xktape@4,0:n

```

`/dev/rmt` will contain the logical tape devices (symbolic links to tape devices in `/devices`).

```

ls -l /dev/rmt
/dev/rmt/0 -> ../../devices/[...]/xktape@4,0:
/dev/rmt/0b -> ../../devices/[...]/xktape@4,0:b
/dev/rmt/0bn -> ../../devices/[...]/xktape@4,0:bn

```

**EXAMPLE 1** Creating Tape Device Nodes From Within the Driver's `attach()` Function *(Continued)*

```

/dev/rmt/0c -> ../../devices/[...]/xktape@4,0:c
/dev/rmt/0cb -> ../../devices/[...]/xktape@4,0:cb
/dev/rmt/0cbn -> ../../devices/[...]/xktape@4,0:cbn
/dev/rmt/0cn -> ../../devices/[...]/xktape@4,0:cn
/dev/rmt/0h -> ../../devices/[...]/xktape@4,0:h
/dev/rmt/0hb -> ../../devices/[...]/xktape@4,0:hb
/dev/rmt/0hbn -> ../../devices/[...]/xktape@4,0:hbn
/dev/rmt/0hn -> ../../devices/[...]/xktape@4,0:hn
/dev/rmt/0l -> ../../devices/[...]/xktape@4,0:l
/dev/rmt/0lb -> ../../devices/[...]/xktape@4,0:lb
/dev/rmt/0lbn -> ../../devices/[...]/xktape@4,0:lbn
/dev/rmt/0ln -> ../../devices/[...]/xktape@4,0:ln
/dev/rmt/0m -> ../../devices/[...]/xktape@4,0:m
/dev/rmt/0mb -> ../../devices/[...]/xktape@4,0:mb
/dev/rmt/0mbn -> ../../devices/[...]/xktape@4,0:mbn
/dev/rmt/0mn -> ../../devices/[...]/xktape@4,0:mn
/dev/rmt/0n -> ../../devices/[...]/xktape@4,0:n

```

**Files** /dev/rmt/\* logical tape devices

/devices/\* tape device nodes

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

**See Also** [add\\_drv\(1M\)](#), [devfsadm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [isp\(7D\)](#), [devfs\(7FS\)](#), [mtio\(7I\)](#), [attach\(9E\)](#), [ddi\\_create\\_minor\\_node\(9F\)](#)

### *Writing Device Drivers*

**Bugs** tapes silently ignores malformed minor device names.

**Name** tcxconfig – configure default linearity of 24-bit TrueColor Visual for OpenWindows

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/tcxconfig [linear | nonlinear]

**Description** The `tcxconfig` script changes the default linearity of a 24-bit TrueColor Visual for OpenWindows on a system with an S24 frame buffer. When the S24 graphics driver for OpenWindows is installed, the default 24-bit TrueColor Visual is nonlinear. You can run `tcxconfig` with an argument that specifies the setting you want.

OpenWindows should not be running when you execute the `tcxconfig` script with an option. Start OpenWindows after `tcxconfig` has set the linearity you desire.

**Options** If you specify no option, `tcxconfig` displays the current default setting.

You must become superuser before you can execute `tcxconfig` with one of the following options.

`linear` Set linear visual to be the default 24-bit TrueColor Visual. This means colors will be gamma-corrected.

`nonlinear` Set nonlinear visual to be the default 24-bit TrueColor Visual.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0 success

1 an error has occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWtcxow

**See Also** [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** th\_define – create fault injection test harness error specifications

**Synopsis** th\_define [-n *name* -i *instance*] -P *path*] [-a *acc\_types*]  
 [-r *reg\_number*] [-l *offset* [*length*]]  
 [-c *count* [*failcount*]] [-o *operator* [*operand*]]  
 [-f *acc\_chk*] [-w *max\_wait\_period* [*report\_interval*]]

or

th\_define [-n *name* -i *instance*] -P *path*]  
 [-a *log* [*acc\_types*] [-r *reg\_number*] [-l *offset* [*length*]]]  
 [-c *count* [*failcount*]] [-s *collect\_time*] [-p *policy*]  
 [-x *flags*] [-C *comment\_string*]  
 [-e *fixup\_script* [*args*]]

or

th\_define [-h]

**Description** The th\_define utility provides an interface to the bus\_ops fault injection bofi device driver for defining error injection specifications (referred to as errdefs). An errdef corresponds to a specification of how to corrupt a device driver's accesses to its hardware. The command line arguments determine the precise nature of the fault to be injected. If the supplied arguments define a consistent errdef, the th\_define process will store the errdef with the bofi driver and suspend itself until the criteria given by the errdef become satisfied (in practice, this will occur when the access counts go to zero).

You use the th\_manage(1M) command with the start option to activate the resulting errdef. The effect of th\_manage with the start option is that the bofi driver acts upon the errdef by matching the number of hardware accesses—specified in *count*, that are of the type specified in *acc\_types*, made by instance number *instance*—of the driver whose name is *name*, (or by the driver instance specified by *path*) to the register set (or DMA handle) specified by *reg\_number*, that lie within the range *offset* to *offset* + *length* from the beginning of the register set or DMA handle. It then applies *operator* and *operand* to the next *failcount* matching accesses.

If *acc\_types* includes log, th\_define runs in automatic test script generation mode, and a set of test scripts (written in the Korn shell) is created and placed in a sub-directory of the current directory with the name <driver>.test.<id> (for example, glm.test.978177106). A separate, executable script is generated for each access handle that matches the logging criteria. The log of accesses is placed at the top of each script as a record of the session. If the current directory is not writable, file output is written to standard output. The base name of each test file is the driver name, and the extension is a number that discriminates between different access handles. A control script (with the same name as the created test directory) is generated that will run all the test scripts sequentially.

Executing the scripts will install, and then activate, the resulting error definitions. Error definitions are activated sequentially and the driver instance under test is taken offline and brought back online before each test (refer to the -e option for more information). By default, logging applies to all PIO accesses, all interrupts, and all DMA accesses to and from areas

mapped for both reading and writing. You can constrain logging by specifying additional *acc\_types*, *reg\_number*, *offset* and *length*. Logging will continue for *count* matching accesses, with an optional time limit of *collect\_time* seconds.

Either the *-n* or *-P* option must be provided. The other options are optional. If an option (other than *-a*) is specified multiple times, only the final value for the option is used. If an option is not specified, its associated value is set to an appropriate default, which will provide maximal error coverage as described below.

**Options** The following options are available:

- n name* Specify the name of the driver to test. (String)
- i instance* Test only the specified driver instance (*-1* matches all instances of driver). (Numeric)
- P path* Specify the full device path of the driver to test. (String)
- r reg\_number* Test only the given register set or DMA handle (*-1* matches all register sets and DMA handles). (Numeric)
- a acc\_types* Only the specified access types will be matched. Valid values for the *acc\_types* argument are *log*, *pio*, *pio\_r*, *pio\_w*, *dma*, *dma\_r*, *dma\_w* and *intr*. Multiple access types, separated by spaces, can be specified. The default is to match all hardware accesses.  
  
If *acc\_types* is set to *log*, logging will match all PIO accesses, interrupts and DMA accesses to and from areas mapped for both reading and writing. *log* can be combined with other *acc\_types*, in which case the matching condition for logging will be restricted to the specified additional *acc\_types*. Note that *dma\_r* will match only DMA handles mapped for reading only; *dma\_w* will match only DMA handles mapped for writing only; *dma* will match only DMA handles mapped for both reading and writing.
- l offset [length]* Constrain the range of qualifying accesses. The *offset* and *length* arguments indicate that any access of the type specified with the *-a* option, to the register set or DMA handle specified with the *-r* option, lie at least *offset* bytes into the register set or DMA handle and at most *offset + length*

-c *count*[*failcount*]

bytes into it. The default for *offset* is 0. The default for *length* is the maximum value that can be placed in an `offset_t` C data type (see `types.h`). Negative values are converted into unsigned quantities. Thus, `th_define -l 0 -1` is maximal.

Wait for *count* number of matching accesses, then apply an operator and operand (see the -o option) to the next *failcount* number of matching accesses. If the access type (see the -a option) includes logging, the number of logged accesses is given by  $count + failcount - 1$ . The -1 is required because the last access coincides with the first faulting access.

Note that access logging may be combined with error injection if *failcount* and *operator* are nonzero and if the access type includes logging and any of the other access types (`pio`, `dma` and `intr`) See the description of access types in the definition of the -a option, above.

When the *count* and *failcount* fields reach zero, the status of the `errdef` is reported to standard output. When all active `errdefs` created by the `th_define` process complete, the process exits. If *acc\_types* includes `log`, *count* determines how many accesses to log. If *count* is not specified, a default value is used. If *failcount* is set in this mode, it will simply increase the number of accesses logged by a further  $failcount - 1$ .

-o *operator* [*operand*]

For qualifying PIO read and write accesses, the value read from or written to the hardware is corrupted according to the value of *operator*:

- EQ     *operand* is returned to the driver.
- OR     *operand* is bitwise ORed with the real value.
- AND    *operand* is bitwise ANDed with the real value.
- XOR    *operand* is bitwise XORed with the real value.

For PIO write accesses, the following operator is allowed:

NO     Simply ignore the driver's attempt to write to the hardware.

Note that a driver performs PIO via the `ddi_getX()`, `ddi_putX()`, `ddi_rep_getX()` and `ddi_rep_putX()` routines (where *X* is 8, 16, 32 or 64). Accesses made using `ddi_getX()` and `ddi_putX()` are treated as a single access, whereas an access made using the `ddi_rep_*(9F)` routines are broken down into their respective number of accesses, as given by the *repcount* parameter to these DDI calls. If the access is performed via a DMA handle, *operator* and *value* are applied to every access that comprises the DMA request. If interference with interrupts has been requested then the operator may take any of the following values:

DELAY     After *count* accesses (see the `-c` option), delay delivery of the next *failcount* number of interrupts for *operand* number of microseconds.

LOSE     After *count* number of interrupts, fail to deliver the next *failcount* number of real interrupts to the driver.

EXTRA     After *count* number of interrupts, start delivering *operand* number of extra interrupts for the next *failcount* number of real interrupts.

The default value for *operand* and *operator* is to corrupt the data access by flipping each bit (XOR with -1).

`-f acc_chk`

If the *acc\_chk* parameter is set to 1 or *pio*, then the driver's calls to `ddi_check_acc_handle(9F)` return `DDI_FAILURE` when the access count goes to 1. If the *acc\_chk* parameter is set to 2 or *dma*, then the driver's calls to `ddi_check_dma_handle(9F)` return `DDI_FAILURE` when the access count goes to 1.

- w max\_wait\_period [report\_interval]* Constrain the period for which an error definition will remain active. The option applies only to non-logging errdefs. If an error definition remains active for *max\_wait\_period* seconds, the test will be aborted. If *report\_interval* is set to a nonzero value, the current status of the error definition is reported to standard output every *report\_interval* seconds. The default value is zero. The status of the errdef is reported in parsable format (eight fields, each separated by a colon (: ) character, the last of which is a string enclosed by double quotes and the remaining seven fields are integers):
- ft:mt:ac:fc:chk:ec:s:"message"* which are defined as follows:
- |                  |                                                                                                                         |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>ft</i>        | The UTC time when the fault was injected.                                                                               |
| <i>mt</i>        | The UTC time when the driver reported the fault.                                                                        |
| <i>ac</i>        | The number of remaining non-faulting accesses.                                                                          |
| <i>fc</i>        | The number of remaining faulting accesses.                                                                              |
| <i>chk</i>       | The value of the <i>acc_chk</i> field of the errdef.                                                                    |
| <i>ec</i>        | The number of fault reports issued by the driver against this errdef ( <i>mt</i> holds the time of the initial report). |
| <i>s</i>         | The severity level reported by the driver.                                                                              |
| <i>"message"</i> | Textual reason why the driver has reported a fault.                                                                     |
- h* Display the command usage string.
- s collect\_time* If *acc\_types* is given with the *-a* option and includes `log`, the errdef will log accesses for *collect\_time* seconds (the default is to log until the log becomes full). Note that, if the errdef



specification matches multiple driver handles, multiple logging errdefs are registered with the `bofi` driver and logging terminates when all logs become full or when `collect_time` expires or when the associated errdefs are cleared. The current state of the log can be checked with the `th_manage(1M)` command, using the `broadcast` parameter. A log can be terminated by running `th_manage(1M)` with the `clear_errdefs` option or by sending a SIGALRM signal to the `th_define` process. See `alarm(2)` for the semantics of SIGALRM.

`-p policy`

Applicable when the `acc_types` option includes `log`. The parameter modifies the policy used for converting from logged accesses to errdefs. All policies are inclusive:

- Use `rare` to bias error definitions toward rare accesses (default).
- Use `operator` to produce a separate error definition for each operator type (default).
- Use `common` to bias error definitions toward common accesses.
- Use `median` to bias error definitions toward median accesses.
- Use `maximal` to produce multiple error definitions for duplicate accesses.
- Use `unbiased` to create unbiased error definitions.
- Use `onebyte`, `twobyte`, `fourbyte`, or `eightbyte` to select errdefs corresponding to 1, 2, 4 or 8 byte accesses (if chosen, the `-xr` option is enforced in order to ensure that `ddi_rep_*`( ) calls are decomposed into *multiple single accesses*).
- Use `multibyte` to create error definitions for multibyte accesses performed using `ddi_rep_get*`( ) and `ddi_rep_put*`( ).

Policies can be combined by adding together these options. See the NOTES section for further information.

-x *flags*

Applicable when the *acc\_types* option includes `log`. The *flags* parameter modifies the way in which the `bofi` driver logs accesses. It is specified as a string containing any combination of the following letters:

- w Continuous logging (that is, the log will wrap when full).
- t Timestamp each log entry (access times are in seconds).
- r Log repeated I/O as individual accesses (for example, a `ddi_rep_get16(9F)` call which has a *recount* of *N* is logged *N* times with each transaction logged as size 2 bytes. Without this option, the default logging behavior is to log this access once only, with a transaction size of twice the *recount*).

-C *comment\_string*

Applicable when the *acc\_types* option includes `log`. It provides a comment string to be placed in any generated test scripts. The string must be enclosed in double quotes.

-e *fixup\_script* [*args*]

Applicable when the *acc\_types* option includes `log`. The output of a logging `errdefs` is to generate a test script for each driver access handle. Use this option to embed a command in the resulting script before the errors are injected. The generated test scripts will take an instance offline and bring it back online before injecting errors in order to bring the instance into a known fault-free state. The executable *fixup\_script* will be called twice with the set of optional *args*—once just before the instance is taken offline and again after the instance has been brought online. The following variables are passed into the environment of the called executable:

DRIVER_PATH	Identifies the device path of the instance.
DRIVER_INSTANCE	Identifies the instance number of the device.

DRIVER_UNCONFIGURE	Has the value 1 when the instance is about to be taken offline.
DRIVER_CONFIGURE	Has the value 1 when the instance has just been brought online.

Typically, the executable ensures that the device under test is in a suitable state to be taken offline (unconfigured) or in a suitable state for error injection (for example configured, error free and servicing a workload). A minimal script for a network driver could be:

```
#!/bin/ksh

driver=xyznetdriver
ifnum=$driver$DRIVER_INSTANCE

if [[$DRIVER_CONFIGURE = 1]]; then
 ifconfig $ifnum plumb
 ifconfig $ifnum ...
 ifworkload start $ifnum
elif [[$DRIVER_UNCONFIGURE = 1]]; then
 ifworkload stop $ifnum
 ifconfig $ifnum down
 ifconfig $ifnum unplumb
fi
exit $?
```

The `-e` option must be the last option on the command line.

If the `-a` log option is selected but the `-e` option is not given, a default script is used. This script repeatedly attempts to detach and then re-attach the device instance under test.

## Examples

Examples of Error Definitions `th_define -n foo -i 1 -a log`

Logs all accesses to all handles used by instance 1 of the `foo` driver while running the default workload (attaching and detaching the instance). Then generates a set of test scripts to inject appropriate errdefs while running that default workload.

```
th_define -n foo -i 1 -a log pio
```

Logs PIO accesses to each PIO handle used by instance 1 of the foo driver while running the default workload (attaching and detaching the instance). Then generates a set of test scripts to inject appropriate errdefs while running that default workload.

```
th_define -n foo -i 1 -p onebyte median -e fixup arg -now
```

Logs all accesses to all handles used by instance 1 of the foo driver while running the workload defined in the fixup script fixup with arguments arg and -now. Then generates a set of test scripts to inject appropriate errdefs while running that workload. The resulting error definitions are requested to focus upon single byte accesses to locations that are accessed a *median* number of times with respect to frequency of access to I/O addresses.

```
th_define -n se -l 0x20 1 -a pio_r -o OR 0x4 -c 10 1000
```

Simulates a stuck serial chip command by forcing 1000 consecutive read accesses made by any instance of the se driver to its command status register, thereby returning status busy.

```
th_define -n foo -i 3 -r 1 -a pio_r -c 0 1 -f 1 -o OR 0x100
```

Causes 0x100 to be ORed into the next physical I/O read access from any register in register set 1 of instance 3 of the foo driver. Subsequent calls in the driver to ddi\_check\_acc\_handle() return DDI\_FAILURE.

```
th_define -n foo -i 3 -r 1 -a pio_r -c 0 1 -o OR 0x0
```

Causes 0x0 to be ORed into the next physical I/O read access from any register in register set 1 of instance 3 of the foo driver. This is of course a no-op.

```
th_define -n foo -i 3 -r 1 -l 0x8100 1 -a pio_r -c 0 10 -o EQ 0x70003
```

Causes the next ten next physical I/O reads from the register at offset 0x8100 in register set 1 of instance 3 of the foo driver to return 0x70003.

```
th_define -n foo -i 3 -r 1 -l 0x8100 1 -a pio_w -c 100 3 -o AND
0xffffffffffffefff
```

The next 100 physical I/O writes to the register at offset 0x8100 in register set 1 of instance 3 of the foo driver take place as normal. However, on each of the three subsequent accesses, the 0x1000 bit will be cleared.

```
th_define -n foo -i 3 -r 1 -l 0x8100 0x10 -a pio_r -c 0 1 -f 1 -o XOR 7
```

Causes the bottom three bits to have their values toggled for the next physical I/O read access to registers with offsets in the range 0x8100 to 0x8110 in register set 1 of instance 3 of the foo driver. Subsequent calls in the driver to ddi\_check\_acc\_handle() return DDI\_FAILURE.

```
th_define -n foo -i 3 -a pio_w -c 0 1 -o NO 0
```

Prevents the next physical I/O write access to any register in any register set of instance 3 of the foo driver from going out on the bus.

```
th_define -n foo -i 3 -l 0 8192 -a dma_r -c 0 1 -o OR 7
```

Causes 0x7 to be ORed into each long long in the first 8192 bytes of the next DMA read, using any DMA handle for instance 3 of the foo driver.

```
th_define -n foo -i 3 -r 2 -l 0 8 -a dma_r -c 0 1 -o OR 0x7070707070707070
```

Causes 0x70 to be ORed into each byte of the first long long of the next DMA read, using the DMA handle with sequential allocation number 2 for instance 3 of the foo driver.

```
th_define -n foo -i 3 -l 256 256 -a dma_w -c 0 1 -f 2 -o OR 7
```

Causes 0x7 to be ORed into each long long in the range from offset 256 to offset 512 of the next DMA write, using any DMA handle for instance 3 of the foo driver. Subsequent calls in the driver to `ddi_check_dma_handle()` return `DDI_FAILURE`.

```
th_define -n foo -i 3 -r 0 -l 0 8 -a dma_w -c 100 3 -o AND 0xffffffffffffefff
```

The next 100 DMA writes using the DMA handle with sequential allocation number 0 for instance 3 of the foo driver take place as normal. However, on each of the three subsequent accesses, the 0x1000 bit will be cleared in the first long long of the transfer.

```
th_define -n foo -i 3 -a intr -c 0 6 -o LOSE 0
```

Causes the next six interrupts for instance 3 of the foo driver to be lost.

```
th_define -n foo -i 3 -a intr -c 30 1 -o EXTRA 10
```

When the thirty-first subsequent interrupt for instance 3 of the foo driver occurs, a further ten interrupts are also generated.

```
th_define -n foo -i 3 -a intr -c 0 1 -o DELAY 1024
```

Causes the next interrupt for instance 3 of the foo driver to be delayed by 1024 microseconds.

**Notes** The policy option in the `th_define -p` syntax determines how a set of logged accesses will be converted into the set of error definitions. Each logged access will be matched against the chosen policies to determine whether an error definition should be created based on the access.

Any number of policy options can be combined to modify the generated error definitions.

**Byte-wise Policies** These select particular I/O transfer sizes. Specifying a byte policy will exclude other byte policies that have not been chosen. If none of the byte type policies is selected, all transfer sizes are treated equally. Otherwise, only those specified transfer sizes will be selected.

onebyte	Create errdefs for one byte accesses ( <code>ddi_get8()</code> )
twobyte	Create errdefs for two byte accesses ( <code>ddi_get16()</code> )
fourbyte	Create errdefs for four byte accesses ( <code>ddi_get32()</code> )
eightbyte	Create errdefs for eight byte accesses ( <code>ddi_get64()</code> )
multibyte	Create errdefs for repeated byte accesses ( <code>ddi_rep_get*()</code> )

**Frequency of Access Policies** The frequency of access to a location is determined according to the access type, location and transfer size (for example, a two-byte read access to address A is considered distinct from a four-byte read access to address A). The algorithm is to count the number of accesses (of a given type and size) to a given location, and find the locations that were most and least accessed (let *maxa* and *mina* be the number of times these locations were accessed, and *mean* the total number of accesses divided by total number of locations that were accessed). Then a rare access is a location that was accessed less than

$$(mean - mina) / 3 + mina$$

times. Similarly for the definition of common accesses:

$$maxa - (maxa - mean) / 3$$

A location whose access patterns lies within these cutoffs is regarded as a location that is accessed with median frequency.

rare	Create errdefs for locations that are rarely accessed.
common	Create errdefs for locations that are commonly accessed.
median	Create errdefs for locations that are accessed a median frequency.

**Policies for Minimizing errdefs** If a transaction is duplicated, either a single or multiple errdefs will be written to the test scripts, depending upon the following two policies:

maximal	Create multiple errdefs for locations that are repeatedly accessed.
unbiased	Create a single errdef for locations that are repeatedly accessed.
operators	For each location, a default operator and operand is typically applied. For maximal test coverage, this default may be modified using the operators policy so that a separate errdef is created for each of the possible corruption operators.

**See Also** [kill\(1\)](#), [th\\_manage\(1M\)](#), [alarm\(2\)](#), [ddi\\_check\\_acc\\_handle\(9F\)](#), [ddi\\_check\\_dma\\_handle\(9F\)](#)

**Name** th\_manage – manage the fault injection test harness

**Synopsis** th\_manage *name instance command*

th\_manage *path command*

**Description** th\_manage applies the action specified by *command* to the instance specified by *instance* of the driver specified by *name* (or the driver instance specified by *path*). The driver instance must be running fault injection specifications (errdefs) defined by `th_define(1M)`.

th\_manage supports several commands that operate on the driver instance specified by *name* and *instance* (or *path*). The commands are:

broadcast	Awaken all th_define processes, causing them to display their current status and exit if the errdef is now defunct (that is, if <i>count</i> , <i>failcount</i> , and <i>acc_chk</i> are all zero).
clear_acc_chk	Awaken all th_define processes. If <i>count</i> and <i>failcount</i> are already zero, then set <i>acc_chk</i> to zero, so that th_define exits once it has displayed its status.
clear_errdefs	Awaken all th_define processes. <i>count</i> , <i>failcount</i> and <i>acc_chk</i> are all set to zero so that all th_define commands exit once they have displayed their status.
clear_errors	Awaken all th_define processes. If <i>count</i> is already zero, set <i>failcount</i> and <i>acc_chk</i> to zero, so that th_define exits once it has displayed its status.
get_handles	List all the access handles.
start	Begin or resume execution of all errdefs.
stop	Suspend all errdefs for this <i>name</i> and <i>instance</i> (or <i>path</i> ).

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Useful Commands

To begin the tests, enter:

```
th_manage foo 0 start
```

To check the status of the errdefs, enter:

```
th_manage foo 0 broadcast
```

This causes each th\_define process to print out its current status.

If the driver has reported a fatal error, you can take the driver offline using `libdevice`, clear the error condition by entering:

```
th_manage foo 0 clear_acc_chk
```

**EXAMPLE 1** Useful Commands      *(Continued)*

or

```
th_manage foo 0 clear_errors
```

and bring the driver online again using `libdevice`.

To terminate testing, enter:

```
th_manage foo 0 clear_errdefs
```

**See Also** [th\\_define\(1M\)](#)



**Name** tic – terminfo compiler

**Synopsis** tic [-v [*n*]] [-c] *file*

**Description** The command `tic` translates a terminfo file from the source format into the compiled format. The results are placed in the directory `/usr/share/lib/terminfo`. The compiled format is necessary for use with the library routines in `curses(3CURSES)`.

If the environment variable `TERMINFO` is set, the compiled results are placed there instead of `/usr/share/lib/terminfo`.

Total compiled entries cannot exceed 4096 bytes. The name field cannot exceed 128 bytes. Terminal names exceeding 14 characters will be truncated to 14 characters and a warning message will be printed.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- c Specifies to check only *file* for errors. Errors in `use=` links are not detected.
- v[*n*] Specify that (verbose) output be written to standard error trace information showing `tic`'s progress. The optional integer *n* is a number from 1 to 10, indicating the desired level of detail of information. If *n* is omitted, the default level is 1. If *n* is specified and greater than 1, the level of detail is increased.

**Operands** *file* Contains one or more terminfo terminal descriptions in source format [see `terminfo(4)`]. Each description in the file describes the capabilities of a particular terminal. When a `use=entry-name` field is discovered in a terminal entry currently being compiled, `tic` reads in the binary from `/usr/share/lib/terminfo` to complete the entry. (Entries created from *file* will be used first. If the environment variable `TERMINFO` is set, that directory is searched instead of `/usr/share/lib/terminfo`.) `tic` duplicates the capabilities in *entry-name* for the current entry, with the exception of those capabilities that are explicitly defined in the current entry.

**Files** `/usr/share/lib/terminfo/?/*` Compiled terminal description database

**Attributes** See `attributes(5)` for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

**See Also** `captainfo(1M)`, `infocmp(1M)`, `curses(3CURSES)`, `terminfo(4)`, `attributes(5)`

**Notes** When an entry, for example, `entry_name_1`, contains a `use=entry_name_2` field, any canceled capabilities in *entry\_name\_2* must also appear in *entry\_name\_1* before `use=` for these capabilities to be canceled in *entry\_name\_1*.

**Name** tnchkdb – check file syntax of trusted network databases

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/tnchkdb [-h *path*] [-t *path*] [-z *path*]

**Description** tnchkdb checks the syntax of the tnrhdp, tnrhdb, and tnzonecfg databases. By default, the *path* for each file is:

- /etc/security/tsol/tnrhdp
- /etc/security/tsol/tnrhdb
- /etc/security/tsol/tnzonecfg

You can specify an alternate path for any or all of the files by specifying that path on the command line by using the -h (tnrhdb), -t (tnrhdp) and -z (tnzonecfg) options. The options are useful when testing a set of modified files before installing the files as new system databases.

All three database files are checked for integrity. tnchkdb returns an exit status of 0 if all of the files are syntactically and, to the extent possible, semantically correct. If one or more files have errors, then an exit status of 1 is returned. If there are command line problems, such as an unreadable file, an exit status of 2 is returned. Errors are written to standard error.

To avoid cascading errors, when there are errors in tnrhdp, the template names in tnrhdb are not validated.

tnchkdb can be run at any label, but the standard /etc/security/tsol files are visible only in the global zone.

- Options**
- h [*path*] Check *path* for proper tnrhdb syntax. If *path* is not specified, then check /etc/security/tsol/tnrhdb.
  - t [*path*] Check *path* for proper tnrhdp syntax. If *path* is not specified, then check /etc/security/tsol/tnrhdp.
  - z [*path*] Check *path* for proper tnzonecfg syntax. If *path* is not specified, then check /etc/security/tsol/tnzonecfg.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Sample Error Message

The tnchkdb command checks for CIPSO errors. In this example, the admin\_low template has an incorrect value of ADMIN\_HIGH for its default label.

```
tnchkdb
checking /etc/security/tsol/tnrhdp ...
tnchkdb: def_label classification 7fff is invalid for cipso labels:
line 14 entry admin_low
tnchkdb: def_label compartments 241-256 must be zero for cipso labels:
line 14 entry admin_low
checking /etc/security/tsol/tnrhdb ...
checking /etc/security/tsol/tnzonecfg ...
```

**Files** /etc/security/tsol/tnrhdb Trusted network remote-host database  
 /etc/security/tsol/tnrhtp Trusted network remote-host templates  
 /etc/security/tsol/tnzonecfg Trusted zone configuration database

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWtsu
Interface Stability	See below.

The command line is Committed. The output is Uncommitted.

**See Also** [tnd\(1M\)](#), [tnctl\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

“How to Check the Syntax of Trusted Network Databases” in *Solaris Trusted Extensions Administrator's Procedures*

**Notes** The functionality described on this manual page is available only if the system is configured with Trusted Extensions.

It is possible to have inconsistent but valid configurations of tnrhtp and tnrhdb when LDAP is used to supply missing templates.

**Name** tnctl – configure Trusted Extensions network parameters

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/tnctl [-dfv] [-h *host* [/prefix] [:template]]  
[-m *zone:mlp:shared-mlp*] [-t *template* [:key=val [;key=val]]]  
[-HTz] *file*

**Description** tnctl provides an interface to manipulate trusted network parameters in the Solaris kernel.

As part of Solaris Trusted Extensions initialization, tnctl is run in the global zone by an [smf\(5\)](#) script during system boot. The tnctl command is not intended to be used during normal system administration. Instead, if a local trusted networking database file is modified without using the Solaris Management Console, the administrator first issues [tnchkdb\(1M\)](#) to check the syntax, and then refreshes the kernel copy with this command:

```
svcadm restart svc:/network/tnctl
```

See WARNINGS about the risks of changing remote host and template information on a running system.

**Options** -d

Delete matching entries from the kernel. The default is to add new entries.

When deleting MLPs, the MLP range must match exactly. MLPs are specified in the form:

```
port[-port]/protocol
```

Where *port* can be a number in the range 1 to 65535, or any known service (see [services\(4\)](#)), and *protocol* can be a number in the range 1 to 255, or any known protocol (see [protocols\(4\)](#)).

-f

Flush all kernel entries before loading the entries that are specified on the command line. The flush does not take place unless at least one entry parsed successfully.

-v

Turn on verbose mode.

-h *host*[/prefix][:template]

Update the kernel remote-host cache on the local host for the specified *host* or, if a template name is given, change the kernel's cache to use the specified *template*. If *prefix* is not specified, then an implied prefix length is determined according to the rules used for interpreting the [tnrhd](#). If -d is specified, then a template name cannot be specified.

-m *zone:mlp:shared-mlp*

Modify the kernel's multilevel port (MLP) configuration cache for the specified *zone*. *zone* specifies the zone to be updated. *mlp* and *shared-mlp* specify the MLPs for the zone-specific and shared IP addresses. The *shared-mlp* field is effective in the global zone only.

- t *template*[*key=val*[:*key=val*]]  
Update the kernel template cache for *template* or, if a list of *key=val* pairs is given, change the kernel's cache to use the specified entry. If -d is specified, then *key=val* pairs cannot be specified.
- T *file*  
Load all template entries in *file* into the kernel cache.
- H *file*  
Load all remote host entries in *file* into the kernel cache.
- z *file*  
Load just the global zone's MLPs from *file* into the kernel cache. To reload MLPs for a non-global zone, reboot the zone:  
  
# **zoneadm -z non-global zone reboot**

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWtsu
Interface Stability	Uncommitted

- Files**
- /etc/security/tsol/tnrhdb Trusted network remote-host database
  - /etc/security/tsol/tnrhtp Trusted network remote-host templates
  - /etc/security/tsol/tzonecfg Trusted zone configuration database
  - /etc/nsswitch.conf Configuration file for the name service switch

**See Also** [svcs\(1\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [tninfo\(1M\)](#), [tnd\(1M\)](#), [tnchkdb\(1M\)](#), [zoneadm\(1M\)](#), [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#), [protocols\(4\)](#), [services\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

“How to Synchronize the Kernel Cache With Trusted Network Databases” in *Solaris Trusted Extensions Administrator's Procedures*

**Warnings** Changing a template while the network is up can change the security view of an undetermined number of hosts.

**Notes** The functionality described on this manual page is available only if the system is configured with Trusted Extensions.

The `tnctl` service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/tnctl
```

The service's status can be queried by using [svcs\(1\)](#). Administrative actions on this service, such as refreshing the kernel cache, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#), as in:

```
svcadm restart svc:/network/tnctl
```

**Name** tnd – trusted network daemon

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/tnd [-p *poll-interval*]

**Description** The tnd (trusted network daemon) initializes the kernel with trusted network databases and also reloads the databases on demand from an LDAP server and local files. tnd follows the order specified in the `nsswitch.conf(4)` file when loading configuration databases. tnd is started at the beginning of the boot process.

tnd loads two databases into the kernel: the remote host database, `tnrhdb` and the remote-host template database, `tnrhtp`. These databases and their effect on the trusted network are described in their respective man pages. When the associated LDAP database or local databases are changed, tnd also updates the local kernel cache at the predetermined interval.

If a local trusted networking database file is modified, the administrator should run `tnchkdb(1M)` to check the syntax, and should also run `svcadm refresh svc:/network/tnd` to initiate an immediate database scan by tnd.

tnd is intended to be started from an `smf(5)` script and to run in the global zone. The following signals cause specific `svcadm` actions:

**SIGHUP** Causes `svcadm refresh svc:/network/tnd` to be run.

Initiates a rescan of the local and LDAP `tnrhdb` and `tnrhtp` databases. tnd updates the kernel database with any changes found.

**SIGTERM** Causes `svcadm disable svc:/network/tnd` to be run.

Terminates the tnd daemon. No changes are made to the kernel database.

Running tnd in debug mode is determined by the value of the following service management facility (SMF) property:

```
tnd/debug_level = 0
```

A value of 0, as above, prevents debug information from being collected; 1 turns on debugging. The default value is 0. Debug output is sent to the `/var/tsxol/tndlog` log file.

**Options** -p *poll-interval* Set poll interval to *poll-interval* seconds. The default *poll-interval* is 1800 seconds (30 minutes).

**Examples** **EXAMPLE 1** Changing the Poll Interval

The following command changes the polling interval to one hour, and puts this interval in the SMF repository. At the next boot, the tnd poll interval will be one hour.

```
svccfg -s network/tnd setprop tnd/poll_interval=3600
```

**EXAMPLE 1** Changing the Poll Interval *(Continued)*

The following command changes the polling interval, but does not update the repository. At the next boot, the tnd poll interval remains the default, 30 minutes.

```
tnd -p 3600
```

<b>Files</b>	/etc/security/tsol/tnrhdb	Trusted network remote-host database
	/etc/security/tsol/tnrhtp	Trusted network remote-host templates
	/etc/security/tsol/tnzonecfg	Trusted zone configuration database
	/etc/nsswitch.conf	Configuration file for the name service switch

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWtsu
Interface Stability	See below.

The command invocation is Committed. The service is Private.

**See Also** [svcs\(1\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [tninfo\(1M\)](#), [tnctl\(1M\)](#), [tnchkdb\(1M\)](#), [nsswitch.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

“How to Synchronize the Kernel Cache With Trusted Network Databases” in *Solaris Trusted Extensions Administrator’s Procedures*

**Notes** The functionality described on this manual page is available only if the system is configured with Trusted Extensions.

The tnd service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/tnd
```

The service’s status can be queried by using [svcs\(1\)](#). Administrative actions on this service, such as requests to restart the daemon, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#), as in:

```
svcadm restart svc:/network/tnd
```



**Name** tninfo – print kernel-level network information and statistics

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/tninfo [-h *hostname*] [-m *zone-name*] [-t *template*]

**Description** tninfo provides an interface to retrieve and display kernel-level network information and statistics.

**Options**

- h *hostname* Display the security structure for the specified host in the remote-host cache. The output should reflect what is specified in the tnrhdb database.
- m *zone-name* Display the MLP configuration associated with the specified zone. The output should reflect what is specified in the tnzonecfg database.
- t *template* Display the structure associated with the specified *template*. The output should reflect what is specified in the tnrtpt database.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Displaying Remote Host Structures Cached in the Kernel

This example shows the remote host structures cached in the kernel. The output reflects the definition in the tnrhdb database.

```
tninfo -h machine1
 IP address= 192.168.8.61
 Template = cipso
```

EXAMPLE 2 Displaying Multilevel Ports for the Global Zone

This example shows the kernel-cached MLPs for the global zone. The output reflects the definition in the tnzonecfg database, plus any dynamically allocated MLPs. *private* indicates zone-specific MLPs.

```
tninfo -m global
private:23/tcp;111/tcp;111/udp;515/tcp;2049/tcp;6000-6003/tcp;
 32812/tcp;36698/ip;38634/tcp;64365/ip
shared: 6000-6003/tcp
```

EXAMPLE 3 Displaying the cipso Template Definition

This example shows the kernel-cached *cipso* template definition. The output reflects the definition in the tnrtpt database.

```
tninfo -t cipso
=====
Remote Host Template Table Entries:

template: cipso
host_type: CIPSO
doi: 1
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Displaying the cipso Template Definition (Continued)

```

min_sl: ADMIN_LOW
hex: ADMIN_LOW
max_sl: ADMIN_HIGH
hex: ADMIN_HIGH

```

**Files**

/etc/security/tsol/tnrhdb	Trusted network remote-host database
/etc/security/tsol/tnrhtp	Trusted network remote-host templates
/etc/security/tsol/tnzonecfg	Trusted zone configuration database

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWtsu
Interface Stability	See below.

The command line is Committed. The output is Uncommitted.

**See Also** [tnd\(1M\)](#), [tnctl\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

“How to Synchronize the Kernel Cache With Trusted Network Databases” in *Solaris Trusted Extensions Administrator’s Procedures*

**Notes** The functionality described on this manual page is available only if the system is configured with Trusted Extensions.

**Name** tpmadm – administer Trusted Platform Module

**Synopsis** tpmadm status  
 tpmadm init  
 tpmadm clear [owner | lock]  
 tpmadm auth  
 tpmadm keyinfo [*uuid*]  
 tpmadm deletekey *uuid*

**Description** A Trusted Platform Module (TPM) is a hardware component that provides for protected key storage and reliable measurements of software used to boot the operating system. The tpmadm utility is used to initialize and administer the TPM so that it can be used by the operating system and other programs.

The TPM subsystem can store and manage an unlimited number of keys for use by the operating system and by users. Each key is identified by a Universally Unique Identifier, or UUID.

Although the TPM can hold only a limited number of keys at any given time, the supporting software automatically loads and unloads keys as needed. When a key is stored outside the TPM, it is always encrypted or “wrapped” by its parent key so that the key is never exposed in readable form outside the TPM.

Before the TPM can be used, it must be initialized by the platform owner. This process involves setting an owner password which is used to authorize privileged operations.

Although the TPM owner is similar to a traditional superuser, there are two important differences. First, process privilege is irrelevant for access to TPM functions. All privileged operations require knowledge of the owner password, regardless of the privilege level of the calling process. Second, the TPM owner is not able to override access controls for data protected by TPM keys. The owner can effectively destroy data by re-initializing the TPM, but he cannot access data that has been encrypted using TPM keys owned by other users.

**Sub-commands** The following subcommands are used in the form:

```
tpmadm <subcommand> [operand]
```

**status**

Report status information about the TPM. Output includes basic information about whether ownership of the TPM has been established, current PCR contents, and the usage of TPM resources such as communication sessions and loaded keys.

**init**

Initialize the TPM for use. This involves taking ownership of the TPM by setting the owner authorization password. Taking ownership of the TPM creates a new storage root key, which is the ancestor of all keys created by this TPM. Once this command is issued, the TPM must be reset using BIOS operations before it can be re-initialized.

**auth**

Change the owner authorization password for the TPM.

**clear lock**

Clear the count of failed authentication attempts. After a number of failed authentication attempts, the TPM responds more slowly to subsequent attempts, in an effort to thwart attempts to find the owner password by exhaustive search. This command, which requires the correct owner password, resets the count of failed attempts.

**clear owner**

Deactivate the TPM and return it to an unowned state. This operation, which requires the current TPM owner password, invalidates all keys and data tied to the TPM. Before the TPM can be used again, the system must be restarted, the TPM must be reactivated from the BIOS or ILOM pre-boot environment, and the TPM must be re-initialized using the `tpmadm init` command.

**keyinfo** [*uuid*]

Report information about keys stored in the TPM subsystem. Without additional arguments, this subcommand produces a brief listing of all keys. If the UUID of an individual key is specified, detailed information about that key is displayed.

**deletekey** *uuid*

Delete the key with the specified UUID from the TPM subsystem's persistent storage.

**Exit Status** After completing the requested operation, `tpmadm` exits with one of the following status values.

0

Successful termination.

1

Failure. The requested operation could not be completed.

2

Usage error. The `tpmadm` command was invoked with invalid arguments.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Committed

**See Also** [attributes\(5\)](#)

See also the `tcsd(8)` man page, available in the `SUNWtss` package.

TCG Software Stack (TSS) Specifications:

<https://www.trustedcomputinggroup.org/specs/TSS> (as of the date of publication)

**Notes** tpmadm communicates with the TPM device through the tcscd service. tcscd must be running before using the tpmadm command. If tcscd is not running, tpmadm will generate the following error:

```
Connect context: Communication failure (0x3011)
```

See tcscd(8) for more details.

**Name** traceroute – print the route packets take to network host

**Synopsis** traceroute [-adFIlnSvx] [-A *addr\_family*] [-c *traffic\_class*]  
 [-f *first\_hop*] [-g *gateway* [-g *gateway...*] | -r]  
 [-i *iface*] [-L *flow\_label*] [-m *max\_hop*]  
 [-P *pause\_sec*] [-p *port*] [-Q *max\_timeout*]  
 [-q *nqueries*] [-s *src\_addr*] [-t *tos*] [-w *wait\_time*] host  
 [*packetlen*]

**Description** The Internet is a large and complex aggregation of network hardware, connected by gateways. Tracking the route a packet follows can be difficult. The utility `traceroute` traces the route that an IP packet follows to another internet host.

The `traceroute` utility utilizes the both the IPv4 and IPv6 protocols. Use the `-A` option to override the default behavior. `traceroute` uses the IPv4 protocol *tll* (time to live) field or the IPv6 field *hop limit*. It attempts to elicit an ICMP or ICMP6 `TIME_EXCEEDED` response from each *gateway* along the path, and a `PORT_UNREACHABLE` (or `ECHO_REPLY` if `-I` is used) response from the destination host. It starts by sending probes with a *tll* or *hop limit* of 1 and increases by 1 until it either gets to the host, or it hits the maximum *max\_hop*. The default maximum *max\_hop* is 30 hops, but this can be set by the `-m` option.

Three probes are sent at each *tll* (*hop limit*) setting, and a line is printed showing the *tll* (*hop limit*), the hostname and the address of the gateway, and the *rtt* (round trip time) of each probe. The number of probes may be specifically set using the `-q` option. If the probe answers come from different gateways, the hostname and the address of each responding system will be printed. If there is no response within a 5 second timeout interval, an asterisk (\*) is displayed for that probe. The `-w` option may be used to set the timeout interval. Other possible annotations that may appear after the time are:

!  
 the *tll* (*hop limit*) value in the received packet is  $\leq 1$ .

!H  
 host unreachable.

!X  
 communication administratively prohibited.

<!N>  
 ICMP (ICMP6) unreachable code N.

The following annotations appear only for IPv4:

!F  
 fragmentation needed. This should never occur. If this is seen, the associated gateway is broken.

!N  
 network unreachable.

!P  
protocol unreachable.

!S  
source route failed. It is likely that the gateway does not support source routing.

!T  
unreachable for the specified tos (type-of-service).

!U  
source host isolated or precedence problem.

The following annotations appear only for IPv6:

!A  
host unreachable for a reason other than lack of an entry in the routing table.

!B  
packet too big.

!E  
destination is not a neighbor.

!R  
unrecognized next header.

If almost all the probes result in some kind of unreachable code, then `tracert` gives up and exits.

The destination *host* is not supposed to process the UDP probe packets, so the destination *port* default is set to an unlikely value. However, if some application on the destination is using that value, the value of *port* can be changed with the `-p` option.

The only mandatory parameter is the destination *host* name or IP number. The default probe datagram length is 40 bytes (60 bytes for IPv6), but this may be increased by specifying a packet length (in bytes) after the destination *host* name.

All integer arguments to `tracert` can be specified in either decimal or hexadecimal notation. For example, *packetlen* can be specified either as 256 or `0x100`.

### Options -A *addr\_family*

Specify the address family of the target host. *addr\_family* can be either `inet` or `inet6`. Address family determines which protocol to use. For an argument of `inet`, IPv4 is used. For `inet6`, IPv6 is used.

By default, if the name of a host is provided, not the literal IP address, and a valid IPv6 address exists in the name service database, `tracert` will use this address. Otherwise, if the name service database contains an IPv4 address, it will try the IPv4 address.

Specify the address family `inet` or `inet6` to override the default behavior. If the argument specified is `inet`, `traceroute` will use the IPv4 address associated with the hostname. If none exists, `traceroute` will state that the host is unknown and exit. It will not try to determine if an IPv6 address exists in the name service database.

If the specified argument is `inet6`, `traceroute` will use the IPv6 address that is associated with the hostname. If none exists, `traceroute` will state that the host is unknown and exit.

-a

Probe all of the addresses of a multi-homed destination. The output looks like `traceroute` has been run once for each IP address of the destination. If this option is used together with `-A`, `traceroute` probes only the addresses that are of the specified address family. While probing one of the addresses of the destination, user can skip to the next address by sending a SIGINT, or exit `traceroute` by sending a SIGQUIT signal. See [signal\(3C\)](#)

-c *traffic\_class*

Specify the traffic class of probe packets. The value must be an integer in the range from 0 to 255. Gateways along the path may route the probe packet differently depending upon the value of *traffic\_class* set in the probe packet. This option is valid only on IPv6.

-d

Set the `SO_DEBUG` socket option.

-F

Turn off fragmentation. For IPv4, this means setting the Don't Fragment bit. For IPv4 and IPv6, this means do not allow fragmentation as the datagrams are sent. If the packetlen exceeds the MTU, then `traceroute` may report that sending failed due to Message too long.

-f *first\_hop*

Set the starting *tll* (*hop limit*) value to *first\_hop*, to override the default value 1. `traceroute` skips processing for those intermediate gateways which are less than *first\_hop* hops away.

-g *gateway*

Specify a loose source route *gateway*. The user can specify more than one *gateway* by using `-g` for each gateway. The maximum number of gateways is 8 for IPv4 and 127 for IPv6. Note that some factors such as the link MTU can further limit the number of gateways for IPv6. This option cannot be used with the `-r` option.

Only users with the `{PRIV_NET_RAWACCESS}` privilege can specify a loose source route with this option.

-I

Use ICMP (ICMP6) ECHO instead of UDP datagrams.

-i *iface*

For IPv4, this option specifies a network interface to obtain the source IP address. This is normally only useful on a multi-homed host. The `-s` option is also another way to do this.



For IPv6, it specifies the network interface on which probe packets are transmitted. The argument can be either an interface index, for example, 1, 2, or an interface name, for example, `eri0`, `hme0`.

- L *flow\_label*  
Specify the flow label of probe packets. The value must be an integer in the range from 0 to 1048575. This option is valid only on IPv6.
- l  
Print the value of the *tll (hop limit)* field in each packet received.
- m *max\_hop*  
Set the maximum *tll (hop limit)* used in outgoing probe packets. The default is 30 hops, which is the same default used for TCP connections.
- n  
Print hop addresses numerically rather than symbolically and numerically. This saves a nameserver address-to-name lookup for each gateway found on the path.
- P *pause\_sec*  
Specify a delay, in seconds, to pause between probe packets. This may be necessary if the final destination does not accept undeliverable packets in bursts. By default, `traceroute` sends the next probe as soon as it has received a reply. Note that *pause\_sec* is a real number.
- p *port*  
Set the base UDP *port* number used in probes. The default is 33434. `traceroute` hopes that nothing is listening on UDP *ports* ( $\text{base} + (\text{nhops} - 1) * \text{nqueries}$ ) to  $(\text{base} + (\text{nhops} * \text{nqueries}) - 1)$  at the destination host, so that an ICMP (ICMP6) `PORT_UNREACHABLE` message will be returned to terminate the route tracing. If something is listening on a *port* in the default range, this option can be used to select an unused *port* range. *nhops* is defined as the number of hops between the source and the destination.
- Q *max\_timeout*  
Stop probing this hop after *max\_timeout* consecutive timeouts are detected. The default value is 5. Useful in combination with the `-q` option if you have specified a large *nqueries* probe count.
- q *nqueries*  
Set the desired number of probe queries. The default is 3.
- r  
Bypass the normal routing tables and send directly to a host on an attached network. If the host is not on a directly-attached network, an error is returned. This option can be used to send probes to a local host through an interface that has been dropped by the router daemon. See `in.routed(1M)`. You cannot use this option if the `-g` option is used.
- S  
Display a summary of how many probes were not answered for each hop.

**-s *src\_addr***

Use the following address, which usually is given as a literal IP address, not a hostname, as the source address in outgoing probe packets. On multi-homed hosts, those with more than one IP address, this option can be used to force the source address to be something other than the IP address `tracert` picks by default. If the IP address is not one of this machine's interface addresses, an error is returned and nothing is sent. For IPv4, when used together with the `-i` option, the given IP address should be configured on the specified interface. Otherwise, an error will be returned. In the case of IPv6, the interface name and the source address do not have to match.

**-t *tos***

Set the *tos*(type-of-service) in probe packets to the specified value. The default is zero. The value must be an integer in the range from 0 to 255. Gateways along the path may route the probe packet differently depending upon the *tos* value set in the probe packet. This option is valid only on IPv4.

**-v**

Verbose output. For each hop, the size and the destination of the response packets is displayed. Also ICMP (ICMP6) packets received other than `TIME_EXCEEDED` and `UNREACHABLE` are listed as well.

**-w *waittime***

Set the time, in seconds, to wait for a response to a probe. The default is 5 seconds.

**-x**

Prevent `tracert` from calculating checksums. Checksums are usually required for the last hop when using ICMP ECHO probes. This option is valid only on IPv4. See the `-I` option.

When specified from within a shared-IP zone, this option has no effect as the checksum is always calculated by the operating system in this case.

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

***host***

The network host.

**Examples** **EXAMPLE 1** Sample Output From the `tracert` Utility

Some sample output from the `tracert` utility might be:

```
istanbul% tracert london
tracert: Warning: london has multiple addresses; \
 using 4::114:a00:20ff:ab3d:83ed
tracert: Warning: Multiple interfaces found; \
 using 4::56:a00:20ff:fe93:8dde @ eri0:2
tracert to london (4::114:a00:20ff:ab3d:83ed), 30 hops max, \
 60 byte packets
1 frblgdg7c-86 (4::56:a00:20ff:fe1f:65a1) 1.786 ms 1.544 ms 1.719 ms
```

**EXAMPLE 1** Sample Output From the traceroute Utility (Continued)

```

2 frbldg7b-77 (4::255:0:0:c0a8:517) 2.587 ms 3.001 ms 2.988 ms
3 london (4::114:a00:20ff:ab3d:83ed) 3.122 ms 2.744 ms 3.356 ms

```

The target host, london, has both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses in the name service database. According to the default behavior, traceroute uses IPv6 address of the destination host.

**EXAMPLE 2** Using the traceroute Utility For a Host Which has Only IPv4 Addresses

In the following examples, traceroute is tracking the route to host sanfrancisco, which has only IPv4 addresses in the name service database. Therefore traceroute uses only IPv4 addresses. The following shows the 7-hop path that a packet would follow from the host istanbul to the host sanfrancisco.

```

istanbul% traceroute sanfrancisco
traceroute: Warning: Multiple interfaces found; using 172.31.86.247 @eri0
traceroute to sanfrancisco (172.29.64.39), 30 hops max, 40 byte packets
1 frbldg7c-86 (172.31.86.1) 1.516 ms 1.283 ms 1.362 ms
2 bldg1a-001 (172.31.1.211) 2.277 ms 1.773 ms 2.186 ms
3 bldg4-bldg1 (172.30.4.42) 1.978 ms 1.986 ms 13.996 ms
4 bldg6-bldg4 (172.30.4.49) 2.655 ms 3.042 ms 2.344 ms
5 ferbldg11a-001 (172.29.1.236) 2.636 ms 3.432 ms 3.830 ms
6 frbldg12b-153 (172.29.153.72) 3.452 ms 3.146 ms 2.962 ms
7 sanfrancisco (172.29.64.39) 3.430 ms 3.312 ms 3.451 ms

```

**EXAMPLE 3** Using the traceroute Utility With Source Routing

The following example shows the path of a packet that goes from istanbul to sanfrancisco through the hosts cairo and paris, as specified by the -g option. The -I option makes traceroute send ICMP ECHO probes to the host sanfrancisco. The -i option sets the source address to the IP address configured on the interface qe0.

```

istanbul% traceroute -g cairo -g paris -i qe0 -q 1 -I sanfrancisco
traceroute to sanfrancisco (172.29.64.39), 30 hops max, 56 byte packets
1 frbldg7c-86 (172.31.86.1) 2.012 ms
2 flrbldg7u (172.31.17.131) 4.960 ms
3 cairo (192.168.163.175) 4.894 ms
4 flrbldg7u (172.31.17.131) 3.475 ms
5 frbldg7c-017 (172.31.17.83) 4.126 ms
6 paris (172.31.86.31) 4.086 ms
7 frbldg7b-82 (172.31.82.1) 6.454 ms
8 bldg1a-001 (172.31.1.211) 6.541 ms
9 bldg6-bldg4 (172.30.4.49) 6.518 ms
10 ferbldg11a-001 (172.29.1.236) 9.108 ms
11 frbldg12b-153 (172.29.153.72) 9.634 ms
12 sanfrancisco (172.29.64.39) 14.631 ms

```

**EXAMPLE 3** Using the `traceroute` Utility With Source Routing (Continued)

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0  
Successful operation.

>0  
An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

**See Also** [netstat\(1M\)](#), [signal\(3C\)](#), [ping\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [privileges\(5\)](#), [zones\(5\)](#)

**Warnings** This utility is intended for use in network testing, measurement and management. It should be used primarily for manual fault isolation. Because of the load it could impose on the network, it is unwise to use `traceroute(1M)` during normal operations or from automated scripts.

**Name** trapstat – report trap statistics

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/trapstat [-t | -T | -e *entry*]  
 [-C *processor\_set\_id* | -c *cpulist*] [-P] [-a]  
 [-r *rate*] [ [*interval* [*count*]] | *command* | [*args*]]  
 /usr/sbin/trapstat -l

**Description** The trapstat utility gathers and displays run-time trap statistics on UltraSPARC-based systems. The default output is a table of trap types and CPU IDs, with each row of the table denoting a trap type and each column of the table denoting a CPU. If standard output is a terminal, the table contains as many columns of data as can fit within the terminal width; if standard output is not a terminal, the table contains at most six columns of data. By default, data is gathered and displayed for all CPUs; if the data cannot fit in a single table, it is printed across multiple tables. The set of CPUs for which data is gathered and displayed can be optionally specified with the -c or -C option.

Unless the -r option or the -a option is specified, the value displayed in each entry of the table corresponds to the number of traps per second. If the -r option is specified, the value corresponds to the number of traps over the interval implied by the specified sampling rate; if the -a option is specified, the value corresponds to the accumulated number of traps since the invocation of trapstat.

By default, trapstat displays data once per second, and runs indefinitely; both of these behaviors can be optionally controlled with the *interval* and *count* parameters, respectively. The *interval* is specified in seconds; the *count* indicates the number of intervals to be executed before exiting. Alternatively, *command* can be specified, in which case trapstat executes the provided command and continues to run until the command exits. A positive integer is assumed to be an *interval*; if the desired *command* cannot be distinguished from an integer, the full path of *command* must be specified.

UltraSPARC I (obsolete), II, and III handle translation lookaside buffer (TLB) misses by trapping to the operating system. TLB miss traps can be a significant component of overall system performance for some workloads; the -t option provides in-depth information on these traps. When run with this option, trapstat displays both the rate of TLB miss traps and the percentage of time spent processing those traps. Additionally, TLB misses that hit in the translation storage buffer (TSB) are differentiated from TLB misses that further miss in the TSB. (The TSB is a software structure used as a translation entry cache to allow the TLB to be quickly filled; it is discussed in detail in the *UltraSPARC II User's Manual*.) The TLB and TSB miss information is further broken down into user- and kernel-mode misses.

Workloads with working sets that exceed the TLB reach may spend a significant amount of time missing in the TLB. To accommodate such workloads, the operating system supports multiple page sizes: larger page sizes increase the effective TLB reach and thereby reduce the number of TLB misses. To provide insight into the relationship between page size and TLB miss rate, trapstat optionally provides in-depth TLB miss information broken down by page size using the -T option. The information provided by the -T option is a superset of that provided by the -t option; only one of -t and -T can be specified.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- a Displays the number of traps as accumulating, monotonically increasing values instead of per-second or per-interval rates.
- c *cpulist* Enables `trapstat` only on the CPUs specified by *cpulist*.  
  
*cpulist* can be a single processor ID (for example, 4), a range of processor IDs (for example, 4-6), or a comma separated list of processor IDs or processor ID ranges (for example, 4, 5, 6 or 4, 6-8).
- C *processor\_set\_id* Enables `trapstat` only on the CPUs in the processor set specified by *processor\_set\_id*.  
  
`trapstat` modifies its output to always reflect the CPUs in the specified processor set. If a CPU is added to the set, `trapstat` modifies its output to include the added CPU; if a CPU is removed from the set, `trapstat` modifies its output to exclude the removed CPU. At most one processor set can be specified.
- e *entrylist* Enables `trapstat` only for the trap table entry or entries specified by *entrylist*. A trap table entry can be specified by trap number or by trap name (for example, the level-10 trap can be specified as 74, 0x4A, 0x4a, or level-10).  
  
*entrylist* can be a single trap table entry or a comma separated list of trap table entries. If the specified trap table entry is not valid, `trapstat` prints a table of all valid trap table entries and values. A list of valid trap table entries is also found in *The SPARC Architecture Manual, Version 9* and the *Sun Microelectronics UltraSPARC II User's Manual*. If the parsable option (-P) is specified in addition to the -e option, the format of the data is as follows:

Field	Contents
1	Timestamp (nanoseconds since start)
2	CPU ID
3	Trap number (in hexadecimal)
4	Trap name
5	Trap rate per interval

Each field is separated with whitespace. If the format is modified, it will be modified by adding potentially new fields beginning with field 6; exant fields will remain unchanged.

- l** Lists trap table entries. By default, a table is displayed containing all valid trap numbers, their names and a brief description. The trap name is used in both the default output and in the *entrylist* parameter for the **-e** argument. If the parsable option (**-P**) is specified in addition to the **-l** option, the format of the data is as follows:

Field	Contents
1	Trap number in hexadecimal
2	Trap number in decimal
3	Trap name
Remaining	Trap description

- P** Generates parsable output. When run without other data gathering modifying options (that is, **-e**, **-t** or **-T**), `trapstat`'s the parsable output has the following format:

Field	Contents
1	Timestamp (nanoseconds since start)
2	CPU ID
3	Trap number (in hexadecimal)
4	Trap name
5	Trap rate per interval

Each field is separated with whitespace. If the format is modified, it will be modified by adding potentially new fields beginning with field 6; extant fields will remain unchanged.

- r rate** Explicitly sets the sampling rate to be *rate* samples per second. If this option is specified, `trapstat`'s output changes from a traps-per-second to traps-per-sampling-interval.
- t** Enables TLB statistics.

A table is displayed with four principal columns of data: *itlb-miss*, *itsb-miss*, *dtlb-miss*, and *dtsb-miss*. The columns contain both the rate of the corresponding event and the percentage of CPU time spent processing the event. The percentage of CPU time is given only in terms of a single CPU. The rows of the table correspond to CPUs,

with each CPU consuming two rows: one row for user-mode events (denoted with u) and one row for kernel-mode events (denoted with k). For each row, the percentage of CPU time is totalled and displayed in the rightmost column. The CPUs are delineated with a solid line. If the parsable option (-P) is specified in addition to the -t option, the format of the data is as follows:

Field	Contents
1	Timestamp (nanoseconds since start)
2	CPU ID
3	Mode (k denotes kernel, u denotes user)
4	I-TLB misses
5	Percentage of time in I-TLB miss handler
6	I-TSB misses
7	Percentage of time in I-TSB miss handler
8	D-TLB misses
9	Percentage of time in D-TLB miss handler
10	D-TSB misses
11	Percentage of time in D-TSB miss handler

Each field is separated with whitespace. If the format is modified, it will be modified by adding potentially new fields beginning with field 12; extant fields will remain unchanged.

-T

Enables TLB statistics, with page size information. As with the -t option, a table is displayed with four principal columns of data: *itlb-miss*, *itsb-miss*, *dtlb-miss*, and *dtsb-miss*. The columns contain both the absolute number of the corresponding event, and the percentage of CPU time spent processing the event. The percentage of CPU time is given only in terms of a single CPU. The rows of the table correspond to CPUs, with each CPU consuming two sets of rows: one set for user-level events (denoted with u) and one set for kernel-level events (denoted with k). Each set, in turn, contains as many rows as



there are page sizes supported (see `getpagesizes(3C)`). For each row, the percentage of CPU time is totalled and displayed in the right-most column. The two sets are delineated with a dashed line; CPUs are delineated with a solid line. If the parsable option (`-P`) is specified in addition to the `-T` option, the format of the data is as follows:

Field	Contents
1	Timestamp (nanoseconds since start)
2	CPU ID
3	Mode k denotes kernel, u denotes user)
4	Page size, in decimal
5	I-TLB misses
6	Percentage of time in I-TLB miss handler
7	I-TSB misses
8	Percentage of time in I-TSB miss handler
9	D-TLB misses
10	Percentage of time in D-TLB miss handler
11	D-TSB misses
12	Percentage of time in D-TSB miss handler

Each field is separated with whitespace. If the format is modified, it will be modified by adding potentially new fields beginning with field 13; extant fields will remain unchanged.

### Examples EXAMPLE 1 Using trapstat Without Options

When run without options, `trapstat` displays a table of trap types and CPUs. At most six columns can fit in the default terminal width; if (as in this example) there are more than six CPUs, multiple tables are displayed:

```
example# trapstat
vct name | cpu0 cpu1 cpu4 cpu5 cpu8 cpu9
-----+-----
 24 cleanwin | 6446 4837 6368 2153 2623 1321
 41 level-1 | 100 0 0 0 1 0
```

## EXAMPLE 1 Using trapstat Without Options (Continued)

44 level-4		0	1	1	1	0	0
45 level-5		0	0	0	0	0	0
47 level-7		0	0	0	0	9	0
49 level-9		100	100	100	100	100	100
4a level-10		100	0	0	0	0	0
4d level-13		6	10	7	16	13	11
4e level-14		100	0	0	0	1	0
60 int-vec		2607	2740	2642	2922	2920	3033
64 itlb-miss		3129	2475	3167	1037	1200	569
68 dtlb-miss		121061	86162	109838	37386	45639	20269
6c dtlb-prot		997	847	1061	379	406	184
84 spill-user-32		2809	2133	2739	200806	332776	454504
88 spill-user-64		45819	207856	93487	228529	68373	77590
8c spill-user-32-cln		784	561	767	274	353	215
90 spill-user-64-cln		9	37	17	39	12	13
98 spill-kern-64		62913	50145	63869	21916	28431	11738
a4 spill-asuser-32		1327	947	1288	460	572	335
a8 spill-asuser-64		26	48	18	54	10	14
ac spill-asuser-32-cln		4580	3599	4555	1538	1978	857
b0 spill-asuser-64-cln		26	0	0	2	0	0
c4 fill-user-32		2862	2161	2798	191746	318115	435850
c8 fill-user-64		45813	197781	89179	217668	63905	74281
cc fill-user-32-cln		3802	2833	3733	10153	16419	19475
d0 fill-user-64-cln		329	10105	4873	10603	4235	3649
d8 fill-kern-64		62519	49943	63611	21824	28328	11693
108 syscall-32		2285	1634	2278	737	957	383
126 self-xcall		100	0	0	0	0	0

vct name		cpu12	cpu13	cpu14	cpu15
24 cleanwin		5435	4232	6302	6104
41 level-1		0	0	0	0
44 level-4		2	0	0	1
45 level-5		0	0	0	0
47 level-7		0	0	0	0
49 level-9		100	100	100	100
4a level-10		0	0	0	0
4d level-13		15	11	22	11
4e level-14		0	0	0	0
60 int-vec		2813	2833	2738	2714
64 itlb-miss		2636	1925	3133	3029
68 dtlb-miss		90528	70639	107786	103425
6c dtlb-prot		819	675	988	954
84 spill-user-32		175768	39933	2811	2742
88 spill-user-64		0	241348	96907	118298
8c spill-user-32-cln		681	513	753	730

**EXAMPLE 1** Using trapstat Without Options *(Continued)*

90 spill-user-64-cln		0	42	16	20
98 spill-kern-64		52158	40914	62305	60141
a4 spill-asuser-32		1113	856	1251	1208
a8 spill-asuser-64		0	64	16	24
ac spill-asuser-32-cln		3816	2942	4515	4381
b0 spill-asuser-64-cln		0	0	0	0
c4 fill-user-32		170744	38444	2876	2784
c8 fill-user-64		0	230381	92941	111694
cc fill-user-32-cln		8550	3790	3612	3553
d0 fill-user-64-cln		0	10726	4495	5845
d8 fill-kern-64		51968	40760	62053	59922
108 syscall-32		1839	1495	2144	2083
126 self-xcall		0	0	0	0

**EXAMPLE 2** Using trapstat with CPU Filtering

The `-c` option can be used to limit the CPUs on which trapstat is enabled. This example limits CPU 1 and CPUs 12 through 15.

example# **trapstat -c 1,12-15**

vct	name		cpu1	cpu12	cpu13	cpu14	cpu15
24	cleanwin		6923	3072	2500	3518	2261
44	level-4		3	0	0	1	1
49	level-9		100	100	100	100	100
4d	level-13		23	8	14	19	14
60	int-vec		2559	2699	2752	2688	2792
64	itlb-miss		3296	1548	1174	1698	1087
68	dtlb-miss		114788	54313	43040	58336	38057
6c	dtlb-prot		1046	549	417	545	370
84	spill-user-32		66551	29480	301588	26522	213032
88	spill-user-64		0	318652	111239	299829	221716
8c	spill-user-32-cln		856	347	331	416	293
90	spill-user-64-cln		0	55	21	59	39
98	spill-kern-64		66464	31803	24758	34004	22277
a4	spill-asuser-32		1423	569	560	698	483
a8	spill-asuser-64		0	74	32	98	46
ac	spill-asuser-32-cln		4875	2250	1728	2384	1584
b0	spill-asuser-64-cln		0	2	0	1	0
c4	fill-user-32		64193	28418	287516	27055	202093
c8	fill-user-64		0	305016	106692	288542	210654
cc	fill-user-32-cln		6733	3520	15185	2396	12035
d0	fill-user-64-cln		0	13226	3506	12933	11032
d8	fill-kern-64		66220	31680	24674	33892	22196

**EXAMPLE 2** Using trapset with CPU Filtering (Continued)

```
108 syscall-32 | 2446 967 817 1196 755
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Using trapstat with TLB Statistics

The `-t` option displays in-depth TLB statistics, including the amount of time spent performing TLB miss processing. The following example shows that the machine is spending 14.1 percent of its time just handling D-TLB misses:

```
example# trapstat -t
```

```
cpu m| itlb-miss %tim itsb-miss %tim | dtlb-miss %tim dtsb-miss %tim |%tim
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
 0 u| 2571 0.3 0 0.0 | 10802 1.3 0 0.0 | 1.6
 0 k| 0 0.0 0 0.0 | 106420 13.4 184 0.1 |13.6
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
 1 u| 3069 0.3 0 0.0 | 10983 1.2 100 0.0 | 1.6
 1 k| 27 0.0 0 0.0 | 106974 12.6 19 0.0 |12.7
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
 2 u| 3033 0.3 0 0.0 | 11045 1.2 105 0.0 | 1.6
 2 k| 43 0.0 0 0.0 | 107842 12.7 108 0.0 |12.8
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
 3 u| 2924 0.3 0 0.0 | 10380 1.2 121 0.0 | 1.6
 3 k| 54 0.0 0 0.0 | 102682 12.2 16 0.0 |12.2
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
 4 u| 3064 0.3 0 0.0 | 10832 1.2 120 0.0 | 1.6
 4 k| 31 0.0 0 0.0 | 107977 13.0 236 0.1 |13.1
=====+=====+=====+=====+=====+=====+=====+=====+=====+=====+
ttl | 14816 0.3 0 0.0 | 585937 14.1 1009 0.0 |14.5
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Using trapstat with TLB Statistics and Page Size Information

By specifying the `-T` option, `trapstat` shows TLB misses broken down by page size. In this example, CPU 0 is spending 7.9 percent of its time handling user-mode TLB misses on 8K pages, and another 2.3 percent of its time handling user-mode TLB misses on 64K pages.

```
example# trapstat -T -c 0
```

```
cpu m size| itlb-miss %tim itsb-miss %tim | dtlb-miss %tim dtsb-miss %tim |%tim
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
 0 u 8k| 1300 0.1 15 0.0 | 104897 7.9 90 0.0 | 8.0
 0 u 64k| 0 0.0 0 0.0 | 29935 2.3 7 0.0 | 2.3
 0 u 512k| 0 0.0 0 0.0 | 3569 0.2 2 0.0 | 0.2
 0 u 4m| 0 0.0 0 0.0 | 233 0.0 2 0.0 | 0.0
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
 0 k 8k| 13 0.0 0 0.0 | 71733 6.5 110 0.0 | 6.5
 0 k 64k| 0 0.0 0 0.0 | 0 0.0 0 0.0 | 0.0
 0 k 512k| 0 0.0 0 0.0 | 0 0.0 206 0.1 | 0.1
```

## EXAMPLE 4 Using trapstat with TLB Statistics and Page Size Information (Continued)

```

0 k 4m| 0 0.0 0 0.0 | 0 0.0 0 0.0 | 0.0
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
ttl | 1313 0.1 15 0.0 | 210367 17.1 417 0.2 |17.5

```

## EXAMPLE 5 Using trapstat with Entry Filtering

By specifying the `-e` option, `trapstat` displays statistics for only specific trap types. Using this option minimizes the probe effect when seeking specific data. This example yields statistics for only the `dtlb-prot` and `syscall-32` traps on CPUs 12 through 15:

```

example# trapstat -e dtlb-prot,syscall-32 -c 12-15
vct name | cpu12 cpu13 cpu14 cpu15
-----+-----+-----+-----+-----+
 6c dtlb-prot | 817 754 1018 560
108 syscall-32 | 1426 1647 2186 1142

vct name | cpu12 cpu13 cpu14 cpu15
-----+-----+-----+-----+
 6c dtlb-prot | 1085 996 800 707
108 syscall-32 | 2578 2167 1638 1452

```

## EXAMPLE 6 Using trapstat with a Higher Sampling Rate

The following example uses the `-r` option to specify a sampling rate of 1000 samples per second, and filter only for the level-10 trap. Additionally, specifying the `-P` option yields parsable output.

Notice the timestamp difference between the level-10 events: 9,998,000 nanoseconds and 10,007,000 nanoseconds. These level-10 events correspond to the system clock, which by default ticks at 100 hertz (that is, every 10,000,000 nanoseconds).

```

example# trapstat -e level-10 -P -r 1000
1070400 0 4a level-10 0
2048600 0 4a level-10 0
3030400 0 4a level-10 1
4035800 0 4a level-10 0
5027200 0 4a level-10 0
6027200 0 4a level-10 0
7027400 0 4a level-10 0
8028200 0 4a level-10 0
9026400 0 4a level-10 0
10029600 0 4a level-10 0
11028600 0 4a level-10 0
12024000 0 4a level-10 0
13028400 0 4a level-10 1

```

**EXAMPLE 6** Using trapstat with a Higher Sampling Rate (Continued)

```

14031200 0 4a level-10 0
15027200 0 4a level-10 0
16027600 0 4a level-10 0
17025000 0 4a level-10 0
18026000 0 4a level-10 0
19027800 0 4a level-10 0
20025600 0 4a level-10 0
21025200 0 4a level-10 0
22025000 0 4a level-10 0
23035400 0 4a level-10 1
24027400 0 4a level-10 0
25026000 0 4a level-10 0
26027000 0 4a level-10 0

```

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	
Human Readable Output	Unstable
Parsable Output	Evolving

**See Also** [lockstat\(1M\)](#), [pmap\(1\)](#), [psrset\(1M\)](#), [psrinfo\(1M\)](#), [pbind\(1M\)](#), [ppgsz\(1\)](#), [getpagesizes\(3C\)](#)

*Sun Microelectronics UltraSPARC II User's Manual*, January 1997, STP1031,

*The SPARC Architecture Manual, Version 9*, 1994, Prentice-Hall.

**Notes** When enabled, trapstat induces a varying probe effect, depending on the type of information collected. While the precise probe effect depends upon the specifics of the hardware, the following table can be used as a rough guide:

Option	Approximate probe effect
default	3-5% per trap
-e	3-5% per specified trap
-t, -T	40-45% per TLB miss trap hitting in the TSB, 25-30% per TLB miss trap missing in the TSB

These probe effects are *per trap* not for the system as a whole. For example, running `trapstat` with the default options on a system that spends 7% of total time handling traps induces a performance degradation of less than one half of one percent; running `trapstat` with the `-t` or `-T` option on a system spending 5% of total time processing TLB misses induce a performance degradation of no more than 2.5%.

When run with the `-t` or `-T` option, `trapstat` accounts for its probe effect when calculating the `%tim` fields. This assures that the `%tim` fields are a reasonably accurate indicator of the time a given workload is spending handling TLB misses — regardless of the perturbing presence of `trapstat`.

While the `%tim` fields include the explicit cost of executing the TLB miss handler, they do *not* include the implicit costs of TLB miss traps (for example, pipeline effects, cache pollution, etc). These implicit costs become more significant as the trap rate grows; if high `%tim` values are reported (greater than 50%), you can accurately infer that much of the balance of time is being spent on the implicit costs of the TLB miss traps.

Due to the potential system wide degradation induced, only the super-user can run `trapstat`.

Due to the limitation of the underlying statistics gathering methodology, only one instance of `trapstat` can run at a time.

**Name** ttyadm – format and output port monitor-specific information

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/ttyadm [-b] [-c] [-h] [-I] [-r *count*] [-i *msg*]  
[-m *modules*] [-p *prompt*] [-t *timeout*] [-S *y | n*]  
[-T *termtype*] -d *device* -l *ttylabel* -s *service*  
  
/usr/sbin/ttyadm -V

**Description** The `ttyadm` command is an administrative command that formats `ttymon(1M)`-specific information and writes it to standard output. The Service Access Facility (SAF) requires each port monitor to provide such a command. Note that the port monitor administrative file is updated by the Service Access Controller's administrative commands, `sacadm(1M)` and `pmadm(1M)`. `ttyadm` provides a means of presenting formatted port monitor-specific (`ttymon`-specific) data to these commands.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- b Set the “bi-directional port” flag. When this flag is set, the line can be used in both directions. `ttymon` will allow users to connect to the service associated with the port, but if the port is free, `uucico(1M)`, `cu(1C)`, or `ct(1C)` can use it for dialing out.
- c Set the connect-on-carrier flag for the port. If the `-c` flag is set, `ttymon` will invoke the port's associated service immediately when a connect indication is received (that is, no prompt is printed and no baud-rate searching is done).
- d *device* *device* is the full pathname of the device file for the TTY port.
- h Set the hangup flag for the port. If the `-h` flag is not set, `ttymon` will force a hangup on the line by setting the speed to 0 before setting the speed to the default or specified value.
- i *message* Specify the inactive (disabled) response message. This message will be sent to the TTY port if the port is disabled or the `ttymon` monitoring the port is disabled.
- I Initialize only. If the `-I` option is used, `ttymon` will invoke the service only once. This can be used to configure a particular device without actually monitoring it, as with software carrier.
- l *ttylabel* Specify which *ttylabel* in the `/etc/ttydefs` file to use as the starting point when searching for the proper baud rate.
- m *modules* Specify a list of pushable STREAMS modules. The modules will be pushed in the order in which they are specified before the service is invoked. *modules* must be a comma-separated list of modules, with no white space included. Any modules currently on the stream will be popped before these modules are pushed.
- p *prompt* Specify the prompt message, for example, “login:”.



- r *count*      When the -r option is invoked, `ttymon` will wait until it receives data from the port before it displays a prompt. If *count* is 0, `ttymon` will wait until it receives any character. If *count* is greater than 0, `ttymon` will wait until *count* newlines have been received.
- s *service*      *service* is the full pathname of the service to be invoked when a connection request is received. If arguments are required, the command and its arguments must be enclosed in double quotes (" ").
- S y|n          Set the software carrier value. y will turn software carrier on. n will turn software carrier off.
- t *timeout*      Specify that `ttymon` should close a port if the open on the port succeeds, and no input data is received in *timeout* seconds.
- T *termtype*    Set the terminal type. The TERM environment variable will be set to *termtype*.
- V              Display the version number of the current `/usr/lib/saf/ttymon` command.

**Output** If successful, `tttyadm` will generate the requested information, write it to standard output, and exit with a status of 0. If `tttyadm` is invoked with an invalid number of arguments or invalid arguments, or if an incomplete option is specified, an error message will be written to standard error and `ttymon` will exit with a non-zero status.

**Files** `/etc/ttydefs`

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

**See Also** [ct\(1C\)](#), [cu\(1C\)](#), [pmadm\(1M\)](#), [sacadm\(1M\)](#), [ttymon\(1M\)](#), [uucico\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

*System Administration Guide: Basic Administration*



## REFERENCE

### System Administration Commands - Part 3

**Name** ttymon – port monitor for terminal ports

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/saf/ttymon

```
/usr/lib/saf/ttymon -g [-d device] [-h] [-t timeout]
[-l tylabel] [-p prompt] [-m modules] [-T termtype]
```

**Description** ttymon is a STREAMS-based TTY port monitor. Its function is to monitor ports, to set terminal modes, baud rates, and line disciplines for the ports, and to connect users or applications to services associated with the ports. Normally, ttymon is configured to run under the Service Access Controller, [sac\(1M\)](#), as part of the Service Access Facility (SAF). It is configured using the [sacadm\(1M\)](#) command. Each instance of ttymon can monitor multiple ports. The ports monitored by an instance of ttymon are specified in the port monitor's administrative file. The administrative file is configured using the [pmadm\(1M\)](#) and [ttyadm\(1M\)](#) commands. When an instance of ttymon is invoked by the sac command, it starts to monitor its ports. For each port, ttymon first initializes the line disciplines, if they are specified, and the speed and terminal settings. For ports with entries in /etc/logindveperm, device owner, group and permissions are set. (See [logindveperm\(4\)](#).) The values used for initialization are taken from the appropriate entry in the TTY settings file. This file is maintained by the [sttydefs\(1M\)](#) command. Default line disciplines on ports are usually set up by the [autopush\(1M\)](#) command of the Autopush Facility.

ttymon then writes the prompt and waits for user input. If the user indicates that the speed is inappropriate by pressing the BREAK key, ttymon tries the next speed and writes the prompt again. When valid input is received, ttymon interprets the per-service configuration file for the port, if one exists, creates a utmpx entry if required (see [utmpx\(4\)](#)), establishes the service environment, and then invokes the service associated with the port. Valid input consists of a string of at least one non-newline character, terminated by a carriage return. After the service terminates, ttymon cleans up the utmpx entry, if one exists, and returns the port to its initial state.

If *autobaud* is enabled for a port, ttymon will try to determine the baud rate on the port automatically. Users must enter a carriage return before ttymon can recognize the baud rate and print the prompt. Currently, the baud rates that can be determined by *autobaud* are 110, 1200, 2400, 4800, and 9600.

If a port is configured as a bidirectional port, ttymon will allow users to connect to a service, and, if the port is free, will allow [uucico\(1M\)](#), [cu\(1C\)](#), or [ct\(1C\)](#) to use it for dialing out. If a port is bidirectional, ttymon will wait to read a character before it prints a prompt.

If the *connect-on-carrier* flag is set for a port, ttymon will immediately invoke the port's associated service when a connection request is received. The prompt message will not be sent.

If a port is disabled, ttymon will not start any service on that port. If a disabled message is specified, ttymon will send out the disabled message when a connection request is received. If ttymon is disabled, all ports under that instance of ttymon will also be disabled.

**Service Invocation** The service `ttymon` invokes for a port is specified in the `ttymon` administrative file. `ttymon` will scan the character string giving the service to be invoked for this port, looking for a `%d` or a `%%` two-character sequence. If `%d` is found, `ttymon` will modify the service command to be executed by replacing those two characters by the full path name of this port (the device name). If `%%` is found, they will be replaced by a single `%`. When the service is invoked, file descriptors 0, 1, and 2 are opened to the port device for reading and writing. The service is invoked with the user ID, group ID and current home directory set to that of the user name under which the service was registered with `ttymon`. Two environment variables, `HOME` and `TTYPROMPT`, are added to the service's environment by `ttymon`. `HOME` is set to the home directory of the user name under which the service is invoked. `TTYPROMPT` is set to the prompt string configured for the service on the port. This is provided so that a service invoked by `ttymon` has a means of determining if a prompt was actually issued by `ttymon` and, if so, what that prompt actually was.

See [ttyadm\(1M\)](#) for options that can be set for ports monitored by `ttymon` under the Service Access Controller.

**System Console Invocation** The invocation of `ttymon` on the system console is managed under [smf\(5\)](#) by the service `svc:/system/console-login`. It provides a number of properties within the property group `ttymon` to control the invocation, as follows:

NAME	TYPE	TTYMON OPTION
device	astring	[-d device]
nohangup	boolean	[-h]
label	astring	[-l label]
modules	astring	[-m module1,module2]
prompt	astring	[-p prompt]
timeout	count	[-t timeout]
terminal_type	astring	[-T termtype]

If any value is the empty string or an integer set to zero, then the option is not passed to the `ttymon` invocation. The `-g` option is always specified for this invocation. The `-d` option always defaults to `/dev/console` if it is not set.

See [EXAMPLES](#).

**Security** `ttymon` uses [pam\(3PAM\)](#) for session management. The PAM configuration policy, listed through `/etc/pam.conf`, specifies the modules to be used for `ttymon`. Here is a partial `pam.conf` file with entries for `ttymon` using the UNIX session management module.

```
ttymon session required /usr/lib/security/pam_unix_session.so.1
```

If there are no entries for the `ttymon` service, then the entries for the "other" service will be used.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- g            A special invocation of `ttymon` is provided with the `-g` option. This form of the command should only be called by applications that need to set the correct baud rate and terminal settings on a port and then connect to `login` service, but that cannot be pre-configured under the SAC. The following combinations of options can be used with `-g`:
- d*device*    *device* is the full path name of the port to which `ttymon` is to attach. If this option is not specified, file descriptor `0` must be set up by the invoking process to a TTY port.
- h            If the `-h` flag is not set, `ttymon` will force a hangup on the line by setting the speed to zero before setting the speed to the default or specified speed.
- ttylabel*   *ttylabel* is a link to a speed and TTY definition in the `ttdefs` file. This definition tells `ttymon` at what speed to run initially, what the initial TTY settings are, and what speed to try next if the user indicates that the speed is inappropriate by pressing the BREAK key. The default speed is 9600 baud.
- mmodules*   When initializing the port, `ttymon` will pop all modules on the port, and then push *modules* in the order specified. *modules* is a comma-separated list of pushable modules. Default modules on the ports are usually set up by the Autopush Facility.
- pprompt*    Allows the user to specify a prompt string. The default prompt is `Login:.`
- ttimeout*   Specifies that `ttymon` should exit if no one types anything in *timeout* seconds after the prompt is sent.
- Ttermtype*   Sets the TERM environment variable to *termtype*.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Setting the Terminal Type

The following example sets the value of the terminal type (`-T`) option for the system console `ttymon` invocation:

```
svccfg -s svc:/system/console-login setprop \
 ttymon/terminal_type = "xterm"
svcadm refresh svc:/system/console-login:default
```

**Environment Variables** If any of the LC\_\* variables ( LC\_CTYPE, LC\_MESSAGES, LC\_TIME, LC\_COLLATE, LC\_NUMERIC, and LC\_MONETARY ) (see [environ\(5\)](#)) are not set in the environment, the operational behavior of `ttymon` for each corresponding locale category is determined by the value of the LANG environment variable. If LC\_ALL is set, its contents are used to override both the LANG and the other LC\_\* variables. If none of the above variables is set in the environment, the "C" (U.S. style) locale determines how `ttymon` behaves.

**LC\_CTYPE** Determines how `ttymon` handles characters. When `LC_CTYPE` is set to a valid value, `ttymon` can display and handle text and filenames containing valid characters for that locale. `ttymon` can display and handle Extended Unix Code (EUC) characters where any individual character can be 1, 2, or 3 bytes wide. `ttymon` can also handle EUC characters of 1, 2, or more column widths. In the "C" locale, only characters from ISO 8859-1 are valid.

**Files** /etc/logindevperm

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Stability	See below.

The command-line syntax is Stable. The SMF properties are Evolving.

**See Also** [ct\(1C\)](#), [cu\(1C\)](#), [autopush\(1M\)](#), [pmadm\(1M\)](#), [sac\(1M\)](#), [sacadm\(1M\)](#), [sttydefs\(1M\)](#), [ttyadm\(1M\)](#), [uucico\(1M\)](#), [pam\(3PAM\)](#), [logindevperm\(4\)](#), [pam.conf\(4\)](#), [utmpx\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authok\\_check\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authok\\_get\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authok\\_store\(5\)](#), [pam\\_dhkeys\(5\)](#), [pam\\_passwd\\_auth\(5\)](#), [pam\\_unix\\_account\(5\)](#), [pam\\_unix\\_auth\(5\)](#), [pam\\_unix\\_session\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

*System Administration Guide: Basic Administration*

**Notes** If a port is monitored by more than one `ttymon`, it is possible for the `ttymons` to send out prompt messages in such a way that they compete for input.

The `pam_unix(5)` module is no longer supported. Similar functionality is provided by [pam\\_authok\\_check\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authok\\_get\(5\)](#), [pam\\_authok\\_store\(5\)](#), [pam\\_dhkeys\(5\)](#), [pam\\_passwd\\_auth\(5\)](#), [pam\\_unix\\_account\(5\)](#), [pam\\_unix\\_auth\(5\)](#), and [pam\\_unix\\_session\(5\)](#).

**Name** tunefs – tune an existing UFS file system

**Synopsis** tunefs [-a *maxcontig*] [-d *rotdelay*] [-e *maxbpg*]  
[-m *minfree*] [-o space | time] *special* | *filesystem*

**Description** tunefs is designed to change the dynamic parameters of a file system that affect the layout policies. When using tunefs with *filesystem*, *filesystem* must be in */etc/vfstab*. The parameters that can be changed are indicated by the options given below.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- a *maxcontig*      The maximum number of logical blocks, belonging to one file, that is allocated contiguously. The default is calculated as follows:  
$$\text{maxcontig} = \text{disk drive maximum transfer size} / \text{disk block size}$$
  
If the disk drive's maximum transfer size cannot be determined, the default value for *maxcontig* is calculated from kernel parameters as follows:  
If *maxphys* is less than *ufs\_maxmaxphys*, which is 1 Mbyte, then *maxcontig* is set to *maxphys*. Otherwise, *maxcontig* is set to *ufs\_maxmaxphys*.  
You can set *maxcontig* to any positive integer value.  
The actual value will be the lesser of what has been specified and what the hardware supports.
- d *rotdelay*      This parameter is obsolete as of the Solaris 10 release. The value is always set to 0, regardless of the input value.
- e *maxbpg*      Indicates the maximum number of contiguous logical blocks any single file can allocate from a cylinder group before it is forced to begin allocating blocks from another cylinder group. Typically this value is set to approximately one quarter of the total contiguous logical blocks in a cylinder group. The intent is to prevent any single file from using up all the blocks in a single cylinder group, thus degrading access times for all files subsequently allocated in that cylinder group.  
  
The effect of this limit is to cause big files to do long seeks more frequently than if they were allowed to allocate all the blocks in a cylinder group before seeking elsewhere. For file systems with exclusively large files, this parameter should be set higher.
- m *minfree*      Specifies the minimum free space threshold, or the percentage of space held back from normal users. This value can be set to 0. However, up to a factor of three in throughput will be lost over the performance obtained at a 10% threshold. *Note:* If the value is raised above the current usage level, users will be unable to allocate files until enough files have been deleted to get under the higher threshold.



`-o space | time` The file system can either be instructed to try to minimize the *time* spent allocating blocks, or to try to minimize the *space* fragmentation on the disk. The default is *time*.

Generally, you should optimize for time unless the file system is over 90% full.

**Usage** See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of `tunefs` when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (  $2^{31}$  bytes).

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

**See Also** [mkfs\\_ufs\(1M\)](#), [newfs\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#)

**Name** txzonemgr – Trusted Extensions Zone Manager Configuration Utility

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/txzonemgr

**Description** The txzonemgr shell script provides a simple, menu-based GUI wizard for creating, installing, initializing, and booting labeled zones on a system on which Trusted Extensions is enabled. The script also provides menu items for networking options, name services options, and making the global zone a client of an existing LDAP server. By default, all zones are configured to use the same name service and IP address as the global zone.

txzonemgr is run by roles granted in the Zone Management Rights Profile, or by root in the global zone. It takes no options and returns no values.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Command Interface Stability	Committed
Interactive Dialogue	Not an Interface

**See Also** [zenity\(1\)](#), [ifconfig\(1M\)](#), [zoneadm\(1M\)](#), [zonecfg\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [rbac\(5\)](#), [zones\(5\)](#)

*Solaris Trusted Extensions Administrator's Procedures*

**Notes** If administering zones from JDS, use txzonemgr rather than CDE actions.

txzonemgr uses the zenity command. For details, see the zenity(1) man page.

**Name** tzreload – notify timezone update

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/tzreload [-a]

**Description** The `tzreload` command notifies active (running) processes to reread timezone information. The timezone information is cached in each process, absent a `tzreload` command, is never reread until a process is restarted. In response to a `tzreload` command, active processes reread the current timezone information at the next call to `ctime(3C)` and `mktime(3C)`. By default, the `tzreload` notification is sent to the processes within the current zone.

In addition to notifying active processes, the `tzreload` command also notifies `cron(1M)`, to reinitialize the job scheduler with the new timezone information.

**Options** The following options are supported:

-a  
Notify processes in all zones.

**Files** /usr/share/lib/zoneinfo  
Standard zone information directory.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Committed

**See Also** [cron\(1M\)](#), [zdump\(1M\)](#), [zic\(1M\)](#), [zoneadm\(1M\)](#), [ctime\(3C\)](#), [mktime\(3C\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

`rpc.cmsd(1M)`, part of the CDE man page set.

**Notes** Although `tzreload` reinitializes [cron\(1M\)](#), applications that are affected by timezone changes still need to be restarted or reinitialized if they do not reread the new timezone information before timezone changes take place.

**Name** tzselect – select a time zone

**Synopsis** /usr/bin/tzselect

**Description** The tzselect program asks you a series of questions about the current location and outputs the resulting time zone description to standard output. The output is suitable as a value for the TZ environment variable.

All user interaction is through standard input and standard error.

**Options** The tzselect command has no options.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0 Timezone information was successfully obtained.

>0 An error occurred.

**Files** /usr/share/lib/zoneinfo directory containing timezone data files

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Stability	Evolving

**See Also** [zdump\(1M\)](#), [zic\(1M\)](#), [ctime\(3C\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** uadmin – administrative control

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/uadmin *cmd fcn* [*mdep*]  
 /sbin/uadmin *cmd fcn* [*mdep*]

**Description** The uadmin command provides control for basic administrative functions. This command is tightly coupled to the system administration procedures and is not intended for general use. It may be invoked only by the super-user.

Both the *cmd* (command) and *fcn* (function) arguments are converted to integers and passed to the uadmin system call. The optional *mdep* (machine dependent) argument is only available for the *cmd* values of 1 (A\_REBOOT), 2 (A\_SHUTDOWN), or 5 (A\_DUMP). For any other *cmd* value, no *mdep* command-line argument is allowed.

When passing an *mdep* value that contains whitespaces, the string must be grouped together as a single argument enclosed within quotes, for example:

```
uadmin 1 1 "-s kernel/unix"
```

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

**See Also** [halt\(1M\)](#), [reboot\(1M\)](#), [uadmin\(2\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Warnings** Shutting down or halting the system by means of uadmin does not update the boot archive. Avoid using this command after

- editing of files such as /etc/system
- installing new driver binaries or kernel binaries
- updating existing driver binaries or kernel binaries.

Use [reboot\(1M\)](#) or [halt\(1M\)](#) instead.

**Name** ucodeadm – update processor microcode

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/ucodeadm -v  
/usr/sbin/ucodeadm -u *microcode-text-file*  
/usr/sbin/ucodeadm -i [-R *path*] *microcode-text-file*

**Description** The ucodeadm utility can be used to report running microcode revision on the processors, update microcode, or install microcode on the target system to be used during the boot process.

The *microcode-text-file* can be obtained from processor vendors.

**Options**

-v	Report microcode revision.
-u <i>microcode-text-file</i>	Update microcode on all cross-call interrupt ready processors.
-i <i>microcode-text-file</i>	Install microcode files on target system to be used during the next boot cycle. The text file name must have the vendor name prefix, such as “intel” or “amd”.

By default the microcode files will be installed at:

```
/platform/i86pc/ucode/$VENDORSTR/
```

where VENDORSTR is either “GenuineIntel” or “AuthenticAMD”.

-R <i>alternate path</i>	Install <i>microcode</i> path in the <i>alternate path</i> .
--------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Reporting the Microcode Revision

The following example displays the microcode revision that is currently running:

```
ucodeadm -v
```

EXAMPLE 2 Updating the Processor Microcode

The following example updates the processor microcode to intel-ucode.txt:

```
ucodeadm -u intel-ucode.txt
```

EXAMPLE 3 Installing the Microcode on the Target System

The following example installs the microcode on the target system, /export/ucode-path:

```
ucodeadm -i -R /export/ucode-path intel-ucode.txt
```

If an alternate path is used when installing the microcode on the target system, the installed microcode file is not used on the next boot cycle.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- >0 An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Stable

**See Also** [psradm\(1M\)](#), [psrinfo\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** ufsdump – incremental file system dump

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/ufsdump [*options*] [*arguments*] *files\_to\_dump*

**Description** ufsdump backs up all files specified by *files\_to\_dump* (usually either a whole file system or files within a file system changed after a certain date) to magnetic tape, diskette, or disk file.

The ufsdump command can only be used on unmounted file systems, or those mounted read-only. Attempting to dump a mounted, read-write file system might result in a system disruption or the inability to restore files from the dump. Consider using the [fssnap\(1M\)](#) command to create a file system snapshot if you need a point-in-time image of a file system that is mounted.

If a filesystem was mounted with the logging option, it is strongly recommended that you run ufsdump as the root user. Running the command as a non-root user might result in the creation of an inconsistent dump.

*options* is a single string of one-letter ufsdump options.

*arguments* may be multiple strings whose association with the options is determined by order. That is, the first argument goes with the first option that takes an argument; the second argument goes with the second option that takes an argument, and so on.

*files\_to\_dump* is required and must be the last argument on the command line. See OPERANDS for more information.

With most devices ufsdump can automatically detect the end-of-media. Consequently, the *d*, *s*, and *t* options are not necessary for multi-volume dumps, unless ufsdump does not understand the way the device detects the end-of-media, or the files are to be restored on a system with an older version of the restore command.

**Options** The following options are supported:

**0–9**

The “dump level.” All files specified by *files\_to\_dump* that have been modified since the last ufsdump at a lower dump level are copied to the *dump\_file* destination (normally a magnetic tape device). For instance, if a “level 2” dump was done on Monday, followed by a “level 4” dump on Tuesday, a subsequent “level 3” dump on Wednesday would contain all files modified or added since the “level 2” (Monday) backup. A “level 0” dump copies the entire file system to the *dump\_file*.

**a** *archive\_file*

Archive file. Archive a dump table-of-contents in the specified *archive\_file* to be used by [ufsrestore\(1M\)](#) to determine whether a file is in the dump file that is being restored.

**b** *factor*

Blocking factor. Specify the blocking factor for tape writes. The default is 20 blocks per write for tapes of density less than 6250BPI (bytes-per-inch). The default blocking factor for tapes of density 6250BPI and greater is 64. The default blocking factor for cartridge



tapes (c option) is 126. The highest blocking factor available with most tape drives is 126. Note: the blocking factor is specified in terms of 512-byte blocks, for compatibility with [tar\(1\)](#).

c

Cartridge. Set the defaults for cartridge instead of the standard half-inch reel. This sets the density to 1000BPI and the blocking factor to 126. Since `ufsdump` can automatically detect the end-of-media, only the blocking parameter normally has an effect. When cartridge tapes are used, and this option is *not* specified, `ufsdump` will slightly miscalculate the size of the tape. If the b, d, s or t options are specified with this option, their values will override the defaults set by this option.

d *bpi*

Tape density. Not normally required, as `ufsdump` can detect end-of-media. This parameter can be used to keep a running tab on the amount of tape used per reel. The default density is 6250BPI except when the c option is used for cartridge tape, in which case it is assumed to be 1000BPI per track. Typical values for tape devices are:

1/2 inch tape  
6250 BPI

1/4 inch cartridge  
1000 BPI The tape densities and other options are documented in the [st\(7D\)](#) man page.

D

Diskette. Dump to diskette.

f *dump\_file*

Dump file. Use *dump\_file* as the file to dump to, instead of `/dev/rmt/0`. If *dump\_file* is specified as `-`, dump to standard output.

If the name of the file is of the form *machine:device*, the dump is done from the specified machine over the network using [rmt\(1M\)](#). Since `ufsdump` is normally run by root, the name of the local machine must appear in the `.rhosts` file of the remote machine. If the file is specified as *user@machine:device*, `ufsdump` will attempt to execute as the specified user on the remote machine. The specified user must have a `.rhosts` file on the remote machine that allows the user invoking the command from the local machine to access the remote machine.

l

Autoload. When the end-of-tape is reached before the dump is complete, take the drive offline and wait up to two minutes for the tape drive to be ready again. This gives autoloading (stackloader) tape drives a chance to load a new tape. If the drive is ready within two minutes, continue. If it is not, prompt for another tape and wait.

**L** *string*

Sets the tape label to *string*, instead of the default none. *string* may be no more than sixteen characters long. If it is longer, it is truncated and a warning printed; the dump will still be done. The tape label is specific to the `ufsdump` tape format, and bears no resemblance to IBM or ANSI-standard tape labels.

**n**

Notify all operators in the `sys` group that `ufsdump` requires attention by sending messages to their terminals, in a manner similar to that used by the `wall(1M)` command. Otherwise, such messages are sent only to the terminals (such as the console) on which the user running `ufsdump` is logged in.

**N** *device\_name*

Use *device\_name* when recording information in `/etc/dumpdates` (see the `u` option) and when comparing against information in `/etc/dumpdates` for incremental dumps. The *device\_name* provided can contain no white space as defined in `scanf(3C)` and is case-sensitive.

**o**

Offline. Take the drive offline when the dump is complete or the end-of-media is reached and rewind the tape, or eject the diskette. In the case of some autoloading 8mm drives, the tape is removed from the drive automatically. This prevents another process which rushes in to use the drive, from inadvertently overwriting the media.

**s** *size*

Specify the *size* of the volume being dumped to. Not normally required, as `ufsdump` can detect end-of-media. When the specified size is reached, `ufsdump` waits for you to change the volume. `ufsdump` interprets the specified size as the length in feet for tapes and cartridges, and as the number of 1024-byte blocks for diskettes. The values should be a little smaller than the actual physical size of the media (for example, 425 for a 450-foot cartridge). Typical values for tape devices depend on the `c` option, for cartridge devices, and the `D` option for diskettes:

1/2 inch tape

2300 feet

60-Mbyte 1/4 inch cartridge

425 feet

150-Mbyte 1/4 inch cartridge

700 feet

diskette

1422 blocks (Corresponds to a 1.44-Mbyte diskette, with one cylinder reserved for bad block information.)

- S** Size estimate. Determine the amount of space that is needed to perform the dump without actually doing it, and display the estimated number of bytes it will take. This is useful with incremental dumps to determine how many volumes of media will be needed.
- t** *tracks*  
Specify the number of tracks for a cartridge tape. Not normally required, as `ufsdump` can detect end-of-media. The default is 9 tracks. The `t` option is not compatible with the `D` option. Values for Sun-supported tape devices are:
- 60-Mbyte 1/4 inch cartridge  
9 tracks
  - 150-Mbyte 1/4 inch cartridge  
18 tracks
- T** *time\_wait*[hms]  
Sets the amount of time to wait for an `autoload` command to complete. This option is ignored unless the `l` option has also been specified. The default time period to wait is two minutes. Specify time units with a trailing `h` (for hours), `m` (for minutes), or `s` (for seconds). The default unit is minutes.
- u**  
Update the dump record. Add an entry to the file `/etc/dumpdates`, for each file system successfully dumped that includes the file system name (or *device\_name* as specified with the `N` option), date, and dump level.
- v**  
Verify. After each tape or diskette is written, verify the contents of the media against the source file system. If any discrepancies occur, prompt for new media, then repeat the dump/verification process. The file system *must* be unmounted. This option cannot be used to verify a dump to standard output.
- w**  
Warning. List the file systems that have not been backed up within a day. This information is gleaned from the files `/etc/dumpdates` and `/etc/vfstab`. When the `w` option is used, all other options are ignored. After reporting, `ufsdump` exits immediately.
- W**  
Warning with highlight. Similar to the `w` option, except that the `W` option includes all file systems that appear in `/etc/dumpdates`, along with information about their most recent dump dates and levels. File systems that have not been backed up within a day are highlighted.

**Operands** The following operand is supported:

*files\_to\_dump*

Specifies the files to dump. Usually it identifies a whole file system by its raw device name (for example, `/dev/rdisk/c0t3d0s6`). Incremental dumps (levels 1 to 9) of files changed

after a certain date only apply to a whole file system. Alternatively, *files\_to\_dump* can identify individual files or directories. All named directories that may be examined by the user running *ufsdump*, as well as any explicitly-named files, are dumped. This dump is equivalent to a level 0 dump of the indicated portions of the filesystem, except that */etc/dumpdates* is not updated even if the *-u* option has been specified. In all cases, the files must be contained in the same file system, and the file system must be local to the system where *ufsdump* is being run.

*files\_to\_dump* is required and must be the last argument on the command line.

If no *options* are given, the default is `9uf /dev/rmt/0 files_to_dump`.

**Usage** See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of *ufsdump* when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte ( $2^{31}$  bytes).

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Using *ufsdump*

The following command makes a full dump of a root file system on `c0t3d0`, on a 150-MByte cartridge tape unit 0:

```
example# ufsdump 0cfu /dev/rmt/0 /dev/rdisk/c0t3d0s0
```

The following command makes and verifies an incremental dump at level 5 of the *usr* partition of `c0t3d0`, on a 1/2 inch reel tape unit 1, :

```
example# ufsdump 5fuv /dev/rmt/1 /dev/rdisk/c0t3d0s6
```

**Exit Status** While running, *ufsdump* emits many verbose messages. *ufsdump* returns the following exit values:

- 0  
Normal exit.
- 1  
Startup errors encountered.
- 3  
Abort – no checkpoint attempted.

**Files** `/dev/rmt/0`  
default unit to dump to

`/etc/dumpdates`  
dump date record

`/etc/group`  
to find group `sys`

`/etc/hosts`  
to gain access to remote system with drive

/etc/vfstab  
list of file systems

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

**See Also** [cpio\(1\)](#), [tar\(1\)](#), [dd\(1M\)](#), [devnm\(1M\)](#), [fssnap\(1M\)](#), [prtvto\(1M\)](#), [rmt\(1M\)](#), [shutdown\(1M\)](#), [ufsrestore\(1M\)](#), [volcopy\(1M\)](#), [wall\(1M\)](#), [scanf\(3C\)](#), [ufsdump\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#), [st\(7D\)](#)

### Notes

**Read Errors** Fewer than 32 read errors on the file system are ignored.

**Process Per Reel** Because each reel requires a new process, parent processes for reels that are already written hang around until the entire tape is written.

**Operator Intervention** `ufsdump` requires operator intervention on these conditions: end of volume, end of dump, volume write error, volume open error or disk read error (if there are more than a threshold of 32). In addition to alerting all operators implied by the `n` option, `ufsdump` interacts with the operator on `ufsdump`'s control terminal at times when `ufsdump` can no longer proceed, or if something is grossly wrong. All questions `ufsdump` poses *must* be answered by typing yes or no, as appropriate.

Since backing up a disk can involve a lot of time and effort, `ufsdump` checkpoints at the start of each volume. If writing that volume fails for some reason, `ufsdump` will, with operator permission, restart itself from the checkpoint after a defective volume has been replaced.

**Suggested Dump Schedule** It is vital to perform full, “level 0”, dumps at regular intervals. When performing a full dump, bring the machine down to single-user mode using [shutdown\(1M\)](#). While preparing for a full dump, it is a good idea to clean the tape drive and heads. Incremental dumps should be performed with the system running in single-user mode.

Incremental dumps allow for convenient backup and recovery of active files on a more frequent basis, with a minimum of media and time. However, there are some tradeoffs. First, the interval between backups should be kept to a minimum (once a day at least). To guard against data loss as a result of a media failure (a rare, but possible occurrence), capture active files on (at least) two sets of dump volumes. Another consideration is the desire to keep unnecessary duplication of files to a minimum to save both operator time and media storage. A third consideration is the ease with which a particular backed-up version of a file can be located and restored. The following four-week schedule offers a reasonable tradeoff between these goals.

	Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri
Week 1:	Full	5	5	5	5	3
Week 2:		5	5	5	5	3
Week 3:		5	5	5	5	3
Week 4:		5	5	5	5	3

Although the Tuesday through Friday incrementals contain “extra copies” of files from Monday, this scheme assures that any file modified during the week can be recovered from the previous day’s incremental dump.

**Process Priority of ufsdump** ufsdump uses multiple processes to allow it to read from the disk and write to the media concurrently. Due to the way it synchronizes between these processes, any attempt to run dump with a `nice` (process priority) of `-5` or better will likely make ufsdump run *slower* instead of faster.

**Overlapping Partitions** Most disks contain one or more overlapping slices because slice 2 covers the entire disk. The other slices are of various sizes and usually do not overlap. For example, a common configuration places `root` on slice 0, `swap` on slice 1, `/opt` on slice 5 and `/usr` on slice 6.

It should be emphasized that ufsdump dumps one `ufs` file system at a time. Given the above scenario where slice 0 and slice 2 have the same starting offset, executing ufsdump on slice 2 with the intent of dumping the entire disk would instead dump only the root file system on slice 0. To dump the entire disk, the user must dump the file systems on each slice separately.

**Bugs** The `/etc/vfstab` file does not allow the desired frequency of backup for file systems to be specified (as `/etc/fstab` did). Consequently, the `w` and `W` options assume file systems should be backed up daily, which limits the usefulness of these options.

**Name** ufsrestore – incremental file system restore

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/ufsrestore *i* | *r* | *R* | *t* | *x* [abcdfhlmostvyLT]  
 [*archive\_file*] [*factor*] [*dumpfile*] [*n*] [*label*]  
 [*timeout*] [*filename*]. . .

**Description** The `ufsrestore` utility restores files from backup media created with the `ufsdump` command. `ufsrestore`'s actions are controlled by the *key* argument. The *key* is exactly one *function letter* (*i*, *r*, *R*, *t*, or *x*) and zero or more *function modifiers* (letters). The *key* string contains no SPACE characters. Function modifier arguments are listed on the command line in the same order as their corresponding function modifiers appear in the *key* string.

*filename* arguments which appear on the command line, or as arguments to an interactive command, are treated as shell glob patterns by the *x* and *t* functions; any files or directories matching the patterns are selected. The metacharacters `*`, `?`, and `[ ]` must be protected from the shell if they appear on the command line. There is no way to quote these metacharacters to explicitly match them in a filename.

The temporary files `rstdir*` and `rstmode*` are placed in `/tmp` by default. If the environment variable `TMPDIR` is defined with a non-empty value, that location is used instead of `/tmp`.

## Options

**Function Letters** You must specify one (and only one) of the function letters listed below. Note that *i*, *x*, and *r* are intended to restore files into an empty directory. The *R* function is intended for restoring into a populated directory.

- i* Interactive. After reading in the directory information from the media, `ufsrestore` invokes a shell-like interface that allows you to browse through the dump file's directory hierarchy and select individual files to be extracted. Restoration has the same semantics as *x* (see below). See *Interactive Commands*, below, for a description of available commands.
- r* Recursive. Starting with an empty directory and a level 0 dump, the *r* function recreates the filesystem relative to the current working directory, exactly as it appeared when the dump was made. Information used to restore incremental dumps on top of the full dump (for example, `restoresymtable`) is also included. Several `ufsrestore` runs are typical, one for each higher level of dump (0, 1, ..., 9). Files that were deleted between the level 0 and a subsequent incremental dump will not exist after the final restore. To completely restore a file system, use the *r* function restore the level 0 dump, and again for each incremental dump. Although this function letter is intended for a complete restore onto a new file system (one just created with `newfs(1M)`), if the file system contains files not on the backup media, they are preserved.
- R* Resume restoring. If an *r*-mode `ufsrestore` was interrupted, this function prompts for the volume from which to resume restoring and continues the restoration from where it was left off. Otherwise identical to *r*.

- t Table of contents. List each *filename* that appears on the media. If no *filename* argument is given, the root directory is listed. This results in a list of all files on the media, unless the *h* function modifier is in effect. The table of contents is taken from the media or from the specified archive file, when the *a* function modifier is used. The *a* function modifier is mutually exclusive with the *x* and *r* function letters.
- x Extract the named files from the media. Files are restored to the same relative locations that they had in the original file system.

If the *filename* argument matches a directory whose contents were written onto the media, and the *h* modifier is not in effect, the directory is recursively extracted, relative to the current directory, which is expected to be empty. For each file, the owner, modification time, and mode are restored (if possible).

If you omit the *filename* argument or specify *.*, the root directory is extracted. This results in the entire tape being extracted, unless the *h* modifier is in effect. *.* With the *x* function, existing files are overwritten and *ufs restore* displays the names of the overwritten files. Overwriting a currently-running executable can have unfortunate consequences.

Use the *x* option to restore partial file system dumps, as they are (by definition) not entire file systems.

Function Modifiers	a <i>archive_file</i>	Read the table of contents from <i>archive_file</i> instead of the media. This function modifier can be used in combination with the <i>t</i> , <i>i</i> , or <i>x</i> function letters, making it possible to check whether files are on the media without having to mount the media. When used with the <i>x</i> and interactive ( <i>i</i> ) function letters, it prompts for the volume containing the file(s) before extracting them.
	b <i>factor</i>	Blocking factor. Specify the blocking factor for tape reads. For variable length SCSI tape devices, unless the data was written with the default blocking factor, a blocking factor at least as great as that used to write the tape must be used; otherwise, an error will be generated. Note that a tape block is 512 bytes. Refer to the man page for your specific tape driver for the maximum blocking factor.
	c	Convert the contents of the media in 4.1BSD format to the new <i>ufs</i> file system format.
	d	Debug. Turn on debugging output.
	f <i>dump_file</i>	Use <i>dump_file</i> instead of <i>/dev/rmt/0</i> as the file to restore from. Typically <i>dump_file</i> specifies a tape or diskette drive. If <i>dump_file</i> is specified as <i>'-'</i> , <i>ufs restore</i> reads from the standard input. This allows <a href="#">ufsdump(1M)</a> and <i>ufs restore</i> to be used in a pipeline to copy a file system:



```
example# ufsdump 0f - /dev/rdisk/c0t0d0s7 \
| (cd /home;ufsrestore xf -)
```

If the name of the file is of the form *machine:device*, the restore is done from the specified machine over the network using *rmt(1M)*. Since *ufsrestore* is normally run by root, the name of the local machine must appear in the */etc/hosts* file of the remote machine. If the file is specified as *user@machine:device*, *ufsrestore* will attempt to execute as the specified user on the remote machine. The specified user must have a */etc/hosts* file on the remote machine that allows the user invoking the command from the local machine to access the remote machine.

- h** Extract or list the actual directory, rather than the files that it references. This prevents hierarchical restoration of complete subtrees from the tape.
- l** Autoload. When the end-of-tape is reached before the restore is complete, take the drive off-line and wait up to two minutes (the default, see the *T* function modifier) for the tape drive to be ready again. This gives autoloading (stackloader) tape drives a chance to load a new tape. If the drive is ready within two minutes, continue. If it is not, prompt for another tape and wait.
- L label** The label that should appear in the header of the dump file. If the labels do not match, *ufsrestore* issues a diagnostic and exits. The tape label is specific to the *ufsdump* tape format, and bears no resemblance to IBM or ANSI-standard tape labels.
- m** Extract by inode numbers rather than by filename to avoid regenerating complete pathnames. Regardless of where the files are located in the dump hierarchy, they are restored into the current directory and renamed with their inode number. This is useful if only a few files are being extracted.
- o** Offline. Take the drive off-line when the restore is complete or the end-of-media is reached and rewind the tape, or eject the diskette. In the case of some autoloading 8mm drives, the tape is removed from the drive automatically.
- s n** Skip to the *n*th file when there are multiple dump files on the same tape. For example, the command:
- ```
example# ufsrestore xfs /dev/rmt/0hn 5
```
- would position you to the fifth file on the tape when reading volume 1 of the dump. If a dump extends over more than one volume, all volumes except the first are assumed to start at position 0, no matter what “*s n*” value is specified.

If “*s n*” is specified, the backup media must be at BOT (beginning of tape). Otherwise, the initial positioning to read the table of contents will fail, as it is performed by skipping the tape forward *n* - 1 files rather than by using absolute positioning. This is because on some devices absolute positioning is very time consuming.

- T** timeout [hms] Sets the amount of time to wait for an autoload command to complete. This function modifier is ignored unless the **l** function modifier has also been specified. The default timeout period is two minutes. The time units may be specified as a trailing **h** (hours), **m** (minutes), or **s** (seconds). The default unit is minutes.
- v** Verbose. `ufsrestore` displays the name and inode number of each file it restores, preceded by its file type.
- y** Do not ask whether to abort the restore in the event of tape errors. `ufsrestore` tries to skip over the bad tape block(s) and continue as best it can.

Interactive Commands `ufsrestore` enters interactive mode when invoked with the **i** function letters. Interactive commands are reminiscent of the shell. For those commands that accept an argument, the default is the current directory. The interactive options are:

- add** [*filename*] Add the named file or directory to the list of files to extract. If a directory is specified, add that directory and its files (recursively) to the extraction list (unless the **h** modifier is in effect).
- cd** *directory* Change to *directory* (within the dump file).
- delete** [*filename*] Delete the current directory, or the named file or directory from the list of files to extract. If a directory is specified, delete that directory and all its descendents from the extraction list (unless the **h** modifier is in effect). The most expedient way to extract a majority of files from a directory is to add that directory to the extraction list, and then delete specific files to omit.
- extract** Extract all files on the extraction list from the dump media. `ufsrestore` asks which volume the user wishes to mount. The fastest way to extract a small number of files is to start with the last volume and work toward the first. If “*s n*” is given on the command line, volume 1 will automatically be positioned to file *n* when it is read.
- help** Display a summary of the available commands.
- ls** [*directory*] List files in *directory* or the current directory, represented by a ‘.’ (period). Directories are appended with a ‘/’ (slash). Entries marked for extraction are prefixed with a ‘*’ (asterisk). If the verbose option is in effect, inode numbers are also listed.

| | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| marked [<i>directory</i>] | Like <code>ls</code> , except only files marked for extraction are listed. |
| pager | Toggle the pagination of the output from the <code>ls</code> and <code>marked</code> commands. The pager used is that defined by the <code>PAGER</code> environment variable, or <code>more(1)</code> if that envvar is not defined. The <code>PAGER</code> envvar may include white-space-separated arguments for the pagination program. |
| pwd | Print the full pathname of the current working directory. |
| quit | <code>ufsrestore</code> exits immediately, even if the extraction list is not empty. |
| setmodes | Prompts: set owner/mode for '.' (period). Type <code>y</code> for yes to set the mode (permissions, owner, times) of the current directory '.' (period) into which files are being restored equal to the mode of the root directory of the file system from which they were dumped. Normally, this is what you want when restoring a whole file system, or restoring individual files into the same locations from which they were dumped. Type <code>n</code> for no, to leave the mode of the current directory unchanged. Normally, this is what you want when restoring part of a dump to a directory other than the one from which the files were dumped. |
| setpager <i>command</i> | Sets the command to use for paginating output instead of the default or that inherited from the environment. The <i>command</i> string may include arguments in addition to the command itself. |
| verbose | Toggle the status of the <code>v</code> modifier. While <code>v</code> is in effect, the <code>ls</code> command lists the inode numbers of all entries, and <code>ufsrestore</code> displays information about each file as it is extracted. |
| what | Display the dump header on the media. |

Operands The following operands are supported.

filename Specifies the pathname of files (or directories) to be restored to disk. Unless the `h` function modifier is also used, a directory name refers to the files it contains, and (recursively) its subdirectories and the files they contain. *filename* is associated with either the `x` or `t` function letters, and must come last.

Usage See [largefile\(5\)](#) for the description of the behavior of `ufsrestore` when encountering files greater than or equal to 2 Gbyte (2^{31} bytes).

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 1 An error occurred. Verbose messages are displayed.

Environment Variables `PAGER` The command to use as a filter for paginating output. This can also be used to specify the options to be used. Default is [more\(1\)](#).

TMPDIR Selects the directory for temporary files. Defaults to `/tmp` if not defined in the environment.

Files

- `/dev/rmt/0` the default tape drive
- `$TMPDIR/rstdir*` file containing directories on the tape
- `$TMPDIR/rstmode*` owner, mode, and timestamps for directories
- `./restoresymtable` information passed between incremental restores

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability | SUNWcsu |

See Also [more\(1\)](#), [mkfs\(1M\)](#), [mount\(1M\)](#), [rmt\(1M\)](#), [ufsdump\(1M\)](#), [ufsdump\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [largefile\(5\)](#)

Diagnostics `ufsrestore` complains about bad option characters.

Read errors result in complaints. If `y` has been specified, or the user responds `y`, `ufsrestore` will attempt to continue.

If the dump extends over more than one tape, `ufsrestore` asks the user to change tapes. If the `x` or `i` function letter has been specified, `ufsrestore` also asks which volume the user wishes to mount. If the `s` modifier has been specified, and volume 1 is mounted, it is automatically positioned to the indicated file.

There are numerous consistency checks that can be listed by `ufsrestore`. Most checks are self-explanatory or can “never happen”. Common errors are given below.

Converting to new file system format

A dump tape created from the old file system has been loaded. It is automatically converted to the new file system format.

filename: not found on tape

The specified file name was listed in the tape directory, but was not found on the tape. This is caused by tape read errors while looking for the file, using a dump tape created on an active file system, or restoring a partial dump with the `r` function.

expected next file *inumber*, got *inumber*

A file that was not listed in the directory showed up. This can occur when using a dump tape created on an active file system.

Incremental tape too low

When doing an incremental restore, a tape that was written before the previous incremental tape, or that has too low an incremental level has been loaded.

Incremental tape too high

When doing incremental restore, a tape that does not begin its coverage where the previous incremental tape left off, or one that has too high an incremental level has been loaded.

media read error: invalid argument

Blocking factor specified for read is smaller than the blocking factor used to write data.

Tape read error while restoring**Tape read error while skipping over inode inumber****Tape read error while trying to resynchronize****A tape read error has occurred**

If a file name is specified, then its contents are probably partially wrong. If an inode is being skipped or the tape is trying to resynchronize, then no extracted files have been corrupted, though files may not be found on the tape.

resync ufsrestore, skipped *num*

After a tape read error, `ufsrestore` may have to resynchronize itself. This message lists the number of blocks that were skipped over.

Incorrect tape label. Expected 'foo', got 'bar'.

The `L` option was specified, and its value did not match what was recorded in the header of the dump file.

Notes `ufsrestore` can get confused when doing incremental restores from dump tapes that were made on active file systems.

A level 0 dump must be done after a full restore. Because `ufsrestore` runs in user mode, it has no control over inode allocation. This means that `ufsrestore` repositions the files, although it does not change their contents. Thus, a full dump must be done to get a new set of directories reflecting the new file positions, so that later incremental dumps will be correct.

Name unshare – make local resource unavailable for mounting by remote systems

Synopsis unshare [-p] [-F *FSType*] [-o *specific_options*]
 [*pathname* | *resourcename*]

Description The unshare command makes a shared local resource unavailable as file system type *FSType*. If the option *-FSType* is omitted, then the first file system type listed in file */etc/dfs/fstypes* will be used as the default. *Specific_options*, as well as the semantics of *resourcename*, are specific to particular distributed file systems.

Options *-F FSType*
 Specify the file system type.

-o specific_options
 Specify options specific to the file system provided by the *-F* option.

-p
 Remove resource from shared status in a way that persists across reboots.

Files */etc/dfs/fstypes*
 Lists distributed file system utilities packages installed on the system.

/etc/dfs/sharetab
 Contains a table of local resources shared by the share command.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability | SUNWcsu |

See Also [share\(1M\)](#), [shareall\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes If *pathname* or *resourcename* is not found in the shared information, an error message will be sent to standard error.

When an unshare command completes successfully, a client mounting a file system specified in that unshare command no longer has access to that file system.

Name unshare_nfs – make local NFS file systems unavailable for mounting by remote systems

Synopsis unshare [-F nfs] *pathname*

Description The unshare command makes local file systems unavailable for mounting by remote systems. The shared file system must correspond to a line with NFS as the *FSType* in the file /etc/dfs/sharetab.

Options The following options are supported:

-F This option may be omitted if NFS is the first file system type listed in the file /etc/dfs/fstypes.

Files /etc/dfs/fstypes

/etc/dfs/sharetab

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability | SUNWnfssu |

See Also [nfsd\(1M\)](#), [share\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes If the file system being unshared is a symbolic link to a valid pathname, the canonical path (the path which the symbolic link follows) will be unshared.

For example, if /export/foo is a symbolic link to /export/bar (/export/foo -> /export/bar), the following unshare command will result in /export/bar as the unshared pathname (and not /export/foo):

```
example# unshare -F nfs /export/foo
```

For file systems that are accessed by NFS Version 4 clients, once the unshare is complete, all NFS Version 4 state (open files and file locks) are released and unrecoverable by the clients. If the intent is to share the file system after some administrative action, the NFS daemon (nfsd) should first be stopped and then the file system unshared. After the administrative action is complete, the file system would then be shared and the NFS daemon restarted. See [nfsd\(1M\)](#)

Name update_drv – modify device driver attributes

Synopsis update_drv [-f | -v] [-n] *driver_module*

```
update_drv [-b basedir] [-f | -v] [-n] -a [-m 'permission' ]
           [-i 'identify-name' ] [-P 'privilege' ] [-p 'policy' ] driver_module
```

```
update_drv [-b basedir] [-f | -v] [-n] -d [-m 'permission' ]
           [-i 'identify-name' ] [-P 'privilege' ] [-p 'policy' ] driver_module
```

Description The update_drv command informs the system about attribute changes to an installed device driver. It can be used to re-read the [driver.conf\(4\)](#) file, or to add, modify, or delete a driver's minor node permissions or aliases.

Without options, update_drv reloads the driver.conf file.

Upon successfully updating the aliases, the driver binding takes effect upon reconfig boot or hotplug of the device.

Upon successfully updating the permissions, only the new driver minor nodes get created with the modified set of file permissions. Existing driver minor nodes do not get modified.

Options The following options are supported:

-a

Add a *permission*, *aliases*, *privilege* or *policy* entry.

With the -a option specified, a permission entry (using the -m option), or a driver's aliases entry (using the -i option), a device privilege (using the -P option) or a device policy (using the -p option), can be added or updated. If a matching minor node permissions entry is encountered (having the same driver name and the minor node), it is replaced. If a matching aliases entry is encountered (having a different driver name and the same alias), an error is reported.

The -a and -d options are mutually exclusive.

-b *basedir*

Installs or modifies the driver on the system with a root directory of *basedir* rather than installing on the system executing update_drv.

Note – The root file system of any non-global zones must not be referenced with the -b option. Doing so might damage the global zone's file system, might compromise the security of the global zone, and might damage the non-global zone's file system. See [zones\(5\)](#).

-d

Delete a *permission*, *aliases*, *privilege* or *policy* entry.

The -m *permission*, -i *identify-name*, -P *privilege* or the -p *policy* option needs to be specified with the -d option.

The `-d` and `-a` options are mutually exclusive.

If the entry doesn't exist `update_drv` returns an error.

`-f`

Force the system to reread the `driver.conf` file even if the driver module cannot be unloaded. See NOTES section for details.

Without this option, when removing an alias for a driver, `update_drv` updates the binding files for the next boot, but returns an error if one or more devices that reference the driver-alias binding remains. *With* the `-f` option, `update_drv` does not return an error if such devices remain.

`-i 'identify-name'`

A white-space separated list of aliases for the driver. If `-a` or `-d` option is not specified then this option is ignored. The *identify-name* string is mandatory. If all aliases need to be removed, `rem_drv(1M)` is recommended.

`-m 'permission'`

Specify a white-space separated list of file system permissions for the device node of the device driver. If `-a` or `-d` option is not specified then, this option is ignored. The permission string is mandatory.

`-n`

Do not try to load and attach *device_driver*, just modify the system configuration files for that driver.

`-p 'policy'`

With the `-a` option, *policy* is a white-space separated list of complete device policies. For the `-d` option, *policy* is a white space separated list of minor device specifications. The minor device specifications are matched exactly against the entries in `/etc/security/device_policy`, that is., no wildcard matching is performed.

`-P 'privilege'`

With the `-a` option, *privilege* is a comma separated list of additional driver privileges. For the `-d` option, *privilege* is a single privilege. The privileges are added to or removed from the `/etc/security/extra_privs` file.

`-v`

Verbose.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Adding or Modifying an Existing Minor Permissions Entry

The following command adds or modifies the existing minor permissions entry of the `clone` driver:

```
example# update_drv -a -m 'llc1 777 joe staff' clone
```

EXAMPLE 2 Removing All Minor Permissions Entries

The following command removes all minor permission entries of the `usbprn` driver, the USB printer driver:

```
example# update_drv -d -m '* 0666 root sys' usbprn
```

EXAMPLE 3 Adding a Driver Aliases Entry

The following command adds a driver aliases entry of the `ugen` driver with the identity string of `usb459,20`:

```
example# update_drv -a -i 'usb459,20' ugen
```

EXAMPLE 4 Re-reading the `driver.conf` File For the `ohci` Driver

The following command re-reads the `driver.conf(4)` file.

```
example# update_drv ohci
```

EXAMPLE 5 Requiring a Self-defined Privilege to Open a tcp Socket

The following command requires a self-defined privilege to open a tcp socket:

```
example# update_drv -a -P net_tcp -p \
    'write_priv_set=net_tcp read_priv_set=net_tcp' tcp
```

EXAMPLE 6 Establishing a Path-oriented Alias

The following command establishes a path-oriented alias to force a specific driver, `qlt`, to be used for a particular device path:

```
example# update_drv -a -i '/pci@8,600000/SUNW,qlc@4' qlt
```

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0
Successful completion.
- >0
An error occurred.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability | SUNWcsu |

See Also [add_drv\(1M\)](#), [modunload\(1M\)](#), [rem_drv\(1M\)](#), [driver.conf\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [privileges\(5\)](#)

Notes If `-a` or `-d` options are specified, `update_drv` does not reread the `driver.conf` file.

A forced update of the `driver.conf` file reloads the `driver.conf` file without reloading the driver binary module. In this case, devices which cannot be detached reference driver global properties from the old `driver.conf` file, while the remaining driver instances reference global properties in the new `driver.conf` file.

It is possible to add an alias, which changes the driver binding of a device already being managed by a different driver. A force update with the `-a` option tries to bind to the new driver and report error if it cannot. If you specify more than one of the `-m`, `-i`, `-P` or `-p` options, a force flag tries to modify aliases or permissions. This is done even if the other operation fails and vice-versa.

Name updatehome – update the home directory copy and link files for the current label

Synopsis /usr/bin/updatehome [-cirs]

Description updatehome reads the user's minimum-label copy and link-control files (`.copy_files` and `.link_files`). These files contain a list of files to be copied and symbolically linked from the user's minimum-label home directory to the user's home directory at the current label.

The Solaris Trusted Extensions `dtsession` program performs an `updatehome` whenever a newly labeled workspace is created so that the user's favorite files are available for use. For example, the user probably wants a symbolic link to such files as `.profile`, `.login`, `.cshrc`, `.exrc`, `.mailrc`, and `~/bin`. The `updatehome` command provides a convenient mechanism for accomplishing this symlink. The user can add files to those to be copied (`.copy_files`) and to those to be symbolically linked (`.link_files`).

Options

- c Replace existing home-directory copies at the current label. The default is to skip over existing copies.
- i Ignore errors encountered. The default aborts on error.
- r Replace existing home-directory copies or symbolic links at the current label. This option implies options -c and -s. The default is to skip over existing copies or symbolic links.
- s Replace existing home-directory symbolic links at the current label. The default is to skip over existing symbolic links.

Exit Status Upon success, `updatehome` returns 0. Upon failure, `updatehome` returns 1 and writes diagnostic messages to standard error.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 A Sample `.copy_files` File

The files that are listed in `.copy_files` can be modified at every user's label.

```
.cshrc
.mailrc
.mozilla/bookmarks.html
```

EXAMPLE 2 A Sample `.link_files` File

The files that are listed in `.link_files` can be modified at the lowest label. The changes propagate to the other labels that are available to the user.

```
~/bin
.mozilla/preferences
.xrc
.rhosts
```

EXAMPLE 3 Updating the Linked and Copied Files

The `.copy_files` and `.link_files` were updated by the user at the minimum label. At a higher label, the user refreshes the copies and the links. No privileges are required to run the command.

```
% updatehome -r
```

```
Files $HOME/.copy_files    List of files to be copied
        $HOME/.link_files   List of files to be symbolically linked
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability | SUNWtsu |
| Interface Stability | Committed |

See Also [attributes\(5\)](#)

“`.copy_files` and `.link_files` Files” in *Solaris Trusted Extensions Administrator’s Procedures*

Notes The functionality described on this manual page is available only if the system is configured with Trusted Extensions.

Name updatemanager – start the Sun Update Manager application

Synopsis updatemanager

Description The updatemanager command starts the Sun Update Manager application. The Sun Update Manager is a graphical user interface (GUI) that you can use to manage updates and patches on your Solaris system.

For more information about using this application, see the *Sun Update Manager 1.0 Administration Guide* in the *Sun Update Connection, System Edition Collection* on docs.sun.com.

You can also manage updates and patches on the command line by using the `smpatch` command. See the [smpatch\(1M\)](#) man page.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability | SUNWupdatemgru |
| Interface Stability | Unstable |

See Also [smpatch\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name updatemedia – modify Solaris media with patches and packages

Synopsis `/usr/bin/updatemedia -d media-root [-v] [-o iso] [-l label]
pkg_or_patch [pkg_or_patch ...]`

Description The updatemedia utility takes a list of patches and packages as input and updates the install miniroot in *media-root* (the root directory of an on-disk image of a Solaris installation media) to include the specified patches and packages. These patches and packages are also placed in a subdirectory called DU under the Solaris install image. For example:

```
media-root/Solaris_10/DU
```

When booting a system from the updated media, the patches and packages will be part of the booted Solaris image. They will also be applied to the target system being installed at the end of the installation process.

If `-o` is specified, a bootable ISO image is created in the file `media.iso` that contains the Solaris install media. The ISO image can then be burned onto a CD/DVD with utilities such as `cdrw(1)` or `cdrecord(1)`. (The latter is not a SunOS man page.)

Options The following options are supported:

`-d media-root`

Top-level directory of on-disk image of Solaris installation media. This is option must be specified.

`-o iso`

Create a Solaris ISO image of *media-root*.

`-l label`

Label/volume name of the ISO image (if `-o` option is specified). If `-o` is not specified, the name of Solaris directory under *media-root*, for example, `Solaris_10`, will be used.

`-v`

Verbose. Multiple `-v` options increase verbosity.

Operands The following operands are supported:

`pkg_or_patch [pkg_or_patch ...]`

One or more patches or packages (you can have both patches and packages in a single command) with which the Solaris installation media *media-root* will be updated.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Updating a Solaris Install Image with Patch and Package

The following command updates the Solaris install image in `s10u1` by adding patch `123456-07` and package `SUNWfoo`.

```
# /usr/bin/updatemedia -d s10u1 SUNWfoo 123456-07
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability | SUNWcsu |
| Interface Stability | Committed |

See Also [cdrw\(1\)](#), [mkbootmedia\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

[mkisofs\(8\)](#), (`/usr/share/man/man8/mkisofs.8`), in the SUNWfsman package (not a SunOS man page)

Name useradd – administer a new user login on the system

Synopsis useradd [-A *authorization* [,*authorization*...]]
 [-b *base_dir*] [-c *comment*] [-d *dir*] [-e *expire*]
 [-f *inactive*] [-g *group*] [-G *group* [,*group*]...]
 [-K *key=value*] [-m [-k *skel_dir*]] [-p *projname*]
 [-P *profile* [,*profile*...]] [-R *role* [,*role*...]]
 [-s *shell*] [-u *uid* [-o]] *login*

useradd -D [-A *authorization* [,*authorization*...]]
 [-b *base_dir*] [-s *shell* [-k *skel_dir*]] [-e *expire*]
 [-f *inactive*] [-g *group*] [-K *key=value*] [-p *projname*]
 [-P *profile* [,*profile*...]] [-R *role* [,*role*...]]

Description useradd adds a new user to the /etc/passwd and /etc/shadow and /etc/user_attr files. The -A and -P options respectively assign authorizations and profiles to the user. The -R option assigns roles to a user. The -p option associates a project with a user. The -K option adds a *key=value* pair to /etc/user_attr for the user. Multiple *key=value* pairs may be added with multiple -K options.

useradd also creates supplementary group memberships for the user (-G option) and creates the home directory (-m option) for the user if requested. The new login remains locked until the [passwd\(1\)](#) command is executed.

Specifying useradd -D with the -s, -k, -g, -b, -f, -e, -A, -P, -p, -R, or -K option (or any combination of these options) sets the default values for the respective fields. See the -D option, below. Subsequent useradd commands without the -D option use these arguments.

The system file entries created with this command have a limit of 2048 characters per line. Specifying long arguments to several options can exceed this limit.

useradd requires that usernames be in the format described in [passwd\(4\)](#). A warning message is displayed if these restrictions are not met. See [passwd\(4\)](#) for the requirements for usernames.

Options The following options are supported:

-A *authorization*

One or more comma separated authorizations defined in [auth_attr\(4\)](#). Only a user or role who has grant rights to the authorization can assign it to an account.

-b *base_dir*

The base directory for new login home directories (see the -d option below. When a new user account is being created, *base_dir* must already exist unless the -m option or the -d option is also specified.

-c *comment*

Any text string. It is generally a short description of the login, and is currently used as the field for the user's full name. This information is stored in the user's /etc/passwd entry.

-d *dir*

The home directory of the new user. It defaults to *base_dir/account_name*, where *base_dir* is the base directory for new login home directories and *account_name* is the new login name.

-D

Display the default values for *group*, *base_dir*, *skel_dir*, *shell*, *inactive*, *expire*, *proj*, *projname* and *key=value* pairs. When used with the *-g*, *-b*, *-f*, *-e*, *-A*, *-P*, *-p*, *-R*, or *-K* options, the *-D* option sets the default values for the specified fields. The default values are:

```
group
  other (GID of 1)

base_dir
  /home

skel_dir
  /etc/skel

shell
  /bin/sh

inactive
  0

expire
  null

auths
  null

profiles
  null

proj
  3

projname
  default

key=value (pairs defined in user\_attr\(4\))
  not present

roles
  null
```

-e *expire*

Specify the expiration date for a login. After this date, no user will be able to access this login. The *expire* option argument is a date entered using one of the date formats included in the template file */etc/datemsk*. See [getdate\(3C\)](#).

If the date format that you choose includes spaces, it must be quoted. For example, you can enter `10/6/90` or `October 6, 1990`. A null value (" ") defeats the status of the expired date. This option is useful for creating temporary logins.

-f *inactive*

The maximum number of days allowed between uses of a login ID before that ID is declared invalid. Normal values are positive integers. A value of `0` defeats the status.

-g *group*

An existing group's integer ID or character-string name. Without the `-D` option, it defines the new user's primary group membership and defaults to the default group. You can reset this default value by invoking `useradd -D -g group`. GIDs 0-99 are reserved for allocation by the Solaris Operating System.

-G *group*

An existing group's integer ID or character-string name. It defines the new user's supplementary group membership. Duplicates between *group* with the `-g` and `-G` options are ignored. No more than `NGROUPS_MAX` groups can be specified. GIDs 0-99 are reserved for allocation by the Solaris Operating System.

-K *key=value*

A *key=value* pair to add to the user's attributes. Multiple `-K` options may be used to add multiple *key=value* pairs. The generic `-K` option with the appropriate key may be used instead of the specific implied key options (`-A`, `-P`, `-R`, `-p`). See [user_attr\(4\)](#) for a list of valid *key=value* pairs. The "type" key is not a valid key for this option. Keys may not be repeated.

-k *skel_dir*

A directory that contains skeleton information (such as `.profile`) that can be copied into a new user's home directory. This directory must already exist. The system provides the `/etc/skel` directory that can be used for this purpose.

-m

Create the new user's home directory if it does not already exist. If the directory already exists, it must have read, write, and execute permissions by *group*, where *group* is the user's primary group.

-o

This option allows a UID to be duplicated (non-unique).

-P *profile*

One or more comma-separated execution profiles defined in [prof_attr\(4\)](#).

-p *projname*

Name of the project with which the added user is associated. See the *projname* field as defined in [project\(4\)](#).

-R *role*

One or more comma-separated execution profiles defined in [user_attr\(4\)](#). Roles cannot be assigned to other roles.

-s *shell*

Full pathname of the program used as the user's shell on login. It defaults to an empty field causing the system to use `/bin/sh` as the default. The value of *shell* must be a valid executable file.

-u *uid*

The UID of the new user. This UID must be a non-negative decimal integer below MAXUID as defined in `<sys/param.h>`. The UID defaults to the next available (unique) number above the highest number currently assigned. For example, if UIDs 100, 105, and 200 are assigned, the next default UID number will be 201. UIDs 0-99 are reserved for allocation by the Solaris Operating System.

Files `/etc/datemsk``/etc/passwd``/etc/shadow``/etc/group``/etc/skel``/usr/include/limits.h``/etc/user_attr`

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability | SUNWcsu |
| Interface Stability | Committed |

See Also [passwd\(1\)](#), [profiles\(1\)](#), [roles\(1\)](#), [users\(1B\)](#), [groupadd\(1M\)](#), [groupdel\(1M\)](#), [groupmod\(1M\)](#), [grpck\(1M\)](#), [logins\(1M\)](#), [pwck\(1M\)](#), [userdel\(1M\)](#), [usermod\(1M\)](#), [getdate\(3C\)](#), [auth_attr\(4\)](#), [passwd\(4\)](#), [prof_attr\(4\)](#), [project\(4\)](#), [user_attr\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Diagnostics In case of an error, `useradd` prints an error message and exits with a non-zero status.

The following indicates that `login` specified is already in use:

```
UX: useradd: ERROR: login is already in use. Choose another.
```

The following indicates that the *uid* specified with the `-u` option is not unique:

```
UX: useradd: ERROR: uid uid is already in use. Choose another.
```

The following indicates that the *group* specified with the `-g` option is already in use:

UX: useradd: ERROR: group *group* does not exist. Choose another.

The following indicates that the *uid* specified with the -u option is in the range of reserved UIDs (from 0-99):

UX: useradd: WARNING: uid *uid* is reserved.

The following indicates that the *uid* specified with the -u option exceeds MAXUID as defined in <sys/param.h>:

UX: useradd: ERROR: uid *uid* is too big. Choose another.

The following indicates that the /etc/passwd or /etc/shadow files do not exist:

UX: useradd: ERROR: Cannot update system files - login cannot be created.

Notes The useradd utility adds definitions to only the local /etc/group, etc/passwd, /etc/passwd, /etc/shadow, /etc/project, and /etc/user_attr files. If a network name service such as NIS is being used to supplement the local /etc/passwd file with additional entries, useradd cannot change information supplied by the network name service. However useradd will verify the uniqueness of the user name (or role) and user id and the existence of any group names specified against the external name service.

Name userdel – delete a user's login from the system

Synopsis userdel [-r] *login*

Description The userdel utility deletes a user account from the system and makes the appropriate account-related changes to the system file and file system.

Options The following options are supported:

- r Remove the user's home directory from the system. This directory must exist. The files and directories under the home directory will no longer be accessible following successful execution of the command.

Operands The following operands are supported:

login An existing login name to be deleted.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Successful completion.
- 2 Invalid command syntax. A usage message for the userdel command is displayed.
- 6 The account to be removed does not exist.
- 8 The account to be removed is in use.
- 10 Cannot update the /etc/group or /etc/user_attr file but the login is removed from the /etc/passwd file.
- 12 Cannot remove or otherwise modify the home directory.

Files

| | |
|----------------|--|
| /etc/passwd | system password file |
| /etc/shadow | system file contain users' encrypted passwords and related information |
| /etc/group | system file containing group definitions |
| /etc/user_attr | system file containing additional user attributes |

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability | SUNWcsu |

See Also [auths\(1\)](#), [passwd\(1\)](#), [profiles\(1\)](#), [roles\(1\)](#), [users\(1B\)](#), [groupadd\(1M\)](#), [groupdel\(1M\)](#), [groupmod\(1M\)](#), [logins\(1M\)](#), [roleadd\(1M\)](#), [rolemod\(1M\)](#), [useradd\(1M\)](#), [userdel\(1M\)](#), [usermod\(1M\)](#), [passwd\(4\)](#), [prof_attr\(4\)](#), [user_attr\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes The `userdel` utility only deletes an account definition that is in the local `/etc/group`, `/etc/passwd`, `/etc/shadow`, and `/etc/user_attr` file. If a network name service such as NIS or NIS+ is being used to supplement the local `/etc/passwd` file with additional entries, `userdel` cannot change information supplied by the network name service.

Name usermod – modify a user's login information on the system

Synopsis usermod [-u *uid* [-o]] [-g *group*] [-G *group* [, *group*...]]
[-d *dir* [-m]] [-s *shell*] [-c *comment*] [-l *new_name*]
[-f *inactive*] [-e *expire*]
[-A *authorization* [, *authorization*]]
[-P *profile* [, *profile*]] [-R *role* [, *role*]]
[-K *key=value*] *login*

Description The usermod utility modifies a user's login definition on the system. It changes the definition of the specified login and makes the appropriate login-related system file and file system changes.

The system file entries created with this command have a limit of 512 characters per line. Specifying long arguments to several options might exceed this limit.

Options The following options are supported:

-A *authorization*

One or more comma separated authorizations as defined in [auth_attr\(4\)](#). Only a user or role who has grant rights to the *authorization* can assign it to an account. This replaces any existing authorization setting. If no authorization list is specified, the existing setting is removed.

-c *comment*

Specify a comment string. *comment* can be any text string. It is generally a short description of the login, and is currently used as the field for the user's full name. This information is stored in the user's `/etc/passwd` entry.

-d *dir*

Specify the new home directory of the user. It defaults to `base_dir/login`, where *base_dir* is the base directory for new login home directories, and *login* is the new login.

-e *expire*

Specify the expiration date for a login. After this date, no user will be able to access this login. The expire option argument is a date entered using one of the date formats included in the template file `/etc/datemsk`. See [getdate\(3C\)](#).

For example, you may enter `10/6/90` or `October 6, 1990`. A value of “ ” defeats the status of the expired date.

-f *inactive*

Specify the maximum number of days allowed between uses of a login ID before that login ID is declared invalid. Normal values are positive integers. A value of 0 defeats the status.

-g *group*

Specify an existing group's integer ID or character-string name. It redefines the user's primary group membership.

-G *group*

An existing group's integer ID or character-string name. It defines the new user's supplementary group membership. Duplicates between group with the -g and -G options are ignored. No more than NGROUPS_MAX groups can be specified. GIDs 0-99 are reserved for allocation by the Solaris Operating System.

-K *key=value*

Replace existing or add to a user's *key=value* pair attributes. Multiple -K options can be used to replace or add multiple *key=value* pairs. However, keys must not be repeated. The generic -K option with the appropriate key can be used instead of the specific implied key options (-A, -P, -R, -p). See [user_attr\(4\)](#) for a list of valid *keys*. Values for these keys are usually found in man pages or other sources related to those keys. For example, see [project\(4\)](#) for guidance on values for the `project` key. Use the command [ppriv\(1\)](#) with the -v and -l options for a list of values for the keys `defaultpriv` and `limitpriv`.

The keyword `type` can be specified with the value `role` or the value `normal`. When using the value `role`, the account changes from a normal user to a role; using the value `normal` keeps the account a normal user.

As a `role` account, no roles (-R or *roles=value*) can be present.

-l *new_logname*

Specify the new login name for the user. See [passwd\(4\)](#) for the requirements for usernames.

-m

Move the user's home directory to the new directory specified with the -d option. If the directory already exists, it must have permissions read/write/execute by *group*, where *group* is the user's primary group.

-o

This option allows the specified UID to be duplicated (non-unique).

-P *profile*

One or more comma-separated rights profiles defined in [prof_attr\(4\)](#). This replaces any existing profile setting in [user_attr\(4\)](#). If an empty profile list is specified, the existing setting is removed.

-R *role*

One or more comma-separated roles (see [roleadd\(1M\)](#)). This replaces any existing role setting. If no role list is specified, the existing setting is removed.

-s *shell*

Specify the full pathname of the program that is used as the user's shell on login. The value of *shell* must be a valid executable file.

-u *uid*

Specify a new UID for the user. It must be a non-negative decimal integer less than MAXUID as defined in `<param.h>`. The UID associated with the user's home directory is not modified with this option; a user will not have access to their home directory until the UID is

manually reassigned using [chown\(1\)](#).

Operands The following operands are supported:

login

An existing login name to be modified.

Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Assigning Privileges to a User

The following command adds the privilege that affects high resolution times to a user's initial, inheritable set of privileges.

```
# usermod -K defaultpriv=basic,proc_clock_highres jdoe
```

This command results in the following entry in `user_attr`:

```
jdoe::::type=normal;defaultpriv=basic,proc_clock_highres
```

EXAMPLE 2 Removing a Privilege from a User's Limit Set

The following command removes the privilege that allows the specified user to create hard links to directories and to unlink directories.

```
# usermod -K limitpriv=all,!sys_linkdir jdoe
```

This command results in the following entry in `user_attr`:

```
jdoe::::type=normal;defaultpriv=basic,limitpriv=all,!sys_linkdir
```

EXAMPLE 3 Removing a Privilege from a User's Basic Set

The following command removes the privilege that allows the specified user to examine processes outside the user's session.

```
# usermod -K defaultpriv=basic,!proc_session jdoe
```

This command results in the following entry in `user_attr`:

```
jdoe::::type=normal;defaultpriv=basic,!proc_session;limitpriv=all
```

EXAMPLE 4 Assigning a Role to a User

The following command assigns a role to a user. The role must have been created prior to this command, either through use of the Solaris Management Console GUI or through [roleadd\(1M\)](#).

```
# usermod -R mailadm jdoe
```

This command results in the following entry in `user_attr`:

```
jdoe::::type=normal;roles=mailadm;defaultpriv=basic;limitpriv=all
```

EXAMPLE 5 Removing All Profiles from a User

The following command removes all profiles that were granted to a user directly. The user will still have any rights profiles that are granted by means of the `PROFS_GRANTED` key in `policy.conf(4)`.

```
# usermod -P "" jdoe
```

Exit Status In case of an error, `usermod` prints an error message and exits with one of the following values:

- 2
The command syntax was invalid. A usage message for the `usermod` command is displayed.
- 3
An invalid argument was provided to an option.
- 4
The *uid* given with the `-u` option is already in use.
- 5
The password files contain an error. `pwconv(1M)` can be used to correct possible errors. See `passwd(4)`.
- 6
The login to be modified does not exist, the *group* does not exist, or the login shell does not exist.
- 8
The login to be modified is in use.
- 9
The *new_logname* is already in use.
- 10
Cannot update the `/etc/group` or `/etc/user_attr` file. Other update requests will be implemented.
- 11
Insufficient space to move the home directory (`-m` option). Other update requests will be implemented.
- 12
Unable to complete the move of the home directory to the new home directory.

Files

- `/etc/group`
system file containing group definitions
- `/etc/datemsk`
system file of date formats
- `/etc/passwd`
system password file

/etc/shadow

system file containing users' encrypted passwords and related information

/etc/user_attr

system file containing additional user and role attributes

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability | SUNWcsu |
| Interface Stability | Committed |

See Also [chown\(1\)](#), [passwd\(1\)](#), [users\(1B\)](#), [groupadd\(1M\)](#), [groupdel\(1M\)](#), [groupmod\(1M\)](#), [logins\(1M\)](#), [pwconv\(1M\)](#), [roleadd\(1M\)](#), [roledel\(1M\)](#), [rolemod\(1M\)](#), [useradd\(1M\)](#), [userdel\(1M\)](#), [getdate\(3C\)](#), [auth_attr\(4\)](#), [passwd\(4\)](#), [policy.conf\(4\)](#), [prof_attr\(4\)](#), [user_attr\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Notes The usermod utility modifies passwd definitions only in the local /etc/passwd and /etc/shadow files. If a network name service such as NIS is being used to supplement the local files with additional entries, usermod cannot change information supplied by the network nameservice. However usermod will verify the uniqueness of user name and user ID against the external name service.

The usermod utility uses the /etc/datemsk file, available with SUNWaccr, for date formatting.

Name utmpd – utmpx monitoring daemon

Synopsis utmpd [-debug]

Description The utmpd daemon monitors the `/var/adm/utmpx` file. See [utmpx\(4\)](#) (and [utmp\(4\)](#) for historical information).

utmpd receives requests from [pututxline\(3C\)](#) by way of a named pipe. It maintains a table of processes and uses [poll\(2\)](#) on `/proc` files to detect process termination. When utmpd detects that a process has terminated, it checks that the process has removed its utmpx entry from `/var/adm/utmpx`. If the process' utmpx entry has not been removed, utmpd removes the entry. By periodically scanning the `/var/adm/utmpx` file, utmpd also monitors processes that are not in its table.

Options -debug
Run in debug mode, leaving the process connected to the controlling terminal. Write debugging information to standard output.

Exit Status The following exit values are returned:

0
Successful completion.

>0
An error occurred.

Files `/etc/default/utmpd`

You can set default values for the flags listed below. For example: `SCAN_PERIOD=600`

`SCAN_PERIOD`

The number of seconds that utmpd sleeps between checks of `/proc` to see if monitored processes are still alive. The default is 300.

`MAX_FDS`

The maximum number of processes that utmpd attempts to monitor. The default value is 4096.

`WTMPX_UPDATE_FREQ`

The number of seconds that utmpd sleeps between read accesses of the `wtmpx` file. The `wtmpx` file's last access time is used by [init\(1M\)](#) on reboot to determine when the operating system became unavailable. The default is 60.

`/var/adm/utmpx`

File containing user and accounting information for commands such as [who\(1\)](#), [write\(1\)](#), and [login\(1\)](#).

`/proc`

Directory containing files for processes whose utmpx entries are being monitored.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability | SUNWcsu |

See Also [svcs\(1\)](#), [init\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [poll\(2\)](#), [pututxline\(3C\)](#), [proc\(4\)](#), [utmp\(4\)](#), [utmpx\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

Notes If the filesystem holding `/var/adm/wtmpx` is mounted with options which inhibit or defer access time updates, an unknown amount of error will be introduced into the `utmp` `DOWN_TIME` record's timestamp in the event of an uncontrolled shutdown (for example, a crash or loss of power). Controlled shutdowns will update the modify time of `/var/adm/wtmpx`, which will be used on the next boot to determine when the previous shutdown occurred, regardless of access time deferral or inhibition.

The `utmpd` service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/utmp:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

Name uuccheck – check the uucp directories and permissions file

Synopsis /usr/lib/uucp/uuccheck [-v] [-x *debug-level*]

Description uuccheck checks for the presence of the uucp system required files and directories. uuccheck also does error checking of the Permissions file (/etc/uucp/Permissions).

uuccheck is executed during package installation. uuccheck can only be used by the super-user or uucp.

Options The following options are supported:

- v Give a detailed (verbose) explanation of how the uucp programs will interpret the Permissions file.
- x *debug-level* Produce debugging output on the standard output. *debug-level* is a number from 0 to 9. Higher numbers give more detailed debugging information.

Files /etc/uucp/Devices
 /etc/uucp/Limits
 /etc/uucp/Permissions
 /etc/uucp/Systems
 /var/spool/locks/*
 /var/spool/uucp/*
 /var/spool/uucppublic/*

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability | SUNWbnuu |

See Also [uucp\(1C\)](#), [uustat\(1C\)](#), [uux\(1C\)](#), [uucico\(1M\)](#), [uusched\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Bugs The program does not check file/directory modes or some errors in the Permissions file such as duplicate login or machine name.

Name uucico – file transport program for the uucp system

Synopsis /usr/lib/uucp/uucico [-f] [-c *type*] [-d *spool-directory*]
[-i *interface*] [-r *role-number*] [-s *system-name*]
[-x *debug-level*]

Description uucico is the file transport program for uucp work file transfers.

Options The following options are supported:

- f This option is used to "force execution" of uucico by ignoring the limit on the maximum number of uucicos defined in the /etc/uucp/Limits file.
- c *type* The first field in the Devices file is the "Type" field. The -c option forces uucico to only use entries in the "Type" field that match the user specified type. The specified type is usually the name of a local area network.
- d *spool-directory* This option specifies the directory *spool-directory* that contains the uucp work files to be transferred. The default spool directory is /var/spool/uucp.
- i *interface* This option defines the *interface* used with uucico. The interface only affects slave mode. Known interfaces are UNIX (default), TLI (basic Transport Layer Interface), and TLIS (Transport Layer Interface with Streams modules, read/write).
- r *role-number* The *role-number* 1 is used for master mode. *role-number* 0 is used for slave mode (default). When uucico is started by a program or cron, *role-number* 1 should be used for master mode.
- s *system-name* The -s option defines the remote system (*system-name*) that uucico will try to contact. It is required when the role is master; *system-name* must be defined in the Systems file.
- x *debug-level* Both uux and uucp queue jobs that will be transferred by uucico. These jobs are normally started by the uusched scheduler, for debugging purposes, and can be started manually. For example, the shell Uutry starts uucico with debugging turned on. The *debug-level* is a number between 0 and 9. Higher numbers give more detailed debugging information.

Files /etc/uucp/Devconfig
/etc/uucp/Devices
/etc/uucp/Limits
/etc/uucp/Permissions
/etc/uucp/Sysfiles
/etc/uucp/Systems
/var/spool/locks/*
/var/spool/uucp/*
/var/spool/uucppublic/*

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability | SUNWbnuu |

See Also [uucp\(1C\)](#), [uustat\(1C\)](#), [uux\(1C\)](#), [Uutry\(1M\)](#), [cron\(1M\)](#), [usched\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name uucleanup – uucp spool directory clean-up

Synopsis /usr/lib/uucp/uucleanup [-Ctime] [-Dtime] [-mstring]
[-otime] [-ssystem] [-Wtime] [-xdebug-level] [-Xtime]

Description uucleanup will scan the spool directories for old files and take appropriate action to remove them in a useful way:

- Inform the requester of send/receive requests for systems that can not be reached.
- Return undeliverable mail to the sender.
- Deliver rnews files addressed to the local system.
- Remove all other files.

In addition, there is a provision to warn users of requests that have been waiting for a given number of days (default 1 day). Note: uucleanup will process as if all option times were specified to the default values unless time is specifically set.

This program is typically started by the shell uudemond.cleanup, which should be started by cron(1M).

| | | |
|----------------|---------------|--|
| Options | -Ctime | Remove any C. files greater or equal to time days old and send appropriate information to the requester (default 7 days). |
| | -Dtime | Remove any D. files greater or equal to time days old, make an attempt to deliver mail messages, and execute rnews when appropriate (default 7 days). |
| | -mstring | Include string in the warning message generated by the -W option. The default line is "See your local administrator to locate the problem". |
| | -otime | Delete other files whose age is more than time days (default 2 days). |
| | -ssystem | Execute for system spool directory only. |
| | -Wtime | Any C. files equal to time days old will cause a mail message to be sent to the requester warning about the delay in contacting the remote. The message includes the JOBID, and in the case of mail, the mail message. The administrator may include a message line telling whom to call to check the problem (-m option) (default 1 day). |
| | -xdebug-level | Produce debugging output on standard output. debug-level is a single digit between 0 and 9; higher numbers give more detailed debugging information. (This option may not be available on all systems.) |
| | -Xtime | Any X. files greater or equal to time days old will be removed. The D. files are probably not present (if they were, the X. could get executed). But if there are D. files, they will be taken care of by D. processing (default 2 days). |

Files /usr/lib/uucp directory with commands used by uucleanup internally
/var/spool/uucp spool directory

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability | SUNWbnuu |

See Also [uucp\(1C\)](#), [uux\(1C\)](#), [cron\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name uusched – uucp file transport program scheduler

Synopsis /usr/lib/uucp/uusched [-u *debug-level*] [-x *debug-level*]

Description uusched is the **uucp(1C)** file transport scheduler. It is usually started by the daemon *uudemon.hour* that is started by **cron(1M)** from an entry in user uucp's crontab file:

```
11,41 * * * * /etc/uucp/uucp/uudemon.hour
```

Options The options are for debugging purposes only. *debug-level* is a number between 0 and 9. Higher numbers give more detailed debugging information:

The following options are supported:

-u *debug-level* Passes the -u *debug-level* option **uucico(1M)** as -x *debug-level*.

-x *debug-level* Outputs debugging messages from uusched.

Files /etc/uucp/Devices

/etc/uucp/Permissions

/etc/uucp/Systems

/var/spool/locks/*

/var/spool/uucp/*

/var/spool/uucppublic/*

Attributes See **attributes(5)** for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability | SUNWbnuu |

See Also **uucp(1C)**, **uustat(1C)**, **uux(1C)**, **cron(1M)**, **uucico(1M)**, **attributes(5)**

Name Uutry, uutry – attempt to contact remote system with debugging on

Synopsis /usr/lib/uucp/Uutry [-r] [-c *type*] [-x *debug-level*] *system-name*

Description Uutry is a shell script that is used to invoke [uucico\(1M\)](#) to call a remote site. Debugging is initially turned on and is set to the default value of 5. The debugging output is put in file */tmp/system-name*.

Options The following options are supported:

- r This option overrides the retry time that is set in file */var/uucp/.Status/system-name*.
- c *type* The first field in the Devices file is the "Type" field. The -c option forces uucico to use only entries in the "Type" field that match the user-specified type. The specified type is usually the name of a local area network.
- x *debug-level* *debug-level* is a number from 0 to 9. Higher numbers give more detailed debugging information.

Files /etc/uucp/Devices
 /etc/uucp/Limits
 /etc/uucp/Permissions
 /etc/uucp/Systems
 /tmp/*system-name*
 /var/spool/locks/*
 /var/spool/uucp/*
 /var/spool/uucppublic/*

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability | SUNWbnuu |

See Also [uucp\(1C\)](#), [uux\(1C\)](#), [uucico\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name uuxqt – execute remote command requests

Synopsis /usr/lib/uucp/uuxqt [-s *system*] [-x *debug-level*]

Description uuxqt is the program that executes remote job requests from remote systems generated by the use of the uux command. (mail uses uux for remote mail requests). uuxqt searches the spool directories looking for execution requests. For each request, uuxqt checks to see if all the required data files are available, accessible, and the requested commands are permitted for the requesting system. The Permissions file is used to validate file accessibility and command execution permission.

There are two environment variables that are set before the uuxqt command is executed:

- UU_MACHINE is the machine that sent the job (the previous one).
- UU_USER is the user that sent the job.

These can be used in writing commands that remote systems can execute to provide information, auditing, or restrictions.

Options The following options are supported:

- s *system* Specifies the remote *system* name.
- x *debug-level* *debug-level* is a number from 0 to 9. Higher numbers give more detailed debugging information.

Files /etc/uucp/Limits
 /etc/uucp/Permissions
 /var/spool/locks/*
 /var/spool/uucp/*

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|----------------|-----------------|
| Availability | SUNWbnuu |

See Also [mail\(1\)](#), [uucp\(1C\)](#), [uustat\(1C\)](#), [uux\(1C\)](#), [uucico\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

Name vdiskadm – create and manage virtual disks

Synopsis vdiskadm create -s *size* [-t *type[:opt]*],[*opt*]
 [-c *comment*] *vdname*

vdiskadm destroy [-r] *vdname|snapshot*

vdiskadm snapshot *vdname@snapname*

vdiskadm rollback [-r] *snapshot*

vdiskadm clone [-c *comment*] *vdname|snapshot clone_vdname*

vdiskadm move *vdname dir*

vdiskadm rename *vdname|snapshot vdname|snapshot*

vdiskadm list [-fp]*vdname*

vdiskadm verify *vdname*

vdiskadm prop-get [-l] -p *property vdname*

vdiskadm prop-set -p *property=value vdname*

vdiskadm prop-add -p *property=value vdname*

vdiskadm prop-del -p *property vdname*

vdiskadm import [-fnpqm] [-x *type*] -d *file|zvol|dsk*
 [-t *type[:opt]*] *vdname*

vdiskadm export -x *type[:opt]* -d *file|zvol|dsk vdname*

vdiskadm convert [-t *type[:opt]*] *vdname*

vdiskadm translate [-i *type[:opt]*] -I *input_file* -x *type[:opt]*
 -d *output_file*

vdiskadm help [*command*]

Description The vdiskadm command manages virtual disks within dom0. In the SYNOPSIS above, *vdname* is the pathname of the virtual disk; it has a maximum length of MAXPATHLEN (1024 bytes).

vdiskadm is implemented as a set of subcommands, many with their own options and operands. These subcommands are described under “Subcommands,” below.

The following subsections describe concepts related to virtual disks.

Snapshots A snapshot is a read-only copy of a virtual disk. Snapshots can be created extremely quickly and initially consume little space. As data within the active virtual disk changes, the snapshot consumes more data than would otherwise be shared with the active virtual disk.

Clones A clone is a writable copy of a virtual disk. The default type of clone is a merged (that is, coalesced) copy of the original virtual disk. An example of a merged clone occurs when a virtual disk is comprised of several snapshots; a subsequent clone operation results in a new

virtual disk containing no snapshots. A clone will be of the same type as the original virtual disk (that is, `vmdk:fixed`). When a merged clone is created there is no linkage back to the original virtual disk or to any of its snapshots. This lack of linkage allows the merged clone to be moved to another physical machine.

Numeric Values The values of numeric properties can be specified using human-readable suffixes, such as k, KB, M, Gb, and so forth, up to Z for zettabyte). The following are all valid (and equal) specifications:

`1536M 1.5g 1.50GB`

Types of Virtual Disks The following types and options of virtual disks are supported:

- `vmdk:fixed`
- `vmdk:sparse`
- `vdi:fixed`
- `vdi:sparse`
- `vhd:fixed`
- `vhd:sparse`
- `raw:fixed`

where `vmdk` is the native VMware format, `vdi` is the native VirtualBox format, `vhd` is the native Microsoft format, and `raw` describes a file that looks like a raw disk. A `raw` disk is always in `fixed` format so that option can be explicitly set or implicitly understood.

If the type is not specified, the default value is `vmdk`. If the option is not specified, the default value is `fixed` for type `raw` and `sparse` for types `vmdk`, `vdi`, and `vhd`.

Native and User-defined Properties Properties are divided into two types, native and user defined. Native properties either export internal statistics or control `vdiskadm` behavior. In addition, native properties are either editable or read-only. User-defined properties are arbitrary strings that have no effect on `vdiskadm` behavior. You can use them to annotate virtual disks in a way that is meaningful in your environment. User-defined property names must contain a colon (`:`) character, to distinguish them from native properties.

Properties are associated only with the virtual disk and not with individual snapshots.

Every virtual disk has a set of native properties that export statistics about the virtual disk, as well as control various behaviors.

The following are the native properties for a virtual disk:

`cdrom`

Boolean property that is true if the virtual disk is a CDROM.

`removable`

Boolean property that is true if the virtual disk is a removable media.

`readonly`

Boolean property that is true if the virtual disk is read-only. This property is read-only.

sectors

Numeric property containing the number of disk sectors in the given virtual disk. This property is read-only.

name

String property that is the name of the virtual disk. This property is read-only.

max-size

Numeric property containing the maximum size of the virtual disk in bytes. This property is read-only.

effective-size

Numeric property containing the effective size of the virtual disk, in bytes. The effective size includes the size of the data file and all snapshots. The effective size can exceed the maximum size. This property is read-only.

creation-time

String property containing the date and time that the virtual disk was created. This property is read-only.

creation-time-epoch

Numeric property describing the creation-time property in seconds since the epoch (seconds since 00:00:00 UTC, Jan. 1, 1970). This property is read-only.

modification-time

String property containing the date and time of last modification to virtual disk. This property is read-only.

modification-time-epoch

Numeric property describing the modification-time property in seconds since the epoch (seconds since 00:00:00 UTC, Jan. 1, 1970). This property is read-only.

description

String property that contains the comment given when the virtual disk was created or cloned. This property is read-only.

type

String property that contains the type of virtual disk: `vmdk`, `vhd`, `vdi`, or `raw`. This property is read-only.

sparse

Boolean property that is true if the virtual disk is in sparse format. This property is read-only.

owner

String property that contains the user name of the owner of the virtual disk. This property is editable.

Sub-commands The `vdiskadm` subcommands and their arguments are described in the following subsections.

```
vdiskadm create vdiskadm create -s size [-t type[:opt],[opt]]
                [-c comment] vdname
```

Creates a new virtual disk of the specified size and at the location specified by *vdname*. If *vdname* includes a path to the virtual disk, the directories that follow from that path will be created during creation of the virtual disk. This subcommand has the options listed below.

-t *type[:opt],[opt]*

Specifies the type of virtual disk to be created. The default type is `vmdk`. For `vmdk` and `vdi` types the default option is `sparse`. For type `raw` the default option is `fixed`.

-c *comment*

Comment that can be attached to virtual disk.

```
vdiskadm destroy vdiskadm destroy [-r] vdname|snapshot
```

Destroys the specified virtual disk or snapshot. By default, the destroy operation fails if the specified virtual disk contains snapshots. This subcommand has the option listed below.

-r

Recursively destroys the virtual disk, including all snapshots associated with the virtual disk.

```
vdiskadm snapshot vdiskadm snapshot vdname@snapname
```

Creates a snapshot of the virtual disk with the specified *snapname*. This subcommand has no options.

```
vdiskadm rollback vdiskadm rollback [-r] snapshot
```

Roll back the virtual disk to a previous snapshot. When a virtual disk is rolled back, all data that has changed since the snapshot is discarded, and the virtual disk reverts to the state at the time of the snapshot. By default, the command refuses to roll back to a snapshot other than the most recent one. In order to roll back further, all intermediate snapshots must be destroyed by specifying the `-r` option. This subcommand has the option listed below.

-r

Recursively destroy any snapshots more recent than the one specified.

```
vdiskadm clone vdiskadm [-c comment] vdname|snapshot clone_vdname
```

Creates a clone of the specified snapshot or virtual disk. The clone is created with the type and option and the size of the virtual disk being cloned. If *clone_vdname* includes a path the directories that flow from that path will be created during creation of the cloned virtual disk. By default, a merged clone image is created. This subcommand has the option listed below.

-c *comment*

Comment that can be attached to cloned virtual disk.

`vdiskadm move` `vdiskadm move vdname dir`

Moves a specified virtual disk into the specified directory. The virtual disk maintains the same name. The new directory must exist. This subcommand has no options.

`vdiskadm rename` `vdiskadm rename vdname|snapshot vname|snapshot`

Renames a virtual disk or snapshot. This subcommand has no options.

`vdiskadm list` `vdiskadm list [-fp]vdname`

Lists a specified virtual disk and its snapshots. This subcommand has the options listed below.

-f

Gives a list of all files associated with the virtual disk. This list includes the store file and the extents.

-p

Lists the files in an easily parsable format, prefixing the files with a label of `file:`, `snapshot:`, or `store`.

`vdiskadm verify` `vdiskadm verify vdname`

Returns an error if the virtual disk cannot be recognized or opened by Solaris xVM. This subcommand has no options.

`vdiskadm prop-get` `vdiskadm prop-get [-l] -p property vname`

Returns the value of the property for the specified virtual disk. A property value of `all` displays all native and user-defined properties for the virtual disk. This subcommand has the options listed below.

-l

Gives additional property information, such as the writeable status of property.

-p *property*

Specifies the property being queried and displays the value of the property. For the property `all`, the name of the property, a colon, and a space are displayed before the value of the property.

`vdiskadm prop-set` `vdiskadm prop-set -p property=value vname`

Sets the value of the specified property for the specified virtual disk. *property* can be a native or a user-defined property, but must be writable. Can be used to change the value of a property added with the `prop-add` subcommand. This subcommand has the option listed below.

-p *property=value*

Specifies the property being set.

`vdiskadm prop-add vdiskadm -p property=value vdname`

Adds the user-defined property with the specified value to the specified virtual disk. Returns an error if the property already exists. The user-defined property name must contain a colon character (:). This subcommand has the option listed below.

`-p property=value`
Specifies the property being added.

`vdiskadm prop-del vdiskadm prop-del -p property vdname`

Deletes a user-defined property from the specified virtual disk. This subcommand has the option listed below.

`-p property`
Specifies the property being deleted.

`vdiskadm import vdiskadm import [-fnpqm] [-x type] -d file|zvol|dsk \
[-t type[:opt]] vdname`

Creates a new virtual disk using data from a file or block device. The file may be in `vdi`, `vhd`, `vmdk`, or `raw` format. A block device is always assumed to be in `raw` format. This subcommand has the following options.

`-f`
Returns a list of files that will be used in the import process.

`-n`
Show output from import without actually running the import.

`-p`
Displays files in an easily parsable format.

`-q`
Run in quiet mode giving no output.

`-m`
Move the imported file to virtual disk without copying the data.

`-x type`
Specifies the type of virtual disk data being imported. If `vdiskadm` is unable to detect the imported file type, `-x` must be specified.

`-d file|zvol|dsk`
File or block device containing data to be imported.

`-t type[:opt]`
Specifies the type of virtual disk to be created on import. The default type is `vmdk`. For `vmdk`, `vdi`, and `vhd` types the default `opt` is `sparse`. For type `raw` the default `opt` is `fixed`.

```
vdiskadm export vdiskadm export -x type[:opt] -d file|zvol|dsk vname
```

Exports data from a virtual disk to a file or block device. This subcommand has the following options.

- x *type[:opt]*
Specifies the type of virtual disk data being exported.
- d *file|zvol|dsk*
File or block device receiving data being exported.

```
vdiskadm convert vdiskadm convert [-t type[:opt]] vname
```

Converts a virtual disk into a different type virtual disk. This subcommand has the following option.

- t *type[:opt]*
Specifies the type of virtual disk to be created upon conversion. The default type is vmdk. For vmdk, vdi, and vhd types the default *opt* is sparse. For type raw the default *opt* is fixed.

```
vdiskadm translate vdiskadm translate [-i type[:opt]] -I input_file \  
-x type[:opt] -d output_file
```

Translate data from one virtual disk data type to another without creating a virtual disk. This subcommand has the following options.

- i *type[:opt]*
Specifies the input type of virtual disk data being translated. If `vdiskadm` is unable to detect the input file type, `-i` must be specified.
- I *input_file*
File or block device containing data being translated.
- x *type[:opt]*
Specifies the output type of virtual disk data being translated. For vmdk, vdi, and vhd types the default *opt* is sparse. For type raw the default *opt* is fixed.
- d *output_file*
File or block device receiving data being translated. *output_file* must not exist. The file will be created during translation.

```
vdiskadm help vdiskadm help [command]
```

Displays a general or command-specific help message. This subcommand has only the command name optional argument.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Creating a vmdk Sparse File

The following command creates a virtual disk named `disk1` of size 8 GB in the directory `/guests/disks`.

```
# vdiskadm create -s 8g -t vmdk:sparse /guests/disks/disk1
```

EXAMPLE 2 Creating a Snapshot

The following command creates a snapshot of the virtual disk located at `/guests/disks/disk1`. The snapshot is named `install`.

```
# vdiskadm snapshot /guests/disks/disk1@install
```

EXAMPLE 3 Creating and Destroying Snapshots

The following commands create two snapshots, named `install` and `bfu`, of the virtual disk located at `/guests/disks/disk1`. The third command destroys the newly created snapshot `install`.

```
# vdiskadm snapshot /guests/disks/disk1@install
# vdiskadm snapshot /guests/disks/disk1@bfu
# vdiskadm destroy /guests/disks/disk1@install
```

EXAMPLE 4 Rolling Back a Virtual Disk

The following command reverts the contents of the virtual disk to the snapshot named `install`, deleting all intermediate snapshots.

```
# vdiskadm rollback -r /guests/disks/disk1@install
```

EXAMPLE 5 Listing a Virtual Disk and Snapshots

The following command lists all of the images associated with the virtual disk `/guests/disks/disk1`.

```
# vdiskadm list /guests/disks/disk1
disk1@install
disk1@bfu
disk1
```

EXAMPLE 6 Creating a Clone

The following command creates a new virtual disk that is a coalesced copy of the virtual disk `/guests/disks/disk1`. The clone is created in the same format (that is, `vmrk:sparse`) as the original virtual disk.

```
# vdiskadm clone /guests/disks/disk1 /guests/clone/clone_disk1
```

EXAMPLE 7 Adding a User-defined Property

The following command adds a user-defined property to the virtual disk and assigns it the specified value. This property name was chosen to represent the source and requirements of this virtual disk data using the required colon to delineate the fields.

EXAMPLE 7 Adding a User-defined Property *(Continued)*

```
# vdiskadm prop-add -p com.sun:required-nic=2 /guests/disks/disk1
```

EXAMPLE 8 Importing Existing vmdk Format File

The following command takes an existing vmdk format file and imports it to a virtual disk.

```
# vdiskadm import -d /downloads/appliance.vmdk /guests/import/disk1
```

EXAMPLE 9 Importing vmdk File and Converting to vhd

The following command takes an existing vmdk format file and, upon import, converts it to a vhd-type virtual disk.

```
# vdiskadm import -d /downloads/appliance.vmdk -t vhd \  
/guests/import/disk1
```

EXAMPLE 10 Importing Data from zvol

The following command imports virtual disk data from a zvol and, upon import, converts it to a vmdk:fixed type virtual disk.

```
# vdiskadm import -d /dev/zvol/dsk/pool1/disk1 -t vmdk:fixed \  
/guests/import/disk1
```

EXAMPLE 11 Exporting Data to Block Device

The following command takes an existing virtual disk and, upon export, converts it to a disk slice, of raw type.

```
# vdiskadm export -d /dev/dsk/c0t1d0s3 -x raw /guests/disks/disk1
```

EXAMPLE 12 Converting Virtual Disk Type

The following command takes an existing virtual disk and converts it (in place) to a different format type.

```
# vdiskadm convert -t vdi:fixed /guests/disks/disk1
```

EXAMPLE 13 Translating Data from One Type to Another

The following command translates data from a virtual disk format file to raw data written to a zvol without creating a virtual disk.

```
# vdiskadm translate -I /downloads/appliance.vmdk -x raw \  
-d /dev/zvol/dsk/pool1/disk1
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability | SUNWvdisk |
| Interface Stability | Uncommitted |

See Also [virsh\(1M\)](#), [virt-install\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [xVM\(5\)](#)

Name virsh – management user interface for guest domains

Synopsis `virsh subcommand [arguments]`

Description The `virsh` command provides the main interface for command and control of both xVM and guest domains. Users should use `virsh` wherever possible, as it provides a generic and stable interface to controlling virtualized operating systems. Some xVM operations are not yet implemented by `virsh`. In those cases, the legacy utility `xm(1M)` can be used for detailed control.

`virsh` can be used to administer both transient and managed guests. A managed guest has a persistent configuration which is maintained across multiple invocations of the guest. The configuration of a transient guest is discarded when the guest shuts down.

With minor exceptions, the basic form of a `virsh` command is:

```
# virsh subcommand domain-id | name | uuid [options]
```

The components of a `virsh` command are described as follows:

subcommand

One of the subcommands described below.

domain-id | name | uuid

An identifier for a specific domain.

options

A subcommand-specific option.

Exceptions to command form described above occur when a subcommand acts on all domains, the entire machine, or directly on the Solaris xVM hypervisor.

Most `virsh` subcommands require root privileges or that you assume the Primary Administrator role.

Many `virsh` commands act asynchronously, so that the system prompt returns immediately while activity proceeds in the background. Many operations on domains, such as `create` and `shutdown`, can take considerable time (30 seconds or more) to reach completion. Use the `list` subcommand to determine whether such an operation is complete.

Subcommands The `virsh` subcommands are categorized under the rubrics “generic”, “domain”, and “device” and are described in the following subsections of those names.

Generic Subcommands `capabilities`

Display an XML document describing the capabilities of the hypervisor to which we are currently connected. This includes a section on the host capabilities in terms of CPU features, and a description for each kind of guest which can be virtualized. For a more complete description, see the page under `libvirt.org` entitled “XML Format”. The XML also shows the NUMA topology information, if available.

`connect URI [- - readonly]`

Connect to the hypervisor. The URI parameter, if provided, specifies how to connect to the hypervisor. Without this parameter, the connection will be to the local hypervisor. The web page entitled “Connection URIs”, under `libvirt.org`, lists the possible values, but not all types are supported by all systems.

With the `--readonly` option, the connection is read-only.

`help [subcommand]`

With no argument, `help` displays a brief synopsis of all subcommands. With a specified subcommand, displays a brief description of that subcommand.

`nodeinfo`

Returns basic information about a node, such as the number and type of CPUs, and the size of physical memory.

`quit`

Quit this interactive terminal.

`version`

Display version information about this instance of `virsh`.

Domain
Subcommands

The following subcommands manipulate domains directly. Most take a domain identifier as their first argument. In the following description, the notation *domain* can be either a symbolic domain name, a numeric domain id, or a UUID, any of which uniquely identify a domain.

`console domain [- - verbose]`

Connect the virtual serial console for the guest. This subcommand takes the following option:

`--verbose`

Displays verbose connection and disconnection messages.

`create file`

Create (and start) a domain based on the parameters contained in the XML file *file*, where *file* is an absolute pathname. Such a file can be created using `virsh dumpxml` subcommand. Directly editing XML configuration is not recommended. Use this subcommand to create a transient guest. Use `define` (below) to create a managed guest.

`define file [- - relative-path path]`

Define (but do not start) a domain from the specified XML file. If the disk paths in the XML file contain relative paths, the domain will be created with those paths relative to *path*, if provided.

`destroy domain`

Immediately terminate a domain. This is the equivalent of abruptly terminating power to a machine. In most cases, you should use the `shutdown` subcommand instead.

`domid` *domain_name*

Converts a domain name to a numeric domain ID.

`dominfo` *domain*

Returns basic information about a domain. In `dominfo` output, note that the OS Type field displays the type of virtualization--`hvm` for a Hardware-assisted Virtual Machine (HVM), `linux` for a paravirtualized domain--not the guest OS installed in a domain.

Note that, when the domain is running, `dominfo` displays dynamic data. Memory values include any hypervisor overhead.

`domname` *domain_id*

Converts a numeric domain id to a domain name.

`domstate` *domain*

Returns the state of a running domain. See the description of the `list` subcommand.

`domuuid` *domain*

Convert the specified domain name or ID to a domain UUID.

`dump` *domain file*

Dump the core of the domain specified by *domain* to the file specified by *file* for analysis.

`dumpxml` *domain* [`--relative-path` *path*]

Output the configuration of the given domain in XML format. Captured in a file, this data can be used as the argument to a subsequent `create` subcommand.

By default, all paths in the XML will be absolute. Adding the `--relative-path` option will make all disk paths relative to *path*.

`edit`

Starts the editor specified by the value of `$EDITOR` and, in this editor, opens the result of the command `virsh dumpxml`. The subcommand then redefines the domain with the edited XML. Editing XML is *not* recommended.

`hostname`

Returns the hostname of the control domain.

`list` [*domain...*]

Displays information about one or more domains. If no domains are specified, displays information about all defined domains. This subcommand takes the following options:

- `--active` Display only running domains.
- `--inactive` Display only non-running domains.
- `--all` Display both running and non-running domains.

By default, all domains are displayed.

An example of `list` output is as follows:

% virsh list

| Id | Name | State |
|-------|-------------|----------|
| ----- | | |
| 0 | Domain-0 | running |
| 2 | fedora | paused |
| - | solaris-hvm | shut off |

Id is the numeric id for a domain; Name is the symbolic name. State is the run state and can be one of the following:

running

The domain is currently running on a CPU.

idle

The domain is not currently running on any CPU. This can be because the domain is waiting on I/O (a traditional wait state) or has gone to sleep because of inactivity.

paused

The domain has been paused, usually as a result of the administrator running `virsh suspend`. When in a paused state the domain still consumes allocated resources, such as memory, but is not eligible for scheduling by the xVM hypervisor.

in shutdown

The domain is in process of shutting down, but has not completely shutdown or crashed.

shut off

The domain is down.

crashed

The domain has crashed as a result of a sudden event. Normally, this state can occur only if the domain has been configured not to restart following a crash.

`migrate --live | --dryrun domain dest_uri [migrate_uri]`

Migrate the *domain* to the host specified by *dest_uri*. The optional *migrate_uri* is a separate URI that specifies a transport method between the host and destination.

--live

Attempt a live migration.

--dryrun

Use this option to test whether a domain can be migrated successfully to a remote host. This option works also on a non-running domain. Note that the checks are not necessarily complete: migration may still fail to work properly even if a dry-run migration passes.

reboot *domain*

Reboot a domain. The effect of this command is identical to the effect of running `init 6`. The command returns immediately, however, if successful, the entire reboot process might take a minute or more. There is no guarantee that the subcommand will succeed and it might take an unexpected length of time, depending on what services in the domain must be shutdown.

restore *state-file*

Restores a domain from a `virsh save state file`. See the description of the `save` subcommand.

resume *domain*

Moves a domain out of the paused state, making the domain eligible for scheduling by the underlying hypervisor.

save *domain state-file*

Saves a running domain to a file *state-file*, so that it can later be restored, using the `restore` subcommand. Once saved, the domain will no longer be running on the system, thus the memory allocated for the domain will be free for the use of other domains.

Note that network connections present before the save operation might be severed, as TCP timeouts might have expired.

schedinfo *domain*

Show or set the scheduling parameters for the specified domain name, ID or UUID. `schedinfo` works only on running domains. This subcommand takes the following options:

- `--weight number` weight for credit scheduler
- `--cap number` cap for credit scheduler
- `--set` Not implemented.

setmaxmem *domain kilobytes*

Change the maximum memory allocation limit in the specified guest domain. The *kilobytes* parameter is the maximum memory limit in kilobytes. If this subcommand is applied to a running domain, the specified value applies only after the domain has been rebooted.

setmem *domain kilobytes*

Change the current memory allocation in the specified guest domain. The *kilobytes* parameter is the number of kilobytes of memory. Note that only paravirtualized domains support changing this value by means of the balloon driver, and it cannot exceed the maximum memory limit for the domain. A Solaris paravirtualized domain can never exceed the memory value set at boot time.

setvcpus *domain count*

Change the number of virtual CPUs active in the specified guest domain. The *count* parameter is the number of virtual CPUs. Only paravirtualized domains can dynamically

change this value, and only up to the value that was set at boot time. To change the number of CPUs in a way that persists, you must change the value when the domain is not running.

shutdown *domain*

Coordinates with the domain OS to perform graceful shutdown. The effect of this command is identical to the effect of running `init 5`. There is no guarantee that the subcommand will succeed and it might take an unexpected length of time, depending on what services in the domain must be shutdown.

start *domain*

Start a (previously defined) inactive domain.

suspend *domain*

Suspend a domain. When in this state, a domain still consumes allocated resources, such as memory, but is not eligible for scheduling by the xVM hypervisor.

ttyconsole

Return the pseudo-terminal used by the domain's serial console, if any.

undefine *domain*

Undefine the configuration for the inactive domain which is specified by either its domain name or UUID.

uri

Return the URI of the `libvirt` connection.

vcpuinfo *domain*

Return basic information about the domain virtual CPUs.

vcupin *domain vcpu cpulist*

Pin domain VCPUs to the host physical CPUs. The *domain* parameter is the domain name, ID, or *uuid*. The *vcpu* parameter is the VCPU number. The *cpulist* parameter is a list of host CPU numbers, separated by commas.

This subcommand applies only to running domains.

vncdisplay *domain*

Output the IP address and port number for the VNC display.

Device Subcommands The following subcommands manipulate devices associated with domains. In the following descriptions, *domain* can stand for either a symbolic domain name, a numeric domain id, or a UUID, any of which uniquely identify a domain.

attach-device *domain file*

Attach a device defined by the given XML file (*file*) to the specified domain.

attach-disk *domain source target --driver driver --subdriver subdriver --type type --mode mode*

Attach a new or existing disk device to the domain. A disk device can be a removable media device, such as a CD or DVD drive. *source* and *target* are paths for the files and devices.

driver can be *file*, *tap* or *phy*, depending on the kind of access. *type* can indicate *cdrom* or *floppy* as an alternative to the default, *disk*. *mode* can specify either *readonly* or *shareable*.

Note that in a Solaris Hardware-assisted Virtual Machine (HVM) domU, you must run [init\(1M\)](#) in the domU to unlock a removable-media device (for example, a CD device) before running the `attach-disk` subcommand.

```
attach-interface domain type source --target target --mac mac --script script
--capped-bandwidth bandwidth --vlanid vid
```

Attach a new network interface to the domain. *type* must be *bridge*. *source* indicates the bridge interface. The `--target` option is ignored. `--mac` allows you to specify the MAC address of the network interface. `--script` specifies a path to a script handling a bridge. A script value of `vif-vnic` (the default) will create a VNIC on top of the specified bridge NIC. A script value of `vif-dedicated` allows the guest to directly use the given NIC, which should not be configured in `dom0`. `--capped-bandwidth` sets the bandwidth for this interface. Bandwidth should be specified as an integer with one of the scale suffixes (K, M, or G for Kbps, Mbps, or Gbps, respectively). Bandwidth will be rounded up to 1.2M, if the input number is smaller than that. `--vlanid` sets the VLAN ID for this interface to *vid*.

```
detach-device domain file
```

Detach a device defined by the given XML file (*file*) from the specified domain. This subcommand takes the same type of XML descriptions as the subcommand `attach-device`.

```
detach-disk domain target
```

Detach a disk device from a domain. The target is the device as seen from the domain.

```
detach-interface domain type --mac mac
```

Detach a network interface from a domain. *type* can be either *network*, to indicate a physical network device, or *bridge*, to indicate a bridge to a device. It is recommended you use the `--mac` option to distinguish between the interfaces if more than one is present in the domain.

Examples

EXAMPLE 1 Adding an ISO File to a Solaris Domain as a Virtual Disk

The following command adds an ISO file to a paravirtualized Solaris domain as a virtual disk `/dev/dsk/c0t1d0`.

```
# virsh attach-disk --type cdrom --driver file --mode readonly \
domu-220 /data.iso xvdb
```

EXAMPLE 2 Migrating a Domain, Relying on sshd Configuration

To migrate a domain named `domu` to a machine named `foo` over [ssh\(1\)](#), first create the `ssh` connection:

```
# ssh -N -L 8003:localhost:8002 root@foo
```

EXAMPLE 2 Migrating a Domain, Relying on sshd Configuration *(Continued)*

...then run the `virsh migrate` command:

```
# virsh migrate --live domu xen:/// xenmigr://localhost:8003
```

This example assumes that TCP port forwarding is allowed by `sshd_config(4)`. Note that this example does not require any modification of `xend(1M)` properties.

EXAMPLE 3 Migrating a Domain, Relying on xend Configuration

The following `virsh migrate` command requires the proper setting of the `xend` `xend-relocation-address` and `xend-relocation-hosts-allow` properties, as described in the `xend(1M)` man page.

```
# virsh migrate --live domu xen:/// xenmigr://remotehost
```

EXAMPLE 4 Changing a CD in a Solaris HVM Guest Domain

The following sequence of commands attaches a CD drive to a guest domain.

In the guest domain, eject the CD:

```
solaris-hvm# eject cdrom
```

Then, in the control domain, enter:

```
# virsh attach-disk solaris-hvm --type cdrom --driver file \  
--mode readonly /isos/solaris.iso hdc
```

Finally, in the guest domain, load the CD:

```
solaris-hvm# rmformat
```

EXAMPLE 5 Displaying `dominfo` Output

The following command displays information about domain 0.

```
# virsh dominfo Domain-0
```

```
Id:          0  
Name:        Domain-0  
UUID:        00000000-0000-0000-0000-000000000000  
OS Type:     linux  
State:       running  
CPU(s):      4  
CPU time:    14436.6s  
Max memory:  no limit  
Used memory: 3145728 kB
```


EXAMPLE 5 Displaying domain Output (Continued)

In the preceding output, note that the OS Type, `linux`, indicates a paravirtualized domain.

EXAMPLE 6 Attaching an Interface

The following command attaches a new network interface to a guest domain, connected to the NIC `e1000g0`, with an auto-generated MAC address (that is, the `--mac` option is omitted).

```
# virsh attach-interface pv-domu bridge e1000g0
```

EXAMPLE 7 Attaching a Disk

The following command attaches a disk generated by `vdiskadm(1M)` to a paravirtualized domain.

```
# virsh attach-disk domu-223 /disks/data.vdisk xvdb --driver \
tap --subdriver vdisk
```

Files `/usr/share/lib/xml/rng/libvirt` Relax-NG schemas for the XML formats used by `libvirt` and `virsh`.

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability | SUNWlibvirt |
| Interface Stability | Volatile |

See Also [init\(1M\)](#), [vdiskadm\(1M\)](#), [xend\(1M\)](#), [xentop\(1M\)](#), [xm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [xVM\(5\)](#)

The `ldm(1M)` man page shipped with the LDom software.

The virtualization library (`libvirt`) web site, at the date of this publication, at:

<http://www.libvirt.org>

Authors

- Andrew Puch, `apuch at redhat dot com`
- Daniel Veillard, `veillard at redhat dot com`

The preceding authors credit the `xm` man page authored by:

- Sean Dague, `sean at dague dot net`
- Daniel Stekloff, `dsteklof at us dot ibm dot com`

Notes Terminology differs between [xm\(1M\)](#) and `virsh`. In particular, the `suspend` and `resume` commands have different meanings.

| <code>virsh</code> | <code>xm</code> |
|----------------------|---|
| <code>suspend</code> | <code>pause</code> |
| <code>resume</code> | <code>unpause</code> |
| <code>save</code> | <code>suspend</code> (without output file argument) |
| <code>restore</code> | <code>resume</code> (without output file argument) |

Terminology for the domain states differs between LDom utilities, such as `ldm`, and `virsh`.

| <code>virsh</code> | LDom utility |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| <code>running</code> | <code>active</code> |
| <code>shut off</code> | <code>inactive</code> |
| <code>in shutdown</code> | <code>bound</code> |

Name virt-clone – clone virtual machine images

Synopsis /usr/bin/virt-clone [*option*]

Description The `virt-clone` utility is a command line tool for cloning existing virtual machine images. `virt-clone` copies disk images of an existing virtual machine and defines a new guest with an identical virtual hardware configuration. Elements that require uniqueness are updated to avoid a clash between old and new guests.

With appropriate command-line arguments, `virt-clone` can run completely unattended, with the guest automatically starting itself as well. This allows for easy automation of guest installs.

If you do not specify options to `virt-clone`, the command runs interactively, prompting for input as required.

To run `virt-clone`, you must become superuser or assume the Primary Administrator role.

Options The following options are supported:

`--connect=URI`

Connect to the hypervisor at *URI*.

`-d, --debug`

Display debugging information when running the install process.

`-f disk_image, --file=disk_image`

Path to the file, disk partition, or logical volume to use as the backing store for the guest's virtual disk. If the original guest has multiple disks, this parameter must be repeated multiple times, once per disk in the original virtual machine.

`--force-copy=target`

Force to copy devices (for example, if `hdc` is a read-only CD-ROM device, specify `--force-copy=hdc`)

`-h, --help`

Display the help message and exit.

`-m mac_addr, --mac=mac_addr`

Fixed MAC address for the guest. If the keyword `random` is specified, a random address will be used.

`-n name, --name=name`

Name of the new guest virtual machine instance. This must be unique among all guests known to the hypervisor on this machine, including those not currently active. To redefine an existing guest, use the `virsh(1M)` tool to shut it down and delete it prior to running `virt-clone`. This parameter will be prompted for if omitted on the command line.

`--nonsparse`

Do not use a sparse file for the clone's disk image.

- o *original_guest*, --original=*original_guest*
Name or UUID for the original guest to be cloned. This guest must be shut down since it is not possible to safely clone active guests.
- original-xml=*filename*
The libvirt guest XML file to use as the original guest. The guest does not need to be defined on the libvirt connection.
- preserve-data
Preserve a new file to use as the disk image for the new guest.
- u *UUID*, --uuid=*UUID*
UUID for the guest; if none is specified, a random UUID is generated. If you specify *UUID*, use a 32-digit hexadecimal number. Keep in mind that UUIDs are intended to be unique across the entire data center, and indeed, the world.

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Cloning a Guest with a Single Disk

The following command clones a guest named demo, which has a single disk to copy.

```
# virt-clone \  
  --original demo \  
  --name newdemo \  
  --file /var/lib/xen/images/newdemo.img
```

EXAMPLE 2 Cloning a Guest with Multiple Disks

The following command clones a guest named demo, with has multiple disks to copy.

```
# virt-clone \  
  --original demo \  
  --name newdemo \  
  --file /var/lib/xen/images/newdemo.img \  
  --file /var/lib/xen/images/newdata.img
```

EXAMPLE 3 Cloning to a Device with Comparable Disk Space

The following command clones a guest to a physical device that has at least as much disk space as had the original guest. . If the destination device is has more space, the new guest can do a file system resize when it boots.

```
# virt-clone \  
  --name demo \  
  --file /dev/HostVG/DemoVM \  
  --mac 00:16:3e:34:11:54
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability | SUNWxvmu |
| Interface Stability | Volatile |

See Also [virsh\(1M\)](#), [virt-install\(1M\)](#), [xm\(1M\)](#), [xVM\(5\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [xVM\(5\)](#)

Name virt-convert – convert virtual machines between formats

Synopsis virt-convert [*option*]... *input.vmx* | *input.ovf* | *input-dir*
[*output.xml* | *output-dir*]

Description The `virt-convert` program is a command line tool for converting virtual machines (VMs) from one format to another. It accepts either a VM definition file (such as VMware `vmx` format) or a directory containing a VM. By default, a new VM definition file, and converted disk images, will be placed in a new output directory.

If an output directory is specified, it will be created if necessary, and the output VM definition placed within the new directory, along with any disk images, as needed.

If an output VM definition file is specified, it will be created alongside any disks in the same directory.

Options Any of the following options can be omitted, in which case `virt-convert` will use defaults when required. An input VM definition or containing directory must be provided. By default, an output directory is generated based upon the name of the VM. The default input format is VMware `vmx`, and the default output format is a `libvirt` “image” XML definition.

`-a, --arch=arch`

Architecture of the virtual machine (i686, x86_64, ppc). Defaults to that of the host machine.

`-D, --disk-format=format`

Output disk format, or none if no conversion should be performed. *format* is one of:

none

No disks are converted or copied.

vmdk

VMWare VMDK format

raw

raw file

vdisk

vdisk format (see [vdiskadm\(1M\)](#))

`-d, --debug`

Display debugging information.

`-h, --help`

Display the help message and exit.

`-i, --input-format format`

Input format. Currently, `vmx` and `ovf` are supported.

`--noacpi`

Override the OS type and variant to disable the ACPI setting for fully virtualized guest.

- noapic
Override the OS type and variant to disable the APIC setting for fully virtualized guest.
- o, --output-format *format*
Output format. Currently, the supported output formats are `virt-instance` and `virt-image`. `virt-instance` is the recommended format for Solaris.
- os-type=*os_type*
Optimize the guest configuration for a type of operating system. This will attempt to pick the most suitable ACPI and APIC settings, optimally supported mouse drivers, and generally accommodate other operating system quirks. See [virt-install\(1M\)](#) for a list of valid operating system types.
- os-variant=*os_variant*
Further optimize the guest configuration for a specific operating system variant. This parameter is optional. See [virt-install\(1M\)](#) for a list of valid operating system variants.
- p, --paravirt
Create a paravirtualized guest image. Convert machine to a paravirtualized Xen-based image.
- q, --quiet
Avoid verbose output.
- v, --hvm
Create a fully virtualized guest image. Convert machine to a hvm/qemu-based image (this is the default if `--paravirt` is not specified).

Examples EXAMPLE 1 Converting a VMware VMX appliance

The following sequence of commands converts a VMware VMX appliance and imports it into Solaris xVM.

```
# virt-convert -o virt-instance /guests/vmx-appliance/ \
/guests/xvm-appliance/
# virsh define --relative-path=/guests/xvm-appliance/ \
\guests/xvm-appliance/appliance.xml
```

Attributes See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

| ATTRIBUTE TYPE | ATTRIBUTE VALUE |
|---------------------|-----------------|
| Availability | SUNWxvmu |
| Interface Stability | Volatile |

See Also [vdiskadm\(1M\)](#), [virt-install\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [xVM\(5\)](#)

Caveats Not all conversions will result in a working guest installation. If the source OS image is configured to use SCSI disks, the use of IDE disks may cause the OS boot to fail. Some images may be configured to use the VMware drivers such as `vLance`. In the `vLance` case and in general, device emulation support may not be sufficient for all OS installations.

Authors Written by Joey Boggs and John Levon.

See the `AUTHORS` file in the source distribution for the complete list of credits.

Name virt-install – install guest operating system on xVM system

Synopsis /usr/bin/virt-install [*options*]

Description The `virt-install` program enables you to install a guest operating system on a machine running Solaris xVM.

`virt-install` allows you to enter information about a guest as a set of command-line options that enable you to specify the following:

- Name of your guest domain. This name serves as the label of the guest operating system and will be the name of the file that stores the guest's configuration. For network-based installs, the name of the domain must match its real hostname.
- Amount of RAM to be allocated to the guest, in MB. Solaris domains should use 512MB minimum.
- Path to the disk image of the guest. This path is exported as an entire disk to your guest. It is on the xVM control domain and can be to a physical disk, a flat file, or any device that provides a block device interface; for example, a ZFS volume or a Solaris Volume Manager volume.
- If the path specified in the preceding bullet does not already exist, the size, in GB, of the virtual disk for your guest.
- You must choose whether to enable graphics support for the domain. Note that paravirtualized Solaris domains do not currently support a graphical console in this manner.
- URI for the location of the installation software. This can be an NFS path, or the path to a local directory or ISO. Some operating systems do not yet support ISO installs. Some operating systems require that the install host be fully qualified (for example, `my.nfs.server.com`) for the install to work. Examples of acceptable installation paths are:

```
nfs:my.nfs.server.com:/home/install/test/tree
/export/solarisdvd.iso
```

After entering required information, installation starts. If you enabled graphics, a Virtual Network Computing (VNC) window opens and presents the graphical installer. If graphics are not enabled, the text installer is displayed.

You can connect to the graphical console by finding the correct display with the command:

```
% virsh vncdisplay dom-name
```

...and then running:

```
% vncviewer localhost:d
```

...where *d* is the display returned by the preceding `virsh vncdisplay` command.

Autoconfiguration data (see the `--autocf` option, below) is presented to the guest as a floppy device. For Solaris, this can be a UFS or PCFS file system image containing `sysidcfg(4)` and Jumpstart profile data.

To run `virt-install`, you must become superuser or assume the Primary Administrator role.

Options The following options are supported:

`--autocf=location`

Specifies location of autoconfiguration data for the guest.

For fully virtualized guests installing from an ISO file or DVD, *location* specifies the pathname of a disk image to be presented to the guest as the floppy device `fd0`. The following is the path to a local filename containing a floppy image:

```
/path/to/guest/autocf.img
```

This option is ignored for fully virtualized guests installing over a network using PXE. Such a guest will retrieve any autoconfiguration data over the network. For paravirtualized guests, support for this option is guest-specific.

For Solaris paravirtualized guests installing over NFS, this option allows you to specify the NFS pathname to a directory containing a `sysidcfg(4)` file along with a Solaris Jumpstart profile. The following is the path to a NFS directory containing Solaris autoconfiguration data:

```
nfs:netinstall:/export/guests/guest.autocf
```

For OpenSolaris paravirtualized guests installing using an OpenSolaris AI (Automated Installer) server using the `opensolaris os-variant` flag, specify a set of comma-separated name/value pairs used by AI. These are:

```
install_service=[install_service_name]  
install_media=[HTTP server containing AI image]
```

At present, only `install_service` is required. `install_media` can be used to override the `install_media` path specified in the `--location` option (see below). Additional name/value pairs can be appended should the AI server require them.

At such time as the OpenSolaris AI supports the ability of clients to self-discover the AI install service, an empty string should be used for `install_service` to indicate an AI install is desired.

For fully virtualized guests (HVM domains), use the `--pxe` argument to perform AI installs.

See EXAMPLES for an example of the use of the OpenSolaris AI.

-
- b *bridge*, --bridge=*bridge*
 Bridge to which to connect the network interface. If you do not specify a bridge, the system attempts to determine the default. This should be the name of the interface in the control domain through which to route the domain's networking traffic, for example, bge0. This option is obsolete. Use the --network option, instead.
 - c *cdrom*, --cdrom=*cdrom*
 File to use as a virtual CD-ROM device for fully virtualized guests. This option works with HVM domains and is ignored with paravirtualized domains. It can be path to an ISO image, or to a CD-ROM device. It can also be a URL from which to fetch or access a minimal boot ISO image. The URLs take the same format as described for the --location argument. If this option is omitted then either the --location argument must be entered, to specify a location for the kernel and `initrd`, or the --pxe option used, to install from the network.
 - check-cpu
 Check that VCPUs do not exceed physical CPUs and warn if they do.
 - connect=*URI*
 Connect to hypervisor at *URI*.
 - cpuset=*cpuset*
 Specify which physical CPUs the guest can use. *cpuset* is a comma-separated list of numbers, which can be specified in ranges. For example:
 - 0,2,3,5 Use processors 0, 2, 3, and 5
 - 1-3,5,6-8 Use processors 1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, and 8
 - d, --debug
 Display debugging information. The debugging information is stored in `$HOME/.virtinst/virt-install.log`, even if this option is omitted. In this path, `$HOME` is the home directory of the user invoking `virt-install`, such as `/` or `/root`.
 - disk path=... [*options*]
 Specify a disk to attach to the guest domain. This is a comma-separated list of options, which must start with the path argument. For example:
 - disk path=/guest/root.img,sparse=true
 The available argument and options are:
 - path=...
 Path to the file, disk partition, or logical volume to use as the backing store for the guest's virtual disk.
 - perms=ro
 The disk should be read-only.
 - device=disk|cdrom|floppy
 The disk should be presented as a normal hard disk, CD-ROM, or floppy disk.

`size=...`

Size of the disk in Gb, if it does not yet exist.

`sparse=true|false`

Where appropriate, mark the disk as sparse or fully-allocated.

`-f pathname, --file=pathname`

Path to the file, disk partition, or logical volume to use as the backing store for the guest's virtual disk. If the path does not exist, then `--file-size` option should also be specified, allowing the disk to be created.

`-h, --help`

Display list of `virt-install` options.

`--import`

Skip the OS installation process, and build a guest around an existing disk image. The device used for booting is the first device specified by means of the `--disk` or `--file` options.

`-k keymap, --keymap=keymap`

Request that the virtual console be configured to run with a non-English keyboard layout.

`-l location, --location=location`

Installation source for paravirtualized guest. Fully virtualized guests must use either `--location` to specify a kernel and `initrd` or the `--cdrom` option to specify an ISO/CDROM image. The `location` argument can take the forms, `nfs:host:/path`, or a file system path in the control domain, as described above.

`--lived`

Treat the CD-ROM media as a live CD.

`-m mac_addr, --mac=mac_addr`

Specifies a fixed MAC address for the guest. If this parameter is omitted, or the value `random` is specified, a suitable address will be randomly generated. For xVM virtual machines it is required that the first 3 pairs in the MAC address be the sequence `00:16:3e`. This option could be used when performing PXE or NFS-based installations of Solaris guests. This option is obsolete. Use the `-w/--network` option, instead.

`-n name, --name=name`

Name of the new guest virtual machine instance. This must be unique among all guests known to the hypervisor on this machine, including those not currently active.

`--noacpi`

Disables Advanced Configuration and Power Interface (ACPI) for fully virtualized guest. Overrides configuration setting stored in systems specified by `--os-type` and `--os-variant` options.

-
- `--noapic`
Disables Advanced Programmable Interrupt Controller (APIC) for fully virtualized guest. Overrides configuration setting stored in systems specified by `--os-type` and `--os-variant` options.
 - `--noautoconsole`
Do not automatically try to connect to the guest console. The default behavior is to launch a VNC client to display the graphical console, or to run the `virsh console` command to display the text console. Use of this option disables this behavior.

Use of this option should be combined with the `--wait` option, as described below.
 - `--nodisks`
Request a virtual machine without any local disk storage, typically used for running “Live CD” images or installing to network storage (iSCSI or NFS root). This disables all interactive prompts for disk setup.
 - `--nographics`
Disable all interactive prompts for the guest virtual console. No graphical console will be allocated for the guest. A text-based console will always be available on the first serial port (or equivalent paravirtualised console device).
 - `--nonetworks`
Do not create network interfaces for the guest.
 - `--nonsparse`
Request creation of a non-sparse file for the guest virtual disk. Note that use of this option causes guest creation to be significantly slower than otherwise.
 - `--noreboot`
Do not automatically reboot the guest domain after the first stage of installation.
 - `--os-type=os_type`
Optimize the guest configuration for a type of operating system. This option attempts to pick the most suitable ACPI and APIC settings, select optimally supported mouse drivers, and generally accommodate other operating system peculiarities. See “OS Types and OS Variants”, below for a list of acceptable values.

For optimal guest operating system performance, you should specify the `--os-type` and `--os-variant` options.
 - `--os-variant=os_variant`
The OS variant for fully virtualized guests. See “OS Types and OS Variants”, below for a list of acceptable values.

For optimal guest operating system performance, you should specify the `--os-type` and `--os-variant` options.

- p, --paravirt
Indicates that guest is paravirtualized. If the host supports both paravirtualization and full virtualization, and neither this parameter nor the --hvm option are specified, this will be prompted for interactively.
- pxe
Use the PXE boot protocol to load the initial ramdisk and kernel for starting the guest installation process. If this option is omitted, then either the --location or --cdrom options must be entered, to specify a location for the kernel and initrd.
- r *mem_amount*, --ram=*mem_amount*
Memory to allocate for guest instance, in megabytes.
- s *filesize*, --file-size=*filesize*
Size of the file to create for the guest virtual disk, if the path specified with the --file does not already exist. The *filesize* is specified in gigabytes, with fractional numbers allowed. The storage for the file will not be pre-allocated unless the --nonsparse option is also specified.
- sdl
Use Simple DirectMedia Layer (SDL) for graphics support. This option works with some guest domains, including HVM, but not with Solaris.
- sound
Use sound device emulation. Does not work on Solaris xVM.
- u *UUID*, --uuid=*UUID*
Specifies UUID, as a 32-digit hexadecimal number, for the guest. If no UUID is specified, the system generates a random UUID. If you enter a UUID, keep in mind that it is intended to be a globally unique value.
- v, --hvm
Specifies that the guest is a Hardware-assisted Virtual Machine (HVM). Requests the use of full virtualization, if both paravirtualization and full virtualization are available on the host. This parameter might not be available if connecting to a hypervisor on a machine without hardware virtualization support.

This guest should be fully virtualized.
- vcpus=*vcpus*
Number of Virtual (VCPUs) to configure for your guest.
- vnc
Use Virtual Network Computing (VNC) for graphics support. This option works with HVM domains but not with paravirtualized domains. Unless the --vncport parameter is also provided, the VNC server will run on the first free port number at 5900 or above. The actual VNC display allocated can be obtained using the `vncdisplay` subcommand to [virsh\(1M\)](#).

-
- `--vncport=vncport`
Request a permanent, statically assigned port number for the guest VNC console. Use of this option is discouraged as another guest might automatically choose to run on the specified port, creating a conflict.
- `-w property_list, --network=property_list`
Describes a virtual interface by means of a list of property-value pairs, each pair separated by a comma. Supported properties are:
- `bridge=bridge`
Bridge to which to connect the virtual interface. If you do not specify a bridge, the system attempts to determine the default. This should be the name of the interface in the control domain through which to route the domain's networking traffic, for example, `bge0`. This property makes the `-b/--bridge` option obsolete.
- `mac=mac_addr`
Specifies a fixed MAC address for the guest. If this parameter is omitted, or the value `RANDOM` is specified, a suitable address will be randomly generated. For Solaris xVM virtual machines it is required that the first three pairs in the MAC address be the sequence `00:16:3e`. This property is required when performing PXE or NFS-based installations of Solaris guests. This property makes the `-m/--mac` option obsolete.
- `capped-bandwidth=bandwidth`
Sets bandwidth of this interface. Bandwidth should be specified as an integer with one of the scale suffixes (K, M, or G for Kbps, Mbps, or Gbps, respectively). Bandwidth will be rounded up to 1.2M, if the input is smaller than that figure.
- `vlanid=vid`
Sets VLAN ID of this interface to *vid*.
- If this option is omitted, a single NIC will be created in the guest. If there is a bridge device in the host with a physical interface enslaved, this interface will be used for connectivity. This option can be specified multiple times to setup more than one NIC. Do not mix it with any one of the `-b/--bridge` and `-m/--mac` options.
- `--wait=num_minutes`
If a VNC viewer could not be launched for a graphical installation, and the guest is a Windows domain, `virt-install` waits indefinitely for the guest to finish installation.
- For the domain to correctly reboot during install, `virt-install` must stay running until installation is complete. This happens by default when `virt-install` connects to the console. If the `--noautoconsole` option is used, or you need to disconnect from the console, use this option to keep `virt-install` running. A value of `-1` will wait indefinitely. A value of `0` will exit immediately (and thus implies `--noautoconsole`).
- It is recommended that scripts use:
- ```
--wait=-1 --noautoconsole
...as needed.
```

-x *extra\_args*, --extra-args=*extra\_args*

When installing paravirtualized guests, specifies additional arguments to pass to the installer.

OS Types and OS Variants The following are the valid OS type and OS variant values for --os-type and --os-variant options described above.

```
os-type os-variant
```

```
----- -
```

```
linux (Linux 2.x series)
```

```
 rhel2.1
```

```
 rhel3
```

```
 rhel4
```

```
 rhel5
```

```
 fedora5
```

```
 fedora6
```

```
 fedora7
```

```
 fedora8
```

```
 fedora9
```

```
 fedora10
```

```
 fedora11
```

```
 ubuntuhardy
```

```
 ubuntuintrepid
```

```
 ubuntujaunty
```

```
 sles10
```

```
 debianEtch
```

```
 debianLenny
```

```
 generic24
```

```
 generic26
```

```
windows (Microsoft Windows 9x or later)
```

```
 winxp
```

```
 winxp64
```

```
 win2k
```

```
 win2k3
```

```
 win2k8
```

```
 vista
```

```
unix (Traditional UNIX BSD or SysV derivatives)
```

```
 freebsd6
```

```
 freebsd7
```

```
 openbsd4
```

```
solaris (Solaris 9 or later)
```

```
 solaris9
```

```
 solaris10
```

```
 opensolaris
```

```
other (Not in one of groups above)
```



```

msdos
netware4
netware5
netware6
generic

```

For Windows 7, use `vista`.

### Examples EXAMPLE 1 Installing Solaris onto a Local Disk from an ISO

The following command installs a paravirtualized Solaris guest from an ISO file.

```

virt-install --name solaris2 --ram 1024 --nographics \
 --file /dev/md/dsk/solaris2-disk \
 --os-type=solaris os-variant=solaris10 \
 --location /export/isos/nv75-dvd.iso

```

### EXAMPLE 2 Installing Microsoft Windows

The following command installs a Microsoft Windows guest using a local file as a root disk.

```

virt-install --hvm --name windows1 --ram 1024 \
 --cdrom //en_winxp_pro_with_sp2.iso \
 --file /guests/windows1-disk --file-size 10 \
 --os-type=windows os-variant=winxp \
 --vnc

```

### EXAMPLE 3 Installing Paravirtualized Solaris Guest from an NFS Server

The following command installs a Solaris paravirtualized xVM guest, 500 MB of RAM, 6 GB of disk, from an NFS server, in text-only mode:

```

virt-install \
 --paravirt \
 --name demo \
 --ram 500 \
 --file /export/guests/demo/images/demo.img \
 --file-size 6 \
 --nographics \
 --mac=00:16:3e:2f:8a:1a \
 --os-type=solaris os-variant=openSolaris \
 --location nfs:netinstall:/export/s10u6/combined.s10x_u6wos/latest \
 --autocf=nfs:netinstall:/export/guests/demo/autocf

```

### EXAMPLE 4 Installing xVM Guest Using ZFS zvol

The following command installs an xVM guest, using a ZFS `zvol`, booting from the host CD-ROM, using the VNC server/viewer:

## EXAMPLE 4 Installing xVM Guest Using ZFS zvol (Continued)

```
virt-install \
 --hvm --name demo \
 --ram 500 \
 --file /dev/zvol/dsk/guests/root \
 --vnc \
 --hvm \
 --os-type=solaris os-variant=opensolaris \
 --autocf=/export/guests/demo/images/autocf.img \
 --cdrom /dev/dsk/c2t0d0s2
```

## EXAMPLE 5 Installing Paravirtualized Guest over HTTP

The following command installs a paravirtualized Fedora guest domain over HTTP using the text installer:

```
virt-install -n demo -x 'console=hvc0' --paravirt \
 -f /dev/zvol/dsk/guests/root \
 -l http://mirror.cc.vt.edu/pub/fedora/linux/releases/8/Fedora/x86_64/os/ \
 --os-type=linux os-variant=fedora8 \
 -r 512 --nographics
```

## EXAMPLE 6 Installing Red Hat Enterprise Linux Guest over NFS

The following sequence of commands installs a Red Hat Enterprise Linux guest over NFS using the text installer:

```
mount -F hsfs /rhel.iso /mnt
share -o ro /mnt
virt-install -n pv-rhel -r 1024 -l nfs:mydom0:/mnt \
 --os-type=linux os-variant=rhel4 \
 -f /dev/zvol/dsk/pv-rhel.zvol -p --nographics
```

## EXAMPLE 7 Installing with Kickstart Automation

The following command installs a RedHat guest using the media in the dom0 CD-ROM, utilizing kickstart to automate the installation process.

```
virt-install \
 --name rhat \
 --ram 500 \
 --file /dev/zvol/dsk/rhat.zvol \
 --paravirt \
 --location /dev/dsk/c2t0d0s2 \
 --os-type=linux os-variant=rhel5 \
```

EXAMPLE 7 Installing with Kickstart Automation (Continued)

```
--extra-args "ks=/export/install/rhat/ks.cfg"
```

EXAMPLE 8 Installing an HVM Solaris Domain Using Network Boot

The following commands install HVM Solaris domains using network boot (PXE).

```
virt-install -n pxe-domu -r 1024 --hvm --mac 00:16:3e:2f:8a:1a \
--os-type=solaris --os-variant=opensolaris \
-f /dev/zvol/dsk/guests/root \
--vnc --pxe --vcpus=4

virt-install -n domu-221 -r 1024 --hvm \
--mac '~johnlev/bin/maca domu-221' --os-type=solaris \
--os-variant=opensolaris -f /iscsi/nevada-hvm --vnc --pxe --vcpus=4
```

EXAMPLE 9 Installing with OpenSolaris AI

The following command installs an OpenSolaris guest using the `x86_install` AI install service from a specified install media.

```
virt-install --name osol \
--location http://10.0.0.1:5555/space/images/osol_111b \
--ram 1024 \
--file /rpool/guests/osol.raw \
--os-variant=opensolaris \
--autocf install_service=myservice
```

The following command installs an OpenSolaris guest, under conditions in which the guest is able to self-discover its install service:

```
virt-install --name osol \
--location http://10.0.0.1:5555/space/images/osol_111b \
--ram 1024 \
--file /rpool/guests/osol.raw \
--os-variant=opensolaris \
--autocf ""
```

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWxvmu
Interface Stability	Volatile

**See Also** [virsh\(1M\)](#), [virt-clone\(1M\)](#), [xend\(1M\)](#), [xentop\(1M\)](#), [xenstored\(1M\)](#), [xm\(1M\)](#), [sysidcfg\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [xVM\(5\)](#)

**Name** vmstat – report virtual memory statistics

**Synopsis** vmstat [-cipqsS] [-T u | d] [*disks*] [*interval* [*count*]]

**Description** vmstat reports virtual memory statistics regarding kernel thread, virtual memory, disk, trap, and CPU activity.

On MP (multi-processor) systems, vmstat averages the number of CPUs into the output. For per-processor statistics, see [mpstat\(1M\)](#).

vmstat only supports statistics for certain devices. For more general system statistics, use [sar\(1\)](#), [iostat\(1M\)](#), or [sar\(1M\)](#).

Without options, vmstat displays a one-line summary of the virtual memory activity since the system was booted.

During execution of the kernel status command, the state of the system can change. If relevant, a state change message is included in the vmstat output, in one of the following forms:

```
<<device added: sd0>>
<<device removed: sd0>>
<<processors added: 1, 3>>
<<processors removed: 1, 3>>
```

See *System Administration Guide: Advanced Administration* for device naming conventions for disks.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- c Report cache flushing statistics. This option is obsolete, and no longer meaningful. This option might be removed in a future version of Solaris.
- i Report the number of interrupts per device. *count* and *interval* does not apply to the -i option.
- p Report paging activity in details. This option will display the following, respectively:
  - epi Executable page-ins.
  - epo Executable page-outs.
  - epf Executable page-frees.
  - api Anonymous page-ins.
  - apo Anonymous page-outs.
  - apf Anonymous page-frees.
  - fpi File system page-ins.
  - fpo File system page-outs.

fpf File system page-frees.

When executed in a zone and if the pools facility is active, all of the above only report activity on the processors in the processor set of the zone's pool.

- q Suppress messages related to state changes.
- s Display the total number of various system events since boot. *count* and *interval* does not apply to the -s option.
- S Report on swapping rather than paging activity. This option will change two fields in *vmstat*'s "paging" display: rather than the "re" and "mf" fields, *vmstat* will report "si" (swap-ins) and "so" (swap-outs).
- T u | d Specify u for a printed representation of the internal representation of time. See [time\(2\)](#). Specify d for standard date format. See [date\(1\)](#).

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

- count* Specifies the number of times that the statistics are repeated. *count* does not apply to the -i and -s options.
- disks* Specifies which disks are to be given priority in the output (only four disks fit on a line). Common disk names are id, sd, xd, or xy, followed by a number (for example, sd2, xd0, and so forth).
- interval* Specifies the last number of seconds over which *vmstat* summarizes activity. This number of seconds repeats forever. *interval* does not apply to the -i and -s options.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Using *vmstat*

The following command displays a summary of what the system is doing every five seconds.

```
example% vmstat 5
```

```

kthr memory page disk faults cpu
r b w swap free re mf pi p fr de sr s0 s1 s2 s3 in sy cs us sy id
0 0 0 11456 4120 1 41 19 1 3 0 2 0 4 0 0 48 112 130 4 14 82
0 0 1 10132 4280 0 4 44 0 0 0 0 0 23 0 0 211 230 144 3 35 62
0 0 1 10132 4616 0 0 20 0 0 0 0 0 19 0 0 150 172 146 3 33 64
0 0 1 10132 5292 0 0 9 0 0 0 0 0 21 0 0 165 105 130 1 21 78
1 1 1 10132 5496 0 0 5 0 0 0 0 0 23 0 0 183 92 134 1 20 79
1 0 1 10132 5564 0 0 25 0 0 0 0 0 18 0 0 131 231 116 4 34 62
1 0 1 10124 5412 0 0 37 0 0 0 0 0 22 0 0 166 179 118 1 33 67
1 0 1 10124 5236 0 0 24 0 0 0 0 0 14 0 0 109 243 113 4 56 39
^C
```

```
example%
```

**EXAMPLE 1** Using `vmstat` (Continued)

The fields of `vmstat`'s display are

<code>kthr</code>	Report the number of kernel threads in each of the three following states: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>r</code> the number of kernel threads in run queue</li> <li><code>b</code> the number of blocked kernel threads that are waiting for resources I/O, paging, and so forth</li> <li><code>w</code> the number of swapped out lightweight processes (LWPs) that are waiting for processing resources to finish.</li> </ul>
<code>memory</code>	Report on usage of virtual and real memory. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>swap</code> available swap space (Kbytes)</li> <li><code>free</code> size of the free list (Kbytes)</li> </ul>
<code>page</code>	Report information about page faults and paging activity. The information on each of the following activities is given in units per second. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>re</code> page reclaims — but see the <code>-S</code> option for how this field is modified.</li> <li><code>mf</code> minor faults — but see the <code>-S</code> option for how this field is modified.</li> <li><code>pi</code> kilobytes paged in</li> <li><code>po</code> kilobytes paged out</li> <li><code>fr</code> kilobytes freed</li> <li><code>de</code> anticipated short-term memory shortfall (Kbytes)</li> <li><code>sr</code> pages scanned by clock algorithm</li> </ul> <p>When executed in a zone and if the pools facility is active, all of the above (except for “<code>de</code>”) only report activity on the processors in the processor set of the zone's pool.</p>
<code>disk</code>	Report the number of disk operations per second. There are slots for up to four disks, labeled with a single letter and number. The letter indicates the type of disk ( <code>s</code> = SCSI, <code>i</code> = IPI, and so forth); the number is the logical unit number.
<code>faults</code>	Report the trap/interrupt rates (per second). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><code>in</code> interrupts</li> <li><code>sy</code> system calls</li> <li><code>cs</code> CPU context switches</li> </ul>

**EXAMPLE 1** Using `vmstat` (Continued)

When executed in a zone and if the pools facility is active, all of the above only report activity on the processors in the processor set of the zone's pool.

`cpu` Give a breakdown of percentage usage of CPU time. On MP systems, this is an average across all processors.

`us` user time

`sy` system time

`id` idle time

When executed in a zone and if the pools facility is active, all of the above only report activity on the processors in the processor set of the zone's pool.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	See below.

Invocation is evolving. Human readable output is unstable.

**See Also** [date\(1\)](#), [sar\(1\)](#), [iostat\(1M\)](#), [mpstat\(1M\)](#), [sar\(1M\)](#), [time\(2\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Notes** The sum of CPU utilization might vary slightly from 100 because of rounding errors in the production of a percentage figure.

The `-c` option (Report cache flushing statistics) is not supported in this release.



**Name** vntsd – virtual network terminal server daemon for Logical Domains

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/ldoms/vntsd

**Description** The vntsd daemon is a server that supports connections to the Logical Domains (LDoms) console by using [telnet\(1\)](#). When a telnet session starts, vntsd sends telnet options to the client indicating a willingness to remotely echo characters and to suppress go ahead.

Consoles are organized into groups by the LDoms Manager. Each console group is assigned a unique group name and TCP port number. vntsd uses the group's port number to export access to the consoles within that group. To establish a connection with a console or console group, a user starts a [telnet\(1\)](#) session with the corresponding group's port number.

Depending on the number of consoles within that group, vntsd does one of two things:

- If there is only one console in the group, vntsd connects a session to that LDoms console.
- If there are multiple consoles in the group, vntsd prompts the user to select the console to which they would like to connect, as shown in “Multiple-Console Options,” below.

For each console, vntsd provides write access only to the first user connecting to the console. Subsequent users connecting to the console are allowed only to read from the console and wait for write access. When the first user disconnects, write privileges are transferred to the next user waiting in the queue. If a user who does not have write privileges attempts to write to a console, the vntsd displays the following message:

```
You do not have write access
```

A user who has no write access can acquire write access forcibly by using the `~w` special console command, described in “Special Console Commands,” below.

vntsd can be invoked only with superuser privileges or by someone in the Primary Administrator role.

**Options** The options for vntsd are divided into multiple-console options and console commands.

**Multiple-Console Options** The options listed below are supported when there are multiple LDoms consoles in a group. The syntax for the use of these options is:

```
<hostname>-vnts-<group-name>: <option>
```

For example:

```
myhost-vnts-salesgroup: h
```

The `h` option invokes help, as described below.

```
h
```

Display the following help text:

```
h -- this help
l -- list of consoles
q -- quit
c{id}, n{name} -- connect to console of domain {id} or domain name
```

l

List all consoles in the group. For example:

DOMAIN ID	DOMAIN NAME	DOMAIN STATE
0	ldg1	online
1	ldg2	connected
...	...	...

The two domain states and their meanings are:

online

No one is connected to the console.

connected

At least one user is already connected to the console.

q

Disconnect from vntsd.

c{id}, n{name}

Connect to specified console. Upon connection, the following message is displayed:

```
Connecting to console <domain-name> in group <group-name>
Press ~? for control options
```

#### Special Console Commands

A tilde (~) appearing as the first character of a line is an escape signal that directs vntsd to perform a special console command. The tilde-tilde (~~) sequence outputs a tilde. In conjunction with the initial tilde, vntsd accepts the following special console commands:

~.

Disconnect from the console or console group.

~w

Force write access to the console.

~p

Disconnect from this console, and connect to the console that precedes this console in the list of consoles.

~n

Disconnect from this console, and connect to the console that follows this console in the list of consoles.

~#

Send break.

~^B

Send alternate break.

~?

Display vntsd help, as follows:

```

~# - Send break
~^B - Send alternate break
~. - Exit from this console
~w - Force write access
~n - Console next
~p - Console previous
~? - Help

```

**Files** /usr/lib/ldoms/vntsd  
Binary executable vntsd file.

/usr/lib/ldoms/vntsd.xml  
Service management facility ([smf\(5\)](#)) manifest file for vntsd.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWldoms
Interface Stability	Evolving

**See Also** [telnet\(1\)](#), [svccfg\(1M\)](#), [usermod\(1M\)](#), [auth\\_attr\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

**Notes** The vntsd is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/ldoms/vntsd
```

You can change the following properties using the [svccfg\(1M\)](#) command:

vntsd/vcc\_device

Set an instance of the virtual console concentrator (vcc) driver to which vntsd is connected.

vntsd/listen\_addr

Set the IP address to which vntsd listens, using the following syntax:

```
vntsd/listen_addr:"xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx"
```

...where *xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx* is a valid IP address. The default value of this property is to listen on IP address 127.0.0.1. Users can connect to a guest console over a network if the value is set to the IP address of the control domain.

**Note** – Enabling network access to a console has security implications. Any user can connect to a console and for this reason it is disabled by default.

vntsd/timeout\_minutes

Set timeout in minutes. vntsd will timeout (close) telnet connection if there is no activity (input or output) on the console. The default value is 0, which disables timeout.

### vntsd/authorization

Enable the authorization checking of users and roles for the domain console or consoles that are being accessed. The default value of this property is `false` to maintain backward compatibility. To enable authorization checking, use the [svccfg\(1M\)](#) command to set the property value to `true`. While this option is enabled, `vntsd` listens and accepts connections on `localhost`. If the `listen_addr` property specifies an alternate IP address when this option is enabled, `vntsd` ignores the alternate IP address and continues to listen on `localhost`. Connections that are initiated from other hosts will also fail. Authorizations are available to access all consoles or console groups, or to access specific consoles or console groups. When the `vntsd` service is enabled, the following authorization is added to the authorization description database, [auth\\_attr\(4\)](#):

```
solaris.vntsd.consoles::Access All LDoms Guest Consoles::
```

Add any fine-grained authorizations based on the name of the console group. For example, if the name of the console group to be authorized is `ldg1`, add the following entry to the [auth\\_attr\(4\)](#) file:

```
solaris.vntsd.console-ldg1::Access Specific LDoms Guest Console::
```

By default, the authorization to access all consoles is assigned to the root user or role. The Primary Administrator (`superuser`) can use the [usermod\(1M\)](#) command to assign the required authorization or authorizations to other users or roles.

The following example gives user `user1` the authorization to access all domain consoles:

```
usermod -A "solaris.vntsd.consoles" user1
```

The following example gives user `user1` the authorization to access the console group named `ldg1`:

```
usermod -A "solaris.vntsd.console-ldg1" user1
```

- 
- Name** volcopy – make an image copy of file system
- Synopsis** volcopy [-F *FSType*] [-V] [*generic\_options*]  
[-o *FSType-specific\_options*] *operands*
- Description** volcopy makes a literal copy of the file system. This command may not be supported for all *FSTypes*.
- Options** The following options are supported:
- F *FSType* Specify the *FSType* on which to operate. The *FSType* should either be specified here or be determinable from `/etc/vfstab` by matching the *operands* with an entry in the table. Otherwise, the default file system type specified in `/etc/default/fs` will be used.
  - V Echo the complete command line, but do not execute the command. The command line is generated by using the options and arguments provided by the user and adding to them information derived from `/etc/vfstab`. This option should be used to verify and validate the command line.
  - generic\_options* Options that are commonly supported by most *FSType*-specific command modules. The following options are available:
    - a Require the operator to respond “yes” or “no” instead of simply waiting ten seconds before the copy is made.
    - s (Default) Invoke the DEL if wrong verification sequence.
  - o *FSType-specific\_options* Specify *FSType*-specific options in a comma separated (without spaces) list of suboptions and keyword-attribute pairs for interpretation by the *FSType*-specific module of the command.
- Operands** The following operands are supported:
- operands* generally include the device and volume names and are file system specific. A detailed description of the *operands* can be found on the *FSType*-specific man pages of volcopy.
- Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:
- 0 Successful file system copy
  - 1 An error has occurred.

**Files** /etc/vfstab list of default parameters for each file system  
/etc/default/fs default local file system type. Default values can be set for the following flags in /etc/default/fs. For example: LOCAL=ufs.  
LOCAL: The default partition for a command if no *FSType* is specified.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

**See Also** [labelit\(1M\)](#), [vfstab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#) Manual pages for the *FSType*-specific modules of volcopy.

**Name** volcopy\_ufs – make an image copy of a ufs file system

**Synopsis** volcopy [-F ufs] [*generic\_options*] *fsname srcdevice volname1 destdevice volname2*

**Description** volcopy makes a literal copy of the ufs file system using a blocksize matched to the device.

**Options** The following option is supported:

*generic\_options* options supported by the generic volcopy command. See [volcopy\(1M\)](#).

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

*fsname* represents the mount point (for example, root, u1, etc.) of the file system being copied.

*srcdevice* or *destdevice* the disk partition specified using the raw device (for example, /dev/rdisk/cld0s8, /dev/rdisk/cld1s8, etc.).

*srcdevice* and *volname1* the device and physical volume from which the copy of the file system is being extracted.

*destdevice* and *volname2* the target device and physical volume.

*fsname* and *volname* are limited to six or fewer characters and recorded in the superblock. *volname* may be '-' to use the existing volume name.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful file system copy.

non-zero An error has occurred.

**Files** /var/adm/filesave.log a record of file systems/volumes copied

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

**See Also** [cpio\(1\)](#), [dd\(1M\)](#), [labelit\(1M\)](#), [volcopy\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [ufs\(7FS\)](#)

**Notes** volcopy does not support copying to tape devices. Use [dd\(1M\)](#) for copying to and from tape devices.

**Name** vrrpadm – VRRP administration tool

**Synopsis** vrrpadm create-router -V *vrid* -l *link* -A *inet* | *inet6*  
 [-p *priority*] [-i *adv\_interval*] [-o *flags*] *router\_name*

vrrpadm delete-router *router\_name*

vrrpadm disable-router *router\_name*

vrrpadm enable-router *router\_name*

vrrpadm modify-router [-p *priority*] [-i *adv\_interval*]  
 [-o *flags*] [*router\_name*]

vrrpadm show-router [-P | -x] [-p] [-o *field*[, ...]] [*router\_name*]

**Description** The vrrpadm command is used to administer the VRRP (Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol) service in a system.

VRRP specifies an election protocol that dynamically assigns responsibility for a virtual router to one of the VRRP routers within a LAN. At a given moment, only one VRRP router controls the IPv4 or IPv6 virtual address(es) associated with a virtual router (known as the *master*), and forwards packets sent to these IP addresses. The election process provides dynamic failover of the forwarding responsibility should the master become unavailable.

Each vrrpadm subcommand operates on a VRRP router, which is identified by a name given by the administrator. VRRP routers with the same VRID and address family within a LAN comprise a virtual router, which protects a set of virtual IP addresses.

A system can have multiple VRRP routers; each belongs to a different virtual router.

**Sub-commands** The following subcommands are supported. Note that all subcommands but show-router require the solaris.network.vrrp authorization. The show-router subcommand does not require special authorizations.

vrrpadm create-router -V *vrid* -l *link* -A *inet* | *inet6* [-p *priority*] [-i *adv\_interval*] [-o *flags*]  
*router\_name*

Create a VRRP router with a specified configuration.

-A *inet* | *inet6*, --address\_family=*inet* | *inet6*  
 Address family. Either IPv4 or IPv6.

-i *adv\_interval*, --adv\_interval=*adv\_interval*  
 The advertisement interval in milliseconds. Default is 1000 (one second). The valid interval range is 10-40950.

-l *link*, --link=*link*  
 The data link on which the VRRP router is configured. This determines the LAN this VRRP router is running in. The data-link can be a physical link, a VLAN, or an aggregation.



`-o flags, --flags=flags`

The preempt and accept modes, delimited by a comma. Values can be:

- preempt
- un\_preempt
- accept
- noaccept

By default both modes are set to true.

The preempt mode controls whether an enabled higher priority backup router preempts a lower priority master router. If preempt mode is true, then the preemption is allowed; otherwise, preemption is prohibited. Note that the preempt mode must be true if the VRRP router is the owner of the virtual IP addresses.

The accept mode controls the local packet acceptance of the virtual IP addresses. If accept mode is true, the master must accept packets sent to the virtual IP addresses. If accept mode is false, the master does not accept those packets, although it does respond to ARP requests or ND Solicitations and Advertisement for those non-accepted virtual IP addresses. It also must forward packets for the router specified in this subcommand. Note that accept mode must be true if the VRRP router is the owner of the virtual IP addresses. An example of syntax for this option:

```
-o preempt,no_accept
```

`-p priority, --priority=priority`

The priority of the specified VRRP router used in master selection. The higher the value, the greater the possibility the router is selected as the master.

The default value is 255, which indicates the specified VRRP router is the IP Address Owner and owns all the virtual IP addresses. An IP Address Owner will respond to the packets addressed to one of the virtual IP addresses for ICMP pings, TCP connections, and so forth.

The range 1-254 is available for VRRP routers backing up a virtual router. Master selection is weighted toward the VRRP router with the higher priority.

`-V vrid, --VRID=vrid`

The virtual router identifier (VRID). Together with the address family, it identifies a virtual router within a LAN.

*router\_name*

The name of a VRRP router. This name is used to identify a VRRP router in other vrrpadm subcommands.

The maximum length of a valid router name is 31 characters. Legal characters are alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) and the underscore ('\_').

`vrrpadm delete -router router_name`

Delete the VRRP router identified by *router\_name*.

`vrrpadm disable -router router_name`

Disable the virtual router identified by *router\_name*. Once the router is disabled, it will stop participating in the master selection process in the virtual router.

`vrrpadm enable -router router_name`

Re-enable the virtual router identified by *router\_name* that was disabled. The router will resume participating in the master selection process in the virtual router.

`vrrpadm modify -router [-p priority] [-i adv_interval] [-o flags] [router_name]`

Modify the configuration of the VRRP router identified by *router\_name*. Only the priority, the advertisement interval, the preempt mode, and the accept mode can be modified.

`-p priority, --priority=priority` The new priority of this VRRP router.

`-i adv_interval, --adv_interval=adv_interval` The new advertisement interval.

`-o flags, --flags=flags` The new preempt and accept modes. Either one or both can be specified. If both are specified, they are delimited by a comma. For example:

`-o preempt,no_accept`

`vrrpadm show -router [-P | -x] [-p] [-o field[,...]] [router_name]`

Display the information for the VRRP router identified by *router\_name*. If no *router\_name* is specified, display information for all the VRRP routers on the system.

By default (with no options), the following fields are displayed:

NAME

The name of the VRRP router.

VRID

The VRID of the VRRP router.

LINK

The data link on which the VRRP router is created.

AF

the address family of the VRRP router, either IPv4 or IPv6.

PRIO

The priority of this VRRP router used in master selection.

ADV\_INTV

The advertisement interval, in milliseconds.

STATE

The current state of the VRRP router, INIT (Initialize), BACK (Backup), or MAST (Master).

MODE

A set of flags associated with the VRRP router. Possible values are:

- e The router has been enabled.
- p Preempt mode is true.
- a Accept mode is true.
- o Virtual address owner.

#### VNIC

The VRRP VNIC created for this VRRP router.

Note that the name of the VNIC can change over time unless the router is enabled.

The `show - router` subcommand has the following options:

`-x, --extended`

Display additional information of the given VRRP router:

`PRIMARY_IP`

The primary IP address selected by the VRRP router.

`VIRTUAL_IPS`

The virtual IP addresses configured on the VRRP router.

`PRV_STAT`

The previous state of the VRRP router.

`STAT_LAST`

Time since the last state transition.

`-P, --peer`

Display information for the backup VRRP router. This option is meaningful only when the VRRP router is in the backup state.

The following fields are displayed:

`NAME`

The name of the VRRP router.

`PEER`

The primary IP address of the peer VRRP router.

`P_Prio`

The priority of the peer VRRP router contained in the advertisement received from the peer.

`P_INTV`

The advertisement interval (in milliseconds) contained in advertisements received from the peer.

`P_ADV_LAST`

Time since last received advertisement from the peer.

**MASTER\_DOWN\_INT**

Time interval (in milliseconds) after which to declare Master down.

-p, --parseable

Display the VRRP router information in the machine parseable format.

-o *field*[,...], --output=*field*

A case-insensitive, comma-separated list of output fields to display. The field name must be one of the fields listed above, or the special value `all` to display all fields. By default (without -o), `vrrpadm show` displays all fields.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWvrrpu
Interface Stability	Committed

**See Also** [dladm\(1M\)](#), [vrrpd\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** vrrpd – VRRP daemon

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/vrrpd  
svc:/network/vrrp:default

**Description** vrrpd is the system daemon program that handles the administrative events for the VRRP routers. It is controlled through the service management facility (SMF) service instance:  
svc:/network/vrrp:default

The daemon should not be invoked directly. It does not constitute an administrative nor a programming interface. The administrative interface for managing VRRP routers is [vrrpadm\(1M\)](#).

**Options** The daemon has no options.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWvrrpr
Interface Stability	Private

**See Also** [vrrpadm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** vscanadm – vscan service configuration utility

**Synopsis** vscanadm set -p *property=value* [-p *property=value*]...  
vscanadm get [-p *property*]...  
vscanadm import -p *property filename*  
vscanadm export -p *property filename*  
vscanadm validate -p *property filename*  
vscanadm add-engine [-p *property=value*]... *engine\_id*  
vscanadm remove-engine *engine\_id*  
vscanadm set-engine -p*property=value* [-p *property=value*]... *engine\_id*  
vscanadm get-engine [-p *property=value*]... [*engine\_id*]  
vscanadm show  
vscanadm stats [-z]

**Description** The vscanadm command sets and displays properties of the vscan service, [zpool\(1M\)](#), and provides scan statistics.

File system exemption from virus scanning may be configured per file system using the appropriate file system administrative command, for example [zfs\(1M\)](#).

Scan engines are third-party applications on external hosts that perform the actual virus scanning operation on files. Multiple scan engines can be configured for use by the vscan service. A minimum of two scan engines is recommended. File scan requests are distributed among the configured scan engines to achieve load balancing. A scan engine is identified by its *engine\_id*. The *engine\_id* is a user defined string of up to 64 bytes.

The vscan service properties are divided into two categories: scan engine properties, which are specific to a scan engine definition, and general properties, which apply to the service and are not scan engine-specific.

**Subcommands** vscanadm recognizes the following subcommands:

vscanadm set -p *property=value* [-p *property=value*]...

Sets the values of vscan service general properties.

-p *property=value* Specifies a property value

vscanadm get [-p *property*]...

Displays the values of vscan service general properties. If no properties are specified, all vscan service general properties are displayed.

-p *property* Specifies a property value

The following properties are available for the vscanadm set and vscanadm get subcommands:

**max-size** The maximum size of files that should be virus scanned. Files exceeding *max-size* are not scanned. The *max-size-action* property determines whether access should be allowed or denied to files that exceed *max-size*.

The value of *max-size* is a string with a numeric (decimal) component and an optional letter component that specifies a unit size, in the format “N[.N][KMGTP][B]”.

Following the numeric component, the optional unit can be specified as either one or two characters. For example, either “K” or “KB” can be used to specify kilobytes. Unit specifiers are not case-sensitive, and must follow the numeric value immediately with no intervening whitespace.

With either no unit specifier, or a unit specifier of only “B”, the numeric value is assumed to be in bytes. The default value is 1GB.

Note that while the vs can service defines a maximum file size for scanning, scan engines also typically define their own maximum file size setting. It is recommended that *max-size* be set to a value less than or equal to the maximum file size for the scan engine(s).

**max-size-action** Specifies whether access will be allowed or denied to files larger than *max-size*. Files larger than *max-size* are not virus scanned. Valid values are:

**allow** allow access to files larger than *max-size* (no virus scan). This is the default value.

**deny** deny access to files larger than *max-size* (no virus scan)

**vscanadm import -p *property filename***

Imports the property value from the specified file. The file must contain a single line specifying the value of a single property.

**vscanadm export -p *property filename***

Exports the property value to the specified file. The file must contain a single line specifying the value of a single property.

**vscanadm validate -p *property filename***

Validates the property value in the specified file. The file must contain a single line specifying the value of a single property.

The following properties are available for the `vscanadm import`, `vscanadm export`, and `vscanadm validate` subcommands:

**types** A comma-separated list of file type extension matching rules. This list defines which types of files are scanned and which should be excluded during virus

scanning. Each rule comprises the rule indicator [+|-], followed by a file type *expression* against which a file's type extension is compared. The file type *expression* is case insensitive and may include the "\*" and "?" wildcards. There should be no whitespace between the rule indicator and the file type *expression*. If a comma is included within the file type expression, it must be escaped using a "\" (backslash). A file type extension does not include its preceding dot.

The rule indicator is a single character and can be one of:

- + include file type in virus scanning
- exclude file type from virus scanning

When a file is being evaluated as a candidate for virus scanning, its file type will be compared with the rules defined in types. The first rule matched will be applied. If no match is found, the file will be virus scanned. The total length of the types string can not exceed 4096 bytes. The default content of the types list is "+\*".

`vscanadm add-engine [-p property=value]... engine_id`

Adds a new scan engine identified by *engine\_id*. The default values are used for any scan engine properties that are not specified. The hostname defaults to the *engine\_id*.

`-p property=value` Specifies a property value

`vscanadm remove-engine engine_id`

Remove scan engine identified by *engine\_id*, removing all of its configuration property values.

`vscanadm set-engine -p property=value [-p property=value]... engine_id`

Creates or updates the configuration property values for the scan engine identified by *engine\_id*.

`-p property=value` Specifies a property value

`vscanadm get-engine [-p property=value]... [engine_id]`

Displays the values of the specified scan engine properties for the scan engine identified by *engine\_id*. If no *engine\_id* is specified, this subcommand displays the specified scan engine property values for all configured scan engines. If no properties are specified, this subcommand displays all vsan service scan engine properties.

`-p property=value` Specifies a property value

The following properties are available for the `vscanadm add-engine`, `vscanadm remove-engine`, `vscanadm set-engine`, and `vscanadm get-engine` subcommands:

- |                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>enable</code> | Specifies whether the scan engine is enabled or disabled. Valid values are "on" (enabled) and "off" (disabled). The default is "on" (enabled). A scan engine cannot be enabled if its host property is invalid. |
| <code>host</code>   | Hostname or IPv4 format IP address of the scan engine.                                                                                                                                                          |



port	ICAP port number of the scan engine. The numeric value ranges from 0 to 65535. The default ICAP port is 1344.
max-connection	The maximum number of concurrent connections that may be established with a scan engine. The numeric value ranges from 1 to 512. This property defaults to 8.
vscanadm show	Displays the values of all vs can service general properties and scan engine properties.
vscanadm stats [-z]	Displays or resets the following vs can service statistics: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ number of files scanned</li> <li>▪ number of infected files</li> <li>▪ number of failed scan requests</li> <li>▪ scan errors (including a per scan engine error count)</li> </ul> -z Resets vs can service statistics counters to zero

### Examples EXAMPLE 1 Setting the Maximum Size Limit

To set the maximum size limit for files to be virus scanned to 128 megabytes, enter

```
vscanadm set -p max-size=128M
```

### EXAMPLE 2 Allowing Access to Files

To allow access to files exceeding the maximum file size, enter

```
vscanadm set -p max-size-action=allow
```

### EXAMPLE 3 Setting File Types

To set the types so that only files of type “odt”, “exe” and “jpg” are virus scanned, enter

```
vscanadm set -p types=+odt,+exe,+jpg,-*
```

To set the types so that all file types except “doc” are virus scanned, enter

```
vscanadm set -p types=-doc,+*
```

### EXAMPLE 4 Displaying the File Types List

To display the file types list, enter

```
vscanadm get -p types
```

**EXAMPLE 5** Adding the Scan Engine

To add the scan engine “my\_eng” using the default values, enter

```
vscanadm add-engine my_eng
```

**EXAMPLE 6** Disabling the Scan Engine

To disable the scan engine “my\_eng”, enter

```
vscanadm set-engine -p enable=off my_eng
```

**EXAMPLE 7** Displaying Scan Engine Properties

To display the properties of the scan engine “my\_eng”, enter

```
vscanadm get-engine my_eng
```

**EXAMPLE 8** Removing Scan Engine

To remove the scan engine “my\_eng”, enter

```
vscanadm remove-engine my_eng
```

**EXAMPLE 9** Displaying Vscan Service General and Scan Engine Properties

To Display all vscan service general properties and scan engine properties, enter

```
vscanadm show
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

non-zero An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWvscanu
Interface Stability	Uncommitted
Utility output format	Not-An-Interface

**See Also** [vscand\(1M\)](#), [zfs\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

**Notes** All users are permitted to use `vscanadm` to view `vscan` properties and statistics. To set property values or reset statistics, the following authorizations are required:

`solaris.smf.value.vscan`  
change the property values or reset statistics

`solaris.manage.vscan`  
refresh the service to apply property value changes

To add or remove properties (add-engine, remove-engine) the following authorizations are required:

`solaris.smf.modify.application` add or remove property group

`solaris.manage.vscan` refresh the service to apply property value changes

All of these authorizations are included in the “VSCAN Management” profile.

**Name** vscand – vscan service daemon

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/vscan/vscand

**Description** vscand is the daemon that handles virus scan requests from file systems on file open and close operations. A file system may support enabling and disabling of virus scanning on a per dataset basis, using that file system's administrative command, for example [zfs\(1M\)](#).

If the file state or scan policy (see [vscanadm\(1M\)](#)) requires that a file be scanned, vscand communicates with external third-party virus scanners (scan engines) using the Internet Content Adaptation Protocol (ICAP, RFC 3507) to have the file scanned.

A file is submitted to a scan engine if it has been modified since it was last scanned, or if it has not been scanned with the latest scan engine configuration (Virus definitions). The file's modified attribute and scansamp attribute are used to store this information. Once the file is scanned, the modified attribute is cleared and the scansamp attribute is updated.

If the file is found to contain a virus, the virus is logged in [syslogd\(1M\)](#), an audit record is written, and the file is quarantined (by setting its quarantine attribute). Once a file is quarantined, attempts to read, execute or rename the file will be denied by the file system. The [syslogd\(1M\)](#) entry and the audit record specify the name of the infected file and the violations detected in the file. Each violation is specified as “ID - threat description”, where ID and threat description are defined in the X-Infection-Found-Header in ICAP RFC 3507; Extensions.

By default, vscand connects to scan engines on port 1344. The port and other service configuration parameters can be configured using [vscanadm\(1M\)](#).

The vscan service is disabled by default, and can be enabled using [svcadm\(1M\)](#).

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0            Daemon started successfully.  
non-zero    Daemon failed to start.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWvscanu
Interface Stability	Uncommitted

**See Also** [ps\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [logadm\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [syslogd\(1M\)](#), [vscanadm\(1M\)](#), [zfs\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

**Notes** If a file is accessed using a protocol which does not invoke the file system open and close operations, for example NFSv3, virus scanning is not initiated on the file.

File content is transferred to the scan engines as `cleartext` data.

Administrative actions for the `vscan` service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting a restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The `vscan` service status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

The `vscan` service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/filesystem/vscan
```

**Name** wall – write to all users

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/wall [-a] [-g *grpname*] [*filename*]

**Description** wall reads its standard input until an end-of-file. It then sends this message to all currently logged-in users preceded by:

```
Broadcast Message from . . .
```

If *filename* is given, then the message is read in from that file. Normally, pseudo-terminals that do not correspond to rlogin sessions are ignored. Thus, when using a window system, the message appears only on the console window. However, -a will send the message even to such pseudo-terminals.

It is used to warn all users, typically prior to shutting down the system.

The sender must be superuser to override any protections the users may have invoked See [mesg\(1\)](#).

wall runs `setgid()` to the group ID `tty`, in order to have write permissions on other user's terminals. See [setuid\(2\)](#).

wall will detect non-printable characters before sending them to the user's terminal. Control characters will appear as a "^" followed by the appropriate ASCII character; characters with the high-order bit set will appear in "meta" notation. For example, '\003' is displayed as '^C' and '\372' as 'M-z'.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- a Broadcast message to the console and pseudo-terminals.
- g *grpname* Broadcast to the users in a specified group only, per the group database (see [group\(4\)](#)).

**Environment Variables** If the `LC_*` variables (`LC_CTYPE`, `LC_TIME`, `LC_COLLATE`, `LC_NUMERIC`, and `LC_MONETARY`) are not set in the environment, the operational behavior of wall for each corresponding locale category is determined by the value of the `LANG` environment variable. See [environ\(5\)](#). If `LC_ALL` is set, its contents are used to override both the `LANG` and the other `LC_*` variables. If none of the above variables are set in the environment, the "C" (U.S. style) locale determines how wall behaves.

**Files** /dev/tty\*

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

**See Also** [msg\(1\)](#), [write\(1\)](#), [setuid\(2\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#)

**Notes** `wall` displays “Cannot send to ...” when the open on a user's `tty` file fails.

**Name** wanboot\_keygen – create and display client and server keys for WAN booting

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/inet/wanboot/keygen -c -o net=*a.b.c.d* ,cid=*client\_ID*,type=3des  
/usr/lib/inet/wanboot/keygen -c -o net=*a.b.c.d* ,cid=*client\_ID*,type=aes  
/usr/lib/inet/wanboot/keygen -m  
/usr/lib/inet/wanboot/keygen -c -o net=*a.b.c.d* ,cid=*client\_ID*,type=sha1  
/usr/lib/inet/wanboot/keygen -d -m  
/usr/lib/inet/wanboot/keygen -c -o net=*a.b.c.d* ,cid=*client\_ID*,type=*keytype*

**Description** The keygen utility has three purposes:

- Using the -c flag, to generate and store per-client 3DES/AES encryption keys, avoiding any DES weak keys.
- Using the -m flag, to generate and store a “master” HMAC SHA-1 key for WAN install, and to derive from the master key per-client HMAC SHA-1 hashing keys, in a manner described in RFC 3118, Appendix A.
- Using the -d flag along with either the -c or -m flag to indicate the key repository, to display a key of type specified by *keytype*, which must be one of 3des, aes, or sha1.

The net and cid arguments are used to identify a specific client. Both arguments are optional. If the cid option is not provided, the key being created or displayed will have a per-network scope. If the net option is not provided, then the key will have a global scope. Default net and code values are used to derive an HMAC SHA-1 key if the values are not provided by the user.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- c Generate and store per-client 3DES/AES encryption keys, avoiding any DES weak keys. Also generates and stores per-client HMAC SHA-1 keys. Used in conjunction with -o.
- d Display a key of type specified by *keytype*, which must be one of 3des, aes, or sha1. Use -d with -m or with -c and -o.
- m Generate and store a “master” HMAC SHA-1 key for WAN install.
- o Specifies the WANboot client and/or keytype.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Generate a Master HMAC SHA-1 Key

```
keygen -m
```

EXAMPLE 2 Generate and Then Display a Client-Specific Master HMAC SHA-1 Key

```
keygen -c -o net=172.16.174.0,cid=010003BA0E6A36,type=sha1
keygen -d -c -o net=172.16.174.0,cid=010003BA0E6A36,type=sha1
```



**EXAMPLE 3** Generate and Display a 3DES Key with a Per-Network Scope

```
keygen -c -o net=172.16.174.0,type=3des
keygen -d -o net=172.16.174.0,type=3des
```

**Exit Status** 0 Successful operation.

>0 An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWwbsup
Interface Stability	Obsolete

**See Also** [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** wanboot\_keymgmt – insert and extract keys

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/inet/wanboot/keymgmt -i -k *key\_file* -s *keystore* -o type=*keytype*  
 /usr/lib/inet/wanboot/keymgmt -x -f *outfile* -s *keystore* -o type=*keytype*

**Description** The keymgmt utility has two purposes:

- To take a raw key, stored in *key\_file*, and insert it in the repository specified by *keystore*.
- To extract a key of a specified type from the repository specified by *keystore*, depositing it in *outfile*.

*outfile* will be created if it does not already exist. The type of key being added or extracted is specified by *keytype* and may have one of four values: 3des, aes, rsa, or sha1 (the last used by HMAC SHA-1). When extracting a key, the first key with an OID matching the supplied type is used.

**Arguments** The following arguments are supported:

- i                      Used in conjunction with -k to insert a raw key in *keystore*.
- f *outfile*            Used to specify a file to receive an extracted key.
- k *key\_file*            Used in conjunction with -i to specify the file in which a raw key is stored. This key will be inserted in *keystore*.
- o type=*keytype*        Specifies the type of key being inserted or extracted. Must be one of 3des, aes, rsa, or sha1.
- s *keystore*            Specifies a repository in which a key will be inserted or from which a key will be extracted.
- x                      Used in conjunction with -f to extract a key of a specified type and deposit it in *outfile*.

**Exit Status** 0        Successful operation.  
 >0        An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWwbsup
Interface Stability	Obsolete

**See Also** [attributes\(5\)](#)

ITU-T Recommendation X.208

**Name** wanboot\_p12split – split a PKCS #12 file into separate certificate and key files

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/inet/wanboot/p12split -i *p12file* -c *out\_cert* -k *out\_key*  
[-t *out\_trust* -l *id* -v]

**Description** The `p12split` utility extracts a certificate and private key from the repository specified by *p12file*, depositing the certificate in *out\_cert* and the key in *out\_key*. If supplied, the `-l` option specifies the value for the `LocalKeyId` that will be used in the new certificate and key files. `p12split` can optionally extract a trust certificate into the *out\_trust* file if the `-t` option is specified. Use the `-v` option to get a verbose description of the split displayed to standard output.

**Options** The following arguments and options are supported:

- c *out\_cert* Specifies a repository that receives a extracted certificate.
- i *p12file* Specifies a repository from which a certificate and private key is extracted.
- k *out\_key* Specifies a repository that receives a extracted private key.
- l *id* Specifies the value for the `LocalKeyId` that will be used in the new certificate and key files.
- t *out\_trust* Specifies a file for receiving an extracted trust certificate.
- v Displays a verbose description of the split to stdout.

**Exit Status** 0 Successful operation.  
>0 An error occurred.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWwbsup
Interface Stability	Unstable

**See Also** [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** wanbootutil – manage keys and certificates for WAN booting

**Synopsis** wanbootutil [keygen] [*option\_specific\_arguments*]  
 wanbootutil [keymgmt] [*option\_specific\_arguments*]  
 wanbootutil [p12split] [*option\_specific\_arguments*]

**Description** The wanbootutil command creates and manages WANboot encryption and hashing keys and manipulates PKCS #12 files for use by WAN boot.

wanbootutil has three subcommands, each covered in a separate man page:

[wanboot\\_keygen\(1M\)](#) Generates encryption and hashing keys.  
[wanboot\\_keymgmt\(1M\)](#) Inserts and extracts keys from WAN boot key repositories.  
[wanboot\\_p12split\(1M\)](#) Splits a PKCS #12 file into separate certificate and key files for use by WAN boot.

**Options** The options supported for wanbootutil are the use of keygen, keymgmt, or p12split. The options for these subcommands are described in their respective man pages.

**Examples** **EXAMPLE 1** Generate a 3DES Client Key

```
wanbootutil keygen -c -o net=172.16.174.0,cid=010003BA0E6A36,type=3des
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Insert an RSA Private Client Key

```
wanbootutil keymgmt -i -k keyfile \
-s /etc/netboot/172.16.174.0/010003BA0E6A36/keystore -o type=rsa
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Split a PKCS #12 File into Certificate and Key Components

```
wanbootutil p12split -i p12file -c out_cert -k out_key
```

**Exit Status** 0 Successful operation.

non-zero An error occurred. Writes an appropriate error message to standard error.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWwbsup
Interface Stability	Obsolete

**See Also** [wanboot\\_keygen\(1M\)](#), [wanboot\\_keymgmt\(1M\)](#), [wanboot\\_p12split\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** wbemadmin – start Sun WBEM User Manager

**Synopsis** /usr/sadm/bin/wbemadmin

**Description** The `wbemadmin` utility starts Sun WBEM User Manager, a graphical user interface that enables you to add and delete authorized WBEM users and to set their access privileges. Use this application to manage access to groups of managed resources, such as disks and installed software, in the Solaris operating environment.

The `wbemadmin` utility allows you to perform the following tasks:

Manage user access rights	Use the <code>wbemadmin</code> utility to add, delete, or modify an individual user's access rights to a namespace on a WBEM-enabled system.
Manage namespace access rights	Use the <code>wbemadmin</code> utility to add, delete, or modify access rights for all users to a namespace.

The Sun WBEM User Manager displays a Login dialog box. You must log in as root or a user with write access to the `root\security` namespace to grant access rights to users. By default, Solaris users have guest privileges, which grants them read access to the default namespaces.

Managed resources are described using a standard information model called Common Information Model (CIM). A CIM object is a computer representation, or model, of a managed resource, such as a printer, disk drive, or CPU. CIM objects can be shared by any WBEM-enabled system, device, or application. CIM objects are grouped into meaningful collections called schema. One or more schemas can be stored in directory-like structures called namespaces.

All programming operations are performed within a namespace. Two namespaces are created by default during installation:

- `root\cimv2` — Contains the default CIM classes that represent objects on your system.
- `root\security` — Contains the security classes used by the CIM Object Manager to represent access rights for users and namespaces.

When a WBEM client application connects to the CIM Object Manager in a particular namespace, all subsequent operations occur within that namespace. When you connect to a namespace, you can access the classes and instances in that namespace (if they exist) and in any namespaces contained in that namespace.

When a WBEM client application accesses CIM data, the WBEM system validates the user's login information on the current host. By default, a validated WBEM user is granted read access to the Common Information Model (CIM) Schema. The CIM Schema describes managed objects on your system in a standard format that all WBEM-enabled systems and applications can interpret.

You can set access privileges on individual namespaces or for a user-namespace combination. When you add a user and select a namespace, by default the user is granted read access to CIM objects in the selected namespace. An effective way to combine user and namespace access rights is to first restrict access to a namespace. Then grant individual users read, read and write, or write access to that namespace.

You cannot set access rights on individual managed objects. However you can set access rights for all managed objects in a namespace as well as on a per-user basis.

If you log in to the root account, you can set the following types of access to CIM objects:

- Read Only — Allows read-only access to CIM Schema objects. Users with this privilege can retrieve instances and classes, but cannot create, delete, or modify CIM objects.
- Read/Write — Allows full read, write, and delete access to all CIM classes and instances.
- Write — Allows write and delete, but not read access to all CIM classes and instances.
- None — Allows no access to CIM classes and instances.

Context help is displayed in the left side of the `wbemadmin` dialog boxes. When you click on a field, the help content changes to describe the selected field. No context help is available on the main User Manager window.

The `wbemadmin` security administration tool updates the following Java classes in the `root\security` namespace:

- `Solaris_UserAcl` — Updated when access rights are granted or changed for a user.
- `Solaris_namespaceAcl` — Updated when access rights are granted or changed for a namespace.

**Usage** The `wbemadmin` utility is not the tool for a distributed environment. It is used for local administration on the machine on which the CIM Object Manager is running.

**Exit Status** The `wbemadmin` utility terminates with exit status 0.

**Warning** The `root\security` namespace stores access privileges. If you grant other users access to the `root\security` namespace, those users can grant themselves or other users rights to all other namespaces.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWwbcor

**See Also** [mofcomp\(1M\)](#), [wbemlogviewer\(1M\)](#), [init.wbem\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** `wbemconfig` – convert a JavaSpaces datastore to the newer Reliable Log datastore format

**Synopsis** `/usr/sadm/lib/wbem/wbemconfig convert`

**Description** A Reliable Log directory is created that contains the converted data. This directory is named `/var/sadm/wbem/logr`.

The `convert` argument is the only supported option of this command. You should only run this command after stopping WBEM (CIM Object Manager) with the `init.wbem stop` command. Otherwise your data may be corrupted.

This command successfully converts any proprietary custom MOFs you have created in the datastore, but not any CIM or Solaris MOFs you have modified. These will be destroyed. To recompile any modified CIM or Solaris MOFs into the new datastore, run the `mofcomp` command on the MOF files containing the class definitions.

Because the `wbemconfig convert` command invokes the JVM (Java Virtual Machine) to perform conversion of the JavaSpaces datastore, you must be running the same version of the JVM as when the original JavaSpaces storage was created. After the `wbemconfig convert` command is completed, you can change to any version of the JVM you want.

To see what version of the JVM you are running, issue the `java -version` command.

**Options** The following options are supported:

`convert` Convert a JavaSpaces datastore to the newer Reliable Log datastore format.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWwbcou

**See Also** [init.wbem\(1M\)](#), [wbemadmin\(1M\)](#), [wbemlogviewer\(1M\)](#), [mofcomp\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)



**Name** wbemlogviewer – start WBEM Log Viewer

**Synopsis** /usr/sadm/bin/wbemlogviewer

**Description** The `wbemlogviewer` utility starts the WBEM Log Viewer graphical user interface, which enables administrators to view and maintain log records created by WBEM clients and providers. The WBEM Log Viewer displays a Login dialog box. You must log in as root or a user with write access to the `root\cimv2` namespace to view and maintain log files. Namespaces are described in [wbemadmin\(1M\)](#).

Log events can have three severity levels.

- Errors
- Warnings
- Informational

The WBEM log file is created in the `/var/sadm/wbem/log` directory, with the name `wbem_log`. The first time the log file is backed up, it is renamed `wbem_log.1`, and a new `wbem_log` file is created. Each succeeding time the `wbem_log` file is backed up, the file extension number of each backup log file is increased by 1, and the oldest backup log file is removed *if* the limit, which in turn is specified in the log service settings, on the number of logfiles is exceeded. Older backup files have higher file extension numbers than more recent backup files.

The log file is renamed with a `.1` file extension and saved when one of the following two conditions occur:

- The current file reaches the specified file size limit.
- A WBEM client application uses the `clearLog()` method in the `Solaris_LogService` class to clear the current log file.
- A WBEM client application uses the `clearLog()` method in the `Solaris_LogService` class to clear the current log file.
- A user chooses Action->Back Up Now in the Log Viewer application.

Help is displayed in the left panel of each dialog box. Context help is not displayed in the main Log Viewer window.

**Usage** The WBEM Log Viewer is not the tool for a distributed environment. It is used for local administration.

The WBEM Log Viewer allows you to perform the following tasks:

View the logs

Set properties of log files      Click Action->Log File Settings to specify log file parameters and the log file directory.

Back up a log file                  Click Action->Back Up Now to back up and close the current log file and start a new log file.

Open historical log files	Click Action->Open Log File to open a backed-up log file.
Delete an old log file	Open the file and then click Action->Delete Log File. You can only delete backed-up log files.
View log record details	Double-click a log entry or click View->Log Entry Details to display the details of a log record.
Sort the logs	Click View->Sort By to sort displayed entries. You can also click any column heading to sort the list. By default, the log entries are displayed in reverse chronological order (new logs first).

**Exit Status** The `wbemlogviewer` utility terminates with exit status 0.

**Files** `/var/sadm/wbem/log/wbem_log` WBEM log file

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWwbcor

**See Also** [wbemadmin\(1M\)](#), [init.wbem\(1M\)](#), [mofcomp\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** wadmin – manage the configuration of the Sun Java Web Console

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/wadmin *subcommand options*

/usr/sbin/wadmin [-h|--help]

/usr/sbin/wadmin [-V|--version]

**Description** wadmin is a Command Line Interface (CLI) — based tool for managing the configuration of the Sun Java Web Console.

**Subcommands** The following subcommands are supported:

**add** The wadmin add subcommand adds a new shared jar file, a new JAAS login module, or a new shared service property to the console configuration. An optional identifier may be specified; if omitted, the identifier is derived from the resource name. The resource is added when the console is next started.

The format of the add subcommand is:

add -l -a *appname* [-n *id*] *jarpath*

add -m -a *appname* [-n *id*] -b *behavior* -s *service* [-o *name=value*] *classname*

add -p -a *appname* *name=value* [... *name=value*]

**deploy** The wadmin deploy subcommand deploys the specified web application into the console's web server instance. Applications are deployed directly from their installation directories.

The format of the deploy subcommand is:

deploy [-D] -a *appname* -x *context* *app\_path*

**disable** The wadmin disable subcommand disables access to the specified web application in the console's web server instance.

The format of the disable subcommand is:

disable -x *context*

**enable** The wadmin enable subcommand enables access to the specified web application in the console's web server instance.

The format of the enable subcommand is:

enable -x *context*

**list** The wadmin list subcommand lists the resources currently configured for the console; including deployed web applications, shared jar files, login modules, and shared service properties. If no option is specified, all resources are listed.

The format of the `list` subcommand is:

```
list [-a] [-d] [-l] [-m] [-p]
```

**password** The `wadmin password` subcommand manages the administrator and security keystore passwords for the console. Keystore passwords should not be changed while the console is running.

The format of the `password` subcommand is:

```
password [-a] [-k] [-t]
```

```
password -f password_file
```

**reload** The `wadmin reload` subcommand unloads the specified web application from the console's web server instance and reloads the application from its original installation directory.

The format of the `reload` subcommand is:

```
reload -x context
```

**remove** The `wadmin remove` subcommand removes a shared jar file, a login module, or a shared service property from the console configuration. The resource may be specified by its identifier or by its full jarpath or classname. The resource is removed when the console is next started.

The format of the `remove` subcommand is:

```
remove -l -a appname [-n id] jarpath
```

```
remove -m -a appname [-n id] classname
```

```
remove -p -a appname property [...]
```

**undeploy** The `wadmin undeploy` subcommand undeploys the specified web application from the console's web server instance.

The format of the `undeploy` subcommand is:

```
undeploy [-D] -a appname -x context
```

**Options** The following options are supported:

- |                                                         |                                                                                                                                                     |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <code>-h</code>   <code>--help</code>   <code>-?</code> | Display runtime help.                                                                                                                               |
| <code>-V</code>   <code>--version</code>                | Display console version information.                                                                                                                |
| <code>-D</code>   <code>--defer</code>                  | When used with the <code>deploy</code> and <code>undeploy</code> subcommands, defers the deployment or undeployment until the next console restart. |

The operation is deferred by simply adding or removing the corresponding resource registration notification file. If `defer` is not specified, a runtime deployment or undeployment is performed, so that the application becomes available or unavailable in the running console. If the console instance is not currently running, the operation is automatically deferred.

<code>-a</code>   <code>--adminpassword</code>	Specify that the administrator password should be changed, when used with <code>password</code> subcommand. You are prompted for a new password, which must be 8 to 32 characters.
<code>-a</code>   <code>--application</code>	Specify the application name, when used with subcommands other than <code>password</code> subcommand.
<code>-d</code>   <code>--detail</code>	Specify that configuration details of each resource should be displayed.
<code>-f</code>	Specify the fully qualified path name to a file containing one or more password property values. See the description of the <code>password_file</code> argument.
<code>-k</code>   <code>--keypassword</code>	Specify that the keystore password should be changed. You are prompted for a new password, which must be 8 to 32 characters.
<code>-l</code>   <code>--library</code>	Specify that the resource is a shared jar file.
<code>-m</code>   <code>--module</code>	Specify that the resource is a JAAS login module.
<code>-n</code>   <code>--name</code>	Specify the short-hand identifier name for the resource. If omitted, the identifier name is derived from the full resource name.
<code>-o</code>   <code>--option</code>	Specify the name and value of a login module option property, separated by the equals character.
<code>-p</code>   <code>--property</code>	Specify that the resource is one or more shared service properties.
<code>-s</code>   <code>--service</code>	Specify the name of the JAAS login service definition. If omitted, the default console login service definition is assumed.
<code>-t</code>   <code>--trustpassword</code>	Specify that the truststore password should be changed. You are prompted for a new password, which must be 8 to 32 characters.
<code>-x</code>   <code>--context</code>	Specify the web application context path name under which the application is deployed.

<b>Arguments</b>	<i>app_path</i>	The fully qualified file system path to the web application installation directory.
	<i>appname</i>	The application name. The name must be unique among all web applications registered with the console. It is also used as the name of the subdirectory under the console's pre-registration directory which contains

	all the resource registration notification files for that application. Typically, the application package name, plugin identifier, or context path name is specified for the application name.
<i>behavior</i>	The JAAS login module control flag behavior. Must be one of “optional”, “required”, “requisite”, or “sufficient”.
<i>classname</i>	The fully qualified Java package class name of the JAAS login module. The specified class must be included in a shared jar file added to the console.
<i>context</i>	The web application context path name under which the application is deployed. With the .reg suffix, the context forms the file name of the registration notification file for that application.
<i>id</i>	The short-hand identifier name for a jar file or login module resource to be added or removed. The identifier name must be unique among the resources shared for a given application name. With the .reg suffix, it forms the file name of the registration notification file for that resource.
<i>jarpath</i>	The fully qualified file system path to the jar file resource. When the resource is added to the console, its path is included in the classpath of the console's shared class loader.
<i>option</i>	The JAAS login module option property name.
<i>property</i>	The shared service property name.
<i>password_file</i>	The fully qualified path to a password text file that contains the new administrator, keystore, and truststore passwords in property file format. The administrator password is specified using the “adminpassword” property. The keystore password is specified using the “keypassword” property. The truststore password is specified using the “trustpasswd” property. At least one password property must be contained in the password file.
<i>value</i>	The login module option or shared service property value. If the value contains white space, it must be quoted.

**Examples** The following command adds a jar file to be shared in the console:

```
wccadmin add -l -a myapp_1.0 -n wbem /usr/sadm/lib/wbem.jar
```

The following command deploys a new web application:

```
wccadmin deploy -a myapp_1.0 -x myapp /opt/SUNWmyapp/myapp
```

The following command reloads an existing web application:

```
wccadmin reload -x myapp
```

The following command undeploys a web application at the next server restart:

```
wadmin undeploy -D -a myapp_1.0 -x myapp
```

The following command lists all the deployed web applications in the console. If the status field is “running”, the web application is available. If the status field is “stopped”, the web application is disabled and is not available. If all web applications are “stopped”, this typically indicates the console web server instance is not running.

```
wadmin list -a
```

The following command removes a shared jar file:

```
wadmin remove -l -a myapp_1.0 -n wbm
```

The following command changes passwords that are specified in a file:

```
wadmin password -f /home/mydir/console-passwords
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 Subcommand succeeded without error
- 1 Usage error: missing or malformed arguments
- 2 Fatal error: subcommand failed with one or more errors

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWmcon
Interface Stability	Stable

**See Also** [smcwebserver\(1M\)](#), [smreg\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#)

**Name** whodo – who is doing what

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/whodo [-h] [-l] [*user*]

**Description** The whodo command produces formatted and dated output from information in the /var/adm/utmpx and /proc/pid files.

The display is headed by the date, time, and machine name. For each user logged in, device name, user-ID and login time is shown, followed by a list of active processes associated with the user-ID. The list includes the device name, process-ID, CPU minutes and seconds used, and process name.

If *user* is specified, output is restricted to all sessions pertaining to that user.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- h Suppress the heading.
- l Produce a long form of output. The fields displayed are: the user's login name, the name of the tty the user is on, the time of day the user logged in (in *hours:minutes*), the idle time — that is, the time since the user last typed anything (in *hours:minutes*), the CPU time used by all processes and their children on that terminal (in *minutes:seconds*), the CPU time used by the currently active processes (in *minutes:seconds*), and the name and arguments of the current process.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Using the whodo Command

The command:

```
example% whodo
```

produces a display like this:

```
Tue Mar 12 15:48:03 1985
bailey
tty09 mcn 8:51
 tty09 28158 0:29 sh

tty52 bdr 15:23
 tty52 21688 0:05 sh
 tty52 22788 0:01 whodo
 tty52 22017 0:03 vi
 tty52 22549 0:01 sh

xt162 lee 10:20
 tty08 6748 0:01 layers
 xt162 6751 0:01 sh
 xt163 6761 0:05 sh
 tty08 6536 0:05 sh
```



**Environment Variables** If any of the LC\_\* variables ( LC\_CTYPE, LC\_MESSAGES, LC\_TIME, LC\_COLLATE, LC\_NUMERIC, and LC\_MONETARY ) (see [environ\(5\)](#)) are not set in the environment, the operational behavior of [tar\(1\)](#) for each corresponding locale category is determined by the value of the LANG environment variable. If LC\_ALL is set, its contents are used to override both the LANG and the other LC\_\* variables. If none of the above variables is set in the environment, the "C" (U.S. style) locale determines how whodo behaves.

**LC\_CTYPE** Determines how whodo handles characters. When LC\_CTYPE is set to a valid value, whodo can display and handle text and filenames containing valid characters for that locale. The whodo command can display and handle Extended Unix code (EUC) characters where any individual character can be 1, 2, or 3 bytes wide. whodo can also handle EUC characters of 1, 2, or more column widths. In the "C" locale, only characters from ISO 8859-1 are valid.

**LC\_MESSAGES** Determines how diagnostic and informative messages are presented. This includes the language and style of the messages, and the correct form of affirmative and negative responses. In the "C" locale, the messages are presented in the default form found in the program itself (in most cases, U.S. English).

**LC\_TIME** Determines how whodo handles date and time formats. In the "C" locale, date and time handling follow the U.S. rules.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

0 Successful completion.

non-zero An error occurred.

**Files** /etc/passwd System password file  
 /var/adm/utmpx User access and administration information  
 /proc/pid Contains PID

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

**See Also** [ps\(1\)](#), [who\(1\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#)

**Name** wificonfig – WLAN configuration

**Synopsis** wificonfig [-R *root\_path*] [-i *interface*] autoconf  
[*wait*={*n*|forever}]

wificonfig [-R *root\_path*] [-i *interface*] connect profile  
[*wait*={*n*|forever}]

wificonfig [-R *root\_path*] [-i *interface*] connect essid  
[*wait*={*n*|forever}]

wificonfig [-R *root\_path*] [-i *interface*] disconnect

wificonfig [-R *root\_path*] [-i *interface*] getparam  
[*parameter* [...]]

wificonfig [-R *root\_path*] [-i *interface*] setparam  
[*parameter*=*value* [...]]

wificonfig [-R *root\_path*] [-i *interface*] restoredef

wificonfig [-R *root\_path*] [-i *interface*] scan

wificonfig [-R *root\_path*] [-i *interface*] showstatus

wificonfig [-R *root\_path*] [-i *interface*] setwepkey 1|2|3|4

wificonfig [-R *root\_path*] createprofile profile  
[*parameter*=*value* [...]]

wificonfig [-R *root\_path*] deleteprofile *profile1*  
[*profile2* [...]]

wificonfig [-R *root\_path*] showprofile [*profile*]

wificonfig [-R *root\_path*] setprofilewepkey *profile* 1|2|3|4

wificonfig [-R *root\_path*] getprofileparam *profile*  
[*parameter* [...]]

wificonfig [-R *root\_path*] setprofileparam  
[*parameter*=*value* [...]]

wificonfig [-R *root\_path*] history

wificonfig [-R *root\_path*] listprefer

wificonfig [-R *root\_path*] removeprefer *profile*

wificonfig [-R *root\_path*] setprefer *profile* [*n*]

**Description** wificonfig defines a set of subcommands and parameters to configure WiFi interfaces in the system. A driver may support all parameters or a subset of these parameters.

wificonfig uses [rbac\(5\)](#) to control user access to the interface. Only users with the “solaris.network.wifi.config” authorization can manage a WiFi interface, while only users with “solaris.network.wifi.wep” authorizations can configure the WEP (Wired Equivalent Privacy)

key. Other users can only read parameters from the interface. By default, the “solaris.network.wifi.config” and “solaris.network.wifi.wep” authorizations are not granted to any user apart from root.

`wificonfig` comes in two classes of forms. The first class, shown as the first set of synopsis combined with the optional interface name, is the subcommands used to a manipulate a particular WiFi network interface. The second class, shown as the second set of synopsis, is used to create and operate on WiFi Configuration Profiles. A Configuration Profile allows the user to pre-specify a set of parameters which can later be applied to a WiFi network interface using the `connect` or `autoconf` subcommands.

In the interface subcommands, if the interface is not specified (that is, the `-i` option is missing), `wificonfig` selects a random interface from the known WiFi interfaces on the system. If there are multiple WiFi network interfaces on the system, then the selection will be the same over time as long as the number of and names of the WiFi interfaces does not change.

A Configuration Profile can be created for a WLAN by using the `createprofile` subcommand (see the SUBCOMMANDS section). The actual WLAN may be present or not.

`wificonfig` also maintains a list of Configuration Profiles called the Preference List. This list makes automatic configuration possible. When the `autoconf` subcommand is used, `wificonfig` tries to connect to each pre-configured WLAN according to the order of the Preference List. If the Preference List is empty or none of the WLANs in the Preference List can be found, `wificonfig` uses its built-in heuristics to automatically configure the interface. (See the `autoconf` subcommand for the heuristics). A few subcommands (`listprefer`, `setprefer`, `removeprefer`) are defined to manipulate the Preference List.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- `-i interface` Specifies a wireless network interface to do the configuration.
- `-R root_path` Defines the full path name of a directory to use as the `root_path`. This affects the location of the private files where `wificonfig` stores the Configuration Profiles and WEP keys.

**OPERANDS** The following operand is supported:

- `profile` The name of a WiFi profile. It can be a string between 1 and 32 characters. However, “all”, “{preference}”, “{history}”, “{active\_profile}”, and any strings contained in brackets, such as “[foo]”, are not allowed as a profile name.

**SUBCOMMANDS** The following subcommands are supported:

- `autoconf [wait={n|forever}]` Configures the interface automatically. The interface is configured according to the previously saved Preference List found in `/etc/inet/wifi`. `wificonfig` first gets a list of available WLANs by scanning the radio. It then compares the list of available WLANs with the

Preference List. If the Preference List is empty, or if none of the WLANs in the Preference List can be found, `wificonfig` chooses a WLAN to connect to using the following priorities: 1) the WLANs without encryption, 2) the WLANs with stronger signal strength, and 3) the WLANs with higher transmit rates.

If the WLANs in the Preference list are available, the user can specify the number of seconds to wait before `autoconf` returns using the `wait` option. By default (without the `wait` option), `autoconf` returns within 10 seconds. If “*forever*” or -1 follows the `wait` option, `wificonfig` waits until the NIC is successfully connected to the WLAN specified by the profile in the Preference list.

The “`solaris.network.wifi.config`” authorization is required for this subcommand.

The WiFi device driver can not guarantee to retain the state for the connection when it is not held open. For this reason, it is strongly recommended that the `plumb` subcommand for `ifconfig(1M)` is done before the `wificonfig autoconf` subcommand is given.

```
connect profile[wait={n|forever}]
connect ssid[wait={n|forever}]
```

Connects to a wireless network according to a pre-configured “profile”. If the specified Configuration Profile exists in `/etc/inet/wifi`, the `connect` subcommand uses that Configuration Profile to configure the interface. That profile subsequently becomes the current active profile of the interface after the `connect` subcommand succeeds. If no existing Configuration Profile matches the specified name, the behavior of the `connect` subcommand is equivalent to the `restoredef` subcommand, except that the “`ssid`” parameter is set as “`profile`”.

If the WLANs in the Preference list are available, the user can specify the number of seconds to wait before `connect` returns using the `wait` option. By default (without the `wait` option), `connect` tries for 10 seconds. If “*forever*” or -1 follows the `wait` option, `wificonfig` tries until the NIC is successfully connected to the profile or `ssid` that was specified.

The connect subcommand prints one of the following lines depending on whether or not a Configuration Profile was found for the specified name:

```
Connecting to profile <name>
Connecting to essid <name>
```

The “solaris.network.wifi.config” authorization is required for this subcommand.

The WiFi device driver can not guarantee to retain the state for the connection when it is not held open. For this reason, it is strongly recommended that the `plumb` subcommand for `ifconfig(1M)` is done before the `wifconfig autoconf` subcommand is given.

`disconnect`

Disconnects the interface from the currently associated wireless network. The interface associates with none of the wireless networks.

The “solaris.network.wifi.config” authorization is required for this subcommand.

`getparam [parameter [...]]`  
`setparam [parameter=value [...]]`

Gets or sets parameters in the network interface. This does not affect any profile. The `setprofileparam` subcommand can be used to set and change parameters in a profile that has already been created.

The `setparam` subcommand without any parameters displays the set of parameters supported by the network interface, including whether they are read/write or read only. The `getparam` subcommand without any parameters displays all the parameters and their values.

The `setparam wepkey1|wepkey2|wepkey3|wepkey4` subcommand requires the “solaris.network.wifi.wep” authorization. For all other parameters, the `setparam` subcommand requires the “solaris.network.wifi.config” authorization.

For example,

```
$ wifconfig setparam <parameter1=value1> [parameter2=value2 [...]]
$ wifconfig getparam <parameter1> [parameter2 [...]]
```

`wifconfig` currently supports the following parameters (the values are case insensitive).

*bssid*

MAC address of the associated Access Point. The valid value is a hex value of 6 bytes. The *bssid* can also be the IBSSID in an ad-hoc configuration. If the network interface is not connected to any WLAN, then the string “none” is shown instead of a 6 byte MAC address. Otherwise, the network interface is connected to a WLAN. The default value is “none”. This parameter is read-only.

*ssid*

Network name. The valid value is a string of up to 32 chars. If *ssid* is an empty string, the driver automatically scans and joins the WLAN using the built-in heuristics. The default value is an empty string.

*bsstype*

Specifies whether the Infrastructure Mode or Ad-Hoc Mode is used. The valid values are “ap”, “bss”, or “infrastructure” to join a WLAN through an Access Point, that is, to use infrastructure mode. The valid values are “ibss” or “ad-hoc” to join a peer-to-peer WLAN (also named “ad-hoc”). The valid value of “auto” automatically switches between the two types. The default value is “infrastructure”.

*createibss*

Specifies whether to create an ad-hoc network (also called an *IBSS* if the connect does not result in finding the desired network. This enables the user to start an ad-hoc network so that other hosts can join. The valid values are YES to start a new ad-hoc WLAN (instead of joining one) and NO to not start an ad-hoc WLAN. The default value is NO. The NIC always tries to join a WLAN first. If this is successful, the setting of *createibss* is ignored.

*channel*

An integer indicating the operating frequency. This channel number varies by regulatory domain. When the channel number is obtained by the `getparam` subcommand, the value indicates the actual channel the card uses to connect to the network. The channel number is set by the `setparam` subcommand, and the value is only applicable when the card is in ad-hoc

mode. It indicates the operating channel of the *IBSS*. The default value is the channel number on the card.

*rates*

Specifies the transmission rates. The valid values (in Mbit/s) are 1, 2, 5.5, 6, 9, 11, 12, 18, 22, 24, 33, 36, 48, and 54. A NIC may support multiple transmission rates depending on its capability. This is the only parameter that accepts multiple values. When multiple values are supplied to set this parameter, each value must be separated by a comma (,). See the *EXAMPLES* section for details. The default values are the data rates supported by the chip.

*powermode*

Specifies the power management mode. The valid values are “off” to disable power management, “mps” for maximum power saving, and “fast” for the best combination of speed and power saving. The default value is “off”.

*authmode*

Specifies the authorization type. The valid values are “opensystem” for an open system, where anyone can be authenticated and “shared\_key” for a Shared Key authentication mode. The default value is “opensystem”.

*encryption*

Specifies the encryption algorithm to be used. The valid values are “none” for no encryption algorithm and “wep” to turn on WEP encryption. The default value is “none”.

*wepkey1|wepkey2|wepkey3|wepkey4*

A maximum of 4 WEP keys (indexed 1 through 4) can be set in a NIC. They are write-only parameters which can be set by the `setparam` subcommand, but cannot be read back by the `getparam` subcommand. WEP keys can either be set by the `setwepkey` or the `setparam` subcommand. `setparam` uses plain text but it's scriptable. See the `setwepkey` subcommand for more information about how a WEP key is encoded. Setting WEP keys requires “solaris.network.wifi.wep” authorization.

When these subcommands are used to set a WEP key, any user on the system can read the key from the `ps(1)` output. Thus, the `setwepkey` subcommand is recommended for setting the WEP keys since it does not allow `ps(1)` to read the keys.

*wepkeyindex*

Specifies the encryption keys. The valid values are 1 to use `wepkey1`, 2 to use `wepkey2`, 3 to use `wepkey3`, and 4 to use `wepkey4`. The default value is 1. This subcommand is only valid when WEP is on.

*signal*

Specifies the strength of the received radio signal. The valid values are 0 - 15, where 0 is the weakest signal and 15 is the strongest signal. This parameter is read-only and indicates the radio signal strength received by the NIC.

*radio*

Specifies whether the radio is turned on or off. The valid values are “on” to turn on the radio and “off” to turn off the radio. The default value is “on”.

`restoredef`

Forces the NIC to restore the network interface to use the default values for all the parameters. See the `getparam` and `setparam` subcommands for the default values of the parameters.

The “`solaris.network.wifi.config`” authorization is required for this subcommand.

`scan`

Scans and lists the currently available WLANs.

`showstatus`

Display the basic status of a WLAN interface. If the WLAN interface is connected, the basic status includes: the name of the current active profile, the name of the network, the `bssid`, whether the network is encrypted or not, and the signal strength.

`setwepkey 1|2|3|4`

Sets one of the 4 WEP encryption keys. WEP keys are used to encrypt the content of the network packets which are transmitted on air. There are 4 WEP keys in the NIC according to the 802.11 standards. The `setwepkey` subcommand is used to update one of the 4 keys by prompting the user for the key. The user must enter the key twice. The input is not echoed. For example, to update `setwepkey2`:



```
example% wificonfig -i ath0 setwepkey 2
input wepkey2: < user input here>
confirm wepkey2: < user input here>
```

A WEP key can be 5 bytes or 13 bytes long. There are two ways to enter a WEP key, by ASCII values or by hex values. If the user enters 5 or 13 characters, it is considered the ASCII representation of the key. If the user enters 10 or 26 characters, it is considered the hex representation of the key. For example “1234” is equivalent to “6162636465”. If the user enters other number of characters, the subcommand fails. WEP keys are write-only; they cannot be read back via `wificonfig`.

The WEP keys can also be set in plain text form by the `setparam` subcommand. This makes setting WEP keys scriptable (see the parameters of `setparam` for the details).

The “`solaris.network.wifi.wep`” authorization is required for this subcommand.

The following profile subcommands are supported:

<code>createprofile <i>profile</i> [parameter=value] [...]</code>	Creates a Configuration Profile named <i>profile</i> off-line. The specified parameters are saved as items of this Configuration Profile. The user can specify a group of parameters. At a minimum, the <i>ssid</i> must be specified.
<code>deleteprofile <i>profile1</i> [<i>profile2</i> [...]]</code>	<p>The “<code>solaris.network.wifi.config</code>” authorization is required for this subcommand.</p> <p>Deletes one or more Configuration Profiles according to the specified names. If the specified Configuration Profile does not exist, this subcommand fails. The wild-card “all” can be used to delete all profiles.</p> <p>The “<code>solaris.network.wifi.config</code>” authorization is required for this subcommand.</p>

`showprofile` [*profile*]

Displays the parameters in the Configuration Profile according to the specified *profile*. WEP (wired equivalent privacy) keys are not printed because they are write-only parameters. If no *profile* is specified, all the profiles are shown.

`setprofilewepkey` 1|2|3|4

Sets one of the 4 WEP encryption keys in the specified Configuration Profile “*profile*”. Like the other `profile` subcommands, `setprofilewepkey` does not affect the configuration of a network interface, even if a WiFi interface is currently running with the specified profile. In order for the modified profile to be applied to the network interface, the `connect` or `autoconf` subcommands have to be used after the profile has been updated.

Other than that difference, the usage of `setprofilewepkey` is the same as the `setwepkey` subcommand. For example, to update `wepkey 2` in profile “*home*”:

```
example% wificonfig setprofilewepkey home 2
input wepkey2: < user input here>
confirm wepkey2: < user input here>
```

The “`solaris.network.wifi.wep`” authorization is required for this subcommand.

`getprofileparam` *profile* [*parameter*] [...]]  
`setprofileparam` *profile* [*parameter*=*value*] [...]]

Gets or sets parameters in the specified Configuration Profile “*profile*”. Like the other `profile` subcommands, these subcommands do not affect the configuration of a network interface, even if a WiFi interface is currently running with the specified profile. In order for the modified profile to be applied to the network interface, the

connect or autoconf subcommands have to be used after the profile has been updated.

A `getprofileparam` without any parameters will display all the parameters and their values.

“Solaris.network.wifi.wep” authorization is required when the `setparam` subcommand is used with the `wepkey1|wepkey2|wepkey3|wepkey4` parameter. For all other parameters, the `setparam` subcommand requires “solaris.network.wifi.config” authorization.

For example, to change the settings for the “home” Configuration Profile, use:

```
$ wificonfig setprofileparam home <parameter1=value1> \
[parameter2=value2 [...]]
$ wificonfig getprofileparam home <parameter1> [parameter2 [...]]
```

The set of parameters and their allowed values are the same as those specified for the `setparam` subcommand.

`history`

Lists the WLANs in the History List. `wificonfig` automatically records the WLANs that appear in every scanning attempt. The History List contains a maximum of 10 records of the most recent WLANs, sorted by time. These records can be listed by using this subcommand.

`listprefer`

Lists the content of the Preference List.

`removeprefer profile`

Removes one or more profiles from the Preference List. The wild-card “all” can be used to delete all profiles.

The “solaris.network.wifi.config” authorization is required for this subcommand.

`setprefer profile [n]`

Sets the position of a *profile* in the Preference List. This may add or change

the position of a *profile* in the Preference List. The valid values of “*n*” range from 1 to 10. If “*n*” is missing, the default value of 1 is assumed. If the specified position is already occupied, the occupying *profile* is moved lower on the list. If “*n*” is off the end of the list, *profile* is added to the end of the list. The Preference List can also be created by using this subcommand. If the `autoconf` subcommand is used at a later time, `wificonfig` tries to join the WLANs according to the Preference List.

The “`solaris.network.wifi.config`” authorization is required for this subcommand.

#### Examples EXAMPLE 1 Listing the Parameters Supported by a Driver

To display what parameters the *ath* driver supports and the read/write modes of the parameters:

```
% wificonfig -i ath0 setparam
 parameter property
 bssid read only
 essid read/write
 bsstype read/write
 rates read/write
 authmode read/write
 encryption read/write
 wepkeyindex read/write
 signal read only
```

#### EXAMPLE 2 Getting and Setting Parameters on the WiFi interface

To get the current rates and signal strength from the driver:

```
% wificonfig -i ath0 getparam rates signal
ath0:
 rates = 1,2,5.5,11
 signal = 10
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Managing Configuration Profiles

A Configuration Profile can be created offline and then connected to the network with the created Configuration Profile. The following series of commands creates the Configuration Profile, displays the contents of that profile, and connects to the network with the Configuration Profile:

```
% wificonfig createprofile myXXX essid=rover encryption=WEP \
 wepkey1=12345
% wificonfig showprofile myXXX
[myXXX]
 essid=rover
 encryption=WEP
 wepkey1=[secret]

% ifconfig ath0 plumb
% wificonfig -i ath0 connect myXXX
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Managing the Preference List

A profile can be added to the Preference List and then used by the `autoconf` subcommand. The following series of commands adds a profile named `myXXX` to the top of the Preference List, automatically connects `ath0` to the first available WLAN in the Preference List, and removes `my_neighbor` from the Preference List

```
% wificonfig setprefer myXXX 1
% ifconfig ath0 plumb
% wificonfig -i ath0 autoconf
% wificonfig removeprefer my_neighbor
```

**EXAMPLE 5** Viewing the History List

To display the history of the WLANs:

```
% wificonfig history

WLAN history:

 essid bssid encryption last seen
 myXXX 00:0f:24:11:12:14 WEP Fri Sep 13 09:15:24 2004
 my_office_ssid 00:0f:24:11:12:15 WEP Fri Sep 13 13:20:04 2004
 my_neighbor1 00:0f:24:11:12:16 NONE Fri Sep 14 08:01:26 2004
 my_neighbor2 00:0f:24:11:12:17 WEP Fri Sep 18 21:33:12 2004
```

**EXAMPLE 6** Automatic Configuration

To configure the interface according to the previously saved Preference List:

```
% ifconfig ath0 plumb
% wificonfig -i ath0 autoconf
```

If the Preference List is empty, or none of the WLANs listed by the Preference List can be found, `wificonfig` uses the default configuration, directs the interface to scan and join the WLAN using the built-in heuristics specified above.

**EXAMPLE 7** Connecting To a WLAN

To search for a Configuration Profile with the name `myXXX` and configure the interface accordingly:

```
% ifconfig ath0 plumb
% wificonfig -i ath0 connect myXXX
```

If the specified Configuration Profile does not exist, `wificonfig` interprets it as an *ssid* and sets `ath0` to use *ssid myXXX*, and no other parameters are set.

**EXAMPLE 8** Displaying the Content of a Configuration Profile

To print the parameters of the previously Configured Profile named `my_home_ssid`:

```
% wificonfig showprofile my_home_ssid
```

**EXAMPLE 9** Monitoring the link status

To monitor the link status:

```
% wificonfig -i ath0 showstatus
ath0:
 linkstatus: not connected,
```

or

```
ath0:
 linkstatus: connected
 active profile: [home]
 ssid: myhome
 bssid: 00:0b:0e:12:e2:02
 encryption: WEP
 signal: medium(10)
```

**EXAMPLE 10** Scanning for available networks

To scan for available networks:

```
% wifconfig -i ath0 scan
ssid bssid type encryption signal
level
ietf64-secure 00:0b:0e:12:e2:02 access point WEP 9
roomlinx 00:40:96:a1:13:70 access point none 6
ietf64 00:0b:0e:13:32:00 access point none 3
ietf64-secure 00:0b:0e:13:32:02 access point WEP 3
ietf64 00:0b:0e:12:e2:00 access point none 9
ietf64-secure 00:0b:0e:12:e4:c2 access point WEP 8
ietf64 00:0b:0e:12:e4:c0 access point none 8
roomlinx 00:40:96:a0:aa:aa access point none 1
roomlinx 00:40:96:a0:ab:39 access point none 8
```

- Exit Status**
- 0 Successful operation
  - 1 Fatal Error; the operation failed. For example, a connect failed to associate with an Access Point.
  - 2 Improper Use; help information will be printed
  - 3 Minor error

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWwlanr, SUNWwlanu
Interface Stability	Unstable

**See Also** [ps\(1\)](#), [ifconfig\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [ath\(7D\)](#)

**Name** wpa2 – WPA and WPA2 protocol daemon

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/inet/wpa2 [-i *interface*] [-k *pre\_shared\_key\_name*]

**Description** The wpa2 daemon provides common client functionality for the WiFi Protected Access (WPA) versions 1 and 2, as defined by IEEE802.11i standard. WPA was created by the WiFi Alliance, an industry trade group. WPA implements the majority of the IEEE 802.11i standard, and was intended as an intermediate measure to take the place of Wired Equivalent Privacy (WEP) while 802.11i was prepared. WPA2 implements the full standard.

wpa2 provides the following WPA/IEEE 802.11i features:

- WPA-PSK (“WPA-Personal”)
- Key management for CCMP, TKIP, WEP104, WEP40

Stop and start the wpa2 daemon using `dladm(1M)`. Use:

```
dladm connect-wifi
```

...to start the wpa2 daemon. Use:

```
dladm disconnect-wifi
```

...to stop the daemon.

**Options** The following options are supported:

-i *interface*

Specify a WiFi Link interface to start the wpa2 daemon.

-k *pre\_shared\_key\_name*

Specify the pre-shared key used for the WiFi Link.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Starting the wpa2 Daemon on Specific WiFi Link

To create the WPA key psk, enter the following command:

```
dladm create-secobj -c wpa psk
```

To use key psk to connect to ESSID wlan on link ath0, enter the following command:

```
dladm connect-wifi -k psk -e wlan ath0
```

EXAMPLE 2 Stopping the wpa2 Daemon on Specific WiFi Link

To stop the daemon on the link ath0, enter:

```
dladm disconnect-wifi ath0
```



**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWwpau, SUNWwpar
Interface Stability	Uncommitted

**See Also** [svcs\(1\)](#), [dladm\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

**Notes** The wpaad service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/wpa: <link>
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcadm\(1M\)](#) command.

**Name** wraacct – write extended accounting records for active processes and tasks

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/wraacct -i *id\_list* [-t *record\_type*]  
           {process | task}

**Description** The wraacct utility allows the administrator to invoke the extended accounting system, if active, to write intermediate records representing the resource usage of a selected set of processes or tasks. For tasks, a *record\_type* option is also supported, allowing the administrator to request the writing of:

- an interval record, which reflects task usage since a previous interval record (or since task creation if there is no interval record), or
- a partial record, which reflects usage since task creation.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- i *id\_list*           Select the IDs of the tasks or processes to write records for. Specify *id\_list* as a comma- or space-separated list of IDs, presented as a single argument. For some shells, this requires appropriate quoting of the argument.
- t *record\_type*       Select type of record to write for the selected task or process. For tasks, *record\_type* can be `partial` or `interval`. `partial` is the default type, and the only type available for process records.

**Operands** The following operands are supported:

- process     Treat the given ID as a process ID for the purposes of constructing and writing an extended accounting record.
- task        Treat the given ID as a task ID for the purposes of constructing and writing an extended accounting record.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Writing a Partial Record

Write a partial record for all active sendmail processes.

```
/usr/sbin/wraacct -i "pgrep sendmail" process
```

EXAMPLE 2 Writing an Interval Record

Write an interval record for the task with ID 182.

```
/usr/sbin/wraacct -t interval -i 182 task
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0     Successful completion.
- 1     An error occurred.
- 2     Invalid command line options were specified.

3 Pertinent components of extended accounting facility are not active.

**Files** /var/adm/exacct/task

/var/adm/exacct/proc Extended accounting data files.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu

**See Also** [acctadm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** wusbadm – administer wireless USB hosts and devices

**Synopsis** wusbadm list [-h | -d] [-o *field*[, ...]]  
wusbadm associate [-h *host-id*] [[-c [-f]] | -n] [-o]  
wusbadm remove-dev [[-d *dev-id*] | [-h *host-id*]] [-f]  
wusbadm remove-host [-h *host-id*] [-f]  
wusbadm enable-host [-h *host-id*]  
wusbadm disable-host [-h *host-id*]

**Description** The wusbadm command provides a command line interface to administer wireless USB hosts and devices, including listing hosts and devices information, associating the host with the device, removing host or device information from the system, and enabling or disabling hosts.

Before connecting a wireless USB device to a host for the first time, a user needs to set up the association information between them by running the wusbadm associate subcommand. Following this, the user can connect or disconnect the device by simply turning on or off the device radio (perhaps a button on the device, depending on the manufacturer). The device radio's turning on and off are analogous to the hotplugging of wired USB devices.

The association information created by the `associate` subcommand is maintained in the non-volatile memory of the device and the host. On the host, it can be removed by the `remove-dev` or `remove-host` subcommands. On the device, it can be overwritten by another association. For a device is associated with multiple hosts, the way that the device prioritizes or updates its multiple records of association depends on the manufacturer.

Each wusbadm subcommand operates on one of the following objects:

*host-id*

A two-digit number (in the range from 01 to 99) that uniquely identifies a wireless USB host on a system. It is generated when the wusb service (see NOTES section) is successfully enabled and finds the host instance for the first time. The number is maintained until removed by `remove-host` subcommand.

*dev-id*

A five-digit number that uniquely identifies a wireless USB device associated with a wireless USB host. The first two digits are the *host-id* of the wireless USB host with which the device is associated. The last three-digit number (in the range from 001 to 999) is used to differentiate devices associated with the same host. In the five-digit number, the first two digits and the last three are separated by a dot.

*dev-id* is generated during the device association process. It is maintained for the device until removed by the `remove-dev` subcommand or until updated by another association between the same host and device.

**Sub-commands** The following subcommands are supported. Except for the `list` subcommand, each subcommand displays subcommand-specific usage information if you run it without any options or operands.

`list [-h | -d] [-o field[,...]]`

List wireless USB hosts and devices on a system, displaying the ID, state, and type for all hosts and devices. By default, `list` will list all hosts and devices and all fields. Each host and its devices will be displayed as a group. This subcommand supports the following options.

`-o field[,...], --output=field[,...]`

A case-insensitive, comma-separated list of output fields to display. The field name must be one of the fields listed below, or the special value `all` to display all fields. By default (without `-o`), `list` displays all fields.

#### ID

The *host-id* or *dev-id*.

#### TYPE

The host or device types.

For host, the types include `whci` (on-board host) and `hwa` (hot-pluggable host).

For device, the types include `kbd`, `mouse`, `storage`, `printer`, `dwa` (wireless USB hub), `audio`, `video`, and so forth.

#### STATE

There are the following states for the host:

##### enabled

The host is ready to work or is already working, including performing association, connecting devices, performing data communication, and so forth.

##### disabled

The host is not ready to work with any devices and no devices are connected to the host. It might be stopped by a `disable-host` subcommand, or the host might not be available because it is physically unplugged or because of a driver detach.

##### disconnected

The host is not attached to the system. An `hwa` device is in this state after it is unplugged from the USB port on the system.

There are the following states for the device:

##### connected

The device is connected with a host and ready to be opened, or it is already opened and working. By default, the device tries to get into this state after the association is complete and its radio is turned on.

`disconnected`

The device is not connected to a host or not ready to be opened yet. The device might be in this state because its radio is out of range, power is off, hardware problems, and so forth.

`-h, --host`

List the wireless USB hosts only.

`-d, --device`

List the wireless USB devices only.

`associate [-h host-id] [[-c [-f]] | -n] [-o]`

Designate the host to start an association process. Association is the initial step before a wireless USB device can be connected with a wireless USB host.

There are two association models:

**Cable association**

A user connects the device and host with a USB cable first, and then run this subcommand to designate the host to setup the association information with the device. After the association is in effect, the cable is no longer needed in the subsequent connections between the same host and the device.

**Numeric association**

A user turns on the device radio and runs this subcommand to designate the host to talk to the device. A short number is then displayed on both host and device. The user compares the values of the numbers and confirms on both the host and the device.

Following a successful association, the associated USB host and device are able to proceed with the wireless connection process. By default, the association information will be kept both on the host and the device until it is removed or overwritten.

If there are multiple devices available for association, this subcommand will list all of them, enabling a user to choose among them. This subcommand has the following options.

`-h host-id, --host host-id`

Specify the host for which the association will be done. If this option is not specified, this subcommand lists all enabled hosts for users to choose.

`-c, --cable`

Start the cable association process. A user plugs the wireless USB device to the host and runs the `associate` subcommand with this option.

`-n, --numeric`

Start the numeric association process. This subcommand prompts the user to compare the number displayed on the host and the device.

If neither of the preceding two association model options (`-n` or `-c`) is specified, this subcommand prompts the user to specify one of the following association model options.

-f, --force

Start the cable association process. A user plugs the wireless USB device to the host and runs the `associate` subcommand with this option.

-o, --one-time

Indicate that this association is for a one-time connection. That is, after the association, if the device is connected and then disconnected, the association information for this device will be removed from the host system. A user would need to perform another association for the next connection.

`remove-dev` [[-d *dev-id*] | [-h *host-id*]] [-f]

Remove the association information of the wireless USB device from the system. After the removal, the device cannot be connected with the host until the user runs the `associate` subcommand again, for the host and device. This subcommand has the following options.

-d, --device=*dev-id*

Remove the association information of the wireless USB device specified by *dev-id*.

-h *host-id*, --host=*host-id*

Remove the association information of all the wireless USB devices associated with the host specified by *host-id*.

-f, --force

Perform the removal without asking for confirmation. If the device is being connected with the host, then this subcommand will force it to disconnect.

`remove-host` [-h *host-id*] [-f]

Remove the host information from the system, including *host-id* and the association information of all the devices associated with the host. This subcommand is used most often for removing the temporarily used hot-pluggable wireless USB host, for example, a hwa dongle. The host can be brought back by being re-enumerated, for example, physically hot-plugging a hwa dongle. The *host-id* will then be updated and no device association information can be restored. It is not recommended to remove a on-board host. This subcommand has the following options.

-h *host-id*, --host=*host-id*

Specifies the *host-id* to be removed.

-f, --force

Perform the removal without asking for confirmation. If there are one or more devices connected with the host, then force them to disconnect.

`enable-host` [-h *host-id*]

Take the host to the enabled state. By default, the host is in the enabled state. This subcommand has the following option.

-h *host-id*, --host=*host-id*

Specifies the *host-id* to be enabled.

`disable-host [-h host-id] [-f]`

Take the host to the disabled state. The *host-id* and all the association information of the host are maintained. Issuing an `enable-host` subcommand brings the host back to the enabled state. This subcommand has the following options.

`-h host-id, --host=host-id`

Specifies the *host-id* to be disabled.

`-f, --force`

Perform the disable operation without asking for confirmation. If there are one or more devices connected with the host, this option forces them to disconnect.

### Examples **EXAMPLE 1** Listing All Hosts and Devices

The following command lists all wireless USB hosts and devices.

```
wusbadm list
01 enabled hwa
01.001 connected mouse
01.002 connected kbd
02 enabled whci
02.001 connected printer
02.002 disconnected storage
03 disabled hwa
03.001 disconnected storage
03.002 disconnected dwa
```

### **EXAMPLE 2** Associating to a Device Using Cable

The following command associates a device to a specific host (host-id 01), using the cable association approach.

```
wusbadm associate -h 01 -c
Associate a device with host (01) via cable.
Continue (yes/no)?
```

### **EXAMPLE 3** Removing a Device's Association

The following command removes a device's association information from the host system.

```
wusbadm remove-dev -d 01.002
Remove the information of device (01.002) from system.
This device can not be connected with the host until it is associated
again. Continue (yes/no)?
```

### **EXAMPLE 4** Removing Associations for All Devices

The following command removes the association information for all devices associated with a specific host.



**EXAMPLE 4** Removing Associations for All Devices (Continued)

```
wusbadm remove-dev -h 02
Remove the information of all the devices associated with host (02)
from the system.
All the devices associated with the host cannot be connected with it
until they are associated again. Continue (yes/no)?
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

```
0
 Successful operation.
1
 Error: the operation failed. For example, a device failed to associate with a host.
2
 Usage error.
```

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

```
/usr/sbin
```

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWusb
Interface Stability	Committed

**See Also** [attributes\(5\)](#), [hwahc\(7D\)](#), [usba\(7D\)](#)

**Notes** The wusb (wireless USB administration) service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/wusb:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

The wusb service is implemented by the wusbd daemon, a private interface. As with the wusb service, the daemon is started by the SMF. Specify the daemon with the service instance:

```
svc:/system/wusbd:default
```

The wusbd daemon should not be invoked directly.

**Name** xenconsole – xVM console daemon

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/xenconsole

**Description** The xenconsole daemon provides control of the system consoles of Solaris xVM domains. To actually connect to a console, use the `xm console` command. See [xm\(1M\)](#).

Service Management Facility Support The xenconsole service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/xvm/console:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWxvmu
Interface Stability	Volatile

**See Also** [svcs\(1\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [xm\(1M\)](#), [xend\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [xvm\(5\)](#)

<b>Name</b>	xend – xVM control daemon	
<b>Synopsis</b>	/usr/lib/xend	
<b>Description</b>	The xend daemon provides control of the Solaris xVM domains on a system. Its administrative interface is <a href="#">xm(1M)</a> .	
Service Management Facility Support	The xend service is managed by the service management facility, <a href="#">smf(5)</a> , under the service identifier:	
	<code>svc:/system/xvm/xend:default</code>	
	Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using <a href="#">svcadm(1M)</a> . The service's status can be queried using the <a href="#">svcs(1)</a> command.	
xend Properties	The xend service instance has the properties listed below. These properties are administered by means of <a href="#">svcadm(1M)</a> and <a href="#">svcadm(1M)</a> .	
	<code>config/default-nic</code>	Specifies the default network interface used for guest domain networking. By default, the empty string is specified, in which case the first interface listed in the output of <a href="#">dladm(1M)</a> <code>show-link</code> is used. If you need to use a different interface, for example, <code>bge0</code> , you should change this property appropriately.
	<code>config/dom0-cpus</code>	The number of physical CPUs to be used for the virtual CPUs of the control domain ( <code>dom0</code> ). The default of 0 implies that each virtual CPU will be placed on its own physical CPU where possible. Note that physical CPUs can still be shared between <code>dom0</code> and other domains unless they are configured not to do so.
	<code>config/dom0-min-mem</code>	The minimum amount of memory guaranteed to the control domain ( <code>dom0</code> ). The default is 196 (MB). Using the xVM milestone service, <code>svc:/milestone/xvm</code> , or the Hypervisor Visual Panel will change this value to whichever is lower, half of system memory or 2048 (MB).
	<code>config/enable-dump</code>	Controls whether a domain core dump should be created if a domain crashes. Dumps are generated in <code>/var/xen/dump</code> and can be processed with <a href="#">mdb(1)</a> . The default is <code>true</code> .

<code>config/vncpasswd</code>	Sets the password required by any client connecting to a VNC session for a guest domain. Defaults to "" (no password). VNC password authentication is not secure and should not be used for securing guest domain consoles.
<code>config/vnc-listen</code>	Address to listen on for VNC connections. By default this is <code>127.0.0.1</code> , which has a special meaning: only users or processes with the <code>PRIV_VIRT_MANAGE</code> privilege are allowed to connect, and they must be logged on locally. If you set this to any other value, then anyone will be able to connect to VNC sessions, regardless of authorization.
<code>config/xend-relocation-address</code>	Address that xend listens on for relocation requests. If blank or not present, all interfaces are used. The default is <code>127.0.0.1</code> .
<code>config/xend-relocation-hosts-allow</code>	A space-separated list of regular expressions. If the host name of a system matches any one of the given regular expressions, it is allowed to connect and interact with the relocation server, if the server has been enabled by the <code>xend-relocation-server</code> property. The default is <code>^localhost\$</code> .
<code>config/xend-relocation-server</code>	Controls whether the xend relocation server (for live migration) should listen for relocation requests on TCP port 8002. The default is <code>true</code> .
<code>config/xend-unix-server</code>	Controls whether the legacy HTTP server interface should be provided on the local machine. The default is <code>true</code> .

### Examples

**EXAMPLE 1** Modifying an Existing Property

Use the following sequence of commands to modify an existing xend property.

```
svccfg -s svc:/system/xvm/xend:default listprop
svccfg -s svc:/system/xvm/xend:default setprop config/dom0-cpus = 1
svcadm refresh svc:/system/xvm/xend:default
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Enabling Live Migration

By default, xend listens only on the loopback address for requests from the localhost. If you want to allow other machines to live migrate to the local machine, you need to configure xend appropriately. For example:

```
svccfg -s svc:system/xvm/xend
svc:/system/xvm/xend> setprop config/xend-relocation-address = ""
svc:/system/xvm/xend> setprop config/xend-relocation-hosts-allow = \
"^flax$ ^localhost$"
svc:/system/xvm/xend> end
svcadm refresh svc:system/xvm/xend:default && \
svcadm restart svc:system/xvm/xend:default
```

**Files** /var/log/xen/xend.log  
 /var/log/xen/xend-debug.log Log files for xend.  
 /var/xen/dump/ Domain crash dump files.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWxvmu
Interface Stability	Volatile

**See Also** [mdb\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [dladm\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [xm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [privileges\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [xvm\(5\)](#)

**Name** xenstored – xVM store daemon

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/xenstored

**Description** The xenstored daemon provides control of the configuration of Solaris xVM domains.

Service Management Facility Support The xenstored service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

svc:/system/xvm/store:default

The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

The service can be enabled successfully only when running under xVM.

At this time, attempts to restart the daemon can cause the failure of xVM management tools as well as running domains. If the daemon needs to be restarted, a reboot is necessary.

**Files** /var/run/xenstored/tdb Configuration database.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWxvmu
Interface Stability	Volatile

**See Also** [svcs\(1\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [xend\(1M\)](#), [xm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [xvm\(5\)](#)

**Name** xentop – display real-time information about an xVM system and domains

**Synopsis** xentop [-h] [-V] [-d=*seconds*] [-n] [-r] [-v] [-b] [-i=*iterations*]

**Description** The xentop command displays information about the Solaris xVM system and domains in a continually-updating way. It is analogous to the BSD UNIX `top` command.

**Options** The following options are supported:

- b, --batch  
Output data to stdout in batch mode.
- d, --delay=*seconds*  
Set seconds between updates. The default is 3 seconds.
- h, --help  
Display help and exit.
- i, --iterations=*iterations*  
Maximum number of iterations xentop should display before terminating.
- n, --networks  
Display network information.
- r, --repeat-header  
Repeat table header before each domain.
- v, --vcpus  
Display VCPU data.
- V, --version  
Display version information and exit.
- x, --vbds  
Display virtual block device data.

**Interactive Commands** The xentop command supports a set of interactive commands. These are one-letter (case-insensitive) commands that you enter while xentop output is displayed. They are as follows:

- d  
Set delay between updates.
- n  
Toggle display of network information.
- q, Esc  
Quit.
- r  
Toggle table header before each domain.

- s  
Cycle sort order.
- v  
Toggle display of VCPU information.
- (arrow keys)  
Scroll domain display.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWxvmu
Interface Stability	Volatile

**See Also** [virsh\(1M\)](#), [xm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [xVM\(5\)](#)



**Name** xm – xVM management user interface

**Synopsis** xm *subcommand* [*options*] *domain*

**Description** The main interface for command and control of both xVM and guest domains is [virsh\(1M\)](#). Users should use `virsh` wherever possible, as it provides a generic and stable interface to controlling virtualized operating systems. Some xVM operations are not yet implemented by `virsh`. In those cases, the legacy utility `xm` can be used for detailed control.

With minor variations, the basic structure of an `xm` command is:

`xm subcommand [options] domain`

...where *subcommand* is one of the subcommands listed below, *domain* is the domain name (which is internally translated to a numeric domain id), and *options* are subcommand-specific options. The exceptions to this structure occur where a subcommand acts on all domains, on the entire machine, or directly on the xVM hypervisor. These exceptions are obvious in the descriptions of the subcommands.

All `xm` operations rely upon the xVM control daemon, [xend\(1M\)](#). `xend` must be running before any `xm` commands can run. As described in the man page, `xend` runs under the service management facility ([smf\(5\)](#)), which enables the daemon to start when a system is booted.

Most `xm` subcommands require either root privileges or that you assume the Primary Administrator role.

Most `xm` commands act asynchronously, so the fact that an `xm` command returns immediately does not mean that the requested action is complete. Many operations on domains, such as create and shutdown, can take considerable time (30 seconds or more) to complete.

**Subcommands** The `xm` program supports the subcommands listed below. The parameters and options for a given subcommand are described in the description for that subcommand.

`block-attach domain be-dev fe-dev mode [bedomain]`

Create a new virtual block device. This will notify the guest domain of the new virtual block device..

The `block-attach` subcommand has the following arguments and options:

*domain*

The guest domain name to which the device will be attached.

*be-dev*

The device in the backend domain (domain 0) to be exported. This can be specified as a physical partition (for example, `phy:/dev/md/dsk/mydisk`, a ZFS volume or a normal file (`'file:/export/disk-image'`)).

*fe-dev*

The form, either a symbolic name or a numeric id, by which a device should be identified to the guest domain. In Linux, an example of a symbolic name is `/dev/hdc`.

For Solaris guest domains, a single number should be used. The specified number will correspond to a Solaris disk ID. For example, disk ID 3 will have a slice 0 name of `/dev/dsk/c0d3s0`.

*mode*

The access mode for the device from the guest domain. Supported modes are `w` (read/write) and `r` (read-only).

*bedomain*

The backend domain hosting the device. This defaults to domain 0. Currently, no other ID is supported.

See EXAMPLES for an example of the use of this subcommand.

`block-configure domain back_dev front_dev mode [back_domain]`

Change block device configuration. Used for changing CDs in an HVM (hardware-based virtual machine) domain; in particular, changing the backend device to refer to a different ISO file. See `block-attach` for parameter descriptions.

`block-detach domain dev-id`

Destroy a domain's virtual block device. *dev-id* must be the device id given to the device by domain 0. You must run `xm block-list` to determine that number.

`block-list [-l|--long] domain`

List virtual block devices for a domain. The `block-list` subcommand has a single option:

`-l, --long`

Display output in long format.

`console domain`

Attach to domain *domain*'s console. If you have set up your domains to have a text-based login console, you receive a normal login screen.

The `console` supports only paravirtualized domains. The attached console performs similarly to a serial console.

`control-]` exits the virtual console.

`create [option] -f=config-file [name=value]...`

The `create` subcommand creates a domain, according to the specifications in the mandatory *config-file* argument. `create` optionally accepts a set of name-value pairs that can override or add to the variables defined in *config-file*.

*config-file* can be an absolute pathname.

The `create` subcommand returns immediately upon domain startup. However, the starting of a domain is independent of the booting of the guest operating system in that domain and independent of that OS's availability for input.

The `create` and `new` subcommands are legacy features. These subcommands are used for existing domains that use the old configuration file format. New domains should be created with `virt-install(1M)`.

The `create` subcommand has the following options:

- c
- console\_autoconnect  
Attach to the console of the domain as soon as it has started.
- f=*file*, --defconfig=*file*  
Use the given Python configuration script, *file*. The configuration script is loaded after arguments have been processed. Each command-line option sets a configuration variable named after its long option name, and these variables are placed in the environment of the script before it is loaded. Variables for options that can be repeated have list values. Other variables can be set using `var=value` on the command line. After the script is loaded, option values that were not set on the command line are replaced by the values set in the script.
- F=*file*, --config=*file*  
Use the given SXP-format configuration file. This is an internal format; this option is useful only for debugging purposes.
- h, --help  
Display list of options for `create` subcommand.
- help\_config  
Display the available configuration variables (vars) from the configuration script.
- n, --dryrun  
Dry run. Displays the resulting configuration in SXP but does not create the domain.
- p, --paused  
Leave the domain paused after it is created.
- q, --quiet  
Display no messages over the course of domain creation.

`debug-keys` *keys*

Send commands to the hypervisor debugger. The *keys* are as follows:

- % (ASCII 25)  
Trap to `xendbg`.
- C (ASCII 43)  
Trigger a crash dump.
- H (ASCII 48)  
Dump heap info.

N (ASCII 4e)

NMI statistics.

O (ASCII 4f)

Toggle shadow audits.

R (ASCII 52)

Reboot machine.

S (ASCII 53)

Reset shadow page tables.

a (ASCII 61)

Dump timer queues.

d (ASCII 64)

Dump registers.

h (ASCII 68)

Display list of debug keys.

i (ASCII 69)

Dump interrupt bindings.

m (ASCII 6d)

Memory info.

n (ASCII 6e)

Trigger an NMI.

q (ASCII 71)

Dump domain (and guest debug) info.

r (ASCII 72)

Dump run queues.

t (ASCII 74)

Display multi-CPU clock info.

u (ASCII 75)

Dump Non-Uniform Memory Access (NUMA) info.

v (ASCII 76)

Dump Intel's VMCS.

z (ASCII 7a)

Print ioapic info.

*delete domain*

Removes the domain *domain* from xVM domain management. This is the same as the [virsh\(1M\) undefine](#), which should be used in place of this subcommand.

**destroy** *domain*

Immediately terminate the domain *domain*. For the domain OS, this is the equivalent of abruptly removing the power from a physical machine. In most cases, you will want to use the `shutdown` command instead.

**dmesg** [-c]

Displays recent messages in the xVM message buffer; analogous to `dmesg(1M)`. The message buffer contains informational, warning, and error messages created during xVM's operation.

The `dmesg` subcommand supports the following option:

`-c, --clear`  
Clears xVM's message buffer.

**domid** *domain*

Converts a domain name to a domain ID.

Domain IDs change on each boot, whereas names are permanent. See `xVM(5)` for an explanation of the differences among a domain ID, UUID, and name.

**domname** *domain*

Converts a domain ID to a domain name.

**dump-core** *domain* [*output-file*]

Dumps core for the domain *domain*. By default, the domain continues to run after a dump is collected. If *output-file* is not specified, the domain core dump is generated in `/var/xen/dump/`. Core dump files can be large. Solaris guest domain cores can be debugged using `mdb(1)`.

The `dump-core` domain has the following options:

`-C, --crash`  
Crash domain after dumping core.

`-L, --live`  
Dump core without pausing the domain.

**help** [-l, --long]

Displays a list of common `xm` subcommands. `xm help` supports the following option:

`-l, --long` Display a complete list of `xm` subcommands, grouped by function.

**info**

Display information about the xVM host in *name: value* format. The information reported by `info` is useful for inclusion in a bug report.

**list** [-l, --long] [*domain, ...*]

Displays information about one or more domains. If no domains are specified, displays information about all domains.

An example of `list` output:

Name	ID	Mem	VCPUs	State	Time(s)
Domain-0	0	3456	2	r-----	244.7
solaris	1	511	30	-b----	353.8

The fields in this output are as follows:

Name

Domain name

ID

Numeric domain ID.

Mem

Amount of memory, in MB, currently allocated to a domain.

VCPUS

Number of virtual CPUs assigned to a domain.

State

Run state (described below).

Time

Total run time of the domain as accounted for by xVM.

The `State` field in `xm list` output can, for a given domain, display one of the following letters.

r

Running. The domain is currently running on a CPU.

b

Blocked. The domain is not currently running. It is either idle or waiting on I/O.

p

Paused. The domain has been paused, occurring usually as a result of an administrator running `xm pause`. When in a paused state the domain still consumes allocated resources, such as memory, but will not be eligible for scheduling by the xVM hypervisor. See also the `virsh suspend` subcommand.

s

Shutdown. The domain is in the state it was in prior to startup. This state will, most likely, never be visible.

c

Crashed. The domain has crashed, which means that it terminated in an abrupt, unexpected manner. Usually this state can occur only if the domain has been configured not to restart on crash.

d

Dying. The domain is in process of moving to a shutdown or crashed state.

The `list` subcommand supports the following option:

`-l, --long`

Displays more detailed information about each domain than is shown in the standard `list` output table.

`log`

Display the `xend(1M)` log. The log file is `/var/log/xen/xend.log`.

`mem-max domain mem`

Specify the maximum amount of memory a domain is able to use. *mem* is specified in megabytes.

The `mem-max` value might not correspond to the actual memory used in a domain, because a domain might scale down its memory usage to return memory to the OS.

`mem-set domain mem`

Set the amount of memory used by the running domain *domain*. Because this operation requires cooperation from the domain operating system, there is no guarantee that it will succeed.

*Warning:* There is no good way to know in advance how small of a `mem-set` value will make a domain unstable and cause it to crash. Be very careful when using this command on running domains. Solaris guest domains attempt to refuse potentially dangerous settings.

`migrate [options] domain host`

Migrate a domain to another host machine. On the target host machine, the following conditions must obtain for this subcommand to be successful:

- The other host must be running the same version of xVM.
- The migration TCP port must be open and accepting connections from the source host.
- There must be sufficient resources—memory, disk, and so forth—for the domain to run.

See `xend(1M)` for an explanation of how to set up a machine to receive a remote migration.

The domain's accessible disks must reside on some form of shared storage, such as NFS files or iSCSI volumes, and this storage must be accessible to both hosts

The `migrate` subcommand supports the following option:

`-l, --live`

Use live migration. This option migrates the domain between hosts without shutting down the domain.

`network-attach domain [script=scriptname] [ip=ipaddr] [mac=macaddr] [bridge=link] [backend=bedomain] [rate=bandwidth] [vlan=vid]`

Creates a new network device in the domain specified by *domain*. The subcommand has the following arguments:

*domain*

Domain in which the network device is to be created.

*script=scriptname*

Use the specified script name to bring up the network.

*ip=ipaddr*

Passes the specified IP address to the adapter upon creation. This address might be ignored by the specified domain.

*mac=macaddr*

The MAC address that the domain will see on its Ethernet device. If the MAC address is not specified, it will be randomly generated with the `00:16:3e` vendor id prefix.

*bridge=link*

The name of the network link to which to attach a virtual interface, in case you have more than one.

*backend=bedomain*

The backend domain id. By default, this is domain 0. Note that `backend != 0` is not currently operational.

*rate=bandwidth*

Sets the bandwidth limit for this interface. The bandwidth should be expressed in a regular expression defined as follows:

```
^([0-9]+)([GMK]?)([Bb])/s(@([0-9]+)([mu]?)s)?$
```

Note that bandwidth will be rounded up to 1.2M if the figure you input is below that value.

*vlan=vid*

Sets the VLAN ID for this interface.

*network-detach domain dev-id*

Removes the network device from the domain specified by *domain*. *dev-id* is the virtual interface device number within the domain.

*network-list [-l|--long] domain*

List virtual network interfaces for a domain.

`-l, --long`

Display output in long format.

*new domain*

The new subcommand creates (but does not start) the domain defined by the given configuration file.

The `new` and `create` subcommands are legacy features. These subcommands are used for existing domains that use the old configuration file format. New domains should use `virt-install(1M)`.



`-f=file, --defconfig=file`

Use the given Python configuration script, *file*. The configuration script is loaded after arguments have been processed. Each command-line option sets a configuration variable named after its long option name, and these variables are placed in the environment of the script before it is loaded. Variables for options that can be repeated have list values. Other variables can be set using `var=value` on the command line. After the script is loaded, option values that were not set on the command line are replaced by the values set in the script.

`-F=file, --config=file`

Use the given SXP-format configuration file. This is an internal format; this option is useful only for debugging purposes.

`--help_config`

Display the available configuration variables (vars) from the configuration script.

`-n, --dryrun`

Dry run. Displays the resulting configuration in SXP but does not create the domain.

`npiv-add domid [-p virtual_port_WWN] [-n virtual_node_WWN] physical_port_WWN[, physical_port_WWN...]`

Add a configuration entry for the *virtual\_port\_WWN* and associated *virtual\_node\_WWN* to the domain specified by *domid*, along with candidate physical ports on which the virtual port could be created. If virtual port/node WWNs are not specified, they will be generated.

`npiv-disable domid -p virtual_port_WWN`

Delete the specified virtual port and associated storage devices from the domain. The *virtual\_port\_WWN* will be marked as disabled, regardless of whether the deletion succeeds.

`npiv-enable domid -p virtual_port_WWN`

Create the specified virtual port on the first available physical port. The *virtual\_port\_WWN* will be marked as enabled, regardless of whether the creation succeeds.

`npiv-list domid`

List all the virtual port WWNs in the domain along with:

- virtual node WWN
- list of candidate physical ports (see `npiv-add`)
- storage over the virtual port, if any

`npiv-mod domid -p virtual_port_WWN -n virtual_node_WWN physical_port_WWN[, physical_port_WWN...]`

Modify the configuration entry of the *virtual\_node\_WWN* and the *physical\_port\_WWN* list with the specified *virtual\_port\_WWN*.

`npiv-rm domid -p virtual_port_WWN`

Remove the configuration entry of the *virtual\_port\_WWN* from the domain specified by *domid*.

`pause domain`

Pause a domain. When in a paused state the domain still consumes allocated resources, such as memory, but will not be eligible for scheduling by the xVM hypervisor.

`reboot [options] domain`

Reboot a domain. The effect of this subcommand is the same as if the domain had the `init 6` command (see [init\(1M\)](#)) run from the console. Unless `-w` is specified, `reboot` returns as soon as it has initiated the reboot process, which can be significantly before the domain actually reboots.

The `reboot` subcommand supports the following options:

`-a, --all`

Reboot all domains.

`-w, --wait`

Wait for reboot to complete before returning. This might take an extended period, as all services in the domain will have to be shutdown cleanly.

`rename oldname newname`

Renames the domain *oldname* to *newname*.

`restore state-file`

Build a domain from an `xm` save state file. See the `save` subcommand.

`resume domain`

Resume the activities of the domain *domain*, which is in a suspended state as a result of the `suspend` subcommand.

`save domain state-file`

Saves a running domain to a file *state-file*, so that it can later be restored, using the `restore` subcommand. Once saved, the domain will no longer be running on the system, thus the memory allocated for the domain will be free for the use of other domains.

Note that network connections present before the save operation might be severed, as TCP timeouts might have expired.

`sched-credit -d domain [-w weight] -ccap`

Get and set credit scheduler parameters for the specified domain. See [xVM\(5\)](#) for a description of the credit scheduler. Without the `-w` or `-c` options, the current settings for the given domain are shown. Otherwise, the relevant parameter is set.

The parameters to the `sched-credit` subcommand are as follows:

`-c cap, --cap=cap`

Set the maximum amount of CPU a domain can consume. A value of zero (the default) means no maximum is set. This value is expressed in percentage points of a physical CPU. For example, a value of 50 specifies a cap of half a physical CPU.

`-d domain, --domain=domain`  
Domain for which to set scheduling parameters.

`-w weight, --weight=weight`  
Set the relative weight of the domain. A domain with twice the weight will receive twice the CPU time as another domain, if CPU use is in contention. Valid weights are in the range 1-65536 and the default is 256.

`sched-sedf domain period slice latency-hint extratime weight`  
Set Simple EDF scheduler parameters. This scheduler provides weighted CPU sharing in an intuitive way and uses realtime algorithms to ensure time guarantees. The Simple EDF scheduler is not the default scheduler used in xVM.

The parameters to the `sched-sedf` subcommand are as follows:

*domain*  
The domain for which scheduling parameters applies.

*period*  
The normal EDF scheduling usage, in nanoseconds.

*slice*  
The normal EDF scheduling usage, in nanoseconds.

*latency-hint*  
Scaled period if domain is performing heavy I/O.

*extratime*  
Flag for allowing domain to run in extra time.

*weight*  
Another way of setting CPU slice.

`shell`  
Launches an interactive shell.

`shutdown [options] domain`  
Gracefully shuts down a domain. The effect of this subcommand is the same as if the domain had the `init 5` command (see [init\(1M\)](#)) run from the console. This subcommand coordinates with the domain OS to perform graceful shutdown. The duration of the entire shutdown will vary, depending on what services must be shutdown in the domain. The `shutdown` subcommand returns immediately after signalling the domain, unless the `-w` option is used.

The shutdown subcommand supports the following options:

`-a`  
Shutdown all domains.

`-w`  
Wait for the domain to complete shutdown before returning.

**start *domain***

Start the domain specified by *domain*.

**suspend *domain***

Suspend the activities of all services in the domain specified by *domain*.

**sysrq *domain letter***

For the accepted signals in a Linux domain, refer to the Linux documentation. For Solaris signalling the letter b causes the domain to enter `kldb(1)`, the Solaris kernel debugger, if that debugger is loaded. Any other letter has no effect.

**top *domain...***

Invokes the `xentop(1M)` command. Monitor a host and one or more domains in real time.

**unpause *domain***

Moves the domain *domain* out of the paused state. This will allow a previously paused domain to now be eligible for scheduling by the xVM hypervisor. See the `pause` subcommand.

**uptime *domain***

Provides information on resource usage for domain *domain*. Analogous to the `uptime(1)` command.

**vcpu-list *domain***

Lists VCPU information for the domain *domain*. If no domain is specified, the subcommand provides VCPU information for all domains.

**vcpu-pin *domain vcpu cpus***

Pins the VCPU to only run on the specified CPUs. The keyword `all` can be used to apply the *cpus* list to all VCPUs in the domain.

Normally VCPUs can float between available CPUs whenever xVM deems a different run state is appropriate. Pinning can be used to restrict this, by ensuring certain VCPUs can run only on certain physical CPUs.

**vcpu-set *domain vcpu-count***

Enables the number *vcpu-count* of virtual CPUs for the domain in question. Like the `mem-set` subcommand, `vcpu-set` can allocate only up to the maximum virtual CPU count configured at boot time for a domain.

If *vcpu-count* is smaller than the current number of active VCPUs, the highest numbered VCPUs will be hotplug removed. This might have consequences for pinned VCPUs.

Attempting to set the VCPUs to a number larger than the initially configured VCPU count is an error. Trying to set VCPUs to less than one will be silently ignored.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Attach a File as a Read-only Block Device

The following example attaches a file as a read-only block device to a Solaris guest domain, as `/dev/dsk/c0d3`.

EXAMPLE 1 Attach a File as a Read-only Block Device (Continued)

```
xm block-attach solaris1 file:/data/disk.img 3 r
```

EXAMPLE 2 Live Migration of a domU to a Different Host

```
xm migrate --live solaris1 solaris-host2
```

EXAMPLE 3 Pin a Domain's vcpus to Corresponding CPUs

```
xm vcpu-pin solaris1 0 5
```

```
xm vcpu-pin solaris1 1 6
```

EXAMPLE 4 Balloon Down a Domain to Use Less Memory

```
xm mem-set solaris1 512
```

- Authors**
- Sean Dague, sean at dague dot net
  - Daniel Stekloff, dsteklof at us dot ibm dot com
  - Reiner Sailer, sailer at us dot ibm dot com

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWxvmu
Interface Stability	Volatile

**See Also** [kmdb\(1\)](#), [uptime\(1\)](#), [dmesg\(1M\)](#), [init\(1M\)](#), [virsh\(1M\)](#), [virt-install\(1M\)](#), [xend\(1M\)](#), [xentop\(1M\)](#), [xenstored\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [xVM\(5\)](#)

**Name** ypbind – NIS binder process

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/netsvc/yp/ypbind [-broadcast | -ypset | -ypsetme]

**Description** NIS provides a simple network lookup service consisting of databases and processes. The databases are stored at the machine that runs an NIS server process. The programmatic interface to NIS is described in [ypclnt\(3NSL\)](#). Administrative tools are described in [ypinit\(1M\)](#), [ypwhich\(1\)](#), and [ypset\(1M\)](#). Tools to see the contents of NIS maps are described in [ypcat\(1\)](#), and [ypmatch\(1\)](#).

ypbind is a daemon process that is activated at system startup time from the `svc:/network/nis/client:default` service. By default, it is invoked as `ypbind -broadcast`. ypbind runs on all client machines that are set up to use NIS. See [sysidtool\(1M\)](#). The function of ypbind is to remember information that lets all NIS client processes on a node communicate with some NIS server process. ypbind must run on every machine which has NIS client processes. The NIS server may or may not be running on the same node, but must be running somewhere on the network.

The information ypbind remembers is called a *binding* — the association of a domain name with a NIS server. The process of binding is driven by client requests. As a request for an unbound domain comes in, if started with the `-broadcast` option, the ypbind process broadcasts on the net trying to find an NIS server, that is, a ypserv process serving the domain with a name the same as (case sensitive) the name of the domain in the client request. Since the binding is established by broadcasting, there must be at least one NIS server on the net. If started without the `-broadcast` option, ypbind process steps through the list of NIS servers that was created by `ypinit -c` for the requested domain. There must be an NIS server process on at least one of the hosts in the NIS servers file. It is recommended that you list each of these NIS servers by name and numeric IP address in `/etc/hosts`. Though the practice is not recommended, NIS allows you to list servers by numeric address only, bypassing `/etc/hosts`. In such a configuration, [ypwhich\(1\)](#) returns a numeric address instead of a name.

Once a domain is bound by ypbind, that same binding is given to every client process on the node. The ypbind process on the local node or a remote node may be queried for the binding of a particular domain by using the [ypwhich\(1\)](#) command.

If ypbind is unable to speak to the NIS server process it is bound to, it marks the domain as unbound, tells the client process that the domain is unbound, and tries to bind the domain once again. Requests received for an unbound domain will wait until the requested domain is bound. In general, a bound domain is marked as unbound when the node running the NIS server crashes or gets overloaded. In such a case, ypbind will try to bind to another NIS server using the process described above. ypbind also accepts requests to set its binding for a particular domain. The request is usually generated by the [ypset\(1M\)](#) command. In order for ypset to work, ypbind must have been invoked with flags `-ypset` or `-ypsetme`.

- Options**
- broadcast  
Send a broadcast datagram using UDP/IP that requests the information needed to bind to a specific NIS server. This option is analogous to `ypbind` with no options in earlier Sun releases and is recommended for ease of use.
  - ypset  
Allow users from any remote machine to change the binding by means of the `ypset` command. By default, no one can change the binding. This option is insecure.
  - ypsetme  
Only allow root on the local machine to change the binding to a desired server by means of the `ypset` command. `ypbind` can verify the caller is indeed a root user by accepting such requests only on the loopback transport. By default, no external process can change the binding.
- Files**
- `/var/yp/binding/ypdomain/ypservers`  
Lists the servers to which the NIS client is allowed to bind.
  - `/etc/inet/hosts`  
File in which it is recommended that NIS servers be listed.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWnisu

**See Also** [svcs\(1\)](#), [ypcat\(1\)](#), [ypmatch\(1\)](#), [ypwhich\(1\)](#), [ifconfig\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [ypinit\(1M\)](#), [ypset\(1M\)](#), [ypclnt\(3NSL\)](#), [hosts\(4\)](#), [ypfiles\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

**Notes** `ypbind` supports multiple domains. The `ypbind` process can maintain bindings to several domains and their servers, the default domain is the one specified by the [domainname\(1M\)](#) command at startup time.

The `-broadcast` option works only on the UDP transport. It is insecure since it trusts “any” machine on the net that responds to the broadcast request and poses itself as an NIS server.

The `ypbind` service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/nis/client:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service’s status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

**Name** ypinit – set up NIS client

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/ypinit [-c] [-m] [-s *master\_server*]

**Description** ypinit can be used to set up an NIS client system. You must be the superuser to run this command. This script need not be used at all if [ypbind\(1M\)](#) is started with the -broadcast option (it is invoked with this option from the svc:/network/nis/client:default service).

Normally, ypinit is run only once after installing the system. It may be run whenever a new NIS server is added to the network or an existing one is decommissioned.

ypinit prompts for a list of NIS servers to bind the client to; this list should be ordered from the closest to the furthest server. It is recommended that you list each of these NIS servers by name and numeric IP address in /etc/hosts. Though the practice is not recommended, NIS allows you to list servers by numeric address only, bypassing /etc/hosts. In such a configuration, [ypwhich\(1\)](#) returns a numeric address instead of a name.

ypinit stores the list of servers to which a client can bind in the file /var/yp/binding/*domain*/ypservers. This file is used by ypbind when run without the -broadcast option.

**Options**

- c  
Set up a ypclient system.
- m  
Build a master ypserver data base.
- s *master\_server*  
Slave data base. *master\_server* must be the same master configured in the YP maps and returned by the ypwhich -m command.

**Files**

- /etc/hosts  
File in which it is recommended that NIS servers be listed.
- /var/yp/binding/*domain*/ypservers  
Lists the servers to which the NIS client is allowed to bind.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWnisu

**See Also** [svcs\(1\)](#), [ypwhich\(1\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [ypbind\(1M\)](#), [sysinfo\(2\)](#), [hosts\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)



**Notes** The NIS `client` service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/nis/client:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

**Bugs** `ypinit` sets up the list of NIS servers only for the current domain on the system when it is run, that is, the domain returned by the `SI_SRPC_DOMAIN` command to [sysinfo\(2\)](#). Care should be taken to ensure that this is the same as the desired domain for NIS client processes.

**Name** ypmake – rebuild NIS database

**Synopsis** `cd /var/yp ; make [map]`

**Description** The file called `Makefile` in `/var/yp` is used by [make\(1S\)](#) to build the Network Information Service (NIS) database. With no arguments, `make` creates `dbm` databases for any NIS maps that are out-of-date, and then executes [yppush\(1M\)](#) to notify slave databases that there has been a change.

If you supply a `map` on the command line, `make` will update that map only. Typing `make passwd` will create and `yppush` the password database (assuming it is out of date). Likewise, `make ipnodes` and `make networks` will create and `yppush` the `ipnodes` and `network` files, `$(INETDIR)/ipnodes` and `$(DIR)/networks`.

There are four special variables used by `make`: `DIR`, which gives the directory of the source files; `NOPUSH`, which when non-null inhibits doing a `yppush` of the new database files; `INETDIR`, which gives the directory of the `ipnodes` source file; and `DOM`, which is used to construct a domain other than the master's default domain. The default for `DIR` is `/etc`, and the default for `INETDIR` is `/etc/inet`. The default for `NOPUSH` is the null string.

Refer to [ypfiles\(4\)](#) and [ypserv\(1M\)](#) for an overview of the NIS service.

If a NIS to LDAP (N2L) configuration file, `/var/yp/NISLDAPmapping`, is present, the NIS server components run in N2L mode. In N2L mode, the server components use a new set of map files with an LDAP-prefix, based on the LDAP DIT. In N2L mode, authoritative NIS information is obtained from the DIT. The NIS source files and `ypmake` have no role, and they should not be used. If `ypmake` is accidentally run, then the server components will detect this, and will log a warning message. For additional information, see [ypfiles\(4\)](#).

**Files**

<code>/var/yp</code>	Directory containing NIS configuration files.
<code>/etc/inet/hosts</code>	System hosts file.
<code>/etc</code>	Default directory for source files.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWypu
Interface Stability	Evolving

**See Also** [make\(1S\)](#), [makedbm\(1M\)](#), [ypbind\(1M\)](#), [yppush\(1M\)](#), [ypserv\(1M\)](#), [ypclnt\(3NSL\)](#), [NISLDAPmapping\(4\)](#), [ypfiles\(4\)](#), [ypserv\(4\)](#)

**Notes** The NIS makefile is only used when running the `ybserv(1M)` server to provide NIS services. See `ypfiles(4)` for more details.

The Network Information Service (NIS) was formerly known as Sun Yellow Pages (YP). The functionality of the two remains the same. Only the name has changed. The name Yellow Pages is a registered trademark in the United Kingdom of British Telecommunications plc, and may not be used without permission.

**Name** ypmap2src – convert NIS maps to NIS source files

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/netsvc/yp/ypmap2src [-t]  
 [ [-c *custom-map-name*]]... [-d *domain*] -o *output-directory*  
 [ [ *source-file*]]...

**Description** Use the `ypmap2src` utility to convert standard NIS maps to approximations of the equivalent NIS source files. This utility functions like the reverse of [ypmake\(1M\)](#).

The primary use for `ypmap2src` is to convert from a NIS server that uses the NIS to LDAP(N2L) transition mechanism, which does not use NIS source files, to traditional NIS, where source files are required. The `ypmap2src` utility is also used by NIS administrators who wish to discover the contents of NIS maps for which the sources are not available.

Generally, this operation is not necessary. More often, administrators will switch from traditional NIS to N2L in anticipation of the eventual transition to LDAP naming. When this switch is made, authoritative information is moved into the LDAP DIT, and the NIS sources have no further role. N2L supports NIS clients until such time as they can be converted to LDAP, and the NIS service suspended.

The `ypmap2src` utility does not guarantee that the files that are generated are identical to the original NIS source files. Some information might have been thrown away by `ypmake` and cannot be recovered. N2L also might have updated the maps to reflect changes made by LDAP clients. It is essential that the sources generated are checked to confirm no problems have occurred.

Per entry comment fields, from existing source files, are not merged into source files generated by `ypmap2src`. If a user wishes N2L to maintain comment information, then the `NISLDAPmapping` configuration file should be modified so that the comment fields are mapped into LDAP. This will ensure that the comments are visible to native LDAP clients and present in the N2L map files.

When `ypmap2src` is run, it will take up-to-date comments from the map file and insert them into the NIS source file generated.

**Handling Custom Maps** `ypmap2src` only knows about the standard NIS maps and standard source to map conversion. If an advanced user has changed these, that is, the user has modified the NIS makefile, the equivalent changes must also be made to the `ypmap2src` script.

**Options** `ypmap2src` supports the following options:

- c Specifies that *custom-map-name* should be converted to a source file by running `makedbm -u` on it. This is a short cut so that simple custom maps can be handled without editing `ypmap2src`.
- d *domain-name* Specifies the domain to convert. The *domain-name* can be a fully qualified file path, such as `/var/yp/a.b.c`, or just a domain name, `a.b.c`. In the latter case, `ypmap2src` looks in `/var/yp` for the domain directory.

- o *dest*** Specifies the destination directory for the converted files. A directory other than `/etc` should be specified. The maps generated are copied to the correct location, `/etc`, `/etc/security` or other source directory, as appropriate.
- t** Specifies that traditional NIS maps, without N2L's LDAP\_ prefix, should be converted. By default, maps with the LDAP\_ prefix are converted.

**Operands** `ypmap2src` supports the following operands:

- source-file*** Lists the standard source files to convert. If this option is not given, then all the standard source files, plus any custom files specified by the `-c` option, are converted.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWypu
Interface Stability	Obsolete

**See Also** [ypmake\(1M\)](#), [ypserv\(1M\)](#), [NISLDAPmapping\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

*System Administration Guide: Naming and Directory Services (DNS, NIS, and LDAP)*

**Name** yppoll – return current version of a NIS map at a NIS server host

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/yppoll [-d *ypdomain*] [-h *host*] *mapname*

**Description** The yppoll command asks a ypserv( ) process what the order number is, and which host is the master NIS server for the named map.

**Options** -d *ypdomain* Use *ypdomain* instead of the default domain.  
-h *host* Ask the ypserv process at *host* about the map parameters. If *host* is not specified, the NIS server for the local host is used. That is, the default host is the one returned by [ypwhich\(1\)](#).

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWnisu

**See Also** [ypwhich\(1\)](#), [ypfiles\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** yppush – force propagation of changed NIS map

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/netsvc/yp/yppush [-v] [-h *host*] [-d *domain*]  
[-p *#parallel-xfrs*] *mapname*

**Description** yppush copies a new version of a Network Information Service (NIS) map from the master NIS server to the slave NIS servers. It is normally run only on the master NIS server by the `Makefile` in `/var/yp` after the master databases are changed. It first constructs a list of NIS server hosts by reading the NIS `ypservers` map within the *domain*. Keys within the `ypservers` map are the ASCII names of the machines on which the NIS servers run.

A “transfer map” request is sent to the NIS server at each host, along with the information needed by the transfer agent (the program that actually moves the map) to call back the yppush. When the attempt has completed (successfully or not), and the transfer agent has sent yppush a status message, the results can be printed to `stdout`. Messages are also printed when a transfer is not possible, for instance, when the request message is undeliverable, or when the timeout period on responses has expired.

Refer to [ypfiles\(4\)](#) and [ypserv\(1M\)](#) for an overview of the NIS service.

**Options** The following options are supported:

-d *domain*                Specifies a *domain*.  
-h *host*                    Propagates only to the named *host*.  
-p *#parallel-xfrs*        Allows the specified number of map transfers to occur in parallel.  
-v                            Verbose. This prints messages when each server is called, and for each response. If this flag is omitted, only error messages are printed.

**Files** /var/yp                                Directory where NIS configuration files reside.  
  
/var/yp/*domain*/ypservers. {*dir*, *pag*}    Map containing list of NIS servers to bind to when running in server mode.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWypu

**See Also** [ypserv\(1M\)](#), [ypxfr\(1M\)](#), [ypfiles\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Notes** The Network Information Service (NIS) was formerly known as Sun Yellow Pages (YP). The functionality of the two remains the same; only the name has changed. The name Yellow Pages is a registered trademark in the United Kingdom of British Telecommunications PLC, and must not be used without permission.

**Bugs** In the current implementation (version 2 NIS protocol), the transfer agent is [ypxfr\(1M\)](#), which is started by the `ypserv` program. If `yppush` detects that it is speaking to a version 1 NIS protocol server, it uses the older protocol, sending a version 1 `YPPROC_GET` request and issues a message to that effect. Unfortunately, there is no way of knowing if or when the map transfer is performed for version 1 servers. `yppush` prints a message saying that an “old-style” message has been sent. The system administrator should later check to see that the transfer has actually taken place.



**Name** ypserv, ypxfrd – NIS server and binder processes

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/netsvc/yp/ypserv [-dv] [-i | -I] [-r | -R]  
/usr/lib/netsvc/yp/ypxfrd

**Description** The Network Information Service (NIS) provides a simple network lookup service consisting of databases and processes. The databases are ndbm files in a directory tree rooted at /var/yp. See [ndbm\(3C\)](#). These files are described in [ypfiles\(4\)](#). The processes are /usr/lib/netsvc/yp/ypserv, the NIS database lookup server, and /usr/lib/netsvc/yp/ypbind, the NIS binder. The programmatic interface to the NIS service is described in [ypclnt\(3NSL\)](#). Administrative tools are described in [ypoll\(1M\)](#), [yppush\(1M\)](#), [ypset\(1M\)](#), [ypxfr\(1M\)](#), and [ypwhich\(1\)](#). Tools to see the contents of NIS maps are described in [ypcat\(1\)](#), and [ypmatch\(1\)](#). Database generation and maintenance tools are described in [ypinit\(1M\)](#), [ypmake\(1M\)](#), and [makedbm\(1M\)](#).

The ypserv utility is a daemon process typically activated at system startup from `svc:/network/nis/server:default`. Alternatively, you can, as the root user, start NIS services using [ypstart\(1M\)](#) from the command-line. ypserv runs only on NIS server machines with a complete NIS database. You can halt all NIS services using the [ypstop\(1M\)](#) command.

The ypxfrd utility transfers entire NIS maps in an efficient manner. For systems that use this daemon, map transfers are 10 to 100 times faster, depending on the map. To use this daemon, be sure ypxfrd is running on the master server. See /usr/lib/netsvc/yp/ypstart. ypxfr attempts to use ypxfrd first. If that fails, it prints a warning, then uses the older transfer method.

The ypserv daemon's primary function is to look up information in its local database of NIS maps.

The operations performed by ypserv are defined for the implementor by the *YP Protocol Specification*, and for the programmer by the header file `<rpcsvc/yp_prot.h>`.

Communication to and from ypserv is by means of RPC calls. Lookup functions are described in [ypclnt\(3NSL\)](#), and are supplied as C-callable functions in the [libnsl\(3LIB\)](#) library. There are four lookup functions, all of which are performed on a specified map within some NIS domain: [yp\\_match\(3NSL\)](#), [yp\\_first\(3NSL\)](#), [yp\\_next\(3NSL\)](#), and [yp\\_all\(3NSL\)](#). The `yp_match` operation takes a key, and returns the associated value. The `yp_first` operation returns the first key-value pair from the map, and `yp_next` can be used to enumerate the remainder. `yp_all` ships the entire map to the requester as the response to a single RPC request.

A number of special keys in the DBM files can alter the way in which ypserv operates. The keys of interest are:

**YP\_INTERDOMAIN**           The presence of this key causes ypserv to forward to a DNS server host lookups that cannot be satisfied by the DBM files.

YP_SECURE	This key causes ypserv to answer only questions coming from clients on reserved ports.
YP_MULTI_ <i>hostname</i>	This is a special key in the form, YP_MULTI_ <i>hostname addr1,...,addrN</i> . A client looking for <i>hostname</i> receives the closest address.

Two other functions supply information about the map, rather than map entries: `yp_order(3NSL)`, and `yp_master(3NSL)`. In fact, both order number and master name exist in the map as key-value pairs, but the server will not return either through the normal lookup functions. If you examine the map with `makedbm(1M)`, however, they are visible. Other functions are used within the NIS service subsystem itself, and are not of general interest to NIS clients. These functions include `do_you_serve_this_domain?`, `transfer_map`, and `reinitialize_internal_state`.

On start up, ypserv checks for the existence of the NIS to LDAP (N2L) configuration file `/var/yp/NISLDAPmapping`. If it is present then a master server starts in N2L mode. If the file is not present it starts in “traditional” (non N2L) mode. Slave servers always start in traditional mode.

In N2L mode, a new set of map files, with an LDAP\_ prefix, are generated, based on the contents of the LDAP DIT. The old map files, NIS source files and `yppmake(1M)` are not used.

It is possible that `yppmake(1M)` can be accidentally run in N2L mode. If it occurs, the old style map files are overwritten. That the map files are overwritten is harmless. However, any resulting `yppush(1M)` operation will push information based on the DIT rather than the source files. The user may not expect information based on the DIT. ypserv keeps track of the last modification date of the old style map files. If the map files have been updated, a warning is logged that suggests that the user call `yppush` directly instead of `yppmake`.

If a server attempts to run in N2L mode and a LDAP server cannot be contacted, it behaves as follows:

1. When ypserv is started, a warning will be logged.
2. When a NIS read access is made and the TTL entry has expired, a warning is logged. Information that is returned from the cache has not been updated.
3. When a NIS write access is made, a warning is logged. The cache will not be updated, and a NIS failure will be returned.

If `ypxfrd` is running in N2L mode and is asked to transfer a map, `ypxfrd` first checks whether the map is out of date. If the map is out of date, `ypxfrd` initiates an update from the DIT. `ypxfrd` cannot wait for the update to complete. If `ypxfrd` waited, the client end `ypxfr` operation could time out. To prevent `ypxfrd` from timing out, the existing map is transferred from the cache. The most up to date map will be transferred on subsequent `ypxfrd` operations.

## Options

- `ypserv` -d The NIS service should go to the DNS for more host information. This requires the existence of a correct `/etc/resolv.conf` file pointing to a DNS server. This option turns on DNS forwarding regardless of whether or not the `YP_INTERDOMAIN` flag is set in the `hosts` maps. See [makedbm\(1M\)](#). In the absence of an `/etc/resolv.conf` file, `ypserv` complains, but ignores the `-d` option.
- i If in N2L mode, initialize the NIS related parts of the DIT based on the current, non LDAP\_ prefixed, map files. The LDAP\_ prefixed maps are not created or updated. If you require that LDAP\_ prefixed maps be updated or created, then use the `-ir` option.
- The `-i` option does not attempt to create any NIS domain or container objects. If any NIS domain or container objects have not already been created, then errors will occur, as entries are written to nonexistent containers.
- I Identical to `-i`, except that any missing domain and container objects are created.
- r If in N2L mode, then refresh the LDAP\_ prefixed map files based on the contents of the DIT.
- ir If both `-i` and `-r` are specified in N2L mode, then the DIT will first be initialized from the current non LDAP\_ prefixed map files. A new set of LDAP\_ prefixed maps will then be generated from the contents of the DIT. A new set of LDAP\_ prefixed maps is required when moving from traditional NIS to N2L mode NIS.
- Ir Identical to `-ir`, except that any missing domain and container objects are created.
- v Operate in the verbose mode, printing diagnostic messages to `stderr`.

When run with the `-i`, `-r`, `-I`, `-ir` or `-Ir` options, the `ypserv` command runs in the foreground and exits once map initialization has been completed. Once the `ypserv` command exits, the user knows the maps are ready and can restart `ypserv` and the other `yp` daemons by running [ypstart\(1M\)](#).

If there is a requirement to initialize the DIT from the NIS source files, which may have been modified since the maps were last remade, run `ypmake` before running `ypserv -i` or `ypserv -ir`. `ypmake` regenerated old style NIS maps. Then `ypserv -ir` dumps them into the DIT. When the `-ir` option is used, the LDAP\_ prefix maps are also generated or updated. Since these maps will be more recent than the old style maps, `ypmake` will not be reported as erroneous when it is run.

**Files** `/var/yp/securenets` Defines the hosts and networks that are granted access to information in the served domain. It is read at startup time by both `ypserv` and `ypxfrd`.

<code>/var/yp/ypserv.log</code>	If the <code>/var/yp/ypserv.log</code> file exists when <code>ypserv</code> starts up, log information is written to it when error conditions arise.
<code>/var/yp/binding/domainname/ypservers</code>	Lists the NIS server hosts that <code>ypbind</code> can bind to.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWypu

**See Also** [svcs\(1\)](#), [ypcat\(1\)](#), [ypmatch\(1\)](#), [ypwhich\(1\)](#), [domainname\(1M\)](#), [makedbm\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [ypbind\(1M\)](#), [ypinit\(1M\)](#), [ypmake\(1M\)](#), [yppoll\(1M\)](#), [yppush\(1M\)](#), [ypset\(1M\)](#), [ypstart\(1M\)](#), [ypstop\(1M\)](#), [ypxfr\(1M\)](#), [ndbm\(3C\)](#), [ypclnt\(3NSL\)](#), [libnsl\(3LIB\)](#), [NISLDAPmapping\(4\)](#), [securenets\(4\)](#), [ypfiles\(4\)](#), [ypserv\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#)

*System Administration Guide: Naming and Directory Services (DNS, NIS, and LDAP)*

**Notes** `ypserv` supports multiple domains. The `ypserv` process determines the domains it serves by looking for directories of the same name in the directory `/var/yp`. It replies to all broadcasts requesting yp service for that domain.

The Network Information Service (NIS) was formerly known as Sun Yellow Pages (YP). The functionality of the two remains the same; only the name has changed. The name Yellow Pages is a registered trademark in the United Kingdom of British Telecommunications PLC, and must not be used without permission.

NIS uses `ndbm()` files to store maps. Therefore, it is subject to the 1024 byte limitations described in the USAGE and NOTES sections of the [ndbm\(3C\)](#) man page.

The NIS server service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/network/nis/server:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

**Name** ypset – point ypbind at a particular server

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/ypset [-d *ypdomain*] [-h *host*] *server*

**Description** In order to run ypset, ypbind must be initiated with the `–ypset` or `–ypsetme` options. See [ypbind\(1M\)](#). ypset tells ypbind to get NIS services for the specified *ypdomain* from the ypserv process running on *server*. If *server* is down, or is not running ypserv, this might not be discovered until an NIS client process tries to obtain a binding for the domain. At this point, the binding set by ypset is tested by ypbind. If the binding is invalid, ypbind attempts to rebind for the same domain.

ypset is useful for binding a client node that is not on a broadcast net, or is on a broadcast net that is not running an NIS server host. It is also useful for debugging NIS client applications, for instance, where an NIS map exists only at a single NIS server host.

Where several hosts on the local net are supplying NIS services, ypbind can rebind to another host, even while you attempt to find out if the ypset operation succeeded. For example, if you enter the ypset command below, you might get the subsequent response from ypwhich:

```
example% ypset host1
example% ypwhich
host2
```

The sequence shown above is a function of the NIS subsystem's attempt to load-balance among the available NIS servers, and occurs when host1 does not respond to ypbind because it is not running ypserv (or is overloaded), and host2, running ypserv, obtains the binding.

*server* indicates which NIS server to bind to, and must be specified as a name or an IP address. This works only if the node has a current valid binding for the domain in question and ypbind has been set to allow use of ypset. In most cases, *server* should be specified as an IP address.

ypset tries to bind over a connectionless transport. The NIS library call, `yp_all()`, uses connection-oriented transport and derives the NIS server's address based on the connectionless address supplied by ypset.

Refer to [ypfiles\(4\)](#) for an overview of the NIS name service.

**Options** -d *ypdomain* Use *ypdomain*, instead of the default domain.  
-h *host* Set ypbind's binding on *host*, instead of locally. Specify *host* as a name.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWnisu

**See Also** [ypwhich\(1\)](#), [ypfiles\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** ypstart, ypstop – Start and stop NIS services

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/netsvc/yp/ypstart  
/usr/lib/netsvc/yp/ypstop

**Description** The `ypstart` command is used to start the Network Information Service (NIS). After the host has been configured using the [ypinit\(1M\)](#) command, `ypstart` automatically determines the NIS status of the machine and starts the appropriate daemons.

The `ypstop` command is used to stop the Network Information Service (NIS).

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWypu

**See Also** [ypinit\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

*System Administration Guide: Basic Administration*

**Notes** The Network Information Service (NIS) was formerly known as Sun Yellow Pages (YP). The functionality of the two services remains the same; only the name has changed. The name Yellow Pages is a registered trademark in the United Kingdom of British Telecommunications PLC, and must not be used without permission.

**Name** ypxfr, ypxfr\_1perday, ypxfr\_1perhour, ypxfr\_2perday – transfer NIS map from a NIS server to host

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/netsvc/yp/ypxfr [-c] [-f] [-C *tid prog server*]  
[-d *ypdomain*] [-h *host*] [-s *ypdomain*] *mapname*

**Description** The `ypxfr` command moves an NIS map in the default domain for the local host to the local host by making use of normal NIS services. It creates a temporary map in the directory `/var/yp/ypdomain` (this directory must already exist; *ypdomain* is the default domain for the local host), fills it by enumerating the map's entries, fetches the map parameters (master and order number), and loads them. It then deletes any old versions of the map and moves the temporary map to the real *name*.

If run interactively, `ypxfr` writes its output to the terminal. However, if it is started without a controlling terminal, and if the log file `/var/yp/ypxfr.log` exists, it appends all its output to that file. Since `ypxfr` is most often run from the privileged user's `crontab` file, or by `ypserv`, the log file can retain a record of what was attempted, and what the results were.

For consistency between servers, `ypxfr` should be run periodically for every map in the NIS data base. Different maps change at different rates: a map might not change for months at a time, for instance, and can therefore be checked only once a day. Some maps might change several times per day. In such a case, you might want to check hourly for updates. A [crontab\(1\)](#) entry can be used to automatically perform periodic updates. Rather than having a separate `crontab` entry for each map, you can group commands to update several maps in a shell script. Examples (mnemonically named) are in `/usr/sbin/yp: ypxfr_1perday`, `ypxfr_2perday`, and `ypxfr_1perhour`.

Refer to [ypfiles\(4\)](#) for an overview of the NIS name service.

**Options**

- c Do not send a “Clear current map” request to the local `ypserv` process. Use this flag if `ypserv` is not running locally at the time you are running `ypxfr`. Otherwise, `ypxfr` complains that it cannot communicate with the local `ypserv`, and the transfer fails.
- f Force the transfer to occur even if the version at the master is not more recent than the local version.
- C *tid prog server* This option is for use *only* by `ypserv`. When `ypserv` starts `ypxfr`, it specifies that `ypxfr` should call back a `yppush` process at the host *server*, registered as program number *prog*, and waiting for a response to transaction *tid*.
- d *ypdomain* Specify a domain other than the default domain.
- h *host* Get the map from *host*, regardless of the master. If *host* is not specified, `ypxfr` asks the NIS service for the name of the master, and tries to get the map from there. *host* must be a valid host name.



`-s ypdomain` Specify a source domain from which to transfer a map that should be the same across domains.

**Files**

<code>/var/yp/ypxfr.log</code>	Log file
<code>/usr/lib/netsvc/yp/ypxfr_1perday</code>	Script to run one transfer per day, for use with <a href="#">cron(1M)</a>
<code>/usr/lib/netsvc/yp/ypxfr_2perday</code>	Script to run two transfer per day, for use with <a href="#">cron(1M)</a>
<code>/usr/lib/netsvc/yp/ypxfr_1perhour</code>	Script for hourly transfers of volatile maps
<code>/var/yp/ypdomain</code>	NIS domain
<code>/usr/spool/cron/crontabs/root</code>	Privileged user's crontab file

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ypxfr Only	ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
	Availability	SUNWnisu

ypxfr_1perday, ypxfr_1perhour, and ypxfr_2perday	ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
	Availability	SUNWypu

**See Also** [crontab\(1\)](#), [cron\(1M\)](#), [ypinit\(1M\)](#), [yppush\(1M\)](#), [ypserv\(1M\)](#), [ypfiles\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** zdb – ZFS debugger

**Synopsis** zdb *pool*

**Description** The zdb command is used by support engineers to diagnose failures and gather statistics. Since the ZFS file system is always consistent on disk and is self-repairing, zdb should only be run under the direction by a support engineer.

If no arguments are specified, zdb, performs basic consistency checks on the pool and associated datasets, and report any problems detected.

Any options supported by this command are internal to Sun and subject to change at any time.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0 The pool is consistent.
- 1 An error was detected.
- 2 Invalid command line options were specified.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWzfsu
Interface Stability	Unstable

**See Also** [zfs\(1M\)](#), [zpool\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** zdump – time zone dumper

**Synopsis** zdump [-*version*] [-v] [-c [*loyear*,*hiyear*] [*zonename*]]...

**Description** The zdump command prints the current time for each time zone (*zonename*) listed on the command line. Specify *zonename* as the name of the time zone database file relative to `/usr/share/lib/zoneinfo`.

Specifying an invalid time zone (*zonename*) to zdump does not return an error, rather zdump uses GMT0. This is consistent with the behavior of the library calls; zdump reflects the same behavior of the time routines in `libc`. See [ctime\(3C\)](#) and [mktime\(3C\)](#).

**Options** The following options are supported:

- *version*                      Outputs version information and exits.
- v                                Displays the entire contents of the time zone database file for *zonename*. Prints the time at the lowest possible time value; the time one day after the lowest possible time value; the times both one second before and exactly at each time at which the rules for computing local time change; the time at the highest possible time value; and the time at one day less than the highest possible time value. See [mktime\(3C\)](#) and [ctime\(3C\)](#) for information regarding time value (`time_t`). Each line of output ends with `isdst=1` if the given time is Daylight Saving Time, or `isdst=0` otherwise.
- c [*loyear*],*hiyear*        Cuts off the verbose output near the start of the given year(s) . By default, the program cuts off verbose output near the start of the years -500 and 2500.

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0      Successful completion.
- 1      An error occurred.

**Files** `/usr/share/lib/zoneinfo`      Standard zone information directory

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Stable

**See Also** [zic\(1M\)](#), [ctime\(3C\)](#), [mktime\(3C\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [environ\(5\)](#)

**Name** zfs – configures ZFS file systems

**Synopsis** zfs [-?]

```

zfs create [-p] [-o property=value] ... filesystem
zfs create [-ps] [-b blocksize] [-o property=value] ... -V size volume
zfs destroy [-rRf] filesystem|volume
zfs destroy [-rRd] snapshot
zfs snapshot [-r] [-o property=value]...
 filesystem@snapname|volume@snapname
zfs rollback [-rRf] snapshot
zfs clone [-p] [-o property=value] ... snapshot filesystem|volume
zfs promote clone-filesystem
zfs rename filesystem|volume|snapshot
 filesystem|volume|snapshot
zfs rename [-p] filesystem|volume filesystem|volume
zfs rename -r snapshot snapshot
zfs list [-r|-d depth][-H][-o property[,...]] [-t type[,...]]
 [-s property] ... [-S property] ... [filesystem|volume|snapshot] ...
zfs set property=value filesystem|volume|snapshot ...
zfs get [-r|-d depth][-Hp][-o all | field[,...]] [-s source[,...]]
 all | property[,...] filesystem|volume|snapshot ...
zfs inherit [-rS] property filesystem|volume|snapshot ...
zfs upgrade [-v]
zfs upgrade [-r] [-V version] -a | filesystem
zfs userspace [-niHp] [-o field[,...]] [-sS field] ...
 [-t type [,...]] filesystem|snapshot
zfs groupspace [-niHp] [-o field[,...]] [-sS field] ...
 [-t type [,...]] filesystem|snapshot
zfs mount
zfs mount [-vO] [-o options] -a | filesystem
zfs unmount [-f] -a | filesystem|mountpoint
zfs share -a | filesystem
zfs unshare -a filesystem|mountpoint
zfs send [-DvRp] [-[iI] snapshot] snapshot
zfs receive [-vnFu] filesystem|volume|snapshot

```

```

zfs receive [-vnFu] [-d | -e] filesystem
zfs allow filesystem|volume
zfs allow [-ldug] "everyone"|user|group[,...] perm|@setname[,...]
 filesystem|volume
zfs allow [-ld] -e perm|@setname[,...] filesystem|volume
zfs allow -c perm|@setname[,...] filesystem|volume
zfs allow -s @setname perm|@setname[,...] filesystem|volume
zfs unallow [-rldug] "everyone"|user|group[,...] [perm|@setname[,...]]
 filesystem|volume
zfs unallow [-rld] -e [perm|@setname[,...]] filesystem|volume
zfs unallow [-r] -c [perm|@setname[...]] filesystem|volume
zfs unallow [-r] -s @setname [perm|@setname[,...]] filesystem|volume
zfs hold [-r] tag snapshot...
zfs holds [-r] snapshot...
zfs release [-r] tag snapshot...

```

**Description** The `zfs` command configures ZFS datasets within a ZFS storage pool, as described in [zpool\(1M\)](#). A dataset is identified by a unique path within the ZFS namespace. For example:

```
pool/{filesystem,volume,snapshot}
```

where the maximum length of a dataset name is `MAXNAMELEN` (256 bytes).

A dataset can be one of the following:

#### *file system*

A ZFS dataset of type `filesystem` can be mounted within the standard system namespace and behaves like other file systems. While ZFS file systems are designed to be POSIX compliant, known issues exist that prevent compliance in some cases. Applications that depend on standards conformance might fail due to nonstandard behavior when checking file system free space.

#### *volume*

A logical volume exported as a raw or block device. This type of dataset should only be used under special circumstances. File systems are typically used in most environments.

#### *snapshot*

A read-only version of a file system or volume at a given point in time. It is specified as `filesystem@name` or `volume@name`.

**ZFS File System Hierarchy** A ZFS storage pool is a logical collection of devices that provide space for datasets. A storage pool is also the root of the ZFS file system hierarchy.

The root of the pool can be accessed as a file system, such as mounting and unmounting, taking snapshots, and setting properties. The physical storage characteristics, however, are managed by the `zpool(1M)` command.

See `zpool(1M)` for more information on creating and administering pools.

**Snapshots** A snapshot is a read-only copy of a file system or volume. Snapshots can be created extremely quickly, and initially consume no additional space within the pool. As data within the active dataset changes, the snapshot consumes more data than would otherwise be shared with the active dataset.

Snapshots can have arbitrary names. Snapshots of volumes can be cloned or rolled back, but cannot be accessed independently.

File system snapshots can be accessed under the `.zfs/snapshot` directory in the root of the file system. Snapshots are automatically mounted on demand and may be unmounted at regular intervals. The visibility of the `.zfs` directory can be controlled by the `snapdir` property.

**Clones** A clone is a writable volume or file system whose initial contents are the same as another dataset. As with snapshots, creating a clone is nearly instantaneous, and initially consumes no additional space.

Clones can only be created from a snapshot. When a snapshot is cloned, it creates an implicit dependency between the parent and child. Even though the clone is created somewhere else in the dataset hierarchy, the original snapshot cannot be destroyed as long as a clone exists. The `origin` property exposes this dependency, and the `destroy` command lists any such dependencies, if they exist.

The clone parent-child dependency relationship can be reversed by using the `promote` subcommand. This causes the “origin” file system to become a clone of the specified file system, which makes it possible to destroy the file system that the clone was created from.

**Mount Points** Creating a ZFS file system is a simple operation, so the number of file systems per system is likely to be numerous. To cope with this, ZFS automatically manages mounting and unmounting file systems without the need to edit the `/etc/vfstab` file. All automatically managed file systems are mounted by ZFS at boot time.

By default, file systems are mounted under `/path`, where *path* is the name of the file system in the ZFS namespace. Directories are created and destroyed as needed.

A file system can also have a mount point set in the `mountpoint` property. This directory is created as needed, and ZFS automatically mounts the file system when the `zfs mount -a` command is invoked (without editing `/etc/vfstab`). The `mountpoint` property can be inherited, so if `pool/home` has a mount point of `/export/stuff`, then `pool/home/user` automatically inherits a mount point of `/export/stuff/user`.

A file system mountpoint property of none prevents the file system from being mounted.

If needed, ZFS file systems can also be managed with traditional tools (`mount`, `umount`, `/etc/vfstab`). If a file system's mount point is set to `legacy`, ZFS makes no attempt to manage the file system, and the administrator is responsible for mounting and unmounting the file system.

**Zones** A ZFS file system can be added to a non-global zone by using the `zonecfg add fs` subcommand. A ZFS file system that is added to a non-global zone must have its `mountpoint` property set to `legacy`.

The physical properties of an added file system are controlled by the global administrator. However, the zone administrator can create, modify, or destroy files within the added file system, depending on how the file system is mounted.

A dataset can also be delegated to a non-global zone by using the `zonecfg add dataset` subcommand. You cannot delegate a dataset to one zone and the children of the same dataset to another zone. The zone administrator can change properties of the dataset or any of its children. However, the `quota` property is controlled by the global administrator.

A ZFS volume can be added as a device to a non-global zone by using the `zonecfg add device` subcommand. However, its physical properties can be modified only by the global administrator.

For more information about `zonecfg` syntax, see [zonecfg\(1M\)](#).

After a dataset is delegated to a non-global zone, the `zoned` property is automatically set. A zoned file system cannot be mounted in the global zone, since the zone administrator might have to set the mount point to an unacceptable value.

The global administrator can forcibly clear the `zoned` property, though this should be done with extreme care. The global administrator should verify that all the mount points are acceptable before clearing the property.

**Deduplication** Deduplication is the process for removing redundant data at the block-level, reducing the total amount of data stored. If a file system has the `dedup` property enabled, duplicate data blocks are removed synchronously. The result is that only unique data is stored and common components are shared among files.

**Native Properties** Properties are divided into two types, native properties and user-defined (or “user”) properties. Native properties either export internal statistics or control ZFS behavior. In addition, native properties are either editable or read-only. User properties have no effect on ZFS behavior, but you can use them to annotate datasets in a way that is meaningful in your environment. For more information about user properties, see the “User Properties” section, below.

Every dataset has a set of properties that export statistics about the dataset as well as control various behaviors. Properties are inherited from the parent unless overridden by the child. Some properties apply only to certain types of datasets (file systems, volumes, or snapshots).

The values of numeric properties can be specified using human-readable suffixes (for example, k, KB, M, Gb, and so forth, up to Z for zettabyte). The following are all valid (and equal) specifications:

1536M, 1.5g, 1.50GB

The values of non-numeric properties are case sensitive and must be lowercase, except for `mountpoint`, `sharenfs`, and `sharesmb`.

The following native properties consist of read-only statistics about the dataset. These properties can be neither set, nor inherited. Native properties apply to all dataset types unless otherwise noted.

#### `available`

The amount of space available to the dataset and all its children, assuming that there is no other activity in the pool. Because space is shared within a pool, availability can be limited by any number of factors, including physical pool size, quotas, reservations, or other datasets within the pool.

This property can also be referred to by its shortened column name, `avail`.

#### `compressratio`

The compression ratio achieved for this dataset, expressed as a multiplier. Compression can be turned on by running: `zfs set compression=on dataset`. The default value is `off`.

#### `creation`

The time this dataset was created.

#### `defer_destroy`

This property is on if the snapshot has been marked for deferred destroy by using the `zfs destroy -d` command. Otherwise, the property is `off`.

#### `mounted`

For file systems, indicates whether the file system is currently mounted. This property can be either `yes` or `no`.

#### `origin`

For cloned file systems or volumes, the snapshot from which the clone was created. The origin cannot be destroyed (even with the `-r` or `-f` options) so long as a clone exists.

#### `referenced`

The amount of data that is accessible by this dataset, which may or may not be shared with other datasets in the pool. When a snapshot or clone is created, it initially references the same amount of space as the file system or snapshot it was created from, since its contents are identical.

This property can also be referred to by its shortened column name, `refer`.

#### `type`

The type of dataset: `filesystem`, `volume`, or `snapshot`.



**used**

The amount of space consumed by this dataset and all its descendents. This is the value that is checked against this dataset's quota and reservation. The space used does not include this dataset's reservation, but does take into account the reservations of any descendent datasets. The amount of space that a dataset consumes from its parent, as well as the amount of space that are freed if this dataset is recursively destroyed, is the greater of its space used and its reservation.

When snapshots (see the “Snapshots” section) are created, their space is initially shared between the snapshot and the file system, and possibly with previous snapshots. As the file system changes, space that was previously shared becomes unique to the snapshot, and counted in the snapshot's space used. Additionally, deleting snapshots can increase the amount of space unique to (and used by) other snapshots.

The amount of space used, available, or referenced does not take into account pending changes. Pending changes are generally accounted for within a few seconds. Committing a change to a disk using `fsync(3C)` or `O_SYNC` does not necessarily guarantee that the space usage information is updated immediately.

**usedby\***

The `usedby*` properties decompose the `used` properties into the various reasons that space is used. Specifically, `used = usedbychildren + usedbydataset + usedbyreservation + usedbysnapshots`. These properties are only available for datasets created on `zpool` “version 13” pools.

**usedbychildren**

The amount of space used by children of this dataset, which would be freed if all the dataset's children were destroyed.

**usedbydataset**

The amount of space used by this dataset itself, which would be freed if the dataset were destroyed (after first removing any `reservation` and destroying any necessary snapshots or descendents).

**usedbyreservation**

The amount of space used by a `reservation` set on this dataset, which would be freed if the `reservation` was removed.

**usedbysnapshots**

The amount of space consumed by snapshots of this dataset. In particular, it is the amount of space that would be freed if all of this dataset's snapshots were destroyed. Note that this is not simply the sum of the snapshots' `used` properties because space can be shared by multiple snapshots.

**userused@user**

The amount of space consumed by the specified user in this dataset. Space is charged to the owner of each file, as displayed by `ls -l`. The amount of space charged is displayed by `du` and `ls -s`. See the `zfs userspace` subcommand for more information.

Unprivileged users can access only their own space usage. The root user, or a user who has been granted the `userused` privilege with `zfs allow`, can access everyone's usage.

The `userused@...` properties are not displayed by `zfs get all`. The user's name must be appended after the `@` symbol, using one of the following forms:

- *POSIX name* (for example, `joe`)
- *POSIX numeric ID* (for example, `789`)
- *SID name* (for example, `joe.smith@mydomain`)
- *SID numeric ID* (for example, `S-1-123-456-789`)

#### `userrefs`

This property is set to the number of user holds on this snapshot. User holds are set by using the `zfs hold` command.

#### `groupused@group`

The amount of space consumed by the specified group in this dataset. Space is charged to the group of each file, as displayed by `ls -l`. See the `userused@user` property for more information.

Unprivileged users can only access their own groups' space usage. The root user, or a user who has been granted the `groupused` privilege with `zfs allow`, can access all groups' usage.

#### `volblocksize=blocksize`

For volumes, specifies the block size of the volume. The `blocksize` cannot be changed once the volume has been written, so it should be set at volume creation time. The default `blocksize` for volumes is 8 Kbytes. Any power of 2 from 512 bytes to 128 Kbytes is valid.

This property can also be referred to by its shortened column name, `volblock`.

The following native properties can be used to change the behavior of a ZFS dataset.

#### `aclinherit=discard | noallow | restricted | passthrough | passthrough-x`

Controls how ACL entries are inherited when files and directories are created. A file system with an `aclinherit` property of `discard` does not inherit any ACL entries. A file system with an `aclinherit` property value of `noallow` only inherits inheritable ACL entries that specify “deny” permissions. The property value `restricted` (the default) removes the `write_acl` and `write_owner` permissions when the ACL entry is inherited. A file system with an `aclinherit` property value of `passthrough` inherits all inheritable ACL entries without any modifications made to the ACL entries when they are inherited. A file system with an `aclinherit` property value of `passthrough-x` has the same meaning as `passthrough`, except that the `owner@`, `group@`, and `everyone@` ACEs inherit the execute permission only if the file creation mode also requests the execute bit.

When the property value is set to `passthrough`, files are created with a mode determined by the inheritable ACEs. If no inheritable ACEs exist that affect the mode, then the mode is set in accordance to the requested mode from the application.

`aclmode=discard | groupmask | passthrough`

Controls how an ACL is modified during `chmod(2)`. A file system with an `aclmode` property of `discard` deletes all ACL entries that do not represent the mode of the file. An `aclmode` property of `groupmask` (the default) reduces user or group permissions. The permissions are reduced, such that they are no greater than the group permission bits, unless it is a user entry that has the same UID as the owner of the file or directory. In this case, the ACL permissions are reduced so that they are no greater than owner permission bits. A file system with an `aclmode` property of `passthrough` indicates that no changes are made to the ACL other than generating the necessary ACL entries to represent the new mode of the file or directory.

`atime=on | off`

Controls whether the access time for files is updated when they are read. Turning this property `off` avoids producing write traffic when reading files and can result in significant performance gains, though it might confuse mailers and other similar utilities. The default value is `on`.

`canmount=on | off | noauto`

If this property is set to `off`, the file system cannot be mounted, and is ignored by `zfs mount -a`. Setting this property to `off` is similar to setting the `mountpoint` property to `none`, except that the dataset still has a normal `mountpoint` property, which can be inherited. Setting this property to `off` allows datasets to be used solely as a mechanism to inherit properties. One example of setting `canmount=off` is to have two datasets with the same `mountpoint`, so that the children of both datasets appear in the same directory, but might have different inherited characteristics.

When the `noauto` option is set, a dataset can only be mounted and unmounted explicitly. The dataset is not mounted automatically when the dataset is created or imported, nor is it mounted by the `zfs mount -a` command or unmounted by the `zfs unmount -a` command.

This property is not inherited.

`checksum=on | off | Fletcher2, | Fletcher4 | sha256`

Controls the checksum used to verify data integrity. The default value is `on`, which automatically selects an appropriate algorithm (currently, `Fletcher4`, but this may change in future releases). The value `off` disables integrity checking on user data. Disabling checksums is *NOT* a recommended practice.

Changing this property affects only newly-written data.

`compression=on | off | lzjb | gzip | gzip-N | zle`

Controls the compression algorithm used for this dataset. The `lzjb` compression algorithm is optimized for performance while providing decent data compression. Setting `compression` to `on` uses the `lzjb` compression algorithm. The `gzip` compression algorithm uses the same compression as the `gzip(1)` command. You can specify the `gzip` level by

using the value `gzip-N` where *N* is an integer from 1 (fastest) to 9 (best compression ratio). Currently, `gzip` is equivalent to `gzip-6` (which is also the default for `gzip(1)`).

This property can also be referred to by its shortened column name `compress`. Changing this property affects only newly-written data.

`copies=1 | 2 | 3`

Controls the number of copies of data stored for this dataset. These copies are in addition to any redundancy provided by the pool, for example, mirroring or RAID-Z. The copies are stored on different disks, if possible. The space used by multiple copies is charged to the associated file and dataset, changing the used property and counting against quotas and reservations.

Changing this property only affects newly-written data. Therefore, set this property at file system creation time by using the `-o copies=N` option.

`dedup=on | off | verify | sha256[,verify]`

Controls whether deduplication is in effect for a dataset. The default value is `off`. The default checksum used for deduplication is `sha256` (subject to change). When `dedup` is enabled, the `dedup` checksum algorithm overrides the `checksum` property. Setting the value to `verify` is equivalent to specifying `sha256,verify`.

If the property is set to `verify`, then, whenever two blocks have the same signature, ZFS will do a byte-for-byte comparison with the existing block to ensure that the contents are identical.

`devices=on | off`

Controls whether device nodes can be opened on this file system. The default value is `on`.

`exec=on | off`

Controls whether processes can be executed from within this file system. The default value is `on`.

`mlslabel=label | none`

The `mlslabel` property is a sensitivity label that determines if a dataset can be mounted in a zone on a system with Trusted Extensions enabled. If the labeled dataset matches the labeled zone, the dataset can be mounted and accessed from the labeled zone.

When the `mlslabel` property is not set, the default value is `none`. Setting the `mlslabel` property to `none` is equivalent to removing the property.

The `mlslabel` property can be modified only when Trusted Extensions is enabled and only with appropriate privilege. Rights to modify it cannot be delegated. When changing a label to a higher label or setting the initial dataset label, the `{PRIV_FILE_UPGRADE_SL}` privilege is required. When changing a label to a lower label or the default (`none`), the `{PRIV_FILE_DOWNGRADE_SL}` privilege is required. Changing the dataset to labels other than the default can be done only when the dataset is not mounted. When a dataset with the default label is mounted into a labeled-zone, the mount operation automatically sets the `mlslabel` property to the label of that zone.

When Trusted Extensions is *not* enabled, only datasets with the default label (none) can be mounted.

`mountpoint=path | none | legacy`

Controls the mount point used for this file system. See the “Mount Points” section for more information on how this property is used.

When the `mountpoint` property is changed for a file system, the file system and any children that inherit the mount point are unmounted. If the new value is `legacy`, then they remain unmounted. Otherwise, they are automatically remounted in the new location if the property was previously `legacy` or `none`, or if they were mounted before the property was changed. In addition, any shared file systems are unshared and shared in the new location.

`nbmand=on | off`

Controls whether the file system should be mounted with `nbmand` (Non Blocking mandatory locks). This is used for CIFS clients. Changes to this property only take effect when the file system is unmounted and remounted. See [mount\(1M\)](#) for more information on `nbmand` mounts.

`primarycache=all | none | metadata`

Controls what is cached in the primary cache (ARC). If this property is set to `all`, then both user data and metadata is cached. If this property is set to `none`, then neither user data nor metadata is cached. If this property is set to `metadata`, then only metadata is cached. The default value is `all`.

`quota=size | none`

Limits the amount of space a dataset and its descendents can consume. This property enforces a hard limit on the amount of space used. This includes all space consumed by descendents, including file systems and snapshots. Setting a quota on a descendent of a dataset that already has a quota does not override the ancestor’s quota, but rather imposes an additional limit.

Quotas cannot be set on volumes, as the `volsize` property acts as an implicit quota.

`userquota@user=size | none`

Limits the amount of space consumed by the specified user. Similar to the `refquota` property, the `userquota` space calculation does not include space that is used by descendent datasets, such as snapshots and clones. User space consumption is identified by the `userspace@user` property.

Enforcement of user quotas may be delayed by several seconds. This delay means that a user might exceed her quota before the system notices that she is over quota. The system would then begin to refuse additional writes with the `EDQUOT` error message. See the `zfs userspace` subcommand for more information.

Unprivileged users can only access their own groups' space usage. The root user, or a user who has been granted the `userquota` privilege with `zfs allow`, can get and set everyone's quota.

This property is not available on volumes, on file systems before version 4, or on pools before version 15. The `userquota@...` properties are not displayed by `zfs get all`. The user's name must be appended after the `@` symbol, using one of the following forms:

- *POSIX name* (for example, `joe`)
- *POSIX numeric ID* (for example, `789`)
- *SID name* (for example, `joe.smith@mydomain`)
- *SID numeric ID* (for example, `S-1-123-456-789`)

`groupquota@group=size | none`

Limits the amount of space consumed by the specified group. Group space consumption is identified by the `userquota@user` property.

Unprivileged users can access only their own groups' space usage. The root user, or a user who has been granted the `groupquota` privilege with `zfs allow`, can get and set all groups' quotas.

`readonly=on | off`

Controls whether this dataset can be modified. The default value is `off`.

This property can also be referred to by its shortened column name, `rdonly`.

`recordsize=size`

Specifies a suggested block size for files in the file system. This property is designed solely for use with database workloads that access files in fixed-size records. ZFS automatically tunes block sizes according to internal algorithms optimized for typical access patterns.

For databases that create very large files but access them in small random chunks, these algorithms may be suboptimal. Specifying a `recordsize` greater than or equal to the record size of the database can result in significant performance gains. Use of this property for general purpose file systems is strongly discouraged, and may adversely affect performance.

The size specified must be a power of two greater than or equal to 512 and less than or equal to 128 Kbytes.

Changing the file system's `recordsize` affects only files created afterward; existing files are unaffected.

This property can also be referred to by its shortened column name, `recsize`.

`refquota=size | none`

Limits the amount of space a dataset can consume. This property enforces a hard limit on the amount of space used. This hard limit does not include space used by descendants, including file systems and snapshots.

`refreservation=size | none`

The minimum amount of space guaranteed to a dataset, not including its descendents. When the amount of space used is below this value, the dataset is treated as if it were taking up the amount of space specified by `refreservation`. The `refreservation` reservation is accounted for in the parent datasets' space used, and counts against the parent datasets' quotas and reservations.

If `refreservation` is set, a snapshot is only allowed if there is enough free pool space outside of this reservation to accommodate the current number of “referenced” bytes in the dataset.

This property can also be referred to by its shortened column name, `refreserv`.

`reservation=size | none`

The minimum amount of space guaranteed to a dataset and its descendents. When the amount of space used is below this value, the dataset is treated as if it were taking up the amount of space specified by its `reservation`. Reservations are accounted for in the parent datasets' space used, and count against the parent datasets' quotas and reservations.

This property can also be referred to by its shortened column name, `reserv`.

`secondarycache=all | none | metadata`

Controls what is cached in the secondary cache (L2ARC). If this property is set to `all`, then both user data and metadata is cached. If this property is set to `none`, then neither user data nor metadata is cached. If this property is set to `metadata`, then only metadata is cached. The default value is `all`.

`setuid=on | off`

Controls whether the set-UID bit is respected for the file system. The default value is `on`.

`shareiscsi=on | off`

Like the `sharenfs` property, `shareiscsi` indicates whether a ZFS volume is exported as an iSCSI target. The acceptable values for this property are `on`, `off`, and `type=disk`. The default value is `off`. In the future, other target types might be supported. For example, `tape`.

You might want to set `shareiscsi=on` for a file system so that all ZFS volumes within the file system are shared by default. However, setting this property on a file system has no direct effect.

`sharesmb=on | off | opts`

Controls whether the file system is shared by using the Solaris CIFS service, and what options are to be used. A file system with the `sharesmb` property set to `off` is managed through traditional tools such as `sharemgr(1M)`. Otherwise, the file system is automatically shared and unshared with the `zfs share` and `zfs unshare` commands. If the property is set to `on`, the `sharemgr(1M)` command is invoked with no options. Otherwise, the `sharemgr(1M)` command is invoked with options equivalent to the contents of this property.

Because SMB shares requires a resource name, a unique resource name is constructed from the dataset name. The constructed name is a copy of the dataset name except that the characters in the dataset name, which would be illegal in the resource name, are replaced with underscore (`_`) characters. A pseudo property “name” is also supported that allows you to replace the data set name with a specified name. The specified name is then used to replace the prefix dataset in the case of inheritance. For example, if the dataset `data/home/john` is set to `name=john`, then `data/home/john` has a resource name of `john`. If a child dataset of `data/home/john/backups`, it has a resource name of `john_backups`.

When SMB shares are created, the SMB share name appears as an entry in the `.zfs/shares` directory. You can use the `ls` or `chmod` command to display the share-level ACLs on the entries in this directory.

When the `sharesmb` property is changed for a dataset, the dataset and any children inheriting the property are re-shared with the new options, only if the property was previously set to `off`, or if they were shared before the property was changed. If the new property is set to `off`, the file systems are unshared.

`sharenfs=on | off | opts`

Controls whether the file system is shared via NFS, and what options are used. A file system with a `sharenfs` property of `off` is managed through traditional tools such as [share\(1M\)](#), [unshare\(1M\)](#), and [dfstab\(4\)](#). Otherwise, the file system is automatically shared and unshared with the `zfs share` and `zfs unshare` commands. If the property is set to `on`, the [share\(1M\)](#) command is invoked with no options. Otherwise, the [share\(1M\)](#) command is invoked with options equivalent to the contents of this property.

When the `sharenfs` property is changed for a dataset, the dataset and any children inheriting the property are re-shared with the new options, only if the property was previously `off`, or if they were shared before the property was changed. If the new property is `off`, the file systems are unshared.

`logbias = latency | throughput`

Provides a hint to ZFS about handling of synchronous requests in this dataset. If `logbias` is set to `latency` (the default), ZFS uses the pool's log devices (if configured) to handle the requests at low latency. If `logbias` is set to `throughput`, ZFS does not use the configured pool log devices. Instead, ZFS optimizes synchronous operations for global pool throughput and efficient use of resources.

`snapdir=hidden | visible`

Controls whether the `.zfs` directory is hidden or visible in the root of the file system as discussed in the “Snapshots” section. The default value is `hidden`.

`version=1 | 2 | current`

The on-disk version of this file system, which is independent of the pool version. This property can only be set to later supported versions. See the `zfs upgrade` command.



`volsize=size`

For volumes, specifies the logical size of the volume. By default, creating a volume establishes a reservation of equal size. For storage pools with a version number of 9 or higher, a `refreservation` is set instead. Any changes to `volsize` are reflected in an equivalent change to the reservation (or `refreservation`). The `volsize` can only be set to a multiple of `volblocksize`, and cannot be zero.

The reservation is kept equal to the volume's logical size to prevent unexpected behavior for consumers. Without the reservation, the volume could run out of space, resulting in undefined behavior or data corruption, depending on how the volume is used. These effects can also occur when the volume size is changed while it is in use (particularly when shrinking the size). Extreme care should be used when adjusting the volume size.

Though not recommended, a “sparse volume” (also known as “thin provisioning”) can be created by specifying the `-s` option to the `zfs create -V` command, or by changing the reservation after the volume has been created. A “sparse volume” is a volume where the reservation is less than the volume size. Consequently, writes to a sparse volume can fail with `ENOSPC` when the pool is low on space. For a sparse volume, changes to `volsize` are not reflected in the reservation.

`vscan=on | off`

Controls whether regular files should be scanned for viruses when a file is opened and closed. In addition to enabling this property, the virus scan service must also be enabled for virus scanning to occur. The default value is `off`.

`xattr=on | off`

Controls whether extended attributes are enabled for this file system. The default value is `on`.

`zoned=on | off`

Controls whether the dataset is managed from a non-global zone. See the “Zones” section for more information. The default value is `off`.

The following three properties cannot be changed after the file system is created, and therefore, should be set when the file system is created. If the properties are not set with the `zfs create` or `zpool create` commands, these properties are inherited from the parent dataset. If the parent dataset lacks these properties due to having been created prior to these features being supported, the new file system will have the default values for these properties.

`casesensitivity=sensitive | insensitive | mixed`

Indicates whether the file name matching algorithm used by the file system should be case-sensitive, case-insensitive, or allow a combination of both styles of matching. The default value for the `casesensitivity` property is `sensitive`. Traditionally, UNIX and POSIX file systems have case-sensitive file names.

The `mixed` value for the `casesensitivity` property indicates that the file system can support requests for both case-sensitive and case-insensitive matching behavior. Currently,

case-insensitive matching behavior on a file system that supports mixed behavior is limited to the Solaris CIFS server product. For more information about the mixed value behavior, see the *Solaris ZFS Administration Guide*.

`normalization = none | formC | formD | formKC | formKD`

Indicates whether the file system should perform a unicode normalization of file names whenever two file names are compared, and which normalization algorithm should be used. File names are always stored unmodified, names are normalized as part of any comparison process. If this property is set to a legal value other than none, and the `utf8only` property was left unspecified, the `utf8only` property is automatically set to on. The default value of the `normalization` property is none. This property cannot be changed after the file system is created.

`utf8only = on | off`

Indicates whether the file system should reject file names that include characters that are not present in the UTF-8 character code set. If this property is explicitly set to off, the normalization property must either not be explicitly set or be set to none. The default value for the `utf8only` property is off. This property cannot be changed after the file system is created.

The `casesensitivity`, `normalization`, and `utf8only` properties are also new permissions that can be assigned to non-privileged users by using the ZFS delegated administration feature.

#### Temporary Mount Point Properties

When a file system is mounted, either through `mount(1M)` for legacy mounts or the `zfs mount` command for normal file systems, its mount options are set according to its properties. The correlation between properties and mount options is as follows:

PROPERTY	MOUNT OPTION
<code>devices</code>	<code>devices/nodevices</code>
<code>exec</code>	<code>exec/noexec</code>
<code>readonly</code>	<code>ro/rw</code>
<code>setuid</code>	<code>setuid/nosetuid</code>
<code>xattr</code>	<code>xattr/noxattr</code>

In addition, these options can be set on a per-mount basis using the `-o` option, without affecting the property that is stored on disk. The values specified on the command line override the values stored in the dataset. The `-nosuid` option is an alias for `nodevices`, `nosetuid`. These properties are reported as “temporary” by the `zfs get` command. If the properties are changed while the dataset is mounted, the new setting overrides any temporary settings.

#### User Properties

In addition to the standard native properties, ZFS supports arbitrary user properties. User properties have no effect on ZFS behavior, but applications or administrators can use them to annotate datasets (file systems, volumes, and snapshots).

User property names must contain a colon (`:`) character to distinguish them from native properties. They may contain lowercase letters, numbers, and the following punctuation

characters: colon (:), dash (-), period (.), and underscore (\_). The expected convention is that the property name is divided into two portions such as *module:property*, but this namespace is not enforced by ZFS. User property names can be at most 256 characters, and cannot begin with a dash (-).

When making programmatic use of user properties, it is strongly suggested to use a reversed DNS domain name for the *module* component of property names to reduce the chance that two independently-developed packages use the same property name for different purposes. Property names beginning with `com.sun.` are reserved for use by Sun Microsystems.

The values of user properties are arbitrary strings, are always inherited, and are never validated. All of the commands that operate on properties (`zfs list`, `zfs get`, `zfs set`, and so forth) can be used to manipulate both native properties and user properties. Use the `zfs inherit` command to clear a user property. If the property is not defined in any parent dataset, it is removed entirely. Property values are limited to 1024 characters.

#### ZFS Volumes as Swap or Dump Devices

During an initial installation or a live upgrade from a UFS file system, a swap device and dump device are created on ZFS volumes in the ZFS root pool. By default, the swap area size is based on 1/2 the size of physical memory up to 2 Gbytes. The size of the dump device depends on the kernel's requirements at installation time. Separate ZFS volumes must be used for the swap area and dump devices. Do not swap to a file on a ZFS file system. A ZFS swap file configuration is not supported.

If you need to change your swap area or dump device after the system is installed or upgraded, use the [swap\(1M\)](#) and [dumpadm\(1M\)](#) commands. If you need to change the size of your swap area or dump device, see the [Solaris ZFS Administration Guide](#)

**Subcommands** All subcommands that modify state are logged persistently to the pool in their original form.

`zfs ?`

Displays a help message.

`zfs create [-p] [-o property=value] ... filesystem`

Creates a new ZFS file system. The file system is automatically mounted according to the `mountpoint` property inherited from the parent.

`-p`

Creates all the non-existing parent datasets. Datasets created in this manner are automatically mounted according to the `mountpoint` property inherited from their parent. Any property specified on the command line using the `-o` option is ignored. If the target filesystem already exists, the operation completes successfully.

`-o property=value`

Sets the specified property as if the command `zfs set property=value` was invoked at the same time the dataset was created. Any editable ZFS property can also be set at creation time. Multiple `-o` options can be specified. An error results if the same property is specified in multiple `-o` options.

`zfs create [-ps] [-b blocksize] [-o property=value] ... -V size volume`

Creates a volume of the given size. The volume is exported as a block device in `/dev/zvol/{dsk,rdsk}/path`, where *path* is the name of the volume in the ZFS namespace. The size represents the logical size as exported by the device. By default, a reservation of equal size is created.

*size* is automatically rounded up to the nearest 128 Kbytes to ensure that the volume has an integral number of blocks regardless of *blocksize*.

-p

Creates all the non-existing parent datasets. Datasets created in this manner are automatically mounted according to the `mountpoint` property inherited from their parent. Any property specified on the command line using the `-o` option is ignored. If the target filesystem already exists, the operation completes successfully.

-s

Creates a sparse volume with no reservation. See `volsize` in the Native Properties section for more information about sparse volumes.

-o *property=value*

Sets the specified property as if the `zfs set property=value` command was invoked at the same time the dataset was created. Any editable ZFS property can also be set at creation time. Multiple `-o` options can be specified. An error results if the same property is specified in multiple `-o` options.

-b *blocksize*

Equivalent to `-o volblocksize=blocksize`. If this option is specified in conjunction with `-o volblocksize`, the resulting behavior is undefined.

`zfs destroy [-rRf] filesystem|volume`

Destroys the given dataset. By default, the command unshares any file systems that are currently shared, unmounts any file systems that are currently mounted, and refuses to destroy a dataset that has active dependents (children or clones).

-r

Recursively destroy all children.

-R

Recursively destroy all dependents, including cloned file systems outside the target hierarchy.

-f

Force an unmount of any file systems using the `umount -f` command. This option has no effect on non-file systems or unmounted file systems.

Extreme care should be taken when applying either the `-r` or the `-f` options, as they can destroy large portions of a pool and cause unexpected behavior for mounted file systems in use.

**zfs destroy [-rRd] *snapshot***

The given snapshot is destroyed immediately if and only if the `zfs destroy` command without the `-d` option would have destroyed it. Such immediate destruction would occur, for example, if the snapshot had no clones and the user-initiated reference count were zero.

If the snapshot does not qualify for immediate destruction, it is marked for deferred deletion. In this state, it exists as a usable, visible snapshot until both of the preconditions listed above are met, at which point it is destroyed.

**-d**

Defer snapshot deletion.

**-r**

Destroy (or mark for deferred deletion) all snapshots with this name in descendent file systems.

**-R**

Recursively destroy all dependents.

**zfs snapshot [-r] [-o *property=value*] ... *filesystem@snapname* [*volume@snapname*]**

Creates a snapshot with the given name. All previous modifications by successful system calls to the file system are part of the snapshot. See the “Snapshots” section for details.

**-r**

Recursively create snapshots of all descendent datasets. Snapshots are taken atomically, so that all recursive snapshots correspond to the same moment in time.

**-o *property=value***

Sets the specified property; see `zfs create` for details.

**zfs rollback [-rRf] *snapshot***

Roll back the given dataset to a previous snapshot. When a dataset is rolled back, all data that has changed since the snapshot is discarded, and the dataset reverts to the state at the time of the snapshot. By default, the command refuses to roll back to a snapshot other than the most recent one. In order to do so, all intermediate snapshots must be destroyed by specifying the `-r` option.

The `-rR` options do not recursively destroy the child snapshots of a recursive snapshot. Only the top-level recursive snapshot is destroyed by either of these options. To completely roll back a recursive snapshot, you must rollback the individual child snapshots.

**-r**

Recursively destroy any snapshots more recent than the one specified.

**-R**

Recursively destroy any more recent snapshots, as well as any clones of those snapshots.

**-f**

Used with the `-R` option to force an unmount of any clone file systems that are to be destroyed.

`zfs clone [-p] [-o property=value] ... snapshot filesystem|volume`

Creates a clone of the given snapshot. See the “Clones” section for details. The target dataset can be located anywhere in the ZFS hierarchy, and is created as the same type as the original.

`-p`

Creates all the non-existing parent datasets. Datasets created in this manner are automatically mounted according to the `mountpoint` property inherited from their parent. If the target filesystem or volume already exists, the operation completes successfully.

`-o property=value`

Sets the specified property; see `zfs create` for details.

`zfs promote clone-filesystem`

Promotes a clone file system to no longer be dependent on its “origin” snapshot. This makes it possible to destroy the file system that the clone was created from. The clone parent-child dependency relationship is reversed, so that the origin file system becomes a clone of the specified file system.

The snapshot that was cloned, and any snapshots previous to this snapshot, are now owned by the promoted clone. The space they use moves from the origin file system to the promoted clone, so enough space must be available to accommodate these snapshots. No new space is consumed by this operation, but the space accounting is adjusted. The promoted clone must not have any conflicting snapshot names of its own. The `rename` subcommand can be used to rename any conflicting snapshots.

`zfs rename filesystem|volume|snapshot`

`filesystem|volume|snapshot`

`zfs rename [-p] filesystem|volume filesystem|volume`

Renames the given dataset. The new target can be located anywhere in the ZFS hierarchy, with the exception of snapshots. Snapshots can only be renamed within the parent file system or volume. When renaming a snapshot, the parent file system of the snapshot does not need to be specified as part of the second argument. Renamed file systems can inherit new mount points, in which case they are unmounted and remounted at the new mount point.

`-p`

Creates all the nonexistent parent datasets. Datasets created in this manner are automatically mounted according to the `mountpoint` property inherited from their parent.

`zfs rename -r snapshot snapshot`

Recursively rename the snapshots of all descendent datasets. Snapshots are the only dataset that can be renamed recursively.

```
zfs list [-r|-d depth] [-H] [-o property[,...]] [-t type[,...]] [-s property] ... [-S property] ...
[filesystem]volume[snapshot] ...
```

Lists the property information for the given datasets in tabular form. If specified, you can list property information by the absolute pathname or the relative pathname. By default, all file systems and volumes are displayed. Snapshots are displayed if the `listsnaps` property is on (the default is off). The following fields are displayed, `name`, `used`, `available`, `referenced`, `mountpoint`.

**-H**

Used for scripting mode. Do not print headers and separate fields by a single tab instead of arbitrary white space.

**-r**

Recursively display any children of the dataset on the command line.

**-d *depth***

Recursively display any children of the dataset, limiting the recursion to *depth*. A depth of 1 will display only the dataset and its direct children.

**-o *property***

A comma-separated list of properties to display. The property must be:

- One of the properties described in the “Native Properties” section
- A user property
- The value `name` to display the dataset name
- The value `space` to display space usage properties on file systems and volumes. This is a shortcut for specifying
  - o `name,avail,used,usedsnap,usedds,usedrefreserv,usedchild`
  - t `filesystem,volume` syntax.

**-s *property***

A property for sorting the output by column in ascending order based on the value of the property. The property must be one of the properties described in the “Properties” section, or the special value `name` to sort by the dataset name. Multiple properties can be specified at one time using multiple `-s` property options. Multiple `-s` options are evaluated from left to right in decreasing order of importance.

The following is a list of sorting criteria:

- Numeric types sort in numeric order.
- String types sort in alphabetical order.
- Types inappropriate for a row sort that row to the literal bottom, regardless of the specified ordering.
- If no sorting options are specified the existing behavior of `zfs list` is preserved.

**-S *property***

Same as the `-s` option, but sorts by property in descending order.

-t *type*

A comma-separated list of types to display, where *type* is one of `filesystem`, `snapshot`, `volume`, or `all`. For example, specifying `-t snapshot` displays only snapshots.

`zfs set property=value filesystem|volume|snapshot ...`

Sets the property to the given value for each dataset. Only some properties can be edited. See the “Properties” section for more information on what properties can be set and acceptable values. Numeric values can be specified as exact values, or in a human-readable form with a suffix of B, K, M, G, T, P, E, Z (for bytes, kilobytes, megabytes, gigabytes, terabytes, petabytes, exabytes, or zettabytes, respectively). User properties can be set on snapshots. For more information, see the “User Properties” section.

`zfs get [-r|-d depth] [-Hp] [-o all |field[,...]] [-s source[,...]] all |property[,...]  
filesystem|volume|snapshot ...`

Displays properties for the given datasets. If no datasets are specified, then the command displays properties for all datasets on the system. For each property, the following columns are displayed:

name	Dataset name
property	Property name
value	Property value
source	Property source. Can either be <code>local</code> , <code>default</code> , <code>temporary</code> , <code>inherited</code> , or <code>none (-)</code> .

All columns except the `RECEIVED` column are displayed by default; specify particular or all columns, using the `-o` option. This command takes a comma-separated list of properties as described in the “Native Properties” and “User Properties” sections.

The special value `all` can be used to display all properties that apply to the given dataset's type (`filesystem`, `volume`, or `snapshot`).

-r

Recursively display properties for any children.

-d *depth*

Recursively display any children of the dataset, limiting the recursion to *depth*. A depth of 1 will display only the dataset and its direct children.

-H

Display output in a form more easily parsed by scripts. Any headers are omitted, and fields are explicitly separated by a single tab instead of an arbitrary amount of space.

-o *field*

Set of fields to display. One or more of:

`name,property,value,received,source`

Present multiple fields as a comma-separated list. The default value is:

`name,property,value,source`

The keyword `all` specifies all sources.



**-s** *source*

A comma-separated list of sources to display. Those properties coming from a source other than those in this list are ignored. Each source must be one of the following:

`local, default, inherited, temporary, received, none`

The default value is all sources.

**-p**

Display numbers in parseable (exact) values.

**zfs inherit** [-rS] *property filesystem|volume|snapshot ...*

Clears the specified property, causing it to be inherited from an ancestor. If no ancestor has the property set, then the default value is used. See the “Properties” section for a listing of default values, and details on which properties can be inherited.

**-r**

Recursively inherit the given property for all children.

**-S**

Revert to the received property value, if any. If the property does not have a received value, the behavior of `zfs inherit -S` is the same as `zfs inherit` without `-S`. If the property does have a received value, `zfs inherit` masks the received value with the inherited value until `zfs inherit -S` reverts to the received value.

**zfs upgrade** [-v]

Displays a list of file systems that are not the most recent version.

**zfs upgrade** [-r] [-V *version*] [-a | *filesystem*]

Upgrades file systems to a new on-disk version. Once this is done, the file systems will no longer be accessible on systems running older versions of the software. `zfs send` streams generated from new snapshots of these file systems cannot be accessed on systems running older versions of the software.

In general, the file system version is independent of the pool version. See [zpool\(1M\)](#) for information on the `zpool upgrade` command.

In some cases, the file system version and the pool version are interrelated and the pool version must be upgraded before the file system version can be upgraded.

**-a**

Upgrade all file systems on all imported pools.

*filesystem*

Upgrade the specified file system.

**-r**

Upgrade the specified file system and all descendent file systems

**-V *version***

Upgrade to the specified *version*. If the **-V** flag is not specified, this command upgrades to the most recent version. This option can only be used to increase the version number, and only up to the most recent version supported by this software.

**zfs userspace** [-niHp] [-o *field*[,...]] [-sS *field*]... [-t *type* [...]] *filesystem* | *snapshot*

Displays space consumed by, and quotas on, each user in the specified filesystem or snapshot. This corresponds to the `userused@user` and `userquota@user` properties.

**-n**

Print numeric ID instead of user/group name.

**-H**

Do not print headers, use tab-delimited output.

**-p**

Use exact (parseable) numeric output.

**-o *field*[,...]**

Display only the specified fields from the following set, `type`, `name`, `used`, `quota`. The default is to display all fields.

**-s *field***

Sort output by this field. The `s` and `S` flags may be specified multiple times to sort first by one field, then by another. The default is `-s type -s name`.

**-S *field***

Sort by this field in reverse order. See `-s`.

**-t *type*[,...]**

Print only the specified types from the following set, `all`, `posixuser`, `smbuser`, `posixgroup`, `smbgroup`.

The default is `-t posixuser, smbuser`

The default can be changed to include group types.

**-i**

Translate SID to POSIX ID. The POSIX ID may be ephemeral if no mapping exists. Normal POSIX interfaces (for example, `stat(2)`, `ls -l`) perform this translation, so the `-i` option allows the output from `zfs userspace` to be compared directly with those utilities. However, `-i` may lead to confusion if some files were created by an SMB user before a SMB-to-POSIX name mapping was established. In such a case, some files are owned by the SMB entity and some by the POSIX entity. However, the `-i` option will report that the POSIX entity has the total usage and quota for both.

**zfs groupspace** [-niHp] [-o *field*[,...]] [-sS *field*]... [-t *type* [...]] *filesystem* | *snapshot*

Displays space consumed by, and quotas on, each group in the specified filesystem or snapshot. This subcommand is identical to `zfs userspace`, except that the default types to display are `-t posixgroup, smbgroup`.

-

**zfs mount**  
Displays all ZFS file systems currently mounted.

**zfs mount [-v0] [-o *options*] -a | *filesystem***  
Mounts ZFS file systems. Invoked automatically as part of the boot process.

-o *options*  
An optional, comma-separated list of mount options to use temporarily for the duration of the mount. See the “Temporary Mount Point Properties” section for details.

-O  
Perform an overlay mount. See [mount\(1M\)](#) for more information.

-v  
Report mount progress.

-a  
Mount all available ZFS file systems. Invoked automatically as part of the boot process.

*filesystem*  
Mount the specified filesystem.

**zfs unmount [-f] -a | *filesystem*|*mountpoint***  
Unmounts currently mounted ZFS file systems. Invoked automatically as part of the shutdown process.

-f  
Forcefully unmount the file system, even if it is currently in use.

-a  
Unmount all available ZFS file systems. Invoked automatically as part of the boot process.

*filesystem*|*mountpoint*  
Unmount the specified filesystem. The command can also be given a path to a ZFS file system mount point on the system.

**zfs share -a | *filesystem***  
Shares available ZFS file systems.

-a  
Share all available ZFS file systems. Invoked automatically as part of the boot process.

*filesystem*  
Share the specified filesystem according to the `sharenfs` and `sharesmb` properties. File systems are shared when the `sharenfs` or `sharesmb` property is set.

**zfs unshare -a | *filesystem*|*mountpoint***  
Unshares currently shared ZFS file systems. This is invoked automatically as part of the shutdown process.

**-a**  
Unshare all available ZFS file systems. Invoked automatically as part of the boot process.

*filesystem|mountpoint*

Unshare the specified filesystem. The command can also be given a path to a ZFS file system shared on the system.

**zfs send** [-DvRp] [-iI] *snapshot snapshot*

Creates a stream representation of the second *snapshot*, which is written to standard output. The output can be redirected to a file or to a different system (for example, using [ssh\(1\)](#)). By default, a full stream is generated.

**-D**

Perform dedup processing on the stream. Deduplicated streams cannot be received on systems that do not support the stream deduplication feature.

**-i** *snapshot*

Generate an incremental stream from the first *snapshot* to the second *snapshot*. The incremental source (the first *snapshot*) can be specified as the last component of the snapshot name (for example, the part after the @), and it is assumed to be from the same file system as the second *snapshot*.

If the destination is a clone, the source may be the origin snapshot, which must be fully specified (for example, pool/fs@origin, not just @origin).

**-I** *snapshot*

Generate a stream package that sends all intermediary snapshots from the first snapshot to the second snapshot. For example, **-I @a fs@d** is similar to **-i @a fs@b**; **-i @b fs@c**; **-i @c fs@d**. The incremental source snapshot may be specified as with the **-i** option.

**-R**

Generate a replication stream package, which will replicate the specified filesystem, and all descendent file systems, up to the named snapshot. When received, all properties, snapshots, descendent file systems, and clones are preserved.

If the **-i** or **-I** flags are used in conjunction with the **-R** flag, an incremental replication stream is generated. The current values of properties, and current snapshot and file system names are set when the stream is received. If the **-F** flag is specified when this stream is received, snapshots and file systems that do not exist on the sending side are destroyed.

**-p**

Send properties.

**-v**

Print verbose information about the stream package generated.

The format of the stream is committed. You will be able to receive your streams on future versions of ZFS.

```
zfs receive [-vnFu] filesystem|volume|snapshot
```

```
zfs receive [-vnFu] [-d | -e] filesystem
```

Creates a snapshot whose contents are as specified in the stream provided on standard input. If a full stream is received, then a new file system is created as well. Streams are created using the `zfs send` subcommand, which by default creates a full stream. `zfs recv` can be used as an alias for `zfs receive`.

If an incremental stream is received, then the destination file system must already exist, and its most recent snapshot must match the incremental stream's source. For `zvol`s, the destination device link is destroyed and recreated, which means the `zvol` cannot be accessed during the `receive` operation.

When a snapshot replication package stream that is generated by using the `zfs send -R` command is received, any snapshots that do not exist on the sending location are destroyed by using the `zfs destroy -d` command.

The name of the snapshot (and file system, if a full stream is received) that this subcommand creates depends on the argument type and the `-d` or `-e` option.

If the argument is a snapshot name, the specified *snapshot* is created. If the argument is a file system or volume name, a snapshot with the same name as the sent snapshot is created within the specified *filesystem* or *volume*. If the `-d` or `-e` option is specified, the snapshot name is determined by appending the sent snapshot's name to the specified filesystem. If the `-d` option is specified, all but the pool name of the sent snapshot path is appended (for example, `b/c@1` appended from sent snapshot `a/b/c@1`), and if the `-e` option is specified, only the tail of the sent snapshot path is appended (for example, `c@1` appended from sent snapshot `a/b/c@1`). In the case of `-d`, any file systems needed to replicate the path of the sent snapshot are created within the specified file system.

**-d**

Use all but the first element of the sent snapshot path (all but the pool name) to determine the name of the new snapshot as described in the paragraph above.

**-e**

Use the last element of the sent snapshot path to determine the name of the new snapshot as described in the paragraph above.

**-u**

File system that is associated with the received stream is not mounted.

**-v**

Print verbose information about the stream and the time required to perform the `receive` operation.

-n  
Do not actually receive the stream. This can be useful in conjunction with the -v option to verify the name the receive operation would use.

-F  
Force a rollback of the file system to the most recent snapshot before performing the receive operation. If receiving an incremental replication stream (for example, one generated by `zfs send -R -[iI]`), destroy snapshots and file systems that do not exist on the sending side.

`zfs allow filesystem | volume`

Displays permissions that have been delegated on the specified filesystem or volume. See the other forms of `zfs allow` for more information.

`zfs allow [-ldug] "everyone"|user[group[,...]] perm|@setname[,...] filesystem | volume`

`zfs allow [-ld] -e perm|@setname[,...] filesystem | volume`

Delegates ZFS administration permission for the file systems to non-privileged users.

`[-ug] "everyone"|user[group[,...]]`

Specifies to whom the permissions are delegated. Multiple entities can be specified as a comma-separated list. If neither of the -ug options are specified, then the argument is interpreted preferentially as the keyword "everyone", then as a user name, and lastly as a group name. To specify a user or group named "everyone", use the -u or -g options. To specify a group with the same name as a user, use the -g options.

`[-e] perm|@setname[,...]`

Specifies that the permissions be delegated to "everyone." Multiple permissions may be specified as a comma-separated list. Permission names are the same as ZFS subcommand and property names. See the property list below. Property set names, which begin with an at sign (@), may be specified. See the -s form below for details.

`[-ld] filesystem|volume`

Specifies where the permissions are delegated. If neither of the -ld options are specified, or both are, then the permissions are allowed for the file system or volume, and all of its descendents. If only the -l option is used, then is allowed "locally" only for the specified file system. If only the -d option is used, then is allowed only for the descendent file systems.

Permissions are generally the ability to use a ZFS subcommand or change a ZFS property. The following permissions are available:

NAME	TYPE	NOTES
allow	subcommand	Must also have the permission that is being allowed
clone	subcommand	Must also have the 'create' ability and 'mount' ability in the origin file system
create	subcommand	Must also have the 'mount' ability
destroy	subcommand	Must also have the 'mount' ability

hold	subcommand	Allows adding a user hold to a snapshot
mount	subcommand	Allows mount/umount of ZFS datasets
promote	subcommand	Must also have the 'mount' and 'promote' ability in the origin file system
receive	subcommand	Must also have the 'mount' and 'create' ability
release	subcommand	Allows releasing a user hold which might destroy the snapshot
rename	subcommand	Must also have the 'mount' and 'create' ability in the new parent
rollback	subcommand	
send	subcommand	
share	subcommand	Allows sharing file systems over NFS or SMB protocols
snapshot	subcommand	
groupquota	other	Allows accessing any groupquota@... property
groupused	other	Allows reading any groupused@... property
userprop	other	Allows changing any user property
userquota	other	Allows accessing any userquota@... property
userused	other	Allows reading any userused@... property
aclinherit	property	
aclmode	property	
atime	property	
canmount	property	
casesensitivity	property	
checksum	property	
compression	property	
copies	property	
dedup	property	
devices	property	
exec	property	
logbias	property	
mlslabel	property	
mountpoint	property	
nbmand	property	
normalization	property	
primarycache	property	
quota	property	
readonly	property	
recordsize	property	
refquota	property	
refreservation	property	
reservation	property	
secondarycache	property	
setuid	property	
shareiscsi	property	

sharefs	property
sharesmb	property
snapdir	property
utf8only	property
version	property
volblocksize	property
volsize	property
vscan	property
xattr	property
zoned	property

`zfs allow -c perm|@setname[,...] filesystem|volume`

Sets “create time” permissions. These permissions are granted (locally) to the creator of any newly-created descendent file system.

`zfs allow -s @setname perm|@setname[,...] filesystem|volume`

Defines or adds permissions to a permission set. The set can be used by other `zfs allow` commands for the specified file system and its descendents. Sets are evaluated dynamically, so changes to a set are immediately reflected. Permission sets follow the same naming restrictions as ZFS file systems, but the name must begin with an “at sign” (@), and can be no more than 64 characters long.

`zfs unallow [-rldug] “everyone”|user|group[,...] [perm|@setname[, ...]] filesystem|volume`

`zfs unallow [-rld] -e [perm|@setname [,...]] filesystem|volume`

`zfs unallow [-r] -c [perm|@setname[,...]]  
filesystem|volume`

Removes permissions that were granted with the `zfs allow` command. No permissions are explicitly denied, so other permissions granted are still in effect. For example, if the permission is granted by an ancestor. If no permissions are specified, then all permissions for the specified *user*, *group*, or *everyone* are removed. Specifying “everyone” (or using the `-e` option) only removes the permissions that were granted to “everyone”, not all permissions for every user and group. See the `zfs allow` command for a description of the `-ldugc` options.

`-r`

Recursively remove the permissions from this file system and all descendents.

`zfs unallow [-r] -s @setname [perm|@setname[,...]]  
filesystem|volume`

Removes permissions from a permission set. If no permissions are specified, then all permissions are removed, thus removing the set entirely.

`zfs hold [-r] tag snapshot...`

Adds a single reference, named with the *tag* argument, to the specified snapshot or snapshots. Each snapshot has its own tag namespace, and tags must be unique within that space.

If a hold exists on a snapshot, attempts to destroy that snapshot by using the `zfs destroy` command return EBUSY.



-r  
Specifies that a hold with the given tag is applied recursively to the snapshots of all descendent file systems.

**zfs holds** [-r] *snapshot...*

Lists all existing user references for the given snapshot or snapshots.

-r

Lists the holds that are set on the named descendent snapshots, in addition to listing the holds on the named snapshot.

**zfs release** [-r] *tag snapshot...*

Removes a single reference, named with the *tag* argument, from the specified snapshot or snapshots. The tag must already exist for each snapshot.

If a hold exists on a snapshot, attempts to destroy that snapshot by using the **zfs destroy** command return EBUSY.

-r

Recursively releases a hold with the given tag on the snapshots of all descendent file systems.

### Examples EXAMPLE 1 Creating a ZFS File System Hierarchy

The following commands create a file system named `pool/home` and a file system named `pool/home/bob`. The mount point `/export/home` is set for the parent file system, and is automatically inherited by the child file system.

```
zfs create pool/home
zfs set mountpoint=/export/home pool/home
zfs create pool/home/bob
```

### EXAMPLE 2 Creating a ZFS Snapshot

The following command creates a snapshot named `yesterday`. This snapshot is mounted on demand in the `.zfs/snapshot` directory at the root of the `pool/home/bob` file system.

```
zfs snapshot pool/home/bob@yesterday
```

### EXAMPLE 3 Creating and Destroying Multiple Snapshots

The following command creates snapshots named `yesterday` of `pool/home` and all of its descendent file systems. Each snapshot is mounted on demand in the `.zfs/snapshot` directory at the root of its file system. The second command destroys the newly created snapshots.

```
zfs snapshot -r pool/home@yesterday
zfs destroy -r pool/home@yesterday
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Disabling and Enabling File System Compression

The following command disables the compression property for all file systems under `pool/home`. The next command explicitly enables compression for `pool/home/anne`.

```
zfs set compression=off pool/home
zfs set compression=on pool/home/anne
```

**EXAMPLE 5** Listing ZFS Datasets

The following command lists all active file systems and volumes in the system. Snapshots are displayed if the `listsnapshots` property is on. The default is off. See [zpool\(1M\)](#) for more information on pool properties.

```
zfs list
NAME USED AVAIL REFER MOUNTPOINT
pool 450K 457G 18K /pool
pool/home 315K 457G 21K /export/home
pool/home/anne 18K 457G 18K /export/home/anne
pool/home/bob 276K 457G 276K /export/home/bob
```

**EXAMPLE 6** Setting a Quota on a ZFS File System

The following command sets a quota of 50 Gbytes for `pool/home/bob`.

```
zfs set quota=50G pool/home/bob
```

**EXAMPLE 7** Listing ZFS Properties

The following command lists all properties for `pool/home/bob`.

```
zfs get all pool/home/bob
NAME PROPERTY VALUE SOURCE
pool/home/bob type filesystem -
pool/home/bob creation Mon Nov 9 15:05 2009 -
pool/home/bob used 282M -
pool/home/bob available 134G -
pool/home/bob referenced 282M -
pool/home/bob compratio 1.00x -
pool/home/bob mounted yes -
pool/home/bob quota none default
pool/home/bob reservation none default
pool/home/bob recordsize 128K default
pool/home/bob mountpoint /pool/home/bob default
pool/home/bob shares off default
pool/home/bob checksum on default
pool/home/bob compression on local
```

**EXAMPLE 7** Listing ZFS Properties *(Continued)*

pool/home/bob	atime	on	default
pool/home/bob	devices	on	default
pool/home/bob	exec	on	default
pool/home/bob	setuid	on	default
pool/home/bob	readonly	off	default
pool/home/bob	zoned	off	default
pool/home/bob	snappdir	hidden	default
pool/home/bob	aclmode	groupmask	default
pool/home/bob	aclinherit	restricted	default
pool/home/bob	canmount	on	default
pool/home/bob	shareiscsi	off	default
pool/home/bob	xattr	on	default
pool/home/bob	copies	1	default
pool/home/bob	version	4	-
pool/home/bob	utf8only	off	-
pool/home/bob	normalization	none	-
pool/home/bob	casesensitivity	sensitive	-
pool/home/bob	vscan	off	default
pool/home/bob	nbmand	off	default
pool/home/bob	sharesmb	off	default
pool/home/bob	refquota	none	default
pool/home/bob	refreservation	none	default
pool/home/bob	primarycache	all	default
pool/home/bob	secondarycache	all	default
pool/home/bob	usedbysnapshots	0	-
pool/home/bob	usedbydataset	282M	-
pool/home/bob	usedbychildren	0	-
pool/home/bob	usedbyrefreservation	0	-
pool/home/bob	logbias	latency	default
pool/home/bob	dedup	off	default
pool/home/bob	mlslabel	none	default

The following command gets a single property value.

```
zfs get -H -o value compression pool/home/bob
on
```

The following command lists all properties with local settings for pool/home/bob.

```
zfs get -r -s local -o name,property,value all pool/home/bob
NAME PROPERTY VALUE
pool/home/bob quota 20G
pool/home/bob compression on
```

**EXAMPLE 8** Rolling Back a ZFS File System

The following command reverts the contents of `pool/home/anne` to the snapshot named `yesterday`, deleting all intermediate snapshots.

```
zfs rollback -r pool/home/anne@yesterday
```

**EXAMPLE 9** Creating a ZFS Clone

The following command creates a writable file system whose initial contents are the same as `pool/home/bob@yesterday`.

```
zfs clone pool/home/bob@yesterday pool/clone
```

**EXAMPLE 10** Promoting a ZFS Clone

The following commands illustrate how to test out changes to a file system, and then replace the original file system with the changed one, using clones, clone promotion, and renaming:

```
zfs create pool/project/production
 populate /pool/project/production with data
zfs snapshot pool/project/production@today
zfs clone pool/project/production@today pool/project/beta
 make changes to /pool/project/beta and test them
zfs promote pool/project/beta
zfs rename pool/project/production pool/project/legacy
zfs rename pool/project/beta pool/project/production
 once the legacy version is no longer needed, it can be destroyed
zfs destroy pool/project/legacy
```

**EXAMPLE 11** Inheriting ZFS Properties

The following command causes `pool/home/bob` and `pool/home/anne` to inherit the checksum property from their parent.

```
zfs inherit checksum pool/home/bob pool/home/anne
```

**EXAMPLE 12** Remotely Replicating ZFS Data

The following commands send a full stream and then an incremental stream to a remote machine, restoring them into `poolB/received/fs@a` and `poolB/received/fs@b`, respectively. `poolB` must contain the file system `poolB/received`, and must not initially contain `poolB/received/fs`.

```
zfs send pool/fs@a | \
 ssh host zfs receive poolB/received/fs@a
zfs send -i a pool/fs@b | ssh host \
```

**EXAMPLE 12** Remotely Replicating ZFS Data (Continued)

```
zfs receive poolB/received/fs
```

**EXAMPLE 13** Using the `zfs receive -d` Option

The following command sends a full stream of `poolA/fsA/fsB@snap` to a remote machine, receiving it into `poolB/received/fsA/fsB@snap`. The `fsA/fsB@snap` portion of the received snapshot's name is determined from the name of the sent snapshot. `poolB` must contain the file system `poolB/received`. If `poolB/received/fsA` does not exist, it is created as an empty file system.

```
zfs send poolA/fsA/fsB@snap | \
ssh host zfs receive -d poolB/received
```

**EXAMPLE 14** Setting User Properties

The following example sets the user-defined `com.example:department` property for a dataset.

```
zfs set com.example:department=12345 tank/accounting
```

**EXAMPLE 15** Creating a ZFS Volume as an iSCSI Target Device

The following example shows how to create a ZFS volume as an iSCSI target.

```
zfs create -V 2g pool/volumes/vol1
zfs set shareiscsi=on pool/volumes/vol1
iscsitadm list target
Target: pool/volumes/vol1
iSCSI Name:
iqn.1986-03.com.sun:02:7b4b02a6-3277-eb1b-e686-a24762c52a8c
Connections: 0
```

After the iSCSI target is created, set up the iSCSI initiator. For more information about the Solaris iSCSI initiator, see [iscsitadm\(1M\)](#).

**EXAMPLE 16** Performing a Rolling Snapshot

The following example shows how to maintain a history of snapshots with a consistent naming scheme. To keep a week's worth of snapshots, the user destroys the oldest snapshot, renames the remaining snapshots, and then creates a new snapshot, as follows:

```
zfs destroy -r pool/users@7daysago
zfs rename -r pool/users@6daysago @7daysago
zfs rename -r pool/users@5daysago @6daysago
zfs rename -r pool/users@yesterday @5daysago
zfs rename -r pool/users@yesterday @4daysago
```

**EXAMPLE 16** Performing a Rolling Snapshot *(Continued)*

```
zfs rename -r pool/users@yesterday @3daysago
zfs rename -r pool/users@yesterday @2daysago
zfs rename -r pool/users@today @yesterday
zfs snapshot -r pool/users@today
```

**EXAMPLE 17** Setting sharenfs Property Options on a ZFS File System

The following commands show how to set sharenfs property options to enable rw access for a set of IP addresses and to enable root access for system neo on the tank/home file system.

```
zfs set sharenfs='rw=@123.123.0.0/16,root=neo' tank/home
```

If you are using DNS for host name resolution, specify the fully qualified hostname.

**EXAMPLE 18** Delegating ZFS Administration Permissions on a ZFS Dataset

The following example shows how to set permissions so that user cindys can create, destroy, mount, and take snapshots on tank/cindys. The permissions on tank/cindys are also displayed.

```
zfs allow cindys create,destroy,mount,snapshot tank/cindys
zfs allow tank/cindys
```

```

Local+Descendent permissions on (tank/cindys)
 user cindys create,destroy,mount,snapshot

```

Because the tank/cindys mount point permission is set to 755 by default, user cindys will be unable to mount file systems under tank/cindys. Set an ACL similar to the following syntax to provide mount point access:

```
chmod A+user:cindys:add_subdirectory:allow /tank/cindys
```

**EXAMPLE 19** Delegating Create Time Permissions on a ZFS Dataset

The following example shows how to grant anyone in the group staff to create file systems in tank/users. This syntax also allows staff members to destroy their own file systems, but not destroy anyone else's file system. The permissions on tank/users are also displayed.

```
zfs allow staff create,mount tank/users
zfs allow -c destroy tank/users
zfs allow tank/users
```

```

Create time permissions on (tank/users)
 create,destroy

```

**EXAMPLE 19** Delegating Create Time Permissions on a ZFS Dataset *(Continued)*

```
Local+Descendent permissions on (tank/users)
 group staff create,mount

```

**EXAMPLE 20** Defining and Granting a Permission Set on a ZFS Dataset

The following example shows how to define and grant a permission set on the tank/users file system. The permissions on tank/users are also displayed.

```
zfs allow -s @pset create,destroy,snapshot,mount tank/users
zfs allow staff @pset tank/users
zfs allow tank/users

```

```
Permission sets on (tank/users)
 @pset create,destroy,mount,snapshot
Create time permissions on (tank/users)
 create,destroy
Local+Descendent permissions on (tank/users)
 group staff @pset,create,mount

```

**EXAMPLE 21** Delegating Property Permissions on a ZFS Dataset

The following example shows to grant the ability to set quotas and reservations on the users/home file system. The permissions on users/home are also displayed.

```
zfs allow cindys quota,reservation users/home
zfs allow users/home

```

```
Local+Descendent permissions on (users/home)
 user cindys quota,reservation

```

```
cindys% zfs set quota=10G users/home/marks
cindys% zfs get quota users/home/marks
NAME PROPERTY VALUE SOURCE
users/home/marks quota 10G local
```

**EXAMPLE 22** Removing ZFS Delegated Permissions on a ZFS Dataset

The following example shows how to remove the snapshot permission from the staff group on the tank/users file system. The permissions on tank/users are also displayed.

```
zfs unallow staff snapshot tank/users
zfs allow tank/users

```

**EXAMPLE 22** Removing ZFS Delegated Permissions on a ZFS Dataset *(Continued)*

```

Permission sets on (tank/users)
 @pset create,destroy,mount,snapshot
Create time permissions on (tank/users)
 create,destroy
Local+Descendent permissions on (tank/users)
 group staff @pset,create,mount

```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0  
Successful completion.
- 1  
An error occurred.
- 2  
Invalid command line options were specified.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWzfsu
Interface Stability	Committed

**See Also** [ssh\(1\)](#), [iscsitadm\(1M\)](#), [mount\(1M\)](#), [share\(1M\)](#), [sharemgr\(1M\)](#), [unshare\(1M\)](#), [zonecfg\(1M\)](#), [zpool\(1M\)](#), [chmod\(2\)](#), [stat\(2\)](#), [write\(2\)](#), [fsync\(3C\)](#), [dfstab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

See the [gzip\(1\)](#) man page, which is not part of the SunOS man page collection.

For information about using the ZFS web-based management tool and other ZFS features, see the *Solaris ZFS Administration Guide*.



**Name** zic – time zone compiler

**Synopsis** zic [--version] [-s] [-v] [-l *localtime*] [-p *posixrules*]  
[-d *directory*] [-y *yearistype*] [*filename*]...

**Description** zic reads text from the file(s) named on the command line and creates the time conversion information files specified in this input. If a *filename* is '-', the standard input is read.

Input lines are made up of fields. Fields are separated by any number of white space characters. Leading and trailing white space on input lines is ignored. A pound sign (#) indicates a comment that extends to the end of the line. White space characters and pound signs can be enclosed within double quotes (" ") if they are to be used as part of a field. Any line that is blank (after comment stripping) is ignored. Non-blank lines are expected to be of one of three types: rule lines, zone lines, or link lines.

**Rule** A rule line has the form:

For example:

```
Rule NAME FROM TO TYPE IN ON AT SAVE LETTER/S
```

The fields that make up a rule line are:

```
Rule USA 1969 1973 - Apr lastSun 2:00 1:00 D
```

**NAME** Gives the (arbitrary) name of the set of rules this rule is part of.

**FROM** Gives the first year in which the rule applies. The word *minimum* (or an abbreviation) means the minimum year with a representable time value. The word *maximum* (or an abbreviation) means the maximum year with a representable time value.

**TO** Gives the final year in which the rule applies. In addition to *minimum* and *maximum* (as above), the word *only* (or an abbreviation) can be used to repeat the value of the **FROM** field.

**TYPE** Gives the type of year in which the rule applies. If **TYPE** is:

'-' The rule applies in all years between **FROM** and **TO**, inclusive.

uspres The rule applies in U.S. Presidential election years.

nonpres The rule applies in years other than U.S. Presidential election years.

even The rule applies to even-numbered years.

odd The rule applies to odd-numbered years.

If **TYPE** is something else, then zic will attempt to execute the command

```
yearistype year type
```

to check the type of a year: an exit status of 0 means that the year is of the given type; an exit status of 1 means that the year is not of the given type. The `yearis` type command is not currently provided in the Solaris environment.

- IN** Names the month in which the rule takes effect. Month names can be abbreviated.
- ON** Gives the day on which the rule takes effect. Recognized forms include:
- 5           the fifth day of the month
  - lastSun    The last Sunday in the month
  - lastMon    The last Monday in the month
  - Sun>=8    First Sunday on or after the eighth
  - Sun<=25    Last Sunday on or before the 25th
- Names of days of the week can be abbreviated or spelled out in full. Note: There cannot be spaces within the **ON** field.
- AT** Gives the time of day at which the rule takes effect. Recognized forms include:
- 2           Time in hours
  - 2:00       Time in hours and minutes
  - 15:00      24-hour format time (for times after noon)
  - 1:28:14    Time in hours, minutes, and seconds, where hour 0 is midnight at the start of the day and hour 24 is midnight at the end of the day.
- Any of these forms can be followed by the letter *w* if the given time is local “wall clock” time; *s* if the given time is local “standard” time; or *u* (or *g* or *z*) if the given time is universal time. In the absence of an indicator, wall clock time is assumed.
- SAVE** Gives the amount of time to be added to local standard time when the rule is in effect. This field has the same format as the **AT** field (without the *w* and *s* suffixes).
- LETTER/S** Gives the “variable part” (for example, the “S” or “D” in “EST” or “EDT” of time zone abbreviations to be used when this rule is in effect. If this field is ‘-’, the variable part is null.

**Zone** A zone line has the form:

```
Zone NAME GMTOFF RULES/SAVE FORMAT [UNTIL]
```

For example:

---

```
Zone Australia/SouthWest 9:30 - CST 1992 Mar 15 12:00
 8:30 Aus CST
```

The fields that make up a zone line are:

NAME	The name of the time zone. This is the name used in creating the time conversion information file for the zone.
GMTOFF	The amount of time to add to UTC to get standard time in this zone. This field has the same format as the AT and SAVE fields of rule lines; begin the field with a minus sign to subtract time from UTC.
RULES/SAVE	The name of the rule(s) that apply in the time zone or, alternately, an amount of time to add to local standard time. If this field is '-', then standard time always applies in the time zone.
FORMAT	The format for time zone abbreviations in this time zone. The pair of characters %s is used to show where the "variable part" of the time zone abbreviation goes. Alternately, a slash (/) separates standard and daylight abbreviations.
UNTIL	The time at which the UTC offset or the rule(s) change for a location. It is specified as a year, a month, a day, and a time of day. The time of day has the same format as the AT field of rule lines. If this is specified, the time zone information is generated from the given UTC offset and rule change until the time specified.

The month, day, and time of day have the same format as the IN, ON, and AT columns of a rule; trailing columns can be omitted, and default to the earliest possible value for the missing columns.

The next line must be a "continuation" line. This line has the same form as a zone line except that the string "Zone" and the name are omitted. The continuation line places information starting at the time specified as the UNTIL field in the previous line in the file used by the previous line. Continuation lines can contain an UNTIL field, just as zone lines do, indicating that the next line is a further continuation.

Link A link line has the form:

```
Link LINK-FROM LINK-TO
```

For example:

```
Link Europe/Istanbul Asia/Istanbul
```

The LINK-FROM field should appear as the NAME field in some zone line; the LINK-TO field is used as an alternate name for that zone.

Except for continuation lines, lines can appear in any order in the input.

- Options**
- `--version` Outputs version information and exits.
  - `-d directory` Creates time conversion information files in the directory *directory* rather than in the standard directory `/usr/share/lib/zoneinfo`.
  - `-l localtime` Uses the given time zone as local time *localtime*. `zic` acts as if the file contained a link line of the form:  
Link *localtime* localtime
  - `-p posixrules` Uses the rules of the given time zone *posixrules* when handling POSIX-format time zone environment variables. `zic` acts as if the input contained a link line of the form:  
Link *posixrules* posixrules  
This option is not used by `ctime(3C)` and `mktime(3C)` in the Solaris environment.
  - `-s` Limits time values stored in output files to values that are the same whether they are taken to be signed or unsigned. You can use this option to generate SVVS-compatible files.  
This option is obsolete and may be removed in a future release.
  - `-v` Complains if a year that appears in a data file is outside the range of years representable by system time values (0:00:00 a.m. UTC, January 1, 1970, to 3:14:07 a.m. UTC, January 19, 2038). This option also complains if a time of 24:00 (which cannot be handled by pre-1998 versions of `zic`) appears in the input.
  - `-y yearistype` Uses the given command *yearistype* rather than `yearistype` when checking year types (see Rules under DESCRIPTION).

**Operands** *filename* A file containing input lines that specify the time conversion information files to be created. If a *filename* is '-', the standard input is read.

**Files** `/usr/share/lib/zoneinfo` Standard directory used for created files  
`/usr/share/lib/zoneinfo/src` Directory containing source files

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWcsu
Interface Stability	Committed*

\* The `-s` option is obsolete.

**See Also** [time\(1\)](#), [zdump\(1M\)](#), [ctime\(3C\)](#), [mktime\(3C\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Notes** For areas with more than two types of local time, you might need to use local standard time in the AT field of the earliest transition time's rule to ensure that the earliest transition time recorded in the compiled file is correct.

If the current *timezone* file is edited and compiled using the “`zic`” command, the changes will only be reflected in any new processes that are running. The most accurate way to reflect the changes for the whole system would be a reboot.

**Name** zoneadm – administer zones

**Synopsis** zoneadm -z *zonename* [-u *uuid-match*] *subcommand*  
                   [*subcommand\_options*]

zoneadm [-R *root*] [-z *zonename*] [-u *uuid-match*] list  
                   [*list\_options*]

zoneadm [-R *root*] -z *zonename* [-u *uuid-match*] mark incomplete

**Description** The zoneadm utility is used to administer system zones. A zone is an application container that is maintained by the operating system runtime.

**Security** Once a process has been placed in a zone other than zone 0, the process or any of its children cannot change zones.

**Options** The following options are supported:

-R *root*

Specify an alternate root (boot environment). This option can only be used in conjunction with the “list” and “mark” subcommands.

-u *uuid-match*

Unique identifier for a zone, as assigned by `libuuid(3LIB)`. If this option is present and the argument is a non-empty string, then the zone matching the UUID is selected instead of the one named by the -z option, if such a zone is present.

-z *zonename*

String identifier for a zone.

**Subcommands** Subcommands which can result in destructive actions or loss of work have a -F flag to force the action. If input is from a terminal device, the user is prompted if such a command is given without the -F flag; otherwise, if such a command is given without the -F flag, the action is disallowed, with a diagnostic message written to standard error. If a zone installation or uninstallation is interrupted, the zone is left in the incomplete state. Use `uninstall` to reset such a zone back to the configured state.

The following subcommands are supported:

`attach` [-F] [-n *path*] [*brand-specific options*]

The `attach` subcommand takes a zone that has been detached from one system and attaches the zone onto a new system. Therefore, it is advised (though not required) that the `detach` subcommand should be run before the “attach” takes place. Once you have the new zone in the configured state, use the `attach` subcommand to set up the zone root instead of installing the zone as a new zone.

The -F option can be used to force the zone into the “installed” state with no validation. This option should be used with care since it can leave the zone in an unsupported state if it was moved from a source system to a target system that is unable to properly host the zone. The -n option can be used to perform a “dry run” of the `attach` subcommand. It uses

the output of the “`detach -n`” subcommand as input and is useful to identify any conflicting issues, such as the network device being incompatible, and can also determine whether the host is capable of supporting the zone. The path can be “-”, to read the input from standard input.

The zone's brand may include additional options that govern how the zone will be attached. See [brands\(5\)](#) for specific brand information.

The zone being attached must first be configured using the `zonecfg` (see [zonecfg\(1M\)](#)) command. This does not apply when running “`attach -n`”.

Use the following command to attach a zone:

```
zoneadm -z my-zone attach
```

In the absence of `-n` (as above), the source zone must be halted before this subcommand can be used.

`-n`

Read the zone manifest and verify that the target machine has the correct configuration to host the zone without actually performing an attach. The zone on the target system does not have to be configured on the new host before doing a trial-run attach.

`boot [- - boot_options]`

Boot (or activate) the specified zones.

The following *boot\_options* are supported:

`-i altinit`

Select an alternative executable to be the primordial Process. *altinit* is a valid path to an executable. The default primordial process is [init\(1M\)](#).

`-m smf_options`

The *smf\_options* include two categories of options to control booting behavior of the service management facility: recovery options and messages options.

Message options determine the type and amount of messages that [smf\(5\)](#) displays during boot. Service options determine the services which are used to boot the system. See [kernel\(1M\)](#) for a listing of the `-m` suboptions.

`-s`

Boots only to milestone `svc:/milestone/single-user:default`. This milestone is equivalent to init level `s`. See [svc.startd\(1M\)](#) and [init\(1M\)](#).

`clone [-m copy] [-s zfs_snapshot] source_zone`

Install a zone by copying an existing installed zone. This subcommand is an alternative way to install the zone.

`-m copy`

Force the clone to be a copy, even if a “ZFS clone” is possible.

**-s *zfs\_snapshot***

Specify the name of a ZFS snapshot to use as the source of the clone. The *snapshot* must be a *snapshot* of the source zone taken from a previous “zoneadm clone” installation.

The source zone must be halted before this subcommand can be used.

**detach [-n]**

Detach the specified zone. Detaching a zone is the first step in moving a zone from one system to another. The full procedure to migrate a zone is that the zone is detached, the *zonepath* directory is moved to the new host, and then the zone is attached on the new host. Once the zone is detached, it is left in the configured state. If you try to install or clone to a configured zone that has been detached, you will receive an error message and the `install` or `clone` subcommand will not be allowed to proceed. The `-n` option can be used to perform a “dry run” of the detach subcommand. This generates the information needed for running the “attach -n” subcommand, which is useful to identify any conflicting issues, such as the network device being incompatible or if the host is capable of supporting the zone. The information is sent to standard output and can be saved to a file or piped to the “attach -n” subcommand.

Use the following command to detach a zone:

```
zoneadm -z my-zone detach
```

Unless the `-n` option is used, the source zone must be halted before this subcommand can be used.

**-n**

Generate a zone manifest on a running zone without actually detaching the zone. The state of the zone on the originating system is not changed. The zone manifest is sent to `stdout`. The global administrator can direct this output to a file or pipe it to a remote command to be immediately validated on the target host.

**halt**

Halt the specified zones. `halt` bypasses running the shutdown scripts inside the zone. It also removes run time resources of the zone.

Use:

```
zlogin zone shutdown
```

to cleanly shutdown the zone by running the shutdown scripts.

**help [*subcommand*]**

Display general help. If you specify *subcommand*, displays help on *subcommand*.

**install [-x *nodataset*] [*brand-specific options*]**

Install the specified zone on the system. This subcommand automatically attempts to verify first. It refuses to install if the verify step fails. See the `verify` subcommand.

**-x *nodataset***

Do not create a ZFS file system.



The zone's brand may include additional options that govern how the software will be installed in the zone. See [brands\(5\)](#) for specific brand information.

`list` [*list\_options*]

Display the name of the current zones, or the specified zone if indicated.

By default, all running zones are listed. If you use this subcommand with the `zoneadm -z zonename` option, it lists only the specified zone, regardless of its state. In this case, the `-i` and `-c` options are disallowed.

If neither the `-i` or `-c` options are given, all running zones are listed.

The following *list\_options* are supported:

`-c`

Display all configured zones. This option overrides the `-i` option.

`-i`

Expand the display to all installed zones.

`-p`

Request machine parsable output. The output format is a list of lines, one per zone, with colon- delimited fields. These fields are:

```
zoneid:zonename:state:zonepath:uuid:brand:ip-type
```

If the `zonepath` contains embedded colons, they can be escaped by a backslash (“\:”), which is parsable by using the shell [read\(1\)](#) function with the environmental variable `IFS`. The `uuid` value is assigned by [libuuid\(3LIB\)](#) when the zone is installed, and is useful for identifying the same zone when present (or renamed) on alternate boot environments. Any software that parses the output of the “`zoneadm list -p`” command must be able to handle any fields that may be added in the future.

The `-v` and `-p` options are mutually exclusive. If neither `-v` nor `-p` is used, just the zone name is listed.

`-v`

Display verbose information, including zone name, id, current state, root directory, brand type, ip-type, and options.

The `-v` and `-p` options are mutually exclusive. If neither `-v` nor `-p` is used, just the zone name is listed.

`mark incomplete`

Change the state of an installed zone to “incomplete.” This command may be useful in cases where administrative changes on the system have rendered a zone unusable or inconsistent. This change cannot be undone (except by uninstalling the zone).

**move *new\_zonepath***

Move the *zonepath* to *new\_zonepath*. The zone must be halted before this subcommand can be used. The *new\_zonepath* must be a local file system and normal restrictions for *zonepath* apply.

**ready**

Prepares a zone for running applications but does not start any user processes in the zone.

**reboot**

Restart the zones. This is equivalent to a `halt boot` sequence. This subcommand fails if the specified zones are not active.

**uninstall [-F]**

Uninstall the specified zone from the system. Use this subcommand with caution. It removes all of the files under the *zonepath* of the zone in question. You can use the `-F` flag to force the action.

**verify**

Check to make sure the configuration of the specified zone can safely be installed on the machine. Following is a break-down of the checks by resource/property type:

**zonepath**

*zonepath* and its parent directory exist and are owned by root with appropriate modes. The appropriate modes are that *zonepath* is `700`, its parent is not group or world-writable and so forth. *zonepath* is not over an NFS mount. A sub-directory of the *zonepath* named "root" does not exist.

If *zonepath* does not exist, the `verify` does not fail, but merely warns that a subsequent install will attempt to create it with proper permissions. A `verify` subsequent to that might fail should anything go wrong.

*zonepath* cannot be a symbolic link.

**fs**

Any `fs` resources have their *type* value checked. An error is reported if the value is one of `proc`, `mntfs`, `autofs`, `cache`, or `nfs` or the filesystem does not have an associated mount binary at `/usr/lib/fs/<fstype>/mount`.

It is an error for the *directory* to be a relative path.

It is an error for the path specified by *raw* to be a relative path or if there is no `fsck` binary for a given filesystem type at `/usr/lib/fs/<fstype>/fsck`. It is also an error if a corresponding `fsck` binary exists but a *raw* path is not specified.

**net**

All physical network interfaces exist. All network address resources are one of:

- a valid IPv4 address, optionally followed by "/" and a prefix length;
- a valid IPv6 address, which must be followed by "/" and a prefix length;
- a host name which resolves to an IPv4 address.

Note that hostnames that resolve to IPv6 addresses are not supported.

The physical interface name is the network interface name.

A zone can be configured to be either exclusive-IP or shared-IP. For a shared-IP zone, both the physical and address properties must be set. For an exclusive-IP zone, the physical property must be set and the address property cannot be set.

#### rctl

It also verifies that any defined resource control values are valid on the current machine. This means that the privilege level is `privileged`, the limit is lower than the currently defined system value, and that the defined action agrees with the actions that are valid for the given resource control.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Using the `-m` Option

The following command illustrates the use of the `-m` option.

```
zoneadm boot -- -m verbose
```

EXAMPLE 2 Using the `-i` Option

The following command illustrates the use of the `-i` option.

```
zoneadm boot -- -i /sbin/init
```

EXAMPLE 3 Using the `-s` Option

The following command illustrates the use of the `-s` option.

```
zoneadm boot -- -s
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0  
Successful completion.
- 1  
An error occurred.
- 2  
Invalid usage.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWzoneu

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Interface Stability	Committed

**See Also** [read\(1\)](#), [svcs\(1\)](#), [zlogin\(1\)](#), [zonename\(1\)](#), [init\(1M\)](#), [kernel\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [svc.startd\(1M\)](#), [svc.startd\(1M\)](#), [zonecfg\(1M\)](#), [libuuid\(3LIB\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [brands\(5\)](#), [native\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [zones\(5\)](#)

**Notes** The [zones\(5\)](#) service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/zones:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

The act of installing a new non-global zone is a fresh installation of the Solaris operating system. A new installation of Solaris must not require interaction with the user (that is, it must be “hands off”). Because of this, packages installed in the global zone and all non-global zones cannot contain request scripts (see [pkgask\(1M\)](#)). If a package did have a request script, then the creation of a non-global zone could not be done without user intervention. Any package that contains a request script is added to the global zone only. See [pkgadd\(1M\)](#).

**Name** zoneadmd – zone administration daemon

**Synopsis** /usr/lib/zones/zoneadmd

**Description** zoneadmd is a system daemon that is started when the system needs to manage a particular zone. Because each instance of the zoneadmd daemon manages a particular zone, it is not unexpected to see multiple zoneadmd daemons running.

This daemon is started automatically by the zone management software and should not be invoked directly. The daemon shuts down automatically when no longer in use. It does not constitute a programming interface, but is classified as a private interface.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWzoneu
Interface Stability	Private

**See Also** [svcs\(1\)](#), [zlogin\(1\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [zoneadm\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [smf\(5\)](#), [zones\(5\)](#)

**Notes** The [zones\(5\)](#) service is managed by the service management facility, [smf\(5\)](#), under the service identifier:

```
svc:/system/zones:default
```

Administrative actions on this service, such as enabling, disabling, or requesting restart, can be performed using [svcadm\(1M\)](#). The service's status can be queried using the [svcs\(1\)](#) command.

**Name** zonecfg – set up zone configuration

**Synopsis** zonecfg -z *zonename*  
zonecfg -z *zonename subcommand*  
zonecfg -z *zonename -f command\_file*  
zonecfg help

**Description** The zonecfg utility creates and modifies the configuration of a zone. Zone configuration consists of a number of resources and properties.

To simplify the user interface, zonecfg uses the concept of a scope. The default scope is global.

The following synopsis of the zonecfg command is for interactive usage:

```
zonecfg -z zonename subcommand
```

Parameters changed through zonecfg do not affect a running zone. The zone must be rebooted for the changes to take effect.

In addition to creating and modifying a zone, the zonecfg utility can also be used to persistently specify the resource management settings for the global zone.

In the following text, “rctl” is used as an abbreviation for “resource control”. See [resource\\_controls\(5\)](#).

Every zone is configured with an associated brand. The brand determines the user-level environment used within the zone, as well as various behaviors for the zone when it is installed, boots, or is shutdown. Once a zone has been installed the brand cannot be changed. The default brand is determined by the installed distribution in the global zone. Some brands do not support all of the zonecfg properties and resources. See the brand-specific man page for more details on each brand. For an overview of brands, see the [brands\(5\)](#) man page.

**Resources** The following resource types are supported:

`attr`

Generic attribute.

`capped-cpu`

Limits for CPU usage.

`capped-memory`

Limits for physical, swap, and locked memory.

`dataset`

ZFS dataset.

`dedicated-cpu`

Subset of the system's processors dedicated to this zone while it is running.

device

Device.

fs

file-system

`inherit-pkg-dir`

Directory inherited from the global zone. Used for sparse root zones (see the discussion of “Sparse and Whole Root Non-Global Zones,” below). Software packages whose contents have been transferred into that directory are inherited in read-only mode by the non-global zone and the non-global zone's packaging database is updated to reflect those packages. Such resources are not modifiable or removable once a zone has been installed with `zoneadm`.

net

Network interface.

`rctl`

Resource control.

#### Sparse and Whole Root Non-Global Zones

In the administration of zones, it is useful to distinguish between the global zone and non-global zones. Within non-global zones, there are two zone root file system models: sparse and whole root. The sparse root zone model optimizes the sharing of objects. The whole root zone model provides the maximum configurability. Note that not all brands support the sparse zone model.

### Sparse Root Zones

Non-global zones that have `inherit-pkg-dir` resources are called sparse root zones.

The sparse root zone model optimizes the sharing of objects in the following ways:

- Only a subset of the packages installed in the global zone are installed directly into the non-global zone.
- Read-only loopback file systems, identified as `inherit-pkg-dir` resources, are used to gain access to other files.

In this model, all packages appear to be installed in the non-global zone. Packages that do not deliver content into read-only loopback mount file systems are fully installed. There is no need to install content delivered into read-only loopback mounted file systems since that content is inherited (and visible) from the global zone.

- As a general guideline, a zone requires about 100 megabytes of free disk space per zone when the global zone has been installed with all of the standard Solaris packages.
- By default, any additional packages installed in the global zone also populate the non-global zones. The amount of disk space required might be increased accordingly, depending on whether the additional packages deliver files that reside in the `inherit-pkg-dir` resource space.

An additional 40 megabytes of RAM per zone are suggested, but not required on a machine with sufficient swap space.

A sparse zone inherits the following directories:

```
/lib
/platform
/sbin
/usr
```

Although zonecfg allows you to remove one of these as an inherited directory, you should not do so. You should either follow the whole-root model or the sparse model; a subset of the sparse model is not tested and you might encounter unexpected problems.

Adding an additional inherit-pkg-dir directory, such as /opt, to a sparse root zone is acceptable.

### Whole Root Zones

The whole root zone model provides the maximum configurability. All of the required and any selected optional Solaris packages are installed into the private file systems of the zone. The advantages of this model include the capability for global administrators to customize their zones file system layout. This would be done, for example, to add arbitrary unbundled or third-party packages.

The disk requirements for this model are determined by the disk space used by the packages currently installed in the global zone.

**Note** – If you create a sparse root zone that contains the following inherit-pkg-dir directories, you must remove these directories from the non-global zone's configuration before the zone is installed to have a whole root zone:

- /lib
- /platform
- /sbin
- /usr

Properties Each resource type has one or more properties. There are also some global properties, that is, properties of the configuration as a whole, rather than of some particular resource.

The following properties are supported:

(global)  
zonename

(global)  
zonename

(global)  
autoboot



(global)  
bootargs

(global)  
pool

(global)  
limitpriv

(global)  
brand

(global)  
cpu-shares

(global)  
hostid

(global)  
max-lwps

(global)  
max-msg-ids

(global)  
max-sem-ids

(global)  
max-shm-ids

(global)  
max-shm-memory

(global)  
scheduling-class

fs  
dir, special, raw, type, options

inherit-pkg-dir  
dir

net  
address, physical, defrouter

device  
match

rctl  
name, value

attr  
name, type, value

dataset

name

dedicated-cpu

ncpus, importance

capped-memory

physical, swap, locked

capped-cpu

ncpus

As for the property values which are paired with these names, they are either simple, complex, or lists. The type allowed is property-specific. Simple values are strings, optionally enclosed within quotation marks. Complex values have the syntax:

```
(<name>=<value>, <name>=<value>, . . .)
```

where each *<value>* is simple, and the *<name>* strings are unique within a given property.

Lists have the syntax:

```
[<value>, . . .]
```

where each *<value>* is either simple or complex. A list of a single value (either simple or complex) is equivalent to specifying that value without the list syntax. That is, “foo” is equivalent to “[foo]”. A list can be empty (denoted by “[ ]”).

In interpreting property values, `zonecfg` accepts regular expressions as specified in [fnmatch\(5\)](#). See [EXAMPLES](#).

The property types are described as follows:

global: zonename

The name of the zone.

global: zonepath

Path to zone's file system.

global: autoboot

Boolean indicating that a zone should be booted automatically at system boot. Note that if the zones service is disabled, the zone will not autoboot, regardless of the setting of this property. You enable the zones service with a `svcadm` command, such as:

```
svcadm enable svc:/system/zones:default
```

Replace `enable` with `disable` to disable the zones service. See [svcadm\(1M\)](#).

global: bootargs

Arguments (options) to be passed to the zone bootup, unless options are supplied to the “`zoneadm boot`” command, in which case those take precedence. The valid arguments are described in [zoneadm\(1M\)](#).

**global: pool**

Name of the resource pool that this zone must be bound to when booted. This property is incompatible with the `dedicated-cpu` resource.

**global: limitpriv**

The maximum set of privileges any process in this zone can obtain. The property should consist of a comma-separated privilege set specification as described in [priv\\_str\\_to\\_set\(3C\)](#). Privileges can be excluded from the resulting set by preceding their names with a dash (-) or an exclamation point (!). The special privilege string “zone” is not supported in this context. If the special string “default” occurs as the first token in the property, it expands into a safe set of privileges that preserve the resource and security isolation described in [zones\(5\)](#). A missing or empty property is equivalent to this same set of safe privileges.

The system administrator must take extreme care when configuring privileges for a zone. Some privileges cannot be excluded through this mechanism as they are required in order to boot a zone. In addition, there are certain privileges which cannot be given to a zone as doing so would allow processes inside a zone to unduly affect processes in other zones. [zoneadm\(1M\)](#) indicates when an invalid privilege has been added or removed from a zone's privilege set when an attempt is made to either “boot” or “ready” the zone.

See [privileges\(5\)](#) for a description of privileges. The command “`ppriv -l`” (see [ppriv\(1\)](#)) produces a list of all Solaris privileges. You can specify privileges as they are displayed by `ppriv`. In [privileges\(5\)](#), privileges are listed in the form `PRIV_privilege_name`. For example, the privilege `sys_time`, as you would specify it in this property, is listed in [privileges\(5\)](#) as `PRIV_SYS_TIME`.

**global: brand**

The zone's brand type.

**global: ip-type**

A zone can either share the IP instance with the global zone, which is the default, or have its own exclusive instance of IP.

This property takes the values `shared` and `exclusive`.

**global: hostid**

A zone can emulate a 32-bit host identifier to ease system consolidation. A zone's `hostid` property is empty by default, meaning that the zone does not emulate a host identifier. Zone host identifiers must be hexadecimal values between 0 and FFFFFFFE. A `0x` or `0X` prefix is optional. Both uppercase and lowercase hexadecimal digits are acceptable.

**fs: dir, special, raw, type, options**

Values needed to determine how, where, and so forth to mount file systems. See [mount\(1M\)](#), [mount\(2\)](#), [fsck\(1M\)](#), and [vfstab\(4\)](#).

**inherit-pkg-dir: dir**

The directory path.

**net:** address, physical, defrouter

The network address and physical interface name of the network interface. The network address is one of:

- a valid IPv4 address, optionally followed by “/” and a prefix length;
- a valid IPv6 address, which must be followed by “/” and a prefix length;
- a host name which resolves to an IPv4 address.

Note that host names that resolve to IPv6 addresses are not supported.

The physical interface name is the network interface name.

The value for the optional default router is specified similarly to the network address except that it must not be followed by a / (slash) and a network prefix length. To enable correct use of the `defrouter` functionality, the zones that use the property must be on a different subnet from the subnet on which the global zone resides. Also, each zone (or set of zones) that uses a different `defrouter` setting must be on a different subnet.

A zone can be configured to be either exclusive-IP or shared-IP. For a shared-IP zone, you must set both the physical and address properties; setting the default router is optional. The interface specified in the physical property must be plumbed in the global zone prior to booting the non-global zone. However, if the interface is not used by the global zone, it should be configured down in the global zone, and the default router for the interface should be specified here.

For an exclusive-IP zone, the physical property must be set and the address and default router properties cannot be set.

**device:** match

Device name to match.

**rctl:** name, value

The name and *priv/limit/action* triple of a resource control. See [prctl\(1\)](#) and [rctladm\(1M\)](#). The preferred way to set rctl values is to use the global property name associated with a specific rctl.

**attr:** name, type, value

The name, type and value of a generic attribute. The type must be one of `int`, `uint`, `boolean` or `string`, and the value must be of that type. `uint` means unsigned, that is, a non-negative integer.

**dataset:** name

The name of a ZFS dataset to be accessed from within the zone. See [zfs\(1M\)](#).

**global:** cpu-shares

The number of Fair Share Scheduler (FSS) shares to allocate to this zone. This property is incompatible with the `dedicated-cpu` resource. This property is the preferred way to set the zone `cpu-shares` rctl.

**global: max-lwps**

The maximum number of LWPs simultaneously available to this zone. This property is the preferred way to set the zone `.max-lwps rctl`.

**global: max-msg-ids**

The maximum number of message queue IDs allowed for this zone. This property is the preferred way to set the zone `.max-msg-ids rctl`.

**global: max-sem-ids**

The maximum number of semaphore IDs allowed for this zone. This property is the preferred way to set the zone `.max-sem-ids rctl`.

**global: max-shm-ids**

The maximum number of shared memory IDs allowed for this zone. This property is the preferred way to set the zone `.max-shm-ids rctl`.

**global: max-shm-memory**

The maximum amount of shared memory allowed for this zone. This property is the preferred way to set the zone `.max-shm-memory rctl`. A scale (K, M, G, T) can be applied to the value for this number (for example, 1M is one megabyte).

**global: scheduling-class**

Specifies the scheduling class used for processes running in a zone. When this property is not specified, the scheduling class is established as follows:

- If the `cpu-shares` property or equivalent `rctl` is set, the scheduling class FSS is used.
- If neither `cpu-shares` nor the equivalent `rctl` is set and the zone's `pool` property references a pool that has a default scheduling class, that class is used.
- Under any other conditions, the system default scheduling class is used.

**dedicated-cpu: ncpus, importance**

The number of CPUs that should be assigned for this zone's exclusive use. The zone will create a pool and processor set when it boots. See [pooladm\(1M\)](#) and [poolcfg\(1M\)](#) for more information on resource pools. The `ncpus` property can specify a single value or a range (for example, 1-4) of processors. The `importance` property is optional; if set, it will specify the `pset.importance` value for use by [poold\(1M\)](#). If this resource is used, there must be enough free processors to allocate to this zone when it boots or the zone will not boot. The processors assigned to this zone will not be available for the use of the global zone or other zones. This resource is incompatible with both the `pool` and `cpu-shares` properties. Only a single instance of this resource can be added to the zone.

**capped-memory: physical, swap, locked**

The caps on the memory that can be used by this zone. A scale (K, M, G, T) can be applied to the value for each of these numbers (for example, 1M is one megabyte). Each of these properties is optional but at least one property must be set when adding this resource. Only a single instance of this resource can be added to the zone. The `physical` property sets the `max-rss` for this zone. This will be enforced by [rcapd\(1M\)](#) running in the global zone. The

swap property is the preferred way to set the zone.max-swap rctl. The locked property is the preferred way to set the zone.max-locked-memory rctl.

#### capped-cpu: ncpus

Sets a limit on the amount of CPU time that can be used by a zone. The unit used translates to the percentage of a single CPU that can be used by all user threads in a zone, expressed as a fraction (for example, .75) or a mixed number (whole number and fraction, for example, 1.25). An ncpu value of 1 means 100% of a CPU, a value of 1.25 means 125%, .75 mean 75%, and so forth. When projects within a capped zone have their own caps, the minimum value takes precedence.

The capped-cpu property is an alias for zone.cpu-cap resource control and is related to the zone.cpu-cap resource control. See [resource\\_controls\(5\)](#).

The following table summarizes resources, property-names, and types:

resource	property-name	type
(global)	zonename	simple
(global)	zonepath	simple
(global)	autoboot	simple
(global)	bootargs	simple
(global)	pool	simple
(global)	limitpriv	simple
(global)	brand	simple
(global)	ip-type	simple
(global)	hostid	simple
(global)	cpu-shares	simple
(global)	max-lwps	simple
(global)	max-msg-ids	simple
(global)	max-sem-ids	simple
(global)	max-shm-ids	simple
(global)	max-shm-memory	simple
(global)	scheduling-class	simple
fs	dir	simple
	special	simple
	raw	simple
	type	simple
	options	list of simple
inherit-pkg-dir	dir	simple
net	address	simple
	physical	simple
device	match	simple
rctl	name	simple
	value	list of complex
attr	name	simple
	type	simple
	value	simple
dataset	name	simple
dedicated-cpu	ncpus	simple or range

	importance	simple
capped-memory	physical	simple with scale
	swap	simple with scale
	locked	simple with scale
capped-cpu	ncpus	simple

To further specify things, the breakdown of the complex property “value” of the “rctl” resource type, it consists of three name/value pairs, the names being “priv”, “limit” and “action”, each of which takes a simple value. The “name” property of an “attr” resource is syntactically restricted in a fashion similar but not identical to zone names: it must begin with an alphanumeric, and can contain alphanumerics plus the hyphen (-), underscore (\_), and dot (.) characters. Attribute names beginning with “zone” are reserved for use by the system. Finally, the “autoboot” global property must have a value of “true” or “false”.

#### Using Kernel Statistics to Monitor CPU Caps

Using the kernel statistics (*kstat(3KSTAT)*) module caps, the system maintains information for all capped projects and zones. You can access this information by reading kernel statistics (*kstat(3KSTAT)*), specifying caps as the *kstat* module name. The following command displays kernel statistics for all active CPU caps:

```
kstat caps::'/cpucaps/'
```

A *kstat(1M)* command running in a zone displays only CPU caps relevant for that zone and for projects in that zone. See EXAMPLES.

The following are cap-related arguments for use with *kstat(1M)*:

caps

The *kstat* module.

project\_caps or zone\_caps

*kstat* class, for use with the *kstat -c* option.

cpucaps\_project\_id or cpucaps\_zone\_id

*kstat* name, for use with the *kstat -n* option. *id* is the project or zone identifier.

The following fields are displayed in response to a *kstat(1M)* command requesting statistics for all CPU caps.

module

In this usage of *kstat*, this field will have the value caps.

name

As described above, cpucaps\_project\_id or cpucaps\_zone\_id

above\_sec

Total time, in seconds, spent above the cap.

below\_sec

Total time, in seconds, spent below the cap.

`maxusage`

Maximum observed CPU usage.

`nwait`

Number of threads on cap wait queue.

`usage`

Current aggregated CPU usage for all threads belonging to a capped project or zone, in terms of a percentage of a single CPU.

`value`

The cap value, in terms of a percentage of a single CPU.

`zonename`

Name of the zone for which statistics are displayed.

See EXAMPLES for sample output from a `kstat` command.

**Options** The following options are supported:

`-f command_file`

Specify the name of zonecfg command file. *command\_file* is a text file of zonecfg subcommands, one per line.

`-z zonename`

Specify the name of a zone. Zone names are case sensitive. Zone names must begin with an alphanumeric character and can contain alphanumeric characters, the underscore (`_`) the hyphen (`-`), and the dot (`.`). The name `global` and all names beginning with `SUNW` are reserved and cannot be used.

**Subcommands** You can use the `add` and `select` subcommands to select a specific resource, at which point the scope changes to that resource. The `end` and `cancel` subcommands are used to complete the resource specification, at which time the scope is reverted back to global. Certain subcommands, such as `add`, `remove` and `set`, have different semantics in each scope.

zonecfg supports a semicolon-separated list of subcommands. For example:

```
zonecfg -z myzone "add net; set physical=myvnic; end"
```

Subcommands which can result in destructive actions or loss of work have an `-F` option to force the action. If input is from a terminal device, the user is prompted when appropriate if such a command is given without the `-F` option otherwise, if such a command is given without the `-F` option, the action is disallowed, with a diagnostic message written to standard error.

The following subcommands are supported:

`add resource-type` (global scope)

`add property-name property-value` (resource scope)

In the global scope, begin the specification for a given resource type. The scope is changed to that resource type.



In the resource scope, add a property of the given name with the given value. The syntax for property values varies with different property types. In general, it is a simple value or a list of simple values enclosed in square brackets, separated by commas ([ foo , bar , baz ]). See `PROPERTIES`.

`cancel`

End the resource specification and reset scope to global. Abandons any partially specified resources. `cancel` is only applicable in the resource scope.

`clear property-name`

Clear the value for the property.

`commit`

Commit the current configuration from memory to stable storage. The configuration must be committed to be used by `zoneadm`. Until the in-memory configuration is committed, you can remove changes with the `revert` subcommand. The `commit` operation is attempted automatically upon completion of a `zonecfg` session. Since a configuration must be correct to be committed, this operation automatically does a verify.

`create [-F] [ -a path | -b | -t template]`

Create an in-memory configuration for the specified zone. Use `create` to begin to configure a new zone. See `commit` for saving this to stable storage.

If you are overwriting an existing configuration, specify the `-F` option to force the action. Specify the `-t template` option to create a configuration identical to *template*, where *template* is the name of a configured zone.

Use the `-a path` option to facilitate configuring a detached zone on a new host. The *path* parameter is the `zonpath` location of a detached zone that has been moved on to this new host. Once the detached zone is configured, it should be installed using the “`zoneadm attach`” command (see `zoneadm(1M)`). All validation of the new zone happens during the `attach` process, not during zone configuration.

Use the `-b` option to create a blank configuration. Without arguments, `create` applies the Sun default settings.

`delete [-F]`

Delete the specified configuration from memory and stable storage. This action is instantaneous, no `commit` is necessary. A deleted configuration cannot be reverted.

Specify the `-F` option to force the action.

`end`

End the resource specification. This subcommand is only applicable in the resource scope. `zonecfg` checks to make sure the current resource is completely specified. If so, it is added to the in-memory configuration (see `commit` for saving this to stable storage) and the scope reverts to global. If the specification is incomplete, it issues an appropriate error message.

`export [-f output-file]`

Print configuration to standard output. Use the `-f` option to print the configuration to *output-file*. This option produces output in a form suitable for use in a command file.

`help [usage] [subcommand] [syntax] [command-name]`

Print general help or help about given topic.

`info zonename | zonepath | autoboot | brand | pool | limitpriv`

`info [resource-type [property-name=property-value]*]`

Display information about the current configuration. If *resource-type* is specified, displays only information about resources of the relevant type. If any *property-name* value pairs are specified, displays only information about resources meeting the given criteria. In the resource scope, any arguments are ignored, and `info` displays information about the resource which is currently being added or modified.

`remove resource-type{property-name=property-value}(global scope)`

In the global scope, removes the specified resource. The `[]` syntax means 0 or more of whatever is inside the square braces. If you want only to remove a single instance of the resource, you must specify enough property name-value pairs for the resource to be uniquely identified. If no property name-value pairs are specified, all instances will be removed. If there is more than one pair is specified, a confirmation is required, unless you use the `-F` option.

`select resource-type {property-name=property-value}`

Select the resource of the given type which matches the given *property-name property-value* pair criteria, for modification. This subcommand is applicable only in the global scope. The scope is changed to that resource type. The `{}` syntax means 1 or more of whatever is inside the curly braces. You must specify enough *property-name property-value* pairs for the resource to be uniquely identified.

`set property-name=property-value`

Set a given property name to the given value. Some properties (for example, *zonename* and *zonepath*) are global while others are resource-specific. This subcommand is applicable in both the global and resource scopes.

`verify`

Verify the current configuration for correctness:

- All resources have all of their required properties specified.
- A *zonepath* is specified.

`revert [-F]`

Revert the configuration back to the last committed state. The `-F` option can be used to force the action.

`exit [-F]`

Exit the `zonecfg` session. A commit is automatically attempted if needed. You can also use an EOF character to exit `zonecfg`. The `-F` option can be used to force the action.

**Examples** EXAMPLE 1 Creating the Environment for a New Zone

In the following example, zonecfg creates the environment for a new zone. /usr/local is loopback mounted from the global zone into /opt/local. /opt/sfw is loopback mounted from the global zone, three logical network interfaces are added, and a limit on the number of fair-share scheduler (FSS) CPU shares for a zone is set using the rctl resource type. The example also shows how to select a given resource for modification.

```
example# zonecfg -z myzone3
my-zone3: No such zone configured
Use 'create' to begin configuring a new zone.
zonecfg:myzone3> create
zonecfg:myzone3> set zonepath=/export/home/my-zone3
zonecfg:myzone3> set autoboot=true
zonecfg:myzone3> add fs
zonecfg:myzone3:fs> set dir=/usr/local
zonecfg:myzone3:fs> set special=/opt/local
zonecfg:myzone3:fs> set type=lofs
zonecfg:myzone3:fs> add options [ro,nodevices]
zonecfg:myzone3:fs> end
zonecfg:myzone3> add fs
zonecfg:myzone3:fs> set dir=/mnt
zonecfg:myzone3:fs> set special=/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s7
zonecfg:myzone3:fs> set raw=/dev/rdisk/c0t0d0s7
zonecfg:myzone3:fs> set type=ufs
zonecfg:myzone3:fs> end
zonecfg:myzone3> add inherit-pkg-dir
zonecfg:myzone3:inherit-pkg-dir> set dir=/opt/sfw
zonecfg:myzone3:inherit-pkg-dir> end
zonecfg:myzone3> add net
zonecfg:myzone3:net> set address=192.168.0.1/24
zonecfg:myzone3:net> set physical=eri0
zonecfg:myzone3:net> end
zonecfg:myzone3> add net
zonecfg:myzone3:net> set address=192.168.1.2/24
zonecfg:myzone3:net> set physical=eri0
zonecfg:myzone3:net> end
zonecfg:myzone3> add net
zonecfg:myzone3:net> set address=192.168.2.3/24
zonecfg:myzone3:net> set physical=eri0
zonecfg:myzone3:net> end
zonecfg:my-zone3> set cpu-shares=5
zonecfg:my-zone3> add capped-memory
zonecfg:my-zone3:capped-memory> set physical=50m
zonecfg:my-zone3:capped-memory> set swap=100m
zonecfg:my-zone3:capped-memory> end
zonecfg:myzone3> exit
```

**EXAMPLE 2** Creating a Non-Native Zone

The following example creates a new Linux zone:

```
example# zonecfg -z lxzone
lxzone: No such zone configured
Use 'create' to begin configuring a new zone
zonecfg:lxzone> create -t SUNWlx
zonecfg:lxzone> set zonepath=/export/zones/lxzone
zonecfg:lxzone> set autoboot=true
zonecfg:lxzone> exit
```

**EXAMPLE 3** Creating an Exclusive-IP Zone

The following example creates a zone that is granted exclusive access to bge1 and bge33000 and that is isolated at the IP layer from the other zones configured on the system.

The IP addresses and routing is configured inside the new zone using [sysidtool\(1M\)](#).

```
example# zonecfg -z excl
excl: No such zone configured
Use 'create' to begin configuring a new zone
zonecfg:excl> create
zonecfg:excl> set zonepath=/export/zones/excl
zonecfg:excl> set ip-type=exclusive
zonecfg:excl> add net
zonecfg:excl:net> set physical=bge1
zonecfg:excl:net> end
zonecfg:excl> add net
zonecfg:excl:net> set physical=bge33000
zonecfg:excl:net> end
zonecfg:excl> exit
```

**EXAMPLE 4** Associating a Zone with a Resource Pool

The following example shows how to associate an existing zone with an existing resource pool:

```
example# zonecfg -z myzone
zonecfg:myzone> set pool=mypool
zonecfg:myzone> exit
```

For more information about resource pools, see [pooladm\(1M\)](#) and [poolcfg\(1M\)](#).

**EXAMPLE 5** Changing the Name of a Zone

The following example shows how to change the name of an existing zone:

**EXAMPLE 5** Changing the Name of a Zone *(Continued)*

```
example# zonecfg -z myzone
zonecfg:myzone> set zonename=myzone2
zonecfg:myzone2> exit
```

**EXAMPLE 6** Changing the Privilege Set of a Zone

The following example shows how to change the set of privileges an existing zone's processes will be limited to the next time the zone is booted. In this particular case, the privilege set will be the standard safe set of privileges a zone normally has along with the privilege to change the system date and time:

```
example# zonecfg -z myzone
zonecfg:myzone> set limitpriv="default,sys_time"
zonecfg:myzone2> exit
```

**EXAMPLE 7** Setting the zone.cpu-shares Property for the Global Zone

The following command sets the zone.cpu-shares property for the global zone:

```
example# zonecfg -z global
zonecfg:global> set cpu-shares=5
zonecfg:global> exit
```

**EXAMPLE 8** Using Pattern Matching

The following commands illustrate zonecfg support for pattern matching. In the zone flexlm, enter:

```
zonecfg:flexlm> add device
zonecfg:flexlm:device> set match="/dev/cua/a00[2-5]"
zonecfg:flexlm:device> end
```

In the global zone, enter:

```
global# ls /dev/cua
a a000 a001 a002 a003 a004 a005 a006 a007 b
```

In the zone flexlm, enter:

```
flexlm# ls /dev/cua
a002 a003 a004 a005
```

**EXAMPLE 9** Setting a Cap for a Zone to Three CPUs

The following sequence uses the zonecfg command to set the CPU cap for a zone to three CPUs.

**EXAMPLE 9** Setting a Cap for a Zone to Three CPUs *(Continued)*

```
zonecfg:myzone> add capped-cpu
zonecfg:myzone>capped-cpu> set ncpus=3
zonecfg:myzone>capped-cpu>capped-cpu> end
```

The preceding sequence, which uses the `capped-cpu` property, is equivalent to the following sequence, which makes use of the `zone.cpu-cap` resource control.

```
zonecfg:myzone> add rctl
zonecfg:myzone:rctl> set name=zone.cpu-cap
zonecfg:myzone:rctl> add value (priv=privileged,limit=300,action=none)
zonecfg:myzone:rctl> end
```

**EXAMPLE 10** Using `kstat` to Monitor CPU Caps

The following command displays information about all CPU caps.

```
kstat -n /cpucaps/
module: caps instance: 0
name: cpucaps_project_0 class: project_caps
 above_sec 0
 below_sec 2157
 crtime 821.048183159
 maxusage 2
 nwait 0
 snaptime 235885.637253027
 usage 0
 value 18446743151372347932
 zonename global

module: caps instance: 0
name: cpucaps_project_1 class: project_caps
 above_sec 0
 below_sec 0
 crtime 225339.192787265
 maxusage 5
 nwait 0
 snaptime 235885.637591677
 usage 5
 value 18446743151372347932
 zonename global

module: caps instance: 0
name: cpucaps_project_201 class: project_caps
 above_sec 0
 below_sec 235105
 crtime 780.37961782
```

## EXAMPLE 10 Using kstat to Monitor CPU Caps (Continued)

```

 maxusage 100
 nwait 0
 snaptime 235885.637789687
 usage 43
 value 100
 zonename global

module: caps instance: 0
name: cpucaps_project_202 class: project_caps
 above_sec 0
 below_sec 235094
 crtime 791.72983782
 maxusage 100
 nwait 0
 snaptime 235885.637967512
 usage 48
 value 100
 zonename global

module: caps instance: 0
name: cpucaps_project_203 class: project_caps
 above_sec 0
 below_sec 235034
 crtime 852.104401481
 maxusage 75
 nwait 0
 snaptime 235885.638144304
 usage 47
 value 100
 zonename global

module: caps instance: 0
name: cpucaps_project_86710 class: project_caps
 above_sec 22
 below_sec 235166
 crtime 698.441717859
 maxusage 101
 nwait 0
 snaptime 235885.638319871
 usage 54
 value 100
 zonename global

module: caps instance: 0
name: cpucaps_zone_0 class: zone_caps
 above_sec 100733

```

**EXAMPLE 10** Using `kstat` to Monitor CPU Caps *(Continued)*

```

 below_sec 134332
 crtime 821.048177123
 maxusage 207
 nwait 2
 snaptime 235885.638497731
 usage 199
 value 200
 zonename global

module: caps instance: 1
name: cpucaps_project_0 class: project_caps
 above_sec 0
 below_sec 0
 crtime 225360.256448422
 maxusage 7
 nwait 0
 snaptime 235885.638714404
 usage 7
 value 18446743151372347932
 zonename test_001

module: caps instance: 1
name: cpucaps_zone_1 class: zone_caps
 above_sec 2
 below_sec 10524
 crtime 225360.256440278
 maxusage 106
 nwait 0
 snaptime 235885.638896443
 usage 7
 value 100
 zonename test_001

```

**EXAMPLE 11** Displaying CPU Caps for a Specific Zone or Project

Using the `kstat -c` and `-i` options, you can display CPU caps for a specific zone or project, as below. The first command produces a display for a specific project, the second for the same project within zone 1.

```

kstat -c project_caps

kstat -c project_caps -i 1

```



**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0  
Successful completion.
- 1  
An error occurred.
- 2  
Invalid usage.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWzoneu
Interface Stability	Volatile

**See Also** [ppriv\(1\)](#), [prctl\(1\)](#), [zlogin\(1\)](#), [kstat\(1M\)](#), [mount\(1M\)](#), [pooladm\(1M\)](#), [poolcfg\(1M\)](#), [poold\(1M\)](#), [rcapd\(1M\)](#), [rctladm\(1M\)](#), [svcadm\(1M\)](#), [sysidtool\(1M\)](#), [zfs\(1M\)](#), [zoneadm\(1M\)](#), [priv\\_str\\_to\\_set\(3C\)](#), [kstat\(3KSTAT\)](#), [vfstab\(4\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [brands\(5\)](#), [fnmatch\(5\)](#), [lx\(5\)](#), [privileges\(5\)](#), [resource\\_controls\(5\)](#), [zones\(5\)](#)

*System Administration Guide: Virtualization Using the Solaris Operating System*

**Notes** All character data used by zonecfg must be in US-ASCII encoding.

**Name** zpool – configures ZFS storage pools

**Synopsis** zpool [-?]

```
zpool add [-fn] pool vdev ...
zpool attach [-f] pool device new_device
zpool clear [-F [-n]] pool [device]
zpool create [-fn] [-o property=value] ... [-O file-system-property=value]
 ... [-m mountpoint] [-R root] pool vdev ...
zpool destroy [-f] pool
zpool detach pool device
zpool export [-f] pool ...
zpool get "all" | property[,...] pool ...
zpool history [-il] [pool] ...
zpool import [-d dir] [-D]
zpool import [-o mntopts] [-o property=value] ... [-d dir | -c cachefile]
 [-D] [-f] [-R root] [-F [-n]] -a
zpool import [-o mntopts] [-o property=value] ... [-d dir | -c cachefile]
 [-D] [-f] [-R root] [-F [-n]] pool |id [newpool]
zpool iostat [-T u | d] [-v] [pool] ... [interval[count]]
zpool list [-H] [-o property[,...]] [pool] ...
zpool offline [-t] pool device ...
zpool online pool device ...
zpool remove pool device ...
zpool replace [-f] pool device [new_device]
zpool scrub [-s] pool ...
zpool set property=value pool
zpool split [-R altroot] [-n] [-o mntopts] [-o property=value] pool
 newpool [device ...]
zpool status [-xv] [pool] ...
zpool upgrade
zpool upgrade -v
zpool upgrade [-V version] -a | pool ...
```

**Description** The `zpool` command configures ZFS storage pools. A storage pool is a collection of devices that provides physical storage and data replication for ZFS datasets.

All datasets within a storage pool share the same space. See [zfs\(1M\)](#) for information on managing datasets.

Virtual Devices (`vdevs`) A “virtual device” describes a single device or a collection of devices organized according to certain performance and fault characteristics. The following virtual devices are supported:

**disk**

A block device, typically located under `/dev/dsk`. ZFS can use individual slices or partitions, though the recommended mode of operation is to use whole disks. A disk can be specified by a full path, or it can be a shorthand name (the relative portion of the path under `/dev/dsk`). A whole disk can be specified by omitting the slice or partition designation. For example, `c0t0d0` is equivalent to `/dev/dsk/c0t0d0s2`. When given a whole disk, ZFS automatically labels the disk, if necessary.

**file**

A regular file. The use of files as a backing store is strongly discouraged. It is designed primarily for experimental purposes, as the fault tolerance of a file is only as good as the file system of which it is a part. A file must be specified by a full path.

**mirror**

A mirror of two or more devices. Data is replicated in an identical fashion across all components of a mirror. A mirror with  $N$  disks of size  $X$  can hold  $X$  bytes and can withstand  $(N-1)$  devices failing before data integrity is compromised.

**raidz**

**raidz1**

**raidz2**

**raidz3**

A variation on RAID-5 that allows for better distribution of parity and eliminates the “RAID-5 write hole” (in which data and parity become inconsistent after a power loss). Data and parity is striped across all disks within a `raidz` group.

A `raidz` group can have single-, double-, or triple parity, meaning that the `raidz` group can sustain one, two, or three failures, respectively, without losing any data. The `raidz1` `vdev` type specifies a single-parity `raidz` group; the `raidz2` `vdev` type specifies a double-parity `raidz` group; and the `raidz3` `vdev` type specifies a triple-parity `raidz` group. The `raidz` `vdev` type is an alias for `raidz1`.

A `raidz` group with  $N$  disks of size  $X$  with  $P$  parity disks can hold approximately  $(N-P)*X$  bytes and can withstand  $P$  device(s) failing before data integrity is compromised. The minimum number of devices in a `raidz` group is one more than the number of parity disks. The recommended number is between 3 and 9 to help increase performance.

**spare**

A special pseudo-vdev which keeps track of available hot spares for a pool. For more information, see the “Hot Spares” section.

**log**

A separate-intent log device. If more than one log device is specified, then writes are load-balanced between devices. Log devices can be mirrored. However, raidz vdev types are not supported for the intent log. For more information, see the “Intent Log” section.

**cache**

A device used to cache storage pool data. A cache device cannot be configured as a mirror or raidz group. For more information, see the “Cache Devices” section.

Virtual devices cannot be nested, so a mirror or raidz virtual device can only contain files or disks. Mirrors of mirrors (or other combinations) are not allowed.

A pool can have any number of virtual devices at the top of the configuration (known as “root vdevs”). Data is dynamically distributed across all top-level devices to balance data among devices. As new virtual devices are added, ZFS automatically places data on the newly available devices.

Virtual devices are specified one at a time on the command line, separated by whitespace. The keywords “mirror” and “raidz” are used to distinguish where a group ends and another begins. For example, the following creates two root vdevs, each a mirror of two disks:

```
zpool create mypool mirror c0t0d0 c0t1d0 mirror c1t0d0 c1t1d0
```

**Device Failure and Recovery**

ZFS supports a rich set of mechanisms for handling device failure and data corruption. All metadata and data is checksummed, and ZFS automatically repairs bad data from a good copy when corruption is detected.

In order to take advantage of these features, a pool must make use of some form of redundancy, using either mirrored or raidz groups. While ZFS supports running in a non-redundant configuration, where each root vdev is simply a disk or file, this is strongly discouraged. A single case of bit corruption can render some or all of your data unavailable.

A pool’s health status is described by one of three states: online, degraded, or faulted. An online pool has all devices operating normally. A degraded pool is one in which one or more devices have failed, but the data is still available due to a redundant configuration. A faulted pool has corrupted metadata, or one or more faulted devices, and insufficient replicas to continue functioning.

The health of the top-level vdev, such as mirror or raidz device, is potentially impacted by the state of its associated vdevs, or component devices. A top-level vdev or component device is in one of the following states:

**DEGRADED**

One or more top-level vdevs is in the degraded state because one or more component devices are offline. Sufficient replicas exist to continue functioning.

One or more component devices is in the degraded or faulted state, but sufficient replicas exist to continue functioning. The underlying conditions are as follows:

- The number of checksum errors exceeds acceptable levels and the device is degraded as an indication that something may be wrong. ZFS continues to use the device as necessary.
- The number of I/O errors exceeds acceptable levels. The device could not be marked as faulted because there are insufficient replicas to continue functioning.

#### FAULTED

One or more top-level vdevs is in the faulted state because one or more component devices are offline. Insufficient replicas exist to continue functioning.

One or more component devices is in the faulted state, and insufficient replicas exist to continue functioning. The underlying conditions are as follows:

- The device could be opened, but the contents did not match expected values.
- The number of I/O errors exceeds acceptable levels and the device is faulted to prevent further use of the device.

#### OFFLINE

The device was explicitly taken offline by the “`zpool offline`” command.

#### ONLINE

The device is online and functioning.

#### REMOVED

The device was physically removed while the system was running. Device removal detection is hardware-dependent and may not be supported on all platforms.

#### UNAVAIL

The device could not be opened. If a pool is imported when a device was unavailable, then the device will be identified by a unique identifier instead of its path since the path was never correct in the first place.

If a device is removed and later reattached to the system, ZFS attempts to put the device online automatically. Device attach detection is hardware-dependent and might not be supported on all platforms.

**Hot Spares** ZFS allows devices to be associated with pools as “hot spares”. These devices are not actively used in the pool, but when an active device fails, it is automatically replaced by a hot spare. To create a pool with hot spares, specify a “spare” vdev with any number of devices. For example,

```
zpool create pool mirror c0d0 c1d0 spare c2d0 c3d0
```

Spares can be shared across multiple pools, and can be added with the “`zpool add`” command and removed with the “`zpool remove`” command. Once a spare replacement is initiated, a new “spare” vdev is created within the configuration that will remain there until the original device is replaced. At this point, the hot spare becomes available again if another device fails.

If a pool has a shared spare that is currently being used, the pool can not be exported since other pools may use this shared spare, which may lead to potential data corruption.

An in-progress spare replacement can be cancelled by detaching the hot spare. If the original faulted device is detached, then the hot spare assumes its place in the configuration, and is removed from the spare list of all active pools.

Spares cannot replace log devices.

**Intent Log** The ZFS Intent Log (ZIL) satisfies POSIX requirements for synchronous transactions. For instance, databases often require their transactions to be on stable storage devices when returning from a system call. NFS and other applications can also use `fsync()` to ensure data stability. By default, the intent log is allocated from blocks within the main pool. However, it might be possible to get better performance using separate intent log devices such as NVRAM or a dedicated disk. For example:

```
zpool create pool c0d0 c1d0 log c2d0
```

Multiple log devices can also be specified, and they can be mirrored. See the **EXAMPLES** section for an example of mirroring multiple log devices.

Log devices can be added, replaced, attached, detached, and imported and exported as part of the larger pool. Mirrored log devices can be removed by specifying the top-level mirror for the log.

**Cache Devices** Devices can be added to a storage pool as “cache devices.” These devices provide an additional layer of caching between main memory and disk. For read-heavy workloads, where the working set size is much larger than what can be cached in main memory, using cache devices allow much more of this working set to be served from low latency media. Using cache devices provides the greatest performance improvement for random read-workloads of mostly static content.

To create a pool with cache devices, specify a “cache” `vdev` with any number of devices. For example:

```
zpool create pool c0d0 c1d0 cache c2d0 c3d0
```

Cache devices cannot be mirrored or part of a `raidz` configuration. If a read error is encountered on a cache device, that read I/O is reissued to the original storage pool device, which might be part of a mirrored or `raidz` configuration.

The content of the cache devices is considered volatile, as is the case with other system caches.

**Processes** Each imported pool has an associated process, named `zpool -poolname`. The threads in this process are the pool's I/O processing threads, which handle the compression, checksumming, and other tasks for all I/O associated with the pool. This process exists to provides visibility into the CPU utilization of the system's storage pools. The existence of this process is an unstable interface.

Properties Each pool has several properties associated with it. Some properties are read-only statistics while others are configurable and change the behavior of the pool. The following are read-only properties:

`alloc`

Amount of storage space within the pool that has been physically allocated.

`capacity`

Percentage of pool space used. This property can also be referred to by its shortened column name, “cap”.

`dedupratio`

The deduplication ratio specified for a pool, expressed as a multiplier. Deduplication can be turned on by entering the command:

```
zfs set dedup=on dataset
```

The default value is off.

`dedupratio` is expressed as a single decimal number. For example, a `dedupratio` value of 1.76 indicates that 1.76 units of data were stored but only 1 unit of disk space was actually consumed.

`free`

Number of blocks within the pool that are not allocated.

`guid`

A unique identifier for the pool.

`health`

The current health of the pool. Health can be “ONLINE”, “DEGRADED”, “FAULTED”, “OFFLINE”, “REMOVED”, or “UNAVAIL”.

`size`

Total size of the storage pool.

These space usage properties report actual physical space available to the storage pool. The physical space can be different from the total amount of space that any contained datasets can actually use. The amount of space used in a `raidz` configuration depends on the characteristics of the data being written. In addition, ZFS reserves some space for internal accounting that the `zfs(1M)` command takes into account, but the `zpool` command does not. For non-full pools of a reasonable size, these effects should be invisible. For small pools, or pools that are close to being completely full, these discrepancies may become more noticeable.

The following property can be set at creation time and import time:

`altroot`

Alternate root directory. If set, this directory is prepended to any mount points within the pool. This can be used when examining an unknown pool where the mount points cannot be trusted, or in an alternate boot environment, where the typical paths are not valid.

`altroot` is not a persistent property. It is valid only while the system is up. Setting `altroot` defaults to using `cache_file=none`, though this may be overridden using an explicit setting.

The following properties can be set at creation time and import time, and later changed with the `zpool set` command:

`autoexpand=on | off`

Controls automatic pool expansion when the underlying LUN is grown. If set to `on`, the pool will be resized according to the size of the expanded device. If the device is part of a mirror or `raidz` then all devices within that mirror/`raidz` group must be expanded before the new space is made available to the pool. The default behavior is `off`. This property can also be referred to by its shortened column name, `expand`.

`autoreplace=on | off`

Controls automatic device replacement. If set to `off`, device replacement must be initiated by the administrator by using the `zpool replace` command. If set to `on`, any new device, found in the same physical location as a device that previously belonged to the pool, is automatically formatted and replaced. The default behavior is `off`. This property can also be referred to by its shortened column name, `replace`.

`bootfs=pool/dataset`

Identifies the default bootable dataset for the root pool. This property is expected to be set mainly by the installation and upgrade programs.

`cache_file=path | none`

Controls the location of where the pool configuration is cached. Discovering all pools on system startup requires a cached copy of the configuration data that is stored on the root file system. All pools in this cache are automatically imported when the system boots. Some environments, such as install and clustering, need to cache this information in a different location so that pools are not automatically imported. Setting this property caches the pool configuration in a different location that can later be imported with `zpool import -c`. Setting it to the special value `none` creates a temporary pool that is never cached, and the special value `' '` (empty string) uses the default location.

Multiple pools can share the same cache file. Because the kernel destroys and recreates this file when pools are added and removed, care should be taken when attempting to access this file. When the last pool using a `cache_file` is exported or destroyed, the file is removed.

`delegation=on | off`

Controls whether a non-privileged user is granted access based on the dataset permissions defined on the dataset. See [zfs\(1M\)](#) for more information on ZFS delegated administration.

`failmode=wait | continue | panic`

Controls the system behavior in the event of catastrophic pool failure. This condition is typically a result of a loss of connectivity to the underlying storage device(s) or a failure of all devices within the pool. The behavior of such an event is determined as follows:



**wait**

Blocks all I/O access to the pool until the device connectivity is recovered and the errors are cleared. A pool remains in the wait state until the device issue is resolved. This is the default behavior.

**continue**

Returns EIO to any new write I/O requests but allows reads to any of the remaining healthy devices. Any write requests that have yet to be committed to disk would be blocked.

**panic**

Prints out a message to the console and generates a system crash dump.

**listsnapshots=on | off**

Controls whether information about snapshots associated with this pool is output when “zfs list” is run without the -t option. The default value is “off”.

**version=version**

The current on-disk version of the pool. This can be increased, but never decreased. The preferred method of updating pools is with the “zpool upgrade” command, though this property can be used when a specific version is needed for backwards compatibility. This property can be any number between 1 and the current version reported by “zpool upgrade -v”.

**Subcommands** All subcommands that modify state are logged persistently to the pool in their original form.

The `zpool` command provides subcommands to create and destroy storage pools, add capacity to storage pools, and provide information about the storage pools. The following subcommands are supported:

**zpool -?**

Displays a help message.

**zpool add [-fn] pool vdev ...**

Adds the specified virtual devices to the given pool. The *vdev* specification is described in the “Virtual Devices” section. The behavior of the -f option, and the device checks performed are described in the “zpool create” subcommand.

**-f**

Forces use of vdevs, even if they appear in use or specify a conflicting replication level. Not all devices can be overridden in this manner.

**-n**

Displays the configuration that would be used without actually adding the vdevs. The actual pool creation can still fail due to insufficient privileges or device sharing.

Do not add a disk that is currently configured as a quorum device to a zpool. After a disk is in the pool, that disk can then be configured as a quorum device.

`zpool attach [-f] pool device new_device`

Attaches *new\_device* to an existing zpool device. The existing device cannot be part of a raidz configuration. If *device* is not currently part of a mirrored configuration, *device* automatically transforms into a two-way mirror of *device* and *new\_device*. If *device* is part of a two-way mirror, attaching *new\_device* creates a three-way mirror, and so on. In either case, *new\_device* begins to resilver immediately.

-f

Forces use of *new\_device*, even if it appears to be in use. Not all devices can be overridden in this manner.

`zpool clear [-F [-n]] pool [device] ...`

Clears device errors in a pool. If no arguments are specified, all device errors within the pool are cleared. If one or more devices is specified, only those errors associated with the specified device or devices are cleared.

-F

Initiates recovery mode for an unopenable pool. Attempts to discard the last few transactions in the pool to return it to an openable state. Not all damaged pools can be recovered by using this option. If successful, the data from the discarded transactions is irretrievably lost.

-n

Used in combination with the -F flag. Check whether discarding transactions would make the pool openable, but do not actually discard any transactions.

`zpool create [-fn] [-o property=value] ... [-O file-system-property=value] ... [-m mountpoint] [-R root] pool vdev ...`

Creates a new storage pool containing the virtual devices specified on the command line. The pool name must begin with a letter, and can only contain alphanumeric characters as well as underscore (“\_”), dash (“-”), and period (“.”). The pool names `mirror`, `raidz`, `spare`, and `log` are reserved, as are names beginning with the pattern `c[0-9]`. The `vdev` specification is described in the “Virtual Devices” section.

The command verifies that each device specified is accessible and not currently in use by another subsystem. There are some uses, such as being currently mounted, or specified as the dedicated dump device, that prevents a device from ever being used by ZFS. Other uses, such as having a preexisting UFS file system, can be overridden with the -f option.

The command also checks that the replication strategy for the pool is consistent. An attempt to combine redundant and non-redundant storage in a single pool, or to mix disks and files, results in an error unless -f is specified. The use of differently sized devices within a single raidz or mirror group is also flagged as an error unless -f is specified.

Unless the -R option is specified, the default mount point is “/pool”. The mount point must not exist or must be empty, or else the root dataset cannot be mounted. This can be overridden with the -m option.

-f  
Forces use of vdevs, even if they appear in use or specify a conflicting replication level. Not all devices can be overridden in this manner.

-n  
Displays the configuration that would be used without actually creating the pool. The actual pool creation can still fail due to insufficient privileges or device sharing.

-o *property=value* [-o *property=value*] ...  
Sets the given pool properties. See the “Properties” section for a list of valid properties that can be set.

-O *file-system-property=value*  
[-O *file-system-property=value*] ...  
Sets the given file system properties in the root file system of the pool. See the “Properties” section of [zfs\(1M\)](#) for a list of valid properties that can be set.

-R *root*  
Equivalent to “-o cachefile=none,altroot=*root*”

-m *mountpoint*  
Sets the mount point for the root dataset. The default mount point is “/pool” or “altroot/pool” if altroot is specified. The mount point must be an absolute path, “legacy”, or “none”. For more information on dataset mount points, see [zfs\(1M\)](#).

`zpool destroy [-f] pool`

Destroys the given pool, freeing up any devices for other use. This command tries to unmount any active datasets before destroying the pool.

-f  
Forces any active datasets contained within the pool to be unmounted.

`zpool detach pool device`

Detaches *device* from a mirror. The operation is refused if there are no other valid replicas of the data.

`zpool export [-f] pool ...`

Exports the given pools from the system. All devices are marked as exported, but are still considered in use by other subsystems. The devices can be moved between systems (even those of different endianness) and imported as long as a sufficient number of devices are present.

Before exporting the pool, all datasets within the pool are unmounted. A pool can not be exported if it has a shared spare that is currently being used.

For pools to be portable, you must give the `zpool` command whole disks, not just slices, so that ZFS can label the disks with portable EFI labels. Otherwise, disk drivers on platforms of different endianness will not recognize the disks.

-f

Forcefully unmount all datasets, using the “`umount -f`” command.

This command will forcefully export the pool even if it has a shared spare that is currently being used. This may lead to potential data corruption.

`zpool get “all” | property[,...] pool ...`

Retrieves the given list of properties (or all properties if “all” is used) for the specified storage pool(s). These properties are displayed with the following fields:

name	Name of storage pool
property	Property name
value	Property value
source	Property source, either 'default' or 'local'.

See the “Properties” section for more information on the available pool properties.

`zpool history [-iL] [pool] ...`

Displays the command history of the specified pools or all pools if no pool is specified.

-i

Displays internally logged ZFS events in addition to user initiated events.

-L

Displays log records in long format, which in addition to standard format includes, the user name, the hostname, and the zone in which the operation was performed.

`zpool import [-d dir | -c cachefile] [-D]`

Lists pools available to import. If the `-d` option is not specified, this command searches for devices in “`/dev/dsk`”. The `-d` option can be specified multiple times, and all directories are searched. If the device appears to be part of an exported pool, this command displays a summary of the pool with the name of the pool, a numeric identifier, as well as the `vdev` layout and current health of the device for each device or file. Destroyed pools, pools that were previously destroyed with the “`zpool destroy`” command, are not listed unless the `-D` option is specified.

The numeric identifier is unique, and can be used instead of the pool name when multiple exported pools of the same name are available.

-c *cachefile*

Reads configuration from the given *cachefile* that was created with the “`cachefile`” pool property. This *cachefile* is used instead of searching for devices.

-d *dir*

Searches for devices or files in *dir*. The `-d` option can be specified multiple times.

-D

Lists destroyed pools only.

---

```
zpool import [-o mntopts] [-o property=value] ... [-d dir | -c cachefile] [-D] [-f] [-R root] [-F [-n]] -a
```

Imports all pools found in the search directories. Identical to the previous command, except that all pools with a sufficient number of devices available are imported. Destroyed pools, pools that were previously destroyed with the “`zpool destroy`” command, will not be imported unless the `-D` option is specified.

`-o mntopts`

Comma-separated list of mount options to use when mounting datasets within the pool. See [zfs\(1M\)](#) for a description of dataset properties and mount options.

`-o property=value`

Sets the specified property on the imported pool. See the “Properties” section for more information on the available pool properties.

`-c cachefile`

Reads configuration from the given `cachefile` that was created with the “`cachefile`” pool property. This `cachefile` is used instead of searching for devices.

`-d dir`

Searches for devices or files in `dir`. The `-d` option can be specified multiple times. This option is incompatible with the `-c` option.

`-D`

Imports destroyed pools only. The `-f` option is also required.

`-f`

Forces import, even if the pool appears to be potentially active.

`-F`

Recovery mode for a non-importable pool. Attempt to return the pool to an importable state by discarding the last few transactions. Not all damaged pools can be recovered by using this option. If successful, the data from the discarded transactions is irretrievably lost. This option is ignored if the pool is importable or already imported.

`-a`

Searches for and imports all pools found.

`-R root`

Sets the “`cachefile`” property to “`none`” and the “`altroot`” property to “`root`”.

`-n`

Used with the `-F` recovery option. Determines whether a non-importable pool can be made importable again, but does not actually perform the pool recovery. For more details about pool recovery mode, see the `-F` option, above.

```
zpool import [-o mntopts] [-o property=value] ... [-d dir | -c cachefile] [-D] [-f] [-R root] [-F
[-n]] pool | id [newpool]
```

Imports a specific pool. A pool can be identified by its name or the numeric identifier. If *newpool* is specified, the pool is imported using the name *newpool*. Otherwise, it is imported with the same name as its exported name.

If a device is removed from a system without running “zpool export” first, the device appears as potentially active. It cannot be determined if this was a failed export, or whether the device is really in use from another host. To import a pool in this state, the -f option is required.

-o *mntopts*

Comma-separated list of mount options to use when mounting datasets within the pool. See [zfs\(1M\)](#) for a description of dataset properties and mount options.

-o *property=value*

Sets the specified property on the imported pool. See the “Properties” section for more information on the available pool properties.

-c *cachefile*

Reads configuration from the given *cachefile* that was created with the “cachefile” pool property. This *cachefile* is used instead of searching for devices.

-d *dir*

Searches for devices or files in *dir*. The -d option can be specified multiple times. This option is incompatible with the -c option.

-D

Imports destroyed pool. The -f option is also required.

-f

Forces import, even if the pool appears to be potentially active.

-F

Recovery mode for a non-importable pool. Attempt to return the pool to an importable state by discarding the last few transactions. Not all damaged pools can be recovered by using this option. If successful, the data from the discarded transactions is irretrievably lost. This option is ignored if the pool is importable or already imported.

-R *root*

Sets the “cachefile” property to “none” and the “altroot” property to “root”.

-n

Used with the -F recovery option. Determines whether a non-importable pool can be made importable again, but does not actually perform the pool recovery. For more details about pool recovery mode, see the -F option, above.

`zpool iostat [-T u | d] [-v] [pool] ... [interval [count]]`

Displays I/O statistics for the given pools. When given an interval, the statistics are printed every *interval* seconds until `Ctrl-C` is pressed. If no *pools* are specified, statistics for every pool in the system is shown. If *count* is specified, the command exits after *count* reports are printed.

`-T u | d`

Display a time stamp.

Specify `u` for a printed representation of the internal representation of time. See [time\(2\)](#).  
Specify `d` for standard date format. See [date\(1\)](#).

`-v`

Verbose statistics. Reports usage statistics for individual *vdevs* within the pool, in addition to the pool-wide statistics.

`zpool list [-H] [-o props[,...]] [pool] ...`

Lists the given pools along with a health status and space usage. When given no arguments, all pools in the system are listed.

`-H`

Scripted mode. Do not display headers, and separate fields by a single tab instead of arbitrary space.

`-o props`

Comma-separated list of properties to display. See the “Properties” section for a list of valid properties. The default list is `name, size, allocated, free, capacity, health, altroot`.

`zpool offline [-t] pool device ...`

Takes the specified physical device offline. While the *device* is offline, no attempt is made to read or write to the device.

This command is not applicable to spares or cache devices.

`-t`

Temporary. Upon reboot, the specified physical device reverts to its previous state.

`zpool online [-e] pool device...`

Brings the specified physical device online.

This command is not applicable to spares or cache devices.

`-e`

Expand the device to use all available space. If the device is part of a mirror or `raidz` then all devices must be expanded before the new space will become available to the pool.

`zpool remove pool device ...`

Removes the specified device from the pool. This command currently only supports removing hot spares, cache, and log devices. A mirrored log device can be removed by specifying the top-level mirror for the log. Non-log devices that are part of a mirrored configuration can be removed using the `zpool detach` command. Non-redundant and raidz devices cannot be removed from a pool.

`zpool replace [-f] pool old_device [new_device]`

Replaces *old\_device* with *new\_device*. This is equivalent to attaching *new\_device*, waiting for it to resilver, and then detaching *old\_device*.

The size of *new\_device* must be greater than or equal to the minimum size of all the devices in a mirror or raidz configuration.

*new\_device* is required if the pool is not redundant. If *new\_device* is not specified, it defaults to *old\_device*. This form of replacement is useful after an existing disk has failed and has been physically replaced. In this case, the new disk may have the same `/dev/dsk` path as the old device, even though it is actually a different disk. ZFS recognizes this.

-f

Forces use of *new\_device*, even if it appears to be in use. Not all devices can be overridden in this manner.

`zpool scrub [-s] pool ...`

Begins a scrub. The scrub examines all data in the specified pools to verify that it checksums correctly. For replicated (mirror or raidz) devices, ZFS automatically repairs any damage discovered during the scrub. The “`zpool status`” command reports the progress of the scrub and summarizes the results of the scrub upon completion.

Scrubbing and resilvering are very similar operations. The difference is that resilvering only examines data that ZFS knows to be out of date (for example, when attaching a new device to a mirror or replacing an existing device), whereas scrubbing examines all data to discover silent errors due to hardware faults or disk failure.

Because scrubbing and resilvering are I/O-intensive operations, ZFS only allows one at a time. If a scrub is already in progress, the “`zpool scrub`” command terminates it and starts a new scrub. If a resilver is in progress, ZFS does not allow a scrub to be started until the resilver completes.

-s

Stop scrubbing.

`zpool set property=value pool`

Sets the given property on the specified pool. See the “Properties” section for more information on what properties can be set and acceptable values.

`zpool split [-R altroot] [-n] [-o mntopts] [-o property=value] pool newpool [device ...]`

Splits off one disk from each mirrored top-level vdev in a pool and creates a new pool from the split-off disks. The original pool must be made up of one or more mirrors and must not



be in the process of resilvering. The `split` subcommand chooses the last device in each mirror vdev unless overridden by a device specification on the command line.

When using a *device* argument, `split` includes the specified device(s) in a new pool and, should any devices remain unspecified, assigns the last device in each mirror vdev to that pool, as it does normally. If you are uncertain about the outcome of a `split` command, use the `-n` (“dry-run”) option to ensure your command will have the effect you intend.

`-R altroot`

Automatically import the newly created pool after splitting, using the specified *altroot* parameter for the new pool’s alternate root. See the `altroot` description in the “Properties” section, above.

`-n`

Displays the configuration that would be created without actually splitting the pool. The actual pool split could still fail due to insufficient privileges or device status.

`-o mntopts`

Comma-separated list of mount options to use when mounting datasets within the pool. See [zfs\(1M\)](#) for a description of dataset properties and mount options. Valid only in conjunction with the `-R` option.

`-o property=value`

Sets the specified property on the new pool. See the “Properties” section, above, for more information on the available pool properties.

`zpool status [-xv] [pool] ...`

Displays the detailed health status for the given pools. If no *pool* is specified, then the status of each pool in the system is displayed. For more information on pool and device health, see the “Device Failure and Recovery” section.

If a scrub or resilver is in progress, this command reports the percentage done and the estimated time to completion. Both of these are only approximate, because the amount of data in the pool and the other workloads on the system can change.

`-x`

Only display status for pools that are exhibiting errors or are otherwise unavailable.

`-v`

Displays verbose data error information, printing out a complete list of all data errors since the last complete pool scrub.

`zpool upgrade`

Displays all pools formatted using a different ZFS on-disk version. Older versions can continue to be used, but some features may not be available. These pools can be upgraded using “`zpool upgrade -a`”. Pools that are formatted with a more recent version are also displayed, although these pools will be inaccessible on the system.

`zpool upgrade -v`

Displays ZFS versions supported by the current software. The current ZFS versions and all previous supported versions are displayed, along with an explanation of the features provided with each version.

`zpool upgrade [-V version] -a | pool ...`

Upgrades the given pool to the latest on-disk version. Once this is done, the pool will no longer be accessible on systems running older versions of the software.

`-a`

Upgrades all pools.

`-V version`

Upgrade to the specified version. If the `-V` flag is not specified, the pool is upgraded to the most recent version. This option can only be used to increase the version number, and only up to the most recent version supported by this software.

#### Examples EXAMPLE 1 Creating a RAID-Z Storage Pool

The following command creates a pool with a single raidz root *vdev* that consists of six disks.

```
zpool create tank raidz c0t0d0 c0t1d0 c0t2d0 c0t3d0 c0t4d0 c0t5d0
```

#### EXAMPLE 2 Creating a Mirrored Storage Pool

The following command creates a pool with two mirrors, where each mirror contains two disks.

```
zpool create tank mirror c0t0d0 c0t1d0 mirror c0t2d0 c0t3d0
```

#### EXAMPLE 3 Creating a ZFS Storage Pool by Using Slices

The following command creates an unmirrored pool using two disk slices.

```
zpool create tank /dev/dsk/c0t0d0s1 c0t1d0s4
```

#### EXAMPLE 4 Creating a ZFS Storage Pool by Using Files

The following command creates an unmirrored pool using files. While not recommended, a pool based on files can be useful for experimental purposes.

```
zpool create tank /path/to/file/a /path/to/file/b
```

#### EXAMPLE 5 Adding a Mirror to a ZFS Storage Pool

The following command adds two mirrored disks to the pool “*tank*”, assuming the pool is already made up of two-way mirrors. The additional space is immediately available to any datasets within the pool.

**EXAMPLE 5** Adding a Mirror to a ZFS Storage Pool (Continued)

```
zpool add tank mirror c1t0d0 c1t1d0
```

**EXAMPLE 6** Listing Available ZFS Storage Pools

The following command lists all available pools on the system.

```
zpool list
NAME SIZE ALLOC FREE CAP DEDUP HEALTH ALTROOT
pool 136G 109M 136G 0% 3.00x ONLINE -
rpool 67.5G 12.6G 54.9G 18% 1.01x ONLINE -
```

**EXAMPLE 7** Listing All Properties for a Pool

The following command lists all the properties for a pool.

```
% zpool get all pool
NAME PROPERTY VALUE SOURCE
pool size 136G -
pool capacity 0% -
pool altroot - default
pool health ONLINE -
pool guid 15697759092019394988 default
pool version 21 default
pool bootfs - default
pool delegation on default
pool autoreplace off default
pool cachefile - default
pool failmode wait default
pool listsnapshots off default
pool autoexpand off default
pool dedupratio 3.00x -
pool free 136G -
pool allocated 109M -
```

**EXAMPLE 8** Destroying a ZFS Storage Pool

The following command destroys the pool “*tank*” and any datasets contained within.

```
zpool destroy -f tank
```

**EXAMPLE 9** Exporting a ZFS Storage Pool

The following command exports the devices in pool *tank* so that they can be relocated or later imported.

```
zpool export tank
```

**EXAMPLE 10** Importing a ZFS Storage Pool

The following command displays available pools, and then imports the pool “tank” for use on the system.

The results from this command are similar to the following:

```
zpool import
pool: tank
id: 7678868315469843843
state: ONLINE
action: The pool can be imported using its name or numeric identifier.
config:

 tank ONLINE
 mirror-0 ONLINE
 c1t2d0 ONLINE
 c1t3d0 ONLINE

zpool import tank
```

**EXAMPLE 11** Upgrading All ZFS Storage Pools to the Current Version

The following command upgrades all ZFS Storage pools to the current version of the software.

```
zpool upgrade -a
This system is currently running ZFS pool version 19.

All pools are formatted using this version.
```

**EXAMPLE 12** Managing Hot Spares

The following command creates a new pool with an available hot spare:

```
zpool create tank mirror c0t0d0 c0t1d0 spare c0t2d0
```

If one of the disks were to fail, the pool would be reduced to the degraded state. The failed device can be replaced using the following command:

```
zpool replace tank c0t0d0 c0t3d0
```

Once the data has been resilvered, the spare is automatically removed and is made available should another device fails. The hot spare can be permanently removed from the pool using the following command:

```
zpool remove tank c0t2d0
```

**EXAMPLE 13** Creating a ZFS Pool with Mirrored Separate Intent Logs

The following command creates a ZFS storage pool consisting of two, two-way mirrors and mirrored log devices:

```
zpool create pool mirror c0d0 c1d0 mirror c2d0 c3d0 log mirror \
 c4d0 c5d0
```

**EXAMPLE 14** Adding Cache Devices to a ZFS Pool

The following command adds two disks for use as cache devices to a ZFS storage pool:

```
zpool add pool cache c2d0 c3d0
```

Once added, the cache devices gradually fill with content from main memory. Depending on the size of your cache devices, it could take over an hour for them to fill. Capacity and reads can be monitored using the `iostat` option as follows:

```
zpool iostat -v pool 5
```

**EXAMPLE 15** Removing a Mirrored Log Device

The following command removes the mirrored log device `mirror-2`.

Given this configuration:

```
pool: tank
state: ONLINE
scrub: none requested
config:
```

NAME	STATE	READ	WRITE	CKSUM
tank	ONLINE	0	0	0
mirror-0	ONLINE	0	0	0
c6t0d0	ONLINE	0	0	0
c6t1d0	ONLINE	0	0	0
mirror-1	ONLINE	0	0	0
c6t2d0	ONLINE	0	0	0
c6t3d0	ONLINE	0	0	0
logs				
mirror-2	ONLINE	0	0	0
c4t0d0	ONLINE	0	0	0
c4t1d0	ONLINE	0	0	0

The command to remove the mirrored log `mirror-2` is:

```
zpool remove tank mirror-2
```

**EXAMPLE 16** Recovering a Faulted ZFS Pool

If a pool is faulted but recoverable, a message indicating this state is provided by `zpool status` if the pool was cached (see `cachefile` above), or as part of the error output from a failed `zpool import` of the pool.

Recover a cached pool with the `zpool clear` command:

```
zpool clear -F data
Pool data returned to its state as of Tue Sep 08 13:23:35 2009.
Discarded approximately 29 seconds of transactions.
```

If the pool configuration was not cached, use `zpool import` with the recovery mode flag:

```
zpool import -F data
Pool data returned to its state as of Tue Sep 08 13:23:35 2009.
Discarded approximately 29 seconds of transactions.
```

**Exit Status** The following exit values are returned:

- 0  
Successful completion.
- 1  
An error occurred.
- 2  
Invalid command line options were specified.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWzfsu
Interface Stability	Committed

**See Also** [zfs\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** zstreamdump – filter data in zfs send stream

**Synopsis** zstreamdump [-C] [-v]

**Description** The zstreamdump utility reads from the output of the zfs send command, then displays headers and some statistics from that output. See [zfs\(1M\)](#).

**Options** The following options are supported:

-C

Suppress the validation of checksums.

-v

Verbose. Dump all headers, not only begin and end headers.

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWzfsu
Interface Stability	Uncommitted

**See Also** [zfs\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#)

**Name** zuludaemon – load microcode for Sun XVR-4000 Graphics Accelerator device

**Synopsis** /usr/sbin/zuludaemon [-dev *zulu\_device*]

**Description** The zuludaemon is a daemon, started and stopped from a script in `/etc/init.d`, that loads the microcode and provides other support functions for the Sun XVR-4000 Graphics Accelerator device. Do not kill this process. This daemon is essential to the [zulu\(7d\)](#) driver.

The zuludaemon process is not configurable.

**Options** -dev *zulu\_device* name of the Sun XVR-4000 Graphics Accelerator device

**Files** /usr/sbin/zuludaemon daemon executable

/usr/lib/zulu.ucode file containing microcode used by zuludaemon

/etc/init.d/zuluinit startup/kill script for zuludaemon

**Attributes** See [attributes\(5\)](#) for descriptions of the following attributes:

ATTRIBUTE TYPE	ATTRIBUTE VALUE
Availability	SUNWzuluc

**See Also** [SUNWzulu\\_config\(1M\)](#), [attributes\(5\)](#), [zulu\(7d\)](#)